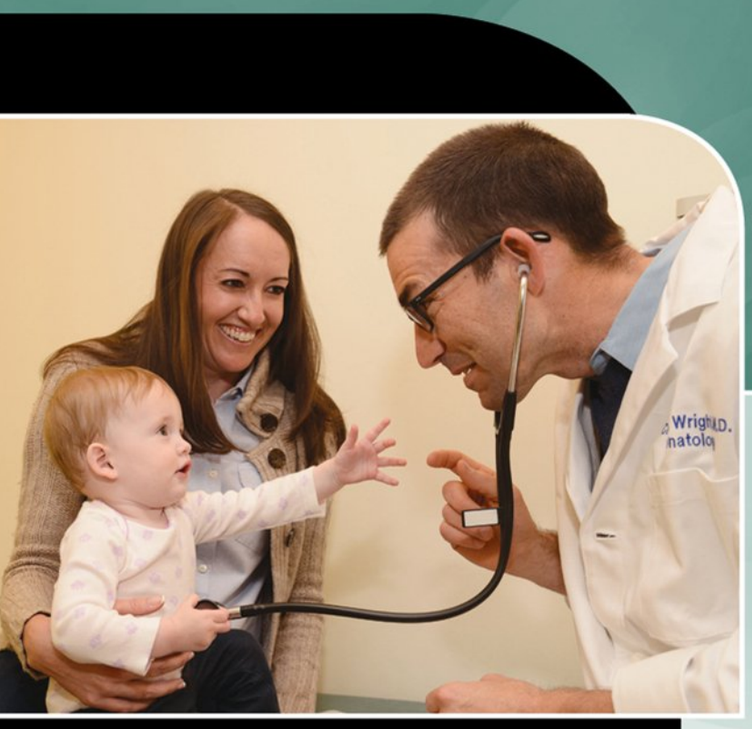
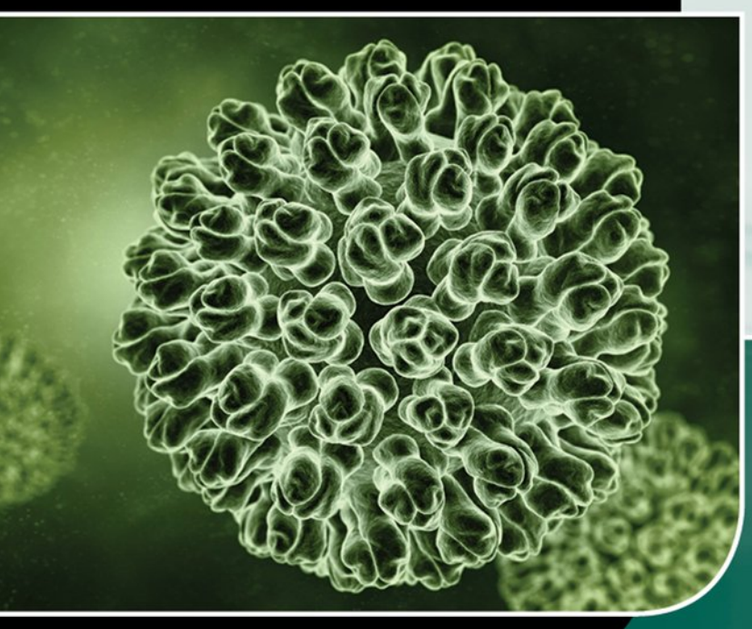
23rd Edition

CURRENT Diagnosis & Treatment





Pediatrics

WILLIAM W. HAY JR. | MYRON J. LEVIN
ROBIN R. DETERDING | MARK J. ABZUG

Mc Graw Hill Education

LANGE®

a LANGE medical book

CURRENT
Diagnosis & Treatment
Pediatrics

TWENTY-THIRD EDITION

Edited by

William W. Hay, Jr., MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics
Section of Neonatology and
Division of Perinatal Medicine
University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's
Hospital Colorado

Myron J. Levin, MD
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine
Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Colorado School of Medicine and
Children's Hospital Colorado

Robin R. Deterding, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics
Chief, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine
University of Colorado School of Medicine and
Children's Hospital Colorado
Medical Director, Breathing Institute
Children's Hospital Colorado

Mark J. Abzug, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics
Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Associate Vice Chair for Academic Affairs,
Department of Pediatrics
University of Colorado School of Medicine and
Children's Hospital Colorado

and Associate Authors

The Department of Pediatrics at the University of Colorado School of Medicine
is affiliated with Children's Hospital Colorado.

Mc Graw Hill Education

New York Chicago San Francisco Athens London Madrid Mexico City Milan
New Delhi Singapore Sydney Toronto

CURRENT Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics, Twenty-Third Edition

Copyright © 2016 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a data base or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Previous editions copyright © 2014, 2012, 2011, 2009, 2007, 2003, 2001 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., and copyright © 1999, 1997, 1995, 1991, 1987 by Appleton & Lange.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 DOC/DOC 20 19 18 17 16

MHID 978-0-07-184854-1
ISBN 0-07-184854-1
ISSN 0093-8556

Notice

Medicine is an ever-changing science. As new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment and drug therapy are required. The authors and the publisher of this work have checked with sources believed to be reliable in their efforts to provide information that is complete and generally in accord with the standards accepted at the time of publication. However, in view of the possibility of human error or changes in medical sciences, neither the authors nor the publisher nor any other party who has been involved in the preparation or publication of this work warrants that the information contained herein is in every respect accurate or complete, and they disclaim all responsibility for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from use of the information contained in this work. Readers are encouraged to confirm the information contained herein with other sources. For example and in particular, readers are advised to check the product information sheet included in the package of each drug they plan to administer to be certain that the information contained in this work is accurate and that changes have not been made in the recommended dose or in the contraindications for administration. This recommendation is of particular importance in connection with new or infrequently used drugs.

This book was set in Minion Pro by Cenveo® Publisher Services.
The editors were Andrew Moyer and Christie Naglieri.
The production supervisor was Catherine Saggese.
Project management was provided by Vastavikta Sharma, Cenveo Publisher Services.
RR Donnelly was the printer and binder.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

International Edition ISBN 978-1-259-25125-2; MHID 1-259-25125-X
Copyright © 2016. Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is consigned by McGraw-Hill Education. The International Edition is not available in North America.

McGraw-Hill Education books are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative, please visit the Contact Us pages at www. mhprofessional.com.

Contents

Authors xix
Preface xxvii
Selected Highlighted Topics in the 23rd Edition of CDT-P xxix

1. Advancing the Quality & Safety of Care 1

Daniel Hyman, MD, MMM

Current Context 1
Strategies & Models for Quality Improvement (Qi) 4
Principles of Patient Safety (Incident Reporting, Just Culture, Disclosure, FMEA, RCA, Reliability, Checklists) 7

2. The Newborn Infant 10

Danielle Smith, MD
Theresa R. Grover, MD

The Neonatal History 10
Assessment of Growth & Gestational Age 10
Examination at Birth 13
Examination in the Nursery 14
Care of the Well Neonate 16
Feeding the Well Neonate 17
Early Discharge of the Newborn Infant 17
Hearing Screening 18
Common Problems in the Term Newborn 19
Neonatal Jaundice 19
Hypoglycemia 26
Respiratory Distress in the Term Newborn Infant 28
Heart Murmurs 30
Birth Trauma 30
Infants of Mothers Who Abuse Drugs 31
Neonatal Intensive Care 34
Perinatal Resuscitation 34
The Preterm Infant 39
The Late Preterm Infant 49
Cardiac Problems in the Newborn Infant 50
Structural Heart Disease 50
Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension 51
Arrhythmias 51
Gastrointestinal & Abdominal Surgical Conditions in the Newborn Infant 52
Esophageal Atresia & Tracheoesophageal Fistula 52
Intestinal Obstruction 52
Abdominal Wall Defects 54
Diaphragmatic Hernia 54
Gastrointestinal Bleeding 55
Gastroesophageal Reflux 55
Infections in the Newborn Infant 56
Bacterial Infections 56
Fungal Sepsis 59
Congenital Infections 60
Perinatally Acquired Infections 61
Hematologic Disorders in the Newborn Infant 63
Bleeding Disorders 63
Anemia 64
Polycythemia 65
Renal Disorders in the Newborn Infant 65
Renal Failure 66
Urinary Tract Anomalies 66
Renal Vein Thrombosis 66
Neurologic Problems in the Newborn Infant 67
Seizures 67
Hypotonia 68
Intracranial Hemorrhage 68
Metabolic Disorders in the Newborn Infant 68
Hyperglycemia 68
Hypocalcemia 69
Inborn Errors of Metabolism 69
Quality Assessment & Improvement in the Newborn Nursery And NICU 70

3. Child Development & Behavior 71

Edward Goldson, MD
Ann Reynolds, MD

Normal Development 71
The First 2 Years 71
Ages 2–4 Years 78
Early School Years: Ages 5–7 Years 78
Middle Childhood: Ages 7–11 Years 79
Behavioral & Developmental Variations 79
Normality & Temperament 79
Enuresis & Encopresis 80
Enuresis 80
Encopresis 81
Common Developmental Concerns 82
Colic 82
Feeding Disorders in Infants & Young Children 83
Sleep Disorders 85
Temper Tantrums & Breath-Holding Spells 87
Well-Child Surveillance & Screening 89
Developmental Disorders 89
Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder 91
Autism Spectrum Disorders 93
Intellectual Disability 96

Specific Forms of Intellectual Disability & Associated Treatment Issues 98
References 99

4. Adolescence 101

Molly J. Richards, MD
David W. Kaplan, MD, MPH
Amy E. Sass, MD, MPH

Demography 101
Mortality Data 101
Morbidity Data 101
Delivery of Health Services 102
Guidelines for Adolescent Preventive Services 103
Relating to the Adolescent Patient 103
The Setting 103
Confidentiality 103
The Structure of the Visit 103
Growth & Development 109
Puberty 109
Physical Growth 111
Sexual Maturation 111
Psychosocial Development 112
Behavior & Psychological Health 114
Psychophysiologic Symptoms & Conversion Reactions 114
Depression 116
Adolescent Suicide 117
Substance Abuse 118
Eating Disorders 118
Overweight & Obesity 118
School Avoidance 120
School Failure 120
Breast Disorders 121
Breast Masses 121
Nipple Discharge & Galactorrhea 123
Gynecomastia 124
Gynecologic Disorders in Adolescence 125
Physiology of Menstruation 125
Pelvic Examination 125
Menstrual Disorders 127
Contraception 135
Pregnancy 142

5. Adolescent Substance Abuse 145

Paritosh Kaul, MD

Scope of the Problem 145
Morbidity Data 150
Predicting the Progression From Use to Abuse 151
Evaluation of Substance Abuse 152
Treatment & Referral 155
Prevention 157
References 158

6. Eating Disorders 159

Eric J. Sigel, MD

Etiology 159
Incidence 160
Predisposing Factors & Clinical Profiles 160
Anorexia Nervosa 160
Bulimia Nervosa 166
Binge-Eating Disorder 168
Avoidant/Restrictive Food Intake Disorder 169
Prognosis 169
Resources for Practioners & Families 170

7. Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics 171

Kimberly Kelsay, MD
Adam Burstein, DO
Ayelet Talmi, PhD

Models of Care Encompassing Mental Health in the Primary Care Setting 172
Prevention, Early Identification, & Developmental Context 173
Lifestyle Recommendations 174
Identification & Assessment During Health Maintenance Visits 174
Other Pediatric Care Settings 182
Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry 182
Chronic Illness in the Pediatric Population 183
Pediatric Terminal Illness 183
Psychiatric Disorders of Childhood & Adolescence 185
Anxiety Disorders 187
Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder 197
Mood Disorders 200
Suicide in Children & Adolescents 206
Conduct Disorders 208
High-Risk Patients and Homicide 209
Somatoform Disorders 210
Adjustment Disorders 212
Psychotic Disorders 212
Other Psychiatric Conditions 215

8. Child Abuse & Neglect 216

Antonia Chiesa, MD
Andrew P. Sirotnak, MD

Prevention 217
Clinical Findings 217
Differential Diagnosis 223
Treatment 223
Prognosis 224

9. Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics 225

Meghan Treitz, MD
Maya Bunik, MD, MSPH
David Fox, MD

Pediatric History 225
Pediatric Physical Examination 226
Health Supervision Visits 228
Developmental & Behavioral Assessment 228
Growth Parameters 231
Blood Pressure 232
Vision & Hearing Screening 233
Anticipatory Guidance 237
Nutrition Counseling 239
Counseling About Television & Other Media 239
Immunizations 240
Acute-Care Visits 240
Prenatal Visits 241
Sports Physicals 241
Chronic Disease Management 241
Medical Home 242
Mental & Behavioral Health 242
Telephone Management & Web-Based Information 243
Advocacy & Community Pediatrics 243
Common General Pediatric Issues 244
Fever 244
Growth Deficiency 246

10. Immunization 248

Matthew F. Daley, MD
Sean T. O'Leary, MD, MPH
Ann-Christine Nyquist, MD, MSPH

Standards for Pediatric Immunization Practices 249
Routine Childhood & Adolescent Immunization Schedules 250
Vaccine Safety 250
Vaccination in Special Circumstances 255
Hepatitis B Vaccination 256
Rotavirus Vaccination 258
Diphtheria-Tetanus-Acellular Pertussis Vaccination 260
Haemophilus Influenzae Type B Vaccination 262
Pneumococcal Vaccination 263
Poliomyelitis Vaccination 265
Influenza Vaccination 266
Measles, Mumps, & Rubella Vaccination 268
Varicella Vaccination 270
Hepatitis A Vaccination 272
Meningococcal Vaccination 273
Tetanus-Reduced Diphtheria-Acellular Pertussis Vaccination (Adolescents & Adults) 275
Human Papillomavirus Vaccination 275
Vaccinations for Special Situations 276
Rabies Vaccination 276
Typhoid Fever Vaccination 278
Japanese Encephalitis Vaccination 278
Tuberculosis Vaccination 279
Yellow Fever Vaccination 279
Passive Prophylaxis 280

11. Normal Childhood Nutrition & Its Disorders 281

Matthew A. Haemer, MD, MPH
Laura E. Primak, RD, CNSD
Nancy F. Krebs, MD, MS

Nutritional Requirements 281
Nutrition & Growth 281
Energy 281
Protein 282
Lipids 283
Carbohydrates 284
Major Minerals 285
Trace Elements 285
Vitamins 285
Infant Feeding 285
Breast-Feeding 285
Special Dietary Products for Infants 294
Nutrition for Children 2 Years & Older 296
Pediatric Undernutrition 297
Pediatric Overweight & Obesity 298
Nutrition Support 301
Enteral 301
Parenteral Nutrition 302
Nutrient Requirements & Delivery 303

12. Emergencies & Injuries 308

Kevin P. Carney, MD
Kelley Roswell, MD

Introduction to Pediatric Emergencies & Injuries 308
Initial Approach to the Acutely Ill Infant or Child 308
The ABCs of Resuscitation 308
Management of Shock 313
Summary of Initial Approach to the Acutely Ill Infant or Child 314
Emergency Pediatric Drugs 314
Approach to the Pediatric Trauma Patient 315
Mechanism of Injury 315
Initial Assessment & Management 315
Primary Survey 315
Secondary Survey 318

Head Injury 320
Burns 322
Thermal Burns 322
Electrical Burns 324
Disorders Due to Extremes of Environment 325
Heat-Related Illnesses & Heat Stroke 325
Hypothermia 325
Submersion Injuries 327
Lacerations 328
Animal & Human Bites 328
Dog Bites 328
Cat Bites 329
Human Bites 329
Pain Management & Procedural Sedation 330

13. Poisoning 331

Richard C. Dart, MD, PhD
Barry H. Rumack, MD
George Sam Wang, MD

Pharmacologic Principles of Toxicology 331
Preventing Childhood Poisonings 332
General Treatment of Poisoning 332
Initial Telephone Contact 332
Initial Emergency Department Contact 335
Definitive Therapy of Poisoning 335
Management of Specific Common Poisonings 336
Acetaminophen (Paracetamol) 336
Alcohol, Ethyl (Ethanol) 338
Amphetamines & Related Drugs (Methamphetamine, Mdma) 339
Anesthetics, Local 339
Antihistamines & Cough & Cold Preparations 340
Arsenic 341
Barbiturates & Benzodiazepines 341
Belladonna Alkaloids (Atropine, Jimsonweed, Potato Leaves, Scopolamine, Stramonium) 341
b-Blockers & Calcium Channel Blockers 342
Carbon Monoxide 342
Caustics 342
Central α_2-Adrenergic Agonist 343
Cocaine 343
Cosmetics & Related Products 344
Cyclic Antidepressants 344
Digitalis & Other Cardiac Glycosides 345
Diphenoxylate With Atropine (Lomotil) & Loperamide (Imodium) 345
Disinfectants & Deodorizers 345
Disk-Shaped "Button" Batteries 346
Ethylene Glycol & Methanol 346
γ-Hydroxybutyrate, γ-Butyrolactone, Butanediol, Flunitrazepam, & Ketamine 347
Hydrocarbons (Benzene, Charcoal Lighter Fluid, Gasoline, Kerosene, Petroleum Distillates, Turpentine) 347
Ibuprofen 347
Insect Stings (Bee, Wasp, & Hornet) 348
Insecticides 348
Iron 349
Lead 350
Magnets 350
Mushrooms 350
Nitrites, Nitrates, Aniline, Pentachlorophenol, & Dinitrophenol 351
Opioids & Opiates 351
Oral Hypoglycemics (Sulfonylureas, Metformin) 352
Antipsychotics (Typical & Atypical) Plants 353
Psychotropic Drugs 353
Salicylates 355
Scorpion Stings 356
Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors 356
Snakebite 356
Soaps & Detergents 357
Spider Bites 358
Vitamins 358
Warfarin (Coumadin) & Other Oral Anticoagulants 358

14. Critical Care 360

Todd C. Carpenter, MD
Amy Clevenger, MD, PhD
Angela S. Czaja, MD, MSc
Eva N. Grayck, MD
Cameron F. Gunville, DO
Leslie Ridall, DO
Carleen Zebuhr, MD

Introduction 360
Respiratory Critical Care 360
Acute Respiratory Failure 360
Conventional Mechanical Ventilation 364
Major Respiratory Diseases in the Pediatric ICU 368
Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome 368
Status Asthmaticus 371
Cardiovascular Critical Care 374
Shock 374
Sepsis 377
Neurocritical Care 381
Traumatic Brain Injury 381
Hypoxic-Ischemic Encephalopathy 385
Acute Kidney Injury & Renal Replacement Therapy 385
Fluid Management & Nutritional Support of the Critically Ill Child 387
Sedation & Analgesia in the Pediatric ICU 389

End-of-Life Care & Death in the PICU 393
Quality Improvement Initiatives in the PICU 396

15. Skin 397

Joseph G. Morelli, MD
Lori D. Prok, MD

General Principles 397
Diagnosis of Skin Disorders 397
Treatment of Skin Disorders 397
Disorders of the Skin in Newborns 399
Transient Diseases in Newborns 399
Pigment Cell Birthmarks, Nevi, & Melanoma 400
Melanocytic NEVI 401
Vascular Birthmarks 401
Epidermal Birthmarks 402
Connective Tissue Birthmarks (Juvenile Elastoma, Collagenoma) 403
Hereditary Skin Disorders 403
Common Skin Diseases in Infants, Children, & Adolescents 404
Acne 404
Bacterial Infections of the Skin 406
Fungal Infections of the Skin 407
Viral Infections of the Skin 408
Virus-Induced Tumors 409
Insect Infestations 410
Dermatitis (Eczema) 410
Common Skin Tumors 413
Papulosquamous Eruptions 414
Hair Loss (Alopecia) 415
Reactive Erythemas 416
Miscellaneous Skin Disorders Seen in Pediatric Practice 416

16. Eye 418

Rebecca Sands Braverman, MD

Common Nonspecific Signs & Symptoms 418
Red Eye 418
Tearing 418
Discharge 418
Pain & Foreign Body Sensation 418
Photophobia 418
Leukocoria 418
Refractive Errors 419
Myopia (Nearsightedness) 419
Hyperopia (Farsightedness) 420
Astigmatism 420
Ophthalmic Examination 420
History 420
Visual Acuity 420
External Examination 421
Pupils 421
Alignment & Motility Evaluation 422
Ophthalmoscopic Examination 423
Ocular Trauma 424
Ocular Foreign Bodies 424
Corneal Abrasion 425
Intraocular Foreign Bodies & Perforating Ocular Injuries 425
Blunt Orbital Trauma 426
Lacerations 427
Burns 427
Hyphema 428
Abusive Head Trauma & Nonaccidental Trauma 429
Prevention of Ocular Injuries 429
Disorders of the Ocular Structures 430
Diseases of the Eyelids 430
Viral Eyelid Disease 431
Miscellaneous Eyelid Infections 431
Eyelid Ptosis 432
Horner Syndrome 432
Eyelid Tics 433
Disorders of the Nasolacrimal System 433
Nasolacrimal Duct Obstruction 433
Congenital Dacryocystocele 434
Dacryocystitis 435
Diseases of the Conjunctiva 435
Ophthalmia Neonatorum 435
Bacterial Conjunctivitis 436
Viral Conjunctivitis 437
Allergic Conjunctivitis 437
Mucocutaneous Diseases 438
Disorders of the Iris 439
Iris Coloboma 439
Aniridia 440
Albinism 440
Miscellaneous Iris Conditions 441
Glaucoma 441
Uveitis 441
Anterior Uveitis/Iridocyclitis/Iritis 441
Posterior Uveitis 442
Intermediate Uveitis 443
Ocular Manifestations of AIDS 443
Disorders of the Cornea 444
Cloudy Cornea 444
Viral Keratitis 444
Corneal Ulcers 445
Disorders of the Lens 446
Cataracts 446
Dislocated Lenses/Ectopia Lentis 446
Disorders of the Retina 447
Retinal Hemorrhages in the Newborn 447
Retinopathy of Prematurity 447
Retinoblastoma 448

Retinal Detachment 449
Diabetic Retinopathy 449
Diseases of the Optic Nerve 450
Optic Neuropathy 450
Optic Nerve Hypoplasia 451
Papilledema 451
Optic Neuritis 452
Optic Atrophy 452
Diseases of the Orbit 453
Periorbital & Orbital Cellulitis 453
Craniofacial Anomalies 453
Orbital Tumors 454
Nystagmus 455
Amblyopia 455
Strabismus 456
Unexplained Decreased Vision in Infants & Children 458
Learning Disabilities & Dyslexia 458

17. Oral Medicine & Dentistry 459

Ulrich Klein, DMD, DDS, MS

Issues in Pediatric Oral Health 459
Dental Caries 460
Oral Examination of the Newborn & Infant 463
Eruption of the Teeth 465
Periodontal Disease 466
Dental Emergencies 467
Antibiotics in Pediatric Dentistry 468
Special Patient Populations 468
Orthodontic Referral 469

18. Ear, Nose, & Throat 470

Patricia J. Yoon, MD
Melissa A. Scholes, MD
Norman R. Friedman, MD

The Ear 470
Infections of the Ear 470
Acute Trauma to the Middle Ear 480
Cerumen Impaction & Ear Canal Foreign Body 480
Auricular Hematoma 480
Congenital Ear Malformations 480
Identification & Management of Hearing Loss 481
The Nose & Paranasal Sinuses 483
Acute Viral Rhinitis 483
Rhinosinusitis 485
Choanal Atresia 487
Recurrent Rhinitis 487
Epistaxis 488
Nasal Infection 488
Nasal Trauma 488
Foreign Bodies in the Nose 489
The Throat & Oral Cavity 489
Acute Stomatitis 489
Pharyngitis 489
Peritonsillar Cellulitis or Abscess (Quinsy) 492
Retropharyngeal Abscess 493
Ludwig Angina 493
Acute Cervical Adenitis 493
Snoring, Mouth Breathing, & Upper Airway Obstruction 494
Tonsillectomy & Adenoidectomy 496
Disorders of the Lips 497
Disorders of the Tongue 498
Halitosis 498
Salivary Gland Disorders 498
Congenital Oral Malformations 498

19. Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum 500

Monica J. Federico, MD
Christopher D. Baker, MD
Emily M. Deboer, MD
Ann C. Halbower, MD
Oren Kupfer, MD
Stacey L. Martiniano, MD
Scott D. Sagel, MD
Paul Stillwell, MD
Edith T. Zemanick, MD
Michelle Caraballo, MD
Stephen Hawkins, MD, DO

Respiratory Tract 500
Growth & Development 500
Diagnostic AIDS 501
Physical Examination of the Respiratory Tract 501
Pulmonary Function Tests 501
Assessment of Oxygenation & Ventilation 502
Diagnosis of Respiratory Tract Infections 504
Imaging of the Respiratory Tract 505
Laryngoscopy & Bronchoscopy 506
General Therapy for Pediatric Lung Diseases 506
Oxygen Therapy 506
Inhalation of Medications 507
Airway Clearance Therapy 508
Avoidance of Environmental Hazards 508
Disorders of the Conducting Airways 508
Laryngomalacia & Congenital Disorders of the Extrathoracic Airway 509
Laryngomalacia 509
Other Causes of Congenital Extrathoracic Obstruction 509
Acquired Disorders of the Extrathoracic Airway 510
Foreign Body Aspiration in the Extrathoracic Airway 510
Croup Syndromes 511

Vocal Cord Paralysis 513
Subglottic Stenosis 513
Congenital Causes of Intrathoracic Airway Obstruction 514
Malacia of Airways 514
Vascular Rings and Slings 515
Bronchogenic Cysts 515
Acquired Causes of Intrathoracic Airway Obstruction 516
Foreign Body Aspiration in the Intrathoracic Airway 516
Disorders of Mucociliary Clearance 517
Cystic Fibrosis 517
Primary Ciliary Dyskinesia 518
Bronchiectasis 519
Bronchiolitis Obliterans 520
Congenital Malformations of the Lung Parenchyma 521
Pulmonary Agenesis & Hypoplasia 521
Pulmonary Sequestration 522
Congenital Lobar Emphysema 522
Congenital Pulmonary Airway Malformation (Cystic Adenomatoid Malformation) 523
Acquired Abnormalities of the Lung Parenchyma 524
Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia 524
Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia 526
Parapneumonic Effusion & Empyema 527
Atypical Pneumonias 528
Viral Pneumonia 528
Bronchiolitis 530
Mycoplasma Pneumonia 531
Aspiration Pneumonia 531
Pneumonia in the Immunocompromised Host 532
Lung Abscess 534
Children's Interstitial Lung Disease Syndrome 535
Hypersensitivitiy Pneumonitis 536
Diseases of the Pulmonary Circulation 537
Pulmonary Hemorrhage 537
Pulmonary Embolism 539
Pulmonary Edema 539
Congenital Pulmonary Lymphangiectasia 540
Disorders of the Chest Wall 540
Scoliosis 540
Pectus Carinatum 541
Pectus Excavatum 541
Neuromuscular Disorders 541
Disorders of the Pleura & Pleural Cavity 542
Hemothorax 542
Chylothorax 542
Pneumothorax & Related Air Leak Syndromes 543
Mediastinum 544
Mediastinal Masses 544
Sleep-Disordered Breathing 544
Obstructive & Central Sleep Apnea 545
Apparent Life-Threatening Events 546
Sudden Unexpected Infant Death and Sudden Infant Death Syndrome 548

20. Cardiovascular Diseases 550

Pei-Ni Jone, MD
Jeffrey R. Darst, MD
Kathryn K. Collins, MD
Shelley D. Miyamoto, MD

Diagnostic Evaluation 550
History 550
Physical Examination 550
Electrocardiography 553
Chest Radiograph 555
Echocardiography 556
Magnetic Resonance Imaging 557
Cardiopulmonary Stress Testing 557
Arterial Blood Gases 557
Cardiac Catheterization & Angiocardiography 557
Perinatal & Neonatal Circulation 559
Heart Failure 560
Genetic Basis of Congenital Heart Disease 562
Acyanotic Congenital Heart Disease 562
Defects in Septation 562
Patent (Persistent) Ductus Arteriosus 567
Right-Sided Obstructive Lesions 568
Left-Sided Lesions 571
Diseases of the Aorta 575
Coronary Artery Abnormalities 576
Cyanotic Congenital Heart Disease 577
Tetralogy of Fallot 577
Pulmonary Atresia with Ventricular Septal Defect 578
Pulmonary Atresia with Intact Ventricular Septum 579
Tricuspid Atresia 580
Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome 581
Transposition of the Great Arteries 582
Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return 584
Truncus Arteriosus 585
Quality Improvement in Congenital Heart Disease 586
Acquired Heart Disease 587
Rheumatic Fever 587
Kawasaki Disease 589
Infective Endocarditis 590
Pericarditis 591
Cardiomyopathy 592
Myocarditis 595

Preventive Cardiology 596
Hypertension 596
Atherosclerosis & Dyslipidemias 596
Chest Pain 597
Cardiac Transplantation 597
Quality Improvement for Pediatric Heart Transplantation 599
Pulmonary Hypertension 599
Disorders of Rate & Rhythm 600
Disorders of the Sinus Node 600
Premature Beats 601
Supraventricular Tachycardia 603
Ventricular Tachycardia 606
Long QT Syndrome 607
Sudden Death 607
Disorders of Atrioventricular Conduction 607
Syncope (Fainting) 610

21. Gastrointestinal Tract 611

Edward Hoffenberg, MD
Glenn T. Furuta, MD
Gregg Kobak, MD
Edwin Liu, MD
Jason Soden, MD
Robert Kramer, MD
David Brumbaugh, MD

Disorders of the Esophagus 611
Gastroesophageal Reflux & GERD 611
Eosinophilic Esophagitis 613
Caustic Burns of the Esophagus 615
Foreign Bodies in the Alimentary Tract 616
Disorders of the Stomach & Duodenum 617
Hiatal Hernia 617
Pyloric Stenosis 618
Gastric & Duodenal Ulcer 619
Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia 620
Congenital Duodenal Obstruction 621
Disorders of the Small Intestine 622
Intestinal Atresia & Stenosis 622
Intestinal Malrotation 622
Short Bowel Syndrome 623
Intussusception 624
Inguinal Hernia 625
Umbilical Hernia 626
Patent Omphalomesenteric Duct 626
Meckel Diverticulum 626
Acute Appendicitis 627
Duplications of the Gastrointestinal Tract 627
Disorders of the Colon 628
Congenital Aganglionic Megacolon (Hirschsprung Disease) 628
Constipation 629
Anal Fissure 630
Congenital Anorectal Anomalies 631
Clostridium Difficile Infection in Children 631
Disorders of the Peritoneal Cavity 633
Peritonitis 633
Chylous Ascites 633
Gastrointestinal Tumors & Malignancies 634
Juvenile Polyps 634
Cancers of the Esophagus, Small Bowel, & Colon 635
Mesenteric Cysts 636
Intestinal Hemangiomas and Vascular Malformations 636
Major Gastrointestinal Symptoms & Signs 636
Acute Diarrhea 636
Chronic Diarrhea 637
Gastrointestinal Bleeding 639
Vomiting 642
Abdominal Pain 643
Acute Abdomen 645
Malabsorption Syndromes 645
Inflammatory Bowel Disease 649

22. Liver & Pancreas 653

Ronald J. Sokol, MD, FAASLD
Michael R. Narkewicz, MD
Shikha S. Sundaram, MD, MSCI
Cara L. Mack, MD

Liver Disorders 653
Neonatal Cholestatic Jaundice 653
Intrahepatic Cholestasis 653
Extrahepatic Neonatal Cholestasis 661
Other Neonatal Hyperbilirubinemic Conditions (Noncholestatic Nonhemolytic) 663
Hepatitis A 666
Hepatitis B 668
Hepatitis C 670
Hepatitis D (Delta Agent) 671
Hepatitis E 671
Other Hepatitis Viruses 671
Acute Liver Failure 672
Autoimmune Hepatitis 673
Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease 675
a_1-Antitrypsin Deficiency Liver Disease 676
Wilson Disease (Hepatolenticular Degeneration) 677
Drug-Induced Liver Disease 679
Cirrhosis 679
Portal Hypertension 681
Biliary Tract Disease 683
Pyogenic & Amebic Liver Abscess 688
Liver Tumors 689
Liver Transplantation 690

Pancreatic Disorders 691
Acute Pancreatitis 691
Chronic Pancreatitis 692
Gastrointestinal & Hepatobiliary Manifestations of Cystic Fibrosis 693
Syndromes With Pancreatic Exocrine Insufficiency 697
Isolated Exocrine Pancreatic Enzyme Defect 697
Pancreatic Tumors 697
References 698

23. Fluid, Electrolyte, & Acid-Base Disorders & Therapy 699

Douglas M. Ford, MD
Melisha G. Hanna, MD, MS

Regulation of Body Fluids, Electrolytes, & Tonicity 699
Acid-Base Balance 700
Fluid & Electrolyte Management 701
Dehydration 702
Hyponatremia 704
Hypernatremia 705
Potassium Disorders 706
Acid-Base Disturbances 707
Metabolic Acidosis 707
Metabolic Alkalosis 708
Respiratory Acidosis 708
Respiratory Alkalosis 708

24. Kidney & Urinary Tract 710

Melissa A. Cadnapaphornchai, MD
Gary M. Lum, MD

Evaluation of the Kidney & Urinary Tract 710
History 710
Physical Examination 710
Laboratory Evaluation of Renal Function 710
Laboratory Evaluation of Immunologic Function 714
Radiographic Evaluation 714
Renal Biopsy 714
Congenital Anomalies of the Urinary Tract 714
Renal Parenchymal Anomalies 714
Distal Urinary Tract Anomalies 715
Hematuria & Glomerular Disease 716
Microhematuria 716
Glomerulonephritis 716
Tubulointerstitial Disease 718
Acute Interstitial Nephritis 718
Proteinuria & Renal Disease 718
Congenital Nephrosis 718
Idiopathic Nephrotic Syndrome of Childhood 718
Focal Segmental Glomerulosclerosis 719
Membranous Nephropathy (Membranous Glomerulonephritis) 719
Diseases of the Renal Vessels 720
Renal Vein Thrombosis 720
Renal Arterial Disease 720
Hemolytic-Uremic Syndrome 720
Renal Failure 721
Acute Kidney Injury 721
Chronic Renal Failure 724
Hypertension 725
Inherited or Developmental Defects of the Kidneys 727
Disorders of the Renal Tubules 727
Cystinosis 729
Oculocerebrorenal Syndrome (Lowe Syndrome) 730
Hypokalemic Alkalosis (Bartter Syndrome, Gitelman Syndrome, & Liddle Syndrome) 730
Nephrogenic Diabetes Insipidus (NDI) 730
Nephrolithiasis 731
Urinary Tract Infections 732
QA/QI in Pediatric Nephrology 733

25. Neurologic & Muscular Disorders 735

Sita Kedia, MD, MPH
Kelly Knupp, MD
Teri L. Schreiner, MD, MPH
Michele L. Yang, MD
Jeremy Toler, MD
Paul G. Moe, MD

Neurologic Assessment & Neurodiagnostics 735
History & Examination 735
Diagnostic Testing 735
Pediatric Neuroradiologic Procedures 737
Disorders Affecting the Nervous System in Infants & Children 741
Altered States of Consciousness 741
Seizure Disorders (Epilepsies) 744
Sleep Disorders 758
Headaches 759
Pseudotumor Cerebri (Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension) 762
Cerebrovascular Disease 764
Congenital Malformations of the Nervous System 767
Abnormal Head Size 770
Neurocutaneous Dysplasias 772
Central Nervous System Degenerative Disorders of Infancy & Childhood 777
Ataxias of Childhood 777

Acute Ataxias of Childhood 777
Congenital Causes of Chronic & Episodic Ataxias 783
Intermittent/Episodic Ataxias 783
Progressive Ataxias 784
Extrapyramidal Disorders 786
Cerebral Palsy 789
Infections & Inflammatory Disorders of the Central Nervous System 790
Bacterial Meningitis 791
Brain Abscess 792
Viral Infections 793
Encephalopathy of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection 793
Other Infections 793
Noninfectious Inflammatory Disorders of the Central Nervous System 794
Other Parainfectious Encephalopathies 795
Multiple Sclerosis 795
Syndromes Presenting as Acute Flaccid Weakness 796
Disorders of Childhood Affecting Muscles 799
Benign Acute Childhood Myositis 807
Myasthenic Syndromes 807
Peripheral Nerve Palsies 809
Chronic Polyneuropathy 810
Miscellaneous Neuromuscular Disorders 811
Floppy Infant Syndrome 811
Web Resources 813

26. Orthopedics 815

Mark A. Erickson, MD, MMM Jason Rhodes, MD, MS
Cameron Niswander, BA

Disturbances of Prenatal Origin 815
Congenital Amputations & Limb Deficiencies 815
Deformities of the Extremities 816
Common Foot Problems 816
Genu Varum & Genu Valgum 818
Tibial Torsion & Femoral Anteversion 819
Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip Joint 819
Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis 821
Common Spine Conditions 821
Torticollis 821
Scoliosis 822
Kyphosis 823
Inflammatory Conditions 824
Arthritis and Tenosynovitis 824
Syndromes with Musculoskeletal Involvement 824
Arthrogryposis Multiplex Congenita (Amyoplasia Congenita) 824
Neurologic Disorders Involving the Musculoskeletal System 827
Trauma 828
Traumatic Subluxations & Dislocations 829
Fractures 830
Infections of the Bones & Joints 832
Vascular Lesions & Avascular Necrosis (Osteochondroses) 835
Neoplasia of the Musculoskeletal System 836
Miscellaneous Diseases of Bone & Joint 838
Fibrous Dysplasia 838
Bone Cysts, Baker Cyst, & Ganglions 839
Quality Assurance/Improvement Initiatives in Orthopedics 839

27. Sports Medicine 840

Katherine S. Dahab, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Kyle B. Nagle, MD, MPH, FAAP, CAQSM
Rachel A. Coel, MD, PhD, FAAP, CAQSM
Quynh B. Hoang, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Armando Vidal, MD

Basic Principles 840
Fitness & Conditioning 840
Sports Nutrition 841
Preparticipation Physical Evaluation 841
Rehabilitation of Sports Injuries 849
Common Sports Medicine Issues & Injuries 855
Infectious Diseases 855
Head & Neck Injuries 855
Spine Injuries 858
Shoulder Injuries 859
Elbow Injuries 861
Hand & Wrist Injuries 863
Hip Injuries 864
Knee Injuries 867
Foot & Ankle Injuries 870
Prevention 872

28. Rehabilitation Medicine 873

Pamela E. Wilson, MD Gerald H. Clayton, PhD

Pediatric Brain Injury 873
Spinal Cord Injury 876
Brachial Plexus Lesions 878
Common Rehabilitation Problems 879
Quality Assurance/Improvement Initiatives in Rehabilitation Medicine 881

29. Rheumatic Diseases 882

Jennifer B. Soep, MD

Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis 882
Systemic Lupus Erythematosus 885
Dermatomyositis 887

Vasculitis 888
Raynaud Phenomenon 889
Noninflammatory Pain Syndromes 889

30. Hematologic Disorders 891

Daniel R. Ambruso, MD
Rachelle Nuss, MD
Michael Wang, MD

Normal Hematologic Values 891
Bone Marrow Failure 891
Constitutional Aplastic Anemia (Fanconi Anemia) 891
Acquired Aplastic Anemia 892
Anemias 893
Approach to the Child With Anemia 893
Pure Red Cell Aplasia 895
Nutritional Anemias 897
Anemia of Chronic Disorders 899
Congenital Hemolytic Anemias: Red Cell Membrane Defects 900
Congenital Hemolytic Anemias: Hemoglobinopathies 901
Congenital Hemolytic Anemias: Disorders of Red Cell Metabolism 908
Acquired Hemolytic Anemia 910
Polycythemia & Methemoglobinemia 912
Congenital Erythrocytosis (Familial Polycythemia) 912
Secondary Polycythemia 912
Methemoglobinemia 913
Disorders of Leukocytes 913
Neutropenia 913
Neutrophilia 915
Disorders of Neutrophil Function 915
Lymphocytosis 917
Eosinophilia 918
Bleeding Disorders 918
Abnormalities of Platelet Number or Function 919
Inherited Bleeding Disorders 924
Von Willebrand Disease 928
Acquired Bleeding Disorders 929
Vascular Abnormalities Associated with Bleeding 931
Thrombotic Disorders 932
Splenic Abnormalities 935
Splenomegaly & Hypersplenism 935
Asplenia & Splenectomy 935
Transfusion Medicine 936
Donor Screening & Blood Processing: Risk Management 936
Storage & Preservation of Blood & Blood Components 938
Pretransfusion Testing 938
Transfusion Practice 938
References 944

31. Neoplastic Disease 945

Doug K. Graham, MD, PhD
John A. Craddock, MD
Ralph R. Quinones, MD
Amy K. Keating, MD
Kelly Maloney, MD
Nicholas K. Foreman, MD, MRCP
Roger H. Giller, MD
Brian S. Greffe, MD

Major Pediatric Neoplastic Diseases 945
Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia 945
Acute Myeloid Leukemia 948
Myeloproliferative Diseases 951
Brain Tumors 952
Lymphomas & Lymphoproliferative Disorders 956
Neuroblastoma 961
Wilms Tumor (Nephroblastoma) 963
Bone Tumors 965
Rhabdomyosarcoma 967
Retinoblastoma 968
Hepatic Tumors 969
Langerhans Cell Histiocytosis 970
Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplant 971
General Considerations 971
Late Effects of Pediatric Cancer Therapy 974
Growth Complications 974
Endocrine Complications 974
Cardiopulmonary Complications 975
Renal Complications 975
Neuropsychological Complications 975
Second Malignancies 975

32. Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care 977

Brian Greffe, MD
Jeffrey L. Galinkin, MD, FAAP
Nancy A. King, MSN, RN, CPNP

Pain Assessment 977
Acute Pain 977
Chronic Pain Management 979
Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care 981
Introduction 981
Children Who May Benefit from Palliative Care Interventions 982
Pain Management in Pediatric Palliative Care 982
Quality-of-Life Adjuncts & Symptom Management in Pediatric Palliative Care 982

Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatric Palliative Care 984
Children's Concept of Death 984
Spiritual & Cultural Support 984
Withdrawal of Medical Life Support 984
Advance Care Planning 986

33. Immunodeficiency 988

Jordan K. Abbott, MD
Pia J. Hauk, MD

Immunodeficiency Evaluation: Primary Considerations 988
Severe Combined Immunodeficiency Diseases 992
Antibody Deficiency Syndromes 995
Other Combined Immunodeficiency Disorders 998
Phagocyte Disorders 1001
Complement Deficiencies 1002
Other Well-Defined Immunodeficiency Syndromes 1003
Genetic Syndromes Associated with Immunodeficiency 1005

34. Endocrine Disorders 1007

Megan Moriarty Kelsey, MD, MS
Jennifer M. Barker, MD
Sarah Bartz, MD
Christine M. Chan, MD
Michael S. Kappy, MD, PhD
Sharon H. Travers, MD
Philip S. Zeitler, MD, PhD

General Concepts 1007
Hormone Types 1007
Feedback Control of Hormone Secretion 1007
Disturbances of Growth 1008
Target Height & Skeletal Maturation 1009
Short Stature 1009
Tall Stature 1015
Disorders of the Posterior Pituitary Gland 1016
Arginine Vasopressin (Antidiuretic Hormone) Physiology 1016
Central Diabetes Insipidus 1016
Thyroid Gland 1017
Fetal Development of the Thyroid 1017
Physiology 1017
Hypothyroidism (Congenital & Acquired) 1017
Thyroiditis 1019
Hyperthyroidism 1020
Thyroid Cancer 1021
Disorders of Calcium & Phosphorus Metabolism 1022
Hypocalcemic Disorders 1022
Pseudohypoparathyroidism (Resistance To Parathyroid Hormone Action) 1026
Hypercalcemic States 1026
Familial Hypocalciuric Hypercalcemia (Familial Benign Hypercalcemia) 1028
Hypervitaminosis D 1028
Idiopathic Hypercalcemia of Infancy (Williams Syndrome) 1028
Immobilization Hypercalcemia 1028
Hypophosphatasia 1028
Gonads (Ovaries & Testes) 1029
Development 1029
Disorders of Sexual Development 1029
Abnormalities in Female Pubertal Development & Ovarian Function 1031
Abnormalities in Male Pubertal Development & Testicular Function 1034
Adrenal Cortex 1036
Adrenocortical Insufficiency (Adrenal Crisis, Addison Disease) 1037
Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasias 1039
Adrenocortical Hyperfunction (Cushing Disease, Cushing Syndrome) 1041
Primary Hyperaldosteronism 1042
Uses of Glucocorticoids & Adrenocorticotropic Hormone in Treatment of Nonendocrine Diseases 1042
Adrenal Medulla Pheochromocytoma 1044

35. Diabetes Mellitus 1045

Marian Rewers, MD, PhD
H. Peter Chase, MD

General Considerations 1045

36. Inborn Errors of Metabolism 1054

Janet A. Thomas, MD
Johan L.K. Van Hove, MD, PhD, MBA

Diagnosis 1054
Suspecting Inborn Errors 1054
Laboratory Studies 1055
Common Clinical Situations 1055
Management of Metabolic Emergencies 1056
Newborn Screening 1056
Disorders of Carbohydrate Metabolism 1057
Glycogen Storage Diseases 1057
Galactosemia 1058
Hereditary Fructose Intolerance 1059
Disorders of Energy Metabolism 1059

Disorders of Amino Acid Metabolism 1061
Disorders of the Urea Cycle 1061
Phenylketonuria & the Hyperphenylalaninemias 1062
Hereditary Tyrosinemia 1063
Maple Syrup Urine Disease (Branched-Chain Ketoaciduria) 1064
Homocystinuria 1065
Nonketotic Hyperglycinemia 1065
Organic Acidemias 1066
Propionic & Methylmalonic Acidemia (Ketotic Hyperglycinemias) 1066
Carboxylase Deficiency 1068
Glutaric Acidemia Type I 1068
Disorders of Fatty Acid Oxidation & Carnitine 1069
Fatty Acid Oxidation Disorders 1069
Carnitine 1070
Purine Metabolism Disorders 1070
Lysosomal Diseases 1071
Peroxisomal Diseases 1075
Congenital Disorders of Glycosylation 1076
Smith-Lemli-Opitz Syndrome & Disorders of Cholesterol Synthesis 1076
Disorders of Neurotransmitter Metabolism 1077
Creatine Synthesis Disorders 1078
Quality Initiatives in the Field of Metabolic Disease 1078

37. Genetics & Dysmorphology 1080

Margarita Sifuentes Saenz, MD
Naomi J.L. Meeks, MD
Anne Chun-Hui Tsai, MD, MSc
Ellen R. Elias, MD

Foundations of Genetic Diagnosis 1080
Cytogenetics 1080
Molecular Genetics 1085
Principles of Inherited Human Disorders 1086
Mendelian Inheritance 1086
Multifactorial Inheritance 1090
Nonmendelian Inheritance 1090
Family History & Pedigree 1092
Dysmorphology & Human Embryology 1092
Mechanisms 1092
Clinical Dysmorphology 1093
Chromosomal Disorders: Abnormal Number 1095
Trisomies 1095
Sex Chromosome Abnormalities 1096
Chromosomal Abnormalities: Abnormal Structure 1097
Chromosome Deletion Disorders 1097
Contiguous Gene Disorders 1098
Mendelian Disorders 1099
Autosomal Dominant Disorders 1099
Autosomal Recessive Disorders 1101
X-Linked Disorders 1103
Nonmendelian Disorders 1104
Disorders of Imprinting 1104
Disorders Associated with Anticipation 1104
Mitochondrial Disorders 1105
Disorders of Multifactorial Inheritance 1106
Cleft Lip & Cleft Palate 1106
Neural Tube Defects 1107
Common Recognizable Disorders with Variable or Unknown Cause 1108
Genetic Evaluation of the Child with Developmental Disabilities 1110
Perinatal Genetics 1111
Teratogens 1111
Assisted Reproduction 1112
Prenatal Diagnosis 1112

38. Allergic Disorders 1114

Ronina A. Covar, MD
David M. Fleischer, MD
Christine Cho, MD
Mark Boguniewicz, MD

Asthma 1114
Allergic Rhinoconjunctivitis 1131
Atopic Dermatitis 1135
Urticaria & Angioedema 1139
Anaphylaxis 1141
Adverse Reactions to Drugs & Biologicals 1143
Food Allergy 1147
Insect Allergy 1148

39. Antimicrobial Therapy 1150

Sarah K. Parker, MD
John W. Ogle, MD

Principles of Antimicrobial Therapy 1150
Antimicrobial Stewardship 1151
Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing 1158
Alteration of Dose & Measurement of Blood Levels 1159
The Use of New Antimicrobial Agents 1159
Prophylactic Antimicrobial Agents 1160
Initial Empiric Antimicrobial Choices for Selected Conditions 1161
Specific Antimicrobial Agents 1163
Penicillins 1163
Glycopeptide Agents 1164
Oxazolidinones 1165
Cephalosporins 1165
Aztreonam 1166
Carbapenems 1166
Macrolides & Azalides 1166

Clindamycin 1167
Sulfonamides 1167
Tetracyclines 1167
Aminoglycosides 1168
Fluoroquinolones 1168
Metronidazole 1169
Daptomycin 1169
References 1169

40. Infections: Viral & Rickettsial 1170

Myron J. Levin, MD
Edwin J. Asturias, MD
Adriana Weinberg, MD

Viral Infections 1170
Respiratory Infections 1170
Viruses Causing the Common Cold 1170
Infections Due to Adenoviruses 1175
Influenza 1176
Parainfluenza (Croup) 1178
Respiratory Syncytial Virus Disease 1178
Human Metapneumovirus Infection 1180
Infections Due to Enteroviruses and Parechoviruses 1181
Acute Febrile Illness 1181
Respiratory Tract Illnesses 1181
Rashes (Including Hand-Foot-and-Mouth Disease) 1182
Central Nervous System Illnesses 1183
Infections Due to Herpesviruses 1185
Herpes Simplex Infections 1185
Varicella & Herpes Zoster 1189
Roseola Infantum (Exanthem Subitum) 1191
Cytomegalovirus Infections 1192
Infectious Mononucleosis (Epstein-Barr Virus) 1195
Viral Infections Spread by Insect Vectors 1197
Encephalitis 1197
Dengue 1201
Colorado Tick Fever 1202
Other Major Viral Childhood Exanthems 1202
Erythema Infectiosum 1202
Measles (Rubeola) 1204
Rubella 1205
Infections Due to Other Viruses 1207
Hantavirus Cardiopulmonary Syndrome 1207
Mumps 1208
Rabies 1209
Rickettsial Infections 1210
Human Ehrlichiosis 1210
Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever 1211
Endemic Typhus (Murine Typhus) 1212
Q Fever 1213

41. Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection 1214

Elizabeth J. McFarland, MD

Perinatally HIV-Exposed Infant 1216
Acute Retroviral Syndrome 1217
Progressive HIV Disease 1218
Prevention 1223
Quality Assurance and Outcome Metrics 1225

42. Infections: Bacterial & Spirochetal 1226

John W. Ogle, MD
Marsha S. Anderson, MD

Bacterial Infections 1226
Group A Streptococcal Infections 1226
Group B Streptococcal Infections 1230
Streptococcal Infections with Organisms other than Group A or B 1233
Pneumococcal Infections 1234
Staphylococcal Infections 1237
Meningococcal Infections 1242
Gonococcal Infections 1244
Botulism 1247
Tetanus 1249
Gas Gangrene 1251
Diphtheria 1252
Infections Due to Enterobacteriaceae 1253
Pseudomonas Infections 1256
Salmonella Gastroenteritis 1257
Typhoid Fever & Paratyphoid Fever 1259
Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery) 1261
Cholera 1262
Campylobacter Infection 1263
Tularemia 1264
Plague 1266
Haemophilus Influenzae Type B Infections 1267
Pertussis (Whooping Cough) 1270
Listeriosis 1272
Tuberculosis 1273
Infections With Nontuberculous Mycobacteria 1276
Legionella Infection 1278
Chlamydophila Infections (Psittacosis [Ornithosis], C Pneumoniae, & C Trachomatis) 1279
Cat-Scratch Disease 1281
Spirochetal Infections 1282
Syphilis 1282
Relapsing Fever 1286
Leptospirosis 1287
Lyme Disease 1288

43. Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic 1291

Kevin Messacar, MD
Samuel R. Dominguez, MD, PhD
Myron J. Levin, MD

Parasitic Infections 1291
Protozoal Infections 1294
Systemic Infections 1294
Gastrointestinal Infections 1300
Trichomoniasis 1305
Metazoal Infections 1306
Nematode Infections 1306
Cestode Infections (Flukes) 1312
Trematode Infections 1314
Pneumocystis and Other Opportunistic Fungal Infections 1326
Pneumocystis Jiroveci Infection 1328
Mycotic Infections 1316

44. Sexually Transmitted Infections 1330

Daniel H. Reirden, MD
Ann-Christine Nyquist, MD, MSPH

Adolescent Sexuality 1330
Risk Factors 1331
Prevention of Sexually Transmitted Infections 1331
Screening for Sexually Transmitted Infections 1331
Signs & Symptoms 1332
The Most Common Antibiotic-Responsive Sexually Transmitted Infections 1332
Chlamydia Trachomatis Infection 1332
Neisseria Gonorrhoeae Infection 1333
The Spectrum of Signs & Symptoms of Sexually Transmitted Infections 1339
Cervicitis 1339
Pelvic Inflammatory Disease 1340
Urethritis 1341
Epididymitis 1342
Proctitis, Proctocolitis, & Enteritis 1342
Vaginal Discharge 1343
Genital Ulcerations 1344
Genital Warts & Human Papillomavirus 1348
Other Viral Infections 1349
Ectoparasitic Infections 1351

45. Travel Medicine 1352

Suchitra Rao, MBBS
Sarah K. Parker, MD

Introduction 1352
Preparing Children and Infants for Travel 1352
Vaccinations—Routine Childhood Vaccines Modified for Travel 1354
Vaccinations—Travel-Specific 1356
Traveler's Diarrhea 1358
Malaria Prophylaxis & Prevention 1359
Visits To Friends & Relatives (VFR) in High-Risk Areas 1360
HIV & Sexually Transmitted Diseases 1360
Fever in the Returned Traveler 1363
References 1366

46. Chemistry & Hematology Reference Intervals 1367

Frank J. Accurso, MD
Georgette Siparsky, PhD

Challenges in Determining & Interpreting Pediatric Reference Intervals 1367
Guidelines for Use of Data in a Reference Range Study 1367
Statistical Computation of Reference Intervals 1368
Why Reference Intervals Vary 1369
Sensitivity & Specificity 1369
Pediatric Reference Intervals 1370

Index 1383

Authors

Jordan K. Abbott, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Division of Pediatric Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology, National Jewish Health
Chapter 33: Immunodeficiency

Frank J. Accurso, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 46: Chemistry & Hematology Reference Intervals

Daniel R. Ambruso, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Associate Medical Director, Belle Bonfils Blood Center
Chapter 30: Hematologic Disorders

Marsha S. Anderson, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 42: Infections: Bacterial & Spirochetal

Edwin J. Asturias, MD
Associate Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Epidemiology and Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine; Associate Director, Center for Global Health, Colorado School of Public Health
Chapter 40: Infections: Viral & Rickettsial

Christopher D. Baker, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Jennifer M. Barker, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Sarah Bartz, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Mark Boguniewicz, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Division of Pediatric Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology, National Jewish Health
Chapter 38: Allergic Disorders

Rebecca Sands Braverman, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Ophthalmology, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 16: Eye

David Brumbaugh, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Maya Bunik, MD, MSPH
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of General Academic Pediatrics, Director of the Child Health Clinic, University of Colorado Denver School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 9: Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics

Adam Burstein, DO
Senior Clinical Instructor, Department of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, Psychiatry Resident Training Programs, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 7: Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics

Melissa A. Cadnapaphornchai, MD
Associate Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Section of Pediatric Nephrology, Director, Pediatric Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy, Hemodialysis, and Peritoneal Dialysis, The Kidney Center, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 24: Kidney & Urinary Tract

Michelle Caraballo, MD
Former Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Division of Respiratory Medicine, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Kevin P. Carney, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Emergency Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Director of Quality Improvement, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 12: Emergencies & Injuries

Todd C. Carpenter, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Christine M. Chan, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

H. Peter Chase, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Clinical Director Emeritus, Barbara Davis Center for Childhood Diabetes, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 35: Diabetes Mellitus

Antonia Chiesa, MD
Senior Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Kempe Child Protection Team, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Children's Hospital Colorado and Kempe Center for the Prevention and Treatment of Child Abuse and Neglect
Chapter 8: Child Abuse & Neglect

Christine Cho, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Division of Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology, National Jewish Health
Chapter 38: Allergic Disorders

Gerald H. Clayton, PhD
Instructor, Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 28: Rehabilitation Medicine

Amy Clevenger, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Rachel A. Coel, MD, PhD, FAAP, CAQSM
Assistant Professor, Department of Orthopedics, Co-Medical Director, Sports Medicine Program, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 27: Sports Medicine

Kathryn K. Collins, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Cardiology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 20: Cardiovascular Diseases

Ronina A. Covar, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Division of Pediatric Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology, National Jewish Health
Chapter 38: Allergic Disorders

John A. Craddock, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Center for Cancer and Blood Disorders, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Angela S. Czaja, MD, MSc
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Katherine S. Dahab, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Assistant Professor, Department of Orthopedics, Fellowship Director, Pediatric Primary Care Sports Medicine Fellowship, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 27: Sports Medicine

Matthew F. Daley, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of General Academic Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 10: Immunization

Jeffrey R. Darst, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Cardiology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 20: Cardiovascular Diseases

Richard C. Dart, MD, PhD
Professor, Departments of Regulatory Compliance and Emergency Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine; Director, Rocky Mountain Poison and Drug Center, Denver Health and Hospital Authority
Chapter 13: Poison

Emily M. Deboer, MD
Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Samuel R. Dominguez, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 43: Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic

Ellen R. Elias, MD
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Genetics, Director, Special Care Clinic, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 37: Genetics & Dysmorphology

Mark A. Erickson, MD, MMM
Chairman, Department of Pediatric Orthopaedics, Associate Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery, Orthopedic Institute, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 26: Orthopedics

Monica J. Federico, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

David M. Fleischer, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Division of Pediatric Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology, National Jewish Health
Chapter 38: Allergic Disorders

Douglas M. Ford, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Nephrology, Director, Home Dialysis & Renal Transplantation, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 23: Fluid, Electrolyte, & Acid-Base Disorders & Therapy

Nicholas K. Foreman, MD, MRCP
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Seebaum/Tschetter Chair of Neuro-Oncology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

David Fox, MD
Assistant Professor, Section of General Academic Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 9: Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics

Norman R. Friedman, MD
Associate Professor, Departments of Otolaryngology & Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 18: Ear, Nose, & Throat

Glenn T. Furuta, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Attending Physician, Digestive Health Institute; Director, Gastrointestinal Eosinophil Disease Program, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Jeffrey L. Galinkin, MD, FAAP
Associate Professor, Department of Anesthesiology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 32: Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care

Roger H. Giller, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Director, Pediatric BMT Program, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Edward Goldson, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Developmental Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 3: Child Development & Behavior

Douglas K. Graham, MD, PhD
Formerly Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Immunology, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Chief, Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology/ BMT, Emory University School of Medicine, Director and Daniel P. Amos Children's Chair, Alfac Cancer and Blood Disorders Center
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Eva N. Grayck, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Brian S. Greffe, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease
Chapter 32: Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care

Theresa R. Grover, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Neonatology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 2: The Newborn Infant

Cameron F. Gunville, DO
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Matthew A. Haemer, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 11: Normal Childhood Nutrition & Its Disorders

Ann C. Halbower, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Melisha G. Hanna, MD, MS
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Nephrology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 23: Fluid, Electrolyte, & Acid-Base Disorders & Therapy

Pia J. Hauk, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and National Jewish Health
Chapter 33: Immunodeficiency

Stephen Hawkins, MD, DO
Fellow Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Quynh B. Hoang, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Assistant Professor, Department of Orthopedics, Sports Medicine Program, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 27: Sports Medicine

Edward J. Hoffenberg, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Daniel Hyman, MD, MMM
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Chief Quality Officer, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 1: Advancing the Quality & Safety of Care

Pei-Ni Jone, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Cardiology, Children's Hospital Colorado and University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 20: Cardiovascular Diseases

David W. Kaplan, MD, MPH
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Head, Section of Adolescent Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 4: Adolescence

Michael S. Kappy, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Paritosh Kaul, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Adolescent Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Children's Hospital Colorado, and Denver Health Medical Center
Chapter 5: Adolescent Substance Abuse

Amy K. Keating, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Center for Cancer and Blood Disorders, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Sita Kedia, MD MPH
Assistant Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Neurology, Section of Pediatric Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Kimberly Kelsay, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 7: Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics

Megan Moriarty Kelsey, MD, MS
Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Nancy A. King, MSN, RN, CPNP
Inpatient Oncology Advanced Practice Nurse, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 32: Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care

Ulrich Klein, DMD, DDS, MS
Associate Professor and Chair, Department of Pediatric Dentistry, Director of Pediatric Dentistry Residency Program, University of Colorado School of Dental Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 17: Oral Medicine & Dentistry

Kelly Knupp, MD
Senior Instructor, Departments of Pediatrics and Neurology, Section of Pediatric Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Gregory Kobak, MD
Senior Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Digestive Health Institute, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Robert E. Kramer, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Nancy F. Krebs, MD, MS
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 11: Normal Childhood Nutrition & Its Disorders

Oren Kupfer, MD
Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Myron J. Levin, MD
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 40: Infections: Viral & Rickettsial
Chapter 43: Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic

Edwin Liu, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Digestive Health Institute, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Gary M. Lum, MD
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine, Section of Pediatric Nephrology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 24: Kidney & Urinary Tract

Cara L. Mack, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 22: Liver & Pancreas

Kelly Maloney, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Stacey L. Martiniano, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Elizabeth J. McFarland, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 41: Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection

Naomi J. L. Meeks, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Clinical Genetics and Metabolism, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 37: Genetics & Dysmorphology

Kevin Messacar, MD
Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 43: Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic

Shelley D. Miyamoto, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Cardiology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 20: Cardiovascular Diseases

Paul G. Moe, MD
Professor Emeritus, Departments of Pediatrics and Neurology, Section of Pediatric Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Joseph G. Morelli, MD
Professor, Departments of Dermatology and Pediatrics, Section Head, Section of Pediatric Dermatology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 15: Skin

Kyle B. Nagle, MD, MPH, FAAP, CAQSM
Assistant Professor, Department of Orthopedics, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Sports Medicine for Young Athletes, Children's Hospital of Colorado Orthopedics Institute
Chapter 27: Sports Medicine

Michael R. Narkewicz, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Fellowship Program Director, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Hewitt Andrews Chair in Pediatric Liver Diseases, Medical Director, Pediatric Liver Center and Liver Transplant Pediatric Services Associate Clinical Director/Associate Dean for Pediatric Clinical Affairs, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 22: Liver & Pancreas

Cameron Niswander, BA
First Year Medical Student, Department of Orthopedics, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 26: Orthopedics

Rachelle Nuss, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant; Associate Director, Colorado Sickle Cell Treatment and Research Center at University of Colorado School of Medicine; Director Pediatric Sickle Cell Program, Center for Cancer and Blood Disorders, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 30: Hematologic Disorders

Ann-Christine Nyquist, MD, MSPH
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 10: Immunization
Chapter 44: Sexually Transmitted Infections

Sean T. O'Leary, MD, MPH
Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 10: Immunization

John W. Ogle, MD
Professor and Vice Chairman Emeritus, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 39: Antimicrobial Therapy
Chapter 42: Infections: Bacterial & Spirochetal

Sarah K. Parker, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 39: Antimicrobial Therapy
Chapter 45: Travel Medicine

Laura E. Primak, RD, CNSD
Professional Research Assistant, Coordinator of Nutrition Electives, Section of Pediatric Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 11: Normal Childhood Nutrition & Its Disorders

Lori D. Prok, MD
Assistant Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Dermatology, Section of Pediatric Dermatology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 15: Skin

Ralph R. Quinones, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Center for Cancer and Blood Disorders, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 31: Neoplastic Disease

Suchitra Rao, MBBS
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Infectious Disease, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 45: Travel Medicine

Daniel H. Reirden, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Adolescent Medicine and Internal Medicine, Medical Director, CHIP Youth Clinic, Director of Internal Medicine – Pediatric Residency, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 44: Sexually Transmitted Infections

Marian Rewers, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Clinical Director, Barbara Davis Center for Childhood Diabetes, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 35: Diabetes Mellitus

Ann Reynolds, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Developmental Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine; Director, The Child Development Unit, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 3: Child Development & Behavior

Molly J. Richards, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Adolescent Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 4: Adolescence

Leslie Ridall, DO
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Jason Rhodes, MD, MS
Assistant Professor, Departments of Mechanical and Materials Engineering, Director, Cerebral Palsy Program, Orthopedics Institute, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 26: Orthopedics

Kelley Roswell, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Emergency Medicine, Co-Director Medical Student Emergency Care Clerkship, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 12: Emergencies & Injuries

Barry H. Rumack, MD
Clinical Professor, Department of Pediatrics, University of Colorado School of Medicine; Director Emeritus, Rocky Mountain Poison and Drug Center, Denver Health Authority
Chapter 13: Poison

Margarita Sifuentes Saenz, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Clinical Genetics and Metabolism, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 37: Genetics & Dysmorphology

Scott D. Sagel, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Amy E. Sass, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Adolescent Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 4: Adolescence

Melissa A. Scholes, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatric Otolaryngology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 18: Ear, Nose, Throat

Teri L. Schreiner, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Neurology, Section of Pediatric Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Eric J. Sigel, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Adolescent Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 6: Eating Disorders

Georgette Siparsky, PhD
Clinical Data Analyst II, Department of Clinical Informatics, Children's Hospital Colorado, and University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 46: Chemistry & Hematology Reference Intervals

Andrew P. Sirotnak, MD
Professor and Vice Chair for Faculty Affairs, Department of Pediatrics, Director, Child Protection Team, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 8: Child Abuse & Neglect

Danielle Smith, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Neonatology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 2: The Newborn Infant

Jason Soden, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 21: Gastrointestinal Tract

Jennifer B. Soep, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Rheumatology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 29: Rheumatic Diseases

Ronald J. Sokol, MD, FAASLD
Professor and Vice Chair, Department of Pediatrics, Arnold Silverman MD Endowed Chair in Digestive Health; Head, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition and the Digestive Health Institute, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado; Director, Colorado Clinical and Translational Sciences Institute and Assistant Vice Chancellor for Clinical and Translational Science, University of Colorado Denver
Chapter 22: Liver & Pancreas

Paul Stillwell, MD
Senior Instructor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Shikha S. Sundaram, MD, MSCI
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 22: Liver & Pancreas

Ayelet Talmi, PhD
Assistant Professor, Departments of Psychiatry and Pediatrics, Associate Director, Irving Harris Program in Child Development and Infant Mental Health, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 7: Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics

Janet A. Thomas, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Clinical Genetics and Metabolism, Director—IMD Clinic, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 36: Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Jeremy Toler, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Child Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Sharon H. Travers, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Meghan Treitz, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of General Academic Pediatrics, University of Colorado Denver School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 9: Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics

Anne Chun-Hui Tsai, MD, MSc
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Clinical Genetics and Metabolism, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 37: Genetics & Dysmorphology

Johan L. K. Van Hove, MD, PhD, MBA
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Head, Section of Clinical Genetics and Metabolism, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 36: Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Armando Vidal, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Orthopedics - Sports Medicine Program, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 27: Sports Medicine

George Sam Wang, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Emergency Medicine, Medical Toxicology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 13: Poison

Michael Wang, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Bone Marrow Transplant, Center for Cancer and Blood Disorders, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 30: Hematologic Disorders

Adriana Weinberg, MD
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine, Director of Clinical Virology Laboratory, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 40: Infections: Viral & Rickettsial

Pamela E. Wilson, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 28: Rehabilitation Medicine

Michele L. Yang, MD
Senior Instructor, Departments of Pediatrics and Neurology, Section of Child Neurology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 25: Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Patricia J. Yoon, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Otolaryngology, Associate Director, Bill Daniels Center for Children's Hearing, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 18: Ear, Nose, & Throat

Carleen Zebuhr, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Section of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 14: Critical Care

Philip S. Zeitler, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Head, Section of Pediatric Endocrinology, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 34: Endocrine Disorders

Edith T. Zemanick, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics Section of Pediatric Pulmonary Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine and Children's Hospital Colorado
Chapter 19: Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Preface

The 23rd edition of Current Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics (CDTP) features practical, up-to-date, well-referenced information on the care of children from birth through infancy and adolescence. CDTP emphasizes the clinical aspects of pediatric care while also covering important underlying principles. CDTP provides a guide to diagnosis, understanding, and treatment of the medical problems of all pediatric patients in an easy-to-use and readable format.

INTENDED AUDIENCE

Like all Lange medical books, CDTP provides a concise, yet comprehensive source of current information. Students will find CDTP an authoritative introduction to pediatrics and an excellent source for reference and review. CDTP provides excellent coverage of The Council on Medical Student Education in Pediatrics (COMSEP) curriculum used in pediatric clerkships. Residents in pediatrics (and other specialties) will appreciate the detailed descriptions of diseases as well as diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Pediatricians, family practitioners, nurses, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, and other health care providers who work with infants, children, and adolescents will find CDTP a useful reference on management aspects of pediatric medicine.

COVERAGE

Forty-six chapters cover a wide range of topics, including neonatal medicine, child development and behavior, emergency and critical care medicine, and diagnosis and treatment of specific disorders according to major problems, etiologies, and organ systems. A wealth of tables and figures provides quick access to important information, such as acute and critical care procedures in the delivery room, the office, the emergency room, and the critical care unit; anti-infective agents; drug dosages; immunization schedules; differential diagnosis; and developmental disorders.

NEW TO THIS EDITION

The 23rd edition of CDTP has been revised comprehensively by the editors and contributing authors. A major effort involved reducing the length of the book by 10% by condensing text into tables, eliminating wordy text, and updating references. New references as well as up-to-date and useful websites have been added, permitting the reader to consult original material and to go beyond the confines of the textbook. As editors and practicing pediatricians, we have tried to ensure that each chapter reflects the needs and realities of day-to-day practice.

CHAPTERS WITH MAJOR REVISIONS INCLUDE:

3 Child Development & Behavior

6 Eating Disorders

7 Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics

9 Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics

10 Immunization

14 Critical Care

15 Skin

17 Oral Medicine & Dentistry

19 Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

21 Gastrointestinal Tract

22 Liver & Pancreas

23 Fluid, Electrolyte, & Acid Base Disorders

24 Kidney and Urinary Tract

25 Neurologic & Muscular Disorders
26 Orthopedics
31 Neoplastic Disease
32 Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care
33 Immunodeficiency
37 Genetics & Dysmorphology
38 Allergic Disorders
41 Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection
42 Infections: Bacterial & Spirochetal
43 Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic

CHAPTER REVISIONS

The 23 chapters that have been extensively revised, with new authors added in several cases, reflect the substantially updated material in each of their areas of pediatric medicine. Especially important are updates to the chapters on immunizations, endocrinology, neurologic and muscular disorders, and critical care. The chapter on HIV includes current guidelines for prevention and treatment of HIV and updates information on the new antiretroviral therapies that have become available. The chapter on immunizations contains the most recently published recommendations, discusses the contraindications and precautions relevant to special populations, and includes the new vaccines licensed since the last edition of this book. Chapters on skin, immunodeficiency, and neoplastic disease are markedly updated with the latest information. All laboratory tables in Chapter 46 Pediatric Laboratory Medicine and Reference Ranges that includes reference ranges and reference intervals have been updated. All other chapters are substantially revised and references have been updated. Nineteen new authors have contributed to these revisions.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The editors would like to thank Bonnie Savone for her expert assistance in managing the flow of manuscripts and materials among the chapter authors, editors, and publishers. Her attention to detail was enormously helpful. The editors also would like to thank Tia Brayman at Children's Hospital Colorado who produced the cover photographs.

William W. Hay, Jr., MD
Myron J. Levin, MD
Robin R. Deterding, MD
Mark J. Abzug, MD

Aurora, Colorado

Selected Highlighted Topics in the 23rd Edition of CDT-P

The **Newborn Infant** chapter includes the new 2015 Neonatal Resuscitation Program (NRP) Guidelines for Neonatal Resuscitation.

The **Child Abuse & Neglect** chapter includes the use of nucleic acid amplification tests to diagnose sexually transmitted diseases in prepubertal children evaluated for sexual abuse.

The **Immunization** chapter includes new discussions about how HPV vaccination can prevent cancer, how a newer HPV vaccine protects against additional HPV types, and new discussion about how most parents in the United States choose to vaccinate their children (in 2013, < 1% of young children received no vaccines). Although parents' concerns about vaccines are on the rise, an increasing number of parents are choosing to delay or decline vaccination for their children.

The **Poisoning** chapter includes new recommendations for evaluation and treatment for common ingestions and exposures in the pediatric population, including pharmaceuticals, household products, and designer drugs.

The **Skin** chapter includes the use of propranolol for infantile hemangiomas.

The **Eye** chapter describes how instrument-based vision screening is a novel means of detecting vision-threatening amblyogenic risk factors in preverbal, preliterate, and developmentally delayed children, and is endorsed by the American Academy of Pediatrics.

The **Oral Medicine & Dentistry** chapter includes preventive dental treatment (fluoride varnish) by physicians for high-risk populations.

The **Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum** chapter introduces the new cystic fibrosis drug, Orkambi.

The **Cardiovascular Diseases** chapter includes three–dimensional echocardiography as a new diagnostic addition to noninvasive evaluation of congenital heart disease.

The **Gastrointestinal Tract** chapter identifies the life-threatening impact of button batteries as startling and significant health care problem.

The **Liver & Pancreas** chapter identifies two new oral therapies that are available for children with chronic hepatitis B: entecavir for children 3 years or older and tenofovir for children 12 years or older.

The **Hematologic Disorders** chapter notes that hydroxyurea therapy is now recommended for all children with sickle cell anemia or sickle β-thalassemia.

The **Immunodeficiency** chapter describes the use of genetic testing in the evaluation of children with immunodeficiency and states of immune dysregulation.

The **Endocrine Disorders** chapter includes the use of recombinant alkaline phosphatase (asfotase alfa) for the treatment of hypophosphatasia and how it has revolutionized therapy for this disorder.

The **Genetics & Dysmorphology** chapter includes information on microarray testing and whole exome sequencing.

The **Antimicrobial Therapy** chapter includes information on antimicrobial stewardship.

And many more!

Advancing the Quality & Safety of Care

Daniel Hyman, MD, MMM

Hippocrates' famous dictum primum non nocere 2500 years ago may have been the earliest reflection of the importance of patient safety, but the Institute of Medicine's (IOM) 1999 landmark report To Err Is Human truly galvanized the current focus on eliminating preventable harm from health care. Its most quoted statistic, that between 44,000 and 98,000 Americans die every year as a result of medical error, was based upon studies of hospital mortality in Colorado, Utah, and New York and extrapolated to an annual estimate for the country. The IOM followed up this report with a second publication, Crossing the Quality Chasm, in which they said, "Health care today harms too frequently, and routinely fails to deliver its potential benefits…. Between the health care we have and the care we could have lies not just a gap, but a chasm." These two reports have served as central elements in an advocacy movement that has engaged stakeholders across the continuum of our health care delivery system and changed the nature of how we think about the quality and safety of the care we provide, and receive.

In Crossing the Quality Chasm, the IOM included a simple but elegant definition of the word "Quality" as it applies to health care. They defined six domains of health care quality: (1) SAFE—free from preventable harm, (2) EFFECTIVE—optimal clinical outcomes; doing what we should do, not what we should not do according to the evidence, (3) EFFICIENT—without waste of resources—human, financial, supplies/equipment, (4) TIMELY—without unnecessary delay, (5) PATIENT/FAMILY CENTERED—according to the wishes and values of patients and their families, (6) EQUITABLE—eliminating disparities in outcomes between patients of different race, gender, and socioeconomic status.

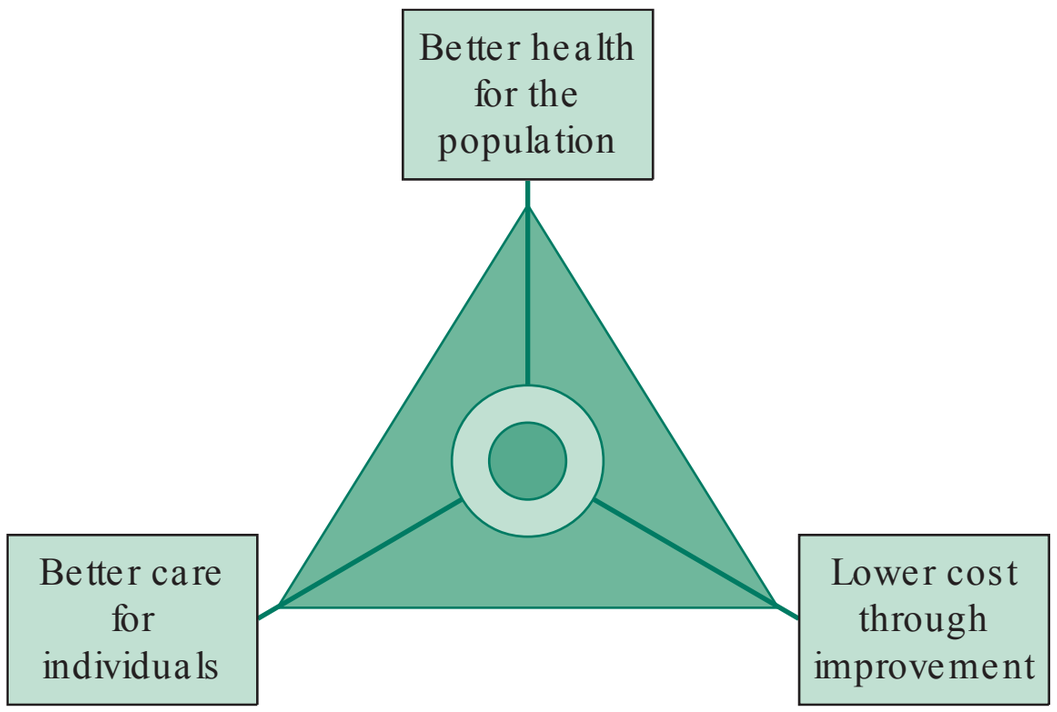
In the years since these two reports were published, the multiple stakeholders have been concerned about the effectiveness, safety, and cost of health care in the United States and, indeed throughout the world, have accelerated their individual and collective involvement in analyzing and improving care. In the United States, numerous governmental agencies, large employer groups, health insurance plans, consumers/patients, health care providers, and delivery systems are among the key constituencies calling for and working toward better and safer care at lower cost. Similar efforts are occurring internationally. Indeed, the concept of the Triple Aim has been widely accepted as an organizing framework for considering the country's overall health care improvement goals.

Committee on Quality Health Care in America, Institute of Medicine: Crossing the Quality Chasm: a New Health System for the 21st Century. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2001.

Kohn L, Corrigan JM: To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2000.

CURRENT CONTEXT

The health care industry is in a period of transformation being driven by at least four converging factors: (1) the recognition of serious gaps in the safety and quality of care we provide (and receive), (2) the unsustainable increases in the cost of care as a percent of the national economy, (3) the aging of the population, and (4) the emerging role of health care information technology as a potential tool to improve care. These are impacting health care organizations as well as individual practitioners in numerous ways that can also be traced to expectations regarding transparency and increasing accountability for results. As depicted in Figure 1–1, the Triple Aim includes the simultaneous goals of better care (outcomes/experience) for individual patients, better health for the population, and lower cost overall. An emerging concept of a "Quadruple Aim" incorporates the experience of the health care workforce as an additional important performance measure for the health care system. Practitioners and trainees (and health care workers in general) must adapt to a new set of priorities that focus attention on new goals to extend our historic focus on the doctor/patient relationship



▲**Figure 1–1.** Triple aim. (Adapted with permission from the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services.)

and autonomous physician decision making. Instead, our system's new imperatives are evidence-based medicine, advancing safety, and reducing unnecessary expense.

The impact of health care quality improvement will increasingly influence clinical practice and the delivery of pediatric care in the future. This chapter provides a summary of some of the central elements of health care quality improvement and patient safety, and offers resources for the reader to obtain additional information and understanding about these topics.

To understand the external influences driving many of these changes, there are at least six key national organizations central to the transitions occurring:

1. Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (Department of Health and Human Services)—www.cms.gov
   Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) oversees federally funded health care programs of the United States, including Medicare, Medicaid, and other related programs. CMS and the Veterans Affairs Divisions together now provide funding for more than one trillion of the total $2.9 trillion the United States spends annually on health care expense. CMS is increasingly promoting payment mechanisms that withhold payment for the costs of preventable complications of care and giving incentives to providers for achieving better outcomes for their patients, primarily in its Medicare population. The agency has also enabled and advocated for greater transparency of results and makes available on its website comparative measures of performance for its Medicare population. CMS is also increasingly utilizing its standards under which hospitals and other health care provider organizations are licensed to provide care as tools to ensure greater compliance with these regulations. It has adopted a list of hospital-acquired conditions (HACs) in 10 categories for which hospitals are no longer reimbursed. This list of HACs includes for 2015: foreign object retained after surgery, air embolism, blood incompatibility, stages III and IV pressure ulcers, falls and trauma, manifestations of poor glycemic control, catheter-associated urinary tract infection, iatrogenic pneumothorax, vascular catheter-associated infection, and surgical site infection or deep vein thrombosis/pulmonary embolism after selected procedures. It is worth noting that CMS is able to generate comparative national data only for its Medicare population because it, unlike Medicaid, is a single federal program with a single financial database. Because the Medicaid program functions as 51 state/federal partnership arrangements, patient experience and costs are captured in 51 separate state-based program databases. This segmentation has limited the development of national measures for pediatric care in both inpatient and ambulatory settings. Similarly, while the reporting of HACs is uniform across the United States for Medicare patients, in the Medicaid population it varies by individual state.

2. National Quality Forum—www.qualityforum.org/Home
   National Quality Forum (NQF) is a private, not-for-profit organization whose members include consumer advocacy groups, health care providers, accrediting bodies, employers and other purchasers of care, and research organizations. Its mission is to promote improvement in the quality of American health care primarily through defining priorities for improvement, approving consensus standards and metrics for performance reporting, and through educational efforts. The NQF, for example, has endorsed a list of 29 "serious reportable events" in health care that include events related to surgical or invasive procedures, products or device failures, patient protection, care management, environmental issues, radiologic events, and potential criminal events. This list and the CMS list of HACs are both being used by insurers to reduce payment to hospitals/providers as well as to require reporting to state agencies for public review. In 2012, NQF released a set of 44 measures for the quality of pediatric care, largely representing outpatient preventive services and management of chronic conditions, and population-based measures applicable to health plans, for example immunization rates and frequency of well-child care.

3. Leapfrog—www.leapfroggroup.org
   Leapfrog is a group of large employers who seek to use their purchasing power to influence the health care community to achieve big "leaps" in health care safety and quality. It promotes transparency and issues public reports of how well individual hospitals meet their recommended standards, including computerized physician-order entry, ICU staffing models, and rates of hospital-acquired infections. There is some

evidence that meeting these standards is associated with improved hospital quality and/or mortality outcomes.

4. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality—www.ahrq.gov
   Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) is one of 12 agencies within the US Department of Health and Human Services. AHRQ's primary mission has been to support health services research initiatives that seek to improve the quality of health care in the United States. Its activities extend well beyond the support of research and now include the development of measurements of quality and patient safety, reports on disparities in performance, measures of patient safety culture in organizations, and promotion of tools to improve care among others. AHRQ also convenes expert panels to assess national efforts to advance quality and patient safety and to recommend strategies to accelerate progress.
5. Specialty Society Boards
   Specialty Society Boards, for example, American Board of Pediatrics (ABP). The ABP, along with other specialty certification organizations, has responded to the call for greater accountability to consumers by enhancing its maintenance of certification programs (MOC). All trainees, and an increasing proportion of active practitioners, are now subject to the requirements of the MOC program, including participation in quality improvement activities in the diplomate's clinical practice. The Board's mission is focused on assuring the public that certificate holders have been trained according to their standards and also meet continuous evaluation requirements in six areas of core competency: patient care, medical knowledge, practice-based learning and improvement, interpersonal and communication skills, professionalism, and systems-based practice. These are the same competencies as required of residents in training programs as certified by the Accreditation Council on Graduate Medical Education. Providers need not only to be familiar with the principles of quality improvement and patient safety, but also must demonstrate having implemented quality improvement efforts within their practice settings.
6. The Joint Commission—www.jointcommission.org
   The Joint Commission (JC) is a private, nonprofit agency that is licensed to accredit health care provider organizations, including hospitals, nursing homes, and other health care provider entities in the United States as well as internationally. Its mission is to continuously improve the quality of care through evaluation, education, and enforcement of regulatory standards. Since 2003, JC has annually adopted a set of National Patient Safety Goals designed to help advance the safety of care provided in all health care settings. Examples include the use of two patient identifiers to reduce the risk of care being provided to an unintended patient; the use of time-outs and a universal protocol to improve surgical safety and reduce the risk of wrong site procedures; adherence to hand hygiene recommendations to reduce the risk of spreading hospital-acquired infections, to name just a few. These goals often become regulatory standards with time and widespread adoption. Failure to meet these standards can result in actions against the licensure of the health care provider, or more commonly, requires corrective action plans, measurement to demonstrate improvement, and resurveying depending upon the severity of findings. The JC publishes a monthly journal on quality and safety, available at http://store.jcrinc.com/the-joint-commission-journal-on-quality-and-patient-safety/.

Finally, advances in quality and safety will be impacted by the provisions of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (ARRA) and Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA) enacted by the US government in 2010. This federal health care legislation seeks to provide near-universal access to health care through discounted health care exchanges that supplement the existing, largely employer-based system. It is likely that changes in payment mechanisms for health care will continue irrespective of ARRA/PPACA, and current and future providers' practices will be economically, structurally, and functionally impacted by these emerging trends. Furthermore, changes in the funding and structure of the US health care system may ultimately also result in changes in other countries. Many countries have single-payer systems for providing health care to their citizens and often are leaders in defining new strategies for health care improvement.

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality: www.ahrq.gov. Accessed September 7, 2015.

American Board of Pediatrics. https://www.abp.org. Accessed December 25, 2012.

Berwick D, Nolan T, Whittington J: The triple aim: care, health, and cost. Health Aff (Millwood) 2008:27(3);759–769. doi: 10.1377/hlthaff.27.3.759 [PMID: 18474969].

Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services: Triple Aim.

Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services: www.cms.gov. Accessed

CMS list of Hospital-Acquired Conditions. http://www.cms.gov/Medicare/Medicare-Fee-for-Service-Payment/HospitalAcqCond/Hospital-Acquired_Conditions.html. Accessed December 30, 2014.

Connors E, Gostin L: Health care reform—a historic moment in US social policy. JAMA 2010; 303(24):2521–2522. doi: 10.1001/jama.2010.856 [PMID: 20571019].

Hawkins RE, Weiss KB: Commentary: building the evidence base in support of the American Board of Medical Specialties maintenance of certification program. Acad Med 2011;86(1):6–7. doi: 10.1097/ACM. 0b013e318201801b [PMID: 21191200].

http://www.cms.gov/Research-Statistics-Data-and-Systems/Statistics-Trends-and-Reports/NationalHealthExpendData/downloads/highlights.pdf. (Reference on federal healthcare spending). Accessed December 30, 2014.
http://www.nejm.org/doi/full/10.1056/NEJMp0804658. Accessed December 30, 2014.
http://www.qualityforum.org/Publications/2012/01/Child_Health_Quality_Measures_2010_Final_Report.aspx. (Reference on 44 NQF pediatric measures). Accessed December 30, 2014.
http://www.qualityforum.org/Topics/SREs/List_of_SREs.aspx. (NQF 29 serious reported events list). Accessed December 30, 2014.
Jha A, Oray J, Ridgway A, Zheng J, Eptein A: Does the Leapfrog program help identify high-quality hospitals? Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf 2008;34(6):318–325 [PMID: 18595377].
Leapfrog: www.leapfroggroup.org. Accessed
Miller T, Leatherman S: The National Quality Forum: a "me-too" or a breakthrough in quality measurement and reporting? Health Aff (Millwood) 1999;18(6):233–237 [PMID: 10650707].
Rosenthal M: Beyond pay for performance—emerging models of provider-payment reform. New Engl J Med 2008;359:1197–1200 [PMID: 18799554].
Shekelle P et al: Advancing the science of patient safety. Ann Intern Med 2011;154(10):693–696 [PMID: 21576538].
Straube B, Blum JD: The policy on paying for treating hospital-acquired conditions: CMS officials respond. Health Aff (Millwood) 2009;28(5):1494–1497 [PMID: 19738268].
The Joint Commission. www.jointcommission.org, http://store.jcrinc.com/the-joint-commission-journal-on-quality-and-patient-safety/. Accessed

STRATEGIES & MODELS FOR QUALITY IMPROVEMENT (QI)

While there are many approaches to improving the quality of care in health care settings, the following represent three common tools for conducting clinical improvement work. The Model for Improvement (MFI) is primarily emphasized because of its ease of adoption, and because it is the foundation for most improvement efforts included in the Maintenance of Certification program of the American Board of Pediatrics. Briefer summaries of Lean and Six-Sigma methods are also included, with listings of resources where the reader can find additional information.

"Model for Improvement"

Widely taught and promoted by the Boston-based educational and advocacy organization the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI), the Model for Improvement (MFI) is grounded in three simple questions that guide the work of the improvement leader and team. The model's framework includes an Aim statement, a measurement strategy, and then the use of "rapid cycle" changes to achieve the aim. The IHI website, www.ihi.org, has an extensive resource library, and hosts an "Open School" that includes a QI/Patient safety modular curriculum for health professional students and their faculty at www.ihi.org/openschool.

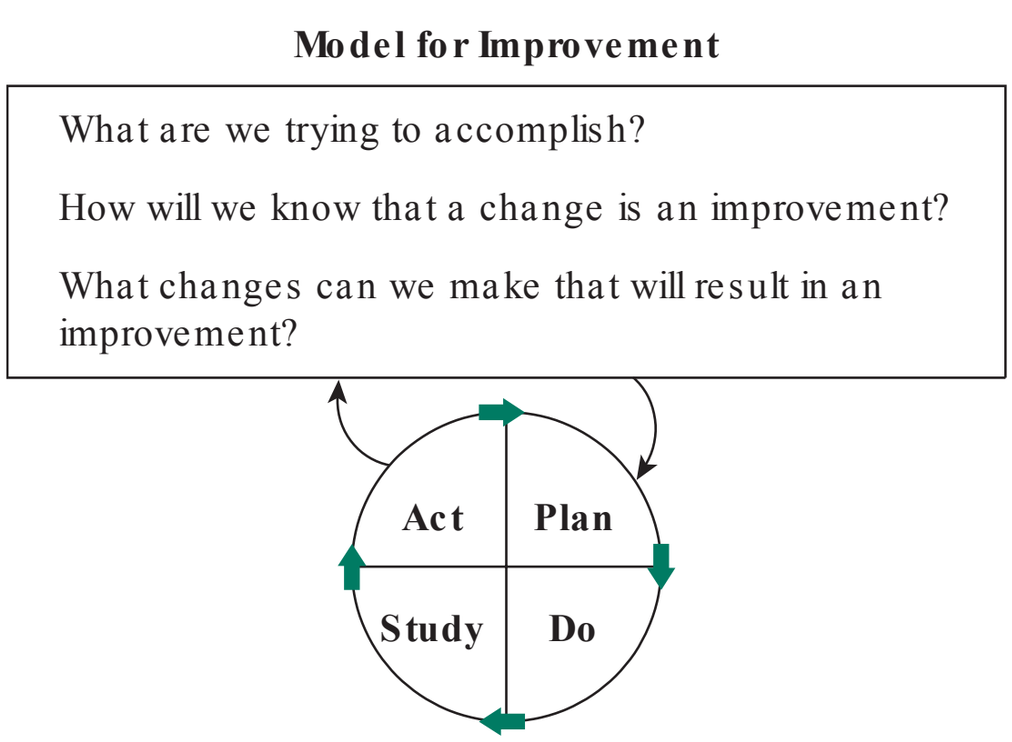
AIM STATEMENT

The Aim statement answers the question, "What do we want to accomplish?" The measure question is "How will we know that a change is an improvement?" and the change component is focused on "What changes can we make that will result in improvement?" This model is represented in Figure 1–2.

Aim statements are a written description of what the team's improvement goal is, and also include information on who comprises the patient population and a time frame within which the improvement will be achieved. They identify a "stretch" but achievable improvement target goal, and, often, some general statement regarding how the improvement will be achieved. Aim statements are sometimes characterized using the mnemonic SMAART: Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Actionable, Relevant, and Timely. Aim statements should be unambiguous and understandable to the stakeholders, and are most likely to be achieved if they are aligned with the strategic goals of the team or organization.

For example, the following statement meets the criteria for a SMAART aim statement, "We will reduce the frequency of emergency department visits and hospitalizations for patients with asthma seen at E Street Pediatrics by 25% by December 31, 2015," whereas this next statement does not, "We will improve the care for patients with asthma by appropriately prescribing indicated medications and better educating families in their use."

The first example provides a specific measurable goal, a time frame, and clarity with respect to who the patients are. A 25% reduction in ED/inpatient asthma visits will require a



▲**Figure 1–2.** Model for Improvement. (Adapted, with permission, from Langley G, Moen R, Nolan K, Nolan T, Norman C, Provost L: The Improvement Guide: A Model for Improvement. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2009:24.)

Table 1–1. Examples of types of measures used in an asthma QI initiative.

Outcome Measures	Process Measures	Balancing Measures
Percent of children with asthma in the practice seen in the ED or hospitalized for asthma in the past 6 months	Proportion of children with an asthma severity assessment in their medical record in the past year	Average difference in the time between the last office patient's scheduled appointment time and the actual office close time
Percent of children with persistent asthma in the practice with fewer than 5 missed school days due to asthma in the past year	Percent of children with persistent asthma, of any severity, prescribed a controller medication at their most recent visit	Staff satisfaction with their job
	Percent of children prescribed a controller medication who report taking their medicine	
	Percent of children in a practice asthma registry provided with a complete asthma action plan in the past 12 months	

change in the system for asthma care delivery for the entire population of children with asthma; that extent of level of improvement is a stretch, but it is much more achievable than a goal would be if it was set to "eliminate" such encounters. The second example is unclear in terms of the measure for improvement, the time frame for the goal to be met, and even the population in question. The statement provides some sense of processes that could be utilized to improve asthma care but is missing needed specificity.

MEASuRES

Specific measures provide a means to assess whether or not the improvement effort is on track. Three types of measures are useful. Outcome measures answer questions concerning the health care impact for the patients, such as how has their health status changed? Process measures are related to the health care delivery system itself. They answer questions about how the system is performing. Balancing measures seek to identify potential unintended consequences that are related to the improvement effort being undertaken. Examples are helpful to contextualize these conceptual definitions.

Table 1–1 reflects some examples of types of measures that might be employed in an asthma QI initiative.

One might argue that adherence to a treatment plan (third process measure) is an outcome of the work of the practice/practitioner prescribing the medication. It is more consistent, however, to consider the translation of the treatment plan into action as a part of the process of care, and that the health status or outcome measure will be improved by fully improving the measured processes of care, including patient adherence to the treatment plan.

Measures are essential elements of any improvement work. It is a good idea to choose a manageable (4–6) number of measures, all of which can be obtained with limited or no extra effort, and with a mix of outcome, process, and balancing measures. Ideally, the best process measures are those that are directly linked to the outcome goal. The hypothesis in this specific example would be that assessing asthma severity and appropriately using controller medications and action plans would all contribute to reducing the number or frequency of missed school days and the need for ED/hospital utilization.

It is important to note that measurement in the setting of an improvement project is different from measurement in a research study. Improvement projects require "just enough" data to guide the team's continuing efforts. Often, the result seen in a sequence of 10 patients is enough to tell you whether a particular system is functioning consistently or not. For example, considering the first process measure in Table 1–1, if in the last 10 patients seen with asthma, only two had their asthma severity documented, how many more charts need be checked to conclude that the system is not functioning as intended and that changes are needed? Other measures may require larger sample sizes, especially when assessing the impact of care changes on a population of patients with a particular condition. See Randolph's excellent summary for a fuller description of measurement for improvement.

CHANGES & IDEAS

Once the team's aim is established and the measures are selected, the third component of the MFI draws from industrial engineering and focuses on what changes in the system must be made that will result in the targeted improvements. To answer the question "What changes will result in improvement?" the improvement team should incorporate

"Plan-Do-Study (or check)-Act" cycles, typically referred to as PDSA cycles. The cycles include the following steps.

Plan: What will we do that will likely improve the process measures linked to the outcome target goal? Who will do it? Where? When? How? How will the data be collected?

Do: Implementation of the planned change(s). TIP! It is good to make the change cycles as small as possible, for example, trying a new process on the next five patients being seen by one provider as opposed to wide scale implementation of a new chart documentation form across an entire clinic.

Study (or check): Once the small test of change is tried, its results are assessed. How many times did the process work as planned for the five patients included in the cycle?

Act: Based upon the results of the study of the cycle, recommendations are made as to what the next steps ought to be to achieve the goal. At this point, the cycle then resumes and planning begins for the next cycle.

Over the course of an improvement effort, multiple tests of change might be implemented for any or all of the process measures felt to be likely to impact the outcome measures relevant to the project.

The MFI has been used by improvement teams across numerous health care settings around the world. Further information about the model and examples can be found at www.ihi.org/openschool, or in The Improvement Guide (Langley et al).

The IHI Open School modules are an excellent online resource for clinicians interested in learning more about the fundamentals of quality improvement and patient safety. These educational lessons are free of charge to health professional students, residents, and university faculty members, and for a modest subscription fee to other clinicians. They are also free to health care practitioners in the developing world. An excellent original resource on implementing this model in clinical practice is in Berwick's summary article from 1998.

Berwick D: The science of improvement. JAMA 2008:299(10): 1182–1184 [PMID: 18334694].

Berwick DM. Developing and testing changes in delivery of care. Ann Intern Med 1998;128:651–656 [PMID: 9537939]. http://www.acponline.org. Accessed

Langley G, Moen R, Nolan K, Nolan T, Norman C, Provost L: The Improvement Guide: AIM Model for Improvement. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2009:24.

Randolph G, Esporas M, Provost L, Massie S, Bundy D: Model for Improvement—Part Two: Measurement and feedback for quality improvement efforts. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009;56(4):779–798 [PMID: 19660627].

"lEAn"

Also grounded in industrial engineering, an increasingly popular method for driving improvement efforts in health care settings is "Lean" or "Lean processing." Early thinking about Lean processes is credited to the Toyota Manufacturing Company in Japan. The crossover to health care from manufacturing is a relatively recent phenomenon, but numerous hospitals and health care delivery settings, including individual clinics, have benefited from the application of these principles to their clinical operations. Lean improvement methods focus on reducing errors and variability in repetitive steps that are part of any process. In health care, examples of repeated processes would include how patients are registered and their information obtained; how medications are ordered, compounded, distributed, and administered; how consent forms are accurately completed in a timely manner prior to surgical procedures; and how antibiotics are reliably and efficiently delivered prior to surgical procedures.

Lean is a philosophy of continuous improvement. It is grounded in recognizing that the way we do things today is merely "current state." With time, effort, focus, and long-term thinking, we can create a "future state" that is better than the status quo. It does so by focusing on identifying the value of all steps in any process and eliminating those steps that do not contribute to the value sought by the customer, or in health care, the patient/family. In doing so, improvements in outcomes, including cost and productivity, and in clinical measures of effectiveness can be realized. See Young for an early critical assessment of the incorporation of Lean into health care settings.

There are four categories that describe the essential elements of Toyota's adoption of "Lean" as a management strategy. These four categories are: (1) philosophy (emphasize long-term thinking over short-term gain); (2) process (eliminate waste through very defined approaches including an emphasis on process flow and the use of pull systems to reduce overproduction, for example); (3) people/partners (respect, challenge, and grow staff); and (4) problem solving (create a culture of continuous learning and improvement).

There are a number of hospitals that have fully integrated Lean management as a primary basis for its organizational approach to improvement. Several were featured in a "White Paper" published by the IHI in 2005.

Going Lean in Health Care, Innovation Series White Paper. Institute for Healthcare Improvement; 2005. http://www.ihi.org/knowledge/Pages/IHIWhitePapers/GoingLeaninHealthCare.aspx. Accessed

Liker: The Toyota Way. Madison, WI: McGraw-Hill; 2004.

Young TP, McClean SI: A critical look at Lean Thinking in healthcare. BMJ Qual Saf Health Care 2008;17:382–386 [PMID: 18842980].

"SiX SigMA"

A third quality-improvement methodology also arose in the manufacturing industry. Motorola is generally credited with promoting Six Sigma as a management strategy designed to reduce the variability in its processes and thereby reducing the number of defects in its outputs. Organizations adopting Six Sigma as an improvement strategy utilize measurement-based strategies that focus on process improvement and variation reduction to eliminate defects in their work and to reduce cycle times, thereby increasing profitability and enhancing customer satisfaction. Sigma is the statistical measure of standard deviation and Motorola adopted Six Sigma as a performance indicator, promoting consistency of processes in order to have fewer than 3.4 defects per million opportunities. This performance goal has since become the common descriptor for this approach to improvement both in manufacturing and in service industries, including health care. Similar to Lean, the translation of business manufacturing strategies into health care has various challenges, but there are many processes that repeatedly occur in health care that can be routinized and made more consistent. Many health care processes fail far more frequently than 3.4 times per million opportunities. Consider pharmacy dispensing errors, medication ordering or administration errors, and patient-scheduling errors, just to name a few. These are a few of many examples of processes that could potentially benefit from the kind of rigorous analysis that is integral to the Six-Sigma approach.

In a typical Six-Sigma structured improvement project, there are five phases generally referred to as DMAIC: (1) Define (what is the problem, what is the goal?), (2) Measure (quantify the problem and improvement opportunity), (3) Analyze (use of observations and data to identify causes), (4) Improve (implementation of solutions based on data analysis), and finally, (5) Control (sustainable change).

One of the central aspects of Six Sigma as an improvement strategy is its defined focus on understanding the reasons for defects in any process. By understanding these drivers, it is then possible to revise the approach to either the manufacturing process or the service functions in order to reduce these errors and failures.

"Lean-Six Sigma" is a newer entity that draws from both methodologies in order to simplify the improvement work where possible, but retain the rigorous statistical method that is a hallmark of Six-Sigma projects. Lean focuses on where time is lost in any process and can identify opportunities to eliminate steps or reduce time. Six Sigma aims to reduce or eliminate defects in the process, thereby resulting in a higher-quality product through a more efficient and lower cost process.

Regardless of the method used, improvement happens because an organization, team, or individual sets a goal to improve a current process through systematic analysis of the way things are done now, and then implementing planned changes to see how they impact the outputs or outcomes.

For additional information on Lean and Six Sigma, see www.isixsigma.com or www.asq.org/sixsigma.

Pande P, Holpp L: What Is Six Sigma? New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2002.

PRINCIPLES OF PATIENT SAFETY (INCIDENT REPORTING, JUST CULTURE, DISCLOSURE, FMEA, RCA, RELIABILITY, CHECKLISTS)

Safe patient care avoids preventable harm; it is care that does not cause harm as it seeks to cure. The list of adverse events that are considered to be preventable is evolving. As mentioned earlier, both CMS and NQF have endorsed lists of various complications of care as being "never events" or "serious reportable events" for which providers are often now not reimbursed, and which are increasingly reportable to the public through various state transparency programs.

A national network of Children's Hospitals has been active since 2012, collaborating on a shared aim of eliminating serious harm in their now more than 80 organizations. Initially funded as a Hospital Engagement Network by the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Innovation program, Children's Hospitals Solutions for Patient Safety merges approaches to achieving reliability in evidence-based prevention practices ("bundles") with safety practices at both staff and leadership levels to reducing serious safety events (SSEs) and HACs in general. Numerous hospitals have demonstrated dramatic reductions in the occurrence rates of both HACs and SSEs with the following interventions: (1) implementation of structured processes to improve consistency of prevention processes, (2) education and reinforcement of principles of patient safety culture designed to improve communication and reduce error, and (3) effective, structured cause analyses after SSEs.

Irrespective of one's views about whether various complications are entirely preventable at the current state of science or not, these approaches reflect a changing paradigm that is impacting many aspects of health care delivery. Transparency of results is increasingly expected. Perspectives and data on how these kinds of efforts are impacting actual improvement in outcomes are mixed.

Given these trends, health care providers need to have robust systems for measuring and improving the safety of care provided to patients. The methods for improving quality reviewed above are frequently used to reduce harm, just as they can be used to improve effectiveness or efficiency. For example, hospitals attempting to reduce infections have successfully used these types of process improvement approaches to improve antibiotic use prior to surgical procedures or to improve hand hygiene practices.

Common patient safety tools are summarized here.

Incident-reporting systems: Efforts to advance safety in any organization require a clear understanding of the kinds of harm occurring within that organization, as well as the kinds of "near-misses" that are occurring. These reporting systems can range from a simple paper reporting form to a "telephone hot-line" to a computerized database that is available to staff (and potentially patients) within the organization. Events are traditionally graded according to the severity of harm that resulted from the incident. One example is the NCC MERP Index, which grades events from A (potential to cause harm) to I (resulting in patient death). Errors that are recognized represent only a fraction of the actual errors and near-misses that are present in the system. Incident-reporting systems depend upon people recognizing the error or near-miss, being comfortable reporting it, knowing how and when to report, and then actually doing so. It is no surprise therefore that estimates for how frequently incidents that could or should be reported into incident-reporting systems range from 1.5% to 30% depending on the type of adverse or near-miss event. "Trigger tools" (either manual chart reviews for indications of adverse events, or automated reports from electronic medical records) are increasingly being used to increase the recognition of episodes of harm in health care settings.

"Just culture": The effectiveness of incident-reporting systems is highly dependent upon the culture of the organization within which the reporting is occurring. Aviation industry safety-reporting systems are often highlighted for their successes over the past few decades in promoting reporting of aviation events that might have led to accidents. The Aviation Safety Reporting System (ASRS) prioritizes confidentiality in order to encourage reporting and protects reporters from punishment, with certain limitations when they report incidents, even if related to non-adherence to aviation regulations. Although the system is voluntary, more than 880,000 reports have been submitted and used by the Federal Aviation Administration to improve air travel safety.

In health care, the variable recognition of adverse events as well as any fear about reprisal for reporting events both work to reduce the consistent reporting of events. The concept of "just culture" has been promoted as a strategy to increase the comfort of staff members to report the occurrence of errors or near-misses, even if they may have done something incorrectly. See the work of David Marx and the "Just Culture Community" for more information on how to evaluate error so as to support reporting and safer practices in organizations. A great deal more information about "just culture" principles is available at http://www.justculture.org.

Failure modes and effects analyses (FMEA): An FMEA is a systematic methodology used to proactively identify ways in which any process might fail, and then to prioritize among strategies for reducing the risk or impact of identified potential failures. In conducting an FMEA, which all hospitals are required to do annually, a team will carefully describe and analyze each step in a particular process, consider what and how anything might go wrong, why it would happen and what the impact would be of such failures. Like Lean and Six Sigma, the FMEA has been adopted into health care from its origins in military and industrial settings. The FMEA is an effective method for identifying strategies to reduce risks in health care settings, thereby protecting patients if interventions are put into place as a result of the analysis. A tool to use in conducting an FMEA is available from the IHI (http://www.ihi.org/knowledge/Pages/Tools/FailureModesandEffectsAnalysisTool.aspx). Their site includes additional information and resources about the FMEA process.

Root-cause analyses (RCA) (postevent reviews): As contrasted with the proactive FMEA process, an RCA is a retrospective analysis of an adverse occurrence (or near-miss) that has already happened. It too is a systematic process that in this case allows a team to reach an understanding of why certain things occurred, what systems factors and human factors contributed to the occurrence, and what defects in the system might be changed in order to reduce the likelihood of recurrence. Key to an effective RCA process, and similar to the principles discussed above related to "just culture," RCAs are designed not to ask who was at fault, but rather what system reasons contributed to the event. "Why," not "who," is the essential question to be asked. The answer to the question "why did this occur" almost invariably results in a combination of factors, often illustrated by a series of pieces of Swiss cheese where the holes all line up. Taken from the writings of James Reason, the "Swiss Cheese Model" illustrates the many possible system failures that can contribute to an error, and contributes to identifying potential system changes that reduce the risk of error recurrence. Strategies for approaching retrospective RCA are available at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/pmc1117770.

Communication and team training: Because failures of communication are the most common identified factors in the analysis of reported serious health care events, many health care organizations have incorporated tools from other industries, particularly aviation, in order to enhance patient safety. As a result of the knowledge gained through analysis of tragic aviation accidents, the airline industry implemented methods like crew resource management training to ensure that communication among cockpit team members is effective and clear, thereby reducing risk of air accidents. Similar methods have been used to train teams in operating rooms, delivery rooms, and other team-based settings. Most of these curricula include a few common elements: introductions to be sure all team members know one another's name, promoting the likelihood of speaking up; leader clarity with team members about the expectation that all will speak up if anyone has a concern; and structured language and other tools like verbal read-back of critical information to ensure clarity in interpersonal or interdisciplinary communications.

Such training also seeks to flatten the hierarchy, making it more likely that potential risks or problems will be identified and effectively addressed. Common tools used in promoting effective team communication include structured language like SBAR (Situation, Background, Assessment, and Recommendation), taken from the navy, to promote clarity of communication.

A number of resources exist in the public domain to support better teamwork and communication. One good place to start is the TeamSTEPPS program from the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. It can be found at http://teamstepps.ahrq.gov/.

Ashley L, Armitage G, Neary M, Hoolingsworth G: A practical guide to failure mode and effects analysis in health care: making the most of the team and its meetings. Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf 2010;36(8):351–358 [PMID: 20860241].

Children's Hospitals Solutions for Patient Safety: http://www.solutionsforpatientsafety.org. Accessed

http://www.ihi.org/knowledge/Pages/Tools/FailureModesandEffectsAnalysisTool.aspx. Accessed

http://www.mers-tm.org/support/Marx_Primer.pdf: 2001. Accessed

http://www.qualityforum.org/News_And_Resources/Press_Releases/2011/NQF_Releases_Updated_Serious_Reportable_Events.aspx. (Reference on 29 serious reportable events NQF). Accessed September 21, 2011.

Incident Reporting Systems: http://www.nccmerp.org/. Accessed

Marx D: A Primer for Health Care Executives: Patient Safety and the "Just Culture." New York, NY: Columbia University; 2011.

Mills R: Collaborating With Industry to Ensure Regulatory Oversight: The Use of Voluntary Safety Reporting Programs by the Federal Aviation Administration [dissertation]. Kent State University, College of Arts and Sciences, 2011. http://etd.ohiolink.edu/view.cgi?acc_num=kent1302102713. Accessed December 25, 2012.

Reason J: Human error: models and management. BMJ 2000; 320:768. doi: 10.1136/bmj.320.7237.768:2000 [PMID: 10720363].

Shekelle P et al: Advancing the science of patient safety. Ann Intern Med 2011;154(10):693–696 [PMID: 21576538].

Stockwell DC et al: Development of an electronic pediatric all-cause harm measurement tool using a modified Delphi method. J Patient Saf 2014 Aug 26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25162206. Accessed

2

The Newborn Infant

Danielle Smith, MD
Theresa R. Grover, MD

The newborn period is defined as the first 28 days of life. In practice, however, sick or very immature infants may require neonatal care for many months. There are three levels of newborn care. Level 1 refers to basic care of well newborns, neonatal resuscitation, and stabilization prior to transport. Level 2 refers to specialty neonatal care of premature infants greater than 1500 g or more than 32 weeks' gestation. Level 3 is subspecialty care of higher complexity ranging from 3A to 3C based on newborn size and gestational age. Level 4 includes availability of general surgery, cardiac surgery, and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO). Level 4 care is often part of a perinatal center offering critical care and transport to the high-risk mother and fetus as well as the newborn infant.

THE NEONATAL HISTORY

The newborn medical history has three key components:

1. Maternal and paternal medical and genetic history
2. Maternal past obstetric history
3. Current antepartum and intrapartum obstetric history

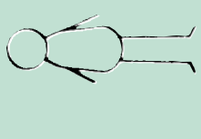
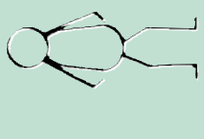
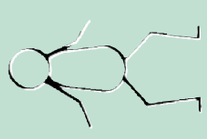
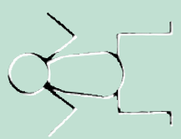
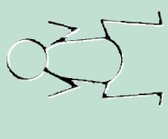
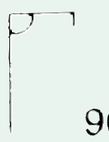
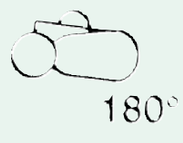
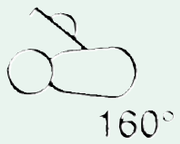
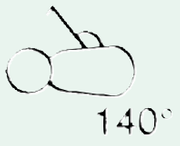
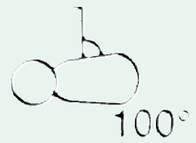
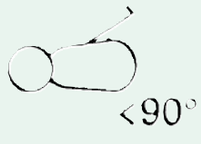
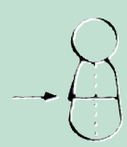
The mother's medical history includes chronic medical conditions, medications taken during pregnancy, unusual dietary habits, smoking history, substance abuse history, occupational exposure to chemicals or infections of potential risk to the fetus, and any social history that might increase the risk for parenting problems and child abuse. Family illnesses and a history of congenital anomalies with genetic implications should be sought. The past obstetric history includes maternal age, gravidity, parity, blood type, and pregnancy outcomes. The current obstetric history includes the results of procedures during the current pregnancy such as ultrasound, amniocentesis, screening tests (rubella antibody, hepatitis B surface antigen, serum quadruple screen for genetic disorders, HIV [human immunodeficiency virus]), and antepartum tests of fetal well-being (eg, biophysical profiles, nonstress tests, or Doppler assessment of fetal blood flow patterns). Pregnancy-related maternal complications such as urinary tract infection, pregnancy-induced hypertension, eclampsia, gestational diabetes, vaginal bleeding, and preterm labor should be documented. Significant peripartum events include duration of ruptured membranes, maternal fever, fetal distress, meconium-stained amniotic fluid, type of delivery (vaginal or cesarean section), anesthesia and analgesia used, reason for operative or forceps delivery, infant status at birth, resuscitative measures, and Apgar scores.

ASSESSMENT OF GROWTH & GESTATIONAL AGE

It is important to know the infant's gestational age because normal behavior and possible medical problems can be predicted on this basis. The date of the last menstrual period is the best indicator of gestational age with early fetal ultrasound providing supporting information. Postnatal physical characteristics and neurologic development are also clues to gestational age. Table 2–1 lists the physical and neurologic criteria of maturity used to estimate gestational age by the Ballard method. Adding the scores assigned to each neonatal physical and neuromuscular sign yields a score corresponding to gestational age.

If the physical examination indicates a gestational age within 2 weeks of that predicted by the obstetric dates, the gestational age is as assigned by the obstetric date. Birth weight and gestational age are plotted on standard grids (Figure 2–1) to determine whether the birth weight is appropriate for gestational age (AGA), small for gestational age (SGA, also known as intrauterine growth restriction [IUGR]), or large for gestational age (LGA). Birth weight for gestational age in normal neonates varies with gender, race, maternal nutrition, access to obstetric care, and

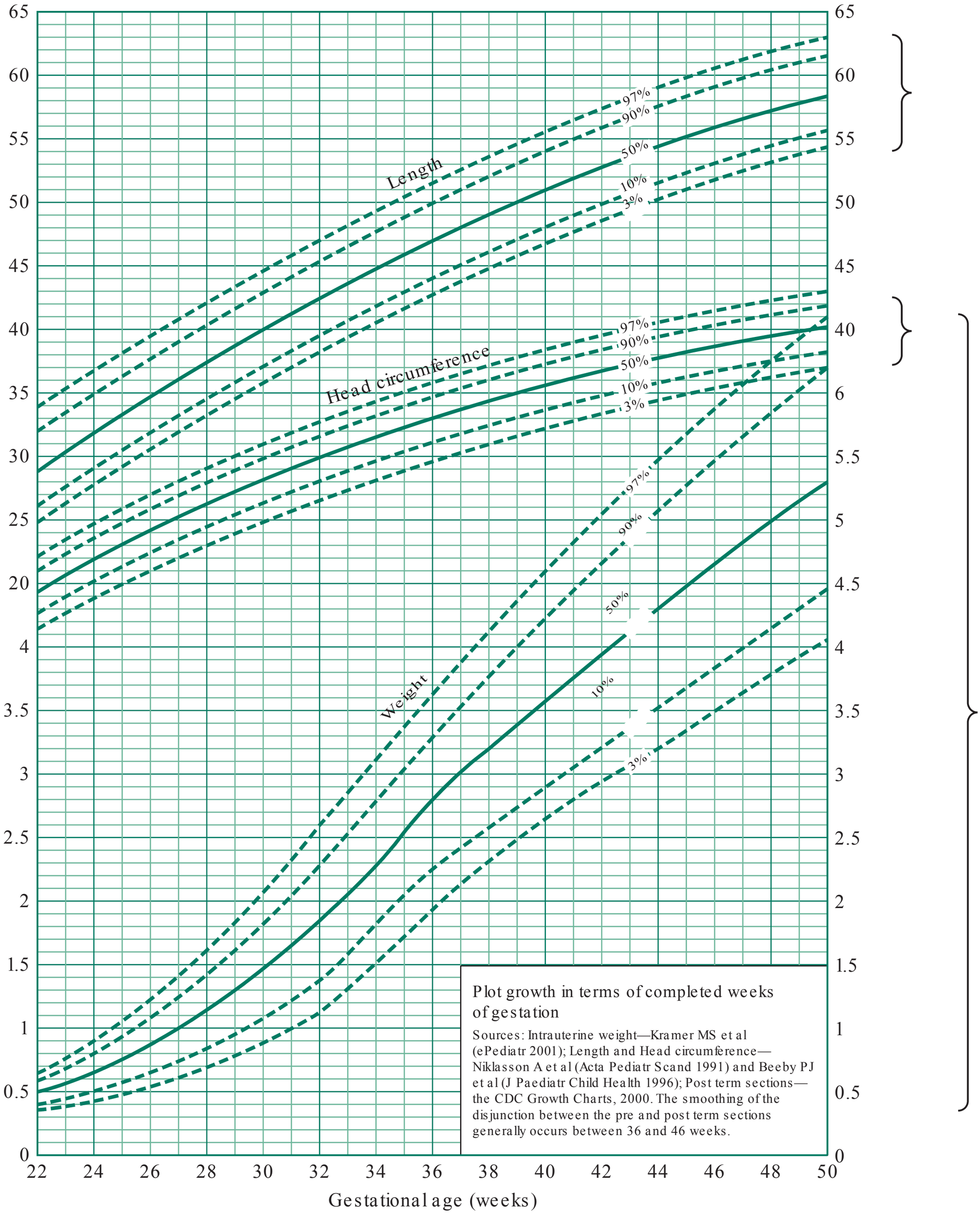
Table 2–1. New Ballard score for assessment of fetal maturation of newly born infants.[a]

Neuromuscular Maturity								
Neuromuscular Maturity Sign	Score							Record Score Here
	–1	0	1	2	3	4	5	
Posture								
Square window (wrist)								
Arm recoil								
Popliteal angle								
Scarf sign								
Heel to ear								
Total Neuromuscular Maturity Score								

Physical Maturity								
Physical Maturity Sign	Score							Record Score Here
	–1	0	1	2	3	4	5	
Skin	Sticky, friable, transparent	Gelatinous, red, translucent	Smooth, pink, visible veins	Superficial peeling and/or rash; few veins	Cracking, pale areas; rare veins	Parchment, deep cracking; no vessels	Leathery, cracked, wrinkled	
Lanugo	None	Sparse	Abundant	Thinning	Bald areas	Mostly bald		
Plantar surface	Heel toe 40–50 mm: –1 < 40 mm: –2	> 50 mm: no crease	Faint red marks	Anterior transverse crease only	Creases anterior 2/3	Creases over entire sole		
Breast	Imperceptible	Barely perceptible	Flat areola; no bud	Stippled areola; 1- to 2-mm bud	Raised areola; 3- to 4-mm bud	Full areola; 5- to 10-mm bud		
Eye/ear	Lids fused loosely: –1 tightly: –2	Lids open; pinna flat; stays folded	Slightly curved pinna; soft; slow recoil	Well-curved pinna; soft but ready recoil	Formed and firm instant recoil	Thick cartilage; ear stiff		
Genitals (male)	Scrotum flat, smooth	Scrotum empty; faint rugae	Testes in upper canal; rare rugae	Testes descending; few rugae	Testes down; good rugae	Testes pendulous; deep rugae		
Genitals (female)	Clitoris prominent and labia flat	Prominent clitoris and small labia minora	Prominent clitoris and enlarging minora	Majora and minora equally prominent	Majora large; minora small	Majora cover clitoris and minora		
Total Physical Maturity Score								

Maturity Rating	Score												
	–10	–5	0	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Weeks	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38	40	42	44

[a]See text for a description of the clinical gestational age examination. (Reproduced, with permission, from Ballard JL et al: New Ballard Score, expanded to include extremely premature infants. J Pediatr 1991;119:417.)



▲**Figure 2–1.** Fetal-infant growth chart for weight, length, and head circumference. (Reproduced with permission from Fenton TR: A new growth chart for preterm babies: Babson and Benda's chart updated with recent data and a new format. BMC Pediatr 2003 Dec 16;3:13.)

environmental factors such as altitude, smoking, and drug and alcohol use. Whenever possible, standards for newborn weight and gestational age based on local or regional data should be used. Birth weight related to gestational age is a screening tool that should be supplemented by clinical data when entertaining a diagnosis of IUGR or excessive fetal growth. These data include the infant's physical examination and other factors such as parental size and the birth weight–gestational age of siblings.

An important distinction, particularly in SGA infants, is whether a growth disorder is symmetrical (weight, length, and occipitofrontal circumference [OFC] all ≤ 10%) or asymmetrical (only weight ≤ 10%). Asymmetrical growth restriction implies a problem late in pregnancy, such as pregnancy-induced hypertension or placental insufficiency. Symmetrical growth restriction implies an event of early pregnancy: chromosomal abnormality, drug or alcohol use, or congenital viral infections. In general, the outlook for normal growth and development is better in asymmetrically growth-restricted infants whose intrauterine brain growth has been spared.

The fact that SGA infants have fewer problems (such as respiratory distress syndrome) than AGA infants of the same birth weight, but a lower gestational age has led to the misconception that SGA infants have accelerated maturation. SGA infants, when compared with AGA infants of the same gestational age, actually have increased morbidity and mortality rates.

Knowledge of birth weight in relation to gestational age allows anticipation of some neonatal problems. LGA infants are at risk for birth trauma. LGA infants of diabetic mothers are also at risk for hypoglycemia, polycythemia, congenital anomalies, cardiomyopathy, hyperbilirubinemia, and hypocalcemia. SGA infants are at risk for fetal distress during labor and delivery, polycythemia, hypoglycemia, and hypocalcemia.

Leviton A et al: The wealth of information conveyed by gestational age. J Pediatr 2005;146:123 [PMID: 15644836].

Rosenberg A: The IUGR newborn. Semin Perinatol 2008;32:219 [PMID: 18482625].

EXAMINATION AT bIRTH

The extent of the newborn physical examination depends on the condition of the infant and the setting. Examination in the delivery room consists largely of observation plus auscultation of the chest and inspection for congenital anomalies and birth trauma. Major congenital anomalies occur in 1.5% of live births and account for 20%–25% of perinatal and neonatal deaths. Because infants are physically stressed during parturition, the delivery room examination should not be extensive. The Apgar score (Table 2–2) should be recorded at 1 and 5 minutes of age. In severely depressed infants, scores can be recorded out to 20 minutes. Although the 1- and 5-minute Apgar scores have almost no predictive value for long-term outcome, serial scores provide a useful description of the severity of perinatal depression and the response to resuscitative efforts.

Skin color is an indicator of cardiac output because of the normal high blood flow to the skin. Stress that triggers a catecholamine response redirects cardiac output away from the skin to preserve oxygen delivery to more critical organs. Cyanosis and pallor are thus two useful signs suggestive of inadequate cardiac output.

Skeletal examination at delivery serves to detect obvious congenital anomalies and to identify birth trauma, particularly in LGA infants or those born after a protracted second stage of labor where a fractured clavicle or humerus might be found.

The placenta and umbilical cord should be examined at delivery. The number of umbilical cord vessels should be determined. Normally, there are two arteries and one vein.

Table 2–2. Infant evaluation at birth—Apgar score.[a]

	Score		
	0	1	2
Heart rate	Absent	Slow (< 100)	> 100
Respiratory effort	Absent	Slow, irregular	Good, crying
Muscle tone	Limp	Some flexion	Active motion
Response to catheter in nostril[b]	No response	Grimace	Cough or sneeze
Color	Blue or pale	Body pink; extremities blue	Completely pink

[a]One minute and 5 minutes after complete birth of the infant (disregarding the cord and the placenta), the following objective signs should be observed and recorded.
[b]Tested after the oropharynx is clear.
Data from Apgar Vet al: Evaluation of the newborn infant—second report. JAMA 1958;168:1985.

In 1% of deliveries (5%–6% of twin deliveries), the cord has only one artery and one vein. This minor anomaly slightly increases the risk of associated defects. The placenta should be examined at delivery. Small placentas are always associated with small infants. The placental examination also includes identification of membranes and vessels (particularly in multiple gestations) as well as placental infarcts or clots (placental abruption) on the maternal side.

EXAMINATION IN THE NURSERY

The purpose of the newborn examination is to identify abnormalities or anomalies that might impact the infant's well-being and to evaluate for any acute illness or difficulty in the transition from intrauterine to extrauterine life. The examiner should have warm hands and a gentle approach. Start with observation, then auscultation of the chest, and then palpation of the abdomen. Examination of the eyes, ears, throat, and hips should be performed last, as these maneuvers are most disturbing to the infant. The heart rate should range from 120 to 160 beats/min and the respiratory rate from 30 to 60 breaths/min. Systolic blood pressure on day 1 ranges from 50 to 70 mm Hg and increases steadily during the first week of life. An irregularly irregular heart rate, usually caused by premature atrial contractions, is common, benign, and usually resolves in the first days of life.

Approximately 15%–20% of healthy newborns have one minor anomaly (a common variant that would not impact the infant's well-being, eg, a unilateral transverse palmar [simian] crease, or a single umbilical artery). Those with a minor anomaly have a 3% risk of an associated major anomaly. Approximately 0.8% of newborns have two minor anomalies, and 0.5% have three or more, with a risk of 10% and 20%, respectively, of also having a major malformation. Other common minor anomalies requiring no special investigation in healthy infants include preauricular pits, a shallow sacral dimple without other cutaneous abnormality within 2.5 cm of the anus, and three or fewer café au lait spots in a white infant or five or fewer in an African-American infant.

Skin

Observe for bruising, petechiae (common over the presenting part), meconium staining, and jaundice. Visible jaundice in the first 24 hours is never normal, and generally indicates either a hemolytic process, or a congenital hepatitis, either of which requires further evaluation. Peripheral cyanosis is commonly present when the extremities are cool or the infant is polycythemic. Generalized cyanosis merits immediate evaluation. Pallor may be caused by acute or chronic blood loss or by acidosis. In dark-skinned infants, pallor and cyanosis should be assessed in the lips, mouth, and nail beds. Plethora suggests polycythemia. Note the presence of vernix caseosa (a whitish, greasy material covering the body that decreases as term approaches) and lanugo (the fine hair covering the preterm infant's skin). Dry skin with cracking and peeling of the superficial layers is common in postterm infants. Edema may be generalized (hydrops) or localized (eg, on the dorsum of the feet in Turner syndrome). Check for birthmarks such as capillary hemangiomas (lower occiput, eyelids, and forehead) and mongolian spots (bluish-black pigmentation over the back and buttocks). There are many benign skin eruptions such as milia, miliaria, erythema toxicum, and pustular melanosis that are present in the newborn period. See Chapter 15 for a more in-depth description of these conditions.

Head

Check for cephalohematoma (a swelling over one or both parietal bones that is contained within suture lines) and caput succedaneum (edema of the scalp over the presenting part that crosses suture lines). Subgaleal hemorrhages (beneath the scalp) are uncommon but can cause extensive blood loss into this large potential space, resulting in hypovolemic shock. Skull fractures may be linear or depressed and may be associated with cephalohematoma. Check for the presence and size of the fontanelles. The anterior fontanelle varies from 1 to 4 cm in any direction; the posterior fontanelle should be less than 1 cm. A third fontanelle is a bony defect along the sagittal suture in the parietal bones and may be seen in syndromes, such as trisomy 21. Sutures should be freely mobile, but are often overriding just after birth. Craniosynostosis, a prematurely fused suture causing an abnormal cranial shape, is more easily diagnosed a few days or more after birth.

Face

Unusual facies may be associated with a specific syndrome. Bruising from birth trauma (especially with face presentation) and forceps application should be identified. Face presentation may cause soft tissue swelling around the nose and mouth and significant facial distortion. Facial nerve palsy is most obvious during crying; the unaffected side of the mouth moves normally, giving an asymmetric grimace.

Eyes

Subconjunctival hemorrhages are a frequent result of birth trauma. Less commonly, a corneal tear (presenting as a clouded cornea), or a hyphema (a layering of blood in the anterior chamber of the eye) may occur. Ophthalmologic consultation is indicated in such cases. Extraocular movements should be assessed. Occasional uncoordinated eye movements are common, but persistent irregular movements are abnormal. The iris should be inspected for abnormalities such as speckling (Brushfield spots seen in trisomy 21) and colobomas. Retinal red reflexes should be present and symmetrical. Dark spots, unilateral blunted red reflex, absent reflex, or a white reflex all require ophthalmologic evaluation.

Leukokoria can be caused by glaucoma (cloudy cornea), cataract, or tumor (retinoblastoma). Infants with suspected or known congenital viral infection should have a retinoscopic examination with pupils dilated to look for chorioretinitis.

Nose

Examine the nose for size and shape. In utero compression can cause deformities. Because infants younger than 1 month are obligate nose breathers, any nasal obstruction (eg, bilateral choanal atresia or stenosis) can cause respiratory distress. Unilateral choanal atresia can be diagnosed by occluding each naris, although patency is best checked by holding a cold metal surface (eg, a chilled scissor) under the nose, and observing the fog from both nares on the metal. Purulent nasal discharge at birth suggests congenital syphilis ("snuffles").

Ears

Malformed or malpositioned (low-set or posteriorly rotated) ears are often associated with other congenital anomalies. The tympanic membranes should be visualized. Preauricular pits and tags are common minor variants, and may be familial. Any external ear abnormality may be associated with hearing loss.

Mouth

Epithelial (Epstein) pearls are benign retention cysts along the gum margins and at the junction of the hard and soft palates. Natal teeth may be present and sometimes must be removed to prevent their aspiration. Check the integrity and shape of the palate for clefts and other abnormalities. A small mandible and retraction of the tongue with cleft palate is seen with Pierre-Robin syndrome and can present as respiratory difficulty, as the tongue occludes the airway; prone positioning can be beneficial. A prominent tongue can be seen in Trisomy 21 and Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. Excessive oral secretions suggest esophageal atresia or a swallowing disorder.

Neck

Redundant neck skin or webbing, with a low posterior hair line, is seen in Turner syndrome. Cervical sinus tracts may be seen as remnants of branchial clefts. Check for masses: mid-line (thyroglossal duct cysts), anterior to the sternocleidomastoid (branchial cleft cysts), within the sternocleidomastoid (hematoma and torticollis), and posterior to the sternocleidomastoid (cystic hygroma).

Chest & Lungs

Check for fractured clavicles (crepitus, bruising, and tenderness). Increased anteroposterior diameter (barrel chest) can be seen with aspiration syndromes. Check air entry bilaterally and the position of the mediastinum by locating the point of maximum cardiac impulse and assessment of heart tones. Decreased breath sounds with respiratory distress and a shift in the heart tones suggests pneumothorax (tension) or a space-occupying lesion (eg, diaphragmatic hernia). Pneumomediastinum causes muffled heart sounds. Expiratory grunting and decreased air entry are observed in hyaline membrane disease. Rales are not of clinical significance at this age.

Heart

Cardiac murmurs are common in the first hours and are most often benign; conversely, severe congenital heart disease in the newborn infant may be present with no murmur at all. The two most common presentations of heart disease in the newborn infant are (1) cyanosis and (2) congestive heart failure with abnormalities of pulses and perfusion. In hypoplastic left-sided heart and critical aortic stenosis, pulses are diminished at all sites. In aortic coarctation and interrupted aortic arch, pulses are diminished in the lower extremities.

Abdomen

Check for tenderness, distention, and bowel sounds. If polyhydramnios was present or excessive oral secretions are noted, pass a soft catheter into the stomach to rule out esophageal atresia. Most abdominal masses in the newborn infant are associated with kidney disorders (eg, multicystic or dysplastic, and hydronephrosis). When the abdomen is relaxed, normal kidneys may be felt but are not prominent. A markedly scaphoid abdomen plus respiratory distress suggests diaphragmatic hernia. Absence of abdominal musculature (prune belly syndrome) may occur in association with renal abnormalities. The liver and spleen are superficial in the neonate and can be felt with light palpation. A distended bladder may be seen as well as palpated above the pubic symphysis.

Genitalia & Anus

Male and female genitals show characteristics according to gestational age (see Table 2–1). In the female infant during the first few days, a whitish vaginal discharge with or without blood is normal. Check the patency and location of the anus.

Skeleton

Check for obvious anomalies such as absence of a bone, club-foot, fusion or webbing of digits, and extra digits. Examine for hip dislocation by attempting to dislocate the femur posteriorly and then abducting the legs to relocate the femur noting a clunk as the femoral head relocates. Look for extremity fractures and for palsies (especially brachial

plexus injuries) and evidence of spinal deformities (eg, scoliosis, cysts, sinuses, myelomeningocele). Arthrogryposis (multiple joint contractures) results from chronic limitation of movement in utero that may result from lack of amniotic fluid or from congenital neuromuscular disease.

Neurologic Examination

Normal newborns have reflexes that facilitate survival (eg, rooting and sucking reflexes), and sensory abilities (eg, hearing and smell) that allow them to recognize their mother soon after birth. Although the retina is well developed at birth, visual acuity is poor (20/400) because of a relatively immobile lens. Acuity improves rapidly over the first 6 months, with fixation and tracking becoming well developed by 2 months.

Observe the newborn's resting tone. Normal-term newborns should exhibit flexion of the upper and lower extremities and symmetrical spontaneous movements. Extension of the extremities should result in spontaneous recoil to the flexed position. Assess the character of the cry; a high-pitched cry with or without hypotonia may indicate disease of the central nervous system (CNS) such as hemorrhage or infection, a congenital neuromuscular disorder, or systemic disease. Check the following newborn reflexes:

1. Sucking reflex: The newborn sucks in response to a nipple in the mouth; observed by 14 weeks' gestation.
2. Palmar grasp: Evident with the placement of the examiner's finger in the newborn's palm; develops by 28 weeks' gestation and disappears by age 4 months.
3. Moro (startle) reflex: Hold the infant supine while supporting the head. Allow the head to drop 1–2 cm suddenly. The arms will abduct at the shoulder and extend at the elbow with spreading of the fingers. Adduction with flexion will follow. This reflex develops by 28 weeks' gestation (incomplete) and disappears by age 3 months.

Bishara N, Clericuzio CL: Common dysmorphic syndromes in the NICU. NeoReviews 2008;9:e29.
Kahn O et al: Neonatal Neurological Examination. NeoReviews 2014;15:e316.
Zywicke HA, Rozelle CJ: Sacral dimples. Pediatr Rev 2011;32:109 [PMID: 21364014].

CARE OF THE WELL NEONATE

The primary responsibility of the level 1 nursery is care of the well neonate—promoting mother-infant bonding, establishing feeding, and teaching the basics of newborn care. Staff must monitor infants for signs and symptoms of illness, including temperature instability, change in activity, refusal to feed, pallor, cyanosis, early or excessive jaundice, tachypnea, respiratory distress, delayed (beyond 24 hours) first stool or first void, and bilious vomiting.

Several preventive measures are routine in the normal newborn nursery. Prophylactic erythromycin ointment is applied to the eyes within 1 hour of birth to prevent gonococcal ophthalmia. Vitamin K (1 mg) is given intramuscularly or subcutaneously within 4 hours of birth to prevent hemorrhagic disease of the newborn.

All infants should receive hepatitis B vaccine. Both hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) are administered if the mother is positive for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg). If maternal HBsAg status is unknown, vaccine should be given before 12 hours of age, maternal blood should be tested for HBsAg, and HBIG should be given to the neonate before 7 days of age if the test is positive.

Cord blood is collected from all infants at birth and can be used for blood typing and Coombs testing if the mother is type O or Rh-negative to help assess the risk for development of jaundice.

Bedside glucose testing should be performed in infants at risk for hypoglycemia (infants of diabetic mothers [IDMs], preterm, SGA, LGA, or stressed infants). Values below 45 mg/dL should be confirmed by laboratory blood glucose testing and treated. Hematocrit should be measured at age 3–6 hours in infants at risk for or those who have symptoms of polycythemia or anemia (see section Hematologic Disorders in the Newborn Infant).

State-sponsored newborn genetic screens (for inborn errors of metabolism such as phenylketonuria [PKU], galactosemia, sickle cell disease, hypothyroidism, congenital adrenal hyperplasia, and cystic fibrosis) are performed prior to discharge, after 24–48 hours of age if possible. In many states, a repeat test is required at 8–14 days of age because the PKU test may be falsely negative when obtained before 48 hours of age. Not all state-mandated screens include the same panel of diseases. Many states now include an expanded screen that tests for other inborn errors of metabolism such as fatty acid oxidation defects and amino or organic acid disorders. Some states are also now beginning to screen for severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome.

Screening for critical congenital heart disease in the newborn nursery has recently been endorsed by the US Health and Human Services Department. The goal of screening is to identify newborn infants with structural heart disease significant enough to require intervention within the first year of life prior to symptoms developing. Newborn infants are screened by pulse-oximetry on the second day of life. Infants that screen positive are evaluated by echocardiogram prior to hospital discharge.

Infants should routinely be positioned supine to minimize the risk of sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS). Prone positioning is contraindicated unless there are compelling clinical reasons for that position. Bed sharing with

adults and prone positioning are associated with increased risk of SIDS.

FEEDING THE WELL NEONATE

A neonate is ready for feeding if he or she (1) is alert and vigorous, (2) has no abdominal distention, (3) has good bowel sounds, and (4) has a normal hunger cry. These signs usually occur within 6 hours after birth, but fetal distress or traumatic delivery may prolong this period. The healthy full-term infant should be allowed to feed every 2–5 hours on demand. The first breast-feeding should occur within 1 hour from birth if mother and baby are clinically stable. For formula-fed infants, the first feeding usually occurs by 3 hours of life. The feeding volume generally increases from 0.5 to 1 oz per feeding initially to 1.5–2 oz per feeding on day 3. By day 3, the average full-term newborn takes about 100 mL/kg/d of milk (Table 2–3).

A wide range of infant formulas satisfy the nutritional needs of most neonates. Breast milk is the standard on which formulas are based (see Chapter 11). Despite low concentrations of several vitamins and minerals in breast milk, bioavailability is high. All the necessary nutrients, vitamins, minerals, and water are provided by human milk for the first 6 months of life except vitamin K (1 mg IM is administered at birth), vitamin D (400 IU/d for all infants beginning shortly after birth), and vitamin B_{12} and zinc (if the mother is a strict vegetarian and takes no supplements). Other advantages of breast milk include (1) immunologic, antimicrobial, and anti-inflammatory factors such as immunoglobulin A (IgA) and cellular, protein, and enzymatic components that decrease the incidence of upper respiratory and gastrointestinal (GI) infections; (2) possible decreased frequency and severity of childhood eczema and asthma; (3) improved mother-infant bonding; and (4) improved neurodevelopmental outcome.

Although about 70% of mothers in the United States start by breast-feeding, only 50% continue to do so at 6 months. Hospital practices that facilitate successful initiation of breast-feeding include rooming-in, nursing on demand, and avoiding unnecessary supplemental formula. Nursery staff must be trained to recognize problems associated with breast-feeding and provide help and support for mothers in the hospital. An experienced professional should observe and assist with several feedings to document good latch-on. Good latch-on is important in preventing the common problems of sore nipples, unsatisfied infants, breast engorgement, poor milk supply, and hyperbilirubinemia.

Abrams SA: Dietary guidelines for calcium and vitamin D: a new era. Pediatrics 2011;127:566 [PMID: 21339264].

Kemper AR et al: Strategies for implementing screening for critical congenital heart disease. Pediatrics 2011;128:e1259 [PMID: 21987707].

Kinney HC, Thach BT: the sudden infant death syndrome. N Engl J Med 2009;361:795 [PMID: 19692691].

Mahle WT et al; the American Heart Association Congenital Heart Defects Committee of the Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, Council on Cardiovascular Nursing, Interdisciplinary Council on Quality of Care and Outcomes Research, the American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Role of pulse oximetry in examining newborns for congenital heart disease: a scientific statement from the AHA and AAP. Pediatrics 2009;124:823 [PMID: 19581259].

Martinez JA, Ballew MP: Infant formulas. Pediatr Rev 2011;32:179 [PMID: 21536776].

Lawrence RM, Lawrence RA: Breastfeeding: more than just good nutrition. Pediatr Rev 2011;32:267 [PMID: 21724901].

www.bfmed.org/Resources/Protocols.aspx. Accessed September 15, 2015.

EARLY DISCHARGE OF THE NEWBORN INFANT

Discharge at 24–36 hours of age is safe and appropriate for some newborns if there are no contraindications (Table 2–4) and if a follow-up visit within 48 hours is ensured. Most infants with cardiac, respiratory, or infectious disorders are identified in the first 12–24 hours of life. The exception may be the infant treated intrapartum with antibiotic prophylaxis for maternal group B streptococcal (GBS) colonization or infection. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommend that such infants be observed in hospital for 48 hours if they received no or inadequate intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis (< 4 hours prior to delivery, or drug other than ampicillin, penicillin, or cefazolin). Hospital observation beyond 24 hours may not be necessary for well appearing full-term infants who received adequate intrapartum chemoprophylaxis (penicillin, ampicillin, or cefazolin ≥ 4 hours prior to delivery), and for whom ready access to medical care can be ensured if needed. Other problems, such as jaundice and breast-feeding problems, typically occur after 48 hours and can usually be dealt with on an out-patient basis.

The AAP recommends a follow-up visit within 48 hours for all newborns discharged before 72 hours of age. Infants who are small or late preterm—especially if breast-feeding—are at particular risk for inadequate intake; the early visit is especially important for these infants. Suggested guidelines for the follow-up interview and physical examination are presented in Table 2–5. The optimal timing of discharge must be determined in each case based on medical, social, and financial factors.

» CIRCUMCISION

Circumcision is an elective procedure to be performed only in healthy, stable infants. The procedure has medical benefits, including prevention of urinary tract infections, decreased incidence of penile cancer, and decreased incidence of sexually transmitted diseases (including HIV). Most parental decisions regarding circumcision are religious and social,

Table 2–3. Guidelines for successful breast-feeding.

	First 8 h	First 8–24 h	Day 2	Day 3	Day 4	Day 5	Day 6 Onward
Milk supply	You may be able to express a few drops of milk.		Milk should come in between the second and fourth days.			Milk should be in. Breasts may be firm or leak milk.	Breasts should feel softer after feedings.
Baby's activity	Baby is usually wide-awake in the first hour of life. Put baby to breast within 30 min after birth.	Wake up your baby. Babies may not wake up on their own to feed.	Baby should be more cooperative and less sleepy.	Look for early feeding cues such as rooting, lip smacking, and hands to face.			Baby should appear satisfied after feedings.
Feeding routine	Baby may go into a deep sleep 2–4 h after birth.	Use chart to write down time of each feeding. Feed your baby every 1–4 h or as often as wanted—at least 8–12 times a day.				May go one longer interval (up to 5 h between feeds) in a 24-h period.	
Breast-feeding	Baby will wake up and be alert and responsive for several more hours after initial deep sleep.	As long as the mother is comfortable, nurse at both breasts as long as baby is actively sucking.	Try to nurse both sides each feeding, aiming at 10 min per side. Expect some nipple tenderness.	Consider hand expressing or pumping a few drops of milk to soften the nipple if the breast is too firm for the baby to latch on.	Nurse a minimum of 10–30 min per side every feeding for the first few weeks of life. Once milk supply is well established, allow baby to finish the first breast before offering the second.		Mother's nipple tenderness is improving or is gone.
Baby's urine output		Baby must have a minimum of one wet diaper in the first 24 h.	Baby must have at least one wet diaper every 8–11 h.	You should see an increase in wet diapers (up to four to six) in 24 h.	Baby's urine should be light yellow.	Baby should have six to eight wet diapers per day of colorless or light yellow urine.	
Baby's stool		Baby may have a very dark (meconium) stool.	Baby may have a stool second very dark (meconium) stool.	Baby's stools should be in transition from black-green to yellow.		Baby should have three or four yellow, seedy stools a day.	The number of stools may decrease gradually after 4–6 wk.

Modified, with permission, from Gabrielski L: Lactation support services. Childrens Hospital Colorado, 1999.

not medical. The risks of circumcision include local infection, bleeding, removal of too much skin, and urethral injury. The combined incidence of complications is less than 1%. Local anesthesia by dorsal penile nerve block or circumferential ring block using 1% lidocaine without epinephrine, or topical anesthetic cream are safe and effective methods that should always be used. Techniques allowing visualization of the glans throughout the procedure (Plastibell and Gomco clamp) are preferred to blind techniques (Mogen clamp) as occasional amputation of the glans occurs with the latter technique. Circumcision is contraindicated in infants with genital abnormalities (eg, hypospadias). A coagulation screen should be performed prior to the procedure in infants with a family history of serious bleeding disorders.

HEARING SCREENING

Normal hearing is critical to normal language development. Significant bilateral hearing loss is present in 1–3 infants per 1000 well neonates and in 2–4 per 100 neonates in the

Table 2–4. Contraindications to early newborn discharge.

Contraindications to early newborn discharge
1. Jaundice ≤ 24 h
2. High risk for infection (eg, maternal chorioamnionitis); discharge allowed after 24 h with a normal transition
3. Known or suspected narcotic addiction or withdrawal
4. Physical defects requiring evaluation
5. Oral defects (clefts, micrognathia)
Relative contraindications to early newborn discharge (infants at high risk for feeding failure, excessive jaundice)
1. Prematurity or early-term infant (< 38 weeks' gestation)
2. Birth weight < 2700 g (6 lb)
3. Infant difficult to arouse for feeding; not demanding regularly in nursery
4. Medical or neurologic problems that interfere with feeding (Down syndrome, hypotonia, cardiac problems)
5. Twins or higher multiples
6. ABO blood group incompatibility or severe jaundice in previous child
7. Mother whose previous breast-fed infant gained weight poorly
8. Mother with breast surgery involving periareolar areas(if attempting to nurse)

intensive care unit population. Infants should be screened for hearing loss by auditory brainstem evoked responses or evoked otoacoustic emissions as early as possible because up to 40% of hearing loss will be missed by risk analysis alone. Primary care providers and parents should be advised of the possibility of hearing loss and offered immediate referral in suspect cases. With the use of universal screening, the average age at which hearing loss is confirmed has dropped from 24–30 months to 2–3 months. If remediation is begun by 6 months, language and social development are commensurate with physical development.

Table 2–5. Guidelines for early outpatient follow-up evaluation.

History
Rhythmic sucking and audible swallowing for at least 10 min total per feeding?
Infant wakes and demands to feed every 2–3 h (at least 8–10 feedings per 24 h)?
Do breasts feel full before feedings, and softer after?
Are there at least 6 noticeably wet diapers per 24 h?
Are there yellow bowel movements (no longer meconium)—at least 4 per 24 h?
Is infant still acting hungry after nursing (frequently sucks hands, rooting)?
Physical assessment
Weight, unclothed: should not be more than 8%–10% below birth weight
Extent and severity of jaundice
Assessment of hydration, alertness, general well-being
Cardiovascular examination: murmurs, brachial and femoral pulses, respirations

American Academy of Pediatrics: Committee on the Fetus and Newborn: Policy statement—hospital stay for healthy term newborns. Pediatrics 2010;125:405 [PMID: 20100744].

American Academy of Pediatrics Task Force on Circumcision: Male circumcision. Pediatrics 2012;130:e756 [PMID: 22926175].

Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. MMWR 2010;59:1–32 [PMID: 21088663].

US Preventive Services Task Force: Universal screening for hearing loss in newborns: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. Pediatrics 2008;122:143 [PMID: 18595997].

COMMON PROb LEMS IN THE TERM NEWb ORN

NEONATAL JAUNDICE

General Considerations

Sixty-five percent of newborns develop visible jaundice with a total serum bilirubin (TSB) level higher than 6 mg/dL during the first week of life. Bilirubin, a potent antioxidant and peroxyl scavenger, may protect the normal newborn, who is deficient in antioxidants such as vitamin E, catalase, and superoxide dismutase, from oxygen toxicity in the first days of life. Approximately 8%–10% of newborns develop excessive hyperbilirubinemia (TSB > 17 mg/dL), and 1%–2% have TSB above 20 mg/dL. Extremely high and potentially dangerous TSB levels are rare but can cause kernicterus, characterized by injury to the basal ganglia and brainstem.

Kernicterus caused by hyperbilirubinemia was common in neonates with Rh-isoimmunization until the institution of exchange transfusion for affected infants and postpartum high-titer Rho (D) immune globulin treatment to prevent sensitization of Rh-negative mothers. For several decades after the introduction of exchange transfusion and phototherapy aimed at keeping the neonate's TSB below 20 mg/dL, there were no reported cases of kernicterus in the United States. Since the early 1990s, however, there has been a reappearance of kernicterus, with more than 120 cases reported. Common factors in the recent cases are newborn discharge before 48 hours (all but one), breast-feeding (100%), delayed measurement of TSB, unrecognized hemolysis, lack of early post discharge follow-up, and failure to recognize the early symptoms of bilirubin encephalopathy.

Bilirubin is produced by the breakdown of heme (iron protoporphyrin) in the reticuloendothelial system and

bone marrow. Heme is cleaved by heme oxygenase to iron, which is conserved; carbon monoxide, which is exhaled; and biliverdin, which is converted to bilirubin by bilirubin reductase. This unconjugated bilirubin is bound to albumin and carried to the liver, where it is taken up by hepatocytes. In the presence of the enzyme uridyl diphosphoglucuronyl transferase (UDPGT; glucuronyl transferase), bilirubin is conjugated to one or two glucuronide molecules. Conjugated bilirubin is then excreted through the bile to the intestine. In the presence of normal gut flora, conjugated bilirubin is metabolized to stercobilins and excreted in the stool. Absence of gut flora and slow GI motility, both characteristics of the newborn, cause stasis of conjugated bilirubin in the intestinal lumen, where mucosal β-glucuronidase removes the glucuronide molecules and leaves unconjugated bilirubin to be reabsorbed (enterohepatic circulation).

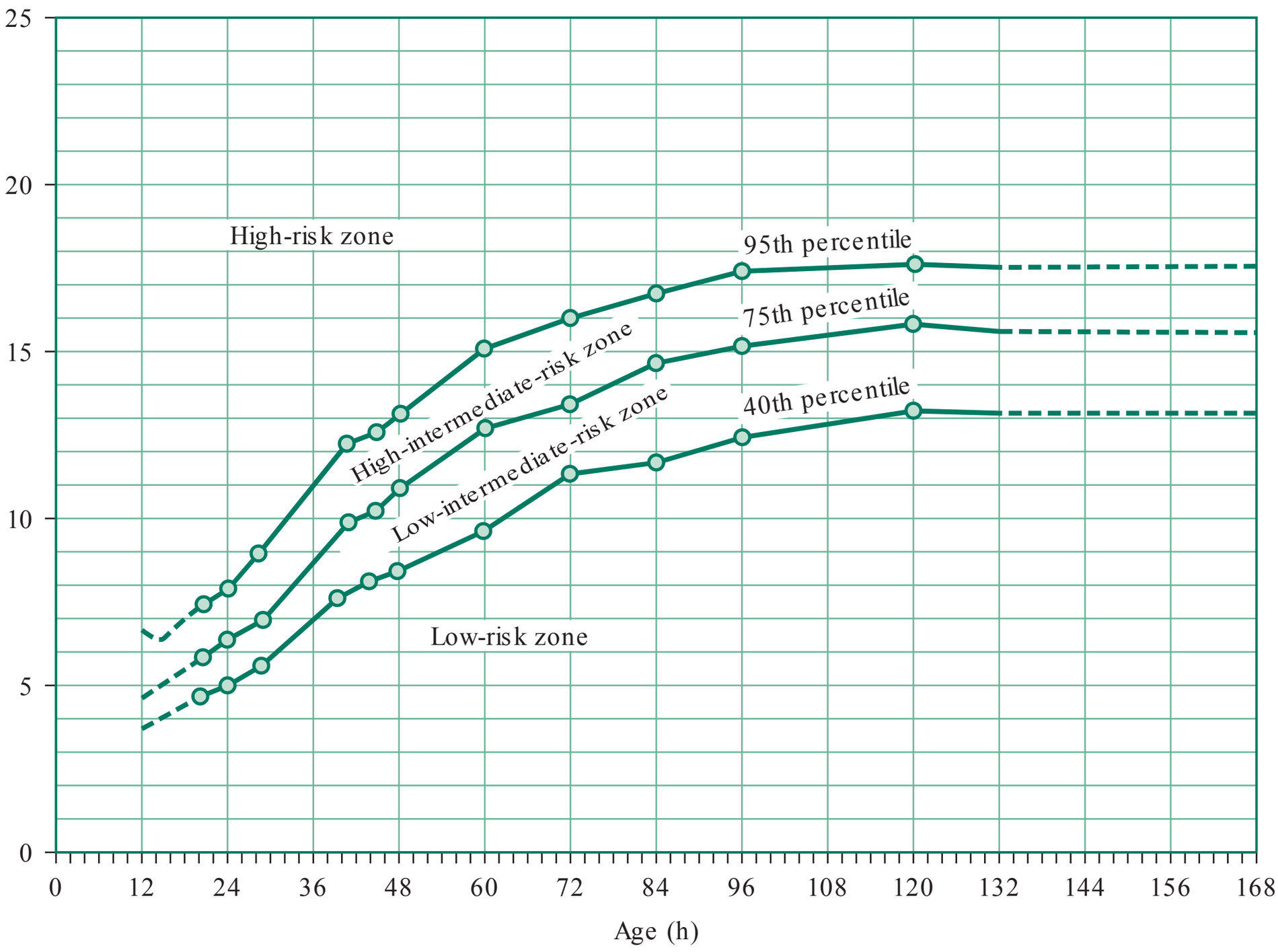
Excess accumulation of bilirubin in blood depends on both the rate of bilirubin production and the rate of excretion. It is best determined by reference to an hour-specific TSB level above the 95th percentile for age in hours (Figure 2–2).

1. Physiologic Jaundice

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Visible jaundice appearing after 24 h of age.
- Total bilirubin rises by < 5 mg/dL (86 mmol/L) per day.
- Peak bilirubin occurs at 3–5 d of age, with a total bilirubin of no more than 15 mg/dL (258 mmol/L).
- Visible jaundice resolves by 1 wk in the full-term infant and by 2 wk in the preterm infant.

Factors contributing to physiologic jaundice in neonates include low UDPGT activity, relatively high red cell mass, absence of intestinal flora, slow intestinal motility, and increased enterohepatic circulation of bilirubin in the first days of life. Hyperbilirubinemia outside of the ranges



▲**Figure 2–2.** Risk designation of full-term and near-term newborns based on their hour-specific bilirubin values. (Reproduced, with permission, from Bhutani VK et al: Predictive ability of a predischarge hour-specific serum bilirubin test for subsequent significant hyperbilirubinemia in healthy term and near-term newborns. Pediatrics 1999;103:6.)

noted in Figure 2–2 is not physiologic and requires further evaluation.

2. Pathologic Unconjugated Hyperbilirubinemia

Pathologic unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia can be grouped into two main categories: overproduction of bilirubin or decreased conjugation of bilirubin (Table 2–6). The TSB is a reflection of the balance between these processes. Visible jaundice with a TSB greater than 5 mg/dL before 24 hours of age is most commonly a result of significant hemolysis.

A. Increased Bilirubin Production

1. Antibody-mediated hemolysis (Coombs test–positive)

a. ABO blood group incompatibility—This finding can accompany any pregnancy in a type O mother. Hemolysis is usually mild, but the severity is unpredictable because of variability in the amount of naturally occurring maternal anti-A or anti-B IgG antibodies. Although 15% of pregnancies are "setups" for ABO incompatibility (mother O, infant A or B), only 33% of infants in such cases have a positive direct Coombs test and less than 10% of these infants develop jaundice that requires therapy. Since maternal antibodies may persist for several months after birth, the newborn may become progressively more anemic over the first few weeks of life, occasionally to the point of requiring transfusion.

b. Rh-isoimmunization—This hemolytic process is less common, more severe, and more predictable than ABO incompatibility. The severity increases with each immunized pregnancy because of an anamnestic maternal IgG antibody response. Most Rh-disease can be prevented by giving high-titer Rho (D) immune globulin to the Rh-negative woman after invasive procedures during pregnancy or after miscarriage, abortion, or delivery of an Rh-positive infant. Affected neonates are often anemic at birth, and continued hemolysis rapidly causes hyperbilirubinemia and more severe anemia. The most severe form of Rh-isoimmunization, erythroblastosis fetalis, is characterized by life-threatening anemia, generalized edema, and fetal or neonatal heart failure. Without antenatal intervention, fetal or neonatal death often results. The cornerstone of antenatal management is transfusion of the fetus with Rh-negative cells, either directly into the umbilical vein or into the fetal abdominal cavity. Phototherapy is usually started in these infants upon delivery, with exchange transfusion frequently needed. Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG; 0.5–1 g/kg) given to the infant as soon as the diagnosis is made may decrease the need for exchange transfusion. Ongoing hemolysis occurs until all maternal antibodies are gone; therefore, these infants require monitoring for 2–3 months for recurrent anemia severe enough to require transfusion.

Table 2–6. Causes of pathologic unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia.

Overproduction of bilirubin

1. Hemolytic causes of increased bilirubin production (reticulocyte count elevated)
   a. Immune-mediated: positive direct antibody (DAT, Coombs) test
      - ABO blood group incompatibility, Rh incompatibility, minor blood group antigen incompatibility
   b. Nonimmune: negative direct antibody (DAT, Coombs) test
      - Abnormal red cell shapes: spherocytosis, elliptocytosis, pyknocytosis, stomatocytosis
      - Red cell enzyme abnormalities: glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, pyruvate kinase deficiency, hexokinase deficiency, other metabolic defects
   c. Patients with bacterial or viral sepsis
2. Nonhemolytic causes of increased bilirubin production (reticulocyte count normal)
   a. Extravascular hemorrhage: cephalohematoma, extensive bruising, intracranial hemorrhage
   b. Polycythemia
   c. Exaggerated enterohepatic circulation of bilirubin: bowel obstruction, functional ileus
   d. Breast-feeding–associated jaundice (inadequate intake of breast milk causing exaggerated enterohepatic circulation of bilirubin)

Decreased rate of conjugation

1. Crigler-Najjar syndrome (rare, severe)
   a. Type I glucuronyl transferase deficiency, autosomal-recessive
   b. Type II glucuronyl transferase deficiency, autosomal-dominant
2. Gilbert syndrome (common, milder)
3. Hypothyroidism

2. Nonimmune hemolysis (Coombs test–negative)

a. Hereditary spherocytosis—This condition is the most common of the red cell membrane defects and causes hemolysis by decreasing red cell deformability. Affected infants may have hyperbilirubinemia severe enough to require exchange transfusion. Splenomegaly may be present. Diagnosis is suspected by peripheral blood smear and family history. See Chapter 30 for a more in-depth discussion.

b. G6PD deficiency—This condition is the most common red cell enzyme defect causing hemolysis, especially in infants of African, Mediterranean, or Asian descent. Onset of jaundice is often later than in isoimmune hemolytic disease, toward 1 week of age. The role of G6PD deficiency in neonatal jaundice is probably underestimated as up to 10%–13% of African Americans are G6PD-deficient. Although the disorder is X-linked, female heterozygotes are also at increased risk of hyperbilirubinemia due to X-chromosome inactivation. In most cases, no triggering

agent for hemolysis is found in the newborn. Their increased bilirubin production is further exaggerated by a decreased rate of bilirubin conjugation. Since G6PD enzyme activity is high in reticulocytes, neonates with a large number of reticulocytes may have falsely normal enzyme tests. A low G6PD level should always raise suspicions. Repeat testing in suspect cases with initially normal results is indicated at 2–3 months of age. Please also see Chapter 30 for more details.

3. Nonhemolytic increased bilirubin production— Enclosed hemorrhage, such as cephalohematoma, intracranial hemorrhage, or extensive bruising in the skin, can lead to jaundice. Polycythemia leads to jaundice by increased red cell mass, with increased numbers of cells reaching senescence daily. Bowel obstruction, functional or mechanical, leads to an increased enterohepatic circulation of bilirubin.

B. Decreased Rate of Conjugation

1. UDPGT deficiency: Crigler-Najjar syndrome type I (complete deficiency, autosomal recessive) and type II (partial deficiency, autosomal dominant)—These rare conditions result from mutations in the exon or encoding region of the UDPGT gene that cause complete or nearly complete absence of enzyme activity. Both can cause severe unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, bilirubin encephalopathy, and death if untreated. In type II, the enzyme can be induced with phenobarbital, which may lower bilirubin levels by 30%–80%. Liver transplantation is curative.

2. Gilbert syndrome—This is a common mild autosomal dominant disorder characterized by decreased hepatic UDPGT activity caused by genetic polymorphism at the promoter region of the UDPGT gene. Approximately 9% of the population is homozygous, and 42% is heterozygous for this abnormality, with a gene frequency of 0.3. Affected individuals tend to develop hyperbilirubinemia in the presence of conditions that increase bilirubin load, including G6PD deficiency. They are also more likely to have prolonged neonatal jaundice and breast-milk jaundice.

C. Hyperbilirubinemia Caused by Unknown or Multiple Factors

1. Racial differences—Asians (23%) are more likely than whites (10%–13%) or African Americans (4%) to have a peak neonatal TSB greater than 12 mg/dL (206 mmol/L). It is likely that these differences result from racial variations in prevalence of UDPGT gene polymorphisms or associated G6PD deficiency.

2. Prematurity—Premature infants often have poor enteral intake, delayed stooling, and increased enterohepatic circulation, as well as a shorter red cell life. Infants at 35–36 weeks' gestation are 13 times more likely than term infants to be readmitted for hyperbilirubinemia. Even early-term infants (37–38 weeks' gestation) are four times more likely than term neonates to have TSB greater than 13 mg/dL (224 mmol/L).

3. Breast-feeding and jaundice

a. Breast-milk jaundice—Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia lasting until 2–3 months of age is common in breast-fed infants. An increased prevalence of the Gilbert syndrome promoter polymorphism is likely involved. Moderate unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia for 6–12 weeks in a thriving breast-fed infant without evidence of hemolysis, hypothyroidism, or other disease strongly suggests this diagnosis.

b. Breast-feeding–associated jaundice—This common condition has also been called "lack-of-breast-milk" jaundice. Breast-fed infants have a higher incidence (9%) of unconjugated serum bilirubin levels greater than 13 mg/dL (224 mmol/L) than do formula-fed infants (2%). The pathogenesis is probably poor enteral intake and increased enterohepatic circulation. There is no apparent increase in bilirubin production as measured by carbon monoxide exhalation. Although rarely severe enough to cause bilirubin encephalopathy, nearly 100% of the infants with kernicterus reported over the past 20 years were exclusively breast-fed, and in 50%, breast-feeding was the only known risk factor. Excessive jaundice should be considered a possible sign of failure to establish an adequate milk supply, and should prompt specific inquiries. The best way to evaluate successful breast-feeding is to monitor the infant's weight, urine, and stool output. By days 3–4 of life infants should have at least six wet diapers and four stools per day and should not lose more than 10% of their birth weight. If intake is inadequate, the infant should receive supplemental formula and the mother should be instructed to nurse more frequently and to use an electric breast pump every 2 hours to enhance milk production. Consultation with a lactation specialist should be considered. Because hospital discharge of normal newborns occurs before the milk supply is established and before jaundice peaks, a follow-up visit 2 days after discharge is recommended by the AAP to evaluate adequacy of intake and degree of jaundice.

3. Bilirubin Toxicity

Unconjugated bilirubin anion is the agent of bilirubin neurotoxicity. The anion binds to the phospholipids (gangliosides) of neuronal plasma membranes causing injury, which then allows more anion to enter the neuron. Intracellular bilirubin anion binds to the membrane phospholipids of subcellular organelles, causing impaired energy metabolism and cell death. The blood-brain barrier undoubtedly has a role in protecting the infant from brain damage, but its

integrity is impossible to measure clinically. The amount of albumin available to bind the unconjugated bilirubin anion and the presence of other anions that may displace bilirubin from albumin-binding sites are also important. It is unknown whether there is a fixed level of bilirubin above which brain damage always occurs. The term kernicterus describes the pathologic finding of staining of basal ganglia and brainstem nuclei, as well as the clinical syndrome of chronic brain injury due to hyperbilirubinemia. The term acute bilirubin encephalopathy describes the signs and symptoms of evolving brain injury in the newborn.

The risk of bilirubin encephalopathy is small in healthy, term neonates even at bilirubin levels of 25–30 mg/dL (430–516 mmol/L). Risk depends on the duration of hyperbilirubinemia, the concentration of serum albumin, associated illness, acidosis, and the concentrations of competing anions such as sulfisoxazole and ceftriaxone. Premature infants are at greater risk than term infants because of the greater frequency of associated illness affecting the integrity of the blood-brain barrier, reduced albumin levels, and decreased affinity of albumin-binding sites. For these reasons, the "exchange level" (the level at which bilirubin encephalopathy is thought likely to occur) in premature infants may be lower than that of a term infant.

4. Acute Bilirubin Encephalopathy

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Lethargy, poor feeding.
- Irritability, high-pitched cry.
- Arching of the neck (retrocollis) and trunk (opisthotonos).
- Apnea, seizures, coma (late).

Newborn infants with evolving acute bilirubin encephalopathy may be described as "sleepy and not interested in feeding." Although these symptoms are nonspecific, they are also the earliest signs of acute bilirubin encephalopathy and should trigger, in the jaundiced infant, a detailed evaluation of the birth and postnatal history, feeding and elimination history, an urgent assessment for signs of bilirubin-induced neurologic dysfunction (BIND), and a TSB and albumin measurement. Correlation between TSB level and neurotoxicity is poor. Although 65% of recently reported cases of kernicterus had TSB levels above 35 mg/dL, 15% had levels below 30 mg/dL and 8% had TSB levels below 25 mg/dL. Currently the most sensitive means of assessing neurotoxicity may be the auditory brainstem evoked response, which shows predictable, early effects of bilirubin toxicity.

5. Chronic Bilirubin Encephalopathy (Kernicterus)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Extrapyramidal movement disorder (choreoathetoid cerebral palsy).
- Gaze abnormality, especially limitation of upward gaze.
- Auditory disturbances (deafness, failed auditory brainstem evoked response with normal evoked otoacoustic emissions, auditory neuropathy, auditory dyssynchrony).
- Dysplasia of the enamel of the deciduous teeth.

Kernicterus is an irreversible brain injury characterized by choreoathetoid cerebral palsy and hearing impairment. Intelligence is probably normal but may be difficult to assess because of associated hearing, communication, and coordination problems. The diagnosis is clinical but is strengthened if audiologic testing shows auditory neuropathy and auditory dyssynchrony in which the otoacoustic emission test is normal but the auditory brainstem response is absent. Infants with such findings are usually deaf. Infants with milder kernicterus may have normal audiograms but abnormal auditory processing and subsequent problems with speech comprehension. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scanning of the brain is nearly diagnostic if it shows abnormalities isolated to the globus pallidus or the subthalamic nuclei, or both.

Evaluation of Hyperbilirubinemia

Because most newborns are discharged at 24–48 hours of age, before physiologic jaundice peaks and before maternal milk supply is established, a predischarge TSB or a transcutaneous bilirubin measurement (TcB) is recommended to help predict which infants are at risk for severe hyperbilirubinemia. In all infants, an assessment of risk for severe hyperbilirubinemia should be performed before discharge (Table 2–7). The greater the number of risk factors, the greater the likelihood of developing severe hyperbilirubinemia. As recommended by the AAP, follow-up within 24–48 hours for all infants discharged before 72 hours of age (depending on the number of risk factors present) is imperative. Although jaundice is usually visible above a TSB level of 5 mg/dL (86 mmol/L), visual estimation of the bilirubin level is inaccurate. TSB should be measured and interpreted based on the age of the infant in hours at the time of sampling. Term infants with a TSB level greater than the 95th percentile for age in hours have a 40% risk of developing significant hyperbilirubinemia (see Figure 2–2).

Table 2–7. Factors affecting the risk of severe hyperbilirubinemia in infants 35 or more weeks' gestation (in approximate order of importance).

Major risk factors
Predischarge TSB or TcB level in the high-risk zone (> 95th percentile; see Figure 2–2)
Jaundice observed in the first 24 h
Blood group incompatibility with positive direct Coombs test, other known hemolytic disease (eg, G6PD deficiency), or elevated ETCO
Gestational age 35–36 wk
Previous sibling required phototherapy
Cephalohematoma or significant bruising
Exclusive breast-feeding, particularly if weight loss is excessive
East Asian race[a]
Minor risk factors
Predischarge TSB or TcB level in the high-intermediate-risk zone (75–95th percentile)
Gestational age 37–38 wk
Jaundice observed before discharge
Previous sibling with jaundice
Macrosomic infant of a diabetic mother
Decreased risk (these factors are associated with decreased risk of significant jaundice, listed in order of decreasing importance)
TSB or TcB level in the low-risk zone (see Figure 2–2)
Gestational age ≥ 41 wk
Exclusive bottle feeding
Black race[a]
Discharge from hospital after 72 h

ETCO, end-tidal carbon monoxide; G6PD, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase; TcB, transcutaneous bilirubin; TSB, total serum bilirubin.
[a]Race as defined by mother's description.

Serial bilirubin levels should be obtained from a single laboratory whenever possible to make interpretation of serial measurements more meaningful. It is important to remember that these nomograms apply only to early- and full-term infants, 36 weeks and older.

Infants with visible jaundice on the first day of life or who develop excessive jaundice require further evaluation. The minimal evaluation consists of the following:

- Feeding and elimination history
- Birth weight and percent weight change since birth
- Examination for sources of excessive heme breakdown
- Assessment of blood type, Coombs testing, complete blood count (CBC) with smear, serum albumin, and TSB
- G6PD test if jaundice is otherwise unexplained, and in African-American infants with severe jaundice
- Fractionated bilirubin level in infants who appear ill, those with prolonged jaundice, acholic stool, hepatosplenomegaly, or dark urine to evaluate for cholestasis

Treatment of Indirect Hyperbilirubinemia

A. Phototherapy

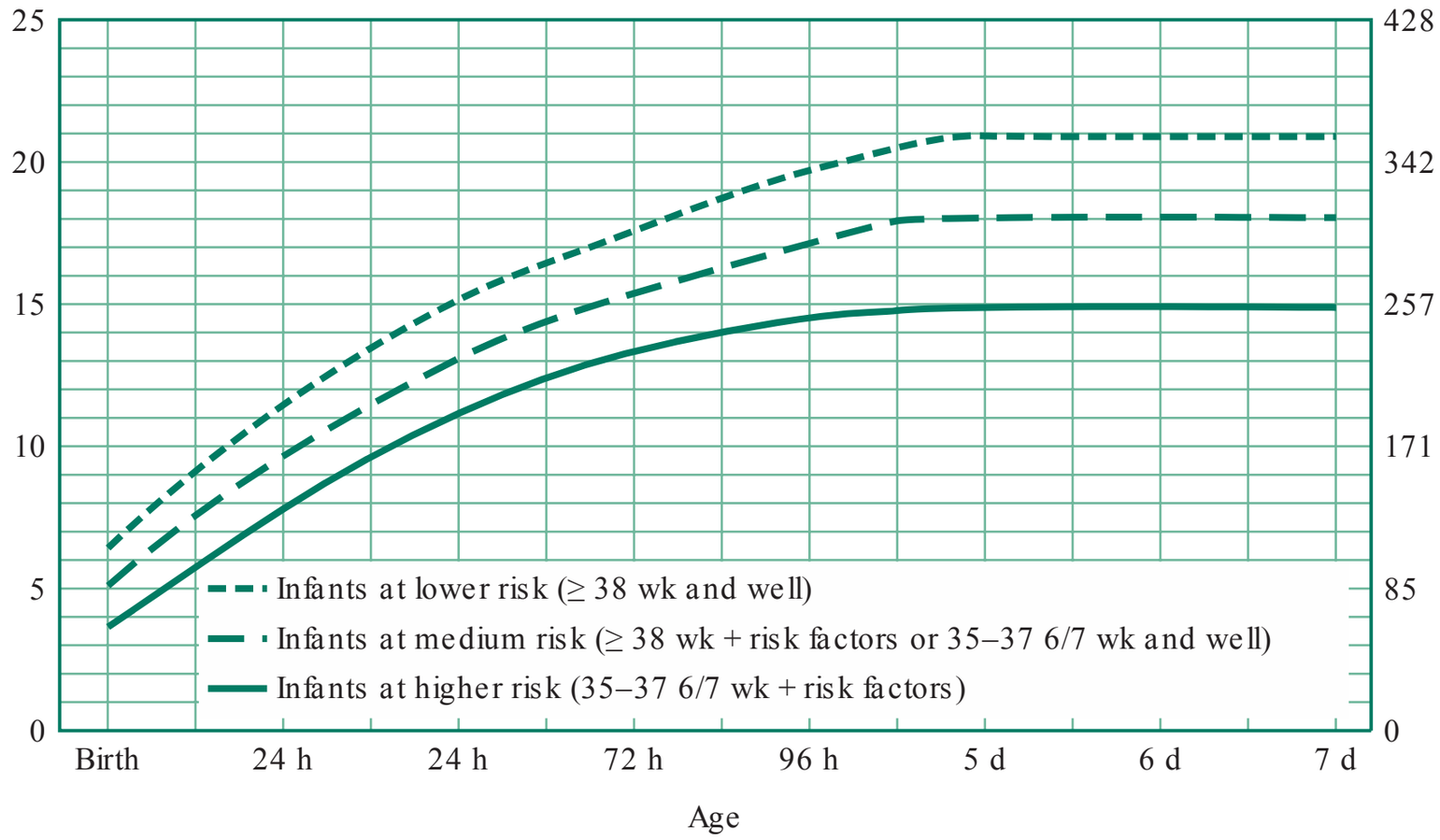
Phototherapy is the most common treatment for indirect hyperbilirubinemia. It is relatively noninvasive and safe. Light of wavelength 425–475 nm (blue-green spectrum) is absorbed by unconjugated bilirubin in the skin converting it to a water-soluble stereoisomer that can be excreted in bile without conjugation. Intensive phototherapy should decrease TSB by 30%–40% in the first 24 hours, most significantly in the first 4–6 hours. The infant's eyes should be shielded to prevent retinal damage. Diarrhea, which sometimes occurs during phototherapy, can be treated if necessary by feeding a nonlactose-containing formula.

Phototherapy is started electively when the TSB is approximately 6 mg/dL (102 mmol/L) lower than the predicted exchange level for that infant (eg, at 16–19 mg/dL [272–323 mmol/L] for a full-term infant for whom exchange transfusion would be considered at a TSB of approximately 22–25 mg/dL [374–425 mmol/L]). AAP guidelines for phototherapy and exchange transfusion in infants of 35 or more weeks' gestation are shown in Figures 2–3 and 2–4. Hyperbilirubinemic infants should be fed by mouth if possible to decrease enterohepatic bilirubin circulation. Casein hydrolysate formula to supplement breast milk decreases enterohepatic circulation by inhibiting mucosal β-glucuronidase activity. IVIG (0.5–1.0 g/kg) in severe antibody-mediated hemolysis may interrupt the hemolytic process. Although phototherapy has been shown to decrease the need for exchange transfusion, its long-term benefits, if any, in infants with less severe jaundice are unknown.

B. Exchange Transfusion

Although most infants with indirect hyperbilirubinemia can be treated with phototherapy, extreme indirect hyperbilirubinemia is a medical emergency. Infants should be admitted at once to a neonatal intensive care unit where exchange transfusion can be performed before irreversible neurologic damage occurs. Intensive phototherapy should be instituted immediately, during transport to the hospital if possible. As TSB nears the potentially toxic range, serum albumin should be determined. Albumin (1 g/kg) will aid in binding and removal of bilirubin during exchange transfusion, as well as afford some neuroprotection while preparing for the procedure.

Double-volume exchange transfusion (~160–200 mL/kg body weight) is most often required in infants with extreme hyperbilirubinemia secondary to Rh isoimmunization, ABO incompatibility, or hereditary spherocytosis. The procedure decreases serum bilirubin acutely by approximately 50% and removes about 80% of sensitized or abnormal red blood cells and offending antibody so that ongoing hemolysis is decreased. Exchange transfusion is also indicated in any infant with TSB above 30 mg/dL, in infants with signs of



- Use total bilirubin. Do not subtract direct reacting of conjugated bilirubin.
- Risk factors = isoimmune hemolytic disease, G6PD deficiency, asphyxia, significant lethargy, temperature instability, sepsis, acidosis, or albumin < 3.0 g/dL (if measured).
- For well infants 35–37 6/7 wk can adjust TSB levels for intervention around the medium-risk line. It is an option to intervene at lower TSB levels for infants closer to 35 wk and at higher TSB levels for those closer to 37 6/7 wk.
- It is an option to provide conventional phototherapy in hospital or at home at TSB levels 2–3 mg/dL (35–50 mmol/L) below those shown but home phototherapy should not be used in any infant with risk factors.

▲**Figure 2–3.** Guidelines for phototherapy in hospitalized infants of 35 or more weeks' gestation. These guidelines are based on limited evidence and levels shown are approximations. (Reproduced, with permission, from the AAP Subcommittee on Hyperbilirubinemia: Management of hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant 35 or more weeks of gestation. Pediatrics 2004;114:297.)

encephalopathy, or when intensive phototherapy has not lowered TSB by at least 0.5 mg/dL/h after 4 hours. The decision to perform exchange transfusion should be based on TSB, not on the indirect fraction of bilirubin.

Exchange transfusion is invasive, potentially risky, and infrequently performed. It should therefore be performed at a referral center. Mortality is 1%–5% and is greatest in the smallest, most immature, and unstable infants. Sudden death during the procedure can occur in any infant. There is a 5%–10% risk of serious complications such as necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC), infection, electrolyte disturbances, or thrombocytopenia. Isovolemic exchange (withdrawal through an arterial line with infusion through a venous line) may decrease the risk of some complications.

C. Protoporphyrins

Tin and zinc protoporphyrin or mesoporphyrin (Sn-PP, Zn-PP; Sn-MP, Zn-MP) are inhibitors of heme oxygenase, the enzyme that initiates the catabolism of heme (iron protoporphyrin). Studies are underway involving a single injection of these substances shortly after birth to prevent the formation of bilirubin. Although results are promising, these drugs are not yet approved for use in the United States.

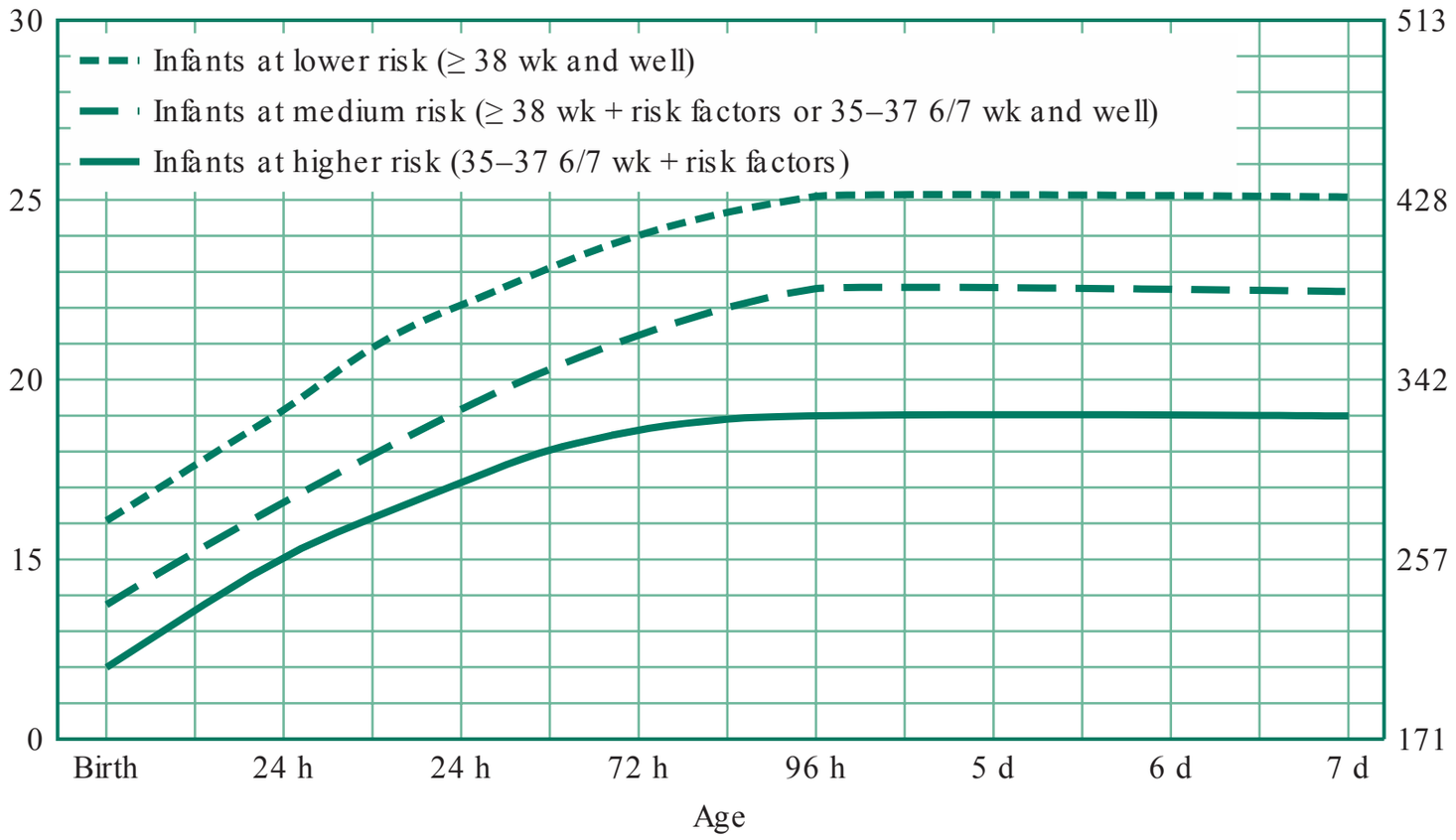
American Academy of Pediatrics Subcommittee on Hyperbilirubinemia: clinical practice guideline: management of hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant 35 or more weeks of gestation. Pediatrics 2004;114:297 [PMID: 15231951].

Bilitool.org. Accessed September 15, 2015.

Lauer BJ, Spector NJ: Hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn. Pediatr Rev 2011;32:341 [PMID: 21807875].

Maisels MJ et al: Hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant ≥ 35 weeks' gestation: an update with clarifications. Pediatrics 2009;124:1193 [PMID: 19786452].

Smits-Wintjens VEHJ et al: Intravenous immunoglobulin in neonates with rhesus hemolytic disease: a randomized controlled trial. Pediatrics 2011;127:680 [PMID: 21422084].



- The dashed lines for the first 24 hours indicate uncertainty due to a wide range of clinical circumstances and a range of responses to phototherapy.
- Immediate exchange transfusion is recommended if infant shows signs of acute bilirubin encephalopathy (hypertonia, arching, retrocolitis, opisthotonos, fever, high pitched cry) or if TSB is ≥ 5 mg/dL (85 µmol/L) above these lines.
- Risk factors—isoimmune hemolytic disease, G6PD deficiency, asphyxia, significant lethargy, temperature instability, sepsis, acidosis.
- Measure serum albumin and calculate B/A ratio (see legend).
- Use total bilirubin. Do not subtract direct reading or conjugated bilirubin.
- If infant is well and 35–37 6/7 wk (median risk), individualize TSB levels for exchange based on actual gestational age.

▲**Figure 2–4.** Guidelines for exchange transfusion in infants of 35 or more weeks' gestation. These guidelines represent approximations for which an exchange transfusion is indicated in infants treated with intensive phototherapy. (Reproduced, with permission, from the AAP Subcommittee on Hyperbilirubinemia: Management of hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant 35 or more weeks of gestation. Pediatrics 2004;114:297.)

HYPOGLYCEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Blood glucose < 40 mg/dL at birth to 4 h, or < 45 mg/dL at 4–24 h of age.

» LGA, SGA, preterm, and stressed infants at risk.

» May be asymptomatic.

» Infants can present with lethargy, poor feeding, irritability, or seizures.

» General Considerations

Blood glucose concentration in the fetus is approximately 15 mg/dL less than maternal glucose concentration. Glucose concentration decreases in the immediate postnatal period, to as low as 30 mg/dL in many healthy infants at 1–2 hours after birth. Concentrations below 40 mg/dL after the first feeding are considered hypoglycemic. By 3 hours, the glucose concentration in normal full-term infants stabilizes at 45 mg/dL or greater. The two groups of full-term newborn infants at highest risk for hypoglycemia are IDMs and IUGR infants.

A. Infants of Diabetic Mothers

The infant of a diabetic mother (IDM) has abundant glucose stores in the form of glycogen and fat but develops hypoglycemia because of hyperinsulinemia induced by maternal and fetal hyperglycemia. Increased energy supply to the fetus from the maternal circulation results in a macrosomic infant. The IDM is at increased risk for multiple neonatal problems including trauma during delivery, cardiomyopathy (asymmetrical septal hypertrophy) which may present with murmur, respiratory distress, or cardiac failure, and microcolon which causes symptoms of low intestinal obstruction similar

to Hirschsprung disease. Other neonatal problems include hypercoagulability and polycythemia, a combination that predisposes the infant to large vein thromboses (especially the renal vein). IDMs are often somewhat immature for their gestational age and are at increased risk for surfactant deficiency, hypocalcemia, feeding difficulties, and hyperbilirubinemia

B. Intrauterine Growth-Restricted Infants

The intrauterine growth-restricted (IUGR) infant has reduced glucose stores in the form of glycogen and body fat, and is prone to hypoglycemia. In addition, marked hyperglycemia and a transient diabetes mellitus–like syndrome occasionally develops, particularly in the very premature IUGR infant. These problems usually respond to adjustment in glucose intake, although insulin is sometimes needed transiently. Some IUGR infants have hyperinsulinemia that persists for 1 week or more.

C. Other Causes of Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia occurs in disorders with islet cell hyperplasia, including Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, nesidioblastosis, and genetic forms of hyperinsulinism. Hypoglycemia also occurs in certain inborn errors of metabolism such as glycogen storage disease and galactosemia. Endocrine causes of hypoglycemia include adrenal insufficiency and hypopituitarism, which should be suspected in the setting of hypoglycemia and micropenis. Hypoglycemia also occurs in infants with birth asphyxia, hypoxia, and bacterial or viral sepsis. Premature infants are at risk for hypoglycemia due to decreased glycogen stores.

» Clinical Findings and Monitoring

The signs of hypoglycemia in the newborn infant may be nonspecific and subtle: lethargy, poor feeding, irritability, tremors, jitteriness, apnea, and seizures. Hypoglycemia due to increased insulin is the most severe and most resistant to treatment. Cardiac failure may occur in severe cases, particularly in IDMs with cardiomyopathy. Hypoglycemia in hyperinsulinemic states can develop within the first 30–60 minutes of life.

Blood glucose can be measured by heelstick using a bedside glucometer. All infants at risk should be screened, including IDMs, IUGR infants, premature infants, and any infant with suggestive symptoms. All low or borderline values should be confirmed by laboratory measurement of blood glucose concentration. It is important to continue surveillance of glucose concentration until the baby has been on full enteral feedings without intravenous supplementation for 24 hours, with a target of greater than 45 mg/dL before feeding. Relapse of hypoglycemia thereafter is unlikely.

Infants with hypoglycemia requiring IV glucose infusions for more than 5 days should be evaluated for less common disorders, including inborn errors of metabolism, hyperinsulinemic states, and deficiencies of counterregulatory hormones.

» Treatment

Therapy is based on the provision of enteral or parenteral glucose. Treatment guidelines are shown in Table 2–8. In hyperinsulinemic states, glucose boluses should be avoided and a higher glucose infusion rate used. After initial correction with a bolus of 10% dextrose in water ($D_{10}W$; 2 mL/kg), glucose infusion should be increased gradually as needed from a starting rate of 6 mg/kg/min, and weaned slowly when normoglycemic. IDMs and IUGR infants with polycythemia are at greatest risk for symptomatic hypoglycemia.

» Prognosis

The prognosis of hypoglycemia is good if therapy is prompt. CNS sequelae are more common in infants with hypoglycemic seizures and in neonates with persistent

Table 2–8. Hypoglycemia: suggested therapeutic regimens.

Screening Test[a]	Presence of Symptoms	Action
30–40 mg/dL	No symptoms of hypoglycemia	Draw blood glucose[b]; if the infant is alert and vigorous, feed; follow with frequent glucose monitoring.
		If the infant continues to have blood glucose < 40 mg/dL or is unable to feed, provide intravenous glucose at 6 mg/kg/min ($D_{10}W$ at 3.6 mL/kg/h).
< 40 mg/dL	Symptoms of hypoglycemia present	Draw blood glucose[b]; provide bolus of $D_{10}W$ (2 mL/kg) followed by an infusion of 6 mg/kg/min (3.6 mL/kg/h).
< 30 mg/dL	With or without symptoms of hypoglycemia	Draw blood glucose[b]; provide bolus of $D_{10}W$ followed by an infusion of 6 mg/kg/min.
		If IV access cannot be obtained immediately, an umbilical vein line should be used.

[a]Rapid bedside determination.
[b]Laboratory confirmation.

hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia may also potentiate brain injury after perinatal depression, and should be avoided.

Adamkin DH; Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Clinical report—postnatal glucose homeostasis in late preterm and term infants. Pediatrics 2011;127:575 [PMID: 21357346].

Hay WW Jr: Care of the infant of the diabetic mother. Curr Diab Rep 2012;12(1):4–15 [PMID: 22094826].

Rozance PJ, Hay WW Jr: Neonatal hypoglycemia. NeoReviews 2010;11:e681.

RESPIRATORY DISTRESS IN THE TERM NEWBORN INFANT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Tachypnea, respiratory rate > 60 breaths/min.
- Intercostal and sternal retractions.
- Expiratory grunting.
- Cyanosis in room air.

General Considerations

Respiratory distress is one of the most common symptom complexes of the newborn. It may result from cardiopulmonary and noncardiopulmonary causes (Table 2–9). Chest radiography, arterial blood gases, and pulse oximetry are useful in assessing the cause and severity of the distress. It is important to consider the noncardiopulmonary causes, because the natural tendency is to focus on the heart and lungs. Most of the noncardiopulmonary causes can be ruled out by the history, physical examination, and a few simple laboratory tests. The most common pulmonary causes of respiratory distress in the full-term infant are transient tachypnea, aspiration syndromes, congenital pneumonia, and pneumothorax.

Table 2–9. Causes of respiratory distress in the newborn.

Noncardiopulmonary
Hypothermia or hyperthermia
Hypoglycemia
Polycythemia
Metabolic acidosis
Drug intoxications or withdrawal
Insult to the central nervous system
Asphyxia
Hemorrhage
Neuromuscular disease
Phrenic nerve injury
Skeletal dysplasia
Cardiovascular
Left-sided outflow tract obstruction
Hypoplastic left heart
Aortic stenosis
Coarctation of the aorta, interrupted aortic arch
Cyanotic lesions
Transposition of the great vessels
Total anomalous pulmonary venous return
Tricuspid atresia
Right-sided outflow obstruction
Respiratory tract
Upper airway obstruction
Choanal atresia
Vocal cord paralysis
Subglottic stenosis
Lingual thyroid
Meconium aspiration
Clear fluid aspiration
Transient tachypnea
Pneumonia
Pulmonary hypoplasia
Hyaline membrane disease
Pneumothorax
Pleural effusions
Mass lesions
Lobar emphysema
Cystic adenomatoid malformation
Congenital diaphragmatic hernia

Reproduced, with permission, from Rosenberg AA: The neonate. In: Gabbe SG et al (eds): Obstetrics: Normal and Problem Pregnancies. Churchill Livingstone, 2007.

A. Transient Tachypnea (Retained Fetal Lung Fluid)

Respiratory distress is typically present at birth, usually associated with a mild-to-moderate oxygen requirement (25%–50% O_2). The infant is usually full term or late preterm, nonasphyxiated, and born following a short labor or cesarean section without labor. The pathogenesis of the disorder is related to delayed clearance of fetal lung fluid via the circulation and pulmonary lymphatics. The chest radiograph shows perihilar streaking and fluid in interlobar fissures. Resolution usually occurs within 12–24 hours. Nasal CPAP can be very helpful in the clearance of the fluid.

B. Aspiration Syndromes

Typically occurs in full-term or late preterm infants with fetal distress prior to delivery or depression at delivery. Blood or meconium may be present in the amniotic fluid. Aspiration of meconium most commonly occurs in utero as a stressed infant gasps. Delivery room management of these infants is discussed in the resuscitation section. Respiratory distress is present from birth, often accompanied by a barrel

chest appearance and coarse breath sounds. Pneumonitis may cause an increasing O_2 need and may require intubation and ventilation. The chest radiograph shows coarse asymmetric infiltrates, hyperexpansion, and, in the worst cases, lobar consolidation. In some cases, because of secondary surfactant deficiency, the radiograph shows a diffuse homogeneous infiltrate pattern. Infants who aspirate are at risk of pneumothorax because of uneven aeration with segmental overdistention and are at risk for persistent pulmonary hypertension (see section Cardiac Problems in the Newborn Infant).

C. Congenital Pneumonia

The lungs are the most common site of infection in the neonate. Infections usually ascend from the genital tract before or during labor, with the vaginal or rectal flora the most likely agents (group B streptococci and Escherichia coli). Infants of any gestational age, with or without a history of prolonged rupture of membranes, chorioamnionitis, or maternal antibiotic administration, may be affected. Respiratory distress may begin at birth or may be delayed for several hours. The chest radiograph may resemble that of retained lung fluid or hyaline membrane disease. Rarely, there may be a lobar infiltrate or pleural effusion. Congenital pneumonia may be complicated by acquired surfactant deficiency or systemic sepsis.

Shock, poor perfusion, absolute neutropenia (< 2000/mL), and elevated C-reactive protein provide supportive evidence for pneumonia. Gram stain of tracheal aspirate may be helpful. Because no signs or laboratory findings can confirm a diagnosis of pneumonia, all infants with respiratory distress should have a blood culture performed and should receive broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy (ampicillin, 100 mg/kg in two divided doses, and gentamicin, 4 mg/kg q24h or 2.5 mg/kg q12h) until the diagnosis of bacterial infection is eliminated.

D. Spontaneous Pneumothorax

Spontaneous pneumothorax occurs in 1% of all deliveries. Risk is increased by interventions such as positive-pressure ventilation (PPV) in the delivery room. Respiratory distress (primarily tachypnea) is present from birth and typically is not severe. Breath sounds may be decreased on the affected side; heart tones may be shifted toward the opposite side and may be distant. The chest radiograph shows pneumothorax.

Treatment usually consists of supplemental O_2 and watchful waiting. Drainage by needle thoracentesis or tube thoracostomy is occasionally required. There is a slightly increased risk of renal abnormalities associated with spontaneous pneumothorax. Thus, careful physical examination of the kidneys and monitoring of urine output are indicated. If pulmonary hypoplasia with pneumothorax is suspected, renal ultrasound is indicated.

E. Other Respiratory Tract Causes

Other respiratory tract causes of respiratory distress are rare. Bilateral choanal atresia should be suspected if there is no air movement when the infant breathes through the nose. These infants have good color and heart rate while crying at delivery but become cyanotic and bradycardiac when they resume normal nasal breathing. Other causes of upper airway obstruction usually produce some degree of stridor or poor air movement despite good respiratory effort. Pleural effusion is likely in hydropic infants. Space-occupying lesions cause a shift of the mediastinum with asymmetrical breath sounds and are apparent on chest radiographs. Many are associated with severe respiratory distress.

» Treatment

Whatever the cause, neonatal respiratory distress is treated with supplemental oxygen sufficient to maintain a Pao_2 of 60–70 mm Hg and an oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry (Spo_2) of 92%–96%. Oxygen should be warmed, humidified, and delivered through an air blender. Concentration should be measured with a calibrated oxygen analyzer. An umbilical or peripheral arterial line should be considered in infants requiring more than 45% fraction of inspired oxygen (Fio_2) by 4–6 hours of life to allow frequent blood gas determinations. Noninvasive monitoring with pulse oximetry should be used.

Other supportive treatment includes IV glucose. Unless infection can be ruled out, blood cultures should be obtained, and broad-spectrum antibiotics started. Volume expansion (normal saline) can be given in infusions of 10 mL/kg over 30 minutes for low blood pressure, poor perfusion, and metabolic acidosis. Other specific testing should be done as indicated by the history and physical examination. In most cases, a chest radiograph, blood gas measurements, CBC, and blood glucose determination allow a diagnosis.

Intubation and ventilation should be undertaken if there is respiratory failure (Pao_2 < 60 mm Hg in > 60% Fio_2, $Paco_2$ > 60 mm Hg, or repeated apnea). Peak pressures should be adequate to produce chest wall expansion and audible breath sounds (usually 18–24 cm H_2O). Positive end-expiratory pressure (4–6 cm H_2O) should be used. Ventilation rates of 20–40 breaths/min are usually required. The goal is to maintain a Pao_2 of 60–70 mm Hg and a $Paco_2$ of 45–55 mm Hg.

» Prognosis

Most respiratory conditions of the full-term infant are acute and resolve in the first several days. Meconium aspiration and congenital pneumonia carry a mortality rate of up to 10% and can produce significant long-term pulmonary morbidity. Mortality has been reduced by use of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation and inhaled nitric oxide for treatment of pulmonary hypertension. Only rarely is ECMO needed as rescue therapy.

Edwards MO, Kotecha SJ, Kotecha K: Respiratory distress of the term newborn infant. Paediatr Resp Rev 2013;14(1):29–37 [PMID: 23347658].
Hooper SB et al: Establishing functional residual capacity at birth. NeoReviews 2010;11:e474.
Warren JB, Anderson JM: Newborn respiratory disorders. Pediatr Rev 2010;31:487 [PMID: 21123510].
Yeh TF: Core concepts: meconium aspiration syndrome: pathogenesis and current management. NeoReviews 2010;11:e503.

HEART MURMURS (SEE ALSO SECTION CARDIAC PROBLEMS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT)

Heart murmurs are common in the first days of life and do not usually signify structural heart problems. If a murmur is present at birth, it should be considered a valvular problem until proved otherwise because the common benign transitional murmurs (eg, patent ductus arteriosus) are not audible until minutes to hours after birth.

If an infant is pink, well-perfused, and in no respiratory distress, with palpable and symmetrical pulses (right brachial pulse no stronger than the femoral pulse), the murmur is most likely transitional. Transitional murmurs are soft (grade 1–3/6), heard at the left upper to midsternal border, and generally loudest during the first 24 hours. If the murmur persists beyond 24 hours of age, blood pressure in the right arm and a leg should be determined. If there is a difference of more than 15 mm Hg (arm > leg) or if the pulses in the lower extremities are difficult to palpate, a cardiologist should evaluate the infant for coarctation of the aorta. If there is no difference, the infant can be discharged home with follow-up in 2–3 days for auscultation and evaluation for signs of congestive failure. If signs of congestive failure or cyanosis are present, the infant should be referred for evaluation without delay. If the murmur persists without these signs, the infant can be referred for elective evaluation at age 2–4 weeks.

Frommelt MA: Differential diagnosis and approach to a heart murmur in term infants. Pediatr Clin North Am 2004;51:1023 [PMID: 15331284].
Mackie AS et al: Can cardiologists distinguish innocent from pathologic murmurs in neonates. J Pediatr 2009;154:150 [PMID: 18692204].

BIRTH TRAUMA

Most birth trauma is associated with difficult delivery (eg, large fetus, abnormal presenting position, or fetal distress requiring rapid extraction). The most common injuries are soft tissue bruising, fractures (clavicle, humerus, or femur), and cervical plexus palsies. Skull fracture, intracranial hemorrhage (primarily subdural and subarachnoid), and cervical spinal cord injury can also occur.

Fractures are often diagnosed by the obstetrician, who may feel or hear a snap during delivery. Clavicular fractures may cause decreased spontaneous movement of the arm, with local tenderness and crepitus. Humeral or femoral fractures usually cause tenderness and swelling over the shaft with a diaphyseal fracture, and always cause limitation of movement. Epiphyseal fractures are harder to diagnose radiographically owing to the cartilaginous nature of the epiphysis. After 8–10 days, callus is visible on radiographs. Treatment in all cases is gentle handling, with immobilization for 8–10 days: the humerus against the chest with elbow flexed; the femur with a posterior splint from below the knee to the buttock.

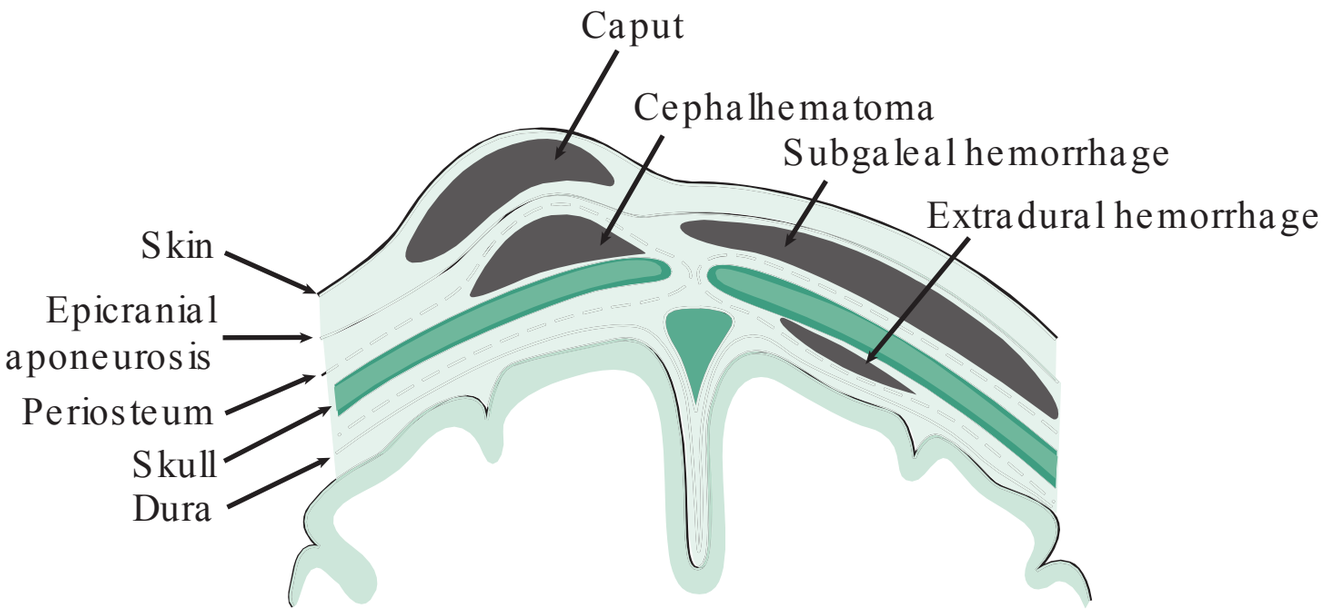
Brachial plexus injuries may result from traction as the head is pulled away from the shoulder during delivery. Injury to the C5–C6 roots is most common (Erb-Duchenne palsy). The arm is limp, adducted, and internally rotated, extended, and pronated at the elbow, and flexed at the wrist (so-called waiter's tip posture). Grasp is present. If the lower nerve roots (C8–T1) are injured (Klumpke palsy), the hand is flaccid. If the entire plexus is injured, the arm and hand are flaccid, with associated sensory deficit. Early treatment for brachial plexus injury is conservative, because function usually returns over several weeks. Referral should be made to a physical therapist so that parents can be instructed on range-of-motion exercises, splinting, and further evaluation if needed. Return of function begins in the deltoid and biceps, with recovery by 3 months in most cases.

Spinal cord injury can occur at birth, especially in difficult breech extractions with hyperextension of the neck, or in midforceps rotations when the body fails to turn with the head. Infants are flaccid, quadriplegic, and without respiratory effort at birth. Facial movements are preserved. The long-term outlook for such infants is poor.

Facial nerve palsy is sometimes associated with forceps use but more often results from in utero pressure of the baby's head against the mother's sacrum. The infant has asymmetrical mouth movements and eye closure with poor facial movement on the affected side. Most cases resolve spontaneously in a few days to weeks.

Subgaleal hemorrhage into the large potential space under the scalp (Figure 2–5) is associated with difficult vaginal deliveries and repeated attempts at vacuum extraction. It can lead to hypovolemic shock and death from blood loss and coagulopathy triggered by consumption of clotting factors. This is an emergency requiring rapid replacement of blood and clotting factors.

Sutcliffe TL: Brachial plexus injury in the newborn. NeoReviews 2007;8:e239.
Uhring MR: Management of birth injuries. Clin Perinatol 2005;32:19 [PMID: 15777819].



▲**Figure 2–5.** Sites of extracranial bleeding in the newborn. (Reproduced with permission from Pape KE and Wigglesworth JS: Haemorrhage, Ischemia, and the Perinatal Brain. Clinics in Developmental Medicine. Spastics International Medical Publications. William Heinemann Medical Books Limited, London, and JB Lippincott Company, Philadelphia, 1979.)

INFANTS OF MOTHERS WHO ABUSE DRUGS

Current studies estimate that up to 15% of women use alcohol and 5%–15% use illicit drugs during pregnancy, depending on the population studied and the methods of ascertainment. Drugs most commonly used are tobacco, alcohol, marijuana, cocaine, and methamphetamine. Because mothers may abuse many drugs and give an unreliable history of drug usage, it is difficult to pinpoint which drug is causing the morbidity seen in a newborn infant. Early hospital discharge makes recognition of these infants based on physical findings and abnormal behavior difficult. Except for alcohol, a birth defect syndrome has not been defined for any substance of abuse.

1. Cocaine & Methamphetamine

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Triad of no prenatal care, premature delivery, placental abruption.
- Possible IUGR.
- Irritability.

Cocaine and methamphetamine are often used in association with other drugs such as tobacco, alcohol, and marijuana. These stimulants can cause maternal hypertension, decreased uterine blood flow, fetal hypoxemia, uterine contractions, and placental abruption. Rates of stillbirth, placental abruption, symmetric IUGR, and preterm delivery are increased in users. In the high-risk setting of no prenatal care, placental abruption, and preterm labor, urine toxicology screens should be performed on the mother and infant; consent from the mother for testing her urine may be required. Meconium or an umbilical cord sample should be sent for drug screening as it enhances diagnosis by indicating cumulative drug exposure from the first trimester forward. Although no specific malformation complex or withdrawal syndrome is described for cocaine and methamphetamine abuse, infants may show irritability, tremors, increased stress response, and poor state regulation.

Children of mothers who use methamphetamines are at particularly high risk for neglect and abuse. Social services evaluation is especially important to assess the home environment for these risks. The risk of SIDS is three to seven times higher in infants of users than in those of nonusers (0.5%–1% of exposed infants). The risk may be lessened by environmental interventions such as avoidance of tobacco smoke and supine infant positioning.

2. Opioids

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- CNS—irritability, hyperactivity, hypertonicity, incessant high-pitched cry, tremors, seizures.
- GI—vomiting, diarrhea, weight loss, poor feeding, incessant hunger, excessive salivation.
- Metabolic and respiratory—nasal stuffiness, sneezing, yawning, sweating, hyperthermia.
- Often IUGR.

» Clinical Findings

The withdrawal signs seen in infants born to narcotic-addicted mothers, whether heroin, prescription narcotics, or methadone, are similar. These symptoms include problems with feeding and sleep, fever, increased tone, tremors, and seizures, and are referred to as neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS).

The symptoms in infants born to methadone-maintained mothers may be delayed in onset, more severe, and more prolonged than those seen with heroin addiction. Symptoms usually begin within 1–3 days of life. The clinical picture is typical enough to suggest a diagnosis even if a maternal history of narcotic abuse has not been obtained. Confirmation should be made with maternal and newborn toxicology screening.

» Treatment

If opioid abuse or withdrawal is suspected, the infant is not a candidate for early discharge. A serial scoring system should be used, to objectively diagnose NAS and quantify the severity of symptoms. Supportive treatment includes swaddling the infant and providing a quiet, dimly lit environment, minimizing procedures, and disturbing the infant as little as possible. Specific treatment should be used when the infant has severe symptoms or excessive weight loss. No single drug has been identified as optimally effective. Oral morphine (0.1–0.5 mg/kg/dose q6–12h) or methadone (0.05–0.1 mg/kg/dose q6–12h) are the most commonly used first-line agents for NAS. Phenobarbital (5 mg/kg/dose daily) may be used for increased irritability, particularly in patients who were exposed to multiple drugs. Treatment can be tapered over several days to 2 weeks, as tolerated. It is also important to review maternal tests for HIV, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C, as all are common in intravenous drug users.

» Prognosis

These infants often have chronic neurobehavioral handicaps; however, it is difficult to distinguish the effects of in utero drug exposure from those of the environment. Infants of opioid abusers have a four- to fivefold increased risk of SIDS.

3. Alcohol

Alcohol is the only recreational drug of abuse that is clearly teratogenic, and prenatal exposure to alcohol is the most common preventable cause of mental retardation. Prevalence estimates of fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) in the United States range from 0.5 to 2 per 1000 live births with up to 1 in 100 having lesser effects (fetal alcohol spectrum disorders). The effects of alcohol on the fetus and newborn are determined by the degree and timing of ethanol exposure and by the maternal, fetal, and placental metabolism of ethanol, which is likely genetically determined. Although there is no clear evidence that minimal amounts of alcohol are harmful, there is no established safe dose. Fetal growth and development are adversely affected if drinking continues throughout the pregnancy, and infants can occasionally experience withdrawal similar to that associated with maternal opioid abuse. Clinical features of FAS that may be observed in the newborn period are listed in Table 2–10.

Table 2–10. Features observed in fetal alcohol syndrome in the newborn.

Craniofacial
Short palpebral fissures
Thin vermillion of upper lip
Flattened philtrum
Growth
Prenatal and postnatal growth deficiency (small for gestational age, failure to thrive)
Central nervous system
Microcephaly
Partial or complete agenesis of the corpus callosum
Optic nerve hypoplasia
Hypotonia, poor feeding

This diagnosis is usually easier to recognize in older infants and children.

4. Tobacco Smoking

The fetus is exposed to nicotine concentrations that are 15% higher than in maternal blood. Smoking has a negative effect on fetal growth rate. The more the mother smokes, the greater is the degree of IUGR. There is a twofold increase in low birth weight even in light smokers (< 10 cigarettes per day). Infants exposed to nicotine prenatally are also at increased risk for preterm labor and SIDS. Smoking during pregnancy has been associated with irritability, hypertonicity, hyperexcitability, and tremors in the newborn.

5. Marijuana

Marijuana is the most frequently used illegal drug, and now that it is legal in certain states, there is concern for increased use among pregnant women. It does not appear to be teratogenic, and although a mild abstinence-type syndrome has been described, infants exposed to marijuana in utero rarely require treatment. Some long-term neurodevelopmental problems, particularly increased impulsivity and hyperactivity and problems in abstract and visual reasoning, have been noted.

6. Other Drugs

Other drugs with potential effects on the newborn fall in two categories. First are drugs to which the fetus is exposed because of therapy for maternal conditions. The human placenta is relatively permeable, particularly to lipophilic solutes. If possible, maternal drug therapy should be postponed until after the first trimester to avoid teratogenic effects. Drugs with potential fetal toxicity include antineoplastics, antithyroid agents, warfarin, lithium, and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (eg, captopril and enalapril). Anticonvulsants, especially high-dose or multiple drug

therapy, may be associated with craniofacial abnormalities. The use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, benzodiazepines, and antipsychotic medications appears to be generally safe, and risk should be balanced against the risk of untreated psychiatric conditions in the mother. However, up to 33% of infants exposed to SSRI medications in utero experience signs of NAS during the first days of life. Paroxetine seems to have the greatest propensity to cause abstinence symptoms. Phenobarbital may be used for severe irritability.

In the second category are drugs transmitted to the infant in breast milk. Most drugs taken by the mother achieve some concentration in breast milk, although they usually do not present a problem to the infant. If the drug is one that could have adverse effects on the infant, timing breast-feeding to coincide with trough concentrations in the mother may be useful.

ACOG Committee on Health Care for Underserved Women: Committee Opinion #479: Methamphetamine abuse in women of reproductive age. Obstet Gynecol 2011;117:751 [PMID: 21343793].

Burgos AE, Burke BL: Neonatal abstinence syndrome. NeoReviews 2009;10:e222. doi:10.1542/neo.10-5-e222.

Dannaway DC, Mulvihill JJ: Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder. NeoReviews 2009;10:e230. doi:10.1542/neo.10-5-e230.

Jansson LM, Velez ML: Infants of drug dependent mothers. Pediatr Rev 2011;32:5 [PMID: 21196501].

Wong S et al; the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Committee, Family Physicians Advisory Committee, and Medicolegal Committee: Substance use in pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2011;33:367 [PMID: 21501542].

MULTIPLE BIRTHS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Monochorial twins
- Always monozygous (identical twins) and same sex.
- Can be diamniotic or monoamniotic.
- Risk for twin-to-twin transfusion and higher risk of congenital anomalies, neurodevelopmental problems, and cerebral palsy.

» Dichorial twins
- Either dizygous (fraternal twins) or monozygous (identical twins); same sex or different sex.
- Can have growth restriction due to abnormal placental implantation.
- Not at risk for twin transfusion syndrome; less risk for anomalies and neurodevelopmental problems than monochorial twins.

Historically, twinning occurred at a rate of 1 in 80 pregnancies (1.25%). The incidence of twinning and higher-order multiple births in the United States has increased because of assisted reproductive technologies. In 2005, twins occurred in 3.2% of live births in the United States, a 70% increase since 1980.

A distinction should be made between dizygous (fraternal) and monozygous (identical) twins. Race, maternal parity, and maternal age affect the incidence of dizygous, but not monozygous, twinning. Drugs used to induce ovulation, such as clomiphene citrate and gonadotropins, increase the incidence of dizygotic or polyzygotic twinning. Monozygous twinning also seems to be more common after assisted reproduction. The incidence of malformations is also increased in identical twins and may affect only one of the twins. If a defect is found in one twin, the other should be examined carefully for lesser degrees of the same defect.

Early transvaginal ultrasound and examination of the placenta after birth can help establish the type of twinning. Two amnionic membranes and two chorionic membranes are found in all dizygous twins and in one-third of monozygous twins even when the placental disks appear to be fused into one. A single chorionic membrane always indicates monozygous twins. The rare monochorial, monoamniotic situation (1% of twins) is especially dangerous, with a high risk of antenatal cord entanglement and death of one or both twins. Close fetal surveillance is indicated, and preterm delivery is often elected.

» Complications of Multiple Births

A. Intrauterine Growth Restriction

There is some degree of IUGR in most multiple pregnancies, especially after 32 weeks, although it is usually not clinically significant with two exceptions. First, in monochorial twin pregnancy an arteriovenous shunt may develop between the twins (twin-twin transfusion syndrome). The twin on the venous side (recipient) becomes plethoric and larger than the smaller anemic twin (donor), who may ultimately die or be severely growth restricted. The occurrence of polyhydramnios in the larger twin and severe oligohydramnios in the smaller may be the first sign of this problem. Second, discordance in size (birth weights that are significantly different) can also occur when separate placentas are present if one placenta develops poorly, because of a poor implantation site. In this instance, no fetal exchange of blood takes place but the growth rates of the two infants are different.

B. Preterm Delivery

Length of gestation tends to be inversely related to the number of fetuses. The mean age at delivery for singletons is 38.8 weeks, for twins 35.3 weeks, for triplets 32.2 weeks, and for quadruplets 29.9 weeks. The prematurity rate in multiple gestations is 5–10 times that of singletons, with

50% of twins and 90% of triplets born before 37 weeks. There is an increased incidence of cerebral palsy in multiple births, more so with monochorial than dichorial infants. Prematurity is the main cause of increased mortality and morbidity in twins, although in the case of monochorial twins, intravascular exchange through placental anastomoses, particularly after the death of one twin, also increases the risk substantially.

C. Obstetric Complications

Polyhydramnios, pregnancy-induced hypertension, premature rupture of membranes, abnormal fetal presentations, and prolapsed umbilical cord occur more frequently in women with multiple fetuses. Multiple pregnancies should always be identified prenatally with ultrasound examinations; doing so allows the obstetrician and pediatrician or neonatologist to plan management jointly. Because neonatal complications are usually related to prematurity, prolongation of pregnancy significantly reduces neonatal morbidity.

Cleary-Goldman J, D'Alton ME: Growth abnormalities and multiple gestations. Semin Perinatol 2008;32:206 [PMID: 18482623].

Habli M et al: Twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: a comprehensive update. Clin Perinatol 2009;36:391 [PMID: 19559327].

Rand L, Lee H: Complicated monochorionic twin pregnancies: updates in fetal diagnosis and treatment. Clin Perinatol 2009;36:417 [PMID: 19559328].

NEONATAL INTENSIVE CARE

PERINATAL RESUSCITATION

Perinatal resuscitation refers to the steps taken by the obstetrician to support the infant during labor and delivery and the resuscitative steps taken by the pediatrician after delivery. Intrapartum support includes maintaining maternal blood pressure, maternal oxygen therapy, positioning the mother to improve placental perfusion, readjusting oxytocin infusions or administering a tocolytic if appropriate, minimizing trauma to the infant, obtaining all necessary cord blood samples, and completing an examination of the placenta. The pediatrician or neonatologist focuses on temperature support, initiation and maintenance of effective ventilation, maintenance of perfusion and hydration, and glucose regulation.

A number of conditions associated with pregnancy, labor, and delivery place the infant at risk for birth asphyxia: (1) maternal diseases such as diabetes, pregnancy-induced hypertension, heart and renal disease, and collagen-vascular disease; (2) fetal conditions such as prematurity, multiple births, growth restriction, and fetal anomalies; and (3) labor and delivery conditions, including fetal distress with or without meconium in the amniotic fluid, and administration of anesthetics and opioid analgesics.

Physiology of Birth Asphyxia

Birth asphyxia can be the result of (1) acute interruption of umbilical blood flow (eg, prolapsed cord with cord compression), (2) premature placental separation, (3) maternal hypotension or hypoxia, (4) chronic placental insufficiency, and (5) failure to perform resuscitation properly.

The neonatal response to asphyxia follows a predictable pattern (Figure 2–6). The initial response to hypoxia is an increase in respiratory rate and a rise in heart rate and blood pressure. Respirations then cease (primary apnea) as heart rate and blood pressure begin to fall. The initial period of apnea lasts 30–60 seconds. Gasping respirations (3–6/min) then begin, while heart rate and blood pressure gradually decline. Secondary or terminal apnea then ensues, with further decline in heart rate and blood pressure. The longer the duration of secondary apnea, the greater is the risk for hypoxic organ injury. A cardinal feature of the defense against hypoxia is the

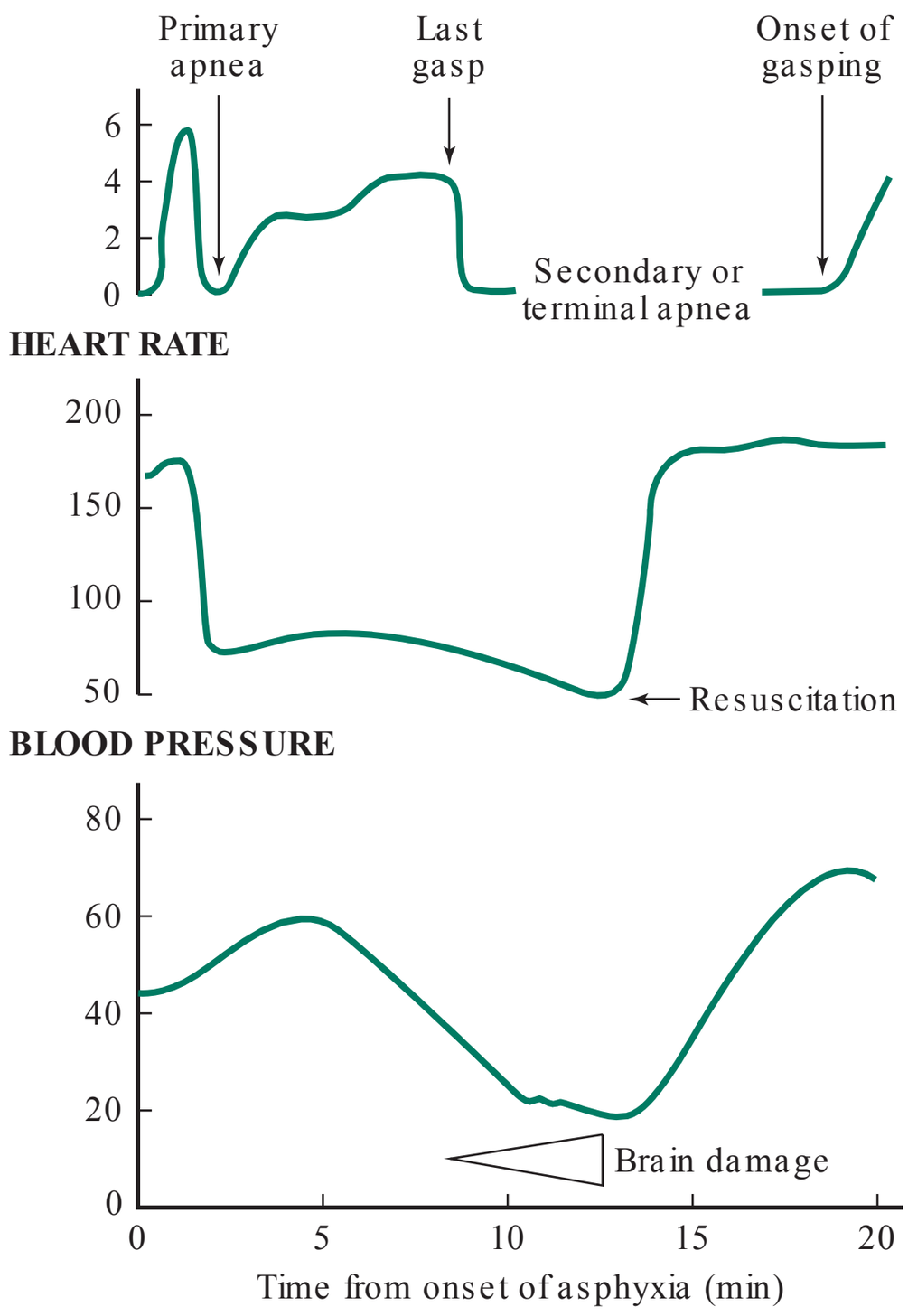


Figure 2–6. Schematic depiction of changes in rhesus monkeys during asphyxia and on resuscitation by positive-pressure ventilation. The risk for permanent brain damage increases the longer effective resuscitation is delayed. (Adapted with permission from Dawes GS: Fetal and Neonatal Physiology. Chicago: Year Book Publishing; 1968.)

underperfusion of certain tissue beds (eg, skin, muscle, kidneys, and GI tract), which allows maintenance of perfusion to core organs (ie, heart, brain, and adrenals).

Response to resuscitation also follows a predictable pattern. During the period of primary apnea, almost any physical stimulus causes the infant to initiate respirations. Infants in secondary apnea require PPV. The first sign of recovery is an increase in heart rate, followed by an increase in blood pressure with improved perfusion. The time required for rhythmic, spontaneous respirations to occur is related to the duration of the secondary apnea. As a rough rule, for each minute past the last gasp, 2 minutes of PPV is required before gasping begins and 4 minutes is required to reach rhythmic breathing. Not until sometime later do spinal and corneal reflexes return. Muscle tone gradually improves over the course of several hours.

Delivery Room Management

When asphyxia is anticipated, a resuscitation team of at least two persons should be present: one to manage the airway and one to monitor the heartbeat and provide assistance. The necessary equipment and drugs are listed in Table 2–11.

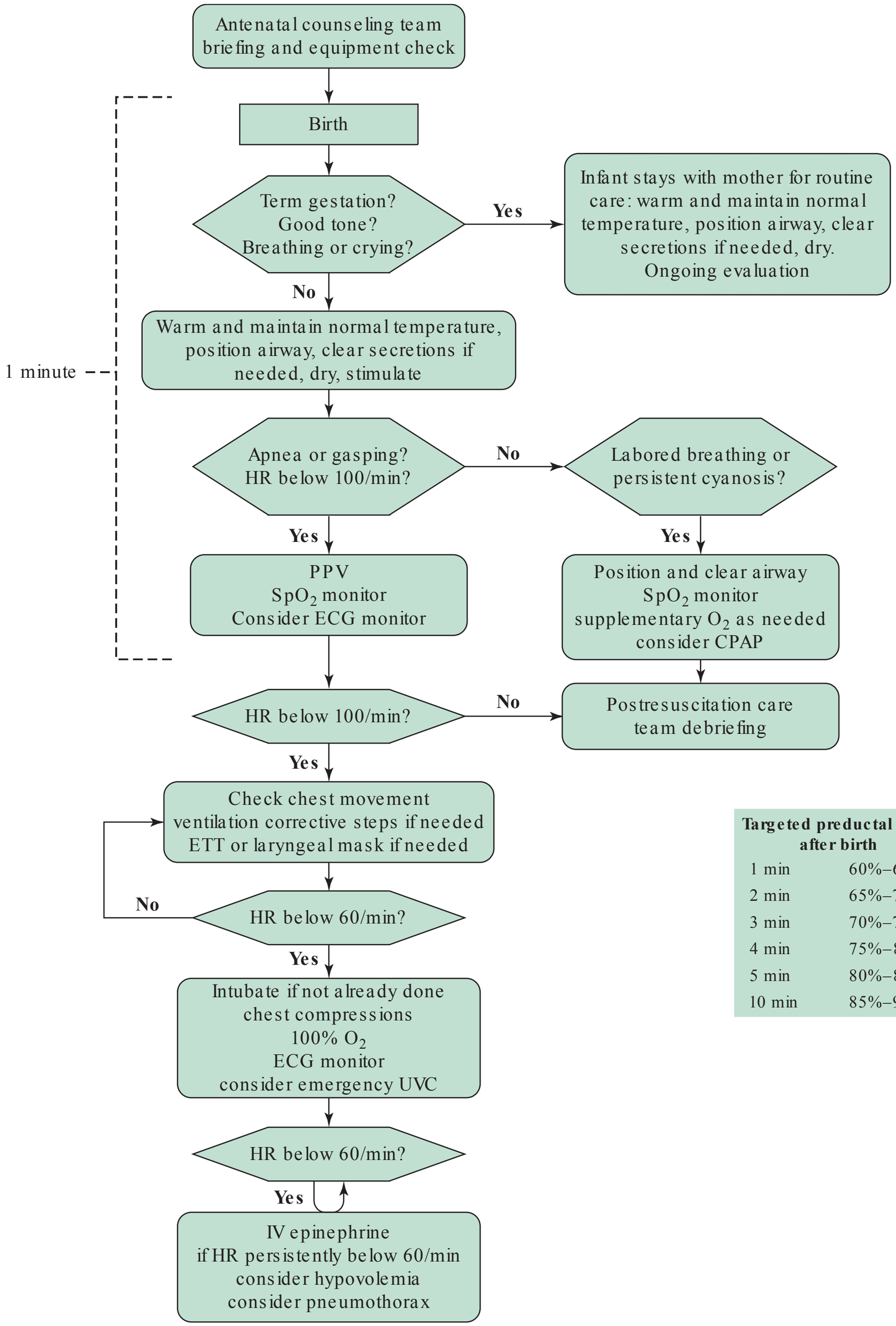
A. Steps in the Resuscitative Process (Figure 2–7)

1. Dry the infant well and place him or her under a radiant heat source. Do not allow the infant to become hyperthermic.
2. Position the infant to open the airway. Gently suction the mouth, then the nose.
3. Quickly assess the infant's condition. The best criteria are the infant's respiratory effort (apneic, gasping, or regular) and heart rate (> 100 or < 100 beats/min). A depressed heart rate—indicative of hypoxic myocardial depression—is the single most reliable indicator of the need for resuscitation.
4. Infants who are breathing and have heart rates more than 100 beats/min usually require no further intervention other than supplemental oxygen if persistently cyanotic. Infants with heart rates less than 100 beats/min and apnea or irregular respiratory efforts should be stimulated gently. The infant's back should be rubbed and/or heels flicked.
5. If the infant fails to respond to tactile stimulation within a few seconds, begin bag and mask ventilation, using a soft mask that seals well around the mouth and nose. For the initial inflations, pressures up to 30–40 cm H_2O may be necessary to overcome surface-active forces in the lungs. Adequacy of ventilation is assessed by observing expansion of the infant's chest accompanied by an improvement in heart rate, perfusion, and color. After the first few breaths, lower the peak pressure to 15–20 cm H_2O. The chest movement should resemble that of an easy breath rather than a deep sigh. The rate of bagging should be 40–60 breaths/min. An oximeter probe should be placed on the infant's right hand.
6. Most neonates can be resuscitated effectively with a bag and mask. If the infant does not respond to bag and mask ventilation, reposition the head (slight extension), reapply the mask to achieve a good seal, consider suctioning the mouth and the oropharynx, and try ventilating with the mouth open. An increase in peak pressure should also be attempted, but if the infant does not respond within 30 seconds, intubation is appropriate.

Table 2–11. Equipment for neonatal resuscitation.

Clinical Needs	Equipment
Thermoregulation	Radiant heat source with platform, mattress covered with warm sterile blankets, servo control heating, temperature probe, gallon size food-grade plastic bag or plastic wrap and an exothermic blanket (preterm)
Airway management	Suction: bulb suction, mechanical suction with sterile catheters (6Fr, 8Fr, 10Fr), meconium aspirator
	Ventilation: manual infant resuscitation bag connected to manometer or with a pressure-release valve, or T-piece resuscitator, capable of delivering 100% oxygen; appropriate masks for term and preterm infants, oral airways, stethoscope, oxygen blender, pulse oximeter
	Intubation: neonatal laryngoscope with No. 0 and No. 1 blades; endotracheal tubes (2.5, 3.0, 3.5 mm outer diameter with stylet): extra bulbs and batteries for laryngoscope; scissors, adhesive tape, gloves, end-tidal CO_2 detection device
Gastric decompression	Nasogastric tube: 8Fr with 20-mL syringe
Administration of drugs and volume replacement	Sterile umbilical catheterization tray, umbilical catheters (3.5Fr and 5Fr), normal saline, drug box[a] with appropriate neonatal vials and dilutions, sterile syringes, needles, and alcohol sponges
Transport	Warmed transport isolette with oxygen source

[a]Epinephrine 1:10,000; 10% dextrose.
Modified, with permission, from Rosenberg AA: The neonate. In: Gabbe SG et al (eds): Obstetrics: Normal and Problem Pregnancies. Churchill Livingstone, 2007.



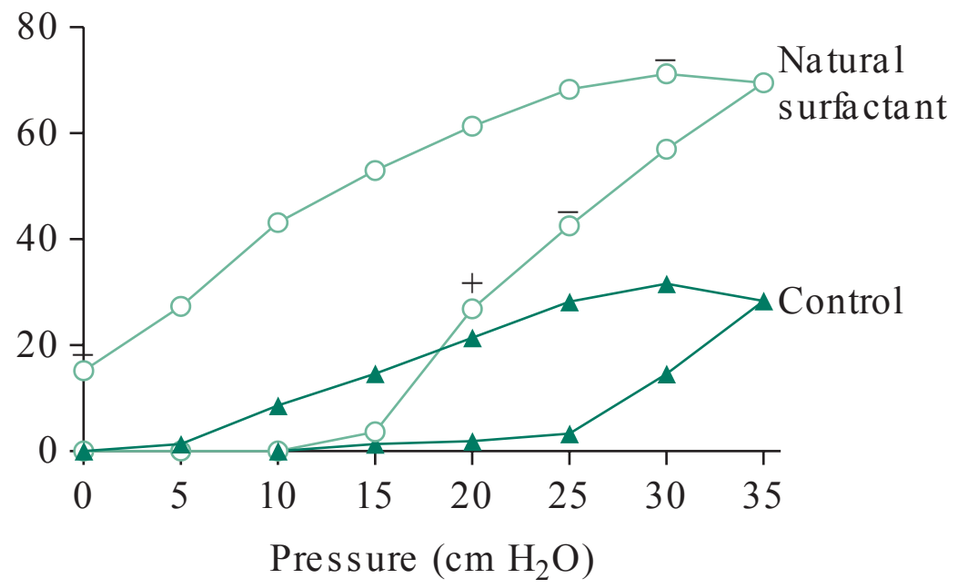
Targeted preductal Spo_2 after birth	
1 min	60%–65%
2 min	65%–70%
3 min	70%–75%
4 min	75%–80%
5 min	80%–85%
10 min	85%–95%

▲**Figure 2–7.** Delivery room management. (Reproduced with permission from Wyckoff MH, Aziz K, Escobedo MB, et al: Part 13: Neonatal Resuscitation: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Circulation. 2015 Nov 3;132(18 Suppl 2):S543-S560.)

Table 2–12. Mechanical causes of failed resuscitation.

Cause	Examples
Equipment failure	Malfunctioning bag, oxygen not connected or running
Endotracheal tube malposition	Esophagus, right main stem bronchus
Occluded endotracheal tube	
Insufficient inflation pressure to expand lungs	
Space-occupying lesions in the thorax	Pneumothorax, pleural effusions, diaphragmatic hernia
Pulmonary hypoplasia	Extreme prematurity, oligohydramnios

Reproduced with permission from Rosenberg AA: The neonate. In: Gabbe SG et al (eds): Obstetrics: Normal and Problem Pregnancies. Churchill Livingstone, 2007.



▲**Figure 2–8.** Pressure–volume relationships for the inflation and deflation of surfactant-deficient and surfactant-treated preterm rabbit lungs. (Reproduced, with permission, from Jobe AH: The developmental biology of the lung. In: Fanaroff AA, Martin RJ [eds]: Neonatal-Perinatal Medicine: Diseases of the Fetus and Infant. 6th ed. Mosby, 1997.)

Failure to respond to intubation and ventilation can result from (1) mechanical difficulties (Table 2–12), (2) profound asphyxia with myocardial depression, and (3) inadequate circulating blood volume.

Quickly rule out the mechanical causes listed in Table 2–12. Check to ensure that the endotracheal tube passes through the vocal cords. A CO_2 detector placed between the endotracheal tube and the bag can be helpful as a rapid confirmation of proper tube position in the airway. Occlusion of the tube should be suspected when there is resistance to bagging and no chest wall movement. Very few neonates (~0.1%) require either cardiac compressions or drugs during resuscitation. Almost all newborns respond to ventilation if done effectively. All resuscitations in term infants should begin using room air. Oxygen concentration can be increased using an oxygen blender during PPV to achieve oxygen saturation targets (Figure 2–8). It is not expected for the preductal (right hand) oxygen saturation to reach 90% until 10 minutes of age. The use of 100% oxygen may increase the risk of postresuscitative oxidative injury without any improvement in efficacy.

7. If mechanical causes are ruled out and the heart rate remains less than 60 beats/min after intubation and effective PPV for 30 seconds, cardiac compressions should be initiated. Chest compressions should be synchronized with ventilation at a 3:1 ratio (90 compressions and 30 breaths/min).

8. If drugs are needed, the drug and dose of choice is epinephrine 1:10,000 solution (0.1–0.3 mL/kg) given via an umbilical venous line. If volume loss is suspected, 10 mL/kg of normal saline should be administered through an umbilical vein line.

B. Continued Resuscitative Measures

The appropriateness of continued resuscitative efforts should be reevaluated in infants who do not respond to initial measures. In current practice, resuscitative efforts are made even in apparent stillbirths (ie, infants whose Apgar score at 1 minute is 0–1). Modern resuscitative techniques have led to improved survival in such infants, with 60% of survivors showing normal development. Although it is clear that resuscitation of these infants should be performed, subsequent continued support depends on the response to resuscitation. If the Apgar score does not improve markedly in the first 10 minutes of life, the mortality rate and the incidence of severe developmental handicaps among survivors are high.

C. Special Considerations

1. Preterm infants

a. Minimizing heat loss improves survival. Prewarmed towels should be available. The environmental temperature of the delivery suite should be raised to more than 25°C (especially for infants weighing < 1500 g). An occlusive skin cover such as a gallon-sized food-grade plastic bag with an opening to slip over the infant's head and an exothermic blanket should be used to minimize heat loss in the extremely low-birth-weight (< 1000 g) infant.

b. The lungs of preterm infants are especially prone to injury from PPV due to volutrauma. For this reason, if possible, the infant's respiratory efforts should be supported with nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) rather than PPV. If PPV is needed, a T-piece resuscitation device should be used to allow precise and consistent regulation of pressure delivery. Resuscitation in the preterm should begin with a blended

oxygen concentration of 21–30% with titration to achieve target oxygen saturations.

c. In the infant of extremely low gestational age (< 27 weeks), immediate intubation for administration of surfactant should be considered.

d. Volume expanders should be infused slowly to minimize rapid swings in blood pressure, especially important in the ELBW infant.

2. Narcotic depression—In the case of opioid administration to the mother within 4 hours of delivery, institute resuscitation as described earlier. When the baby is stable with good heart rate, color, and perfusion, but still has poor respiratory effort, a trial of naloxone (0.1 mg/kg IV) may be indicated. Naloxone should not be administered in place of PPV. Naloxone should not be used in the infant of an opioid-addicted mother because it will precipitate withdrawal. Respiratory depression may recur over the next hours, requiring redosing of the antagonist.

3. Meconium-stained amniotic fluid

a. The obstetrician performs routine suctioning of the mouth and nose after birth.

b. If the infant is active and breathing, requiring no resuscitation, the airway need not be inspected—only further suctioning of the mouth and nasopharynx as required.

c. In the setting of a depressed infant requiring ventilation, the mouth and nose of the infant should be cleared, and PPV initiated. Suctioning meconium from the airway prior to PPV is no longer recommended.

d. Because most severe cases of meconium aspiration syndrome with pulmonary hypertension likely have their origins in utero, resuscitative efforts should not be excessively delayed with attempts to clear the airway of meconium.

4. Universal precautions—In the delivery suite, universal precautions should always be observed.

Treatment of the Asphyxiated Infant

Asphyxia is manifested by multiorgan dysfunction, seizures, neonatal encephalopathy, and metabolic acidemia. The infant with significant perinatal hypoxia and ischemia is at risk for dysfunction of multiple end organs (Table 2–13). The organ of greatest concern is the brain.

The features of neonatal encephalopathy are decreased level of consciousness, poor tone, decreased spontaneous movement, periodic breathing or apnea, and seizures. Brainstem signs (oculomotor and pupillary disturbances, absent gag reflex) may also be present. The severity and duration of clinical signs correlate with the severity of the insult. Other evaluations helpful in assessing severity in the full-term infant include electroencephalogram (EEG) and MRI which, particularly with diffusion-weighted imaging, is useful in the early evaluation of infants with perinatal asphyxia. A markedly abnormal EEG with voltage suppression and slowing evolving into a burst-suppression pattern is associated with severe clinical symptoms. MRI may show perfusion defects and areas of ischemic injury on diffusion weighted imaging.

Table 2–13. Signs and symptoms caused by asphyxia.

Neonatal encephalopathy, seizures
Respiratory distress due to aspiration or secondary surfactant deficiency, pulmonary hemorrhage
Persistent pulmonary hypertension
Hypotension due to myocardial dysfunction
Transient tricuspid valve insufficiency
Anuria or oliguria due to acute tubular necrosis
Feeding intolerance; necrotizing enterocolitis
Elevated aminotransferases due to liver injury
Adrenal insufficiency due to hemorrhage
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Hypocalcemia
Hypoglycemia
Persistent metabolic acidemia
Hyperkalemia

Management is directed at supportive care and treatment of specific abnormalities. Fluids should be restricted initially to 60–80 mL/kg/d; oxygenation should be maintained with mechanical ventilation if necessary; blood pressure should be supported with judicious volume expansion (if hypovolemic) and pressors; and glucose should be in the normal range of 45–100 mg/dL. Hypocalcemia, coagulation abnormalities, and metabolic acidemia should be corrected and seizures treated with IV phenobarbital (20 mg/kg as loading dose, with total initial 24-hour dosing up to 40 mg/kg). Hypothermia, either selective head cooling with mild systemic hypothermia or whole body cooling, initiated within 6 hours of birth, has been shown to improve outcome at 18-month follow-up of infants with moderate neurologic symptoms and an abnormal amplitude-integrated EEG. Efficacy has not been proved in the most severe cases of neonatal encephalopathy.

Birth Asphyxia: Long-Term Outcome

Fetal heart rate tracings, cord pH, and 1-minute Apgar scores are imprecise predictors of long-term outcome. Apgar scores of 0–3 at 5 minutes in full-term infants are associated with an increased risk of death in the first year of life and an 8% risk of cerebral palsy among survivors. The risks of mortality and morbidity increase with more prolonged depression of the Apgar score. The single best predictor of outcome is the severity of clinical neonatal encephalopathy (severe symptomatology including coma carries a 75% chance of death and a 100% rate of neurologic sequelae among survivors). The major sequela of neonatal encephalopathy is cerebral palsy with or without mental retardation and epilepsy.

Other prognostic features are prolonged seizures refractory to therapy, markedly abnormal EEG, and MRI scan with evidence of major ischemic injury.

American Heart Association and American Academy of Pediatrics: Textbook of Neonatal Resuscitation. 6th ed. American Heart Association/American Academy of Pediatrics, 2011.

Bry K: Newborn resuscitation and the lung. NeoReviews 2008;9:e506.

Nelson K: Causative factors in cerebral palsy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 2008;51:749 [PMID: 18981800].

Papile LA et al: Committee on Fetus and Newborn: hypothermia and neonatal encephalopathy. Pediatrics 2014;133(6):1146 [PMID: 24864176].

Shankaran S: Neonatal encephalopathy: treatment with hypothermia. NeoReviews 2010;11:e85.

THE PRETERM INFANT

Premature infants comprise the majority of high-risk newborns. The preterm infant faces a variety of physiologic handicaps:

1. The ability to coordinate sucking, swallowing, and breathing is not achieved until 34–36 weeks' gestation. Therefore, enteral feedings must be provided by gavage.
2. Lack of body fat stores causes decreased ability to maintain body temperature, and may predispose to hypoglycemia.
3. Pulmonary immaturity–surfactant deficiency is associated with structural immaturity in infants younger than 26 weeks' gestation. This condition is exacerbated by the combination of noncompliant lungs and an extremely compliant chest wall, causing inefficient respiratory mechanics.
4. Immature respiratory control leads to apnea and bradycardia.
5. Persistent patency of the ductus arteriosus compromises pulmonary gas exchange because of overperfusion and edema of the lungs.
6. Immature cerebral vasculature and structure predisposes to subependymal and intraventricular hemorrhage, and periventricular leukomalacia (PVL).
7. Impaired substrate absorption by the GI tract compromises nutritional management.
8. Immature renal function (including both filtration and tubular functions) complicates fluid and electrolyte management.
9. Increased susceptibility to infection.
10. Immaturity of metabolic processes predisposes to hypoglycemia and hypocalcemia.

1. Delivery Room Care

See section Perinatal Resuscitation.

2. Care in the Nursery

A. Thermoregulation

Maintaining stable body temperature is a function of heat production and conservation balanced against heat loss. Heat production in response to cold stress occurs through voluntary muscle activity, involuntary muscle activity (shivering), and thermogenesis not caused by shivering. Newborns produce heat mainly through the last of these three mechanisms. This metabolic heat production depends on the quantity of brown fat, which is very limited in the preterm infant. In addition to decreased heat production in preterm infants, heat loss is accelerated because of a high ratio of surface area to body mass, reduced insulation by subcutaneous tissue, and water loss through the immature skin.

The thermal environment of the preterm neonate must be regulated carefully. The infant can be kept warm in an isolette, in which the air is heated and convective heat loss is minimized. The infant can also be kept warm on an open bed with a radiant heat source. Ideally, the infant should be kept in a neutral thermal environment. The neutral thermal environment allows the infant to maintain a stable core body temperature with a minimum of metabolic heat production through oxygen consumption. The neutral thermal environment depends on the infant's size, gestational age, and postnatal age. The neutral thermal environment (for either isolette or radiant warmer care) can be obtained by maintaining an abdominal skin temperature of 36.5°C. Generally, when infants reach 1700–1800 g, they are able to maintain temperature while bundled in an open crib.

B. Monitoring the High-Risk Infant

At a minimum, equipment to monitor heart rate, respirations, and blood pressure should be available. Oxygen saturation is assessed continuously using pulse oximetry, correlated with arterial oxygen tension (Pao_2) as needed. Transcutaneous Po_2 and Pco_2 can also be used to assess oxygenation and ventilation in sicker infants. Arterial blood gases, electrolytes, glucose, calcium, bilirubin, and other chemistries must be measured on small volumes of blood. Early in the care of a sick preterm infant, the most efficient way to sample blood for tests as well as to provide fluids and monitor blood pressure is through an umbilical arterial line. Once the infant is stable and the need for frequent blood samples is reduced (usually 4–7 days), the umbilical line should be removed. All indwelling lines are associated with morbidity from thrombosis or embolism, infection, and bleeding.

C. Fluid and Electrolyte Therapy

Fluid requirements in preterm infants are a function of (1) insensible losses (skin and respiratory tract), (2) urine output, (3) stool output (< 5% of total), and (4) other losses, such as nasogastric losses. In most circumstances, the fluid

requirement is determined largely by insensible losses plus urine losses. The major contribution to insensible water loss is evaporative skin loss. The rate of water loss is a function of gestational age (body weight, skin thickness, and maturity), environment (losses are greater under a radiant warmer than in an isolette), and the use of phototherapy. Respiratory losses are minimal when humidified oxygen is used. The renal contribution to water requirement is influenced by the limited ability of the preterm neonate either to concentrate the urine and conserve water, or to excrete a water load.

Electrolyte requirements are minimal for the first 24–48 hours until there is significant urinary excretion. Basal requirements thereafter are as follows: sodium, 3 mEq/kg/d; potassium, 2 mEq/kg/d; chloride, 2–3 mEq/kg/d; and bicarbonate, 2–3 mEq/kg/d. In the infant younger than 30 weeks' gestation, sodium and bicarbonate losses in the urine are often elevated, thereby increasing the infant's requirements.

Initial fluid management after birth varies with the infant's size and gestation. Infants of more than 1200 g should start at 80–100 mL/kg/d of $D_{10}W$. Those weighing less should start at 100–120 mL/kg/d of either $D_{10}W$ or D_5W (infants < 800 g and born before 26 weeks' gestation often become hyperglycemic on $D_{10}W$ at these infusion rates). The most critical issue in fluid management is monitoring. Monitoring body weight, urine output, fluid and electrolyte intake, serum and urine electrolytes, and glucose allows fairly precise determination of the infant's water, glucose, and electrolyte needs. Parenteral nutrition should be started early, preferably on the first day, and continued until an adequate enteral intake is achieved.

D. Nutritional Support

The average caloric requirement for the growing premature infant is 120 kcal/kg/d. Desired weight gain is 15–20 g/kg/d for infants younger than 35 weeks, and 15 g/kg/d for those older than 35 weeks; linear and head circumference growth should average 1 cm/week. Infants initially require IV glucose infusion to maintain blood glucose concentration in the range of 60–100 mg/dL. Infusions of 5–7 mg/kg/min (~80–100 mL/kg/d of $D_{10}W$) are usually needed. Aggressive nutritional support in the very low-birth-weight infant should be started as soon as possible after birth, with parenteral alimentation solutions containing 3–4 g/kg/d of amino acids (Table 2–14). Small-volume trophic feeds with breast milk or 20 kcal/oz premature formula should be started by gavage at 10% or less of the infant's nutritional as soon as possible, generally within the first few days after birth. After several days of trophic feeds the infant can be slowly advanced to full caloric needs over 5–7 days. Even extremely small feedings can enhance intestinal readiness to accept larger feeding volumes. Intermittent bolus feedings are preferred because these appear to stimulate the release of gut-related hormones and may accelerate maturation of the GI tract, although in the extremely low-birth-weight infant (< 1000 g) or the postsurgical neonate, continuous-drip feeds are sometimes better tolerated.

In general, long-term nutritional support for infants of very low birth weight consists either of breast milk supplemented to increase protein, caloric density, and mineral content, or infant formulas modified for preterm infants. In these formulas,

Table 2–14. Use of parenteral alimentation solutions.

	Volume (mL/kg/d)	Carbohydrate (g/dL)	Protein (g/kg)	Lipid (g/kg)	Calories (kcal/kg)
Peripheral: short-term (7–10 d)					
Starting solution	100–150	$D_{10}W$	3	1	56–84
Target solution	150	$D_{12.5}W$	3–4	3	80–110
Central: long-term (> 10 d)					
Starting solution	100–150	$D_{10}W$	3	1	56–84
Target solution	130	$D_{12.5}$–$D_{15}W$	3–4	3	80–110

Notes
1. Advance dextrose in central hyperalimentation as tolerated per day as needed to achieve appropriate weight gain, as long as blood glucose remains normal, keeping glucose as 40%–60% of total calories administered.
2. Advance lipids by 0.5–1.0 g/kg/d as long as triglycerides are normal. Use 20% concentration.
3. Total water should be 100–150 mL/kg/d, depending on the child's fluid needs.

Monitoring
1. Blood glucose two or three times a day when changing dextrose concentration, then daily.
2. Electrolytes daily, then twice a week when the child is receiving a stable solution.
3. Every 1–2 wk: blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine; total protein and serum albumin; serum calcium, phosphate, magnesium, direct bilirubin, and CBC with platelet counts.
4. Triglyceride level after 24 h at 2 g/kg/d and 24 h at 3 g/kg/d, then every other week.

protein concentrations (~2 g/dL) and caloric concentrations (~24 kcal/oz) are relatively high. In addition, premature formulas contain some medium-chain triglycerides—which do not require bile for absorption—as an energy source. Increased calcium and phosphorus are provided to enhance bone mineralization. The infant should gradually be offered feedings of higher caloric density after a substantial volume (100–120 mL/kg/d) of 20 kcal/oz breast milk or formula is tolerated. Success of feedings is assessed by timely passage of feeds out of the stomach without emesis or large residual volumes, an abdominal examination free of distention, and a normal stool pattern.

When the preterm infant approaches term, the nutritional source for the bottle-fed infant can be changed to a transitional formula (22 kcal/oz) until age 6–9 months. Additional iron supplementation (2–4 mg/kg/d) is recommended for premature infants, beginning at 2 weeks to 2 months of age, depending on gestational age and number of previous transfusions. Infants who are treated with erythropoietin (epoetin alfa) for prevention or treatment of anemia of prematurity require a higher dosage of 4–6 mg/kg/d. Iron overload is a possibility in multiply transfused sick preterm infants; such infants should be evaluated with serum ferritin levels prior to beginning iron supplementation.

Abrams SA; Committee on Nutrition: Calcium and vitamin D requirements of enterally fed preterm infants. Pediatrics 2013; 131(5):e1676 [PMID 23629620].

De Curtis M, Rigo J: The nutrition of preterm infants. Early Hum Dev 2012;88(Suppl 1):S5 [PMID 22261289].

Rao R, Georgieff MK: Iron therapy for preterm infants. Clin Perinatol 2009;36:27 [PMID: 19161863].

Uhing MR, Das USG: Optimizing growth in the preterm infant. Clin Perinatol 2009;36:165 [PMID: 19161873].

3. Apnea in the Preterm Infant

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Respiratory pause of sufficient duration to result in cyanosis or bradycardia.
- Most common in infants born before 34 weeks' gestation; onset before 2 weeks of age.
- Methylxanthines (eg, caffeine) provide effective treatment.

General Considerations

Apnea is defined as a respiratory pause lasting more than 20 seconds—or any pause accompanied by cyanosis and bradycardia. Shorter respiratory pauses associated with cyanosis or bradycardia also qualify as significant apnea, whereas periodic breathing, which is common in full-term and preterm infants, is defined as regularly recurring ventilatory cycles interrupted by short pauses not associated with bradycardia or color change. By definition, apnea of prematurity is not associated with a predisposing factor, and is a diagnosis of exclusion. A variety of processes may precipitate apnea (Table 2–15) and should be considered before a diagnosis of apnea of prematurity is established.

Table 2–15. Causes of apnea in the preterm infant.

Temperature instability—both cold and heat stress
Response to passage of a feeding tube
Gastroesophageal reflux
Hypoxemia
Pulmonary parenchymal disease
Patent ductus arteriosus
Anemia
Infection
Sepsis (viral or bacterial)
Necrotizing enterocolitis
Metabolic causes
Hypoglycemia
Intracranial hemorrhage
Posthemorrhagic hydrocephalus
Seizures
Drugs (eg, morphine)
Apnea of prematurity

Apnea of prematurity is the most frequent cause of apnea. Most apnea of prematurity is mixed apnea characterized by a centrally (brainstem) mediated respiratory pause preceded or followed by airway obstruction. Less common is pure central or pure obstructive apnea. Apnea of prematurity is the result of immaturity of both the central respiratory regulatory centers and protective mechanisms that aid in maintaining airway patency.

Clinical Findings

Onset is typically during the first 2 weeks of life. The frequency of spells gradually increases with time. Pathologic apnea should be suspected if spells are sudden in onset, unusually frequent, or very severe. Apnea at birth or on the first day of life is unusual but can occur in the nonventilated preterm infant. In the full-term or late preterm infant, presentation at birth suggests neuromuscular abnormalities of an acute (asphyxia, birth trauma, or infection) or chronic (eg, congenital hypotonia or structural CNS lesion) nature.

All infants—regardless of the severity and frequency of apnea—require a minimum screening evaluation, including a general assessment of well-being (eg, tolerance of feedings, stable temperature, normal physical examination), a check of the association of spells with feeding, measurement of Pao_2 or Sao_2, blood glucose, hematocrit, and a review of the drug history. Infants with severe apnea of sudden onset require more extensive evaluation for primary causes, especially infection.

» Treatment

Any underlying cause should be treated. If the apnea is due simply to prematurity, symptomatic treatment is dictated by the frequency and severity of apneic spells. Spells frequent enough to interfere with other aspects of care (eg, feeding), or severe enough to cause cyanosis or bradycardia necessitating significant intervention or bag and mask ventilation require treatment. Caffeine citrate (20 mg/kg as loading dose and then 5–10 mg/kg/d) is the drug of choice. Side effects of caffeine are generally mild, and include tachycardia and occasional feeding intolerance. Target drug level, if monitored, is usually 10–20 mcg/mL. Nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), by treating the obstructive component of apnea, is effective in some infants. Intubation and ventilation can eliminate apneic spells but carry the risks associated with endotracheal intubation. Although many preterm infants are treated medically for possible reflux-associated apnea, there is little evidence to support this intervention. If suspected, a trial of continuous drip gastric or transpyloric feedings can be helpful as a diagnostic and therapeutic intervention.

» Prognosis

In most premature infants, apneic and bradycardiac spells cease by 34–36 weeks postmenstrual age. Spells that require intervention cease prior to self-resolving episodes. In infants born at less than 28 weeks' gestation, episodes may continue past term. Apneic and bradycardiac episodes in the nursery are not predictors of later SIDS, although the incidence of SIDS is slightly increased in preterm infants. Thus, home monitoring in infants who experienced apnea in the nursery is rarely indicated.

4. Hyaline Membrane Disease

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Tachypnea, cyanosis, and expiratory grunting.
- Poor air movement despite increased work of breathing.
- Chest radiograph showing hypoexpansion and air bronchograms.

» General Considerations

The most common cause of respiratory distress in the preterm infant is hyaline membrane disease. The incidence increases from 5% of infants born at 35–36 weeks' gestation to more than 50% of infants born at 26–28 weeks' gestation. This condition is caused by a deficiency of surfactant production as well as surfactant inactivation by protein leak into airspaces. Surfactant decreases surface tension in the alveolus during expiration, allowing the alveolus to remain partly expanded and maintain a functional residual capacity. The absence or inactivation of surfactant results in poor lung compliance and atelectasis. The infant must expend a great deal of effort to expand the lungs with each breath, and respiratory failure ensues (see Figure 2–8).

» Clinical Findings

Infants with hyaline membrane disease show all the clinical signs of respiratory distress. On auscultation, air movement is diminished despite vigorous respiratory effort. The chest radiograph demonstrates diffuse bilateral atelectasis, causing a ground-glass appearance. Major airways are highlighted by the atelectatic air sacs, creating air bronchograms. In the unintubated child, doming of the diaphragm and hypoinflation occur.

» Treatment

Supplemental oxygen, nasal CPAP, early intubation for surfactant administration and ventilation, and placement of umbilical artery and vein lines are the initial interventions required. A ventilator that can deliver breaths synchronized with the infant's respiratory efforts (synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation) and accurately deliver a preset tidal volume (5–6 mL/kg) should be used. Alternatively, pressure limited ventilation with measurement of exhaled tidal volumes can be used. High-frequency ventilators are available for rescue of infants doing poorly on conventional ventilation.

Surfactant replacement is used both in the delivery room as prophylaxis for infants born before 27 weeks' gestation and with established hyaline membrane disease as rescue, preferably within 2–4 hours of birth. Surfactant therapy decreases both the mortality rate in preterm infants and air leak complications of the disease. During the acute course, ventilator settings and oxygen requirements are significantly lower in surfactant-treated infants than in controls. The dose of the bovine-derived beractant (Survanta) is 4 mL/kg, the calf lung surfactant extract (Infasurf) is 3 mL/kg, and the porcine-derived poractant (Curosurf) is 1.25–2.5 mL/kg, given intratracheally. Repeat dosing is indicated in infants who remain on the ventilator in more than 30%–40% oxygen. A total of two to three doses given 8–12 hours apart may be administered. As the disease evolves, proteins that inhibit surfactant function leak into the air spaces, making surfactant replacement less effective. In stable infants, a trial of nasal CPAP at 5–6 cm H_2O pressure can be attempted prior to intubation and surfactant administration. For those who require mechanical ventilation, extubation to nasal CPAP should be done as early as possible to minimize lung injury

and evolution of chronic lung disease. Nasal intermittent positive-pressure ventilation (NIPPV) is another modality that may be attempted for ventilatory support of the VLBW infant, with potential for less morbidity. Antenatal administration of corticosteroids to the mother is an important strategy to accelerate lung maturation. Infants whose mothers were given corticosteroids more than 24 hours prior to preterm birth are less likely to have respiratory distress syndrome and have a lower mortality rate.

5. Chronic Lung Disease in the Premature Infant

» General Considerations

Chronic lung disease, defined as respiratory symptoms, oxygen requirement, and chest radiograph abnormalities at 36 weeks postconception, occurs in about 20% of preterm infants ventilated for surfactant deficiency. The incidence is higher at lower gestational ages and in infants exposed to chorioamnionitis prior to birth. The development of chronic lung disease is a function of lung immaturity at birth, inflammation, and exposure to high oxygen concentrations and ventilator volutrauma. Surfactant-replacement therapy or early nasal CPAP has diminished the severity of chronic lung disease. The mortality rate from chronic lung disease is very low, but there is still significant morbidity secondary to reactive airway symptoms and hospital readmissions during the first 2 years of life for intercurrent respiratory infection.

» Treatment

Long-term supplemental oxygen, mechanical ventilation, and nasal CPAP are the primary therapies for chronic lung disease of the premature infant. Diuretics (furosemide, 1–2 mg/kg/d, or hydrochlorothiazide-spironolactone, 1–2 mg/kg/d), inhaled β_2-adrenergics, inhaled corticosteroids (fluticasone or budesonide), and systemic corticosteroids (dexamethasone [0.2 mg/kg/d], prednisone [1–2 mg/kg/d], or hydrocortisone [4–5 mg/kg/d]) are used as adjunctive therapy. The use of systemic corticosteroids remains controversial. Although a decrease in lung inflammation can aid infants in weaning from ventilator support, there are data associating dexamethasone use in the first week of life with an increased incidence of cerebral palsy. This risk must be balanced against the higher risk of neurodevelopmental handicap in infants with severe chronic lung disease. There is likely a point in the course of these infants at which the benefit of using systemic corticosteroids for the shortest amount of time at the lowest dose possible outweighs the risk of continued mechanical ventilation. After hospital discharge, some of these infants will require oxygen at home. This can be monitored by pulse oximetry with a target Sao_2 of 94%–96%. Some will continue to manifest pulmonary symptomatology into adolescence.

Jobe AH: Postnatal corticosteroids for bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Clin Perinatol 2009;36:177 [PMID: 19161874].

Mahoney AD, Jain L: Respiratory disorders in moderately preterm, late preterm and early term infants. Clin Perinatol 2013;40(4):665 [PMID: 24182954].

Matthew OP: Apnea of prematurity: Pathogenesis and management strategies. J Perinatol 2011;31:302 [PMID: 21127467].

Reuter S, Moser C, Baak M: Respiratory distress in the newborn 2014;35(10):417 [PMID 25274969].

Warren JB, Anderson JM: Core concepts: respiratory distress syndrome. NeoReviews 2009;10:e351.

Watterberg KL; AAP Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Policy statement—postnatal corticosteroids to prevent or treat bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Pediatrics 2010;126:800 [PMID: 20819899].

6. Patent Ductus Arteriosus

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hyperdynamic precordium.
- Widened pulse pressure.
- Hypotension.
- Presence of a systolic heart murmur in many cases.

» General Considerations

Clinically significant patent ductus arteriosus usually presents on days 3–7 as the respiratory distress from hyaline membrane disease is improving. Presentation can be on days 1 or 2, especially in infants born before 28 weeks' gestation and in those who have received surfactant-replacement therapy. The signs include a hyperdynamic precordium, increased peripheral pulses, and a widened pulse pressure with or without a systolic machinery type heart murmur. Early presentations are sometimes manifested by systemic hypotension without a murmur or hyperdynamic circulation. These signs are often accompanied by an increased need for respiratory support and metabolic acidemia. The presence of patent ductus arteriosus is confirmed by echocardiography.

» Treatment

Treatment of patent ductus arteriosus is by medical or surgical ligation. A clinically significant ductus can be closed with indomethacin (0.2 mg/kg IV q12h for three doses) in about two-thirds of cases. If the ductus reopens or fails to close completely, a second course of drug may be used or surgical ligation can be considered if the infant remains symptomatic.

In addition, in the extremely low-birth-weight infant (< 1000 g) who is at very high risk of developing a symptomatic ductus, a prophylactic strategy of indomethacin (0.1 mg/kg q24h for 3–5 days) beginning on the first day of life may be used, with the possible additional benefit of decreasing the incidence of severe IVH, although there is no evidence of an effect on mortality or neurodevelopment. The most common side effect of indomethacin is transient oliguria, which can be managed by fluid restriction until urine output improves. Indomethacin should not be used if the infant is hyperkalemic, if the creatinine is higher than 2 mg/dL, or if the platelet count is less than 50,000/mL. There is an increased incidence of intestinal perforation if indomethacin is used concomitantly with hydrocortisone in extremely low-birth-weight infants (9% vs 2% for either drug alone). Ibuprofen lysine can be used as an alternative to indomethacin given every 24 hours as an initial dose of 10 mg/kg and then 5 mg/kg for two doses. Oliguria is less severe and less frequent than with indomethacin.

Fowlie PW et al: Prophylactic intravenous indomethacin for preventing mortality and morbidity in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010;7:CD000174 [PMID: 20614421].

Gien J: Controversies in the management of patent ductus arteriosus. NeoReviews 2008;9:e477.

Hamrick SEG, Hansmann G: Patent ductus arteriosus of the preterm infant. Pediatrics 2010;125:1020 [PMID: 20421261].

Heuchan AM, Clyman RI Managing the patent ductus arteriosus: current treatment options. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2014;99(5):F431.

Ohlsson A et al: Ibuprofen for the treatment of patent ductus arteriosus in preterm and/or low birth weight infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010 Apr 14;4:CD003481 [PMID: 20393936].

7. Necrotizing Enterocolitis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Feeding intolerance with gastric residuals or vomiting.
- Bloody stools.
- Abdominal distention and tenderness.
- Pneumatosis intestinalis on abdominal radiograph.

General Considerations

NEC is the most common acquired GI emergency in the newborn. It is most common in preterm infants, with an incidence of 10% in infants less than 1500 g. In full-term infants, it occurs in association with polycythemia, congenital heart disease, and birth asphyxia. The pathogenesis of NEC is multifactorial. Ischemia, immaturity, microbial dysbiosis (proliferation of pathogenic bacteria with less colonization with beneficial or commensal bacteria), and genetics are all thought to play a role. In up to 20% of affected infants, the only risk factor is prematurity. IUGR infants with a history of absent or reversed end-diastolic flow in the umbilical artery prior to delivery have abnormalities of splanchnic flow after delivery and have an increased risk of NEC.

Clinical Findings

The most common presenting sign is abdominal distention. Other signs are vomiting, increased gastric residuals, hemepositive stools, abdominal tenderness, temperature instability, increased apnea and bradycardia, decreased urine output, and poor perfusion. There may be an increased white blood cell count with an increased band count or, as the disease progresses, absolute neutropenia. Thrombocytopenia often occurs along with stress-induced hyperglycemia and metabolic acidosis. Diagnosis is confirmed by the presence of pneumatosis intestinalis (air in the bowel wall) or biliary tract air on a plain abdominal radiograph. There is a spectrum of disease, and milder cases may exhibit only distention of bowel loops with bowel wall edema.

Treatment

A. Medical Treatment

NEC is managed by making the infant NPO, nasogastric decompression of the gut, maintenance of oxygenation, mechanical ventilation if necessary, and IV fluids to replace third-space GI losses. Enough fluid should be given to restore good urine output. Other measures include broad-spectrum antibiotics (usually ampicillin, a third-generation cephalosporin or an aminoglycoside, and possibly additional anaerobic coverage), close monitoring of vital signs, and serial physical examinations and laboratory studies (blood gases, white blood cell count, platelet count, and radiographs). Although there are no proven strategies to prevent NEC, use of trophic feedings, breast milk, and cautious advancement of feeds, as well as probiotic agents, may provide some protection, even though the optimal formulation and dose of probiotics for prevention are as yet unknown.

B. Surgical Treatment

Indications for surgery are evidence of perforation (free air present on a left lateral decubitus or cross-table lateral film), a fixed dilated loop of bowel on serial radiographs, abdominal wall cellulitis, or deterioration despite maximal medical support. All of these signs are indicative of necrotic bowel. In the operating room, necrotic bowel is removed and ostomies are created, although occasionally a primary end-to-end anastomosis may be performed. In extremely

low-birth-weight infants, the initial surgical management may simply be the placement of peritoneal drains. Reanastomosis in infants with ostomies is performed after the disease resolves and the infant is bigger (usually > 2 kg and after 4–6 weeks).

» Course & Prognosis

Infants treated medically or surgically should not be refed until the disease is resolved (normal abdominal examination and resolution of pneumatosis), usually after 7–10 days. Nutritional support during this time should be provided by total parenteral nutrition.

Death occurs in 10% of cases. Surgery is needed in less than 25% of cases. Long-term prognosis is determined by the amount of intestine lost. Infants with short bowel require long-term support with IV nutrition (see Chapter 21). Late strictures—about 3–6 weeks after initial diagnosis—occur in 8% of patients whether treated medically or surgically, and generally require operative management. Infants with surgically managed NEC have an increased risk of poor neurodevelopmental outcome.

Alfaleh K et al: Probiotics for prevention of necrotizing enterocolitis in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Mar 16;3:CD005496 [PMID: 21412889].

Neu J, Walker A: Necrotizing enterocolitis. N Engl J Med 2011;364:255 [PMID: 21247316].

Srinivasan PS et al: Necrotizing enterocolitis. Clin Perinatol 2008;35:251 [PMID: 18280885].

8. Anemia in the Premature Infant

» General Considerations

In the premature infant, the hemoglobin concentration reaches its nadir at about 8–12 weeks and is 2–3 g/dL lower than that of the full-term infant. The lower nadir in premature infants appears to be the result of decreased erythropoietin response to the low red cell mass. Symptoms of anemia include poor feeding, lethargy, increased heart rate, poor weight gain, and perhaps periodic breathing.

» Treatment

Transfusion is not indicated in an asymptomatic infant simply because of a low hematocrit. Most infants become symptomatic if the hematocrit drops below 20%. Infants on ventilators and supplemental oxygen are usually maintained with hematocrits above 25%–30%. Alternatively, infants can be treated with erythropoietin (350 U/kg/d for 7–10 days for hematocrits < 28%). The therapeutic goal is to minimize blood draws and use conservative guidelines for transfusion. Delayed cord clamping 1–2 minutes after birth, if possible, can significantly decrease the need for future transfusion. Use of erythropoietin may increase the rate and severity of retinopathy of prematurity, and should be used judiciously.

Bishara N, Ohls RK: Current controversies in the management of the anemia of prematurity. Semin Perinatol 2009;33:29 [PMID: 19167579].

Crowley M, Kirpalani H: A rational approach to red blood cell transfusion in the neonatal ICU. Curr Opin Pediatr 2010;22:151 [PMID: 20087187].

Romagnoli C et al: Erythropoietin and retinopathy of prematurity. Early Hum Dev 2011;87S:S39 [PMID: 21303729].

9. Intraventricular Hemorrhage

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

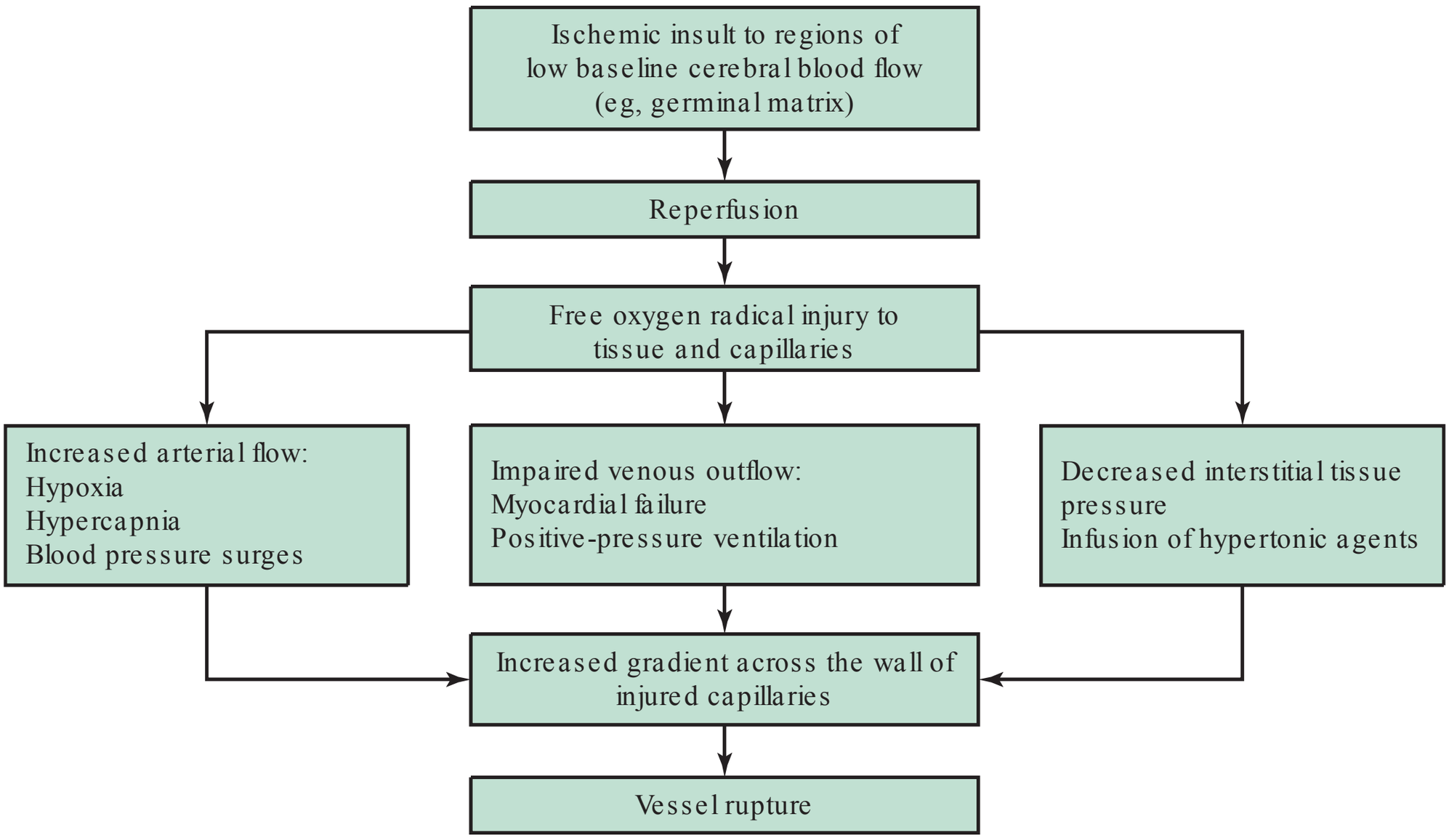
- » Large bleeds cause hypotension, metabolic acidosis, and altered neurologic status; smaller bleeds can be asymptomatic.
- » Routine cranial ultrasound scanning is essential for diagnosis in infants born before 32 weeks' gestation.

» General Considerations

Periventricular-intraventricular hemorrhage occurs almost exclusively in premature infants. The incidence is 15%–25% in infants born before 31 weeks' gestation and weighing less than 1500 g. The highest incidence occurs in infants of the lowest gestational age (< 26 weeks). Bleeding most commonly occurs in the subependymal germinal matrix (a region of undifferentiated cells adjacent to or lining the lateral ventricles). Bleeding can extend into the ventricular cavity. The proposed pathogenesis of bleeding is presented in Figure 2–9. The critical event is ischemia with reperfusion injury to the capillaries in the germinal matrix in the immediate perinatal period, in the face of immature cerebral pressure autoregulation. The actual amount of bleeding is also influenced by a variety of factors that affect the pressure gradient across the injured capillary wall, such as venous congestion. This pathogenetic scheme applies also to intraparenchymal bleeding (venous infarction in a region rendered ischemic) and to PVL (ischemic white matter injury in a water-shed region of arterial supply). CNS complications in preterm infants are more frequent in infants exposed to intrauterine and postnatal infection, implying also the involvement of inflammatory mediators in the pathogenesis of brain injury.

» Clinical Findings

Up to 50% of hemorrhages occur before 24 hours of age, and virtually all occur by the fourth day. The clinical syndrome



▲**Figure 2–9.** Pathogenesis of periventricular and intraventricular hemorrhage.

ranges from rapid deterioration (coma, hypoventilation, decerebrate posturing, fixed pupils, bulging anterior fontanelle, hypotension, acidosis, or acute drop in hematocrit) to a more gradual deterioration with more subtle neurologic changes, to absence of any specific physiologic or neurologic signs.

The diagnosis can be confirmed by real-time ultrasound scan. Routine scanning should be done at 10–14 days in all infants born before 29 weeks' gestation. Hemorrhages are graded as follows: grade I, germinal matrix hemorrhage only; grade II, intraventricular bleeding without ventricular enlargement; grade III, intraventricular bleeding with ventricular enlargement; or grade IV, any intraparenchymal bleeding. The amount of bleeding is minor (grade I or II) in 75% of infants who bleed and major in the remainder. Follow-up ultrasound examinations are scheduled based on the results of the initial scan. Infants with no bleeding or germinal matrix hemorrhage require only a single follow-up scan at age 4–6 weeks to look for PVL. An infant with blood in the ventricular system is at risk for posthemorrhagic ventriculomegaly. This is usually the result of impaired absorption of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) but can also occur secondary to obstructive phenomena. An initial follow-up scan should be done 1–2 weeks after the initial scan. Infants with intraventricular bleeding and ventricular enlargement should be followed every 7–10 days until ventricular enlargement stabilizes or decreases. Infants born at 29–32 weeks' gestational age need only a single late scan done at 4–6 weeks of age to look for PVL or ventriculomegaly.

» Treatment

During acute hemorrhage, supportive treatment (restoration of volume and hematocrit, oxygenation, and ventilation) should be provided to avoid further cerebral ischemia. Progressive posthemorrhagic hydrocephalus is treated initially with a subgaleal shunt. When the infant is large enough, this can be converted to a ventriculoperitoneal shunt.

Although the incidence and severity of intracranial bleeding in premature infants have decreased, strategies to prevent this complication are still needed. Maternal antenatal corticosteroids appear to decrease the risk of intracranial bleeding, and phenobarbital may have a role in the mother who has not been prepared with steroids and is delivering before 28 weeks' gestation. Magnesium sulfate administered to the mother appears to reduce the rate of cerebral palsy, although not the rate of IVH per se. The route of delivery may be important as infants delivered by cesarean section have a decreased rate of intracranial bleed. Postnatal strategies are less effective. Early indomethacin administration

may have some benefit in minimizing bleeding, especially in males, with unclear influence on long-term outcome.

» Prognosis

No deaths occur as a result of grades I and II hemorrhages. Grades III and IV hemorrhages carry a mortality rate of 10%–20%. Posthemorrhagic ventricular enlargement is rarely seen with grade I hemorrhages but is seen in 54%–87% of grades II–IV hemorrhages. Very few of these infants will require a ventriculoperitoneal shunt. Long-term neurologic sequelae are seen slightly more frequently in infants with grades I and II hemorrhages than in preterm infants without bleeding. In infants with grades III and IV hemorrhages, severe sequelae occur in 20%–25% of cases, mild sequelae in 35% of cases, but no sequelae in 40% of cases. Severe PVL, large parenchymal bleeds, especially if bilateral, and progressive hydrocephalus increase the risk of neurologic sequelae. It is important to note that extremely low-birth-weight infants without major ultrasound findings also remain at increased risk for both cerebral palsy and cognitive delays. Recent reports using quantitative MRI scans demonstrate that subtle gray and white matter findings not seen with ultrasound are prevalent in preterm survivors and are predictive of neurodevelopmental handicap. This is especially true in infants born weighing less than 1000 g and before 28 weeks' gestation.

Bass WT: Periventricular leukomalacia. NeoReviews 2011;12:e76.
Whitelaw A: Core concepts: intraventricular hemorrhage. NeoReviews 2011;12:e94.

10. Retinopathy of Prematurity

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Risk of severe retinopathy is greatest in the most immature infants.
- Diagnosis depends on screening eye examinations in at-risk preterm infants.
- Examination evaluates stage of abnormal retinal vascular development, extent of retinal detachment, and distribution and amount of retina involved.

Retinopathy of prematurity occurs only in the incompletely vascularized premature retina. The incidence of retinopathy in infants weighing less than 1250 g is 66%, but only 6% have retinopathy severe enough to warrant intervention. The incidence is highest in infants of the lowest gestational age. The condition appears to be triggered by an initial injury to the developing retinal vessels and low levels of insulin-like growth factor-1. After the initial injury, normal vessel development may follow or abnormal vascularization may occur due to excessive vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), with ridge formation on the retina. Lability in oxygen levels with periods of hypoxia/hyperoxia likely potentiates this progression. The frequency of retinopathy progressing to the need for treatment can be diminished by careful monitoring of the infant's oxygen saturation levels. The process can regress at this point or may continue, with growth of fibrovascular tissue into the vitreous associated with inflammation, scarring, and retinal folds or detachment. The disease is graded by stages of abnormal vascular development and retinal detachment (I–V), by the zone of the eye involved (1–3, with zone 1 being the posterior region around the macula), and by the amount of the retina involved, in "clock hours" (eg, a detachment in the upper, outer quadrant of the left eye would be defined as affecting the left retina from 12 to 3 o'clock).

Initial eye examination should be performed at 31 weeks' postmenstrual age or at 4 weeks of age, whichever is earlier, in infants born at 30 weeks' gestation or less, as well as in infants up to 32 weeks' gestation with an unstable clinical course. Follow-up occurs at 1- to 3-week intervals, depending on the findings, until the retina is fully vascularized. Laser therapy is used in infants with progressive disease at risk for retinal detachment. Although this treatment does not always prevent retinal detachment, it reduces the incidence of poor outcomes based on visual acuity and retinal anatomy. A new form of therapy is intravitreal bevacizumab, an anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody, which may prove to be superior to laser therapy for severe Zone I and II retinopathy of prematurity.

American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Ophthalmology, American Academy of Ophthalmology and Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus: Screening examination of premature infants for retinopathy of prematurity. Pediatrics 2006;117:572 [PMID: 16452383].
Fleck BW, McIntosh N: Retinopathy of prematurity: recent developments. NeoReviews 2009;10:e20.
Salvin JH et al: Update on retinopathy of prematurity: treatment options and outcomes. Curr Opin Ophthalmol 2010;21:329 [PMID: 20634698].

11. Discharge & Follow-up of the Premature Infant

A. Hospital Discharge

Criteria for discharge of the premature infant include maintaining normal temperature in an open crib, adequate oral intake, acceptable weight gain, and absence of apnea and bradycardia spells requiring intervention. Infants going

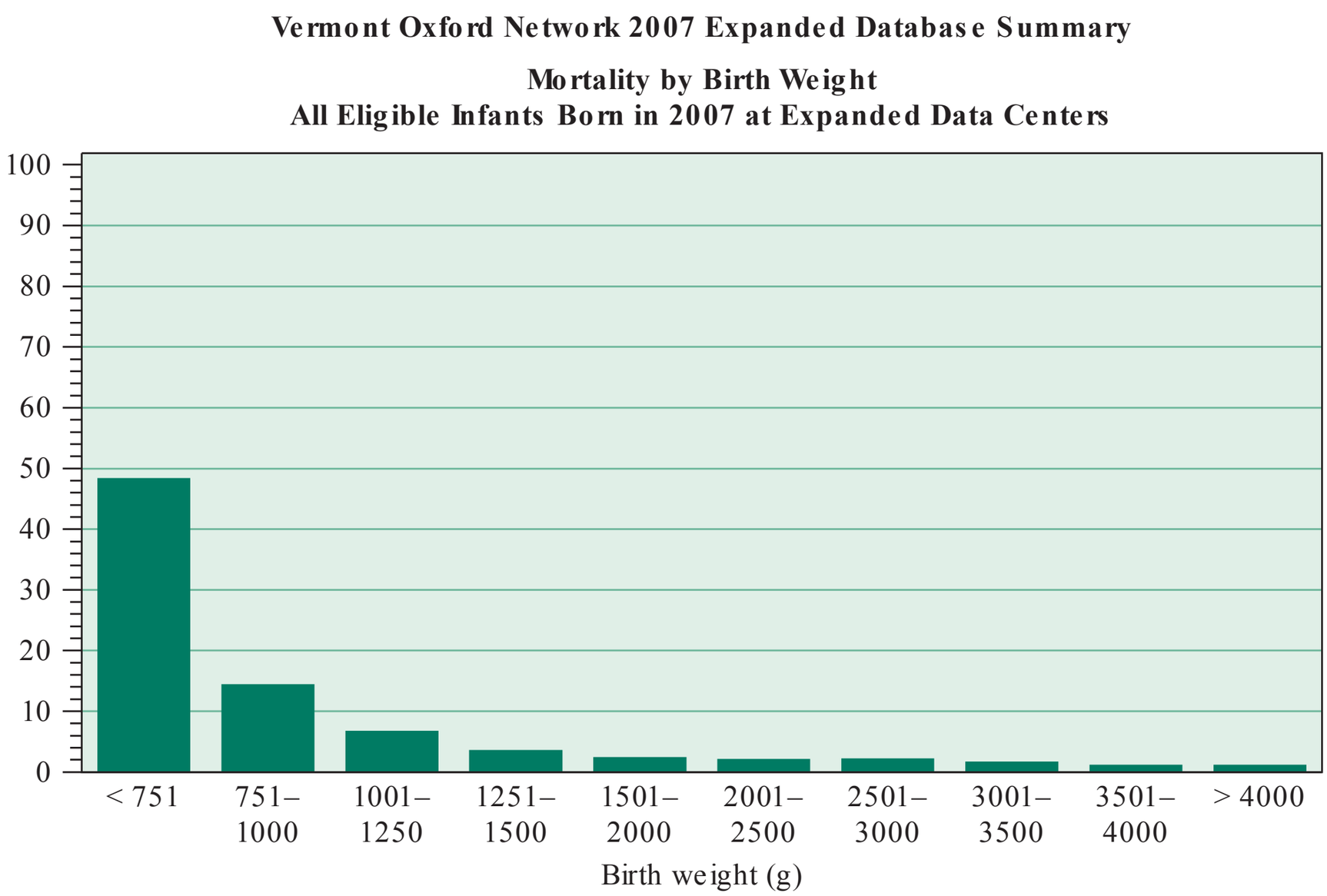
home on supplemental oxygen should not desaturate below 80% in room air or should demonstrate the ability to arouse in response to hypoxia. Factors such as support for the mother at home and the stability of the family situation play a role in the timing of discharge. Home nursing visits and early physician follow-up can be used to hasten discharge. Additionally, the AAP recommends that preterm infants have a period of observation in an infant car seat, preferably their own, before hospital discharge, with careful positioning to mimic optimal restraint as would occur in the car, to see that they do not have obstructive apnea or desaturation for periods up to 90–120 minutes.

B. Follow-up

With advances in obstetric and maternal care, survival of infants born after 28 weeks' gestation or weighing as little as 1000 g at birth is now better than 90%. Seventy to 80% survive at 26–27 weeks' gestation and birth weights of 800–1000 g. Survival at gestational age 25 weeks and birth weight 700–800 g is 50%–70%, with a considerable drop-off below this level (Figure 2–10).

These high rates of survival come with some morbidity. Major neurologic sequelae, including cerebral palsy, cognitive delay, and hydrocephalus, occur in 10%–25% of survivors of birth weight less than 1500 g. The rate of these sequelae tends to be higher in infants with lower birth weights. Infants with birth weights less than 1000 g also have an increased rate of lesser disabilities, including learning, behavioral, and psychiatric problems. Risk factors for neurologic sequelae include seizures, grade III or IV intracranial hemorrhage, PVL, ventricular dilation, white matter abnormalities on term-equivalent MRI examinations, severe IUGR, poor early head growth, need for mechanical ventilation, chronic lung disease, NEC, and low socioeconomic class. Maternal fever and chorioamnionitis are associated with an increased risk of cerebral palsy. Other morbidities include chronic lung disease and reactive airway disease, resulting in increased severity of respiratory infections and hospital readmissions in the first 2 years; retinopathy of prematurity with associated loss of visual acuity and strabismus; hearing loss; and growth failure. All of these issues require close multidisciplinary outpatient follow-up. Infants with residual lung disease are candidates for monthly palivizumab (Synagis) injections during their first winter after hospital discharge to prevent infection with respiratory syncytial virus. Routine immunizations should be given at the appropriate chronologic age and should not be age-corrected for prematurity.

Aarnoudse-Moens CSH et al: Meta-analysis of neurobehavioral outcomes in very preterm and/or very low birth weight children. Pediatrics 2009;124:77 [PMID: 19651588].



▲**Figure 2–10.** Mortality rates before discharge by birth weight subgroups in 2007. (Reproduced, with permission, from the Vermont Oxford Network, 2008.)

Doyle LW, Saigal S: Long-term outcomes of very preterm or tiny infants. NeoReviews 2009;10:e130.
Stephens BE, Vohr BR: Neurodevelopmental outcome of the premature infant. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009;56(3):631 [PMID 19501696].
Stoll BG et al: Neonatal outcomes of extremely preterm infants from the NICHD neonatal research network. Pediatrics 2010;126:443 [PMID: 20732945].

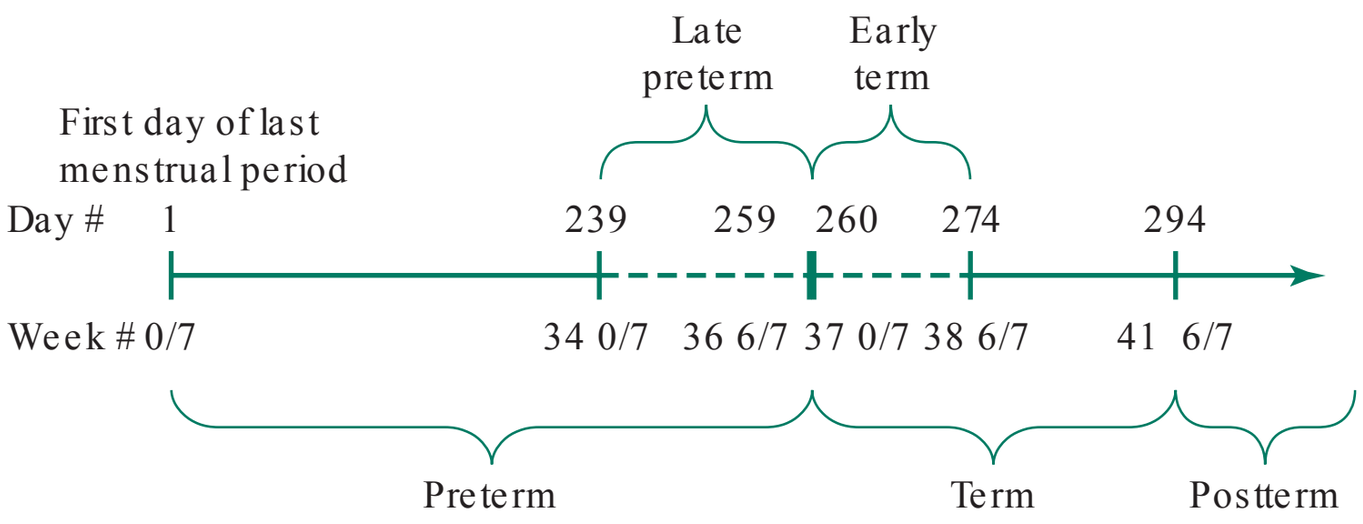
THE LATE PRETERM INFANT

The rate of preterm births in the United States has increased by more than 30% in the past 30 years, so that preterm infants now comprise 12.8% of all births. Late preterm births, those from 34 0/7 to 36 6/7 weeks' gestation (Figure 2–11), have increased the most, and now account for over 70% of all preterm births. While births less than 34 weeks' gestation have increased by 10% since 1990, late preterm births have increased by 25%. This is in part due to changes in obstetric practice with an increase in inductions of labor (up from 9.5% in 1990 to 22.5% today), and an increase in cesarean sections (currently > 30% of all births), as well as a rise in multiple births and an increasing demand for cesarean section "at maternal request."

Compared with term infants, late preterm infants have higher prevalence of acute neonatal problems including respiratory distress, temperature instability, hypoglycemia, kernicterus, apnea, seizures, feeding problems, and rehospitalization after hospital discharge. The respiratory issues are caused by delayed clearance of lung fluid or surfactant deficiency, or both, and can progress to respiratory failure requiring mechanical ventilation, persistent pulmonary hypertension, and even ECMO support. Feeding issues are caused by immature coordination of suck and swallow, which can interfere with bottle feeding and cause failure to establish successful breast-feeding, putting the infant at risk for excessive weight loss and dehydration. These infants are nearly five times as likely as full-term infants to require either supplemental IV fluids, or gavage feedings. Related both to feeding issues and immaturity, late preterm infants have at least four times the risk of developing a bilirubin level above 20 mg/dL when compared with infants born after 40 completed weeks. As a consequence, late preterm gestation is a major risk factor for excessive hyperbilirubinemia and kernicterus. Rehospitalizations due to jaundice, proven or suspected infection, feeding difficulties, and failure to thrive are much more common than in term infants. Long-term development may also be adversely affected, with some large population-based studies showing a higher incidence of cerebral palsy, developmental delay, and behavioral and emotional disturbances compared with term infants.

Late preterm infants, even if similar in size to their term counterparts, should be considered preterm rather than near term, and require closer in-hospital monitoring after birth for complications. Although they may feed reasonably well for the first day or two, they often fail to increase feeding volume and become sleepier and less interested in feeding as they lose weight and become jaundiced, especially if younger than 36 weeks. Discharge of these newborns should be delayed until they have demonstrated reliable and appropriately increasing intake despite the expected weight loss and jaundice, and absence of other issues such as hypothermia, hypoglycemia, or apnea. If nursing, use of a breast pump to ensure adequate emptying of the breast and milk supply should also be instituted, along with supplementation of the infant's breast-feeding with expressed milk by bottle or gavage. It is better to ensure adequate feeding and mature behaviors for an extra day or two in the hospital than to have a readmission for "lethargy and poor feeding, possible sepsis" after premature discharge. Following nursery discharge, close outpatient follow-up is indicated, generally within 48–72 hours, to ensure continued adequate intake and weight gain.

Bell EF et al; Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Hospital discharge of the high-risk neonate. Pediatrics 2008;122:1119 [PMID: 18977994].
Engle WA: Infants born late preterm: definition, physiologic and metabolic immaturity, and outcomes. NeoReviews 2009;10:e280.
McGowan JE et al: Early childhood development of late preterm infants: a systematic review. Pediatrics 2011;127:1111 [PMID: 21624885].



▲**Figure 2–11.** Definitions of late preterm and early term infant. (Reproduced with permission from Engle WA, Kominiarek MA: Late preterm infants, early term infants, and timing of elective deliveries. Clin Perinatol 2008;35:325.)

CARDIAC PROBLEMS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT

STRUCTURAL HEART DISEASE

1. Cyanotic Presentations

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cyanosis, initially without associated respiratory distress.
- Failure to increase Pao_2 with supplemental oxygen.
- Chest radiograph with decreased lung markings suggests right heart obstruction, while increased lung markings suggest transposition or pulmonary venous obstruction.

General Considerations

The causes of cyanotic heart disease in the newborn are transposition of the great vessels, total anomalous pulmonary venous return, truncus arteriosus (some types), tricuspid atresia, and pulmonary atresia or critical pulmonary stenosis. Many are diagnosed antenatally by ultrasound.

Clinical Findings

Infants with these disorders present with early cyanosis. The hallmark of many of these lesions is cyanosis without associated respiratory distress. In most of these infants, tachypnea develops over time either because of increased pulmonary blood flow or secondary to metabolic acidemia from progressive hypoxemia. Diagnostic aids include comparing the blood gas or oxygen saturation in room air to that in 100% Fio_2. Failure of Pao_2 or Sao_2 to increase suggests cyanotic heart disease. Note: A Pao_2, if feasible, is the preferred measure. Saturation in the newborn may be misleadingly high despite pathologically low Pao_2 due to the left-shifted oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve seen with fetal hemoglobin. Other useful aids are chest radiography, electrocardiography, and echocardiography. Routine pulse oximetry screening in the first day of life is recommended for all infants, to detect subtle reductions in Sao_2 that may be the only initial sign of critical congenital heart disease.

Transposition of the great vessels is the most common form of cyanotic heart disease presenting in the newborn. Examination may reveal a systolic murmur and single S_2. Chest radiograph shows cardiomegaly and a narrow mediastinum with normal or increased lung markings. There is little change in Pao_2 or Sao_2 with supplemental oxygen. Total anomalous pulmonary venous return, in which venous return is obstructed, presents early with severe cyanosis and respiratory failure because of severe pulmonary edema. The chest radiograph typically shows a small to normal heart size with marked pulmonary edema. Infants with right-sided heart obstruction (pulmonary and tricuspid atresia, critical pulmonary stenosis, and some forms of truncus arteriosus) have decreased lung markings on chest radiographs and, depending on the severity of hypoxia, may develop metabolic acidemia. Those lesions with an underdeveloped right-sided heart will have left-sided predominance on electrocardiography. Although tetralogy of Fallot is the most common form of cyanotic heart disease, the obstruction at the pulmonary valve is often not severe enough to result in cyanosis in the newborn. In all cases, diagnosis can be confirmed by echocardiography.

2. Acyanotic Presentations

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Most newborns with symptomatic acyanotic heart disease have left-sided outflow obstruction.
- Differentially diminished pulses (coarctation) or decreased pulses throughout (aortic atresia).
- Metabolic acidemia.
- Chest radiograph showing large heart and pulmonary edema.

General Considerations

Newborn infants who present with serious acyanotic heart disease usually have congestive heart failure secondary to left-sided outflow tract obstruction. Infants with left-to-right shunt lesions (eg, ventricular septal defect) may have murmurs in the newborn period, but clinical symptoms do not occur until pulmonary vascular resistance drops enough to cause significant shunting and subsequent congestive heart failure (usually at 3–4 weeks of age).

Clinical Findings

Infants with left-sided outflow obstruction generally do well in the first days of life until the ductus arteriosus—the source of all or some of the systemic flow—narrows. Tachypnea, tachycardia, congestive heart failure, and metabolic acidosis develop. On examination, these infants have abnormalities of the pulses. In aortic atresia (hypoplastic left-sided heart syndrome) and stenosis, all peripheral pulses are diminished, whereas in aortic coarctation, differential pulses (diminished or absent in the lower extremities) are evident, and Spo_2 and blood pressure may be lower in the legs than in the right upper extremity. Chest radiographic films in these infants show a large heart and pulmonary edema. Diagnosis is confirmed with echocardiography.

3. Treatment of Cyanotic & Acyanotic Lesions

Early stabilization includes supportive therapy as needed (eg, IV glucose, oxygen, ventilation for respiratory failure, and

pressor support). Specific therapy includes infusions of prostaglandin E_1 (0.0125–0.025 mcg/kg/min) to maintain ductal patency. In some cyanotic lesions (eg, pulmonary atresia, tricuspid atresia, and critical pulmonary stenosis) in which lung blood flow is ductus-dependent, this improves pulmonary blood flow and Pao_2 by allowing shunting through the ductus to the pulmonary artery. In left-sided outflow tract obstruction, systemic blood flow is ductus-dependent; prostaglandins improve systemic perfusion and acidosis. Further specific management—including palliative surgical and cardiac catheterization procedures—is discussed in Chapter 20. Neurodevelopmental outcome with congenital heart disease depends on the lesion, associated defects and syndromes, severity of neonatal presentation, and complications related to palliative and corrective surgery.

PERSISTENT PULMONARY HYPERTENSION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Onset of symptoms on day 1 of life.
- Hypoxia with poor response to high concentrations of inspired oxygen.
- Right-to-left shunts through the foramen ovale, ductus arteriosus, or both.
- Most often associated with parenchymal lung disease.

General Considerations

Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn (PPHN) results when the normal decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance after birth does not occur. Most affected infants are full term or postterm, and many have experienced perinatal asphyxia. Other clinical associations include meconium aspiration syndrome, hyaline membrane disease, perinatal depression, neonatal sepsis, chronic intrauterine hypoxia, and pulmonary hypoplasia.

There are three underlying pathophysiologic mechanisms of PPHN: (1) vasoconstriction due to perinatal hypoxia related to an acute event such as sepsis or asphyxia; (2) prenatal increase in pulmonary vascular smooth muscle development, often associated with meconium aspiration syndrome; and (3) decreased cross-sectional area of the pulmonary vascular bed associated with lung hypoplasia (eg, diaphragmatic hernia).

Clinical Findings

Clinically, the syndrome is characterized by onset on the first day of life, usually from birth. Respiratory distress is prominent, and Pao_2 is usually poorly responsive to high concentrations of inspired oxygen. Many infants have associated myocardial depression with systemic hypotension. Echocardiography reveals right-to-left shunting at the level of the ductus arteriosus or foramen ovale, or both. The chest radiograph may show lung infiltrates related to associated pulmonary pathology (eg, meconium aspiration or hyaline membrane disease). If the majority of right-to-left shunting is at the ductal level, pre- and postductal differences in Pao_2 and Sao_2 will be observed.

Treatment

Therapy for PPHN involves treatment of associated multiorgan dysfunction. Specific therapy is aimed at both increasing systemic arterial pressure and decreasing pulmonary arterial pressure to reverse the right-to-left shunting through fetal pathways. First-line therapy includes oxygen and ventilation (to reduce pulmonary vascular resistance) and crystalloid infusions (10-30 mL/kg) to improve systemic pressure. Ideally, systolic pressure should be greater than 50–60 mm Hg. With compromised cardiac function, systemic pressors can be used as second-line therapy (eg, dopamine, 5–20 mcg/kg/min; epinephrine 0.05–0.3 mcg/kg/min; or both). Metabolic acidemia should be corrected because acidemia exacerbates pulmonary vasoconstriction. Pulmonary vasodilation can be enhanced using inhaled nitric oxide, at doses of 5–20 ppm. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation has proved effective in many of these infants, particularly those with severe associated lung disease, by improving lung expansion and recruitment. In cases in which conventional therapy is failing (poor oxygenation despite maximum support), ECMO is used. The lungs are essentially at rest during ECMO, and with resolution of pulmonary hypertension infants are weaned from ECMO back to ventilator therapy. Approximately 10%–15% of survivors of PPHN have significant neurologic sequelae, with cerebral palsy or cognitive delays. Other sequelae such as chronic lung disease, sensorineural hearing loss, and feeding problems have also been reported.

ARRHYTHMIAS

Irregularly irregular heart rates, commonly associated with premature atrial contractions and less commonly with premature ventricular contractions, are common in the first days of life in well newborns. These arrhythmias are typically benign. Clinically significant bradyarrhythmias are seen in association with congenital heart block. Heart block can be seen in an otherwise structurally normal heart (associated with maternal lupus) or with structural cardiac abnormalities. In the absence of fetal hydrops, the bradyarrhythmia is often well tolerated. Cardiac pacing may be required if there are symptoms of inadequate cardiac output.

Tachyarrhythmias can be either wide complex (ventricular tachycardia) or narrow complex (supraventricular tachycardia) on ECG. Supraventricular tachycardia is the most common neonatal tachyarrhythmia and may be a sign of structural heart disease, myocarditis, left atrial enlargement, and aberrant conduction pathways, or may be an isolated event.

Acute treatment is ice to the face to induce a vagal response, and if unsuccessful, IV adenosine (50 mcg/kg). If there is no response, the dose can be increased every 2 minutes by 50 mcg/kg to a maximum dose of 250 mcg/kg. Long-term prophylactic antiarrhythmic therapy is generally indicated; cardiology consultation is suggested. Cardioversion is rarely needed for supraventricular tachycardia but is needed acutely for hemodynamically unstable ventricular tachycardia.

Cabral JE, Belik J: Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn: recent advances in pathophysiology and treatment. J Pediatr 2013;226–242 [PMID: 23684454].

Mahle WT et al; Section on Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery Executive Committee: Endorsement of Health and Human Services recommendation for pulse oximetry screening for critical congenital heart disease. Pediatrics 2012;129(1): 190–192 [PMID: 22201143]. www.pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/129/1/190.full. Accessed

Tavera MC et al: Supraventricular tachyarrhythmic drug choice dilemma. J Matern Fetal Neonat Med 2011;24,541 [PMID: 20807153].

GASTROINTESTINAL & ABDOMINAL SURGICAL CONDITIONS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 21)

ESOPHAGEAL ATRESIA & TRACHEOESOPHAGEAL FISTULA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Polyhydramnios.
- Excessive drooling and secretions; choking with attempted feeding.
- Unable to pass an orogastric tube to the stomach.

General Considerations

Esophageal atresia is characterized by a blind esophageal pouch with or without a fistulous connection between the proximal or distal esophagus and the trachea. In 85% of infants, the fistula is between the distal esophagus and the airway. Polyhydramnios is common because of high GI obstruction. Incidence is approximately 1 in 3000 births.

Clinical Findings

Infants present in the first hours of life with copious secretions, choking, cyanosis, and respiratory distress. Diagnosis is confirmed with chest radiograph after careful placement of a nasogastric (NG) tube to the point at which resistance is met. The tube will be seen radiographically in the blind pouch. If a tracheoesophageal fistula is present to the distal esophagus, gas will be present in the bowel. In esophageal atresia without tracheoesophageal fistula, no gas is seen in the bowel.

Treatment

The NG tube in the proximal pouch should be placed on low intermittent suction to drain secretions and prevent aspiration. The head of the bed should be elevated to prevent reflux of gastric contents through the distal fistula into the lungs. IV glucose and fluids should be provided and oxygen administered as needed. Definitive treatment is surgical, and the technique used depends on the distance between the segments of esophagus. If the distance is short, the fistula can be ligated and the ends of the esophagus anastomosed. If the ends of the esophagus cannot be brought together, the initial surgery is fistula ligation and a feeding gastrostomy. Echocardiography should be performed prior to surgery to rule out a right-sided aortic arch (for which a left-sided thoracotomy would be preferred).

Prognosis

Prognosis is determined primarily by the presence or absence of associated anomalies, particularly cardiac, and low birth weight. Mortality is highest when the infant is less than 2000 g and has a serious associated cardiac defect. Vertebral, anal, cardiac, renal, and limb anomalies may be observed (VACTERL association). Evaluation for associated anomalies should be initiated early.

Kunisaki SM, Foker JE: Surgical advances in the fetus and neonate: esophageal atresia. Clin Perinatol 2012;39(2):349–361 [PMID: 22682384].

INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Infants with high intestinal obstruction present soon after birth with emesis.
- Bilious emesis suggests intestinal malrotation with midgut volvulus until proved otherwise.
- Low intestinal obstruction is characterized by abdominal distention and late onset of emesis, often with delayed or absent stooling.

» General Considerations

Intestinal obstruction is the most common surgical emergency seen in neonates. A history of polyhydramnios is common, and the fluid, if bile-stained, can easily be confused with thin meconium staining. The higher the location of the obstruction in the intestine, the earlier the infant will develop vomiting and the less prominent the abdominal distention will be. Lower intestinal obstruction presents with abdominal distention and later onset of emesis. Most obstructions are bowel atresias, often caused by an ischemic event during development. Approximately 30% of cases of duodenal atresia are associated with Down syndrome. Meconium ileus is a distal small bowel obstruction caused by viscous meconium produced in utero and may be the presenting symptom of cystic fibrosis. Hirschsprung disease is caused by a failure of neuronal migration to the myenteric plexus of the distal bowel. The distal bowel lacks ganglion cells, causing a lack of peristalsis in that region with a functional obstruction.

Malrotation with midgut volvulus is a surgical emergency that appears in the first days to weeks as bilious vomiting without distention or tenderness. If malrotation is not treated promptly, torsion of the intestine around the superior mesenteric artery will lead to necrosis of the entire small bowel. For this reason, bilious vomiting in the neonate always demands immediate attention and evaluation.

» Clinical Findings

Diagnosis of intestinal obstructions depends on plain abdominal radiographs with either upper GI series (high obstruction suspected) or contrast enema (lower obstruction apparent) to define the area of obstruction. Table 2–16 summarizes the findings expected.

Infants with meconium ileus are presumed to have cystic fibrosis, although infants with pancolonic Hirschsprung disease, colon pseudo-obstruction syndrome, or colonic dysgenesis or atresia may also present with meconium impacted in the distal ileum. Definitive testing for cystic fibrosis by the sweat chloride test or genetic testing should be performed. Intestinal perforation in utero results in meconium peritonitis with residual intra-abdominal calcifications. Many perforations are completely healed at birth. If the infant has no signs of obstruction or ongoing perforation, no immediate evaluation is needed. Low intestinal obstruction may present with delayed stooling (> 24 hours in term infants is abnormal) with mild distention. Radiographic findings of gaseous distention should prompt contrast enema to diagnose (and treat) meconium plug syndrome. If no plug is found, the diagnosis may be small left colon syndrome (occurring in IDMs) or Hirschsprung disease. Rectal biopsy is required to clarify these two diagnoses. Imperforate anus is generally apparent on physical examination, although a rectovaginal fistula with a mildly abnormal-appearing anus can occasionally be confused with normal. High imperforate anus in males may be associated with rectourethral or rectovesical fistula, with meconium "pearls" seen along the median raphe of the scrotum, and meconium being passed via the urethra.

» Treatment

OG suction to decompress the bowel, IV glucose, fluid and electrolyte replacement, and respiratory support as necessary

Table 2–16. Intestinal obstruction.

Site of Obstruction	Clinical Findings	Plain Radiographs	Contrast Study
Duodenal atresia	Down syndrome (30%–50%); early vomiting, sometimes bilious	"Double bubble" (dilated stomach and proximal duodenum, no air distal)	Not needed
Malrotation and volvulus	Bilious vomiting with onset anytime in the first few weeks	Dilated stomach and proximal duodenum; paucity of air distally (may be normal gas pattern)	UGI shows displaced duodenojejunal junction with "corkscrew" deformity of twisted bowel
Jejunoileal atresia, meconium ileus	Bilious gastric contents > 25 mL at birth; progressive distention and bilious vomiting	Multiple dilated loops of bowel; intra-abdominal calcifications if in utero perforation occurred (meconium peritonitis)	Barium or osmotic contrast enema shows microcolon; contrast refluxed into distal ileum may demonstrate and relieve meconium obstruction (successful in about 50% of cases)
Meconium plug syndrome; Hirschsprung disease	Distention, delayed stooling (> 24 h)	Diffuse bowel distention	Barium or osmotic contrast enema outlines and relieves plug; may show transition zone in Hirschsprung disease; delayed emptying (> 24 h) suggests Hirschsprung disease

UGI, upper gastrointestinal contrast study.

should be instituted. Antibiotics are usually indicated in the setting of bowel distention due to risk of bacterial translocation. The definitive treatment for these conditions (with the exception of meconium plug syndrome, small left colon syndrome, and some cases of meconium ileus) is surgical.

» Prognosis

Up to 10% of infants with meconium plug syndrome are subsequently found to have cystic fibrosis or Hirschsprung disease. For this reason, it is appropriate to obtain a sweat chloride test and rectal biopsy in all of these infants before discharge, especially the infant with meconium plug syndrome who is still symptomatic after contrast enema.

In duodenal atresia associated with Down syndrome, the prognosis depends on associated anomalies (eg, heart defects) and the severity of prestenotic duodenal dilation and subsequent duodenal dysmotility. Otherwise, these conditions usually carry an excellent prognosis after surgical repair.

Juang D, Snyder C: Neonatal bowel obstruction. Surg Clin N Am 2012;92(3):685–711 [PMID: 22595716].

ABDOMINAL WALL DEFECTS

1. Omphalocele

Omphalocele is a membrane-covered herniation of abdominal contents into the base of the umbilical cord; the incidence is 2 per 10,000 live births. Over 50% of cases have either an abnormal karyotype or an associated syndrome. The sac may contain liver and spleen as well as intestine. Prognosis varies with the size of the lesion, the presence of pulmonary hypoplasia and respiratory insufficiency, and the presence of associated abnormalities.

At delivery, the omphalocele is covered with a sterile dressing soaked with warm saline to prevent fluid loss. NG decompression is performed, and IV fluids, glucose, and antibiotics are given. If the contents of the omphalocele will fit into the abdomen and can be covered with skin, muscle, or both, primary surgical closure is done. If not, staged closure is performed, with placement of a Gore-Tex patch over the exposed contents, and gradual coverage of the patch by skin over days to weeks. A large ventral hernia is left, which is repaired in the future.

2. Gastroschisis

In gastroschisis, the uncovered intestine extrudes through a small abdominal wall defect to the right of the umbilical cord. There is no membrane or sac and no liver or spleen outside the abdomen. Gastroschisis is associated with intestinal atresia in approximately 10%–20% of infants, and with IUGR. The evisceration is thought to be related to abnormal involution of the right umbilical vein or a vascular accident involving the omphalomesenteric artery, although the exact cause is unknown. The prevalence of gastroschisis has been increasing worldwide over the past 20 years, from 0.03% to 0.1%. Environmental factors, including use of illicit drugs such as methamphetamine and cocaine, and cyclooxygenase inhibitors such as aspirin and ibuprofen taken during pregnancy, may be involved. Young maternal age is also strongly linked to the occurrence of gastroschisis.

Therapy initially involves placing the bowel or the lower half of the infant into a Silastic bowel bag to decrease fluid and electrolyte losses as well as to conserve heat. IV fluids, antibiotics, and low intermittent gastric suction are required. The infant is placed right side down to preserve bowel perfusion. Subsequent therapy involves replacement of the bowel into the abdominal cavity. This is done as a single primary procedure if the amount of bowel to be replaced is small. If the amount of bowel is large or if the bowel is much dilated, staged closure with placement of a Silastic silo and gradual reduction of the bowel into the underdeveloped abdominal cavity over several days is preferred. Perioperatively, third-space fluid losses may be extensive; fluid and electrolyte therapy, therefore, must be monitored carefully. Bowel motility may be slow to return if the bowel was dilated, thickened, matted together, and covered with a fibrinous "peel" at delivery. Prolonged intravenous nutrition is often required, but long-term outcome is very good.

Lakshminarayanan B, Lakhoo K: Abdominal wall defects. Early Hum Dev 2014;90(12):917–920 [PMID: 25448781].

DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Respiratory distress from birth.
- » Poor breath sounds; flat or scaphoid abdomen.
- » Bowel loops seen in the chest with mediastinal shift to opposite side on chest radiograph.

This congenital malformation consists of herniation of abdominal organs into the hemithorax (usually left-sided) through a posterolateral defect in the diaphragm. The incidence overall is 1 in 2500 births. It is usually diagnosed antenatally by ultrasound, and, if so, delivery should occur at a perinatal center. If undiagnosed, it should be suspected in any infant with severe respiratory distress, poor breath sounds, and a scaphoid abdomen. The rapidity and severity of presentation depend on several factors: the degree of

pulmonary hypoplasia resulting from lung compression by the intrathoracic abdominal contents in utero; degree of associated pulmonary hypertension; and associated anomalies, especially chromosomal abnormalities and congenital cardiac defects. Affected infants are prone to development of pneumothorax during attempts at ventilation of the hypoplastic lungs.

Treatment includes intubation, mechanical ventilation, and decompression of the GI tract with an orogastric (OG) tube. An IV infusion of glucose and fluid should be started. Chest radiograph confirms the diagnosis. Surgery to reduce the abdominal contents from the thorax and close the diaphragmatic defect is delayed until after the infant is stabilized and pulmonary hypertension and compliance have improved, usually after 24–48 hours. Both pre- and postoperatively, pulmonary hypertension may require therapy with high-frequency oscillatory ventilation, inhaled nitric oxide, pressors, or ECMO. The survival rate for infants with this condition is improving, and now approaches 70%. Use of a gentle ventilation style and permissive hypercarbia is recommended to avoid barotrauma and further lung injury. Many of these infants have ongoing problems with pulmonary hypertension and severe gastroesophageal reflux, and are at risk for neurodevelopmental problems, behavior problems, hearing loss, and poor growth.

Danzer E, Hedrick HL: Controversies in the management of severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Sem Fetal Neon Med 2014;19(6):376–384 [PMID 25454678].

Lally KP et al; Section on Surgery and the Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Postdischarge follow-up of infants with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Pediatrics 2008;121:627 [PMID: 18310215].

Van den Hout L et al: Actual outcome in infants with congenital diaphragmatic hernia: the role of a standardized postnatal treatment protocol. Fetal Diagn Ther 2011;29:55 [PMID: 21325859].

GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

» Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding

Upper GI bleeding sometimes occurs in the newborn nursery but is rarely severe. Old blood ("coffee-grounds" material) in the stomach of the newborn may be either swallowed maternal blood or infant blood from gastritis or stress ulcer. Bright red blood from the stomach is most likely from acute bleeding due to gastritis or iatrogenic from trauma related to a nasogastric tube. Treatment generally consists of gastric lavage to obtain a sample for Apt testing or blood typing to determine if it is mother's or baby's blood, and antacid medication. If the volume of bleeding is large, intensive monitoring, fluid and blood replacement, and endoscopy are indicated. Coagulation studies should also be sent, and vitamin K administration confirmed or repeated.

» Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding

Rectal bleeding in the newborn is less common than upper GI bleeding and is associated with infections (eg, Salmonella acquired from the mother perinatally), milk protein intolerance (blood streaks with diarrhea), or, in ill infants, NEC. An abdominal radiograph should be obtained to rule out pneumatosis intestinalis or other abnormalities in gas pattern suggesting inflammation, infection, or obstruction. If the radiograph is negative and the examination is benign, a protein hydrolysate or elemental formula should be tried. The nursing mother should be instructed to avoid all cow milk protein products in her diet. If the amount of rectal bleeding is large or persistent, endoscopy may be needed.

Boyle JT: Gastrointestinal bleeding in infants and children. Pediatr Rev 2008;29:39 [PMID: 18245300].

GASTROESOPHAGEAL REFLUX

Physiologic regurgitation is common in infants. Reflux is pathologic and should be treated when it results in failure to thrive owing to excessive regurgitation, poor intake due to dysphagia, or chronic respiratory symptoms of wheezing and recurrent pneumonias suggestive of aspiration. Diagnosis is clinical, with confirmation by pH probe or impedance study. Barium radiography is helpful to rule out anatomic abnormalities causing delayed gastric emptying but is not diagnostic of pathologic reflux.

Most antireflux therapies have not been studied systematically in infants, especially in premature infants, and there is little correlation between clinical symptoms and documented gastroesophageal reflux events when studied. Treatment modalities have included thickened feeds (with cereal or guar gum) for those with frequent regurgitation and poor weight gain, and positioning in a prone or left side down position for 1 hour after a feeding, although this may increase risk for SIDS. Gastric acid suppressants such as ranitidine (2 mg/kg bid) or lansoprazole (1.5 mg/kg/d) can also be used, especially if there is associated irritability; however, these may be associated with an increased incidence of NEC and invasive infections in the young and/or premature infant. Prokinetic agents such as erythromycin or metoclopramide are of little benefit and have significant side effects. Because most infants improve by 12–15 months of age, surgery is reserved for the most severe cases.

Rosen R: Gastroesophageal reflux in infants: more than just a pHenomenon. JAMA Pediatr 2014;168(1):83–89 [PMID: 24276411].

Tighe M et al: Pharmacological treatment of children with gastro-oesophageal reflux. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;11 [PMID: 25419906].

Vandenplas Y et al: Pediatric gastroesophageal reflux clinical practice guidelines: joint recommendations of NASPGHAN and ESPGHAN. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2009;49:498 [PMID: 19745761].

INFECTIONS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT

There are three major routes of perinatal infection: (1) bloodborne transplacental infection of the fetus (eg, cytomegalovirus [CMV], rubella, and syphilis); (2) ascending infection with disruption of the barrier provided by the amniotic membranes (eg, bacterial infections after 12–18 hours of ruptured membranes); and (3) infection on passage through an infected birth canal or exposure to infected blood at delivery (eg, herpes simplex, hepatitis B, HIV, and bacterial infections).

Susceptibility of the newborn infant to infection is related to immaturity of the immune system at birth. This feature applies particularly to the preterm neonate. Passive protection against some organisms is provided by transfer of IgG across the placenta, particularly during the third trimester of pregnancy. Preterm infants, especially those born before 30 weeks' gestation, do not have the full amount of passively acquired antibody.

BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

1. Bacterial Sepsis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Most infants with early-onset sepsis present at < 24 hours of age.
- Respiratory distress is the most common presenting symptom.
- Hypotension, acidemia, and neutropenia are associated clinical findings.
- The presentation of late-onset sepsis is more subtle.

» General Considerations

The incidence of early-onset (< 3 days) neonatal bacterial infection is 1–2 in 1000 live births. If rupture of the membranes occurs more than 24 hours prior to delivery, the infection rate increases to 1 in 100 live births. If early rupture of membranes with chorioamnionitis occurs, the infection rate increases further to 1 in 10 live births. Regardless of membrane rupture, infection rates are five times higher in preterm than in full-term infants.

» Clinical Findings

Early-onset bacterial infections appear most commonly on day 1 of life, the majority by 12 hours of age. Respiratory distress due to pneumonia is the most common presenting sign. Other features include unexplained low Apgar scores without fetal distress, poor perfusion, and hypotension. Late-onset bacterial infection (> 3 days of age) presents in a more subtle manner, with poor feeding, lethargy, hypotonia, temperature instability, altered perfusion, new or increased oxygen requirement, and apnea. Late-onset bacterial sepsis is more often associated with meningitis or other localized infections.

Low total white count, absolute neutropenia (< 1000/mL), and elevated ratio of immature to mature neutrophils all suggest neonatal bacterial infection. Thrombocytopenia is another common feature. Other laboratory signs are hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia, unexplained metabolic acidosis, and elevated C-reactive protein and procalcitonin. In early-onset bacterial infection, pneumonia is often present; chest radiography shows infiltrates, but these infiltrates cannot be distinguished from those resulting from other causes of neonatal lung disease. Presence of a pleural effusion makes a diagnosis of pneumonia more likely. Definitive diagnosis is made by positive cultures from blood, CSF, or other body fluids.

Early-onset infection is most often caused by group B β-hemolytic streptococci (GBS) and gram-negative enteric pathogens (most commonly E coli). Other organisms to consider are nontypeable Haemophilus influenzae, Enterococcus, Staphylococcus aureus, other streptococci, and Listeria monocytogenes. Late-onset sepsis is caused by coagulase-negative staphylococci (most common in infants with indwelling central venous lines), S aureus, GBS, Enterococcus, and gram-negative organisms, in addition to Candida species (see section Fungal Sepsis).

» Treatment

A high index of suspicion is important in diagnosis and treatment of neonatal infection. Infants with risk factors (rupture of membranes > 18 hours, maternal chorioamnionitis, prematurity) need to be carefully observed for signs of infection. Evaluation with a CBC and differential, blood and CSF cultures are indicated in infants with clinical signs of early sepsis. Early-onset sepsis is usually caused by GBS or gram-negative enteric organisms; broad-spectrum coverage, therefore, should include ampicillin (100–150 mg/kg/d divided every 12 hours) plus an aminoglycoside (3–4 mg/kg/dose every 24 hours based on gestational age at birth) or third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime 100 mg/kg/d divided every 12 hours). Late-onset infections can also be caused by the same organisms, but coverage may need to be expanded to include staphylococci. In particular, the preterm infant with an indwelling catheter is at risk for infection with coagulase-negative staphylococci, for which

vancomycin (10–15 mg/kg every 8–24 hours based on gestational and postnatal age) is the drug of choice. Initial broad-spectrum coverage should also include a third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime or ceftazidime, if Pseudomonas aeruginosa is strongly suspected) or an aminoglycoside. To prevent the development of vancomycin-resistant organisms, vancomycin should be stopped as soon as cultures and sensitivities indicate that it is not needed. The evaluation for late-onset symptoms should include cultures of blood, urine, and CSF. The duration of treatment for proven sepsis is 10–14 days of IV antibiotics. In sick infants, the essentials of good supportive therapy should be provided: IV glucose and nutritional support, volume expansion and pressors as needed, and oxygen and ventilator support.

» Prevention

Prevention of early-onset neonatal GBS infection has been achieved with intrapartum administration of penicillin given more than 4 hours prior to delivery, with overall rates of infection now at 0.3–0.4 cases per 1000 live births. The current guideline (Figure 2–12) is to perform a vaginal and rectal GBS culture at 35–37 weeks' gestation in all pregnant women. Prophylaxis with penicillin or ampicillin is given to GBS-positive women, to those who had GBS bacteriuria during the current pregnancy, to those who had a previous infant with invasive GBS disease, and to those who have unknown GBS status at delivery with risk factors for infection. Figure 2–13 presents an algorithm for secondary prevention of early-onset GBS infections in newborns.

2. Meningitis

Any newborn with bacterial sepsis is at risk for meningitis. The incidence is low in infants presenting in the first day of life, and higher in infants with later-onset infection. The workup for any newborn with possible signs of CNS infection should include a lumbar puncture because blood cultures can be negative in neonates with meningitis. The presence of seizures should increase the suspicion for meningitis. Diagnosis is suggested by a CSF protein level higher than 150 mg/dL, glucose less than 30 mg/dL, leukocytes of more than 20/μL, and a positive Gram stain. The diagnosis is confirmed by culture. The most common organisms are GBS and gram-negative enteric bacteria. Although sepsis can be treated with antibiotics for 10–14 days, meningitis requires 14–21 days. Gram-negative infections, in particular, are difficult to eradicate, and may relapse. The mortality rate of neonatal meningitis is approximately 10%, with significant neurologic morbidity present in one-third of the survivors.

3. Pneumonia

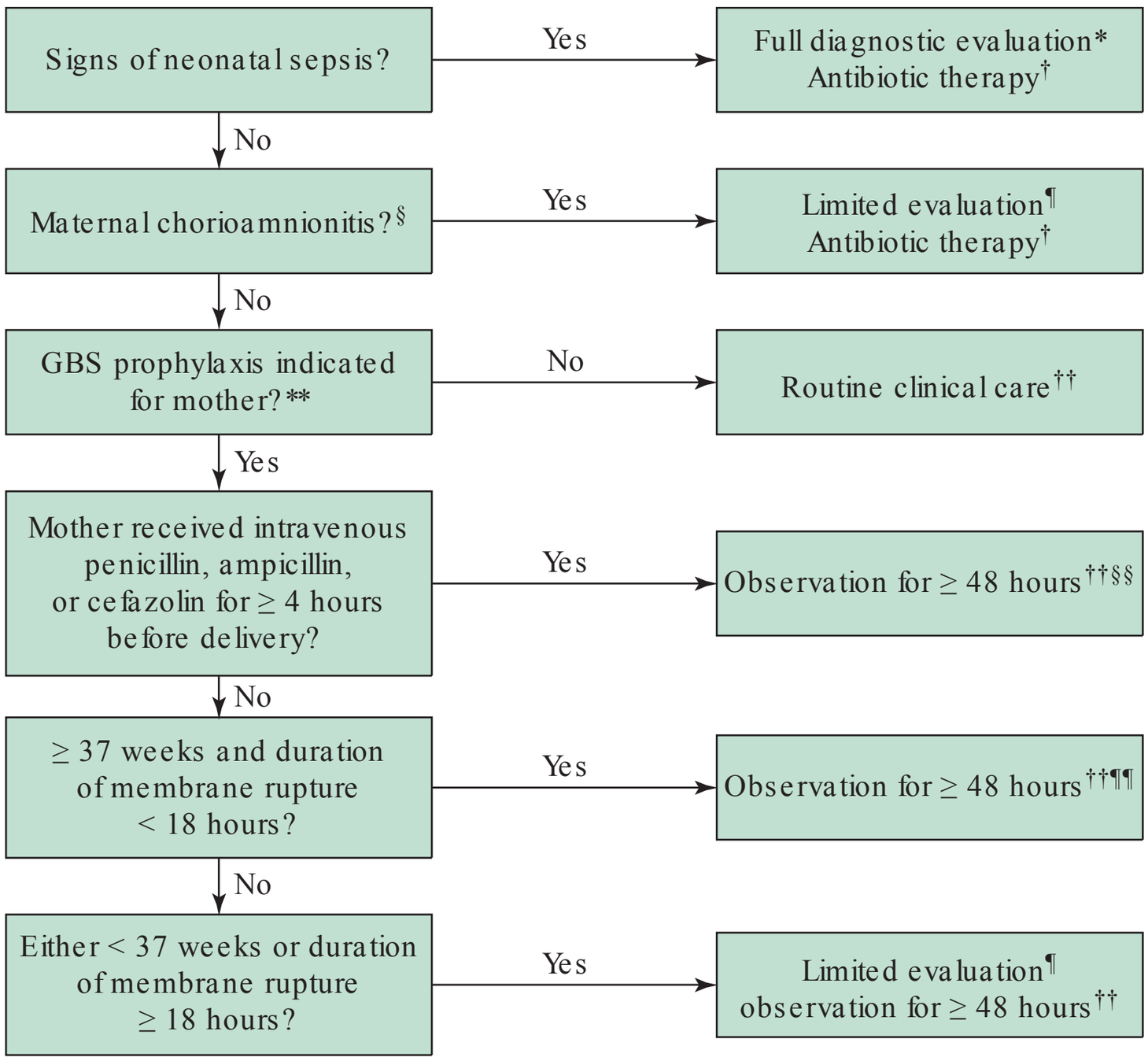
The respiratory system can be infected in utero, on passage through the birth canal, or postnatally. Early-onset neonatal infection is usually associated with pneumonia. Pneumonia should also be suspected in older neonates with a recent onset of tachypnea, retractions, and cyanosis. In infants already receiving respiratory support, an increase in the requirement for oxygen or ventilator support, perhaps with a change in the character of tracheal secretions, may indicate pneumonia.

Intrapartum GBS prophylaxis indicated	Intrapartum GBS prophylaxis not indicated
• Previous infant with invasive GBS disease • GBS bacteriuria during any trimester of the current pregnancy[1] • Positive GBS vaginal-rectal screening culture in late gestation[2] during current pregnancy[1] • Unknown GBS status at the onset of lab or (culture not done, incomplete, or results unknown) and any of the following: - Delivery at < 37 weeks' gestation - Amniotic membrane rupture ≥ 18 hours - Intrapartum temperature ≥ 100.4°F (≥ 38.0°C)[3] - Intrapartum NATT[4] positive for GBS	• Colonization with GBS during a previous pregnancy (unless an indication for GBS prophylaxis is present for current pregnancy) • GBS bacteriuria during previous pregnancy (unless an indication for GBS prophylaxis is present for current pregnancy) • Negative vaginal and rectal GBS screening culture in late gestation[2] during the current pregnancy, regardless of intrapartum risk factors • Cesarean delivery performed before onset of labor on a woman with intact amniotic membranes, regardless of GBS colonization status or gestational age

Abbreviation: GBS, group B streptococcal; NAAT, nucleic acid amplification test

[1]Intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is not indicated in this circumstance if a cesarean delivery is performed before onset of labor on a woman with interact amniotic membranes.
[2]Optimal timing for prenatal GBS screening as at 35–37 weeks' gestation.
[3]If amnionitis is suspected, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy that includes an agent known to be active against GBS should replace GBS prophylaxis.
[4]NAAT testing for GBS is optional and might not be available in all settings, if intrapartum NAAT is negative for GBS but any other intrapartum risk factor (delivery at ≤ 37 weeks' gestation, amniotic membrane rupture at ≥ 18 hours, or temperature ≥ 100.4°F [≥ 38.0°C]) is present , then intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is indicated.

▲**Figure 2–12.** Indications for intrapartum antimicrobial prophylaxis to prevent early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease using a universal prenatal culture screening strategy at 35–37 weeks' gestation for all pregnant women. (Reproduced, with permission, from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59:RR-10.)



*Full diagnostic evaluation includes a blood culture, a complete blood count (CBC) including white blood cell differential and platelet counts, chest radiograph (if respiratory abnormalities are present), and lumbar puncture (if patient is stable enough to tolerate procedure and sepsis is suspected).

†Antibiotic therapy should be directed toward the most common causes of neonatal sepsis, including intravenous ampicillin for GBS and coverage for other organisms (including Escherichia coli and other gram-negative pathogens) and should take into account local antibiotic resistance patterns.

§Consultation with obstetric providers is important to determine the level of clinical suspicion for chorioamnionitis. Chorioamnionitis is diagnosed clinically and some of the signs are nonspecific.

¶Limited evaluation includes blood culture (at birth) and CBC with differential and platelets (at birth and/or at 6–12 hours of life).

**See Figure 2–13 for indications for intrapartum GBS prophylaxis.

††If signs of sepsis develop, a full diagnostic evaluation should be conducted and antibiotic therapy initiated.

§§If ≥ 37 weeks' gestation, observation may occur at home after 24 hours if other discharge criteria have been met, access to medical care is readily available, and a person who is able to comply fully with instructions for home observation will be present. If any of these conditions is not met, the infant should be observed in the hospital for at least 48 hours and until discharge criteria are achieved.

¶¶Some experts recommend a CBC with differential and platelets at age 6–12 hours.

▲**Figure 2–13.** Algorithm for secondary prevention of early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease among newborns. (Reproduced, with permission, from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59:RR-10.)

Not only common bacteria but also viruses (CMV, respiratory syncytial virus, adenovirus, influenza, herpes simplex, parainfluenza) and Chlamydia can cause pneumonia. In infants with preexisting respiratory disease, intercurrent pulmonary infections contribute to the development of chronic lung disease.

4. Urinary Tract Infection

Infection of the urine is uncommon in the first days of life. Urinary tract infection in the newborn can occur in association with genitourinary anomalies and is usually caused by gram-negative enteric pathogens, or Enterococcus.

Urine should always be evaluated as part of the workup for later-onset infection. Culture should be obtained either by suprapubic aspiration or bladder catheterization. Antibiotic IV therapy is continued for 3–5 days if the blood culture is negative and clinical signs resolve quickly, and then completed with oral medications. Evaluation for genitourinary anomalies with an ultrasound examination and a voiding cystourethrogram should be done in most cases.

5. Omphalitis

A normal umbilical cord stump atrophies and separates at the skin level. A small amount of purulent material at the base of the cord is common and can be minimized by keeping the cord open to air and dry. The cord can become colonized with streptococci, staphylococci, or gram-negative organisms that can cause local infection. Infections are more common in cords manipulated for venous or arterial lines. Omphalitis is diagnosed when redness and edema develop in the soft tissues around the stump. Local and systemic cultures should be obtained. Treatment is with broad-spectrum IV antibiotics (usually nafcillin at 50–75 mg/kg/d divided every 8–12 hours) or vancomycin, a third-generation cephalosporin, and anaerobic coverage with metronidazole (15 mg/kg/d divided every 12 hours) as the infection may be polymicrobial. Complications are determined by the degree of infection of the cord vessels and include septic thrombophlebitis, hepatic abscess, necrotizing fasciitis, and portal vein thrombosis. Surgical consultation should be obtained because of the potential for necrotizing fasciitis.

6. Conjunctivitis

Neisseria gonorrhoeae may colonize an infant during passage through an infected birth canal. Gonococcal ophthalmitis presents at 3–7 days with copious purulent conjunctivitis. The diagnosis can be suspected when gram-negative intracellular diplococci are seen on a Gram-stained smear and confirmed by culture. Treatment for nondisseminated disease is with IV or IM ceftriaxone, 25–50 mg/kg (not to exceed 125 mg) given once. For disseminated disease (sepsis, arthritis, or meningitis) cefotaxime for 7–10 days is preferred. Prophylaxis at birth is with 0.5% erythromycin ointment. Infants born to mothers with known gonococcal disease should also receive a single dose of ceftriaxone. If significant hyperbilirubinemia is present, cefotaxime is preferred.

Chlamydia trachomatis is another important cause of conjunctivitis, appearing at 5 days to several weeks of age with conjunctival congestion, edema, and minimal discharge. The organism is acquired at birth after passage through an infected birth canal. Acquisition occurs in 50% of infants born to infected women, with a 25%–50% risk of conjunctivitis. Prevalence in pregnancy is over 10% in some populations. Diagnosis is by isolation of the organism or by rapid antigen detection tests. Treatment is with oral erythromycin (30 mg/kg/d in divided doses q8–12h) for 14 days. Topical treatment alone will not eradicate nasopharyngeal carriage, leaving the infant at risk for the development of pneumonitis.

Bentlin MR, Suppo de Souza Rugolo LM: Late-onset sepsis: epidemiology, evaluation, and outcome. NeoReviews 2010;11:e426.

Camacho-Gonzalez A et al: Neonatal infectious diseases: evaluation of neonatal sepsis. Pediatr Clin N Am 2013;60:367–389 [PMID: 23481106].

Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. MMWR 2010;59:1–32 [PMID: 21088663].

Simonsen KA et al: Early onset neonatal sepsis. Clin Microbiol Rev 2014;27(1):21–47 [PMID: 2349613].

FUNGAL SEPSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Risk factors include low birth weight, indwelling central lines, and multiple antibiotic exposures.
- Colonization with Candida species is common; systemic infection occurs in 5%–7% of infants.
- Presents with often subtle clinical deterioration, thrombocytopenia, and hyperglycemia.

With the survival of smaller, sicker infants, infection with Candida species has become more common. Infants of extremely low birth weight with central lines who have had repeated exposures to broad-spectrum antibiotics are at highest risk. For infants of birth weight less than 1500 g, colonization rates of 27%–64% have been demonstrated. Many of these infants develop cutaneous lesions, with the GI tract as the initial site of colonization. A much smaller percentage develops systemic disease. Infection is more common in the smallest and least mature infants; up to 20% in infants 24 weeks' gestation, and 7% overall in those less than 1000 g.

Clinical features of fungal sepsis can be indistinguishable from those of late-onset bacterial sepsis but are often more subtle. Thrombocytopenia or hyperglycemia may be the earliest and only signs. Deep organ involvement (renal, eye, or endocarditis) is commonly associated with systemic candidiasis. Treatment is with intravenous fluconazole (12 mg/kg loading dose followed by 6 mg/kg daily) or an amphotericin B lipid complex (5 mg/kg given daily). Prophylaxis for those infants at highest risk, for example, with central venous lines and receiving parenteral nutrition, is recommended. Prophylaxis with fluconazole diminishes intestinal colonization with yeast and decreases the frequency of systemic disease,

with an overall reduction in invasive candidal disease of 83%, from 9% to 1.6%, without significant adverse effects, or resistance to fluconazole. Nystatin prophylaxis may also be effective but has been less rigorously tested.

Kaufman DA, Manzoni P: Strategies to prevent invasive candidal infection in extremely preterm infants. Clin Perinatol 2010;37:611 [PMID: 20813274].

Lollis TR, Bradshaw WT: Fungal prophylaxis in neonates: a review article. Adv Neonatal Care 2014;14(1):17–23 [PMID: 24472884].

CONGENITAL INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Can be acquired in utero, perinatally, and postnatally.
- Can be asymptomatic in the newborn period.
- Clinical symptom complexes include IUGR, chorioretinitis, cataracts, cholestatic jaundice, thrombocytopenia, skin rash, and brain calcifications.
- Diagnosis can be confirmed using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing, antigen and antibody studies, and culture.

1. Cytomegalovirus Infection (See also Chapter 40)

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is the most common virus transmitted in utero, affecting approximately 1% of all newborns. Symptomatic disease in the newborn period occurs in 10% of these congenitally infected infants, with a spectrum of findings including hepatosplenomegaly, petechiae and "blueberry muffin" spots, growth restriction, microcephaly, direct hyperbilirubinemia, thrombocytopenia, intracranial calcifications, and chorioretinitis. More than half of these infants will develop long-term sequelae, including sensorineural deafness in 20%–30%. Sensorineural hearing loss is common even in asymptomatic infants, leading to deafness in another 10–15%. Transmission of CMV can occur during either primary or reactivated maternal infection; the risk of symptomatic neonatal disease is highest when the mother acquires a primary infection in the first half of pregnancy. Diagnosis in the neonate should be confirmed by culture of the virus from urine. Rapid diagnosis is possible with polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing of urine or saliva. Diagnosis can also be confirmed in utero from an amniocentesis specimen. Oral valganciclovir therapy for 6 months is recommended for neonates with symptomatic congenital infection affecting the central nervous system, in an attempt to prevent progression of hearing loss and neuronal damage. Infection can also be acquired around the time of delivery, and postnatally through blood transfusion or ingestion of CMV-infected breast milk. These infections generally cause no symptoms or sequelae although hepatitis, pneumonia, and neurologic illness may occur in compromised seronegative premature infants. Transfusion risk can be minimized by using frozen, washed red blood cells; leukodepleted blood; or CMV antibody-negative donors.

2. Rubella (See also Chapter 40)

Congenital rubella infection occurs as a result of maternal rubella infection during pregnancy. The risk of fetal infection and congenital defects is as high as 80%–85% in mothers infected during the first trimester, but after 12 weeks' gestation, the risk of congenital malformation decreases markedly. Features of congenital rubella syndrome include microcephaly and encephalitis; cardiac defects (patent ductus arteriosus and pulmonary arterial stenosis and arterial hypoplasia); cataracts, retinopathy, and microphthalmia; growth restriction, hepatosplenomegaly, thrombocytopenia, and purpura; and deafness. Affected infants can be asymptomatic at birth but develop clinical sequelae during the first year of life as the viral infection is persistent due to an inadequate immune response. The diagnosis should be suspected in cases of a characteristic clinical illness in the mother (rash, adenopathy, and arthritis) confirmed by an increase in serum rubella-specific IgM or culture of pharyngeal secretions in the infant. Congenital rubella is now rare in industrialized countries because of widespread immunization but is still possible due to the prevalence of unimmunized individuals in the population and widespread travel.

3. Varicella

Congenital varicella syndrome is rare (1%–2% after maternal varicella infection acquired during the first 20 weeks of pregnancy) and may include limb hypoplasia, cutaneous scars, microcephaly, cortical atrophy, chorioretinitis, and cataracts. Perinatal exposure (5 days before to 2 days after delivery) can cause severe to fatal disseminated varicella in the infant. If maternal varicella infection develops within this perinatal risk period, the newborn should receive varicella-zoster immune globulin or IVIG. If this has not been done, subsequent illness can be treated with IV acyclovir.

Hospitalized premature infants of at least 28 weeks' gestation whose mothers have no history of chickenpox—and all infants younger than 28 weeks' gestational age—should receive varicella immune globulin following any postnatal exposure.

4. Toxoplasmosis (See also Chapter 43)

Toxoplasmosis is caused by the protozoan Toxoplasma gondii. Maternal infection occurs in 0.1%–0.5% of pregnancies and

is usually asymptomatic; it is estimated that between 1 in 1000 and 1 in 10,000 infants are infected, 70%–90% initially asymptomatic. These children may develop mental retardation, visual impairment, and learning disabilities within months to years. The sources of infection include exposure to cat feces and ingestion of raw or undercooked meat. Although the risk of transmission increases to 90% near term, fetal damage is most likely to occur when maternal infection occurs in the second to sixth month of gestation.

Clinical findings may include growth restriction, chorioretinitis, seizures, jaundice, hydrocephalus, microcephaly, intracranial calcifications, hepatosplenomegaly, adenopathy, cataracts, maculopapular rash, thrombocytopenia, and pneumonia. The serologic diagnosis is based on a positive toxoplasma-specific IgA, IgE, or IgM in the first 6 months of life, a rise in serial IgG levels compared to the mother's, or a persistent IgG beyond 12 months. Infants with suspected infection should have eye and auditory examinations and a computed tomographic (CT) scan of the brain. Organism isolation from placenta or cord blood and PCR tests on amniotic fluid or CSF are also available for diagnosis.

Spiramycin (an investigational drug in the United States) treatment of primary maternal infection is used to try to reduce transmission to the fetus. Neonatal treatment using pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine with folinic acid can improve long-term outcome.

5. Parvovirus B19 Infection

Parvovirus B19 is a small, nonenveloped, single-stranded DNA virus that causes erythema infectiosum (fifth disease) in children, with a peak incidence at ages 6–7 years. Transmission to the mother is primarily by respiratory secretions. The virus replicates initially in erythroid progenitor cells and induces cell-cycle arrest, resulting in severe anemia, myocarditis, nonimmune hydrops, or fetal death in approximately 3%–6% of fetuses infected during pregnancy. Resolution of the hydrops may occur in utero, either spontaneously or after fetal transfusion. Mothers who have been exposed may have specific serologic testing, and serial ultrasound, Doppler examinations, and percutaneous umbilical cord blood sampling of the fetus to assess for anemia. If the fetus survives, the long-term outcome is good with no late effects from the infection.

6. Congenital Syphilis (See also Chapter 42)

Active primary and secondary maternal syphilis leads to transplacental passage of Treponema pallidum to the fetus in nearly 100% of affected pregnancies while latent maternal infection leads to transplacental infection of the fetus in 40% of cases, and late maternal infection in 10%. Fetal infection is rare before 18 weeks' gestation. Fetal infection can result in stillbirth or prematurity. Findings of early congenital syphilis (presentation before age 2 years) include mucocutaneous lesions, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, bony changes, and hydrops, although newborn infants are often asymptomatic. Late manifestations (after 2 years of age) in untreated infants involve the central nervous system, bones and joints, teeth, eyes and skin. An infant should be evaluated for congenital syphilis if he or she has proven or probable congenital syphilis, defined as a suggestive examination, serum quantitative nontreponemal titer more than fourfold the mother's, or positive darkfield or fluorescent antibody test of body fluids, or birth to a mother with positive nontreponemal tests confirmed by a positive treponemal test but without documented adequate treatment (parenteral penicillin G), including the expected fourfold decrease in nontreponemal antibody titer. Infants of mothers treated less than 1 month before delivery also require evaluation. Evaluation should include physical examination, a quantitative nontreponemal serologic test for syphilis, CBC, CSF examination for cell count and protein, Venereal Disease Research Laboratory testing, and long bone radiographs. Treatment in most cases is aqueous penicillin G (50,000 U/kg every 12 hours) or procaine penicillin G (50,000 U/kg IM daily) for 10 days.

American Academy of Pediatrics: In: Pickering LD et al (eds): Red Book: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics, 2012.

Lombardi G et al: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: treatment, sequelae and follow-up. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 2010;23(Supp 3):45 [PMID: 20807160].

McAuley JB: Congenital toxoplasmosis. J Pediatr Infect Dis Soc 2014;3(Suppl 1):530–535 [PMID: 25232475].

Swanson ED, Schleiss MR: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: new prospects for prevention and therapy. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60(2):335–349 [PMID: 23481104].

PERINATALLY ACQUIRED INFECTIONS

1. Herpes Simplex (See also Chapter 40)

Herpes simplex virus infection is usually acquired at birth during transit through an infected birth canal. The mother may have either primary or reactivated secondary infection. Primary maternal infection, because of the high titer of organisms and the absence of antibodies, poses the greatest risk to the infant. The risk of neonatal infection with vaginal delivery in this setting is 25%–50%. Seventy-five percent of mothers with primary herpes at the time of delivery are asymptomatic. The risk to an infant born to a mother with recurrent herpes simplex is much lower (< 1%). Time of presentation of localized (skin, eye, or mouth) or disseminated disease (pneumonia, shock, or hepatitis) in the infant is usually 5–14 days of age. CNS disease presents later, at 14–28 days with lethargy, fever, and seizures. In rare cases,

presentation is as early as day 1 of life, suggesting in utero infection. In about 45% of patients, localized skin, eye, and mouth disease is the first indication of infection. Another 30% present with CNS disease, whereas the remaining 25% have disseminated or multiorgan disease indistinguishable from bacterial sepsis. Herpes infection should be considered in neonates with sepsis syndrome, negative bacteriologic culture results, and liver dysfunction or coagulopathy. Herpes simplex virus also should be considered as a causative agent in neonates with fever, irritability, and abnormal CSF findings, especially in the presence of seizures. PCR testing of vesicles, blood, or CSF is diagnostic but may be falsely negative in the CSF early in the course. If a blood or CSF PCR performed shortly after the onset of symptoms is negative, it should be repeated if herpes simplex virus disease is considered a strong possibility.

Acyclovir (60 mg/kg/d divided q8h) is the drug of choice for neonatal herpes infection. Localized disease is treated for 14 days, and a 21-day course is used for disseminated or CNS disease. Prompt initiation of therapy improves survival of neonates with CNS and disseminated disease and prevents the spread of localized disease. Prevention is possible by delivery by cesarean section within 6 hours after rupture of the membranes in the presence of known infection. Given the low incidence of infection in the newborn from recurrent maternal infection, cesarean delivery is not indicated for asymptomatic mothers with a history of recurrent herpes. Cesarean deliveries are performed in mothers with active lesions (either primary or recurrent) at the time of delivery. Infants born to mothers with a history of herpes simplex virus infection but no active lesions can be observed closely after birth, and do not need to be isolated. In infants born to mothers with active lesions—regardless of the route of delivery—cultures of the eye, oropharynx, nasopharynx, and rectum should be performed 24 hours after delivery, and the infant should be in contact isolation. If the infant is colonized (positive cultures) or if symptoms consistent with herpes infection develop, treatment with acyclovir should be started. In cases of primary maternal genital infection at the time of vaginal delivery, infant specimens should be obtained and the infant treated with IV acyclovir for 10 days. The major problem facing perinatologists is the high percentage of asymptomatic primary maternal infection. In these cases, infection in the neonate is not currently preventable. Cultures should be obtained and acyclovir started, pending the results of those cultures, in any infant who presents at the right age with symptoms consistent with neonatal herpes.

The prognosis is good for localized skin and mucosal disease that does not progress, although skin recurrences are common. The mortality rate for disseminated herpes is high (approximately 30%), with significant morbidity among survivors of both disseminated (20%) and CNS (80%) infections despite treatment. Cutaneous recurrences are common in all types, and examination of the CSF should be considered with skin recurrences. Infants with herpes encephalitis should receive long-term oral acyclovir for 6 months after completion of intravenous treatment.

2. Hepatitis B & C

Infants become infected with hepatitis B at the time of birth; intrauterine transmission is rare. Clinical illness is rare in the neonatal period, but infants born to positive mothers are at risk of becoming chronic hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) carriers and developing chronic active hepatitis, and even hepatocellular carcinoma. The presence of HBsAg should be determined in all pregnant women. If the result is positive, the infant should receive hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) and hepatitis B vaccine as soon as possible after birth, followed by two subsequent vaccine doses at 1 and 6 months of age. If HBsAg has not been tested prior to birth in a mother at risk, the test should be run after delivery and hepatitis B vaccine given within 12 hours after birth. If the mother is subsequently found to be positive, HBIG should be given as soon as possible (preferably within 48 hours, but not later than 1 week after birth). Subsequent vaccine doses should be given at 1 and 6 months of age. In premature infants born to HBsAg-positive mothers, vaccine and HBIG should be given at birth, but a three-vaccine hepatitis B series should be given beginning at 1 month of age.

Perinatal transmission of hepatitis C occurs in about 5% of infants born to mothers who carry the virus; maternal coinfection with HIV increases the risk of transmission. Serum antibody to hepatitis C and hepatitis C RNA have been detected in colostrum, but the risk of hepatitis C transmission is similar in breast-fed and bottle-fed infants. Up to 12 months of age, the only reliable screen for hepatitis C infection is PCR. After that time, the presence of hepatitis C antibodies in the infant strongly suggests that infection has occurred.

3. Enterovirus Infection

Enterovirus infections occur most frequently in the late summer and early fall. Infection is usually acquired in the perinatal period. There is often a history of maternal fever, diarrhea, and/or rash in the week prior to delivery. The illness appears in the infant in the first 2 weeks of life and is most commonly characterized by fever, lethargy, irritability, diarrhea, and/or rash. More severe forms occasionally occur, especially if infection occurs before 1 week of age, including meningoencephalitis, myocarditis, hepatitis, pneumonia, shock, and disseminated intravascular coagulation. Diagnosis is best confirmed by PCR.

Treatment is supportive care. The prognosis is good in most cases, except those with severe hepatitis, myocarditis, or disseminated disease, which carry high mortality rates.

4. HIV Infection (See also Chapter 41)

HIV can be acquired in utero or at the time of delivery, or can be transmitted postpartum via breast milk. Testing for HIV should be performed in all pregnant women. Without treatment, transmission of virus occurs in 13%–39% of births to infected mothers, mostly at the time of delivery. The combination of maternal zidovudine treatment during pregnancy and of the infant for the first 6 weeks of life, elective cesarean delivery, and avoidance of breast-feeding can lower transmission to 1%–2%. Current guidelines for antiretroviral drugs in pregnant HIV-infected women are similar to those for nonpregnant patients (eg, highly active antiretroviral combination therapy). In cases of unknown HIV status at presentation in labor, rapid HIV testing, and intrapartum treatment, if positive, should be offered. The risk of transmission is increased in mothers with advanced disease, high viral loads, low CD4 counts, and intrapartum events such as chorioamnionitis and prolonged membrane rupture that increase exposure of the fetus to maternal blood.

Newborns with congenitally acquired HIV are usually asymptomatic. Infants of HIV-infected women should be tested by HIV DNA PCR at less than 48 hours, at 2 weeks, at 1–2 months, and at 2–4 months. If an infant aged 4 months has a negative PCR result, infection can be reasonably excluded. HIV-positive mothers should be counseled not to breast-feed their infants if safe feeding alternatives are available.

Allen UD, Robinson JL; Canadian Paediatric Society Infectious Diseases and Immunization Committee: Prevention and management of neonatal herpes simplex virus infections. Paediatr Child Health 2014;19(4):201–206 [PMID: 24855418].

American Academy of Pediatrics: In: Pickering LD et al (eds): Red Book: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics, 2012.

Chappell CA, Cohn SE: Prevention of perinatal transmission of human immunodeficiency virus. Infect Dis Clin North Amer 2014;28(4):529–547 [PMID: 25455313].

Havens PL, Mofenson LM; Committee on Pediatric AIDS: Evaluation and management of the infant exposed to HIV-1 in the United States. Pediatrics 2009;123:175 [PMID: 19117880].

HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT

BLEEDING DISORDERS

Bleeding in the newborn infant may result from inherited clotting deficiencies (eg, factor VIII deficiency) or acquired disorders—hemorrhagic disease of the newborn (vitamin K deficiency), disseminated intravascular coagulation, liver failure, and isolated thrombocytopenia.

1. Vitamin K Deficiency Bleeding of the Newborn

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Frequently exclusively breast fed, otherwise clinically well infant.
- Bleeding from mucous membranes, GI tract, skin, or internal (intracranial).
- Prolonged prothrombin time (PT), relatively normal partial thromboplastin time (PTT), normal fibrinogen and platelet count.

Bleeding is caused by the deficiency of the vitamin K–dependent clotting factors (II, VII, IX, and X). Bleeding occurs in 0.25%–1.7% of newborns who do not receive vitamin K prophylaxis after birth, generally in the first 5 days to 2 weeks in an otherwise well infant. There is an increased risk in infants of mothers receiving therapy with anticonvulsants that interfere with vitamin K metabolism. Early vitamin K deficiency bleeding (0–2 weeks) can be prevented by either parenteral or oral vitamin K administration, whereas late disease (onset 2 weeks to 6 months) is most effectively prevented by administering parenteral vitamin K. Sites of ecchymoses and surface bleeding include the GI tract, umbilical cord, circumcision site, and nose, although devastating intracranial hemorrhage can occur. Bleeding from vitamin K deficiency is more likely to occur in exclusively breast-fed infants because of very low amounts of vitamin K in breast milk and slower and more restricted intestinal bacterial colonization. Differential diagnosis includes disseminated intravascular coagulation and hepatic failure. Coagulation studies reveal a prolonged prothrombin (PT) with normal partial thromboplastin time (PTT) and fibrinogen level.

Treatment consists of 1 mg of vitamin K SC or IV. IM injections should be avoided in infants who are actively bleeding. Such infants may also require factor replacement in addition to vitamin K administration.

2. Thrombocytopenia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Generalized petechiae; oozing at cord or puncture sites.
- Thrombocytopenia, often marked (platelets < 10,000–20,000/mL).
- In an otherwise well infant, suspect isoimmune thrombocytopenia.
- In a sick or asphyxiated infant, suspect disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Table 2–17. Differential diagnosis of neonatal thrombocytopenia.

Disorder	Clinical Tips
Immune	Proper history, maternal thrombocytopenia
Passively acquired antibody; idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, systemic lupus erythematosus, drug-induced	
Isoimmune sensitization to HPA-1a antigen	No rise in platelet count from random donor platelet transfusion. Positive antiplatelet antibodies in baby's serum, sustained rise in platelets by transfusion of mother's platelets
Infections	Sick infants with other signs consistent with infection
Bacterial infections	
Congenital viral infections	
Syndromes	Congenital anomalies, associated pancytopenia
Absent radii	
Fanconi anemia	
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)	Sick infants, abnormalities of clotting factors
Giant hemangioma	
Thrombosis	Hyperviscous infants, vascular catheters
High-risk infant with respiratory distress syndrome, pulmonary hypertension, etc	Isolated decrease in platelets is not uncommon in sick infants even in the absence of DIC (localized trapping)

DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; HPA, human platelet antigen.

Infants with thrombocytopenia have generalized petechiae and platelet counts less than 150,000/mL (usually < 50,000/mL; may be < 10,000/mL). Neonatal thrombocytopenia can be isolated in a seemingly well infant or may occur in association with a deficiency of other clotting factors in a sick infant. The differential diagnosis for thrombocytopenia is presented in Table 2–17. Treatment of neonatal thrombocytopenia is transfusion of platelets (10 mL/kg of platelets increases the platelet count by ~70,000/mL). Indications for transfusion in the full-term infant are clinical bleeding or a total platelet count less than 10,000–20,000/mL. In the preterm infant at risk for intraventricular hemorrhage, transfusion is indicated for counts less than 40,000–50,000/mL.

Isoimmune (alloimmune) thrombocytopenia is analogous to Rh-isoimmunization, with a human platelet antigen [HPA]-1a (in 80%)– or HPA-5b (in 15%)–negative mother and an HPA-1a– or HPA-5b–positive fetus. Transplacental passage of IgG antibody leads to platelet destruction. If platelet transfusion is required for acute bleeding, washed maternal platelets may be the most readily available antigen-negative platelet source, because 98% of the general population will also be HPA-1a– or HPA-5b–positive. Treatment with IVIG infusion, 1 g/kg/d for 2–3 days, until the platelet count has doubled or is over 50,000/mL, is potentially beneficial. Twenty to thirty percent of infants with isoimmune thrombocytopenia will experience intracranial hemorrhage, half of them before birth. Antenatal therapy of the mother with IVIG with or without steroids may reduce this risk.

Infants born to mothers with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura are at low risk for serious hemorrhage despite the thrombocytopenia, and treatment is usually unnecessary. If bleeding does occur, IVIG can be used in addition to platelet transfusion.

ANEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hematocrit < 40% at term birth.
- Acute blood loss—signs of hypovolemia, normal reticulocyte count.
- Chronic blood loss—pallor without hypovolemia, elevated reticulocyte count.
- Hemolytic anemia—accompanied by excessive hyperbilirubinemia.

The newborn infant with anemia from acute blood loss presents with signs of hypovolemia (tachycardia, poor perfusion, and hypotension), with an initially normal hematocrit that falls after volume replacement. Anemia from chronic blood loss is evidenced by pallor without signs of hypovolemia, with an initially low hematocrit and reticulocytosis.

Anemia can be caused by hemorrhage, hemolysis, or failure to produce red blood cells. Anemia occurring in the first 24–48 hours of life is the result of hemorrhage or hemolysis. Hemorrhage can occur in utero (fetoplacental, fetomaternal, or twin-to-twin), perinatally (cord rupture, placenta previa, placental abruption, or incision through the placenta at cesarean section), or internally (intracranial hemorrhage, cephalohematoma, or ruptured liver or spleen). Hemolysis is caused by blood group incompatibilities, enzyme or membrane abnormalities, infection, and disseminated intravascular coagulation, and is accompanied by significant hyperbilirubinemia.

Initial evaluation should include a review of the perinatal history, assessment of the infant's volume status, and a complete physical examination. A Kleihauer-Betke test for fetal cells in the mother's circulation should be done. A CBC,

blood smear, reticulocyte count, and direct and indirect Coombs tests should be performed. This simple evaluation should suggest a diagnosis in most infants. Most infants tolerate anemia quite well due to the increased oxygen availability in the extrauterine environment; however, treatment with erythropoietin or transfusion might be needed if the infant develops signs of cardiopulmonary compromise. Additionally, if blood loss is the cause of the anemia, early supplementation with iron will be needed. It is important to remember that hemolysis related to blood group incompatibility can continue for weeks after birth. Serial hematocrits should be followed, because late transfusion may be needed.

POLYCYTHEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hematocrit > 65% (venous) at term.
- Plethora, tachypnea, retractions.
- Hypoglycemia, irritability, lethargy, poor feeding.

Polycythemia in the newborn is manifested by plethora, cyanosis, respiratory distress with tachypnea and oxygen need, hypoglycemia, poor feeding, emesis, irritability, and lethargy. Hyperbilirubinemia is expected. The consequence of polycythemia is hyperviscosity with decreased perfusion of the capillary beds. Clinical symptomatology can affect several organ systems (Table 2–18). Deep vein or artery thrombosis is a severe complication. Screening can be done by measuring a capillary (heelstick) hematocrit. If the value is greater than 68%, a peripheral venous hematocrit should be measured. Values greater than 65% should be considered consistent with hyperviscosity.

Elevated hematocrits occur in 2%–5% of live births. Delayed cord clamping is the most common cause of benign neonatal polycythemia. Although 50% of polycythemic infants are AGA, the prevalence of polycythemia is greater in the SGA and LGA populations. Other causes of increased hematocrit include (1) twin-twin transfusion, (2) maternal-fetal transfusion, and (3) chronic intrauterine hypoxia (SGA infants, and LGA infants of diabetic mothers).

Treatment should be considered for symptomatic infants. Treatment for asymptomatic infants based strictly on hematocrit is not indicated as there is no proven long term benefit for neurodevelopmental outcome. Treatment for symptomatic infants is isovolemic partial exchange transfusion with normal saline, effectively decreasing the hematocrit. The amount to exchange (in milliliters) is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Number of milliliters to exchange} = (\text{PVH} - \text{DH})/\text{PVH} \times \text{BV(mL/kg)} \times \text{Wt (kg)}$$

where PVH is peripheral venous hematocrit, DH is desired hematocrit, BV is blood volume in mL/kg, and Wt is weight in kilograms.

Blood is withdrawn at a steady rate from an umbilical venous line while the replacement solution is infused at the same rate through a peripheral IV line over 15–30 minutes. The desired hematocrit value is 50%–55%; the assumed blood volume is 80 mL/kg.

Table 2–18. Organ-related symptoms of hyperviscosity.

Central nervous system	Irritability, jitteriness, seizures, lethargy
Cardiopulmonary	Respiratory distress secondary to congestive heart failure, or persistent pulmonary hypertension
Gastrointestinal	Vomiting, heme-positive stools, distention, necrotizing enterocolitis
Renal	Decreased urinary output, renal vein thrombosis
Metabolic	Hypoglycemia
Hematologic	Hyperbilirubinemia, thrombocytopenia

Garafolo M, Abenhaim HA: Early versus delayed cord clamping in term and preterm births: a review. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2012;34(6):525–531 [PMID: 22673168].

Manco-Johnson MJ: Bleeding disorders in the neonate. NeoReviews 2008;9:e162.

Manco-Johnson MJ: Hemostasis in the neonate. NeoReviews 2008;9:e119.

Remon JJ et al: Polycythemia in the newborn. NeoReviews 2011;12:e20.

RENAL DISORDERS IN THE NEWbORN INFANT (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 24)

Renal function and the speed of maturation after birth depend on postmenstrual age. The glomerular filtration rate is 20 mL/min/1.73 m^2 in full-term neonates and 10–13 mL/min/1.73 m^2 in infants born at 28–30 weeks' gestation. Creatinine can be used as a clinical marker of glomerular filtration rate. Values in the first month of life are shown in Table 2–19. Creatinine at birth reflects the maternal level and should decrease slowly over the first 3–4 weeks. An increasing serum creatinine is never normal.

The ability to concentrate urine and retain sodium also depends on gestational age. Infants born before 28–30 weeks'

Table 2–19. Normal values of serum creatinine (mg/dL).

Gestational Age at Birth (wk)	Postnatal Age (d)	
	0–2	28
< 28	1.2	0.7
29–32	1.1	0.6
33–36	1.1	0.45
36–42	0.8	0.3

gestation are compromised in this respect and can easily become dehydrated and hyponatremic. Preterm infants also have an increased bicarbonate excretion and a low tubular maximum for glucose (~120 mg/dL).

RENAL FAILURE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Clinical setting—birth depression, hypovolemia, hypotension, shock.
- Low or delayed urine output (< 1 mL/kg/h).
- Rising serum creatinine; hyperkalemia; metabolic acidosis; fluid overload.

Renal failure is most commonly seen in the setting of birth asphyxia, hypovolemia, or shock from any cause. The normal rate of urine flow is 1–3 mL/kg/h. After a hypoxic or ischemic insult, acute tubular necrosis may ensue. Typically, 2–3 days of anuria or oliguria is associated with hematuria, proteinuria, and a rise in serum creatinine. The period of anuria or oliguria is followed by a period of polyuria and then gradual recovery. During the polyuric phase, excessive urine sodium and bicarbonate losses may be seen.

The initial management is restoration of the infant's volume status. Thereafter, restriction of fluids to insensible water loss (40–60 mL/kg/d) without added electrolytes, plus milliliter-for-milliliter urine replacement, should be instituted. Serum and urine electrolytes and body weights should be followed frequently. These measures should be continued through the polyuric phase. Finally, many of these infants experience fluid overload and should be allowed to lose enough water through urination to return to birth weight. Hyperkalemia, which may become life-threatening, may occur in this situation despite the lack of added IV potassium. If the serum potassium reaches 7 mEq/L, therapy should be started with glucose and insulin infusion. Nebulized albuterol, IV Lasix, and binding resins per rectum may also be used to quickly decrease serum potassium levels. Calcium chloride (20 mg/kg bolus) and correction of metabolic acidosis with bicarbonate are also helpful in the acute management of arrhythmias resulting from hyperkalemia.

Peritoneal dialysis is occasionally needed for the management of neonatal acute renal failure and for removal of waste products and excess fluid. Hemodialysis, although possible, is difficult due to the small blood volume of the infant and problems with vascular access. Although most acute renal failure in the newborn resolves, ischemic injury severe enough to result in acute cortical necrosis and chronic renal failure can occur. Such infants are also at risk of developing hypertension.

URINARY TRACT ANOMALIES

Abdominal masses in the newborn are most frequently caused by renal enlargement. Most common is a multicystic or dysplastic kidney; congenital hydronephrosis is second in frequency. Chromosomal abnormalities and syndromes with multiple anomalies frequently include renal abnormalities. An ultrasound examination is the first step in diagnosis. In pregnancies complicated by oligohydramnios, renal agenesis or bladder outlet obstruction secondary to posterior urethral valves should be considered.

Only bilateral disease or disease in a solitary kidney is associated with oligohydramnios, significant morbidity, and death. Such infants will generally also have pulmonary hypoplasia, and present with pulmonary rather than renal insufficiency.

Ultrasonography identifies many infants with renal anomalies (most often hydronephrosis) prior to birth. Postnatal evaluation of infants with hydronephrosis should include renal ultrasound and a voiding cystourethrogram at about 1 week of age, depending on the severity of the antenatal findings. Earlier postnatal ultrasound might underestimate the severity of the hydronephrosis due to low glomerular filtration rates in the first days of life, although cases in which oligohydramnios or severe renal abnormality are suspected will be accurately diagnosed even on the first day of life. Voiding cystourethrogram is indicated to determine the severity of vesicoureteral reflux in the setting of significant hydronephrosis.

RENAL VEIN THROMBOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of IDM, birth depression, dehydration.
- Hematuria, oliguria.
- Thrombocytopenia, polycythemia.
- Renal enlargement on examination.

Renal vein thrombosis occurs most often in dehydrated polycythemic newborns. At particular risk is the IDM with polycythemia. If fetal distress is superimposed on polycythemia and dehydration, prompt reduction in blood viscosity is indicated. Thrombosis is unilateral in 70%, usually begins in intrarenal venules, and can extend into larger veins and the vena cava. Hematuria, oliguria, thrombocytopenia, and possibly an enlarged kidney raise suspicion for this diagnosis. With bilateral renal vein thrombosis, anuria ensues. Diagnosis can be confirmed with an ultrasound examination that includes Doppler flow studies of the kidneys. Treatment involves correcting the predisposing condition; systemic heparinization or the use of thrombolytics for this condition is controversial. Prognosis for a full recovery is uncertain. Many infants will develop significant atrophy of the affected kidney, and some develop systemic hypertension. All require careful follow-up.

Estrada CR: Prenatal hydronephrosis: early evaluation. Curr Opin Urol 2008;18:401 [PMID: 18520762].

Mistry K: Renal and urologic diseases of the newborn: neonatal acute kidney injury. Curr Pediatr Rev 2014;10(2):88–91 [PMID: 25088261].

Ringer SA: Acute renal failure in the neonate. NeoReviews 2010;11:e243.

NEUROLOGIC PROBLEMS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT

SEIZURES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Usual onset at 12–48 hours.
- Seizure types include subtle (characterized by variable findings), tonic, and multifocal clonic.
- Most common causes include hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy, intracranial bleeds, and infection.

Newborns rarely have well-organized tonic-clonic seizures because of their incomplete cortical organization and a preponderance of inhibitory synapses. The most common type of seizure is characterized by a constellation of findings, including horizontal deviation of the eyes with or without jerking; eyelid blinking or fluttering; sucking and other oral-buccal movements; swimming or bicycling movements; and desaturation and apneic spells. Strictly tonic or multifocal clonic episodes are also seen.

Clinical Findings

The differential diagnosis of neonatal seizures is presented in Table 2–20. Most neonatal seizures occur between 12 and 48 hours of age. Later-onset seizures suggest meningitis, benign familial seizures, or hypocalcemia. Information regarding antenatal drug use, the presence of birth asphyxia or trauma, and family history (regarding inherited disorders) should be obtained. Physical examination focuses on neurologic features, other signs of drug withdrawal, concurrent signs of infection, dysmorphic features, and intrauterine growth. Screening workup should include blood glucose, ionized calcium, and electrolytes in all cases. Further workup depends on diagnoses suggested by the history and physical examination. In most cases, a lumbar puncture should be done. Hemorrhages, perinatal stroke, and structural disease of the CNS can be addressed with brain imaging (ultrasound, CT, MRI). Metabolic workup should be pursued when appropriate. EEG should be done; the presence of spike discharges must be noted and the background wave pattern evaluated. Correlation between EEG changes and clinical seizure activity is sometimes absent making a prolonged EEG with video monitoring a useful tool.

Table 2–20. Differential diagnosis of neonatal seizures.

Diagnosis	Comment
Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy	Most common cause (60%), onset in first 24 h
Intracranial hemorrhage	Up to 15% of cases, periventricular/intraventricular hemorrhage, subdural or subarachnoid bleeding, stroke
Infection	12% of cases
Hypoglycemia	Small for gestational age, IDM
Hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia	Infant of low birth weight, IDM
Hyponatremia	Rare, seen with SIADH
Disorders of amino and organic acid metabolism, hyperammonemia	Associated acidosis, altered level of consciousness
Pyridoxine dependency	Seizures refractory to routine therapy; cessation of seizures after administration of pyridoxine
Developmental defects	Other anomalies, chromosomal syndromes
Drug withdrawal	
No cause found	10% of cases
Benign familial neonatal seizures	

IDM, infant of a diabetic mother; SIADH, syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone.

» Treatment

Adequate ventilation and perfusion should be ensured. Hypoglycemia should be treated immediately with a 2-mL/kg infusion of $D_{10}W$ followed by IV glucose infusion. Other treatments such as calcium or magnesium infusion and antibiotics are indicated to treat hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, and suspected infection. Electrolyte abnormalities should be corrected. Phenobarbital (20 mg/kg IV) should be administered to stop seizures. Supplemental doses of 5 mg/kg can be used if seizures persist, up to a total of 40 mg/kg. If seizures persist, therapy with fosphenytoin or levetiracetam may be indicated. For refractory seizures, a trial of pyridoxine is indicated.

» Prognosis

Outcome is related to the underlying cause of the seizure. The outcomes for hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy and intraventricular hemorrhage have been discussed earlier in this chapter. In these settings, seizures that are difficult to control carry a poor prognosis for normal development. Seizures resulting from hypoglycemia, infection of the CNS, some inborn errors of metabolism, and developmental defects also have a high rate of poor outcome. Seizures caused by hypocalcemia or isolated subarachnoid hemorrhage generally resolve without sequelae.

HYPOTONIA

One should be alert to the diagnosis of congenital hypotonia when a mother has polyhydramnios and a history of poor fetal movement. The newborn may present with poor respiratory effort and birth asphyxia. For a discussion of causes and evaluation, see Chapter 25.

INTRACRANIAL HEMORRHAGE

1. Primary Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Primary subarachnoid hemorrhage is the most common type of neonatal intracranial hemorrhage. In the full-term infant, it can be related to trauma of delivery, whereas subarachnoid hemorrhage in the preterm infant can be seen in association with germinal matrix hemorrhage. Clinically, these hemorrhages can be asymptomatic or can present with seizures and irritability on day 2, or rarely, a massive hemorrhage with a rapid downhill course. The seizures associated with subarachnoid hemorrhage are very characteristic—usually brief, with a normal examination interictally. Diagnosis can be suspected on lumbar puncture and confirmed with CT scan or MRI. Long-term follow-up is uniformly good.

2. Subdural Hemorrhage

Subdural hemorrhage is related to birth trauma; the bleeding is caused by tears in the veins that bridge the subdural space. Most commonly, subdural bleeding is from ruptured superficial cerebral veins, with blood over the cerebral convexities. These hemorrhages can be asymptomatic or may cause seizures, with onset on days 2–3 of life, vomiting, irritability, and lethargy. Associated findings include retinal hemorrhages and a full fontanelle. The diagnosis is confirmed by CT scan or MRI.

Specific treatment entailing needle drainage of the subdural space is rarely necessary. Most infants survive; 75% are normal on follow-up.

3. Neonatal Stroke

Focal cerebral ischemic injury can occur in the context of intraventricular hemorrhage in the premature infant and hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy. Neonatal stroke has also been described in the context of underlying disorders of thrombolysis, maternal drug use (cocaine), a history of infertility, preeclampsia, prolonged membrane rupture, and chorioamnionitis. In some cases, the origin is unclear. The injury often occurs antenatally. The most common clinical presentation of an isolated cerebral infarct is with seizures, and diagnosis can be confirmed acutely with diffusion-weighted MRI scan. The most frequently described distribution is that of the middle cerebral artery.

Treatment is directed at controlling seizures. Use of anticoagulants and thrombolytics is controversial. Long-term outcome is variable, ranging from near-normal to hemiplegias and cognitive deficits.

Glass HC: Neonatal seizures: an update on mechanisms and management. Clin Perinatol 2014;41(1):177–190 [PMID: 24524454].

van der aA NE et al: Neonatal stroke: a review of the current evidence on epidemiology, pathogenesis, diagnostics, and therapeutic options. Acta Paediatrica 2014;103(4):356–364 [PMID: 24428836].

METABOLIC DISORDERS IN THE NEWBORN INFANT

HYPERGLYCEMIA

Hyperglycemia may develop in preterm infants, particularly those of extremely low birth weight who are also SGA. Glucose concentrations may exceed 200–250 mg/dL, particularly in the first few days of life. This transient diabetes-like syndrome usually lasts approximately 1 week.

Management may include simply reducing glucose intake while continuing to supply IV amino acids to prevent protein catabolism with resultant gluconeogenesis and worsened hyperglycemia. Intravenous insulin infusions may be needed in infants who remain hyperglycemic despite glucose infusion rates of less than 5–6 mg/kg/min, but caution should be used as hypoglycemia is a frequent complication.

HYPOCALCEMIA (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 34)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Irritability, jitteriness, seizures.
- Normal blood glucose.
- Possible dysmorphic features, congenital heart disease (DiGeorge syndrome).

Calcium concentration in the immediate newborn period decreases in all infants. The concentration in fetal plasma is higher than that of the neonate or adult. Hypocalcemia is usually defined as a total serum concentration less than 7 mg/dL (equivalent to a calcium activity of 3.5 mEq/L), although the physiologically active fraction, ionized calcium, should be measured whenever possible, and is usually normal even when total calcium is as low as 6–7 mg/dL. An ionized calcium level above 0.9 mmol/L (1.8 mEq/L; 3.6 mg/dL) is not likely to be detrimental.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical signs of hypocalcemia and hypocalcemic tetany include a high-pitched cry, jitteriness, tremulousness, and seizures.

Hypocalcemia tends to occur at two different times in the neonatal period. Early-onset hypocalcemia occurs in the first 2 days of life and has been associated with prematurity, maternal diabetes, asphyxia, and rarely, maternal hypoparathyroidism. Late-onset hypocalcemia occurs at approximately 7–10 days and is observed in infants receiving modified cow's milk rather than infant formula (high phosphorus intake), in infants with hypoparathyroidism (DiGeorge syndrome, 22q11 deletion), or in infants born to mothers with severe vitamin D deficiency. Hypomagnesemia should be sought and treated in cases of hypocalcemia that are resistant to treatment.

» Treatment

A. Oral Calcium Therapy

The oral administration of calcium salts, often along with vitamin D, is the preferred method of treatment for chronic forms of hypocalcemia resulting from hypoparathyroidism. (See Chapter 34.)

B. Intravenous Calcium Therapy

IV calcium therapy is usually needed for infants with symptomatic hypocalcemia or an ionized calcium level below 0.9 mmol/L. A number of precautions must be observed when calcium is given intravenously. The infusion must be given slowly so that there is no sudden increase in calcium concentration of blood entering the right atrium, which could cause severe bradycardia and even cardiac arrest. Furthermore, the infusion must be observed carefully, because an IV infiltrate containing calcium can cause full-thickness skin necrosis requiring grafting. For these reasons, IV calcium therapy should be given judiciously and through a central venous line if possible. IV administration of 10% calcium gluconate is usually given as a bolus of 100–200 mg/kg (1–2 mL/kg) over approximately 10–20 minutes, followed by a continuous infusion (0.5–1 g/kg/d) over 1–2 days, if central venous access is available. Ten percent calcium chloride (20 mg/kg or 0.2 mL/kg per dose) may result in a larger increment in ionized calcium and greater improvement in mean arterial blood pressure in sick hypocalcemic infants and thus may have a role in the newborn. Note: Calcium salts cannot be added to IV solutions that contain sodium bicarbonate because they precipitate as calcium carbonate.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good for neonatal seizures entirely caused by hypocalcemia that is promptly treated.

INBORN ERRORS OF METABOLISM (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 36)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Altered level of consciousness (poor feeding, lethargy, seizures) in a previously well-appearing infant.
- Tachypnea without hypoxemia or distress.
- Hypoglycemia, respiratory alkalosis, metabolic acidosis.
- Recurrent "sepsis" without proven infection.

Each individual inborn error of metabolism is rare, but collectively they have an incidence of 1 in 1000 live births. Expanded newborn genetic screening undoubtedly aids in the diagnosis of these disorders; however, many infants will present prior to these results being available. These diagnoses should be entertained when infants who were initially well present with sepsis-like syndromes, recurrent hypoglycemia, neurologic syndromes (seizures or altered levels of consciousness), or unexplained acidosis (suggestive of organic acidemias).

In the immediate neonatal period, urea cycle disorders present as an altered level of consciousness (coma) secondary to hyperammonemia. A clinical clue that supports this diagnosis is hyperventilation with primary respiratory alkalosis, along with low blood urea nitrogen. The other major diagnostic category to consider consists of infants

with severe and unremitting acidemia secondary to organic acidemias.

Kamboj M: Clinical approach to the diagnoses of inborn errors of metabolism. Pediatr Clin N Am 2008;55:1113 [PMID: 18929055].
Levy PA: Inborn errors of metabolism: part I: overview. Pediatr Rev 2009;30:131 [PMID: 19339386].
Marsden D, Larson C, Levy HL: Newborn screening for metabolic disorders. J Pediatr 2006;148:577 [PMID: 16737864].

QUALITY ASSESSMENT & IMPROVEMENT IN THE NEWBORN NURSERY AND NICU

Quality improvement initiatives are a critical for NICUs to provide the best care possible for patients. This involves recognition that there is a gap between care as it is and care as it could and should be. Clinical units either individually or as part of a consortium need to identify goals for improvement and carry out changes using a plan-do-study-act (PDSA) approach to rapid cycle improvements in care. This involves planning and enacting a change, studying and analyzing the data collected during the change and then acting to assess what changes are to be made for the next PDSA cycle. Individual units can benchmark their care through participation in multicenter databases such as the Vermont Oxford Network or Children's Hospitals Neonatal Consortium, in which many NICUs submit data. These data can form the framework for strategies to improve performance in areas in a unit that are below network standards. Examples of possible initiatives include lowering the incidence of central line-associated bacteremia, decreasing the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia or structured feeding protocols to decrease the incidence of necrotizing enterocolitis.

3 Child Development & Behavior

Edward Goldson, MD
Ann Reynolds, MD

This chapter provides an overview of typical development, identifies developmental variations, and discusses several developmental disorders. This chapter does not cover typical development in the newborn period or adolescence (see Chapters 2 and 4, respectively). It addresses behavioral variations that reflect the spectrum of normal development, along with developmental and behavioral disorders and their treatment. The developmental principle, that is, the concept of ongoing change and maturation, is integral to the daily practice of pediatrics. It is the basic science of pediatrics. For example, we recognize that a 3-month-old infant is very different from a 3-year-old toddler or a 13-year-old adolescent, not only with respect to what the child can do but also in terms of the kinds of illness he or she might have. From the perspective of the general pediatrician, all these areas should be viewed in the context of a "medical home." The medical home is defined as the setting that provides consistent, continuous, culturally competent, comprehensive, and sensitive care to children and their families. It is a setting that advocates for all children, whether they are typical or have developmental challenges or disabilities. By incorporating the principles of child development—the concept that children are constantly changing—the medical home is the optimum setting to understand and enhance typical development and to address variations, delays, and deviations as they may occur in the life trajectory of the child and the family.

NORMAL DEVELOPMENT

Typical children follow a trajectory of increasing physical size (http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts/clinical_charts.htm) and increasing complexity of function (Tables 3–1 and 3–2).

The first 5 years of life are a period of extraordinary physical growth and increasing complexity of function. The child triples his or her birth weight within the first year and achieves two-thirds of his or her adult brain size by age 2½–3 years of age. The child progresses from a totally dependent infant at birth to a mobile, verbal person who is able to express his or her needs and desires by age 2–3 years. In the ensuing 3 years the child further develops the capacity to interact with peers and adults, achieves considerable verbal and physical prowess, and becomes ready to enter the academic world of learning and socialization.

It is critical for the clinician to identify disturbances in development during these early years because there may be windows of time or sensitive periods when appropriate interventions may be instituted to effectively address developmental issues.

THE FIRST 2 YEARS

From a motor perspective, children develop in a cephalocaudal direction. They can lift their heads with good control at 3 months, sit independently at 6 months, crawl at 9 months, walk at 1 year, and run by 18 months. The child learning to walk has a wide-based gait at first. Next, he or she walks with legs closer together, the arms move medially, a heel-toe gait develops, and the arms swing symmetrically by 18–24 months.

Clinicians often focus on gross motor development, but an appreciation of fine motor development and dexterity, particularly the grasp, can be instructive not only in monitoring normal development but also in identifying deviations in development. The grasp begins as a raking motion involving the ulnar aspect of the hand at age 3–4 months. The thumb is added to this motion at about age 5 months as the focus of the movement shifts to the radial side of the hand. The thumb opposes the fingers for picking up objects just before age 7 months, and the neat pincer grasp emerges at about age 9 months. Most young children have symmetrical movements. Children should not have a significant hand preference before 1 year of age and typically develop handedness between 18 and 30 months.

Table 3–1. Developmental charts.

1–2 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Holds head erect and lifts head.
- Turns from side to back.
- Regards faces and follows objects through visual field.
- Drops toys.
- Becomes alert in response to voice.

Activities related by parent:
- Recognizes parents.
- Engages in vocalizations.
- Smiles spontaneously.

3–5 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Grasps cube—first ulnar then later thumb opposition.
- Reaches for and brings objects to mouth.
- Makes "raspberry" sound.
- Sits with support.

Activities related by parent:
- Laughs.
- Anticipates food on sight.
- Turns from back to side.

6–8 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Sits alone for a short period.
- Reaches with 1 hand.
- First scoops up a pellet; then grasps it using thumb opposition.
- Imitates "bye-bye."
- Passes object from hand to hand in midline.
- Babbles.

Activities related by parent:
- Rolls from back to stomach.
- Is inhibited by the word no.

9–11 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Stands alone.
- Imitates pat-a-cake and peek-a-boo.
- Uses thumb and index finger to pick up pellet.

Activities related by parent:
- Walks by supporting self on furniture.
- Follows 1-step verbal commands, eg, "Come here," "Give it to me."

1 y

Activities to be observed:
- Walks independently.
- Says "mama" and "dada" with meaning.
- Can use a neat pincer grasp to pick up a pellet.
- Releases cube into cup after demonstration.
- Gives toys on request.
- Tries to build a tower of 2 cubes.

Activities related by parent:
- Points to desired objects.
- Says 1 or 2 other words.

18 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Builds tower of 3–4 cubes.
- Throws ball.
- Seats self in chair.
- Dumps pellet from bottle.

Activities related by parent:
- Walks up and down stairs with help.
- Says 4–20 words.
- Understands a 2-step command.
- Carries and hugs doll.
- Feeds self.

24 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Speaks short phrases, 2 words or more.
- Kicks ball on request.
- Builds tower of 6–7 cubes.
- Points to named objects or pictures.
- Jumps off floor with both feet.
- Stands on either foot alone.
- Uses pronouns.

Activities related by parent:
- Verbalizes toilet needs.
- Pulls on simple garment.
- Turns pages of book singly.
- Plays with domestic mimicry.

30 mo

Activities to be observed:
- Walks backward.
- Begins to hop on 1 foot.
- Uses prepositions.
- Copies a crude circle.
- Points to objects described by use.
- Refers to self as I.
- Holds crayon in fist.

Activities related by parent:
- Helps put things away.
- Carries on a conversation.

3 y

Activities to be observed:
- Holds crayon with fingers.
- Builds tower of 9–10 cubes.
- Imitates 3-cube bridge.
- Copies circle.
- Gives first and last name.

Activities related by parent:
- Rides tricycle using pedals.
- Dresses with supervision.

(Continued)

Table 3–1. Developmental charts. (Continued)

3–4 y

Activities to be observed:
- Climbs stairs with alternating feet.
- Begins to button and unbutton.
- "What do you like to do that's fun?" (Answers using plurals, personal pronouns, and verbs.)
- Responds to command to place toy in, on, or under table.
- Draws a circle when asked to draw a person.
- Knows own sex. ("Are you a boy or a girl?")
- Gives full name.
- Copies a circle already drawn. ("Can you make one like this?")

Activities related by parent:
- Feeds self at mealtime.
- Takes off shoes and jacket.

4–5 y

Activities to be observed:
- Runs and turns without losing balance.
- May stand on 1 leg for at least 10 seconds.
- Buttons clothes and laces shoes. (Does not tie.)
- Counts to 4 by rote. "Give me 2 sticks." (Able to do so from pile of 4 tongue depressors.)
- Draws a person. (Head, 2 appendages, and possibly 2 eyes. No torso yet.)
- Knows the days of the week. ("What day comes after Tuesday?")
- Gives appropriate answers to: "What must you do if you are sleepy? Hungry? Cold?"
- Copies + in imitation.

Activities related by parent:
- Self-care at toilet. (May need help with wiping.)
- Plays outside for at least 30 minutes.
- Dresses self except for tying.

5–6 y

Activities to be observed:
- Can catch ball.
- Skips smoothly.
- Copies a + already drawn.
- Tells age.
- Concept of 10 (eg, counts 10 tongue depressors). May recite to higher number by rote.
- Knows right and left hand.
- Draws recognizable person with at least 8 details.
- Can describe favorite television program in some detail.

Activities related by parent:
- Does simple chores at home (eg, taking out garbage, drying silverware).
- Goes to school unattended or meets school bus.
- Good motor ability but little awareness of dangers.

6–7 y

Activities to be observed:
- Copies a Δ.
- Defines words by use. ("What is an orange?" "To eat.")
- Knows if morning or afternoon.
- Draws a person with 12 details.
- Reads several 1-syllable printed words. (My, dog, see, boy.)

7–8 y

Activities to be observed:
- Counts by 2s and 5s.
- Ties shoes.
- Copies a ◊.
- Knows what day of the week it is. (Not date or year.)
- No evidence of sound substitution in speech (eg, fr for thr).
- Draws a man with 16 details.
- Reads paragraph #1 Durrell:

Reading:
- Muff is a little yellow kitten. She drinks milk. She sleeps on a chair. She does not like to get wet.

Corresponding arithmetic:

7	6	6	8
+4	+7	–4	–3

Adds and subtracts 1-digit numbers.

8–9 y

Activities to be observed:
- Defines words better than by use. ("What is an orange?" "A fruit.")
- Can give an appropriate answer to the following:
  "What is the thing for you to do if …
  —you've broken something that belongs to someone else?"
  —a playmate hits you without meaning to do so?"
- Reads paragraph #2 Durrell:

Reading:
- A little black dog ran away from home. He played with two big dogs. They ran away from him. It began to rain. He went under a tree. He wanted to go home, but he did not know the way. He saw a boy he knew. The boy took him home.

Corresponding arithmetic:

	67		
67	16	14	–84
+4	+27	–8	–36

Is learning borrowing and carrying processes in addition and subtraction.

9–10 y

Activities to be observed:
- Knows the month, day, and year.
- Names the months in order. (15 s, 1 error.)
- Makes a sentence with these 3 words in it: (1 or 2. Can use words orally in proper context.)
  1. work … money … men
  2. boy … river … ball

Reads paragraph #3 Durrell:

Reading:
- Six boys put up a tent by the side of a river. They took things to eat with them. When the sun went down, they went into the tent to sleep. In the night, a cow came and began to eat grass around the tent. The boys were afraid. They thought it was a bear.
- Should comprehend and answer the question: "What was the cow doing?"

Corresponding arithmetic:

5204	23	837
–530	×3	×7

Learning simple multiplication.

(Continued)

Table 3–1. Developmental charts. (Continued)

10–12 y	
Activities to be observed: Should read and comprehend paragraph #5 Durrell: Reading: In 1807, Robert Fulton took the first long trip in a steamboat. He went one hundred and fifty miles up the Hudson River. The boat went five miles an hour. This was faster than a steamboat had ever gone before. Crowds gathered on both banks of the river to see this new kind of boat. They were afraid that its noise and splashing would drive away all the fish. Answer: "What river was the trip made on?" Ask to write the sentence: "The fishermen did not like the boat." Corresponding arithmetic: 420 ×89 $9\overline{)72}$ $31\overline{)62}$ Should do multiplication and simple division.	Reading: Golf originated in Holland as a game played on ice. The game in its present form first appeared in Scotland. It became unusually popular and kings found it so enjoyable that it was known as "the royal game." James IV, however, thought that people neglected their work to indulge in this fascinating sport so that it was forbidden in 1457. James relented when he found how attractive the game was, and it immediately regained its former popularity. Golf spread gradually to other countries, being introduced in America in 1890. It has grown in favor until there is hardly a town that does not boast of a private or public course. Ask to write a sentence: "Golf originated in Holland as a game played on ice." Answers questions: "Why was golf forbidden by James IV?" "Why did he change his mind?" Corresponding arithmetic: $536\overline{)4762}$ • $7\frac{1}{6}$ + • - $3\frac{1}{6}$ Reduce fractions to lowest forms. Does long division, adds and subtracts fractions.
12–15 y	
Activities to be observed: Reads paragraph #7 Durrell:	

Modified with permission from Leavitt SR, Goodman H, Harvin D: Use of developmental charts in teaching well child care. Pediatrics 1963;31:499–508.

Language is a critical area to consider as well. Communication is important from birth (Figure 3–1, see Table 3–2), particularly the nonverbal, reciprocal interactions between infant and caregiver. By age 2 months, these interactions begin to include melodic vowel sounds called cooing and reciprocal vocal play between parent and child. Babbling, which adds consonants to vowels, begins by age 6–10 months, and the repetition of sounds such as "da-dada-da" is facilitated by the child's increasing oral muscular control. Babbling reaches a peak at age 12 months. The child then moves into a stage of having needs met by using individual words to represent objects or actions. It is common at this age for children to express wants and needs by pointing to objects or using other gestures. Children usually have 5–10 comprehensible words by 12–18 months; by age 2 years they are putting 2–3 words into phrases, 50% of which their caregivers can understand (see Tables 3–1 and 3–2 and Figure 3–1). The acquisition of expressive vocabulary varies greatly between 12 and 24 months of age. As a group, males and children who are bilingual tend to develop expressive language more slowly during that time. It is important to note, however, that for each individual, milestones should still fall within the expected range. Gender and exposure to two languages should never be used as an excuse for failing to refer a child who has significant delay in the acquisition of speech and language for further evaluation. It is also important to note that most children are not truly bilingual. Most children have one primary language, and any other languages are secondary.

Receptive language usually develops more rapidly than expressive language. Word comprehension begins to increase at age 9 months, and by age 13 months the child's receptive vocabulary may be as large as 20–100 words. After age 18 months, expressive and receptive vocabularies increase dramatically, and by the end of the second year there is typically a quantum leap in language development. The child begins to put together words and phrases, and begins to use language to represent a new world, the symbolic world. Children begin to put verbs into phrases and focus much of their language on describing their new abilities, for example, "I go out." They begin to incorporate prepositions, such as "I" and "you" into speech and ask "why?" and "what?" questions more frequently. They also begin to appreciate time factors and to understand and use this concept in their speech (see Table 3–1).

The Early Language Milestone Scale-2 (see Figure 3–1) is a simple tool for assessing early language development in the pediatric office setting. It is scored in the same way as the Denver II (Figure 3–2) but tests receptive and expressive language areas in greater depth.

One may memorize the developmental milestones that characterize the trajectory of the typical child; however, these milestones become more meaningful and clinically useful if placed in empirical and theoretical contexts. The first 2 years of life have been described as the sensorimotor period, during which infants learn with increasing sophistication how to link sensory input from the environment with a motor response. Infants build on primitive reflex patterns

Table 3–2. Normal speech and language development.

Age	Speech	Language	Articulation
1 mo	Throaty sounds		Vowels: \ah\, \uh\, \ee\
2 mo	Vowel sounds ("eh"), coos		
2½ mo	Squeals		
3 mo	Babbles, initial vowels		
4 mo	Guttural sounds ("ah," "go")		Consonants: m, p, b
5 mo			Vowels: \o\, \u\
7 mo	Imitates speech sounds		
8 mo			Syllables: da, ba, ka
10 mo		"Dada" or "mama" nonspecifically	Approximates names: baba/bottle
12 mo	Jargon begins (own language)	1 word other than "mama" or "dada"	Understandable: 2–3 words
13 mo		3 words	
16 mo		6 words	Consonants: t, d, w, n, h
18–24 mo		2-word phrases	Understandable 2-word phrases
24–30 mo		3-word phrases	Understandable 3-word phrases
2 y	Vowels uttered correctly	Approximately 270 words; uses pronouns	Approximately 270 words; uses phrases
3 y	Some degree of hesitancy and uncertainty common	Approximately 900 words; intelligible 4-word phrases	Approximately 900 words; intelligible 4-word phrases
4 y		Approximately 1540 words; intelligible 5-word phrases or sentences	Approximately 1540 words; intelligible 5-word phrases
6 y		Approximately 2560 words; intelligible 6- or 7-word sentences	Approximately 2560 words; intelligible 6- or 7-word sentences
7–8 y	Adult proficiency		

Data from Berry MF: Language Disorders of Children. Appleton-Century-Crofts; 1969; and from Bzoch K, League R: Receptive Expressive Emergent Language Scale. University Park Press; 1970.

of behavior (termed schemata; sucking is an example) and constantly incorporate or assimilate new experiences. The schemata evolve over time as infants accommodate new experiences and as new levels of cognitive ability unfold in an orderly sequence. This period of behavioral development follows the neurologic development of neural networks through dendritic branching and pruning (apoptosis).

In the first year of life, the infant's perception of reality revolves around itself and what it can see or touch. The infant follows the trajectory of an object through the field of vision, but before age 6 months the object ceases to exist once it leaves the infant's field of vision. At age 9–12 months, the infant gradually develops the concept of object permanence, or the realization that objects exist even when not seen. The development of object permanence correlates with enhanced frontal activity on the electroencephalogram (EEG). The concept attaches first to the image of the mother or primary caregiver because of his or her emotional importance and is a critical part of attachment behavior (discussed later). In the second year, children extend their ability to manipulate objects by using instruments, first by imitation and later by trial and error.

In the first year of life, there is a bidirectional attachment process called bonding. The parents learn to be aware of and to interpret the infant's cues, which reflect its needs. A more sensitive emotional interaction process develops that can be seen in the mirroring of facial expressions by the primary caregiver and infant and in their mutual engagement in cycles of attention and inattention, which further develop into social play. Basic trust versus mistrust is another way of describing the reciprocal interaction that characterizes this stage. Turn-taking games, which occur between ages 3 and 6 months, are a pleasure for both the parents and the infant and are an extension of mirroring behavior. They also represent an early form of imitative behavior, which is important in later social and cognitive development.

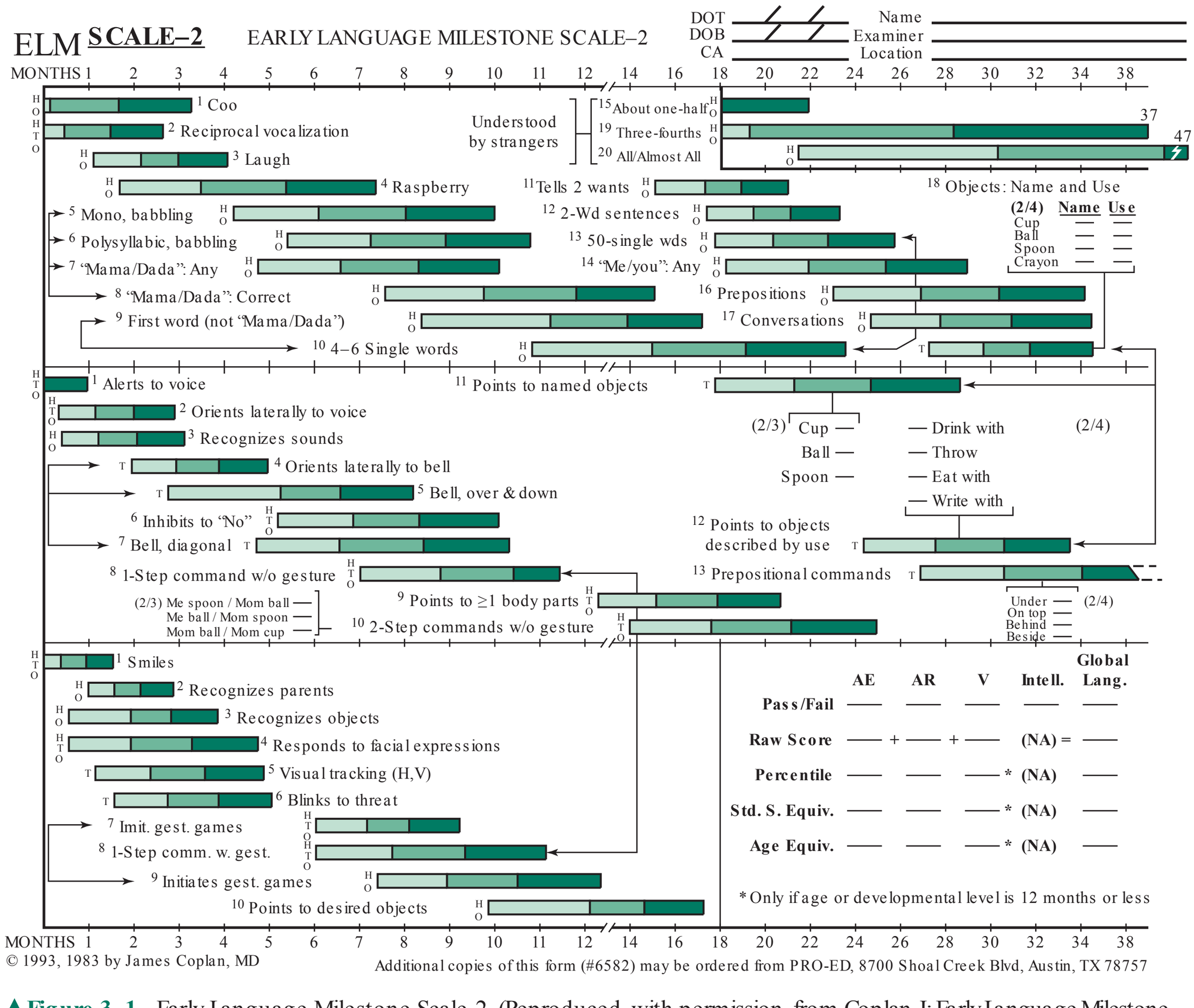


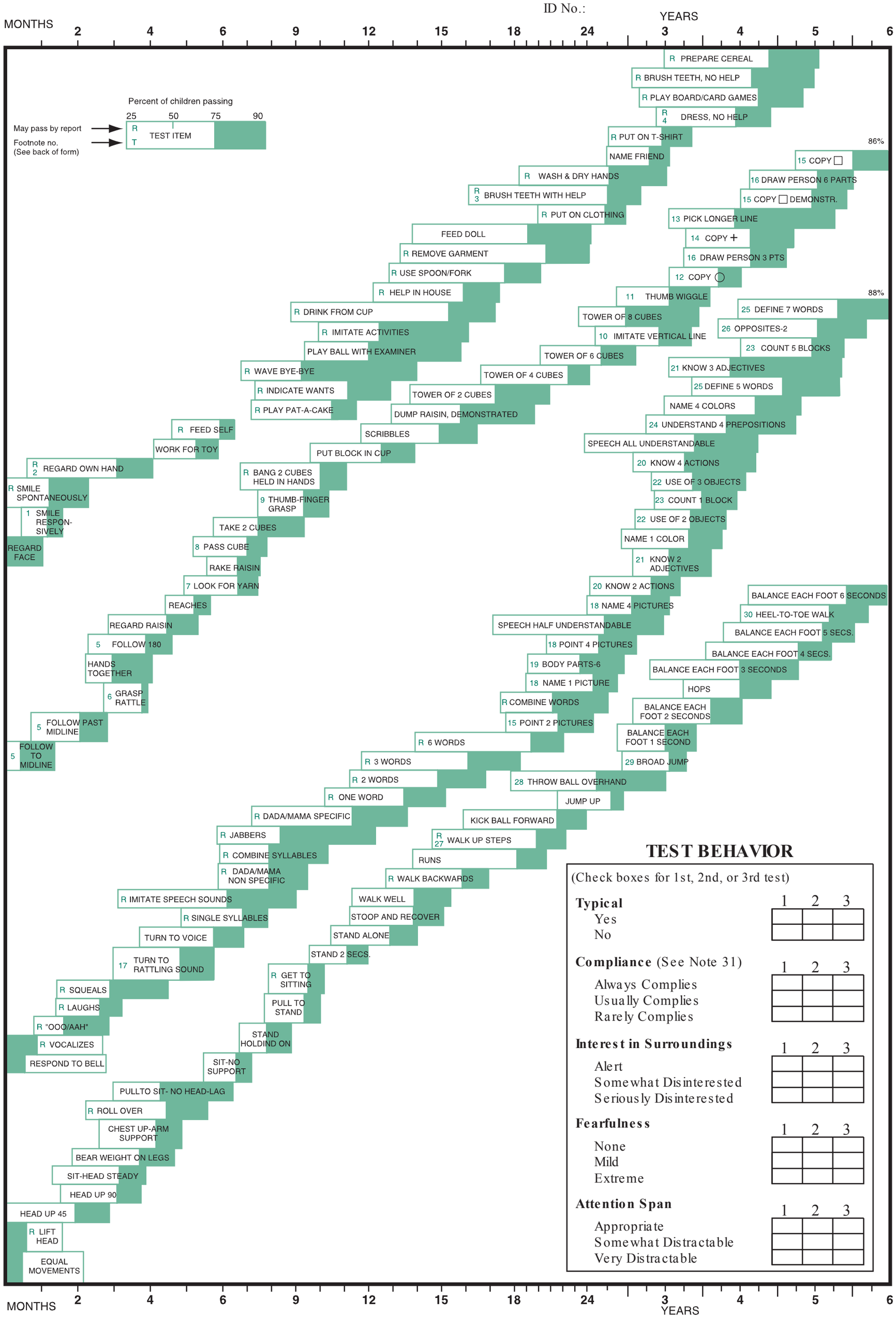
Figure 3–1. Early Language Milestone Scale-2. (Reproduced, with permission, from Coplan J: Early Language Milestone Scale. 2nd edition. Pro Ed, Austin, TX, 1993.)

More sophisticated games, such as peek-a-boo, occur at approximately age 9 months. The infant's thrill at the reappearance of the face that vanished momentarily demonstrates the emerging understanding of object permanence. Age 8–9 months is also a critical time in the attachment process because this is when separation anxiety and stranger anxiety become marked. The infant at this stage is able to appreciate discrepant events that do not match previously known schemata. These new events cause uncertainty and subsequently fear and anxiety. The infant must be able to retrieve previous schemata and incorporate new information over an extended time. These abilities are developed by age 8 months and give rise to the fears that may subsequently develop: stranger anxiety and separation anxiety. In stranger anxiety, the infant analyzes the face of a stranger, detects the mismatch with previous schemata or what is familiar, and responds with fear or anxiety, leading to crying. In separation anxiety, the child perceives the difference between the primary caregiver's presence and his or her absence by remembering the schema of the caregiver's presence. Perceiving the inconsistency, the child first becomes uncertain and then anxious and fearful. This begins at age 8 months, reaches a peak at 15 months, and disappears by the end of 2 years in a relatively orderly progression as central nervous system (CNS) maturation facilitates the development of new skills. A parent can put the child's understanding of object permanence to good use by placing a picture of the mother (or father) near the child or by leaving an object (eg, her sweater) where the child can see it during her absence. A visual substitute for the parent's presence may comfort the child.

Denver II

Examiner:
Date:

Name:
Birth date:
ID No.:



▲**Figure 3–2.** Denver II. (Copyright © 1969, 1989, 1990 WK Frankenburg and JB Dodds. © 1978 WK Frankenberg.)

Once the child can walk independently, he or she can move away from the parent and explore the environment. Although the child uses the parent as "home base," returning frequently for reassurance, he or she has now taken a major step toward independence. This is the beginning of mastery over the environment and an emerging sense of self. The "terrible twos" and the frequent self-asserting use of "no" are the child's attempt to develop a better idea of what is or might be under his or her control. The child is starting to assert his or her autonomy. As children develop a sense of self, they begin to understand the feelings of others and develop empathy. They hug another child who is in perceived distress or become concerned when one is hurt. They begin to understand how another child feels when he or she is harmed, and this realization helps them to inhibit their own aggressive behavior. Children also begin to understand right and wrong and parental expectations. They recognize that they have done something "bad" and may signify that awareness by saying "uhoh" or with other expressions of distress. They also take pleasure in their accomplishments and become more aware of their bodies.

Also, developing at this age is the important behavior of play. Play is the child's means of learning. Play is a very complex process whose purpose can include the practice and rehearsal of roles, skills, and relationships; a means of revisiting the past; a means of actively mastering a range of experiences; and a way to integrate the child's life experiences. It involves emotional development (affect regulation and gender identification and roles), cognitive development (nonverbal and verbal function and executive functioning and creativity), and social/motor development (motor coordination, frustration tolerance, and social interactions such as turn taking). Of interest is that play has a developmental progression. The typical 6- to 12-month-old engages in the game of peek-a-boo, which is a form of social interaction. During the next year or so, although children engage in increasingly complex social interactions and imitation, their play is primarily solitary. However, they do begin to engage in symbolic play such as by drinking from a toy cup and then by giving a doll a drink from a toy cup. By age 2–3 years children begin to engage in parallel play (engaging in behaviors that are imitative). This form of play gradually evolves into more interactive or collaborative play by age 3–4 years and is also more thematic in nature. There are of course wide variations in the development of play, reflecting cultural, educational, and socioeconomic variables. Nevertheless, the development of play does follow a sequence that can be assessed and can be very informative in the evaluation of the child.

Brain maturation sets the stage for toilet training. After age 18 months, toddlers have the sensory capacity for awareness of a full rectum or bladder and are physically able to control bowel and urinary tract sphincters. They also take great pleasure in their accomplishments, particularly in appropriate elimination, if it is reinforced positively. Children must be given some control over when elimination occurs. If parents impose severe restrictions, the achievement of this developmental milestone can become a battle between parent and child. The developmental of bowel control encompasses a more generalized theme of socialized behavior.

AGES 2–4 YEARS

The 2- to 4-year-old stage begins when language has facilitated the creation of mental images in the symbolic sense. The child begins to manipulate the symbolic world; sorts out reality from fantasy imperfectly; and may be terrified of dreams, wishes, and foolish threats. Most of the child's perception of the world is interpreted in reference to his or her needs or influence. Cause-effect relationships are confused with temporal ones or interpreted with respect to themselves. For example, children may focus their understanding of divorce on themselves ("My father left because I was bad" or "My mother left because she didn't love me"). Illness and the need for medical care are also commonly misinterpreted at this age. The child may make a mental connection between a sibling's illness and a recent argument, a negative comment, or a wish for the sibling to be ill. The child may experience significant guilt unless the parents are aware of these misperceptions and take time to deal with them.

At this age, children also endow inanimate objects with human feelings. They also assume that humans cause or create all natural events. For instance, when asked why the sun sets, they may say, "The sun goes to his house" or "It is pushed down by someone else." Magical thinking blossoms between ages 3 and 5 years as symbolic thinking incorporates more elaborate fantasy. Fantasy facilitates development of role playing and emotional growth. Children test new experiences in fantasy, both in their imagination and in play. In their play, children often create magical stories and novel situations that reflect issues with which they are dealing, such as aggression, relationships, fears, and control. Children often invent imaginary friends at this time, and nightmares or fears of monsters are common. At this stage, other children become important in facilitating play, such as in a preschool group. Play gradually becomes more cooperative; shared fantasy leads to game playing.

EARLY SCHOOL YEARS: AGES 5–7 YEARS

Attendance at kindergarten at age 5 years marks an acceleration in the separation-individuation theme initiated in the preschool years. The child is ready to relate to peers in a more interactive manner. The brain has reached 90% of its adult weight. Sensorimotor coordination abilities are maturing and facilitating pencil-and-paper tasks and sports, both part of the school experience. Cognitive abilities are still at the preoperational stage, and children focus on one variable in a problem at a time. However, most children have mastered conservation of length by age 5½ years, conservation

of mass and weight by 6½ years, and conservation of volume by 8 years.

By first grade, there is more pressure on the child to master academic tasks—recognizing numbers, letters, and words and learning to write. Concrete operations typically begin after age 6 years, when the child is able to perform mental operations concerning concrete objects that involve manipulation of more than one variable. The child is able to order, number, and classify because these activities are related to concrete objects in the environment and because these activities are stressed in early schooling. Magical thinking diminishes greatly at this time, and the reality of cause-effect relationships is better understood. Fantasy and imagination are still strong and are reflected in themes of play.

MIDDLE CHILDHOOD: AGES 7–11 YEARS

From 7 to 11 years of age, children devote most of their energies to school and peer group interactions. For the 7-year-old child, the major developmental tasks are achievement in school and acceptance by peers. Academic expectations intensify, become more abstract, and require the child to concentrate on, attend to, and process increasingly complex auditory and visual information. Children with significant learning disabilities or problems with attention, organization, and impulsivity may have difficulty with academic tasks and subsequently may receive negative reinforcement from teachers, peers, and even parents. Such children may develop a poor self-image manifested as behavioral difficulties. The pediatrician must evaluate potential learning disabilities in any child who is not developing adequately at this stage or who presents with emotional or behavioral problems. The developmental status of school-aged children is not documented as easily as that of younger children because of the complexity of the milestones. In the school-aged child, the quality of the response, the attentional abilities, and the child's emotional approach to the task can make a dramatic difference in success at school. The clinician must consider all of these aspects in the differential diagnosis of learning disabilities and behavioral disorders.

Carey WB, Crocker AC, Elias ER, Feldman HM, Coleman WL: Developmental-Behavioral Pediatrics. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders/Elsevier; 2009.

Dixon SD, Stein MT: Encounters With Children: Pediatric Behavior and Development. 4th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby-Year Book; 2006.

BEHAViORAL & DEVELOPMENTAL VARiATiONS

Variations in children's behavior reflect a blend of intrinsic biological characteristics and the environments with which the children interact. Often identified as complaints by parents, such normal variations in behavior are a reflection of each child's unique, individual biologic and temperament traits and the parents' responses. There are no cures for these behaviors, but management strategies are available that can enhance the parents' understanding of the child and the child's relationship to the environment. These strategies also facilitate the parents' care of the growing infant and child.

The last section of this chapter discusses developmental disorders of cognitive and social competence. Diagnosis and management of these conditions requires a comprehensive and often multidisciplinary approach. The health care provider can play a major role in diagnosis, in coordinating the child's evaluation, in interpreting the results to the family, and in providing reassurance and support.

Capute AJ, Accardo PJ (eds): Developmental Disabilities in Infancy and Childhood. 2nd ed. Vol. 1, Neurodevelopmental Diagnosis and Treatment. Vol. 2, The Spectrum of Developmental Disabilities. Brookes/Cole; 1996.

Medical Home Initiatives for Children With Special Needs Project Advisory Committee, American Academy of Pediatrics: The medical home. Pediatrics 2002;110:184 [PMID: 12093969].

Voigt RG, Macias MM, Myers SM, eds. American Academy of Pediatrics Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2010.

Wolraich ML et al (eds): Developmental-Behavioral Pediatrics: Evidence and Practice. Mosby/Elsevier; 2008.

NORMALITY & TEMPERAMENT

The physician confronted by a disturbance in physiologic function rarely has doubts about what is atypical. Variations in temperament and behavior are not as straightforward. Labeling such variations as disorders implies that a disease entity exists.

The behaviors described in this section are viewed as part of a continuum of responses by the child to a variety of internal and external experiences. Temperament, for example, is a genetically influenced behavioral disposition that is stable over time. It sometimes is thought of as being the "how" of behavior as distinguished from the "why" (motivation) and the "what" (ability). Temperament is an independent psychological attribute that is expressed as a response to an external stimulus. The influence of temperament is bidirectional: The effect of a particular experience will be influenced by the child's temperament, and the child's temperament will influence the responses of others in the child's environment. Temperament is the style with which the child interacts with the environment.

The perceptions and expectations of parents must be considered when a child's behavior is evaluated. A child that one parent might describe as hyperactive might not be characterized as such by the other parent. This truism can be expanded to include all the dimensions of temperament. Thus, the concept of "goodness of fit" comes into play.

For example, if the parents want and expect their child to be predictable but that is not the child's behavioral style, the parents may perceive the child as being bad or having a behavioral disorder rather than as having a developmental variation. An appreciation of this phenomenon is important because the physician may be able to enhance the parents' understanding of the child and influence their responses to the child's behavior. When there is goodness of fit, there will be more harmony and a greater potential for healthy development not only of the child but also of the family. When goodness of fit is not present, tension and stress can result in parental anger, disappointment, frustration, and conflict with the child.

All models of temperament seek to identify intrinsic behavioral characteristics that lead the child to respond to the world in particular ways. One child may be highly emotional and another less so (ie, calmer) in response to a variety of experiences, stressful or pleasant. The clinician must recognize that each child brings some intrinsic, biologically based traits to its environment and that such characteristics are neither good nor bad, right nor wrong, normal nor abnormal; they are simply part of the child. Thus, as one looks at variations in development, one should abandon the illness model and consider this construct as an aid to understanding the nature of the child's behavior and its influence on the parent-child relationship.

Barr RG: Normality: a clinically useless concept: the case of infant crying and colic. J Dev Behav Pediatr 1993;14:264 [PMID: 8408670].

Goldsmith HH et al: Roundtable: what is temperament? Four approaches. Child Dev 1987;58:505 [PMID: 3829791].

Nigg JT: Temperament and developmental psychopathology. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 2006;47:395–422 [PMID: 16492265].

Prior M: Childhood temperament. J Child Psychol Psychiatr 1992; 33:249 [PMID: 1737829].

Thomas A, Chess S: Temperament and Development. New York, NY: Brunner/Mazel; 1977.

ENURESIS & ENCOPRESIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A child who does not achieve urine and bowel continence by 5–6 years of age and generally has no underlying pathology to which the incontinence can be attributed.
- The child does not respond to a full bladder or rectum.
- The child is constipated and/or is withholding stools.

Enuresis and encopresis are common childhood problems encountered in the pediatric and family practitioner's office. Bedwetting is particularly common with about 20% of children in the first grade occasionally wetting the bed and 4% wetting the bed two or more times a week. Enuresis is more common in boys than in girls. In a recent large US study, the prevalence of enuresis among boys 7 and 9 years was 9% and 7%, respectively, and among girls at those ages, 6% and 3%, respectively. The data on constipation and encopresis seem less clear with about 1%–3% of children experiencing this problem, but with anywhere from 0.3% to 29% of children worldwide experiencing constipation. Overall, encopresis/constipation accounts for 3% of referrals to pediatricians' offices. What is very striking, however, is that constipation and enuresis often co-occur; in such a case the constipation needs to be dealt with before the enuresis can be addressed.

ENURESIS

Enuresis is defined as repeated urination into the clothing during the day and into the bed at night by a child who is chronologically and developmentally older than 5 years; this pattern of urination must occur at least twice a week for 3 months. Enuresis has been categorized by the International Children's Continence Society as monosymptomatic or non-monosymptomatic. Monosymptomatic enuresis is uncomplicated nocturnal enuresis (NE; must never have been dry at night for over 6 months with no daytime accidents); it is a reflection of a maturational disorder and there is no underlying organic problem. Complicated or non-monosymptomatic enuresis often involves NE and daytime incontinence and often reflects an underlying disorder. The evaluation of both forms needs to take into consideration both the medical and psychological implications of these conditions.

Monosymptomatic enuresis reflects a delay in achieving nighttime continence and reflects a delay in the maturation of the urologic and neurologic systems. Both micturition and anorectal evacuation are dependent on neural connections and communications between the frontal lobes, locus ceruleus, mid pons, sacral voiding center, and the bladder and rectum. With respect to enuresis, most children are continent at night within 2 years of achieving daytime control. However, 15.5% of 7.5-year-old children wet the bed but only about 2.5% meet the criteria for enuresis. With each year of age the frequency of bedwetting decreases: by 15 years only about 1%–2% of children continue to wet. This occurs more commonly among boys than girls.

The causes for NE are varied and probably interact with one another. Genetic factors are strongly implicated, as enuresis tends to run in families. Many children with NE have a higher threshold for arousal and do not awake to the sensation of a full bladder. NE also can be a result of overproduction of urine from decreased production of desmopressin or a resistance to antidiuretic hormone.

In such cases, the bladder has decreased functional capacity and empties before it is filled.

The evaluation of a child with NE involves a complete history and physical examination to rule out any anatomical abnormalities, underlying pathology, or the presence of constipation. In addition, every child with NE should undergo a urinalysis including a specific gravity. A urine culture should be obtained, especially in girls.

Treatment involves education and the avoidance of being judgmental and shaming the child. Most children feel ashamed and the goal of treatment is to help the child establish continence and maintain his or her self-esteem. A variety of behavioral strategies have been employed such as limiting liquids before sleep and awakening the child at night so that he/she can go to the toilet. Central to this simple strategy is consistency on the parents' part and the need for the child to be completely awake. If this simple approach is unsuccessful, the use of bedwetting alarms is suggested. Every time the alarm goes off, the child should go to the toilet and void. Therapy needs to be continued for at least 3 months and used every night. Critical to the success of therapy is that parents need to be active participants and get up with the child, as many children will just turn off the alarm and go back to sleep. The alarm system, which is a form of cognitive behavioral therapy, has been found to cure two-thirds of affected children and should be highly recommended to affected children and their parents as a safe, effective treatment for NE. The most common cause of failure of this intervention is that the child doesn't awaken or the parents do not wake the child.

While behavioral strategies should be the first line of treatment, when these fail one may need to turn to medications. Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP), an antidiuretic hormone analogue, has been used successfully. DDAVP decreases urine production. Imipramine, a tricyclic antidepressant, also has been used successfully to control NE, although the mechanism of action is not understood. However, potential adverse side effects, including the risk of death with an overdose, suggest that imipramine should be used only as a last resort. Unfortunately, when such medications are stopped, there is a very high relapse rate.

Daytime incontinence or non-monosymptomatic enuresis is more complicated than NE. Daytime continence is achieved by 70% of children by 3 years of age and by 90% of children by 6 years. When this is not the case, one needs to consider underlying pathology, including cystitis, diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus, seizure disorders, neurogenic bladder, anatomical abnormalities of the urinary tract system such as urethral obstruction, constipation, and psychological stress and child maltreatment. A complete history and physical examination must be obtained, along with a diary that includes daily records of voiding and fecal elimination. Treatment must be directed at the underlying pathology and often requires the input of pediatric subspecialists. Following diagnosis, family support and education are essential.

ENCOPRESIS

Constipation (see Chapter 21) is defined by two or more of the following events for 2 months: (1) fewer than three bowel movements per week; (2) more than one episode of encopresis per week; (3) impaction of the rectum with stool; (4) passage of stool so large that it obstructs the toilet; (5) retentive posturing and fecal withholding; and (6) pain with defecation.

Encopresis is described in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5) as the repeated passage of stool into inappropriate places (such as in the underpants) by child who is chronologically or developmentally older than 4 years. It occurs each month for at least 3 months and is not attributable to the physiologic effects of a substance or another medical condition except to the mechanism involving constipation. Behavioral scientists often divide encopresis into (1) retentive encopresis, (2) continuous encopresis, and (3) discontinuous encopresis. In rare instances children have severe toilet phobia and so do not defecate into the toilet. It is critical to note that more than 90% of the cases of encopresis result from constipation. Thus, in the evaluation of a child with encopresis, one must rule out underlying pathology associated with constipation (see Chapter 21) while at the same time addressing functional and behavioral issues. Conditions associated with constipation include metabolic disorders such as hypothyroidism, neurologic disorders such as cerebral palsy or tethered cord, and anatomical abnormalities of the anus. In addition, children who have been continent can also develop encopresis as a response to stress or child maltreatment.

The prevalence of encopresis is somewhat difficult to precisely ascertain as it is a subject often kept secret by the family and the child. However, some authors report that 1%–3% of children ages 4–11 years of age suffer from encopresis. The highest prevalence is between 5 and 6 years of age.

A complete history and meticulous physical examination must be performed, including a rectal examination, particularly looking for abnormalities around the anus and spine. An abdominal radiograph can be helpful in determining the degree of constipation, the appearance of the bowel, and whether there is obstruction. Assuming no gastrointestinal abnormalities, initial intervention starts with treatment of constipation. Subsequently education, support, and guidance around evacuation are essential, including behavioral strategies such as having the child sit on the toilet after meals to stimulate the gastrocolic reflex. It is most important to avoid punishing the child and making him or her feel guilty and ashamed. Helping the child to clean himself and his clothing in a nonjudgmental, nonpunitive manner is far

more productive approach than criticism and reproach. At the same time, if there is an underlying psychiatric disorder such as depression, the child should be treated for the mental health problem along with the treatment of the constipation.

When medical management of constipation is indicated, oral medication or an enema for "bowel cleanout" followed by oral medications should be used. Such treatment can be monitored by abdominal radiographs to be sure that the colon is clean. A bowel regimen needs to be established with the goal of the child achieving continence and defecating in the toilet bowl on a regular basis. The child should be encouraged to have a daily bowel movement, and the use of fiber, some laxatives, and even mineral oil can be helpful. Consultation with a gastroenterologist should be considered in more refractory cases.

Culbert TP, Banez GA: Integrative approaches to childhood constipation and encopresis. Pediatr Clin North Am 2007;54(6): 927–947 [PMID: 18061784].

Nijman, RJM: Diagnosis and management of urinary incontinence and functional fetal incontinence (encopresis) in children. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2008;37(3):731–748 [PMID: 18794006].

Reiner W: Pharmacotherapy in the management of voiding and storage disorders, including enuresis and encopresis. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2008;47:491–498 [PMID: 18438186].

Robson WLM: Clinical practice. Evaluation and management of enuresis. N Engl J Med 2009;360:1429–1436 [PMID: 19339722].

Schonwald A, Rappaport LA: Elimination conditions. In: Wolraich ML et al (eds): Developmental-Behavioral Pediatrics: Evidence and Practice. Mosby Elsevier; 2008:791–804.

COMMON DEVELOPMENTAL CONCERNS

COLIC

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» An otherwise healthy infant aged 2–3 months seems to be in pain, cries for more than 3 hours a day, for more than 3 days a week, for more than 3 weeks ("rule of threes").

Infant colic is characterized by severe and paroxysmal crying that occurs mainly in the late afternoon. The infant's knees are drawn up and its fists are clenched, flatus is expelled, the facies has a pained appearance, and there is minimal response to attempts at soothing. Studies in the United States have shown that among middle-class infants, crying occupies about 2 hours per day at 2 weeks of age, about 3 hours per day by 6 weeks, and gradually decreases to about 1 hour per day by 3 months. The word "colic" is derived from Greek kolikos ("pertaining to the colon"). Although colic has traditionally been attributed to gastrointestinal disturbances, this has never been proven. Others have suggested that colic reflects a disturbance in the infant's sleep-wake cycling or an infant state regulation disorder. In any case, colic is a behavioral sign or symptom that begins in the first few weeks of life and peaks at age 2–3 months. In about 30%–40% of cases, colic continues into the fourth and fifth months.

A colicky infant is healthy and well fed but cries for more than 3 hours a day, for more than 3 days a week, and for more than 3 weeks—commonly referred to as the "rule of threes." The important word in this definition is "healthy." Thus, before the diagnosis of colic can be made, the pediatrician must rule out diseases that might cause crying. With the exception of the few infants who respond to elimination of cow's milk from its own or the mother's diet, there has been little firm evidence of an association of colic with allergic disorders. Gastroesophageal reflux is often suspected as a cause of colicky crying in young infants. Undetected corneal abrasion, urinary tract infection, and unrecognized traumatic injuries, including child abuse, must be among the physical causes of crying considered in evaluating these infants. Some attempts have been made to eliminate gas with simethicone and to slow gut motility with dicyclomine. Simethicone has not been shown to ameliorate colic. Dicyclomine has been associated with apnea in infants and is contraindicated.

This then leaves characteristics intrinsic to the child (ie, temperament) and parental caretaking patterns as contributing to colic. Behavioral states have three features: (1) They are self-organizing—that is, they are maintained until it is necessary to shift to another one; (2) they are stable over several minutes; and (3) the same stimulus elicits a state-specific response that is different from other states. The behavioral states are (among others) a crying state, a quiet alert state, an active alert state, a transitional state, and a state of deep sleep. The states of importance with respect to colic are the crying state and the transitional state. During transition from one state to another, infant behavior may be more easily influenced. Once an infant is in a stable state (eg, crying), it becomes more difficult to bring about a change (eg, to soothe). How these transitions are accomplished is probably influenced by the infant's temperament and neurologic maturity. Some infants move from one state to another easily and can be diverted easily; other infants sustain a particular state and are resistant to change.

Another factor to be considered in evaluating the colicky infant is the feeding and handling behavior of the caregiver. Colic is a behavioral phenomenon that involves interaction between the infant and the caregiver. Different caregivers perceive and respond to crying behavior differently. If the caregiver perceives the crying infant as being spoiled and demanding and is not sensitive to or knowledgeable about

the infant's cues and rhythms—or is hurried and "rough" with the infant—the infant's ability to organize and soothe him- or herself or respond to the caregiver's attempts at soothing may be compromised. Alternatively, if the temperament of an infant with colic is understood and the rhythms and cues deciphered, crying can be anticipated and the caregiver can intervene before the behavior becomes "organized" in the crying state and more difficult to extinguish.

» Management

1. Parents need to be educated about the developmental characteristics of crying behavior and made aware that crying increases normally into the second month and abates by the third to fourth month.
2. Parents need reassurance, based on a complete history and physical examination, that the infant is not sick. A discussion of the differential/potential causes and why they have been ruled out can be helpful. Although these behaviors are stressful, they are normal variants and are usually self-limited. This discussion can be facilitated by having the parent keep a diary of crying and weight gain. If there is a diurnal pattern and adequate weight gain, an underlying disease process is less likely to be present. It is important to relieve parental anxiety.
3. For parents to effectively soothe and comfort the infant, they need to understand the infant's cues. The pediatrician (or nurse) can help by observing the infant's behavior and devising interventions aimed at calming both the infant and the parents. One should encourage a quiet environment without excessive handling. Rhythmic stimulation such as gentle swinging or rocking, soft music, drives in the car, or walks in the stroller may be helpful, especially if the parents are able to anticipate the onset of crying. Another approach is to change the feeding habits so that the infant is not rushed, has ample opportunity to burp, adaptive nipple if bottle fed, and, if necessary, can be fed more frequently so as to decrease gastric distention if that seems to be contributing to the problem.
4. Medications such as phenobarbital elixir and dicyclomine should not be used because of the risk of adverse reactions and overdosage. A trial of ranitidine hydrochloride or other proton pump inhibitor might be of help if proven gastroesophageal reflux is contributing to the child's discomfort.
5. For colic that is refractory to behavioral management, a trial of changing the feedings and eliminating cow's milk from the formula or from the mother's diet if she is nursing may be indicated. The use of whey hydrolysate formulas for formula-fed infants has been suggested. There is conflicting evidence regarding the use of probiotics to treat infant colic.
6. There is no conclusive evidence for complementary and alternative interventions to treat colic. While herbal remedies have been suggested, there are no well-designed studies supporting herbal therapies in the treatment of colic. Furthermore, herbal remedies have potential for toxicity and neurologic impairment, compounded by lack of knowledge of appropriate dosing in children. The same holds true for the use of chiropractic interventions and reflexology; there are no well-designed studies to support the use of these interventions, and the risks of adverse events outweigh the possible benefits.

Bellaïche M, Levy M, Jung C. Treatments for infant colic. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2013; 57 (Suppl 1):S27–S30.

Cohen-Silver J, Ratnapalan S: Management of infantile colic: a review. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2009;48:14–17 [PMID: 18832537].

Shamir R, St James-Roberts I, Di Lorenzo C, Burns AJ, Thapar N, Indrio F, Riezzo G, Raimondi F, Di Mauro A, Francavilla R, Leuchter RH, Darque A, Hüppi PS, Heine RG, Bellaïche M, Levy M, Jung C, Alvarez M, Hovish K. Infant crying, colic, and gastrointestinal discomfort in early childhood: a review of the evidence and most plausible mechanisms. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr. 2013 Dec;57 Suppl 1:S1-S45 [PMID: 24356023].

Zero to Three. http://www.zerotothree.org/child development/-challenging-behavior/colic-behaviors.html.

FEEDING DISORDERS IN INFANTS & YOUNG CHILDREN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Inadequate or disordered intake of food due to any of the following conditions:

- Poor oral-motor coordination.
- Fatigue resulting from a chronic disease.
- Lack of appetite.
- Behavioral issues relating to parent–child interaction.
- Pain associated with feeding.

Children have feeding problems for various reasons, including oral-motor dysfunction (gagging, trouble with chewing, and/or swallowing, aspiration), cardiopulmonary disorders leading to fatigue, gastrointestinal disturbances causing pain, social, or emotional issues, and problems with regulation. The common denominator, however, is food refusal. Infants and young children may refuse to eat if they find eating painful or frightening. They may have had unpleasant experiences (emotional or physiologic) associated with eating, they may be depressed, or they may be engaged in

a developmental conflict with the caregiver that is being played out in the arena of feeding. The infant may refuse to eat if the rhythm of the feeding experience with the caregiver is not harmonious. The child who has had an esophageal atresia repair and has a stricture may find eating uncomfortable. The very young infant with severe oral candidiasis may refuse to eat because of pain. The child who has had a choking experience associated with feeding may be terrified to eat (oral-motor dysfunction or aspiration). The child who is forced to eat by a maltreating parent or an overzealous caregiver may refuse feeds. Children who have required nasogastric feedings or who have required periods of fasting and intravenous nutrition in the first 1–2 months of life are more likely to display food refusal behavior upon introduction of oral feedings.

Depression in children may be expressed through food refusal. Food refusal may develop when the infant's cues around feeding are not interpreted correctly by the parent. The infant who needs to burp more frequently or who needs time between bites but instead is rushed will often passively refuse to eat. Some will be more active refusers, turning their heads away to avoid the feeder, spitting out food, or pushing away food.

The normal developmental and interactive feeding stages through which the child normally progresses are establishment of homeostasis (0–2 months), attachment (2–6 months), and separation and individuation (6 months to 3 years). During the first stage, feeding can be accomplished most easily when the parent allows the infant to determine the timing, amount, pacing, and preference of food intake. During the attachment phase, allowing the infant to control the feeding permits the parent to engage the infant in a positive manner. This paves the way for the separation and individuation phase. When a disturbance occurs in the parent-child relationship at any of these developmental levels, difficulty in feeding may ensue, with both the parent and the child contributing to the dysfunctional interaction. One of the most striking manifestations of food refusal occurs during the stage of separation and individuation. Conflict may arise if the parent seeks to dominate the child by intrusive and controlling feeding behavior at the same time the child is striving to achieve autonomy. The scenario then observed is of the parent forcing food on the child while the child refuses to eat. This often leads to extreme parental frustration and anger, and the child may be inadequately nourished and developmentally and emotionally thwarted.

When the pediatrician is attempting to sort out the factors contributing to food refusal, it is essential first to obtain a complete history, including a social history. This should include information concerning the parents' perception of the child's behavior and their expectations of the child. Second, a complete physical examination should be performed, with emphasis on oral-motor behavior and other clues suggesting neurologic, anatomic, or physiologic abnormalities that could make feeding difficult. The child's emotional state and developmental level must be determined. This is particularly important if there is concern about depression or a history of developmental delays. If evidence of oral-motor difficulty is suspected, evaluation by an occupational therapist or speech pathologist is warranted. Third, the feeding interaction needs to be observed live, if possible. Finally, the physician needs to help the parents understand that infants and children may have different styles of eating and different food preferences, and may refuse foods they do not like. This is not necessarily abnormal but may reflect differences in temperament and variations in the child's way of processing olfactory, gustatory, and tactile stimuli.

» Management

The goal of intervention is to identify factors contributing to the disturbance and to work to overcome them. The parents may be encouraged to view the child's behavior differently and try not to impose their expectations and desires. Alternatively, the child's behavior may need to be modified so that the parents can provide adequate nurturing.

When the chief complaint is failure to gain weight, a different approach is required. The differential diagnosis should include not only food refusal but also medical disorders and maltreatment. The most common reason for failure to gain weight is inadequate caloric intake. Excessive weight loss may be due to vomiting or diarrhea, to malabsorption, or to a combination of these factors. In this situation more extensive diagnostic evaluation may be needed. Laboratory studies may include a complete blood count; erythrocyte sedimentation rate; urinalysis and urine culture; blood urea nitrogen; serum electrolytes and creatinine; and stool examination for fat, occult blood, and ova and parasites. Some practitioners also include liver and thyroid profiles. Occasionally an assessment of swallowing function or evaluation for the presence of gastroesophageal reflux may be indicated. Because of the complexity of the problem, a team approach to the diagnosis and treatment of failure to thrive, or poor weight gain, may be most appropriate. The team should include a physician, nurse, social worker, and dietitian. Occupational and physical therapists, developmentalists, and psychologists may be required.

The goals of treatment of the child with poor weight gain are to establish a typical pattern of weight gain and to establish better family functioning. Guidelines to accomplishing these goals include the following: (1) Establish a comprehensive diagnosis that considers all factors contributing to poor weight gain; (2) monitor the feeding interaction and ensure appropriate weight gain; (3) monitor the developmental progress of the child and the changes in the family dynamics that facilitate optimal weight gain and psychosocial development; and (4) provide support to the family as they seek to help the child.

Aldridge V, Dovey TM et al: Identifying clinically relevant feeding problems and disorders. J Child Health Care 2010;14:261–270 [PMID: 20153948].
Bryan-Waugh R, Markham L et al: Feeding and eating disorders in childhood. Int J Eat Disord 2010;43:98–111 [PMID: 20063374].
Lask B, Bryant-Waugh R (eds): Eating Disorders in Childhood and Adolescence, 4th ed. Routledge, East Essex; 2013.
Williams KE, Field DG, Seiverling L: Food refusal in children: a review of the literature. Res Dev Disabil 2010;31:625–633 [PMID: 20153948].

SLEEP DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Children younger than 12 years:
  - Difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep that is viewed as a problem by the child or caregiver.
  - May be characterized by its severity, chronicity, frequency, and associated impairment in daytime function in the child or family.
  - May be due to a primary sleep disorder or occur in association with other sleep, medical, or psychiatric disorders.
- Adolescents—difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep, or early morning awakening, or nonrestorative sleep, or a combination of these problems.

Sleep is a complex physiologic process influenced by intrinsic biologic properties, temperament, cultural norms and expectations, and environmental conditions. Between 20% and 40% of children experience sleep disturbances at some point in the first 4 years of life. The percentage decreases to 10%–12% in school-aged children. The most common sleep disorder encountered by pediatricians is insomnia, or difficulty with initiating and maintaining sleep. Parasomnias refer to abnormalities of arousal, partial arousal, and transitions between stages of sleep. Other sleep disorders include sleep disordered breathing (covered in greater depth in Chapter 19), restless legs syndrome (RLS)/periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD, narcolepsy, and circadian rhythm disturbances. Narcolepsy, benign neonatal sleep myoclonus, and nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy will be covered in Chapter 25. DSM-5 no longer differentiates between primary and secondary insomnia in an effort to acknowledge the importance of managing sleep issues no matter what the perceived cause, and to recognize the bidirectional and interactive effects between sleep issues and coexisting conditions.

Sleep is controlled by two different biologic clocks. The first is a circadian rhythm–daily sleep-wake cycle. The second is an ultradian rhythm that occurs several times per night—the stages of sleep. Sleep stages cycle every 50–60 minutes in infants to every 90 minutes in adolescents. The circadian clock is longer than 24 hours. Environmental cues entrain the sleep-wake cycle into a 24-hour cycle. The cues are light-dark, ambient temperature, core body temperature, noise, social interaction, hunger, pain, and hormone production. Without the ability to perceive these cues (ie, blindness), a child might have difficulty entraining a 24-hour sleep-wake cycle.

Two major sleep stages have been identified clinically and with the use of polysomnography: rapid eye movement (REM) and nonrapid eye movement (NREM) sleep. In REM sleep, muscle tone is relaxed, the sleeper may twitch and grimace, and the eyes move erratically beneath closed lids. REM sleep occurs throughout the night but is increased during the latter half of the night. NREM sleep is divided into four stages. In the process of falling asleep, the individual enters stage 1, light sleep, characterized by reduced body movements, slow eye rolling, and sometimes opening and closing of the eyelids. Stage 2 sleep is characterized by slowing of eye movements, slowing of respirations and heart rate, and relaxation of the muscles. Most mature individuals spend about half of their sleep time in this stage. Stages 3 and 4 (also called delta or slow-wave sleep) are the deepest NREM sleep stages, during which the body is relaxed, breathing is slow and shallow, and the heart rate is slow. The deepest NREM sleep occurs during the first 1–3 hours after going to sleep. Most parasomnias occur early in the night during deep NREM sleep. Dreams and nightmares that occur later in the night occur during REM sleep.

Sleep is clearly a developmental phenomenon. Infants are not born with a sleep-wake cycle. REM sleep is more common than NREM sleep in newborns and decreases by 3–6 months of age.

Sleep patterns slowly mature throughout infancy, childhood, and adolescence until they become adult like. Newborns sleep 10–19 hours per day in 2- to 5-hour blocks. Over the first year of life, the infant slowly consolidates sleep at night into a 9- to 12-hour block and naps gradually decrease to one per day by about 12 months. Most children stop napping between 3 and 5 years of age. School-aged children typically sleep 10–11 hours per night without a nap. Adolescents need 9–9½ hours per night but often only get 7–7¼ hours per night. This is complicated by an approximate 1- to 3-hour sleep phase delay in adolescence that is due to physiologic changes in hormonal regulation of the circadian system. Often, adolescents are not tired until 2 hours after their typical bedtime but still must get up at the same time in the morning. Some school districts have implemented later start times for high school students because of this phenomenon.

1. Parasomnias

Parasomnias include both NREM arousal disorders such as confusional arousals, night terrors, sleeptalking (somniloquy), and sleepwalking (somnambulism), and REM-associated sleep abnormalities which are beyond the scope of this chapter.

A. Night Terrors and Sleepwalking

Night terrors commonly occur within 2 hours after falling asleep, during the deepest stage of NREM sleep, and are often associated with sleepwalking. They occur in about 3% of children and most cases occur between ages 3 and 8 years. During a night terror, the child may sit up in bed screaming, thrashing about, and exhibiting rapid breathing, tachycardia, and sweating. The child is often incoherent and unresponsive to comforting. The episode may last up to ½ hour, after which the child goes back to sleep and has no memory of the event the next day. The parents must be reassured that the child is not in pain and that they should let the episode run its course.

Management of night terrors consists of reassurance of the parents plus measures to avoid stress, irregular sleep schedule, or sleep deprivation, which prolongs deep sleep when night terrors occur. Scheduled awakening (awakening the child 30–45 minutes before the time the night terrors usually occur) has been used in children with nightly or frequent night terrors, but there is little evidence that this is effective.

Sleepwalking also occurs during slow-wave/deep sleep and is common between 4 and 8 years of age. It is often associated with other complex behaviors during sleep. It is typically benign except that injuries can occur while the child is walking around. Steps should be taken to ensure that the environment is free of obstacles and that doors to the outside are locked. Parents may also wish to put a bell on their child's door to alert them that the child is out of bed. As with night terrors, steps should be taken to avoid stress and sleep deprivation. Scheduled awakenings may also be used if the child sleep walks frequently and at a predictable time.

B. Nightmares

Nightmares are frightening dreams that occur during REM sleep, typically followed by awakening, which usually occurs in the latter part of the night. The peak occurrence is between ages 3 and 5 years, with an incidence between 25% and 50%. A child who awakens during these episodes is usually alert. He or she can often describe the frightening images, recall the dream, and talk about it during the day. The child seeks and will respond positively to parental reassurance. The child will often have difficulty going back to sleep and will want to stay with the parents. Nightmares are usually self-limited and need little treatment. They can be associated with stress, trauma, anxiety, sleep deprivation that can cause a rebound in REM sleep, and medications that increase REM sleep.

2. Insomnia

Insomnia includes difficulty initiating sleep and nighttime awakenings. Although parasomnias are frightening, insomnia is frustrating. It can result in daytime fatigue for both the parents and the child, parental discord about management, and family disruption.

Several factors contribute to these disturbances. The quantity and timing of feeds in the first year of life will influence nighttime awakening. Most infants beyond age 6 months can go through the night without being fed. Thus, under normal circumstances, night waking for feeds is probably a learned behavior and is a function of the child's arousal and the parents' response to that arousal.

Bedtime habits can influence settling in for the night as well as nighttime awakening. If the child learns that going to sleep is associated with pleasant parental behavior such as rocking, singing, reading, or nursing, going back to sleep after nighttime arousal without these pleasant parental attentions may be difficult. This is called a sleep-onset association disorder and usually is the reason for night waking. Every time that the child gets to the light sleep portion of the sleep-wake cycle, he or she may wake up. This is usually brief and not remembered the next morning, but for the child who does not have strategies for getting to sleep, getting back to sleep may require the same interventions needed to get to sleep initially. Most of these interventions require a parent. Night waking occurs in 40%–60% of infants and young children.

Parents need to set limits for the child while acknowledging the child's individual biologic rhythms. They should resist the child's attempts to put off bedtime or to engage them during nighttime awakenings. The goal is to establish clear bedtime rituals, to put the child to bed while still awake, and to create a dark, quiet, secure bedtime environment.

The child's temperament is another factor contributing to sleep. It has been reported that children with low sensory thresholds and less rhythmicity (regulatory disorder) are more prone to night waking. Night waking often starts at about 9 months as separation anxiety is beginning. Parents should receive anticipatory guidance prior to that time so that they know to reassure their child without making the interaction prolonged or pleasurable. Finally, psychosocial stressors and changes in routine can play a role in night waking.

Insomnia is common in children with complex medical conditions and neurologic, developmental, and psychiatric disorders.

3. Sleep-Disordered Breathing

Sleep-disordered breathing or obstructive sleep apnea is characterized by obstructed breathing during sleep

accompanied by loud snoring, chest retractions, morning headaches, dry mouth, and daytime sleepiness. Obstructive sleep apnea occurs in 1%–3% of preschoolers. It has its highest peak in childhood between the ages of 2 and 6 years. It has been associated with daytime behavioral disorders, including attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). (See Chapter 19.)

4. Restless Legs Syndrome & Periodic Limb Movement Disorder

Restless legs syndrome (RLS) and periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD) are common disorders in adults and frequently occur together. The frequency of these disorders in children is about 2%. RLS is associated with an uncomfortable sensation in the lower extremities that occurs at night when trying to fall asleep, is relieved by movement, and is sometimes described by children as "creepy-crawly" or "itchy bones." PLMD is stereotyped, repetitive limb movements often associated with a partial arousal or awakening. The etiology of these disorders is unknown, but there has been some association with iron deficiency. A diagnosis of RLS is generally made by history and a diagnosis of PLMD can be made with a sleep study. Caffeine, nicotine, antidepressants, and other drugs have been associated with RLS and PLMD. The medical evaluation includes obtaining a serum ferritin and C-reactive protein (CRP) level. If the CRP is normal and the ferritin is less than 50, treatment with ferrous sulfate should be considered. Medications have been studied for treatment of RLS and PLMD in adults.

Management of Sleep Disorders

A complete medical and psychosocial history should be obtained, and a physical examination performed. A detailed sleep history and diary should be completed, and both parents should contribute. Assessment for allergies, lateral neck films, and polysomnography may be indicated to complete the evaluation, especially if sleep-disordered breathing is suspected. It is important to consider disorders such as gastroesophageal reflux, which may cause discomfort or pain when recumbent. Dental pain or eczema may cause nighttime awakening. It also is important to make sure that any medications that the child is taking do not interfere with sleep.

The key to treatment of children who have difficulty going to sleep or who awaken during the night and disturb others is for the physician and parents to understand normal sleep patterns, the parents' responses that inadvertently reinforce undesirable sleep behavior, and the child's individual temperament traits. Good sleep hygiene includes discontinuing any activities that are stimulating in the hour before bedtime. It is also important to dim lights during the "wind down" time. Television and video games are particularly stimulating. Exposure to light and physical activity during the day are helpful and it is important to ask about caffeine ingestion.

There is little evidence regarding pharmacologic management of sleep disorders in children. While the role for melatonin in children with typical development is unclear, there is mounting evidence that it can be effective in children with visual impairments, developmental disabilities, and autism spectrum disorders (ASDs). Medications such as clonidine are often used for sleep disorders, especially in children with ADHD and autistic spectrum disorder (ASD), but there are little data to support its use.

The Pediatric Sleep Medicine Update in Pediatric Clinics of North America from June 2011 is a good resource for more in-depth information.

American Academy of Sleep Medicine sponsored website: http://yoursleep.aasmnet.org/.

Braam W, Smits MG, Didden R, Korzilius H, Van Geijlswijk IM, Curfs LM: Exogenous melatonin for sleep problems in individuals with intellectual disability: a meta-analysis. Dev Med Child Neurol 2009;51(5):340–349 [PMID: 19379289].

Jan JE et al: Sleep hygiene for children with neurodevelopmental disabilities. Pediatrics 2008;122(6):1343–1350 [PMID: 19047255].

Mindell JA, Owens JA: A Clinical Guide to Pediatric Sleep: Diagnosis and Management of Sleep Problems, 2nd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

National Sleep Foundation sponsored website: http://www.sleepforkids.org/ and http://www.sleepfoundation.org.

Owens JA, Moturi S: Pharmacologic treatment of pediatric insomnia. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2009;18(4):1001–1016 [PMID: 19836701].

Pediatric Sleep Medicine Update, Editors Judith Owens, Jodi Mindell. Pediatr Clin North Am 2011, June;58.

Cortese S, Brown T, Corkum P, Gruber R, O'Brien L, Stein M, Weiss M, Owens J, Assessment and Management of Sleep Problems in Youths With Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder. Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, Volume 52, Issue 8, August 2013, Pages 784–796.

TEMPER TANTRUMS & BREATH-HOLDING SPELLS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Behavioral responses to stress, frustration, and loss of control.
- Tantrum—child may throw him- or herself on the ground, kick, scream, or strike out at others.
- Breath-holding spell—child engages in a prolonged expiration that is reflexive and may become pale or cyanotic.

» Rule out underlying organic disease in children with breath-holding spells (eg, CNS abnormalities, Rett syndrome, seizures).

1. Temper Tantrums

Temper tantrums are common between ages 12 months and 4 years, occurring about once a week in 50%–80% of children in this age group. The child may throw him- or herself down, kick and scream, strike out at people or objects in the room, and hold his or her breath. These behaviors may be considered normal as the young child seeks to achieve autonomy and mastery over the environment. They are often a reflection of immaturity as the child strives to accomplish age-appropriate developmental tasks and meets with difficulty because of inadequate motor and language skills, impulsiveness, or parental restrictions. In the home, these behaviors may be annoying. In public, they are embarrassing.

Some children tolerate frustration well, are able to persevere at tasks, and cope easily with difficulties; others have a much greater problem dealing with experiences beyond their developmental level. Parents can minimize tantrums by understanding the child's temperament and what he or she is trying to communicate. Parents must also be committed to supporting the child's drive to master his or her feelings.

» Management

Appropriate intervention can provide an opportunity for enhancing the child's growth. The tantrum is a loss of control on the child's part that may be a frightening event and a blow to the child's self-image. The parents and the physician need to view these behaviors within the child's developmental context rather than from a negative, adversarial, angry perspective.

Several suggestions can be offered to parents and physicians to help manage tantrums:

1. Minimize the need to say "no" by "child-proofing" the environment so that fewer restrictions need to be enforced.
2. Use distraction when frustration increases; direct the child to other, less frustrating activities; and reward the positive response.
3. Present options within the child's capabilities so that he or she can achieve mastery and autonomy.
4. Fight only those battles that need to be won and avoid those that arouse unnecessary conflict.
5. Do not abandon the preschool child when a tantrum occurs. Stay nearby during the episode without intruding. A small child may need to be restrained. An older child can be asked to go to his or her room. Threats serve no purpose and should not be used.
6. Do not use negative terms when the tantrum is occurring. Instead, point out that the child is out of control and give praise when he or she regains control.
7. Never let a child hurt him- or herself or others.
8. Do not "hold a grudge" after the tantrum is over, but do not grant the child's demands that led to the tantrum.
9. Seek to maintain an environment that provides positive reinforcement for desired behavior. Do not overreact to undesired behavior, but set reasonable limits and provide responsible direction for the child.
10. Approximately 5%–20% of young children have severe temper tantrums that are frequent and disruptive. Such tantrums may result from a disturbance in the parent-child interaction, poor parenting skills, lack of limit setting, and permissiveness. They may be part of a larger behavioral or developmental disorder or may emerge under adverse socioeconomic conditions, in circumstances of maternal depression and family dysfunction, or when the child is in poor health. Referral to a psychologist or psychiatrist is appropriate while the pediatrician continues to support and work with the family.

2. Breath-Holding Spells

Whereas temper tantrums can be frustrating to parents, breath-holding spells can be terrifying. The name for this behavior may be a misnomer in that it connotes prolonged inspiration. In fact, breath-holding occurs during expiration and is reflexive—not volitional—in nature. It is a paroxysmal event occurring in 0.1%–5% of healthy children from age 6 months to 6 years. The spells usually start during the first year of life, often in response to anger or a mild injury. The child is provoked or surprised, starts to cry—briefly or for a considerable time—and then falls silent in the expiratory phase of respiration. This is followed by a color change. Spells have been described as either pallid (acyanotic) or cyanotic, with the latter usually associated with anger and the former with an injury such as a fall. The spell may resolve spontaneously, or the child may lose consciousness. In severe cases, the child may become limp and progress to opisthotonos, body jerks, and urinary incontinence. Only rarely does a spell proceed to asystole or a seizure.

» Management

For the child with frequent spells, underlying disorders such as seizures, orthostatic hypotension, obstructive sleep apnea, abnormalities of the CNS, tumors, familial dysautonomia, and Rett syndrome need to be considered. An association exists among breath-holding spells, pica, and iron-deficiency anemia. These conditions can be ruled out on the basis of the history, physical examination, and laboratory studies. Once it has been determined that the child is healthy, the focus of

treatment is behavioral. Parents should be taught to handle the spells in a matter-of-fact manner and monitor the child for any untoward events. The reality is that parents cannot completely protect the child from upsetting and frustrating experiences and probably should not try to do so. Just as in temper tantrums, parents need to help the child control his or her responses to frustration. Parents need to be careful not to be too permissive and submit to the child's every whim for fear the child might have a spell.

If loss of consciousness occurs, the child should be placed on his or her side to protect against head injury and aspiration. Maintaining a patent oral airway is essential, but cardiopulmonary resuscitation should be avoided. There are no prophylactic medications. Atropine, 0.01 mg/kg given subcutaneously, has been used with some benefit in spells accompanied by bradycardia or asystole.

AAP recommendations for parents: http://www.healthychildren.org/English/family-life/family-dynamics/communication-discipline/pages/Temper-Tantrums.aspx

Baker Jed: No More Meltdowns: Positive Strategies for Managing and Preventing Out-Of-Control Behavior. Arlington, Texas: Future Horizons; 2008.

Beers NS, Howard B: Managing temper tantrums. Pediatr Rev 2003;24:70–71.

Breningstall GN: Breath holding spells. Pediatr Neurol 1996;14:91 [PMID: 8703234].

Dimario FJ Jr: Breath-holding spells in childhood. Am J Dis Child 1992;146:125 [PMID: 1736640].

Greene RW: The Explosive Child. New York, NY: Quill; 2001.

WELL-CHiLD SURVEiLLANCE & SCREENiNG

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recently published guidelines for surveillance and screening at well-child visits. Surveillance is a procedure for recognizing children at risk for a developmental disorder and involves asking parents if they have concerns about their child's development. The PEDS (Pediatric Evaluation of Developmental Status) can be used for this purpose. Screening involves use of a standardized tool to clarify identified risk. An evaluation would be done by a specialist and would involve a more definitive evaluation of a child's development.

Surveillance should occur at all well-child visits. Screening of development should occur at 9, 18, and 30 months. Because a 30-month visit is not part of the standard well child visit schedule and may not be reimbursed, screening may occur at 24 months instead. It is also recommended that autism-specific screening should occur at the 18-month visit. Although an autism-specific screen was only recommended at the 18-month visit in the AAP guidelines, the Autism Workgroup of the AAP separately has recommended a second autism-specific screen at 24–30 months in order to pick up children missed at the 18-month screen. Because the average age of regression is 16–20 months, some children may be missed by a single screen at 18 months. Clinicians should keep in mind that if they are administering a screen because they are concerned and the child passes the screen, they should still schedule an early follow-up visit to ensure that appropriate progress has been made and that there are no further concerns.

Implementation of screening requires planning for timing of screening administration during office visits, defining the process for referral, and designing handouts prior to beginning screening. Screening is done to optimize the child's development. However, it also demonstrates to the parent the interest their caretaker has not only for the child's physical well-being but also for the child's developmental and psychosocial well-being. Parents of children who receive a developmental assessment express greater satisfaction with their care provider.

The Child Health and Development Interactive System (CHADIS) is an online system that allows parents and teachers to complete screening questionnaires online prior to the visit. It supports billing for 96,110 screening assessments and complex visits, and provides quality assurance documentation.

American Academy of Pediatrics: Identifying infants and young children with developmental disorders in the medical home: an algorithm for developmental surveillance and screening. Pediatrics 2006;118:405 [PMID: 1681859].

http://www2.aap.org/sections/dbpeds/screening.asp

http://brightfutures.aap.org/pdfs/Guidelines_PDF/3-Promoting_Child_Development.pdf

http://www.medicalhomeinfo.org/how/clinical_care/developmental_screening/

Squires J, Bricker D: Ages and Stages Questionnaires, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Brookes Publishing; 2009.

Child Health and Development Interactive System: www.CHADIS.com.

DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS

Developmental disorders include abnormalities in one or more aspects of development, such as verbal, motor, visual-spatial, attention, and social abilities. Problems with development are often noted by parents when a child does not meet typical motor and language milestones. Developmental disorders may also include difficulties with behavior or attention. ADHD is the most common neurodevelopmental disorder. ADHD occurs in 2%–10% of school-aged children and may occur in combination with a variety of other learning or developmental issues. Mild developmental disorders are often not noted until the child is of school age.

Many biological and psychosocial factors influence a child's performance on developmental tests. In the assessment of the child, it is important to document adverse psychosocial factors, such as neglect or poverty, which can

negatively influence developmental progress. Many of the biological factors that influence development are genetic.

The diagnostic criteria for developmental disorders are found in the DSM-5. The term mental retardation has been replaced by intellectual disability (ID). The diagnostic criteria for ASDs changed dramatically in DSM-5 with some changes in the criteria for ADHD. There are also subtle changes to communication disorders, specific learning disorder, and motor disorders. These can be found at the following website: www.psychchiatry.org/practice/dsm/dsm5.

Evaluation

The neurodevelopmental evaluation must focus on (1) defining the child's level of developmental abilities in a variety of domains, including language, motor, visual-spatial, attention, and social abilities; (2) attempting to determine the etiology of the child's developmental delays; and (3) planning a treatment program. These objectives are ideally achieved by a multidisciplinary team that may include a physician, a psychologist, a speech or language therapist, an occupational therapist, and an educational specialist. This type of evaluation is ideal but not always readily available.

Medical & Neurodevelopmental Examination

The medical history should include the pregnancy, labor, and delivery to identify conditions that might compromise the child's CNS function. The physician must ask the child's parents about prenatal exposures to toxins, medications, alcohol, drugs, smoking, and infections; maternal chronic illness; complications of pregnancy or delivery; and neonatal course. Problems such as poor weight gain, chronic illnesses, hospitalizations, and maltreatment can interfere with typical development. Major illnesses or hospitalizations should be discussed. Any CNS problems, such as trauma, infection, or encephalitis, should be documented. The presence of metabolic diseases and exposure to environmental toxins such as lead should be determined. Chronic diseases such as chronic otitis media, hyper- or hypothyroidism, and chronic renal failure can impact typical development. The presence of motor or vocal tics, seizures, gastrointestinal, or sleep disturbances should be documented. In addition, parents should be questioned about any motor, cognitive, or behavioral regression.

The physician should review and document the child's developmental milestones. The physician should also review temperament, difficulties with feeding, tantrums, poor attention, impulsivity, hyperactivity, anxiety/fears, and aggression. When asking questions about problematic behaviors, it is important to have the parent describe the behavior including frequency and duration. It is also important to try to determine triggers of the behavior and consequences or potential reinforcers of the behavior (ABC—antecedent/behavior/consequence).

A detailed history of school-related events should be recorded, including previous special education support, evaluations through the school, history of repeating grades, difficulties with specific academic areas, problems with peers, and the teacher's impressions of the child's difficulties, particularly related to problems with attention, impulsivity, or hyperactivity. Input from teachers can be invaluable and should be sought prior to the evaluation.

An important aspect of the medical history is a detailed family history of emotional or behavioral problems, learning disabilities, ID, or psychiatric disorders. Parental learning strengths and weaknesses, temperament difficulties, or attentional problems may be passed on to the child. For instance, dyslexia is often inherited.

The neurodevelopmental examination should include a careful assessment of dysmorphic features such as epicanthal folds, palpebral fissure size, shape and length of the philtrum, low-set or posteriorly rotated ears, prominent ear pinnae, unusual dermatoglyphics (eg, a single transverse palmar crease), hyperextensibility of the joints, syndactyly, clinodactyly, or other anomalies. A detailed physical and neurologic examination needs to be carried out with an emphasis on both soft and hard neurologic findings. Soft signs can include motor incoordination, which can be related to handwriting problems and academic delays in written language or drawing. Visual-motor coordination abilities can be assessed by having the child write, copy shapes and designs, or draw a person.

The child's growth parameters, including height, weight, and head circumference, need to be assessed. Normal hearing and visual acuity should be documented or evaluated. Cranial nerve abnormalities and oral-motor coordination problems need to be noted. The examiner should watch closely for motor or vocal tics. Both fine and gross motor abilities should be assessed. Tandem gait, ability to balance on one foot, and coordinating a skip should be evaluated based on age. Tremors can be noted when watching a child stack blocks or draw.

The developmental aspects of the examination can include an assessment of auditory processing and perceptual ability with simple tasks, such as two- to fivefold directions, assessing right and left directionality, memory for a series of spoken words or digit span, and comprehension of a graded paragraph. In assessing expressive language abilities, the examiner should look for difficulties with word retrieval, formulation, articulation, and adequacy of vocabulary. Visual-perceptual abilities can be assessed by simple visual memory tasks, puzzles, or object assembly, and evaluating the child's ability to decode words or organize math problems. Visual-motor integration and coordination can be assessed again with handwriting, design copying, and drawing a person. Throughout the assessment, the clinician

should pay special attention to the child's ability to focus attention and concentrate, and to other aspects of behavior such as evidence of depression or anxiety.

Additional questionnaires and checklists—such as the Child Behavior Checklist by Achenbach; ADHD scales such as the Conners' Parent/Teacher Rating Scale; Vanderbilt ADHD Diagnostic Parent/Teacher Rating Scales; and the Swanson, Nolan, and Pelham Questionnaire-IV—can be used to help with this assessment.

Referral of family to community resources is critical, as is a medical home (described earlier in this chapter).

American Academy of Pediatrics Council on Children With Disabilities: Care coordination in the medical home: Integrating health and related systems of care for children with special health care needs. Pediatrics 2005;116:1238 [PMID: 16264016].

Voigt RG, Macias MM, Myers SM (eds): Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2011 [ISBN-13: 978-1-58110-247-1].

ATTENTION-DEFICIT/HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER

ADHD is a common neurodevelopmental disorder that may affect about 7%–8% of children and 2.5% of adults. It is associated with a triad of symptoms: impulsivity, inattention, and hyperactivity. DSM-5 describes three ADHD subtypes: hyperactive-impulsive, inattentive, and combined. To be classified according to one or another of these subtypes, the child must exhibit six or more of the symptoms listed in Table 3–3. DSM-5 continues to include the same 18 symptoms, 2 symptom domains, and require 6 symptoms from each domain for children younger than 17. DSM-5 includes the following changes: Criteria will address symptoms across the life span, symptoms causing the impairment will need to be present prior to age 12 instead of age 7, and some symptoms will need to be present across more than one setting. Overall there are significant challenges in academic functioning and social interactions. A diagnosis will be allowed in children with ASD, and symptom thresholds will be lower in adolescents 17 and older and in adults (only five symptoms required from each category).

The majority of children with ADHD have a combined type with symptoms of inattention as well as hyperactivity and impulsivity. Girls have a higher prevalence of the inattentive subtype; boys have a higher prevalence of the hyperactive subtype. Although symptoms begin in early childhood, they can diminish between ages 10 and 25 years. Hyperactivity declines more quickly, and impulsivity and inattentiveness often persist into adolescence and adulthood. ADHD may be combined with other psychiatric conditions, such as mood disorder in approximately 20% of patients, conduct disorders in 20%, and oppositional defiant disorder in up to 40%. Up to 25% of children with ADHD seen in a referral clinic have tics or Tourette syndrome. Conversely, well over 50% of individuals with Tourette syndrome also have ADHD.

ADHD has a substantial genetic component. Several candidate genes have been identified but only explain a small part of the variance, although there is strong evidence that ADHD is a disorder involving multiple genes. ADHD is also associated with a variety of genetic disorders including fragile X syndrome, Williams syndrome, Angelman syndrome, XXY syndrome (Klinefelter syndrome), and Turner syndrome. Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) is also strongly associated with ADHD. CNS trauma, CNS infections, prematurity, and a difficult neonatal course with brain injury can also be associated with later ADHD. Metabolic problems such as hyperthyroidism can sometimes cause ADHD. These organic causes of ADHD should be considered in the evaluation of any child presenting with attentional problems, hyperactivity, or impulsivity. Particularly inattention can occur with obstructive sleep apnea. However, in the majority of children who have ADHD, the cause remains unknown.

» Management

The treatment of ADHD varies depending on the complexity of the individual case, including comorbid disorders such as anxiety, sleep disorders, and learning disabilities. It is important to educate the family regarding the symptoms of ADHD and to clarify that it is a neurologic disorder which makes the symptoms difficult for the child to control. Despite that, behavior modification techniques usually help these children and should include structure with consistency in daily routine, positive reinforcement whenever possible, and time-out for negative behaviors. A variety of educational interventions can be helpful, including preferential seating in the classroom, a system of consistent positive behavior reinforcement, consistent structure, the repetition of information when needed, and the use of instruction that incorporates both visual and auditory modalities. Many children with ADHD have significant social difficulties, and social skills training can be helpful. Individual counseling is beneficial in alleviating poor self-esteem, oppositional behavior, and conduct problems.

Stimulant medications (methylphenidate, dextroamphetamine, mixed amphetamine, and lisdexamfetamine) are available in short- and long-acting preparations and in tablet, capsule, liquid, and dermal patch forms. Alternative medications for the treatment of ADHD include extended-release clonidine or guanfacine, which are α_2-adrenergic presynaptic agonists. Atomoxetine, which is a norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor, has also been used as a second-line medication or as an adjunct treatment with the stimulants It should be noted the stimulants are rapidly acting while atomoxetine takes more time for there to be an effect (ie, 2–4 weeks). It is most important that no matter what

Table 3–3. Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

Diagnostic Criteria

A. A persistent pattern of inattention and/or hyperactivity-impulsivity that interferes with functioning or development, as characterized by (1) and/or (2):

1. inattention: Six (or more) of the following symptoms have persisted for at least 6 months to a degree that is inconsistent with developmental level and that negatively impacts directly on social and academic/occupational activities:
   Note: The symptoms are not solely a manifestation of oppositional behavior, defiance, hostility, or failure to understand tasks or instructions. For older adolescents and adults (age ≥ 17), at least five symptoms are required.
   a. Often fails to give close attention to details or makes careless mistakes in schoolwork, at work, or during other activities (eg, overlooks or misses details, work is inaccurate).
   b. Often has difficulty sustaining attention in tasks or play activities (eg, has difficulty remaining focused during lectures, conversations, or lengthy reading).
   c. Often does not seem to listen when spoken to directly (eg, mind seems elsewhere, even in the absence of any obvious distraction).
   d. Often does not follow through on instructions and fails to finish schoolwork, chores, or duties in the workplace (eg, starts tasks but quickly loses focus and is easily sidetracked).
   e. Often has difficulty organizing tasks and activities (eg, difficulty managing sequential tasks; difficulty keeping materials and belongings in order; messy, disorganized work; has poor time management; fails to meet deadlines).
   f. Often avoids, dislikes, or is reluctant to engage in tasks that require sustained mental effort (eg, schoolwork or homework; for older adolescents and adults, preparing reports, completing forms, reviewing lengthy papers).
   g. Often loses things necessary for tasks or activities (eg, school materials, pencils, books, tools, wallets, keys, paperwork, eyeglasses, mobile telephones).
   h. Is often easily distracted by extraneous stimuli (for older adolescents and adults, may include unrelated thoughts).
   i. Is often forgetful in daily activities (eg, doing chores, running errands; for older adolescents and adults, returning calls, paying bills, keeping appointments).
2. Hyperactivity and impulsivity: Six (or more) of the following symptoms have persisted for at least 6 months to a degree that is inconsistent with developmental level and that negatively impacts directly on social and academic/occupational activities:
   Note: The symptoms are not solely a manifestation of oppositional behavior, defiance, hostility, or a failure to understand tasks or instructions. For older adolescents and adults (age ≥ 17), at least five symptoms are required.
   a. Often fidgets with or taps hands or feet or squirms in seat.
   b. Often leaves seat in situations when remaining seated is expected (eg, leaves his or her place in the classroom, in the office or other workplace, or in other situations that require remaining in place).
   c. Often runs about or climbs in situations where it is inappropriate. (Note: In adolescents or adults, may be limited to feeling restless.)
   d. Often unable to play or engage in leisure activities quietly.
   e. Is often "on the go," acting as if "driven by a motor" (eg, is unable to be or uncomfortable being still for extended time, as in restaurants, meetings; may be experienced by others as being restless or difficult to keep up with).
   f. Often talks excessively.
   g. Often blurts out an answer before a question has been completed (eg, completes people's sentences; cannot wait for turn in conversation).
   h. Often has difficulty waiting his or her turn (eg, while waiting in line).
   i. Often interrupts or intrudes on others (eg, butts into conversations, games, or activities; may start using other people's things without asking or receiving permission; for adolescents and adults, may intrude into or take over what others are doing).

B. Several inattentive or hyperactive-impulsive symptoms were present prior to age 12 years.

C. Several inattentive or hyperactive-impulsive symptoms are present in two or more settings (eg, at home, school, or work; with friends or relatives; in other activities).

D. There is clear evidence that the symptoms interfere with, or reduce the quality of, social, academic, or occupational functioning.

E. The symptoms do not occur exclusively during the course of schizophrenia or another psychotic disorder and are not better explained by another mental disorder (eg, mood disorder, anxiety disorder, dissociative disorder, personality disorder, substance intoxication or withdrawal).

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

medication is used, the diagnosis is correct and the correct dosage is prescribed. A recent study has demonstrated that one of the major factors contributing to treatment failure is inadequate dosing or the failure to recognize the presence of comorbid conditions such as learning disability, anxiety disorders, and depression.

Seventy to 90% of children with normal intellectual abilities respond well to stimulant medications. Stimulants enhance both dopamine and norepinephrine neurotransmission, which seems to improve impulse control, attention, and hyperactivity. The main side effects of methylphenidate and dextroamphetamine include appetite suppression

and resulting weight loss, as well as sleep disturbances. Atomoxetine is a selective inhibitor of the presynaptic norepinephrine transporter, which increases norepinephrine and dopamine, and has a similar side-effect profile to the stimulants as well as side effects associated with antidepressants. Some individuals experience increased anxiety, particularly with higher doses of stimulant medications. Children with autism and developmental disabilities may be at increased risk for side effects with stimulants. Stimulants may exacerbate psychotic symptoms. They may also exacerbate motor tics in 30% of patients, but in 10% motor tics may be improved.

Cardiovascular effects of stimulant medications have undergone significant scrutiny over the past several years and do not appear to increase the risk of sudden death over the risk in the general population, especially in children without any underlying risk. Prior to beginning a stimulant medication, it is recommended that clinicians obtain any history of syncope, palpitations, chest pain, and family history of sudden death prior to age 30 that may predispose a child to sudden death. Stimulant products and atomoxetine should generally not be used in patients with serious heart problems or in those for whom an increase in BP or HR would be problematic. Consultation with the child's cardiologist would be indicated prior to making a decision about stimulant use. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) includes this statement in the labeling of stimulants: "sudden death has been reported in association with CNS stimulant treatment at usual doses in children and adolescents with structural cardiac abnormalities or other serious heart problems." The FDA has recommended that patients treated with ADHD medications should be monitored for changes in HR or BP.

Attention Deficit Disorder Association: http://www.add.org.
ADHD CDC website: http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/adhd/guidelines.html
Children and Adults With Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder: http://www.chadd.org.
The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition, American Psychiatric Association, 2013
FDA Drug Safety Communication: http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm277770.htm.
Molina BS et al; MTA Cooperative Group: Adolescent Substance Use in the Multimodal Treatment Study of Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD) (MTA) as a Function of Childhood ADHD, Random Assignment to Childhood Treatments, and Subsequent Medication. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry. 2013;52(3):250–263 [PMID: 23452682].
Molina BS et al; MTA Cooperative Group: The MTA at 8 years: prospective follow-up of children treated for combined-type ADHD in a multisite study. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry. 2009 May;48(5):484–500 [PMID: 19318991].
Questions and Answers: Safety of Pills for Treating ADHD: http://www.aap.org/healthtopics/adhd.cfm.
Reiff MI (ed): ADHD: What Every Parent Needs to Know. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2011.
http://www2.aap.org/pubserv/adhd2/1sted.html
Wolraich M et al; Subcommittee on Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder; Steering Committee on Quality Improvement and Management: ADHD: clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 2011;128(5):1007–1022 [Review] [PMID: 22003063].

AUTISM SPECTRUM DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Two core deficits:
- Persistent deficits in social communication and social interaction across multiple contexts.
- Restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior, interests, or activities.

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) is a neurologic disorder characterized by (1) persistent deficits in social communication and social interaction across multiple contexts and (2) restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior, interests, or activities. Autism was grouped under the pervasive developmental disorders in the DSM-IV with Asperger disorder, pervasive developmental disorder not otherwise specified, childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD), and Rett syndrome. Asperger disorder was characterized by impairment in social interaction and restricted interest/repetitive behaviors. Individuals with Asperger disorder could not have significant delays in cognitive, language, or self-help skills. Pervasive developmental disorder not otherwise specified was characterized by impairment in reciprocal social interaction along with impairment in communication skills, or restricted interest or repetitive behaviors. Children with pervasive developmental disorder not otherwise specified did not meet full criteria for autism. DSM-5 combines autism, PDD, and Asperger syndrome into ASDs. Table 3–4 lists the DSM-5 criteria for diagnosis of an ASD. Severity is now specified as level I—"requiring support," level II—"requiring substantial support," and level III—"requiring very substantial support."

ASDs are relatively common, occurring in approximately 1 in 68 children. Males are overrepresented by about 5:1. No known etiology can be found in 80%–90% of cases. A genetic syndrome such as fragile X syndrome or chromosome 15q duplication is found in 10%–20% of cases. This percentage may increase with newer techniques for diagnosing copy number variation (microarray) and mutations

Table 3–4. Autism spectrum disorder.

Diagnostic Criteria

A. Persistent deficits in social communication and social interaction across multiple contexts, as manifested by the following, currently or by history (examples are illustrative, not exhaustive; see text):
   1. Deficits in social-emotional reciprocity, ranging, eg, from abnormal social approach and failure of normal back-and-forth conversation; to reduced sharing of interests, emotions, or affect; to failure to initiate or respond to social interactions.
   2. Deficits in nonverbal communicative behaviors used for social interaction, ranging, eg, from poorly integrated verbal and nonverbal communication; to abnormalities in eye contact and body language or deficits in understanding and use of gestures; to a total lack of facial expressions and nonverbal communication.
   3. Deficits in developing, maintaining, and understanding relationships, ranging, eg, from difficulties adjusting behavior to suit various social contexts; to difficulties in sharing imaginative play or in making friends; to absence of interest in peers.

Specify current severity:
Severity is based on social communication impairments and restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior.

B. Restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior, interests, or activities, as manifested by at least two of the following, currently or by history (examples are illustrative, not exhaustive; see text):
   1. Stereotyped or repetitive motor movements, use of objects, or speech (eg, simple motor stereotypies, lining up toys or flipping objects, echolalia, idiosyncratic phrases).
   2. Insistence on sameness, inflexible adherence to routines, or ritualized patterns of verbal or nonverbal behavior (eg, extreme distress at small changes, difficulties with transitions, rigid thinking patterns, greeting rituals, need to take same route or eat same food every day).
   3. Highly restricted, fixated interests that are abnormal in intensity or focus (eg, strong attachment to or preoccupation with unusual objects, excessively circumscribed or perseverative interests).
   4. Hyper- or hyporeactivity to sensory input or unusual interest in sensory aspects of the environment (eg, apparent indifference to pain/temperature, adverse response to specific sounds or textures, excessive smelling or touching of objects, visual fascination with lights or movement).

Specify current severity:
Severity is based on social communication impairments and restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior.

C. Symptoms must be present in the early developmental period (but may not become fully manifest until social demands exceed limited capacities, or may be masked by learned strategies in later life).

D. Symptoms cause clinically significant impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of current functioning.

E. These disturbances are not better explained by intellectual disability (intellectual developmental disorder) or global developmental delay Intellectual disability and autism spectrum disorder frequently co-occur; to make comorbid diagnoses of autism spectrum disorder and intellectual disability, social communication should be below that expected for general developmental level.

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

(whole exome sequencing). There is a strong familial component. Parents of one child with autism of unknown etiology have a 2%–20% chance of having a second child with autism. The concordance rate among monozygotic twins is high but not absolute, and there is an increased incidence of speech, language, reading, attention, and affective disorders in family members of children with autism.

» Evaluation & Management

Children with ASD are often not diagnosed until age 3–4 years, when their disturbances in reciprocal social interaction and communication become more apparent. However, impairments in communication and behavior can often be recognized in the first 12–18 months of life. The most common early characteristics are a consistent failure to orient to one's name, regard people directly, use gestures, and to develop speech. Even if one of these skills is present, it is often diminished in frequency, inconsistent, or fleeting. Sharing affect or enjoyment is an important precursor to social interaction. By 16–18 months a child should have "joint attention," which occurs when two people attend to the same thing at the same time. This is usually accomplished by shifting eye gaze, pointing, or saying "look." Toddlers should regularly point to get needs met ("I want that") and to show ("look at that") by 1 year of age. By 18 months a toddler should be able to follow a point, imitate others, and engage in functional play (using toys in the way that they are intended to be used, such as rolling a car, throwing a ball, or feeding a baby doll). Restricted interests and repetitive behaviors sometimes do not emerge until after age 2, but usually are present before age 2.

There is mounting evidence that a diagnosis of ASD can be made reliably by age 2 years and is stable over time. Because there is evidence that early intervention is particularly important for children with autism, great interest has arisen in developing a screening instrument that can be used in very young children. The Modified Checklist for

Autism in Toddlers—Revised with Follow up (M-CHAT-R/F) is designed for children 16–30 months of age. It is a parent report measure with 20 yes/no questions. There are clinician-administered follow-up questions for those who screen positive. Just under 50% of children who screen positive initially (≥ 3) and after follow-up (≥ 2) will go on to be diagnosed with an ASD; however, 95% will have some type of developmental concern. Fewer children screen positive on the initial parent completed screen with the revised version of the M-CHAT. It can be downloaded at https://m-chat.org/about.php.

An autism-specific screen is recommended at 18 and 24–30 months. The second screen is recommended because some of the symptoms may be more obvious in an older child and because about 30% of children with ASDs experience a regression or plateau in skills between 12 and 24 months. Screening at 18 months could miss many of these children.

When behaviors raising concern for autism are noted, the child should be referred to a team of specialists experienced in the assessment of ASDs. At the same time, the child should also be referred to a local early intervention program and to a speech and language pathologist to begin therapy as soon as possible. All children with ASD should have a formal audiology evaluation. Laboratory tests such as an array comparative genomic hybridization (aCGH) and a DNA for fragile X syndrome should be considered. Metabolic screening, lead level, and thyroid studies may also be done if indicated by findings in the history and physical examination. A Wood lamp examination for tuberous sclerosis is also recommended. Neuroimaging is not routinely indicated even in the presence of mild/relative macrocephaly because children with autism often have relatively large heads. It should be done if microcephaly or focal neurologic signs are noted.

Approximately 30% of children with autism demonstrate a plateau or loss of skills (usually only language and/or social skills) between 12 and 24 months of age. This regression/plateau in skills has been documented in prospective longitudinal studies of infant siblings of children with ASD. The loss is often gradual. It can co-occur with atypical development and can be fluctuating. It usually occurs before the child attains a vocabulary of 10 words. If a child presents with regression, he or she should be referred to a child neurologist. An overnight EEG should be considered when there is a history of regression to rule out electrical status epilepticus in sleep. Metabolic testing and a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the brain should also be considered when there is a history of regression.

Early, intensive behavioral intervention for children with ASD is essential. The National Research Council reviewed the available literature in 2001 and recommended entry into treatment as soon as autism is suspected; 25 hours of intervention per week; parent training and involvement in treatment; ongoing assessment, program evaluation, and programmatic adjustment as needed; and intervention that focuses on communication, social interaction, and play skills that can be generalized in a naturalistic setting. Functional use of language leads to better behavioral and medical outcomes. Early detection and early intervention have a positive impact on children with ASDs. The National Research Council states: "A substantial subset of children with autistic spectrum disorders are able to make marked progress during the period that they receive intensive early intervention, and nearly all children with autistic spectrum disorders appear to show some benefit. Children with ASD who begin treatment before age 3–3½ years make the greatest gains with intervention." Naturalistic training models for children with autism implemented before age 3 result in 90% of children attaining functional use of language compared to 20% who begin intervention after age 5. The Early Start Denver Model (ESDM) is one model for early intervention. In a recent study, 48 children 18–30 months of age were randomly assigned to ESDM for 20 h/wk for 2 years or community intervention. The group that received ESDM improved by a mean of 17.6 standard points on developmental testing (Mullen) versus 7.0 points in the control group. Adaptive function was maintained in the ESDM group and decreased in the control group. There are many models for this type of intervention and much variability in what is available in different areas of the country. Families should be encouraged to find a model that best suits the needs of the child and the family.

One role of the primary care provider is to ensure that medical concerns such as sleep disorders, seizures, or gastrointestinal symptoms are addressed. Any worsening of behavior in a child with autism may be secondary to unrecognized medical issues such as pain from a dental abscess or esophagitis. A practice pathway for the identification, evaluation, and management of insomnia in children and adolescents with ASDs has been developed. The pathway stresses the importance of screening for sleep issues in children with ASD and interviewing around comorbid medical conditions that may impact sleep. Individualizing behavioral/sleep hygiene for the child with ASD is also very important. In addition, psychiatric comorbidities such as anxiety and ADHD are common in children with ASD and should be addressed by the PCP or a specialist. Psychopharmacologic management may be needed to address issues with attention, hyperactivity, anxiety, aggression, and other behaviors that have a significant impact on daily function. Multiple recent reviews of psychopharmacologic treatments are available. A clinical practice pathway for evaluation and medication choice for ADHD disorder symptoms in children with ASD has also been developed. Children with ASD are less likely to respond to stimulants than children with typical development and are more likely to have side effects. Smaller doses

and nonstimulants such as guanfacine should be considered especially in children younger than 5 years, children with IQ less than 50, severe anxiety, unstable mood, or low weight/poor appetite. The primary care provider also provides a medical home for children with ASD. This requires coordination of care.

Many complementary and alternative (CAM) treatments for autism have been proposed. As many as 33% of families use special diets and 54% of families use supplements for their child with ASD based on data from the Interactive Autism Network. The review of CAM prepared by the AAP Task Force on Complementary and Alternative Medicine and the Provisional Section on Complementary, Holistic, and Integrative Medicine is particularly valuable.

AAP Autism Tool Kit. Autism: caring for children with autism spectrum disorders: a resource toolkit for clinicians, 2012, www.aap.org/autism.

http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/autism/data.html

Autism Speaks publishes many toolkits for families: http://www.autismspeaks.org.

Buie T et al: Recommendations for evaluation and treatment of common gastrointestinal problems in children with ASDs. Pediatrics 2010 Jan;125(Suppl 1):S19–S29 [PMID: 20048084].

Doyle CA, McDougle CJ: Pharmacotherapy to control behavioral symptoms in children with autism. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2012Aug;13(11):1615–1629.doi:10.1517/14656566.2012.674110. [Review] [Epub 2012 May 3] [PMID: 22550944].

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition, American Psychiatric Association, 2013

DSM5: www.dsm5.org.

Golnik A, Scal P, Wey A, Gaillard P: Autism-specific primary care medical home intervention. J Autism Dev Disord 2012;42(6): 1087–1093 [PMID: 21853373].

FDA Center for Safety and Applied Nutrition: http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/%7Edms/ds-warn.html.

First Signs (educational site on autism): http://firstsigns.org.

Hanen Centre (information on family-focused early intervention programs): http://www.hanen.org.

Johnson CP, Myers SM; American Academy of Pediatrics Council on Children with Disabilities: Identification and evaluation of children with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 2007;120(5): 1183–1215 [PMID: 17967920].

Kemper KJ, Vohra S, Walls R; Task Force on Complementary and Alternative Medicine; Provisional Section on Complementary, Holistic, and Integrative Medicine: The use of complementary and alternative medicine in pediatrics. Pediatrics 2008;122;1374–1386 [PMID: 19047261].

Learn the Signs, Act Early (website with resources and free handouts for families): www.cdc.gov/actearly.

Mahajan R et al; Autism Speaks Autism Treatment Network Psychopharmacology Committee: Clinical practice pathways for evaluation and medication choice for attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder symptoms in autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 2012 Nov;130(Suppl 2):S125–S138. doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-0900J [Review] [PMID: 23118243].

Malow BA et al; Sleep Committee of the Autism Treatment Network. A practice pathway for the identification, evaluation, and management of insomnia in children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 2012 Nov;130(Suppl 2): S106–S124. doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-0900I [Review] [PMID: 23118242].

M-CHAT-RF/Validation: http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/early/2013/12/18/peds.2013-1813.full.pdf+html

Myers SM, Johnson CP; American Academy of Pediatrics Council on Children With Disabilities: Management of children with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 2007;120(5):1162–1182 [PMID: 17967921].

Reynolds AM, Malow BA. Sleep and autism spectrum disorders. Pediatr Clin North Am. 2011 Jun;58(3):685–698. doi: 10.1016/j.pcl.2011.03.009. Review. PMID: 21600349

The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) was established in 1998. NCCAM sponsors and conducts research using scientific methods and advanced technologies: http://nccam.nih.gov/.

INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

The field of developmental disabilities has been evolving and redefining the constructs of disability and intellectual disability (ID) and using new terms to reflect that evolution. The term mental retardation is considered pejorative, demeaning, and dehumanizing.

DSM-5 uses the diagnosis intellectual disability (ID; intellectual developmental disorder) and emphasizes the need for evaluation of adaptive function in addition to cognitive testing (IQ). The term disability is used by professionals and advocacy groups. The International Classification of Diseases (ICD) will release ICD-11 in 2017 and will use the word disorder. Disability will be used in the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF).

Recently, a rethinking of the construct of disability has emerged that shifts the focus from limitations in intellectual functioning and adaptive capability (a person-centered trait) to a human phenomenon with its source in biologic or social factors and contexts. The current view is a social-ecological conception of disability that articulates the role of disease or disorder leading to impairments in structure and function, limitations in activities, and restriction in participation in personal and environmental interactions. The term intellectual disability, which is consistent with this broader view, is increasingly being used and reflects an appreciation of the humanness and potential of the individual. The diagnostic criteria currently remain the same; however, the construct and context has changed.

Having noted this, it is important to acknowledge that significant delays in the development of language, motor skills, attention, abstract reasoning, visual-spatial skills, and academic or vocational achievements are associated with ID. Deficits on standardized testing in cognitive and adaptive functioning greater than two standard deviations below the mean for the population are considered to fall in the range of ID. The most common way of reporting the results of these

tests is by using an intelligence quotient. The intelligence quotient is a statistically derived number reflecting the ratio of age-appropriate cognitive function and the child's actual level of cognitive function. A number of accepted standardized measurement tools, such as the Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, fourth edition, can be used to assess these capacities. To receive a diagnosis of ID, a child must not only have an intelligence quotient of less than 70 but must also demonstrate adaptive skills more than two standard deviations below the mean. Adaptive function refers to the child's ability to function in his or her environment and can be measured by a parent or teacher interview using an instrument such as the Vineland Adaptive Behavior Scales. Cognitive function tends to predict academic success and adaptive function tends to predict level of independence in daily living skills. Levels of severity are based on adaptive function which determines the level of supports needed.

The prevalence of ID is approximately 1%–3% in the general population and may vary by age. Mild levels of ID are more common and more likely to have a sociocultural cause than are more severe levels. Poverty, deprivation, or a lack of exposure to a stimulating environment can contribute to developmental delays and poor performance on standardized tests. In addition, physical problems such as hearing loss, blindness, and brain trauma can lead to developmental delays and low IQ test scores. Great strides in our identification of genetic causes of ID continue to be made as technology improves.

» Evaluation

Children who present with developmental delays should be evaluated by a team of professionals as described at the beginning of this section. For children 0–3½ years of age, the Bayley Scales of Infant Development, third edition, is a well-standardized developmental test. For children older than 3 years, standardized cognitive testing—such as the Wechsler Preschool and Primary Scale of Intelligence, fourth edition; the Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, fourth edition; the Stanford-Binet V; or the Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children, second edition—should be administered to assess cognitive function over a broad range of abilities, including verbal and nonverbal scales. For the nonverbal patient, a scale such as the Leiter, third edition will assess skills that do not involve language.

A full psychological evaluation in school-aged children should include an emotional assessment if psychiatric or emotional problems are suspected. Such problems are common in children with developmental delays or ID. A hearing test and a vision screening or ophthalmologic evaluation are important to determine whether hearing and vision are normal.

Diagnostic testing should be carried out in an effort to find the cause of ID. Referral to a clinical geneticist should be considered. Children with ID will have an abnormal microarray about 6% of the time. If the child has "syndromic" features, the microarray will be abnormal about 10% of the time. DNA for fragile X syndrome will be positive in 2%–3% of children with ID. Structural abnormalities of the brain can occur in individuals with ID. Neuroimaging should be considered in patients with microcephaly, macrocephaly, seizures, loss of psychomotor skills, or specific neurologic signs such as spasticity, dystonia, ataxia, or abnormal reflexes.

Metabolic screening has a relatively low yield (0%–5%) in children who present with developmental delay or ID. Many patients with metabolic disorders such as hypothyroidism, phenylketonuria, and galactosemia are identified through newborn screening. Most patients with metabolic problems will present with specific indications for more focused testing, such as failure to thrive, recurrent unexplained illnesses, plateauing or loss of developmental skills, coarse facial features, cataracts, recurrent coma, abnormal sexual differentiation, arachnodactyly, hepatosplenomegaly, deafness, structural hair abnormalities, muscle tone changes, and skin abnormalities. Thyroid function studies should be carried out in any patient who exhibits clinical features associated with hypothyroidism. Serum amino acids, urine organic acid, and mucopolysaccharide screens should be considered in children with developmental delays and a suggestive history. Preliminary laboratory findings such as lactic acidosis, hyperuricemia, hyperammonemia, or a low or high cholesterol level require additional metabolic workup.

Serial follow-up of patients is important as the physical and behavioral phenotype changes over time and diagnostic testing improves with time. Although cytogenetic testing may have been negative 10 years earlier, advances in high-resolution techniques may now reveal an abnormality that was not identified previously. A stepwise approach to diagnostic testing may also be more cost-effective, so that the test most likely to be positive is done first.

» Management

Once a diagnosis of ID is made, treatment should include a combination of individual therapies, such as speech and language therapy, occupational therapy or physical therapy, special education support, behavioral therapy or counseling, and medical intervention, which may include psychopharmacology. To illustrate how these interventions work together, two disorders are described in detail in the next section.

Shapiro BK, Accardo PQ: Neurogenetic Syndromes: Behavioral Issues and Their Treatment. Baltimore, MD: Paul H Brookes; 2010.

The Arc of the United States (grassroots advocacy organization for people with disabilities): http://www.thearc.org.

SPECIFIC FORMS OF INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY & ASSOCIATED TREATMENT ISSUES

1. Fragile X Syndrome

The most common inherited cause of intellectual disability (ID) is fragile X syndrome, which is caused by a trinucleotide expansion within the fragile X mental retardation I (FMR1) gene (see Chapter 37). The full mutation is associated with methylation of the gene, which turns off transcription, resulting in a deficiency in the FMR1 protein. This protein regulates the metabotropic glutamate receptor 5. Fragile X syndrome includes a broad range of symptoms. Patients can present with shyness, social anxiety, and learning problems, or they can present with ID. Girls are usually less affected by the syndrome because they have a second X chromosome that produces FMR1 protein. Approximately 30% of girls with the full mutation have cognitive deficits and a greater proportion have ADHD, anxiety, and shyness. Most males with the syndrome have ID and many have features of autism, such as poor eye contact, hand flapping, hand biting, and tactile defensiveness. About 20% of males with fragile X syndrome meet the criteria for autism.

Children with fragile X syndrome usually present with cognitive and language delays, hyperactivity, and difficult behavior in early childhood. Although prominent ears and hyperextensible finger joints are common, approximately 30% of children with the syndrome may not have these features. The diagnosis must be suspected because of behavioral problems and developmental delays alone. As the boys move into puberty, macroorchidism develops with an average adult volume of 50 mL or twice the normal volume. The child's face may become longer during puberty.

» Management

A variety of therapies are helpful for individuals with fragile X syndrome. Speech and language therapy can decrease oral hypersensitivity, improve articulation, enhance verbal output and comprehension, and stimulate abstract reasoning skills. Because approximately 10% of boys with the syndrome will be nonverbal at age 5 years, the use of augmentative communication techniques may be helpful. Tantrums and hyperarousal to stimuli, along with hyperactivity, are common. Occupational therapy can be helpful in providing techniques for calming hyperarousal to stimuli and in improving the child's fine and gross motor coordination and motor planning. If the behavioral problems are severe, it can be helpful to involve a behavioral psychologist who emphasizes positive reinforcement, time-outs, consistency in routine, and the use of both auditory and visual modalities, such as a picture schedule, to help with transitions and new situations.

Psychopharmacology can also be useful to treat ADHD, aggression, anxiety, or severe mood instability. Clonidine or guanfacine may be helpful in low doses to treat hyperarousal, tantrums, or severe hyperactivity. Stimulant medications such as methylphenidate and dextroamphetamine are usually beneficial by age 5 years and occasionally earlier. Relatively low doses are used because irritability is often a problem with higher doses.

Anxiety may also be a significant problem and the use of a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) such as fluoxetine is often helpful. SSRIs may also decrease aggression or moodiness, although in approximately 25% of cases, an increase in agitation or activation may occur. Aggression may become a significant problem in childhood or adolescence for individuals with fragile X syndrome. Counseling can often be helpful, although medication may be needed. Clonidine, guanfacine, and an SSRI may decrease aggression, although sometimes an atypical antipsychotic may be needed.

Clinical trials have begun in adults and children with fragile X syndrome to evaluate metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 antagonists and γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) agonists that have shown promising results in mouse models of fragile X syndrome.

An important component of management is genetic counseling. Parents should meet with a genetic counselor after the diagnosis of fragile X syndrome is made because there is a high risk that other family members are carriers or may be affected by the syndrome. A detailed family history is essential. Female carriers have a 50% risk of having a child with the fragile X mutation. Male carriers are at risk for developing FXTAS, a neurodegenerative disorder, as they age.

It is also helpful to refer a newly diagnosed family to a parent support group. Educational materials and parent support information may be obtained on the National Fragile X Foundation website.

Fragile X Research Foundation: http://www.fraxa.org.
Hagerman RJ et al: Advances in the treatment of fragile X syndrome. Pediatrics 2009;123(1):378–390 [PMID: 19117905].
Hersh JH, Saul RA; Committee on Genetics. Health supervision for children with fragile X syndrome. Pediatrics. 2011;127(5): 994–1006 [PMID: 21518720].
National Fragile X Foundation: http://www.FragileX.org.

2. Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders

Alcohol exposure in utero is associated with a broad spectrum of developmental problems, ranging from learning disabilities to severe ID. Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASD) is an umbrella term describing the range of effects that can occur in an individual exposed to alcohol prenatally.

A. Fetal Alcohol Syndrome

Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) refers to the full syndrome associated with prenatal alcohol exposure. The diagnosis of FAS requires the presence of a characteristic pattern of facial abnormalities (short palpebral fissures, thin upper lip, and indistinct or smooth philtrum, for which there are standard measurements), growth deficiency, and evidence of CNS damage and neurodevelopmental abnormalities. This diagnosis can be made with or without confirmed maternal prenatal use of alcohol.

B. Alcohol-Related Neurodevelopmental Disorder

Alcohol-related neurodevelopmental disorder does not require the presence of dysmorphic facial features, but it does require the presence of neurodevelopmental abnormalities or evidence of a pattern of behavioral or cognitive abnormalities. These abnormalities may include learning disabilities; poor impulse control; and problems in memory, attention, and judgment. These characteristics must be inconsistent with the child's developmental level and cannot be explained by familial background or environment. This diagnosis requires confirmation of prenatal alcohol exposure.

C. Alcohol-Related Birth Defects

The diagnosis of alcohol-related birth defects requires a history of prenatal alcohol exposure, at least two characteristic facial features, and the presence of one or more congenital anomalies, including malformations and dysplasias in cardiac, skeletal, renal, ocular, or auditory areas (ie, sensorineural hearing loss) or two or more minor anomalies (ie, hypoplastic nails, clinodactyly).

Animal and human data support these diagnostic categories. It is not known exactly how many people have an FASD. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) studies have shown that 0.2–1.5 cases of FAS occur for 1000 births. Other studies have estimated the rate of FAS at 0.5–2.0 per 1000 live births. The prevalence of alcohol-related neurodevelopmental disorder is unclear but not uncommon. Thus, the physician should always ask about alcohol (and other drug) intake during pregnancy. This is particularly true when evaluating a child presenting with developmental delays. The exact amount of alcohol consumption that leads to teratogenesis remains unclear. Thus, it is best to say that in order to avoid an FASD, abstention from all alcoholic drinks during pregnancy is essential.

» Evaluation & Management

Essential to the evaluation of a child with FASD, or one suspected of having FASD, is an assessment by a multidisciplinary team. The evaluation should include examination of growth, facial and other dysmorphic features, developmental or cognitive abilities, behavioral function, and the documentation of prenatal alcohol exposure.

Individuals with FASD typically have significant difficulty with complex cognitive tasks and executive function (planning, conceptual set shifting, affective set shifting, response inhibition, and fluency). They process information slowly. They may do well with simple tasks but have difficulty with more complex tasks. They have difficulty with attention and short-term memory. They are also at risk for social difficulties and mood disorders. Functional classroom assessments can be a very helpful part of a complete evaluation. Structure is very important for individuals with FASD. Types of structure that may be helpful are visual structure (color code each content area), environmental structure (keep work area uncluttered, avoid decorations), and task structure (clear beginning, middle, and end). Psychopharmacologic intervention may be needed to address issues such as attention and mood.

FASD: http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/fasd/facts.html
FASD Center for Excellence: http://www.fasdcenter.samhsa.gov/
National Organization on Fetal Alcohol Syndrome: http://www.nofas.org.
Paley B, O'Connor MJ. Intervention for individuals with fetal alcohol spectrum disorders: treatment approaches and case management. Dev Disabil Res Rev. 2009;15(3):258–267 [PMID: 19731383].

REFERENCES

Print Resources

Carey WB, Crocker AC, Coleman WL, Elias ER, Feldman HM (eds): Developmental Behavioral Pediatrics, 4th ed, Elsevier (Saunders) 2009.
The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition, American Psychiatric Association, 2013.
Dixon SD, Stein MT (eds): Encounters with Children; Pediatric Behavior and Development 4th ed. Mosby (Elsevier) 2006.
Parker S, Zuckerman B (eds): Behavioral and Developmental Pediatrics: A Handbook for Primary Care. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.
Voigt RG, Macias MM, Myers SM, eds. American Academy of Pediatrics Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2010.
Wolraich ML (ed): Disorders of Development and Learning: A Practical Guide to Assessment and Management, 3rd ed. BC Decker; 2003.
Wolraich ML et al: Developmental-Behavioral Pediatrics: Evidence and Practice. Mosby Elsevier; 2008.

Web Resources

The Arc of the United States (grassroots advocacy organization for people with disabilities): http://www.thearc.org.
American With Disabilities Act Information: National Access for Public Schools Project: http://www.adaptenv.org.
The American Psychiatric Association (APA) has proposed new diagnostic criteria in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5) which were released in May 2013: www.psych.org, www.dsm5.org.
Family Voices (website devoted to children and youth with special health care needs): http://www.familyvoices.org.
Hanen Centre (information on family-focused early intervention programs): http://www.hanen.org.
National Association of Developmental Disabilities Councils: http://www.naddc.org.
National Dissemination Center for Children with Disabilities: http://www.nichcy.org.
Parent Training and Information Centers: Alliance Coordinating Office: http://www.taalliance.org.
Title V Program Information: Institute for Child Health Policy: http://www.ichp.edu.

4

Adolescence

Molly J. Richards, MD
David W. Kaplan, MD, MPH
Amy E. Sass, MD, MPH

Adolescence is a period of rapid physical, emotional, cognitive, and social development. Generally, adolescence begins at age 11–12 years and ends between ages 18 and 21. Most teenagers complete puberty by age 16–18 years; in Western society; however, for educational and cultural reasons, the adolescent period is prolonged to allow for further psychosocial development before the individual assumes adult status. The developmental passage from childhood to adulthood includes the following steps: (1) completing puberty and somatic growth; (2) developing socially, emotionally, and cognitively, and moving from concrete to abstract thinking; (3) establishing an independent identity and separating from the family; and (4) preparing for a career or vocation.

DEMOGRAPHY

In the United States in 2010, there were 22.0 million adolescents aged 15–19 years and 21.5 million aged 20–24 years. Adolescents and young adults (ages 15–24 years) constitute 14% of the US population. Between 1990 and 2006, the population 10–24 years of age increased from 40.1 to 63.3 million. In the next several decades, the proportion of racial and ethnic minority adolescents is expected to increase. It is projected that by 2040 the percentage of non-Hispanic whites will drop below 50% of the total adolescent population. Hispanics are becoming the second most populous racial and ethnic group of adolescents.

MORTALITY DATA

In 2010, there were 10,887 deaths among adolescents aged 15–19 years, representing a rate of 49.4 per 100,000. Cultural and environmental rather than organic factors pose the greatest threats to life. The three leading causes of death in adolescents aged 15–19 years were unintentional injury (41.7%), homicide (16.8%), and suicide (15.2%). The primary cause of unintentional injury death was motor vehicle crashes (63.8%), followed by poisoning (16.4%), which includes prescription drug overdoses and is the only unintentional injury mechanism to increase over the past decade. Homicide deaths were predominantly attributable to firearms (84.8%), while both firearms and suffocation were leading mechanisms of suicide death (40.3% and 45.3%, respectively). The mortality rate of adolescent males aged 15–19 was more than twice that of females (69.6 vs 28.1 per 100,000, respectively), largely due to higher rates of unintentional injury, homicide, and suicide death among males.

The rate of adolescent morality declined by 7.7% from the previous year and 26.4% from 2000. This decline may be largely attributable to decreases in unintentional injury. Motor vehicle crashes, the leading cause of death among teenagers in the United States, account for more than one-quarter of deaths in this age group. In 2010, approximately 2700 teenagers in the United States aged 16–19 were killed and almost 282,000 were treated and released from emergency departments (EDs) for injuries suffered in motor-vehicle crashes. Research suggests that the most comprehensive graduated drivers licensing (GDL) programs, designed to delay full licensure while allowing teenagers to get their initial driving experience under low-risk conditions, are associated with reductions of 38% and 40% in fatal and injury crashes, respectively, among 16-year-old drivers.

MORBIDITY DATA

Demographic and economic changes in the American family have had a profound effect on children and adolescents. The percentage of children and adolescents living in two-parent households has decreased significantly, from 79% in 1980 to 66% in 2009 (range: 80% in Asians, 60% in Hispanics, 33% in blacks). In 2010, more than 16 million children younger than 18 years lived in households with incomes below 100% of the U.S. Census Bureau's poverty threshold, representing 22.0% of all children in the United States and an increase from 20.7% in 2009. Poverty affects many aspects of a child's

life, including living conditions, nutrition, and access to health care, and significant racial/ethnic disparities exist. Nearly 40% of non-Hispanic black children lived in households with incomes below 100% of the poverty threshold, as did approximately 35% of non-Hispanic American Indian/Alaska Native children and Hispanic children, compared to 12.4% of non-Hispanic white children. Single-parent families are particularly vulnerable to poverty. In 2010, 46.9% of children living in a female-headed household experienced poverty, as did 28.1% of children living in a male-headed household, compared with 11.6% of children living in married-couple families.

The major causes of morbidity during adolescence are psychosocial and often correlate with poverty: unintended pregnancy, sexually transmitted infection (STI), substance abuse, smoking, dropping out of school, depression, running away from home, physical violence, and juvenile delinquency. High-risk behavior in one area is frequently associated with problems in another (Figure 4–1). For example, teenagers who live in a dysfunctional family (eg, drinking, physical, or sexual abuse) are much more likely than other teenagers to be depressed. A depressed teenager is at greater risk for drug and alcohol abuse, academic failure, inappropriate sexual activity, STIs, pregnancy, and suicide.

Early identification of the teenager at risk for these problems is important in preventing immediate complications and future associated morbidities.

D'Angelo LJ et al: Adolescents and driving: a position paper of the Society for Adolescent Health and Medicine. J Adolesc Health 2010;47(2):212–214 [PMID: 20638018].

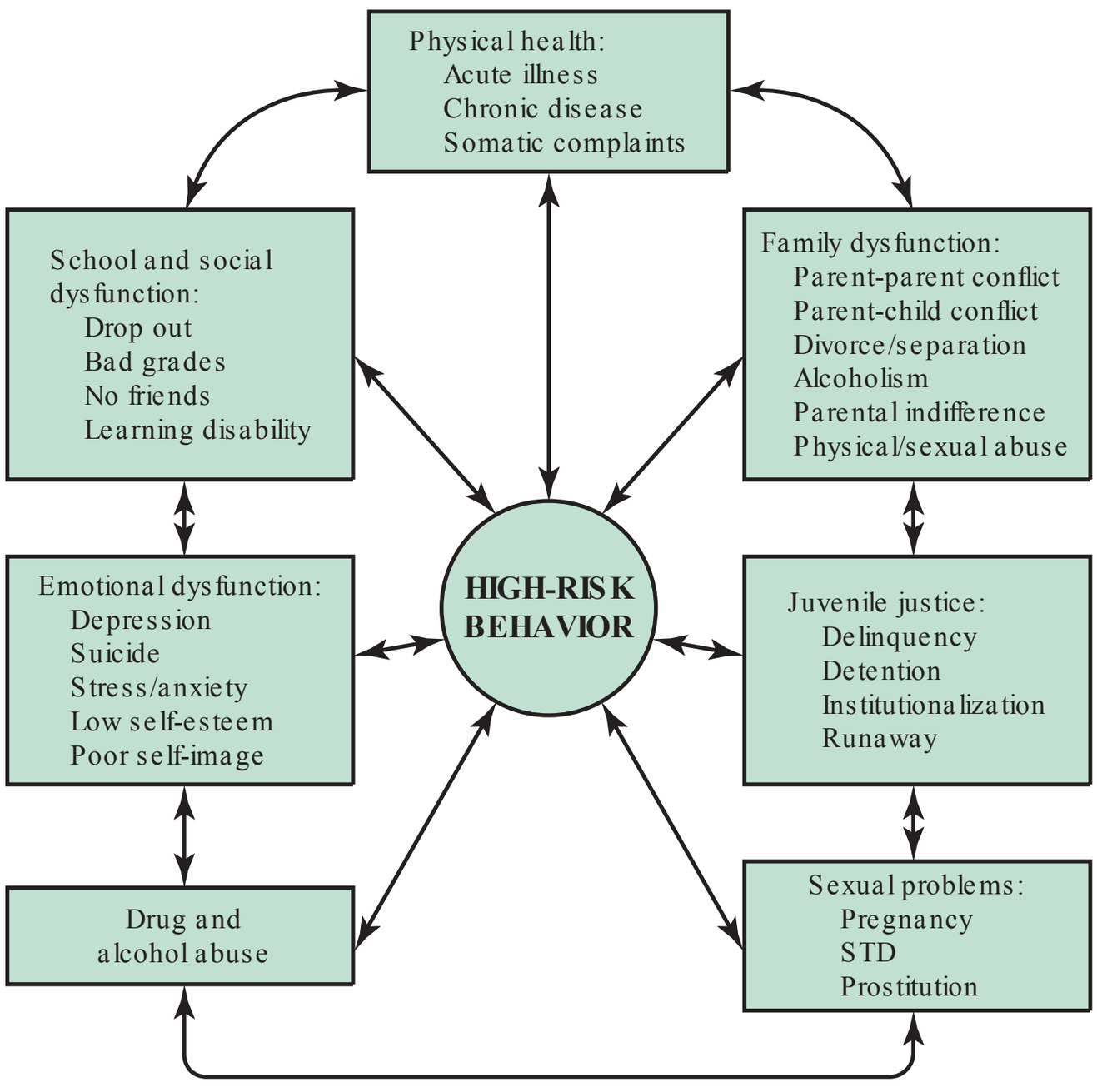
Teen Drivers: Fact Sheet: http://www.cdc.gov/motorvehiclesafety/teen_drivers/teendrivers_factsheet.html.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Maternal and Child Health Bureau: Child Health USA 2012. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2013.

Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance System (YRBSS): http://www.cdc.gov/HealthyYouth/yrbs/index.htm.

DELIVERY OF HEALTH SERVICES

How, where, why, and when adolescents seek health care depends on their ability to pay, distance to health care facilities, availability of transportation, accessibility of services, time away from school, and privacy. Many common teenage health issues, such as unintended pregnancy, contraception, STI, substance abuse, depression, and other emotional problems have moral, ethical, and legal implications. Teenagers are often reluctant to confide in their parents for fear of punishment or disapproval. Recognizing this reality, health care providers have established specialized programs such as adolescent clinics, family planning, and STI clinics that welcome adolescents, drop-in centers, and hotlines. Establishing a



▲**Figure 4–1.** Interrelation of high-risk adolescent behavior.

trusting and confidential relationship with adolescents is an important part of meeting their health care needs. Patients who sense that the provider will inform their parents about a confidential problem may lie or fail to disclose information essential for proper diagnosis and treatment.

GUIDELINES FOR ADOLESCENT PREVENTIVE SERVICES

The American Medical Association Guidelines for Adolescent Preventive Services (GAPS) and the American Academy of Pediatrics' Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents cover health screening and guidance, immunization, and health care delivery. The goals of these guidelines are to (1) deter adolescents from participating in behaviors that jeopardize health; (2) detect physical, emotional, and behavioral problems early and intervene promptly; (3) reinforce and encourage behaviors that promote healthful living; and (4) provide immunization against infectious diseases. The guidelines recommend that adolescents between ages 11 and 21 years have annual routine health visits. Health services should be developmentally appropriate and culturally sensitive. Confidentiality between patient and provider should be ensured.

RELATING TO THE ADOLESCENT PATIENT

Adolescence is one of the physically healthiest periods in life. The challenge of caring for most adolescents lies not in managing complex organic disease, but in accommodating the cognitive, emotional, and psychosocial changes that influence health behavior. The provider's initial approach to the adolescent may determine the success or failure of the visit. The provider should behave simply and honestly, without an authoritarian or excessively professional manner. Because the self-esteem of many young adolescents is fragile, the provider must be careful not to overpower and intimidate the patient. To establish a comfortable and trusting relationship, the provider should strive to present the image of an ordinary person who has special training and skills.

Because the onset and termination of puberty vary from child to child, chronologic age may be a poor indicator of physical, physiologic, and emotional maturity. In communicating with an adolescent, the provider must be sensitive to the adolescent's developmental level, recognizing that outward appearance and chronologic age may not be an accurate reflection of cognitive development.

The provider should be sensitive to the issue of countertransference—the emotional reaction elicited in the provider by the adolescent. How the provider relates to the adolescent patient often depends on the provider's personal characteristics. This is especially true of providers who treat families that are experiencing parent-adolescent conflicts. It is common for young providers to overidentify with the teenage patient and for older providers to see the conflict from the parents' perspective. Overidentification with parents is readily sensed by the teenager, who is likely to view the provider as just another authority figure who cannot understand the problems of being a teenager. Assuming a parental-authoritarian role may jeopardize the establishment of a working relationship with the patient. In the case of the young provider, overidentification with the teenager may cause the parents to become defensive about their parenting role and to discount the provider's experience and ability.

THE SETTING

Adolescents respond positively to settings and services that communicate sensitivity to their age. A pediatric waiting room with toddlers' toys and infant-sized examination tables makes adolescent patients feel they have outgrown the practice. Similarly, a waiting room filled with geriatric or pregnant patients can also make a teenager feel out of place. Providing age and developmentally appropriate health information pamphlets and educational materials about adolescent health and wellness issues is appreciated by patients and their families.

CONFIDENTIALITY

It is not uncommon that an adolescent patient is brought to the office against his/her wishes, especially for evaluations of drug and alcohol use, parent-child conflict, school failure, depression, or a suspected eating disorder. Even in cases of acute physical illness, the adolescent may feel anxiety about having a physical examination. If future visits are to be successful, the provider must spend time on the first visit to foster a sense of trust and comfort.

It is helpful at the beginning of the visit to talk with the adolescent and the parents about what to expect. The provider should address the issue of confidentiality, telling the parents that two meetings during the appointment—one with the teenager alone and one with only the parents—will take place. Adequate time must be spent with both patient and parents or important information may be missed. At the beginning of the interview with the patient, it is useful to say, "I am likely to ask you some personal questions. This is not because I am trying to pry into your personal business, but because these questions may be important to your health. I want to assure you that what we talk about is confidential, just between the two of us except in certain circumstances. If you tell me that you are hurting yourself or someone else is hurting you, we will have to discuss it with your parents. If there is something I feel we should discuss with your parents, I will ask your permission first unless I feel it is life threatening."

THE STRUCTURE OF THE VISIT

Caring for adolescents is time-intensive. In many adolescent practices, a 40%–50% no-show rate is not unusual.

The stated chief complaint often conceals the patient's real concern. For example, a 15-year-old girl may say she has a sore throat but actually may be worried about being pregnant.

By age 11 or 12 years, patients should be seen alone at least for part of the visit. This gives them an opportunity to ask questions they may be embarrassed to ask in front of a parent. Because of the physical changes that take place in early puberty, some adolescents are too self-conscious to undress in front of a parent. If an adolescent comes in willingly for an acute illness or for a routine physical examination, it may be helpful to meet with the adolescent and parent together to obtain the history. For angry adolescents, it is useful to meet with the patient and parents together for a few minutes at the beginning of the appointment to allow the parents to describe the conflict and voice their concerns. The adolescent should then be seen alone. This approach conveys that the physician is primarily interested in the adolescent patient, yet gives the physician an opportunity to acknowledge parental concerns.

The Interview

The first few minutes may determine the entire outcome of the interview. Starting the interview with neutral, nonpersonal questions can help the adolescent feel more comfortable and defuse anxiety. Having the adolescent and parent/guardian complete a paper or electronic health history questionnaire prior to the start of the appointment is useful to identify health concerns and collect past medical and surgical historical data, medication use and medication allergies, family history of medical and psychiatric problems, and a review of systems (Figure 4–2). The questionnaire should also contain social history questions that assess healthy behaviors as well as risk behaviors that could be detrimental to health. Adolescents often report health concerns and report behaviors on a questionnaire that they may not articulate verbally. The HEADSS (Home, Education/employment, Activities, Drugs, Sexuality, and Suicide/depression) is a useful tool to categorize these questions. Ideally, the adolescent should complete his/her questionnaire privately without the parent/guardian seeing the responses, particularly about confidential risk behaviors.

The HEADSS Assessment

Health care providers who see adolescents must be able and willing to take a developmentally appropriate psychosocial history. The HEADSS assessment acronym is useful for organizing this history (Table 4–1). Ideally the sensitive aspects of the history should be obtained with the adolescent alone. Providers may need to be flexible with history taking to allow for this to happen after the parent/guardian leaves the examination room.

Asking About Abuse and Violence

Using a generalizing scenario to discuss these difficult topics can be helpful; that is, "Some of my patients have told me that their parents may get very angry and hit them. Does anything like this happen in your family?" Questions also should be asked about dating violence and sexual abuse/assault; that is, "Have you ever been pressured or forced to have sex when you didn't want to?" It is also important to ask teens about their personal history of being a victim and/or perpetrator of violence, that is, fighting, arrests, and involvement with law enforcement, gang involvement, use of weapons and firearms, violence issues among peers, and the presence and security of weapons/firearms in the home, as these factors may place the adolescent at a higher risk of unintentional injury and death.

Physical Examination

A complete physical examination should be conducted at adolescent annual health supervision visits (Table 4–2). During early adolescence, teenagers may be shy and modest, especially with a provider of the opposite sex. The examiner should address this concern directly, because it can be allayed by acknowledging the uneasiness verbally and by explaining the purpose of the examination. For example, "Many boys that I see who are your age are embarrassed to have their penis and testes examined. This is an important part of the examination for a couple of reasons. First, I want to make sure that there aren't any physical problems, and second, it helps me determine if your development is proceeding normally." This also introduces the subject of sexual development for discussion. Chaperones may be needed for parts of the physical examination (breast, genitals) when the patient is of a different sex than the provider or there are sensitive issues, for example, past history of sexual abuse. Adolescents should also be asked whether they prefer if their parent/guardian is in the room during the physical examination. Attempts should be made to keep the examination as discrete as possible by keeping any parts of the body that are not being examined covered by a sheet, gown, or clothing.

A pictorial chart of sexual development is useful for showing the patient how development is proceeding and what changes to expect. Figure 4–3 shows the relationship between height, penis and testes development, and pubic hair growth in the male, and Figure 4–4 shows the relationship between height, breast development, menstruation, and pubic hair growth in the female. Although teenagers may not admit that they are interested in this subject, they are usually attentive when it is raised. It can be helpful for them to know that puberty progresses in a predictable order, but that the rate of progression is variable. This discussion is particularly useful in counseling teenagers who lag behind their peers in physical development.

Revised 04/21/2015

CONFIDENTIAL

ADOLESCENT HEALTH HISTORY CONSULTATION

This information is **CONFIDENTIAL**. Its purpose is to help your doctor give you better care. We request that you fill out the form completely, but you may skip any question that you do not wish to answer.

NAME _____ DATE _____
First Middle Initial Last

BIRTHDATE _____ **AGE** _____ Name you like to be called _____

1. Why did you come to the clinic today? _____
_____

MEDICAL HISTORY

2. Are you allergic to any medicines? ..... YES NO
   If Yes: Name of Medicine _____
3. Are you taking any medicines now? ..... YES NO
   If Yes: Name of Medicine _____
   _____
4. Were you born prematurely or did you have any serious problems as an infant? ..... YES NO
5. Do you have any chronic health conditions? ..... YES NO
   Condition _____
   _____
   _____
6. Have you ever been hospitalized? ..... YES NO
   Have you had any serious or sports related injuries? ..... YES NO
   If YES to any of the above: Describe the reason/problem:

DATE	**REASON/PROBLEM**
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

7. Have you ever had any of the following infections, illnesses or problems?
   If Yes: Write down your age when the infection, illness or problem started:

	Yes	No	Age		Yes	No	Age
Chickenpox	____	____	____	Pneumonia	____	____	____
Epilepsy/Seizures	____	____	____	Mononucleosis	____	____	____
Migraines	____	____	____	Tuberculosis	____	____	____
Heart Disease	____	____	____	Arthritis	____	____	____
Asthma	____	____	____	Scoliosis	____	____	____
Acne	____	____	____	Anemia	____	____	____
Stomach Problems	____	____	____	Diabetes	____	____	____
Urine Infections	____	____	____	Thyroid Disease	____	____	____
Hepatitis	____	____	____	Cancer	____	____	____
Sexually Transmitted	____	____	____	Eczema	____	____	____
Diseases				Other_____			____

SCHOOL INFORMATION

8. Are you in school? ..... YES NO
   If Yes: Name of school _____
   a. What grade are you in? (i.e.: 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, College) _____
   b. What grade do you usually get in English? (i.e.: A, B, C, D, E, F) _____
   c. What grade do you usually get in math? _____
   d. How many days were you absent from school last semester? _____
   If No: e. Why did you leave? _____
   f. What is the highest grade you completed? _____
9. Have you ever been suspended or expelled? ..... YES NO
10. Have you ever dropped out of school? ..... YES NO

▲**Figure 4–2.** Adolescent medical history questionnaire. (Reproduced with permission from Kroenke K, Spitzer RL, Williams JB: The PHQ-9: validity of a brief depression severity measure. J Gen Intern Med. 2001 Sep;16(9):606–613.)

Revised 04/21/2015

JOB/CAREER INFORMATION

11. Are you working? ..... YES NO

If yes, what is your job? _____

How many hours do you work each week? _____

12. What are your future plans or career goals? _____

FAMILY INFORMATION

13. Who do you live with? (Check all that apply)

_____ Both natural parents	_____ Stepmother	_____ Brother(s)/ages: _____
_____ Mother	_____ Stepfather	_____ Sister(s)/ages: _____
_____ Father	_____ Guardian	_____ Foster home: _____
_____ Adoptive parents	_____ Alone	_____ Other: Explain: _____

14. Were you adopted? ..... YES NO

15. Have there been any changes in your family since your last visit here such as:

_____ Marriage	_____ Serious illness	_____ Births
_____ Separation	_____ Loss of job	_____ Deaths
_____ Divorce	_____ Move to a new house	_____ Other

If Checked: Please explain: _____

16. Father's/stepfather's occupation or job: _____

Mother's/stepmother's occupation or job: _____

17. How satisfied are you with how well you get along with your family?

_____ A lot _____ Somewhat _____ Not much _____ Not at all

18. How much tension or conflict is there in your family?

_____ None _____ A little _____ A fair amount _____ A lot

19. Have you ever lived in foster care or an institution? ..... YES NO

SELF-INFORMATION

20. What do you like about yourself? _____

21. What do you do best? _____

22. If you could, what would you like to change about your life or yourself? _____

_____

_____

_____

23. List any habits you would like to break: _____

24. Have you lost or gained any weight in the last year? ..... YES NO

If Yes: (circle) Gained **OR** Lost How much? _____

25. In the past year, have you tried to lose weight or control your weight by vomiting, taking diet pills or laxatives, or starving yourself? ..... YES NO

26. Do you feel you have any friends you can count on? ..... YES NO

27. Have you ever run away from home overnight? ..... YES NO

28. Have you gotten into any trouble because of your anger/temper? ..... YES NO

29. Have you been in a pushing/shoving fight during the past 6 months? ..... YES NO

30. Is there a gun in your house? ..... YES NO

31. Have you ever threatened or been threatened with a knife/gun/or other weapon? ..... YES NO

32. Have you ever seen someone shot or stabbed? ..... YES NO

33. Have you ever been physically or sexually abused? ..... YES NO

Figure 4–2. (Continued)

Revised 04/21/2015

HEALTH CONCERNS

In the past two (2) weeks, how often have you been bothered by the following problems?
Check one:

	Not At All (0)	Several Days (1)	More Than Half the Days (2)	Nearly Every Day (3)
1. Feeling down, depressed, irritable, or hopeless?				
2. Little interest or pleasure in doing things?				
3. Trouble falling asleep, staying asleep, or sleeping too much?				
4. Poor appetite, weight loss, or overeating?				
5. Feeling tired, or having little energy?				
6. Feeling bad about yourself – or feeling that you are a failure, or that you have let yourself or your family down?				
7. Trouble concentrating on things like school work, reading, or watching TV?				
8. Moving or speaking so slowly that other people could have noticed? Or the opposite – being so fidgety or restless that you were moving around a lot more than usual?				
9. Thoughts that you would be better off dead, or of hurting yourself in some way?				

Kroenke K, Spitzer RL. The PHQ-9: a new depression and diagnostic severity measure. Psychiatr Ann 2002;32:509–521.

34. Do you have any questions or concerns about any of the following? (Check all that apply)

_____ Too tall
_____ Too short
_____ Overweight
_____ Underweight
_____ Blood pressure
_____ Trouble sleeping
_____ Tiredness/fatigue
_____ Dizziness/passing out
_____ Eyes/vision
_____ Ears/hearing/earaches
_____ Bloody nose
_____ Hay fever/allergies
_____ Frequent colds
_____ Mouth/teeth
_____ Neck/back pain
_____ Chest pain
_____ Heart
_____ Wheezing
_____ Cough
_____ Breathing problems
_____ Breasts
_____ Stomach pain
_____ Nausea/vomiting
_____ Diarrhea, Constipation
_____ Headaches/migraines
_____ Muscles or joints pain
_____ Penis or vagina
_____ Period problems
_____ Urination problems
_____ Wetting the bed
_____ Acne
_____ Rash
_____ Diet/appetite
_____ Eating disorder
_____ School problems
_____ Future plans/job
_____ Worried about parents
_____ Family violence/abuse
_____ Tobacco, drugs, alcohol
_____ Feeling down/depression
_____ Feeling nervous/anxiety
_____ Dating
_____ Sexuality
_____ Sex
_____ Birth control
_____ Sexually transmitted disease
_____ Pregnancy/parenting
_____ Other (explain) _____

HEALTH BEHAVIOR INFORMATION

35. Do you wear a seatbelt every time you ride in a car? ..... YES NO
36. Have you ever been the driver in an auto accident? ..... YES NO
37. Have you ever driven after drinking alcohol or when high? ..... YES NO
38. Do you ever smoke cigarettes or use chewing tobacco? ..... YES NO
39. Do you ever use marijuana? (inhaled, vaped or edible products)? ..... YES NO
40. In the past month, did you get drunk or very high on beer, wine, or other alcohol? ..... YES NO

▲**Figure 4–2.** (Continued)

Revised 04/21/2015

41. Have you ever used street drugs (speed, cocaine, acid, crack, etc.)? ..... YES NO
42. Does anyone in your household smoke? ..... YES NO
43. Does anyone in your family have a problem with drugs or alcohol? ..... YES NO
44. Have you ever been in trouble with the police or the law? ..... YES NO
45. Have you begun dating? ..... YES NO
46. Do you currently have a boyfriend or girlfriend? ..... YES NO
    If Yes: How old is he/she? _____
47. Do you think you might be gay, lesbian, bisexual or transgender? ..... YES NO
48. Have you ever had sex (sexual intercourse)? ..... YES NO
    If Yes: Are you (or your partner) using any birth control to prevent pregnancy? ..... YES NO
    Have you ever been treated for gonorrhea or chlamydia or other sexually transmitted diseases? ..... YES NO
    During your life, with how many people have you had sexual intercourse? ..... _____
49. Have you been taught how to use a condom correctly? ..... YES NO
50. Do you have any other personal problems that you would like to discuss with the doctor but would rather not write down? ..... YES NO

SPORTS

51. Have you ever been diagnosed with a concussion? ..... YES NO
52. Do you have severe headaches with exercise? ..... YES NO
53. Have you ever passed out or felt light headed or dizzy with exercise? ..... YES NO
54. Do you have chest pain with exercise? ..... YES NO
55. Have you ever experienced an irregular heart beat with exercise? ..... YES NO
56. Do you have a family history of early cardiac death (before age 50) or sudden death with exercise? ..... YES NO
57. Have any family members been diagnosed with long QT syndrome or Marfan Syndrome? ..... YES NO
58. Have you ever been told that you can't participate in sports due to a medical problem? ..... YES NO

For males only

59. If you have had sex, do you use a condom every time? ..... YES NO
60. Have you ever fathered a child? ..... YES NO

For females only

61. How old were you when your periods began? _____
62. What date did your last period start? _____
63. Are your periods regular (once a month)? ..... YES NO
64. Do you have painful or excessively heavy periods? ..... YES NO
65. Have you ever had a vaginal infection or been treated for a female reproductive health problem? ..... YES NO
66. Do you think you might be pregnant? ..... YES NO
67. Have you ever been pregnant? ..... YES NO

FAMILY HISTORY

68. Have any of your relatives (parents, grandparents, uncles, aunts, brothers or sisters), living or deceased, had any of the following problems? If the answer is **YES**, please state their relationship to you.

	YES	RELATIONSHIP		YES	RELATIONSHIP
ADHD			High Blood Pressure		
Alcoholism			High Cholesterol		
Anemia			Kidney Disease		
Anxiety			Mental Retardation		
Asthma			Migraine Headaches		
Bipolar			Obesity		
Blood Clots			Seizure Disorder/Epilepsy		
Cancer			Stomach Disorders		
Depression			Stroke		
Diabetes			Suicide		
Drug Problems			Thyroid Disease		
Eating Disorder			Tuberculosis		
Heart Attack			Other		

Figure 4–2. (Continued)

Growth & Development

PUBERTY

Pubertal growth and physical development are a result of activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis in late childhood. Before puberty, pituitary and gonadal hormone levels are low. At onset of puberty, the inhibition of gonadotropin-releasing hormone in the hypothalamus is removed, allowing pulsatile production and release of the gonadotropins, luteinizing hormone (LH), and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). In early to middle adolescence, pulse frequency and amplitude of LH and FSH secretion increase, stimulating the gonads to produce estrogen or testosterone. In females, FSH stimulates ovarian maturation, granulosa cell function, and estradiol secretion. LH is important in ovulation and also is involved in corpus luteum formation and progesterone secretion. Initially, estradiol inhibits the release of LH and FSH. Eventually, estradiol becomes stimulatory, and the secretion of LH and FSH becomes cyclic. Estradiol levels progressively increase, resulting in maturation of the female genital tract and breast development.

In males, LH stimulates the interstitial cells of the testes to produce testosterone. FSH stimulates the production of spermatocytes in the presence of testosterone. The testes also produce inhibin, a Sertoli cell protein that inhibits the secretion of FSH. During puberty, circulating testosterone levels increase

Table 4–1. HEADSS assessment.

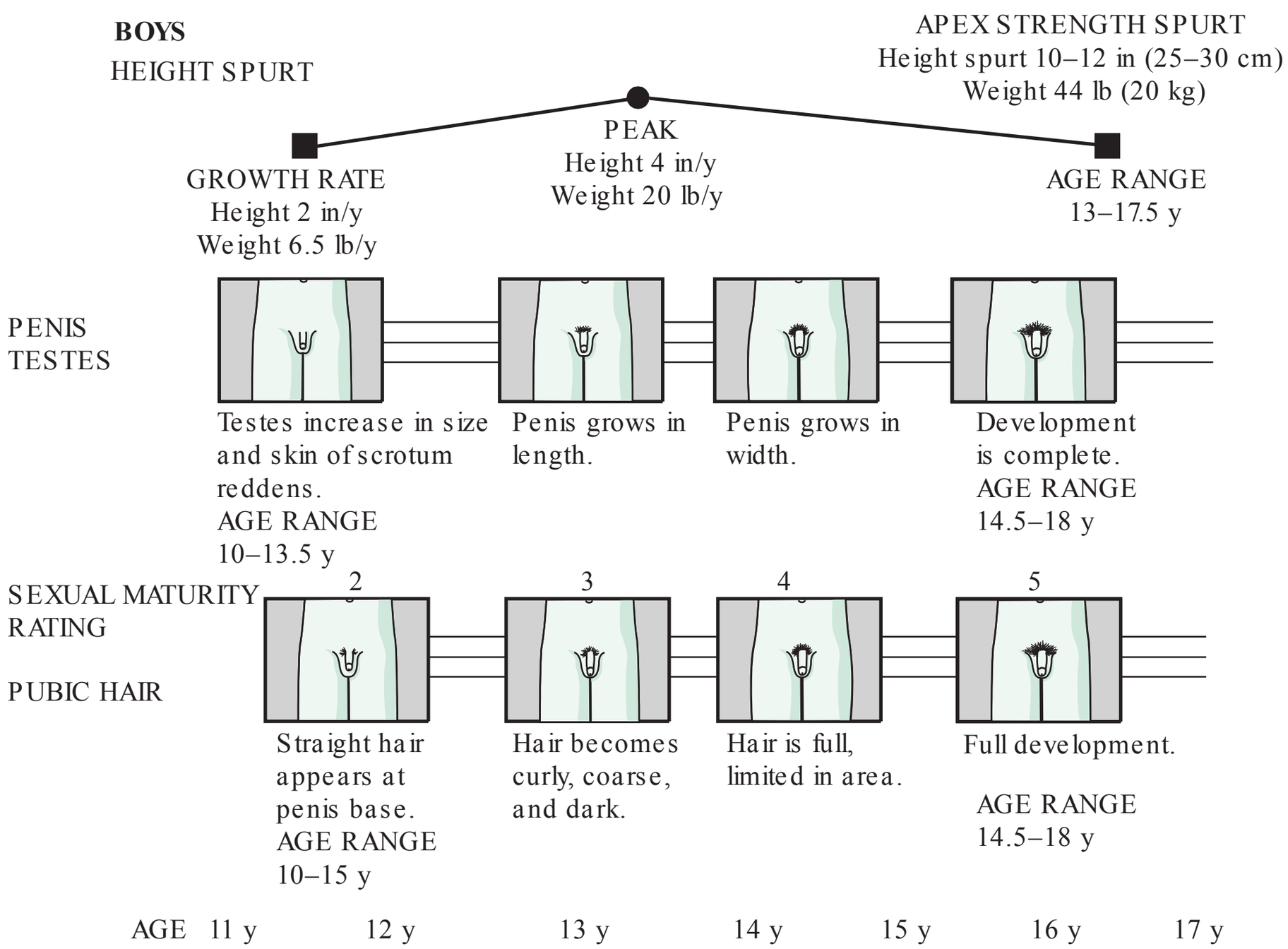
	Questions	Reasons
Home and environment	Where do you live, and who lives there with you? How do you get along with your parents, siblings? Is there anything you would like to change about your family?	Home life has an important impact on an adolescent's ability to succeed. It is important to know whether they live in a safe and supportive environment.
Education and employment	Are you in school? What are you good at in school? What is hard for you? What grades do you get? How much school did you miss last year? Why? Have you ever been suspended or expelled? Why? How do you get along with your teachers/peers? Have you been involved with bullying? What are your future plans/goals?	School is likely the primary social activity in the adolescent's life. Problems in school, academically or socially, can be an indicator of other issues (medical and/or psychosocial). Future goals and plans can be important motivators in high-risk behavior change.
Activities	How are your peer relationships? What do you (or your friends) do for fun? Are you involved in any extracurricular activities or activities in your community? Do you have a job? How many hours a week do you work? Do you play sports or exercise? What activities do you do and how often? How many hours of screen time do you have per day?	Disengagement and withdrawal can be a sign of other problems.
drugs	Many young people experiment with marijuana, drugs, smoking cigarettes, or drinking alcohol. Have you or your friends ever tried them? What did you try? How often do you use these things? Do you ever operate a vehicle under the influence of drugs or alcohol or ride with an impaired driver?	Positive answers can lead to more in-depth evaluation of use (see Chapter 5).
sexuality	Are you in a romantic relationship or have you been in one in the past? Tell me about your partner. Have you (or your friends) had sex? How do you feel about it?	It is important to normalize sexual feelings even in the absence of sexual activity. Teens not having sex can still have conversations about sexuality, including masturbation. It is also important to avoid assumptions about sexual preference and to be nonjudgmental about sexual practices.
suicide/ depression	Have you had long periods of time where you felt down, depressed, or irritable? Have you ever thought about death, dying or suicide?	Psychosocial history should reveal indicators of depression.

HEADSS, Home, Education/employment, Activities, Drugs, Sexuality, and Suicide/depression.

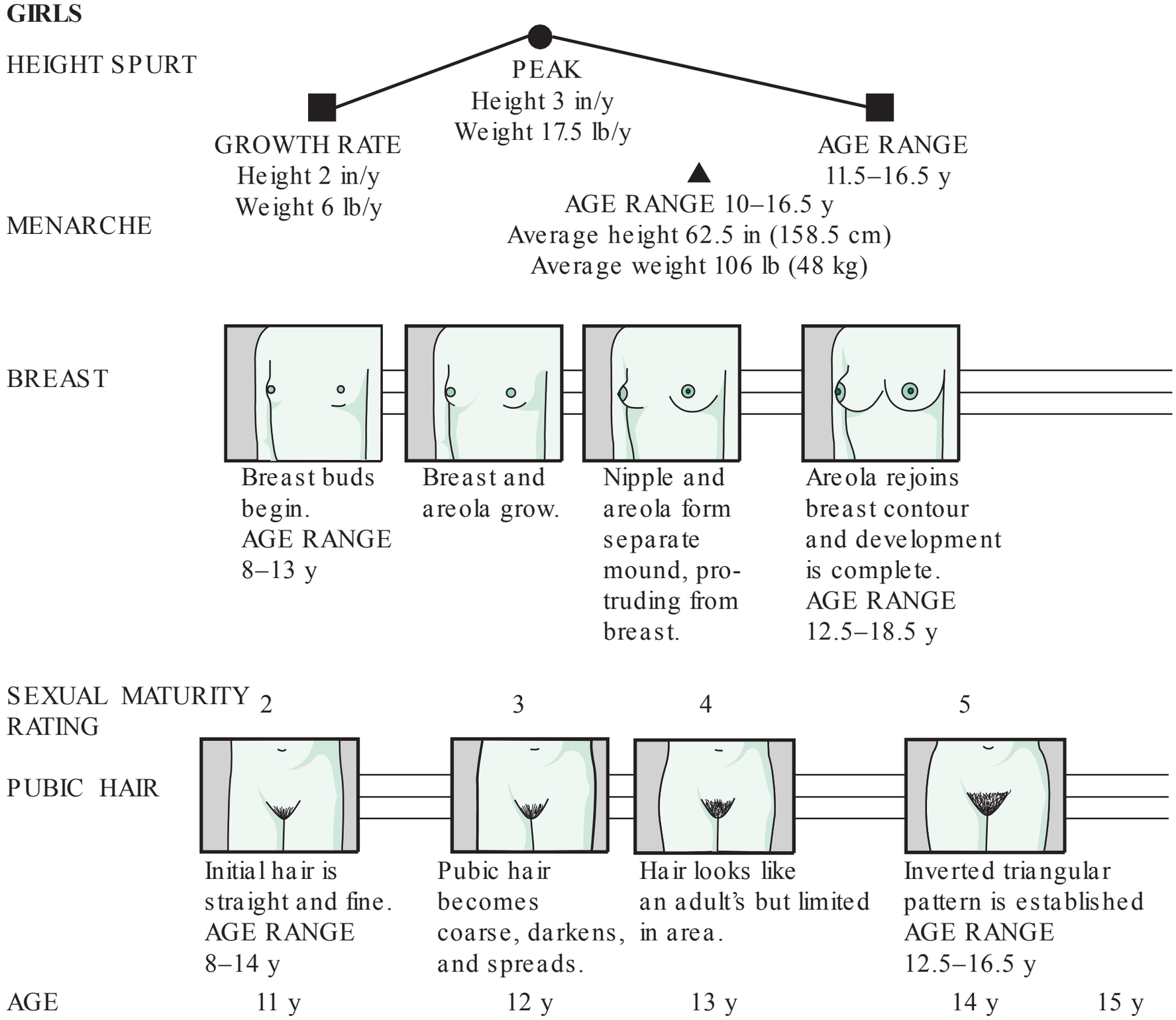
Table 4–2. Physical examination of adolescents.

A complete physical examination is included as part of every health supervision visit. The following examination components are especially important in the adolescent patient:
Vital signs: Measure and plot height and weight on CDC clinical growth charts (http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts/clinical_charts.htm). Calculate and plot BMI on CDC clinical growth charts. Measure BP and evaluate elevated BP by age and height percentiles to determine the degree of hypertension per the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute BP tables for children and adolescents (http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/guidelines/child_tbl.pdf).
skin: Inspect for acne, acanthosis nigricans, atypical nevi, tattoos, piercings, and signs of abuse or self-inflicted injury.
spine: Examine back for scoliosis with Adam's forward bend test (also assess for leg length discrepancy).
Breast
Female: Assess SMR and conduct clinical breast examination for breast disorders.
Male: Examine breasts if inspection shows breast hypertrophy and gynecomastia vs other breast pathology is suspected.
Genitalia
Female: Perform visual inspection of external genitalia to assess SMR, anatomic and skin abnormalities and signs of STIs (warts, vesicles, pathologic vaginal discharge).
Male: Perform visual inspection for circumcision status, SMR, and signs of STIs (warts, vesicles, penile discharge). Examine testicles for abnormalities (hydroceles, hernias, varicoceles, or masses).

BMI, body mass index (height [cm]/weight [kg^2]), BP, blood pressure; CDC, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; SMR, sexual maturity rating; STI, sexually transmitted infection.



▲**Figure 4–3.** Adolescent male sexual maturation and growth.



▲**Figure 4–4.** Adolescent female sexual maturation and growth.

more than 20-fold. Levels of testosterone correlate with the physical stages of puberty and the degree of skeletal maturation.

PHYSICAL GROWTH

A teenager's weight almost doubles in adolescence, and height increases by 15%–20%. During puberty, major organs double in size, except for lymphoid tissue, which decreases in mass. Before puberty, there is little difference in the muscular strength of boys and girls. The muscle mass and muscle strength both increase during puberty, with maximal strength lagging behind the increase in mass by many months. Boys attain greater strength and mass, and strength continues to increase into late puberty. Although motor coordination lags behind growth in stature and musculature, it continues to improve as strength increases.

The pubertal growth spurt begins nearly 2 years earlier in girls than in boys. Girls reach peak height velocity between ages 11½ and 12 years, and boys between ages 13½ and 14 years. Linear growth at peak velocity is 9.5 cm/y ± 1.5 cm in boys and 8.3 cm/y ± 1.2 cm in girls. Pubertal growth lasts about 2–4 years and continues longer in boys than in girls. By age 11 years in girls and age 12 years in boys, 83%–89% of ultimate height is attained. An additional 18–23 cm in females and 25–30 cm in males is achieved during late pubertal growth. Following menarche, height rarely increases more than 5–7.5 cm.

In boys, the lean body mass increases from 80% to 85% to approximately 90% at maturity. Muscle mass doubles between 10 and 17 years. By contrast, in girls, the lean body mass decreases from approximately 80% of body weight in early puberty to approximately 75% at maturity.

SEXUAL MATURATION

Sexual maturity rating (SMR) is useful for categorizing genital development. SMR staging includes age ranges of normal development and specific descriptions for each stage of pubic hair growth, penis, and testis development in boys, and breast maturation in girls. Figures 4–3 and 4–4 show

this chronologic development. SMR 1 is prepuberty and SMR 5 is adult maturity. In SMR 2 the pubic hair is sparse, fine, nonpigmented, and downy; in SMR 3, the hair becomes pigmented and curly and increases in amount; and in SMR 4, the hair is adult in texture but limited in area. The appearance of pubic hair precedes axillary hair by more than 1 year. Male genital development begins with SMR 2 during which the testes become larger and the scrotal skin reddens and coarsens. In SMR 3, the penis lengthens; and in SMR 4, the penis enlarges in overall size and the scrotal skin becomes pigmented.

Female breast development follows a predictable sequence. Small, raised breast buds appear in SMR 2. In SMR 3, the breast and areolar tissue generally enlarge and become elevated. The areola and nipple form a separate mound from the breast in SMR 4, and in SMR 5 the areola assumes the same contour as the breast.

There is great variability in the timing and onset of puberty and growth, and psychosocial development does not always parallel physical changes. Chronologic age, therefore, may be a poor indicator of physiologic and psychosocial development. Skeletal maturation correlates well with growth and pubertal development.

Teenagers began entering puberty earlier in the last century because of better nutrition and socioeconomic conditions. In the United States, the average age at menarche is 12.53 years, but varies by race and ethnicity; 12.57 for non-Hispanic whites; 12.09 years in non-Hispanic blacks, and 12.09 for Mexican American girls. Among girls reaching menarche, the average weight is 48 kg, and the average height is 158.5 cm. Menarche may be delayed until age 16 years or may begin as early as age 10. Although the first measurable sign of puberty in girls is the beginning of the height spurt, the first conspicuous sign is usually the development of breast buds between 8 and 11 years. Although breast development usually precedes the growth of pubic hair, the sequence may be reversed. A common concern for girls at this time is whether the breasts will be of the right size and shape, especially because initial breast growth is often asymmetrical. The growth spurt starts at about age 9 years in girls and peaks at age 11½ years, usually at SMR 3–4 breast development and SMR 3 pubic hair development. The spurt usually ends by age 14 years. Girls who mature early will reach peak height velocity sooner and attain their final height earlier. Girls who mature late will attain a greater final height because of the longer period of growth before the growth spurt ends. Final height is related to skeletal age at onset of puberty as well as genetic factors. The height spurt correlates more closely with breast developmental stages than with pubic hair stages.

The first sign of puberty in the male, usually between ages 10 and 12 years, is scrotal and testicular growth. Pubic hair usually appears early in puberty but may do so any time between ages 10 and 15 years. The penis begins to grow significantly a year or so after the onset of testicular and pubic hair development, usually between ages 10 and 13½ years. The first ejaculation usually occurs about 1 year after initiation of testicular growth, but its timing is highly variable. About 90% of boys have this experience between ages 11 and 15 years. Gynecomastia, a hard nodule under the nipple, occurs in a majority of boys, with a peak incidence between ages 14 and 15 years. Gynecomastia usually disappears within 6 months to 2 years. The height spurt begins at age 11 years but increases rapidly between ages 12 and 13 years, with the peak height velocity reached at age 13½ years. The period of pubertal development lasts much longer in boys and may not be completed until age 18 years. The height velocity is higher in males (8–11 cm/y) than in females (6.5–9.5 cm/y). The development of axillary hair, deepening of the voice, and the development of chest hair in boys usually occur in mid-puberty, about 2 years after onset of growth of pubic hair. Facial and body hair begin to increase at age 16–17 years.

Herman-Giddens ME et al: Secondary sexual characteristics in boys: data from the Pediatric Research in Office Settings Network. Pediatrics 2012;130(5):e1058–e1068 [PMID: 23085608].

Rosenfield RL, Lipton RB, Drum ML: Thelarche, pubarche, and menarche attainment in children with normal and elevated body mass index. Pediatrics 2009;123:84 [PMID: 19117864].

Susman EJ et al: Longitudinal development of secondary sexual characteristics in girls and boys between ages 9½ and 15½ years. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2010;164(2):166–173 [PMID: 20124146].

PSYCHOSOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Adolescence is a period of progressive individuation and separation from the family. Adolescents must learn who they are, decide what they want to do, and identify their personal strengths and weaknesses. Because of the rapidity of physical, emotional, cognitive, and social growth during adolescence, it is useful to divide it into three phases (Table 4–3). Early adolescence is roughly from 10 to 13 years of age; middle adolescence is from 14 to 16 years; and late adolescence is from 17 years and later.

Early Adolescence

Early adolescence is characterized by rapid growth and development of secondary sex characteristics. Body image, self-concept, and self-esteem fluctuate dramatically. Concerns about how personal growth and development deviate from that of peers may be great, especially in boys with short stature or girls with delayed breast development or delayed menarche. Although there is a certain curiosity about sexuality, young adolescents generally feel more comfortable with members of the same sex. Peer relationships

Table 4–3. Stages of adolescent development.

Stages of Adolescence	Cognitive Development	Social-Emotional Development
Early adolescence: ~10–13 y	• Growing capacity for abstract thought • Interested in present, limited thought to future • Intellectual interests expand • Deeper moral thinking	• Struggle with sense of identity • Worries about being normal, feels awkward about self and body • Realize parents aren't perfect; increased conflict with parents • Desire for independence • Tendency to return to "childish" behavior especially when stressed • Moodiness • Rule and limit testing • Greater interest in privacy
Middle adolescence: ~14–16 y	• Continued growth of capacity for abstract thought • Greater capacity for setting goals • Interest in moral reasoning • Thinking about meaning of life	• Intense self-involvement • Continued adjustment to changing body and worries about being normal • Distance from parents, drive for independence • Peers gain importance • Feelings of love and passion
late adolescence: ~ ≥17 y	• Ability to think ideas through • Ability to delay gratification • Examination of inner experiences • Increased concern for future • Continued interest in moral reasoning	• Firmer sense of identity • Increased emotional stability • Increased concern for others • Increased independence and self-reliance • Peer relationships remain important • Development of more serious relationships

Data from American Academy of Child and Adolescent's Facts for Families (2008).

become increasingly important. Young teenagers still think concretely and cannot easily conceptualize about the future. They may have vague and unrealistic professional goals, such as becoming a movie star or professional athlete.

Middle Adolescence

During middle adolescence, as rapid pubertal development subsides, teenagers become more comfortable with their new bodies. Intense emotions and wide swings in mood are typical. Although some teenagers go through this experience relatively peacefully, others struggle. Cognitively, the middle adolescent moves from concrete thinking to formal operations and abstract thinking. With this new mental power comes a sense of omnipotence and a belief that the world can be changed by merely thinking about it. Sexually active teenagers may believe they do not need to worry about using contraception because they can't get pregnant ("it won't happen to me"). Sixteen-year-old drivers believe they are the best drivers in the world and think the insurance industry is conspiring against them by charging high rates for automobile insurance. With the onset of abstract thinking, teenagers begin to see themselves as others see them and may become extremely self-centered. Because they are establishing their own identities, relationships with peers and others are narcissistic. Experimenting with different self-images is common. As sexuality increases in importance, adolescents may begin dating and experimenting with sex. Relationships tend to be one-sided and narcissistic. Peers determine the standards for identification, behavior, activities, and clothing and provide emotional support, intimacy, empathy, and the sharing of guilt and anxiety during the struggle for autonomy. The struggle for independence and autonomy is often a stressful period for both teenagers and parents.

Late Adolescence

During late adolescence, the young person generally becomes less self-centered and more caring of others. Social relationships shift from the peer group to the individual. Dating becomes much more intimate. By 10th grade, 40.9% of adolescents (41.9% of males and 39.6% of females) have had sexual intercourse, and by 12th grade, this has increased to 62.3% (59.6% of males and 65% of females). Abstract thinking allows older adolescents to think more realistically about their plans for the future. This is a period of idealism; older adolescents have rigid concepts of what is right or wrong.

Sexual Orientation

In addition to rapid physical changes during puberty, adolescence is also characterized by emotional and sexual changes during which sexual discovery, exploration, and experimentation are part of the process of incorporating sexuality into one's identity. Sexual orientation has been

referred to as "an individual's pattern of physical and emotional arousal toward other persons." Typically, sexual orientation emerges before or early in adolescence. Gender identity is knowledge of one's self as being male or female and gender expression is the outward expression of being male or female. Awareness of gender identity happens in early childhood, and by age 3 years, children can identify themselves as a boy or a girl and, by age 4 years, gender identity is stable. It is not uncommon for younger children to experience and display gender role confusion. For some children, conflict can develop with awareness that he/she actually identifies with traits of the opposite gender (vs lacking interest in what society defines as typical gender-specific activities). Conflict about gender can lead to dysphoria and dislike about the parts of themselves that are different from the gender that they identify with. Many children will resolve their dysphoria by the time they complete adolescence and others who continue to feel dysphoria may seek treatment to transition to the opposite gender.

Individuals who self-identify as heterosexuals are attracted to people of the opposite gender; homosexual individuals self-identify as being attracted to people of the same gender, and bisexual adolescents report attraction to both genders. Generally, self-identified homosexual people are referred to as "gay" if male and "lesbian" if female. Sexuality and identity formation are dynamic processes and adolescents who struggle with their sexual attractions are referred to as "questioning." Sexuality is inherently more complex than these simple definitions; for example, many self-identified heterosexual youth report having sex with same-gendered partners. Many young people also resist definitions and terminology regarding their sexuality. Overall, adolescents who self-identify as lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and/or questioning (LGBTQ) comprise a sexual minority population.

Heterosexism is the societal expectation that heterosexuality is the norm and that LGBTQ youth are "abnormal." Some LGBT youth may feel that it is necessary to hide their sexuality from family and friends and this nondisclosure can be ultimately damaging to a developing self-image. Parents' and other family members' reactions to a young person "coming out" or declaring his/or her self-identified sexuality vary, and parental rejection of sexual minority youth is unfortunately common.

Although many LGBTQ youth are resilient, they are a vulnerable population and experience many health disparities that providers need to be aware of. Population studies and public health data demonstrate that sexual minority youth are at increased risk of tobacco and substance abuse; being victims of violence including bullying, physical and sexual abuse; increased rates of STI and HIV acquisition; school avoidance and failure; depression and suicide; homelessness; and other crises. As part of providing culturally effective care to reduce health disparities experienced by sexual minority youth, providers should use gender-neutral terms to encourage adolescents to discuss any questions they have about their sexual orientation or sexual behaviors. Providers will optimize opportunities to learn about youths' behaviors by creating an accepting environment and providing nonjudgmental and confidential care. For transgender youth, providers should affirm their feelings of gender dysphoria and provide referrals to qualified mental health and medical professionals for more information about transition. Providers can also be sources of support for parents and family members of sexual minority youth. Organizations such as Parents, Families and Friends of Lesbians and Gays (www.pflag.org) or Gay Family Support (www.gayfamilysupport.com) can provide valuable resources. Nonprofit organizations such as the United Way and local adult LGBTQ and sexual health advocacy organizations are additional resources for sexual minority youth and their families.

Brewster KL, Tillman KH: Sexual orientation and substance use among adolescents and young adults. Am J Public Health 2012;102(6):1168–1176 [PMID: 22021322].

Gutgesell ME, Payne N: Issues of adolescent psychological development in the 21st century. Pediatr Rev 2004;25:79 [PMID: 14993515].

Institute of medicine, Committee on Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Health Issues and Research Gaps and Opportunities: The Health of Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender People: Building a Foundation for Better Understanding. Washington, DC: National Academic press; 2011.

Levine DA et al: Office-based care for lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and questioning youth. Pediatrics 2013;132(1): e297–e313 [PMID: 23796737].

Marshal MP et al: Suicidality and depression disparities between sexual minority and heterosexual youth: a meta-analytic review. J Adolesc Health 2011;49(2):115–123 [PMID: 21783042].

BEHAVIOR & PSYCHOLOGICAL HEALTH

It is not unusual for adolescents to seek medical attention for apparently minor complaints. In early adolescence, teenagers may worry about normal developmental changes such as gynecomastia. They may present with vague symptoms, but have a hidden agenda of concerns about pregnancy or an STI. Adolescents with emotional disorders often present with somatic symptoms—abdominal pain, headaches, dizziness, syncope, fatigue, sleep problems, and chest pain—which appear to have no biologic cause. The emotional basis of such complaints may be varied: somatoform disorder, depression, or stress and anxiety.

PSYCHOPHYSIOLOGIC SYMPTOMS & CONVERSION REACTIONS

The most common somatoform disorder of adolescence is conversion disorder or conversion reaction. A conversion reaction is a psychophysiologic process in which unpleasant

feelings, especially anxiety, depression, and guilt, are communicated through a physical symptom. Psychophysiologic symptoms result when anxiety activates the autonomic nervous system, causing symptoms such as tachycardia, hyperventilation, and vasoconstriction. The emotional feeling may be threatening or unacceptable to the individual who expresses it as a physical symptom rather than verbally. The process is unconscious, and the anxiety or unpleasant feeling is dissipated by the somatic symptom. The degree to which the conversion symptom lessens anxiety, depression, or the unpleasant feeling is referred to as primary gain. Conversion symptoms not only diminish unpleasant feelings but also release the adolescent from conflict or an uncomfortable situation. This is called secondary gain. Secondary gain may intensify the symptoms, especially with increased attention from concerned parents and friends. Adolescents with conversion symptoms tend to have overprotective parents and become increasingly dependent on their parents as the symptom becomes a major focus of concern in the family.

» Clinical Findings

Symptoms may appear at times of stress. Nervous, gastrointestinal, and cardiovascular symptoms are common and include paresthesias, anesthesia, paralysis, dizziness, syncope, hyperventilation, abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting. Specific symptoms may reflect existing or previous illness (eg, pseudoseizures in adolescents with epilepsy) or modeling of a close relative's symptom (eg, chest pain in a boy whose grandfather died of a heart attack). Conversion symptoms are more common in girls than in boys. Although they occur in patients from all socioeconomic levels, the complexity of the symptom may vary with the sophistication and cognitive level of the patient.

History and physical findings are usually inconsistent with a physical cause of symptoms. Conversion symptoms occur most frequently during stress and in the presence of individuals meaningful to the patient. The common personality traits of these patients include egocentricity, emotional lability, and dramatic, attention-seeking behaviors.

» Differential Diagnosis

Conversion reactions must be differentiated from hypochondriasis, which is a preoccupation with developing or having a serious illness despite medical reassurance that there is no evidence of disease. Over time, the fear of one disease may give way to concern about another. In contrast to patients with conversion symptoms, who seem relieved if an organic cause is considered, patients with hypochondriasis become more anxious when such a cause is considered.

Malingering is uncommon during adolescence. The malingering patient consciously and intentionally fabricates or exaggerates physical or psychological symptoms. Such patients are motivated by external incentives such as avoiding work, evading criminal prosecution, obtaining drugs, or obtaining financial compensation. These patients may be hostile and aloof. Parents of patients with conversion disorders and malingering have a similar reaction to illness. They have an unconscious psychological need to have sick children and reinforce their child's behavior.

Somatic delusions are physical symptoms, often bizarre, that accompany other signs of mental illness. Examples are visual or auditory hallucinations, delusions, incoherence or loosening of associations, rapid shifts of affect, and confusion.

» Treatment

The physician must emphasize from the outset that both physical and emotional causes of the symptom will be considered. The relationship between physical causes of emotional pain and emotional causes of physical pain should be described to the family, using examples such as stress causing an ulcer or making a severe headache worse. The patient should be encouraged to understand that the symptom may persist and that at least a short-term goal is to continue normal daily activities. Medication is rarely helpful. If the family will accept it, psychological referral is often a good initial step toward psychotherapy. If the family resists psychiatric or psychological referral, the pediatrician may need to begin to deal with some of the emotional factors responsible for the symptom while building rapport with the patient and family. Regular appointments should be scheduled. During visits, the teenager should be seen first and encouraged to talk about school, friends, the relationship with the parents, and the stresses of life. Discussion of the symptom itself should be minimized; however, the physician should be supportive and must never suggest that the pain is not real. As parents gain insight into the cause of the symptom, they will become less indulgent and facilitate resumption of normal activities. If management is successful, the adolescent will gain coping skills and become more independent, while decreasing secondary gain.

If the symptom continues to interfere with daily activities and if the patient and parents feel that no progress is being made, psychological referral is indicated. A psychotherapist experienced in treating adolescents with conversion reactions is in the best position to establish a strong therapeutic relationship with the patient and family. After referral is made, the pediatrician should continue to follow the patient to ensure compliance with psychotherapy.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. 4th ed, text revision. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press; 2000.

Kreipe RE: The biopsychosocial approach to adolescents with somatoform disorders. Adolesc Med Clin 2006;17:1 [PMID: 16473291].

Silber TJ: Somatization disorders: diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis. Pediatr Rev 2011;32(2):56–63 [PMID: 21285301].

DEPRESSION (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 7)

Symptoms of clinical depression (lethargy, loss of interest, sleep disturbances, decreased energy, feelings of worthlessness, and difficulty concentrating) are common during adolescence. The intensity of feelings during adolescence, often in response to seemingly trivial events such as a poor grade on an examination or not being invited to a party, makes it difficult to differentiate severe depression from normal sadness or dejection. In less severe depression, sadness or unhappiness associated with problems of everyday life is generally short-lived. The symptoms usually result in only minor impairment in school performance, social activities, and relationships and respond to support and reassurance.

» Clinical Findings

The presentation of serious depression in adolescence may be similar to that in adults, with vegetative signs—depressed mood, crying spells, inability to cry, discouragement, irritability, a sense of emptiness and futility, negative expectations of oneself and the environment, low self-esteem, isolation, helplessness, diminished interest or pleasure in activities, weight loss or weight gain, insomnia or hypersomnia, fatigue or loss of energy, feelings of worthlessness, and diminished ability to think or concentrate. In adolescents, it is not unusual for a serious depression to be masked because the teenager cannot tolerate the severe feelings of sadness. Such a teenager may present with recurrent or persistent psychosomatic complaints, such as abdominal pain, chest pain, headache, lethargy, weight loss, dizziness, syncope, or other nonspecific symptoms. Other behavioral manifestations of masked depression include truancy, running away from home, defiance of authorities, self-destructive behavior, vandalism, drug and alcohol abuse, sexual acting-out, and delinquency (Table 4–4).

Table 4–4. Behavioral manifestations of depression among adolescents.

Decline in school performance
Excessive school absences or cutting class
Frequent or persistent psychosomatic complaints
Changes in sleeping or eating habits
Difficulty in concentrating or persistent boredom
Signs or symptoms of depression, extreme stress, or anxiety
Withdrawal from friends or family or change to a new group of friends
Severe violent or rebellious behavior or radical personality change
Conflict with parents
Sexual acting out
Conflicts with the law
Suicidal thoughts or preoccupation with death
Drug and alcohol use
Running away from home

» Differential Diagnosis

A complete history and physical examination and review of the past medical and psychosocial history should be performed. The family history should be explored for psychiatric problems. Early-onset depression and bipolar illness are more likely to occur in families with a multigenerational history of early-onset and chronic depression. The lifetime risk of depressive illness in first-degree relatives of adult depressed patients is between 18% and 30%.

The teenager should be questioned about the symptoms of depression and, specifically, about suicidal ideation or preoccupation with thoughts of death. The history should include an assessment of school performance, looking for signs of academic deterioration, excessive absence, cutting class, changes in work or other outside activities, and changes in the family (eg, separation, divorce, serious illness, loss of employment by a parent, recent move to a new school, increasing quarrels or fights with parents, or death of a close relative). The teenager may have withdrawn from friends or family or switched allegiance to a new group of friends. The physician should inquire about possible physical and sexual abuse, drug and alcohol abuse, conflicts with the police, sexual acting-out, running away from home, unusually violent or rebellious behavior, or radical personality changes. Patients with vague somatic complaints or concerns about having a fatal illness may have an underlying affective disorder. The Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) is a brief, validated nine-item standardized depression questionnaire that can be administered in the clinical setting and assist in the diagnosis of depression. This tool can be part of a health history questionnaire and used for routine depression screening (see Figure 4–2).

Adolescents with symptoms of depression require a thorough medical evaluation to rule out contributing or underlying medical illness. Among the medical conditions associated with affective disorders are eating disorders, organic central nervous system disorders (tumors, vascular lesions, closed head trauma, and subdural hematomas), metabolic and endocrinologic disorders (hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, Cushing syndrome, Addison disease, or premenstrual syndrome), Wilson disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, and infections (infectious mononucleosis or syphilis), and appropriate laboratory testing and/or imaging for these disorders may be indicated. Marijuana use, phencyclidine abuse, amphetamine withdrawal, and excessive caffeine intake can cause symptoms of depression. Common medications, including birth control pills, anticonvulsants, and β-blockers, may also cause depressive symptoms.

» Treatment

Patients with depression, suicidal ideation, and/or behaviors placing them at significant risk of serious morbidity or death should be evaluated by a mental health professional, often in

the emergency room. Patients with more mild symptoms of depression can be followed closely by a provider and monitored for worsening mood and/or changes in behaviors. It is helpful to facilitate making parents and guardians aware of the adolescent's depression for monitoring at home, engagement in seeking treatment, and communication with school personnel, if necessary, particularly if additional therapeutic resources are available at school. Providers should discuss the utility of counseling and psychopharmacology when appropriate with adolescents and parent/guardians and refer patients to appropriate mental health professionals for additional evaluation and management. Frequent visits at regular intervals with a provider may be necessary for ongoing monitoring and to help facilitate referrals. Providers who are comfortable prescribing psychopharmacology should require compliance with regular appointments for medication monitoring. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has issued a "black box warning" alerting providers that using antidepressants in children and adolescents may increase the risk of suicidal thoughts and behavior.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control: Web-based Injury Statistics Query and Reporting System (WISQARS) [online], 2010. www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars.

Lewandowski RE et al: Evidence for the management of adolescent depression. Pediatrics 2013;132(4):e996–e1009 [PMID: 24043282].

ADOLESCENT SUICIDE (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 7)

Suicide is the third leading cause of death among persons aged 15–24 years, resulting in approximately 4600 deaths per year, at a rate of 10.5 deaths per 100,000 population. The most common methods used in suicides of adolescents and young adults included firearms (44%), suffocation (40%), and poisoning (8%). Among young adults aged 15–24 years, there are approximately 100–200 attempts for every completed suicide.

In 2013, data from the Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance System showed that 17% of high school students had seriously considered attempting suicide during the 12 months prior to the survey. Overall, 8% of high school students reported having attempted suicide one or more times in the past 12 months, stable since 2011 (7.8%). Female students were more likely than males to have considered suicide, and females (10.6%) were more likely to report at least one suicide attempt than males (5.4%). The incidence of unsuccessful suicide attempts is three times higher in females than in males. Firearms account for approximately 50% of suicide deaths in both males and females.

Mood swings are common in adolescence. Short periods of depression are common and may be accompanied by thoughts of suicide. Normal adolescent mood swings rarely interfere with sleeping, eating, or normal activities. Acute depressive reactions (transient grief responses) to the loss of a family member or friend may cause depression lasting for weeks or even months. An adolescent who is unable to work through this grief can become increasingly depressed. A teenager who is unable to keep up with schoolwork, does not participate in normal social activities, withdraws socially, has sleep and appetite disturbances, and has feelings of hopelessness and helplessness should be considered at increased risk for suicide.

Angry teenagers attempting to influence others by their actions may be suicidal. They may be only mildly depressed and may not have any long-standing wish to die. Teenagers in this group, usually females, may attempt suicide or make an impulsive suicidal gesture as a way of getting back at someone or gaining attention by frightening another person. Adolescents with serious psychiatric disease such as acute schizophrenia or psychotic depressive disorder are also at risk for suicide.

» Risk Assessment

The provider must determine the extent of the teenager's depression and the risk that he or she might inflict self-injury. Evaluation should include interviews with both the teenager and the family. The history should include a detailed psychosocial history, including current psychiatric symptoms (eg, presence of suicidal ideation and presence or absence of suicide plan) and global functioning, past psychiatric history including psychiatric diagnoses, previous suicidal ideation and suicide attempts, and previous psychiatric treatment (intensive and outpatient therapies, and psychopharmacology). Providers should also assess the safety of the home environment, for example, presence and security of weapons and availability of prescription and nonprescription medications.

» Treatment

The primary care provider is often in a unique position to identify an adolescent at risk for suicide because many teenagers who attempt suicide seek medical attention in the weeks preceding the attempt. These visits are often for vague somatic complaints. If the patient shows evidence of depression, the physician must assess the severity of the depression and suicidal risk. The provider should always seek emergency psychological consultation for any teenager who is severely depressed, psychotic, or acutely suicidal. It is the responsibility of the psychologist or psychiatrist to assess the seriousness of suicidal ideation and decide whether hospitalization or outpatient treatment is most appropriate. Adolescents with mild depression and low risk for suicide should be followed closely, and the extent of the depression should be assessed on an ongoing basis. If it appears that the patient is worsening or is not responding to supportive counseling, referral should be made.

Bridge JA et al: Suicide trends among youths aged 10–19 years in the United States, 1996–2005. JAMA 2008;300(9):1025–1026 [PMID: 18768413].

Kroenke K, Spitzer RL: The PHQ-9: a new depression and diagnostic severity measure. Psychiatr Ann 2002;32:509–521.

Prager LM: Depression and suicide in children and adolescents. Pediatr Rev 2009;30(6):199–205 [PMID: 19487428].

Richardson LP et al: Predictors of persistence after a positive depression screen among adolescents. Pediatrics 2012;130(6): 1541–1548 [PMID: 23166342].

Shain BN, American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Adolescence: Suicide and suicide attempts in adolescents. Pediatrics 2007;120:669 [PMID: 17766542].

Williams SB et al: Screening for child and adolescent depression in primary care settings: a systematic evidence review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Pediatrics 2009;123(4): e716–e735 [PMID: 19336361].

SUBSTANCE ABUSE

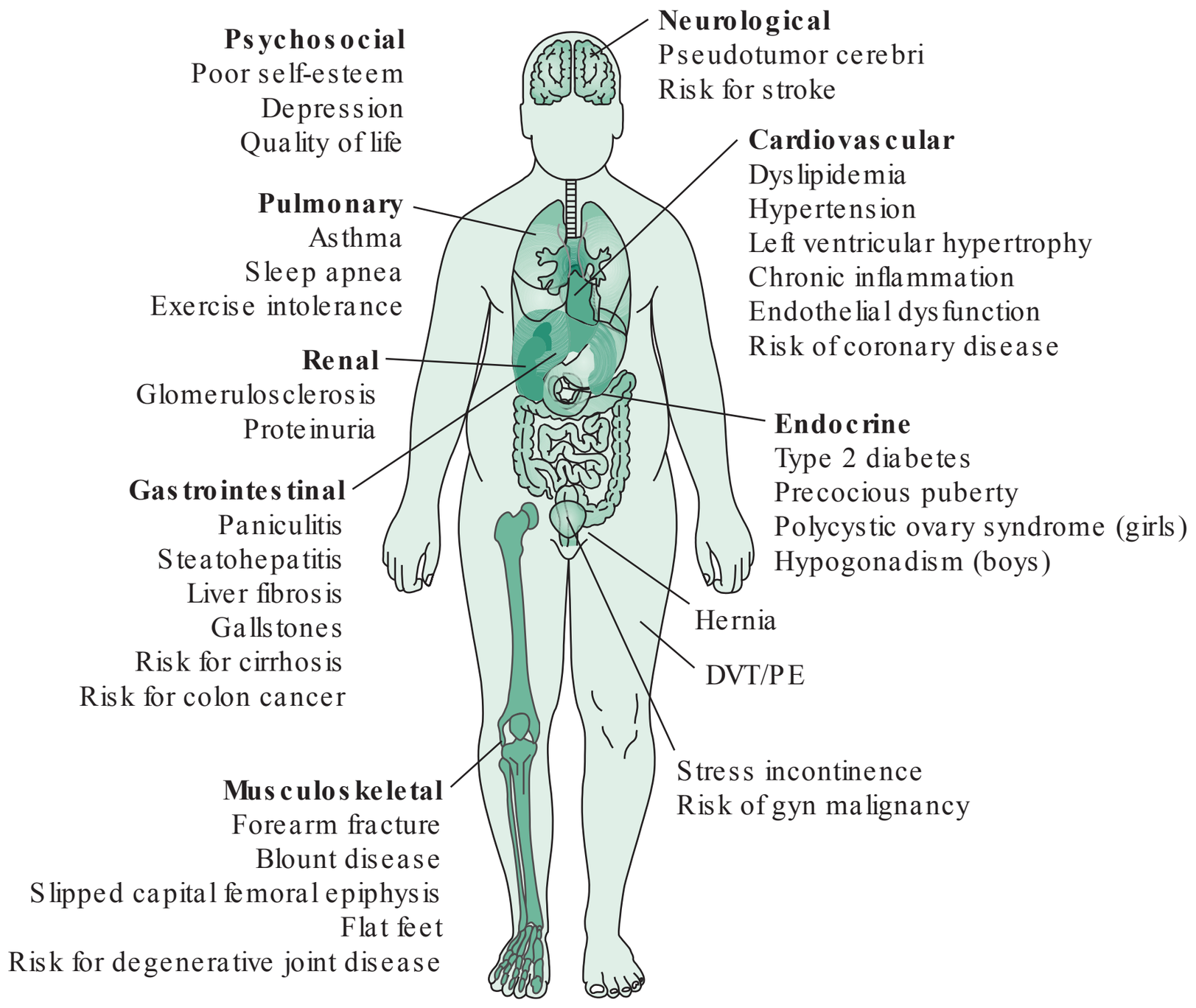
Substance abuse is a complex problem for adolescents and the broader society. See Chapter 5 for an in-depth look at this issue.

EATING DISORDERS (SEE CHAPTER 6)

OVERWEIGHT & OBESITY (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 11)

» Background

The prevalence of obesity (body mass index [BMI] > 95th percentile for age and gender) among adolescents 12–19 years has increased from 5% to 17% in the past 25 years, with higher rates in black and Hispanic youth. Furthermore, an adolescent who is overweight (BMI between 85th and 95th percentiles) has a 70% chance of becoming an obese adult. Figure 4–5 illustrates the multiple morbidities related to overweight and obesity during adolescence and the risk of the additional comorbidities associated with obesity in adulthood. Perhaps the most common short-term morbidities for overweight and obese adolescents are psychosocial, including social marginalization, poor self-esteem, depression, and poor quality of life. Like physical comorbidities, these psychosocial complications can extend into adulthood. Recent data on adolescent dietary and physical activity



▲**Figure 4–5.** Complications of obesity. DVT, deep venous thrombosis; PE, pulmonary embolism. (Adapted with permission from Xanthakos SA, Daniels SR, Inge TH: Bariatric surgery in adolescents: an update. Adolesc Med Clinics. 2006 Oct;17(3):589-612.)

behaviors that potentiate overweight and obesity indicate that almost 85% of teens have a deficient number of servings of vegetables and 78% have a deficient number of servings of fruits per day, 73% have less than the recommended level of physical activity (60 min/d, 7 d/wk), 33% watch 3 or more hours of television per average school day, and 40% participate in nonacademic computer activities for more than 3 hours per average school day.

» Evaluation

Regular screening for overweight and obesity by measuring BMI during routine visits and providing anticipatory guidance for the adolescent and family regarding healthy nutrition and physical activity are essential for early identification and prevention of overweight and related comorbidities. A family history of obesity, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and coronary heart disease places the overweight young person at even higher risk of developing these comorbidities. Details of individual and family dietary behaviors, assessment of physical activity and time spent with sedentary activities, previous efforts to lose weight, and current readiness to change can identify areas for modifiable lifestyle behaviors to promote weight loss. The review of systems should include questions about symptoms associated with comorbid conditions including insulin resistance and diabetes, gallbladder disease or steatohepatitis, sleep dysfunction, and menstrual irregularities (female patients). If an overweight adolescent is otherwise healthy and has no delay in growth or sexual maturation, an underlying endocrinologic, neurologic, or genetic cause of overweight is unlikely. BMI percentile and the presence of risk factors for morbidities can serve as guides for laboratory evaluations of overweight adolescents in the primary care setting (Table 4–5).

» Treatment

Comprehensive interventions that include both behavioral therapy and modifications in diet and physical activity seem to be the most successful approaches to obesity and its comorbidities, but clinical trials testing these interventions are limited. Several studies of childhood obesity treatment have confirmed the critical importance of parental participation in weight control programs. The greater independence of adolescents means that providers must discuss health behaviors directly with them while involving parents in the discussions and encouraging the whole family to make the home environment and family lifestyle a healthy one.

The most current evidence on obesity treatment in the pediatric population recommends a four-stage approach that includes (1) prevention plus (Table 4–6); (2) structured weight management; (3) comprehensive multidisciplinary intervention; and (4) tertiary care intervention. The appropriate weight management stage for each patient is based on age, BMI percentile, comorbid disease, and past obesity treatment.

Providers caring for overweight and obese adolescents should identify comorbidities and treat them as indicated. For example, an overweight teen with daytime somnolence and disruptive snoring may need a sleep study to evaluate for obstructive sleep apnea. A nonpregnant overweight young woman with acanthosis nigricans and oligomenorrhea should be evaluated for polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS).

Orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, is an approved medication for the treatment of obesity for patients age 12 or older. In general, obese adolescents who might benefit from medication should be referred to a multidisciplinary weight loss program, as medication should only be used as part of a comprehensive program which includes diet, physical activity, and behavioral modifications. Bariatric surgery is typically reserved for severely obese adolescents who are physically mature, who have a BMI of 50 kg/m^2 or more (or $\geq$ 40 kg/m^2 with significant comorbidities), who have failed a structured

Table 4–5. Screening tests for overweight and obese adolescents in the primary care setting.

BMI (percentile)	Risk Factors	Tests
85th–94th	None	Fasting lipid levels
85th–94th	Family history of obesity-related diseases; elevated blood pressure and/or lipid levels; tobacco use	Fasting lipid levels, AST and ALT, fasting serum glucose
≥ 95th		Fasting lipid levels, AST and ALT, fasting serum glucose

ALT, alanine aminotransferase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; BMI, body mass index.

Table 4–6. Components of stage 1, "prevention plus" healthy lifestyle approach to weight management for adolescents.

Recommend ≥ 5 servings of fruits and vegetables per day.
No more than 2 h of screen time per day.
No television in room where teen sleeps.
Minimize or eliminate sugar-sweetened beverages.
Address eating behaviors (eg, avoid skipping breakfast).
Recommend ≥ 1 h of moderate intensity physical activity per day.[a]
Involve whole family in lifestyle changes and acknowledge cultural differences.

[a]Overweight teens will likely need to start with shorter periods of lower-intensity activity and gradually increase the time spent being active as well as the intensity of the activity.

6-month weight loss program, and who are deemed by psychological assessment to be capable of adhering to the long-term lifestyle changes required after surgery.

Barlow SE: Expert committee recommendations regarding the prevention, assessment, and treatment of child and adolescent overweight and obesity: summary report. Pediatrics 2007;120(Suppl 4):S164–S192 [PMID: 18055651].

Daniels SR, Greer FR: Committee on Nutrition: lipid screening and cardiovascular health in childhood. Pediatrics 2008;122(1):198–208 [PMID: 18596007].

Eaton DK et al: Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States, 2009. MMWR Surveill Summ 2010;59(5):1–142 [PMID: 20520591]. http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/ss/ss5905.pdf. Accessed

Krebs NF et al: Assessment of child and adolescent overweight and obesity. Pediatrics 2007;120(Suppl 4):S193–S228 [PMID: 18055652].

Ogden CL et al: Prevalence of childhood and adult obesity in the United States, 2011–2012. JAMA 2014;11(8):806–814 [PMID: 24570244].

Spear BA et al: Recommendations for treatment of child and adolescent overweight and obesity. Pediatrics 2007;120(Suppl 4): S254–S288 [PMID: 18055654].

Xanthakos SA, Daniels SR, Inge TH: Bariatric surgery in adolescents: an update. Adolesc Med Clin 2006;17(3):589–612 [PMID: 17030281].

Growth charts are available at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention website: http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts/clinical_charts.htm. Accessed

SCHOOL AVOIDANCE

A teenager who has missed more than 1 week of school for a physical illness or symptom and whose clinical picture is inconsistent with serious illness should be suspected of having primary or secondary emotional factors that contribute to the absence. Investigation of absences may show a pattern, such as missing morning classes or missing the same days at the beginning or end of the week.

School avoidance should be suspected in children who are consistently absent in spite of parental and professional attempts to encourage attendance. Adolescents with school avoidance often have a history of excessive school absences or separation difficulties as younger children. They may have a record of recurrent somatic complaints. Parents often feel helpless to compel their adolescent to attend school, may lack the sophistication to distinguish malingering from illness, or may have an underlying need to keep the teenager at home.

A complete history and physical examination should include a review of the patient's medical, educational, and psychiatric history. Any symptoms of emotional problems should be explored. After obtaining permission from the patient and parents, the physician may find it helpful to speak directly with school officials and some key teachers. The adolescent may be having problems with particular teachers or subjects or experiencing adversity at school (eg, bullying or an intimidating instructor). Some students get so far behind academically that they see no way of catching up and feel overwhelmed. Separation anxiety, sometimes of long duration, may be manifested in subconscious worries that something may happen to the mother while the teenager is at school.

The school nurse may have useful information on the frequency of nurse visits in past school years. It is important to determine the parent's typical responses to absences and somatic complaints. The parent(s) may be making subconscious attempts to keep the adolescent at home, which may in turn produce secondary gains for the patient that perpetuate the complaint.

» Treatment

Returning to school quickly after a period of avoidance is key to recovery. The pediatrician should facilitate this process by offering to speak with school officials to excuse missed examinations, homework, and papers. The pediatrician should speak directly with teachers who are punitive with the objective of making the transition back to school as easy as possible. The longer adolescents stay out of school, the more anxious they may become about returning. If an illness or symptom becomes so severe that an adolescent cannot go to school, the patient and the parents must be informed that a visit to a medical office is necessary. The physician focuses visits on the parents as much as on the adolescent to alleviate parental guilt about sending the child to school. If the adolescent cannot stay in school, hospitalization should be recommended for in-depth medical and psychiatric evaluation. Parents should be cautioned about the possibility of relapse after school holidays, summer vacation, or an acute illness.

Hanna GL et al: Separation anxiety disorder and school refusal in children and adolescents. Pediatr Rev 2006;27:56 [PMID: 16452275].

Suveg C et al: Separation anxiety disorder, panic disorder, and school refusal. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2005;14:773 [PMID: 16171702].

SCHOOL FAILURE

The amount and complexity of course work increase significantly in middle school at the same time as the rapid physical, social, and emotional changes of puberty. To perform well academically, young adolescents must have the necessary cognitive capacity, study habits, concentration, motivation, interest, and emotional focus. Academic failure presenting at adolescence has a broad differential:

1. Limited intellectual ability
2. Learning disabilities
3. Depression or emotional problems

4. Visual or hearing problems; other physical disability
5. Excessive school absenteeism secondary to chronic disease such as asthma or neurologic dysfunction
6. Inability to concentrate
7. Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
8. Lack of motivation
9. Drug and alcohol use/abuse

Each of these causes must be explored. Evaluation requires a careful history, physical examination, appropriate laboratory tests, and standardized educational and psychological testing.

» Treatment

Management must be individualized to fit the specific needs and foster the specific strengths of the patient. For children with learning disabilities, an individual prescription for special education courses, teachers, and extracurricular activities is important. Counseling helps these adolescents gain coping skills, raise self-esteem, and develop socialization skills. If the patient has hyperactivity or attention-deficit disorder causing poor ability to concentrate, a trial of stimulant medication (eg, methylphenidate or dextroamphetamine) may be useful. If the teenager is depressed or if other serious psychological problems are uncovered, psychological evaluation should be recommended.

Wolraich ML et al: ADHD: clinical guideline for the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 2011;128(5): 1007–1122. [PMID: 22003063].

° Breast Disorders

The breast examination should be part of the routine physical examination in girls as soon as breast budding occurs. The preadolescent will thus accept breast examination as a routine part of health care, and the procedure can serve as an opportunity to offer reassurance and education. The breast examination begins with inspection of the breasts for symmetry and SMR stage. Asymmetrical breast development is common in young adolescents, and is generally transient, although 25% of women may continue to have asymmetry as adults. Organic causes of breast asymmetry include unilateral breast hypoplasia, amastia, absence of the pectoralis major muscle, and unilateral juvenile hypertrophy, in which there is rapid overgrowth of breast tissue usually immediately after thelarche.

The breast examination is performed with the patient supine and the ipsilateral arm placed behind the head. Using flat finger pads, the examiner palpates the breast tissue in concentric circles starting at the outer borders of the breast tissue along the sternum, clavicle, and axilla and then moving in toward the areola. The areola should be compressed gently to check for nipple discharge. Supraclavicular and infraclavicular and axillary regions should be palpated for lymph nodes.

Teaching adolescents to perform breast self-examinations is controversial. Experts have recommended adolescent self-examination as a means of helping them develop comfort with their changing bodies and for future cancer detection. Experts have also questioned whether self-examination might in fact result in anxiety, increased physician visits, and unnecessary invasive procedures since the vast majority of breast masses in adolescents are benign. The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force found little evidence that teaching or performing routine breast self-examination in adolescents reduces breast cancer mortality. Despite the lack of data for or against teaching or performing breast self-examinations during adolescence, there is some consensus that young women at increased risk of breast cancer—adolescents with a history of malignancy, adolescents who are at least 10 years postradiation therapy to the chest, and adolescents 18–21 years of age whose mothers carry the BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene should perform monthly breast self-examinations after each menstrual period.

BREAST MASSES

The majority of breast masses in adolescents are benign (Table 4–7). The incidence of primary and secondary breast cancers in girls aged 15–19 years during 2007–2011 was 0.2 per 100,000. Rare malignancies of adolescent girls include juvenile secretory carcinoma, intraductal carcinoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, malignant cystosarcoma phylloides, and metastatic tumor. Retrospective studies indicate that biopsies of breast masses in adolescents most commonly show fibroadenoma (67%), fibrocystic change (15%), and abscess or mastitis (3%).

1. Fibroadenoma

Fibroadenomas are the most common breast masses of adolescent girls. These and other breast lesions are listed in Tables 4–7 and 4–8. Fibroadenomas are composed of glandular and fibrous tissue. A fibroadenoma is typically nontender and diagnosed clinically with examination findings of a rubbery, smooth, well-circumscribed, mobile mass most often in the upper outer quadrant of the breast, although fibroadenomas can be found in any quadrant. Ten to twenty-five percent of girls will have multiple or bilateral lesions. Fibroadenomas are typically slow growing with average size 2–3 cm. They may remain static in size for months to years with 10%–40% completely resolving during adolescence. The dense fibroglandular tissue of the adolescent breast may cause false-positive results on standard mammograms. Thus, ultrasonography is the best imaging modality with

Table 4–7. Breast masses in adolescent females.

Common
Fibroadenoma
Fibrocystic changes
Breast cysts (including subareolar cysts)
Breast abscess or mastitis
Fat necrosis (after trauma)
Less common (benign)
Lymphangioma
Hemangioma
Intraductal papilloma
Juvenile papillomatosis
Giant fibroadenoma
Neurofibromatosis
Nipple adenoma or keratoma
Mammary duct ectasia
Intramammary lymph node
Lipoma
Hematoma
Hamartoma
Galactocele
Rare (malignant or malignant potential)
Juvenile secretory carcinoma
Intraductal carcinoma
Cystosarcoma phylloides
Sarcomas (fibrosarcoma, malignant fibrous histiocytoma, rhabdomyosarcoma)
Metastatic cancer (hepatocellular carcinoma, lymphoma, neuroblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma)

which to evaluate a breast mass in an adolescent if further evaluation beyond the clinical examination is necessary. Fibroadenomas less than 5 cm can be monitored for growth or regression over 3–4 months. Further evaluation will be dictated by the patient's course with semiannual clinical examinations for a few years followed by annual examinations for a mass that is regressing. Patients with concerning breast masses including fibroadenomas that are larger than 5 cm, undiagnosed breast masses that are enlarging or have overlying skin changes, and any suspicious breast mass in a patient with a history of previous malignancy should be referred to a breast care specialist.

2. Fibrocystic Breast Changes

Fibrocystic breast changes are much more common in adults than adolescents. Symptoms include mild swelling and palpable nodularity most commonly in the upper outer quadrants. Mastalgia is typically cyclic, usually occurring just before menstruation. Reassuring the young woman about the benign nature of the process may be all that is needed. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) such as ibuprofen or naproxen sodium help alleviate symptoms. Oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) can also be beneficial.

Table 4–8. Characteristics and management of breast lesions in adolescent females.

Fibroadenoma	2- to 3-cm, rubbery, well-circumscribed, mobile, nontender. Commonly found in upper outer quadrant of the breast. Management is observation.
Giant juvenile fibroadenoma	Large, > 5 cm fibroadenoma with overlying skin stretching and dilated superficial veins. Benign but requires excision for confirmation of diagnosis and for cosmetic reasons.
Breast cysts	Usually caused by ductal ectasia or blocked Montgomery tubercles, both of which can have associated nipple discharge. Ultrasound can help differentiate from solid mass. Most resolve spontaneously.
Fibrocystic changes	More common with advancing age after adolescence. Mild swelling and palpable nodularity in upper outer quadrants. Associated with cyclic premenstrual mastalgia.
Abscess	Often associated with overlying mastitis and/or purulent nipple discharge. Culture abscess material and/or nipple discharge before starting antibiotics.
Cystosarcoma phyllodes	Large, rapidly growing tumor associated with overlying skin changes, dilated veins, and skin necrosis. Requires excision. Most often benign but can be malignant.
Intraductal papilloma	Palpable intraductal tumor, which is often subareolar with associated nipple discharge, but may be in the periphery of the breast in adolescents. Requires surgical excision.
Juvenile papillomatosis	Rare breast tumor characterized by a grossly nodular breast mass described as having a "Swiss-cheese" appearance. Requires surgical excision.
Fat necrosis	Localized inflammatory process in the breast; typically follows trauma (sports or seat belt injuries). Subsequent scarring may be confused with changes similar to those associated with malignancy.

Supportive bras may provide symptomatic relief. Studies have shown no association between methylxanthine and fibrocystic breasts; however, some women report reduced symptoms when they discontinue caffeine.

3. Breast Abscess

Although breast feeding is the most common cause of mastitis, shaving or plucking periareolar hair, nipple piercing, and trauma occurring during sexual activity are predisposing factors in teenagers. The most common

causative organisms are normal skin flora. The female with a breast abscess usually complains of unilateral breast pain, and examination reveals overlying inflammatory changes. The examination may be misleading in that the infection may extend deeper into the breast than suspected. Staphylococcus aureus is the most common pathogen. β-Hemolytic streptococci, Escherichia coli, and Pseudomonas aeruginosa have also been implicated. Fluctuant abscesses should be incised and drained and fluid cultured. Antimicrobial coverage for S aureus (including methicillin-resistant strains) should be given initially (generally orally, unless infection is severe) and the patient should be monitored closely for response to therapy until culture and sensitivity results are available.

Healing time after nipple piercing is 3–6 months. Health risks associated with nipple piercing, in addition to breast abscess, include allergic reactions to the jewelry, keloid scar formation, and increased risk of hepatitis B and C and HIV. Complications associated with abscess formation secondary to nipple piercing include endocarditis, cardiac valve injury, cardiac prosthesis infection, metal foreign body reaction in the breast tissue, and recurrent infection.

NIPPLE DISCHARGE & GALACTORRHEA

Ductal ectasia is a common cause of nipple discharge in the developing breast and is associated with dilation of the mammary ducts, periductal fibrosis, and inflammation. It can present with bloody, brown, or sticky multicolored nipple discharge and/or a cystic breast mass, which is usually in the subareolar region. Blocked ducts and fluid collections usually resolve spontaneously but can become infected, producing mastitis. Patients should look for erythema, warmth, and tenderness indicating mastitis. Oral antibiotics covering skin flora should be initiated if infection is suspected. Serous or serosanguineous nipple discharge is common and can be associated with fibrocystic breast changes. Montgomery tubercles are small glands located at the outer aspect of the areola that can drain clear or brownish fluid through an ectopic opening on the areola and may be associated with a small subareolar mass. These lesions and discharge typically resolve spontaneously. Intraductal papillomas arising from proliferation of ductal cells projecting into the duct lumen are a rare cause of bloody or serosanguineous nipple discharge and can also present with a subareolar or peripheral mass. These lesions are associated with increased risk of malignancy in adults.

Galactorrhea is distinguishable from other causes of nipple discharge by its milky character and tendency to involve both breasts. It is usually benign. The most common causes include chronic stimulation or irritation of the nipple, medications and illicit drugs (drugs causing galactorrhea are listed in Table 4–9), pregnancy, childbirth, or abortion. Prolactin-secreting tumors (prolactinomas) and hypothyroidism are common pathologic causes of galactorrhea during adolescence. Less common causes of hyperprolactinemia and galactorrhea include diseases in or near the hypothalamus or pituitary that interfere with the secretion of dopamine or its delivery to the hypothalamus. Included are tumors of the hypothalamus and/or pituitary, both benign (eg, craniopharyngiomas) and malignant (eg, metastatic disease), infiltrative diseases of the hypothalamus (eg, sarcoidosis), and pituitary stalk damage (eg, section due to head trauma or surgery or compression). Stimulation of the intercostal nerves (eg, chest wall surgery or herpes zoster infection), renal failure (decreased prolactin clearance), polycystic ovarian syndrome, and emotional or physical stress can also cause hyperprolactinemia, which can induce galactorrhea.

Table 4–9. Medications and herbs associated with galactorrhea.

Anticonvulsants (valproic acid)
Antidepressants (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, tricyclic antidepressants)
Anxiolytics (alprazolam)
Antihypertensives (atenolol, methyldopa, reserpine, verapamil)
Antipsychotics
Typical (haloperidol, phenothiazine, pimozide)
Atypical (risperidone, olanzapine, molindone)
Antiemetics (prochlorperazine)
Herbs (anise, blessed thistle, fennel, fenugreek seed, nettle)
Hormonal contraceptives
Isoniazid
Illicit drugs (amphetamines, cannabis, opiates)
Motility agents (metoclopramide)
Muscle relaxants (cyclobenzaprine)

» Clinical Findings

Breast ultrasonography can be helpful in determining the cause of nipple discharge and breast masses. Depending upon additional findings from the history and examination, evaluation of galactorrhea may include a pregnancy test, prolactin level, and thyroid function studies. If there is a question as to whether the discharge is true galactorrhea, fat staining of the discharge can be confirmatory. Elevated TSH confirms the diagnosis of hypothyroidism. Elevated prolactin and normal TSH, often accompanied by amenorrhea, in the absence of medication known to cause hyperprolactinemia suggests a hypothalamic or pituitary tumor. In such cases, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the brain and consultation with a pediatric endocrinologist are indicated.

» Treatment

Observation with serial examination is recommended for nipple discharge associated with breast mass unless a papilloma is suspected by the presence of bloody or

serosanguineous nipple discharge with or without a subareolar or peripheral mass. This entity requires further evaluation and excision by a breast surgeon. Treating the underlying cause of galactorrhea is usually effective. Galactorrhea due to hypothyroidism should be treated with thyroid hormone replacement. An alternative medication can be prescribed in cases of medication-induced galactorrhea. Adolescents with galactorrhea without a breast mass who have normal prolactin and TSH levels can be followed clinically and counseled about supportive measures such as avoidance of nipple stimulation, stress reduction, and keeping a menstrual calendar to monitor for oligomenorrhea, which might indicate a systemic hormonal problem such as hyperprolactinemia or thyroid disease. In many cases, symptoms resolve spontaneously and no underlying diagnosis is made. Medical management of prolactinomas with dopamine agonists such as bromocriptine is the favored approach.

GYNECOMASTIA

Gynecomastia, benign subareolar glandular breast enlargement, affects up to 65% of adolescent males. It typically appears at least 6 months after the onset of secondary sex characteristics with peak incidence during SMR stages 3 and 4. Breast tissue enlargement usually regresses within 1–3 years, and persistence beyond age 17 years is uncommon. Approximately half of young men with gynecomastia have a positive family history of gynecomastia. The pathogenesis of pubertal gynecomastia has long been attributed to a transient imbalance between estrogens that stimulate proliferation of breast tissue and androgens which antagonize this effect. Leptin has recently been implicated in the development of gynecomastia as levels are higher in healthy nonobese adolescent males with gynecomastia when compared to controls. There are several proposed mechanisms in which leptin acts biochemically to alter the estrogen-androgen ratio.

» Clinical Findings

Palpation of the breasts is necessary to distinguish adipose tissue (pseudogynecomastia) from the glandular tissue found in true gynecomastia, which is palpable as a fibroglandular mass located concentrically beneath the nipple-areolar complex. Gynecomastia is bilateral in almost two-thirds of patients. Findings that indicate more serious disease include hard or firm breast tissue, unilateral breast growth, eccentric masses outside of the nipple-areolar complex, and overlying skin changes. A genitourinary examination is needed to evaluate pubertal SMR, testicular volume and masses, or irregularities of the testes.

In the absence of abnormalities on history or physical examination, clinical monitoring of male gynecomastia for 12–18 months is sufficient. Laboratory evaluation is warranted if the patient with gynecomastia is prepubertal, appears undervirilized, has an eccentric breast mass, has a rapid progression of breast enlargement, has a testicular mass, or has persistence of gynecomastia beyond the usual observation period. The initial laboratory evaluation includes thyroid function tests, testosterone, estradiol, human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), and LH. Additional studies depending on preliminary findings include karyotype, liver and renal function studies, dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, and prolactin. Any patient with a testicular mass or laboratory results suggesting possible tumor, such as high serum testosterone, hCG, or estradiol, should have a testicular ultrasound. Further evaluation includes adrenal or brain imaging if a prolactin-secreting pituitary tumor or adrenal tumor is suspected.

» Differential Diagnosis

Gynecomastia may be drug-induced (Table 4–10). Testicular, adrenal, or pituitary tumors, Klinefelter syndrome, secondary hypogonadism, partial or complete androgen insensitivity syndrome, hyperthyroidism, or chronic diseases (eg, cystic fibrosis, ulcerative colitis, liver disease, renal failure, and AIDS) leading to malnutrition may be associated with gynecomastia. Breast cancer in the adolescent male is extraordinarily rare.

Table 4–10. Drugs associated with gynecomastia.

	Examples
Antiandrogens	Cyproterone, finasteride, flutamide, ketoconazole, nilutamide, spironolactone
Antineoplastic and immunomodulators	Alkylating agents, bleomycin, cisplatin, cyclosporine, imatinib, methotrexate, nitrosurea, vincristine
Antiulcer drugs	Cimetidine, metoclopramide, omeprazole, ranitidine
Cardiovascular drugs	Amiodarone, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, calcium channel blockers, digitoxin, reserpine, spironolactone
Drugs of abuse	Alcohol, amphetamines, marijuana, opiates
Hormones	Anabolic androgenic steroids, estrogens, testosterone, chorionic gonadotropin
Infectious agents	Antiretrovirals, ketoconazole, isoniazid, metronidazole
Psychoactive medications	Diazepam, tricyclic antidepressants, haloperidol, atypical antipsychotics, phenothiazines

» Treatment

If gynecomastia is idiopathic, reassurance about the common and benign nature of the process can be given. Resolution may take up to 2 years. Surgery is reserved for those with persistent severe breast enlargement and/or significant psychological trauma. In cases of drug-induced gynecomastia, the inciting agent should be discontinued if possible. The patient should be referred to an endocrinologist or oncologist if other pathologic etiologies are diagnosed.

De Silva NK: Breast disorders in the female adolescent. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2012;23(1):34–52 [PMID: 22764554].

DiVasta A, Weldon C, Labow BI: The breast: examination and lesions. In: Emans SJ, Laufer MR, Goldstein DP (eds). Pediatric and Adolescent Gynecology. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012:405–420.

Hagan JF, Shaw JS, Duncan PM: Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents. 3rd ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2008.

Howlader N et al (eds): SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1975–2011, Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute. Based in November 2013 SEER data submission, posted to the SEER website, April 2014. http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2011/.

Jayasinghe Y, Simmons PS: Fibroadenomas in adolescence. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2009;21(5):402–406 [PMID: 19606032].

Nordt CA, DiVasta AD: Gynecomastia in adolescents. Curr Opin Pediatr 2008;20(4):375–382 [PMID: 18622190].

Gynecologic Disorders in Adolescence

PHYSIOLOGY OF MENSTRUATION

The ovulatory menstrual cycle is divided into three consecutive phases: follicular (days 1–14), ovulatory (midcycle), and luteal (days 16–28). During the follicular phase, pulsatile gonadotropin-releasing hormone from the hypothalamus stimulates anterior pituitary secretion of FSH and LH. Under the influence of FSH and LH, a dominant ovarian follicle emerges by day 5–7 of the menstrual cycle, and the other follicles become atretic. Rising estradiol levels produced by the maturing follicle cause proliferation of the endometrium. By the midfollicular phase, FSH begins to decline secondary to estradiol-mediated negative feedback, while LH continues to rise as a result of estradiol-mediated positive feedback.

Rising LH initiates progesterone secretion and luteinization of the granulosa cells of the follicle. Progesterone in turn further stimulates LH and FSH. This leads to the LH surge, which causes the follicle to rupture and expel the oocyte. During the luteal phase, LH and FSH gradually decline. The corpus luteum secretes progesterone. The endometrium enters the secretory phase in response to rising levels of estrogen and progesterone, with maturation 8–9 days after ovulation. If pregnancy and placental hCG release do not occur, luteolysis begins; estrogen and progesterone levels decline and the endometrial lining is shed as menstrual flow approximately 14 days after ovulation. In the first 2 years after menarche, the majority of cycles (50%–80%) are anovulatory. Between 10% and 20% of cycles are anovulatory for up to 5 years after menarche.

PELVIC EXAMINATION

Indications for a pelvic examination in an adolescent include abdominal or pelvic pain, intra-abdominal or pelvic mass, abnormal vaginal bleeding or other menstrual disorders, pathologic vaginal discharge, or need for cervical cytology screening. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists advocates starting Papanicolaou (Pap) cytology screening at age 21 years for both sexually experienced and sexually inexperienced women. This is based on the low incidence of cervical cancer in younger women and the potential for adverse effects associated with follow-up of young women with abnormal cytology screening results. Similarly, although reflex testing for high-risk cervical human papillomavirus (HPV) genotypes for women with an ASC-US (atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance) cytology result can help guide the frequency of follow-up screening, co-testing for HPV is not recommended for women younger than 30 years because of the very high prevalence of high-risk HPV infections, a high rate of spontaneous clearance, and the low incidence of cervical cancer in sexually active women in this age group. Pregnancy during adolescence does not alter screening guidelines. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that HIV-positive adolescents should have cervical cytology screening twice (every 6 months) within the first year after initial HIV diagnosis even if younger than 21 years and, if both tests are normal, annual screening thereafter. Algorithms for managing abnormal cervical cytology can be found at the American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology website: http://www.asccp.org/Guidelines-2/Management-Guidelines-2. Guidelines for management of abnormal cytology in HIV positive women can be obtained from the CDC and partner organizations at http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf.

The adolescent may be apprehensive about the first pelvic examination. Sensitive counseling and age-appropriate education about the purpose of the examination, pelvic anatomy, and the components of the examination should occur in an unhurried manner. The use of diagrams and models may facilitate discussion. Time should be allotted for the adolescent to ask questions. Ideally, the examination should occur in a controlled and comfortable setting. The adolescent may request to have her mother or family member present during the examination for reassurance; however, in many instances an adolescent will request that the examination occur confidentially. Having another

female staff present to support the adolescent in this setting may be helpful. A female staff chaperone should be present with male examiners.

The pelvic examination begins by placing the patient in the dorsal lithotomy position after equipment and supplies are ready (Table 4–11). Patients with orthopedic or other physical disabilities require accommodation for proper positioning and comfort. The examiner inspects the external genitalia, noting sexually maturity rating, estrogenization of the vaginal mucosa (moist, pink, and more elastic mucosa), shape of the hymen, the size of the clitoris (2–5 mm wide is normal), any unusual rashes or lesions on the vulva such as folliculitis from shaving, warts or other skin lesions, and genital piercing or body art. It can be helpful to ask an adolescent if she has any questions about her body during the inspection as she might have concerns that she was too shy to ask (eg, normalcy of labial hypertrophy). In cases of alleged sexual abuse or assault, the presence of any lesions, including lacerations, bruises, scarring, or synechiae about the hymen, vulva, or anus, should be noted.

The patient should be prepared for insertion of the speculum to help her remain relaxed. The speculum should be inserted into the vagina posteriorly with a downward direction to avoid the urethra. A medium Pedersen speculum is most often used in sexually experienced patients; a narrow Huffman is used for virginal patients. In a virginal female prior to the speculum examination, a one-finger examination in the vagina can help the provider identify the position of the cervix and can give the patient an appreciation for the sensation she can expect with placement of the speculum.

Table 4–11. Items for pelvic examination.

General	Gloves, good light source, appropriate-sized speculums, sterile cotton applicator swabs, large swabs to remove excess bleeding or discharge, patient labels, hand mirror for patient education
Wet prep of vaginal discharge	pH paper, microscope slides and cover slips, NaCl and KOH solutions
Pap smear	Pap smear liquid media or slides with fixative; cervical spatula and endocervical cytologic brush; or broom for collection
STI testing	Gonorrhea and Chlamydia test media with specific collection swabs
Bimanual examination	Gloves, water-based lubricant

Warming the speculum with tap water prior to insertion can be more comfortable for the patient and also provide lubrication. Simultaneously touching the inner aspect of the patient's thigh or applying gentle pressure to the perineum away from the introitus while inserting the speculum helps distract attention from the placement of the speculum. The vaginal walls and cervix are inspected for anatomical abnormalities, inflammation, and lesions and the quantity and quality of discharge adherent to the vaginal walls and pooled in the vagina are noted. The presence of a cervical ectropion is commonly observed in adolescents as erythema surrounding the cervical os. The ectropion is the extension of the endocervical columnar epithelium outside the cervical os onto the face of the cervix.

Specimens are obtained in the following order: vaginal pH, saline and KOH wet preparations, cervical cytology (Pap) screening if indicated, and endocervical swabs for gonorrhea and Chlamydia (Table 4–12). STIs are discussed in

Table 4–12. Diagnostic tests and procedures performed during speculum vaginal examination.

Vaginal pH	Use applicator swab to sample vaginal discharge adherent to the wall or in the vaginal pool if a speculum is in place; immediately apply it to pH paper for reading.
Saline and KOH wet preparations	Sample discharge as above with different swabs, smear small sample on glass slide, apply small drop of saline or KOH and immediately cover with coverslip, and evaluate under microscope.
Pap smear[a]	Gently remove excessive discharge from surface of cervix. Exocervical cells are sampled with a spatula by applying gentle pressure on the cervix with the spatula while rotating it around the cervical os. Endocervical cells are sampled by gently inserting the cytologic brush into the cervical os and rotating it. Both cell types are collected by the broom when it is centered over the cervical os and rotated.
STI testing[a]	Insert specific test swabs (eg, Dacron for most Chlamydia test media) into the cervical os and rotate to obtain endocervical samples for Chlamydia and gonorrhea, or if using approved test for vaginal collection, insert the swab into the vagina and rotate, touching the vaginal wall. Vaginal testing for Trichomonas vaginalis is also available.

STI, sexually transmitted infection.
[a]Refer to manufacturer instructions for sample collection and processing.

further detail in Chapter 44. The speculum is then removed, and bimanual examination is performed with one or two fingers in the vagina and the other hand on the abdomen to palpate the uterus and adnexa for size, position, and tenderness.

MENSTRUAL DISORDERS

1. Amenorrhea

Primary amenorrhea is defined as having no menstrual periods or secondary sex characteristics by age 13 years or no menses in the presence of secondary sex characteristics by age 15 years. In the adolescent who has achieved menarche, secondary amenorrhea is defined as the absence of menses for three consecutive cycles or for 6 months in a patient with irregular cycles.

A. Evaluation of Primary and Secondary Amenorrhea

In evaluating amenorrhea, it is helpful to consider anatomical levels of possible abnormalities from the hypothalamus to the genital tract (Table 4–13).

A stepwise approach, using clinical history, growth charts, physical examination, and appropriate laboratory studies will allow providers to determine the etiology of amenorrhea in most adolescents. Evaluation begins with a thorough developmental and sexual history. Establishing a pubertal timeline including age at thelarche, adrenarche, growth spurt, and menarche is helpful in evaluating pubertal development. Although there can be variations in the onset, degree, and timing of these stages, the progression of stages is predictable. Adrenal androgens are largely responsible for axillary and pubic hair. Estrogen is responsible for breast development; maturation of the external genitalia, vagina, and uterus; and menstruation. Lack of development suggests pituitary or ovarian failure or gonadal dysgenesis. Determining the patient's gynecologic age (time in years and months since menarche) is helpful in assessing the maturity of the hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian axis. A menstrual history includes date of last menstrual period (LMP), frequency and duration of periods, amount of bleeding, and premenstrual symptoms. Irregular menstrual cycles are common in the first 1–2 years after menarche. Two-thirds of adolescents with a gynecologic age more than 2 years have regular menstrual cycles.

Relevant components of the past medical and surgical histories include the neonatal history, treatment for malignancies, presence of autoimmune disorders or endocrinopathies, and current medications (prescribed and over-the-counter). Family history includes age at menarche of maternal relatives, familial gynecologic or fertility problems, autoimmune diseases, or endocrinopathies. A review of systems should focus on symptoms of hypothalamic-pituitary disease such as weight change, headache, visual disturbance, galactorrhea, polyuria, and/or polydipsia. A history of cyclic abdominal and/or pelvic pain in a mature adolescent with amenorrhea may indicate an anatomic abnormality such as an imperforate hymen. Acne and hirsutism are clinical markers of androgen excess. Both hypo- and hyperthyroidism can cause menstrual irregularities. Changes in weight, quality of skin and hair, and stooling pattern may indicate a thyroid

Table 4–13. Differential diagnosis of amenorrhea by anatomic site of cause.

Hypothalamic-pituitary axis
Hypothalamic suppression
Chronic disease
Stress
Malnutrition
Strenuous athletics
Drugs (haloperidol, phenothiazines, atypical antipsychotics)
Central nervous system lesion
Pituitary lesion: adenoma, prolactinoma
Craniopharyngioma, brainstem, or parasellar tumors
Head injury with hypothalamic contusion
Infiltrative process (sarcoidosis)
Vascular disease (hypothalamic vasculitis)
Congenital conditions[a]
Kallmann syndrome (anosmia)
ovaries
Gonadal dysgenesis[a]
Turner syndrome (XO)
Mosaic (XX/XO)
Injury to ovary
Autoimmune disease (oophoritis)
Infection (mumps)
Toxins (alkylating chemotherapeutic agents)
Irradiation
Trauma, torsion (rare)
Polycystic ovary syndrome
Ovarian failure
Uterovaginal outflow tract
Müllerian dysgenesis[a]
Congenital deformity or absence of uterus, uterine tubes, or vagina
Imperforate hymen, transverse vaginal septum, vaginal agenesis, agenesis of the cervix[a]
Androgen insensitivity syndrome (absent uterus)[a]
Uterine lining defect
Asherman syndrome (intrauterine synechiae postcurettage or endometritis)
Tuberculosis, brucellosis
defect in hormone synthesis or action (virilization may be present)
Adrenal hyperplasia[a]
Cushing disease
Adrenal tumor
Ovarian tumor (rare)
Drugs (steroids, ACTH)

ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone.
[a]Indicates condition that usually presents as primary amenorrhea.

Table 4–14. Components of the physical examination for amenorrhea.

General appearance	Syndromic features (eg, Turner syndrome with webbed neck, shield chest, widely spaced nipples, increased carrying angle of the arms)
Anthropometrics	Height, weight, BMI and percentiles for age, vital signs (HR, BP)
Ophthalmologic	Visual field cuts, papilledema
Neck	Thyromegaly
Breast	SMR staging, galactorrhea
Abdomen	Masses
Genital	SMR staging, estrogenization of vaginal mucosa (pink and moist vs thin red mucosa of hypoestrogenization), hymenal patency, clitoromegaly (width > 5 mm)
Pelvic and bimanual	Vaginal depth by insertion of a saline moistened applicator swab into the vagina or by bimanual examination (normal >2 cm); palpation of the uterus and ovaries by bimanual examination
Skin	Acne, hirsutism, acanthosis nigricans

BMI, body mass index; BP, blood pressure; HR, heart rate; SMR, sexual maturity rating.

problem. A confidential social history should include sexual activity, contraceptive use, the possibility of pregnancy, and use of tobacco, drugs, or alcohol. The patient should also be questioned about major stressors, symptoms of depression and anxiety, dietary habits including any disordered eating or weight-loss behaviors, and athletic participation.

A thorough physical examination should include the components listed in Table 4–14. If a patient cannot tolerate a pelvic or bimanual examination, the presence of the uterus can be assessed by rectoabdominal examination or ultrasonography. Ultrasound provides evaluation of pelvic anatomy and possible genital tract obstruction, measurement of the endometrial stripe as an indicator of estrogen stimulation, and identification of ovarian cysts or masses.

Figure 4–6 illustrates an approach to the laboratory and radiologic evaluation of primary or secondary amenorrhea. Initial studies should include a urine pregnancy test, complete blood count, TSH, prolactin, and FSH. If there is evidence of hyperandrogenemia (acne, hirsutism) and PCOS is suspected, total and free testosterone and dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS) should be obtained. If systemic illness is suspected, a urinalysis and a chemistry panel (including renal and liver function tests) and erythrocyte sedimentation rate should be obtained. If short stature and delayed puberty are present, a bone age and karyotype should be done.

If pelvic examination or ultrasonography reveals normal female external genitalia and pelvic organs and the patient is not pregnant, the patient should be given a challenge of oral medroxyprogesterone, 10 mg daily for 10 days. Positive response to the progestin challenge with withdrawal bleeding is suggestive of the presence of a normal, estrogen-primed uterus.

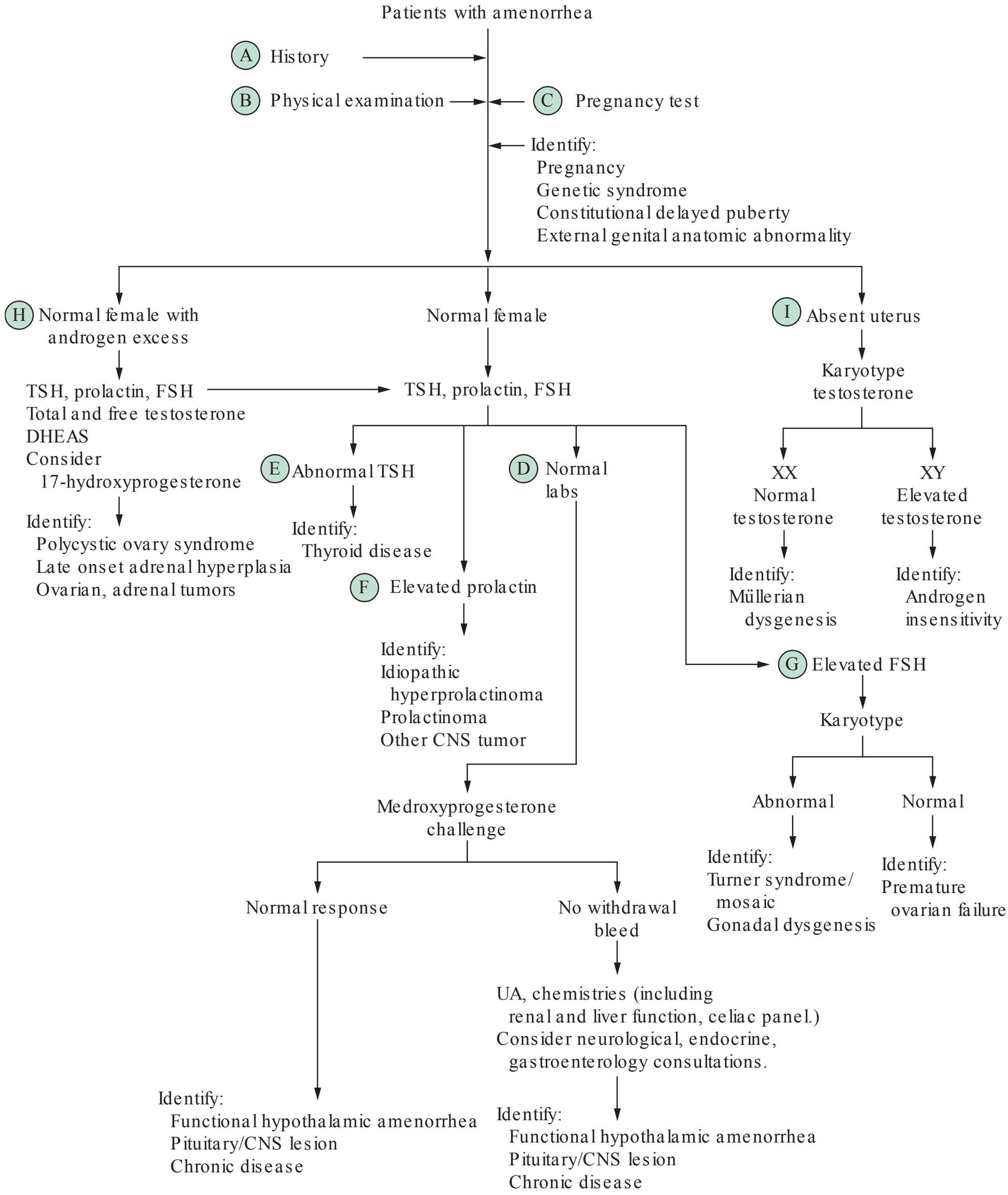
Elevated serum prolactin indicates a possible prolactin secreting tumor. Prolactin testing is sensitive and can be elevated with stress, eating, or sexual intercourse. A mildly elevated test should be repeated prior to MRI of the brain for a prolactinoma. Elevated FSH indicates ovarian insufficiency or gonadal dysgenesis and a karyotype for Turner syndrome or Turner mosaic should be obtained. Autoimmune oophoritis should be assessed by antiovarian antibodies if the chromosome analysis is normal. Normal or low serum gonadotropins indicate hypothalamic suppression and functional amenorrhea if the patient's weight is normal and there is a reasonable explanation such as vigorous exercise. Functional amenorrhea, although relatively common, is a diagnosis of exclusion. Low serum gonadotropin concentration can also be caused by malnutrition as in anorexia nervosa, endocrinopathies, and chronic diseases or by a central nervous system tumor.

If the physical examination or ultrasound reveals an absent uterus, chromosomal analysis and serum testosterone should be obtained to differentiate between Mullerian dysgenesis and androgen insensitivity. Mullerian dysgenesis or Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser (MRKH) syndrome is the congenital absence of the vagina with variable uterine development. These women have normal serum testosterone levels. Pelvic MRI is helpful to clarify the nature of the vaginal agenesis and to differentiate it from low-lying transverse vaginal septum, agenesis of the uterus and vagina, and imperforate hymen. Individuals with androgen insensitivity are phenotypically female but have an absent upper vagina, uterus, and fallopian tubes; a male karyotype; and an elevated serum testosterone (normal range for males).

The management of primary or secondary amenorrhea depends on the underlying pathology. Hormonal treatment is used in patients with hypothalamic, pituitary, and ovarian causes. Surgical repair may be required in patients with outflow tract anomalies.

B. Polycystic Ovary Syndrome

Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS) is the most common endocrine disorder of reproductive-aged women. It occurs in up to 6% of adolescents and 12% of adult women. PCOS is characterized by ovarian dysfunction, disordered gonadotropin secretion, and hyperandrogenism, which cause



▲**Figure 4–6.** Evaluation of primary amenorrhea and secondary amenorrhea. CNS, central nervous system; DHEAS, dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone; UA, urine analysis.

irregular periods, hirsutism, and acne. Many adolescents with PCOS are overweight and the association of PCOS with insulin resistance is well established. Adolescents with PCOS are at increased risk for obesity-related morbidities including type 2 diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, and cardiovascular disease; low self-esteem, depression, and anxiety; and adult reproductive health problems including infertility and endometrial cancer.

The adolescent with PCOS usually presents with overweight, oligomenorrhea or secondary amenorrhea, acne, and hirsutism. The most recent diagnostic criteria for PCOS in adolescents include the presence of clinical and/or biochemical hyperandrogenism (after exclusion of other pathologies) in the presence of persistent oligomenorrhea.

Table 4–15 outlines a standard laboratory evaluation for PCOS. If other etiologies of virilization such as late-onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia (history of premature pubarche, high DHEAS, clitoromegaly) are suspected, a first morning 17-hydroxyprogesterone should be collected to look for 21-hydroxylase deficiency. Urine cortisol or a dexamethasone suppression test is performed if Cushing syndrome is suspected. If the patient is overweight and/or has acanthosis nigricans, a fasting lipid panel and glucose testing are recommended. A 2-hour oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) to evaluate for impaired glucose tolerance should also be considered as a normal fasting glucose may be falsely reassuring. A hemoglobin A_{1C} test may be considered if a patient is unable or unwilling to complete an OGTT. Consultation with a pediatric endocrinologist can assist in further evaluation and management of significantly elevated androgens and possible endocrinopathies.

Encouraging lifestyle changes that will promote weight loss is a primary goal of therapy for PCOS in adolescence. Weight loss is associated with improved menstrual regulation, decreased symptoms of hyperandrogenemia, and improved obesity-related comorbidities. Use of combination hormonal contraceptives will improve menstrual regularity, decrease ovarian and adrenal androgen production, and increase sex hormone–binding globulin (SHBG). There are no current guidelines for the use of insulin-sensitizing medications such as metformin to treat PCOS in adolescents; however, it is prescribed for impaired glucose tolerance or type 2 diabetes. Providers should be aware that metformin will improve the frequency of ovulation, and contraception should also be prescribed for sexually active teens.

Table 4–15. Laboratory evaluation for polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS).

Pregnancy test	
Testosterone (total and free)	> 200 ng/dL suggests tumor
Sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG)	
Dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS)	> 700 mcg/dL suggests tumor
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	
Luteinizing hormone (LH)	LH:FSH ratio is elevated if > 2.5:1

2. Dysmenorrhea

Dysmenorrhea or pain with menstrual periods is the most common gynecologic complaint of adolescent girls, with up to 90% of adolescent girls reporting some symptoms. Fifteen percent of adolescent women describe their symptoms as severe. The prevalence of dysmenorrhea increases with gynecologic age due to its association with ovulatory cycles. Dysmenorrhea can be designated as primary or secondary depending upon the absence or presence of underlying pelvic pathology (Table 4–16). Potent prostaglandins are the mediators of dysmenorrhea, producing uterine contractions, tissue ischemia, and hypersensitivity of pain fibers in the uterus.

In addition to taking a gynecologic and sexual history, an accurate characterization of the pain (timing with menses, intensity, duration, use of pain medications) is important in determining functional impairment. The pelvic examination can usually be deferred in nonsexually active adolescents with probable primary dysmenorrhea. Adolescents should be encouraged to keep track of their menstrual cycles using a calendar to predict when a period is imminent, thereby allowing for more proactive use of NSAIDs 1–2 days before the start of the anticipated period or with the first indication of discomfort. NSAIDs are typically continued for an additional 2–3 days after onset of pain. Recommended medications are ibuprofen 400–600 mg every 6 hours or naproxen 500 mg twice a day. If the patient does not respond to NSAIDs, suppression of ovulation with OCPs or other combined hormonal contraceptives such as the transdermal patch or intravaginal ring can be effective. OCPs and the intravaginal ring can also be used continuously for extended cycling to decrease the frequency of menstrual periods. This is accomplished by skipping the placebo pill week and immediately starting a new package of birth control pills or skipping the standard 1-week break after removal of the intravaginal ring and immediately placing a new ring. Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) and long-acting reversible contraceptives (LARCs) including the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine system are also effective and may be preferable for patients who may have challenges with compliance. If patients have persistent symptoms despite use of a contraceptive for suppression of ovulation and scheduled NSAIDs, further evaluation for

Table 4–16. Dysmenorrhea in the adolescent.

	Etiology	Onset and Duration	Symptoms	Pelvic Examination	Treatment
Primary Dysmenorrhea[a]					
Primary	Excessive amount of prostaglandin $F_2\alpha$, which attaches to myometrium, causing uterine contractions, hypoxia, and ischemia. Also, directly sensitizes pain receptors.	Begins just prior to or with the onset of menstrual flow and lasts 1–2 days. Typically does not start until 1–2 y after menarche, when cycles are more regularly ovulatory.	Lower abdominal cramps radiating to lower back and thighs. Associated nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea due to excess prostaglandins.	Normal. May wait to examine if never sexually active and history is consistent with primary dysmenorrhea.	Mild—menstrual calendar, start NSAIDs day before bleeding or at the onset of bleeding or pain if timing of cycle is difficult to predict. Moderate to severe—NSAIDs and OCPs or other birth control product to suppress ovulation.
Secondary Dysmenorrhea[b]					
Infection	Most often due to an STI such as Chlamydia or gonorrhea.	Recent onset of pelvic pain. Can also have chronic pain with prolonged untreated infection.	Pelvic pain, excessive or irregular menstrual bleeding, unusual vaginal discharge.	Mucopurulent or purulent discharge from cervical os, cervical friability, cervical motion, uterine or adnexal tenderness, positive wet prep for bacterial vaginosis, positive test for STI.	Appropriate antibiotics.
Endometriosis	Ectopic implants of endometrial tissue in pelvis or abdomen; may result from retrograde menstruation. Definitive diagnosis requires laparoscopy.	Generally starts > 2 y after menarche, is not significantly responsive to standard NSAID and suppression of ovulation therapies, and worsens through time.	Cyclic or acyclic chronic pelvic pain.	Mild to moderate tenderness typically in the posterior vaginal fornix or along the uterosacral ligaments.	Suppression of ovulation with combined hormonal contraceptive methods. Continuous use may provide additional control. If pain persists, refer to a gynecologist for further evaluation of chronic pelvic pain and consideration of gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists.
Complication of pregnancy	Spontaneous abortion, ectopic pregnancy.	Acute onset.	Pelvic or abdominal pain associated with vaginal bleeding following missed menstrual period.	Positive hCG, enlarged uterus, or adnexal mass.	Pelvic US if hemodynamically stable to evaluate for intrauterine pregnancy. Immediate obstetric or surgical consult with concern for ectopic pregnancy.
Congenital anomalies	Outflow tract anomalies: imperforate hymen, transverse or longitudinal vaginal septum, septate uterus.	Onset at menarche.	Cyclic pelvic or abdominal pain which can become chronic.	Imperforate hymen may be visible on external examination. Pelvic US for general anatomy. Pelvic MRI is most sensitive and specific test for septums.	Gynecology consult for further evaluation and management.
Pelvic adhesions	Previous abdominal surgery or pelvic inflammatory disease.	Delayed onset after surgery or PID.	Abdominal pain, may or may not be associated with menstrual cycles; possible alteration in bowel pattern.	Variable.	Gynecology consult for possible lysis of adhesion.

DMPA, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; NSAID, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug; OCP, oral contraceptive pill; PID, pelvic inflammatory disease; STI, sexually transmitted infection; US, ultrasound.

[a]No pelvic pathology.

[b]Underlying pathology present.

secondary dysmenorrhea is indicated. A pelvic examination, pelvic imaging with ultrasonography or MRI, and diagnostic laparoscopy may be necessary for diagnosis. Secondary dysmenorrhea is more likely to be associated with chronic pelvic pain, midcycle pain, dyspareunia, and metrorrhagia.

3. Dysfunctional Uterine Bleeding

Dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB) results from irregular endometrial sloughing accompanying anovulatory cycles. It may be characterized by menorrhagia (prolonged bleeding that occurs at regular intervals) or menometrorrhagia (heavy prolonged bleeding that occurs irregularly and more frequently than normal). The differential diagnosis of common and less common etiologies in adolescences are listed in Table 4–17.

» Evaluation

In addition to a menstrual and sexual history, the bleeding pattern should be characterized by cycle length, duration, and quantity of bleeding (eg, number of soaked pads or tampons in 24 hours, number of menstrual accidents). Bleeding for more than 10 days is usually considered abnormal. The patient should be assessed for symptoms of anemia including fatigue, lightheadedness, syncope, tachycardia, and for other abnormal bleeding (gingivae, stool, easy bruising). The physical examination includes an assessment of hemodynamic stability with orthostatic heart rate and blood pressure measurements. Mucous membranes and skin should be evaluated for pallor; the heart for tachycardia and murmur; the abdomen for organomegaly; and the external genitalia for signs of trauma or congenital anomalies. If the patient has never been sexually active and the external examination is normal, a pelvic examination is usually unnecessary. In a sexually experienced female, a pelvic and bimanual examination to examine the vagina, cervix, and adnexa may be helpful to elucidate the diagnosis. Initial laboratory studies should include a pregnancy test, complete blood cell count, prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time, TSH, fibrinogen level, and iron studies. If the patient has signs of hemodynamic compromise potentially requiring blood transfusion, blood type and cross-match should be obtained. A von Willebrand panel and a platelet function analysis should be considered with a history of heavy menstrual bleeding from menarche and/or bleeding from other sources, for example, epistaxis, gingival bleeding, blood in stool, or easy bruising. For patients suspected of having PCOS, total and free testosterone and DHEAS should be obtained. For sexually experienced females, cervical or vaginal or urine-based testing for Chlamydia and gonorrhea should be obtained.

Table 4–17. Differential diagnosis of dysfunctional uterine bleeding in adolescents.

Condition	Examples
Anovulation	
Sexually transmitted infections	Cervicitis, pelvic inflammatory disease
Pregnancy complications	Ectopic, miscarriage
Bleeding disorders	von Willebrand disease, platelet function abnormalities, thrombocytopenia, coagulopathy
Endocrine disorders	Hypo-/hyperthyroidism, hyperprolactinemia, adrenal insufficiency, PCOS
Anatomic abnormalities	Congenital anomalies, ovarian cysts or tumors, cervical polyps
Trauma	Vaginal laceration
Foreign body	Retained tampon
Chronic illness	Liver, renal, inflammatory bowel, lupus
Malignancy	Leukemia
Drugs	Contraception, anticoagulants

PCOS, polycystic ovary syndrome.

» Treatment

The severity of DUB is determined by hemodynamic status and degree of anemia and classified as mild, moderate, or severe (Table 4–18). The goals of treatment include (1) establishment and/or maintenance of hemodynamic stability, (2) correction of acute or chronic anemia, (3) resumption of normal menstrual cycles, (4) prevention of recurrence, and (5) prevention of long-term consequences of anovulation. Management depends on the severity of the problem and its specific etiology (see Table 4–18). Monophasic OCPs containing a potent progestin such as norgestrel 0.3 mg with ethinyl estradiol 30 mcg or levonorgestrel 0.15 mg with ethinyl estradiol 30 mcg are frequently used for patients without medical contraindications to exogenous estrogens. (See Table 4–21 for information about individual characteristics or preexisting medical conditions that are contraindications for the use of exogenous estrogen.) The active pills in monophasic formulations contain the same concentration of progestins and estrogen and are preferred over multiphasic formulations which contain variable concentrations of estrogen which could potentially increase the risk of breakthrough bleeding. It is important to remind adolescents and their families that compliance with medications to control bleeding and treat anemia is imperative. Adolescents should be treated until the anemia is resolved and often for an additional 6 months or longer if there is an

Table 4–18. Management of DUB.

	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Hgb value (g/dl)	Hgb >12	Hgb 9–12	Hgb < 9
Acute treatment	Menstrual calendar; iron supplementation. NSAID with menses may help reduce flow. Consider OCPs if patient is sexually active and desires contraception.	OCP bid until bleeding stops, continue active pill qd for 21 d followed by 1 wk of placebo pills.	Admit to hospital if Hgb < 7 g/dL or patient is hemodynamically unstable. Transfusion based on degree of hemodynamic instability and ability to control bleeding. Conjugated estrogens, 25 mg IV every 4 h for up to 48 h. Provide scheduled IV antiemetic. When bleeding stops, step down to 50 mcg OCP PO qid (or tid), then taper as below. If bleeding doesn't stop, gynecology consultation for further evaluation and possible dilation and curettage. Or One 30–35 mcg OCP PO qid until bleeding stops, then decrease to tid for 2 d (and up to 7 d), then bid for 2 d (and up to 7 d), then qd (skipping placebo pills) until Hct > 30%. Antiemetic 2 h prior to OCPs as needed for nausea.
long-term management	Monitor menstrual calendar and Hgb. Follow-up in 2–3 mo.	Iron supplementation. Monitor Hgb closely for improvement. May need to revert to bid OCP dosing if bleeding persists. If bleeding controlled, cycle with OCPs (28 d pack) or other combined hormonal contraceptive agent for minimum 3–6 mo.	Iron supplementation. Serial hematocrits. If Hct > 30%, cycle with OCPs (28-d pack) or other combined hormonal contraceptive agent for minimum 3–6 mo. Consider placement of levonorgestrel intrauterine system once anemia improved as alternative to short-acting method.

bid, twice daily (every 12 hours); DUB, dysfunctional uterine bleeding; Hct, hematocrit; Hgb, hemoglobin; IV, intravenous; NSAID, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug; OCP, oral contraceptive pill; PO, by mouth; qd, daily; qid, four times per day (every 6 hours); tid, three times per day (every 8 hours).

underlying problem such as platelet function abnormality or von Willebrand disease. For patients with contraindications to the use of exogenous estrogens, there are progestin-only methods available for acute management and maintenance treatment of DUB (Table 4–19).

4. Mittelschmerz

Mittelschmerz is midcycle discomfort resulting from ovulation. The cause of the pain is unknown but irritation of the peritoneum due to spillage of fluid from the ruptured follicular cyst at the time of ovulation has been suggested. The patient presents with a history of midcycle, unilateral dull or aching abdominal pain lasting a few minutes to as long as 8 hours. Rarely, the pain mimics that of acute appendicitis, torsion or rupture of an ovarian cyst, or ectopic pregnancy. The patient should be reassured and treated symptomatically.

5. Premenstrual Syndrome & Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder

It is estimated that 51%–86% of adolescent women experience some premenstrual symptoms. Premenstrual syndrome (PMS) is a cluster of physical and psychological symptoms that occur during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle and resolve with menstruation. Physical symptoms include bloating, breast tenderness, fatigue, headache, myalgia, increased appetite, and food craving. Premenstrual emotional symptoms may include fatigue, mood lability, anxiety, depression, irritability, hostility, sleep dysfunction, and impaired social function. PMS can be diagnosed when at least one disabling physical or psychological symptom is documented prospectively for at least two consecutive menstrual cycles, is restricted to the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle, resolves by the end of menses, results in functional impairment, and is not an exacerbation of another underlying disorder.

Table 4–19. Progesterone-only hormone regimens for management of DUB.

Hormone	Tapering Regimen
Norethindrone acetate	5–10 mg PO every 4 h until bleeding stops, then qid for 4 d, then tid for 3 d, then bid for 2 d–2 wk, then qd. Once anemia improved, can transition to DMPA 150 mg IM q12 weeks or levonorgestrel intrauterine system placement. Progesterone-only OCPs can also be an alternative, they but require excellent compliance.
Medroxyprogesterone	10 mg PO every 4 h (max 80 mg) until bleeding stops, then qid for 4 d, then tid for 3 d, then bid for 2 d–2 wk, then qd. Once anemia improved, can transition to DMPA 150 mg IM q12 weeks or levonorgestrel intrauterine system placement. Progesterone-only OCPs can also be an alternative, they but require excellent compliance.

bid, twice daily (every 12 hours); DMPA, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; DUB, dysfunctional uterine bleeding; IM, intramuscular; PO, by mouth; qd, daily; qid, four times per day (every 6 hours); tid, three times per day (every 8 hours).

Severe PMS with functional impairment affects 1.8%–5.8% of women of reproductive age and is classified in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM5), as premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD). The clinical diagnosis of PMDD requires a combination of a minimum of five physical and psychological symptoms in the majority of cycles that must be present in the final week before onset of menses, start to improve within a few days after the onset of menses, and become minimal or absent in the week postmenses.

The pathophysiology of PMS is not well understood; however, there is some evidence of dysregulation of serotonergic activity and/or of GABAergic receptor functioning during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle with heightened sensitivity to circulating progesterone metabolites. PMS and PMDD are highly associated with unipolar depressive disorder and anxiety disorders, such as obsessive-compulsive disorder, panic disorder, and generalized anxiety disorder. During adolescence, it may be difficult to determine if the affective symptoms represent a mood or anxiety disorder, a premenstrual exacerbation of a psychiatric disorder, or simple PMS.

Current treatment for PMS in adolescence is based on findings from adult studies and includes lifestyle recommendations and pharmacologic agents that suppress the rise and fall of ovarian steroids or augment serotonin. SSRIs are increasingly used as first-line therapy for PMS and PMDD in adults, and a recent Cochrane review of SSRIs in severe adult PMS determined that SSRIs administered continuously or during the luteal phase were effective in reducing premenstrual symptoms. Once a diagnosis is made, proven effective interventions including education about pathophysiology, lifestyle changes (eg, increasing physical activity and smoking cessation), stress reduction, cognitive behavioral therapy, and nutritional counseling to improve calcium intake and/or calcium supplementation should be attempted. If contraception or cycle control is important, a combined hormonal contraceptive pill may be beneficial. The pill containing 20 mcg ethinyl estradiol and 3 mg drospirenone with a 24/4 formulation has been shown to be therapeutic in studies of adult women with PMDD. If these interventions do not adequately control symptoms, luteal phase or continuous administration of SSRIs can be considered. Case reports indicate that adolescents with PMDD respond well to luteal phase dosing of fluoxetine at the standard adult dosage of 20 mg/d. SSRIs are not formally approved by the FDA for treatment of PMS or PMDD in adolescents.

6. Ovarian Cysts

Functional cysts account for the majority of benign ovarian tumors in postpubertal adolescents and are a result of the normal process of ovulation. They may be asymptomatic or may cause menstrual irregularities or pelvic pain. Large cysts can cause constipation or urinary frequency. Follicular cysts are the most common functional cysts. They are usually unilateral, less than 3 cm in diameter, and resolve spontaneously in 1–2 months. Cyst pain occurs as the diameter of the cyst increases, stretching the overlying ovarian cortex and capsule. If the patient's discomfort is tolerable, she can be reexamined monthly and observed for resolution. Hormonal contraceptive products that suppress ovulation can be started to prevent additional cysts from forming. Patients with cysts should be counseled about the signs and symptoms of ovarian and/or tubal torsion, which are serious complications. Adnexal torsion presents with the sudden onset of pain, nausea, and vomiting. Low-grade fever, leukocytosis, and the development of peritoneal signs with rebound and guarding can be found. Torsion is a surgical emergency due to the risk of ischemia and death of the ovary. Patients should be referred to a gynecologist for potential laparoscopy if the cyst has a solid component and measures more than 6 cm by ultrasonography, if there are symptoms or signs of hemorrhage or torsion, or if the cyst fails to regress within 2 months. Corpus luteum cysts occur less commonly and may be large, 5–10 cm in diameter.

The patient may have associated amenorrhea, or as the cyst becomes atretic, heavy vaginal bleeding. There may be bleeding into the cyst or rupture with intraperitoneal hemorrhage. To determine whether the bleeding is self-limited, serial hematocrit measurements and ultrasounds can be used. If the patient is stable, hormonal contraception that suppresses ovulation can be started to prevent additional cyst formation and the patient may be monitored for 3 months for resolution. Laparoscopy may be indicated if the cyst is larger than 6 cm or if there is severe pain or hemorrhage.

ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 131: Screening for Cervical Cancer. Obstet Gynecol 2012;120(5):1222–1238 [PMID: 23090560].

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. 5th ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Bloomfield D: Secondary amenorrhea. Pediatr Rev 2006;27(3): 113–114 [PMID: 16510552].

Braverman PK, Breech L; Committee on Adolescence: Gynecologic examination for adolescents in the pediatric office setting. Pediatrics 2010;126(3):583–590 [PMID: 20805151].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2010. MMWR 2010;59 (No. RR-12):69–77.

Gordon CM: Clinical Practice. Functional hypothalamic amenorrhea. N Engl J Med 2010;363(4):365–371 [PMID: 20660404].

Harel Z: Dysmenorrhea in adolescents and young adults: an update on pharmacological treatments and management strategies. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2012;13(15):2157–2170 [PMID: 22984937].

James AH et al: Evaluation and management of acute menorrhagia in women with and without underlying bleeding disorders: consensus from an international expert panel. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2011 Oct;158(2):124–134 [PMID: 21632169].

Legro RS et al: Diagnosis and treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2013;98(12):4565–4591 [PMID: 24151290].

Massad LS et al: 2012 updated consensus guidelines for the management of abnormal cervical cancer screening tests and cancer precursors. Obstet Gynecol 2013;121(4):829–846 [PMID: 23635684].

Contraception

According to the CDC 2013 Youth Risk Behavior Survey, almost half of high school students (47%) reported having had sexual experience and 34% reported being currently sexually active. Fifty-nine percent reported using a condom at their latest intercourse. Most young people have sex for the first time at about the age of 17, but do not marry until their middle or late twenties. This means that young adults are at risk of unwanted pregnancy and STIs for nearly a decade. A sexually active female who does not use contraceptives has almost a 90% chance of becoming pregnant within a year.

Abstinence & Decision Making

Talking with teenagers about sexual intercourse and its implications can help teens make informed decisions regarding engaging in sexual activity. The American Academy of Pediatrics endorses a comprehensive approach to sexuality education that incorporates encouraging abstinence while providing appropriate risk reduction counseling regarding sexual behaviors. Counseling should include discussions about confidentiality, STI prevention and testing, and contraceptive methods including abstinence and emergency contraception (Table 4–20). Best-practice guidelines recommend that an adolescent sexual history be taken with the adolescent alone in an honest and caring manner with a nonjudgmental attitude and a comfortable, matter-of-fact approach to asking questions. The CDC has a useful Guide to Taking a Sexual History for providers, which covers the "five Ps" of sexual health: partners, practices, protection from STIs, past history of STIs, and prevention of pregnancy (see http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/SexualHistory.pdf). Encouraging adolescents to use contraception when they do engage in

Table 4–20. Contraceptive efficacy.

Method	Percentage of Women Experiencing an Unintended Pregnancy Within the First Year of Use	
	Typical Use	Perfect Use
No method	85	85
Spermicides only	28	18
Withdrawal	22	4
Diaphragm	16	6
Condom		
Female	21	5
Male	18	2
Oral contraceptive pill	9	0.3
Evra Patch	9	0.3
NuvaRing	9	0.3
Depo-Provera	6	0.2
IUD		
ParaGard	0.8	0.6
Mirena	0.2	0.2
Implanon	0.05	0.05

IUD, intrauterine device.
Adapted with permission from Trussell J: Contraceptive efficacy. In: Hatcher RA et al, eds. Contraceptive Technology, 20th ed (revised). New York, NY: Ardent Media; 2011.

sexual intercourse does not lead to higher rates of sexual activity. Adolescents often delay seeing a clinician for contraceptive services after initiating sexual activity. Concern about lack of confidentiality is an important reason for this delay.

» Methods Counseling

The goals of counseling adolescents about contraception include promoting safe and responsible sexual behavior through delaying the initiation of sexual activity, reinforcing consistent condom use for those who are sexually active, and discussing other contraceptive options to provide protection from unwanted pregnancy. Motivational interviewing can be used to address the ambivalence and discrepancies among adolescents' sexual and contraceptive behaviors, their sexual and relationship values, and future life goals. Providers should familiarize themselves with their state policies regarding the ability of minors to consent for sexual and reproductive health care services. These data are accessible on the Internet from the Guttmacher Institute (http://www.guttmacher.org) and the Center for Adolescent Health and the Law (http://www.adolescenthealthlaw.org).

Providers should consider the adolescent's lifestyle, potential challenges to compliance, the patient's need for confidentiality around the use of contraception, previous experiences with contraception and reasons for discontinuation, and any misconceptions regarding contraceptive options. Barriers to health care access including transportation and financial limitations should be identified. Prescribing contraception for other medical reasons (eg, management of dysmenorrhea) can create opportunities for providers and adolescent patients to make parents aware of the use of the medication while maintaining confidentiality around the sexual behaviors.

» Mechanism of Action

The primary mechanism of action for combined hormonal contraceptives containing estrogen and progestin (OCPs, transdermal patch, intravaginal ring) and the progestin-only methods (pills, DMPA, and the etonogestrel implant) is inhibition of ovulation. Thickening of the cervical mucus also makes sperm penetration more difficult, and atrophy of the endometrium diminishes the chance of implantation. (The mechanisms of action for intrauterine systems and devices are discussed later in this chapter in the section Intrauterine Systems & Devices.)

Starting all birth control methods during the menstrual period (either first day of bleeding or first Sunday of bleeding) produces the most reliable suppression of ovulation. Conventional OCPs, transdermal patches, and intravaginal rings typically require that the adolescent wait for her next period to begin before starting. Data show that many women who receive prescriptions or even samples of medication never begin the prescribed method. Furthermore, these women could become pregnant while waiting to start. "Quick start" is an alternative approach to starting contraception that allows the patient to begin contraception on the day of the appointment regardless of menstrual cycle day, following a negative pregnancy test. This approach has been studied in adolescent women and increases adherence with the method of choice. Unfortunately, these studies also highlight the generally poor long-term compliance with contraceptive treatment in this age group.

» Medical Considerations

Evaluation of an adolescent female requesting contraception should include a review of current and past medical conditions, current medications and allergies, menstrual history, confidential social history including sexual history, and family medical history. Important components of a sexual history include age at first intercourse, number of partners in lifetime, history of STIs and pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), condom use, current and past use of other contraceptives and reasons for discontinuation, and pregnancy history and outcomes. It is helpful to have a baseline weight, height, BMI, and blood pressure. A pelvic examination is not necessary before initiating contraception. However, if the woman is sexually active and has missed menstrual periods or has symptoms of pregnancy, a pregnancy test is warranted. Screening for STIs should be offered if a sexually experienced woman is asymptomatic and testing for STIs is indicated if she is symptomatic.

The World Health Organization's publication, Improving Access to Quality Care in Family Planning: Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use is an evidence-based guide providing criteria for initiating and continuing contraceptive methods based on a risk assessment of an individual's characteristics or known preexisting medical condition. Table 4–21 lists absolute (a condition which represents an unacceptable health risk if the contraceptive method is used) and relative (a condition where the theoretical or proven risks usually outweigh the advantages of using the method) contraindications to using combined hormonal birth control pills. These contraindications can be extended to other combined hormonal products that contain estrogen and progestins including the transdermal patch and intravaginal ring. The CDC has also published the US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use which was adapted from the WHO publication and allows the consideration of use of combined hormonal contraceptive products for women who are currently receiving anticoagulation therapy.

It is important to assess patients for possible risk factors for venous thromboembolic events (VTEs) prior to initiating any contraceptive product containing estrogen. The risk of VTE for reproductive-aged women is extremely low (4 per 100,000 women per year for nonpregnant women not using contraceptive product containing estrogen). The use of

Table 4–21. Contraindications to combined oral contraceptive (COC) pills.

Absolute contraindications
Pregnancy
Breast feeding (within 6 wk of childbirth)
Hypertension SBP > 160 mm Hg or DBP > 100 mm Hg
History of thrombophlebitis; current thromboembolic disorder, cerebrovascular disease, or ischemic heart disease
Known thrombogenic mutations (factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Complicated valvular heart disease (with pulmonary hypertension; atrial fibrillation; history of bacterial endocarditis)
Diabetes with nephropathy; retinopathy; neuropathy
Liver disease: active viral hepatitis; severe cirrhosis; tumor (hepatocellular adenoma or hepatoma)
Breast cancer (current)
Migraine headaches with aura
Major surgery with prolonged immobilization
Relative contraindications
Postpartum (first 3 wk)
Breast-feeding (6 wk–6 mo following childbirth)
Hypertension (adequately controlled HTN; any history of HTN where BP cannot be evaluated; SBP 140–159 mm Hg or DPB 90–99 mm Hg)
Migraine headache without aura (for continuation of COC)
Breast cancer history with remission for 5 y
Active gallbladder disease or history of COC-induced cholestasis
Use of drugs that affect liver enzymes (rifampin, phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine, lamotrigine, ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors)

BP, blood pressure; DBP, diastolic blood pressure; HTN, hypertension; SBP, systolic blood pressure.

Table 4–22. Screening questions for inherited thrombophilia.

Have you or a first-degree relative…	… ever had blood clots in the legs or lungs? … ever been hospitalized for blood clots in the legs or lungs?
What were the circumstances in which the blood clot took place?	Cancer, air travel, obesity, immobility, postpartum
Did you or a family member require blood thinning medication?	

estrogen increases the risk of VTE for nonpregnant women (10–30 per 100,000 women per year); however, pregnancy itself markedly increases the risk of VTE (60 per 100,000 women per year). In light of the low population risk of VTE, it is not cost-effective to screen all reproductive-aged women for inherited thrombophilia (factor V Leiden, prothrombin mutation, protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies). Table 4–22 shows helpful screening questions for personal and family history of VTE. If a close relative had a VTE, determine whether testing for inherited thrombophilia was conducted. If a specific defect was identified, testing the patient for that defect prior to initiating a product containing estrogen is warranted. If testing is unknown but the family history is highly suggested of inherited thrombophilia, testing for all of the inherited thrombophilic disorders prior to initiating estrogen should be considered. Additionally, if testing is indicated but not possible, providers should consider alternative contraceptive products that do not contain estrogen.

» Tips for Prescribing & Monitoring Contraceptive Use

It is important to thoroughly review the advantages, disadvantages, potential side effects, and instructions for use of contraceptive methods in a concise and age-appropriate manner with adolescent patients. Written instructions that are clear and at an appropriate educational level can also be helpful (www.youngwomenshealth.org is a useful source for instructions). Some offices utilize consent forms to further ensure that the adolescent has a full understanding of the chosen contraceptive method. Teens need to be reminded that hormonal contraception will not protect them from STI transmission (including HIV infection) and condoms need to be used consistently. Encouraging teens to be creative about personal reminders such as setting a cell phone alarm to take a pill can help with compliance. Teens often discontinue birth control for nonmedical reasons or minor side effects and should be encouraged to contact their providers if any questions or concerns about the chosen method arise to avoid unintentional pregnancy. Frequent follow-up visits every few months with a provider may also improve adherence. These visits also provide opportunities for further reproductive health education and STI screening.

Barrier Methods

Male condoms have been used more widely in the last several decades as a result of educational and marketing efforts driven by the AIDS epidemic. All sexually active adolescents should be counseled to use condoms correctly and consistently with all intimate behaviors (oral, vaginal, and anal intercourse). Condoms offer protection against STIs by providing a mechanical barrier. Polyurethane condoms can be used by adolescents with an allergy to latex. Spermicides containing nonoxynol-9 are no longer recommended, as exposure to spermicide can cause genital irritation which may facilitate the acquisition of STIs including HIV. Patients should be counseled to use water-based lubricants with condoms.

Vaginal barrier methods include the female condom, diaphragm, and cervical cap. The female condom is a polyurethane vaginal pouch that can be used as an alternative to the male condom. Female condoms have lower efficacy in preventing pregnancy and STIs and are more expensive than male condoms. Diaphragms and cervical caps may not be feasible for adolescents as they require prescription, professional fitting, and skill with insertion.

Combined Hormonal Methods

» Oral Contraceptive Pills, Transdermal Patch, & Intravaginal Ring

Combined oral contraceptive pills (COCs) are the most commonly used contraceptive method in the adolescent age group. COCs are also utilized for noncontraceptive indications (Table 4–23). All COCs contain estrogen (ethinyl estradiol). "Low-dose" COCs contain 20–35 mcg of ethinyl estradiol per pill. There are a variety of progestins used in COCs, most made from testosterone with differing androgenic profiles. Drospirenone is a progestin derived from spironolactone that possesses antiandrogenic and antimineralocorticoid activity. This formulation has appeal for use with patients who have PCOS but should not be prescribed for patients with risk of hyperkalemia (those who have renal, hepatic, or adrenal insufficiency or take certain medications including angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin II receptor antagonists). Extended cycle regimens are available which allow women to decrease menstrual frequency from four menstrual cycles per year to formulations that provide hormonal pills daily for the whole year, eliminating menstrual periods altogether. New formulations with fewer placebo pills (4 vs the standard 7) decrease the duration of the menstrual period. There is also a chewable COC for those who cannot swallow pills.

Table 4–23. Noncontraceptive health benefits of oral contraceptive pills.

Protection against life-threatening conditions
Ovarian cancer
Endometrial cancer
Pelvic inflammatory disease
Ectopic pregnancy
Morbidity and mortality due to unintended pregnancies
Alleviate conditions affecting quality of life
Iron deficiency anemia
Benign breast disease
Dysmenorrhea
Irregular menstrual cycles
Functional ovarian cysts
Premenstrual syndrome
Acne

In general, contraceptive side effects are mild and improve or lessen during the first 3 months of use. Table 4–24 shows the more common estrogenic, progestogenic, and combined (estrogenic and progestogenic) effects of COCs. In general, these symptoms can also be extended to the other combined hormonal methods. If a patient taking contraceptive pills has persistent minor side effects for more than 3 months, a different type of COC can be tried to achieve the hormonal effects desired (eg, decreasing the estrogen content or changing progestin). Breakthrough bleeding is a common side effect in the first few months of COC use and generally resolves without intervention. If breakthrough bleeding is persistent, the provider should rule out other possible etiologies such as missed pills, pregnancy, infection, or interaction with other medications. For women who have spotting or bleeding before completing the active hormonal pills, increasing the progestin content will provide more endometrial support. For those with continued spotting or bleeding after the period, increasing the estrogen content will provide more endometrial support.

» Transdermal Patch

The transdermal patch, Ortho Evra, releases 20 mcg of ethinyl estradiol and 150 mcg of norelgestromin daily. One patch is worn for 7 days and changed weekly for 3 consecutive weeks. The patch is an attractive alternative to COCs for adolescents who have difficulty remembering to take a pill every day; however, the higher bioavailability of estrogens delivered transdermally (60% higher than with 35 mcg COCs) has raised concern that the patch might increase the risk of VTE over other estrogen-containing contraceptive products. Studies evaluating this risk have shown conflicting results. The FDA updated the safety labeling for Ortho Evra in September 2009 to include its interpretation of these studies showing a zero to twofold increase in the risk of thromboembolic events. The FDA maintains that Ortho Evra is a well-tolerated and effective contraceptive for women with low-risk profile for VTE. As with other estrogen-containing contraceptive products, patients should be advised to avoid smoking and consider planned discontinuation of these methods around major surgery and prolonged immobilization. In clinical trials, the most common side effects included breast disorders (pain and swelling), headache, nausea, and skin irritation. The patch may be less effective in women weighing more than 90 kg and those with skin conditions preventing absorption.

» Intravaginal Ring

The NuvaRing is a vaginal ring that releases 15 mcg of ethinyl estradiol and 120 mcg of etonogestrel per day. The patient places the ring inside the vagina for 3 weeks, and removes it the first day of the fourth week to allow for withdrawal bleeding. A new ring is inserted each month. In

Table 4–24. Estrogenic, progestenic, and combined effects of COCs by system.

System	Estrogen Effects	Progestin Effects	Estrogen and Progestin Effects
General		Bloating	Cyclic weight gain due to fluid retention
Cardiovascular	Hypertension		Hypertension
Gastrointestinal	Nausea; hepatocellular adenomas	Increased appetite and weight gain; increased LDL cholesterol levels; decreased HDL cholesterol levels; decreased carbohydrate tolerance; increased insulin resistance	
Breast	Increased breast size	Increased breast tenderness or breast size	Breast tenderness
Genitourinary	Leukorrhea; cervical eversion or ectopy		
Hematologic	Thromboembolic complications, including pulmonary emboli (rare), deep venous thrombosis, cerebrovascular accident, or myocardial infarction (rare)		
Neurological			Headaches
Skin	Telangiectasia, melasma	Acne, oily skin	
Psychological		Depression, fatigue, decreased libido	

COC, combined oral contraceptive pill; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; LDL, low-density lipoprotein.
Adapted with permission from Hatcher RA et al, eds. Contraceptive Technology, 20th ed (revised). New York, NY: Ardent Media; 2011.

clinical trials, the most common side effects included vaginitis and vaginal discharge, headache, weight gain, and nausea.

Progestin-Only Methods

» Oral Contraceptive Pills

Progestin-only pills (POPs) do not contain estrogen. They are used in women with contraindications to estrogen-containing products such as the presence of inherited risk factors for thrombophilia or unacceptable estrogen-related side effects with COCs. The efficacy of POPs in preventing pregnancy is slightly less than COCs. They require strict compliance and regular dosing schedule due to the shorter half-life of the progestin. A patient must take POPs daily at the same time (within 3 hours). The primary mechanisms by which pregnancy is prevented includes thickening cervical mucous and thinning the endometrial lining. Ovulation is inhibited in approximately 50% of women. The main side effect of POPs is unpredictable menstrual patterns. The need for strict compliance and the possibility of breakthrough bleeding may make POPs a less desirable method for teens.

» Injectable Hormonal Contraception

DMPA, or DepoProvera, is a long-acting injectable progestin contraceptive. It is injected into the gluteal or deltoid muscle every 12 weeks at a dose of 150 mg. The first injection should be given during the first 5 days of the menstrual cycle to ensure immediate contraceptive protection. The quick-start method may also be used with DMPA following a negative pregnancy test. Adolescents who have been sexually active within the previous 2 weeks of administration of DMPA using the quick-start method should be informed of the chance of pregnancy and instructed to return for a repeat pregnancy test 2 weeks after receiving DMPA. With a failure rate of less than 0.3%, long-acting nature reducing compliance issues, reversibility, and lack of estrogen-related side effects, it is an attractive contraceptive option for many adolescents. The hypoestrogenic state that results from DMPA suppression of the hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian axis reduces the normal effect of estrogen to inhibit bone resorption. The FDA issued a black box warning in 2004 that long-term (> 2 years) use of DMPA was a cause of decreased bone density. This is of particular concern as adolescence is the critical time of peak bone accretion. Current recommendations are that long-term use of DMPA should be limited to situations where other contraceptive methods are inadequate. Although DMPA use is associated with decreased bone density, there are studies showing that bone mineral density recovers after stopping DMPA. There are no studies to date that can answer the question of whether decreased bone density from adolescent DMPA use increases the risk

of osteoporosis and fractures in adulthood. The consensus of experts in the field at this time is that the advantages of using DMPA generally outweigh the theoretical risks of fractures later in life. As with every other contraceptive method, providers need to help their patients weigh the pros and cons of initiating and continuing with this method of contraception. Adolescents using DMPA should be counseled to take adequate dietary calcium (1300 mg/d) and vitamin D (400 IU/d), to avoid tobacco smoking and to have regular weight-bearing physical activity for overall bone health. Other adverse effects of DMPA include unpredictable menstrual patterns, weight gain (typically 5 lb/y for the first 2 years of use), and mood changes.

» Contraceptive Implants

Adolescents most commonly use short-acting hormonal contraceptive methods described previously. Unfortunately, these methods have relatively high typical use failure rates (see Table 4–15) and low continuation rates. Higher failure rates combined with poor continuation rates decrease the efficacy of short-acting contraceptive methods in adolescents. **Long-acting reversible contraceptives** (LARCs), which include contraceptive implants and intrauterine systems and devices, have lower rates of failure and discontinuation. In one study comparing 1-year continuation rates for short-acting contraceptives versus LARCs, the continuation rate for short-acting methods was 55% versus 86% for LARCs. The pregnancy rate associated with use of short-acting contraceptives was 22 times higher than the rate of unintended pregnancy associated with the use of LARCs. Adolescents should be encouraged to consider LARCs as the best reversible methods for preventing unintended pregnancy, rapid repeat pregnancy, and abortion.

Implanon and Nexplanon are single-rod implant LARCs that contain the progestin etonogestrel, a metabolite of desogestrel. Nexplanon also contains barium sulfate which makes it radiopaque. Etonogestrel implants are placed subdermally and provide highly effective contraception for 3 years, with failure rates less than 1%. Implanon and Nexplanon suppress ovulation and thicken cervical mucous like DMPA, but do not suppress ovarian estradiol production or induce a hypoestrogenic state. The risk of decreased bone density is less than that associated with DMPA. Placement should occur during the first 5 days of the menstrual period or at any time if a woman is correctly using a different hormonal contraceptive method. Proper timing minimizes the likelihood that the implant is placed during an early pregnancy or in a nonpregnant woman too late to inhibit ovulation in the first cycle of use. Irregular menstrual bleeding is the single most common reason for stopping use in clinical trials. On average the volume of bleeding is similar to the woman's typical menstrual periods but the schedule of bleeding is irregular and unpredictable. Other side effects include headache, weight gain, acne, breast pain, and emotional lability. Return to fertility is rapid following removal. The efficacy of Implanon and Nexplanon has not been formally defined in women with elevated BMIs greater than 130% ideal and could theoretically be less effective in these women. Etonogestrel implants are not recommended for women who chronically take medications that are potent hepatic enzyme inducers because etonogestrel levels may be substantially reduced in these women.

Intrauterine Systems & Devices

Intrauterine systems (IUSs) and devices (IUDs) are LARCs approved for use in nulliparous as well as parous teens and have high efficacy with failure rates of less than 1%. There are two forms of IUS that release the progestin levonorgestrel: Mirena, which releases 20 mcg of levonorgestrel per day and is approved for contraception for up to 5 years; and Skyla, which releases an average of 6 mcg/d and is approved for contraception for up to 3 years. The levonorgestrel IUSs have many contraceptive actions including thickening of cervical mucous, inhibiting sperm capacitation and survival, suppressing the endometrium, and suppression of ovulation in some women. Given that the contraceptive effect of levonorgestrel in the IUS devices is mainly due to its local effect versus systemic absorption, ovulation is not always suppressed and cysts related to normal ovulation can occur. Irregular bleeding is common in the first few months following insertion because endometrial suppression takes several months to evolve. Bleeding is then markedly decreased and secondary amenorrhea can occur. Other side effects include abdominal and/or pelvic pain, acne, ovarian cysts, and headache. In addition to pregnancy prevention, women with the IUS report reduced symptoms of dysmenorrhea and reduced pain from endometriosis. Cramping is common during insertion and spontaneous expulsion can occur. Uterine perforation during insertion is an uncommon risk.

The copper T 380A IUD, ParaGard, does not contain hormones and can provide contraception for up to 10 years. Its contraceptive actions include the release of copper ions which inhibit sperm migration and development of a sterile inflammatory reaction which is toxic to sperm and ova and prevents implantation. Menstrual pain and heavy bleeding are the most common reasons for discontinuation.

A common misconception about IUS and IUD use is that they increase the risk of PID. Current research shows that the risk of PID is increased above baseline only for the first 20 days after insertion. IUS and IUD have also not been shown to increase the risk of tubal infertility or ectopic pregnancy. Contraindications for placement of IUS/IUD include pregnancy, PID, or postabortion sepsis within the past 3 months, current STI, purulent cervicitis, undiagnosed abnormal vaginal bleeding, malignancy of the genital tract, uterine anomalies, or leiomyomata distorting the uterine

cavity making insertion incompatible. Allergy to any component of the IUS/IUD is a contraindication. Patients with disorders of copper metabolism (Wilson disease) should not use the copper-containing IUD. Adolescents should be screened for STIs prior to insertion of an IUS or IUD.

Emergency Contraception

Emergency contraception (EC) is the only contraceptive method designed to prevent pregnancy after unprotected or underprotected intercourse (Table 4–25). Indications for EC include unprotected vaginal intercourse, failure of contraceptive methods (broken condoms, missing three or more active COC pills, detached contraceptive patch, removed vaginal ring, or late DMPA injection), and sexual assault. EC medications include products labeled and approved for use as EC by the FDA (levonorgestrel and ulipristal acetate) and the "off-label" use of COCs (the Yuzpe method).

Levonorgestrel EC, marketed as Plan B One-Step and its generic formulations, Take Action, Next Choice One Dose and My Way, is a one-pill progesterone-only regimen that contains 1.5 mg of levonorgestrel, taken immediately after unprotected intercourse. The exact mechanism of levonorgestrel EC is unknown but is thought to inhibit ovulation, disrupt follicular development, or interfere with the maturation of the corpus luteum. EC is not teratogenic and does not interrupt a pregnancy that has already implanted in the uterine lining. Therefore, pregnancy testing before use is not required. It is recommended that patients take these products within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse. EC has been studied up to 120 hours following unprotected intercourse; however, its efficacy diminishes with time from the event. EC is 90% effective if used within 24 hours, 75% effective if used within 72 hours, and approximately 60% effective if used within 120 hours. It is therefore important to counsel patients to take the medication as soon as possible following unprotected intercourse or contraception failure. EC could potentially prevent approximately 80% of unintended pregnancies and should be part of anticipatory guidance given to sexually active adolescents of both genders. These products are available without prescription and for purchase over the counter by adolescents aged 17 years and older; however, proof of age is not required for purchase. A follow-up appointment should be conducted 10–14 days after administration of EC for pregnancy testing, STI screening, and counseling regarding reproductive health and contraceptive use. A helpful resource for information about EC can be found at http://ec.princeton.edu/index.html.

If an approved EC medication is not available, certain COCs containing levonorgestrel or norgestrel can also be used for EC in a two-dose regimen separated by 12 hours; this approach is known as the Yuzpe method (see Table 4–20). An antiemetic drug takes 30 minutes prior to pills containing estrogen may help control nausea. A pregnancy test is not required prior to prescription and administration of EC.

Ulipristal, marketed as Ella, is a single pill containing 30 mg of ulipristal acetate that is available by prescription only and can be used within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse. Ulipristal binds to the human progesterone receptor and prevents binding of progesterone. Unlike levonorgestrel EC, a pregnancy test must be performed to exclude existing pregnancy before taking ulipristal because of the risk of fetal loss if used in the first trimester. Patients should also be counseled that a pregnancy test is indicated if their period is more than 7 days later than expected after taking ulipristal. Patients should be instructed to return for evaluation of the rare occurrence of ectopic pregnancy if severe abdominal pain occurs 3–5 weeks after use.

Providers should also be aware that insertion of ParaGard (copper IUD) within 5 days of unprotected intercourse is an additional method of emergency contraception available in the United States.

Table 4–25. Emergency contraception regimens.

Progestin-Only	Dose: Once
Plan B One-Step, Take Action, Next Choice One Dose, My Way	1 pill
Ulipristal Acetate	**Dose: Once**
Ella	1 pill
Estrogen and Progestin	**Dose: Repeat in 12 h**
Ovral, Ogestrel	2 white pills
Levlen, Nordette	4 orange pills
Lo/Ovral, Low-Ogestrel, Levora, Quasense, Cryselle	4 white pills
Jolessa, Portia, Seasonale, Trivora	4 pink pills
Triphasil, Tri-Levlen	4 yellow pills
Seasonique	4 light blue-green pills
Enpresse	4 orange pills
Alesse, Lessina, Levlite	5 pink pills
Aviane	5 orange pills
Lutera	5 white pills

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Committee on Adolescent Health Care Long-Acting Reversible Contraception Working Group: ACOG Committee opinion no. 539: adolescents and long-acting reversible contraception: implants and intrauterine devices. Obstet Gynecol 2012;120(4):983–988 [PMID: 22996129].

Committee on Adolescence: Contraception and adolescents. Pediatr 2014;134:e1257–e1281 [PMID: 17974753].

Committee on Adolescence: Emergency contraception. Pediatrics 2012;130(6):1174–1182 [PMID: 23184108].

Farr S et al: U.S. medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, 2010: adapted from the World Health Organization Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 4th ed. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59(RR-4):1–86 [PMID: 20559203]. http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5904a1.htm?s_cid=rr5904a1_w. Accessed

Kann L et al: Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States, 2013. MMWR Surveill Summ. 2014;63(SS 4):24–29 [PMID: 25356673].

Martinez G, Copen CE, Abma JC: Teenagers in the United States: sexual activity, contraceptive use, and childbearing, 2006–2010. National Survey of Family Growth. National Center for Health Statistics. National Vital Health Stat 2011;23(31):1–44 [PMID: 22256688].

Trenor CC et al: Hormonal contraception and thrombotic risk: a multidisciplinary approach. Pediatr 2011:127(2):347–357 [PMID: 21199853].

Trussell J: Contraceptive efficacy. In: Hatcher RA et al, eds. Contraceptive Technology, 20th ed (revised). New York, NY: Ardent Media; 2011.

World Health Organization: Improving Access to Quality Care in Family Planning: Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use. World Health Organization; 2004. http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2004/9241562668.pdf.

PREGNANCY

In the United States, more than 625,000 adolescent women younger than 19 years become pregnant every year. The majority of teen pregnancies are unintended. Approximately 60% of adolescent pregnancies result in live births, 26% end in abortion, and 14% in miscarriage. In the United States in 2010, the teenage pregnancy rate reached its lowest point in more than 30 years, which has been attributed to changes in contraceptive practices including increased use of LARCs. However, despite this trend, the United States continues to have the highest rate of teen pregnancy in the developed world. Pregnancy rates for female Hispanic and non-Hispanic black adolescents aged 15–19 years are much higher (83.5 and 99.5 per 1000, respectively) than their non-Hispanic white peers (37.8 per 1000). Lower socioeconomic status and lower maternal education are risk factors for teen pregnancy regardless of racial or ethnic group. The birth rate for adolescents in 2010—34.4 births per 1000 women was the lowest; it has ever been for all racial and ethnic groups since the peak rate of 61.8 in 1991.

Presentation

Pregnancy is the most common cause of secondary amenorrhea and should be considered as a cause of even one missed period. The level of denial about the possibility of pregnancy is high and adolescents with undiagnosed pregnancies may present with abdominal pain, nausea or vomiting, breast tenderness, urinary frequency, dizziness, or other nonspecific symptoms. In addition to denial, difficult social situations can delay diagnosis and contribute to delay in seeking prenatal care. Young newly pregnant adolescents may fear violence from their partner or abandonment by their family. Clinicians should have a low threshold for suspecting pregnancy and obtaining pregnancy tests.

Diagnosis

Pregnancies are dated from the first day of the LMP. The estimated due date can be calculated by adding 7 days to the LMP, subtracting 3 months and adding 1 year. Pregnancy dating calendars are widely available on the Internet. A speculum examination is not mandatory at the time of pregnancy diagnosis for an asymptomatic adolescent. If there is vaginal spotting or bleeding, unusual vaginal discharge, symptoms of STI, pelvic pain, or abdominal pain, a speculum examination is required. The differential diagnostic possibilities include infection, miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy, and other disorders of early pregnancy. An 8-week gestational age uterus is about the size of an orange and a 12-week uterus is about the size of a grapefruit on bimanual examination. The uterine fundus is just palpable at the symphysis pubis at 12 weeks' gestational age, midway between the symphysis and umbilicus at 16 weeks and typically at the umbilicus at 20 weeks. If the uterus is smaller than expected for pregnancy dates, possible diagnoses include inaccurate dates, false-positive test, ectopic pregnancy, or incomplete or missed abortion. A uterus that is larger than expected may be caused by inaccurate dates, twin gestation, molar pregnancy, or a corpus luteum cyst of pregnancy. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay test kits specific for the β-hCG subunit and sensitive to less than 50 mIU/mL of serum hCG can be performed on urine (preferably the day's first voided specimen, because it is more concentrated) in less than 5 minutes and are accurate by the expected date of the missed period in almost all patients. Serum radioimmunoassay, also specific for the β-hCG subunit, is accurate within 7 days after fertilization and is helpful in ruling out ectopic pregnancy or threatened abortion. Serum hCG doubles approximately every 2 days in the first 6–7 weeks of the pregnancy and a gestational sac is identifiable using transvaginal ultrasonography at hCG levels of 1000–2000 mIU/mL. In the absence of an accurate LMP, ultrasonography for confirmation of the presence of an intrauterine pregnancy and accurate dating can be obtained.

Management

A. Counseling at the Time of Pregnancy Testing

When an adolescent presents for pregnancy testing, it is helpful, before performing the test, to find out what she hopes the result will be and what she thinks she will do

if the test is positive. The diagnosis of pregnancy may be met with shock, fear, anxiety, happiness, or most likely a combination of emotions. The clinician must discuss all pregnancy options with the patient including termination or continuing with the pregnancy and either placing the infant for adoption or raising the infant. Patients should be informed of the gestational age and time frames required for the different options. If providers are not comfortable discussing the option of termination, the adolescent should be referred to a provider who is comfortable with comprehensive options counseling. Many teenagers need help in telling and involving their parents. It is also important to ascertain the teen's safety and make appropriate referral to social services if there are legitimate concerns. If the patient knows what she wants to do, she should be referred to the appropriate resources. If a teenager is ambivalent about her plans, it is helpful to follow up in 1 week to be certain that a decision has been made. Avoiding a decision reduces the adolescent's options and may result in poor pregnancy outcomes. Providers can help ensure that the patient obtains prenatal care if she has chosen to continue the pregnancy. In addition, counseling about healthful diet; folic acid supplementation (400 mcg/d); and avoiding alcohol, tobacco, and other drugs is important.

B. Pregnancy Outcomes

Young maternal age, low maternal prepregnancy weight, poor weight gain, delay in prenatal care, maternal depression, exposure to domestic violence, and low socioeconomic status contribute to low birth weight and increased neonatal mortality. The poor nutritional status of some teenagers, substance abuse, and high incidence of STIs also play a role in poor outcomes. Teenagers are at greater risk than adults for preeclampsia, eclampsia, iron deficiency anemia, cephalopelvic disproportion, prolonged labor, premature labor, and maternal death.

Good family support, early prenatal care, and good nutrition can make a difference with several of these problems. The psychosocial consequences for the teenage mother and her infant are listed in Table 4–26. Teenagers who are pregnant require additional support from their caregivers. Multidisciplinary clinics for young mothers, if available, may be the best providers for pregnant adolescents. Adolescent mothers tend to be more negative and authoritative when disciplining their children. They may have inadequate knowledge of normal behavior and development. Providers can help by educating the adolescent mother during routine visits regarding appropriate discipline and expectations of her child's behavior.

Postpartum contraceptive counseling and follow-up may help prevent additional pregnancies. In untreated girls, the risk of a second unintended pregnancy within the next 2 years is approximately 30%. Combined hormonal contraceptive options can be started 6 weeks after delivery in non–breast-feeding adolescents; progestin-only methods can be started immediately postpartum, even in breast-feeding adolescents.

Table 4–26. Psychosocial consequences of pregnancy for the adolescent mother and her infant.

Mother	Infant
Increased morbidity related to pregnancy	**Greater health risks**
Greater risk of eclampsia, anemia, prolonged labor, premature labor	Increased chance of low birth weight or prematurity
Increased chance of miscarriages, stillbirths	Increased risk of infant death
Increased chance of maternal mortality	Increased risk of injury and hospitalization by age 5 y
Decreased academic achievement	**Decreased educational attainment**
Less likely to get high school diploma, go to college, or graduate	Lower cognitive scores
Delayed education (average 2 y)	Decreased development
Lower occupational attainment and prestige	Greater chance of being behind grade or needing remedial help
Less chance of stable employment (some resolution over time)	Lower chance of advanced academics
Lower job satisfaction	Lower academic aptitude as a teenager and perhaps a higher probability of dropping out of school
Lower income and wages	**Psychosocial consequences**
Greater dependence on public assistance	Greater risk of behavior problems
Less stable marital relationships	Poverty
Higher rates of single parenthood	Higher probability of living in a nonintact home while in high school
Earlier marriage (though less common than in the past)	Greater risk of adolescent pregnancy
Accelerated pace of marriage, separation, divorce, and remarriage	
Faster pace of subsequent childbearing	
High rate of repeat unintended pregnancy	
More births out of marriage	
Closer spacing of births	
Larger families	

Ectopic Pregnancy

In the United States, approximately 1%–2% of pregnancies are ectopic. Adolescents have the highest mortality rate from ectopic pregnancy, most likely related to delayed diagnosis. Risk factors include history of PID or STIs. Repeat infections

with Chlamydia increase risk for ectopic pregnancy, as does cigarette smoking. Conception while on progestin-only methods of contraception also increases the risk of ectopic pregnancy, because of the progestin-mediated decrease in tubal motility. The classic presentation is missed menstrual period, abdominal pain, and vaginal bleeding. A urine pregnancy test is usually positive by the time of presentation. The patient may have abdominal or pelvic tenderness, adnexal tenderness, and/or an adnexal mass on examination. The uterus is typically either normal sized or slightly enlarged. Diagnosis is based on serial serum quantitative hCG levels and transvaginal ultrasound. Patients should be referred urgently to an obstetrician gynecologist for management to avoid a ruptured ectopic pregnancy which is a surgical emergency. These patients often present in shock with an acute surgical abdomen.

Breuner CC et al: Addendum-adolescent pregnancy: current trends and issues. Pediatrics 2014;133(5):954–957 [PMID: 24777230].

Kost K, Henshaw S: U.S. Teenage Pregnancies, Births and Abortions, 2010: National and State Trends by Age, Race and Ethnicity, 2014, New York, NY: Guttmacher Institute; 2014. http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/USTPtrends10.pdf.

Pinzon JL et al: Care of adolescent parents and their children. Pediatrics 2012;130(6):1743–1756 [PMID: 23184113].

van Mello NM et al: Ectopic pregnancy: how the diagnostic and therapeutic management has changed. Fertil Steril 2012;98(5):1066–1073 [PMID: 23084008].

5

Adolescent Substance Abuse

Paritosh Kaul, MD

Substance abuse tends to be a chronic, progressive disease. Initiation of substance use is becoming such a common feature of an American adult that many authorities call it normative behavior. At this stage, substance use is typically limited to experimentation with tobacco or alcohol (so-called gateway substances). During adolescence, young people are expected to establish an independent, autonomous identity. They try out a variety of behaviors within the safety of families and peer groups. This process often involves experimentation with psychoactive substances, usually in culturally acceptable settings. Continuation of substance abuse, however, is a nonnormative risk behavior with the potential to compromise adolescent development.

The American Psychiatric Association has outlined criteria to judge the severity of substance use disorders (SUD). The most recent version, DSM-5 (Diagnosistic and Statistical Manual-5), has moved from the previous terms "substance abuse" and "substance dependency" to mild, moderate and severe SUD. There are 11 features described in DSM-5. Patients with mild SUD have two or three features, whereas those with moderate have four or five features without loss of control or compulsive features. Patients with severe SUD have more than six features, including loss of control or compulsive features.

Common physiologic effects and symptoms of intoxication (which can occur at any stage of substance use) and withdrawal (a symptom of dependency) for the major classes of substances are shown in Tables 5–1 and 5–2.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders: DSM-5. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Salomonsen-Sautel S et al: Medical marijuana use among adolescents in substance abuse treatment. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2012 Jul;51(7):694–702 [PMID: 22721592].

SCOPE OF THE PROBLEM

The best current source of information on the prevalence of substance abuse among American adolescents is the Monitoring the Future study (2015), which tracks substance abuse-related behaviors in a sample of over 40,000 8th, 10th, and 12th graders in the United States. This study probably understates the magnitude of the problem of substance abuse because it excludes high-risk adolescent groups—school dropouts, runaways, and those in the juvenile justice system. Two other periodic surveys are the Youth Risk Behavior Survey (biannual) of students in grades 9–12 and National Survey of Drug Use and Health that is a home-based computer-assisted interview of individuals 12 years or older. Substance abuse among American youth rose in the 1960s and 1970s, declined in the 1980s, peaked in the 1990s, and has declined in the early 2000s. Despite these recent trends, use of alcohol, tobacco, and illicit drugs doubled from 8th to 12th grade, and use of alcohol and cigarettes more than tripled from adolescence (12–17 years) to young adulthood (18–25 years). Although initiation of substance use is rare after age 20 years, 2014 survey data found that lifetime use of any illicit drug was 34.9% among respondents.

The Monitoring the Future survey and others show that alcohol is the most frequently abused substance in the United States. Experimentation with alcohol typically begins in or before middle school. It is more common among boys than girls. It is most common among whites, less common among Hispanics and Native Americans, and least common among blacks and Asians. Two-thirds (66%) of adolescents consume alcohol before graduating from high school. Approximately one-tenth (10.8%) of eighth graders and 52.3% of high school students report being drunk at least once in their life. Marijuana is the most commonly used illicit drug in the United States. First experiences with marijuana and the substances listed in

Table 5–1. Physiologic effects of commonly abused mood-altering substances by organ/system.

Eyes/pupils	
Mydriasis	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; glutethimide; jimson weed; LSD. Withdrawal from alcohol and opioids
Miosis	Alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, opioids, PCP
Nystagmus	Alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, inhalants, PCP
Conjunctival injection	LSD, marijuana
Lacrimation	Inhalants, LSD. Withdrawal from opioids
Cardiovascular	
Tachycardia	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; LSD; marijuana; PCP. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Hypertension	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; LSD; marijuana; PCP. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Hypotension	Barbiturates, opioids. Orthostatic: marijuana. Withdrawal from depressants
Arrhythmia	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; inhalants; opioids; PCP
Respiratory	
Depression	Opioids, depressants, GHB
Pulmonary edema	Opioids, stimulants
Core body temperature	
Elevated	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; PCP. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, opioids
Decreased	Alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, opioids, GHB
Peripheral nervous system response	
Hyperreflexia	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; LSD; marijuana; methaqualone; PCP. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Hyporeflexia	Alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, inhalants, opioids
Tremor	Amphetamines or other stimulants, cocaine, LSD. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, cocaine
Ataxia	Alcohol, amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; barbiturates; benzodiazepines; inhalants; LSD; PCP; GHB
Central nervous system response	
Hyperalertness	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine
Sedation, somnolence	Alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, inhalants, marijuana, opioids, GHB
Seizures	Alcohol, amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; inhalants; methaqualone; opioids (particularly meperidine, propoxyphene). Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Hallucinations	Amphetamines, MDMA, or other stimulants; cocaine; inhalants; LSD; marijuana; PCP. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Gastrointestinal	
Nausea, vomiting	Alcohol, amphetamines or other stimulants, cocaine, inhalants, LSD, opioids, peyote, GHB. Withdrawal from alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, cocaine, opioids

GHB, γ-hydroxybutyrate; LSD, lysergic acid diethylamide; MDMA, methylenedioxymethamphetamine (ecstasy); PCP, phencyclidine hydrochloride.

Adapted, with permission, from Schwartz B, Alderman EM: Substance abuse. Pediatr Rev 1997;18(6):204–215.

Table 5–2. Effects of commonly abused mood-altering substances by agent.

Substance	Pharmacology	Intoxication	Withdrawal	Chronic Use
Alcohol (ethanol)	Depressant; 10 g/drink Drink: 12-oz beer, 4-oz wine, 1½-oz liquor; one drink increases blood level by approximately 0.025 g/dL (varies by weight)	Legal: 0.05–0.1 g/dL (varies by state) Mild (< 0.1 g/dL): disinhibition, euphoria, mild sedation, and impaired coordination Moderate (0.1–0.2 g/dL): impaired mentation and judgment, slurred speech, ataxia Severe: > 0.3 g/dL: confusion, stupor > 0.4 g/dL: coma, depressed respiration	Mild: headache, tremors, nausea and vomiting ("hangover") Severe: fever, sweaty, seizure, agitation, hallucination, hypertension, tachycardia Delirium tremens (chronic use)	Hepatitis, cirrhosis, cardiac disease, Wernicke encephalopathy, Korsakoff syndrome
Marijuana (cannabis)	THC; 4%–6% in marijuana; 20%–30% in hashish	Low: euphoria, relaxation, impaired thinking. High: mood changes, depersonalization, hallucinations Toxic: panic, delusions, paranoia, psychosis	Irritability, disturbed sleep, tremor, nystagmus, anorexia, diarrhea, vomiting	Cough, gynecomastia, low sperm count, infertility, amotivational syndrome, apathy
Cocaine	Stimulant; releases biogenic amines; concentration varies with preparation and route of administration	Hyperalert, increased energy, confident, insomnia, anxiety, paranoia, dilated pupils, tremors, seizures, hypertension, arrhythmia, tachycardia, fever, dry mouth Toxic: coma, psychosis, seizure, myocardial infarction, stroke, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis	Drug craving, depression, dysphoria, irritability, lethargy, tremors, nausea, hunger	Nasal septum ulceration, epistaxis, lung damage, intravenous drug use
Opioids (heroin, morphine, codeine, methadone, opium, fentanyl, meperidine, propoxyphene)	Depressant; binds central opioid receptor; variable concentrations with substance	Euphoria, sedation, impaired thinking, low blood pressure, pinpoint pupil, urinary retention Toxic: hypotension, arrhythmia, depressed respiration, stupor, coma, seizure, death	Only after > 3 wk of regular use: drug craving, rhinorrhea, lacrimation, muscle aches, diarrhea, anxiety, tremors, hypertension, tachycardia	Intravenous drug use: cellulitis, endocarditis, embolisms, HIV
Amphetamines	Stimulant; sympathomimetic	Euphoria, hyperalert state, hyperactive, hypertension, arrhythmia, fever, flushing, dilated pupils, tremor, ataxia, dry mouth	Lethargy, fatigue, depression, anxiety, nightmares, muscle cramps, abdominal pain, hunger	Paranoia, psychosis
MDMA (ecstasy)	Stimulant, psychedelic; releases serotonin, dopamine, and norepinephrine; inhibits reuptake of neurotransmitters; increases dopamine synthesis; inhibits MAO	Enhanced empathy, euphoria, increased energy and self-esteem, tachycardia, hypertension, increased psychomotor drive, sensory enhancement, illusions, difficulty concentrating and retaining information, headaches, palpitations, flushing, hyperthermia Toxic: frank psychosis, coma, seizures, intracranial hemorrhage, cerebral infarction, asystole, pulmonary edema, multisystem organ failure, acute renal or hepatic failure, ARDS, DIC, SIADH, death	None	Paranoid psychosis

(Continued)

Table 5–2. Effects of commonly abused mood-altering substances by agent. (Continued)

Substance	Pharmacology	Intoxication	Withdrawal	Chronic Use
GHB (liquid ecstasy)	Depressant, endogenous CNS transmitter; influences dopaminergic activity, higher levels of GABA-B activity	10 mg/kg: sleep 30 mg/kg: memory loss 50 mg/kg: general anesthesia Toxic: CNS and respiratory depression, aggressiveness, seizures, bradycardia, apnea	Only after chronic use with dosing every 3 h. Early: mild tremor, tachycardia, hyper-tension, diaphoresis, moderate anxiety, insomnia, nausea, vomiting Progressive: confusion, delirium, hallucinations, autonomic instability, death	Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome
Sedative-hypnotics (barbiturates, benzodiazepines, methaqualone)	Depressant	Sedation, lethargy, slurred speech, pinpoint pupils, hypotension, psychosis, seizures Toxic: stupor, coma, cardiac arrest, seizure, pulmonary edema, death	Only after weeks of use: agitation, delirium, psychosis, hallucinations, fever, flushing, hyper-/hypotension, death	Paranoia
Hallucinogens (LSD, peyote, mescaline, mushrooms, nutmeg, jimson weed)	Inhibition of serotonin release	Illusions, depersonalization, hallucination, anxiety, paranoia, ataxia, dilated pupils, hypertension, dry mouth Toxic: coma, terror, panic, "crazy feeling"	None	Flashbacks
Phencyclidine	Dissociative anesthetic	Low dose (< 5 mg): illusions, hallucinations, ataxia, hypertension, flushing Moderate dose (5–10 mg): hyperthermia, salivation, myoclonus High dose (> 10 mg): rigidity, seizure, arrhythmia, coma, death	None	Flashbacks
Inhalants (toluene, benzene, hydrocarbons, and fluorocarbons)	Stimulation progressing to depression	Euphoria, giddiness, impaired judgment, ataxia, rhinorrhea, salivation, hallucination Toxic: respiratory depression, arrhythmia, coma, stupor, delirium, sudden death	None	Permanent damage to nerves, liver, heart, kidney, brain
Nicotine	Releases dopamine, 1 mg nicotine per cigarette	Relaxation, tachycardia, vertigo, anorexia	Drug craving, irritability, anxiety, hunger, impaired concentration	Permanent damage to lung, heart, cardiovascular system
Anabolic steroids[a]	Bind steroid receptor Stacking: use many types simultaneously Pyramiding: increase dosage	Increased muscle bulk, strength, endurance, increased drive, hypogonadism, low sperm count, gynecomastia, decreased libido, virilization, irregular menses, hepatitis, early epiphysial closure, aggressiveness	Drug craving, dysphoria, irritability, depression	Tendon rupture, cardiomyopathy, atherosclerosis, peliosis hepatis (orally active C17 derivatives of testosterone are especially hepatotoxic)

ARDS, acute respiratory distress syndrome; CNS, central nervous system; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; GABA, γ-aminobutyric acid; GHB, γ-hydroxybutyrate; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; LSD, lysergic acid diethylamide; MAO, monoamine oxidase; MDMA, methylenedioxymethamphetamine; SIADH, syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone; THC, δ-9-tetrahydrocannabinol.

[a]Despite conventional assumptions, scientific studies show that anabolic steroids do not improve aerobic athletic performance and improve strength only in athletes trained in weight lifting before they begin using steroids and who continue to train and consume a high-protein diet.

Table 5–2 typically occur during middle or early high school. The lifetime prevalence of marijuana use among 12th graders in 2014 was 44.4%. Daily use of marijuana increased until 2011 and has modestly decreased since, with approximately 1 in 16 (5.8%) high school seniors being a daily or near daily user. Synthetic marijuana, often called spice and K-2, was scheduled by the Drug Enforcement Agency in 2011. In the past decade, LSD and methamphetamine use has decreased, while cocaine use has increased. Recently, ecstasy use has increased after a steady decline of several years. In the past 10 years, there has also been an increase in the recreational use of prescription medications and over-the-counter (OTC) cough and cold medications among adolescents. In one study, 1 in 10 high school seniors reported nonmedical use of prescription opioids, and almost half (45%) used opioids to "relieve physical symptoms" in the past year. Although Vicodin use decreased among 12th graders to 8% in 2010, it remains one of the most widely used illicit drugs. Overall, the psychotherapeutic drugs (amphetamines, sedatives, tranquilizers, and narcotics other than heroin) make up a large part of the overall US drug problem. Medication used in the management of chronic pain, depression, anxiety, and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder can all be drugs of abuse.

Studies indicate that variations in the popularity of a substance of abuse are influenced by changes in the perceived risks and benefits of the substance among adolescent users. For example, the use of inhalants was rising until 2006, when both experience and educational efforts resulted in a perception of these substances as being "dangerous." As the perception of danger decreases, old drugs may reappear in common use. This process is called "generational forgetting." Currently, uses of LSD, inhalants, and ecstasy all reflect the effects of generational forgetting. Legalization of marijuana in certain states in the United States may increase the scope and breadth of the substance abuse problem. A recent study has shown an increase in medical marijuana use among adolescents in substance abuse programs. The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) reaffirmed its position against the legalization of marijuana and its opposition to "medical marijuana"; it offers recommendations to protect children and adolescents in states that have legalized marijuana for medical or recreational purposes.

Committee on Substance Abuse, Committee on Adolescence, Committee on Substance Abuse Committee on Adolescence: The impact of marijuana policies on youth: clinical, research, and legal update. Pediatrics 2015 Mar;135(3):584–587 [PMID: 25624383].

Johnston LD et al: Monitoring the Future National Survey Results on Drug Use: 1975–2014: Overview, Key Findings on Adolescent Drug Use. Ann Arbor, MI: Institute for Social Research, The University of Michigan; 2015.

Kann L et al; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States, 2013. MMWR Surveill Summ 2014 Jun 13;63(Suppl 4):1–168 [PMID: 24918634].

Kuehn BM: Teen perceptions of marijuana risks shift: use of alcohol, illicit drugs, and tobacco declines. JAMA 2013 Feb 6;309(5):429–430 [PMID: 23385247].

Salomonsen-Sautel S et al: Medical marijuana use among adolescents in substance abuse treatment. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2012 Jul;51(7):694–702 [PMID: 22721592].

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration: Results from the 2013 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Summary of National Findings. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration; 2014.

Young AM et al: Nonmedical use of prescription medications among adolescents in the United States: a systematic review. J Adolesc Health 2012 Jul;51(1):6–17 [PMID: 22727071].

Supplement Use & Abuse

Use of supplements or special diets to enhance athletic performance dates to antiquity. Today, many elite and casual athletes use ergogenic (performance-enhancing) supplements in an attempt to improve performance. The most popular products used by adolescents are anabolic-androgenic steroids, steroid hormone precursors, creatine, human growth hormone, diuretics, and protein supplements. Anabolic-androgenic steroids increase strength and lean body mass and lessen muscle breakdown. However, they are associated with side effects, including acne, liver tumors, hypertension, premature closure of the epiphysis, ligamentous injury, and precocious puberty. In females, they can cause hirsutism, male pattern baldness, and virilization; in boys, they can cause gynecomastia and testicular atrophy. Creatine increases strength and improves performance in brief, high-intensity exercises but can cause dehydration, muscle cramps, and has potential for renal toxicity. Human growth hormone may increase lean body mass and decrease fat mass, but has limited effect on strength and athletic performance. Potential risks include coarsening of facial features and cardiovascular disease. Strength athletes (ie, weight lifters) use protein powders and shakes to enhance muscle repair and mass. The amount of protein consumed often greatly exceeds the recommended daily allowance for weight lifters and other resistance-training athletes (1.6–1.7 g/kg/d). Excess consumption of protein provides no added strength or muscle mass and can provoke renal failure in the presence of underlying renal dysfunction. The AAP cautions against the use of performance-enhancing substances.

As the use of supplements and herbs increases, it is increasingly important for pediatric care providers to be familiar with their common side effects. The Internet has become a source for information about and distribution of these products. The easy accessibility, perceived low risk, and low cost of these products significantly increase the

likelihood that they will become substances of abuse by adolescents.

Blashill AJ, Safren SA: Sexual orientation and anabolic-androgenic steroids in U.S. adolescent boys. Pediarics 2014 Mar;133(3): 469–475 [PMID: 24488735].
Breuner CC: Performance-enhancing substances. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014 Apr;25(1):113–125 [PMID: 25022190].
Castellanos D et al: Synthetic cannabinoid use: a case series of adolescents. J Adolesc Health 2011 Oct;49(4):347–349 [PMID: 21939863].
Dandoy C, Gereige RS: Performance-enhancing drugs. Pediatr Rev 2012 Jun;33(6):265–271 [PMID: 22659257].
Patrick ME, Maggs JL: Energy drinks and alcohol: links to alcohol behaviors and consequences across 56 days. J Adolesc Health 2014;54(4):454–459 [PMID: 24309196].
Sepkowitz KA: Energy drinks and caffeine-related adverse effects. JAMA 2013 Jan 16;309(3):243–244 [PMID: 23330171].

Bath Salts

In 2010, there was an increase in the use of a newer drug of abuse called "bath salts." These products, which are not related to bathing use, are also known as Bliss, Vanilla Sky, or Ivory Wave. These substances are synthetic cathinones and encompass a family of substances that include the main ingredient 4-methylene-dioxypyrovalerone, a central nervous stimulant that acts by inhibiting norepinephrine-dopaminergic reuptake. The effects of these substances are similar to those of stimulants like PCP, ecstasy, and LSD (see Tables 5–1 and 5–2). Overdoses can potentially be severe and lethal. Their use increased rapidly in 2010, peaked in the first half of 2011, and began to decline by 2012. The recent decrease in use occurred due to efforts of drug enforcement agencies and media dissemination of messages about the dangers of bath salts, resulting in increased perception of risk. Additionally, they are now less easily available via the Internet. These substances cannot be detected by routine drug screen, which may complicate management in the emergency department. The 2014 Monitoring the Future survey found an annual prevalence rate of use to be 0.9% among grade 12 adolescents in 2014.

Williams JF, Lundahl LH, Fortune RS: Evolving array of substances used by adolescents. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014 Apr;25(1):184–214 [PMID: 25022194].

MORBIDITY DATA

Use and abuse of alcohol or other mood-altering substances in adolescents in the United States are tightly linked to adolescents' leading causes of death, that is, motor vehicle accidents, unintentional injury, homicide, and suicide. Substance abuse is also associated with physical and sexual abuse. Drug use and abuse contribute to other high-risk behaviors, such as unsafe sexual activity, unintended pregnancy, and sexually transmitted disease. Adolescents may also be involved with selling of drugs.

Risks associated with tobacco, alcohol, and cocaine are listed in Table 5–2. Less well known are the long- and short-term adolescent morbidities connected with the currently most popular illicit drugs, marijuana, and ecstasy. The active ingredient in marijuana, δ-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), transiently causes tachycardia, mild hypertension, and bronchodilation. Regular use can cause lung changes similar to those seen in tobacco smokers. Heavy use decreases fertility in both sexes and impairs immunocompetence. It is also associated with abnormalities of cognition, learning, coordination, and memory. It is possible that heavy marijuana use is the cause of the so-called amotivational syndrome, characterized by inattention to environmental stimuli and impaired goal-directed thinking and behavior. Analysis of confiscated marijuana recently has shown increasing THC concentration and adulteration with other substances.

The popularity and accessibility of ecstasy is again increasing among adolescents. Chronic use is associated with progressive decline of immediate and delayed memory, and with alterations in mood, sleep, and appetite that may be permanent. Even first-time users may develop frank psychosis indistinguishable from schizophrenia. Irreversible cardiomyopathy, noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, and pulmonary hypertension may occur with long-term use. Acute overdose can cause hyperthermia and multiorgan system failure.

Prenatal and environmental exposure to abused substances also carries health risks. Parental tobacco smoking is associated with low birth weight in newborns, sudden infant death syndrome, bronchiolitis, asthma, otitis media, and fire-related injuries. Maternal use of marijuana during pregnancy is associated with an increased risk of sudden infant death syndrome. In utero exposure to alcohol may produce fetal malformations, intrauterine growth restriction, and brain injury.

Bada HS et al: Protective factors can mitigate behavior problems after prenatal cocaine and other drug exposures. Pediatrics 2012 Dec;130(6):e1479–e1288 [PMID: 23184114].
Delcher C et al: Driving after drinking among young adults of different race/ethnicities in the United States: unique risk factors in early adolescence? J Adolesc Health 2013 May;52(5):584–591 [PMID: 23608720].
Frese W et al: Opioids: nonmedical use and abuse in older children. Pediatr Rev 2011 Apr;32(4):e44–e52 [PMID: 21460089].
Grenard JL et al: Exposure to alcohol advertisements and teenage alcohol-related problems. Pediatrics 2013 Feb;131(2): e369–e379 [PMID: 23359585].
McCabe SE et al: Medical misuse of controlled medications among adolescents. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med. 2011 Aug;165(8): 729–735 [PMID: 21810634].
Walton MA et al: Sexual risk behaviors among teens at an urban emergency department: relationship with violent behaviors and substance use. J Adolesc Health 2011 Mar;48(3):303–305 [PMID: 21338903].

PREDICTING THE PROGRESSION FROM USE TO ABUSE

Initially, most adolescents use mood-altering substances intermittently or experimentally. The challenge to pediatric health care providers is to recognize warning signs, identify potential abusers early, and intervene in an effective fashion before acute or chronic use produces morbidity. The prediction of progression from use to abuse is best viewed within the biopsychosocial model. Substance abuse is a symptom of personal and social maladjustment as often as it is a cause. Because there is a direct relationship between the number of risk factors listed in Table 5–3 and the frequency of substance abuse, a combination of risk factors is the best indicator of risk. Even so, most teenagers with multiple risk characteristics never progress to substance abuse. It is unclear why only a minority of young people exhibiting the high-risk characteristics listed in Table 5–3 go on to abuse substances, but presumably the protective factors listed in Table 5–3 give most adolescents the resilience to cope with stress in more socially adaptive ways. Being aware of the risk domains in Table 5–3 will help physicians identify youngsters most apt to need counseling about substance abuse.

Chartier KG et al: Development and vulnerability factors in adolescent alcohol use. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):493–504 [PMID: 20682217].

Meyers JL et al: Genetic and environmental risk factors for adolescent-onset substance use disorders. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):465–477 [PMID: 20682215].

Oshri A et al: Developmental trajectories of substance use among sexual minority girls: associations with sexual victimization and sexual health risk. J Adolesc Health 2014;55(1):100–106 [PMID: 24534358].

Table 5–3. Factors that influence the progression from substance use to substance abuse.

Enabling Risk Factors	Potentially Protective Factors
Societal and community	
Experimentation encouraged by media Illicit substances available Extreme economic deprivation Neighborhood disorganization, crowding Tolerance of licit and illicit substance use	Regular involvement in church activities Support for norms and values of society Strict enforcement of laws prohibiting substance use among minors and abuse among adults Neighborhood resources, supportive adults
School	
Lack of commitment to school or education Truancy Academic failure Early, persistent behavior problems	Strong commitment to school or education Future-oriented goals Achievement oriented
Family	
Models of substance abuse and other unconventional behavior Dysfunctional parenting styles; excessive authority or permissiveness High family conflict; low bonding	Models of conventional behavior Attachment to parents Cohesive family Nurturing parenting styles
Peers	
Peer rejection in elementary grades Substance use prevalent among peers Peer attitudes favorable to substance abuse and unconventional behavior	Popular with peers Abstinent friends Peer attitudes favor conventional behavior
Individual	
Genetic predisposition Psychological diagnoses (attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder; antisocial personality) Depression and low self-esteem Alienation and rebelliousness Sexual or physical abuse Early onset of deviant behavior or delinquency Early onset of sexual behavior Aggressive	Positive self-concept, good self-esteem Intolerance of deviance Internally motivated, takes charge of problems

EVALUATION OF SUBSTANCE ABUSE

Office Screening

The AAP Committee on Substance Abuse recommends that pediatricians include discussions of substance abuse as part of their anticipatory care. This should include screening for substance abuse with parents at the first prenatal visit. Given the high incidence of substance abuse and the subtlety of its early signs and symptoms, a general psychosocial assessment is the best way to screen for substance abuse among adolescents. The universal screening approach outlined in the American Medical Association (AMA) Guidelines for Adolescent Preventive Services (GAPS) is a good guide for routine screening and diagnosis. Interviewing and counseling techniques and methods for taking a psychosocial history are discussed in Chapter 4. In an atmosphere of trust and confidentiality, physicians should ask routine screening questions of all patients and be alert for addictive diseases, recognizing the high level of denial often present in addicted patients. Clues to possible substance abuse include truancy, failing grades, problems with interpersonal relationships, delinquency, depressive affect, chronic fatigue, recurrent abdominal pain, chest pains or palpitations, headache, chronic cough, persistent nasal discharge, and recurrent complaints of sore throat. Substance abuse should be included in the differential diagnosis of all behavioral, family, psychosocial, and medical problems. A family history of drug addiction or abuse should raise the level of concern about drug abuse in the pediatric patient. Possession of promotional products such as T-shirts and caps with cigarette or alcohol logos should also be a red flag because teenagers who own these items are more likely to use the products they advertise. Pediatricians seeing patients in emergency departments, trauma units, or prison should have an especially high index of suspicion.

In the primary care setting, insufficient time and lack of training are the greatest barriers to screening adolescents for substance abuse. Brief questionnaires can be used if time does not allow for more detailed investigation. A screening instrument that has been rigorously studied in primary care settings is the CAGE questionnaire. CAGE is a mnemonic derived from the first four questions that asks the patient questions regarding their substance use. These are their need to cut down annoyance if asked about it, feeling guilty about the use, and the need of the drug/alcohol as an eye opener. A score of 2 or more is highly suggestive of substance abuse. Although constructed as a screening tool for alcohol abuse in adults, the CAGE questionnaire can be adapted to elicit information about use of other mood-altering substances by pediatric patients and their close contacts (eg, parents and older siblings). Clinicians may find it helpful to use such questionnaires to stimulate discussion of the patient's self-perception of his or her substance use. For example, if an adolescent admits to a previous attempt to cut down on drinking, this provides an opportunity to inquire about events that may have led to the attempt. Unfortunately, despite guidance to screen adolescents for substance abuse, recent studies demonstrate that clinicians do not regularly ask/advise adolescents about substance use.

Interest in an integrated, algorithm-based approach called Screening, Brief Intervention, and Referral to Treatment (SBIRT) has increased as a means to bridge the gap between universal prevention programs in the primary care setting and specialty substance abuse programs. The three main goals of the SBIRT screening are to determine whether teens have used any alcohol or drugs; to determine where adolescents are on the substance use spectrum; and, finally, for the health care provider to initiate a brief discussion with their teenage patients about substance use and provide them with education, advice, and referrals within a motivational interviewing model.

Chung T et al: Drinking frequency as a brief screen for adolescent alcohol problems. Pediatrics 2012 Feb;129(2):205–212 [PMID: 22218839].

Committee on Substance Abuse; Levy SJ, Kokotailo PK: Substance use screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment for pediatricians. Pediatrics 2011;128(5):e1330–e1340 [PMID: 22042818].

Ewing JA: Detecting alcoholism. The CAGE questionnaire. JAMA 1984 Oct;252(14):1905–1907 [PMID: 6471323].

Harris SK, Louis-Jacques J, Knight JR: Screening and brief intervention for alcohol and other abuse. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014 Apr;25(1):126–156 [PMID: 25022191].

Hingson RW et al: Physician advice to adolescents about drinking and other health behaviors. Pediatrics 2013 Feb;131(2):249–257 [PMID: 23359580].

Kokotailo B: Alcohol use by youth and adolescents: a pediatric concern. Pediatrics 2010 May;125(5):1078–1087 [PMID: 20385640].

National Institute for Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Alcohol Screening and Brief Intervention for Youth: A Practitioner's Guide; 2011. http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/Practitioner/YouthGuide/YouthGuide.pdf. Accessed April 12, 2015.

Strasburger VC: Policy statement—children, adolescents, substance abuse, and the media. Pediatrics 2010 Oct;126(4):791–799 [PMID: 20876181].

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. White paper on Screening, Brief Intervention and Referral to Treatment (SBIRT) in Behavioral Healthcare. http://www.samhsa.gov/sites/default/files/sbirtwhitepaper_0.pdf. Accessed on April 12, 2015.

Wunsch MJ, Gonzalez PK: Responding to the prescription opioid epidemic: practical information for pediatricians. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):104–112 [PMID: 25022189].

Diagnosis

When the psychosocial history suggests the possibility of substance use, the primary tasks of the diagnostic interview are the same as for the evaluation of other medical problems (Table 5–4).

Table 5–4. Evaluation of positive psychosocial screens for substance abuse.

I. define the extent of the problem by determining:
Age at onset of substance use
Which substances are being used
Circumstances of use
Where?
When?
With whom?
To what extent substances are being used
How frequently?
How much (quantity)?
With what associated symptoms (eg, tolerance, withdrawal)?
With what result?
What does the patient gain from becoming high?
Does the patient get into risky situations while high?
Does the patient engage in behaviors while high that are later regretted?
II. define the cause of the problem

First, specific information about the extent and circumstances of the problem is gathered. Eliciting information through multiple-choice questions is a useful technique. For example, "Has anything really good ever happened to you when you are high? Some of my patients like to get high because they feel good; others find it helps them relax and be sociable with friends; and some find it helps them forget their problems. Are any of these things true for you?"

Second, the provider should determine why the patient has progressed from initiation to the continuation or maintenance phase of substance abuse. The cause may be different at different periods of development. Although peer group characteristics are one of the best predictors of substance use among early and middle adolescents, this is not so among older adolescents and young adults.

Although few children and adolescents will have been abusing substances long enough to have developed overt signs and symptoms, it is important to look for them on physical examination. Positive physical findings can be a tool to penetrate a patient's denial and convince him or her of the significance of alcohol or drug use.

Griffin KW et al: Evidence-based interventions for preventing substance use disorders in adolescents. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):505–526 [PMID: 20682218].

Comorbidity

Comorbidities, especially other psychiatric disorders, are common among substance-abusing patients (Table 5–5). Affective disorder, anxiety disorder, and mania are most strongly associated with alcohol and drug dependence.

Table 5–5. Common comorbid conditions associated with adolescent substance abuse.

1. Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
2. Bipolar disorder
3. Depression disorder
4. Anxiety disorders (often with depressive disorders)

Attention-deficit/hyperactivity has also been closely linked with adolescent substance abuse. Adolescents with depression are likely to use drugs in an attempt to feel pleasure, but this type of self-medication may exacerbate their underlying condition. Although it is often difficult to determine which diagnosis is primary, it is important for pediatric health care providers to recognize the possibility of a comorbid condition and provide appropriate treatment. Finally, in addition to identifying psychiatric comorbidities, it is imperative that providers look for medical conditions that mimic symptoms of drug withdrawal or intoxication.

Bukstein OG et al: Management of the adolescent with substance use disorders and comorbid psychopathology. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):609–623 [PMID: 20682224].

Burnett-Zeigler I et al: Prevalence and correlates of mental health problems and treatment among adolescents seen in primary care. J Adolesc Health 2012 Jun;50(6):559–564 [PMID: 22626481].

Joffe A: Nonmedical use of prescription stimulants by adolescents. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):89–103 [PMID: 25022188].

Schoenfelder EN et al: Stimulant treatment of ADHD and cigarette smoking: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2014;133(6):1070–1080 [PMID: 24819571].

Tamm L et al: Predictors of treatment response in adolescents with comorbid substance use disorder and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. J Subst Abuse Treat 2013 Feb;44(2):224–230 [PMID: 22889694].

Warden D et al: Major depression and treatment response in adolescents with ADHD and substance use disorder. Drug Alcohol Depend 2012 Jan 1;120(1–3):214–219 [PMID: 21885210].

Pharmacologic Screening

The use of urine and blood testing for detecting substance abuse is controversial. The consensus is that pharmacologic screening should be reserved for situations in which behavioral dysfunction is of sufficient concern to outweigh the practical and ethical drawbacks of testing. The AAP recommends testing under certain circumstances (eg, an inexplicably obtunded patient in the emergency department), but discourages routine screening for the following reasons: (1) voluntary screening is rarely truly voluntary owing to the negative consequences for those who decline to participate;

(2) infrequent users or individuals who have not used substances recently may be missed; (3) confronting substance-abusing individuals with objective evidence of their use has little or no effect on behavior; and (4) the role of health care providers is to provide counseling and treatment, not law enforcement, so drug testing should not be done for the purpose of detecting illegal use. If testing is to be performed, the provider should discuss the plan for screening with the patient, explain the reasons for it, and obtain informed consent. The AAP does not consider parental request and permission sufficient justification for involuntary screening of mentally competent minors. It also opposes widespread drug testing in schools because of a lack of solid evidence for its effectiveness.

If testing is to be performed, it is imperative that it be done accurately and that the limitations of testing be understood. Tests range from inexpensive chromatographic spot tests, which can be performed in the office, to gas chromatography and mass spectrometry, which require specialized laboratory equipment and are usually reserved for forensic investigations. Most commercial medical laboratories use the enzyme multiplication immunoassay technique, in which a sample of the fluid to be tested is added to a test reagent containing a known quantity of radiolabeled index drug. If the index drug is present in the patient's urine or serum, it competes with the radiolabeled drug for binding sites on the test kit antibody. The unbound or excess drug can then be quantified with a spectrophotometer. Most of the commonly abused mood-altering substances, with the exception of solvents and inhalants, can be detected by this method.

Interpretation of results is complicated by false-positives resulting from antibody cross-reactions with some medications and substances (Table 5–6) or from a patient's passive exposure to illicit substances. The most common cause of false-negative tests is infrequent use. Table 5–7 shows the duration of detectability in the urine after last use by class of substance and duration of use. Detectability ranges from a few hours for alcohol to several weeks for regular marijuana use. False-negative results can also occur if the patient alters or adulterates the test specimen. Some of the commercial products used to adulterate samples include glutaraldehyde, nitrite, pyridinium chlorochromate, peroxidase, and peroxide (stealth). Household products such as bleach, vinegar, Visine® eye drops (for marijuana), strong alkali drain cleaners, and detergents are also used. Teenagers should be advised that, despite street lore, ingesting these compounds is an ineffective and potentially dangerous way to prevent drug detection in the urine. Close observation during collection and testing the temperature, specific gravity, and pH of urine samples may detect attempts at deception.

Home drug-testing products are available for parents and can be procured via the Internet; however, these products have limitations and potential risks. The AAP recommends that home (and school-based) drug testing not be implemented until the safety and efficacy of these procedures can be established. It further recommends that parents be encouraged to consult the adolescent's primary care provider rather than relying on home drug-testing products.

Table 5–6. Causes of false-positive drug screens.

Opioids	
	Poppy seeds
	Dextromethorphan
	Chlorpromazine
	Diphenoxylate
Amphetamines	
	Ephedrine
	Phenylephrine
	Pseudoephedrine
	N-acetylprocainamide
	Chloroquine
	Procainamide
Phencyclidines	
	Dextromethorphan
	Diphenhydramine
	Chlorpromazine
	Doxylamine
	Thioridazine

Table 5–7. Duration of urine positivity for selected drugs.

Drug Class	Detection Time
Amphetamines	< 48 h
Barbiturates	Short acting: 1 d Long acting: 2–3 wk
Benzodiazepines	Single dose: 3 d Habitual use: 4–6 wk
Cocaine metabolites	Acute use: 2–4 d Habitual use: 2 wk
Ethanol	2–14 h
Methadone	Up to 3 d
Opioids	Up to 2 d
Propoxyphene	6–48 h
Cannabinoid	Moderate use: 5 d Habitual use: 10–20 d
Methaqualone	2 wk
Phencyclidine	Acute use: 1 wk Habitual use: 3 wk
Anabolic steroids	Days to weeks

Reproduced with permission from Woolf A, Shannon M: Clinical toxicology for the pediatrician. Pediatr Clin North Am 1995;42(2):317-333.

Levy S, Schizer M; Committee on Substance Abuse: Adolescent drug testing policies in schools. Pediatrics 2015 Apr;135(4): 782–783 [PMID: 25825537].
Levy S, Siqueira LM; Committee on Substance Abuse: Testing for drugs of abuse in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 20114;133(6):e1798–e1807 [PMID: 24864184].
Terry-McElrath YM, O'Malley PM, Johnston LD: Middle and high school drug testing and student illicit drug use: a national study 1998–2011. J Adolesc Health 2012;Jun;52(6):707–715 [PMID: 23406889].

TREATMENT & REFERRAL

Office-Based Treatment

The AMA and the AAP recommend that all children and adolescents receive counseling about the dangers of substance use and abuse from their primary care providers. By offering confidential health care services and routinely counseling about the risks associated with drug abuse, primary care providers can help most patients avoid the adverse consequences of experimentation with mood-altering substances. However, more intervention is required for youngsters in environments where substance abuse is regarded as acceptable recreational behavior. Counseling strategies appropriate for patients who wish to change their behavior may be ineffective for patients who do not consider use of mood-altering substances to be a problem. It may therefore be preferable to begin discussions about treatment by helping youngsters consider alternative ways of meeting the needs that substance use is currently addressing. The clinician in this way may help the patient devise alternatives that are more attractive than substance use. Brief interventions for adolescents have yielded some improvement among high-risk youth. However, few substance-abusing teenagers will choose to quit because of a single conversation, even with a highly respected health care provider. The message is most effective when offered repeatedly from many sources—family, peers, guidance counselors, and teachers. Motivational interviewing and computer-facilitated screening and brief advice for substance-abusing teens have shown promise.

Assessment of the patient's readiness to change is a critical first step in office-based intervention. Clinicians should consider the construct presented in Table 5–8. In theory, individuals pass through this series of stages in the course of changing problem behaviors. To be maximally effective, providers should tailor their counseling messages to the patient's stage of readiness to change.

Once it has been established that a patient is prepared to act on information about treatment, the next step is to select the program that best fits his or her individual needs. Most drug treatment programs are not designed to recognize and act on the individual vulnerabilities that have predisposed the patient to substance abuse. When programs are individualized, even brief (5- to 10-minute) counseling sessions may promote reductions in cigarette smoking and drinking. This strategy appears to be most effective when the health care provider's message is part of an office-wide program so that the entire staff reinforces the cessation message with every patient.

Table 5–8. Stages of change and intervention tasks.

Patient Stage	Motivation Tasks
Precontemplation	Create doubt, increase the patient's awareness of risks and problems with current patterns of substance use
Contemplation	Help the patient weigh the relative risks and benefits of changing substance use; evoke reasons to change and risks of not changing; strengthen the patient's self-efficacy for changing current use
Determination	Help the patient determine the best course of action to change substance use from among available alternatives
Action	Help the patient establish a clear plan of action toward changing substance use
Maintenance	Help the patient identify and use strategies to prevent relapse
Relapse	Help the patient renew the process of change starting at contemplation

Reproduced with permission from Werner MJ: Principles of brief intervention for adolescent alcohol, tobacco, and other drug use. Pediatr Clin North Am 1995;42(2):335–349.

Cagande CC, Pradhan BK, Pumariega AJ: Treatment of adolescent substance use disorders. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):157–171 [PMID: 25022192].
Garner BR et al: Using pay for performance to improve treatment implementation for adolescent substance use disorders: results from a cluster randomized trial. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2012 Oct;166(10):938–944 [PMID: 22893231].
Harris SK et al: Computer-facilitated substance use screening and brief advice for teens in primary care: an international trial. Pediatrics 2012 Jun;129(6):1072–1082 [PMID: 22566420].
Kaplan G et al: Pharmacotherapy for substance abuse disorders in adolescence. Pediatr Clin North Am 2011 Feb;58(1):243–258 [PMID: 21281859].
Stubbs S, Bennett D: Young people and alcohol use: contextualizing and responding to the challenge of problematic drinking. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):50–69 [PMID: 25022186].

Smoking Cessation in Pediatrics

Although more than half of adolescents who smoke regularly say they want to quit and have tried to quit, only a minority report that they have been advised or helped to do so by a

Table 5–9. "Five A's" for tobacco cessation.

Ask about tobacco use from all patients
Advise all tobacco users to quit
Assess willingness and motivation for tobacco user to make a quit attempt
Assist in the quit attempt
Arrange for follow-up

Adapted with permission from Fiore MC et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence. Clinical Practice Guidelines. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service; 2000.

health care provider. Practitioners unfamiliar with approaches to smoking cessation may feel that smoking cessation interventions are time consuming, not reimbursable, and impractical in a busy office. An easy guideline for health care providers is the "five A's" for tobacco cessation (Table 5–9), published by the Public Health Service and endorsed by the AAP.

Smoking cessation is a process that takes time. Relapse must be regarded as a normal part of quitting rather than evidence of personal failure or a reason to forgo further attempts. Patients can actually benefit from relapses if they are helped to identify the circumstances that led to the relapse and to devise strategies to prevent subsequent relapses or respond to predisposing circumstances in a different manner.

Nicotine is a physically and psychologically addictive substance. Providers should be aware that adolescents may not exhibit the same symptoms of nicotine dependence as adults and that dependence may be established within as little as 4 weeks. Replacement therapy improves smoking cessation rates and may relieve withdrawal symptoms. Both nicotine gum and transdermal nicotine patch replacement therapies are recommended for teens. Those who are not comfortable prescribing and monitoring nicotine-replacement therapies should limit their involvement with patients who smoke to those who do not exhibit signs of nicotine dependency (eg, patients who smoke less than a pack of cigarettes a day or do not feel a craving to smoke their first cigarette within 30 minutes after waking). Patients who exhibit nicotine dependency can be referred to community smoking cessation programs, including "smoking quit lines." In addition to nicotine-replacement therapies, sustained-release forms of the antidepressants bupropion, clonidine, and nortriptyline have been shown in randomized trials to help smokers quit and to decrease relapse rates fivefold.

Camenga D: "The new cigs on the block": an update on conventional and novel tobacco products. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014 Apr;25(1):33–49 [PMID: 25022185].

DiFranza JR: Who are you going to believe? Adolescents and nicotine addiction. J Adolesc Health 2011 Jan;48(1):1–2 [PMID: 21185515].

Pbert L et al: State-of-the-art office-based interventions to eliminate youth tobacco use: the past decade. Pediatrics 2015;135(4):734–747 [PMID: 25780075].

Rubinstein ML et al: Smoking-related cue-induced brain activation in adolescent light smokers. J Adolesc Health 2011 Jan;48(1):7–12 [PMID: 21185518].

Referral

There is no consensus about which substance-abusing patients can be adequately treated in the office, which require referral, and which require hospitalization. Factors to be considered prior to referral are summarized in Table 5–10. When doubt exists about the seriousness of the problem or the advisability of office management, consultation with a specialist should be sought.

Although most primary pediatric providers will not assume responsibility for the treatment of substance-abusing youngsters, clinicians can be instrumental in motivating patients to seek treatment and in guiding them to appropriate treatment resources. Substance-abusing teenagers are best treated in teen-oriented treatment facilities. Despite the similarities between adult and adolescent substance abuse, adult programs are usually developmentally inappropriate and ineffective for adolescents. Many adolescents are concrete thinkers and their inability to reason deductively, especially about emotionally charged issues, makes it difficult for them to understand the abstract concepts (such as denial) that are an integral component of most adult-oriented programs. This invariably frustrates counselors

Table 5–10. Factors to consider prior to referral for substance abuse.

Duration and frequency of substance use
The type of substances being used
Presence of other psychological disorders
Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
Depression
Antisocial personality disorder
Presence of other social morbidities
School failure
Delinquency
Homelessness
Ongoing or past physical or sexual abuse
Program evaluation
View on substance abuse as primary disorder vs symptom
Offers comprehensive evaluation of patient and can manage associated problems identified in initial assessment (eg, comorbid conditions)
Adherence to abstinence philosophy
Patient-staff ratios
Separate adolescent and adult treatment programs
Follow-up and continuing care

who misinterpret lack of comprehension as resistance to therapy and concrete responses as evidence of deceit.

Treatment programs range from low-intensity, outpatient, school-based student-assistance programs, which rely heavily on peers and nonprofessionals, to residential, hospital-based programs staffed by psychiatrists and other professionals. Outpatient counseling programs are most appropriate for motivated patients who do not have significant mental health or behavioral problems and are not at risk for withdrawal. Some investigators have raised the concern that in pediatric settings, users who lack significant mental health or behavioral comorbidities may actually experience a strengthening of the drug subculture by associating in group therapy with users who have a greater burden of comorbidities. More intensive day treatment programs are available for those who require a structured environment. Inpatient treatment should be considered for patients who need medical care and detoxification in addition to counseling, education, and family therapy.

Finally, special dual-diagnosis facilities are available for substance-abusing patients who also have other psychological conditions. These patients are difficult to diagnose and treat because it is often unclear whether their symptoms are a consequence of substance use or a symptom of a comorbid psychological disorder. Recognition of such disorders is critical because they must be treated in programs that include psychiatric expertise.

Approaches to the treatment of substance abuse in children and adolescents are typically modeled after adult treatment programs. Key elements of an effective adolescent drug treatment program include: assessment and treatment matching, a comprehensive and integrated treatment approach, family involvement, a developmentally appropriate program, engagement and retention of teens, qualified staff, gender and cultural competence, continuing care, and satisfactory treatment outcomes. Several studies of adolescent substance abuse treatment programs have shown that many do not adequately address all of the important components of therapy.

Janopaul-Naylor E, Brown JD, Lowenhaupt EA, Tolou-Shams M: Assessment and treatment of substance abuse in the juvenile justice population. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):215–229 [PMID: 25022195].

Macgowan MJ et al: Evidence for optimism: behavior therapies and motivational interviewing in adolescent substance abuse treatment. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):527–545 [PMID: 20682219].

Pradhan BK, Cagande CC, Pumariega AJ: Substance abuse among culturally diverse youth. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2014;25(1):172–183 [PMID: 25022193].

Rowe CL: Multidimensional family therapy: addressing co-occurring substance abuse and other problems among adolescents with comprehensive family-based treatment. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010 Jul;19(3):563–576 [PMID: 20682221].

Tripodi SJ et al: Interventions for reducing adolescent alcohol abuse: a meta-analytic review. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2010 Jan;164(1):85–91 [PMID: 20048247].

Saloner B, Carson N, Lê Cook B: Explaining racial/ethnic differences in adolescent substance abuse treatment completion in the United States: a decomposition analysis. J Adolesc Health 2014;54(6):646–653 [PMID: 24613095].

Williams JF: Adolescent substance abuse and treatment acceptability. J Adolesc Health 2011 Mar;48(3):217–219 [PMID: 21338890].

PREVENTION

Prevention of substance abuse has been a public health priority since the 1980s. Pediatric health care providers are important advocates and educators of the community and government on developmentally appropriate programs. Primary level programs focus on preventing the initiation of substance use. The Drug Awareness and Resistance Education (DARE) program is a familiar example of a primary prevention program that attempts to educate elementary and middle school students about the adverse consequences of substance abuse and enable them to resist peer pressures.

Secondary level programs target populations at increased risk for substance use. Their aim is to prevent progression from initiation to continuance and maintenance, relying on individualized intervention to reduce the risk and enhance protective factors listed in Table 5–3. This approach enables the provider to focus scarce resources on those who are most likely to benefit from them. Alateen, which supports the children of alcoholic parents, typifies secondary level prevention.

Tertiary level prevention programs target young people who have been identified as substance abusers. Their aim is to prevent the morbid consequences of substance use. One example is the identification of adolescents who misuse alcohol and drugs at parties and providing them with a safe ride home. Because prevention is more effective when targeted at reducing the initiation of substance use than at decreasing use or associated morbidity, tertiary prevention is the least effective approach.

Very few population-based programs undergo rigorous scientific evaluation, and few programs have been shown to be effective. Although tertiary prevention programs are the least effective approach, it is the consensus among drug educators that primary prevention programs, such as D.A.R.E., also have limited effect. Parents and others should understand that most adolescents who abuse alcohol and drugs do not do so just for the high. Rather, these behaviors are often purposeful, developmentally appropriate coping strategies. To the extent that these behaviors meet young people's developmental needs, they are not apt to be abandoned unless equally attractive alternatives are available. For example, even though many teenagers cite stress and anxiety as

reasons for smoking, teen-oriented smoking cessation programs rarely address the young smoker's need for alternative coping strategies by offering stress management training. Similarly, for the youngster growing up in an impoverished urban environment, the real costs of substance abuse may be too low and the rewards too high to be influenced by talk and knowledge alone. It is unreasonable to expect a talk-based intervention to change attitudes and behaviors in a direction that is opposite to that of the child's own social milieu. The efficacy of the most promising prevention models and interventions is apt to decay over time unless changes in the social environment provide substance-abusing children and adolescents with realistic alternative ways to meet their developmental needs.

Feinstein EC et al: Addressing the critical health problem of adolescent substance use through health care, research, and public policy. J Adolesc Health 2012 May;50(5):431–436 [PMID: 22525104].

REFERENCES

Web Resources

American Lung Association (site for and by teens): http://www.lungusa.org/smokefreeclass. Monitoring the Future Study (detailed information and longitudinal data): http://www.monitoringthefuture.org.

National Clearinghouse Drug and Alcohol Abuse (information and resources, including free publications for providers, parents, and adolescents): http://www.health.org.

National Institute on Drug Abuse: http://www.nida.nih.gov.

Substance Use and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMSA; resources for both substance use and mental health services): http://www.samhsa.gov.

6

Eating Disorders

Eric J. Sigel, MD

Adolescents as well as younger children engage in disordered eating behavior at an alarming rate, and many develop partial or full-blown eating disorders (EDs). The spectrum of eating disorders includes anorexia nervosa (AN), bulimia nervosa (BN), binge-eating disorder (BED), and avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder (ARFID). These disorders are best defined in a biopsychosocial context.

ETIOLOGY

There is strong evidence for a genetic basis for eating disorders. The incidence of AN is 7% in first-degree relatives of anorexic patients compared with 1%–2% in the general population. The concordance rate in monozygotic twins is 55% compared with 7% in dizygotic twins. Twin studies estimate the heritability of AN as 33%–84% and BN as 28%–83%. Most studies also find a higher incidence of eating disorders among first-degree relatives of bulimic patients.

There is evidence of altered serotonergic and dopaminergic function and alterations in neuropeptides and gut peptides in AN and BN. It remains unclear whether abnormalities of neurotransmitters contribute to the development of EDs or are a consequence of the physiologic changes associated with the disorders. Patients with BN or BED appear to have a blunted serotonin response to eating and satiety. With a decreased satiety response, patients continue to eat, leading to a binge. Treatment with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) tends to equilibrate satiety regulation. An alteration in dopamine has also been recognized, although its significance is not clear. Adiponectin is elevated in AN, although it is unclear whether this is merely secondary to the malnourished state. Cholecystokinin is decreased in BN, perhaps contributing to the lack of postingestion satiety that perpetuates a binge. Ghrelin, a gut peptide, is elevated in patients with AN, and it does not decrease normally after a meal in these patients. Obestatin, a gut peptide that inhibits appetite, is elevated in AN as well.

Leptin physiology is deranged in patients with AN. Abnormalities of leptin may mediate energy changes that affect the hypothalamic-pituitary axis and play a role in perpetuating AN. Leptin levels increase excessively as individuals with AN regain weight. The abnormally high levels of leptin may contribute to the difficulty AN patients have when trying to regain weight, as higher leptin levels signal the body to decrease energy intake. Leptin also plays a significant role in some of the sequelae of AN, with low levels signaling the hypothalamus to inhibit reproductive hormone production.

Some experts have hypothesized that the intrauterine hormonal milieu may explain the differences in prevalence of ED between females and males. Procopio and Marriott have studied the risk of developing AN in the same sex and opposite sex twin pairs when one twin has AN. There was approximately an eightfold risk of developing AN in males with a female twin with AN compared to the risk of developing AN in males who had a male twin with AN. Though the study could not separate environmental influences, evidence from animal models suggests that increased exposure to estrogen and/or decreased exposure to androgens influence brain development and may play a role in determining which individuals are at risk for AN.

Traditional psychological theory has suggested many environmental factors that might promote the development of eating disorders. Enmeshment of mother with daughter to the point that the teenager cannot develop her own identity (a key developmental marker of adolescence) may be a predisposing factor. The teenager may cope by asserting control over food, as she senses her lack of control in the developmental realm. A second theory involves father-daughter distancing. As puberty progresses and a girl's sexuality blossoms, a father may experience difficulty in dealing with his daughter as a sexual being and may respond by withdrawing emotionally and physically. The teenage girl may intuitively recognize this and subconsciously decrease her food intake

in order to become prepubertal again. A third theory is related to puberty itself. Some teenagers may fear or dislike their changing bodies. By restricting food intake they lose weight, stop menstruating, and effectively reverse pubertal development.

Society has promoted the message that being thin or muscular is necessary for attractiveness and success. The ease of access to diet products—foods and diet pills—as well as Internet instructions (proanorexia sites) makes it simple for adolescents to embark on a quest for thinness or muscularity.

Genetic predisposition, environmental factors, and psychological factors likely combine to create a milieu that promotes development of eating disorders.

Bailer UF, Kaye WH: A review of neuropeptide and neuroendocrine dysregulation in anorexia and bulimia nervosa. Curr Drug Target CNS Neurol Disord 2003;2:53 [PMID: 12769812].

Bulik CM, Slof-Op't Landt MC, van Furth EF, Sullivan PF: The genetics of anorexia nervosa. Annu Rev Nutr 2007a;27:263–275.

Campbell IC, Mill J, Uher R, Schmidt U: Eating disorders, gene-environment interaction, and epigentics. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 2011;35:784–793 [PMID: 20888360].

Disanto G et al: Season of birth and anorexia nervosa. Brit J Psych 2011;198(5):404–407 [PMID: 21415047].

Procopio M, Marriott P: Intrauterine hormonal environment and risk of developing anorexia nervosa. Arch Gen Psych 2007; 64(12):1402 [PMID: 18056548].

Warren MP: Endocrine manifestations of eating disorders. J Clinical Endocrin Metabolism 2011;96(2):333 [PMID: 21159848].

INCIDENCE

Anorexia Nervosa is the third most common chronic illness of adolescent girls in the United States. The incidence has been increasing steadily in the United States since the 1930s. Although ascertaining exact incidence is difficult, most studies show that 1%–2% of teenagers develop AN and 2%–4% develop BN. Adolescents outnumber adults 5 to 1, although the number of adults with eating disorders is rising. Incidence is also increasing among younger children. Prepubertal patients often have associated psychiatric diagnoses. Males comprise about 10% of patients with EDs, though this prevalence appears to be increasing as well, associated with the increased media emphasis on muscular, chiseled appearance as the male ideal.

Preadolescents with EDs, in comparison to teenagers with EDs, are more likely to be male and present with rapid weight loss and lower percentile body weight and less likely to engage in bulimic behaviors.

Teenagers' self-reported prevalence of ED behavior is much higher than the official incidence of AN or BN. In the most recent Youth Risk Behavior Survey of US teenagers (2013), 63% of females and 33% of males had attempted to lose weight during the preceding 30 days. Thirteen percent had fasted for more than 24 hours to lose weight, and 5% had used medications to lose weight (6.6% of girls and 3.4% of boys). Self-induced vomiting or laxative use was reported by 6.6% of females and 2.2% of males. Forty-six percent of females and 30% of males reported at least one binge episode during their lifetime. Although the number of youth with full-spectrum eating disorders is low, it is alarming that so many youth experiment with unhealthy weight control habits. These behaviors may be precursors to the development of eating disorders, and clinicians should explore these practices with all adolescent patients.

Halmi KA: Anorexia nervosa: an increasing problem in children and adolescents. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 2009;11(1):100–103 [PMID: 19432392].

Kann L et al: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): youth risk behavior surveillance—United States 2013. MMWR Surveill Summ June 13 2014;63(SS-4):39–41 [PMID: 24918634]. http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/ss/ss6304.pdf.

Peebles R et al: How do children with eating disorders differ from adolescents with eating disorders at initial evaluation? J Adolesc Health 2006;39:800 [PMID: 17116508].

PREDISPOSING FACTORS & CLINICAL PROFILES

Children involved in gymnastics, figure skating, and ballet—activities that emphasize thin bodies—are at higher risk for AN than are children in sports that do not emphasize body image. Adolescents who believe that being thin represents the ideal frame for a female, those who are dissatisfied with their bodies, and those with a history of dieting are at increased risk for eating disorders. Sudden changes in dietary habits, such as becoming vegetarian, may be a first sign of anorexia, especially if the change is abrupt and without good reason.

The typical bulimic patient tends to be impulsive and to engage in risk-taking behavior such as alcohol use, drug use, and sexual experimentation. Bulimic patients are often an appropriate weight for height or slightly overweight. They have average academic performance. Youth with diabetes have an increased risk of BN. In males, wrestling predisposes to BN, and homosexual orientation is associated with binge eating.

Shaw H et al: Body image and eating disturbances across ethnic groups: more similarities than differences. Psychol Addict Behav 2004;18:8 [PMID: 15008651].

Striegel-Moore RH, Bulik CM: Risk factors for eating disorders. Am Psychol 2007;62:181 [PMID: 17469897].

ANOREXIA NERVOSA

Table 6–1 lists the diagnostic criteria for AN, according to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5). The DSM-5 contains significant changes to

Table 6–1. Diagnostic criteria for anorexia nervosa.

1. Restriction of energy intake relative to requirements, leading to a significantly low body weight in the context of age, sex, development trajectory, and physical health. Significantly low weight is defined as a weight that is less than minimally normal or, for children and adolescents, less than that minimally expected.
2. Intense fear of gaining weight or of becoming fat, or persistent behavior that interferes with weight gain, even though at a significantly low weight.
3. Disturbance in the way in which one's body weight or shape is experienced, undue influence of body weight or shape on self-evaluation, or persistent lack of recognition of the seriousness of the current low body weight.
Specify whether: **Restricting** type: During the last 3 mo, the individual has not engaged in recurrent episodes of binge eating or purging behavior (ie, self-induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or enemas). This subtype describes presentations in which weight loss is accomplished primarily through dieting, fasting, and/or excessive exercise. **Binge-eating/purging** type: During the last 3 mo, the individual has engaged in recurrent episodes of binge eating or purging behavior (ie, self-induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or enemas).

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

Table 6–2. Screening questions to help diagnose anorexia and bulimia nervosa.

How do you feel about your body?
Are there parts of your body you might change?
When you look at yourself in the mirror, do you see yourself as overweight, underweight, or satisfactory?
If overweight, how much do you want to weigh?
If your weight is satisfactory, has there been a time when you were worried about being overweight?
If overweight (underweight), what would you change?
Have you ever been on a diet?
What have you done to help yourself lose weight?
Do you count calories or fat grams?
Do you keep your intake to a certain number of calories?
Have you ever used nutritional supplements, diet pills, or laxatives to help you lose weight?
Have you ever made yourself vomit to get rid of food or lose weight?

the diagnosis of AN, including the elimination of amenorrhea as a criterion as well as specific weight criteria, which used to be 85% of expected weight based on 50th percentile body mass index (BMI). These changes will significantly increase the number of youth receiving AN as a diagnosis.

There are two major types of AN. In the restricting type, patients do not regularly engage in binge eating or purging. In the binge-purge type, AN is combined with binge eating or purging behavior, or both. Distinguishing between the two is important as they carry different implications for prognosis and treatment. Although patients may not demonstrate all features of AN, they may still exhibit the deleterious symptoms associated with AN. A third form—atypical AN—exists. These individuals demonstrate typical AN behaviors, but are within or above normal weight.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinicians should recognize the early symptoms and signs of AN because early intervention may prevent the full-blown syndrome from developing. Patients may show some typical AN behaviors, such as reduction in dietary fat and intense concern with body image, even before weight loss or amenorrhea occurs.

Making the diagnosis of AN can be challenging because adolescents may try to conceal their illness. Assessing the patient's body image is essential to determining the diagnosis. Table 6–2 lists screening questions that help tease out a teenager's perceptions of body image. Other diagnostic screening tools (eg, Eating Disorders Inventory) assess a range of eating and dieting behaviors. Parental observations are critical in determining whether a patient has expressed dissatisfaction over body habitus and which weight loss techniques the child has used. If the teenager is unwilling to share his or her concerns about body image, the clinician may find clues to the diagnosis by carefully considering other presenting symptoms or signs. Weight loss from a baseline of normal body weight is an obvious red flag for the presence of an eating disorder. Additionally, AN should be considered in any girl with secondary amenorrhea who has lost weight.

Physical symptoms and signs are usually secondary to weight loss and proportional to the degree of malnutrition. The body effectively goes into hibernation, becoming functionally hypothyroid (euthyroid sick) to save energy. Body temperature decreases, and patients report being cold. Bradycardia develops, especially in the supine position. Dizziness, light-headedness, and syncope may occur as a result of orthostasis and hypotension secondary to impaired cardiac function. Left ventricular mass is decreased, stroke volume is compromised, and peripheral resistance is increased, contributing to left ventricular systolic dysfunction. Patients can develop prolonged QTc syndrome and increased QT dispersion (irregular QT intervals), putting them at risk for cardiac arrhythmias. Peripheral circulation is reduced. Hands and feet may be blue and cool. Hair thins, nails become brittle, and skin becomes dry. Lanugo develops as a primitive response to starvation. The gastrointestinal (GI) tract may be affected; inability to take in normal quantities of food, early satiety, and gastroesophageal reflux can

develop as the body adapts to reduced intake. The normal gastrocolic reflex may be lost due to lack of stimulation by food, causing bloating and constipation. Delayed gastric emptying may develop. Nutritional rehabilitation improves gastric emptying and dyspeptic symptoms in AN restricting type, but not in those who vomit. Neurologically, patients may experience decreased cognition, inability to concentrate, increased irritability, and depression, which may be related to structural brain changes and decreased cerebral blood flow.

Determining BMI is critical for assessing degree of malnutrition. A gown-only weight after urination is the most accurate way to assess weight. Patients tend to wear bulky clothes and may hide weights in their pockets or drink excessive fluid (water-loading) to trick the practitioner. BMI below the 25th percentile indicates risk for malnutrition, and below 5th percentile indicates significant malnutrition. Median body weight (MBW) should be calculated as it serves both as the denominator in determining what percent weight an individual is, as well as to provide a general goal weight during recovery. MBW for height is calculated by using the 50th percentile of BMI for age.

A combination of malnutrition and stress causes hypothalamic hypogonadism. The hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal axis shuts down as the body struggles to survive, directing finite energy resources to vital functions. This may be mediated by the effect of low serum leptin levels on the hypothalamic-pituitary axis. Pubertal development and skeletal growth may be interrupted, and adolescents may experience decreased libido.

Amenorrhea will continue to be an important clinical sign that the body is malnourished. Amenorrhea occurs for two reasons. The hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian axis shuts down under stress, causing hypothalamic amenorrhea. In addition, adipose tissue is needed to convert estrogen to its activated form. When weight loss is significant, there is not enough substrate to activate estrogen. Resumption of menses occurs only when both body weight and body fat increase. Approximately, 73% of postmenarchal girls resume menstruating if they reach 90% of MBW. An adolescent female needs about 17% body fat to restart menses and 22% body fat to initiate menses if she has primary amenorrhea. Some evidence suggests that target weight gain for return of menses is approximately 1 kg higher than the weight at which menses ceased.

B. Laboratory Findings

All organ systems may suffer some degree of damage in the anorexic patient, related both to severity and duration of illness (Table 6–3). Initial screening should include complete blood count with differential; serum levels of electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, phosphorus, calcium, magnesium, and thyroid-stimulating hormone; liver function tests; and urinalysis. Increase in lipids, likely due to abnormal liver function, is seen in 18% of those with AN, with subsequent return to normal once weight is restored. An electrocardiogram (ECG) should be performed, because significant electrocardiographic abnormalities may be present, most importantly prolonged QTc syndrome. Bone densitometry should be done if illness persists for 6 months, as patients begin to accumulate risk for osteoporosis.

Table 6–3. Laboratory findings: anorexia nervosa.

Increased blood urea nitrogen and creatinine secondary to renal insufficiency
Decreased white blood cells, platelets, and less commonly red blood cells and hematocrit secondary to bone marrow suppression or fat atrophy of the bone marrow
Increased AST and ALT secondary to malnutrition
Increased cholesterol, thought to be related to altered fatty acid metabolism
Decreased alkaline phosphatase secondary to zinc deficiency
Low- to low-normal thyroid-stimulating hormone and thyroxine
Decreased follicle-stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, estradiol, and testosterone secondary to shutdown of hypothalamic pituitary-gonadal axis
Abnormal electrolytes related to hydration status
Decreased phosphorus
Decreased insulin-like growth factor
Increased cortisol
Decreased urine specific gravity in cases of intentional water intoxication

ALT, alanine aminotransferase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase.

» Differential Diagnosis

If the diagnosis is unclear (ie, the patient has lost a significant amount of weight but does not have typical body image distortion or fat phobia), the clinician must consider the differential diagnosis for weight loss in adolescents. This includes inflammatory bowel disease, diabetes, hyperthyroidism, malignancy, depression, and chronic infectious disease such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Less common diagnoses include adrenal insufficiency and malabsorption syndromes such as celiac disease. The history and physical examination should direct specific laboratory and radiologic evaluation.

» Complications (Table 6–4)

A. Short-Term Complications

1. Early satiety—Patients may have difficulty tolerating even modest quantities of food when intake increases; this usually resolves after the patients adjust to larger meals. Gastric emptying is poor. Pancreatic and biliary secretion is diminished.

2. Superior mesenteric artery syndrome—As patients become malnourished, the fat pad between the superior

Table 6–4. Complications of anorexia and bulimia nervosa, by mechanism.

Cardiovascular	Hematologic
Bradycardia (WL/MN)	Leukopenia (WL/MN)
Postural hypotension (WL/MN, SIV, LX)	Anemia (WL/MN)
Arrhythmia, sudden death (WL/MN, SIV, LX)	Thrombocytopenia (WL/MN)
Congestive heart failure (during refeeding) (WL/MN)	↓ ESR (WL/MN)
Pericardial effusion (WL/MN)	Impaired cell-mediated immunity (WL/MN)
Mitral valve prolapse (WL/MN)	Metabolic
ECG abnormalities (prolonged QT, low voltage, T-wave abnormalities, conduction defects) (WL/MN)	Dehydration (WL/MN, SIV, LXA, DU)
Endocrine	Acidosis (LXA)
↓ LH, FSH (WL/MN)	Alkalosis (SIV)
↓ T_3, ↑ rT_3, ↓ T_4, TSH (WL/MN)	Hypokalemia (SIV, LXA, DU)
Irregular menses (WL/MN, B/P)	Hyponatremia (SIV, LXA, DU, WL/MN)
Amenorrhea (WL/MN)	Hypochloremia (SIV)
Hypercortisolism (WL/MN)	Hypocalcemia (WL/MN, SIV)
Growth retardation (WL/MN)	Hypophosphatemia (WL/MN)
Delayed puberty (WL/MN)	Hypomagnesemia (WL/MN)
Decreased libido (WL/MN)	Hypercarotenemia (WL/MN)
gastrointestinal	neurologic
Dental erosion (SIV)	Cortical atrophy-white and gray matter (WL/MN)
Parotid swelling (SIV)	Peripheral neuropathy (WL/MN)
Esophagitis, esophageal tears (SIV)	Seizures (WL/MN, SIV, LXA)
Delayed gastric emptying (WL/MN, SIV)	Thermoregulatory abnormalities (WL/MN)
Gastric dilation (rarely rupture) (SIV)	↓ REM and slow-wave sleep (All)
Pancreatitis (WL/MN)	Renal
Constipation (WL/MN, LXA)	Hematuria (WL/MN)
Diarrhea (LXA)	Proteinuria (WL/MN)
Superior mesenteric artery syndrome (WL/MN)	↓ Renal concentrating ability (WL/MN, DU)
Hypercholesterolemia (WL/MN)	Enuresis (WL/MN)
↑ Liver function tests (fatty infiltration of the liver) (WL/MN)	skeletal
	Osteopenia (WL/MN)
	Fractures (WL/MN)

B/P, binge-purge; DU, diuretic abuse; ECG, electrocardiogram; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; LXA, laxative abuse; REM, rapid eye movement; rT_3, resin triiodothyronine uptake; SIV, self-induced vomiting; T_3, triiodothyronine; T_4, thyroxine; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone; WL/MN, weight loss/malnutrition.

mesenteric artery and the duodenum shrinks and compression of the transverse duodenum may cause obstruction and vomiting, especially with solid foods. The upper GI series shows to-and-fro movement of barium in the descending and transverse duodenum proximal to the obstruction. Treatment involves a liquid diet or nasoduodenal feedings until restoration of the fat pad has occurred, coincident with weight gain.

3. Constipation—Patients may be very constipated. Two mechanisms contribute—loss of the gastrocolic reflex and loss of colonic muscle tone. Typically stool softeners are not effective because the colon has decreased peristaltic amplitude. Agents that induce peristalsis, such as bisacodyl, as well as osmotic agents, such as polyethylene glycol-electrolyte solution (MiraLax), are helpful. Constipation can persist for up to 6–8 weeks after refeeding. Occasionally enemas are required.

4. Refeeding syndrome—This syndrome is described in the Treatment section.

5. Pericardial effusion—The degree of malnutrition correlates with increasing prevalence of pericardial effusion. One study demonstrated that 22% of those with AN had silent pericardial effusions, with 88% of effusions resolving after weight restoration.

B. Long-Term Complications

1. Osteoporosis—Approximately 50% of females with AN have reduced bone mass at one or more sites. The lumbar spine has the most rapid turnover and is the area likely to be affected first. Teenagers are particularly at risk as they accrue 40% of their bone mineral during adolescence. Low body weight is most predictive of bone loss. The causes of osteopenia and osteoporosis are multiple. Estrogen and testosterone are essential to potentiate bone development. Bone minerals

begin to resorb without estrogen. Elevated cortisol levels and decreased insulin-like growth factor-1 also contribute to bone resorption. Amenorrhea is highly correlated with osteoporosis. Studies show that as few as 6 months of amenorrhea is associated with osteopenia or osteoporosis. Males may also develop osteoporosis due to decreased testosterone and elevated cortisol.

Until recently, the only proven treatment for bone loss in girls with AN has been regaining sufficient weight and body fat to restart the menstrual cycle. Studies did not support use of hormone replacement therapy delivered orally to improve bone recovery; however, a recent randomized controlled trial demonstrated that physiologic doses of estrogen, delivered transdermally, over 18 months did improve bone density. Clinicians may consider transdermal estrogen treatment if patients are recalcitrant to intervention and do not restore weight in a timely manner. Bisphosphonates, used to treat postmenopausal osteoporosis, are currently being studied in adolescents. Two small randomized controlled trials have shown small positive effects on bone density with alendronate and risedronate, although clinical effectiveness has not yet been determined. Newer treatments with possible effectiveness, including recombinant insulin-like growth factor-1 injection and dehydroepiandrosterone, are under investigation.

2. Brain changes—As malnutrition becomes pronounced, brain tissue—both white and gray matter—is lost, with a compensatory increase in cerebrospinal fluid in the sulci and ventricles. Follow-up studies of weight-recovered anorexic patients show a persistent loss of gray matter, although white matter returns to normal. Functionally, there does not seem to be a direct relationship between cognition and brain tissue loss, although studies have shown a decrease in cognitive ability and decreased cerebral blood flow in very malnourished patients. Making patients and family aware that brain tissue can be lost may improve their perception of the seriousness of this disorder.

3. Effects on future children—This area has just recently been studied. Findings suggest that there may be feeding issues for infants who are born to mothers who have a history of either AN or BN. Infants born to mothers with a history of AN have more feeding difficulties at 0 and 6 months and tend to be lower weight (30th percentile on average). Infants born to mothers with current or past BN are more likely to be overweight and have faster growth rates than controls. Pediatricians should ascertain an eating disorder history from mothers of patients who are having feeding issues.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Asiero D, Frishman WH: Cardiovascular complications of eating disorders. Cardiol Rev 2006;14:227 [PMID: 16924163].

Golden NH et al: Treatment goal weight in adolescents with anorexia nervosa: use of BMI percentiles. Int J Eat Disord 2008;41(4):301–306 [PMID 18176951].

Golden NH et al: Update on the medical management of eating disorders in adolescents. J Adolesc Health 2015;56:370–375 [PMID 25659201].

Kastner S, Salbach-Andrae H, Renneberg B, Pfeiffer E, Lehmkuhl U, Schmitz L: Echocardiographic findings in adolescents with anorexia nervosa at beginning of treatment and after weight recovery. Eur Child Adolesc Psychiatry Jan 2012 21(1):15–21 [PMID: 22086424].

Micali N, Simonoff E, Treasure J: Infant feeding and weight in the first year of life in babies of women with eating disorders. J Pediatr 2009;154(1):55–60.e1 [PMID: 18783793].

Misra M et al: Physiologic estrogen replacement increases bone density in adolescent girls with anorexia nervosa. J Bone Miner Res Oct 2011;26(10):2430–2438 [PMID: 21698665].

C. Mortality

Patients with eating disorders are at a higher risk of death than the general population and those with AN have the highest risk of dying among those with eating disorders. Meta-analysis estimates the standardized mortality ratio associated with AN to be 5.9. Death in anorexic patients is due to suicide, abnormal electrolytes, and cardiac arrhythmias.

» Treatment

A. General Approach

Factors that determine treatment interventions are severity of illness, duration of illness, specific manifestations of disease, previous treatment approaches and outcomes, program availability, financial resources, and insurance coverage. Treatment options include outpatient management, day treatment hospitalization, inpatient medical or psychiatric hospitalization, and residential treatment. The key to determining level of intervention is the degree of malnutrition, the rapidity of weight loss, the degree of medical compromise, and the presence of life-threatening electrolyte abnormalities. No absolute criteria determine level of intervention. The practitioner must examine the degree of medical compromise and consider immediate risks and the potential for an individual to reverse the situation on his or her own. Treatment is costly. Many patients do not have insurance benefits that adequately cover the cost of treatment, leaving parents and practitioners with profound dilemmas as to how to best provide treatment in the face of financial constraints. Legally, however, eating disorders are now recognized as a parity mental health diagnosis similar to the other biologically based mental health illnesses in many states, which has increased the ease of obtaining insurance coverage.

A multidisciplinary approach is most effective and should include medical monitoring, nutrition therapy, and individual and family psychotherapy by experienced practitioners. Family therapy is an important means of helping families understand the development of the disease and addressing issues that may be barriers to recovery. Both types of psychotherapy are encouraged in most treatment programs, and recovery without psychotherapy is unusual. The average length of psychotherapy is roughly 6–9 months, although some individuals continue therapy for extended periods. Adjunctive modalities include art and horticulture therapy, therapeutic recreation, and massage therapy.

Manualized family therapy, developed in Britain by Maudsley and adapted by Lock and LeGrange, has shifted the therapeutic approach to adolescents with AN. Traditional therapy allowed the adolescent to control his or her eating and the parents to remain uninvolved with the food portion of recovery. The manualized approach gives power and control back to parents. Treatment is prescribed for 20 weekly sessions. The first 10 weeks are devoted to empowering parents, putting them in control of their child's nutrition and exercise. Parents are educated about the dangers of malnutrition and are instructed to supervise each meal. The next phase, sessions 11–16, returns control over eating to the adolescent once he or she accepts the demands of the parents. The last phase of treatment, sessions 17–20, occurs when the patient is maintaining a healthy weight and shifts the focus away from the eating disorder, examining instead the impact that the eating disorder has had on establishing a healthy adolescent identity. This approach is reported to result in good or intermediate outcomes in 90% of treated adolescents.

Careful instruction in nutrition helps the teenager and family dispel misconceptions about nutrition, identify realistic nutritional goals, and normalize eating. Initially, nutrition education may be the most important intervention as the teenager slowly works through his or her fears of fat-containing foods and weight gain. The teenager begins to trust the nutrition therapist and restore body weight, eventually eating in a well-balanced, healthy manner.

B. Inpatient Treatment

Table 6–5 lists the criteria for hospital admission generally used in the medical community. It is usually quite difficult for a patient who is losing weight rapidly (> 2 lb/wk) to reverse the weight loss because the body is in a catabolic state.

Goals of hospitalization include arresting weight loss and stabilizing hemodynamics. Nutrition is the most vital inpatient medicine. Clinicians can safely begin with a meal plan containing approximately 250 kcal more than the patient has been routinely eating, which can usually be accomplished orally. Recent studies suggest that meal plans can begin with as high as 1750 kcal regardless of baseline intake. Meal plans should be well balanced with appropriate proportions of carbohydrate, protein, and fat. Oral meals are usually tolerated, although it is important to be supervised by medical staff. If the patient resists, nasogastric or intravenous alimentation can be used. Aside from caloric needs, the clinician needs to consider the patient's hydration and include the appropriate amount of fluid with the meal plan. Dehydration should be corrected slowly. The oral route is usually adequate. Aggressive intravenous fluid administration should be avoided because left ventricular mass is compromised and a rapid increase in volume may not be tolerated. Regulating fluid intake is important, because water intoxication can contribute to abnormal electrolytes and falsified weights.

During the initial introduction of food, the clinician should monitor the patient for refeeding syndrome, a phenomenon that occurs if caloric intake is increased too rapidly. Signs of refeeding syndrome are decreased serum phosphorus (as the body resumes synthesis of adenosine triphosphate), decreased serum potassium (as increased insulin causes K^+ to shift from extracellular fluid into K^+-depleted cells), and, rarely, edema related to fluid shifts or congestive heart failure.

Although specific guidelines do not exist, many practitioners begin phosphorus supplementation if patients are severely malnourished (< 70% MBW) or their intake has been consistently less than 500 kcal/d.

Caloric intake can be increased 250 kcal/d as long as refeeding syndrome does not occur. Weight goals vary depending on programmatic approach. Typically, intake is adjusted to reach a goal of 0.1–0.25 kg/d weight gain.

Overnight monitoring for bradycardia is helpful in assessing degree of metabolic compromise. Usually the

Table 6–5. Criteria for hospitalization for eating disordered patients.

One or more of the following justify hospitalization:
1. Body weight: < 75% median body weight.
2. Dehydration
3. Electrolyte disturbance (hypokalemia, hyponatremia, hypophosphatemia)
4. EKG abnormalities (prolonged QTC, severe bradycardia)
5. Physiologic Instability Supine heart rate < 45 beats/min Symptomatic hypotension or syncope Hypothermia
6. Failure of outpatient management
7. Acute food refusal
8. Uncontrolled bingeing and purging
9. Acute medical complications of malnutrition (syncope, seizures, cardiac failure, pancreatitis)
10. Comorbid psychiatric or medical condition that prohibits or limits appropriate outpatient treatment (severe depression, suicidal ideation, obsessive compulsive disorder, type 1 diabetes)

more rapid and severe the weight loss, the worse the bradycardia. Improving bradycardia correlates with weight recovery. Orthostatic hypotension is most severe around hospital day 4, improving steadily and correcting by the third week of nutritional rehabilitation. An ECG should be obtained because the patient is at risk for prolonged QTc syndrome and junctional arrhythmias related to the severity of bradycardia.

It usually takes 2–3 weeks to reach the initial goals of hospitalization—steady weight gain, toleration of oral diet without signs of refeeding syndrome, corrected bradycardia (heart rate > 45 beats/min for three consecutive nights), and correction of orthostasis. Specific weight criteria are used by many programs when considering discharge. This depends partly on admission weight. Ideally a patient gains at least 5% of his or her MBW. Some programs set discharge at 80%, 85%, or 90% MBW. Patient outcomes are improved with discharge at a higher body weight. Some evidence exists that patients do better if discharged at 95% MBW. In many practitioners' experience, relapse rates are high if patients are discharged at less than 75% MBW.

C. Pharmacotherapy

Practitioners frequently use psychotropic medications for treatment of AN, despite the lack of evidence supporting efficacy. Several open label trials suggest that atypical antipsychotics (risperidone, olanzapine, quetiapine) may be helpful. One review found that olanzapine (2.5–15 mg/d) was associated with improved body weight, decreased delusional thinking, improvement in body image, and decreased agitation and premeal anxiety. However, a randomized controlled trial did not show any difference in outcomes between risperidone and placebo.

SSRIs repeatedly have been shown to not be helpful in the initial therapy of AN. However, once the patient has achieved approximately 85% MBW, SSRIs (fluoxetine, citalopram, or sertraline) may help prevent relapse.

Zinc deficiency is common in AN, and several studies support its use as a supplement during the initial phases of treatment. Because zinc deficiency adversely affects neurotransmitters, administering zinc helps restore neurotransmitter action to baseline. Additionally, zinc may restore appetite and improve depressive mood. Zinc should be administered for approximately 2 months from the beginning of therapy, with at least 14 mg of elemental zinc daily.

Because of global nutritional deficits, a multivitamin with iron is also recommended daily. Symptomatic treatment for constipation and reflux should be used appropriately until symptoms resolve.

D. Outpatient Treatment

Not all patients with AN require inpatient treatment, especially if parents and clinicians recognize the warning signs early. These patients can receive treatment as outpatients, employing the same multidisciplinary team approach. Manualized family-based treatment is ideal for the outpatient setting if a trained therapist is available. Appropriate nutrition counseling is vital in guiding a patient and family through the initial stages of recovery. As the nutrition therapist is working at increasing the patient's caloric intake, a practitioner needs to monitor the patient's weight and vital signs. Often, activity level needs to be decreased to help reverse the catabolic state. A reasonable weight gain goal may be 0.2–0.5 kg/wk. If weight loss persists, careful monitoring of vital signs, including supine heart rate, is important in determining whether an increased level of care is needed. Concomitantly, the patient should be referred to a psychotherapist and, if indicated, assessed by a psychiatrist.

Arcelus J et al: Mortality rates in patients with anorexia nervosa and other eating disorders. A meta-analysis of 36 studies. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2011;68(7):724–731 [PMID: 21727255].

Birmingham CL, Gritzner S: How does zinc supplementation benefit anorexia nervosa? Eat Weight Disord 2006;11:e109 [PMID: 17272939].

Claudino AM et al: Antidepressants for anorexia nervosa. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006;(1):CD004365 [PMID: 16437485].

Dunican KC, DelDotto D: The role of olanzapine in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. Ann Pharmacother 2007;41:111 [PMID: 17190846].

Hagman J et al: A double-blind, placebo-controlled study of risperidone for the treatment of anorexia nervosa. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2011;50(9):915–924 [PMID: 21871373].

LeGrange D et al: Manualized family-based treatment for anorexia nervosa: a case series. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2005;44:41 [PMID: 15608542].

Swenne I: Weight requirements for return of menstruations in teenage girls with eating disorders, weight loss, and secondary amenorrhea. Acta Paediatr 2004;93:1449 [PMID: 08035253].

BULIMIA NERVOSA

Table 6–6 lists the diagnostic criteria for BN. Binge eating is either eating excessive amounts of food during a normal mealtime or having a meal that lasts longer than usual. Bulimic individuals feel out of control while eating, unable or unwilling to recognize satiety signals. Any type of food may be eaten in a binge, although typically it includes carbohydrates or junk food. Extreme guilt is often associated with the episode. At some point, either prior to or during a binge, bulimic individuals often decide to purge as a means of preventing weight gain. The most common ways to purge are self-induced vomiting, exercise, and laxative use. Some individuals will vomit multiple times during a purge episode, after using large amounts of water to cleanse their system. This can induce significant electrolyte abnormalities such as hyponatremia and hypokalemia, which may put the patient at acute risk for arrhythmia or seizure. Other methods of purging include diuretics, diet pills, cathartics, and

Table 6–6. Diagnostic criteria for bulimia nervosa.

1. Recurrent episodes of binge eating. An episode of binge eating is characterized by both of the following:
   a. Eating, in a discrete period of time (eg, within any 2-h period), an amount of food that is definitely larger than most people would eat during a similar period of time and under similar circumstances.
   b. A sense of lack of control over eating during the episode (eg, a feeling that one cannot stop eating or control what or how much one is eating).
2. Recurrent inappropriate compensatory behaviors in order to prevent weight gain, such as self-induced vomiting; misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or other medications, fasting; or excessive exercise.
3. The binge eating and inappropriate compensatory behaviors both occur, on average, at least once a week for 3 mo.
4. Self-evaluation is unduly influenced by body shape and weight.
5. The disturbance does not occur exclusively during episodes of anorexia nervosa.

Specify if:

in partial rem**ission**: After full criteria for bulimia nervosa were previously met, some, but not all, of the criteria have been met for a sustained period of time.

in full rem**ission**: After full criteria for bulimia nervosa were previously met, none of the criteria have been met for a sustained period of time.

Specify current severity:

The minimum level of severity is based on the frequency of inappropriate compensatory behaviors (see as follows). The level of severity may increase to reflect other symptoms and the degree of functional disability.

Mild: An average of 1–3 episodes of inappropriate compensatory behaviors per week.

Moderate: An average of 4–7 episodes of inappropriate compensatory behaviors per week.

severe: An average of 8–13 episodes of inappropriate compensatory behaviors per week.

Extreme: An average of ≥ 14 episodes of inappropriate compensatory behaviors per week.

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

nutritional supplements that promote weight loss, such as Metabolife or Sensa.

Diagnosing BN can be difficult unless the teenager is forthcoming or parents or caregivers can supply direct observations. Bulimic patients are usually average or slightly above average in body weight and have no physical abnormalities. Screening all teenagers for body image concerns is crucial. If the teenager expresses concern about being overweight, the clinician needs to screen the patient about dieting methods. Asking whether patients have binged, feel out of control while eating, or whether they cannot stop eating can clarify the diagnosis. Parents may report that significant amounts of food are missing or disappearing more quickly than normal. If the physician is suspicious, direct questioning about all the ways to purge should follow. Indicating first that the behavior is not unusual can make questioning less threatening and more likely to elicit a truthful response. For example, the clinician might say, "Some teenagers who try to lose weight make themselves vomit after eating. Have you ever considered or done that yourself?" (See Table 6–2 for additional screening questions.)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms are related to the mechanism of purging. GI problems are most prominent. Abdominal pain is common. Gastroesophageal reflux occurs as the lower esophageal sphincter becomes compromised due to repetitive vomiting. Frequent vomiting may also cause esophagitis or gastritis, as the mucosa is irritated by acid exposure. Early satiety, involuntary vomiting, and complaints that food is "coming up" on its own are frequent. Hematemesis and esophageal rupture have been reported. Patients may report diarrhea or constipation, especially if laxatives have been used. Sialadenitis (parotid pain and enlargement) may be caused by frequent vomiting. Erosion of dental enamel results from increased oral acid exposure during vomiting. Because comorbid depression is common in BN, patients may report difficulty sleeping, decreased energy, decreased motivation, and headaches. Light-headedness or syncope may develop secondary to dehydration.

It is important to note that most purging methods are ineffective. When patients binge, they may consume thousands of calories. Digestion begins rapidly. Although the patient may be able to vomit some of the food, much is actually digested and absorbed. Laxatives work in the large intestine, leading to fluid and electrolyte loss, but consumed calories are still absorbed from the small intestine. Use of diuretics may result in decreased fluid weight and electrolyte imbalance.

On physical examination, bulimic patients may be dehydrated and have orthostatic hypotension. Sialadenitis, tooth enamel loss, dental caries, and abdominal tenderness are the most common findings. Abrasion of the proximal interphalangeal joints may occur secondary to scraping the fingers against teeth while inducing vomiting. Rarely, a heart murmur is heard which may be due to mitral valve prolapse. Irreversible cardiomyopathy can develop secondary to ipecac use.

B. Laboratory Findings

Electrolyte disturbances are common. The method of purging results in specific abnormalities. Vomiting causes metabolic alkalosis, hypokalemia, and hypochloremia. Laxatives cause

metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, and hypochloremia. Diuretic use may lead to hypokalemia, hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, and metabolic alkalosis. Amylase may be increased secondary to chronic parotid stimulation.

» Complications

A. Short-Term Complications

Complications in normal-weight bulimic patients are related to the mechanisms of purging, and many of these complications are listed under Symptoms and Signs. If the bulimic patient is significantly malnourished, complications may be the same as those encountered in the anorexic patient. Other complications of bulimia include esophageal rupture, acute or chronic esophagitis, and, rarely, Barrett esophagitis. Chronic vomiting can lead to metabolic alkalosis, and laxative abuse may cause metabolic acidosis. Diet pill use can cause insomnia, hypertension, tachycardia, palpitations, seizures, and sudden death.

Patients who stop taking laxatives can have severe constipation. Treating constipation can be difficult psychologically, because the practitioner may need to prescribe agents similar to the drugs of abuse used during the eating disorder.

B. Mortality

The mortality rate in bulimic patients is similar to that in anorexic patients. Death usually results from suicide or electrolyte derangements.

» Treatment

Treatment of BN depends on the frequency of bingeing and purging and the severity of biochemical and psychiatric derangement. If K^+ is less than 3.0 mEq/L, inpatient medical admission is warranted. Typically extracellular K^+ is spared at the expense of intracellular K^+, so a patient may become hypokalemic several days after the serum K^+ concentration appears to be corrected. Usually cessation of purging is sufficient to correct K^+ concentration and is the recommended intervention for K^+ above 3.0 mEq/L. If K^+ is 2.5–2.9 mEq/L, oral supplementation is suggested. If K^+ is less than 2.5 mEq/L, intravenous therapy is recommended. Supplements can be stopped once K^+ levels are more than 3.5 mEq/L. Total body K^+ can be assumed to be normal when serum K^+ corrects and remains normal 2 days after supplements are stopped. Continued hospitalization depends on the patient's psychological status.

Some bulimic patients who abuse laxatives may become chronically dehydrated. The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis is activated, and the antidiuretic hormone level may be elevated to compensate. These hormones do not normalize immediately when laxatives are stopped, and fluid retention of up to 10 kg/wk may result. This puts patients at risk for congestive heart failure and can scare them as their weight increases dramatically. Diuresis often occurs after 7–10 days.

Hospitalization of bulimic patients is also recommended if there has been failure of outpatient management. The binge-purge cycle is addictive and can be difficult for patients to interrupt on their own. Hospitalization can offer a forced break from the cycle, allowing patients to normalize their eating, interrupt the addictive behavior, and regain the ability to recognize satiety signals.

Outpatient management can be pursued if patients are medically stable. Cognitive-behavioral therapy is crucial to help bulimic patients understand their disease. Nutrition therapy offers patients ways to regulate eating patterns so that they can avoid the need to binge. Medical monitoring should be done to check electrolytes periodically, depending on the purging method used.

SSRIs are generally helpful in treating the binge-purge cycle. Fluoxetine has been studied most extensively; a dose of 60 mg/d is most efficacious in teenagers. Other SSRIs appear to be effective as well and may be used in patients experiencing side effects of fluoxetine. Treatment for gastroesophageal reflux and gastritis should be used when appropriate. The pain and swelling of enlarged parotid glands can be helped by sucking on tart candy and by the application of heat.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. 5th ed. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Mehler PS: Medical complications of bulimia nervosa and their treatments. Int J Eat Disord (0276-3478) 2011, Mar;44(2):95 [PMID: 21312201].

Panagiotopoulos C et al: Electrocardiographic findings in adolescents with eating disorders. Pediatrics 2000;105:1100 [PMID: 10790469].

Steinhausen HC, Weber S: The outcome of bulimia nervosa: Findings from one-quarter century of research. Am J Psychiatry 2009;166:1331–1341 [PMID: 19884225].

Sysko R, Sha N, Wang W: Early response to antidepressant treatment in bulimia nervosa. Psychol Med 2010;40(6):999 [PMID: 20441691].

BINGE-EATING DISORDER

Binge-eating disorder (BED) is now described in the DSM-5. Studies show that most adults who have BED (a prevalence of 2%–4%) develop symptoms during adolescence. Table 6–7 lists the diagnostic criteria.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

BED most often is found in overweight or obese individuals. Eighteen percent of such patients report binging at least once in the past year. Patients with BED have an increased incidence of depression and substance abuse. The possibility

Table 6–7. Diagnostic criteria for binge-eating disorder.

1. Recurrent episodes of binge eating. An episode of binge eating is characterized by both of the following:
   a. Eating, in a discrete period of time (eg, within any 2-h period), an amount of food that is definitely larger than what most people would eat in a similar period of time under similar circumstances.
   b. A sense of lack of control over eating during the episode (eg, a feeling that one cannot stop eating or control what or how much one is eating).
2. The binge-eating episodes are associated with three (or more) of the following:
   a. Eating much more rapidly than normal.
   b. Eating until feeling uncomfortably full.
   c. Eating large amounts of food when not feeling physically hungry.
   d. Eating alone because of feeling embarrassed by how much one is eating.
   e. Feeling disgusted with oneself, depressed, or very guilty afterward.
3. Marked distress regarding binge eating is present.
4. The binge eating occurs, on average, at least once a week for 3 mo.
5. The binge eating is not associated with the recurrent use of inappropriate compensatory behavior as in bulimia nervosa and does not occur exclusively during the course of bulimia nervosa and anorexia nervosa.

Specify if:

in partial rem**ission**: After full criteria for binge-eating disorder were previously met, binge eating occurs at an average frequency of less than one episode per week for a sustained period of time. **in** full rem**ission**: After full criteria for binge-eating disorder were previously met, none of the criteria have been met for a sustained period of time.

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

of BED should be raised for any significantly overweight patient. Specific questionnaires are available for evaluating patients suspected of BED.

B. Laboratory Findings

The clinician should assess causes and complications of obesity, and laboratory evaluation should include thyroid function tests and measurement of cholesterol and triglyceride levels.

» Treatment

A combination of cognitive-behavioral therapy and antidepressant medication has been helpful in treating BED in adults. Use of SSRIs for BED in adolescents has not been studied, but in adults fluoxetine and citalopram help decrease binge episodes, improve depressive symptoms, and possibly decrease appetite. This evidence suggests that SSRIs in adolescents with BED may be helpful as well. BED has been recognized only recently, and outcomes have not been studied. Little is known regarding long-term prognosis.

Fairburn CG et al: The natural course of bulimia nervosa and binge eating disorder in young women. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2000;57:659 [PMID: 10891036].

Johnson WG et al: Measuring binge eating in adolescents: adolescent and parent versions of the questionnaire of eating and weight patterns. Int J Eat Disord 1999;26:301 [PMID: 10441246].

McElroy SL et al: Citalopram in the treatment of binge-eating disorder: a placebo-controlled trial. J Clin Psychiatry 2003;64:807 [PMID: 12934982].

Schneider M: Bulimia nervosa and binge eating disorder in adolescents. Adolesc Med State Art Rev 2003;14:119 [PMID: 12529196].

AVOIDANT/RESTRICTIVE FOOD INTAKE DISORDER

ARFID is a new diagnosis in the DSM-5 that extends the DSM-4 diagnosis of feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood. The hallmark feature is avoidance or restriction of oral food intake, in the absence of criteria for AN (body image disturbance, fear of weight gain/body fat). For teenagers, food avoidance may be associated with more generalized emotional difficulties that do not meet diagnostic criteria for anxiety or depression. Diagnostic criteria for ARFID are listed in Table 6–8. Similar health affects to AN may be found in youth with ARFID, depending on the degree of malnutrition and how an individual became malnourished.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

PROGNOSIS

Outcome in eating disorders, especially AN, has been studied extensively. Unfortunately, most studies have focused on specific inpatient treatment programs, and few have evaluated less ill patients who do not need hospitalization. About 40%–50% of patients receiving treatment recover; 20%–30% have intermittent relapses; and 20% have chronic, unremitting illness. As time from initial onset lengthens, the recovery rate decreases and mortality associated with AN and BN increases.

The course of AN often includes significant weight fluctuations over time, and it may be a matter of years until recovery is certain. The course of BN often includes relapses of bingeing and purging, although bulimic patients initially recover faster than do anorexic patients. Up to

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 6–8. Diagnostic criteria for avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder.

1. Eating or feeding disturbance (including, but not limited to, apparent lack of interest in eating or food; avoidance based on the sensory characteristics of food; concern about aversive consequences of eating) as manifested by persistent failure to meet appropriate nutritional and/or energy needs associated with one (or more) of the following:
   a. Significant weight loss (or failure to achieve expected weight gain or faltering growth in children).
   b. Significant nutritional deficiency.
   c. Dependence on enteral feeding or oral nutritional supplements.
   d. Marked interference with psychosocial functioning.
2. The disturbance is not better explained by lack of available food or an associated culturally sanctioned practice.
3. The eating disturbance does not occur exclusively during the course of anorexia nervosa or bulimia nervosa, and there is no evidence of a disturbance in the way of which one's body weight or shape is experienced.
4. The eating disturbance is not attributable to a concurrent medical condition or not better explained by another mental disorder. When the eating disturbance occurs in the context of another condition or disorder, the severity of the eating disturbance exceeds that routinely associated with the condition or disorder and warrants additional clinical attention.

Specify if:

in remission: After full criteria for avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder were previously met, the criteria have not been met for a sustained period of time.

Note: Text will include description of three main subtypes: individuals who do not eat enough/show little interest in feeding; individuals who only accept a limited diet in relation to sensory features; and individuals whose food refusal is related to aversive experience.

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th edition. (Copyright ©2013). American Psychiatric Association. All rights reserved.

50% of anorexic patients may develop bulimia, as well as major psychological complications, including depression, anxiety, and substance abuse disorders. Bulimic patients also develop similar psychological illness but rarely develop anorexia. Long-term medical sequelae, aside from low body weight and amenorrhea, have not been systematically studied, although AN is known to have multiple medical consequences, including osteoporosis and structural brain changes.

It is unclear whether age at onset affects outcome, but shorter length of time between symptom onset and therapy tends to improve outcome. Various treatment modalities can prove effective. Favorable outcomes have been found with brief medical hospitalization and long psychiatric or residential hospitalization. Higher discharge weight, as well as more rapid weight gain during inpatient treatment (> 0.8 kg/wk), seems to improve the initial outcome. It is difficult to compare treatment regimens, because numbers are small and the type of patient and illness varies among studies. No existing studies compare outpatient to inpatient treatment or the effects of day treatment on recovery.

Lund BC et al: Rate of inpatient weight restoration predicts outcome in anorexia nervosa. Int J Eat Disord 2009;42(4):301–305 [PMID: 19107835].

Steinhausen HC: Outcome of eating disorders. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2009;18(1):225–242 [PMID: 19014869].

RESOURCES FOR PRACTIONERS & FAMILIES

Web Resources

Academy for Eating Disorders: (The Academy for Eating Disorders [AED] is a global, multidisciplinary professional organization that provides cutting-edge professional training and education; inspires new developments in eating disorders research, prevention, and clinical treatments; and is the international source for state-of-the-art information in the field of eating disorders.) www.aedweb.org.

National Eating Disorders Association: (Information available to help individuals/families locate resources and treatment for eating disorders around the world) http://www.nationaleatingdisorders.org/.

http://obgynebooks.com

Child & Adolescent Psychiatric Disorders & Psychosocial Aspects of Pediatrics

7

Kimberly Kelsay, MD
Ayelet Talmi, PhD
Adam Burstein, DO

Pediatric primary care settings are often the first points of entry into mental health systems for the 14%–20% of children and adolescents affected by mental or behavioral health issues. Beyond addressing identified and diagnosable mental health conditions, pediatric primary care settings are tasked with: (1) screening and surveillance, (2) early identification, and (3) triage and referral around complex behavioral health issues for the child, their family, and the environments with which the child interacts. Primary care providers see approximately 75% of children with psychiatric disturbances; half of all pediatric office visits involve behavioral, psychosocial, or educational concerns. Parents and children often prefer discussing these issues with someone they already know and trust. As a result, pediatric primary care providers play an important role in the prevention, identification, initiation, management, and coordination of mental health, as well as behavioral and development care for children and adolescents. Unfortunately, the shortage of mental health providers, stigma attached to receiving mental health services, chronic underfunding, institutional barriers within the public mental health system, and disparate insurance benefits contribute to the fact that only 2% of children with diagnosable disorders are seen by mental health specialists.

Despite being strategically positioned as the gatekeepers for identifying mental health and behavioral concerns, primary care providers typically identify fewer than 20% of children with emotional and behavioral problems during routine health supervision visits. In addition, these problems may not be identified when they initially emerge and are more amenable to treatment. This gatekeeper role has become increasingly important over the past decade as advances in mental health awareness and treatment have improved opportunities for early identification and intervention. This role is especially critical because child psychiatry remains an underserved medical specialty, with only 8300 practicing child and adolescent psychiatrists in the United States. In contrast, the more than 50,000 board-certified pediatricians and innumerable midlevel pediatric providers are in a unique position to identify issues affecting the emotional health of children and to initiate treatment or referrals to other providers.

Emotional problems that develop during childhood and adolescence can significantly impact development and may continue into adulthood. In fact, most "adult" psychiatric disorders involve childhood onset. Many disorders do not present as an "all-or-none" phenomenon, rather they progress from less severe concerns, such as adjustment problems or perturbations in functioning, to significant disturbances and severe disorders. Pediatricians have the capacity to manage emotional problems and behavioral conditions early on, when improvement can be achieved with less intensive interventions. If pediatricians and schools do not appropriately identify mental health problems, provide education about the benefits of intervention, and encourage and initiate intervention, childhood-onset disorders are more likely to persist, cause worsening impairment, and lead to a downward spiral of school and social difficulties, poor employment opportunities, and poverty in adulthood, as well as increased health care utilization and costs as adults. These outcomes are even more pronounced for children and adolescents from underserved, low socio-economic status backgrounds.

Pediatricians and other pediatric care providers may be the first or sometimes only medical professional to identify a mental health problem and thus require specialized training, resources, and supports to help children and families navigate systems and engage in treatment. Pediatricians working in specialty care settings, hospitalists, and intensivists will also encounter children and adolescents with emotional and behavioral problems. As such, this chapter includes information about approaches to care within these settings. This chapter reviews prevention, surveillance, and screening for mental and behavioral health concerns; situations that may arise in the context of such assessments; illnesses that are often diagnosed during childhood or adolescence; current

http://obgynebooks.com

treatment recommendations; and indications for referral to mental health professionals.

Belfer ML: Child and adolescent mental disorders: the magnitude of the problem across the globe. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 2008;49(3):226–236 [PMID: 18221350].

Costello EJ, Egger H, Angold A: 10-year research update review: the epidemiology of child and adolescent psychiatric disorders: I. Methods and public health burden. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2005;44:972–986 [PMID: 16175102].

Costello EJ, Foley DL, Angold A: 10-year research update review: the epidemiology of child and adolescent psychiatric disorders: II. Developmental epidemiology. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2006;45(1):8–25 [PMID: 16327577].

Roberts RE, Roberts CR, Xing Y: Prevalence of youth-reported DSM-IV psychiatric disorders among African, European, and Mexican American adolescents. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2006;45(11):1329–1337 [PMID: 17075355].

MODELS OF CARE ENCOMPASSING MENTAL HEALTH IN THE PRIMARY CARE SETTING

Mental health, behavior and development are routinely addressed in the context of pediatric primary care. The continuum of behavioral health services in primary care settings spans from providing anticipatory guidance around development, behavior, and socio-emotional well-being, to screening and identification of concerns, to making external referrals and/or providing on-site services to address the identified issues.

Routine pediatric care of emotional and behavioral problems is typically related to the knowledge and comfort level of the individual pediatric provider and available resources within the primary care setting (eg, onsite mental health support) and in the community. The efficacy of surveillance in the form of developmentally appropriate anticipatory guidance and counseling varies. Providers spend an average of 2.5 minutes on surveillance, with the majority of that time spent on safety and general developmental issues. Within this model, the majority of emotional and behavioral problems are not readily identified. Even when they are identified, the logistics of identifying resources and referrals present problems. One recently published study identified barriers such that when pediatricians had referred to external mental health services, less than 12% of patients completed care, compared to over 76% completed care when treated within the setting of their primary care provider.

At present, traditional models of identification within the primary care setting and referral to community-based services are most prevalent, but there are a number of different models currently being utilized by providers to better access mental health services in a primary care setting. Telephonic consultation or telepsychiatry with mental health consultation teams in a stepped care approach allows enhanced access to mental health providers, especially for providers seeing children in rural communities. Many states are moving toward providing primary care providers with ready access to mental health consultation by phone, and further care such as telepsychiatry or in person visit with the patient if indicated, similar to the system piloted in Massachusetts. Consultation to pediatric care providers also facilitates ongoing education with the eventual goal of pediatric providers learning to manage many behavioral health concerns on their own.

Co-location or enhanced care models are further along the continuum of behavioral health integration. The co-location of behavioral health clinicians in primary care settings affords access to scheduled appointments with clinicians working in offices within close proximity to the primary care setting. This allows for warm-handoffs between primary care and behavioral health providers but does not necessarily improve coordination of care. Functionally, this type of practice operates like an outpatient mental health service with the potential to improve access (eg, patients can see their physical and behavioral health providers in the same setting) and decrease stigma associated with obtaining mental health services because of the shared practice location for both behavioral and physical health services.

Collaborative or integrated care provides high-quality, transdisciplinary care through the integration of behavioral health providers within the primary care clinic. The integrated clinician operates as a member of the care team, providing more specialized, on-site services when needed (eg, brief therapy, consultation) and facilitating referrals to external mental health resources. Integrated behavioral health services increase access to immediate supports and reduce barriers, including transportation challenges, systems navigation, and stigma associated with going to see a community-based mental health specialist. This model provides comprehensive and coordinated care, improves communication among care team members, and enhances referral uptake for community-based services. Successful components of this model include a leadership team, primary clinicians, mental health and developmental specialists, administrators, clinical informatics specialists, and care managers. Integrated care implies that visits are primarily conducted jointly, care is coordinated among physical and behavioral health providers, and that mental health professionals are always available for case consultation. Typically, philanthropic or other foundation grants support initial implementation and allow for development of sustainability models to ultimately establish integrated practice.

Brito A et al: Bridging mental health and medical care in underserved pediatric populations: three integrative models. Adv Pediatr 2010;57(1):295–313 [PMID: 21056744].

Bunik M et al: Pediatric Residency Integrated Survey of Mental Health in Primary Care: A National CORNET Study. Acad Pediatr 2013;13(6):551–557 [PMID: 24238682].

http://obgynebooks.com

Chenven M: Community systems of care for children's mental health. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2010;19(1):163–174 [PMID: 19951815].

Committee on Psychosocial Aspects of Child and Family Health and Task Force on Mental Health: Policy statement—the future of pediatrics: mental health competencies for pediatric primary care. Pediatrics 2009;124(1):410–421 [PMID: 19564328].

Foy J et al: Improving mental health services in primary care: reducing administrative and financial barriers to access and collaboration. Pediatrics 2009;123(4):1248–1251 [PMID: 19336386].

Kelleher KJ, Stevens J: Evolution of child mental health services in primary care. Acad Pediatr 2009;9(1):7–14 [PMID: 19329085].

Kolko DJ, Campo J, Kilbourne AM, Hart J, Sakolsky D, Wisniewski S: Collaborative care outcomes for pediatric behavioral health problems: a cluster randomized trial. Pediatrics 2014;133(4):e981–982 [PMID: 24664093].

Yellowlees PM, Hilty DM, Marks SL, Neufeld J, Bourgeois JA: A retrospective analysis of a child and adolescent mental health program. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2008;47(1):103–107 [PMID: 18174831].

PREVENTION, EARLY IDENTIFICATION, & DEVELOPMENTAL CONTEXT

Developmental contexts and the environments in which children and adolescents grow up play a significant role in their development and well-being. Environments provide access to resources, relationships, and supports in addition to being settings for learning, growth, and development. Longitudinal and retrospective research studies link adverse experiences in childhood to significant, lifelong health problems. In a study of more than 17,000 adults insured through Kaiser Permanente, researchers found that experiencing adversity in childhood (eg, child abuse, neglect, household dysfunction) was correlated with poor health outcomes (eg, substance use, heart disease, depression, adolescent pregnancy), lower quality of life, and decreased lifespan. Understanding social determinants of health helps the provider attend to the needs of particular children in a practice setting that serves as a medical home. Increasingly, however, the major threats to the health of US children—the new morbidity—arise from problems that cannot be adequately addressed by the practice model alone. These problems include unacceptably high infant mortality rates in certain communities, extraordinary levels of intentional and unintentional injuries, increasing rates of childhood obesity, chemical dependency, behavioral and developmental consequences of inappropriate care and experience, family dysfunction, sexually transmitted diseases, unplanned pregnancies, and lack of a medical home. The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) policy statement, "we must become partners with others, or we will become increasingly irrelevant to the health of children," implies that the work of pediatricians extends to advocacy and community work. Today's community pediatrician seeks to provide a far more realistic and complete clinical picture by taking responsibility for all children in a community, providing preventive and curative services, and understanding the determinants and consequences of child health and illness, as well as the effectiveness of services provided.

Bright Futures is a national health promotion and disease prevention initiative that addresses children's health needs in the context of family and community. In addition to use in pediatric practice, many states implement Bright Futures principles, guidelines, and tools to strengthen the connections between state and local programs, pediatric primary care, families, and local communities. The Bright Futures Guidelines, now in its third edition, was developed to provide comprehensive health supervision guidelines, including recommendations on immunizations, routine health screenings, and anticipatory guidance. In addition, Bright Futures for Mental Health provides numerous guidelines, tools, and strategies for improving mental health identification, assessment, initiation, management, and coordination.

It is exciting that prevention and early intervention programs are showing promise in helping to reduce risk for patients and their families. Evidenced-Based and Promising Programs and Strategies include, but are not limited to:

- Parent-Child Interaction Therapy (PCIT), www.pcit.org
- Triple P (Positive Parenting Program), www.triplep-america.com
- Healthy Steps for Young Children, www.healthysteps.org
- Nurse-Family Partnership, www.nursefamilypartnership.org
- Hospital-based abusive head trauma prevention approaches (Pennsylvania Abusive Head Trauma Prevention Program)
- Multi-component programs (Child-Parent Centers)
- Incredible Years, www.incredibleyears.com
- Strengthening Families for Parents and Youth, www.extension.iastate.edu/sfp
- Early Head Start, www.ehsnrc.org
- The Safe Environment for Every Kid (SEEK), http://umm.edu/programs/childrens/services/child-protection/seek-project

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Community Health Services: the pediatrician's role in community pediatrics. Pediatrics 2005;115:1092–1094 [PMID: 15805396].

Bright Futures Mental Health: http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/index.html; http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/tools.html. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Injury Prevention & Control: Division of Violence Prevention: http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/acestudy/. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Zero to Three: http://www.zerotothree.org. Accessed September 27, 2015.

http://obgynebooks.com

LIFESTYLE RECOMMENDATIONS

Proper screening, assessment, diagnosis, and treatment of issues are fundamental aspect of practice. In addition, it is equally important that a primary care provider become familiar with factors that can help promote health, both physical and mental. Therefore, activities that support a healthy lifestyle can positively impact health and, in some cases, may help prevent a future problem. Many studies demonstrate clear physical and behavioral health benefits from regular exercise, optimal nutrition, meditation, yoga, and participation in prosocial activities. Other contributing factors that directly impact overall health include adequate sleep and use of relaxation techniques. The AAP recommends educating parents on the 5:2:1:0 guideline. These numbers represent daily recommendations regarding the amount of servings of fruits and vegetables, the maximum recommended screen time, the hours of exercise, and the recommendation to avoid sugar-containing drinks, respectively. While these guidelines focus on physical health, successful implementation and adherence to them resides within the relationships and environments in which children live.

American Academy of Pediatrics: Children's Mental Health in Primary Care: http://www.aap.org/mentalhealth/index.html. Accessed September 27, 2015.

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Community Health Services: the pediatrician's role in community pediatrics. Pediatrics 2005;115:1092–1094 [PMID: 15805396].

Hacker KA, Arsenault LN, Williams S, Digirolamo AM: Mental and behavioral health screening at preventive visits: opportunities for follow-up of patients who are nonadherent with the next preventive visit. AMJ Pediatr 2011;158(4):666–671.e2 [Epub 2010 Nov 11] [PMID: 21074180].

Massachusetts Child Psychiatry Access Project: http://www.mcpap.com/. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Sheldrick RC, Merchant S, Perrin EC: Identification of developmental-behavioral problems in primary care: a systematic review. Pediatrics 2011;128(2):356–363 [Epub 2011 Jul 4] [PMID: 21727101].

U.S. Surgeon General's National Action Agenda: http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/cmh/childreport.htm. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Summary of the Pediatrician's Role

Given these calls for a new pediatric role as the gatekeeper for social emotional health and well-being, the expanding role of the primary care pediatric provider encompasses the following broad categories: prevention, identification, assessment, initiation, management, coordination, and collaboration (Table 7–1).

Table 7–1. The pediatric primary care provider's role in mental health.

Role	Specific Activities
Prevention	Screen and address social risk factors on intake Screen and refer for early socioemotional risk
Identification	Shared family concern Surveillance Screening
Assessment	Interview and physical Assessment tools Comorbid conditions
Initiation	Education about condition and treatment options • Continued collaboration and assessment with family • Refer to mental health for further evaluation • Refer for therapy • Start medication
Management	Monitor condition for improvement Monitor for side effects
Coordination	With social work, therapist, psychologist, or psychiatrist
Collaboration	With mental health service providers With child protection With local schools

IDENTIFICATION & ASSESSMENT DURING HEALTH MAINTENANCE VISITS

Historically, the most efficient indicator in eliciting psychosocial problems is the history provided by parents or guardians and interview and observation of the child. The possible approaches to identification of problems include surveillance, screening, and assessment. Surveillance consists of the following elements: checking in, eliciting concerns, asking open-ended questions, watching and waiting, listening for red flags, identifying risk factors, and monitoring closely over time. Like vital signs, which represent an essential component of the physical evaluation, the essential components of the primary care surveillance for mental health concerns should generally include a review of the youth's general functioning in different aspects of their life. Five questions forming the mnemonic **PSYCH** can be addressed to parents and youth as a surveillance means of uncovering areas of concern.

1. **P**arent-child interaction: How are things going with you and your parents? Or, in early childhood: What's it like to take care of your baby/toddler?
2. **S**chool: How are things going in school (or child care; ask about academics, behaviors, and social interactions)?
3. **Y**outh: How are things going with peer relationships/friendships (how does child get along with same-aged peers)?

http://obgynebooks.com

4. **C**asa: How are things going at home (including siblings, family stresses, and relationship with parents)?
5. **H**appiness: How would you describe your mood? How would you describe your child's mood?

Many pediatric practices are hampered by lack of continuity and not enough time for in-depth surveillance. In addition, surveillance is notoriously tied to office practices (eg, the amount of time for each visit; available on-site and community resources) and provider characteristics. Given limited time available for pediatric visits (ie, families spend only a few minutes of in-person time with their pediatric provider during routine health supervision visits), and the fact that only 18% of parents who report elevated behavior problems in children actually tell their providers about it, surveillance should be paired with universal screening for development, mental health, behavior, psychosocial, and environmental risk factors. Surveillance is further hampered by not being a separate and billable service under current Medicaid and insurance reimbursement plans, whereas formal screening is.

Screening involves using standardized instruments to identify areas of risk, delay, or concern. Newborn hearing, vision, and developmental screenings are common in today's pediatric practice. However, the morbidity associated with developmental, emotional, and psychosocial problems requires that social-emotional and socio-demographic screening also be performed to identify the presence of symptoms of emotional, behavioral, or relationship disorders and those environmental factors that negatively influence development. Screening tools are brief, easy to use, and can be administered as a questionnaire or using an interview format. A positive screen warrants referral for a more thorough assessment. The use of screening tools can also lead to early identification and interrupt the advancement of symptoms. Newer methods of eliciting socioemotional and behavior concerns have been developed (see section below on Tools). Helpful information can also be obtained from broad screening checklists and symptom-specific questionnaires such as depression or anxiety self-report inventories. Questions can be incorporated into the general pediatric office screening forms, or specific questionnaires can be used. Beyond identification, successful screening requires attention to appropriate referrals, referral uptake and completion, and communication back to the referring entity regarding the results of the evaluation. Pediatric primary care providers need information about eligibility for services in order to successfully monitor and address behavioral and developmental issues.

Tools for Mental Health Screening in the Office Setting

Given the low rates of identification of psychosocial problems using pediatric surveillance, the use of standardized screening tools has become standard practice. Typically, broad screeners that elicit information regarding multiple domains are employed first and are followed by targeted screens to address symptomatology, severity, impairment, and context of specific psychosocial problems.

Resources for obtaining screening tools
http://www.mcpap.com/tools_index.asp
http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/tools.html
http://www.palforkids.org
http://www.schoolpsychiatry.org
http://www.wpic.pitt.edu/research
http://www.theswyc.org
http://www.sdqinfo.com

A. General or Broad Screening Tools

1. Strengths and difficulties questionnaires (SDQs)— The SDQs are brief behavioral screening questionnaires targeting patients 3–16 years old with parent, teacher, and child self-report versions available. Several versions are available and can readily be used by researchers, clinicians, and educators. They are well validated and available on the Internet without cost in over 40 languages. The domains assessed include emotional problems, conduct problems, hyperactivity/inattention, peer-relationship problems, and social behaviors. For further information, refer to the following Web site: http://www.sdqinfo.org.

Vostanis P: Strengths and Difficulties Questionnaire: research and clinical applications. Curr Opin Psychiatry 2006 Jul;19(4):367–372 [PMID: 16721165].

2. Pediatric Symptoms Checklist (PSC)— The PSC is a one-page questionnaire listing a broad range of children's emotional and behavioral problems that reflects parents' impressions of their children's psychosocial functioning. An adolescent self-report version is also available for children ages 11 and older. The PSC was developed initially for children older than age 5, but cutoff scores for preschool and school-aged children indicating clinical levels of dysfunction have been empirically derived. The questionnaire is easy to score, is free of charge, and is available in English and Spanish from the following Web site: http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/professionals/ped_sympton_chklst.pdf.

Kostanecka A et al: Behavioral health screening in urban primary care settings: construct validity of the PSC-17. J Dev Behav Pediatr 2008 Apr;29(2):124–128 [PMID: 18408533].

3. Parents' Evaluation of Developmental Status (PEDS)— The PEDS is a validated screener for socioemotional, developmental, and behavioral concerns in children aged 1 month to 8 years. Parents answer yes/no about their concerns in

http://obgynebooks.com

various areas of their child's development. Scoring the PEDS is more labor intensive than other general screeners and the instrument must be purchased. Its benefits include extensive validity data and useful pathways for level of concern and referral. It is available in English, Vietnamese, and Spanish. For further information, see the following Web site: http://www.pedstest.com.

Brothers KB, Glascoe FP, Robertshaw NS: PEDS: developmental milestones—an accurate brief tool for surveillance and screening. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2008;47(3):271–279 [Epub 2007 Dec 5] [PMID: 18057141].

4. Ages and Stages, Socio-emotional (ASQ: SE)—The Ages and Stages, SE is a companion to the Ages and Stages Developmental Screen. It is an easy-to-use tool with a deep, exclusive focus on infant, toddlers, and younger children's social and emotional behavior. After a one-time cost, the instrument is reproducible, making it cost-effective. It is culturally sensitive for use across diverse pediatric populations. Screens are available for the 6-, 12-, 18-, 24-, 36-, 48-, and 60-month visits, and in English, French, Spanish, and Korean.

Ages and Stages, SE (technical data): http://archive.brookespublishing.com/documents/asq-se-technical-report.pdf. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Briggs-Gowan MJ, Carter AS: Social-emotional screening status in early childhood predicts elementary school outcomes. Pediatrics 2008;121(5):957–962 [PMID: 18450899].

5. Family Psychosocial Screen—Pediatric Intake Form, Bright Futures, Retrieved November 19, 2013, from http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/professionals/ped_intake_form.pdf. Form adapted, with permission, from Kemper KJ, Kelleher KJ: Family psychosocial screening: Instruments and techniques. Ambulatory Child Health 1996;1:325–339.

6. WE CARE—Available in appendix of article. (Garg A, Butz AM, Dworkin PH, Lewis RA, Thompson RE, Serwint JR: Improving the management of family psychosocial problems at low-income children's well-child care visits: the WE CARE Project. Pediatrics 2007;120(3):547–558 [PMID: 17766528].)

Assessment of Behavioral & Emotional Signs & Symptoms

When an emotional problem or mental illness is mentioned by the patient or parents, elicited by an interview, or identified by a screening instrument, the next step should include a more thorough triage. In a clinic with integrated care, a mental health professional may step in to complete this part of the evaluation; however, in other models such as telephone consultation, the pediatrician is often the one who completes this further assessment. The goal of this, more detailed assessment includes determining if the patient is safe to leave the office or if immediate intervention is required. Additionally, assessment information is used to make targeted referrals and recommendations for follow-up.

Situations Requiring Emergent or More Extensive Psychiatric Assessment

If there is any concern about the child's safety, the provider must also evaluate the risk of danger to self (suicidal attempts or ideation), danger to others (assault, aggression, or homicidal ideation), and screen for other factors that could heighten the risk of danger to self or others, such as physical or sexual abuse or illicit substance use or abuse. The presence of drug or alcohol abuse in adolescent patients may require referral to community resources specializing in the treatment of these addictive disorders.

The following questions should be asked of the youth. The parents should be asked similar questions about what they have observed. Specific details about the circumstances should be asked if any question below is answered with "yes."

1. Have you ever been sad for more than a few days at a time such that it affected your sleep or appetite?
2. Have you ever been so sad that you wished you weren't alive?
3. Have you ever thought of ways of killing yourself or made a suicide attempt?
4. Have you ever thought about killing someone else, or tried to kill someone?
5. Has anyone ever hit you and left marks? (If yes, ask who, when, under what circumstances, and if it was reported.)
6. Has anyone ever touched your private areas when they weren't supposed to, or in a way that made you feel uncomfortable? (If yes, ask who, when, under what circumstances, and if it was reported.)
7. Do you use alcohol, tobacco, or illicit drugs? (If yes, ask what, when, with whom, and how much.)

A. Civil Commitment and Involuntary Mental Health "Holds"

If further assessment indicates a need for inpatient hospitalization, it is optimal if the patient and guardian give consent for this care. In a situation in which the guardian is unwilling or unable to give consent for emergency department (ED)–based assessment or inpatient hospitalization of a child or adolescent, an involuntary mental health "hold" may become necessary.

The term involuntary mental health "hold" refers to a legal process that can be initiated by providers, police officers, and certified mental health professionals, which allows the individual to be prevented from leaving the ED

http://obgynebooks.com

or hospital for up to 72 hours. This allows the provider to establish a safe environment and prevent the individual from harming themselves or others, and allows sufficient time to determine if the individual is a risk to him- or herself or others due to mental illness. Each state has laws specifying rules and regulations that must be followed as part of this process. A specific form must be completed and the patient and family informed of their rights. As this involves revoking the civil rights of a patient or their guardian, it is critical to implement the procedure correctly. All providers should be familiar with their state laws regulating this process.

Although the precise wording and conditions of involuntary mental health holds may vary slightly from state to state, they are generally quite similar. A 72-hour involuntary mental health hold is obtained for the purpose of acute evaluation and determination of the patient's safety when the evaluator elicits sufficient information to confirm that a significant risk exists of danger to self or others. Additional criteria for involuntary psychiatric admission include a determination that the patient is "gravely disabled" by virtue of impaired judgment, which renders the patient unable to provide food, clothing, or shelter for him- or herself, or in the case of a child or adolescent, that he or she is unable to eat and perform normal activities of daily living. Patients who have a medical condition(s) requiring urgent or emergent treatment do not require a mental health hold. In this case, the primary team/provider should conduct a capacity evaluation.

B. Mandatory Reporting of Abuse or Neglect or Threat to Others

Mandatory reporting by a provider of suspicion of physical or sexual abuse or neglect to the local human services agency is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 8. The "Tarasoff Rule" refers to a California legal case that led to a "duty to warn": Providers are mandated to warn potential victims of harm (or specific sites in some states) when plans are disclosed to them about serious threats to harm specific individuals, or in some states to perform harmful acts at specific sites. Documentation of a phone call and registered letter to the individual (or site) being threatened are mandated. Under such circumstances, arrangement for the involuntary civil commitment of the potential perpetrator of harm is likely to be in order as well.

Examples of more thorough questions and observation are given in Table 7–2. Targeted assessment screening tools are also useful in determining severity, comorbidity, and context of impairment.

Once it is established that the patient does not need immediate intervention, the provider should determine if the patient's family can return for another visit, or if further assessment can be managed within this visit. Imbedded care provides the distinct advantage of immediate further assessment.

Further Evaluation of Emotional or Behavioral Problem

The following is a general guide for providers who do not have access to integrated behavioral health care and are evaluating a behavioral or emotional problem to determine appropriate next steps. Simple problems may not require all the steps described below. Table 7–2 reminds pediatricians of topics that might be helpful to consider when assessing problems. Given time limits, the pediatrician is encouraged to focus the discussion to inform decision making for next steps with the patient and family.

It is often useful to first see both parents/caregivers, if present, and the child together and then the adolescent alone. In some cases, it may be necessary to speak with the parents privately, without the child present. This sequence enables the provider to observe interactions among family members, allows the child to feel more comfortable with the provider, and offers the parents and the child an opportunity to talk confidentially about their concerns. The provider can facilitate the assessment by acknowledging that the family is trying to cope and that the ultimate task of assessment is to identify solutions that will help improve things for both the child and family. An attitude of nonjudgmental inquiry can be communicated with supportive statements such as, "Let's see if we can figure out what might be happening here and find some ways to make things better."

A. History of the Presenting Problem

First, obtain a detailed description of the problem.

- When did it start?
- Where and with whom does it occur?
- Were there unusual stresses, changes, or life events at that time?
- How is the child affected?
- How is the family's function affected?
- What does the child say about the problem?
- What attempts have been made to alleviate the problem?
- Do the parents have any opinions about the cause of the problem?

B. Techniques for Interviewing Children and Adolescents

1. Interviewing the preschool child—Preschool children should be interviewed with their parents. As the parents discuss their concerns, the provider can observe the child's behavior, including activity level and any unusual behaviors or symptoms. It is helpful to have toy human figures, animals, or puppets, and crayons and paper available that the child can use to express him- or herself. After hearing the history from the parents and observing and talking with the child,

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–2. Possible topics for discussion and observation when assessing psychosocial problem.

Developmental history

1. Review the landmarks of psychosocial development
2. Summarize the child's temperamental traits
3. Review stressful life events and the child's reactions to them
   a. Separations from primary caregivers or close family members
   b. Losses
   c. Marital conflict, family violence, divorce
   d. Illnesses, injuries, and hospitalizations
   e. Moves, household changes
   f. School transitions
   g. Traumatic events
   h. Financial changes that impact daily living environment
4. Obtain details of past mental health problems and their treatment

Family history

1. Marital/relationship history
   a. Overall satisfaction with the marriage/partnership
   b. Conflicts or disagreements within the relationship
   c. Quantity and quality of time together away from children
   d. Whether the child comes between or is a source of conflict between the parents
   e. Marital history prior to having children
2. Parenting history
   a. Feelings about parenthood
   b. Whether parents feel united in dealing with the child
   c. "Division of labor" in parenting
   d. Parental energy or stress level
   e. Sleeping arrangements
   f. Privacy
   g. Attitudes about discipline
   h. Interference with discipline from outside the family (e.g., ex-spouses, grandparents)
3. Stresses on the family
   a. Problems with employment
   b. Financial problems
   c. Changes of residence or household composition
   d. Illness, injuries, and d eaths
4. Family history of mental health problems and treatment
   a. Depression? Who?
   b. Suicide attempts? Who?
   c. Psychiatric hospitalizations? Who?
   d. "Nervous breakdowns"? Who?
   e. Substance abuse or problems? Who?
   f. Nervousness or anxiety? Who?

Observation of the parents

1. Do they agree on the existence of the problem or concern?
2. Are they uncooperative or antagonistic about the evaluation? (temperamental traits)
3. Do the parents appear depressed or overwhelmed? (reactions to them)
4. Can the parents present a coherent picture of the problem and their family life?
5. Do the parents accept some responsibility for the child's problems, or do they blame forces outside the family and beyond their control?
6. Do they appear burdened with guilt about the child's problem?

Observation of the child

1. Does the child acknowledge the existence of a problem or concern?
2. Does the child want help?
3. Is the child uncooperative or antagonistic about the assessment?
4. What is the child's predominant mood or attitude?
5. What does the child wish could be different (e.g., "three wishes")?
6. Does the child display unusual behavior (activity level, mannerisms, fearfulness)?
7. What is the child's apparent cognitive level?

Observation of parent-child interaction

1. Do the parents show concern about the child's feelings?
2. Does the child control or disrupt the joint interview?
3. Does the child respond to parental limits and control?
4. Do the parents inappropriately answer questions addressed to the child?
5. Is there obvious tension between family members?

Data from other sources

1. Waiting room observations by office staff
2. School (teacher, nurse, social worker, counselor, day care provider)
3. Department of social services
4. Other caregivers: grandparents, etc.

the provider can begin to develop an impression about the problem and formulate a treatment plan to discuss with the family. Although the child should not be interviewed separately, the parent may need to discuss sensitive issues with the provider privately. Some children can tolerate playing with another provider or staff member, while their parent talks to the provider.

2. Interviewing the school-aged child—Most school-aged children have mastered separation anxiety sufficiently to tolerate at least a brief interview alone with the provider. In addition, they may have important information to share about their own worries. The child should be told beforehand by the parents or provider (or both) that the doctor will want to talk to the child about his or her feelings. School-aged children understand and even appreciate parental concern about unhappiness, worries, and difficulty in getting along with people. At the outset, it is useful to explore the child's thoughts about certain issues raised by the parents and ask whether the child thinks that a problem exists (eg, unhappiness, anxiety, or sleep disturbance), and if there are any other concerns. The provider should ask the child to describe the problem in his or her own words and ask what he or she thinks is causing the problem. It is important to ask the child how the problem affects the child and the family. At the end of the interview with the child, it is important to share or reiterate the central points derived from the

http://obgynebooks.com

interview and to state that the next step is to talk with the parents about ways to make things better for the child. At that time, it is good to discuss any concerns or misgivings the child might have about sharing information with parents so that the child's right to privacy is not arbitrarily violated. Most children want to make things better and thus will allow the provider to share appropriate concerns with the parents.

3. Interviewing the adolescent—The provider usually begins by meeting briefly with the parents and adolescent together to define the concerns. Because the central developmental task of adolescence is to create an identity separate from that of the parents, the provider must show respect for the teen's point of view. The provider should then meet alone with the adolescent or, at least, give the teen the option. After the provider has interviewed the adolescent and talked further with the parents, he or she should formulate thoughts and recommendations. Whenever possible, it is helpful to discuss these with the adolescent before presenting them to the parents and teen together. The issue of confidentiality must be discussed early in the interview: "What we talk about today is between you and me unless we decide together that someone should know or unless it appears to me that you might be in a potentially dangerous situation."

The interview with the adolescent alone might start with a restatement of the parents' concerns. The teen should be encouraged to describe the situation in his or her own words and say what he or she would like to be different. The provider should ask questions about the adolescent's primary concerns, predominant mood state, relationships with family members, level of satisfaction with school and peer relationships, plans for the future, drug and alcohol use, and sexual activity.

In concluding the interview, the provider should summarize his or her thoughts and develop a plan with the teenager to present to the parents. If teenagers participate in the solution, they are more likely to work with the family to improve the situation. This should include a plan either for further investigation or for ways of dealing with the problem and arranging subsequent appointments with the provider or an appropriate referral to a mental health care provider.

C. Targeted Screening Tools and Assessment Measures

As with broad screening tools, targeted screening tools or assessment instruments can be very valuable in the clinic since they are standardized and allow for the assessment of current symptoms and severity. They can also be useful for following or reassessing a patient's progress after initiation of treatment.

1. Vanderbilt assessment scales for attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder—These scales are included in the American Academy of Pediatrics/National Initiative for Children's Health Quality (AAP/NICHQ) Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder Practitioner's Toolkit, available at: http://www.nichq.org/childrens-health/adhd/resources/vanderbilt-assessment-scales.

2. Center for epidemiologic studies depression scale for children (CESD-C)—Available at: http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/professionals/bridges/ces_dc.pdf.

3. Self-report for childhood Anxiety-Related Emotional Disorders (SCARED)—Available at: http://www.psychiatry.pitt.edu/research/tools-research/assessment-instruments.

4. Patient health questionnaire-9 modified for teens (PHQ-Modified)—Available at: http://www.lfmp.com/Portals/8/PHQ-9%20(Depression%20Screener%20for%20Adolescents%2012-18).pdf.

5. Other Tools

a. Bright futures—The Bright Futures Tool Kit has numerous guidelines, tools, and other resources for identifying mental health concerns. Available at: http://www.brightfutures.org/mentalhealth/pdf/tools.html.

b. Edinburgh postnatal depression scale—The scale is used widely as a screening instrument for pregnancy-related depression (PRD) and anxiety. It measures emotional and cognitive symptoms of PRD and anxiety and demonstrates moderate to good reliability and validity across diverse samples.

Boyd RC, Le HN, Somberg R: Review of screening instruments for postpartum depression. Arch Womens Ment Health 2005;8(3):141–153 [PMID: 16133785].

Cox JL, Holden JM, Sagovsky R: Detection of postnatal depression. Development of the 10-item Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale. Br J Psychiatry 1987;150:782–786 [PMID: 3651732].

c. Disorder-specific screening tools—Useful tools for evaluating other mental health concerns, such as obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), and autism spectrum disorders, can be found at the following websites: http://www2.massgeneral.org/schoolpsychiatry/ and http://www.mass.gov/eohhs/gov/commissions-and-initiatives/cbhi/screening-for-behavioral-health-conditions/.

The Mental Status Examination

The Mental Status Examination (MSE) is a tool equivalent to the physical examination. It includes some standard aspects to help evaluate an individual, including observation of an individual's overall cognitive, emotional, and behavioral presentation. Through observations, interaction, and questions, the MSE identifies current behavioral presentation and areas of clinical concern (eg, suicidal thinking, hallucinations). Depending on the presenting problem, pediatricians may choose to document a complete MSE or a focused MSE. Please refer to standard elements of MSE (Table 7–3).

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–3. Standard elements of mental status examination.

Category	Description	Questions to Ask/Observations to Document
General appearance	Physical presentation, attitude and how the child carries themselves. (observation, interaction)	Does the child look their stated age? Document physical size compared to peers, dysmorphic features, grooming, cooperation, level of distress, and quality of interaction.
Eye contact	Quality of eye contact in context. (observation, interaction)	Observe and document quality of eye contact, for example good, fair or poor. Is gaze fixed?
Psychomotor activity	Overall energy and physical movement. (observation)	Document whether activity level is normal, slowed, or increased.
Musculoskeletal	Gait, range of motion (extremities), abnormal movements. (observation and directed tasks)	Document gait and the presence of any rigidity, ataxia, tics, or other abnormal movements.
Speech/language	Rate, volume, tone, articulation, coherence and spontaneity; appropriate naming and word usage. (observation)	Observe and document pattern and quality of speech.
Mood/affect	Subjective (child's stated mood); objective (clinician's observation of affect) and how well the two correspond. (observation, direct questioning, and optional self-report questionnaire)	Is the child able to identify their mood, happy, sad, angry, anxious? Is the child's affect congruent with mood? What is the observed range of affect?
Thought process; associations	Rate, relevance and reasoning. (observation)	Are the child's thoughts goal-directed, logical, tangential, or circumferential? How does the child reason and problem solve? Is thought process concrete or does the child demonstrate abstract reasoning?
Thought content	Content of what the child is actually saying. (observation)	Does the child express suicidal or homicidal ideation, and if so, is there intent and a plan? Does the child experience obsessions? Does the child experience perceptual abnormalities such as, hallucinations or illusions.
Attention span	Child's ability to stay on task, focus, and concentrate. (observation)	Does the child have an age-appropriate attention span? Is the child able to stay on task or are they easily distracted?
Insight; judgment	Child's psychological understanding of his/her situation; ability to make safe and appropriate choices based on situation. (observation and response to directed questions.)	What is the child's capacity for insight into his/her situation (intact, poor, impaired)?
Orientation	Awareness of oneself, location, date and reason for care. (observation and response to directed questions.)	Does the child know where he/she is, the date, who he/she is, who the parents are?
Fund of knowledge; memory	Common knowledge, ability to recall long term events and recent details. (observation and response to directed questions.)	Response to direct questions about current events and memory.
Cognition	Intelligence	Results of cognitive testing (from outside source), assessment of intellectual capacity based on interaction, and other sources of information (average, below average, above average for age and level of education).

http://obgynebooks.com

Diagnostic Formulation & Interpretation of Findings

Diagnosis, the final product of an assessment, starts with a description of the presenting problem, which is then evaluated within the context of the child's age, developmental abilities, the context in which a child exists, including adverse experiences and stressors that impact the child and the family, and the functioning of the family system.

In the absence of integrated mental health providers, the primary care provider uses the information gathered to distinguish among the following possible explanations for the emotional or behavioral problem(s):

1. The behavior falls within the range of normal given the child's developmental level.
2. The behavior is a temperamental variation.
3. The behavior is related to central nervous system impairment (eg, prematurity, exposure to toxins in utero, seizure disorder, or genetic disorders).
4. The behavior is a normal reaction to stressful circumstances (eg, medical illness, change in family structure, or loss of a loved one).
5. The behavior is related to relationship problems within the family.
6. The problem is complicated or exacerbated by an underlying medical condition.
7. The problem reaches threshold for a diagnosis.
8. Some combination of the above.

While it is not necessary to identify a diagnosis in order to refer a patient to a mental health provider, it is important to identify any diagnosis that may be addressed within the community pediatric setting, such as attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), mild anxiety, mild depression and mild adjustment disorders. This involves deciding whether particular behaviors or symptoms constitute a pattern consistent with a diagnosis. For example, how hyperactive must a 5-year-old child be before he or she is hyperactive enough to meet diagnostic criteria for ADHD? Providers use caregiver reports of behaviors and symptoms in combination with their clinical observations and assessments of duration, severity, and impairment to determine what, if any, is the correct diagnosis. When a child's functioning is impaired in major domains of life, such as learning, peer relationships, family relationships, authority relationships, and recreation, or when substantial deviation from typical developmental trajectories occurs, a differential diagnosis may be considered based on the symptom profile.

Identifying and discussing the diagnosis is often the beginning of initiating treatment. The provider's interpretation of the presenting problem and diagnosis in the context of current family circumstances and available resources and supports enhances referral uptake, engagement in treatment, and coordinated care. The interpretive process includes the following components:

1. Psychoeducation: An explanation of how the presenting problem or symptom is a reflection of a suspected cause, and typical outcomes both with and without intervention.
2. A discussion of possible interventions, including the following options:
   a. Close monitoring
   b. Counseling provided by the primary care provider or integrated mental health provider
   c. Referral to a mental health professional outside of the primary care clinic
   d. Initiation of medication
   e. Some combination of the above
3. A discussion of the parent's and adolescent's response to the diagnosis and potential interventions.

A joint plan involving the provider, parents, and child is then negotiated to address the child's symptoms and developmental needs in light of the family structure and stresses. If an appropriate plan cannot be developed, or if the provider feels that further diagnostic assessment is required, referral to a mental health practitioner should be recommended.

A. Referral of Patients to Mental Health Professionals

Primary care providers often refer patients to a child and adolescent psychiatrist or other qualified child mental health professional when the diagnosis or treatment plan is uncertain, or when medication is indicated and the pediatrician prefers that a specialist initiate or manage treatment of the mental illness (Table 7–4). For academic difficulties not associated with behavioral difficulties, a child educational psychologist or multidisciplinary learning disorder team may be most helpful in assessing patients for learning

Table 7–4. When to consider consultation or referral to a child and adolescent psychiatrist.

The diagnosis is not clear
The pediatrician feels that further assessment is needed
The pediatrician believes medication may be needed, but will not be prescribing
The pediatrician has started medications and needs further psychopharmacologic consultation
Individual, family, or group psychotherapy is needed
Psychotic symptoms (hallucinations, paranoia) are present
Bipolar affective disorder is suspected
Chronic medical regimen nonadherence

http://obgynebooks.com

disorders and potential remediation. For cognitive difficulties associated with head trauma, epilepsy, or brain tumors, a referral to a pediatric neuropsychologist may be indicated.

Patients with Medicaid or without mental health insurance coverage can usually be assessed and treated at their local mental health care center. Patients with private mental health insurance need to contact their insurance company for a list of local mental health professionals trained in the assessment and treatment of children and adolescents who are on their insurance panel. The referring pediatrician or staff should assist the family by providing information to put them in touch with the appropriate services. Personal relationships between staff or providers in the primary care office and community mental health administrators improve the success of referrals. Systems of care in which mental health professionals are co-located in the clinic remove barriers and improve access and care (see earlier discussion). In addition, there are many levels of care between involuntary inpatient psychiatric hospitalization and outpatient treatment including the following: day treatment hospitalization, home-based care, intensive outpatient, and primary care management. The pediatrician should arrange a follow-up visit, after a referral has been made, to monitor if the family was able to establish care with the mental health provider, and to help troubleshoot any barriers to care.

Pediatricians who feel comfortable implementing the recommendations of a mental health professional with whom they have a collaborative relationship should consider remaining involved in the management and coordination of treatment of mental illness in their patients. The local branches of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry and the American Psychological Association should be able to provide a list of mental health professionals who are trained in the evaluation and treatment of children and adolescents.

B. Other Resources

The Partnership Access Line (PAL) Washington website (www.palforkids.org) is another useful tool to assist the primary care provider in diagnosis and treatment of the more common psychiatric conditions. The PAL algorithms provide decision trees and guidance for treating specific diagnoses, considering alternative diagnoses in the differential, and reviewing medication treatment tables for specific information regarding psychopharmacologic treatments.

Baren JM, Mace SE, Hendry PL: Children's mental health emergencies—part 3: special situations: child maltreatment, violence, and response to disasters. Pediatr Emerg Care 2008;24(8): 569–577 [PMID: 18708906].

Baren JM, Mace SE, Hendry PL, Dietrich AM, Goldman RD, Warden CR: Children's mental health emergencies—part 2: emergency department evaluation and treatment of children with mental health disorders. Pediatr Emerg Care 2008;24(7): 485–498 [PMID: 18633314].

Baren JM, Mace SE, Hendry PL, Dietrich AM, Grupp-Phelan J, Mullin J: Children's mental health emergencies—part 1: challenges in care: definition of the problem, barriers to care, screening, advocacy, and resources. Pediatr Emerg Care 2008;24(6):399–408 [PMID: 18562887].

Dolan MA, Fein JA: Committee on Pediatric Emergency Medicine. Pediatric and adolescent mental health emergencies in the emergency medical services system. Pediatrics 2011;127(5):e13 56–e1366 [Epub 2011 Apr 25] [PMID: 21518712].

Partnership Access Line: http://www.palforkids.org/resources.html. Accessed September 27, 2015.

OTHER PEDIATRIC CARE SETTINGS

CONSULTATION-LIAISON PSYCHIATRY

Psychiatric consultation on the medical floor and in the intensive care units can be complex and often requires assessment and intervention beyond the individual patient's symptom presentation, such as assessment of family dynamics as related to the patient, and may include evaluation of dynamics within the treatment team, or between the team and the patient/family.

When requesting a psychiatric consultation, it is critical that the concern and focus of the consultation request be as specific as possible. Often the liaison role of the psychiatrist is to assist in clarifying or formulating the specific reason for the consult. Psychiatric consultation on the medical floor is often requested when the patient's emotional state is affecting his or her response to medical care, or when an underlying mental illness may be contributing to the presenting symptoms. Patients admitted to the intensive care unit or a medical floor after a suicide attempt or supposed unintentional overdose should be evaluated by a psychiatric consultant before discharge.

Another common reason for requesting a psychiatric consultation on the medical floor is change in mental status. Pediatricians should be aware that acute mental status changes in the medical setting often represent delirium, and this has significant assessment and treatment implications. Delirium is defined as an acute and fluctuating disturbance of one's alertness and orientation. Delirium can be manifested by a variety of psychiatric symptoms, including paranoia, hallucinations, anxiety, and mood disturbances. However, aside from dementia and possibly dissociation and malingering, primary psychiatric presentations do not typically involve disturbances of alertness and orientation that are, by definition, always present in delirium.

Hindley P: Pediatric consultation-liaison psychiatry. J Psychosom Res 2010;68(4):325–327 [PMID: 20307698].

Shaw RJ, Wamboldt M, Bursch B, Stuber M: Practice patterns in pediatric consultation-liaison psychiatry: a national survey. Psychosomatics 2006;47(1):43–49 [PMID: 16384806].

http://obgynebooks.com

CHRONIC ILLNESS IN THE PEDIATRIC POPULATION

Advances in the treatment of pediatric and adolescent conditions have decreased mortality rates, thus surviving children potentially, face lifelong difficulties. Children with chronic illness frequently receive care from community-based pediatric providers and specialty providers in outpatient and hospital-based settings. All should be aware of the need for ongoing monitoring of quality-of-life indicators for these patients and their families.

Reactions to Chronic Physical or Mental Illness & Disability

Between 5% and 10% of individuals experience a prolonged period of medical illness or disability during childhood and another 5%–10% experience the onset of mental illness in childhood. The specific effect of illness on children and their families depends on the characteristics of the illness, the age of the child, family functioning, and premorbid functioning. It may take time for a family to accept the diagnosis, to cope with the stresses, and to resume normal life to the extent possible. If anxiety and guilt remain prominent within the family, a pattern of overprotection can evolve. Likewise, when the illness is not accepted as a reality to be dealt with, a pattern of denial may become prominent.

Children are often observant about changes to their bodies and the effects of the illness on everyday life (eg, routines), pain, discomfort, and limitations on normal, age-appropriate activities. Children are also aware of the family's reactions and may be reluctant to bring up issues they know are upsetting to their parents. Parents should be encouraged to discuss the child's illness and to answer questions openly and honestly, in a developmentally appropriate manner, including exploration of the child's fears and fantasies. Such interactions promote closeness and relieve the child's sense of isolation. Even with these active attempts to promote communication between the child and the family, ill children frequently experience fear, anxiety, irritability, and anger over their illness, and guilt over causing family distress. Sleep disturbances, tears, and clinging, dependent behavior are not infrequent or abnormal. Parents frequently need support in an individual or group format to help them cope with the diagnosis and stress caused by the disease, its treatments, and its affect on the afflicted child and other family members.

The Psychosocial Impact of Living With Chronic Illness

Chronic disease and long-term illnesses disrupt family routines and daily living. Children and families face numerous challenges, including extended contact with the medical system; painful procedures and painful conditions; feelings of fear, worry, and grief; and significant lifestyle disruptions. Discussions and interventions that take into account both emotional and medical symptoms will help the child and family better understand their experiences and attitude toward illness and life. The family and child will benefit from discussions about such questions as "What is the real nature of this illness? How has it affected us? What will be our future? What does the treatment do to me?" Such discussions can be quite enlightening and empowering, as they encourage communication between the child and parents and an active role in treatment.

Patient- and parent-reported outcome tools, known either as health status or health-related quality-of-life (HRQOL) measures, can also be routinely used in pediatric specialty clinics. Tools that can be used across illnesses and some that are for specific illnesses are available. These measures adopt the World Health Organization's definition of health as "a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease." HRQOL refers to the subjective and objective impact of dysfunction associated with an illness or injury and is multidimensional, including four core domains: (1) disease state and physical symptoms, (2) functional status, (3) psychological functioning, and (4) social functioning. A team approach is often necessary when providing care to complex and chronically ill children. Including these measures during annual visits and incorporating a mental health professional on the team can improve overall adjustment and quality of care.

Davis E et al: Paediatric quality of life instruments: a review of the impact of the conceptual framework on outcomes. Dev Med Child Neurol 2006;48(4):311–318 [Review] [PMID: 16542522].

PEDIATRIC TERMINAL ILLNESS

The discussion with parents and the child about terminal illness is one of the most difficult tasks for a provider working with children and adolescents. The traumatic experience of discussing frightening and overwhelming information about a child's life may necessitate repetition of crucial information at a time when parents have the resources to receive and process the information. Parents may prefer to discuss difficult news when supportive people in their lives are present, as these supportive others can often retain information, ask clarifying questions, and review it with parents at a later point in time. Parents' reactions may follow different stages, including initial shock and disbelief, followed by anger, despair, and guilt over weeks to months, and ending in acceptance of the situation. These responses vary in their expression, intensity, and duration for each member of the family and do not always proceed in a linear manner. Even when the illness is in remission, some parents may continue to suffer from post-traumatic stress symptoms related to the diagnosis and treatment.

http://obgynebooks.com

Although most children do not fully understand the permanency of death until about age 8, most ill children experience a sense of danger and doom that is associated with death before that age. Even so, the question of whether to tell a child about the fatal nature of a disease should in most cases be answered in the affirmative unless the parents object. When the parents object, this should alert the provider to involve mental health professionals, who can work with the family to ensure their decision is in the best interest of the child. Refusal of the adults to tell the child, especially when the adults themselves are very sad, leads to a conspiracy of silence that increases fear of the unknown in the child and leads to feelings of loneliness and isolation at the time of greatest need. In fact, children who are able to discuss their illness with family members are less depressed, have fewer behavior problems, have higher self-esteem, feel closer to their families, and adapt better to the challenges of their disease and its treatment.

The siblings of children with terminal illnesses are also significantly affected. They may feel neglected and deprived because of the time their parents must spend with the sick child. Anger and jealousy may then give rise to feelings of guilt over having such feelings about their sick sibling. Awareness of the emotional responses, coping abilities, and available resources for support of other family members can diminish these feelings and make a significant difference in the family's overall ability to cope with the illness.

After the child dies, the period of bereavement may last indefinitely. Family members may need help in dealing with their grief through supportive counseling services or peer-support groups. Most parents and siblings are able to return to work and school within a few weeks to months, although their emotional state and thoughts may continue to be dominated by the loss for some time. Support and intervention around a death loss in the form of grief-specific group intervention, individual counseling, or family therapy is often helpful in guiding children and families through the grief process. Providing them with coping skills and resources promotes adaptive adjustment after a devastating loss. Grief responses may resurface around anniversaries (e.g., of the diagnosis, medical procedure, death) or birthdays of the deceased child. When the individual is unable to function in his or her societal and family roles for an extended period of time, consultation with a mental health professional is warranted. Diagnostic considerations include persistent complex bereavement disorder, major depression, PTSD, or adjustment disorder. Appropriate interventions may be recommended, such as referral for counseling or psychotherapy and possibly antidepressant medication. For additional information on this topic, please refer to Chapter 32.

Long-Term Coping

The process of coping with a chronic or terminal illness is complex and varies depending on the circumstances and resources of each individual child and family. Each change in the course of illness and each new developmental stage may present different challenges for the child and family. It is important for health care providers to continually assess the family and child's needs and coping abilities over time and to provide appropriate support, information, and access to interventions.

Assistance From Health Care Providers

A. Educate the Patient and Family

Children and their families should be given information at frequent intervals about the illness, including its course and treatment. Factual, open discussions minimize anxieties. The explanation should be comprehensible to all, and time should be set aside for questions and answers. The setting can be created with an invitation such as "Let's take some time together to review the situation again."

B. Prepare the Child for Changes and Procedures

The provider should explain, in an age-appropriate manner, what is expected with any new turn in the illness or with upcoming medical procedures. This enables the child to anticipate and, in turn, to master the new development and promotes trust between the patient and the health care provider.

C. Encourage Normal Activities

The child should attend school and play with peers as much as the illness allows. Individual education plans should be requested from the school if accommodation beyond the regular classroom is necessary. At the same time, parents should be encouraged to apply the same rules of discipline and behavior to the ill child as to the siblings.

D. Encourage Compensatory Activities, Interests, and Skill Development

Children who experience disability or interruption of their usual activities and interests should be encouraged to explore new interests, and the family should be supported in adapting the child's interests for their situation, and in presenting new opportunities.

E. Promote Self-Reliance

Children often feel helpless when others must do things for them, or assist with their daily needs. The health care provider should guide and encourage parents in helping ill children assume responsibility for some aspects of their medical care and continue to experience age-appropriate independence and skills whenever possible.

F. Periodically Review Family Coping

Parents are often so immersed in the crisis of their child's illness that they neglect their own needs or the needs of other family members. From time to time, the provider should

http://obgynebooks.com

ask "How is everyone doing?" The feelings of the patient, the parents, and other children in the family are explored. Parents should be encouraged to stay in touch with people in their support system, and to encourage their children in such efforts. Feelings of fear, guilt, anger, and grief should be monitored and discussed as normal reactions to difficult circumstances. If these experiences are interfering with the family's functioning, involvement of the pediatric mental health professional can be helpful.

Appropriate community-based support groups for the patient and family should be recommended. Hospitals, faith-based organizations, and illness-specific advocacy groups may provide support, and pediatric providers can help facilitate participation.

Lewis M, Vitulano LA: Biopsychosocial issues and risk factors in the family when the child has a chronic illness. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2003;12(3):389–399 [PMID: 12910814].

Pao M, Bosk A: Anxiety in medically ill children/adolescents. Depress Anxiety 2011;28(1):40–49. doi: 10.1002/da.20727 [Epub 2010 Aug 18] [PMID: 20721908].

Pediatric Medical Traumatic Stress Toolkit: http://www.nctsn.org/trauma-types/pediatric-medical-traumatic-stress-toolkit-for-health-care-providers. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Vitulano LA: Psychosocial issues for children and adolescents with chronic illness: self-esteem, school functioning and sports participation. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2003;12(3):585–592 [PMID: 12910824].

PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS OF CHILDHOOD & ADOLESCENCE

A psychiatric disorder is defined as a characteristic cluster of signs and symptoms (emotions, behaviors, thought patterns, and mood states) that are associated with subjective distress or maladaptive behavior. This definition presumes that the symptoms are of such intensity, persistence, and duration that the ability to adapt to life's challenges is compromised.

Psychiatric disorders originate in neurobiologic, genetic, psychological (life experience), and/or environmental sources. The neurobiology of childhood disorders is one of the most active areas of investigation in child and adolescent psychiatry. Although much remains to be clarified, data from genetic studies point to heritable transmission of ADHD, schizophrenia, mood and anxiety disorders, eating disorders, pervasive developmental disorders, learning disorders, and tic disorders, among others. About 3%–5% of children and 10%–15% of adolescents will experience psychiatric disorders.

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed (DSM-5), which is the formal reference text for psychiatric disorders, includes the criteria for each of the mental illnesses, including those that begin in childhood and adolescence. The five-axis model used in the previous manual, DSM-IV-TR has been replaced by the DSM-5, which only requires a single psychiatric diagnosis. The DSM-5 includes some important changes, some new diagnostic categories as well as some updates for existing diagnoses. The descriptions of disorders in this chapter follow the DSM-5 nosology in order to reference current knowledge regarding epidemiology, course, and treatment of specific disorders. Of note, primary care providers frequently see a spectrum of disturbances in their clinical practice, many not achieving full DSM-5 criteria.

Changes in diagnostic criteria in the DSM-5 include updates to autism spectrum disorders, ADHD, and tic disorders. Newly added diagnoses include disruptive mood dysregulation disorder (see section on mood disorders), and social communication disorder, which describes children who have language and communication deficits. Specific learning disorders is also a new category, with modifiers in reading, written expression, and mathematics. Three new communication disorders—language disorder, childhood-onset fluency disorder (ie, stuttering), and speech sounds disorder—have replaced expressive language disorder, stuttering, and phonologic disorder, respectively. Last, intellectual disability replaces "mental retardation" and requires both adaptive-functioning assessments and IQ scores for diagnosis.

Special Considerations in Prescribing Psychotropic Medications

As pediatricians will often manage mental health issues in the primary care setting, a large portion of the management may involve medication treatment. Each primary care provider must establish their comfort level in prescribing psychotropic medications. Table 7–5 includes commonly prescribed psychotropic medications and the expected level of comfort of a primary care provider for initiating and managing them. More complete information regarding medication is detailed throughout the chapter. In addition, a list of FDA-approved medication for various psychiatric disorders is included in Table 7–6. For a current alphabetical listing of FDA-approved psychotropic medications, refer to the NIMH website at http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/mental-health-medications/nimh-mental-health-medications.pdf.

Allen KD, Elliott AJ, Arndorfer RE: Behavioral pain management for pediatric headache in primary care. Children's Health Care 2002;31:175–189. doi:10.1207/S15326888CHC3103

Committee on Psychosocial Aspects of Child and Family Health and Task Force on Mental Health. Policy statement—the future of pediatrics: mental health competencies for pediatric primary care. Pediatrics 2009;124:410–421 [PMID: 19564328].

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, VA, American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Campo JV et al: Pediatric behavioral health in primary care: a collaborative approach. J Am Psychiatr Nurses Assoc 2005 Oct;11(5):276–282.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–5. Guidelines for management of psychiatric medications by the pediatrician.

Drug or Class	Comfort Initiating	Comfort Managing
Stimulants	+++	+++
α-Agonists	++	+++
Antidepressants	+	++
Atypical antipsychotics	Recommend psychiatrist involvement	++
Typical antipsychotics	Requires psychiatrist involvement	+/-
Clozapine (Clozaril)	Requires psychiatrist involvement	Requires psychiatrist involvement
Mood stabilizers	Recommend psychiatrist involvement	+
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	Requires psychiatrist involvement	++
Sleep medicines	+	++
Tricyclic antidepressants	+	++

+++, high comfort; ++, comfort; +, mild caution; +/–, caution required.

Cooper S, Valleley R J, Polaha J, Begeny J, Evans J H: Running out of time: physician management of behavioral health concerns in rural pediatric primary care. Pediatrics 2006;118(1):e132 [PMID: 16818528].

Dilallo JJ, Weiss G: Motivational interviewing and adolescent psychopharmacology. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry (0890–8567) 2009;48(2):108 [PMID: 20040823].

Guevara JP, Forrest CB: Modernizing pediatric primary care to better manage children's behavioral health. Curr Opin Pediatr 2006;18(6):639 [PMID: 17099363].

Meadows T, Valleley R, Haack MK, Thorson R, Evans J: Physician "costs" in providing behavioral health in primary care. Clinical Pediatrics 2011;50(5):447 [PMID: 21196418].

Minkovitz CS, Hughart N, Strobino D, et al. A practice-based intervention to enhance quality of care in the first three years of life: results from the Healthy Steps for Young Children Program. JAMA 2003 Dec 17; 290(23):3081–3091 [PMID: 14679271].

Moran M. DSM-5 provides new take on developmental disorders. Psychiatric News, January 18, 2013, p 6.

Strickland B, Jones J, Ghandour R, Kogan M, Newacheck P: The medical home: health care access and impact for children and youth in the United States. Pediatrics 2011;127:604–611 [PMID: 21402643].

Talmi A, Stafford B, Buchholz M: Providing perinatal mental health services in pediatric primary care. Zero to Three 2009 May;29(5):10–16.

Table 7–6. Psychoactive medications approved by the FDA for use in children and adolescents.[a]

Drug	Indication	Minimum Age for Which Approved (y)
Mixed amphetamine salts (Adderall)	ADHD[b]	≥ 3
Dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine, Dextrostat)	ADHD	≥ 3
Methylphenidate (Concerta, Ritalin, Quillivant XR and others)	ADHD	≥ 6
Atomoxetine (Straterra)	ADHD	≥ 6
Guanfacine ER (Intuniv)	ADHD	≥ 6
Clomipramine (Anafranil)	OCD[c]	≥ 10
Fluvoxamine (Luvox)	OCD	≥ 8
Sertraline (Zoloft)	OCD Aggression and autism Schizophrenia and mania	≥ 6 ≥ 5 ≥ 10
Pimozide (Orap)[d]	Tourette syndrome	≥ 12
Lithium (Eskalith, Lithobid, Lithotabs)	Bipolar disorder	≥ 12
Fluoxetine (Prozac)	Depression OCD	≥ 12 ≥ 6
Escitalopram (Lexapro)	Depression	≥ 12
Imipramine (Norpramin)	Enuresis	≥ 6
Aripiprazole (Abilify)	Bipolar disorder Schizophrenia Aggression and autism	≥ 10 ≥ 13 ≥ 6
Risperidone (Risperdal)	Bipolar disorder Schizophrenia Aggression and autism	≥ 10 ≥ 13 ≥ 6
Quetiapine (Seroquel, XR)	Bipolar disorder Schizophrenia	≥ 10 ≥ 13
Ziprasidone (Geodon)	Bipolar disorder Schizophrenia	≥ 10 ≥ 13
Olanzapine (Zyprexa)	Bipolar disorder Schizophrenia	≥ 10 ≥ 13
Asenapine (Saphris)	Bipolar I disorder	≥ 10

[a]Food and Drug Administration FDA
[b]ADHD, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
[c]OCD, obsessive-compulsive disorder
[d]Use of pimozide in the treatment of movement disorders is discussed in Chapter 25

http://obgynebooks.com

Trupin E: Behavioral health screening and intervention in primary care. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2011;165(7):669 [PMID: 21383257].

Weitzman CC, Leventhal JM: Screening for behavioral health problems in primary care. Curr Opin Pediatr 2006;18(6): 641–648 [PMID: 17099364].

Whitlock EP, Orleans CT, Pender N, Allan J: Evaluating primary care behavioral counseling interventions. Am J Preventative Med 2002;22(4):267–284 [PMID: 11988383].

Zeanah PD, Gleason MM: Handbook of Infant Mental Health, 3rd ed. New York, NY: Guilford Publications; 2009.

ANXIETY DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS AND TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fear or anxiety that is excessive or persisting beyond developmentally appropriate period.
- Fear or anxiety is accompanied by behavioral disturbances or physical manifestations.
- Symptoms cause functional impairment or significant distress.

Anxiety is described as the anticipation of future threat and fear is described as the emotional response to real or perceived imminent threat. Both are protective emotions, part of the normal repertoire of children. Distinguishing developmentally appropriate fears and anxiety from those associated with anxiety disorders can be challenging and requires knowledge of normative development. Generally, fears or anxiety that persists beyond the expected developmental period, or cause significant distress or impairment suggest an anxiety disorder. Some anxiety disorders are more likely to be precipitated by stress, but many are not. An anxious temperament can be identified as early as infancy, and children with such temperaments are more likely to develop anxiety disorders, especially if they are living with anxious parents. Community-based studies of school-aged children and adolescents suggest that nearly 10% of children have some type of anxiety disorder. Anxiety disorders are important to identify and treat early as untreated disorders often persist or evolve into other anxiety disorders.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Comorbidity is common with anxiety disorders: Children with one anxiety disorder are likely to have another anxiety disorder and have increased risk for other psychiatric disorders such as depression. It is therefore important to carefully screen children with an anxiety disorder to insure that another disorder is not missed. In addition, children with anxiety, presenting to a pediatrician, are more likely to present with a physical complaint, such as headaches or abdominal pain than with identified anxiety (see Table 7–7). While medical causes of anxiety are rare, it is important not to misdiagnose a physical symptom as anxiety; for example, to ascribe the gastrointestinal (GI) upset of inflammatory bowel disease, to anxiety. Screening should also assess for medications and substances that can cause anxiety. Substances include caffeine, marijuana, amphetamines, cocaine, and alcohol during withdrawal. Medications that have been associated with anxiety include steroids, tacrolimus, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, anticholinergics, dopamine agonists, β-adrenergic agonists, serotonin selective reuptake inhibitors, thyroid medications, and procaine derivatives. Medical illnesses that can lead to symptoms suggestive of anxiety include those associated with hyperthyroid states, hypoglycemia, hypoxia, and more rarely, pheochromocytoma.

» Treatment

Treatment must be tailored to the developmental age of the child. Treatment of younger children focuses on helping parents understand their child's symptoms, developing skills to help their child manage distress, while also helping parents tolerate their child's distress. As soon as children have the developmental capacity to engage in assessing their own anxiety and in learning coping strategies, they are incorporated into therapy.

Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) with exposure has the most evidence regarding the successful treatment of anxiety. Exposure refers to planned progressive presentation of low- to mid-level anxiety provoking stimulus. The aim is

Table 7–7. Signs and symptoms of anxiety in children.

Psychological
Fears and worries
Increased dependence on home and parents
Avoidance of anxiety-producing stimuli
Decreased school performance
Increased self-doubt and irritability
Frightening themes in play and fantasy
Psychomotor
Motoric restlessness and hyperactivity
Sleep disturbances
Decreased concentration
Ritualistic behaviors (e.g., washing, counting)
Psychophysiologic
Autonomic hyperarousal
Dizziness and lightheadedness
Palpitations
Shortness of breath
Flushing, sweating, dry mouth
Nausea and vomiting
Panic
Headaches and stomach aches

http://obgynebooks.com

to desensitize the child to the stimulus. Cognitive behavioral therapy can be delivered in group settings, or with an individual child and parents. The basic goals include helping children identify and quantify anxiety symptoms, identify maladaptive cognitions, learn cognitive, and behavioral coping strategies to begin exposures to situations or items associated with medium- to low-level anxieties. Parents or caregivers also learn these skills in order to help children or youth practice in settings outside the therapy office. The ultimate goal is to enable the child to face the particular anxiety or set of anxieties that are causing distress or dysfunction, experience a decrease in anxiety, and resume normal functioning.

When anxiety symptoms do not remit with cognitive, behavioral, and environmental interventions, and continue to significantly affect life functioning, psychopharmacologic agents may be helpful. There is evidence that SSRIs are effective in treating anxiety disorders in children as young as 6 years of age, but these medications do not have FDA approval for this indication. The anxiolytic effect of SSRIs can be as rapid as a few days, whereas the effects of benzodiazepines are immediate. Pediatricians are aware of this immediate effect, but the use of benzodiazepines while waiting for the anxiolytic effects of SSRIs is discouraged with youth because the developing brain is at increased risk for dependency and iatrogenic substance abuse. Alpha agonists are an alternative that can be used on a scheduled or as-needed based, and usually are better tolerated without concern for physiologic dependence. Please refer to medication used for treatment of depressive disorders (Table 7–8) as they are commonly used in the treatment for anxiety as well.

Table 7–8. Common medications used for the treatment of depression in children and adolescents.

Drug Name	Dosage Form	Usual Starting Dose for Adolescent	Increase Increment (After ~4 wk)	RCT evidence in Kids	FDA Depression Approved for Children?	Editorial Comments
Fluoxetine (Prozac)	10, 20, 40 mg 20 mg/5 mL	10 mg/d (60 mg max)[a]	10–20 mg[b]	Yes	Yes (> age 8)	Long half-life, no side effect from a missed dose
Citalopram (Celexa)	10, 20, 40 mg 10 mg/5 mL	10 mg/d (40 mg max)[a]	10–20 mg[b]	Yes	No	Few drug interactions
Sertraline (Zoloft)	25, 50, 100 mg 20 mg/mL	25 mg/d (200 mg max)[a]	25–50 mg[b]	Yes	No	May be prone to side effects when stopping
Escitalopram (Lexapro)	5, 10, 20 mg 5 mg/5 mL	5 mg/d (20 mg max)[a]	5–10 mg[b]	Yes (for adolescents)	Yes	No generic form. The active isomer of citalopram.
Bupropion (Wellbutrin)	75, 100 mg 100, 150, 200 mg SR[c] forms 150, 300 mg XL[d] forms	75 mg/d (later dose this BID) (400 mg max)[a]	75–100 mg[b]	No	No	Can have more agitation risk. Avoid if eat d/o. Also has use for ADHD treatment
Mirtazapine (Remeron)	15, 30, 45 mg	15 mg/d (45 mg max)[a]	15 mg[b]	No	No	Sedating, increases appetite
Venlafaxine (Effexor)	25, 37.5, 50, 75, 100 mg 37.5, 75, 150 mg ER[e] forms	37.5 mg/d (225 mg max)[a]	37.5–75 mg[b]	No (may have higher SI risk than others for children)	No	Only recommended for older adolescents Withdrawal symptoms can be severe

[a]Recommend decrease maximum dosage by around one-third for prepubertal children.
[b]Recommend using the lower dose increase increments for younger children.
[c]Sustained release.
[d]Extended release.
[e]Extended release.

Notes:
1. Starting doses in children younger than 13 may need to be lowered using liquid forms.
2. Successful medication trials should continue for 6-12 mo.
3. Fluoxetine is considered first line due to stronger evidence base in children. Citalopram (escitalopram) and sertraline are considered second line per the evidence base in children. Others are considered third-line treatments per the evidence base in children.

Reproduced with permission from Hilt R: Primary Care Principles for Child Mental Health, summer 2015. version 6.1. Seattle Children's Hospital.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Prognosis

Early treatment of anxiety disorders can be very effective and decrease the risk for negative impact on developmental trajectories or the development of other psychiatric disorders. The standard of care is CBT for milder cases and a combination of CBT/antidepressant for more severe cases or cases that do not respond to CBT alone.

The life course of anxiety disorders is as follows. Anxiety disorders that present in childhood tend to wax and wane during childhood, but patients who present with more severe symptoms often develop several anxiety disorders during adolescence and are at risk for depression, substance abuse and other negative developmental outcomes. Parenting style may contribute to anxiety; specifically, autonomy granting is more likely to result in less anxious children, whereas harsh or rejecting parenting results in more anxious children. Treatment of parental anxiety disorders when present improves the outcome of the child's anxiety disorder.

As mentioned earlier, the PAL Washington is a great resource for primary care providers. The site includes treatment algorithms and related information for the diagnosis and treatment of commonly encountered mental health disorders. To illustrate this point, the treatment algorithm for anxiety disorders is included in Figure 7–1.

1. Separation Anxiety

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS AND TYPICAL FEATURES

- Persistent excessive worry about losing or being separated from attachment figures, due to harm, illness, or death befalling either the attachment figure or the patient.
- Reluctance or refusal to leave the attachment figure or sleep away from the attachment figure.
- Fear of being home without attachment figure.
- Physical complaints when separation occurs or is anticipated.

» General Considerations

Younger children may not be symptomatic until the separation is imminent, and may not experience explicit fears related to separation. As children get older, they may experience specific fears such as fears of kidnapping, parents getting into car accidents, being separated due to natural disasters, etc. Behaviors associated with separation anxiety also vary by age; young children are more likely to present with difficulties around the separation of sleep and for older children other separations, such as school, sleep overs, and camp, may be the focus of anxiety. In addition to appearing anxious, children with separation anxiety can appear sad, aggressive, or experience physical symptoms when facing the anxiety provoking separation. Separation anxiety disorder is more prevalent in younger children (4% 6-month prevalence compared with 1.6% 6-month prevalence in adolescence).

» Identification & Diagnosis

Anxiety about separation from attachment figures is part of early normative development. Separation anxiety disorder must be distinguished from normal development, must occur for more than 4 weeks for children, and lead to impairment or significant distress.

» Treatment

Parents are often try to alleviate symptoms caused by separation anxiety and are important to include in treatment. Treatment of separation anxiety includes CBT that is modified to address the developmental level of the child. Children who do not respond to therapy may require medication such as an SSRI. Children younger than school age are generally not treated with medication.

» Other Considerations

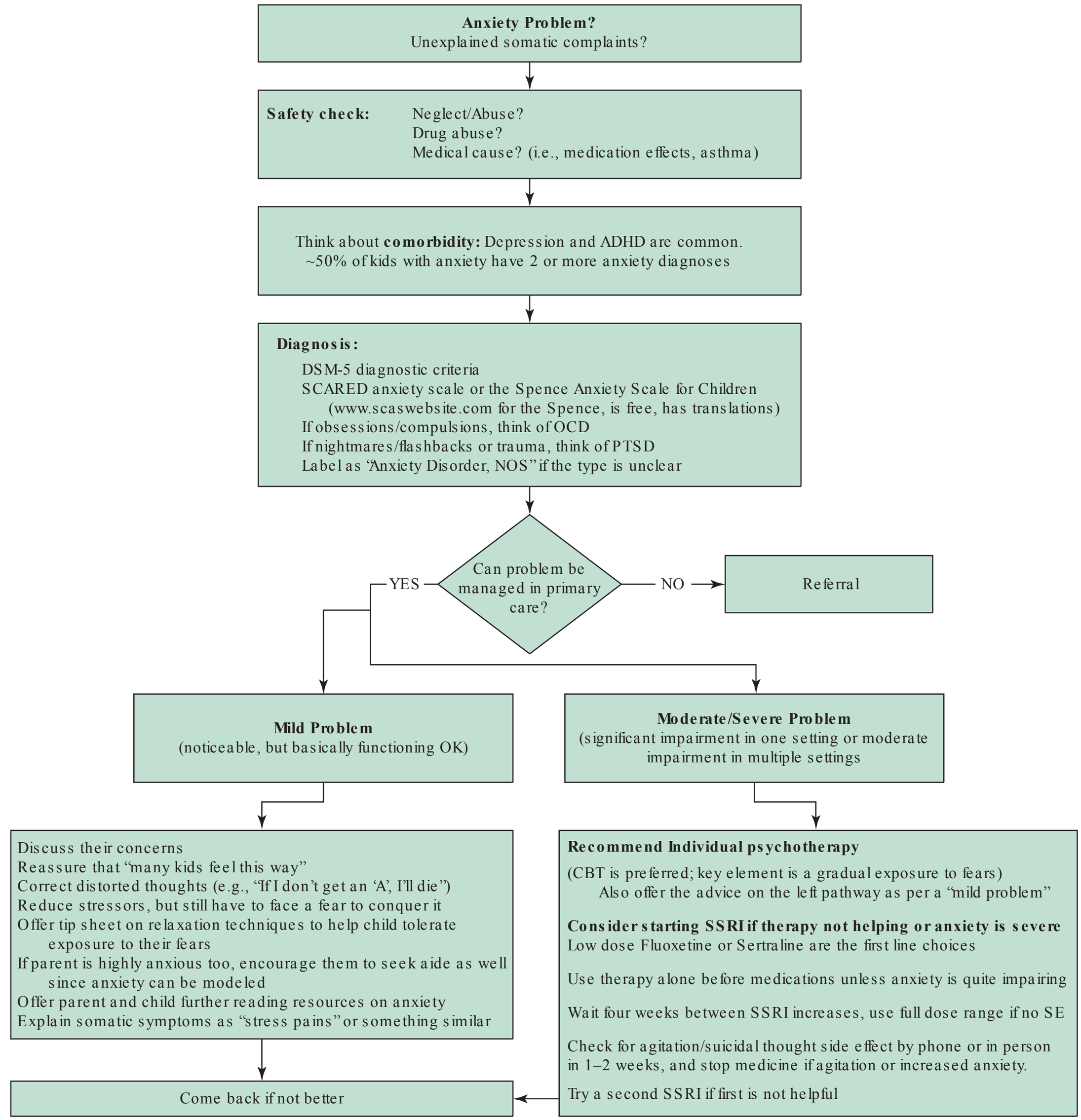
The differential for separation anxiety is broad and includes other anxiety disorders, mood disorders, oppositional defiant disorder, conduct disorder, psychotic disorder, and personality disorders. Pediatricians are likely to encounter children with school refusal, a common behavioral manifestation of separation anxiety. It is important to recognize and intervene early with school refusal as the longer a child is out of school, the more difficult it is to help the child return to school. Symptoms of school refusal often include physical symptoms and or behavioral outbursts as school time approaches. Parents often notice symptoms abate on the weekend, vacations, or if the child is no longer expected to attend school. Mild cases may be handled with the help of the pediatrician's office, but more severe cases may need the help of a mental health specialist.

School refusal can also be related to other anxiety disorders, learning disorders, mood disorders, psychotic disorders, oppositional defiant disorder, conduct disorder and environmental stressors such as bullying or poor student teacher fit. Identifying the etiology of school refusal helps providers appropriately target the level and type of intervention.

» Prognosis

Separation anxiety often abates by adolescence, but adolescents who experienced separation anxiety disorder in childhood are at increased risk to develop other disorders.

http://obgynebooks.com



▲**FIGURE 7–1.** Treatment algorithm for children and adolescents with anxiety. (Reproduced with permission from Hilt R: Primary Care Principles for Child Mental Health, summer 2015. version 6.1. Seattle Children's Hospital.

http://obgynebooks.com

2. Selective Mutism Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Consistent failure to speak in social settings (such as school) where this is expected, despite speaking in other settings

» General Considerations

Selective mutism is more frequent in younger children, symptoms may be present before 5, but usually do not lead to problems until the child enters school. Immigrant children or other children who initially learned one language and are expected to function in the school setting in a second language may present with selective mutism.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Children with selective mutism usually speak with close family members and may also speak with a "best" friend. They may be quite outgoing within this comfortable setting, but are often shy outside of this setting, and can be comfortable with social roles that do not require verbal communication. Children with selective mutism can become angry and aggressive when facing a demand to speak. Screening for selective mutism is useful as families may not be aware of the problem, or may not appreciate that it is interfering with function at school. To meet criteria for selective mutism, symptoms must interfere with function in school, work, or social communication, and must last longer than 1 month, not including the first month of school. Symptoms cannot be due to autism, a communication disorder or psychotic disorders.

» Treatment

This disorder can be perplexing for parents and teachers as the child's engagement in speaking can vary significantly across settings. Treatment therefore usually begins with psychoeducation. Children with selective mutism can be difficult to engage due to their shyness, so clinicians must be adept at using both verbal and nonverbal methods to form an alliance with the child. CBT with exposure aimed at increasing verbal interactions can be very successful. Patients with more severe symptoms, or symptoms that do not respond to therapy, may benefit from an SSRI.

» Other Considerations

The differential diagnosis includes other disorders that can interfere with speech, such as autism, communication disorders, and psychotic disorders. Children with selective mutism can have other comorbid anxiety disorders, such as social anxiety disorder, separation anxiety, and specific phobia.

Recognition and treatment of selective mutism is critical as the longer a child avoids verbal communication in settings outside of the family, the more entrenched this behavior becomes. Children with untreated selective mutism are at risk for depression, and social anxiety disorder and substance abuse as adolescents.

3. Specific Phobias

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Excessive fear or worry about a certain thing, experience, or situation.

» The thought about or exposure to this trigger causes excessive anxiety.

» General Considerations

Specific phobias are common, impacting 5% of children and 16% of adolescents. Simple phobias often lessen over time, but more severe, persistent forms can be debilitating.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Specific phobia is an intense fear of a particular thing, experience, or situation that lasts for at least 6 months. This object or situation is a cause of great distress nearly every time the individual anticipates or is exposed to the stimulus. The perceived harm or threat is well out of proportion to the actual stimulus. To handle the distress, the child avoids the object or situation, therefore reinforcing the anxiety. The distress caused by the stimulus can also present as a panic attack, fainting, or irritability. Young children may present with increased clinginess.

» Treatment

The mainstay of treatment for specific phobias is CBT aimed at reducing anxiety or fear of the phobic stimulus.

» Other Considerations

Children commonly experience more than one specific phobia and as the number of phobias increases, so does the degree of impairment. The differential diagnosis includes other anxiety disorders, trauma, and stress-related disorders, eating disorders, schizophrenia, and other psychotic disorders.

http://obgynebooks.com

Significant childhood separation events are associated with later onset of phobia. Addressing specific phobia is important as untreated specific phobia have one of the higher rates of stability over time among childhood anxiety disorders.

4. Panic Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Recurrent, unexpected panic attacks, described as an abrupt onset of intense fear, that crescendos over the course of minutes and is accompanied by physical symptoms

» General Considerations

Panic disorder is more likely to present after the onset of puberty with a prevalence rate of 2%–3% during adolescence. Unlike many other anxiety disorders, there is more likely to be a stressor preceding the onset of panic disorder. Children who experience separation anxiety disorder are at increased risk to develop panic disorder.

» Identification & Diagnosis

The physical symptoms of panic disorder are symptoms of a surge in the adrenergic system and include palpitations, sweating, shortness of breath, choking, chest pain or tightness, GI distress, dizziness or associated feelings, chills or heat, numbness, or tingling. Cognitive symptoms can include feelings of unreality, fear of going crazy, or of dying. To meet criteria for a panic attack, at least four of the above symptoms must be present, and individuals with panic disorder experience a fear of or related to future attacks that leads to maladaptive behavior. Youth with panic disorder are most likely to present to the pediatrician with fears related to physical symptoms of autonomic arousal, such as a fear that there is something wrong with their heart. Adolescents are less likely than adults to report panic attacks and thus specific questions questionnaires should be used when adolescents present with anxiety.

Although over time, individuals with panic disorder can come to expect panic attacks tied to certain cues, they must experience at least some unexpected panic attacks that seem to come out of the blue.

» Treatment

Cognitive behavioral therapy for youth with panic disorder focuses on the cognitions associated with the panic attack as well as the physiologic distressing symptoms. Exposure targets may include situations that trigger panic attacks, or some of the physiologic symptoms experienced during an attack. The frequency of treatment can vary depending on the acuity of the patient, with lower levels of care provided during weekly outpatient therapy and higher levels provided several times a week through intensive outpatient treatment programs or daily in day treatment programs. Patients who do not respond to therapy alone may benefit from an SSRI. Benzodiazepines have been used with adults but are discouraged for use with youth in the primary care setting.

» Other Considerations

The differential diagnosis of panic attacks includes a physical cause of panic symptoms. This must be ruled out when appropriate. Panic disorder can be debilitating as youth can go to extensive lengths to avoid cues. Youth who avoid going out in public by themselves, should be diagnosed with agoraphobia in addition to panic disorder. Although panic disorder increases the risk of developing a substance abuse disorder, withdrawal of some substances can also lead to panic symptoms. For adolescents who are actively using, this can difficult to distinguish. Panic attacks can present as part of other anxiety disorders, but the panic attacks in other disorders are cued by the underlying fear or anxiety, such as public performance in social anxiety disorder, or anticipation of an event in generalized anxiety disorder. Panic disorder is higher among individuals with other anxiety disorders, depression, and bipolar disorder.

» Prognosis

Panic symptoms and panic disorder are both important to recognize and treat. Untreated panic disorder has the highest rate of stability over time among childhood anxiety disorders. Individuals with panic symptoms that occur in the context of another disorder at increased risk to develop depression.

5. Agoraphobia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» An excessive fear of being in a situation where panic-like symptoms might occur, leading to avoidance of these situations.

» General Considerations

Agoraphobia can be debilitating. In children and adolescents, it is more likely to present as school refusal than fear of the other situations listed below. Children and adolescents may be reluctant to report symptoms, so a careful screening is

http://obgynebooks.com

warranted for anxious children, or children who are refusing to attend school. In community samples, agoraphobia is more likely to occur in later adolescence; 1.7% of adolescents suffer from agoraphobia, but this may be an underestimate because of the difficulty of assessing youth. Similar to panic disorder, initial symptoms often are triggered by a stressful event.

» Identification & Diagnosis

The most well-known fear associated with agoraphobia is fear of open spaces, including the market place. For individuals with agoraphobia, other situations can also trigger intense fear, such as using public transportation, standing in line or being in a crowd, being in an enclosed space, or outside the home alone. Individuals with agoraphobia experience two or more of these fears that last for over 6 months and lead to distress or impairment. Full panic disorder symptoms do not have to be present to meet criteria for agoraphobia.

» Treatment

Treatment of individuals with agoraphobia can be very challenging, as treatment typically requires leaving home. Online treatments are available with limited data on efficacy. The current standard remains CBT with exposure, and SSRI for individuals who do not respond to treatment or are severely impacted by agoraphobia.

» Other Considerations

The differential diagnosis includes other anxiety disorders, PTSD, depression, and medical conditions. For example, adolescents with postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome (POTS) may fear leaving the house, due to a fear of fainting, or individuals with inflammatory bowel disease may fear diarrhea.

» Prognosis

Individuals with agoraphobia are at risk for co-morbid disorders including other anxiety disorders and depression, and males have a high incidence of substance abuse.

6. Generalized Anxiety Disorder (GAD)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Multiple, intense, disproportionate, or irrational worries, often about future events.
- Worry is accompanied by other symptoms
- The worry is difficult to control.

» General Considerations

Individuals with generalized anxiety disorder often recall a lifetime of anxiety, but community samples find GAD rarely presents before adolescence; the prevalence of GAD in adolescence is 0.9%. Potential reasons for this discrepancy include that the symptoms of anxiety may not meet full criteria for GAD at an earlier age, or symptoms may be underestimated by parents or guardians. Individuals who develop GAD at an early age are more likely to have greater impairment.

GAD is highly heritable, overlapping with the risk for depression and neuroticism. In addition anxious overprotective parenting increases the risk of GAD, but is not necessary for the development of the disorder.

The differential diagnosis of symptoms of anxiety is presented in Table 7–9.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Young children with generalized anxiety often worry about their competence or performance while older youth may worry about additional issues such as family finances or being on time. Worry and anxiety that is not pathological must be distinguished from the worries or anxieties of

Table 7–9. Differential diagnosis of symptoms of anxiety.

I. Normal developmental anxiety
A. Stranger anxiety (5 mo–2½ y, with a peak at 6–12 mo)
B. Separation anxiety (7 mo–4 y, with a peak at 18–36 mo)
C. The child is fearful or even phobic of the dark and monsters (3–6 y)
II. "Appropriate" anxiety
A. Anticipating a painful or frightening experience
B. Avoidance of a reminder of a painful or frightening experience
C. Child abuse
III. Anxiety disorder (see Table 7–11), with or without other comorbid psychiatric disorders
IV. Substance abuse
V. Medications and recreational drugs
A. Caffeinism (including colas and chocolate)
B. Sympathomimetic agents
C. Idiosyncratic drug reactions
VI. Hypermetabolic or hyperarousal states
A. Hyperthyroidism
B. Pheochromocytoma
C. Anemia
D. Hypoglycemia
E. Hypoxemia
VII. Cardiac abnormality
A. Dysrhythmia
B. High-output state
C. Mitral valve prolapsed

http://obgynebooks.com

GAD. In addition, children with GAD experience at least one symptom of fatigue, restlessness or poor concentration, irritability, feeling on edge, or sleep disturbance. GAD can also be accompanied by other somatic symptoms and the pediatrician is more likely to encounter children with GAD who present with symptoms of GI difficulties or headaches. To meet criteria for GAD, the symptoms must cause significant distress or disturbance of function and be present for at least 6 months.

» Treatment

As with other anxiety disorders psychotherapy is the first-line treatment, with the possible addition of an SSRI if the response is insufficient.

» Other Considerations

It can be challenging to distinguish GAD from other anxiety disorders. Substance induced anxiety should be considered with adolescents who experience a sudden onset of anxiety. Individuals with GAD are at increased risk to experience depression.

» Prognosis

The combination of medication and therapy can be very effective for treating youth with GAD. Individuals with GAD are at increased risk for depression.

7. Social Anxiety Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Excessive worrying in social settings.
- Inability to perform in front of others as expected for age.
- Avoidance of events or settings that are social in nature or involve large groups.

» General Considerations

Social anxiety disorder is characterized by significant, persistent fear in social settings, or performance situations. The disorder results in overwhelming anxiety and inability to function when exposed to unfamiliar people and/or scrutiny. This is usually a problem of older children and adolescents.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Anxiety symptoms in children with social anxiety disorder are related specifically to the social setting and not better explained by another anxiety disorder. Common manifestations of this disorder include consistent avoidance of social functions, and persistent somatic complaints that occur in a social setting and resolve in the absence of social exposure. The symptoms significantly disrupt the child's—and frequently the family's—life, and parents often describe a pattern of overly accommodating their child's avoidance and/or incentivizing their child to attend routine social, extracurricular, or family functions.

» Treatment

Similar to the other anxiety categories, the mainstay of treatment for social anxiety disorder is CBT therapy. The goal is to modify behavior and diminish the anxiety in social settings through the use of specific cognitive and behavioral techniques. As with other anxiety disorders, if ongoing CBT therapy is not effective at mitigating the anxiety, then psychopharmacologic agents may be helpful. SSRIs are the only class of medication to have demonstrated efficacy for children with social anxiety disorder.

» Other Considerations

Children with social anxiety disorder are at increased risk for depression and school avoidance. They can also experience panic attacks, and there is high comorbidity between substance use disorders and anxiety disorders, especially social anxiety disorder.

» Prognosis

Early age of onset, more severe avoidance and the presences of panic symptoms are all predictors of persistence over time. Treatment with CBT or a combination of CBT and medication can be very effective for the majority of youth with social anxiety disorder.

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, VA, American Psychiatric Association; 2013.

Beesdo-Baum K, Knappe S: Developmental epidemiology of anxiety disorder. Child Adolesc Psychiatric Clin N Am 2012:21; 457–478 [PMID: 22800989].

Ghandhi B, Cheek S, Campo JV: Anxiety in the pediatric medical setting. Child Adolesc Psychiatric Clin N Am 2012:21;643–653 [PMID: 22800999].

Ginsberg GS et al: Remission after acute treatment in children and adolescents with anxiety disorders: findings from the CAMS. J Consult Clin Psychol 2011;(79):806–813 [PMID: 22122292].

Manassis K: Silent suffering: understanding and treating children with selective mutism. Expert Rev Neurother 2009 Feb;9(2):235–243 [PMID: 19210197].

Mohatt J, Bennett SM, Walkup JT: Treatment of separation, generalized and social anxiety disorders in youths. Am J Psychiatry 2014;171:741–748 [PMID: 24874020].

http://obgynebooks.com

Sakolsky D, Birmaher B: Pediatric anxiety disorders: management in primary care. Curr Opin Pediatr 2008;20(5):538–543 [PMID: 18781116].

Strawn JR, Sakolsky DJ, Rynn MA: Psychopharmacologic treatment of children and adolescents with anxiety disorders. Child Adolesc Psychiatric Clin N Am 2012;21:527–539 [PMID: 22800992].

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Recurrent obsessive thoughts, impulses, or images that are experienced as intrusive at times.
- Repetitive compulsive behaviors or mental acts are performed to prevent or reduce distress stemming from obsessive thoughts.
- Obsessions and compulsions cause marked distress, are time-consuming, and interfere with normal routines.

General Considerations

Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) is related to anxiety disorders, but tends to cluster genetically with other compulsive disorders such as compulsive skin picking, and hoarding. Onset often occurs during childhood, and untreated OCD can have a lifelong course. Males have an earlier age of onset, with childhood cases usually occurring before the age of 10 years. OCD often leads to avoidance of situations that trigger obsessions, and for children and adolescents, this can interfere with development.

Identification & Diagnosis

The obsessions that lead to OCD are defined as recurrent, persistent, intrusive thoughts, urges, or images that cause significant distress. The individual tries to avoid, suppress, or ignore the obsessions or to mitigate them through action or thought. The obsessions and compulsions of OCD consume more than an hour per day. Obsessions vary by individuals, but tend to cluster into the following groups: intrusive "forbidden" images such as sexual, aggressive or religiously taboo images, thoughts of contamination, need for symmetry, fears of harming others, fears of harm to oneself or loved ones. Individuals often experience more than one cluster and types of obsessions can change over time. In addition to compulsive symptoms, youth who are experiencing obsessions may also experience panic, depressive, irritable, and suicidal symptoms. Sudden onset of symptoms should alert pediatricians to screen for Group A streptococcal infections, as pediatric autoimmune disorders associated with these infections have been implicated in the development of OCD for some children.

Caretakers can often identify children who have compulsions, but obsessions can be difficult to recognize because they are experienced internally. Youth who recognize that obsessions and compulsions are strange may not spontaneously reveal symptoms unless specifically asked.

Treatment

Many individuals with OCD feel that their symptoms are "crazy" or alternatively, they do not want to consider giving up their compulsions as they feel these will lead to intense distress. Psychoeducation is an important first step in treatment of OCD to help put symptoms in perspective and outline treatment progression. OCD is best treated with a combination of CBT specific to OCD, with use of medications in more severe cases. SSRIs are effective in diminishing OCD symptoms, but higher doses may be needed than those used to treat anxiety disorders or depression. Fluvoxamine and sertraline have FDA approval for the treatment of pediatric OCD. The tricyclic antidepressant clomipramine has FDA approval for the treatment of OCD in adults. Severe cases have been treated with gamma knife brain surgery interrupting the circuit involved in OCD.

Other Considerations

OCD often occurs with other compulsive disorders such as trichotillomania (the recurrent pulling out of hair), compulsive skin picking, body dysmorphic disorder, or hoarding. Youth with OCD are at increased risk to have comorbid ADHD, depression, and tics. The differential diagnosis includes all of the above as well as psychotic disorders and obsessive compulsive personality disorder.

Prognosis

The combination of CBT plus medication is most effective for patients who do not respond to either treatment alone. It is important to recognize and treat OCD early, as early age of onset and greater impairment are predictors of poor prognosis. Hoarding is particularly difficulty to treat.

Franklin ME et al: Cognitive behavior therapy augmentation of pharmacotherapy in pediatric obsessive-compulsive disorder: the pediatric OCD Treatment Study II (POTS II) randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2011;306(11):1224–1232 [PMID: 21934055].

Gilbert AR, Maalouf FT: Pediatric obsessive-compulsive disorder: management priorities in primary care. Curr Opin Pediatr 2008 Oct;20(5):544–550 [PMID: 18781117].

Reinblatt SP, Walkup JT: Psychopharmacologic treatment of pediatric anxiety disorders. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2005 Oct;14(4):877–908 [PMID: 16171707].

http://obgynebooks.com

Seidel L, Walkup JT: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor use in the treatment of the pediatric non-obsessive-compulsive disorder anxiety disorders. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 2006 Feb-Apr;16(1–2):171–179 [PMID: 16553537].

Stafford B, Troha C, Gueldner BA: Intermittent abdominal pain in a 6-year-old child: the psycho-social-cultural evaluation. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009 Oct;21(5):675–677 [PMID: 19521239].

Storch EA et al: Family-based cognitive-behavioral therapy for pediatric obsessive-compulsive disorder: comparison of intensive and weekly approaches. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2007 Apr;46(4):469–478 [PMID: 17420681].

Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Signs and symptoms of hyperarousal and reactivity.
- Avoidant behaviors and numbing of responsiveness.
- Flashbacks to a traumatic event such as nightmares, intrusive thoughts, or repetitive play.
- Follows traumatic events such as exposure to violence, physical or sexual abuse, natural disasters, car accidents, dog bites, and unexpected personal tragedies.

General Considerations

Factors that predispose individuals to the development of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) include proximity to the traumatic event or loss, a history of exposure to trauma, preexisting depression or anxiety disorder, being abused by a caregiver, or witnessing a threat to a caregiver. PTSD can develop in response to natural disasters, terrorism, motor vehicle crashes, and significant personal injury, in addition to physical, sexual, and emotional abuse. Natural disasters such as hurricanes, fires, flooding, and earthquakes, create situations in which large numbers of affected individuals are at heightened risk for PTSD. Individuals who have a previous history of trauma, or an unstable social situation are at greatest risk of PTSD.

Long overdue, attention is now being paid to the substantial effects of family and community violence on the psychological development of children and adolescents. Abused children are especially likely to develop PTSD and to suffer wide-ranging symptoms and impaired functioning. As many as 25% of young people exposed to violence develop symptoms of PTSD and children with some symptoms of PTSD can suffer significant distress and functional impairment, even when not meeting full criteria for PTSD.

Identification & Diagnosis

Children and adolescents with PTSD show persistent fear, anxiety, and hypervigilance. They may regress developmentally and experience fears of strangers, the dark, and being alone, and avoid reminders of the traumatic event. For young children with magical thinking, this can involve avoiding objects or events that may not be obviously linked to the traumatic event. Children with PTSD re-experience elements of the events in the form of nightmares and flashbacks. In their symbolic play, one can often notice repetition of some aspect of the traumatic event. Children with a history of traumatic experiences or neglect in infancy and early childhood are likely to show signs of reactive attachment disorder and have difficulty forming relationships with caregivers.

Treatment

Before considering treatment, it is critical to ensure that the child is living in a safe environment. If there is concern regarding current or past abuse, this must be reported to social services. The cornerstone of treatment for PTSD is education of the child and family regarding the nature of the disorder so that the child's emotional reactions and regressive behavior are not mistakenly viewed as volitional. The child needs support, reassurance, and empathy. Treatment also includes building a developmentally appropriate narrative of the event to help the child understand their experience. Efforts should be made to establish or maintain daily routines as much as possible, especially after a trauma or disaster that interrupts the family's environment. In the case of media coverage of a disaster or event, children's viewing should be avoided or limited. Individual and family psychotherapy are central features of treatment interventions. Specific fears usually wane with time, and behavioral desensitization may help. Trauma-focused CBT is considered first-line treatment for PTSD. There is preliminary evidence that eye movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR) may also be useful.

For children with more severe and persistent symptoms, assessment for treatment with medication is indicated. Children who have lived for an extended time in abusive environments or who have been exposed to multiple traumas are more likely to require treatment with medications. Currently, there is not a medication that has FDA approval for treating PTSD for children. Child psychiatrists may choose medications to target specific symptoms (eg, anxiety, depression, nightmares, and aggression). Some of the medications used to treat children with PTSD include clonidine or guanfacine (Tenex), mood stabilizers, antidepressants, and neuroleptics.

Other Considerations

Evidence is growing to support a connection between victimization in childhood and problems in adulthood,

http://obgynebooks.com

including health problems, substance abuse, unstable personality and mood disorders. It is important to treat PTSD not only to relieve the suffering of youth with PTSD, but also to mitigate long-term negative sequelae.

» Prognosis

The best prognostic indicator for children exposed to trauma is a supportive relationship with a caregiving adult. Frequently caregivers exposed to trauma also have PTSD and need referral for treatment so that they can also assist in their child's recovery. Timely access to therapy enhances prognosis. Children with more severe PTSD may require intermittent therapy to identify and treat symptoms that emerge during different stages of development.

Banh MK et al: Physician-reported practice of managing childhood posttraumatic stress in pediatric primary care. Gen Hosp Psychiatry 2008 Nov-Dec;30(6):536–545 [PMID: 19061680].

Cohen JA, Kelleher KJ, Mannarino AP: Identifying, treating, and referring traumatized children: the role of pediatric providers. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2008 May;162(5):447–452 [PMID: 18458191].

Cohen JA, Scheeringa MS: Post-traumatic stress disorder diagnosis in children: challenges and promises. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 2009;11(1):91–99 [PMID: 19432391].

Dulcan MK, Martini DR: Concise Guide to Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 2nd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association; 1999.

Kirsch V, Wilhelm FH, Goldbeck L: Psychophysiological characteristics of PTSD in children and adolescents: a review of the literature. J Trauma Stress 2011 Apr;24(2):146–154. doi: 10.1002/jts.20620 [Epub 2011 Mar 24] [Review] Erratum in: J Trauma Stress. 2011 Jun;24(3):370–372 [PMID: 21438015].

National Child Traumatic Stress Network. Multiple invaluable resources available at: http://www.nctsn.org. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Scheeringa MS, Zeanah CH: Reconsideration of harm's way: onsets and comorbidity patterns of disorders in preschool children and their caregivers following Hurricane Katrina. J Clin Child Adolesc Psychol 2008 Jul;37(3):508–518 [PMID: 18645742].

ATTENTION-DEFICIT/HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER

Inattentive, Hyperactive, & Combined Type

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Significant impairment in attention or concentration.
- Significant hyperactivity and energy in excess of that expected for age.
- Must be present in two or more settings.

» General Considerations

Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is one of the most commonly seen and treated psychiatric conditions in children and adolescents. Although there is no definitive cause or cure for this disorder, with adequate screening and monitoring, it can be identified and effectively treated.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Symptoms of ADHD fall into two categories: hyperactive and impulsive or inattentive. If a child has a significant number of symptoms in both categories, a diagnosis of ADHD, combined type is given. As with all psychiatric diagnoses, functional impairment is a required feature, as is presentation across multiple settings and relationships (eg, home and school). It is important to keep in mind that intermittent symptoms of hyperactivity and/or inattention without functional impairment do not warrant a diagnosis of ADHD.

» Treatment

Medication is a primary treatment for ADHD. Stimulants are the most effective and most commonly prescribed medications. Approximately 75% of children with ADHD experience improved attention span, decreased hyperactivity, and decreased impulsivity when given stimulant medications. Children with ADHD who do not respond favorably to one stimulant may respond to another. Children and adolescents with ADHD without prominent hyperactivity (ADHD, predominantly inattentive type) are also likely to be responsive to stimulant medications. When stimulants are not well tolerated or effective, nonstimulants may be used as an alternative. Among nonstimulant medications, atomoxetine, a selective noradrenergic reuptake inhibitor and guanfacine ER, a central α_{2A}-adrenergic receptor agonist, both have FDA approval for the treatment of ADHD in children. Please refer to tables of stimulants and nonstimulants when considering which medication to use (Tables 7–10 and 7–11).

» Other Considerations

As discussed later in this chapter, not all hyperactivity and/or inattention can be attributed to ADHD. Some of the most common psychiatric conditions that have similar presenting problems to ADHD include mood disorder (ie, bipolar and depression), anxiety disorders, oppositional defiant disorder, adjustment disorder, PTSD, and learning disorders. There are also a number of medical diagnoses with presenting problems similar to ADHD, including head injury, hyperthyroidism, fetal alcohol syndrome, and lead toxicity. Inadequate nutrition and sleep deprivation, including poor quality of sleep, can also cause inattention. It is important to have the correct diagnosis prior to initiating treatment for ADHD.

ADHD comorbidities are common and include anxiety disorders, mood disorders, oppositional defiant disorder,

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–10. Stimulant medication used for treatment of ADHD.[a]

Short-Acting Stimulants					
Drug Name	Duration	Dosages	Stimulant Class	Usual Starting Dose	Max Daily Dose
Methylphenidate (Ritalin, Methylin)	4–6 h	5, 10, 20 mg	Methyl[b]	5 mg BID ½ dose if 3–5 y	60 mg
Dexmethylphenidate (Focalin)	4–6 h	2.5, 5, 10 mg	Methyl	2.5 mg BID	20 mg
Dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine, Dextro-Stat, Dexedrine SA)	4–6 h	5, 10 mg tabs	Dextro[c]	5 mg QD-BID ½ dose if 3–5 y	40 mg
Amphetamine salt combo (Adderall)	4–6 h	5, 7.5, 10, 12.5, 15, 20, 30 mg	Dextro	5 mg QD-BID ½ dose if 3–5 y	40 mg

Extended-Release Stimulants						
Drug Name	Duration	Dosages	Stimulant Class	Usual Starting Dose	Max Daily Dose	Comments
Methylin ER Methylphenidate SR Metadate ER	4–8 h	10, 20 mg tab	Methyl	10 mg QAM	60 mg	Generic available. Uses wax matrix. Variable duration of action
Concerta	10–12 h	18, 27, 36, 54 mg	Methyl	18 mg QAM	72 mg	Generic available. Osmotic pump capsule
Adderall XR	8–12 h	5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 mg	Dextro	5 mg QD	30 mg	Generic available. Beads in capsule can be sprinkled
Metadate CD (30% IR)	~8 h	10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60 mg capsules	Methyl	10 mg QAM	60 mg	Generic available. Beads in capsule can be sprinkled
Ritalin LA (50% IR)	~8 h	10, 20, 30, 40 mg capsules	Methyl	10 mg QAM	60 mg	Generic available. Beads in capsule can be sprinkled
Focalin XR	10–12 h	5 to 40 mg in 5 mg steps	Methyl	5 mg QAM	30 mg	Beads in capsule can be sprinkled
Daytrana patch	Until 3–5 h after patch removal	10, 15, 20, 30 mg Max 30 mg/9 h	Methyl	10 mg QAM	30 mg	Rash can be a problem, slow AM startup, has an allergy risk, peeling off patch a problem with young kids
Lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse)	~10 h	20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70 mg	Dextro	30 mg QD	70 mg	Conversion ratio from dextroamphetamine is not established
Dexedrine Spansule Dextroamphetamine ER	8–10 h	5, 10, 15 mg	Dextro	5 mg QAM	40 mg	Beads in capsule can be sprinkled

[a]ADHD, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.
[b]Methyphenidate.
[c]Mixed amphetamine salts.
Reproduced with permission from Hilt R: Primary Care Principles for Child Mental Health, summer 2015. version 6.1. Seattle Children's Hospital.

and conduct disorder. While stimulant medication, the first-line treatment for ADHD, has the potential for abuse, individuals who are treated for ADHD are significantly less likely to abuse substances compared to those who have not been treated. Also, a large majority of children and adolescents with ADHD are not formally diagnosed, and of those who are diagnosed, only 55% actually receive ongoing treatment.

» Special Considerations Regarding the Use of Stimulant Medication

Common adverse events include anorexia, weight loss, abdominal distress, headache, insomnia, dysphoria and tearfulness, irritability, lethargy, mild tachycardia, and mild elevation in blood pressure. Less common side effects include interdose

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–11. Nonstimulant medication used for treatment of ADHD.

Drug Name	Duration	Dosages	Usual Starting Dose	Max Daily Dose	Comments
Atomoxetine (Strattera)	All day	10, 18, 25, 40, 60, 80, 100 mg	0.5 mg/kg/d (1–1.2 mg/kg/d usual full dosage)	Lesser of 1.4 mg/kg/d or 100 mg (DSHS limit is 120 mg/d)	Usually lower effectiveness than stimulants; has GI side effects, takes weeks for full benefit
Clonidine (Catapres)	12 h half life	0.1, 0.2, 0.3 mg	0.05 mg QHS if < 45kg, otherwise 0.1 mg QHS Caution if < 5 y.	(Not per FDA) 27–40 kg 0.2 mg 40–45 kg 0.3 mg > 45 kg 0.4 mg	Often given to help sleep, also treats tics, can have rebound BP effects
Clonidine XR (Kapvay)	12–16 h	0.1, 0.2 mg	0.1 mg QHS	0.4 mg daily	Lower peak blood level, then acts like regular clonidine (similar half life). Still is sedating. Approved for combo with stimulants
Guanfacine (Tenex)	14 h half life	1, 2 mg	0.5 mg QHS if < 45 kg, otherwise 1 mg QHS Caution if <5 y.	(Not per FDA) 27–40 kg 2 mg 40–45 kg 3 mg >45 kg 4 mg	Often given to help sleep, also treats tics, can have rebound BP effects
Guanfacine XR (Intuniv)	16 h half life	1, 2, 3, 4 mg	1 mg QD if over 6 y old (full dosage 0.05–0.12 mg/kg)	4 mg daily	Lower peak blood level, then acts like regular Tenex (similar half life). Still is sedating. Approved for combo with stimulants

Reference: AACAP ADHD Practice Parameter (2007), Micromedex 2013.

Notes:
Effect size of all stimulants ~1.0
Effect size of atomoxetine ~0.7
Effect size of guanfacine ~0.65

Reproduced with permission from Hilt R: Primary Care Principles for Child Mental Health, summer 2015. version 6.1. Seattle Children's Hospital.

rebound of ADHD symptoms, emergence of motor tics or Tourette syndrome, behavioral stereotypy, tachycardia, hypertension, depression, mania, and psychotic symptoms. Reduced growth velocity can occur, however, for individual patient's ultimate height is not usually compromised. Treatment with stimulant medications does not predispose to future substance abuse. Young children are at increased risk for side effects from stimulant medications. Additive stimulant effects are seen with sympathomimetic amines (ephedrine and pseudoephedrine).

Reports of sudden death and serious cardiovascular adverse events among children taking stimulant medication raised concerns about their safety. The labels for methylphenidate and amphetamine medications were changed in 2006 to note reports of stimulant-related deaths in patients with heart problems and advised against using these products in individuals with known serious structural abnormalities of the heart, cardiomyopathy, or serious heart rhythm abnormalities. There continues to be insufficient data to confirm whether taking stimulant medication causes cardiac problems or sudden death. The FDA is advising providers to conduct a thorough physical examination, paying close attention to the cardiovascular system, and to collect information about the patient's history and any family history of cardiac problems. If this scrutiny suggests a problem, providers should consider a screening electrocardiogram or an echocardiogram. In addition, stimulants should also be used cautiously in individuals with a personal or family history of motor tics or Tourette syndrome, as these medications may cause or worsen motor tics. Caution should also be taken if there is a personal or family history of substance abuse or addictive disorders, as these medications can be abused. Students attending college/university may be at increased risk to divert their stimulants to peers. Stimulants should be used with caution in individuals with psychotic disorders, as they can significantly worsen psychotic symptoms. Likewise stimulants should be used with caution in individuals with bipolar affective disorder as they can worsen mood dysregulation.

FDA statement available at: http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/PostmarketDrugSafetyInformationforPatientsandProviders/DrugSafetyInformationforHeathcareProfessionals/ucm165858.htm. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Initial medical screening should include observation for involuntary movements and measurement of height, weight, pulse,

http://obgynebooks.com

and blood pressure. (See also Chapter 3.) Pulse, blood pressure, height, and weight should be recorded every 3–4 months and at times of dosage increases and abnormal movements such as motor tics should be assessed at each visit.

» Prognosis

Research indicates that 60%–85% of those diagnosed with ADHD in childhood continue to carry the diagnosis into adolescence. The literature varies greatly about progression of ADHD into adulthood. Most studies show that in adulthood, a majority of adolescents diagnosed with ADHD in adolescence continue to have functional impairment, whether or not they meet full criteria for the disorder. While many have devised ways to cope with their symptoms in a manner that does not require medication, about one-third of adults previously diagnosed with ADHD in childhood require ongoing medication management.

AACAP Practice Parameter for ADHD: http://www.aacap.org/AACAP/Resources_for_Primary_Care/Practice_Parameters_and_Resource_Centers/Practice_Parameters.aspx. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Biederman J et al: Treatment of ADHD with stimulant medications: response to Nissen perspective in the New England Journal of Medicine. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2006 Oct;45(10):1147–1150 [PMID: 16840880].

Correll CU, Kratochvil CJ, March JS: Developments in pediatric psychopharmacology: focus on stimulants, antidepressants, and antipsychotics. J Clin Psychiatry 2011 May;72(5):655–670 [PMID: 21658348].

Daughton JM, Kratochvil CJ: Review of ADHD pharmacotherapies: advantages, disadvantages, and clinical pearls. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2009 Mar;48(3):240–248 [PMID: 19242289].

McVoy M, Findling R: Child and adolescent psychopharmacology update. Psychiatr Clin North Am 2009 Mar;32(1):111–133 [PMID: 19248920].

National Institute of Mental Health, Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder: http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/attention-deficit-hyperactivity-disorder/index.shtml. Accessed September 27, 2015.

MOOD DISORDERS

1. Depression

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dysphoric mood, mood lability, irritability, or depressed appearance, persisting for weeks to months at a time.
- Characteristic neurovegetative signs and symptoms (eg, changes in sleep, appetite, concentration, and activity levels).
- Suicidal ideation, feeling of hopelessness.

» General Considerations

The incidence of depression in children increases with age, from 1% to 3% before puberty to around 8% for adolescents. The rate of depression in females approaches adult levels by age 15. The lifetime risk of depression ranges from 10% to 25% for women and 5% to 12% for men. The incidence of depression in children is higher when other family members have been affected by depressive disorders. The sex incidence is equal in childhood, but with the onset of puberty the rates of depression for females begin to exceed those for males by 5:1.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Clinical depression can be defined as a persistent state of unhappiness or misery that interferes with pleasure or productivity. Depression in children and adolescents is as likely to be characterized by an irritable mood state accompanied by tantrums or verbal outbursts as it is to be a sad mood. Typically, a child or adolescent with depression begins to look unhappy and may make comments such as "I have no friends," "life is boring," "there is nothing I can do to make things better," or "I wish I were dead." Behavior patterns change from baseline and can include social isolation, deterioration in schoolwork, loss of interest in usual activities, anger, and irritability. Sleep and appetite patterns commonly change, and the child may complain of tiredness and nonspecific pain such as headaches or stomach aches (Table 7–12).

Clinical depression is typically identified by asking about the symptoms. Children are often more accurate than their caregivers in describing their own mood state. When

Table 7–12. Clinical manifestations of depression in children and adolescents.

Depressive Symptom	Clinical Manifestations
Anhedonia	Loss of interest and enthusiasm in play, socializing, school, and usual activities; boredom; loss of pleasure
Dysphoric mood	Tearfulness; sad, downturned expression; unhappiness; slumped posture; quick temper; irritability; anger
Fatigability	Lethargy and tiredness; no play after school
Morbid ideation	Self-deprecating thoughts, statements; thoughts of disaster, abandonment, death, suicide, or hopelessness
Somatic symptoms	Changes in sleep or appetite patterns; difficulty in concentrating; bodily complaints, particularly headache and stomachache

http://obgynebooks.com

several depressive symptoms cluster together over time, are persistent (2 weeks or more), and cause impairment, a major depressive disorder may be present. When depressive symptoms are of lesser severity but have persisted for 1 year or more, a diagnosis of dysthymic disorder should be considered. Milder symptoms of short duration in response to some stressful life event may be consistent with a diagnosis of adjustment disorder with depressed mood.

The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends annual screening for depression in children age 12 and older using a standardized measure. The Center for Epidemiologic Study of Depression–Child Version (CESD-C), Child Depression Inventory (CDI), Beck Depression Rating Scale, and Reynolds Adolescent Depression Scale and Patient Health Questionnaire-9 modified for teens (PHQ-9) are self-report rating scales that are easily used in primary care to assist in assessment and monitoring response to treatment. Several are available in the public domain.

» Treatment

Treatment includes developing a comprehensive plan to treat the depressive episode and help the family to respond more effectively to the patient's emotional needs. Referrals should be considered for individual and possibly adjunctive family therapy. CBT improves depressive symptoms in children and adolescents. This includes a focus on building coping skills to change negative thought patterns that predominate in depressive conditions. It also helps identify, label, and verbalize feelings and misperceptions. In therapy, efforts are also made to resolve conflicts between family members and improve communication skills within the family.

Mild to moderate depressive symptoms often improve with psychotherapy alone. When the symptoms of depression are moderate and persistent, or severe, antidepressant medications may be indicated (see Table 7–8). A positive family history of depression increases the risk of early-onset depression in children and adolescents and the chances of a positive response to antidepressant medication. Depression in toddlers and young children is best approached with parent-child relational therapies.

The carefully conducted Treatment of Adolescent Depression Study (TADS) is a major source of evidence for clinic guidelines regarding the treatment of depression in children and adolescents. This study found that CBT combined with fluoxetine led to the best outcomes in the treatment of pediatric depression during the first 12 weeks of treatment. Although our knowledge is still evolving, these findings suggest that when recommending or prescribing an antidepressant, the provider should consider concurrently recommending cognitive-behavioral or interpersonal therapy. Providers should discuss the options for medication treatment, including which medications have FDA approval for pediatric indications (see Table 7–6). Target symptoms should be carefully monitored for improvement or worsening, and it is important to ask and document the responses about any suicidal thinking and self-injurious behaviors.

» Special Considerations Regarding the Use of Antidepressant Medication

There are some special considerations when prescribing the various classes of antidepressant medication. Table 7–8 outlines the distinct differences between some of the most commonly used antidepressant medications.

A. Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors (SSRI)

Each SSRI has different FDA indications. Providers can choose to treat with an SSRI that has not received FDA approval for a specific indication or age group. Typical considerations for using a medication without FDA approval include the side-effect profile and/or whether another family member has responded to a specific medication. In these instances, providers should inform the patient and family that they are using a medication off-label.

The therapeutic response for SSRIs should be expected 4–6 weeks after a therapeutic dose has been reached. The starting dose for a child younger than 12 years is generally half the starting dose for an adolescent. SSRIs are usually given once a day, in the morning with breakfast. One in ten individuals may experience sedation and prefer to take the medication at bedtime. Caution should be used in cases of known liver disease or chronic or severe illness where multiple medications may be prescribed, because all SSRIs are metabolized in the liver. In addition, caution should be used when prescribing for an individual with a family history of bipolar disorder, or when the differential diagnosis includes bipolar disorder, because antidepressants can induce manic or hypomanic symptoms.

Adverse effects of SSRIs are often dose-related and time-limited: GI distress and nausea (can be minimized by taking medication with food), headache, tremulousness, decreased appetite, weight loss, insomnia, sedation (10%), and sexual dysfunction (25%). Irritability, social disinhibition, restlessness, and emotional excitability can occur in approximately 20% of children taking SSRIs. It is important to systematically monitor for side effects. SSRIs other than fluoxetine should be discontinued slowly to minimize withdrawal symptoms including flu-like symptoms, dizziness, headaches, paresthesias, and emotional lability.

All SSRIs inhibit the hepatic microsomal enzyme system. The order of inhibition is: fluoxetine > fluvoxamine > paroxetine > sertraline > citalopram > escitalopram. This can lead to higher-than-expected blood levels of concomitant medications. Taking tryptophan while on an SSRI may result in a serotonergic syndrome of psychomotor agitation and GI distress. A potentially fatal interaction that clinically resembles neuroleptic malignant syndrome may occur when

http://obgynebooks.com

SSRIs are administered concomitantly with monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Fluoxetine has the longest half-life of the SSRIs and should not be initiated within 14 days of the discontinuation of a monoamine oxidase inhibitor, or a monoamine oxidase inhibitor initiated within at least 5 weeks of the discontinuation of fluoxetine. One should be cautious of prescribing SSRIs in conjunction with ibuprofen and other NSAIDs for concerns of GI bleeding.

B. Serotonin Norepinephrine Reuptake Inhibitors

Serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), which include venlafaxine, duloxetine, desvenlafaxine, and milnacipran, are antidepressants that primarily inhibit reuptake of serotonin and norepinephrine. Desvenlafaxine is the major active metabolite of the antidepressant venlafaxine. It is approved for the treatment of major depression in adults. Contraindications for this class of medication include hypertension, which is typically dose related. The most common adverse effects are nausea, nervousness, and sweating. SNRIs should be discontinued slowly to minimize withdrawal symptoms: including flu-like symptoms, dizziness, headaches, paresthesias, and emotional lability.

C. Other Antidepressants

Bupropion is an antidepressant that inhibits reuptake of primarily serotonin, but also norepinephrine and dopamine. It is approved for treatment of major depression in adults. Like the SSRIs, bupropion has very few anticholinergic or cardiotoxic effects. The medication has three different formulations, and consideration for use is based on tolerability and compliance. Bupropion can interfere with sleep, so dosing earlier in the day is paramount to adherence and decreasing side effects. Contraindications of this medication include history of seizure disorder or bulimia nervosa. The most common adverse effects include psychomotor activation (agitation or restlessness), headache, GI distress, nausea, anorexia with weight loss, insomnia, tremulousness, precipitation of mania, and induction of seizures with doses above 450 mg/d.

Mirtazapine is an α_2-antagonist that enhances central noradrenergic and serotonergic activity. It is approved for the treatment of major depression in adults. Mirtazapine should not be given in combination with monoamine oxidase inhibitors. Very rare side effects are acute liver failure (1 case per 250,000–300,000), neutropenia, and agranulocytosis. More common adverse effects include dry mouth, increased appetite, constipation, weight gain, and increased sedation.

Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) are an older class of antidepressants, which include imipramine, desipramine, clomipramine, nortriptyline, and amitriptyline. With the introduction of the SSRIs and alternative antidepressants, use of the TCAs has become uncommon for the treatment of depression and anxiety disorders. The TCAs have more significant side-effect profiles and require substantial medical monitoring, including the possibility of cardiac arrhythmias. Overdose can be lethal. TCAs are still used to treat medical and psychiatric issues, such as chronic pain syndromes, headache, or enuresis as well as depression, anxiety, bulimia nervosa, OCD, and PTSD. Imipramine and desipramine are FDA approved for the treatment of major depression in adults and for enuresis in children age 6 years and older. Contraindications include cardiac disease or arrhythmia, unexplained syncope, seizure disorder, family history of sudden cardiac death or cardiomyopathy, and known electrolyte abnormality (with bingeing and purging). Initial medical screening includes taking a thorough family history for sudden cardiac death and the patient's history for cardiac disease, arrhythmias, syncope, seizure disorder, or congenital hearing loss (associated with prolonged QT interval). Other screening procedures include serum electrolytes and blood urea nitrogen in patients who have eating disorders, cardiac examination, and a baseline ECG. Ongoing medical follow-up includes monitoring pulse and blood pressure (ie, screening for tachycardia and orthostatic hypotension) with each dosage increase, and obtaining an ECG to monitor for atrioventricular block with each dosage increase. After reaching steady state, record pulse, blood pressure, and ECG every 3–4 months. TCAs may potentiate the effects of central nervous system depressants and stimulants. Barbiturates and cigarette smoking may decrease plasma levels while phenothiazines, methylphenidate, and oral contraceptives may increase plasma levels. SSRIs given in combination with TCAs will result in higher TCA blood levels. Please refer to Table 7–13 on upper limits of cardiovascular parameters with tricyclic antidepressants.

» Other Considerations

The risk of suicide is the most significant risk associated with depressive episodes. In addition, adolescents are likely to self-medicate their feelings through substance abuse, or indulge in self-injurious behaviors such as cutting or burning themselves (without suicidal intent). School performance usually suffers during a depressive episode, as children are unable to concentrate or motivate themselves to

Table 7–13. Upper limits of cardiovascular parameters with tricyclic antidepressants.

Heart rate	110/min
Systolic blood pressure	130 mm Hg
Diastolic blood pressure	85 mm Hg
PR interval	0.2 s
QRS interval	0.12 s, or no > 30% over baseline
QT corrected	0.45 s

http://obgynebooks.com

complete homework or projects. The irritability, isolation, and withdrawal that often result from the depressive episode can lead to loss of peer relationships and tense dynamics within the family. Please refer to section on identifying and addressing suicide risk for additional information.

Depression often coexists with other mental illnesses such as ADHD, oppositional defiant disorder, conduct disorder, anxiety disorders, eating disorders, and substance abuse disorders. Medically ill patients also have an increased incidence of depression. Every child and adolescent with a depressed mood state should be asked directly about suicidal ideation and physical and sexual abuse. Depressed adolescents should also be screened for hypothyroidism and substance abuse.

In 2005, the FDA issued a "black box warning" regarding suicidal thinking and behavior for all antidepressants prescribed for children and adolescents. The FDA compiled data from 24 short-term trials of 4–16 weeks that included the use of antidepressants for major depressive disorder and obsessive compulsive disorder. Across these studies, the average risk of suicidal thinking and behavior during the first few months of treatment was 4% or twice the placebo risk of 2%. No suicides occurred in these trials. Although children face an initial increased risk of suicidal thinking and behaviors during the first few months of treatment, there is now substantial evidence that antidepressant treatment, over time, is protective against suicide. For example, following the addition of the "black box warning" for all antidepressants in October 2005, a 20% decrease in prescriptions for those younger than age 20 occurred. During the same time period, there was an 18% increase in suicides. Furthermore, the suicide rates in children and adolescents were lowest in areas of the country that had the highest rate of SSRI prescriptions. This suggests best practice is to educate the family regarding both the risks and benefits of antidepressant treatment and monitor carefully for any increase in suicidal ideation or self-injurious urges, as well as improvement in target symptoms of depression, especially in the first 4 weeks and subsequent 3 months after beginning their use.

» Prognosis

A comprehensive treatment intervention, including psychoeducation for the family, individual and family psychotherapy, medication assessment, and evaluation of school and home environments, often leads to complete remission of depressive symptoms over a 1- to 2-month period. If medications are started and prove effective, they should be continued for 6–12 months after remission of symptoms to prevent relapse. Early-onset depression (before age 15) is associated with increased risk of recurrent episodes and the potential need for longer-term treatment with antidepressants. Education of the family and child/or adolescent will help them identify depressive symptoms sooner and decrease the severity of future episodes with earlier interventions. Some studies suggest that up to 30% of preadolescents with major depression manifest bipolar disorder at 2-year follow-up. It is important to reassess the child or adolescent with depressive symptoms regularly for at least 6 months and to maintain awareness of the depressive episode in caring for this child in the future.

Cheung AH et al: GLAD PC Steering Committee Expert survey for the management of adolescent depression in primary care. Pediatrics 2008 Jan;121(1):e101–e107 [PMID: 18166529].

Cheung AH et al: GLAD-PC Steering Group. Guidelines for adolescent depression in primary care (GLAD-PC): II. Treatment and ongoing management. Pediatrics 2007 Nov;120(5): e1313–e1326. Erratum in: Pediatrics 2008 Jan; 121(1):227 [PMID: 17974724].

Richardson L, McCauley E, Katon W: Collaborative care for adolescent depression: a pilot study. Gen Hosp Psychiatry 2009 Jan–Feb;31(1):36–45 [Epub 2008 Nov 18] [PMID: 19134509].

Richardson LP et al: Evaluation of the Patient Health Questionnaire-9 Item for detecting major depression among adolescents. Pediatrics 2010 Dec;126(6):1117–1123 [Epub 2010 Nov 1] [PMID: 21041282].

The REACH Institute, Guidelines for Adolescent Depression in Primary Care (GLAD-PC) Toolkit: http://www.thereachinstitute.org/guidelines-for-adolescent-depression-primary-care.

US Preventive Services Task Force Screening and treatment for major depressive disorder in children and adolescents: US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. Pediatrics 2009 Apr;123(4):1223–1228. Erratum in: Pediatrics. 2009 Jun;123(6):1611 [PMID: 19336383].

Williams SB et al: Screening for child and adolescent depression in primary care settings: a systematic evidence review for the US Preventive Services Task Force. Pediatrics 2009 Apr;123(4):e716–e735 [Review] [PMID: 19336361].

Zuckerbrot RA, Cheung AH, Jensen PS, Stein REK, Laraque D, and the GLAD-PC Steering Group: Guidelines for Adolescent Depression in Primary Care (GLAD-PC): I. Identification, assessment, and initial management. Pediatrics 2007 Nov;120(5):e1299–e1312 [PMID: 17974723].

2. Bipolar Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Periods of abnormally and persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood, and heightened levels of energy and activity.
- Associated symptoms: grandiosity, diminished need for sleep, pressured speech, racing thoughts, impaired judgment.
- Not caused by prescribed or illicit drugs.
- The symptoms most commonly reported first are depressive symptoms.

http://obgynebooks.com

» General Considerations

Bipolar disorder (previously referred to as manic-depressive disorder) is an episodic mood disorder manifested by alternating periods of mania and major depressive episodes or, less commonly, manic episodes alone. Children and adolescents often exhibit a variable course of mood instability combined with aggressive behavior and impulsivity. At least 20% of bipolar adults experience onset of symptoms before age 20 years. Onset of bipolar disorder before puberty is uncommon; however, symptoms often begin to develop and may be initially diagnosed as ADHD or other disruptive behavior disorders. The lifetime prevalence of bipolar disorder in middle to late adolescence approaches 1%.

» Identification & Diagnosis

In about 70% of patients, the first symptoms are primarily those of depression. In the remainder, manic, hypomanic, or mixed states dominate the presentation. Patients with mania display a variable pattern of elevated, expansive, or irritable mood along with rapid speech, high energy levels, difficulty in sustaining concentration, and a decreased need for sleep. The child or adolescent may also have hypersexual behavior. It is critical to rule out abuse, or be aware of abuse factors contributing to the clinical presentation. Patients often do not acknowledge any problem with their mood or behavior. The clinical picture can be quite dramatic, with florid psychotic symptoms of delusions and hallucinations accompanying extreme hyperactivity and impulsivity. Other illnesses on the bipolar spectrum are bipolar type II, which is characterized by recurrent major depressive episodes alternating with hypomanic episodes (lower intensity manic episodes that do not cause social impairment and do not typically last as long as manic episodes) and cyclothymic disorder, which is diagnosed when the child or adolescent has had 1 year of hypomanic symptoms alternating with depressive symptoms that do not meet criteria for major depression.

It is also common for individuals diagnosed with bipolar spectrum disorders to have a history of inattention and hyperactivity problems in childhood, with some having a comorbid diagnosis of ADHD. While ADHD and bipolar disorder are highly comorbid, inattention and hyperactivity symptoms accompanied by mood swings can be an early sign of bipolar disorder before full criteria for the disorder have emerged and clustered together in a specific pattern.

Differentiating ADHD, bipolar disorder, and major depressive disorder can be a challenge, and confusion about the validity of the disorder in younger children still exists. The situation is further complicated by the potential for the coexistence of ADHD and mood disorders in the same patient.

A history of the temporal course of symptoms can be most helpful. ADHD is typically a chronic disorder of lifelong duration. However, it may not be a problem until the patient enters the classroom setting. Mood disorders are typically characterized by a normal baseline followed by an acute onset of symptoms usually associated with acute sleep, appetite, and behavior changes. If inattentive, hyperactive, or impulsive behavior was not a problem in the previous year, it is unlikely to be ADHD. Typically, all these disorders are often heritable, so a positive family history can be informative in formulating a diagnosis. Successful treatment of relatives can offer guidance for appropriate treatment.

In prepubescent children, mania may be difficult to differentiate from ADHD and other disruptive behavior disorders. In both children and adolescents, preoccupation with violence, decreased need for sleep, impulsivity, poor judgment, intense and prolonged rages or dysphoria, hypersexuality, and some cycling of symptoms suggest bipolar disorder. Table 7–14 further defines points of differentiation between ADHD, conduct disorder, and bipolar disorder.

The Young Mania Rating Scale and The Child Mania Rating Scale may be helpful in eliciting concerning symptoms and educating families and patients, and in aiding timely referral to local mental health resources.

Children and adolescents with bipolar disorder are more likely to be inappropriate or aggressive toward peers and family members. Their symptoms almost always create significant interference with academic learning and peer relationships. The poor judgment associated with manic episodes predisposes individuals to dangerous, impulsive, and sometimes criminal activity. Legal difficulties can arise from impulsive acts, such as excessive spending, and acts of vandalism, theft, or aggression, that are associated with grandiose thoughts. Affective disorders are associated with a 30-fold greater incidence of successful suicide. Substance abuse may be a further complication, often representing an attempt at self-medication for the mood problem.

» Treatment

Most patients with bipolar disorder respond to pharmacotherapy with either mood stabilizers, such as lithium, atypical antipsychotics, or antiepileptic drugs. Other mood stabilizers, carbamazepine and valproate, are less effective. Lithium, risperidone, aripiprazole, quetiapine, asenapine, and olanzapine have been approved by the FDA for the treatment of acute and mixed manic episodes in adolescents. In addition, lithium and aripiprazole are approved for preventing recurrence. It is recommended that primary care providers refer all patients with suspected bipolar mood disorder to a mental health provider for diagnostic clarification and treatment. In situations where bipolar mood disorder is evident, a referral to a psychiatrist is recommended. In cases of severe impairment, hospitalization is required to maintain safety and initiate treatment. Supportive psychotherapy for the patient and family and education about the recurrent nature of the illness are critical. Family therapy should also include improving skills for conflict management and appropriate expression of emotion.

In addition to prescribing medications that have FDA approval for use in children with bipolar disorder (lithium

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 7–14. Differentiating behavior disorders.

	ADHD	Conduct Disorder	Bipolar Disorder
School problems	Yes	Yes	Yes
Behavior problems	Yes	Yes	Yes
Defiant attitude	Occasional	Constant	Episodic
Motor restlessness	Constant	May be present	May wax and wane
Impulsivity	Constant	May be present	May wax and wane
Distractibility	Constant	May be present	May wax and wane
Anger expression	Short-lived (minutes)	Plans revenge	Intense rages (minutes to hours)
Thought content	May be immature	Blames others	Morbid or grandiose ideas
Sleep disturbance	May be present	No	May wax and wane
Self-deprecation	Briefly, with criticism	No	Prolonged, with or without suicidal ideation
Obsessed with ideas	No	No	Yes
Hallucinations	No	No	Diagnostic, if present
Family history	May be a history of school problems	May be a history of antisocial behavior	May be a history of mood disorders

ADHD, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

and the atypical antipsychotic medications), providers may choose to use other medications off-label after nonresponse to first-line treatment or because of side-effect profiles. In these cases, it is recommended that a psychiatrist initiate and monitor early treatment. Once the goal of stabilization has been attained, it is reasonable for a primary care provider to provide maintenance therapy.

» Other Considerations

Physical or sexual abuse and exposure to domestic violence can also cause children to be mood labile, hyperactive, and aggressive, and PTSD should be considered by reviewing the history for traumatic life events in children with these symptoms. Diagnostic considerations should also include substance abuse disorders, and an acute organic process, especially if the change in personality has been relatively sudden, or is accompanied by other neurologic changes. Individuals with manic psychosis may resemble those with schizophrenia. Psychotic symptoms associated with bipolar disorder should clear with resolution of the mood symptoms, which should also be prominent. Hyperthyroidism should be ruled out.

» Prognosis

It is not uncommon for the patient to need lifelong medication. In its adult form, bipolar disorder is an illness with a remitting course of alternating depressive and manic episodes. The time span between episodes can be years or months depending on the severity of illness and ability to comply with medication interventions. In childhood, the symptoms may be more pervasive and not fall into the intermittent episodic pattern until after puberty.

3. Disruptive Mood Dysregulation Disorder (DMDD)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Persistent irritability and severe behavioral outbursts at least three times a week for 1 year or more
- The mood in between these symptoms is persistently negative (i.e., irritable, angry or sad), which is observable by others
- The tantrums and negative moods are present in at least two settings
- Onset of illness prior to 10 years old
- Chronological or developmental age of at least 6 years old
- A disruption in functioning in more than one setting (e.g., home, school and/or socially)

http://obgynebooks.com

» General Considerations

DMDD is a new diagnosis in the DSM-5. Historically, many of these children would have previously been diagnosed with some variation of bipolar mood disorder. The addition of DMDD allows for an additional diagnosis in which the mainstay of treatment is not necessarily a mood stabilizer.

» Identification & Diagnosis

The diagnosis is based on clinical findings and there is no screening tool for this disorder. Refer to essentials of diagnosis and typical features above. In cases where symptoms overlap between DMDD and ODD, DMDD supersedes ODD.

» Treatment

There are no approved medications for DMDD and psychotherapy is the mainstay of treatment. Some off-label pharmacological considerations include α-agonists, medication(s) used for depression and/or bipolar mood disorder, and/or stimulants if ADHD is present.

» Other Considerations

The differential diagnosis for DMDD is similar to other mood disorders. In addition, special attention and consideration should include screening for ADHD, anxiety, trauma, and significant interpersonal and relational deficits. Those with DMDD are at a higher risk than the general population to develop major depressive disorder and generalized anxiety disorder. With the addition of this diagnosis, researchers are now able to gather data to aid with the diagnosis, treatment, and outcome measures.

AACAP Facts for Families Disruptive Mood Dysregulation Disorder: http://www.aacap.org/AACAP/Families_and_Youth/Facts_for_Families/Facts_for_Families_Pages/Disruptive_Mood_Dysregulation_Disorder_DMDD_110.aspx. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Chang K: Challenges in the diagnosis and treatment of pediatric bipolar depression. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 2009;11(1):73–80 [PMID: 19432389].

Cummings CM, Fristad MA: Pediatric bipolar disorder: recognition in primary care. Curr Opin Pediatr 2008 Oct;20(5): 560–565 [PMID: 18781119].

Demeter CA et al: Current research in child and adolescent bipolar disorder. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 2008;10(2):215–228 [PMID: 18689291].

DSM-5, 5th ed, American Psychiatric Association, May 2013.

Miklowitz DJ, Chang KD: Prevention of bipolar disorder in at-risk children: theoretical assumptions and empirical foundations. Dev Psychopathol 2008 Summer;20(3):881–897 [PMID: 18606036].

Miklowitz DJ et al: Family-focused treatment for adolescents with bipolar disorder: results of a 2-year randomized trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2008 Sep;65(9):1053–1061 [PMID: 18762591].

Youngstrom EA, Birmaher B, Findling RL: Pediatric bipolar disorder: validity, phenomenology, and recommendations for diagnosis. Bipolar Disord 2008 Feb;10(1 Pt 2):194–214 [PMID: 18199237].

SUICIDE IN CHILDREN & ADOLESCENTS

The suicide rate in young people has remained high for several decades. In 2007, suicide was the third leading cause of death among children and adolescents aged 10–24 years in the United States. The suicide rate among adolescents aged 15–19 years quadrupled from approximately 2.7 to 11.3 per 100,000 since the 1960s. It is estimated that each year, approximately 2 million US adolescents attempt suicide, yet only 700,000 receive medical attention for their attempt. Suicide and homicide rates for children in the United States are two to five times higher than those for the other 25 industrialized countries combined, primarily due to the prevalence of firearms in the United States. For children younger than 10 years, the rate of completed suicide is low, but from 1980 to 1992, it increased by 120%, from 0.8 to 1.7 per 100,000. Adolescent girls make three to four times as many suicide attempts as boys of the same age, but the number of completed suicides is three to four times greater in boys. Firearms are the most commonly used method in successful suicides, accounting for 40%–60% of cases; hanging, carbon monoxide poisoning, and drug overdoses each account for approximately 10%–15% of cases.

Suicide is almost always associated with a psychiatric disorder and should not be viewed as a philosophic choice about life or death or as a predictable response to overwhelming stress. Most commonly it is associated with a mood disorder and the hopelessness that accompanies a severe depressive episode. Suicide rates are higher for Native American and Native Alaskan populations than for white, black, and Latino/Hispanic populations. Although suicide attempts are more common in individuals with a history of behavior problems and academic difficulties, other suicide victims are high achievers who are temperamentally anxious and perfectionistic and who commit suicide impulsively after a failure or rejection, either real or perceived. Mood disorders (in both sexes, but especially in females), substance abuse disorders (especially in males), and conduct disorders are commonly diagnosed at psychological autopsy in adolescent suicide victims. Some adolescent suicides reflect an underlying psychotic disorder, with the young person usually committing suicide in response to auditory hallucinations or psychotic delusions.

The vast majority of young people who attempt suicide give some clue to their distress or their tentative plans to commit suicide. Most show signs of dysphoric mood (anger, irritability, anxiety, or depression). Over 60% make comments such as “I wish I were dead” or “I just can’t deal with this any longer” within the 24 hours prior to death. In one study, nearly 70% of subjects experienced a crisis event such as a loss (eg, rejection by a girlfriend or boyfriend), public shaming, a failure, or an arrest prior to completed suicide. With ubiquitous social networking technologies and the presence of digital profiles, posting distress messages electronically and aggression in the form of cyber-bullying are

http://obgynebooks.com

important to identify and discuss when conducting risk assessments and gathering information about relationships, supports, and sources of stress.

Assessment of Suicide Risk

Any clinical assessment for depression must include questions about suicidal ideation. If a child or adolescent expresses suicidal thinking, the treating provider must ask if he or she has an active plan, intends to complete that plan, and has made previous attempts. Suicidal ideation accompanied by any plan warrants immediate referral for a psychiatric crisis assessment. This can usually be accomplished at the nearest emergency department (ED).

Assessment of suicide risk calls for a high index of suspicion and a direct interview with the patient and his or her parents or guardians. The highest risk of suicide is among white, adolescent boys. High-risk factors include previous suicide attempts, a suicide note, and a viable plan for suicide with the availability of lethal means, close personal exposure to suicide, conduct disorder, and substance abuse. Other risk factors are signs and symptoms of major depression or dysthymia, a family history of suicide, a recent death in the family, and a view of death as a relief from the pain in the patient's life.

Intervention

Suicidal ideation and any suicide attempt must be considered a serious matter. The patient should not be left alone, and the treating provider should express concern and convey a desire to help. The provider should meet with the patient and the family, both alone and together, and listen carefully to their problems and perceptions. It is helpful to explicitly state that with the assistance of mental health professionals solutions can be found.

The majority of patients who express suicidal ideation and all who have made a suicide attempt should be referred for psychiatric evaluation and possible hospitalization. Most providers feel uncomfortable and have little experience in evaluating suicidal risk. In addition, this evaluation frequently takes considerable time and requires contact with multiple informants for information gathering and treatment planning. The provider should err on the side of caution, as referral for further assessment is always appropriate when there is concern about suicidal thinking and behavior.

An evaluation in a psychiatrist's office or the ED will help determine level of risk and disposition. If the patient has suicidal ideation without a plan, has a therapist he or she can see the same or next day, is able to "contract for safety," and the family is able to provide supervision and support, then the evaluating provider can consider sending the patient and family home that day from the office or ED without need for immediate hospitalization. If there is potential for suicide as determined by suicidal ideation with a plan, there are no available resources for therapy, and the patient is not able to cooperate with a plan to ensure safety; if the patient is severely depressed or intoxicated; if the family does not appear to be appropriately concerned; or if there are practical limitations on providing supervision and support to ensure safety, the individual should be hospitalized on an inpatient psychiatric unit. Any decision to send the patient home from the ED without hospitalization should be made only after consultation with a mental health professional. The decision should be based on lessening of the risk of suicide and assurance of the family's ability to follow through with outpatient therapy and provide appropriate support and supervision. As part of safety planning for discharge, guns, knives, and razor blades should be removed from the home, and, to the extent possible, access to them outside the home should be prohibited. Medications and over-the-counter drugs should be kept locked in a safe place with minimal opportunity of patient access (eg, key kept with a parent, or use of combination lock on the medicine chest). The patient should be restricted from driving for at least the first 24 hours or longer to lessen the chance of impulsive motor vehicle crashes. Instructions and phone numbers for crisis services should be given, and the family must be committed to a plan for mental health treatment.

Suicide prevention efforts include heightened awareness in the community and schools to identify at-risk individuals and increase access to services, including hotlines and counseling services. Restricting young people's access to firearms is a critical factor, as firearms are responsible for 85% of deaths due to suicide or homicide in youth in the United States.

Finally, the treating provider should be aware of his or her own emotional reactions to dealing with suicidal adolescents and their families. Because the assessment can require considerable time and energy, the provider should be on guard against becoming tired, irritable, or angry. Although understandable, provider fears about precipitating suicide by direct and frank discussions of suicidal risk are unfounded. Reviewing difficult cases with colleagues, developing formal or informal relationships with psychiatrists, and attending workshops on assessment and management of depression and suicidal ideation can decrease the anxiety and improve competence for primary care providers.

Bursztein C, Apter A: Adolescent suicide. Curr Opin Psychiatry 2009 Jan;22(1):1–6 [PMID: 19122527].

Carballo JJ et al: The role of the pediatrician in preventing suicide in adolescents with alcohol use disorders. Int J Adolesc Med Health 2007 Jan–Mar;19(1):61–65 [PMID: 17458325].

Dervic K, Brent DA, Oquendo MA: Completed suicide in childhood. Psychiatr Clin North Am 2008 Jun;31(2):271–291 [PMID: 18439449].

Dudley M et al: New-generation antidepressants, suicide and depressed adolescents: how should clinicians respond to changing evidence? Aust N Z J Psychiatry 2008 Jun;42(6):456–466 [PMID: 18465372].

Gardner W et al: Screening, triage, and referral of patients who report suicidal thought during a primary care visit. Pediatrics 2010 May;125(5):945–952 [Epub 2010 Apr 12] [PMID: 20385642].

http://obgynebooks.com

Goldstein TR: Suicidality in pediatric bipolar disorder. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2009 Apr;18(2):339–352, viii [PMID: 19264267].

Greydanus D, Patel D, Pratt H: Suicide risk in adolescents with chronic illness: implications for primary care and specialty pediatric practice: a review. Dev Med Child Neurol 2010 Dec;52(12):1083–1087 [Epub 2010 Aug 31] [PMID: 20813018].

Kim YS, Leventhal B: Bullying and suicide. Int J Adolesc Med Health 2008 Apr–Jun;20(2):133–154 [PMID: 18714552].

Prager LM: Depression and suicide in children and adolescents. Pediatr Rev 2009 Jun;30(6):199–205; quiz 206 [PMID: 19487428].

Steele MM, Doey T: Suicidal behaviour in children and adolescents. Part 1: etiology and risk factors. Can J Psychiatry 2007 Jun;52(6 Suppl 1):S21–S33 [PMID: 17824350].

Steele MM, Doey T: Suicidal behaviour in children and adolescents. Part 2: treatment and prevention. Can J Psychiatry 2007 Jun;52(6 Suppl 1):S35–S45 [PMID: 17824351].

Wintersteen MB, Diamond GS, Fein JA: Screening for suicide risk in the pediatric emergency and acute care setting. Curr Opin Pediatr 2007 Aug;19(4):398–404 [PMID: 17630602].

CONDUCT DISORDERS

1. Oppositional Defiant Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A pattern of negativistic, hostile, and defiant behavior lasting at least 6 months.
- Loses temper, argues with adults, defies rules.
- Blames others for own mistakes and misbehavior.
- Angry, easily annoyed, vindictive.
- Does not meet criteria for conduct disorder.

General Considerations

Oppositional defiant disorder is more common in families where caregiver dysfunction (eg, substance abuse, parental psychopathology, significant psychosocial stress) is present. It is also more prevalent in children with a history of multiple changes in caregivers, inconsistent, harsh, or neglectful parenting, or serious marital discord.

Identification & Diagnosis

Oppositional defiant disorder usually is evident before 8 years of age and may be an antecedent to the development of conduct disorder. The symptoms usually first emerge at home, but then extend to school and peer relationships. The disruptive behaviors of oppositional defiant disorder are generally less severe than those associated with conduct disorder and do not include hurting other individuals or animals, destruction of property, or theft.

Treatment

Interventions include careful assessment of the psychosocial situation and recommendations to support parenting skills and optimal caregiver functioning. Assessment for comorbid psychiatric diagnoses such as learning disabilities, depression, and ADHD should be pursued and appropriate interventions recommended.

2. Conduct Disorder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A persistent pattern of behavior that includes the following:
  - Defiance of authority.
  - Violating the rights of others or society's norms.
  - Aggressive behavior toward persons, animals, or property.

General Considerations

Disorders of conduct affect approximately 9% of males and 2% of females younger than 18 years. This is a very heterogeneous population, and overlap occurs with ADHD, substance abuse, learning disabilities, neuropsychiatric disorders, mood disorders, and family dysfunction. Many of these individuals come from homes where domestic violence, child abuse, drug abuse, shifting parental figures, and poverty are environmental risk factors. Although social learning partly explains this correlation, the genetic heritability of aggressive conduct and antisocial behaviors is currently under investigation.

Identification & Diagnosis

The typical child with conduct disorder is a boy with a turbulent home life and academic difficulties. Defiance of authority, fighting, tantrums, running away, school failure, and destruction of property are common symptoms. With increasing age, fire-setting and theft may occur, followed in adolescence by truancy, vandalism, and substance abuse. Sexual promiscuity, sexual perpetration, and other criminal behaviors may develop. Hyperactive, aggressive, and uncooperative behavior patterns in the preschool and early school years tend to predict conduct disorder in adolescence with a high degree of accuracy, especially when ADHD

http://obgynebooks.com

goes untreated. A history of reactive attachment disorder is an additional childhood risk factor. The risk for conduct disorder increases with inconsistent and severe parental disciplinary techniques, parental alcoholism, and parental antisocial behavior.

» Treatment

Effective treatment can be complicated by the psychosocial problems often found in the lives of children and adolescents with conduct disorders. These problems may also interfere with achieving compliance with treatment recommendations. Efforts should be made to stabilize the environment and improve functioning within the home, particularly as it relates to parental functioning and disciplinary techniques. Identification of learning disabilities and placement in an optimal school environment is critical. Any associated neurologic and psychiatric disorders should be addressed.

Residential treatment may be necessary for individuals whose symptoms do not respond to lower level interventions, or whose environment is not able to meet their needs for supervision and structure. Juvenile justice system involvement is common in cases where conduct disorder behaviors lead to illegal activities, theft, or assault.

Medications such as mood stabilizers, neuroleptics, stimulants, and antidepressants have all been studied in youth with conduct disorders, yet none has been found to be consistently effective. Each patient suspected of conduct disorder should be screened for other common psychiatric disorders and a history of trauma prior to the initiation of medication. Providers should use caution when prescribing various medications off-label for disruptive behavior. Early involvement in programs, such as Big Brothers, Big Sisters, scouts, and team sports, in which consistent adult mentors and role models interact with youth, decreases the chances that the youth will develop antisocial personality disorder. Multisystemic therapy (MST) is being used increasingly as an intervention for youth with conduct disorders and involvement with the legal system. MST is an intensive home-based model of care that seeks to stabilize and improve the home environment and to strengthen the support system and coping skills of the individual and family.

» Other Considerations

Young people with conduct disorders, especially those with more violent histories, have an increased incidence of neurologic signs and symptoms, psychomotor seizures, psychotic symptoms, mood disorders, ADHD, and learning disabilities. Efforts should be made to identify these associated disorders because they may require specific therapeutic interventions. Conduct disorder is best conceptualized as a final common pathway emerging from a variety of underlying psychosocial, genetic, environmental, and neuropsychiatric conditions.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is based on the ability of the child's support system to mount an effective treatment intervention consistently over time. The prognosis is generally worse for children in whom the disorder presents before age 10 years; those who display a diversity of antisocial behaviors across multiple settings; and those who are raised in an environment characterized by parental antisocial behavior, alcoholism or other substance abuse, and conflict. Nearly half of individuals with a childhood diagnosis of conduct disorder develop antisocial personality disorder as adults.

HIGH-RISK PATIENTS AND HOMICIDE

Aggression & Violent Behavior in Youth

The tragic increase in teenage violence, including school shootings, is of particular concern to health professionals, as well as to society at large. There is strong evidence that screening and initiation of interventions by primary care providers can make a significant difference in violent behavior in youth. Although the prediction of violent behavior remains a difficult and imprecise endeavor, providers can support and encourage several important prevention efforts.

The vast majority of the increase in youth violence, including suicides and homicides, involves the use of firearms. Thus, the presence of firearms in the home, the method of storage and safety measures taken when present, and access to firearms outside the home should be explored regularly with all adolescents as part of their routine medical care.

It is important to note that violent behavior is often associated with suicidal impulses. In the process of screening for violent behavior, suicidal ideation should not be overlooked. Any comment about wishes to be dead, or hopelessness, should be taken seriously and assessed immediately.

Interventions for parents include encouraging parents and guardians to be aware of their child's school attendance and performance. Parents should be encouraged to take an active role and learn about their children's friends, be aware of who they are going out with, where they will be, what they will be doing, and when they will be home. Most students involved in school violence might have been identified earlier and potentially may have benefited from interventions to address problems in social and educational functioning in the school environment. Communities and school districts nationwide have increased their efforts to identify and intervene with students whom teachers, peers, or parents recognize as having difficulty.

Threats & Warning Signs Requiring Immediate Consultation

Any and all threats that children make can be alarming. However, it is important to respond to the more serious and potentially lethal threats. These threats should be taken with

http://obgynebooks.com

the utmost seriousness and parents/guardians should see a mental health provider immediately. Such threats include threats/warnings about hurting or killing someone or oneself, threats to run away from home and/or threats to damage or destroy property.

Factors Associated With Increased Risk of Violent and/or Dangerous Behavior

Not all threats signify imminent danger. There are several potential predictors to consider when assessing the dangers of a child or adolescent, such as past history of violence or aggressive behavior, including uncontrollable angry outbursts; access to guns or other weapons; history of getting caught with a weapon in school; and family history of violent behaviors. These are likely predictors of future violent behavior. In addition, children who witness abuse and violence at home and/or have a preoccupation with themes and acts of violence (eg, TV shows, movies, music, violent video games, etc) are also at high risk of such behavior. Victims of abuse (ie, physical, sexual, and/or emotional) are more susceptible to feeling shame, loss, and rejection. The difficulty of dealing with abuse can further exacerbate an underlying mood, anxiety, or conduct disorder. Children who have been abused are more likely to be perpetrators of bullying and engage in verbal and physical intimidation toward peers. They also may be much more prone to blame others and are unwilling to accept responsibility for their own actions. Substance use is another major factor frequently associated with violent, aggressive, and/or dangerous behavior, particularly because it impacts judgment and is often associated with decreased inhibition and increased impulsivity. Socially isolated children also carry a high risk for violent and dangerous behavior. These include children with little to no adult supervision, poor connection with peers, and little to no involvement in extracurricular activities. These individuals may be more likely to seek out deviant peer groups for a sense of belonging.

How Providers & Parents Can Respond to Concerns of Violence and/or Dangerous Behavior

If a provider or parent suspects that a child is at risk for violent and/or dangerous behavior, the most important intervention is to talk with the child immediately about alleged threat and/or behavior. One should consider the child's past behavior, personality, and current stressors when evaluating the seriousness and likelihood of them engaging in a destructive or dangerous behavior. If the child already has a mental health provider, he/she should be contacted immediately. If they are not reachable, the parent(s)/guardian(s) should take the child to the closest ED for a crisis evaluation. It is always acceptable to contact local police for assistance, especially if harm to others is suspected. Another indication that warrants a crisis evaluation is if a child refuses to talk, is argumentative, responds defensively, or continues to express violent or dangerous thoughts/plans. Continuous, face-to-face adult supervision is essential while awaiting professional intervention. After evaluation, it is imperative to follow up with recommendations from mental health provider(s) to ensure safety and ongoing management.

AACAP Facts For Families: http://www.aacap.org/AACAP/Families_and_Youth/Facts_for_Families/Facts_for_Families_Pages/Childrens_Threats_When_Are_They_Serious_65.aspx. Accessed September 27, 2015.

Barker ED, Maughan B: Differentiating early-onset persistent versus childhood-limited conduct problem youth. Am J Psychiatry 2009 Aug;166(8):900–908 [Epub 2009 Jul 1] [PMID: 19570930].

Boylan K et al: Comorbidity of internalizing disorders in children with oppositional defiant disorder. Eur Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2007 Dec;16(8):484–494 [Epub 2007 Sep 24] [PMID: 17896121].

Eyberg SM, Nelson MM, Boggs SR: Evidence-based psychosocial treatments for children and adolescents with disruptive behavior. J Clin Child Adolesc Psychol 2008 Jan;37(1):215–237 [PMID: 18444059].

Fazel S, Doll H, Långström N: Mental disorders among adolescents in juvenile detention and correctional facilities: a systematic review and metaregression analysis of 25 surveys. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2008 Sep;47(9):1010–1019 [PMID: 18664994].

Hamilton SS, Armando J: Oppositional defiant disorder. Am Fam Physician 2008 Oct 1;78(7):861–866 [PMID: 18841736].

Jensen PS: The role of psychosocial therapies in managing aggression in children and adolescents. J Clin Psychiatry 2008;69(Suppl 4):37–42 [PMID: 18533767].

Loeber R, Burke J, Pardini DA: Perspectives on oppositional defiant disorder, conduct disorder, and psychopathic features. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 2009 Jan;50(1–2):13342 [PMID: 19220596].

Turgay A: Psychopharmacological treatment of oppositional defiant disorder. CNS Drugs 2009;23(1):1–17 [PMID: 19062772].

SOMATOFORM DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A symptom suggesting physical dysfunction.
- No physical disorder accounting for the symptom.
- Symptoms causing distress, dysfunction, or both.
- Symptoms not voluntarily created or maintained, as in malingering.

General Considerations

Conversion symptoms most often occur in school-aged children and adolescents. The exact incidence is unclear, but in pediatric practice they are probably seen more often as transient symptoms than as chronic disorders requiring help from mental health practitioners. A conversion symptom is thought to be an expression of underlying psychological conflict. The specific symptom may be symbolically determined by the

http://obgynebooks.com

underlying conflict and may resolve the dilemma created by the underlying wish or fear (eg, a seemingly paralyzed child need not fear expressing his or her underlying rage or aggressive retaliatory impulses). Hypochondriasis, somatization, and conversion disorders involve an unhealthy overemphasis and preoccupation with somatic experiences and symptoms.

» Identification & Diagnosis

Somatoform disorders are defined by the presence of physical illness or disability for which no organic cause can be identified, although neither the patient nor the caregiver is consciously fabricating the symptoms. The category includes body dysmorphic disorder, conversion disorder, hypochondriasis, somatization disorder, and somatoform pain disorder (Table 7–15).

Although children can present with a variety of symptoms, the most common include neurologic and GI complaints. Children with conversion disorder may be surprisingly unconcerned about the substantial disability deriving from their symptoms. Symptoms include unusual sensory phenomena, paralysis, vomiting, abdominal pain, intractable headaches, and movement or seizure-like disorders.

In the classic case of conversion disorder, the child's symptoms and examination findings are not consistent with the clinical manifestations of any organic disease process. The physical symptoms often begin within the context of a family experiencing stress, such as serious illness, a death, or family discord. On closer examination, the child's symptoms are often found to resemble symptoms present in other family members.

» Treatment

In most cases, conversion symptoms resolve quickly when the child and family are reassured that the symptom is a way of reacting to stress. The child is encouraged to continue with normal daily activities, knowing that the symptom will abate when the stress is resolved. Treatment of conversion disorders includes acknowledging the symptom rather than telling the child that the symptom is not medically justified and responding with noninvasive interventions such as physical therapy while continuing to encourage normalization of the symptoms. If the symptom does not resolve with reassurance, further investigation by a mental health professional is indicated. Comorbid diagnoses such as depression and anxiety disorders should be addressed, and treatment with psychopharmacologic agents may be helpful.

Somatoform disorder is not associated with the increased morbidity and mortality associated with other psychiatric disorders such as mood disorders or psychotic illness. Somatoform patients are best treated with regular, short, scheduled medical appointments to address the complaints at hand. In this way they do not need to precipitate emergencies to elicit medical attention. The medical provider should avoid invasive procedures unless clearly indicated and offer sincere concern and reassurance. The provider should also avoid telling the patient "it's all in your head" and should not abandon or avoid the patient, as somatoform patients are at great risk of seeking multiple alternative treatment providers and potentially unnecessary treatments.

Table 7–15. Somatoform disorders in children and adolescents.

Disorder	Major Clinical Manifestations
Body dysmorphic disorder	Preoccupation with an imagined defect in personal appearance
Conversion disorder	Symptom onset follows psychologically stressful event; symptoms express unconscious feelings and result in secondary gain
Hypochondriasis	Preoccupation with worry that physical symptoms manifest unrecognized and threatening condition; medical assurance does not provide relief from worry
Somatization disorder	Long-standing preoccupation with multiple somatic symptoms
Somatoform pain disorder	Preoccupation with pain that results in distress or impairment beyond what would be expected from physical findings

» Other Considerations

It is sometimes not possible to rule out medical disease as a source of the symptoms. Medical follow-up is required to monitor for changes in symptoms and response to recommended interventions. Somatic symptoms are often associated with anxiety and depressive disorders (see Tables 7–7 and 7–15). Occasionally, psychotic children have somatic preoccupations and even somatic delusions.

Children with conversion disorder may have some secondary gain associated with their symptoms. Several reports have pointed to the increased association of conversion disorder with sexual overstimulation or sexual abuse. As with other emotional and behavioral problems, health care providers should always screen for physical and sexual abuse.

» Prognosis

Patients presenting with somatoform disorders are often resistant to mental health treatment, in part fearing that any distraction from their vigilance will put them at greater risk of succumbing to a medical illness. Psychiatric consultation is often helpful, and for severely incapacitated patients, referral psychiatric consultation is always indicated.

Andresen JM et al: Physical symptoms and psychosocial correlates of somatization in pediatric primary care. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2011 Oct;50(10):904–909 [PMID: 21576182].

http://obgynebooks.com

Campo JV et al: Physical and emotional health of mothers of youth with functional abdominal pain. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2007 Feb;161(2):131–137 [PMID: 17283297].

Ginsburg GS, Riddle MA, Davies M: Somatic symptoms in children and adolescents with anxiety disorders. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2006 Oct;45(10):1179–1187 [PMID: 17003663].

Goldbeck L, Bundschuh S: Illness perception in pediatric somatization and asthma: complaints and health locus of control beliefs. Child Adolesc Psychiatry Ment Health 2007 Jul 16;1(1):5 [PMID: 17678524].

Kozlowska K et al: A conceptual model and practice framework for managing chronic pain in children and adolescents. Harv Rev Psychiatry 2008;16(2):136–150 [PMID: 18415885].

Kozlowska K et al: Conversion disorder in Australian pediatric practice. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2007 Jan;46(1):68–75 [PMID: 17195731].

Masia WC et al: CBT for anxiety and associated somatic complaints in pediatric medical settings: an open pilot study. J Clin Psychol Med Settings 2009 Jun;16(2):169–177 [PMID: 19152057].

Mulvaney S et al: Trajectories of symptoms and impairment for pediatric patients with functional abdominal pain: a 5-year longitudinal study. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2006 Jun;45(6):737–744 [PMID: 16721324].

Plioplys S et al: Multidisciplinary management of pediatric nonepileptic seizures. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 2007 Nov;46(11):1491–1495 [PMID: 18049299].

Seshia SS, Phillips DF, von Baeyer CL: Childhood chronic daily headache: a biopsychosocial perspective. Dev Med Child Neurol 2008 Jul;50(7):541–545 [PMID: 18611206].

Walker LS et al: Appraisal and coping with daily stressors by pediatric patients with chronic abdominal pain. J Pediatr Psychol 2007 Mar;32(2):206–216 [PMID: 16717138].

ADJUSTMENT DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- The precipitating event or circumstance is identifiable.
- The symptoms have appeared within 3 months after the occurrence of the stressful event.
- Although the child experiences distress or some functional impairment, the reaction is not severe or disabling.
- The reaction does not persist more than 6 months after the stressor has terminated.

» General Considerations

The most common and most disturbing stressors in the lives of children and adolescents are the death of a loved one, marital discord, separation and divorce, family illness, a change of residence or school setting, experiencing a traumatic event, and, for adolescents, peer-relationship problems. These stressors naturally have a significant impact on children and adolescents.

» Identification & Diagnosis

When faced with stress, children can experience many different symptoms, including changes in mood, changes in behavior, anxiety symptoms, and physical complaints. When the reaction is significantly out of proportion to the stressor and a decline in functioning is noted, a diagnosis of adjustment disorder is highly suspected. The two main categories of adjustment disorders include disturbance in emotions (ie, depression and anxiety) and/or conduct.

» Treatment

The mainstay of treatment involves genuine empathy and assurance to the parents and the patient that the emotional or behavioral change is a predictable consequence of the stressful event. This validates the child's reaction and encourages the child to talk about the stressful occurrence and its aftermath. Parents are encouraged to help the child with appropriate expression of feelings, while defining boundaries for behavior that prevent the child from feeling out of control and ensure safety of self and others. Maintaining or reestablishing routines can also alleviate distress and help children and adolescents adjust to changing circumstances by increasing predictability and decreasing distress about the unknown.

» Other Considerations

When symptoms emerge in reaction to an identifiable stressor but are severe, persistent, or disabling, depressive disorder, anxiety disorder, and conduct disorders must be considered.

» Prognosis

The duration of symptoms in adjustment reactions depends on the severity of the stress; the child's personal sensitivity to stress and vulnerability to anxiety, depression, and other psychiatric disorders; and the available support system.

PSYCHOTIC DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Delusional thoughts
- Disorganized speech (rambling or illogical speech patterns)
- Disorganized or bizarre behavior
- Hallucinations (auditory, visual, tactile, olfactory)
- Paranoia, ideas of reference
- Negative symptoms (ie, flat affect, avolition, alogia)

http://obgynebooks.com

General Considerations

The incidence of schizophrenia is about 1 per 10,000 per year. The onset of schizophrenia is typically between the middle to late teenage and early 30s. Symptoms usually begin after puberty, although a full "psychotic break" may not occur until the young adult years. Childhood onset (before puberty) of psychotic symptoms due to schizophrenia is uncommon and usually indicates a more severe form of the spectrum of schizophrenic disorders. Childhood-onset schizophrenia is more likely to be found in boys.

Schizophrenia has a strong genetic component. Other psychotic disorders that may be encountered in childhood or adolescence include schizoaffective disorder and psychosis not otherwise specified (psychosis NOS). Psychosis NOS may be used as a differential diagnosis when psychotic symptoms are present, but the cluster of symptoms is not consistent with a schizophrenia diagnosis.

Identification & Diagnosis

Children and adolescents display many of the symptoms of adult schizophrenia. Hallucinations or delusions, bizarre and morbid thought content, and rambling and illogical speech are typical. Affected individuals tend to withdraw into an internal world of fantasy and may then equate fantasy with external reality. They generally have difficulty with schoolwork and with family and peer relationships. Adolescents may have a prodromal period of depression prior to the onset of psychotic symptoms. The majority of patients with childhood-onset schizophrenia have had nonspecific psychiatric symptoms or symptoms of delayed development for months or years prior to the onset of their overtly psychotic symptoms.

Obtaining a family history of mental illness is critical when assessing children and adolescents with psychotic symptoms. Psychological testing, particularly the use of projective measures, is often helpful in identifying or ruling out psychotic thought processes. Psychotic symptoms in children younger than age 8 years must be differentiated from manifestations of normal vivid fantasy life or abuse-related symptoms. Children with psychotic disorders often have learning and attention disabilities in addition to disorganized thoughts, delusions, and hallucinations. In psychotic adolescents, mania is differentiated by high levels of energy, excitement, and irritability. Any child or adolescent exhibiting new psychotic symptoms requires a medical evaluation that includes physical and neurologic examinations (including consideration of magnetic resonance imaging and electroencephalogram), drug screening, and metabolic screening for endocrinopathies, Wilson disease, and delirium.

Treatment

The treatment of childhood and adolescent schizophrenia focuses on four main areas: (1) decreasing active psychotic symptoms, (2) supporting development of social and cognitive skills, (3) reducing the risk of relapse of psychotic symptoms, and (4) providing support and education to parents and family members. Antipsychotic medications (neuroleptics) are the primary psychopharmacologic intervention. In addition, a supportive, reality-oriented focus in relationships can help to reduce hallucinations, delusions, and frightening thoughts. In situations where psychosis is evident, a referral to a psychiatrist is recommended. In cases of severe impairment, hospitalization is required to maintain safety and initiate treatment. A special school or day treatment environment may be necessary, depending on the child's or adolescent's ability to tolerate the school day and classroom activities. Support for the family emphasizes the importance of clear, focused communication and an emotionally calm climate in preventing recurrences of overtly psychotic symptoms.

Special Considerations Regarding the Use of Antipsychotic Medication

While it is the expected that a psychiatrist initiate treatment, primary care providers undoubtedly treat children on antipsychotics and should become familiar with management and potential common and severe side effects of this class of medication. The "atypical antipsychotics" differ from conventional antipsychotics in their receptor specificity and effect on serotonin receptors. Conventional antipsychotics are associated with a higher incidence of movement disorders and extrapyramidal symptoms due to their wider effect on dopamine receptors. The atypical antipsychotics have a better side-effect profile for most individuals and comparable efficacy for the treatment of psychotic symptoms and aggression. Because of their increased use over conventional antipsychotics, the information that follows primarily focuses on safe use of atypical antipsychotics.

Common adverse effects of the atypical antipsychotics are cognitive slowing, sedation, orthostasis, and weight gain. Most side effects tend to be dose related. Less frequent, but important side effects are development of type 2 diabetes and change in lipid and cholesterol profile. The risk-benefit ratio of the medication for the identified target symptom should be carefully considered and reviewed with the parent or guardian. Providers should obtain baseline height, weight, and waist circumference, observe and examine for tremors and other abnormal involuntary movements, and establish baseline values for CBC and LFTs, lipid profile, and cholesterol. Antipsychotics can cause QT prolongation leading to ventricular arrhythmias. Therefore, it is important to obtain an ECG if there is a history of cardiac disease or arrhythmia. Medications that affect the cytochrome P-450 isoenzyme pathway (including SSRIs) may increase the neuroleptic plasma concentration and increase risk of QTc prolongation.

In addition to the above concerns, postmarketing clinical use has demonstrated significant reports of hyperglycemia,

http://obgynebooks.com

and diabetes mellitus. Table 7–16 presents the currently recommended monitoring calendar. Baseline and ongoing evaluations of significant markers are considered standard clinical practice. It is important to mention other side effects, which include irregular menses, gynecomastia, and galactorrhea due to increased prolactin, sexual dysfunction, photosensitivity, rashes, lowered seizure threshold, hepatic dysfunction, and blood dyscrasias.

Other troublesome side effects of antipsychotics include dystonia, akathisia (characterized by an urge to be in constant motion and difficulty sitting still), pseudoparkinsonism, and tardive dyskinesia (TD). These side effects typically occur in a stepwise fashion and are also dose related. The first three are reversible and typically are relieved by anticholinergic agents, such as benztropine (Cogentin) and diphenhydramine, or β-blockers, specifically for akathisia. The risk of TD is small in patients on atypical antipsychotics, and those on conventional antipsychotics for less than 6 months. There is no universally effective treatment. Withdrawal dyskinesias are reversible movement disorders that appear following withdrawal of neuroleptic medications. Dyskinetic movements develop within 1–4 weeks after withdrawal of the drug and may persist for months.

A severe side effect of antipsychotics is neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS). NMS is a very rare medical emergency associated primarily with the conventional antipsychotics, although it has also been reported with atypical antipsychotics. It is manifested by severe muscular rigidity, mental status changes, fever, autonomic lability, and myoglobinemia. NMS can occur without muscle rigidity in patients taking atypical antipsychotics and should be considered in the differential diagnosis of any patient on antipsychotics who presents with high fever and altered mental status. Mortality as high as 30% has been reported. Treatment includes immediate medical assessment and withdrawal of the neuroleptic and may require transfer to an intensive care unit.

The patient should be examined at least every 3 months for side effects, including observation for TD using the Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale quarterly monitoring of blood pressure, weight gain, abdominal circumference, dietary and exercise habits, and, if indicated, fasting blood glucose and lipid panels. In cases of significant weight gain or abnormal laboratory values, patients should either be switched to an agent with a decreased risk for these adverse events or should receive specific treatments for the adverse events when discontinuation of the offending agent is not possible. In general, a child and adolescent psychiatrist should evaluate children with psychosis, initiate treatment and refer back to the pediatrician once symptoms are adequate control.

Table 7–16. Health monitoring and antipsychotics.

	After Initiation			Thereafter[a]		
Baseline	4 wk	8 wk	12 wk	Quarterly	Annually	q5y
Personal/family history					□	
Weight (BMI)	□	□	□	□		
Waist circumference					□	
BP			□		□	
Fasting blood sugar			□		□	
Fasting lipid profile			□			□

[a]More frequent assessments may be warranted based on clinical status.

» Other Considerations

Antipsychotics are also used for acute mania and as adjuncts to antidepressants in the treatment of psychotic depression (with delusions or hallucinations). Antipsychotics may also be used cautiously in refractory PTSD, in refractory OCD, and in individuals with markedly aggressive behavioral problems unresponsive to other interventions. In some instances, they may be useful for the body image distortion and irrational fears about food and weight gain associated with anorexia nervosa.

» Prognosis

Schizophrenia is a chronic disorder with exacerbations and remissions of psychotic symptoms. Generally, earlier onset (prior to age 13 years), poor premorbid functioning (oddness or eccentricity), and predominance of negative symptoms (withdrawal, apathy, or flat affect) over positive symptoms (hallucinations or paranoia) predict more severe disability, while later age of onset, normal social and school functioning prior to onset, and predominance of positive symptoms are associated with better outcomes and life adjustment to the illness.

There is a handout for monitoring the side effects of atypical antipsychotics available at: http://webspace.psychiatry.wisc.edu/walaszek/geropsych/docs/atypical-antipsychotic.doc.

Bhangoo RK, Carter RS: Very early interventions in psychotic disorders. Psychiatr Clin North Am 2009 Mar;32(1):81–94. doi: 10.1016/j.psc.2008.10.003 [PMID: 19248918].

Cantor-Graae E: The contribution of social factors to the development of schizophrenia: a review of recent findings. Can J Psychiatry 2007 May;52(5):277–286 [PMID: 17542378].

http://obgynebooks.com

Carlisle LL, McClellan J: Psychopharmacology of schizophrenia in children and adolescents. Pediatr Clin North Am 2011 Feb;58(1):205–218, xii [PMID: 21281857].

Family resources: http://www.nami.org/template.cfm? section= your_local_nami; http://www.mentalhealthamerica.net/go/faqs.

Kennedy E, Kumar A, Datta SS: Antipsychotic medication for childhood-onset schizophrenia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Jul 18;(3):CD004027 [PMID: 17636744].

Masi G, Mucci M, Pari C: Children with schizophrenia: clinical picture and pharmacological treatment. CNS Drugs 2006;20(10):841–866 [PMID: 16999454].

Sprong M et al: Pathways to psychosis: a comparison of the pervasive developmental disorder subtype Multiple Complex Developmental Disorder and the "At Risk Mental State." Schizophr Res 2008 Feb;99(1–3):38–47 [PMID: 18055179].

Thomas LE, Woods SW: The schizophrenia prodrome: a developmentally informed review and update for psychopharmacologic treatment. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 2006 Jan;15(1):109–133 [PMID: 16321727].

OTHER PSYCHIATRIC CONDITIONS

Several psychiatric conditions are covered elsewhere in this book. Refer to the following chapters for detailed discussion:

- Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD): see Chapter 3.
- Autism and pervasive developmental disorders: see Chapter 3.
- Enuresis and encopresis: see Chapter 3.
- Eating disorders: see Chapter 6.
- Intellectual disability/mental retardation: see Chapter 3.
- Substance abuse: see Chapter 5.
- Sleep disorders: see Chapter 3.
- Tourette syndrome and tic disorders: see Chapter 25.

http://obgynebooks.com

8

Child Abuse & Neglect

Antonia Chiesa, MD
Andrew P. Sirotnak, MD

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Forms of maltreatment:
  - Physical abuse
  - Sexual abuse
  - Emotional abuse and neglect
  - Physical neglect
  - Medical care neglect
  - Medical child abuse (Munchausen syndrome by proxy)
- Common historical features in child abuse cases:
  - Implausible mechanism provided for an injury
  - Discrepant, evolving, or absent history
  - Delay in seeking care
  - Event or behavior by a child that triggers a loss of control by the caregiver
  - History of abuse in the caregiver's childhood
  - Inappropriate affect of the caregiver
  - Pattern of increasing severity or number of injuries if no intervention
  - Social or physical isolation of the child or the caregiver
  - Stress or crisis in the family or the caregiver
  - Unrealistic expectations of caregiver for the child
  - Behavior changes of child

In 2013, an estimated 3.5 million referrals were made to child protective service agencies, involving the alleged maltreatment of approximately 6.4 million children. This represents an increase of 11% since 2009. Policies about how to screen incoming calls regarding abuse concerns and how to investigate suspicious cases varies among states. Some states investigate every case that is referred while others may screen out referrals based on certain criteria. More and more states are using an "alternative response" system to handle screened in reports that are deemed low or moderate risk. While traditional investigative methods focus on identifying whether a child has been maltreatment, these alternative response prioritize services needs of the family over determining victimization. Data collection strategies have been altered to capture both forms of assessment.

Children 3 years of age and younger have the highest rates of maltreatment. The total number of children confirmed as maltreated by child protective services was estimated to be 679,000 in 2013, yielding an abuse victimization rate of 9.1 per 1000 American children. (This statistic is referred to as the "unique count" where a child is counted only once regardless of the number of times the child is substantiated as a victim. Sexual abuse rates continue to decline. Rates for physical abuse and neglect increased slightly from the immediate past few years; however, all forms of child maltreatment have declined during the preceding decade. Neglect, again the most common form of abuse, was substantiated in 79.5% of cases, while 18% of cases involved physical abuse, and 9% involved sexual abuse. These declines correlate with overall decreases in crime. Additional factors such as improvements in education, reporting, and system responses have also likely played a role in the reduction.

There were 1484 victims of fatal child abuse in 2013 from 50 states, resulting in a rate of 2.04 child abuse deaths per 100,000 children, the lowest rate in the last 5 years. Fatality rates have varied during that time period. Fatalities occur with relatively low frequency, so rates are sensitive to changes in reporting and fluctuations in child population. Because of this, rates are thought to be lower than what is calculated. It is estimated that over 1500 children die from abuse and neglect each year. The topic has garnered national attention, and in early 2013 Congress created a commission

http://obgynebooks.com

to evaluate current programs and then create a national plan to reduce child deaths from abuse.

Substance abuse, poverty and economic strains, parental capacity and skills, and domestic violence are cited as the most common presenting problems in abusive families. Almost a third of substantiated maltreatment cases include domestic violence as a caregiver risk factor. Abuse and neglect of children are best considered in an ecological perspective, which recognizes the individual, family, social, and psychological influences that come together to contribute to the problem. Kempe and Helfer termed this the abusive pattern, in which the child, the crisis, and the caregiver's potential to abuse are components in the event of maltreatment. This chapter focuses on the knowledge necessary for the recognition, intervention, and follow-up of the more common forms of child maltreatment and highlights the role of pediatric professionals in prevention.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: Administration for Children, Youth, and Families. ChildMaltreatment2013. http://www.acf.hhs.gov/sites/default/files/cb/cm2013.pdf#page=20. Accessed January 29, 2013.

PREVENTION

Physical abuse is preventable in many cases. Extensive experience with and evaluation of high-risk families has shown that the home visitor services to families at risk can prevent abuse and neglect of children. These services can be provided by public health nurses or trained paraprofessionals, although more data are available describing public health nurse intervention. Parent education and primary care providers' anticipatory guidance are also helpful, with attention to handling situations that stress parents (eg, colic, crying behavior, and toilet training), age-appropriate discipline, and general developmental issues. Prevention of abusive injuries perpetrated by nonparent caregivers (eg, babysitters, nannies, and unrelated adults in the home) may be addressed by education and counseling of mothers about safe child care arrangements and choosing safe life partners. Hospital-based prevention programs that teach parents about the dangers of shaking an infant and how to respond to a crying infant have demonstrated some positive results; however, no one effort has been shown to be completely effective.

The prevention of sexual abuse is more difficult. Most efforts in this area involve teaching children to protect themselves and their "private parts" from harm or interference. The age of toilet training is a good time to provide anticipatory guidance to encourage parents to begin this discussion. The most rational approach is to place the burden of responsibility of prevention on the adults who supervise the child and the medical providers rather than on the children themselves. Knowing the parents' own history of any victimization is important, as the ability to engage in this anticipatory guidance discussion with a provider and their child may be affected by that history. Promoting Internet and social media safety and limiting exposure to sexualized materials and media should be part of this anticipatory guidance. Finally, many resources on this topic for parents can be found in the parenting and health sections of most bookstores.

Efforts to prevent emotional abuse of children have been undertaken through extensive media campaigns. No data are available to assess the effectiveness of this approach. The primary care physician can promote positive, nurturing, and nonviolent behavior in parents. The message that they are role models for a child's behavior is important. Screening for domestic violence during discussions on discipline and home safety can be effective in identifying parents and children at risk. Societal factors can influence a family's capacity to parent and care for a child. Issues of crime and safety within a community, the educational system and even the economy may indirectly affect family functioning.

American Academy of Pediatrics: SafetyNet. http://safetynet.aap.org/. Accessed January 29, 2013.

Barr RG et al: Effectiveness of educational materials designed to change knowledge and behaviors regarding crying and shaken-baby syndrome in mothers of newborns: a randomized, controlled trial. Pediatrics 2009;123:972–980 [PMID: 19255028].

Cahill L, Sherman P: Child abuse and domestic violence. Pediatr Rev 2006;27:339–345 [PMID: 16950939].

Dubowitz H, Lane WG, Semiatin JN, Magder LS, Venepally M, Jans M: The safe environment for every kid model: impact on pediatric primary care professionals. Pediatrics 2011;127:e962–e970 [PMID: 21444590].

Olds DL, Sadler L, Kitzman H: Home visiting for the prevention of child maltreatment: lessons learned during the past 20 years. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009;56:389–403 [PMID: 19358923].

CLINICAL FINDINGS

Child maltreatment may occur either within or outside the family. The proportion of intrafamilial to extrafamilial cases varies with the type of abuse as well as the gender and age of the child. Each of the following conditions may exist as separate or concurrent diagnoses.

Recognition of any form of abuse and neglect of children can occur only if child abuse is considered in the differential diagnosis of the child's presenting medical condition. The advent of electronic medical records can make documenting concerns and patterns of maltreatment more accessible for all care team members. The approach to the family should be supportive, nonaccusatory, and empathetic. The individual who brings the child in for care may not have any involvement in the abuse. Approximately one-third of child abuse incidents occur in extrafamilial settings. Nevertheless, the assumption that the caregiver is "nice," combined with

http://obgynebooks.com

the failure to consider the possibility of abuse, can be costly and even fatal. Raising the possibility that a child has been abused is not the same as accusing the caregiver of being the abuser. The health professional who is examining the child can explain to the family that several possibilities might explain the child's injuries or abuse-related symptoms. If the family or presenting caregiver is not involved in the child's maltreatment, they may actually welcome the necessary report and investigation.

In all cases of abuse and neglect, a detailed psychosocial history is important because psychosocial factors may indicate risk for or confirm child maltreatment. This history should include information on who lives in the home, other caregivers, domestic violence, substance abuse, and prior family history of physical or sexual abuse. Inquiring about any previous involvement with social services or law enforcement can help to determine risk.

Physical Abuse

Physical abuse of children is most often inflicted by a caregiver or family member but occasionally by a stranger. The most common manifestations include bruises, burns, fractures, head trauma, and abdominal injuries. A small but significant number of unexpected pediatric deaths, particularly in infants and very young children (eg, sudden unexpected infant death), are related to physical abuse.

A. History

The medical diagnosis of physical abuse is based on the presence of a discrepant history, in which the history offered by the caregiver is not consistent with the clinical findings. The discrepancy may exist because the history is absent, partial, changing over time, or simply illogical or improbable. A careful past medical, birth, and family history should also be obtained in order to assess for any other medical condition that might affect the clinical presentation. The presence of a discrepant history should prompt a request for consultation with a multidisciplinary child protection team or a report to the child protective services agency. This agency is mandated by state law to investigate reports of suspected child abuse and neglect. Investigation by social services and possibly law enforcement officers, as well as a home visit, may be required to sort out the circumstances of the child's injuries.

B. Physical Findings

The findings on examination of physically abused children may include abrasions, alopecia (from hair pulling), bites, bruises, burns, dental trauma, fractures, lacerations, ligature marks, or scars. Injuries may be in multiple stages of healing. Bruises in physically abused children are sometimes patterned (eg, belt marks, looped cord marks, or grab or pinch marks) and are typically found over the soft tissue areas of the body. Toddlers or older children typically sustain accidental bruises over bony prominences such as shins and elbows. Any unexplained bruise in an infant not developmentally mobile should be viewed with concern. Of note, the dating of bruises is not reliable and should be approached cautiously. (Child abuse emergencies are listed in Table 8–1.) Lacerations of the frenulum or tongue and bruising of the lips may be associated with force feeding or blunt force trauma. Pathognomonic burn patterns include stocking or glove distribution; immersion burns of the buttocks, sometimes with a "doughnut hole" area of sparing; and branding burns such as with cigarettes or hot objects (eg, grill, curling iron, or lighter). The absence of splash marks or a pattern consistent with spillage may be helpful in differentiating accidental from nonaccidental scald burns.

Table 8–1. Potential child abuse medical emergencies.

Any infant with bruises (especially head, facial, or abdominal), burns, or fractures
Any infant or child younger than 2 y with a history of suspected "shaken baby" head trauma or other inflicted head injury
Any child who has sustained suspicious or known inflicted abdominal trauma
Any child with burns in stocking or glove distribution or in other unusual patterns, burns to the genitalia, and any unexplained burn injury
Any child with disclosure or sign of sexual assault within 48–72 h after the alleged event if the possibility of acute injury is present or if forensic evidence exists

Head and abdominal trauma may present with signs and symptoms consistent with those injuries. Abusive head trauma (eg, shaken baby syndrome) and abdominal injuries may have no visible findings on examination. Symptoms can be subtle and may mimic other conditions such as gastroenteritis. Studies have documented that cases of inflicted head injury will be missed when practitioners fail to consider the diagnosis. The finding of retinal hemorrhages in an infant without an appropriate medical condition (eg, leukemia, congenital infection, or clotting disorder) should raise concern about possible inflicted head trauma. Retinal hemorrhages are not commonly seen after cardiopulmonary resuscitation in either infants or children.

C. Radiologic and Laboratory Findings

Certain radiologic findings are strong indicators of physical abuse. Examples are metaphyseal "corner" or "bucket handle" fractures of the long bones in infants, spiral fracture of the extremities in nonambulatory infants, rib fractures, spinous process fractures, and fractures in multiple stages of healing. Skeletal surveys in children aged 3 years or younger should be performed when a suspicious injury is diagnosed. Computed tomography or magnetic resonance

http://obgynebooks.com

imaging findings of subdural hemorrhage in infants—in the absence of a clear accidental history—are highly correlated with abusive head trauma. Abdominal computed tomography is the preferred test in suspected abdominal trauma. Any infant or very young child with suspected abuse-related head or abdominal trauma should be evaluated immediately by an emergency physician or trauma surgeon.

Coagulation studies and a complete blood cell count with platelets are useful in children who present with multiple or severe bruising in different stages of healing. Liver function tests should be considered to screen for abdominal injury. Coagulopathy conditions may confuse the diagnostic picture but can be excluded with a careful history, examination, laboratory screens, and hematologic consultation, if necessary.

American Academy of Pediatrics: Visual Diagnosis of Child Abuse [CD ROM], 3rd ed. American Academy of Pediatrics, 2008.

Anderst JD, Carpenter SL, Abshire TC: American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Hematology Oncology, Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect: evaluation for bleeding disorders for suspected child physical abuse. Pediatrics 2013 Apr;131(4):e1314–e1322. doi: 10.1542 [PMID: 23530182].

Christian CW, Block R: American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect: abusive head trauma in infants and children. Pediatrics 2009;123(5):1409–1411 [PMID: 19403508]. Reaffirmed 03/13

Flaherty EG, Perez-Rossello JM, Levine MA, Hennrikus WL: American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect; Section on Radiology; Section on Endocrinology; Section on Orthopaedics; Society for Pediatric Radiology: evaluating children with fractures for child physical abuse. Pediatrics 2013;131:4 [PMID: 24470642].

Hymel KP: American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect; National Association of Medical Examiners: distinguishing sudden infant death syndrome from child abuse fatalities. Pediatrics 2006;118:421 [PMID: 16818592]. Reaffirmed 03/13

Kempe AM et al: Patterns of skeletal fractures in child abuse: systematic review. BMJ 2008;337:a1518 [PMID: 18832412].

Sheets LK, Leach ME, Koszewski IJ, Lessmeier AM, Nugent M, Simpson P. Sentinel injuries in infants evaluated for child physical abuse. Pediatrics 2013;131(4):701–707 [PMID 23478861].

Sexual Abuse

Sexual abuse is defined as the engaging of dependent, developmentally immature children in sexual activities that they do not fully comprehend and to which they cannot give consent, or activities that violate the laws and taboos of a society. It includes all forms of incest, sexual assault or rape, and pedophilia. This includes fondling, oral-genital-anal contact, all forms of intercourse or penetration, exhibitionism, voyeurism, exploitation, or prostitution, and the involvement of children in the production of pornography. Although over the past decade, there has been a small downward trend nationally in total reports of sexual abuse cases, exploitation and enticement of children and adolescents via the Internet and social media remains a growing trend.

A. History

Sexual abuse may come to the clinician's attention in different ways: (1) The child may be brought in for routine care or for an acute problem, and sexual abuse may be suspected by the medical professional as a result of the history or the physical examination. (2) The parent or caregiver, suspecting that the child may have been sexually abused, may bring the child to the health care provider and request an examination to rule in or rule out abuse. (3) The child may be referred by child protective services or the police for an evidentiary examination following either disclosure of sexual abuse by the child or an allegation of abuse by a parent or third party. Table 8–2 lists the common presentations of child sexual abuse. It should be emphasized that with the exception of acute trauma, certain sexually transmitted infections (STIs), or forensic laboratory evidence, none of these presentations is specific. The presentations listed should arouse suspicion of the possibility of sexual abuse and lead the practitioner to ask the appropriate questions—again, in a compassionate and nonaccusatory manner. Asking the child nonleading, age-appropriate questions is important and is often best handled by the most experienced interviewer after a report is made. Community agency protocols may exist for child advocacy centers that help in the investigation of these reports. Concerns expressed about sexual abuse in the context of divorce and custody disputes should be handled in

Table 8–2. Presentations of sexual abuse.

General or direct statements about sexual abuse
Sexualized knowledge, play, or behavior in developmentally immature children
Sexual abuse of other children by the victim
Behavioral changes
Sleep disturbances (eg, nightmares and night terrors)
Appetite disturbances (eg, anorexia, bulimia)
Depression, social withdrawal, anxiety
Aggression, temper tantrums, impulsiveness
Neurotic or conduct disorders, phobias or avoidant behaviors
Guilt, low self-esteem, mistrust, feelings of helplessness
Hysterical or conversion reactions
Suicidal, runaway threats or behavior
Excessive masturbation
Medical conditions
Recurrent abdominal pain or frequent somatic complaints
Genital, anal, or urethral trauma
Recurrent complaints of genital or anal pain, discharge, bleeding
Enuresis or encopresis
Sexually transmitted infections
Pregnancy
Promiscuity or prostitution, sexual dysfunction, fear of intimacy
School problems or truancy
Substance abuse

http://obgynebooks.com

the same manner, with the same objective, nonjudgmental documentation. The American Academy of Pediatrics has published guidelines for the evaluation of child sexual abuse as well as others relating to child maltreatment.

B. Physical Findings

The genital and anal findings of sexually abused children, as well as the normal developmental changes and variations in prepubertal female hymens, have been described in journal articles and visual diagnosis guides. To maintain a sense of comfort and routine for the patient, the genital examination should be conducted in the context of a full body checkup. For nonsexually active, prepubertal girls, an internal speculum examination is rarely necessary unless there is suspicion of internal injury. The external female genital structures can be well visualized using labial separation and traction with the child in the supine frog leg or knee-chest position. The majority of victims of sexual abuse exhibit no physical findings. The reasons for this include delay in disclosure by the child, abuse that may not cause physical trauma (eg, fondling, oral-genital contact, or exploitation by pornographic photography), or rapid healing of minor injuries such as labial, hymenal, or anal abrasions, contusions, or lacerations. Nonspecific abnormalities of the genital and rectal regions such as erythema, rashes, and irritation may not suggest sexual abuse in the absence of a corroborating history, disclosure, or behavioral changes.

Certain STIs should strongly suggest sexual abuse. Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection or syphilis beyond the perinatal period is diagnostic of sexual abuse. Chlamydia trachomatis, herpes simplex virus, trichomoniasis, and human papillomavirus are all sexually transmitted, although the course of these potentially perinatally acquired infections may be protracted. Herpes simplex can be transmitted by other means; however, the presence of an infection should prompt a careful assessment for sexual abuse. Risk is higher in children older than five with isolated genital lesions or with herpes simplex type 2 infections. In the case of human papillomavirus, an initial appearance of venereal warts beyond the toddler age should prompt a discussion regarding concerns of sexual abuse. Human papillomavirus is a ubiquitous virus and can be spread innocently by caregivers with hand lesions; biopsy and viral typing is rarely indicated and often of limited availability. Finally, sexual abuse must be considered with the diagnosis of C trachomatis or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections when other modes of transmission (eg, transfusion or perinatal acquisition) have been ruled out. Postexposure prophylaxis medications for HIV in cases of acute sexual assault should be considered only after assessment of risk of transmission and consultation with an infectious disease expert.

Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) have been used with increasing frequency for screening of STIs in sexual abuse victims, including for children younger than 12 years. For prepubertal children, NAATs can be used for vaginal specimens or urine from girls. If a NAAT is positive, a second confirmatory NAAT test that analyzes an alternate target of the genetic material in the sample or a standard culture is needed. For boys and for extragenital specimens, culture is still the preferred method. Finally, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the AAP Redbook list guidelines for the screening and treatment of STIs in the context of sexual abuse.

C. Examination, Evaluation, and Management

The forensic evaluation of sexually abused children should be performed in a setting that prevents further emotional distress. All practitioners should have access to a rape kit, which guides the practitioner through a stepwise collection of evidence and cultures. This should occur in an emergency department or clinic where chain of custody for specimens can be ensured. The most experienced examiner (pediatrician, nurse examiner, or child advocacy center) is preferable. If the history indicates that the adolescent may have had contact with the ejaculate of a perpetrator within 120 hours, a cervical examination to look for semen or its markers (eg, acid phosphatase) should be performed according to established protocols. Prior to any speculum examination of an assault victim, it is important to consider the child's physiologic and emotional maturation, and whether she has been sexually active or had a speculum examination in the past. A speculum examination in a prepubertal child is rarely indicated unless there is concern for internal injury and in those cases, it is generally advised to perform the examination under anesthesia and with the assistance of gynecology. More important, if there is a history of possible sexual abuse of any child within the past several days, and the child reports a physical complaint or a physical sign is observed (eg, genital or anal bleeding or discharge), the child should be examined for evidence of trauma. Colposcopic examination may be critical for determining the extent of the trauma and providing documentation for the legal system.

All the components of a forensic evidence collection kit may not be indicated in the setting of child sexual abuse (as opposed to adult rape cases); the clinical history and exposure risk should guide what specimens are collected. Beyond 120 hours, evaluation is tailored to the history provided. The involved orifices should be tested for N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis, and vaginal secretions evaluated for Trichomonas. These infections and bacterial vaginosis are the most frequently diagnosed infections among older girls who have been sexually assaulted. RPR, hepatitis B, and HIV serology should be drawn at baseline and repeated in 3 months. Pregnancy testing should be done as indicated.

Acute sexual assault cases that involve trauma or transmission of body fluid should have STI prophylaxis. Using

http://obgynebooks.com

adult doses of ceftriaxone (250 mg IM in a single dose), metronidazole (2 g orally in a single dose), and either azithromycin (1 g orally in a single dose) or doxycycline (100 mg orally twice a day for 7 days) should be offered when older or adolescent patients present for evaluation. (Pediatric dosing is calculated by weight and can be found in standard references.) Hepatitis B vaccination should be administered to patients if they have not been previously vaccinated and there should be consideration to providing hepatitis B immunoglobulin in certain high-risk cases. No effective prophylaxis is available for hepatitis C. Evaluating the perpetrator for a sexually transmitted infection, if possible, can help determine risk exposure and guide prophylaxis. HIV prophylaxis should be considered in certain circumstances (see Chapter 44). For postpubertal girls, contraception should be given if rape abuse occurred within 120 hours.

Although it is often difficult for persons to comply with follow-up examinations weeks after an assault, such examinations are essential to detect new infections, complete immunization with hepatitis B vaccination if needed, and continue psychological support.

Black CM et al: Multicenter study of nucleic acid amplification tests for detection of Chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae in children being evaluated for sexual abuse. Pediatr Infect Dis 2009;28(7):608–613 [PMID: 19451856].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2010. http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/2010/sexual-assault.htm. Accessed January 29, 2013.

Girardet RG et al: Collection of forensic evidence from pediatric victims of sexual assault. Pediatrics 2011;128:233–238 [PMID: 21788219].

Girardet RG et al: HIV post-exposure prophylaxis in children and adolescents presenting for reported sexual assault. Child Abuse Negl 2009;33:173 [PMID: 19324415].

Jenny C, Crawford-Jakubiak JE; American Academy of Pediatrics; Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect: The evaluation of children in the primary care setting when sexual abuse is suspected. Pediatrics 2013;132:2 [PMID: 23897912].

McCann J et al: Healing of hymenal injuries in prepubertal and adolescent girls: a descriptive study. Pediatrics 2007;119:e1094 [PMID: 17420260].

Noll JG, Shenk CE: Teen birth rates in sexually abused and neglected females. Pediatrics 2013;131:e1181–e1187 [23530173].

Thackeray et al: Forensic evidence collection and DNA identification in acute child sexual assault. Pediatrics 2011;128:227–232 [PMID: 21788217].

Emotional Abuse & Neglect

Emotional or psychological abuse has been defined as the rejection, ignoring, criticizing, isolation, or terrorizing of children, all of which have the effect of eroding their self-esteem. The most common form is verbal abuse or denigration. Children who witness domestic violence should be considered emotionally abused, as a growing body of literature has shown the negative effects of intimate partner violence on child development.

The most common feature of emotional neglect is the absence of normal parent-child attachment and a subsequent inability to recognize and respond to an infant's or child's needs. A common manifestation of emotional neglect in infancy is nutritional (nonorganic) failure to thrive. Emotionally neglectful parents appear to have an inability to recognize the physical or emotional states of their children. For example, an emotionally neglectful parent may ignore an infant's cry if the cry is perceived incorrectly as an expression of anger. This misinterpretation leads to inadequate nutrition and failure to thrive.

Emotional abuse may cause nonspecific symptoms in children. Loss of self-esteem or self-confidence, sleep disturbances, somatic symptoms (eg, headaches and stomach aches), hypervigilance, or avoidant or phobic behaviors (eg, school refusal or running away) may be presenting complaints. These complaints may also be seen in children who experience domestic violence. Emotional abuse can occur in the home or day care, school, sports team, or other settings.

Physical Neglect & Failure to Thrive

Physical neglect is the failure to provide the necessary food, clothing, and shelter and a safe environment in which children can grow and develop. Although often associated with poverty or ignorance, physical neglect involves a more serious problem than just lack of resources. There is often a component of emotional neglect and either a failure or an inability, intentionally or otherwise, to recognize and respond to the needs of the child.

A. History

Even though in 2013 neglect was confirmed for over three-quarters of all victims, neglect is not easily documented on history. Given that neglect is the most common form of abuse, providers should be proactive in their approach to recognition and treatment. Physical neglect—which must be differentiated from the deprivations of poverty—will be present even after adequate social services have been provided to families in need. The clinician must evaluate the psychosocial history and family dynamics when neglect is a consideration and is in a unique position to intervene when warning signs first emerge. A careful social services evaluation of the home and entire family may be required. The primary care provider must work closely with a social service agency and explain the known medical information to help guide their investigation and decision making.

The history offered in cases of growth failure (failure to thrive) is often discrepant with the physical findings. Infants who have experienced a significant deceleration in growth

http://obgynebooks.com

are probably not receiving adequate amounts or appropriate types of food despite the dietary history provided. Medical conditions causing poor growth in infancy and early childhood can be ruled out with a detailed history and physical examination with minimal laboratory tests. A psychosocial history may reveal maternal depression, family chaos or dysfunction, or other previously unknown social risk factors (eg, substance abuse, violence, poverty, or psychiatric illness). Placement of the child with another caregiver is usually followed by a dramatic weight gain. Hospitalization of the severely malnourished patient is sometimes required, but most cases are managed on an outpatient basis.

B. Physical Findings

Infants and children with nonorganic failure to thrive have a relative absence of subcutaneous fat in the cheeks, buttocks, and extremities. Other conditions associated with poor nutrient and vitamin intake may be present. If the condition has persisted for some time, these patients may also appear and act depressed. Older children who have been chronically emotionally neglected may also have short stature (ie, deprivation dwarfism). The head circumference is usually normal in cases of nonorganic failure to thrive. Microcephaly may indicate a prenatal condition, congenital disease, or chronic nutritional deprivation and increases the likelihood of more serious and possibly permanent developmental delay.

C. Radiologic and Laboratory Findings

Children with failure to thrive or malnutrition may not require an extensive workup. Assessment of the patient's growth curve, as well as careful plotting of subsequent growth parameters after treatment, is critical. Complete blood cell count, urinalysis, electrolyte panel, and thyroid and liver function tests are sufficient screening. Newborn screening should be documented as usual. Other tests should be guided by any aspect of the clinical history that points to a previously undiagnosed condition. A skeletal survey and head computed tomography scan may be helpful if concurrent physical abuse is suspected. The best screening method, however, is placement in a setting in which the child can be fed and monitored. Hospital or foster care placement may be required. Weight gain may not occur for several days to a week in severe cases.

Medical Care Neglect

Medical care neglect is failure to provide the needed treatment to infants or children with life-threatening illness or other serious or chronic medical conditions. Many states have repealed laws that supported religious exemptions as reason for not seeking medical care for sick children.

Medical Child Abuse

Previously referred to as Munchausen syndrome by proxy, medical child abuse is the preferred term for a relatively unusual clinical scenario in which a caregiver seeks inappropriate and unnecessary medical care for a child. Oftentimes, the caregiver either simulates or creates the symptoms or signs of illness in a child. However, the use of the term medical child abuse emphasizes harm caused to the child as opposed to the psychopathology or motivation of the caregiver. Cases can be complicated and a detailed review of all medical documentation and a multidisciplinary approach is required. Fatal cases have been reported.

A. History

Children may present with the signs and symptoms of whatever illness is factitiously produced or simulated. The child can present with a long list of medical problems or often bizarre, recurrent complaints. Persistent doctor shopping and enforced invalidism (eg, not accepting that the child is healthy and reinforcing that the child is somehow ill) are also described in the original definition of Munchausen syndrome by proxy.

B. Physical Findings

They may be actually ill or, more often, are reported to be ill and have a normal clinical appearance. Among the most common reported presentations are recurrent apnea, dehydration from induced vomiting or diarrhea, sepsis when contaminants are injected into a child, change in mental status, fever, gastrointestinal bleeding, and seizures.

C. Radiologic and Laboratory Findings

Recurrent polymicrobial sepsis (especially in children with indwelling catheters), recurrent apnea, chronic dehydration of unknown cause, or other highly unusual unexplained laboratory findings should raise the suspicion of Munchausen syndrome by proxy. Toxicological testing may also be useful.

Black MM et al: Failure to thrive as distinct from child neglect. Pediatrics 2006;117:1456–1457 [PMID 16585354].

Block RW, Krebs NF: Failure to thrive as a manifestation of child neglect. Pediatrics 2005;116:1234–1237 [PMID 16264015].

DeBellis MD: The psychobiology of neglect. Child Maltreat 2005;10:150 [PMID: 15798010].

Flaherty EG, MacMillan HL; American Academy of Pediatrics; Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect: Caregiver-fabricated illness in a child: a manifestation of child maltreatment. Pediatrics 2013; 32:3. [PMID: 23979088].

Hymel KP; American Academy of Pediatrics; Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect: When is lack of supervision neglect? Pediatrics 2006;118:1296 [PMID: 16951030].

Roesler T, Jenny C: Medical Child Abuse: Beyond Munchausen Syndrome by Proxy. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2009.

http://obgynebooks.com

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis for abuse and neglect may be straightforward (ie, traumatic vs nontraumatic injury). It can also be more elusive as in the case of multiple injuries that may raise concern for an underlying medical condition or in situations where complex, but nonspecific behavior changes or physical symptoms reflect the emotional impact of maltreatment.

The differential diagnosis of all forms of physical abuse can be considered in the context of a detailed trauma history, family medical history, radiographic findings, and laboratory testing. The diagnosis of osteogenesis imperfecta or other collagen disorders, for example, may be considered in the child with skin and joint findings or multiple fractures with or without the classic radiographic presentation and is best made in consultation with a geneticist, an orthopedic surgeon, and a radiologist. Trauma—accidental or inflicted—leads the differential diagnosis list for subdural hematomas. Coagulopathy; disorders of copper, amino acid, or organic acid metabolism (eg, Menkes syndrome and glutaric acidemia type 1); chronic or previous central nervous system infection; birth trauma; or congenital central nervous system malformation (eg, arteriovenous malformations or cerebrospinal fluid collections) may need to be ruled out in some cases. It should be recognized, however, that children with these rare disorders can also be victims of abuse or neglect.

There are medical conditions that may be misdiagnosed as sexual abuse. When abnormal physical examination findings are noted, knowledge of these conditions is imperative to avoid misinterpretation. The differential diagnosis includes vulvovaginitis, lichen sclerosus, dermatitis, labial adhesions, congenital urethral or vulvar disorders, Crohn disease, and accidental straddle injuries to the labia. In most circumstances, these can be ruled out by careful history and examination.

TREATMENT

A. Management

Physical abuse injuries, STIs, and medical sequelae of neglect should be treated immediately. Children with failure to thrive related to emotional and physical neglect need to be placed in a setting in which they can be fed and cared for. Likewise, the child in danger of recurrent abuse or neglect needs to be placed in a safe environment. Cases can be complicated and psychosocial difficulties are common; therefore, a multidisciplinary approach which works with the family to engage in solving their own problems is helpful. Cooperation and coordination with social work and mental health colleagues are crucial. Given the developmental and emotional implications, prompt referral to mental health resources for any patient with a history of child abuse or neglect is crucial; although not every child with a history of maltreatment will need long-term mental health treatment. There has been significant progress made in identifying, researching, and implementing effective, evidence-based treatment of child maltreatment, especially in the area of treatment for emotional trauma. There are also effective interventions for improving parenting and attachment problems that are common in child maltreatment cases. Pediatricians should be aware of community partners and resources to help families in need of services.

B. Reporting

In the United States, clinicians and many other professionals who come in contact with or care for children are mandated reporters. If abuse or neglect is suspected, a report must be made to the local or state agency designated to investigate such matters. In most cases, this will be the child protective services agency. Law enforcement agencies may also receive such reports. The purpose of the report is to permit professionals to gather the information needed to determine whether the child's environment (eg, home, school, day care setting, or foster home) is safe. Recent studies document physician barriers to reporting, but providers should be mindful that good faith reporting is a legal requirement for any suspicion of abuse. Failure to report concerns may have legal ramifications for the provider or serious health and safety consequences for the patient. Many hospitals and communities make child protection teams or consultants available when there are questions about the diagnosis and management in a child abuse case. A listing of pediatric consultants in child abuse is available from the American Academy of Pediatrics.

Finally, communication with social services, case management, and careful follow-up by primary care providers is crucial to ensuring ongoing safety of child.

Garner AS, Shonkoff JP, Siegel BS, et al; Committee on Psychosocial Aspects of Child and Family Health; Committee on Early Childhood, Adoption, and Dependent Care; Section on Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics: Early childhood adversity, toxic stress, and the role of the pediatrician: translating developmental science into lifelong health. Pediatrics 2012;129;e224–e231 [PMID: 22201148].

Jones R et al; Child Abuse Reporting Experience Study Research Group: Clinicians' description of factors influencing their reporting of suspected child abuse: report of the Child Abuse Reporting Experience Study Research Group. Pediatrics 2008 Aug;122(2):259–266 [PMID: 18676541].

National Child Traumatic Stress Network. http://www.nctsn.org/. Accessed January 29, 2013.

Shipman K, Taussig H: Mental health treatment of child abuse and neglect: the promise of evidence-based practice. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009;56:417–428 [PMID: 19358925].

http://obgynebooks.com

PROGNOSIS

Depending on the extent of injury resulting from physical or sexual abuse, the prognosis for complete recovery varies. Serious physical abuse that involves head injury, multisystem trauma, severe burns, or abdominal trauma carries significant morbidity and mortality risk. Hospitalized children with a diagnosis of child abuse or neglect have longer stays and are more likely to die. Long-term medical and developmental consequences are common. For example, children who suffer brain damage related to abusive head injury can have significant neurologic impairment, such as cerebral palsy, vision problems, epilepsy, microcephaly, and learning disorders. Other injuries like minor bruises or burns, fractures, and even injuries resulting from penetrating genital trauma can heal well and with no sequelae.

The emotional and psychological outcomes for child victims are often the most detrimental. Research demonstrates that there are clear neurobiologic effects of child maltreatment and other types of early childhood toxic stress. Physiologic changes to the brain can adversely affect the mental and physical health development of children for decades. Victims have increased rates of childhood and adult health problems, adolescent suicide, alcoholism and drug abuse, anxiety and depression, criminality and violence, and learning problems. Some children just need extra help addressing emotional regulation, coping skills, and rebuilding trust. There are effective, evidence-based interventions for child maltreatment. The primary care provider plays an important role in assuring appropriate medical and mental health care for maltreated children and families, and in advocating for victims across the child and young adult lifespan.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Adverse childhood experiences study. http://www.cdc.gov/ace/index.htm. Accessed January 29, 2013.

Child Welfare Information Gateway: Long-term consequences of child abuse and neglect. http://www.childwelfare.gov/pubs/factsheets/long_term_consequences.cfm. Accessed January 29, 2013.

Stirling J; American Academy of Pediatrics; Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect; Section on Adoption and Foster Care, Amaya-Jackson L; American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, Amaya-Jackson L; National Center for Child Traumatic Stress: Understanding the behavioral and emotional consequences of child abuse. Pediatrics 2008;122(3):667–673 [PMID: 18762538].

http://obgynebooks.com

9

Ambulatory & Office Pediatrics

Meghan Treitz, MD
Maya Bunik, MD, MSPH
David Fox, MD

Pediatric ambulatory outpatient services provide children and adolescents with preventive health care and acute and chronic care management services and consultations. In this chapter, special attention is given to the pediatric history and physical examination, normal developmental stages, screening laboratories, and a number of common pediatric issues.

The development of a physician-patient-parent relationship is crucially important if the patient and parent are to effectively confide their concerns. This relationship develops over time, with increasing numbers of visits, and is facilitated by the continuity of clinicians and other staff members. This clinical relationship is based on trust that develops as a result of several experiences in the context of the office visit. Perhaps the greatest factor facilitating the relationship is for patients or parents to experience advice as valid and effective. Anticipatory guidance should be age-appropriate and timely in order to be most helpful. Important skills include choosing vocabulary that communicates understanding and competence, demonstrating commitment of time and attention to the concern, and showing respect for areas that the patient or parent does not wish to address (assuming that there are no concerns relating to physical or sexual abuse or neglect). Parents and patients expect that their concerns will be managed confidentially and that the clinician understands and sympathizes with those concerns. The effective physician-patient-parent relationship is one of the most satisfying aspects of ambulatory pediatrics.

Tanner JL, Stein MT, Olson LM, Frintner MP, Radecki L: Reflections on well-child care practice: a national study of pediatric clinicians. Pediatrics 2009 Sep;124(3):849–857 [Epub 2009 Aug 10] [PMID: 19706587].

PEDIATRIC HISTORY

A unique feature of pediatrics is that the history represents an amalgam of parents' objective reporting of facts (eg, fever for 4 days), parents' subjective interpretation of their child's symptoms (eg, infant crying interpreted by parents as abdominal pain), and for older children their own history of events. Parents and patients may provide a specific and detailed history, or a vague history that necessitates more focused probing. Parents may or may not be able to distinguish whether symptoms are caused by organic illness or a psychological concern. Understanding the family and its hopes for and concerns about the child can help in the process of distinguishing organic, emotional, and/or behavioral conditions, thus minimizing unnecessary testing and intervention.

Although the parents' concerns need to be understood, it is essential also to obtain as much of the history as possible directly from the patient. Direct histories not only provide firsthand information but also give the child a degree of control over a potentially threatening situation and may reveal important information about the family.

Obtaining a comprehensive pediatric history is time consuming. Many offices provide questionnaires for parents to complete before the clinician sees the child. Data from questionnaires can make an outpatient visit more productive, allowing the physician to address problems in detail while more quickly reviewing areas that are not of concern. Questionnaires may be more productive than face-to-face interviews in revealing sensitive parts of the history. Developmental and mental health screening saves provider time and the results when reviewed with the parent or family member can yield critical information. However, failure to review and assimilate this information prior to the interview may cause a parent or patient to feel that the time and effort have been wasted.

Elements of the history that will be useful over time should be readily accessible in the medical record. In absence of an electronic medical record, such information can be accumulated on a summary sheet, as illustrated in Figure 9–1. Demographic data; a problem list; information about chronic medications, allergies, and previous hospitalizations; and

http://obgynebooks.com

Name _____ Nickname _____ D.O.B. _____
Mother/parent (1)_____ Father/parent (2)_____ Sibs _____
S.S.# _____ Insurance _____

Problems			Chronic Medications		
Date of onset	Description	Date resolved	Start date		Stop date
			Allergies		
			Date		
Date	Hospitalizations/Injuries/Procedures		Date	Consultants	

▲**Figure 9–1.** Use of a summary sheet such as this at the front of the chart or the electronic medical record facilitates reorienting the caregiver and his or her partners to the patient. Some practices keep track of health supervision visits on this sheet to tell the physician whether the child is likely to have received the appropriate preventive services. A second page documenting immunizations should record data required by the National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act. When an allergy with potential for anaphylaxis is identified, the patient should wear a medical alert bracelet and obtain an epinephrine kit, if appropriate.

the names of other physicians providing care for the patient are commonly included. Documentation of immunizations, including all data required by the National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act, should be kept on a second page.

The components of a comprehensive pediatric history are listed in Table 9–1. The information should, ideally, be obtained at the first office visit. The first seven items may be included on a summary sheet at the front of the medical record. Items 8 and 9, and a focused review of systems, are dealt with at each acute or chronic care visit. The entire list should be reviewed and augmented with relevant updates at each health supervision visit.

PEDIATRIC PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

During the pediatric physical examination, time must be taken to allow the patient to become familiar with the examiner. Interactions and instructions help the child understand

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 9–1. Components of the pediatric historical database.[a]

1. Demographic data	Patient's name and nickname, date of birth, social security number, sex, race, parents' names (first and last), siblings' names, and payment mechanism.
2. Problem list	Major or significant problems, including dates of onset and resolution.
3. Allergies	Triggering allergen, nature of the reaction, treatment needed, and date allergy was diagnosed.
4. Chronic medications	Name, concentration, dose, and frequency of chronically used medications.
5. Birth history	Maternal health during pregnancy such as bleeding, infections, smoking, alcohol and any medications, complications of pregnancy; duration of labor; form of delivery; and labor complications. Infant's birth weight, gestational age, Apgar scores, and problems in the neonatal period.
6. Screening procedures	Results of newborn screening, vision and hearing screening, any health screen, or screening laboratory tests. (Developmental screening results are maintained in the development section; see item 14.)
7. Immunizations	Antigen(s), date administered, vaccine manufacturer and lot number, and name and title of the person administering the vaccine; site, previous reaction and contraindications (eg, immunodeficiency or an evolving neurologic problem), date on vaccine information statement (VIS), and date VIS was provided.
8. Reasons for visit	The patient's or parents' concerns, stated in their own words, serve as the focus for the visit.
9. Present illness	A concise chronologic summary of the problems necessitating a visit, including the duration, progression, exacerbating factors, ameliorating interventions, and associations.
10. Medical history	A statement regarding the child's functionality and general well-being, including a summary record of significant illnesses, injuries, hospitalizations, and procedures.
11. Diet	Eating patterns, likes and dislikes, use of vitamins, and relative amounts of carbohydrates, fat, and protein in the diet, percentage of fat of milk provided. Inquiry about intake of fast food, candy, and sugar drinks.
12. Family history	Information about the illnesses of relatives, preferably in the form of a family tree.
13. Social history	Family constellation, relationships, parents' educational background, religious preference, and the role of the child in the family; socioeconomic profile of the family to identify resources available to the child, access to services that may be needed, and anticipated stressors.
14. Development	(1) Attainment of developmental milestones (including developmental testing results); (2) social habits and milestones (toilet habits, play, major activities, sleep patterns, discipline, peer relationships); (3) school progress and documentation of specific achievements and grades.
15. Sexual history	Family's sexual attitudes, sex education, sexual development, sexual secondary characteristics, activity, sexually transmitted diseases, menstruation onset and characteristics and birth control measures.
16. Review of systems (ROS)	Common symptoms in each major body system.

[a]The components of this table should be included in a child's medical record and structured to allow easy review and modification. The practice name and address should appear on all pages.

what is occurring and what is expected. A gentle, friendly manner and a quiet voice help establish a setting that yields a nonthreatening physical examination. The examiner should take into consideration the need for a quiet child, the extent of trust established, and the possibility of an emotional response (crying!) when deciding the order in which the child's organ systems are examined. Unpleasant procedures (eg, otoscopic examination) should be deferred until the end of the examination. Whether or not the physician can establish rapport with the child, the process should proceed efficiently and systematically.

Because young children may fear the examination and become fussy, simple inspection is important. For example, during an acute-care visit for fever, the examiner should observe the child's skin color and work of breathing prior to beginning the examination. During a health supervision visit, observation will provide the examiner with an opportunity to assess parent-child interactions.

Clothing should be removed slowly and gently to avoid threatening the child. A parent or the child is usually the best person to do this. Modesty should always be respected, and gown or drapes should be provided. Examinations of adolescents should be chaperoned whenever a pelvic examination or a stressful or painful procedure is performed.

Examination tables are convenient, but a parent's lap is a comfortable location for a young child. For most purposes,

http://obgynebooks.com

an adequate examination can be conducted on a "table" formed by the parent's and examiner's legs as they sit facing each other.

Although a thorough physical examination is important at every age, certain components of the examination may change based on the age of the patient. An astute clinician can detect signs of important clinical conditions in an asymptomatic child. In infancy, for example, physical examination can reveal the presence of craniosynostosis, congenital heart disease, or developmental dysplasia of the hip. Similarly, examination of a toddler may reveal pallor (possible iron-deficiency anemia) or strabismus. The routine examination of an older child or adolescent may reveal scoliosis or acanthosis nigricans (a finding associated with insulin resistance).

HEALTH SUPERVISION VISITS

One of several timetables for recommended health supervision visits is illustrated in Figure 9–2. (Note: A PDF printable format of this figure is available from the American Academy of Pediatrics [AAP].) The federal Maternal and Child Health Bureau has developed comprehensive health supervision guidelines through their Bright Futures program. In areas where evidence-based information is lacking, expert opinion has been used as the basis for these plans. Recently revised Bright Futures Guidelines emphasizes working collaboratively with families, recognizing the need for attention toward children with special health care needs, gaining cultural competence, and addressing complementary and alternative care, as well as integrating mental health care into the primary care setting. Practitioners should remember that guidelines are not meant to be rigid; services should be individualized according to the child's needs.

During health supervision visits, the practitioner should review child development and acute and chronic problems, conduct a complete physical examination, order appropriate screening tests, and anticipate future developments. New historical information should be elicited through an interval history. For example, "Since your last visit have there been any changes in your child and family's life that I should be aware of?" Development should be assessed by parental report, clinician observation, and a formal screening tool at each visit. Developmental surveillance with systematic use of standardized parent-directed screening questionnaires such as the Ages and Stages Questionnaire (ASQ) or the Parents' Evaluation of Developmental Status (PEDS) is recommended. Growth parameters should be carefully recorded, and weight, length, or height, head circumference (up to age 3), and body mass index (BMI) (for > 2 years) should be plotted and evaluated using established growth charts (see Chapter 3). Vision and hearing should be assessed subjectively at each visit, with objective assessments at intervals beginning after the child is old enough to cooperate with the screening test, usually at 4–5 years of age. Various laboratory screening tests may also be part of the visit.

Because fewer than 4% of asymptomatic children have physical findings on routine health maintenance visits, a major portion of the health supervision visit is devoted to anticipatory guidance. This portion of the visit enables the health care provider to address behavioral, developmental, injury prevention, and nutritional issues; school problems; and other age-appropriate issues that will arise before the next well-child visit.

Bright Futures Guidelines, 3rd ed. http://brightfutures.aap.org/pdfs/bf3%20pocket%20guide_final.pdf. Accessed February 20, 2015.

Geoffrey R Simon et al; American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Practice; Ambulatory Medicine: 2014 recommendations for pediatric preventive health care. Pediatrics 2014;133;568 [PMID: 24567012].

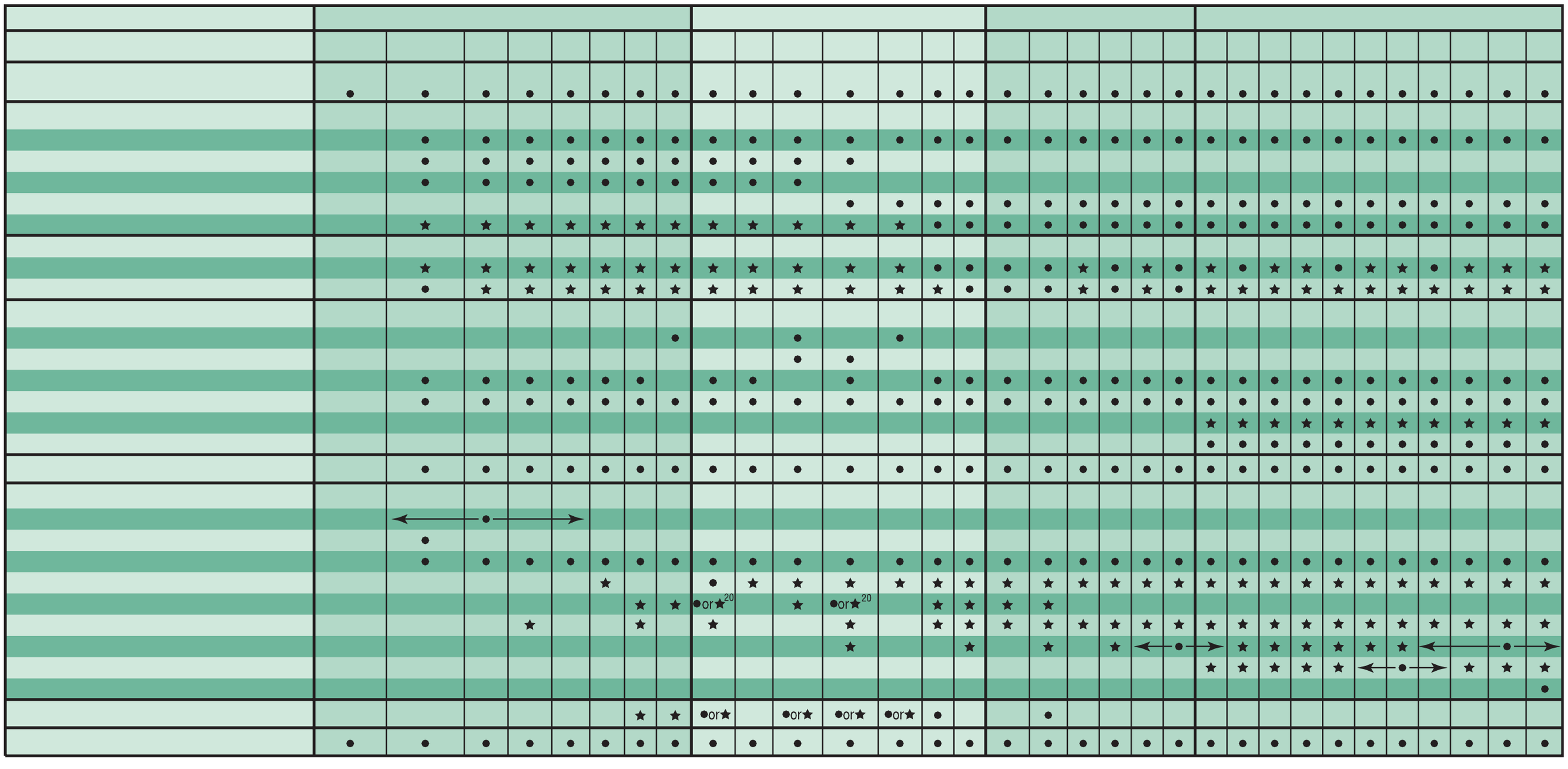
DEVELOPMENTAL & BEHAVIORAL ASSESSMENT

Addressing developmental and behavioral problems is one of the central features of pediatric primary care. The term developmental delay refers to the circumstance in which a child has not demonstrated a developmental skill (such as walking independently) by an age at which the vast majority of normally developing children have accomplished this task. Developmental delays are, in fact, quite common: approximately 18% of children younger than 18 years either have developmental delays or have conditions that place them at risk of developmental delays.

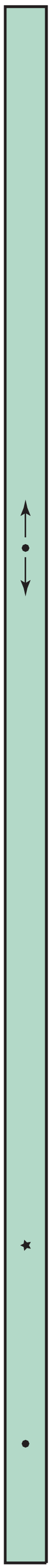
Pediatric practitioners are in a unique position to assess the development of their patients. This developmental assessment should ideally take the form of developmental surveillance, in which a skilled individual monitors development in multiple domains (gross motor, fine motor, language, and personal/social) over time as part of providing routine care. Developmental surveillance includes several key elements: listening to parent concerns; obtaining a developmental history; making careful observations during office visits; periodically screening all infants and children for delays using validated screening tools; recognizing conditions and circumstances that place children at increased risk of delays; and referring children who fail screening tests for further evaluation and intervention.

The prompt recognition of children with developmental delays is important for several reasons. Children with delays can be referred for a wide range of developmental therapies, such as those provided by physical, speech/language, and/or educational therapists. Children with delays, regardless of the cause, make better developmental progress if they receive appropriate developmental therapies than if they do not. Many infants and toddlers younger than 3 years with delays

http://obgynebooks.com



http://obgynebooks.com



http://obgynebooks.com

are eligible to receive a range of therapies and other services, often provided in the home, at no cost to families. Children aged 3 years and older with delays are eligible for developmental services through the local school system.

Several parent- and physician-administered developmental screening tools are available and should be utilized in order to more efficiently incorporate this process in the busy well child care visit. The PEDS, ASQ, and the Child Development Inventories (CDI) are screening tests that rely on parent report. Other screening tools, such as the Denver II screening test (reproduced in Chapter 3, Figure 3–2), the Early Language Milestone Scale (see Chapter 3, Figure 3–1), and the Bayley Infant Neurodevelopmental Screener, involve the direct observation of a child's skills by a care provider. All developmental screening tests have their strengths and weaknesses. The Denver II is familiar to many pediatric providers and is widely used. However, whereas the Denver II has relatively high sensitivity for detecting possible developmental delays, the specificity is poorer, and this may lead to the over referral of normal children for further developmental testing.

In addition to general developmental screening, autism-specific screens (such as the Modified Checklist for Autism in Toddlers [MCHAT]) should be administered at the 18- and 24-month health supervision visits.

Regardless of the approach taken to developmental screening, there are a number of important considerations: (1) The range of normal childhood development is broad, and therefore a child with a single missing skill in a single developmental area is less likely to have a significant developmental problem than a child showing multiple delays in several developmental areas (eg, gross motor and language delays); (2) continuity of care is important, because development is best assessed over time; (3) it is beneficial to routinely use formal screening tests to assess development; (4) if developmental delays are detected in primary care, these patients need referral and close follow-up to insure evaluation completion for further testing and likely will benefit from receiving developmentally focused therapies and strategies; and (5) parents appreciate when attention is paid to their child's development and generally react positively to referrals for appropriate developmental therapies.

Several developmental charts with age-based expectations for normal development are presented in Chapter 3 (see Tables 3–1 through 3–3), as well as a discussion of the recommended medical and neurodevelopmental evaluation of a child with a suspected developmental disorder.

In addition to developmental issues, pediatric providers are an important source of information and counseling for parents regarding a broad range of behavioral issues. The nature of the behavioral problems, of course, varies with the child's age. Some common issues raised by parents, discussed in detail in Chapter 3, include colic, feeding disorders, sleep problems, temper tantrums, breath-holding spells, and noncompliance. Behavioral issues in adolescents are discussed in Chapter 4.

American Academy of Pediatrics Council on Children With Disabilities: Identifying infants and young children with developmental disorders in the medical home: an algorithm for developmental surveillance and screening. Pediatrics 2006; 118:1808 [PMID: 168118591].

Godoy L, Carter AS: Identifying and addressing mental health risks and problems in primary care pediatric settings: a model to promote developmental and cultural competence. Am J Orthopsychiatry 2013 Jan;83(1):73–88 doi: 10.1111/ajop.12005 [PMID: 23330625].

Talmi A et al: Improving developmental screening documentation and referral completion. Pediatrics. 2014 Oct;134(4): e1181–e1188 doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-1151 [Epub 2014 Sep 1] [PMID: 25180272].

GROWTH PARAMETERS

Monitoring appropriate growth is pivotal in ambulatory pediatric practice.

Height, weight, and head circumference are carefully measured at each well-child examination and plotted on age- and sex-specific charts. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recently recommended use of the World Health Organization (WHO) growth standards to monitor growth for infants and children ages 0–2 in the United States, in lieu of its own growth charts. The WHO standards are based on a sample of 8500 babies (from Brazil, Ghana, India, Norway, Oman, and the United States) who were predominantly breast-fed for at least 4 months, still nursing at 1 year and living in nonsmoking households. The methods used to create the CDC growth charts and the WHO growth charts are similar for children aged 2 years and older.

To ensure accurate weight measurements for longitudinal comparisons, infants should be undressed completely and young children should be wearing underpants only. Recumbent length is plotted on the chart until approximately 2 years of age. When the child is old enough to be measured upright, height should be plotted on the charts for ages 2–20 years. Routine measurements of head circumference may cease if circumferential head growth has been steady for the first 2 years of life. However, if a central nervous system (CNS) problem exists or develops, or if the child has growth deficiency, this measurement continues to be useful. Tracking the growth velocity for each of these parameters allows early recognition of deviations from normal.

It is useful to note that in the first year of life, it is common for height and weight measurements to cross over a percentile line. After approximately 18 months, most healthy children tend to follow the curve within one growth channel.

Determination of whether or not a child's weight falls within a healthy range also relies on growth charts. For children younger than 2 years, the weight-for-length chart

http://obgynebooks.com

is used. For children 2–18 years, a BMI chart is used, which is a measure that correlates well with adiposity- and obesity-related comorbidities. The BMI is calculated as the weight (in kilograms) divided by the squared height (in meters). The BMI is useful for determining obesity (BMI ≥ 95th percentile for age) and at risk for overweight (BMI between 85th and 95th percentiles), as well as underweight status (BMI ≤ 5th percentile for age). It must be emphasized that "eyeballing" overweight/underweight is frequently inaccurate and should not substitute for careful evaluation of the data on growth charts.

CDC and WHO growth charts: http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts/. Accessed March 2, 2015.

Grummer-Strawn LM et al: Use of World Health Organization and CDC growth charts for children aged 0–59 months in the United States. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59(RR-9):1–15 [PMID: 20829749].

Krebs NF, Jacobson MS; American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Nutrition. Pediatrics. 2003 Aug;112(2):424–430 [PMID: 12897303].

BLOOD PRESSURE

Blood pressure screening at well-child visits starts at age 3 years. There are some conditions that warrant blood pressure monitoring at an earlier age:

- History of prematurity, very low birthweight, or other neonatal complication requiring intensive care
- Congenital heart disease (repaired or nonrepaired)
- Recurrent urinary tract infections, hematuria, or proteinuria
- Known renal disease or urologic malformations
- Family history of congenital renal disease
- Solid organ transplant
- Malignancy or bone marrow transplant
- Treatment with drugs known to raise blood pressure (steroids, oral contraceptives)
- Other conditions associated with hypertension (neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, etc)
- Evidence of elevated intracranial pressure

Accurate determination of blood pressure requires proper equipment (stethoscope, manometer and inflation cuff, or an automated system) and a cooperative, seated subject in a quiet room. Although automated blood pressure instruments are widely available and easy to use, blood pressure readings from these devices are typically 5 mm Hg higher for diastolic and 10 mm Hg higher for systolic blood pressure compared with auscultatory techniques. Therefore, the diagnosis of hypertension should not be made on the basis of automated readings alone. Additionally, blood pressure varies somewhat by the height and weight of the individual. Consequently, hypertension is diagnosed as a systolic or diastolic blood pressure greater than the 95th percentile based on the age and height (or weight) percentile of the patient using charts from the Fourth Report (see references).

The width of the inflatable portion of the cuff should be 40%–50% of the circumference of the limb. Obese children need a larger cuff size to avoid a falsely elevated blood pressure reading. Cuffs that are too narrow will overestimate and those that are too wide will underestimate the true blood pressure. Hypertension should not be diagnosed based on readings at one visit, but rather three separate occasions of documented hypertension are required. Repeated measurements at different visits over time should be tracked using flow charts in an electronic medical record or equivalent in a paper chart. Children with repeated blood pressure readings from the 90th to the 95th percentile may be classified as having prehypertension. Those with greater than between the 95th and 99th percentile plus 5 mm of Hg are classified as Stage 1 hypertension, and those greater than the 99th percentile plus 5 mm of Hg are termed Stage 2 hypertension. National High Blood Pressure Education Program recommends that all children with blood pressure of greater than or equal to 95% should have a complete blood count (CBC), serum nitrogen, creatinine, electrolytes, fasting lipid panel, glucose, urinalysis, urine culture, renal ultrasound, echocardiogram, and retinal examination. Nonpharmacologic interventions include diet, exercise, and weight management. Indications for pharmacologic therapy may include the following:

- Symptomatic hypertension
- Secondary hypertension
- Hypertensive target-organ damage
- Diabetes (types 1 and 2)
- Persistent hypertension despite nonpharmacologic measures

Based on a recent systematic review for US Preventive Services Task Force, it is unclear whether screening for hypertension in children and teens reduces adverse outcomes in adults.

National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group in High Blood Pressure in Children and Adolescents: The fourth report on diagnosis, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure in children and adolescents. Revised 2005. http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/resources/heart/hbp_ped.pdf. Accessed February 17, 2015.

Thompson M et al: Screening for hypertension in children and adolescents to prevent cardiovascular disease. Pediatrics 2013 Mar;131(3):490–525 doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-3523 [Epub 2013 Feb 25] [PMID: 23439904].

Wiesen J et al: Evaluation of pediatric patients with mild to moderate hypertension: yield of diagnostic testing. Pediatrics 2008;122:e988–e993 [PMID: 18977966].

http://obgynebooks.com

VISION & HEARING SCREENING

Examination of the eyes and an assessment of vision should be performed at every health supervision visit. Eye problems are relatively common in children: refractive errors (including myopia, hyperopia, and astigmatism), amblyopia (loss of visual acuity from cortical suppression of the vision of the eye), and/or strabismus (misalignment of the eyes) occur in 5%–10% of preschoolers. Assessment of vision should include visual inspection of the eyes and eyelids, alignment of eyes, and visual acuity.

From birth to 3 years of age, the movement and alignment of the eyes should be assessed and the pupils and red reflexes examined. The red reflex, performed on each pupil individually and then on both eyes simultaneously, is used to detect eye opacities (eg, cataracts or corneal clouding) and retinal abnormalities (eg, retinal detachment or retinoblastoma). By 3 months of age, an infant should be able to track or visually follow a moving object, with both eyes.

Starting at age 3, formal testing of visual acuity should be done if possible. This can be performed in the office with a variety of tests, including the tumbling E chart or picture tests such as Allen cards. In these tests, each eye is tested separately, with the nontested eye completely covered. Credit is given for any line on which the child gets more than 50% correct. Children who are unable to cooperate should be retested, ideally within 1 month, and those who cannot cooperate with repeated attempts should be referred to an ophthalmologist. Because visual acuity improves with age, results of the test are interpreted using the cutoff values in Table 9–2. However, any two-line discrepancy between the two eyes, even within the passing range (eg, 20/20 in one eye, 20/30 in the other in a child aged ≥ 6 years) should be referred to an ophthalmologist.

Throughout childhood, clinicians should screen for undetected strabismus (ocular misalignment). The corneal light reflex test can be used starting at 3 months and the cover test can be used beginning at 6 months to assess for strabismus. The corneal light reflex test, the cover test, and visual acuity test are described further in Chapter 16.

Recommendations for vision screening and indications for referral are listed in Table 9–3. Referral to an ophthalmologist is also recommended for preterm infants for evaluation of retinopathy of prematurity (ROP), as well as children with a family history of amblyopia, strabismus, retinoblastoma, or retinal degeneration. Children with Down syndrome should be referred to an ophthalmologist at 6 months of age given their increased risk for refractive error, strabismus, and cataracts.

Hearing loss, if undetected, can lead to substantial impairments in speech, language, and cognitive development. Because significant bilateral hearing loss is one of the more common major anomalies found at birth, and early detection and intervention of hearing loss leads to better outcomes for children, universal hearing screening is provided to newborns in most parts of the United States. Hearing in infants is assessed using either evoked otoacoustic emissions or auditory brainstem-evoked responses. Because universal newborn hearing screening is sometimes associated with false-positive test results, confirmatory audiology testing is required for abnormal tests.

Informal behavioral testing of hearing, such as observing an infant's response to a shaken rattle, may be unreliable. In fact, parental concerns about hearing are of greater predictive value than the results of informal tests, and such concerns should be taken seriously. Prior to age 4, infants should

Table 9–2. Age-appropriate visual acuity.[a]

Age (y)	Minimal Acceptable Acuity
3–5	20/40
≥ 6	20/30

[a]Refer to an ophthalmologist if minimal acuity is not met at a given age or if there is a difference in scores of two or more lines between the eyes.

Table 9–3. Recommended vision screening in the primary care office.

Test	Age for Screening	Indication(s) for Referral
Inspection of eyes and lids	All	
Red reflex	Birth until child can read eye chart	Abnormal red reflex, asymmetry of the red reflexes, or partially obscured red reflex
Assessment of fixation and following	Starting at 2 mo	Poor fixation/ following by 3 mo
Corneal light reflex for assessing strabismus	3 mo to 5 y	Asymmetry of light reflex (in relation to iris and pupil)
Cover testing for assessing strabismus	6 mo to 5 y	Presence of refixation movement
Fundoscopic examination	Starting at 3 y	
Preliterate eye chart testing	Starting at 3–4 y	Unable to pass 20/40 for ages 3–5 or 20/30 for 6 and older. Also refer if there is a difference of two or more lines between the eyes.

http://obgynebooks.com

be referred to an audiologist for testing if a concern arises. Conventional screening audiometry, in which a child raises her hand when a sound is heard, can be performed starting at age 4. Each ear should be tested at 500, 1000, 2000, and 4000 Hz and referred at threshold levels of greater than 20 dB at any of these frequencies. Any evidence of hearing loss should be substantiated by repeated testing, and if still abnormal, a referral for a formal hearing evaluation should be made.

The AAP periodicity schedule recommends routine hearing screening at 4, 5, 6, 8, and 10 years of age. Children with any risk factors for hearing loss should be closely followed and receive more frequent screening. A number of inherited or acquired conditions increase the risk of hearing loss. Sometimes hearing loss can be mistaken for inattention, and so hearing screening should be part of workup for attention problems. Additional details regarding hearing assessment are provided in Chapter 18.

American Academy of Pediatrics et al: Eye examination in infants, children, and young adults by pediatricians. Pediatrics 2003;111:902 [PMID: 12671132].

American Academy of Pediatrics et al: Red reflex examination in neonates, infants, and children. Pediatrics 2008;122:1401 [PMID: 19047263].

Harlor AD Bower C; American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Practice and Ambulatory Medicine, Section of Otolaryngology: Hearing assessment in infants and children: recommendations beyond neonatal screening. Pediatrics 2009;124(4):1252–1263 [PMID: 19786460].

Katbamna B, Crumpton T, Patel DR: Hearing impairment in children. Pediatr Clin North Am 2008;55:1175 [PMID: 18929059].

Rogers GL, Jordan CO: Pediatric Vision Screening. Pediatr Rev 2013;34:126 [PMID: 23457199].

Newborn Screening

Newborn screening involves population-wide testing for metabolic and genetic diseases. It has become an essential component in a public health program that screens over 4 million newborns every year. Blood samples are collected by heelstick from newborns before hospital discharge, and results are usually available within 1 week. Some states routinely repeat blood testing between 7 and 14 days of life, while others recommend it if the child is discharged in less than 24 hours. The state-to-state variation seen in newborn screen panels has begun to diminish as a result of national recommendations. In 2010, the Secretary Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children recommended screening for 30 core conditions with another 26 detectable through differential diagnosis. Most states have adopted these guidelines.

Infants with a positive screening result should receive close follow-up, with additional confirmatory studies performed at a center with experience in doing these tests. Screening tests are usually accurate, but the sensitivity and specificity of a particular screening test must be carefully considered. If symptoms of a disease are present despite a negative result on a screening test, the infant should be tested further. Newborn screening has benefited thousands of infants and their families, preventing and diminishing the morbidity of many diseases. At the same time, the emotional cost of false-positive screening is a continuing challenge. Parents report high levels of stress during the evaluation process. Recommendations for useful resources, given the variability of information on the Internet, and prompt clinical services can help reduce this distress.

Calonge N et al, Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children: Committee report: method for evaluating conditions nominated for population-based screening of newborns and children. Genet Med 2010 Mar;12(3):153–159 [PMID: 20154628].

Deluca JM, Kearney MH, Norton SA, Arnold GL: Parents' experiences of expanded newborn screening evaluations. Pediatrics 2011 Jul;128(1):53–61 [Epub 2011 Jun 27] [PMID: 21708804].

Fernoff PM: Newborn screening for genetic disorders. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009 Jun;56(3):505–513 [PMID 19501689].

National Newborn Screening by State: http://genes-r-us.uthscsa.edu/sites/genes-r-us/files/nbsdisorders.pdf. Accessed March 2, 2015.

Lead Screening

The developing infant and child are at risk of lead poisoning or toxicity because of their propensity to place objects in the mouth and their efficient absorption of this metal. Children with lead toxicity are typically asymptomatic. High blood levels (> 70 mcg/dL) can cause severe health problems such as seizures and coma. Numerous neuropsychological deficits have been associated with increased lead levels. Blood lead levels less than 10 mcg/dL have been correlated with lower intelligence quotients. The primary source of lead exposure in this country remains lead-based paint, even though most of its uses have been banned since 1977. Lead levels have declined nationally from a mean of 16 mcg/dL in 1976 to 2 mcg/dL in 2001. However, considerable variation in lead levels exists in different regions of the United States, and a majority of children at risk of lead toxicity are not currently screened. Despite the wide variation in the prevalence of lead toxicity, the CDC recommends universal lead screening for children at ages 1 and 2 and targeted screening for older children living in communities with a high percentage of old housing (> 27% of houses built before 1950) or a high percentage of children with elevated blood lead levels (> 12% of children with levels > 10 mcg/dL). Previously, all Medicaid-enrolled children were screened, but now the recommendation is to screen those at risk because of local variations in lead exposure.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 9–4. Elements of a lead risk questionnaire.

Recommended questions
1. Does your child live in or regularly visit a house built before 1950? This could include a day care center, preschool, the home of a baby sitter or relative, and so on.
2. Does your child live in or regularly visit a house built before 1978 with recent, ongoing, or planned renovation or remodeling?
3. Does your child have a sister or brother, housemate, or playmate being followed for lead poisoning?
Questions that may be considered by region or locality
1. Does your child live with an adult whose job (eg, at a brass/copper foundry, firing range, automotive or boat repair shop, or furniture refinishing shop) or hobby (eg, electronics, fishing, stained-glass making, pottery making) involves exposure to lead?
2. Does your child live near a work or industrial site (eg, smelter, battery recycling plant) that involves the use of lead?
3. Does your child use pottery or ingest medications that are suspected of having a high lead content?
4. Does your child have exposure to old, nonbrand-type toys or burning lead-painted wood?
5. Does your child play on an athletic field with artificial turf?

Communities with inadequate data regarding local blood lead levels should also undergo universal screening. Caregivers of children between 6 months and 6 years of age may be interviewed by questionnaire about environmental risk factors for lead exposure (Table 9–4), although the data to support the use of this screening are inconclusive. If risk factors are present, a blood lead level should be obtained. A venous blood sample is preferred over a capillary specimen. An elevated capillary (fingerstick) blood sample should always be confirmed by a venous sample. CDC now states that reference level of 5 mcg/dL should be used to identify children with blood lead levels that are much higher than most levels in children. This new recommendation is based on the US children ages 1–5 years who are in the highest 2.5% of children when tested for lead in their blood.

The cognitive development of children with confirmed high blood levels should be evaluated and attempts made to identify the environmental source. Iron deficiency should be treated if present. Chelation of lead is indicated for levels of 45 mcg/dL and higher and is urgently required for levels above 70 mcg/dL. All families should receive education to decrease the risk of lead exposure. With any elevated lead level (> 5 mcg/dL), rescreening should be performed at recommended intervals.

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Environmental Health. Lead exposure in children: prevention, detection, and management. Pediatrics 2005;116(4):1036–1046 [PMID: 16199720].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Lead: http://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/ACCLPP/blood_lead_levels.htm. Accessed February 17, 2015.

Lead fact sheet (English and Spanish): http://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/acclpp/lead_levels_in_children_fact_sheet.pdf. Accessed February 17, 2015.

Iron Deficiency

Iron deficiency is the most common nutritional deficiency in the United States. Severe iron deficiency causes anemia, behavioral problems, and cognitive effects, but recent evidence suggests that even iron deficiency without anemia may cause behavioral and cognitive difficulties. Some effects, such as the development of abnormal sleep cycles, may persist even if iron deficiency is corrected in infancy.

Risk factors for iron deficiency include preterm or low-birth-weight births, multiple pregnancy, iron deficiency in the mother, use of nonfortified formula or cow's milk before age 12 months, and an infant diet that is low in iron-containing foods. Infants and toddlers consuming more than 24 oz/d of cow's milk are at risk, as are children with chronic illness, restricted diet, or extensive blood loss.

Primary prevention of iron deficiency should be achieved through dietary means, including feeding ground up meats and iron-containing cereals by age 6 months, avoiding low-iron formula during infancy, and limiting cow's milk to 24 oz/d in children aged 1–5 years.

Universal screening for anemia should occur at approximately 12 months of age by obtaining a hemoglobin or hematocrit. Premature and low-birth-weight infants may need testing before 6 months of age.

A full CBC to look at mean corpuscular volume (MCV) can aid in the evaluation. Serum ferritin is a useful test to evaluate iron-deficiency anemia, but it can also pick up iron deficiency in the absence of anemia. Because ferritin is an acute-phase reactant and can be falsely reassuring in the presence of inflammation, infection, or malignancy, some experts recommend obtaining a concurrent C-reactive protein (CRP) for accurate interpretation of the ferritin level. Lead poisoning can cause iron-deficiency anemia and should be explored as a cause for at-risk infants and children.

Management of iron deficiency with or without anemia includes treatment doses of 3–6 mg/kg body weight of elemental iron.

Baker RD et al; American Academy of Pediatrics; Committee on Nutrition: Diagnosis and prevention and iron-deficiency anemia in infants and young children (0–3 years of age). Pediatrics 2010;126:1040 [PMID: 20923825].

Hypercholesterolemia & Hyperlipidemia

Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death in the United States, and research has documented that the

http://obgynebooks.com

atherosclerotic process begins in childhood. Genetic factors, diet, and physical activity all play a role in the disease process. Fasting lipid screening is recommended for children between the ages of 2 and 10 if certain risk factors are present: family history of dyslipidemia, family history of early cardiovascular heart disease, obesity (95th > BMI ≥ 85th percentile), overweight (BMI ≥ 85th < 95th percentile), hypertension, or diabetes mellitus. Diet and weight management strategies are the primary interventions. However, for severe dyslipidemia (LDL ≥ 190 mg/dL), pharmacologic therapy should be considered. Consideration of pharmacotherapy should be made at 160 mg/dL if there is a family history of heart disease or there are two or more risk factors present. The presence of diabetes should lower the threshold for pharmacotherapy to 130 mg/dL. Patients who screen negative should be retested in 3–5 years.

Daniels SR, Greer FR; Committee on Nutrition: Lipid screening and cardiovascular health in childhood. Pediatrics 2008 Jul;122(1):198–208 [PMID: 18596007].

Tuberculosis

According to the CDC, 9582 cases of tuberculosis (TB) were reported in the United States in 2013. Risk of TB should be assessed at well-child visits, and screening should be based on high-risk status. High risk is defined as contact with a person with known or suspected TB; having symptoms or radiographic findings suggesting TB; birth, residence, or travel to a region with high TB prevalence (Asia, Middle East, Africa, Latin America); contact with a person with AIDS or HIV; or contact with a prisoner, migrant farm worker, illicit drug user, or a person who is or has been recently homeless. The Mantoux test (five tuberculin units of purified protein derivative) is the only recommended screening test. It can be done as early as 3 months of age and should be repeated annually if the risk persists. The tine test should not be used. Previous vaccination with bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) is not a contraindication to tuberculosis skin testing.

Targeted screening for latent TB that utilizes tuberculin skin testing (TST) for high-risk individuals is the recommended approach based on available evidence. Risk of TB should be assessed at well-child visits, and screening should be based on high-risk status. The following screening questions have been validated to determine high-risk status:

1. Was your child born outside the United States? If yes, this question would be followed by: Where was your child born? If the child was born in Africa, Asia, Latin America, or Eastern Europe, a TST should be placed.
2. Has your child traveled outside the United States? If yes, this question would be followed by: Where did the child travel, with whom did the child stay, and how long did the child travel? If the child stayed with friends or family members in Africa, Asia, Latin America, or Eastern Europe for more than 1 week cumulatively, a TST should be placed.
3. Has your child been exposed to anyone with TB disease? If yes, this question should be followed by questions to determine if the person had TB disease or latent TB infection (LTBI), when the exposure occurred, and what the nature of the contact was. If confirmed that the child has been exposed to someone with suspected or known TB disease, a TST should be placed. If it is determined that a child had contact with a person with TB disease, notify the local health department per local reporting guidelines.
4. Does your child have close contact with a person who has a positive TB skin test? If yes, go to question 3.

American Academy of Pediatrics: Tuberculosis. In: Pickering LK (ed): 2015 Red Book: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 30th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2015.

Pediatric Tuberculosis Collaborative Group: Targeted tuberculin skin testing and treatment of latent tuberculosis infection in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 2004 Oct;114(Suppl 4): 1175–1201 [PMID: 10617723].

Screening of Adolescent Patients

Adolescents may present with chief complaints that are not the true concern for the visit. Repeating the question "Is there anything else you would like to discuss?" should be considered. Since suicide is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in this age group, screening with the Pediatric Symptom Checklist for Youth or TeenScreen for depression is recommended (http://www.teenscreen.org/resources/providers/).

Testing adolescents for blood cholesterol, TB, and HIV should be offered based on high-risk criteria outlined in this chapter and in Chapter 41. Females should have a screening hematocrit once after the onset of menses. During routine visits, adolescents should be questioned sensitively about risk factors (eg, multiple partners; early onset of sexual activity, including child sexual abuse) and symptoms (eg, genital discharge, infectious lesions, pelvic pain) of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). An annual dipstick urinalysis for leukocytes is recommended for sexually active adolescents. Current guidelines recommend that the first Papanicolaou (Pap) test should be performed at age 21 years, regardless of onset of sexual activity. A complete pelvic examination should be performed when evaluating lower abdominal pain in an adolescent. Because females with STDs are often not symptomatic, urine polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for gonorrhea and chlamydia and screening tests for trichomoniasis are appropriate at the time of each pelvic examination.

Please see Chapter 4 for additional details on adolescent preventive services.

http://obgynebooks.com

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for HIV, STD and TB Prevention: Tuberculosis Surveillance Reports. http://www.cdc.gov/nchhstp/default.htm. Accessed March 2, 2015.

ANTICIP ATORY GUIDANCE

An essential part of the health supervision visit is anticipatory guidance. During this counseling, the clinician directs the parent's or the older child's attention to issues that may arise in the future. Guidance must be appropriate to age, focus on concerns expressed by the parent and patient, and address issues in depth rather than run through a number of issues superficially. Both oral and printed materials are used. When selecting written materials, providers should be sensitive to issues of literacy and primary language spoken by the family members. Areas of concern include diet, injury prevention, developmental and behavioral issues, and health promotion.

Injury Prevention

Injuries are the leading cause of death in children and adolescents after the first year of life. For young people aged 15–19 years, injuries are responsible for more than half of all deaths. In every age category, males are at higher risk than females for unintentional injury.

Injury prevention counseling is an important component of each health supervision visit and can be reinforced during all visits. Counseling should focus on problems that are frequent and age appropriate. Passive strategies of prevention should be emphasized, because these are more effective than active strategies; for example, placing chemicals out of reach in high, locked cupboards to prevent poisoning will be more effective than instructing parents to watch their children closely.

Informational handouts about home safety, such as The Injury Prevention Program (TIPP; available from the AAP), can be provided in the waiting room. Advice can then be tailored to the specific needs of each family, with reinforcement from age-specific TIPP handouts.

A. Motor Vehicle Injuries

The primary cause of death of children in the United States is motor vehicle injuries. Although the rate of death from this cause is improving, still in 2011, about 33% of children aged 12 years or younger who were killed in motor vehicle accidents were unrestrained.

The type and positioning of safety seats can be confusing. While car seat and booster seat laws differ by state, a recent AAP policy statement describes the best practice recommendations. All infants and toddlers should ride in a rear-facing car safety seat until 2 years of age or until they reach the weight and height limits for convertible car safety seats (usually 35 lb). Infants may ride in infant-only seats (which often have a carrying handle and snap into a base that is secured in the car) until they reach the height and weight limit for that seat, and then transition to a convertible car seat. Once a child reaches 2 years of age (or younger than 2 if outgrown the weight and height limit of a convertible car seat), he/she can be in a forward-facing car safety seat with a harness. The safest scenario is for a child to remain in a car safety seat with a harness as long as possible. Once a child reaches the weight or height limits of a forward-facing seat, he/she may be transitioned to a belt-positioning booster until the vehicle's lap-and-shoulder belt fits properly (child can sit with his back against the vehicle seat, bend his knees at the edge of the seat, have the belt positioned in the center of the shoulder and across the chest, and have the lap belt touching the thighs). These criteria are generally met once a child reaches height of 4 ft 9 in and is between the ages of 8 and 12 years. All children younger than 13 years should be restrained in the rear seats of the vehicle.

Unfortunately, restraint use shows a decreasing trend with advancing age: children from 1 to 8 years of age use restraints over 90% of the time, but those 8–12 years of age use restraints less than 85% of the time. African-American and Hispanic children use child safety seats less often than white children.

A final motor vehicle risk for health involves the use of portable electronic devices. Using a cell phone while driving is associated with a threefold increase in motor vehicle accidents. Texting while driving poses an even greater danger. Parents and teenage drivers should avoid these risks.

B. Bicycle Injuries

Each year, an average of nearly 400 children die from bicycle crashes, and over 450,000 are treated for bicycle-riding injuries. Over 150,000 children are treated annually in emergency departments for head injuries sustained while riding a bicycle. Many observational studies have shown a decreased risk of head injury with the use of bicycle helmets. Community-based interventions, especially those that provide free helmets, have been shown to increase observed bike helmet wearing. Counseling by physicians in various settings has also been shown to increase bike helmet use. While there is no federal law mandating bicycle helmets, some states have passed legislation requiring bicycle helmets.

C. Skiing and Snowboarding Injuries

Recent studies have suggested that the burden of skiing injuries is high among children, and that children have the highest rate of injury of any age group: approximately 3 injuries per 1000 skier days. Traumatic brain injuries are the leading cause of death for pediatric age skiers. Case control studies have shown a decrease in head injuries associated with helmet use.

http://obgynebooks.com

D. Firearm Injuries and Violence Prevention

The United States has a higher rate of firearm-related death than any other industrialized country. For children younger than 15, the death rate from firearm-related injuries is nearly 12 times greater than that of 25 other industrialized nations. Some gun deaths may be accidental, but most are the result of homicide or suicide. A gun in the home doubles the likelihood of a lethal suicide attempt. Although handguns are often kept in homes for protection, a gun is more likely to kill a family member or a friend than an intruder. Adolescents with a history of depression or violence are at higher risk with a gun in the home. The most effective way to prevent firearm injuries is to remove guns from the home. Families who keep firearms at home should lock them in a cabinet or drawer and store ammunition in a separate locked location.

E. Drowning and Near Drowning

Drowning is the second leading cause of injury-related death in children, and those aged 1–3 years have the highest rate of drowning. For every death by drowning, six children are hospitalized for near drowning, and up to 10% of survivors experience severe brain damage. Children younger than 1 year are most likely to drown in the bathtub. Buckets filled with water also present a risk of drowning to the older infant or toddler. For children aged 1–4 years, drowning or near drowning occurs most often in home swimming pools; and for school-aged children and teens, drowning occurs most often in large bodies of water (eg, swimming pools or open water). Parents should be cautioned that inflatable swimming devices are not a substitution for approved live vests or close supervision and can give a false sense of security. School-aged children should be taught to swim, and recreational swimming should always be supervised. Home pools must be fenced securely, and parents should know how to perform cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

F. Fire and Burn Injuries

Fires and burns are the leading cause of injury-related deaths in the home. Categories of burn injury include smoke inhalation; flame contact; scalding; and electrical, chemical, and ultraviolet burns. Scalding is the most common type of burn in children. Most scalds involve foods and beverages, but nearly one-fourth of scalds are with tap water, and for that reason it is recommended that hot water heaters be set to a maximum of 120°F. Most fire-related deaths result from smoke inhalation. Smoke detectors can prevent 85% of the injuries and deaths caused by fires in the home. Families should discuss a fire plan with children and practice emergency evacuation from the home.

Sunburn is a common thermal injury and often is not recognized because symptoms of excessive sun exposure usually do not begin until after the skin has been damaged. Repeated sunburn and excessive sun exposure are associated with skin cancers. Prevention of sunburn is best achieved by sun avoidance, particularly during the midday hours of 10 am to 4 pm. A sunscreen with a minimum sun protection factor (SPF) of 15 that protects against both UVA and UVB rays should be used on sunny and cloudy days to help protect against sunburn. Hats, sunglasses, and long-sleeved swimshirts are also important aspects of safe sun exposure. The safety of sunscreen is not established for infants younger than 6 months; thus sun avoidance, appropriate clothing, and hats are recommended for this age group. In extreme circumstances in which shade is not available, a minimal amount of sunscreen can be applied to small areas, including the face and back of the hands.

G. Choking

Choking is a leading cause of injury and death in young children. Choking hazards include food and small objects. Children younger than 3 are particularly at risk because they do not have fully coordinated chewing and swallowing, and they are more apt to put small objects in their mouths. Foods that are commonly associated with choking include hot dogs, hard candy, nuts, popcorn, raw vegetables, and chunks of meat, fruit, or cheese. Common nonfood items that pose a risk for choking include coins, latex balloons, button batteries, marbles, small toys, and small toy parts. While being mindful of choking hazards is important, accidents can still occur. Again, parents and caregivers should be trained in CPR and choking first aid.

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury and Poison Prevention: Bicycle helmets. Pediatrics 2001;108:1030 [PMID: 11581464].

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury and Poison Prevention: Firearm-related injuries affecting the pediatric population. Pediatrics 2012;130:5 [PMID: 10742344].

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury and Poison Prevention: Reducing the number of deaths and injuries from residential fires. Pediatrics 2000;105:1355 [PMID: 23080412].

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention: Prevention of choking among children. Pediatrics 2010;125:601 [PMID: 20176668].

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention: Child passenger safety. Pediatrics 2011;127:788 [PMID: 21422088].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). WISQARS (Web-based Injury Statistics Query and Reporting System): www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/index.html. Accessed October 27, 2014.

Gardner HG, American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention: Office-based counseling for unintentional injury prevention. Pediatrics 2007 Jan;119(1):202–206 [PMID: 17200289].

Weiss J; American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention: Prevention of drowning. Pediatrics 2011;126:e253 [PMID: 20498167].

http://obgynebooks.com

NUTRITION COUNSELING

Screening for nutritional problems and guidance for age-appropriate dietary choices should be part of every health supervision visit. Overnutrition, undernutrition, and eating disorders can be detected by a careful analysis of dietary and activity patterns interpreted in the context of a child's growth pattern.

Human milk feeding is species specific and is the preferred method for infant feeding for the first year of life. Pediatricians should assist mother-infant dyads with latch and help manage breast-feeding difficulties in the early newborn period. For exclusively breast-fed infants, vitamin D supplementation should be given. Iron-fortified formula should be used in situations when breast-feeding is contraindicated such as HIV, illicit drug use in the mother, active untreated TB, galactosemia, and certain medications. After the first year, breast-feeding may continue or whole cow's milk can be given because of continued rapid growth and high energy needs. After 2 years of life, milk with 2% fat or lower may be offered. Baby foods are generally introduced at about 6 months of age and self-feeding with finger foods encouraged at 7–8 months of age. Fruit juice or water is unnecessary in children younger than 1 year.

When obtaining a dietary history, it is helpful to assess the following: who purchases and prepares food; who feeds the child; whether meals and snacks occur at consistent times and in a consistent setting; whether children are allowed to snack or "graze" between meals; the types and portion sizes of food and drinks provided; the frequency of eating meals in restaurants or eating take-out food; and whether the child eats while watching television.

For children 2 years of age and older, a prudent diet consists of diverse food sources, encourages high-fiber foods (eg, fruits, vegetables, grain products), and limits sodium and fat intake. Since obesity is becoming increasingly prevalent, foods to be avoided or limited include processed foods, sugar-sweetened drinks or soda, and candy. Parents should be gently reminded that they are modeling for a lifetime of eating behaviors in their children, both in terms of the types of foods they provide and the structure of meals (eg, the importance of the family eating together). For additional information on nutritional guidelines, undernutrition, and obesity, see Chapter 11; for eating disorders, see Chapter 6; for adolescent obesity, see Chapter 4.

As of 2009, the Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) food packages reflect the recommendations above and include provision of more fruits and vegetables, whole grains, yogurt and soy products, low-fat milk, and limitations on juice. Breast-feeding mothers receive more food as part of their package, less formula supplementation, and breast-fed infants receive baby food meats as a first food (because of more iron and zinc).

American Academy of Pediatrics, Expert Committee Recommendations Regarding the Prevention, Assessment, and Treatment of Child and Adolescent Overweight and Obesity: Summary Report. Pediatrics 2007;120:s164 [PMID: 18055651].

American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Breastfeeding Policy Statement: Breastfeeding and the use of human milk. Pediatrics 2012;129:e841 [PMID: 22371471].

WIC Food Packages. http://www.fns.usda.gov/wic/benefitsandservices/foodpkg.htm. Accessed February 17, 2015.

COUNSELING ABOUT TELEVISION & OTHER MEDIA

Media has a significant influence on children and adolescents. The average child in the United States watches approximately 3–5 hours of television per day, and this does not include time spent watching movies, playing video games, playing on computers/tablets, accessing the Internet, or using cell phones. Taking into account these other forms of media, current estimates are around 7.5 hours of media exposure per day for average 8–18 year olds. Figure 9–3 shows a breakdown of media exposure by age group.

Having a television set in the bedroom increases daily media exposure and is also associated with sleep disturbances. According to the Kaiser Family Foundation, over 70% of 8 to 19 year olds have a television in their bedrooms.

Watching television may have both positive and negative effects. Programs directed toward early childhood may increase knowledge and imaginativeness, and may also teach empathy and acceptance of diversity. However, excessive television viewing of programs with inappropriate content has been shown to have negative effects with respect to violence, sexuality, substance abuse, nutrition, social skills, and body self-image. More recent data suggest that excessive viewing in childhood may have a long-lasting negative effect on cognitive development and academic achievement. Clinicians should assess media exposure in their patients and offer parents concrete advice. Screen time for all media, including television, movies, DVDs, video games, computer activities, computers, tablets, the Internet, and cell phones, should be limited. The AAP recommends that children younger than 2 years should not have any screen time, and that children 2 years and older be limited to 2 hours total screen time each day. The television should not be on during mealtimes, night, or naptimes. Parents should themselves watch sensibly, monitor the program content to which their children are exposed, watch programs and discuss interesting content with children, remove television sets from all bedrooms, and encourage alternative activities. Parents should be advised that research consistently shows that exposure to media violence correlates with childhood aggression.

Social networking sites are becoming increasingly popular, and clinicians need to encourage parents to monitor participation and be aware of potential problems with cyber

http://obgynebooks.com

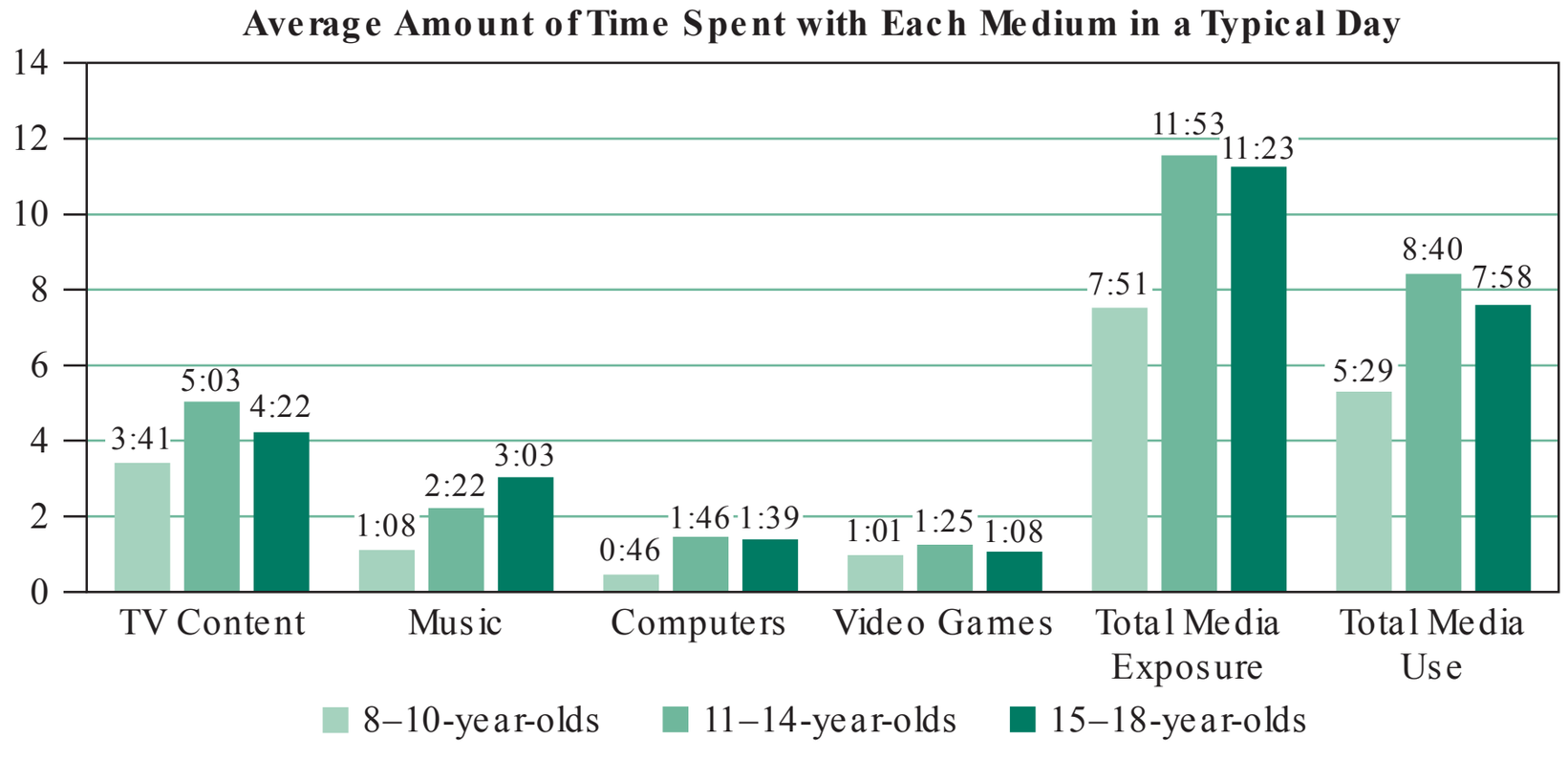


Figure 9–3. Breakdown of media exposure by age showing a significant increase in media use between ages 11 and 14. (Reproduced with permission from Rideout VJ, Foehr UG, Roberts DF: Kaiser Family Foundation Study, Generation M2: Media in the Lives of 8- to 18-Year-Olds, January 2010.)

bullying, "Facebook depression," sexting, and exposure to inappropriate content on sites such as YouTube.

Christakis DA et al: Modifying media content for preschool children: a randomized controlled trial. Pediatrics 2013;131(3):431–438 [PMID: 23420911].

O'Keeffe GS, Clarke-Pearson K; Council on Communications and Media: Clinical report: The impact of social media on children, adolescents, and family. Pediatrics 2011;127(4):800–804 [published ahead of print March 28, 2011, doi:10.1542/peds.2011-0054] [PMID: 21444588].

Rideout V: Generation M2: Media in the Lives of 8- to 18-Year-Olds. Menlo Park, CA: Kaiser Family Foundation; 2010. http://www.kff.org/entmedia/upload/8010.pdf. Accessed March 17, 2013.

Strasburger VC et al: Children, adolescents, and the media: health effects. Pediatr Clin North Am 2012;59(3):533–587 [PMID: 22643165].

IMMUNIZATIONS

A child's immunization status should be assessed at every visit and every opportunity should be taken to vaccinate. Even though parents may keep an immunization record, it is critical that providers also keep an accurate record of a child's immunizations. This information should be written in a prominent location in the paper or electronic chart or kept in an immunization registry.

Despite high overall national immunization coverage levels, areas of under immunization continue to exist in the United States. An understanding of true contraindications (vs "false contraindications") and a "no missed opportunities" approach to immunization delivery has been shown to successfully increase immunization levels. Therefore, it is important that clinicians screen records and administer required immunizations at all types of visits, and administer all needed vaccinations simultaneously. Additionally, clinicians should operate reminder/recall systems, in which parents of underimmunized children are prompted by mail, telephone, and text messages (particularly with adolescents) to visit the clinic for immunization. The assessment of clinic-wide immunization levels and feedback of these data to providers have also been shown to increase immunization rates.

Parent refusal of immunizations is an issue in some communities. Because a plethora of incorrect information about vaccine safety and efficacy is on the Internet, it is useful for the provider to direct parents toward reliable sources to help them make an informed decision. A wealth of information for parents and providers about immunizations is available at the National Immunization Program's Web site (www.cdc.gov/vaccines).

Grebi SM et al: Vaccination coverage among children in kindergarten—United States, 2011–2012 school year. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2012;61(33):647–652 [PMID: 22914226].

Hammer LD et al: Increasing immunization coverage. Pediatrics 2010;125(6):1295–1304 [PMID: 20513736].

Pineda D, Myers MG: Finding reliable information about vaccines. Pediatrics 2011;127:s134–s137 [PMID: 21502244].

Other Types of General Pediatric Service

ACUTE-CARE VISITS

Acute-care visits account for 30% or more of the general pediatrician's office visits. These visits are conducted in an efficient, structured way. Office personnel should determine the reason for the visit and whether it is an emergent situation, obtain a brief synopsis of the child's symptoms,

http://obgynebooks.com

carefully document vital signs, and list known drug allergies. The pediatric clinician should document the events related to the presenting problem and carefully describe them in the medical record. The record should include supporting laboratory data and a diagnosis. Treatments and follow-up instructions must be recorded, including when to return to the office if the problem is not ameliorated. Immunization status should be screened, as previously discussed. Depending on the severity of illness, this may also be an opportunity for age-appropriate health maintenance screenings and anticipatory guidance. This may be particularly true with older school-aged children or adolescents who may be seen more rarely for routine health maintenance visits.

PRENATAL VISITS

Ideally, a couple's first trip to a physician's office should take place before the birth of their baby. A prenatal visit goes a long way toward establishing trust and enables a pediatric provider to learn about a family's expectations, concerns, and fears regarding the anticipated birth. If the infant develops a problem during the newborn period, a provider who has already met the family is in a better position to maintain rapport and communication with the new parents.

In addition to helping establish a relationship between parents and pediatric providers, the prenatal visit can be used to gather information about the parents and the pregnancy, provide information and advice, and identify high-risk situations. A range of information can be provided to parents regarding feeding choices and the benefits of breast-feeding; injury prevention, including sleeping position and the appropriate use of car seats; and techniques for managing colic. Potential high-risk situations that may be identified include mental health issues in the parents, a history of domestic violence, or maternal medical problems that may affect the infant.

Serwint JR: The prenatal pediatric visit. Pediatr Rev 2003;24:31 [PMID: 12509543].

SPORTS PHYSICALS

A preparticipation physical examination (PPE) evaluation is a recommended part of every routine well-child and adolescent care visit. Physicians should be recommending exercise and activity to every child, not just those participating in organized sports.

The goal of the sports physical is to identify medical conditions that would make sports participation unsafe, screen for underlying illness through a traditional history and physical, and recognize preexisting injuries or medical problems that have affected previous sports seasons. As part of the history, the particular sport being played or specific exercise activity should be discussed. Different sports have different potentials for injury, and prevention methods will differ. All patients should be asked about previous cardiac, respiratory, musculoskeletal, or neurologic problems associated with activity. Particular attention should be drawn to any suspicion of cardiac syncope, asthma symptoms, past concussions, or history of unilateral organs, such as kidneys or testicles. Anabolic steroid and nutritional supplement discussion should be detailed and explored. Any relevant family history of cardiac death younger than age 50 should be documented.

The physical examination obviously starts with vital signs, including accurate blood pressure screening and examination for obesity. Highlights of the examination include a careful respiratory and cardiac examination, looking for evidence of exercise-induced bronchospasm or anatomic heart disease. Electrocardiogram (ECG) or pulmonary function tests can be considered for suspected abnormalities. The skin examination should look for evidence of potentially contagious skin infections like impetigo or molluscum. The musculoskeletal examination should include all major muscle groups, as well as range of motion and stability testing of the neck, back, shoulder, hips, knees, and ankles. Any pain or limitation should prompt consideration of further investigation or therapy.

A few specific conditions bear mentioning during the counseling phase of the sports participation. Cardiac, respiratory, or musculoskeletal complaints that should prompt a return visit should be reviewed. The risks and danger of concussions and performance-enhancing drugs should be highlighted. Appropriate protective equipment should be encouraged.

Seto CK: The preparticipation physical examination: an update. Clin Sports Med 2011 Jul;30(3):491–501 doi: 10.1016/j.csm.2011.03.008 [PMID: 21658544].

CHRONIC DISEASE MANAGEMENT

Chronic disease in pediatrics is defined as illness that has been present for more than 3 months. Around 25% children and 35% adolescents have illnesses that meet the definition of a chronic illness. The most common chronic conditions in pediatric practice include asthma, obesity/overweight, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), and allergic diseases, but also include congenital anomalies and other conditions. Many patients with chronic conditions are cared for only by a primary care provider. However, when subspecialist care is required, the primary care provider plays an integral part of the care to deal with the complexity of these conditions, which also includes understanding the child's growth and development, routine health promotion and anticipatory guidance, evaluating for social issues, advocating for children and their families, and care coordination.

The goal of chronic disease management is to optimize quality of life while minimizing the side effects of treatment

http://obgynebooks.com

interventions. Problem lists should be used to document chronic diagnoses and monitor associated medications. The child and family's emotional responses to chronic illness should be addressed, and referrals to counselors should be offered if needed. Nutrition and the management of medical devices (eg, catheters, gastrostomy tubes) may need to be addressed, and care coordinated with appropriate specialists.

American Academy of Pediatrics; American Academy of Family Physicians; American College of Physicians, Transitions Clinic Report Authoring Group: Supporting the health care transition from adolescence to adulthood in the medical home. Pediatrics 2011;128:183 [PMID: 21708806].

Ludder-Jackson P, Vessey JA: Primary Care of the Child with a Chronic Condition, 5th ed. Mosby-Year Book; 2010.

MEDICAL HOME

The medical home is a concept in which children and their families have an identified, easily accessible primary care provider or group of primary care providers within an office. The American Academy of Pediatrics has identified seven characteristics of a medical home. The medical home must be (1) accessible, meaning that it must be within the child's community, physically accessible, and all insurances accepted; (2) family centered, with mutual responsibility and decision making between the patient/family and medical provider, and the family is recognized as an expert of the child; (3) continuous, in that the same medical professionals provide the continuity of care; (4) comprehensive, with provisions made such that ambulatory and inpatient care are available 24 hours per day, 7 days a week, for 52 weeks of the year; (5) coordinated, with a plan of care developed by the physician and family that is communicated to other providers and agencies as needed; (6) compassionate, meaning that concern is expressed and efforts are made to understand the patient's and family's perspective; and (7) culturally effective, in that the cultural background of the patient and family is respected and incorporated into care, and services are provided in the family's primary language or through a trained medical interpreter.

All children should have a medical home, but it is particularly crucial for children with special health care needs or those with one or more chronic health condition expected to last more than a year. A primary care provider through a medical home should be available for children to assist families with the coordination of consultant recommendations and development of a care plan to implement recommendations.

American Academy of Pediatrics. The medical home. Pediatrics 2002;110:184 [PMID: 12093969].

MENTAL & BEHAVIORAL HEALTH

Parents frequently consult their pediatrician on a large variety of parenting and behavioral health issues. Common topics on which the pediatrician must be comfortable counseling include discipline, temper tantrums, toilet training, biting, and sleep problems.

In addition, there are mental health issues that pediatricians will commonly address in the primary care setting, including ADHD, anxiety, depression, school problems, or family upheavals (such as separation, divorce, or remarriage). After assessing the situation, the primary care physician must decide whether the child's and family's needs are within his or her area of expertise or whether referral to another professional such as a psychologist or an education specialist would be appropriate.

The pediatrician should know the warning signs of childhood depression and bipolar disorder and have a low threshold for referral of these concerns to the appropriate mental health professional. Ideally, mental health services not provided by the clinician are available in the same setting where physical health services are obtained (see as follows).

Integrated Mental & Behavioral Health in the Primary Care Setting

In the United States, approximately 20% of school-age children suffer from a diagnosable emotional impairment. Prevalence is higher for children living in poor socioeconomic circumstances. About 75% of all children with psychiatric disturbances are seen in primary care settings, and half of all pediatric office visits involve behavioral, psychosocial, or educational concerns.

Child and family concerns routinely manifest in the context of visits with pediatric primary care providers. However, many pediatric providers in community settings do not feel equipped to address the growing mental health and behavioral needs of the populations they serve due to lack of training and perceived lack of support from mental health providers and systems. Parents are most likely to turn to their primary health care provider for information regarding parenting and child development than to another specialist.

Recent studies have shown that improved detection of mental health conditions is best done when there is a true partnership between clinical providers and families. A small number of clinic settings have moved forward with providing integrated behavior, development, and mental health training for physicians. The Healthy Steps for Young Children Program provides an example of training pediatric providers and delivering enhanced developmental services in pediatric primary care settings. Families participating in Healthy Steps received more developmental services, were more satisfied with the quality of care provided, were more likely to attend well-child visits and receive vaccinations on

http://obgynebooks.com

time, and were less likely to use severe discipline techniques with their children. Participation in the program also increased the likelihood that mothers at risk for depression would discuss their sadness with someone in the pediatric setting.

The primary care medical home is the ideal setting to engage families in efforts to address mental health care. Mental health has been brought to the forefront as a priority of the AAP in their April 2009 Call for Action "encourage the integration of mental health care into the primary medical home." Moreover, improved detection of mental health conditions is best done when there is a true partnership between clinical providers and families.

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Psychosocial Aspects of Child and Family Health and Task Force on Mental Health: the future of pediatrics: mental health competencies for pediatric primary care. Pediatrics 2009 Jul;124:410–421 [PMID: 19564328].

Kelleher KJ et al: Management of pediatric mental disorders in primary care: where are we now and where are we going? Curr Opin Pediatr 2006;18:649 [PMID: 17099365].

Williams J et al: Co-location of mental health professionals in primary care settings: three North Carolina models. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2006;45:537 [PMID: 16893859].

TELEPHONE MANAGEMENT & WEb-b ASED INf ORMATION

Providing appropriate, efficient, and timely clinical advice over the telephone is a critical element of pediatric primary care in the office setting. An estimated 20%–30% of all clinical care delivered by general pediatric offices is provided by telephone. Telephone calls to and from patients occur both during regular office hours and after the office has closed (termed after-hours), and the personnel and systems in place to handle office-hours versus before- and after-hours calls may differ. In either circumstance, several principles are important: (1) advice is given only by clinicians or other staff with formal medical education (eg, nurse, medical assistant), (2) staff is given additional training in providing telephone care, (3) documentation is made of all pertinent information from calls, (4) standardized protocols covering the most common pediatric symptoms are used, and (5) a physician is always available to handle urgent or difficult calls.

During routine office hours, approximately 20%–25% of all telephone calls to pediatric offices involve clinical matters. Many of these calls, however, are routine in nature, and an experienced nurse within the office can screen calls and provide appropriate advice by telephone. Calls from inexperienced or anxious parents about simple concerns should be answered with understanding and respect. Certain types of calls received during office hours should be promptly transferred to a physician: (1) true emergencies, (2) calls regarding hospitalized patients, (3) calls from other medical professionals, and (4) calls from parents who demand to speak with a physician. Nurses should also seek help from a clinician whenever they are uncertain about how to handle a particular call. When in doubt about the diagnosis or necessary treatment, nurses giving telephone advice should err on the side of having the patient seen in the office.

After-hours telephone answering services are available to many clinicians. Pediatric call centers, although not available in all communities, have certain benefits. Calls are managed using standardized protocols, the call centers are typically staffed by nurses with abundant pediatric experience, the calls are well documented, and call centers often perform ongoing quality assurance. Extensive research on pediatric call centers has revealed a high degree of appropriate referrals to emergency departments, safety in terms of outcomes, parent satisfaction with the process, and savings to the health care system.

In general, after-hours pediatric telephone calls tend to be more serious than calls made during regular office hours. Deciding which patients need to be seen, and how urgently, is the most important aspect of these after-hours telephone "encounters." Several factors influence this final patient disposition: (1) the age of the patient, (2) the duration and type of symptom, (3) the presence of any underlying chronic condition, (4) whether the child appears "very sick" to the caller, and (5) the anxiety level of the caller. Once all the pertinent medical information is gathered, a decision is made about whether the child should be seen immediately (by ambulance vs car), seen in the office later (today vs tomorrow), or whether the illness can be safely cared for at home. At the end of the call, it should be confirmed that parents understand and feel comfortable with the plan for their child.

The Internet has become a common tool used in pediatric office settings. Information about the practice and providers, the care of common minor problems, scheduling of appointments, insurance issues, prescription refills, and laboratory test results are often available using the web. Pertinent health information, with appropriate permissions and authority, can often be provided via the Internet to other locations such as hospitals and pharmacies. A well-functioning Internet site is now a crucial service of a pediatric practice.

Bunik M et al: Pediatric telephone call centers—how do they affect health care utilization and costs? Pediatrics 2007;119:e1 [PMID: 17272593].

Kempe A et al: How safe is triage by an after-hours telephone call center? Pediatrics 2006;118:457 [PMID: 16882795].

Liederman EM, Morefield CS: Web messaging: a new tool for patient-physician communication. J Am Med Inform Assoc 2003;10:260 [PMID: 12626378].

ADVOCACY & COMMu NITY PEDIATRICS

Community pediatrics is "a perspective that enlarges the pediatrician's focus from one child to all children

http://obgynebooks.com

in the community." Pediatricians have historically been very involved in supporting and developing services for vulnerable children in their communities. As a group, pediatricians recognize that communities are integral determinants of a child's health and that the synthesis of public health and personal health principles and practices is important in the practice of community pediatrics. As well, pediatricians have long been committed to working with other professionals in the community and advocating for the needs of all children. For example, pediatricians have been instrumental in the passage of laws requiring car seats and bicycle helmets, as well as expanded health care coverage through State Children's Health Insurance Program (SCHIP) working with legislators on both local and federal levels.

Advocacy refers to the act of representing or pleading a cause on behalf of another. Pediatricians and other providers who care for children have a responsibility to be a voice for a population who cannot vote or advocate for themselves very effectively. Advocacy can be broken down into three categories: individual (patient-based), community, and legislative (policy-based).

Pediatricians in practice are frequently instrumental in one-on-one advocacy, which may take the form of writing a letter of medical necessity or referring children and families to valuable services and resources. Pediatricians must be familiar with programs in the community. For example, children with special health care needs may be eligible for services typically funded through state health departments and through programs such as those provided based on the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA). A variety of community-based immunization programs can provide access to needed immunizations for eligible children. Food and nutrition programs such as the federally funded WIC program provide sources of food at no cost to eligible families. Finally, subsidized preschool and child care services such as the federally funded Head Start program provide preschool programs for qualifying children.

Community advocacy goes beyond the walls of the office or hospital. Pediatricians can become involved with local organizations that help children in the community. Pediatricians and other child advocates can work with community partners to address issues that influence child health. Community advocacy might focus on a particular condition (such as obesity) or environmental factors (such as exposure to violence) or improving health prevention (such as promoting programs to incorporate oral health into well-child visits). Finally, pediatricians can learn about issues that affect children and work to affect change at a local, state, or national level. Physician advocates may write or call their legislators, educate the public and disseminate information by writing letters or opinion pieces, provide expert testimony for legislative committees, or even help draft laws.

American Academy of Pediatrics: The pediatrician's role in community pediatrics. Pediatrics 2005;115:1092 [PMID: 15805396].
Duggan A et al: The essential role of research in community pediatrics. Pediatrics 2005;115(Suppl):1195 [PMID: 15821310].
Earnest MA et al: Physician Advocacy: what is it and why do we do it? Acad Med 2010;85:63 [PMID: 20042825].

COMMON GENERAL PEDIATRIC ISSUES

FEVER

General Considerations

Fever is one of the most common reasons for pediatric office visits, emergency department encounters, and after-hours telephone calls. Several different definitions of fever exist, but most experts define fever as a rectal temperature of 38°C (100.4°F) or above. Temperature in pediatric patients can be measured in a variety of manners: rectal (using a mercury or digital thermometer), oral (mercury or digital), axillary (mercury, digital, or liquid crystal strip), forehead (liquid crystal strip), or tympanic (using a device that measures thermal infrared energy from the tympanic membrane). Tympanic measurement of temperature is quick and requires little patient cooperation. Several cautions apply to the use of this technique: tympanic temperatures have been shown to be less accurate in infants younger than 3 months and are subject to false readings if the instrument is not positioned properly or the external ear canal is occluded by wax.

Causes

Fever occurs when there is a rise in the hypothalamic set point in response to endogenously produced pyrogens. Among the broad range of conditions that cause fever are infections, malignancies, autoimmune diseases, metabolic diseases, chronic inflammatory conditions, medications (including immunizations), CNS abnormalities, and exposure to excessive environmental heat. In most settings, the majority of fevers in pediatric patients are caused by self-limiting viral infections. Teething does not cause fever.

Clinical Findings

A. Initial Evaluation

When evaluating a child with fever, one should elicit from the parents information about the duration of fever, how the temperature was taken, the maximum height of fever documented at home, all associated symptoms, any chronic medical conditions, any medications taken, medication allergies, fluid intake, urine output, exposures and travel, and any additional features of the illness that concern the parents (Table 9–5). In the office, temperature, heart rate,

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 9–5. Guidelines for evaluating children with fever.

A. See immediately if:

1. Child is < age 3 mo with fever > 38°C
2. Fever is > 40.6°C
3. Child is crying inconsolably or whimpering
4. Child is crying when moved or even touched
5. Child is difficult to awaken
6. Child's neck is stiff
7. Purple spots or dots are present on the skin
8. Child's breathing is difficult and not better after nasal passages are cleared
9. Child is drooling saliva and is unable to swallow anything
10. A convulsion has occurred
11. Child has sickle cell disease, spenectomy, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), chemotherapy, organ transplant, chronic steroids
12. Child acts or looks "very sick"

b. See within 24 h if:

1. Child is 3–6 mo old (unless fever occurs within 48 h after a diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis vaccination and infant has no other serious symptoms)
2. Fever exceeds 40°C (especially if child is < age 3 y)
3. Burning or pain occurs with urination
4. Fever has been present for > 24 h without an obvious cause or identified site of infection
5. Fever has subsided for > 24 h and then returned
6. Fever has been present > 72 h

respiratory rate, and blood pressure should be documented, as well as an oxygen saturation if the child has any increased work of breathing. A complete physical examination, including a neurologic examination, should then be performed, with particular attention paid to the child's degree of toxicity and hydration status. A well-appearing, well-hydrated child with evidence of a routine viral infection can be safely sent home with symptomatic treatment and careful return precautions.

Depending on patient age, presence of underlying conditions, type of infection, and the provider's assessment of toxicity and hydration, many children with focal bacterial infections can also be treated as outpatients, with appropriate oral antibiotics as discussed in Chapter 42.

B. Fever Without a Focus of Infection

Children who present with fever but without any symptoms or signs of a focal infection are often a diagnostic and management challenge. When assessing a child with fever but no apparent source of infection on examination, the provider needs to carefully consider the likelihood of a serious but "hidden" or occult bacterial infection. With the widespread use of effective vaccines against Haemophilus influenzae type b and Streptococcus pneumoniae, two of the most common causes of invasive bacterial infections in unimmunized children, the incidence of occult bacterial infections has declined. However, vaccines are not 100% effective, and other organisms cause serious occult infections in children; therefore, febrile children will always demand careful evaluation and observation. Appropriate choices for empiric antibiotic therapy of children with fever without focus are discussed in Chapter 39.

Febrile infants 28 days old or younger, because of their likelihood of serious disease, including sepsis, should always be treated conservatively. Hospitalization and parenteral antibiotics should be strongly considered in all circumstances. An initial diagnostic evaluation should include CBC; blood culture; urinalysis; urine culture; and Gram stain, cerebrospinal fluid protein and glucose tests, as well as culture of the cerebrospinal fluid. Consideration should also be given to the possibility of a perinatal herpes simplex virus infection (neonatal herpes is described in more detail in Chapter 40). A chest radiograph should be obtained for any infant with increased work of breathing.

Infants aged 29–60 days are at risk of developing a variety of invasive bacterial infections. Febrile infants without a focus of infection can be divided into those who appear toxic versus nontoxic, and those at low risk versus higher risk of invasive bacterial disease. As with febrile neonates, toxic children in this age group should be admitted to the hospital for parenteral antibiotics and close observation. Viral illness is the most common cause of fever in this age group; if there is evidence of viral disease (upper respiratory infection, bronchiolitis), further workup may not be necessary. Urinary tract infection is the most common bacterial cause of infection in this age group. In nontoxic infants, low risk has been defined as previously healthy; no focal infection on examination; peripheral white blood cell (WBC) count between 5000 and 15,000/mm^3; band cells less than 1500/mm^3; normal urinalysis; and, when diarrhea is present, less than 5 WBCs per high-power field and negative Gram stain on stool sample. Nontoxic low-risk infants in this age group are typically treated as outpatients with close follow-up. Clinicians should be confident that lumbar puncture is unnecessary if they decide not to perform this procedure.

In an era of increasing immunization coverage against the most commonly invasive pneumococcal serotypes, it is difficult to estimate the risk of occult bacteremia in febrile 3 to 36 month olds with no focus of infection. Nevertheless, when assessing children aged 3–36 months with temperatures of 39°C or higher, urine cultures should be considered in all male children younger than 6 months and in all females younger than 2 years. Chest radiographs should be performed in any child with increased work of breathing and should also be considered in children with high (20,000/mm^3) WBC counts but no respiratory symptoms. Depending on the child's appearance, underlying medical condition, and height of fever, blood cultures should also

http://obgynebooks.com

be obtained. Empiric antibiotic therapy may be considered, particularly for children with temperature of 39°C and WBC count of 15,000/mm^3. However, in previously healthy, well-appearing, fully immunized children with reassuring laboratory studies, observation without antibiotics is appropriate.

» Treatment

Fever phobia is a term that describes parents' anxious response to the fevers that all children experience. In a recent study, 91% of caregivers thought that a fever could cause harmful effects. Around 7% of parents thought that if they did not treat the fever, it would keep going higher. Parents need to be reassured that fevers lower than 41.7°C do not cause brain damage. They should be counseled that, although fevers can occasionally cause seizures—in which case their child needs to be seen—febrile seizures are generally harmless and likewise do not cause brain damage.

Several safe and effective medications are available for the treatment of fever. Acetaminophen is indicated in children older than 2 months who have fever of 39°C or are uncomfortable. Acetaminophen is given in a dosage of 15 mg/kg of body weight per dose and can be given every 4–6 hours. The other widely used antipyretic is ibuprofen, which can be used in children 6 months and older. Ibuprofen is given in a dosage of 10 mg/kg of body weight per dose and can be given every 6–8 hours. Ibuprofen and acetaminophen are similar in safety and their ability to reduce fever; however, ibuprofen is longer lasting. Aspirin should not be used for treating fever in any child or adolescent, because of its association with the development of Reye syndrome (particularly during infections with varicella and influenza). With all antipyretics, parents should be counseled to be very careful with dosing and frequency of administration as poisoning can be dangerous.

Avner JR: Acute fever. Pediatr Rev 2009;30:5 [PMID: 19118137].

Crocetti M et al: Fever phobia revisited: have parental misconceptions about fever changed in 20 years? Pediatrics 2001;107:1241 [PMID: 11389237].

Sherman JM, Sood SK: Current challenges in the diagnosis and management of fever. Curr Opin Pediatr 2012;24(3):400–406 [PMID: 22525720].

Sullivan JE et al: American Academy of Pediatrics Clinical Report—fever and antipyretic use in children. Pediatrics 2011;127:580 [PMID: 21357332].

GROWTH DEFICIENCY

Growth faltering or growth deficiency—formerly termed failure to thrive—is deceleration of growth velocity, resulting in crossing two major percentile lines on the growth chart. The diagnosis also is warranted if a child younger than 6 months has not grown for 2 consecutive months or if a child older than 6 months has not grown for 3 consecutive months. Growth deficiency occurs in about 8% of children.

Patterns of growth deficiency suggest, but are not specific for, different causes. In type I growth deficiency, the head circumference is preserved and the weight is depressed more than the height. This most common type results from inadequate caloric intake, excessive loss of calories, or inability to use calories peripherally. Most cases of type I deficiencies are the result of poverty, lack of caregiver understanding, poor caregiver-child interaction, abnormal feeding patterns, or a combination of factors. Type II growth deficiency, which is associated with genetically determined short stature, endocrinopathies, constitutional growth delay, heart or renal disease, or various forms of skeletal dysplasias, is characterized by normal head circumference and proportionate diminution of height and weight. In type III growth deficiency, all three parameters of growth—head circumference, weight, and height—are lower than normal. This pattern is associated with CNS abnormalities, chromosomal defects, and in utero or perinatal insults.

Just because an infant crosses a growth percentile does not mean an infant necessarily has a problem. Infants can cross growth curves normally, either "lagging down" or "shooting up." This crossing of growth percentiles is usually normal if it meets the following criteria: change in body weight and length are symmetrical, the size of the infant parallels the midparental weight and stature, the development remains normal, and a new growth curve is subsequently established, usually around 15 months of age; this also can be seen in the exclusively breast-fed infants at 4–6 months. WHO growth curves are now the standard and are based on children from various countries who were exclusively or primarily breast-fed in the first 4 months of life.

» Clinical Findings

A. Initial Evaluation

The history and physical examination will identify the cause of growth reduction in the vast majority of cases (Table 9–6). The physical examination should focus on signs of organic disease or evidence of abuse or neglect: dysmorphic features, skin lesions, neck masses, adventitial breath sounds, heart murmurs, abdominal masses, and neuromuscular tone and strength. Throughout the evaluation, the physician should observe the caregiver-child interaction and the level of family functioning. Developmental screening and laboratory screening tests (CBC, blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, electrolytes, urinalysis, and urine culture) may be useful depending on the history and examination.

B. Further Evaluation

A prospective 3-day diet record should be a standard part of the evaluation. Occasionally, an infant or child may need to

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 9–6. Components of initial evaluation for growth deficiency.

Birth history: newborn screening result; rule out intrauterine growth retardation, anoxia, congenital infections
Feeding and nutrition: difficulty sucking, chewing, swallowing
Feeding patterns: intake of formula, milk, juice, solids
Stooling and voiding of urine: diarrhea, constipation, vomiting, poor urine stream
Growth pattern: several points on the growth chart are crucial
Recurrent infections
Hospitalizations
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) risk factors
Developmental history
Social and family factors: family composition, financial status, supports, stresses; heritable diseases, heights and weights of relatives
Review of system

be hospitalized to obtain an accurate assessment of intake. This is useful in assessing undernutrition even when organic disease is present. The diet history is evaluated by a pediatric dietitian for calories, protein, and micronutrients as well as for the pattern of eating. Additional laboratory tests should be ordered based on the history and physical examination. For example, stool collection for fat determination is indicated if a history of diarrhea suggests malabsorption. Moderate or high amounts of proteinuria should prompt workup for nephrotic syndrome. Vomiting should suggest a gastrointestinal, metabolic, neurologic, infectious, or renal cause. The tempo of evaluation should be based on the severity of symptoms and the magnitude of growth failure.

» Treatment

A successful treatment plan addresses the child's diet and eating patterns, the child's development, caregiver skills, and any organic disease. High-calorie diets in the form of higher-calorie formula or liquid supplement are often required and frequent monitoring (every 1 or 2 weeks initially) is essential. Acceptable weight gain varies by age (Table 9–7).

The child with growth deficiency may also be developmentally delayed because of living in an environment that fails to promote development or from the effect on the brain of nutrient deprivation. Restoring nutrition does not fully reverse the deficit but does reduce the long-term consequences.

Table 9–7. Acceptable weight gain by age.

Age (mo)	Weight Gain (g/d)
Birth to 3	20–30
3–6	15–20
6–9	10–15
9–12	6–11
12–18	5–8
18–24	3–7

Education in nutrition, child development, and behavioral management as well as psychosocial support of the primary caregiver is essential. If family dysfunction is mild, behavior modification and counseling will be useful. Day care may benefit the child by providing a structured environment for all activities, including eating. If family dysfunction is severe, the local department of social services can help provide structure and assistance to the family. Rarely, the child may need to be temporarily or permanently removed from the home. Hospitalization is reserved for management of dehydration, for cases in which home therapy has failed to result in expected growth, for children who show evidence of abuse or willful neglect, for management of an illness that compromises a child's ability to eat, or for care pending foster home placement.

Young J: Growth deficiency. In: Bajaj L (ed): Berman's Pediatric Decision Making, 5th ed. Mosby-Year Book; 2011.

Web Resources

American Academy of Pediatrics: http://www.aap.org. Accessed February 17, 2015.

Bright Futures National Health Promotion Initiative: http://www.brightfutures.org. Accessed February 17, 2015.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (vaccines and immunizations home page): http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines. Accessed February 17, 2015.

National Information Center for Children and Youth With Disabilities: http://www.nichcy.org. Accessed February 17, 2015.

National Newborn Screening Status Report (2014): http://genes-r-us.uthscsa.edu/sites/genes-r-us/files/nbsdisorders.pdf. Accessed February 17, 2015.

http://obgynebooks.com

10 Immunization

Matthew F. Daley, MD
Sean T. O'Leary, MD, MPH
Ann-Christine Nyquist, MD, MSPH

Immunization is widely recognized as one of the greatest public health achievements of modern times. Largely as a consequence of immunization, the annual incidences of diphtheria, paralytic poliomyelitis, measles, mumps, rubella, and Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) in the United States have fallen by more than 99% compared with the average annual incidences of these diseases in the 20th century. Invasive pneumococcal disease in children less than 5 years has declined steeply since routine pneumococcal vaccination began in 2000. Similarly, rotavirus vaccination has been associated with substantial declines in hospitalizations and emergency department visits for diarrheal illnesses in young children. Childhood immunization has also led, through herd immunity, to significant decreases in several infectious illnesses in adults, including pneumococcal, rotavirus, and varicella disease.

Every year, roughly 4 million children are born in the United States, and successful immunization of each birth cohort requires the concerted effort of health care providers, public health officials, vaccine manufacturers, and the public. Public perceptions about immunizations, particularly routine childhood immunizations, are generally positive. However, parent concerns about the safety of vaccines have risen in recent years, in part fueled by unfounded speculation about an association between various vaccines or vaccine components and autism. Modern vaccines have a high degree of safety, and serious adverse events following vaccination are rare. Nonetheless, health care providers need to be prepared to discuss the benefits and risks of vaccination with uncertain parents, providing factual information in a clear and empathic fashion.

This chapter starts with general principles regarding immunizations and the recommended pediatric and adolescent vaccination schedules, followed by a discussion of vaccine safety. Each routinely recommended vaccine is then discussed. Vaccines that are only given in special circumstances are discussed in the final section. Several acronyms that are commonly used in this and other vaccine-related publications are summarized in Table 10–1.

Because the field of immunizations is rapidly changing, it is important for health care providers to seek the most up-to-date information available. The recommendations outlined are current but will change as technology evolves and our understanding of the epidemiology of vaccine-preventable diseases changes. The most useful sources for regularly updated information about immunization are the following:

1. National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). It maintains a Web site with extensive vaccine-related resources, including the recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), vaccination schedules, Vaccine Information Statements (VISs), information for the public and providers, and links to other vaccine materials. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines.
2. CDC Contact Center. The CDC-INFO contact center provides services to the public and health care professionals regarding a variety of health-related issues, including immunizations. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/cdc-info, or by phone at 1-800-232-4636 (English and Spanish).
3. The Red Book: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. Published at 2- to 3-year intervals by the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP). A newly revised Red Book was published in 2015. Updates are published in the journal Pediatrics and can also be accessed at http://redbook.solutions.aap.org/.
4. Immunization Action Coalition. This nonprofit organization creates and distributes educational materials for health care providers and the public related to vaccines. All materials are provided free of charge and can be accessed at http://www.immunize.org.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–1. Vaccine-related acronyms.

ACIP	Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices
BCG	Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine against tuberculosis
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CI	Confidence interval
CISA	Clinical Immunization Safety Assessment Network
DT	Pediatric diphtheria and tetanus toxoids
DTaP	Pediatric diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis vaccine
DTP	Pediatric diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and whole-cell pertussis vaccine
HBIG	Hepatitis B immune globulin
HBsAg	Hepatitis B surface antigen
HepA	Hepatitis A vaccine
HepB	Hepatitis B vaccine
Hib	Haemophilus influenzae type b
Hib-MenCY-TT	Hib, meningococcal C and Y, tetanus toxoid vaccine
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HPV	Human papillomavirus
HPV2	HPV vaccine, bivalent
HPV4	HPV vaccine, quadrivalent
HPV9	HPV-vaccine, nine-valent
Ig	Immunoglobulin
IPV	Inactivated poliovirus vaccine
LAIV	Live attenuated influenza vaccine
MCV4	Meningococcal conjugate vaccine
MMR	Measles-mumps-rubella vaccine
MMRV	Measles-mumps-rubella-varicella vaccine
MPSV4	Meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine
OPV	Oral poliovirus vaccine
PCV	Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine
PCV7	Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, 7-valent
PCV13	Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, 13-valent
PPSV23	Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, 23-valent
PRISM	Post-Licensure Rapid Immunization Safety Monitoring
RV1	Rotavirus vaccine, monovalent
RV5	Rotavirus vaccine, pentavalent
TB	Tuberculosis
Td	Adult tetanus and diphtheria toxoid
Tdap	Tetanus and reduced diphtheria and acellular pertussis vaccine for adolescents and adults
VAERS	Vaccine Adverse Events Reporting System
VariZIG	Varicella-zoster immune globulin
VIS	Vaccine Information Statement
VSD	Vaccine Safety Datalink
VZV	Varicella-zoster virus

Standards for Pediatric Immunization Practices

In the United States, every infant requires more than 25 doses of vaccine by age 18 months to be protected against 14 or more childhood diseases. In 2013, immunization coverage rates for children aged 19–35 months were more than 90% for poliovirus, measles-mumps-rubella, varicella, and hepatitis B vaccines, and were steadily increasing for more recently recommended vaccines such as rotavirus and hepatitis A vaccines. The CDC recommends the following specific proven strategies to increase vaccination coverage rates: (1) assessing and providing feedback on practice/provider immunization rates; (2) keeping accurate immunization records; (3) recommending vaccination to parents, and reinforcing when to return for vaccination; (4) sending reminder messages to parents; (5) sending reminder messages to providers; (6) reducing missed opportunities to vaccinate; and (7) reducing barriers to immunize within the practice.

The National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act of 1986 requires that for each vaccine covered under the Vaccine Injury Compensation Program, parents should be advised about the risks and benefits of vaccination in a standard manner, using VIS forms produced by the CDC. Each time a Vaccine Injury Compensation Program–covered vaccine is administered, the current version of the VIS must be provided to the non-minor patient or legal guardian. Vaccination documentation that is required in the medical record includes the vaccine manufacturer, lot number, and administration date, and expiration date. The VIS version and date, and site and route of administration should also be recorded.

Needles used for vaccination should be sterile and disposable to minimize contamination. A 70% solution of alcohol is appropriate for disinfecting the stopper of the vaccine container and the skin at the injection site. A 5% topical emulsion of lidocaine-prilocaine applied to the site of vaccination for 30–60 minutes prior to the injection minimizes pain, especially when multiple vaccines are administered.

Compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations for route and site of administration of injectable vaccines are critical for safety and efficacy. With few exceptions (intradermal influenza vaccine and Bacillus Calmette-Guérin [BCG] vaccine), all vaccines are given either intramuscularly or subcutaneously. All vaccines containing an adjuvant must be administered intramuscularly to avoid local irritation or granuloma formation. Intramuscular injections are given at a 90-degree angle to the skin, using a needle that is sufficiently long to reach the muscle tissue, but not so long as to injure underlying nerves, blood vessels, or bones. The anterolateral thigh is the preferred site of vaccination in newborns and children up to 2 years of age, and the deltoid muscle is the preferred site for children aged 3–18 years, although the anterolateral thigh is an acceptable site. Needle length and location should be: ⅝ inch in newborn infants (thigh); 1 inch in infants 1- to 12-month-olds (thigh), 1–1¼ inches in 1- to 18-year-olds (thigh), and ⅝–1 inch in 1- to 18-year-olds (deltoid). Subcutaneous injections should be administered at a 45-degree angle into the anterolateral aspect of the thigh (for infants < 12 months) or the upper outer triceps area (for children 12 months and older) using a 23- or 25-gauge, ⅝-inch needle. Pulling back on the syringe prior to vaccine injection

http://obgynebooks.com

(aspiration) is not required. A separate syringe and needle should be used for each vaccine.

Many combinations of vaccines can be administered simultaneously without increasing the risk of adverse effects or compromising immune response. Inactivated vaccines can be given simultaneously with, or at any time after, a different vaccine. Injectable or intranasal live-virus vaccines (eg, measles-mumps-rubella [MMR], varicella [VAR], or live attenuated influenza [LAIV]), if not administered on the same day, should be given at least 4 weeks apart. Depending on the combination vaccine used, children may receive an "extra" dose of hepatitis B (HepB) or Hib; these additional doses are not harmful. If an immunoglobulin (Ig) or blood product has been administered, live-virus vaccination should be delayed 3 to 11 months, depending on the Ig product given, to avoid interference with the immune response.

With the large number of vaccine preparations available, interchangeability of vaccines is an issue. All brands of Hib conjugate, HepB, and hepatitis A (HepA) vaccines are interchangeable. For vaccines containing acellular pertussis antigens, it is recommended that the same brand be used, but when the brand is unknown or the same brand is unavailable, any vaccine with diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis should be used to continue vaccination. Longer than recommended intervals between vaccinations does not reduce final antibody titers, and lapsed schedules do not require restarting the series.

The numerous vaccines and other immunologic products used in routine practice vary in the storage temperatures required. The majority of vaccines should never be subjected to freezing temperatures, except varicella-containing vaccines (MMRV, VAR, and herpes zoster) which should be stored frozen. Product package inserts should be consulted for detailed information on vaccine storage conditions and shelf life.

Vaccines very rarely cause acute anaphylactic-type reactions. All vaccine providers should have the equipment, medications, staff, established protocols, and training to manage emergencies that may occur following vaccination.

CDC: General recommendations on immunization—recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2011;60(RR-02):1 [PMID: 21293327].

CDC: National, state, and selected local area vaccination coverage among children aged 19–35 months-United States, 2013. MMWR 2014;63:741 [PMID: 25166924].

ROUTINE CHILDHOOD & ADOLESCENT IMMUNIZATION SCHEDULES

Each year, the CDC recommends immunization schedules for children and adolescents, which are an important guide for vaccination providers. Vaccines in the schedules are roughly ordered by the age at which the vaccines are first given. Table 10–2 is the 2015 schedule of routine immunizations for normal infants, children, and adolescents from birth through 18 years of age. Table 10–3 is the 2015 schedule for persons aged 4 months through 18 years who started vaccination late or are more than 1 month behind the routine immunization schedule. Updated immunization schedules are available at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines.

Combination vaccines help solve the problem of large numbers of injections during a clinic visit. Currently available combination vaccines include MMR, MMRV, and various combinations of Hib, HepB, IPV, and DTaP, including DTaP-HepB-IPV and DTaP-IPV-Hib. Separate vaccines should not be combined into one syringe by the provider unless approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), because this could decrease the efficacy of vaccine components.

VACCINE SAFETY

» Vaccine Safety Monitoring

The United States has a sophisticated, multifaceted system to monitor the safety of licensed vaccines. The Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS), the Vaccine Safety Datalink (VSD), the Post-Licensure Rapid Immunization Safety Monitoring (PRISM), and the Clinical Immunization Safety Assessment (CISA) system each provide distinct contributions to monitoring of vaccine safety. VAERS is a national passive surveillance system administered jointly by the FDA and CDC. VAERS accepts reports from health care providers and the public about possible vaccine-related adverse events. Reports of adverse events possibly related to vaccination may be made via the Internet (http://vaers.hhs.gov) or by telephone (1-800-822-7967). As a passive surveillance system, VAERS is subject to limitations, including underreporting, overreporting, the reporting of events that are temporally but not causally related to vaccination, the lack of denominator data, and the lack of a comparison group. The VSD and PRISM, in comparison, are active surveillance systems with continuous safety monitoring of vaccines in defined patient populations. The VSD and PRISM can conduct timely investigations of newly licensed vaccines or emerging vaccine safety concerns. The CISA system is designed to develop protocols for the evaluation, diagnosis, and treatment of adverse events following immunization. Patients with rare and serious adverse events following immunization can be referred to CISA for evaluation.

» Vaccine Risk-Benefit Communication

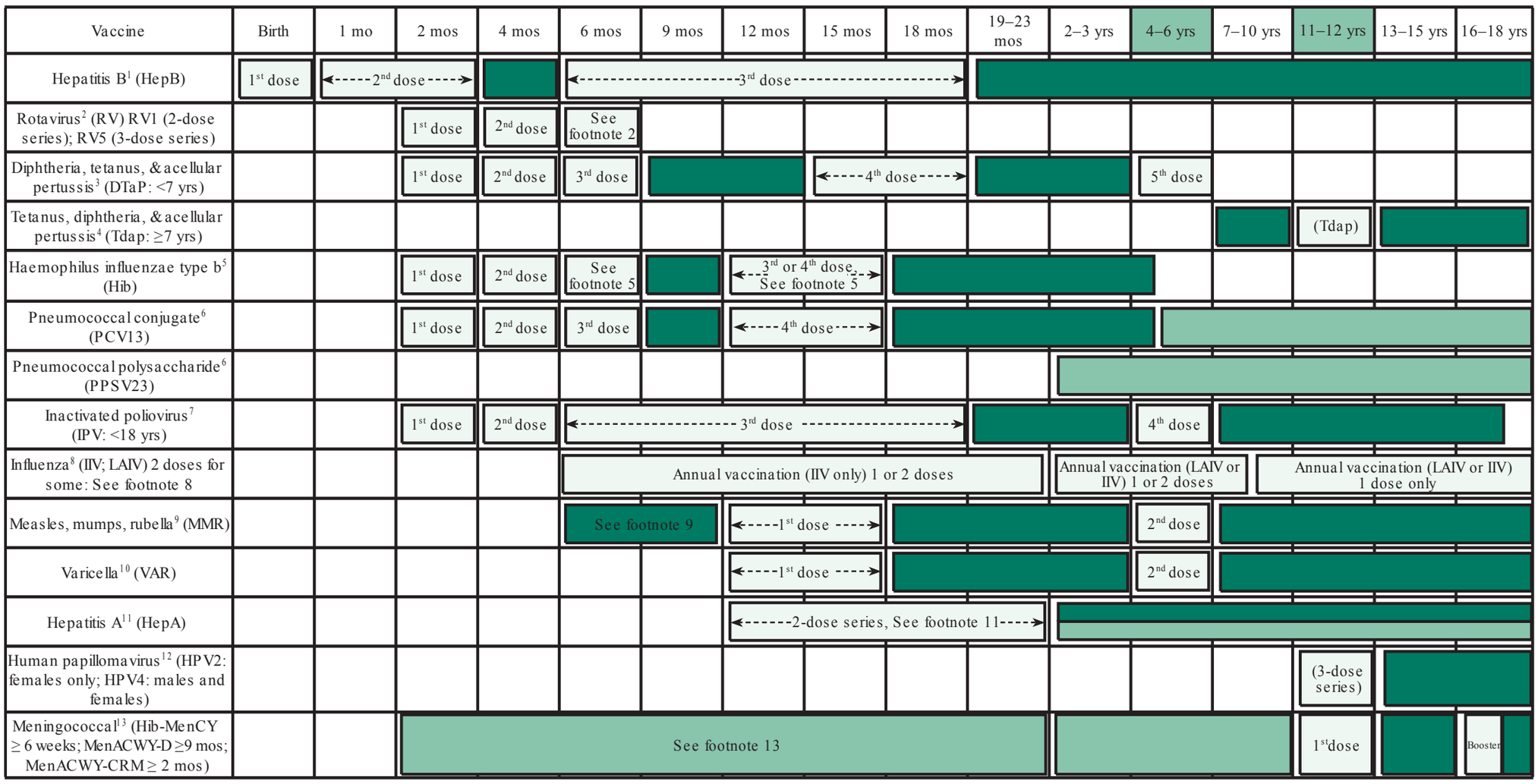
Most parents in the United States choose to vaccinate their children: in 2013, less than 1% of young children had received no vaccines. However, parents' concerns about vaccines are on the rise, and an increasing number

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–2. Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2015.

(FOR THOSE WHO FALL BEHIND OR START LATE, SEE THE CATCH-UP SCHEDULE [Table 10-3]).

These recommendations must be read with the footnotes that follow. For those who fall behind or start late, provide catch-up vaccination at the earliest opportunity as indicated by the green bars in Table 1 To determine minimum intervals between doses, see the catch-up schedule (Table 10-3). School entry and adolescent vaccine age groups are shaded.



This schedule includes recommendations in effect as of January 1, 2015. Any dose not administered at the recommended age should be administered at a subsequent visit, when indicated and feasible. The use of a combination vaccine generally is preferred over separate injections of its equivalent component vaccines. Vaccination providers should consult the relevant Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) statement for detailed recommendations, available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html. Clinically significant adverse events that follow vaccination should be reported to the Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS) online (http://www.vaers.hhs.gov) or by telephone (800-822-7967). Suspected cases of vaccine-preventable diseases should be reported to the state or local health department. Additional information, including precautions and contraindications for vaccination, is available from CDC online (http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/recs/vac-admin/contraindications.htm) or by telephone (800-CDC-INFO [800-232-4636]).

This schedule is approved by the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (http//www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip), the American Academy of Pediatrics (http://www.aap.org), the American Academy of Family Physicians (http://www.aafp.org), and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (http://www.acog.org).

NOTE: The above recommendations must be read along with the footnotes of this schedule.

Footnotes — Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2015

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
For vaccine recommendations for persons 19 years of age and older, see the Adult Immunization Schedule.

Additional information

- For contraindications and precautions to use of a vaccine and for additional information regarding that vaccine, vaccination providers should consult the relevant ACIP statement available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html
- For purposes of calculating intervals between doses, 4 weeks = 28 days. Intervals of 4 months or greater are determined by calendar months.
- Vaccine doses administered 4 days or less before the minimum interval are considered valid. Doses of any vaccine administered ≥5 days earlier than the minimum interval or minimum age should not be counted as valid doses and should be repeated as age-appropriate. The repeat dose should be spaced after the invalid dose by the recommended minimum interval. For further details, see MMWR, General Recommendations on Immunization and Reports / Vol. 60 / No. 2; Table 1. Recommended and minimum ages and intervals between vaccine doses available online at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.
- Information on travel vaccine requirements and recommendations is available at http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/destinations/list.
- For vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies, see Table 13, "Vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies," in General Recommendations on Immunization (ACIP), available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.; and American Academy of Pediatrics. "Immunization in Special Clinical Circumstances,"in Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS eds. Red Book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.

1. Hepatitis B (HepB) vaccine. (Minimum age: birth)

Routine vaccination:

At birth:

- Administer monovalent HepB vaccine to all newborns before hospital discharge.
- For infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive mothers, administer HepB vaccine and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) within 12 hours of birth. These infants should be tested for HBsAg and antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) 1 to 2 months after completion of the HepB series at age 9 through 18 months (preferably at the next well-child visit).
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, within 12 hours of birth administer HepB vaccine regardless of birth weight. For infants weighing less than 2,000 grams, administer HBIG in addition to HepB vaccine within 12 hours of birth. Determine mother's HBsAg status as soon as possible and, if mother is HBsAg-positive, also administer HBIG for infants weighing 2,000 grams or more as soon as possible, but no later than age 7 days.

Doses following the birth dose:

- The second dose should be administered at age 1 or 2 months. Monovalent HepB vaccine should be used for doses administered before age 6 weeks.
- Infants who did not receive a birth dose should receive 3 doses of a HepB-containing vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1 to 2 months, and 6 months starting as soon as feasible. See Figure 2.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose at least 8 weeks after the second dose AND at least 16 weeks after the **first** dose. the final (third or fourth) dose in the HepB vaccine series should be administered **no earlier than age 24 weeks**.
- Administration of a total of 4 doses of HepB vaccine is permitted when a combination vaccine containing HepB is administered after the birth dose.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Unvaccinated persons should complete a 3-dose series.
- A 2-dose series (doses separated by at least 4 months) of adult formulation Recombivax HB is licensed for use in children aged 11 through 15 years.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

2. Rotavirus (RV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for both RV1 [Rotarix] and RV5 [RotaTeq])

Routine vaccination:

Administer a series of RV vaccine to all infants as follows:

1. If Rotarix is used, administer a 2-dose series at 2 and 4 months of age.
2. If RotaTeq is used, administer a 3-dose series at ages 2, 4, and 6 months.
3. If any dose in the series was RotaTeq or vaccine product is unknown for any dose in the series, a total of 3 doses of RV vaccine should be administered.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The maximum age for the first dose in the series is 14 weeks, 6 days; vaccination should not be initiated for infants aged 15 weeks, 0 days or older.
- The maximum age for the final dose in the series is 8 months, 0 days.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

3. Diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks. Exception: DTaP-IPV [Kinrix]: 4 years)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 5-dose series of DTaP vaccine at ages 2, 4, 6, 15 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The fourth dose may be administered as early as age 12 months, provided at least 6 months have elapsed since the third dose. However, the fourth dose of DTaP need not be repeated if it was administered at least 4 months after the third dose of DTaP.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The fifth dose of DTaP vaccine is not necessary if the fourth dose was administered at age 4 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

4. Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine. (Minimum age: 10 years for both Boostrix and Adacel)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years.
- Tdap may be administered regardless of the interval since the last tetanus and diphtheria toxoid-containing vaccine.
- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to pregnant adolescents during each pregnancy (preferred during 27 through 36 weeks' gestation) regardless of time since prior Td or Tdap vaccination.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Persons aged 7 years and older who are not fully immunized with DTaP vaccine should receive Tdap vaccine as 1 dose (preferably the first) in the catch-up series; if additional doses are needed, use Td vaccine. For children 7 through 10 years who receive a dose of Tdap as part of the catch-up series, an adolescent Tdap vaccine dose at age 11 through 12 years should NOT be administered. Td should be administered instead 10 years after the Tdap dose.
- Persons aged 11 through 18 years who have not received Tdap vaccine should receive a dose followed by tetanus and diphtheria toxoid (Td) booster doses every 10 years thereafter.
- Inadvertent doses of DTaP vaccine:
  - If administered inadvertently to a child aged 7 through 10 years may count as part of the catch-up series. This dose may count as the adolescent Tdap dose, or the child can later receive a Tdap booster dose at age 11 through 12 years.
  - If administered inadvertently to an adolescent aged 11 through 18 years, the dose should be counted as the adolescent Tdap booster.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

5. Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PRP-T [ACTHIB, DTaP-IPV/Hib (Pentacel) and Hib-MenCY (MenHibrix)], PRP-OMP [PedvaxHIB or COMVAX], 12 months for PRP-T [Hiberix])

(Continued)

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–2. Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2015. (Continued)

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2- or 3-dose Hib vaccine primary series and a booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) at age 12 through 15 months to complete a full Hib vaccine series.
- The primary series with ActHIB, MenHibrix, or Pentacel consists of 3 doses and should be administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. The primary series with PedvaxHib or COMVAX consists of 2 doses and should be administered at 2 and 4 months of age; a dose at age 6 months is not indicated.
- One booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) of any Hib vaccine should be administered at age 12 through 15 months. An exception is Hiberix vaccine. Hiberix should only be used for the booster (final) dose in children aged 12 months through 4 years who have received at least 1 prior dose of Hib-containing vaccine.
- For recommendations on the use of MenHibrix in patients at increased risk for meningococcal disease, please refer to the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also to MMWR February 28, 2014 / 63(RR01);1-13, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/rr/rr6301.pdf.

Catch-up vaccination:
- If dose 1 was administered at ages 12 through 14 months, administer a second (final) dose at least 8 weeks after dose 1, regardless of Hib vaccine used in the primary series.
- If both doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB or COMVAX), and were administered before the first birthday, the third (and final) dose should be administered at age 12 through 59 months and at least 8 weeks after the second dose.
- If the first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months, administer the second dose at least 4 weeks later and a third (and final) dose at age 12 through 15 months or 8 weeks after second dose, whichever is later.
- If first dose is administered before the first birthday and second dose administered at younger than 15 months, a third (and final) dose should be given 8 weeks later.
- For unvaccinated children aged 15 months or older, administer only 1 dose.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2. For catch-up guidance related to MenHibrix, please see the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also MMWR February 28, 2014 / 63(RR01);1-13, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/rr/rr6301.pdf.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions:
- Children aged 12 through 59 months who are at increased risk for Hib disease, including chemotherapy recipients and those with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, immunoglobulin deficiency, or early component complement deficiency, who have received either no doses or only 1 dose of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age, should receive 2 additional doses of Hib vaccine 8 weeks apart; children who received 2 or more doses of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age should receive 1 additional dose.
- For patients younger than 5 years of age undergoing chemotherapy or radiation treatment who received a Hib vaccine dose(s) within 14 days of starting therapy or during therapy, repeat the dose(s) at least 3 months following therapy completion.
- Recipients of hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) should be revaccinated with a 3-dose regimen of Hib vaccine starting 6 to 12 months after successful transplant, regardless of vaccination history; doses should be administered at least 4 weeks apart.
- A single dose of any Hib-containing vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* children and adolescents 15 months of age and older undergoing an elective splenectomy; if possible, vaccine should be administered at least 14 days before procedure.
- Hib vaccine is not routinely recommended for patients 5 years or older. However, 1 dose of Hib vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* persons aged 5 years or older who have anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease) and unvaccinated persons 5 through 18 years of age with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

  *Patients who have not received a primary series and booster dose or at least 1 dose of Hib vaccine after 14 months of age are considered unimmunized.

6. Pneumococcal vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PCV13, 2 years for PPSV23)

Routine vaccination with PCV13:
- Administer a 4-dose series of PCV13 vaccine at ages 2, 4, and 6 months and at age 12 through 15 months.
- For children aged 14 through 59 months who have received an age-appropriate series of 7-valent PCV (PCV7), administer a single supplemental dose of 13-valent PCV (PCV13).

Catch-up vaccination with PCV13:
- Administer 1 dose of PCV13 to all healthy children aged 24 through 59 months who are not completely vaccinated for their age.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions with PCV13 and PPSV23:
- All recommended PCV13 doses should be administered prior to PPSV23 vaccination if possible.
- For children 2 through 5 years of age with any of the following conditions: chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure); chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy); diabetes mellitus; cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; solid organ transplantation; or congenital immunodeficiency:
  1. Administer 1 dose of PCV13 if any incomplete schedule of 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
  2. Administer 2 doses of PCV13 at least 8 weeks apart if unvaccinated or any incomplete schedule of fewer than 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
  3. Administer 1 supplemental dose of PCV13 if 4 doses of PCV7 or other age-appropriate complete PCV7 series was received previously.
  4. The minimum interval between doses of PCV (PCV7 or PCV13) is 8 weeks.
  5. For children with no history of PPSV23 vaccination, administer PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
- For children aged 6 through 18 years who have cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma:
  1. If neither PCV13 nor PPSV23 has been received previously, administer 1 dose of PCV13 now and 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks later.
  2. If PCV13 has been received previously but PPSV23 has not, administer 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
  3. If PPSV23 has been received but PCV13 has not, administer 1 dose of PCV13 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PPSV23.
- For children aged 6 through 18 years with chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure), chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy), diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, or chronic liver disease, who have not received PPSV23, administer 1 dose of PPSV23. If PCV13 has been received previously, then PPSV23 should be administered at least 8 weeks after any prior PCV13 dose.
- A single revaccination with PPSV23 should be administered 5 years after the first dose to children with sickle cell disease or other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma.

7. Inactivated poliovirus vaccine (IPV). (Minimum age: 6 weeks)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 4-dose series of IPV at ages 2, 4, 6 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The final dose in the series should be administered on or after the fourth birthday and at least 6 months after the previous dose.

Catch-up vaccination:
- In the first 6 months of life, minimum age and minimum intervals are only recommended if the person is at risk of imminent exposure to circulating poliovirus (i.e., travel to a polio-endemic region or during an outbreak).
- If 4 or more doses are administered before age 4 years, an additional dose should be administered at age 4 through 6 years and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- A fourth dose is not necessary if the third dose was administered at age 4 years or older and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- If both OPV and IPV were administered as part of a series, a total of 4 doses should be administered, regardless of the child's current age. IPV is not routinely recommended for U.S. residents aged 18 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

8. Influenza vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 months for inactivated influenza vaccine [IIV], 2 years for live, attenuated influenza vaccine [LAIV])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer influenza vaccine annually to all children beginning at age 6 months. For most healthy, nonpregnant persons aged 2 through 49 years, either LAIV or IIV may be used. However, LAIV should NOT be administered to some persons, including 1) persons who have experienced severe allergic reactions to LAIV, any of its components, or to a previous dose of any other influenza vaccine; 2) children 2 through 17 years receiving aspirin or aspirin-containing products; 3) persons who are allergic to eggs; 4) pregnant women; 5) immunosuppressed persons; 6) children 2 through 4 years of age with asthma or who had wheezing in the past 12 months; or 7) persons who have taken influenza antiviral medications in the previous 48 hours. For all other contraindications and precautions to use of LAIV, see MMWR August 15, 2014 / 63(32);691-697 [40 pages] available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/wk/mm6332.pdf.

For children aged 6 months through 8 years:
- For the 2014-15 season, administer 2 doses (separated by at least 4 weeks) to children who are receiving influenza vaccine for the first time. Some children in this age group who have been vaccinated previously will also need 2 doses. For additional guidance, follow dosing guidelines in the 2014-15 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations, MMWR August 15, 2014 / 63(32);691-697 [40 pages] available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/wk/mm6332.pdf.
- For the 2015–16 season, follow dosing guidelines in the 2015 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations.

For persons aged 9 years and older:
- Administer 1 dose.

9. Measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months for routine vaccination)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of MMR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 4 weeks have elapsed since the first dose.
- Administer 1 dose of MMR vaccine to infants aged 6 through 11 months before departure from the United States for international travel. These children should be revaccinated with 2 doses of MMR vaccine, the first at age 12 through 15 months (12 months if the child remains in an area where disease risk is high), and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.
- Administer 2 doses of MMR vaccine to children aged 12 months and older before departure from the United States for international travel. The first dose should be administered on or after age 12 months and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all school-aged children and adolescents have had 2 doses of MMR vaccine; the minimum interval between the 2 doses is 4 weeks.

10. Varicella (VAR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of VAR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 3 months have elapsed since the first dose. If the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all persons aged 7 through 18 years without evidence of immunity (see MMWR 2007 / 56 [No. RR-4], available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5604.pdf) have 2 doses of varicella vaccine. For children aged 7 through 12 years, the recommended minimum interval between doses is 3 months (if the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid); for persons aged 13 years and older, the minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks.

11. Hepatitis A (HepA) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:
- Initiate the 2-dose HepA vaccine series at 12 through 23 months; separate the 2 doses by 6 to 18 months.
- Children who have received 1 dose of HepA vaccine before age 24 months should receive a second dose 6 to 18 months after the first dose.
- For any person aged 2 years and older who has not already received the HepA vaccine series, 2 doses of HepA vaccine separated by 6 to 18 months may be administered if immunity against hepatitis A virus infection is desired.

Catch-up vaccination:
- The minimum interval between the two doses is 6 months.

Special populations:
- Administer 2 doses of HepA vaccine at least 6 months apart to previously unvaccinated persons who live in areas where vaccination programs target older children, or who are at increased risk for infection. This includes persons traveling to or working in countries that have high or intermediate endemicity of infection; men having sex with men; users of injection and non-injection illicit drugs; persons who work with HAV-infected primates or with HAV in a research laboratory; persons with clotting-factor disorders; persons with chronic liver disease; and persons who anticipate close personal contact (e.g., household or regular babysitting) with an international adoptee during the first 60 days after arrival in the United States from a country with high or intermediate endemicity. The first dose should be administered as soon as the adoption is planned, ideally 2 or more weeks before the arrival of the adoptee.

12. Human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 9 years for HPV2 [Cervarix] and HPV4 [Gardasil])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 3-dose series of HPV vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1-2, and 6 months to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Either HPV4 or HPV2 may be used for females, and only HPV4 may be used for males.
- The vaccine series may be started at age 9 years.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks); administer the third dose 24 weeks after the first dose and 16 weeks after the second dose (minimum interval of 12 weeks).

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer the vaccine series to females (either HPV2 or HPV4) and males (HPV4) at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- Use recommended routine dosing intervals (see Routine vaccination above) for vaccine series catch-up.

13. Meningococcal conjugate vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for Hib-MenCY [MenHibrix], 9 months for MenACWY-D [Menactra], 2 months for MenACWY-CRM [Menveo])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a single dose of Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 11 through 12 years, with a booster dose at age 16 years.
- Adolescents aged 11 through 18 years with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection should receive a 2-dose primary series of Menactra or Menveo with at least 8 weeks between doses.
- For children aged 2 months through 18 years with high-risk conditions, see below.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- If the first dose is administered at age 13 through 15 years, a booster dose should be administered at age 16 through 18 years with a minimum interval of at least 8 weeks between doses.
- If the first dose is administered at age 16 years or older, a booster dose is not needed
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions and other persons at increased risk of disease:
- Children with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease):
  1. Menveo
     - o Children who initiate vaccination at 8 weeks through 6 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 months of age.
     - o Unvaccinated children 7 through 23 months: Administer 2 doses, with the second dose at least 12 weeks after the first dose AND after the first birthday.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
  2. MenHibrix
     - o Children 6 weeks through 18 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
     - o If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
  3. Menactra
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart. If Menactra is administered to a child with asplenia (including sickle cell disease), do not administer Menactra until 2 years of age and at least 4 weeks after the completion of all PCV13 doses.
- Children with persistent complement component deficiency:
  1. Menveo
     - o Children who initiate vaccination at 8 weeks through 6 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 months of age.
     - o Unvaccinated children 7 through 23 months: Administer 2 doses, with the second dose at least 12 weeks after the first dose AND after the first birthday.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
  2. MenHibrix
     - o Children 6 weeks through 18 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
     - o If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
  3. Menactra
     - o Children 9 through 23 months: Administer 2 primary doses at least 12 weeks apart.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
- For children who travel to or reside in countries in which meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, including countries in the African meningitis belt or the Hajj, administer an age-appropriate formulation and series of Menactra or Menveo for protection against serogroups A and W meningococcal disease. Prior receipt of MenHibrix is not sufficient for children traveling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj because it does not contain serogroups A or W.
- For children at risk during a community outbreak attributable to a vaccine serogroup, administer or complete an age- and formulation-appropriate series of MenHibrix, Menactra, or Menveo.
- For booster doses among persons with high-risk conditions, refer to MMWR 2013 / 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

For other catch-up recommendations for these persons, and complete information on use of meningococcal vaccines, including guidance related to vaccination of persons at increased risk of infection, see MMWR March 22, 2013 / 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

CS 244083-B

Used with permission from CDC, available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–3. Catch-up immunization schedule for persons aged 4 months through 18 years who start late or who are more than 1 month behind—United States, 2015.

The figure below provides catch-up schedules and minimum intervals between doses for children whose vaccinations have been delayed. A vaccine series does not need to be restarted, regardless of the time that has elapsed between doses. Use the section appropriate for the child's age. Always use this table in conjunction with Table 10-2 and the footnotes that follow.

Children age 4 months through 6 years					
Vaccine	Minimum Age for Dose 1	Minimum Interval Between Doses			
		Dose 1 to Dose 2	Dose 2 to Dose 3	Dose 3 to Dose 4	Dose 4 to Dose 5
Hepatitis B[1]	Birth	4 weeks	8 weeks and at least 16 weeks after first dose. Minimum age for the final dose is 24 weeks.		
Rotavirus[2]	6 weeks	4 weeks	4 weeks[2]		
Diphtheria, tetanus, and acellular pertussis[3]	6 weeks	4 weeks	4 weeks	6 months	6 months[3]
Haemophilus influenzae type b[5]	6 weeks	4 weeks if first dose was administered before the 1st birthday. 8 weeks (as final dose) if first dose was administered at age 12 through 14 months. No further doses needed if first dose was administered at age 15 months or older.	4 weeks[5] if current age is younger than 12 months **and** first dose was administered at younger than age 7 months, **and** at least 1 previous dose was PRP-T (ActHib, Pentacel) or unknown. 8 weeks and age 12 through 59 months (as final dose)[5] • if current age is younger than 12 months **and** first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months; OR • if current age is 12 through 59 months **and** first dose was administered before the 1st birthday, **and** second dose administered at younger than 15 months; OR • if both doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB; Comvax) **and** were administered before the 1st birthday. No further doses needed if previous dose was administered at age 15 months or older.	8 weeks (as final dose) This dose only necessary for children age 12 through 59 months who received 3 doses before the 1st birthday.	
Pneumococcal[6]	6 weeks	4 weeks if first dose administered before the 1st birthday. 8 weeks (as final dose for healthy children) if first dose was administered at the 1st birthday or after. No further doses needed for healthy children if first dose administered at age 24 months or older.	4 weeks if current age is younger than 12 months and previous dose given at <7 months old. 8 weeks (as final dose for healthy children) if previous dose given between 7 and 11 months (wait until at least 12 months old); OR if current age is 12 months or older and at least 1 dose was given before age 12 months. No further doses needed for healthy children if previous dose administered at age 24 months or older.	8 weeks (as final dose) This dose only necessary for children aged 12 through 59 months who received 3 doses before age 12 months or for children at high risk who received 3 doses at any age.	
Inactivated poliovirus[7]	6 weeks	4 weeks[7]	4 weeks[7]	6 months[7] (minimum age 4 years for final dose).	
Meningococcal[13]	6 weeks	8 weeks[13]	See footnote 13	See footnote 13	
Measles, mumps, rubella[9]	12 months	4 weeks			
Varicella[10]	12 months	3 months			
Hepatitis A[11]	12 months	6 months			
Children and adolescents age 7 through 18 years					
Tetanus, diphtheria; tetanus, diphtheria, and acellular pertussis[4]	7 years[4]	4 weeks	4 weeks if first dose of DTaP/DT was administered before the 1st birthday. 6 months (as final dose) if first dose of DTaP/DT was administered at or after the 1st birthday.	6 months if first dose of DTaP/DT was administered before the 1st birthday.	
Human papillomavirus[12]	9 years	Routine dosing intervals are recommended.[12]			
Hepatitis A[11]	Not applicable (N/A)	6 months			
Hepatitis B[1]	N/A	4 weeks	8 weeks **and** at least 16 weeks after first dose.		
Inactivated poliovirus[7]	N/A	4 weeks	4 weeks[7]	6 months[7]	
Meningococcal[13]	N/A	8 weeks[13]			
Measles, mumps, rubella[9]	N/A	4 weeks			
Varicella[10]	N/A	3 months if younger than age 13 years. 4 weeks if age 13 years or older.			

Footnotes — Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2015

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
For vaccine recommendations for persons 19 years of age and older, see the Adult Immunization Schedule.

Additional information

- For contraindications and precautions to use of a vaccine and for additional information regarding that vaccine, vaccination providers should consult the relevant ACIP statement available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html
- For purposes of calculating intervals between doses, 4 weeks = 28 days. Intervals of 4 months or greater are determined by calendar months.
- Vaccine doses administered 4 days or less before the minimum interval are considered valid. Doses of any vaccine administered ≥5 days earlier than the minimum interval or minimum age should not be counted as valid doses and should be repeated as age-appropriate. The repeat dose should be spaced after the invalid dose by the recommended minimum interval. For further details, see MMWR, General Recommendations on Immunization and Reports / Vol. 60 / No. 2; Table 1. Recommended and minimum ages and intervals between vaccine doses available online at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.
- Information on travel vaccine requirements and recommendations is available at http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/destinations/list.
- For vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies, see Table 13, "Vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies," in General Recommendations on Immunization (ACIP), available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.; and American Academy of Pediatrics. "Immunization in Special Clinical Circumstances,"in Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS eds. Red Book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.

1. Hepatitis B (HepB) vaccine. (Minimum age: birth)

Routine vaccination:

At birth:

- Administer monovalent HepB vaccine to all newborns before hospital discharge.
- For infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive mothers, administer HepB vaccine and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) within 12 hours of birth. These infants should be tested for HBsAg and antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) 1 to 2 months after completion of the HepB series at age 9 through 18 months (preferably at the next well-child visit).
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, within 12 hours of birth administer HepB vaccine regardless of birth weight. For infants weighing less than 2,000 grams, administer HBIG in addition to HepB vaccine within 12 hours of birth. Determine mother's HBsAg status as soon as possible and, if mother is HBsAg-positive, also administer HBIG for infants weighing 2,000 grams or more as soon as possible, but no later than age 7 days.

Doses following the birth dose:

- The second dose should be administered at age 1 or 2 months. Monovalent HepB vaccine should be used for doses administered before age 6 weeks.
- Infants who did not receive a birth dose should receive 3 doses of a HepB-containing vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1 to 2 months, and 6 months starting as soon as feasible. See Figure 2.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose at least 8 weeks after the second dose AND at least 16 weeks after the **first** dose. The final (third or fourth) dose in the HepB vaccine series should be administered **no earlier than age 24 weeks**.
- Administration of a total of 4 doses of HepB vaccine is permitted when a combination vaccine containing HepB is administered after the birth dose.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Unvaccinated persons should complete a 3-dose series.
- A 2-dose series (doses separated by at least 4 months) of adult formulation Recombivax HB is licensed for use in children aged 11 through 15 years.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

2. Rotavirus (RV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for both RV1 [Rotarix] and RV5 [RotaTeq])

Routine vaccination:

Administer a series of RV vaccine to all infants as follows:

1. If Rotarix is used, administer a 2-dose series at 2 and 4 months of age.
2. If RotaTeq is used, administer a 3-dose series at ages 2, 4, and 6 months.
3. If any dose in the series was RotaTeq or vaccine product is unknown for any dose in the series, a total of 3 doses of RV vaccine should be administered.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The maximum age for the first dose in the series is 14 weeks, 6 days; vaccination should not be initiated for infants aged 15 weeks, 0 days or older.
- The maximum age for the final dose in the series is 8 months, 0 days.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

3. Diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks. Exception: DTaP-IPV [Kinrix]: 4 years)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 5-dose series of DTaP vaccine at ages 2, 4, 6, 15 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The fourth dose may be administered as early as age 12 months, provided at least 6 months have elapsed since the third dose. However, the fourth dose of DTaP need not be repeated if it was administered at least 4 months after the third dose of DTaP.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The fifth dose of DTaP vaccine is not necessary if the fourth dose was administered at age 4 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

4. Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine. (Minimum age: 10 years for both Boostrix and Adacel)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years.
- Tdap may be administered regardless of the interval since the last tetanus and diphtheria toxoid-containing vaccine.
- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to pregnant adolescents during each pregnancy (preferred during 27 through 36 weeks' gestation) regardless of time since prior Td or Tdap vaccination.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Persons aged 7 years and older who are not fully immunized with DTaP vaccine should receive Tdap vaccine as 1 dose (preferably the first) in the catch-up series; if additional doses are needed, use Td vaccine. For children 7 through 10 years who receive a dose of Tdap as part of the catch-up series, an adolescent Tdap vaccine dose at age 11 through 12 years should NOT be administered. Td should be administered instead 10 years after the Tdap dose.
- Persons aged 11 through 18 years who have not received Tdap vaccine should receive a dose followed by tetanus and diphtheria toxoid (Td) booster doses every 10 years thereafter.
- Inadvertent doses of DTaP vaccine:
  - If administered inadvertently to a child aged 7 through 10 years may count as part of the catch-up series. This dose may count as the adolescent Tdap dose, or the child can later receive a Tdap booster dose at age 11 through 12 years.
  - If administered inadvertently to an adolescent aged 11 through 18 years, the dose should be counted as the adolescent Tdap booster.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

5. Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PRP-T [ACTHIB, DTaP-IPV/Hib (Pentacel) and Hib-MenCY (MenHibrix)], PRP-OMP [PedvaxHIB or COMVAX], 12 months for PRP-T [Hiberix])

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 2- or 3-dose Hib vaccine primary series and a booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) at age 12 through 15 months to complete a full Hib vaccine series.
- The primary series with ActHIB, MenHibrix, or Pentacel consists of 3 doses and should be administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. The primary series with PedvaxHib or COMVAX consists of 2 doses and should be administered at 2 and 4 months of age; a dose at age 6 months is not indicated.
- One booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) of any Hib vaccine should be administered at age 12 through 15 months. An exception is Hiberix vaccine. Hiberix should only be used for the booster (final) dose in children aged 12 months through 4 years who have received at least 1 prior dose of Hib-containing vaccine.

(Continued)

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–3. Catch-up immunization schedule for persons aged 4 months through 18 years who start late or who are more than 1 month behind—United States, 2015. (Continued)

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

- For recommendations on the use of MenHibrix in patients at increased risk for meningococcal disease, please refer to the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also to MMWR February 28, 2014 / 63(RR01);1-13, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/rr/rr6301.pdf.

Catch-up vaccination:
- If dose 1 was administered at ages 12 through 14 months, administer a second (final) dose at least 8 weeks after dose 1, regardless of Hib vaccine used in the primary series.
- If both doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB or COMVAX), and were administered before the first birthday, the third (and final) dose should be administered at age 12 through 59 months and at least 8 weeks after the second dose.
- If the first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months, administer the second dose at least 4 weeks later and a third (and final) dose at age 12 through 15 months or 8 weeks after second dose, whichever is later.
- If first dose is administered before the first birthday and second dose administered at younger than 15 months, a third (and final) dose should be given 8 weeks later.
- For unvaccinated children aged 15 months or older, administer only 1 dose.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2. For catch-up guidance related to MenHibrix, please see the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also MMWR February 28, 2014 / 63(RR01);1-13, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/rr/rr6301.pdf.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions:
- Children aged 12 through 59 months who are at increased risk for Hib disease, including chemotherapy recipients and those with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, immunoglobulin deficiency, or early component complement deficiency, who have received either no doses or only 1 dose of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age, should receive 2 additional doses of Hib vaccine 8 weeks apart; children who received 2 or more doses of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age should receive 1 additional dose.
- For patients younger than 5 years of age undergoing chemotherapy or radiation treatment who received a Hib vaccine dose(s) within 14 days of starting therapy or during therapy, repeat the dose(s) at least 3 months following therapy completion.
- Recipients of hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) should be revaccinated with a 3-dose regimen of Hib vaccine starting 6 to 12 months after successful transplant, regardless of vaccination history; doses should be administered at least 4 weeks apart.
- A single dose of any Hib-containing vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* children and adolescents 15 months of age and older undergoing an elective splenectomy; if possible, vaccine should be administered at least 14 days before procedure.
- Hib vaccine is not routinely recommended for patients 5 years or older. However, 1 dose of Hib vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* persons aged 5 years or older who have anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease) and unvaccinated persons 5 through 18 years of age with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

*Patients who have not received a primary series and booster dose or at least 1 dose of Hib vaccine after 14 months of age are considered unimmunized.

6. Pneumococcal vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PCV13, 2 years for PPSV23)

Routine vaccination with PCV13:
- Administer a 4-dose series of PCV13 vaccine at ages 2, 4, and 6 months and at age 12 through 15 months.
- For children aged 14 through 59 months who have received an age-appropriate series of 7-valent PCV (PCV7), administer a single supplemental dose of 13-valent PCV (PCV13).

Catch-up vaccination with PCV13:
- Administer 1 dose of PCV13 to all healthy children aged 24 through 59 months who are not completely vaccinated for their age.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions with PCV13 and PPSV23:
- All recommended PCV13 doses should be administered prior to PPSV23 vaccination if possible.
- For children 2 through 5 years of age with any of the following conditions: chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure); chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy); diabetes mellitus; cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; solid organ transplantation; or congenital immunodeficiency:
  1. Administer 1 dose of PCV13 if any incomplete schedule of 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
  2. Administer 2 doses of PCV13 at least 8 weeks apart if unvaccinated or any incomplete schedule of fewer than 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
  3. Administer 1 supplemental dose of PCV13 if 4 doses of PCV7 or other age-appropriate complete PCV7 series was received previously.
  4. The minimum interval between doses of PCV (PCV7 or PCV13) is 8 weeks.
  5. For children with no history of PPSV23 vaccination, administer PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
- For children aged 6 through 18 years who have cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma:
  1. If neither PCV13 nor PPSV23 has been received previously, administer 1 dose of PCV13 now and 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks later.
  2. If PCV13 has been received previously but PPSV23 has not, administer 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
  3. If PPSV23 has been received but PCV13 has not, administer 1 dose of PCV13 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PPSV23.
- For children aged 6 through 18 years with chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure), chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy), diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, or chronic liver disease, who have not received PPSV23, administer 1 dose of PPSV23. If PCV13 has been received previously, then PPSV23 should be administered at least 8 weeks after any prior PCV13 dose.
- A single revaccination with PPSV23 should be administered 5 years after the first dose to children with sickle cell disease or other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin's disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma.

7. Inactivated poliovirus vaccine (IPV). (Minimum age: 6 weeks)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 4-dose series of IPV at ages 2, 4, 6 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The final dose in the series should be administered on or after the fourth birthday and at least 6 months after the previous dose.

Catch-up vaccination:
- In the first 6 months of life, minimum age and minimum intervals are only recommended if the person is at risk of imminent exposure to circulating poliovirus (i.e., travel to a polio-endemic region or during an outbreak).
- If 4 or more doses are administered before age 4 years, an additional dose should be administered at age 4 through 6 years and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- A fourth dose is not necessary if the third dose was administered at age 4 years or older and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- If both OPV and IPV were administered as part of a series, a total of 4 doses should be administered, regardless of the child's current age. IPV is not routinely recommended for U.S. residents aged 18 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

8. Influenza vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 months for inactivated influenza vaccine [IIV], 2 years for live, attenuated influenza vaccine [LAIV])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer influenza vaccine annually to all children beginning at age 6 months. For most healthy, nonpregnant persons aged 2 through 49 years, either LAIV or IIV may be used. However, LAIV should NOT be administered to some persons, including 1) persons who have experienced severe allergic reactions to LAIV, any of its components, or to a previous dose of any other influenza vaccine; 2) children 2 through 17 years receiving aspirin or aspirin-containing products; 3) persons who are allergic to eggs; 4) pregnant women; 5) immunosuppressed persons; 6) children 2 through 4 years of age with asthma or who had wheezing in the past 12 months; or 7) persons who have taken influenza antiviral medications in the previous 48 hours. For all other contraindications and precautions to use of LAIV, see MMWR August 15, 2014 / 63(32);691-697 [40 pages] available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/wk/mm6332.pdf.

For children aged 6 months through 8 years:
- For the 2014-15 season, administer 2 doses (separated by at least 4 weeks) to children who are receiving influenza vaccine for the first time. Some children in this age group who have been vaccinated previously will also need 2 doses. For additional guidance, follow dosing guidelines in the 2014-15 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations, MMWR August 15, 2014 / 63(32);691-697 [40 pages] available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/wk/mm6332.pdf.
- For the 2015–16 season, follow dosing guidelines in the 2015 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations.

For persons aged 9 years and older:
- Administer 1 dose.

9. Measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months for routine vaccination)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of MMR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 4 weeks have elapsed since the first dose.
- Administer 1 dose of MMR vaccine to infants aged 6 through 11 months before departure from the United States for international travel. These children should be revaccinated with 2 doses of MMR vaccine, the first at age 12 through 15 months (12 months if the child remains in an area where disease risk is high), and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.
- Administer 2 doses of MMR vaccine to children aged 12 months and older before departure from the United States for international travel. The first dose should be administered on or after age 12 months and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all school-aged children and adolescents have had 2 doses of MMR vaccine; the minimum interval between the 2 doses is 4 weeks.

10. Varicella (VAR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of VAR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 3 months have elapsed since the first dose. If the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all persons aged 7 through 18 years without evidence of immunity (see MMWR 2007 / 56 [No. RR-4], available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5604.pdf) have 2 doses of varicella vaccine. For children aged 7 through 12 years, the recommended minimum interval between doses is 3 months (if the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid); for persons aged 13 years and older, the minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks.

11. Hepatitis A (HepA) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:
- Initiate the 2-dose HepA vaccine series at 12 through 23 months; separate the 2 doses by 6 to 18 months.
- Children who have received 1 dose of HepA vaccine before age 24 months should receive a second dose 6 to 18 months after the first dose.
- For any person aged 2 years and older who has not already received the HepA vaccine series, 2 doses of HepA vaccine separated by 6 to 18 months may be administered if immunity against hepatitis A virus infection is desired.

Catch-up vaccination:
- The minimum interval between the two doses is 6 months.

Special populations:
- Administer 2 doses of HepA vaccine at least 6 months apart to previously unvaccinated persons who live in areas where vaccination programs target older children, or who are at increased risk for infection. This includes persons traveling to or working in countries that have high or intermediate endemicity of infection; men having sex with men; users of injection and non-injection illicit drugs; persons who work with HAV-infected primates or with HAV in a research laboratory; persons with clotting-factor disorders; persons with chronic liver disease; and persons who anticipate close personal contact (e.g., household or regular babysitting) with an international adoptee during the first 60 days after arrival in the United States from a country with high or intermediate endemicity. The first dose should be administered as soon as the adoption is planned, ideally 2 or more weeks before the arrival of the adoptee.

12. Human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 9 years for HPV2 [Cervarix] and HPV4 [Gardasil])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 3-dose series of HPV vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1-2, and 6 months to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Either HPV4 or HPV2 may be used for females, and only HPV4 may be used for males.
- The vaccine series may be started at age 9 years.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks); administer the third dose 24 weeks after the first dose and 16 weeks after the second dose (minimum interval of 12 weeks).

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer the vaccine series to females (either HPV2 or HPV4) and males (HPV4) at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- Use recommended routine dosing intervals (see Routine vaccination above) for vaccine series catch-up.

13. Meningococcal conjugate vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for Hib-MenCY [MenHibrix], 9 months for MenACWY-D [Menactra], 2 months for MenACWY-CRM [Menveo])

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a single dose of Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 11 through 12 years, with a booster dose at age 16 years.
- Adolescents aged 11 through 18 years with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection should receive a 2-dose primary series of Menactra or Menveo with at least 8 weeks between doses.
- For children aged 2 months through 18 years with high-risk conditions, see below.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- If the first dose is administered at age 13 through 15 years, a booster dose should be administered at age 16 through 18 years with a minimum interval of at least 8 weeks between doses.
- If the first dose is administered at age 16 years or older, a booster dose is not needed
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions and other persons at increased risk of disease:
- Children with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease):
  1. Menveo
     - o Children who initiate vaccination at 8 weeks through 6 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 months of age.
     - o Unvaccinated children 7 through 23 months: Administer 2 doses, with the second dose at least 12 weeks after the first dose AND after the first birthday.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
  2. MenHibrix
     - o Children 6 weeks through 18 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
     - o If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
  3. Menactra
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart. If Menactra is administered to a child with asplenia (including sickle cell disease), do not administer Menactra until 2 years of age and at least 4 weeks after the completion of all PCV13 doses.
- Children with persistent complement component deficiency:
  1. Menveo
     - o Children who initiate vaccination at 8 weeks through 6 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 months of age.
     - o Unvaccinated children 7 through 23 months: Administer 2 doses, with the second dose at least 12 weeks after the first dose AND after the first birthday.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
  2. MenHibrix
     - o Children 6 weeks through 18 months: Administer doses at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
     - o If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
  3. Menactra
     - o Children 9 through 23 months: Administer 2 primary doses at least 12 weeks apart.
     - o Children 24 months and older who have not received a complete series: Administer 2 primary doses at least 8 weeks apart.
- For children who travel to or reside in countries in which meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, including countries in the African meningitis belt or the Hajj, administer an age-appropriate formulation and series of Menactra or Menveo for protection against serogroups A and W meningococcal disease. Prior receipt of MenHibrix is not sufficient for children traveling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj because it does not contain serogroups A or W.
- For children at risk during a community outbreak attributable to a vaccine serogroup, administer or complete an age- and formulation-appropriate series of MenHibrix, Menactra, or Menveo.
- For booster doses among persons with high-risk conditions, refer to MMWR 2013 / 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

For other catch-up recommendations for these persons, and complete information on use of meningococcal vaccines, including guidance related to vaccination of persons at increased risk of infection, see MMWR March 22, 2013 / 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

CS 244083-B

Used with permission from CDC, available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html.

http://obgynebooks.com

of parents are choosing to delay or decline vaccination for their children. While there are myriad reasons why some parents may not vaccinate, several themes recur. Some parents do not believe their children are at risk for diseases such as poliomyelitis, measles, and tetanus. Other parents do not believe that certain vaccine-preventable diseases, such as varicella and pertussis, are particularly serious. There are also widespread concerns about the safety of vaccines. In a recent survey of more than 1500 parents, one-quarter believed that vaccines can cause autism in healthy children (despite extensive evidence to the contrary), and more than 1 in 10 parents had refused at least one recommended vaccine. Health care providers have a critically important role in discussing the known risks and benefits of vaccination with parents. In this context, it is important that providers recognize that parent decisions are often based on inaccurate information about vaccine risk provided by the media or Internet sources. Parents with questions about vaccine safety should be directed to trusted Web sites, such as those of the AAP, the American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP), the CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines), and the Immunization Action Coalition (http://www.immunize.org).

» Vaccine Contraindications & Precautions

All vaccines have certain contraindications and precautions that guide their administration. A contraindication indicates that the potential vaccine recipient is at increased risk of a serious adverse event. A vaccine should not be given when a contraindication to that vaccine is present, whereas a precaution indicates a circumstance that might increase the risk of adverse events or diminish the effectiveness of the vaccine. In the setting of precautions, the risks and benefits of vaccination must be carefully weighed prior to a decision regarding vaccination. Precautions are often temporary, in which case vaccination can resume once the precaution no longer applies. Contraindications and precautions are listed with each vaccine. Additional, more detailed, information is available from the CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines), in the AAP's Red Book, and in vaccine package inserts.

Baggs J et al: The Vaccine Safety Datalink: a model for monitoring immunization safety. Pediatrics 2011;127(Suppl 1):S45 [PMID: 21502240].

Freed GL et al: Parental vaccine safety concerns in 2009. Pediatrics 2010;125:654 [PMID: 20194286].

Glanz JM et al: A population-based cohort study of undervaccination in 8 managed care organizations across the United States. JAMA Pediatr 2013;167:274 [PMID: 23338829].

Nguyen M et al: The Food and Drug Administration's Post-Licensure Rapid Immunization Safety Monitoring program: strengthening the federal vaccine safety enterprise. Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf 2012;21(Suppl 1):291 [PMID: 22262619].

VACCINATION IN SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCES

» Minor Acute Illnesses

Minor acute illnesses, with or without low-grade fever, are not contraindications to vaccination, because there is no evidence that vaccination under these conditions increases the rate of adverse effects or decreases efficacy. A moderate to severe febrile illness may be a reason to postpone vaccination. Routine physical examination and temperature assessment are not necessary before vaccinating healthy infants and children.

» Children With Chronic Illnesses

Most chronic diseases are not contraindications to vaccination; in fact, children with chronic diseases may be at greater risk of complications from vaccine-preventable diseases, such as influenza and pneumococcal infections. Premature infants are a good example. They should be immunized according to their chronologic, not gestational, age. Vaccine doses should not be reduced for preterm or low-birth-weight infants. One exception is children with progressive central nervous system disorders. Vaccination with DTaP should be deferred until the neurologic condition has been clarified and is stable.

» Immunodeficient Children

Congenitally immunodeficient children should not be immunized with live-virus vaccines (oral polio vaccine [OPV, available only in developing countries], rotavirus, MMR, VAR, MMRV, yellow fever, or LAIV) or live-bacteria vaccines (BCG or live typhoid fever vaccine). Depending on the nature of the immunodeficiency, other vaccines are safe, but may fail to evoke an immune response. Children with cancer and children receiving high-dose corticosteroids or other immunosuppressive agents should not be vaccinated with live-virus or live-bacteria vaccines. This contraindication does not apply if the malignancy is in remission and chemotherapy has not been administered for at least 90 days. Live-virus vaccines may also be administered to previously healthy children receiving low to moderate doses of corticosteroids (defined as up to 2 mg/kg/day of prednisone or prednisone equivalent, with a 20 mg/day maximum) for less than 14 days; children without other immunodeficiency receiving short-acting alternate-day corticosteroids; children being maintained on physiologic corticosteroid therapy; and children receiving only topical, inhaled, or intra-articular corticosteroids.

Contraindication of live-pathogen vaccines also applies to children with HIV infection who are severely immunosuppressed. Those who receive MMR should have at least 15% CD4 cells, a CD4 lymphocyte count equivalent to CDC immunologic class 2, and be asymptomatic from

http://obgynebooks.com

their HIV. MMR for these children is recommended at 12 months of age (after 6 months of age during an epidemic); some experts suggest delaying MMR vaccination in HIV-infected children until they have received antiretroviral therapy for 3 months. For HIV-infected children, a booster MMR dose may be given at least 1 month after the initial dose; in fact, giving this booster dose earlier than at 4–6 years of age is often encouraged. Doses given before 1 year of age should not be considered part of a complete series. VAR vaccination is also recommended for HIV-infected children with CD4 cells preserved as listed above. The ACIP recommends only IPV vaccination for all children. Thus, immunodeficient children should no longer be exposed to OPV through household contacts. MMR and VAR are not contraindicated in household contacts of immunocompromised children. HIV-infected children who were vaccinated before their HIV was treated should be reimmunized to ensure adequate protection. The recommended immunization schedule for immunocompromised children is available at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/index.html.

» Allergic or Hypersensitive Children

Severe hypersensitivity reactions are rare following vaccination (1.53 cases per 1 million doses). They are generally attributable to a trace component of the vaccine other than to the antigen; for example, MMR, IPV, and VAR contain microgram quantities of neomycin, and IPV also contains trace amounts of streptomycin and polymyxin B. Children with known anaphylactic responses to these antibiotics should not be given these vaccines. Trace quantities of egg antigens may be present in both inactivated and live influenza and yellow fever vaccines. Guidelines for influenza vaccination in children with egg allergies have recently changed. Children with only hives following exposure to egg can be vaccinated, as long as injectable influenza vaccine is used as opposed to LAIV, vaccination is by a health care provider experienced in recognizing allergic reactions, and the child is observed for 30 minutes following vaccination. Children with more serious allergic reactions to egg, such as angioedema, respiratory symptoms, or anaphylaxis, may be eligible for injectable influenza vaccine, but should be referred to an allergist for an assessment of vaccination risk. Some vaccines (MMR, MMRV, and VAR) contain gelatin. For any persons with a history of anaphylactic reaction to gelatin or any component contained in a vaccine, the vaccine package insert should be reviewed and additional consultation sought, such as from a pediatric allergist. Some tips and rubber plungers of vaccine syringes contain latex. These vaccines should not be administered to individuals with a history of severe anaphylactic allergy to latex, but may be administered to people with less severe allergies. Thimerosal is an organic mercurial compound used as a preservative in vaccines since the 1930s. While there is no evidence that thimerosal has caused serious allergic reactions or autism, all routinely recommended vaccines for infants have been manufactured without thimerosal since mid-2001. Thimerosal-free formulations of injectable influenza vaccine are available, and LAIV does not contain thimerosal.

» Other Special Circumstances

Detailed recommendations for preterm low-birth-weight infants; pediatric transplant recipients; Alaskan Natives/American Indians; children in residential institutions or military communities; or refugees, new immigrants, or travelers are available from the CDC (at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines) and from the AAP's Red Book.

CDC: General recommendations on immunization: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2011;60(RR-02):1 [PMID: 21293327].
Kelso JM: Administering influenza vaccine to egg-allergic persons. Expert Rev Vaccines 2014;13:1049 [PMID: 24962036].

HEPATITIS B VACCINATION

Reported cases of acute hepatitis B has declined dramatically in the United States, largely attributable to vaccination. Based on surveillance data from 2007, acute hepatitis B incidence has declined by 82% since 1990, to the lowest rate ever measured. The greatest declines are in children younger than 15 years, in whom rates have decreased by 98%.

Success in reducing hepatitis B in the United States is due, in large part, to a comprehensive hepatitis B prevention strategy initiated in 1991. The four central elements of this approach are (1) immunization of all infants beginning at birth; (2) routine screening of all pregnant women for hepatitis B infection, and provision of hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIg) to all infants born to infected mothers; (3) routine vaccination of previously unvaccinated children and adolescents; and (4) vaccination of adults at increased risk of hepatitis B infection.

While high immunization rates have been achieved in young children (more than 91% were fully immunized in 2013), there has been less success in identifying hepatitis B–infected mothers and at immunizing high-risk adults. Of the estimated 23,000 mothers who deliver each year who are hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) positive, only 9000 are identified through prenatal screening. While there is an average of 90 cases of perinatally acquired hepatitis B infection reported to the CDC every year, the actual number of perinatal HBV infections is estimated to be 10–20 times higher than the number currently detected and reported. This circumstance represents a significant missed opportunity for prevention in exposed infants, given that

http://obgynebooks.com

administration of hepatitis B vaccine (HepB) in conjunction with HBIg is 95% effective at preventing mother-to-infant transmission of the virus. Further, many hospitals do not routinely offer HepB to all newborns, despite ACIP recommendations for universal newborn HepB vaccination. Similarly, while HepB alone is 90%–95% effective at preventing hepatitis B infection, only 45% of high-risk adults have been vaccinated.

All pregnant women should be routinely screened for HBsAg. Infants born to HBsAg-positive mothers should receive both HepB and HBIg immediately after birth. Infants for whom the maternal HBsAg status is unknown should receive vaccine (but not HBIg) within 12 hours of birth. In such circumstances, the mother's HBsAg status should be determined as soon as possible during her hospitalization, and the infant given HBIg if the mother is found to be HBsAg positive. For all infants, the hepatitis B immunization series should be started at birth, with the first dose given prior to discharge from the hospital. The ACIP has recommended that any decision to defer the birth dose require an explanation in the medical record, accompanied by a copy of the mother's negative HBsAg test during the current pregnancy. In 2013, 74% of infants nationally received HepB within 3 days after birth, with wide variation by state (45%–88%).

Routine immunization with three doses of HepB is recommended for all infants and all previously unvaccinated children aged 0–18 years. A two-dose schedule is available for adolescents. Screening for markers of past infection before vaccinating is not indicated for children and adolescents, but may be considered for high-risk adults. Because HepB vaccines consist of an inactivated subunit of the virus, the vaccines are not infectious and are not contraindicated in immunosuppressed individuals or pregnant women.

» Vaccines Available

1. Hepatitis B vaccine (Recombivax HB, Merck) contains recombinant HepB only.
2. Hepatitis B vaccine (Engerix-B, GlaxoSmithKline) contains recombinant HepB only.
3. Hepatitis B-Hib (Comvax, Merck) contains vaccines against hepatitis B and Hib.
4. DTaP-HepB-IPV (Pediarix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains vaccines against diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, and poliovirus.

Only the non-combination vaccines (Recombivax HB and Engerix-B) can be given between birth and 6 weeks of age. Any single or combination vaccine listed above can be used to complete the hepatitis B vaccination series. A combination vaccine against hepatitis A and hepatitis B (Twinrix, GlaxoSmithKline) is available, but is only licensed in the United States for persons 18 years and older.

» Dosage Schedule of Administration

HepB is recommended for all infants and children in the United States. Table 10–4 presents the vaccination schedule for newborn infants, dependent on maternal HBsAg status. Infants born to mothers with positive or unknown HBsAg status should receive HepB vaccine within 12 hours of birth. Infants born to HBsAg-negative mothers should receive the vaccine prior to hospital discharge.

For children younger than 11 years not previously immunized, three intramuscular doses of HepB are needed. Adolescents aged 11–15 years have two options: the standard pediatric three-dose schedule or two doses of adult Recombivax HB (1.0 mL dose), with the second dose administered 4–6 months after the first dose. Certain patients may have reduced immune response to HepB vaccination, including preterm infants weighing less than 2000 g at birth, the elderly, immunosuppressed patients, and those receiving dialysis. Preterm infants whose mothers are HBsAg-positive or with unknown HBsAg status should receive both HepB and HBIg within 12 hours of birth. For preterm infants whose mothers are known to be HBsAg-negative, initiation of the vaccination series should be delayed until 30 days of chronologic age if the infant is medically stable or prior to hospital discharge if the infant is discharged before 30 days of age. Pediatric hemodialysis patients and immunocompromised persons may require larger doses or an increased number of doses, with dose amounts and schedules available in the most recent CDC hepatitis B recommendations (see references).

» Contraindications & Precautions

HepB should not be given to persons with a serious allergic reaction to yeast or to any vaccine components. Individuals with a history of serious adverse events, such as anaphylaxis, after receiving HepB should not receive additional doses. Vaccination is not contraindicated in persons with a history of Guillain-Barré syndrome, multiple sclerosis, autoimmune disease, other chronic conditions, or in pregnancy.

» Adverse Effects

The overall rate of adverse events following vaccination is low. Those reported are minor, including fever (1%–6%) and pain at the injection site (3%–29%). There is no evidence of an association between vaccination and sudden infant death syndrome, multiple sclerosis, autoimmune disease, or chronic fatigue syndrome.

» Postexposure Prophylaxis

Postexposure prophylaxis is indicated for unvaccinated persons with perinatal, sexual, household, percutaneous, or mucosal exposure to hepatitis B virus. When prophylaxis is indicated, unvaccinated individuals should receive HBIg

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–4. Hepatitis B vaccine schedules for newborn infants, by maternal hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) status.[a]

	Single Antigen Vaccine		Single Antigen Followed by Combination Vaccine	
Maternal HBsAg Status	Dose	Age	Dose	Age
Positive[b]	1[c]	Birth (≤ 12 h)	1[c]	Birth (≤ 12 h)
	HBIg[d]	Birth (≤ 12 h)	HBIg	Birth (≤ 12 h)
	2	1–2 mo	2	2 mo
			3	4 mo
	3[e]	6 mo	4[e]	6 mo (Pediarix) or 12–15 mo (Comvax)
Unknown[f]	1[c]	Birth (≤ 12 h)	1[c]	Birth (≤ 12 h)
	2	1–2 mo	2	2 mo
			3	4 mo
	3[e]	6 mo	4[e]	6 mo (Pediarix) or 12–15 mo (Comvax)
Negative	1[c,g]	Birth (before discharge)	1[c,g]	Birth (before discharge)
	2	1–2 mo	2	2 mo
			3	4 mo
	3[e]	6–18 mo	4[e]	6 mo (Pediarix) or 12–15 mo (Comvax)

[a]See text for vaccination of preterm infants weighing less than 2000 g.
[b]Infants born to HBsAg-positive mothers should be tested at one year after completion of the immunization series for anti-HBs and HBsAg.
[c]Recombivax HB or Engerix-B should be used for the birth dose. Comvax and Pediarix cannot be administered at birth or before age 6 weeks.
[d]Hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIg) (0.5 mL) administered intramuscularly in a separate anatomic site from vaccine.
[e]The final dose in the vaccine series should not be administered before age 24 weeks (164 days).
[f]Mothers should have blood drawn and tested for HBsAg as soon as possible after admission for delivery; if the mother is found to be HBsAg-positive, the infant should receive HBIg as soon as possible, but no later than age 7 days.
[g]On a case-by-case basis and only in rare circumstances, the first dose may be delayed until after hospital discharge for an infant who weighs ≥ 2000 g and whose mother is HBsAg-negative, but only if a physician's order to withhold the birth dose and a copy of the mother's original HBsAg-negative laboratory report are documented in the infant's medical record.
Reproduced with permission from CDC, Recommended immunization schedules for persons aged 0-18 years, United States, 2012. MMWR 2012;61(5).

(0.06 mL/kg) and the first dose of HepB at a separate anatomic site. Sexual and household contacts of someone with chronic (as opposed to acute) infection should receive HepB only. All previously vaccinated persons exposed to hepatitis B should be retested for anti-HBs. If antibody levels are adequate (≥ 10 mIU/mL), no treatment is necessary. If levels are inadequate and the exposure was to HBsAg-positive blood, HBIg and vaccination are required. For non-vaccinated individuals with percutaneous or permucosal exposure to blood, HepB should be given, and HBIg considered depending on the HBsAg status of the person who was the source of the blood.

» Antibody Preparations

HBIg is prepared from HIV-negative and hepatitis C virus-negative donors with high titers of hepatitis B surface antibody. The process used to prepare this product inactivates or eliminates any undetected HIV and hepatitis C virus.

Mast EE et al; Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices: A comprehensive immunization strategy to eliminate transmission of hepatitis B virus infection in the United States: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization (ACIP) part 1: immunization of infants, children, and adolescents. MMWR Recomm Rep 2005;54(RR-16):1 [PMID: 16371945].

Wasley A et al: The prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection in the United States in the era of vaccination. J Infect Dis 2010;202:192 [PMID: 20533878].

Willis BC et al: Gaps in hospital policies and practices to prevent perinatal transmission of hepatitis B virus. Pediatrics 2010;125:704 [PMID: 20211952].

ROTAVIRUS VACCINATION

Rotavirus is the leading cause of hospitalization and death from acute gastroenteritis in young children worldwide. The burden of rotavirus is particularly severe in the developing

http://obgynebooks.com

world, where as many as 500,000 children die each year from rotavirus-associated dehydration and other complications. While deaths from rotavirus were uncommon in the United States (20–60 deaths per year), prior to the introduction of rotavirus vaccine, rotavirus infections caused substantial morbidity annually with an estimated 2.7 million diarrheal illnesses, 410,000 office visits, and 55,000–70,000 hospitalizations.

Rotavirus vaccination has been recommended in the United States since 2006. Two rotavirus vaccines are currently available, a pentavalent rotavirus vaccine (RV5; RotaTeq) and a monovalent rotavirus vaccine (RV1; Rotarix).

Vaccination coverage in 2013 in the United States for more than or equal to two doses of rotavirus vaccine was 73%, up from 44% just four years earlier. The impact of the vaccines has been substantial, reducing hospitalizations and outpatient visits in the United States, and death from rotavirus disease in the developing countries where it has been introduced.

RV5 and RV1 have been closely monitored for any vaccine-associated intussusception. While early studies showed no increased risk, there were two large recent studies that showed a slightly increased risk of intussusception (1.5 excess cases of intussusception per 100,000 recipients after the first dose for RV5; 5.3 excess cases per 100,000 recipients after 2 doses of RV1). However, because the benefits of vaccination against rotavirus disease greatly outweigh the risks, the ACIP made no change to the current recommendations.

» Vaccines Available

1. RV5 (Rotateq, Merck) is a pentavalent, live, oral, human-bovine reassortant rotavirus vaccine. The vaccine is a liquid, does not require any reconstitution, and does not contain any preservatives. The dosing tube is latex-free.
2. RV1 (Rotarix, GlaxoSmithKline) is a monovalent, live, oral, attenuated human rotavirus vaccine. The vaccine needs to be reconstituted with 1 mL of diluent using a prefilled oral applicator. The vaccine does not contain any preservatives. The oral applicator contains latex.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Either RV5 or RV1 can be used to prevent rotavirus gastroenteritis. RV5 should be administered orally, as a three-dose series, at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. RV1 should be administered orally, as a two-dose series, at 2 and 4 months of age. For both rotavirus vaccines, the minimum age for dose 1 is 6 weeks, and the maximum age for dose 1 is 14 weeks and 6 days. The vaccination series should not be started at 15 weeks of age or older, because of the lack of safety data around administering dose 1 to older infants. The minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks. All doses should be administered by 8 months and 0 days of age. While the ACIP recommends that the vaccine series be completed with the same product (RV5 or RV1) used for the initial dose, if this is not possible, providers should complete the series with whichever product is available.

Either rotavirus vaccine can be given simultaneously with all other recommended infant vaccines. No restrictions are placed on infant feeding before or after receiving rotavirus vaccine. Infants readily swallow the vaccine in most circumstances; however, if an infant spits up or vomits after a dose is administered, the dose should not be readministered; the infant can receive the remaining doses at the normal intervals.

» Contraindications & Precautions

Rotavirus vaccine should not be given to infants with a severe hypersensitivity to any components of the vaccine, to infants who had a serious allergic reaction to a previous dose of the vaccine, or to infants with a history of intussusception from any cause. Because the RV1 oral applicator contains latex rubber, RV1 should not be given to infants with a severe latex allergy; RV5 is latex-free. Both vaccines are contraindicated in infants with severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID). Vaccination should be deferred in infants with acute moderate or severe gastroenteritis. Limited data suggest that rotavirus vaccination is safe and effective in premature infants. A small trial in South Africa also demonstrated that RV1 was well tolerated and immunogenic in HIV-infected children. However, vaccine safety and efficacy in infants with immunocompromising conditions other than SCID, preexisting chronic gastrointestinal conditions (eg, Hirschsprung disease or short-gut syndrome), or a prior episode of intussusception, has not been established. Clinicians should weigh the potential risks and benefits of vaccination in such circumstances. Infants living in households with pregnant women or immunocompromised persons can be vaccinated.

» Adverse Effects

In addition to the aforementioned slightly increased risk of intussusception, in prelicensure trials, RV5 was associated with a very small but statistically significant increased risk of vomiting and diarrhea, and RV1 with a similarly small but significant increased risk of cough or runny nose.

CDC. Addition of history of intussusception as a contraindication for rotavirus vaccination. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2011;60:1427 [PMID: 22012117].

Cortese MM, Parashar UD; CDC: Prevention of rotavirus gastroenteritis among infants and children: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2009;58(RR-2):1 [PMID: 19194371].

Weintraub ES et al. Risk of intussusception after monovalent rotavirus vaccination. N Engl J Med 2014;370:513–519 [PMID: 24422678].

http://obgynebooks.com

Yen C et al: Diarrhea-associated hospitalizations among US children over 2 rotavirus seasons after vaccine introduction. Pediatrics 2011;127:e9 [PMID: 21172995].

Yih WK et al. Intussusception risk after rotavirus vaccination in U.S. infants. N Engl J Med 2014;370:503–512 [PMID: 24422676].

DIPHTHERIA-TETANUS-ACELLULAR PERTUSSIS VACCINATION

Diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis (DTP) vaccines have been given in a combined vaccine for many decades, and have dramatically reduced each of these diseases. The efficacy with antigens in the combined vaccine is similar to that with antigens in single component vaccines. DTP vaccines containing whole-cell pertussis antigens are used widely in the world, but have been entirely replaced in the United States with DTaP vaccines, which contain purified, inactivated components of the pertussis bacterium.

Diphtheria is caused by a gram-positive bacillus, Corynebacterium diphtheriae. It is a toxin-mediated disease, with diphtheria toxin causing local tissue destruction, as in pharyngeal and tonsillar diphtheria, as well as systemic disease, particularly myocarditis and neuritis. The overall case fatality rate is between 5% and 10%, with higher death rates in persons younger than 5 years, or older than 40 years. Largely because of successful vaccination programs, only five cases of diphtheria have been reported in the United States since 2000. In the last several decades, the majority of diphtheria cases in the United States have been in unimmunized or inadequately immunized persons. The clinical efficacy of diphtheria vaccine is not precisely known but has been estimated to be greater than 95%.

The anaerobic gram-positive rod Clostridium tetani causes tetanus, usually through infection of a contaminated wound. When C tetani colonizes devitalized tissue, the exotoxin tetanospasmin is disseminated to inhibitory motor neurons, resulting in generalized rigidity and spasms of skeletal muscles. Tetanus-prone wounds include (1) puncture wounds, including those acquired due to body piercing, tattooing, and intravenous drug abuse; (2) animal bites; (3) lacerations and abrasions; and (4) wounds resulting from nonsterile neonatal delivery and umbilical cord care (neonatal tetanus). In persons who have completed the primary vaccination series and have received a booster dose within the past 10 years, vaccination is virtually 100% protective. In 2012, 37 cases of tetanus occurred in the United States, almost all in persons who have had inadequate, distant (> 10 years) or no tetanus immunization.

Pertussis is also primarily a toxin-mediated disease caused by Bordetella pertussis, which is called “whooping cough” because of the high-pitched inspiratory whoop that can follow intense paroxysms of cough. Pertussis complications include death, often from associated pneumonia, seizures, and encephalopathy. Pertussis incidence in the United States declined dramatically between the 1940s and 1980s, but beginning in the early 1980s, incidence has been slowly increasing, with adolescents and adults accounting for a greater proportion of reported cases. Reasons for increased incidence include improved detection of cases with better laboratory testing methodology (polymerase chain reaction, serology), improved recognition of cases in adolescents and adults, and waning protection from childhood vaccination or prior infection. Infants less than 6 months have the highest rate of pertussis infection (143 cases per 100,000) and greater than 90% of pertussis deaths occur in neonates and infants less than 3 months.

In 2014, 28,660 cases of pertussis were reported in the United States with many localized outbreaks necessitating enhanced vaccination programs. A single booster dose of a different formulation, Tdap, is now recommended for all adolescents and adults, and pregnant women with each pregnancy. Providing a booster dose of pertussis-containing vaccine may prevent adolescent and adult pertussis cases, and also has the potential to reduce the spread of pertussis to infants, who are most susceptible to pertussis complications.

» Vaccines Available

Diphtheria, Tetanus, and Acellular Pertussis Combinations

1. DTaP (Daptacel, sanofi pasteur; Infanrix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains tetanus toxoid, diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis vaccine. This DTaP is licensed for ages 6 weeks through 6 years and can be used for doses 1 through 5.
2. Tdap (Boostrix, GlaxoSmithKline) is a tetanus-reduced dose diphtheria-acellular pertussis vaccine formulated for persons 10 years of age and older, including adults and the elderly.
3. Tdap (Adacel, sanofi pasteur) is a tetanus-diphtheria-acellular pertussis vaccine approved for persons 11 through 64 years of age.

DTaP Combined With Other Vaccines

1. DTaP-IPV-Hepatitis B (Pediarix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains DTaP combined with poliovirus and HepB vaccines. It is approved for the first three doses of the DTaP and IPV series, given at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. Although it is approved for use through age 6 years, it is not licensed for booster doses. It cannot be used, for example, as the fourth dose of DTaP (typically given at 15–18 months of age).
2. DTaP-IPV-Hib (Pentacel, sanofi pasteur) contains DTaP, IPV, and Hib vaccines. The Hib component is Hib capsular polysaccharide bound to tetanus toxoid. This vaccine is approved for use as doses 1 through 4 of the DTaP

http://obgynebooks.com

series among children 6 weeks to 4 years of age. It is typically given at 2, 4, 6, and 15–18 months of age, and should not be used as the fifth dose in the DTaP series.

3. DTaP-IPV (Kinrix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains DTaP and IPV vaccines. The vaccine is licensed for children 4–6 years of age, for use as the fifth dose of the DTaP vaccine series and the fourth dose of the IPV series. Using this vaccine would reduce by one the number of injections a 4- to 6-year-old child would receive.

Diphtheria and Tetanus Combinations

1. DT (generic, sanofi pasteur) contains tetanus toxoid and diphtheria toxoid to be used only in children younger than age 7 years with a contraindication to pertussis vaccination.
2. Td (Decavac, sanofi pasteur; generic, Massachusetts Biological Labs) contains tetanus toxoid and a reduced quantity of diphtheria toxoid, which is typically used for adults requiring tetanus prophylaxis.

Tetanus Only

TT (generic, sanofi pasteur) contains tetanus toxoid only, and can be used for adults or children. However, the use of this single-antigen vaccine is generally not recommended, because of the need for periodic boosting for both diphtheria and tetanus.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Although several different vaccines are available, a few general considerations can help guide their use in specific circumstances. DTaP (alone or combined with other vaccines) is used for infants and children between 6 weeks and 6 years of age. Children 7–10 years of age not fully immunized against pertussis (meaning those who have not received five prior doses of DTaP, or four doses of DTaP if the fourth dose was given on or after the fourth birthday), who have no contraindications to pertussis immunization, should receive a single dose of Tdap for pertussis protection. For adolescents and adults, a single dose of Tdap is used, followed by booster doses of Td every 10 years; a detailed description of Tdap use is provided later in this chapter.

The primary series of DTaP vaccination should consist of four doses, given at 2, 4, 6, and 15–18 months of age. The fourth dose may be given as early as 12 months of age if 6 months have elapsed since the third dose. Giving the fourth dose between 12 and 15 months of age is indicated if the provider thinks the child is unlikely to return for a clinic visit between 15 and 18 months of age. Children should receive a fifth dose of DTaP at 4–6 years of age. However, a fifth dose of DTaP is not needed if the fourth dose was given after the child's fourth birthday. The same brand of DTaP should be used for all doses if feasible.

» Contraindications & Precautions

DTaP vaccines should not be used in individuals who have had an anaphylactic-type reaction to a previous vaccine dose or to a vaccine component. DTaP should not be given to children who developed encephalopathy, not attributable to another identified cause, within 7 days of a previous dose of DTaP or DTP. DTaP vaccination should also be deferred in individuals with progressive neurologic disorders, such as infantile spasms, uncontrolled epilepsy, or progressive encephalopathy, until their neurologic status is clarified and stabilized.

Precautions to DTaP vaccination include: high fever (≥ 40.5°F), persistent inconsolable crying, or shock-like state within 48 hours of a previous dose of DTP or DTaP; seizures within 3 days of a previous dose of DTP or DTaP; Guillain-Barré syndrome less than 6 weeks after a previous tetanus-containing vaccine; or incident moderate or severe acute illness with or without a fever.

» Adverse Effects

Local reactions, fever, and other mild systemic effects occur with acellular pertussis vaccines at one-fourth to two-thirds the frequency noted following whole-cell DTP vaccination. Moderate to severe systemic effects, including fever of 40.5°C, persistent inconsolable crying lasting 3 hours or more, and hypotonic-hyporesponsive episodes, are much less frequent than with whole-cell DTP. These are without sequelae. Severe neurologic effects have not been temporally associated with DTaP vaccines in use in the United States. Data are limited regarding differences in reactogenicity among currently licensed DTaP vaccines. More severe local reactions at injection sites appear to occur with increasing dose number (including swelling of the thigh or entire upper arm) after receipt of the fourth and fifth doses for all currently licensed DTaP vaccines.

» Diphtheria Antibody Preparations

Diphtheria antitoxin is manufactured in horses. Sensitivity to diphtheria antitoxin must be tested before it is given. Dosage depends on the size and location of the diphtheritic membrane and an estimate of the patient's level of intoxication. Consultation on the use of diphtheria antitoxin is available from the CDC's National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases. Diphtheria antitoxin is not commercially available in the United States and must be obtained from the CDC.

» Tetanus Antibody Preparations

Human tetanus immune globulin (TIg) is indicated in the management of tetanus-prone wounds in individuals who have had an uncertain number or fewer than three tetanus immunizations. Persons fully immunized with at least three

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 10–5. Guide to tetanus prophylaxis in routine wound management.

History of Adsorbed Tetanus Toxoid (Doses)	Clean, Minor Wounds		All Other Wounds[a]	
	DTaP, Tdap, or Td[b]	TIG[c]	DTaP, Tdap, or Td[b]	TIG[c]
Fewer than 3 or unknown	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
3 or more	No if < 10 y since last tetanus-containing vaccine dose	No	No[d] if < 5 y since last tetanus-containing vaccine dose	No
	Yes if ≥ 10 y since last tetanus-containing vaccine dose	No	Yes if ≥ 5 y since last tetanus-containing vaccine dose	No

Tdap indicates booster tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis vaccine; DTaP, diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis vaccine; Td, adult-type diphtheria and tetanus toxoids vaccine; tig, tetanus immune globulin (human).

[a]Such as, but not limited to, wounds contaminated with dirt, feces, soil, and saliva; puncture wounds; avulsions; and wounds resulting from missiles, crushing, burns, and frostbite.
[b]DTaP is used for children younger than 7 years. Tdap is preferred over Td for under immunized children 7 years of age and older who have not received Tdap previously.
[c]Immune globulin intravenous should be used when TIG is not available.
[d]More frequent boosters are not needed and can accentuate adverse effects.
Used with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

doses do not require TIg, regardless of the nature of their wounds (Table 10–5). The optimal dose of TIg has not been established, but some sources recommend 3000–6000 units as a single dose, with part of the dose infiltrated around the wound.

http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/dip.html.
http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/pert.htmlhttp://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/tetanus.html.

HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE TYPE B VACCINATION

H influenzae type b (Hib) causes a wide spectrum of serious bacterial illnesses, particularly in young children, including meningitis, epiglottitis, pneumonia, septic arthritis, and cellulitis. Before the introduction of effective vaccines, Hib was the leading cause of invasive bacterial disease in children younger than 5 years in the United States with two-thirds of cases occurring in children younger than 18 months.

Hib is surrounded by a polysaccharide capsule (polyribosylribitol phosphate [PRP]) that contributes to virulence. Antibodies to this polysaccharide confer immunity to the disease. When Hib polysaccharide is chemically bonded (conjugated) to certain protein carriers, the conjugate vaccine induces long-term T-cell dependent immune memory that is highly effective in young children. Importantly, polysaccharide-protein conjugate vaccines also prevent carriage of the bacterium, and therefore limit spread from asymptomatic carriers to others in the community. All Hib vaccines are polysaccharide-protein conjugates.

Bacterial serotyping is required to differentiate Hib caused infections from those caused by other encapsulated and nonencapsulated H influenzae species. In the early 1980s, roughly 20,000 cases of invasive Hib disease occurred each year in the United States. Because of the introduction of protein conjugate Hib vaccines, only 30 cases of invasive Hib disease occurred in children younger than age 5 years in 2012. An additional 415 cases were caused by H influenzae species, which were not serotype b or the serotype was not reported.

» Vaccines Available

Six vaccines against Hib disease are available in the United States; three are Hib-only vaccines, and three are combination vaccines. Each vaccine contains Hib polysaccharide conjugated to a protein carrier, but different protein carriers are used. The Hib conjugate vaccine that uses a meningococcal outer membrane protein carrier is abbreviated PRP-OMP; and PRP-T vaccine uses a tetanus toxoid carrier.

» Hib-Only Vaccines

1. Hib (PedvaxHIB, Merck, uses PRP-OMP), for use at 2, 4, and 12–15 months of age.
2. Hib (ActHIB, sanofi pasteur, uses PRP-T), for use at 2, 4, 6, and 12–15 months of age.

http://obgynebooks.com

3. Hib (Hiberix, GlaxoSmithKline, uses PRP-T), for use as the booster (final) dose in the Hib vaccine series for children 15 months of age and older; it is not licensed for the primary series.

Hib Combined With Other Vaccines

1. Hepatitis B-Hib (Comvax, uses PRP-OMP, Merck), for use at 2, 4, and 12–15 months of age. It should not be given prior to 6 weeks of age.
2. DTaP-IPV-Hib (Pentacel, sanofi pasteur, uses PRP-T) contains DTaP, IPV, and Hib vaccines. This vaccine is approved for use in children 6 weeks to 4 years of age.
3. Hib-MenCY-TT (MenHibrix, GlaxoSmithKline Biologicals): A single 0.5-mL dose contains Neisseria meningitidis capsular polysaccharides from types C and Y conjugated to tetanus toxoid, and Hib capsular polysaccharide conjugated to tetanus toxoid.

Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Hib vaccination is recommended for all infants in the United States. The vaccine dose is 0.5 mL given intramuscularly. Vaccines containing PRP-OMP (PedvaxHib, Comvax) are given at 2, 4, and 12–15 months of age; vaccines containing PRP-T (ActHib, Pentacel) are given at 2, 4, 6, and 12–15 months of age. The recommended interval between doses in the primary series is 8 weeks, but a minimal interval of 4 weeks is permitted. For infants who missed the primary vaccination series, a catch-up schedule is used (see Table 10–3). Hib-MenCY-TT is recommended for infants at increased risk of meningococcal disease (see meningococcal section of this chapter). Hib vaccine is not generally recommended for children 5 years of age or older.

Contraindications & Precautions

Hib vaccine should not be given to anyone who has had a severe allergic reaction to a prior Hib vaccine dose or to any vaccine components. Hib vaccine should not be given to infants before 6 weeks of age.

Adverse Effects

Adverse reactions following Hib vaccination are uncommon. Between 5% and 30% of vaccine recipients experience swelling, redness, or pain at the vaccination site. Systemic reactions such as fever and irritability are rare.

Briere EC, Rubin L, Moro PL, Cohn A, Clark T, Messonnier N; Division of Bacterial Diseases; National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases; CDC: Prevention and control of Haemophilus influenzae type b disease: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2014;63(RR-01):1 [PMID: 24572654].

PNEUMOCOCCAL VACCINATION

Before the routine use of pneumococcal conjugate vaccines in infants, Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcus) was the leading cause of invasive bacterial disease in children. Pneumococcus remains a leading cause of febrile bacteremia, bacterial sepsis, meningitis, and pneumonia in children and adults in the United States and worldwide. It is also a common cause of otitis media and sinusitis. At least 90 different serotypes of pneumococcus have been identified, and immunity to one serotype does not confer immunity to other serotypes.

A conjugate vaccine against seven pneumococcal serotypes (PCV7) was first licensed in the United States in 2000. The routine use of PCV7 led to a dramatic decrease in pneumococcal disease. However, as disease from PCV7 serotypes declined, disease caused by pneumococcal serotypes not included in PCV7 increased. In 2010, a 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13) was licensed for use in the United States. This vaccine contains the serotypes in PCV7 and an additional six pneumococcal serotypes. PCV13 contains the capsular polysaccharide antigens of 13 serotypes, each individually conjugated to a nontoxic diphtheria carrier protein.

A 23-valent pneumococcal unconjugate polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV23) is available in the United States, but its use in children is limited to those with certain chronic medical conditions. PPSV23 protects against 23 serotypes, and provides protection against approximately 25% of pneumococcal infections not prevented by PCV13. However, it does not produce a long-lasting immune response and does not reduce nasopharyngeal carriage.

While all children and adults are at risk of pneumococcal disease, certain children are at particularly high risk of invasive pneumococcal disease (Table 10–6). These children need enhanced protection against pneumococcal disease, which includes the use of PPSV23.

Vaccines Available

1. PCV13 (Prevnar13, Wyeth). The vaccine contains an aluminum phosphate adjuvant, and does not contain thimerosal preservative. It is licensed for use in children 6 weeks through 17 years of age, and in adults 50 years of age and older.
2. PPSV23 (Pneumovax23, Merck). It contains the capsular polysaccharide antigens of 23 pneumococcal serotypes. It contains phenol as a preservative. It is licensed for children 2 years of age and older, and for adults.

Dosage & Schedule of Administration

PCV13 is given as a 0.5-mL intramuscular dose. PPSV23 is given as a 0.5-mL dose by either the intramuscular or subcutaneous route.

http://obgynebooks.com

The recommended immunization schedule for infants and children is complicated by several factors, including the age at first vaccination, the transition from PCV7 to PCV13, and the need to provide enhanced protection to children at an increased risk of pneumococcal disease (see Table 10–6). Updated and detailed schedule information is available from the CDC (at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines) and the Immunization Action Coalition (at http://www.immunize.org).

PCV13 is routinely recommended for infants at 2, 4, 6, and 12–15 months of age. For healthy children 24–59 months

Table 10-6. Medical conditions or other indications for administration of PCV13[a], and indications for PPSV23[b] administration and revaccination for children aged 6–18 years[c]

Risk group	Underlying medical condition	PCV13 recommended	PPSV23 recommended	PPSV23 revaccination 5 years after first dose
Immunocompetent persons	Chronic heart disease[d]		√	
	Chronic lung disease[e]		√	
	Diabetes mellitus		√	
	Cerebrospinal fluid leaks	√	√	
	Cochlear implants	√	√	
	Alcoholism		√	
	Chronic liver disease		√	
	Cigarette smoking		√	
Persons with functional or anatomic asplenia	Sickle cell disease/other hemoglobinopathies	√	√	√
	Congenital or acquired asplenia	√	√	√
Immunocompromised persons	Congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies[f]	√	√	√
	Human immunodeficiency virus infection	√	√	√
	Chronic renal failure	√	√	√
	Nephrotic syndrome	√	√	√
	Leukemia	√	√	√
	Lymphoma	√	√	√
	Hodgkin disease	√	√	√
	Generalized malignancy	√	√	√
	Iatrogenic immunosuppression[g]	√	√	√
	Solid organ transplant	√	√	√
	Multiple myeloma	√	√	√

[a]13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine.
[b]23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine.
[c]Children aged 2–5 years with chronic conditions (eg, heart disease or diabetes), immunocompromising conditions (eg, human immunodeficiency virus), functional or anatomic asplenia (including sickle cell disease), cerebrospinal fluid leaks, or cochlear implants, and who have not previously received PCV13, have been recommended to receive PCV13 since 2010.
[d]Including congestive heart failure and cardiomyopathies.
[e]Including chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, emphysema, and asthma.
[f]Includes B-(humoral) or T-lymphocyte deficiency, complement deficiencies (particularly C1, C2, C3, and C4 deficiencies), and phagocytic disorders (excluding chronic granulomatous disease).
[g]Diseases requiring treatment with immunosuppressive drugs, including long-term systemic corticosteroids and radiation therapy.
Reproduced with permission from CDC: Use of 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine among children aged 6-18 years with immunocompromising conditions: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2013;62:521.

http://obgynebooks.com

of age, if they are unvaccinated or did not complete the 4-dose PCV13 series, they should receive a single dose of PCV13. Children 24–59 months of age and at high risk of pneumococcal disease (see Table 10-6) should receive two doses of PCV13 (if they previously received fewer than three doses) or one dose of PCV13 (if they previously received three doses). Higher risk children 24–59 months of age should also receive a dose of PPSV23, at least 8 weeks after their final dose of PCV13.

The rationale for using both PCV13 and PPSV23 in some high-risk children is that, while less immunogenic than PCV13, PPSV23 covers additional serotypes that may cause significant disease. Table 10-6 also includes the indications for revaccination with PPSV23.

» Contraindications & Precautions

For both PCV13 and PPSV23, vaccination is contraindicated in individuals who suffered a severe allergic reaction such as anaphylaxis after a previous vaccine dose or to a vaccine component. PCV13 and PPV23 vaccination should be deferred during moderate or severe acute illness, with or without fever.

» Adverse Effects

The most common adverse effects associated with PCV13 administration are fever, injection site reactions, irritability, and increased or decreased sleep. Although not definitely proven, PCV13 administered simultaneously with inactivated influenza vaccine may lead to a small increased risk of febrile seizures. With PPSV23, 50% of vaccine recipients develop pain and redness at the injection site. Fewer than 1% develop systemic side effects such as fever and myalgia. Anaphylaxis is rare. PPSV23 appears to be safe and immunogenic during pregnancy, although safety data are lacking regarding vaccination during the first trimester of pregnancy.

CDC: Use of 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine among children aged 6-18 years with immunocompromising conditions: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2013;62:521 [PMID: 23803961].

Committee on Infectious Diseases: Immunization for Streptococcus pneumoniae infections in high-risk children. Pediatrics 2014;134:1230 [PMID: 25422018].

Griffin MR et al: U.S. hospitalizations for pneumonia after a decade of pneumococcal vaccination. N Engl J Med 2013;369:155 [PMID: 23841730].

Nuorti JP; Whitney CG; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Prevention of pneumococcal disease among infants and children—use of 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine—recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59:1 [PMID: 21150868].

Tseng HF et al: Postlicensure surveillance for pre-specified adverse events following the 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine in children. Vaccine 2013;31:2578 [PMID: 23579258].

POLIOMYELITIS VACCINATION

Polioviruses are highly infectious, spread primarily by fecal-oral and oral–oral routes, and cause acute flaccid paralysis via destruction of motor neurons. Poliomyelitis can be prevented by vaccination. While the goal of polio eradication has not yet been achieved, the global incidence of polio has decreased from roughly 350,000 cases annually in the prevaccination era, to 413 polio cases detected in 2014. Polio remains endemic in Afghanistan, Nigeria, and Pakistan, with the vast majority of cases in 2014 occurring in Pakistan.

The global health community has a new plan to eliminate polio worldwide by 2018. Although both OPV, which is given orally, and IPV, which is an injection, produce immunity against the three serotypes of polio, OPV can rarely cause vaccine-associated paralytic polio. Although also uncommon, the attenuated vaccine strains used in OPV can mutate into pathogenic strains and cause polio in contacts of vaccines. Consequently, the global polio eradication plan includes the following steps: (1) introduction of IPV into all countries currently using OPV; (2) switch from trivalent OPV to a more immunogenic bivalent form of OPV (poliovirus serotype 2, not included in bivalent OPV, has been eliminated worldwide for more than a decade); and (3) eventually stopping use of OPV altogether. Vaccination of travelers leaving polio-infected countries has also been recommended. Timely updates on the worldwide polio eradication program can be found at www.polioeradication.org.

IPV, an inactivated vaccine, is the only vaccine against poliomyelitis available in the United States. IPV cannot cause polio.

» Vaccines Available

1. IPV (IPOL, sanofi pasteur) is given intramuscularly or subcutaneously.
2. DTaP-HepB-IPV (Pediarix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis adsorbed, hepatitis B, and inactivated poliovirus vaccines. Approved for use at 2, 4, and 6 months of age; not approved for use as the fourth dose of IPV or the fourth or fifth doses of DTaP; given intramuscularly.
3. DTaP-IPV-Hib (Pentacel, sanofi pasteur) contains DTaP, IPV, and Hib vaccines. Approved for use at 2, 4, 6, and 15–18 months of age; not approved for use at 4–6 years of age as the final booster dose of IPV; given intramuscularly.
4. DTaP-IPV (Kinrix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains DTaP and IPV vaccines. Licensed for children 4–6 years of age, for use as a final booster dose of IPV; given intramuscularly.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

In the United States, all children without contraindications should receive an IPV-containing vaccine at 2, 4, 6–18 months, and 4–6 years of age. A dose of IPV should be given at 4 years of age or older, regardless of the number of prior doses of IPV. Completely immunized adult visitors to areas of continuing wild-type poliovirus circulation should receive a booster dose of IPV. Unimmunized or incompletely immunized adults and children should have received at least two (preferably three) doses of IPV prior to travel.

» Contraindications & Precautions

IPV vaccination is contraindicated in individuals who suffered a severe allergic reaction such as anaphylaxis after a previous vaccine dose or to a vaccine component. IPV vaccination should be deferred during moderate or severe acute illness with or without fever. Pregnancy is also a precaution to IPV vaccination. Receipt of previous doses of OPV is not a contraindication to IPV.

» Adverse Effects

Minor local reactions, such as pain or redness at the injection site, may occur following IPV vaccination. No serious adverse reactions following IPV vaccination have been described.

Modlin J, Wenger J: Achieving and maintaining polio eradication—new strategies. N Engl J Med 2014;371:1476 [PMID: 25317869].

Patel M et al: Polio endgame: the global introduction of inactivated polio vaccine. Expert Rev Vaccines 2015;19:1 [PMID: 25597843].

Wallace GS, Seward JF, Pallansch MA; CDC: Interim CDC guidance for polio vaccination for travel to and from countries affected by wild poliovirus. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014:11;63:591 [PMID: 25006826].

INFLUENZA VACCINATION

Influenza occurs each winter-early spring period, often associated with significant morbidity and mortality in certain high-risk persons. Up to 36,000 deaths per year in the United States are attributable to influenza, and global epidemics (pandemics) can occur. The recent pandemic H1N1 strain is now incorporated into the seasonal vaccine. Each year, recommendations are formulated in the spring regarding the constituents of influenza vaccine for the coming season. Influenza vaccines contain either three strains (two influenza A strains, and one of the two lineages of influenza B that may commonly circulate in any given year) or four strains, including both lineages of influenza B plus two influenza A strains. Children at high risk of seasonal influenza-related complications include those with hemoglobinopathies or with chronic cardiac, pulmonary (including asthma), metabolic, renal, and immunosuppressive diseases (including immunosuppression caused by medications or by HIV); and those with any condition (eg, cognitive dysfunction, spinal cord injuries, seizure disorders, or other neuromuscular disorders) that can compromise respiratory function or the handling of respiratory secretions, or that can increase the risk of aspiration. Children and adolescents receiving long-term aspirin therapy are also at risk of influenza-related Reye syndrome. Healthy children aged 6–23 months are at substantially increased risk of influenza-related hospitalizations, and children aged 24–59 months (ie, 2–4 years) remain at increased risk of influenza-related clinic and emergency department visits and hospitalizations, but less so than younger children.

Annual influenza vaccination is routinely recommended for all persons older than 6 months of age. In a number of prior influenza seasons, LAIV was more effective than inactivated influenza vaccine in children. However, in the 2014–2015 influenza season, this was not the case, and the ACIP rescinded their preference for using LAIV over inactivated vaccine in children 2 through 8 years of age. Physicians should identify high-risk children in their practices and encourage parents to seek influenza vaccination for their children and themselves as soon as influenza vaccine is available. Influenza prevention will help prevent lower respiratory tract disease or other secondary complications in high-risk groups, thereby decreasing hospitalizations and deaths.

» Vaccines Available

The inactivated influenza vaccine virus is grown in eggs, formalin inactivated, and may contain trace quantities of thimerosal as a preservative. Only split-virus or purified viral antigens are available in the United States. Fluzone (sanofi pasteur) is approved for children 6 months and older; Fluvirin (Novartis) is approved only for children 4 years and older, Fluarix (GlaxoSmithKline) is approved for children 3 years and older, and Afluria (CSL Biotherapies) is recommended for children 9 years and older. Additional manufacturers (ID Biomedical Corporation) produce influenza vaccines approved for adults.

To eliminate the need for injections, and potentially to enhance mucosal and systemic immune response to vaccination, a live attenuated intranasal vaccine has been developed. This vaccine consists of cold-adapted and temperature-sensitive viruses that replicate poorly in the lower respiratory tract, but well in the nasal mucosa (thereby producing immunity). The intranasal live attenuated influenza virus vaccine (LAIV [FluMist, MedImmune]) formulation uses the virus strains present in the inactivated vaccine. It is also made in eggs and comes in a single-use prefilled sprayer that should be stored refrigerated at 2°C–8°C.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Inactivated Influenza Virus Vaccine

Because influenza can circulate from November through early March in the US states, the optimal time to initiate vaccination is as soon as vaccine is available in the late summer/early fall. However, providers should continue vaccinating individuals as long as vaccine is available and there is influenza activity in the community. Children younger than age 6 months should not be immunized. Two doses are recommended for children younger than age 9 years who did not receive two vaccine doses in the past. Older children receiving vaccine for the first time require only a single dose. The dose for children aged 6–35 months is 0.25 mL given intramuscularly; for older children the dose is 0.5 mL given intramuscularly. Pregnancy is not a contraindication to use of inactivated vaccine, and vaccine is recommended for all pregnant women and those contemplating pregnancy during the influenza season. Simultaneous administration with other routine vaccines is acceptable.

Live Attenuated Influenza Virus Vaccine

This vaccine is supplied in a prefilled single-use sprayer containing 0.2 mL of the vaccine, approximately half of which is sprayed into each nostril. A dose divider clip is provided to assist in dividing the dose. If the patient sneezes during administration, the dose should not be repeated. It can be administered to children with minor illnesses, but should not be given if significant nasal congestion is present. Because it is a live vaccine, it should be administered 48 hours after cessation of therapy in children receiving anti-influenza antiviral drugs, and these should not be given for 2 weeks after vaccination. Two doses are recommended for children younger than age 9 years who did not receive two doses in the past. One dose is recommended for individuals 9–49 years of age.

» Contraindications & Precautions

Inactivated Influenza Virus Vaccine

Inactivated influenza vaccine is contraindicated in individuals with a severe allergic reaction, such as anaphylaxis, to a previous dose of an inactivated influenza vaccine component. However, guidelines for influenza vaccination in children with egg allergies have recently changed. Children with only hives following exposure to egg can be vaccinated, as long as inactivated influenza vaccine is used as opposed to LAIV, vaccination is by a health care provider experienced in recognizing and treating allergic reactions, and the child is observed for 30 minutes following vaccination. Children with more serious allergic reactions to egg, such as angioedema, respiratory symptoms, or anaphylaxis, may be eligible for inactivated influenza vaccine but should be referred to an allergist for an assessment of vaccination risk.

Live Attenuated Influenza Virus Vaccine

LAIV is contraindicated in individuals with a history of hypersensitivity to eggs, egg proteins, gentamicin, gelatin, or arginine, or with life-threatening reactions to previous influenza vaccinations, and in children and adolescents receiving concomitant aspirin or aspirin-containing therapy. LAIV should not be administered to the following persons: (1) children younger than 24 months, because of an increased risk of hospitalization and wheezing that was observed in clinical trials; (2) any individual with asthma or children younger than age 5 years with recurrent wheezing unless the potential benefit outweighs the potential risk; (3) individuals with severe asthma or active wheezing; or (4) within 48 hours of influenza antiviral therapy.

All health care workers, including those with asthma and other underlying health conditions, can administer LAIV. Health care workers who are vaccinated with LAIV can safely provide care to patients within a hospital or clinic, except for severely immunosuppressed patients that require a protected environment (ie, bone marrow transplant patients). In this instance, there should be a 7-day interval between receiving LAIV and care for these patients.

» Adverse Effects

Inactivated Influenza Virus Vaccine

Injection site reactions are the most common adverse events after inactivated influenza vaccine administration. A small proportion of children will experience some systemic toxicity, consisting of fever, malaise, and myalgias. These symptoms generally begin 6–12 hours after vaccination and may last 24–48 hours. Cases of Guillain-Barré syndrome followed the swine influenza vaccination program in 1976–1977, but careful study by the Institute of Medicine showed no association with that vaccine in children and young adults—nor in any age group that received vaccines in subsequent years.

Live Attenuated Influenza Virus Vaccine

The most common adverse reactions (occurring at < 10% in individuals receiving LAIV and at least 5% greater than in placebo) are runny nose or nasal congestion in recipients of all ages and fever higher than 37.7°C in children 2–6 years of age. These reactions occurred more frequently with the first dose and were self-limited.

AAP; Committee on Infectious Diseases: Recommendations for prevention and control of influenza in children, 2015-2016. Pediatrics 2015;136:792 [PMID: 26347430].

CDC: Prevention and control of influenza. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59(RR-8):1 [PMID: 20689501].

http://obgynebooks.com

CDC: Prevention and control of influenza with vaccines: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, United States, 2015–2016 Influenza Season. MMWR 2015;64:818 [PMID: 26247435].

MEASLES, MUMPS, & RUBELLA VACCINATION

Due to an effective vaccination program beginning in 1963, measles was declared eliminated from the US states in 2000. Until 2008, there were sporadic importations of measles from countries with lower vaccination rates, but since then there have been numerous outbreaks of measles, primarily from viral transmission within the United States after initial exposure to imported cases. In 2014, there were 647 cases and 23 outbreaks of measles confirmed in the United States, the highest number reported since 1994. In late 2014 and early 2015, a large, multistate measles outbreak started at a theme park in California which garnered a great deal of media attention. As of this writing, there have been 170 cases in 17 states. The increasing number of outbreaks and cases of measles demonstrates the infectivity and ongoing risk of measles and emphasizes the importance of vaccination.

In the United States, after adding mumps vaccine to the childhood schedule in 1977, there was a 99% decline in mumps to fewer than 300 cases each year between 2001 and 2003. However, since then, there have been several large outbreaks, the largest of which occurred in 2009–2010, in which about 3000 people, mostly high school students from an insular religious community in New York City, were diagnosed with mumps. In 2014, there were 1151 reported cases of mumps. Risk factors for outbreaks include lack of immunization; close contact, such as in a school setting; the fact that two doses of MMR vaccine is only 88% effective in preventing mumps; and waning immunity, which may have occurred in young adults who had last received mumps-containing vaccine 6–17 years earlier.

The rubella vaccine is primarily intended to prevent the serious consequences of rubella infection in pregnant women: miscarriage, fetal demise, and congenital rubella syndrome. In the United States and the United Kingdom, the approach has been to vaccinate young children and thereby reduce transmission to susceptible women of childbearing age via a herd immunity effect. With the use of rubella vaccines since 1970, rubella and congenital rubella syndrome were declared eliminated in the United States in 2004. There are now fewer than 10 cases per year, almost all of which are imported; there were only four cases of congenital rubella syndrome in the United States between 2010 and 2015.

Despite many reports in the lay press and on the Internet of a link between MMR and autism, there is overwhelming scientific evidence that there is no causal association between the two. There is also no evidence that separation of MMR into its individual component vaccines lessens the risk of any vaccine adverse event, and such practice is not recommended.

It has been known for some time that there is a small but increased risk of febrile seizures after MMR. A recent study found that in 12- to 23-month-old children, the risk for febrile seizures with the MMRV preparation appears to be twice that of MMR and VAR given separately, resulting in one additional febrile seizure per 2300–2600 children vaccinated with MMRV at this age.

» Vaccines Available

1. Measles-mumps-rubella (MMR II, Merck): MMR II is a lyophilized preparation of measles, mumps, and rubella vaccines. The measles and mumps portions are prepared using chick embryo tissue cultures and rubella is grown in human diploid cells. There is no adjuvant and no preservative. It contains small amounts of gelatin, sorbitol, and neomycin. The individual components of MMR II are no longer available.
2. MMRV: A combined live attenuated measles, mumps, rubella, and varicella vaccine (ProQuad, Merck) is licensed for use in children 1–12 years of age. The measles, mumps, and rubella components are identical to MMR II. The varicella component has a higher varicella zoster virus titer than the varicella-only (VAR) vaccine.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Routine Vaccination

Measles, mumps, and rubella vaccinations should be given as MMR or MMRV at 12–15 months and again at 4–6 years of age. Both MMR and MMRV can cause febrile seizures, although uncommonly. Because febrile seizures following MMRV occur at a rate twice that of MMR (see "Adverse Effects"), the ACIP recommends that after a discussion of the benefits and risks of both vaccination options with the parents or caregivers, either MMR or MMRV may be given at 12–15 months of age. MMRV is the preferred vaccine at 4–6 years of age if available; no excess risk of febrile seizures following MMRV vaccination has been observed at 4–6 years of age. A personal or family history of febrile seizures in an infant is considered a precaution for the use of MMRV, and MMR and VAR given separately is preferred. A dose of 0.5 mL should be given subcutaneously. The second dose of MMR or MMRV is recommended at school entry to help prevent school-based measles and mumps outbreaks. Children not reimmunized at school entry should receive their second dose by age 11–12 years. If an infant receives the vaccine before 12 months of age, two doses are required to complete the series, the first after at least 12 months of age and the second at least 1 month later. Ig interferes with the immune response to the attenuated vaccine strains of MMR

http://obgynebooks.com

and MMRV. Therefore, after Ig administration MMR and MMRV immunization should be deferred by 3–11 months, depending on the type of Ig product received. Consult the AAP's Red Book for specific recommendations.

For measles, mumps, and rubella, a person can be considered immune if they were born before 1957, or if there is laboratory evidence of serologic immunity or disease. Otherwise, all persons should be vaccinated according to the recommended schedule. A clinical diagnosis of any of these diseases is not acceptable evidence of immunity. For rubella, susceptible pubertal girls and postpubertal women identified by prenatal screening should be immunized after delivery. Whenever rubella vaccination is offered to a woman of childbearing age, pregnancy should be ruled out and the woman advised to prevent conception for 3 months following vaccination. If a pregnant woman is vaccinated or becomes pregnant within 3 weeks of vaccination, she should be counseled regarding the risk to her fetus, although no cases of rubella vaccine-related fetal anomalies have been reported. The risk of congenital rubella syndrome after wild-type maternal infection in the first trimester of pregnancy is 20%–85%. All susceptible adults in institutional settings (including colleges), day care center personnel, military personnel, and hospital and health care personnel should be immunized.

Vaccination of Travelers

People traveling abroad should be immune to measles and mumps. Infants 6–11 months of age traveling to high-risk areas should receive one dose of MMR prior to travel followed by either MMR or MMRV at 12–15 months of age (given at least 4 weeks after the initial dose) and either MMR or MMRV at 4–6 years of age to complete the series. Children over 12 months of age who are traveling to high-risk areas should receive two doses separated by at least 4 weeks. Children traveling internationally to lower-risk areas should be immunized as soon as possible after their first birthday and complete the series at 4–6 years of age in the usual fashion.

Revaccination Under Other Circumstances

Persons entering college and other institutions for education beyond high school, medical personnel beginning employment, and persons traveling abroad should have documentation of immunity to measles and mumps, defined as receipt of two doses of measles vaccine after their first birthday, birth before 1957, or a laboratory documented measles or mumps history.

Outbreak Control of Measles

A community outbreak is defined as a single documented case of measles. Control depends on immediate protection of all susceptible persons (defined as persons who have no documented immunity to measles in the affected community). In the case of unvaccinated individuals, the following recommendations hold: (1) age 6–11 months, give MMR if cases are occurring in children younger than age 1 year, followed by two doses of MMR or MMRV at age 12–15 months and again at age 4–6 years; and (2) age 12 months or older, give MMR or MMRV followed by revaccination at age 4–6 years. A child with an unclear or unknown vaccination history should be reimmunized with MMR or MMRV. Anyone with a known exposure who is not certain of having previously received two doses of MMR should receive an additional dose. Unimmunized persons who are not immunized within 72 hours of exposure, which is the acceptable interval for active postexposure prophylaxis, should be excluded from contact with potentially infected persons until at least 2 weeks after the onset of rash of the last case of measles.

» Contraindications & Precautions

MMR and MMRV vaccines are contraindicated in pregnant women, women intending to become pregnant within the next 28 days, immunocompromised persons, and persons with anaphylactic egg or neomycin allergy. It is also contraindicated in children receiving high-dose corticosteroid therapy (≥ 2 mg/kg/d, or 20 mg/d total, for longer than 14 days) with the exception of those receiving physiologic replacement doses. In these patients, an interval of 1 month between cessation of steroid therapy and vaccination is sufficient. Leukemic patients who have been in remission and off chemotherapy for at least 3 months can receive MMR and MMRV safely. Persons with HIV infection should receive two doses of MMR vaccine according to the recommended schedule if they do not have evidence of current severe immunosuppression (for persons aged ≤ 5 years, they must have CD4 percentages ≥ 15% for ≥ 6 months; and for persons aged > 5 years, they must have CD4 percentages ≥ 15% and CD4 ≥ 200 lymphocytes/mm^3 for ≥ 6 months). Children with minor acute illnesses (including febrile illnesses), egg allergy whether severe or mild, or a history of tuberculosis should be immunized. MMR and MMRV may be safely administered simultaneously with other routine pediatric immunizations. A personal or family history of febrile seizures in an infant is considered a precaution for the use of MMRV, and separate administration of MMR and VAR is preferred.

» Adverse Effects

Between 5% and 15% of vaccines receiving MMR become febrile to 39.5°C or higher about 6–12 days following vaccination, lasting approximately 1–2 days, and 5% may develop a transient morbilliform rash. Transient thrombocytopenia

http://obgynebooks.com

occurs at a rate of 1 per 40,000 vaccine recipients. Encephalitis and other central nervous system conditions, such as aseptic meningitis and Guillain-Barré syndrome, are reported to occur at a frequency of 1 case per 3 million doses in the United States. This rate is lower than the rate of these conditions in unvaccinated children, implying that the relationship between them and MMR vaccination is not causal. Reactions after mumps vaccination are rare and include parotitis, low-grade fever, and orchitis. In children, adverse effects from rubella vaccination are very unusual. Between 5% and 15% of vaccines develop rash, fever, or lymphadenopathy 5–12 days after rubella vaccination. Rash also occurs alone or as a mild rubella illness in 2%–4% of adults. Arthralgia and arthritis occur in 10%–25% of adult vaccines, as opposed to only 0%–2% of 6- to 16-year-old vaccines. Chronic arthritis, which may be causally related to rubella vaccination, occurs more often in women aged 45 or older, starting 10–11 days after vaccination and lasting for up to 1 year. Possible rare complications include peripheral neuritis and neuropathy, transverse myelitis, and diffuse myelitis. MMR and MMRV vaccines can cause febrile seizures, typically 8 to 14 days after vaccination; these febrile seizures have not been associated with any long-term complications.

» Antibody Preparations Against Measles

If administered within 6 days of exposure, Ig can prevent or modify measles in a nonimmune person. However, the immunity conferred should be considered temporary. Infants less than 12 months of age who have been exposed to measles should receive 0.5 mL/kg of Ig, given intramuscularly (maximum dose is 15 mL). MMR vaccine should also be used, as appropriate, for infants aged 6–11 months. Pregnant women without evidence of measles immunity and severely immune-compromised persons (regardless of evidence of measles immunity) who are exposed to measles should receive 400 mg/kg of Ig given intravenously. Ig given intramuscularly (0.5 mL/kg, maximum dose, 15 mL) may be given to more immune competent exposed persons without evidence of immunity, with priority for those with the most intense contact to a case.

CDC; Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices: Update: recommendations from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) regarding administration of combination MMRV vaccine. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2008;57:258 [PMID: 18340332].

Klein NP et al: Measles-containing vaccines and febrile seizures in children age 4 to 6 years. Pediatrics 2012;129:809 [PMID: 22473362].

Zipprich J, Winter K, Hacker J, Xia D, Watt J, Harriman K; CDC: Measles outbreak—California, December 2014-February 2015. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2015;64:153–154 [PMID: 25695321].

VARICELLA VACCINATION

Prior to the availability of vaccine, about 4 million cases of varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection occurred as chickenpox annually in the United States, mostly in children younger than 10 years old. This resulted in 11,000 hospitalizations and 100 deaths per year due to severe complications such as secondary bacterial infections, pneumonia, encephalitis, hepatitis, and Reye syndrome.

A live, attenuated varicella vaccine (VAR) was licensed in the United States in 1995 and routine immunization of children 12 months of age and older was instituted. The vaccine is almost 100% effective at preventing severe disease. The morbidity, mortality, and medical costs associated with varicella infection have significantly declined since VAR was licensed. Vaccination prevents an estimated 3.5 million cases of varicella, 9000 hospitalizations, and 100 deaths from varicella in the United States each year. Once the routine use of VAR was achieved, it became apparent that there is "breakthrough" (usually very mild) varicella occurring in about 15% of immunized patients. Outbreaks of wild-type infectious VZV have been reported in schools with high one-dose VAR vaccination coverage (96%–100%). Varicella attack rates among these children varied between 11% and 17% and thus, it was concluded that a single VAR dose could not prevent endemic varicella.

A second dose of VAR in children, when given 3 months or 4–6 years after the initial dose, greatly increased the magnitude of the anti-VZV antibody response, which is a correlate of vaccine efficacy. A combination MMRV vaccine has also been shown to be immunologically noninferior to the MMR and VAR components administered separately. MMRV is effective as primary immunization or as a booster administered to children age 4–6 years. The two-dose regimen is almost 100% effective against severe varicella, and the risk of breakthrough varicella is threefold less than the risk with a one-dose regimen. Therefore, ACIP and the AAP recommend two doses of VAR for children older than 12 months of age, and for adolescents and adults without evidence of immunity.

The vaccine is also effective in preventing or modifying VZV severity in susceptible individuals exposed to VZV if used within 3 days (and possibly up to 5 days) of exposure, with an efficacy of 95% for preventing any post-exposure disease and 100% for preventing moderate or severe disease. There is no evidence that postexposure prophylaxis increases the risk of vaccine-related adverse events or interferes with development of immunity.

» Vaccines Available

1. A cell-free preparation of Oka strain VZV is produced and marketed in the United States as Varivax (Merck). Each dose of VAR contains not less than 1350 plaque-forming units of VZV and trace amounts of

http://obgynebooks.com

neomycin, fetal bovine serum, and gelatin. There is no preservative.

2. MMRV (measles-mumps-rubella-varicella, ProQuad, Merck) is licensed for use in children 1–12 years of age. MMRV is well tolerated and provides adequate immune response to all of the antigens it contains. In MMRV, the varicella component is present in higher titer than in VAR. Concomitant administration of MMRV with DTaP, Hib, and HepB vaccines is acceptable.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Two doses (0.5 mL) of VAR are recommended for immunization of healthy children aged 12 months and older, and for adolescents and adults without evidence of immunity. For children aged 12 months to 12 years the immunization interval is 3 months, and for persons 13 years or older it is 4 weeks. MMRV is approved only for healthy children aged 12 months to 12 years. A second dose of catch-up vaccination is required for children, adolescents, and adults who previously received one dose of VAR vaccine. All children should have received two doses of VAR before prekindergarten or school. HIV-infected children ($\geq$ 15% $CD4^+$ cells) should receive two doses of the single-antigen vaccine (with a 3-month interval between doses).

VAR may be given simultaneously with MMR at separate sites. If not given simultaneously, the interval between administration of VAR and MMR must be greater than 28 days. Simultaneous VAR administration does not appear to affect the immune response to other childhood vaccines. VAR should be delayed 5 months after receiving intravenous immune globulin, blood, or plasma. In addition, persons who received VAR should not be administered an antibody-containing product for at least 2 weeks or an antiviral medication active against varicella for at least 3 weeks. If this occurs, the individual may need to be tested for immunity or revaccinated. After a discussion of the benefits and risks of both vaccination options with the parents or caregivers (see below, "Adverse Effects"), either MMR or MMRV may be given at 12–15 months. MMRV is the preferred vaccine if available at 4–6 years of age.

» Contraindications & Precautions

Contraindications to VAR vaccination include a severe allergic reaction after a previous vaccine dose or to a vaccine component. Because VAR and MMRV are live-virus vaccines, they are also contraindicated in children who have acquired treatment-related cellular immunodeficiencies or congenital T-cell abnormalities. The exception to this rule is the recommendation that VAR be administered to HIV-infected children who are not severely immunosuppressed. Household contacts of immunodeficient patients should be immunized. VAR should not be given to pregnant women; however, the presence of a pregnant mother in the household is not a contraindication to immunization of a child within that household. A personal or family history of febrile seizures in an infant is considered a precaution for the use of MMRV; administration of MMR and VAR separately is preferred for the first dose.

» Adverse Events

The most commonly recognized adverse reactions, occurring in approximately 20% of vaccines, are minor injection site reactions. Additionally, 3%–5% of patients will develop a rash at the injection site, and an additional 3%–5% will develop a sparse varicelliform rash outside of the injection site. These rashes typically consist of two to five lesions and may appear 5–26 days after immunization. The two-dose vaccine regimen is generally well tolerated with a safety profile comparable to that of the one-dose regimen. The incidence of fever and varicelliform rash is lower after the second dose than the first. Although VAR is contraindicated in pregnancy, there have been hundreds of inadvertent administrations of vaccine to pregnant women tracked by the "Pregnancy Registry for Varivax" with no known cases of congenital varicella syndrome or increases in fetal abnormalities.

Studies comparing MMRV to MMR and VAR administered concomitantly showed more systemic adverse events following MMRV (fever 21.5% vs 14.9% and measles-like rash 3% vs 2.1%, respectively). The risk of febrile seizures in children 12–23 months old with the MMRV preparation is twice that of MMR and VAR given separately, resulting in one additional febrile seizure per 2300–2600 children vaccinated with MMRV.

Transmission of vaccine virus from healthy vaccines to other healthy persons is very rare; has never been documented in the absence of a rash in the index case; and has only resulted in mild disease. Herpes zoster infection has occurred in recipients of VAR in immunocompetent and immunocompromised persons within 25–722 days after immunization. Many of these cases were found to be caused by unappreciated latent wild-type virus. Vaccine-strain varicella does cause herpes zoster in children, but the age-specific risk of herpes zoster infection seems much lower in children following VAR immunization than after natural infection, and it also tends to be milder.

» Antibody Preparations

In the event of an exposure to varicella, there are currently two antibody preparations potentially available in the United States for postexposure prophylaxis, VariZIG (Cangene Corporation) and intravenous Ig. Exposure is defined as a household contact or playmate contact (> 1 hour/d), hospital contact (in the same or contiguous room or ward), intimate contact with a person with herpes zoster deemed

http://obgynebooks.com

contagious, or a newborn contact. Susceptibility is defined as the absence of a reliable history of varicella or varicella vaccination. Uncertainty in this designation can be resolved with an appropriate test for anti-VZV antibody.

VariZIG should be administered as soon as possible after exposure but may be given within 10 days postexposure. In the past, the interval for passive prophylaxis was limited to 96 hours postexposure. If VariZig is not available, it is recommended that intravenous Ig be used in its place. The dose is 400 mg/kg administered once. A subsequent exposure does not require additional prophylaxis if this occurs within 3 weeks of intravenous Ig administration.

AAP Committee on Infectious Diseases: Prevention of varicella: recommendations for use of quadrivalent and monovalent varicella vaccines in children. Pediatrics 2011;128:630 [PMID: 21873692].

CDC: Updated recommendations for use of VariZIG—United States, 2013. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2013;62:574 [PMID: 23863705]

Marin M, Zhang JX, Seward JF: Near elimination of varicella deaths in the US after implementation of the vaccination program. Pediatrics 2011;128:214 [PMID: 21788222].

HEPATITIS A VACCINATION

The incidence of hepatitis A in the United States has decreased dramatically from an average of 28,000 cases reported annually in the years prior to availability of a hepatitis A vaccine to historical lows with fewer than 2000 annual cases.

Initial vaccination recommendations for hepatitis A targeted high risk individuals, primarily adults. However, children, who are more likely than adults to be asymptomatic while infected, have often contributed to the spread of hepatitis A through households and communities. Therefore, since 2006 hepatitis A vaccination has been routinely recommended for children 12–23 months of age. As a consequence of vaccination, the epidemiology of hepatitis A infection has changed substantially: in a recent investigation, more than 40% of reported cases were associated with international travel, often in foreign-born persons returning to their countries of origin.

In addition to routine immunization of all children 12–23 months of age, hepatitis A vaccination is indicated for the following groups: (1) travelers to countries with moderate to high rates of hepatitis A, (2) children with chronic hepatitis B or hepatitis C infections or other chronic liver disease, (3) children with clotting factor disorders, (4) adolescent and adult males who have sex with men, (5) persons with an occupational exposure to hepatitis A, (6) illegal drug users, and (7) all previously unvaccinated persons who anticipate close personal contact with an international adoptee from countries with moderate to high rates of hepatitis A. Vaccination should also be considered in previously unimmunized children 2–18 years old, even if none of the above risk factors are present.

» Vaccines Available

1. HepA (Havrix, GlaxoSmithKline): An inactivated vaccine against hepatitis A. Contains an aluminum adjuvant; does not contain a preservative. Approved for use in children 12 months of age and older, and adults.
2. HepA (Vaqta, Merck): An inactivated vaccine against hepatitis A. Contains an aluminum adjuvant; does not contain a preservative. Approved for use in children 12 months of age and older, and adults.
3. HepA-HepB (Twinrix, GlaxoSmithKline): A combined inactivated vaccine against hepatitis A and hepatitis B. Contains an aluminum adjuvant; does not contain a preservative. Approved for use in adults 18 years of age and older.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

The two HepA vaccines given in childhood (Havrix and Vaqta) are given as a two-dose series. The first dose is recommended at 12–23 months of age; the second dose is recommended 6–18 months later. For individuals 12 months through 18 years of age, these vaccines are administered intramuscularly in a dose of 0.5 mL. Adults 19 years of age and older can receive Havrix (two doses of 1.0 mL each, separated by at least 6 months), Vaqta (two doses of 1.0 mL each, separated by at least 6 months), or Twinrix (for adults 18 years and older, 1.0 mL per dose, in a three-dose series). If needed, such as for imminent travel, Twinrix can be given on an accelerated four-dose schedule, with doses on days 1, 7, and 21–30, with a booster dose given 12 months after the first dose.

» Contraindications & Precautions

Hepatitis A vaccine should not be given to anyone with a prior severe allergic reaction, such as anaphylaxis, after a previous vaccine dose or to a vaccine component. Precautions to vaccination include pregnancy and moderate or severe acute illness.

» Adverse Effects

Adverse reactions, which are uncommon and mild, consist of pain, swelling, and induration at the injection site (10%–15%), headache, and loss of appetite. There have been no reports of serious adverse events attributed definitively to hepatitis A vaccine.

» Postexposure Prophylaxis

Postexposure prophylaxis is recommended for household or sexual contacts of persons with serologically confirmed

http://obgynebooks.com

hepatitis A, and for day care staff and attendees in outbreak situations. Postexposure prophylaxis may also be recommended in food-borne outbreaks, depending on the extent and timing of exposure. Postexposure prophylaxis of unimmunized persons who are exposed to hepatitis A should consist of either a single dose of hepatitis A vaccine or Ig (0.02 mL/kg), given as soon as possible after exposure. The efficacy of Ig when given more than 2 weeks after exposure has not been established. For healthy people 12 months through 40 years of age, hepatitis A vaccine is preferred to Ig for postexposure prophylaxis because of the advantages of vaccination, including long-term protection and ease of administration. For those older than 40 years of age, Ig is preferred, although the vaccine should be used if Ig is not available. Ig should also be used for children less than 12 months of age, immunocompromised persons, those with chronic liver disease, and anyone for whom vaccination is contraindicated. People who are given Ig, and for whom hepatitis A vaccine is recommended for other reasons, should receive a dose of vaccine simultaneously with Ig. If given at the same time, the vaccine and Ig should be administered at different injection sites.

» Antibody Preparations

Ig can be used as preexposure as well as postexposure prophylaxis. Ig is indicated as preexposure prophylaxis in children younger than age 12 months at increased risk of hepatitis A infection (eg, those traveling to endemic areas, or those with clotting factor disorders). For preexposure prophylaxis, recommended dosages are 0.02 mL/kg in a single intramuscular dose if the duration of exposure is likely to be less than 3 months and 0.06 mL/kg if exposure is likely to be more than 3 months. For long-term prophylaxis of persons not eligible for vaccination, prophylactic doses can be repeated every 5 months.

CDC: Prevention of hepatitis A through active or passive immunization: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2006;55(RR-7):1 [PMID: 16708058].

CDC (hepatitis A information): http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/HAV/index.htm.

Ott JJ et al: Long-term protective effects of hepatitis A vaccines. A systematic review. Vaccine 2012;31:3 [PMID: 22609026].

MENINGOCOCCAL VACCINATION

Infections with Neisseria meningitidis cause significant morbidity and mortality, with an estimated 1400–2800 cases occurring in the United States annually. Even with appropriate treatment, meningococcal disease has an estimated case-fatality rate of 10%–14%, and up to 19% of survivors are left with serious disabilities, such as neurologic deficits, loss of limbs or limb function, or hearing loss. Five serogroups of meningococcus (A, B, C, W-135, and Y) cause the vast majority of disease worldwide. Serogroups B, C, and Y are the predominant causes of invasive meningococcal disease in the United States, while serogroups A and C cause most disease in developing countries.

Serogroup B is responsible for more than 50% of cases in children less than 1 year and has also been associated with outbreaks on college campuses.

Separate vaccines target different meningococcal serogroups, and the recommendations for use differ between these vaccines. There are two vaccines against serogroup B licensed for use in persons aged 10–25 years; these vaccines are recommended for outbreak control and not for routine immunization. There are two tetravalent meningococcal polysaccharide-protein conjugate vaccines (MCV4) available which are recommended for routine use: Menactra, licensed in 2005, and Menveo, licensed in 2010. Both vaccines are recommended by the ACIP and are indicated for use in persons 2–55 years of age, with Menactra also licensed for use in children aged 9–23 months. MCV4 is recommended for all persons 11–18 years of age, as well as for persons 2–55 years who are at increased risk of meningococcal disease. Persons at increased risk include college freshmen living in dormitories, microbiologists who are routinely exposed to isolates of Neisseria meningitidis, military recruits, persons who travel to or reside in countries where meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, persons with persistent complement component deficiencies, and persons with anatomic or functional asplenia.

Because of mounting evidence of waning immunity by 5 years postvaccination, a booster dose of MCV4 is now recommended for adolescents aged 16 years and older who received their first dose at ages 11–15 years. A booster dose is not recommended for persons who received their first dose at age 16 years or older. A two-dose primary series administered 2 months apart is indicated for persons age 2–55 years with persistent complement component deficiency, functional or anatomic asplenia, and for adolescents 11–18 years with HIV infection. Whenever meningococcal vaccination is indicated, MCV4 is preferred for persons 2–55 years old, while tetravalent meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine (MPSV4, Menomume) should be used for persons older than 55 years. If MCV4 is not available, MPSV4 is an appropriate alternative for persons 2–55 years old for the initial dose. For a booster dose, MPSV4 is not recommended and either MCV4 product may be used. There are limited data available on the interchangeability of MCV4 products, and whenever feasible the same brand of vaccine should be used for all doses of the vaccine series. However, providers should use every opportunity to provide the booster dose when indicated, regardless of the vaccine brand used (Menactra or Menveo) for previous doses.

In October 2012, the ACIP voted to recommend vaccination against meningococcal serogroups C and Y for

http://obgynebooks.com

high-risk children from 6 weeks to 18 months of age. Meningococcal groups C and Y and Hib tetanus toxoid conjugate vaccine (Hib-MenCY-TT [MenHibrix, GlaxoSmithKline Biologicals]) is available and licensed for use in this age group. Infants at high risk include those with recognized persistent complement pathway deficiencies and also those with functional or anatomic asplenia, including sickle cell disease. The recommended four-dose schedule is the same as for other Hib-containing vaccines at 2, 4, 6, and 12–15 months of age.

» Vaccines Available

1. MCV4 (Menactra, sanofi pasteur): A single 0.5-mL dose contains capsular polysaccharide from serogroups A, C, Y, and W-135 conjugated to diphtheria toxoid. Available in single-dose vials only.
2. MCV4 (Menveo, Novartis): A single 0.5-mL dose contains serogroups A, C, Y, and W-135 capsular polysaccharide, all of which is conjugated to CRM_{197}, a nontoxic mutant of diphtheria toxoid.
3. Hib-MenCY-TT (MenHibrix, GlaxoSmithKline Biologicals): A single 0.5-mL dose contains serogroups C and Y capsular polysaccharide conjugated to tetanus toxoid, and Hib capsular polysaccharide conjugated to tetanus toxoid.
4. MPSV4 (Menomune-A/C/Y/W-135, sanofi pasteur): Each dose consists of 50 mcg each of the four bacterial capsular polysaccharides. Available in 1- and 10-dose vials.
5. MenB (Trumenba, Pfizer): A single 0.5-mL dose contains 120 mcg of recombinant lipidated factor H binding protein (fHBP) variants from N meningitidis serogroup B, 0.018 mg of polysorbate 80, and 0.25 mg of aluminum phosphate as an adjuvant. Available in 5- or 10-dose packages of prefilled syringes.
6. MenB (Bexsero, Novartis): A single 0.5-mL dose contains 50 mcg each of recombinant N meningitidis serogroup B proteins: Neisserial adhesin A (NadA), Neisserial Heparin Binding Antigen (NHBA), and factor H binding protein (fHbp); and 25 mcg of outer membrane vesicles (OMV) available in 1- or 10-dose packages of prefilled syringes.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

MCV4 is given as a single intramuscular dose of 0.5 mL. If a dose is inadvertently administered subcutaneously, it does not need to be repeated. Hib-MenCY-TT is given as a single intramuscular dose of 0.5 mL; MPSV4 as a single subcutaneous dose of 0.5 mL; MenB as a single intramuscular dose of 0.5 mL in a prefilled syringe. These vaccines can be given at the same time as other vaccines, at a different anatomic site. If a four-dose schedule of Hib-MenCY-TT is given, no additional Hib doses are needed. Protective antibody levels are typically achieved within 10 days of vaccination. The schedule of administration of MCV4, Hib_MenCY-TT, and MPSV4 are described previously. For MenB, Trumenba is a three-dose series given at 0, 2, and 6 months, and Bexsero is a two-dose series given at least 1 month apart. MenB should be given to persons age ≥10 years at increased risk of meningococcal disease (complement deficiencies, asplenia, microbiologists, or serogroup B outbreaks).

» Contraindications & Precautions

MCV4 and MPSV4 are contraindicated in anyone with a known severe allergic reaction to any component of the vaccine, including diphtheria toxoid (for MCV4) and rubber latex. Although MCV4 vaccination is not contraindicated in someone with a prior history of Guillain-Barré syndrome, providers should discuss the possible risks and benefits of vaccination in anyone with this history. Both MCV4 and MPSV4 can be given to individuals who are immunosuppressed. MPSV4 is thought to be safe during pregnancy; no information is available regarding the safety of MCV4 during pregnancy.

» Adverse Effects

Both MCV4 products and MPSV4 are generally well tolerated in adolescent patients. Local vaccination reactions (redness, swelling, or induration) occur in 11%–16% of persons 11–18 years old receiving MCV4 and in 4%–6% of persons the same age receiving MPSV4. The most common solicited complaints among children aged 2–10 years were injection site pain and irritability. More severe systemic reactions (presence of any of the following: fever of 39.5°C or above; headache, fatigue, malaise, chills, or arthralgias requiring bed rest; anorexia; multiple episodes of vomiting or diarrhea; rash; or seizures) occur in 4.3% of MCV4 recipients and 2.6% of MPSV4 recipients. Although cases of Guillain-Barré syndrome have been reported after MCV4, the current data does not suggest that the rate is above that which would be expected in the absence of vaccination. Any cases of suspected Guillain-Barré syndrome after vaccination should be reported to VAERS.

CDC: Prevention and control of meningococcal disease. MMWR 2013;62(RR-2):1–22 [PMID: 23515099].

CDC: Use of Serogroup B Meningococcal Vaccines in Persons Aged ≥10 Years at Increased Risk for Serogroup B Meningococcal Disease: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2015. MMWR 2015;62(22):608–612.

Macneil JR, Rubin L, CDC: Use of MenACWY-CRM vaccine in children aged 2 through 23 months at increased risk for meningococcal disease. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014;63(24):527–530. [PMID: 24941332].

http://obgynebooks.com

TETANUS-REDUCED DIPHTHERIA-ACELLULAR PERTUSSIS VACCINATION (ADOLESCENTS & ADULTS)

Pertussis is increasingly recognized as a disease affecting older children and adults, including fully vaccinated persons with waning immunity. In the United States, the most dramatic increases in pertussis incidence are among adolescents and young adults, prompting development of booster pertussis vaccines for this population. FDA approval in 2005 of the tetanus-reduced dose diphtheria-acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine was based on comparable seroresponse to pertussis antigens and a safety profile similar to control Td. Adolescent, adult, and elderly immunization not only has the capacity to protect adolescents from pertussis, but also should limit spread of pertussis from adults to infants and decrease overall pertussis endemicity. Because pertussis incidence has been rising nationally, and waning immunity may be contributing, studies are being conducted to evaluate whether additional booster doses of pertussis-containing vaccines are needed.

» Vaccines Available

1. Tdap (Boostrix, GlaxoSmithKline) contains tetanus toxoid, diphtheria toxoid, and three acellular pertussis antigens (detoxified pertussis toxin [PT], filamentous hemagglutinin [FHA], and pertactin) and is licensed for use in persons aged 10 years and older; this vaccine can be used in adults and the elderly.
2. Tdap (Adacel, sanofi pasteur) contains tetanus toxoid, diphtheria toxoid, and five acellular pertussis antigens (PT, FHA, pertactin, and fimbriae types 2 and 3) and is licensed for use in persons aged 11–64 years.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

Adolescents 11–18 years of age should receive a 0.5-mL dose of Tdap intramuscularly in the deltoid, instead of the tetanus and diphtheria toxoids (Td) vaccine for booster immunization. The preferred age for Tdap immunization is 11–12 years. Adults 19–64 years of age should receive a single dose of Tdap. Adults 65 years of age and older should receive a single dose of Tdap if they have not previously received Tdap and if they anticipate close contact with an infant less than 12 months. Women who are pregnant should receive a Tdap booster with each pregnancy. Tdap can be administered regardless of the interval since the last tetanus- or diphtheria-toxoid containing vaccine. Tdap and MCV4 should be administered during the same visit if both vaccines are indicated. If not administered at the same time, a minimum interval of 1 month between vaccines is suggested.

» Contraindications & Precautions

Contraindications to Tdap include severe allergic reaction to any vaccine component and encephalopathy (eg, coma, prolonged seizures) not attributable to an identifiable cause within 7 days of administration of a vaccine with pertussis components. Precautions for Tdap administration include Guillain-Barré syndrome occurring within 6 weeks of a previous dose of a tetanus toxoid-containing vaccine, a progressive neurologic disorder, uncontrolled epilepsy, or progressive encephalopathy until the condition has stabilized. If there is a history of a severe Arthus reaction after a previous tetanus toxoid-containing or diphtheria toxoid-containing vaccine, Tdap should be deferred for at least 10 years.

» Adverse Effects

Pain at the injection site was the most frequently reported local adverse event among adolescents. Headache and fatigue were the most frequently reported systemic adverse events.

AAP; Committee on Infectious Diseases: Additional recommendations for use of tetanus toxoid, reduced-content diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis vaccine (Tdap). Pediatrics 2011;128:809 [PMID: 21949151].

CDC: Updated recommendations for the use of tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2010. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2011;60:13 [PMID: 21228763].

HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS VACCINATION

Genital human papillomavirus (HPV) is the most common sexually transmitted infection in the United States and worldwide. Most of the estimated 14 million persons newly infected every year in the United States have no symptoms. Up to 75% of new infections occur among persons 15–24 years of age. Over 40% of the 100 HPV types identified can infect the genital area. Approximately 70% of cervical cancers are caused by the high cancer risk types 16 and 18. Over 90% of genital warts are caused by low cancer risk types 6 and 11.

Three HPV vaccines are licensed in the United States. Quadrivalent HPV vaccine (HPV4) contains types 6, 11, 16, and 18 (Gardasil, Merck) and is approved for females and males. Nine-valent HPV vaccine (HPV9 [Gardasil 9, Merck]) adds types HPV 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 to HPV4 and is approved for females and males. Bivalent HPV vaccine (HPV2) contains types 16 and 18 (Cervarix, GlaxoSmithKline) and is approved for females. Routine HPV vaccination is recommended for females and males aged 11–12 years. Catch-up vaccination is recommended for females aged 13–26 years and males aged 13–21 years who were not previously vaccinated or have not completed the full vaccine series. HPV vaccination is also recommended through age 26 years for men who have sex with men, and for men with immunocompromising conditions (including HIV infection), if they were not previously vaccinated or

http://obgynebooks.com

had not completed the vaccine series. Females who might have been exposed to HPV, test positive for high-risk HPV types, or have an abnormal Pap test are still likely to benefit from HPV vaccine. Immunization of males prevents genital warts and anal cancer but may also benefit females through herd immunity by decreasing the overall prevalence of HPV infection.

» Vaccines Available

1. Quadrivalent HPV vaccine (Gardasil, Merck), a nonlive vaccine; a 0.5-mL dose contains HPV-6, 11, 16, and 18 L1 proteins.
2. Nine-valent HPV vaccine (Gardasil 9, Merck), a nonlive vaccine; a 0.5-mL dose contains HPV-6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 L1 proteins.
3. Bivalent HPV vaccine (Cervarix, GlaxoSmithKline), a nonlive vaccine is a 0.5-mL dose that contains HPV-16 and HPV-18 L1 protein. Licensed for use in females only.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

HPV vaccine is administered intramuscularly as three separate 0.5-mL doses. The second dose should be administered 1–2 months after the first dose and the third dose 6 months after the first dose. The minimum interval between the first and second dose is 4 weeks; the minimum recommended interval between the second and third doses of vaccine is 12 weeks. HPV vaccine may be administered with other vaccines. If the vaccine schedule is interrupted, the series need not be restarted. When feasible, the same HPV vaccine should be used for the complete series. However, if the HPV vaccine previously administered is unknown or not available, either HPV vaccine can be used to complete the series to protect against HPV types 16 and 18. Updated recommendations on the use of HPV9 vaccine will be forthcoming; the most current recommendations can be found at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines.

» Contraindications & Precautions

HPV vaccine is contraindicated in persons with a history of anaphylaxis to any vaccine component. HPV vaccine is not recommended for use in pregnancy. The vaccine can be administered to persons with minor acute illnesses and to immunocompromised persons.

» Adverse Effects

Injection site pain (83.9%) and mild to moderate swelling and erythema were the most common adverse events reported by vaccine recipients. Fever (10.3%), nausea (4.2%), and dizziness (2.8%) were reported as systemic adverse events. Postmarketing reports of syncope, which were reported after vaccination with HPV vaccine, may follow any vaccination, so vaccine recipients should be observed for 15 minutes after vaccination.

AAP: Committee on Infectious Diseases. HPV vaccine recommendations. Pediatrics 2012;129:602 [PMID: 22371460].

CDC: Human papillomavirus vaccination: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2014;63(RR-05):1 [PMID: 25167164].

CDC: Use of 9-Valent human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine: updated HPV vaccination recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR 2015;64:300–304 [PMID: 25811679].

° Vaccinations for Special Situations

RABIES VACCINATION

After symptoms of infection develop, rabies is almost invariably fatal in humans. While animal rabies in the United States is common, the incidence of human rabies is very low, with fewer than three cases per year. Although dogs represent the most important vector for human rabies worldwide, in the United States because of widespread vaccination of dogs and cats, the most common rabies virus variants responsible for human rabies are bat related. Rabies is also common in skunks, raccoons, and foxes; it is uncommon in rodents.

Human rabies is preventable with appropriate and timely postexposure prophylaxis. Postexposure care consists of local wound care, passive immunization, and active immunization. Immediately after an animal bite, all wounds should be flushed and aggressively cleaned with soap and water. If possible, the wound should not be sutured. Passive immunization after high-risk exposure consists of the injection of human rabies immune globulin (RIG) near the wound, as described later. Active immunization is accomplished by completing a schedule of immunization with one of the two available rabies vaccines licensed in the United States. Because bites from bats are often unrecognized, prophylaxis should be given if a bat is found indoors even if there is no history of contact, especially if found in the same room with a sleeping or unattended child or with an intoxicated or otherwise incapacitated individual.

Local public health officials should be consulted before postexposure rabies prophylaxis is started to avoid unnecessary vaccination and to assist in the proper handling of the animal (if confinement or testing of the animal is appropriate). To facilitate consultation, the health care provider should know the species of animal, its availability for testing or confinement, the nature of the attack (provoked or unprovoked), and the nature of the exposure (bite, scratch, lick, or aerosol of saliva). Rabies immunization should also be considered for children traveling to countries where rabies is endemic; this is particularly important for travelers.

http://obgynebooks.com

Vaccines Available

Rabies vaccines stimulate immunity after 7–10 days, and the immunity persists for 2 years or more. Two inactivated preparations are licensed in the United States.

1. Imovax Rabies (sanofi pasteur) human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV)
2. RabAvert (Novartis) purified chick embryo cell vaccine (PCEC)

Dosage & Schedule of Administration

The two rabies vaccines available in the United States are equally safe and efficacious for both preexposure and postexposure prophylaxis. For each vaccine, 1 mL is given intramuscularly in the deltoid (for adults and older children) or anterolateral thigh (for infants and young children). The volume of the dose is not reduced for children. Vaccine should not be given in the gluteal region.

Primary Preexposure Vaccination

Preexposure rabies immunization should be considered for individuals at high risk of exposure to rabies (eg, veterinarians, animal handlers, spelunkers, and people moving to or extensively traveling in areas with endemic rabies). Three intramuscular injections in the deltoid area of 1 mL of any vaccine are given on days 0, 7, and 21 or 28.

Postexposure Prophylaxis

After an individual has possibly been exposed to rabies, decisions about whether to initiate postexposure prophylaxis need to be made urgently, in consultation with local public health officials.

In previously unvaccinated individuals—After prompt and thorough wound cleansing, an individual exposed to rabies should receive rabies vaccination and RIG. Vaccination is given on the day of exposure (day 0) and on days 3, 7, and 14 following exposure. Immune suppressed individuals should receive an additional dose on day 28. RIG should also be given as soon as possible after exposure, ideally on the day of exposure, in a recommended dose of 20 IU/kg. If anatomically possible, the entire dose of RIG should be infiltrated into and around the wound. Any remaining RIG should be administered intramuscularly at an anatomic site distant from the location used for rabies vaccination. If RIG was not administered when vaccination was begun, it can be administered up to 7 days after the first dose of vaccine. Postexposure failures have occurred only when some deviation from the approved protocol occurred (eg, no cleansing of the wound, less than usual amount of RIG, no RIG at the wound site, or vaccination in the gluteal area).

In previously vaccinated individuals—RIG should not be administered, and only two doses of vaccine on days 0 and 3 after exposure are needed.

Booster Vaccination

Previously vaccinated individuals with potential continued exposure to rabies should have a serum sample tested for rabies antibody every 2 years. If the titer is less than 1:5 for virus neutralization, a booster dose of rabies vaccine should be administered.

Adverse Effects

The rabies vaccines are relatively free of serious reactions. Local reactions at the injection site such as pain, swelling, induration, or erythema range in frequency from 11% to 89% of vaccines. These are more common than mild systemic reactions, such as headache, nausea, muscle aches, and dizziness, which range from 6% to 55% of vaccines. An immune complex-like reaction occurs in about 6% of adults 2–21 days after receiving booster doses of the rabies vaccine; symptoms may include generalized urticaria, arthralgias, arthritis, and angioedema.

Travelers to countries where rabies is endemic may need immediate postexposure prophylaxis and may have to use locally available vaccines and RIG. In many developing countries, the only vaccines readily available may be nerve tissue vaccines derived from the brains of adult animals or suckling mice, and the RIG may be of equine origin. Although adverse reactions to RIG are uncommon and typically mild, the nervous tissue vaccines may induce neuroparalytic reactions in 1:200–1:8000 vaccines; this is a significant risk and is another justification for preexposure vaccination prior to travel in areas where exposure to potentially rabid animals is likely.

Antibody Preparations

In the United States, RIG is prepared from the plasma of human volunteers hyperimmunized with rabies vaccine. The recommended dose is 20 IU/kg body weight. The rabies-neutralizing antibody content is 150 IU/mL, supplied in 2- or 10-mL vials. It is very safe.

CDC: Use of a reduced (4-dose) vaccine schedule for postexposure prophylaxis to prevent human rabies: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR 2010;59(RR-2):1 [PMID: 20300058].

CDC (rabies information page): http://www.cdc.gov/rabies/.

Manning SE et al: CDC: Human rabies prevention—United States, 2008: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Recomm Rep 2008;57(RR-3):1 [PMID: 18496505].

http://obgynebooks.com

TYPHOID FEVER VACCINATION

The burden of typhoid fever is substantial, causing an estimated 21 million illnesses and 200,000 deaths each year worldwide; in the United States an estimated 5700 cases occur each year, predominantly from traveling outside the United States.

Two vaccines against Salmonella enterica typhi, the bacterium that causes typhoid fever, are available in the United States: a live attenuated vaccine given orally (Ty21a), and an inactivated vaccine composed of purified capsular polysaccharide (ViCPS) given parenterally. Both vaccines protect 50%–80% of vaccine recipients. The oral vaccine is most commonly used because of its ease of administration. However, noncompliance with the oral vaccine dosing schedule occurs frequently, and correct usage should be stressed or the parenteral ViCPS vaccine used.

Routine typhoid vaccination is recommended only for children who are traveling to typhoid-endemic areas or who reside in households with a documented typhoid carrier. While CDC recommendations emphasize typhoid vaccination for travelers expected to have long-term exposure to potentially contaminated food and drink, vaccination should also be considered for short-term travel to high-risk countries. Although typhoid fever occurs throughout the world, areas of highest incidence include southern Asia and southern Africa. Travelers should be advised that because the typhoid vaccines are not fully protective, and because of the potential for other food- and waterborne illnesses, careful selection of food and drink and appropriate hygiene remain necessary when traveling internationally.

» Vaccines Available

1. Parenteral ViCPS (Typhim Vi, sanofi pasteur) is for intramuscular use.
2. Oral live attenuated Ty21a vaccine (Vivotif Berna Vaccine, Swiss Serum and Vaccine Institute) is supplied as enteric-coated capsules.

» Dosage & Schedule of Administration

ViCPS is administered as a single intramuscular dose (0.5 mL) in the deltoid muscle, with boosters needed every 2 years if exposure continues. It is approved for children aged 2 years and older.

The dose of the oral vaccine (Ty21a) is one capsule every 2 days for a total of four capsules, taken 1 hour before meals. The capsules should be taken with cool liquids and should be kept refrigerated. A full course of four capsules is recommended every 5 years if exposure continues. Mefloquine and chloroquine may be given at the same time as the oral vaccine although proguanil should be administered only if 10 days have lapsed since the last dose of oral vaccine. This vaccine is not approved for children younger than age 6 years. As with all live attenuated vaccines, Ty21a should not be given to immunocompromised patients.

» Adverse Reactions

Both the oral and parenteral vaccines are well tolerated, and adverse reactions are uncommon and usually self-limited. The oral vaccine can cause gastroenteritis-like illness, fatigue, and myalgia, whereas the parenteral vaccine can cause injection site pain, abdominal pain, dizziness, and pruritus.

CDC: Updated recommendations for the use of typhoid vaccine—Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, United States, 2015. MMWR 2015;64:305 [PMID: 25811680].

Darton TC, Blohmke CJ, Pollard AJ. Typhoid epidemiology, diagnostics and the human challenge model. Curr Opin Gastroenterol 2014;30:7 [PMID: 24304980].

Martin LB: Vaccines for typhoid fever and other salmonelloses. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2012;25:489 [PMID: 22825288].

JAPANESE ENCEPHALITIS VACCINATION

Japanese encephalitis virus (JE) is a mosquito-borne flavivirus that carries a high morbidity and mortality for those infected. It is endemic in parts of Asia, although the risk to most travelers to Asia is low. Travel to rural areas and extended travel in endemic areas may increase the risk. One safe and effective vaccine is available in the United States. Travelers to JE-endemic countries should be advised of risks of JE and the importance of measures to reduce mosquito bites. Vaccination is not recommended for short-term travelers whose visit will be restricted to urban areas or outside of a well-defined JE transmission season, but vaccination is recommended for travelers who plan to spend more than 1 month in endemic areas during the JE transmission season. Vaccination should be considered for short-term travelers to endemic areas during the JE transmission season if they will travel outside of an urban area and their activities will increase the risk of JE exposure and should also be considered for travelers to an area with an ongoing JE outbreak. If the primary series of JE-VC was administered more than 1 year previously, a booster dose may be given before potential JE virus exposure.

» Vaccines Available and Schedule of Administration

1. Ixiaro (JE-VC) (Novartis) is an inactivated Vero cell-derived JE vaccine. It contains aluminum hydroxide as an adjuvant and has no preservative. It is given intramuscularly in a two-dose series at 0 and 28 days. It is licensed for persons aged 2 months and older. For adults and children aged more than or equal to 3 years, each dose is 0.5 mL. For children aged 2 months through 2 years, each dose is 0.25 mL.

http://obgynebooks.com

CDC: Japanese encephalitis vaccines: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2010;59(RR-1):1 [PMID: 20224546].
CDC: Recommendations for use of a booster dose of inactivated vero cell culture-derived Japanese encephalitis vaccine: Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2011. MMWR 2011;60:661 [PMID: 21617632].
CDC: Use of Japanese encephalitis vaccine in children: recommendations of the ACIP, 2013. MMWR 2013;62:898 [PMID: 24226626].
http://www.cdc.gov/japaneseencephalitis/vaccine/vaccineChildren.html.

TUBERCULOSIS VACCINATION

Approximately one-third of the world's population is infected with Mycobacterium tuberculosis, which is a leading cause of death in low- and middle-income nations, killing approximately 1.5 million people annually. It is relatively uncommon in the United States, and most cases occur in persons born abroad or their close contacts. Bacille Calmette-Guérin vaccine (BCG) consists of live attenuated Mycobacterium bovis. BCG is the most widely used vaccine in the world and has been administered to over 3 billion people, with a low incidence of adverse events following immunization. BCG vaccine is inexpensive, can be given any time after birth, sensitizes the vaccinated individual for 5–50 years, and stimulates both B-cell and T-cell immune responses. BCG reduces the risk of tuberculous meningitis and disseminated TB in pediatric populations by 50%–100% when administered in the first month of life. Efficacy against pulmonary tuberculosis has been variable (0%–80%) depending on the study setting and other factors.

BCG vaccination should be considered only in children with a negative TB skin test who are continually exposed to TB and cannot be separated from the infected adult, particularly if the adult is untreated and the child cannot be given preventive treatment. BCG is not recommended for travel.

The two licensed BCG vaccines in the United States are produced by Organon Teknika Corporation (Tice BCG) and sanofi pasteur (Mycobax). They are given intradermally in a dose of 0.05 mL for newborns and 0.1 mL for all other children. Adverse effects occur in 1%–10% of healthy individuals, including local ulceration, regional lymph node enlargement, and very rarely lupus vulgaris. The vaccine is contraindicated in pregnant women and in immunocompromised individuals, including those with HIV infection, because it has caused extensive local adenitis and disseminated or fatal infection.

BCG almost invariably causes its recipients to be tuberculin-positive (5–7 mm), but the reaction often becomes negative after 3–5 years. Thus, a positive TST test in a child with a history of BCG vaccination who is being investigated for TB as a case contact should be interpreted as indicating infection with M tuberculosis.

CDC: Updated guidelines for using interferon-gamma release assays to detect Mycobacterium tuberculosis—United States, 2010. MMWR 2010;59:1 [PMID: 20577159].
Perez-Velez CM, Marais BJ: Tuberculosis in children. N Engl J Med 2012;367:348 [PMID: 22830465].
Roy A et al: Effect of BCG vaccination against Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection in children: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 2014;349:g4643 doi:10.1136/bmj.g4643 [PMID: 25097193].
http://www.cdc.gov/tb/topic/vaccines/default.htm.

YELLOW FEVER VACCINATION

A live, attenuated vaccine against yellow fever is available for use in the United States. However, the vaccine is available only at official yellow fever vaccination locations (typically public health departments), and should only be given after consultation with travel medicine specialists or public health officials. Immunization against yellow fever is indicated for children age 9 months and older traveling to endemic areas. Proof of vaccination against yellow fever may be required for travel to certain countries. Yellow fever vaccine is made from the 17D yellow fever attenuated virus strain grown in chick embryos. It is contraindicated in infants younger than age 6 months, in persons with anaphylactic egg allergy, and in immunocompromised individuals or individuals with a history of thymus disease. In children 6–8 months of age, the vaccine risks and benefits should be weighed on an individual basis. When yellow fever vaccine is indicated, a subcutaneous injection of 0.5 mL is administered. Immunity following vaccination appears to be long-lasting. Adverse reactions are generally mild, consisting of low-grade fever, mild headache, and myalgia 5–10 days after vaccination, occurring in fewer than 25% of vaccines. Although very uncommon, several types of severe adverse reactions can occur following vaccination. Serious allergic reactions occur in roughly 1 case per every 55,000 vaccine recipients. The risk of vaccine-associated neurotropic disease within 30 days following vaccination has been estimated to be 1 case per every 125,000 vaccine recipients. The risk of severe multiple organ system failure following vaccination has been estimated at 1 case per every 250,000 vaccine recipients. Health care providers should administer yellow fever vaccine only to persons truly at risk of exposure to yellow fever. There is no contraindication to giving other live-virus vaccines simultaneously with yellow fever vaccine.

CDC: Yellow fever vaccine: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 2010;59(RR-7):1 [PMID: 20671663].
Monath TP: Review of the risks and benefits of yellow fever vaccination including some new analyses. Expert Rev Vaccines 2012;11:427 [PMID: 22551029].

http://obgynebooks.com

PASSIVE PROPHYLAXIS

1. Intramuscular & Specific Intravenous Immune Globulin

Ig may prevent or modify infection with hepatitis A virus if administered in a dose of 0.02 mL/kg within 14 days after exposure. Measles infection may be prevented or modified in a susceptible person if Ig is given in a dose of 0.5 mL/kg within 6 days after exposure. Pathogen-specific preparations of Ig include tetanus Ig (TIg), hepatitis B Ig (HBIg), rabies Ig (RIg), CMV Ig (IV), botulism Ig (IV), and varicella-zoster Ig (VariZig). These are obtained from donors known to have high titers of antibody against the organism in question. Ig must be given only by the route (IV or IM) for which it is recommended. The dose varies depending on the clinical indication. Adverse reactions include pain at the injection site, headache, chills, dyspnea, nausea, and anaphylaxis, although all but the first are rare.

Palivizumab (Synagis, MedImmune) is a humanized monoclonal antibody against RSV that is used to prevent RSV infection in high-risk populations with monthly doses during RSV season. AAP periodically revises the definition of "high risk" based on new and existing data. Recognizing that the benefit of palivizumab prophylaxis is modest, the most recent AAP Policy Statement was published in 2014 and is more restrictive than prior policies. Prophylaxis may be considered in the following circumstances: (1) infants born before 29 weeks, 0 days, who are younger than 12 months at the start of RSV season; (2) infants less than 12 months with chronic lung disease (CLD) of prematurity, defined as gestational age less than 32 weeks, 0 days, and requiring more than 21% oxygen for at least the first 28 days after birth; for the second year of life in children with a history of CLD, consideration of prophylaxis is recommended only for infants who continue to require medical support (chronic corticosteroids, diuretics, or supplemental oxygen) in the 6 months prior to the start of RSV season; (3) certain children less than 12 months of age with significant congenital heart disease (acyanotic heart disease on medication to control heart failure and will require cardiac surgical procedures, infants with moderate to severe pulmonary hypertension); (4) infants with a neuromuscular disease or congenital anomaly that impairs the ability to clear respiratory secretions; (5) infants younger than 24 months who are profoundly immunocompromised at the start of RSV season; (6) infants younger than 24 months with severe cystic fibrosis (respiratory hospitalizations or weight for length < 10th percentile). Palivizumab is administered in a dose of 15 mg/kg once a month beginning with the onset of the RSV season and continuing until the end of the season. Prophylaxis should be discontinued in any child who experiences a breakthrough hospitalization.

The maximum number of doses recommended in any one season is five. Palivizumab is packaged in 50- and 100-mg vials. Palivizumab does not interfere with response to routine childhood vaccinations.

2. Intravenous Immune Globulin

The primary indications for IVIg are for replacement therapy in antibody-deficient individuals; for the treatment of Kawasaki disease, immune thrombocytopenic purpura, Guillain-Barré syndrome and other autoimmune diseases; and replacement therapy in chronic B-cell lymphocytic leukemia. IVIg may be beneficial in some children with toxic shock syndrome, and for anemia caused by parvovirus B19. It may also be used as postexposure prophylaxis for varicella in at-risk persons when VariZIG is not available.

AAP: Policy statement—Updated guidance for palivizumab prophylaxis among infants and young children at increased risk of hospitalization for respiratory syncytial virus infection. Pediatrics 2014;134(2):415–420 [PMID: 25070315].

Hall CB et al: The burden of respiratory syncytial virus infection in young children. N Engl J Med 2009;360:588 [PMID: 19196675].

http://obgynebooks.com

11 Normal Childhood Nutrition & Its Disorders

Matthew A. Haemer, MD, MPH
Laura E. Primak, RD, CNSD
Nancy F. Krebs, MD, MS

NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

NUTRITION & GROWTH

The nutrient requirements of children are influenced by (1) growth rate, (2) body composition, and (3) composition of new growth. These factors vary with age and are especially important during early postnatal life. Growth rates are higher in early infancy than at any other time, including the adolescent growth spurt (Table 11–1). Growth rates should normally decline rapidly starting in the second month of postnatal life (proportionately later in the premature infant).

Nutrient requirements also depend on body composition. In the adult, the brain, which accounts for only 2% of body weight, contributes 19% to the total basal energy expenditure. In contrast, in a full-term neonate, the brain accounts for 10% of body weight and for 44% of total energy needs under basal conditions. Thus, in the young infant, total basal energy expenditure and the energy requirement of the brain are relatively high.

Composition of new tissue is a third factor influencing nutrient requirements. For example, fat should account for about 40% of weight gain between birth and 4 months but for only 3% between 24 and 36 months. The corresponding figures for protein are 11% and 21%; for water, 45% and 68%. The high rate of fat deposition in early infancy has implications not only for energy requirements but also for the optimal composition of infant feedings.

Because of the high nutrient requirements for growth and the body composition, the young infant is especially vulnerable to undernutrition. Slowed physical growth rate is an early and prominent sign of undernutrition in the young infant. The limited fat stores of the very young infant mean that energy reserves are modest. The relatively large size and continued growth of the brain render the central nervous system (CNS) especially vulnerable to the effects of malnutrition in early postnatal life.

ENERGY

The major determinants of energy expenditure are (1) basal metabolism, (2) metabolic response to food, (3) physical activity, and (4) growth. The efficiency of energy use may be a significant factor, and thermoregulation may contribute in extremes of ambient temperature if the body is inadequately clothed. Because adequate data on requirements for physical activity in infants and children are unavailable and because individual growth requirements vary, recommendations have been based on calculations of actual intakes by healthy subjects. Suggested guidelines for energy intake of infants and young children are given in Table 11–2. Also included in this table are calculated energy intakes of infants who are exclusively breast-fed, which have been verified in a number of centers. Growth velocity of breast-fed infants during the first 3 months equals and may exceed that of formula-fed infants, but from 6 to 12 months breast-fed infants typically weigh less than formula-fed babies and may show a decrease in growth velocity. The World Health Organization developed, and the United States has adopted, growth standards derived from an international sample of healthy breast-fed infants and young children raised in environments that do not constrain growth. These are considered to represent physiologic growth for infants and young children. (See also section Pediatric Undernutrition.)

After the first 4 years, energy requirements expressed on a body weight basis decline progressively. The estimated daily energy requirement is about 40 kcal/kg/d at the end of adolescence. Approximate daily energy requirements can be calculated by adding 100 kcal/y to the base of 1000 kcal/d at age 1 year. Appetite and growth are reliable indices of caloric needs in most healthy children, but intake also depends to some extent on the energy density of the food offered. Individual energy requirements of healthy infants and children vary considerably, and malnutrition and disease increase

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–1. Changes in growth rate, energy required for growth, and body composition in infants and young children.

Age (mo)	Growth Rate (g/d)			Energy Requirements for Growth (kcal/kg/d)	Body Composition (%)		
	Male	Both	Female		Water	Protein	Fat
0–0.25		0[a]			75	11.5	11
0.25–1	40		35	50			
1–2	35		30	25			
2–3	28		25	16			
3–6		20		10	60	11.5	26
6–9		15					
9–12		12					
12–18		8					
18–36		6		2	61	16	21

[a]Birth weight is regained by 10 days. Weight loss of more than 10% of birth weight indicates dehydration or malnutrition; this applies to both formula- and breast-fed infants.
Data from Fomon SJ (ed): Infant Nutrition. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders; 1974.

the variability. Premature infant energy requirements can exceed 120 kcal/kg/d, especially during illness or when catch-up growth is desired.

One method of calculating requirements for malnourished patients is to base the calculations on the ideal body weight (ie, 50th percentile weight for the patient's length-age, 50th percentile weight-for-length, or weight determined from current height and the 50th percentile body mass index [BMI] for age), rather than actual weight.

World Health Organization: Report of a Joint FAO/WHO/UNO Expert Consultation: Energy and Protein Requirements. WHO Tech Rep Ser No. 724, 1985;724.

PROTEIN

Only amino acids and ammonium compounds are usable as sources of nitrogen in humans. Amino acids are provided through the digestion of dietary protein. Nitrogen is

Table 11–2. Recommendations for energy and protein intake.

Age	Energy (kcal/kg/d)			Protein (g/kg/d)	
	Based on Measurements of Energy Expenditure	Intake From Human Milk	Guidelines for Average Requirements	Intake From Human Milk	Guidelines for Average Requirements
10 d–1 mo	—	105	120	2.05	2.5
1–2 mo	110	110	115	1.75	2.25
2–3 mo	95	105	105	1.36	2.25
3–4 mo	95	75–85	95	1.20	2.0
4–6 mo	95	75–85	95	1.05	1.7
6–12 mo	85	70	90	—	1.5
1–2 y	85	—	90	—	1.2
2–3 y	85	—	90	—	1.1
3–5 y	—	—	90	—	1.1

Data from Krebs NF et al: Growth and intakes of energy and zinc in infants fed human milk. J Pediatr 1994;124:32 [PMID: 8283374]; Garza C, Butte NF: Energy intakes of human milk-fed infants during the first year. J Pediatr 1990;117:S124 [PMID: 2380845].

http://obgynebooks.com

absorbed from the intestine as amino acids and short peptides. Absorption of nitrogen is more efficient from synthetic diets that contain peptides in addition to amino acids. Some intact proteins are absorbed in early postnatal life, a process that may be important in the development of protein tolerance or allergy.

Because there are no major stores of body protein, a regular dietary supply of protein is essential. In infants and children, optimal growth depends on an adequate dietary protein supply. Relatively subtle effects of protein deficiency are now recognized, especially those affecting tissues with rapid protein turnover rates, such as the immune system and the gastrointestinal (GI) mucosa.

Relative to body weight, rates of protein synthesis and turnover and accretion of body protein are exceptionally high in the infant, especially the premature infant. Eighty percent of the dietary protein requirement of a premature infant is used for growth, compared with only 20% in a 1-year-old child. Protein requirements per unit of body weight decline rapidly during infancy as growth velocity decreases. The recommendations in Table 11–2 are derived chiefly from the Joint FAO/WHO/UNO Expert Committee and are similar to the Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs). They deliver a protein intake above the quantity provided in breast milk. The protein intake required to achieve protein deposition equivalent to the in utero rate in very low-birth-weight infants is 3.7–4.0 g/kg/d simultaneously with adequate energy intake. Protein requirements increase in the presence of skin or gut losses, burns, trauma, and infection. Requirements also increase during times of catch-up growth accompanying recovery from malnutrition (~0.2 g of protein per gram of new tissue deposited). Young infants experiencing rapid recovery may need as much as 1–2 g/kg/d of extra protein. By age 1 year, the extra protein requirement is unlikely to be more than 0.5 g/kg/d.

The quality of protein depends on its amino acid composition. Infants require 43% of protein as essential amino acids, and children require 36%. Adults cannot synthesize nine essential amino acids: histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan, and valine. Cysteine and tyrosine are considered partially essential because their rates of synthesis from methionine and phenylalanine, respectively, are limited and may be inadequate in infants, the elderly, and those with malabsorption. In young infants, synthetic rates for cysteine, tyrosine, and, perhaps, taurine are insufficient for needs. Taurine, an amino acid used to conjugate bile acids, may also be conditionally essential in infancy. Lack of an essential amino acid leads to weight loss within 1–2 weeks. Wheat and rice are low in lysine, and legumes are low in methionine. Appropriate mixtures of vegetable protein are therefore necessary to achieve high protein quality.

Because the mechanisms for removal of excess nitrogen are efficient, moderate excesses of protein are not harmful and may help to ensure an adequate supply of certain micronutrients. Adverse effects of excessive protein intake may include increased calcium losses in urine and, over a life span, increased loss of renal mass. Excessive protein intake of more than 4 g/kg/d in older children and adolescents may also cause elevated blood urea nitrogen, acidosis, hyperammonemia, and, in the premature infant more than 6 g/kg/d has caused failure to thrive, lethargy, and fever. Impaired capacity to deaminate proteins from liver insufficiency or to excrete excess nitrogen as urea from renal insufficiency can further limit tolerable protein intake.

Su BH: Optimizing nutrition in preterm infants. Pediatr Neonatol 2014 Feb;55(1):5–13 [PMID: 24050843].

LIPIDS

Fats are the main dietary energy source for infants and account for up to 50% of the energy in human milk. Over 98% of breast milk fat is triglyceride (TG), which has an energy density of 9 kcal/g. Fats can be stored efficiently in adipose tissue with a minimal energy cost of storage. This is especially important in the young infant. Fats are required for the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins and for myelination of the CNS. Fat also provides essential fatty acids (EFAs) necessary for brain development, for phospholipids in cell membranes, and for the synthesis of prostaglandins and leukotrienes. The EFAs are polyunsaturated fatty acids, linoleic acid (18:2ω6), and linolenic acid (18:3ω3). Arachidonic acid (20:4ω6) is derived from dietary linoleic acid and is present primarily in membrane phospholipids. Important derivatives of linolenic acid are eicosapentaenoic acid (20:6ω3) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA, 22:6ω3) found in human milk and brain lipids. Visual acuity and possibly psychomotor development of formula-fed premature infants is improved in formulas supplemented with DHA (22:6ω3) and ARA (20:4ω6). The benefits of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acid supplementation in formulas for healthy term infants are unclear (though safety has been established).

Clinical features of EFA omega-6 deficiency include growth failure, erythematous and scaly dermatitis, capillary fragility, increased fragility of erythrocytes, thrombocytopenia, poor wound healing, and susceptibility to infection. The clinical features of deficiency of omega-3 fatty acids are less well defined, but dermatitis and neurologic abnormalities including blurred vision, peripheral neuropathy, and weakness have been reported. Fatty fish are the best dietary source of omega-3 fatty acids. A high intake of fatty fish is associated with decreased platelet adhesiveness and decreased inflammatory response.

Up to 5%–10% of fatty acids in human milk are polyunsaturated, with the specific fatty acid profile reflective of maternal dietary intake. Most of these are omega-6 series

http://obgynebooks.com

with smaller amounts of long-chain omega-3 fatty acids. About 40% of breast milk fatty acids are monounsaturates, primarily oleic acid (18:1), and up to 10% of total fatty acids are medium-chain triglycerides (MCTs) (C_8 and C_{10}) with a calorie density of 7.6 kcal/g. In general, the percentage of calories derived from fat is a little lower in infant formulas than in human milk.

The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends that infants receive at least 30% of calories from fat, with at least 2.7% of total fat as linoleic acid, and 1.75% of total fatty acids as linolenic. It is appropriate that 40%–50% of energy requirements be provided as fat during at least the first year of life. Children older than 2 years should be switched gradually to a diet containing approximately 30% of total calories from fat, with no more than 10% of calories either from saturated fats or polyunsaturated fats.

β-Oxidation of fatty acids occurs in the mitochondria of muscle and liver. Carnitine is necessary for oxidation of the fatty acids, which must cross the mitochondrial membranes as acylcarnitine. Carnitine is synthesized in the human liver and kidneys from lysine and methionine. Carnitine needs of infants are met by breast milk or infant formulas. In the liver, substantial quantities of fatty acids are converted to ketone bodies, which are then released into the circulation as an important fuel for the brain of the young infant.

MCTs are sufficiently soluble that micelle formation is not required for transport across the intestinal mucosa. They are transported directly to the liver via the portal circulation. MCTs are rapidly metabolized in the liver, undergoing β-oxidation or ketogenesis. They do not require carnitine to enter the mitochondria. MCTs are useful for patients with luminal phase defects, absorptive defects, and chronic inflammatory bowel disease. The potential side effects of MCT administration include diarrhea when given in large quantities; high octanoic acid levels in patients with cirrhosis; and, if they are the only source of lipids, deficiency of EFA.

Rochnow N et al: Target fortification of breast milk with fat, protein, and carbohydrates for preterm infants. J Pediatr 2013 Oct;163(4):1001–1007 [PMID: 23769498].

CARBOHYDRATES

The energy density of carbohydrate is 4 kcal/g. Approximately 40% of caloric intake in human milk is in the form of lactose, or milk sugar. Lactose supplies 20% of the total energy in cow's milk. The percent of total energy in infant formulas from carbohydrate is similar to that of human milk.

The rate at which lactase hydrolyzes lactose to glucose and galactose in the intestinal brush border determines how quickly milk carbohydrates are absorbed. Lactase levels are highest in young infants, and decline with age depending on genetic factors. About 20% of nonwhite Hispanic and black children younger than 5 years have lactase deficiency. White children typically do not develop symptoms of lactose intolerance until they are at least 4 or 5 years of age, while nonwhite Hispanic, Asian American, and black children may develop these symptoms by 2 or 3 years of age. Lactose-intolerant children have varying symptoms depending on the specific activity of their intestinal lactase and the amount of lactose consumed. Galactose is preferentially converted to glycogen in the liver prior to conversion to glucose for subsequent oxidation. Infants with galactosemia, an inborn metabolic disease caused by deficient galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase, require a lactose-free diet starting in the neonatal period.

After the first 2 years of life, 50%–60% of energy requirements should be derived from carbohydrates, with no more than 10% from simple sugars. These dietary guidelines are, unfortunately, not reflected in the diets of North American children, who typically derive 25% of their energy intake from sucrose and less than 20% from complex carbohydrates.

Children and adolescents in North America often consume large quantities of sucrose and high-fructose corn syrup in soft drinks and other sweetened beverages, candy, syrups, and sweetened breakfast cereals. A maximum intake of 10% of daily energy from sucrose has been recommended by the World Health Organization, but typical intakes have been reported to far exceed this recommended level. A high intake of these sugars, especially in the form of sweetened beverages, may predispose to obesity and insulin resistance, is a major risk factor for dental caries, and may be associated with an overall poorer quality diet, including high intake of saturated fat. Sucrase hydrolyzes sucrose to glucose and fructose in the brush border of the small intestine. Fructose absorption through facilitated diffusion occurs more slowly than glucose absorption through active transport. Fructose does not stimulate insulin secretion or enhance leptin production. Since both insulin and leptin play a role in regulation of food intake, consumption of fructose (eg, as high-fructose corn syrup) may contribute to increased energy intake and weight gain. Fructose is also easily converted to hepatic TGs, which may be undesirable in patients with insulin resistance/metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease risk.

Dietary fiber can be classified in two major types: nondigested carbohydrate (β1–4 linkages) and noncarbohydrate (lignin). Insoluble fibers (cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin) increase stool bulk and water content and decrease gut transit time. Soluble fibers (pectins, mucilages, oat bran) bind bile acids and reduce lipid and cholesterol absorption. Pectins also slow gastric emptying and the rate of nutrient absorption. Few data regarding the fiber needs of children are available. The Dietary Reference Intakes recommend 14 g of fiber per 1000 kcal consumed. The American

http://obgynebooks.com

Academy of Pediatrics recommends that children older than 2 years consume in grams per day an amount of fiber equal to 5 plus the age in years. Fiber intakes are often low in North America. Children who have higher dietary fiber intakes have been found to consume more nutrient-dense diets than children with low-fiber intakes. In general, higher fiber diets are associated with lower risk of chronic diseases such as obesity, cardiovascular disease, and diabetes.

Pan L et al: A longitudinal analysis of sugar-sweetened beverage intake in infancy and obesity at 6 years. Pediatrics. 2014 Sep;134(Suppl 1):S29–S35 [PMID: 25183752].

MAJOR MINERALS

Dietary sources, absorption, metabolism, and deficiency of the major minerals are summarized in Table 11–3. Recommended intakes are provided in Table 11–4.

TRACE ELEMENTS

Trace elements with a recognized role in human nutrition are iron, iodine, zinc, copper, selenium, manganese, molybdenum, chromium, cobalt (as a component of vitamin B_{12}), and fluoride. Information on food sources, functions, and deficiencies of the trace elements is summarized in Table 11–5. Supplemental fluoride recommendations are listed in Table 11–6. Dietary Reference Intakes of trace elements are summarized in Table 11–4. Iron deficiency is discussed in Chapter 30.

Krebs NF et al: Effects of different complementary feeding regimens on iron status and enteric Microbiota in breastfed infants. J Pediatr 2013 Aug;163(2):416–423. Epub 2013 Feb 26 [PMID: 23452586].

VITAMINS

Fat-Soluble Vitamins

Because they are insoluble in water, the fat-soluble vitamins require digestion and absorption of dietary fat and a carrier system for transport in the blood. Deficiencies in these vitamins develop more slowly than deficiencies in water-soluble vitamins because the body accumulates stores of fat-soluble vitamins; but prematurity and some childhood conditions can place infants and children at risk (Table 11–7). Excessive intakes carry potential for toxicity (Table 11–8). A summary of reference intakes for select vitamins is found in Table 11–9. Dietary sources of the fat-soluble vitamins, absorption/metabolism, and causes and clinical features of deficiency are summarized in Table 11–10, and vitamin deficiency and related diagnostic laboratory findings and treatment are detailed in Table 11–11.

Recent recognition of low levels of 25-OH-vitamin D in a relatively large percentage of the population and the broad range of functions beyond calcium absorption have led many experts including the American Academy of Pediatrics to recommend a daily intake of at least 400 IU (10 mcg)/d for all infants, including those who are breast-fed, beginning shortly after birth.

Golden NH, Abrams SA; Committee on Nutrition: Optimizing bone health in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 2014 Oct;134(4):e1229–e1243 [PMID: 25266429].

Water-Soluble Vitamins

Deficiencies of water-soluble vitamins are generally uncommon in the United States because of the abundant food supply and fortification of prepared foods. Cases of deficiencies (eg, scurvy) in children with special needs have been reported in the context of sharply restricted diets. Most bread and wheat products are fortified with B vitamins, including the mandatory addition of folic acid to enriched grain products since January 1998. There is conclusive evidence that folic acid supplements (400 mcg/d) during the periconceptional period protect against neural tube defects. Dietary intakes of folic acid from natural foods and enriched products also are protective. Biological roles of water-soluble vitamins are listed in Table 11–12.

The risk of toxicity from water-soluble vitamins is not as great as that associated with fat-soluble vitamins because excesses are excreted in the urine. However, deficiencies of these vitamins develop more quickly than deficiencies in fat-soluble vitamins because of limited stores, with the exception of vitamin B_{12}.

Major dietary sources of the water-soluble vitamins are listed in Table 11–13. Additional salient details are summarized in Tables 11–7, 11–14, and 11–15.

Carnitine is synthesized in the liver and kidneys from lysine and methionine. In certain circumstances (see Table 11–14), synthesis is inadequate, and carnitine can then be considered a vitamin. A dietary supply of other organic compounds, such as inositol, may also be required in certain circumstances.

INFANT FEEd ING

BREAST-FEEDING

Breast-feeding provides optimal nutrition for the normal infant during the early months of life. The World Health Organization recommends exclusive breast-feeding for approximately the first 6 months of life, with continued breast-feeding along with appropriate complementary foods through the first 2 years of life. Numerous immunologic

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–3. Summary of major minerals.

Mineral	Absorption/Metabolism	Deficiency	
		Causes	Clinical Features
Calcium Dietary sources: dairy products, legumes, broccoli, green leafy vegetables.	20%–30% from diet; 60% from HM. Enhanced by lactose, glucose, protein; impaired by phytate, fiber, oxalate, unabsorbed fat. Absorption is regulated by serum calcitriol, which increases when PTH is secreted in response to low plasma-ionized calcium. PTH also promotes release of calcium from bone. Renal excretion.	Can occur in premature infants without adequate supplementation and in lactating adolescents with limited calcium intake or in patients with steatorrhea.	Osteopenia or osteoporosis, tetany.
Phosphorus Dietary sources: meats, eggs, dairy products, grains, legumes, and nuts; high in processed foods and sodas.	80% from diet. PTH decreases tubular resorption of phosphorus in kidneys; homeostasis is maintained by GI tract and kidneys.	Rare, but can occur in premature infants fed unfortified HM (results in osteoporosis and rickets, sometimes hypercalcemia). Also seen in patients with protein-energy malnutrition.	Muscle weakness, bone pain, rhabdomyolysis, osteomalacia, and respiratory insufficiency.
Magnesium Dietary sources: vegetables, cereals, nuts.	Kidneys regulate homeostasis by decreasing excretion when intake is low.	Occurs as part of refeeding syndrome with protein-energy malnutrition. Renal disease, malabsorption, or magnesium wasting medications may lead to depletion. May cause secondary hypocalcemia.	Neuromuscular excitability, muscle fasciculation, neurologic abnormalities, ECG changes.
Sodium Dietary sources: processed foods, table salt.	Hypo- and hypernatremic dehydration are discussed in Chapter 23. Kidneys are primary site of homeostatic regulation.	Results from excess losses associated with diarrhea and vomiting.	Anorexia, vomiting, hypotension, and mental apathy. Severe malnutrition, stress, and hypermetabolism may lead to excess intracellular sodium, affecting cellular metabolism.
Chloride Dietary sources: table salt or sea salt, seaweed, many vegetables.	Homeostasis is closely linked to sodium. Plays an important role in physiologic mechanisms of kidneys and gut.	Can occur in infants fed low chloride-containing diets, or in children with cystic fibrosis, vomiting, diarrhea, chronic diuretic therapy, or Bartter syndrome.	Associated with failure to thrive and especially poor head growth; anorexia, lethargy, muscle weakness, vomiting, dehydration, hypovolemia. Laboratory findings: may include hypochloremia, hypokalemia, metabolic alkalosis, hyperreninemia.
Potassium Dietary sources: nuts, whole grains, meats, fish, beans, fruits and vegetables, especially bananas, orange juice.	Kidneys control potassium homeostasis via the aldosterone renin-angiotensin endocrine system. Amount of total body potassium depends on lean body mass.	Occurs in protein-energy malnutrition (eg, refeeding syndrome) and can cause cardiac failure and sudden death if not treated aggressively. With loss of lean body mass, excessive potassium is excreted in urine in any catabolic state. Can also occur during acidosis, from diarrhea, and from diuretic use. Hyperkalemia may result from renal insufficiency.	Muscle weakness, mental confusion, arrhythmias.

ECG, electrocardiogram; GI, gastrointestinal; HM, human milk; PTH, parathyroid hormone.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–4. Summary of Dietary Reference Intakes for selected minerals and trace elements.

	0–6 mo	7–12 mo	1–3 y	4–8 y	9–13 y	14–18-y Male	14–18-y Female
Calcium (mg/d)	210[a]	270[a]	500[a]	800[a]	1300[a]	1300[a]	1300[a]
Phosphorus (mg/d)	100[a]	275[a]	460[a]	500	1250	1250	1250
Magnesium (mg/d)	30[a]	75[a]	80	130	240	410	360
Iron (mg/d)	0.27[a]	11	7	10	8	11	15
Zinc (mg/d)	2[a]	3	3	5	8	11	9
Copper (mcg/d)	200[a]	220[a]	340	440	700	890	890
Selenium (mcg/d)	15[a]	20[a]	20	30	40	55	55

[a]Adequate Intakes (AI). All other values represent the Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs). Both the RDA and AI may be used as goals for individual intakes.

factors in breast milk (including secretory immunoglobulin A [IgA], lysozyme, lactoferrin, bifidus factor, and macrophages) provide protection against GI and upper respiratory infections.

In developing countries, lack of refrigeration and contaminated water supplies make formula feeding hazardous. Although formulas are made to resemble breast milk as closely as possible, they cannot fully replicate the nutritional or immune composition of human milk. Additional differences of physiologic importance continue to be identified. Furthermore, the relationship developed through breast-feeding can be an important part of maternal interactions and provides a source of security and comfort to the infant.

Breast-feeding has been reestablished as the predominant initial mode of feeding young infants in the United States. Unfortunately, breast-feeding rates remain low among several subpopulations, including low-income, minority, and young mothers. Many mothers face obstacles in maintaining lactation once they return to work, and rates of breast-feeding at 6 months are considerably less than the goal of 50%. Use of an electric breast pump can help to maintain lactation in these circumstances.

Absolute contraindications to breast-feeding are rare. They include active tuberculosis (in the mother) and galactosemia (in the infant). Breast-feeding is associated with maternal-to-child transmission of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), but the risk is influenced by duration and pattern of breast-feeding and maternal factors, including immunologic status and presence of mastitis. Complete avoidance of breast-feeding by HIV-infected women is presently the only mechanism to prevent maternal–infant transmission. HIV-infected mothers in developed countries are recommended to refrain from breast-feeding if safe alternatives are available. In developing countries, the use of antiretroviral therapy (ART) and exclusive breast-feeding is encouraged; if ART is not available, avoidance of breast-feeding may be considered. The protection of the child against diarrheal illness and malnutrition may outweigh the risk of HIV transmission via breast milk. In such circumstances, HIV-infected women should be encouraged to exclusively breast-feed for 6 months. Mixed feeding should be avoided because of the increased risk of HIV transmission.

In newborns less than 1750 g, human milk should be fortified to increase protein, calcium, phosphorus, and micronutrient content, as well as caloric density. Breast-fed infants with cystic fibrosis can be breast-fed successfully if exogenous pancreatic enzymes are provided. All infants with cystic fibrosis should receive supplemental vitamins A, D, E, K, and sodium chloride. Those with growth faltering should receive caloric supplementation.

American Academy of Pediatrics: In: Schanler RJ, Krebs NF, Mass SB (eds): Breastfeeding Handbook for Physicians. 2nd ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2014.

Carling SJ et al: Breastfeeding duration and weight gain trajectory in infancy. Pediatrics 2015 Jan;135(1):111–119 [PMID: 25554813].

Support of Breast-Feeding

In developed countries, health professionals are now playing roles of greater importance in supporting and promoting breast-feeding. Perinatal hospital routines and early pediatric care have a great influence on the successful initiation of breast-feeding by promoting prenatal and postpartum education, frequent mother-baby contact after delivery, one-on-one advice about breast-feeding technique, demand feeding, rooming-in, avoidance of bottle supplements, early follow-up after delivery, maternal confidence, family support, adequate maternity leave, and advice about common problems such as sore nipples. A 2011 CDC Morbidity and Mortality Report found that most US hospitals do not have

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–5. Summary of trace elements.

Mineral	Deficiency		Treatment
	Causes	Clinical Features	
Zinc Dietary sources: human milk, meats, shellfish, legumes, nuts, and whole-grain cereals. Functions: component of many enzymes and gene transcription factors; plays critical roles in nucleic acid metabolism, protein synthesis, and gene expression; supports membrane structure and function.	Diets low in available zinc (high phytate), unfortified synthetic diets; malabsorptive diseases (enteritis, celiac disease, cystic fibrosis); excessive losses (chronic diarrhea); inborn errors of zinc metabolism (acrodermatitis enteropathica, mammary gland zinc secretion defect). Inadequate intake in breast-fed infants after age 6 mo. Prematurity and low birth weight are risk factors.	Mild: impaired growth, poor appetite, impaired immunity. Moderate to severe: mood changes, irritability, lethargy, impaired immune function, increased susceptibility to infection; acro-orificial skin rash, diarrhea, alopecia. Response to zinc supplement is gold standard for diagnosis of deficiency; plasma zinc levels are lowered by acute phase response.	1 mg/kg/d of elemental zinc for 3 mo (eg, 4.5 mg/kg/d of zinc sulfate salt), given separately from meals and iron supplements. With acrodermatitis enteropathica, 30–50 mg Zn^{2+}/d (or more) sustains remission.
Copper Dietary sources: human milk, meats, shellfish, legumes, nuts, and whole-grain cereals. Functions: vital component of several oxidative enzymes: cytochrome c oxidase (electron transport chain), cytosolic and mitochondrial superoxide dismutase (free radical defense), lysyl oxidase (cross-linking of elastin and collagen), ferroxidase (oxidation of ferrous storage iron prior to transport to bone marrow).	Generalized malnutrition, prolonged PN without supplemental copper, malabsorption, or prolonged diarrhea. Prematurity is a risk factor.	Osteoporosis, enlargement of costochondral cartilages, cupping and flaring of long bone metaphyses, spontaneous rib fractures. Neutropenia and hypochromic anemia resistant to iron therapy. Defect of copper metabolism (Menkes kinky hair syndrome) results in severe CNS disease. Low plasma levels help to confirm deficiency; levels are normally very low in young infants. Age-matched normal data are necessary for comparison. Plasma levels are raised by acute phase response.	1% copper sulfate solution (2 mg of salt) or 500 mcg/d elemental copper for infants.
Selenium Dietary sources: seafood, meats, garlic (geochemical distribution affects levels in foods). Function: essential component of glutathione peroxidase (reduction of hydrogen peroxide to water in the cell cytosol).	Inadequate dietary intake; can occur with selenium-deficient PN. Renal disease.	Skeletal muscle pain and tenderness, macrocytosis, loss of hair pigment. Keshan disease, an often fatal cardiomyopathy in infants and children.	Minimum recommended selenium content for full-term infant formulas is 1.5 mcg/100 kcal, and for preterm formulas, 1.8 mcg/100 kcal. PN should be supplemented.
Iodine Dietary source: iodized salt. Functions: essential component of thyroid hormones; regulates metabolism, growth, and neural development.	Inadequate dietary intake. Maternal iodine deficiency causes endemic neonatal hypothyroidism in 5%–16% of neonates who may have goiter at birth.	Neurologic endemic cretinism (severe mental retardation, deaf mutism, spastic diplegia, and strabismus) occurs with severe deficiency. Myxedematous endemic cretinism occurs in some central African countries where signs of congenital hypothyroidism are present.	Use of iodized salt is effective in preventing goiter. Injections of iodized oil can also be used for prevention.
Fluoride Function: incorporated into the hydroxyapatite matrix of dentin.	Inadequate intake (unfluoridated water supply).	Low intake increases incidence of dental caries.	See Table 11–6 for supplementation guidelines. Excess fluoride intake results in fluorosis.

CNS, central nervous system; PN, parenteral nutrition.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–6. Supplemental fluoride recommendations (mg/d).

Age	Concentration of Fluoride in Drinking Water		
	< 0.3 ppm	0.3–0.6 ppm	> 0.6 ppm
6 mo–3 y	0.25	0	0
3–6 y	0.5	0.25	0
6–16 y	1	0.5	0

Reproduced, with permission, from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommendations for using fluoride to prevent and control dental caries in the United States. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2001;50(RR-14):8.

policies that optimally support breast-feeding. Medical providers can modify their own practice patterns and advocate for hospital policies that support breast-feeding.

Very few women are physically unable to nurse their babies. The newborn is generally fed ad libitum every 2–3 hours, with longer intervals (4–5 hours) at night. Thus, a newborn infant nurses at least 8–10 times a day, stimulating a generous milk supply. This frequency is not an indication of inadequate lactation. In neonates, a loose stool is often passed with each feeding; later (at age 3–4 months), there may be an interval of several days between stools. Failure to pass several stools a day in the early weeks of breast-feeding suggests inadequate milk intake.

Table 11–7. Circumstances associated with risk of vitamin deficiencies.

Circumstance	Possible Deficiency
Prematurity	All vitamins
Protein-energy malnutrition	B_1, B_2, folate, A
Synthetic diets without adequate fortification (including total parenteral nutrition)	All vitamins
Vitamin-drug interactions	Folate, B_{12}, D, B_6
Fat malabsorption syndromes	Fat-soluble vitamins
Breast-feeding	B_1,[a] folate,[b] B_{12},[c] D,[d] K[e]
Periconceptional	Folate
Bariatric surgery (all types)	B vitamins

[a]Alcoholic or malnourished mother.
[b]Folate-deficient mother.
[c]Vegan mother or maternal pernicious anemia.
[d]Infant not exposed to sunlight and mother's vitamin D status suboptimal.
[e]Maternal status poor; neonatal prophylaxis omitted.

Table 11–8. Effects of vitamin toxicity.

Pyridoxine
Sensory neuropathy at doses > 500 mg/d

Niacin
Histamine release → cutaneous vasodilation; cardiac arrhythmias; cholestatic jaundice; gastrointestinal disturbance; hyperuricemia; glucose intolerance

Folic acid
May mask B_{12} deficiency, hypersensitivity

Vitamin C
Diarrhea; increased oxalic acid excretion; renal stones

Vitamin A
(> 20,000 IU/d): Vomiting, increased intracranial pressure (pseudotumor cerebri); irritability; headaches; insomnia; emotional lability; dry, desquamating skin; myalgia and arthralgia; abdominal pain; hepatosplenomegaly; cortical thickening of bones of hands and feet

Vitamin D
(> 50,000 IU/d): Hypercalcemia; vomiting; constipation; nephrocalcinosis

Vitamin E
(> 25–100 mg/kg/d intravenously): Necrotizing enterocolitis and liver toxicity (but probably due to polysorbate 80 used as a solubilizer)

Vitamin K
Lipid-soluble vitamin K: Very low order of toxicity
Water-soluble, synthetic vitamin K: Vomiting; porphyrinuria; albuminuria; hemolytic anemia; hemoglobinuria; hyperbilirubinemia (do not give to neonates)

Expressing milk may be indicated if the mother returns to work or if the infant is premature, cannot suck adequately, or is hospitalized. Electric breast pumps are effective and can be borrowed or rented.

Technique of Breast-Feeding

Breast-feeding can be started as soon as both mother and baby are stable after delivery, ideally within the first 30–60 minutes. Correct positioning and breast-feeding technique are necessary to ensure effective nipple stimulation and optimal breast emptying with minimal nipple discomfort.

If the mother wishes to nurse while sitting, the infant should be elevated to the height of the breast and turned completely to face the mother, so that their abdomens touch. The mother's arms supporting the infant should be held tightly at her side, bringing the baby's head in line with her breast. The breast should be supported by the lower fingers of her free hand, with the nipple compressed between the thumb and index fingers to make it more protractile. When the infant opens its mouth, the mother should quickly insert as much nipple and areola as possible.

The most common early cause of poor weight gain in breast-fed infants is poorly managed mammary

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–9. Summary of Dietary Reference Intakes for select vitamins.

	0–6 mo	7–12 mo	1–3 y	4–8 y	9–13 y	14–18-y Male	14–18-y Female
Thiamin (mg/d)	0.2[a]	0.3[a]	0.5	0.6	0.9	1.2	1.0
Riboflavin (mg/d)	0.3[a]	0.4[a]	0.5[a]	0.6[a]	0.9[a]	1.3[a]	1.0[a]
Pyridoxine (mg/d)	0.1[a]	0.3[a]	0.5	0.6	1.0	1.3	1.2
Niacin (mg/d)	2[a]	4[a]	6	8	12	16	14
Pantothenic acid (mg/d)	1.7[a]	1.8[a]	2[a]	3[a]	4[a]	5[a]	5[a]
Biotin (mcg/d)	5[a]	6[a]	8[a]	12[a]	20[a]	25[a]	25[a]
Folic acid (mcg/d)	65[a]	80[a]	150	200	300	400	400
Cobalamin (mcg/d)	0.4[a]	0.5[a]	0.9	1.2	1.8	2.4	2.4
Vitamin C (mg/d)	40[a]	50[a]	15	25	45	75	65
Vitamin A (mcg/d)	400[a]	500[a]	300	400	600	900	700
Vitamin D (IU/d)	200[a,b]	200[a,b]	200[a,b]	200[a,b]	200[a,b]	200[a,b]	200[a,b]
Vitamin E (mg/d)	4[a]	5[a]	6	7	11	15	15
Vitamin K (mcg/d)	2[a]	2.5[a]	30[a]	55[a]	60[a]	75[a]	75[a]

[a] Adequate Intakes (AI). All other values represent the Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs). Both the RDA and AI may be used as goals for individual intakes.

[b] American Academy of Pediatrics in 2008 recommended 400 IU/d vitamin D for infants, children, and adolescents.

Data from National Academy of Sciences, Food and Nutritional Board, Institute of Medicine: Dietary Reference Intakes, Applications in Dietary Assessment. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2000:287. http://www.nap.edu.

engorgement, which rapidly decreases milk supply. Unrelieved engorgement can result from long intervals between feeding, improper infant suckling, a nondemanding infant, sore nipples, maternal or infant illness, nursing from only one breast, and latching difficulties. Poor technique, maternal dehydration, or excessive fatigue can contribute. Some infants may need waking to feed at night. Primary lactation failure occurs in less than 5% of women.

A sensible guideline for duration of feeding is 5 minutes per breast at each feeding the first day, 10 minutes on each side at each feeding the second day, and 10–15 minutes per side thereafter. A vigorous infant can obtain most of the available milk in 5–7 minutes, but additional sucking time ensures breast emptying, promotes milk production, and satisfies the infant's sucking urge. The side on which feeding is commenced should be alternated. The mother may break suction gently after nursing by inserting her finger between the baby's gums.

Follow-up

Assessment before discharge should identify dyads needing additional support. All mother-infant pairs require early follow-up. The second through fourth days postpartum when milk secretion becomes copious is a critical time. Failure to empty the breasts during this time can cause engorgement, which quickly leads to diminished milk production.

Common Problems

Nipple tenderness requires attention to proper positioning of the infant and correct latch-on. Nursing for shorter periods, beginning feedings on the less sore side, air drying the nipples well after nursing, and use of lanolin cream may provide relief. Severe nipple pain and cracking usually indicate improper latch. Temporary pumping may be needed.

Breast-feeding jaundice is exaggerated physiologic jaundice associated with low intake of breast milk, infrequent stooling, and poor weight gain. (See Chapter 2.) If possible, the jaundice should be managed by increasing the frequency of nursing and, if necessary, augmenting the infant's sucking with regular breast pumping. Supplemental feedings may be necessary, but care should be taken not to decrease breast milk production further.

In a small percentage of breast-fed infants, breast milk jaundice is caused by an unidentified property of the milk that inhibits conjugation of bilirubin. In severe cases, interruption of breast-feeding for 24–36 hours may be necessary. The mother's breast should be emptied with an electric breast pump during this period.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–10. Summary of fat-soluble vitamins.

Vitamin	Absorption/Metabolism	Deficiency	
		Causes	Clinical Features
Vitamin A Dietary sources: dairy products, eggs, liver, meats, fish oils. Precursor β-carotene is abundant in yellow and green vegetables. Functions: has critical role in vision, helping to form photosensitive pigment rhodopsin; modifies differentiation and proliferation of epithelial cells in respiratory tract; and is needed for glycoprotein synthesis.	Retinol is stored in liver and from there is exported, attached to RBP and prealbumin. RBP may be decreased in liver disease or in protein energy malnutrition. Circulating RBP may be increased in renal failure.	Occurs in premature infants, in association with inadequately supplemented PN; protein-energy malnutrition (deficiency worsened by measles); dietary insufficiency and fat malabsorption.	Night blindness, xerosis, xerophthalmia, Bitot spots, keratomalacia, ulceration and perforation of cornea, prolapse of lens and iris, and blindness; follicular hyperkeratosis; pruritus; growth retardation; increased susceptibility to infection.
Vitamin K Dietary sources: leafy vegetables, fruits, seeds; synthesized by intestinal bacteria. Functions: necessary for the maintenance of normal plasma levels of coagulation factors II, VII, IX, and X; essential for maintenance of normal levels of the anticoagulation protein C; essential for osteoblastic activity.	Absorbed in proximal small intestine in micelles with bile salts; circulates with VLDL.	Occurs in newborns, especially those who are breast-fed and who have not received vitamin K prophylaxis at delivery; in fat malabsorption syndromes; and with use of unabsorbed antibiotics and anticoagulant drugs (warfarin).	Bruising or bleeding in GI tract, genitourinary tract, gingiva, lungs, joints, and brain.
Vitamin E Dietary sources: vegetable oils, some cereals, dairy, wheat germ, eggs. Functions: α-tocopherol has highest biologic activity; as a free-radical scavenger, stops oxidation reactions. Located at specific sites in cell membrane to protect polyunsaturated fatty acids in membrane from peroxidation and to protect thiol groups and nucleic acids; also acts as cell membrane stabilizer; may function in electron transport chain; may modulate chromosomal expression.	Emulsified in intestinal lumen with bile salts; absorbed via passive diffusion; transported by chylomicrons and VLDL.	May occur with prematurity, cholestatic liver disease, pancreatic insufficiency, abetalipoproteinemia, and short bowel syndrome. Isolated inborn error of vitamin E metabolism. May result from increased consumption during oxidant stress.	Hemolytic anemia; progressive neurologic disorder with loss of deep tendon reflexes, loss of coordination, vibratory and position sensation, nystagmus, weakness, scoliosis, and retinal degeneration.
Vitamin d Dietary sources: fortified milk and formulas, egg yolk, fatty fish. Functions: calcitriol, the biologically active form of vitamin D, stimulates intestinal absorption of calcium and phosphate, renal reabsorption of filtered calcium, and mobilization of calcium and phosphorus from bone.	Normally obtained primarily from cholecalciferol (D_3) produced by UV radiation of dehydrocholesterol in skin. Ergocalciferol (D_2) is derived from UV irradiation of ergosterol in skin. Vitamin D is transported from skin to liver, attached to a specific carrier protein.	Results from a combination of inadequate sunlight exposure, dark skin pigmentation, and low dietary intake. Breast-fed infants are at risk because of low vitamin D content of human milk. Cow's milk and infant formulas are routinely supplemented with vitamin D. Deficiency also occurs in fat malabsorption syndromes. Hydroxylated vitamin D may be decreased by CYP-450–stimulating drugs, hepatic or renal disease, and inborn errors of metabolism.	Osteomalacia (adults) or rickets (children), in which osteoid with reduced calcification accumulates in bone. Clinical findings: craniotabes, rachitic rosary, pigeon breast, bowed legs, delayed eruption of teeth and enamel defects, Harrison groove, scoliosis, kyphosis, dwarfism, painful bones, fractures, anorexia, and weakness. Radiographic findings: cupping, fraying, flaring of metaphyses.

CYP, cytochrome P; GI, gastrointestinal; PN, parenteral nutrition; PTH, parathyroid hormone; RBP, retinol-binding protein; UV, ultraviolet; VLDL, very low-density lipoproteins.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–11. Evaluation and treatment of deficiencies of fat-soluble vitamins.

Vitamin Deficiency	Diagnostic Laboratory Findings and Treatment
Vitamin A	Laboratory findings: serum retinol < 20 mcg/dL; molar ratio of retinol:RBP < 0.7 is also diagnostic. Treatment: xerophthalmia requires 5000–10,000 IU/kg/d for 5 d PO or IM; with fat malabsorption, standard dose is 2500–5000 IU. Toxicity effects are listed in Table 11–8.
Vitamin K	Laboratory findings: assess plasma levels of PIVKA or PT. Treatment: Oral: 2.5–5.0 mg/d or IM/IV: 1–2 mg/ dose as single dose.
Vitamin E	Laboratory findings: normal serum level is 3–15 mg/mL for children. Ratio of serum vitamin E to total serum lipid is normally ≥ 0.8 mg/g. Treatment: large oral doses (up to 100 IU/ kg/d) correct deficiency from malabsorption; for abetalipoproteinemia, 100–200 IU/kg/d are needed.
Vitamin D	Laboratory findings: low serum phosphorus and calcium, high alkaline phosphatase, high serum PTH, low 25-OH-cholecalciferol. American Academy of Pediatrics recommends supplementation, as follows: 400 IU/d for all breast-fed infants, beginning in first 2 mo of life and continuing until infant is receiving ≥ 500 mL/d of vitamin D-fortified formula or cow's milk. Treatment: 1600–5000 IU/d of vitamin D_3 for rickets. If poorly absorbed, give 0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/d of calcitriol.

IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; PIVKA, protein-induced vitamin K absence; PO, by mouth; PT, prothrombin time; PTH, parathyroid hormone; RBP, retinol-binding protein.

Table 11–12. Summary of biologic roles of water-soluble vitamins.

B vitamins involved in production of energy
- Thiamin (B_1)
  - Thiamin pyrophosphate is a coenzyme in oxidative decarboxylation (pyruvate dehydrogenase, α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase, and transketolase).
- Riboflavin (B_2)
  - Coenzyme of several flavoproteins (eg, flavin mononucleotide [FMN] and flavin adenine dinucleotide [FAD]) involved in oxidative/electron transfer enzyme systems.
- Niacin
  - Hydrogen-carrying coenzymes: nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide (NAD), nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP); decisive role in intermediary metabolism.
- Pantothenic acid
  - Major component of coenzyme A.
- Biotin
  - Component of several carboxylase enzymes involved in fat and carbohydrate metabolism.

Hematopoietic B vitamins
- Folic acid
  - Tetrahydrofolate has essential role in one-carbon transfers.
    - Essential role in purine and pyrimidine synthesis; deficiency → arrest of cell division (especially bone marrow and intestine).
- Cobalamin (B_{12})
  - Methyl cobalamin (cytoplasm): synthesis of methionine with simultaneous synthesis of tetrahydrofolate (reason for megaloblastic anemia in B_{12} deficiency). Adenosyl cobalamin (mitochondria) is coenzyme for mutases and dehydratases.

Other B vitamins
- Pyridoxine (B_6)
  - Prosthetic group of transaminases, etc, involved in amino acid interconversions; prostaglandin and heme synthesis; central nervous system function; carbohydrate metabolism; immune development.

Other water-soluble vitamins
- l-Ascorbic acid (C)
  - Strong reducing agent—probably involved in all hydroxylations. Roles include collagen synthesis; phenylalanine → tyrosine; tryptophan → 5-hydroxytryptophan; dopamine → norepinephrine; Fe^{3+}; folic acid → folinic acid; cholesterol → bile acids; leukocyte function; interferon production; carnitine synthesis. Copper metabolism; reduces oxidized vitamin E.

The symptoms of mastitis include flulike symptoms with breast tenderness, firmness, and erythema. Antibiotic therapy covering β-lactamase–producing organisms should be given for 10 days. Analgesics may be necessary, but breast-feeding should be continued. Breast pumping may be helpful adjunctive therapy.

Khan J et al: Timing of breastfeeding initiation and exclusivity of breastfeeding during the first month of life: effects on neonatal mortality and morbidity—a systematic review and meta-analysis. Matern Child Health J 2015 Mar;19(3):468–479 [PMID: 24894730].

Maternal Drug Use

Factors playing a role in the transmission of drugs in breast milk include the route of administration, dosage, molecular weight, pH, and protein binding. Generally, any drug prescribed to a newborn can be consumed by the breast-feeding mother without ill effect. Very few drugs are absolutely contraindicated in breast-feeding mothers; these include

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–13. Major dietary sources of water-soluble vitamins.

Thiamin (B_1)	Whole and enriched grains, lean pork, legumes
Riboflavin (B_2)	Dairy products, meat, poultry, wheat germ, leafy vegetables
Niacin (B_3)	Meats, poultry, fish, legumes, wheat, all foods except fats; synthesized in body from tryptophan
Pyridoxine (B_6)	Animal products, vegetables, whole grains
Pantothenic acid	Ubiquitous
Biotin	Yeast, liver, kidneys, legumes, nuts, egg yolks (synthesized by intestinal bacteria)
Folic acid	Leafy vegetables (easily destroyed in cooking), fruits, whole grains, wheat germ, beans, nuts
Cobalamin (B_{12})	Eggs, dairy products, liver, meats; none in plants
Vitamin C	Fruits and vegetables
Carnitine	Meats, dairy products; none in plants

Table 11–14. Causes of deficiencies in water-soluble vitamins.

Thiamin	Beriberi: in infants breast-fed by mothers with history of alcoholism or poor diet; has been described as complication of parenteral nutrition (PN); protein-energy malnutrition; following bariatric surgery of all types—reported in adults and adolescents
Riboflavin	General undernutrition; inactivation in total parenteral nutrition (TPN) solutions exposed to light
Niacin	Maize- or millet-based diets (high-leucine and low-tryptophan intakes); carcinoid tumors
Pyridoxine	Prematurity (these infants may not convert pyridoxine to pyridoxal-5-P); B_6 dependency syndromes; drugs (isoniazid)
Biotin	Suppressed intestinal flora and impaired intestinal absorption; regular intake of raw egg whites
Folic acid	Breast-fed infants whose mothers are folate-deficient; term infants fed unsupplemented processed cow's milk or goat's milk; kwashiorkor; chronic overcooking of food sources; malabsorption of folate because of a congenital defect; celiac disease; drugs (phenytoin) Increased requirements: chronic hemolytic anemias, diarrhea, malignancies, extensive skin disease, cirrhosis, pregnancy
Cobalamin (B_{12})	Breast-fed infants of mothers with latent pernicious anemia or who are on an unsupplemented vegan diet; absence of luminal proteases; short gut syndrome (absence of stomach or ileum); congenital malabsorption of B_{12}
Vitamin C	Maternal megadoses during pregnancy → deficiency in infants (rebound); diet without fruits or vegetables; seen in infants fed formula based on pasteurized cow's milk (historical)
Carnitine	Premature infants fed unsupplemented formula or fed intravenously; dialysis; inherited deficits in carnitine synthesis; organic acidemias; infants receiving valproic acid

radioactive compounds, antimetabolites, lithium, diazepam, chloramphenicol, antithyroid drugs, and tetracycline. For up-to-date information, a regional drug center should be consulted.

Maternal use of illicit or recreational drugs is a contraindication to breast-feeding. Expression of milk for a feeding or two after use of a drug is not an acceptable compromise. The breast-fed infants of mothers taking methadone alone as part of a treatment program have generally not experienced ill effects when the dose is less than 40 mg/d.

United States National Library of Medicine Drugs and Lactation Database (Lactmed): http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov/newtoxnet/lactmed.htm.

Nutrient Composition

The nutrient composition of human milk is compared to that of cow's milk and formulas in Table 11–16. Outstanding characteristics include (1) relatively low but highly bioavailable protein content, which is adequate for the normal infant; (2) generous quantity of EFAs; (3) long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids, of which DHA is thought to be especially important; (4) relatively low sodium and solute load; and (5) lower concentration of highly bioavailable minerals, which are adequate for the needs of normal breast-fed infants for approximately 6 months.

Complementary Feeding

The AAP and the WHO recommend the introduction of solid foods in normal infants at about 6 months of age. Fortified cereals, fruits, vegetables, and meats should complement the breast milk diet. Meats are an important source of iron and zinc, both of which are low in human milk by 6 months. Pureed meats may be introduced as an early complementary food. Single-ingredient complementary foods are introduced one at a time at 3- to 4-day intervals before a new food is given. Fruit juice should not be introduced until after 6 months; should only be offered in a cup; and the amount should be limited to 4 oz/d. Delaying the introduction of

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–15. Clinical features of deficiencies in water-soluble vitamins.

Thiamin (B_1)	
	"Dry" Beriberi (paralytic or nervous): peripheral neuropathy, with impairment of sensory, motor, and reflex functions
	"Wet" Beriberi: high output congestive heart failure ± signs of dry beriberi
	Cerebral Beriberi: ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, mental confusion, memory loss
Riboflavin	
	Cheilosis; angular stomatitis; glossitis; soreness and burning of lips and mouth; dermatitis of nasolabial fold and genitals; ± ocular signs (photophobia → indistinct vision)
Niacin	
	Pellagra (dermatitis, especially on sun-exposed areas; diarrhea; dementia)
Pyridoxine (B_6)	
	Listlessness; irritability; seizures; anemia; cheilosis; glossitis
Biotin	
	Scaly dermatitis; alopecia; irritability; lethargy
Folic acid	
	Megaloblastic anemia; neutropenia; growth retardation; delayed maturation of central nervous system in infants; diarrhea (mucosal ulcerations); glossitis; neural tube defects
Cobalamin (B_{12})	
	Megaloblastic anemia; hypersegmented neutrophils; neurologic degeneration: paresthesias, gait problems, depression
Ascorbic acid (C)	
	Irritability, apathy, pallor; increased susceptibility to infections; hemorrhages under skin, petechiae in mucous membranes, in joints and under periosteum; long bone tenderness; costochondral beading
Carnitine	
	Increased serum triglycerides and free fatty acids; decreased ketones; fatty liver; hypoglycemia; progressive muscle weakness, cardiomyopathy, hypoglycemia

complementary foods beyond 6 months has not been shown to prevent atopic disease. Breast-feeding should ideally continue for at least 12 months. Whole cow's milk can be introduced after the first year of life.

While breast milk, dairy, soy, legume, and other vegetable sources of protein can provide adequate protein for growth, vegetarian foods are impractical as sources of iron or zinc. Breast-fed infants or toddlers on a vegetarian diet are at particular risk for inadequate intake of iron and zinc because of relatively high requirements during rapid growth and because animal-based foods are best sources. To meet requirements, infants and toddlers consuming vegetarian diets should be offered fortified foods including cereals and formula or daily supplementation of iron and zinc. A vegan diet that omits all animal protein sources will require supplementation of vitamin B_{12} as well. Guidance from a pediatric registered dietitian is suggested for families seeking for their infant or toddler to follow a vegetarian or vegan diet to ensure adequate protein, calorie, vitamin, and micronutrient intakes.

Young BE, Krebs NF: Complementary feeding: critical considerations to optimize growth, nutrition, and feeding behavior. Curr Pediatr Rep 2013 Dec 1;1(4):247–256 [PMID: 25105081].

SPECIAL DIETARY PRODUCTS FOR INFANTS

Soy Protein Formulas

Historically, a common rationale for the use of soy protein formulas was the transient lactose intolerance after acute gastroenteritis. Lactose-free cow's milk protein-based formulas are also now available. The medical indications for soy formulas are rare: galactosemia and hereditary lactase deficiency. Soy formulas provide an option when a vegetarian diet is preferred. Soy protein formulas are often used in cases of suspected intolerance to cow's milk protein, though cow's milk hydrolysate formulas are preferred because 30%–40% of infants intolerant to cow's milk protein will also react to soy protein. In contrast to this T-cell–mediated protein intolerance, those infants with less commonly documented IgE-mediated allergy to cow's milk protein do not typically cross-react to soy formula. The estrogenic properties of isoflavones from soy had raised concern about potential reproductive system effects, but an Expert Committee of the National Toxicology program found minimal concern for potential harm in their 2011 report.

Semielemental & Elemental Formulas

Semielemental formulas include protein hydrolysate formulas. The major nitrogen source of most of these products is casein hydrolysate, supplemented with selected amino acids, but partial hydrolysates of whey are also available. These formulas contain an abundance of EFA from vegetable oil; certain brands also provide substantial amounts of MCTs. Elemental formulas are available with free amino acids and varying levels and types of fat components.

Semielemental and elemental formulas are invaluable for infants with a wide variety of malabsorption syndromes. They are also effective in infants who cannot tolerate cow's milk and soy protein. Controlled trials suggest that for infants with a family history of atopic disease, partial hydrolysate formulas may delay or prevent atopic disease compared to standard cow milk protein-based formula.

Vandenplas Y et al: Hydrolyzed formulas for allergy prevention. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014 May;58(5):549–552 [PMID: 24464230].

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–16. Composition of human and cow's milk and typical infant formula (per 100 kcal).

Nutrient (unit)	Minimal Level Recommended[a]	Mature Human Milk	Typical Commercial Formula	Cow's Milk (mean)
Protein (g)	1.8[b]	1.3–1.6	2.3	5.1
Fat (g)	3.3[c]	5	5.3	5.7
Carbohydrate (g)	—	10.3	10.8	7.3
Linoleic acid (mg)	300	560	2300	125
Vitamin A (IU)	250	250	300	216
Vitamin D (IU)	40	3	63	3
Vitamin E (IU)	0.7/g linoleic acid	0.3	2	0.1
Vitamin K (mcg)	4	2	9	5
Vitamin C (mg)	8	7.8	8.1	2.3
Thiamin (mcg)	40	25	80	59
Riboflavin (mcg)	60	60	100	252
Niacin (mcg)	250	250	1200	131
Vitamin B_6 (mcg)	15 mcg of protein	15	63	66
Folic acid (mcg)	4	4	10	8
Pantothenic acid (mcg)	300	300	450	489
Vitamin B_{12} (mcg)	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.56
Biotin (mcg)	1.5	1	2.5	3.1
Inositol (mg)	4	20	5.5	20
Choline (mg)	7	13	10	23
Calcium (mg)	5	50	75	186
Phosphorus (mg)	25	25	65	145
Magnesium (mg)	6	6	8	20
Iron (mg)	1	0.1	1.5	0.08
Iodine (mcg)	5	4–9	10	7
Copper (mcg)	60	25–60	80	20
Zinc (mg)	0.5	0.1–0.5	0.65	0.6
Manganese (mcg)	5	1.5	5–160	3
Sodium (mEq)	0.9	1	1.7	3.3
Potassium (mEq)	2.1	2.1	2.7	6
Chloride (mEq)	1.6	1.6	2.3	4.6
Osmolarity (mOsm)	—	11.3	16–18.4	40

[a]Committee on Nutrition, American Academy of Pediatrics.
[b]Protein of nutritional quality equal to casein.
[c]Includes 300 mg of essential fatty acids.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–17. Common infant formula additives.

Additive	Kcal/g	Kcal/Tbsp	Kcal/mL	Comments
Dry rice cereal	3.75	15	—	Thickens formula but not breast milk
Polycose (Abbott Nutrition)	3.8	23	2	Glucose polymers
MCT oil (Mead Johnson)	8.3	116	7.7	Not a source of essential fatty acids
Microlipid (Mead Johnson)	9	68.5	4.5	Safflower oil emulsion with 0.4 g linoleic acid/mL
Vegetable oil	9	124	8.3	Does not mix well
Beneprotein (Nestle)	3.6	16.7 (4 g protein)	—	Whey protein
Duocal (SHS)	4.9	42	—	Protein-free mix of hydrolyzed corn starch (60% kcal) and fat (35% MCT)

MCT, medium-chain triglyceride.

Formula Additives

Occasionally it may be necessary to increase the caloric density of an infant feeding to provide more calories or to restrict fluid intake. Concentrating formula to 24–26 kcal/oz is usually well tolerated, delivers an acceptable renal solute load, and increases the density of all the nutrients. Beyond this, individual macronutrient additives (Table 11–17) are usually employed to achieve the desired caloric density (up to 30 kcal/oz) based on the infant's needs and underlying condition(s). A pediatric dietitian can provide guidance in formulating calorically dense infant formula feedings. The caloric density of breast milk can be increased by adding infant formula powder or any of the additives used with infant formula. Because of their specialized nutrient composition, human milk fortifiers are generally used only for premature infants.

Special Formulas

Special formulas are those in which one component, often an amino acid, is reduced in concentration or removed for the dietary management of a specific inborn metabolic disease. Also included under this heading are formulas designed for specific disease states, such as hepatic failure, pulmonary failure with chronic carbon dioxide retention, and renal failure. These condition-specific formulas were formulated primarily for critically ill adults and are used sparingly in those populations; thus, they should be used in pediatrics only with clear indication and caution.

Complete information regarding the composition of formulas can be found in reference texts and in the manufacturers' literature.

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Nutrition: In: Kleinman RE, Greer FR (eds): Pediatric Nutrition. 7th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2014.

Vandenplas Y et al: Treatment of cow's milk protein allergy. Pediatr Gastroenterol Hepatol Nutr 2014 Mar;17(1):1–5 [PMID: 24749081].

NUTRITION FOR CHILDREN 2 YEARS & OLDER

Because diet impacts the development of chronic diseases such as diabetes, obesity, and cardiovascular disease, learning healthy eating behaviors at a young age is an important preventative measure.

Salient features of the diet for children older than 2 years include the following:

1. Three regular meals per day, and one or two healthful snacks
2. A variety of foods: diet should be nutritionally complete and promote optimal growth and activity.
3. Fat less than 35% of total calories (severe fat restriction < 10% may result in an energy deficit and growth failure). Saturated fats should provide less than 10% of total calories. Monounsaturated fats should provide 10% or more of caloric intake. Trans-fatty acids, should provide less than 1% of total calories.
4. Cholesterol intake less than 100 mg/1000 kcal/d, to a maximum of 300 mg/d.
5. Carbohydrates should provide 45%–65% of daily caloric intake, less than 10% in the form of simple sugars. A high-fiber, whole-grain–based diet is recommended.
6. Limitation of grazing behavior, eating while watching television, and the consumption of soft drinks and other sweetened beverages.
7. Limitation of sodium intake by limiting processed foods and added salt.

http://obgynebooks.com

8. Consumption of lean cuts of meats, poultry, and fish should be encouraged. Skim or low-fat milk, and vegetable oils (especially canola or olive oil) should be used. Plentiful amounts of fruits and vegetables are recommended. The consumption of processed foods, juice drinks, soft drinks, desserts, and candy should be limited. The American Academy of Pediatrics has endorsed use of low-fat milk in children after 12 months of age.

Lifestyle counseling for children should also include maintenance of a BMI in the healthy range; regular physical activity, limiting sedentary behaviors; avoidance of smoking; and screening for hypertension. Current recommendations from the National Heart Lung and Blood Institute are to routinely screen all children once at age 9–11, and to consider screening children at younger ages who have additional risk factors (obesity, diabetes, family history of premature cardiovascular disease). The preferred time for screening occurs before puberty, a period in which hormonal changes render lipids unreliable in predicting levels in adulthood.

PEDIATRIC UNDERNUTRITION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Poor weight gain or weight loss.
- Loss of subcutaneous fat, temporal wasting.
- Most commonly related to inadequate caloric intake.
- In toddlers, often associated with low iron and zinc status.

» General Considerations

Pediatric undernutrition is usually multifactorial in origin, and successful treatment depends on accurate identification and management of those factors. The terms "organic" and "nonorganic" failure to thrive, though still used by many medical professionals, are not helpful because any systemic illness or chronic condition can cause growth impairment and yet may also be compounded by psychosocial problems.

» Clinical Findings

A. Definitions

Failure to thrive is an imprecise term used to describe growth faltering in infants and young children whose weight curve has fallen by two major percentile channels from a previously established rate of growth, or whose weight for length falls below the 5th percentile. (See Chapter 9.) The World Health Organization growth charts (http://www.who.int/childgrowth/en/) should be used for all infants, as these charts reflect the slower velocity of weight gain for healthy breast-fed infants without formula supplementation. Differences in weight gain are particularly notable after 6 months of age. The acute loss of weight, or failure to gain weight at the expected rate, produces a condition of reduced weight for height known as wasting. The reduction in height for age, as is seen with more chronic malnutrition, is termed stunting.

The typical pattern for mild pediatric undernutrition is decreased weight, with normal height and head circumference. In more chronic malnutrition, linear growth will slow relative to the standard for age, although this should also prompt consideration of nonnutritional etiologies. Significant calorie deprivation produces severe wasting, called marasmus. Significant protein deprivation in the face of adequate energy intake, possibly with additional insults such as infection, may produce edematous malnutrition called kwashiorkor.

B. Risk Factors

Multiple medical conditions can cause pediatric undernutrition, and a thorough discussion is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, the most common cause is inadequate dietary intake. In young infants, a weak or uncoordinated suck may be the causative factor. Congenital heart disease, breathing problems (eg, laryngomalacia), and other physical problems that may interfere with normal feeding. Inappropriate formula mixing or a family's dietary beliefs may lead to hypocaloric or unbalanced dietary intakes. Diets restricted because of suspected food allergies or intolerances may result in inadequate intake of calories, protein, or specific micronutrients. Deficiencies of iron or zinc occur in older breast-fed infants whose diets are low in meats, and in toddlers not taking fortified formula and do not consume good dietary sources. Cases of severe malnutrition and kwashiorkor have occurred in infants of parents who substitute milk alternatives (eg, rice milk or unfortified soy milk) for infant formula.

C. Assessment

1. Measurement of weight for age; length/height for age; occipital frontal circumference (OFC) for age (for < 2 years age), weight for length; and calculation of percent ideal body weight (current weight/median weight [50th percentile] for current length). Assess for downward crossing of growth percentiles (acute malnutrition) and for linear growth stunting (chronic malnutrition).
2. History should include details of diet intake and feeding patterns (including restrictive intake, grazing feeding pattern, inappropriate foods for age and development, excessive juice, sugar-sweetened beverages, or water intake); past medical history, including birth and developmental history; family history; social history; and review of systems.

http://obgynebooks.com

3. Physical examination should include careful examination of skin (for rashes), mouth, eyes, nails, and hair for signs of micronutrient and protein deficiencies, as well as for abnormal neurologic function (eg, loss of deep tendon reflexes, abnormal strength and tone).
4. Laboratory studies are generally of low yield for diagnosis for growth faltering in the absence of other findings, and should be reserved for moderately severe cases of malnutrition. In such cases, risk of and suspicion for nutrient deficiencies and systemic pathology should guide studies ordered. Typical screening laboratories include chemistry panel; complete blood count; and iron panel, including ferritin. Thyroid function testing is indicated with linear growth faltering. Serology for celiac disease may also be warranted for toddlers. Guidelines for screening for inborn errors of metabolism are available.
5. Some infants are naturally small and have weight for age percentile values below the 5th percentile and may have length and head circumferences at higher percentiles. Such infants are often called "constitutionally small," as their thinness was present from birth, there was no evidence of intrauterine growth restriction, their mothers had small stature and usually thinness, and the family growth pattern is similar. Mothers of such normally small children should not be discouraged from breast-feeding and should not be counseled to prematurely add food supplements. Workup for failure to thrive is not indicated in these infants and evaluations or referrals for growth failure or child neglect from underfeeding are not warranted.

When providing nutritional rehabilitation to infants/children with severe malnutrition, refeeding syndrome may occur. Monitoring for hypophosphatemia, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, and hyperglycemia is prudent, and calorie intake should be slowly increased to avoid metabolic instability.

» Treatment

Poor eating is often a learned behavior. Families should be counseled regarding choices of foods that are appropriate for the age and developmental level of the child. Increasing the caloric density of foods is associated with increased daily caloric intake and improved weight gain, but such weight gain usually is due to fat gain unless the calorie supplements include significant protein. Micronutrient deficiencies should be corrected. For repletion of iron, 2–4 mg/kg/d, divided BID, can be initiated. For zinc, 1 mg/kg/d for 1–2 months, administered several hours apart from iron supplement is typically adequate. Children should have structured meal times (eg, three meals and two to three snacks during the day), ideally at the same time other family members eat. Consultation with a pediatric dietitian can be helpful for educating the families. Poor feeding may be related to family dysfunction. Children whose households are chaotic and children who are abused, neglected, or exposed to poorly controlled mental illness may be described as poor eaters, and may fail to gain. Careful assessment of the social environment of such children is critical, and disposition options may include support services, close medical follow-up visits, family counseling, and even foster placement while a parent receives therapy.

Kerzner B et al: A practical approach to classifying and managing feeding difficulties. Pediatrics 2015 Feb;135(2):344–353 [PMID: 25560449].

Kyle UG et al: Growth failure and nutrition consideration in chronic childhood wasting diseases. Nutr Clin Pract 2015 Apr;30(2):227–238 [PMID: 25378356].

PEDIATRIC OVERWEIGHT & OBESITY (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 3 FOR OBESITY IN ADOLESCENTS)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Excessive rate of weight gain; upward change in BMI percentiles.
- BMI for age between the 85th and 95th percentiles indicates overweight.
- BMI for age greater than 95th percentile indicates obesity and is associated with increased risk of secondary complications.
- BMI for age greater than 99th percentile indicates severe obesity and a higher risk of complications.

» General Considerations

The prevalence of childhood and adolescent obesity has increased rapidly in the United States and many other parts of the world. Currently in the United States, approximately 17% of 6- to 19-year-olds are obese, with even higher rates among subpopulations of minority and economically disadvantaged children. The increasing prevalence of childhood obesity is related to a complex combination of socioeconomic, genetic, and biologic factors.

Childhood obesity, especially when severe, is associated with significant comorbidities. The probability of obesity persisting into adulthood has been estimated to increase from 20% at 4 years to 80% by adolescence. Rates of persistence from early childhood are much higher when one or both parents are obese. Obesity is associated with cardiovascular and endocrine abnormalities (eg, dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, and type 2 diabetes), orthopedic problems, pulmonary complications (eg, obstructive sleep apnea), and mental health problems (Table 11–18).

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–18. Selected complications of childhood obesity.

System	Condition	Note	Review of Systems
Pulmonary	Obstructive sleep apnea	13%–33% of obese youth	Snoring, apnea, poor sleep, nocturnal enuresis, AM headaches, fatigue, poor school performance
	Obesity-hypoventilation syndrome	Severe obesity, restrictive lung disease, may lead to right heart failure	Dyspnea, edema, somnolence
Cardiovascular	Hypertension	3 occasions > 95th percentile on NHLBI tables for gender, age, and height	
	Lipid abnormalities	Total cholesterol 170–199 borderline, > 200 high LDL 110–129 borderline, > 130 high HDL < 40 low	
		TG > 150 high	Assess for pancreatitis if TG > 400, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain
GI	NAFLD	10%–25% of obese youth; elevated ALT; rule out other liver disease; steatohepatitis may progress to fibrosis, cirrhosis	Commonly asymptomatic; rarely abdominal pain: vague, recurrent,
	GERD	Increased abdominal pressure	Abdominal pain: heartburn
	Gallstones	Associated with rapid weight loss	Abdominal pain: right upper or epigastric
	Constipation	Associated with inactivity, r/o encopresis	Abdominal pain: distension, hard infrequent stools, soiling/incontinence
Endocrine	Impaired glucose metabolism	Elevated fasting glucose = 100–125	Acanthosis nigricans
		Impaired glucose tolerance = 2-h OGTT 140–199	
	Type 2 diabetes (T2DM)	Random glucose > 200 with symptoms; Fasting glucose > 126, 2-h OGTT > 200, HgA_{1c} > 6.5	Polyuria and polydipsia, unintentional weight loss
	Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS)	Two of three: 1. Hyperandrogenism 2. Oligomenorrhea 3. Polycystic ovaries; insulin resistance; risk of infertility and endometrial cancer	Oligomenorrhea (> 9 menses/y), hyperandrogenism: hirsutism, acne
	Hypothyroid	Associated with poor linear growth	Asymptomatic until uncompensated: linear growth failure, cold intolerance, decline in school performance, coarse features, thin hair
Neurology/ ophthalmology	Pseudotumor cerebri	Papilledema, vision loss possible, consult neuro/ ophthalmology	Headaches (severe, recurrent), often worse in AM
Orthopedic	Blount disease	Stress injury to medial tibial growth plate, often painless	Bowed legs, ± knee pain
	SCFE	More likely to progress to bilateral disease in obese	Hip, groin, or knee pain; limp with leg held in external rotation
Dermatology	Acanthosis nigricans	Secondary effect of elevated insulin	Darkening of skin on neck, axillae, groin, ± skin tags
	Intertrigo/furunculosis/ panniculitis	Examine skin folds, pannus; bacteria, and/or yeast	Rash/infection in skin folds, inflammatory papules
	Hydradenitis suppurativa	Draining cysts in axillae or groin	Rash/infection in skin folds, blocked glands, recurrent and unrelenting
Psychiatric	Depression/anxiety	May lead to worsening obesity if untreated	Full psycho/social review, including mood, school performance, peer and family relationships
	Eating disorder	Assess for binging ± purging behavior	
	History of abuse	Increases risk of severe obesity	

ALT, alanine aminotransferase; GERD, gastroesophageal reflux disease; GI, gastrointestinal; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; HgA_{1c}, hemoglobin A_{1c}; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NHLBI, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; OGTT, oral glucose tolerance test; SCFE, slipped capital femoral epiphysis; T2DM, type 2 diabetes mellitus; TG, triglycerides.

http://obgynebooks.com

Kirschenbaum DS, Gierut KJ: Five recent expert recommendations on the treatment of childhood and adolescent obesity: toward an emerging consensus—a stepped care approach. Child Obes 2013 Oct;9(5):376–385 [PMID: 2404473].

» Clinical Findings

A. Definitions

BMI is the standard measure of obesity in adults and children. BMI is correlated with more accurate measures of body fatness and is calculated with readily available information: weight and height (kg/m^2). Routine plotting of the BMI on age- and gender-appropriate charts (http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts) can identify those with excess weight. BMI between the 85th and 95th percentiles for age and sex identifies those who are overweight. Obese is defined as BMI at or above 95% and is associated with increased risk of secondary complications. Severe obesity is characterized by BMI for age and sex at or above the 99th percentile and is associated with greatly increased risk of comorbidity. An upward change in BMI percentiles in any range should prompt evaluation and possible treatment. For children younger than 2 years, weight for length greater than 95th percentile indicates overweight and warrants further assessment, especially of energy intake and feeding behaviors.

B. Risk Factors

There are multiple risk factors for developing obesity, reflecting the complex relationships between genetic and environmental factors. Family history is a strong risk factor. Parental obesity, especially in both parents, strongly increases the odds of a child becoming an obese adult.

Risk factors in the home environment offer targets for intervention. Consumption of sugar-sweetened beverages, lack of family meals, large portion sizes, foods prepared outside the home, television viewing, video gaming, poor sleep, and lack of activity are all associated with risk of excessive weight gain.

C. Assessment

Early recognition of rapid weight gain or high-risk behaviors is important. Anticipatory guidance or intervention earlier in childhood and before weight gain becomes severe is more likely to be successful than delayed intervention. Routine evaluation at well-child visits should include:

1. Measurement of weight and height, calculation of BMI, and plotting all three parameters on age- and sex-appropriate growth charts (http://www.cdc.gov/growthcharts). Evaluate for upward crossing of BMI percentile channels.
2. History regarding diet and activity patterns (Table 11–19); family history, and review of systems. Physical examination should include blood pressure measurement, distribution of adiposity (central vs generalized); markers of comorbidities, such as acanthosis nigricans, hirsutism, hepatomegaly, orthopedic abnormalities; and physical stigmata of genetic syndromes (eg, Prader-Willi syndrome).
3. Laboratory studies are recommended as follows for children beginning by age 10 years or at onset of puberty. Consider testing at younger ages with severe obesity but not younger than 2 years:

   Overweight with personal or family history of heart disease risk factors—fasting lipid profile, fasting glucose and/or hemoglobin A_{1c}, alanine aminotransferase (ALT).

   Obese—fasting lipid profile, fasting glucose and/or hemoglobin A_{1c}, ALT.

   Other studies should be guided by findings in the history and physical.

Table 11–19. Suggested areas for assessment of diet and activity patterns.

diet
Portion sizes: adult portions for young children
Frequency of meals away from home (restaurants or take out)
Frequency/amounts of sugar-sweetened beverages (soda, juice drinks)
Meal and snack pattern: structured vs grazing, skipping meals
Frequency of eating fruits and vegetables
Frequency of family meals
Television viewing while eating
Activity
Time spent in sedentary activity: television, video games, computer
Time spent in vigorous activity: organized sports, physical education, free play
Activities of daily living: walking to school, chores, yard work
Sleep duration: risk of obesity is increased with inadequate sleep

» Treatment

Treatment should be based on risk factors, including age, severity of obesity, and comorbidities, as well as family history. For children with uncomplicated obesity, the primary goal is to achieve healthy eating and activity patterns, not necessarily to achieve ideal body weight. For children with a secondary complication, improvement of the complication is an important goal. In general, weight goals for obese children range from weight maintenance up to 1 lb/mo weight loss for those younger than 12 years to 2 lb/wk for those older than 12 years. More rapid weight loss should be monitored for pathologic causes that may be associated with nutrient deficiencies and linear growth stunting (Table 11–20).

Treatment focused on behavior changes in the context of family involvement has been associated with sustained weight loss and decreases in BMI. Clinicians should assess

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–20. Weight management goals.

Age (y)	BMI	Weight Change Goal to Achieve BMI < 85%
2–5	85%–94%	Maintain weight
	95%–98%	Maintain weight, or if complications lose 1 lb/mo
	99%	Lose 1 lb/mo
6–11	85%–94%	Maintain weight
	95%–98%	Lose 1 lb/mo
	99%	Lose 2 lb/wk
12–18	85%–95%	Maintain weight
	95%–98%	Lose 2 lb/wk
	99%	Lose 2 lb/wk

BMI, body mass index.

the family's readiness to take action. Motivational interviewing techniques can be helpful with resistant or ambivalent families to promote readiness. These techniques include open-ended questioning, exploring and resolving the family's ambivalence toward changes, and accepting the family's resistance nonjudgmentally. Providers should engage the family in collaborative decision making about which behavior change goals will be targeted. Improving dietary habits and activity levels concurrently is desirable for successful weight management. The entire family should adopt healthy eating patterns, with parents modeling healthy food choices, controlling foods brought into the home, and guiding appropriate portion sizes. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends no television for children younger than 2 years, a maximum of 2 h/d of television and video games for older children, with lower levels recommended for children during attempts at BMI reduction.

A "staged approach" for treatment has been proposed, with the initial level depending on the severity of overweight, the age of the child, the readiness of the family to implement changes, the preferences of the parents and child, and the skills of the health care provider.

1. Prevention plus: Counseling regarding problem areas identified by screening questions (see Table 11–19); emphasis on lifestyle changes, including healthy eating and physical activity patterns.
2. Structured weight management: Provides more specific and structured dietary pattern, such as meal planning, exercise prescription, and behavior change goals. This may be done in the primary care setting. Generally referral to at least one ancillary health professional will be required: dietitian, behavior specialist, and/or physical therapist. Monitoring is monthly or tailored to patient and family's needs.
3. Comprehensive multidisciplinary: This level further increases the structure of therapeutic interventions and support, employs a multidisciplinary team, and may involve weekly group meetings.
4. Tertiary care intervention: This level is for patients who have not been successful at the other intervention levels or who are severely obese. Interventions are prescribed by a multidisciplinary team, and may include intensive behavior therapy, specialized diets, medications, and surgery.

Pharmacotherapy can be an adjunct to dietary, activity, and behavioral treatment, but by itself it is unlikely to result in significant or sustained weight loss. Only one medication is approved for obesity treatment in adolescents: orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, is approved for patients older than 12 years. For severely obese adolescents, particularly with comorbidities, bariatric surgery is performed in some centers. In carefully selected and closely monitored patients, surgery can result in significant weight loss with a reduction in comorbidities.

Brei MN, Mudd S: Current guidelines for weight loss surgery in adolescents: a review of the literature. J Pediatr Health Care 2014 Jul–Aug;28(4):288–294 [PMID: 23831377].

NUTRITION SUPPORT

ENTERAL

Indications

Enteral nutrition support is indicated when a patient cannot adequately meet nutritional needs by oral intake alone and has a functioning GI tract. This method of support can be used for short- and long-term delivery of nutrition. Even when the gut cannot absorb 100% of nutritional needs, some enteral feedings should be attempted. Enteral nutrition, full or partial, has many benefits:

1. Maintaining gut mucosal integrity
2. Preserving gut-associated lymphoid tissue
3. Stimulating gut hormones and bile flow

Access Devices

Nasogastric feeding tubes can be used for supplemental enteral feedings, but generally are not used for more than 6 months because of the complications of otitis media and sinusitis. Initiation of nasogastric feeding usually requires a brief hospital stay to ensure tolerance to feedings and to allow for parental instruction in tube placement and feeding administration.

If long-term feeding support is anticipated, a more permanent feeding device, such as a gastrostomy tube, may

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–21. Guidelines for the initiation and advancement of tube feedings.

Age	Drip Feeds		Bolus Feeds	
	Initiation	Advancement	Initiation (mL)	Advancement
Preterm	1–2 mL/kg/d	5–10 mL q8–12h over 5–7 d as tolerated	5–20	5–10 mL as tolerated
Birth–12 mo	5–10 mL/h	5–10 mL q2–8h	10–60	20–40 mL q3–4h
1–6 y	10–15 mL/h	10–15 mL q2–8h	30–90	30–60 mL q feed
6–14 y	15–20 mL/h	10–20 mL q2–8h	60–120	60–90 mL q feed
> 14 y	20–30 mL/h	20–30 mL q2–8h	60–120	60–120 mL q feed

be considered. Referral to a home care company is necessary for equipment and other services such as nursing visits and dietitian follow-up.

Table 11–21 suggests appropriate timing for initiation and advancement of drip and bolus feedings, according to a child's age. Clinical status and tolerance to feedings should ultimately guide their advancement.

» Monitoring

Monitoring the adequacy of enteral feeding depends on nutritional goals. Growth should be frequently assessed, especially for young infants and malnourished children. Hydration status should be monitored carefully at the initiation of enteral feeding. Either constipation or diarrhea can be problems, and attention to stool frequency, volume, and consistency can help guide management. When diarrhea occurs, factors such as infection, hypertonic enteral medications, antibiotic use, and alteration in normal gut flora should be addressed.

In medically stable patients, the enteral feeding schedule should be developmentally appropriate (eg, 5–6 small feedings/d for a toddler). When night drip feedings are used in conjunction with daytime feeds, it is suggested that less than 50% of goal calories be delivered at night so as to maintain a daytime sense of hunger and satiety. This will be especially important once a transition to oral intake begins.

Mikhailov TA et al: Early enteral nutrition is associated with lower mortality in critically ill children. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2014 May;38(4):459–466 [PMID: 24403379].

PARENTERAL NUTRITION

» Indications

A. Peripheral Parenteral Nutrition

Peripheral parenteral nutrition is indicated when complete enteral feeding is temporarily impossible or undesirable. Short-term partial intravenous (IV) nutrition via a peripheral vein is a preferred alternative to administration of dextrose and electrolyte solutions alone. Because of the osmolality of the solutions required, it is usually impossible to achieve total calorie and protein needs with parenteral nutrition via a peripheral vein.

B. Total Parenteral Nutrition

Total parenteral nutrition (TPN) should be provided only when clearly indicated. Apart from the expense, numerous risks are associated with this method of feeding (see the section Complications). Even when TPN is indicated, every effort should be made to provide at least a minimum of nutrients enterally to help preserve the integrity of the GI mucosa and of GI function.

The primary indication for TPN is the loss of function of the GI tract that prohibits the provision of required nutrients by the enteral route. Important examples include short bowel syndrome, some congenital defects of the GI tract, and prematurity.

In recent years, a number of injectable essential nutrients have been in short supply in the US pharmaceutical market. Shortages have included IV lipids, multivitamins mixtures, and trace minerals. Deficiencies of these micronutrients have led to significant medical morbidity. Nutrition support teams should develop clinical guidelines to ensure injectable micronutrients are available for those patients who have the greatest need, for example, preterm infants and children with long-term dependence upon TPN. Policies to promote use of enteral micronutrient preparations can also help to reduce the reliance on parenteral supplies.

Nehra D et al: A.S.P.E.N. clinical guidelines: nutrition support of neonatal patients at risk for metabolic bone disease. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2013 Sep;37(5):570–598 [PMID: 23685349].

Norton SA: Notes from the field: zinc deficiency dermatitis in cholestatic extremely premature infants after a nationwide shortage of injectable zinc, Washington, DC, December 2012. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2013 Feb 22;62(7):136–137 [PMID: 23425963].

http://obgynebooks.com

» Catheter Selection & Position

An indwelling central venous catheter is preferred for long-term IV nutrition. For periods of up to 3–4 weeks, a percutaneous central venous catheter threaded into the superior vena cava from a peripheral vein can be used. For the infusion of dextrose concentrations higher than 12.5%, the tip of the catheter should be located in the superior vena cava. Catheter positioning in the right atrium has been associated with complications, including arrhythmias and thrombus. After placement, a chest radiograph must be obtained to check catheter position. If the catheter is to be used for nutrition and medications, a double-lumen catheter is preferred.

» Complications

A. Mechanical Complications

1. Related to catheter insertion or to erosion of catheter through a major blood vessel: Complications include trauma to adjacent tissues and organs, damage to the brachial plexus, hydrothorax, pneumothorax, hemothorax, and cerebrospinal fluid penetration. The catheter may slip during dressing or tubing changes, or the patient may manipulate the line.
2. Clotting of the catheter: Addition of heparin (1000 U/L) to the solution is an effective means of preventing this complication. If an occluded catheter does not respond to heparin flushing, recombinant tissue plasminogen activator may be effective.
3. Related to composition of infusate: Calcium phosphate precipitation may occur if excess amounts of calcium or phosphorus are administered. Factors that increase the risk of calcium phosphate precipitation include increased pH and decreased concentrations of amino acids. Precipitation of medications incompatible with TPN or lipids can also cause clotting.

B. Septic Complications

Septic complications are the most common cause of nonelective catheter removal, but strict use of aseptic technique and limiting entry into the catheter can reduce the rates of line sepsis. Fever over 38–38.5°C in a patient with a central catheter should be considered a line infection until proved otherwise. Cultures should be obtained and IV antibiotics empirically initiated. Removing the catheter may be necessary with certain infections (eg, fungal), and catheter replacement may be deferred until infection is treated.

C. Metabolic Complications

Many of the metabolic complications of IV nutrition are related to deficiencies or excesses of nutrients in administered fluids, whereas uncommon, specific deficiencies still occur, especially in the premature infant. Safe and effective IV nourishment requires attention to the nutrient balance, electrolyte composition, and delivery rate of the infusate and careful monitoring, especially when the composition or delivery rate is changed. The most challenging metabolic complication is cholestasis, particularly common in premature infants of very low birth weight. See discussion on parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis (PNAC) in Chapter 22 for details.

Calkins KL et al: Complications associated with parenteral nutrition in the neonate. Clin Perinatol 2014 Jun;41(2):331–345 [PMID: 24873836].

NUTRIENT REQUIREMENTS & DELIVERY

Energy

When patients are fed intravenously, no fat and carbohydrate intakes are unabsorbed, and no energy is used in nutrient absorption. These factors account for at least 7% of energy in the diet of the enterally fed patient. The intravenously fed patient usually expends less energy in physical activity. Average energy requirements may therefore be lower in children fed intravenously, by a total of 10%–15%. Caloric guidelines for the IV feeding of infants and young children are outlined below.

The guidelines are averages, and individuals vary considerably. Factors significantly increasing the energy requirement estimates include exposure to cold environment, fever, sepsis, burns, trauma, cardiac or pulmonary disease, and catch-up growth after malnutrition.

With few exceptions, such as some cases of respiratory insufficiency, at least 50%–60% of energy requirements are provided as glucose. Up to 40% of calories may be provided by IV fat emulsions.

Dextrose

The energy density of IV dextrose (monohydrate) is 3.4 kcal/g. Dextrose is the main energy source provided by total IV feeding. IV dextrose suppresses gluconeogenesis and can be oxidized directly, especially by the brain, red and white blood cells, and wounds. Because of the high osmolality, concentrations of dextrose greater than 10%–12.5% cannot be delivered via a peripheral vein or improperly positioned central line.

Dosing guidelines: The standard initial quantity of dextrose administered will vary by age (Table 11–22). Tolerance to IV dextrose normally increases rapidly due to suppression of hepatic glucose production. Dextrose can be increased by 2.5 g/kg/d, by 2.5%–5%/d, or by 2–3 mg/kg/min/d if there is no glucosuria or hyperglycemia. Standard final infusates for infants via a properly positioned central venous line usually range from 15% to 25% dextrose, though concentrations of

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–22. Pediatric macronutrient guidelines for total parenteral nutrition.

Age	Dextrose		Amino Acids	Lipids
	mg/kg/min	g/kg/d	g/kg/d	g/kg/d
	50%–60%kcal		10%–20%kcal	30%–40%kcal
Preterm	Initial 5–8	Initial 7–11	Initial 1.5–2	Initial 0.5–1
	Max 11–12.5	Max 16–18	Max 3–4	Max 2.5–3.5
Birth–12 mo	Initial 6–8	Initial 9–11	Initial 1.5–2	Initial 1
	Max 11–15	Max 16–21.5	Max 3	Max 2.5–3.5
1–6 y	Initial 6–7	Initial 8–10	Initial 1–1.5	Initial 1
	Max 10–12	Max 14–17	Max 2–2.5	Max 2.5–3.5
> 6 y	Initial 5–7	Initial 8–10	Initial 1	Initial 1
	Max 9	Max 13	Max 1.5–2	Max 3
> 10 y	Initial 4–5	Initial 5–7	Initial 1	Initial 1
	Max 6–7	Max 8–10	Max 1.5–2	Max 2–3
Adolescents	Initial 2–3	Initial 3–4	Initial 1	Initial 0.5–1
	Max 5–6	Max 7–8	Max 1.5–2	Max 2

up to 30% dextrose may be used at low flow rates. Tolerance to IV dextrose loads is markedly diminished in the premature neonate and in hypermetabolic states.

Problems associated with IV dextrose administration include hyperglycemia, hyperosmolality, and glucosuria (with osmotic diuresis and dehydration). Possible causes of hyperglycemia include the following: (1) inadvertent infusion of higher glucose concentrations than ordered, (2) uneven flow rate, (3) sepsis, (4) a stress situation (including administration of catecholamines or corticosteroids), and (5) pancreatitis. If these causes have been addressed and severe hyperglycemia persists, use of insulin may be considered. IV insulin reduces hyperglycemia by suppressing hepatic glucose production and increasing glucose uptake by muscle and fat tissues. It usually increases plasma lactate concentrations, but does not necessarily increase glucose oxidation rates; it may also decrease the oxidation of fatty acids, resulting in less energy for metabolism. Use of IV insulin also increases the risk of hypoglycemia. Hence, insulin should be used very cautiously. A standard IV dose is 1 U/4 g of carbohydrate, but much smaller quantities may be adequate and, usually, one starts with 0.2–0.3 U/4 g of carbohydrate.

Hypoglycemia may occur after an abrupt decrease in or cessation of IV glucose. When cyclic IV nutrition is provided, the IV glucose load should be decreased steadily for 1–2 hours prior to discontinuing the infusate. If the central line must be removed, the IV dextrose should be tapered gradually over several hours.

Oxidation rates for infused dextrose decrease with age. It is important to note that the ranges for dextrose administration provided in Table 11–22 are guidelines and that individual patients may require either less or more dextrose. Quantities of dextrose in excess of maximal glucose oxidation rates are used initially to replace depleted glycogen stores; hepatic lipogenesis occurs thereafter. Excess hepatic lipogenesis may lead to a fatty liver (steatosis). Lipogenesis produces carbon dioxide, as does glucose oxidation. Thus, excess dextrose may elevate the $Paco_2$ and aggravate respiratory insufficiency or impede weaning from a respirator.

Lipids

The energy density of 20% lipid emulsions is 10 kcal/g of lipid or 2 kcal/mL. The lipids are derived from either soybean or safflower oil. All commonly available formulations consist of more than 50% linoleic acid and 4%–9% linolenic acid. This high level of linoleic acid is not ideal due to the proinflammatory potential of omega-6 fatty acids, except when small quantities of lipid are being given to prevent an EFA deficiency. Because 10% and 20% lipid emulsions contain the same concentrations of phospholipids, a 10% solution delivers more phospholipid per gram of lipid than a 20% solution. Twenty percent lipid emulsions are preferred. IV lipid is often used to provide 30%–40% of calorie needs for infants and up to 30% of calorie needs in older children and teens.

http://obgynebooks.com

Lipoprotein lipase (LPL) activity is the rate-limiting factor in the metabolism and clearance of fat emulsions from the circulation. LPL activity is inhibited or decreased by malnutrition, leukotrienes, immaturity, growth hormone, hypercholesterolemia, hyperphospholipidemia, and theophylline. LPL activity is enhanced by glucose, insulin, lipid, catecholamines, and exercise. Heparin releases LPL from the endothelium into the circulation and enhances the rate of hydrolysis and clearance of TGs. In small premature infants, low dose heparin infusions may increase tolerance to IV lipid emulsion.

In general, adverse effects of IV lipid can be avoided by starting with modest quantities and advancing cautiously in light of results of TG monitoring and clinical circumstances. Monitoring TGs is particularly important in cases of severe sepsis. It should continue periodically with long-term use.

IV lipid dosing guidelines: Check serum TGs before starting and after increasing the dose. Commence with 1 g/kg/d, given over 12–20 hours or 24 hours in small preterm infants. Advance by 0.5–1.0 g/kg/d, every 1–2 days, up to goal (see Table 11–22). As a general rule, do not increase the dose if the serum TG level is above 400 mg/dL during infusion or if the level is greater than 250 mg/dL 6–12 hours after cessation of the lipid infusion.

Serum TG levels above 400–600 mg/dL may precipitate pancreatitis. In patients for whom normal amounts of IV lipid are contraindicated, 4%–8% of calories as IV lipid should be provided to prevent EFA deficiency. Neonates and malnourished pediatric patients receiving lipid-free parenteral nutrition are at high risk for EFA deficiency.

Finn KL et al: Impact of providing a combination lipid emulsion compared with a standard soybean oil emulsion in children receiving parenteral nutrition: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2015 Aug;39(6):656–667 [PMID: 25057053].

Nitrogen

One gram of nitrogen is yielded by 6.25 g of protein (1 g of protein contains 16% nitrogen). Caloric density of protein is equal to 4 kcal/g.

A. Protein Requirements

Protein requirements for IV feeding are the same as those for normal oral feeding (see Table 11–2).

B. Intravenous Amino Acid Solutions

Nitrogen requirements can be met by commercially available amino acid solutions. For infants, including premature infants, accumulating evidence suggests that the use of TrophAmine (McGaw) is associated with a more normal plasma amino acid profile, superior nitrogen retention, and a lower incidence of cholestasis. TrophAmine contains 60% essential amino acids, is relatively high in branched-chain amino acids, contains taurine, and is compatible with the addition of cysteine within 24–48 hours after administration. The dose of added cysteine is 40 mg/g of TrophAmine. The relatively low pH of TrophAmine enhances solubility of calcium and phosphorus.

C. Dosing Guidelines

Amino acids can be started at 1–2 g/kg/d in most patients (see Table 11–22). In severely malnourished infants, the initial amount should be 1 g/kg/d. In infants of very low birth weight, there is evidence that higher initial amounts of amino acids are tolerated with little indication of protein "toxicity." Larger quantities of amino acids in relation to calories can minimize a negative nitrogen balance even when the infusate is hypocaloric. Amino acid intake can be advanced by 0.5–1.0 g/kg/d toward the goal. Normally the final infusate will contain 2%–3% amino acids, depending on the rate of infusion. Concentration should not be advanced beyond 2% in peripheral vein infusates due to osmolality.

D. Monitoring

Monitoring for tolerance of the IV amino acid solutions should include blood urea nitrogen. Serum alkaline phosphatase, γ-glutamyltransferase, and bilirubin should be monitored to detect the onset of cholestatic liver disease.

Minerals & Electrolytes

A. Calcium, Phosphorus, and Magnesium

Intravenously fed premature and full-term infants should be given relatively high amounts of calcium and phosphorus. Current recommendations are as follows: calcium, 500–600 mg/L; phosphorus, 400–450 mg/L; and magnesium, 50–70 mg/L. After 1 year of age, the recommendations are as follows: calcium, 200–400 mg/L; phosphorus, 150–300 mg/L; and magnesium, 20–40 mg/L. The ratio of calcium to phosphorous should be 1.3:1.0 by weight or 1:1 by molar ratio. These recommendations are deliberately presented as milligrams per liter of infusate to avoid inadvertent administration of concentrations of calcium and phosphorus that are high enough to precipitate in the tubing. During periods of fluid restriction, care must be taken not to inadvertently increase the concentration of calcium and phosphorus in the infusate. These recommendations assume an average fluid intake of 120–150 mL/kg/d and an infusate of 25 g of amino acid per liter. With lower amino acid concentrations, the concentrations of calcium and phosphorus should be decreased.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 11–23. Electrolyte requirements for parenteral nutrition.

Electrolyte	Preterm Infant (mEq/kg)	Full-Term Infant (mEq/kg)	Child (mEq/kg)	Adolescent (mEq/kg)
Sodium	2–5	2–3	2–3	60–150
Chloride	2–5	2–3	2–3	60–150
Potassium	2–3	2–3	2–3	70–180

B. Electrolytes

Standard recommendations are given in Table 11–23. After chloride requirements are met, the remainder of the anion required to balance the cation should be given as acetate to avoid the possibility of acidosis resulting from excessive chloride. Electrolyte concentrations should be modified based on the flow rate and if indications dictate for the individual patient. IV sodium should be administered sparingly in the severely malnourished patient because of impaired membrane function and high intracellular sodium levels. Conversely, generous quantities of potassium and phosphorus may be needed.

C. Trace Elements

Recommended IV intakes of trace elements are as follows: zinc 100 mcg/kg, copper 20 mcg/kg, manganese 1 mcg/kg, chromium 0.2 mcg/kg, selenium 2 mcg/kg, and iodide 1 mcg/kg. Of note, IV zinc requirements may be as high as 400 mcg/kg for premature infants and can be up to 250 mcg/kg for infants with short bowel syndrome and significant GI losses of zinc. When IV nutrition is supplemental or limited to fewer than 2 weeks, and preexisting nutritional deficiencies are absent, only zinc need routinely be added.

IV copper requirements are relatively low in the young infant because of the presence of hepatic copper stores. These are significant even in the 28-week fetus. Circulating levels of copper and manganese should be monitored in the presence of cholestatic liver disease. If monitoring is not feasible, temporary withdrawal of added copper and manganese is advisable in cholestasis.

Copper and manganese are excreted primarily in the bile, but selenium, chromium, and molybdenum are excreted

Table 11–24. Summary of suggested monitoring for parenteral nutrition.

Variables	Acute Stage	Long-Term[b]
Growth	Daily	Weekly
Weight	Weekly	
Length	Weekly	
Head circumference		
Urine		
Glucose (dipstick)	With each void	With changes in intake or status
Specific gravity	Void	
Volume	Daily	
Blood		
Glucose	4 h after changes,[a] then daily × 2 d	Weekly
Na^+, K^+, Cl, CO_2, blood urea nitrogen	Daily for 2 d after changes,[a] then twice weekly	Weekly
Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, P	Initially, then twice weekly	Weekly
Total protein, albumin, bilirubin, aspartate transaminase, and alkaline phosphatase	Initially, then weekly	Every other week
Zinc and copper	Initially according to clinical indications	Monthly
Triglycerides	Initially, 1 d after changes,[a] then weekly	Weekly
Compete blood count	Initially, then twice weekly; according to clinical indications (see text)	Twice weekly

[a]Changes include alterations in concentration or flow rate.
[b]Long-term monitoring can be tapered to monthly or less often, depending on age, diagnosis, and clinical status of patient.

http://obgynebooks.com

primarily in the urine. These trace elements, therefore, should be administered with caution in the presence of renal failure.

Vitamins

Two vitamin formulations are available for use in pediatric parenteral nutrition: MVI Pediatric and MVI-12 (Astra-Zeneca). MVI Pediatric contains the following: vitamin A, 0.7 mg; vitamin D, 400 IU; vitamin E, 7 mg; vitamin K, 200 mcg; ascorbic acid, 80 mg; thiamin, 1.2 mg; riboflavin, 1.4 mg; niacinamide, 17 mg; pyridoxine, 1 mg; vitamin B_{12}, 1 mcg; folic acid, 140 mcg; pantothenate, 5 mg; and biotin, 20 mcg. Recommended dosing is as follows: 5 mL for children weighing more than 3 kg, 3.25 mL for infants 1–3 kg, and 1.5 mL for infants weighing less than 1 kg. Children older than 11 years can receive 10 mL of the adult formulation, MVI-12, which contains the following: vitamin A, 1 mg; vitamin D, 200 IU; vitamin E, 10 mg; ascorbic acid, 100 mg; thiamin, 3 mg; riboflavin, 3.6 mg; niacinamide, 40 mg; pyridoxine, 4 mg; vitamin B_{12}, 5 mcg; folic acid, 400 mcg; pantothenate, 15 mg; and biotin, 60 mcg. MVI-12 contains no vitamin K.

IV lipid preparations contain enough tocopherol to affect total blood tocopherol levels. The majority of tocopherol in soybean oil emulsion is α-tocopherol, which has substantially less biologic activity than the α-tocopherol present in safflower oil emulsions.

A dose of 40 IU/kg/d of vitamin D (maximum 400 IU/d) is adequate for both full-term and preterm infants.

Mertallo JM: Perspectives on parenteral micronutrient shortages. Nutr Clin Pract 2015 Feb 30(1):86–91 [PMID: 25520411].

Fluid Requirements

The initial fluid volume and subsequent increments in flow rate are determined by basic fluid requirements, the patient's clinical status, and the extent to which additional fluid administration can be tolerated and may be required to achieve adequate nutrient intake. Calculation of initial fluid volumes to be administered should be based on standard pediatric practice. If replacement fluids are required for ongoing abnormal losses, these should be administered via a separate line.

Monitoring

Vital signs should be checked on each shift. With a central catheter in situ, a fever of more than 38.5°C requires peripheral and central-line blood cultures, urine culture, complete physical examination, and examination of the IV entry point. Instability of vital signs, elevated white blood cell count with left shift, and glycosuria suggest sepsis. Removal of the central venous catheter should be considered if the patient is toxic or unresponsive to antibiotics.

A. Physical Examination

Monitor especially for hepatomegaly (differential diagnoses include fluid overload, congestive heart failure, steatosis, and hepatitis) and edema (differential diagnoses include fluid overload, congestive heart failure, hypoalbuminemia, and thrombosis of superior vena cava).

B. Intake and Output Record

Calories and volume delivered should be calculated from the previous day's intake and output records (that which was delivered rather than that which was ordered). The following entries should be noted on flow sheets: IV, enteral, and total fluid (mL/kg/d); dextrose (g/kg/d or mg/kg/min); protein (g/kg/d); lipids (g/kg/d); energy (kcal/kg/d); and percent of energy from enteral nutrition.

C. Growth, Urine, and Blood

Routine monitoring guidelines are given in Table 11–24. These are minimum requirements, except in the very long-term stable patient. Individual variables should be monitored more frequently as indicated, as should additional variables or clinical indications. For example, a blood ammonia analysis should be ordered for an infant with lethargy, pallor, poor growth, acidosis, azotemia, or abnormal liver test results.

http://obgynebooks.com

12 Emergencies & Injuries

Kevin P. Carney, MD
Kelley Roswell, MD

INTRODUCTION TO PEDIATRIC EMERGENCIES & INJURIES

Of the 129 million annual emergency department (ED) visits in the United States, over 25 million (20%) are children younger than 18 years. Injuries and poisonings are the leading cause of all pediatric ED visits (30%), with respiratory disorders (27%) also accounting for a significant percentage. Though the vast majority (93%) of children presenting for ED evaluation are discharged home, over 1 million each year require hospital admission from the ED and, sadly, nearly 8000 children die every year in US EDs.

This chapter begins with the initial approach to the acutely ill pediatric patient, discusses the differentiation and initial management of shock, presents the general approach to the evaluation of pediatric trauma patients, summarizes commonly used emergency drugs, and concludes with the management of a number of common clinical scenarios in pediatric emergency medicine.

INITIAL APPROACH TO THE ACUTELY ILL INFANT OR CHILD

A pediatric patient in serious distress may present with a known diagnosis or in cardiorespiratory failure of unknown cause. The initial approach must be simple and consistent in order to rapidly identify physiologic derangements and injuries, prioritize management, and reverse life-threatening conditions immediately. Once stabilized following interventions, the provider must then carefully consider the underlying cause, focusing on those that are treatable or reversible. Specific diagnoses can then be made, and targeted therapy initiated.

Pediatric cardiac arrest most commonly results from progressive respiratory deterioration or shock as opposed to a primary cardiac etiology. Unrecognized deterioration may lead to bradycardia, agonal breathing, hypotension, and ultimately asystole. Resulting hypoxic and ischemic insult to the brain and other vital organs make neurologic recovery extremely unlikely, even in the doubtful event that the child survives the arrest. When cardiopulmonary arrest does occur, survival is rare and most often associated with significant neurological impairment. Current data reflect a 6% survival rate for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest, 8% for those who receive prehospital intervention, and 27% survival rate for in-hospital arrest. Children who respond to rapid intervention with ventilation and oxygenation alone or to less than 5 minutes of advanced life support are much more likely to survive neurologically intact. In fact, more than 70% of children with respiratory arrest who receive rapid and effective bystander resuscitation survive with good neurologic outcomes. Therefore, it is essential to recognize the child who is at risk for progressing to cardiopulmonary arrest and to provide aggressive intervention before asystole occurs.

Please see the references at the end of this section for more information on the specifics of the American Heart Association's Pediatric Advanced Life Support (PALS) guidelines. Please note that the 2010 CPR guidelines emphasize the importance of Compressions first in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), then attention to Airway and Breathing (acronym "C-A-B"). Please do not confuse this acronym with the "ABCs of resuscitation" approach described later as the following discussion details care of the critically ill pediatric patient who does not require CPR.

THE ABCs OF RESUSCITATION

A severely ill child should be rapidly evaluated in a deliberate sequence known as the ABCs: Airway patency, Breathing adequacy, and Circulation integrity. If a potentially life-threatening problem is detected during the evaluation, it must be corrected before proceeding to the next step. Age-appropriate equipment (including laryngoscope blade,

http://obgynebooks.com

endotracheal tubes, nasogastric or orogastric tubes, IV lines, and an indwelling urinary catheter) and monitors (cardiorespiratory monitor, pulse oximeter, and appropriate blood pressure cuff) should be assembled and readily available. Use a length-based emergency tape if available. See Table 12–1 for endotracheal tube sizes. Cuffed endotracheal tubes are acceptable for children and infants beyond the newborn period. Cuff inflation pressures must be carefully monitored and maintained below 20 cm H_2O. In certain circumstances, such as poor lung compliance or high airway resistance, the use of cuffed tubes may be preferable in controlled settings.

Airway

In all children, look for evidence of spontaneous breathing. Breath sounds such as stridor, stertor, or gurgling, or increased work of breathing without air movement are suggestive of airway obstruction. Significant airway obstruction often is associated with altered level of consciousness, including agitation or lethargy. During the airway assessment, if the patient is noted to be apneic or producing only gasping (agonal) breaths, chest compressions should be initiated immediately in accordance with PALS guidelines.

If concerned for obstruction, the airway is managed initially by noninvasive means such as oxygen administration, chin lift, jaw thrust, suctioning, or bag-valve mask ventilation (BMV). Invasive maneuvers such as endotracheal intubation, laryngeal mask insertion, or rarely, cricothyroidotomy are required if the aforementioned maneuvers are unsuccessful. The following discussion assumes that basic life support has been instituted.

Knowledge of pediatric anatomy is important for airway management. Children's tongues are large relative to their oral cavities, and the larynx is high and anteriorly located. Infants are obligate nasal breathers; therefore, secretions, blood, or foreign bodies in the nasopharynx can cause significant distress.

1. Place the head in the sniffing position. In the patient without concern for cervical spine injury, the neck should be flexed slightly and the head extended. This position aligns the oral, pharyngeal, and tracheal planes. In infants and children younger than about 8 years, the relatively large occiput causes significant neck flexion and poor airway positioning. This is relieved by placing a towel roll under the shoulders, thus returning the child to a neutral position (Figure 12–1). In an older

Table 12–1. Equipment sizes and estimated weight by age.

Age (y)	Weight (kg)	Endotracheal Tube Size (mm)[a,b]	Laryngoscope Blade (Size)	Chest Tube (Fr)	Foley (Fr)
Premature	1–2.5	2.5 (uncuffed only)	0	8	5
Term newborn	3	3.0 (uncuffed only)	0–1	10	8
1	10	3.5–4.0	1	18	8
2	12	4.5	1	18	10
3	14	4.5	1	20	10
4	16	5.0	2	22	10
5	18	5.0–5.5	2	24	10
6	20	5.5	2	26	12
7	22	5.5–6.0	2	26	12
Age (y)	Weight (kg)	Cuffed Endotracheal Tube Size (mm)[a,b]	Laryngoscope Blade (Size)	Chest Tube (Fr)	Foley (Fr)
8	24	6.0	2	28	14
10	32	6.0–6.5	2–3	30	14
Adolescent	50	7.0	3	36	14
Adult	70	8.0	3	40	14

[a]Internal diameter.
[b]Decrease tube size by 0.5 mm if using a cuffed tube.

http://obgynebooks.com

▲**Figure 12–1.** Correct positioning of the child younger than 8 years for optimal airway alignment: a folded sheet or towel is placed beneath the shoulders to accommodate the occiput and align the oral, pharyngeal, and tracheal airways.

child, slightly more head extension is necessary. Avoid hyperextension of the neck, especially in infants.

2. Perform the head tilt/chin lift or jaw thrust maneuver (Figure 12–2). Lift the chin upward while avoiding pressure on the submental triangle, or lift the jaw by traction upward on the angle of the jaw. Important: head tilt/chin lift must not be done if cervical spine injury is possible. (See section Approach to the Pediatric Trauma Patient, later.)
3. Assess airway for foreign material. Suction the mouth; use Magill forceps to remove visible foreign bodies. If needed, visualize with a laryngoscope. Do not perform blind finger sweeps.
4. If airway obstruction persists, first attempt to reposition the head, then proceed with insertion of an airway adjunct, such as the oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal airway (Figure 12–3). Such adjuncts relieve upper airway obstruction due to prolapse of the tongue into the posterior pharynx, the most common cause of airway obstruction in unconscious children. The correct size for an oropharyngeal airway is obtained by measuring from the upper central gumline to the angle of the jaw (Figure 12–4) and should be used only in the unconscious victim. Proper sizing is paramount, as an oropharyngeal airway that is too small will push the tongue further into the airway while one that is too large will obstruct the airway. Nasopharyngeal airways should fit snugly within the nares and should be equal in length to the distance from the nares to the tragus (Figure 12–5). This airway adjunct should be avoided in

A

B

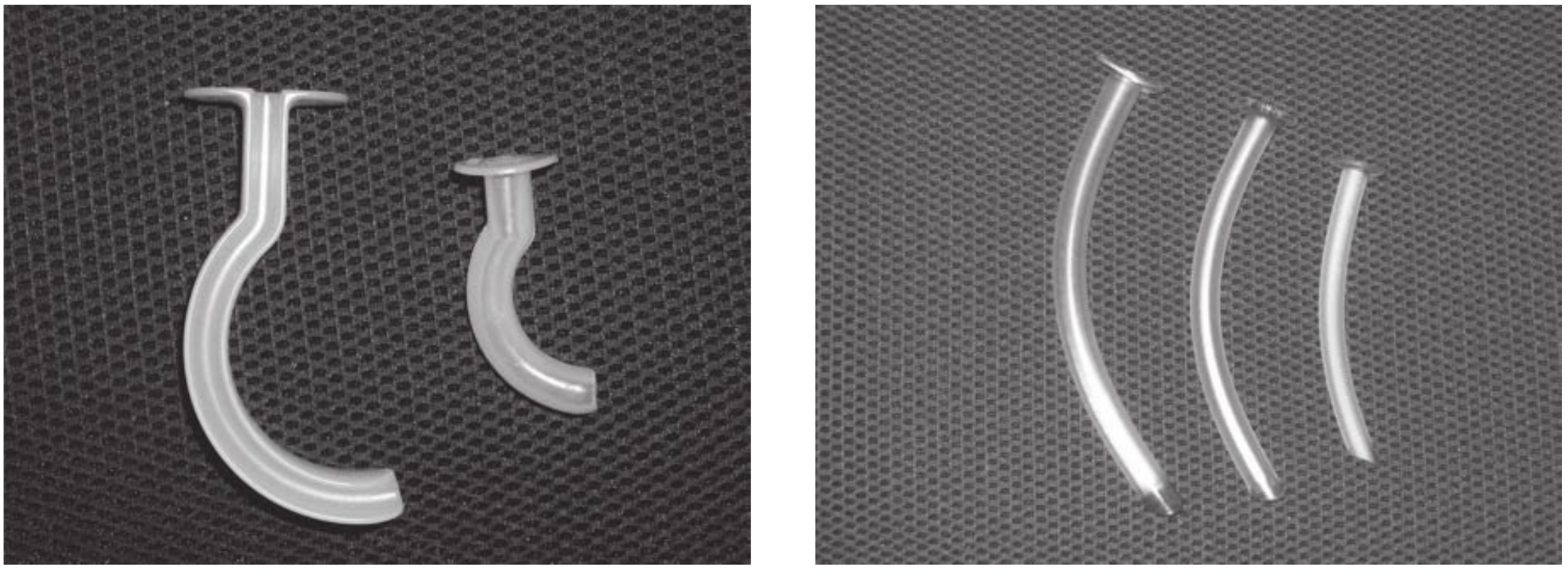
▲**Figure 12–2.** **A:** Opening the airway with the head tilt and chin lift in patients without concern for spinal trauma: gently lift the chin with one hand and push down on the forehead with the other hand. **B:** Opening the airway with jaw thrust in patients with concern for spinal trauma: lift the angles of the mandible; this moves the jaw and tongue forward and opens the airway without bending the neck.

children with significant injuries to the midface due to the risk of intracranial perforation through a damaged cribriform plate.

Breathing

Assessment of respiratory status beings with inspection. Look for adequate and symmetric chest rise and fall, rate and work of breathing (eg, accessory muscle use, retractions, flaring, and grunting), skin color, and tracheal deviation.

http://obgynebooks.com



A B

▲**Figure 12–3.** **A:** Oropharyngeal airways of various sizes. **B:** Nasopharyngeal airways of different sizes.

Pulse oximetry measurement and end-tidal CO_2 determination are highly desirable. Listen for adventitious breath sounds such as wheezing. Auscultate for air entry, symmetry of breath sounds, and rales. Feel for subcutaneous crepitus.

If spontaneous breathing is inadequate, initiate positive-pressure ventilation with BMV and 100% oxygen. Assisted ventilations should be coordinated with the patient's efforts, if present. Effective BMV is a difficult skill that requires training and practice. To begin, ensure a proper seal by choosing a mask that encompasses the area from the bridge of the nose to the cleft of the chin. Form an E–C clamp around the mask to seal the mask tightly to the child's face. The thumb and index finger form the "C" surrounding the mask, while the middle, ring, and small fingers lift the jaw into the mask (Figure 12–6). Use only enough force and volume to make the chest rise visibly. In the patient with a pulse, administer one breath every 3–5 seconds (12–20 breaths/min). This may be done using the timing mnemonic "squeeze-release-release" in a normal speaking voice. Two-person ventilation is optimal. When proper technique is used, BMV is effective in the vast majority of cases.

Adequacy of BMV is reflected with appropriate chest rise and auscultation of bilateral air entry. Avoid hyperventilation, as it may lead to barotrauma, increased risk of aspiration, and a decreased likelihood that return of spontaneous circulation will be achieved during cardiac arrest. If the chest

▲**Figure 12–4.** Size selection for the oropharyngeal airway: hold the airway next to the child's face and estimate proper size by measuring from the upper central gumline to the angle of the jaw.

▲**Figure 12–5.** Size selection for the nasopharyngeal airway: hold the airway next to the child's face and estimate proper size by measuring from the nares to the tragus.

http://obgynebooks.com

A

B

▲**Figure 12–6.** **A:** Bag-valve-mask ventilation, one-person technique: the thumb and index finger form the "C" surrounding the mask, while the middle, ring, and little fingers lift the jaw into the mask. **B:** Bag-valve-mask ventilation, two-person technique: the first rescuer forms the "C" and "E" clamps with both hands; the second rescuer provides ventilation.

does not rise and fall easily with bagging, reposition the airway and assess for foreign material as previously described. The presence of asymmetrical breath sounds in a child in shock or in severe distress suggests pneumothorax and is an indication for needle thoracostomy. In small children, the transmission of breath sounds throughout the chest may impair the ability to auscultate the presence of a pneumothorax. Note: Effective oxygenation and ventilation are the keys to successful resuscitation.

Cricoid pressure (Sellick maneuver) during positive-pressure ventilation may decrease gastric inflation; however, it has not been shown to reduce the risk of aspiration and is no longer recommended by the American Heart Association during CPR.

Circulation

The methodical assessment of blood circulation is critical to the diagnosis of shock, defined as the inadequate perfusion of vital organs. Circulation may be assessed in the following ways:

A. Pulses

Check adequacy of peripheral pulses and compare with central pulses. In the infant, central pulses should be checked at the brachial artery.

B. Heart Rate

Compare with age-specific norms. Tachycardia can be a nonspecific sign of distress; bradycardia for age is a sign of imminent arrest and necessitates aggressive resuscitation.

C. Blood Pressure

It is vital to understand that shock may be present even with a normal blood pressure. As intravascular volume

http://obgynebooks.com

falls, peripheral vascular resistance increases. Blood pressure is maintained until there is 35%–40% depletion of blood volume, followed by precipitous and often irreversible deterioration. **Compensated** shock occurs where there is normal blood pressure but signs of signs of decreased organ perfusion. When blood pressure also falls, **decompensated (hypotensive)** shock is present. Blood pressure determination should be performed manually using an appropriately sized cuff, because automated machines can give erroneous readings in children.

D. Extremities

As shock progresses, extremities become cooler from distally to proximal. A child whose extremities are cool distal to the elbows and knees is in severe shock.

E. Capillary Refill Time

When fingertip pressure is applied to a patient's distal extremity and released, blood should refill the area in less than 2 seconds. A prolonged capillary refill time in the setting of other signs of shock indicates a compensated shock state. It is important to recognize that capillary refill time is influenced by ambient temperature, limb position, site, age of the patient, and room lighting.

F. Mental Status

Assess the patient's mental status, as hypoxia, hypercapnia, poor cerebral perfusion, or ischemia will result in altered mental status.

G. Skin Color

Skin that is pale, gray, sallow, mottled, or ashen may indicate compromised circulatory status.

MANAGEMENT OF SHOCK

Intravenous (IV) access is essential but can be difficult to establish in children with shock. Peripheral access, especially via the antecubital veins, should be attempted first. Use short, wide bore catheters to allow maximal flow rates. Two IVs should be started in severely ill children. Intraosseous (IO) needle placement is an acceptable alternative in any severely ill child when venous access cannot be established rapidly (within 90 seconds) (Figure 12–7). Both manual and automated insertion devices are available for pediatric patients. Increasing evidence suggests that automated devices result in faster, more successful IO placement compared to manual devices. Decisions on more invasive access should be based on individual expertise as well as urgency of obtaining access. Options include percutaneous cannulation of femoral, subclavian, or internal or external jugular veins; cutdown at antecubital, femoral, or saphenous sites. In newborns, the umbilical veins may be cannulated. Consider

▲**Figure 12–7.** Interosseous (IO) cannulation technique. The IO line is inserted by grasping the needle hub firmly with the palm of the hand and angling the needle tip perpendicular to the anterior tibial surface approximately two fingerbreadths distal to the tibial plateau. With a firm, twisting motion, advance the needle until a sudden lessening of resistance is felt as the needle enters the marrow space. Aspiration of blood and marrow confirms IO placement.

arterial access if beat-to-beat monitoring or frequent laboratory tests will be needed.

Differentiation of Shock States & Initial Therapy

Therapy for inadequate circulation is determined by the cause of circulatory failure.

A. Hypovolemic Shock

The most common type of shock in the pediatric population is hypovolemia. Frequent causes include dehydration, diabetes, heat illness, and hemorrhage. Normal saline or lactated Ringer's solution (isotonic crystalloid) is given as initial therapy in shock and should be initiated even in normotensive

http://obgynebooks.com

patients. There is no advantage to the early administration of colloid (albumin). Give 20 mL/kg body weight (maximum 1 L bolus) and repeat as necessary, until perfusion normalizes. Typically no more than 60 mL/kg is needed in hypovolemic shock, but more may be required if ongoing losses are severe. Appropriate monitoring and frequent reassessment will guide your therapy. Packed red blood cell transfusion is indicated in trauma patients not responding to initial crystalloid bolus fluid replacement; however, there is insufficient evidence to determine the volume required. Pressors are not required in simple hypovolemic states.

B. Distributive Shock

Distributive shock results from increased vascular capacitance with normal circulating volume. Examples are sepsis, anaphylaxis, and spinal cord injury. Initial therapy is isotonic volume replacement with crystalloid, but pressors may be required if perfusion does not normalize after delivery of two or three 20 mL/kg boluses of crystalloid. Outcomes improve when threshold heart rates, normalized blood pressure, and a capillary refill in less than 2 seconds are achieved within the first hour of symptom onset.

The most recent clinical practice parameters from the American College of Critical Care Medicine emphasized four key concepts when faced with the pediatric or neonatal patient in septic shock. When compared to adults, infants and children are more likely to require (1) proportionally more fluid; (2) early inotrope or vasodilator therapy; (3) hydrocortisone for absolute adrenal insufficiency (caused by severe illness); (4) ECMO (extracorporeal membrane oxygenation) for refractory shock. Heavy emphasis is placed on early identification of septic shock and rapid delivery of goal-directed therapies as fluids, antibiotics, and inotropes within the first hour of presentation to the ED can reduce mortality and neurologic morbidity risks twofold.

C. Cardiogenic Shock

Cardiogenic shock can occur as a complication of congenital heart disease, myocarditis, dysrhythmias, ingestions (eg, clonidine, cyclic antidepressants), or as a complication of prolonged shock due to any cause. The diagnosis is suggested by any of the following signs: abnormal cardiac rhythm, distended neck veins, rales, abnormal heart sounds such as an S_3 or S_4, friction rub, narrow pulse pressure, rales, or hepatomegaly. Chest radiographs may show cardiomegaly and pulmonary edema. An initial bolus of crystalloid may be given, but pressors, and possibly afterload reducers, are necessary to improve perfusion. Giving multiple boluses of fluid is deleterious. Comprehensive cardiopulmonary monitoring is essential.

D. Obstructive Shock

Obstructive shock is rare in the pediatric population and involves extracardiac obstruction of blood flow and/or obstruction of adequate diastolic filling. Examples include cardiac tamponade, tension pneumothorax, massive pulmonary embolism, or a critical coarctation of the aorta after closure of the ductus arteriosus. Management is directed toward resolution of the obstruction. In the case of a critical coarctation, management should include emergent prostaglandin initiation to reopen the ductus arteriosus while awaiting surgical repair.

» Observation & Further Management

Clinically reassess physiologic response to each fluid bolus to determine additional needs. Serial central venous pressure determinations or a chest radiograph may help determine volume status. Place an indwelling urinary catheter to monitor urine output.

Caution must be exercised with volume replacement if intracranial pressure (ICP) is potentially elevated, as in severe head injury, diabetic ketoacidosis, or meningitis. Even in such situations, however, normal intravascular volume must be restored in order to achieve adequate mean arterial pressure and thus cerebral perfusion pressure.

SUMMARY OF INITIAL APPROACH TO THE ACUTELY ILL INFANT OR CHILD

Assess the ABCs in sequential fashion and, before assessing the next system, immediately intervene if physiologic derangement is detected. It is essential that each system be reassessed after each intervention to ensure improvement and prevent failure to recognize clinical deterioration.

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. Welcome to H-CUPnet [home page on internet]. Rockville, MD: AHRQ. http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov/HCUPnet.jsp.

ECC Committee, Subcommittees and Task Forces of the American Heart Association: Part 13: pediatric basic life support: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Circulation 2010;122:S862–S875 [PMID: 20956229].

ECC Committee, Subcommittees and Task Forces of the American Heart Association: Part 14: pediatric advanced life support: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Circulation 2010;122;S876–S908 [PMID: 20956230].

Kissoon, N, Orr RA, Carcillo JA. Updated American College of Critical Care Medicine—pediatric advanced life support guidelines for management of pediatric and neonatal septic shock: relevance to the emergency care clinician. Pediatr Emerg Care 2010;26(11):867–869 [PMID: 21057288].

EMERGENCY PEDIATRIC DRUGS

Although careful attention to airway and breathing remains the mainstay of pediatric resuscitation, medications are often needed. Rapid delivery to the central circulation, which

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 12–2. Emergency drugs that may be given by endotracheal tube.

Mnemonic "LEAN"
L Lidocaine
E Epinephrine
A Atropine
N Naloxone

can be via peripheral IV catheter, is essential. Infuse medications close to the catheter's hub and flush with saline to achieve the most rapid systemic effects. In the rare instance that no IV or IO access is achievable, some drugs may be given by endotracheal tube (Table 12–2). However, the dose, absorption, and effectiveness of drugs given via this route are either unknown or controversial. The use of length-based emergency measuring tapes that contain preprinted drug dosages, equipment sizes, and IV fluid amounts (Broselow tapes) or preprinted resuscitation drug charts is much more accurate than estimation formulas and helps minimize dosing errors. Selected emergency drugs used in pediatrics are summarized in Table 12–3.

APPROACH TO THE PEDIATRIC TRAUMA PATIENT

Traumatic injuries, including motor vehicle crashes, falls, burns, and immersions, account for the greatest number of deaths among children older than 1 year; injury exceeds all other causes of death combined. Blunt trauma is most common, with penetrating trauma occurring in only 10% of cases. Head and abdominal injuries are particularly common and important.

A coordinated team approach to the severely injured child will optimize outcomes. A calm atmosphere in the receiving area will contribute to thoughtful care. Parents are often anxious, angry, or guilty, requiring ongoing support from staff, social workers, or child life workers (therapists knowledgeable about child development).

To provide optimal multidisciplinary care, regional pediatric trauma centers provide dedicated teams of pediatric specialists in emergency pediatrics, trauma surgery, orthopedics, neurosurgery, and critical care. However, most children with severe injuries are not seen in these centers. Primary care providers must be able to provide initial assessment and stabilization of the child with life-threatening injuries before transport to a verified pediatric trauma center.

MECHANISM OF INJURY

Document the time of occurrence, the type of energy transfer (eg, hit by a car, fall from playground), secondary impacts (if the child was thrown by the initial impact), appearance of the child at the scene, interventions performed, and clinical condition during transport. The report of emergency service personnel is invaluable. Forward all of this information with the patient to the referral facility if secondary transport occurs.

INITIAL ASSESSMENT & MANAGEMENT

The vast majority of children who reach a hospital alive survive to discharge. As most deaths from trauma in children are due to head injuries, cerebral resuscitation must be the foremost consideration when treating children with serious injuries. Strict attention to the ABCs (see previous section) ensures optimal oxygenation, ventilation, and perfusion, and ultimately, cerebral perfusion.

The primary and secondary survey is a method for evaluating and treating injured patients in a systematic way that provides a rapid assessment and stabilization phase, followed by a head-to-toe examination and definitive care phase.

PRIMARY SURVEY

The primary survey is designed to immediately identify and treat all physiologic derangements resulting from trauma. The mnemonic, ABCDE, is a simple way to remember the general steps of the primary survey: Airway, with cervical spine control; Breathing; Circulation, with hemorrhage control; Disability (neurologic deficit); Exposure (maintain a warm Environment, undress the patient completely, and Examine)

If the patient is apneic or has agonal breaths, the sequence becomes the CABs (chest compressions, open the airway, provide two rescue breaths). Please refer to PALS guidelines for further information. Refer to preceding discussion regarding details of the ABC assessment. Modifications in the trauma setting are added as follows:

Airway

Failure to manage the airway appropriately is the most common cause of preventable morbidity and death. Administer 100% high-flow oxygen to all patients. Initially, provide cervical spine protection by manual inline immobilization, not traction. A hard cervical spine collar is applied after the primary survey.

Breathing

Most ventilation problems are resolved adequately by the airway maneuvers described earlier and by positive-pressure ventilation. Sources of traumatic pulmonary compromise include pneumothorax, hemothorax, pulmonary contusion, flail chest, and central nervous system (CNS) depression. Asymmetric breath sounds, particularly with concurrent tracheal deviation, cyanosis, or bradycardia, suggest pneumothorax,

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 12–3. Emergency pediatric drugs.

Drug	Indications	Dosage and Route	Comment
Atropine	1. Bradycardia, especially cardiac in origin 2. Vagally mediated bradycardia, eg, during laryngoscopy and intubation 3. Anticholinesterase poisoning	0.02 mg/kg IV/IO 0.04–0.06 mg/kg ET. Minimum dose 0.1 mg; maximum single dose 0.5 mg. May repeat once if needed.	Atropine may be useful in hemodynamically significant primary cardiac-based bradycardias. Because of paradoxic bradycardia sometimes seen in infants, a minimum dose of 0.1 mg is recommended by the American Heart Association. Epinephrine is the first-line drug in pediatrics for bradycardia caused by hypoxia or ischemia.
Bicarbonate	1. Documented metabolic acidosis 2. Hyperkalemia	1 mEq/kg IV or IO; by arterial blood gas: 0.3 × kg × base deficit. May repeat every 5 min.	Infuse slowly. Sodium bicarbonate will be effective only if the patient is adequately oxygenated, ventilated, and perfused. Some adverse side effects.
Calcium chloride 10%	1. Documented hypocalcemia 2. Calcium channel blocker overdose 3. Hyperkalemia, hypermagnesemia	20 mg/kg slowly IV, preferably centrally, or IO with caution. Maximum single dose 2 g.	Calcium is no longer indicated for asystole. Potent tissue necrosis results if infiltration occurs. Use with caution and infuse slowly.
Epinephrine	1. Bradycardia, especially hypoxic-ischemic 2. Hypotension (by infusion) 3. Asystole 4. Fine ventricular fibrillation refractory to initial defibrillation 5. Pulseless electrical activity 6. Anaphylaxis	Bradycardia and cardiac arrest: 0.01 mg/kg of 1:10,000 solution IV/IO: 0.1 mg/kg of 1:1000 solution ET Anaphylaxis: 0.01 mg/kg of 1:1000 solution SC/IM Maximum dose: 0.3 mg. May repeat every 3–5 min. Constant infusion by IV drip: 0.1–1 mcg/kg/min.	Epinephrine is the single most important drug in pediatric resuscitation. Recent pediatric studies have shown no added advantage to high-dose epinephrine in terms of survival to discharge or neurologic outcome. Because other studies have indicated adverse effects, including increased myocardial oxygen consumption during resuscitation and worsened postarrest myocardial dysfunction, high-dose epinephrine is no longer recommended.
Glucose	1. Hypoglycemia 2. Altered mental status (empirical) 3. With insulin, for hyperkalemia	0.5–1 g/kg IV/IO. Continuous infusion may be necessary.	2–4 mL/kg $D_{10}W$, 1–2 mL/kg $D_{25}W$.
Naloxone	1. Opioid overdose 2. Altered mental status (empirical)	0.1 mg/kg IV/IO/ET; maximum single dose, 2 mg. May repeat as necessary.	Side effects are few. A dose of 2 mg may be given in children ≥ 5 years or > 20 kg. Repeat as necessary, or give as constant infusion in opioid overdoses.

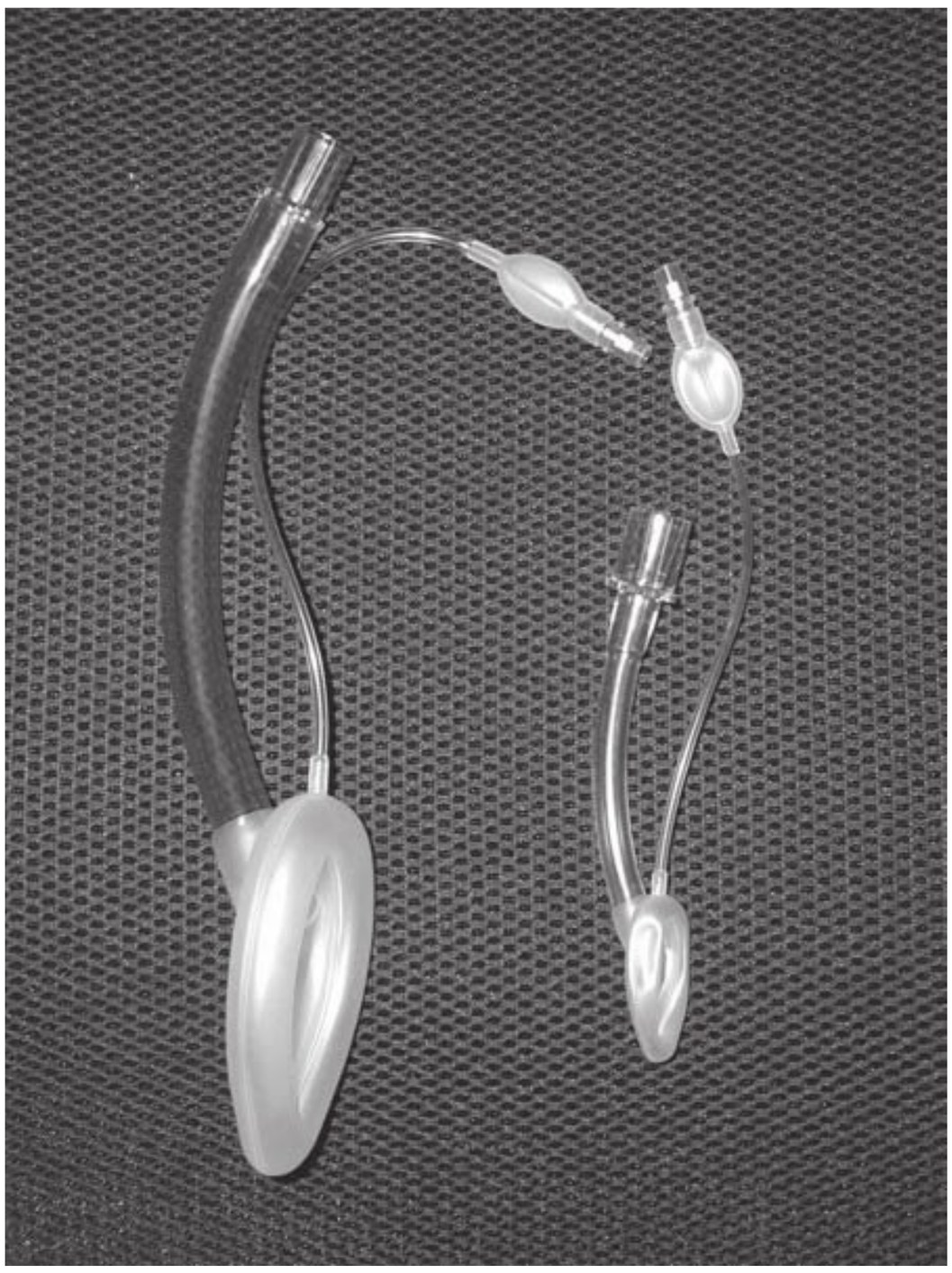
D_5W would be 10 mL/kg; $D_{50}W$ would be 1 mL/kg; $D_{10}W/D_{25}W$, 10%/25% glucose in water; ET, endotracheally; IO, intraosseously; IV, intravenously; SC, subcutaneously. $D_{50}W$ is not recommended PIV and use caution with D_{25}. D_{10} is preferred for neonates (newborn –1 month of age).

possibly under tension. To evacuate a tension pneumothorax, insert a large-bore catheter-over-needle assembly attached to a syringe through the second intercostal space in the midclavicular line into the pleural cavity and withdraw air. If a pneumothorax or hemothorax is present, place a chest tube in the fourth or fifth intercostal space in the anterior axillary line. Connect to water seal. Insertion should be over the rib to avoid the neurovascular bundle that runs below the rib margin. Open pneumothoraces can be treated temporarily by taping petrolatum-impregnated gauze on three sides over the wound, creating a flap valve.

A child with a depressed level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Scale [GCS] score < 9), a need for prolonged ventilation, severe head trauma, or an impending operative intervention requires endotracheal intubation after bag-mask preoxygenation. Orotracheal intubation is the route of choice and is possible without cervical spine manipulation. Nasotracheal intubation may be possible in children 12 years of age or older who have spontaneous respirations, if not contraindicated by midfacial injury.

Supraglottic devices, such as the laryngeal mask airway (LMA), are being used with increasing frequency, in both the prehospital and hospital settings. The device consists of a flexible tube attached to an inflatable rubber mask (Figure 12–8). The LMA is inserted blindly into the hypopharynx and is seated over the larynx, occluding the esophagus. Advantages to its use include ease of insertion, lower potential for airway trauma, and higher success rates. Patients remain

http://obgynebooks.com



▲**Figure 12–8.** Laryngeal mask airways of various sizes.

at higher risk for aspiration with LMA use compared with orotracheal intubation; therefore, the LMA should not be used for prolonged, definitive airway management. Rarely, if tracheal intubation cannot be accomplished, particularly in the setting of massive facial trauma, cricothyroidotomy may be necessary. Needle cricothyroidotomy using a large-bore catheter through the cricothyroid membrane is the procedure of choice in patients younger than 12 years.

Circulation

Evaluation for ongoing external or internal hemorrhage is important in the trauma evaluation. Large-bore IV access should be obtained early during the assessment, preferably at two sites. If peripheral access is not readily available, a central line, cutdown, or IO line is established. Determine hematocrit and urinalysis in all patients. Blood type and cross-match should be obtained in the hypotensive child unresponsive to isotonic fluid boluses or with known hemorrhage. Consider coagulation studies, chemistry panel, liver transaminases, amylase, and toxicologic screening as clinically indicated.

External hemorrhage can be controlled by direct pressure. To avoid damage to adjacent neurovascular structures, avoid placing hemostats on vessels, except in the scalp. Determination of the site of internal hemorrhage can be challenging. Sites include the chest, abdomen, retroperitoneum, pelvis, and thighs. Bleeding into the intracranial vault rarely causes shock in children except in infants. Evaluation by an experienced clinician with adjunctive computed tomography (CT) or ultrasound will localize the site of internal bleeding.

Suspect cardiac tamponade after penetrating or blunt injuries to the chest if shock, pulseless electrical activity, narrowed pulse pressure, distended neck veins, hepatomegaly, or muffled heart sounds are present. Ultrasound may be diagnostic if readily available. Diagnose and treat with pericardiocentesis and rapid volume infusion.

Trauma ultrasonography, or the FAST (focused assessment with sonography for trauma), is routinely used in the adult trauma population. The purpose of the four-view examination (Morison pouch, splenorenal pouch, pelvic retrovesical space, and subcostal view of the heart) is to detect free fluid or blood in dependent spaces. In adults, such detection indicates clinically significant injury likely to require surgery. Accuracy and indications in children are much less clear. Solid-organ injuries are more frequently missed and much of the pediatric trauma management is nonoperative. As a result, detection of free fluid by ultrasound in children is less likely to lead to surgery or result in a change in management.

Treat signs of poor perfusion vigorously: A tachycardic child with a capillary refill time of 3 seconds, or other evidence of diminished perfusion, is in shock and is sustaining vital organ insults. Recall that hypotension is a late finding. Volume replacement is accomplished initially by rapid infusion of normal saline or lactated Ringer solution at 20 mL/kg of body weight. If perfusion does not normalize after two crystalloid bolus infusions, 10 mL/kg of packed red blood cells is infused. Rapid reassessment must follow each bolus. If clinical signs of perfusion have not normalized, repeat the bolus. Lack of response or later or recurring signs of hypovolemia suggest the need for blood transfusion and possible surgical exploration.

A common problem is the brain-injured child who is at risk for intracranial hypertension and who is also hypovolemic. In such cases, circulating volume must be restored to ensure adequate cerebral perfusion; therefore, fluid replacement is required until perfusion normalizes. Thereafter provide maintenance fluids with careful serial reassessments. Do not restrict fluids for children with head injuries.

Disability-Neurologic Deficit

Assess pupillary size and reaction to light and the level of consciousness. The level of consciousness can be reproducibly characterized by the AVPU (alert, voice, pain, unresponsive) system (Table 12–4). Pediatric GCS assessments can be done as part of the secondary survey (Table 12–5).

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 12–4. AVPU system for evaluation of level of consciousness.

A Alert
V Responsive to Voice
P Responsive to Pain
U Unresponsive

Exposure & Environment

Significant injuries can be missed unless the child is completely undressed and examined fully, front and back. Any patient transported on a backboard should be removed as soon as possible, as pressure sores may develop on the buttocks and heels of an immobilized patient within hours.

Because of their high ratio of surface area to body mass, infants and children cool rapidly. Hypothermia compromises outcome except with isolated head injuries; therefore, continuously monitor the body temperature and use warming techniques as necessary. Hyperthermia can adversely affect outcomes in children with acute brain injuries, so maintain normal body temperatures.

Table 12–5. Glasgow Coma Scale.[a]

Eye-opening response	
Spontaneous	4
To speech	3
To pain	2
None	1
Verbal response: Child (Infant modification)[b]	
Oriented (Coos, babbles)	5
Confused conversation (Irritable cry, consolable)	4
Inappropriate words (Cries to pain)	3
Incomprehensible sounds (Moans to pain)	2
None	1
Best upper limb motor response: Child (Infant modification)[b]	
Obeys commands (Normal movements)	6
Localizes pain (Withdraws to touch)	5
Withdraws to pain	4
Flexion to pain	3
Extension to pain	2
None	1

[a]The appropriate number from each section is added to total between 3 and 15. A score less than 8 usually indicates CNS depression requiring positive-pressure ventilation.
[b]If no modification is listed, the same response applies for both infants and children.

Monitoring

Cardiopulmonary monitors, pulse oximetry, and end-tidal CO_2 monitors should be put in place immediately. At the completion of the primary survey, additional "tubes" may be needed to be placed. See Table 12–1 for age/weight-appropriate equipment sizes.

A. Nasogastric or Orogastric Tube

Children's stomachs should be assumed to be full. Gastric distention from positive-pressure ventilation increases the chance of vomiting and aspiration. The nasogastric route should be avoided in patients with significant midface trauma.

B. Urinary Catheter

An indwelling urinary bladder catheter should be placed to monitor urine output. Contraindications are based on the risk of urethral transection; signs include blood at the meatus or in the scrotum or a displaced prostate detected on rectal examination. Urine should be tested for blood. After the initial flow of urine with catheter placement, the urine output should exceed 1 mL/kg/h.

SECONDARY SURVEY

After the Primary Survey and resuscitation phase, a focused history and a head-to-toe examination should be performed to reveal all injuries and determine priorities for definitive care.

History

Obtain a rapid, focused history from the patient (if possible), available family members or prehospital personnel. The AMPLE mnemonic is frequently used:

- A—Allergies
- M—Medications
- P—Past medical history/pregnancy
- L—Last meal
- E—Events/environment leading to the injury

Physical Examination

Skin

Search for lacerations, hematomas, burns, swelling, and abrasions. Remove foreign material and cleanse as necessary. Cutaneous findings may indicate underlying pathology (eg, a flank hematoma overlying a renal contusion), although

http://obgynebooks.com

surface signs may be absent even with significant internal injury. Make certain that the child's tetanus immunization status is current. Consider tetanus immune globulin for incompletely immunized children.

Head

Check for hemotympanum and for clear or bloody cerebrospinal fluid leak from the nares. Battle sign (hematoma over the mastoid) and raccoon eyes are late signs of basilar skull fracture. Explore wounds, evaluating for foreign bodies and defects in galea or skull. CT scan of the head is an integral part of evaluation for altered level of consciousness, posttraumatic seizure, or focal neurologic findings (see section Head Injury, later). Pneumococcal vaccine may be considered for basilar skull fractures.

Spine

Cervical spine injury must be excluded in all children. This can be done clinically in children older than 4 or 5 years with normal neurologic findings on examination who are able to deny midline neck pain or midline tenderness on palpation of the neck and who have no other painful distracting injuries that might obscure the pain of a cervical spine injury. If radiographs are indicated, a cross-table lateral neck view is obtained initially followed by anteroposterior, odontoid, and, in some cases, oblique views. Normal studies do not exclude significant injury, either bony or ligamentous, or involving the spinal cord itself. Therefore, an obtunded child should be maintained in cervical spine immobilization until the child has awakened and an appropriate neurologic examination can be performed. The entire thoracolumbar spine must be palpated and areas of pain or tenderness examined by radiography.

Chest

Children may sustain significant internal injury without outward signs of trauma. Pneumothoraces are detected and decompressed during the primary survey. Hemothoraces can occur with rib fractures or with injury to intercostal vessels, large pulmonary vessels, or lung parenchyma. Tracheobronchial disruption is suggested by large continued air leak despite chest tube decompression. Myocardial contusions and aortic injuries are unusual in children.

Abdomen

Blunt abdominal injury is common in multisystem injuries. Significant injury may exist without cutaneous signs or instability of vital signs. Abdominal pain and tenderness coupled with a linear contusion across the abdomen ("seat belt sign") increases the risk of intra-abdominal injury threefold. Tenderness, guarding, distention, diminished or absent bowel sounds, or poor perfusion mandate immediate evaluation by a pediatric trauma surgeon. Injury to solid viscera frequently can be managed nonoperatively in stable patients; however, intestinal perforation or hypotension necessitates operative treatment. Serial examinations, ultrasound, and CT scan provide diagnostic help. Intra-abdominal injury is highly likely if the AST is less than 200 U/L or the ALT greater than 125 U/L; however, elevated levels that are below these thresholds do not exclude significant injury if a significant mechanism has occurred. When measured serially, a hematocrit of less than 30% also may suggest intra-abdominal injury in blunt trauma patients. Coagulation studies are rarely beneficial if no concomitant head injury is present. Obtaining a serum amylase immediately post-injury is controversial, as there is variable correlation between elevated levels and pancreatic injury.

Pelvis

Pelvic fractures are classically manifested by pain, crepitus, and abnormal motion. Pelvic fracture is a relative contraindication to urethral catheter insertion. Many providers perform a rectal examination, noting tone, tenderness, and in boys, prostate position. If this is done, stool should be tested for blood.

Genitourinary System

If urethral transection is suspected, perform a retrograde urethrogram before catheter placement. Diagnostic imaging of the child with hematuria less than 50 red blood cells per high-power (hpf) field often includes CT scan or occasionally, IV urograms. Management of kidney injury is largely nonoperative except for renal pedicle injuries.

Extremities

Long bone fractures are common but rarely life threatening. Test for pulses, perfusion, and sensation. Neurovascular compromise requires immediate orthopedic consultation. Treatment of open fractures includes antibiotics, tetanus prophylaxis, and orthopedic consultation.

Central Nervous System

Most deaths in children with multisystem trauma are from head injuries, so optimal neurointensive care is important. Significant injuries include diffuse axonal injury; cerebral edema; subdural, subarachnoid, and epidural hematomas; and parenchymal hemorrhages. Spinal cord injury occurs less commonly. Level of consciousness by the AVPU system (see Table 12–4) or GCS (see Table 12–5) should be assessed serially. A full sensorimotor examination should be performed. Deficits require immediate neurosurgical consultation and should be considered for a patient with a GCS less than 12. Extensor or flexor posturing represents intracranial

http://obgynebooks.com

hypertension until proven otherwise. If accompanied by a fixed, dilated pupil, such posturing indicates that a herniation syndrome is present, and mannitol or 3% hypertonic saline should be given if perfusion is normal. Treatment goals include aggressively treating hypotension to optimize cerebral perfusion, providing supplemental oxygen to keep saturations above 90%, achieving eucapnia (end-tidal CO_2 35–40 mm Hg), avoiding hyperthermia, and minimizing painful stimuli. Early rapid sequence intubation, sedation, and paralysis should be considered. Mild prophylactic hyperventilation is no longer recommended, although brief periods of hyperventilation are still indicated in the setting of acute herniation. Seizure activity warrants exclusion of significant intracranial injury. In the trauma setting, seizures are frequently treated with fosphenytoin or levetiracetam. The use of high-dose corticosteroids for suspected spinal cord injury has not been prospectively evaluated in children and is not considered standard of care. Corticosteroids are not indicated for head trauma.

HEAD INJURY

Closed-head injuries range in severity from minor asymptomatic trauma without sequelae to fatal injuries. Even after minor closed-head injury, long-term disability and neuropsychiatric sequelae can occur.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is the most common injury in children.
- Rapid acceleration-deceleration forces (eg, the shaken infant) as well as direct trauma to the head can result in brain injury.
- Rapid assessment can be made by evaluating mental status with the GCS score and assessing pupillary light response.
- All head injuries require a screening evaluation with symptom inventory and complete neurologic examination.

Prevention

Wearing helmets while riding wheeled recreational devices, playing contact sports, and participating in snowsports is a simple strategy in preventing head injuries. Over 50% of children fail to wear helmets when riding bicycles; rates are lower with other wheeled devices. Adolescents are less likely to use protective equipment and warrant special attention when discussing helmet use. All-terrain vehicle (ATV)–related hospitalizations increased 150% among children from 1997 to 2006 and continue to rise. Forty percent of children ride motorized vehicle without helmets and 60% without adult supervision; less than 5% receive safety instruction. Smaller body size and weight likely contribute to an inability to control these vehicles safely. More stringent helmet use while playing contact sports and return to play recommendations are now in place in child and high school sports programs. Toppled televisions, dressers and other unsecured furniture can also result in mild to severe head injuries in young children; anticipatory guidance regarding properly securing furniture should be provided to parents.

Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Head injury symptoms are nonspecific and may include headache, dizziness, nausea/vomiting, disorientation, amnesia, slowed thinking, and perseveration. Loss of consciousness is not necessary to diagnose a concussion (see Chapter 27 for more on concussion). Worsening symptoms in the first 24 hours may indicate more severe TBI. Obtain vital signs and assess the child's level of consciousness by the AVPU system (see Table 12–4) or GCS (see Table 12–5), noting irritability or lethargy and pupillary equality, size, and light reaction. Perform a physical examination, including a detailed neurologic examination, being mindful of the mechanism of injury. Cerebrospinal fluid or blood from the ears or nose, hemotympanum, or the later appearance of periorbital hematomas (raccoon eyes) or Battle sign imply a basilar skull fracture. Evaluate for associated injuries, paying special attention to the cervical spine. Consider child abuse; injuries observed should be consistent with the history, the child's developmental, and the injury mechanism.

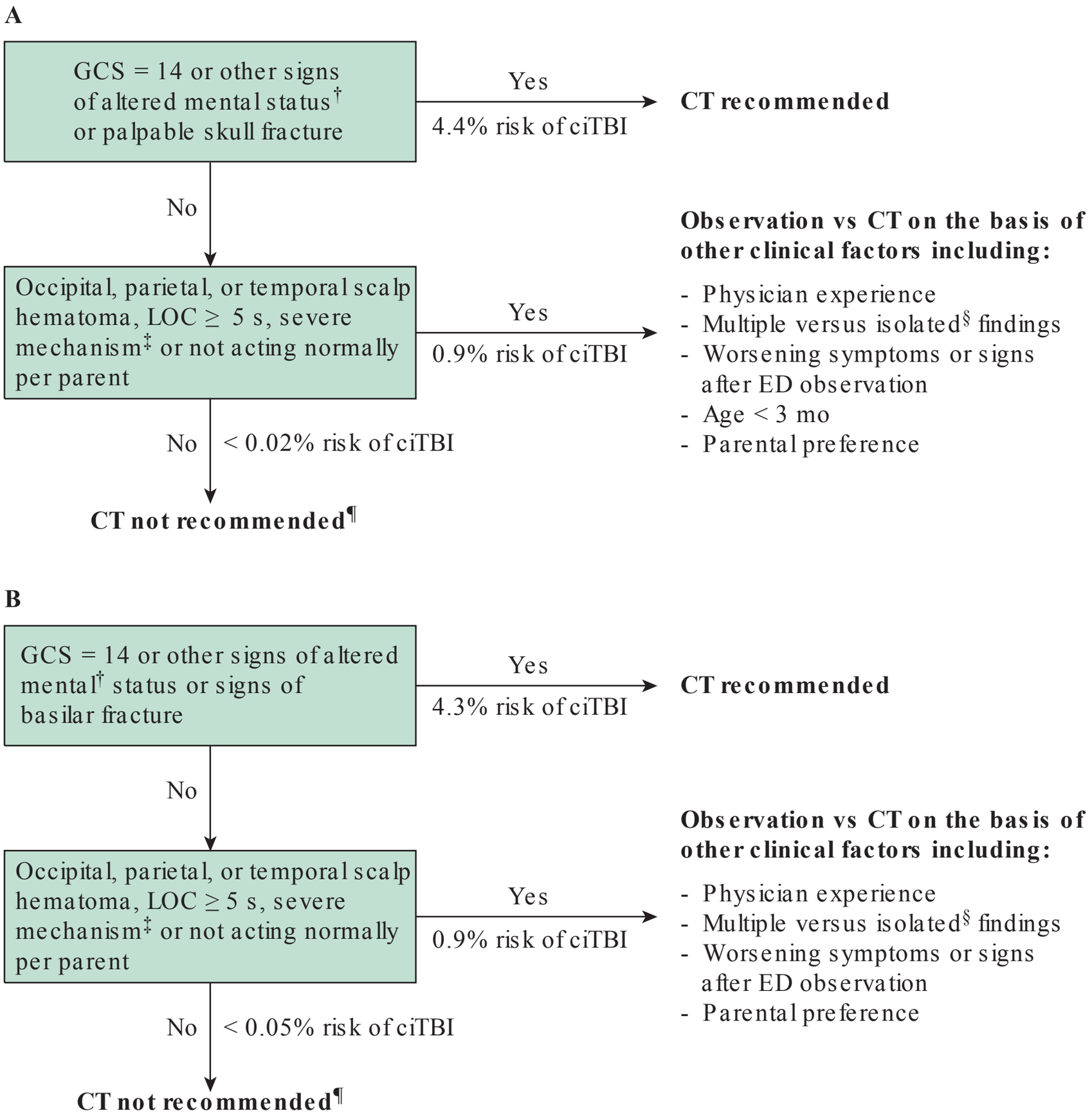
B. Imaging Studies

CT may be indicated. A 2009 multicenter investigation of head-injured patients presenting to the ED derived and validated a decision rule for identifying those children at very low risk of clinically important traumatic brain injuries (Figure 12–9). Observation may be appropriate management and reduces the use of CT. Plain films are not generally indicated. In infants, a normal neurologic examination does not exclude significant intracranial hemorrhage. Consider imaging if large scalp hematomas or concerns of nonaccidental trauma are present in younger children.

Differential Diagnosis

CNS infection, toxicological ingestions, or other medical causes of altered mental status may present similarly to head injuries which often have no external signs of injury. In young infants when no history is available, one must also consider sepsis and inborn errors of metabolism.

http://obgynebooks.com



ciTBI = clinically important traumatic brain injury. GCS = Glasgow Coma Scale. LOC = loss of consciousness.
†Other signs of altered mental status: agitation, somnolence repetitive questioning, or slow response to verbal communication.
‡Severe mechanism of injury: motor vehicle crash with patient ejection, death of another passenger, or rollover; pedestrian or bicyclist without helmet struck by motorized vehicle; falls of more than 3 ft (or more than 5 ft for panel B); or head struck by a high-impact object.
§Patients with certain isolated findings (ie, with no other findings suggestive of traumatic brain injury), such as isolated LOC, isolated headache, isolated vomiting, and certain type of isolated scalp hematomas in infants older than 3 mo, have a risk of ciTBI substantially lower than 1%.
¶Risk of ciTBI exceedingly low, generally lower than risk of CT-induced malignancies. Therefore, CT scans are not indicated for most patients in this group.

Adapted from The Lancet 374, Kuppermann et al, Identification of children at very low risk of clinically-important brain injuries after head trauma: a prospective cohort study. pp 1160-1170. © 2009 with permission from Elsevier.

▲**Figure 12–9.** Suggested CT algorithm for children younger than 2 years (**A**) and for those aged 2 years and older (**B**) with GCS scores 14–15 after head trauma. (Adapted with permission from Kuppermann N, Holmes JF, Dayan PS, et al: Identification of children at very low risk of clinically-important brain injuries after head trauma: a prospective cohort study. Lancet. 2009 Oct 3;374(9696):1160-1170.)

http://obgynebooks.com

» Complications

Central Nervous System Infection

Open-head injuries (fractures with overlying lacerations) pose an infection risk due to direct contamination. Basilar skull fractures that involve the cribriform plate or middle ear cavity may allow a portal of entry for Streptococcus pneumoniae. Pneumococcal vaccination is considered for such cases.

Acute Intracranial Hypertension

Close observation will detect early signs and symptoms of elevated increased ICP. Early recognition is essential to avoid disastrous outcomes. Symptoms include altered mental status, headache, vision changes, vomiting, gait difficulties, and pupillary abnormalities. Papilledema is a cardinal sign of increased ICP. Other signs may include stiff neck, cranial nerve palsies, and hemiparesis. Cushing triad (bradycardia, hypertension, and irregular respirations) is a late and ominous finding. Consider CT scan before lumbar puncture if there is concern for elevated ICP because of the risk of herniation. Lumbar puncture should be deferred in the unstable patient.

Treatment—Therapy for elevated ICP must be swift and aggressive. Maintenance of adequate oxygenation, ventilation, and perfusion is paramount. Rapid sequence intubation is often necessary to protect the airway using a sedative and paralytic to decrease the ICP elevation accompanying intubation. Lidocaine is a controversial adjunct pretreatment medication (administered 2–3 minutes prior to attempt) during RSI and is thought to blunt increases in ICP during intubation by suppressing cough and gag reflexes and protect cerebral perfusion. Avoid hypoperfusion and hypoxemia, as both are associated with increased risk of morbidity and mortality. Hyperventilation (goal PCO_2 30–35 mm Hg) is reserved for acute herniation; otherwise, maintain PCO_2 between 35 and 40 mm Hg. Mannitol (0.5–1 g/kg IV), an osmotic diuretic, will reduce brain water during acute herniation and hypertonic saline (3%; 4–6 mL/kg bolus doses or 1–2 mL/kg/h infusion) also may be used. Adjunctive measures to decreased ICP include elevating the head of the bed 30 degrees, maintaining the head in a midline position and treating hyperpyrexia (fever) and pain. Obtain immediate neurosurgical consultation. Further details about management of intracranial hypertension (cerebral edema) are presented in Chapter 14.

» Prognosis

Children with concussion should not return to sports on the day of injury. Return to sport usually begins when symptom-free at rest and during exercise without medication use, followed by a graduated return-to-play protocol. Most children recover fully within 1–2 weeks. Acute symptoms seen in the ED do not correlate with long-term outcome, and therefore it is crucial for all patients to have follow-up management by their primary physician. Persistent symptoms indicate the need for rehabilitation and/or neuropsychological referral.

The prognosis for children with moderate to severe injuries depends on many factors including severity of initial injury, presence of hypoxia or ischemia, development and subsequent management of intracranial hypertension, and associated injuries.

Benson BW et al: What are the most effective risk-reduction strategies in sport concussion? Br J Sports Med 2013;47(5)321–326 [PMID: 23479492].

Dellinger AM, Kresnow MJ: Bicycle helmet use among children in the United States: the effects of legislation, personal and household factors. J Safety Res 2010;41(4):375–380 [PMID: 20846554].

Grubenhoff JA et al: Acute concussion symptom severity and delayed symptom resolution. Pediatrics 2014;134(1):54–62 [PMID: 24958583].

Kuppermann N et al: Identification of children at very low risk of clinically-important brain injuries after head trauma: a prospective cohort study. Lancet 2009;374(9696):1160–1170 [PMID: 19758692].

Mattei TA et al: Definition and measurement of rider-intrinsic physical attributes influencing all-terrain vehicle safety. Neurosurg Focus 2011;31(5):E6 [PMID: 22044105].

McBride AS et al: Pediatric all-terrain vehicle injuries, does legislation make a dent? Pediatr Emerg Care 2011;27:97–101 [PMID: 2122816].

McCrory P et al: Consensus statement on concussion in sport: the 4th International Conference on Concussion in Sport held in Zurich, November 2012. Br J Sports Med 2013;47:250–258 [PMID: 23855362].

Nigrovic LE et al: The effect of observation on cranial computed tomography utilization for children after blunt head trauma. Pediatrics 2011;127(6):1067–1073 [PMID: 21555498].

Page JL, Macpherson AK, Middaugh-Bonney T, Tator CH: Prevalence of helmet use by users of bicycles, push scooters, inline skates and skateboards in Toronto and the surrounding area in the absence of comprehensive legislation: an observational study. Inj Prev 2012;18(2)94–97 [PMID: 21873306].

Zelicof-Paul A et al: Controversies in rapid sequence intubation in children. Curr Opin Pediatr 2005:17(3):355 [PMID: 15891426].

BURNS

THERMAL BURNS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Burn patterns can distinguish accidental burns from inflicted burns.
- Burns are categorized into three classes based on skin layer involved: superficial, partial thickness, and full thickness
- Burns of the hands, feet, face, eyes, ears, and perineum are always considered to be major burns.

http://obgynebooks.com

Burns are a common cause of accidental death and disfigurement in children. Common causes include hot water or food, appliances, flames, grills, vehicle-related burns, and curling irons. Burns occur commonly in toddlers—in boys more frequently than in girls. The association with child abuse and the preventable nature of burns constitute an area of major concern in pediatrics.

» Prevention

Hot liquids should be placed as far as possible from counter edges. Water heater thermostats should be turned to less than 120°F (49°C). Irons and electrical cords should be kept out of reach of children. Barriers around fireplaces are crucial. Infant and young children should wear protective clothing including hats when outdoors. Infant approved sunscreen should be applied to children 6 months and older, and also in younger infants in long periods of sun exposure outdoors.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Superficial-thickness burns are painful, dry, red, and hypersensitive. Sunburn is an example. Partial-thickness burns are subgrouped as superficial or deep, depending on appearance. Superficial partial-thickness burns are red and often blister. Deep partial-thickness burns are pale, edematous, blanch with pressure, and they display decreased sensitivity to pain. Full-thickness burns affect all epidermal and dermal elements. A full-thickness wound is white or black, dry, depressed, leathery in appearance, and insensate. Deep full-thickness burns are the most severe, extending through all layers of skin as well as into the underlying fascia, muscle, and possibly bone. Singing of nasal or facial hair, carbonaceous material in the nose and mouth, and stridor indicate inhalational burns and may herald critical airway obstruction. Up to 25% of burns in children may be due to child physical abuse. Burn patterns help distinguish inflicted from accidental causes. If the burn pattern does not fit the mechanism, consider child abuse.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory evaluation is rarely indicated. With extensive partial- and full-thickness burns, baseline complete blood cell count (CBC), basic metabolic panel, and creatine kinase are helpful for tracking infectious or renal complications. Consider carbon monoxide poisoning after inhalational injury: obtain an arterial blood gas and carboxyhemoglobin levels.

C. Imaging Studies

Imaging studies are rarely indicated. Neck x-rays should not delay intubation when inhalational injury is suspected.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of burns is limited when a history is provided. In the preverbal child when no history is available, the primary alternate consideration is cellulitis.

» Complications

Superficial- and superficial partial-thickness burns typically heal well. Deep partial- and full-thickness burns are at risk of scarring. Loss of barrier function predisposes to infection. Damage to deeper tissues in full-thickness burns may result in loss of function, contractures, and in the case of circumferential burns, compartment syndrome. Renal failure secondary to myoglobinuria from rhabdomyolysis is a concern.

» Treatment

Burn extent can be classified as major or minor. Minor burns are less than 10% of the body surface area (BSA) for partial-thickness burns, or less than 2% for full-thickness burns. **Superficial thickness burns are not counted when assessing % BSA**. Partial- or full-thickness burns of the hands, feet, face, eyes, ears, and perineum are considered major.

A. Superficial- and Partial-Thickness Burns

These burns generally can be treated in the outpatient setting. Wounds with a potential to cause disfigurement or functional impairment—especially wounds of the face, hands, feet, digits, or perineum—should be referred promptly to a burn surgeon. Analgesia is paramount. After parenteral narcotic administration, initial treatment of partial-thickness burns with blisters consists of saline irrigation followed by application of antibiotic ointment and a nonadherent dressing (eg, petroleum gauze). Digits should be individually dressed to prevent adhesions. Because of the pain associated with aggressive debridement and the ability to provide an infectious barrier, smaller blisters may be left intact under the dressing. Larger bullae may either be drained or left in place. Protect the wound with a bulky dressing, reexamine within 48 hours and serially thereafter. Treatment at home with cool compresses and hydrocodone or oxycodone is preferred.

B. Full-Thickness, Deep or Extensive Partial-Thickness, and Subdermal Burns

Major burns require particular attention to the ABCs of trauma management. Early establishment of an artificial airway is critical with oral or nasal burns because of their association with inhalation injuries and critical airway

http://obgynebooks.com

obstruction. If singing of the oro or nasopharynx is noted on initial exam, immediate intubation is recommended.

Perform a primary survey (see earlier discussion). Consider toxicity from carbon monoxide, cyanide, or other combustion products. Place a nasogastric tube and bladder catheter. The secondary survey identifies associated injuries, including those suggestive of abuse.

Fluid losses can be substantial. Initial fluid resuscitation should restore adequate circulating volume. Subsequent fluid administration must account for increased losses. Fluid needs are based on weight and percentage of BSA with partial- and full-thickness burns. Figure 12–10 shows percentages of BSA by region in infants and children. The Parkland formula for fluid therapy is 4 mL/kg/% BSA burned for the first 24 hours, with half administered in the first 8 hours, in addition to maintenance rates. Use of burn tables improves calculation of appropriate fluids. Goal urine output is 1–2 mL/kg/h.

Children with burns greater than 10% BSA in a circumferential pattern, who are suspicious for abuse, or with burns associated with inhalational injury, explosions or fractures, should be admitted. Additionally, admission is warranted for adequate pain control in a patient requiring parenteral analgesia. Burns greater than 20% BSA or full-thickness burns greater than 2% BSA should be admitted to a children's hospital or burn center. Children with subdermal burns require immediate hospitalization at a burn center under the care of a burn specialist.

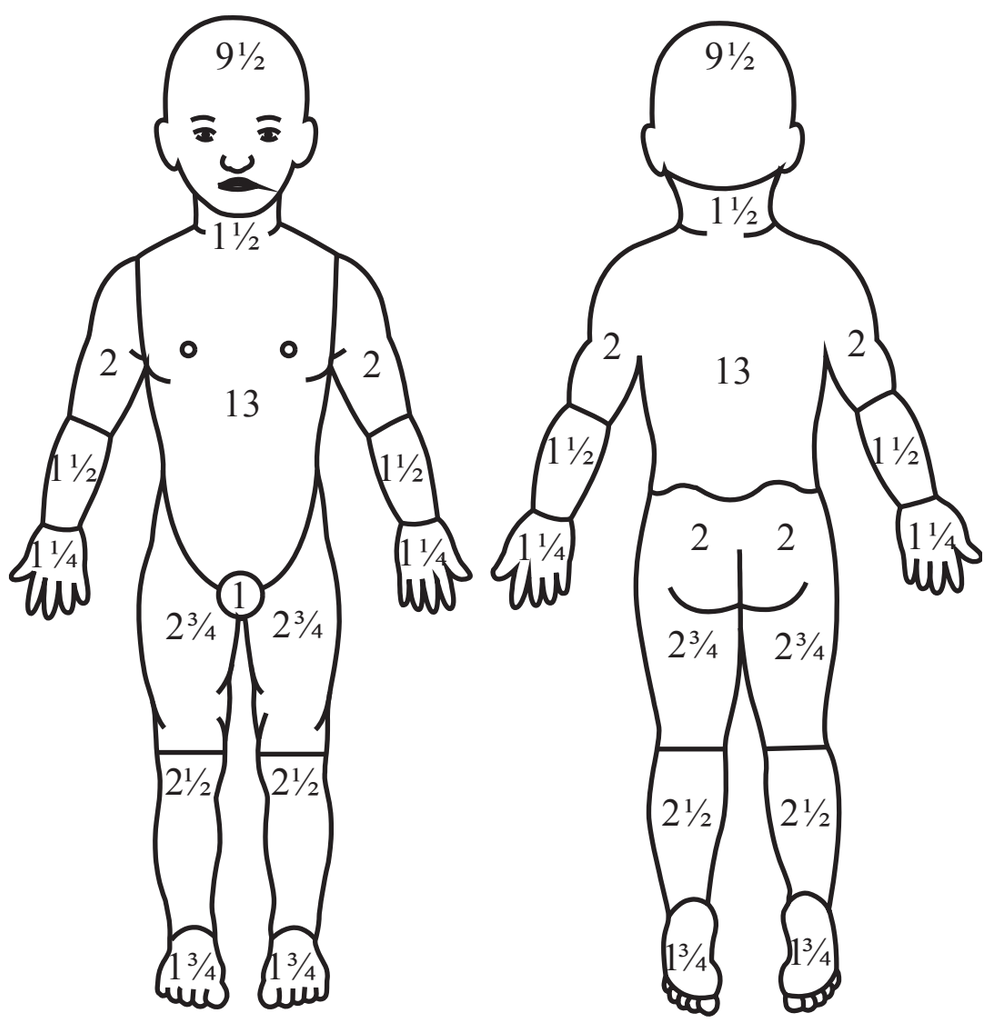
» Prognosis

Outcome depends on many factors. Healing occurs with minimal damage to epidermis in superficial burns. In contrast, full-thickness burns will be hard, uneven, and fibrotic unless skin grafting is provided. In general, the greater the surface area and depth of burn injury, the greater the risk of long-term morbidity and mortality.

ELECTRICAL BURNS

Brief contact with a high-voltage source results in a contact burn and is treated accordingly. Infants and toddlers may bite electric cords, resulting in burns to the commissure of the lips. A late complication is labial artery hemorrhage. Children electrocuted with household current who are awake and alert at the time of medical evaluation are unlikely to have significant injury. An electrocardiogram (ECG) is not necessary. If current passes through the body, the pattern of the injury depends on the path of the current. Exposure to high-voltage current often induces a "locking-on" effect due to alternating current causing tetany. Extensive nerve and muscle injury, fractures, and cardiac arrhythmias in addition to dermal burns are possible. Lightning strikes are more likely to induce asystole and blast trauma. The brevity of exposure is unlikely to cause significant burns.

Lindford AJ, Lim P, Klass B, Mackey S, Dheansa BS, Gilbert PM: Resuscitation tables: a useful tool in calculating pre-burns unit fluid requirements. Emerg Med J 2009;26(4):245–249 [PMID: 19307382].



Variations From Adults Distribution in Infants and Children (in Percent).

	Newborn	1 Year	5 Years	10 Years
Head	19	17	13	11
Both thighs	11	13	16	17
Both lower legs	10	10	11	12
Neck	2			
Anterior trunk	13			
Posterior trunk	13			
Both upper arms	8			
Both lower arms	6			
Both hands	5			
Both buttocks	6			
Both feet	7			
Genitalia	1			
	100			

These percentages remain constant at all ages

▲**Figure 12–10.** Lund and Browder modification of Berkow scale for estimating extent of burns. (The table under the illustration is compiled from Berkow data.)

http://obgynebooks.com

DISORDERS DUE TO EXTREMES OF ENVIRONMENT

HEAT-RELATED ILLNESSES & HEAT STROKE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Heat illness is a spectrum ranging from heat cramps to life-threatening heat stroke.
- A high index of suspicion is required to make the diagnosis given the lack of specific symptoms and a usually normal or only slightly elevated temperature.

Prevention

Avoid exposure to extremes of temperature for extended periods. Plan athletic activities for early morning or late afternoon and evening. Acclimatization, adequate water, shade, and rest periods can prevent heat-related illness.

Clinical Findings

Heat cramps are brief, severe cramps of skeletal or abdominal muscles following exertion. Core body temperature is normal or slightly elevated. Electrolyte disturbance is rare and mild: laboratory evaluation is not indicated.

Heat exhaustion includes multiple, vague constitutional symptoms following heat exposure. Patients continue to sweat and have varying degrees of sodium and water depletion. Core temperature should be monitored frequently but is often normal or slightly increased. Symptoms and signs include weakness, fatigue, headache, disorientation, pallor, thirst, nausea with or without vomiting, and occasionally muscle cramps without CNS dysfunction. Shock may be present.

Heat stroke is a life-threatening failure of thermoregulation. Diagnosis is based on a rectal temperature above 40.6°C with associated neurologic dysfunction in a patient with an exposure history. Lack of sweating is **not** a necessary criterion. Symptoms are similar to those of heat exhaustion, but severe CNS dysfunction is a hallmark. Patients may be incoherent or combative. In severe cases, vomiting, shivering, coma, seizures, nuchal rigidity, and posturing may be present. Cardiac output may be high, low, or normal. Cellular hypoxia, enzyme dysfunction, and disrupted cell membranes lead to global end-organ derangements and patients may develop rhabdomyolysis, myocardial necrosis, electrolyte abnormalities, acute tubular necrosis and renal failure, hepatic degeneration, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

Differential Diagnosis

Viral gastroenteritis, sepsis and other infectious processes, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, malignant hyperthermia, and anticholinergic poisoning may present similarly.

Treatment

Removal from the offending environment and removal of clothing are the first steps in managing any heat-related illness. **Heat cramps** typically respond to rest and rehydration with electrolyte solutions. Severe cramping and **heat exhaustion** should prompt evaluation of electrolytes to guide IV fluid rehydration.

Heat Stroke Management

1. Address the ABCs and administer 100% oxygen.
2. Place monitors, rectal temperature probe, Foley catheter and nasogastric tube
3. Administer IV fluids: isotonic crystalloid for hypotension; cooled fluids are acceptable. Consider central venous pressure monitoring. Consider providing diazepam for patient comfort.
4. Once resuscitative efforts have begun, initiate active cooling: fanning/misting with cool water; ice application at neck, groin, and axillae. Discontinue active cooling measures once core temperature reaches 39°C to prevent shivering.
5. Order laboratory tests: CBC; electrolytes; glucose; creatinine; prothrombin time and partial thromboplastin time; creatine kinase; liver function tests; arterial blood gases; urinalysis; and serum calcium, magnesium, and phosphate.
6. Admit to the pediatric intensive care unit.

Prognosis

Full recovery is the rule for heat cramps and heat exhaustion. Patients with heat stroke are at risk of end-organ damage due to volume depletion, rhabdomyolysis, direct renal injury, hepatocellular injury, and DIC; however, even in this critically ill population, some children recover fully with intensive management.

HYPOTHERMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Hypothermia is defined as a core temperature of less than 35°C.
- Children are at increased risk due to a greater BSA-weight ratio.
- In children, hypothermia is most commonly associated with water submersion.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Prevention

Given the high association with submersion injuries, children should be carefully monitored around water. Proper use of life vests is critical.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Hypothermia is defined as a core temperature of less than 35°C. In an attempt to maintain core temperature, peripheral vasoconstriction leads to cool mottled skin. Shivering increases heat production to two to four times the basal levels. As temperature falls, heart rate slows and mental status declines. Severe cases (< 28°C) mimic death: patients are pale or cyanotic, pupils may be fixed and dilated, muscles are rigid, and there may be no palpable pulses. Heart rates as low as 4–6 beats/min may provide adequate perfusion, due to lowered metabolic needs in severe hypothermia. Besides cold exposure, disorders that cause incidental hypothermia include sepsis, metabolic derangements, ingestions, CNS disorders, and endocrinopathies. Neonates, trauma victims, intoxicated patients, and the chronically disabled are particularly at risk. Because hypothermia may be confused with postmortem changes, death is not pronounced until the patient has been rewarmed and remains unresponsive to resuscitative efforts.

B. Laboratory Findings

Standard evaluation includes CBC, electrolytes, coagulation studies, and glucose and blood gas studies. Coagulopathy, hypoglycemia, and acidosis are common. However, correction of derangements is accomplished by rewarming and resuscitating the patient.

C. Imaging Studies

Submersion is the most common cause of hypothermia. Chest x-ray should be performed to assess for pulmonary edema and/or aspiration. Other radiographic studies should be performed according to the history with special attention to potential head or skeletal trauma.

» Treatment

A. General Supportive Measures

Management of hypothermia is largely supportive. Continuously monitor core body temperature using a low-reading indwelling rectal thermometer. Handle patients gently as the hypothermic myocardium is exquisitely prone to arrhythmias. Ventricular fibrillation may occur spontaneously or as a result of minor handling or invasive procedures. If asystole or ventricular fibrillation is present on the cardiac monitor, perform chest compressions and use standard pediatric advanced life support techniques as indicated. Defibrillation and pharmacologic therapy (eg, epinephrine) are unlikely to be successful until core rewarming has occurred. Hypoglycemia should be corrected. Spontaneous reversion to sinus rhythm at 28–30°C may take place as rewarming proceeds.

B. Rewarming

Remove wet clothing. Rewarming techniques are categorized as passive external, active external, or active core rewarming. Passive rewarming, such as covering with blankets, is appropriate only for mild cases (33–35°C). Active external rewarming methods include warming lights, thermal mattresses or electric warming blanket, and warm bath immersion. Be aware of potential core temperature depression after rewarming has begun when vasodilation allows cooler peripheral blood to be distributed to the core circulation. This phenomenon is called afterdrop.

Active core rewarming techniques supplement active external warming for moderate to severe hypothermia. The techniques include warmed, humidified oxygen, warmed (to 40°C) IV fluids, and warm peritoneal and pleural lavage. Bladder and bowel irrigation are not generally effective because of low surface areas for temperature exchange. ECMO achieves controlled core rewarming, can stabilize volume and electrolyte disturbances, and is maximally effective (Table 12–6).

Table 12–6. Management of hypothermia.

General measures
Remove wet clothing.
Administer warmed and humidified 100% oxygen.
Monitor core temperature, heart and respiratory rates, and blood pressure continuously.
Consider central venous pressure determination for severe hypothermia.
Laboratory studies
Complete blood count and platelets.
Serum electrolytes, glucose, creatinine, amylase.
Prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time.
Arterial blood gases.
Consider toxicology screen.
Treatment
Correct hypoxemia, hypercapnia, pH < 7.2, clotting abnormalities, and glucose and electrolyte disturbances.
Start rewarming techniques: passive, active (core and external), depending on degree of hypothermia.
Replace intravascular volume with warmed intravenous crystalloid infusion at 40°C.
Continue cardiac massage at least until core temperature reaches 30°C, when defibrillation and epinephrine are more likely to be effective.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Prognosis

Recovery of the hypothermic victim is multifactorial. If associated with submersion injury (see next), CNS anoxic injuries and lung injury play a major role. Mortality rates are high and are related to the presence of underlying disorders and injuries. Children with a core temperature as low as 19°C have survived neurologically intact.

Hostler D, Northington WE, Callaway CW: High-dose diazepam facilitates core cooling during cold saline infusion in healthy volunteers. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab 2009;34(4):582–586 [PMID: 19767791].

° SUBMERSION INJURIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- » CNS and pulmonary injuries account for major morbidity.
- » Child may appear well at presentation, but late CNS and pulmonary changes can occur hours later.
- » Minimum observation period is 12–24 hours.

» Prevention

The World Health Organization defines drowning as the process of experiencing respiratory impairment from submersion/immersion in liquid. The terms wet or dry drowning, near-drowning, and others are no longer used; nonfatal drowning describes survivors. Water hazards are ubiquitous; even toilets, buckets, and washing machines pose a threat. Risk factors include epilepsy, alcohol, and lack of supervision. Males predominate in submersion deaths. Prevention strategies include protective fencing around public and private pools, use of life vests, avoiding swimming alone, and adequate supervision. Swim lessons may have a role in a comprehensive prevention strategy, even for children 1–4 years of age.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Depending on the duration of submersion and any protective hypothermia effects, children may appear clinically dead or completely normal. Major morbidity stems from CNS and pulmonary insult. Cough, nasal flaring, grunting, retractions, wheezes or other lung sounds, and cyanosis are common. A child rewarmed to 33°C but who remains apneic and pulse less is unlikely to survive to discharge or will have severe neurologic deficits. Until a determination of brain death can be made, however, aggressive resuscitation should continue in a patient with return of circulation. Cardiovascular changes include myocardial depression and arrhythmias. Children may develop ARDS.

B. Laboratory Findings

Electrolyte alterations are generally negligible. Unless hemolysis occurs, hemoglobin concentrations change only slightly. Blood gas will show hypoxemia and acidosis.

C. Imaging Studies

Chest radiographs may be normal or may show signs of pulmonary edema. CT of the brain is warranted when the patient is comatose or believed to have suffered prolonged asphyxia or blunt head trauma. Consider cervical spine injury in teens where diving or intoxication may be involved.

» Treatment

Care is supportive. Correct hypothermia and treat symptomatically. For children who appear well initially, observe for 12–24 hours for late pulmonary or neurologic compromise. Respiratory distress, an abnormal chest radiograph, abnormal arterial blood gases, or hypoxemia by pulse oximetry require maximal supplemental oxygen, cardiopulmonary monitoring, and frequent reassessment. There is little evidence for use of surfactant following drowning.

» Prognosis

Anoxia from laryngospasm or aspiration leads to irreversible CNS damage after only 4–6 minutes. A child must fall through ice or directly into icy water for cerebral metabolism to be slowed sufficiently by hypothermia to provide protection from anoxia. Survival of the drowning victim depends on the duration of anoxia and the degree of lung injury. Children experiencing brief submersion with effective, high-quality resuscitation are likely to recover without sequelae. Children presenting asystolic are unlikely to survive.

Brenner RA et al: Association between swimming lessons and drowning in childhood: a case-control study. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2009;163(3):203–210 [PMID: 19255386].

Weiss J: American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison prevention: Technical report—prevention of drowning. Pediatrics 2010;126(1):e253–e262 [PMID: 20498167].

http://obgynebooks.com

LACERATIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- The basic objectives of wound management are to stop bleeding, prevent infection, and ensure wound healing that achieves optimal functional and cosmetic outcomes.
- Options for wound closure include staples, sutures, and tissue adhesives.

Lacerations are a common reason to visit an ED. Lacerations can range from minor cuts that require no repair to complex lacerations that may require surgical consultation for adequate repair. The goals of laceration repair are to stop ongoing bleeding, prevent infection, and ensure wound healing that achieves optimal functional and cosmetic outcomes. Technical instruction of laceration repair is beyond the scope of this text as we present the basics of laceration wound care.

Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Lacerations present in a variety of shapes and sizes and occur over all parts of the body. Patients may present immediately after the injury or several days later. Wounds may contain foreign material, involve muscular, vascular, bony, tendon/ligamentous structures, or extend into joint spaces.

Options for wound repair include staples, suture material (both absorbable and nonabsorbable), and tissue adhesives. Tissue adhesives should never be used for highly contaminated wounds (eg, bites).

B. Imaging Studies

Imaging is usually not indicated for simple lacerations; however, plain x-rays may be indicated in certain situations. Lacerations caused by penetrating or crush injury may be associated with fractures. Lacerations may involve joint spaces. Foreign bodies may be present in wounds.

Treatment

Obtain information regarding mechanism and age of the injury. Assess extent of the wound with identification of foreign bodies, neurovascular compromise, tendon/ligament damage, muscle, or joint involvement. Obtain appropriate surgical consultations as needed.

Provide adequate analgesia or anesthesia, using topical or injectable methods prior to wound care. Irrigate the wound using normal saline (tap water is an appropriate alternative) with high pressure (5–8 psi [pounds per square inch]). Debride devitalized tissue, remove foreign material, and then close wound using staples, sutures, or tissue adhesive. Antibiotic ointment may be applied after wound repair. Consider tetanus prophylaxis depending on immunization status. Patients should return as instructed to have suture material removed if needed (Table 12–7).

Table 12–7. Timing of suture removal.

Area of Body	Number of Days
Face	3–4
Neck	5–6
Scalp	6–7
Chest or abdomen	7
Arms and backs of hands	7
Legs and tops of feet	10
Back	10
Palms of hands or soles of feet	14

Prognosis

Functional and aesthetically pleasing cosmetics is generally achieved with initial repair. Complex lacerations may involve multiple visits with surgical service for wound reconstruction.

Harman S et al: Efficacy of pain control with topical lidocaine-epinephrine-tetracaine during laceration repair with tissue adhesive in children: a randomized controlled trial. Canadian Medical Association Journal 2013;185(13):E626–E634 [PMID: 23897942].

Weiss EA et al: Water is a safe and effective alternative to sterile normal saline for wound irrigation prior to suturing, a prospective, double-blind, randomized, controlled clinical trial. BMJ Open 2013;16:3(1) [PMID: 23325896].

ANIMAL & HUMAN BITES

Bites account for a large number of visits to the ED. Most fatalities are due to dog bites. Human and cat bites cause the majority of infected bite wounds.

DOG BITES

Prevention

Boys are bitten more often than girls. The dog is known by the victim in most cases. Younger children have a higher

http://obgynebooks.com

incidence of head and neck wounds, whereas school-age children are bitten most often on the upper extremities. Children should be taught not to taunt dogs or approach dogs that are eating, sleeping, or are unknown to them.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Dogs may cause abrasions, lacerations, and puncture wounds. Larger dogs may tear skin, subcutaneous tissue, and muscle, or even cause fractures. Other signs and symptoms are related to the structures injured.

B. Imaging Studies

Bites caused by large dogs associated with significant crush injury may be associated with fractures. Dislodged teeth may also be present in the wound. Plain x-rays may be indicated.

» Treatment

Provide appropriate analgesia or anesthesia before starting wound care. Debride any devitalized tissue and remove foreign matter. Irrigate using normal saline with high pressure (> 5 psi) and volume (> 1 L). Consider tetanus prophylaxis depending on immunization status. Rabies risk is low among dogs in developed countries; prophylaxis is rarely indicated. Suture wounds only if necessary for cosmesis as closure increases the risk of infection. **Do not use tissue adhesives due to risk of infection.** Prophylactic antibiotics do not decrease infection rates in low-risk dog bites, except those involving the hands and feet. Bites involving a tendon, joint, periosteum, or associated with fracture require prompt orthopedic surgery consultation.

Pasteurella canis and Pasteurella multocida, streptococci, staphylococci, and anaerobes may infect dog bites. Broad-spectrum coverage with amoxicillin and clavulanic acid is first-line therapy.

» Complications

Complications of dog bites include scarring, skin infections, CNS infections, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, endocarditis, sepsis, and posttraumatic stress.

CAT BITES

» Prevention

Cat-inflicted wounds occur more frequently in girls. The principal complication is infection, and the risk is higher compared to dog bites as cat bites produce a puncture wound. Children should be observed closely when playing with kittens or cats.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

Cat bites typically result in abrasions and puncture wounds. Within 12 hours, untreated bites may result in cellulitis or, when involving the hand, tenosynovitis and septic arthritis. Other signs and symptoms are related to the structures injured. Cat scratch disease (CSD) can occur after bites or scratches especially from kittens. Local findings include a papule, vesicle, or pustule at the site of inoculation. The hallmark of CSD is regional lymphadenitis. See Chapter 42 for a detailed discussion of CSD.

B. Laboratory Findings

Serologic tests for Bartonella henselae are available when cat scratch is suspected. C-reactive protein and erythrocyte sedimentation rate may be useful to monitor treatment response in infected cat bites.

» Complications

Cellulitis, tenosynovitis, and septic arthritis are important potential complications of cat bites. Systemic illness is rare.

» Treatment

Management is similar to that for dog bites. Provide appropriate analgesia or anesthesia before starting wound care. Debride any devitalized tissue and remove foreign matter. With isolated puncture wounds, high-pressure irrigation is contraindicated as it may force bacteria deeper into the tissue. Although controversial, soaking puncture wounds in an antiseptic solution (eg, dilute povidone-iodine) solution for 15 minutes is an accepted method to cleanse puncture wounds. Some experts recommend the practice to promote wound healing while others report delayed wound healing.

Alternatively, the wound may be soaked in dilute povidone-iodine solution for 15 minutes. Consider tetanus prophylaxis in the under- or unimmunized. As with dogs, rabies risk is low in developed countries and prophylaxis is rarely indicated. Cat bites should not be closed except when absolutely necessary for cosmesis.

P multocida is the most common pathogen. Prophylactic antibiotics are recommended. First-line treatment is amoxicillin and clavulanic acid. The dosage of the amoxicillin component should be 80 mg/kg/24 h in three divided doses. The maximum dosage is 2 g/24 h. Strongly consider admission and parenteral antibiotics for infected wounds on the hands and feet.

HUMAN BITES

Most infected human bites occur during fights when a clenched fist strikes bared teeth. Pathogens most commonly include streptococci, staphylococci, anaerobes, and Eikenella

http://obgynebooks.com

corrodens. Hand wounds and deep wounds should be treated with antibiotic prophylaxis against E corrodens and gram-positive pathogens with a penicillinase-resistant antibiotic (amoxicillin with clavulanic acid). Wound management is the same as for dog bites. Only severe lacerations involving the face should be sutured. Other wounds can be managed by delayed primary closure or healing by secondary intention. A major complication of human bite wounds is infection of the metacarpophalangeal joints. A hand surgeon should evaluate clenched-fist injuries from human bites if extensor tendon injury is identified or joint involvement is suspected.

Chisholm CD, Schlesser JF: Plantar puncture wound: controversies and treatment recommendations. Ann Emerg Med. 1989;18(12):1352 [PMID: 2574018].

Halaas GW: Management of foreign bodies in the skin. Am Fam Physician 2007:76(5):683 [PMID: 17894138].

PAIN MANAGEMENT & PROCEDURAL SEDATION

Relief of pain and anxiety is paramount in providing care to pediatric patients and should be assessed and managed at all times. Parenteral agents are effective, safe, and produce few side effects if used judiciously. Intranasal administration of several sedative and narcotic medications is now an accepted route of administration and may omit the need for IV placement. Many agents also have amnestic properties. Refer to Chapter 32 for more information on typical analgesic medications used in pediatric emergency care.

Procedures such as fracture reduction, laceration repair, burn care, sexual assault examinations, abscess incision and drainage, lumbar puncture, and diagnostic procedures such as CT and magnetic resonance imaging may all be performed more effectively and compassionately if effective analgesia, anxiolysis or sedation is used. The clinician should decide whether procedures will require analgesia, anxiolysis, sedation, or a combination of methods.

Safe and effective sedation requires thorough knowledge of the selected agent and its side effects, as well as suitable monitoring devices, resuscitative medications, equipment, and personnel. The decision to perform procedural sedation and analgesia (PSA) must be patient-oriented and tailored to specific procedural needs, while ensuring the child's safety throughout the procedure. In order to successfully complete this task, a thorough pre-procedural assessment should be completed, including a directed history and physical examination. Risks, benefits, and limitations of the procedure should be discussed with the parent or guardian and informed; verbal consent must be obtained PSA goals in the ED setting usually involve minimal or moderate sedation. Minimal sedation is a state in which the patient's sensorium is dulled, but he or she is still responsive to verbal stimuli. Moderate sedation is a depression of consciousness in which the child responds to tactile stimuli. In both cases, airway reflexes are preserved. It is important to remember that sedation is a continuum and the child may drift to deeper, unintended levels of sedation. Ensure appropriate resuscitative equipment and personnel are readily available when providing analgesia, anxiolysis and sedation.

American Academy of Pediatrics; American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry; Coté CJ et al: Guidelines for monitoring and management of pediatric patients during and after sedation for diagnostic and therapeutic procedures: an update. Pediatrics 2006;18:2587 [PMID: 17142550].

Couloures KG et al: Impact of provider specialty on pediatric procedural sedation complication rates. Pediatrics 2011;127(5):e1154–e1160 [PMID: 21518718].

Gozal D, Gozal Y: Pediatric sedation/anesthesia outside the operating room. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 2008;21(4):494–498 [PMID: 18660660].

Krauss B, Green SM: Procedural sedation and analgesia in children. Lancet 2006;367:766 [PMID: 16517277].

http://obgynebooks.com

13 Poisoning

Richard C. Dart, MD, PhD
Barry H. Rumack, MD
George Sam Wang, MD

Accidental and intentional exposures to toxic substances occur in children of all ages. Children younger than 6 years are primarily involved in accidental exposures, with the peak incidence in 2-year-olds. Of the more than 2.5 million exposures reported by the American Association of Poison Control Centers' National Poison Data System in 2013, a total of 61% of exposures occurred in those younger than 20 years: 48% in children aged 5 years and younger, 6% aged 6–12 years, and 7% aged 13–19 years. Young children's exposures are typically unintentional low dose/volume exposures, but are occasionally exposed to intentional poisoning through the actions of parents or caregivers. Involvement of child abuse specialists is very helpful in these cases (see Chapter 8). Substance abuse and intentional ingestions account for most exposures in the adolescent population. In some locales, small-scale industrial or manufacturing processes may be associated with homes and farms, and exposures to hazardous substances should be considered in the history. Methamphetamine and hash oil production is extremely hazardous and can cause injury to children from inhalation and burns.

Pediatric patients also have special considerations pertaining to nonpharmaceutical toxicologic exposures. Their shorter stature places them lower to the ground as well as the fact that many are crawling, and some gas and vapor exposures will gather closer to the ground. They may have a greater inhalational exposure due to their higher minute ventilation. At their younger age, they may not be physically mature enough to remove themselves from exposures. They also have a large body surface area to weight ratio making them vulnerable to topical exposures and hypothermia.

Mowry JB et al: 2013 Annual report of the America Association of Poison Control Centers' National Poison Data System (NPDS): 31th Annual Report. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2014;52:1032–1283 [PMID: 25559822].

PHARMACOLOGIC PRINCIPLES OF TOXICOLOGY

In the evaluation of the poisoned patient, it is important to compare the anticipated pharmacologic or toxic effects with the patient's clinical presentation. If the history is that the patient ingested a tranquilizer 30 minutes ago, but the clinical examination reveals dilated pupils, tachycardia, dry mouth, absent bowel sounds, and active hallucinations—clearly anticholinergic toxicity—diagnosis and therapy should proceed accordingly. In addition, standard pharmacokinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism, and elimination) often cannot be applied in the setting of a large dose, since these parameters are extrapolated from healthy volunteers receiving therapeutic doses.

Absorption

Depending on the route, absorption rates can vary in general, intravenous/intra-arterial > inhalation > sublingual > intramuscular > subcutaneous > intranasal > oral > rectal > dermal. Large overdoses, hypotension, decreased gut mobility are factors that can delay absorption.

Elimination Half-Life

The $t_{1/2}$ of an agent must be interpreted carefully. Most published $t_{1/2}$ values are for therapeutic dosages. The $t_{1/2}$ may increase as the quantity of the ingested substance increases for many common intoxicants such as salicylates. One cannot rely on the published $t_{1/2}$ for salicylate (2 hours) to assume rapid elimination of the drug. In an acute salicylate overdose (150 mg/kg), the apparent $t_{1/2}$ is prolonged to 24–30 hours.

Volume of Distribution

The volume of distribution (Vd) of a drug is determined by dividing the amount of drug absorbed by the blood level.

http://obgynebooks.com

With theophylline, for example, the Vd is 0.46 L/kg body weight, or 32 L in an average adult. In contrast, digoxin distributes well beyond total body water. Because the calculation produces a volume above body weight, this figure is referred to as an "apparent volume of distribution."

Body Burden

Body burden represents the total amount of drug or toxin within the body and may be useful to determine the dose absorbed from an ingestion. For example, a 20-kg child with an acetaminophen blood level reported as 200 mcg/mL (equivalent to 200 mg/L) would have a body burden of 4000 mg of acetaminophen. This is ascertained by taking the volume of distribution of 1 L times the weight of the child times the blood level in milligram per liter. This would be consistent with an overdose history of having consumed eight extrastrength 500-mg tablets but would not be consistent with a history of therapeutic administration of 15 mg/kg for four doses. Such a therapeutic administration would have a maximum administered dose of 1200 mg (20 kg times 15 mg/kg times four doses), which is well under the calculated body burden. Given metabolism of the drug with a normal half-life of 2 hours, it is apparent that much of the first doses would have been metabolized further adding to an understanding that this must not have been a therapeutic dose.

Metabolism & Excretion

The route of excretion or detoxification is important for planning treatment. Methanol, for example, is metabolized to the toxic product, formic acid. This metabolic step may be blocked by the antidote fomepizole or ethanol and patients with renal failure may not eliminate methanol as readily.

Blood Levels

Care of the poisoned patient should never be guided solely by laboratory measurements. Concentration results may not return in time to influence acute management. Initial treatment should be directed at symptomatic and supportive care, guided by the clinical presentation, followed by more specific therapy based on laboratory determinations. Clinical information may speed the identification of a toxic agent by the laboratory.

PREVENTING CHILDHOOD POISONINGS

Inclusion of poison prevention as part of routine well-child care should begin at the 6-month well-baby visit. The poison prevention handout included as Table 13–1 may be copied and distributed to parents. It contains poison prevention information as well as first-aid actions that should be taken in the event of an exposure. All poison control centers in the United States can be reached by dialing 1-800-222-1222; the call will be automatically routed to the correct regional center.

GENERAL TREATMENT OF POISONING

INITIAL TELEPHONE CONTACT

Basic information obtained at the first telephone contact includes the patient's name, age, weight, address, and telephone number; the agent and amount of agent ingested; location or exposure; the patient's present condition; and the time elapsed since ingestion or other exposure. An emergency exists if the ingestant is high risk (caustic solutions, hydrogen fluoride, drugs of abuse, or medications such as a calcium channel blocker, opioid, hypoglycemic agent, or antidepressant) or if the self-poisoning was intentional. If immediate danger does not exist, obtain more details about the suspected toxic agent. If the child requires transport to a health facility, instruct parents that everything in the vicinity of the child that may be a cause of poisoning should be brought to the healthcare facility. Poison control centers (1-800-222-1222) are the source of expert telephone advice and have excellent follow-up programs to manage patients in the home as well as provide further poison prevention information.

It may be difficult to obtain an accurate history. Obtain names of drugs or ingredients, manufacturers, prescription numbers, names and phone numbers of prescribing physician and pharmacy, and any other pertinent information. Find out whether the substance was shared among several children, whether it had been recently purchased, who had last used it, how full the bottle was, and how much was spilled.

Obtaining Information About Poisons

Current data on ingredients of commercial products and medications can be obtained from a certified regional poison center. It is important to have the actual container at hand when calling. Safety data sheets (SDSs) can be helpful in providing product ingredient and concentration information. Caution: Antidote information on labels of commercial products or in the Physicians' Desk Reference may be incorrect or inappropriate. Many resources found on the Internet are inaccurate.

Follow-up

In over 95% of cases of ingestion of potentially toxic substances by children, a trip to the hospital is not required. In these cases, it is important to call the parent at 1 and 4 hours after ingestion. If the child has ingested an additional unknown agent and develops symptoms, a change in management may be needed, including transportation to the hospital.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 13–1. Poison prevention and emergency treatment handout.

Poison safety tips	
If you or your child has come in contact with poison, call the Poison Center (1-800-222-1222). Nurses and pharmacists (who are poison experts) will answer your call. In most cases, they can help you take care of the problem right at home. When you need to get to the hospital, they will call ahead with detailed information to help doctors treat you or your child quickly and correctly.	
How people get poisoned	
People can breathe poison, eat or drink it, or get it on the skin or in the eyes. You probably know that antifreeze, bleach, and bug spray are poisonous. But did you know that vitamins, perfume, and makeup can be dangerous? Eating some plants can be toxic. Some spider bites can be dangerous. Taking medicine that is too old or not prescribed for you can make you sick. Also, mixing different kinds of medicine can be dangerous.	
Poison safety "do's" and "don'ts"	
DO:	DON'T:
1. Ask for "safety-lock" tops on all prescription drugs. 2. Keep cleaners, bug sprays, medicines, and other harmful products out of the reach and sight of children. If possible, keep the products locked up. 3. Store medicine in original containers. 4. Read the label before taking medicine; don't take medicine that doesn't have a label. 5. Follow the directions for all products.	1. Don't store food and household cleaners together. 2. Don't take medicine in front of children; children love to imitate "mommy" and "daddy." 3. Don't call medicine candy. 4. Don't take medicine that is not for you. Never take medicine in the dark. 5. Don't put gasoline, bug spray, antifreeze, or cleaning supplies in soft-drink bottles, cups, or bowls. Always keep them in their original containers.
Kids can get into things at any age!	
Children aged 0–6 mo	Children aged 1–3 y
Learn to roll over and reach for things.	Have the highest accident rate of any group.
Learn about their environment by putting things in their mouths.	Begin to imitate parents and other adults.
Children aged 7–12 mo	Put things in their mouths.
Start to get curious and explore.	Start to climb on things.
Learn to crawl, pull up to stand, and walk holding on.	
Put everything in their mouths.	
Pull things down.	
Different dangers at different times of the year	
Spring and summer dangers	Fall and winter dangers
Pesticides	Antifreeze
Fertilizers	Carbon monoxide
Outdoor plants and mushrooms	Black widow spider bites
Snake, spider, and other insect bites	Plants and autumn berries
Bee stings	Holly, mistletoe, and other holiday decorations
Ticks	
Charcoal lighter fluid	
Follow this checklist to make sure your home is safe	
Kitchen	
—Remove products like detergent, drain cleaner, and dishwashing liquid from under the sink.	
—Remove medicines from counters, tables, refrigerator top, or window sills.	

(Continued)

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 13–1. Poison prevention and emergency treatment handout. (Continued)

—Put child safety latches on all drawers and cabinets that contain harmful products.
—Store harmful products away from food.
Bathroom
—Regularly clean out your medicine cabinet. Do not flush medicines down the toilet. Contact a pharmacy to see if they have a take-back program. If a take-back program is not available, securely wrap the medication bottle/package in newspaper and duct tape before disposing of in household garbage.
—Keep all medicine in original safety-top containers.
—Keep medicine, hair spray, powder, makeup, fingernail polish, hair-care products, and mouthwash out of reach.
Bedroom
—Don't keep medicine in or on dresser or bedside table.
—Keep perfume, makeup, aftershave, and other products out of reach.
Laundry area
—Keep bleach, soap, fabric softener, starch, and other supplies out of reach.
—Keep all products in their original containers.
Garage/basement
—Keep bug spray, weed killers, gasoline, oil, paint, and other supplies in locked area.
—Keep all products in their original containers.
General household
—Keep beer, wine, and liquor out of reach.
—Keep ashtrays clean and out of reach.
—Keep plants out of reach.
—Keep paint in good repair.
Emergency action in case your child …
Breathes poison
Get child to fresh air right away. Open doors and windows. Always call the Poison Center.
Gets poison on the skin
Remove clothes that have poison on them. Rinse skin with lukewarm water for 10 min. Wash gently with soap and water and rinse. Always call the Poison Center.
Gets poison in the eye
Gently pour lukewarm water over the eye from a large glass 2 or 3 in from the eye. Repeat for 15 min. Have child blink as much as possible while pouring water in the eye. Do not force the eyelid open. Always call the Poison Center.
Swallows poison
Medicines: Do not give child anything until you talk with the poison center or your doctor.
Chemicals or household products: Unless your child has passed out or cannot swallow, give milk or water right away. Always call the Poison Center.
Pediatrician: _____ (Tel): _____
National Toll Free Number which connects with your local Poison Center: 1-800-222-1222

Used with permission from the Rocky Mountain Poison Center, Denver Health and Hospital Authority, Denver, CO.

http://obgynebooks.com

INITIAL EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT CONTACT

Make Certain the Patient Is Breathing

As in all emergencies, the principles of treatment are attention to Pediatric Advance Life Support algorithms in resuscitation: circulation, airway, and breathing.

Treat Burns & Skin Exposures

Burns may occur following exposure to strongly acidic or strongly alkaline agents or petroleum distillates, and should be decontaminated by flooding with sterile saline solution or water. A burn unit should be consulted if more than minimal burn damage has been sustained. Skin decontamination should be performed in a patient with cutaneous exposure. Emergency department personnel in contact with a patient who has been contaminated (eg, with an organophosphate insecticide) should themselves be decontaminated if their skin or clothing becomes contaminated. Ocular exposures can initially be decontaminated at home by placing the child in the shower allowing the water to indirectly flow from the top of the head into the eyes. Otherwise, irrigation with assessment of pH should be performed in the emergency department.

Take a Pertinent History

The history should be taken from the parents and all individuals present at the scene. It may be crucial to determine all of the kinds of poisons in the home. These may include drugs used by family members and their medical histories, dietary or herbal supplements, foreign medications, chemicals associated with the hobbies or occupations of family members, or the purity of the water supply.

DEFINITIVE THERAPY OF POISONING

Prevention of Absorption

A. Emesis and Lavage

These measures are rarely used in pediatric patients and have their own associated risk. They should not be used routinely in the management of poisonings and should be performed only in consultation with a poison center.

B. Charcoal

The routine use of charcoal has decreased substantially in recent years, especially in unintentional pediatric ingestions where lick, sip, taste ingestions are rarely dangerous. Charcoal can be considered in patients who are awake, alert, and able to drink it voluntarily, but it should not be routinely administered to all poisoned patients. It should never be given to patients with altered sensorium who are unable to protect their airway due to risk of aspiration. The dose of charcoal is 1–2 g/kg (maximum, 100 g) per dose. Repeating the dose of activated charcoal may be useful for those agents that slow passage through the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, but repeated doses of sorbitol or saline cathartics must not be given. Repeated doses of cathartics may cause electrolyte imbalances and fluid loss. Charcoal dosing may be repeated every 4–6 hours until charcoal is passed through the rectum. It is not recommended in ingestions of heavy metals, hydrocarbons, caustics, and solvent ingestions.

C. Catharsis

Cathartics do not improve outcome and should be avoided.

D. Whole Gut Lavage

Whole bowel lavage uses an orally administered, nonabsorbable hypertonic solution such as CoLyte or GoLYTELY. The effectiveness of this procedure in poisoned patients remains controversial. Preliminary recommendations for use of whole bowel irrigation include poisoning with sustained-release preparations, mechanical movement of items through the bowel (eg, cocaine packets, iron tablets), and poisoning with substances that are poorly absorbed by charcoal (eg, lithium, iron). Underlying bowel pathology and intestinal obstruction are relative contraindications to its use. Consultation with a certified regional poison center is recommended.

American Academy of Clinical Toxicology, European Association of Poisons Centers and Clinical Toxicologists: Position statement and practice guidelines on the use of multidose activated charcoal in the treatment of acute poisoning. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 1999;37:731 [PMID: 10584586].

Benson et al: Poison paper update: gastric lavage. Clin Toxicol 2013 Mar;51(3):140–146 [PMID: 23418938].

Chyka PA et al: Position paper: single-dose activated charcoal. American Academy of Clinical Toxicology; European Association of Poison Centres and Clinical Toxicologists. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2005;43:61 [PMID: 15822758].

Gielen AC et al: Effects of improved access to safety counseling, products, and home visits on parents' safety practices: results of a randomized trial. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2002;156:33 [PMID: 11772188].

Hojer et al: Position paper update: ipecac syrup. Clin Toxicol 2013 Mar;15(3):134–139 [PMID: 23406298].

Enhancement of Excretion

Excretion of certain substances can be hastened by urinary alkalinization or dialysis and is reserved for very special circumstances. It is important to make certain that the patient is not volume depleted. Volume-depleted patients should receive a normal saline bolus of 10–20 mL/kg, followed by sufficient IV fluid administration to maintain urine output at 2–3 mL/kg/h.

http://obgynebooks.com

A. Urinary Alkalinization

1. Alkaline diuresis—Urinary alkalinization should be chosen on the basis of the substance's pK_a, so that ionized drug will be trapped in the tubular lumen and not reabsorbed (see Table 13–1). Thus, if the pK_a is less than 7.5, urinary alkalinization is appropriate; if it is over 8.0, this technique is not usually beneficial. The pK_a is sometimes included along with general drug information. Urinary alkalinization is achieved with sodium bicarbonate. It is important to observe for hypokalemia, caused by the shift of potassium intracellularly. Follow serum K^+ and observe for electrocardiogram (ECG) evidence of hypokalemia. If complications such as renal failure or pulmonary edema are present, hemodialysis or hemoperfusion may be required. It is most commonly used for the treatment of salicylate toxicity and to prevent methotrexate toxicity.

B. Dialysis

Hemodialysis is useful in the treatment of some poisons and in the general management of a critically ill patient. Characteristics of drugs amendable to dialysis include low molecular weight, low protein binding, and low volume of distribution. Continuous hemofiltration techniques may be used when hypotensive patients may not tolerate traditional hemodialysis; however, clearance rates will be slower. Dialysis should be considered part of supportive care if the patient satisfies any of the following criteria:

A. Potentially life-threatening toxicity that is caused by a dialyzable drug and cannot be treated by conservative means.

B. Renal failure or insufficiency.

C. Marked hyperosmolality or severe acid-base or electrolyte disturbances not responding to therapy.

MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC COMMON POISONINGS

ACETAMINOPHEN (PARACETAMOL)

Overdosage of acetaminophen is common and can produce severe hepatotoxicity. The incidence of hepatotoxicity in adults and adolescents has been reported to be 10 times higher than in children younger than 5 years. In the latter group, less than 0.1% develop hepatotoxicity after acetaminophen overdose. In children, toxicity most commonly results from repeated overdosage arising from confusion about the age-appropriate dose, use of multiple products that contain acetaminophen, or use of adult suppositories.

Acetaminophen is normally metabolized in the liver. A small percentage of the drug goes through a pathway leading to a toxic metabolite. Normally, this electrophilic reactant is removed harmlessly by conjugation with glutathione. In overdosage, the supply of glutathione becomes exhausted, and the metabolite may bind covalently to components of liver cells to produce necrosis. Some authors have proposed that therapeutic doses of acetaminophen may be toxic to children with depleted glutathione stores. However, there is no evidence that administration of therapeutic doses can cause toxicity, and only a few inadequate case reports have been made in this regard.

» Treatment

Treatment is to administer acetylcysteine. It may be administered either orally or intravenously. Consultation on difficult cases may be obtained from your regional poison control center or the Rocky Mountain Poison and Drug Center (1-800-525-6115). Blood levels should be obtained 4 hours after ingestion or as soon as possible thereafter and plotted on Figure 13–1. The nomogram is used only for acute ingestion, not repeated ingestions. Acetylcysteine is administered to patients whose acetaminophen levels plot in the toxic range on the nomogram. Acetylcysteine is effective even when given more than 24 hours after ingestion, although it is most effective when given within 8 hours postingestion.

For children weighing 40 kg or more, IV acetylcysteine (Acetadote) should be administered as a loading dose of 150 mg/kg administered over 15–60 min; followed by a second infusion of 50 mg/kg over 4 hours, and then a third infusion of 100 mg/kg over 16 hours.

For patients weighing less than 40 kg, IV acetylcysteine must have less dilution to avoid hyponatremia (a dosage calculator is available at http://www.acetadote.com) (Table 13–2). Patient-tailored therapy is critical when utilizing the IV "20-hour" protocol and those patients who still have acetaminophen measurable and/or elevated aspartate transaminase/alanine transaminase (AST/ALT) may need treatment beyond the 20 hours called for in the product insert.

The oral form of acetylcysteine can also be given and is equally efficacious. Consult your regional poison center for dosing recommendations.

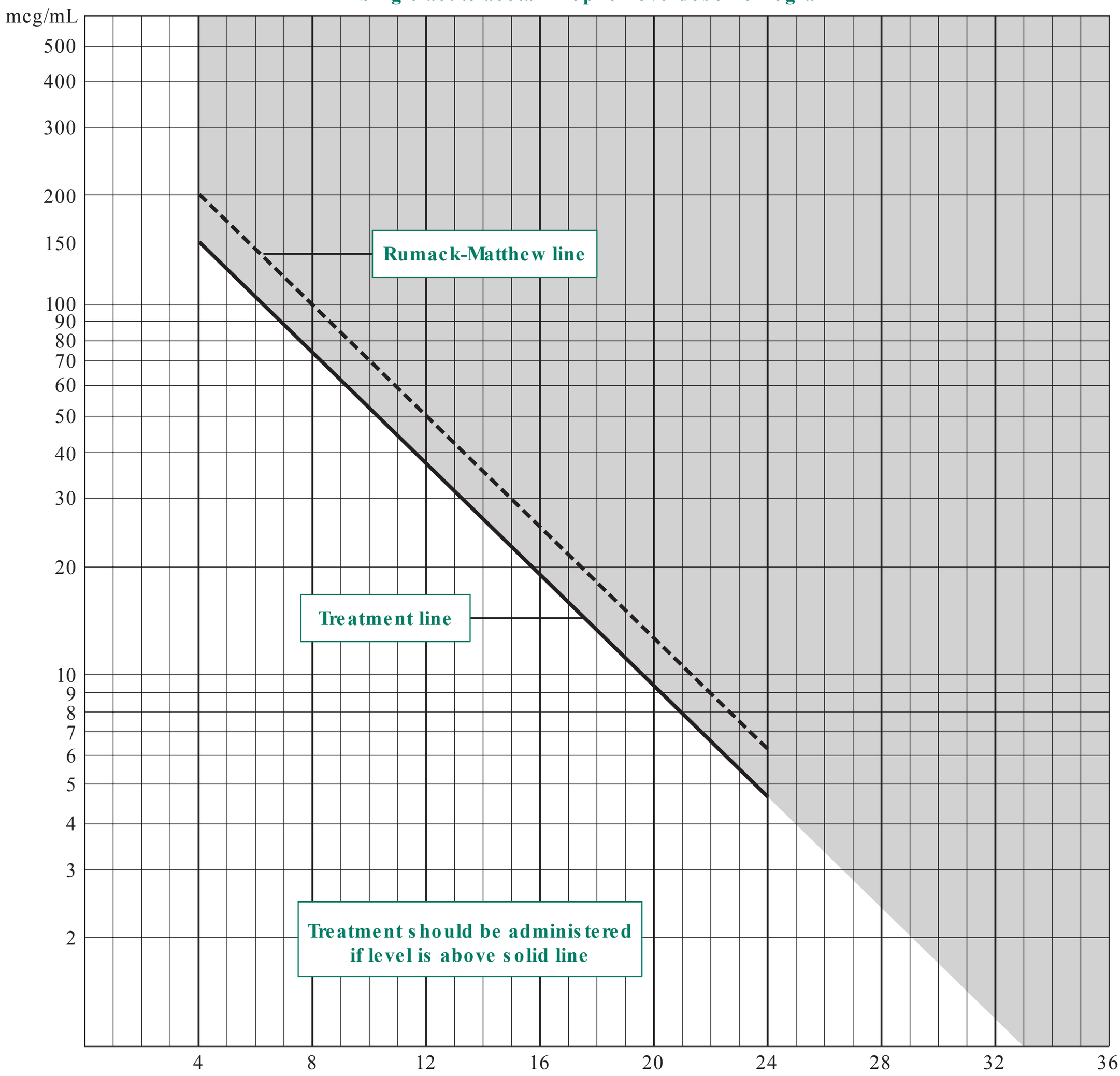
AST–serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase (AST–SGOT), ALT–serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase (ALT–SGPT), serum bilirubin, and plasma prothrombin time should be followed daily. Significant abnormalities of liver function may not peak until 72–96 hours after ingestion.

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has recommended the use of a single concentration of liquid acetaminophen (160 mg/5 mL) for both infants and children to avoid confusion with previous infant formulations. Therapeutic weight based dosing is 10–15 mg/kg every 4–6 hours.

Dart RC, Rumack BH: Patient-tailored acetylcysteine administration. Ann Emerg Med 2007;50:280–281 [PMID: 17418449].

Rumack BH: Acetaminophen hepatotoxicity: the first 35 years. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 2002;40:3 [PMID: 11990202].

http://obgynebooks.com



Nomogram: Acetaminophen plasma concentration vs time after acetaminophen ingestion (adapted with permission from Rumack and Matthew. Pediatrics. 1975;55:871–876).
The nomogram has been developed to estimate the probability of whether a plasma acetaminophen concentration in relation to the interval postingestion will result in hepatotoxicity and, therefore, whether acetylcysteine therapy should be administered.

Cautions for use of this chart:

1. Time coordinates refer to time postingestion.
2. Graph relates only to plasma concentrations following a single, acute overdose ingestion.
3. The Treatment line is plotted 25% below the Rumack-Matthew line to allow for potential errors in plasma acetaminophen assays and estimated time from ingestion of an overdose (Rumack et al. Arch Intern Med 1981;141(suppl):380–385).

▲**Figure 13–1.** Semilogarithmic plot of plasma acetaminophen levels versus time. (Modified with permission from Rumack BH, Matthew H: Acetaminophen poisoning and toxicity. Pediatrics 1975;55(6):871-876.)

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 13–2. Intravenous acetylcysteine administration dosing.

Body Weight		First 150 mg/kg in 5% Dextrose in 60 min		Second 50 mg/kg in 5% Dextrose in 4 h		Third 100 mg/kg in 5% Dextrose in 16 h	
(kg)	(lb)	Acetadote (mL)	Diluent (mL)	Acetadote (mL)	Diluent (mL)	Acetadote (mL)	Diluent (mL)
100	220	75	200	25	500	50	1000
90	198	67.5	200	22.5	500	45	1000
80	176	60	200	20	500	40	1000
70	154	52.5	200	17.5	500	35	1000
60	132	45	200	15	500	30	1000
50	110	37.5	200	12.5	500	25	1000
40	88	30	200	10	500	20	1000
30	66	22.5	100	7.5	250	15	500
25	55	18.75	100	6.25	250	12.5	500
20	44	15	60	5	140	10	280
15	33	11.25	45	3.75	105	7.5	210
10	22	7.5	30	2.5	70	5	140

Yarema MC et al: Comparison of the 20-hour intravenous and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine protocols for the treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. Ann Emerg Med 2009;54(4):606–614 [PMID: 19556028].

ALCOHOL, ETHYL (ETHANOL)

Alcoholic beverages, tinctures, cosmetics, mouthwashes, rubbing alcohol, and hand sanitizers are common sources of poisoning in children. Concomitant exposure to other depressant drugs increases the seriousness of the intoxication. In most states, alcohol levels of 50–80 mg/dL are considered compatible with impaired faculties, and levels of 80–100 mg/dL are considered evidence of intoxication. (Blood levels cited here are for adults; comparable figures for children are not available.)

Recent erroneous information regarding hand sanitizers has indicated that a "lick" following application on the hand could cause toxicity in children. In fact, this is not the case, but because these hand sanitizers contain 62% ethanol, toxicity following ingestion is very possible. Potential blood ethanol concentration following consumption of a 62% solution in a 10-kg child is calculated as follows:

1 oz = 30 mL × 62% =
18.6 mL of pure ethanol

18.6 mL × 0.79 (the specific gravity) =
14.7 g of ethanol, or 14,700 mg

In a patient weighing 10 kg, the distribution into total body water (Vd) will be 6 L—this is the amount of the body water into which the ethanol will be distributed.

14,700 mg ÷ 6 L = 2450 mg/L

2450 mg/L ÷ 10 = 245 mg/dL

Based on these calculations, a 10-kg child consuming 0.5 oz would have a concentration of 122.5 mg/dL; a 20-kg child consuming 1 oz would have a concentration of 122.5 mg/dL; a 30-kg child consuming 1 oz would have a concentration of 81.7 mg/dL; and a 70-kg adult consuming 1 oz would have a concentration of 35 mg/dL.

One "pump" from a hand sanitizer bottle dispenses approximately 2.5 mL of the product. If ingested, this amount (containing 62% ethanol) would create a blood ethanol concentration as follows:

1. In a 10-kg child: 23.1 mg/dL.
2. In a 20-kg child: 11.6 mg/dL.
3. In a 30-kg child: 7.7 mg/dL.

Children show a change in sensorium with blood levels as low as 10–20 mg/dL and any child displaying such changes should be seen immediately. Although a "lick" or a "drop" is unlikely to produce toxicity, the accuracy of the history should be considered when determining whether or not to see a child.

Complete absorption of alcohol requires 30 minutes to 6 hours, depending on the volume, the presence of food, and the time spent in consuming the alcohol. The rate of

http://obgynebooks.com

metabolic degradation is constant (about 20 mg/h in an adult). Absolute ethanol, 1 mL/kg, results in a peak blood level of about 100 mg/dL in 1 hour after ingestion. Acute intoxication and chronic alcoholism increase the risk of subarachnoid hemorrhage.

» Treatment

Management of hypoglycemia and acidosis is usually the only measure required. Start an IV drip of D_5W or $D_{10}W$ if blood glucose is less than 60 mg/dL. Death is usually caused by respiratory failure. In severe cases, cerebral edema may occur and should be appropriately treated.

AMPHETAMINES & RELATED DRUGS (METHAMPHETAMINE, MDMA)

» Clinical Presentation

A. Acute Poisoning

Amphetamine, 3,4-methylenedioxy-N-methylamphetamine (MDMA), and methamphetamine poisoning is common because of the widespread availability of "diet pills" and the use of "ecstasy," "speed," "crank," "crystal," and "ice" by adolescents. (Care must be taken in the interpretation of slang terms because they have multiple meanings.) A new cause of amphetamine poisoning is drugs for treating attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, such as methylphenidate. There are also newer designer drugs, synthetic cannabinoids ("spice, K2") and MPDV or mephedrone ("bath salts, plant food"), which cause effects similar to stimulants.

Symptoms include central nervous system (CNS) stimulation, anxiety, hyperactivity, hyperpyrexia, diaphoresis, hypertension, abdominal cramps, nausea and vomiting, and inability to void urine. MDMA has been associated with hyponatremia and seizures. Severe cases often include rhabdomyolysis. A toxic psychosis indistinguishable from paranoid schizophrenia may occur. Methamphetamine laboratories in homes are a potential cause of childhood exposure to a variety of hazardous and toxic substances. Maternal use and the effect on the fetus as well as exposures of young children are a continuing problem.

B. Chronic Poisoning

Chronic amphetamine users develop tolerance; more than 1500 mg of IV methamphetamine can be used daily. Hyperactivity, disorganization, and euphoria are followed by exhaustion, depression, and coma lasting 2–3 days. Heavy users, taking more than 100 mg/d, have restlessness, incoordination of thought, insomnia, nervousness, irritability, and visual hallucinations. Psychosis may be precipitated by the chronic administration of high doses. Chronic MDMA use can lead to serotonin depletion, which can manifest as depression, weakness, tremors, GI complaints, and suicidal thoughts.

» Treatment

The treatment of choice are benzodiazepines, such as lorazepam, titrated in small increments to effect. Very large total doses may be needed. In cases of extreme agitation or hallucinations, droperidol (0.1 mg/kg per dose) or haloperidol (up to 0.1 mg/kg) parenterally has been used. Hyperthermia should be aggressively controlled. Chronic users may be withdrawn rapidly from amphetamines. If amphetamine–barbiturate combination tablets have been used, the barbiturates must be withdrawn gradually to prevent withdrawal seizures. Psychiatric treatment should be provided.

Carvalho M et al: Toxicity of amphetamines: an update. Arch Toxicol 2012;86(8):1167–1231 [PMID: 22392347].

Rosenbaum CD et al: Here today, gone tomorrow…and back again? A review of herbal marijuana alternatives (K2, Spice), synthetic cathinones (bath salts), kratom, Salvia divinorum, methoxetamine, and piperazines. J Med Toxicol 2012;8(1): 15–32 [PMID: 22271566].

ANESTHETICS, LOCAL

Intoxication from local anesthetics may be associated with CNS stimulation, acidosis, delirium, ataxia, shock, convulsions, and death. Methemoglobinemia has been reported following local mouth or dental analgesia, typically with benzocaine or prilocaine. It has also been reported with use of topical preparations in infants. The maximum recommended dose for subcutaneous (SQ) infiltration of lidocaine is 4.5 mg/kg (Table 13–3). The temptation to exceed this dose in procedures lasting a long time is great and may result in inadvertent overdosage. PO application of viscous lidocaine may produce toxicity and the FDA has published warnings against its use for teething. Hypercapnia may lower the seizure threshold to locally injected anesthetics.

Local anesthetics used in obstetrics cross the placental barrier and are not efficiently metabolized by the fetal liver. Mepivacaine, lidocaine, and bupivacaine can cause fetal bradycardia, neonatal depression, and death. Accidental injection of mepivacaine into the head of the fetus during paracervical anesthesia has caused neonatal asphyxia, cyanosis, acidosis, bradycardia, convulsions, and death.

» Treatment

If the anesthetic has been ingested, mucous membranes should be cleansed carefully, topical applications should be cleaned and irrigated. Oxygen administration is indicated, with assisted ventilation if necessary. Symptomatic methemoglobinemia is treated with methylene blue, 1%, 0.2 mL/kg (1–2 mg/kg per dose, IV) over 5–10 minutes; this should promptly relieve the cyanosis. Acidosis may be treated with

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 13–3. Pharmacologic properties of local anesthetics.

	pK_a	Protein Binding (%)	Relative Potency	Duration of Action	Approximate Maximum Allowable Subcutaneous Dose (mg/kg)
Esters					
Chloroprocaine	9.3	Unknown	Intermediate	Short	10
Cocaine	8.7	92	Low	Medium	3
Procaine	9.1	5	Low	Short	10
Tetracaine	8.4	76	High	Long	3
Amides					
Bupivacaine	8.1	95	High	Long	2
Etidocaine	7.9	95	High	Long	4
Lidocaine	7.8	70	Low	Medium	4.5
Mepivacaine	7.9	75	Intermediate	Medium	4.5
Prilocaine	8.0	40	Intermediate	Medium	8
Ropivacaine	8.2	95	Intermediate	Long	3

Reproduced with permission from Hoffman RS, Howland MA, Lewis NA: Goldfrank's Toxicologic Emergencies. 10th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill Education; 2011.

sodium bicarbonate, seizures with benzodiazepines, and bradycardia with atropine. In the event of cardiac arrest, 20% fat emulsion therapy should be initiated. Initial 1.5 mL/kg bolus over 1 minute, followed by 0.25 mL/kg/min for up to 20–30 minutes until spontaneous circulation returns. Repeat bolus can be considered. Therapeutic levels of mepivacaine, lidocaine, and procaine are less than 5 mg/mL.

FDA Drug Safety Communication: http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm402240.htm. Accessed June 1 2015.

Ozcan MS, Weinberg G: Update on the use of lipid emulsions in local anesthetic systemic toxicity: a focus on differential efficacy and lipid emulsion as part of advanced cardiac life support. Int Anesthesiol Clin 2011;29(4):91–103 [PMID: 21956080].

Spiller HA et al: Multi-center retrospective evaluation of oral benzocaine exposure in children. Vet Hum Toxicol 2000;42:228 [PMID: 10928690].

ANTIHISTAMINES & COUGH & COLD PREPARATIONS

The use of cough and cold preparations in young children has recently been called into question due to potential toxicity. In 2007, manufacturers voluntarily removed preparations intended for use in children younger than 4 from the market. Considerable controversy remains as to the toxicity of these medications if they are used according to labeled directions and an evaluation of the cases on file at FDA stated, "In the cases judged to be therapeutic intent or unknown intent, several factors appeared to contribute to the administration of an overdosage: administration of two medicines containing the same ingredients, failure to use a measuring device, use of wrong units (mL vs teaspoon), use of an adult product, use of the wrong product because of product misidentification, and two or more caregivers administering the same medication. In the cases of non-therapeutic intent, circumstances involved attempts at sedation and several included apparent attempts of overt child abuse and were under investigation by law enforcement authorities."

Medications included in this area are: antihistamine (brompheniramine, chlorpheniramine, diphenhydramine, doxylamine), antitussive (dextromethorphan), expectorant (guaifenesin), and decongestant (pseudoephedrine, phenylephrine). Although antihistamines typically cause CNS depression, children often react paradoxically with excitement, hallucinations, delirium, ataxia, tremors, and convulsions followed by CNS depression, respiratory failure, or cardiovascular collapse. Anticholinergic effects such as dry mouth, fixed dilated pupils, flushed face, fever, and hallucinations may be prominent.

They are absorbed rapidly and metabolized by the liver, lungs, and kidneys. A potentially toxic dose is 10–50 mg/kg of the most commonly used antihistamines, but toxic reactions have occurred at much lower doses.

» Treatment

Benzodiazepines, such as lorazepam (0.1 mg/kg IV), can be used to control seizures or agitation. Physostigmine (0.5–2.0 mg IV, slowly administered) dramatically reverses the central

http://obgynebooks.com

and peripheral anticholinergic effects of antihistamines, but it should be used only for diagnostic purposes in patients without cardiotoxicity or seizures. Cardiac dysrhythmias and hypotension should be treated with normal saline at a dose of 10–20 mg/kg and a vasopressor if necessary. Sodium bicarbonate may be useful if there is QRS widening at a dose of 1–2 mEq/kg, making certain that the arterial pH does not exceed 7.55. Forced diuresis is not helpful. Exchange transfusion was reported to be effective in one case.

Dart RC et al: Pediatric fatalities associated with over the counter (nonprescription) cough and cold medications. Ann Emerg Med 2009;53:411–417 [PMID: 19101060].

Smith MD et al: Out-of-hospital medication errors among young children in the United States, 2002–2012. Pediatrics 2014:124(5):867–879 [PMID: 25332497].

Yin S. Malicious use of pharmaceuticals in children. J Pediatr 2010;157(5):832–836 [PMID: 20650468].

ARSENIC

Arsenic is used in some insecticides (fruit tree or tobacco sprays), rodenticides, weed killers, and wood preservatives. It can also be found in some fireworks. It is well absorbed primarily through the GI and respiratory tracts, but skin absorption may occur. Diet high in seafood can lead to elevated arsenic concentrations; however, significant toxicity does not typically develop. Abdominal pain, vomiting, watery and bloody diarrhea, cardiovascular collapse, paresthesias, neck pain, and garlic odor on the breath occur as the first signs of acute poisoning. Anorexia, generalized weakness, giddiness, colic, abdominal pain, polyneuritis, dermatitis, nail changes, alopecia, and anemia are symptoms in chronic exposures. Consult your regional poison center or medical toxicologist for further treatment recommendations if there are concerns for arsenic exposure.

Abernathy CO et al: Arsenic: health effects, mechanisms of actions, and research issues. Environ Health Perspect 1999;107:593 [PMID: 10379007].

Stephanopoulus DE et al: Treatment and toxicokinetics of acute pediatric arsenic ingestion: danger of arsenic insecticides in children. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2002;3(1):74–80 [PMID: 12793928].

BARBITURATES & BENZODIAZEPINES

Barbiturates are rarely used today, and have mostly been replaced with benzodiazepines for their use in seizures or for sedation. The toxic effects of barbiturates include confusion, poor coordination, coma, miotic or fixed dilated pupils, and respiratory depression. Respiratory acidosis is commonly associated with pulmonary atelectasis, and hypotension. Ingestion of more than 6 mg/kg of long-acting or 3 mg/kg of short-acting barbiturates is usually toxic. Benzodiazepines typically cause CNS depression and lethargy without hemodynamic compromise in unintentional oral ingestions. Large oral overdoses or iatrogenic IV overdose can cause cardiovascular or respiratory depression.

» Treatment

Careful, conservative management with emphasis on maintaining a clear airway, adequate ventilation, and control of hypotension is critical. Urinary alkalinization and the use of multiple-dose charcoal may decrease the elimination half-life of phenobarbital but have not been shown to alter the clinical course. Flumazenil can be considered if severe CNS depression or respiratory depression develops after benzodiazepine overdose using a dose of 0.01 mg/kg IV (maximum dose of 0.2 mg).

Gaudreault P et al: Benzodiazepine poisoning: clinical and pharmacological considerations and treatment. Drug Saf 1991;6(4):247 [PMID: 1888441].

Kreshak AA et al: Flumazenil administration in poisoned pediatric patients. Pediatr Emerg Care 2012;28(5):488 [PMID: 22531190].

BELLADONNA ALKALOIDS (ATROPINE, JIMSONWEED, POTATO LEAVES, SCOPOLAMINE, STRAMONIUM)

The effects of anticholinergic compounds include dry mouth; thirst; decreased sweating with hot, dry, red skin; high fever; and tachycardia that may be preceded by bradycardia. The pupils are dilated, and vision is blurred. Speech and swallowing may be impaired. Hallucinations, delirium, and coma are common. Leukocytosis may occur, confusing the diagnosis.

Atropinism has been caused by normal doses of atropine or homatropine eye drops, especially in children with Down syndrome. Many common plants and over-the-counter medications contain belladonna alkaloids.

» Treatment

Gastric emptying is slowed by anticholinergics, so that gastric decontamination may be useful even if delayed. If the patient is awake and showing no signs or symptoms, administration of activated charcoal can be considered. Benzodiazepines should be administered to control agitation. Bolus dosing should be given in escalating doses, and high doses may be required. Physostigmine (0.5–2.0 mg IV, administered slowly) dramatically reverses the central and peripheral signs of atropinism but should be used only as a diagnostic agent, but clinical improvement is not sustained. Physostigmine infusions have been safely administered. It should not be given in patients with cardiotoxicity

http://obgynebooks.com

or seizures. Hyperthermia should be aggressively controlled. Catheterization may be needed if the patient cannot void.

Burns MJ et al: A comparison of physostigmine and benzodiazepines for the treatment of anticholinergic poisoning. Ann Emerg Med 2000;35:374 [PMID: 10736125].

Glaststein M et al: Belladoona alkaloid intoxication: the 10-year experience of a large tertiary care pediatric hospital. Am J Ther 2013 Nov 20 [PMID: 24263161].

Phillips MA et al: use of a physostigmine continuous infusion for the treatment of severe and recurrent antimuscarinic toxicity in a mixed drug overdose. J Med Toxicol 2014;10(2):205–209 [PMID: 24798647].

β-BLOCKERS & CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS

β-Blockers and calcium channel blockers primarily cause cardiovascular toxicity; bradycardia, hypotension, and various degrees of heart block; cardiac dysrhythmias may develop. Severe toxicity can cause CNS depression. The β-blocker propranolol is associated with seizures. Hyperglycemia can be seen with calcium channel blocker toxicity.

» Treatment

Initial stabilization with IV fluid resuscitation with isotonic fluids should be initiated. Atropine can be given for symptomatic bradycardia. Calcium at doses of 20 mg/kg and repeated as needed should be administered. Infusions of calcium chloride 10%, 0.2–0.5 mL/kg/h, can be started after initial bolus dosing. Glucagon can be administered; 50–100 mcg/kg (5–10 mg) IV bolus followed by 2–5 mg/h infusion if patient improves. Vasopressors such as dopamine or norepinephrine should be started if patient continues to be hypotensive and bradycardic. In patients who are severely poisoned and refractory to these initial measures, hyperinsulinemia euglycemic therapy should be started. Your regional poison control center should be contacted for further details on dosing of this therapy.

Dewitt CR, Waksman JC: Pharmacology, pathophysiology and management of calcium channel blocker and beta-blocker toxicity. Toxicol Rev 2004;23(4):223–238 [PMID: 15898828].

Engebretsen KM, Kaczmarek KM, Morgan J, Holger JS: High-dose insulin therapy in beta-blocker and calcium channel-blocker poisoning. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2011;49(4):277–283 [PMID: 21563902].

CARBON MONOXIDE

The degree of toxicity correlates well with the carboxyhemoglobin level taken soon after acute exposure but not after oxygen has been given or when there has been some time since exposure. Onset of symptoms may be more rapid and more severe if the patient lives at a high altitude, has a high respiratory rate (ie, infants), is pregnant, or has myocardial insufficiency or lung disease. Normal blood may contain up to 5% carboxyhemoglobin (10% in smokers). Neonates may have elevated carboxyhemoglobin levels due to breakdown of bilirubin.

Presenting symptoms can include nonspecific symptoms such as headache or flu-like illness. Other effects include confusion, unsteadiness, and coma. Proteinuria, glycosuria, elevated serum aminotransferase levels, or ECG changes may be present in the acute phase. Permanent cardiac, liver, renal, or CNS damage occurs occasionally. The outcome of severe poisoning may be complete recovery, vegetative state, or any degree of mental injury between these extremes. The primary mental deficits are neuropsychiatric.

» Treatment

The biologic half-life of carbon monoxide on room air is approximately 200–300 minutes; on 100% oxygen, it is 60–90 minutes. Thus, 100% oxygen should be administered immediately. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy at 2.0–2.5 atm of oxygen shortens the half-life to 30 minutes. The use of hyperbaric oxygen therapy for delayed neurologic sequelae can be considered, but remains controversial. After the level has been reduced to near zero, therapy is aimed at the nonspecific sequelae of anoxia. Evaluation of the source should be performed before the patient returns to the home.

Buckley NA, et al: Hyperbaric oxygen for carbon monoxide poisoning. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011;13(4):CD002041 [PMID: 21491385].

Chou KJ: Characteristics and outcome of children with carbon monoxide poisoning with and without smoke exposure referred for hyperbaric oxygen therapy. Pediatr Emerg Care 2000;3:151 [PMID: 10888449].

CAUSTICS

Both acids and alkalis can burn the skin, mucous membranes, and eyes. Painful swallowing, mucous membrane burns, hematemesis, and abdominal pain can occur after ingestion. Respiratory distress may be due to edema of the epiglottis, pulmonary edema resulting from inhalation of fumes, or pneumonia. In severe cases, mediastinitis, intercurrent infections, or shock can occur. Perforation of the esophagus or stomach is rare. Residual lesions include esophageal, gastric, and pyloric strictures as well as scars of the cornea, skin, and oropharynx.

1. Acids (Hydrochloric, Hydrofluoric, Nitric, & Sulfuric Acids; Sodium Bisulfate)

Strong acids are commonly found in metal and toilet bowl cleaners, batteries, and other products, and can lead to coagulative necrosis.

http://obgynebooks.com

Hydrofluoric acid is a particularly dangerous acid. Dermal exposure creates a penetrating burn that can progress for hours or days. Large dermal exposure or small ingestion may produce life-threatening hypocalcemia.

2. Bases (Clinitest Tablets, Clorox, Drano, Liquid-Plumr, Purex, Sani-Clor—Examine the Label or Call a Poison Center to Determine Contents)

Alkalis can produce more severe injuries than acids, resulting in liquefactive necrosis. Some substances, such as Clinitest tablets or Drano, are quite toxic, whereas the chlorinated bleaches (3%–6% solutions of sodium hypochlorite) are usually not toxic. When sodium hypochlorite comes in contact with acid in the stomach, hypochlorous acid, which is very irritating to the mucous membranes and skin, is formed. Chlorinated bleaches, when mixed with a strong acid (toilet bowl cleaners) or ammonia, may produce irritating chlorine or chloramine gas, which can cause serious lung injury if inhaled in a closed space (eg, bathroom).

» Treatment

Emetics and lavage are contraindicated. Can dilution with water, but take care not to induce emesis by excessive fluid administration. Neutralization should not be attempted. Burned areas of the skin, mucous membranes, or eyes should be washed with copious amounts of warm water. The eye should be irrigated for at least 20–30 minutes. Ophthalmologic consultation should be obtained for all alkaline eye burns. Opioids for pain may be needed. An endotracheal tube may be required to alleviate laryngeal edema. The absence of oral lesions does not rule out the possibility of laryngeal or esophageal burns following granular alkali ingestion. Esophagoscopy should be performed if the patient has significant burns or difficulty in swallowing, drooling, vomiting or stridor. Evidence is not conclusive, but corticosteroids may be helpful. Antibiotics may be needed if mediastinitis develops, but they should not be used prophylactically.

Hydrofluoric acid burns on skin are treated with 10% calcium gluconate gel or calcium gluconate infusion. Severe exposure may require large doses of IV calcium. Therapy should be guided by calcium levels, the ECG, and clinical signs.

Crain EF, Gershel JC, Mezey AP: Caustic ingestions-symptoms as predictors of esophageal injury. Am J Dis Child 1984;138: 863–865 [PMID: 6475876].

Hamza AF et al: Caustic esophageal strictures in children: 30 years' experience. J Pediatr Surg 2003;338:828 [PMID: 12778375].

Usta M et al: High doses of methylprednisone in the management of caustic esophageal burns. Pediatrics. 2014;133(6):E1518–E1524 [PMID: 24864182].

CENTRAL α_2-ADRENERGIC AGONIST

Central α_2-adrenergic agonists are common over-the-counter and prescribed medication. The imidazolines are found in nasal decongestants and eye drops to relieve redness. Clonidine and guanfacine are used most commonly to treat attention deficit hyperactivity disorder or hypertension. Dexmedetomidine is an IV central α_2-adrenergic agonist used for sedation. These medications exert their effects by stimulating presynaptic α_2-adrenergic receptors in the brain, resulting in decreased norepinephrine release and decreased sympathetic outflow.

» Clinical Findings

Most common effects are related to CNS sedation. They can present similar to an opioid toxidrome with miosis, CNS depression, and respiratory depression. Other common effects include bradycardia and hypotension.

» Treatment

If the patient becomes obtunded, or has inability to protect their airway, intubation may be indicated. Naloxone has been tried to reverse signs of toxicity with varying success. Symptomatic bradycardia can be treated with IV fluid resuscitation or atropine. Hypotension should be treated initially with IV fluid resuscitation, followed by vasopressors if needed

Shinha Y, Cranswick NE: Clonidine poisoning in children: a recent experience. J Paediatr Child Health 2004;40:678–680 [PMID: 15569283].

Wang et al: Unintentional pediatric exposures to central alpha-2 agonists reported to the National Poison Data System. J Pediatr 2014;164(1):149–152 [PMID: 24094880].

COCAINE

Cocaine is absorbed intranasally or via inhalation or ingestion. Effects are noted almost immediately when the drug is taken intravenously or smoked. Peak effects are delayed for about an hour when the drug is taken orally or nasally. Cocaine prevents the reuptake of endogenous catecholamines, thereby causing an initial sympathetic discharge, followed by catechol depletion after chronic abuse.

» Clinical Findings

A local anesthetic and vasoconstrictor, cocaine is also a potent stimulant to both the CNS and the cardiovascular system. The initial tachycardia, hyperpnea, hypertension, and stimulation of the CNS are often followed by coma, seizures, hypotension, and respiratory depression. In severe cases of overdose, various dysrhythmias may be seen, including sinus tachycardia, atrial arrhythmias, premature ventricular

http://obgynebooks.com

contractions, bigeminy, and ventricular fibrillation. If large doses are taken intravenously, cardiac failure, dysrhythmias, rhabdomyolysis, or hyperthermia may result in death.

In addition to those poisoned through recreational use of cocaine, others are at risk of overdose. A "body stuffer" is one who quickly ingests the drug, usually poorly wrapped, to avoid discovery. A "body packer" wraps the drug carefully for prolonged transport. A stuffer typically manifests toxicity within hours of ingestion; a packer is asymptomatic unless the package ruptures, usually days later. Newborns of cocaine using mothers may continue to have seizures for months after birth.

» Treatment

Activated charcoal should be considered in body stuffers, and whole bowel irrigation may be useful in cases of body packers. Testing for cocaine in blood or plasma is generally not clinically useful, but a qualitative analysis of the urine may aid in confirming the diagnosis. For severe cases, an ECG is indicated. In suspected cases of body packing, radiographs of the GI tract may show multiple packets, but are usually not helpful for identifying stuffers. Seizures are treated with IV benzodiazepines such as lorazepam, titrated to response. Hypotension is treated with standard agents. Because cocaine abuse may deplete norepinephrine, an indirect agent such as dopamine may be less effective than a direct agent such as norepinephrine. Agitation is best treated with a benzodiazepine.

Delaney-Black V: Prenatal cocaine exposure as a risk factor for later developmental outcomes. JAMA 2001;286:46 [PMID: 11434823].

Flach PM et al: "Drug mules" as a radiological challenge: sensitivity and specificity in identifying internal cocaine in body packers, body pushers, and body stuffers by computer tomography, plain radiography and Lodox. Eur J Radiol 2012;81(10): 2518–2526 [PMID: 22178312].

Qureshi AI et al: Cocaine use and the likelihood of nonfatal myocardial infarction and stroke: data from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. Circulation 2001;103:502 [PMID: 11157713].

COSMETICS & RELATED PRODUCTS

Cosmetics and personal care products are the most frequently involved substance in pediatric patients younger than 5 years (14% of all calls reported to NPDS) and second most common in all ages. Luckily, most of them do not cause significant toxicity. The relative toxicities of commonly ingested products in this group are listed in Table 13–4.

Table 13–4. Relative toxicities of cosmetics and similar products.

High toxicity	Low toxicity
Permanent wave neutralizers	Perfume
Moderate toxicity	Hair removers
Fingernail polish	Deodorants
Fingernail polish remover	Bath salts
Metallic hair dyes	**No toxicity**
Home permanent wave lotion	Liquid makeup
Bath oil	Vegetable hair dye
Shaving lotion	Cleansing cream
Hair tonic (alcoholic)	Hair dressing (nonalcoholic)
Cologne, toilet water	Hand lotion or cream
	Lipstick

CYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS

Cyclic antidepressants (eg, amitriptyline, imipramine) have a very low ratio of toxic to therapeutic doses, and even a moderate overdose can have serious effects. Diphenhydramine toxicity can have similarly symptoms as cyclic antidepressants and is more readily available.

Cyclic antidepressant overdosage can cause a progression of illness beginning with sudden onset coma within 1–2 hours of ingestion, followed by convulsions, hypotension, and dysrhythmias. These effects may be life-threatening and require rapid intervention. One agent, amoxapine, differs in that it causes fewer cardiovascular complications, but it is associated with a higher incidence of seizures.

» Treatment

After a significant ingestion, decontamination should include administration of activated charcoal unless the patient is already symptomatic. Benzodiazepines should be given for seizures.

An ECG should be obtained in all patients. A QRS interval greater than 100 milliseconds specifically identifies patients at risk to develop dysrhythmias. If dysrhythmias or tachycardia are demonstrated, the patient should be admitted and monitored until free of irregularity for 24 hours. The onset of dysrhythmias is rare beyond 24 hours after ingestion.

Alkalinization with sodium bicarbonate (0.5–1.0 mEq/kg IV) may dramatically reverse ventricular dysrhythmias and narrow the QRS interval. If intubated, hyperventilation may be helpful. Lidocaine may be added for treatment of arrhythmias. Bolus administration of sodium bicarbonate (1–2 mEq/kg) is recommended for all patients with QRS widening to above 120 milliseconds and for those with significant dysrhythmias, to achieve a pH of 7.5–7.6. Lipid-emulsion therapy has been used in the setting of cardiotoxicity.

Cyclic antidepressants block the reuptake of catecholamines, thereby producing initial hypertension followed by hypotension. Vasopressors are generally effective. Dopamine is the agent of choice because it is readily available. If dopamine is ineffective, norepinephrine (0.1–1 mcg/kg/min, titrated to response) should be added. Diuresis and hemodialysis are not effective and physostigmine is contraindicated.

http://obgynebooks.com

Blaber MS et al: "Lipid rescue" for tricyclic antidepressant cardiotoxicity. J Emerg Med 2012;43(3):465–467 [PMID: 22244291].
Kerr GW et al: Tricyclic antidepressant overdose: a review. Emerg Med J 2001;18:236 [PMID: 11435353].
Woolf AD et al: Tricyclic antidepressant poisoning: an evidence-based consensus guideline for out-of-hospital management. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2007;45(3):203–333 [PMID: 17453872].

DIGITALIS & OTHER CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES

Acute toxicity is typically the result of incorrect dosing, and chronic toxicity is due to unrecognized renal insufficiency. Clinical features include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, delirium, confusion, and, occasionally, coma. Cardiac dysrhythmias typically involve bradydysrhythmias, but every type of dysrhythmia has been reported in digitalis intoxication, including atrial fibrillation, paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, and atrial flutter. Transplacental intoxication by digitalis has been reported. Cardiac glycosides, such as yellow oleander and foxglove, can cause digitalis toxicity in large ingestions as well.

» Treatment

If patient is awake and alert, consider administering activated charcoal. Potassium is contraindicated in acute overdosage unless there is laboratory evidence of hypokalemia. In acute overdosage, hyperkalemia is more common. Hypokalemia is common in chronic toxicity.

The patient must be monitored carefully for ECG changes. Bradycardias have been treated with atropine. Phenytoin, lidocaine, magnesium salts (not in renal failure), amiodarone, and bretylium have been used to correct arrhythmias.

Definitive treatment is with digoxin immune Fab (ovine) (Digibind). Indications for its use include hypotension or any dysrhythmia, typically ventricular dysrhythmias and progressive bradydysrhythmias, or hyperkalemia (K > 5) in an acute overdose. Elevated T waves indicate high potassium and may be an indication for digoxin immune Fab (Digibind, DigiFab) use. Techniques of determining dosage and indications related to levels, when available are described in product literature. High doses of digoxin immune Fab may be needed in cardiac glycoside overdose.

Rajapakse S: Management of yellow oleander poisoning. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2009;47(3):206–212 [PMID: 19306191].
Woolf AD et al: The use of digoxin-specific Fab fragments for severe digitalis intoxication in children. N Engl J Med 1992;326:1739 [PMID: 1997016].

DIPHENOXYLATE WITH ATROPINE (LOMOTIL) & LOPERAMIDE (IMODIUM)

Loperamide (Imodium) has largely replaced Lomotil and does not produce significant toxicity. Ingestions of up to 0.4 mg/kg can safely be managed at home. Chronic abuse of loperamide has been associated with cardiac dysrhythmias.

Lomotil is still widely available and contains diphenoxylate hydrochloride, a synthetic narcotic, and atropine sulfate. Small amounts are potentially lethal in children; it is contraindicated in children younger than 2 years. Early signs of intoxication with this preparation result from its anticholinergic effect and consist of fever, facial flushing, tachypnea, and lethargy. However, the miotic effect of the narcotic predominates. Later, hypothermia, increasing CNS depression, and loss of the facial flush occur. Seizures are probably secondary to hypoxia. Any ingestion of Lomotil must be observed for 8–12 hours as delayed respiratory arrest may be encountered.

» Treatment

Prolonged monitoring (24 hours) with pulse oximetry and careful attention to airway is sufficient in most cases. Naloxone hydrochloride (0.4–2.0 mg IV in children and adults) should be given for signs of respiratory depression. Repeated doses may be required because the duration of action of diphenoxylate is considerably longer than that of naloxone.

Marraffa JM et al: Cardiac conduction disturbance after loperamide abuse. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2014;52(9):952–957 [PMID: 25345436].
McCarron MM et al: Diphenoxylate-atropine (Lomotil) overdose in children: an update. Pediatrics 1991;87:694 [PMID: 2020516].

DISINFECTANTS & DEODORIZERS

1. Naphthalene

Naphthalene is now less commonly found in mothballs, disinfectants, and deodorizers. Naphthalene's toxicity is often not fully appreciated. It is absorbed not only when ingested but also through the skin and lungs. It is potentially hazardous to store baby clothes in naphthalene, because baby oil is an excellent solvent that may increase dermal absorption. Metabolic products of naphthalene may cause severe hemolytic anemia, similar to that due to primaquine toxicity, 2–7 days after ingestion. Other physical findings include vomiting, diarrhea, jaundice, oliguria, anuria, coma, and convulsions.

» Treatment

If the patient is awake and alert, consideration can be given for administering activated charcoal. Methemoglobinemia and hemolysis may occur 24–48 hours after ingestion. Life-threatening hemolysis and anemia may require blood transfusions.

http://obgynebooks.com

Siegel E, Wason S: Mothball toxicity. Pediatr Clin North Am 1986;33:369 [PMID: 3515301].

2. p-Dichlorobenzene, Phenolic Acids, & Others

Disinfectants and deodorizers containing p-dichlorobenzene or sodium sulfate are now more commonly found in mothballs and much less toxic than those containing naphthalene. They typically cause mucous membrane irritation and GI upset. Camphor can cause seizures after ingestion.

Disinfectants containing phenolic acids are highly toxic, especially if they contain a borate ion. Phenol precipitates tissue proteins and causes respiratory alkalosis followed by metabolic acidosis. Some phenols cause methemoglobinemia. Phenol is readily absorbed topically and from the GI tract, causing local injury, diffuse capillary damage and, in some cases, methemoglobinemia. Pentachlorophenol, which has been used in terminal rinsing of diapers, has caused infant fatalities by causing metabolic acidosis.

The toxicity of alkalis, quaternary ammonium compounds, pine oil, and halogenated disinfectants varies with the concentration of active ingredients. Wick deodorizers are usually of moderate toxicity. Iodophor disinfectants are the safest. Spray deodorizers are not usually toxic, because a child is not likely to swallow a very large dose.

Signs and symptoms of acute quaternary ammonium compound ingestion include diaphoresis, strong irritation, thirst, vomiting, diarrhea, cyanosis, hyperactivity, coma, convulsions, hypotension, abdominal pain, and pulmonary edema. Acute liver or renal failure may develop later.

» Treatment

Mainstay to phenol toxicity is symptomatic and supportive care. The metabolic acidosis must be managed carefully. Anticonvulsants or measures to treat shock may be needed.

Because phenols are absorbed through the skin, exposed areas should be irrigated copiously with water. Undiluted polyethylene glycol may be a useful solvent as well.

Van Berkel M, de Wolff FA: Survival after acute benzalkonium chloride poisoning. Hum Toxicol 1988;7:191 [PMID: 3378808].

DISK-SHAPED "BUTTON" BATTERIES

Small, flat, smooth disk-shaped batteries measure between 10 and 25 mm in diameter. About 69% of them pass through the GI tract in 48 hours and 85% in 72 hours. Some may become entrapped and lead to caustic injury.

Batteries impacted in the esophagus may cause symptoms of refusal to take food, increased salivation, vomiting with or without blood, and pain or discomfort. Aspiration into the trachea may also occur. Fatalities have been reported in association with esophageal perforation or fistula formation.

When a history of disk battery ingestion is obtained, radiographs of the entire respiratory tract and GI tract should be taken immediately so that the battery can be located and the proper therapy determined.

» Treatment

Any disk battery ingestion should be referred for evaluation and radiographs. If the disk battery is located in the esophagus, it must be removed immediately. Any prolonged time in the esophagus can cause injury. Consultation with GI or surgical subspecialty is recommended.

Location of the disk battery below the esophagus has been rarely associated with tissue damage, but the course is benign in most cases. Perforated Meckel diverticulum has been the major complication. It may take as long as 7 days for spontaneous passage to occur, and lack of movement in the GI tract may not require removal in an asymptomatic patient.

Some researchers have suggested repeated radiographs and surgical intervention if passage of the battery pauses, but this approach may be excessive. Batteries that have opened in the GI tract have been rarely associated with some toxicity due to mercury, but the patients have recovered.

Asymptomatic patients may simply be observed and stools examined for passage of the battery. If the battery has not passed within 7 days or if the patient becomes symptomatic, radiographs should be repeated. If the battery has come apart or appears not to be moving, a purgative, enema, or nonabsorbable intestinal lavage solution should be administered. If these methods are unsuccessful, surgical intervention may be required. Levels of heavy metals (mainly mercury) should be measured in patients in whom the battery has opened or symptoms have developed.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Injuries from batteries among children aged < 13 years—United States, 1995–2010. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2012;61(34): 661–666 [PMID: 22932299].

Fuentes S et al: Severe esophageal injuries caused by accidental button battery ingestion in children. J Emerg Trauma Shock 2014;7(4):316–321 [PMID: 25400396].

Sharpe SJ et al: Pediatric battery-related emergency department visits in the United States, 1990–2009. Pediatrics 2012;129(6):1111 [PMID: 22585763].

ETHYLENE GLYCOL & METHANOL

Ethylene glycol and methanol are the toxic alcohols. The primary source of ethylene glycol is antifreeze, whereas methanol is present in windshield wiper fluid and also as

http://obgynebooks.com

an ethanol denaturant. Ethylene glycol causes severe metabolic acidosis and renal failure. Methanol causes metabolic acidosis and blindness. Onset of symptoms with both agents occurs within several hours after ingestion, longer if ethanol was ingested simultaneously. Rarely, glycol ethers can cause acidosis, but only in the setting of large ingestions.

» Treatment

The primary treatment is to block the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase, which converts both agents to their toxic metabolites. This is accomplished with fomepizole (loading dose of 15 mg/kg) or ethanol. Fomepizole is preferred for children, due to its reduced side effects in this age group. Hemodialysis is indicated with high concentrations, persistent metabolic acidosis, or end organ toxicity.

Brent J: Fomepizole for the treatment of pediatric ethylene and diethylene glycol, butoxyethanol, and methanol poisonings. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2010;48(5):401–406 [PMID: 20586570].

Wang GS et al: Severe poisoning after accidental pediatric ingestion of glycol ethers. Pediatrics 2012;130(4):e1026–e1029 [PMID: 23008459].

γ-HYDROXYBUTYRATE, γ-BUTYROLACTONE, BUTANEDIOL, FLUNITRAZEPAM, & KETAMINE

γ-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB), γ-butyrolactone (GBL), and butanediol have become popular drugs of abuse in adolescents and adults. GHB is a CNS depressant that is structurally similar to the inhibitory neurotransmitter γ-aminobutyric acid. GBL and butanediol are converted in the body to GHB. These drugs cause deep but short-lived coma; the coma often lasts only 1–4 hours. Flunitrazepam (Rohypnol) is a benzodiazepine that can lead to somnolence and CNS depression. Ketamine is a disassociative anesthetic that can also cause rapid onset altered mental status and CNS depression. Although all of these drugs are often referred to as "date rape" drugs, ethanol is the most commonly used substance in drug facilitated assault.

Treatment consists of supportive care with close attention to airway and endotracheal intubation if respiratory depression or decreased gag reflex complicates the poisoning. Atropine has been used successfully for symptomatic bradycardia.

Withdrawal from GHB, GBL, or butanediol can cause several days of extreme agitation, hallucination, or tachycardia. Treatment with high doses of sedatives such as benzodiazepines or with butyrophenones (eg, haloperidol or droperidol) or secobarbital may be needed for several days.

Schep LJ et al: The clinical toxicology of gamma-hydroxybutyrate, gamma-butyrolactone and 1,4-butanediol. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2012;50(6):458–470 [PMID: 22746383].

HYDROCARBONS (BENZENE, CHARCOAL LIGHTER FLUID, GASOLINE, KEROSENE, PETROLEUM DISTILLATES, TURPENTINE)

Ingestion of hydrocarbons may cause irritation of mucous membranes, CNS depression, or aspiration pneumonitis. Hydrocarbons with high volatility, low viscosity, and low surface tension have more risk or aspiration pneumonitis. Benzene, kerosene, red seal oil furniture polish, and some of the essential oils are very dangerous. A dose exceeding 1 mL/kg is likely to cause CNS depression. A history of coughing or choking, as well as vomiting, suggests aspiration with resulting hydrocarbon pneumonia. Several weeks may be required for full resolution of hydrocarbon pneumonia. Pulmonary edema and hemorrhage, blebs, cardiac dilation and dysrhythmias, hepatosplenomegaly, proteinuria, and hematuria can occur following large overdoses.

» Treatment

Both emetics and lavage should be avoided. Initial supportive care, observing for CNS depression or respiratory distress. Patients who are asymptomatic with a normal chest x-ray (CXR) after 8 hours are unlikely to develop significant illness; however, patients who develop respiratory symptoms, hypoxia, or CXR changes should be observed.

Epinephrine should be avoided with halogenated hydrocarbons because it may affect an already sensitized myocardium. The usefulness of corticosteroids is debated, and antibiotics should be reserved for patients with infections (pneumonitis can cause fevers and infiltrates). Oxygen and mist are helpful. Surfactant therapy for severe hydrocarbon-induced lung injury has been used successfully. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation has been successful in at least two cases of failure with standard therapy.

Mastropietro SW et al: Early administration of intratracheal surfactant (calfactant) after hydrocarbon aspiration. Pediatrics 2011;127(6):e1600–e1604 [PMID: 21624800].

Tormoehlen LM: Hydrocarbon toxicity: a review. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2014;52(5):479–489 [PMID: 24911841].

IBUPROFEN

Most exposures in children do not produce symptoms. In one study, for example, children ingesting up to 2.4 g remained asymptomatic. When symptoms occur, the most common are abdominal pain, vomiting, drowsiness, and lethargy. In rare cases, apnea (especially in young children), seizures, metabolic acidosis, and CNS depression leading to coma have occurred.

» Treatment

If a child has ingested less than 100 mg/kg, supportive care for GI upset is typically all that is needed. When the ingested

http://obgynebooks.com

amount is more than 400 mg/kg, seizures or CNS depression may occur. There is no specific antidote. Neither alkalinization of the urine nor hemodialysis is helpful in elimination of ibuprofen. However, hemodialysis may be needed to correct acid base abnormalities.

Cuzzolin L et al: NSAID-induced nephrotoxicity from the fetus to the child. Drug Safety 2001;242:9 [PMID: 11219488].
Marciniak KE et al: Massive ibuprofen overdose requiring extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for cardiovascular support. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2007;8:180–182 [PMID: 17273120].

INSECT STINGS (BEE, WASP, & HORNET)

Insect stings are painful but not usually dangerous; however, death from anaphylaxis may occur. Bee venom has hemolytic, neurotoxic, and histamine-like activities that can on rare occasion cause hemoglobinuria and severe anaphylactoid reactions. Massive envenomation from numerous stings may cause hemolysis, rhabdomyolysis, and shock leading to multiple-organ failure.

» Treatment

The physician should remove the stinger, taking care not to squeeze the attached venom sac. For allergic reactions, epinephrine 1:1000 solution, 0.01 mL/kg, should be administered IV or SQ above the site of the sting. Albuterol, corticosteroids and diphenhydramine are useful ancillary drugs but have no immediate effect. Ephedrine or antihistamines may be used for 2 or 3 days to prevent recurrence of symptoms.

For the more usual stings, cold compresses, aspirin, and diphenhydramine (1 mg/kg PO) are sufficient.

Ross RN et al: Effectiveness of specific immunotherapy in the treatment of hymenoptera venom hypersensitivity: a meta-analysis. Clin Ther 2000;22:351 [PMID: 10963289].
Vetter RS et al: Mass envenomations by honey bees and wasps. West J Med 1999;170:223 [PMID: 10344177].

INSECTICIDES

The petroleum distillates or other organic solvents used in these products are often as toxic as the insecticide itself.

1. Chlorinated Hydrocarbons (eg, Aldrin, Carbinol, Chlordane, DDT, Dieldrin, Endrin, Heptachlor, Lindane, Toxaphene)

Signs of intoxication include salivation, GI irritability, abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea, CNS depression, and convulsions. Inhalation exposure causes irritation of the eyes, nose, and throat; blurred vision; cough; and pulmonary edema.

Chlorinated hydrocarbons are absorbed through the skin, respiratory tract, and GI tract. Decontamination of skin with soap and evacuation of the stomach contents should be considered in significant ingestions. All contaminated clothing should be removed. Convulsions should be treated with diazepam (0.1–0.3 mg/kg IV). Epinephrine should cautiously be used as it may precipitate cardiac arrhythmias.

2. Organophosphate (Cholinesterase-Inhibiting) Insecticides (eg, Chlorothion, Co-Ral, DFP, Diazinon, Malathion, Paraoxon, Parathion, Phosdrin, TEPP, Thio-TEPP)

Dizziness, headache, blurred vision, miosis, tearing, salivation, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, hyperglycemia, cyanosis, sense of constriction of the chest, dyspnea, sweating, weakness, muscular twitching, convulsions, loss of reflexes and sphincter control, and coma can occur.

The clinical findings are the result of cholinesterase inhibition, which causes an accumulation of acetylcholine. The onset of symptoms occurs within 12 hours of the exposure. Red cell cholinesterase levels should be measured as soon as possible. (Some normal individuals have a low serum cholinesterase level.) Normal values vary in different laboratories. In general, a decrease of red cell cholinesterase to below 25% of normal indicates significant exposure.

Repeated low-grade exposure may result in sudden, acute toxic reactions. This syndrome usually occurs after repeated household spraying rather than agricultural exposure.

Although all organophosphates act by inhibiting cholinesterase activity, they vary greatly in their toxicity. Parathion, for example, is 100 times more toxic than malathion. Toxicity is influenced by the specific compound, type of formulation (liquid or solid), vehicle, and route of absorption (lungs, skin, or GI tract).

» Treatment

Decontamination of skin, nails, hair, and clothing with soapy water is extremely important. Atropine plus a cholinesterase reactivator, pralidoxime, is an antidote for organophosphate insecticide poisoning. After assessment and management of the ABCs, atropine should be given and repeated every few minutes until airway secretions diminish. An appropriate starting dose of atropine is 2–4 mg IV in an adult and 0.05 mg/kg in a child. The patient should receive enough atropine to stop secretions (mydriasis in not an appropriate stopping point). Severe poisoning may require gram quantities of atropine administered over 24 hours. Glycopyrrolate can also be used.

Because atropine antagonizes the muscarinic parasympathetic effects of the organophosphates but does not affect the nicotinic receptor, it does not improve muscular weakness. Pralidoxime should also be given immediately in more severe cases and repeated every 6–12 hours as needed (25–50 mg/kg diluted to 5% and infused over 5–30 minutes at a rate of no

http://obgynebooks.com

> 500 mg/min). Pralidoxime should be used in addition to—not in place of—atropine if red cell cholinesterase is less than 25% of normal. Pralidoxime is most useful within 48 hours after the exposure but has shown some effects 2–6 days later. Morphine, theophylline, aminophylline, succinylcholine, and tranquilizers of the reserpine and phenothiazine types are contraindicated. Hyperglycemia is common in severe poisonings.

3. Carbamates (eg, Carbaryl, Sevin, Zectran)

Carbamate insecticides are reversible inhibitors of cholinesterase. The signs and symptoms of intoxication are similar to those associated with organophosphate poisoning but are generally less severe. Atropine titrated to effect is sufficient treatment. In combined exposures to organophosphates, give atropine but reserve pralidoxime for cases in which the red cell cholinesterase is depressed below 25% of normal or marked effects of nicotinic receptor stimulation are present.

4. Botanical Insecticides (eg, Black Flag Bug Killer, Black Leaf CPR Insect Killer, Flit Aerosol House & Garden Insect Killer, French's Flea Powder, Raid)

Allergic reactions, asthma-like symptoms, coma, and convulsions have been reported. Pyrethrins, allethrin, and rotenone do not commonly cause significant toxicity. Antihistamines, short-acting benzodiazepines, and atropine are helpful as symptomatic treatment.

Eisenstein EM, Amitai Y: Index of suspicion: case 1. Organophosphate intoxication. Pediatr Rev 2000;21:205 [PMID: 10854316].

Roberts JR et al: Pesticide exposure in children. Pediatrics 2012;130(6):e1765–e1788 [PMID: 23184105].

IRON

Iron has many different formulations with varying amounts of elemental iron. Three common formulations include ferrous fumarate (33%), ferrous sulfate (20%), and ferrous gluconate (12%). Typically, doses of more than 20 mg/kg of elemental iron will cause symptoms. Five stages of intoxication may occur in iron poisoning: (1) Hemorrhagic gastroenteritis, which occurs 30–60 minutes after ingestion and may be associated with shock, acidosis, coagulation defects, and coma; this phase usually lasts 4–6 hours; (2) phase of improvement, lasting 2–12 hours, during which patient looks better; (3) delayed shock, which may occur 12–48 hours after ingestion; Metabolic acidosis, fever, leukocytosis, and coma may also be present; (4) liver damage with hepatic failure; and (5) residual pyloric stenosis, which may develop about 4 weeks after the ingestion.

Once iron is absorbed from the GI tract, it is not normally eliminated in feces but may be partially excreted in the urine, giving it a red color prior to chelation. A reddish discoloration of the urine suggests a serum iron level greater than 350 mg/dL, but is neither sensitive nor specific.

» Treatment

GI decontamination is based on clinical assessment. The patient should be referred to a healthcare facility if symptomatic or if the history indicates toxic amounts (typically > 20 mg/kg of elemental iron). Gastric lavage and whole bowel irrigation should be considered in potentially life-threatening overdoses.

Shock is treated in the usual manner. Deferoxamine, a specific chelating agent for iron, is a useful adjunct in the treatment of severe iron poisoning. It forms a soluble complex that is excreted in the urine. It is contraindicated in patients with renal failure unless dialysis can be used. IV deferoxamine chelation therapy should be instituted if the patient has a metabolic acidosis, persistent symptoms, and a serum iron determination cannot be obtained readily, or if the peak serum iron exceeds 400 mcg/dL (62.6 μmol/L) at 4–5 hours after ingestion.

Deferoxamine should not be delayed until serum iron levels are available in serious cases of poisoning. IV administration is indicated if the patient is in shock, in which case it should be given at a dosage of 15 mg/kg/h. Infusion rates up to 35 mg/kg/h have been used in life-threatening poisonings. Rapid IV administration can cause hypotension, facial flushing, urticaria, tachycardia, and shock. Deferoxamine, 90 mg/kg IM every 8 hours (maximum, 1 g), may be given if IV access cannot be established, but the procedure is painful. The indications for discontinuation of deferoxamine have not been clearly delineated. Generally, it can be stopped after 12–24 hours if the acidosis has resolved and the patient is improving. Use of deferoxamine for greater than 24 hours has been associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

Hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis, or exchange transfusion can be used to increase the excretion of the dialyzable complex. Urine output should be monitored and urine sediment examined for evidence of renal tubular damage. Initial laboratory studies should include blood typing and cross-matching; total protein; serum iron, sodium, potassium, and chloride; Pco_2; pH; and liver function tests. Serum iron levels fall rapidly even if deferoxamine is not given.

After the acute episode, liver function studies and an upper GI series are indicated to rule out residual damage.

Black J et al: Child abuse by intentional iron poisoning presenting as shock and persistent acidosis. Pediatrics 2003;111:197 [PMID: 12509576].

http://obgynebooks.com

Juurlink DN et al: Iron poisoning in young children: association with the birth of a sibling. CMAJ 2003;165:1539 [PMID: 12796332].

LEAD

Lead poisoning (plumbism) causes vague symptoms, including weakness, irritability, weight loss, vomiting, personality changes, ataxia, constipation, headache, and colicky abdominal pain. Late manifestations consist of developmental delays, convulsions, and coma associated with increased intracranial pressure, which is a medical emergency.

Plumbism usually occurs insidiously in children younger than age 5 years. The most likely sources of lead include flaking leaded paint, artist's paints, fruit tree sprays, solder, brass alloys, home-glazed pottery, fumes from burning batteries and foreign country remedies. Only paint containing less than 1% lead is safe for interior use (eg, furniture, toys). Repetitive ingestions of small amounts of lead are far more serious than a single massive exposure. Toxic effects are likely to occur if more than 0.5 mg of lead per day is absorbed. In the United States, lead levels continue to decline and are more common abroad, so particular attention should be paid to immigrant and refugee populations or use of foreign remedies.

Blood lead levels are used to assess the severity of exposure. A complete blood count and serum ferritin concentration should be obtained; iron deficiency increases absorption of lead. Glycosuria, proteinuria, hematuria, and aminoaciduria occur frequently. Abnormal blood lead levels should be repeated in asymptomatic patients to rule out laboratory error. Specimens must be meticulously obtained in acid-washed containers. A normocytic, slightly hypochromic anemia with basophilic stippling of the red cells and reticulocytosis may be present in plumbism. Stippling of red blood cells is absent in cases involving only recent ingestion.

The cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) protein is elevated, and the white cell count usually is less than 100 cells/mL. CSF pressure may be elevated in patients with encephalopathy; lumbar punctures must be performed cautiously to prevent herniation.

» Treatment

Refer to the CDC guidelines for the most up to date recommendations on lead treatment. Removing the source of exposure is the most important initial treatment to toxicity. Succimer is an orally administered chelator approved for use in children and reported to be as efficacious as calcium edetate. Succimer should be initiated in asymptomatic children at blood lead levels over 45 mcg/dL. The initial dose is 10 mg/kg (350 mg/m^2) every 8 hours for 5 days. The same dose is then given every 12 hours for 14 days. At least 2 weeks should elapse between courses. Blood lead levels increase somewhat (ie, rebound) after discontinuation of therapy. Courses of dimercaprol/BAL (300–450 mg/m^2/d) and calcium sodium edetate/CaNa2EDTA (1000–1500 mg/m^2/d) should be considered in symptomatic children or levels over 70 mcg/dL.

Encephalopathy associated with cerebral edema needs to be treated with standard measures. Anticonvulsants may be needed. A high-calcium, high-phosphorus diet and large doses of vitamin D may remove lead from the blood by depositing it in the bones. A public health team should evaluate the source of the lead. Necessary corrections should be completed before the child is returned home.

CDC Low Level Lead Exposure Harms Children: A Renewed Call for Primary Prevention: http://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/acclpp/final_document_030712.pdf.

Raymond J et al: Lead screening and prevalence of blood lead levels in children aged 1–2 years—Child Blood Lead Surveillance System, United States, 2002–2010 and National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, United States, 1999–2010. MMWR Surveill Summ. 2014 Sep 12;63(Suppl 2):36–42 [PMID: 25208256].

Rogan WJ et al: Treatment of lead-exposed children trial group: the effect of chelation therapy with succimer on neuropsychological development in children exposed to lead. N Engl J Med 2001;344:1421 [PMID: 11346806].

MAGNETS

Although not strictly toxic, small magnets have been found to cause bowel obstructions in children. Recent cases have resulted in warnings and a recall by the Consumer Product Safety Commission following intestinal perforation and death in a 20-month-old child. Obstruction may occur following ingestion of as few as two magnets. Radiographs should be obtained and surgical consultation may be indicated.

Alzahem AM et al: Ingested magnets and gastrointestinal complications. J Paediatr Child Health 2007:43:497 [PMID: 17535185].

Consumer Product Safety Commission: http://www.cpsc.gov/CPSCPUB/PREREL/prhtml07/07163.html 2007. Accessed

MUSHROOMS

Toxic mushrooms are often difficult to distinguish from edible varieties. Contact a poison control center to obtain identification assistance. Symptoms vary with the species ingested, time of year, stage of maturity, quantity eaten, method of preparation, and interval since ingestion. Most mushrooms lead to early GI symptoms and do not lead to significant toxicity; however, some can be fatal and so it is critical to determine from poison center experts what mushroom may have been involved. A mushroom that is toxic to one individual may not be toxic to another. Drinking alcohol and eating certain mushrooms may cause a reaction similar to that seen with disulfiram and alcohol. Cooking destroys

http://obgynebooks.com

some toxins but not the deadly one produced by Amanita phalloides, which is responsible for 90% of deaths due to mushroom poisoning. Mushroom toxins are absorbed relatively slowly. Onset of symptoms within 2 hours of ingestion suggests muscarinic toxin, whereas a delay of symptoms for 6–48 hours after ingestion strongly suggests Amanita (amanitin) poisoning. Patients who have ingested A phalloides may relapse and die of hepatic or renal failure following initial improvement.

Mushroom poisoning may produce muscarinic symptoms (salivation, vomiting, diarrhea, cramping abdominal pain, tenesmus, miosis, and dyspnea), coma, convulsions, hallucinations, hemolysis, and delayed hepatic and renal failure.

» Treatment

Treatment of mushroom poisoning is highly specialized and consultation with a poison center is highly recommended. Supportive care with IV fluid resuscitation may be needed due to emesis and diarrhea. If the patient has muscarinic signs, give atropine, 0.05 mg/kg IM (0.02 mg/kg in toddlers), and repeat as needed (usually every 30 minutes) to keep the patient atropinized. Atropine, however, is used only when cholinergic effects are present and not for all mushrooms. Hypoglycemia is most likely to occur in patients with delayed onset of symptoms. Try to identify the mushroom if the patient is symptomatic. Consultation with a certified poison center is recommended. Local botanical gardens, university departments of botany, and societies of mycologists may be able to help. Supportive care is usually all that is needed; however, in the case of A phalloides, silibinin, biliary drainage, and aggressive management of fluids including hemodialysis may be indicated. Currently, there is clinical trial using intravenous silibinin for amatoxin induced hepatic failure, protocol available on http://www.clinicaltrials.gov.

North American Mycological Association: Mushroom Poisoning Syndromes: http://www.namyco.org/toxicology/poison_syndromes.html. Accessed

Pawlowska J et al: Liver transplantation in three family members after Amanita phalloides mushroom poisoning. Transplant Proc 2002;34:3313 [PMID: 12493457].

Silibinin and the full protocol are available from Prevention and Treatment of Amatoxin Induced Hepatic Failure With Intravenous Silibinin (Legalon®SIL): A Nationwide Open Clinical Trial. http://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/study/NCT00915681. Accessed

NITRITES, NITRATES, ANILINE, PENTACHLOROPHENOL, & DINITROPHENOL

Nausea, vertigo, vomiting, cyanosis (methemoglobinemia), cramping, abdominal pain, tachycardia, cardiovascular collapse, tachypnea, coma, shock, convulsions, and death are possible manifestations of nitrite or nitrate poisoning.

Nitrite and nitrate compounds found in the home include amyl nitrite, butyl nitrates, isobutyl nitrates, nitroglycerin, pentaerythritol tetranitrate, sodium nitrite, nitrobenzene, and phenazopyridine. Pentachlorophenol and dinitrophenol, which are found in wood preservatives, produce methemoglobinemia and acidosis because of uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation. Headache, dizziness, and bradycardia have been reported. High concentrations of nitrites in well water or spinach have been the most common cause of nitrite-induced methemoglobinemia. Other common causes of methemoglobinemia include local anesthetics. Symptoms do not usually occur until 15%–50% of the hemoglobin has been converted to methemoglobin. A rapid test is to compare a drop of normal blood with the patient's blood on a dry filter paper. Brown discoloration of the patient's blood indicates a methemoglobin level of more than 15%.

» Treatment

In the setting of a recent ingestion, consider administering activated charcoal if the patient is awake and alert. Decontaminate affected skin with soap and water. Oxygen and artificial respiration may be needed. If the blood methemoglobin level exceeds 30%, or if levels cannot be obtained and the patient is symptomatic, give a 1% solution of methylene blue (0.2 mL/kg IV) over 5–10 minutes. Avoid perivascular infiltration, because it causes necrosis of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. A dramatic change in the degree of cyanosis should occur. Transfusion is occasionally necessary. Epinephrine and other vasoconstrictors are contraindicated. If reflex bradycardia occurs, atropine should be used.

Cortazzo JA et al: Methemoglobinemia: a review and recommendations for management. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2014;28(4):1055–1059 [PMID: 23953868].

Kennedy N et al: Faulty sausage production causing methaemoglobinaemia. Arch Dis Child 1997;76:367 [PMID: 9166036].

OPIOIDS & OPIATES

Opioid and opiate-related medical problems may include drug addiction, withdrawal in a newborn infant, and accidental overdoses. They can vary in onset of action and duration of action. Opioids, including heroin, methadone, morphine, and codeine are routinely detected on most urine drug assays. However, many of the more commonly used oral opiates, such as oxycodone, hydrocodone, buprenorphine are not detected on standard urine drug assays. Care should be directed on clinical suspicion of ingestion.

Narcotic-addicted adolescents often have other medical problems, including cellulitis, abscesses, thrombophlebitis, tetanus, infective endocarditis, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, tuberculosis, hepatitis, malaria, foreign body emboli, thrombosis of pulmonary arterioles,

http://obgynebooks.com

diabetes mellitus, obstetric complications, nephropathy, and peptic ulcer.

» Treatment

A. Overdose

Opioids and opiates can cause respiratory depression, stridor, coma, increased oropharyngeal secretions, sinus bradycardia, and urinary retention. Pulmonary edema rarely occurs in children but has been reported; deaths usually result from aspiration of gastric contents, respiratory arrest, and cerebral edema. Convulsions may occur with propoxyphene overdosage.

The indication for the administration of naloxone is respiratory depression. Although suggested doses for naloxone hydrochloride range from 0.01 to 0.1 mg/kg, it is generally unnecessary to calculate the dosage on this basis. This extremely safe antidote should be given in sufficient quantity to reverse opioid-binding sites. Doses as low as 0.04 mg have been affective for reversal. For children younger than 1 year, one ampoule (0.4 mg) should be given initially; if there is no response, five more ampoules (2 mg) should be given rapidly. Older children should be given 0.4–0.8 mg, followed by 2–4 mg if there is no response. An improvement in respiratory status may be followed by respiratory depression, because the antagonist's duration of action is less than 1 hour. Neonates poisoned in utero may require 10–30 mg/kg to reverse the effect. Naloxone infusion can be used for persistent symptoms. Depending on the formulation, some exposures may need to be observed for 24 hours due to the duration of effect.

B. Withdrawal in the Addict

Benzodiazepines such as diazepam (10 mg every 6 hours PO) and antiemetics have been recommended for the treatment of mild narcotic withdrawal in ambulatory adolescents. Management of withdrawal in the confirmed addict may be accomplished with the administration of clonidine, by substitution with methadone or buprenorphine, or with reintroduction of the original addicting agent, if available through a supervised drug withdrawal program. A tapered course over 3 weeks will accomplish this goal. Death rarely, if ever, occurs. The abrupt discontinuation of narcotics (cold turkey method) is not recommended and may cause severe physical withdrawal signs.

C. Withdrawal in the Newborn

A newborn infant in opioid withdrawal is usually small for gestational age and demonstrates yawning, sneezing, decreased Moro reflex, hunger but uncoordinated sucking action, jitteriness, tremor, constant movement, a shrill protracted cry, increased tendon reflexes, convulsions, vomiting, fever, watery diarrhea, cyanosis, dehydration, vasomotor instability, seizure, and collapse.

The onset of symptoms commonly begins in the first 48 hours but may be delayed as long as 8 days, depending on the timing of the mother's last fix and her predelivery medication. The diagnosis can be confirmed easily by identifying the narcotic in the urine of the mother and the newborn.

Several treatment methods have been suggested for narcotic withdrawal in the newborn. Phenobarbital (8 mg/kg/d IM or PO in four doses for 4 days and then reduced by one-third every 2 days as signs decrease) may be continued for as long as 3 weeks. Methadone may be necessary in those infants with congenital methadone addiction who are not controlled in their withdrawal by large doses of phenobarbital. Dosage should be 0.5 mg/kg/d in two divided doses but can be increased gradually as needed. After control of the symptoms is achieved, the dose may be tapered over 4 weeks.

It is unclear whether prophylactic treatment with these drugs decreases the complication rate. The mortality rate of untreated narcotic withdrawal in the newborn may be as high as 45%.

Bailey JE, Campagna E, Dart RC: The underrecognized toll of prescription opioid abuse on young children. Ann Emerg Med 2009;53:419–424 [PMID: 18774623].

Geib AJ et al: Adverse effects in children after unintentional buprenorphine exposure. Pediatrics 2006;118(4):1746–1751 [PMID: 17015570].

ORAL HYPOGLYCEMICS (SULFONYLUREAS, METFORMIN)

Noninsulin hypoglycemic and antidiabetic medications include α-glucosidase inhibitors biguanides, gliptins, meglitinides, sulfonylureas, and thiazolidinediones. They are all used to treat hyperglycemia in diabetics. Sulfonylureas (acetohexamide, glipizide, glyburide) are the only oral hypoglycemic that actively secretes endogenous insulin and can cause hypoglycemia. The meglitinides (nateglinide, repaglinide) have scarce reports of hypoglycemia. Biguanides can rarely cause lactic acidosis in acute large overdose or in renal failure. Hypoglycemic symptoms are variable but can include altered mental status, diaphoresis, seizures, or coma.

» Treatment

Children with possible exposures to sulfonylureas should be admitted for 12–24 hours. Mainstay of treatment is treating hypoglycemia. If patient is awake and alert, with minimal symptoms, PO glucose can be given. With more severe hypoglycemia or symptomatic, immediate treatment with 0.5–1 g/kg IV dextrose bolus should be administered. With repeated episodes of hypoglycemia, once euglycemia is achieved, octreotide should be considered at 1 mcg/kg SC/IV every 6–8 hours as needed for hypoglycemia. Metformin toxicity

http://obgynebooks.com

should be treated supportively, and hemodialysis may be needed for severe acid-base abnormalities or patients with renal failure.

Glatstein M, Scolnik D, Betur Y: Octreotide for the treatment of sulfonylurea poisoning. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2012;50(9): 795–804 [PMID: 23046209].

Lung DD, Olson KR: Hypoglycemia in pediatric sulfonylurea poisoning: an 8-year poison center retrospective study. Pediatrics 2011;127(6):e1558–e1564 [PMID: 21606145].

ANTIPSYCHOTICS (TYPICAL & ATYPICAL)

Typical antipsychotics include butyrophenones (droperidol, haloperidol), and the phenothiazines (promethazine, chlorpromazine, thioridazine). Atypical antipsychotics include benzapines (clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine) and indoles (risperidone, ziprasidone).

» Clinical Findings

A. Extrapyramidal Crisis

Episodes characterized by torticollis, stiffening of the body, spasticity, poor speech, catatonia, and inability to communicate although conscious are typical manifestations. Extrapyramidal crises may represent idiosyncratic reactions and are aggravated by dehydration. The signs and symptoms occur most often in children who have received prochlorperazine. They are commonly mistaken for psychotic episodes. These extrapyramidal symptoms are more common with typical antipsychotics (butyrophenones, phenothiazines).

B. Overdose

Lethargy and deep prolonged coma are the most common symptoms seen in toxicity. Of the typical antipsychotics, promazine, chlorpromazine, and prochlorperazine are the drugs most likely to cause respiratory depression and precipitous drops in blood pressure. Risperidone and quetiapine are atypical antipsychotics that can cause CNS depression. Clozapine, olanzapine, and quetiapine most commonly cause hypotension and also antimuscarinic symptoms. QTc prolongation can occur, most commonly with thioridazine and ziprasidone. Occasionally, paradoxic hyperactivity and extrapyramidal signs as well as hyperglycemia and acetonemia are present. Seizures are uncommon.

C. Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome is a rare idiosyncratic complication that may be lethal. It is a syndrome involving mental status change (confusion, coma), motor abnormalities (lead pipe rigidity, clonus), and autonomic dysfunction (tachycardia, hyperpyrexia). Typically it occurs 1–2 weeks after starting therapy, can occur at therapeutic doses, and may last for several days.

» Treatment

Extrapyramidal signs are alleviated within minutes by the slow IV administration of diphenhydramine, 1–2 mg/kg (maximum, 50 mg), or benztropine mesylate, 1–2 mg IV (1 mg/min). No other treatment is usually indicated. Further doses may be needed.

Patients with overdoses should receive conservative supportive care. Hypotension may be treated with standard agents, starting with isotonic saline administration. Agitation is best treated with benzodiazepines. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome is treated by discontinuing the drug, and treating hyperthermia and agitation aggressively with benzodiazepines and sedation. In refractory cases, bromocriptine can be considered, although the evidence for its use is not clear.

Levine M, Ruha AM: Overdose of atypical antipsychotics: clinical presentation, mechanisms of toxicity and management. CNS Drugs 2012;26(7):601–611 [PMID: 22668123].

Minns AB, Clark RG: Toxicology and overdose of atypical antipsychotics. J Emerg Med 2012;43(5):906–913 [PMID: 22555052].

PLANTS

Many common ornamental, garden, and wild plants are potentially toxic. Only in a few cases will small amounts of a plant cause severe illness or death. Table 13–5 **lists the most toxic plants, symptoms and signs of poisoning, and treatment.** Contact your poison control center for assistance with identification.

PSYCHOTROPIC DRUGS

Psychotropic drugs consist of four general classes: stimulants (amphetamines, cocaine, nicotine), depressants (eg, narcotics, barbiturates), antidepressants and tranquilizers, and psychoactive drugs (marijuana, hallucinogens such as lysergic acid diethylamide [LSD], phencyclidine [PCP]).

» Clinical Findings

The following clinical findings are commonly seen in patients abusing drugs. See also other entries discussed in alphabetic order in this chapter.

A. Stimulants

Agitation, euphoria, grandiose feelings, tachycardia, fever, abdominal cramps, visual and auditory hallucinations, mydriasis, coma, convulsions, and respiratory depression. Nicotine is associated with vomiting, hypertension and tachycardia, followed by symptoms of cholinergic excess, seizures and weakness.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 13–5. Poisoning due to plants.[a]

	Symptoms and Signs	Treatment
Arum family: Caladium, Dieffenbachia, calla lily, dumb cane (oxalic acid)	Burning of mucous membranes and airway obstruction secondary to edema caused by calcium oxalate crystals.	Accessible areas should be thoroughly washed. Corticosteroids relieve airway obstruction. Apply cold packs to affected mucous membranes.
Castor bean plant (ricin—a toxalbumin) Jequirity bean (abrin—a toxalbumin)	Mucous membrane irritation, nausea, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, blurred vision, circulatory collapse, acute hemolytic anemia, convulsions, uremia.	Fluid and electrolyte monitoring. Saline cathartic. Forced alkaline diuresis will prevent complications due to hemagglutination and hemolysis.
Foxglove, lily of the valley, and oleander[b]	Nausea, diarrhea, visual disturbances, and cardiac irregularities (eg, heart block).	See treatment for digitalis drugs in text.
Jimsonweed: See Belladonna Alkaloids section in text	Mydriasis, dry mouth, tachycardia, and hallucinations.	Benzodiazepines for agitation, physostigmine.
Larkspur (ajacine, Delphinium, delphinine)	Nausea and vomiting, irritability, muscular paralysis, and central nervous system depression.	Symptomatic. Atropine may be helpful.
Monkshood (aconite)	Numbness of mucous membranes, visual disturbances, tingling, dizziness, tinnitus, hypotension, bradycardia, and convulsions.	Activated charcoal, oxygen. Atropine is probably helpful.
Poison hemlock (coniine)	Mydriasis, trembling, dizziness, bradycardia. Central nervous system depression, muscular paralysis, and convulsions. Death is due to respiratory paralysis.	Symptomatic. Oxygen and cardiac monitoring equipment are desirable. Assisted respiration is often necessary. Give anticonvulsants if needed.
Rhododendron (grayanotoxin)	Abdominal cramps, vomiting, severe diarrhea, muscular paralysis. Central nervous system and circulatory depression. Hypertension with very large doses.	Atropine can prevent bradycardia. Epinephrine is contraindicated. Antihypertensives may be needed.
Yellow Jessamine (active ingredient, gelsemine, is related to strychnine)	Restlessness, convulsions, muscular paralysis, and respiratory depression.	Symptomatic. Because of the relation to strychnine, activated charcoal and diazepam for seizures are worth trying.
Water hemlock (cicutoxin).	Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain. Followed by seizures. Severe ingestions can result in rhabdomyolysis, metabolic acidosis, and renal failure.	Symptomatic. Benzodiazepines for seizures.

[a]Many other plants cause minor irritation but are not likely to cause serious problems unless large amounts are ingested.
[b]Done AK: Ornamental and deadly. Emerg Med 1973;5:255.
Data from Lampe KF, McCann MA: AMA Handbook of Poisonous and Injurious Plants. American Medical Association; 1985.

B. Depressants

Emotional lability, ataxia, diplopia, nystagmus, vertigo, poor accommodation, respiratory depression, coma, apnea, and convulsions. Dilation of conjunctival blood vessels suggests marijuana ingestion. Narcotics cause miotic pupils and, occasionally, pulmonary edema.

C. Antidepressants and Tranquilizers

Hypotension, lethargy, respiratory depression, coma, and extrapyramidal reactions.

D. Hallucinogens and Psychoactive Drugs

Belladonna alkaloids cause mydriasis, dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, urinary retention, confusion, disorientation, paranoid delusions, hallucinations, fever, hypotension, aggressive behavior, convulsions, and coma. Psychoactive drugs such as LSD cause mydriasis, unexplained bizarre behavior, hallucinations, and generalized undifferentiated psychotic behavior. Marijuana can cause tachycardia, anxiety, dysphoria, and CNS depression and coma in young children.

» Treatment

Only a small percentage of the persons using drugs come to the attention of physicians; those who do are usually experiencing adverse reactions such as panic states, drug psychoses, homicidal or suicidal thoughts, or respiratory depression.

Even with cooperative patients, an accurate history is difficult to obtain. A drug history is most easily obtained in a

http://obgynebooks.com

quiet spot by a gentle, nonthreatening, honest examiner, and without the parents present. Street drugs are often adulterated with one or more other compounds and the exact dose is unknown. Multiple drugs are often taken together. Friends may be a useful source of information.

Hallucinogens are not life-threatening unless the patient is frankly homicidal or suicidal. A specific diagnosis is usually not necessary for management; instead, the presenting signs and symptoms are treated. Does the patient appear intoxicated? In withdrawal? "Flashing back?" Is some illness or injury (eg, head trauma) being masked by a drug effect? (Remember that a known drug user may still have hallucinations from meningoencephalitis.)

The signs and symptoms in a given patient are a function not only of the drug and the dose but also of the level of acquired tolerance, the "setting," the patient's physical condition and personality traits, the potentiating effects of other drugs, and many other factors.

A common drug problem is the "bad trip," which is usually a panic reaction. This is best managed by "talking the patient down" and minimizing auditory and visual stimuli. Allowing the patient to sit with a friend while the drug effect dissipates may be the best treatment. This may take several hours. The physician's job is not to terminate the drug effect but to help the patient through the bad experience.

Drug therapy is often unnecessary and may complicate the clinical course of a drug-related panic reaction. Although phenothiazines have been commonly used to treat bad trips, they should be avoided if the specific drug is unknown, because they may enhance toxicity or produce unwanted side effects. Benzodiazepines are the drug of choice if a sedative effect is required. Physical restraints are rarely indicated and usually increase the patient's panic reaction.

After the acute episode, the physician must decide whether psychiatric referral is indicated; in general, patients who have made suicidal gestures or attempts and adolescents who are not communicating with their families should be referred.

Chatham-Stephnes K et al: Notes from the field: calls to poison centers for exposures to electronic cigarettes—United States. September 2010–February 2014. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014;63(13):292–293 [PMID: 24699766].

Wang GS et al: Pediatric marijuana exposures in a medical marijuana state. JAMA Pediatr 2013 Jul;167(7):630–633 [PMID: 23712626].

SALICYLATES

The use of childproof containers and publicity regarding accidental poisoning have reduced the incidence of acute salicylate poisoning. Nevertheless, serious intoxication still occurs and **must be regarded as an emergency**.

Salicylates uncouple oxidative phosphorylation, leading to increased heat production, excessive sweating, and dehydration. They also interfere with glucose metabolism and may cause hypo- or hyperglycemia. Respiratory center stimulation occurs early. The severity of acute intoxication can, in some measure, be judged by serum salicylate levels. High levels are always dangerous irrespective of clinical signs, and low levels may be misleading in chronic cases.

In mild and moderate poisoning, stimulation of the respiratory center produces respiratory alkalosis and may complain of tinnitus or hearing loss. Vomiting is also a common presenting symptom. In severe intoxication (occurring in severe acute ingestion with high salicylate levels and in chronic toxicity with lower levels), respiratory response is unable to overcome the metabolic overdose which may lead to fever, diaphoresis, pulmonary edema, seizures, and death.

Once the urine becomes acidic, less salicylate is excreted. Until this process is reversed, the half-life will remain prolonged, because metabolism contributes little to the removal of salicylate. Chronic severe poisoning may occur as early as 3 days after a regimen of salicylate is begun. Findings usually include vomiting, diarrhea, and dehydration.

» Treatment

Charcoal binds salicylates well and should be given for acute ingestions in patients now vomiting with normal mentation. Mild poisoning may require only the administration of oral fluids and confirmation that the salicylate level is falling (< 30 mg/dL). Moderate poisoning involves moderate dehydration and depletion of potassium. Fluids must be administered at a rate of 2–3 mL/kg/h to correct dehydration and produce urine with a pH of greater than 7.0. Initial IV solutions should be isotonic, with sodium bicarbonate constituting half the electrolyte content. Once the patient is rehydrated, the solution can contain more free water and approximately 40 mEq/L of K^+.

Severe toxicity is marked by major dehydration. Symptoms may be confused with those of Reye syndrome, encephalopathy, and metabolic acidosis. Salicylate levels may even be in the therapeutic range. Major fluid correction of dehydration is required. Once this has been accomplished, hypokalemia must be corrected and sodium bicarbonate given. Usual requirements are sodium bicarbonate, 1–2 mEq/kg/h over the first 6–8 hours, and K^+, 20–40 mEq/L. A urine flow of 2–3 mL/kg/h should be established. Despite this treatment, some patients will develop the paradoxical aciduria of salicylism. This is due to hypokalemia and the saving of K^+ and excretion of H^+ in the renal tubule. Correction of K^+ will allow the urine to become alkaline and ionize the salicylate, resulting in excretion rather than reabsorption of nonionized salicylate in acid urine.

Patient's with renal failure, pulmonary edema, mental status changes, seizures, or concentrations of greater than 100 mg/dL should be considered for hemodialysis.

http://obgynebooks.com

Yip L et al: Concepts and controversies in salicylate toxicity. Emerg Med Clin North Am 1994;12:351 [PMID: 8187688].

SCORPION STINGS

Scorpion stings are common in arid areas of the southwestern United States. Scorpion venom is more toxic than most snake venoms, but only minute amounts are injected. Although neurologic manifestations may last a week, most clinical signs subside within 24–48 hours.

The most common scorpions in the United States are Vejovis, Hadrurus, Androctonus, and Centruroides species. Stings by the first three produce edema and pain. Stings by Centruroides (the Bark scorpion) cause tingling or burning paresthesias that begin at the site of the sting; other findings include hypersalivation, restlessness, muscular fasciculation, abdominal cramps, opisthotonos, convulsions, urinary incontinence, and respiratory failure.

» Treatment

Sedation with benzodiazepines is the primary therapy. Antivenom is reserved for severe poisoning. In severe cases, the airway may become compromised by secretions and weakness of respiratory muscles. Endotracheal intubation may be required. Patients may require treatment for seizures, hypertension, or tachycardia. The prognosis is good as long as the patient's airway is managed appropriately and sedation is achieved.

Boyer LV et al: Antivenom for critically ill children with neurotoxicity from scorpion stings. N Engl J Med 2009;360:2090–2098 [PMID: 19439743].

SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS

Fluoxetine (Prozac), paroxetine (Paxil), sertraline (Zoloft), and many other agents comprise this class of drugs. Adverse effects in therapeutic dosing include suicidal thoughts, aggressive behavior, extrapyramidal effects, and cardiac dysrhythmias, and in overdose may include vomiting, lethargy, seizures, hypertension, tachycardia, hyperthermia, and abdominal pain. The findings in overdose are included in the serotonin syndrome due to the action of these drugs, which results in an increase of serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine [5-HT]). Despite the degree of toxicity these agents generally are not life-threatening and intervention usually is not necessary.

Laboratory measurements of the drugs are not of benefit other than to establish their presence.

Treatment of agitation, hyperthermia with benzodiazepines is most beneficial. Hypotension may be treated with fluids or norepinephrine. Cyproheptadine is an antagonist of serotonin, but evidence for its use is limited. A dose of 0.25 mg/kg/d divided every 6 hours to a maximum of 12 mg/d may be useful in treating the serotonin syndrome. Adults and older adolescents have been treated with 12 mg initially followed by 2 mg every 2 hours to a maximum of 32 mg/d.

Boyer EW, Shannon M: The serotonin syndrome. N Engl J Med 2005;352:1112 [PMID: 15784664].
Kant et al: Recognizing serotonin toxicity in the pediatric emergency department. Pediatr Emerg Care 2012;28(8):817–821 [PMID: 22863827].

SNAKEBITE

Despite the lethal potential of venomous snakes, human morbidity and mortality rates are surprisingly low. The outcome depends on the size of the child, the site of the bite, the degree of envenomation, the type of snake, and the effectiveness of treatment.

Nearly all poisonous snakebites in the United States are caused by pit vipers (rattlesnakes, water moccasins, and copperheads). A few are caused by elapids (coral snakes), and occasional bites occur from cobras and other nonindigenous exotic snakes kept as pets. Snake venom is a complex mixture of enzymes, peptides, and proteins that may have predominantly cytotoxic, neurotoxic, hemotoxic, or cardiotoxic effects but other effects as well. Up to 25% of bites by pit vipers do not result in venom injection. US pit viper venom causes predominantly local injury with pain, discoloration, edema, and thrombocytopenia.

Swelling and pain occur soon after rattlesnake bite and are a certain indication that envenomation has occurred. During the first few hours, swelling and ecchymosis extend proximally from the bite. The bite is often obvious as a double puncture mark surrounded by ecchymosis. Hematemesis, melena, hemoptysis, and other manifestations of coagulopathy rarely develop in severe cases. Respiratory difficulty and shock are the ultimate causes of death. Even in fatal rattlesnake bites, a period of 6–8 hours usually elapses between the bite and death; as a result, there is usually enough time to start effective treatment.

Coral snake envenomation causes little local pain, swelling, or necrosis, and systemic reactions are often delayed. The signs of coral snake envenomation include bulbar paralysis, dysphagia, and dysphoria; these signs may appear in 5–10 hours and may be followed by total peripheral paralysis and death in 24 hours.

» Treatment

Children in snake-infested areas should wear boots and long trousers, should not walk barefoot, and should be cautioned not to explore under ledges or in holes.

A. Emergency (First-Aid) Treatment

The most important first-aid measure is transportation to a medical facility. Splint the affected extremity and minimize

http://obgynebooks.com

the patient's motion. Tourniquets and ice packs are contraindicated. Incision and suction are not useful for either crotalid or elapid snake bite.

B. Definitive Medical Management

Blood should be drawn for hematocrit, clotting time and platelet function, and serum electrolyte determinations. Establish two secure IV sites for the administration of antivenom and other medications.

Specific antivenom is indicated when signs of progressive envenomation are present. For coral snake bites, an eastern coral snake antivenom (Wyeth Laboratories) is sparingly available. Patients with pit viper bites should receive polyvalent CrotalidaeFab (CroFab) antivenom if progressive local injury, coagulopathy, or systemic signs (eg, hypotension, confusion) are present. (Antivenom should not be given IM or SQ.) See package labeling or call your certified poison center for details of use. Antivenom will halt progression of symptoms and improve hemorrhage, pain, and shock. For any history of coral snake bites, give three to five vials of antivenom in 250–500 mL of isotonic saline solution if available and observation for at least 24 hours. An additional three to five vials may be required. While generally considered best if administered within the first 6 hours, recent evidence demonstrates that delayed use may be therapeutic.

Administer an opioid or opiate to control pain. Cryotherapy is contraindicated because it commonly causes additional tissue damage. Early physiotherapy minimizes contractures. In rare cases, fasciotomy to relieve pressure within muscular compartments is required. The evaluation of function and of pulses will better predict the need for fasciotomy. Antihistamines and corticosteroids (hydrocortisone, 1 mg/kg, given PO for a week) are useful in the treatment of serum sickness or anaphylactic shock. Antibiotics are not needed unless clinical signs of infection occur. Tetanus status should be evaluated and the patient immunized, if needed.

Bebarta V, Dart RC: Effectiveness of delayed use of Crotalidae polyvalent immune FAB (ovine)antivenoms. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 2004;42:321–324 [PMID: 15362603].

Dart RC, McNally J: Efficacy, safety, and use of snake antivenoms in the United States. Ann Emerg Med 2001;37:181 [PMID: 11174237].

Offerman SR et al: Crotaline Fab antivenom for the treatment of children with rattle snake envenomation. Pediatrics 2002;110:968 [PMID: 12415038].

SOAPS & DETERGENTS

1. Soaps

Soap is made from salts of fatty acids. Ingestion of soap bars may cause vomiting and diarrhea, but they have a low toxicity.

2. Detergents

Detergents are nonsoap synthetic products used for cleaning purposes because of their surfactant properties. Commercial products include granules, powders, and liquids. Dishwasher detergents are very alkaline and can cause caustic burns. Low concentrations of bleaching and antibacterial agents as well as enzymes are found in many preparations. The pure compounds are moderately toxic, but the concentration used is too small to alter the product's toxicity significantly, although occasional primary or allergic irritative phenomena have been noted in persons who frequently use such products and in employees manufacturing these products. Unit dose detergents, or packets, have become popular and have packaging attractive to young children. They are usually a mix of glycol ethers, ethyl alcohol and surfactant. They typically cause local irritation but can lead to more severe symptoms including corneal injuries, CNS depression and respiratory distress if ingested. These exposures may need more prolonged observation.

A. Cationic Detergents (Ceepryn, Diaparene Cream, Phemerol, Zephiran)

Cationic detergents in dilute solutions (0.5%) cause mucosal irritation, but higher concentrations (10%–15%) may cause caustic burns to mucosa. Clinical effects include nausea, vomiting, collapse, coma, and convulsions. As little as 2.25 g of some cationic agents have caused death in an adult. In four cases, 100–400 mg/kg of benzalkonium chloride caused death. Cationic detergents are rapidly inactivated by tissues and ordinary soap.

Because of the caustic potential and rapid onset of seizures, emesis is not recommended. Activated charcoal should be administered. Anticonvulsants may be needed.

B. Anionic Detergents

Most common household detergents are anionic. Laundry compounds have water softener (sodium phosphate) added, which is a strong irritant and may reduce ionized calcium. Anionic detergents irritate the skin by removing natural oils. Although ingestion causes diarrhea, intestinal distention, and vomiting, no fatalities have been reported.

The only treatment usually required is to discontinue use if skin irritation occurs and replace fluids and electrolytes. Induced vomiting is not indicated following ingestion of automatic dishwasher detergent, because of its alkalinity. Dilute with water or milk.

C. Nonionic Detergents (Brij Products; Tritons X-45, X-100, X-102, and X-144)

These compounds include lauryl, stearyl, and oleyl alcohols and octyl phenol. They have a minimal irritating effect on the skin and are almost always nontoxic when swallowed.

http://obgynebooks.com

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Health hazards associated with laundry detergent pods—United States. May–June 2012. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2012;61(41):825–829 [PMID: 23076090].
Perry HE: Pediatric poisonings from household products: hydrofluoric acid and methacrylic acid. Curr Opin Pediatr 2011;13(2):157–161 [PMID: 11317059].

SPIDER BITES

Most medically important bites in the United States are caused by the black widow spider (Latrodectus mactans) and the North American brown recluse (violin) spider (Loxosceles reclusa). Positive identification of the spider is helpful, because many spider bites may mimic those of the brown recluse spider.

1. Black Widow Spider

The black widow spider is endemic to nearly all areas of the United States. The initial bite causes sharp fleeting pain that spreads centripetally. Local and systemic muscular cramping, abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, tachycardia, and hypertension are common. Systemic signs of black widow spider bite may be confused with other causes of acute abdomen. Although paresthesias, nervousness, and transient muscle spasms may persist for weeks in survivors, recovery from the acute phase is generally complete within 2–3 days. In contrast to popular opinion, death is extremely rare.

Initial pain control should be achieved with use of benzodiazepines and opioids or opiates. Antivenom is effective, but supplies are limited and should be reserved for severe cases in which the previously mentioned therapies have failed.

2. Brown Recluse Spider (Violin Spider)

The North American brown recluse spider is most commonly seen in the central and Midwestern areas of the United States. Its bite characteristically produces a localized reaction with progressively severe pain within 24 hours. The initial bleb on an erythematous ischemic base is replaced by a black eschar within 1 week. This eschar separates in 2–5 weeks, leaving an ulcer that heals slowly. Systemic signs (loxoscelism) include cyanosis, morbilliform rash, fever, chills, malaise, weakness, nausea and vomiting, joint pains, hemolytic reactions with hemoglobinuria, jaundice, and delirium and are more common in children. Fatalities are rare. Fatal disseminated intravascular coagulation has been reported.

Although of unproved efficacy, the following therapies have been used: dexamethasone, 4 mg IV four times a day, during the acute phase; polymorphonuclear leukocyte inhibitors, such as dapsone or colchicine. Supportive wound care is recommended, with possible reconstruction/debridement.

Clark RF et al: Clinical presentation and treatment of black widow spider envenomation: a review of 163 cases. Ann Emerg Med 1992;21:782 [PMID: 1351707].
Sams HH et al: Nineteen documented cases of Loxosceles reclusa envenomation. J Am Acad Dermatol 2001;44:603 [PMID: 11260528].

VITAMINS

Accidental ingestion of excessive amounts of vitamins rarely causes significant problems. Vary rare cases of hypervitaminosis A do occur, however, particularly in patients with poor hepatic or renal function. Hypervitaminosis A can result in increased intracranial pressure, ocular toxicity, and hepatotoxicity. However, chronic doses more than 50,000–100,000 IU are required for toxicity. The fluoride contained in many multivitamin preparations is not a realistic hazard, because a 2- or 3-year-old child could eat 100 tablets, containing 1 mg of sodium fluoride per tablet, without experiencing serious symptoms. Iron poisoning has been reported with multivitamin tablets containing iron; most gummy vitamins do not contain iron. Pyridoxine abuse has caused neuropathies; nicotinic acid can result in flushing, and rarely hypotension and hepatotoxicity.

Dean BS, Krenzelok EP: Multiple vitamins and vitamins with iron: accidental poisoning in children. Vet Hum Toxicol 1988;30:23 [PMID: 3354178].
Lab HS et al: Risk of vitamin A toxicity from candy-like chewable vitamin supplements for children. Pediatrics 2006;118(2): 820–824 [PMID: 16882846].

WARFARIN (COUMADIN) & OTHER ORAL ANTICOAGULANTS

Warfarin is used as a rodenticide. It causes hypoprothrombinemia and capillary injury. A dose of 0.5 mg/kg of warfarin may be toxic in a child. A prothrombin time is helpful in establishing the severity of the poisoning. Newer oral anticoagulants have been developed that have direct inhibition to specific clotting factors. Examples include dabigatran and rivaroxaban. Toxic dose has not been established, but bleeding complications can occur at therapeutic doses. Thrombin clotting time and activated partial thromboplastin time can provide information on anticoagulant activity.

Refer to published American College of Chest Physicians guidelines on management of bleeding in patient receiving vitamin K antagonists. With evidence for bleeding, give fresh frozen plasma, prothrombin complex concentrated, or activated factor. Without significant bleeding, oral vitamin K is recommended. No clear therapy is available for the newer

http://obgynebooks.com

direct factor inhibitors. Therapy has been focused on using fresh frozen plasma, prothrombin complex concentrate, and activated factor.

Long-acting anticoagulant rodenticides (brodifacoum, difenacoum, bromadiolone, diphacinone, pinene, valone, and coumatetralyl) can be a more serious toxicologic problem than warfarin. They also cause hypoprothrombinemia and a bleeding diathesis that responds to phytonadione, although the anticoagulant activity may persist for periods ranging from 6 weeks to several months. However, most unintentional ingestions can be watched at home without further evaluation. If there are concerns for large ingestions, a prothrombin time at 48 hours can determine extent of toxicity. Treatment with vitamin K_1 may be needed for weeks, at high doses.

Ansell J et al: Pharmacology and management of the vitamin K antagonists: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines (8th Ed). Chest 2008;133 (6 Suppl):160S–198S [PMID: 18574265].

Eerenberg ES et al: Reversal of rivaroxaban and dabigatran by prothrombin complex concentrate: a randomized, placebo-controlled, crossover study in healthy subjects. Circulation 2012;125(16):1573–1579 [PMID: 21900088].

Gunja N, Coggins A, Bidny S: Management of intentional super warfarin poisoning with long-term vitamin K and brodifacoum levels. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2011;49(5):385–390 [PMID: 21740137].

Shepherd G, Klein-Schwartz W, Anderson BD: Acute, unintentional pediatric brodifacoum ingestions. Pediatr Emerg Care 2002;19(3):174–178 [PMID: 12066002].

http://obgynebooks.com

14 Critical Care

Todd C. Carpenter, MD
Amy Clevenger, MD, PhD
Angela S. Czaja, MD, MSc
Eva N. Grayck, MD
Cameron F. Gunville, DO
Leslie Ridall, DO
Carleen Zebuhr, MD

INTRODUCTION

The care of patients with life-threatening conditions requires a detailed understanding of human physiology and the pathophysiology of severe illnesses, as well as an understanding of and experience with the rapidly changing technologies available in a modern pediatric intensive care unit (PICU). In addition, the science of caring for the critically ill patient has evolved rapidly in recent years as the molecular mediators of illness have become better defined and new therapies have been devised based on those advances. As a result, critical care is a complex, multidisciplinary field in which optimal outcomes for critically ill patients require a team-oriented approach, including critical care physicians and nurses, respiratory therapists, and pharmacists, as well as consulting specialists, physical, occupational and recreational therapists and social services specialists.

- Noninvasive mechanical ventilation can be an effective treatment for hypercapnic respiratory failure and selected patients with hypoxemic failure.
- Conventional mechanical ventilation should be accomplished within a strategy of "lung-protective" ventilation.
- High-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) are viable options for patients failing conventional mechanical ventilation.

RESPIRATORY CRITICAL CARE

ACUTE RESPIRATORY FAILURE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Inability to deliver oxygen or remove carbon dioxide.
- PaO_2 is low while $PaCO_2$ is normal in hypoxemic respiratory failure (ventilation/perfusion [V/Q] mismatch, diffusion defects, and intrapulmonary shunt).
- PaO_2 is low and $PaCO_2$ is high in hypercapnic respiratory failure (alveolar hypoventilation seen in central nervous system [CNS] dysfunction, oversedation, neuromuscular disorders).

Pathogenesis

Acute respiratory failure, defined as the inability of the respiratory system to adequately deliver oxygen or remove carbon dioxide, is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in infants and children. Anatomic and developmental differences place infants and young children at higher risk than adults for respiratory failure. An infant's thoracic cage is more compliant than that of the adult or older child, allowing a greater tendency toward alveolar collapse. The intercostal muscles are poorly developed and unable to achieve the "bucket-handle" motion characteristic of adult breathing, and the diaphragm is shorter and relatively flat with fewer type I muscle fibers, making it less effective and more easily fatigued. The infant's airways are smaller in caliber than those in older children and adults, resulting in greater resistance to airflow and greater susceptibility to occlusion by mucus plugging and mucosal edema, particularly in the setting of respiratory infections. Compared with adults, the alveoli of children are smaller and have less collateral ventilation, again resulting in a greater tendency to collapse and develop atelectasis. Finally, young infants may have an especially reactive pulmonary vascular bed, impaired immune system, or residual effects from prematurity, all of which increase the risk of respiratory failure.

http://obgynebooks.com

Respiratory failure can be due to inadequate oxygenation (hypoxemic respiratory failure) or inadequate ventilation (hypercapnic respiratory failure) or both. Hypoxemic respiratory failure occurs in three situations: (1) V/Q mismatch, which occurs when blood flows to parts of the lung that are inadequately ventilated, or when ventilated areas of the lung are inadequately perfused; (2) diffusion defects, caused by thickened alveolar membranes or excessive interstitial fluid at the alveolar-capillary junction; and (3) intrapulmonary shunt, which occurs when structural anomalies in the lung allow blood to flow through the lung without participating in gas exchange. Hypercapnic respiratory failure results from impaired alveolar ventilation, due to conditions such as increased dead space ventilation, reduced respiratory drive due to CNS dysfunction or oversedation, or neuromuscular disorders (Table 14–1).

» Clinical Findings

The clinical findings in respiratory failure are the result of hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and arterial pH changes. Common features of respiratory failure are summarized in Table 14–2. These features are not consistently clinically obvious, and most of them have nonrespiratory causes as well. As a result, a strictly clinical assessment of respiratory failure is not always reliable, and clinical findings of respiratory failure should be supplemented by laboratory data such as blood gas analysis.

» Noninvasive Monitoring & Blood Gas Analysis

The adequacy of oxygenation and ventilation can be measured both noninvasively and through blood gas analysis.

Table 14–1. Types of respiratory failure.

Findings	Causes	Examples
Hypoxemic (type I) PaO_2 low $PaCO_2$ normal	Ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) defect	Positional (supine in bed), acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), atelectasis, pneumonia, pulmonary embolus, bronchopulmonary dysplasia
	Diffusion impairment	Pulmonary edema, ARDS, interstitial pneumonia
	Shunt	Pulmonary arteriovenous malformation, congenital adenomatoid malformation
Hypercapnic (type II) PaO_2 low $PaCO_2$ high	Hypoventilation	Neuromuscular disease (polio, Guillain-Barré syndrome), head trauma, sedation, chest wall dysfunction (burns), kyphoscoliosis, severe reactive airways

Table 14–2. Clinical features of respiratory failure.

Respiratory
Wheezing
Expiratory grunting
Decreased or absent breath sounds
Flaring of alae nasi
Retractions of chest wall
Tachypnea, bradypnea, or apnea
Cyanosis
Neurologic
Restlessness
Irritability
Headache
Confusion
Convulsions
Coma
Cardiac
Bradycardia or excessive tachycardia
Hypotension or hypertension
General
Fatigue
Sweating

Arterial oxygen saturation (SaO_2) can be measured continuously and noninvasively by pulse oximetry, a technique that should be used in the assessment and treatment of all patients with potential or actual respiratory failure. Pulse oximetry readings, however, become markedly less accurate in patients with saturations below approximately 80%, poor skin perfusion, or significant movement. In addition, pulse oximetry can be dangerously inaccurate in certain clinical settings such as carbon monoxide poisoning or methemoglobinemia. End-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$) monitoring provides a continuous noninvasive means of assessing the adequacy of ventilation. The $ETCO_2$ level closely approximates the alveolar CO_2 level ($PaCO_2$), which should equal the arterial CO_2 level ($PaCO_2$) because carbon dioxide diffuses freely across the alveolar-capillary barrier. While most accurate in the intubated patient, this technique can also be used in extubated patients with the proper equipment. Though useful for following trends in ventilation, $ETCO_2$ monitoring is also susceptible to significant error, particularly in patients with rapid, shallow breathing or increased dead space ventilation.

Given the limitations of these noninvasive techniques, arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis remains the gold standard for assessment of acute respiratory failure. ABGs provide measurements of the patient's acid-base status (with a measured pH and calculated bicarbonate level) as well as PaO_2 and $PaCO_2$ levels. Although measurement of capillary or venous blood gases may provide some reassurance regarding the adequacy of ventilation and can be useful for following trends, they yield virtually no useful information regarding oxygenation and may generate highly misleading information about the ventilatory status of patients who

http://obgynebooks.com

have poor perfusion or who had difficult blood draws. As a result, ABG analysis is important for all patients with suspected respiratory failure, particularly those with abnormal venous or capillary gases.

Knowing the ABG values and the inspired oxygen concentration also enables one to calculate the alveolar-arterial oxygen difference (A–aDO_2, or A–a gradient). The A–a gradient is less than 15 mm Hg under normal conditions, though it widens with increasing inspired oxygen concentrations to about 100 mm Hg in normal patients breathing 100% oxygen. This number has prognostic value in severe hypoxemic respiratory failure, with A–a gradients over 400 mm Hg being strongly associated with mortality. Diffusion impairment, shunts, and V/Q mismatch all increase the A–a gradient. In addition to the calculation of the A–a gradient, assessment of intrapulmonary shunting (the percentage of pulmonary blood flow that passes through nonventilated areas of the lung) may be helpful. Normal individuals have less than a 5% physiologic shunt from bronchial, coronary, and thebesian (cardiac intramural) circulations. Shunt fractions greater than 15% usually indicate the need for aggressive respiratory support. Calculation of the shunt fraction requires a pulmonary arterial catheter for measurement of mixed venous blood gases; for patients without pulmonary artery catheters, the A–a gradient is a good surrogate measure of intrapulmonary shunting.

» Modes of Respiratory Support

Patients with severe hypoxemia, hypoventilation, or apnea require immediate assistance with bag and mask ventilation until the airway is successfully intubated and controlled mechanical ventilation can be provided. Assisted ventilation with a bag and mask can generally be maintained for some time with a mask of the proper size, but gastric distention, emesis leading to aspiration of gastric contents, and inadequate tidal volumes leading to atelectasis are possible complications. In those patients not requiring immediate intubation, a variety of modalities can be used to provide respiratory support, including supplemental oxygen, heated high-flow nasal cannula (HHFNC), and noninvasive ventilation (NIV) with continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP), or average volume-assured pressure support (AVAPS).

Supplemental oxygen with a nasal cannula or oxygen mask may be adequate to treat patients with mild respiratory insufficiency (Table 14–3). Patients with hypoventilation and diffusion defects respond better to supplemental oxygen than patients with significant shunts or V/Q mismatch. HHFNC devices utilize a nasal cannula for delivery of heated and humidified oxygen mixtures at high flow rates not normally tolerated with cooler drier air, effectively generating positive pressure similar to CPAP. This approach is being used in infants and young children more frequently and is also well tolerated in older patients. Generally, flow rates of greater than 2 L/min in infants and greater than 4 L/min in children are considered high flow. HHFNC use has been studied in children with bronchiolitis and appears to be well tolerated, potentially decreasing the need for intubation by providing some amount of airway positive pressure. HHFNC should be considered in patients who need more respiratory support than a simple low-flow nasal cannula, but if the patient is not improving on HHFNC after 60–90 minutes, additional escalation of care may be warranted. Although HHFNC provides some amount of positive pressure, the exact amount of positive pressure cannot be accurately determined from the flow rate. If a patient needs further escalation of care, the device used should be

Table 14–3. Supplemental oxygen therapy.

Source	Maximum % O_2 Delivered	Range of Rates (L/min)	Advantages	Disadvantages
Nasal cannula	35%–40%	0.125–4	Easily applied, relatively comfortable	Uncomfortable at higher flow rates, requires open nasal airways, easily dislodged, lower % O_2 delivered, nosebleeds
Simple mask	50%–60%	5–10	Higher % O_2, good for mouth breathers	Unsure of delivered % O_2
Face tent	40%–60%	8–10	Higher % O_2, good for mouth breathers, less restrictive	Unsure of delivered % O_2
Nonrebreathing mask	80%–90%	5–10	Highest O_2 concentration, good for mouth breathers	Unsure of delivered % O_2
Oxyhood	90%–100%	5–10	Stable and accurate O_2 concentration	Difficult to maintain temperature, hard to give airway care

http://obgynebooks.com

capable of more reliably delivering a fixed amount of positive pressure, such as CPAP or BIPAP.

Noninvasive ventilation (NIV) refers to the administration of mechanical ventilatory support without using an invasive artificial airway (endotracheal tube [ETT] or tracheostomy tube). The use of NIV has become an integral tool in the management of both acute and chronic respiratory failure. NIV can be used to avoid endotracheal intubation for milder cases of respiratory failure and as a bridge after extubation in mechanically ventilated patients with marginal lung function and respiratory mechanics. NIV devices provide positive pressure breathing through a variety of interfaces (mouth piece or nasal, face, or helmet mask) and using a variety of ventilatory modes, including CPAP, BiPAP, volume ventilation, and pressure support. Ventilators dedicated to NIV exist, and many standard ventilators are capable of providing support through a mask with the appropriate adapters.

Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) refers to the constant application of airway pressure, usually in the range of 5–8 cm H_2O, and seeks to improve work of breathing, ventilation, and oxygenation by maintaining the functional residual capacity (FRC) of the lungs. Bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) functions similarly but cycles between a higher inspiratory positive airway pressure (IPAP) and a lower expiratory positive airway pressure (EPAP). The additional inspiratory support in this mode improves tidal volume and ventilation in patients who are breathing shallowly and can improve oxygenation by providing a higher MAP. Typical initial settings would place the IPAP at 10–14 cm H_2O and the EPAP at 6–8 cm H_2O. The IPAP can then be titrated upward to achieve adequate tidal volumes, usually in the range of 5–7 mL/kg, and to reduce the patient's work of breathing and respiratory rate toward the normal range. EPAP and delivered oxygen concentration can be adjusted upward on the basis of pulse oximetry to achieve adequate oxygenation. Average volume-assured pressure support (AVAPS) is similar to BiPAP but a tidal volume, inspiratory pressure maximum, and inspiratory pressure minimum are set. Usually, a tidal volume of approximately 8 mL/kg is set with an IPAP max of 20–30 cm H_2O and IPAP min of EPAP + 4 cm H_2O. Serial blood gas measurements and pulse oximetry are essential to monitoring the response to therapy and to guide further ventilator adjustments.

Successful application of NIV requires careful patient selection. The best candidates are patients in the recovery phases of their illness or those with primarily hypercapnic respiratory failure, such as patients with muscular dystrophies or other forms of neuromuscular weakness. Patients suffering from coma, impaired respiratory drive, an inability to protect their airway, or cardiac or respiratory arrest are not candidates for NIV. Controversy still exists regarding the safety of NIV as an initial strategy in patients with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure, but in general NIV appears to be well tolerated in many children with this condition and it may decrease the risk for intubation. These patients should be closely monitored, however, as NIV may mask symptoms of underlying disease progression, making eventual intubation more precarious. In patients with severe respiratory failure or those who are not improving with NIV, endotracheal intubation should not be delayed.

For patients with respiratory failure not responding adequately to noninvasive support, endotracheal intubation and the initiation of mechanical ventilation can be life-saving. Safe placement of an ETT in infants and children requires experienced personnel and appropriate equipment at the bedside, including a correctly sized mask, Ambu bag, oral airways, ETTs, and Yankauer-type suction catheters. The patient should first be positioned properly to facilitate air exchange while supplemental oxygen is given. The sniffing position is used in infants. Head extension with jaw thrust is used in older children without neck injuries. If obstructed by secretions or vomitus, the airway must be cleared by suction. When not obstructed and properly positioned, the airway should be patent and easily visualized, allowing the placement of an oral or nasopharyngeal ETT of the correct size. Patients with normal airway anatomy may be intubated under intravenous (IV) anesthesia by experienced personnel (Table 14–4). Endotracheal intubation of patients with significant upper airway obstruction (eg, patients with croup, epiglottitis, foreign bodies, or subglottic stenosis) or mediastinal masses should be approached with extreme caution; minimal sedation should be used and paralytic agents should be strictly avoided unless trained airway specialists decide otherwise.

The size of the ETT is of critical importance in pediatrics. An inappropriately large ETT is a risk factor for pressure necrosis in the subglottic region, potentially leading to scarring and stenosis requiring surgical repair. An inappropriately small ETT can result in inadequate pulmonary toilet and excessive air leak around the ETT, making adequate ventilation and oxygenation difficult. Two useful methods for calculating the correct size of ETT for a child are (1) measuring the child's height with a Broselow Tape and then reading the corresponding ETT size on the tape, or (2) in children older than 2 years, choosing a tube size using the formula ETT size = (16 + age in years) ÷ 4. Approximate proper insertion depth (in cm) as measured at the teeth can be estimated by tripling the size of the ETT. Either cuffed or uncuffed tubes are appropriate though a cuffed tube may provide more effective ventilation in patients with poor lung compliance. Correct placement of the ETT should be confirmed by auscultation for the presence of equal bilateral breath sounds and by the use of either a colorimetric filter or quantitative capnography to detect carbon dioxide. An assessment of air leakage around the ETT is an important measure of the appropriateness of ETT size. An audible leak noted at pressures of 15–20 cm H_2O indicates acceptable

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–4. Drugs commonly used for controlled endotracheal intubation.

Drug	Class of Agent	Dose	Advantages	Disadvantages
Atropine	Anticholinergic	0.02 mg/kg IV, minimum of 0.1 mg	Prevents bradycardia, dries secretions	Tachycardia, fever; seizures and coma with high doses
Fentanyl	Opioid (sedative)	1–3 mcg/kg IV	Rapid onset, hemodynamic stability	Respiratory depression, chest wall rigidity with rapid administration in neonates
Midazolam	Benzodiazepine (sedative)	0.1–0.2 mg/kg IV	Rapid onset, amnestic	Respiratory depression, hypotension
Etomidate	Anesthetic	0.2–0.4 mg/kg IV	Rapid onset, hemodynamic stability, lowers ICP	Suppresses adrenal function, should not be used in sepsis
Ketamine	Dissociative anesthetic	1–2 mg/kg IV 2–4 mg/kg IM	Rapid onset, bronchodilator, hemodynamic stability	Increases oral and airway secretions, may increase ICP and pulmonary artery pressure
Rocuronium	Nondepolarizing muscle relaxant	1 mg/kg	Rapid onset, suitable for rapid sequence intubation, lasts 30 min	Requires refrigeration
Pancuronium	Nondepolarizing muscle relaxant	0.1 mg/kg	Long duration of action (40–60 min)	Tachycardia, slow onset (2–3 min)

ICP, intracranial pressure; IM, intramuscularly; IV, intravenously.

ETT size, though higher leak pressures are acceptable in patients who have poor lung compliance and as a result require higher airway pressures to effectively ventilate and oxygenate. A chest radiograph is necessary for final assessment of ETT placement. A correctly positioned ETT will terminate in the mid-trachea between the thoracic inlet and the carina, at approximately the level of the second thoracic vertebrae.

CONVENTIONAL MECHANICAL VENTILATION

» Indications

The principal indication for institution of mechanical ventilation is respiratory failure caused either by illness, injury, or treatment with sedating medications. The goals of mechanical ventilation are to facilitate the movement of gas into and out of the lungs (ventilation) and to improve oxygen uptake into the bloodstream (oxygenation). While lifesaving in many situations, positive pressure ventilation can also be harmful. As a result, mechanical ventilation strategies must be adapted to achieve these goals in a way that minimizes further injury to the lung. The overriding principles of this "lung-protective ventilation strategy" are to safely recruit underinflated lung, sustain lung volume, minimize phasic overdistention, and decrease lung inflammation. This strategy requires adjustment of ventilator settings with an understanding of the difference between the gas exchange that is permissible and that which is normal.

» Modes of Mechanical Ventilation

The parameters used to control the delivery of mechanical ventilation breaths are known as the trigger, cycle, control, and limit variables. The trigger variable describes how breaths are initiated, either by the patient or by the ventilator. The most common triggers are patient effort, sensed as a drop in return pressure or gas flow to the ventilator, and time. A newer trigger method, neurally adjusted ventilatory assist (NAVA), measures the electrical activity of the diaphragm via an esophageal catheter in order to adjust the ventilator breaths to meet the patient's neural activity. While NAVA holds promise as a means to improving patient-ventilator synchrony and facilitating ventilator weaning, its ideal role in clinical practice remains to be determined. The cycle variable describes how the inspiratory phase is terminated, either by the patient or by the ventilator. Most ventilator modes cycle according to a set inspiratory time (I-time) although flow-cycled modes can be used in spontaneously breathing patients. The control variable determines whether the ventilator delivers a specific tidal volume (volume-controlled modes) or a specific pressure (pressure-controlled modes). Limit variables are parameters whose magnitude is constrained during inspiration in order to prevent excessive pressure or volume from being delivered by the ventilator.

Breathing during mechanical ventilation can be classified as spontaneous or mandatory. The patient controls the timing and size of spontaneous breaths. The ventilator controls the timing and/or size of mandatory breaths, independent of

http://obgynebooks.com

patient activity. In addition, the breathing pattern provided by the ventilator can be set to one of three configurations. In continuous mandatory ventilation (CMV), the ventilator determines the size and duration of all breaths. In intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV), the ventilator delivers mandatory breaths, but additional spontaneous breaths between and during mandatory breaths are allowed. In continuous spontaneous ventilation (CSV), the patient initiates and controls all breaths, but the ventilator assists those efforts.

A ventilator mode consists of a specific control variable (pressure or volume), a specific pattern of breathing (CMV, IMV, or CSV), and a specific set of phase variables (trigger, limit, and cycle). Initiation of breaths and the length of exhalation are controlled by setting the respiratory rate. In time-cycled modes of ventilation, the inspiratory time (I-time) determines the length of inspiration and when to allow exhalation. Most modern ventilators can deliver either a pressure-targeted or a volume-targeted breath in several manners. In synchronized IMV (SIMV), the ventilator delivers breaths in an IMV pattern but the machine breaths are synchronized with the patient's efforts. If the patient does not make adequate respiratory efforts to trigger the ventilator, the machine delivers a mandatory breath at a preset time interval. In pressure-support ventilation, the patient's own efforts are assisted by the delivery of gas flow to achieve a targeted peak airway pressure. Pressure support ventilation allows the patient to determine the rate and pattern of breaths (CSV breathing pattern), thus improving patient comfort and decreasing the work of breathing. The most commonly used mode of ventilation in most PICUs is synchronized IMV with pressure support (SIMV + PS), a mixed mode allowing pressure-supported breaths between the synchronized machine breaths.

One of the ongoing controversies in critical care medicine surrounds the relative roles of volume vs pressure-controlled modes of ventilation. In pressure-controlled ventilation, air flow begins at the start of the inspiratory cycle and continues until a preset airway pressure is reached. That airway pressure is then maintained until the end of the set I-time, when the exhalation valve on the ventilator opens and gas exits into the machine. With this mode of ventilation, changes in the compliance of the respiratory system will lead to fluctuations in the actual tidal volume delivered to the patient. The advantage of pressure-targeted ventilation lies primarily in the avoidance of high airway pressures that might cause barotrauma or worsen lung injury. The main disadvantage of pressure-controlled ventilation is the possibility of delivering either inadequate or excessive tidal volumes during periods of changing lung compliance. In volume-controlled ventilation, the machine delivers a set tidal volume to the patient. Changes in lung compliance will lead to fluctuations in the peak airway pressure generated by the breath. The main advantage of volume ventilation is more reliable delivery of the desired tidal volume and thus better control of ventilation. More reliable tidal volume delivery may also help prevent atelectasis due to hypoventilation. Disadvantages of volume ventilation include the risk of barotrauma from excessive airway pressures and difficulties overcoming leaks in the ventilator circuit. In either pressure- or volume-controlled modes, alarm limits can be set in order to restrict changes in either tidal volume or airway pressure with changing lung compliance; interpreting those alarms and adjusting the ventilator require the ICU clinician to understand the ventilator mode in use.

Finally, in any mode of ventilation, the minimum distending pressure applied to the lung during the respiratory cycle is determined by setting the positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP). PEEP helps prevent the end-expiratory collapse of open lung units, thus preventing atelectasis and shunting. In disease states such as pulmonary edema, pneumonia, or ARDS, a higher PEEP (10–15 cm H_2O) may increase the patient's FRC, helping to keep open previously collapsed alveoli and improve oxygenation. High levels of PEEP may also cause complications such as gas trapping and CO_2 retention, barotrauma with resultant air leaks, and decreased central venous return leading to declines in cardiac output or increases in intracranial pressure (ICP).

» Setting & Adjusting the Ventilator

When initiating volume-controlled modes of ventilation, the ICU clinician sets a tidal volume, I-time, rate, and level of PEEP. A typical initial tidal volume is 6–10 mL/kg, as long as that volume does not cause excessive airway pressures (> 30 cm H_2O). The I-time is typically set at 1 second or 33% of the respiratory cycle, whichever is shorter. Rate can be adjusted to patient comfort and blood gas measurements, but generally patients starting on mechanical ventilation require full support at least initially with a rate of 20–30 breaths/min. Pressure-controlled ventilation is set in a similar fashion, although the adequacy of the inspiratory pressure is assessed by observing the patient's chest rise and by measuring the delivered tidal volume. Typically, patients without lung disease require peak inspiratory pressures of 15–20 cm H_2O, while patients with respiratory illnesses may require 20–30 cm H_2O pressure to provide adequate ventilation. In general, PEEP should be set at 5 cm H_2O initially and titrated up to maintain adequate oxygenation at acceptable inspired oxygen concentrations (< 60%–65%) while watching carefully for adverse effects on systemic hemodynamics.

Ventilated patients require careful monitoring for the efficacy of gas exchange, including respiratory rate and activity, chest wall movement, and quality of breath sounds. Oxygenation should be measured by ABGs and by continuous pulse oximetry. Ventilation should be assessed by blood gas analysis or by noninvasive means, such as transcutaneous monitoring or $ETCO_2$ sampling.

http://obgynebooks.com

Transcutaneous PO_2 or PCO_2 measurements are most useful with younger patients who have good skin perfusion, but they become problematic in patients with poor perfusion, anasarca, or obesity. $ETCO_2$ monitoring involves placing a gas-sampling port on the ETT and analyzing expired gas for CO_2. This technique is more valuable for patients with large tidal volumes, lower respiratory rates, and without significant leaks around the ETT. In practice, $ETCO_2$ values may differ significantly (usually lower) from measured $PaCO_2$ values and thus are most useful for following trends in ventilation, for early recognition of occluded or malpositioned ETTs, and for assessing the adequacy of chest compressions during CPR. Frequent, preferably continuous, systemic blood pressure monitoring is also necessary for patients ventilated with high PEEP levels, given the risk of adverse hemodynamic effects.

Ventilator settings can be adjusted to optimize both ventilation ($PaCO_2$) and oxygenation (PaO_2). Ventilation is most closely associated with the delivered minute volume, or the tidal volume multiplied by the respiratory rate. As a result, abnormal $PaCO_2$ values can be most effectively addressed by changes in the respiratory rate or the tidal volume. Increased respiratory rate or tidal volume should increase minute volume and thus decrease $PaCO_2$ levels; decreases in respiratory rate or tidal volume should act in the opposite fashion. In some circumstances, additional adjustments may also be necessary. For example, for patients with disease characterized by extensive alveolar collapse, increasing PEEP may improve ventilation by helping to keep open previously collapsed lung units. Also, for patients with disease characterized by significant airway obstruction, decreases in respiratory rate may allow more time for exhalation and improve ventilation despite an apparent decrease in the minute volume provided.

The variables most closely associated with oxygenation are the inspired oxygen concentration and the mean airway pressure (MAP) during the respiratory cycle. Increases in inspired oxygen concentration will generally increase arterial oxygenation, unless right-to-left intracardiac or intrapulmonary shunting is a significant component of the patient's illness. Concentrations of inspired oxygen above 60%–65%, however, may lead to hyperoxic lung injury. For patients requiring those levels of oxygen or higher to maintain adequate arterial saturations, increases in MAP should be considered as a means to recruit underinflated lung units. MAP is affected by PEEP, peak inspiratory pressure, and I-time. Increases in any one of those factors will increase MAP and should improve arterial oxygenation. It is important to bear in mind, however, that increases in MAP may also lead to decreases in cardiac output, primarily by decreasing venous return to the heart. In this circumstance, raising MAP may increase arterial oxygenation, but actually compromise oxygen delivery to the tissues. For patients with severe hypoxemic respiratory failure, these tradeoffs highlight the need for careful monitoring by experienced personnel.

» Supportive Care of the Mechanically Ventilated Patient

Patients undergoing mechanical ventilation require meticulous supportive care. Mechanical ventilation is often frightening and uncomfortable for critically ill children. In order to reduce dyssynchrony with the ventilator and impaired gas exchange, careful attention must be directed toward optimizing patient comfort and decreasing anxiety. Sedative anxiolytics are typically provided as intermittent doses or continuous infusions. Since oversedation of the ventilated patient may lead to longer durations of ventilation and difficulty weaning from the ventilator, standardized assessments of sedation level and targeting treatment to the minimum sedation level necessary to maintain patient comfort and adequate gas exchange are important.

For patients with severe respiratory illness, even small physical movements can compromise gas exchange. In such cases, muscle paralysis may facilitate oxygenation and ventilation. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents are most commonly used for this purpose, given as intermittent doses or as continuous infusions. When muscle relaxants are given, extra care must be taken to ensure that levels of sedation are adequate, as paralytics will mask many of the usual signs of patient discomfort. In addition, ventilator support may need to be increased to compensate for the elimination of patient respiratory effort.

Mechanically ventilated patients can often be fed enterally with the use of nasogastric feeding tubes. However, reflux aspiration leading to ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) can be a concern. In patients where reflux or emesis is a major concern, transpyloric feeding or parenteral nutrition should be considered. Ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) is a significant complication of mechanical ventilation, leading to longer ICU stays and increased hospital costs. As a result, many local and national quality improvement initiatives have focused on minimizing the risks of VAP. These preventative measures include proper hand washing, elevation of the head of the bed to 30 degrees to prevent reflux, frequent turning of the patient, proper oral care, the use of closed suction circuits on all ventilated patients and avoidance of breaking the closed suction system, sedation protocols to minimize sedation administration, and daily assessment of extubation readiness.

Mechanical ventilation should be weaned and discontinued as soon as safely possible. Extubation failure rates in mechanically ventilated children have been estimated between 4% and 20%. Considerable effort has been devoted to identifying predictors of extubation readiness and success. Unfortunately, the available literature does not clearly support any specific weaning protocol or extubation readiness test.

http://obgynebooks.com

Successful extubation requires adequate gas exchange, adequate respiratory muscle strength, and the ability to protect the airway. Most intensivists as a test of extubation readiness will perform a trial of spontaneous breathing in which the patient, while remaining intubated, breathes either without assistance (through a T-piece) or with a low level of pressure support (through the ventilator) for a defined period of time, usually 1–2 hours. The patient is observed carefully for signs of rapid shallow breathing or worsened gas exchange during this trial, and if neither is observed, the patient can generally be safely extubated.

» Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting a sudden deterioration in the mechanically ventilated patient should begin with determining whether the ETT is still in place using direct laryngoscopy and/or $ETCO_2$ measurements. Determine whether the ETT is patent and in the correct position by attempting to pass a suction catheter and by obtaining a chest x-ray if necessary. If the ETT is patent and correctly positioned, the next step is to determine whether any changes in the physical examination—such as poor or unequal chest rise, or absent or unequal breath sounds—suggest atelectasis, bronchospasm, pneumothorax, or pneumonia. Next, determine whether hemodynamic deterioration could be underlying acute respiratory compromise (shock or sepsis). If the problem cannot be readily identified, take the patient off the ventilator and begin manual ventilation by hand-bagging while the ventilator is checked for malfunction. Hand-bagging the patient can also determine the root of the problem if it lies within the patient and can help determine the next ventilator adjustments.

» High-Frequency Oscillatory Ventilation

High-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) is an alternative mode of mechanical ventilation in which the ventilator provides very small, very rapid tidal volumes at high rates. Respiratory rates used during oscillatory ventilation typically range from 5 to 10 Hz (rates of 300–600 breaths/min) in most PICU patients. This mode of ventilation has been used successfully in neonates, older pediatric patients, and adults, although recent work has suggested that HFOV use may be associated with worse outcomes in adults with ARDS. HFOV is most widely used in severe, diffuse lung diseases, such as ARDS, which require high MAP to maintain lung expansion and oxygenation. Diseases characterized by significant heterogeneity or extensive gas trapping often respond too poorly to HFOV, although reports do exist of successful HFOV use in asthma. The advantage of HFOV is that high levels of MAP can be achieved without high peak inspiratory pressures or large tidal volumes, thus theoretically protecting the lung from ventilator-induced lung injury. Disadvantages of HFOV include general poor tolerance by patients who are not heavily sedated or paralyzed, the risk of cardiovascular compromise due to high MAP, and the risk of gas-trapping and barotrauma in patients with highly heterogeneous lung disease. Although HFOV clearly can be useful as a rescue mode for selected patients, it remains unclear whether HFOV provides any benefit compared with carefully managed conventional modes of ventilation.

» Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has been used as a rescue therapy to support pediatric patients with severe respiratory failure who have not improved with less invasive therapies. ECMO circuits generally consist of a membrane oxygenator, a heater, and a pump. Central venous blood from the patient is directed out of the body, oxygenated, warmed and returned back to the patient. ECMO can be provided in two major modes: venoarterial (VA) and venovenous (VV). VA ECMO bypasses the lungs and the heart, thus supporting both the cardiovascular and respiratory systems, and requires cannulation of a large central artery and vein. VV ECMO utilizes central venous cannulation to provide extracorporeal oxygenation and carbon dioxide removal, thus augmenting the function of the patient's lungs, but the patient's own cardiac output is required to provide systemic oxygen delivery. VV ECMO use has increased over the past 15 years and provides the advantage of a reduced risk of systemic and, particularly, cerebral emboli. Patients with moderate hemodynamic compromise prior to ECMO initiation can also experience improvements in circulatory status on VV ECMO, likely due to the improvements in acid base status, oxygenation, and decreased intrathoracic pressures that can be achieved with ECMO. ECMO is indicated for patients with reversible cardiovascular and/or respiratory failure and is not recommended in patients with severe neurologic compromise or who is in the terminal stages of a lethal condition. Despite an increase in the complexity of patients placed on ECMO, survival has remained acceptable over the past two decades. According to recent registry data, 57% of pediatric respiratory failure patients who are supported with ECMO survive, and survival rates are even better for ECMO patients with a diagnosis of viral pneumonia (especially due to respiratory syncytial virus) and without significant co-morbidities. Of note, in both neonatal and adult randomized controlled trials, patients with severe respiratory failure who were referred to an ECMO center for consideration of ECMO had improved survival, even though not all patients were actually placed on ECMO. These results emphasize the importance of early referral to experienced centers if ECMO is to be considered.

Determining the optimal time to consider ECMO initiation is one of the most challenging aspects of using this technology. Survival appears equally good for most indications

http://obgynebooks.com

with mechanical ventilation for up to 14 days prior to ECMO initiation. Patients placed on ECMO later in the course of their illness or with prolonged ECMO runs (> 14 days) may have worse outcomes. Protocols to improve secretion clearance and lung recruitment have been described and should be considered to hasten lung recovery and shorten ECMO runs.

While ECMO remains a viable therapy for selected patients with severe respiratory failure, serious complications such as CNS injury, hemorrhage, renal insufficiency, infection, and complications of immobility do occur, and each patient should be carefully evaluated by experienced personnel in order to choose the optimal timing and mode of ECMO support.

Carroll CL et al: Emergent endotracheal intubations in children: be careful if it's late when you intubate. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2010 May;11(3):343–348 [PMID: 20464775].

Dohna-Schwake C et al: Non-invasive ventilation on a pediatric intensive care unit: feasibility, efficacy, and predictors of success. Pediatr Pulmonol 2011;46(11):1114–1120 [PMID: 21618715].

Lee JH et al: Use of high flow nasal cannula in critically ill infants, children, and adults: a critical review of the literature. Intensive Care Med 2013;39(2):247–257 [PMID: 23143331].

Zabrocki LA et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for pediatric respiratory failure: survival and predictors of mortality. Crit Care Med 2011 Feb;39(2):364–370 [PMID: 20959787].

MAJOR RESPIRATORY DISEASES IN THE PEDIATRIC ICU

ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is a severe form of lung injury characterized by hypoxemia, bilateral pulmonary infiltrates, and no clinical evidence of left atrial hypertension.
- ARDS can arise as a consequence of either direct pulmonary injury or systemic conditions that are nonpulmonary in origin, such as sepsis.
- Lung protective mechanical ventilation and careful fluid management are crucial to good outcomes in ARDS patients.

Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is a syndrome of acute respiratory failure characterized by increased pulmonary capillary permeability resulting in bilateral diffuse alveolar infiltrates on chest radiography, decreased lung compliance, and hypoxemia that is refractory to supplemental oxygen alone. Mortality rates for pediatric ARDS have fluctuated over time, depending on the criteria used to diagnose the disease, the presence of important coexisting conditions, and the quality and consistency of supportive care provided in the ICU. Mortality rates as high as 60%–75% were reported in the 1980s and early 1990s. Since that time there has been a trend toward decreased mortality in pediatric ARDS, ranging from 8% to 40%, though mortality among immunocompromised patients still approaches 60%. Across all subpopulations of pediatric ARDS patients, nonpulmonary organ failure remains an important cause of mortality.

Current consensus diagnostic criteria for ARDS include (1) acute onset; (2) bilateral pulmonary infiltrates on chest radiograph; (3) no clinical evidence of left atrial hypertension; and (4) severe hypoxemia in which the ratio of the arterial oxygen level (PaO_2) to inspired oxygen concentration (FIO_2) is ≤ 300 while receiving a PEEP of at least 5 cm H_2O via mechanical ventilation. When the PaO_2:FIO_2 ratio is between 200 and 300, the case is defined as mild ARDS, between 100 and 200 is moderate ARDS, and under 100 is severe ARDS.

» Presentation & Pathophysiology

ARDS may be precipitated by a variety of insults (Table 14–5). Pneumonia and sepsis account for the majority of ARDS cases in children. Despite the diversity of potential causes, the clinical presentation is remarkably similar in most cases. ARDS can be divided roughly into four clinical phases (Table 14–6). In the earliest phase, the patient may have dyspnea and tachypnea with a relatively normal PaO_2 and hyperventilation-induced respiratory alkalosis. No significant abnormalities are noted on physical or radiologic examination of the chest. Experimental studies suggest that neutrophils accumulate in the lungs at this stage and that their products damage lung endothelium.

Over the next few hours, hypoxemia worsens and respiratory distress becomes clinically apparent, with cyanosis, tachycardia, irritability, and dyspnea. Early radiographic

Table 14–5. ARDS risk factors.

Direct Lung Injury	Indirect Lung Injury
Pneumonia	Sepsis
Aspiration of gastric contents	Shock
Inhalation injury (heat or toxin)	Burns
Pulmonary contusion	Trauma
Hydrocarbon ingestion or aspiration	Fat embolism
Near-drowning	Drug overdoses (including aspirin, opioids, barbiturates, tricyclic antidepressants)
	Transfusion of blood products
	Pancreatitis

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–6. Pathophysiologic changes of acute respiratory distress syndrome.

Radiography	Symptoms	Laboratory Findings	Pathophysiology
Phase 1 (early changes)			
Normal radiograph	Dyspnea, tachypnea, normal chest examination	Mild pulmonary hypertension, normoxemic or mild hypoxemia, hypercapnia	Neutrophil sequestration, no clear tissue damage
Phase 2 (onset of parenchymal changes)[a]			
Patchy alveolar infiltrates; normal heart size	Dyspnea, tachypnea, cyanosis, tachycardia, coarse rales	Moderate to severe hypoxemia, increasing shunt, decreased lung compliance, pulmonary hypertension, normal wedge pressure	Neutrophil infiltration, vascular congestion, increased lung permeability, pulmonary edema, fibrin strands, platelet clumps, type I epithelial cell damage
Phase 3 (acute respiratory failure with progression, 2–10 d)			
Diffuse alveolar infiltrates; air bronchograms; decreased lung volume; normal heart size	Tachypnea, tachycardia, sepsis syndrome, signs of consolidation, diffuse rhonchi	Worsening shunt fraction, further decrease in compliance, increased minute ventilation, impaired oxygen extraction	Increased interstitial and alveolar inflammatory exudate with neutrophils and mononuclear cells, type II cell proliferation, beginning fibroblast proliferation, thromboembolic occlusion
Phase 4 (pulmonary fibrosis, pneumonia with progression, > 10 d)[b]			
Persistent diffuse infiltrates; superimposed new pneumonic infiltrates; air leak; normal heart size or enlargement due to cor pulmonale	Symptoms as above, recurrent sepsis, evidence of multiorgan system failure	Phase 3 changes persist; recurrent pneumonia, progressive lung restriction, impaired tissue oxygenation, impaired oxygen extraction; multiorgan system failure	Type II cell hyperplasia, interstitial thickening; infiltration of lymphocytes, macrophages, fibroblasts; loculated pneumonia or interstitial fibrosis; medial thickening and remodeling of arterioles

[a]The process is readily reversible at this stage if the initiating factor is controlled.
[b]Multiple organ system failure is common. The mortality rate is greater than 80% at this stage, since resolution is more difficult.
Data from Demling RH: Adult respiratory distress syndrome: current concepts. New Horiz 1993;1:388.

changes include the appearance of increasingly confluent alveolar infiltrates initially appearing in dependent lung fields, in a pattern suggestive of pulmonary edema. Proteinaceous exudates into the alveolar space and direct injury to type II alveolar pneumocytes cause surfactant inactivation and deficiency. As a result, the injured lung requires high inflation pressures to achieve lung opening, and increased PEEP to maintain end expiratory volume.

Injury to the alveolar type II cell also reduces the capacity for alveolar fluid clearance. Under normal conditions, sodium is taken up from the alveolar space by channels on the apical surface of type II cells and then actively transported across the basolateral cell membrane into the interstitial space. This process creates a gradient for the passive movement of water across the alveolar epithelium and back into the interstitium. In ARDS, this mechanism becomes overwhelmed as direct lung injury depopulates the alveolar epithelium, creating conditions that favor alveolar fluid accumulation. Pulmonary hypertension, reduced lung compliance, and increased airways resistance are also commonly observed in ARDS.

Computed tomography (CT) studies of adult patients in the acute phases of ARDS demonstrate a heterogeneous pattern of lung involvement. The most dependent lung regions remain consolidated throughout the respiratory cycle and can only be recruited using exceedingly high inflation pressures. The most nondependent regions are overinflated throughout the respiratory cycle. Between these two zones lies a region that is either normally inflated or repetitively cycles between inflation and collapse. Attempts to improve oxygenation by recruiting the collapsed dependent lung regions occur at the expense of damaging nondependent regions by hyperinflation. This process, termed volutrauma, incites a potent inflammatory response that is capable of worsening nonpulmonary organ dysfunction. Even in normal lungs, ventilation with large tidal volumes and low PEEP levels can produce a lung injury that is histologically indistinguishable from ARDS. This phenomenon is called

http://obgynebooks.com

ventilator-induced lung injury. Taken together, these findings suggest that mechanical injury from positive pressure ventilation is superimposed on the initial insult and is an integral part of the pathogenesis of ARDS. Appreciation of this phenomenon has prompted a shift toward ventilating ARDS patients with smaller tidal volumes and a tolerance for the relative hypercarbia that typically ensues. Published evidence currently supports using PEEP levels sufficient to stabilize those alveoli with tendency to collapse at end-expiration but below a threshold level that would overdistend nondependent lung regions at end-inspiration. Volutrauma is then mitigated by tidal volume reduction or peak pressure limitation. This approach is termed the "open-lung strategy" of mechanical ventilation.

The subacute phase of ARDS (2–10 days after lung injury) is characterized by type II pneumocyte and fibroblast proliferation in the interstitium of the lung. This results in decreased lung volumes and signs of consolidation that are noted clinically and radiographically. Worsening of the hypoxemia with an increasing shunt fraction occurs, as well as a further decrease in lung compliance. Some patients develop an accelerated fibrosing alveolitis. The mechanisms responsible for these changes are unclear. Current investigation centers on the role of growth and differentiation factors, such as transforming growth factor-β and platelet-derived growth factor released by resident and nonresident lung cells, such as alveolar macrophages, mast cells, neutrophils, alveolar type II cells, and fibroblasts. During the chronic phase of ARDS (10–14 days after lung injury), fibrosis, emphysema, and pulmonary vascular obliteration occur. During this phase of the illness, oxygenation defects generally improve, and the lung becomes more fragile and susceptible to barotrauma. Air leak is common among patients ventilated with high airway pressures at this late stage. Also, patients have increased dead space and difficulties with ventilation are common. Airway compliance remains low because of ongoing pulmonary fibrosis and insufficient surfactant production.

Secondary infections are common in the subacute and chronic phases of ARDS and can impact clinical outcomes. The mechanisms responsible for increased host susceptibility to infection during this phase are not well understood. Mortality in the late phase of ARDS can exceed 80%. Death is usually caused by multiorgan failure and systemic hemodynamic instability rather than by hypoxemia.

» Treatment

Contemporary ventilator management of ARDS is directed at protecting vulnerable lung regions from cyclic alveolar collapse at end expiration and protecting overinflated lung regions from hyperinflation at end inspiration. The actual mode of ventilation (eg, volume limited vs pressure limited) employed for ARDS is ultimately not as important as limiting phasic alveolar stretch and stabilizing lung units that are prone to repetitive end expiratory collapse. A landmark multicenter trial established that adult ARDS patients who were ventilated using a 6-mL/kg (ideal body weight) tidal volume had a 22% mortality reduction and fewer extrapulmonary organ failures relative to those randomized to receive tidal volumes of 12 mL/kg. Although this trial has never been replicated in pediatric patients, application of these same management principles has gained widespread acceptance among pediatric ICU clinicians.

Given the large body of evidence supporting the benefits of low tidal volume ventilation, we suggest that mechanical ventilation of pediatric ARDS patients be initiated using a tidal volume of 6–8 mL/kg (ideal body weight), combined with PEEP sufficient to produce target arterial saturations (≥ 88%–90%) using an FIO_2 of 0.6 or less. In general, this can be accomplished by incremental increases in PEEP until adequate oxygenation is achieved or until a limiting side effect of the PEEP is reached. Whenever escalating mechanical ventilator settings, clinicians should minimize the ETT cuff leak (if possible), ensure an appropriate plane of patient sedation, and optimize the ventilation to perfusion relationship by verifying that the patient's intravascular volume status is appropriate. Permissive hypercapnia should be used unless a clear contraindication exists (eg, increased ICP). Throughout the course, efforts should be made to limit the alveolar plateau pressure (pressure at end-inspiration) to 25–30 cm H_2O or less.

Fluid management is an important element of the care of patients with ARDS. Given the increased pulmonary capillary permeability in ARDS, further pulmonary edema accumulation is likely with any elevation in pulmonary hydrostatic pressures. Evidence in adults has shown that a "conservative" fluid strategy targeting lower cardiac filling pressures (CVP < 4 mm Hg, or, if a pulmonary artery catheter is used, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure < 8 mm Hg) is associated with better oxygenation and a shorter duration of mechanical ventilation compared to a "liberal" fluid strategy targeting CVP 10–14 mm Hg (or PAOP 14–18 mm Hg). Fluid restriction should only be implemented after hemodynamic variables stabilize and volume resuscitation should not be denied to hemodynamically unstable patients with ARDS.

Hemodynamic support is directed toward increasing perfusion and oxygen delivery. Patients should be given adequate intravascular volume resuscitation using either crystalloid or colloid solutions to restore adequate circulating volume, and inotropes or vasopressors should be titrated to achieve adequate end-organ perfusion and oxygen delivery. While blood transfusions are excellent volume expanders and should theoretically increase oxygen-carrying capacity, transfusion incurs the risks of volume overload and transfusion-related lung injury. There is no evidence to support transfusion above a normal hemoglobin level in ARDS patients.

Patients with ARDS require careful monitoring. Given the risks of ventilator-induced lung injury and the inherent

http://obgynebooks.com

limitations of pulse oximetry and capnography, ABG analysis is strongly preferred for accurate assessment of oxygenation and ventilation and careful titration of mechanical ventilation. Indwelling arterial catheters are useful for continuous blood pressure monitoring and frequent laboratory sampling. Many clinicians advocate the use of CVP measurements to help determine the level of cardiac preload, although it is important to emphasize that the CVP value must be interpreted in the context of intrathoracic pressure and myocardial compliance. Since secondary infections are common and contribute to increased mortality rates, surveillance for infection is important by obtaining appropriate cultures and following the temperature curve and white blood cell count. Renal, hepatic, and GI function should be watched closely because of the prognostic implications of multiorgan dysfunction in ARDS.

For patients failing these standard approaches of mechanical ventilation and fluid restriction, several alternative or rescue therapies are available. HFOV has been used successfully for many years in pediatric patients with ARDS. No studies to date have compared HFOV to a modern lung protective conventional ventilation strategy, and whether HFOV provides any advantage over conventional ventilation for pediatric ARDS remains unknown. Whether HFOV is best used as a first-line ventilator strategy or as a rescue therapy for patients failing conventional ventilation remains a matter of institutional and clinician preference. Prone positioning is a technique of changing the patient's position in bed from supine to prone, with the goal of improving ventilation of collapsed dependent lung units via postural drainage and improved V/Q matching. This technique can dramatically improve gas exchange in the short term, particularly for patients early in the course of ARDS, but the gains are often not sustained. Clinical trials examining the role of prone positioning in both adults and children with ARDS have not clearly shown any improvement in mortality or in duration of mechanical ventilation, though benefits seem most pronounced in patients with severe ARDS. Based on the ability of inhaled nitric oxide (iNO) to reduce pulmonary artery pressure and to improve the matching of ventilation with perfusion without producing systemic vasodilation, iNO can be used as a therapy for refractory ARDS. Several multicenter trials of iNO in the treatment of ARDS, both in adults and in children, showed acute improvements in oxygenation in subsets of patients, but no significant improvement in overall survival. As a result, iNO cannot be recommended as a standard therapy for ARDS. Surfactant-replacement therapy is also not routinely recommended for children with ARDS, as the data regarding its efficacy remain mixed. To date, it has been difficult to draw meaningful conclusions from the completed surfactant trials because they differ so greatly with respect to surfactant composition, dosing regimen, study population, and mechanical ventilation strategy. Finally, ECMO has been used to support pediatric patients with severe ARDS. Recent registry data suggest the overall survival rate for children who require ECMO for ARDS is around 40%–50%. To date, the efficacy of ECMO has not been evaluated against lung protective ventilation strategies for pediatric ARDS in a prospective randomized trial. In addition, recent improvements in outcome for pediatric ARDS patients receiving "conventional" therapies have made the role of ECMO less clear and have made further prospective randomized studies of ECMO difficult to complete. For now, ECMO remains a viable rescue therapy for patients with severe ARDS that is unresponsive to other modalities.

» Outcomes

Information regarding the long-term outcome of pediatric patients with ARDS remains limited. One report of 10 children followed 1–4 years after severe ARDS showed that three children were still symptomatic and seven had hypoxemia at rest. Until further information is available, all patients with a history of ARDS need close follow-up of pulmonary function.

ARDS Definition Task Force: Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin definition. JAMA 2012;307(23):2526–2533 [PMID: 22797452].

Randolph AG: Management of acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome in children. Crit Care Med 2009;37:2448–2454 [PMID: 19531940].

STATUS ASTHMATICUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Status asthmaticus is reversible small airway obstruction refractory to sympathomimetic and anti-inflammatory agents that may progress to respiratory failure without prompt and aggressive intervention.
- Dyspnea at rest that interferes with the ability to speak can be an ominous sign.
- Absence of wheezing may be misleading because, in order to produce a wheezing sound, the patient must take in sufficient air.
- Patients with severe respiratory distress, signs of exhaustion, alterations in consciousness, elevated $PaCO_2$, or acidosis should be admitted to the PICU.

» Pathogenesis

Life-threatening asthma exacerbations are caused by severe bronchospasm, excessive mucus secretion, inflammation,

http://obgynebooks.com

and edema of the airways (see Chapter 36). Infants and children are at particular risk for respiratory failure from asthma due to several structural and mechanical features of their lungs. They have less elastic recoil than the adult lung, thicker airway walls leading to greater peripheral airway resistance for any degree of bronchoconstriction, increased airway reactivity to bronchoconstrictors, fewer collateral channels of ventilation, and a more compliant chest wall which can lead to increased work of breathing with airway obstruction. Additional risk factors for severe asthma exacerbation include obesity, lower socioeconomic status, non-Caucasian race, and a prior history of previous ICU admissions or intubations.

» Clinical Findings

Patients admitted to the PICU with severe asthma exacerbations can have a variety of constitutional and cardiorespiratory findings. They often have tachypnea, increased use of accessory muscles, and variable aeration. Diffuse wheezing is usually present, but absence of wheeze may indicate severe obstruction impeding airflow. Dyspnea at rest that interferes with the ability to speak and cyanosis are also ominous signs of severe airflow obstruction. These children may also display signs of panic or exhaustion and an altered level of consciousness. Agitation, drowsiness, or confusion can be signs of elevated $PaCO_2$ levels and impending respiratory failure. Likewise, gasping respirations or frank apnea are indications of respiratory failure and need for intubation.

These patients generally have elevated heart rates (HRs) secondary to stress, dehydration, and β-agonist therapy, and may have systolic and/or diastolic hypotension. Diastolic pressures less than 40 mm Hg in conjunction with extreme tachycardia may impair coronary artery filling and predispose to cardiac ischemia, which can present with chest pain and ST changes on electrocardiogram. Pulsus paradoxus (ie, an exaggerated decrease in systolic blood pressure with inspiration) may be observed and can be used as a marker of disease severity and response to treatment.

» Laboratory Findings

In addition to pulse oximetry, blood gas measurements should be performed in critically ill patients with status asthmaticus to evaluate gas exchange and acid-base balance. Although venous blood gas measurements may be acceptable for screening, ABG measurements provide the most accurate and complete information. Patients with severe asthma exacerbations typically have increased minute ventilation and should be expected to have a $PaCO_2$ less than 40 mm Hg. Normal to elevated $PaCO_2$ levels suggest respiratory failure. Desaturation or reduced PaO_2 on room air may indicate severely impaired gas exchange and impending respiratory failure but also may occur with initiation of β-agonist therapy and associated ventilation/perfusion mismatching. The presence of metabolic acidosis may signify relative dehydration, inadequate cardiac output, or underlying infection.

Other laboratory evaluations may include serum electrolytes, complete blood counts, and other inflammatory markers if clinically indicated. Patients may demonstrate decreased serum potassium, magnesium, and/or phosphate, especially with prolonged β-agonist use. Leukocytosis is commonly observed during asthma exacerbations and may be due to infection or to demargination of polymorphonuclear leukocytes as a result of stress or corticosteroid treatment. Differentiating between these two etiologies of leukocytosis can be difficult, and measurement of other inflammatory markers can be useful if there is concern for infection.

Chest x-rays should be obtained in patients presenting with severe asthma exacerbations to evaluate for treatable conditions such as pneumonia, foreign-body aspiration, air leak, or a chest mass. Pneumothorax and pneumomediastinum are common complications of severe exacerbations and may only be revealed with chest radiography. Severe wheezing without a prior history of asthma should raise suspicion for alternative diagnoses. Electrocardiograms are not routinely recommended but may be indicated to rule out cardiac ischemia, especially in patients with known cardiac disease, extreme tachycardia and low diastolic blood pressure, or complaints of chest pain.

Although measurements of pulmonary function such as forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) or peak expiratory flow (PEF) are recommended in other clinical settings, their use in patients admitted to the PICU with severe asthma exacerbations is limited as those patients are often unable to cooperate with testing. When obtained, values of less than 40% of predicted indicate a severe exacerbation and values less than 25% of predicted indicate imminent respiratory arrest.

» Treatment

The key treatment strategy for status asthmaticus is to reverse the underlying process swiftly and aggressively before respiratory failure that requires endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation ensues. This approach is particularly important as much of the morbidity associated with the treatment of severe asthma is related to the complications of providing mechanical ventilation in patients with severe airflow obstruction. Children with status asthmaticus require IV access, continuous pulse oximetry, and cardiorespiratory monitoring, as close monitoring of gas exchange, cardiovascular status, and mental status are crucial to assessing response to therapy and determining appropriate interventions.

http://obgynebooks.com

Because of inadequate minute ventilation and V/Q mismatching, patients with severe asthma are almost always hypoxemic and should receive supplemental humidified oxygen immediately to maintain saturations more than 90%. The delivery method will depend upon the child's age, level of oxygen required, and institutional resources, as described earlier in this chapter. Children with clinical signs of dehydration should receive appropriate fluid resuscitation, while avoiding volume overload. Additionally, the hemodynamic effects of certain asthma therapy (peripheral dilation, diastolic hypotension) may also require further fluid resuscitation to maintain cardiac output and avoid metabolic acidosis. Antibiotics are generally not recommended for treatment of status asthmaticus unless a coexisting infection is identified or suspected.

The first-line treatment for rapidly reversing airflow obstruction is the repetitive or continuous administration of inhaled selective short-acting β_2-agonist therapy such as albuterol. The frequency of administration will vary based on the severity of symptoms and the occurrence of adverse side effects. Nebulized albuterol may be given intermittently at a dose of 2.5–5 mg every 10–15 minutes, or it can be administered continuously at a dose of 10 mg/h to a maximum of 20–30 mg/h, usually without serious side effects.

Patients with severe distress and poor inspiratory flow rates may have inadequate delivery of inhaled medications and may require subcutaneous or IV medication. Subcutaneous epinephrine or terbutaline, a relatively specific β_2-agonist, may be used for initial treatment with an acute exacerbation. Continuous IV therapy with terbutaline may also be used with an infusion of 0.5–5 mcg/kg/min after a loading dose of 10 mcg/kg. Because significant tachycardia and other arrhythmias as well as diastolic hypotension are recognized side effects of inhaled and IV β_2-agonist therapy, these children should have close cardiovascular monitoring. An indwelling arterial catheter may be useful for continuous hemodynamic and blood gas monitoring in the most severely ill patients on IV therapy.

In addition to β_2-agonist therapy, immediate administration of systemic corticosteroids is critical to the early management of life-threatening status asthmaticus. Because enteral medications may not be tolerated in patients with severe exacerbations, administration of IV or IM steroids should be considered early in these children. Both methylprednisolone and dexamethasone have been used in the treatment of status asthmaticus.

For severe exacerbations unresponsive to the initial treatments listed previously, additional treatments may be considered despite limited clinical pediatric evidence. Ipratropium bromide, an inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator, is commonly used in emergency medicine and is a reasonable intervention in the PICU, despite limited evidence of efficacy. Administration of magnesium sulfate may also be considered for patients who are unresponsive to early treatment or who have impending respiratory failure. The bronchodilatory properties of magnesium sulfate are thought to be caused by interference with calcium flux in the bronchial smooth muscle cell. Hypotension and flushing may occur with administration and should be anticipated with adequate fluid resuscitation. Heliox-driven albuterol nebulization can also be considered for patients refractory to conventional therapy. Heliox is a mixture of helium and oxygen that has a lower viscosity than ambient air and can improve airway delivery of albuterol and gas exchange. However, a mixture of at least 60%–70% helium is required to be effective, thus limiting its use in patients with severe hypoxia.

Methylxanthines, such as theophylline and aminophylline, may also be considered for the management of severe asthma, although their use remains controversial. The theoretical benefit of methylxanthines is relaxation of airway smooth muscle by preventing degradation of cyclic guanosine monophosphate, a mechanism of action distinct from that of β_2-agonists. In addition, mucociliary inflammatory mediators and microvascular permeability are reduced. Unfortunately, the pharmacokinetics of these agents are erratic, and the narrow therapeutic window can be difficult to manage, with serious side effects such as seizures and cardiac arrhythmias occurring with higher drug levels. These concerns, in addition to mixed evidence of benefit, have led to a general recommendation against the routine use of methylxanthines for asthma exacerbations. However, they may still have a role in individual cases of severe refractory asthma as a means to prevent intubation. When a methylxanthine is added to a patient's care, close therapeutic drug monitoring is essential and consultation with a pharmacist recommended.

NIV may be used to support patients with severe asthma exacerbations and help avoid the need for intubation and mechanical ventilation. Positive-pressure ventilation may help avoid airway collapse during exhalation as well as to unload fatigued respiratory muscles by reducing the force required to initiate each breath. Because of its noninvasive interface, spontaneous breathing and upper airway function are preserved, allowing the patient to provide his/her own airway clearance. Data on the effectiveness of NIV for acute severe asthma in children are limited, but some small studies and case series have shown improvements in gas exchange and respiratory effort. Careful titration of inspiratory and expiratory pressures is essential, however, to avoid complications of positive pressure.

If aggressive management fails to result in significant improvement, endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation may be necessary. Patients who present with apnea or coma should be intubated immediately. If there is steady deterioration despite intensive therapy for asthma, intubation should occur semielectively before acute respiratory arrest. The intubation procedure can be dangerous for these

http://obgynebooks.com

patients, given the high risk of barotrauma and cardiovascular collapse, and should be performed by the most experienced provider available.

Mechanical ventilation for patients with asthma is difficult because the severe airflow obstruction often leads to very high airway pressures, air trapping, and resultant barotrauma. Therefore, the goal of mechanical ventilation in this setting is to maintain adequate oxygenation and ventilation with the least amount of barotrauma until other therapies become effective. This approach typically means accepting some degree of hypercarbia in order to avoid complications of aggressive ventilation. Because of the severe inspiratory and expiratory airflow obstruction, these patients will require long I-times to deliver a breath and long expiratory times to avoid air trapping. Either volume- or pressure-targeted modes of ventilation can be used, although volume and pressure limits should be closely monitored and low (no > 6 cc/kg) tidal volumes used initially. In general, the ventilator rate should be decreased until the expiratory time is long enough to allow emptying prior to the next machine breath. The level of PEEP should be titrated to minimize air trapping from either auto-PEEP or dynamic obstruction. If possible, and when a patient moves toward extubation, a support mode of ventilation is useful, as the patient can set his or her own I-time and flow rate.

These ventilator strategies and the resulting hypercarbia typically are uncomfortable, requiring that patients be heavily sedated. Ketamine is a dissociative anesthetic with bronchodilatory properties that can be used to facilitate intubation and also as a sedative infusion for intubated patients. Ketamine can also increase bronchial secretions, which may limit its use in certain patients or require administration of an anticholinergic agent. Barbiturates and morphine should be avoided, as both can increase histamine release and worsen bronchospasm. Many patients will also require neuromuscular blockade initially to optimize ventilation and minimize airway pressures. In intubated patients not responding to the preceding strategies, inhaled anesthetics, such as isoflurane, should be considered. These agents act not only as anesthetics but also cause airway smooth muscle relaxation. Inhalational anesthetics must be used with caution, however, as they can also cause significant hypotension due to vasodilation and myocardial depression.

» Prognosis

Status asthmaticus remains among the most common reasons for admission to the PICU, and it is associated with a surprisingly high mortality rate (1%–3%), especially in patients with a previous PICU admission. Careful but expedient management, however, can reduce the associated morbidities and mortality. As many as 75% of patients admitted to the PICU with life-threatening asthma flares will be readmitted with a future exacerbation, emphasizing the need for careful outpatient follow-up of this high-risk population.

Carroll CL et al: Identifying an at-risk population of children with recurrent near-fatal asthma exacerbations. J Asthma 2010 May;47(4):460–464 [PMID: 20528602].

National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3: Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007, Section 5, Managing Exacerbations of Asthma. http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

Ram FS et al: Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation for treatment of respiratory failure due to severe acute exacerbations of asthma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005;(1):CD004360 [PMID: 15674944].

CARDIOVASCULAR CRITICAL CARE

SHOCK

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Shock is defined as the inadequate delivery of oxygen and nutrients to tissues to meet metabolic needs.
- Shock can result from decreased delivery of oxygen, inadequate delivery of oxygen in the face of increased demands, or from impaired utilization of oxygen.
- Shock can be categorized as compensated, hypotensive, or irreversible.
- Early recognition and intervention are essential to improving patient outcomes from shock.

» Pathogenesis

Shock is a syndrome characterized by inadequate oxygen delivery to meet the body's metabolic demands. Shock can complicate multiple different disease processes and can be categorized based on the primary physiologic disturbance (Table 14–7).

Table 14–7. Categories of shock.

Type of Shock	Examples
Hypovolemic	Dehydration due to vomiting and/or diarrhea Trauma with severe hemorrhage
Cardiogenic	Viral myocarditis Postoperative cardiac patient with poor heart function
Distributive	Septic shock Vasodilation secondary to anaphylaxis
Dissociative	Carbon monoxide poisoning

http://obgynebooks.com

Shock, regardless of underlying etiology, can be best understood by examining the factors affecting the balance between delivery of oxygen to the tissues and consumption of oxygen by the tissues. Metabolic failure may occur as a result of reduced oxygen delivery (as in respiratory or cardiac failure or acute hemorrhage), increased tissue demand (as in infection, burns, or other major physiologic stresses), or impaired oxygen utilization (as in severe sepsis), or combinations of all three conditions. Defects in oxygen delivery and utilization that result in failure to meet the metabolic demands of a tissue leads to anaerobic cellular metabolism, hypoxia, lactic acidosis, and, ultimately, to irreversible cellular damage.

Oxygen delivery (DO_2) is defined as the product of the cardiac output (CO) and the oxygen content of arterial blood (CaO_2) delivered by the heart. Cardiac output in turn is determined by ventricular stroke volume (SV) and HR. SV is influenced by preload, afterload, contractility, and cardiac rhythm. Numerous conditions can disrupt one or more of these factors. Preload can be decreased as a result of hypovolemia due to hemorrhage or dehydration or as a result of vasodilation due to anaphylaxis, medications, or septic shock. Impaired contractility can lead to shock in conditions such as cardiomyopathy, myocardial ischemia/reperfusion following a cardiac arrest, postcardiac surgery, and sepsis. Age-dependent differences in myocardial physiology can also affect systolic performance and contractility. For example, in the infant heart, the sarcolemma, sarcoplasmic reticulum, and T-tubules are less well developed than in older children, resulting in a greater dependency on transsarcolemma Ca^{2+} flux (ie, extracellular serum calcium concentrations) for contraction. Afterload can be increased, as seen in late septic shock and cardiac dysfunction, or decreased, as in "warm" septic shock. Cardiac dysrhythmias can also alter cardiac output and contribute to inadequate oxygen delivery. One common example is supraventricular tachycardia, in which reduced time for ventricular filling can lead to reduced SV and cardiac output.

The oxygen content of arterial blood consists of the oxygen bound to hemoglobin and the oxygen dissolved in the blood. The bound oxygen is determined by the hemoglobin concentration and the percent of the hemoglobin saturated by oxygen. The dissolved oxygen is calculated from the partial pressure of oxygen in the arterial blood (PaO_2). In general, the main determinant of arterial oxygen content is the bound oxygen. Both illnesses that affect the oxygen saturation of hemoglobin and illnesses that alter hemoglobin concentration can impair oxygen delivery. Low hemoglobin oxygen saturations most commonly occur as a result of impaired uptake of oxygen in the lungs. Low hemoglobin concentrations, as in hemorrhage or other causes of anemia, reduce oxygen delivery, as do abnormal hemoglobins. For example, carboxyhemoglobin (formed in carbon monoxide poisoning) and methemoglobin have different oxygen-carrying capacities than normal hemoglobin, resulting in impaired oxygen delivery.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical presentation of shock can be categorized into a series of recognizable stages: compensated, hypotensive, and irreversible. Patients in compensated shock have relatively normal blood pressures, and compensatory mechanisms preserve oxygen delivery. In infants, a compensatory increase in cardiac output is achieved primarily by increases in HR, given the limited ability of infants to increase SV. In older patients, SV and HR both increase to improve cardiac output. Blood pressure remains normal initially because of peripheral vasoconstriction and increased systemic vascular resistance. Drop in blood pressure occurs late, defining hypotensive shock. Patients in hypotensive shock are at risk of developing multiorgan system failure (MOSF), which carries a high risk of mortality. In extreme cases, organ damage can progress to the point that restoration of oxygen delivery will not improve organ function, a condition known as irreversible shock.

The symptoms and signs of shock result from end-organ dysfunction caused by inadequate oxygen delivery. Because this condition can progress rapidly to serious illness or death, rapid assessment of a child in shock is essential to determining the need for resuscitation. In patients with impaired cardiac output and peripheral vasoconstriction, the skin will be cool and pale with delayed capillary refill (> 3 seconds) and thready pulses. Additionally, the skin may appear gray or ashen, particularly in newborns, and mottled or cyanotic in patients with decreased cardiac output. In contrast, patients with "warm" or septic shock can present with warm skin with brisk capillary refill and bounding pulses. The detection of peripheral edema is a worrisome sign and can indicate severe vascular leak due to sepsis or poor cardiac output with fluid and sodium retention. The skin examination can also provide insight into the diagnosis (eg, the presence of rash such as purpura fulminans may indicate an infectious etiology) or reveal the site and extent of traumatic injury. Cracked, parched lips, and dry mucous membranes may indicate severe volume depletion.

Tachycardia is an important and early sign of shock and is typically apparent well before hypotension, which is a late feature in pediatric shock. Not all patients can mount an appropriate increase in HR, however, and the presence of bradycardia in a patient with shock is particularly ominous. Peripheral pulses will weaken first in shock as cardiac output is diverted to the body core. Shock in an infant associated with a discrepancy in pulses between lower extremities and upper extremities may indicate a critical coarctation of the aorta with closure of the ductus arteriosus. A gallop cardiac rhythm can indicate heart failure, while a pathologic murmur suggests the possibility of congenital heart disease or valvular dysfunction. A rub or faint, distant heart sounds may indicate a pericardial effusion. Rales, hypoxia, and increased work of breathing occur in patients

http://obgynebooks.com

with shock from heart failure or acute lung injury, and a patient with severe metabolic acidosis due to shock will have compensatory tachypnea and respiratory alkalosis. Urine output is directly proportionate to renal blood flow and the glomerular filtration rate and, therefore, is a good reflection of cardiac output. Normal urine output is greater than 1 mL/kg/h; output less than 0.5 mL/kg/h is considered significantly decreased. Hepatomegaly may suggest heart failure or fluid overload, while splenomegaly may suggest an oncologic process and abdominal distension may suggest obstruction or perforated viscus as the etiology of shock.

The level of consciousness reflects the adequacy of brain cortical perfusion. When brain perfusion is severely impaired, the infant or child first fails to respond to verbal stimuli, then to light touch, and finally to pain. Lack of motor response and failure to cry in response to venipuncture or lumbar puncture is ominous. In uncompensated shock with hypotension, brainstem perfusion may be decreased. Poor thalamic perfusion can result in loss of sympathetic tone. Finally, poor medullary flow produces irregular respirations followed by gasping, apnea, and respiratory arrest.

» Monitoring

Laboratory studies in the patient with suspected shock should be directed at evaluating the etiology of shock, assessing the extent of impaired oxygen delivery, and identifying signs of end-organ dysfunction due to inadequate oxygen delivery (Table 14–8). Assessments of oxygen delivery require measurement of oxygen saturation and hemoglobin concentration. Pulse oximetry is adequate to measure oxygen saturation in patients with low oxygen requirements. ABG analyses provide more accurate oxygen measurements, which are important for optimizing mechanical ventilation in patients with significant hypoxemia, and provide measurements of arterial pH, which can reflect the adequacy of tissue perfusion. Measurements of central venous oxygen saturation can serve as a measure of the adequacy of overall oxygen delivery. If oxygen delivery is inadequate for the needs of the tissues, a greater portion of that oxygen will be consumed and the central venous saturation will be lower than normal (< 70% in a patient without cyanotic heart disease). In contrast, patients with septic shock may have an elevated central venous saturation due to impaired oxygen utilization by the tissues (> 80%).

Additional laboratory signs of organ dysfunction include evidence of anaerobic metabolism such as acidemia and elevated lactate, increased serum creatinine, or abnormal liver function tests such as elevated transaminases or reduced production of clotting factors. Blood chemistry measurements are also essential in patients with shock. Hypo- or hypernatremia are common, as are potentially life-threatening abnormalities in potassium levels, particularly hyperkalemia in patients with impaired renal function due to shock.

Table 14–8. Laboratory studies in the case of shock.

Evaluation for infectious etiology
Sources include blood, urine, tracheal secretions, CSF, wound, pleural fluid, or stool
Stains, cultures, and other microbiologic tests (PCR, immunofluorescent antibody stains) for bacteria, fungus, viruses
Evaluation of organ function
Pulmonary: ABG (evaluate acid-base status, evaluation of oxygen delivery/consumption)
Cardiac: ABG, mixed venous saturation, lactate
Liver: LFTs, coagulation studies
Renal (and hydration status): BUN, creatinine, bicarbonate, serum sodium
Hematology: WBC count with differential, hemoglobin, hematocrit, platelet count
Evaluation for DIC: PT, PTT, fibrinogen, D-dimer
Extent of inflammatory state: CRP, WBC, ESR, procalcitonin
Additional studies
Electrolytes
Ionized calcium
Magnesium
Phosphate

ABG, arterial blood gas; ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; CRP, C-reactive protein; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; LFTs, liver function tests; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; PT, prothrombin time; PTT, partial thromboplastin time; WBC, white blood cell.

Patients in shock may have decreased serum ionized calcium levels, which will adversely impact cardiac function, especially in infants. Calcium homeostasis also requires normal magnesium levels, and renal failure may disrupt phosphorus levels. Evaluation of a coagulation panel is required to detect disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), particularly in patients with purpura fulminans or petechiae, or in those at risk for thrombosis.

The selection of imaging studies, similar to laboratory studies, should be guided by the presumed etiology of shock. For patients presenting with shock secondary to trauma, standard trauma protocols to evaluate organ damage and potential sites of hemorrhage are indicated. Chest x-rays are routinely performed for critically ill patients to check ETT or central line placement, evaluate the extent of airspace disease and presence of pleural effusions or pneumothorax, and evaluate for pulmonary edema and cardiomegaly. CT of the chest or abdomen may be indicated to better evaluate sites of infection in septic shock, and echocardiography can provide important information about cardiac anatomy and function.

Patients with shock often need invasive hemodynamic monitoring for diagnostic and therapeutic reasons. Arterial catheters provide constant blood pressure readings, and to an experienced interpreter, the shape of the waveform is helpful in evaluating cardiac output. Central venous catheters allow

http://obgynebooks.com

monitoring of central venous pressure (CVP) and central venous oxygen saturation. CVP monitoring does not provide information about absolute volume status, but can provide useful information about relative changes in volume status as therapy is given. Pulmonary artery catheters can also provide valuable information on cardiac status and vascular resistance and enables calculations of oxygen delivery and consumption (Table 14–9), but these catheters are associated with a higher complication rate than CVP lines and are no longer commonly used in either adult or pediatric critical care.

SEPSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sepsis and septic shock remain major causes of death in children worldwide.
- Early recognition and intervention are key to improving patient outcome.
- Organized systematic approaches to the treatment of sepsis within an institution can improve survival.

Table 14–9. Hemodynamic parameters.

Parameter	Calculation	Normal Values
Alveolar partial pressure of oxygen	PaO_2 = (Barometric pressure – 47) × % inspired oxygen concentration	
Alveolar-arterial oxygen difference (mm Hg)	$A\text{–}aDO_2 = PaO_2 – (PaCO_2/R) – PaO_2$	5–15
Cardiac output (L/min)	CO = HR × SV	
Cardiac index (L/min/m^2)	CI = CO/BSA	3.0–4.5
Oxygen content of arterial blood (mL/dL)	$CaO_2 = (1.34 \times \text{hemoglobin} \times SaO_2) + (0.003 \times PaO_2)$	17–24
Oxygen delivery index (mL/min/m^2)	$DO_2 = CaO_2 \times CI \times 10$	550–650
Oxygen content of venous blood (mL/dL)	$CvO_2 = (1.34 \times \text{hemoglobin} \times SvO_2) + (0.003 \times PvO_2)$	12–17
Oxygen consumption index (mL/min/m^2)	$VO_2 = (CaO_2 – CvO_2) \times CI \times 10$	120–200

R, respiratory quotient (normally approximates 0.8).

Sepsis and septic shock require particular consideration because sepsis is one of the major illnesses leading to admission to the PICU. Worldwide, an estimated 18 million patients develop sepsis each year, with 750,000 of those cases in North America. Sepsis is the tenth leading cause of death in the United States and accounts for approximately 40% of intensive care unit (ICU) expenditures in the United States and Europe. Among children, an estimated 42,000 cases of severe sepsis occur annually in the United States, accompanied by a mortality rate of nearly 10%. The incidence of severe sepsis is highest in infancy, remains relatively low from age 1 to mid-life, then rises again in later life.

Published literature regarding sepsis uses a number of overlapping and sometimes confusing terminologies. The systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) refers to a nonspecific syndrome of systemic inflammation typically associated with fever, tachycardia, tachypnea, and an abnormal white blood cell count. Sepsis is defined as a clinical syndrome characterized by a documented or suspected infection, accompanied by clinical and laboratory signs of systemic inflammation (SIRS). Though the criteria used to define sepsis in adults and children differ in published guidelines (Table 14–10), the more specific adult criteria provide a useful framework for thinking about sepsis-related organ dysfunction. Severe sepsis is defined as sepsis along with evidence of at least 1 sepsis-induced major organ dysfunction such as hypotension, hypoxemia, lactic acidosis, oliguria, renal failure, thrombocytopenia, coagulopathy, or hyperbilirubinemia. Of note, the number of organ systems affected by severe sepsis is an important prognostic factor. The risk of death from sepsis rises with the number of organ failures, with a mortality rate of 7%–10% with single organ failure and up to 50% mortality with four organ failures. Septic shock is defined as severe sepsis associated with impaired oxygen delivery, often accompanied by hypotension unresponsive to fluids.

In addition to impaired oxygen delivery, sepsis and septic shock are also associated with impaired utilization of delivered oxygen. The etiology of this impaired oxygen utilization is not well understood but is likely multifactorial and includes maldistribution of blood flow in the microcirculation as well as mitochondrial dysfunction. Recent work has also brought to light the critical role of the innate immune system in sepsis. Infectious agents release pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) such as lipopolysaccharide or peptidoglycans, and damaged tissues release endogenous proteins and nucleic acids that act as molecular triggers, collectively referred to as damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs). These molecules are recognized by pattern recognition receptors of the innate immune system, most prominently the Toll-like receptors, which then trigger inflammatory cascades throughout the body. Derangements of adaptive immunity also contribute to the pathogenesis of sepsis. Toll-like receptor signaling may activate subsets

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–10. Diagnostic criteria for sepsis.

Adults
Infection, documented or suspected, and some of the following:
General signs and symptoms
- Fever (> 38.3°C)
- Hypothermia (core temperature < 36°C)
- Heart rate 90/min or > 2 SD above the normal value for age
- Tachypnea
- Altered mental status
- Significant edema or positive fluid balance (> 20 mL/kg over 24 h)
- Hyperglycemia (plasma glucose > 140 mg/dL or 7.7 mmol/L) in the absence of diabetes

Evidence of inflammation
- Leukocytosis (WBC count > 12,000/μL)
- Leukopenia (WBC count < 4000/μLl)
- Normal WBC count with > 10% immature forms
- Plasma CRP > 2 SD above the normal value
- Plasma procalcitonin > 2 SD above the normal value

Hemodynamics
- Arterial hypotension (SBP < 90 mm Hg; MAP < 70 mm Hg; or an SBP decrease 40 mm Hg in adults or > 2 SD below normal for age)

Organ dysfunction
- Arterial hypoxemia (PaO_2/FIO_2 < 300)
- Acute oliguria (urine output < 0.5 mL/kg/h for at least 2 h, despite adequate fluid resuscitation)
- Creatinine increase > 0.5 mg/dL or 44.2 μmol/L
- Coagulation abnormalities (INR > 1.5 or a PTT > 60 s)
- Ileus (absent bowel sounds)
- Thrombocytopenia (platelet count < 100,000/μL)
- Hyperbilirubinemia (plasma total bilirubin > 4 mg/dL or 70 μmol/L)

Tissue perfusion
- Hyperlactatemia (upper limit of lab normal)
- Decreased capillary refill or mottling

Children
Signs and symptoms of inflammation plus infection with hyper- or hypothermia (rectal temperature > 38.5°C or < 35°C), tachycardia (may be absent in hypothermic patients), and at least one of the following indications of altered organ function: altered mental status, hypoxemia, increased serum lactate level, or bounding pulses.

aPTT, activated partial thromboplastin time; CRP, C-reactive protein; INR, international normalized ratio; MAP, mean arterial blood pressure; SBP, systolic blood pressure; SD, standard deviation; WBC, white blood cell.
Data from Dellinger RP et al: Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. Crit Care Med 2008:Jan;36(1):296–327.

of regulatory T cells in septic patients, leading to either immune paralysis or uncontrolled inflammation depending on the pathophysiologic setting. Cytokine production and leukocyte activation lead to endothelial damage and activation of the clotting system. Microvascular thrombi lead to impaired tissue perfusion, which leads to further tissue damage, which in turn leads to further activation of the immune system. The end result of these processes is impaired oxygen delivery to the tissues, impaired oxygen utilization, and metabolic downregulation, leading to end-organ dysfunction and ultimately to death if the process is not reversed.

» Treatment of Shock & Sepsis

Much attention has been directed in recent years to the role of standardized treatment guidelines in improving outcomes from shock and sepsis, and detailed guidelines are now available from several professional organizations, most prominently the American Heart Association Pediatric Advanced Life Support (PALS) guidelines for initial management of shock in children, and the Surviving Sepsis Campaign guidelines for management of sepsis in adults and children. A key principle of both guidelines is that early recognition and treatment of shock and sepsis, preferably stemming from a consistent organized clinical approach, improve outcomes in all age ranges.

Regardless of the etiology, the end result of shock is organ dysfunction, which if untreated can lead to irreversible MOSF. Therefore, early recognition of shock, coupled with early intervention, is necessary to minimize end-organ injury and improve survival. Airway, breathing, and circulation should be rapidly assessed, with appropriate stabilization of the airway, support of breathing, and stabilization of circulation. Indications for intubation and mechanical ventilation include altered mental status, significant hemodynamic instability, inability to protect the airway, poor respiratory effort, high work of breathing, or poor gas exchange. In addition, patients in shock who will require surgery or other interventions requiring general anesthesia will also require mechanical ventilation. Because of low FRC, infants and neonates are more likely to require early initiation of NIV or endotracheal intubation. In patients with septic shock, use of etomidate for sedation during intubation should be avoided due to its association with adrenal suppression and increased mortality. A temporary intraosseous line should be placed if IV access cannot be rapidly obtained for resuscitation fluids and medications. A central venous line should be considered in patients with hemodynamic instability, particularly if they require ongoing resuscitation and infusions of vasoactive medications. While femoral venous lines are simpler and safer to place, subclavian and internal jugular lines are preferred for more accurate and consistent central venous saturation and pressure monitoring, although they do carry the additional risk of pneumothorax. The rapidity and accuracy of placing central venous lines may be improved with the use of ultrasound guidance.

Empiric antimicrobials should be delivered promptly, ideally within 1 hour of presentation in patients with suspected sepsis. Antibiotics should be chosen according to the

http://obgynebooks.com

most likely cause of infection. While it is highly desirable to obtain cultures prior to initiation of antibiotics in order to guide the choice and duration of antibiotic coverage, the acquisition of cultures should never delay antibiotic administration in patients with suspected sepsis. Early and aggressive control of sources of infection is also essential for patients with sepsis and septic shock, including surgical drainage of abscesses or other infected spaces or removal of infected foreign bodies such as vascular catheters.

An important element of the treatment of shock is early aggressive fluid resuscitation targeted to measurable physiologic endpoints of organ perfusion, so-called "early goal directed therapy." Fluid resuscitation should begin with 20 mL/kg increments administered over 5–10 minutes and repeated as necessary. Fluid administration should be titrated to reverse hypotension and achieve normal capillary refill, pulses, level of consciousness, and urine output. Adult guidelines recommend targeting fluid resuscitation to achieve a central venous oxygen saturation ($ScvO_2$) of greater than 70% and CVP of 8–12 mm Hg in the emergency department, but because of the challenges of placing central venous lines in pediatric patients, this is often not feasible in young patients. If pulmonary edema or hepatomegaly develop, inotropes should be used in place of more fluid, and cardiac function evaluated for evidence of cardiogenic shock. Large volumes of fluid for acute stabilization in children with hypovolemic or septic shock may be necessary to restore adequate oxygen delivery and do not increase the incidence of ARDS or cerebral edema. Patients who do not respond rapidly to 40–60 mL/kg should be monitored in an intensive care setting and considered for inotropic therapy and invasive hemodynamic monitoring. Initial fluid resuscitation should consist of crystalloid (salt solution), which is readily available and inexpensive. Albumin has been shown to be safe in adults and children with septic shock and should be considered when patients have received large volumes of crystalloid and require ongoing resuscitation. Children with hemolytic anemia crises who are hemodynamically stable should receive red blood cell transfusions. Hydroxyethyl starches (HES) are not recommended as resuscitation fluids in septic shock based on adult studies, which showed no improvement in mortality with HES versus normal saline, but an increased risk of renal failure.

Inotropic and vasopressor agents should be considered for patients with refractory shock despite receiving 60 mL/kg of fluid resuscitation (Table 14–11). Inotropic support can be delivered through an intraosseous or peripheral line until stable central access is secured to prevent a delay in initiation. Inotropes or vasopressor therapy should be selected based on the hemodynamic state, which may include high or low cardiac output and high or low systemic vascular resistance and which may also change during the clinical course. An inotropic agent may be required to maintain cardiac output when patients require vasopressors for refractory hypotension. Though dopamine (α- and β-adrenergic agonist) is no longer recommended for adults with septic shock due to arrhythmogenic effects in this population, dopamine remains an acceptable first-line vasopressor in the pediatric population. Either norepinephrine (α- and β_1-adrenergic agonist) or epinephrine (potent α- and β-adrenergic agonist) may be useful for dopamine-refractory shock; generally epinephrine has a greater net effect on cardiac output and is preferred for cold shock states, while norepinephrine has a greater net effect on vascular tone and is preferred for warm shock states. Vasopressin may be considered as a rescue therapy for patients failing catecholamine infusions but has not been clearly shown to improve outcomes from severe sepsis in children. In patients with low cardiac output and high systemic vascular resistance, dobutamine (selective β-agonist) may be used to improve myocardial contractility and reduce afterload. Alternatively, milrinone, a type III phosphodiesterase inhibitor with inotropic and vasodilator activity, can be added to other more potent inotropic agents. Hypocalcemia also often contributes to cardiac dysfunction in shock; calcium replacement should be given to normalize ionized calcium levels.

If perfusion is still inadequate despite aggressive fluid and pressor support, the patient can be considered to have catecholamine-resistant septic shock. This condition may be related to critical illness-related corticosteroid insufficiency (CIRCI), which is a condition of impaired adrenal responsiveness that may occur in as many as 30%–50% of critically ill patients. Absolute adrenal insufficiency, characterized by impaired adrenal responsiveness, low-circulating cortisol concentrations, and often associated with adrenal hemorrhage, is less common and occurs in fewer than 25% of children with septic shock. Children with fulminant meningococcemia, congenital adrenal hyperplasia, or recent steroid exposure are at the highest risk of absolute adrenal insufficiency, while CIRCI can occur in any critically ill patient. Pediatric patients with fluid-refractory, catecholamine-resistant septic shock and suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency should receive hydrocortisone. The recommended dose of hydrocortisone is 50 mg/m^2/d (up to 200 mg/d) either as a continuous infusion or divided doses; however, some children may require higher doses. Hydrocortisone is generally continued until catecholamine support can be successfully discontinued, and a taper should be considered in those children requiring longer than 7 days of therapy.

Cardiogenic shock can also be associated with elevated ventricular filling pressures (> 20 mm Hg). Although increasing preload to patients in this condition may result in augmented cardiac output (to a degree), volume should be administered cautiously as improvement may occur at the expense of elevated pulmonary venous pressure with resultant pulmonary edema. In this setting, judicious administration of diuretics combined with inotropic support can reduce

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–11. Pharmacologic support of the patient with shock.

Drug	Dose (mcg/kg/min)	α-Adrenergic Effect[a]	β-Adrenergic Effect[a]	Vasodilator Effect	Actions and Advantages	Disadvantages
Dopamine	1–20	+ to +++ (dose-related)	+ to ++ (dose-related)	None	Moderate inotrope, wide and safe dosage range, short half-life	Neuroendocrine effects; may increase pulmonary artery pressure
Dobutamine	1–10	None	++	+ (via β_2)	Moderate inotrope; less chronotropy, fewer dysrhythmias than epinephrine	Marked variation among patients, tachycardia
Epinephrine	0.05–1	++ to +++ (dose-related)	+++	+ (at lower doses, via β_2)	Strong inotrope and chronotrope; increases SVR	Tachycardia, dysrhythmias; can cause myocardial necrosis at high doses
Norepinephrine	0.05–1	+++	+++	None	Potent vasoconstrictor (systemic and pulmonary), increases SVR	Reduced cardiac output if afterload is too high; renal and splanchnic ischemia
Milrinone	0.25–0.75	None	None	++	Decreases SVR and PVR; increases cardiac contractility but only mild increase in myocardial O_2 consumption	
Nitroprusside	0.05–8	None	None	+++ (arterial and venous vasodilation)	Potent vasodilator, decreases SVR and PVR, very short-acting.	Toxic metabolites (thiocyanates and cyanide); increased intracranial pressure; ventilation-perfusion mismatch; methemoglobinemia

[a]+, small effect; ++, moderate effect; +++, potent effect. PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; SVR, systemic vascular resistance.

pulmonary edema and improve pulmonary compliance, the work of breathing, and oxygenation.

Blood products can be important supportive therapies in patients with shock. Red blood cells can be administered to patients with shock to improve oxygen-carrying capacity. In hemodynamically stable patients, hemoglobin levels should be maintained over 7 g/dL, while the transfusion threshold can be increased to 10 g/dL in unstable patients. DIC is common in shock, particularly septic shock, due to endothelial damage, formation of microvascular emboli, and consumptive coagulopathy. Thus, a process beginning as increased coagulation leads to a bleeding diathesis. Platelets are generally transfused when platelet counts are less than 20,000/μL, or less than 40,000–60,000/μL in a patient with bleeding or requiring surgical intervention. The presence of antiplatelet antibodies may modify these transfusion criteria. For severe coagulopathies associated with bleeding in the setting of shock, the standard treatment is fresh frozen plasma (FFP) or, for fibrinogen replacement, cryoprecipitate, with close monitoring of prothrombin time (PT), international normalized ratio (INR), and partial thromboplastin time (PTT).

Other supportive therapies for shock and sepsis include mechanical ventilation, sedation and analgesia, renal replacement therapy for renal insufficiency, deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis, stress ulcer prophylaxis, nutrition and glucose control. Finally, ECMO can be used as a life-saving measure in the treatment of severe shock in patients with recoverable cardiac and pulmonary function who have failed conventional management.

Dellinger RP et al: Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock. Crit Care Med 2013;41(2):580–637 [PMID: 23353941].

Kleinman ME et al: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science. Part 14: Pediatric Advanced Life Support 2010. Circulation 2010;122:S876–S908 [PMID: 20956230].

http://obgynebooks.com

Surviving Sepsis Campaign website (a good source for information on sepsis including protocols and order bundles for the care of patients with sepsis). http://www.survivingsepsis.org/Pages/default.aspx. Accessed

Wong HR: Genome-wide expression profiling in pediatric septic shock. Pediatr Res 2013 Jan 17 [Epub ahead of print] [PMID: 23329198].

NEUROCRITICAL CARE

Pediatric neurocritical care is an emerging multidisciplinary field focused on critically ill pediatric patients with neurologic injury due to conditions such as traumatic brain injury (TBI), stroke, status epilepticus, and hypoxic-ischemic brain injury, as well as brain injury that is secondary to other types of critical illness. Neurointensivists work to better understand the distinct pathophysiological and clinical features of pediatric brain injury, develop and apply new diagnostic and monitoring strategies to better understand brain function and dysfunction in real time, and formulate pediatric-specific management guidelines for common neurocritical care problems. While the field is still relatively young, some basic tenets of support for the injured brain are beginning to emerge.

TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Traumatic brain injury (TBI) presents in a variety of ways, from alterations in memory or alertness (mild confusion to unresponsiveness), irritability, seizures, and even poor feeding/emesis. TBI should be high on the differential for all patients matching these descriptions.

» Hypotension, hypoxia, hypoglycemia, hyperthermia, and hypermetabolic states can exacerbate brain injury. Timely identification and correction of these factors are essential.

» Early signs and symptoms of intracranial hypertension tend to be nonspecific. The classic Cushing triad of bradycardia, hypertension, and apnea occurs late and is often incomplete.

Trauma is the leading killer of children in the United States. Fifty percent of trauma-related deaths are due to TBI, and many survivors endure lifelong disabilities. Traumatic brain injuries can be conceptualized as occurring in two phases. Primary injury occurs at the moment that injury disrupts bone, blood vessels, and brain tissue. Prevention through helmets, safety belts, and other injury prevention efforts is the only true means to reduce primary injury. Secondary injury is the indirect result of the primary injury and develops within minutes to days after the initiating event. Management of the head-injured child is directed at preventing or modifying events such as hypoxia, hypotension, hyperthermia, and hypoglycemia that contribute to secondary injury.

» Pathogenesis

The skull contains a fixed total volume composed of the brain, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and cerebral blood. Because of this physical constraint, an increase in volume of one component must be offset by a decrease in one of the other components to maintain a constant ICP (Monro-Kellie doctrine). As a result of a brain injury, the volume of any or all of these components may increase, resulting in increased ICP. Intracranial hypertension is defined as an ICP over 20 mm Hg (vs < 15 mm Hg in healthy children) and is associated with increased morbidity and mortality in brain injured patients. Intracranial hypertension may occur due to other illnesses in addition to TBI (Table 14–12), but, in all cases, the pathogenesis of intracranial hypertension can be understood by considering each of the intracranial components.

The uninjured brain occupies about 80% of the volume within the skull, but this volume can increase dramatically after brain injury as a result of cerebral edema. Vasogenic edema is frequently associated with trauma, tumors,

Table 14–12. Pediatric illnesses commonly associated with intracranial hypertension.

Diffuse processes
Trauma
Hypoxic-ischemic
Near-drowning
Cardiorespiratory arrest
Infectious
Encephalitis
Meningitis
Metabolic
Reye syndrome
Liver failure
Inborn errors of metabolism
Toxic
Lead intoxication
Vitamin A overdose
Focal processes
Trauma
Hypoxic-ischemic
Trauma
Stroke
Infectious
Abscess
Mass lesions
Tumors
Hematomas

http://obgynebooks.com

abscesses, and infarct, and is due to breakdown of the tight endothelial junctions that make up the blood-brain barrier (BBB). As plasma constituents cross the BBB, extracellular water moves into the brain parenchyma. Cytotoxic edema is the most common form of cerebral edema seen in the PICU and is the least easily treated. Cytotoxic edema occurs as a result of direct injury to brain cells, often leading to irreversible cell swelling and death. This form of cerebral edema is typical of traumatic brain injuries as well as hypoxic-ischemic injuries and metabolic disease. Hydrostatic edema, due to transudation of fluid from the capillaries into the parenchyma as a result of elevated cerebral vascular pressures, and interstitial edema, which results from obstructed CSF flow and appears in a typical periventricular distribution, are less common. Cerebral edema can be diagnosed by characteristic findings on either CT or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) brain imaging.

CSF occupies an estimated 10% of the intracranial space. Intracranial hypertension due primarily to obstructed CSF flow or increased CSF volume (eg, primary or secondary hydrocephalus) is generally easily diagnosed by CT scan and treated with appropriate drainage and shunting. CSF drainage can be of benefit in managing intracranial hypertension even in the absence of overt hydrocephalus.

Cerebral blood volume comprises the final 10% of the intracranial space. Changes in cerebral blood volume generally result from alterations in vascular diameter in response to local metabolic demands or local vascular pressures, responses termed autoregulation. Metabolic autoregulation matches cerebral blood flow to tissue demands. High metabolic rates, such as those induced by fever or seizure activity, increase cerebral blood flow by causing vasodilation, which in turn increases cerebral blood volume; lower metabolic rates allow the vessels to constrict, reducing cerebral blood volume. Partial pressure of carbon dioxide is another important determinant, as elevations in blood $PaCO_2$ lead to cerebral vasodilation and decreases in $PaCO_2$ lead to vasoconstriction. Pressure autoregulation, which works to maintain a constant cerebral blood flow in spite of variable systemic blood pressures, links cerebral blood pressure to cerebral blood flow. Within the autoregulatory range of blood pressure, cerebral vessels dilate or constrict as appropriate to maintain constant cerebral blood flow. Once cerebral vessels are maximally constricted, continued increases in systemic pressure may further increase cerebral blood flow and volume; conversely, once vessels are maximally dilated, flow will fall as perfusing pressure falls. It is not unusual to see partial or complete loss of cerebral blood flow autoregulation following TBI. Cerebral blood flow then becomes dependent on systemic blood pressure (traditionally termed "pressure passive" blood flow).

In addition to direct damage from elevated ICP and cerebral edema, secondary injury following trauma may also occur due to ischemia and/or excitotoxicity. Ischemia results from hypoperfusion (an outcome of alterations in cerebral blood flow) or hypoxemia. Excitotoxicity occurs via excessive glutamate exposure, sodium-dependent neuronal swelling, and calcium-dependent mitochondrial failure. Depletion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), oxidative stress, calcium fluxes, hypomagnesemia, and hyponatremia may all contribute to these processes.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical presentation of TBI is dependent on the nature, location, and size of affected areas in the brain, as well as the amount of edema and infringement of CSF pathways. Physical deformities such as skull fractures and exposure of the brain parenchyma may or may not be apparent. Clinical presentation can be subtle, such as a headache from a concussion, or more severe, such as manifestations of intracranial hypertension (Table 14–13) or complete unresponsiveness. Often, early signs and symptoms are nonspecific, particularly in young children. For these reasons, TBI should be included in the differential diagnosis for a wide range of clinical presentations.

Initial examination of the patient with TBI should include assessment of airway patency, breathing, and cardiovascular function. Mental status should be evaluated, and the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) score calculated. Once stabilized from a cardiac and respiratory standpoint, a more detailed neurologic examination including cranial nerves, spontaneous movement of extremities, strength, sensory perception, and presence or absence of deep tendon reflexes should be performed. Similar considerations apply in patients with suspected intracranial hypertension but no clinical history of trauma. In either setting, repeated neurologic examinations are needed to monitor for progression of intracranial hypertension. Head imaging (CT or MRI) is generally needed to identify intracranial injuries, to determine the need for surgical intervention, to monitor the progression of injuries and cerebral edema, and to monitor for the development of complications.

Table 14–13. Signs and symptoms of intracranial hypertension in children.

Early
Poor feeding, vomiting
Irritability, lethargy
Seizures
Hypertension
Late
Coma
Decerebrate responses
Cranial nerve palsies
Abnormal respirations
Bradycardia
Hypertension
Apnea

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

Initial stabilization should begin with support of the airway, breathing, and circulation, but prevention of further neurologic injury should be considered as these steps are completed. Cervical spine immobilization should be strongly considered prior to securing the airway to avoid worsening spinal cord injury. If the GCS is less than 8, or if the patient demonstrates apnea, irregular respirations, significant hypoxia, or other signs concerning for intracranial hypertension, the airway should be secured via endotracheal intubation. Care should be taken during this process to avoid hypercapnia, which will further increase ICP. Similarly, sedative agents used in the process of intubation should be chosen carefully, as adequate sedation is important to blunt any gag response that may further elevate ICP. Maintenance of systemic blood pressure is also critically important during this time.

Following intubation and support of systemic blood pressure, treatment strategies for TBI in children are largely focused on reducing ICP. Current treatment guidelines for children with TBI recommend ICP monitoring for all patients with GCS of 8 or less. This can be accomplished by numerous modalities, including placement of an external ventricular drain (EVD) in the lateral ventricle and/or an intraparenchymal pressure monitor. Little evidence exists to support the utility of ICP measurement and ICP-directed therapies in conditions associated with global CNS injuries (eg, anoxic brain injuries).

Mechanical therapies to reduce ICP range from simple positioning to surgical decompression. Midline positioning and head elevation to 30 degrees can aid in cerebral venous drainage. Timely surgical evacuation of hematomas and other pathologic masses remains a mainstay of TBI treatment, and decompressive craniectomy (removal of a portion of the skull and opening of the dura) can be of benefit in the treatment of refractory intracranial hypertension secondary to focal or diffuse injury. CSF drainage reduces ICP by reducing CSF volume and can be accomplished by placement of an EVD in the lateral ventricles of the brain.

Medical treatment strategies for TBI in children are largely based on reducing ICP to normal levels. Another important concept for the treatment of intracranial hypertension is that of cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP), which is the driving pressure across the cerebral circulation and is defined as mean arterial pressure minus CVP or ICP, whichever is higher. Maintenance of CPP remains a second-tier goal in most published guidelines for management of TBI. Although the ideal target value is not clear in children, most practitioners use 50–60 mm Hg, while others use a graded response based on age (eg, 45–55 in infants/toddlers, 50–60 in children, and > 60 in adolescents). A suggested treatment algorithm for patients with documented intracranial hypertension based on best available evidence is presented in Figure 14–1. The information is largely drawn from experience

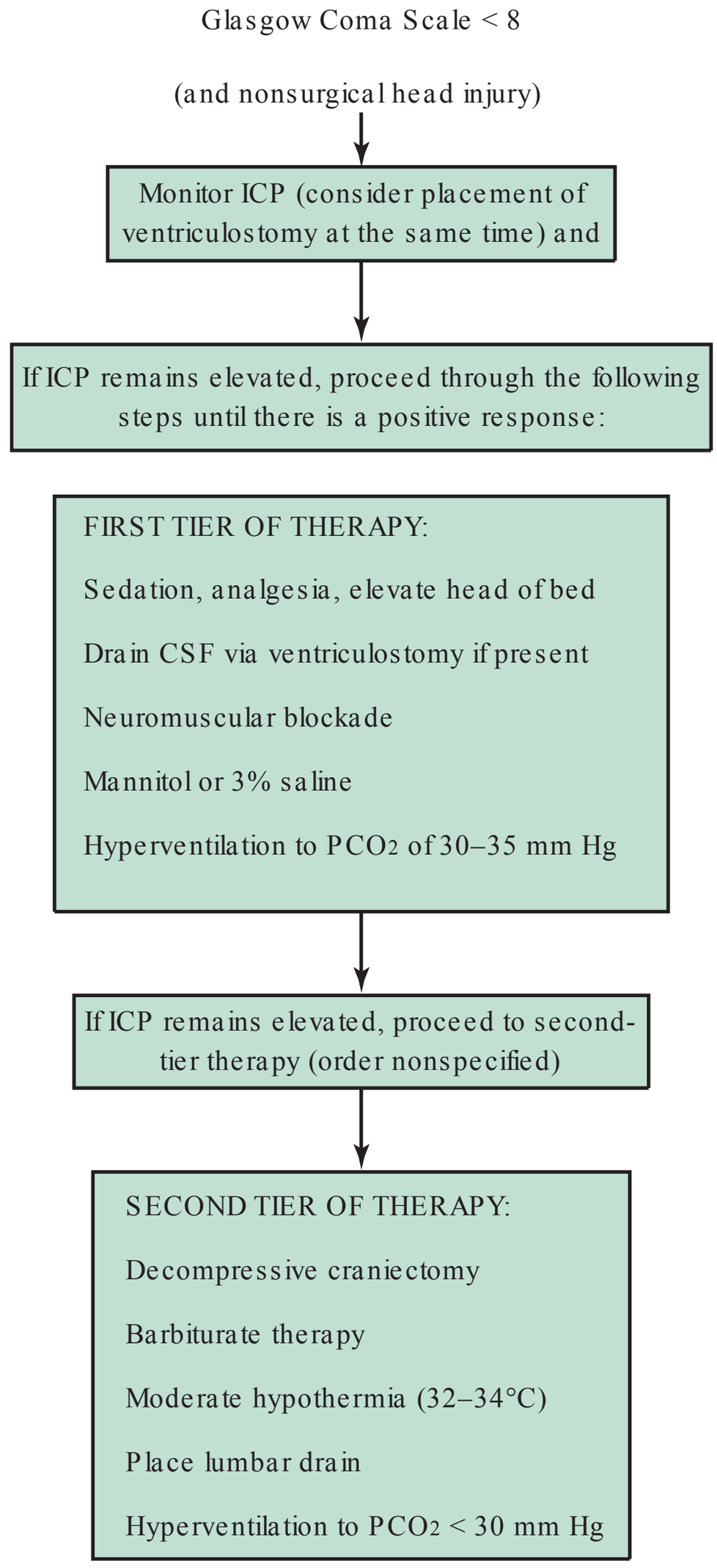


Figure 14–1. Proposed treatment algorithm for intracranial hypertension in head injury. CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; ICP, intracranial pressure; PCO_2, partial pressure of arterial CO_2.

with traumatic brain injuries, and the direct applicability of these concepts to other illnesses associated with intracranial hypertension remains unclear. Osmotic therapies such as hypertonic (≥ 3%) saline and mannitol can be effective treatments for elevated ICP regardless of etiology. Hypertonic saline, often given in doses of 5 mL/kg of 3% saline acutely or

http://obgynebooks.com

as a continuous infusion, encourages volume expansion and increases serum osmolality, enhancing movement of excess water out of brain cells and interstitium and into blood vessels for removal by the kidneys. Serum sodium and osmolality should be followed closely to avoid severe hypernatremia or severe hypertonicity when this agent is used. Mannitol, often given in doses of 0.25–1 g/kg, exerts a rapid rheologic effect, reducing blood viscosity which improves blood flow and subsequent autoregulatory vasoconstriction. Mannitol also exerts a potent osmotic and diuretic effect. While this may further reduce ICP, it can also result in hypovolemia and hypotension, which reduces CPP and exacerbates secondary injury. Volume status and systemic blood pressures should therefore be monitored closely following administration, and treatment should be prompt to reduce these side effects. Renal failure due to intravascular volume depletion and acute tubular necrosis is a rare side effect and is associated with serum osmolality greater than 320 mOsm/L.

Controlled ventilation is an important element of treating intracranial hypertension. Although acutely effective in causing cerebral vasoconstriction, hyperventilation leads to much larger decreases in blood flow than in blood volume, such that hyperventilation necessary to control ICP may actually compromise CNS perfusion and exacerbate secondary injury. This concept was confirmed by studies showing worse outcomes in head-injured patients consistently hyperventilated to a $PaCO_2$ of 25 mm Hg or less. Hyperventilation to $PaCO_2$ levels less than 30 mm Hg—in the past a mainstay in the treatment of intracranial hypertension—should only be used in emergent situations involving patients with acute ICP elevations unresponsive to other measures, such as sedation, paralysis, ventricular drainage, and osmotic diuretics. Controlled normocapnia, to maintain $PaCO_2$ between 35 and 40 mm Hg, is the current standard of care.

Hemodynamic support is also crucial in managing patients with traumatic brain injuries. In addition to reduction in ICP, maintenance of CPP is also important to deliver oxygen and remove metabolites. Hypotension, which may occur due to hemorrhage from comorbid injuries or as a part of a systemic inflammatory response following TBI, results in a linear decrease in CPP. Studies in both adult and pediatric patients with head injury show that even a single episode of hypotension is associated with a marked increase in mortality rates. Maintenance of systemic blood pressure can be accomplished using volume and/or vasopressors.

Current guidelines suggest the use of barbiturates for treating intracranial hypertension refractory to other measures. Barbiturates suppress cerebral metabolism and, through metabolic auto-regulatory effects, reduce cerebral blood volume and ICP. These agents are potent cardiac depressants and their use often leads to hypotension, necessitating the use of a pressor to maintain adequate cerebral and systemic perfusion pressures. Plasma barbiturate levels correlate poorly with effect on ICP, and monitoring of CNS electrical activity by EEG is necessary to accurately titrate their use.

Finally, optimizing oxygen and nutrient delivery to the injured brain should be facilitated by reducing metabolic demands. Aggressive control of fevers (controlled normothermia), using antipyretics and surface cooling devices, is warranted, and continuous temperature monitoring helps prevent over- or undercorrection. Induced hypothermia lowers cerebral metabolism, cerebral blood flow, and cerebral blood volume, but has not been shown to improve overall outcome. Adequate sedation to reduce episodes of agitation and/or pain can further reduce metabolic demands and ICP. If these methods are ineffective, neuromuscular blockade can be an effective adjunctive therapy. Seizures occur in approximately 30% of patients with severe head injury and result in increased metabolic demand and secondary injury. Continuous electroencephalography (EEG) should be used in patients with persistent altered mental status or in those requiring heavy sedation. A short course of empiric antiepileptic medication is frequently used, and seizures noted on EEG should be treated rapidly. Corticosteroids may be of use in reducing vasogenic cerebral edema surrounding tumors and other inflammatory CNS lesions, but in general they have no role in the treatment of TBI.

» Complications

Complications are frequent in patients with traumatic brain injuries and should be anticipated. Nosocomial infections are more common in these patients than other critically ill populations and may lead to worse outcomes. Abnormalities of sodium handling such diabetes insipidus, syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), or cerebral salt wasting are also relatively common following serious brain injuries, and require careful monitoring and intervention. In more severe cases, cerebral infarctions may occur as a result of ischemia, thrombosis, and progressive edema compromising blood supply. Finally, cerebral herniation presenting with Cushing triad of bradycardia, hypertension, and altered respirations is an ominous and life-threatening medical emergency, often leading to death or serious disability in brain-injured patients.

» Prognosis

Many factors will affect prognosis of patients with TBI, especially the inciting event and severity of injury. Experience has shown that it is difficult to predict overall outcome in the initial stabilization period, but lack of improvement in neurologic examination after 24–72 hours (the peak period for swelling) is associated with poor outcome. Follow-up studies have also demonstrated that "recovery" occurs over time, even months to years.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Inflicted Traumatic Brain Injury

Inflicted traumatic brain injury (iTBI), also referred to as nonaccidental trauma (NAT), accounts for a significant portion of traumatic brain injuries in infants and young children. The pathophysiology underlying severe iTBI is often more complex than in accidental head trauma, as a result of several factors, including repetitive brain injuries prior to presentation and additional acute global hypoxic-ischemic brain damage as a result of trauma-induced respiratory failure or cardiac arrest. Management of children with iTBI is similar to those with accidental TBI, but additional evaluations should include an ophthalmologic assessment for retinal hemorrhages and a radiologic skeletal survey to identify occult bone fractures. Child advocacy and law enforcement groups should be notified when abuse is suspected. Unfortunately, children with iTBI often have a worse neurologic outcome compared to accidentally injured children.

HYPOXIC-ISCHEMIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE) results from global brain hypoxia and ischemia produced by systemic hypoxemia and/or reduced blood flow to the brain. Pediatric HIE is commonly caused by cardiopulmonary arrest due to drowning, severe respiratory distress, shock, drug overdose/poisoning, lethal arrhythmia, and other insults. Pediatric HIE is associated with poor neurologic outcome. Like TBI, the extent of brain injury in HIE depends on the duration and severity of the initial inciting event and the development of secondary injury over the minutes to days following reestablishment of cerebral blood flow and oxygen delivery.

» Clinical Findings

Signs and symptoms of brain injury secondary to hypoxic-ischemic injury are variable and depend on injury severity and affected brain regions. Manifestations of HIE can include cognitive dysfunction, seizures (clinical and subclinical), status epilepticus, stroke, coma, a persistent vegetative state, and brain death.

» Treatment

The initial stabilization of a patient with HIE includes airway management, respiratory support, and maintenance of cardiovascular stability. As with traumatic brain injuries, treatment strategies for victims of HIE are focused on optimizing cerebral blood flow and mitigating neuronal loss. Blood flow to the brain is dependent on cardiac output, which may be impaired following cardiac arrest and/or injury. Optimization of cardiac function and systemic hemodynamics with fluid resuscitation and inotropic and/or vasopressor agents is necessary to ensure adequate delivery of oxygen and nutrients to the injured brain. Cerebral pressure auto-regulation may also be impaired in children who develop HIE as a result of cardiac arrest. Several studies in adult victims of cardiac arrest suggest that maintaining a higher mean blood pressure may better support the postischemic brain, but the degree of pressure dysregulation and blood pressure targets to optimize cerebral blood flow in the ischemic pediatric brain remain unclear. Intracranial hypertension may develop as a result of cerebral edema. The utility of ICP monitoring and titration of therapies to a normal ICP in HIE patients has not been clearly defined, and use of those approaches varies across pediatric referral centers. Seizures should be aggressively treated, and continuous EEG monitoring is useful for identifying subclinical seizure activity. Temperature regulation and maintenance of normothermia are also essential, since the risk of severe disability in patients with HIE increases with temperatures greater than 38°C. Therapeutic hypothermia (target body temperature 33–35°C) is a mainstay of treating postcardiac arrest HIE in adults and postanoxic HIE in newborns, but the data to date in the pediatric population do not demonstrate significant benefit.

» Prognosis

Accurately predicting outcome in children with HIE is difficult. While practice parameters for prognosticating neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest in adult patients have been published, no clear roadmap for predicting outcome in pediatric HIE exists. A prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation (> 10–15 minutes) is a significant risk factor for poor outcome. Other indicators of likely poor outcome include any of the following, 24 hours or more after the inciting event: (1) GCS score less than 3–5, (2) absent pupillary and motor responses, (3) absent spontaneous respiratory effort, (4) bilateral absence of median nerve somatosensory evoked potential (N20), (5) discontinuous, nonreactive, or silent EEG (in the absence of confounding drug administration), (6) MRI demonstrating watershed, basal ganglia, and brainstem injury. Outcome prediction is enhanced when several assessment modalities are combined.

Abend NS, Licht DJ: Predicting outcome in children with hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2008;9:32–39 [PMID: 18477911].

Mehta A et al: Relationship of intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure with outcome in young children after severe traumatic brain injury. Dev Neurosci 2010;32:413–419 [PMID: 20805152].

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY & RENAL REPLACEMENT THERAPY

» Definitions

The kidney is important in maintaining homeostasis for a number of important physiologic processes, including

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–14. pRIFLE criteria for diagnosis of acute kidney injury in children.

Stage	Creatinine Criteria	Urine Output Criteria
R (risk)	eCCL down > 25%	< 0.5 cc/kg/h × 8 h
I (injury)	eCCL down > 50%	< 0.5 cc/kg/h × 16 h
F (failure)	eCCL down > 75% or < 20 mL/min/m^2	< 0.3 cc/kg/h × 24 h or anuria × 12 h
L (loss)	Meets F criteria for > 4 wk	
E (end stage)	Meets F criteria for > 3 mo	

eCCL, estimated creatinine clearance = 0.413 × height (cm)/serum creatinine.

fluid and electrolyte balance, acid-base status, erythropoiesis, and vascular tone. Acute renal failure is a frequent problem in critically ill children, with a range of manifestations from modest reductions in creatinine clearance with preserved urine output to anuria. The term acute kidney injury (AKI) has been adopted to reflect the broad range of clinically important manifestations of renal failure, and a number of diagnostic scoring systems have been developed. The most widely accepted of these is the pRIFLE system (Table 14–14), which specifies thresholds for increasing degrees of renal injury.

» Pathophysiology

The etiology of AKI in critically ill children is most often multifactorial. Altered renal perfusion is a common contributing factor, due to combinations of systemic hypotension, impaired venous return to the heart (as with heart failure or high intrathoracic pressure), or high intra-abdominal pressures (abdominal compartment syndrome). Sepsis is another common contributing factor to AKI. The renal effects of sepsis are thought to be due to disturbances of the renal microvasculature caused by inflammatory mediators and activation of the coagulation system, as well as to sepsis-related alterations in systemic hemodynamics. Nephrotoxic medications contribute to as much as 25% in cases of AKI, most commonly antibiotics (aminoglycosides, vancomycin), and immunosuppressives such as cytotoxic cancer chemotherapeutics and calcineurin inhibitors. Other contributing factors include hypoxia, pulmonary-renal and hepatorenal syndromes, and toxic metabolic byproducts as in rhabdomyolysis or tumor lysis syndrome.

» Clinical Findings

In general PICU populations, 10%–40% of patients are found to have or develop AKI, defined as "I" or worse on the pRIFLE scale. Of those who develop AKI, most do so within the first 24–48 hours of hospitalization and almost all within the first week. Importantly, the development of AKI is a strong independent risk factor for increased ICU length of stay and increased mortality. Even after adjusting for severity of illness, AKI is associated with a two- to sixfold increase in mortality risk.

One of the most important clinical consequences of AKI is fluid overload. Excess fluid over 10% of body weight is an independent risk factor for increased ICU length of stay and mortality, and patients overloaded by 20% of their body weight in fluid may have as much as an eightfold increased risk of death. The mechanism behind this association remains unclear, but based on these findings some authorities recommend consideration of renal replacement therapies for patients reaching 10%–20% fluid overload. Other potential clinical consequences of AKI include electrolyte abnormalities, hypertension, and reduced clearance of medications.

» Treatment

The management of AKI is directed at alleviating potential contributing factors. Methods to improve renal perfusion include maintenance of adequate cardiac output and systemic blood pressure with fluids and/or pressors, and relief of excess intrathoracic and intraabdominal pressures when feasible. Unfortunately, prospectively validated thresholds of adequate renal perfusion pressures to prevent or reverse AKI do not exist. The use of direct renal vasodilators such as dopamine or fenoldopam to increase renal blood flow does not improve outcomes in AKI.

Diuretics are commonly used to address fluid overload associated with AKI, but these agents have not been shown to improve renal recovery in children and have been associated with an increased risk of death in adults with AKI. Fluid restriction can be helpful in managing fluid overload and may be of particular benefit in patients with concomitant lung injury.

Renal replacement therapies should be considered for serious electrolyte disturbances, drug or toxin overdoses, or when fluid overload associated with AKI is not responsive to fluid restriction and/or diuretic use. Renal replacement modalities include peritoneal dialysis, intermittent hemodialysis, and continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT), also known as continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH). This latter technique involves sending patient venous blood through an extracorporeal filtration circuit and pump to provide slow, continuous fluid removal and/or dialysis. While the ideal modality depends on the individual clinical situation, CRRT is often the preferred modality of renal replacement for managing AKI in PICU patients. CRRT can be performed as ultrafiltration alone if control of intravascular volume is the primary goal, or CRRT can be performed with a dialysate to allow solute control as well. Advantages of CRRT include (1) in hemodynamically labile patients, a slower continuous rate of fluid removal may be better tolerated and can be more precisely controlled than

http://obgynebooks.com

intermittent dialysis; (2) solute and fluid removal can be regulated separately; and (3) CRRT may allow easing of fluid restrictions so that nutrition can be improved. Disadvantages include the technical complexity of the procedure, including anticoagulation of the circuit, and the need for central venous access. Importantly, despite its growing popularity, no prospective studies have compared CRRT with other modes of renal replacement or demonstrated that early initiation of CRRT improves outcomes in AKI, although retrospective studies have suggested that early initiation of CRRT may be associated with lower mortality. The decision to proceed with CRRT should involve a careful assessment of risks and possible benefits in each individual patient.

Basu RK, Devarajan P, Wong H, Wheeler DS: An update and review of acute kidney injury in pediatrics. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2011;12:339–347 [PMID: 21057358].

Modem V et al: Timing of continuous renal replacement therapy and mortality in critically ill children. Crit Care Med 2014 Apr;42(4):943–953 [PMID: 24231758].

Soler YA et al: Pediatric risk, injury, failure, loss, end-stage renal disease score identifies acute kidney injury and predicts mortality in critically ill children: a prospective study. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2013;14:1–7 [PMID: 23439463].

FLUID MANAGEMENT & NUTRITIONAL SUPPORT OF THE CRITICALLY ILL CHILD

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fluid overload is an important predictor of poor outcome in critically ill children.
- Hyponatremia is also common in the PICU and may be associated with worse outcomes.
- Critically ill children are more susceptible to metabolic stress than adults due to lower muscle and fat mass and higher resting energy requirements.
- Obese children are more likely to develop complications including sepsis, wound infection, and increased length of stay in the PICU.
- Changes in nutritional status can persist for up to 6 months after discharge from a prolonged ICU stay.
- Early enteral and parenteral feeding can improve nutrition deficits, and may influence morbidity and mortality in critically ill infants and children.

Fluid Management

The majority of critically ill children will be unable to take oral fluids and food, and, as a result, the ICU provider must carefully consider the needs of the individual patient in prescribing a fluid and nutrition regimen. Especially in the complex environment of the ICU, the prescription of a fluid and nutrition regimen is a decision that should be approached with the same care as prescription of antibiotics or vasopressors.

Perhaps the most important issue in prescribing fluids is the patient's overall fluid balance. Standard maintenance IV fluid calculations are based on the assumption of a normotensive, spontaneously breathing patient. Patients presenting with hypovolemia or poor perfusion will usually benefit from an infusion rate greater than maintenance. Additional fluid losses may occur from increased urinary losses (eg, with glucosuria), hemorrhage, or externalized surgical drains. Insensible fluid losses may be elevated due to increased work of breathing or fever. Furthermore, any patient with evidence of hypovolemic shock should have appropriate fluid resuscitation regardless of the continuous fluid rate.

While some patients require administration of large volumes of IV fluid early in their course, PICU patients are more likely to develop fluid overload than hypovolemia. Patients may be oliguric due to AKI or have reduced urine output due to excess ADH secretion, as is seen with certain lung diseases and/or positive pressure ventilation. In addition, mechanically ventilated patients generally require less fluid than non-intubated patients because the ventilator delivers humidified gas and the insensible fluid loss that occurs with normal breathing is greatly reduced. Therefore, maintenance fluid requirements for these patients may be as little as 2/3 that of someone who is not mechanically ventilated. Fluid overload more than 10%–20% of body weight is an independent risk factor for increased length of stay and death in general ICU populations, and fluid overload has been associated with worse outcomes in many critically ill subpopulations, including patients with acute lung injury, TBI, and acute renal failure. If systemic hemodynamics allows, early consideration of fluid restriction and/or diuretic use may be warranted in these situations.

Another important parameter in prescribing fluids in the ICU is the tonicity of the fluid chosen. Hyponatremia has been associated with significant morbidity and mortality in neurocritical care patients, and even mild to moderate abnormalities in serum sodium are associated with worse outcomes in adult ICU patients. For these reasons, in children with acute brain injury (traumatic or hypoxic-ischemic), isotonic maintenance fluids are generally recommended to avoid worsening the risk of cerebral edema. For other children who are also at high risk for cerebral edema or hyponatremia, such as patients with diabetic ketoacidosis or meningitis, it may also be prudent to use isotonic fluid. When using isotonic fluid, close electrolyte monitoring is warranted to avoid the complications of undesired hypernatremia and hyperchloremic acidosis. No matter the choice of fluid, the critical care practitioner should closely monitor

http://obgynebooks.com

the patient's fluid balance based on physical examination, weight, and laboratory values and modify the fluid management strategy accordingly.

» Nutritional Support

When severely ill pediatric patients are admitted to the PICU, provision of adequate nutritional support is often overlooked early in the course of therapy. Malnutrition is, however, a major problem in hospitalized patients, leading to higher rates of infectious and noninfectious complications as well as longer hospital stays and increased hospital costs. In the pediatric ICU, it is estimated that as many as 20% of patients experience either acute or chronic malnutrition, a rate that is largely unchanged over the past 30 years. The etiology of malnutrition in PICU patients is typically multifactorial, related to increased demands due to the physiologic and metabolic stresses associated with critical illness (Table 14–15), to inaccurate assessments of caloric needs, and to inadequate delivery of nutrition at the bedside.

» Nutritional Assessment

Early assessment by a pediatric dietician or nutritionist can be helpful to establish nutritional requirements and goals in critically ill children and identify factors impeding adequate nutrition intake and tolerance. The caloric needs of the critically ill child can be estimated beginning with calculations of the basal metabolic rate (BMR) or the resting energy expenditure (REE). BMR represents the energy requirements of a healthy, fasting person who recently awoke from sleep, with normal temperature, and no stress, while REE represents the energy requirements of a healthy person at rest, with normal temperature and not fasting (Table 14–16). These closely related parameters are for practical purposes used interchangeably, although the REE tends to be approximately 10% above the BMR. The estimated basal metabolic need (BMR or REE) can then be multiplied by a stress factor related to the severity of the patient's illness to more accurately estimate overall energy requirements. Unfortunately, because these calculations are based on studies of healthy adults and children, they can be very inaccurate for use in critically ill children and lead to underfeeding or overfeeding. For example, studies have demonstrated significant metabolic instability and alterations in REEs with a predominance of hypometabolism in the PICU population, resulting in a higher risk of overfeeding when using calculations alone.

Indirect calorimetry (IC) is a more accurate means of directly measuring energy expenditure and determining caloric needs, but it is more difficult and expensive to perform and as a result is not always readily available. Identification of patients at highest risk for malnutrition (see Table 14–16) for targeted use of IC assessment has been suggested as one strategy for optimizing the cost-benefit ratio of IC.

Table 14–15. Physiologic and metabolic responses to severe illness.

Physiologic
Cardiovascular
Increased cardiac output
Peripheral vasodilatation and capillary leak
Expansion of vascular compartment
Pulmonary
Increased minute ventilation
Ventilation-perfusion mismatch
Inefficient gas exchange
Increased CO_2 responsiveness
Skeletal muscle
Easier fatigability
Slower relaxation
Altered force-frequency pattern
Renal
Salt and water retention
Impaired concentrating ability
Metabolic
Hormone and biological response modifier levels
Increased insulin
Increased glucocorticoids
Increased catecholamines
Increased interleukin-1
Increased tumor necrosis factor
Carbohydrate metabolism
Increased blood glucose
Increased gluconeogenesis
Increased glucose turnover
Glucose intolerance
Fat metabolism
Increased lipid turnover and utilization
Insuppressible lipolysis
Decreased ketogenesis
Protein metabolism
Increased muscle protein catabolism
Increased muscle branched-chain amino acid oxidation
Increased serum amino acids
Increased nitrogen losses

This technique requires collection of exhaled gases from the patient and can be inaccurate if a significant ETT leak is present, if the FIO_2 is more than 60%, and during hemodialysis or continuous renal replacement.

» Delivery of Nutrition

In adult ICU patients, enteral nutrition is associated with fewer infectious complications than parenteral nutrition. No such comparisons in pediatric patients exist, but it is generally accepted that enteral nutrition is preferred in critically ill children as well. Enteral nutrition is generally well tolerated in hemodynamically stable children, with a goal protein intake of 2–3 g/kg/d. Patients with unstable hemodynamics or

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–16. Markers of high risk of malnutrition suggested as indications for targeted indirect calorimetry assessment of REE.

- Underweight (< 5th percentile for age) or overweight (> 85th percentile for age)
- > 10% weight gain or loss during ICU stay
- Failure to consistently meet prescribed caloric goals
- Failure to wean from respiratory support
- Need for muscle relaxants for > 7 d
- Neurologic injury with evidence of dysautonomia
- Oncologic diagnoses
- Burns
- Requiring mechanical ventilation for > 7 d
- Suspected hypermetabolic state (eg, status epilepticus, SIRS) or hypometabolic state (eg, hypothermia, induced coma)
- ICU length of stay > 4 wk

ICU, intensive care unit; REE, resting energy expenditure; SIRS; systemic inflammatory response syndrome.

requiring vasopressor support may not tolerate full-volume enteral feeding, although low-volume continuous "trophic" feeding is generally safe and feasible in all but the most unstable patients and may reduce the incidence of nosocomial infections by protecting GI tract integrity. Use of an enteral feeding protocol and early transpyloric feeding may improve tolerance. Complications of enteral feeding include GI intolerance (vomiting, bleeding, diarrhea, and necrotizing enterocolitis), aspiration events/pneumonia, and mechanical issues (occlusion of tube, errors in tube placement).

Parenteral nutrition should be considered in critically ill children when enteral nutrition cannot be delivered or tolerated within 3–5 days. Although it is common practice to gradually increase the amino acid dose, evidence from preterm neonates shows that it is safe and efficacious to start parenteral amino acids at the target dose. Lipids should be included to decrease carbon dioxide production, minute ventilation, and fat storage, enhance lipid oxidation, augment protein retention, and prevent essential fatty acid deficiency. Hyperglycemia, hypertriglyceridemia, infection, and hepatobiliary abnormalities are all potential complications of parenteral nutrition. Metabolic evaluation (electrolytes, glucose, lipase, and liver function tests) should be performed regularly and the components of parenteral nutrition adjusted as needed.

Regardless of route of nutrition, monitoring should include routine physical examination, serial measures of growth (weight, skinfold thickness), serial monitoring of serum electrolyte and mineral concentrations, and repeated measurements of REE when available. Measurements of serum albumin provide limited information about nutritional status given the multiple other influences on albumin concentrations. Prealbumin and CRP measurements may be helpful, however. Prealbumin levels are a good marker of nutritional protein status; they drop during acute illness and return to normal during recovery. CRP levels are a marker of the acute phase response to illness and injury; they rise during acute illness and drop with recovery, typically in association with a return to anabolic metabolism and before increases in prealbumin.

Mehta NM, Duggan CP: Nutritional deficiencies during critical illness. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009 Oct;56(5):1143–1160 [PMID: 19931068].

Mehta NM et al: A.S.P.E.N. clinical guidelines: nutrition support of the critically ill child. J Parent Enteral Nutr 2009;33(3): 260–276 [PMID: 19398612.]

Valentine SL et al: Fluid balance in critically ill children with acute lung injury. Crit Care Med 2012 Oct;40(10):2883–2889 [PMID: 22824936].

SEDATION & ANALGESIA IN THE PEDIATRIC ICU

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pain control and relief of anxiety are standard of care for all patients in the PICU.
- Sedation and analgesia must be individualized for each patient and reassessed frequently to avoid inadequate or excessive medication.
- Sedative and analgesic medications have unique sets of physiologic effects and side effects, and these agents should only be used with adequate monitoring and support to address potential adverse events.

Children admitted to the PICU often require anxiolytic and analgesic medications to minimize discomfort and keep them safe. Sedation and anxiolysis may also be needed to facilitate mechanical ventilation or the performance of procedures, and analgesia may be needed for postoperative pain or pain related to traumatic injuries. Thus, careful consideration of a patient's sedative and analgesic needs is a vital part of ICU management.

When determining which anxiolytic and analgesic medications to initiate, consider the underlying problem and the goals of treatment. It is important to distinguish between anxiety and pain, because pharmacologic therapy may be directed at either or both of these symptoms (Table 14–17). Additional considerations in sedative selection are the route of administration and the anticipated duration of treatment. Routes of administration may be limited by the patient's IV access or ability to tolerate oral medications. Children who require more frequent dosing or tighter control of

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–17. Commonly used intravenous medications for pain and anxiety control.

Drug	Suggested Starting Dose	Advantages	Disadvantages	Usual Duration of Effect
Morphine	0.1 mg/kg; continuous infusion, 0.05–0.1 mg/kg/h	Excellent pain relief, reversible	Respiratory depression, hypotension, nausea, suppression of GI motility, histamine release	2–4 h
Hydromorphone	0.015 mg/kg; continuous infusion, 1.5–3 mcg/kg/h	Good pain relief, reversible	Respiratory depression, histamine release, nausea, suppression of GI motility	2–4 h
Fentanyl	1–2 mcg/kg; continuous infusion, 0.5–2 mcg/kg/h	Excellent pain relief, reversible, short half-life	Respiratory depression, chest wall rigidity, severe nausea and vomiting	30 min
Midazolam	0.1 mg/kg; continuous infusion 0.05–0.2 mg/kg/h	Short half-life, only benzodiazepine given as continuous infusion	Respiratory depression	20–40 min
Lorazepam	0.1 mg/kg	Longer half-life, sedation and seizure control	Nausea and vomiting, respiratory depression, phlebitis	2–4 h
Diazepam	0.1 mg/kg	Sedation and seizure control	Respiratory depression, jaundice, phlebitis	1–3 h
Dexmedetomidine	0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h	Sedation, anxiolysis, analgesia without respiratory depression	Bradycardia, hypotension	10 min–2 h

sedation level may benefit from a continuous infusion whereas patients undergoing a bedside procedure may only require a small number of discrete doses. Potential adverse effects in particular clinical circumstances are another important consideration in sedative and analgesic selection.

» Sedation

Sedative (anxiolytic) medications may be indicated when the goals of treatment are to reduce anxiety, facilitate treatment or procedures, manage acute confusional states, and diminish physiologic responses to stress, such as tachycardia, hypertension, or increased ICP. The most commonly used agents in the PICU are the benzodiazepines and the opioids. These should be carefully titrated to effect to avoid oversedation and resultant respiratory depression and/or hemodynamic instability.

» Benzodiazepines

Benzodiazepines work through the neuroinhibitory transmitter γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) system, resulting in anxiolysis, sedation, hypnosis, skeletal muscle relaxation, and anticonvulsant effects. Benzodiazepines provide little to no analgesia and thus need to be combined with other medications when pain control is required.

Most benzodiazepines are metabolized in the liver, with their metabolites subsequently excreted in the urine; thus, patients in liver failure are likely to have long elimination times. Benzodiazepines can cause respiratory depression if given rapidly in high doses, an important consideration for the non-intubated patient. They can also cause cardiovascular compromise in critically ill patients, making careful titration of doses essential.

In some children, benzodiazepines can cause a paradoxical effect, producing greater agitation than sedation. In those cases, selection of an alternative agent may be more appropriate than escalation in dose. When overdose is a concern, flumazenil may be used to reverse benzodiazepine effects. Flumazenil must be used with care, however, as its effects generally wear off faster than those of most benzodiazepines. Additionally, in tolerant patients rapid reversal may result in withdrawal symptoms, including seizures.

Commonly used benzodiazepines in the PICU include midazolam, lorazepam, and diazepam. Each has differing half-lives, resulting in varying durations of effect, and multiple possible routes of administration. Midazolam has the shortest half-life and produces excellent retrograde amnesia lasting for 20–40 minutes after a single IV dose. Therefore, it can be used for short-term procedural sedation and anxiolysis with single or intermittent doses or for prolonged sedation as a continuous infusion. Lorazepam has a longer half-life than midazolam (or diazepam) and can achieve sedation for as long as 6–8 hours. It has less effect on the cardiovascular and respiratory systems than other benzodiazepines and is commonly used for short-term sedation or initial treatment of seizures. Continuous infusions of lorazepam should be avoided because its preservative, polyethylene glycol, can accumulate in patients with renal

http://obgynebooks.com

insufficiency and produce a metabolic acidosis. Diazepam has a longer half-life than midazolam and is used most commonly to treat muscle spasticity and seizures. A disadvantage of diazepam in the PICU is the long half-life of its intermediary metabolite, nordazepam, which may accumulate and prolong sedation, making diazepam less ideal for short-term sedation.

» Other Sedative Medications

Opioids are strong analgesics that also have sedative effects. They are commonly used as adjuncts in combination with other sedatives such as benzodiazepines. Specific medications are described further in the analgesic medication section below.

Ketamine (IV or IM) is a phencyclidine derivative that produces a trance-like state of immobility and amnesia known as dissociative anesthesia. Ketamine does not cause significant respiratory depression at nonanesthetic doses, an advantage for the nonintubated patient. Ketamine has negative inotropic effects, although these are countered by stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system resulting in an increase in HR, blood pressure, and cardiac output for most patients. These effects may make ketamine a good choice for hemodynamically unstable patients. Additionally, ketamine has bronchodilatory properties and, thus, may be useful for children with status asthmaticus. Finally, it has strong analgesic effects and therefore may be used as a single agent for sedation for painful procedures. The main side effects seen with ketamine are increased salivary and tracheobronchial secretions and unpleasant dreams or hallucinations. Atropine or glycopyrrolate may be administered ahead of time to reduce secretions, and concurrent administration of benzodiazepines may reduce the hallucinatory effects. Although most frequently used for short-term sedation, low-dose continuous infusions may be used in selected patients.

Dexmedetomidine is a selective α_2-adrenoreceptor agonist that produces sedation, anxiolysis, and some analgesia with minimal respiratory depression. It allows for the ability to rouse the patient easily if necessary. These advantages have resulted in increasing use in critically ill children for procedural sedation as well as sedation to facilitate mechanical ventilation. The most frequent side effects observed are dose-related bradycardia and hypotension. Dexmedetomidine is primarily used as a short- or long-term continuous infusion. The use of dexmedetomidine may also mitigate the need for increasing doses of opioids and benzodiazepines in patients requiring multiple sedative medications.

Propofol is an anesthetic IV induction agent with strong sedative effects. Its main advantages are a rapid onset and rapid recovery time resulting from its rapid hepatic metabolism. Because propofol has no analgesic properties, an analgesic agent should be concurrently administered for painful procedures. Propofol can cause significant vasodilation, resulting in dose-related hypotension, in addition to dose-dependent respiratory depression. Owing to concerns for propofol infusion syndrome, a sudden-onset, profound, and often fatal acidosis associated with prolonged infusions, propofol is now used in children mostly for procedural or short-term sedation.

Barbiturates (phenobarbital and thiopental) can cause direct myocardial and respiratory depression and are, in general, poor choices for sedation of seriously ill patients. Phenobarbital has a very long half-life (up to 4 days), and recovery from thiopental, although it is a short-acting barbiturate, can be prolonged because remobilization from tissue stores occurs.

» Analgesia

Opioid and nonopioid analgesics are the mainstay of treatment for acute and chronic pain in the PICU. Although several other medications used for sedation also have analgesic properties, they are uncommonly used for primary treatment of pain.

A. Opioid Analgesics

All opioids provide analgesia and have dose-dependent sedative effects. A range of plasma concentrations produce analgesia without sedation; the dose required to produce adequate analgesia varies significantly between patients. Therefore, the best approach to dosing with opioids is to start with a low-end dose but then titrate to effect, monitoring for side effects. The most common side effects of these agents are nausea, pruritus, slowed intestinal motility, miosis, cough suppression, and urinary retention. Opioids can also cause respiratory depression, particularly in infants. Morphine can cause histamine release leading to pruritus and even hypotension; fentanyl generally has few hemodynamic effects in a volume-replete patient. Opioids are metabolized in the liver, with metabolites excreted in the urine. Thus, patients with hepatic or renal impairment may have prolonged responses to their administration.

The choice and mode of delivery of agents within this class depends upon the physiologic state of the child and the etiology of pain. In an awake and developmentally capable patient, a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) approach with an infusion pump may be appropriate. Each of these medications may also be administered intermittently, in which case half-life and tolerability of side effects may be the primary considerations. For many patients in the PICU, a continuous infusion may be the best option. Several IV medications are commonly used as a continuous infusion or by PCA, including fentanyl, morphine, and hydromorphone. For children who have more chronic, less severe pain and who can tolerate oral medications, there are many different options, including codeine, hydrocodone, hydromorphone, morphine, methadone, and oxycodone.

http://obgynebooks.com

Naloxone may be used as an opioid reversal agent for narcotic overdoses. Because of its relatively short half-life compared to many opioids, symptoms may recur and repeat dosing or even a continuous infusion may be necessary. Caution should be used in patients with chronic opioid exposure to avoid precipitating severe withdrawal symptoms.

B. Nonopioid Analgesics

Nonopioid analgesics used to treat mild to moderate pain include acetaminophen, aspirin, and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). Because the effects of these agents can be additive with opiates, a combination of opiate and nonopiate medications can be a very effective approach to pain management in the ICU.

Acetaminophen is the most commonly used analgesic in pediatrics in the United States and is the drug of choice for mild to moderate pain because of its low toxicity and minimal side-effect profile. With chronic use and higher doses, acetaminophen may cause liver and renal toxicity.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are reasonable alternatives for the treatment of pain, particularly those conditions associated with inflammation. All NSAIDs carry the risk of gastritis, renal compromise, and bleeding due to inhibition of platelet function, limiting their use in patients with thrombocytopenia, bleeding, and kidney disease. Ketorolac is the only IV NSAID currently available. It can be very effective for children who cannot take oral medication or require a faster onset of action. Because of the concerns for more serious renal toxicity with longer-term use, ketorolac is primarily used for shorter-term pain control. Ibuprofen and naproxen are options for patients who can tolerate oral medications. Ibuprofen has a shorter half-life and therefore requires more frequent dosing.

» Titration of Sedative & Analgesic Dosing, Delirium, & Withdrawal Syndromes

Recently, there has been an increasing appreciation of the disadvantages of sedative agents, including short- and long-term cognitive deficits, an increased risk of delirium, and withdrawal syndromes. Daily interruption of all continuous sedation with titrated reintroduction as necessary has been shown in adult ICU patients to dramatically reduce the duration of mechanical ventilation and length of stay in the ICU. Similar data are not yet available for pediatric patients. Another proposed intervention to decrease sedation use in children is protocolized, nurse-driven sedation goals. A recent large multicenter, randomized study of this approach in pediatrics was able to demonstrate decreased overall opioid exposure, but failed to show a decreased length of mechanical ventilation. The untoward effects of sedation in critically ill children remain a concern and, in general, doses of these agents should be titrated downward daily to the minimum required doses.

Standardized scales have been developed to assist in the titration of sedatives and analgesics in children. In the awake and verbal patient, a pain scale can be used to determine the level of pain and need for treatment. In a nonverbal patient, this assessment can be more difficult, and the medical team may need to depend upon changes in physiologic parameters such as HR and blood pressure to indicate pain and the effect of treatment. When using these measures, however, the provider should also exclude or address physiologic causes of agitation, such as hypoxemia, hypercapnia, or cerebral hypoperfusion caused by low cardiac output.

Several scoring systems are available to assess the level of sedation and help guide sedation management decisions. These include the Ramsay scale, the COMFORT score, and the State Behavioral Scale (SBS). The SBS is the most recently developed and has been validated for infants and children who are mechanically ventilated. Utilizing such a measurement tool allows for better communication among team members with regard to the goals of treatment and the effectiveness of any changes in sedation plan.

As with adult patients, critically ill children are at risk for developing delirium while in the ICU. Delirium may present with a wide variety of symptoms, commonly grouped as hypoactive or hyperactive. Hyperactive delirium is associated with restlessness, agitation, emotional lability and combativeness. Hypoactive delirium, on the other hand, may be more difficult to recognize; patients may be quiet, withdrawn, and apathetic with decreased responsiveness. Parents may notice their child's personality is quite different from baseline. A newly developed PICU delirium scale (Pediatric Confusion Assessment Method for the ICU [pCAM-ICU]) may help better assess for delirium in the PICU population.

In critically ill children, as in adults, the risk of developing delirium appears to increase with severity of illness, administration of sedative medications such as benzodiazepines, and greater sleep disturbances. Preventing delirium completely may be difficult, but suggested strategies include avoiding oversedation, changing environmental cues between day and night, and ensuring presence of parents and objects familiar to the child. Once delirium is present, returning to as normal a schedule and environment as possible can be very helpful. This includes promoting normal circadian rhythms, for example, greater activity during the day and quiet, dark rooms at night. Maintaining close involvement of family members may also bring reassurance and consistency for the child. Finally, in more extreme situations, treatment with medications can be considered. Antipsychotics may be used intermittently but with caution given their potential side effects. Benzodiazepines may calm the patient but also may induce a paradoxical reaction. Dexmedetomidine may also be an effective medication for treatment of delirium but this use has not been well studied in the pediatric population.

Withdrawal syndromes are another important aspect of the use of sedative and analgesic agents in the ICU.

http://obgynebooks.com

Long-term administration and high doses of continuous infusions of opioids or benzodiazepines can lead to tolerance and physical dependence. Acute reductions or cessation of these medications can result in withdrawal symptoms such as agitation, tachypnea, tachycardia, sweating, and diarrhea. The risk of withdrawal varies among individuals, but the longer patients receive opiates or benzodiazepines, the more likely they are to have withdrawal symptoms. Gradual tapering of the medication dosage over 7–10 days often effectively prevents withdrawal symptoms. This gradual reduction may be facilitated by transitioning to intermittent dosing of longer half-life agents, such as methadone or lorazepam. While weaning opiates or benzodiazepines, providers should assess daily for symptoms of withdrawal. This assessment can be facilitated by symptom scores such as the Withdrawal Assessment Tool-1 (WAT-1). A higher WAT-1 score suggests greater withdrawal symptoms and may indicate a need to slow the weaning plan. Conversely, if the WAT-1 score is consistently low, the patient is likely to tolerate the current pace or, possibly, an accelerated dose reduction.

Curley MA et al: Protocolized sedation vs usual care in pediatric patients mechanically ventilated for acute respiratory failure: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2015 Jan 27;313(4)379–389 [PMID: 25602358].

Franck LS et al: Validity and generalizability of the Withdrawal Assessment Tool-1 (WAT-1) for monitoring iatrogenic withdrawal syndrome in pediatric patients. Pain 2012 Jan;153(1):142–148 [PMID: 22093817].

Smith HA et al: Delirium: an emerging frontier in the management of critically ill children. Anesthesiol Clin 2011 Dec;29(4): 729–750 [PMID: 22078920].

Whalen LD et al: Long-term dexmedetomidine use and safety profile among critically ill children and neonates. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2014 Oct;15(8):706–714 [PMID: 25068249].

END-OF-LIFE CARE & DEATH IN THE PICU

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- End-of-life discussions in the PICU should include the patient, if possible, and family members as well as the medical team.
- PICU providers may assist in defining the limits of care provided, facilitating withdrawal of life support, and providing compassionate palliative care.
- The palliative care and ethics teams, if available, may facilitate end-of-life discussions in the PICU.
- Withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies should include a plan to treat any pain and discomfort in the patient.
- Brain death determination requires a systematic and age-appropriate evaluation consistent with institutional policies.
- Tissue and organ donation must be considered with every death.
- Grief/bereavement support for the family as well as medical team members should be provided following every death in the PICU.

Death in the PICU

In-hospital pediatric deaths occur infrequently. A large proportion of pediatric deaths occur in the PICU, however, and pediatric intensivists may be called upon to help define the limits to care provided, assist in the withdrawal of life-sustaining medical therapies (LSMTs), and provide compassionate palliative care. End-of-life discussions may have occurred prior to PICU admission for some children with congenital or chronic diseases. For other children, their PICU stay may be the first time a child or family discusses end-of-life decisions. Regardless of the individual patient's situation, the medical team has a responsibility to facilitate discussions regarding the goals of care in an honest and sensitive manner.

Deaths without any limitations on patient care comprise a small minority (10%–12%) of pediatric ICU deaths. In these circumstances, most recent studies have found greater family satisfaction with the care provided if family members are allowed to witness ongoing resuscitative efforts. The remainder of pediatric deaths is divided between brain death declarations (23%) and decisions to limit or withdraw medical care (65%).

Brain Death

Severe neurologic injury can result in the irreversible loss of all brain functioning, or brain death. The concept of brain death arose when advances in ICU technologies allowed heart and lung function to be supported even in the absence of any brain activity. Brain death is diagnosed by a clinical examination (Table 14–18) and is based on published guidelines. The general approach in the diagnosis of brain death is similar in most medical centers, but there can be subtle institutional variations. Therefore, it is imperative for PICU providers performing the brain death examination to be familiar with their own institutional policies on brain death declaration. A patient declared brain dead is legally dead and further medical support is no longer indicated, though the timing of discontinuation of medical support should be discussed and agreed upon with the patient's family.

Brain death is determined through a complete clinical assessment of the patient. First and foremost, the provider must be confident that the patient's condition is irreversible

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 14–18. Brain death examination.

- Patient must have normal blood pressure, core temperature > 35°C, normal electrolytes and glucose, and not be receiving sedating medications or muscle relaxants.
- 24-h waiting period suggested following CPR or severe brain injury before first brain death exam.
- Flaccid coma with no evidence of cortical function.
- Absence of brain stem reflexes:
  - Apnea ("apnea test": no respirations seen with $PaCO_2$ > 60 mm Hg and a change in $PaCO_2$ > 20 mm Hg).
  - Fixed dilated pupils with no response to light.
  - Absence of corneal reflexes.
  - Absence of eye movements including spontaneous, oculocephalic (doll's eye), or oculovestibular (cold caloric). Do not perform oculocephalic maneuver if there is potential for cervical spine injury.
  - Absence of gag and cough reflex.
- Examination consistent throughout observation period as documented by two separate clinical examinations by two different attending physicians.
- Recommended observation periods between brain death examinations:
  - Term newborn to 30 d old—24 h
  - 31 d–18 y—12 h
- Ancillary testing (cerebral angiography, radionuclide scanning, electroencephalography, or transcranial Doppler ultrasonography) recommended if unable to perform cranial nerve examination or apnea testing due to patient instability or injuries.

and must exclude any potentially reversible conditions that may produce signs similar to brain death. These may include hypotension, hypothermia, or the presence of excessive doses of sedating medications. The brain death examination is a formal clinical examination directed at demonstrating the absence of cortical function (flaccid coma without evidence of response to stimuli) and brainstem function (cranial nerve testing). In order to meet the definition of brain death, guidelines require that qualified physicians document two separate clinical examinations consistent with brain death (ie, no evidence of brain function) separated by a period of observation. If a patient cannot tolerate some portion of the clinical examination (typically apnea testing) or is very young (especially < 1 year of age), an ancillary test such as EEG or cerebral perfusion scan may provide supporting evidence of brain death. Once a child has been declared brain dead, their time of death is noted as occurring at the completion of the second examination even if they are still receiving cardiopulmonary support.

» Limitation or Withdrawal of Medical Care

Most patients who die in the pediatric ICU will do so following a decision to limit or withdraw medical support rather than via a brain death declaration. The discussions leading to these decisions should include the patient (to the extent possible given their medical condition and developmental age), family members, and members of the medical team. The primary goals of these discussions should be to (1) communicate information regarding the patient's medical status and anticipated prognosis, and (2) clarify the goals of ongoing medical care both in regard to the patient's current status and in the event of an acute decompensation. If the opinion of the medical team is that the patient's condition is likely irreversible, the options for care include (1) continuing current support with escalation as deemed medically reasonable by the health care team; (2) continuing current support but not adding any new therapies; (3) withdrawal of life sustaining therapies such as mechanical ventilation and hemodynamic support. The first two options may include a decision to withhold cardiopulmonary resuscitation in the event of a respiratory or cardiac arrest (Do Not Attempt Resuscitation [DNAR]). The third option presumes a DNAR but this must be explicitly written in the medical record and communicated to team members.

Discussions with patients and families regarding the decision to limit resuscitation or to withdraw LSMT should respect the following basic principles:

- Discussions should be conducted by experienced personnel with the ability to communicate in a clear and compassionate manner and should occur at an appropriate time and place.
- Cultural needs should be considered prior to major discussions and may include the need for a translator or spiritual guidance.
- Deliberations should begin with a clear statement that the goal is to make decisions in the best interest of the patient, and that the health care team can support the patient and family in making reasonable decisions based on that goal.
- Potential options regarding limitations of care or withdrawal of care should be clearly elucidated for the decision makers.
- Withdrawal of LSMT can be considered when the pain and suffering inflicted by prolonging and supporting life outweighs the potential benefit for the individual. If there is no reasonable chance of recovery, the patient has the right to a natural death in a dignified and pain-free manner.

The health care team should emphasize that decisions are not irrevocable; if at any time the family or health care providers wish to reconsider the decision, full medical therapy can be reinstituted until the situation is clarified.

Prior to the withdrawal of LSMT, the patient's family and care team should be prepared for the physiologic process of dying that the child will undergo. Key facets of the process to discuss include the possibility of agonal respirations, which can be disturbing to witness for family members and care

http://obgynebooks.com

providers, as well as the unpredictable length of time that the process may require. Additionally, the fact that patient will ultimately have a cardiopulmonary arrest and a member of the medical team will declare the time of death should be discussed. The family should also be reassured that the patient will be given appropriate doses of medications to treat signs and symptoms of pain or discomfort and that neither they nor the patient will be abandoned by the medical team during this process.

Palliative Care & Bioethics Consultation

Palliative care teams and ethics consultation services are essential resources to help the health care team and families address difficult end-of-life decision making. For families of children with congenital or chronic diseases, the palliative care team may have established relationships with the patient and family during prior medical episodes. For patients with new conditions or whose prognosis has changed, the palliative care team may be newly introduced in the PICU. In either case, the palliative care team can bring invaluable support and resources for families during end-of-life discussions. If conflict arises, surrounding decisions about limiting medical care, an ethics consultation in the ICU setting can aid the process by helping to identify, analyze, and resolve ethical problems. Ethics consultation can independently clarify views and allow the health care team, patient, and family to make decisions that respect patient autonomy and promote maximum benefit and minimal harm to the patient.

A more comprehensive discussion of palliative care can be found elsewhere in this book. Briefly, palliative care medicine has developed as a specialized field of practice to address the needs of dying children or children with a shortened lifespan. Many centers have developed palliative care teams that include medical personnel, social workers, and spiritual leaders to help families navigate the difficult process of dying and end-of-life decision making, including withdrawal of support. Once the decision is made to limit or withdraw LSMT, a palliative care plan should be agreed on by all decision makers, clarified to other health care providers and instituted with the primary goal of optimizing the patient's and family's experience prior to and following death. The plan, at minimum, should address (1) adequate pain control and sedation, (2) provision of warmth and cleanliness, and (3) ongoing patient and family support and dignity.

Tissue & Organ Donation

Organ transplantation is standard therapy for many pediatric conditions and many children die while awaiting a transplant due to short supply of organs. The gift of organ donation can be a positive outcome for a family from the otherwise tragic loss of their child's life. The 1986 U.S. Federal Required Request Law mandates that all donor-eligible families be approached about potential organ donation. The decision to donate must be made free of coercion, with informed consent, and without financial incentive. The state organ-procurement agencies provide support and education to care providers and families to make informed decisions.

To be a solid-organ donor, the patient must be declared dead and have no conditions contraindicating donation. The most frequent type of solid-organ donor in the PICU is a brain dead donor. However, the need for new donor organs has led to the emergence of protocols for procuring solid organs from non–heart-beating donors. Although this practice has been described by many terms including Donation after Cardiac Death, the most recent nomenclature is Donation after Circulatory Determination of Death (DCDD). In these cases, the patient does not meet brain death criteria but has an irreversible disease process, and the family or patient has decided to withdraw life-sustaining therapy and consented to attempted organ donation. In the DCDD process, LSMT is withdrawn and comfort measures are provided as per usual care. The withdrawal of care may take place in the PICU or the operating room without any surgical staff present, depending upon institutional policy. Once the declaring physician has determined cessation of cardiac function, the patient is observed for an additional short time period for auto-resuscitation (the reinitiation of cardiac activity without medical intervention). After this waiting period, the patient is declared dead and the organs are harvested for donation. If the patient does not die within a predetermined time limit after discontinuation of LSMT, comfort measures continue but solid-organ donation is abandoned due to unacceptably long ischemic times.

Tissue (heart valves, corneas, skin, and bone) can be donated following a "traditional" cardiac death (no pulse or respirations), brain death, or DCDD.

Bereavement & Grief Support

After any pediatric death, bereavement and grief support for families and health care providers are essential components of comprehensive end-of-life care. Families may need information about care of the body after the death, funeral arrangements, and autopsy decisions as well as about educational, spiritual, and other supportive resources available. Members of the medical team may feel their own grief and sense of loss with the death of a patient. These emotions, if not appropriately addressed, can negatively affect their personal and professional lives. Therefore, similar supportive services should be available to health care workers caring for dying children.

Lee KJ et al: Alterations in end-of-life support in the pediatric intensive care unit. Pediatrics 2010;126(4):e859–e864 [PMID: 20819890].

http://obgynebooks.com

Nakagawa T et al: Guidelines for the determination of brain death in infants and children: an update of the 1987 task force recommendations. Pediatrics 2011;128(3):e720–e740 [PMID: 21873704].

QUALITY IMPROVEMENT INITIATIVES IN THE PICU

There has been intense interest in quality improvement initiatives in adult and pediatric ICUs in recent years given the frequency and high cost of ICU-related complications. National collaboratives have identified six areas of focus for pediatric ICU quality and safety improvement efforts: risk adjustment (severity-adjusted mortality rates and length of stay measures), central venous catheter infection, mechanical ventilation, unplanned readmissions to the PICU, pain assessment, and medication safety. The two most widely applied quality initiatives are efforts to reduce central venous catheter-related infections and to reduce the incidence of VAP. Efforts to reduce catheter-related infections have largely focused on implementation of procedure checklists to ensure strict adherence to sterile procedure during catheter insertion, including hand hygiene, barrier precautions and site preparation, as well as sterile practice when accessing the catheter during care. Efforts to reduce VAPs include defined order sets ("order bundles") for mechanically ventilated patients specifying patient positioning, oral care, feeding, and ETT suctioning practices in an effort to reduce contamination of the airway and ETT with bacterial pathogens from the patient's GI tract or caregivers. More recent efforts have begun to focus on early identification and treatment of sepsis using defined diagnostic triggers and order sets. Most of the data supporting these interventions have been derived from adult ICU populations, and, to date, few large scale studies have been published documenting efficacy of these measures in the pediatric ICU population. Data that are available suggest that these initiatives are beneficial, although additional studies will likely be needed to refine and optimize these approaches in the pediatric ICU setting.

http://obgynebooks.com

15 Skin

Joseph G. Morelli, MD
Lori D. Prok, MD

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

DIAGNOSIS OF SKIN DISORDERS

Examination of the skin requires that the entire surface of the body be palpated and inspected in good light. The onset and duration of each symptom should be recorded, together with a description of the primary lesion and any secondary changes, using the terminology in Table 15–1. In practice, characteristics of skin lesions are described in an order opposite to that shown in the table. Begin with distribution, then configuration, color, secondary changes, and primary changes. For example, guttate psoriasis could be described as "generalized, discrete, red, or scaly papules."

TREATMENT OF SKIN DISORDERS

Topical Therapy

Treatment should be simple and aimed at preserving normal skin physiology. Topical therapy is often preferred because medication can be delivered in optimal concentrations to the desired site.

Water is an important therapeutic agent, and optimally hydrated skin is soft and smooth. This occurs at approximately 60% environmental humidity. Because water evaporates readily from the cutaneous surface, skin hydration (stratum corneum of the epidermis) is dependent on the water concentration in the air, and sweating contributes little. However, if sweat is prevented from evaporating (eg, in the axilla, groin), local humidity and hydration of the skin are increased. As humidity falls below 15%–20%, the stratum corneum shrinks and cracks; the epidermal barrier is lost and allows irritants to enter the skin and induce an inflammatory response. Decrease in transepidermal water loss will correct this condition. Therefore, dry and scaly skin is treated by using barriers to prevent evaporation (Table 15–2). Oils and ointments prevent evaporation for 8–12 hours, so they must be applied once or twice a day. In areas already occluded (axilla, diaper area), creams or lotions are preferred, but more frequent application may be necessary.

Overhydration (maceration) can also occur. As environmental humidity increases to 90%–100%, the number of water molecules absorbed by the stratum corneum increases and the tight lipid junctions between the cells of the stratum corneum are gradually replaced by weak hydrogen bonds; the cells eventually become widely separated, and the epidermal barrier falls apart. This occurs in immersion foot, diaper areas, axillae, and the like. It is desirable to enhance evaporation of water in these areas by air drying.

Wet Dressings

By placing the skin in an environment where the humidity is 100% and allowing the moisture to evaporate to 60%, pruritus is relieved. Evaporation of water stimulates cold-dependent nerve fibers in the skin, and this may prevent the transmission of the itching sensation via pain fibers to the central nervous system (CNS). It also is vasoconstrictive, thereby helping to reduce the erythema and also decreasing the inflammatory cellular response.

The simplest form of wet dressing consists of one set of wet underwear (eg, long johns) worn under dry pajamas. Cotton socks are also useful for hand or foot treatment. The underwear should be soaked in warm (not hot) water and wrung out until no more water can be expressed. Dressings can be worn overnight for a few days up to 1 week. When the condition improves, wet dressings are discontinued.

Topical Glucocorticoids

Twice-daily application of topical corticosteroids is the mainstay of treatment for all forms of dermatitis (Table 15–3). Topical steroids can also be used under

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 15–1. Examination of the skin.

Clinical Appearance	Description and Examples
Primary lesions (first to appear)	
Macule	Any flat circumscribed color change in the skin < 1 cm. Examples: white (vitiligo), brown (junctional nevus), purple (petechia).
Patch	Any flat circumscribed color change in the skin > 1 cm. Examples: white (nevus depigmentosa), brown (café au lait macule), purple (purpura).
Papule	A solid, elevated area < 1 cm in diameter whose top may be pointed, rounded, or flat. Examples: acne, warts, small lesions of psoriasis.
Plaque	A solid, circumscribed area > 1 cm in diameter, usually flat-topped. Example: psoriasis.
Vesicle	A circumscribed, elevated lesion < 1 cm in diameter and containing clear serous fluid. Example: blisters of herpes simplex.
Bulla	A circumscribed, elevated lesion > 1 cm in diameter and containing clear serous fluid. Example: bullous impetigo.
Pustule	A vesicle containing a purulent exudate. Examples: acne, folliculitis.
Nodule	A deep-seated mass with indistinct borders that elevates the overlying epidermis. Examples: tumors, granuloma annulare. If it moves with the skin on palpation, it is intradermal; if the skin moves over the nodule, it is subcutaneous.
Wheal	A circumscribed, flat-topped, firm elevation of skin resulting from tense edema of the papillary dermis. Example: urticaria.
Secondary changes	
Scales	Dry, thin plates of keratinized epidermal cells (stratum corneum). Examples: psoriasis, ichthyosis.
Lichenification	Induration of skin with exaggerated skin lines and a shiny surface resulting from chronic rubbing of the skin. Example: chronic atopic dermatitis.
Erosion and oozing	A moist, circumscribed, slightly depressed area representing a blister base with the roof of the blister removed. Examples: burns, impetigo. Most oral blisters present as erosions.
Crusts	Dried exudate of plasma on the surface of the skin following disruption of the stratum corneum. Examples: impetigo, contact dermatitis.
Fissures	A linear split in the skin extending through the epidermis into the dermis. Example: angular cheilitis.
Scars	A flat, raised, or depressed area of fibrotic replacement of dermis or subcutaneous tissue. Examples: acne scar, burn scar.
Atrophy	Depression of the skin surface caused by thinning of one or more layers of skin. Example: lichen sclerosus.
Color	
	The lesion should be described as white, red, yellow, brown, tan, or blue. Particular attention should be given to the blanching of red lesions. Failure to blanch suggests bleeding into the dermis (petechiae).
Configuration of lesions	
Annular (circular)	Annular nodules represent granuloma annulare; annular scaly papules are more apt to be caused by dermatophyte infections.
Linear (straight lines)	Linear papules represent lichen striatus; linear vesicles, incontinentia pigmenti; linear papules with burrows, scabies.
Grouped	Grouped vesicles occur in herpes simplex or zoster.
Discrete	Discrete lesions are independent of each other.
Distribution	
	Note whether the eruption is generalized, acral (hands, feet, buttocks, face), or localized to a specific skin region.

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 15–2. Bases used for topical preparations.

Base	Combined with	Uses
Foam		Cosmetically elegant; increasing number of products available
Liquids		Wet dressings: relieve pruritus, vasoconstrict
	Powder	Shake lotions, drying pastes: relieve pruritus, vasoconstrict
	Grease and emulsifier; oil in water	Cream: penetrates quickly (10–15 min) and thus allows evaporation
	Excess grease and emulsifier; water in oil	Emollient cream: penetrates more slowly and thus retains moisture on skin
Grease		Ointments: occlusive (hold material on skin for prolonged time) and prevent evaporation of water
Gel		Transparent, colorless, semisolid emulsion: nongreasy, more drying and irritating than cream
Powder		Enhances evaporation

Table 15–3. Topical glucocorticoids.

Glucocorticoid	Concentrations
Low potency[a] = 1–9	
Hydrocortisone	0.5%, 1%, 2.5%
Desonide	0.05%
Moderate potency = 10–99	
Mometasone furoate	0.1%
Hydrocortisone valerate	0.2%
Fluocinolone acetonide	0.025%
Triamcinolone acetonide	0.01%
Amcinonide	0.1%
High potency = 100–499	
Desoximetasone	0.25%
Fluocinonide	0.05%
Halcinonide	0.1%
Super potency = 500–7500	
Betamethasone dipropionate	0.05%
Clobetasol propionate	0.05%

[a]1% hydrocortisone is defined as having a potency of 1.

wet dressings. After wet dressings are discontinued, topical steroids should be applied only to areas of active disease. They should never be applied to normal skin to prevent recurrence. Only low-potency steroids (see Table 15–3) are applied to the face or intertriginous areas.

Eichenfield LF et al: Guidelines of care for the management of atopic dermatitis: section 2. Management and treatment of atopic dermatitis with topical therapies. J Am Acad Dermatol 2014 Jul;71(1):116–132 [PMID: 24813302].

Morley KW, Dinulos JG: Update on topical glucocorticoid use in children. Curr Opin Pediatr Feb 2012;24(1):121–128 [PMID: 22227781].

Nolan K, Marmur E: Moisturizers: reality and the skin benefits. Dermatol Ther 2012;May–Jun;25(3):229–233 [PMID: 22227781].

Characteristics of bases for topical preparations:

1. Thermolabile, low-residue foam vehicles are cosmetically acceptable and use a novel permeability pathway for delivery.
2. Most greases are triglycerides (eg, Aquaphor, petrolatum, Eucerin).
3. Oils are fluid fats (eg, Alpha Keri, olive oil, mineral oil).
4. True fats (eg, lard, animal fats) contain free fatty acids that cause irritation.
5. Ointments (eg, Aquaphor, petrolatum) should not be used in intertriginous areas such as the axillae, between the toes, and in the perineum, because they increase maceration. Lotions or creams are preferred in these areas.
6. Oils and ointments hold medication on the skin for long periods and are therefore ideal for barriers, prophylaxis, and for dried areas of skin. Medication penetrates the skin more slowly from ointments.
7. Creams carry medication into skin and are preferable for intertriginous dermatitis.
8. Foams, solutions, gels, or lotions should be used for scalp treatments.

DISORDERS OF THE SkIN IN NEWBORNS

TRANSIENT DISEASES IN NEWBORNS

1. Milia

Milia are tiny epidermal cysts filled with keratinous material. These 1- to 2-mm white papules occur predominantly on the face in 40% of newborns. Their intraoral counterparts are called Epstein pearls and occur in up to 60%–85% of neonates. These cystic structures spontaneously rupture and exfoliate their contents.

http://obgynebooks.com

2. Sebaceous Gland Hyperplasia

Prominent white to yellow papules at the opening of pilosebaceous follicles without surrounding erythema—especially over the nose—represent overgrowth of sebaceous glands in response to maternal androgens. They occur in more than half of newborns and spontaneously regress in the first few months of life.

3. Neonatal Acne

Inflammatory papules and pustules with occasional comedones predominantly on the face occur in as many as 20% of newborns. Although neonatal acne can be present at birth, it most often occurs between 2 and 4 weeks of age. Spontaneous resolution occurs over a period of 6 months to 1 year. A rare entity that is often confused with neonatal acne is **neonatal cephalic pustulosis**. This is a more monomorphic eruption with red papules and pustules on the head and neck that appears in the first month of life. There is associated neutrophilic inflammation and yeasts of the genus Malassezia (Pityrosporum). This eruption will resolve spontaneously but responds to topical antiyeast preparations.

4. Harlequin Color Change

A cutaneous vascular phenomenon unique to neonates in the first week of life occurs when the infant (particularly one of low birth weight) is placed on one side. The dependent half develops an erythematous flush with a sharp demarcation at the midline, and the upper half of the body becomes pale. The color change usually subsides within a few seconds after the infant is placed supine but may persist for as long as 20 minutes.

5. Mottling

A lacelike pattern of bluish, reticular discoloration representing dilated cutaneous vessels appears over the extremities and often the trunk of neonates exposed to lowered room temperature. This feature is transient and usually disappears completely on rewarming.

6. Erythema Toxicum

Up to 50% of full-term infants develop erythema toxicum. At 24–48 hours of age, blotchy erythematous macules 2–3 cm in diameter appear, most prominently on the chest but also on the back, face, and extremities. These are occasionally present at birth. Onset after 4–5 days of life is rare. The lesions vary in number from a few up to as many as 100. Incidence is much higher in full-term versus premature infants. The macular erythema may fade within 24–48 hours or may progress to formation of urticarial wheals in the center of the macules or, in 10% of cases, pustules. Examination of a Wright-stained smear of the lesion reveals numerous eosinophils. No organisms are seen on Gram stain. These findings may be accompanied by peripheral blood eosinophilia of up to 20%. The lesions fade and disappear within 5–7 days. Transient neonatal pustular melanosis is a pustular eruption in newborns of African-American descent. The pustules rupture leaving a collarette of scale surrounding a macular hyperpigmentation. Unlike erythema toxicum, the pustules contain mostly neutrophils and often involve the palms and soles.

7. Sucking Blisters

Bullae, either intact or as erosions (representing the blister base) without inflammatory borders, may occur over the forearms, wrists, thumbs, or upper lip. These presumably result from vigorous sucking in utero. They resolve without complications.

8. Miliaria

Obstruction of the eccrine sweat ducts occurs often in neonates and produces one of two clinical scenarios. Superficial obstruction in the stratum corneum causes miliaria crystallina, characterized by tiny (1- to 2-mm), superficial grouped vesicles without erythema over intertriginous areas and adjacent skin (eg, neck, upper chest). More commonly, obstruction of the eccrine duct deeper in the epidermis results in erythematous grouped papules in the same areas and is called miliaria rubra. Rarely, these may progress to pustules. Heat and high humidity predispose the patient to eccrine duct pore closure. Removal to a cooler environment is the treatment of choice.

9. Subcutaneous Fat Necrosis

This entity presents in the first 7 days of life as reddish or purple, sharply circumscribed, firm nodules occurring over the cheeks, buttocks, arms, and thighs. Cold injury is thought to play an important role, and the clinical manifestations have been observed after iatrogenically induced and therapeutic hypothermia. These lesions resolve spontaneously over a period of weeks, although in some instances they may calcify. Affected infants should be screened for hypercalcemia.

Akcay A et al: Hypercalcemia due to subcutaneous fat necrosis in a newborn after total body cooling. Pediatr Dermatol 2013 Jan–Feb;30(1):120–123 [PMID: 22352980].

Blume-Peytavi U et al: Skin care practices for newborns and infants: review of the clinical evidence for best practices. Pediatr Dermatol 2012 Jan–Feb;29(1):1–14 [PMID: 22011065].

PIGMENT CELL BIRTHMARKS, NEVI, & MELANOMA

Birthmarks may involve an overgrowth of one or more of any of the normal components of skin (eg, pigment cells, blood vessels, lymph vessels). A nevus is a hamartoma of highly differentiated cells that retain their normal function.

http://obgynebooks.com

1. Mongolian Spot

A blue-black macule found over the lumbosacral area in 90% of infants of Native-American, African-American, and Asian descent is called a "mongolian spot." A more descriptive term is "dermal melanocytosis." These spots are occasionally noted over the shoulders and back and may extend over the buttocks. Histologically, they consist of spindle-shaped pigment cells suspended deep in the dermis. The lesions fade somewhat with time as a result of darkening of the overlying skin, but some traces may persist into adult life.

2. Café au Lait Macule

A café au lait macule is a light-brown, oval macule (dark brown on brown or black skin) that may be found anywhere on the body. Café au lait spots over 1.5 cm in greatest diameter are found in 10% of white and 22% of black children. These lesions persist throughout life and may increase in number with age. The presence of six or more such lesions over 1.5 cm in greatest diameter is a major diagnostic criterion for neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF-1). Patients with McCune-Albright syndrome (see Chapter 34) have a large, unilateral café au lait macule.

3. Spitz Nevus

A Spitz nevus presents as a reddish-brown smooth solitary papule appearing on the face or extremities. Histologically, it consists of epithelioid and spindle-shaped nevomelanocytes that may demonstrate nuclear pleomorphism. Although these lesions can look concerning histologically, they follow a benign clinical course in most cases.

MELANOCYTIC NEVI

1. Common Moles

Well-demarcated, brown to brown-black macules represent junctional nevi. They can appear in the first years of life and increase with age. Histologically, single and nested melanocytes are present at the junction of the epidermis and dermis. Approximately 20% may progress to compound nevi—papular lesions with melanocytes both in junctional and intradermal locations. Intradermal nevi are often lighter in color and can be fleshy and pedunculated. Melanocytes in these lesions are located purely within the dermis. Nevi look dark blue (blue nevi) when they contain more deeply situated spindle-shaped melanocytes in the dermis.

2. Melanoma

Melanoma in prepubertal children is very rare. Pigmented lesions with variegated colors (red, white, blue), notched borders, asymmetrical shape, and very irregular or ulcerated surfaces should prompt suspicion of melanoma. Ulceration and bleeding are advanced signs of melanoma. If melanoma is suspected, wide local excision and pathologic examination should be performed.

3. Congenital Melanocytic Nevi

One in 100 infants is born with a congenital nevus. Congenital nevi tend to be larger and darker brown than acquired nevi and may have many terminal hairs. If the pigmented plaque covers more than 5% of the body surface area, it is considered a giant or large congenital nevus; these large nevi occur in 1 in 20,000 infants. Other classification systems characterize lesions over 20 cm as large. Often the lesions are so large they cover the entire trunk (bathing trunk nevi). Histologically, they are compound nevi with melanocytes often tracking around hair follicles and other adnexal structures deep in the dermis. The risk of malignant melanoma in small congenital nevi is controversial in the literature, but most likely very low, and similar to that of acquired nevi. Transformation to malignant melanoma in giant congenital nevi has been estimated between 1% and 7%. Of note, these melanomas often develop early in life (before puberty) and in a dermal location. Two-thirds of melanomas in children with giant congenital nevi develop in areas other than the skin.

Ibrahimi OA, Alikhan A, Eisen DB: Congenital melanocytic nevi: where are we now? J Am Acad Dermatol 2012 Oct;67(4):515 [PMID: 22980259].

LaVigne EA et al: Clinical and dermoscopic changes in common melanocytic nevi in school children: the Framingham school nevus study. Dermatology 2005;211:234 [PMID: 16205068].

Vourc'h-Jourdain M, Martin L, Barbarot S: Large congenital melanocytic nevi: therapeutic management and melanoma risk: a systemic review. J Am Acad Dermatol 2013 Mar;68(3):493–498 [PMID: 23182059].

VASCULAR BIRTHMARKS

1. Capillary Malformations

» Clinical Findings

Capillary malformations are an excess of capillaries in localized areas of skin. The degree of excess is variable. The color of these lesions ranges from light red-pink to dark red.

Nevus simplexes are the light red macules found over the nape of the neck, upper eyelids, and glabella of newborns. Fifty percent of infants have such lesions over their necks. Eyelid and glabellar lesions usually fade completely within the first year of life. Lesions that occupy the total central forehead area usually do not fade. Those on the neck persist into adult life.

Port-wine stains are dark red macules appearing anywhere on the body. A bilateral facial port-wine stain or one covering the entire half of the face may be a clue to Sturge-Weber syndrome, which is characterized by seizures, mental

http://obgynebooks.com

retardation, glaucoma, and hemiplegia (see Chapter 25). Most infants with smaller, unilateral facial port-wine stains do not have Sturge-Weber syndrome. Similarly, a port-wine stain over an extremity may be associated with hypertrophy of the soft tissue and bone of that extremity (Klippel-Trénaunay syndrome).

» Treatment

The pulsed dye laser is the treatment of choice for infants and children with port-wine stains.

Richter GT, Friedman AB: Hemangiomas and vascular malformations: current theory and management. Int J Pediatr 2012;2012:645678 [PMID: 22611412].

2. Hemangioma

» Clinical Findings

A red, rubbery vascular plaque or nodule with a characteristic growth pattern is a hemangioma. The lesion is often not present at birth but is represented by a permanent blanched area on the skin that is supplanted at age 2–4 weeks by red papules. Hemangiomas then undergo a rapid growth or "proliferative" phase, where growth of the lesion is out of proportion to growth of the child. At 9–12 months, growth stabilizes, and the lesion slowly involutes over the next several years. Histologically, hemangiomas are benign tumors of capillary endothelial cells. They may be superficial, deep, or mixed. The terms strawberry and cavernous are misleading and should not be used. The biologic behavior of a hemangioma is the same despite its location. Fifty percent reach maximal regression by age 5 years, 70% by age 7 years, and 90% by age 9 years, leaving redundant skin, hypopigmentation, and telangiectasia. Local complications include superficial ulceration and secondary pyoderma. Rare complications include obstruction of vital structures such as the orbit or airway.

» Treatment

Complications that require immediate treatment are (1) visual obstruction (with resulting amblyopia), (2) airway obstruction (hemangiomas of the head and neck ["beard hemangiomas"] may be associated with subglottic hemangiomas), and (3) cardiac decompensation (high-output failure). Historically, the preferred treatment for complicated hemangiomas has been prednisolone, 2–3 mg/kg orally daily for 6–12 weeks. Currently, oral propranolol (2 mg/kg/d divided bid) has replaced systemic steroids as the treatment of choice at most institutions. Reported side effects are sleep disturbance, hypoglycemia, and bradycardia. Recommendations on pretreatment cardiac evaluation vary between institutions. Topical β-adrenergic receptor antagonist timolol, administered as a gel-forming solution (GFS), has also been used for problematic lesions on the lip or eyelid, with variable results. Interferon α_{2a} has also been used to treat serious hemangiomas. However, 10% of patients with hemangiomas treated with interferon α_{2a} have developed spastic diplegia, and its use is very limited. If the lesion is ulcerated or bleeding, pulsed dye laser treatment is indicated to initiate ulcer healing and immediately control pain. The Kasabach-Merritt syndrome, characterized by platelet trapping with consumption coagulopathy, does not occur with solitary cutaneous hemangiomas. It is seen only with internal hemangiomas or the rare vascular tumors such as kaposiform hemangioendotheliomas and tufted angiomas.

Bagazgoitia L et al: Propranolol for infantile hemangiomas. Pediatr Dermatol 2011 Mar–Apr;28(2):108–114 [PMID: 21385205].
Raphael MF et al: Is cardiovascular evaluation necessary prior to and during beta-blocker therapy for infantile hemangiomas? A cohort study. J Am Acad Dermatol 2015 Mar;72(3):465–472 [PMID: 25592625].
Semkova K, Kazandjieva J: Rapid complete regression of an early infantile hemangioma with topical timolol gel. Int J Dermatol 2014 Feb;53(2):241–242 [PMID: 24261914].

3. Lymphatic Malformations

Lymphatic malformations may be superficial or deep. Superficial lymphatic malformations present as fluid-filled vesicles often described as resembling "frog spawn." Deep lymphatic malformations are rubbery, skin-colored nodules occurring most commonly in the head and neck. They often result in grotesque enlargement of soft tissues. Histologically, they can be either macrocystic or microcystic.

» Treatment

Therapy includes sclerotherapy with injection of picibanil, or doxycycline, radiotherapy, or surgical excision.

EPIDERMAL BIRTHMARKS

1. Epidermal Nevus

» Clinical Findings

The majority of these birthmarks present in the first year of life. They are hamartomas of the epidermis that are warty to papillomatous plaques, often in a linear array. They range in color from skin-colored to dirty yellow to brown. Histologically they show a thickened epidermis with hyperkeratosis. The condition of widespread epidermal nevi associated with other developmental anomalies (CNS, eye, and skeletal) is called the epidermal nevus syndrome.

» Treatment

Treatment once or twice daily with topical calcipotriene or keratolytic may flatten some lesions. The only definitive cure is surgical excision.

http://obgynebooks.com

2. Nevus Sebaceus

» Clinical Findings

This is a hamartoma of sebaceous glands and underlying apocrine glands that is diagnosed by the appearance at birth of a yellowish, hairless plaque in the scalp or on the face. The lesions can be contiguous with an epidermal nevus on the face, and widespread lesions can constitute part of the epidermal nevus syndrome.

Histologically, nevus sebaceus represents an overabundance of sebaceous glands without hair follicles. At puberty, with androgenic stimulation, the sebaceous cells in the nevus divide, expand their cellular volume, and synthesize sebum, resulting in a warty mass.

» Treatment

Because it has been estimated that approximately 15% of these lesions will develop secondary epithelial tumors, including basal cell carcinomas (BCCs), trichoblastomas, and other benign tumors, surgical excision at puberty is recommended by most experts. The majority of the tumors develop in adulthood, although BCCs have been reported in childhood and adolescence.

CONNECTIVE TISSUE BIRTHMARKS (JUVENILE ELASTOMA, COLLAGENOMA)

» Clinical Findings

Connective tissue nevi are smooth, skin-colored papules 1–10 mm in diameter that are grouped on the trunk. A solitary, larger (5–10 cm) nodule is called a shagreen patch and is histologically indistinguishable from other connective tissue nevi that show thickened, abundant collagen bundles with or without associated increases of elastic tissue. Although the shagreen patch is a cutaneous clue to tuberous sclerosis (see Chapter 25), the other connective tissue nevi occur as isolated events.

» Treatment

These nevi remain throughout life and need no treatment.

HEREDITARY SKIN DISORDERS

1. Ichthyosis

Ichthyosis is a term applied to several diseases characterized by the presence of excessive scales on the skin. These disorders represent a large and heterogeneous group of genetic and acquired defects of cornification of the skin. Classification of these diseases is clinically based, although the underlying genetic causes and pathophysiologic mechanisms responsible continue to be elucidated.

Disorders of keratinization are characterized as syndromic when the phenotype is expressed in the skin and other organs, or nonsyndromic when only the skin is affected. Ichthyoses may be inherited or acquired. Inherited disorders are identified by their underlying gene defect if known. Acquired ichthyosis may be associated with malignancy and medications, or a variety of autoimmune, inflammatory, nutritional, metabolic, infectious, and neurologic diseases. These disorders are diagnosed by clinical examination, with supportive findings on skin biopsy (including electron microscopy) and mutation analysis if available.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of controlling scaling with ammonium lactate (Lac-Hydrin or AmLactin) 12% or urea cream 10%–40% applied once or twice daily. Daily lubrication and a good dry skin care regimen are essential.

Oji V et al: Revised nomenclature and classification of inherited ichthyoses: results of the First Ichthyosis Consensus Conference in Sorèze 2009. J Am Acad Dermatol 2010 Oct;63(4): 607–641 [PMID: 20643494].

2. Epidermolysis Bullosa

This is a group of heritable disorders characterized by skin fragility with blistering. Four major subtypes are recognized, based on the ultrastructural level of skin cleavage (Table 15–4).

For the severely affected, much of the surface area of the skin may have blisters and erosions, requiring daily wound care and dressings. These children are prone to frequent skin infections, anemia, growth problems, mouth erosions and esophageal strictures, and chronic pain issues. They are also at increased risk of squamous cell carcinoma, a common cause of death in affected patients.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of protection of the skin with topical emollients as well as nonstick dressings. The other medical needs and potential complications of the severe forms of epidermolysis bullosa require a multidisciplinary approach. For the less severe types, protecting areas of greatest trauma with padding and dressings as well as intermittent topical or oral antibiotics for superinfection are appropriate treatments. If hands and feet are involved, reducing skin friction with 5% glutaraldehyde every 3 days is helpful.

Fine JD et al: The classification of inherited epidermolysis bullosa (EB): report of the Third International Consensus Meeting on Diagnosis and Classification of EB. J Am Acad Dermatol 2008 Jun;58(6):931–950 [PMID: 18374450] [Epub 2008 Apr 18].

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 15–4. Major epidermolysis bullosa subtypes.

Cleavage Level	Common Name	Targeted Protein(s)	Inheritance Pattern	Characteristic Clinical Features
Suprabasilar	Epidermolysis Bullosa Superficialis	Unknown	Autosomal dominant	Superficial erosions at birth; rare to no blistering
Suprabasilar	Plakophilin-deficient EB, Lethal acantholytic EB	Plakophilin, Desmoplakin	Autosomal recessive	Similar to above
Basilar	Epidermolysis bullosa simplex	Keratin 5 and 14	Autosomal dominant	Palm and sole blistering presents in early childhood with trauma
Basilar	EB simplex with muscular dystrophy	Plectin	Autosomal recessive	Blisters, muscular dystrophy
Basilar	EB with pyloric atresia	α-6 β-4 integrin	Autosomal recessive	Blisters, pyloric atresia
Junctional (within the basement membrane zone)	Junctional EB—Herlitz or non-Herlitz	Laminin 5, α-6 β-4 integrin, type XVII collagen	Autosomal recessive	Severe generalized blistering, oral involvement
Sub-basilar	Dystrophic EB or "dermolytic" EB	Type VII collagen	Autosomal dominant or recessive	Severe blisters and scarring

COMMON SKIN DISEASES IN INFANTS, CHILDREN, & ADOLESCENTS

ACNE

Acne affects 85% of adolescents. The onset of adolescent acne is between ages 7 and 10 years in 40% of children. The early lesions are usually limited to the face and are primarily closed comedones.

» Pathogenesis

The primary event in acne formation is obstruction of the sebaceous follicle and subsequent formation of the microcomedo (not evident clinically). This is the precursor to all future acne lesions. This phenomenon is androgen-dependent in adolescent acne. The four primary factors in the pathogenesis of acne are (1) plugging of the sebaceus follicle, (2) increased sebum production, (3) proliferation of Propionibacterium acnes in the obstructed follicle, and (4) inflammation. Many of these factors are influenced by androgens.

Drug-induced acne should be suspected in teenagers if all lesions are in the same stage at the same time and if involvement extends to the lower abdomen, lower back, arms, and legs. Drugs responsible for acne include corticotropin (ACTH), glucocorticoids, androgens, hydantoins, and isoniazid, each of which increases plasma testosterone.

» Clinical Findings

Open comedones are the predominant clinical lesion in early adolescent acne. The black color is caused by oxidized melanin within the stratum corneum cellular plug. Open comedones do not progress to inflammatory lesions. Closed comedones, or whiteheads, are caused by obstruction just beneath the follicular opening in the neck of the sebaceous follicle, which produces a cystic swelling of the follicular duct directly beneath the epidermis. Most authorities believe that closed comedones are precursors of inflammatory acne lesions (red papules, pustules, nodules, and cysts). In typical adolescent acne, several different types of lesions are present simultaneously. Severe, chronic, inflammatory lesions may rarely occur as interconnecting, draining sinus tracts. Adolescents with cystic acne require prompt medical attention, because ruptured cysts and sinus tracts result in severe scar formation.

» Differential Diagnosis

Consider rosacea, nevus comedonicus, flat warts, miliaria, molluscum contagiosum, and the angiofibromas of tuberous sclerosis.

» Treatment

Different treatment options are listed in Table 15–5. Recent data have indicated that combination therapy that targets multiple pathogenic factors increases the efficacy of treatment and rate of improvement.

A. Topical Keratolytic Agents

Topical keratolytic agents address the plugging of the follicular opening with keratinocytes and include retinoids, benzoyl peroxide, and azelaic acid. The first-line treatment for both comedonal and inflammatory acne is a topical retinoid (tretinoin [retinoic acid], adapalene, and tazarotene). These are the

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 15–5. Acne treatment.

Type of Lesion	Treatment
Comedonal acne	One of the following: Tretinoin, 0.025, 0.05, or 0.1% cream; 0.01 or 0.025% gel; 0.4% or 0.1% microgel Adapalene, 0.3% gel, 0.1% gel or solution; 0.05% cream
Papular inflammatory acne	One from first grouping, plus one of the following: Benzoyl peroxide, 2.5, 4, 5, 8, or 10% gel or lotion; 4 or 8% wash Azelaic acid, 15% or 20% cream Clindamycin, 1% lotion, solution, or gel Combination products include benzoyl peroxide-erythromycin (Benzamycin); benzoyl peroxide-clindamycin (Duac, BenzaClin, Acanya); tretinoin-clindamycin (Ziana, Veltin)
Pustular inflammatory acne	One from first grouping, plus one of the following oral antibiotics: Minocycline or doxycycline, 50–100 mg, bid
Nodulocystic acne	Isotretinoin, 1 mg/kg/d, goal dose 120–150 mg/kg total

most effective keratolytic agents and have been shown to prevent the microcomedone. These topical agents may be used once daily, or the combination of a retinoid applied to acne-bearing areas of the skin in the evening and a benzoyl peroxide gel or azelaic acid applied in the morning may be used. This regimen will control 80%–85% of cases of adolescent acne.

B. Topical Antibiotics

Topical antibiotics are less effective than systemic antibiotics and at best are equivalent in potency to 250 mg of tetracycline orally once a day. One percent clindamycin phosphate solution is the most efficacious topical antibiotic. Most P acnes strains are now resistant to topical erythromycin solutions. Topical antibiotic therapy alone should never be used. Multiple studies have shown a combination of benzoyl peroxide or a retinoid and a topical antibiotic are more effective than the antibiotic alone. Benzoyl peroxide has been shown to help minimize the development of bacterial resistance at sites of application. The duration of application of topical antimicrobials should be limited unless benzoyl peroxide is used. Several combination products (benzoyl peroxide and clindamycin, tretinoin and clindamycin, adapalene and benzoyl peroxide) are available which may simplify the treatment regimen and increase patient compliance.

C. Systemic Antibiotics

Antibiotics that are concentrated in sebum, such as tetracycline, minocycline, and doxycycline, should be reserved for moderate to severe inflammatory acne. The usual dose of tetracycline is 0.5–1.0 g divided twice a day on an empty stomach; minocycline and doxycycline 50–100 mg taken once or twice daily can be taken with food. Monotherapy with oral antibiotics should never be used. Recent recommendations are that oral antibiotics should be used for a finite time period, and then discontinued as soon as there is improvement in the inflammatory lesions. The tetracycline antibiotics should not be given to children younger than 8 years of age due to the effect on dentition (staining of teeth). Doxycycline may induce significant photosensitivity, and minocycline can cause bluish-gray dyspigmentation of the skin, vertigo, headaches, and drug-induced lupus. These antibiotics have anti-inflammatory effects in addition to decreasing P acnes in the follicle.

D. Oral Retinoids

An oral retinoid, 13-cis-retinoic acid (isotretinoin), is the most effective treatment for severe cystic acne. The precise mechanism of its action is unknown, but apoptosis of sebocytes, decreased sebaceous gland size, decreased sebum production, decreased follicular obstruction, decreased skin bacteria, and general anti-inflammatory activities have been described. The initial dosage is 0.5–1 mg/kg/d. This therapy is reserved for severe nodulocystic acne, or acne recalcitrant to aggressive standard therapy. Side effects include dryness and scaling of the skin, dry lips, and, occasionally, dry eyes and dry nose. Fifteen percent of patients may experience some mild achiness with athletic activities. Up to 10% of patients experience mild, reversible hair loss. Elevated liver enzymes and blood lipids have rarely been described. Acute depression may occur. Isotretinoin is teratogenic in young women of childbearing age. Because of this and the other side effects, it is not recommended unless strict adherence to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) guidelines is ensured. The FDA has implemented a strict registration program (iPLEDGE) that must be used to obtain and/or prescribe isotretinoin.

E. Other Acne Treatments

Hormonal therapy (oral contraceptives) is often an effective option for girls who have perimenstrual flares of acne or have not responded adequately to conventional therapy. Adolescents with endocrine disorders such as polycystic ovary syndrome also see improvement of their acne with hormonal therapy. Oral contraceptives can be added to a conventional therapeutic regimen and should always be used in female patients who are prescribed oral isotretinoin unless absolute contraindications exist. There is growing

http://obgynebooks.com

data regarding the use of light, laser, and photodynamic therapy in acne. However, existing studies are of variable quality, and although there is evidence to suggest that these therapies offer benefit in acne, the evidence is not sufficient to recommend any device as monotherapy in acne.

F. Patient Education and Follow-up Visits

The multifactorial pathogenesis of acne and its role in the treatment plan must be explained to adolescent patients. Good general skin care includes washing the face consistently and using only oil-free, noncomedogenic cosmetics, face creams, and hair sprays. Acne therapy takes 8–12 weeks to produce improvement, and this delay must be stressed to the patient. Realistic expectations should be encouraged in the adolescent patient because no therapy will eradicate all future acne lesions. A written education sheet is useful. Follow-up visits should be made every 12–16 weeks. An objective method to chart improvement should be documented by the provider, because patients' assessment of improvement tends to be inaccurate.

Bhate K, Williams HC: Epidemiology of acne vulgaris. Br J Dermatol 2013 Mar;168(3):474–485 [PMID: 23210645].

Thiboutot D et al: New insights into the management of acne: an update from the Global Alliance to Improve Outcomes in Acne Group. J Am Acad Dermatol 2009;60:S1–S50 [PMID: 19376456].

Titus S, Hodge J: Diagnosis and treatment of acne. Am Fam Physician 2012 Oct 15;86(8):734–740 [PMID: 23062156].

BACTERIAL INFECTIONS OF THE SKIN

1. Impetigo

Erosions covered by honey-colored crusts are diagnostic of impetigo. Staphylococci and group A streptococci are important pathogens in this disease, which histologically consists of superficial invasion of bacteria into the upper epidermis, forming a subcorneal pustule.

» Treatment

Impetigo should be treated with an antimicrobial agent effective against Staphylococcus aureus (β-lactamase–resistant penicillins or cephalosporins, clindamycin, amoxicillin–clavulanate) for 7–10 days. Topical mupirocin and fusidic acid (three times daily) are also effective.

2. Bullous Impetigo

All impetigo is bullous, with the blister forming just beneath the stratum corneum, but in "bullous impetigo" there is, in addition to the usual erosion covered by a honey-colored crust, a border filled with clear fluid. Staphylococci may be isolated from these lesions, and systemic signs of circulating exfoliatin are absent. Bullous impetigo lesions can be found anywhere on the skin, but a common location is the diaper area.

» Treatment

Treatment with oral antistaphylococcal drugs for 7–10 days is effective. Application of cool compresses to debride crusts is a helpful symptomatic measure.

3. Ecthyma

Ecthyma is a firm, dry crust, surrounded by erythema that exudes purulent material. It represents invasion by group A β-hemolytic streptococci through the epidermis to the superficial dermis. This should not be confused with ecthyma gangrenosum. Lesions of ecthyma gangrenosum may be similar in appearance, but they are seen in a severely ill or immunocompromised patient and are due to systemic dissemination of bacteria, usually Pseudomonas aeruginosa, through the bloodstream.

» Treatment

Treatment is with systemic penicillin.

4. Cellulitis

Cellulitis is characterized by erythematous, hot, tender, ill-defined, edematous plaques accompanied by regional lymphadenopathy. Histologically, this disorder represents invasion of microorganisms into the lower dermis and sometimes beyond, with obstruction of local lymphatics. Group A β-hemolytic streptococci and coagulase-positive staphylococci are the most common causes; pneumococci and Haemophilus influenzae are rare causes. Staphylococcal infections are usually more localized and more likely to have a purulent center; streptococcal infections spread more rapidly, but these characteristics cannot be used to specify the infecting agent. An entry site of prior trauma or infection (eg, varicella) is often present. Septicemia is a potential complication.

» Treatment

Treatment is with an appropriate systemic antibiotic.

5. Folliculitis

A pustule at a follicular opening represents folliculitis. Deeper follicular infections are called furuncles (single follicle) and carbuncles (multiple follicles). Staphylococci and streptococci are the most frequent pathogens. Lesions are painless and tend to occur in crops, usually on the buttocks and extremities in children. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) is now an increasing cause of folliculitis and skin abscesses. Cultures of persistent or recurrent folliculitis for MRSA are advisable.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

Treatment consists of measures to remove follicular obstruction—either warm, wet compresses for 24 hours or keratolytics such as those used for acne. Topical or oral antistaphylococcal antibiotics may be required.

6. Abscess

An abscess occurs deep in the skin, at the bottom of a follicle or an apocrine gland, and is diagnosed as an erythematous, firm, acutely tender nodule with ill-defined borders. Staphylococci are the most common organisms.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of incision and drainage and may require adjuvant systemic antibiotics. Recent studies have suggested that incision and drainage alone may be adequate for uncomplicated MRSA skin abscesses in otherwise healthy patients.

7. Scalded Skin Syndrome

This entity consists of the sudden onset of bright red, acutely painful skin, most obvious periorally, periorbitally, and in the flexural areas of the neck, the axillae, the popliteal and antecubital areas, and the groin. The slightest pressure on the skin results in severe pain and separation of the epidermis, leaving a glistening layer (the stratum granulosum of the epidermis) beneath. The disease is caused by a circulating toxin (exfoliatin) elaborated by phage group II staphylococci. Exfoliatin binds to desmoglein-1 resulting in a separation of cells in the granular layer. The causative staphylococci may be isolated not from the skin but rather from the nasopharynx, an abscess, sinus, blood culture, joint fluid, or other focus of infection.

» Treatment

Treatment is with systemic antistaphylococcal drugs.

Zabielinski M et al: Trends and antibiotic susceptibility patterns of methicillin-resistant and methicillin-sensitive Staphylococcus aureus in an outpatient dermatology facility. JAMA Dermatol 2013 Apr;4(149):427–432 [PMID: 23325388].

FUNGAL INFECTIONS OF THE SKIN

1. Dermatophyte Infections

Dermatophytes become attached to the superficial layer of the epidermis, nails, and hair, where they proliferate. Fungal infection should be suspected with any red and scaly lesion.

Table 15–6. Clinical features of tinea capitis.

Most Common Organisms	Clinical Appearance	Microscopic Appearance in KOH
Trichophyton tonsurans (90%)	Hairs broken off 2–3 mm from follicle; "black dot"; diffuse pustule; seborrheic dermatitis-like; no fluorescence	Hyphae and spores within hair
Microsporum canis (10%)	Thickened broken-off hairs that fluoresce yellow-green with Wood lamp	Small spores outside of hair; hyphae within hair

» Classification & Clinical Findings

A. Tinea Capitis

Thickened, broken-off hairs with erythema and scaling of underlying scalp are the distinguishing features (Table 15–6). Hairs are broken off at the surface of the scalp, leaving a "black dot" appearance. Diffuse scaling of the scalp and pustules are also seen. A boggy, fluctuant mass on the scalp called a kerion, represents an exaggerated host response to the organism. Microsporum canis and Trichophyton tonsurans are the cause. Fungal culture should be performed in all cases of suspected tinea capitis.

B. Tinea Corporis

Tinea corporis presents either as annular marginated plaques with a thin scale and clear center or as an annular confluent dermatitis. The most common organisms are Trichophyton mentagrophytes, Trichophyton rubrum, and M canis. The diagnosis is made by scraping thin scales from the border of the lesion, dissolving them in 20% potassium hydroxide (KOH), and examining for hyphae.

C. Tinea Cruris

Symmetrical, sharply marginated lesions in inguinal areas occur with tinea cruris. The most common organisms are T rubrum, T mentagrophytes, and Epidermophyton floccosum.

D. Tinea Pedis

The diagnosis of tinea pedis is becoming more common in the prepubertal child, although it is still most commonly seen in postpubertal males. Presentation is with red scaly soles, blisters on the instep of the foot, or fissuring between the toes. T rubrum and T mentagrophytes are the cause.

E. Tinea Unguium (Onychomycosis)

Loosening of the nail plate from the nail bed (onycholysis), giving a yellow discoloration, is the first sign of fungal

http://obgynebooks.com

invasion of the nails. Thickening of the distal nail plate then occurs, followed by scaling and a crumbly appearance of the entire nail plate surface. T rubrum is the most common cause. The diagnosis is confirmed by KOH examination and fungal culture. Usually only one or two nails are involved. If every nail is involved, psoriasis, lichen planus, or idiopathic trachyonychia is a more likely diagnosis than fungal infection.

» Treatment

The treatment of dermatophytosis is quite simple: If hair is involved, systemic therapy is necessary. Griseofulvin and terbinafine are both effective. Terbinafine does not work for Microsporum canis. Topical antifungal agents do not enter hair or nails in sufficient concentration to clear the infection. The absorption of griseofulvin from the gastrointestinal tract is enhanced by a fatty meal; thus, whole milk or ice cream taken with the medication increases absorption. The dosage of griseofulvin is 20 mg/kg/d (maximum 500 mg/dose). With hair infections, cultures should be done every 4 weeks, and treatment should be continued for 4 weeks following a negative culture result. The side effects are few, and the drug has been used successfully in the newborn period. Terbinafine dosing is (62.5 mg/d, < 20 kg–125 mg/d, 20–40 kg–250 mg/d, > 40 kg). For nails, daily administration of topical ciclopirox 8% (Penlac nail lacquer) can be considered, as can terbinafine for 6–12 weeks or pulsed-dose itraconazole (50 mg/twice a day < 20 kg–100 mg/twice a day, 20–40 kg–200 mg/twice a day, > 40 kg) given in three 1-week pulses separated by 3 weeks.

Tinea corporis, tinea pedis, and tinea cruris can be treated effectively with topical medication after careful inspection to make certain that the hair and nails are not involved. Treatment with any of the imidazoles, allylamines, benzylamines, or ciclopirox applied twice daily for 3–4 weeks is recommended.

Kelly BP: Superficial fungal infections. Pediatr Rev 2012;33:e22–e37 [PMID: 22474120].

2. Tinea Versicolor

Tinea versicolor is a superficial infection caused by Malassezia globosa, a yeastlike fungus. It characteristically causes polycyclic connected hypopigmented macules and very fine scales in areas of sun-induced pigmentation. In winter, the polycyclic macules appear reddish brown.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of application of selenium sulfide (Selsun), 2.5% suspension, zinc pyrithione shampoo, or topical antifungals. Selenium sulfide and zinc pyrithione shampoo should be applied to the whole body and left on overnight. Treatment can be repeated again in 1 week and then monthly thereafter. It tends to be somewhat irritating, and the patient should be warned about this difficulty. Topical antifungals are applied twice a day for 1–2 weeks. Fluconazole 400 mg single dose may also be used.

3. Candida albicans Infections (See also Chapter 43)

» Clinical Findings

Candida albicans causes diaper dermatitis; thick, white patches on the oral mucosa (thrush); fissures at the angles of the mouth (perleche); and periungual erythema and nail plate abnormalities (chronic paronychia). Candida dermatitis is characterized by sharply defined erythematous patches, sometimes with eroded areas. Pustules, vesicles, or papules may be present as satellite lesions. Similar infections may be found in other moist areas, such as the axillae and neck folds. This infection is more common in children who have recently received antibiotics.

» Treatment

A topical imidazole cream is the drug of first choice for C albicans infections. In diaper dermatitis, the cream form can be applied twice a day. In oral thrush, nystatin suspension should be applied directly to the mucosa with the parent's finger or a cotton-tipped applicator. In candidal paronychia, the antifungal agent is applied over the area, covered with occlusive plastic wrapping, and left on overnight after the application is made airtight. Refractory candidiasis will respond to a brief course of oral fluconazole.

VIRAL INFECTIONS OF THE SKIN (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 40)

1. Herpes Simplex Infection

» Clinical Findings

Painful, grouped vesicles or erosions on a red base suggest herpes simplex. Rapid immunofluorescent tests for herpes simplex virus (HSV) and varicella-zoster virus (VZV) are available. A Tzanck smear is done by scraping a vesicle base with a No. 15 blade, smearing on a glass slide, and staining the epithelial cells with Wright stain. The smear is positive if epidermal multinucleated giant cells are visualized. A positive Tzanck smear indicates herpesvirus infection (HSV or VZV). In infants and children, lesions resulting from herpes simplex type 1 are seen most commonly on the gingiva, lips, and face. Involvement of a digit (herpes whitlow) will occur if the child sucks the thumb or fingers. Herpes simplex type 2 lesions are seen on the genitalia and in the mouth in adolescents. Cutaneous dissemination of herpes simplex occurs in patients with atopic dermatitis (eczema herpeticum) and

http://obgynebooks.com

appears clinically as very tender, punched-out erosions among the eczematous skin changes.

» Treatment

The treatment of HSV infections is discussed in Chapter 40.

2. Varicella-Zoster Infection

» Clinical Findings

Grouped vesicles in a dermatome, usually on the trunk or face, suggest varicella-zoster reactivation. Zoster in children may not be painful and usually has a mild course. In patients with compromised host resistance, the appearance of an erythematous border around the vesicles is a good prognostic sign. Conversely, large bullae without a tendency to crusting and systemic illness imply a poor host response to the virus. Varicella-zoster and herpes simplex lesions undergo the same series of changes: papule, vesicle, pustule, crust, slightly depressed scar. Lesions of primary varicella appear in crops, and many different stages of lesions are present at the same time (eg, papules), eccentrically placed vesicles on an erythematous base ("dew drop" on a rose petal), erosions, and crusts.

» Treatment

The treatment of VZV infections is discussed in Chapter 41.

3. Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection (See also Chapter 41)

» Clinical Findings

The average time of onset of skin lesions after perinatally acquired HIV infection is 4 months; after transfusion-acquired infection, it is 11 months. Persistent oral candidiasis and recalcitrant candidal diaper rash are the most frequent cutaneous features of infantile HIV infection. Severe or recurrent herpetic gingivostomatitis, varicella zoster infection, and molluscum contagiosum infection occur. Recurrent staphylococcal pyodermas, tinea of the face, and onychomycosis are also observed. A generalized dermatitis with features of seborrhea (severe cradle cap) is extremely common. In general, persistent, recurrent, or extensive skin infections should make one suspicious of HIV infection.

» Treatment

The treatment of HIV infections is discussed in Chapter 46.

VIRUS-INDUCED TUMORS

1. Molluscum Contagiosum

Molluscum contagiosum is a poxvirus that induces the epidermis to proliferate, forming a pale papule. Molluscum contagiosum consists of umbilicated, flesh-colored papules in groups anywhere on the body. They are common in infants and preschool children, as well as sexually active adolescents.

» Treatment

Treatment for molluscum is either immunological (topical imiquimod, oral cimetidine, intralesional candida antigen injection) or cytodestructive (topical cantharidin, cryotherapy with liquid nitrogen, and curettage). Left untreated, the lesions resolve over months to years.

2. Warts

Warts are skin-colored papules with rough (verrucous) surfaces caused by infection with human papillomavirus (HPV). There are over 200 types of this DNA virus, which induces the epidermal cells to proliferate, thus resulting in the warty growth. Flat warts are smoother and smaller than common warts and are often seen on the face. Certain types of HPV are associated with certain types of warts (eg, flat warts) or location of warts (eg, genital warts).

» Treatment

Thirty percent of warts will clear in 6 months. As with molluscum, the treatment of warts is also immunological (topical imiquimod, oral cimetidine, intralesional candida antigen injection, and squaric acid contact therapy) or cytodestructive. Liquid nitrogen is painful, user dependent, and can lead to blistering and scarring. Topical salicylic acid may also be used. Large mosaic plantar warts are treated most effectively by applying 40% salicylic acid plaster cut with a scissors to fit the lesion. The adhesive side of the plaster is placed against the lesion and taped securely in place with duct or athletic tape. The plaster and tape should be placed on Monday and removed on Friday. Over the weekend, the patient should soak the skin in warm water for 30 minutes to soften it. Then the white, macerated tissue should be pared with a pumice stone, cuticle scissors, or a nail file. This procedure is repeated every week, and the patient is seen every 4 weeks. Most plantar warts resolve in 6–8 weeks when treated in this way. Vascular pulsed dye lasers are a useful adjunct therapy for the treatment of plantar warts.

For flat warts, a good response to 0.025% tretinoin gel or topical imiquimod (Aldara) cream, applied once daily for 3–4 weeks, has been reported.

Surgical excision, electrosurgery, and nonspecific burning laser surgery should be avoided; these modalities do not have higher cure rates and result in scarring. Cantharidin may cause small warts to become large warts and should not be used.

Venereal warts (condylomata acuminata) (see Chapter 44) may be treated with imiquimod, 25% podophyllum resin

http://obgynebooks.com

(podophyllin) in alcohol, or podofilox, a lower concentration of purified podophyllin, which is applied at home. Podophyllin should be painted on the lesions in the practitioner's office and then washed off after 4 hours. Re-treatment in 2–3 weeks may be necessary. Podofilox is applied by the patient once daily, Monday through Thursday, whereas imiquimod is used three times a week on alternating days. Lesions not on the vulvar mucous membrane but on the adjacent skin should be treated as a common wart and frozen.

No wart therapy is immediately and definitively successful. Realistic expectations should be set and appropriate follow-up treatments scheduled.

INSECT INFESTATIONS

1. Scabies

» Clinical Findings

Scabies is suggested by linear burrows about the wrists, ankles, finger webs, areolas, anterior axillary folds, genitalia, or face (in infants). Often there are excoriations, honey-colored crusts, and pustules from secondary infection. Identification of the female mite or her eggs and feces is necessary to confirm the diagnosis. Apply mineral oil to a No. 15 blade and scrape an unscratched papule or burrow and examine microscopically to confirm the diagnosis. In a child who is often scratching, scrape under the fingernails. Examine the parents for unscratched burrows.

» Treatment

Permethrin 5% is the treatment of choice for scabies. It should be applied as a single overnight application and repeated in 7 days. Oral ivermectin 200 mcg/dose × 1 and repeated in 7 days may be used in resistant cases.

2. Pediculoses (Louse Infestations)

» Clinical Findings

The presence of excoriated papules and pustules and a history of severe itching at night suggest infestation with the human body louse. This louse may be discovered in the seams of underwear but not on the body. In the scalp hair, the gelatinous nits of the head louse adhere tightly to the hair shaft. The pubic louse may be found crawling among pubic hairs, or blue-black macules may be found dispersed through the pubic region (maculae cerulea). The pubic louse is often seen on the eyelashes of newborns.

» Treatment

Initial treatment of head lice is often instituted by parents with an over-the-counter pyrethrin or permethrin product. If head lice are not eradicated after two applications 7 days apart with these products, malathion 0.5% is highly effective but is toxic, if ingested, and flammable. A second application 7–9 days after initial treatment may be necessary. Treatment of pubic lice is similar. Treatment of body lice is clean clothing and washing the infested clothing at high temperature.

3. Papular Urticaria

» Clinical Findings

Papular urticaria is characterized by grouped erythematous papules surrounded by an urticarial flare and distributed over the shoulders, upper arms, legs, and buttocks in infants. Although not a true infestation, these lesions represent delayed hypersensitivity reactions to stinging or biting insects. Fleas from dogs and cats are the usual offenders. Less commonly, mosquitoes, lice, scabies, and bird and grass mites are involved. The sensitivity is transient, lasting 4–6 months. Usually no other family members are affected. It is often difficult for the parents to understand why no one else is affected.

» Treatment

The logical therapy is to remove the offending insect, although in most cases it is very difficult to identify the exact cause. Topical corticosteroids and oral antihistamines will control symptoms.

DERMATITIS (ECZEMA)

The terms dermatitis and eczema are currently used interchangeably in dermatology, although the term eczema truly denotes an acute weeping dermatosis. All forms of dermatitis, regardless of cause, may present with acute edema, erythema, and oozing with crusting, mild erythema alone, or lichenification. Lichenification is diagnosed by thickening of the skin with a shiny surface and exaggerated, deepened skin markings. It is the response of the skin to chronic rubbing or scratching.

Although the lesions of the various dermatoses are histologically indistinguishable, clinicians have nonetheless divided the disease group called dermatitis into several categories based on known causes in some cases and differing natural histories in others.

1. Atopic Dermatitis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dry skin
- Presence of eczema
- Onset before 2 years of age

http://obgynebooks.com

» Pathogenesis

Atopic dermatitis is a polygenic disease with positive and negative modifiers. Atopic dermatitis results from an interaction among susceptibility genes, the host environment, skin barrier defects, pharmacologic abnormalities, and immunologic response. The case for food and inhalant allergens as specific causes of atopic dermatitis is not strong. There is significant evidence that a primary defect in atopic dermatitis is an abnormality in the skin barrier formation due to defects in the filaggrin gene. Not all people with filaggrin abnormalities have atopic dermatitis and not all people with atopic dermatitis have filaggrin abnormalities.

» Clinical findings

A. Symptoms & Signs

Many (not all) patients go through three clinical phases. In the first, infantile eczema, the dermatitis begins on the cheeks and scalp and frequently expresses itself as oval patches on the trunk, later involving the extensor surfaces of the extremities. The usual age at onset is 2–3 months, and this phase ends at age 18 months to 2 years. Only one-third of all infants with infantile eczema progress to phase 2 childhood or flexural eczema in which the predominant involvement is in the antecubital and popliteal fossae, the neck, the wrists, and sometimes the hands or feet. This phase lasts from age 2 years to adolescence. Only one-third of children with typical flexural eczema progress to adolescent eczema, which is usually manifested by the continuation of chronic flexural eczema along with hand and/or foot dermatitis. Atopic dermatitis is quite unusual after age 30 years.

» Differential Diagnosis

All other types of dermatitis must be considered.

A few patients with atopic dermatitis have immunodeficiency with recurrent pyodermas, unusual susceptibility to HSVs, hyperimmunoglobulinemia E, defective neutrophil and monocyte chemotaxis, and impaired T-lymphocyte function (see Chapter 33).

» Complications

A faulty epidermal barrier predisposes the patient with atopic dermatitis to dry, itchy skin. Inability to hold water within the stratum corneum results in rapid evaporation of water, shrinking of the stratum corneum, and cracks in the epidermal barrier. Such skin forms an ineffective barrier to the entry of various irritants. Chronic atopic dermatitis is frequently infected secondarily with S aureus or Streptococcus pyogenes. HSV virus may also superinfect atopic dermatitis and severe widespread disease is known as Kaposi's varicelliform eruption or eczema herpeticum. Patients with atopic dermatitis have a deficiency of antimicrobial peptides in their skin, which may account for the susceptibility to recurrent skin infection.

» Treatment

A. Acute Stages

Application of wet dressings and medium-potency topical corticosteroids is the treatment of choice for acute, weeping atopic eczema. The use of wet dressings is outlined at the beginning of this chapter. Superinfection with S aureus, Streptococcus pyogenes, and HSV may occur, and appropriate systemic therapy may be necessary. If the expected improvement is not seen, bacterial and HSV cultures should be obtained to identify the possibility of a superinfection.

B. Chronic Stages

Treatment is aimed at avoiding irritants and restoring water to the skin. No soaps or harsh shampoos should be used, and the patient should avoid woolen or any rough clothing. Bathing is minimized to every second or third day. Twice-daily lubrication of the skin is very important.

Nonperfumed creams or lotions are suitable lubricants. Plain petrolatum is an acceptable lubricant, but some people find it too greasy and during hot weather it may also cause considerable sweat retention. Liberal use of Cetaphil lotion four or five times daily as a substitute for soap is also satisfactory as a means of lubrication. A bedroom humidifier is often helpful. Topical corticosteroids should be limited to medium strength (see Table 15–3). There is seldom a reason to use super or high-potency corticosteroids in atopic dermatitis. In superinfected atopic dermatitis, systemic antibiotics for 10–14 days are necessary.

Tacrolimus and pimecrolimus ointments are topical immunosuppressive agents that are effective in atopic dermatitis. Because of concerns about the development of malignancies, tacrolimus and pimecrolimus should be reserved for children older than 2 years with atopic dermatitis unresponsive to medium-potency topical steroids. It has been argued that an increased risk of malignancy has not been seen in immunologically normal individuals using these products. Recommendations for usage likely will change with time. Treatment failures in chronic atopic dermatitis are most often the result of noncompliance. This is a frustrating disease for parent and child. Return to a normal lifestyle for the parent and child is the ultimate goal of therapy.

Batchelor JM, Grindlay DJ, Williams HC: What's new in atopic eczema? An analysis of systematic reviews published in 2008 and 2009. Clin Exp Dermatol 2010;35:823 [PMID: 20649899].

http://obgynebooks.com

2. Nummular Eczema

Nummular eczema is characterized by numerous symmetrically distributed coin-shaped patches of dermatitis, principally on the extremities. These may be acute, oozing, and crusted or dry and scaling. The differential diagnosis should include tinea corporis, impetigo, and atopic dermatitis.

» Treatment

The same topical measures should be used as for atopic dermatitis, although more potent topical steroids may be necessary.

3. Primary Irritant Contact Dermatitis (Diaper Dermatitis)

Contact dermatitis is of two types: primary irritant and allergic eczematous. Primary irritant dermatitis develops within a few hours, reaches peak severity at 24 hours, and then disappears. Allergic eczematous contact dermatitis (described in the next section) has a delayed onset of 18 hours, peaks at 48–72 hours, and often lasts as long as 2–3 weeks even if exposure to the offending antigen is discontinued.

Diaper dermatitis, the most common form of primary irritant contact dermatitis seen in pediatric practice, is caused by prolonged contact of the skin with urine and feces, which contain irritating chemicals such as urea and intestinal enzymes.

» Clinical Findings

The diagnosis of diaper dermatitis is based on the picture of erythema and scaling of the skin in the perineal area and the history of prolonged skin contact with urine or feces. This is frequently seen in the "good baby" who sleeps many hours through the night without waking. In 80% of cases of diaper dermatitis lasting more than 3 days, the affected area is colonized with C albicans even before appearance of the classic signs of a beefy red, sharply marginated dermatitis with satellite lesions. Streptococcal perianal cellulitis and infantile psoriasis should be included in the differential diagnosis.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of changing diapers frequently. The area should only be washed following a bowel movement. Washing should be done with a wash cloth and warm water only. Because rubber or plastic pants prevent evaporation of the contactant and enhance its penetration into the skin, they should be avoided as much as possible. Air drying is useful. Treatment of long-standing diaper dermatitis should include application of a barrier cream such as zinc oxide with each diaper change and an imidazole cream twice a day.

4. Allergic Eczematous Contact Dermatitis (Poison Ivy Dermatitis)

» Clinical Findings

Plants such as poison ivy, poison sumac, and poison oak cause most cases of allergic contact dermatitis in children. Allergic contact dermatitis has all the features of delayed type (T-lymphocyte–mediated) hypersensitivity. Many substances may cause such a reaction; other than plants, nickel sulfate, potassium dichromate, and neomycin are the most common causes. Nickel is found to some degree in all metals. Nickel allergy is commonly seen on the ears secondary to the wearing of earrings, and near the umbilicus from pants snaps and belt buckles. The true incidence of allergic contact dermatitis in children is unknown. Children often present with acute dermatitis with blister formation, oozing, and crusting. Blisters are often linear and of acute onset.

» Treatment

Treatment of contact dermatitis in localized areas is with potent topical corticosteroids. In severe generalized involvement, prednisone, 1–2 mg/kg/d orally for 10–14 days, can be used.

Bonitisis NG et al: Allergens responsible for allergic contact dermatitis among children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Contact Dermatitis 2011;64:245 [PMID: 21480911].

5. Seborrheic Dermatitis

» Clinical Findings

Seborrheic dermatitis is an erythematous scaly dermatitis accompanied by overproduction of sebum occurring in areas rich in sebaceous glands (ie, the face, scalp, and perineum). This common condition occurs predominantly in the newborn and at puberty, the ages at which hormonal stimulation of sebum production is maximal. Although it is tempting to speculate that overproduction of sebum causes the dermatitis, the exact relationship is unclear.

Seborrheic dermatitis on the scalp in infancy is clinically similar to atopic dermatitis, and the distinction may become clear only after other areas are involved. Psoriasis also occurs in seborrheic areas in older children and should be considered in the differential diagnosis.

» Treatment

Seborrheic dermatitis responds well to low-potency topical corticosteroids.

6. Dandruff

Dandruff is physiologic scaling or mild seborrhea, in the form of greasy scalp scales. The cause is unknown. Treatment is with medicated dandruff shampoos.

http://obgynebooks.com

7. Dry Skin Dermatitis (Asteatotic Eczema, Xerosis)

Children who live in arid climates are susceptible to dry skin, characterized by large cracked scales with erythematous borders. The stratum corneum is dependent on environmental humidity for its water, and below 30% environmental humidity the stratum corneum loses water, shrinks, and cracks. These cracks in the epidermal barrier allow irritating substances to enter the skin, predisposing the patient to dermatitis.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of increasing the water content of the skin in the immediate external environment. House humidifiers are very useful. Minimize bathing to every second or third day.

Frequent soaping of the skin impairs its water-holding capacity and serves as an irritating alkali, and all soaps should therefore be avoided. Frequent use of emollients (eg, Cetaphil, Eucerin, Lubriderm) should be a major part of therapy.

8. Keratosis Pilaris

Follicular papules containing a white inspissated scale characterize keratosis pilaris. Individual lesions are discrete and may be red. They are prominent on the extensor surfaces of the upper arms and thighs and on the buttocks and cheeks. In severe cases, the lesions may be generalized.

» Treatment

Treatment is with keratolytics such as urea cream or lactic acid, followed by skin hydration.

9. Pityriasis Alba

White, scaly macular areas with indistinct borders are seen over extensor surfaces of extremities and on the cheeks in children with pityriasis alba. Sun tanning exaggerates these lesions. Histologic examination reveals a mild dermatitis. These lesions may be confused with tinea versicolor.

» Treatment

Low-potency topical corticosteroids may help decrease any inflammatory component and may lead to faster return of normal pigmentation.

COMMON SKIN TUMORS

If the skin moves with the nodule on lateral palpation, the tumor is located within the dermis; if the skin moves over the nodule, it is subcutaneous. Seventy-five percent of lumps in childhood will be either epidermoid cysts (60%) or pilomatricomas (15%).

1. Epidermoid Cysts

» Clinical Findings

Epidermoid cysts are the most common type of cutaneous cyst. Other names for epidermoid cysts are epidermal cysts, epidermal inclusion cysts, and "sebaceous" cysts. This last term is a misnomer since they contain neither sebum nor sebaceous glands. Epidermoid cysts can occur anywhere, but are most common on the face and upper trunk. They usually arise from and are lined by the stratified squamous epithelium of the follicular infundibulum. Clinically, epidermoid cysts are dermal nodules with a central punctum, representing the follicle associated with the cyst. They can reach several centimeters in diameter. **Dermoid cysts** are areas of sequestration of skin along embryonic fusion lines. They are present at birth and occur most commonly on the lateral eyebrow.

» Treatment

Epidermoid cysts can rupture, causing a foreign-body inflammatory reaction, or become infected. Infectious complications should be treated with antibiotics. Definitive treatment of epidermoid and dermoid cysts is surgical excision.

2. Pilomatricomas

These are benign tumors of the hair matrix. They are most commonly seen on the face and upper trunk. They are firm and may be irregular. Their color varies, flesh colored or blue. The firmness is secondary to calcification of the tumor.

» Treatment

Treatment is by surgical excision.

3. Granuloma Annulare

Violaceous circles or semicircles of nontender intradermal nodules found over the lower legs and ankles, the dorsum of the hands and wrists, and the trunk suggest granuloma annulare. Histologically, the disease appears as a central area of tissue death (necrobiosis) surrounded by macrophages and lymphocytes.

» Treatment

No treatment is necessary. Lesions resolve spontaneously within 1–2 years in most children.

4. Pyogenic Granuloma

These lesions appear over 1–2 weeks at times following skin trauma as a dark red papule with an ulcerated and crusted

http://obgynebooks.com

surface that may bleed easily with minor trauma. Histologically, this represents excessive new vessel formation with or without inflammation (granulation tissue). It should be regarded as an abnormal healing response.

» Treatment

Pulsed dye laser for very small lesions or curettage followed by electrocautery are the treatments of choice.

5. Keloids

Keloids are scars of delayed onset that continue to grow for up to several years and to progress beyond the initial wound margins. The tendency to develop keloids is inherited. They are often found on the face, earlobes, neck, chest, and back.

» Treatment

Treatment includes intralesional injection with triamcinolone acetonide, 20–40 mg/mL, or excision and injection with corticosteroids. For larger keloids, excision followed by postoperative radiotherapy may be indicated.

PAPULOSQUAMOUS ERUPTIONS

Papulosquamous eruptions (Table 15–7) comprise papules or plaques with varying degrees of scale.

1. Pityriasis Rosea

» Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

Pink to red, oval plaques with fine scales that tend to align with their long axis parallel to skin tension lines (eg, "Christmas tree pattern" on the back) are characteristic lesions of pityriasis rosea. The generalized eruption is usually preceded for up to 30 days by a solitary, larger, scaling plaque with central clearing and a scaly border (the herald patch). The herald patch is clinically similar to ringworm and can be confused. In whites, the lesions are primarily on the trunk; in blacks, lesions are primarily on the extremities and may be accentuated in the axillary and inguinal areas (inverse pityriasis rosea).

Table 15–7. Papulosquamous eruptions in children.

Psoriasis
Pityriasis rosea
Tinea corporis
Lichen planus
Pityriasis lichenoides (acute or chronic)
Dermatomyositis
Lupus erythematosus
Pityriasis rubra pilaris
Secondary syphilis

This disease is common in school-aged children and adolescents and is presumed to be viral in origin. The role of human herpesvirus 7 in the pathogenesis of pityriasis rosea is debated. The condition lasts 6–12 weeks and may be pruritic.

» Differential Diagnosis

The major differential diagnosis is secondary syphilis, and a VDRL (Venereal Disease Research Laboratories) test should be done if syphilis is suspected, especially in high-risk patients with palm or sole involvement. Fever and widespread lymphadenopathy is often found in secondary syphilis. "Pityriasis rosea" lasting more than 12 weeks is likely to be pityriasis lichenoides.

» Treatment

Exposure to natural sunlight may help hasten the resolution of lesions. Oral antihistamines and topical steroids can be used for pruritus. Often, no treatment is necessary. Pityriasis rosea that lasts more than 12 weeks should be referred to a dermatologist for evaluation.

2. Psoriasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Erythematous papules and plaques with thick, white scales.
- Elbows, knees, and scalp often affected.
- Nail pitting and distal onycholysis.

» Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of psoriasis is complex and incompletely understood. It has immune-mediated inflammation, is a familial condition, and multiple psoriasis susceptibility genes have been identified. There is increased epidermal turnover; psoriatic epidermis has a turnover time of 3–4 days versus 28 days for normal skin. These rapidly proliferating epidermal cells produce excessive stratum corneum, giving rise to thick, opaque scales.

» Clinical Findings

Psoriasis is characterized by erythematous papules covered by thick white scales. Guttate (droplike) psoriasis is a common form in children that often follows by 2–3 weeks an episode of streptococcal pharyngitis. The sudden onset of small papules (3–8 mm), seen predominantly over the trunk and quickly covered with thick white scales, is characteristic of guttate psoriasis. Chronic psoriasis is marked by thick, large

http://obgynebooks.com

scaly plaques (5–10 cm) over the elbows, knees, scalp, and other sites of trauma. Pinpoint pits in the nail plate are seen, as well as yellow discoloration of the nail plate resulting from onycholysis. Psoriasis occurs frequently on the scalp, elbows, knees, periumbilical area, ears, sacral area, and genitalia.

» Differential Diagnosis

Papulosquamous eruptions that present problems of differential diagnosis are listed in Table 15–7.

» Treatment

Topical corticosteroids are the initial treatment of choice. Penetration of topical steroids through the enlarged epidermal barrier in psoriasis requires that more potent preparations be used, for example, fluocinonide 0.05% (Lidex) or clobetasol 0.05% (Temovate) ointment twice daily.

The second line of therapy is topical vitamin D_3 medications such as calcipotriene (Dovonex) or, calcitriol (Vectical), applied twice daily or the combination of a superpotent topical steroid twice daily on weekends and calcipotriene or calcitriol twice daily on weekdays.

Topical retinoids such as tazarotene (0.1%, 0.5% cream, gel) can be used in combination with topical corticosteroids to help restore normal epidermal differentiation and turnover time.

Anthralin therapy is also useful. Anthralin is applied to the skin for a short contact time (eg, 20 minutes once daily) and then washed off with a neutral soap (eg, Dove). This can be used in combination with topical corticosteroids.

Crude coal tar therapy is messy and stains bedclothes. The newer tar gels (Estar, PsoriGel) and one foam product (Scytera) cause less staining and are most efficacious. They are applied twice daily. These preparations are sold over the counter and are not usually covered by insurance plans.

Scalp care using a tar shampoo requires leaving the shampoo on for 5 minutes, washing it off, and then shampooing with commercial shampoo to remove scales. It may be necessary to shampoo daily until scaling is reduced.

More severe cases of psoriasis are best treated by a dermatologist. Narrow band UVB phototherapy and multiple systemic medications and new biologic agents (antibodies, fusion proteins, and recombinant cytokines) are effective in more widespread, severe cases.

De Jager ME et al: Efficacy and safety of treatments for childhood psoriasis: a systematic literature review. J Am Acad Dermatol 2010;62:1013 [PMID: 19900732].

HAIR LOSS (ALOPECIA)

Hair loss in children (Table 15–8) imposes great emotional stress on the patient and the parent. A 60% hair loss in a single area is necessary before hair loss can be detected clinically. Examination should begin with the scalp to determine whether inflammation, scale, or infiltrative changes are present. The hair should be gently pulled to see if it is easily removable. Hairs should be examined microscopically for breaking and structural defects and to see whether growing or resting hairs are being shed. Placing removed hairs in mounting fluid (Permount) on a glass microscope slide makes them easy to examine.

Table 15–8. Other causes of hair loss in children.

Hair loss with scalp changes
Atrophy:
Lichen planus
Lupus erythematosus
Birthmarks:
Epidermal nevus
Nevus sebaceous
Aplasia cutis congenita
Hair loss with hair shaft defects (hair fails to grow out enough to require haircuts)
Monilethrix—alternating bands of thin and thick areas
Pili annulati—alternating bands of light and dark pigmentation
Pili torti—hair twisted 180 degrees, brittle
Trichorrhexis invaginata (bamboo hair)—intussusception of one hair into another
Trichorrhexis nodosa—nodules with fragmented hair

Three diseases account for most cases of hair loss in children: alopecia areata, tinea capitis (described earlier in this chapter), and hair pulling.

1. Alopecia Areata

» Clinical Findings

Complete hair loss in a localized area is called alopecia areata. This is the most common cause of hair loss in children. An immunologic pathogenic mechanism is suspected because dense infiltration of lymphocytes precedes hair loss. Fifty percent of children with alopecia areata completely regrow their hair within 12 months, although as many may have a relapse in the future.

A rare and unusual form of alopecia areata begins at the occiput and proceeds along the hair margins to the frontal scalp. This variety, called ophiasis, often eventuates in total scalp hair loss (alopecia totalis). The prognosis for regrowth in ophiasis is poor.

» Treatment

Superpotent topical steroids, minoxidil (Rogaine), contact therapy, and anthralin are topical treatment options. Systemic corticosteroids given to suppress the inflammatory response will result in hair growth, but the hair may fall out again when the drug is discontinued. Systemic corticosteroids should

http://obgynebooks.com

never be used for a prolonged time period. In children with alopecia totalis, a wig is most helpful. Treatment induced hair growth does not alter risk of recurrence.

Alkhalifah A et al: Alopecia areata update: part I. Clinical picture, histopathology and pathogenesis. J Am Acad Dermatol 2010;62:177 [PMID: 21015945].
Alkhalifah A et al: Alopecia areata update: part II. Treatment. J Am Acad Dermatol 2010;62:191 [PMID: 21015946].

2. Hair Pulling

Clinical Findings

Traumatic hair pulling causes the hair shafts to be broken off at different lengths, with an ill-defined area of hair loss, petechiae around follicular openings, and a wrinkled hair shaft on microscopic examination. This behavior may be merely habit, an acute reaction to severe stress, trichotillomania, or a sign of another psychiatric disorder. Eyelashes and eyebrows rather than scalp hair may be pulled out.

» Treatment

If the behavior has a long history, psychiatric evaluation may be helpful. Cutting or oiling the hair to make it slippery is an aid to behavior modification.

REACTIVE ERYTHEMAS

1. Erythema Multiforme

» Clinical Findings

Erythema multiforme begins with papules that later develop a dark center and then evolve into lesions with central bluish discoloration or blisters and the characteristic target lesions (iris lesions) that have three concentric circles of color change. Erythema multiforme has sometimes been diagnosed in patients with severe mucous membrane involvement, but Stevens-Johnson syndrome is the diagnosis when severe involvement of conjunctiva, oral cavity, and genital mucosa also occur.

Many causes are suspected, particularly concomitant HSV; drugs, especially sulfonamides; and Mycoplasma infections. Recurrent erythema multiforme is usually associated with reactivation of HSV. In erythema multiforme, spontaneous healing occurs in 10–14 days, but Stevens-Johnson syndrome may last 6–8 weeks.

» Treatment

Treatment is symptomatic in uncomplicated erythema multiforme. Removal of offending drugs is an obvious measure. Oral antihistamines such as cetirizine 5–10 mg every morning and hydroxyzine 1 mg/kg/d at bedtime are useful. Cool compresses and wet dressings will relieve pruritus. Steroids have not been demonstrated to be effective. Chronic acyclovir therapy has been successful in decreasing attacks in patients with herpes-associated recurrent erythema multiforme.

Table 15–9. Common drug reactions.

Urticaria	
	Barbiturates
	Opioids
	Penicillins
	Sulfonamides
Morbilliform eruption	
	Anticonvulsants
	Cephalosporins
	Penicillins
	Sulfonamides
Fixed drug eruption, erythema multiforme, toxic epidermal necrolysis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome	
	Anticonvulsants
	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
	Sulfonamides
DRESS syndrome	
	Anticonvulsants
Photodermatitis	
	Psoralens
	Sulfonamides
	Tetracyclines
	Thiazides

DRESS syndrome, drug eruptions with fever, eosinophilia, and systemic symptoms.

2. Drug Eruptions

Drugs may produce urticarial, morbilliform, scarlatiniform, pustular, bullous, or fixed skin eruptions. Urticaria may appear within minutes after drug administration, but most reactions begin 7–14 days after the drug is first administered. These eruptions may occur in patients who have received these drugs for long periods, and eruptions continue for days after the drug has been discontinued. Drug eruptions with fever, eosinophilia, and systemic symptoms (DRESS syndrome) is most commonly seen with anticonvulsants, but may be seen with other drugs. Drugs commonly implicated in skin reactions are listed in Table 15–9.

MISCELLANEOUS SKIN DISORDERS SEEN IN PEDIATRIC PRACTICE

1. Aphthous Stomatitis

Recurrent erosions on the gums, lips, tongue, palate, and buccal mucosa are often confused with herpes simplex. A smear of the base of such a lesion stained with Wright stain will aid in ruling out herpes simplex by the absence

http://obgynebooks.com

of epithelial multinucleate giant cells. A culture for herpes simplex is also useful in differential diagnostics. The cause remains unknown, but T-cell–mediated cytotoxicity to various viral antigens has been postulated.

» Treatment

There is no specific therapy for this condition. Rinsing the mouth with liquid antacids provides relief in most patients. Topical corticosteroids in a gel base may provide some relief. In severe cases that interfere with eating, prednisone, 1 mg/kg/d orally for 3–5 days, will suffice to abort an episode. Colchicine, 0.2–0.5 mg/d, sometimes reduces the frequency of attacks.

2. Vitiligo

Vitiligo is characterized clinically by the development of areas of depigmentation. These are often symmetrical and occur mainly on extensor surfaces. The depigmentation results from a destruction of melanocytes. The basis for this destruction is unknown, but immunologically mediated damage is likely and vitiligo sometimes occurs in individuals with autoimmune endocrinopathies.

» Treatment

Treatment is with potent topical steroids or tacrolimus. Topical calcipotriene has also been used. Narrow-band ultraviolet B radiation (UVB 311 nm) may be used in severe cases. Response to treatment is slow often requiring many months to years.

Tamesis ME, Morellij JG: Vitiligo in childhood: a state of the art review. Pediatr Dermatol 2010;27:437 [PMID: 20553403].

http://obgynebooks.com

16 Eye

Rebecca Sands Braverman, MD

Normal vision is a sense that develops during infancy and childhood. Pediatric ophthalmology emphasizes early diagnosis and treatment of pediatric eye diseases in order to obtain the best possible visual outcome. Eye disease in children is not always limited to the ocular system and may be a sign of systemic disease.

COMMON NONSPECIFIC SIGNS & SYMPTOMS

Nonspecific signs and symptoms commonly occur as the chief complaint or as an element of the history of a child with eye disease. Five of these findings are described here, along with a sixth—leukocoria—which is less common, but often has serious implications. Do not hesitate to seek the help of a pediatric ophthalmologist when you believe the diagnosis and treatment of these signs and symptoms require in-depth clinical experience.

RED EYE

Redness (injection) of the bulbar conjunctiva or deeper vessels is a common presenting complaint. It may be mild and localized or diffuse and bilateral. Causes include superficial or penetrating foreign bodies, trauma, infection, allergy, and conjunctivitis associated with systemic entities such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome, uveitis, or Kawasaki disease. Irritating noxious agents also cause injection. Subconjunctival hemorrhage may be traumatic, spontaneous, or may be associated with hematopoietic disease, vascular anomalies, or inflammatory processes. Uncommonly, an injected eye can be due to an intraocular or orbital tumor.

TEARING

Tearing in infants is usually due to nasolacrimal obstruction but may also be associated with congenital glaucoma, in which case photophobia and blepharospasm may also be present. Allergic or viral conjunctivitis or corneal abrasions can cause tearing.

DISCHARGE

Purulent discharge is usually associated with bacterial conjunctivitis. Infants and toddlers with nasolacrimal obstruction commonly have tearing. Watery discharge occurs with viral conjunctivitis/keratitis, iritis, and corneal abrasions/foreign bodies. Mucoid discharge may be a sign of allergic conjunctivitis or nasolacrimal obstruction. A mucoid discharge due to allergy typically contains eosinophils, whereas a purulent bacterial discharge contains polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

PAIN & FOREIGN BODY SENSATION

Pain in or around the eye may be due to foreign bodies, corneal abrasions, lacerations, acute infections of the globe or ocular adnexa, iritis, and angle-closure glaucoma. Large refractive errors or poor accommodative ability may manifest as headaches. Trichiasis (inturned lashes) and contact lens problems also cause ocular discomfort.

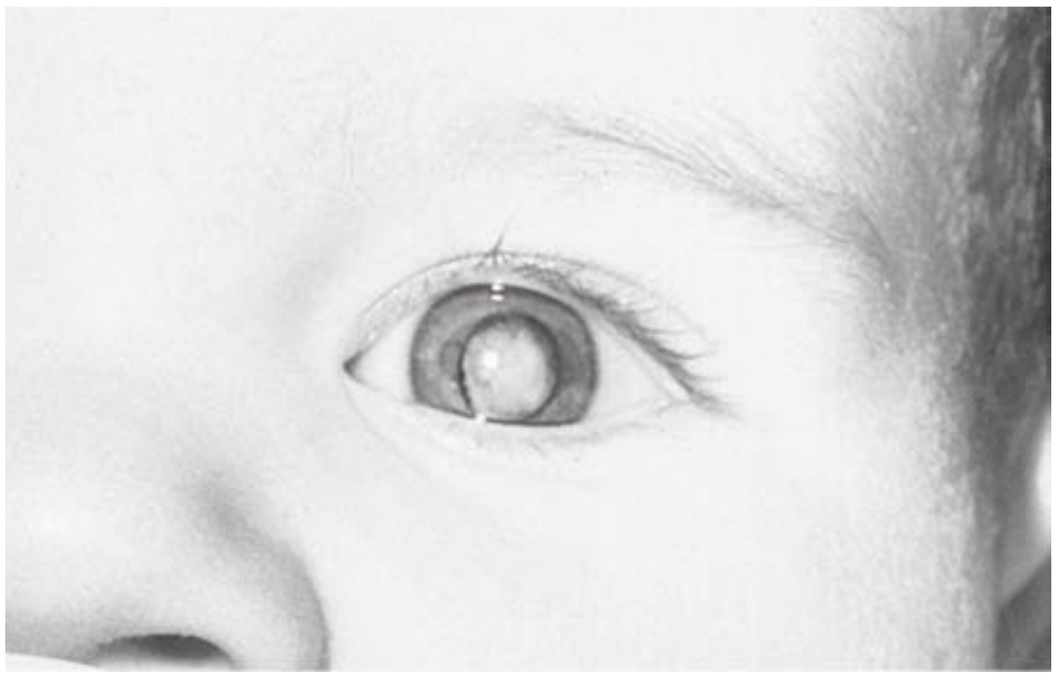
PHOTOPHOBIA

Acute aversion to light may occur with corneal abrasions, foreign bodies, and iritis. Squinting of one eye in bright light is a common sign of intermittent exotropia. Photophobia is present in infants with glaucoma, albinism, aniridia, and retinal dystrophies such as achromatopsia. Photophobia is common after ocular surgery and after pharmacologic dilation of the pupil. Photophobia in individuals with no ocular pathology may be due to migraine headache, meningitis, and retrobulbar optic neuritis.

LEUKOCORIA

Although not a common sign or complaint, leukocoria (white pupil) is associated with serious diseases and requires prompt ophthalmologic consultation. Causes of leukocoria include retinoblastoma, retinopathy of prematurity (ROP), pupillary

http://obgynebooks.com



▲**Figure 16–1.** Leukocoria of the left eye caused by retrolental membrane (persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous or persistent fetal vasculature).

membrane, cataract, vitreous opacities, retinal detachment, Toxocara infection, and retinal dysplasia (Figure 16–1).

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Significant refractive errors (myopia, hyperopia, astigmatism, or anisometropia) may cause decreased visual acuity, amblyopia, and strabismus.
- Symptoms and signs of uncorrected refractive error include blurred vision, squinting, headaches, fatigue with visual tasks, and failure of visual acuity screening.

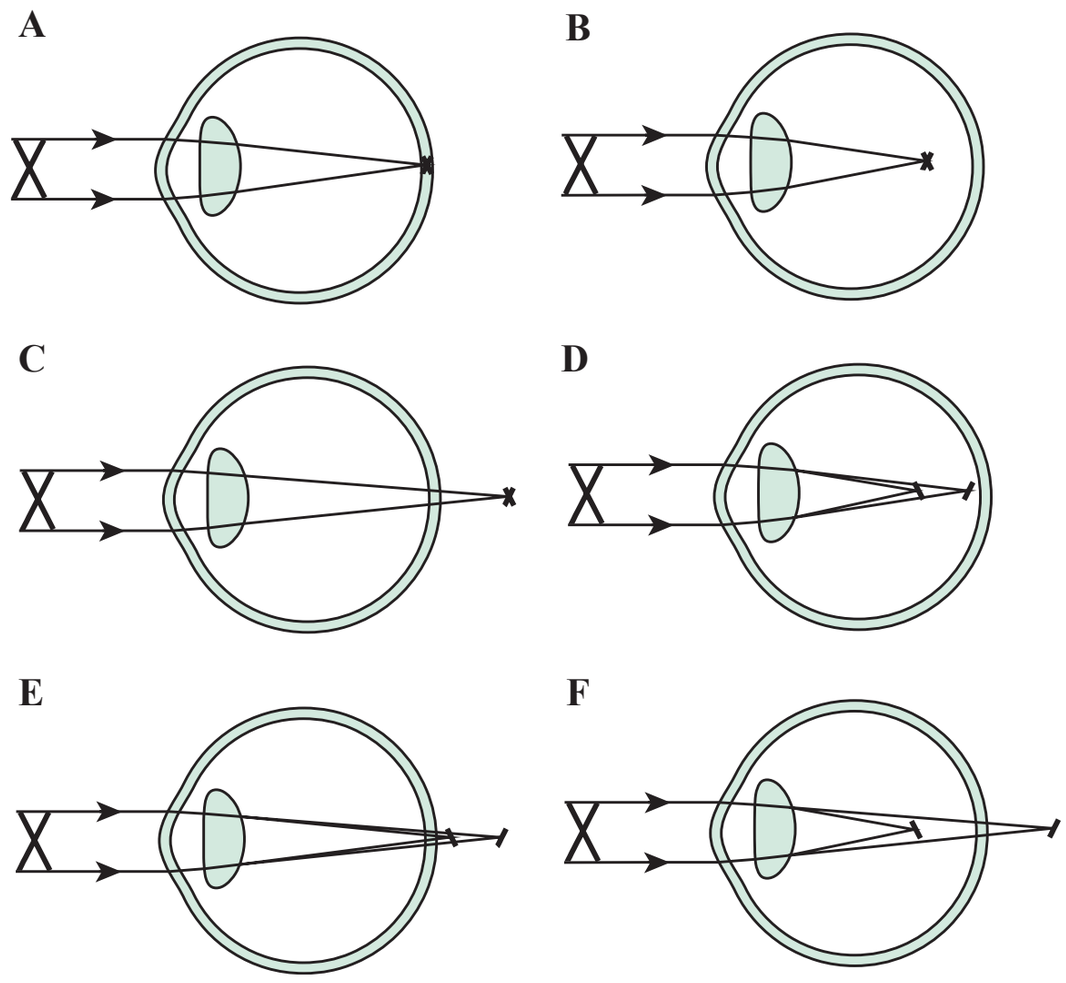
REFRACTIVE ERRORS

Pathogenesis

Refractive error refers to the optical state of the eye (Figure 16–2). The shape of the cornea and, to a lesser extent, the shape of the lens and length of the eye play a role in the refractive state of the eye. Children at particular risk for refractive errors requiring correction with glasses include those who are born prematurely; have Down syndrome; have parents with refractive errors; or have certain systemic conditions such as Stickler, Marfan, or Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

Diagnosis

There are three common refractive errors: myopia, hyperopia, and astigmatism. High refractive errors or inequality of the refractive state between the two eyes (anisometropia)



▲**Figure 16–2.** Different refractive states of the eye. **A:** Emmetropia. Image plane from parallel rays of light falls on retina. **B:** Myopia. Image plane focuses anterior to retina. **C:** Hyperopia. Image plane focuses posterior to retina. **D:** Astigmatism, myopic type. Images in horizontal and vertical planes focus anterior to retina. **E:** Astigmatism, hyperopic type. Images in horizontal and vertical planes focus posterior to retina. **F:** Astigmatism, mixed type. Images in horizontal and vertical planes focus on either side of retina.

can cause amblyopia. The refractive state is determined by instrument-based screening or by an eye care professional.

Treatment

Refractive errors in children are most commonly treated with glasses. An eye care professional can determine if the refractive error requires treatment. Contact lenses are prescribed for children with very high or asymmetrical refractive errors and adolescents who do not want to wear glasses. Laser refractive surgery is not indicated for most children.

MYOPIA (NEARSIGHTEDNESS)

For the myopic or nearsighted individual, objects nearby are in focus; those at a distance are blurred. The onset is typically at about age 8 years and may progress throughout adolescence and young adulthood. A myopic person may squint to produce a pinhole effect, which improves distance vision. Treatment requires glasses or contact lenses. Attempts to slow myopic progression during childhood with topical medications and overnight contact lens wear (orthokeratology) have failed to make significant differences in the course of myopia development.

http://obgynebooks.com

HYPEROPIA (FARSIGHTEDNESS)

Saying that the hyperopic child is sighted for far (not near) vision is somewhat misleading, because the child can focus on near objects if the hyperopia is not excessive. Large amounts of uncorrected hyperopia can cause esotropia (crossed eyes) and amblyopia.

ASTIGMATISM

When either the cornea or the crystalline lens is not perfectly spherical, an image will not be sharply focused in one plane. Schematically, there will be two planes of focus. Both of the planes can be either in front of or behind the retina, or one of the planes can be in front of the retina and the other behind it. This refractive state is described as astigmatism. Large amounts of astigmatism can cause amblyopia and is treated with glasses or toric contact lenses.

OPHTHALMIC EXAMINATION

A history of poor vision, misalignment of the eyes, failed vision screening, eyelid malposition, abnormal pupil reactivity or shape, and an asymmetric/abnormal red reflex requires referral to an ophthalmologist.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus (AAPOS), and the American Academy of Ophthalmology (AAO) policy statements for red reflex testing can be accessed at http://aappolicy.aappublications.org/.

Prompt detection and treatment of ocular conditions can prevent a lifetime of visual disability. The ophthalmic examination should be a part of every well-child assessment.

It is crucial to check the red reflex of a newborn infant because an abnormal red reflex may be due to a vision or life-threatening condition such as retinoblastoma or congenital cataracts. Eyelid ptosis (droopy eyelid) that obstructs the visual axis can cause permanent vision loss from deprivation amblyopia and induced astigmatism. An infant with an abnormal red reflex or eyelid ptosis requires an urgent referral to an ophthalmologist.

From birth to 3 years of age, the ophthalmic examination should include taking a history for ocular problems, vision assessment, inspection of the eyelids and eyes, pupil examination, ocular motility assessment, and red reflex check. Instrument-based screening may be attempted at this age if available to the practitioner.

The ophthalmic examination of children older than 3 years should include all of the previously mentioned tests and visual acuity testing with eye charts such as Sloan, Snellen, or LEA. Testing of binocular vision, or use of both eyes at the same time, can be accomplished by various stereoacuity tests. Instrument-based screening can identify children with amblyogenic risk factors and are particularly useful in children with language barriers or cognitive delays. See AAPOS.org for vision screening and referral recommendations.

HISTORY

Evaluation begins with the chief complaint and history of the present illness. Elements of the ocular history include onset of the complaint, its duration, whether it is monocular or binocular, previous treatment, and associated systemic symptoms. If an infectious disease is suspected, ask about possible contact with others having similar findings. The history should include prior ocular disease, perinatal and developmental history, history of allergy, and history of familial ocular disorders.

VISUAL ACUITY

Visual acuity testing is the most important test of visual function and should be part of every well-child check. Acuity should be tested in each eye individually, using an adhesive eye patch to prevent peeking. Glasses should be worn during vision screening.

Vision Screening

Vision screening in the pediatric age group is a challenge, especially in younger and developmentally delayed children. Further information on vision screening can be found at AAPOS.org or within policy statements available at AAP.org. Amblyogenic or sight-threatening risk factors screened for include media opacities (cataracts), strabismus (misalignment of the eyes), and refractive errors.

In the sleeping newborn, the presence of a blepharospastic response to bright light is an adequate response. At age 6 weeks, eye-to-eye contact with slow, following movements is usually present. By age 3 months, the infant should demonstrate fixing and following ocular movements for objects at a distance of 2–3 ft. At age 6 months, interest in movement across the room is the norm. Vision can be recorded for the presence or absence of fixing and following behavior, and whether vision is steady (unsteady when nystagmus is present) and maintained.

In the verbal child, the use of familiar icons will allow for a quantitative test. Allen or Lea symbols with familiar pictures can be used to test children 2–3 years of age. Stereopsis testing screens for strabismus and amblyopia as both eyes must see well and be aligned in order to pass the test. However, stereopsis testing may miss mild amblyopia or small-angle strabismus.

Four-year-old children are often ready to play the tumbling E game (in which the child identifies the orientation of the letter E, which is turned in one of four directions) or the HOTV letters game (in which these four letters are shown individually at a distance and matched on a board that the child is holding). Literate children are tested with Sloan

http://obgynebooks.com

or Snellen letters. Typical acuity levels in developmentally appropriate children are approximately 20/60 or better in children younger than 2–3 years, 20/40–20/30 in 3-year-old children, 20/30–20/25 in 4-year-old children, and 20/20 in literate children 5–6 years old. Referral criteria for children 3–5 years of age include visual acuity of less than 20/40 or 10/20 in either eye or a two-line difference between the eyes. Children 6 years or older should be referred if their visual acuity is less than 20/30 or 20/15 in either eye or a two-line difference is noted between the eyes.

The practitioner should be aware of two situations in which vision screening is complicated by nystagmus. Children who require a face turn or torticollis (in which the head is tilted to the right or left) to quiet the nystagmus will have poor visual acuity results when tested in the absence of the compensatory head posture. When latent nystagmus is present, acuity testing is particularly challenging (see section Nystagmus). Nystagmus appears or worsens when an eye is occluded, degrading central vision. To minimize the nystagmus, the occluder should be held about 12 in. in front of the eye not being tested. Testing both eyes simultaneously without occlusion often gives a better visual acuity measurement than when either eye is tested individually.

Traditional vision screening methods using eye charts in children aged 3–5 years require the child's cooperation as well as proficiency in testing by the examiner. Instrument-based screening modalities including photoscreeners and autorefractors are used by various volunteer programs, schools, day care facilities, and physician offices. Photoscreening does not screen directly for amblyopia but for amblyogenic factors, which include strabismus, media opacities, eyelid ptosis, and refractive errors. Autorefractors can determine if there is a significant refractive error present in either eye or if there is a significant difference between the two eyes. Some instruments also detect strabismus, media opacities, pupil abnormalities, and eyelid ptosis. If the screening results suggest an amblyogenic factor, children are referred to an eye care professional for a complete eye examination. Problems exist with sensitivity and specificity of the instruments and poor follow-up for referrals to eye care professionals. The cost-effectiveness of various vision screening modalities remains an area of continued research.

Chou R, Dana T, Bougatsos C: Screening for visual impairment in children ages 1-5 years: update for the USPSTF. Pediatrics 2011;127(2):e442–e479 [PMID: 21282269].

Davidson S, Quinn GE: The impact of pediatric vision disorders in adulthood. Pediatrics 2011;127(2):334–339 [PMID: 21199855].

Miller JM, Lessin HR: American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Ophthalmology; Committee on Practice and Ambulatory Medicine; American Academy of Ophthalmology; American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus; American Association of Certified Orthoptists. Instrument-based pediatric vision screening policy statement. Pediatrics 2012;130(5):983–986 [PMID: 23109679].

EXTERNAL EXAMINATION

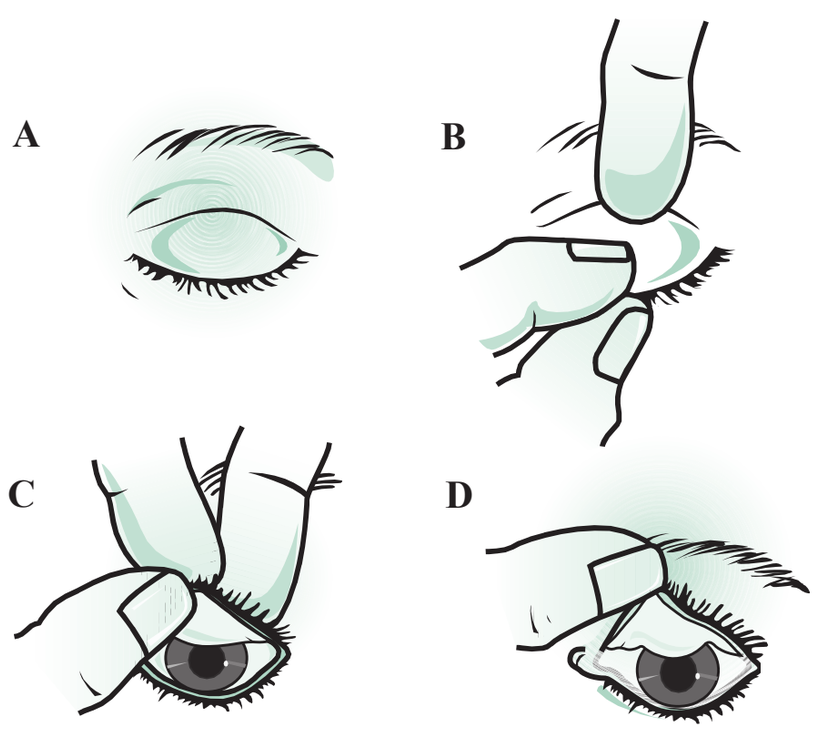
A penlight provides good illumination for inspection of the anterior segment of the globe and its adnexa. A slit lamp provides optimal illumination and magnification for an ocular examination.

In cases of suspected foreign body, pulling down on the lower lid provides excellent visualization of the inferior cul-de-sac (palpebral conjunctiva). Visualizing the upper cul-de-sac and superior bulbar conjunctiva is possible by having the patient look inferiorly, while the upper lid is pulled away from the globe and the examiner peers into the upper recess. Illumination with a penlight is necessary. The upper lid should be everted to evaluate the superior tarsal conjunctiva (Figure 16–3).

When indicated for further evaluation of the cornea, a small amount of fluorescein solution should be instilled into the lower cul-de-sac. A Wood lamp or a blue filter cap placed over a penlight will stain epithelial defects yellow-green. Disease-specific staining patterns may be observed. For example, herpes simplex lesions of the corneal epithelium produce a dendrite or branchlike pattern. A foreign body lodged beneath the upper lid shows one or more vertical lines of stain on the cornea due to the constant movement of the foreign body over the cornea. Contact lens overwear produces a central staining pattern. A fine, scattered punctate pattern may be a sign of viral keratitis or medication toxicity. Punctate erosions of the inferior third of the cornea can be seen with staphylococcal blepharitis or exposure keratitis secondary to incomplete lid closure.

PUPILS

The pupils should be evaluated for reaction to light, regularity of shape, and equality of size as well as for the presence of



▲**Figure 16–3.** Eversion of the upper lid. **A:** The patient looks downward. **B:** The fingers pull the lid down, and an index finger or cotton tip is placed on the upper tarsal border. **C:** The lid is pulled up over the finger. **D:** The lid is everted.

http://obgynebooks.com

afferent pupillary defect. This defect, which occurs in optic nerve disease, is evaluated by the swinging flashlight test (see section Diseases of the Optic Nerve). Irregular pupils are associated with iritis, trauma, pupillary membranes, and structural defects such as iris coloboma (see section Iris Coloboma).

Pupils vary in size due to lighting conditions and age. In general, infants have miotic (constricted) pupils. Children have larger pupils than either infants or adults, whereas the elderly have miotic pupils.

Anisocoria, a size difference between the two pupils, may be physiologic if the size difference is within 1 mm and is the same in light and dark. Anisocoria occurs with Horner syndrome, third nerve palsy, Adie tonic pupil, iritis, and trauma. Medication could also cause abnormal pupil size or reactivity. For example, children prescribed topical atropine penalization to treat amblyopia will have a unilateral dilated, un-reactive pupil. Systemic antihistamines and scopolamine patches can dilate the pupils and interfere with accommodation (focusing).

ALIGNMENT & MOTILITY EVALUATION

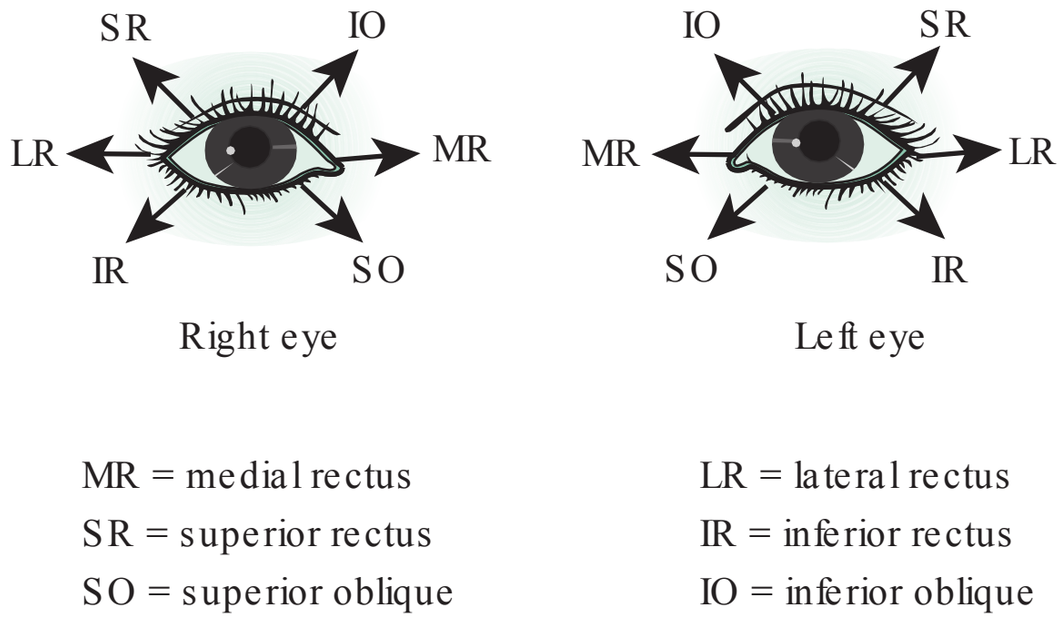
Alignment and motility should be tested because amblyopia is associated with strabismus. Besides alignment, ocular rotations should be evaluated in the six cardinal positions of gaze (Table 16–1; Figure 16–4). A small toy is an interesting target for testing ocular rotations in infants; a penlight works well in older children.

Alignment can be assessed in several ways. In order of increasing accuracy, these methods are observation, the corneal light reflex test, and cover testing. Observation is an educated guess about whether the eyes are properly aligned. Corneal light reflex evaluation (Hirschberg test) is performed by shining a light beam at the patient's eyes, observing the reflections off each cornea, and estimating whether these "reflexes" appear to be positioned properly. If the reflection of light is noted temporally on the cornea, esotropia is suspected (Figure 16–5). Nasal reflection of the light suggests exotropia (outward deviation). Accuracy of these tests increases with increasing angles of misalignment.

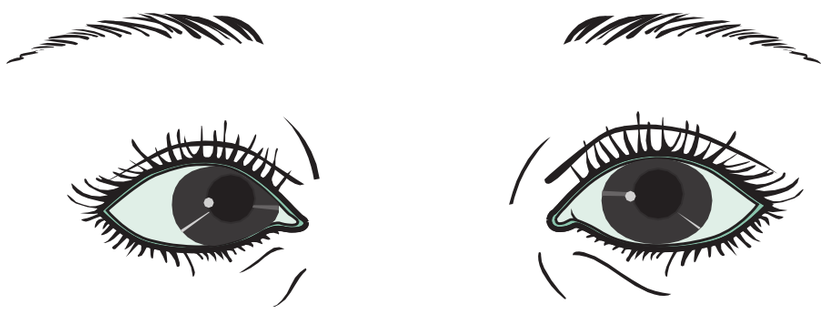
Another way of evaluating alignment is with the cover test, in which the patient fixes on a target while one eye is covered. If an esotropia or an exotropia is present, the deviated eye will make a corrective movement to fixate on the target when the previously fixating eye is occluded. The other eye is tested similarly. When the occluder is removed from the eye just uncovered, a refixation movement of that eye indicates a phoria, or latent deviation, if alignment is reestablished (Figure 16–6). If the uncovered eye picks up fixation and strabismus is still present, that eye can be presumed to be dominant and the nonpreferred eye possibly amblyopic. If the eye remains deviated after the occluder is removed, a tropia is noted to be present. A deviated eye that is blind or has very poor vision will not fixate on a target. Consequently, spurious results to cover testing may occur, which can happen with disinterest on the part of the patient, small-angle strabismus, and inexperience in administering cover tests.

Table 16–1. Function and innervation of each of the extraocular muscles.

Muscle	Function	Innervation
Medial rectus	Adductor	Oculomotor (third)
Lateral rectus	Abductor	Abducens (sixth)
Inferior rectus	Depressor, adductor, extorter	Oculomotor
Superior rectus	Elevator, adductor, intorter	Oculomotor
Inferior oblique	Elevator, abductor, extorter	Oculomotor
Superior oblique	Depressor, abductor, intorter	Trochlear (fourth)



▲**Figure 16–4.** Cardinal positions of gaze and muscles primarily tested in those fields of gaze. Arrow indicates position in which each muscle is tested.



▲**Figure 16–5.** Temporal displacement of light reflection showing esotropia (inward deviation) of the right eye. Nasal displacement of the reflection would show exotropia (outward deviation) of the left eye.

http://obgynebooks.com

Eyes straight (maintained in position by fusion).

Position of eye under cover in orthophoria (fusion-free position). The right eye under cover has not moved.

Position of eye under cover in esophoria (fusion-free position). Under cover, the right eye has deviated inward. Upon removal of cover, the right eye will immediately resume its straight-ahead position.

Position of eye under cover in exophoria (fusion-free position). Under cover, the right eye has deviated outward. Upon removal of the cover, the right eye will immediately resume its straight-ahead position.

▲**Figure 16–6.** Cover testing. The patient is instructed to look at a target at eye level 20 ft away. Note that in the presence of constant strabismus (ie, a tropia rather than a phoria), the deviation will remain when the cover is removed. (Reproduced with permission from Riordan-Eva P, Cunningham ET: Vaughan & Asbury's General Ophthalmology, 18th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2011.)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- The handheld ophthalmoscope is the tool necessary to check the red reflex of the eye.
- Simultaneous examination of both pupils at the same time is called the Brückner test.

Red Reflex Test

Clinical Findings

An ophthalmoscope is used to check the red reflex of both eyes. The examiner should use the largest diameter of light and have the setting at zero. Examiners with refractive errors can adjust the instrument setting as appropriate. The examiner should see a round, red light in both eyes. The red reflex of each eye can be compared simultaneously when the observer is approximately 4 ft away from the patient. A red reflex chart is available through the AAP policy statement on red reflex testing on pediatric patients at AAP.org.

Differential Diagnosis

The red reflex test (Brückner test) is useful for identifying disorders such as media opacities (eg, cataracts), large refractive errors, tumors such as retinoblastoma, and strabismus.

Treatment

A difference in quality of the red reflexes between the two eyes constitutes a positive Brückner test and requires referral to an ophthalmologist.

OPHTHALMOSCOPIC EXAMINATION

A handheld ophthalmoscope allows visualization of the ocular fundus. As the patient's pupil becomes more constricted, viewing the fundus becomes more difficult. Although pupillary dilation can precipitate an attack of closed-angle glaucoma in the predisposed adult, children are very rarely predisposed to angle closure. Exceptions include those with a dislocated lens, past surgery, or an eye previously compromised by a retrolental membrane, such as in ROP. Therefore, if an adequate view of the fundus is precluded by a miotic pupil, use of a dilating agent (eg, one drop in each eye of 2.5% phenylephrine or 0.5% or 1% tropicamide) should provide adequate mydriasis (dilation). In infants, one drop of a combination of 1% phenylephrine with 0.2% cyclopentolate (Cyclomydril) is safer. Structures to be observed during ophthalmoscopy include the optic disc, blood vessels, the macular reflex, and retina, as well as the clarity of the vitreous media. By increasing the amount of plus lens dialed into the instrument, the point of focus moves anteriorly from the retina to the lens and finally to the cornea.

http://obgynebooks.com

OCULAR TRAUMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A careful history of the events that lead to the ocular injury is crucial in the diagnosis and treatment of ocular trauma.
- The examination of the traumatized eye may be difficult in the child due to poor cooperation and significant discomfort.
- If the extent of the eye injury is difficult to determine or if it is sight threatening, urgent referral to an ophthalmologist is necessary.

OCULAR FOREIGN BODIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A foreign body of the eye/globe or adnexa may be difficult to visualize due to its small size or location.
- The clinician should always maintain a high index of suspicion for an occult or intraocular foreign body. If the history suggests this, an ophthalmologic referral should be considered.

Prevention

Protective goggles or prescription glasses can help prevent ocular injuries and should be encouraged while participating in sports and activities at risk for eye injuries such as grinding metal, hammering, or sawing wood.

Clinical Findings

Foreign bodies on the surface of the globe and palpebral conjunctiva usually cause discomfort, tearing, and a red eye. The history may suggest the origin of the foreign body, such as being around a metal grinder or being outside on a windy day when a sudden foreign body sensation was encountered associated with tearing, redness, and pain. Pain with blinking suggests that the foreign body may be trapped between the eyelid and the eye.

Magnification with a slit lamp may be needed for inspection. Foreign bodies that lodge on the upper palpebral conjunctiva are best viewed by everting the lid on itself and removing the foreign body with a cotton applicator. The conjunctival surface (palpebral conjunctiva) of the lower lid presents no problem with visualization.

Differential Diagnosis

Corneal abrasion, corneal ulcer, and globe rupture/laceration.

Complications

Pain, infection, and potential vision loss from scarring.

Treatment

When foreign bodies are noted on the bulbar conjunctiva or cornea (Figure 16–7), removal is facilitated by using a

A

B

▲**Figure 16–7.** **A:** Corneal foreign body at the nasal edge of the cornea. **B:** Subconjunctival foreign body of graphite.

http://obgynebooks.com

topical anesthetic. Removal of the foreign body with irrigation or with a cotton applicator after instillation of a topical anesthetic should be attempted. Referral to an ophthalmologist may be necessary if the aforementioned measures fail to remove the foreign body or if a corneal rust ring secondary to a metallic foreign body is present. An ophthalmic antibiotic ointment is typically prescribed for several days after foreign body removal.

» Prognosis

Usually excellent if treatment is obtained shortly after injury.

CORNEAL ABRASION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A corneal abrasion results in loss of the most superficial layer of corneal cells and causes severe ocular pain, tearing, and blepharospasm.
- An inciting event is usually identifiable as the cause of a corneal abrasion.

» Pathogenesis

Children often suffer corneal abrasions accidentally while playing with siblings or pets as well as participating in sports. Contact lens users frequently develop abrasions due to poorly fitting lenses, overnight wear, and use of torn or damaged lenses.

» Prevention

Proper contact lens care and parental supervision can prevent activities that can lead to a corneal abrasion.

» Clinical Findings

Symptom of a corneal abrasion is sudden and severe eye pain, usually after an inciting event such as an accidental finger poke to the eye. Decreased vision secondary to pain and tearing are common complaints. Eyelid edema, tearing, injection of the conjunctiva, and poor cooperation with the ocular examination due to pain are common signs of a corneal abrasion. Fluorescein dye is instilled into the eye and a cobalt blue or Wood lamp is used to illuminate the affected eye. The area with the abrasion will stain bright yellow.

» Differential Diagnosis

Ocular or adnexal foreign bodies, corneal ulcer, and corneal laceration.

» Complications

Possible vision loss from corneal infection and scarring.

» Treatment

Ophthalmic ointment, such as erythromycin ointment, lubricates the surface of the cornea and also helps prevent infections. Patching the affected eye when a large abrasion is present may provide comfort, but it is not advised for corneal abrasions caused by contact lens wear or other potentially contaminated sources. Frequent follow-up is required until healing is complete.

» Prognosis

Excellent if corneal infection and scarring do not occur.

INTRAOCULAR FOREIGN BODIES & PERFORATING OCULAR INJURIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Penetration of the eye by foreign bodies or retained foreign bodies may result in severe trauma and it may be an ocular emergency.

» Pathogenesis

Intraocular foreign bodies and penetrating injuries are most often caused by being in close proximity to high-velocity projectiles such as windshield glass broken during a motor vehicle accident, metal ground without use of protective safety goggles, and improperly detonated fireworks.

» Prevention

Use protective eyewear when engaging in activities that may be a risk for ocular injury.

» Clinical Findings

Sudden ocular pain occurs; vision loss as well as multiple organ trauma may be present.

Intraocular foreign bodies and corneal and scleral lacerations (ruptured globe) require emergency referral to an ophthalmologist. The diagnosis may be difficult if the obvious signs of corneal perforation (shallow anterior chamber with hyphema, traumatic cataract, and irregular pupil) are not present (Figure 16–8). Furthermore, nonradiopaque materials such as glass will not be seen on x-ray film.

Computed tomographic (CT) scan may be useful in evaluating ocular trauma, including bony injury and intraocular

http://obgynebooks.com

▲**Figure 16–8.** Corneal laceration with irregular pupil and vitreous loss.

foreign bodies. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) must be avoided if a magnetic foreign body is suspected.

» Differential Diagnosis

Corneal abrasion and superficial foreign body of the eye or eyelids.

» Complications

Vision loss, intraocular infection, and loss of the eye.

» Treatment

In cases of suspected intraocular foreign body or perforation of the globe, it may be best to keep the child at rest, gently shield the eye with a metal shield or cut-down paper cup, and keep the extent of examination to a minimum to prevent expulsion of intraocular contents. In this setting, the child should be given nothing by mouth in case eye examination under anesthesia or surgical repair is required.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the extent of the trauma.

BLUNT ORBITAL TRAUMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Blunt orbital and soft tissue trauma may produce "black eye," which is ecchymosis (blue or purplish hemorrhagic areas) of the eyelids.

» Pathogenesis

Trauma to the orbit from a closed fist, collision with another player during team sports, and falls are common causes of blunt orbital injuries. Orbital compartment syndrome, which may result from severe orbital trauma, is caused by hemorrhaging within the orbit or severe orbital edema (or both). This is an emergency which may lead to permanent vision loss if not treated urgently.

» Prevention

Protective eyewear during athletic activities and adequate supervision of children at home and school.

» Clinical Findings

Blunt trauma to the orbit may result in orbit fractures. The orbital floor is a common location for a fracture (called a blowout fracture). A specific fracture that occurs mainly in children after blunt orbit trauma is called the white-eyed blowout fracture. This results from a greenstick fracture of the orbit with entrapment of orbital contents within the fracture. It is called "white-eyed" because the external orbital soft tissue injury may appear to be minimal. Entrapment of orbital contents often stimulates the oculo-cardiac reflex resulting in bradycardia and emesis.

A blowout fracture must be suspected in a patient with symptoms of double vision, pain with eye movements, and restriction of extraocular muscle movements after blunt orbital trauma. CT images of an orbital floor fracture often reveal herniation of orbital fat or the inferior rectus muscle into the maxillary sinus. Assessment of ocular motility, globe integrity, and intraocular pressure will determine the extent of the blunt orbital injury. Consultation with an ophthalmologist is necessary to determine the full spectrum of the injuries.

Orbital compartment syndrome is an emergency requiring immediate treatment. Patients present with severe edema or ecchymosis of the eyelids (which makes it very difficult to open the eyelids), proptosis, and possibly an acute traumatic optic neuropathy, resulting in decreased vision or an afferent pupillary defect. Neuroimaging may reveal a retrobulbar hemorrhage and proptosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Orbit fracture with or without muscle entrapment, globe rupture, orbital compartment syndrome, and traumatic or ischemic optic neuropathy.

» Treatment

Orbital compartment syndrome requires emergent lateral eyelid canthotomy and cantholysis to decompress the orbit. Treatment should not be delayed in order to image the orbits. Prompt treatment can prevent permanent vision loss.

http://obgynebooks.com

Patients with clinical signs of muscle entrapment require urgent surgical repair to avoid permanent ischemic injury to the involved extraocular muscle. Large fractures may need repair to prevent enophthalmos, a sunken appearance to the orbit. This can usually be performed on a nonemergent basis.

Cold compresses or ice packs for brief periods (eg, 10 minutes at a time) are recommended in older children in the first 24 hours after injury to reduce hemorrhage and swelling.

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on the severity of the blunt trauma, associated ocular injuries, and extent of the orbit fractures.

▲**Figure 16–9.** Laceration involving right lower lid and canaliculus.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Inspection of the eyelids reveals the extent and severity of the traumatic laceration.

» Lacerations of the nasal third of the eyelid and involving the eyelid margin are at risk for lacrimal system injury and subsequent chronic tearing.

LACERATIONS

» Pathogenesis

Lacerations of the eyelids and lacrimal system often result from dog bites, car accidents, falls, and fights.

» Prevention

Supervision of children at home and at school.

» Clinical Findings

Eyelid lacerations may be partial or full thickness in depth depending on the extent of the injury. Foreign bodies, such as glass or gravel, may be present depending on the mechanism of the injury.

» Differential Diagnosis

Lacerations involving the eyelid may or may not involve the nasolacrimal duct system or eyelid margin. Globe injury may be associated with eyelid lacerations as well.

» Complications

Poor surgical repair of lacerations of the eyelid margin can result in eyelid malposition, which causes chronic ocular surface irritation and possible corneal scarring.

» Treatment

Except for superficial lacerations away from the globe, repair in children is best performed in the operating room under general anesthesia. Special consideration must be given to lacerations involving the lid margin, significant tissue loss, full-thickness lacerations, lacerations that may involve the levator muscle in the upper lid, and to those that may involve the canaliculus (Figure 16–9). These injuries are best repaired by an ophthalmologist and may require intubation of the nasolacrimal system with silicone tubes.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on severity of the injury, tissue loss, and adequacy of surgical repair.

BURNS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Severe thermal or chemical burns can result in permanent vision loss, ectropion or entropion of the lid, and scarring of the conjunctiva and cul-de-sac.

» Pathogenesis

Chemical burns with strong acidic and alkaline agents can be blinding and constitute a true ocular emergency.

http://obgynebooks.com

Examples are burns caused by exploding batteries, spilled drain cleaner, and bleach. Eyelid burns can occur in toddlers from contact with a lighted cigarette. The cornea is often involved as well. Curling irons can cause similar burns. Burns of the conjunctiva and cornea may be thermal, radiant, or chemical. Radiant energy causes ultraviolet keratitis. Typical examples are welder's burn and burns associated with skiing without goggles in bright sunlight.

» Prevention

Protective eyewear when engaging in activities that pose a potential risk for exposure to hazardous chemicals, radiant energy, or when explosive conditions are possible.

» Clinical Findings

Superficial thermal burns cause pain, tearing, and injection. Corneal epithelial defects can be diagnosed using fluorescein dye, which will stain areas of the cornea bright yellow where the epithelium is absent. The fluorescein dye pattern will show a uniformly stippled appearance of the corneal epithelium in ultraviolet keratitis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Corneal abrasion and iritis.

» Complications

Significant corneal injury, especially if associated with an alkali burn, may lead to scarring and vision loss. Eyelid scarring can result in chronic exposure, dry eye, irritation, and entropion or ectropion.

» Treatment

Alkalis tend to penetrate deeper than acids into ocular tissue and often causes severe injury. Damage to the conjunctival vessels gives the eye a white or blanched appearance, resulting in ocular ischemia. Immediate treatment consists of copious irrigation and removal of precipitates as soon as possible after the injury. Initial stabilization of the injury is initiated by using topical antibiotics and patching the injured eye closed. A cycloplegic agent such as cyclopentolate 1% may be added if corneal involvement is present. This reduces the pain from ciliary spasm and iritis that may accompany the injury. The patient should be referred to an ophthalmologist after immediate first aid has been given.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of the injury.

HYPHEMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Slit-lamp examination or penlight examination may reveal a layer of blood within the anterior chamber. Other injuries to the globe and orbit are often present.
- A hyphema may be microscopic or may fill the entire anterior chamber (Figure 16–10).

» Pathogenesis

Blunt trauma to the globe may cause a hyphema, or bleeding within the anterior chamber, from a ruptured vessel located near the root of the iris or in the anterior chamber angle (see Figure 16–10).

» Prevention

Protective eyewear and appropriate supervision at home and at school.

» Clinical Findings

Blunt trauma severe enough to cause a hyphema may be associated with additional ocular injury, including iritis, lens subluxation, retinal edema or detachment, and glaucoma. In patients with sickle cell anemia or trait, even moderate elevations of intraocular pressure may quickly lead to optic atrophy and permanent vision loss. Therefore, all African

▲**Figure 16–10.** Hyphema filling approximately 20% of the anterior chamber.

http://obgynebooks.com

Americans whose sickle cell status is unknown should be tested if hyphema is observed. These patients require extra vigilance in diagnosing and treating hyphema.

» Differential Diagnosis

Nontraumatic causes of hyphema include juvenile xanthogranuloma and blood dyscrasias. Rarely, hyphema is noted in the newborn after a stressful birth.

» Complications

Increased intraocular pressure, glaucoma, permanent corneal staining, and vision loss.

» Treatment

A shield should be placed over the eye, the head elevated, and arrangements made for ophthalmologic referral.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is worse if intraocular pressure is elevated, the patient has sickle cell disease, or if other associated ocular injuries are present.

ABUSIVE HEAD TRAUMA & NONACCIDENTAL TRAUMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abusive head trauma, commonly known as shaken baby syndrome, is a form of nonaccidental trauma characterized by a constellation of examination findings, including traumatic brain injury, retinal hemorrhages, and fractures of long bones or ribs.
- The history leading to the diagnosis of shaken baby syndrome is often vague and poorly correlated with the extent of injury.

» Pathogenesis

The mechanism of injury has been ascribed to a rapid back and forth shaking of young children that results in brain and ocular injuries. It is now believed that injuries may also be the result of blunt impact. Additional injury may result from spinal cord injuries and hypoxia.

» Clinical Findings

Victims often have multiple organ system involvement that includes, but is not limited to, traumatic brain injury, bone fractures, and retinal hemorrhages. The presentation can vary from irritability to emesis, change in mental status, or cardiopulmonary arrest.

Neuroimaging of the brain and a skeletal survey are used to diagnose shaken baby syndrome. Ophthalmic consultation and a dilated retinal examination are necessary to document retinal hemorrhages. Hemorrhages may be unilateral or bilateral and may be located in the posterior pole or periphery. Whereas retinal hemorrhages tend to resolve fairly quickly, those in the vitreous do not. If a blood clot lies over the macula, deprivation amblyopia may occur and may require intraocular surgery by a retinal specialist. Other ocular findings associated with nonaccidental trauma include lid ecchymosis, subconjunctival hemorrhage, hyphema, retinal folds, retinoschisis (traumatic separation of the retinal layers), and optic nerve edema. Acute-onset esotropia can also occur.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of retinal hemorrhages includes those secondary to a fall, seizures, chest compressions during cardiopulmonary resuscitation, blood dyscrasias among others. A team effort between the primary treating physician, neurosurgery, orthopedics, ophthalmology, social services, and law enforcement is often needed to determine the true cause of a patient's injuries.

» Complications

The severity of injuries dictates the long-term outcome. Severely diffuse retinal hemorrhages, associated traumatic optic neuropathy, and cortical injury adversely affect the potential for normal vision.

» Treatment

Management of any systemic injuries is required. Observation by an ophthalmologist for resolution of retinal hemorrhages is the usual management. Vitreous hemorrhages or large preretinal hemorrhages that do not resolve within several weeks may need surgical treatment by a retinal specialist.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of ocular and brain injuries.

Levin AV: Retinal hemorrhage in abusive head trauma. Pediatrics 2010;126(5):961–970 [PMID: 20921069].

PREVENTION OF OCULAR INJURIES

Air rifles, paintballs, and fireworks are responsible for many serious eye injuries in children. Golf and baseball/softball injuries are common and can be very severe. Bungee cords have been associated with multiple types of severe ocular

http://obgynebooks.com

trauma. Safety/sport goggles or prescription glasses should be used while in laboratories and industrial arts classes, and when operating snow blowers, power lawn mowers, and power tools, using hammers and nails or while participating in organized sports. The one-eyed individual should be specifically advised to always wear polycarbonate eyeglasses and goggles for all sports. High-risk activities such as boxing and the martial arts should be avoided by one-eyed children.

DISORDERS OF THE OCULAR STRUCTURES

DISEASES OF THE EYELIDS

The eyelids can be affected by various dermatologic and infectious conditions.

Blepharitis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Blepharitis is inflammation of the lid margin characterized by crusty debris at the base of the lashes, erythema of eyelid margins, and ocular irritation.

» Pathogenesis

Blepharitis is caused by inflammation of the eyelid margin, meibomian gland obstruction, bacterial overgrowth, and tear film imbalance.

» Prevention

Eyelid hygiene is essential to prevent or control blepharitis. Eyelid scrubs help decrease the bacterial load on the eyelid margins and lashes. Warm compresses help loosen the secretions of the meibomian glands.

» Clinical Findings

Patients may present with dry eye symptoms, red and irritated eyelid margins, conjunctivitis, and decreased vision from corneal erosions or vascularization. When conjunctival injection accompanies blepharitis, the condition is known as blepharoconjunctivitis. Staphylococcus is the most common bacterial cause.

» Differential Diagnosis

Chalazion, hordeolum, and rosacea blepharitis.

» Complications

Permanent corneal and eyelid margin scarring in severe cases.

» Treatment

Treatment includes lid scrubs with baby shampoo several times a week, warm compresses to the eyelids, and application of a topical antibiotic ointment such as erythromycin or bacitracin at bedtime.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

Chalazion

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A chalazion is an inflammation of the meibomian glands, which may produce a tender nodule over the tarsus of the upper or lower lid.
- Chalazion tends to be recurrent if eyelid hygiene is poor.

» Pathogenesis

Obstruction of the eyelid margin meibomian glands with resultant inflammation, fibrosis, and granuloma formation.

» Prevention

See section Blepharitis.

» Clinical Findings

Eyelid nodule of variable size and localized erythema of the corresponding palpebral conjunctiva that may be associated with a yellow lipogranuloma (Figure 16–11).

» Differential Diagnosis

Hordeolum, blepharitis.

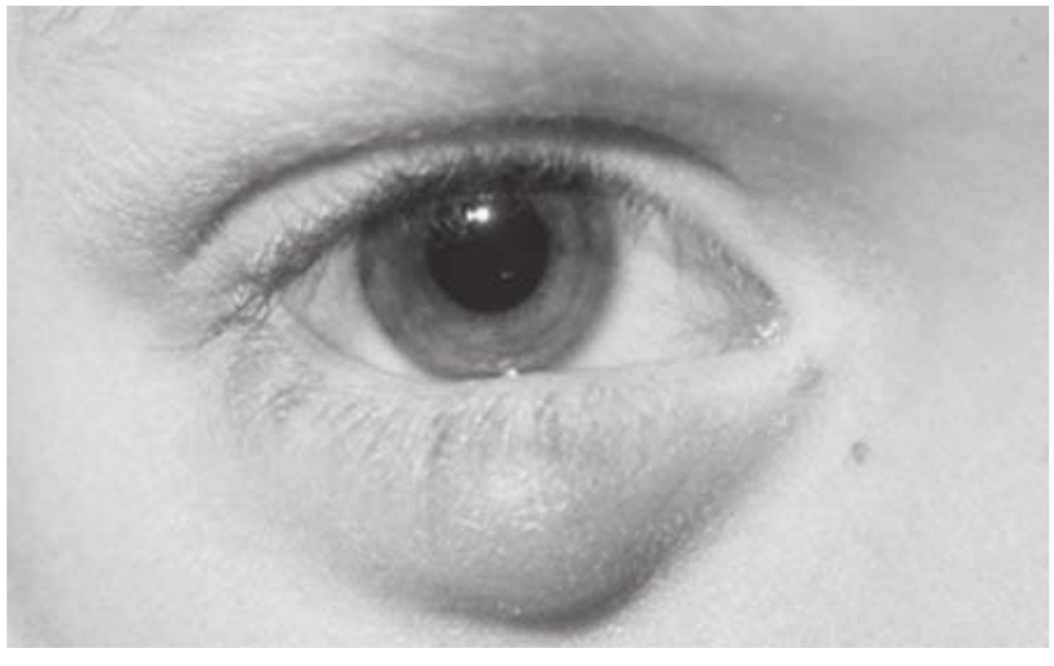
» Treatment

See section Blepharitis. Oral flax seed oil may also decrease the risk of recurrent chalazion. If incision and curettage are needed because the lesion is slow to resolve, the child will require a general anesthetic. Topical azithromycin (ophthalmic solution 1%) may also help decrease recurrence of chalazion, but it is still under investigation.

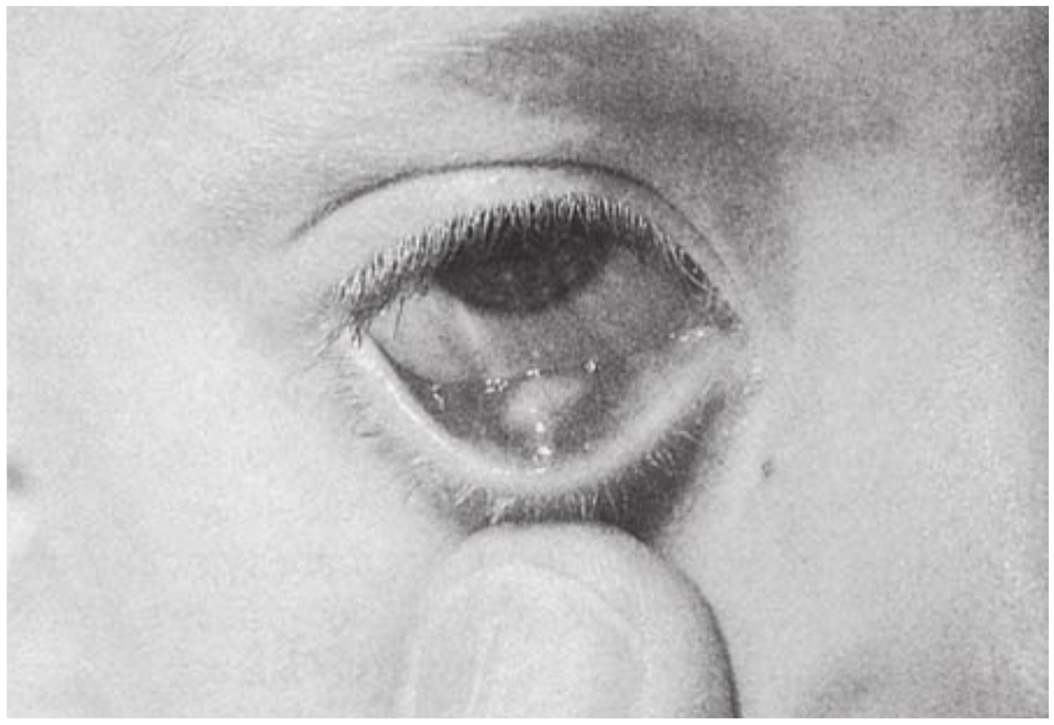
» Prognosis

Generally good.

http://obgynebooks.com



A



B

▲**Figure 16–11.** Chalazion. **A:** Right lower lid, external view. **B:** Right lower lid conjunctival surface.

VIRAL EYELID DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Viral infections of the eyelids can result in eyelid vesicles or papules.

» Pathogenesis

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) may involve the conjunctiva and lids at the time of primary herpes simplex infection resulting in blepharoconjunctivitis. Vesicular lesions with an erythematous base occur. Herpes zoster causes vesicular disease in association with a skin eruption in the dermatome of the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve. Molluscum contagiosum lesions are typically umbilicated papules. If near the lid margin, the lesions may cause conjunctivitis.

» Prevention

Avoid contact with individuals with active viral infections.

» Clinical Findings

A vesicular rash is the most common sign of herpes viral eyelid infection. Fluorescein dye should be administered topically to the effected eye followed by examination with a cobalt blue light to determine if corneal or conjunctival involvement is present. Herpes simplex or herpes zoster can be diagnosed by polymerase chain reaction or viral culture.

» Differential Diagnosis

Impetigo.

» Complications

Conjunctivitis and keratitis (corneal infection).

» Treatment

Primary herpes simplex blepharoconjunctivitis should be treated with systemic acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir. An alternative includes topical 1% trifluridine or 3% vidarabine.

Treatment of ophthalmic herpes zoster with nucleoside analogues within 5 days after onset may reduce the morbidity. When vesicles are present on the tip of the nose with herpes zoster (Hutchinson sign), ocular involvement, including iritis, is more likely.

Molluscum contagiosum lesions may be treated with observation, cautery, or excision.

» Prognosis

Generally good unless corneal involvement is present.

MISCELLANEOUS EYELID INFECTIONS

Pediculosis

Pediculosis of the lids (phthiriasis palpebrarum) is caused by Phthirus pubis. Nits and adult lice can be seen on the eyelashes when viewed with appropriate magnification. Mechanical removal and application to the lid margins of Phospholine iodide or 1% mercuric oxide ointment can be effective. Other bodily areas of involvement must also be treated if involved. Family members and contacts may also be infected (see Chapter 15).

Papillomavirus

Papillomavirus may infect the lid and conjunctiva. Warts may be recurrent, multiple, and difficult to treat. Treatment

http://obgynebooks.com

▲**Figure 16–12.** Hordeolum and blepharitis, left upper lid.

modalities include cryotherapy, cautery, carbon dioxide laser, and surgery.

Staphylococcal Infection

Localized staphylococcal infections of the glands of Zeis within the lid cause a sty (hordeolum) (Figure 16–12). When the infection coalesces and points internally or externally, it may discharge itself or require incision. The lesion is tender and red. Warm compresses help to shorten the acute process. Some practitioners prescribe a topical antibiotic ointment. Any coexisting blepharitis should be treated.

EYELID PTOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Eyelid ptosis results in a droopy eyelid that may be unilateral or bilateral. If the pupil is obstructed, deprivation amblyopia may result.

» Pathogenesis

Ptosis—a droopy upper lid (Figure 16–13)—may be congenital or acquired but is usually congenital in children owing to a defective levator muscle. Other causes of ptosis are myasthenia gravis, lid injuries, third nerve palsy, and Horner syndrome (see section Horner Syndrome). Ptosis may be associated with astigmatism and amblyopia.

» Prevention

Injury prevention.

▲**Figure 16–13.** Congenital ptosis of severe degree, left upper lid.

» Clinical Findings

An association sometimes seen with congenital ptosis is the Marcus Gunn jaw-winking phenomenon. Intermittent reduction of the ptosis occurs during mastication or sucking due to a synkinesis or simultaneous firing of the external or internal pterygoid muscle (innervated by the trigeminal nerve) and the levator muscle (innervated by the oculomotor nerve).

» Differential Diagnosis

Congenital ptosis, traumatic ptosis, neurogenic ptosis (oculomotor nerve palsy), Horner syndrome.

» Complications

Deprivation amblyopia and induced astigmatism.

» Treatment

Surgical correction is indicated for moderate to severe ptosis. Mild cases less often require operative management. Cosmesis may be better if surgery is delayed until most of the facial growth has occurred, usually around age 5 years.

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on the presence of amblyopia and whether it is adequately treated.

HORNER SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Horner syndrome, which may be congenital or acquired, presents with signs of unequal pupils (anisocoria), eyelid ptosis, iris heterochromia, and anhidrosis.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Pathogenesis

The syndrome is caused by an abnormality or lesion to the sympathetic chain. The congenital variety is most commonly the result of birth trauma. Acquired cases may occur in children who have had cardiothoracic surgery, trauma, neoplasm, or brainstem vascular malformation. Most worrisome is a Horner syndrome caused by neuroblastoma of the sympathetic chain in the apical lung region.

» Prevention

Sympathetic chain injury avoidance during cardiothoracic surgery and delivery.

» Clinical Findings

Parents may notice unequal pupils or different colored eyes. Penlight examination of the eyes may reveal unequal pupils (anisocoria), iris heterochromia, and eyelid ptosis of the affected eye.

The ptosis is usually mild with a well-defined upper lid crease. This differentiates it from congenital ptosis, which typically has a poorly defined lid crease. Another key finding of congenital Horner syndrome is heterochromia of the two irides, with the lighter colored iris occurring on the same side as the lesion (Figure 16–14). Anhidrosis can occur in congenital and acquired cases. Of note, not all of the three signs must be present to make the diagnosis.

Pharmacologic assessment of the pupils with topical cocaine and hydroxyamphetamine or epinephrine will help determine whether the Horner syndrome is due to a preganglionic or postganglionic lesion of the sympathetic chain. Apraclonidine may be a more practical drug to use in the diagnosis of Horner syndrome. Physical examination, including palpation of the neck and abdomen for masses, and MRI of structures in the head, neck, chest, and abdomen should be considered. An excellent screening test for neuroblastoma is the spot urine vanillylmandelic acid/creatinine ratio.

» Differential Diagnosis

Congenital or neurogenic ptosis and physiologic anisocoria.

▲**Figure 16–14.** Congenital Horner syndrome. Ptosis, miosis, and heterochromia. Lighter colored iris is on the affected left side.

» Complications

Prognosis depends on the etiology. Ptosis associated with Horner syndrome is usually mild and rarely results in amblyopia.

» Treatment

Management of any underlying disease is required. The ptosis and vision should be monitored by an ophthalmologist.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the etiology. The vision is usually normal.

EYELID TICS

Eyelid tics may occur as a transient phenomenon lasting several days to months. Although a tic may be an isolated finding in an otherwise healthy child, it may also occur in children with multiple tics, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, or Tourette syndrome. Caffeine consumption may cause or exacerbate eyelid tics. If the disorder is a short-lived annoyance, no treatment is needed.

° DISORDERS OF THE NASOLACRIMAL SYSTEM

NASOLACRIMAL DUCT OBSTRUCTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Nasolacrimal obstruction occurs in up to 6% of infants.

» Most cases clear spontaneously during the first year.

» Pathogenesis

Obstruction in any part of the drainage system may result from either incomplete canalization of the duct or membranous obstructions. Nasolacrimal obstruction may also occur in individuals with craniofacial abnormalities or Down syndrome.

» Prevention

Not applicable.

» Clinical Findings

Nasolacrimal duct obstruction presents with tearing and mucoid discharge from the affected eye. Signs and symptoms

http://obgynebooks.com

▲**Figure 16–15.** Nasolacrimal obstruction, right eye. Mattering on upper and lower lids.

include tearing (epiphora), mucoid discharge especially in the morning, erythema of one or both lids, and conjunctivitis (Figure 16–15). Light sensitivity and blepharospasm suggest possible congenital glaucoma and warrant an urgent ophthalmic referral.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of tearing includes nasolacrimal duct obstruction, congenital glaucoma, foreign bodies, nasal disorders, and, in older children, allergies.

» Complications

Dacryocystitis, orbital cellulitis, sepsis, and respiratory distress.

» Treatment

Massage over the nasolacrimal sac may empty debris from the nasolacrimal sac and clear the obstruction, although the efficacy of massage in clearing nasolacrimal obstruction is debated. Superinfection may occur, and treatment with topical antibiotics may help decrease the discharge.

The mainstay of surgical treatment is probing, which is successful 80% or more of the time, but the success rate may decrease after the infant reaches 1 year of age. Other surgical procedures, including infraction of the inferior nasal turbinate, balloon dilation, and silicone tube intubation, may be necessary if probing fails. Much less often, dacryocystorhinostomy is required.

» Prognosis

Generally good with surgical treatment.

CONGENITAL DACRYOCYSTOCELE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Presence of a nodular enlargement which may be blue in color, occurring shortly after birth over the nasolacrimal sac/medial eyelids.
- Dacryocystitis often occurs due to bacterial superinfection.

» Pathogenesis

Congenital dacryocystocele is thought to result from obstructions proximal and distal to the nasolacrimal sac.

» Prevention

Early intervention with nasolacrimal duct probing may prevent dacryocystitis.

» Clinical Findings

At birth, the nasolacrimal sac is distended and has a bluish hue that often leads to an erroneous diagnosis of hemangioma. The tense and swollen sac displaces the medial canthus superiorly (Figure 16–16). Digital pressure over the nodule may result in reflux of tears, mucus, or purulent discharge from the inferior eyelid punctum. An intranasal duct cyst may be present beneath the inferior turbinate at the valve of Hasner. These cysts may be associated with respiratory distress.

» Differential Diagnosis

Eyelid hemangioma and basal encephalocele.

» Complications

Dacryocystitis, orbital cellulitis, sepsis, and respiratory distress.

▲**Figure 16–16.** Congenital dacryocystocele on the left side. Raised, bluish discolored mass of enlarged nasolacrimal sac. Note superiorly displaced medial canthus.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

Massage and warm compresses are rarely effective. Nasolacrimal duct probing and endoscopic marsupialization of the intranasal cyst under general anesthesia may be required. Hospital admission and systemic antibiotics are indicated if dacryocystitis is present. Consultation with an ear, nose, and throat specialist is recommended to aid in the diagnosis and treatment of an associated intranasal cyst.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

DACRYOCYSTITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Dacryocystitis is an infection of the nasolacrimal sac that causes erythema and edema over the nasolacrimal sac.

» Pathogenesis

Acute and chronic dacryocystitis are typically caused by bacteria that colonize the upper respiratory tract, such as Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Streptococcus pyogenes, Streptococcus viridans, Moraxella catarrhalis, and Haemophilus species.

» Prevention

Treatment of nasolacrimal duct obstruction.

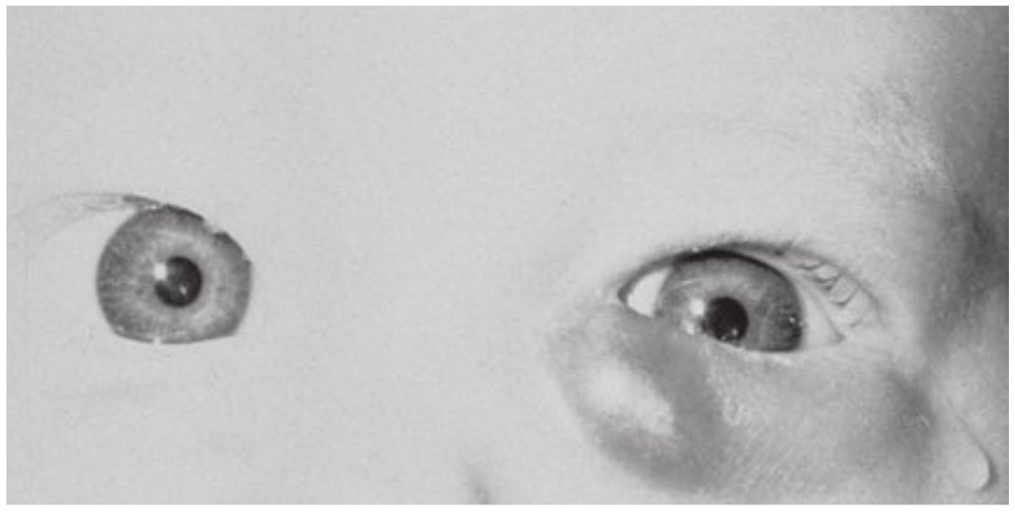
» Clinical Findings

Acute dacryocystitis presents with inflammation, swelling, tenderness, and pain over the lacrimal sac (located inferior to the medial canthal tendon). Fever may be present. The infection may point externally (Figure 16–17). A purulent discharge and tearing can be expected because the cause of infection is almost always nasolacrimal obstruction.

Signs of chronic dacryocystitis are mucopurulent debris on the lids and lashes, tearing, injection of the palpebral conjunctiva, and reflux of pus at the puncta when pressure is applied over the sac. Chronic dacryocystitis and recurrent episodes of low-grade dacryocystitis are caused by nasolacrimal obstruction.

» Differential Diagnosis

Dacryocystocele and preseptal cellulitis.



▲ **Figure 16–17.** Acute dacryocystitis in a 11-week-old infant.

» Complications

Preseptal cellulitis, orbital cellulitis, and sepsis.

» Treatment

Severe acute dacryocystitis is treated with intravenous antibiotics after attempts at identifying the offending organism by culture and staining. Oral antibiotics can be tried in milder cases. Topical antibiotic administration is adjunctive and is also used with recurrent chronic infections. Warm compresses are beneficial. After the acute episode subsides—and in chronic cases—the nasolacrimal obstruction must be relieved surgically. If it cannot be drained via the intranasal portion of the nasolacrimal duct, external drainage may be necessary. This should be done as a last resort since a fistula may develop.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

DISEASES OF THE CONJUNCTIVA

Conjunctivitis may be infectious, allergic, or associated with systemic disease. Trauma and intraocular inflammation can cause injection of conjunctival vessels that can be confused with conjunctivitis.

OPHTHALMIA NEONATORUM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Ophthalmia neonatorum (conjunctivitis in the newborn) occurs during the first month of life.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Pathogenesis

Pathogenesis may be due to inflammation resulting from silver nitrate prophylaxis given at birth, bacterial infection (gonococcal, staphylococcal, pneumococcal, or chlamydial), or viral infection. In developed countries, Chlamydia is the most common cause. Neonatal conjunctivitis may threaten vision if caused by Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Herpes simplex is a rare but serious cause of neonatal conjunctivitis, since it may indicate systemic herpes simplex infection.

» Prevention

Treatment of maternal infections prior to delivery can prevent ophthalmia neonatorum. Although no single prophylactic medication can eliminate all cases of neonatal conjunctivitis, povidone-iodine may provide broader coverage against the organisms causing this disease than silver nitrate or erythromycin ointment. Silver nitrate is not effective against Chlamydia. The choice of prophylactic agent is often dictated by local epidemiology and cost considerations, but erythromycin ophthalmic ointment is most often routinely administered immediately after birth to help prevent ophthalmia neonatorum.

» Clinical Findings

Ophthalmia neonatorum is characterized by redness and swelling of the lids and conjunctiva and by discharge (Figure 16–18). Gram staining, polymerase chain reaction amplification for Chlamydia and HSV, and bacterial and viral cultures aid in making an etiologic diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Chemical/toxic conjunctivitis, viral conjunctivitis, bacterial conjunctivitis, and chlamydial conjunctivitis.

▲**Figure 16–18.** Ophthalmia neonatorum due to Chlamydia trachomatis infection in a 2-week-old infant. Note marked lid and conjunctival inflammation.

» Complications

Chlamydia can cause a delayed-onset pneumonitis. Gonococcal infections can cause blindness through endophthalmitis as well as sepsis.

» Treatment

Treatment of these infections requires specific systemic antibiotics because they can cause serious infections in other organs. Parents should be examined and receive treatment when a sexually associated pathogen is present.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the infectious agent as well as the rapidity of treatment.

BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» In general, bacterial conjunctivitis is accompanied by a purulent discharge.

» Pathogenesis

Common bacterial causes of conjunctivitis in older children include Haemophilus species, S pneumoniae, M catarrhalis, and S aureus.

» Prevention

Hand-washing and contact precautions.

» Clinical findings

Purulent discharge and conjunctival injection of one or both eyes. These symptoms may be associated with an upper respiratory infection. Regional lymphadenopathy is not a common finding in bacterial conjunctivitis except in cases of oculoglandular syndrome due to S aureus, group A β-hemolytic streptococci, Mycobacterium tuberculosis or atypical mycobacteria, Francisella tularensis (the agent of tularemia), and Bartonella henselae (the agent of cat-scratch disease).

» Differential Diagnosis

Viral, allergic, traumatic, or chemical/toxic conjunctivitis.

» Complications

Bacterial conjunctivitis is usually self-limited unless caused by Chlamydia trachomatis, N gonorrhoeae, and Neisseria meningitidis which may have systemic manifestations.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

If conjunctivitis is not associated with systemic illness, topical antibiotics such as erythromycin, polymyxin-bacitracin, sulfacetamide, tobramycin, and fluoroquinolones are adequate. Systemic therapy is recommended for conjunctivitis associated with C trachomatis, N gonorrhoeae, and N meningitidis.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

Gold RS: Treatment of bacterial conjunctivitis in children. Pediatr Ann 2011;40(2):95–105 [PMID: 21323206].

VIRAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Children with viral conjunctivitis usually present with injection of the conjunctiva of one or both eyes and watery ocular discharge.

» Pathogenesis

Adenovirus infection is often associated with pharyngitis, a follicular reaction and injection of the palpebral conjunctiva, and preauricular adenopathy (pharyngoconjunctival fever). Epidemics of adenoviral keratoconjunctivitis occur. Conjunctivitis may also be due to enterovirus and can occur as part of an acute measles illness. HSV may cause conjunctivitis or blepharoconjunctivitis.

» Prevention

Hand-washing and contact precautions.

» Clinical Findings

Watery discharge associated with conjunctival injection of one or both eyes. A vesicular rash involving the eyelids or face suggests HSV.

» Differential Diagnosis

Bacterial, allergic, traumatic, or chemical/toxic conjunctivitis.

» Complications

Generally, viral conjunctivitis is self-limited. Herpes conjunctivitis may result in keratitis, which can affect visual acuity. This should be treated with antiviral therapy and the patient should be referred to an ophthalmologist.

» Treatment

Treatment of adenovirus conjunctivitis is supportive. Children with presumed adenoviral keratoconjunctivitis are considered contagious 10–14 days from the day of onset. They should stay out of school and group activities as long as their eyes are red and tearing. Strict hand-washing precautions are recommended.

Herpes conjunctivitis can be treated with topical trifluridine 1% drops or 3% vidarabine ointment. Oral acyclovir may be used for treatment of the primary infection to decrease the duration and severity of the infection and as prophylaxis to reduce recurrence of herpes simplex ocular disease.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

ALLERGIC CONJUNCTIVITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» A history of itchy, watery, red eyes, often associated with other allergy symptoms such as sneezing and rhinitis.

» Prevention

Decrease exposure to allergens.

» Clinical Findings

The history of itchy, watery, and red eyes is essential in making the diagnosis of allergic conjunctivitis. Vernal conjunctivitis is a more severe form of allergic conjunctivitis occurring mostly in the spring and summer that is associated with intense tearing, itching, and a stringy discharge. Vernal allergic conjunctivitis is more common in males. Vernal conjunctivitis may present with giant cobblestone papillae (Figure 16–19) on the eyelid conjunctiva, nodules around the corneal limbus, and even sterile corneal ulcers. Contact lens wear may induce a conjunctivitis that appears similar to the palpebral form of vernal conjunctivitis.

» Treatment

Topical ophthalmic solutions that combine both an antihistamine and mast cell stabilizers, including olopatadine 0.1%, epinastine HCl 0.05%, and ketotifen fumarate 0.025%, are very effective at treating allergic conjunctivitis. Other agents available include a combination topical vasoconstrictor plus an antihistamine (naphazoline antazoline), a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) such as ketorolac tromethamine 0.5%, a mast cell stabilizer such as lodoxamide tromethamine 0.1%, or a corticosteroid such as prednisolone 0.125% (Table 16–2). Corticosteroids should be used with

http://obgynebooks.com

Figure 16–19. Vernal conjunctivitis. Cobblestone papillae in superior tarsal conjunctiva.

caution because their extended use causes glaucoma or cataracts in some patients. Systemic antihistamines and limitation of exposure to allergens may help reduce symptoms as well.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

MUCOCUTANEOUS DISEASES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Erythema multiforme, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis are systemic conditions that often affect the eyes, as well as the skin, and oral and genitourinary mucosa.
- Ocular involvement may result in permanent conjunctival scarring, eyelid malposition, severe dry eye syndrome, and permanent vision loss.

» Clinical Findings

Erythema multiforme, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis may be caused by medications including: phenytoin, sulfonamides, NSAIDs, and barbiturates

Table 16–2. Common ocular allergy medications.

Generic Name	Brand Name	Mechanism of Action	Side Effects	Dosage	Indications
Lodoxamide tromethamine 0.1%	Alomide	Mast cell stabilizer	Transient burning or stinging	1 drop 4 times daily—taper	Vernal keratoconjunctivitis
Cromolyn Na 4%	Crolom, Opticrom	Mast cell stabilizer	Transient burning or stinging	1 drop 4–6 times daily	Vernal keratoconjunctivitis
Olopatadine	Patanol, Pataday	Mast cell stabilizer, H_1-receptor antagonist	Headache, burning or stinging	Twice daily (interval 6–8 h)	Itching due to allergic conjunctivitis
Ketorolac tromethamine 0.5%	Acular	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory	Transient burning or stinging	1 drop 4 times daily	Itching due to seasonal allergic conjunctivitis
Levocabastine HCl 0.05%	Livostin	H_1-receptor antagonist	Transient burning or stinging, headache	1 drop 4 times daily	Relief of symptoms of seasonal allergic conjunctivitis
Naphazoline HCl 0.1%	AK-Con, Naphcon, Opcon, Vasocon	Ocular decongestant, vasoconstrictor	Mydriasis, increased redness, irritation, discomfort, punctate keratitis, increased intraocular pressure, dizziness, headache, nausea, nervousness, hypertension, weakness, cardiac effects, hyperglycemia	Varies by preparation	Temporary relief of redness due to minor eye irritants
Pheniramine maleate	Component in AKCon A, Opcon-A, Naphcon-A	Antihistamine		1 drop every 3–4 h, as needed	Relief of symptoms of seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

http://obgynebooks.com

or infections such as HSV or Mycoplasma pneumoniae. Staining of the conjunctiva and/or cornea with fluorescein suggests severe ocular involvement and high risk for permanent ocular sequela including vision loss, severe dry eye, and symblepharon (adhesions) between the raw edges of the bulbar (eye) and palpebral (lid) conjunctivae.

» Differential Diagnosis

Viral or bacterial conjunctivitis if the patient presents prior to cutaneous or mucosal eruptions.

» Complications

Severe ocular involvement can result in permanent scarring of the conjunctiva leading to eyelid malposition, trichiasis (eyelashes touching the surface of the eye), and vision loss and blindness from chronic ocular irritation and extreme tear film deficiency.

» Treatment

Treatment of the underlying disease, including discontinuation of offending medications and use of appropriate antimicrobials is necessary. Management of conjunctivitis associated with mucocutaneous disease depends on its severity. Artificial tears and ointment provide comfort and a topical corticosteroid may help prevent adhesions and dry eye in mild to moderate cases. Surgical treatment of severe cases with amniotic membrane grafts may prevent visual disability by decreasing the risk of dry eye from tear-producing glands/goblet cell destruction, symblepharon, and trichiasis. Topical cyclosporine may help decrease the inflammatory reaction that leads to the destruction of tear-producing glands/goblet cells and subsequent dry eye syndrome.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of the underlying condition. Guarded visual prognosis is made in severe cases.

Gregory DG: Treatment of acute Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis using amniotic membrane: a review of 10 consecutive cases. Ophthalmology 2011;118(5):908–914 [PMID: 21440941].

DISORDERS OF THE IRIS

IRIS COLOBOMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Iris coloboma is a developmental defect due to incomplete closure of the anterior embryonal fissure.

» Iris coloboma may occur as an isolated defect or in association with various chromosomal abnormalities and syndromes.

» Clinical Findings

Penlight examination of the pupils reveals a keyhole shape to the pupil rather than the normal round configuration (Figure 16–20). A dilated examination by an ophthalmologist is necessary to determine if the coloboma involves additional structures of the eye including the retina. If the retina is involved, vision may be poor. A genetic evaluation is usually recommended due to the high rate of associated genetic syndromes.

» Differential Diagnosis

Microphthalmia, aniridia, and previous iris trauma.

» Complications

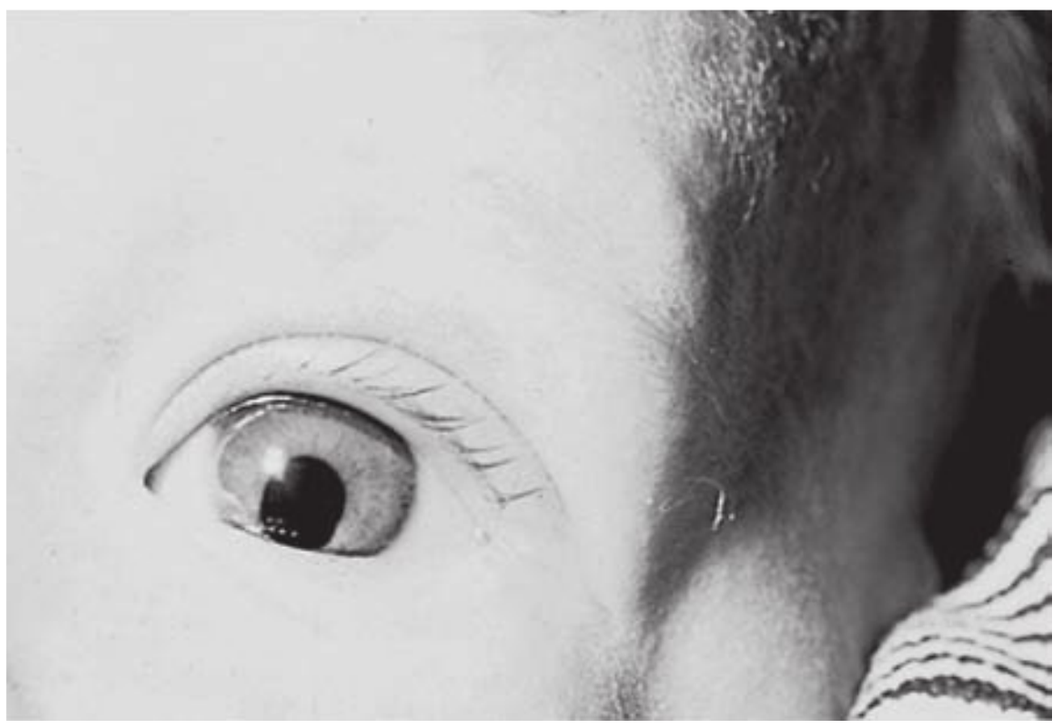
Low vision and rarely a secondary retinal detachment may need surgical intervention.

» Treatment

Patients with coloboma should be monitored by an ophthalmologist for signs of amblyopia, significant refractive errors, and strabismus.

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on whether there are other ocular structures involved. Visual acuity is guarded if a large retinal coloboma is present.



▲ **Figure 16–20.** Iris coloboma located inferiorly.

http://obgynebooks.com

ANIRIDIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Aniridia is a bilateral disorder that results in the absence of the majority of the iris (Figure 16–21)

» Pathogenesis

Aniridia may occur as an autosomal dominant disease or in a sporadic form associated with Wilms tumor. The aniridia gene is located within the 11p13 chromosome region. Aniridia, genitourinary abnormalities, and developmental delay have been linked to an 11p deletion.

» Clinical Findings

Slit-lamp or penlight examinations reveal little to no visible iris (see Figure 16–21). Photophobia, nystagmus, and poor vision are present in aniridia. Abdominal ultrasonography is indicated in the sporadic form of aniridia to diagnose Wilms tumor. Genetic evaluation is indicated as well. Cataract, corneal changes, macular hypoplasia, and glaucoma are often seen.

» Differential Diagnosis

Microphthalmia, iris coloboma, and previous iris trauma.

» Complications

Low vision, cataracts, and glaucoma.

» Treatment

An ophthalmologist should determine if cataracts or glaucoma are present in patients with aniridia. Surgical treatment of cataracts and glaucoma is often indicated.

▲**Figure 16–21.** Bilateral aniridia. Iris remnants present temporally in each eye.

» Prognosis

Patients tend to have low vision.

ALBINISM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Albinism is caused by defective melanogenesis, usually as an autosomal recessive disease, but an X-linked form does occur.

» Pathogenesis

Tyrosinase is an essential enzyme in the production of melanin. Many cases of complete albinism are caused by mutations of the tyrosinase gene. Albinism with some pigment production, especially in people of African descent, is more commonly caused by mutations of the p gene.

» Clinical Findings

Affected individuals are usually legally blind and have nystagmus (see section Nystagmus). Iris, skin, and hair color vary with the type and severity of albinism as well as with race. Iris transillumination is abnormal transmission of light through an iris with decreased pigment which can aid in the diagnosis of albinism. This may be obvious or may require slit-lamp examination with retroillumination to detect focal areas of transillumination. Other ocular abnormalities include foveal hypoplasia, abnormal optic pathway projections, strabismus, and poor stereoacuity.

» Differential Diagnosis

Albinism may be associated with other systemic manifestations. Bleeding problems occur in individuals with Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome (chromosome 10q23 or 5q13), in which oculocutaneous albinism is associated with a platelet abnormality. Chédiak-Higashi syndrome (chromosome 1q42–44) is characterized by neutrophil defects, recurrent infections, and oculocutaneous albinism. Other conditions associated with albinism are Waardenburg, Prader-Willi, and Angelman syndromes.

» Complications

Low vision, strabismus, high refractive errors, and visual field abnormalities.

» Treatment

Children with albinism should be evaluated by a pediatric ophthalmologist in order to optimize their visual function.

http://obgynebooks.com

Low-vision aids such as telescopes, stand magnifiers, and large-print books are often required. Vision teachers in schools and ophthalmic specialists trained in treating low-vision patients can improve the patient's ability to perform activities of daily living and function within society. Affected individuals should use sunscreen and protective clothing to prevent skin cancer.

» Prognosis

Vision is subnormal in most individuals.

MISCELLANEOUS IRIS CONDITIONS

Heterochromia, or a difference in iris color, can occur in congenital Horner syndrome, after iritis, or with tumors and nevi of the iris and use of topical prostaglandins. Malignant melanoma of the iris may also cause iris heterochromia. Acquired iris nodules (Lisch nodules), which occur in type 1 neurofibromatosis, usually become apparent by age 8 years. When seen on slit-lamp examination, Lisch nodules are 1–2 mm in diameter. They are often beige in color, although their appearance can vary. Iris xanthogranuloma occurring with juvenile xanthogranuloma can cause hyphema and glaucoma. Patients with juvenile xanthogranuloma should be evaluated by an ophthalmologist for ocular involvement.

° GLAUCOMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Glaucoma is caused by increased intraocular pressure and results in vision loss due to optic nerve injury, corneal scarring, and amblyopia.

» Pediatric glaucoma can be congenital or acquired, unilateral or bilateral.

» Glaucoma can be classified on an anatomic basis into two types: open-angle and closed-angle.

» Clinical Findings

Signs of glaucoma presenting within the first year of life include enlargement of the globe due to low scleral rigidity in the infant eye (buphthalmos), as well as tearing, photophobia, blepharospasm, corneal clouding due to edema, and optic nerve cupping. After age 3 years, usually only optic nerve changes occur. Findings may be unilateral or bilateral. In general, a red, inflamed eye is not typical of congenital or infantile glaucoma.

Sudden eye pain, redness, corneal clouding, and vision loss suggest possible pupillary block or angle-closure glaucoma. Urgent referral to an ophthalmologist is indicated. Genetic evaluation should be completed if other systemic abnormalities are noted.

Glaucoma also occurs with ocular and systemic syndromes such as aniridia, anterior segment dysgenesis, Sturge-Weber syndrome, the oculocerebrorenal syndrome of Lowe, and the Pierre Robin syndrome. Glaucoma can also occur with a traumatic hyphema, iritis, lens dislocation, intraocular tumor, and ROP.

» Differential Diagnosis

Buphthalmos is glaucoma until proven otherwise. The signs and symptoms of glaucoma are quite variable and should be urgently evaluated by an ophthalmologist.

» Treatment

Treatment depends on the cause, but surgery is often indicated. Topical medications, which are available to decrease the intraocular pressure, have limited success in pediatric glaucoma.

» Prognosis

In general, the prognosis is guarded but is often poor for glaucoma associated with congenital buphthalmos.

Aponte EP, Diehl N, Mohney BG: Medical and surgical outcomes in childhood glaucoma: a population-based study. J AAPOS 2011;15(3):263–267 [PMID: 21652244].

° UVEITIS

Inflammation of the uveal tract can be subdivided according to the uveal tissue primarily involved (iris, choroid, or retina) or by location (anterior, intermediate, or posterior uveitis). Perhaps the most commonly diagnosed form of uveitis in childhood is traumatic iridocyclitis or iritis.

ANTERIOR UVEITIS/IRIDOCYCLITIS/IRITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Iridocyclitis associated with juvenile idiopathic arthritis may be asymptomatic despite severe ocular inflammation.

» Pathogenesis

Iridocyclitis associated with juvenile idiopathic arthritis occurs most often in girls with oligoarticular arthritis and a

http://obgynebooks.com

positive antinuclear antibody test. Inflammatory bowel disease is also associated with iritis—perhaps more commonly with Crohn disease than with ulcerative colitis. Other causes of anterior uveitis in children include syphilis, tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, relapsing fever (borreliosis), and Lyme disease, all but the last also causing posterior uveitis. Juvenile spondyloarthropathies, including ankylosing spondylitis, Reiter syndrome, and psoriatic arthritis, are associated with anterior uveitis. A substantial percentage of cases are of unknown origin.

» Clinical Findings

Injection, photophobia, pain, and blurred vision usually accompany iritis (anterior uveitis or iridocyclitis). An exception to this is iritis associated with juvenile idiopathic arthritis (see Chapter 29). The eye in such cases is quiet and asymptomatic, but slit-lamp examination reveals anterior chamber inflammation with inflammatory cells and protein flare. Children with juvenile idiopathic arthritis should be screened according to a schedule recommended by the AAP (http://www.aap.org). Children with Crohn disease or ulcerative colitis should have routine periodic ophthalmologic examinations to detect ocular inflammation, which may be asymptomatic, and to detect cataracts if they have been receiving long-term systemic corticosteroids.

Other ocular findings of the anterior segment include conjunctivitis, episcleritis, and sterile corneal infiltrates. Posterior segment findings may include central serous retinochoroidopathy, panuveitis (inflammation of all uveal tissue), choroiditis, ischemic optic neuropathy, retinal vasculitis, neuroretinitis, and intermediate uveitis (see section Intermediate Uveitis).

Posterior subcapsular cataracts can develop in patients with or without ocular inflammation. Most, if not all, of these patients have been taking corticosteroids as part of the long-term treatment of their autoimmune disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

Iridocyclitis due to autoimmune disorder, trauma, infection, malignancy, or idiopathic etiology.

» Complications

Permanent decreased vision due to cataracts, secondary glaucoma, and band keratopathy.

» Treatment

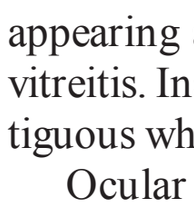
Treatment with a topical corticosteroid and a cycloplegic agent is aimed at quieting the inflammation and preventing or delaying the onset of cataract and glaucoma. Methotrexate and other systemic immunosuppressive agents can be used in refractory cases. Systemic antitumor necrosis factor agents such as etanercept, infliximab, and adalimumab show promise in treating refractory cases of uveitis.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of ocular inflammation, development of cataracts, and secondary glaucoma.

Tugal-Tutkun I: Pediatric uveitis. J Ophthalmic Vis Res 2011; 6(4):259–269 [PMID: 22454749].

POSTERIOR UVEITIS



ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» The terms choroiditis, retinitis, and retinochoroiditis denote the tissue layers primarily involved in posterior uveitis. Infectious agents are the most common cause of posterior uveitis in the pediatric population.

» Clinical Findings

Children with posterior uveitis often present with systemic manifestations of a congenital infection. Congenital rubella presents with deafness, developmental delay, cataracts, "salt and pepper" retinopathy, and hearing and cardiac disorders.

Serologic analysis and retinal examination by an ophthalmologist are used to identify the cause of posterior uveitis. Active toxoplasmosis (see Chapter 43) produces a white lesion appearing as a "headlight in the fog" owing to the overlying vitreitis. Inactive lesions have a hyperpigmented border. Contiguous white satellite lesions suggest reactivation of disease.

Ocular candidiasis/endogenous endophthalmitis typically occurs in an immune compromised host or a premature infant in the intensive care nursery receiving hyperalimentation. Candidal chorioretinitis appears as multifocal, whitish yellow, fluffy retinal lesions that may spread into the vitreous and produce a so-called cotton or fungus ball vitritis.

Acute retinal necrosis syndrome is caused most often by varicella-zoster virus and occasionally by HSV. Patients may present with vision loss and a red and painful eye. Ophthalmoscopy may show unilateral or bilateral patchy white areas of retina, arterial sheathing, vitreous haze, atrophic retinal scars, retinal detachment, and optic nerve involvement.

CMV infection is the most common cause of retinitis in immune compromised children, especially those with hematopoietic stem cell transplantation or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. CMV retinitis appears as a white retinal lesion, typically but not always associated with hemorrhage, or as a granular, indolent-appearing lesion with hemorrhage and a white periphery. Cotton-wool spots (nerve fiber layer infarcts) also commonly occur in HIV-positive patients.

In toddlers and young children, Toxocara canis or Toxocara cati infections (ocular larva migrans; see Chapter 43)

http://obgynebooks.com

occur from ingesting soil contaminated with parasite eggs. The disease is usually unilateral. Common signs and symptoms include a red injected eye, leukocoria, and decreased vision. Funduscopic examination may show endophthalmitis (vitreous abscess) or localized granuloma. Diagnosis is based on the appearance of the lesion and serologic testing using ELISA for T canis and T cati.

» Differential Diagnosis

Posterior uveitis due to autoimmune disorder, trauma, infection, malignancy, or idiopathic etiology.

» Complications

Permanent vision loss due to retinal scarring and detachment.

» Treatment

Congenital toxoplasmosis infections must be treated with systemic antimicrobials (see Chapter 43). Studies have shown improved ophthalmic and neurologic outcomes with prolonged treatment. Other infectious agents such as Candida, varicella, and CMV require systemic and/or intraocular injections of antimicrobial agents and may require retinal surgery. Treatment of toxocariasis includes periocular corticosteroid injections and vitrectomy.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for vision depends on the severity of retinal and systemic involvement.

INTERMEDIATE UVEITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Intermediate uveitis or pars planitis is described as inflammation located in the far anterior periphery of the retina and vitreous base.

» Clinical Findings

Patients with pars planitis, inflammation of the anterior edge of the retina, often complain of decreased vision and floaters. They may also have a history of a red eye and ocular discomfort. Patients with intermediate uveitis often have decreased vision. A prolonged duration of the disease can lead to deprivation amblyopia and strabismus.

A dilated examination is required for observation of inflammation of the pars plana and vitritis. Slit-lamp and dilated funduscopic examinations by an ophthalmologist often reveal chronic signs of inflammation associated with intermediate uveitis, including macular edema, cataracts, increased intraocular pressure, irregular pupil, iris adhesion to the lens, and band keratopathy.

» Differential Diagnosis

Intermediate uveitis is often idiopathic, although there are several known etiologies. Toxocara infections with peripheral granuloma can be associated with intermediate uveitis, as can inflammatory bowel disease, multiple sclerosis, and sarcoidosis. Retinoblastoma and other neoplasms can imitate uveitis.

» Complications

Decreased vision due to macular edema, vitreous floaters, cataracts, and glaucoma.

» Treatment

The most common treatment regimen for intermediate uveitis includes subtenon steroid injections, vitrectomy by a retinal surgeon, and systemic immunosuppression. Secondary glaucoma often requires tube shunt surgery.

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on the severity of the disease and associated secondary complications such as glaucoma and cataracts.

OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF AIDS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» The advent of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) has significantly reduced the incidence of CMV retinitis.

» Ocular infections are important manifestations of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (see Chapter 41).

» Opportunistic ocular infections increase in HIV-infected children as CD4 T-lymphocyte counts fall below 200/µL.

» Pathogenesis

Pathogens commonly causing eye infection include CMV, varicella-zoster virus, and herpes simplex types 1 and 2. Acute retinal necrosis syndrome (see section Posterior Uveitis) is a severe necrotizing retinitis that often results in blindness in patients with AIDS.

http://obgynebooks.com

Patients with CD4 counts below 50/μL are at high risk for CMV retinitis and should have a complete ocular evaluation by an ophthalmologist. Various retinal abnormalities may be present which include cotton-wool spots, retinal hemorrhages, microaneurysms, perivasculitis, and decreased visual acuity from ischemic maculopathy.

Immune recovery uveitis associated with antiretroviral therapy may result in decreased vision and require treatment.

» Differential Diagnosis

Decreased vision due to immune recovery uveitis, CMV retinitis, or acute retinal necrosis syndrome.

» Complications

Retinal scarring, retinal detachment, and blindness.

» Treatment

If immune recovery is sufficient with antiretroviral therapy for an extended period, the patient may be able to discontinue anti-CMV therapy. However, active viral retinitis must be treated with antiviral agents. CMV retinitis is treated with intravenous ganciclovir but foscarnet may be required if resistance develops. Intravitreal ganciclovir in conjunction with oral valganciclovir may be required in severe cases or in individuals intolerant to intravenous therapy. Acute retinal necrosis due to HSV or VZV must be treated with intravenous acyclovir, systemic steroids, and intraocular surgery.

» Prognosis

Viral retinitis generally has a poor prognosis.

Jabs DA: Cytomegalovirus retinitis and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome—bench to bedside: LXVII Edward Jackson Memorial Lecture. Am J Ophthalmol 2011;151(2):198–216 [PMID: 21168815].

Jabs DA et al: Studies of the Ocular Complications of AIDS Research Group. Course of cytomegalovirus retinitis in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy: five-year outcomes. Ophthalmology 2010;117(11):2152–2161 [PMID: 20673591].

DISORDERS OF THE CORNEA

CLOUDY CORNEA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Corneal clouding can be caused by developmental abnormalities, metabolic disorders, trauma, and infection.

» Clinical Findings

The cornea may have a white, hazy appearance on penlight examination. The red reflex may be decreased or absent.

» Differential Diagnosis

Corneal clouding, tearing, blepharospasm, and photophobia in a newborn are signs of congenital glaucoma until proven otherwise. Peter anomaly and sclerocornea are congenital malformations of the anterior segment of the eye that are the most common causes of a cloudy cornea at birth. Direct trauma to the cornea during a forceps delivery can result in corneal haze and significant amblyopia. Systemic abnormalities such as developmental delay and liver or kidney failure suggest metabolic disorders such as mucopolysaccharidoses, Wilson disease, and cystinosis. Corneal infiltrates occur with viral infections, staphylococcal lid disease, corneal dystrophies, and interstitial keratitis due to congenital syphilis.

A complete ocular evaluation by an ophthalmologist is required and should be completed urgently when congenital glaucoma is suspected.

» Complications

Vision loss is likely due to deprivation amblyopia.

» Treatment

Treatment depends on the underlying condition. Surgical treatment of glaucoma and possible corneal transplantation or keratoprosthesis may be required.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the amount of corneal involvement and response to surgical treatment. Corneal transplants have a very high frequency of rejection and subsequently a poor prognosis in children.

Lowe MT, Keane MC, Coster DJ, Williams KA: The outcome of corneal transplantation in infants, children, and adolescents. Ophthalmology 2011;118(3):492–497 [PMID: 20932584].

Nallasamy S, Colby K: Keratoprosthesis: procedure of choice for corneal opacities in children? Semin Ophthalmol 2010;25 (5-6):244–248 [PMID: 21091007].

VIRAL KERATITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Herpes simplex, herpes zoster, and adenovirus can infect the cornea.

» When the corneal epithelium is involved, a dendritic or amoeboid pattern can be seen with fluorescein staining.

http://obgynebooks.com

Clinical Findings

Patients commonly present with a painful, red eye. Photophobia and decreased vision are also common complaints. Fever, malaise, and symptoms of upper respiratory tract infection may be present.

Fluorescein administration to the involved cornea will reveal areas of staining when viewed with a blue light if the corneal epithelium is involved. The pattern of epithelium staining may be dendritic (branch-like) or irregular and round if a geographic ulcer is present. Slit-lamp examination may reveal white infiltrates beneath the corneal epithelium as a result of corneal stromal scarring or edema from viral infection of the corneal stromal tissue. Decreased visual acuity, photophobia, and conjunctivitis may also be noted.

Differential Diagnosis

Corneal abrasion, bacterial corneal ulcer, and iritis.

Treatment

Oral or topical antivirals such as trifluridine and vidarabine are indicated when herpes simplex infection is limited to the corneal epithelium, but systemic therapy is required in newborns. Topical corticosteroids may be a useful addition to antiviral therapy when stromal disease is present. The use of corticosteroids in the presence of herpetic disease should be undertaken only by an ophthalmologist because of the danger of worsening the disease. Oral acyclovir started in the early phase (first 5 days) may be helpful in treating herpes zoster eye disease. Acyclovir prophylaxis is helpful in preventing recurrent herpetic epithelial keratitis (see section Viral Conjunctivitis) and stromal keratitis caused by herpes simplex.

Adenovirus conjunctivitis may progress to keratitis 1–2 weeks after onset. Vision may be decreased. In most cases, no treatment is necessary because adenovirus keratitis is most often self-limiting. However, adenovirus is highly contagious and easily spread (see section Viral Conjunctivitis).

Prognosis

Corneal involvement with herpes simplex can be recurrent and lead to blindness.

CORNEAL ULCERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Decreased vision, pain, injection, a white corneal infiltrate or ulcer (Figure 16–22), and hypopyon (pus in the anterior chamber) may all be present.
- Bacterial corneal ulcers in healthy children who are not contact lens wearers are usually secondary to corneal trauma from corneal abrasion or a penetrating foreign body.

Clinical findings

A corneal ulcer appears as a white spot on the surface of the cornea that stains with fluorescein (see Figure 16–22). Associated symptoms include pain and decreased vision. Signs often include conjunctival injection, photophobia, tearing, and purulent discharge.

Differential Diagnosis

Viral keratitis, corneal abrasion, and penetrating foreign body.

Complications

Permanent vision loss may result from corneal scarring. Corneal transplantation may be required.

Treatment

Prompt referral to an ophthalmologist is necessary for evaluation and management.

Prognosis

Prognosis depends on how large the ulcer is and whether the central cornea is involved.

▲**Figure 16–22.** Corneal ulcer. Note white infiltrate located on inferior cornea.

http://obgynebooks.com

DISORDERS OF THE LENS

Lens disorders involve abnormality of clarity or position. Lens opacification (Figure 16–23) can affect vision depending on its density, size, and position. Visual potential is also influenced by age at onset and the success of amblyopia treatment.

CATARACTS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cataracts in children may be unilateral or bilateral, may exist as isolated defects, or may be accompanied by other ocular disorders or systemic disease (see Figure 16–23).

Clinical Findings

Leukocoria, poor fixation, and strabismus or nystagmus may be the presenting complaints. Absence of a red reflex in the newborn may be due to a cataract which requires an urgent referral to an ophthalmologist.

Laboratory investigation for infectious, genetic and metabolic causes of bilateral congenital cataracts is often indicated. Such investigation would include cultures or serologic tests for toxoplasmosis, rubella, CMV, HSV, and syphilis, as well as evaluation for inborn metabolic errors, such as galactosemia or Lowe syndrome.

Differential Diagnosis

Cloudy cornea, intraocular tumor, and retinal detachment.

▲**Figure 16–23.** Cataract causing leukocoria.

Complications

Pediatric cataracts are frequently associated with severe deprivation amblyopia.

Treatment

Early diagnosis and treatment are necessary to prevent deprivation amblyopia in children younger than 9 years, because they are visually immature. Cataracts that are visually significant require removal. Visually significant cataracts in infants are usually removed prior to 6 weeks of age to prevent deprivation amblyopia. Rehabilitation of the vision will require the correction of refractive errors and amblyopia treatment. Contact lenses, glasses, and artificial intraocular lenses are used to correct refractive errors after cataract extraction. Concomitant treatment of associated amblyopia, glaucoma, and the underlying systemic disease as indicated.

Prognosis

The ultimate visual acuity depends on the age when the cataract developed and was removed, whether it was unilateral or bilateral, whether it was associated with glaucoma, and compliance with amblyopia treatment.

DISLOCATED LENSES/ECTOPIA LENTIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Nontraumatic lens dislocation is usually bilateral.
- Subluxation causes refractive errors of large magnitude that are difficult to correct.

Pathogenesis

Marfan syndrome, homocystinuria, Weill-Marchesani syndrome, sulfite oxidase deficiency, hyperlysinemia, syphilis, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, and trauma.

Clinical Findings

Slit-lamp examination reveals malposition of the intraocular lens. Refraction often reveals significant astigmatism. A complete ophthalmic evaluation, as well as genetic and metabolic evaluation, may be warranted.

Differential Diagnosis

Ectopia lentis due to systemic disease versus trauma.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Complications

Ectopia lentis can cause decreased vision and amblyopia due to induced refractive errors. Another ophthalmologic concern is pupillary block glaucoma, in which a malpositioned unstable lens interferes with the normal flow of aqueous humor from the ciliary body (posterior to the pupil), where it is produced, into the trabecular meshwork (anterior to the pupillary plane).

» Treatment

Surgical lensectomy may be required if the visual acuity is not improved significantly with glasses or contact lenses. Underlying metabolic and/or genetic disorders require a multidisciplinary approach.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of the lens dislocation and need for lensectomy.

DISORDERS OF THE RETINA

RETINAL HEMORRHAGES IN THE NEWBORN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Retinal hemorrhages are commonly seen in the otherwise healthy newborn.
- Retinal hemorrhages occur most often after vaginal delivery but can also be present after suction delivery or cesarean section.

» Clinical Findings

A dilated retinal examination reveals unilateral or bilateral hemorrhages that can be located anywhere in the retina. They may appear as dot, blot, subretinal, or preretinal hemorrhages. They may also break into the vitreous. Examination of the retina of an otherwise healthy newborn infant is not indicated.

» Differential Diagnosis

See section Abusive Head Trauma & Nonaccidental Trauma.

» Treatment

Observation is indicated since retinal hemorrhages of the newborn usually disappear within the first month of life.

» Prognosis

Excellent.

RETINOPATHY OF PREMATURITY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Screening examinations are recommended for infants with a birth weight of 1500 g or less or gestational age of 30 weeks or less and selected infants with a birth weight between 1500 and 2000 g or gestational age of greater than 30 weeks with an unstable clinical course.
- Cost analysis studies have determined that screening and laser photoablation of retinopathy of prematurity (ROP) are cost-effective medical interventions.
- The joint policy statement from the AAP, AAO, and AAPOS on screening examinations of premature infants for ROP is available at http://www.pediatrics.org.

» Pathogenesis

Premature infants with incomplete retinal vascularization are at risk for developing abnormal peripheral retinal vascularization, which may lead to retinal detachment and blindness. The cause of this disorder—including the role of supplemental oxygen in the neonatal period—is still not fully understood. Recent studies suggest that vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) may play a key role in ROP development. Other risk factors for severe ROP are bronchopulmonary dysplasia, intraventricular hemorrhage, sepsis, apnea and bradycardia, and mutations of the Norrie disease gene. White males, infants with zone 1 disease, and infants with very low birth weight and gestational age have a higher risk of developing severe ROP that requires treatment.

» Prevention

The risk of vision loss from ROP can be reduced by timely screening of premature infants by an ophthalmologist.

» Clinical Findings

The Cryotherapy for Retinopathy of Prematurity (CRYO-ROP) study outlined a standard nomenclature to describe the progression and severity of ROP (Table 16–3). Since retinal blood vessels emanate from the optic nerve and do not fully cover the developing retina until term, the optic nerve is used as the central landmark. The most immature zone of the retina, zone 1, is the most posterior concentric imaginary circle around the optic nerve. The next peripheral

http://obgynebooks.com

Table 16–3. Stages of retinopathy of prematurity.

Stage I	Demarcation line or border dividing the vascular from the avascular retina.
Stage II	Ridge. Line of stage I acquires volume and rises above the surface retina to become a ridge.
Stage III	Ridge with extraretinal fibrovascular proliferation.
Stage IV	Subtotal retinal detachment.
Stage V	Total retinal detachment.

area is zone 2, and peripheral to that is zone 3. Zone 1 disease by definition is more high-risk than disease in more anterior/peripheral zones. Similarly, the stages of the abnormal vessels are numbered from zero (simply incomplete vascularization) through stages I–V.

Recommendations for initiating eye examination are outlined in the joint policy statement issued by the AAP, AAO, and AAPOS and are based on the gestational age and birth weight. Screening examinations are recommended for infants with a birth weight of 1500 g or less or gestational age of 30 weeks or less and selected infants with a birth weight between 1500 and 2000 g or gestational age of greater than 30 weeks with an unstable clinical course. The frequency of follow-up examinations depends on the findings and the risk factors for developing the disease. Most infants are evaluated every 1–2 weeks. ROP often resolves when the infant reaches 40 weeks estimated gestational age. Examinations can be discontinued when the retinas are fully vascularized, or when the infant is 45 weeks' gestational age and has never had prethreshold disease or worse, or is vascularized out to zone 3 and never had zone 1 or 2 disease.

» Complications

Low vision and retinal detachment.

» Treatment

Surgical treatment of ROP is indicated when there is zone 1 ROP with any stage and plus disease, zone 1 ROP stage III without plus disease, zone 2 ROP with stage II or III and plus disease. The treatment of ROP within 72 hours can reduce the occurrence of bad visual outcomes by 50%. Some patients still progress to a retinal detachment, which can have a very poor prognosis for vision. Surgical treatment for a retinal detachment involves scleral buckling or a lens-sparing vitrectomy by a vitreoretinal specialist. Intraocular injections of anti-VEGF agents such as bevacizumab and ranibizumab have been used in certain severe cases of ROP but long-term effects are still under investigation.

» Prognosis

Most cases of ROP do not progress to retinal detachment and require no treatment. However, ROP remains a leading cause of blindness in children. Those with a history of severe ROP are at a much higher risk of developing strabismus, amblyopia, myopia, and glaucoma than the average child.

American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Ophthalmology; American Academy of Ophthalmology; American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus; American Association of Certified Orthoptists: Screening examination of premature infants for retinopathy of prematurity. Pediatrics 2013;131(1):189–195 [PMID: 23277315].

Faia LJ, Trese MT: Retinopathy of prematurity care: screening to vitrectomy. Int Ophthalmol Clin 2011;51(1):1–16 [PMID: 21139474].

Mintz-Hittner HA, Kennedy KA, Chuang AZ: BEAT-ROP Cooperative Group. Efficacy of intravitreal bevacizumab for stage 3+ retinopathy of prematurity. N Engl J Med 2011;364(7): 603–615 [PMID: 21323540].

RETINOBLASTOMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Retinoblastoma is the most common primary intraocular malignancy of childhood, with an incidence estimated between 1:17,000 and 1:34,000 live births (see Chapter 31).
- Most patients present before age 3 years.

» Pathogenesis

Inherited forms of retinoblastoma are autosomal dominant with high penetrance. The disease may consist of a solitary mass or multiple tumors in one or both eyes. All bilateral cases and some unilateral cases are caused by germinal mutations; however, most unilateral cases are caused by a somatic retinal mutation. In both situations, the mutation occurs in the retinoblastoma gene (Rb) at chromosome 13q14. This is a tumor suppressor gene. One mutated copy may be inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion (germline mutation). If a second mutation spontaneously occurs in any cell, tumorigenesis is likely. Individuals with a germinal mutation are at risk for the development of tumors other than retinoblastoma (pineal tumors, osteosarcoma, and other soft tissue sarcomas). All children with unilateral or bilateral retinoblastoma must be presumed to have the germline form, and followed expectantly for other tumors in the remaining eye and at extraocular sites. Approximately 15% of patients with unilateral disease have germline mutations.

http://obgynebooks.com

Clinical Findings

The most common presenting sign in a child with previously undiagnosed retinoblastoma is leukocoria (see Figure 16–1). Evaluation of the pupillary red reflex is important, although a normal red reflex does not rule out retinoblastoma. Examination requires indirect ophthalmoscopy with scleral depression and pupillary dilation, performed by an ophthalmologist. Other presentations include strabismus, red eye, glaucoma, or pseudo-hypopyon (appearance of pus-like material in the anterior chamber).

Genetic testing is available for patients with retinoblastoma. Once the causative mutation is found in an affected individual, unaffected members of the family should be tested to determine their personal and reproductive risk.

Differential Diagnosis

Retinal vasculature abnormalities seen in diseases such as Coats disease, uveitis, and endophthalmitis.

Complications

Death if not adequately treated.

Treatment

The goal of treatment is to preserve the eye and as much useful vision as possible. Chemoreduction is used to reduce initial tumor volume. Local treatment with laser photocoagulation, cryotherapy, plaque radiotherapy, or thermotherapy can often preserve vision and spare the patient enucleation and radiation. Ophthalmic artery chemotherapy can be successful in certain cases.

Prognosis

Generally good except in developing countries where children often succumb to their disease due to lack of treatment. Patients with germline mutations need lifelong monitoring for secondary neoplasms such as sarcomas.

Shields CL, Lally SE, Leahey AM, Jabbour PM, Caywood EH, Schwendeman R, Shields JA: Targeted retinoblastoma management: when to use intravenous, intra-arterial, periocular, and intravitreal chemotherapy. Curr Opin Ophthalmol 2014 Sep;25(5):374–385 [PMID: 25014750].

RETINAL DETACHMENT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A retinal detachment may present as an abnormal or absent red reflex.
- Older children may complain of decreased vision, flashes, floaters, or visual field defects.

Pathogenesis

Common causes are trauma and high myopia. Other causes are ROP, Marfan syndrome, and Stickler syndrome.

Clinical Findings

Symptoms of detachment are floaters, flashing lights, and loss of visual field; however, children often cannot appreciate or verbalize their symptoms. A detachment may not be discovered until the child is referred after failing a vision screening examination, strabismus supervenes, or leukocoria is noted.

Differential Diagnosis

Intraocular tumor.

Complications

Vision loss, glaucoma, and strabismus.

Treatment

Treatment of retinal detachment is surgical. For children with conditions predisposing to retinal detachment, or a strong family history, examinations under anesthesia by an ophthalmologist, with prophylactic laser treatment, may be recommended.

Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the location and duration of the detachment.

DIABETIC RETINOPATHY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Diabetic retinopathy is a specific vascular complication of diabetes mellitus. Patients with type 1, or insulin-dependent, diabetes are at higher risk of developing severe proliferative retinopathy leading to visual loss than are those with type 2, or non–insulin-dependent, diabetes.
- The cost-effectiveness of screening examinations for diabetic retinopathy in children requires further evaluation.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Prevention

Control of diabetes is the best way to prevent ocular complications.

» Clinical Findings

Acute onset of diabetes may be accompanied by sudden blurred vision due to myopia and cataracts.

In children older than 9 years, referral to an ophthalmologist for screening of retinopathy should occur within 3–5 years after the onset of diabetes. Both conditions may be reversible with good glucose control. Young children with type 1 diabetes should be followed for the Wolfram, or DIDMOD, syndrome, in which diabetes mellitus occurs in conjunction with diabetes insipidus, optic atrophy, and deafness.

» Complications

Vision loss due to vitreous hemorrhage, macular edema, neovascular glaucoma, cataracts, and/or retinal detachment.

» Treatment

Severe proliferative diabetic retinopathy requires pan-retinal laser photocoagulation or vitreoretinal surgery (or both). Cataracts often require surgical removal and intraocular lens placement. Intraocular steroid and anti-VEGF injections have been used to treat macular edema and proliferative diabetic retinopathy in adults, but their role in children is not well established.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of the retinopathy and associated complications.

Forlenza GP, Stewart MW: Diabetic retinopathy in children. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2012 Dec-2013 Jan;10(2):217–226 [PMID: 23539833].

DISEASES OF THE OPTIC NERVE

OPTIC NEUROPATHY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Optic nerve function is evaluated by checking visual acuity, color vision, pupillary response, and visual fields.

» Clinical Findings

Poor optic nerve function results in decreased central or peripheral vision, decreased color vision, strabismus, and nystagmus. Optic nerve disorders can be due to congenital malformation, malignancy, inflammation, infection, metabolic disorders, and trauma.

The swinging flashlight test is used to assess function of each optic nerve. It is performed by shining a light alternately in front of each pupil to check for an afferent pupillary defect or Marcus Gunn pupillary defect. An abnormal response in the affected eye is pupillary dilation when the light is directed into that eye after having been shown in the other eye with its healthy optic nerve. This results from poorer conduction along the optic nerve of the affected eye, which in turn results in less pupillary constriction of both eyes than occurs when the light is shined into the noninvolved eye. Hippus—rhythmic dilating and constricting movements of the pupil—can be confused with an afferent pupillary defect.

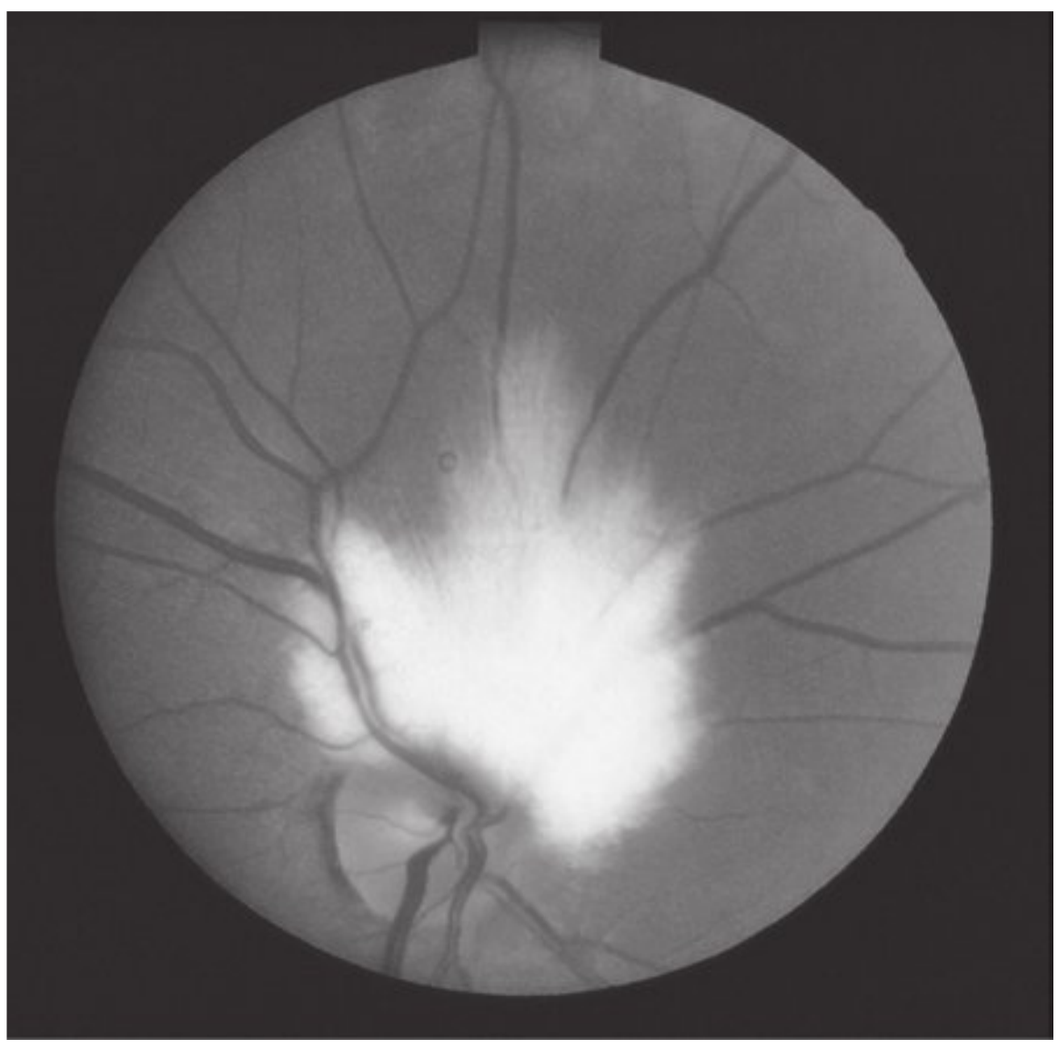
The optic nerve is evaluated as to size, shape, color, and vascularity. Occasionally, myelinization past the entrance of the optic nerve head occurs. It appears white, with a feathered edge (Figure 16–24). Myelinization onto the retina can be associated with myopia and amblyopia. Anatomic defects of the optic nerve include colobomatous defects and pits.

» Treatment

Management of the underlying condition resulting in the optic neuropathy is necessary.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of optic neuropathy and the underlying disease.



▲ **Figure 16–24.** Myelinization of the optic nerve.

http://obgynebooks.com

OPTIC NERVE HYPOPLASIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Optic nerve hypoplasia may be associated with absence of the septum pellucidum and hypothalamic-pituitary dysfunction, which is known as septo-optic dysplasia, or de Morsier syndrome.
- Children with septo-optic dysplasia and hypocortisolism are at risk for sudden death during febrile illness from thermoregulatory disturbance and dehydration from diabetes insipidus.

Pathogenesis

Optic nerve hypoplasia may occur in infants of diabetic mothers and has also been associated with alcohol use or ingestion of quinine or phenytoin during pregnancy. Anatomically, the optic nerve may range from absent (aplasia) to almost full size, with a segmental defect.

Clinical Findings

Visual function with optic nerve hypoplasia ranges from mildly decreased to absent light perception. If only one eye is involved, the child usually presents with strabismus. If both eyes are affected, nystagmus is usually the presenting sign. Ophthalmoscopy is performed to directly visualize the optic nerves and to determine the severity of the hypoplasia. Neuroimaging of the brain and endocrine consultation should be performed in all patients with bilateral optic nerve hypoplasia.

Treatment

Sensory amblyopia and significant refractive errors should be treated by an ophthalmologist. Strabismus surgery may be necessary in certain patients. Endocrine abnormalities should be managed as necessary.

Prognosis

Severe bilateral optic nerve hypoplasia results in blindness.

PAPILLEDEMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Papilledema (optic nerve edema) is associated with increased intracranial pressure due to any cause, such as tumor, craniosynostosis, or intracranial infection.

Pathogenesis

Papilledema is optic nerve head or optic disc edema associated with increased intracranial pressure. Hydrocephalus and intracranial tumors are common causes of papilledema. In idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri), neuroimaging is normal but papilledema, headaches, and pulsating tinnitus may be present. Papilledema occurs almost equally in boys and girls and sometimes is associated with obesity or upper respiratory tract infection. Other associated causes are viral and other infections, corticosteroid use or withdrawal, sinus infection, trauma, tetracycline use, growth hormone supplementation, and venous sinus thrombosis (see Chapter 25). Early in the illness the patient may not notice a change in vision, although the blind spot may be enlarged. Transient obscuration of vision (amaurosis fugax) may occur as the process becomes more long-standing. Further effects on vision will occur as the papilledema becomes chronic and ultimately leads to optic atrophy. Diplopia (double vision) may occur if increased intracranial pressure results in cranial nerve VI palsy. Workup and treatment are directed toward finding the underlying systemic or central nervous system cause.

Clinical Findings

Direct visualization of the optic nerve by ophthalmoscopy reveals an elevated disc with indistinct margins, increased vessel diameter, vessel tortuosity, and hyperemia. Hemorrhages and exudates are present in more severe cases. Observed changes may be subtle to striking. Optic nerve head changes are usually bilateral and generally symmetrical. Strabismus may occur if a sixth nerve palsy is associated with the underlying condition.

Pseudopapilledema is a normal variant of the optic disc in which the disc appears elevated, with indistinct margins and a normal vascular pattern. Pseudopapilledema sometimes occurs in hyperopic individuals. It is not associated with vision loss, but true papilledema must be ruled out prior to making the diagnosis.

Differential diagnosis

Pseudopapilledema and optic neuritis.

Treatment

Treatment of idiopathic intracranial hypertension may be pharmacologic—for example, using acetazolamide, a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor, or a corticosteroid. Discontinue medications that are suspected of causing papilledema or utilize anticoagulation if venous sinus thrombosis is present. Diagnostic lumbar puncture may also be curative. Optic nerve sheath fenestration and ventriculoperitoneal shunt are surgical interventions used when conservative measures fail. Strabismus surgery, Botox (botulinum toxin type A)

http://obgynebooks.com

injection of extraocular muscles, and amblyopia treatment may be necessary in cases of associated cranial neuropathies resulting in strabismus.

» Complications

Optic atrophy and vision loss.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the underlying etiology, duration, and control of the increased intracranial pressure.

Honorat R, Marchandot J, Tison C, Cances C, Chaix Y: Treatment and prognosis of idiopathic intracranial hypertension in children. Retrospective study (1995–2009) and literature review. Arch Pediatr 2011;18(11):1139–1147 [PMID: 21992894].

OPTIC NEURITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Papillitis is a form of optic neuritis seen on ophthalmoscopic examination as an inflamed optic nerve head.
- Optic neuritis in children may be idiopathic or associated with multiple sclerosis, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, Devic disease, or cat-scratch disease.

» Clinical Findings

Optic neuritis is inflammation of the optic nerve and may have the same appearance as papilledema. Papillitis (inflammation of the optic disc) results in a swollen/elevated nerve head, blurred optic disc margins, hyperemia of the nerve, optic disc hemorrhages, and dilated retinal veins. Retrobulbar optic neuritis (inflammation of the optic nerve posterior to the optic disc) has a normal appearing optic disc on examination by ophthalmoscopy. Optic neuritis is associated with an afferent pupillary defect (Marcus Gunn pupil), decreased visual acuity, decreased color vision, and it may also have pain with eye movements. Other central nervous system (CNS) signs or symptoms may be present so a complete review of systems and neurologic examination are important to complete.

Optic neuritis can be associated with viral and other infections, vaccinations, and CNS inflammatory demyelination diseases such as acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, multiple sclerosis, and neuromyelitis optica (Devic Disease). Neoplasms infiltrating the nerve or orbital infections that compress the optic nerve can also result in optic neuritis.

Workup of the patient with optic neuritis includes lumbar puncture and cerebrospinal fluid analysis. Serology should target infectious and inflammatory markers. Neuromyelitis optica can be diagnosed by detecting neuromyelitis optica immunoglobulin G (IgG). Neuroimaging of the brain and orbits is useful adjunct to the workup.

» Differential Diagnosis

Papilledema, pseudopapilledema, systemic immune disorder, infection, and/or neoplasm.

» Complications

Decreased visual acuity, color vision, peripheral vision, and contrast sensitivity. CNS involvement can result in a variety of complications based on the underlying etiology.

» Treatment

Treatment of the underlying disease.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the underlying disease process.

OPTIC ATROPHY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Optic atrophy is pallor of the optic nerve noted on ophthalmoscopy.

» Clinical Findings

Optic atrophy is found in children most frequently after neurologic compromise during the perinatal period. An example would be a premature infant who develops an intraventricular hemorrhage. Hydrocephalus, glioma of the optic nerve, craniosynostosis, certain neurologic diseases, and toxins such as methyl alcohol can cause optic atrophy, as can certain inborn errors of metabolism, long-standing papilledema, or papillitis.

Direct examination of the optic nerve by ophthalmoscopy reveals an optic nerve head with a cream or white color and possibly cupping. Neuroimaging is necessary to delineate CNS abnormalities.

» Complications

Vision loss, decreased peripheral vision, and contrast sensitivity.

» Treatment

Treatment of the underlying condition is indicated.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the severity of the optic nerve atrophy and associated neurologic deficits.

DISEASES OF THE ORBIT

PERIORBITAL & ORBITAL CELLULITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- The fascia of the eyelids joins with the fibrous orbital septum to isolate the orbit from the lids.
- The orbital septum helps decrease the risk of an eyelid infection extending into the orbit.
- Infections arising anterior to the orbital septum are termed preseptal.
- Orbital cellulitis denotes infection posterior to the orbital septum and may cause serious complications, such as an acute ischemic optic neuropathy or cerebral abscess.

» Pathogenesis

Preseptal (periorbital) cellulitis usually arises from a local exogenous source such as an abrasion of the eyelid, from other infections (hordeolum, dacryocystitis, or chalazion), or from infected varicella or insect bite lesions. S aureus and S pyogenes are the most common pathogens cultured from these sources.

Orbital cellulitis almost always arises from contiguous sinus infection, because the walls of three sinuses make up portions of the orbital walls and infection can breach these walls or extend by way of a richly anastomosing venous system. The pathogenic agents are those of acute or chronic sinusitis—respiratory flora and anaerobes. S aureus is also frequently implicated.

The frequency of methicillin-resistant S aureus preseptal and orbital cellulitis has increased over the past several years.

» Clinical Findings

Children with preseptal cellulitis present with erythematous and edematous eyelids, pain, and mild fever. The vision, eye movements, and eye itself are normal. Decreased vision, restricted eye movements, and an afferent pupillary defect suggest orbital cellulitis.

Orbital cellulitis presents with signs of periorbital disease as well as proptosis (a protruding eye), restricted eye movement, and pain with eye movement. Fever is usually high. CT scanning or MRI is required to establish the extent of the infection within the orbit and sinuses.

» Differential Diagnosis

Primary or metastatic neoplasm of the orbit, orbital pseudotumor (idiopathic orbital inflammation), and orbital foreign body with secondary infection.

» Complications

Preseptal cellulitis can progress to orbital cellulitis. Orbital cellulitis can result in permanent vision loss due to compressive optic neuropathy. Proptosis can cause corneal exposure, dryness, and scarring. Cavernous sinus thrombosis, intracranial extension, blindness, and death can result from severe orbital cellulitis.

» Treatment

Therapy for preseptal and orbital cellulitis infection is with systemic antibiotics. Treatment of orbital infections may require surgical drainage for subperiosteal abscess in conjunction with intravenous antibiotics and steroids. Drainage of infected sinuses is often part of the therapy.

» Prognosis

Most patients do well with timely treatment.

Davies BW, Smith JM, Hink EM, Durairaj VD. C-Reactive protein as a marker for initiating steroid treatment in children with orbital cellulitis. Ophthal Plast Reconstru Surg 2014 Nov 12 [PMID: 25393908]. [Epub ahead of print]

Smith JM, Bratton EM, DeWitt P, Davies BW, Hink EM, Durairaj VD. Predicting the need for surgical intervention in pediatric orbital cellulitis. Am J Ophthalmol 2014 Aug;158(2):387–394 [PMID: 24794092].

CRANIOFACIAL ANOMALIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Craniofacial anomalies can affect the orbit and visual system.
- Craniofacial anomalies occur with craniosynostoses and midface syndromes such as Treacher Collins and Pierre Robin syndromes.
- Fetal alcohol syndrome is associated with similar changes of the ocular adnexa.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Clinical Findings

Ocular abnormalities associated with craniofacial abnormalities involving the orbits include visual impairment, proptosis, corneal exposure, hypertelorism (widely spaced orbits), strabismus, amblyopia, lid coloboma, papilledema, refractive errors, and optic atrophy.

» Treatment

Orbital and ocular abnormalities associated with craniofacial anomalies often require a multispecialty approach. Management may require orbital and strabismus surgery. Ophthalmologists also treat amblyopia, refractive errors, and corneal exposure if present.

Taub PJ, Lampert JA: Pediatric craniofacial surgery: a review for the multidisciplinary team. Cleft Palate Craniofac J 2011;48(6): 670–683 [PMID: 21740182].

ORBITAL TUMORS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Both benign and malignant orbital lesions occur in children.
- The most common benign tumor is capillary hemangioma (Figure 16–25).
- The most common primary malignant tumor of the orbit is rhabdomyosarcoma.

» Clinical Findings

Capillary hemangiomas may be located superficially in the lid or deep in the orbit and can cause ptosis (see Figure 16–25), refractive errors, and amblyopia. Deeper lesions may cause proptosis. Capillary hemangiomas in infants initially increase in size before involuting at about age 2–4 years.

▲**Figure 16–25.** Right upper lid hemangioma causing ptosis.

Orbital dermoid cysts vary in size and are usually found temporally at the brow and orbital rim or supranasally. These lesions are firm, well encapsulated, and mobile. Rupture of the cyst causes a severe inflammatory reaction.

Lymphangioma occurring in the orbit is typically poorly encapsulated, increases in size with upper respiratory infection, and is susceptible to hemorrhage. Other benign tumors of the orbit are orbital pseudotumor, neurofibroma, teratoma, and tumors arising from bone, connective tissue, and neural tissue.

Orbital rhabdomyosarcoma (see Chapter 31) grows rapidly and displaces the globe. The average age at onset is 6–7 years. The tumor is often initially mistaken for orbital swelling due to insignificant trauma.

Tumors metastatic to the orbit also occur; neuroblastoma is most common. The patient may exhibit proptosis, orbital ecchymosis (raccoon eyes), Horner syndrome, or opsoclonus (dancing eyes). Ewing sarcoma, leukemia, Burkitt lymphoma, and Langerhans cell histiocytosis may involve the orbit.

Examination of vision, eye movements, eyelids, and orbits often reveals amblyopia, eyelid malposition, strabismus, and proptosis. Neuroimaging with CT or MRI is required to delineate the location and size of orbital tumors.

» Differential Diagnosis

Orbital pseudotumor (idiopathic orbital inflammation) and orbital cellulitis.

» Treatment

Therapy for capillary hemangiomas includes observation and intralesional or systemic corticosteroids. Topical and systemic β-blockers have shown success in treating capillary hemangiomas. Treatment is indicated if the lesion is large enough to cause amblyopia. Induced astigmatism or amblyopia (or both) are treated with glasses and patching, respectively. Treatment of orbital dermoids is by excision.

Rhabdomyosarcoma is treated with radiation and chemotherapy after biopsy confirms the diagnosis. With expeditious diagnosis and proper treatment, the survival rate of patients with orbital rhabdomyosarcoma confined to the orbit approaches 90%.

Treatment of metastatic disease requires management by an oncologist and may require chemotherapy and radiation therapy.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the underlying disease.

http://obgynebooks.com

NYSTAGMUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Nystagmus is a rhythmic oscillation or jiggling of the eyes. It may be unilateral or bilateral, more pronounced in one eye, or gaze-dependent.

» Pathogenesis

Nystagmus may be associated with esotropia or may occur with ocular lesions that cause deprivation amblyopia (eg, cataract and eyelid ptosis) or conditions in which the visual pathways are hypoplastic, sometimes referred to as "sensory nystagmus." Nystagmus is seen with optic nerve hypoplasia, macular hypoplasia, aniridia, and albinism. Nystagmus can also occur with normal ocular structures and seemingly normal CNS development, sometimes referred to as "motor nystagmus." In the latter instance, the nystagmus may be blocked in certain positions of gaze, in which case a face turn or torticollis may develop. Latent nystagmus occurs when one eye is occluded. This type of nystagmus occurs in patients with congenital esotropia. An associated amblyopia may be present.

Most nystagmus occurring in childhood is of ocular origin, but CNS disease and, less frequently, inner ear disease are other causes. A CNS cause is likely when the nystagmus is acquired. Patients should be referred to an ophthalmologist for evaluation.

» Clinical Findings

Evaluation for iris transillumination defects caused by albinism should be performed since albinism is a common cause of nystagmus.

Spasmus nutans, in which a rapid, shimmering, disconjugate nystagmus occurs with head bobbing and torticollis. Glioma of the hypothalamus can mimic spasmus nutans. Neuroimaging may be necessary to determine if the cause of the nystagmus is due to a CNS disease. An electroretinogram may be required to rule out retinal pathology as the cause of nystagmus if neuroimaging is normal.

» Differential Diagnosis

Opsoclonus.

» Treatment

Therapy is directed at managing the underlying ocular or CNS disease. An ophthalmologist can optimize vision by correcting significant refractive errors and strabismus. The range of vision varies depending on the cause of the nystagmus. Some patients may benefit from extraocular muscle surgery and contact lenses.

» Prognosis

Most affected individuals have subnormal vision but spasmus nutans usually improves with time.

AMBLYOPIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Amblyopia is a unilateral or bilateral reduction in vision due to strabismus, refractive errors, and/or visual deprivation.

» Amblyopia can occur only during the critical period of visual development in the first decade of life when the visual nervous system is plastic.

» Approximately 3% of the population is amblyopic.

» Pathogenesis

Amblyopia is classified according to its cause. Strabismic amblyopia can occur in the nondominant eye of a strabismic child. Refractive amblyopia can occur in both eyes if significant refractive errors are untreated (ametropic or refractive amblyopia). Another type of refractive amblyopia can occur in the eye with the worse refractive error when imbalance is present between the eyes (anisometropic amblyopia). Deprivation amblyopia occurs when dense cataracts or complete ptosis prevents formation of a formed retinal image. Of the three types of amblyopia, the deprivation form of amblyopia results in the worst vision.

» Prevention

Vision screening and referral to an eye care professional if amblyopia is suspected.

» Clinical Findings

Screening for amblyopia should be a component of periodic well-child examinations. The single best screening technique to discover amblyopia is obtaining visual acuity in each eye. In preverbal children unable to respond to visual acuity assessment, amblyogenic factors are sought, including strabismus, media opacities, unequal Brückner reflexes (pupillary red reflexes), and a family history suggestive of strabismus, amblyopia, or ocular disease occurring in childhood (see section Ophthalmic Examination).

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

The earlier treatment is begun, the better will be the chance of improving visual acuity. Treatment is usually discontinued after age 9 years. Amblyogenic factors such as refractive errors are addressed. Because of the extreme sensitivity of the visual nervous system in infants, congenital cataracts and media opacities must be diagnosed and treated within the first few weeks of life. Visual rehabilitation and amblyopia treatment must then be started to foster visual development.

After eradicating amblyogenic factors, the mainstay of treatment is patching the sound eye, which causes the visual nervous system to process input from the amblyopic eye and in that way permits the development of useful vision. Other treatment modalities include "fogging" the sound eye with cycloplegic drops (atropine), lenses, and filters.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends on the compliance with treatment but usually good.

STRABISMUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Strabismus is misalignment of the eyes.
- Its prevalence in childhood is about 2%–3%.
- Strabismus is categorized by the direction of the deviation (esotropia, exotropia, hypertropia, hypotropia) and its frequency (constant or intermittent).
- Strabismus may cause or be due to amblyopia.

Esotropia (Crossed Eyes)

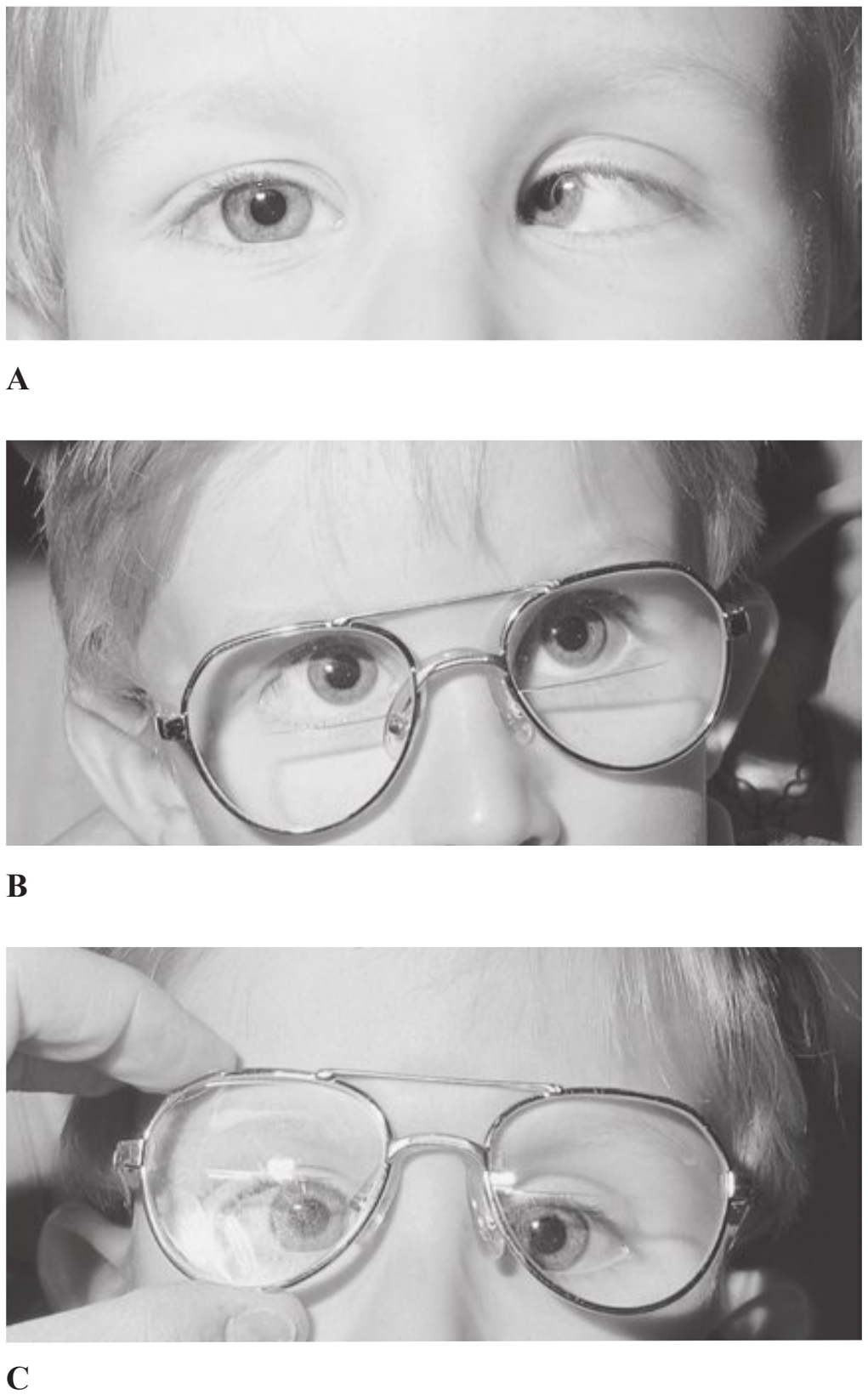
ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pseudoesotropia can result from prominent epicanthal folds that give the appearance of crossed eyes when they are actually straight.
- Esotropia is deviation of the eyes toward the nose and may involve one or both eyes.

» Pathogenesis

Congenital esotropia (infantile esotropia) has its onset in the first year of life in healthy infants. The deviation of the eyes toward the nose is large and obvious. Esotropia beginning in the first year also occurs in premature infants or children with a complicated perinatal history associated with CNS problems such as intracranial hemorrhage and periventricular leukomalacia. The most frequent type of acquired esotropia is the accommodative type (Figure 16–26). Onset is usually between ages 2 and 5 years. The deviation is variable in magnitude and constancy and is often accompanied by amblyopia. One type of accommodative esotropia is associated with a high hyperopic refraction. In another type, the deviation is worse with near than with distant vision. This type of esodeviation is usually associated with lower refractive errors.

Esotropia is associated with certain syndromes. In Möbius syndrome (congenital facial diplegia), a sixth nerve palsy causing esotropia is associated with palsies of the 7th and 12th cranial nerves and limb deformities. Duane syndrome can affect the medial or lateral rectus muscles (or both).



A

B

C

▲**Figure 16–26.** Accommodative esotropia. **A:** Without glasses, esotropic; **B:** with glasses, well aligned at distance; **C:** at near with bifocal correction.

http://obgynebooks.com

It may be an isolated defect or may be associated with a multitude of systemic defects (eg, Goldenhar syndrome). Duane syndrome is often misdiagnosed as a sixth (abducens) nerve palsy. The left eye is involved more commonly, but both eyes can be involved. Girls are affected more frequently. Children with unilateral paretic or restrictive causes of esotropia may develop face turns toward the affected eye to maintain binocularity.

After age 5 years, any esotropia of recent onset should arouse suspicion of CNS disease. Infratentorial masses, hydrocephalus, demyelinating diseases, and idiopathic intracranial hypertension are causes of abducens palsy, which appears as an esotropia, lateral rectus paralysis, and face turn. The face turn is an attempt to maintain binocularity away from the field of action of the paretic muscle. Papilledema is often, but not invariably, present with increased intracranial pressure.

Besides the vulnerability of the abducens nerve to increased intracranial pressure, it is susceptible to infection and inflammation. Otitis media and Gradenigo syndrome (inflammatory disease of the petrous bone) can cause sixth nerve palsy. Less commonly, migraine and diabetes mellitus are considerations in children with sixth nerve palsy.

» Clinical Findings

Observation of the reflection of a penlight on the cornea, the corneal light reflex, is an accurate means of determining if the eyes are straight. If strabismus is present, the corneal light reflex will not be centered in both eyes. Observation of eye movements may reveal restriction of eye movements in certain positions of gaze. Alternate cover testing of the eyes while the child is fixating on a near and/or distant target will reveal refixation movements if the eyes are crossed. Motility, cycloplegic refraction, and a dilated funduscopic examination by an ophthalmologist are necessary to determine the etiology of esotropia. Some children require imaging studies and neurologic consultation.

» Complications

Amblyopia and poor stereoacuity/depth perception.

» Treatment

Surgery is the mainstay of treatment for congenital esotropia. Surgery is typically performed between 6 months and 2 years of age in order to obtain optimal results.

Management of accommodative esotropia includes glasses with or without bifocals, amblyopia treatment, and, in some cases, surgery.

Underlying neurologic disease should be referred to the appropriate specialists for further management.

» Prognosis

Usually good.

Exotropia (Wall-Eyed)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Exotropia is a type of strabismus in which the eyes are divergent/wall-eyed (Figure 16–27).
- Exotropia may be intermittent or constant and involve one or both eyes.

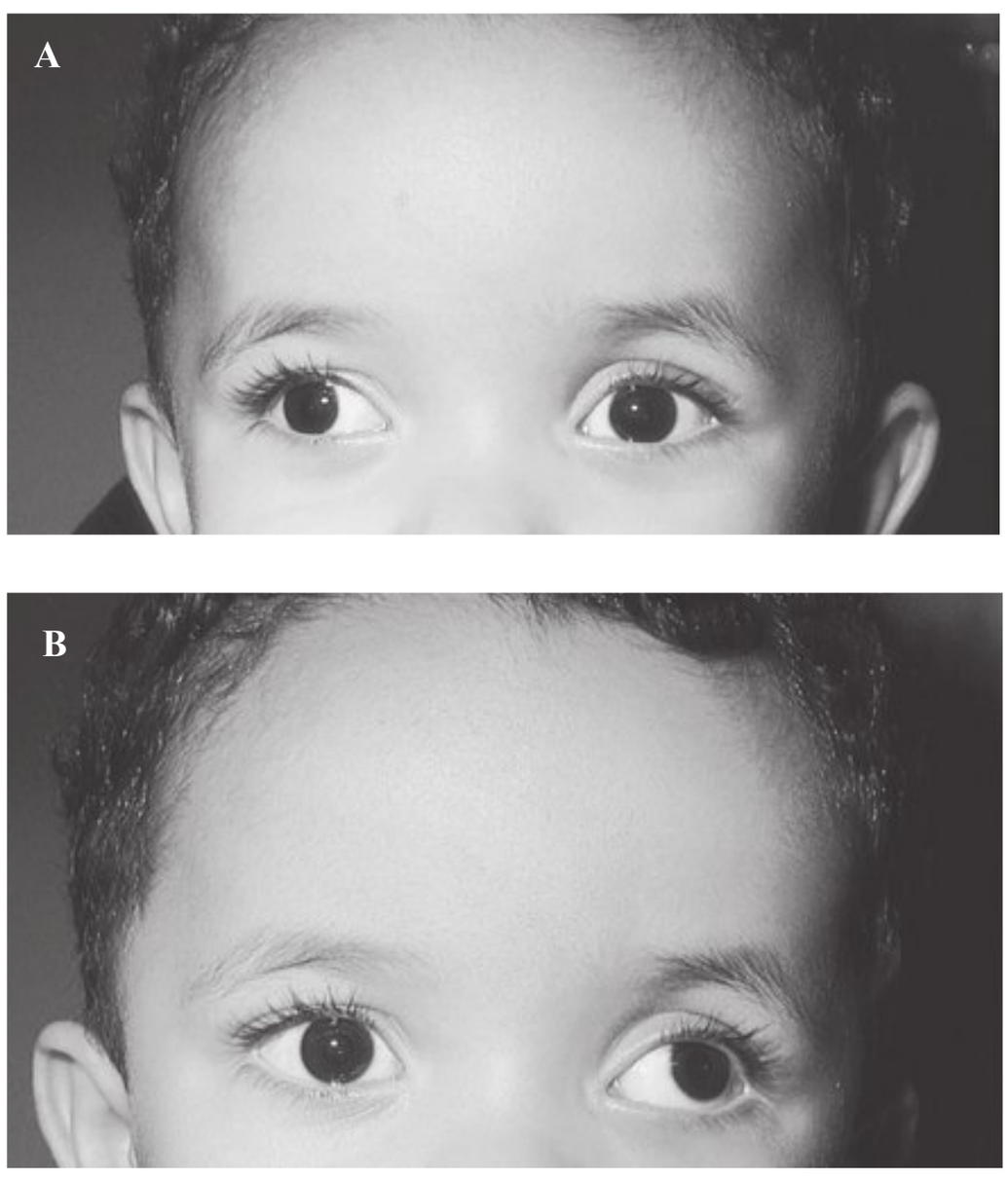
» Clinical Findings

The deviation of the eyes toward the ears most often begins intermittently and occurs after age 2 years (see Figure 16–27). Congenital (infantile) exotropia is extremely rare in an otherwise healthy infant. Early-onset exotropia may occur in infants and children with severe neurologic problems.

Evaluation of the corneal light reflex reveals the penlight's reflection in the deviated eye is displaced nasally. All children with constant, congenital exotropia require CNS neuroimaging. Referral to an ophthalmologist is indicated.

» Complications

Amblyopia and poor stereoacuity/depth perception.



▲**Figure 16–27.** Exotropia. **A:** Fixation with left eye. **B:** Fixation with right eye.

http://obgynebooks.com

» Treatment

Treatment of exotropia is with surgery, orthoptic exercises, patching, and occasionally glasses.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

UNEXPLAINED DECREASED VISION IN INFANTS & CHILDREN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Blindness in infants and children is commonly caused by retinal dystrophies, optic nerve disorders, or cortical visual impairment due to significant CNS disease.

» Pathogenesis

Occult causes of poor vision and blindness in children may be due to hereditary retinal dystrophies such as Leber congenital amaurosis and optic nerve abnormalities, including optic nerve hypoplasia and atrophy.

Cerebral visual impairment, also known as cortical blindness, is manifested as decreased visual attentiveness of varying degree. Cerebral visual impairment can be congenital or acquired. Insults to the optic pathways and higher cortical visual centers are responsible. Asphyxia, trauma, intracranial hemorrhage, and periventricular leukomalacia are some of the causes of cortical visual impairment.

» Clinical Findings

Affected infants will have poor eye contact, fail to fixate and follow a visual target, and be unresponsive to visual threat. Wandering or roving eye movements and nystagmus are common. Eye poking is seen in some infants with low vision.

Referral to an ophthalmologist is indicated to determine the etiology of the low vision. Diagnostic tests such as an electroretinogram and visual evoked response may be required. Imaging studies of the brain, genetics, and neurology consultations may be useful.

» Differential Diagnosis

Delayed visual maturation, vision loss due to an ocular versus neurologic disease.

» Treatment

Low-vision aids enhance remaining vision. Devices used include magnifiers for both distance and near vision, closed-circuit television, and large-print reading materials. Vision rehabilitation specialists and support groups can help teach the affected child and their family how to best use these devices. Clinical trials are underway for treatment of Leber congenital amaurosis with gene therapy.

» Prognosis

Generally poor for vision.

Hufnagel RB, Ahmed ZM, Corrêa ZM, Sisk RA: Gene therapy for Leber congenital amaurosis: advances and future directions. Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol 2012;250(8):1117–1128 [PMID: 22644094].

LEARNING DISABILITIES & DYSLEXIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Learning disabilities and dyslexia result in poor reading comprehension and writing.

» Children often have vague complaints of ocular fatigue, headaches, and difficulty reading.

» Clinical Findings

Evaluation of the child with learning disabilities and dyslexia should include ophthalmologic examination to identify any ocular disorders that could cause or contribute to poor school performance. Most children with learning difficulties have no demonstrable problems on ophthalmic examination.

» Treatment

A multidisciplinary approach is recommended by the AAP, the AAPOS, and the AAO for evaluating and treating children with learning disabilities. There is no scientific evidence to support the use of vision therapy, eye exercises, prisms, colored lenses, or filters to treat learning disabilities or dyslexia.

» Prognosis

Generally good.

Handler SM, Fierson WM, Section on Ophthalmology; Council on Children With Disabilities; American Academy of Ophthalmology; American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus; American Association of Certified Orthoptists: Learning disabilities, dyslexia, and vision. Pediatrics 2011;127(3):e818–e856.

Web Resources

American Academy of Ophthalmology: www.aao.org.
American Association of Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus: www.aapos.org.

http://obgynebooks.com

Oral Medicine & Dentistry

Ulrich Klein, DMD, DDS, MS

17

ISSUES IN PEDIATRIC ORAL HEALTH

Concept of the Dental Home

Analogous to the American Academy of Pediatrics' (AAP) concept of a "medical home," the American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry (AAPD) has promoted the concept of a "dental home," which is established by referring an infant/age one patient to a dentist who is knowledgeable about care for infants and young children (ie, pediatric dentist). The primary goal of a dental home is to assist children and their parents in the quest for optimum oral health care in a family-centered, continuously accessible, and culturally appropriate environment. In partnership with the caregivers, the dentist develops a comprehensive, personalized preventive oral health care program based on an accurate risk assessment for dental disease. Parents are provided with anticipatory guidance and education on age-appropriate oral hygiene techniques and a tooth-friendly diet. Other functions of the dental home include provision of comprehensive routine and emergency dental care, assessment of growth and development, and referral to other dental specialists as needed. Continuity of care is associated with fewer emergency visits and reduced treatment costs. A child is less likely to develop dental anxiety if a number of positive experiences precede a less pleasant appointment.

AAPD: Policy on the Dental Home. Pediatr Dent 2014;36 (special issue):24–25.

Perinatal Factors & Infant Oral Health Care

The perinatal period offers a unique opportunity for oral health counseling from various health care providers aimed at women's oral health as well as future childcare. Mothers may be unaware of the consequences of their own poor oral health or that of their children. Cariogenic bacteria can be transmitted vertically from mother to child by licking a pacifier or sharing eating utensils or horizontally between siblings of similar age, from the father, and from children in day care centers. Colonization of the infant's mouth with Streptococcus mutans (MS) is more likely when maternal salivary MS levels are high. The mother's oral hygiene, snacking habits, and socioeconomic status all have an influence on the infant's colonization with MS. Anticipatory guidance and dental treatment of the expectant mother can significantly reduce the child's risk of acquiring MS. Prenatal dental counseling include education on the importance of regular dental visits and the role of fluoride in maternal and childhood oral health, counseling on appropriate maternal diet, and advice on reduction of MS colonization. Maternal MS levels and the risk of transmission to infants can be reduced if the mother rinses twice daily with chlorhexidine digluconate 0.12% for 2 weeks followed by chewing 100% xylitol gum for 5 minutes 3–5 times/d (total dose of xylitol 6–10 g/d) for several weeks.

Delayed dental development is characteristic of preterm infants and is also seen in infants with global developmental delay. It is important to advise expectant mothers that postnatal environmental tobacco smoke exposure increases susceptibility to childhood caries, an association that is independent of age, family income, geographic region, and frequency of dental visits. The risk of oral anomalies is higher in preterm and low-birth-weight infants than in full-term infants. These anomalies may include a narrow palate caused by traumatic laryngoscopy or prolonged endotracheal intubation, hypoplasia of the enamel of primary dentition, and crown dilaceration (an angulation, or a sharp bend or curve, in the root or crown of a formed tooth) of the permanent maxillary incisors. The role of palatal protection plates to prevent palatal "grooving" is unclear.

Infant oral health care is the foundation on which preventive dental care is built. Ideally, this begins before caries develops so preventive measures can be implemented. The primary goals for an infant oral health program are: (1) to

http://obgynebooks.com

establish with parents the goals of oral health; (2) to inform parents of their role in reaching these goals; (3) to motivate parents to learn and practice good preventive dental care; and (4) to initiate a long-term dental care relationship with parents. These goals can be achieved through anticipatory parental guidance (eg, teething, oral hygiene, diet, fluoride, injury prevention, nonnutritive sucking habits) and regular dental health supervision. This approach advances dental care beyond monitoring for caries toward true health promotion. Because pediatricians encounter new mothers and infants earlier than dentists, it is essential that they are aware of the infectious pathophysiology and risk factors for early childhood caries (ECC).

Pediatricians should incorporate caries-risk assessment and anticipatory guidance about oral health into in their routine practice. Caries-risk assessment estimates the likelihood of developing carious lesions based on biological and protective factors as well as clinical findings. Risk indicators for the age group 0–3 years old that directly or indirectly influence development of dental caries are listed in the caries-risk assessment form for physicians and other nondental health care providers (Table 17–1). By 6 months of age, every child should have a caries-risk assessment performed by a pediatric health care provider. The latter should refer children with special health care needs as early as 6 months of age and healthy infants no later than 6 months after the first tooth erupts or 12 months of age (whichever comes first) to a pediatric dentist.

The ultimate purpose of this assessment is to develop a caries management protocol. Based on a child's risk category and extent of parental engagement, interventions include diagnostics (regular recalls and determination of MS levels in saliva), optimization of the protective factors listed above, dietary counseling, and restorative measures as needed.

AAPD: Guideline on Caries-risk Assessment and Management for Infants, Children, and Adolescents. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):132-139.
AAPD: Guideline on Infant Oral Health Care. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):146-150.
AAPD: Guideline on Perinatal Oral Health Care. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):140-145.

DENTAL CARIES

Dental caries is the most common chronic disease of childhood and the most prevalent unmet health need of US children and is largely a disease of poverty: children and adolescents in low-income families account for almost 80% of patients with tooth decay.

» Pathogenesis

Development of caries requires the interaction of four factors: (1) a host (tooth in the oral environment); (2) a suitable dietary substrate (fermentable carbohydrates); (3) cariogenic microorganisms that adhere to the tooth; and

Table 17–1. Caries-risk-assessment form for 0-3-year-olds (for physicians and other nondental health care providers).

Factors	High Risk	Low Risk
Biological		
Mother/primary caregiver has active cavities	Yes	
Parent/caregiver has low socioeconomic status	Yes	
Child has >3 between meal sugar-containing snacks or beverages per day	Yes	
Child is put to bed with a bottle containing natural or added sugar	Yes	
Child has special health care needs	Yes	
Child is a recent immigrant	Yes	
Protective		
Child receives optimally-fluoridated drinking water or fluoride supplements		Yes
Child has teeth brushed daily with fluoridated toothpaste		Yes
Child receives topical fluoride from health professional		Yes
Child has dental home/regular dental care		Yes
Clinical Findings		
Child has white spot lesions or enamel defects	Yes	
Child has visible cavities or fillings	Yes	
Child has plaque on teeth	Yes	

Circling those conditions that apply to a specific patient helps the health care worker and parent understand the factors that contribute to or protect from caries. Risk assessment categorization of low or high is based on preponderance of factors for the individual. However, clinical judgment may justify the use of one factor (eg, frequent exposure to sugar containing snacks or beverages, visible cavities) in determining overall risk.

Overall assessment of the child's dental caries risk: High ☐ Low ☐

http://obgynebooks.com

(4) time, measured as the frequency of exposure to fermentable carbohydrates and the duration of acid exposure. The main organisms implicated in the initiation of caries are Streptococcus mutans (MS) and Streptococcus sobrinus. Lactobacillus acidophilus and Lactobacillus casei are linked to the progression of caries. MS organisms are most commonly passed vertically from mother to child. A "window of infectivity" between ages 19 and 33 months has been described, but colonization can occur as early as 3 months of age. Earlier colonization increases the risk of caries. Dental plaque is an adherent biofilm on the tooth surface that harbors acidogenic bacteria in close proximity to the enamel. As bacteria metabolize sucrose, they produce lactic acid that solubilizes calcium phosphate in tooth enamel and dentin. Demineralization of the dental enamel occurs below pH 5.5 and is the first step in cariogenesis. The flow rate of saliva and its buffering capacity are important modifiers of demineralization. Demineralization of enamel and dentin can be halted or even reversed by redeposition of calcium, phosphate, and fluoride from saliva. If not halted, the carious process penetrates the enamel, advancing through the dentin toward the pulp of the tooth. In response, blood vessels in the pulp dilate and inflammatory cells begin to infiltrate (pulpitis). If the carious lesion is untreated, pulp exposure will occur, triggering invasion of more inflammatory cells and the eventual formation of a small pulp abscess. If this abscess can drain into the oral cavity, the apical tooth tissue may remain vital. However, if the radical pulp becomes necrotic, a periapical abscess develops (Figure 17–1). Although this process may be asymptomatic, it usually causes severe pain, fever, and swelling.

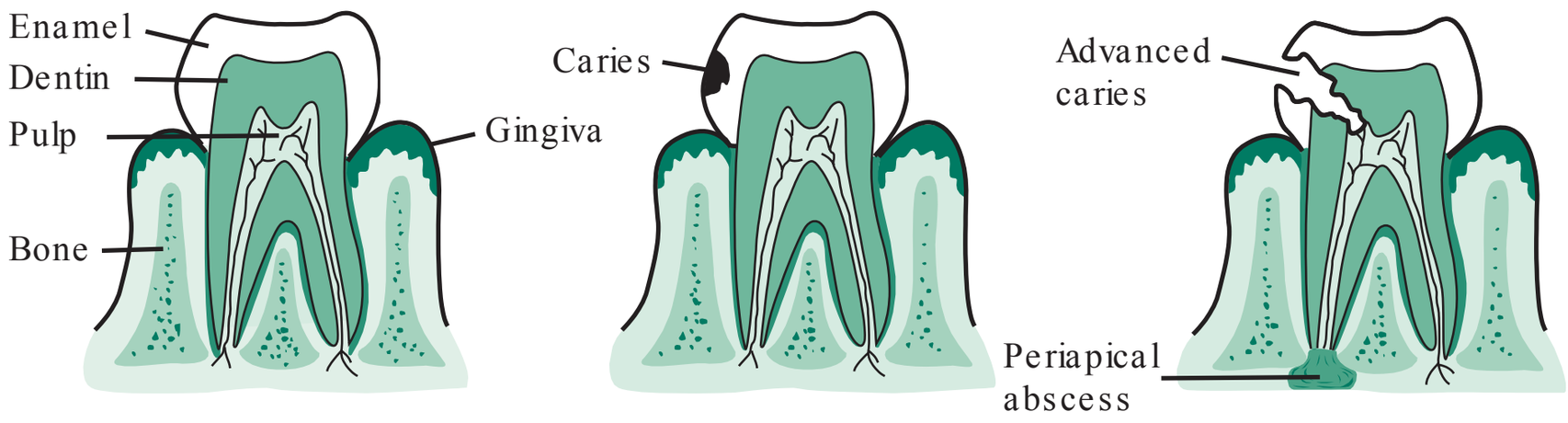
» Clinical Findings & Treatment

The diagnosis of caries is usually made by visual and tactile oral examination. Radiographs are used to visualize caries on the surfaces between teeth. The initial defect observed on enamel beneath the dental plaque is the so-called "white-spot lesion," a white, chalky, decalcified area along the gingival margin or on approximated tooth surfaces. Frank carious lesions are light- to dark-brown spots or cavities of varying size on the tooth. A light shade of brown indicates rampant decay, while arrested caries is almost black in color. In the early stages of decay, the tooth may be sensitive to temperature changes or sweets. Removing the carious tooth structure and filling the early defect with a restorative material can repair the tooth. As decay progresses deeper into the pulp, inflammation and pain increase. Eventually, the entire pulp becomes necrotic, and a choice must be made between root canal therapy (pulpectomy) or removal of the tooth. In the presence of cellulitis or facial space abscess, extraction and antibiotic therapy are the treatments of choice.

Cavitation is the late phase of disease. Filling cavities does not address the underlying pathologic process responsible for tooth decay. Unlike other infections, dental caries cannot be treated by a course of antibiotics. However, a daily application of chlorhexidine gluconate rinse 0.12% for 2 weeks can significantly reduce the number of cariogenic bacteria in the mouth and delay recolonization for 3–6 weeks. Such treatment is recommended at 3-month intervals for patients with high levels of bacteria. Improvement in risk of dental caries can only be achieved by a sustained reduction in the number of cariogenic oral bacteria and by the creation of a favorable oral environment. Additionally, all active cavities must be restored to eliminate sources of reinfection. A patient and his/her family must be encouraged to change diet and habits of oral hygiene in an effort to prevent further infection. Motivational interviewing has been shown to be more successful in setting these self-management goals than simple or stern recommendations. Regular dental visits, the periodicity of which should be determined by the risk level for developing carious lesions, must be maintained to monitor and reinforce these goals. The concept of prevention through timely and regular parent education, early diagnosis, and prompt intervention offers greater efficiency, better health outcomes, and lower costs than repeated restoration of diseased teeth.

» Caries Prevention

Prevention of dental caries necessitates restoring the delicate balance between pathologic and protective factors. Pathologic factors include cariogenic bacteria and fermentable carbohydrates. Protective factors include salivary flow and



▲**Figure 17–1.** Tooth anatomy and progression of caries.

http://obgynebooks.com

fluoride in food, beverages, drinking water, and oral care products. Saliva provides calcium, phosphate, proteins, and antibacterial substances; it also buffers acid produced by bacteria in plaque.

A. Changes in Lifestyle

Oral hygiene practices should start soon after birth. The infant's gums should be cleaned daily using a moist, soft cloth. Once the teeth erupt, oral hygiene must be practiced in earnest, particularly in high-risk children. A "smear layer" of fluoridated toothpaste should be used on a small, soft toothbrush designed for infants. Because of a lack of manual dexterity in children younger than 8 years of age, parents need to brush for them twice daily and assist with flossing. Another important parental task is reducing the amount of substrate available to the bacteria by limiting the consumption of sugar-containing infant formulas, beverages, and snacks. Each such exposure produces an acidic oral environment for up to 30 minutes. The primary care physician and his/her team play an invaluable role in disseminating this information during early well-baby visits.

B. Fluorides

Fluorides are safe and effective in caries prevention through three topical mechanisms of action: inhibition of bacterial metabolism by interfering with enzyme activity; inhibition of demineralization; and enhancing remineralization. Although more than half of the US population has access to fluoridated community water, an increasing number of families prefer processed water with unknown fluoride content. Fluorides affect the dentin and enamel of both erupted and unerupted teeth. Systemic effects are achieved by oral ingestion from sources such as fluoridated drinking water or fluoride supplements. Fluoridated toothpaste and mouth rinses deliver topical benefits. The ADA recommends dietary fluoride supplementation only for children at high caries risk, but a child's true exposure to all sources of fluoride must be thoroughly evaluated before supplements are prescribed to avoid the mottled enamel (dental fluorosis) produced by excessive fluoride intake. Because children younger than 6 years of age cannot expectorate reliably, parents must monitor the use of fluoridated toothpaste, ensuring that only a "smear layer" (< age 3) or "pea-sized" amount (3–6 years of age) of the product is used at each brushing. Several factors are associated with a high risk for caries—orthodontic appliances, decreased salivary function, gastroesophageal reflux disease, cariogenic diet, physical inability to properly clean the teeth, mother or siblings with caries, and personal history of caries. Children with these risk factors should be considered for additional topical fluoride therapy to supplement oral hygiene measures.

Infants who consume concentrated infant formulas as the main source of nutrition may incur an increased risk for enamel fluorosis in the permanent dentition if those fluoride-containing formulas are reconstituted with optimally fluoridated drinking water.

C. Other Adjunctive Measures

Consumption of beverages sweetened with artificial sweeteners instead of sugar can help reduce the intake of fermentable carbohydrates. While chewing gum helps to clean food debris from teeth and increases salivary flow, these beneficial effects are lost when sugar-containing gum is used. The AAP considers chewing gum a choking risk in smaller children. A significant reduction of salivary MS by the chewing xylitol containing gum has been described, but a dose of at least 5–10 g/d for adults and 5–7.5 g/d for toddlers aged 6–36 months with exposure times lasting several minutes three times daily are required to produce this effect. However, unclear labeling of the ingredients in xylitol-containing products makes the exact determination of the dose difficult and the high cost of foods containing xylitol limits its widespread use.

Early Childhood Caries

Formerly termed "baby bottle tooth decay" or "nursing bottle caries," early childhood caries (ECC) is a particularly virulent and rapidly progressive form of caries that begins on the smooth surfaces of the teeth soon after eruption. ECC typically involves the maxillary incisors but any other teeth may be affected. Lack of adequate preventive care as well as poor feeding habits, such as the frequent consumption of liquids containing fermentable carbohydrates from a nursing bottle, frequent sipping from a no-spill sippy cup, taking a bottle to bed, and breast-feeding in combination with other carbohydrates, place children at high risk for ECC. It is uncertain whether ad libitum breast-feeding increases the risk for developing caries.

ECC is defined as one or more decayed (d), missing (m), or filled (f) tooth surfaces (s) in any primary tooth in a child younger than 71 months of age. Any sign of smooth-surface caries in a child < 3 years is termed severe ECC (S-ECC). From 3 to 5 years, one or more decayed, missing, or filled smooth surfaces in maxillary front teeth or a total DMFS score of 4 or higher must be present to make a diagnosis of S-ECC. By age 5 years, a DMFS score of 6 or higher must be present to constitute S-ECC. Children with S-ECC are at higher risk for new carious lesions, more frequent hospitalizations, and emergency department visits. They are absent more often from school, may have below-normal height and weight gain, and have a diminished oral health-related quality of life. Although S-ECC can affect all children, it is 32 times more likely in children who consume sugary foods and whose mothers are of low socioeconomic status and education level.

http://obgynebooks.com

Parents should be counseled to eliminate saliva-sharing activities and not to put infants to sleep with a bottle containing fermentable carbohydrates. After eruption of the first tooth, ad libitum breast-feeding should be discontinued and regular oral hygiene measures such as twice-daily use of fluoridated toothpaste, both in optimally fluoridated and fluoride-deficient communities, should be implemented. Infants should be weaned from the bottle between 12 and 18 months of age and encouraged to drink from an uncovered cup mainly as part of a snack or meal. Frequent consumption of cariogenic liquids from a bottle or no-spill training cup should be avoided. The AAP recommends limiting juice to 4–6 oz/day for children 1–6 years of age.

Preventive strategies focused on the pregnant woman should start in the prenatal and perinatal periods. Maternal malnutrition during the third trimester, low birth weight, and systemic illness in the neonatal period can lead to enamel hypoplasia, which makes teeth more susceptible to caries. Later, motivational interviewing may help parents to reduce deleterious feeding habits and to adopt lifestyle changes within their family that address the multifactorial etiologies of early childhood caries.

AAPD: Policy on Early Childhood Caries (ECC): Classifications, Consequences, and Preventive Strategies. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):50–52.

AAPD: Policy on Early Childhood Caries (ECC): Unique Challenges and Treatment Options. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):53–55.

Salone LR, et al: Breastfeeding: an overview of oral and general health benefits. J Am Dent Assoc 2013 Feb;144(2):143–151 [PMID: 23372130].

Preventive Dental Treatment (Fluoride Varnish) by Physicians for High-Risk Populations

Since parents are more likely to take their very young child to a physician for well-child visits than to a dentist for oral health counseling, some states have established formal programs to entice medical offices to provide preventive dental services. These include dental screening, caries risk assessment, parent counseling about their child's oral health, and referrals to dentists as needed. Applications of fluoride varnish during these visits by physicians have been shown to be successful in reducing dental caries among targeted vulnerable children (ICD-9-CM Diagnosis Code V07.31: Need for Prophylactic Fluoride Administration). The sticky nature of the varnish's resin base allows for extended contact time of its fluoride content with the tooth surface. Many studies have demonstrated their safety and efficacy and described a significant reduction in the decay rate of smooth surfaces as well as pits and fissures. Multiple applications at the time of tooth emergence seemed to be most beneficial.

The varnish in single-dose packages (0.3–0.5 mL) should be stirred vigorously before application and the contents of larger tubes (5 mL) massaged to re-dissolve any precipitated fluoride. The former are preferable because consistent availability of fluoride cannot be guaranteed with multi-dose packages. The average amount of varnish needed depends on the number of teeth present and ranges from 0.1 mL for infants to 0.3 mL for preschool children. Teeth should be dried with gauze before application of the varnish with a small brush. It will set quickly to a dull yellow film upon contact with saliva. Caregivers should be instructed not to brush or floss and to give their child only soft foods until the next morning in order to provide the fluoride enough time for absorption into enamel.

Achembong LN, Kranz AM, Rozier RG: Office-based preventive dental program and statewide trends in dental caries. Pediatrics 2014 Apr;133(4):e827–e834 [PMID: 24685954].

Miller EK, Vann WF Jr: The use of fluoride varnish in children: a critical review with treatment recommendations. J Clin Pediatr Dent 2008;32(4):259–264 [PMID: 18767454].

ORAL EXAMINATION OF THE NEWBORN & INFANT

The sagittal and vertical maxilla-mandibular relationships are different at birth. An anterior open bite is considered physiologic before the onset of tooth eruption. The mouth is more triangularly shaped and its oral cavity is small and filled by the tongue due to a small and slightly retrognathic lower jaw. This pseudo micrognathia is due to ventral positioning of the fetus and will generally correct after birth.

Sucking Pads

Frequent breast-feeding can lead in some babies to formation of a lip callus ("sucking or suckling pad") at the midline of the upper lip. Since it does not bother the mother or the child, it should not be removed. It will generally go away within the baby's first year.

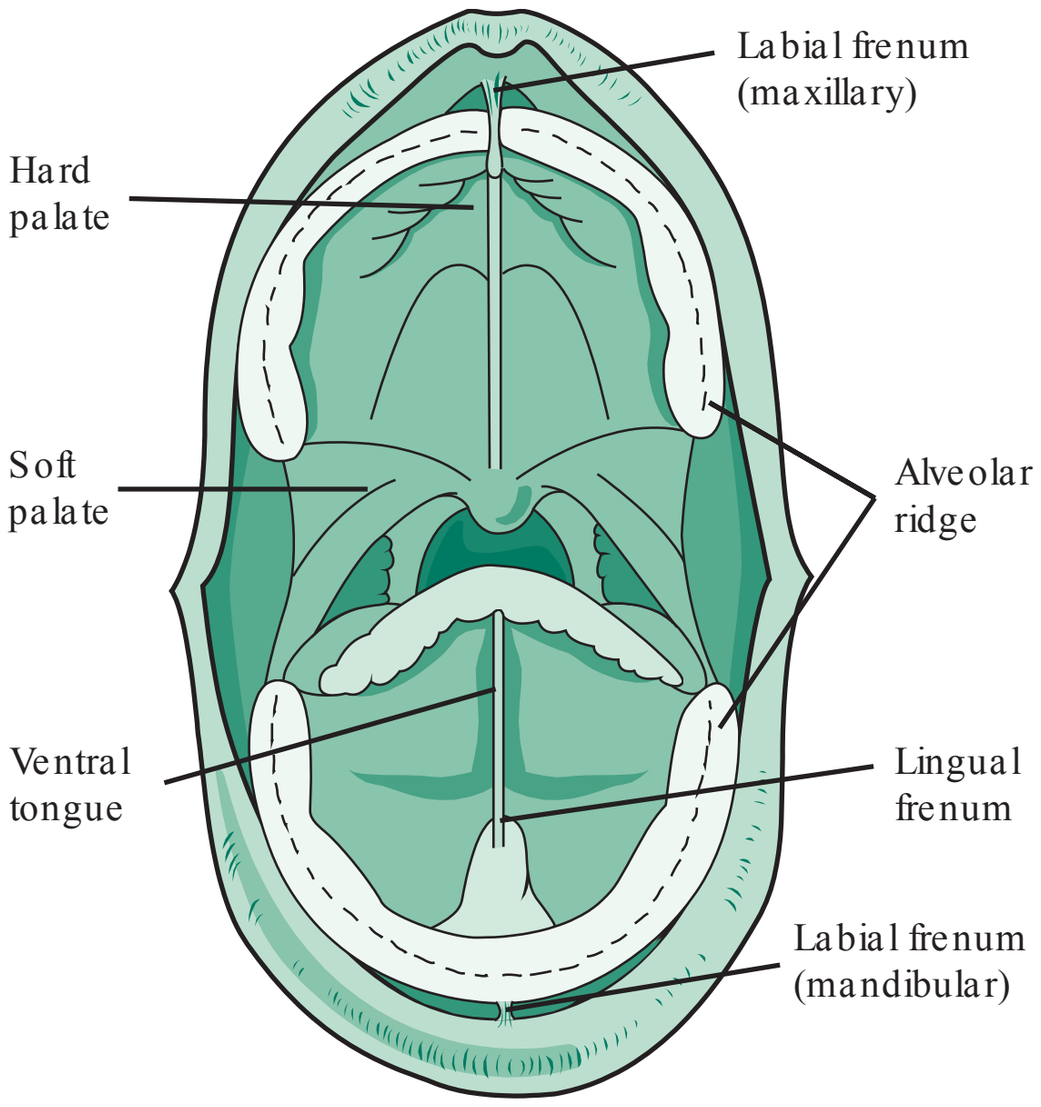
Within the cheek of newborns wedged between masseter and buccinator and related to the facial nerve and parotid duct is a buccal fat pad that is completely enclosed within a distinctive capsule. These "suckling pads" are supposed to strengthen and support the cheek during suckling.

The mouth of the normal newborn is lined with an intact, smooth, moist, shiny mucosa (Figure 17–2). The alveolar ridges are continuous and relatively smooth. Within the alveolar bone are numerous tooth buds, which at birth are mostly primary teeth.

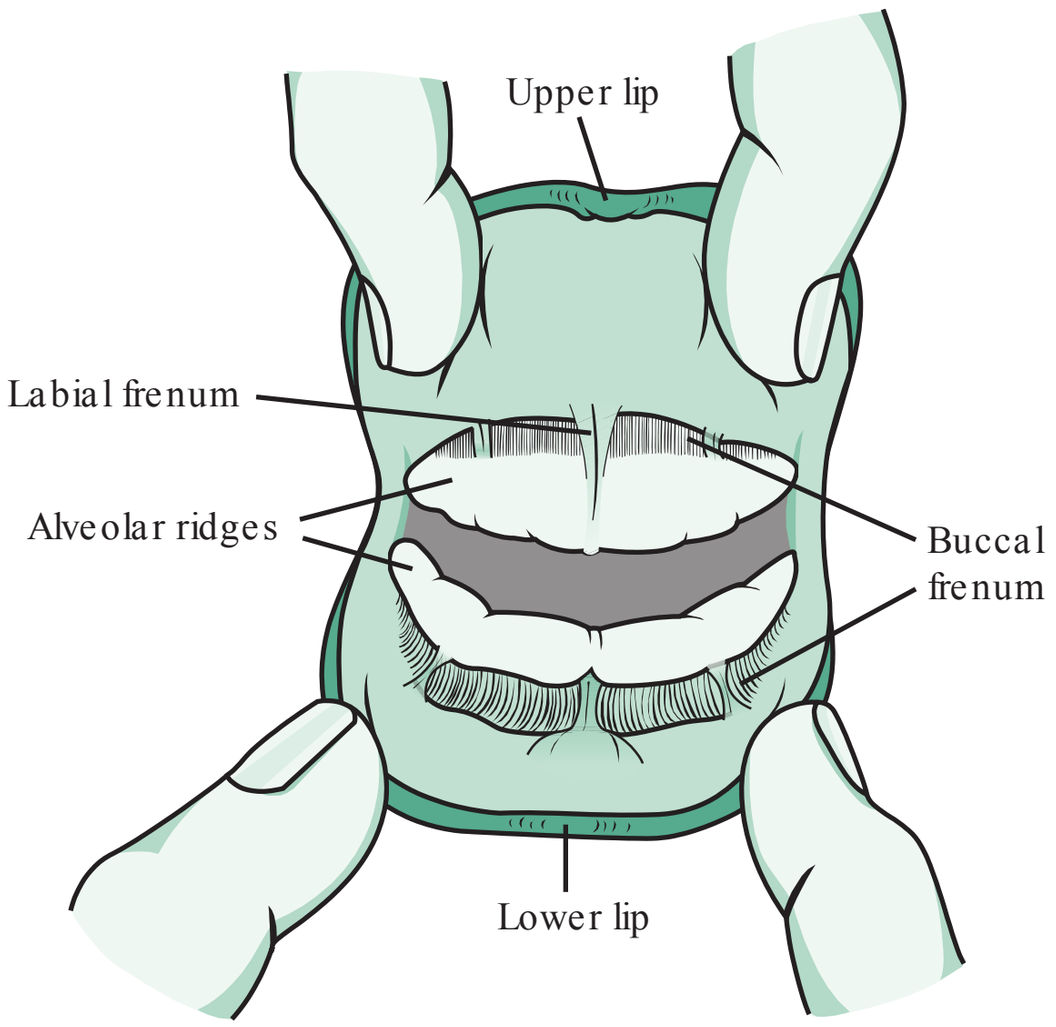
Teeth

Hard tissue formation of primary teeth begins at approximately 4 months' gestation. At birth, all 20 primary teeth are

http://obgynebooks.com



▲**Figure 17–2.** Normal anatomy of the newborn mouth.



▲**Figure 17–3.** The frena.

calcified to various degrees and there is a trace of enamel of the first permanent molars.

The primary teeth usually begin to erupt at around 7 months of age. On rare occasions (1:3,000), natal teeth erupt in utero or neonatal teeth within the first month. These are most commonly (85%) primary mandibular incisors. A radiograph should be taken to determine whether they are regular of supernumerary teeth (10%). Although the preferred approach is to leave the tooth in place, supernumerary and hypermobile immature primary teeth should be extracted. On occasion, such teeth must be removed if their sharp incisal edge causes laceration of the tongue (Riga-Fede disease). If such teeth cause difficulties with breast-feeding, pumping and bottling the milk is initially recommended while the infant is conditioned not to "bite" during suckling.

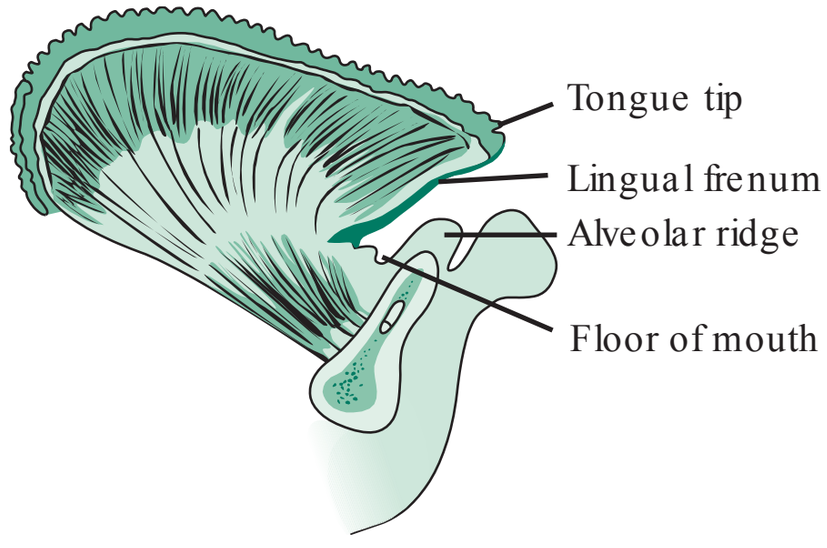
Frena

Noticeable but small maxillary and mandibular labial frena should be present (Figure 17–3). The "persisting tectolabial frenum" that is observed in 25% of all children tends to diminish in size with normal development. Its physiological purpose is to provide greater support to the upper lip during breast-feeding. Several small accessory frena may also be present farther posteriorly. In oro-facial-digital syndrome, there are multiple thick tightly bound frena. Decisions about surgical correction should be based on the ability to maintain the child's gingival health and are best left until the late preteen years.

The tongue is connected to the floor of the mouth by the lingual frenum (Figures 17–3 and 17–4). In ankyloglossia, the attachment is tight, closer to the tip of the tongue or high up on the alveolar ridge (Figure 17–5) and may restrict movement. Earlier intervention is better than later, but there is usually no urgency for surgery in the neonatal period unless the child has difficulty latching on properly to the mother's nipple or otherwise causes her pain during nursing. While frenotomy of the lingual frenum can be carried out as early as at 10 days of age to provide, in most cases, real, immediate, and sustained improvement in breast-feeding, cutting of the maxillary frenum is rarely indicated.

Cleft Lip & Palate

The palate of the newborn should be intact and continuous from the alveolar ridge anteriorly to the uvula (see Figure 17–2).



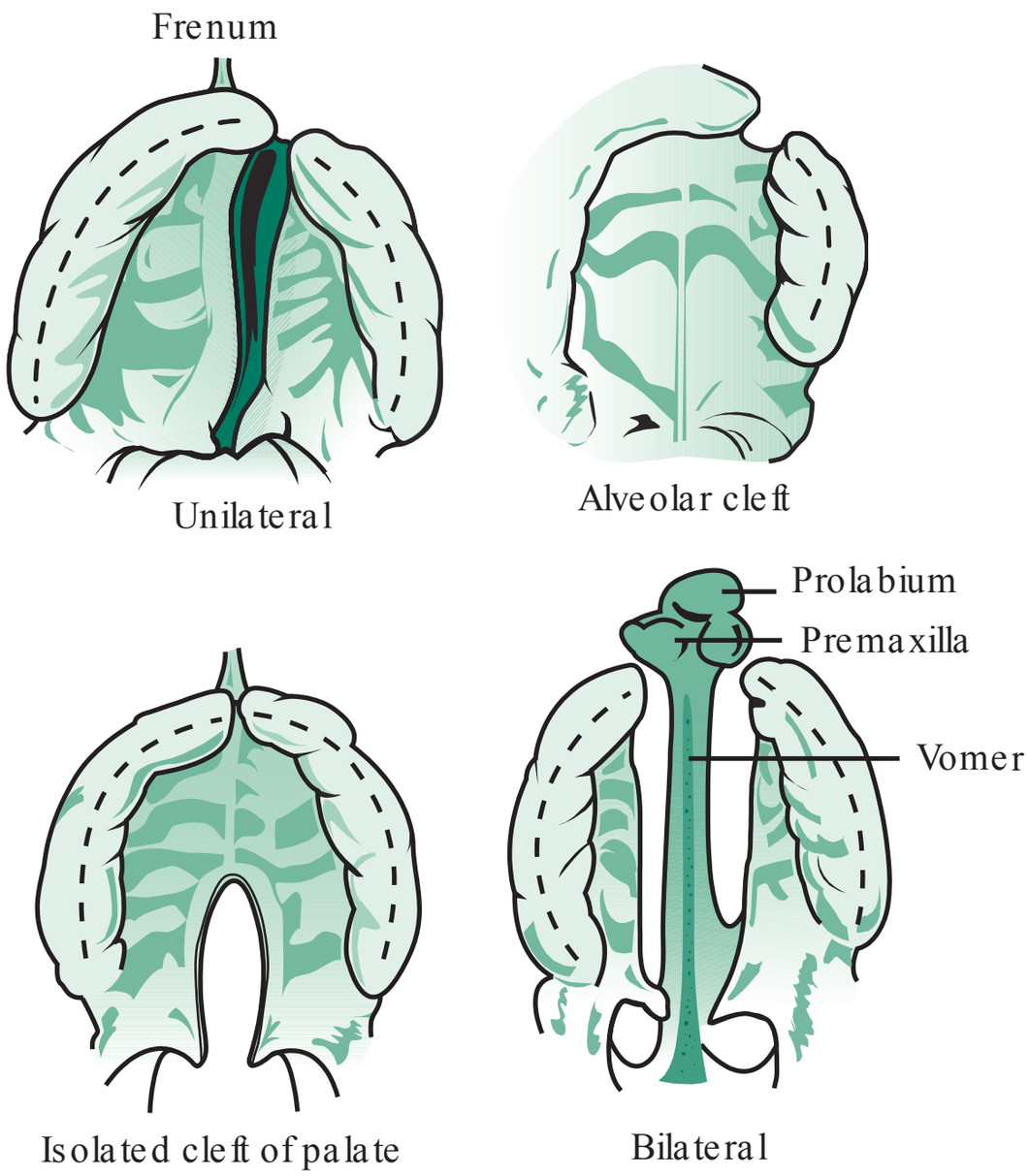
▲**Figure 17–4.** Normal position of lingual frenum.

http://obgynebooks.com

A B

▲**Figure 17–5.** Ankyloglossia (tongue-tie) in a 6-wk-old, before (A) and after (B) the release surgery.

Cleft lip and palate are common defects with an incidence of 0.28–3.74 in 1000 live births globally. Incidence varies widely among races. The cleft of the palate can be unilateral or bilateral (Figure 17–6) and involve the alveolar ridge only, or the ridge and entire palate. Cleft palate may also present as an isolated submucous cleft or bifid uvula. Although clefts present superficially as a cosmetic problem, they cause complex functional problems such as oro-antral communication and disruption of the maxillary alveolar ridge with significant associated dental problems, such as irregularities in tooth numbers, delayed eruption, and malocclusion. They disrupt the arrangement of the perioral and the soft palate muscles by interrupting their continuity across the midline. As a result, feeding, swallowing, speech, and ventilation of the middle ear are adversely affected.



▲**Figure 17–6.** Types of clefts.

Children with cleft lip and palate should be referred as soon as possible to a multidisciplinary cleft palate team for comprehensive assessment of their medical status, feeding problems, general development, dental development, hearing, facial esthetics, and overall functioning. The dental needs of children with cleft palate are extensive, and treatment may begin immediately after birth with fabrication of a feeding obturator. Naso-alveolar molding should be performed to lengthen the columella and to guide the protruding greater segment (in unilateral clefts) or the premaxilla (in bilateral clefts) back into the oral cavity, thus making surgical lip closure easier when it is performed, usually around 10 weeks of age. Palate closure and approximation of the soft palate muscles to restore their proper function and to facilitate acquisition of normal speech without nasality follows between 12 and 18 months of age. The associated scar formation causes dentofacial growth disturbances. Orthodontic treatment aims to address the resulting maxillary sagittal and transverse growth deficits as well as the frequent irregularities in tooth position. Between 8 and 10 years of age, an alveolar bone graft is indicated to add bony support to the teeth adjacent to the cleft and to facilitate eruption of the lateral incisor and canine on the cleft side. In some patients, orthognathic surgery to reposition the maxilla anteriorly and mandible posteriorly is needed in late adolescence after cessation of growth to complete their successful rehabilitation.

Other Soft Tissue Variations

Bohn nodules, remnants of mucous gland tissue, are 1–2 mm round, smooth, white or grayish lesions on the buccal and lingual aspects of the alveolar ridges. Epstein pearls occur on the midpalatine raphe and are remnants of epithelial tissue trapped along the raphe during fetal growth. Both are benign, require no treatment, and usually disappear a few weeks after birth.

Some newborns may have small intraoral lymphangiomas on the alveolar ridge or the floor of the mouth. A dentist familiar with neonates should evaluate these and any other soft tissue variations that are more noticeable or larger than those just described.

ERUPTION OF THE TEETH

Normal Eruption

Primary teeth generally begin to erupt at about 7 months of age, but a gestational age of less than 37 weeks or a birth weight less than 2500 g increases the mean eruption times by 1 month. The mandibular incisors usually erupt before the maxillary incisors. The first teeth may appear as early as 3–4 months or as late as 12–16 months of age. Many symptoms are ascribed to teething, but any association with fever, upper respiratory infection, or systemic illness is probably coincidental rather than related to the eruption process.

http://obgynebooks.com

Attributing fever to teething without thorough diagnostic evaluation for other sources has resulted in missing serious organic disease.

Common treatment for teething pain is the application of over the counter teething gels or liquids. In children less than 2 years of age, their main ingredient, benzocaine, can cause the rare, but serious condition of methemoglobinemia. While "natural" benzocaine-free formulations are available, systemic analgesics such as acetaminophen or ibuprofen are safer and more effective. Chewing on a teething object can be beneficial, if only for distraction purposes.

Occasionally, swelling of the alveolar mucosa overlying an erupting tooth can be seen. This usually asymptomatic condition appears as localized red to purple, round, raised, and smooth lesion. Treatment is rarely needed as these eruption cysts/hematomas resolve with tooth eruption.

Delayed Eruption

Premature loss of a primary tooth can either delay or accelerate eruption of the underlying permanent tooth. Early eruption occurs when the primary tooth is removed within 6–9 months of its normal exfoliation, but loss of the primary tooth more than 1 year before its expected exfoliation delays eruption of its successor. The loss of a primary tooth often causes adjacent teeth to tip or drift into the space and lead to space loss for the underlying permanent tooth. Placement of a space maintainer can prevent this.

Other local factors delaying or preventing tooth eruption include supernumerary teeth, cysts, tumors, overretained or ankylosed primary teeth, and tooth impaction. A generalized delay in eruption may be associated with global developmental delays, endocrinopathies, or other systemic conditions.

Ectopic Eruption

Insufficient room in the dental arch may cause permanent teeth to erupt ectopically and result in a usually painless root resorption in the adjacent primary tooth. This phenomenon is more common in the maxilla, with ectopic eruption of the maxillary first permanent molar being the most frequent. Occasionally, mandibular incisors erupt lingually and lead to over-retention of the primary predecessor. Parental concerns about the resulting "double row of teeth" may be the reason for the child's first dental visit. If the primary tooth is still firmly in place, the dentist should remove it to allow its successor drift into proper position.

Impaction

Impaction occurs when a permanent tooth is prevented from erupting. Although crowding is the most frequent reason, an over-retained primary or supernumerary tooth is another cause. The teeth most often affected in the developing dentition are the maxillary canines. Generally, they are brought into correct alignment through surgical exposure and orthodontic treatment.

Variations in Tooth Number

Tooth agenesis is rare in the primary dentition, but occurs with an incidence of 5:100 in the permanent dentition. The most frequently missing teeth are the third molars followed by the maxillary lateral incisors and mandibular second premolars. Oligodontia, a condition in which only a few teeth develop, occurs in patients with ectodermal dysplasias. Tooth agenesis is likely caused by several independent defective genes, which can act alone or in combination with other genes. It can occur in isolated cases, but often occurs in combination with cleft lip/cleft palate or as part of the phenotype of over 200 syndromes.

Occasionally, supernumerary teeth are present, most typically in the maxillary incisor area. These mostly small and peg-shaped mesiodentes are typically located in the maxillary midline. If they hinder eruption of adjacent permanent incisors, their timely removal is recommended.

Dean JA, Avery DR, McDonald RE: McDonald and Avery's Dentistry for the Child and Adolescent. 9th ed. 2011. Maryland Heights, MO; Mosby Elsevier.

PERIODONTAL DISEASE

Periodontal disease involves a tooth's supporting structures: bone, gingiva, and periodontal ligaments (Figure 17–7). It begins as inflammation of the gingival tissue adjacent to a tooth. Bacterial accumulation in the gingival sulcus causes irritation and inflammation. This initial phase, called dental plaque-induced disease, is found almost universally in children and adolescents. Systemic conditions, alterations in hormone levels (insulin, gonadotropin), certain medications, and malnutrition can intensify the inflammatory response to plaque. Generally, this condition responds well to removal of bacterial deposits and improved oral hygiene.

Periodontitis is characterized by loss of attachment and destruction of bone. Patients with localized aggressive periodontitis typically have severe alveolar bone loss around

▲**Figure 17–7.** Periodontal disease.

http://obgynebooks.com

permanent first molars and incisors, whereas the generalized form involves other teeth as well. The overall prevalence is 0.2% in Caucasians, but higher (2.5%) in African Americans, and tends to run in families. Functional defects, such as defects in neutrophil chemotaxis, phagocytosis, and antibacterial activity increase the risk of periodontitis. Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans in combination with Bacteroides-like species are implicated in this disease. Treatment consists of combined surgical and nonsurgical root debridement plus antibiotic therapy.

Periodontitis as a manifestation of systemic disease can be associated with hematological (acquired neutropenia, leukemias) or genetic disorders, such as Down-, Papillon-Lefèvre-, Chediak-Higashi-, hypophosphatasia-, and leukocyte adhesion deficiency syndromes. The incidence of necrotizing periodontal diseases is lower (1%) in North America than in developing countries (2%–5%). They are characterized by interproximal ulceration and necrosis of the dental papillae, rapid onset of dental pain, and often fever. Predisposing factors include viral infections, malnutrition, emotional stress, and systemic disease. The condition usually responds well to mechanical debridement, improved oral hygiene, and metronidazole and penicillin for febrile patients.

AAPD: Periodontal Diseases of Children and Adolescents. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):352–360.

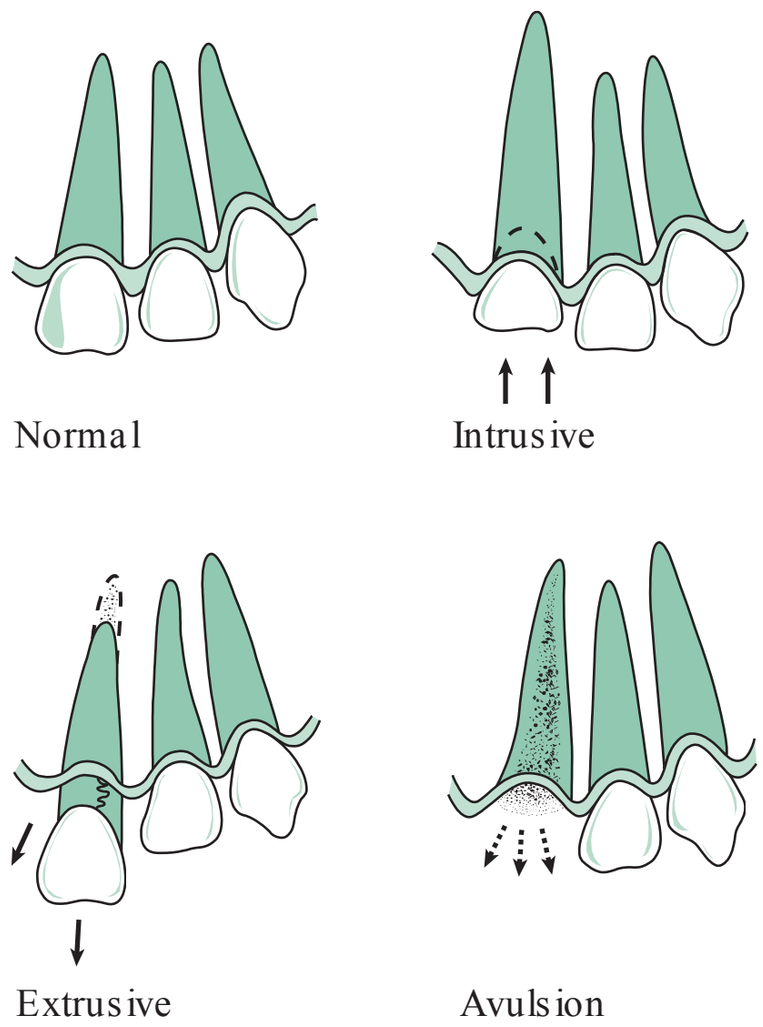
DENTAL EMERGENCIES

Orofacial Trauma

Orofacial trauma often consists only of abrasions or lacerations of the lips, gingiva, tongue, or oral mucosa (including the frena), without damage to the teeth. Lacerations should be cleansed, inspected for foreign bodies, and sutured if necessary. Occasionally, radiographs of the tongue, lips, or cheeks are needed to detect tooth fragments or other foreign bodies. All patients with facial trauma should be evaluated for jaw fractures. Blows to the chin are among the most common childhood orofacial traumas. They are also a leading cause of condylar fracture in the pediatric population. Condylar fracture should be suspected if pain or deviation occurs when the mouth is opened.

Tooth-related trauma affects any or all of the dental hard tissues and the pulp, the alveolar process, and the periodontal tissues. The range of luxation injuries includes concussion; subluxation; intrusive, extrusive, and lateral luxation; and avulsion. Figure 17–8 demonstrates the different luxation injuries, and Figure 17–9 shows the different degrees of tooth fractures.

The least problematic luxation injuries are concussion (no mobility) and subluxation (mobility without displacement). Unless mobility is extensive, this condition can be

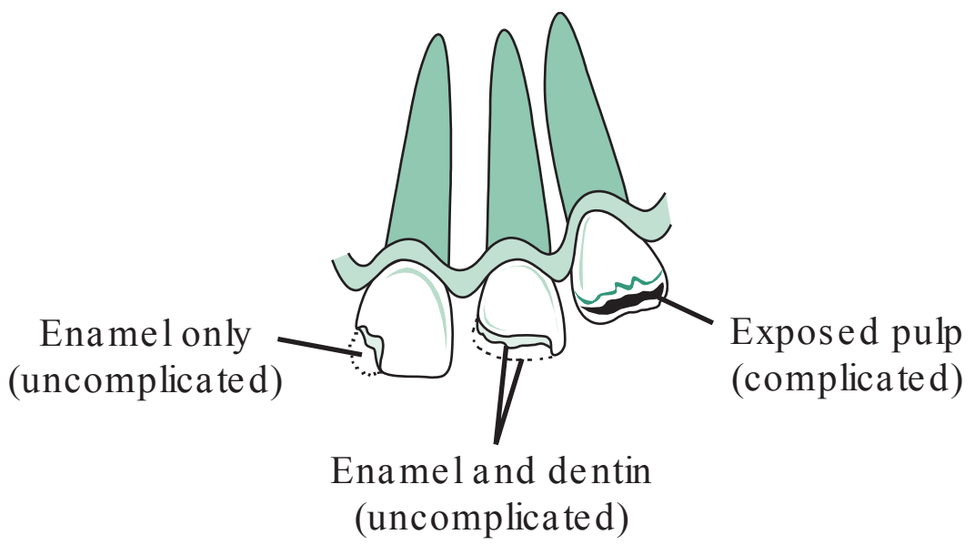


▲**Figure 17–8.** Patterns of luxation injuries.

followed without active intervention, but pulp vitality should be periodically assessed.

Primary Teeth

The peak age for injuries to primary teeth is toddlerhood. Any treatment must include measures to ensure the integrity of the permanent teeth. Parents should be advised of any permanent tooth complications such as enamel hypocalcification or crown-root dilaceration caused by intrusion injuries of primary maxillary front teeth. An intrusive luxation is usually observed for a period of time to discern whether the tooth will spontaneously re-erupt (see Figure 17–8). Severe luxations in any direction are treated with extraction. Avulsed primary teeth are not replanted. In a root fracture, the crown and apical fragment are generally extracted, but the latter



▲**Figure 17–9.** Patterns of crown fractures.

http://obgynebooks.com

should be left for physiologic resorption if its retrieval would result in potential damage to the permanent tooth.

Permanent Teeth

Because the prognosis for viability worsens rapidly as time outside the mouth increases, an avulsed permanent tooth should be replanted into its socket, ideally as soon as possible at or near the accident scene following gentle rinsing with clean water. The patient should seek emergency dental care immediately thereafter. Hank's balanced salt solution is the best storage and transport medium for avulsed teeth that are to be replanted at a distant emergency clinic. The next best storage media in decreasing order are milk, saline, saliva (buccal vestibule), or water. The commercially available FDA-approved Save-a-Tooth kit should be part of first-aid kits in schools and sports facilities.

Intrusions of permanent teeth are corrected with repositioning. Lateral and extrusive luxations are generally repositioned and splinted for up to 3 weeks. Root canal treatment is necessary in the majority of injuries. Factors to consider during treatment planning are root development (open or closed apex) and the extent of the luxation. Pulp necrosis; surface, inflammatory, and replacement resorption; or ankylosis may occur at any time during the healing process and determine the long-term outcome. All luxated and replanted teeth need to be followed regularly by a dentist.

Save-a-Tooth®: www.save-a-tooth.com/. Accessed January 2015.
The Dental Trauma Guide: www.dentaltraumaguide.org/. Accessed January 2015.

Other Dental Emergencies

Dental emergencies other than trauma are usually associated with pain or swelling due to infection resulting from advanced caries. Odontogenic pain usually responds to acetaminophen or ibuprofen. Topical medications are of limited value.

A localized smaller swelling confined to the gingival tissue associated with a tooth is usually not an urgent situation. This "gumboil" or parulis represents an infection that has spread outward from the root of the tooth through the bone and periosteum. Usually it will drain and leave a fistula tract. Facial cellulitis results if the infection invades the facial spaces. Elevated temperature (> 38.8°C), difficulty swallowing, and difficulty breathing are signs of serious infections. Swelling of the midface—especially the bridge of the nose and the lower eyelid—should be urgently evaluated as a potential dental infection. Depending on the clinical situation and the patient's overall health, treatment choices range from treating or extracting the offending tooth/teeth with or without antibiotic coverage to achieve drainage. Occasionally, treatment is delayed for several days while antibiotics are prescribed to contain the spread of the infection. Hospitalization is a prudent choice for younger children with severe facial cellulitis especially if other risk factors are present—dehydration, airway compromise, or possible noncompliance. Inpatient treatment consists of intravenous antibiotics such as clindamycin or ampicillin-sulbactam (Unasyn) with incision, drainage, and removal of the source of infection.

ANTIBIOTICS IN PEDIATRIC DENTISTRY

The antibiotics of choice for odontogenic infection are penicillin and clindamycin. The need for antibiotics, usually a 5–7 day course, depends on the severity of the infection and the patient's medical status.

Patients with certain medical conditions are at risk for bacteremia-induced infections and require prophylactic antibiotic coverage prior to invasive dental manipulation. These include children with artificial heart valves, previous infectious endocarditis, certain repaired or nonrepaired congenital heart conditions, or compromised immunity. For nonvalvular devices such as indwelling vascular catheters and cardiovascular implantable electronic devices, antibiotic coverage is indicated only at the time they are placed. Hydrocephalus shunts with vascular access (eg, ventriculoatrial, ventriculocardiac, ventriculovenous) may cause bacteremia-induced infections and therefore require antibiotic prophylaxis, whereas the nonvascular type (ventriculoperitoneal) does not.

Antibiotic prophylaxis is generally not indicated for dental patients with pins, plates, screws, or other orthopedic hardware that is not within a synovial joint. Likewise, most patients with total joint replacements do not routinely require antibiotic prophylaxis, but for them, as well as for the management of patients at high risk and those with Harrington rods or external fixation devices, consultation with the child's physician is advised. Special consideration is also warranted when higher risk dental procedures are performed within 24 months of implant surgery, on immunocompromised patients with total joint arthroplasty, or those who have had previous joint infections.

AAPD: Guideline on antibiotic prophylaxis for dental patients at risk for infection. Pediatr Dent 2015;37 (special issue):292–297.

SPECIAL PATIENT POPULATIONS

Children with Cancer

A frequent source of systemic sepsis in the immunosuppressed patient with cancer is the oral cavity. Therefore, a dentist knowledgeable about pediatric oncology should evaluate children with cancer soon after diagnosis. The aim is to educate the patient and caregivers about the importance of good oral hygiene and to remove all existing and potential sources of infection, such as abscessed teeth, extensive caries,

http://obgynebooks.com

teeth that will soon exfoliate, ragged or broken teeth, uneven fillings, and orthodontic appliances before the child becomes neutropenic as a consequence of chemotherapy. After an initial evaluation and before initiation of cancer therapy, a dental treatment plan should be developed in collaboration with the oncologist. Preventive strategies include reduction of refined sugars, fluoride therapy, lip care, and patient education. Chemotherapeutic drugs and local irradiation are cytotoxic to the oral mucosa, which becomes atrophic and develops mucositis. Oral pain may be severe and often leads to inadequate food and fluid intake, infections in the oral cavity, and an increased risk of septicemia. Meticulous oral hygiene reduces the risk of severe mucositis.

The pediatric oncology patient should be monitored throughout therapy to screen for infection, manage oral bleeding, and control oral pain. These patients can experience spontaneous oral hemorrhage, particularly when the platelet count is less than 20,000/μL. Poor oral hygiene or areas of irritation can increase the chances of bleeding. Children receiving radiation therapy to the head and neck may develop xerostomia if salivary glands are in the path of the beam of radiation. Customized fluoride applicators and artificial saliva in combination with close follow-up are used to manage xerostomia aggressively to avoid rapid and extensive destruction of the teeth. Children receiving hematopoietic stem cell transplantation may require longer periods of immunosuppression. During the neutropenic phase of pretransplant conditioning, mucositis, xerostomia, oral pain, oral bleeding, and opportunistic infections may occur. Oral graft-versus-host disease as well as oral fungal and HSV infections can be seen during the subsequent initial engraftment and hematopoietic reconstitution period. Long-term dental follow-up includes management of salivary dysfunction and craniofacial growth abnormalities from total body radiation and treatment of oral graft-versus-host disease.

Pediatric oncology patients need regular care by a dentist familiar with young children and their growth and development. Oral and maxillofacial growth disturbances can occur after therapy. Late effects of therapy include such morphologic changes as microdontia, hypocalcification, short and blunted roots, delayed eruption, and alterations in facial bone growth.

da Fonseca MA: Dental care of the pediatric cancer patient. Pediatr Dent 2004;26:53–57 [PMID: 15080359].

Children with Bleeding Disorders

Children with some genetic or acquired disorders of coagulation may require clotting factors before and after invasive dental procedures, including local block anesthesia. Oral surgical procedures on any child with a bleeding disorder should be planned in concert with the child's hematologist. Patients with hemophilia A and factor VIII antibodies (inhibitors) requiring surgery should be admitted to a hospital. Some patients with very mild factor VIII deficiency or von Willebrand disease type 1 may respond to DDAVP (1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin), whereas von Willebrand types 2 and 3 require cryoprecipitate. Antifibrinolytic medications such as ε-aminocaproic and tranexamic acid are used successfully after dental treatment. Topical medications such as Gelfoam and thrombin can be used to control postoperative bleeding. Patients receiving anticoagulant therapy should generally not undergo dosage reduction before surgical dental treatment because the risk of embolic complications is much higher than bleeding complications in those whose anticoagulant therapy is continued. However, the dentist is advised to consult with the hematologist to obtain the most recent INR results and to discuss the most appropriate level of anticoagulation.

Children with Type 1 Diabetes

The incidence of caries is not increased in diabetic children if metabolic control is good. However, they are at higher risk for periodontal disease that usually starts at puberty with mild gingivitis, gum bleeding, and gingival recession. Care must be taken not to disturb the regular cycle of eating and insulin dosage. Anxiety associated with dental appointments can cause a major upset in glycemic control. Postoperative pain or pain from dental abscess can disrupt their routine oral intake, necessitating adjustment of insulin doses.

ORTHODONTIC REFERRAL

A child's dentist usually initiates the referral to an orthodontist. For any child with a cleft palate or other craniofacial growth disorder, referral is indicated when maxillary permanent incisors are starting to erupt to prepare for an alveolar bone graft. Other localized problems such as anterior and/or posterior cross-bites and disturbances associated with the eruption of maxillary and mandibular front teeth should be addressed early to restore proper function and normal craniofacial growth. Significant arch length deficiency resulting in severe crowding requires early decisions on how to guide the developing dentition through extractions of multiple primary and permanent teeth (ie, serial extraction sequence). Likewise, pronounced discrepancies in anterior-posterior skeletal jaw relationships warrant early evaluation by an orthodontist.

http://obgynebooks.com

18 Ear, Nose, & Throat

Patricia J. Yoon, MD
Melissa A. Scholes, MD
Norman R. Friedman, MD

THE EAR

INFECTIONS OF THE EAR

1. Otitis Externa

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Rapid onset of symptoms in the past three weeks AND
- **Symptoms** of ear canal inflammation, including otalgia, itching, or fullness, with or without hearing loss or jaw pain AND
- **Signs** of ear canal inflammation, including tenderness of the tragus and/or pinna, ear canal edema and/or erythema, otorrhea, regional lymphadenitis, tympanic membrane (TM) erythema, or cellulitis of the pinna and adjacent skin.

» Differential Diagnosis

Acute otitis media with TM rupture, furunculosis of the ear canal, herpes zoster oticus, mastoiditis.

» Pathogenesis

Otitis externa (OE) is a cellulitis of the soft tissues of the EAC, which can extend to surrounding structures such as the pinna, tragus, and lymph nodes., Humidity, heat, and moisture in the ear are known to contribute to the development of OE, along with localized trauma to the ear canal skin. Sources of trauma may include digital trauma, earplugs, ear irrigations, and the use of cotton-tipped swabs to clean or scratch the ear canal. Cerumen actually serves as a protective barrier to the underlying skin and its acidic pH inhibits bacterial and fungal growth. The most common organisms in OE are Staphylococcus aureus and Pseudomonas aeruginosa.

» Clinical Findings

Symptoms include acute onset of pain, aural fullness, decreased hearing, and sometimes itching in the ear. Symptoms tend to peak within three days. Manipulation of the pinna or tragus causes considerable pain. Discharge may start out as clear then become purulent and may also cause secondary eczema of the auricle. The ear canal is typically swollen and narrowed, and the patient may resist any attempt to insert an otoscope. Debris is present in the canal, and it is usually very difficult to visualize the tympanic membrane (TM) due to canal edema.

» Complications

If untreated, facial cellulitis may result. Immunocompromised individuals can develop malignant OE, which is a spread of the infection to the skull base with resultant osteomyelitis. This is a life-threatening condition and should be evaluated with a fine-cut temporal bone CT scan.

» Treatment

Management of OE includes pain control, removal of debris from the canal, topical antimicrobial therapy, and avoidance of causative factors. Fluoroquinolone eardrops are first-line therapy for OE. In the absence of systemic symptoms, children with OE should be treated with antibiotic eardrops only. The topical therapy chosen must be nonototoxic because a perforation or patent tube may be present; if the TM cannot be visualized, then a perforation should be presumed to exist. If the ear canal is too edematous to allow

entry of the eardrops, a Pope ear wick (expandable sponge) should be placed to ensure antibiotic delivery. Oral antibiotics are indicated for any signs of invasive infection, such as fever, cellulitis of the face or auricle, or tender periauricular or cervical lymphadenopathy. In such cases, in addition to the ototopical therapy, cultures of the ear canal discharge should be sent, and an antistaphylococcal antibiotic prescribed while awaiting culture results. The ear should be kept dry until the infection has cleared.

Kaushik V, Malik T, Saeed SR: Interventions for acute otitis externa. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010;(1):CD004740 [PMID: 20091565].

Rosenfeld RM et al: Clinical practice guideline: acute otitis externa executive summary. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2014 Nov;150(2):161–168 [PMID 24492208].

Waitzman AA, et al: Otitis externa: http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/994550-overview. Accessed March 29, 2015.

2. Bullous Myringitis

Bullous myringitis (BM) is inflammation of the TM with hemorrhagic or serous bullae and has been associated with viral upper respiratory infections and Streptococcus pneumoniae. It is often painful and may be associated with otorrhea and decreased hearing. BM is treated with antibiotics, analgesics, anti-inflammatories, and occasionally steroids.

3. Acute Otitis Media

Acute otitis media (AOM) is the most common reason antibiotics are prescribed for children in the United States. It is an acute infection of the middle ear space associated with inflammation, effusion, or, if a patent tympanostomy tube or perforation is present, otorrhea (ear drainage).

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Moderate to severe bulging of the TM or new otorrhea not associated with otitis externa.
- Mild bulging of the TM and less than 48 hours of otalgia (ear-holding, tugging, or rubbing in a nonverbal child) or intense erythema of the TM.
- Middle ear effusion, proven by pneumatic otoscopy or tympanometry, must be present.

» Differential Diagnosis

Otitis media with effusion, bullous myringitis, acute mastoiditis, and middle ear mass.

» Clinical Findings

Two findings are critical in establishing a diagnosis of AOM: a bulging TM and a MEE. The presence of MEE is best determined by visual examination and either pneumatic otoscopy or tympanometry (Figure 18–1). In order to distinguish AOM from OME, signs and symptoms of middle ear inflammation and acute infection must be present. Otoscopic findings specific for AOM include a bulging TM, impaired visibility of ossicular landmarks, yellow or white effusion (pus), an opacified and inflamed eardrum, and sometimes squamous exudate or bullae on the eardrum.

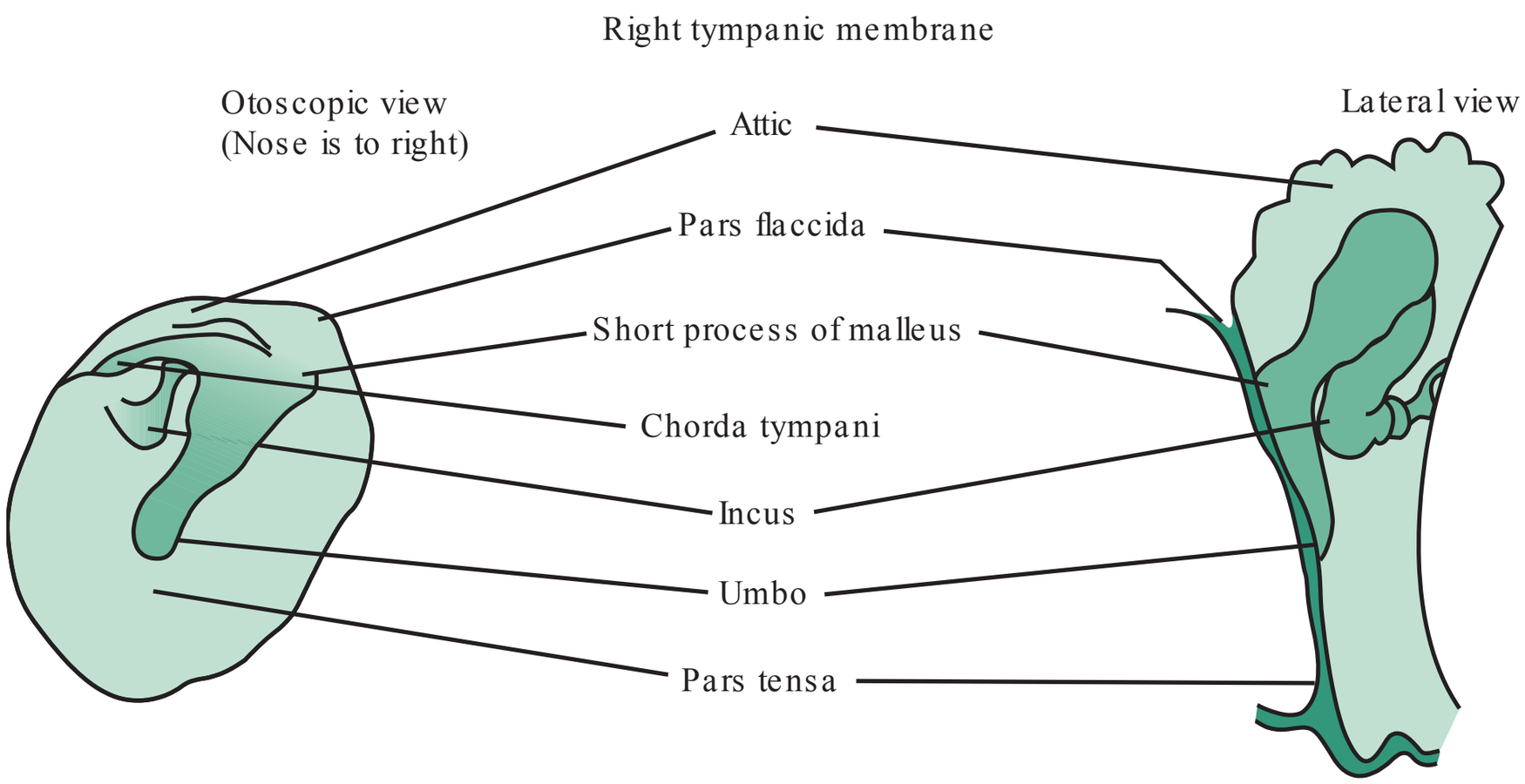
A. Pathophysiology and Predisposing Factors

1. Eustachian tube dysfunction (ETD)—The Eustachian tube regulates middle ear pressure and allows for drainage of the middle ear. It must periodically open to prevent the development of negative pressure and effusion in the middle ear space. If this does not occur, negative pressure leads to transudation of cellular fluid into the middle ear, as well as influx of fluids and pathogens from the nasopharynx and adenoids. Middle ear fluid may then become infected, resulting in AOM. The Eustachian tube of infants and young children is more prone to dysfunction because it is shorter, more compliant, and more horizontal than in adults. The Eustachian tube reaches its adult configuration by the age of 7 years. Infants with craniofacial disorders, such as Down syndrome or cleft palate, may be particularly susceptible to ETD.

2. Bacterial colonization—Nasopharyngeal colonization with S pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, or Moraxella catarrhalis increases the risk of AOM, whereas colonization with normal flora such as viridans streptococci may prevent AOM by inhibiting growth of these pathogens.

3. Viral upper respiratory infections—Upper respiratory infections (URIs) increase colonization of the nasopharynx with otitis pathogens. They impair Eustachian tube function by causing adenoid hypertrophy and edema of the Eustachian tube itself. It is not absolutely clear if viral pathogens are the primary cause of episodes of AOM or if they help promote bacterial infections. What is known that bacterial AOM with viral coinfection has higher concentrations of inflammatory mediators than bacterial AOM alone.

4. Smoke exposure—Passive smoking increases the risk of persistent MEE by enhancing colonization, prolonging the inflammatory response, and impeding drainage of the middle ear through the Eustachian tube. For infants aged 12–18 months, cigarette exposure is associated with an 11% per pack increase in the duration of MEE.



▲**Figure 18–1.** Tympanic membrane.

5. Impaired host immune defenses—Immunocompromised children such as those with selective IgA deficiency usually experience recurrent AOM, rhinosinusitis, and pneumonia. However, most children who experience recurrent or persistent otitis only have selective impairments of immune defenses against specific otitis pathogens.

6. Bottle feeding—Breast-feeding reduces the incidence of acute respiratory infections, provides immunoglobulin A (IgA) antibodies that reduce colonization with otitis pathogens, and decreases the aspiration of contaminated secretions into the middle ear space which can occur when a bottle is propped in the crib.

7. Season—The incidence of AOM correlates with the activity of respiratory viruses, accounting for the annual surge in otitis media cases during the winter months in temperate climates.

8. Day care attendance—Children exposed to large groups of children have more respiratory infections and OM. The increased number of children in day care over the past three decades has undoubtedly played a major role in the increase in AOM in the United States.

9. Genetic susceptibility—Although AOM is known to be multifactorial, and no gene for susceptibility has yet been identified, recent studies of twins and triplets suggest that as much as 70% of the risk is genetically determined.

10. Age—Children ages 1–3 years are at greatest risk for AOM.

B. Microbiology of Acute Otitis Media

Bacterial or viral pathogens can be detected in up to 96% of middle ear fluid samples from patients with AOM. Polybacterial infections are seen in up to 55% of cases, with bacterial and viral coinfections occurring in up to 70%. S pneumoniae and H influenzae account for 35%–40% and 30%–35% of isolates, respectively. With widespread use of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine starting in 2000, the incidence of AOM caused by H influenzae rose while that of the S pneumoniae vaccine serotypes declined. However, there has been an increase in disease caused by S pneumoniae serotypes not covered by the vaccine as well as S aureus. With routine PCV13 immunization since 2010, there has been a trend of decreased incidence of invasive pneumococcal infections. The third most common pathogen cited is M catarrhalis, which causes up to 15%–25% of AOM cases in the United States (Table 18–1). The fourth most common organism in AOM is Streptococcus pyogenes, which is found more frequently in school-aged children than in infants. S pyogenes and S pneumoniae are the predominant causes of mastoiditis. The most common viruses associated with AOM are RSV, influenza virus, adenovirus, human metapneumovirus, and enteroviruses.

Drug-resistant S pneumoniae is a common pathogen in AOM and strains may be resistant to only one drug class (eg, penicillins or macrolides) or to multiple classes. Children with resistant strains tend to be younger and to have had more unresponsive infections. Antibiotic treatment in the preceding 3 months also increases the risk of harboring resistant pathogens.

C. Examination Techniques and Procedures

1. Pneumatic otoscopy—AOM is overdiagnosed, leading to inappropriate antibiotic therapy, unnecessary surgical

Table 18–1. Microbiology of acute otitis media (AOM).

Organism	Percentage of AOM Cases
Streptococcus pneumoniae	35–40
Haemophilus influenzae	30–35
Moraxella catarrhalis	15–18
Streptococcus pyogenes	4

referrals, and significant associated costs. Contributing to errors in diagnosis is the temptation to accept the diagnosis without removing enough cerumen to adequately visualize the TM, and the mistaken belief that a red TM establishes the diagnosis. Redness of the TM is often a vascular flush caused by fever or crying.

A pneumatic otoscope with a rubber suction bulb and tube is used to assess TM mobility. When used correctly, pneumatic otoscopy can improve diagnostic ability by 15%–25%. The largest possible speculum should be used to provide an airtight seal and maximize the field of view. When the rubber bulb is squeezed, the TM should move freely with a snapping motion; if fluid is present in the middle ear space, the mobility of the TM will be absent or resemble a fluid wave. The ability to assess mobility is compromised by failure to achieve an adequate seal with the otoscope, poor visualization due to low light intensity, and mistaking the ear canal wall for the membrane.

2. Cerumen removal—Cerumen (ear wax) removal is an essential skill for anyone who cares for children. Impacted cerumen pushed against the TM can cause itching, pain, or hearing loss. Parents should be advised that cerumen actually protects the ear and usually comes out by itself through the natural sloughing and migration of the skin of the ear canal. Parents should never put anything into the ear canal to remove wax.

Cerumen may be safely removed under direct visualization through the operating head of an otoscope, provided two adults are present to hold the child. A size 0 plastic disposable ear curette may be used. Irrigation can also be used to remove hard or flaky cerumen. Wax can be softened with 1% sodium docusate solution, carbamyl peroxide solutions, or mineral oil before irrigation is attempted. A perforated TM or patent tympanostomy tube is a contraindication to any form of irrigation.

A home remedy for recurrent cerumen impaction is a few drops of oil such as mineral or olive oil a couple of times a week, warmed to body temperature to prevent dizziness.

3. Tympanometry—Tympanometry can be helpful in assessing middle ear status, particularly when pneumatic otoscopy is inconclusive or difficult to perform. Tympanometry can reveal the presence or absence of a MEE but cannot differentiate between acutely infected fluid (AOM) and a chronic effusion (OME).

Tympanometry measures TM compliance and displays it in graphic form. It also measures the volume of the ear canal, which can help differentiate between an intact and perforated TM. Standard 226-Hz tympanometry is not reliable in infants younger than 6 months. A high-frequency (1000 Hz) probe is used in this age group.

Tympanograms can be classified into four major patterns, as shown in Figure 18–2. The pattern shown in Figure 18–2A, characterized by maximum compliance at normal atmospheric pressure, indicates a normal TM, good Eustachian tube function, and absence of effusion. Figure 18–2B identifies a nonmobile TM with normal volume, which indicates MEE. Figure 18–2C indicates an intact, mobile TM with excessively negative middle ear pressure (> –150 daPa), indicative of poor Eustachian tube function. Figure 18–2D shows a flat tracing with a large middle ear volume, indicative of a patent tube or TM perforation.

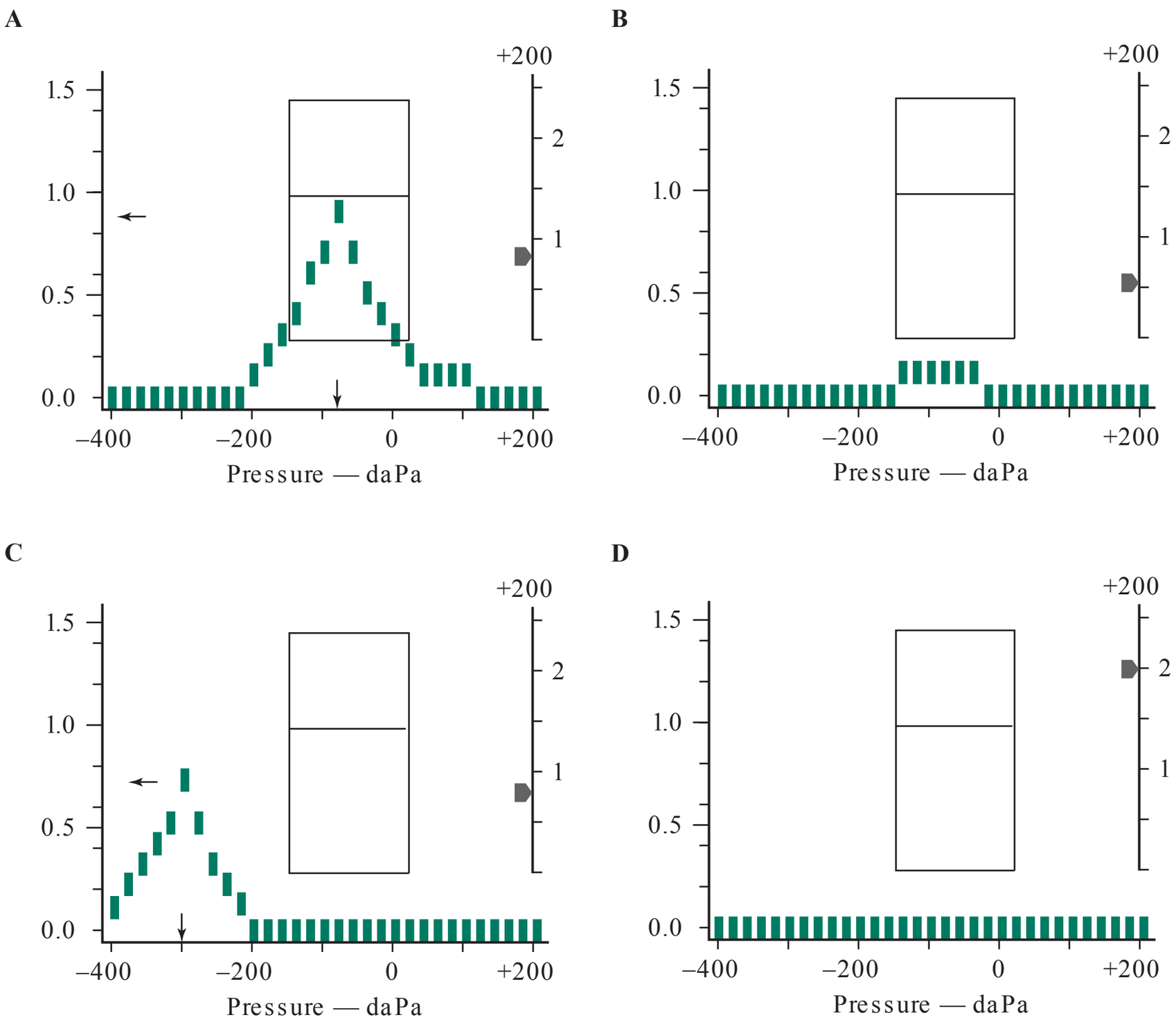
» Treatment

A. Pain Management

Pain is the primary symptom of AOM, and the 2013 clinical practice guidelines emphasize the importance of addressing this symptom. As it may take 1–3 days before antibiotic therapy leads to a reduction in pain, mild to moderate pain should be treated with ibuprofen or acetaminophen. Severe pain should be treated with narcotics, but careful and close observation is required to address possible respiratory depression, altered mental status, gastrointestinal upset, and constipation. Topical analgesics have a very short duration and studies do not support efficacy in children younger than 5 years.

B. The Observation Option

The choice to observe an episode of AOM and not treat with antibiotics is an option in otherwise healthy children without other underlying conditions such as cleft palate, craniofacial abnormalities, immune deficiencies, cochlear implants, or tympanostomy tubes. The decision should be made in conjunction with the parents, and a mechanism must be in place to provide antibiotic therapy if there is worsening of symptoms or lack of improvement within 48–72 hours. For infants younger than 6 months, antibiotics are always recommended on the first visit, regardless of diagnostic certainty. The 2013 clinical practice guidelines include age, presence of otorrhea, severity of symptoms, and laterality as criteria for antibiotic treatment versus observation (Table 18–2).



▲**Figure 18–2.** Four types of tympanograms obtained with Welch-Allyn MicroTymp 2. **A:** Normal middle ear. **B:** Otitis media with effusion or acute otitis media. **C:** Negative middle ear pressure due to eustachian tube dysfunction. **D:** Patent tympanostomy tube or perforation in the tympanic membrane. Same as B except for a very large middle ear volume.

Table 18–2. Recommendations for initial management of uncomplicated AOM.[a]

Age	Otorrhea With AOM[a]	Unilateral or Bilateral AOM[a] With Severe Symptoms[b]	Bilateral AOM[a] Without Otorrhea	Unilateral AOM[a] Without Otorrhea
6 mo to 2 y	Antibiotic therapy	Antibiotic therapy	Antibiotic therapy	Antibiotic therapy or additional observation
≥ 2 y	Antibiotic therapy	Antibiotic therapy	Antibiotic therapy or additional observation	Antibiotic therapy or additional observation[c]

[a]Applies only to children with well-documented AOM and a high certainty of diagnosis.
[b]A toxic-appearing child, persistent otalgia for more than 48 hours, temperature > 39°C (102.2°F) in the past 48 hours, or if there is uncertain access to follow-up after the visit.
[c]This plan of initial management provides an opportunity for shared decision-making with the child's family for those categories appropriate for initial observation. If observation is offered, a mechanism must be in place to ensure follow-up and begin antibiotics if the child worsens or fails to improve within 48 to 72 hours of AOM onset.

C. Antibiotic Therapy

High-dose amoxicillin remains the first-line antibiotic for treating AOM, even with a high prevalence of drug-resistant S pneumoniae, because data show that isolates of the bacteria remain susceptible to the drug 83%–87% of the time.

Amoxicillin-clavulanate enhanced strength (ES), with 90 mg/kg/d of amoxicillin dosing (14:1 ratio of amoxicillin:clavulanate), is an appropriate choice when a child has had amoxicillin in the last 30 days, or is clinically failing after 48–72 hours on amoxicillin (Table 18–3). The regular strength formulations of amoxicillin-clavulanate (7:1 ratio) should not be doubled in dosage to achieve 90 mg/kg/d of amoxicillin, because the increased amount of clavulanate will cause diarrhea.

Three oral cephalosporins (cefuroxime, cefpodoxime, and cefdinir) are more β-lactamase–stable and are alternative choices in children who develop a papular rash with amoxicillin (see Table 18–3). Unfortunately, coverage of highly penicillin-resistant pneumococci with these agents is poor and only the intermediate-resistance classes are covered. Of these drugs, cefdinir suspension is most palatable; the other two have a bitter after-taste which is difficult to conceal. Flavoring agents may be helpful here.

A second-line antibiotic is indicated when a child experiences symptomatic infection within 1 month of finishing amoxicillin; however, repeated use of high-dose amoxicillin is indicated if more than 4 weeks have passed without symptoms. Macrolides such as azithromycin and clarithromycin are not recommended as second-line agents because S pneumoniae is resistant to macrolides in approximately 30% of respiratory isolates, and because virtually all strains of H influenzae have an intrinsic macrolide efflux pump, which pumps the antibiotic out of the bacterial cell.

Reasons for failure to eradicate a sensitive pathogen include drug noncompliance, poor drug absorption, or vomiting of the drug. If a child remains symptomatic for longer than 3 days while taking a second-line agent, a tympanocentesis is useful to identify the causative pathogen. If a highly resistant pneumococcus is found or if tympanocentesis is not feasible, intramuscular ceftriaxone at 50 mg/kg/dose for

Table 18–3. Antibiotic therapies for acute otitis media.

A. Initial Immediate or Delayed Antibiotic Treatment	
First-Line Treatment	Alternative Treatments (If Penicillin-Allergic)
Amoxicillin (80–90 mg/kg/d in two divided doses) • For children aged < 2 y or children of all ages with severe symptoms, treat for 10 d. • Age 2–6 y with mild-moderate symptoms, treat for 7 d. • Age > 6 y with mild-moderate symptoms, treat for 5 d. or Amoxicillin-clavulanate (90 mg/kg/d or amoxicillin, with 6.4 mg/kg/d of clavulanate in two divided doses) • For patients who have received amoxicillin in the previous 30 days or who have otitis-conjunctivitis syndrome	Cefdinir (14 mg/kg/d in 1 or 2 doses) Cefuroxime (30 mg/kg/d divided BID) Cefpodoxime (10 mg/kg/d in 2 divided doses) Ceftriaxone (50 mg IM or IV per day for 1 or 3 d) • If unable to take oral medications For children with severe penicillin allergies (IgE-mediated events) or known cephalosporin allergy: • Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole • Macrolides • Clindamycin (30–40 mg/kg/d, divided TID)
B. Antibiotic Treatment After 48–72 h of Failure of Initial Antibiotic	
First-Line Treatment	**Alternative Treatment**
Amoxicillin-clavulanate (90 mg/kg/d or amoxicillin, with 6.4 mg/kg/d of clavulanate in 2 divided doses) • For patients who have received amoxicillin in the previous 30 d or who have otitis-conjunctivitis syndrome. or Ceftriaxone (50 mg IM or IV per day for 3 d)	Ceftriaxone (50 mg IM or IV per day for 3 d) Clindamycin (30–40 mg/kg/d, divided TID) with or without a third-generation cephalosporin Consider tympanocentesis Consult specialist
C. Recurrence > 4 wk After Initial Episode:	
1. A new pathogen is likely, so restart first-line therapy. 2. Be sure diagnosis is not OME, which may be observed for 3–6 mo without treatment.	

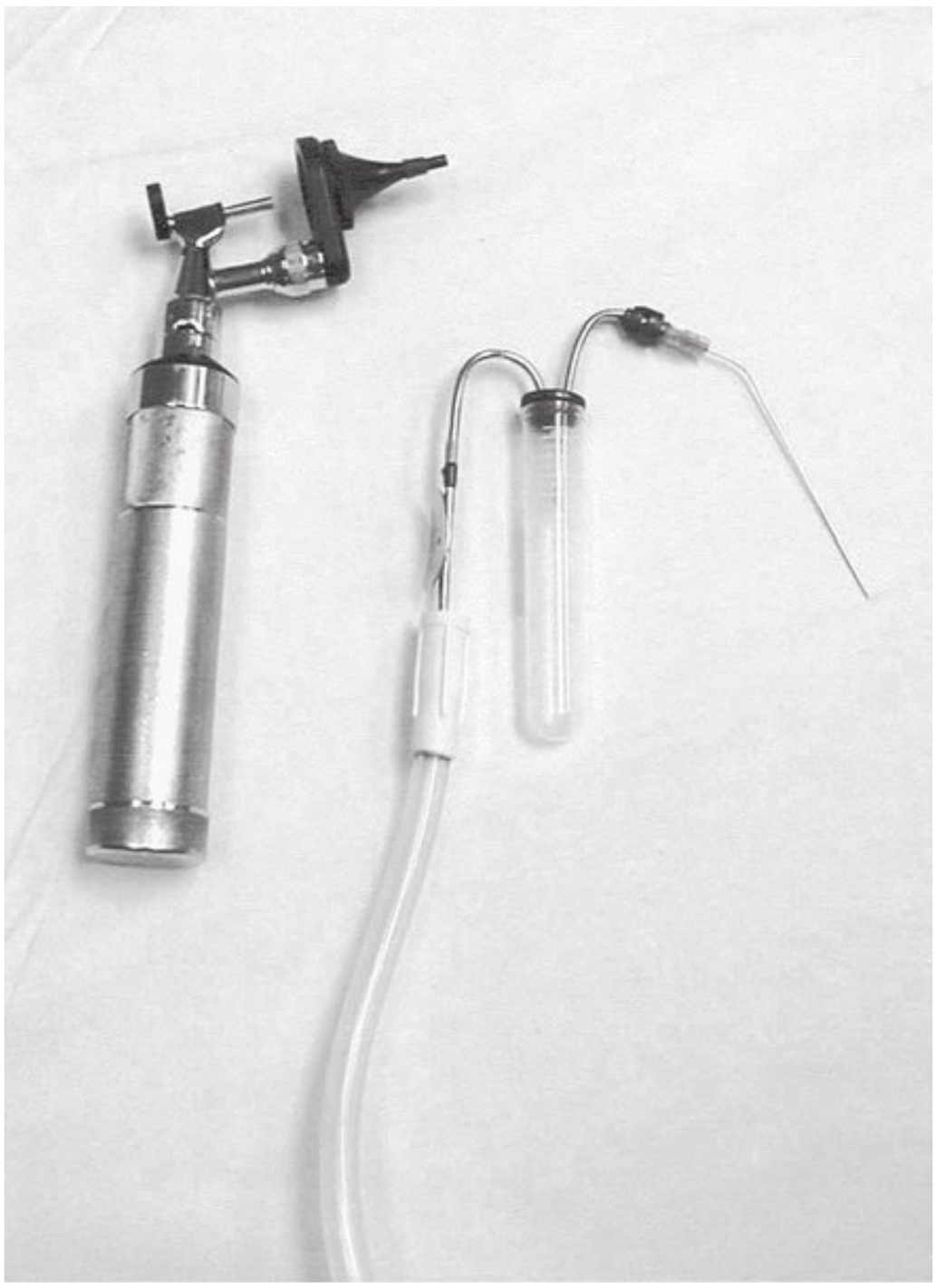
3 consecutive days is recommended. If a child has experienced a severe reaction, such as anaphylaxis, to amoxicillin, cephalosporins should not be substituted. Otherwise, the risk of cross-sensitivity is less than 0.1%. Multidrug resistant S pneumoniae poses a treatment dilemma and newer antibiotics, such as fluoroquinolones or linezolid, may need to be employed. However, these drugs are not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of AOM in children.

In patients with tympanostomy tubes with uncomplicated acute otorrhea, ototopical antibiotics (fluoroquinolone eardrops) are first-line therapy. The eardrops serve two purposes: (1) They treat the infection and (2) they physically "rinse" drainage from the tube which helps prevent plugging of the tube. Oral antibiotics are not indicated in the absence of systemic symptoms.

If a TM perforation has occurred with otorrhea then topical antibiotics are recommended as first-line agents due to the ability to provide high concentrations of antibiotic directly to the middle ear. Topical fluoroquinolone otic drops (ofloxacin and ciprofloxacin) with or without steroids are considered safe for administration into the middle ear. If there is a large amount of debris or drainage in the ear canal, the canal may need to be suctioned first in order for the drops to gain access to the middle ear.

D. Tympanocentesis

Tympanocentesis is performed by placing a needle through the TM and aspirating the middle ear fluid. The fluid is sent for culture and sensitivity. Indications for tympanocentesis are (1) AOM in an immunocompromised patient, (2) research studies, (3) evaluation for presumed sepsis or meningitis, such as in a neonate, (4) unresponsive otitis media despite courses of two appropriate antibiotics, and (5) acute mastoiditis or other suppurative complications. Tympanocentesis can be performed with an open-headed operating otoscope or a binocular microscope with either a spinal needle and 3-mL syringe, or if available, an Alden-Senturia trap (Storz Instrument Co., St. Louis, MO) or the Tymp-Tap aspirator (Xomed Surgical Products, Jackson, FL) (Figure 18–3).



▲**Figure 18–3.** Operating head and Alden-Senturia trap for tympanocentesis. Eighteen-gauge spinal needle is attached and bent.

E. Prevention of Acute Otitis Media

1. Antibiotic prophylaxis—Strongly discouraged. Antibiotic resistance is a concern and studies have shown poor efficacy.

2. Lifestyle modifications—Parental education plays a major role in decreasing AOM.

- Smoking is a risk factor both for upper respiratory infection and AOM. Primary care physicians should provide information on smoking cessation programs and measures.
- Breast-feeding protects children from AOM. Clinicians should encourage exclusive breast-feeding for 6 months.
- Bottle-propping in the crib should be avoided. It increases AOM risk due to the reflux of milk into the Eustachian tubes.
- Pacifiers are controversial. In Finland, removing pacifiers from infants was shown to reduce AOM episodes by about one-third compared to a control group. The mechanism is uncertain but likely to be related to effects on the Eustachian tube. However, the benefit of pacifier use in reducing sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)–related deaths is also important to consider. Currently, the recommendation from the American Academy of Family Physicians is to wean a pacifier if used after 6 months of age to reduce the risk of AOM.
- Day care is a risk factor for AOM, but working parents may have few alternatives. Possible alternatives include care by relatives or child care in a setting with fewer children.

3. Surgery—Tympanostomy tubes are effective in the treatment of recurrent AOM as well as OME.

4. Immunologic evaluation and allergy testing—While immunoglobulin subclass deficiencies may be more common in children with recurrent AOM, there is no practical immune therapy available. More serious immunodeficiencies, such as selective IgA deficiency, should be considered in children who suffer from a combination of recurrent AOM, rhinosinusitis, and pneumonia. In the school-aged child or preschooler with an atopic background, skin testing may be beneficial in identifying allergens that can predispose to AOM.

5. Vaccines—The pneumococcal conjugate and influenza vaccines are recommended. The seven-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV7) was introduced in the United States in 2000, and the 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13) in 2010. PCV7 was found to produce a 29% reduction in AOM resulting from the seven serotypes found in the vaccine, and overall, PCV7 reduced AOM by 6%–7%, according to a 2009 Cochrane database review. Data are not yet available regarding the effect of PCV13 on AOM at this time. In recent studies, intranasal influenza vaccine reduced the number of influenza-associated cases of AOM by 30%–55%.

Lieberthal AS, et al: The diagnosis and management of acute otitis media. Pediatrics 2013;131:e964–e999 [PMID: 23439909].

Stockmann C et al: Seasonality of acute otitis media and the role of respiratory viral activity in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2013 Apr;32;314–319 [PMID: 23249910].

Thomas N, Brook I: Otitis media: an update on current pharmacotherapy and future perspectives. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2014;15(8):1069–1083 [PMID 24793547].

Wald E: Acute otitis media and acute bacterial sinusitis. Clin Infect Dis 2011;52(S4):S277–S283 [PMID: 21460285].

Web Resources

http://www.entnet.org/content/patient-health

4. Otitis Media With Effusion

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Middle ear effusion with decreased TM mobility
- No signs or symptoms of acute inflammation
- May precede or follow an episode of AOM

Clinical Findings

Otitis media with effusion (OME) is the presence of fluid in the middle ear space without signs or symptoms of acute inflammation. There may be some discomfort, but acute pain is not characteristic. A retracted or neutral TM with decreased mobility is seen on pneumatic otoscopy. The TM may be opacified or may have a whitish or amber discoloration.

Children with OME can develop AOM if the middle ear fluid should become infected. After AOM, fluid can remain in the ear for several weeks, with 60%–70% of children still having MEE 2 weeks after successful treatment. This drops to 40% at 1 month and 10%–25% at 3 months after treatment. It is important to distinguish OME from AOM because the former does not benefit from treatment with antibiotics.

Management

An audiology evaluation should be performed after approximately 3 months of continuous bilateral effusion in children younger than 3 years and those at risk of language delay due to socioeconomic circumstances, craniofacial anomalies, or other risk factors. Children with hearing loss or speech delay should be referred to an otolaryngologist for possible tympanostomy tube placement. Antibiotics, antihistamines, and steroids have not been shown to be useful in the treatment of OME.

Traditionally, OME was observed for 3 months in uncomplicated cases prior to consideration for tympanostomy tube placement. Longer periods of observation may be acceptable in children with normal or very mild hearing loss on audiogram, no risk factors for speech and language issues, and no structural changes to the TM. Absolute indications for tympanostomy tubes include hearing loss greater than 40 dB, TM retraction pockets, ossicular erosion, adhesive atelectasis, and cholesteatoma.

Prognosis & Sequelae

Prognosis is variable based on age of presentation. Infants who are very young at the time of first otitis media are more likely to need surgical intervention. Other factors that decrease the likelihood of resolution are onset of OME in the summer or fall, history of prior tympanostomy tubes, presence of adenoids, and hearing loss greater than 30 dB.

The presence of biofilms has been found to explain the "sterile" effusion sometimes present when culturing middle ear fluid in OME. On electron microscopy, biofilms have been found to cover the middle ear mucosa and adenoids in up to 80% of patients with OME. Currently, work is being done to find ways to eradicate biofilms, including physical disruption, reduction, and eradication.

Rosenfeld RM et al: Clinical practice guideline: tympanostomy tubes in children. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2013 July;149(1Suppl):S1–S35. [PMID: 23818543]

Smith A, Buchinsky FJ, Post JC: Eradicating chronic ear, nose, and throat infections: a systematically conducted literature review of advances in biofilm treatment. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2011 Mar;144(3):338–347 [Review] [PMID: 21493193].

» Complications of Otitis Media

A. Tympanosclerosis, Retraction Pockets, Adhesive Otitis

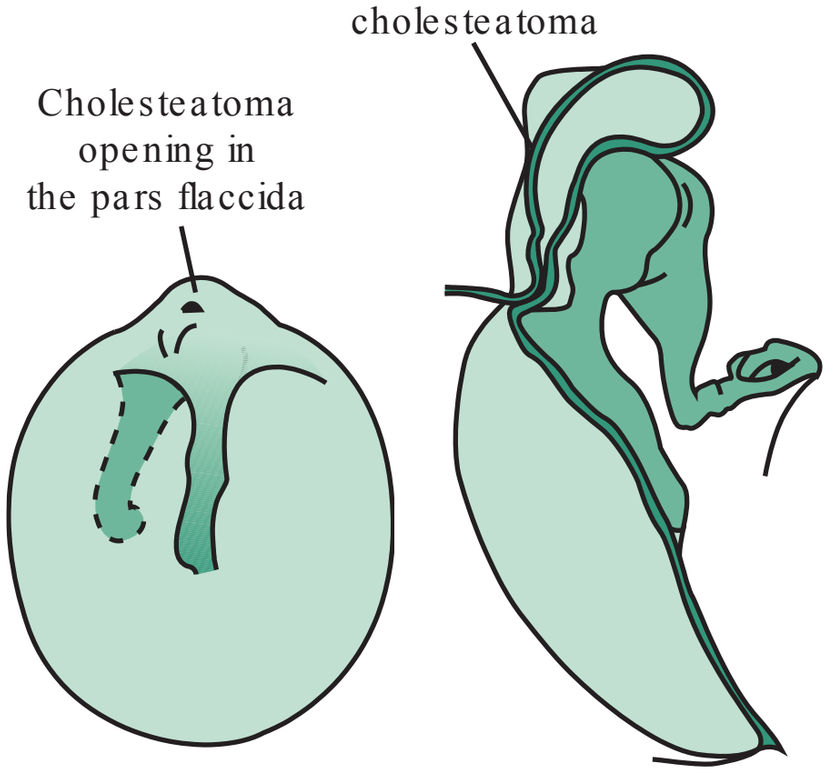
Tympanosclerosis is an acquired disorder of calcification and scarring of the TM and middle ear structures from inflammation. If tympanosclerosis involves the ossicles, a conductive hearing loss may result. The term myringosclerosis applies to calcification of the TM only and is a fairly common sequela of OME and AOM. Myringosclerosis may also develop at the site of a previous tympanostomy tube; tympanosclerosis is not a common sequela of tube placement. Myringosclerosis rarely causes a hearing loss, unless the entire TM is involved ("porcelain eardrum"). Myringosclerosis may be confused with a middle ear mass. However, use of pneumatic otoscopy can often help in differentiation, as the plaque will move with the TM during insufflation.

The appearance of a small defect or invagination of the pars tensa or pars flaccida of the TM suggests a retraction pocket. Retraction pockets occur when chronic inflammation and negative pressure in the middle ear space produce atrophy and atelectasis of the TM.

Continued inflammation can cause adhesions to form between the retracted TM and the ossicles. This condition, referred to as adhesive otitis, predisposes one to formation of a cholesteatoma or fixation and erosion of the ossicles.

B. Cholesteatoma

A greasy-looking mass or pearly white mass seen in a retraction pocket or perforation suggests a cholesteatoma (Figure 18–4). If infection is superimposed, serous or purulent drainage will be seen, and the middle ear cavity may contain granulation tissue or even polyps. Persistent, recurrent, or foul-smelling otorrhea following appropriate medical management should make one suspect a cholesteatoma.



▲**Figure 18–4.** Attic cholesteatoma, formed from an in-drawing of an attic retraction pocket.

C. Tympanic Membrane Perforation

Occasionally, an episode of AOM may result in rupture of the TM. Discharge from the ear is seen, and often there is rapid relief of pain. Perforations due to AOM usually heal spontaneously within a couple of weeks. Ototopical antibiotics are recommended for a 10- to 14-day course and patients should be referred to an otolaryngologist 2–3 weeks after the rupture for examination and hearing evaluation.

When perforations fail to heal, surgical repair may be needed. TM repair is generally delayed until the child is older and Eustachian tube function has improved. Repair of the eardrum (tympanoplasty) is generally deferred until around 7 years of age, which is approximately when the Eustachian tube reaches adult orientation. In otherwise healthy children, some surgeons perform a repair earlier if the contralateral, nonperforated ear remains free of infection and effusion for 1 year.

In the presence of a perforation, water activities should be limited to surface swimming, preferably with the use of an ear mold.

D. Facial Nerve Paralysis

The facial nerve traverses the middle ear as it courses through the temporal bone to its exit at the stylomastoid foramen. Normally, the facial nerve is completely encased in bone, but occasionally bony dehiscence in the middle ear is present, exposing the nerve to infection and making it susceptible to inflammation during an episode of AOM. The acute onset of a facial nerve paralysis should not be deemed idiopathic Bell palsy until all other causes have been excluded. If middle ear fluid is present, prompt myringotomy and tube placement are indicated. CT is indicated if a cholesteatoma or mastoiditis is suspected.

E. Chronic Suppurative Otitis Media

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- » Ongoing purulent ear drainage
- » Nonintact TM: perforation or tympanostomy tubes
- » May be associated with cholesteatoma

Chronic suppurative otitis media (CSOM) is present when persistent otorrhea occurs in a child with tympanostomy tubes or TM perforation. It starts with an acute infection that becomes chronic with mucosal edema, ulceration, granulation tissue, and eventual polyp formation. Risk factors

include a history of, multiple episodes of otitis media, living in crowded conditions, day care attendance and being a member of a large family. The most common associated bacteria include P aeruginosa, S aureus, Proteus species, Klebsiella pneumoniae, and diphtheroids. Visualization of the TM, meticulous cleaning with culture of the drainage, and appropriate antimicrobial therapy, usually topical, are the keys to management.

Occasionally, CSOM may be a sign of cholesteatoma or other disease process such as foreign body, neoplasm, Langerhans cell histiocytosis, tuberculosis, granulomatosis, fungal infection, or petrositis. If CSOM is not responsive to culture-directed treatment, imaging and biopsy may be needed to rule out other possibilities. Patients with facial palsy, vertigo, or other CNS signs should be referred immediately to an otolaryngologist.

Roland PS, et al: Chronic suppurative otitis media. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/859501-overview. Updated March 27, 2015.

F. Labyrinthitis

Suppurative infections of the middle ear can spread into the membranous labyrinth of the inner ear. Symptoms include vertigo, hearing loss, and fevers. The child often appears extremely toxic. Intravenous antibiotic therapy is used, and intravenous steroids may also be used to help decrease inflammation. Sequelae can be serious, including a condition known as labyrinthitis ossificans, or bony obliteration of the inner ear, including the cochlea, leading to profound hearing loss.

G. Mastoiditis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Acute otitis media is almost always present
- Postauricular pain and erythema
- Ear protrusion (late finding)

Pathogenesis

Mastoiditis occurs when infection spreads from the middle ear space to the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, which lies just behind the ear and contains air-filled spaces. Mastoiditis can range in severity from inflammation of the mastoid periosteum to bony destruction of the mastoid air cells (coalescent mastoiditis) with abscess development. Mastoiditis can occur in any age group, but more than 60% of the patients are younger than 2 years. Many children do not have a prior history of recurrent AOM.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with mastoiditis usually have postauricular pain, fever, and an outwardly displaced pinna. On examination, the mastoid area often appears indurated and red and with disease progression, it may become swollen and fluctuant. The earliest finding is severe tenderness on mastoid palpation. AOM is almost always present. Late findings include a pinna that is pushed forward by postauricular swelling and an ear canal that is narrowed due to pressure on the posterosuperior wall from the mastoid abscess. In infants younger than 1 year, the swelling occurs superior to the ear and pushes the pinna downward rather than outward.

B. Imaging Studies

The best way to determine the extent of disease is by computed tomography (CT) scan. Early mastoiditis may be radiographically indistinguishable from AOM, with both showing opacification but no destruction of the mastoid air cells. With progression of mastoiditis, coalescence of the mastoid air cells is seen.

C. Microbiology

The most common pathogens are S pneumoniae followed by H influenzae and S pyogenes. Rarely, gram-negative bacilli and anaerobes are isolated. Antibiotics may decrease the incidence and morbidity of acute mastoiditis. However, acute mastoiditis still occurs in children who are treated with antibiotics for an acute ear infection. In the Netherlands, where only 31% of AOM patients receive antibiotics, the incidence of acute mastoiditis is 4.2 per 100,000 person-years. In the United States, where more than 96% of patients with AOM receive antibiotics, the incidence of acute mastoiditis is 2 per 100,000 person-years. Despite the routine use of antibiotics, the incidence of acute mastoiditis has been rising in some cities. The pattern change may be secondary to the emergence of resistant S pneumoniae.

Differential Diagnosis

Lymphadenitis, parotitis, trauma, tumor, histiocytosis, OE, and furuncle.

Complications

Meningitis can be a complication of acute mastoiditis and should be suspected when a child has associated high fever, stiff neck, severe headache, or other meningeal signs. Lumbar puncture should be performed for diagnosis. Brain abscess occurs in 2% of mastoiditis patients and may be associated with persistent headaches, recurring fever, or changes in sensorium. Facial palsy, sigmoid sinus thrombosis, epidural abscess, cavernous sinus thrombosis, and thrombophlebitis may also be encountered.

» Treatment

In the preantibiotic era, up to 20% of patients with AOM developed mastoiditis requiring mastoidectomy. Now, the occurrence is 5 cases per 100,000 persons with AOM. Intravenous antibiotic treatment alone may be successful if there is no evidence of coalescence or abscess on CT. However, if there is no improvement within 24–48 hours, surgical intervention should be undertaken. Minimal surgical management starts with tympanostomy tube insertion, during which cultures are taken. If a subperiosteal abscess is present, incision and drainage is also performed, with or without a cortical mastoidectomy. Intracranial extension requires complete mastoidectomy with decompression of the involved area.

Antibiotic therapy (intravenous and topical ear drops) is instituted along with surgical management and relies on culture directed antibiotic therapy for 2–3 weeks. An antibiotic regimen should be chosen which is able to cross the blood-brain barrier. After significant clinical improvement is achieved with parenteral therapy, oral antibiotics are begun and should be continued for 2–3 weeks. A patent tympanostomy tube must also be maintained with continued use of otic drops until drainage abates.

» Prognosis

Prognosis for full recovery is good. Children that develop acute mastoiditis with abscess as their first ear infection are not necessarily prone to recurrent otitis media.

Chesney J, et al: What is the best practice for acute mastoiditis in children? Laryngoscope 2014 May;124(5):1057–1058 [PMID: 23852990].

Psarommatis IM, et al: Algorithmic management of pediatric acute mastoiditis. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol 2012;76: 791–796 [PMID: 22405376].

ACUTE TRAUMA TO THE MIDDLE EAR

Head injuries, a blow to the ear canal, sudden impact with water, blast injuries, or the insertion of pointed objects into the ear canal can lead to perforation of the TM, ossicular chain disruption, facial nerve injury, hearing loss, and hematoma of the middle ear. One study reports that 50% of serious penetrating wounds of the TM are due to parental use of a cotton swab.

Treatment of middle ear trauma consists mainly of watchful waiting. An audiogram may show a conductive hearing loss. Antibiotics are not necessary unless signs of infection appear. The prognosis for normal hearing depends on whether the ossicles have been dislocated or fractured. The patient needs to be followed with audiometry or by an otolaryngologist until hearing has returned to normal, which is expected within 6–8 weeks. A CT scan may be needed to evaluate the middle ear structures. Occasionally, middle ear trauma can lead to a perilymphatic fistula (PLF) which is disruption of the barrier between the middle ear and inner ear, usually in the area of the oval window. Symptoms include sudden hearing loss and vertigo. This requires emergent otolaryngology evaluation.

Traumatic TM perforations should be referred to an otolaryngologist for examination and hearing evaluation. Spontaneous healing may occur within 6 months of the perforation. If the perforation is clean and dry and there is no hearing change, there is no urgency for specialty evaluation. In the acute setting, antibiotic eardrops are often recommended to provide a moist environment which is thought to speed healing.

Foreign bodies in the ear are common, whether intentional (self-placement, placement by another child) or accidental (eg, insect, broken-off cotton swab after cleaning attempt).

CERUMEN IMPACTION & EAR CANAL FOREIGN BODY

Cerumen can also be obstructive, acting like a foreign body. If the cerumen or object is large or difficult to remove with available instruments, otolaryngology referral is recommended. Vegetable matter should never be irrigated as it can swell and become more difficult to remove. An emergency condition exists if the foreign body is a disk-type battery, such as those used in clocks, watches, and hearing aids. An electric current is generated in the moist canal, and a severe burn can occur in less than 4 hours. If the TM cannot be visualized, assume a perforation and avoid irrigation or ototoxic medications.

Sharpe SJ, Rochette LM, Smith GA: Pediatric battery-related emergency department visits in the United States, 1990–2009. Pediatrics 2012 Jun;129(6):1111–1117 [PMID: 22585763].

AURICULAR HEMATOMA

Trauma can result in formation of a hematoma between the perichondrium and cartilage of the pinna. This is different from a bruise, which does not change the ear shape and where the blood is in the soft tissue outside of the perichondrial layer. A hematoma appears as a boggy purple swelling of the cartilaginous auricle, and the normal folds of the ear are obscured. If untreated, necrosis of the underlying cartilage may occur, resulting in "cauliflower ear." To prevent this cosmetic deformity, physicians should urgently refer patients to an otolaryngologist for drainage and application of a carefully molded pressure dressing.

CONGENITAL EAR MALFORMATIONS

Atresia is agenesis of the EAC. This results in conductive hearing loss and should be evaluated within the first 3 months of life by an audiologist and otolaryngologist.

Microtia is the term used for an external ear that is small, collapsed, or only has an earlobe present. **Anotia** refers to an absent external ear. Often, there is an associated EAC atresia with microtia and anotia. Reconstruction can be performed in girls around age 6 and in boys around age 8–10 years.

"Lop ears," folded down, or protruding ears ("Dumbo ears") can be a source of much teasing and ridicule. Taping of the ears into correct anatomic position is very effective if performed in the first 72–96 hours of life. Tape is applied over a molding of wax and continued for 2 weeks. If this window of opportunity is missed or taping is unsuccessful, surgical correction, called an "otoplasty," can be performed.

An ear is considered "low-set" if the upper pole is below eyebrow level. This condition is often associated with other congenital anomalies, and in these patients a genetics evaluation should be considered.

Preauricular tags, ectopic cartilage, fistulas, and cysts require surgical correction primarily for cosmetic reasons. Children exhibiting any of these findings should have their hearing tested. Renal ultrasound should be considered, as external ear anomalies can be associated with renal anomalies, as both structures form during the same period of embryogenesis. Most preauricular pits cause no symptoms but can become infected. If one should become infected, the patient should receive antibiotic therapy and be referred to an otolaryngologist for eventual excision.

Brent B: Microtia repair with rib cartilage grafts: a review of personal experience with 1000 cases. Clin Plast Surg 2002;29:257 [Classic] [PMID: 12120682].

Fritsch MH: Incisionless otoplasty. Otolaryngol Clin North Am 2009;42(6):1199–1208 [PMID: 19962016].

Yotsuyanagi T et al: Nonsurgical treatment of various auricular deformities. Clin Plast Surg 2002;29:327 [Classic] [PMID: 12120687].

IDENTIFICATION & MANAGEMENT OF HEARING LOSS

Hearing loss is classified as being conductive, sensorineural, or mixed in nature. Conductive hearing loss occurs when sound transmission is blocked somewhere between the opening of the external ear and the cochlear receptor cells. The most common cause of conductive hearing loss in children is fluid in the middle ear. Sensorineural hearing loss is due to a defect in the neural transmission of sound, arising from a defect in the cochlear hair cells or the auditory nerve. Mixed hearing loss is characterized by elements of both conductive and sensorineural loss.

Hearing is measured in decibels (dB). The threshold, or 0 dB, refers to the level at which a sound is perceived in normal subjects 50% of the time. Hearing is considered normal if an individual's thresholds are within 20 dB of normal. In children, severity of hearing loss is commonly graded as follows: 20–40 dB mild, 41–55 dB moderate, 56–70 dB moderately severe, 71–90 dB severe, and 91+ dB profound.

Hearing loss can significantly impair a child's ability to communicate and hinder academic, social, and emotional development. Studies suggest that periods of auditory deprivation may have enduring effects on auditory processing, even after normal hearing is restored. Even a unilateral loss may be associated with difficulties in school and behavioral issues. Early identification and management of any hearing impairment is therefore critical.

Conductive Hearing Loss

The most common cause of childhood conductive hearing loss is otitis media and related conditions such as middle ear effusion (MEE) and Eustachian tube dysfunction. Other causes of conductive hearing loss may include external auditory canal atresia or stenosis, TM perforation, cerumen impaction, cholesteatoma, and middle ear abnormalities, such as ossicular fixation or discontinuity. Often, a conductive loss may be corrected with surgery.

MEE may be serous, mucoid, or purulent, as in acute otitis media. Effusions are generally associated with a mild conductive hearing loss that normalizes once the effusion is gone. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends that hearing and language skills be assessed in children who have recurrent acute otitis media or MEE lasting longer than 3 months.

Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Sensorineural hearing loss (SNHL) arises due to a defect in the cochlear receptor cells or the auditory nerve (cranial nerve VIII). The loss may be congenital (present at birth) or acquired. In both the congenital and acquired categories, the hearing loss may be either hereditary (due to a genetic mutation) or nonhereditary. It is estimated that SNHL affects 2–3 out of every 1000 live births, making this the most common congenital sensory impairment. The incidence is thought to be considerably higher among the neonatal intensive care unit population. Well-recognized risk factors for SNHL in neonates include positive family history of childhood SNHL, birthweight less than 1500 g, low Apgar scores (0–4 at 1 minute or 0–6 at 5 minutes), craniofacial anomalies, hypoxia, in-utero infections (eg, TORCH syndrome), hyperbilirubinemia requiring exchange transfusion, and mechanical ventilation for more than 5 days.

A. Congenital Hearing Loss

Nonhereditary causes account for approximately 50% of congenital hearing loss. These include prenatal infections, teratogenic drugs, and perinatal injuries. The other 50% is attributed to genetic factors. Among children with hereditary hearing loss, approximately one-third of cases are

thought to be due to a known syndrome, while the other two-thirds are considered nonsyndromic.

Syndromic hearing impairment is associated with malformations of the external ear or other organs, or with medical problems involving other organ systems. Over 400 genetic syndromes that include hearing loss have been described. All patients being evaluated for hearing loss should be also evaluated for features commonly associated with these syndromes. These include branchial cleft cysts or sinuses, preauricular pits, ocular abnormalities, white forelock, café au lait spots, and craniofacial anomalies. Some of the more frequently mentioned syndromes associated with congenital hearing loss include the following: Waardenburg, branchio-oto-renal, Usher, Pendred, Jervell and Lange-Nielsen, and Alport.

Over 70% of hereditary hearing loss is nonsyndromic (ie, there are no associated visible abnormalities or related medical problems). The most common known mutation associated with nonsyndromic hearing loss is in the GJB2 gene, which encodes the protein Connexin 26. The GJB2 mutation has a carrier rate of about 3% in the general population. Most nonsyndromic hearing loss, including that due to the GJB2 mutation, is autosomal recessive.

B. Acquired Hearing Loss

Hereditary hearing loss may be delayed in onset, as in Alport syndrome and most types of autosomal dominant nonsyndromic hearing loss. Vulnerability to aminoglycoside-induced hearing loss has also been linked to a mitochondrial gene defect.

Nongenetic etiologies for delayed-onset SNHL include exposure to ototoxic medications, meningitis, autoimmune or neoplastic conditions, noise exposure, and trauma. Infections such as syphilis or Lyme disease have been associated with hearing impairment. Hearing loss associated with congenital cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection may be present at birth, or may have a delayed onset. The loss is progressive in approximately half of all patients with congenital CMV-associated hearing loss. Other risk factors for delayed-onset, progressive loss include a history of persistent pulmonary hypertension and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation therapy.

Identification of Hearing Loss

A. Newborn Hearing Screening

Prior to the institution of universal newborn screening programs, the average age at identification of hearing loss was 30 months. Recognizing the importance of early detection, in 1993, a National Institutes of Health Consensus Panel recommended that all newborns be screened for hearing impairment prior to hospital discharge. Today, every state and territory in the United States has an Early Hearing Detection and Intervention (EHDI) program, with a goal of hearing loss identification by 3 months of age, and appropriate intervention by the age of 6 months. Subjective testing is not reliable in infants, and therefore objective, physiologic methods are used for screening. Auditory brainstem response and otoacoustic emission testing are the two commonly employed screening modalities.

B. Audiologic Evaluation of Infants and Children

A parent's report of his or her infant's behavior cannot be relied upon for identification of hearing loss. A deaf infant's behavior can appear normal and mislead parents as well as professionals. Deaf infants are often visually alert and able to scan the environment so actively that this can be mistaken for an appropriate response to sound. In children, signs of hearing loss include inconsistent response to sounds, not following directions, speech and language delays, and turning the volume up on televisions or radios. If there is any suspicion of hearing loss, it is important to refer the patient for formal audiometric testing by an audiologist who is experienced in testing the pediatric population.

Audiometry subjectively evaluates hearing. There are several different methods used, based on patient age:

- Behavioral observational audiometry (birth to 6 months): Sounds are presented at various intensity levels, and the audiologist watches closely for a reaction, such as change in respiratory rate, starting or stopping of activity, startle, head turn, or muscle tensing. This method is highly tester-dependent and error-prone.
- Visual reinforcement audiometry (6 months to 2.5 years): Auditory stimulus is paired with positive reinforcement. For example, when a child reacts appropriately by turning toward a sound source, the behavior is rewarded by activation of a toy that lights up. After a brief conditioning period, the child localizes toward the tone, if audible, in anticipation of the lighted toy.
- Conditioned play audiometry (2.5–5 years): The child responds to sound stimulus by performing an activity, such as putting a peg into a board.
- Conventional audiometry (5 years and up): The child indicates when he or she hears a sound.

Objective methods such as auditory brainstem response and otoacoustic emission testing may be used if a child cannot be reliably tested using the above methods.

Referral

A child who fails a hearing screening or has a suspected hearing loss should be referred for further audiologic evaluation, and any child with hearing loss should be referred to an otolaryngologist for further evaluation. In addition to the

infants who fall into the high-risk categories for SNHL as outlined earlier, hearing should be tested in children with a history of developmental delay, bacterial meningitis, ototoxic medication exposure, neurodegenerative disorders, or a history of infection such as mumps or measles. Children with bacterial meningitis should be referred immediately to an otolaryngologist, as cochlear ossification can necessitate urgent cochlear implantation. Even if a newborn screening was passed, all infants who fall into a high-risk category for progressive or delayed-onset hearing loss should receive ongoing audiologic monitoring for 3 years and at appropriate intervals thereafter to avoid a missed diagnosis.

Prevention

Appropriate care may treat or prevent conditions causing hearing deficits. Aminoglycosides and diuretics, particularly in combination, are potentially ototoxic and should be used judiciously and monitored carefully. Given the association of a mitochondrial gene defect with aminoglycoside ototoxicity, use should be avoided, if possible, in patients with a family history of aminoglycoside-related hearing loss. Reduction of repeated exposure to loud noises may prevent high-frequency hearing loss associated with acoustic trauma. Any patient with sudden-onset SNHL should be seen by an otolaryngologist immediately, as in some cases, steroid therapy may reverse the loss if initiated right away.

Management of Hearing Loss

Children with hearing loss should be referred to an otolaryngologist for etiologic workup which may include radiographic imaging and/or laboratory tests. Workup is directed by each individual patient's history, examination and audiometric results. As discussed earlier, hearing loss may be an isolated abnormality or may be part of a larger syndrome. Within the past several years, comprehensive genetic testing for syndromic and nonsyndromic hearing loss using next-generation sequencing technology has become available to the public.

The importance of early intervention for receptive and expressive language development is well established. Management depends upon the type and severity of the impairment. Conductive hearing loss is typically correctable by addressing the point in sound transmission at which efficiency is compromised. For example, hearing loss due to chronic effusions usually normalizes once the fluid has cleared, whether by natural means or by the placement of tympanostomy tubes. As of yet, SNHL is not reversible. Most sensorineural loss is managed with amplification. Cochlear implantation is an option for some children with severe-profound loss, and is FDA approved down to the age of 12 months. Unlike hearing aids, cochlear implants do not amplify sound, but directly stimulate the cochlea with electrical impulses. Children with hearing loss should receive ongoing audiologic monitoring.

Web Resources

Smith RJH, Shearer AE, Hildebrand MS, Van Camp G: Deafness and hereditary hearing loss overview. Last update January 9, 2014. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK1434/ Accessed April 3, 2015.

http://www.infanthearing.org/screening/. Accessed April 3, 2015.

http://www.asha.org/public/hearing/Prevalence-and-Incidence-of-Hearing-Loss-in-Children/. Accessed April 3, 2015.

http://www.medicine.uiowa.edu/morl/otoscope/. Accessed April 3, 2015.

THE NOSE & PARANASAL SINUSES

ACUTE VIRAL RHINITIS (COMMON COLD; SEE ALSO CHAPTER 40)

The common cold (viral upper respiratory infection) is the most common pediatric infectious disease, and the incidence is higher in early childhood than in any other period of life. Children younger than 5 years typically have 6–12 colds per year. Approximately 30%–40% of these are caused by rhinoviruses. Other culprits include adenoviruses, coronaviruses, enteroviruses, influenza and parainfluenza viruses, and respiratory syncytial virus.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Clear or mucoid rhinorrhea, nasal congestion, sore throat.
- Possible fever, particularly in younger children (under 5–6 years).
- Symptoms resolve by 7–10 days.

Differential Diagnosis

Rhinosinusitis (acute or chronic), allergic rhinitis, nonallergic rhinitis, influenza, pneumonia, gastroesophageal reflux disease, asthma, and bronchitis.

Clinical Findings

The patient usually experiences a sudden onset of clear or mucoid rhinorrhea, nasal congestion, sneezing, and sore

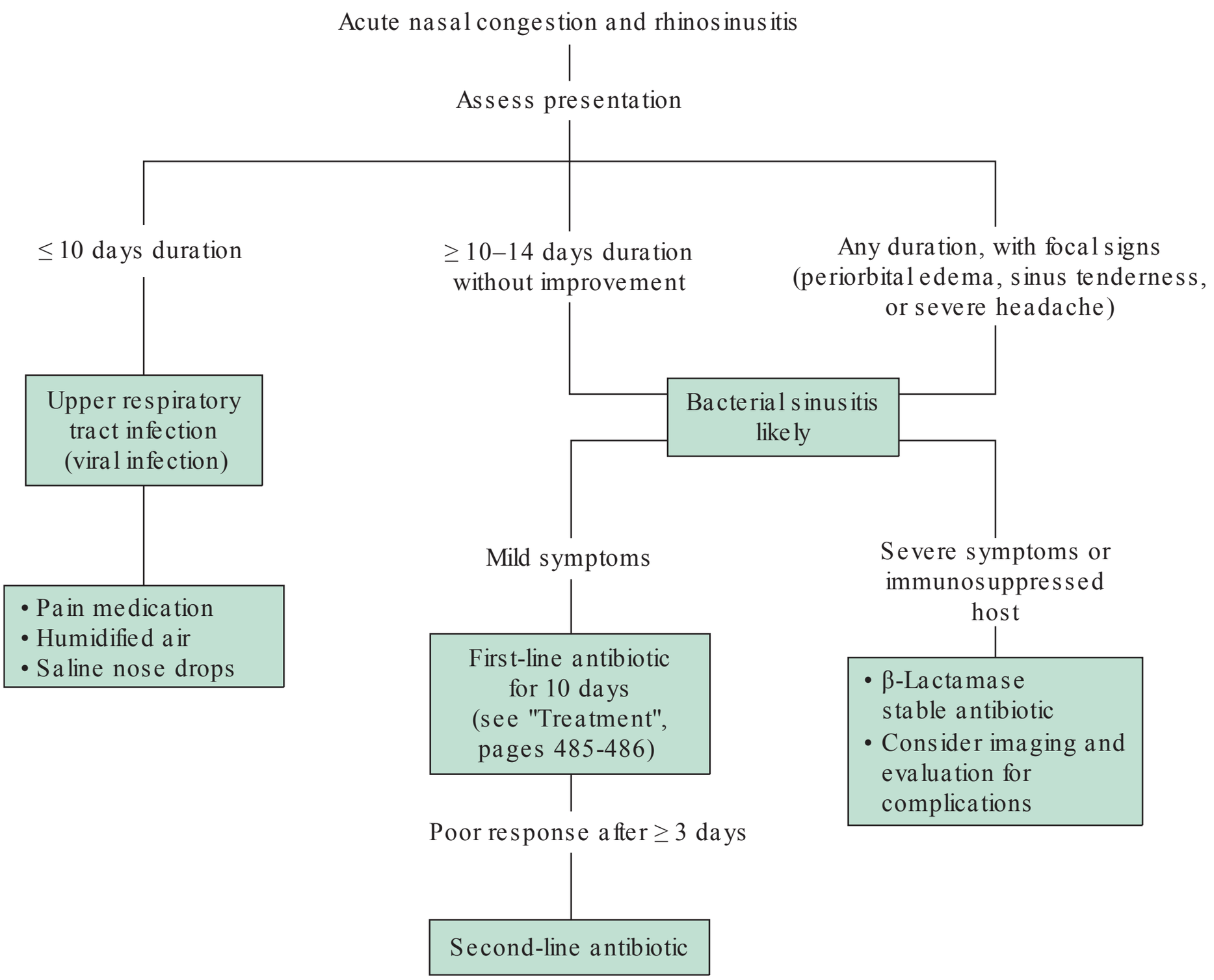
throat. Cough or fever may develop. Although fever is not a prominent feature in older children and adults, in the first 5 or 6 years of life it can be as high as 40.6°C without superinfection. The nose, throat, and TMs may appear red and inflamed. The average duration of symptoms is about 1 week. Nasal secretions tend to become thicker and more purulent after day 2 of infection due to shedding of epithelial cells and influx of neutrophils. This discoloration should not be assumed to be a sign of bacterial rhinosinusitis, unless it persists beyond 10–14 days, by which time the patient should be experiencing significant symptomatic improvement. A mild cough may persist for 2–3 weeks following resolution of other symptoms.

» Treatment

Treatment for the common cold is symptomatic (Figure 18–5). Because colds are viral infections, antibiotics are not helpful. Acetaminophen or ibuprofen can relieve fever and pain. Humidification may provide relief for congestion and cough. Nasal saline drops and bulb suctioning may be used for an infant or child unable to blow his or her nose.

Available scientific data suggest that over-the-counter cold and cough medications are generally not effective in children and may be associated with serious adverse effects. Use in children younger than 4 years is not recommended. Antihistamines have not proven effective in relieving cold symptoms; in rhinoviral colds, increased levels of histamine are not observed. Oral decongestants may provide some symptomatic relief in adults but have not been well studied in children. Studies have shown that most cough medicines are no better than placebo and use of narcotic antitussives is discouraged, as these may be associated with respiratory depression. There is no convincing evidence that naturopathic or alternative therapies are effective in children.

Only time cures the common cold. Education and reassurance may be the most important "therapy" for parents. They should be informed about the expected nature and duration of symptoms, efficacy and potential side effects of medications, and the signs and symptoms of complications of the common cold, such as bacterial rhinosinusitis, bronchiolitis, or pneumonia.



▲**Figure 18–5.** Algorithm for acute nasal congestion and rhinosinusitis.

Kenealy T, Arroll B: Antibiotics for the common cold and acute purulent rhinitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013 Jun 4;6:CD000247. doi: 10.1002/14651858. CD000247.pub3 [PMID: 23733381].

Taverner D, Latte J: Nasal decongestants for the common cold. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;(1):CD001953 [PMID: 17253470].

Web Resources:

U.S. Food and Drug Administration: Using over-the-counter cough and cold products in children. Posted Oct 22, 2008. http://www.fda.gov/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm048515.htm. Accessed April 3, 2015.

RHINOSINUSITIS

The use of the term rhinosinusitis has replaced sinusitis. Rhinosinusitis acknowledges that the nasal and sinus mucosa are involved in similar and concurrent inflammatory processes.

1. Acute Bacterial Rhinosinusitis

Acute bacterial rhinosinusitis (ABRS) is a bacterial infection of the paranasal sinuses which lasts less than 30 days and in which the symptoms resolve completely. It is almost always preceded by a cold. Other predisposing conditions include allergies and trauma. The diagnosis of ABRS is made when a cold does not improve by 10–14 days or worsens after 5–7 days. The maxillary and ethmoid sinuses are most commonly involved. These sinuses are present at birth. The sphenoid sinuses typically form by the age of 5 years, and the frontal sinuses by age 7–8 years. Frontal sinusitis is unusual before age 10 years.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Upper respiratory infection symptoms are present 10 or more days beyond onset, or symptoms worsen within 10 days after an initial period of improvement.
- Symptoms may include nasal congestion, nasal drainage, postnasal drainage, facial pain, headache, and fever.
- Symptoms resolve completely within 30 days.

» Pathogenesis

Situations which lead to inflammation of sinonasal mucosa and obstruction of sinus drainage underlie the development of rhinosinusitis. A combination of anatomic, mucosal, microbial, and immune factors are believed to be involved. Both viral and bacterial infections play integral roles in the pathogenesis. Viral upper respiratory infections may cause sinus mucosal injury and swelling, resulting in sinus outflow obstruction, loss of ciliary activity, and mucous hypersecretion. The bacterial pathogens that commonly cause acute rhinosinusitis are S pneumoniae, H influenzae (nontypeable), M catarrhalis, and β-hemolytic streptococci.

» Clinical Findings

The onset of symptoms in ABRS may be gradual or sudden, and commonly include nasal drainage, nasal congestion, facial pressure or pain, postnasal drainage, hyposmia or anosmia, fever, cough, fatigue, maxillary dental pain, and ear pressure or fullness. The physical examination is rarely helpful in making the diagnosis, as the findings are essentially the same as those in a child with an uncomplicated cold.

In complicated or immunocompromised patients, sinus aspiration and culture by an otolaryngologist should be considered for diagnostic purposes and to facilitate culture-directed antibiotic therapy. Gram stain or culture of nasal discharge does not necessarily correlate with cultures of sinus aspirates. If the patient is hospitalized because of rhinosinusitis-related complications, blood cultures should also be obtained.

Imaging of the sinuses during acute illness is not indicated except when evaluating for possible complications, or for patients with persistent symptoms which do not respond to medical therapy. As with the physical examination, the radiographic findings of ABRS, such as sinus opacification, fluid, and mucosal thickening, are indistinguishable from those seen in the common cold.

» Complications

Complications of ABRS occur when infection spreads to adjacent structures, such as the eye and the brain. S aureus (including methicillin-resistant S aureus) is frequently implicated in complicated ABRS, as well as Streptococcus anginosus (milleri), which has been found to be a particularly virulent organism.

Orbital complications are the most common, arising from the ethmoid sinuses. These complications usually begin as a preseptal cellulitis, but can progress to postseptal cellulitis, subperiosteal abscess, orbital abscess, and cavernous sinus thrombosis. Associated signs and symptoms include eyelid edema, restricted extraocular movements, proptosis, chemosis, and altered visual acuity (see Chapter 16).

The most common complication of frontal sinusitis is osteitis of the frontal bone, also known as Pott's puffy tumor. Intracranial extension of infection can lead to meningitis and to epidural, subdural, and brain abscesses. Frequently, children with complicated rhinosinusitis have no prior history of sinus infection.

» Treatment

For children with cold symptoms that are not improving by 10 days, observation for up to 3 more days or antibiotic

therapy may be chosen, depending upon individual circumstances, such as ability to follow up and treat with antibiotics if needed. For children with uncomplicated ABRS who have worsening or severe symptoms (fever of at least 39°C and purulent nasal drainage for at least 3 consecutive days), antibiotic therapy is recommended. Although some discrepancy exists, antibiotics are generally thought to decrease duration and severity of symptoms.

First-line antibiotic therapy should be amoxicillin or amoxicillin-clavulanate. Cefuroxime, cefpodoxime, and cefdinir are recommended for patients with a non–type I hypersensitivity to penicillin, and in most cases may be safely used in patients with an anaphylactoid reaction, as recent studies seem to indicate almost no risk of a serious reaction to second- and third-generation cephalosporins among these patients. Other agents which may be used, particularly in more severe cases where resistant S pneumoniae and H influenzae are suspected, include clindamycin, linezolid, and quinolone antibiotics. Due to high resistance of S pneumoniae and H influenzae, the use of trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole and azithromycin is not advised.

Duration of therapy should be for 7 days after symptoms have resolved.

Failure to improve after 48–72 hours of antibiotic therapy suggests a resistant organism or potential complication. Second-line therapies should be initiated at this point, or, if the patient is already on amoxicillin–clavulanate or a cephalosporin, intravenous antibiotic therapy should be considered. Imaging and referral for sinus aspiration should be strongly considered as well.

Patients who are toxic, or who have evidence of invasive infection or CNS complications, should be hospitalized immediately. Intravenous therapy with nafcillin or clindamycin plus a third-generation cephalosporin such as cefotaxime should be initiated until culture results become available.

Decongestants, antihistamines, and nasal saline irrigations are frequently used in acute rhinosinusitis to promote drainage. To date, there are no methodologically sound studies supporting their efficacy in children. If used, topical nasal decongestants, such as oxymetazoline or phenylephrine sprays, should not be used for more than 3 days due to risk of rebound edema. Patients with underlying allergic rhinitis may benefit from intranasal cromolyn or corticosteroid nasal spray.

Shaikh N, Wald ER, M Pi: Decongestants, antihistamines and nasal irrigation for acute sinusitis in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012; 9:CD007909. DOA:10.1002/14651858.CD007909.pub3 [PMID: 23076918].

Wald ER et al: Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of acute bacterial sinusitis in children aged 1 to 18 years. Pediatrics 2013; 134:e262–e280 [PMID:23796742].

2. Recurrent or Chronic Rhinosinusitis

Recurrent rhinosinusitis occurs when episodes of ABRS clear for at least 10 days but recur at least 4 times per year. Chronic rhinosinusitis (CRS) is diagnosed when the child has not cleared the infection in 90 days, but has not developed acute complications. Both symptoms and physical findings are required to support the diagnosis, and CT scan may be a useful in making the diagnosis. Although recent meta-analysis evaluations have resulted in recommendations for ABRS, there is a paucity of data for the treatment of recurrent or chronic rhinosinusitis. Important factors to consider include allergies, anatomic variations, and disorders in host immunity. Mucosal inflammation leading to obstruction is most commonly caused by allergic rhinitis and occasionally by nonallergic rhinitis. There is a great deal of evidence that allergic rhinitis, rhinosinusitis, and asthma are all manifestations of a systemic inflammatory response. Gastroesophageal reflux has also been implicated in chronic rhinosinusitis. Less commonly, chronic rhinosinusitis is caused by anatomic variations, such as septal deviation, polyp, or foreign body.

Allergic nasal polyps are unusual in children younger than 10 years and should prompt a workup for cystic fibrosis. In cases of chronic or recurrent pyogenic pansinusitis, poor host resistance (eg, an immune defect, primary ciliary dyskinesia, or cystic fibrosis)—though rare—must be ruled out by immunoglobulin studies, electron microscopy studies of respiratory cilia, nasal nitric oxide measurements if available, a sweat chloride test, and genetic testing (see Chapters 18 and 31). Anaerobic and staphylococcal organisms are often responsible for chronic rhinosinusitis. Evaluation by an allergist and an otolaryngologist may be useful in determining the underlying causes.

» Treatment

A. Medical Therapy

Antibiotic therapy is similar to that used for ABRS, but the duration is longer, typically 3–4 weeks. Antimicrobial choice should include drugs effective against staphylococcal organisms. Nasal saline irrigations and intranasal steroid sprays have been shown to be helpful in the reduction of symptoms of CRS.

B. Surgical Therapy

The mainstay of treatment for pediatric CRS is medical management, with appropriate antibiotic therapy and treatment of comorbid conditions such as allergic rhinitis and asthma. Only a small percentage of children will warrant surgical management.

1. Antral lavage—Antral lavage, generally regarded as a diagnostic procedure, may have some therapeutic value. An

aspirate or a sample from the maxillary sinus is retrieved under anesthesia. The maxillary sinus is then irrigated. In the very young child, this may be the only procedure performed.

2. Adenoidectomy—Adenoidectomy is thought to be effective in 50%–75% of children with chronic rhinosinusitis. The adenoids serve as a reservoir of pathogenic bacteria and may also interfere with mucociliary clearance and drainage. Biofilms have been reported in the adenoids of children with chronic rhinosinusitis and may explain the resistance of these infections to standard antibiotic therapy.

3. Balloon catheter dilation—This procedure opens up the maxillary sinuses without removal of tissue to promote drainage. Preliminary studies indicate that this may be effective in children who have failed adenoidectomy.

4. Endoscopic sinus surgery—Endoscopic sinus surgery in children was controversial because of concerns regarding facial growth. However, recent studies have not supported this concern. Endoscopic sinus surgery is reported to be effective in over 80% of cases, and may be indicated if adenoidectomy or balloon dilation is not effective.

5. External drainage—External drainage procedures are reserved for complications arising from ethmoid and frontal sinusitis.

Harvey R, Hannan SA, Badia L, Scadding G: Nasal saline irrigations for the symptoms of chronic rhinosinusitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;3:CD006394. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD006394.pub2 [PMID: 17636843].

Makary CA, Ramadan HH: The role of sinus surgery in children. Laryngoscope Epub 2013;123(6):1348–1352 [PMID: 23361382].

Snidvongs K, Kalish L, Sacks R, Craig JC, Harvey RJ: Topical steroid for chronic rhinosinusitis without polyps. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011;8:CD009274. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD009274 [PMID: 21833974].

CHOANAL ATRESIA

Choanal atresia occurs in approximately 1 in 7000 live births. The female-male ratio is 2:1, as is the unilateral-bilateral ratio. Bilateral atresia results in severe respiratory distress at birth and requires immediate placement of an oral airway or intubation, and otolaryngology consultation for surgical treatment. Unilateral atresia usually appears later as a unilateral chronic nasal discharge that may be mistaken for chronic rhinosinusitis. Diagnosis may be suspected if a 6F catheter cannot be passed through the nose and is confirmed by axial CT scan. Approximately 50% of patients with bilateral choanal atresia have CHARGE association (**C**oloboma, **H**eart disease, **A**tresia of the choanae, **R**etarded growth and retarded development or CNS anomalies, **G**enital hypoplasia, and **E**ar anomalies or deafness) (see Chapter 18) or other congenital anomalies.

RECURRENT RHINITIS

Recurrent rhinitis is frequently seen in the office practice of pediatrics. The child is brought in with the chief complaint of having "one cold after another," "constant colds," or "always being sick." Approximately, two-thirds of these children have recurrent colds; the rest have either allergic rhinitis or recurrent rhinosinusitis.

1. Allergic Rhinitis

Allergic rhinitis is a chronic disorder of the upper airway which is induced by IgE-mediated inflammation secondary to allergen exposure. It is more common in children than in adults and affects up to 40% of children in the United States. It significantly affects quality of life, interfering with physical and social activities, concentration, school performance, and sleep. Allergic rhinitis can contribute to the development of rhinosinusitis, otitis media, and asthma. Symptoms may include nasal congestion, sneezing, rhinorrhea, and itchy nose, palate, throat, and eyes. On physical examination the nasal turbinates are swollen and may be red or pale pink-purple. Several classes of medications have proven effective in treating allergic rhinitis, including intranasal corticosteroids, oral and intranasal antihistamines, leukotriene antagonists, and decongestants. Ipratropium nasal spray may also be used as an adjunctive therapy. Nasal saline rinses are helpful to wash away allergens. Recent studies have indicated that use of intranasal steroid sprays may not only decrease the impairment caused by allergic rhinitis symptoms, but also help prevent progression to more severe disease and decrease the risk of related comorbidities such as asthma and sleep-disordered breathing.

2. Nonallergic Rhinitis

Nonallergic rhinitis also causes rhinorrhea and nasal congestion, but does not seem to involve an immunologic reaction. Its mechanism is not well understood. Triggers can include sudden changes in environmental temperature, air pollution, and other irritants such as tobacco smoke. Medications can also be associated with nonallergic rhinitis. Nasal decongestant sprays, when used for long periods of time can cause rhinitis medicamentosa, which is a rebound nasal congestion which can be very difficult to treat. Oral decongestants, nasal corticosteroids, antihistamines, and ipratropium spray have all been shown to offer symptomatic relief.

Rachelefsky G, Farrar JR: A control model to evaluate pharmacotherapy for allergic rhinitis in children. JAMA Pediatrics 2013;167(4):380–386 [PMID: 23440263].

Web Resources:

American Academy of Allergy, Asthma, and Immunology: Rhinitis (Hay Fever): Tips to remember. http://www.aaaai.org/patients/publicedmat/tips/rhinitis.stm. Accessed April 3, 2015.

EPISTAXIS

The nose is a highly vascular structure. In most cases, epistaxis (nosebleed) arises from the anterior portion of the nasal septum (Kiesselbach area). It is often due to dryness, nose rubbing, nose blowing, or nose picking. Examination of the anterior septum usually reveals a red, raw surface with fresh clots or old crusts. Presence of telangiectasias, hemangiomas, or varicosities should also be noted. If a patient has been using a nasal corticosteroid spray, check the patient's technique to make sure he or she is not directing the spray toward the septum. If proper technique does not reduce the nosebleeds, the spray should be discontinued.

In fewer than 5% of cases, epistaxis is caused by a bleeding disorder such as von Willebrand disease. A hematologic workup is warranted if any of the following is present: family history of a bleeding disorder; medical history of easy bleeding, particularly with circumcision or dental extraction; spontaneous bleeding at any site; bleeding that lasts for more than 30 minutes or blood that will not clot with direct pressure by the physician; onset before age 2 years; or a drop in hematocrit due to epistaxis. High blood pressure may rarely predispose to prolonged nosebleeds in children.

Juvenile nasopharyngeal angiofibroma (JNA) is a benign, but often aggressive, tumor that tends to bleed and may present as recurrent epistaxis (45%–60%). JNA is only seen in males; females with JNA should undergo genetic testing. CT and MRI are diagnostic.

» Treatment

The patient should sit up and lean forward so as not to swallow the blood. Swallowed blood may cause nausea and hematemesis. The nasal cavity should be cleared of clots by gentle blowing. The soft part of the nose below the nasal bones is pinched and held firmly enough to prevent arterial blood flow, with pressure over the bleeding site (anterior septum) being maintained for 5 minutes. For persistent bleeding, a one-time only application of oxymetazoline into the nasal cavity may be helpful. If bleeding continues, the bleeding site needs to be visualized. A small piece of gelatin sponge (Gelfoam) or collagen sponge (Surgicel) can be inserted over the bleeding site and held in place.

Friability of the nasal vessels is often due to dryness and can be decreased by increasing nasal moisture. This can be accomplished by daily application of a water-based ointment to the nose. A pea-sized amount of ointment is placed just inside the nose and spread by gently squeezing the nostrils. Twice-daily nasal saline irrigation and humidifier use may also be helpful. Aspirin and ibuprofen should be avoided, as should nose picking and vigorous nose blowing. Otolaryngology referral is indicated for refractory cases. Cautery of the nasal vessels is reserved for treatment failures.

NASAL INFECTION

A nasal furuncle is an infection of a hair follicle in the anterior nares. Hair plucking or nose picking can provide a route of entry. The most common organism is S aureus. A furuncle presents as an exquisitely tender, firm, red lump in the anterior nares. Treatment includes dicloxacillin or cephalexin orally for 5 days to prevent spread. The lesion should be gently incised and drained as soon as it points with a sterile needle. Topical antibiotic ointment may be of additional value. Because this lesion is in the drainage area of the cavernous sinus, the patient should be followed closely until healing is complete. Parents should be advised never to pick or squeeze a furuncle in this location—and neither should the physician. Associated cellulitis or spread requires hospitalization for administration of intravenous antibiotics.

A nasal septal abscess usually follows nasal trauma or a nasal furuncle. Examination reveals fluctuant gray septal swelling, which is usually bilateral. The possible complications are the same as for nasal septal hematoma (see following discussion). In addition, spread of the infection to the CNS is possible. Treatment consists of immediate hospitalization, incision and drainage by an otolaryngologist, and antibiotic therapy.

NASAL TRAUMA

Newborn infants rarely present with subluxation of the quadrangular cartilage of the septum. In this disorder, the top of the nose deviates to one side, the inferior septal border deviates to the other side, the columella leans, and the nasal tip is unstable. This disorder must be distinguished from the more common transient flattening of the nose caused by the birth process. In the past, physicians were encouraged to reduce all subluxations in the nursery. Otolaryngologists are more likely to perform the reduction under anesthesia for more difficult cases.

After nasal trauma, it is essential to examine the inside of the nose in order to rule out hematoma of the nasal septum, as this can quickly lead to septal necrosis, causing permanent nasal deformity. This diagnosis is confirmed by the abrupt onset of nasal obstruction following trauma and the presence of a boggy, widened nasal septum. The normal nasal septum is only 2–4 mm thick. A cotton swab can be used to palpate the septum. Treatment consists of immediate referral to an otolaryngologist for drainage and packing of the nose.

Most blows to the nose result in epistaxis without fracture. A persistent nosebleed after trauma, crepitus, instability of the nasal bones, and external deformity of the nose indicate fracture. Septal injury cannot be ruled out by radiography, and can only be ruled out by careful intranasal examination. Patients with suspected nasal fractures should be referred to an otolaryngologist for definitive therapy.

Since the nasal bones begin healing immediately, the child must be seen by an otolaryngologist within 48–72 hours of the injury to allow time to arrange for fracture reduction before the bones become immobile.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE NOSE

If this diagnosis is delayed, unilateral foul-smelling rhinorrhea, halitosis, bleeding, or nasal obstruction often result.

There are many ways to remove nasal foreign bodies. The obvious first maneuver is vigorous nose blowing if the child is old enough. The next step in removal requires nasal decongestion, good lighting, correct instrumentation, and physical restraint. Topical tetracaine or lidocaine may be used for anesthesia in young children. Nasal decongestion can be achieved by topical phenylephrine or oxymetazoline. When the child is properly restrained, most nasal foreign bodies can be removed using a pair of alligator forceps or right-angle instrument through an operating head otoscope. If the object seems unlikely to be removed on the first attempt, is wedged in, or is quite large, the patient should be referred to an otolaryngologist rather than worsening the situation through futile attempts at removal.

Because the nose is a moist cavity, the electrical current generated by disk-type batteries—such as those used in clocks, watches, and hearing aids—can cause necrosis of mucosa and cartilage destruction in less than 4 hours. Batteries constitute a true foreign body emergency.

THE THROAT & ORAL CAVITY

ACUTE STOMATITIS

1. Recurrent Aphthous Stomatitis

Aphthous ulcers, or canker sores, are small painful ulcers (3–10 mm) usually found on the inner aspect of the lips or on the tongue; rarely they may appear on the tonsils or palate. There is usually no associated fever or cervical adenopathy. They can last 1–2 weeks and may recur numerous times throughout life. The cause is unknown, although an allergic or autoimmune basis is suspected.

A topical corticosteroid, such as triamcinolone dental paste, may reduce duration of the lesion. Pain can also be reduced by eating a bland diet, avoiding salty or acidic foods and juices, and by taking acetaminophen or ibuprofen. A recent Cochrane review was unable to promote a single systemic treatment for those unresponsive to local therapy.

Less common causes of recurrent oral ulcers include Behçet disease, familial Mediterranean fever, and PFAPA syndrome (**P**eriodic **F**ever, **A**phthous stomatitis, **P**haryngitis, and cervical **A**denopathy). PFAPA syndrome was first described in 1987, and its cause is unknown, although an immune etiology is suspected. It usually begins before the age of 5 years, continues through adolescence, and then spontaneously resolves. Fever and other symptoms recur at regular intervals. Episodes last approximately 5 days and are not associated with other URI symptoms or illnesses. Episodes may be dramatically improved with prednisone bursts, but recurrences typically continue. PFAPA may resolve with prolonged cimetidine treatment. Tonsillectomy has been shown to be effective in curing this condition. Otolaryngology referral is appropriate.

A diagnosis of Behçet disease requires two of the following: genital ulcers, uveitis, and erythema nodosum–like lesions. Patients with Mediterranean fever usually have a positive family history, serosal involvement, and recurrent fever.

Brocklehurst P et al: Systemic interventions for recurrent aphthous stomatitis (mouth ulcers). Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Sep 12;9:CD005411. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD005411.pub2 [Review] [PMID: 22972085].

Burton MJ, Pollard AJ, Ramsden JD, Chong LY, Venekamp RP: Tonsillectomy for periodic fever, aphthous stomatitis, pharyngitis and cervical adenitis syndrome (PFAPA). Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014 Sep 11;9:CD008669. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD008669.pub2. Review [PMID: 25209127].

Licameli G, Lawton M, Kenna M, Dedeoglu F: Long-term surgical outcomes of adenotonsillectomy for PFAPA syndrome. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2012 Oct;138(10):902–906. doi: 10.1001/2013.jamaoto.313 [PMID: 23069819].

2. Herpes Simplex Gingivostomatitis (See Chapter 40 Infections: Viral & Rickettsial)

3. Thrush (See Chapter 43 Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic)

4. Traumatic Oral Ulcers

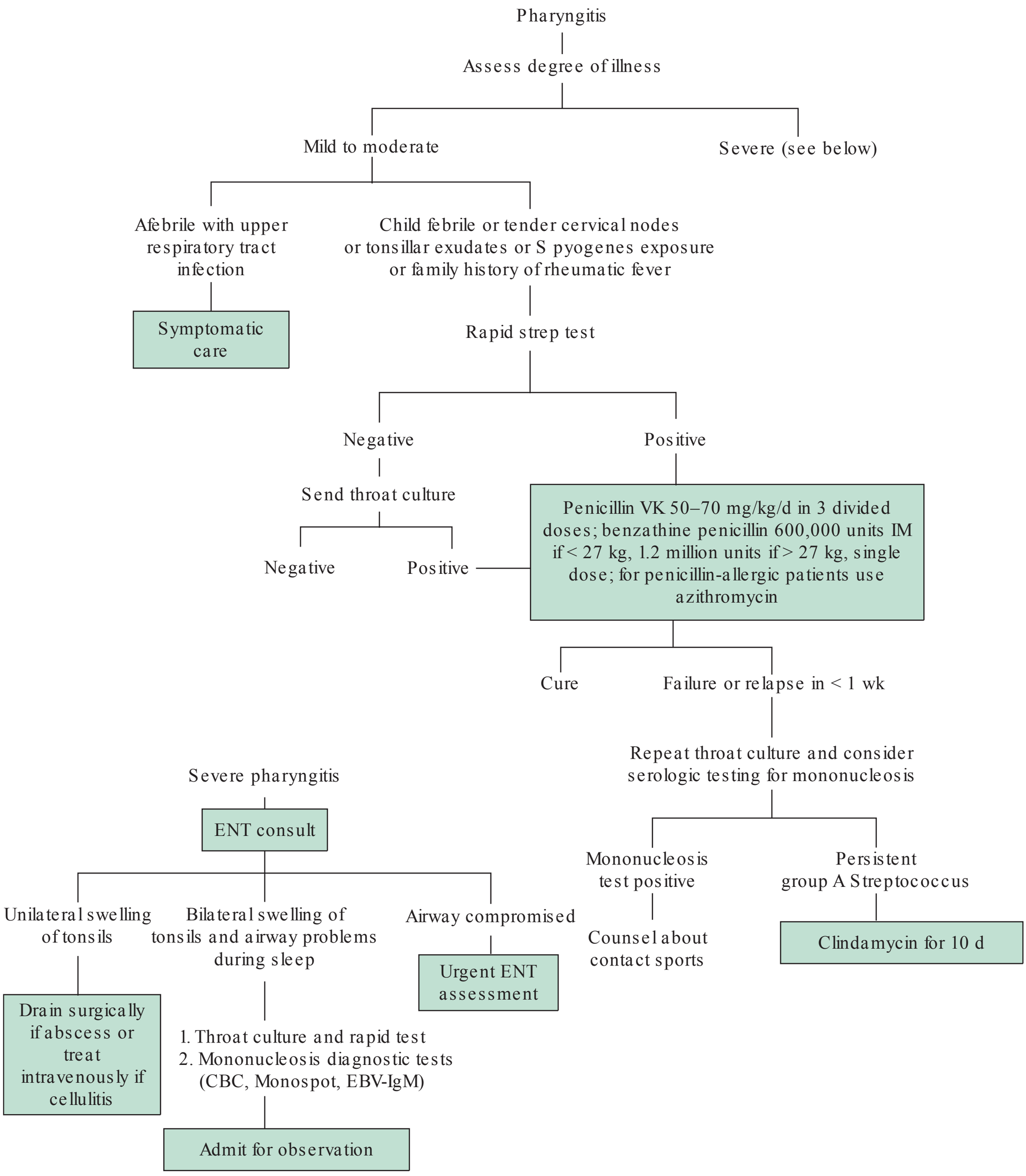
Mechanical trauma most commonly occurs on the buccal mucosa secondary to biting by the molars. Thermal trauma, from very hot foods, can also cause ulcerative lesions. Chemical ulcers can be produced by mucosal contact with aspirin or other caustic agents. Oral ulcers can occur with leukemia or on a recurrent basis with cyclic neutropenia.

PHARYNGITIS

Figure 18–6 is an algorithm for the management of a sore throat.

1. Acute Viral Pharyngitis

Over 90% of sore throats and fever in children are due to viral infections. The findings seldom point toward any particular viral agent, but four types of viral pharyngitis are sufficiently distinctive to warrant discussion below.



▲**Figure 18–6.** Algorithm for pharyngitis. CBC, complete blood count; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; ENT, ear, nose, and throat.

» Clinical Findings

A. Infectious Mononucleosis

Findings include exudative tonsillitis, generalized cervical adenitis, and fever, usually in patients older than 5 years. A palpable spleen or axillary adenopathy increases the likelihood of the diagnosis. The presence of more than 10% atypical lymphocytes on a peripheral blood smear or a positive mononucleosis spot test supports the diagnosis, although these tests are often falsely negative in children younger than 5 years. Epstein-Barr virus serology showing an elevated IgM-capsid antibody is definitive. Amoxicillin is contraindicated in patients suspected of having mononucleosis because the drug often precipitates a rash.

B. Herpangina

Herpangina ulcers are classically 3 mm in size, surrounded by a halo and are found on the anterior tonsillar pillars, soft palate, and uvula; the anterior mouth and tonsils are spared. Herpangina is caused by the Coxsackie A group of viruses. Enteroviral polymerase chain reaction testing is widely available, but not typically indicated, as herpangina is a self-limited illness.

C. Hand, Foot, and Mouth Disease

This entity is caused by several enteroviruses, one of which (enterovirus 71) can rarely cause encephalitis. Ulcers occur anywhere in the mouth. Vesicles, pustules, or papules may be found on the palms, soles, interdigital areas, and buttocks. In younger children lesions may be seen on the distal extremities and even the face.

D. Pharyngoconjunctival Fever

This disorder is caused by an adenovirus and often is epidemic. Exudative tonsillitis, conjunctivitis, lymphadenopathy, and fever are the main findings. Treatment is symptomatic.

2. Acute Bacterial Pharyngitis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Sore throat
- At least one of the following:
  a. Cervical lymphadenopathy (lymph nodes tender or > 2 cm)
  b. Tonsillar exudates
  c. Positive group A β-hemolytic streptococcus culture
  d. Fever > 38.3°C

» Differential Diagnosis

Viral pharyngitis, infectious mononucleosis, bacterial pharyngitis other than streptococcal, diphtheria, and peritonsillar abscess.

Approximately 20%–30% of children with pharyngitis have a group A streptococcal infection. It is most common in children between 5 and 15 years in the winter or early spring. Less common causes of bacterial pharyngitis include Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae, groups C and G streptococci, and Arcanobacterium hemolyticum. Of the five, M pneumoniae is by far the most common and may cause over one-third of all pharyngitis cases in adolescents and adults.

» Clinical Findings

Sudden onset of sore throat, fever, tender cervical adenopathy, palatal petechiae, a beefy-red uvula, and a tonsillar exudate suggest streptococcal infection. Other symptoms may include headache, stomachache, nausea, and vomiting. The only way to make a definitive diagnosis is by throat culture or rapid antigen test. Rapid antigen tests are very specific, but have a sensitivity of only 85%–95%. Therefore, a positive test indicates S pyogenes infection, but a negative result requires confirmation by performing a culture. Diagnosis is important because untreated streptococcal pharyngitis can result in acute rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis, and suppurative complications (eg, cervical adenitis, peritonsillar abscess, otitis media, cellulitis, and septicemia). The presence of conjunctivitis, cough, hoarseness, symptoms of upper respiratory infection, anterior stomatitis, ulcerative lesions, viral rash, and diarrhea should raise suspicion of a viral etiology.

Occasionally, a child with group A streptococcal infection develops scarlet fever within 24–48 hours after the onset of symptoms. Scarlet fever is a diffuse, finely papular, erythematous eruption producing a bright red discoloration of the skin, which blanches on pressure. The rash is more intense in the skin creases. The tongue has a strawberry appearance.

A controversial but possible complication of streptococcal infections is pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with Streptococcus (PANDAS). PANDAS is a relatively newly recognized condition. It describes a subset of pediatric patients who experience a sudden onset of obsessive-compulsive disorder and/or tics, or worsening of such symptoms in children who previously had these, following a strep infection.

» Treatment

Suspected or proven group A streptococcal infection should be treated with penicillin (oral or intramuscular) or

amoxicillin as outlined in Table 18–4. For patients allergic to penicillin, alternative treatments include cephalexin, azithromycin, and clindamycin.

Repeat culture after treatment is not recommended and is indicated only for those who remain symptomatic, have a recurrence of symptoms, or have had rheumatic fever. Of note, children who have had rheumatic fever are at a high risk of recurrence if future group A strep infections are inadequately treated. In this group of patients, long-term antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended, sometimes life-long in patients with residual rheumatic heart disease. (See Chapter 20.)

In general, the carrier state is harmless, self-limited (2–6 months), and not contagious. An attempt to eradicate the carrier state is warranted only if the patient or another family member has frequent streptococcal infections, or if a family member or patient has a history of rheumatic fever or glomerulonephritis. If eradication is chosen, a course of clindamycin for 10 days or rifampin for 5 days should be used.

In the past, daily penicillin prophylaxis was occasionally recommended; however, because of concerns about the development of drug resistance, tonsillectomy is now preferred for patients with recurrent streptococcal tonsillitis.

Wessels MR: Clinical practice. Streptococcal pharyngitis. N Engl J Med 2011;364(7):648–655 [PMID: 21323542].

Web Resources

National Institute of Mental Health PANDAS information. http://www.nimh.nih.gov/labs-at-nimh/research-areas/clinics-and-labs/pdnb/web.shtml Accessed January 20, 2015.

PERITONSILLAR CELLULITIS OR ABSCESS (QUINSY)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Severe sore throat
- Unilateral tonsillar swelling
- Deviation of the uvula
- Trismus (limited mouth opening)

Tonsillar infection occasionally penetrates the tonsillar capsule, spreading to the surrounding tissues, causing peritonsillar cellulitis. If untreated, necrosis occurs and a peritonsillar abscess forms. The most common pathogen is β-hemolytic streptococcus, but others include group D streptococcus, S pneumoniae, and anaerobes.

Table 18–4. Treatment of group A streptococcal pharyngitis.

Antibiotic	Dose	Notes
Treatment of Acute Group A Strep Pharyngitis		
Penicillin	Penicillin V 250 mg 2–3 times per day for 10 days if < 27 kg; 500 mg 2–3 times per day for 10 days if > 27 kg Benzathine Penicillin 600,000 units IM single dose if < 27 kg; 1.2 million units IM single dose if > 27 kg	Resistance to penicillin, amoxicillin, and first-generation cephalosporins has not been reported. Each is equally effective if compliance is assured.
Amoxicillin	50 mg/kg/d once daily for 10 d (max 1200 mg)	
Cephalexin	25–50 mg/kg/d in 2 divided doses for 10 d	
Clindamycin	20 mg/kg/d in 3 divided doses for 10 d	Rare resistance reported in the United States.
Azithromycin	12 mg/kg once daily for 5 d (max 500 mg/d)	Some resistance reported in the United States.
Eradication of Carrier State		
Clindamycin	20 mg/kg/d in 3 divided doses for 10 d	Most effective
Cephalexin	25–50 mg/kg/d in 2 divided doses for 10 d	Also effective
Penicillin + Rifampin	See above penicillin doses; Rifampin 20 mg/kg/d twice daily for final 4 d	

*Tetracyclines, sulfonamides (including trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole) and quinolones should not be used for treating GAS infections

The patient complains of a severe sore throat even before the physical findings become marked. A high fever is usually present, and the process is almost always unilateral. The tonsil bulges medially, and the anterior tonsillar pillar is prominent. The soft palate and uvula on the involved side are edematous and displaced toward the uninvolved side. As the infection progresses, trismus, ear pain, dysphagia, and drooling may occur. The most serious complication of untreated peritonsillar abscess is a lateral pharyngeal abscess.

It is often difficult to differentiate peritonsillar cellulitis from abscess. In some children, it is possible to aspirate or drain the peritonsillar space to diagnose and treat an abscess. If drainage is not possible and there are no airway symptoms, it is reasonable to admit a child for 12–24 hours of intravenous antimicrobial therapy. Aggressive treatment of cellulitis can usually prevent suppuration. Therapy with a penicillin or clindamycin is appropriate. Failure to respond to therapy during the first 12–24 hours indicates a high probability of abscess formation and otolaryngology consultation is indicated. Recurrent peritonsillar abscesses are so uncommon (7%) that routine tonsillectomy for a single incident is not indicated unless other tonsillectomy indications exist.

RETROPHARYNGEAL ABSCESS

Retropharyngeal lymph nodes, which drain the adenoids, nasopharynx, and paranasal sinuses, can become infected, commonly due to β-hemolytic streptococci and S aureus. If this pyogenic adenitis goes untreated, a retropharyngeal abscess forms. This occurs most commonly during the first 2 years of life. After this age, the most common cause of retropharyngeal abscess is superinfection of a penetrating injury of the posterior wall of the oropharynx.

The diagnosis of retropharyngeal abscess should be strongly suspected in a child with fever, respiratory symptoms, and neck hyperextension. Dysphagia, drooling, dyspnea, and gurgling respirations are also found. Prominent swelling on one side of the posterior pharyngeal wall is characteristic. Swelling usually stops at the midline because a medial raphe divides the prevertebral space. On lateral neck x-ray, the retropharyngeal tissues are wider than the C4 vertebral body. But plain films are not specific; a CT scan with contrast is more helpful.

Although a retropharyngeal abscess is a surgical emergency, frequently it cannot be distinguished from retropharyngeal adenitis. Immediate hospitalization and intravenous antimicrobial therapy with a semisynthetic penicillin or clindamycin is the first step for most cases. In most instances, a period of 12–24 hours of antimicrobial therapy will help differentiate the two entities. In the child with adenitis, fever will decrease and oral intake will improve. A child with retropharyngeal abscess will typically not improve. A surgeon should incise and drain the abscess under general anesthesia to prevent its extension. Immediate surgical drainage is required whenever there is concern for airway compromise.

LUDWIG ANGINA

Ludwig angina is a rapidly progressive cellulitis of the submandibular space that can cause airway obstruction and death. The submandibular space extends from the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth to the muscular and fascial attachments of the hyoid bone. This infection is unusual in infants and children. The initiating factor in over 50% of cases is dental disease, including abscesses and extraction. Some patients have a history of injury to the floor of the mouth. Group A strep is the most common organism identified.

Symptoms include fever and tender swelling of the floor of the mouth. The tongue can become tender and inflamed. Upward displacement of the tongue may cause dysphagia, drooling, and airway obstruction.

Treatment consists of high-dose intravenous clindamycin or ampicillin plus nafcillin until the culture results and sensitivities are available. Because the most common cause of death in Ludwig angina is sudden airway obstruction, the patient must be monitored closely in the intensive care unit and intubation provided for progressive respiratory distress. An otolaryngologist should be consulted for airway evaluation and management, and to perform a drainage procedure if needed.

ACUTE CERVICAL ADENITIS

Local infections of the ear, nose, and throat can involve a regional lymph node and cause abscess formation. The typical case involves a unilateral, solitary, anterior cervical node. About 70% of these cases are due to β-hemolytic streptococcal infection, 20% to staphylococci, and the remainder to viruses, atypical mycobacteria, and Bartonella henselae. MRSA must also be considered.

The initial evaluation of cervical adenitis should generally include a rapid group A streptococcal test, and a complete blood count with differential looking for atypical lymphocytes. A purified protein derivative skin test, looking for nontuberculous mycobacteria, should also be considered. If multiple enlarged nodes are found, a rapid mononucleosis test is useful. Early treatment with antibiotics prevents many cases of adenitis from progressing to suppuration. However, once abscess formation occurs, antibiotic therapy alone is often insufficient and a drainage procedure may be necessary. Because of the increase in community-acquired MRSA, it is a prudent to send a specimen for culture and sensitivity.

Cat-scratch disease, caused by B henselae, causes indolent ("cold") adenopathy. The diagnosis is supported if a primary papule is found at the scratch site on the face. In over 90%

of patients, there is a history of contact with kittens. The node is usually only mildly tender but may, over a month or more, suppurate and drain. About one-third of children have fever and malaise; rarely neurologic sequelae and prolonged fever occur. Cat-scratch disease can be diagnosed by serologic testing, but testing is not always confirmatory. If blood is to be drawn, one should wait 2–8 weeks after onset of symptoms. Because most enlarged lymph nodes infected with B henselae spontaneously regress within 1–3 months, the benefit of antibiotics is controversial. In a placebo-controlled trial, azithromycin for 5 days caused a more rapid decrease in node size. Other drugs likely to be effective include rifampin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, erythromycin, clarithromycin, doxycycline*, ciprofloxacin*, and gentamicin (*be aware of age restrictions).

Cervical lymphadenitis can also be caused by nontuberculous mycobacterial species or Mycobacterium avium complex. Mycobacterial disease is unilateral and may involve several matted nodes. A characteristic violaceous appearance may develop over a prolonged period of time without systemic signs or much local pain. Atypical mycobacterial infections are often associated with positive purified protein derivative skin test reactions less than 10 mm in diameter, and a second-strength (250-test-unit) purified protein derivative skin test is virtually always positive.

Hegde AN, Mohan S, Pandya A, Shah GV: Imaging in infections of the head and neck. Neuroimaging Clin N Am 2012 Nov;22(4):727–754. doi: 10.1016/j.nic.2012.05.007 [Epub 2012 Aug 11] [PMID: 23122264].

» Differential Diagnosis

A. Neoplasms and Cervical Nodes

Malignant tumors usually are not suspected until adenopathy persists despite antibiotic treatment. Classically, malignant lymph nodes are painless, nontender, and firm to hard in consistency. They may be fixed to underlying tissues. They may occur as a single node, as unilateral nodes in a chain, bilateral cervical nodes, or as generalized adenopathy. Common malignancies that may manifest in the neck include lymphoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, and thyroid carcinoma.

B. Imitators of Adenitis

Several structures in the neck can become infected and resemble a lymph node. The first three masses are of congenital origin.

1. Thyroglossal duct cyst—These are in the midline, usually located near the level of the hyoid bone. Thyroglossal duct cysts move upward when the tongue is protruded or with swallowing. Occasionally, a thyroglossal duct cyst may have a sinus tract with an opening just lateral to the midline. When infected, these can become acutely swollen and inflamed.

2. Branchial cleft cyst—These masses are found along the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle and are smooth and fluctuant. Sometimes a branchial cleft cyst may be attached to the overlying skin by a small dimple or a draining sinus tract. When infected, they can become a tender mass 3–5 cm in diameter.

3. Lymphatic malformation—Most lymphatic cysts are located in the posterior triangle just above the clavicle. These are soft and compressible and can be transilluminated. Over 60% of lymphatic malformations are noted at birth; the remaining malformations are usually seen by the age of 2 years. If these become large enough, they can compromise the patient's ability to swallow and breathe.

4. Parotitis—The most common pitfall is mistaking parotitis for cervical adenitis. The parotid salivary gland crosses the angle of the jaw. Parotitis may be bacterial or viral and may occur unilaterally or bilaterally. Mumps was once the most common cause of viral parotitis, but because of routine vaccinations, parainfluenza is the primary viral cause in the United States. An amylase level will be elevated in parotitis.

5. Ranula—A ranula is a cyst in the floor of the mouth caused by obstruction of the sublingual salivary gland. A "plunging" ranula extends through the mylohyoid muscle and can present as a neck mass.

6. Sternocleidomastoid muscle hematoma—Also known as fibromatosis colli, these are noted at age 2–4 weeks. On examination, the mass is found to be part of the muscle body and not movable. An associated torticollis usually confirms the diagnosis. A neck ultrasound can help confirm the diagnosis. Treatment involves physical therapy, with range of motion exercises.

SNORING, MOUTH BREATHING, & UPPER AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

The American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery (AAO-HNS) defines sleep-disordered breathing (SDB) as an abnormal respiratory pattern during sleep that includes snoring, mouth breathing, and pauses in breathing. SDB encompasses a spectrum of disorders that ranges in severity from snoring to obstructive sleep apnea. SDB is a presumptive diagnosis; OSA can be diagnosed only by polysomnogram (PSG).

In 2012, the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) updated their clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of uncomplicated childhood obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. The guideline emphasizes that pediatricians should screen all children for snoring. If the child exhibits additional signs and symptoms of SDB, referral for a sleep study is recommended, but referral to an

otolaryngologist or sleep specialist is also an option. The American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) has similar recommendations.

Polysomnography

The gold standard for diagnosis of OSA is a polysomnogram (PSG), commonly called a "sleep study." A patient's history and clinical examination cannot predict the presence or severity of OSA. Similarly, an overnight oximetry study is a poor screening test for OSA, as it may detect patients with severe disease but miss those with milder forms, since obstructive respiratory events can occur without oxygen desaturations. The criteria for diagnosing OSA differ between children and adults. An obstructive event occurs when airflow stops despite persistence of respiratory effort. A hypopnea is counted when airflow and respiratory effort decrease with an associated oxygen desaturation or arousal. Normative values for children are just being established. The AASM states that for children, the occurrence of more than one apneic or hypopneic event per hour with duration of at least two respiratory cycles is abnormal. However, the AASM has qualified its recommendation, stating that the criteria may be modified once more comprehensive data become available. One study of children aged 6–11 years found that a respiratory disturbance index of at least one event per hour, when associated with a 3% oxygen desaturation, was associated with daytime sleepiness and learning problems. If oxygen desaturations were absent, a respiratory disturbance index of five events per hour was associated with clinical symptoms.

Although an obstructive apnea index greater than one event per hour may be statistically significant, whether it is clinically relevant remains unclear. Children with an apnea-hypopnea index of greater than five events per hour appear to have clinically significant OSA. The dilemma is how to manage children with an apnea-plus-hypopnea index of more than one but fewer than five events per hour, as some of these children experience neurocognitive symptoms. Of note, many research studies have shown little correlation between the severity of OSA by PSG and neuropsychological morbidity.

» Clinical Evaluation & Management

The AAO-HNS has developed clinical guidelines to help otolaryngologists determine when to proceed with surgical treatment (usually adenotonsillectomy) or request a polysomnogram. A PSG is generally recommended for children with suspected sleep apnea if they have any of the following comorbid conditions: obesity, Down syndrome, craniofacial abnormalities, neuromuscular disorders, sickle cell disease, or mucopolysaccharidoses. PSG is also recommended for children without the above comorbidities if the need for surgery is uncertain, or if there is discordance between tonsillar size on physical examination and the reported severity of symptoms.

Most pediatric otolaryngologists perform adenotonsillectomy in healthy patients with SDB without obtaining a PSG. An adenotonsillectomy without PSG is usually recommended in a healthy child if the following are present:

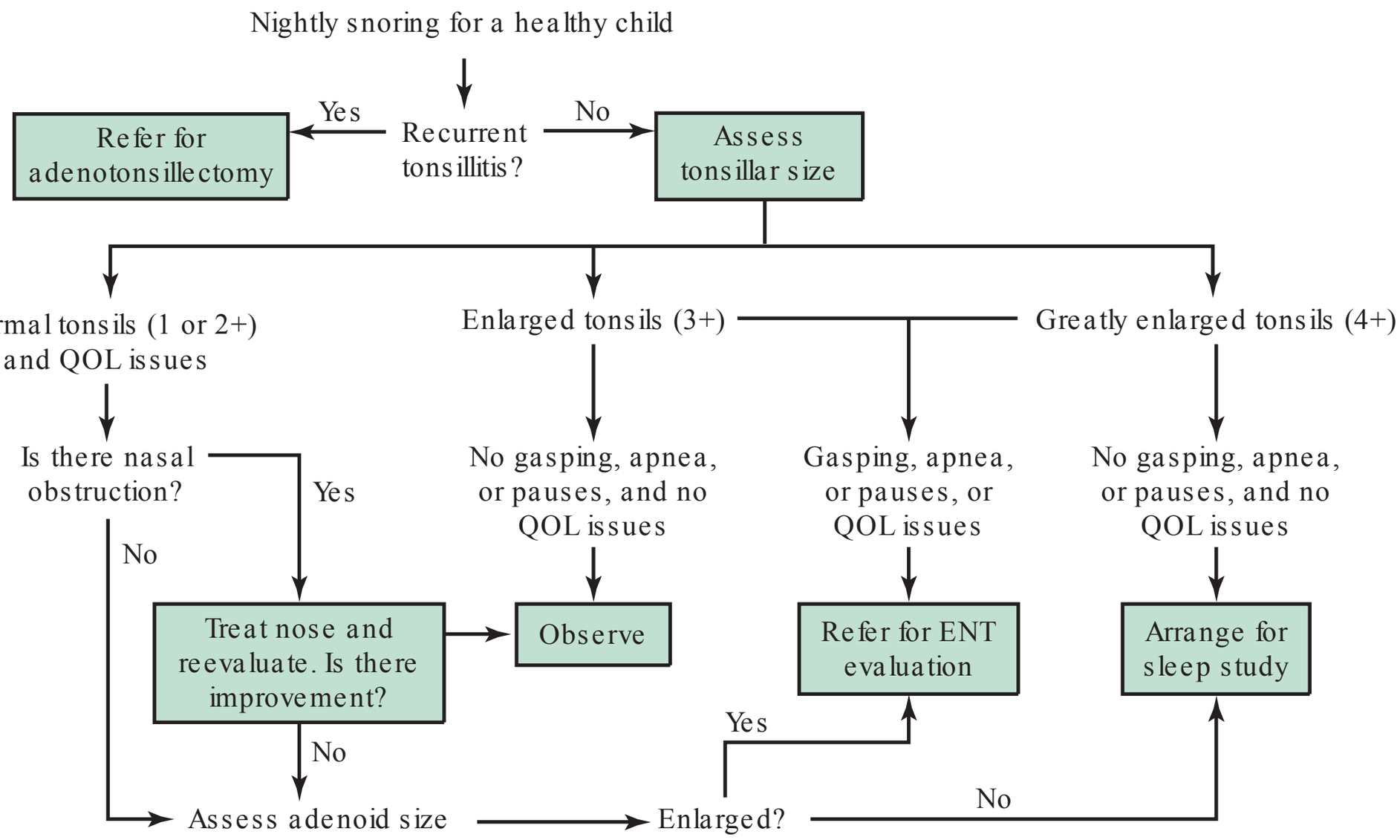
1. Nighttime symptoms: habitual snoring along with gasping, pauses, or labored breathing. Other symptoms which may be related to SDB include night terrors, sleep walking, and secondary enuresis.
2. Daytime symptoms: unrefreshed sleep, attention deficit, hyperactivity, emotional lability, temperamental behavior, poor weight gain, and daytime fatigue. Other signs include daytime mouth breathing or dysphagia.
3. Enlarged tonsils.

If the three findings cannot be confirmed, but the child has other indications for an adenotonsillectomy—that is, recurrent tonsillitis or markedly enlarged (4+) tonsils with dysphagia—surgery is also warranted.

Figure 18–7 is an algorithm for management of SDB complaints in an otherwise healthy child. The pathway relies on clinical symptoms and tonsil size. The most commonly used grading scale for tonsil size ranges from 0 to 4. With grade 0 the tonsils are small and contained within the tonsillar fossa; in grade 4 the tonsils are so large they almost touch ("kissing"). Of note, tonsil size alone does not predict the presence of significant SDB. Children without significant tonsil hypertrophy may still have SDB. Factors such as low muscle tone can contribute to an individual's propensity to experience SDB. Although the pathway states that an asymptomatic child with markedly enlarged tonsils (4+) should undergo PSG, a period of observation is reasonable. One's clinical suspicion of SDB should be heightened if a child has enlarged tonsils, especially if the parents cannot provide a reliable history. If the child has no clinical symptoms and the tonsils are only moderately enlarged (3+), observation is appropriate. Educating the parents about the risks of SDB and what to look for is paramount.

A polysomnographic study is recommended for a child who has no adenotonsillar hypertrophy or nasal obstruction, but has significant symptoms of SDB. Other conditions, especially a periodic limb movement disorder, may mimic the daytime symptoms of SDB. If a polysomnogram indicates OSA in a child without tonsillar hypertrophy, a complete evaluation of the upper airway by awake flexible laryngoscopy should be performed to look for other possible sites of obstruction: nose, nasopharynx (adenoid), hypopharynx (base of tongue or lingual tonsils), and larynx. The adenoid can also be assessed with a lateral neck x-ray. Alternative methods to evaluate a child for anatomical sites of obstruction include sedated ciné MRI of the upper airway or drug-induced sleep endoscopy (DISE).

A recent randomized prospective study on adenotonsillectomy outcomes (CHAT Study) demonstrated



▲**Figure 18–7.** Algorithm for evaluation of snoring in a healthy child.

overall success at 79% for an adenotonsillectomy. Success was defined as AHI < 2 and obstructive apnea index of less than 1 event an hour. Obese children, black ethnicity, and an AHI more than 4.7 events an hour were less likely to be cured. Interestingly, 47% of the children in the watchful waiting group had spontaneous resolution of their OSA at 7 months. Children that had mild OSA or normal weight were more likely to improve spontaneously.

As for postoperative PSG, the AASM and AAP agree that a child with mild OSA (typically fewer than five obstructive events an hour) does not require a follow-up study. However, those with persistent symptoms, more severe OSA, obesity, or other comorbidities should routinely have a postoperative study.

» Complications & Sequelae

The importance of diagnosing SDB in children cannot be underestimated. SDB has been associated with problems in a multitude of realms, including social, behavioral, and neurocognitive. It has been shown to significantly impact quality of life and has been associated with growth impairment and cardiovascular complications. Recent studies also suggest that SDB is associated with systemic inflammation.

Marcus CL et al; American Academy of Pediatrics: Diagnosis and management of childhood obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. Pediatrics 2012 Sep;130(3):e714–e755. doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-1672 [Epub 2012 Aug 27] [Review] [PMID: 22926176].

Marcus CL et al; American Academy of Pediatrics: Diagnosis and management of childhood obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. Pediatrics 2012 Sep;130(3):576–584. doi: 10.1542/peds.2012-1671 [Epub 2012 Aug 27] [PMID: 22926173].

Marcus CL et al; Childhood Adenotonsillectomy Trial (CHAT). A randomized trial of adenotonsillectomy for childhood sleep apnea. N Engl J Med 2013 Jun 20;368(25):2366–2376. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215881. Epub 2013 May 21. [PMID: 23692173]; [PMCID: PMC3756808].

Web Resources

American Academy of Sleep Medicine educational site: http://www.sleepeducation.com. Accessed January 17, 2015.

Child-friendly website: http://www.sleepforkids.org/. Accessed January 17, 2015.

http://www.sleepfoundation.org/article/hot-topics/snoring-children. Accessed January 17, 2015.

National Sleep Foundation: http://www.sleepfoundation.org/. Accessed January 17, 2015.

TONSILLECTOMY & ADENOIDECTOMY

Tonsillectomy

A tonsillectomy, with or without adenoidectomy, is most often performed for either hypertrophy or recurrent infections. The most common indication for adenotonsillectomy is adenotonsillar hypertrophy associated with an obstructive breathing pattern during sleep (see earlier discussion of OSA

and SDB). Adenotonsillar hypertrophy may also cause dysphagia or dental malocclusion. Rarely, hypertrophied tonsils may lead to pulmonary hypertension or cor pulmonale.

Recurrent tonsillitis is the second most common reason for tonsillectomy. Tonsillitis is considered "recurrent" when a child has seven or more documented infections in 1 year, five per year for 2 years, or three per year for 3 years. For an infection to be considered clinically significant, there must be a sore throat and at least one of the following clinical features: cervical lymphadenopathy (tender lymph nodes or > 2 cm), OR tonsillar exudate, OR positive culture for group A β-hemolytic streptococcus, OR temperature greater than 38.3°C.

Tonsillectomy is reasonable with fewer infections if the child has missed multiple school days due to infection, has a complicated course, or under other circumstances such as recurrent peritonsillar abscess, persistent streptococcal carrier state, or multiple antibiotic allergies. Unless neoplasm is suspected, tonsil asymmetry is not an indication.

A new indication for tonsillectomy is PFAPA syndrome (see earlier section on Recurrent Aphthous Stomatitis), in which fever recurs predictably, typically every 4–8 weeks. Tonsillectomy has been shown to be an effective treatment.

Baugh RF et al; American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery Foundation: Clinical practice guideline: tonsillectomy in children. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2011 Jan;144(1 Suppl):S1–S30. doi: 10.1177/0194599810389949 [PMID: 21493257].

Web Resources

American Academy of Otolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery–sponsored site dedicated to children: http://www.entnet.org/content/patient-health. Accessed January 20, 2015.

Adenoidectomy

The adenoid is composed of lymphoid tissue in the nasopharynx, are a part of the Waldeyer ring of lymphoid tissue, which also includes the palatine and lingual tonsils. Enlarged adenoids, with or without infection, can obstruct the nose, alter normal orofacial growth, and interfere with speech, swallowing, and Eustachian tube function. Children who are persistent mouth breathers can develop dental malocclusion and "adenoid facies," where the face is pinched and the maxilla narrowed because the molding pressures of the orbicularis oris and buccinator muscles are unopposed by the tongue. The adenoids can also harbor biofilms, which have been associated with CRS and otitis media.

Indications for adenoidectomy with or without tonsillectomy include upper airway obstruction, orofacial conditions such as mandibular growth abnormalities and dental malocclusion, speech abnormalities, persistent MEE, recurrent otitis media, and CRS.

Complications of Tonsillectomy & Adenoidectomy

The mortality rate associated with tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy is reported to approximate that of general anesthesia alone. The rate of hemorrhage varies between 0.1% and 8.1%, depending on the definition of hemorrhage; the rate of postoperative transfusion is 0.04%. Other potential complications include permanently hypernasal speech (< 0.01%) and, more rarely, nasopharyngeal stenosis, atlantoaxial subluxation, mandibular condyle fracture, and psychological trauma.

Contraindications to Tonsillectomy & Adenoidectomy

A. Palatal Abnormalities

Adenoids should not be removed completely in a child with a cleft palate or submucous cleft palate because of the risk of velopharyngeal incompetence which may cause hypernasal speech and nasal regurgitation. If needed, a partial adenoidectomy can be performed in at-risk children. A bifid uvula can be a sign of a palatal abnormality.

B. Bleeding Disorder

When suspected, bleeding disorders must be diagnosed and treated prior to surgery.

C. Acute Tonsillitis

An elective tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy can often be postponed until acute tonsillitis is resolved. Urgent tonsillectomy may occasionally be required for tonsillitis unresponsive to medical therapy.

DISORDERS OF THE LIPS

1. Labial Sucking Tubercle

A young infant may present with a small callus in the midupper lip. It usually is asymptomatic and disappears after cup feeding is initiated.

2. Cheilitis

Dry, cracked, scaling lips are usually caused by sun or wind exposure. Contact dermatitis from mouthpieces or various woodwind or brass instruments has also been reported. Licking the lips exacerbates cheilitis. Liberal use of lip balm gives excellent results.

3. Inclusion Cyst

Inclusion or mucous retention cysts are due to obstruction of mucous glands or other mucous membrane structures, such as minor salivary glands. In the newborn, they occur on

the hard palate or gums and are called Epstein pearls. These resolve spontaneously in 1–2 months. In older children, inclusion cysts usually occur on the palate, uvula, or tonsillar pillars. They appear as taut yellow sacs varying in size from 2 to 10 mm. Inclusion cysts that do not resolve spontaneously may undergo incision and drainage. Occasionally, a mucous cyst on the lower lip (mucocele) will require excision for cosmetic reasons.

DISORDERS OF THE TONGUE

1. Geographic Tongue (Benign Migratory Glossitis)

This condition of unknown etiology occurs in 1%–2% of the population with no age, sex, or racial predilection. It is characterized by irregularly shaped patches on the tongue that are devoid of papillae and surrounded by parakeratotic reddish borders. The pattern changes as alternating regeneration and desquamation occurs. The lesions are generally asymptomatic and require no treatment.

2. Fissured Tongue (Scrotal Tongue)

This condition is marked by numerous irregular fissures on the dorsum of the tongue. It occurs in approximately 1% of the population and is usually a dominant trait. It is also frequently seen in children with trisomy 21.

3. Coated Tongue (Furry Tongue)

The tongue becomes coated if mastication is impaired and the patient is limited to a liquid or soft diet. Mouth breathing, fever, or dehydration can accentuate the process.

4. Macroglossia

Tongue hypertrophy and protrusion may be due to trisomy 21, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, glycogen storage diseases, cretinism, mucopolysaccharidoses, lymphangioma, or hemangioma. Tongue reduction procedures should be considered in otherwise healthy subjects if macroglossia affects airway patency.

HALITOSIS

Bad breath is usually due to acute stomatitis, pharyngitis, rhinosinusitis, nasal foreign body, or dental hygiene problems. In older children and adolescents, halitosis can be a manifestation of CRS, gastric bezoar, bronchiectasis, or lung abscess. The presence of orthodontic devices or dentures can cause halitosis if good dental hygiene is not maintained. Halitosis can also be caused by decaying food particles embedded in cryptic tonsils. Mouthwashes and chewable breath fresheners give limited improvement. Treatment of the underlying cause is indicated, and a dental referral may be in order.

SALIVARY GLAND DISORDERS

1. Parotitis

A first episode of parotitis may safely be considered to be of viral origin, unless fluctuance is present. Mumps was the leading cause until adoption of vaccination; now the leading viruses are parainfluenza and Epstein-Barr virus. HIV infection should be considered if the child is known to be at risk.

2. Suppurative Parotitis

Suppurative parotitis occurs chiefly in newborns and debilitated elderly patients. The parotid gland is swollen, tender, and often erythematous, usually unilaterally. The diagnosis is made by expression of purulent material from Stensen duct. The material should be cultured. Fever and leukocytosis may be present. Treatment includes hospitalization and intravenous antibiotic therapy. S aureus is the most common causative organism.

3. Juvenile Recurrent Parotitis

Some children experience recurrent nonsuppurative parotid inflammation with swelling or pain and fever. Juvenile recurrent parotitis (JRP) is most prevalent between the ages of 3 and 6 years, and it generally decreases by adolescence. The cause is unknown, but possible etiologic factors include ductal anomaly, autoimmune, allergy, and genetic. It usually occurs unilaterally. Treatment includes analgesics and some recommend an antistaphylococcal antibiotic for prophylaxis of bacterial infection and quicker resolution. Recently, endoscopy of Stensen duct has been investigated not only to confirm the diagnosis but also to provide treatment.

4. Tumors of the Parotid Gland

Mixed tumors, hemangiomas, sarcoidosis, and leukemia can manifest in the parotid gland as a hard or persistent mass. A cystic mass or multiple cystic masses may represent an HIV infection. Workup may require consultation with oncology, infectious disease, hematology, and otolaryngology.

5. Ranula

A ranula is a retention cyst of a sublingual salivary gland. It occurs on the floor of the mouth to one side of the lingual frenulum. It is thin walled and can appear bluish. Refer to an otolaryngologist for surgical management.

CONGENITAL ORAL MALFORMATIONS

1. Tongue-Tie (Ankyloglossia)

A short lingual frenulum can hinder both protrusion and elevation of the tongue. Puckering of the midline tongue

tip is noted with tongue movement. Ankyloglossia can cause feeding difficulties in the neonate, speech problems, and dental problems. If the tongue cannot protrude past the teeth or alveolar ridge or move between the gums and cheek, referral to an otolaryngologist is indicated. A frenulectomy should be performed in the neonatal period if the infant is having difficulty breast-feeding. In our practice, neonatal frenulectomy is performed in clinic. Early treatment is favored, as when an infant is even several months old, general anesthesia is required for the procedure to be performed safely.

Buryk M et al: Efficacy of neonatal release of ankyloglossia: a randomized trial. Pediatrics 2011 Aug;128(2):280–288 [PMID: 21768318].

2. Torus Palatini

Torus palatini are hard, midline, palate masses which form at suture lines of the bone. They are usually asymptomatic and require no therapy, but they can be surgically reduced if necessary.

3. Cleft Lip & Cleft Palate (See Chapter 37)

A. Submucous Cleft Palate

A bifid uvula is present in 3% of healthy children. However, a close association exists between bifid uvula and submucous cleft palate. A submucous cleft can be diagnosed by noting a translucent zone in the middle of the soft palate (zona pellucida). Palpation of the hard palate reveals absence of the posterior bony protrusion. Affected children have a 40% risk of developing persistent MEE. They are at risk for velopharyngeal incompetence, or an inability to close the palate against the posterior pharyngeal wall, resulting in hypernasal speech. During feeding, some of these infants experience nasal regurgitation of food. Children with submucous cleft palate causing abnormal speech or significant nasal regurgitation of food should be referred for possible surgical repair.

B. High-Arched Palate

A high-arched palate is usually a genetic trait of no consequence. It also occurs in children who are chronic mouth breathers and in premature infants who undergo prolonged oral intubation. Some rare causes of high-arched palate are congenital disorders such as Marfan syndrome, Treacher Collins syndrome, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. Orthodontic treatment of a high arched palate can be an effective treatment for childhood OSA.

C. Pierre Robin Sequence

This group of congenital malformations is characterized by the triad of micrognathia, cleft palate, and glossoptosis. Affected children often present as emergencies in the newborn period because of infringement on the airway by the tongue and also because of feeding difficulties. The main objective of treatment is to prevent asphyxia until the mandible becomes large enough to accommodate the tongue. In some cases, this can be achieved by leaving the child in a prone position when unattended. Other airway manipulations such as a nasal trumpet may be necessary. Distraction osteogenesis has been used to avoid tracheostomy. In severe cases, a tracheostomy is required. The child requires close observation and careful feeding until the problem is outgrown.

Mackay DR: Controversies in the diagnosis and management of the Robin sequence. J Craniofac Surg 2011 Mar;22(2):415–420 [PMID: 21403570].

19

Respiratory Tract & Mediastinum

Monica J. Federico, MD
Christopher D. Baker, MD
Emily M. Deboer, MD
Ann C. Halbower, MD
Oren Kupfer, MD
Stacey L. Martiniano, MD
Scott D. Sagel, MD
Paul Stillwell, MD
Edith T. Zemanick, MD
Michelle Caraballo, MD
Stephen Hawkins, MD, DO

RESPIRATORY TRACT

Pediatric pulmonary diseases account for almost 50% of deaths in children younger than 1 year and about 20% of all hospitalizations of children younger than 15 years. Approximately 7% of children have a chronic disorder of the lower respiratory system. Understanding the pathophysiology of many pediatric pulmonary diseases requires an appreciation of the normal growth and development of the lung.

GROWTH & DEVELOPMENT

The lung has its origins from an outpouching of the foregut during the fourth week of gestation. The development of the lung is divided into five overlapping stages.

1. Embryonic stage (3–7 weeks' gestation): The primitive lung bud undergoes asymmetrical branching and then subsequent dichotomous branching, leading to the development of the conducting airways. It also sees the development of the large pulmonary arteries from the sixth aortic arch and the pulmonary veins as outgrowths of the left atrium. Abnormalities during this stage result in congenital abnormalities such as lung aplasia, tracheoesophageal fistula, and congenital pulmonary cysts.
2. Pseudoglandular stage (5–17 weeks' gestation): The conducting airways (bronchi and bronchioles) form over these 12 weeks. The respiratory epithelium of these airways begins to differentiate, and the presence of cartilage, smooth muscle cells, and mucus glands are first seen. In addition, the pleuroperitoneal cavity divides into two distinct compartments. Abnormalities during this stage lead to pulmonary sequestration, cystic adenomatoid malformation, and congenital diaphragmatic hernia.
3. Canalicular stage (16–26 weeks' gestation): This stage witnesses the delineation of the pulmonary acinus. Type I alveolar cells appear, the pulmonary capillary network develops. Abnormalities of development during this stage include neonatal respiratory distress syndrome and lung hypoplasia.
4. Saccular stage (26–36 weeks' gestation): Further branching of the terminal saccules takes place, as well as a thinning of the interstitium and fusion of the type I cells and capillary basement membrane in preparation for the lungs' function as a gas-exchange organ. This stage of lung development sees the beginning of an exponential increase in the epithelial surface area for gas exchange.
5. Alveolar stage (36 weeks' gestation to 3–8 years of age): Secondary alveolar septae form to increase the surface area for gas exchange, the capillary network has a rapid phase of growth, and true alveoli develop. New data suggest that postnatal alveolarization may continue for more than 7 years after birth.

At birth, the lung assumes the gas-exchanging function served by the placenta in utero, placing immediate stress on all components of the respiratory system. Any abnormality in the lung, respiratory muscles, chest wall, airway, central respiratory control, or pulmonary circulation may lead to problems at birth. Disruption of normal growth and development due to premature birth also lead to respiratory difficulty at birth. There is mounting evidence that disruption or abnormalities occurring during fetal and neonatal growth and development of the lung may have long-standing effects into adulthood, such as reduced gas exchange, exercise intolerance, asthma, pulmonary hypertension, and an increased risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

Baker CD, Alvira CM: Disrupted lung development and bronchopulmonary dysplasia: opportunities for lung repair and regeneration. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(3):306–314 [PMID: 24739494].

Bogue CW: Genetic and molecular basis of airway and lung development. In: Haddad GG, et al (eds). Basic Mechanisms of Pediatric Respiratory Disease. BC Decker; 2002.

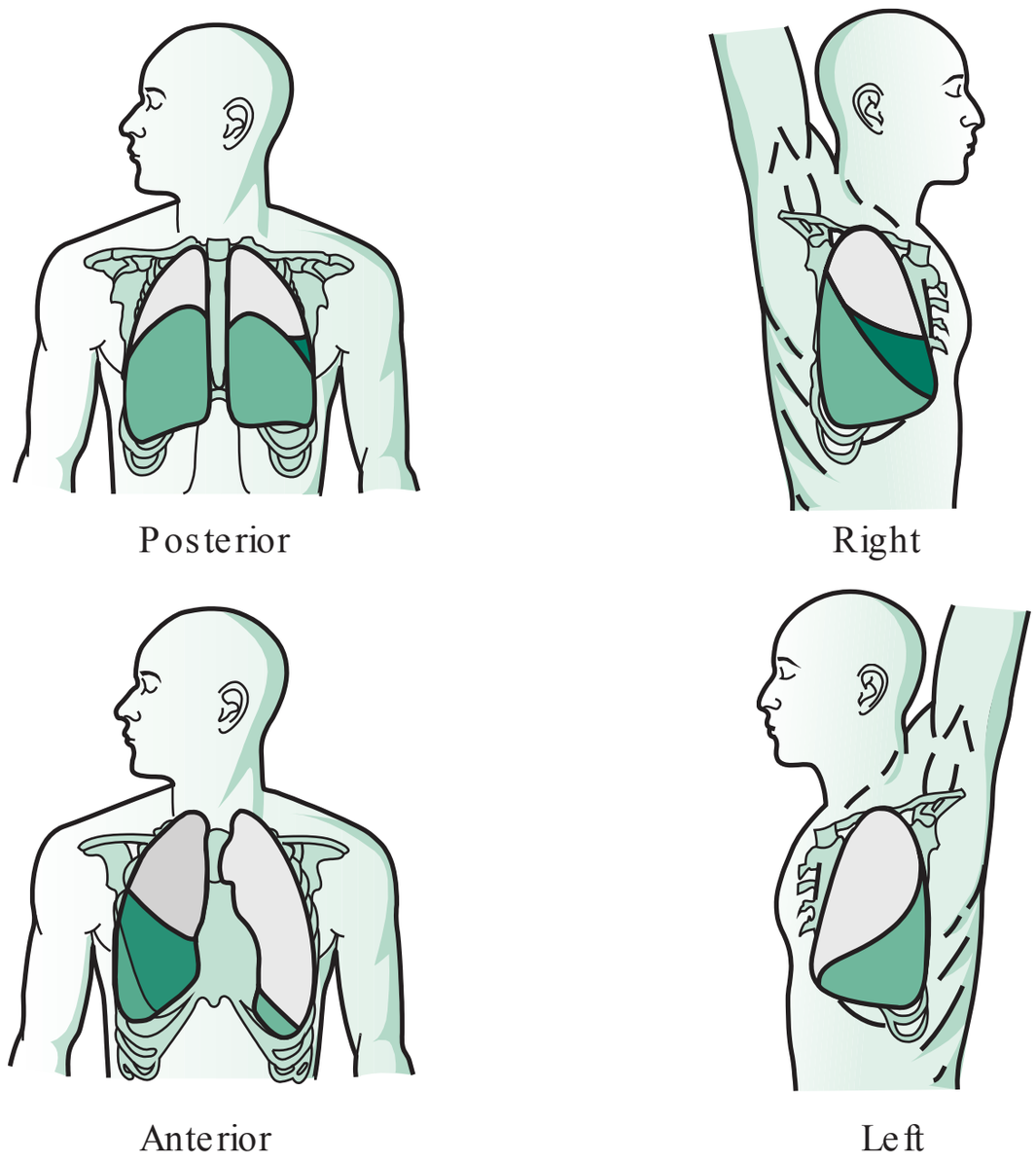
McColley SA, Morty RE: Update in pediatric lung disease 2012. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2012;188(3):293–297 [PMID: 23905524].

DIAGNOSTIC AIDS

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

The four components of a complete pulmonary examination include inspection, palpation, auscultation, and percussion. Inspection of respiratory rate, depth, ease, symmetry, and rhythm of respiration is critical to the detection of pulmonary disease. In young children, an elevated respiratory rate may be an initial indicator of pneumonia or hypoxemia. In a study of children with respiratory illnesses, abnormalities of attentiveness, inconsolability, respiratory effort, color, and movement had a good diagnostic accuracy in detecting hypoxemia. Palpation of tracheal position, symmetry of chest wall movement, and vibration with vocalization can help in identifying intrathoracic abnormalities. For example, a shift in tracheal position can suggest pneumothorax or significant atelectasis. Tactile fremitus may change with consolidation or air in the pleural space. Auscultation should assess the quality of breath sounds and detect the presence of abnormal sounds such as fine or coarse crackles, wheezing, or rhonchi. Wheezing or prolonged expiratory compared to inspiratory time suggests intrathoracic airways obstruction. Tachypnea with an equal inspiratory and expiratory time suggests decreased lung compliance. Transmitted voice sounds in egophony and whispered pectoriloquy change with lung consolidation. It is important to know the lung anatomy in order to identify the location of abnormal findings (Figure 19–1). In older patients, unilateral crackles are the most valuable examination finding in pneumonia. Percussion may identify tympanic or dull sounds that can help define an intrathoracic process. (This component of the examination can prove challenging in young children, who may not cooperate.) Although chest radiography has replaced the utility of these tests, they can be helpful when imaging is not available.

Extrapulmonary manifestations of pulmonary disease include acute findings such as cyanosis and altered mental status and signs of chronic respiratory insufficiency such as growth failure, clubbing, and osteoarthropathy. Evidence of cor pulmonale (loud pulmonic component of the second heart sound, hepatomegaly, elevated neck veins, and rarely, peripheral edema) signifies pulmonary hypertension and may accompany advanced lung disease.



▲**Figure 19–1.** Projections of the pulmonary lobes on the chest surface. The upper lobes are white, the right-middle lobe is the darker color, and the lower lobes are the lighter color.

Respiratory disorders can be secondary to disease in other systems. It is therefore important to look for other conditions such as fever, metabolic acidosis, congenital heart disease, neuromuscular disease, immunodeficiency, autoimmune disease, and occult malignancy. Children with an elevated body mass index are more likely to present with respiratory symptoms and need to be evaluated for pulmonary pathology versus deconditioning or dyspnea.

Wang WH et al: Joint effects of birth outcomes and childhood body mass index on respiratory symptoms. Eur Resp J 2012 May;39(5):1213–1219. doi: 10.1183/09031936.00091311. Epub 2012 Mar 22.

Wipf JE et al: Diagnosing pneumonia by physical examination: Relevant or relic? Arch Intern Med 1999;159:1082 [PMID: 10335685].

PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS

Pulmonary function tests (PFTs) are objective measures of lung and airway physiology that can help differentiate obstructive from restrictive lung diseases, measure and disease progression, and evaluate response to therapy. Because the

range of predicted normal values changes with growth, serial determinations of lung function are often more informative than a single determination. Patient cooperation and consistent effort is essential for almost all standard assessments. With a well-trained technician in a comfortable environment aided by visual incentives, and an interactive computer-animated system, most children aged 3 years and older can produce satisfactory results. Lung function measurements in infants and toddlers are available at centers with specialized equipment and expertise. Despite these limitations, tests of lung function are valuable in the care of children. Children with cystic fibrosis (CF) and asthma should perform pulmonary function testing routinely as early as they can cooperate. Current spirometers use a pneumotachograph to record flow over time to produce a volume-time tracing (spirogram) or a flow-volume curve. The patient inhales maximally, holds his or her breath for a short period, and then exhales as fast and hard as possible until they reach residual volume or for at least 3 seconds. The values reported include: the forced vital capacity (FVC), which is the total volume of air that is exhaled; the forced expiratory volume in the first second of the exhalation (FEV_1); the ratio of the FEV_1/FVC; the forced expiratory flow at the middle of the vital capacity ($FEF_{25–75}$); and the peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR). A suggested range of normal for these measurements are included in Table 19–1 and examples are shown in the figures. Obstructive processes include asthma, bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD), and CF. Restrictive lung disease can be caused by chest wall deformities that limit lung expansion, muscle weakness, and interstitial lung diseases. Confirmation of restrictive lung or chest wall physiology requires lung volume measurements (eg, total lung capacity, residual volume, and functional residual capacity) because poor test performance can mimic restrictive physiology. Lung volume measurements require special equipment. (For examples of pulmonary function tests, see Figures 19–2 to 19–4.)

The peak expiratory flow rate, the maximal flow recorded during an FVC maneuver, can be assessed by handheld devices. These devices are not as well calibrated as spirometers and the PEFR measurement can vary greatly with patient effort, so they are not good substitutes for actual spirometry. However, peak flow monitoring can be helpful in a patient with asthma that is difficult to control or for patients with poor perception of their airflow obstruction

Couriel JM, Child F: Applied physiology: lung function tests in children. Curr Paediatrics 2006;16:413–419.

Seed L, Wilson D, Coates AL: Children should not be treated like little adults in the PFT lab. Respir Care 2012;57(1):61–74 [PMID: 22222126].

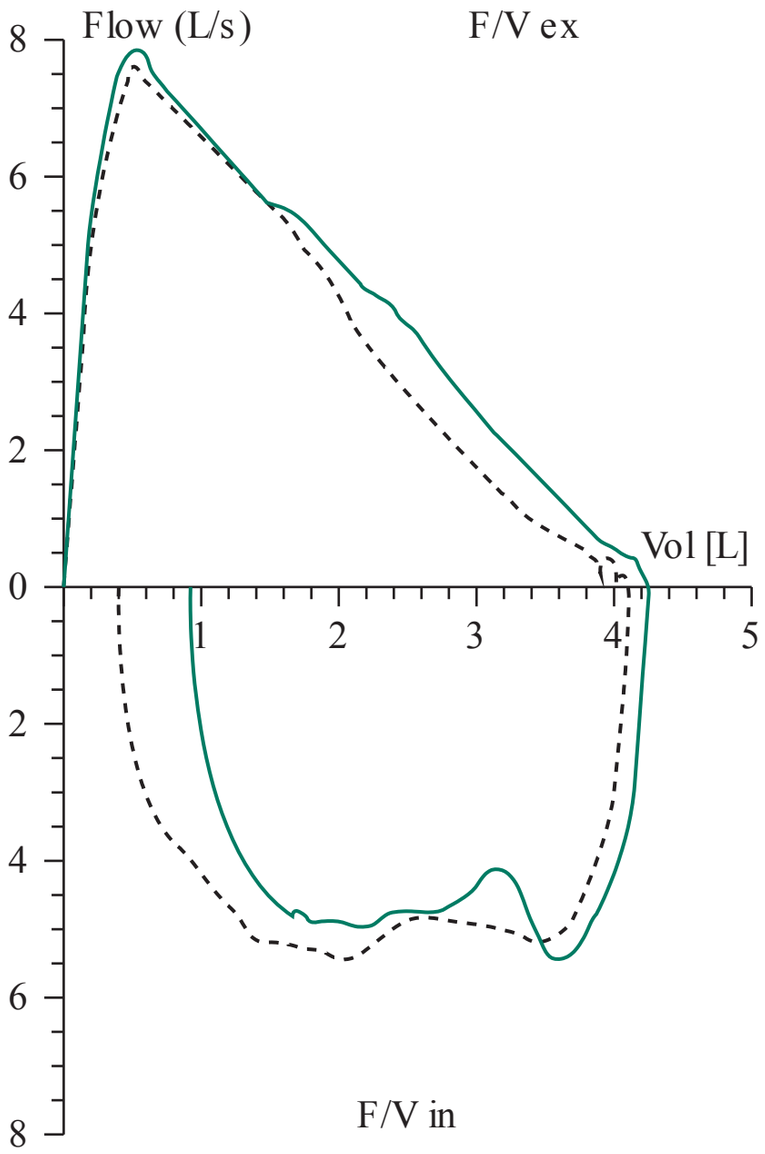
ASSESSMENT OF OXYGENATION & VENTILATION

Arterial blood gas measurements define the acid-base balance between respiration at the tissue level and in the lungs. Blood gas measurements evaluate hypoxemia, acidosis, and hypercarbia and can be used to categorize acid-base disturbances as respiratory, metabolic, or mixed. Blood gas measurements are affected by abnormalities of respiratory control, gas exchange, respiratory mechanics, and the circulation. In pediatrics, hypoxemia (low partial pressure of arterial oxygen [Pao_2]) most commonly results from ventilation (V') and perfusion (Q') mismatch. Common pediatric diseases that may be associated with hypoxemia due to V'/Q' mismatch include acute asthma, CF, pneumonia, bronchiolitis, and BPD. Other causes of hypoxemia include hypoventilation, shunts, and diffusion barrier for oxygen. Hypercapnia (elevated partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [$Paco_2$]) results from inadequate alveolar ventilation or hypoventilation (ie, inability to clear the CO_2 produced). Causes include decreased central respiratory drive, respiratory muscle weakness, and low-tidal-volume breathing as seen in restrictive lung or chest wall diseases.

Table 19–1. Classification of lung function abnormalities.

	Range of Normal	Type of Lung Disease	
		Obstructive[a]	Restrictive[b]
FVC (L)	80%–120% predicted	Normal or decreased	Decreased
FEV_1 (L)	80%–120% predicted	Decreased	Decreased
FEV_1:FVC ratio	> 82; < 95	Decreased	Normal or increased
$FEF_{25–75}$ (L/sec)	60%–140% predicted	Decreased	Normal, increased, or decreased

$FEF_{25–75,}$ forced expiratory flow at 25%–75% of FVC; FEV_1, forced expiratory volume in the first second of exhalation; FVC, forced vital capacity



		Pred	Pre	%Pred	Post	%Pred	%Change
FVC	**[L]**	4.19	4.09	98	4.24	101	4
FEV 1	**[L]**	3.58	3.42	95	3.74	104	9
FEV 1 %FVC	**[%]**		83.46		88.07		6
FEF 25/75	**[L/s]**	3.89	3.47	89	4.08	105	18
PEF	**[L/s]**	7.38	7.59	103	7.84	106	3
V back extrapol. %FVC	**[%]**		2.56		2.29		–11

▲**Figure 19–2.** Normal flow volume loop pre and post bronchodilator.

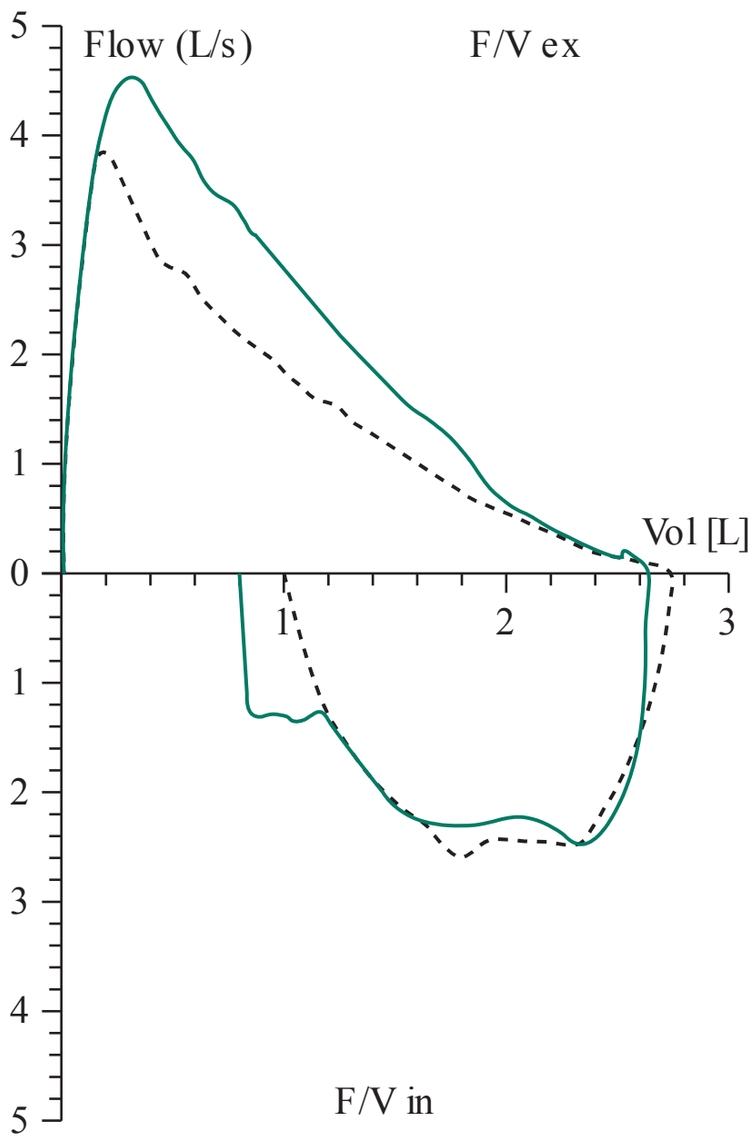
Hypercapnea can also occur when severe V'/Q' mismatch is present which may occur with severe CF or BPD. Table 19–2 gives normal values for arterial pH, Pao_2, and $Paco_2$ at sea level and at 5000 ft.

Venous blood gas analysis or capillary blood gas analysis can be useful for the assessment of Pco_2 and pH, but not Po_2 or saturation. Noninvasive assessment of oxygenation can be achieved with pulse oximetry (measuring light absorption by transilluminating the skin). Oxygenated hemoglobin absorbs light at different wavelengths than deoxygenated hemoglobin. Measurement during a systolic pulse allows estimation of arterial oxygen saturation. Values of oxygen saturation are reliable as low as 80%. Reliability is reduced with poor arterial pulsation (eg, with hypothermia, hypotension, or infusion of vasoconstriction). Carbon monoxide bound to hemoglobin results in falsely high oxygen saturation readings. Transcutaneous assessment of Pao_2 is not commonly utilized because of the multiple factors that can interfere with accurate measurements.

Exhaled or end-tidal CO_2 monitoring can be used to noninvasively estimate arterial CO_2 content. It is used to monitor alveolar ventilation and is most accurate in patients without significant lung disease, particularly those good V'/Q' matching and without airway obstruction. Monitoring of exhaled or end-tidal CO_2 is commonly used during polysomnography and anesthesia. Transcutaneous Pco_2 monitoring is also feasible but may be less reliable than transcutaneous Po_2 monitoring and should be used with caution.

Berend K, de Vries APJ, Gans ROB: Physiological approach to assessment of acid-base disturbances. N Engl J Med 2014;371:1434–1445 [PMID: 25295502].

Fouzas S, Priftis KN, Anthracopoulos MB: Pulse oximetry in pediatric practice. Pediatrics 2011;128:740 [PMID: 21930554].



		Pred	Pre	%Pred	Post	%Pred	%Change
FVC	**[L]**	2.11	2.74	130	2.62	125	–4
FEV 1	**[L]**	1.85	1.77	96	2.03	110	15
FEV 1 %FVC	**[%]**		64.74		77.46		20
FEF 25/75	**[L/s]**	2.21	1.09	49	1.66	75	53
PEF	**[L/s]**	3.89	3.85	99	4.50	116	17
V back extrapol. %FVC	**[%]**		1.39		2.20		59

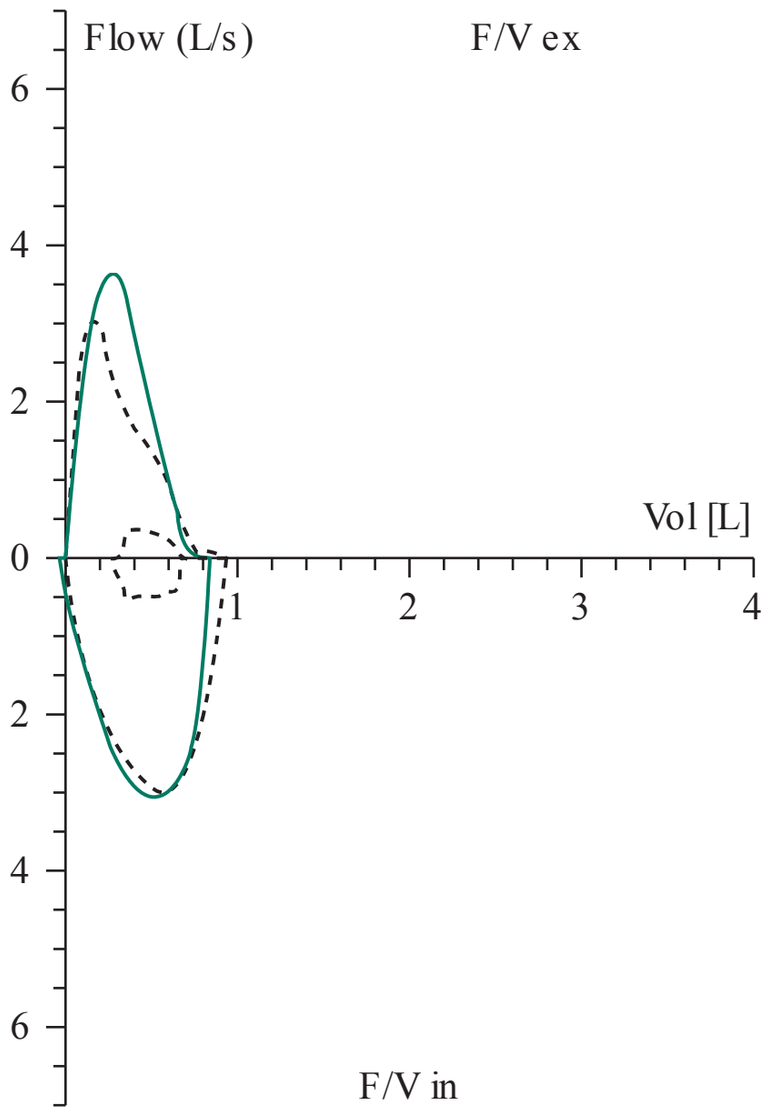
▲**Figure 19–3.** Flow volume loops from a child with asthma (obstructive pattern).

Kirk VG, Batuyong Ed, Bohn SG: Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring and capnography during pediatric polysomnography. Sleep 2006;29(12):1601–1608 [PMID: 17252891].

Tobias JD: Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring in infants and children. Paediatr Anaesth 2009 May;19(5):434–444 [PMID: 19236597].

DIAGNOSIS OF RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS

Respiratory tract infections may be caused by bacteria, viruses, atypical bacteria (eg, Mycoplasma pneumonia and Chlamydia pneumoniae), Mycobacterium tuberculosis, nontuberculous mycobacterium, or fungi (eg, Aspergillus and Pneumocystis jiroveci). The type of infection suspected and appropriate diagnostic tests vary depending on factors such as underlying lung disease, immune function, and geographic region. Sources of respiratory tract secretions for diagnostic testing include nasopharyngeal and oropharyngeal swabs; expectorated and induced sputum; tracheal aspirates; direct lung or pleural fluid sampling; bronchoalveolar lavage fluid; and gastric aspirates, specifically for M tuberculosis. Blood and urine samples may also be used for serologic and antigen testing. Spontaneously expectorated sputum is the least invasive way to collect a sample for diagnostics, though it is rarely available from patients younger than 6 years. Sputum induction, performed by inhaling aerosolized hypertonic saline, is a relatively safe, noninvasive means of obtaining lower airway secretions. Sputum induction has been used in patients with CF and may be useful in patients with suspected M tuberculosis, P jiroveci pneumonia, or complicated community-acquired pneumonia. Tracheal aspirates can be obtained easily from patients with endotracheal or tracheostomy tubes. Culture of respiratory tract samples is the most commonly used approach to detect and identify airway pathogens. Molecular diagnostic tests,



Spirometry

		Pred	Pre	%Pred	Post	%Pred	%Change
FVC	**L**	1.89	0.91	48	0.83	44	–9
FEV 1	**L**	1.77	0.78	44	0.74	42	–5
FEV 1 %FVC	**%**		85.90		89.61		4
FEF 25/75	**L/s**	2.37	1.18	50	1.23	52	5
PEF	**L/s**	4.43	3.10	70	3.66	83	18

▲**Figure 19–4.** Flow volume loops from a child with scoliosis (restrictive pattern) which restricts vital capacity due to changes in the configuration of the thorax. Lung volume studies are needed to confirm restriction.

based on PCR amplification and detection of nucleic acid from microbes, are often more rapid and sensitive, and are used for detection of viruses and atypical bacteria in many laboratories. Molecular assays are also available for identification of M tuberculosis, P jiroveci, and fastidious bacteria, and their use is likely to become more widespread.

Hammitt LL et al: Specimen collection for the diagnosis of pediatric pneumonia. Clin Infect Dis 2012;54(S2):S132–S139 [PMID: 22403227].

Table 19–2. Normal arterial blood gas values on room air.

	pH	Pa_{O_2} (mm Hg)	Pa_{CO_2} (mm Hg)
Sea level	7.38–7.42	85–95	36–42
5000 ft	7.36–7.40	65–75	35–40

Pa_{CO_2}, partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; Pa_{O_2}, partial pressure of arterial oxygen; Sa_{O_2}, percent hemoglobin saturation.

Murboch DR et al: Laboratory methods for determining pneumonia etiology in children. Clin Infect Dis 2012 Apr;54(Suppl 2): S146–S152 [PMID: 22403229].

Zumla A et al: Tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 2013;368(8):745–755 [PMID: 23425167].

IMAGING OF THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

The plain chest radiograph remains the foundation for investigating the pediatric thorax. Both frontal (posterior-anterior) and lateral views should be obtained if feasible. The radiograph is useful for evaluating chest wall abnormalities, heart size and shape, mediastinum, diaphragm, and lung parenchyma. When pleural fluid is suspected, lateral decubitus radiographs may be helpful in determining the extent and mobility of the fluid. When a foreign body is suspected, forced expiratory radiographs may show focal air trapping and shift of the mediastinum to the contralateral side. Lateral neck radiographs can be useful in assessing the size of adenoids and tonsils and also in differentiating croup from

epiglottitis, the latter being associated with the "thumbprint" sign.

Barium swallow is indicated for detection of swallowing dysfunction in patients with suspected aspiration, tracheoesophageal fistula, gastroesophageal reflux, vascular rings and slings, and achalasia. Fluoroscopy or ultrasound of the diaphragm can detect paralysis by demonstrating paradoxic movement of the involved hemidiaphragm.

Chest CT is useful in evaluation of congenital lung lesions, pleural disease (eg, effusion or recurrent pneumothorax), mediastinum (eg, lymphadenopathy), pulmonary nodules or masses. High-resolution CT is best for evaluating interstitial lung disease (ILD) or bronchiectasis while decreasing radiation exposure compared to a standard CT. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is useful for defining vascular or bronchial anatomical abnormalities. Ventilation-perfusion scans can provide information about regional ventilation and perfusion and can help detect vascular malformations and pulmonary emboli. Pulmonary angiography is occasionally necessary to define the pulmonary vascular bed more precisely. Recent concerns about radiation exposure in children led to the Image Gently campaign, an initiative of The Alliance for Radiation Safety in Pediatric Imaging, dedicated to increasing awareness of the need for radiation protection for children. Identified challenges include the need for continued education particularly at adult-focused hospitals, increased emphasis on appropriateness of pediatric imaging and outcomes research to validate the use of CT, and establishing ranges of optimal CT technique when imaging children.

Goske MJ et al: Image Gently: progress and challenges in CT education and advocacy. Pediatr Radiol 2011 Sep;41(Suppl 2): 461–466 [PMID: 22988269].

Image Gently Campaign website: http://www.pedrad.org/associations/5364/ig/.

Schneebaum et al: Use and yield of chest computed tomography in the diagnostic evaluation of pediatric lung disease. Pediatrics 2009;124:472–479 [PMID: 19620200].

LARYNGOSCOPY & BRONCHOSCOPY

Direct visualization of the airways may be necessary for diagnosis despite an extensive history and physical and sophisticated imaging. This can be achieved with rigid or flexible instrumentation. Indications for laryngoscopy include hoarseness, stridor, symptoms of obstructive sleep apnea, and laryngeal wheezing. Indications for bronchoscopy include wheezing, suspected foreign body, recurrent pneumonia, persistent atelectasis, chronic cough, and hemoptysis. A flexible bronchoscope can also be used to assess placement and patency of an endotracheal tube. In general, the more specific the indication, the higher the diagnostic yield. Each method, rigid or flexible, has advantages and for some patients both should be employed sequentially under the same anesthesia.

The rigid, open tube instruments have the best optics and allow surgical intervention to be easily achieved, such as removal of a foreign body. Rigid bronchoscopy is done with general anesthesia. Flexible laryngoscopy may be done with topical anesthesia or light sedation and flexible bronchoscopy can be done with either conscious sedation or general anesthesia. The flexible bronchscope is of a smaller caliber and allows more distal examination of airways. Because it is smaller, the flexible bronchoscope does not stent the airway open during the procedure and often dynamic airway collapse is more easily documented by the flexible procedure. Bronchoalveolar lavage is useful to sample the alveolar space for infection, inflammation, hemorrhage, or aspiration. Although removal of foreign bodies has been achieved with the flexible bronchoscope in larger children, the standard of care in most institutions is to remove foreign bodies via the rigid bronchoscope.

Transbronchial biopsy in children is limited to evaluation of infection and rejection in lung transplant patients. There is low diagnostic yield in most other conditions. Transbronchial biopsy may have a role in sarcoidosis. Video-assisted thoracoscopic lung biopsy (VATS) provides a more substantial specimen for pathologic assessment.

Nicholai T: The role of rigid and flexible bronchoscopy in children. Paediatr Respir Rev 2011;12:190–195 [PMID: 21722848].

GENERAL THERAPY FOR PEDIATRIC LUNG DISEASES

OXYGEN THERAPY

The goal of supplemental oxygen (O_2) therapy is to relieve hypoxemia. Supplemental oxygen can reduce the work of breathing, resulting in fewer respiratory symptoms; relax the pulmonary vasculature, lessening the potential for pulmonary hypertension and congestive heart failure; and improve feeding. Patients breathing spontaneously can be treated by nasal cannula, head hood, or mask (including simple, rebreathing, nonrebreathing, or Venturi masks). The goal of O_2 therapy is to achieve an arterial oxygen tension of 65–90 mm Hg or oxygen saturation above 90%, although lower Pao_2 or Spo_2 levels may be acceptable in certain situations. The actual O_2 concentration achieved by nasal cannula or mask depends on the flow rate, the type of mask used, and the patient's age. Small changes in flow rate during oxygen administration by nasal cannula can lead to substantial changes in inspired oxygen concentration in young infants. The amount of oxygen required to correct hypoxemia may vary according to activity. It is not unusual, for example, for an infant with chronic lung disease to require 0.75 L/min while awake but 1 L/min while asleep or feeding.

Although the head hood is an efficient device for delivery of oxygen in young infants, the nasal cannula is used more often because it allows greater mobility. The cannula has nasal prongs that are inserted in the nares. Even at high flow rates, oxygen by nasal cannula rarely delivers inspired oxygen concentrations greater than 40%–45%. In contrast, partial rebreathing and nonrebreathing masks or head hoods achieve inspired oxygen concentrations as high as 90%–100%. Heated high-flow nasal cannulas have been developed recently to deliver a high flow rate. The data supporting heated high-flow oxygen in children are variable. There is also no definitive evidence that heated high-flow can be used as a form of noninvasive ventilation in children.

Physical findings of hypoxemia are subtle. Adequate oxygenation should be measured by the arterial oxygen tension or pulse oximetry. The advantages of the latter noninvasive method include the ability to obtain continuous measurements during normal activities and to avoid artifacts caused by crying or breath-holding during arterial puncture. For children with cardiopulmonary disorders that require chronic supplemental oxygen therapy (eg, BPD or CF), frequent noninvasive assessments are essential to ensure the safety and adequacy of O_2 treatment.

AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines: selection of an oxygen delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients-2002 revision and update. Respir Care 2002;47:707–716 [PMID: 12078654].

Mayfield S et al: High-flow nasal cannula therapy for respiratory support in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014 Mar 7; 3:CD009850. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD009850.pub2 [PMID: 24604698].

Ralston M et al (eds): Pediatric Advanced Life Support Provider Manual. American Heart Association and American Academy of Pediatrics; 2006.

INHALATION OF MEDICATIONS

Inhalation of medications is a mainstay of therapy for pediatric respiratory conditions and are routinely used in patients with chronic diseases such as CF, BPD, and asthma, as well as in acute illnesses such as infectious laryngotracheobronchitis and bronchiolitis (Table 19–3). Short-acting β-agonists and anticholinergics provide acute bronchodilitation (relievers), whereas inhaled corticosteroids and cromones provide anti-inflammatory effects (controllers). Nebulized antibiotics have documented benefit in CF and nebulized mucolytic medications are used in CF and other conditions with impaired secretion control such as non-CF bronchiectasis.

The medications can be delivered by pressurized metered dose inhaler (pMDI), dry powder inhaler (DPI), or compressed air-driven wet nebulization. Careful attention to delivery technique is critical to optimize medication delivery to the airways. A valved holding chamber or similar spacer should be used with pMDI use, and this technique has been shown to be effective in infants as young as 4 months of age. A face-mask interface is recommended for both pMDI and wet nebulization in infants and toddlers; a simple mouth piece suffices for older children who can form a seal around the mouth piece. Delivery technique should be assessed and reviewed at each clinical visit.

Ahrens RC et al: Device selection and outcomes of aerosol therapy: evidence-based guidelines. Chest 2005;127:335–371 [PMID: 15654001].

Nagakumar P, Doull I: Current therapy for bronchiolitis. Arch Dis Child 2012;97(9):827-830 [PMID: 22734014].

Rubin BK: Air and soul: the science and application of aerosol therapy. Respir Care 2010;55(7):912–921 [PMID: 20587104].

Table 19–3. Common uses for inhaled medications in pediatric respiratory illness.

Disease Process	Short-Acting Bronchodilator	Anticholinergic Bronchodilator	Inhaled Steroid	Other
Asthma	Acute relief prior to exercise	Acute relief	Chronic use for control of inflammation	Inhaled corticosteroid + long-acting bronchodilator for control
Bronchopulmonary dysplasia	Acute relief	Acute relief	Chronic use for control of inflammation if bronchial reactivity is present	
Cystic fibrosis	Prior to airway clearance	Limited data	Chronic use for control of inflammation if bronchial reactivity is present	Mucolytics and inhaled antibiotics
Infectious laryngotracheobronchitis (croup)	Acute relief (racemic epinephrine)		Acute relief (nebulized steroid)	
Bronchiolitis (acute infectious)	Acute relief (may have limited benefit)		Ongoing investigation of inhaled epinephrine and hypertonic saline	Recent interest in inhaled epinephrine and hypertonic saline

AIRWAY CLEARANCE THERAPY

Chest physical therapy, with postural drainage, percussion, and forced expiratory maneuvers, has been widely used to improve the clearance of lower airway secretions in children with CF, bronchiectasis, and neuromuscular disorders. Currently available airway clearance techniques include: chest physiotherapy, autogenic drainage, blowing therapies (bubbles, pinwheels), active coughing, positive expiratory pressure (PEP) with handheld devices, intrapulmonary percussive ventilation and high-frequency chest compression. The decision about which technique to use should be based on the patient's age and preference after trying different approaches. Daily exercise is an important adjunctive therapy for airway clearance and overall lung health. Cough assist devices (eg, mechanical insufflator-exsufflators) are useful for children with a weak cough due to neuromuscular disorders such as muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. Bronchodilators or mucolytic medications may be given prior to or during airway clearance therapy. If prescribed, inhaled corticosteroids and inhaled antibiotics should be given after airway clearance therapy so that the airways are first cleared of secretions, allowing the medications to maximally penetrate into the lung. Airway clearance has not been shown to be beneficial for patients with acute respiratory illnesses such as pneumonia, bronchiolitis, and asthma.

De Boeck K et al: Airway clearance techniques to treat acute respiratory disorders in previously healthy children: where is the evidence? Eur J Pediatr 2008;167;607–612 [PMID: 18322699].
Kravitz RM: Airway clearance in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Pediatrics 2009;123:S231–S235 [PMID: 19420150].
Lester MK et al: Airway-clearance therapy guidelines and implementation. Resp Care 2009; 54(6):733–750 [PMID: 19467161].

AVOIDANCE OF ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARDS

Environmental insults can aggravate existing lung diseases and impair pulmonary function, and cause lung disease in children. Outdoor air pollution (ozone and particulates), indoor pollution, diesel exhaust, and household fungi are examples. Environmental tobacco poisoning, either second dramatically increases childhood pulmonary morbidity. Many adolescents personally abuse tobacco and become addicted. Smoking family members should be admonished to quit smoking and do everything possible to minimize environmental smoke exposure to the people around them. Homes with mold should have remediation, particularly if children with lung disease are in residence. Ozone exposure can be limited by avoiding outdoor activities during the height of daily ozone levels.

For children with asthma, family pets may be a significant trigger as can household cockroach infestation. Despite the known risk, many families are reluctant to eliminate the risk of exposure to the pet.

Breysse PN et al. Indoor air pollution and asthma in children. Proce Am Thorac Soc 2010;7:102–106 [PMID: 20427579].
Guarnieri M, Balmes JR: Outdoor air pollution and asthma. Lancet 2014;383:1581–1592 [PMID: 24792855].
State of the Air Report 2012: Report by the American Lung Association: http://www.stateoftheair.org/. Accessed January 7, 2015.

DISORDERS OF THE CONDu CTING AIRWAYS

The conducting airways include the nose, mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and terminal bronchioles. These airways direct inspired air to the gas-exchange units of the lung but do not participate in gas exchange. Airflow obstruction in the conducting airways can occur at extrathoracic sites (eg, above the thoracic inlet) or at intrathoracic sites (eg, below the thoracic inlet). Extrathoracic or upper airway obstruction disrupts the inspiratory phase of respiration and is often manifest by stridor or "noisy breathing." Intrathoracic obstruction disrupts the expiratory phase of respiration and is often manifest by wheezing and prolongation of the expiratory phase. After assessing whether the obstruction is extrathoracic or intrathoracic the next challenge is to determine if the obstruction is fixed or variable. Fixed obstructions disrupt each breath and the abnormal sounds are consistently heard. Fixed obstructions can be intrinsic to the airway or due to airway compression (extrinsic). They are often associated with anatomic abnormalities that may be amenable to surgical correction (Table 19–4).

Variable obstruction leads to abnormal sounds with breathing that are softer or absent with normal quiet breathing and may sound different with every breath. Variable obstructions are often due to dynamic changes in airway caliber that occurs with laryngomalacia, tracheomalacia, or bronchomalacia. The onset and progression of the obstruction can provide important clues as to the etiology and help determine the urgency of evaluation and management. Obstructions due to dynamic airway collapse often improve with age, whereas fixed obstructions typically progress or fail to improve with age. Acute onset extrathoracic obstruction is often infectious. Clinical indications that the obstruction is severe include high-pitched stridor or wheezing, biphasic stridor, drooling or dysphagia, poor-intensity breath sounds, severe retractions, and poor color or cyanosis.

Helpful diagnostic studies in the evaluation of extrathoracic obstruction include chest and lateral neck radiographs, airway fluoroscopy, and barium swallow. Patients who have symptoms of severe chronic obstruction should have an electrocardiogram and/or ECHO to evaluate for right ventricular hypertrophy and pulmonary hypertension. Patients suspected to have obstructive sleep apnea should have polysomnography (see section Sleep-Disordered Breathing). Diagnostic studies for intrathoracic obstruction include two-view chest radiographs, a sweat test, and pulmonary

Table 19–4. Classification and causes of upper airway obstruction.

Fixed, Extrathoracic, Not Acute	Fixed, Extrathoracic, Acute	Fixed Intrathoracic, Intrinsic	Fixed, Intrathoracic, Extrinsic
Vocal cord paralysis	Infectious laryngotracheobronchitis	Tracheal stenosis	Tumor (compressing the airways)
Laryngeal atresia/web	Epiglottitis	Complete tracheal rings	Vascular ring or sling
Laryngocele/cyst	Bacterial tracheitis	Foreign body aspiration	Bronchogenic cyst
Laryngeal papillomas	Anaphylaxis	Endobronchial tumor	Congenital pulmonary airway malformation
Subglottic hemangioma	Angioneurotic edema		Esophageal duplication
Tracheal web	Foreign body aspiration		Congenital lobar overdistention

function tests. Other diagnostic studies are dictated by the history and physical findings. If asthma is suspected, a trial of bronchodilators and/or anti-inflammatories should be considered. If noninvasive studies are unable to establish the cause of airway obstruction, laryngoscopy and bronchoscopy are indicated to establish the diagnosis. In older children, pulmonary function tests can differentiate fixed from variable airflow obstruction and may identify the site of obstruction. Treatment should be directed at relieving airway obstruction and correcting the underlying condition if possible.

LARYNGOMALACIA & CONGENITAL DISORDERS OF THE EXTRATHORACIC AIRWAY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Presentation from birth or within the first few weeks of life.
- Intermittent, high-pitched, inspiratory stridor.
- Moderate to severe symptoms require visualization of the airway.

LARYNGOMALACIA

Laryngomalacia is a benign congenital disorder in which the cartilaginous support for the supraglottic structures is underdeveloped. It is the most common cause of variable extrathoracic airway obstruction and manifests as **intermittent stridor** in infants, usually within the first 6 weeks of life. Stridor is generally worse in the supine position, with increased activity, with upper respiratory infections, and during feeding; however, the clinical presentation can be variable. Patients may have slight oxygen desaturation during sleep. The condition usually improves with age and resolves by the time the child is 2 years old, but can persist for years. The diagnosis is established by laryngoscopy, which shows inspiratory collapse of an omega-shaped epiglottis (with or without long, redundant arytenoids). In mildly affected patients with no stridor at rest and no retractions, treatment is not usually needed. Patients with either severe symptoms of airway obstruction such as stridor with each breath, retractions, and increased work of breathing or more chronic signs such as feeding difficulties, failure to thrive, obstructive sleep apnea, hypoxemia, or severe dyspnea may benefit from surgical epiglottoplasty.

Dobbie AM, White DR: Laryngomalacia. Pediatr Clin N Am 2013;60:893–902 [PMID: 23905826].

Thompson DM et al: Laryngomalacia: factors that influence disease severity and outcomes of management. Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2010;18(6):564 [PMID: 20962644].

OTHER CAUSES OF CONGENITAL EXTRATHORACIC OBSTRUCTION

Other congenital lesions of the larynx such as laryngeal atresia, laryngeal web, laryngocele and cyst of the larynx, subglottic hemangioma, laryngeal cleft, and subglottic stenosis usually present as fixed extrathoracic obstruction and are best evaluated by direct laryngoscopy.

- Laryngeal atresia presents at birth with severe respiratory distress and is often fatal. Laryngeal web, representing fusion of the anterior portion of the true vocal cords, is associated with hoarseness, aphonia, and stridor.
- Laryngeal cysts and lanryngocoeles present with stridor and significant airway obstruction. Laryngeal cysts are superficial and are generally fluid filled. Laryngocoeles communicate with the interior of the larynx and may be either air- or fluid-filled. Both require surgery or laser therapy.

- Subglottic hemangiomas are a rare cause of upper airway obstruction in infants and are associated with cutaneous vascular lesions of the skin in 50%–60% of patients. Although vascular malformations regress spontaneously, airway obstruction usually necessitates intervention. Medical management options include propranolol, systemic steroids, or intralesional steroids. Surgical intervention with laser ablation is usually successful, but rarely tracheostomy is required.
- Laryngeal cleft is an uncommon condition resulting from failure of posterior cricoid fusion. Patients present with stridor, dysphagia, or silent aspiration. A type 1 laryngeal cleft (above the vocal cords) may not show aspiration on a modified barium swallow while more severe type 2 and 3 laryngeal clefts almost always do. All types of clefts may result in recurrent or chronic pneumonia and failure to thrive. The diagnosis is made by direct laryngoscopy with attention to spreading the posterior glottic structures apart and assessing for the absence of tissue above the vocal folds. The decision to correct type 1 clefts should be made after multidisciplinary consideration of the pulmonary complications and other comorbidities. Repair of type 1 clefts may be addressed surgically or with an injection laryngoplasty. More severe clefts require surgical repair and may require tracheostomy. Normal swallow function without aspiration may not return for months, even after repair.
- Subglottic stenosis can be congenital or acquired.

Ahmad SM, Soliman AM: Congenital anomalies of the larynx. Otolaryngol Clin North Am 2007;40(1):177–191 [PMID: 17346567].

Huoh KC, Rosbe KW: Infantile hemangiomas of the head and neck. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60(4):937–949 [PMID: 23905829].

Ojha S et al: Type I laryngeal cleft: a multidimensional management algorithm. JAMA Otlarygol Head Neck Surg 2014;140(1):34–40 [PMID: 24263209].

ACQu IRED DISORDERS OF THE EXTRATHORACIC AIRWAY

Acquired disorders of the extrathoracic airway can present acutely or with recurrent symptoms of upper airway obstruction. Children with acquired disorders of the extrathoracic airway present with inspiratory sounds consistent with stridor. The pitch of the sound varies depending on the diagnosis. Upper airway obstruction can progress quickly and may be life-threatening, requiring close observation. The differential for acquired disorders includes aspiration, infection, and injury or trauma leading to vocal cord paralysis or subglottic stenosis.

FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION IN THE EXTRATHORACIC AIRWAY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset of coughing or respiratory distress.
- Difficulty vocalizing.

Aspiration of a foreign body into the respiratory tract is a significant cause of accidental death each year. The foreign body can lodge anywhere along the respiratory tract. Foreign bodies that lodge in the esophagus may compress the airway and cause respiratory distress. More typically, the foreign body lodges in the supraglottic airway, triggering protective reflexes that result in laryngospasm. Small objects such as coins may pass through the glottis and obstruct the trachea. Objects that pass into the lower airway cause coughing and more variable respiratory distress (see section Acquired Causes of Intrathoracic Airway Obstruction).

Foreign body aspiration is commonly seen with small, round foods such as nuts and seeds, berries, corn/popcorn, hot dogs, and beans. Children 6 months to 4 years are at the highest risk. Homes and child care centers in which an older sibling or child feeds age-inappropriate foods (eg, peanuts, hard candy, or carrot slices) to the younger child are typical. Without treatment, progressive cyanosis, loss of consciousness, seizures, bradycardia, and cardiopulmonary arrest can follow.

Clinical Findings

Signs at the time of aspiration can include coughing, choking, or wheezing. Onset is generally abrupt, with a history of the child running with food in the mouth or playing with seeds, small coins, or toys.

The diagnosis is established by acute onset of choking along with inability to vocalize or cough and cyanosis with marked distress (complete obstruction), or with drooling, stridor, and ability to vocalize (partial obstruction). Chest x-rays and other imaging studies have been used to evaluate for foreign body ingestion; however, rigid bronchoscopy is the gold standard for diagnosis.

Treatment

The emergency treatment of upper airway obstruction due to foreign body aspiration has changed over the last few years. If complete obstruction is present, then one must intervene immediately. If partial obstruction is present, then the choking subject should be allowed to use his or her own cough reflex to remove the foreign body. If, after

a brief observation period, the obstruction increases or the airway becomes completely obstructed, acute intervention is required. When dealing with an awake child younger than 1 year with a complete obstruction, the child should be placed face down over the rescuer's arm. Five measured back blows are delivered rapidly followed by rolling the infant over and delivering 5 rapid chest thrusts. This sequence is repeated until the obstruction is relieved. In a choking child older than 1 year, abdominal thrusts (Heimlich maneuver) should be performed, with special care in younger children because of concern about possible intra-abdominal organ injury. If the child of any age becomes unresponsive, cardiopulmonary resuscitation is recommended. Chest compressions may help to dislodge the foreign body.

Blind finger sweeps should not be performed in infants or children because the finger may push the foreign body further into the airway. The airway may be opened by jaw thrust, and if the foreign body can be directly visualized, careful removal with the fingers or instruments should be attempted. Patients with persistent apnea and inability to achieve adequate ventilation may require emergency intubation, tracheotomy, or needle cricothyrotomy, depending on the setting and the rescuer's skills. Foreign body removal is most successfully performed using rigid bronchoscope under general anaesthesia.

Berg MD et al: Pediatric basic life support: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Pediatrics 2010 Nov;126(5):e1345–e1360. doi: 10.1542/peds.2010-2972C. Epub 2010 Oct 18 [PMID: 20956430].

Fiedkowski CW, Zheng H, Firth PG: The anesthetic considerations of tracheobronchial foreign bodies in children: a literature review of 12,979 cases. Anesth Analg 2010;111(4):1016–1025 [PMID: 20802055].

CROUP SYNDROMES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» New onset stridor in the setting of an upper respiratory illness or fever.

Croup describes acute inflammatory diseases of the larynx, including viral croup (laryngotracheobronchitis), epiglottitis (supraglottitis), and bacterial tracheitis. These are the main entities in the differential diagnosis for patients presenting with acute stridor, although spasmodic croup, angioedema, laryngeal or esophageal foreign body, and retropharyngeal or peritonsillar abscess should be considered as well.

1. Viral croup

Viral croup generally affects young children 6 months to 5 years of age in the fall and early winter and is most often caused by parainfluenza virus serotypes. However, many other viral organisms as well as M pneumoniae can cause croup. Edema in the subglottic space accounts for the predominant signs of upper airway obstruction although inflammation of the entire airway is often present.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Usually a prodrome of upper respiratory tract symptoms is followed by a barking cough and stridor. Fever is usually absent. Patients with mild disease may have stridor when agitated. As obstruction worsens, stridor occurs at rest, accompanied in severe cases by retractions, air hunger, and cyanosis. On examination, the presence of cough and the absence of drooling favor the diagnosis of viral croup over epiglottitis.

B. Imaging

Anteroposterior and lateral neck radiographs in patients with classic presentations are not required but can be diagnostically supportive if the x-ray shows subglottic narrowing (the steeple sign) without the irregularities seen in tracheitis and a normal epiglottis. A severely ill patient should never be left unattended in the imaging suite.

» Treatment

Treatment of viral croup is based on the symptoms. Mild croup, signified by a barking cough and no stridor at rest, requires supportive therapy with oral hydration and minimal handling. Mist therapy has historically been used but clinical studies do not demonstrate effectiveness. Conversely, patients with stridor at rest require active intervention. Oxygen should be administered to patients with oxygen desaturation. Nebulized racemic epinephrine (0.5 mL of 2.25% solution diluted in sterile saline) is commonly used because it has a rapid onset of action within 10–30 minutes. Both racemic epinephrine and epinephrine hydrochloride (l-epinephrine, an isomer) are effective in alleviating symptoms and decreasing the need for intubation.

The efficacy of glucocorticoids in croup is now firmly established. Dexamethasone, 0.6 mg/kg intramuscularly as one dose, improves symptoms, reduces the duration of hospitalizations and frequency of intubations, and permits earlier discharge from the emergency department. Oral dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg) may be equally effective for mild to moderate croup. Inhaled budesonide (2–4 mg) also improves symptoms and decreases hospital stay and may be as effective as dexamethasone. Dexamethasone has also been shown to be more effective than prednisolone in

equivalent doses. The use of heliox, a mixture of helium and oxygen, improves turbulent airflow, but is not superior to nebulized medication. Its use is limited in hypoxic children because of its low fractional concentration of inspired oxygen.

If symptoms resolve within 3–4 hours of glucocorticoids and nebulized epinephrine, patients can safely be discharged without fear of a sudden rebound in symptoms. If, however, recurrent nebulized epinephrine treatments are required or if respiratory distress persists, patients require hospitalization for close observation, supportive care, and nebulization treatments as needed. In patients with impending respiratory failure, an airway must be established. Intubation with an endotracheal tube of slightly smaller diameter than would ordinarily be used is reasonably safe. Extubation should be accomplished within 2–3 days to minimize the risk of laryngeal injury. If the patient fails extubation, tracheostomy may be required. Other underlying causes should be considered in hospitalized patients with persistent symptoms over 3–4 days despite treatment.

» Prognosis

Most children with viral croup have an uneventful course and improve within a few days. Some evidence suggests that patients with a history of croup associated with wheezing may have airway hyperreactivity. It is not always clear if the hyperreactivity was present prior to the croup episode or if the viral infection causing croup altered airway function.

Petrocheilou A, et al: Viral croup: diagnosis and a treatment algorithm. Ped Pulm 2014;49(5):421 [PMID: 24596395].

2. Epiglottitis

With the introduction of the Haemophilus influenzae conjugate vaccine, the incidence of epiglottitis has dramatically decreased and epiglottitis is rare in countries with immunization programs. If disease occurs, it is likely to be associated with H influenzae in unimmunized children, or another organism such as nontypeable H influenzae, Neisseria meningitidis, or Streptococcus species in immunized populations.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The classic presentation is a sudden onset of high fever, dysphagia, drooling, muffled voice, inspiratory retractions, cyanosis, and soft stridor. Patients often sit in the so-called sniffing dog position, with the neck hyperextended and the chin stretched forward, which gives them the best airway possible under the circumstances. Progression to total airway obstruction may occur and result in respiratory arrest. The definitive diagnosis is made by direct inspection of the epiglottis, a procedure that should be done by an experienced airway specialist under controlled conditions (typically in the operating room during intubation). The typical findings are a cherry-red and swollen epiglottis and swollen arytenoids.

B. Imaging

Diagnostically, lateral neck radiographs may be helpful in demonstrating a classic "thumbprint" sign caused by the swollen epiglottis. Obtaining radiographs, however, may delay important airway intervention.

» Treatment

Once the diagnosis of epiglottitis is made, endotracheal intubation must be performed immediately in children but not necessarily in adults. Most anesthesiologists prefer general anesthesia (but not muscle relaxants) to facilitate intubation. After an airway is established, cultures of the blood and epiglottis should be obtained and the patient should be started on appropriate intravenous antibiotics to cover H influenzae and Streptococcus species (ceftriaxone sodium or an equivalent cephalosporin). Extubation can usually be accomplished in 24–48 hours, when direct inspection shows significant reduction in the size of the epiglottis. Intravenous antibiotics should be continued for 2–3 days, followed by oral antibiotics to complete a 10-day course.

» Prognosis

Prompt recognition and appropriate treatment usually results in rapid resolution of swelling and inflammation. Recurrence is unusual.

Guardiani E et al: Supraglottitis in the era following widespread immunization against Haemophilus influenzae type B: evolving principles in diagnosis and management. The Laryngoscope 2010;120(11):2183 [PMID: 20925091].

Tibballs J et al: Symptoms and signs differentiating croup and epiglottitis. J Paediatr Child Health 2011;47(3):77 [PMID: 21091577].

3. Bacterial Tracheitis

Bacterial tracheitis (pseudomembranous croup) is a severe life-threatening form of laryngotracheobronchitis. As the management of severe viral croup has been improved with the use of dexamethasone and vaccination has decreased the incidence of epiglottitis, tracheitis is relatively more common as a cause of a pediatric airway emergency requiring admission to the pediatric intensive care unit. This diagnosis must be high in the differential when a patient presents with severe upper airway obstruction and fever. The organism most often isolated is Staphylococcus aureus, but organisms such as H influenzae, group A Streptococcus pyogenes, Neisseria species, Moraxella catarrhalis, and others have been reported. A viral prodrome is common. Viral coinfections

are described and influenza should be treated. The disease probably represents localized mucosal invasion of bacteria in patients with primary viral croup, resulting in inflammatory edema, purulent secretions, and pseudomembranes. Although cultures of the tracheal secretions are frequently positive, blood cultures are almost always negative.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The early clinical picture is similar to that of viral croup. However, instead of gradual improvement, patients develop higher fever, toxicity, and progressive or intermittent severe upper airway obstruction that is unresponsive to standard croup therapy. The incidence of sudden respiratory arrest or progressive respiratory failure is high, requiring airway intervention. Findings of toxic shock and the acute respiratory distress syndrome may also be seen. Aggressive medical treatment and debridement is indicated.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging

The white cell count is usually elevated with a left shift. Cultures of tracheal secretions usually demonstrate one of the causative organisms. Lateral neck radiographs show a normal epiglottis but severe subglottic and tracheal narrowing. Irregularity of the contour of the proximal tracheal mucosa can frequently be seen radiographically and should elicit concern for tracheitis. Bronchoscopy showing a normal epiglottis and the presence of copious purulent tracheal secretions and membranes confirms the diagnosis.

» Treatment

Patients with suspected bacterial tracheitis will require direct visualization of the airway in a controlled environment and debridement of the airway. Most patients will be intubated because the incidence of respiratory arrest or progressive respiratory failure is high. Patients may also require further debridement, humidification, frequent suctioning, and intensive care monitoring to prevent endotracheal tube obstruction by purulent tracheal secretions. Intravenous antibiotics to cover S aureus, H influenzae, and the other organisms are indicated. Thick secretions persist for several days, usually resulting in longer periods of intubation for bacterial tracheitis than for epiglottitis or croup. Despite the severity of this illness, the reported mortality rate is very low if it is recognized and treated promptly.

Dawood FS et al: Complications and associated bacterial coinfections among children hospitalized with seasonal or pandemic influenza, United States, 2003-2010. J Infect Dis 2014;209(5):686 [PMID: 23986545].

Tebruegge M et al: Bacterial tracheitis: a multi-centre perspective. Scand J Infect Dis 2009;41(8):548–557 [PMID: 19401934].

VOCAL CORD PARALYSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hoarseness or stridor.
- May present with difficulty swallowing.

Unilateral or bilateral vocal cord paralysis may be congenital, or more commonly may result from injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves. Risk factors for acquired paralysis include difficult delivery (especially face presentation), neck and thoracic surgery (eg, ductal ligation or repair of tracheoesophageal fistula), trauma, mediastinal masses, and central nervous system disease (eg, Arnold-Chiari malformation). Patients may present with varying degrees of hoarseness, aspiration, or high-pitched stridor. Unilateral cord paralysis is more likely to occur on the left because of the longer course of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve and its proximity to major thoracic structures. Patients with unilateral paralysis are usually hoarse but rarely have stridor. With bilateral cord paralysis, the closer to midline the cords are positioned, the greater the airway obstruction; the more lateral the cords are positioned, the greater the tendency to aspirate and experience hoarseness or aphonia. If partial function is preserved (paresis), the adductor muscles tend to operate better than the abductors, with a resultant high-pitched inspiratory stridor and normal voice.

Airway intervention (tracheostomy) is rarely indicated in unilateral paralysis but is often necessary for bilateral paralysis. Clinically, paralysis can be assessed by direct visualization of vocal cord function with laryngoscopy or more invasively by recording the electrical activity of the muscles (electromyography). Electromyogram recordings can differentiate vocal fold paralysis from arytenoid dislocation, which has prognostic value. Recovery is related to the severity of nerve injury and the potential for healing.

King EF, Blumin JH: Vocal cord paralysis in children. Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2009;17(6):483 [PMID: 19730263].

SUBGLOTTIC STENOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic or recurrent stridor.
- History of airway trauma is common in acquired subglottic stenosis.

Subglottic stenosis may be congenital, or more commonly may result from endotracheal intubation. Neonates and infants are particularly vulnerable to subglottic injury from intubation. The subglottis is the narrowest part of an infant's airway, and the cricoid cartilage, which supports the subglottis, is the only cartilage that completely encircles the airway. This area is therefore susceptible to injury when an endotracheal tube is inserted. The clinical presentation may vary from asymptomatic to the typical picture of severe upper airway obstruction. Subglottic stenosis should be suspected in children who repeatedly fail extubation or children with multiple, prolonged, or severe episodes of croup. Diagnosis is made by direct visualization of the subglottic space with bronchoscopy and maneuvers to size the airway. Tracheostomy is often required when airway compromise is severe. Laryngotracheal reconstruction, in which a cartilage graft from another source (eg, rib) is used to expand the airway, has become the standard procedure for severe subglottic stenosis in children. In mild cases, balloon dilation of the subglottis is a less invasive alternative.

Lang M, Brietzke SE: A systematic review and meta-analysis of endoscopic balloon dilation of pediatric subglottic stenosis. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2014;150(2):174 [PMID: 24192289].

O'Connor Tony E et al: Laryngotracheoplasty to avoid tracheostomy in neonatal and infant subglottic stenosis. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2011;144(3):435 [PMID: 21493209].

CONGENITAL CAUSES OF INTRATHORACIC AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

Congenital disorders of intrathoracic airway obstruction airway can present acutely or with recurrent symptoms of lower airway obstruction. Children with disorders of the intrathoracic airway often present with expiratory sounds such as wheeze, recurrent cough, and/or recurrent pneumonia due to retained secretions. The differential for intrathoracic airway obstruction includes airway malacia, extrinsic compression (eg, vascular ring), and congenital anomalies such as bronchogenic cysts.

MALACIA OF AIRWAYS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic monophonic wheeze with or without a barking cough.
- Respiratory symptoms do not respond to bronchodilators.

» Pathogenesis

Tracheomalacia or bronchomalacia exists when the cartilaginous framework of the airway is inadequate to maintain airway patency. Airway collapse is dynamic and can lead to airway obstruction. Because infant airway cartilage is normally soft, infants have some degree of dynamic collapse of the central airway during the phases of respiration. Tracheomalacia and bronchomalacia can be congenital or acquired. Congenital tracheomalacia and bronchomalacia are associated with developmental abnormalities such as tracheoesophageal fistula, vascular ring, or cardiac anomalies causing extrinsic airway compression during development. Tracheomalacia is also associated with various syndromes. Congenital tracheomalacia may be localized or diffuse and may extend through to the remainder of the conducting airways (bronchomalacia). Acquired tracheomalacia has been associated with long-term ventilation of premature newborns, severe tracheobronchitis, surgical repair of airways anomalies such as tracheoesophageal fistula and complete tracheal rings, and extrinsic airway compression due to tumors, abscess or infection, and cysts.

» Clinical Findings

Coarse and recurrent wheezing, cough, or stridor that do not respond to bronchodilators are common findings. Symptoms classically present insidiously over the first few months of life and can increase with agitation, excitement, activity, or upper respiratory tract infections. Diagnosis can be made by airway fluoroscopy or bronchoscopy.

» Treatment

Observation is usually indicated for mild symptoms, which generally improve over time with growth. Coexisting lesions such as tracheoesophageal fistulas and vascular rings need primary repair. In severe cases of tracheomalacia, intubation or tracheostomy may be necessary. Unfortunately, tracheostomy alone is seldom satisfactory because airway collapse continues to exist below the tip of the artificial airway. Positive pressure ventilation may be required to stent the airway open. Surgical intervention (tracheopexy, aortopexy, or stents) may be considered for the most challenging situations.

» Prognosis

The resolution of symptoms due to airway malacia depends upon the severity and extent of the airway malacia and any underlying illness in the child. Children with mild malacia who do not have other underlying lung disease or neuromuscular disease will most likely have at least partial resolution by the time they are 3–4 years old.

Carden KA et al: Tracheomalacia and tracheobronchomalacia in children and adults: an in-depth review. Chest 2005;127:984 [PMID: 15764786].
Goyal V, Masters IB, Chang AB: Interventions for primary (intrinsic) tracheomalacia in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012;CD005304 [PMID: 23076914].

VASCULAR RINGS AND SLINGS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic barking cough, wheeze.
- A barium swallow showing esophageal compression is the mainstay of diagnosis.

The most common vascular anomaly to compress the trachea or esophagus is a vascular ring. A vascular ring can be formed by a double aortic arch or a right aortic arch with left ligamentum arteriosum or a patent ductus arteriosus. The pulmonary sling is created when the left pulmonary artery branches off the right pulmonary artery. Other common vascular anomalies include an anomalous innominate artery, a left carotid artery, and an aberrant right subclavian artery. All but the right subclavian artery can cause tracheal compression. The pulmonary sling may compress the trachea but can also compress the right upper lobe bronchus or the right mainstem takeoff. A pulmonary sling is associated with long segment tracheal stenosis 50% of the time.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms of chronic airway obstruction (stridor, coarse wheezing, and croupy cough) are often worse in the supine position. Respiratory compromise is most severe with double aortic arch and may lead to apnea, respiratory arrest, or even death. Esophageal compression may result in feeding difficulties. Barium swallow showing esophageal compression is the mainstay of diagnosis in all but anomalous innominate or carotid artery. Chest radiographs and echocardiograms may miss abnormalities. Anatomy can be further defined by angiography, chest CT with contrast, MRI or magnetic resonance angiography, or bronchoscopy.

» Treatment

Patients with significant symptoms require surgical correction, especially those with double aortic arch. Patients usually improve following correction but may have persistent but milder symptoms of airway obstruction due to associated tracheomalacia.

Humphrey C et al: Decade of experience with vascular rings at a single institution. Pediatrics 2006;117:e903 [PMID: 16585275].
McLaren CA, Elliott MJ, Roebuck DJ: Vascular compression of the airway in children. Paediatr Respir Rev 2008;9(2):85–94 [PMID: 18513668].

BRONCHOGENIC CYSTS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Can present with symptoms of airway compression, infection, or chest pain.
- Chest radiograph may show a spherical lesion along the airway.

Bronchogenic cysts generally occur in the middle mediastinum (see section Mediastinal Masses) near the carina and adjacent to the major bronchi but can be found elsewhere in the lung. They range in size from 2 to 10 cm. Cyst walls are thin and may contain air, pus, mucus, or blood. Cysts develop from abnormal lung budding of the primitive foregut and can occur in conjunction with other congenital pulmonary malformations such as pulmonary sequestration or lobar emphysema.

» Clinical Findings

Bronchogenic cysts can present acutely with respiratory distress in early childhood due to airway compression or with symptoms of infection. Other patients present with chronic symptoms such as chest pain, chronic wheezing, cough, intermittent tachypnea, recurrent pneumonia, or recurrent stridor, depending on the location and size of the cysts and the degree of airway compression. Still other patients remain asymptomatic until adulthood. However, all asymptomatic cysts will eventually become symptomatic; chest pain is the most common presenting complaint. The physical examination is often normal. Physical examination findings might include tracheal deviation from the midline and decreased breath sounds; percussion over involved lobes may be hyperresonant due to air trapping.

A. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The choice of diagnostic studies for bronchogenic cysts is controversial. Chest radiographs can show air trapping and hyperinflation of the affected lobes or may show a spherical lesion with or without an air-fluid level. However, smaller lesions may not be seen on chest radiographs. CT scan is the preferred imaging study and can differentiate solid versus cystic mediastinal masses and define the cyst's relationship

to the airways and the rest of the lung. A barium swallow can help determine whether the lesion communicates with the gastrointestinal tract. MRI and ultrasound are other imaging modalities used.

» Treatment

Treatment is surgical resection. Resection should be performed as soon as the cyst is detected to avoid future complications including infection. Postoperatively, vigorous pulmonary physiotherapy is required to prevent complications (atelectasis or infection of the lung distal to the site of resection of the cyst).

Eber E: Antenatal diagnosis of congenital thoracic malformations: early surgery, late surgery, or no surgery? Semin Respir Crit Care Med 2007;28(3):355–366 [PMID: 17562505].

ACQUIRED CAUSES OF INTRATHORACIC AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

Acquired disorders of intrathoracic airway obstruction airway can present acutely or with recurrent symptoms of lower airway obstruction. Children with disorders of the intrathoracic airway often present with expiratory sounds such as wheeze, recurrent cough, and/or recurrent pneumonia due to retained secretions. The differential for intrathoracic airway obstruction includes foreign body aspiration, infection, extrinsic compression not present at birth (eg, lymphadenopathy), and chronic lung diseases causing airway swelling such as disorders of mucociliary clearance, recurrent aspiration, and asthma.

FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION IN THE INTRATHORACIC AIRWAY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset of coughing, wheezing, or respiratory distress.
- Asymmetrical physical findings of decreased breath sounds or localized wheezing.
- Asymmetrical radiographic findings, especially with forced expiratory view.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Respiratory symptoms and signs vary depending on the site of obstruction and the duration following the acute episode. (See section Foreign Body Aspiration in the Extrathoracic Airway.) The acute cough or wheezing caused by a foreign body in the lower respiratory tract may diminish over time only to recur later as chronic cough or persistent wheezing, monophonic wheezing, asymmetrical breath sounds on chest examination, or recurrent pneumonia in one location. Foreign body aspiration should be suspected in children with chronic cough, persistent wheezing, or recurrent pneumonia. Hearing asymmetrical breath sounds or localized wheezing also suggests a foreign body.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Inspiratory and forced expiratory (obtained by manually compressing the abdomen during expiration) chest radiographs should be obtained if foreign body aspiration is suspected. Chest radiographs may be normal up to 17% of the time. A positive forced expiratory study shows unilateral hyperinflation and there may be a mediastinal shift away from the affected side. If obstruction of a distal airway is complete, atelectasis and related volume loss will be the major radiologic findings. Virtual bronchoscopy and computerized tomography are alternative approaches for detecting a foreign body.

» Treatment

When a foreign body is highly suspected, a normal chest radiograph is not sufficient to rule out the possibility of an airway foreign body. If clinical suspicion persists based on two of three findings—history of possible aspiration, focal abnormal lung examination, or an abnormal chest radiograph—then a bronchoscopy is indicated. Rigid bronchoscopy under general anesthesia is recommended. Flexible bronchoscopy may be helpful for follow-up evaluations (after the foreign object has been removed).

Children with suspected acute foreign body aspiration should be admitted to the hospital for evaluation and treatment. Chest postural drainage is no longer recommended because the foreign body may become dislodged and obstruct a major central airway. Bronchoscopy should not be delayed in children with respiratory distress but should be performed as soon as the diagnosis is made—even in children with more chronic symptoms. Following the removal of the foreign body, β-adrenergic nebulization treatments followed by chest physiotherapy are recommended to help clear related mucus or treat bronchospasm. Failure to identify a foreign body in the lower respiratory tract can result in bronchiectasis or lung abscess. This risk justifies an aggressive approach to suspected foreign bodies in suspicious cases.

Chiu CY et al: Factors predicting early diagnosis of foreign body aspiration in children. Pediatr Emerg Care 2005;21:161 [PMID: 15744193].

Cohen S, Avital A, Godfrey S, Gross M, Kerem E, Springer C: Suspected foreign body inhalation in children: what are the indications for bronchoscopy? J Pediatr 2009 Aug;155(2): 276–280 [Epub 2009 May 15] [PMID: 19446848].

DISORDERS OF MUCOCILIARY CLEARANCE

Mucociliary clearance is the primary defense mechanism for the lung. Inhaled particles including microbial pathogens are also entrapped in mucus on the airway surface, then cleared by the coordinated action of cilia. The volume and composition of airway surface liquid influence the efficiency of ciliary function and mucus clearance. Mucous that cannot be cleared normally can obstruct the airways. If mucociliary clearance is not normal, bacteria that are not cleared can cause a vicious cycle of infection and inflammation and increased mucous production. The two main genetic diseases of mucociliary clearance involve disorders of ion transport (cystic fibrosis [CF]) and disorders in ciliary function (primary ciliary dyskinesia [PCD]).

CYSTIC FIBROSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Greasy, bulky, malodorous stools; failure to thrive.
- Recurrent respiratory infections.
- Digital clubbing
- Bronchiectasis on chest imaging
- Sweat chloride > 60 mmol/L

Pathogenesis

Cystic fibrosis (CF), an autosomal recessive disease, results in a syndrome of chronic sinopulmonary infections, malabsorption, and nutritional abnormalities. It is one of the most common lethal genetic diseases in the United States, with an incidence of approximately 1:3000 among Caucasians and 1:9200 in the US Hispanic population. Although abnormalities occur in the hepatic, gastrointestinal, and male reproductive systems, lung disease is the major cause of morbidity and mortality. Most individuals with CF develop obstructive lung disease associated with chronic infection that leads to progressive loss of pulmonary function.

The cause of CF is a defect in a single gene on chromosome 7 that encodes an epithelial chloride channel called the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein. The most common mutation is F508del, although approximately 1800 other disease-causing mutations been identified. Gene mutations lead to absence or defects in CFTR, altering salt and water movement across cell membranes, resulting in abnormally thick secretions in various organ systems and critically altering host defense in the lung.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

All states in the United States and many other countries now perform newborn screening for CF by measuring immunoreactive trypsin (IRT), a pancreatic enzyme, in blood with or without concurrent DNA testing. Most infants with CF have elevated IRT in the newborn period, although false negative results are possible. In newborns with positive newborn screen, the diagnosis of CF must be confirmed by sweat testing, mutation analysis, or both (http://www.cff.org/AboutCF/Testing/NewbornScreening/).

Approximately 15% of newborns with CF present at birth with meconium ileus, a severe intestinal obstruction resulting from inspissation of tenacious meconium in the terminal ileum. Meconium ileus is virtually diagnostic of CF, so the infant should be treated presumptively as having CF until a sweat test or genotyping can be obtained.

During infancy and beyond, a common presentation of CF is failure to thrive due to malabsorption from exocrine pancreatic insufficiency, failure of the pancreas to produce sufficient enzymes to digest fats and protein. Children with pancreatic insufficiency fail to gain weight despite good appetite and typically have frequent, bulky, foul-smelling, oily stools. Pancreatic insufficiency occurs in more than 85% of persons with CF. (Chapter 22 describes gastrointestinal and hepatobiliary manifestations of CF; see also Table 22–12.) Infants with undiagnosed CF may also present with hypoproteinemia, anemia, and deficiency of the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K, because of ongoing steatorrhea.

CF should also be considered in children who present with severe dehydration and hypochloremic alkalosis, and in children with unexplained bronchiectasis, rectal prolapse, nasal polyps, chronic sinusitis, and unexplained pancreatitis or cirrhosis. Respiratory symptoms can include productive cough, wheezing, recurrent pneumonia, progressive obstructive airways disease, exercise intolerance, dyspnea, and hemoptysis. Chronic airway infection with bacteria, including S aureus and H influenzae, often begins in the first few months of life, even in asymptomatic infants. Eventually, Pseudomonas aeruginosa and other gram-negative opportunistic bacteria become the predominant pathogens. Chronic infection leads to airflow obstruction and progressive airway and lung destruction resulting in bronchiectasis.

Episodic increases in respiratory symptoms are generically termed pulmonary exacerbations. Clinically, an exacerbation manifests by increased cough and sputum production, decreased exercise tolerance, malaise, and weight loss, and decrease in measures of lung function. Treatment for pulmonary exacerbations generally consists of antibiotics and augmented airway clearance.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The diagnosis of CF is made by a sweat chloride concentration greater than 60 mmol/L in the presence of one or more typical clinical features (chronic sinopulmonary disease, pancreatic insufficiency, salt loss syndromes) or family history (sibling or first cousin who has CF). Sweat tests should be performed at a CF Foundation–accredited laboratory. A diagnosis can also be confirmed by genotyping that reveals two disease-causing mutations (www.cftr2.org).

Intermediate sweat chloride values of 30–60 may be associated with mild CFTR mutations that result in residual functioning CFTR protein. Patients with residual CFTR function typically have adequate pancreatic exocrine function, but may develop severe lung disease. CFTR-related metabolic syndrome, diagnosed based on elevated IRT on newborn screen but sweat test less than 60 mmol/L and up to two CFTR mutations, at least one of which is not considered disease-causing, appears to have an even milder disease phenotype. The natural history of this condition is still being defined.

» Treatment

It is strongly recommended that individuals with CF be followed at a CF Foundation–accredited CF care center (http://www.cff.org). Care is provided with a multidisciplinary team approach that includes pulmonologists and advanced practice providers trained in CF care, nurses, respiratory therapists, dietitians, social workers, and psychologists. Recently a large study highlighted the importance of screening for depression and anxiety in patients with CF, as these are prevalent and negatively impact quality of life and adherence to treatment regimens.

The cornerstone of gastrointestinal treatment is pancreatic enzyme supplementation combined with a high-calorie, high-protein, and high-fat diet. Persons with CF are required to take pancreatic enzyme immediately prior to each meal and with snacks and should also take daily multivitamins that contain vitamins A, D, E, and K. Caloric supplements are often added to the diet to optimize growth. Daily salt supplementation also is required to prevent hyponatremia, especially during hot weather

Airway clearance therapy and aggressive antibiotic use form the mainstays of treatment for CF lung disease. Antibiotic therapy appears to be one of the primary reasons for the increased life expectancy of persons with CF. Respiratory treatments typically include recombinant human dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), inhaled hypertonic saline, and for those with chronic Pseudomonas infection, anti-pseudomonal antibiotics (tobramycin or aztreonam), and oral azithromycin. These therapies have been shown to maintain lung function and reduce the need for hospitalizations and intravenous antibiotics. Early detection of P aeruginosa and treatment with inhaled tobramycin can often eradicate the bacteria and delay chronic infection. Bronchodilators and anti-inflammatory therapies are also frequently used.

Recent clinical trials using protein-rescue therapies to improve CFTR function (termed CFTR modulators) have shown encouraging results. The first treatment that directly addresses the underlying defect in CF was approved in 2012. This drug, ivacaftor, is currently approved for use in patients ages 6 and older with at least one gating mutation (eg, G551D) or the R117H CFTR mutation, which includes about 6% of CF patients. Phase III trials of ivacaftor combined with a second drug, lumacaftor, for people who are F508del homozygous, were recently completed, and are under review with the FDA. Ongoing trials of these and other CFTR modulators may extend its use to patients who are F508del heterozygous or have other mutations.

» Prognosis

A few decades ago, CF was fatal in early childhood. Now the median life expectancy is around 40 years of age. The rate of lung disease progression usually determines survival. Lung transplantation may be performed in those with end-stage lung disease. In addition, new treatments, including gene therapy trials and improved CFTR modulators, are in development to improve life expectancy and quality of life.

Boyle MP et al: A CFTR corrector (lumacaftor) and a CFTR potentiator (ivacaftor) for treatment of patients with cystic fibrosis who have a phe508del CFTR mutation: a phase 2 randomized controlled trial. Lancet Respir Med 2014 Jul;2(7):527–538 [PMID: 24973281].

Farrell PM et al: Guidelines for diagnosis of cystic fibrosis in newborns through older adults: Cystic Fibrosis Foundation consensus report. J Pediatr 2008;153:S4–S14 [PMID: 18639722].

Quittner AL et al: Prevalence of depression and anxiety in patients with cystic fibrosis and parent caregivers: results of The International Depression Epidemiological Study across nine countries. Thorax 2014 Dec;69(12):1090–1097 [PMID: 25246663].

Ramsey BW et al: A CFTR potentiator in patients with cystic fibrosis and the G551D mutation. N Engl J Med 2011;365(18):1663–1672 [PMID: 22047557].

PRIMARY CILIARY DYSKINESIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic cough, sinusitis, and otitis.
- Unexplained respiratory distress in the newborn period.
- Situs inversus in approximately 50% of cases.
- Diagnosis confirmed by identifying a ciliary ultrastructural abnormality on electron microscopy or mutations in primary ciliary dyskinesia genes

Primary ciliary dyskinesia (PCD), also known as immotile cilia syndrome, is a rare, inherited, usually autosomal

recessive disorder with impaired ciliary function leading to progressive sinopulmonary disease. It is believed to occur in approximately 1 in 15,000 births. Almost half of patients with PCD have situs abnormalities, and men are usually infertile. The triad of situs inversus totalis, bronchiectasis, and chronic sinusitis is known as Kartagener syndrome.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Situs inversus totalis occurs in approximately 50% of patients with PCD. Conversely, 20% of children with situs inversus totalis have PCD. Upper and lower respiratory tract manifestations are cardinal features of PCD. The majority of children with PCD present in the immediate newborn period with respiratory distress (commonly diagnosed as neonatal pneumonia or transient tachypnea of the newborn). Upper respiratory tract problems include chronic year-around nasal drainage that may begin in the first weeks of life, chronic sinusitis, nasal polyps, and chronic serous otitis media. Conductive hearing loss with chronic middle ear effusion is common. If myringotomy tubes are placed, chronic otorrhea often ensues. Lower respiratory tract features include chronic productive cough, chronic and recurrent bronchitis, and recurrent pneumonia. They are at risk to develop obstructive lung disease and bronchiectasis.

Nonrespiratory ciliopathies that have been associated with PCD include heterotaxy, asplenia, polysplenia, congenital heart disease, autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease, retinitis pigmentosa, biliary atresia, and hydrocephalus.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The diagnosis of PCD currently requires a compatible clinical phenotype and identification of ultrastructural and/or functional defects of the cilia. Examination of ciliary ultrastructure by transmission electron microscopy remains the cornerstone test for PCD. Cilia samples may be obtained from either the upper airways (nasal passage) or lower airways (trachea). Semen collection from older male patients can also be obtained to analyze sperm tails, which have the same ultrastructure as cilia. Significant expertise is required to produce high-quality transmission electron micrographs of cilia, and to distinguish primary (genetic) defects from secondary (acquired) defects in ciliary ultrastructure. Ciliary beat frequency or airway epithelium cultures are also used for diagnosis in some settings. In patients with a compatible clinical history but without visible ultrastructural defects, very low levels of nasal nitric oxide is a useful screening and adjunctive diagnostic test in children ages 5 and older. Genetic testing is emerging for PCD and demonstrates extensive genetic heterogeneity. Some genes and gene mutations involved in PCD have been defined. Approximately 50% of PCD cases have identifiable gene mutations in one of 14 known PCD genes.

» Treatment

At present, no specific therapies are available to correct the ciliary dysfunction in PCD. Treatment is not evidence-based and recommendations are largely extrapolated from CF and other suppurative lung diseases. Respiratory management includes routine pulmonary monitoring (lung function testing, respiratory cultures, chest imaging), airway clearance by combinations of physiotherapy and physical exercise, and aggressive treatment of upper and lower airways infections.

» Prognosis

The progression of lung disease in PCD is quite variable. Importantly, persons with PCD are at risk for chronic obstructive lung disease with bronchiectasis. With monitoring and aggressive treatment during times of illness, most individuals with PCD should experience a normal or near-normal life span.

Davis SD et al: Clinical features of childhood primary ciliary dyskinesia by genotype and ultrastructural phenotype. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2015;191(3):316–324 [PMID: 25493340].

Hosie PH et al: Presentation of primary ciliary dyskinesia in children: 30 years' experience. J Pediatr Child Health 2014 Dec;51(7):722–726 [PMID: 25510893].

Knowles MR, Daniels LA, Davis SD, Zariwala MA, Leigh MW: Primary ciliary dyskinesia. Recent advances in diagnostics, genetics, and characterization of clinical disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2013;188(8):913–922 [PMID: 23796196].

BRONCHIECTASIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic cough with sputum production.
- Rhonchi or wheezes (or both) on chest auscultation.
- Diagnosis is confirmed by high-resolution CT scan.

» Pathogenesis

Bronchiectasis is the permanent dilation of bronchi resulting from airway obstruction by retained mucus secretions or inflammation in response to chronic or repeated infection. It occurs either as a consequence of a preceding illness (severe pneumonia or foreign body aspiration) or as a manifestation of an underlying systemic disorder (CF, PCD, chronic aspiration, or immunodeficiency).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Persons with bronchiectasis will typically have chronic cough, purulent sputum, fever, and weight loss. Recurrent

respiratory infections and dyspnea on exertion are also common. Hemoptysis occurs less frequently in children than in adults with bronchiectasis. On physical examination, finger clubbing may be seen. Rales, rhonchi, and decreased air entry are often noted over the bronchiectatic areas.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The most common bacteria detected in cultures from the lower respiratory tract include S pneumoniae, S aureus, nontypeable H influenzae, and P aeruginosa. Nontuberculous mycobacterial species may also be detected in patients with bronchiectasis.

Chest radiographs may be mildly abnormal with slightly increased bronchovascular markings or areas of atelectasis, or they may demonstrate cystic changes in one or more areas of the lung. The extent of bronchiectasis is best defined by high-resolution CT, which often reveals far wider involvement of lung than expected from the chest radiograph. Airflow obstruction and air trapping often is seen on pulmonary function testing. Evaluation of lung function after use of a bronchodilator is helpful in assessing the benefit from bronchodilators. Serial assessments of lung function help define the progression or resolution of the disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

Bronchiectasis has numerous causes. It can occur following severe respiratory tract infections by bacteria (S aureus, Bordetella pertussis), viruses (adenovirus), or other organisms (M tuberculosis). Bronchiectasis can also be due to persistent inflammation and is commonly seen in persons with recurrent aspiration pneumonia, CF, PCD, immunodeficiency, surfactant deficiencies, and collagen-vascular conditions. Other diagnostic considerations include foreign body aspiration and allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis.

» Treatment

Aggressive antibiotic therapy during pulmonary exacerbations and routine airway clearance are mainstays of treatment. Chronic antibiotic use, anti-inflammatory therapy, hyperosmolar agents (hypertonic saline), and bronchodilators have not proven effective in non-CF bronchiectasis, although individual patients may benefit. However, a large study in adults with idiopathic bronchiectasis concluded that those who received dornase alpha twice a day had more frequent exacerbations, hospitalizations, and lower lung function compared to placebo; thus, dornase alpha is not indicated in adult idiopathic bronchiectasis. Chronic azithromycin was recently shown to reduce exacerbations in adults with non-CF bronchiectasis. Whether these results translate to children with idiopathic bronchiectasis is not known.

Surgical removal of an area of lung affected with severe bronchiectasis is considered when the response to medical therapy is poor. Other indications for operation include severe localized disease, repeated hemoptysis, and recurrent pneumonia in one area. If bronchiectasis is widespread, surgical resection offers little advantage.

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on the underlying cause and severity of bronchiectasis, the extent of lung involvement, and the response to medical management. Good pulmonary hygiene and avoidance of infectious complications in the involved areas of lung may reverse cylindrical bronchiectasis.

Salerno T et al: Bronchiectasis and severe respiratory insufficiency associated with a new surfactant protein C mutation. Acta Paediatr 2013 Jan;102(1):e1–e2 [PMID: 23025826].

Wong C et al: Azithromycin for prevention of exacerbations in non-cystic fibrosis bronchiectasis (EMBRACE): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 2012 Aug 18;380(9842):660–667 [PMID: 22901887].

° BRONCHIOLITIS OBLITERANS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Persistent symptoms of airway obstruction 8 weeks after the resolution of a lower respiratory tract infection.
- » Chest CT shows a mosaic pattern of hyperinflation and vascular attenuation.

Bronchiolitis obliterans is a rare chronic obstructive lung disease characterized by complete obliteration of the small airways following a severe insult. The most common form in children is post-infectious, following a lower airway tract infection with adenovirus, although influenza, rubeola, Bordetella, and Mycoplasma are also implicated. Other causes include connective tissue diseases, chronic aspiration, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, post-transplantation (lung or bone marrow) and inhalational injury. Many cases of bronchiolitis obliterans are idiopathic. Adenovirus-induced bronchiolitis obliterans occurs more frequently in the Native American population. Mechanical ventilation for severe adenoviral respiratory infection is a strong risk factor for development of bronchiolitis obliterans.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Persons with bronchiolitis obliterans usually experience dyspnea, coughing, and exercise intolerance. This diagnosis should be considered in children with persistent cough,

wheezing, crackles, or hypoxemia lasting longer than 60 days following a lower respiratory tract infection.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Chest radiograph abnormalities include evidence of heterogeneous air trapping and airway wall thickening. Traction bronchiectasis can occur as the disease progresses. Classic findings on high-resolution chest CT include a mosaic perfusion pattern, vascular attenuation, and central bronchiectasis. This finding along with pulmonary function testing showing airway obstruction unresponsive to bronchodilators may be diagnostic in patients with the appropriate clinical history. Although not typically required for diagnosis, ventilation-perfusion scans may show a pattern of ventilation and perfusion mismatch. Pulmonary angiograms reveal decreased vasculature in involved lung, and bronchograms show marked pruning of the bronchial tree.

» Differential Diagnosis

Poorly treated asthma, CF, and BPD must be considered in children with persistent airway obstruction. A trial of medications (including bronchodilators and corticosteroids) may help determine the reversibility of the process when the primary differential is between asthma and bronchiolitis obliterans. Others without classic findings on CT scan and lung function testing may require a lung biopsy.

» Complications

Sequelae of bronchiolitis obliterans include persistent airway obstruction, recurrent wheezing, bronchiectasis, chronic atelectasis, recurrent pneumonia, and unilateral hyperlucent lung syndrome.

» Treatment

Supportive care, including supplemental oxygen for hypoxemia, routine vaccination, avoidance of environmental irritant exposure, exercise, and nutritional support should be provided. Ongoing airway damage due to problems such as aspiration should be prevented. Inhaled bronchodilators (β-agonists and anticholinergic) may reverse airway obstruction if the disease has a reactive component. Systemic corticosteroids may help reverse the obstruction or prevent ongoing damage; monthly pulse-dose corticosteroids will reduce the risk of adverse effects associated with long term corticosteroids. Antibiotics should be used as indicated for pneumonia. Azithromycin has been shown to have therapeutic benefit in bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome after lung transplantation, providing rationale for a trial of this medication for bronchiolitis obliterans. Lung transplant may be an option for patients with severe, progressive disease.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends in part on the underlying cause as well as the age of onset. Postinfectious bronchiolitis obliterans tends to be nonprogressive with low mortality and the possibility of slow improvement. Conversely, posttransplantation or Stevens-Johnson syndrome related-bronchiolitis obliterans may have a rapidly progressive course leading to death or need for lung transplantation.

Colom AJ et al: Pulmonary function of a paediatric cohort of patients with postinfectious bronchiolitis obliterans. A long term follow-up. Thorax 2015 Feb;70(2):169–174 [PMID: 25388479].

Li YN et al: Post-infectious bronchiolitis obliterans in children: a review of 42 cases. BMC Pediatr 2014 Sep 25;14:238 [PMID: 25252824].

Teixeira MF et al: Acute bronchodilator responsiveness to tiotropium in postinfectious bronchiolitis obliterans in children. Chest 2013 Sep;144(3):974–980 [PMID: 23558666].

Tomikawa SO et al: Follow-up on pediatric patients with bronchiolitis obliterans treated with corticosteroid pulse therapy. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2014 Aug 15;9:128 [PMID: 25124141].

CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS OF THE LUNG PARENCHYMA

PULMONARY AGENESIS & HYPOPLASIA

In unilateral pulmonary agenesis (complete absence of one lung), the trachea continues into a main bronchus and often has complete tracheal rings. The left lung is affected more often than the right. With compensatory postnatal growth, the remaining lung often herniates into the contralateral chest. Chest radiographs show a mediastinal shift toward the affected side . Absent or incomplete lung development may be associated with vertebral and other congenital abnormalities, such as absence of one or both kidneys or fusion of ribs, and the outcome is primarily related to the severity of associated lesions. About 50% of patients survive; the mortality rate is higher with agenesis of the right lung than of the left lung. This difference is probably not related to the higher incidence of associated anomalies but rather to a greater shift in the mediastinum that leads to tracheal compression and distortion of vascular structures.

Pulmonary hypoplasia is incomplete development of one or both lungs, characterized by a reduction in alveolar number and a reduction in airway branches. Pulmonary hypoplasia is present in up to 10%–15% of perinatal autopsies. The hypoplasia can be a result of an intrathoracic mass, resulting in lack of space for the lungs to grow; decreased size of the thorax; decreased fetal breathing movements; decreased blood flow to the lungs; or possibly a primary mesodermal defect affecting multiple organ systems. Congenital diaphragmatic hernia is the most common cause, with an incidence of 1:2200 births.

Other causes include extralobar sequestration, diaphragmatic eventration or hypoplasia, thoracic neuroblastoma, fetal hydrops, and fetal hydrochylothorax. Chest cage abnormalities, diaphragmatic elevation, oligohydramnios, chromosomal abnormalities, severe musculoskeletal disorders, and cardiac lesions may also result in hypoplastic lungs. Postnatal factors may play important roles. For example, infants with advanced BPD can have pulmonary hypoplasia.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical presentation is highly variable and related to the severity of hypoplasia as well as associated abnormalities. Lung hypoplasia is often associated with pneumothorax in newborns. Some newborns present with perinatal stress, severe acute respiratory distress, and persistent pulmonary hypertension secondary to primary pulmonary hypoplasia (without associated anomalies). Children with lesser degrees of hypoplasia may present with chronic cough, tachypnea, wheezing, and recurrent pneumonia.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Chest radiographic findings include variable degrees of volume loss in a small hemithorax with mediastinal shift. Pulmonary agenesis should be suspected if tracheal deviation is evident on the chest radiograph. The chest CT scan is the optimal diagnostic procedure if the chest radiograph is not definitive. Ventilation-perfusion scans, angiography, and bronchoscopy are often helpful in the evaluation, demonstrating decreased pulmonary vascularity or premature blunting of airways associated with the maldeveloped lung tissue. The degree of respiratory impairment is defined by analysis of arterial blood gases.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment is supportive. The outcome is determined by the severity of underlying medical problems, the extent of the hypoplasia, and the degree of pulmonary hypertension.

Berrocal T et al: Congenital anomalies of the tracheobronchial tree, lung and mediastinum: Embryology, radiology, and pathology. Radiographics 2004:24(1):e17 [PMID: 14610245].

Biyyam DR, Chapman T, Ferguson MR, Deutsch G, Dighe MK: Congenital lung abnormalities: embryologic features, prenatal diagnosis, and postnatal radiologic-pathologic correlation. Radiographics 2010;30(6):1721–1738. doi:10.1148/rg.306105508 [PMID: 21071385].

PULMONARY SEQUESTRATION

Pulmonary sequestration is nonfunctional pulmonary tissue that does not communicate with the tracheobronchial tree and receives its blood supply from one or more anomalous systemic arteries. This abnormality originates during the embryonic period of lung development. It is classified as either extralobar or intralobar. Extralobar sequestration is a mass of pulmonary parenchyma anatomically separate from the normal lung, with a distinct pleural investment. Its blood supply derives from the systemic circulation (more typical), from pulmonary vessels, or from both. Rarely, it communicates with the esophagus or stomach. Pathologically, extralobar sequestration appears as a solitary thoracic lesion near the diaphragm. Abdominal sites are rare. Size varies from 0.5 to 12 cm. The left side is involved in more than 90% of cases. In contrast to intralobar sequestrations, venous drainage is usually through the systemic or portal venous system.

Intralobar sequestration is an isolated segment of lung within the normal pleural investment that often receives blood from one or more arteries arising from the aorta or its branches. Intralobar sequestration is usually found within the lower lobes (98%), two-thirds are found on the left side, and it is rarely associated with other congenital anomalies (< 2% vs 50% with extralobar sequestration). It rarely presents in the newborn period (unlike extralobar sequestration). Some researchers have hypothesized that intralobar sequestration is an acquired lesion secondary to chronic infection.

» Clinical Findings, Imaging, and Treatment

Clinical presentation includes chronic cough, wheezing, or recurrent pneumonias. Rarely, patients with intralobar sequestration present with hemoptysis. Diagnosis is often suggested by CT imaging. Definitive diagnosis can be made by angiography, which shows large systemic arteries perfusing the lesion. Spiral CT scans with contrast or magnetic resonance angiography have proved useful in identifying anomalous systemic arterial supply to the lung. Treatment is surgical resection.

Biyyam DR, Chapman T, Ferguson MR, Deutsch G, Dighe MK: Congenital lung abnormalities: embryologic features, prenatal diagnosis, and postnatal radiologic-pathologic correlation. Radiographics 2010;30(6):1721–1738. doi:10.1148/rg.306105508 [PMID: 21071385].

Wall J, Coates A: Prenatal imaging and postnatal presentation, diagnosis, and management of congenital lung malformations. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(3):315–319 [PMID: 24739492].

CONGENITAL LOBAR EMPHYSEMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Presents in the first year of life and may be diagnosed prenatally.
- Chest imaging shows overinflation of the affected lobe (usually right upper or middle).

Patients with congenital lobar emphysema—also known as infantile lobar emphysema, congenital localized emphysema, unilobar obstructive emphysema, congenital hypertrophic lobar emphysema, or congenital lobar overinflation—present most commonly with neonatal respiratory distress or progressive respiratory impairment during the first year of life. Rarely the mild or intermittent nature of the symptoms in older children or young adults results in delayed diagnosis. Most patients are white males. Although the cause of congenital lobar emphysema is not well understood, some lesions show bronchial cartilaginous dysplasia due to abnormal orientation or distribution of the bronchial cartilage. This leads to expiratory collapse, producing obstruction and air trapping.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical features include respiratory distress, tachypnea, cyanosis, wheezing, retractions, and cough. Breath sounds are reduced on the affected side, perhaps with hyperresonance to percussion, mediastinal displacement, and bulging of the chest wall.

B. Imaging Studies

Radiologic findings include overdistention of the affected lobe (usually an upper or middle lobe; > 99%), with wide separation of bronchovascular markings, collapse of adjacent lung, shift of the mediastinum away from the affected side, and a depressed diaphragm on the affected side. The radiographic diagnosis may be confusing in the newborn because of retention of alveolar fluid in the affected lobe causing the appearance of a homogeneous density. Other diagnostic studies include chest radiograph with fluoroscopy, ventilation-perfusion study, and chest CT scan followed by bronchoscopy, angiography, and exploratory thoracotomy.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of congenital lobar emphysema includes pneumothorax, pneumatocele, atelectasis with compensatory hyperinflation, diaphragmatic hernia, and congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation. The most common site of involvement is the left upper lobe (42%) or right middle lobe (35%). Evaluation must differentiate regional obstructive emphysema from lobar hyperinflation secondary to an uncomplicated ball-valve mechanism due to extrinsic compression from a mass (ie, bronchogenic cyst, tumor, lymphadenopathy, foreign body, pseudotumor or plasma cell granuloma, or vascular compression) or intrinsic obstruction from a mucus plug due to infection and inflammation from various causes.

» Treatment

When respiratory distress is marked, a segmental or complete lobectomy is usually required. Less symptomatic older children may do equally well with or without lobectomy.

Biyyam DR, Chapman T, Ferguson MR, Deutsch G, Dighe MK: Congenital lung abnormalities: embryologic features, prenatal diagnosis, and postnatal radiologic-pathologic correlation. Radiographics 2010;30(6):1721–1738. doi:10.1148/rg.306105508 [PMID: 21071385].

Wall J, Coates A: Prenatal imaging and postnatal presentation, diagnosis, and management of congenital lung malformations. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(3):315–319 [PMID: 24739492].

CONGENITAL PULMONARY AIRWAY MALFORMATION (CYSTIC ADENOMATOID MALFORMATION)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- May be diagnosed prenatally by ultrasound.
- Newborns generally present with respiratory distress and evidence of a space occupying density on chest x-ray.

Congenital pulmonary adenomatoid malformations (CPAMs; previously known as congenital cystic adenomatoid malformations) are unilateral hamartomatous lesions which generally present with marked respiratory distress within the first days of life. This disorder accounts for 95% of cases of congenital cystic lung disease.

Right and left lungs are involved with equal frequency. These lesions originate in the first 5–22 weeks of gestation during the embryonic period of lung development. They appear as glandlike, space-occupying masses or have an increase in terminal respiratory structures, forming intercommunicating cysts of various sizes, lined by cuboidal or ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium. The lesions may have polypoid formations of mucosa, with focally increased elastic tissue in the cyst wall beneath the bronchial type of epithelium. Air passages appear malformed and tend to lack cartilage.

There are five types of such malformations.

1. Type 0 lesions are small, firm and microscopically are made up entirely of irregular bronchial type structures.
2. Type 1 is most common (50%–65%) and consists of single or multiple large cysts (> 2 cm in diameter). Approximately 75% of type 1 lesions are on the right side. A survival rate of 90% is generally reported. There

are some reports of bronchioloalveolar carcinoma in patients with type 1 CPAM.

3. Type 2 lesions account for 10%–40% of cases, consist of multiple small cysts (< 2 cm) resembling dilated simple bronchioles, and are often (60%) associated with other anomalies, especially renal agenesis or dysgenesis, cardiac malformations, extralobar sequestration and intestinal atresia. Approximately 60% of type 2 lesions are on the left side.
4. Type 3 lesions are the "classic" CPAM. They appear as bulky, firm masses with mediastinal shift and carry the risk of hydrops from mass shift resulting in caval obstruction and cardiac compression (80% of cases). The lesion will often involve the entire lobe and microscopically random bronchiolar/alveolar duct-like structures are seen. Often the adjacent or uninvolved lung is hypoplastic. The reported survival rate is 50%.
5. Type 4 lesions have large, thin walled cysts and are found at the periphery of the lung.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinically, respiratory distress may be noted soon after birth. Expansion of the cysts occurs with the onset of breathing and produces compression of normal lung areas with mediastinal herniation. Breath sounds are decreased. With type 3 lesions, dullness to percussion may be present. Older patients can present with a spontaneous pneumothorax or with pneumonia-like symptoms. Recently more patients are diagnosed with these lesions on prenatal ultrasound.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

With type 1 lesions, chest radiographs show an intrapulmonary mass of soft tissue density with scattered radiolucent areas of varying sizes and shapes, usually with a mediastinal shift and pulmonary herniation. Placement of a radiopaque feeding tube into the stomach helps in the differentiation from diaphragmatic hernia. Type 2 lesions appear similar except that the cysts are smaller. Type 3 lesions may appear as a solid homogeneous mass filling the hemithorax and causing a marked mediastinal shift. Type 4 lesions are large air-filled cysts localized to one lobe. Differentiation from sequestration is not difficult because congenital CPAM have no systemic blood supply.

» Treatment

In cases of prenatal diagnosis, treatment is variable and does not need antenatal intervention. Up to 6%–10% will regress spontaneously prenatally and thus they need to be followed serially. Attention must be paid to the development of hydrops as a complication of these lesions. Postnatal treatment of types 1 and 3 lesions involves surgical removal of the affected lobe. Resection is often indicated because of the risk of infection and air trapping, since the malformation communicates with the tracheobronchial tree but mucous clearance is compromised. Because type 2 lesions are often associated with other severe anomalies, management may be more complex. Segmental resection is not feasible because smaller cysts may expand after removal of the more obviously affected area. CPAM have been reported to have malignant potential; therefore, expectant management with observation alone should proceed with caution. Recent development of intrauterine surgery for congenital malformations has led to promising results.

Biyyam DR, Chapman T, Ferguson MR, Deutsch G, Dighe MK: Congenital lung abnormalities: embryologic features, prenatal diagnosis, and postnatal radiologic-pathologic correlation. Radiographics 2010;30(6):1721–1738. doi:10.1148/rg.306105508 [PMID: 21071385].

Wall J, Coates A: Prenatal imaging and postnatal presentation, diagnosis, and management of congenital lung malformations. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(3): 315–319 [PMID: 24739492].

ACQUIRED ABNORMALITIES OF THE LUNG PARENCHYMA

BRONCHOPULMONARY DYSPLASIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute respiratory distress in the first week of life.
- Required oxygen therapy or mechanical ventilation, with persistent oxygen requirement at 36 weeks' gestational age or 28 days of life.
- Persistent respiratory abnormalities, including physical signs and radiographic findings.

Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD) remains one of the most significant sequelae of acute respiratory distress in the neonatal intensive care unit, with an incidence as high as 68% for infants born at 22–28 weeks' gestation. This disease was first characterized in 1967 when Northway reported the clinical, radiologic, and pathologic findings in a group of preterm newborns that required prolonged mechanical ventilation and oxygen therapy.

The pathologic findings and clinical course of BPD have changed over time due to technological advances (artificial surfactant, antenatal steroids) and protective/noninvasive ventilatory strategies. Improvements in care have also

increased survival of infants born at earlier gestational ages. Extremely preterm infants born at less than 28 weeks' gestation are at risk to develop "new" BPD and arrest of lung development, which is characterized by alveolar simplification and vascular hypoplasia that can lead to sequelae, such as impaired gas exchange, exercise intolerance, and pulmonary hypertension.

The mechanisms that cause BPD are unclear. Current studies suggest that structural immaturity of the alveolar-capillary network, surfactant deficiency, atelectasis, and pulmonary edema cause impaired gas exchange and, potentially, respiratory failure. Mechanical ventilation and supplemental oxygen, though necessary to sustain life, may result in barotrauma and oxidative stress. Excessive fluid administration, patent ductus arteriosus, pulmonary interstitial emphysema, pneumothorax, infection, pulmonary hypertension, and inflammatory stimuli secondary to lung injury or infection also play important roles in the pathogenesis of the disease. Infants can develop aggressive, fibroproliferative pathologic lesions as well as physiologic abnormalities (increased airway resistance) and biochemical markers of lung injury which that may predict BPD during the first weeks of life. Ongoing injuries may lead to a vicious cycle of ventilator and oxygen dependence. The lungs of extremely preterm newborns with BPD show simplified histology with fewer alveoli, early inflammation, and hypercellularity followed by healing with fibrosis.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical definition of BPD includes the need for postnatal oxygen after 28 days. The severity of BPD is determined by a physiologic assessment of oxygen status at 36 weeks' gestation or on day of life 28 for infants born after 32 weeks' gestation. Full-term newborns with such disorders as meconium aspiration, congenital diaphragmatic hernia, and persistent pulmonary hypertension also can develop BPD.

The clinical course of infants with BPD ranges from an oxygen requirement that gradually resolves over a few months to more severe disease requiring tracheostomy for chronic mechanical ventilation during early childhood. In general, patients show slow, steady improvements in oxygen or ventilator requirements. Clinical management also includes paying careful attention to growth and nutrition (infants with oxygen dependence have high caloric requirements), and partnering with developmental therapists to ensure the optimal neurocognitive outcomes.

» Treatment

A. Medical Therapy

Early use of surfactant therapy with adequate lung recruitment increases the chance for survival without BPD, reduces the need for mechanical ventilation, and can decrease the overall mortality. Short courses of postnatal glucocorticoid therapy have been helpful in increasing the success of weaning from the ventilator. Longer courses of postnatal glucocorticoids have been linked to an increased incidence of cerebral palsy. The effect of inhaled corticosteroids and β-adrenergic agonists on the course of BPD is not clear.

Salt and water retention secondary to chronic hypoxemia, hypercapnia, or other stimuli may be present. Chronic or intermittent diuretic therapy is commonly used if pulmonary edema is present. Clinical studies show acute improvement in lung function with this therapy. Unfortunately, diuretics often have adverse effects, including volume contraction, hypokalemia, alkalosis, hyponatremia, and nephrocalcinosis. Potassium and arginine chloride supplements may be required.

B. Airway Evaluation

Children with significant stridor, sleep apnea, chronic wheezing, or excessive respiratory distress need diagnostic bronchoscopy to evaluate for structural lesions (eg, subglottic stenosis, vocal cord paralysis, tracheal or bronchial stenosis, tracheobronchomalacia, or airway granulomas). The contribution of gastroesophageal reflux and aspiration should be considered in the face of worsening chronic lung disease.

C. Management of Pulmonary Hypertension

Infants with BPD are at risk of developing pulmonary hypertension. In many of these children even mild hypoxemia can cause significant elevations of pulmonary arterial pressure. To minimize the harmful effects of hypoxemia, the arterial oxygen saturation should be kept above 93% in children with pulmonary hypertension, with care to avoid hyperoxia during retinal vascular development. Electrocardiographic and echocardiographic studies should be performed to monitor for the development of right ventricular hypertrophy. Management of neonatal pulmonary hypertension should involve expert consultation with a pulmonary hypertension specialist. Cardiac catheterization may be necessary to diagnose unsuspected cardiac or pulmonary lesions and to measure the response of the pulmonary vasculature to vasodilators such as inhaled nitric oxide before chronic therapy is initiated. Barium esophagram, esophageal pH/impedence studies, a sleep study or overnight pulse oximetry, and bronchoscopy may aid in diagnosing gastroesophageal reflux, aspiration, obstructive sleep apnea, and airway abnormalities that contribute to the underlying pathophysiology. Long-term care should include monitoring for systemic hypertension and the development of left ventricular hypertrophy.

D. Nutrition and Immunizations

Nutritional problems in infants with BPD may be due to increased oxygen consumption, feeding difficulties, gastroesophageal reflux, and chronic hypoxemia. Hypercaloric

formulas and gastrostomy tubes are often required to ensure adequate intake while avoiding overhydration. Routine vaccinations including the influenza vaccine are recommended. Immune prophylaxis of RSV reduces the severity morbidity of bronchiolitis in infants with BPD. In children older than 2 years with severe BPD, pneumococcal polysaccharide 23-valent vaccine should be considered in addition to standard pneumococcal vaccination.

E. Ventilation

For children with BPD who remain ventilator-dependent, attempts should be made to maintain $PaCO_2$ below 60 mm Hg—even when pH is normal—because of the potential adverse effects of hypercapnia on salt and water retention, cardiac function, and perhaps pulmonary vascular tone. Changes in ventilator settings in children with severe lung disease should be slow, because the effects of many of the changes may not be apparent for days.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of BPD includes meconium aspiration syndrome, congenital infection (eg, with cytomegalovirus or Ureaplasma), cystic adenomatoid malformation, recurrent aspiration, pulmonary lymphangiectasia, total anomalous pulmonary venous return, overhydration, childhood interstitial lung disease, and idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis.

» Prognosis

Surfactant replacement therapy has had a markedly beneficial effect on reducing morbidity and mortality from BPD. The incidence of BPD and chronic lung disease due to prematurity is increasing due to increased survival or early and extremely preterm infants. The long-term outlook for most survivors is favorable, although follow-up studies suggest that lung function may be altered for life. As smaller, more immature infants survive, abnormal neurodevelopmental outcomes become more likely. The incidence of cerebral palsy, hearing/visual impairment, and developmental delays is increased. Feeding abnormalities, behavior difficulties, and increased irritability have also been reported. A focus on good nutrition, prophylaxis against respiratory infection, developmental therapies (physical, occupational, and speech), attention to neurocognitive function, and family support provide the best outcomes.

Baraldi E, Filippone M: Chronic lung disease after premature birth. N Engl J Med 2007;357:1946 [PMID: 17989387].

Chess PR et al: Pathogenesis of bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Semin Perinatol 2006;30:171 [PMID: 16860156].

Higgins RD et al: Executive summary of the workshop on oxygen in neonatal therapies: controversies and opportunities for research. Pediatrics 2007;119:790 [PMID: 17403851].

COMMUNITY-ACQUIRED BACTERIAL PNEUMONIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever, cough, dyspnea.
- Abnormal chest examination (crackles or decreased breath sounds).
- Abnormal chest radiograph (infiltrates, hilar adenopathy, pleural effusion).

Lower respiratory tract infections are a major cause of childhood mortality in disadvantaged areas of the world. The infectious etiologies vary widely by geographic region and by the age of the child. In developed countries the majority of pneumonias are caused by viral agents and bacterial pneumonia is a less common cause. Discrimination between viral and bacterial pneumonia is challenging as neither the white blood cell count nor differential nor the chest radiograph are strong predictors. In areas where the technology is readily available, chest radiography is recommended to establish with certainty the presence of pneumonia. The most common cause of bacterial pneumonia in children of all ages is S pneumoniae. Bacterial pneumonia usually follows a viral lower respiratory tract infection. Children at high risk for bacterial pneumonia are those with compromised pulmonary defense systems. For example, children with abnormal mucociliary clearance, immunocompromised children, children who aspirate their own secretions or while eating, and malnourished children are at increased risk for bacterial pneumonia.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The pathogen, severity of the infection, and age of the patient may cause substantial variations in the presentation of community-acquired pneumonia (CAP). Fever (over 39°C), tachypnea, and cough are hallmarks of CAP. Chest auscultation may reveal crackles or decreased breath sounds in the setting of consolidation or an associated pleural effusion. Some patients may have additional extrapulmonary findings, such as meningismus or abdominal pain, due to pneumonia itself. Others may have evidence of infection at other sites due to the same organism causing their pneumonia: meningitis, otitis media, sinusitis, pericarditis, epiglottitis, or abscesses.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

An elevated peripheral white blood cell count with a left shift may be a marker of bacterial pneumonia. A low white blood

count (< 5000/μL) can be an ominous finding in this disease. Blood cultures should be obtained in children admitted to the hospital with pneumonia, although approximately 10% or less will be positive. Sputum cultures may be helpful in older children capable of providing a satisfactory sample. Invasive diagnostic procedures (bronchial brushing or washing, lung puncture, or open or thoracoscopic lung biopsy) should be undertaken in critically ill patients when other means do not adequately identify the cause (see section Diagnosis of Respiratory Tract Infections).

The spectrum of potential pathogens to be considered includes aerobic, anaerobic, and acid-fast bacteria as well as other atypical bacteria and respiratory viruses. S pneumoniae is the most prevalent bacterial pathogen. Viral antigen immunofluorescent staining (DFA) and polymerase chain reactivity (PCR) technology has improved the ability to detect a wide variety of viral infections.

Air space disease or consolidation in a lobar distribution on chest x-ray suggests bacterial pneumonia; interstitial or peribronchial infiltrates suggest a viral infection. Severity of the infection may not correlate with radiographic findings and clinical improvement precedes radiographic resolution. If a pleural effusion is suspected, radiographs should be taken in the lateral decubitus position. A diagnostic (and possibly therapeutic) thoracocentesis should also be performed in a child with a pleural effusion.

» Differential Diagnosis

Noninfectious pulmonary disease (including gastric aspiration, foreign body aspiration, atelectasis, congenital malformations, congestive heart failure, malignancy, tumors such as plasma cell granuloma, chronic ILD, and pulmonary hemosiderosis) should be considered in the differential diagnosis of localized or diffuse infiltrates. When effusions are present, additional noninfectious disorders such as collagen diseases, neoplasm, and pulmonary infarction should also be considered.

» Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Empyema can occur frequently with staphylococcal, pneumococcal, and group A β-hemolytic streptococcal pneumonia. Distal sites of infection—meningitis, otitis media, sinusitis (especially of the ethmoids), and septicemia—may be present, particularly with disease due to S pneumoniae or H influenzae. Certain immunocompromised patients, such as those who have undergone splenectomy or who have hemoglobin SS or SC disease or thalassemia, are especially prone to overwhelming sepsis with these organisms.

» Treatment

If a bacterial pneumonia is suspected, empiric antibiotic therapy should be considered. Children younger than 4 weeks should be treated with ampicillin and an aminoglycoside. Infants 4–12 weeks of age should be treated with IV ampicillin for 7–10 days. Children 3 months to 5 years of age should be treated with oral amoxicillin (50–90 mg/kg/dose) for 7–10 days. Children older than 5 years should also be treated with amoxicillin (50–90 mg/kg/dose) for 7–10 days. Macrolide antibiotics should be used if an atypical infection is suspected. When possible, therapy can be guided by the antibiotic sensitivity pattern of the organisms isolated. (For further discussion, see Chapter 39.) All children younger than 3 months should be admitted for treatment. Whether older children should be hospitalized depends on age, the severity of illness, the suspected organism, and the anticipated reliability of adherence to the treatment regimen at home. Moderate to severe respiratory distress, apnea, hypoxemia, poor feeding, clinical deterioration on treatment, or associated complications (large effusions, empyema, or abscess) indicate the need for immediate hospitalization. Careful outpatient follow-up within 12 hours to 5 days is indicated in those not admitted.

Additional therapeutic considerations include oxygen, humidification of inspired gases, hydration and electrolyte supplementation, and nutrition. Removal of pleural fluid for diagnostic purposes is indicated to guide antimicrobial therapy, and may be required for therapeutic purposes.

» Prognosis

In developed countries, for the immunocompetent host in whom bacterial pneumonia is adequately recognized and treated, the survival rate is high. For example, the mortality rate from uncomplicated pneumococcal pneumonia is less than 1%. If the patient survives the initial illness, persistently abnormal pulmonary function following empyema is surprisingly uncommon, even when treatment has been delayed or inappropriate.

Esposito S: Antiobiotic therapy for pediatric community-acquired pneumonia: do we know when, what and for how long to treat? Pediatr Infect Dis 2012;31(6):e78–e85 [PMID: 22466326].

Iroh Tam PY. Approach to common bacterial infections: community acquired pneumonia. Pediatr Clin North Amer 2013;60(2):437–453 [PMID: 23481110].

PARAPNEUMONIC EFFUSION & EMPYEMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Respiratory distress and chest pain.
- Fever.
- Chest x-ray showing a meniscus or layering fluid on a lateral decubitus film.

Bacterial pneumonia is often accompanied by pleural effusion. Some of these effusions harbor infection, and others are inflammatory reactions to pneumonia. The nomenclature in this area is somewhat confusing. Some authors use the term empyema for grossly purulent fluid and parapneumonic effusion for nonpurulent fluid. It is clear, however, that some nonpurulent effusions will also contain organisms and represent either partially treated or early empyema. It is probably best to refer to all effusions associated with pneumonia as parapneumonic effusions, some of which are infected and some not.

The most common organism associated with empyema is S pneumoniae. Other common organisms include H influenzae and S aureus. Less common causes are group A streptococci, gram-negative organisms, anaerobic organisms, and M pneumoniae. Effusions associated with tuberculosis are almost always sterile and constitute an inflammatory reaction.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients usually present with typical signs of pneumonia, including fever, tachypnea, and cough. They may have chest pain, decreased breath sounds, and dullness to percussion on the affected side and may prefer to lie on the affected side. With large effusions, there may be tracheal deviation to the contralateral side. Empyema is more likely to occur in children less than 5 years.

B. Diagnostic Studies

The white blood cell count is often elevated, with left shift. Blood cultures are sometimes positive. The tuberculin skin test is positive in most cases of tuberculosis. Thoracentesis reveals findings consistent with an exudate. Cells in the pleural fluid are usually neutrophils in bacterial disease and lymphocytes in tuberculous effusions. In bacterial disease, pleural fluid pH and glucose are often low. A pH less than 7.2 suggests active bacterial infection. The pH of the specimen should be determined in a blood gas syringe sent to the laboratory on ice. Extra heparin should not be used in the syringe as it can falsely lower the pH. Although in adults the presence of low pH and glucose indicates the need for aggressive and thorough drainage procedures, the prognostic significance of these findings in children is unknown. Gram stain, cultures, and antigen detection are often positive for the offending organism.

The presence of pleural fluid is suggested by a homogeneous density that obscures the underlying lung on chest radiograph. Large effusions may cause a shift of the mediastinum to the contralateral side. Small effusions may only blunt the costophrenic angle. Lateral decubitus radiographs may help to detect freely movable fluid by demonstrating a layering-out effect, unless the fluid is loculated. Ultrasonography can be extremely valuable in localizing the fluid and detecting loculations, especially when thoracentesis is contemplated, but availability may be limited. Chest CT scan can help determine whether the fluid is intraparenchymal or extraparenchymal and can direct further care of complicated pneumonias.

» Treatment

After initial thoracentesis and identification of the organism, appropriate intravenous antibiotics and adequate drainage of the fluid are the mainstay of therapy. Although there is a trend toward managing smaller pneumococcal empyemas without a chest tube, larger effusions require chest tube drainage. Early interventions using thoracoscopic techniques such as VATS done by an experienced surgeon may reduce morbidity and shorten the length of hospital stay. While there is growing use of VATS as first-line therapy, it is not standard of care. Studies in adults show that aggressive management with drainage of pleural cavity fluid and release of adhesions with fibrinolytics is cost effective and decreases the length of stay. There are limited studies of fibrinolytics in children. The therapeutic choice will vary depending on the resources available and the preferences of the clinician.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is related to the severity of disease but is generally excellent, with complete or nearly complete recovery in most instances.

Cohen E et al: The long-term outcomes of pediatric pleural empyema: a prospective study. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2012;166(11):999–1004 [PMID: 22945017].

Langle JM et al: Empyema associated with community acquired pneumonia: a Pediatric Investigator's Collaborative Network on Infections in Canada (PICNIC) study. BMC Infect Dis 2008;8:129 [PMID: 18816409].

Walker W, Wheeler R, Legg J: Update on the causes, investigation and management of empyema in childhood. Arch Dis Child 2011;96(5):482–488 [PMID 20736395].

ATYPICAL PNEUMONIAS

VIRAL PNEUMONIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Upper respiratory infection prodrome (fever, coryza, cough, hoarseness).
- Wheezing or rales.
- Myalgia, malaise, headache (older children).

Viral infection is a common cause of community-acquired pneumonia in children. Viral pneumonia is most common in children younger than 2 years. RSV, parainfluenza (1, 2, and 3) viruses, influenza (A and B) viruses, and human metapneumovirus are responsible for the large majority of cases. Severity of disease, severity of fever, radiographic findings, and the characteristics of cough or lung sounds do not reliably differentiate viral from bacterial pneumonias. Furthermore, viral infections may predispose to bacterial pneumonia. However, substantial pleural effusions, pneumatoceles, abscesses, lobar consolidation with lobar volume expansion, and "round" pneumonias are generally inconsistent with viral disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

An upper respiratory infection frequently precedes the onset of lower respiratory disease due to viruses. Although wheezing or stridor may be prominent in viral disease, other findings, such as cough, signs of respiratory distress (tachypnea, retractions, grunting, and nasal flaring), and physical findings (rales and decreased breath sounds) are similar to those in bacterial pneumonia.

B. Laboratory Findings

The peripheral white blood cell count can be normal or slightly elevated and is not useful in distinguishing viral from bacterial disease.

Rapid viral diagnostic methods such as fluorescent antibody tests, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, and/or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) should be performed on nasopharyngeal secretions to identify a viral etiology in high-risk patients, as well as for epidemiology or infection control. Diagnosis of a viral infection does not preclude the possibility of concomitant infection with other pathogens.

C. Imaging Studies

Chest radiographs frequently show perihilar streaking, increased interstitial markings, peribronchial cuffing, or patchy bronchopneumonia. Lobar consolidation or atelectasis may occur, however. Hyperinflation of the lungs may occur when involvement of the small airways is prominent.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of viral pneumonia is the same as for bacterial pneumonia. Patients with prominent wheezing may have asthma, airway obstruction caused by foreign body aspiration, acute bacterial or viral tracheitis.

» Complications

Viral pneumonia or laryngotracheobronchitis may predispose the patient to subsequent bacterial tracheitis or pneumonia as immediate sequelae. Bronchiolitis obliterans or severe chronic respiratory failure may follow adenovirus pneumonia. The results of studies evaluating the development of asthma after a viral pneumonia are variable. Bronchiectasis, chronic hypersensitivity pneumonia and unilateral hyperlucent lung (Sawyer-James syndrome) may follow measles, adenovirus, and influenza pneumonias.

» Treatment

General supportive care for viral pneumonia does not differ from that for bacterial pneumonia. Patients can be quite ill and should be hospitalized according to the level of their illness. Because bacterial disease often cannot be definitively excluded, antibiotics may be indicated.

Patients at risk for life-threatening RSV infections (eg, those with BPD or other severe pulmonary conditions, congenital heart disease, or significant immunocompromise) should be hospitalized and ribavirin should be considered. Rapid viral diagnostic tests may be a useful guide for such therapy.

All children with influenza should be treated with the appropriate therapy for the specific type of influenza (A, B, H1N1). When available epidemiologic data indicate an active influenza infection in the community, rimantadine, amantadine hydrochloride, or oseltamivir phosphate should be considered early for high-risk infants and children who appear to be infected. Children with suspected viral pneumonia should be placed in respiratory isolation.

» Prognosis

Although most children with viral pneumonia recover uneventfully, worsening asthma, abnormal pulmonary function or chest radiographs, persistent respiratory insufficiency, and even death may occur in high-risk patients such as newborns or those with underlying lung, cardiac, or immunodeficiency disease. Patients with adenovirus infection or those concomitantly infected with RSV and second pathogens such as influenza, adenovirus, cytomegalovirus, or P jiroveci also have a worse prognosis.

Esposito S: Antiobiotic therapy for pediatric community-acquired pneumonia: do we know when, what and for how long to treat? Pediatr Infect Dis 2012;31(6):e78–e85 [PMID: 22466326].

Ruuskanen O, Lahti E, Jennings LC, Murdoch DR: Viral pneumonia. Lancet 2011;377:1364–1375 [PMID: 21435708].

BRONCHIOLITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Clinical syndrome characterized by one or more of the following findings: coughing, tachypnea, labored breathing, and hypoxia.
- Irritability, poor feeding, vomiting.
- Wheezing and crackles on chest auscultation.

Bronchiolitis is the most common serious acute respiratory illness in infants and young children. The diagnosis of bronchiolitis is based upon clinical findings including an upper respiratory infection that has progressed to cough, tachypnea, respiratory distress, and crackles or wheeze by physical examination. In most literature from the United States, this definition of bronchiolitis specifically applies to children younger than 2 years. One to 3% of infants with bronchiolitis will require hospitalization, especially during the winter months. RSV is by far the most common viral cause of acute bronchiolitis. Parainfluenza, human metapneumovirus, influenza, and adenovirus, are less common causes of bronchiolitis during early infancy.

» Prevention

The most effective preventions against RSV infection are proper handwashing techniques and reducing exposure to potential environmental risk factors. Prophylaxis with a monoclonal antibody (palivizumab) is effective in reducing the rate of hospitalization and associated morbidity in high-risk premature infants and those with chronic cardiopulmonary conditions.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The usual course of RSV bronchiolitis is 1–2 days of fever, rhinorrhea, and cough, followed by wheezing, tachypnea, and respiratory distress. Typically the breathing pattern is shallow, with rapid respirations. Nasal flaring, cyanosis, retractions, and rales may be present, along with prolongation of the expiratory phase and wheezing, depending on the severity of illness. Some young infants present with apnea and few findings on auscultation but may subsequently develop rales, rhonchi, and expiratory wheezing.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

A nasal wash can be used to identify the causative pathogen but is not necessary to make the diagnosis of bronchiolitis. The peripheral white blood cell count may be normal or show a mild lymphocytosis. Chest radiographs are not indicated in children who have bilateral, symmetrical findings on examination, who are not in significant respiratory distress, and who do not have elevated temperature Chest radiograph findings are generally nonspecific and typically include hyperinflation, peribronchial cuffing, increased interstitial markings, and subsegmental atelectasis.

» Complications

Bacterial superinfection is a rare complication of viral pneumonia. The results of studies investigating the risk for the subsequent development of chronic airway hyperreactivity (asthma) are variable. Bronchiolitis due to RSV infection contributes substantially to morbidity and mortality in children with underlying medical disorders, including chronic lung disease of prematurity, CF, congenital heart disease, and immunodeficiency.

» Treatment

Although most children with RSV bronchiolitis are readily treated as outpatients, hospitalization is required in infected children with hypoxemia on room air, a history of apnea, moderate tachypnea with feeding difficulties, and marked respiratory distress with retractions. Children at high risk for hospitalization include infants (younger than 6 months), especially with any history of prematurity, and those with underlying chronic cardiopulmonary disorders. While in the hospital, treatment should include supportive strategies such as frequent suctioning and providing adequate fluids to maintain hydration. If hypoxemia is present, supplemental oxygen should be administered. There is no evidence to support the use of antibiotics in children with bronchiolitis unless there is evidence of an associated bacterial pneumonia. Bronchodilators and corticosteroids have not been shown to change the severity or the length of the illness in bronchiolitis and therefore are not recommended. Studies evaluating the effectiveness of hypertonic saline and heated high-flow oxygen therapy are ongoing.

Patients at risk for life-threatening RSV infections (eg, children younger than 24 months whose gestational age is less than 35 weeks, children younger than 24 months with other severe pulmonary conditions, congenital heart disease, neuromuscular disease, or significant immunocompromise) should be considered for RSV prophylaxis therapy. For more detail, refer to the American Academy of Pediatrics 2014 guidelines. High-risk patients with RSV bronchiolitis may need to be hospitalized and treated with ribavirin.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for the majority of infants with acute bronchiolitis is very good. With improved supportive care and

prophylaxis with palivizumab, the mortality rate among high-risk infants has decreased substantially.

Guilbert TW, Bacharier LB: Controversies in the treatment of the acutely wheezing infant. AJRCCM 2011;183(10):1284–1285 [PMID: 21596826].

Ralston SL et al. Clinical practice guideline: The diagnosis, management, and prevention of bronchiolitis. Pediatrics 2014;134(5):e1474–e1502 [PMID: 25349312].

MYCOPLASMA PNEUMONIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever and cough.
- Most common in children older than 5 years.

M pneumoniae is a common cause of symptomatic pneumonia in older children although it may be seen in children younger than 5 years. Endemic and epidemic infection can occur. The incubation period is long (2–3 weeks), and the onset of symptoms is slow. Although the lung is the primary infection site, extrapulmonary complications sometimes occur.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Fever, cough, headache, and malaise are common symptoms as the illness evolves. Although cough is usually dry at the onset, sputum production may develop as the illness progresses. Sore throat, otitis media, otitis externa, and bullous myringitis may occur. Rales and chest pain are frequently present on chest examination; decreased breath sounds or dullness to percussion over the involved area may be present.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The total and differential white blood cell counts are usually normal. Enzyme immunoassay (EIA) and complement fixation are sensitive and specific for M pneumoniae. The cold hemagglutinin titer may be elevated during the acute presentation. A titer of 1:64 or higher supports the diagnosis. Acute and convalescent titers for M pneumoniae demonstrating a fourfold or greater rise in specific antibodies confirm the diagnosis. Diagnosis of mycoplasmal pneumonia by polymerase chain reaction is also available.

Chest radiographs usually demonstrate interstitial or bronchopneumonic infiltrates, frequently in the middle or lower lobes. Pleural effusions are extremely uncommon.

» Complications

Extrapulmonary involvement of the blood, central nervous system, skin, heart, or joints can occur. Direct Coombs–positive autoimmune hemolytic anemia, occasionally a life-threatening disorder, is the most common hematologic abnormality that can accompany M pneumoniae infection. Coagulation defects and thrombocytopenia can also occur. Cerebral infarction, meningoencephalitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, cranial nerve involvement, and psychosis all have been described. A wide variety of skin rashes, including erythema multiforme and Stevens-Johnson syndrome, can occur. Myocarditis, pericarditis, and a rheumatic fever–like illness can also occur.

» Treatment

Antibiotic therapy with a macrolide for 7–10 days may shorten the course of illness. Ciprofloxacin is a possible alternative. Supportive measures, including hydration, antipyretics, and bed rest, are helpful.

» Prognosis

In the absence of the less common extrapulmonary complications, the outlook for recovery is excellent.

Atkinson TP, Waites KB: Mycoplasma pneumonia infections in childhood. Pediatr Infect Dis 2014;33(1):92–94 [PMID: 24346598].

Don M, Canciani M, Korppi M: Community acquired pneumonia in children: what's old? what's new? Acta Paediatr 2010;99(11):1602–1608 [PMID: 20573146].

ASPIRATION PNEUMONIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of recurrent aspiration or an aspiration event.
- New-onset respiratory distress, oxygen requirement, or fever, after the aspiration.
- Any new-onset respiratory distress or increase in oxygen requirement in a child with known aspiration.
- Focal findings on physical examination.

Patients whose anatomic defense mechanisms are impaired are at risk of aspiration pneumonia (Table 19–5). Acute disease is commonly caused by bacteria present in the mouth (especially gram-negative anaerobes). Chronic aspiration often causes recurrent bouts of acute febrile pneumonia. Aspiration

Table 19–5. Risk factors for aspiration pneumonia.

Anatomic abnormalities (laryngeal cleft, tracheoesophageal fistula, vocal cord paralysis)
Delayed maturation (Down syndrome or prematurity)
Static encephalopathy
CNS malformation, mass, or traumatic brain injury
Neuromuscular disorders
Seizures
Depressed sensorium (medications)
Near-drowning
Iatrogenic (anesthesia, nasogastric or tracheostomy tubes)
Gastrointestinal disease (reflux, achalasia, or obstruction)

pneumonia may be acute or chronic, but is more common in children with other underlying medical conditions (see Table 19–5). An acute aspiration event may lead to a typical pneumonia syndrome with fever, asymmetrical auscultation findings, and asymmetric imaging findings. Chronic aspiration pneumonitis is more indolent and can cause chronic respiratory symptoms of "rattling," cough or wheezing, chronic chest infiltrates, bronchiectasis, or failure to thrive.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Acute onset of fever, cough, respiratory distress, or hypoxemia in a patient at risk suggests acute aspiration pneumonia. Chest physical findings, such as rales, rhonchi, or decreased breath sounds, may initially be limited to the lung region into which aspiration occurred. Although any region may be affected, the right side—especially the right upper lobe in the supine patient—is commonly affected. In patients with chronic aspiration "chest rattling" is often described by parents. Generalized rales and wheezing may also be present.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Chest radiograph abnormalities can vary widely. They may reveal lobar consolidation or atelectasis and focal or generalized alveolar or interstitial infiltrates. In some patients with chronic aspiration, perihilar infiltrates with or without bilateral air trapping may be seen. In patients with severe acute illness, a bacteriologic diagnosis should be made (see section Diagnosis of Respiratory Tract Infections). In children with acute or chronic aspiration pneumonitis, bronchoalveolar lavage specimen may be considered to diagnose bacterial infection.

In patients with chronic aspiration pneumonitis, attempts should be made to document aspiration. Video fluoroscopic swallow study, also known as modified barium swallow, is typically performed to evaluate the swallow. Fiberoptic endoscopic examination of swallowing (FEES) is done at specialty centers to directly visualize the swallow using a fiberoptic laryngoscope. Radionuclide studies have low sensitivity to diagnosis aspiration. Biomarkers such as lipid laden macrophages obtained from bronchoalveolar lavage samples also have low sensitivity and specificity. The role of gastroesophageal reflux in chronic aspiration is difficult to determine. An esophageal pH impedance study may help establish the diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux. Rigid bronchoscopy in infants or flexible bronchoscopy in older children can be used to identify anatomic abnormalities such as tracheal cleft and tracheoesophageal fistula. Complications such as empyema or lung abscess may complicate acute aspiration pneumonia, while chronic aspiration may also result in bronchiectasis. If there is clinical concern, chest computed tomography can better delineate these complications.

» Differential Diagnosis

In the acutely ill patient, bacterial and viral pneumonias should be considered. In the chronically ill patient, the differential diagnosis may include disorders causing recurrent pneumonia (eg, immunodeficiencies, ciliary dysfunction, or foreign body), chronic wheezing, or interstitial lung disorders (see the next section), depending on the presentation.

» Treatment

Aspiration pneumonia leads to a chemical pneumonitis and, in some cases supportive treatment is the recommended therapy. Antimicrobial therapy for patients who are acutely ill from aspiration pneumonia includes coverage for anaerobic organisms. In general, clindamycin is appropriate initial coverage.

Treatment of chronic aspiration pneumonia may include the following: surgical correction of anatomic abnormalities; thickening of liquids taken by mouth, swallowing therapy, improved oral hygiene, inhaled corticosteroids, and chest physiotherapy. In patients with compromise of the central nervous system, exclusive feeding by gastrostomy may be required. Gastroesophageal reflux, if present in these patients, may require surgical correction. Because of the widespread causes and consequences of chronic aspiration, multidisciplinary subspecialty management is often recommended.

Durvasula VS, O'neill AC, Richter GT: Oropharyngeal dysphagia in children: mechanism, source, and management. Otolaryngol Clin North Am 2014;47(5):691 [PMID: 25213278].

PNEUMONIA IN THE IMMUNOCOMPROMISED HOST

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» The nature of the immunocompromised state may help predict etiology of pulmonary infection.

Compromised immune function occurs following solid organ or hematopoietic stem cell transplantion, in patients with congenital immune deficits, and in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy or other immunosuppressant therapy, including chronic corticosteroids.

Pulmonary infection, which is the most common infection in these patients, can present as focal pneumonia or ILD. The underlying cause of the immunocompromised state often determines the spectrum of infectious agents responsible for disease (see also Chapter 33). Pneumonia in an immunocompromised host may be due to any common community-acquired bacteria or to less common pathogens such as opportunistic fungi, Toxoplasma gondii, P jiroveci, bacteria, Nocardia species, Legionalla pneumophila, mycobacteria, and viruses. Multiple organisms are commonly isolated in culture and disseminated disease is possible.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients often present with subtle signs such as mild cough, tachypnea, or low-grade fever that can rapidly progress to high fever, respiratory distress, and hypoxemia or chILD syndrome. An obvious portal of infection, such as an intravascular catheter, may predispose to bacterial or fungal infection via hematogenous spread.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Fungal, parasitic, or bacterial infection, especially with antibiotic-resistant bacteria, should be suspected in the neutropenic child. Cultures of peripheral blood, sputum, tracheobronchial secretions, urine, nasopharynx or sinuses, bone marrow, pleural fluid, biopsied lymph nodes, or skin lesions or cultures through intravascular catheters should be obtained as soon as infection is suspected. Serum (1, 3)-beta-d-glucan assays and serum and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) galactomannan assays for invasive pulmonary fungal disease are being used in some centers.

Invasive methods are commonly required to make a diagnosis. Appropriate samples should be obtained soon after a patient with pneumonia fails to respond to initial treatment. The results of these procedures usually lead to important changes in empiric therapy. Sputum is often unavailable in the young child. Bronchoalveolar lavage frequently detects one or more organisms and should be done early in evaluation. The combined use of a wash, brushing, endobronchial biopsy, and lavage has a high yield. In patients with rapidly advancing, or more peripheral disease, lung biopsy becomes more urgent. The morbidity and mortality of this procedure can be reduced by a surgeon skilled in video-assisted thoracoscopic surgical (VATS) techniques. Because of the multiplicity of organisms that may cause disease, a comprehensive set of studies should be done on lavage and biopsy material. These consist of rapid diagnostic studies, including fluorescent antibody studies for Legionella; rapid culture, PCR, and antigen detection for viruses; Gram, acid-fast, and fungal stains; cytologic examination for viral inclusions; cultures for anaerobic and aerobic bacteria, fungi, mycobacteria, and Legionella; and rapid immunofluorescent studies for P jiroveci.

Chest radiographs and high-resolution CT scans may be useful in identifying the pattern and extent of disease. In early P jiroveci pneumonia, dyspnea and hypoxemia may be marked despite minimal radiographic abnormalities. Distinctive radiographic findings such as the halo sign can be seen in aspergillosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

The organisms causing disease vary with the type of immunocompromise present. For example, the splenectomized or sickle cell disease patient may be overwhelmed by infection with encapsulated bacteria. The child with HIV/AIDS or receiving immunosuppressant therapy or chemotherapy is more likely to have P jiroveci infection. The febrile neutropenic child who has been receiving adequate doses of intravenous broad-spectrum antibiotics or systemic steroid therapy may have fungal disease. The key to diagnosis is to consider all possibilities of infection.

Depending on the form of immunocompromise, perhaps only half to two-thirds of new pulmonary infiltrates in such patients represent infection. The remainder are caused by pulmonary toxicity of radiation, chemotherapy, or other drugs; pulmonary disorders, including hemorrhage, embolism, atelectasis, or aspiration; idiopathic pneumonia syndrome or acute respiratory distress syndrome in bone marrow transplant patients; recurrence or extension of primary malignant growths or immunologic disorders; transfusion reactions, leukostasis, or tumor cell lysis; or ILD, such as lymphocytic interstitial pneumonitis with HIV infection.

» Complications

Necrotizing pneumonia, lung abscesses, and parapneumonic effusions can develop. Progressive respiratory failure, shock, multiple organ damage, disseminated infection, and death commonly occur in the infected immunocompromised host.

» Treatment

Early use of broad-spectrum intravenous antibiotics is indicated in febrile, neutropenic, or immunocompromised children. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (for Pneumocystis) and macrolides (for Legionella) are also indicated early in the treatment of immunocompromised children before an organism is identified. Further, targeted therapy should be based on studies of specimens obtained from bronchoalveolar lavage or lung biopsy. Recent data suggest that use

of noninvasive ventilation strategies early in the course of pulmonary insufficiency or respiratory failure may decrease mortality.

» Prognosis

Prognosis is based on the severity of the underlying immunocompromise, appropriate early diagnosis and treatment, and the infecting organisms. Intubation and mechanical ventilation have been associated with high mortality rates, especially in hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients.

Collaco J, Michael et al: Pulmonary dysfunction in pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients: overview, diagnostic considerations, and infectious complications. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2007;49(2):117 [PMID: 17029246].

Nouér Simone A et al: Earlier response assessment in invasive aspergillosis based on the kinetics of serum Aspergillus galactomannan: proposal for a new definition. Clin Infect Dis 2011;53(7):671 [PMID: 21846834].

LUNG ABSCESS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- High fever, malaise, and weight loss in the setting of pneumonia.
- Chest radiographs and CT scans usually reveal lung cavities, often with air-fluid levels.

» Pathogenesis

Lung abscesses are thick-walled cavities that form from inflammation and central necrosis following an initial pulmonary infection. A lung abscess occurs in a previously well child or one prone to aspiration and also occur in children with immunosuppression or underlying lung or systemic disease. Lung abscesses may also occur via embolic spread. Although organisms such as S aureus and other staphylococci, S pneumoniae, and streptococci more commonly affect the healthy host, anaerobic and gram-negative organisms as well as Nocardia, mycobacteria, Legionella species, and fungi (Candida and Aspergillus) should also be considered in the immunocompromised host or in patients not responding to treatment.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms and signs referable to the chest may or may not be present. High fever, malaise, and weight loss are often present. In infants, evidence of respiratory distress can be present.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Elevated peripheral white blood cell count with a neutrophil predominance or an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein may be present. Blood cultures are rarely positive except in the immunocompromised patient.

Chest radiographs usually reveal single or multiple thick-walled lung cavities. Air-fluid levels can be present. Local compressive atelectasis, pleural thickening, or adenopathy may also occur. Chest CT scan may provide better localization and understanding of the lesions.

In patients producing sputum, stains, and cultures may provide the diagnosis. Direct percutaneous aspiration of material for stains and cultures guided by fluoroscopy or ultrasonography or CT imaging should be considered in the severely compromised or ill.

» Differential Diagnosis

Loculated pyopneumothorax, neoplasms, plasma cell granuloma, and infected congenital cysts and sequestrations should be considered. Pneumatoceles, non–fluid-filled cysts, are common in children with empyema and usually resolve over time.

» Complications

Although complications due to abscesses are now rare, mediastinal shift, tension pneumothorax, and spontaneous rupture can occur. Diagnostic maneuvers such as radiology-guided lung puncture to drain and culture the abscess may also cause a pneumothorax or a bronchopulmonary fistula.

» Treatment

Because of the risks of lung puncture, uncomplicated abscesses are frequently conservatively treated in the immune competent host with appropriate broad-spectrum intravenous antibiotics. Additional coverage for anaerobic gram-negative organisms and fungi should be provided for others. Prolonged therapy with 2–3 weeks of intravenous antibiotics followed by oral therapy may be required. Attempts to drain abscesses via bronchoscopy have caused life-threatening airway compromise. Surgical drainage or lobectomy is occasionally required, primarily in immunocompromised patients. However, such procedures may themselves cause life-threatening complications.

» Prognosis

Although radiographic resolution may be very slow (6 weeks–5 years), resolution occurs in most patients without risk factors for lower respiratory tract infections or loss of pulmonary function. In the immunocompromised or medically complex host, the outlook depends on the underlying disorder.

Chan PC et al: Clinical management and outcome of childhood lung abscess: a 16-year experience. J Microbiol Immunol Infect 2005;38:183 [PMID: 15986068].
Patradoon-Ho P et al: Lung abscess in children. Paediatr Respir Rev 2007;8(1):77–84 [PMID: 17419981].

CHILDREN'S INTERSTITIAL LUNG DISEASE SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Occurs acutely in the neonatal period or subacutely in infancy or childhood.

» Presence of three to five of the following criteria in the absence of any identified primary etiology is suggestive of an interstitial lung disease (ILD) syndrome:

- Symptoms of impaired respiratory function (cough, tachypnea, retractions, exercise intolerance).
- Evidence of impaired gas exchange (resting hypoxemia or hypercarbia, desaturation with exercise).
- Diffuse infiltrates on imaging.
- Presence of adventitious sounds (crackles, wheezing).
- Abnormal spirometry, lung volumes, or carbon monoxide diffusing capacity.
- History of exposure (eg, birds, organic dusts, drug therapy, hot tubs, molds), previous lung disease, immunosuppression, connective tissue disease; family history of familial lung disease (especially ILD) or early infant death from lung disease.

Children's **I**nterstitial **L**ung **D**isease (chILD) syndrome is a constellation of signs and symptoms and not a specific diagnosis. Once recognized, chILD syndrome should elicit a search for a more specific diagnosis. Specific disorders can present as chILD syndrome and must be excluded as the primary cause of symptoms. These include CF, cardiac disease, asthma, acute infection, immunodeficiency, neuromuscular disease, scoliosis, thoracic cage abnormality, chronic lung disease of prematurity, and aspiration. However, if patients present with symptoms out of proportion to the diagnosis, consideration should be given to other ILD disorders.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

chILD syndrome may present acutely in the newborn period with respiratory failure or gradually over time with a chronic dry cough or a history of dyspnea on exertion. The child with more advanced disease may have dyspnea, resting tachypnea, retractions, hypoxemia, cyanosis, barrel chest, clubbing, failure to thrive, or weight loss.

B. Laboratory Findings

Initial evaluations should be directed at ruling out alternative causes and should include: chest radiographs; modified barium swallow; pulmonary function tests; skin tests; complete blood count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate; sweat chloride test for CF; electrocardiogram or echocardiogram; serum immunoglobulins and other immunologic evaluations. Other studies to consider include: sputum studies (see section Pneumonia in the Immunocompromised Host); and possibly studies for Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, M pneumoniae, Chlamydia, Pneumocystis, and Ureaplasma urealyticum.

C. Imaging Studies

Chest radiographs are normal in up to 10%–15% of patients. Frequently, specific chILD disorders (eg, bronchiolitis obliterans and neuroendocrine cell hyperplasia of infancy) can be suspected by findings on controlled volume inspiratory and expiratory high-resolution CT. Infants and children younger than 5 years require sedation, which allows either infant pulmonary function testing or bronchoscopy to be completed at the same time (see below).

D. Special Tests

Depending on the specific ILD, pulmonary function tests may show (1) a restrictive pattern of decreased lung volumes, compliance, and carbon monoxide diffusing capacity, (2) an obstructive pattern with hyperinflation, or (3) a mixed obstructive-restrictive pattern. Exercise-induced or nocturnal hypoxemia is often the earliest detectable abnormality of lung function in children.

During the second evaluation phase, bronchoscopy is performed to exclude anatomic abnormalities, and obtain bronchoalveolar lavage for microbiologic and cytologic testing. Lung biopsy provides definitive diagnosis when analyzed by pathologists experienced in chILD disorders. In patients with static or slowly progressing disease, one can then await results of bronchoscopic studies. In patients with acute, rapidly progressive disease, this stage should be combined with video-assisted thoracoscopic lung biopsy.

E. Special Examinations: Genetic Testing

Genomic mutational analysis of tissue or blood for surfactant proteins B and C (SP-B, SP-C) and ABCA3 and NKX2.1 is available and should be considered in children with diffuse lung disease or a strong family history of ILD. Other genetic disorders that cause ILD include alveolar capillary dysplasia (FOXF1 found in 30% of patients), pulmonary alveolar proteinosis (GCSF [granulocyte colony-stimulating factor] receptor mutations or autoantibodies), pulmonary alveolar

microlithiasis (SLC34A2), and lysinuric protein intolerance (SLC7A7).

» Differential Diagnosis

ChILD syndrome is composed of a group of diverse conditions that differ from adult ILD conditions. Common adult causes of ILD such as idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, which is associated with a high mortality rate, and respiratory bronchiolitis, associated with smoking, have not been found in children. Conversely, newly identified conditions unique to infancy have been described. Other causes of chronic lung disease such as aspiration, BPD, and CF must also be ruled out.

» Complications

Respiratory failure or pulmonary hypertension may occur. Somatic growth deficiencies often require nutritional supplementation. Mortality and morbidity can be significant in and vary by specific diagnosis.

» Treatment

Therapy for known causes of ILD such as infection, aspiration, or cardiac disorders should be directed toward the primary disorder. Treatment for chILD conditions is anecdotal and based on case reports and small case series. In noninflammatory chILD syndrome conditions such as NEHI or developmental or growth abnormalities, treatment is supportive and may not require corticosteroids. For surfactant dysfunction mutations, PIG, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, and systemic collagen-vascular disease, patients are frequently treated initially with glucocorticoids. Other conditions may require oral glucocorticoids or monthly pulse glucocorticoids. Many patients require even more protracted therapy with alternate-day prednisone. Chloroquine (5–10 mg/kg/d) may be useful in selected disorders such as desquamative interstitial pneumonitis, surfactant dysfunction mutations, or refractory disease. Cyclophosphamide is used in severe cases of diffuse alveolar hemorrhage associated with pulmonary capillaritis. In refractory cases, immunomodulatory therapies (plasmapheresis, intravenous immunoglobulin, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, and rituximab) have been used. Finally, some patients with severe disease may require long-term mechanical ventilation or lung transplantation for survival. Children with ILD should be evaluated and cared for by an experienced multidisciplinary team. The chILD Family Foundation can provide further supportive resources for families (http://www.childfoundation.us).

» Prognosis

Prognosis is guarded in children with ILD due to collagen-vascular disease, surfactant dysfunction mutations, and lung development disorders.

Kuo CS, Young LR: Interstitial lung disease in children. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(3):320–327 [PMID: 24752172].

Kurland G et al: An official American Thoracic Society clinical practice guideline: classification, evaluation, and management of childhood interstitial lung disease in infancy. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2013;188(3):376–394 [PMID: 23905526].

HYPERSENSITIVITIY PNEUMONITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of recurrent respiratory symptoms.
- History of exposure to an environmental trigger such as birds or other organic material.

Hypersensitivity pneumonitis, or extrinsic allergic alveolitis, is a T-cell–mediated disease involving the peripheral airways, interstitium, and alveoli and presents as a distinct form of chILD. Both acute and chronic forms may occur. In children, the most common forms are caused by exposure to domestic and occasionally wild birds or bird droppings (eg, pigeons, parakeets, parrots, or doves) also known as "bird fanciers lung." Intensity, duration, and genetic predisposition are all important factors. However, inhalation of almost any organic dust (moldy hay, compost, logs or tree bark, sawdust, or aerosols from humidifiers or hot tubs) can cause disease. Methotrexate-induced hypersensitivity has also been described in a child with juvenile rheumatoid arthritis. Hot tub lung can be caused by exposure to aerosolized Mycobacterium avium complex. A high level of suspicion and a thorough history with attention to environmental exposures are required for diagnosis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Episodic cough and fever can occur with acute exposures. Chronic exposure results in weight loss, fatigue, dyspnea, cyanosis, and ultimately in respiratory failure.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging studies

Acute exposure may be followed by polymorphonuclear leukocytosis with eosinophilia and evidence of airway obstruction on pulmonary function testing. Chronic disease results in a restrictive picture on lung function tests.

Serum precipitins (precipitating IgG antibodies) to the organic materials that contain avian proteins or fungal or bacterial antigens may be detected. Ideally, to identify avian proteins, the patient's sera should be tested with antigens

from droppings of the suspected species of bird. However, exposure may invoke precipitins without causing disease.

When serologic investigations are not diagnostic, lung biopsy may be necessary. Histopathology is characterized by lymphocyte predominant interstitial infiltrates, cellular bronchiolitis, and peribronchiolar noncaseating granulomas.

Chest x-ray findings are variable and may include normal lung fields, air-space consolidation, and nodular or reticulonodular patterns. High-resolution CT of the chest is more sensitive, with classic findings of centrilobular nodules, ground-glass opacities, and air-trapping. Pulmonary fibrosis is seen in chronic disease. Lymphocytosis on bronchoalveolar lavage may be suggestive.

» Differential Diagnosis

Patients with mainly acute symptoms must be differentiated from those with atopic asthma. Patients with chronic symptoms must be distinguished from those with collagen-vascular, immunologic, or primary interstitial lung disease.

» Complications

Prolonged exposure to offending antigens may result in pulmonary hypertension due to chronic hypoxemia, irreversible restrictive lung disease due to pulmonary fibrosis, or respiratory failure.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Complete elimination of exposure to the offending antigens is required. If drug-induced hypersensitivity pneumonitis is suspected, discontinuation is required. Corticosteroids may hasten recovery. With appropriate early diagnosis and identification and avoidance of offending antigens, the prognosis is excellent.

Venkatesh P, Wild L: Hypersensitivity pneumonitis in children: clinical features, diagnosis, and treatment. Paediatr Drugs 2005;7(4):235–244 [PMID: 16117560].

DISEASES OF THE PULMONARY CIRCULATION

PULMONARY HEMORRHAGE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of hemoptysis.
- New-onset respiratory distress, oxygen requirement, or fatigue with evidence of infiltrate by chest imaging and blood in the tracheal aspirate.

Pulmonary hemorrhage can be caused by a spectrum of disorders affecting the large and small airways and alveoli. It can occur as an acute or chronic process. If pulmonary hemorrhage is subacute or chronic, hemosiderin-laden macrophages can be found in tracheal aspirates 48–72 hours after the bleeding begins. Many cases are secondary to bacterial, mycobacterial, parasitic, viral, or fungal infections (such as the toxigenic mold Stachybotrys chartarum). Lung abscess, bronchiectasis (from CF or other causes), foreign body, coagulopathy (often with overwhelming sepsis), or elevated pulmonary venous pressure (secondary to congestive heart failure, anatomic heart lesions, or ascent to high altitude) may also cause pulmonary hemorrhage. Other causes include lung contusion from trauma, pulmonary embolus with infarction, arteriovenous fistula or telangiectasias, autoimmune vasculitis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis pulmonary sequestration, agenesis of a single pulmonary artery, and esophageal duplication or bronchogenic cyst. In children, pulmonary hemorrhage due to airway tumors (eg, bronchial adenoma)) is very rare.

Hemorrhage involving the alveoli is termed diffuse alveolar hemorrhage. This may be idiopathic, drug-related or may occur in Goodpasture syndrome, rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, and systemic vasculitides (often associated with such collagen-vascular diseases as systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, Wegener granulomatosis, polyarteritis nodosa, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, and Behçet disease). Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis refers to the accumulation of hemosiderin in the lung, especially in alveolar macrophages, as a result of chronic or recurrent hemorrhage (usually from pulmonary capillaries) that is not associated with the previously listed causes. Children and young adults are mainly affected, with the age at onset ranging from 6 months to 20 years.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Large airway hemorrhage presents with hemoptysis and symptoms of the underlying cause, such as infection, foreign body, or bronchiectasis in CF. Hemoptysis from larger airways is often bright red or contains clots. Children with diffuse alveolar hemorrhage may present with massive hemoptysis, marked respiratory distress, stridor, or a pneumonia-like syndrome. However, most patients with diffuse alveolar hemorrhage and idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis present with nonspecific respiratory symptoms (cough, tachypnea, and retractions) with or without hemoptysis, poor growth, and fatigue. Fever, abdominal pain, and chest pain may also be reported. Jaundice and hepatosplenomegaly may be present with chronic bleeding. Physical examination often reveals decreased breath sounds, rales, rhonchi, or wheezing and digital clubbing.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Laboratory studies depend on the cause of hemorrhage. When gross hemoptysis is present, large airway bronchiectasis, epistaxis, foreign body, and arteriovenous malformations should be considered. Flexible bronchoscopy and imaging (MRI or CT-assisted angiography) can be used to localize the site of bleeding. Alveolar bleeding with hemoptysis is often frothy and pink. Long-standing idiopathic pulmonary hemorrhage may cause iron deficiency anemia and heme-positive sputum. Nonspecific findings may include lymphocytosis and an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate. Peripheral eosinophilia is present in up to 25% of patients. Chest radiographs may demonstrate perihilar infiltrates, fluffy alveolar infiltrates with or without atelectasis, and mediastinal adenopathy. Pulmonary function testing generally reveals restrictive impairment, with low lung volumes, poor compliance, and an increased diffusion capacity. Hemosiderin-laden macrophages are found in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid and tracheal aspirates. The diagnostic usefulness of lung biopsy is controversial.

Patients with diffuse alveolar hemorrhage with an underlying systemic disease may need a lung biopsy. In patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, granulomatosis and polyangitis (formerly called Wegener granulomatosis), and occasionally Goodpasture syndrome diffuse alveolar hemorrhage can occur in the setting of necrotizing pulmonary capillaritis. Lung biopsy reveals alveolar septa infiltrated with neutrophils, edema, or necrosis in addition to alveolar hemorrhage. Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis is a mild form of capillaritis associated with focal or diffuse alveolar hemorrhage. Other causes of pulmonary hemosiderosis include collagen-vascular disease, immune-mediated vasculitis, and pulmonary fibrosis must be ruled out to diagnose idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis. Lung biopsy often shows immune-mediated capillaritis in the absence of an identifiable serologic marker. Serologic studies such as circulating antineutrophilic cytoplasmic autoantibodies for Wegener granulomatosis, perinuclear antineutrophilic cytoplasmic autoantibodies for microscopic polyangiitis, antinuclear antibodies for systemic lupus erythematosus, and anti–basement membrane antibodies for Goodpasture syndrome should be obtained. α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency should also be considered.

Cow's milk–induced pulmonary hemosiderosis (Heiner syndrome) can be confirmed by high titers of serum precipitins to multiple constituents of cow's milk and positive intradermal skin tests to cow's milk proteins. Improvement after eliminating cow's milk supports the diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Bleeding from the nose or mouth can present as hemoptysis. Therefore, a complete examination of the nose and mouth is required before confirming the diagnosis of intrapulmonary bleeding. Hematemesis can also be confused with hemoptysis; confirming that the blood was produced after coughing and not with emesis should also be part of the initial evaluations. A complete past medical history including underlying systemic illness and cardiovascular anomalies may direct the search for the site of respiratory bleeding.

» Treatment

Therapy should be aimed at direct treatment of the underlying disease. In severe bleeding, intubation with application of positive pressure during mechanical ventilation and/or endotracheal administration of epinephrine may help attenuate bleeding. Patients with cystic fibrosis or bronchiectasis from other causes who develop massive (> 240 mL) or recurrent hemoptysis, may require bronchial artery embolization. Although its use requires anticoagulation, extracorporal life support has resulted in the survival of children with severe pulmonary hemorrhage. For more chronic bleeding, supportive measures, including iron therapy, supplemental oxygen, and blood transfusions, may be needed. A diet free of cow's milk should be tried in infants. Systemic corticosteroids have been used for various causes of diffuse alveolar hemorrhage and have been particularly successful in those secondary to collagen-vascular disorders and vasculitis. Case reports have been published describing the variable effectiveness of steroids, chloroquine, cyclophosphamide, and azathioprine for idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis.

» Prognosis

The outcome of pulmonary hemorrhage depends on the cause of the bleeding and how much blood has been lost. The course of idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis is variable, characterized by a waxing and waning course of intermittent intrapulmonary bleeds and the gradual development of pulmonary fibrosis. The severity of the underlying renal disease influences mortality associated with Goodpasture syndrome and Wegener granulomatosis. Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage is considered a lethal pulmonary complication of systemic lupus erythematosus.

Bull TM et al: Pulmonary vascular manifestations of mixed connective tissue disease. Rheum Dis Clin North Am 2005;31:451 [PMID: 16084318].

Flume PA et al: Cystic Fibrosis Pulmonary Guidelines–Pulmonary Complications: Hemoptysis and Pneumothorax. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2010;182(3):298 [PMID: 20675678].

Godfrey S: Pulmonary hemorrhage/hemoptysis in children. Pediatr Pulmonol 2004;37:476 [PMID: 15114547].

Sherman J et al: Time course of Hemosiderin production and clearance by human pulmonary macrophages. Chest 1984;86:409 [PMID: 6468000].

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute onset dyspnea and tachypnea.
- Evidence of embolism on chest imaging.

Pulmonary embolism is a rare, but severe cause of respiratory distress in children. Etiologies include: sickle cell anemia (as part of the acute chest syndrome), malignancy, rheumatic fever, infective endocarditis, bone fracture, dehydration, polycythemia, nephrotic syndrome, atrial fibrillation, and other conditions. A majority of children with pulmonary emboli referred for hematology evaluation have coagulation regulatory protein abnormalities and antiphospholipid antibodies. Emboli result in clinical signs and symptoms in proportion to the severity of pulmonary vascular obstruction. In children, tumor emboli are a more common cause of massive pulmonary embolism than embolization from a lower extremity deep venous thrombosis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Pulmonary embolism usually presents as an acute onset of dyspnea and tachypnea. Heart palpitations, pleuritic chest pain, and a sense of impending doom may be reported.

Hemoptysis is rare, but may occur along with splinting, cyanosis, and tachycardia. Massive emboli may be present with syncope and cardiac arrhythmias. Physical examination is usually normal (except for tachycardia and tachypnea) unless the embolism is associated with an underlying disorder. Mild hypoxemia, rales, focal wheezing, or a pleural friction rub may be found.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Radiographic findings may be normal, but a peripheral infiltrate, small pleural effusion, or elevated hemidiaphragm can be present. If the emboli are massive, differential blood flow and pulmonary artery enlargement may be appreciated. The electrocardiogram is usually normal unless the pulmonary embolus is massive. Echocardiography is useful in detecting the presence of a large embolus in the great vessels. A negative D-dimer has a more than 95% negative predictive value for an embolus, but has poor specificity. Ventilation-perfusion scans show localized areas of ventilation without perfusion.

Spiral CT with contrast may be helpful, but pulmonary angiography is the gold standard. A recent case series suggests that bedside chest ultrasound may aid in diagnosing pulmonary emboli, particularly in critically ill children. Further evaluation may include Doppler ultrasound studies of the legs to search for deep venous thrombosis. Coagulation studies, including assessments of antithrombin III, fibrinogen, antiphospholipid antibodies, homocystine, coagulation regulatory proteins (proteins C and S, and factor V Leiden), and the prothrombin G20210A mutation are abnormal in up to 70% of pediatric patients with pulmonary embolism.

» Treatment

Acute treatment includes supplemental oxygen, and anticoagulation. Current recommendations include heparin therapy to maintain an activated partial thromboplastin time of greater than 1.5 times the control value for the first 24 hours. Urokinase or tissue plasminogen activator can be used to help dissolve the embolus. These therapies should be followed by warfarin therapy for at least 6 weeks with an international normalized ratio (INR) greater than 2.

Baird JS et al: Massive Pulmonary Embolism in Children. J Pediatr 2010;156:148 [PMID: 20006766].

Konstantinides S et al: Heparin plus alteplase compared with heparin alone in patients with submassive pulmonary embolism. N Engl J Med 2002;347:1143 [PMID: 12374874].

PULMONARY EDEMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dyspnea and oxygen requirement.
- Evidence of pulmonary edema on chest imaging.

» Pathogenesis

Pulmonary edema is excessive accumulation of extravascular fluid in the lung. This occurs when fluid is filtered into the lungs faster than it can be removed, leading to changes in lung mechanics such as decreased lung compliance, worsening hypoxemia from ventilation-perfusion mismatch, bronchial compression, and if advanced, decreased surfactant function. There are two basic types of pulmonary edema: increased pressure (cardiogenic or hydrostatic) and increased permeability (noncardiogenic or primary). Hydrostatic pulmonary edema is usually due to excessive increases in pulmonary venous pressure, in the setting of congestive heart failure. Postobstructive pulmonary edema occurs when airway occlusion (or its sudden relief) causes a sudden drop in airway pressure which leads to increased venous return and decreased left heart blood flow. These changes result in elevated hydrostatic pressures and transudation of fluid from the pulmonary capillaries to the alveolar space.

In contrast, many lung diseases, especially acute respiratory distress syndrome, are characterized by the development of pulmonary edema secondary to changes in permeability due to injury at the alveolar-capillary interface. In this setting, pulmonary edema occurs independently of the elevations of pulmonary venous pressure.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Cyanosis, tachypnea, tachycardia, and respiratory distress are commonly present. Physical findings include rales, diminished breath sounds, and (in young infants) expiratory wheezing. More severe disease is characterized by progressive respiratory distress with marked retractions, dyspnea, and severe hypoxemia.

B. Imaging Studies

Chest radiographic findings depend on the cause of the edema. Pulmonary vessels are prominent, often with diffuse interstitial or alveolar infiltrates. Heart size is usually normal in permeability edema but enlarged in hydrostatic edema.

» Treatment

Although specific therapy depends on the underlying cause, supplemental oxygen therapy and ventilator support may be indicated. Diuretics, digoxin, and vasodilators may be indicated for congestive heart failure along with restriction of salt and water. Loop diuretics, such as furosemide, are primarily beneficial because they increase systemic venous capacitance, not because they induce diuresis. Improvement can even be seen in anuric patients. Recommended interventions for pulmonary edema include reduction of vascular volume and maintenance of the lowest central venous or pulmonary arterial wedge pressure possible without sacrificing cardiac output or causing hypotension (see following discussion). β-Adrenergic agonists such as terbutaline have been shown to increase alveolar clearance of lung water, perhaps through the action of a sodium-potassium channel pump. Maintaining normal albumin levels and a hematocrit concentration above 30 maintains the filtration of lung liquid toward the capillaries.

High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) occurs when susceptible individuals develop noncardiogenic edema after rapid ascent to altitudes above 3000 m. HAPE in children may be variable. Oxygen therapy and prompt descent are the cornerstones of therapy for this illness.

Bartsch P et al: Physiologic aspects of high-altitude pulmonary edema. J Appl Physiol 2005;98:1101 [PMID: 15703168].
O'Brodovich H: Pulmonary edema in infants and children. Curr Opin Pediatr 2005;17:381 [PMID: 15891430].
Udeshi A et al: Postobstructive pulmonary edema. J Crit Care 2010;25:508 [PMID: 20413250].

CONGENITAL PULMONARY LYMPHANGIECTASIA

Congenital pulmonary lymphangiectasia consists of dilated subpleural and interlobular lymphatic channels, often as part of a generalized lymphangiectasis (in association with obstructive cardiovascular lesions—especially total anomalous pulmonary venous return) or as an isolated idiopathic lesion. Pathologically, the lung appears firm, bulky, and noncompressible, with prominent cystic lymphatics visible beneath the pleura. On cut section, dilated lymphatics are present near the hilum, along interlobular septa, around bronchovascular bundles, and beneath the pleura. Histologically, dilated lymphatics have a thin endothelial cell lining overlying a delicate network of elastin and collagen.

» Clinical Findings

Congenital pulmonary lymphangiectasia is a rare, usually fatal, disease that generally presents as acute or persistent respiratory distress at birth. Although most patients do not survive the newborn period, some survive longer, and there are case reports of its diagnosis later in childhood. Congenital pulmonary lymphangiectasia may be associated with Noonan syndrome, asplenia, total anomalous pulmonary venous return, septal defects, atrioventricular canal, hypoplastic left heart, aortic arch malformations, and renal malformations. Chylothorax has been reported. Chest radiographic findings include a ground-glass appearance, prominent interstitial markings suggesting lymphatic distention, diffuse hyperlucency of the pulmonary parenchyma, and hyperinflation with depression of the diaphragm.

» Prognosis

Although the onset of symptoms may be delayed for as long as the first few months of life, prolonged survival is rare. Most deaths occur within weeks after birth and thereafter respiratory symptoms improve after the first year of life suggesting that maximal medical treatment remains warranted. In those with the most severe disease, rapid diagnosis is essential in order to expedite the option of lung transplantation.

Esther CR et al: Pulmonary lymphangiectasia: diagnosis and clinical course. Pediatr Pulmonol 2004;38:308 [PMID: 15334508].
Mettauer N et al: Outcome of children with pulmonary lymphangiectasis. Pediatr Pulmonol 2009;44:351 [PMID: 19330773].

DISORDERS OF THE CHEST WALL

SCOLIOSIS

Scoliosis is defined as lateral curvature of the spine and is categorized as idiopathic, congenital, or neuromuscular. No pulmonary impairment is typically seen with a Cobb angle

showing thoracic curvature of less than 35 degrees. Most cases of idiopathic scoliosis occur in adolescent girls and are corrected before significant pulmonary impairment occurs. Congenital scoliosis of severe degree or with other major abnormalities carries a more guarded prognosis. Patients with progressive neuromuscular disease, such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy, can be at risk for respiratory failure due to severe scoliosis and restrictive lung disease. Severe scoliosis can also lead to impaired lung function and, if uncorrected, possible death from cor pulmonale. (See also Chapter 26.) Small studies indicate that surgical correction of neuromuscular scoliosis may lead to improved quality of life, although pulmonary function may not improve.

Gill I: Correction of neuromuscular scoliosis in patients with preexisting respiratory failure. Spine 2006;31(21):2478–2483 [PMID: 17023858].

Johnston CE et al: Correlation of preoperative deformity magnitude and pulmonary function tests in adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. Spine 2011;36:1096–1102 [PMID: 21270699].

PECTUS CARINATUM

Pectus carinatum is a protrusion of the upper or lower (more common) portion of the sternum, more commonly seen in males. Impedance of cardiopulmonary function due to pectus carinatum is debated. The decision to repair this deformity is often based upon cosmetic concerns. Research has shown that those with reduced endurance or dyspnea with mild exercise experienced marked improvement within 6 months following repair, suggesting possible physiologic indications. Pectus carinatum may be associated with systemic diseases such as the mucopolysaccharidoses and congenital heart disease.

Lawson ML et al: Impact of pectus excavatum on pulmonary function before and after repair with the Nuss procedure. J Pediatr Surg 2005;40:174 [PMID: 15868581].

Obermeyer RJ, Goretsky MJ: Chest wall deformities in pediatric surgery. Surg Clin North Am 2012;92(3):669–684 [PMID: 22595715].

PECTUS EXCAVATUM

Pectus excavatum is anterior depression of the chest wall that may be symmetrical or asymmetrical with respect to the midline. Its presence can be psychologically difficult for the patient. Whether or not it is cause for cardiopulmonary limitations is controversial. While subjective exertional dyspnea can be reported and may improve with repair, objective cardiopulmonary function may not change postoperatively. Therefore, the decision to repair the deformity may be based on cosmetic or physiologic considerations. Timing of repair is critical in light of growth plate maturation. Pectus excavatum may be associated with congenital heart disease.

Obermeyer RJ, Goretsky MJ: Chest wall deformities in pediatric surgery. Surg Clin North Am 2012;92(3):669–684 [PMID: 22595715].

Williams AM, Crabbe DC: Pectus deformities of the anterior chest wall. Paediatr Respir Rev 2003;4:237 [PMID: 12880759].

NEUROMUSCULAR DISORDERS

Neuromuscular disorders are discussed in detail in Chapter 25. Weakness of the respiratory and pharyngeal muscles leads to chronic or recurrent pneumonia secondary to weak cough and poor mucous clearance, aspiration and infection, persistent atelectasis, hypoventilation, and respiratory failure in severe cases. Scoliosis, which frequently accompanies longstanding neuromuscular disorders, may further compromise respiratory function. Children born with significant neuromuscular weakness may present with signs and symptoms of respiratory compromise early in life. The time to presentation for children with progressive or acquired neuromuscular disease will depend upon the underlying neuromuscular defect. Typical examination findings in children at increased risk for pulmonary disease are a weak cough, decreased air exchange, crackles, wheezing, and dullness to percussion. The child also may have symptoms of sleep-related hypoventilation or obstructive sleep apnea. Signs of cor pulmonale may be evident in advanced cases. Chest radiographs generally show small lung volumes. If chronic aspiration is present, increased interstitial infiltrates and areas of atelectasis or consolidation may be present. Arterial blood gases demonstrate hypoxemia in the early stages and compensated respiratory acidosis in the late stages. Typical pulmonary function abnormalities include decreased vital capacity, decreased inspiratory and/or expiratory pressure, and decreased peak cough flow.

Treatment is supportive and includes vigorous airway clearance with a focus on assisted cough maneuvers, noninvasive ventilation, and antibiotics with infection. Supplemental oxygen may correct hypoxemia but does not correct the mechanical defect leading to hypoxemia. Depending on the diagnosis, routine polysomnography may be indicated to identify hypoventilation before it becomes clinically apparent. Consideration of bilevel positive airway pressure and mechanical airway clearance support, like mechanical in-exsufflation, should be introduced before respiratory failure is present. Due to risk of malignant hyperthermia and difficulty extubating, expert consultation prior to any anesthesia is required.

Unfortunately, despite aggressive medical therapy, many neuromuscular conditions progress to respiratory failure and death. The decision to intubate and ventilate is a difficult one; it should be made only when there is real hope that deterioration, though acute, is potentially reversible or when chronic ventilation is desired. Chronic mechanical ventilation using either noninvasive or invasive techniques is being used more frequently in patients with chronic respiratory insufficiency.

Birnkrant DJ et al: The respiratory management of patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy: a DMD care considerations working group specialty article. Pediatr Pulmonol 2010;45(8):739–748 [PMID: 2057083].

Danov Z: Respiratory management of pediatric patients with neuromuscular disease. Pediatr Ann 2010;39(12):769–776 [PMID: 21162485].

Panitch HB: The pathophysiology of respiratory impairment in pediatric neuromuscular diseases. Pediatric 2009;123(Suppl 4): S215–S218 [PMID: 19420146].

Wang CH et al: Consensus statement for standard of care in spinal muscular atrophy. J Child Neurol 2007;22(8):1027–1049 [PMID: 17761659].

DISORDERS OF THE PLEURA & PLEURAL CAVITY

The parietal pleura covers the inner surface of the chest wall. The visceral pleura covers the outer surface of the lungs. Disease processes can lead to accumulation of air or fluid or both in the pleural space. Pleural effusions are classified as transudates or exudates. Transudates occur when there is imbalance between hydrostatic and oncotic pressure, so that fluid filtration exceeds reabsorption (eg, congestive heart failure). Exudates form as a result of inflammation of the pleural surface leading to increased capillary permeability (eg, parapneumonic effusions). Other pleural effusions include chylothorax and hemothorax.

Thoracentesis is helpful in characterizing the fluid and providing definitive diagnosis. Recovered fluid is considered an exudate when Light's criteria are present (pleural fluid–serum protein ratio greater than 0.5, a pleural fluid–serum lactate dehydrogenase ratio greater than 0.6, or a pleural fluid lactate dehydrogenase level greater than two-thirds the upper limit for normal serum LDH). Important additional studies on pleural fluid include cell count; pH and glucose; Gram stain, acid-fast and fungal stains; aerobic and anaerobic cultures; counterimmunoelectrophoresis for specific organisms. Cytologic examination of pleural fluid should be performed to rule out leukemia or other neoplasm.

Wilcox M et al: Does this patient have an exudative pleural effusion? The rational clinical examination systematic review. JAMA 2014;311(23):2422–2431 [PMID: 24938565].

HEMOTHORAX

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset shortness of breath.
- Thoracocentesis reveals blood in the pleural space.

Accumulation of blood in the pleural space can be caused by surgical or accidental trauma, coagulation defects, and pleural or pulmonary tumors. A hemothorax is defined as a parapneumonic effusion when the hematocrit of the fluid is more than 50% of the peripheral blood. Hemopneumothorax may be caused by trauma. Symptoms are related to blood loss and compression of underlying lung parenchyma. There is some risk of secondary infection, resulting in empyema.

Treatment

Drainage of a hemothorax is required when significant compromise of pulmonary function is present, as with hemopneumothorax. In uncomplicated cases, observation is indicated because blood is readily absorbed spontaneously from the pleural space.

VATS has been used successfully in the management of hemothorax. Chest CT scan is helpful to select patients who may require surgery, as identification of blood and the volume of blood may be more predictive by this method than by chest radiograph.

Muzumdar H, Arens R: Pleural fluid. Pediatr Rev 2007;28(12): 462–464 [PMID: 18055645].

CHYLOTHORAX

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Respiratory distress with evidence of fluid in the pleural space on chest imaging.
- Thoracocentesis reveals milky fluid that is high in triglycerides and lymphocytes.

Accumulation of chyle, fluid of intestinal origin containing fat digestion products (mostly lipids), in the pleural space usually results from accidental or surgical trauma to the thoracic duct. The most common cause of a pleural effusion in the first few days of life is a chylothorax. In a newborn, chylothorax can be due to congenital abnormalities of the lymph vessels or secondary to birth trauma. Abnormalities of lymph vessels are seen in several congenital syndromes such as Down syndrome and Noonan syndrome. In an older child, a chylothorax can be due to: laceration or obstruction of the thoracic duct due to trauma or any surgery involving the chest wall (cardiac surgery, scoliosis repair, etc); obstruction of the vessels due to a benign or malignant mass or lymphadenopathy; a granulomatous infection such as tuberculosis; or increased venous pressure due to obstruction or left ventricular failure. Symptoms of chylothorax are

related to the amount of fluid accumulation and the degree of compromise of underlying pulmonary parenchyma. Thoracentesis reveals typical milky fluid (unless the patient has been fasting) containing chiefly T-lymphocytes.

Treatment

Treatment should be conservative because many chylothoraces resolve spontaneously. Oral feedings with medium-chain triglycerides reduce lymphatic flow through the thoracic duct. Somatostatin or the long-acting somatostain analogue, octreotide, are viable therapeutic options. Drainage of chylous effusions should be performed only for respiratory compromised because the fluid often rapidly reaccumulates. Repeated or continuous drainage may lead to protein malnutrition and T-cell depletion, rendering the patient relatively immunocompromised. If reaccumulation of fluid persists, surgical ligation of the thoracic duct or sclerosis of the pleural space can be attempted, although the results may be less than satisfactory.

Tutor JD: Chylothorax in infants and children. Pediatrics 2014;133(4):722–733 [PMID: 24685960].

PNEUMOTHORAX & RELATED AIR LEAK SYNDROMES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset shortness of breath.
- Focal area of absent breath sounds on chest auscultation.
- Shift of the trachea away from the area with absent breath sounds.

Pneumothorax can occur spontaneously in newborns and in older children, or more commonly, as a result of birth trauma, positive pressure ventilation, underlying obstructive or restrictive lung disease, or rupture of a congenital or acquired lung cyst. Pneumothorax can also occur as an acute complication of tracheostomy. Air usually dissects from the alveolar spaces into the interstitial spaces of the lung. Migration to the visceral pleura ultimately leads to rupture into the pleural space. Associated conditions include pneumomediastinum, pneumopericardium, pneumoperitoneum, and subcutaneous emphysema. These conditions are more commonly associated with dissection of air into the interstitial spaces of the lung with retrograde dissection along the bronchovascular bundles toward the hilum.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical spectrum can vary from asymptomatic to severe respiratory distress. Associated symptoms include cyanosis, chest pain, and dyspnea. Physical examination may reveal decreased breath sounds and hyperresonance to percussion on the affected side with tracheal deviation to the opposite side. When pneumothorax is under tension, cardiac function may be compromised, resulting in hypotension or narrowing of the pulse pressure. Pneumopericardium is a life-threatening condition that presents with muffled heart tones and shock. Pneumomediastinum rarely causes other than chest pain symptoms by itself.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

Chest radiographs usually demonstrate the presence of free air in the pleural space. When the pneumothorax is large and under tension, compressive atelectasis of the underlying lung and shift of the mediastinum to the opposite side may be observed. Cross-table lateral and lateral decubitus radiographs can aid in the diagnosis of free air. Pneumopericardium is identified by the presence of air completely surrounding the heart, whereas in patients with pneumomediastinum, the heart and mediastinal structures may be outlined with air, but the air does not involve the diaphragmatic cardiac border. Chest CT scan may be helpful with recurrent spontaneous pneumothoraces to look for subtle pulmonary disease not seen on chest radiograph, but this is debated.

Differential Diagnosis

Acute deterioration of a patient on a ventilator can be caused by tension pneumothorax, obstruction or dislodgment of the endotracheal tube, or ventilator failure. Radiographically, pneumothorax must be distinguished from diaphragmatic hernia, lung cysts, congenital lobar emphysema, and cystic adenomatoid malformation, but this task is usually not difficult.

Treatment

Small (< 15%) or asymptomatic pneumothoraces usually do not require treatment and can be managed with close observation. Larger or symptomatic pneumothoraces require drainage, although inhalation of 100% oxygen to wash out blood nitrogen can be tried. Needle aspiration should be used to relieve tension acutely, followed by chest tube or pigtail catheter placement. Pneumopericardium requires immediate identification, and if clinically symptomatic, needle aspiration to prevent death, followed by pericardial tube placement.

Prognosis

In older patients with spontaneous pneumothorax, recurrences are common; sclerosing and surgical procedures are often required.

Dotson K, Johnson LH: Pediatric spontaneous pneumothorax. Pediatr Emerg Care 2012;28(7):715–720 [PMID: 22766594].

Johnson NN, Toledo A, Endom EE: Pnuemothorax, pneumomediastinum, and pulmonary embolism. Pediatr Clin North Am 2010;57(6):1357–1383 [PMID: 21111122].

° MEDIASTINUM

MEDIASTINAL MASSES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Presentation varies depending on the location of the mass.
- Most mediastinal masses are discovered on routine chest x-rays.

Children with mediastinal masses may present because of symptoms produced by pressure on the esophagus, airways, nerves, or vessels within the mediastinum, or the masses may be discovered on a routine chest radiograph. Once the mass is identified, localization to one of four mediastinal compartments aids in the differential diagnosis. The superior mediastinum is the area above the pericardium that is bordered inferiorly by an imaginary line from the manubrium to the fourth thoracic vertebra. The anterior mediastinum is bordered by the sternum anteriorly and the pericardium posteriorly, and the posterior mediastinum is defined by the pericardium and diaphragm anteriorly and the lower eight thoracic vertebrae posteriorly. The middle mediastinum is surrounded by these three compartments.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Respiratory symptoms, when present, are due to pressure on an airway (cough or wheezing) or an infection (unresolving pneumonia in one area of lung). Hemoptysis can also occur but is an unusual presenting symptom. Dysphagia may occur secondary to compression of the esophagus. Pressure on the recurrent laryngeal nerve can cause hoarseness due to paralysis of the left vocal cord. Superior vena caval syndrome presents with dilation of neck vessels and other signs and symptoms of venous obstruction; superior mediastinal syndrome presents similarly but includes tracheal compression.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging Studies

The mass is initially defined by frontal and lateral chest radiographs together with thoracic CT scans or MRI. A barium esophagram may help define the extent of a mass. Other studies that may be required include angiography (to define the blood supply to large tumors), electrocardiography, echocardiography, ultrasound of the thorax, fungal and mycobacterial skin tests, and urinary catecholamine assays. MRI or myelography may be necessary in children suspected of having a neurogenic tumor in the posterior mediastinum. Mediastinal masses, particularly anterior masses, can cause life-threatening airway compromise during sedation even in patients with mild symptoms; thus, any sedation or anesthesia should be avoided if possible and performed cautiously.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of mediastinal masses is determined by their location. Within the superior mediastinum, one may find cystic hygromas, vascular or neurogenic tumors, thymic masses, teratomas, intrathoracic thyroid tissue, mediastinal abscess, and esophageal lesions. Within the anterior mediastinum, thymic tissue (thymomas, hyperplasia, cysts and intrathoracic thyroid) and teratomas, vascular tumors, and lymphatic tissue give rise to masses (lymphomas, leukemia, or reactive lymphadenopathy). Within the middle mediastinum masses include lymphomas and hypertrophic lymph nodes, granulomas, bronchogenic or enterogenous cysts, metastases, and pericardial cysts. Abnormalities of the great vessels and aortic aneurysms may also present as masses in this compartment. Within the posterior mediastinum, neurogenic tumors, enterogenous cysts, thoracic meningoceles, or aortic aneurysms may be present.

In some series, more than 50% of mediastinal tumors occur in the posterior mediastinum and are mainly neurogenic tumors or enterogenous cysts. Most neurogenic tumors in children younger than 4 years are malignant (neuroblastoma or neuroganglioblastoma), whereas a benign ganglioneuroma is the most common histologic type in older children. In the middle and anterior mediastinum, lymphoma and leukemia are the primary concern. Definitive diagnosis in most instances relies on surgical removal or biopsy for histologic examination.

» Treatment & Prognosis

The appropriate therapy and the response to therapy depend on the cause of the mediastinal mass.

Garey CL et al: Management of anterior mediastinal masses in children. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2011 July 12 (e-published).

° SLEEP-DISORDERED BREATHING

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Nighttime symptoms of snoring, apnea, or obstruction.
- Sleep studies are used to diagnose sleep apnea and to guide treatment.

Sleep apnea is recognized as a major public health problem in adults, due to its associated impact on health and the risks of excessive daytime sleepiness, impairment while driving, poor work performance, and effects on health. Pediatric sleep disorders are less commonly recognized because the risk factors, presentations, management, and outcomes differ from those in adults although the adverse impact on health is similar in scope and severity. The spectrum of sleep-disordered breathing includes obstructive sleep apnea, periodic breathing, central sleep apnea, and primary snoring. Snoring, mouth breathing, and upper airway obstruction are discussed in Chapter 18.

OBSTRUCTIVE & CENTRAL SLEEP APNEA

» Clinical Findings and Differential Diagnosis

Sleep apnea is defined as cessation of breathing and can be classified as obstructive (the attempt to breathe through an obstructed airway) or central (the lack of effort to breathe). Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) occurs in normal children with an incidence of about 2%, increasing in children with medical conditions, such as craniofacial abnormalities or neuromuscular diseases. The incidence also increases when children are medicated with hypnotics, sedatives, or anticonvulsants. While not all children with habitual snoring (snoring 3 or more nights per week) have sleep apnea, there is evidence that that even primary snoring (habitual snoring without gas exchange abnormalities) has neurobehavioral consequences. Obstructive sleep apnea should be suspected whenever a child presents with symptoms of loud habitual snoring, witnessed apnea, labored breathing, or frequent nighttime arousals, especially in the setting of failure to thrive or obesity, nocturnal oxygen desaturations, life-threatening events, craniofacial abnormalities, poor school performance, or behavioral problems such as hyperactivity. In children, airway obstruction is often associated with adenotonsillar hypertrophy or nasal congestion. Tonsillar hypertrophy is most common between the ages of two and seven years. Obesity is widely recognized as an etiologic component in adult OSA and is similarly cited in children. Consequences of OSA include failure to thrive, pulmonary hypertension, deficits of cognition, poor school performance, and psychiatric or behavioral problems. Central apneas are seen in infants and children, particularly at increased elevation. These are pauses in breathing without concomitant effort and may occur in a pattern of alternating apnea and tachypnea known as periodic breathing. Clinical significance is uncertain, as healthy children have been shown to have central apneas lasting 25 seconds without clear consequences. These central respiratory events may be relevant if they occur frequently or are associated with gas exchange abnormalities or sleep fragmentation, and should prompt a thorough evaluation.

» Diagnostic Studies

Clinical history and physical examination alone are inadequate to distinguish periodic breathing and primary snoring from central sleep apnea and obstructive sleep apnea in children, therefore polysomnography should be performed in all suspected cases This test measures sleep state with electroencephalogram leads and electromyography, airflow at the nose, chest and abdominal muscle movement, heart rate and rhythm, gas exchange (CO_2 and O_2), and leg movements, along with other data including body position, vibrations representing snoring, and audiovisual recording. Polysomnography allows diagnosis of obstructive and central apnea, sleep fragmentation, periodic limb movement disorder, or other sleep disorders of children. Overnight oximetry and home polysomnography (typically limited to 4 or fewer parameters) are not ideal studies to evaluate pediatric sleep disorders. While these tests may identify subjects with severe obstructive sleep apnea, the sensitivity is low. For example, normal oximetry studies are obtained in half of subjects with polysomnographically confirmed obstructive sleep apnea.

» Treatment

First-line therapy for obstructive sleep apnea in children is adenotonsillectomy, which improves the clinical status for most nonobese children with normal craniofacial structure. Even children with obesity, craniofacial anomalies or neuromuscular disorders may benefit, although additional treatment with continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) may be indicated. Regardless of underlying etiologies, maintaining a healthy weight, addressing abnormal dentition (with the use of orthodontics, including oral appliances and maxillary expanders if necessary) and optimizing airway health (by treating nasal obstruction and asthma with topical intranasal steroids and leukotriene modifiers, for example) are cornerstones of OSA and primary snoring management. Down syndrome presents unique challenges: up to half of these children can still have OSA despite adenotonsillectomy. Treatment of young or developmentally delayed children with apnea is challenging due to ongoing growth and development, barriers to adherence, difficulties of long-term therapies. (See Chapter 18 for additional discussion.) Though no intervention is needed in most cases of periodic breathing and central sleep apnea, supplemental oxygen may be needed to reduce oxygen desaturation and stabilize the respiratory pattern.

The presentation of sleep apnea is quite varied among children. Therefore, referral to a pediatric sleep disorder centers should be considered.

Aurora RN et al: Practice parameters for the respiratory indications for polysomnography in children. Sleep 2011;34(3): 379–388 [PMID: 21359087].

Goldbart AD, Greenberg-Dotan S, Tal A. Monteleukast for children with obstructive sleep apnea: a double-blind placebo-controlled study. Pediatrics 2012;130(3):e575–e580 [PMID: 22869829].

Marcus CL et al: Diagnosis and management of childhood obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. Pediatrics 2012;130(3): 576–584 [PMID: 22926173].

Owens JA: Neurocognitive and behavioral impact of sleep disordered breathing in children. Pediatr Pulmonol 2009;44(5): 417–422 [PMID: 19382210].

Sateia MJ (ed): The International Classification of Sleep Disorders. 3rd ed. American Academy of Sleep Medicine; 2014.

APPARENT LIFE-THREATENING EVENTS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute, unexpected change in breathing that leads the frightened observer to fear that the infant has died.
- Thoracocentesis reveals blood in the pleural space.

Apparent life-threatening events (ALTEs) are defined by an acute, unexpected change in an infant's breathing, appearance, or behavior that is frightening to the observer, who may fear that the infant has died or almost died. ATLEs are characterized by some combination of apnea, color change (usually cyanosis or pallor), a marked change in muscle tone (usually limpness), choking, or gagging. The relationship between ALTE and future risk of sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) or sudden unexpected infant death (SUID) is not clear, as ALTE infants tend to be slightly younger. The term apparent life-threatening event replaced "near-miss SIDS" in order to distinguish the event from a direct association with SIDS. The risk of SIDS or SUID is higher when extreme cardiopulmonary events were required at the time of the ALTE. About 12%–15% of both SIDS victims and infants dying unexpectedly of a known cause have had a prior history of ALTE, but most do not.

ALTE is not a specific diagnosis; up to 50% of ALTEs remain unexplained and are referred to as apnea of infancy. The most frequent problems identified with an ALTE are gastrointestinal (~50%), neurologic (30%), respiratory (20%), cardiovascular (5%), and metabolic or endocrine (< 5%), but can be caused by myriad other problems, including nonaccidental trauma. Because ALTEs do not occur after infancy, immaturity likely plays a major role. Classic studies on the nervous system, reflexes, or responses to apnea or gastroesophageal reflux during sleep in infants and immature animals show profound cardiovascular changes during stimulation of the vagus nerve, whereas adults would not be affected. The following section describes an approach to the patient who has experienced an ALTE, taking note of the very broad differential diagnosis and uncertainties in both evaluation and treatment.

Clinical Findings and Differential Diagnosis

A. Symptoms and Signs

Table 19–6 classifies disorders associated with ALTEs. The causes of ALTEs are diverse and multifactorial, but it is the response to the trigger that creates a symptom cluster unique to infants. A careful history is the most helpful part of the evaluation. In a large epidemiological study of infants who died of SIDS or SUID, a careful history using a "baby check" score was useful in identifying infants who were seriously ill. It is useful to determine whether the infant has been ill or essentially well. A history of several days of poor feeding, temperature instability, or respiratory or gastrointestinal symptoms suggests an infectious process. Reports of "struggling to breathe" or "trying to breathe" imply airway obstruction. Episodes following crying may be related to breath-holding. Association of the episode with feeding implies discoordinated swallowing with or without aspiration, gastroesophageal reflux, or delayed gastric emptying, or may imply an airway abnormality. Episodes occurring while awake are associated with very different diagnoses than episodes occurring during sleep. Association of episodes

Table 19–6. Potential causes of apparent life-threatening events.

Infectious	Viral: respiratory syncytial virus and other respiratory viruses Bacterial: sepsis, pertussis, Chlamydia
Gastrointestinal	Gastroesophageal reflux with or without obstructive apnea
Respiratory	Airway abnormality; vascular rings, pulmonary slings, tracheomalacia Pneumonia
Neurologic	Seizure disorder Central nervous system infection: meningitis, encephalitis Vasovagal response Leigh encephalopathy Brain tumor
Cardiovascular	Congenital malformation Dysrhythmias Cardiomyopathy
Nonaccidental trauma	Battering Drug overdose Munchausen syndrome by proxy
No definable cause	Apnea of infancy

with sleep may also suggest seizure, gastroesophageal reflux, apnea of infancy, or sleep-disordered breathing. Attempts should be made to determine the duration of the episode, but this is often difficult. It is helpful to role-play the episode with the family. Details regarding the measures taken to resuscitate the infant and the infant's recovery from the episode may be useful in determining severity.

The physical examination provides further direction in pursuing the diagnosis. Fever or hypothermia suggests infection. An altered state of consciousness implies a postictal state or drug overdose, or central nervous system anomaly or infection. Respiratory distress implies cardiac or pulmonary lesions.

Apneic episodes have been linked to child abuse in several ways. Head injury following nonaccidental trauma may be first brought to medical attention because of apnea. Other signs of abuse are usually immediately apparent in such cases. Drug overdose, either accidental or intentional, may also present with apnea. Several studies document that apneic episodes may be falsely reported by parents who are seeking attention (ie, Munchausen syndrome by proxy). Parents may physically interfere with a child's respiratory efforts, in which case pinch marks on the nares are sometimes found.

B. Laboratory Findings

Most patients are hospitalized for observation in order to reduce stress on the family and allow prompt completion of the evaluation. Diagnostic testing should be based very heavily on the history and physical examination. Laboratory evaluation might include a complete blood count, blood culture with urinalysis and urine culture for evidence of infection, especially in the face of fever, hypothermia, or an abnormal physical examination. Serum electrolytes may reveal electrolyte disturbances from metabolic disorders, dehydration, or ingestions. An elevation in serum bicarbonate suggests chronic hypoventilation, whereas decreases suggest acute acidosis, perhaps due to hypoxia during the episode. Chronic acidosis suggests an inherited metabolic disorder. Arterial blood gas studies provide an initial assessment of oxygenation and acid-base status. Low Pao_2 or elevated $Paco_2$ (or both) implies cardiorespiratory disease. A significant base deficit suggests that the episode was accompanied by hypoxia or circulatory impairment. Oxygen saturation measurements in the hospital assess oxygenation status during different activities and are more comprehensive than a single blood gas sample. Because apnea has been associated with respiratory infections, diagnostic studies for RSV and other viruses, pertussis, and Chlamydia may help with diagnosis. Apnea occurring with infection often precedes other physical findings.

C. Imaging Studies

The chest radiograph is examined for infiltrates suggesting acute infection or chronic aspiration and for cardiac size as a clue to intrinsic cardiac disease. Electrocardiogram is helpful to rule out cardiac dysrhythmias, and echocardiogram may be indicated if there is suspicion of congenital heart disease based on history and physical examination. If the episode might have involved airway obstruction, the airway should be examined either directly by fiberoptic bronchoscopy or radiographically by CT or barium swallow. Barium swallow is a useful tool to rule out the possibility of anatomic abnormalities such as vascular ring and tracheoesophageal fistula. Gastroesophageal reflux is one of the most common findings in infants with ALTE; however, it may be a marker of autonomic immaturity as opposed to a diagnosis for the event. Most infants with reflux and apnea can be given medical antireflux treatment. Infants with reflux and repeated episodes of apnea may benefit from a surgical antireflux procedure.

D. Special Tests: Polysomnography and Other Studies

ALTEs occur in the same age group as infants who die of SUID (2–4 months is the peak age). Sleep-disordered breathing has been implicated as a possible cause of ALTEs and perhaps sudden death. Depending on the discretion of the clinician polysomnography can be useful in detecting abnormalities of cardiorespiratory function, sleep state, oxygen saturation, carbon dioxide retention, and seizure activity. Sleep studies can be used in conjunction with pH monitoring to determine the contribution of reflux to apnea. Esophageal pressure manometry can be useful to detect subtle changes in respiratory effort related to partial obstructive breathing (hypopnea). Due to their immature nervous system, infants are more likely to experience adverse events from sleep-disordered breathing than adults.

Among the neurologic causes of ALTEs, seizure disorder has been found to be a cause of ALTE in a significant number of cases. Apnea as the sole manifestation of a seizure disorder is unusual but may occur. In cases of repeated episodes, 24-hour electroencephalographic monitoring may be helpful in detecting a seizure disorder.

» Treatment

Therapy is directed at the underlying cause if one is found. After blood cultures are taken, antibiotics should be given to infants who appear toxic. Seizure disorders are treated with anticonvulsants. Gastroesophageal reflux should be treated, but may not prevent future episodes of ALTE. Vascular rings and pulmonary slings must be corrected surgically because of severe morbidity and high mortality rates when untreated.

The approach to care of infants with ALTEs where no cause can be ascertained is controversial. Home monitoring has been used in the past as treatment, but the efficacy of monitoring has not been demonstrated in controlled trials. After more than 30 years of home monitoring, the sudden

infant death rate has not changed. Although monitors can detect central apnea or bradycardia, they do not predict which children will have future ALTEs or SUID, and they do not detect obstructive forms of breathing, which is a common form of apnea in infants. Apnea monitors are prone to frequent false alarms, and it must be noted that many parents cannot handle the stress associated with having a monitor in the home. Parents should be taught cardiopulmonary resuscitation prior to discharge and should prevent modifiable risk factors for infant death discussed below. Infants with severe initial episodes or repeated severe episodes should be considered at significantly increased risk for SUID. A monitor with an oxygen saturation detection capability may identify episodes earlier. The caregiver responsible for prescribing a monitor should have a plan for data acquisition and future discontinuation of the monitor so that the parents can be prepared.

Supplemental oxygen has been used as therapy for ALTEs for several reasons. Oxygen reduces periodic breathing of infancy, an immature pattern of breathing that can cause some degree of oxygen desaturation. Second, infants have small chest capacities with increased chest wall compliance that reduces lung volume. Supplemental oxygen can increase the baseline saturation, reducing the severity of desaturation with short apneas. Respiratory stimulants such as caffeine and aminophylline have been used in specific cases of central apnea or periodic breathing.

Any infant younger than 1 year should be evaluated for the presence of modifiable SUID risk factors. Parents should be educated on how to avoid these risk factors, especially in infants at increased risk such as former preterm infants, children exposed to cigarette smoke environmentally or prior to birth, African American or Native American infants, and infants in poor socioeconomic areas. Updates on recommendations for the prevention of unexpected death in infants were published by the American Academy of Pediatrics in 2011. New recommendations include:

- Always place a baby on its back to sleep (this includes a baby with reflux).
- A baby should always sleep in its own space such as a crib, bassinette, or pack & play. A baby should not sleep on an adult bed, couch, armchair, futon, or other soft surface. Use a firm mattress designed for the crib, bassinet, or pack & play with a tight fitting sheet. The mattress should be flat, not elevated, and with no soft bedding underneath or on top.
- The baby should share a room with his parents/caregivers at least until age 6 months, but should never sleep in the adult bed.
- There should be nothing in a baby's sleep space other than the baby, such as blankets, pillows, stuffed animals, or wedge positioners.
- Avoid overheating, overwrapping, and covering the face and head. Use a sleep sack or onesie.
- Breastfeeding is recommended.
- Consider offering a pacifier to a baby at naptime and bedtime.
- Avoid exposure to cigarette smoke during pregnancy and after birth.
- Car seats, swings, and baby slings should NOT be used for sleep as the infant's head tends to fall forward or to the side, compromising the airway.
- Avoid the use of adult beds, bed rails, and in-bed co-sleepers, which increase the risk of suffocation and entrapment.

SUDDEN UNEXPECTED INFANT DEATH AND SUDDEN INFANT DEATH SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Sudden, unexplained death of an infant or child.

SIDS is defined as the sudden death of an infant younger than 1 year that remains unexplained after a thorough case investigation, including performance of a complete autopsy, examination of the death scene, and review of the clinical history. The postmortem examination is an important feature of the definition because approximately 20% of cases of sudden death can be explained by autopsy findings. After the "Back to Sleep" campaign began in the United States in 1994, the incidence of SIDS declined from approximately 2 per 1000 to 0.5 per 1000 live births. However, the incidence of SIDS has leveled off since 1999.

SUID, defined as any sudden and unexpected infant death, whether explained (such as accidental suffocation or strangulation) or unexplained (such as SIDS) is gaining favor as the preferred term to refer to infant deaths that were previously classified as SIDS. SIDS is neither a true diagnosis nor a syndrome, and labelling an infant death as SIDS tends to give parents a false sense that the cause of their child's death is known and understood. SUID also includes deaths due to infection, ingestions, metabolic diseases, cardiac arrhythmias, and trauma. New evidence shows that the incidence of accidental suffocation and strangulation in bed is increasing due to unsafe sleep surfaces and environments.

» Epidemiology and Pathogenesis

Epidemiologic and pathologic data constitute most of what is known about SUID. Like SIDS, SUID deaths peak between ages 2 and 4 months. Most deaths occur between midnight and 8:00 am., while the infant and often the caregiver are sleeping. In fact, the only unifying features of all cases are age

and sleep. SUID is more common among ethnic and racial minorities and socioeconomically disadvantaged populations. Racial disparity in the prevalence of prone positioning and especially in bed-sharing may be contributing to the continued disparity in SUID rates between black and white infants. There is a 3:2 male predominance in most series. Other risk factors include premature birth, low birth weight, recent infection, young maternal age, maternal tobacco or drug use, high maternal parity, and crowded living conditions. Most of these risk factors are associated with a two- to three-fold increased incidence but are not specific enough to be useful in predicting which infants will die unexpectedly. Recent immunization is not a risk factor.

The most consistent pathologic findings in SUID deaths from unknown cause (previously classified as SIDS) are intrathoracic petechiae and mild inflammation and congestion of the respiratory tract. More subtle pathologic findings include brainstem gliosis, extramedullary hematopoiesis, and increases in peri-adrenal brown fat. These latter findings suggest that infants who succumb to SUID have had intermittent or chronic hypoxia before death.

In cases where a distinct cause cannot be identified, the mechanism or mechanisms of death in SUID are unknown. For example, it is unknown whether the initiating event at the time of death is cessation of breathing, cardiac arrhythmia, or asystole. Hypotheses have included upper airway obstruction, catecholamine excess, and increased fetal hemoglobin. However, maldevelopment or delayed maturation of the brainstem, which is responsible for arousal from sleep, remains the predominant theory. A history of mild symptoms of upper respiratory infection before death is not uncommon, and SUID victims are sometimes seen by physicians a day or so before death. The postmortem examination is essential and may help the family by excluding other possible causes of death. A death scene investigation is also important in determining the cause of sudden unexpected deaths in infancy.

Families must be supported following the death of an infant. The National SIDS Resource Center (http://www.sidscenter.org) provides information about psychosocial support groups and counseling for families of SIDS victims.

» Prevention

Since 1990, SIDS rates have declined more than 60% worldwide. Population studies in New Zealand and Europe identified risk factors, which when changed had a significant effect on the incidence of SIDS. Since 1994 the American Academy of Pediatrics' "Back-to-Sleep" campaign has promoted education about the risk of prone positioning. Modifiable risk factors include sleep position, location, and environment; formula feeding; maternal smoking or drug use; and infant overheating. The prone sleep position may increase the risk of SUID through decreased arousal or rebreathing of exhaled gases. Side positioning, often used in hospitals and then mimicked at home, increases risk of SUID compared with the supine position and is not a safe alternative to supine sleep, even in infants with reflux. Environmental smoke exposure, especially prenatal maternal smoking, increases the risk of SUID. The risk of SUID is lower when an infant is breastfed and when a pacifier is offered at naptime and bedtime.

Table 19–7. American Academy of Pediatrics recommendations regarding sudden infant death syndrome (SUID) risk reduction.

"Back-to-sleep" (supine sleeping position)
Firm sleep surface designed for infant sleep
Pillows/loose bedding, loose blankets should be out of the crib
Share a room, not a bed with the infant
Do not smoke during pregnancy, and smoke-free environment after birth
Consider offering a pacifier at nap and bed time
Avoid overheating, over-wrapping and head covering
Avoid commercial devices marketed to reduce the risk of SIDS
Do not use home monitors as a strategy to reduce the risk of SIDS
Encourage tummy time while awake

The healthcare provider is instrumental in parental education regarding the modifiable risk factors for SUID (Table 19–7). Education and appropriate modeling of safe sleep behaviors should begin in the hospital immediately after birth. The healthcare provider should screen all infants for SUID risk factors and be mindful of the childcare setting, where risk factors may not be recognized or addressed. Hospitals should set an example by placing infants in the supine position with no blankets, pillows, or other soft objects in the bed prior to discharge. At present, the data show that the environment is key to the safety of the infant, and unsafe sleep environments are responsible for the recent increase in accidental suffocation, asphyxia, and entrapment.

American Academy of Pediatrics: SIDS and other sleep-related infant deaths: expansion of recommendations for a safe infant sleeping environment. Pediatrics 2011;128(5):1030–1039 [PMID: 22007004].

Fu LY, Moon LY, Hauck FR: Bed sharing among black infants and sudden death syndrome: interactions with other known risk factors. Acad Pediatr 2010;10(6):376–382 [PMID: 21075317].

Platt MW et al: A clinical comparison of SIDS and explained sudden infant deaths: how healthy and how normal? CESDI SUDI Research Group. Confidential Inquiry into Stillbirths and Deaths in Infancy study. Arch Dis Child 2000;82(2):98–106 [PMID: 10648361].

20

Cardiovascular Diseases

Pei-Ni Jone, MD
Jeffrey R. Darst, MD
Kathryn K. Collins, MD
Shelley D. Miyamoto, MD

Eight in 1000 infants are born with a congenital heart defect. Advances in medical and surgical care allow more than 90% of such children to enter adulthood. Pediatric cardiac care includes not only the diagnosis and treatment of congenital heart disease but also the prevention of risk factors for adult cardiovascular disease—obesity, smoking, and hyperlipidemia. Acquired and familial heart diseases such as Kawasaki disease, viral myocarditis, cardiomyopathies, and rheumatic heart disease are also a significant cause of morbidity and mortality in children.

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

HISTORY

Symptoms related to congenital heart defects primarily vary according to the alteration in pulmonary blood flow (Table 20–1). The presence of other cardiovascular symptoms such as palpitations and chest pain should be determined by history in the older child, paying particular attention to the timing (at rest or activity-related), onset, and termination (gradual vs sudden), as well as precipitating and relieving factors.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

General

The examination begins with a visual assessment of mental status, signs of distress, perfusion, and skin color. Documentation of heart rate, respiratory rate, blood pressure (in all four extremities), and oxygen saturation is essential. Many congenital cardiac defects occur as part of a genetic syndrome (Table 20–2), and complete assessment includes evaluation of dysmorphic features that may be clues to the associated cardiac defect.

Cardiovascular Examination

A. Inspection and Palpation

Chest conformation should be noted in the supine position. A precordial bulge indicates cardiomegaly. Palpation may reveal increased precordial activity, right ventricular lift, or left-sided heave; a diffuse point of maximal impulse; or a precordial thrill caused by a grade IV/VI or greater murmur. The thrill of aortic stenosis is found in the suprasternal notch. In patients with severe pulmonary hypertension, a palpable pulmonary closure (P_2) is frequently noted at the upper left sternal border.

B. Auscultation

1. Heart sounds—The first heart sound (S_1) is the sound of atrioventricular (AV) valve closure. It is best heard at the lower left sternal border and is usually medium-pitched. Although S_1 has multiple components, only one of these (M_1—closure of the mitral valve) is usually audible.

The second heart sound (S_2) is the sound of semilunar valve closure. It is best heard at the upper left sternal border. S_2 has two component sounds, A_2 and P_2 (aortic and pulmonic valve closure). Splitting of S_2 varies with respiration, widening with inspiration and narrowing with expiration. Abnormal splitting of S_2 may be an indication of cardiac disease (Table 20–3). A prominent or loud P_2 is associated with pulmonary hypertension.

The third heart sound (S_3) is the sound of rapid left ventricular filling. It occurs in early diastole, after S_2, and is medium- to low-pitched. In healthy children, S_3 diminishes or disappears when going from supine to sitting or standing. A pathologic S_3 is often heard in the presence of poor cardiac function or a large left-to-right shunt. The fourth heart sound (S_4) is associated with atrial contraction and increased atrial pressure and has a low pitch similar to that of S_3. It occurs just prior to S_1 and is not normally audible. It is heard

Table 20–1. Symptoms of increased and decreased pulmonary blood flow.

Decreased Pulmonary Blood Flow	Increased Pulmonary Blood Flow
Infant/toddler	
Cyanosis	Tachypnea with activity/feeds
Squatting	Diaphoresis
Loss of consciousness	Poor weight gain
Older child	
Dizziness	Exercise intolerance
Syncope	Dyspnea on exertion, diaphoresis

Table 20–2. Cardiac defects in common syndromes.

Genetic Syndrome	Commonly Associated Cardiac Defect
Down syndrome	AVSD
Turner syndrome	Bicuspid aortic valve, coarctation, dilated aortic root, hypertension
Noonan syndrome	Dysplastic pulmonic valve, HCM
Williams-Beuren syndrome	Supravalvular aortic stenosis, PPS, coronary ostial stenosis
Marfan syndrome	MVP, MR, dilated aortic root
Fetal alcohol syndrome	VSD, ASD
Maternal rubella	PDA, PPS
Loeys-Dietz Syndrome	Aneurysmal PDA, dilated aortic root, tortuous arteries throughout the body

ASD, atrial septal defect; AVSD, atrioventricular septal defect; HCM, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; MR, mitral regurgitation; MVP, mitral valve prolapse; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; PPS, peripheral pulmonary stenosis; VSD, ventricular septal defect

Table 20–3. Abnormal splitting of S_2.

Causes of wide split S_2
RV volume overload: ASD, anomalous pulmonary venous return, PI
RV pressure overload: Pulmonary valve stenosis
Delayed RV conduction: RBBB
Causes of narrow split S_2
Pulmonary hypertension
Single semilunar valve (aortic atresia, pulmonary atresia, truncus arteriosus)

ASD, atrial septal defect; PI, pulmonic insufficiency; RBBB, right bundle branch block; RV, right ventricle

in the presence of atrial contraction into a noncompliant ventricle as in hypertrophic or restrictive cardiomyopathy or from other causes of diastolic dysfunction.

Ejection clicks are usually related to dilate great vessels or valve abnormalities. They are heard during ventricular systole and are classified as early, mid, or late. Early ejection clicks at the mid left sternal border are from the pulmonic valve. Aortic clicks are typically best heard at the apex. In contrast to aortic clicks, pulmonic clicks vary with respiration, becoming louder during inspiration. A mid to late ejection click at the apex is most typically caused by mitral valve prolapse.

2. Murmurs—A heart murmur is the most common cardiovascular finding leading to a cardiology referral. Innocent or functional heart murmurs are common, and 40%–45% of children have an innocent murmur at some time during childhood.

a. Characteristics—All murmurs should be described based on the following characteristics:

(1) Location and radiation—Where the murmur is best heard and where the sound extends.

(2) Relationship to cardiac cycle and duration—Systolic ejection (immediately following S_1 with a crescendo/decrescendo change in intensity), pansystolic (occurring throughout most of systole and of constant intensity), diastolic, or continuous. The timing of the murmur provides valuable clues as to the underlying pathology (Table 20–4).

(3) Intensity—Grade I describes a soft murmur heard with difficulty; grade II, soft but easily heard; grade III, loud but without a thrill; grade IV, loud and associated with a precordial thrill; grade V, loud, with a thrill, and audible with the edge of the stethoscope; grade VI, very loud and audible with the stethoscope off the chest.

(4) Quality—Harsh, musical, or rough; high, medium, or low in pitch.

(5) Variation with position—Audible changes in murmur when the patient is supine, sitting, standing, or squatting.

b. Innocent Murmurs—The six most common innocent murmurs of childhood are

(1) Newborn murmur—Heard in the first few days of life, this murmur is at the lower left sternal border, without significant radiation. It has a soft, short, vibratory grade I–II/VI quality that often subsides when mild pressure is applied to the abdomen. It usually disappears by age 2–3 weeks.

(2) Peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis (PPS)—This murmur, often heard in newborns, is caused by the normal branching of the pulmonary artery. It is heard with equal intensity at the upper left sternal border, at the back, and in one or both axillae. It is a soft, short, high-pitched, grade I–II/VI systolic ejection murmur and usually disappears by age 2. This murmur must be differentiated from true peripheral pulmonary stenosis (Williams syndrome, Alagille syndrome,

Table 20–4. Pathologic murmurs.

Systolic Ejection	Pansystolic	Diastolic	Continuous
Semilunar valve stenosis (AS/PS/truncal stenosis)	VSD	Semilunar valve regurgitation	Runoff lesions
ASD	AVVR (MR/TR)	AI/PI/truncal insufficiency	PDA/AVM/aortopulmonary collaterals
Coarctation		AV valve stenosis (MS/TS)	

AI/PI, aortic insufficiency/pulmonic insufficiency; AS/PS, aortic stenosis/pulmonic stenosis; ASD, atrial septal defect; AV, atrioventricular; MS/TS, mitral stenosis/tricuspid stenosis; AVVR, atrioventricular valve regurgitation; MR/TR, mitral regurgitation/tricuspid regurgitation; PDA/AVM, patent ductus arteriosus/arteriovenous malformation; VSD, ventricular septal defect.

or rubella syndrome), coarctation of the aorta, and valvular pulmonary stenosis. Characteristic facial features, extracardiac physical examination findings, history, and laboratory abnormalities suggestive of the syndromes listed above are the best way to differentiate true peripheral pulmonary stenosis from benign PPS of infancy as the murmurs can be similar.

(3) Still murmur—This is the most common innocent murmur of early childhood. It is typically heard between 2 and 7 years of age. It is the loudest midway between the apex and the lower left sternal border. Still murmur is a musical or vibratory, short, high-pitched, grade I–III early systolic murmur. It is loudest when the patient is supine. It diminishes or disappears with inspiration or when the patient is sitting. The Still murmur is louder in patients with fever, anemia, or sinus tachycardia from any reason.

(4) Pulmonary ejection murmur—This is the most common innocent murmur in older children and adults. It is heard from age 3 years onward. It is usually a soft systolic ejection murmur, grade I–II in intensity at the upper left sternal border. The murmur is louder when the patient is supine or when cardiac output is increased.

(5) Venous hum—A venous hum is usually heard after age 2 years. It is located in the infraclavicular area on the right. It is a continuous musical hum of grade I–III intensity and may be accentuated in diastole and with inspiration. It is best heard in the sitting position. Turning the child's neck, placing the child supine, and compressing the jugular vein obliterates the venous hum. Venous hum is caused by turbulence at the confluence of the subclavian and jugular veins.

(6) Innominate or carotid bruit—This murmur is more common in the older child and adolescents. It is heard in the right supraclavicular area. It is a long systolic ejection murmur, somewhat harsh and of grade II–III intensity. The bruit can be accentuated by light pressure on the carotid artery and must be differentiated from all types of aortic stenosis. The characteristic findings of aortic stenosis are outlined in more detail later in this chapter.

When innocent murmurs are found in a child, the physician should assure the parents that these are normal heart sounds of the developing child and that they do not represent heart disease.

Extracardiac Examination

A. Arterial Pulse Rate and Rhythm

Cardiac rate and rhythm vary greatly during infancy and childhood, so multiple determinations should be made. This is particularly important for infants (Table 20–5) whose heart rates vary with activity. The rhythm may be regular or there may be a normal phasic variation with respiration (sinus arrhythmia).

B. Arterial Pulse Quality and Amplitude

A bounding pulse is characteristic of run-off lesions, including patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), aortic regurgitation, arteriovenous malformation, or any condition with a low diastolic pressure (fever, anemia, or septic shock). Narrow or thready pulses occur in patients with conditions reducing cardiac output such as decompensated heart failure pericardial tamponade, or severe aortic stenosis. A reduction in pulse amplitude or blood pressure (> 10 mm Hg) with inspiration is referred to as pulsus paradoxus and is a sign of pericardial tamponade. The pulses of the upper and lower extremities should be compared. The femoral pulse should be palpable and equal in amplitude and simultaneous with

Table 20–5. Resting heart rates.

Age	Low	High
< 1 mo	80	160
1–3 mo	80	200
2–24 mo	70	120
2–10 y	60	90
11–18 y	40	90

the brachial pulse. A femoral pulse that is absent or weak, or that is delayed in comparison with the brachial pulse, suggests coarctation of the aorta.

C. Arterial Blood Pressure

Blood pressures should be obtained in the upper and lower extremities. Systolic pressure in the lower extremities should be greater than or equal to that in the upper extremities. The cuff must cover the same relative area of the arm and leg. Measurements should be repeated several times. A lower blood pressure in the lower extremities suggests coarctation of the aorta.

D. Cyanosis of the Extremities

Cyanosis results from an increased concentration (> 4–5 g/dL) of reduced hemoglobin in the blood. Bluish skin color is usually, but not always, a sign. Visible cyanosis also accompanies low cardiac output, hypothermia, and systemic venous congestion, even in the presence of adequate oxygenation. Cyanosis should be judged by the color of the mucous membranes (lips). Bluish discoloration around the mouth (acrocyanosis) does not correlate with cyanosis.

E. Clubbing of the Fingers and Toes

Clubbing is often associated with severe cyanotic congenital heart disease. It usually appears after age 1 year. Hypoxemia with cyanosis is the most common cause, but clubbing also occurs in patients with endocarditis, chronic liver disease, inflammatory bowel diseases, chronic pulmonary disease, and lung abscess. Digital clubbing may be a benign genetic variant.

F. Edema

Edema of dependent areas (lower extremities in the older child and the face and sacrum in the younger child) is characteristic of elevated right heart pressure, which may be seen with tricuspid valve pathology or heart failure.

G. Abdomen

Hepatomegaly is the cardinal sign of right heart failure in the infant and child. Left heart failure can ultimately lead to right heart failure and therefore, hepatomegaly may also be seen in the child with pulmonary edema from lesions causing left-to-right shunting (pulmonary overcirculation) or left ventricular failure. Splenomegaly may be present in patients with long-standing heart failure (HF), and is also a characteristic of infective endocarditis. Ascites is a feature of chronic right heart failure. Examination of the abdomen may reveal shifting dullness or a fluid wave.

Etoom Y, Ratnapalan S: Evaluation of children with heart murmurs. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2014 Feb;53(2):111–117 [PMID: 23671266].

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

The electrocardiogram (ECG) is essential in the evaluation of the cardiovascular system. The heart rate should first be determined, then the cardiac rhythm (Is the patient in a normal sinus rhythm or other rhythm as evidenced by a P wave with a consistent PR interval before every QRS complex?), and then the axis (Are the P and QRS axes normal for patient age?). Finally, assessment of chamber enlargement, cardiac intervals, and ST segments should be performed.

Age-Related Variations

The ECG evolves with age. The heart rate decreases and intervals increase with age. RV dominance in the newborn changes to LV dominance in the older infant, child, and adult. The normal ECG of the 1-week-old infant is abnormal for a 1-year-old child, and the ECG of a 5-year-old child is abnormal for an adult.

Electrocardiographic Interpretation

Figure 20–1 defines the events recorded by the ECG.

A. Rate

The heart rate varies markedly with age, activity, and state of emotional and physical well-being (see Table 20–5).

B. Rhythm

Sinus rhythm should always be present in healthy children. Extra heart beats representing premature atrial and ventricular contractions are common during childhood, with atrial ectopy predominating in infants and ventricular ectopy during adolescence. Isolated premature beats in patients with normal heart structure and function are usually benign.

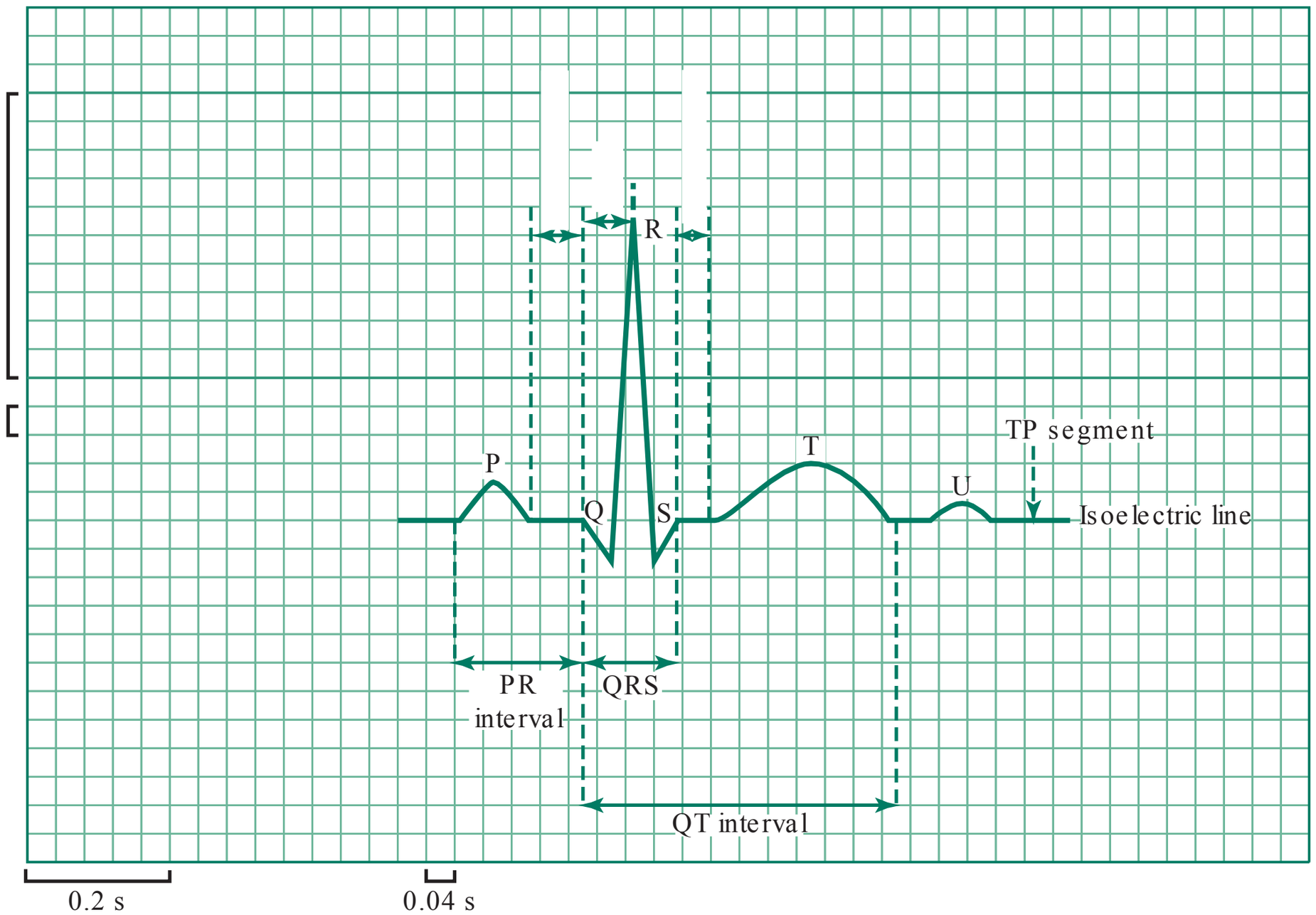
C. Axis

1. P-wave axis—The P wave is generated from atrial contraction beginning in the high right atrium at the site of the sinus node. The impulse proceeds leftward and inferiorly, thus leading to a positive deflection in all left-sided and inferior leads (II, III, and aVF) and negative in lead aVR.

2. QRS axis—The net voltage should be positive in leads I and aVF in children with a normal axis. In infants and young children, RV dominance may persist, leading to a negative deflection in lead I. Several congenital cardiac lesions are associated with alterations in the normal QRS axis (Table 20–6).

D. P Wave

In the pediatric patient, the amplitude of the P wave is normally no greater than 3 mm and the duration no more than 0.08 second. The P wave is best seen in leads II and V_1.



▲**Figure 20–1.** Complexes and intervals of the electrocardiogram.

E. PR Interval

The PR is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the beginning of the QRS complex. It increases with age and with slower rates. The PR interval ranges from a minimum of 0.10 second in infants to a maximum of 0.18 second in older children with slow rates. Rheumatic heart disease, digitalis, β-blockers and calcium channel blockers can prolong the PR interval.

F. QRS Complex

This represents ventricular depolarization, and its amplitude and direction of force (axis) reveal the relative ventricular mass in hypertrophy, hypoplasia, and infarction. Abnormal ventricular conduction (eg, right or left bundle-branch block) is also revealed.

Table 20–6. QRS axis deviation.

Right Axis Deviation	Left Axis Deviation
Tetralogy of Fallot	Atrioventricular septal defect
Transposition of the great arteries	Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum
Total anomalous pulmonary venous return	Tricuspid atresia
Atrial septal defect	

G. QT Interval

This interval is measured from the beginning of the QRS complex to the end of the T wave. The QT duration may be prolonged as a primary condition or secondarily due to drugs or electrolyte imbalances (Table 20–7). The normal QT duration is rate-related and must be corrected using the Bazett formula:

$$QTc = \frac{\text{QT interval (s)}}{\sqrt{\text{R} - \text{R interval (s)}}}$$

The normal QTc is less than or equal to 0.44 second.

H. ST Segment

This segment, lying between the end of the QRS complex and the beginning of the T wave, is affected by drugs, electrolyte imbalances, or myocardial injury.

I. T Wave

The T wave represents myocardial repolarization and is altered by electrolytes, myocardial hypertrophy, and ischemia.

Table 20–7. Causes of QT prolongation.[a]

Cardiac medications
Antiarrhythmics: Class IA (quinidine, procainamide, disopyramide) class III (amiodarone, sotalol)
Inotropic agents: dobutamine, dopamine, epinephrine, isoproterenol
Noncardiac medications
Antibiotics/antivirals: azithromycin, clarithromycin, levofloxacin, amantadine
Antipsychotics: risperidol, thioridazine, lithium, haloperidol
Sedatives: chloral hydrate, methadone
Other: albuterol, levalbuterol, ondansetron, phenytoin, pseudoephedrine
Electrolyte disturbances: hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, hypocalcemia

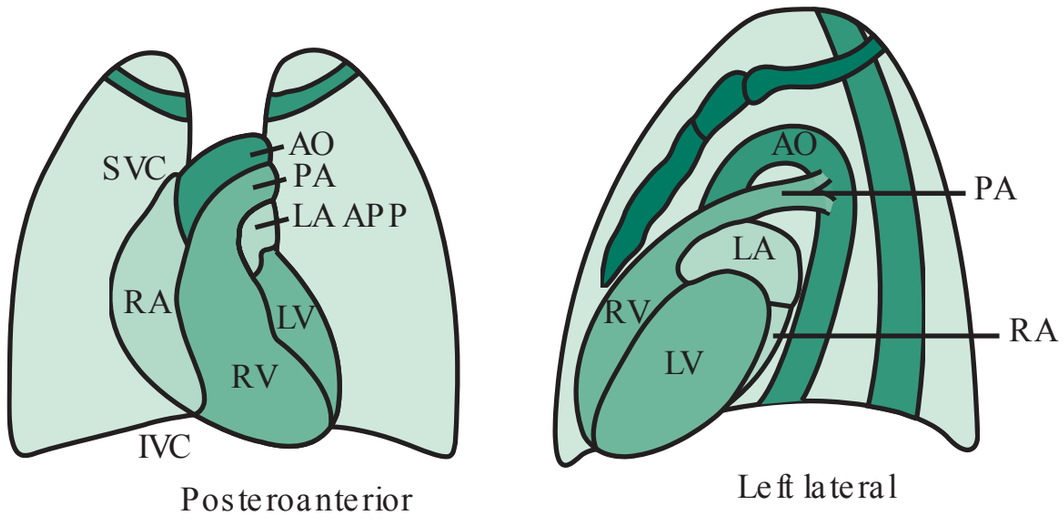
[a]Partial list only.

O'Connor M, McDaniel N, Brady WJ: The pediatric electrocardiogram. Part I: age-related interpretation. Am J Emerg Med 2008 May:26(4):506–512 [PMID: 18416018].

CHEST RADIOGRAPH

Evaluation of the chest radiograph for cardiac disease should focus on (1) position of the heart, (2) position of the abdominal viscera, (3) cardiac size, (4) cardiac configuration, and (5) character of the pulmonary vasculature. The standard posteroanterior and left lateral chest radiographs are used (Figure 20–2).

Cardiac position is either levocardia (heart predominantly in the left chest), dextrocardia (heart predominantly in the right chest), or mesocardia (midline heart). The position of the liver and stomach bubble is either in the normal position (abdominal situs solitus), inverted with the stomach bubble on the right (abdominal situs inversus), or variable with midline liver (abdominal situs ambiguous). The heart appears relatively large in normal newborns at least in part due to a prominent thymic shadow. The heart size should be less than 50% of the chest diameter in children older than age 1 year. The cardiac configuration on chest radiograph may provide useful diagnostic information (Table 20–8). Some congenital cardiac lesions have a characteristic radiographic appearance that suggests the diagnosis but should not be viewed as conclusive (Table 20–9). The pulmonary vasculature should be assessed. The presence of increased or decreased pulmonary blood flow suggests a possible congenital cardiac diagnosis, particularly in the cyanotic infant (Table 20–10).



▲**Figure 20–2.** Position of cardiovascular structures in principal radiograph views. AO, aorta; IVC, inferior vena cava; LA, left atrium; LA APP, left atrial appendage; LV, left ventricle; PA, pulmonary artery; RA, right atrium; RV, right ventricle; SVC, superior vena cava.

Table 20–8. Radiographic changes with cardiac chamber enlargement.

Chamber Enlarged	Change in Cardiac Silhouette on Anteroposterior Film
Right ventricle	Apex of the heart is tipped upward
Left ventricle	Apex of the heart is tipped downward
Left atrium	Double shadow behind cardiac silhouette Increase in subcarinal angle
Right atrium	Prominence of right atrial border of the heart

Laya BF et al: The accuracy of chest radiographs in the detection of congenital heart disease and in the diagnosis of specific congenital cardiac lesions. Pediatr Radiol 2006;36:677–681 [PMID: 16547698].

Dextrocardia

Dextrocardia is a radiographic term used when the heart is on the right side of the chest. When dextrocardia occurs with reversal of position of the other important organs of the

Table 20–9. Lesion-specific chest radiographic findings.

Diagnosis	Chest Radiograph Appearance
D-transposition of the great arteries	Egg on a string
Tetralogy of Fallot	Boot-shaped heart
Unobstructed total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage	Snowman
Obstructed total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage	Small heart with congested lungs
Coarctation	Figure 3 sign + rib notching

Table 20–10. Alterations in pulmonary blood flow in cyanotic cardiac lesions.

Increased Pulmonary Blood Flow	Decreased Pulmonary Blood Flow
Total anomalous pulmonary venous return	Pulmonic stenosis
Tricuspid atresia with large ventricular septal defect	Tricuspid atresia/restrictive ventricular septal defect
Transposition of the great arteries	Tetralogy of Fallot
Truncus arteriosus	Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum

chest and abdomen (eg, liver, lungs, and spleen), the condition is called situs inversus totalis, and the heart is usually normal. When dextrocardia occurs with the other organs normally located (situs solitus), the heart usually has severe defects.

Other situs abnormalities include situs ambiguous with the liver central and anterior in the upper abdomen and the stomach pushed posteriorly; bilateral right-sidedness (asplenia syndrome); and bilateral left-sidedness (polysplenia syndrome). In virtually all cases of situs ambiguous, congenital heart disease is present.

ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Echocardiography is a fundamental tool of pediatric cardiology. Using multiple ultrasound modalities (two-dimensional imaging, Doppler, and M-mode), cardiac anatomy, blood flow, intracardiac pressures, and ventricular function can be assessed. Echocardiography is based on the physical principles of sound waves. The ultrasound frequencies utilized in cardiac imaging range from 2 to 10 million cycles/s.

M-mode echocardiography uses short bursts of ultrasound sent from a transducer. At acoustic interfaces, sound waves are reflected back to the transducer. The time it takes for the sound wave to return to the transducer is measured and the distance to the interface is calculated. That calculated distance is displayed against time, and a one-dimensional image is constructed that demonstrates cardiac motion. **Two-dimensional imaging** extends this technique by sending a rapid series of ultrasound bursts across a 90-degree sector, which allows construction of a two-dimensional image of the heart. **Doppler ultrasound** measures blood flow. The ultrasound transducer sends out a known frequency of sound which reflects off moving red blood cells. The transducer receives the reflected frequency and compares it with the transmitted frequency. The blood flow velocity can be calculated from the measured frequency shift. This information is used to estimate pressure gradients by the simplified Bernouli equation, in which the pressure gradient is equal to four times the calculated velocity (Pressure gradient = $4(V^2)$).

A transthoracic echocardiogram is obtained by placing the transducer on areas of the chest where there is minimal lung interference. At each transducer position, the beam is swept through the heart and a two-dimensional image appears on the screen. Complex intracardiac anatomy and spatial relationships can be described, making possible the accurate diagnosis of congenital heart disease. In addition to structural details, Doppler gives information about intracardiac blood flow and pressure gradients. Commonly used Doppler techniques include color flow imaging, pulsed-wave, and continuous-wave Doppler. Color flow imaging gives general information on the direction and velocity of flow. Pulsed- and continuous-wave Doppler imaging give more precise measurements of blood velocity. The role of M-mode in the ultrasound examination has decreased as other ultrasound modalities have been developed. M-mode is still used to measure LV end-diastolic and end-systolic dimensions and permits calculation of the LV-shortening fraction, a standard estimate of LV function (SF = LV end-diastolic volume – LV systolic volume/LV end-diastolic volume). Three-dimensional echocardiography, tissue Doppler, strain, and strain rate imaging are newer modalities that provide more sophisticated assessment of systolic and diastolic function and can detect early changes in myocardial function.

A typical transthoracic echocardiogram performed by a skilled sonographer takes about 30 minutes, and patients must be still for the examination. Frequently infants and children cannot cooperate for the examination and sedation is required. Transesophageal echocardiography requires general anesthesia in infants and children and is primarily used to guide interventional procedures and surgical repair of congenital heart disease. In cases of difficult imaging windows due to patient size, air interference or when looking for evidence of vegetations on cardiac valves, transesophageal echocardiography may be necessary.

It is important to note that fetal echocardiography plays an important role in the prenatal diagnosis of congenital heart disease. A fetal echocardiogram is recommended if the fetus is considered high risk for the development of congenital heart disease or if there is suspicion for structural heart disease or fetal arrhythmias based on the obstetric fetal ultrasound. In utero management of fetal arrhythmias and post-delivery planning for the fetus with complex heart disease has resulted in improved outcomes for this challenging group of patients.

Donofrio MT et al: Diagnosis and treatment of fetal cardiac disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 2014 May 27;129(21):2183–2242 [PMID: 24763516].

Elkiran O et al: Tissue Doppler, strain, and strain rate measurements assessed by two-dimensional speckle-tracking echocardiography in healthy newborns and infants. Cardiol Young 2013 Feb:1–11 [PMID: 23388082].

MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the heart is valuable for evaluation and noninvasive follow-up of many congenital heart defects. It is particularly useful in imaging the thoracic vessels, which are difficult to image by transthoracic echocardiogram. Cardiac gated imaging allows dynamic evaluation of structure and blood flow of the heart and great vessels. Cardiac MRI provides unique and precise imaging in patients with newly diagnosed or repaired aortic coarctation and defines the aortic dilation in Marfan, Turner, and Loeys-Dietz syndromes. Cardiac MRI can quantify regurgitant lesions such as pulmonary insufficiency (PI) after repair of tetralogy of Fallot (ToF) and can define ventricular function, chamber size, and wall thickness in patients with inadequate echocardiographic images or cardiomyopathies. MRI is especially useful to characterize right ventricular size and function as this chamber is often difficult to image comprehensively by echocardiogram. Because it allows computer manipulation of images of the heart and great vessels, three-dimensional MRI is an ideal noninvasive way of obtaining accurate reconstructions of the heart. General anesthesia is often required to facilitate cardiac MRI performance in children less than 8 years.

Van der Hulst AE et al: Cardiac MRI in postoperative congenital heart disease patients. J Magn Reson Imaging 2012;36(3): 511–528 [PMID: 2290365].

CARDIOPULMONARY STRESS TESTING

Cardiopulmonary stress testing provides objective measurements in children with congenital cardiac lesions to ascertain limitations, develop exercise programs, assess effects of medical or surgical therapies, and determine need for cardiac transplantation. Most children with heart disease are capable of normal activity. Bicycle ergometers or treadmills can be used in children as young as age 5 years. The addition of a metabolic cart enables one to assess whether exercise impairment is secondary to cardiac limitation, pulmonary limitation, deconditioning, or lack of effort. Exercise variables include the ECG, blood pressure response to exercise, oxygen saturation, ventilation, maximal oxygen consumption, and peak workload attained. Stress testing is also employed in children with structurally normal hearts who have complaints of exercise-induced symptoms to rule out cardiac or pulmonary pathology. Significant stress ischemia or dysrhythmias warrant physical restrictions or appropriate therapy. Children with poor performance due to suboptimal conditioning benefit from a planned exercise program.

Table 20–11. Examples of responses to 10 minutes of 100% oxygen in lung disease and heart disease.

	Lung Disease		Heart Disease	
	Room Air	100% O_2	Room Air	100% O_2
Color	Blue → Pink		Blue → Blue	
Oximetry	60% → 99%		60% → 62%	
PaO_2 (mm Hg)	35 → 120		35 → 38	

PaO_2, partial arterial oxygen pressure.
Data from Mahle WT et al: Role of pulse oximetry in examining newborns for congenital heart disease: A scientific statement from the AHA and AAP. Pediatrics 2009;124:823–836.

Miliaresis C et al: Cardiopulmonary stress testing in children and adults with congenital heart disease. Cardiol Rev 2014 Nov-Dec;22(6):275–280 [PMID: 25162333].

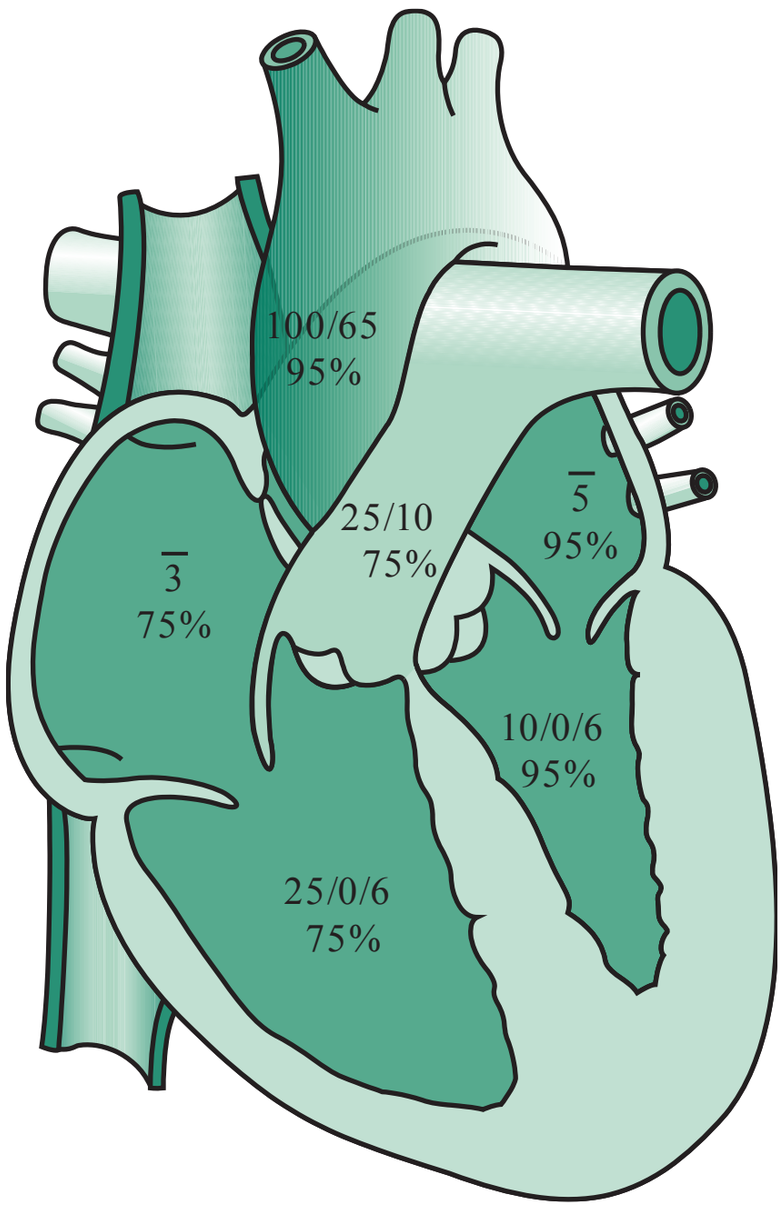
ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES

Quantitating the partial oxygen pressure (PO_2) or O_2 saturation during the administration of 100% oxygen is the most useful method of distinguishing cyanosis produced primarily by heart disease or by lung disease in sick infants. In cyanotic heart disease, the partial arterial oxygen pressure (PaO_2) increases very little when 100% oxygen is administered over the values obtained while breathing room air. However, PaO_2 usually increases significantly when oxygen is administered to a patient with lung disease. Table 20–11 illustrates the responses seen in patients with heart or lung disease during the hyperoxic test. Although the US Department of Health and Human Services recommended newborn screening for critical congenital heart disease in 2010, implementation of comprehensive pulse oximetry screening programs are challenged by variable infrastructure and access to expert interpretation.

Wright J et al: Feasibility of critical congenital heart disease newborn screening at moderate altitude. Pediatrics 2014 Mar;133(3):e561–e569 [PMID: 24567022].

CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION & ANGIOCARDIOGRAPHY

Cardiac catheterization is an invasive method to evaluate anatomic and physiologic conditions in congenital or acquired heart disease. Management decisions may be made based on oximetric, hemodynamic, or angiographic data obtained through a catheterization. In an increasing number of cases, intervention may be performed during a catheterization that may palliate, or even cure, a congenital heart defect without open heart surgery.



▲**Figure 20–3.** Pressures (mm Hg) and oxygen saturation (%) obtained by cardiac catheterization in a healthy child. 3, mean pressure of 3 mm Hg in the right atrium; 5, mean pressure of 5 mm Hg in the left atrium.

Cardiac Catheterization Data

Figure 20–3 shows oxygen saturation (in percent) and pressure (in millimeters of mercury) values obtained at cardiac catheterization from the chambers and great arteries of the heart. These values represent the normal range for a school age child.

A. Oximetry, Shunts, and Cardiac Output

Measurement of oxygen levels throughout the heart and surrounding blood vessels can provide a wealth of information about a patient's physiology. The difference between systemic saturation (in the aorta) and mixed venous saturation (usually in the superior vena cava [SVC]) is usually inversely proportional to the overall cardiac output. Cardiac output is determined by saturation difference across a vascular bed, taking into account oxygen consumption and hemoglobin. This is known as the Fick principle. Cardiac output in a healthy heart varies directly with the body's oxygen consumption and is inversely proportional to hemoglobin. The circulatory system of patients who are anemic usually tries to generate a higher cardiac output to maintain oxygen delivery to the cells of the body.

An increase in saturation across the right side of the heart (anywhere between SVC and pulmonary arteries) represents a left-to-right shunt. If oxygenated blood can mix with venous blood, the saturation rises—the degree of which correlates with the size of the shunt. Conversely, a fall in saturation across the left heart, between the pulmonary veins and the aorta, is abnormal. This represents the addition of deoxygenated blood to oxygenated blood—a right-to-left shunt.

A commonly referenced ratio in pediatric cardiology is the Qp:Qs. In a normal heart, systemic cardiac output (Qs) and pulmonary blood flow (Qp) are equal, or Qp:Qs = 1. If a step-up in saturation is noted across the right heart, suggesting a left-to-right shunt, pulmonary blood flow will exceed systemic blood flow. This can result, in cases of large shunts, in a Qp:Qs of as high as 3:1 or more. This level of shunt is usually poorly tolerated, but small shunts (such as 1.5:1) may be well tolerated for months or years. In cases of right-to-left shunts, Qs will exceed Qp. In these cyanotic patients, the Qp:Qs may be 0.7 or 0.8.

B. Pressures

Pressures should be determined in all chambers and major vessels entered. Systolic pressure in the right ventricle should be equal to the systolic pressure in the pulmonary artery. Likewise, the systolic pressure in the left ventricle should be equal to the systolic pressure of the aorta. The mean pressure in the atria should be nearly equal to (or a point or two lower than) the end-diastolic pressure of the ventricles. If a gradient in pressure exists, an obstruction is present, and the severity of the gradient is one criterion for the necessity of intervention.

For example, a left ventricular systolic pressure in a small child of 140 mm Hg and an aortic systolic pressure of 80 mm Hg, a gradient of 60 mm Hg, would classify as severe aortic valve stenosis. Balloon aortic valvuloplasty would be indicated at the time of the catheterization.

C. Vascular Resistance

In addition to pressure and flow, resistance completes the "concept triad" of congenital heart physiology. Resistance is related to pressure and flow as described in the below equation:

$$\text{Resistance} = \frac{\text{Pressure}}{\text{Flow}}$$

The resistance across a vascular bed can be concretely calculated. Patients with congenital heart disease or pulmonary vascular disease may have elevation in pulmonary vascular resistance, which can adversely impact circulation and heart function. To calculate pulmonary vascular resistance, the pressure drop from the pulmonary arteries to the left atrium is divided by pulmonary blood flow (Qp) to obtain a value in units. For example, a patient with a mean pulmonary artery pressure of 15 mm Hg and a left atrial pressure of 9 mm Hg, with a Qp of 3 L/min/m^2, has a pulmonary vascular resistance of 2 U/m^2.

Normal pulmonary vascular resistance is less than 3 U/m^2. Systemic vascular resistance normally covers a wider range, usually from 10 to 30 U/m^2. The ratio of pulmonary to systemic vascular resistance is usually less than 0.3. High pulmonary resistance, or a high ratio of resistance, denotes abnormal pulmonary vasculature. It often represents increased risk in patients with congenital heart disease or pulmonary hypertension and results in higher risk of death in severely affected patients.

Cardiac catheterization can be performed to evaluate the effects of pharmaceutical therapy. An example of this use of catheterization is monitoring changes in pulmonary vascular resistance during the administration of nitric oxide or prostacyclin in a child with primary pulmonary hypertension.

Angiography

In the past, angiography was a mainstay of the initial diagnostic methods for congenital heart disease. It is still used for diagnostic purposes in selected cases, but currently is used more frequently to plan interventions or evaluate postsurgical anatomy that is poorly seen by noninvasive methods. Injection of contrast liquid via a well-positioned catheter can illuminate detailed intracardiac and intravascular anatomy more clearly than any other method. Cardiac function can be observed, and anatomic abnormalities may be easily identified. In a growing number of centers, three-dimensional reconstruction of angiograms can provide exquisite delineation of cardiac and vascular structures.

Interventional Cardiac Catheterization

Interventional cardiac catheterization procedures are performed to occlude lesions such as a patent ductus arteriosus, atrial septal defect, or ventricular septal defect. Obstruction of heart valves can be addressed through balloon valvuloplasty. Intervention may also be performed on vascular obstruction through angioplasty or stent placement in pulmonary arteries or the aorta. Systemic and pulmonary veins can be modified in a similar fashion, unfortunately with often minimal success in the latter. Devices are now available to allow patients to undergo replacement of failing heart valves without open heart surgery, and an increasing armamentarium of devices are becoming available for treatment of other defects and abnormal vasculature.

With the progression of improved noninvasive imaging, fewer diagnostic cardiac catheterization studies are performed today. The number of interventional procedures, however, is on the rise. Although the risks of cardiac catheterization are very low for elective studies in older children (< 1%), the risk of major complications in distressed or small patients is higher. Interventional procedures, particularly in unstable babies and children, increase these risks further. Increased use of registries is currently being employed to better understand efficacy rates and risks of these procedures, with the hope of optimizing the care of infants and children in the catheterization laboratory.

Backes CH et al: Low weight as an independent risk factor for adverse events during cardiac catheterization of infants. Catheter Cardiovasc Interv 2013 2013 Nov 1; 82(5):786–794 [PMID: 23436647]

PEr INATAL & NEONATAL CIr CULATION

At birth, two events affect the cardiovascular and pulmonary system: (1) the umbilical cord is clamped, removing the placenta from the maternal circulation; and (2) breathing commences. As a result, marked changes in the circulation occur. During fetal life, the placenta offers low resistance to blood flow. In contrast, the pulmonary arterioles are markedly constricted and there is high resistance to blood flow in the lungs. Therefore, the majority of blood entering the right side of the heart travels from the right atrium into the left atrium across the foramen ovale (right-to-left shunt). In addition, most of the blood that makes its way into the right ventricle and then pulmonary arteries will flow from the pulmonary artery into the aorta through the ductus arteriosus (right-to-left shunt). Subsequently, pulmonary blood flow accounts for only 7%–10% of the combined in utero ventricular output. At birth, pulmonary blood flow dramatically increases with the fall in pulmonary vascular resistance and pressure. The causes of prolonged high pulmonary vascular resistance include physical factors (lack of an adequate air-liquid interface or ventilation), low oxygen tension, and vasoactive mediators such as elevated endothelin peptide levels or leukotrienes. Clamping the umbilical cord produces an immediate increase in resistance to flow in the systemic circuit.

As breathing commences, the PO_2 of the small pulmonary arterioles increases, resulting in a decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance. Increased oxygen tension, rhythmic lung distention, and production of nitric oxide as well as prostacyclin play major roles in the fall in pulmonary vascular resistance at birth. The pulmonary vascular resistance falls below that of the systemic circuit, resulting in a reversal in direction of blood flow across the ductus arteriosus and marked increase in pulmonary blood flow.

Functional closure of the ductus arteriosus begins shortly after birth. The ductus arteriosus usually remains patent for 1–5 days. During the first hour after birth, a small right-to-left shunt is present (as in the fetus). However, after 1 hour, bidirectional shunting occurs, with the left-to-right direction predominating. In most cases, right-to-left shunting disappears completely by 8 hours. In patients with severe hypoxia (eg, in the syndrome of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn), pulmonary vascular resistance remains high, resulting in a continued right-to-left shunt. Although flow through the ductus arteriosus usually is gone by 5 days of life, the vessel does not close anatomically for 7–14 days.

In fetal life, the foramen ovale serves as a one-way valve shunting blood from the inferior vena cava through the right atrium into the left atrium. At birth, because of the changes in the pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance and the increase in the quantity of blood returning from the pulmonary veins to the left atrium, the left atrial pressure rises above that of the right atrium. This functionally closes the flap of the foramen ovale, preventing flow of blood across the septum. The foramen ovale remains probe patent in 10%–15% of adults.

Persistent pulmonary hypertension is a clinical syndrome of full-term infants. The neonate develops tachypnea, cyanosis, and pulmonary hypertension during the first 8 hours after delivery. These infants have massive right-to-left ductal and/or foramen shunting for 3–7 days because of high pulmonary vascular resistance. Progressive hypoxia and acidosis will cause early death unless the pulmonary resistance can be lowered. Postmortem findings include increased thickness of the pulmonary arteriolar media. Increased alveolar PO_2 with hyperventilation, alkalosis, paralysis, surfactant administration, high-frequency ventilation, and cardiac inotropes can usually reverse this process. Inhaled nitric oxide selectively dilates pulmonary vasculature, produces a sustained improvement in oxygenation, and has resulted in improved outcomes.

In the normal newborn, pulmonary vascular resistance and pulmonary arterial pressure continue to fall during the first weeks of life as a result of demuscularization of the pulmonary arterioles. Adult levels of pulmonary resistance and pressure are normally achieved by 4–6 weeks of age. It is at this time typically that signs of pulmonary overcirculation associated with left-to-right shunt lesions (VSD or atrioventricular septal defect [AVSD]) appear.

Rudolph AM: The fetal circulation and congenital heart disease. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2010;95(2):F132–F136 [PMID: 19321508].

HEART FAILURE

Heart failure (HF) is the clinical condition in which the heart fails to meet the circulatory and metabolic needs of the body. Right and left heart failure can result from volume or pressure overload of the respective ventricle or an intrinsic abnormality of the ventricular myocardium. Causes of right ventricular volume overload include an ASD, pulmonary insufficiency, or anomalous pulmonary venous return. Left ventricular volume overload occurs with any left-to-right shunting lesion (eg, VSD, PDA), aortic insufficiency, or a systemic arteriovenous malformation. Causes of right ventricular failure as a result of pressure overload include pulmonary hypertension, valvar pulmonary stenosis, or severe branch pulmonary artery stenosis. Left ventricular pressure overload results from left heart obstructive lesions such as aortic stenosis (subvalvar, valvar, or supravalvar) or coarctation of the aorta. Abnormalities of the right ventricular myocardium that can result in right heart failure include Ebstein anomaly (atrialization of the right ventricle) and arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (a genetic disorder where the right ventricular myocardium is replaced by fat). Abnormalities of the left ventricular myocardium are more common and include dilated cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. As a result of elevated left atrial pressure and impaired relaxation of the left ventricle, left heart failure can lead to right heart failure. Other causes of HF in infants include AV septal defect, coronary artery anomalies, and chronic atrial tachyarrhythmias. Metabolic, mitochondrial, and neuromuscular disorders with associated cardiomyopathy present at various ages depending on the etiology. HF due to acquired conditions such as myocarditis can occur at any age. Children with HF may present with irritability, diaphoresis with feeds, fatigue, exercise intolerance, or evidence of pulmonary congestion (see Table 20–1).

Treatment of Heart Failure

The therapy of HF should be directed toward the underlying cause as well as the symptoms. Regardless of the etiology, neurohormonal activation occurs early when ventricular systolic dysfunction is present. Plasma catecholamine levels (eg, norepinephrine) increase causing tachycardia, diaphoresis, and, by activating the renin-angiotensin system, peripheral vasoconstriction and salt and water retention. Treatment of pediatric HF is without much evidence basis. Therapies should be aimed at improving cardiac performance by targeting the three determinants of cardiac performance: (1) preload, (2) afterload, and (3) contractility.

Inpatient Management of Heart Failure

Patients with cardiac decompensation may require hospitalization for initiation or augmentation of HF therapy. Table 20–12 demonstrates intravenous inotropic agents used to augment cardiac output and their relative effect on heart rate, systemic vascular resistance, and cardiac index. The drug used will depend in part on the cause of the HF.

A. Inotropic and Mechanical Support

1. Afterload reduction

a. Milrinone—This phosphodiesterase-3 inhibitor increases cyclic adenosine monophosphate, thereby improving the inotropic state of the heart. In addition to a dose-dependent increase in cardiac contractility, milrinone is a systemic and pulmonary vasodilator and thus an effective agent in both right and left ventricular systolic dysfunction. Milrinone reduces the incidence of low cardiac output syndrome following open-heart surgery. The usual dosage range is 0.25–0.75 mcg/kg/min.

b. Nitroglycerin—Nitroglycerin functions primarily as a dilator of venous capacitance vessels and causes a reduction of right and left atrial pressure. Systemic blood pressure may also fall, and reflex tachycardia may occur. Nitroglycerin is

Table 20–12. Intravenous inotropic agents.

Drug	Dose	Renal Perfusion	Heart Rate	Cardiac Index	SVR
Dopamine	2–5 mcg/kg/min 5–10 > 10	↑ via vasodilation ↑/↓ depending on balance of ↑ cardiac index and ↑ SVR ↓	0 ↑ ↑	0 ↑ ↑	0 ↑↓ ↑
Dobutamine	2.5–10 mcg/kg/min	↑ via ↑ cardiac index	↑	↑	↑↓
Epinephrine	0.2–2.0 mcg/kg/min	↓	↑	↑	↓
Norepinephrine	0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min	↓	0	↑	↑↑
Isoproterenol	0.05–2.0 mcg/kg/min	0	↑↑	↑	↓↓

SVR, systemic vascular resistance.

used to improve coronary blood flow and may be especially useful when cardiac output is reduced because of coronary under-perfusion following congenital heart surgery. The usual intravenous dosage range is 1–3 mcg/kg/min.

2. Enhancement of contractility

a. Dopamine—This naturally occurring catecholamine increases myocardial contractility primarily via cardiac β-adrenergic activation. Dopamine also directly acts on renal dopamine receptors to improve renal perfusion. The usual dose range for HF is 3–10 mcg/kg/min.

b. Dobutamine—This synthetic catecholamine increases myocardial contractility secondary to cardiospecific β-adrenergic activation and produces little peripheral vasoconstriction. Dobutamine does not usually cause marked tachycardia, which is a distinct advantage. However, the drug does not selectively improve renal perfusion as does dopamine. The usual dose range is essentially the same as for dopamine.

3. Mechanical circulatory support—Mechanical support is indicated in children with severe, refractory myocardial failure secondary to cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or following cardiac surgery. Mechanical support is used for a limited time while cardiac function improves or as a bridge to cardiac transplantation.

a. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ecmo)—ECMO is a temporary means of providing oxygenation, carbon dioxide removal, and hemodynamic support to patients with cardiac or pulmonary failure refractory to conventional therapy. The blood removed from the patient via a catheter positioned in the venous system (eg, superior vena cava or right atrium) passes through a membrane oxygenator and then is delivered back to the patient through a catheter in the arterial system (eg, aorta or common carotid artery). The patient is monitored closely for improvement in cardiac contractility. Risks are significant and include severe internal and external bleeding, infection, thrombosis, and pump failure.

b. Ventricular assist devices—Use of ventricular assist devices is increasing in children as device development has progressed. These devices allow for less invasive hemodynamic support than ECMO. A cannula is usually positioned in the apex of the ventricle and removes blood from the ventricle using a battery-operated pump. Blood is then returned to the patient through a separate cannula positioned in the aorta or pulmonary artery, depending on the ventricle being supported. Biventricular support can be done if necessary. Ventricular assist carries lower risk of pump failure than ECMO, but the risk of infection, thrombosis, and bleeding complications remains.

Outpatient Management of Heart Failure

A. Medications

1. Afterload-reducing agents—Oral afterload-reducing agents improve cardiac output by decreasing systemic vascular resistance. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (captopril, enalapril, and lisinopril) are first-line therapy in children with HF requiring long-term treatment. These agents block angiotensin II–mediated systemic vasoconstriction and are particularly useful in children with structurally normal hearts but reduced LV myocardial function (eg, myocarditis or dilated cardiomyopathies [DCMs]).

2. β-Blockade—Although clearly beneficial in adults with HF, a randomized, controlled study of the use of a β-blocker (carvedilol) in children with HF did not demonstrate any significant improvement compared to placebo. However, β-blockers may still be useful adjunctive therapy in some children with refractory HF already taking ACE inhibitors. In the setting of HF, excessive circulating catecholamines are present due to activation of the sympathetic nervous system. Although beneficial acutely, this compensatory response over time produces myocardial fibrosis, myocyte hypertrophy, and myocyte apoptosis that contribute to the progression of HF. β-Blockers (eg, carvedilol and metoprolol) antagonize this sympathetic activation and may offset these

deleterious effects. Side effects of β-blockers include bradycardia, hypotension, and worsening HF in some patients.

3. Diuretics—Diuretic therapy may be necessary in HF to maintain the euvolemic state and control symptoms related to pulmonary or hepatic congestion.

a. Furosemide—This rapid-acting loop diuretic may be given intravenously or orally. It removes large amounts of potassium and chloride from the body, producing hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis when used chronically. Electrolytes should be monitored during long-term therapy.

b. Thiazides—Thiazides are distal tubular diuretics used to complement furosemide in severe cases of HF.

c. Spironolactone—Spironolactone is a potassium sparing aldosterone inhibitor. It is used frequently in conjunction with furosemide or thiazides for its enhanced diuretic function. Because it spares potassium, supplemental potassium may be avoided. Spironolactone has benefit in adults with HF regardless of its diuretic effect as aldosterone is associated with the development of fibrosis, sodium retention, and vascular dysfunction. This effect has not been proven in children.

4. Digitalis—Digitalis is a cardiac glycoside with a positive inotropic effect on the heart and an associated decrease in systemic vascular resistance. The preparation of digitalis used in clinical practice is digoxin. Large studies in adult patients with HF have not demonstrated decreased mortality of HF with digoxin use, but treatment is associated with reduced hospitalization rates for HF exacerbations. There are no controlled studies in children.

a. Digitalis toxicity—Any dysrhythmia that occurs during digoxin therapy should be attributed to the drug until proven otherwise. Ventricular bigeminy and first-, second-, or third-degree AV block are characteristic of digoxin toxicity. A trough level should be obtained if digoxin toxicity is suspected.

b. Digitalis poisoning—This acute emergency must be treated without delay. Digoxin poisoning most commonly occurs in toddlers who have taken their parents' or grandparents' medications. The child's stomach should be emptied immediately by gastric lavage even if several hours have passed since ingestion. Patients who have ingested massive amounts of digoxin should receive large doses of activated charcoal. In advanced heart block, atropine or temporary ventricular pacing may be needed. Digoxin immune Fab can be used to reverse potentially life-threatening intoxication. Antiarrhythmic agents may be useful.

Kirk R et al. The International Society of Heart and Lung Transplantation Guidelines for the Management of Pediatric Heart Failure: Executive Summary. J Heart Lung Transplant 2014 Sept;33(9):888–909 [PMID: 25110323].

Morales DL et al: Use of ventricular assist devices in children across the United States: analysis of 7.5 million pediatric hospitalizations. Ann Thorac Surg 2010 Oct;90(4):1313–1318; discussion 1318–1319 [PMID: 20868835].

GENETIC BASIS OF CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

Environmental factors such as maternal diabetes, alcohol consumption, progesterone use, viral infection, and other maternal teratogen exposure are associated with an increased incidence of cardiac malformations. However, the importance of genetics as a cause of congenital heart disease is becoming more evident as advances in the field occur. Microdeletion in the long arm of chromosome 22 (22q11) is associated with DiGeorge syndrome. These children often have conotruncal abnormalities such as truncus arteriosus, tetralogy of Fallot, double-outlet RV, or interrupted aortic arch. Alagille, Noonan, Holt-Oram, and Williams syndromes and the Trisomies 13, 18, and 21 are all commonly associated with congenital heart lesions. Understanding these associations as well as further targeted study investigating the genetic basis of other cardiac lesions will offer opportunities for early diagnosis, gene therapy, and recurrence risk counseling for families.

Pierpont ME et al: Genetic basis for congenital heart defects: current knowledge: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Congenital Cardiac Defects Committee, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young: endorsed by the American Academy of Pediatrics. Circulation 2007;115: 3015–3038 [PMID: 17519398].

ACYANOTIC CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

DEFECTS IN SEPTATION

1. Atrial Septal Defect

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fixed, widely split S_2, RV heave.
- Grade I–III/VI systolic ejection murmur at the pulmonary area.
- Large shunts cause a diastolic flow murmur at the lower left sternal border (increased flow across the tricuspid valve).
- ECG shows rsR′ in lead V_1.
- Frequently asymptomatic.

» General Considerations

Atrial septal defect (ASD) is an opening in the atrial septum permitting the shunting of blood between the atria. There are three major types: ostium secundum, ostium primum, and sinus venosus. Ostium secundum is the most common type and represents an embryologic deficiency in the septum secundum or too large of a central hole in the septum primum. Ostium primum defect is associated with atrioventricular septal defects. The sinus venosus defect is frequently associated with abnormal pulmonary venous return, as the location of the sinus venosus is intimately related to the right upper pulmonary vein.

Ostium secundum ASD occurs in 10% of patients with congenital heart disease and is two times more common in females than in males. The defect is most often sporadic but may be familial or have a genetic basis (Holt-Oram syndrome). After the third decade, atrial arrhythmias or pulmonary vascular disease may develop. Irreversible pulmonary hypertension resulting in cyanosis as atrial level shunting becomes right-to-left and ultimately right heart failure can occur and is a life-limiting process (Eisenmenger syndrome).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most infants and children with an ASD have no cardiovascular symptoms. Older children and adults can present with exercise intolerance, easy fatigability, or, rarely, heart failure. The direction of flow across the ASD is determined by the compliance of the ventricles. Because the right ventricle is normally more compliant, shunting across the ASD is left-to-right as blood follows the path of least resistance. Therefore, cyanosis does not occur unless RV dysfunction occurs, usually as a result of pulmonary hypertension, leading to reversal of the shunt across the defect.

Peripheral pulses are normal and equal. The heart is usually hyperactive, with an RV heave felt best at the mid to lower left sternal border. S_2 at the pulmonary area is widely split and often fixed. In the absence of associated pulmonary hypertension, the pulmonary component is normal in intensity. A grade I–III/VI ejection-type systolic murmur is heard best at the left sternal border in the second intercostal space. This murmur is caused by increased flow across the pulmonic valve, not flow across the ASD. A mid-diastolic murmur is often heard in the fourth intercostal space at the left sternal border. This murmur is caused by increased flow across the tricuspid valve during diastole. The presence of this murmur suggests high flow with a pulmonary-to-systemic blood flow ratio greater than 2:1.

B. Imaging

Radiographs may show cardiac enlargement. The main pulmonary artery may be dilated and pulmonary vascular markings increased in large defects owing to the increased pulmonary blood flow.

C. Electrocardiography

The usual ECG shows right axis deviation. In the right precordial leads, an rsR′ pattern is usually present. A mutation in the cardiac homeobox gene (NKX2-5) is associated with an ASD, and AV block would be seen on the ECG.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography shows a dilated right atrium and RV. Direct visualization of the exact anatomic location of the ASD by two-dimensional echocardiography, and demonstration of a left-to-right shunt through the defect by color-flow Doppler, confirms the diagnosis and has eliminated the need for cardiac catheterization prior to surgical or catheter closure of the defect. Assessment of all pulmonary veins should be made to rule out associated anomalous pulmonary venous return.

E. Cardiac Catheterization

Although cardiac catheterization is rarely needed for diagnostic purposes, transcatheter closure of an ostium secundum ASD is now the preferred method of treatment.

If a catheterization is performed, oximetry shows a significant step-up in oxygen saturation from the superior vena cava to the right atrium. The pulmonary artery pressure and pulmonary vascular resistance are usually normal. The Qp: Qs may vary from 1.5:1 to 4:1.

» Treatment

Surgical or catheterization closure is generally recommended for symptomatic children with a large atrial level defect and associated right heart dilation. In the asymptomatic child with a large hemodynamically significant defect, closure is performed electively at age 1–3 years. Most defects are amenable to nonoperative device closure during cardiac catheterization, but the defect must have adequate tissue rims on all sides on which to anchor the device. The mortality for surgical closure is less than 1%. When closure is performed by age 3 years, late complications of RV dysfunction and dysrhythmias are avoided.

» Course & Prognosis

Patients usually tolerate an ASD well in the first two decades of life, and the defect often goes unnoticed until middle or late adulthood. Pulmonary hypertension and reversal of the shunt are rare late complications. Infective endocarditis (IE) is uncommon. Spontaneous closure occurs, most frequently in children with a defect less than 4 mm in diameter, therefore outpatient follow-up is recommended. Exercise

tolerance and oxygen consumption in surgically corrected children are generally normal, and restriction of physical activity is unnecessary.

Moore J et al: Transcatheter device closure of atrial septal defects: a safety review. JACC Cardiovasc Interv 2013 May;6(5):433–442 [PMID: 23702008].

2. Ventricular Septal Defect

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Holosystolic murmur at lower left sternal border with RV heave.
- Presentation and course depend on size of defect and the pulmonary vascular resistance.
- Clinical features are failure to thrive, tachypnea, and diaphoresis with feeds.
- Left-to-right shunt with normal pulmonary vascular resistance.
- Large defects may cause Eisenmenger syndrome if not repaired early.

» General Considerations

Ventricular septal defect (VSD) is the most common congenital heart malformation, accounting for about 30% of all congenital heart disease. Defects in the ventricular septum occur both in the membranous portion of the septum (most common) and the muscular portion. VSDs follow one of four courses:

A. Small, Hemodynamically Insignificant Ventricular Septal Defects

Between 80% and 85% of VSDs are small (< 3 mm in diameter) at birth and will close spontaneously. In general, small defects in the muscular interventricular septum will close sooner than those in the membranous septum. In most cases, a small VSD never requires surgical closure. Fifty percent of small VSDs will close by age 2 years, and 90% by age 6 years, with most of the remaining closing during the school years.

B. Moderate-Sized Ventricular Septal Defects

Asymptomatic patients with moderate-sized VSDs (3–5 mm in diameter) account for 3%–5% of children with VSDs. In general, these children do not have clear indicators for surgical closure. Historically, in those who had cardiac catheterization, the ratio of pulmonary to systemic blood flow is usually less than 2:1, and serial cardiac catheterizations demonstrate that the shunts get progressively smaller. If the patient is asymptomatic and without evidence of pulmonary hypertension, these defects can be followed serially as some close spontaneously over time.

C. Large Ventricular Septal Defects with Normal Pulmonary Vascular Resistance

These defects are usually 6–10 mm in diameter. Unless they become markedly smaller within a few months after birth, they often require surgery. The timing of surgery depends on the clinical situation. Many infants with large VSDs and normal pulmonary vascular resistance develop symptoms of failure to thrive, tachypnea, diaphoresis with feeds by age 3–6 months, and require correction at that time. Surgery before age 2 years in patients with large VSDs essentially eliminates the risk of pulmonary vascular disease.

D. Large Ventricular Septal Defects with Pulmonary Vascular Obstructive Disease

The direction of flow across a VSD is determined by the resistance in the systemic and pulmonary vasculature, explaining why flow is usually left-to-right. In large VSDs, ventricular pressures are equalized, resulting in increased pulmonary artery pressure. In addition, shear stress caused by increased volume in the pulmonary circuit causes increased resistance over time. The vast majority of patients with inoperable pulmonary hypertension develop the condition progressively. The combined data of the multicenter National History Study indicate that almost all cases of irreversible pulmonary hypertension can be prevented by surgical repair of a large VSD before age 2 years.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with small or moderate left-to-right shunts usually have no cardiovascular symptoms. Patients with large left-to-right shunts are usually ill early in infancy. These infants have frequent respiratory infections and gain weight slowly. Dyspnea, diaphoresis, and fatigue are common. These symptoms can develop as early as 1–6 months of age. Older children may experience exercise intolerance. Over time, in children and adolescents with persistent large left-to-right shunt, the pulmonary vascular bed undergoes structural changes, leading to increased pulmonary vascular resistance and reversal of the shunt from left-to-right to right-to-left (Eisenmenger syndrome). Cyanosis will then be present.

1. Small left-to-right shunt—No lifts, heaves, or thrills are present. The first sound at the apex is normal, and the

second sound at the pulmonary area is split physiologically. A grade II–IV/VI, medium- to high-pitched, harsh pansystolic murmur is heard best at the left sternal border in the third and fourth intercostal spaces. The murmur radiates over the entire precordium. No diastolic murmurs are heard.

2. Moderate left-to-right shunt—Slight prominence of the precordium with moderate LV heave is evident. A systolic thrill may be palpable at the lower left sternal border between the third and fourth intercostal spaces. The second sound at the pulmonary area is most often split but may be single. A grade III–IV/VI, harsh pansystolic murmur is heard best at the lower left sternal border in the fourth intercostal space. A mitral diastolic flow murmur indicates that pulmonary blood flow and subsequently the pulmonary venous return are significantly increased by the large shunt.

3. Large ventricular septal defects with pulmonary hypertension—The precordium is prominent, and the sternum bulges. Both LV and RV heaves are palpable. S_2 is palpable in the pulmonary area. A thrill may be present at the lower left sternal border. S_2 is usually single or narrowly split, with accentuation of the pulmonary component. The murmur ranges from grade I to IV/VI and is usually harsh and pansystolic. Occasionally, when the defect is large or ventricular pressures approach equivalency, a murmur is difficult to hear. A diastolic flow murmur may be heard, depending on the size of the shunt.

B. Imaging

In patients with small shunts, the chest radiograph may be normal. Patients with large shunts have significant cardiac enlargement involving both the left and right ventricles and the left atrium. The main pulmonary artery segment may be dilated. The pulmonary vascular markings are increased.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG is normal in small left-to-right shunts. Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) usually occurs in patients with large left-to-right shunts and normal pulmonary vascular resistance. Combined ventricular enlargement occurs in patients with pulmonary hypertension caused by increased flow, increased resistance, or both. Pure RV hypertrophy occurs in patients with pulmonary hypertension secondary to pulmonary vascular obstruction induced by long standing left to right shunt (Eisenmenger syndrome).

D. Echocardiography

Two-dimensional echocardiography can reveal the size of a VSD and identify its anatomic location. Multiple defects can be detected by combining two-dimensional and color-flow imaging. Doppler can further evaluate the VSD by estimating the pressure difference between the left and right ventricles. A pressure difference greater than 50 mmHg in the left ventricle compared to the right ventricle confirms the absence of severe pulmonary hypertension.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

The ability to describe the VSD anatomy and estimate the pulmonary artery pressures on the basis of the gradient across the VSD allows for the vast majority of isolated defects to be repaired without cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography. Catheterization is indicated in those patients with increased pulmonary vascular resistance. Angiocardiographic examination defines the number, size, and location of the defects.

» Treatment

A. Medical Management

Patients who develop symptoms can be managed with anticongestive treatment, particularly diuretics and systemic afterload reduction, prior to surgery or if it is expected that the defect will close over time.

B. Surgical Treatment

Patients with cardiomegaly, poor growth, poor exercise tolerance, or other clinical abnormalities who have a significant shunt (> 2:1) typically undergo surgical repair at age 3–6 months. A synthetic or pericardial patch is used for primary closure. In most centers, these children have surgery before age 1 year. As a result, Eisenmenger syndrome has been virtually eliminated. The surgical mortality rate for VSD closure is below 2%.

Transcatheter closure of muscular VSDs is also a possibility. Perimembranous VSDs have also been closed in children during catheterization, but a high incidence of complete heart block after placement of the occluding device has slowed the acceptance of this approach.

» Course & Prognosis

Significant late dysrhythmias are uncommon. Functional exercise capacity and oxygen consumption are usually normal, and physical restrictions are unnecessary. Adults with corrected defects have normal quality of life.

Butera G et al: Transcatheter closure of perimembranous ventricular septal defects: early and long-term results. J Am Coll Cardiol 2007;50:1189–1195 [PMID: 17868812].

Sondheimer HM, Rahimi-Alangi K: Current management of ventricular septal defect. Cardiol Young 2006;16(Suppl 3):131–135 [PMID: 17378052].

3. Atrioventricular Septal Defect

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Murmur often inaudible in neonates.
- Loud pulmonary component of S_2.
- Common in infants with Down syndrome.
- ECG with extreme left axis deviation.

» General Considerations

Atrioventricular septal defect (AVSD) results from incomplete fusion of the embryonic endocardial cushions. The endocardial cushions help to form the "crux" of the heart, which includes the lower portion of the atrial septum, the membranous portion of the ventricular septum, and the septal leaflets of the tricuspid and mitral valves. AVSD accounts for about 4% of all congenital heart disease. Sixty percent of children with Down syndrome have congenital heart disease, and of these, 35%–40% have an AVSD.

AVSDs are defined as partial or complete. The physiology of the defect is determined by the location of the AV valves. If the valves are located in the midportion of the defect (complete AVSD), both atrial and ventricular components of the septal defect are present and the left- and right-sided AV valves share a common ring or orifice. In the partial form, there is a low insertion of the AV valves, resulting in a primum ASD without a ventricular defect component. In partial AVSD, there are two separate AV valve orifices and usually a cleft in the left-sided valve.

Partial AVSD behaves like an isolated ASD with variable amounts of regurgitation through the cleft in the left AV valve. The complete form causes large left-to-right shunts at both the ventricular and atrial levels with variable degrees of AV valve regurgitation. If there is increased pulmonary vascular resistance, the shunts may be bidirectional. Bidirectional shunting is more common in Down syndrome or in older children who have not undergone repair.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The partial form may produce symptoms similar to ostium secundum ASD. Patients with complete AVSD usually have symptoms such as failure to thrive, tachypnea, diaphoresis with feeding, or recurrent bouts of pneumonia.

In the neonate with the complete form, the murmur may be inaudible due to relatively equal systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). After 4–6 weeks, as PVR drops, a nonspecific systolic murmur develops. The murmur is usually not as harsh as that of an isolated VSD. There is both right- and left-sided cardiac enlargement. S_2 is loud, and a pronounced diastolic flow murmur may be heard at the apex and the lower left sternal border.

If severe pulmonary vascular obstructive disease is present, there is usually dominant RV enlargement. S_2 is palpable at the pulmonary area and no thrill is felt. A nonspecific short systolic murmur is heard at the lower left sternal border. No diastolic flow murmurs are heard. If a right-to-left shunt is present, cyanosis will be evident.

B. Imaging

Cardiac enlargement is always present in the complete form and pulmonary vascular markings are increased. Often, only the right heart size may be increased in the partial form, although a severe mitral valve cleft can rarely lead to left heart enlargement as well.

C. Electrocardiography

In all forms of AVSD, there is extreme left axis deviation with a counterclockwise loop in the frontal plane. The ECG is an important diagnostic tool. Only 5% of isolated VSDs have this ECG abnormality. First-degree heart block occurs in over 50% of patients. Right, left, or combined ventricular hypertrophy is present depending on the particular defect and the presence or absence of pulmonary hypertension.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography is the diagnostic test of choice. The anatomy can be well visualized by two-dimensional echocardiography. Both AV valves are at the same level, compared with the normal heart in which the tricuspid valve is more apically positioned. The size of the atrial and ventricular components of the defect can be measured. AV valve regurgitation can be detected. The LV outflow tract is elongated (gooseneck appearance), which produces systemic outflow obstruction in some patients.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Cardiac catheterization is not routinely used to evaluate AVSD but may be used to assess pulmonary artery pressures and resistance in the older infant with Down syndrome, as this patient group is predisposed to early-onset pulmonary hypertension. Increased oxygen saturation in the RV or the right atrium identifies the level of the shunt. Angiocardiography reveals the characteristic gooseneck deformity of the LV outflow tract in the complete form.

» Treatment

Spontaneous closure of this type of defect does not occur and therefore surgery is required. In the partial form,

surgery carries a low mortality rate (1%–2%), but patients require follow-up because of late-occurring LV outflow tract obstruction and mitral valve dysfunction. The complete form carries a higher mortality rate. Complete correction in the first year of life, prior to the onset of irreversible pulmonary hypertension, is obligatory.

Craig B: Atrioventricular septal defect: from fetus to adult. Heart 2006;92:1879–1885 [PMID: 17105897].

PATENT (PERSISTENT) DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Continuous machinery type murmur.
- Bounding peripheral pulses if large ductus present.
- Presentation and course depends on size of the ductus and the pulmonary vascular resistance.
- Clinical features of a large ductus are failure to thrive, tachypnea, and diaphoresis with feeds.
- Left-to-right shunt with normal pulmonary vascular resistance.

» General Considerations

PDA is the persistence of the normal fetal vessel joining the pulmonary artery to the aorta. It closes spontaneously in normal-term infants at 1–5 days of age. PDA accounts for 10% of all congenital heart disease. The incidence of PDA is higher in infants born at altitudes over 10,000 ft. It is twice as common in females as in males. The frequency of PDA in preterm infants weighing less than 1500 g ranges from 20% to 60%. The defect may occur as an isolated abnormality or with associated lesions, commonly coarctation of the aorta and VSD. Patency of the ductus arteriosus may be necessary in some patients with complex forms of congenital heart disease (eg, hypoplastic left heart syndrome [HLHS], pulmonary atresia). Prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2) is a product of arachidonic acid metabolism and continuous intravenous infusion maintains ductal patency.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical findings and course depend on the size of the shunt and the degree of pulmonary hypertension.

1. Moderate to large patent ductus arteriosus—Pulses are bounding, and pulse pressure is widened due to diastolic runoff through the ductus. S_1 is normal and S_2 is usually narrowly split. In large shunts, S_2 may have a paradoxical split (eg, S_2 narrows on inspiration and widens on expiration). Paradoxical splitting is caused by volume overload of the LV and prolonged ejection of blood from this chamber.

The murmur is characteristic. It is a rough machinery murmur maximal at the second left intercostal space. It begins shortly after S_1, rises to a peak at S_2, and passes through the S_2 into diastole, where it becomes a decrescendo murmur and fades before the S_1. The murmur tends to radiate well to the anterior lung fields but relatively poorly to the posterior lung fields. A diastolic flow murmur is often heard at the apex.

2. Patent ductus arteriosus with increased pulmonary vascular resistance—Flow across the ductus is diminished. S_2 is single and accentuated, and no significant heart murmur is present. The pulses are normal rather than bounding.

B. Imaging

In an isolated PDA, the appearance of the chest radiograph depends on the size of the shunt. If the shunt is small, the heart is not enlarged. If the shunt is large, both left atrial and LV enlargement may be seen. The aorta and the main pulmonary artery segment may also be prominent.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG may be normal or may show LVH, depending on the size of the shunt. In patients with pulmonary hypertension caused by increased blood flow, biventricular hypertrophy usually occurs. In pulmonary vascular obstructive disease, pure right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH) occurs.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography provides direct visualization of the ductus and confirms the direction and degree of shunting. High-velocity left-to-right flow argues against abnormally elevated pulmonary vascular resistance, and as pulmonary vascular resistance drops during the neonatal period, higher velocity left-to-right shunting is usually seen. If suprasystemic pulmonary vascular resistance is present, flow across the ductus will be seen from right to left. Associated cardiac lesions and ductal-dependent pulmonary or systemic blood flow must be recognized by echocardiography, as closure of a PDA in this setting would be contraindicated.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

PDA closure in the catheterization laboratory with a vascular plug or coils is now routine in all but the smallest of neonates and infants.

Treatment

Surgical closure is indicated when the PDA is large and the patient is small. Caution must be given to closing a PDA in patients with pulmonary vascular obstructive disease and right-to-left shunting across the ductus as this could result in RV failure. Patients with large left-to-right shunts require repair by age 1 year to prevent the development of progressive pulmonary vascular obstructive disease. Symptomatic PDA with normal pulmonary artery pressure can be safely coil or device-occluded in the catheterization laboratory, ideally after the child has reached 5 kg.

Patients with nonreactive pulmonary vascular obstruction, pulmonary vascular resistance greater than 10 Wood units (normal, < 3), and a ratio of pulmonary to systemic resistance greater than 0.7 (normal, < 0.3) despite vasodilator therapy (eg, nitric oxide) should not undergo PDA closure. These patients are made worse by PDA closure because the flow through the ductus allows preserved RV function and maintains cardiac output to the systemic circulation. These patients can be managed with pulmonary vasodilator therapy, but eventually may require heart-lung transplant in severe cases.

Presence of a symptomatic PDA is common in preterm infants. Indomethacin, a prostaglandin synthesis inhibitor, is often used to close the PDA in premature infants. Indomethacin does not close the PDA of full-term infants or children. The success of indomethacin therapy is as high as 80%–90% in premature infants with a birth weight greater than 1200 g, but it is less successful in smaller infants. Indomethacin (0.1–0.3 mg/kg orally every 8–24 hours or 0.1–0.3 mg/kg parenterally every 12 hours) can be used if there is adequate renal, hematologic, and hepatic function. Because indomethacin may impair renal function, urine output, BUN, and creatinine should be monitored during therapy. If indomethacin is not effective and the ductus remains hemodynamically significant, surgical ligation should be performed. If the ductus partially closes so that the shunt is no longer hemodynamically significant, a second course of indomethacin may be tried.

Course & Prognosis

Patients with an isolated PDA and small-to-moderate shunts usually do well without surgery. However, in the third or fourth decade of life, symptoms of easy fatigability, dyspnea on exertion, and exercise intolerance appear in those patients who develop pulmonary hypertension and/or HF. Percutaneous closure can be done later in life if there has not been development of severe pulmonary vascular disease. For those with severe and irreversible pulmonary hypertension prognosis is not good and heart-lung transplant may be needed.

Spontaneous closure of a PDA may occur up to age 1 year, especially in preterm infants. After age 1 year, spontaneous closure is rare. Because endocarditis is a potential complication, some cardiologists recommend closure if the defect persists beyond age 1 year, even if it is small. Most of these patients undergo percutaneous occlusion as opposed to surgical ligation.

Cherif A, Jabnoun S, Khrouf N: Oral ibuprofen in early curative closure of patent ductus arteriosus in very premature infants. Am J Perinatol 2007;24:339–345 [PMID: 17564958].

Takata H et al: Long-term outcome of coil occlusion in patients with patent ductus arteriosus. Circ J 2011 Feb;75(2):407–412 [PMID: 21173496].

RIGHT-SIDED OBSTRUCTIVE LESIONS

1. Pulmonary Valve Stenosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- No symptoms in mild or moderate stenosis.
- Cyanosis and a high incidence of right-sided HF in ductal-dependent lesions.
- RV lift with systolic ejection click heard at the third left intercostal space.
- S_2 widely split with soft to inaudible P_2; grade I–VI/VI systolic ejection murmur, maximal at the pulmonary area.
- Dilated pulmonary artery on chest radiograph.

General Considerations

Pulmonic valve stenosis accounts for 10% of all congenital heart disease. The pulmonary valve annulus is usually small with moderate to marked poststenotic dilation of the main pulmonary artery. Obstruction to blood flow across the pulmonary valve causes an increase in RV pressure. Pressures greater than systemic are potentially life-threatening and are associated with critical obstruction. Because of the increased RV strain, severe right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH) and eventual RV failure can occur.

When obstruction is severe and the ventricular septum is intact, a right-to-left shunt will often occur at the atrial level through a patent foramen ovale (PFO). In neonates with severe obstruction and minimal antegrade pulmonary blood flow (critical PS), left-to-right flow through the ductus is essential, making prostaglandin a necessary intervention at the time of birth. These infants are cyanotic at presentation.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with mild or even moderate valvular pulmonary stenosis are acyanotic and asymptomatic. Patients with severe

valvular obstruction may develop cyanosis early. Patients with mild to moderate obstruction are usually well developed and well nourished. They are not prone to pulmonary infections. The pulses are normal. The precordium may be prominent, often with palpable RV heave. A systolic thrill is often present in the pulmonary area. In patients with mild to moderate stenosis, a prominent ejection click of pulmonary origin is heard at the third left intercostal space. The click varies with respiration, being more prominent during expiration than inspiration. In severe stenosis, the click tends to merge with S_1. S_2 varies with the degree of stenosis. In mild pulmonic stenosis, S_2 is normal. In moderate pulmonic stenosis, S_2 is more widely split and the pulmonary component is softer. In severe pulmonary stenosis, S_2 is single because the pulmonary component cannot be heard. A rough systolic ejection murmur is best heard at the second left interspace. It radiates well to the back. With severe pulmonary valve obstruction, the murmur is usually short. No diastolic murmurs are audible.

B. Imaging

The heart size is normal. Poststenotic dilation of the main pulmonary artery and the left pulmonary artery often occurs.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG is usually normal with mild obstruction. In severe obstruction, RV hypertrophy with an RV strain pattern (deep inversion of the T wave) occurs in the right precordial leads (V_{3R}, V_1, V_2). Right atrial enlargement may be present. Right axis deviation occurs in moderate to severe stenosis.

D. Echocardiography

The diagnosis often is made by physical examination, but the echocardiogram confirms the diagnosis, defines the anatomy, and can identify any associated lesions. The pulmonary valve has thickened leaflets with reduced valve leaflet excursion. The transvalvular pressure gradient can be estimated accurately by Doppler, which provides an estimate of RV pressure and can assist in determining the appropriate time to intervene.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Catheterization is reserved for therapeutic balloon valvuloplasty. In severe cases with associated RV dysfunction, a right-to-left shunt at the atrial level is indicated by a lower left atrial saturation than pulmonary vein saturation. Pulmonary artery pressure is normal. The gradient across the pulmonary valve varies from 10 to 200 mm Hg. In severe cases, the right atrial pressure is elevated, with a predominant "a" wave. Angiocardiography in the RV shows a thick pulmonary valve with a narrow opening producing a jet of contrast into the pulmonary artery. Infundibular (RV outflow tract) hypertrophy may be present and may contribute to obstruction to pulmonary blood flow.

» Treatment

Treatment of pulmonic stenosis is recommended for children with RV systolic pressure greater than two-thirds of systemic pressure. Immediate correction is indicated for patients with systemic or suprasystemic RV pressure. Percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty is the procedure of choice. It is as effective as surgery in relieving obstruction and causes less valve insufficiency. Surgery is needed to treat pulmonic valve stenosis when balloon pulmonic valvuloplasty is unsuccessful.

» Course & Prognosis

Patients with mild pulmonary stenosis live normal lives. Even those with moderate stenosis are rarely symptomatic. Those with severe valvular obstruction may develop cyanosis in infancy as described above.

After balloon pulmonary valvuloplasty or surgery, most patients have good maximum exercise capacity unless they have significant pulmonary insufficiency (PI). Limitation of physical activity is unwarranted. The quality of life of adults with successfully treated pulmonary stenosis and minimal PI is normal. Patients with PI, a frequent side effect of intervention, may be significantly limited in exercise performance. Severe PI leads to progressive RV dilation and dysfunction, which may precipitate ventricular arrhythmias or right heart failure in adulthood. Patients with severe PI may benefit from replacement of the pulmonic valve.

Harrild DM et al: Long-term pulmonary regurgitation following balloon valvuloplasty for pulmonary stenosis risk factors and relationship to exercise capacity and ventricular volume and function. J Am Coll Cardiol 2010 Mar 9;55(10):1041–1047 [PMID: 20202522].

2. Subvalvular Pulmonary Stenosis

Isolated infundibular (subvalvular) pulmonary stenosis is rare. More commonly it is found in combination with other lesions, such as in tetralogy of Fallot. Infundibular hypertrophy that is associated with a small perimembranous VSD may lead to a "double-chambered RV" characterized by obstruction between the inflow and outflow portion of the RV. One should suspect such an abnormality if there is a prominent precordial thrill, no audible pulmonary ejection click, and a murmur maximal in the third and fourth intercostal spaces rather than in the second intercostal space. The clinical picture is otherwise identical to that of pulmonic valve stenosis. Intervention, if indicated, is always surgical because this condition does not improve with balloon catheter dilation.

3. Supravalvular Pulmonary Stenosis

Supravalvular pulmonary stenosis is a relatively rare condition defined by narrowing of the main pulmonary artery. The clinical picture may be identical to valvular pulmonary stenosis, although the murmur is maximal in the first intercostal space at the left sternal border and in the suprasternal notch. No ejection click is audible, as the valve itself is not involved. The murmur radiates toward the neck and over the lung fields. Children with William syndrome can have supravalvular and peripheral pulmonary stenosis as well as supravalvular aortic stenosis.

4. Peripheral (Branch) Pulmonary Artery Stenosis

In peripheral pulmonary stenosis, there are multiple narrowings of the branches of the pulmonary arteries, sometimes extending into the vessels in the periphery of the lungs. Systolic murmurs may be heard over both lung fields, anteriorly and posteriorly, radiating to the axilla. Mild, nonpathologic pulmonary branch stenosis produces a murmur in infancy that resolves by 6 months of age. William syndrome, Alagille syndrome, and congenital rubella are commonly associated with severe forms of peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis. Surgery is often unsuccessful, as areas of stenoses near and beyond the hilum of the lungs are not accessible to the surgeons. Transcatheter balloon angioplasty and even stent placement are used to treat this condition, with moderate success. In some instances, the stenoses improve spontaneously with age.

5. Ebstein Malformation of the Tricuspid Valve

In Ebstein malformation of the tricuspid valve, the septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve is displaced toward the apex of the heart and is attached to the endocardium of the RV rather than at the tricuspid annulus. As a result, a large portion of the RV functions physiologically as part of the right atrium. This "atrialized" portion of the RV is thin-walled and does not contribute to RV output. The portion of the ventricle below the displaced tricuspid valve is diminished in volume and represents the functioning RV.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical picture of Ebstein malformation varies with the degree of displacement of the tricuspid valve. In the most extreme form, the septal leaflet is markedly displaced into the RV outflow tract, causing obstruction of antegrade flow into the pulmonary artery and there is very little functioning RV as the majority of the ventricle is "atrialized." The degree of tricuspid insufficiency may be so severe that forward (antegrade) flow out the RV outflow tract is further diminished leading to a right-to-left atrial level shunt and cyanosis. At the opposite extreme when antegrade pulmonary blood flow is adequate, symptoms may not develop until adulthood when tachyarrhythmias associated with right atrial dilation or reentrant electrical pathways occur. These older patients typically have less displacement of the septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve and therefore more functional RV tissue.

B. Imaging

The chest radiograph shows cardiomegaly with prominence of the right heart border. The extent of cardiomegaly depends on the degree of tricuspid valve insufficiency and the presence and size of the atrial level shunt. Massive cardiomegaly with a "wall-to-wall heart" (the heart shadow extends across the entire chest cavity from right-to-left) occurs with severe tricuspid valve displacement and/or a restrictive atrial level defect.

C. Electrocardiography

ECG may be normal but usually shows right atrial enlargement and right bundle-branch block (RBBB). There is an association between Ebstein anomaly and Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome, in which case a delta wave is present (short PR with a slurred upstroke of the QRS).

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography is necessary to confirm the diagnosis and may aid in predicting outcome. Degree of tricuspid valve displacement, size of the right atrium, and presence of associated atrial level shunt all affect outcome.

» Course & Prognosis

In cyanotic neonates, PGE_2 is used to maintain pulmonary blood flow via the ductus arteriosus until pulmonary vascular resistance decreases, facilitating antegrade pulmonary artery flow. If the neonate remains significantly cyanotic, surgical intervention is required.

The type of surgical repair varies and depends on the severity of the disease. For example, in order to decrease the amount of tricuspid regurgitation surgery may involve atrial plication and tricuspid valve repair. The success of the procedure is highly variable. Late arrhythmias are common due to the preexisting atrial dilation. If a significant Ebstein malformation is not treated, atrial tachyarrhythmias frequently begin during adolescence and the enlarged atrialized RV could impede LV function. Postoperative exercise tolerance improves but remains lower than age-related norms.

Knott-Craig CJ et al: Repair of neonates and young infants with Ebstein's anomaly and related disorders. Ann Thorac Surg 2007;84:587–592; discussion 592–593 [PMID: 17643640].

LEFT-SIDED LESIONS

1. Coarctation of the Aorta

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Absent or diminished femoral pulses.
- Upper to lower extremity systolic blood pressure gradient of > 20 mm Hg.
- Blowing systolic murmur in the back or left axilla.

» General Considerations

Coarctation of the aorta is a narrowing in the aortic arch that usually occurs in the proximal descending aorta near the takeoff of the left subclavian artery near the ductus arteriosus. The abdominal aorta is rarely involved. Coarctation accounts for about 6% of all congenital heart disease. Three times as many males as females are affected. Many affected females have Turner syndrome (45, XO). The incidence of associated bicuspid aortic valve with coarctation is 80%–85%.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The cardinal physical finding is decreased or absent femoral pulses. Infants with severe coarctation have equal upper and lower extremity pulses from birth until the ductus arteriosus closes (ductal patency ensures flow to the descending aorta distal to the level of obstruction). Approximately 40% of children with coarctation will present as young infants. Coarctation alone, or in combination with VSD, ASD, or other congenital cardiac anomalies, is the leading cause of HF in the first month of life.

Coarctation presents insidiously in the 60% of children with no symptoms in infancy. Coarctation is usually diagnosed by a pulse and blood pressure (> 15 mm Hg) discrepancy between the arms and legs on physical examination. The pulses in the legs are diminished or absent. The left subclavian artery is occasionally involved in the coarctation, in which case the left brachial pulse is also weak. The pathognomonic murmur of coarctation is heard in the left axilla and the left back. The murmur is usually systolic but may spill into diastole, as forward flow continues across the narrow coarctation site throughout the cardiac cycle. A systolic ejection murmur is often heard at the aortic area and the lower left sternal border along with an apical ejection click if there is an associated bicuspid aortic valve.

B. Imaging

In the older child, radiographs may show a normal-sized heart, or more often some degree of LV enlargement. The aorta proximal to the coarctation is prominent. The aortic outline may indent at the level of the coarctation. The poststenotic segment is often dilated. This combination of abnormalities results in the "figure 3" sign on chest radiograph. Notching of the ribs caused by marked enlargement of the intercostal collaterals can be seen. In patients with severe coarctation and associated HF, marked cardiac enlargement and pulmonary venous congestion occur.

C. Electrocardiography

ECGs in older children may be normal or may show LVH. ECG usually shows RVH in infants with severe coarctation because the RV serves as the systemic ventricle during fetal life.

D. Echocardiography

Two-dimensional echocardiography and color-flow Doppler are used to visualize the coarctation directly, and continuous-wave Doppler estimates the degree of obstruction. Diastolic runoff flow is detected by continuous-wave Doppler if the obstruction is significant. In neonates with a PDA, a coarctation cannot be ruled out, as stenosis of the arch may evolve as the PDA closes. Identification of lesions such as a bicuspid aortic valve or mitral abnormalities may suggest the presence of a coarctation. In the face of poor LV systolic function, the gradient across the coarctation will be low, as the failing LV is unable to generate very much pressure proximal to the narrowing.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography are rarely performed for diagnosis in infants or children with coarctation, but are used if transcatheter intervention is planned.

» Treatment

Infants with coarctation of the aorta and HF may present in extremis secondary to LV dysfunction and low cardiac output. Resuscitative measures include PGE_2 infusion (0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min) to reopen the ductus arteriosus. End-organ damage distal to the coarctation is not uncommon, and inotropic support is frequently needed. Once stabilized, the infant should undergo corrective repair. In patients with poor LV function, balloon angioplasty of the coarctation is sometimes performed as a palliative measure. Recent data suggest that balloon angioplasty of the aorta can be the definitive procedure in many patients with good LV function. Surgery also has a high success rate. The main

complication of both surgery and balloon angioplasty is recurrent coarctation. Fortunately, this complication is treatable in the catheterization laboratory. In older patients, particularly those of adult size, transcatheter stent placement is effective for recurrent coarctation.

» Course & Prognosis

Children who survive the neonatal period without developing HF do well through childhood and adolescence. Fatal complications (eg, hypertensive encephalopathy or intracranial bleeding) are uncommon in childhood. Infective endarteritis is rare before adolescence, but can occur in both repaired and unrepaired coarctation. Children with coarctation corrected after age 5 years are at increased risk for systemic hypertension and myocardial dysfunction even with successful surgery. Exercise testing is mandatory for these children prior to their participation in athletic activities.

Golden AB, Hellenbrand WE: Coarctation of the aorta: stenting in children and adults. Catheter Cardiovasc Interv 2007;69: 289–299 [PMID: 17191237].

Rodes-Cabau J et al: Comparison of surgical and transcatheter treatment for native coarctation of the aorta in patients > or = 1 year old. The Quebec Native Coarctation of the Aorta study. Am Heart J 2007;154:186–192 [PMID: 17584575].

2. Aortic Stenosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Harsh systolic ejection murmur at the upper right sternal border with radiation to the neck.
- Thrill in the carotid arteries.
- Systolic click at the apex.
- Dilation of the ascending aorta on chest radiograph.

» General Considerations

Aortic stenosis is defined as obstruction to outflow from the LV at or near the aortic valve producing a systolic pressure gradient of more than 10 mm Hg between the LV and the aorta. Aortic stenosis accounts for approximately 7% of congenital heart disease. There are three anatomic types of congenital aortic stenosis.

A. Valvular Aortic Stenosis (75%)

In critical aortic stenosis presenting in infancy, the aortic valve is usually a unicuspid diaphragm-like structure without well-defined commissures. A bicuspid aortic valve or a trileaflet valve with partially fused leaflets is another anatomic possibility that can be associated with aortic stenosis. Aortic stenosis is more common in males than in females.

B. Subvalvular Aortic Stenosis (23%)

In this type, a membranous or fibrous ring occurs just below the aortic valve that causes obstruction to LV outflow. The aortic valve itself and the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve are often malformed.

C. Supravalvular Aortic Stenosis (2%)

In this type, constriction of the ascending aorta occurs just above the coronary arteries. The condition is often familial, and two different genetic patterns are found, one with abnormal facies and mental retardation (William syndrome) and other with normal facies and no developmental delay.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Although isolated valvular aortic stenosis seldom causes symptoms in infancy, severe HF occasionally occurs when critical obstruction is present at birth. Response to medical therapy is poor; therefore, an aggressive approach using interventional catheterization or surgery is required. The physical findings vary depending on the anatomic type of lesion:

1. Valvular aortic stenosis—If the stenosis is severe with a gradient greater than 80 mm Hg, pulses are diminished with a slow upstroke; otherwise, pulses are usually normal. Cardiac examination reveals an LV thrust at the apex. A systolic thrill at the right base, the suprasternal notch, and over both carotid arteries may accompany moderate disease.

A prominent aortic ejection click is best heard at the apex. The click corresponds to the opening of the aortic valve. It is separated from S_1 by a short but appreciable interval. It does not vary with respiration. S_2 at the pulmonary area is normal. A loud, rough, medium- to high-pitched ejection-type systolic murmur is evident. It is loudest at the first and second intercostal spaces, radiating well into the suprasternal notch and along the carotids. The grade of the murmur correlates well with the severity of the stenosis.

2. Discrete membranous subvalvular aortic stenosis—The findings are the same as those of valvular aortic stenosis except for the absence of a click. The murmur and thrill are usually somewhat more intense at the left sternal border in the third and fourth intercostal spaces. In the setting of aortic insufficiency, a diastolic murmur is commonly heard.

3. Supravalvular aortic stenosis—The thrill and murmur are best heard in the suprasternal notch and along the carotids but are well transmitted over the aortic area and near the mid left sternal border. There may be a difference in

pulses and blood pressure between the right and left arms if the narrowing is just distal to the takeoff of the innominate artery, with more prominent pulse and pressure in the right arm (the Coanda effect).

Of those not presenting in infancy, most patients with aortic stenosis have no cardiovascular symptoms. Except in the most severe cases, patients do well until the third to fifth decades of life. Some patients have mild exercise intolerance and fatigability. In a small percentage of patients, significant symptoms (eg, chest pain with exercise, dizziness, and syncope) manifest in the first decade. Sudden death is uncommon but may occur in all forms of aortic stenosis with the greatest risk in patients with subvalvular obstruction.

B. Imaging

In most cases the heart is not enlarged. The LV, however, may be slightly prominent. In valvular aortic stenosis, dilation of the ascending aorta is frequently seen.

C. Electrocardiography

Patients with mild aortic stenosis have normal ECGs. Some patients with severe obstruction have LVH and LV strain but even in severe cases, 25% of ECGs are normal. Progressive LVH on serial ECGs indicates a significant obstruction. LV strain is one indication for surgery.

D. Echocardiography

This is a reliable noninvasive technique for the evaluation of all forms of aortic stenosis. Doppler accurately estimates the transvalvular gradient, and the level of obstruction can be confirmed by both two-dimensional echocardiographic images and by the level of flow disturbance revealed by color Doppler.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Left heart catheterization demonstrates the pressure differential between the LV and the aorta and the anatomic level at which the gradient exists. Catheterization is reserved for patients whose resting gradient has reached 60–80 mm Hg and in whom intervention is planned. For those with valvular aortic stenosis, balloon valvuloplasty is usually the first option. In subvalvular or supravalvular aortic stenosis, interventional catheterization is not effective and surgery is required.

» Treatment

Percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty is now standard initial treatment for patients with valvular aortic stenosis. Surgery should be considered in symptomatic patients with a high resting gradient (60–80 mm Hg) despite balloon angioplasty, or coexisting aortic insufficiency. In many cases, the gradient cannot be significantly diminished by valvuloplasty without producing aortic insufficiency. Patients who develop significant aortic insufficiency require surgical intervention to repair or replace the valve. The Ross procedure is an alternative to mechanical valve placement in infants and children. In this procedure, the patient's own pulmonic valve is moved to the aortic position, and an RV-to-pulmonary artery conduit is used to replace the pulmonic valve. Fetal balloon valvuloplasty for critical aortic stenosis is currently being studied to prevent progression of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Discrete subvalvular aortic stenosis is usually surgically repaired at a lesser gradient because continued trauma to the aortic valve by the subvalvular jet may damage the valve and produce aortic insufficiency. Unfortunately, simple resection is followed by recurrence in more than 25% of patients with subvalvular aortic stenosis. Supravalvar aortic stenosis may also require surgical repair and is commonly associated with William syndrome.

» Course & Prognosis

All forms of LV outflow tract obstruction tend to be progressive. Pediatric patients with LV outflow tract obstruction—with the exception of those with critical aortic stenosis of infancy—are usually asymptomatic. Symptoms accompanying severe unoperated obstruction (angina, syncope, or HF) are rare but imply serious disease. Children whose obstruction is mild to moderate have normal oxygen consumption and maximum voluntary working capacity. Children in this category with normal resting and exercising (stress) ECGs may safely participate in vigorous physical activity, including nonisometric competitive sports. Children with severe aortic stenosis are predisposed to ventricular dysrhythmias and should refrain from vigorous activity and avoid all isometric exercise.

Mavroudis C, Backer CL, Kaushal S: Aortic stenosis and aortic insufficiency in children: impact of valvuloplasty and modified Ross-Konno procedure. Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu 2009;76–86 [PMID: 19349019].

Marantz P, Grinenco S: Fetal intervention for critical aortic stenosis: advances, research and postnatal follow-up. Curr Opin Cardiol 2015 Jan;30(1):89–94 [PMID: 25389651].

3. Mitral Valve Prolapse

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Midsystolic click.
- Late systolic "whooping" or "honking" murmur.
- Typical symptoms include chest pain, palpitations, and dizziness.
- Often overdiagnosed on routine cardiac ultrasound.

» General Considerations

In this condition as the mitral valve closes during systole, it moves posteriorly or superiorly (prolapses) into the left atrium. Mitral valve prolapse (MVP) occurs in about 2% of thin female adolescents, a minority of whom have concomitant mitral insufficiency. Although MVP is usually an isolated lesion, it can occur in association with connective tissue disorders such as Marfan, Loeys-Dietz, and Ehlers-Danlos syndromes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most patients with MVP are asymptomatic. Chest pain, palpitations, and dizziness may be reported, but it is unclear whether these symptoms are more common in affected patients than in the normal population. Chest pain on exertion is rare and should be assessed with cardiopulmonary stress testing. Significant dysrhythmias have been reported, including increased ventricular ectopy and nonsustained ventricular tachycardia. If significant mitral regurgitation is present, atrial arrhythmias may also occur. Standard auscultation technique must be modified to diagnose MVP. A midsystolic click (with or without a systolic murmur) is elicited best in the standing position and is the hallmark of this entity. Conversely, maneuvers that increase LV volume, such as squatting or handgrip exercise, will cause delay or obliteration of the click-murmur complex. The systolic click usually is heard at the apex but may be audible at the left sternal border. A late, short systolic murmur after the click implies mitral insufficiency and is much less common than isolated prolapse. The murmur is not holosystolic, in contrast to rheumatic mitral insufficiency.

B. Imaging

Most chest radiographs are normal and are not usually indicated in this condition. In the rare case of significant mitral valve insufficiency, the left atrium may be enlarged.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG is usually normal. Diffuse flattening or inversion of T waves may occur in the precordial leads. U waves are sometimes prominent.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography assesses the degree of myxomatous change of the mitral valve, and the degree of mitral insufficiency. Significant posterior systolic movement of the mitral valve leaflets to the atrial side of the mitral annulus is diagnostic.

E. Other Testing

Invasive procedures are rarely indicated. Holter monitoring or event recorders may be useful in establishing the presence of ventricular dysrhythmias in patients with palpitations.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Propranolol may be effective in treatment of coexisting arrhythmias. Prophylaxis for infectious endocarditis is no longer indicated, based on 2007 AHA guidelines. The natural course of this condition is not well defined. Twenty years of observation indicate that isolated MVP in childhood is usually a benign entity. Surgery for mitral insufficiency is rarely needed.

Delling FN, Vasan RS: Epidemiology and pathophysiology of mitral valve prolapse: new insights into disease progression, genetics, and molecular basis. Circulation 2014 May 27; 129(21):2158–2170 [PMID: 24867995].

4. Other Congenital Left Heart Valvular Lesions

A. Congenital Mitral Stenosis

Congenital mitral stenosis is a rare disorder in which the valve leaflets are thickened and/or fused, producing a diaphragm- or funnel-like structure with a central opening. In many cases, the subvalve apparatus (papillary muscles and chordae) is also abnormal. When mitral stenosis occurs with other left-sided obstructive lesions, such as subaortic stenosis and coarctation of the aorta, the complex is called Shone syndrome. Most patients develop symptoms early in life with tachypnea, dyspnea, and failure to thrive. Physical examination reveals an accentuated S_1 and a loud pulmonary closure sound. No opening snap is heard. In most cases, a presystolic crescendo murmur is heard at the apex. Occasionally, only a mid-diastolic murmur can be heard. ECG shows right axis deviation, biatrial enlargement, and RVH. Chest radiograph reveals left atrial enlargement and frequent pulmonary venous congestion. Echocardiography shows abnormal mitral valve structures with reduced leaflet excursion and left atrial enlargement. Cardiac catheterization reveals an elevated pulmonary capillary wedge pressure and pulmonary hypertension, owing to the elevated left atrial pressure.

Mitral valve repair or mitral valve replacement with a prosthetic mitral valve may be performed, even in young infants, but it is a technically difficult procedure. Mitral valve repair is the preferred surgical option, as valve replacement can have a poor outcome in infants.

B. Cor Triatriatum

Cor triatriatum is a rare abnormality in which the pulmonary veins join in a confluence that is not completely

incorporated into the left atrium. The pulmonary vein confluence communicates with the left atrium through an opening of variable size, and may be obstructed. Patients may present in a similar way as those with mitral stenosis. Clinical findings depend on the degree of obstruction of pulmonary venous flow into the left atrium. If the communication between the confluence and the left atrium is small and restrictive to flow, symptoms develop early in life. Echocardiography reveals a linear density in the left atrium with a pressure gradient present between the pulmonary venous chamber and the true left atrium. Cardiac catheterization may be needed if the diagnosis is in doubt. High pulmonary wedge pressure and low left atrial pressure (with the catheter passed through the foramen ovale into the true left atrium) support the diagnosis. Angiocardiography identifies the pulmonary vein confluence and the anatomic left atria. Surgical repair is always required in the presence of an obstructive membrane, and long-term results are good. Coexisting mitral valve abnormalities may be noted, including a supravalvular mitral ring or a dysplastic mitral valve.

Brown JW, Fiore AC, Ruzmetov M, Eltayeb O, Rodefeld MD, Turrentine MW: Evolution of mitral valve replacement in children: a 40-year experience. Ann Thorac Surg 2012 Feb;93(2):626–633 [PMID: 22153051].

DISEASES OF THE AORTA

Patients at risk for progressive aortic dilation and dissection include those with isolated bicuspid aortic valve, Marfan syndrome, Loeys-Dietz syndrome, Turner syndrome, and type IV Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

1. Bicuspid Aortic Valve

Patients with bicuspid aortic valves have an increased incidence of aortic dilation and dissection, regardless of the presence of aortic stenosis. Histologic examination demonstrates cystic medial degeneration of the aortic wall, similar to that seen in patients with Marfan syndrome. Patients with an isolated bicuspid aortic valve require regular follow-up even in the absence of aortic insufficiency or aortic stenosis. Significant aortic root dilation requiring surgical intervention typically does not occur until adulthood.

2. Marfan and Loeys-Dietz Syndromes

Marfan syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder of connective tissue caused by a mutation in the fibrillin-1 gene. Spontaneous mutations account for 25%–30% of cases, and thus family history is not always helpful. Patients are diagnosed by the Ghent criteria and must have at a minimum, major involvement of two body systems plus involvement of a third body system or a positive family history. Body systems involved include cardiovascular, ocular, musculoskeletal, pulmonary, and integumentary. Cardiac manifestations include aortic root dilation and MVP, which may be present at birth. Patients are at risk for aortic dilation and dissection and are restricted from competitive athletics, contact sports, and isometric activities. β-Blockers (eg, atenolol), ACE inhibitors, or angiotensin receptor blockers (eg, losartan) are used to lower blood pressure and slow the rate of aortic dilation. A recent study of atenolol versus losartan in children and young adults with Marfan syndrome showed no difference in the rate of aortic dilation between the two medications. Elective surgical intervention is performed in patients of adult size when the aortic root dimension reaches 50 mm or if there is an increase of greater than 1 cm in root dimension in 1 year. The ratio of actual to expected aortic root dimension is used to determine the need for surgery in the young child. Surgical options include replacement of the dilated aortic root with a composite valve graft (Bentall technique) or a David procedure in which the patient's own aortic valve is spared and a Dacron tube graft is used to replace the dilated ascending aorta. Young age at diagnosis was previously thought to confer a poor prognosis; however, early diagnosis with close follow-up and early medical therapy has more recently been associated with more favorable outcome. Ventricular dysrhythmias may contribute to the mortality in Marfan syndrome.

Loeys-Dietz syndrome is a connective tissue disorder first described in 2005. Many patients with Loeys-Dietz were thought to have Marfan syndrome in the past. Loeys-Dietz is a result of a mutation in the transforming growth factor β (TGFβ) receptor and is associated with musculoskeletal, skin, and cardiovascular abnormalities. Cardiovascular involvement includes mitral and tricuspid valve prolapse, aneurysms of the PDA, and aortic and pulmonary artery dilation. Dissection and aneurysm formation of arteries throughout the body can occur including in the head and neck vessels.

3. Turner Syndrome

Cardiovascular abnormalities are common in Turner syndrome. Patients are at risk for aortic dissection, typically during adulthood. Risk factors include hypertension regardless of cause, aortic dilation, bicuspid aortic valve, and coarctation of the aorta. There are rare reports of aortic dissection in adult Turner syndrome patients in the absence of any risk factors suggesting that there is a vasculopathic component to this syndrome. Patients with Turner syndrome require routine follow-up from adolescence onward to monitor for this potentially lethal complication.

Lacro RV et al: Atenolol versus losartan in children and young adults with Marfan's syndrome. N Engl J Med 2014 Nov 27;371(22):2061–2071 [PMID: 25405392].

Nishimura RA et al: 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. J Am Coll Cardiol 2014 Jun 10;63(22):2438–2488 [PMID: 24603192].

CORONARY ARTERY ABNORMALITIES

Several anomalies involve the origin, course, and distribution of the coronary arteries. Abnormal origin or course of the coronary arteries are often asymptomatic and can go undetected. However, in some instances these children are at risk for sudden death. The most common congenital coronary artery abnormality in infants is anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery (ALCAPA) and is discussed in more detail here.

Anomalous Origin of the Left Coronary Artery from the Pulmonary Artery

In this condition, the left coronary artery arises from the pulmonary artery rather than the aorta. In neonates, whose pulmonary artery pressure is high, perfusion of the left coronary artery may be adequate and the infant may be asymptomatic. By age 2 months the pulmonary arterial pressure falls, causing a progressive decrease in myocardial perfusion provided by the anomalous left coronary artery. Ischemia and infarction of the LV is the result. Immediate surgery is indicated to reimplant the left coronary artery and restore myocardial perfusion.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Neonates appear healthy and growth and development are relatively normal until pulmonary artery pressure decreases. Detailed questioning may disclose a history of intermittent abdominal pain (fussiness or irritability), pallor, wheezing, and sweating, especially during or after feeding. Presentation may be subtle, with nonspecific complaints of "fussiness" or intermittent "colic." The colic and fussiness are probably attacks of true angina. Presentation may be fulminant at age 2–4 months with sudden, severe HF due to LV dysfunction and mitral insufficiency. On physical examination, the infants are usually well developed and well nourished. The pulses are typically weak but equal. A prominent left precordial bulge is present. A gallop and/or holosystolic murmur of mitral regurgitation is sometimes present, though frequently auscultation alone reveals no obvious abnormalities.

B. Imaging

Chest radiographs show cardiac enlargement, left atrial enlargement, and may show pulmonary venous congestion if left ventricular function has been compromised.

C. Electrocardiography

On the ECG, there is T-wave inversion in leads I and aVL. The precordial leads also show T-wave inversion from V_4–V_7. Deep and wide Q waves are present in leads I, aVL, and sometimes in V_4–V_6. These findings of myocardial infarction are similar to those in adults.

D. Echocardiography

The diagnosis can be made with two-dimensional echo techniques by visualizing a single large right coronary artery arising from the aorta and visualization of the anomalous left coronary artery arising from the main pulmonary artery. Flow reversal in the left coronary (heading toward the pulmonary artery, rather than away from the aorta) confirms the diagnosis. LV dysfunction, echo-bright (ischemic) papillary muscles, and mitral regurgitation are commonly seen.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Angiogram of the aorta fails to show the origin of the left coronary artery. A large right coronary artery fills directly from the aorta, and contrast flows from the right coronary system via collaterals into the left coronary artery and finally into the pulmonary artery. Angiogram of the RV or main pulmonary artery may show the origin of the anomalous vessel. Rarely, a left-to-right shunt may be detected as oxygenated blood passes through the collateral system without delivering oxygen to the myocardium, and passes into the pulmonary artery.

» Treatment & Prognosis

The prognosis of ALCAPA depends in part on the clinical appearance of the patient at presentation. Medical management with diuretics and afterload reduction can help stabilize a critically ill patient, but surgical intervention should not be delayed. Surgery involves reimplantation of the anomalous coronary button onto the aorta. The mitral valve may have to be replaced, depending on the degree of injury to the papillary muscles and associated mitral insufficiency. Although a life-threatening problem, cardiac function nearly always recovers if the infant survives the surgery and postoperative period.

Imamura M et al: Reoperation and mechanical circulatory support after repair of anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery: a twenty-year experience. Ann Thorac Surg 2011;92(1):167–172; discussion 172–173 [PMID: 21592461].

Lange R et al: Long-term results of repair of anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery. Ann Thorac Surg 2007;83:1463–1471 [PMID: 17383358].

CYANOTIC CONGENITAL HEAr T DISEASE

TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hypoxemic spells during infancy.
- Right-sided aortic arch in 25% of patients.
- Systolic ejection murmur at the upper left sternal border.

General Considerations

In tetralogy of Fallot (ToF), anterior deviation of the infundibular (pulmonary outflow) septum causes narrowing of the right ventricular outflow tract. This deviation also results in a VSD and the aorta then overrides the crest of the ventricular septum. The RV hypertrophies, not because of pulmonary stenosis, but because it is pumping against systemic resistance across a (usually) large VSD. ToF is the most common cyanotic cardiac lesion and accounts for 10% of all congenital heart disease. A right-sided aortic arch is present in 25% of cases, and ASD occurs in 15%.

Obstruction to RV outflow with a large VSD causes a right-to-left shunt at the ventricular level with arterial desaturation. The greater the obstruction and the lower the systemic vascular resistance, the greater is the right-to-left shunt. ToF is associated with deletions in the long arm of chromosome 22 (22q11, DiGeorge syndrome) in as many as 15% of affected children. This is especially common in those with an associated right aortic arch.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical findings vary with the degree of RV outflow obstruction. Patients with mild obstruction are minimally cyanotic or acyanotic. Those with severe obstruction are deeply cyanotic from birth. Few children are asymptomatic. In those with significant RV outflow obstruction, many have cyanosis at birth, and nearly all have cyanosis by age 4 months. The cyanosis usually is progressive, as subvalvular obstruction increases. Growth and development are not typically delayed, but easy fatigability and dyspnea on exertion are common. The fingers and toes show variable clubbing depending on age and severity of cyanosis. Historically, older children with ToF would frequently squat to increase systemic vascular resistance. This decreased the amount of right-to-left shunt, forcing blood through the pulmonary circuit, and would help ward off cyanotic spells. Squatting is rarely seen as the diagnosis is now made in infancy.

Hypoxemic spells, also called cyanotic or "Tet spells," are one of the hallmarks of severe ToF. These spells can occur spontaneously and at any time, but in infants occur most commonly with crying or feeding, while in older children they can occur with exercise. They are characterized by (1) sudden onset of cyanosis or deepening of cyanosis; (2) dyspnea; (3) alterations in consciousness, from irritability to syncope; and (4) decrease or disappearance of the systolic murmur (as RV the outflow tract becomes completely obstructed). These episodes most commonly start at age 4–6 months. Cyanotic spells are treated acutely by administration of oxygen and placing the patient in the knee-chest position (to increase systemic vascular resistance). Intravenous morphine should be administered cautiously, but is helpful for its sedative effect. Propranolol produces β-blockade and may reduce the obstruction across the RV outflow tract through its negative inotropic action. Acidosis, if present, should be corrected with intravenous sodium bicarbonate. Chronic oral prophylaxis of cyanotic spells with propranolol may be useful to delay surgery, but the onset of Tet spells usually prompts surgical intervention. In fact, in the current era, elective surgical repair generally occurs around the age of 3 months so as to avoid the development of Tet spells.

On examination, an RV lift is palpable. S_2 is predominantly aortic and single. A grade II–IV/VI, rough, systolic ejection murmur is present at the left sternal border in the third intercostal space and radiates well to the back.

B. Laboratory Findings

Hemoglobin, hematocrit, and red blood cell count are usually elevated in older infants or children secondary to chronic arterial desaturation.

C. Imaging

Chest radiographs show a normal-size heart. The RV is hypertrophied, often shown by an upturning of the apex (boot-shaped heart). The main pulmonary artery segment is usually concave and, if there is a right aortic arch, the aortic knob is to the right of the trachea. The pulmonary vascular markings are usually decreased.

D. Electrocardiography

The QRS axis is rightward, ranging from +90 to +180 degrees. The P waves are usually normal. RVH is always present, but RV strain patterns are rare.

E. Echocardiography

Two-dimensional imaging is diagnostic, revealing thickening of the RV wall, overriding of the aorta, and a large subaortic VSD. Obstruction at the level of the infundibulum and pulmonary valve can be identified, and the size of the proximal pulmonary arteries measured. The anatomy of the

coronary arteries should be visualized, as abnormal branches crossing the RV outflow tract are at risk for transection during surgical enlargement of the area.

F. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Cardiac catheterization is generally done mainly in those patients with hypoplastic pulmonary arteries. If a catheterization is done, it reveals a right-to-left shunt at the ventricular level in most cases. Arterial desaturation of varying degrees is present. The RV pressure is at systemic levels and the pressure tracing in the RV is identical to that in the LV if the VSD is large. The pulmonary artery pressure is invariably low. Pressure gradients may be noted at the pulmonary valvular level, the infundibular level, or both. RV angiography reveals RV outflow obstruction and a right-to-left shunt at the ventricular level. The major indications for cardiac catheterization are to establish coronary artery and distal pulmonary artery anatomy if not able to be clearly defined by echocardiography.

» Treatment

A. Palliative Treatment

Most centers currently advocate complete repair of ToF during the neonatal or infant period regardless of patient size. However, some centers prefer palliative treatment for small neonates in whom complete correction is deemed risky. Surgical palliation consists of the insertion of a GoreTex shunt from the subclavian artery to the ipsilateral pulmonary artery [modified Blalock-Taussig (BT) shunt] to replace the ductus arteriosus (which is ligated and divided) or stenting of the ductus. This secures a source of pulmonary blood flow regardless of the level of infundibular or valvular obstruction, and some believe, allows for growth of the patient's pulmonary arteries (which are usually small) prior to complete surgical correction.

B. Total Correction

Open-heart surgery for repair of ToF is performed at ages ranging from birth to 2 years, depending on the patient's anatomy and the experience of the surgical center. The current surgical trend is toward earlier repair for symptomatic infants. The major limiting anatomic feature of total correction is the size of the pulmonary arteries. During surgery, the VSD is closed and the obstruction to RV outflow removed. Although a valve sparing procedure is preferred, in many cases a transannular patch is placed across the RV outflow tract as the pulmonary valve is contributing to the obstruction. When a transannular patch repair is done, the patient has pulmonary insufficiency that is usually well tolerated for years. However, pulmonary valve replacement is eventually necessary once symptoms (usually exercise intolerance) and right ventricular dilation occur. Surgical mortality is low.

» Course & Prognosis

Infants with severe ToF are usually deeply cyanotic at birth. These children require early surgery. Complete repair before age 2 years usually produces a good result, and patients are currently living well into adulthood. Depending on the extent of the repair required, patients frequently require additional surgery 10–15 years after their initial repair for replacement of the pulmonary valve. Transcatheter pulmonary valves are now performed in some adolescents and young adults with a history of ToF, avoiding the need for open heart surgery. Patients with ToF are at risk for sudden death due to ventricular dysrhythmias. A competent pulmonary valve without a dilated RV appears to diminish arrhythmias and enhance exercise performance.

Batra AS et al: Cardiopulmonary exercise function among patients undergoing transcatheter pulmonary valve implantation in the US Melody valve investigational trial. Am Heart J 2012;163(2):280–287 [PMID: 22305848].

Valente AM et al: Multimodality imaging guidelines for patients with repaired tetralogy of fallot: a report from the AmericanSsociety of Echocardiography: developed in collaboration with the Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance and the Society for Pediatric Radiology. J Am Soc Echocardiogr 2014 Feb;27(2):111–141 [PMID: 24468055].

PULMONARY ATRESIA WITH VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Symptoms depend on degree of pulmonary blood flow.
- Pulmonary blood flow via PDA and/or aortopulmonary collaterals.

Complete atresia of the pulmonary valve in association with a VSD is essentially an extreme form of ToF. Because there is no antegrade flow from the RV to the pulmonary artery, pulmonary blood flow must be derived from a PDA or from multiple aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAs). Symptoms depend on the amount of pulmonary blood flow. If flow is adequate, patients may be stable. If pulmonary flow is inadequate, severe hypoxemia occurs and immediate palliation is required. Newborns are stabilized with intravenous prostaglandin E_1 (PGE_1) to maintain the PDA while being prepared for surgery. Rarely, if the ductus does not contribute significantly to pulmonary blood flow (eg, the MAPCAs alone are sufficient), PGE_1 may be discontinued. Once stabilized, a BT shunt, stenting of the ductus or complete repair is undertaken. The decision to perform palliation or complete

repair in a newborn is dependent on surgical expertise and preference in combination with pulmonary artery anatomy. In many centers, a palliative shunt is performed in newborns with severely hypoplastic pulmonary arteries or in those with only MAPCAs as a source of pulmonary blood flow. The goal of the shunt is to augment pulmonary blood flow and encourage vascular growth, and open-heart surgical correction is planned several months later. In children with MAPCAs, relocation of the MAPCAs is performed so that they are connected to the pulmonary artery (unifocalization) to complete the repair.

Echocardiography is usually diagnostic. Cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography or cardiac MRI can confirm the source(s) of pulmonary blood flow and document size of the distal pulmonary arteries.

Pulmonary vascular disease is common in pulmonary atresia with VSD, due both to intrinsic abnormalities of the pulmonary vasculature and to abnormal amounts of pulmonary blood flow. Even patients who have undergone surgical correction as infants are at risk. Pulmonary vascular disease is a common cause of death as early as the third decade of life.

Mainwaring RD: Hemodynamic assessment after complete repair of pulmonary atresia with major aortopulmonary collaterals. Ann Thorac Surg 2013 Apr;95(4):1397–1402 [PMID: 23453744].

Ten Cate FA: Stenting the arterial duct in neonates and infants with congenital heart disease and duct-dependent pulmonary blood flow: a multicenter experience of an evolving therapy over 18 years. Catheter Cardiovasc Interv 2013 Sep 1;82(3):E233–E243 [PMID: 23420699].

PULMONARY ATRESIA WITH INTACT VENTRICULAR SEPTUM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Completely different lesion from pulmonary atresia with VSD.
- Cyanosis at birth.
- Pulmonary blood flow is always ductal dependent with rare aortopulmonary collateral arteries being present.
- RV-dependent coronary arteries sometimes are present.

General Considerations

Although pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS) sounds as if it might be related to pulmonary atresia with VSD, it is a distinct cardiac condition. As the name suggests, the pulmonary valve is atretic. The pulmonic annulus usually has a small diaphragm consisting of the fused valve cusps. The ventricular septum is intact. The main pulmonary artery segment is usually present and closely approximated to the atretic valve, but is somewhat hypoplastic. Although the RV is always reduced in size, the degree of reduction is variable. The size of the RV is critical to the success of surgical repair. In some children with PA/IVS, the RV is adequate for an ultimate two-ventricular repair. A normal RV has three component parts (inlet, trabecular or body, and outlet). The absence of any one of the components makes adequate RV function unlikely and a single ventricle palliative approach is necessary. Even with all three components, some RVs are inadequate.

After birth, the pulmonary flow is provided by the ductus arteriosus. MAPCAs are usually not present in this disease, in contrast to pulmonary atresia with VSD. A continuous infusion of PGE_1 must be started as soon as possible after birth to maintain ductal patency.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Neonates are usually cyanotic and become more so as the ductus arteriosus closes. A blowing systolic murmur resulting from the associated PDA may be heard at the pulmonary area. A holosystolic murmur is often heard at the lower left sternal border, as many children develop tricuspid insufficiency if the RV is of good size and egress from that ventricle is only through the tricuspid valve. A PFO or ASD is essential for decompression of the right side of the heart.

B. Imaging

The heart size varies depending on the degree of tricuspid insufficiency. With severe tricuspid insufficiency, right atrial enlargement may be massive and the cardiac silhouette may fill the chest on radiograph. In patients with an associated hypoplastic tricuspid valve and or RV, most of the systemic venous return travels right-to-left across the ASD and so the heart size can be normal.

C. Electrocardiography

ECG reveals a left axis for age (45–90 degrees) in the frontal plane. Left ventricular forces dominate the ECG, and there is a paucity of RV forces, particularly with a hypoplastic RV. Findings of right atrial enlargement are usually striking.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography shows atresia of the pulmonary valve with varying degrees of RV cavity and tricuspid annulus hypoplasia. Patency of an intra-atrial communication and ductus are verified by echocardiography.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

RV pressure is often suprasystemic. Angiogram of the RV reveals no filling of the pulmonary artery. Unrestricted flow through the ASD is a necessity, since egress of blood from the right heart can only occur across the atrial defect and into the left atrium. A Rashkind balloon atrial septostomy may be required to open any inadequate existing communication across the atrial septum. Some children with pulmonary atresia and an intact ventricular septum have sinusoids between the RV and the coronary arteries. In some patients, the coronary circulation may depend on high right ventricular pressure. Any attempt to decompress the RV in patients with RV-dependent coronary circulation causes myocardial infarction and death because of the precipitous decrease in coronary perfusion, so precise coronary angiography is required to evaluate the anatomy. If the RV is tripartite, coronary circulation is not RV-dependent and an eventual two-chamber repair is planned. The pulmonary valve plate may be perforated and dilated during cardiac catheterization in the newborn to allow antegrade flow from the RV to the pulmonary artery and thus encourage RV cavity growth.

» Treatment & Prognosis

As in all ductal-dependent lesions, PGE_1 is used to stabilize the patient and maintain patency of the ductus until surgery can be performed. Surgery is usually undertaken in the first week of life. If the RV is hypoplastic, significant sinusoids are present, there is RV-dependent coronary circulation (lack of antegrade filling of the coronaries from the aorta), or the pulmonic valve cannot be opened successfully during cardiac catheterization, a BT shunt or ductal stenting is performed to establish pulmonary blood flow. Later in infancy, a communication between the RV and pulmonary artery can be created to stimulate RV cavity growth. If either RV dimension or function is inadequate for two-ventricular repair, an approach similar to that taken for a single ventricle pathway best serves these children (see section on Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome). Children with significant sinusoids or coronary artery abnormalities are considered for cardiac transplantation because they are at risk for coronary insufficiency and sudden death.

The prognosis in this condition is guarded.

Schneider AW et al: More Than 25 years of experience in managing pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum. Ann Thorac Surg 2014 Nov;98(5):1680–1686 [PMID: 25149048].

Lowenthal A et al: Prenatal tricuspid valve size as a predictor of postnatal outcome in patients with severe pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum. Fetal Diagn Ther 2014;35(2):101–107 [PMID: 24457468].

TRICUSPID ATRESIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Marked cyanosis present from birth.
- ECG with left axis deviation, right atrial enlargement, and LVH.

» General Considerations

In tricuspid atresia, there is complete atresia of the tricuspid valve with no direct communication between the right atrium and the RV. There are two types of tricuspid atresia based on the relationship of the great arteries (normally related or transposed great arteries). The entire systemic venous return must flow through the atrial septum (either ASD or PFO) to reach the left atrium. The left atrium thus receives both the systemic venous return and the pulmonary venous return. Complete mixing occurs in the left atrium, resulting in variable degrees of arterial desaturation.

Because there is no flow to the RV, development of the RV depends on the presence of a ventricular left-to-right shunt. Severe hypoplasia of the RV occurs when there is no VSD or when the VSD is small.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms usually develop in early infancy with cyanosis present at birth in most infants. Growth and development are poor, and the infant usually exhibits exhaustion during feedings, tachypnea, and dyspnea. Patients with increased pulmonary blood flow may develop HF with less prominent cyanosis. The degree of pulmonary blood flow is most dependent on pulmonary vascular resistance. Those patients with low pulmonary vascular resistance will have increased pulmonary blood flow. A murmur from the VSD is usually present and heard best at the lower left sternal border. Digital clubbing is present in older children with long-standing cyanosis.

B. Imaging

The heart is slightly to markedly enlarged. The main pulmonary artery segment is usually small or absent. The size of the right atrium is moderately to massively enlarged, depending on the size of the communication at the atrial level. The pulmonary vascular markings are usually decreased. Pulmonary vascular markings may be increased if pulmonary blood flow is not restricted by the VSD or pulmonary stenosis.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG shows marked left axis deviation. The P waves are tall and peaked, indicative of right atrial hypertrophy. LVH or LV dominance is found in almost all cases. RV forces on the ECG are usually low or absent.

D. Echocardiography

Two-dimensional echocardiography is diagnostic and show absence of the tricuspid valve, the relationship between the great arteries, the anatomy of the VSD, presence of an ASD or PFO, and the size of the pulmonary arteries. Color-flow Doppler imaging can help identify atrial level shunting and levels of restriction of pulmonary blood flow, either at the VSD or in the RV outflow tract.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Catheterization reveals a right-to-left shunt at the atrial level. Because of mixing in the left atrium, oxygen saturations in the LV, RV, pulmonary artery, and aorta are identical to those in the left atrium. Right atrial pressure is increased if the ASD is restrictive. LV and systemic pressures are normal. The catheter cannot be passed through the tricuspid valve from the right atrium to the RV. A balloon atrial septostomy is performed if a restrictive PFO or ASD is present.

» Treatment & Prognosis

In infants with unrestricted pulmonary blood flow, conventional anticongestive therapy with diuretics and afterload reduction should be given until the infant begins to outgrow the VSD. Sometimes, a pulmonary artery band is needed to protect the pulmonary bed from excessive flow and development of pulmonary vascular disease.

Staged palliation of tricuspid atresia is the usual surgical approach. In infants with diminished pulmonary blood flow, PGE_1 is given until an aortopulmonary shunt (BT shunt or ductal stent) can be performed. A Glenn procedure (superior vena cava to pulmonary artery anastomosis) is done with takedown of the aortopulmonary/BT shunt at 4–6 months when saturations begin to fall, and completion of the Fontan procedure (redirection of inferior vena cava and superior vena cava to pulmonary artery) is performed when the child reaches around 15 kg.

The long-term prognosis for children treated by the Fontan procedure is unknown, although patients now are living into their late 20s and early 30s. In the short term, the best results for the Fontan procedure occur in children with low pulmonary artery pressures prior to open-heart surgery.

Wald RM et al: Outcome after prenatal diagnosis of tricuspid atresia: a multicenter experience. Am Heart J 2007;153:772–778 [PMID: 17452152].

HYPOPLASTIC LEFT HEART SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Mild cyanosis at birth.
- Minimal auscultatory findings.
- Rapid onset of shock with ductal closure.

» General Considerations

Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) includes several conditions in which obstructive lesions of the left heart are associated with hypoplasia of the LV. The syndrome occurs in 1.4%–3.8% of infants with congenital heart disease.

Stenosis or atresia of the mitral and aortic valves is the rule. In the neonate, survival depends on a PDA because ante-grade flow into the systemic circulation is inadequate or nonexistent. The PDA provides the only flow to the aorta and coronary arteries. Children with HLHS are usually stable at birth, but they deteriorate rapidly as the ductus closes in the first week of life. Untreated, the average age at death is the first week of life. Rarely, the ductus remains patent and infants may survive for weeks to months without PGE_1 therapy.

The diagnosis is often made prenatally by fetal echocardiography. Prenatal diagnosis aids in counseling for the expectant parents and planning for the delivery of the infant at or near a center with experience in treating HLHS.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Neonates with HLHS appear stable at birth because the ductus is patent. They deteriorate rapidly as the ductus closes, with shock and acidosis secondary to inadequate systemic perfusion. Oxygen saturation may actually increase for a period of time as the ductus closes due to increased blood flowing to the lungs.

B. Imaging

Chest radiograph in the first day of life may be relatively unremarkable, with the exception of a small cardiac silhouette. Later, chest radiographs demonstrate cardiac enlargement with severe pulmonary venous congestion if the PDA has begun closing or if the baby has been placed on supplemental oxygen increasing pulmonary blood flow.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG shows right axis deviation, right atrial enlargement, and RVH with a relative paucity of LV forces. The

small Q wave in lead V_6 may be absent, and a qR pattern is often seen in lead V_1.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography is diagnostic. A hypoplastic aorta and LV with atretic or severely stenotic mitral and aortic valves are diagnostic. The systemic circulation is dependent on the PDA. Color-flow Doppler imaging shows retrograde flow in the ascending aorta, as the coronary arteries are supplied by the ductus via the small native aorta.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Initiation of PGE_1 is essential and lifesaving, as systemic circulation depends on a patent ductus arteriosus. Later management depends on balancing pulmonary and systemic blood flow both of which depend on the RV. At a few days of age the pulmonary resistance falls, favoring pulmonary over-circulation and systemic underperfusion. Therapy is then directed at encouraging systemic blood flow. Despite hypoxia and cyanosis, supplemental oxygen is avoided as this will decrease pulmonary resistance and lead to further increases in pulmonary blood flow. In some centers, nitrogen is used to decrease inspired oxygen to as low as 17%. This therapy must be carefully monitored, but results in increased pulmonary arterial resistance, which encourages systemic blood flow and improves systemic perfusion. Systemic afterload reduction will also increase systemic perfusion. Adequate perfusion can usually be obtained by keeping systemic O_2 saturation between 65% and 80%, or more accurately a PO_2 of 40 mm Hg.

Staged surgical palliation is the most common management approach. In the Norwood procedure, the relatively normal main pulmonary artery is transected and connected to the small ascending aorta. The entire aortic arch must be reconstructed due to its small size. Then, either a BT shunt (from the subclavian artery to the pulmonary artery) or a Sano shunt (from the RV to the pulmonary artery) must be created to restore pulmonary blood flow. Children who have a Norwood procedure will later require a Glenn anastomosis (superior vena cava to pulmonary artery with takedown of the systemic-pulmonary shunt) and then a Fontan (inferior vena cava to pulmonary artery, completing the systemic venous bypass of the heart) at ages 6 months and 2–3 years, respectively. Despite advances in surgical technique and postoperative care, HLHS remains one of the most challenging lesions in pediatric cardiology, with one-year survival as low as 70%.

Orthotopic heart transplantation is also a treatment option for newborns with HLHS, but in the current era is typically only performed in infants who are considered poor Norwood candidates. Heart transplantation is more commonly utilized in the event of a failed surgical palliation or if the systemic RV fails (often in adolescence or young adulthood).

Recently, some centers offer a "hybrid" approach to HLHS as a result of collaboration between surgeons and interventional cardiologists. In the hybrid procedure, the chest is opened surgically and the branch pulmonary arteries are banded, to limit pulmonary blood flow. Then, also through the open chest, a PDA stent is placed by the interventionalist to maintain systemic output. The second stage is considered a "comprehensive Glenn," in which the pulmonary artery bands and ductal stent are taken down, the aortic arch is reconstructed and the superior vena cava is surgically connected to the pulmonary arteries. Short term (30 day) survival after the first-stage "hybrid" is greater than 90% at the most experienced centers, but second stage risks and complications mitigate some of that initial survival advantage. Long-term follow-up data are not yet available.

Sharma V et al: In search of the ideal pulmonary blood source for the Norwood procedure: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Ann Thorac Surg 2014 Jul;98(1):142–150 [PMID: 24793687].

TRANSPOSITION OF THE GREAT ARTERIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cyanotic newborn without respiratory distress.
- More common in males.

» General Considerations

Transposition of the great arteries (TGA) is the second most common cyanotic congenital heart disease, accounting for 5% of all cases of congenital heart disease. The male-to-female ratio is 3:1. It is caused by an embryologic abnormality in the spiral division of the truncus arteriosus in which the aorta arises from the RV and the pulmonary artery from the LV. This is referred to as "ventriculoarterial discordance." Patients may have a VSD, or the ventricular septum may be intact. Left unrepaired, transposition is associated with a high incidence of early pulmonary vascular obstructive disease. Because pulmonary and systemic circulations are in parallel, survival is impossible without mixing between the two circuits. Specifically an interatrial communication (PFO or ASD) is critically important. The majority of mixing occurs at the atrial level (some mixing can occur at the level of the ductus as well), so even in the presence of a VSD an adequate interatrial communication is needed. If the atrial communication is inadequate at birth, the patient is severely cyanotic.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Many neonates are large (up to 4 kg) and profoundly cyanotic without respiratory distress or a significant murmur. Infants with a large VSD may be less cyanotic and they

usually have a prominent murmur. The findings on cardiovascular examination depend on the intracardiac defects. Obstruction to outflow from either ventricle is possible, and coarctation must be ruled out.

B. Imaging

The chest radiograph in transposition is usually nondiagnostic. Sometimes there is an "egg on a string" appearance because the aorta is directly anterior to the main pulmonary artery, giving the image of a narrow mediastinum.

C. Electrocardiography

Because the newborn ECG normally has RV predominance, the ECG in transposition is of little help, as it will frequently look normal.

D. Echocardiography

Two-dimensional imaging and Doppler evaluation demonstrate the anatomy and physiology well. The aorta arises from the RV and the pulmonary artery arises from the LV. Associated defects, such as a VSD, RV, or LV outflow tract obstruction, or coarctation, must be evaluated. The atrial septum should be closely examined, as any restriction could prove detrimental as the child awaits repair. The coronary anatomy is variable and must be defined prior to surgery.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

A Rashkind balloon atrial septostomy is frequently performed in complete transposition if the interatrial communication is restrictive. This procedure can be done at the bedside with echocardiographic guidance in most cases. The coronary anatomy can be delineated by ascending aortography if not well seen by echocardiography.

» Treatment

Early corrective surgery is recommended. The arterial switch operation (ASO) has replaced the previously performed atrial switch procedures (Mustard and Senning operations). The ASO is performed at age 4–7 days. The arteries are transected above the level of the valves and switched, while the coronaries are separately reimplanted. Small associated VSDs may be left to close on their own, but large VSDs are repaired. The ASD is also closed. Early surgical repair (< 14 days of age) is vital for patients with TGA and an intact ventricular septum to avoid potential deconditioning of the LV as it pumps to the low-resistance pulmonary circulation. If a large, unrestrictive VSD is present, LV pressure is maintained at systemic levels, the LV does not become deconditioned, and corrective surgery can be delayed for a few months. Surgery should be performed by age 3–4 months in those with TGA and a VSD because of the high risk of early pulmonary vascular disease associated with this defect.

Operative survival after the ASO is greater than 95% in major centers. The main advantage of the arterial switch procedure in comparison to the atrial switch procedures (Mustard and Senning operations) is that the systemic ventricle is the LV. Patients who have undergone an atrial switch undergo surgical patch placement to baffle the venous return through the atria to the opposite ventricle. They then have an RV as their systemic ventricle, leaving them with significant late risk of RV failure and need for heart transplantation and are at risk for atrial baffle obstruction.

Villafañe J et al: D-transposition of the great arteries: the current era of the arterial switch operation. J Am Coll Cardiol 2014 Aug 5;64(5):498–511 [PMID: 25082585].

1. Congenitally Corrected Transposition of the Great Arteries

Congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries (ccTGA) is a relatively uncommon congenital heart disease. Patients may present with cyanosis, heart failure, or be asymptomatic, depending on the associated lesions. In ccTGA, both atrioventricular and ventriculoarterial discordance occurs so that the right atrium connects to a morphologic LV, which supports the pulmonary artery. Conversely, the left atrium empties via a tricuspid valve into a morphologic RV, which supports the aorta. Common associated lesions are VSD and pulmonary stenosis. A dysplastic left-sided tricuspid valve is almost always present. In the absence of associated lesions, patients with ccTGA are often undiagnosed until adulthood when they present with left-sided AV valve insufficiency or arrhythmias.

Previously, surgical repair was directed at VSD closure and relief of pulmonary outflow tract obstruction—a technique that maintained the RV as the systemic ventricle with outflow to the aorta. It is now recognized that these patients have a reduced life span due to systemic RV failure; thus other surgical techniques have been advocated. The double-switch procedure is one such technique. An atrial level switch (Mustard or Senning technique) is performed, in which pulmonary and systemic venous blood are baffled such that they drain into the contralateral ventricle (systemic venous return drains into the RV and pulmonary venous return drains into the LV). An ASO then restores the morphologic LV to its position as systemic ventricle.

Patients with ccTGA have an increased incidence of complete heart block with an estimated risk of 1% per year and an overall frequency of 50%.

Malhotra SP et al: The hemi-Mustard/bidirectional Glenn atrial switch procedure in the double-switch operation for congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries: rationale and midterm results. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2011;141(1):162–170 [PMID: 21055773].

2. Double-Outlet Right Ventricle

In this uncommon malformation, both great arteries arise from the RV. There is always a VSD that allows blood to exit the LV. Presenting symptoms depend on the relationship of the VSD to the semilunar valves. The VSD can be in variable positions, and the great arteries could be normally related or malposed. In the absence of outflow obstruction, a large left-to-right shunt exists and the clinical picture resembles that of a large VSD. Pulmonary stenosis may be present, particularly if the VSD is remote from the pulmonary artery. This physiology is similar to ToF. Alternatively, if the VSD is nearer the pulmonary artery, aortic outflow may be obstructed (called the Taussig-Bing malformation). Early primary correction is the goal. LV flow is directed to the aorta across the VSD (closing the VSD), and an RV to pulmonary artery conduit is placed to maintain unobstructed flow through the pulmonary circulation. If the aorta is far from the VSD, an arterial switch may be necessary. Echocardiography is usually sufficient to make the diagnosis and determine the orientation of the great vessels and their relationship to the VSD.

Mahle WT et al: Anatomy, echocardiography, and surgical approach to double outlet right ventricle. Cardiol Young 2008;18(Suppl 3):39–51 [PMID: 19094378].

TOTAL ANOMALOUS PULMONARY VENOUS RETURN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abnormal pulmonary venous connection leading to cyanosis.
- Occurs with or without a murmur and may have accentuated P_2.
- Right atrial enlargement and RVH.

General Considerations

This malformation accounts for 2% of all congenital heart lesions. Instead of the pulmonary veins draining into the left atrium, the veins empty into a confluence that usually is located behind the left atrium. However, the confluence is not connected to the left atrium and instead the pulmonary venous blood drains into the systemic venous system. Therefore, there is complete mixing of the systemic and pulmonary venous blood at the level of the right atrium. The presentation of a patient with total anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR) depends on the route of drainage into the systemic circulation and whether or not this drainage route is obstructed.

The malformation is classified as either intra-, supra-, or infracardiac. Intracardiac TAPVR occurs when the pulmonary venous confluence drains directly into the heart, usually via the coronary sinus into the right atrium (rarely direct drainage into the right atrium). Supracardiac (or supradiaphragmatic) return is defined as a confluence that drains into the right superior vena cava, innominate vein, or persistent left superior vena cava. In infracardiac (or infradiaphragmatic) return, the confluence drains below the diaphragm usually into the portal venous system which empties into the inferior vena cava. Infracardiac pulmonary venous return is very frequently obstructed. This obstruction to pulmonary venous drainage makes this lesion a potential surgical emergency. Supracardiac veins may also be obstructed, though less commonly. Rarely, the pulmonary venous confluence drains to more than one location, called mixed TAPVR.

Because the entire venous drainage from the body returns to the right atrium, a right-to-left shunt must be present at the atrial level, either as an ASD or a PFO. Occasionally, the atrial septum is restrictive and balloon septostomy is needed at birth to allow filling of the left heart.

Clinical Findings

A. Unobstructed Pulmonary Venous Return

Patients with unobstructed TAPVR and a large atrial communication tend to have high pulmonary blood flow and typically present with cardiomegaly and HF rather than cyanosis. Oxygen saturations in the high 80s or low 90s are common. Most patients in this group have mild to moderate elevation of pulmonary artery pressure owing to elevated pulmonary blood flow. In most instances, pulmonary artery pressure does not reach systemic levels.

1. Symptoms and signs—Patients may have mild cyanosis and tachypnea in the neonatal period and early infancy. Examination discloses dusky nail beds and mucous membranes, but overt cyanosis and digital clubbing are usually absent. An RV heave is palpable, and P_2 is increased. A systolic and diastolic murmur may be heard as a result of increased flow across the pulmonary and tricuspid valves, respectively.

2. Imaging—Chest radiography reveals cardiomegaly involving the right heart and pulmonary artery. Pulmonary vascular markings are increased.

3. Electrocardiography—ECG shows right axis deviation and varying degrees of right atrial enlargement and right ventricular hypertrophy. A qR pattern is often seen over the right precordial leads.

4. Echocardiography—Demonstration by echocardiography of a discrete chamber posterior to the left atrium and an obligatory right-to-left atrial level shunt is strongly suggestive of the diagnosis. The availability of two-dimensional echocardiography plus color-flow Doppler has increased diagnostic accuracy such that diagnostic cardiac catheterization is rarely required.

B. With Obstructed Pulmonary Venous Return

This group includes many patients with infracardiac TAPVR and a few of the patients in whom venous drainage is into a systemic vein above the diaphragm. The pulmonary venous return is usually obstructed at the level of the ascending or descending vein that connects the confluence to the systemic veins to which it is draining. Obstruction can be caused from extravascular structures (such as the diaphragm), or by inherent stenosis within the ascending or descending vein.

1. Symptoms and signs—Infants usually present shortly after birth with severe cyanosis and respiratory distress and require early corrective surgery. Cardiac examination discloses a striking RV impulse. S_2 is markedly accentuated and single. Although there is often no murmur, sometimes, a systolic murmur is heard over the pulmonary area with radiation over the lung fields. Diastolic murmurs are uncommon.

2. Imaging—The heart is usually small and pulmonary venous congestion severe with associated air bronchograms. The chest radiographic appearance may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of severe lung disease. In less severe cases, the heart size may be normal or slightly enlarged with mild pulmonary venous congestion.

3. Electrocardiography—The ECG shows right axis deviation, right atrial enlargement, and RVH.

4. Echocardiography—Echocardiography shows a small left atrium and LV, a dilated right heart with high RV pressure. For infracardiac TAPVR, appearance of a vessel lying parallel and anterior to the descending aorta and to the left of the inferior vena cava may represent the vein draining the confluence caudally toward the diaphragm. Color-flow Doppler echocardiography will demonstrate a right-to-left atrial level shunt and may reveal flow disturbance, commonly near the confluence or in the liver, where flow is obstructed.

5. Cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography—If echocardiography does not confirm the anatomy, cardiac catheterization and angiography demonstrate the site of entry of the anomalous veins, determine the degree of pulmonary hypertension, and calculate pulmonary vascular resistance.

» Treatment

Surgery is always required for TAPVR. If pulmonary venous return is obstructed, surgery must be performed immediately (obstructed TAPVR represents one of the few surgical emergencies in congenital heart disease). If early surgery is not required and the atrial septum is restrictive, a balloon atrial septostomy can be performed in newborns, to be followed shortly by less emergent surgical repair.

» Course & Prognosis

Most children with TAPVR do well after surgery. However, some surgical survivors develop late stenosis of the pulmonary veins. Pulmonary vein stenosis is an intractable condition that is difficult to treat either with interventional catheterization or surgery and has a poor prognosis. A heart-lung transplant may be the only remaining option available to those with severe pulmonary vein stenosis. By avoiding direct suturing at the pulmonary venous ostia, the chance of recurrent stenosis at the anastomotic site is lessened. Unfortunately, any manipulation of the pulmonary veins increases the risk of stenosis.

Seale AN et al: Total anomalous pulmonary venous connection: outcome of postoperative pulmonary venous obstruction. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2013 May;145(5):1255–1262 [PMID: 22892140].

TRUNCUS ARTERIOSUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Early HF with or without cyanosis.
- Systolic ejection click.

» General Considerations

Truncus arteriosus accounts for less than 1% of congenital heart malformations. A single great artery arises from the heart, giving rise to the systemic, pulmonary, and coronary circulations. Truncus develops embryologically as a result of failure of the division of the common truncus arteriosus into the aorta and the pulmonary artery. A VSD is always present. The number of truncal valve leaflets varies from two to six, and the valve may be insufficient or stenotic.

Truncus arteriosus is divided into subtypes by the anatomy of the pulmonary circulation. A single main pulmonary artery may arise from the base of the trunk and gives rise to branch pulmonary arteries (type 1). Alternatively, the pulmonary arteries may arise separately from the common trunk, either in close association with one another (type 2) or widely separated (type 3). This lesion can occur in association with an interrupted aortic arch.

In patients with truncus, blood from both ventricles leaves the heart through a single exit. Thus, oxygen saturation in the pulmonary artery is equal to that in the systemic arteries. The degree of systemic arterial oxygen saturation depends on the ratio of pulmonary to systemic blood flow. If pulmonary vascular resistance is normal, the pulmonary blood flow is greater than the systemic blood flow and the saturation is relatively high. If pulmonary vascular resistance is elevated because of pulmonary vascular obstructive disease or small pulmonary arteries, pulmonary blood flow is reduced and oxygen saturation is low. The systolic pressures are systemic in both ventricles.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

High pulmonary blood flow characterizes most patients with truncus arteriosus. These patients are usually minimally cyanotic and present in HF. Examination of the heart reveals a hyperactive precordium. A systolic thrill is common at the lower left sternal border. A loud early systolic ejection click is commonly heard. S_2 is single and accentuated. A loud holosystolic murmur is audible at the left lower sternal border. A diastolic flow murmur can often be heard at the apex due to increased pulmonary venous return crossing the mitral valve. An additional diastolic murmur of truncal insufficiency may be present.

Patients with decreased pulmonary blood flow are more profoundly cyanotic early. The most common manifestations are growth retardation, easy fatigability, and HF. The heart is not hyperactive. S_1 and S_2 are single and loud. A systolic murmur is heard at the lower left sternal border. No mitral flow murmur is heard, as pulmonary venous return is decreased. A loud systolic ejection click is commonly heard. In the current era, this lesion is often diagnosed by prenatal screening echocardiography.

B. Imaging

The common radiographic findings are cardiomegaly, absence of the main pulmonary artery segment, and a large aorta that has a right arch 30% of the time. The pulmonary vascular markings vary with the degree of pulmonary blood flow.

C. Electrocardiography

The axis is usually normal. RVH or combined ventricular hypertrophy is commonly present.

D. Echocardiography

Images generally show override of a single great artery (similar to ToF, but no second great artery arises directly from the heart). The origin of the pulmonary arteries and the degree of truncal valve abnormality can be defined. Color-flow Doppler can aid in the description of pulmonary flow and the function of the truncal valve, both of which are critical to management. Echocardiography is critical in identifying associated lesions which will impact surgical planning, such as the presence of an interrupted aortic arch.

E. Angiocardiography

Cardiac catheterization is not routinely performed but may be of value in older infants in whom pulmonary vascular disease must be ruled out. The single most important angiogram would be from the truncal root, as both the origin of the pulmonary arteries and the amount of truncal insufficiency would be seen from one injection.

» Treatment

Anticongestive measures are needed for patients with high pulmonary blood flow and congestive failure. Surgery is always required in this condition. Because of HF and the risk of development of pulmonary vascular disease, surgery is usually performed in the neonatal period or early infancy. The VSD is closed to allow LV egress to the truncal valve. The pulmonary artery (type 1) or arteries (types 2–3) are separated from the truncus as a block, and a valved conduit is fashioned from the RV to the pulmonary circulation.

» Course & Prognosis

Children with a good surgical result generally do well. Outcome is also dependent to some degree on anatomy and integrity of the truncal valve, which becomes the "neoaortic" valve. Patients with a dysplastic valve may eventually require surgical repair or replacement of this valve. In addition, similar to patients with ToF, they eventually outgrow the RV-to-pulmonary artery conduit placed in infancy and require revision of the conduit in later childhood. The risk of early pulmonary vascular obstructive disease is high in the unrepaired patient and a decision to delay open-heart surgery beyond age 4–6 months is not wise even in stable patients.

Henaine R et al: Fate of the truncal valve in truncus arteriosus. Ann Thorac Surg 2008 Jan;85(1):172–178 [PMID: 18154803].

Konstantinov IE et al: Truncus arteriosus associated with interrupted aortic arch in 50 neonates: a Congenital Heart Surgeons Society study. Ann Thorac Surg 2006 Jan;81(1):214–222 [PMID: 16368368].

° QUALITY IMPr OVEMENT IN CONGENITAL HEAr T DISEASE

The National Pediatric Cardiology Quality Improvement Collaborative (NPC-QIC) was formed in response to the Joint Council on Congenital Heart Disease (JCCHD) initiative to improve outcomes of children with heart disease. The

mission of the NPC-QIC is to build a collaborative network of pediatric cardiologists and an associated database to serve as the foundation for improvement projects such as improving survival and quality of life in infants with HLHS. As outcomes improve and children with complex congenital heart disease are surviving into adulthood, subspecialty clinics addressing the needs of adults with repaired or palliated congenital heart disease are required to assess and advise patients regarding adult issues such as impact of pregnancy, risks of anticoagulation during pregnancy, and appropriate adult career choices.

Baker-Smith CM et al: Predictors of prolonged length of intensive care unit stay after stage I palliation: a report from the National Pediatric Cardiology Quality Improvement Collaborative. Pediatr Cardiol 2014 Mar;35(3):431–440 [PMID: 24104215].
NPC-QIC website: http://jcchdqi.org/.

ACQUIr ED HEAr T DISEASE

RHEUMATIC FEVER

Rheumatic fever remains a major cause of morbidity and mortality in developing countries that suffer from poverty, overcrowding, and poor access to health care. Even in developed countries, rheumatic fever has not been entirely eradicated. The overall incidence in the United States is less than 1 per 100,000. Group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infection of the upper respiratory tract is the essential trigger in predisposed individuals. Only certain serotypes of group A Streptococcus cause rheumatic fever. The latest attempts to define host susceptibility implicate immune response genes that are present in approximately 15% of the population. The immune response triggered by infection of the pharynx with group A streptococci consists of (1) sensitization of B lymphocytes by streptococcal antigens, (2) formation of antistreptococcal antibody, (3) formation of immune complexes that cross-react with cardiac sarcolemma antigens, and (4) myocardial and valvular inflammatory response.

The peak age of risk in the United States is 5–15 years. The disease is slightly more common in girls and in African Americans. The annual death rate from rheumatic heart disease in school-aged children (whites and non-whites) recorded in the 1980s was less than 1 per 100,000.

» Clinical Findings

Two major or one major and two minor manifestations (plus supporting evidence of streptococcal infection) based on the modified Jones criteria are needed for the diagnosis of acute rheumatic fever (Table 20–13). Except in cases of rheumatic fever manifesting solely as Sydenham chorea or long-standing carditis, there should be clear evidence of a streptococcal infection such as scarlet fever, a positive throat culture for group A β-hemolytic Streptococcus, and increased antistreptolysin O or other streptococcal antibody titers. The antistreptolysin O titer is significantly higher in rheumatic fever than in uncomplicated streptococcal infections.

Table 20–13. Jones criteria (modified) for diagnosis of rheumatic fever.

Major manifestations
Carditis
Polyarthritis
Sydenham chorea
Erythema marginatum
Subcutaneous nodules
Minor manifestations
Clinical
Previous rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease
Polyarthralgia
Fever
Laboratory
Acute phase reaction: elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, C-reactive protein, leukocytosis
Prolonged PR interval
Plus
Supporting evidence of preceding streptococcal infection, ie, increased titers of antistreptolysin O or other streptococcal antibodies, positive throat culture for group A Streptococcus

A. Carditis

Carditis is the most serious consequence of rheumatic fever and varies from minimal to life-threatening HF. The term carditis implies pancardiac inflammation, but it may be limited to valves, myocardium, or pericardium. Valvulitis is frequently seen, with the mitral valve most commonly affected. Mitral insufficiency is the most common valvular residua of acute rheumatic carditis. Mitral stenosis after acute rheumatic fever is rarely encountered until 5–10 years after the first episode. Thus, mitral stenosis is much more commonly seen in adults than in children.

An early decrescendo diastolic murmur consistent with aortic insufficiency is occasionally encountered as the sole valvular manifestation of rheumatic carditis. The aortic valve is the second most common valve affected in polyvalvular as well as in single-valve disease. The aortic valve is involved more often in males and in African Americans. Dominant aortic stenosis of rheumatic origin does not occur in pediatric patients. In one large study, the shortest length of time observed for a patient to develop dominant aortic stenosis secondary to rheumatic heart disease was 20 years.

B. Polyarthritis

The large joints (knees, hips, wrists, elbows, and shoulders) are most commonly involved and the arthritis is typically

migratory. Joint swelling and associated limitation of movement should be present. This is one of the more common major criteria, occurring in 80% of patients. Arthralgia alone is not a major criterion.

C. Sydenham Chorea

Sydenham chorea is characterized by involuntary and purposeless movements and is often associated with emotional lability. These symptoms become progressively worse and may be accompanied by ataxia and slurring of speech. Muscular weakness becomes apparent following the onset of the involuntary movements. Chorea is self-limiting, although it may last up to 3 months. Chorea may not be apparent for months to years after the acute episode of rheumatic fever.

D. Erythema Marginatum

A macular, serpiginous, erythematous rash with a sharply demarcated border appears primarily on the trunk and the extremities. The face is usually spared.

E. Subcutaneous Nodules

These usually occur only in severe cases, and then most commonly over the joints, scalp, and spinal column. The nodules vary from a few millimeters to 2 cm in diameter and are nontender and freely movable under the skin.

» Treatment & Prophylaxis

A. Treatment of the Acute Episode

1. Anti-infective therapy—Eradication of the streptococcal infection is essential. Long-acting benzathine penicillin is the drug of choice. Depending on the age and weight of the patient, a single intramuscular injection of 0.6–1.2 million units is effective; alternatively, give penicillin V, 250–500 mg orally 2–3 times a day for 10 days, or amoxicillin, 50 mg/kg (maximum 1 g) once daily for 10 days. Narrow-spectrum cephalosporins, clindamycin, azithromycin, or clarithromycin are used in those allergic to penicillin.

2. Anti-inflammatory agents

A. Aspirin—Aspirin, 30–60 mg/kg/d, is given in four divided doses. This dose is usually sufficient to affect dramatic relief of arthritis and fever. Higher dosages carry a greater risk of side effects and there are no proven short- or long-term benefits of high doses that produce salicylate blood levels of 20–30 mg/dL. The duration of therapy is tailored to meet the needs of the patient, but 2–6 weeks of therapy with reduction in dose toward the end of the course is usually sufficient. Other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents used because of concerns about Reye syndrome are less effective than aspirin.

B. Corticosteroids—There is no clear evidence to support the use of corticosteroids, but they are occasionally used for those with severe carditis.

3. Therapy in heart failure—Treatment for HF is based on symptoms and severity of valve involvement and cardiac dysfunction (see section on Heart Failure, earlier).

4. Bed rest and ambulation—Bed rest is not required in most cases. Activity level should be commensurate with symptoms and children should be allowed to self-limit their activity level while affected. Most acute episodes of rheumatic fever are managed on an outpatient basis.

B. Treatment After the Acute Episode

1. Prevention—Prevention is critical, as patients who have had rheumatic fever are at greater risk of recurrence if future group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infections are inadequately treated. Follow-up visits are essential to reinforce the necessity for prophylaxis, with regular intramuscular long-acting benzathine penicillin injections preferred to oral medication due to better adherence. Long-term (possibly lifelong) prophylaxis is recommended for patients with residual rheumatic heart disease. More commonly, with no or transient cardiac involvement, 5–10 years of therapy or discontinuance in early adulthood (age 21) (whichever is longer) is an effective approach.

The following preventive regimens are in current use:

a. Penicillin g benzathine—600,000 units for less than 27 kg, 1.2 million units for more than 27 kg intramuscularly every 4 weeks is the drug of choice.

b. Penicillin V—250 mg orally twice daily is much less effective than intramuscular penicillin benzathine G (5.5 vs 0.4 streptococcal infections per 100 patient-years).

c. Sulfadiazine—500 mg for less than 27 kg and 1 g for more than 27 kg, once daily. Blood dyscrasias and lesser effectiveness in reducing streptococcal infections make this drug less satisfactory than penicillin benzathine G. This is the recommended regimen for penicillin-allergic patients.

d. Erythromycin—250 mg orally twice a day may be given to patients who are allergic to both penicillin and sulfonamides. Azithromycin or clarithromycin may also be used.

2. Residual valvular damage—As described above, the mitral and aortic valves are most commonly affected by rheumatic fever and the severity of carditis is quite variable. In the most severe cases, cardiac failure or the need for a valve replacement can occur in the acute setting. In less severe cases, valve abnormalities can persist, requiring lifelong medical management and eventual valve replacement. Other patients fully recover without residual cardiac sequelae.

Although antibiotic prophylaxis to protect against endocarditis used to be recommended for those with residual valvular abnormalities, the criteria for prevention of IE were revised in 2007 and routine prophylaxis is recommended only if a prosthetic valve is in place.

Cilliers A et al: Anti-inflammatory treatment for carditis in acute rheumatic fever. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Jun 13;6:CD003176 [PMID: 22696333].

Gerber MA et al: Prevention of rheumatic fever and diagnosis and treatment of acute Streptococcal pharyngitis: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis, and Kawasaki Disease Committee of the Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, the Interdisciplinary Council on Functional Genomics and Translational Biology, and the Interdisciplinary Council on Quality of Care and Outcomes Research: endorsed by the American Academy of Pediatrics. Circulation 2009;119:1541–1551 [PMID: 19246689].

KAWASAKI DISEASE

Kawasaki disease was first described in Japan in 1967 and was initially called mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome. The cause is unclear and there is no specific diagnostic test. Kawasaki disease is the leading cause of acquired heart disease in children in the United States. Eighty percent of patients are younger than 5 years old (median age at diagnosis is 2 years), and the male-to-female ratio is 1.5:1. Diagnostic criteria are fever for more than 5 days and at least four of the following features: (1) bilateral, painless, nonexudative conjunctivitis; (2) lip or oral cavity changes (eg, lip cracking and fissuring, strawberry tongue, and inflammation of the oral mucosa); (3) cervical lymphadenopathy greater than or equal to 1.5 cm in diameter and usually unilateral; (4) polymorphous exanthema; and (5) extremity changes (redness and swelling of the hands and feet with subsequent desquamation). Clinical features not part of the diagnostic criteria, but frequently associated with Kawasaki disease, are shown in Table 20–14.

The potential for cardiovascular complications is the most serious aspect of Kawasaki disease. Complications during the acute illness include myocarditis, pericarditis, valvular heart disease (usually mitral or aortic regurgitation), and coronary arteritis. Patients with fever for at least 5 days but fewer than four of the diagnostic features can be diagnosed with incomplete Kawasaki disease, especially if they have coronary artery abnormalities detected by echocardiography. Comprehensive recommendations regarding the evaluation for children with suspected incomplete Kawasaki disease were outlined in a 2004 Statement by the American Heart Association (see references at the end of this section).

Coronary artery lesions range from mild transient dilation of a coronary artery to large aneurysms. Aneurysms rarely form before day 10 of illness. Untreated patients have a 15%–25% risk of developing coronary aneurysms. Those at greatest risk for aneurysm formation are males, young infants (< 6 months), and those not treated with intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG). Most coronary artery aneurysms resolve within 5 years of diagnosis; however, as aneurysms resolve, associated obstruction or stenosis (19% of all aneurysms) may develop, which may result in coronary ischemia. Giant aneurysms (> 8 mm) are less likely to resolve, and nearly 50% eventually become stenotic. Of additional concern, acute thrombosis of an aneurysm can occur, resulting in myocardial infarction that is fatal in approximately 20% of cases.

Table 20–14. Noncardiac manifestations of Kawasaki disease.

System	Associated Signs and Symptoms
Gastrointestinal	Vomiting, diarrhea, gallbladder hydrops, elevated transaminases
Blood	Elevated ESR or CRP, leukocytosis, hypoalbuminemia, mild anemia in acute phase and thrombocytosis in subacute phase (usually second to third week of illness)
Renal	Sterile pyuria, proteinuria
Respiratory	Cough, hoarseness, infiltrate on chest radiograph
Joint	Arthralgia and arthritis
Neurologic	Mononuclear pleocytosis of cerebrospinal fluid, irritability, facial palsy

CRP, C-reactive protein; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate.

» Treatment

Immediate management of Kawasaki disease includes IVIG and high-dose aspirin. This therapy is effective in decreasing the incidence of coronary artery dilation and aneurysm formation. The currently recommended regimen is 2 g/kg of IVIG administered over 10–12 hours and 80–100 mg/kg/d of aspirin in four divided doses. The duration of high-dose aspirin is institution-dependent: many centers reduce the dose once the patient is afebrile for 48–72 hours; others continue through 5 afebrile days or day 14 of the illness. Once high-dose aspirin is discontinued, low-dose aspirin (3–5 mg/kg/d) is given through the subacute phase of the illness (6–8 weeks) or until coronary artery abnormalities resolve. If fever recurs within 48–72 hours of the initial treatment course and no other source of the fever is detected, a second dose of IVIG is often recommended; however, the effectiveness of this approach has not been clearly demonstrated. Corticosteroids or other anti-inflammatory therapy (eg, infliximab) should be considered for patients with persistent fever despite one or two infusions of IVIG. Follow up of patients with treated Kawasaki disease depends on the degree of coronary involvement (Table 20–15).

Table 20–15. Long-term management in Kawasaki disease.

Risk Level	Definition	Management Guidelines
I	No coronary artery changes at any stage of the illness	No ASA is needed beyond the subacute phase (6–8 wk). No follow-up beyond the first year.
II	Transient ectasia of coronary arteries during the acute phase	Same as above, or clinical follow-up ± ECG every 3–5 y.
III	Single small to medium coronary aneurysm	ASA until abnormality resolves. Annual follow-up with ECG and echo if < 10 y and every other-year stress testing if > 10 y.
IV	Giant aneurysm or multiple small to medium aneurysms without obstruction	Long-term ASA ± warfarin. Annual follow-up with ECG, echo, and stress testing.
V	Coronary artery obstruction	Long-term ASA ± warfarin ± calcium channel blocker to reduce myocardial oxygen consumption. Echo and ECG every 6 mo. Stress testing and Holter examination annually.

ASA, acetyl salicylic acid; ECG, electrocardiogram; echo, echocardiogram.

Dominguez SR, Anderson MS: Advances in the treatment of Kawasaki disease. Curr Opin Pediatr 2013 Feb;25(1):103–109 [PMID: 23283289].

Newburger JW et al: Diagnosis, treatment, and long-term management of Kawasaki disease: a statement for health professionals from the Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis and Kawasaki Disease, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, American Heart Association. Circulation 2004 Oct 26;110(17):2747–2771 [PMID: 15505111].

INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Positive blood culture.
- Intracardiac oscillating mass, abscess, or new valve regurgitation on echocardiogram.
- Fever.
- Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein.

General Considerations

Bacterial or fungal infection of the endocardium of the heart is rare and usually occurs in the setting of a preexisting abnormality of the heart or great arteries. It may occur in a normal heart during septicemia or as a consequence of infected indwelling central catheters.

The frequency of infective endocarditis (IE) appears to be increasing for several reasons: (1) increased survival in children with congenital heart disease, (2) greater use of central venous catheters, and (3) increased use of prosthetic material and valves. Pediatric patients without preexisting heart disease are also at increased risk for IE because of (1) increased survival rates for children with immune deficiencies, (2) long-term use of indwelling lines in ill newborns and patients with chronic diseases, and (3) increased intravenous drug abuse.

Patients at greatest risk are children with unrepaired or palliated cyanotic heart disease (especially in the presence of an aorta to pulmonary shunt), those with implanted prosthetic material, and patients who have had a prior episode of IE. Common organisms causing IE are viridans streptococci (30%–40% of cases), Staphylococcus aureus (25%–30%), and fungal agents (about 5%).

Clinical Findings

A. History

The majority of patients with IE have a history of heart disease. There may or may not be an antecedent infection or surgical procedure (cardiac surgery, tooth extraction, tonsillectomy). Transient bacteremia occurs frequently during normal daily activities such as flossing or brushing teeth, using a toothpick and even when chewing food. Although dental and nonsterile surgical procedures also can result in transient bacteremias, these episodes are much less frequent for a given individual. This may be why a clear inciting event is often not identified in association with IE and also underlies the recent changes in guidelines for antibiotic prophylaxis to prevent IE (for details, see Wilson et al reference).

B. Symptoms, Signs, and Laboratory Findings

Although IE can present in a fulminant fashion with cardiovascular collapse, often it presents in an indolent manner with fever, malaise, and weight loss. Joint pain and vomiting are less common. On physical examination, there may be a new or changing murmur, splenomegaly, and hepatomegaly. Classic findings of Osler nodes (tender nodules, usually on the pulp of the fingers), Janeway lesions (nontender hemorrhagic macules on palms and soles), splinter hemorrhages, and Roth spots (retinal hemorrhage) are uncommonly noted in children. Laboratory findings

Table 20–16. Conditions requiring antibiotic prophylaxis for the prevention of infective endocarditis (IE).

Prosthetic cardiac valves
Prior episode of IE
Congenital heart disease (CHD)
Palliated cyanotic CHD
For 6 months postprocedure if CHD repair involves implanted prosthetic material
Repair of CHD with residual defect bordered by prosthetic material
Cardiac transplant with valvulopathy

include multiple positive blood cultures, elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein, and hematuria. Transthoracic echocardiography can identify large vegetations in some patients, but transesophageal imaging has better sensitivity and may be necessary if the diagnosis remains in question.

» Prevention

In 2007, the AHA revised criteria for patients requiring prophylaxis for IE (Table 20–16). Only the high-risk patients listed require antibiotics before dental work (tooth extraction or cleaning) and procedures involving the respiratory tract or infected skin or musculoskeletal structures. IE prophylaxis is not recommended for gastrointestinal or genitourinary procedures, body piercing, or tattooing.

Recommended prophylaxis is 50 mg/kg of oral amoxicillin for patients < 40 kg and 2000 mg for those > 40 kg. This dose is to be given 1 hour prior to procedure. If the patient is allergic to amoxicillin, alternative prophylactic antibiotics are recommended in the AHA guidelines.

» Treatment

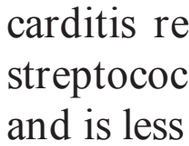
In general, appropriate antibiotic therapy should be initiated as soon as IE is suspected and several large volume blood cultures have been obtained via separate venipunctures. Therapy can be tailored once the pathogen and sensitivities are defined. Vancomycin or a β-lactam antibiotic, with or without gentamicin, for a 6-week course is the most common regimen. If HF occurs and progresses in the face of adequate antibiotic therapy, surgical excision of the infected area and prosthetic valve replacement must be considered.

» Course & Prognosis

Factors associated with a poor outcome are delayed diagnosis, presence of prosthetic material, perioperative associated IE, and S aureus infection. Mortality for bacterial endocarditis in children ranges from 10% to 25%, with fungal infections having a much greater mortality (50% or more).

Wilson W et al: Prevention of infective endocarditis: guidelines from the American Heart Association: a guideline from the American Heart Association Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis, and Kawasaki Disease Committee, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, and the Council on Clinical Cardiology, Council on Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia, and the Quality of Care and Outcomes Research Interdisciplinary Working Group. Circulation 2007;116:1736–1754 [PMID: 17446442].

PERICARDITIS



ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chest pain made worse by deep inspiration and decreased by leaning forward.
- Fever and tachycardia.
- Shortness of breath.
- Pericardial friction rub.
- ECG with elevated ST segments.

» General Considerations

Pericarditis is an inflammation of the pericardium and is commonly related to an infectious process. The most common cause of pericarditis in children is viral infection (eg, coxsackievirus, mumps, Epstein-Barr, adenovirus, influenza, and human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]). Purulent pericarditis results from bacterial infection (eg, pneumococci, streptococci, staphylococci, and Haemophilus influenzae) and is less common but potentially life-threatening.

In some cases, pericardial disease occurs in association with a generalized process. Associations include rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis, uremia, systemic lupus erythematosus, malignancy, and tuberculosis. Pericarditis after cardiac surgery (postpericardiotomy syndrome) is most commonly seen after surgical closure of an ASD. Postpericardiotomy syndrome appears to be autoimmune in nature with high titers of antiheart antibody and evidence of acute or reactivated viral illness. The syndrome is often self-limited and responds well to short courses of aspirin or corticosteroids.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Childhood pericarditis usually presents with sharp stabbing mid chest, shoulder, and neck pain made worse by deep inspiration or coughing, and decreased by sitting up and

leaning forward. Shortness of breath and grunting respirations are common. Physical findings depend on the presence of fluid accumulation in the pericardial space (effusion). In the absence of significant accumulation, a characteristic scratchy, high-pitched friction rub may be heard. If the effusion is large, heart sounds are distant and muffled and a friction rub may not be present. In the absence of cardiac tamponade, the peripheral, venous, and arterial pulses are normal.

Cardiac tamponade occurs in association with a large effusion, or one that has rapidly accumulated. Tamponade is characterized by jugular venous distention, tachycardia, hepatomegaly, peripheral edema, and pulsus paradoxus, in which systolic blood pressure drops more than 10 mm Hg during inspiration. Decreased cardiac filling and subsequent decrease in cardiac output result in signs of right heart failure and the potential for cardiovascular collapse.

B. Imaging

In pericarditis with a significant pericardial effusion, the cardiac silhouette is enlarged. The cardiac silhouette can appear normal if the effusion has developed over an extremely short period of time.

C. Electrocardiography

The ST segments are commonly elevated in acute pericarditis and PR segment depression may be present. Low voltages or electrical alternans (alteration in QRS amplitude between beats) can be seen with large pericardial effusions.

D. Echocardiography

Serial echocardiography allows a direct, noninvasive estimate of the volume of pericardial fluid and its change over time. Cardiac tamponade is associated with compression of the atria or respiratory alteration of ventricular inflow demonstrated by Doppler imaging.

» Treatment

Treatment depends on the cause of pericarditis and the size of the associated effusion. Viral pericarditis is usually self-limited and symptoms can be improved with nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory therapy. Purulent pericarditis requires immediate evacuation of the fluid and appropriate antibiotic therapy. Cardiac tamponade from any cause must be treated by immediate removal of the fluid, usually via pericardiocentesis. Pericardiocentesis should also be considered if the underlying cause is unclear or identification of the pathogen is necessary for targeted therapy. In the setting of recurrent or persistent effusions, a surgical pericardiectomy or pericardial window may be necessary. Diuretics should be avoided in the patient with cardiac tamponade because they reduce ventricular preload and can exacerbate the degree of cardiac decompensation.

» Prognosis

Prognosis depends to a great extent on the cause of pericardial disease. Constrictive pericarditis can develop following infectious pericarditis (especially if bacterial or tuberculous) and can be a difficult problem to manage. Cardiac tamponade will result in death unless the fluid is evacuated.

Ratnapalan S, Brown K, Benson L: Children presenting with acute pericarditis to the emergency department. Pediatr Emerg Care 2011 Jul;27(7):581–585 [PMID: 21712753].

CARDIOMYOPATHY

There are five classified forms of cardiomyopathy in children: (1) dilated, (2) hypertrophic, (3) restrictive, (4) arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (ARVD), and (5) left ventricular noncompaction. Discussion will be limited to the first three forms, which are the most common.

1. Dilated Cardiomyopathy

This most frequent of the childhood cardiomyopathies occurs with an annual incidence of 4–8 cases per 100,000 population in the United States and Europe. Although usually idiopathic, identifiable causes of dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) include viral myocarditis, untreated tachyarrhythmias, left heart obstructive lesions, congenital abnormalities of the coronary arteries, medication toxicity (eg, anthracycline), and genetic (eg, dystrophin gene defects, sarcomeric mutations) and metabolic diseases (inborn errors of fatty acid oxidation and mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation defects). Genetic causes are being discovered at an increasing rate with commercial testing now available for some of the more common genes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

As myocardial function fails and the heart dilates, cardiac output falls, and affected children develop decreased exercise tolerance, failure to thrive, diaphoresis, and tachypnea. As the heart continues to deteriorate, congestive signs such as hepatomegaly and rales develop, and a prominent gallop can be appreciated on examination. The initial diagnosis in a previously healthy child can be difficult, as presenting symptoms can resemble a viral respiratory infection, pneumonia, or asthma.

B. Imaging

Chest radiograph shows generalized cardiomegaly with or without pulmonary venous congestion.

C. Electrocardiography

Sinus tachycardia with ST-T segment changes is commonly seen on ECG. The criteria for right and left ventricular

hypertrophy may also be met and the QT interval may be prolonged. Evaluation for the presence of supraventricular arrhythmias on ECG is critical, as this is one of the few treatable and reversible causes of DCM in children.

D. Echocardiography

The echocardiogram shows LV and left atrial enlargement with decreased LV-shortening fraction and ejection fraction. The calculated end-diastolic and end-systolic dimensions are increased and mitral insufficiency is commonly seen. A careful evaluation for evidence of structural abnormalities (especially coronary artery anomalies or left heart obstructive lesions) must be performed, especially in infant patients.

E. Other Testing

Cardiac catheterization is useful to evaluate hemodynamic status and coronary artery anatomy. Endomyocardial biopsies can aid in diagnosis. Biopsy specimens may show inflammation consistent with acute myocarditis, abnormal myocyte architecture, and myocardial fibrosis. Electron micrographs may reveal evidence of mitochondrial or other metabolic disorders. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing may be performed on biopsied specimens to detect viral genome products in infectious myocarditis. Cardiopulmonary stress testing is useful for measuring response to medical therapy and as an objective assessment of the cardiac limitations on exercise.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Outpatient management of pediatric DCM usually entails combinations of afterload-reducing agents and diuretics (see section on Heart Failure, earlier). In 2007, Shaddy et al published the results of a multicenter, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial of carvedilol in children with HF. Children did not receive the same beneficial effects of β-blocker therapy as adults with HF, possibly due to the heterogenous nature of HF in children and increasing evidence that there are inherent differences in pediatric and adult HF. Aspirin or warfarin may be used to prevent thrombus formation in the dilated and poorly contractile cardiac chambers. Arrhythmias are more common in dilated hearts and antiarrhymthmic therapy is sometimes necessary. Despite widespread use of internal defibrillators in the adult population, the technical difficulty of implanting internal defibrillators, the risk of adverse events (eg, high frequency of inappropriate discharge, vascular obstruction), and the low incidence of sudden cardiac death in children limit their use.

Therapy of the underlying cause of cardiomyopathy is always indicated if possible. Unfortunately despite complete evaluation, a diagnosis is discovered in less than 30% of patients with DCM. If medical management is unsuccessful, cardiac transplantation is considered.

2. Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

The most common cause of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) is familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, which is found in 1 in 500 individuals. HCM is the leading cause of sudden cardiac death in young persons. The most common presentation is in an older child, adolescent, or adult, although it may occur in neonates. Causes of nonfamilial HCM in neonates and young children include glycogen storage disease, Noonan syndrome (including related syndromes such as LEOPARD and Costello syndrome), Friedreich ataxia, maternal gestational diabetes, mitochondrial disorders, and other metabolic disorders.

A. Familial Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

In the familial form, HCM is most commonly caused by a mutation in one of the several genes that encode proteins of the cardiac sarcomere (β-myosin heavy chain, cardiac troponin T or I, α-tropomyosin, and myosin-binding protein C).

1. Clinical findings—Patients may be asymptomatic despite having significant hypertrophy, or may present with symptoms of inadequate coronary perfusion or HF such as angina, syncope, palpitations, or exercise intolerance. Patients may experience sudden cardiac death as their initial presentation, often precipitated by sporting activities. Although the cardiac examination may be normal on presentation, some patients develop a left precordial bulge with a diffuse point of maximal impulse. An LV heave or an S_4 gallop may be present. If outflow tract obstruction exists, a systolic ejection murmur will be audible. A murmur may not be audible at rest but may be provoked with exercise or positional maneuvers that decrease left ventricular volume (standing), thereby increasing the outflow tract obstruction.

a. Echocardiography—The diagnosis of HCM is usually made by echocardiography and in most familial cases demonstrates asymmetrical septal hypertrophy. Young patients with metabolic or other nonfamilial causes are more likely to have concentric hypertrophy. Systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve leaflet may occur and contribute to LV outflow tract obstruction. The mitral valve leaflet may become distorted and result in mitral insufficiency. LV outflow tract obstruction may be present at rest or provoked with monitored exercise. Systolic function is most often hypercontractile in young children but may deteriorate over time, resulting in poor contractility and LV dilation. Diastolic function is almost always abnormal.

b. Electrocardiography—The ECG may be normal, but more typically demonstrates deep Q waves in the inferolateral leads (II, III, aVF, V_5, and V_6) secondary to the increased mass of the hypertrophied septum. ST-segment abnormalities may be seen in the same leads. Age-dependent criteria for LVH are often present as are criteria for left atrial enlargement.

c. Other testing—Cardiopulmonary stress testing is valuable to evaluate for provocable LV outflow tract obstruction, ischemia, and arrhythmias, and to determine prognosis. Extreme LVH and a blunted blood pressure response to exercise have both been associated with increased mortality in children. Cardiac MRI is useful for defining areas of myocardial fibrosis or scarring. Patients are at risk for myocardial ischemia, possibly as a result of systolic compression of the intramyocardial septal perforators, myocardial bridging of epicardial coronary arteries, or an imbalance of coronary artery supply and demand due to the presence of massive myocardial hypertrophy.

d. Cardiac catheterization—Cardiac catheterization may be performed in patients with HCM who have angina, syncope, resuscitated sudden death, or a worrisome stress test. Hemodynamic findings include elevated left atrial pressure secondary to impaired diastolic filling. If midcavitary LV outflow tract obstruction is present, an associated pressure gradient will be evident. Provocation of LV outflow tract obstruction with either rapid atrial pacing or isoproterenol may be sought, but this is not commonly done in children. Angiography demonstrates a "ballerina slipper" configuration of the LV secondary to the midcavitary LV obliteration during systole. Although uncommonly done in the current era, myocardial biopsy demonstrates myofiber disarray.

2. Treatment and prognosis—Treatment varies depending on symptoms and phenotype. Affected patients are restricted from competitive athletics and isometric exercise due to associated risk of sudden cardiac death. Patients with resting or latent LV outflow tract obstruction may be treated with β-blockers, verapamil, or disopyramide with variable success in alleviating obstruction. Patients with severe symptoms despite medical therapy and an LV outflow tract gradient may require additional intervention. Surgical myectomy with resection of part of the hypertrophied septum has been used in symptomatic patients with good results. At the time of myectomy, the mitral valve may require repair or replacement in patients with a long history of systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve. Ethanol ablation is used in adults with HCM and LV outflow tract obstruction. This procedure involves selective infiltration of ethanol in a coronary septal artery branch to induce a small targeted myocardial infarction. This leads to a reduction in septal size and improvement of obstruction. The long-term effects of this procedure are unknown and it is not commonly employed in children. Dual-chamber pacing to relieve obstruction has been used in children, but data to support its use is lacking. Risk stratification with respect to sudden death is important in HCM. Consideration for placement of internal defibrillators in adult patients are based on the known risk factors for sudden cardiac death: severe hypertrophy (> 3 cm septal thickness in adults), documented ventricular arrhythmias, syncope, abnormal blood pressure response to exercise, resuscitated sudden death, or a strong family history of HCM with associated sudden death. The criteria for defibrillator placement in children are not as well defined.

B. Glycogen Storage Disease of the Heart

There are at least 10 types of glycogen storage disease. The type that primarily involves the heart is Pompe disease (GSD IIa) in which acid maltase, necessary for hydrolysis of the outer branches of glycogen, is absent. There is marked deposition of glycogen within the myocardium. Affected infants are well at birth, but symptoms of growth and developmental delay, feeding problems, and cardiac failure occur by the sixth month of life. Physical examination reveals generalized muscular weakness, a large tongue, and cardiomegaly without significant heart murmurs. Chest radiographs reveal cardiomegaly with or without pulmonary venous congestion. The ECG shows a short PR interval and LVH with ST depression and T-wave inversion over the left precordial leads. Echocardiography shows severe concentric LVH. Although historically children with Pompe disease usually died before age 1 year, recent enzyme replacement clinical trials have shown some promise in reversing hypertrophy and preserving cardiac function. Death may be sudden or result from progressive HF.

3. Restrictive Cardiomyopathy

Restrictive cardiomyopathy is a rare entity in the pediatric population, accounting for less than 5% of all cases of cardiomyopathy. The cause is usually idiopathic but can be familial or secondary to an infiltrative process (eg, amyloidosis).

» Clinical Findings

Patients present with signs of congestive HF as a consequence of diastolic dysfunction in the setting of preserved systolic function. The left ventricle is more severely affected than the right ventricle in restrictive cardiomyopathy, but the right ventricle is also affected in most cases resulting in signs and symptoms consistent with biventricular congestion. Patients often present with exercise intolerance, fatigue, chest pain and orthopnea. Physical examination is remarkable for a prominent S_4 and jugular venous distention.

A. Electrocardiography

ECG demonstrates marked right and left atrial enlargement with normal ventricular voltages. ST-T–wave abnormalities including a prolonged QTc interval may be present.

B. Echocardiography

The diagnosis is confirmed echocardiographically by the presence of normal-sized ventricles with normal systolic

function and massively dilated atria. Cardiac MRI is useful in ruling out pericardial abnormalities (restrictive or constrictive pericarditis) and infiltrative disorders.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Anticongestive therapy is used for symptomatic relief. The risk of sudden death in restrictive cardiomyopathy and the propensity for rapid progression of irreversible pulmonary hypertension warrant close follow-up with early consideration of cardiac transplantation.

Chen LR et al: Reversal of cardiac dysfunction after enzyme replacement in patients with infantile-onset Pompe disease. J Pediatr 2009 Aug;155(2):271–275, e272 [PMID: 19486996].

Decker JA et al: Risk factors and mode of death in isolated hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in children. J Am Coll Cardiol 2009 Jul 14;54(3):250–254 [PMID: 19589438].

Shaddy RE et al: Carvedilol for children and adolescents with heart failure: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2007 Sep 12;298(10):1171–1179 [PMID: 17848651].

Towbin JA et al: Incidence, causes, and outcomes of dilated cardiomyopathy in children. JAMA 2006 Oct 18;296(15):1867–1876 [PMID: 17047217].

MYOCARDITIS

The most common causes of viral myocarditis are adenoviruses, coxsackie A and B viruses, echoviruses, parvovirus, cytomegalovirus, and influenza A virus. HIV can also cause myocarditis. The ability to identify the pathogen has been enhanced by PCR technology, which replicates identifiable segments of the viral genome from the myocardium of affected children.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

There are two major clinical patterns. In the first, sudden-onset HF occurs in an infant or child who was relatively healthy in the hours to days previously. This malignant form of the disease is usually secondary to overwhelming viremia with tissue invasion in multiple organ systems including the heart. In the second pattern, the onset of cardiac symptoms is gradual and there may be a history of upper respiratory tract infection or gastroenteritis in the previous month. This more insidious form may have a late postinfectious or autoimmune component. Acute and chronic presentations occur at any age and with all types of myocarditis.

The signs of HF are variable, but in a decompensated patient with fulminant myocarditis include pale gray skin; rapid, weak, and thready pulses; and breathlessness. In those with a more subacute presentation signs include increased work of breathing such as orthopnea, difficulty with feeding in infants, exercise intolerance and edema of the face and extremities. The patient is usually tachycardic and heart sounds may be muffled and distant; an S_3 or S_4 gallop (or both) are common. Murmurs are usually absent, although a murmur of tricuspid or mitral insufficiency may be heard. Moist rales are usually present at both lung bases. The liver is enlarged and frequently tender.

B. Imaging

Generalized cardiomegaly is seen on radiographs along with moderate to marked pulmonary venous congestion.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG is variable. Classically, there is low-voltage QRS in all frontal and precordial leads with ST-segment depression and inversion of T waves in leads I, III, and aVF (and in the left precordial leads during the acute stage). Dysrhythmias are common, and AV and intraventricular conduction disturbances may be present.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography demonstrates four-chamber dilation with poor ventricular function and AV valve regurgitation. A pericardial effusion may be present. Patients with a more acute presentation may have less ventricular dilation than those with a longer history of HF-related symptoms.

E. Myocardial Biopsy

An endomyocardial biopsy may be helpful in the diagnosis of viral myocarditis. An inflammatory infiltrate with myocyte damage can be seen by hematoxylin and eosin staining. Viral PCR testing of the biopsy specimen may yield a positive result in 30%–40% of patients suspected to have myocarditis. However, myocarditis is thought to be a "patchy" process, so it is possible that biopsy results are falsely negative if the area of active myocarditis was missed.

F. Cardiac MRI

Cardiac MRI is increasing in use as a potential diagnostic modality for myocarditis. Abnormalities in T2-weighted imaging (consistent with myocardial edema, inflammation) and global relative enhancement (evidence of capillary leak) are evident in patients with acute myocarditis. This imaging method requires general anesthesia in infants and young children, which is associated with significant risk in those with HF and must be a consideration when ordering this test.

» Treatment

The inpatient cardiac support measures outlined previously in the section on heart failure are used in the treatment of these patients. The use of digitalis in a rapidly deteriorating child with myocarditis is dangerous and should be undertaken with great caution, as it may cause ventricular dysrhythmias.

Administration of immunomodulating medications such as corticosteroids for myocarditis is controversial. Subsequent to the successful use of IVIG in children with Kawasaki disease, there have been several trials of IVIG in presumed viral myocarditis. The therapeutic value of IVIG remains unconfirmed. Initiation of mechanical circulatory support in those with fulminant or severe myocarditis is another therapeutic option as a bridge to transplantation or recovery.

» Prognosis

The prognosis of myocarditis is determined by the age at onset and the response to therapy. Children presenting with fulminant myocarditis and severe hemodynamic compromise have a 75% early mortality. Those at highest risk for a poor outcome are those presenting in the first year of life. Complete recovery is possible, although some patients recover clinically but have persistent LV dysfunction and require ongoing medical therapy for HF. It is possible that subclinical myocarditis in childhood is the pathophysiologic basis for some of the "idiopathic" DCMs later in life. Children with myocarditis whose ventricular function fails to return to normal may be candidates for cardiac transplantation if they remain symptomatic or suffer growth failure despite maximal medical management.

Pettit MA et al: Myocarditis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2014 Nov;30(11):832–835 [PMID: 25373572].

Preventive Cardiology

HYPERTENSION

Blood pressure should be determined at every pediatric visit beginning at 3 years. Because blood pressure is being more carefully monitored, systemic hypertension has become more widely recognized as a pediatric problem. Pediatric standards for blood pressure have been published. Blood pressures in children must be obtained when the child is relaxed and an appropriate-size cuff must always be used. The widest cuff that fits between the axilla and the antecubital fossa should be used (covers 60%–75% of the upper arm). Most children aged 10–11 years need a standard adult cuff (bladder width of 12 cm), and many high school students need a large adult cuff (width of 16 cm) or leg cuff (width of 18 cm). The pressure coinciding with the onset (K_1) and the loss (K_5) of the Korotkoff sounds determines the systolic and diastolic blood pressure, respectively. If a properly measured blood pressure exceeds the 95th percentile, the measurement should be repeated several times over a 2- to 4-week interval. If it is elevated persistently, a search for the cause should be undertaken. Although most hypertension in children is essential, the incidence of treatable causes is higher in children than in adults; these include conditions such as coarctation of the aorta, renal artery stenosis, chronic renal disease, and pheochromocytoma, as well as medication side effects (eg, steroids). If no cause is identified, and hypertension is deemed essential, antihypertensive therapy should be initiated and nutritional and exercise counseling given. β-Blockers or ACE inhibitors are the usual first-line medical therapies for essential hypertension in children.

Flynn JT et al: Update: ambulatory blood pressure monitoring in children and adolescents: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Hypertension 2014 May;63(5): 1116–1135 [PMID: 24591341].

ATHEROSCLEROSIS & DYSLIPIDEMIAS

Awareness of coronary artery risk factors in general, and atherosclerosis in particular, has risen dramatically in the general population since the mid-1970s. Although coronary artery disease is still the leading cause of death in the United States, the age-adjusted incidence of death from ischemic heart disease has been decreasing as a result of improved diet, decreased smoking, awareness and treatment of hypertension, and an increase in physical activity. The level of serum lipids in childhood usually remains constant through adolescence. Biochemical abnormalities in the lipid profile appearing early in childhood correlate with higher risk for coronary artery disease in adulthood. Low-density lipoprotein (LDL) is atherogenic, while its counterpart, high-density lipoprotein (HDL) has been identified as an anti-atherogenic factor.

Routine lipid screening of children at age 3 years remains controversial. The National Cholesterol Education Program recommends selective screening in children with high-risk family members, defined as a parent with total cholesterol greater than 240 mg/dL or a parent or grandparent with early-onset cardiovascular disease. When children have LDL levels greater than 130 mg/dL on two successive tests, dietary lifestyle counseling is appropriate. Dietary modification may decrease cholesterol levels by 5%–20%. If the patient is unresponsive to diet change and at extreme risk (eg, LDL > 160 mg/dL, HDL < 35 mg/dL, and a history of cardiovascular disease in a first-degree relative at an age < 40 years), drug therapy may be indicated. Cholestyramine, a bile acid–binding resin, is rarely used today due to poor adherence. The 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase inhibitors (statins) are more commonly used in the pediatric population. Niacin is useful for treatment of hypertriglyceridemia.

Daniels SR et al: Expert panel on integrated guidelines for cardiovascular health and risk reduction in children and adolescents: summary report. Pediatrics. 2011 Dec;128 Suppl 5:S213–56 [PMID: 22084329].

CHEST PAIN

Overview

Chest pain is a common pediatric complaint, accounting for 6 in 1000 visits to urban emergency departments and urgent care clinics. Although children with chest pain are commonly referred for cardiac evaluation, chest pain in children is rarely cardiac in origin. Detailed history and physical examination should guide the pediatrician to the appropriate workup of chest pain. The duration, location, intensity, frequency, and radiation of the pain should be documented, and possible triggering events preceding the pain should be explored. Chest pain following exertion may lead to a more elaborate evaluation for a cardiac disorder. The timing of the pain in relation to meals may suggest a gastrointestinal cause. The patient should also be asked about how pain relief is achieved. A social history to reveal psychosocial stressors and cigarette smoke exposure may be revealing. On physical examination, attention must be placed on the vital signs; general appearance of the child; the chest wall musculature; cardiac, pulmonary, and abdominal examination findings; and quality of peripheral pulses. If the pain can be reproduced through direct palpation of the chest wall, it is almost always musculoskeletal in origin.

Etiology

Cardiac disease is a rare cause of chest pain, but, if misdiagnosed, it may be life-threatening. Although myocardial infarction rarely occurs in healthy children, patients with diabetes mellitus, chronic anemia, abnormal coronary artery anatomy, or HCM may be at increased risk for ischemia. A history of Kawasaki disease with coronary involvement is a risk for myocardial infarction secondary to thrombosis of coronary aneurysms. More than 50% of children and adolescents who exhibit sequelae from Kawasaki disease arrive at the emergency department with chest pain.

Young children may mistake palpitations for chest pain. Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), atrial flutter, premature ventricular contractions (PVCs), or ventricular tachycardia may be described as chest pain in children. Structural lesions that can cause chest pain include aortic stenosis, pulmonary stenosis, and mitral valve prolapse. Other cardiac lesions causing chest pain include DCM, myocarditis, pericarditis, rheumatic carditis, and aortic dissection.

Noncardiac chest pain may be due to a respiratory illness, reactive airway disease, pneumonia, pneumothorax, or pulmonary embolism. Gastrointestinal causes of chest pain include reflux, esophagitis, and foreign body ingestion. The most common cause of chest pain (30% of children) is inflammation of musculoskeletal structures of the chest wall. Costochondritis is caused by inflammation of the costochondral joints and is usually unilateral and reproducible on examination.

In most cases, sophisticated testing is not required. However, if a cardiac origin is suspected, a pediatric cardiologist should be consulted. Evaluation in these instances may include an ECG, chest radiograph, echocardiogram, Holter monitor, or serum troponin levels if there are known risk factors for ischemia.

Hanson CL, Hokanson JS: Etiology of chest pain in children and adolescents referred to cardiology clinic. WMJ 2011 Apr;110(2):58–62 [PMID: 21560558].

CAr DIAC Tr ANSPLANTATION

Cardiac transplantation is an effective therapeutic modality for infants and children with end-stage cardiac disease. Indications for transplantation include (1) progressive HF despite maximal medical therapy, (2) complex congenital heart diseases that are not amenable to surgical repair or palliation, or in instances in which the surgical palliative approach has an equal or higher risk of mortality compared with transplantation, and (3) malignant arrhythmias unresponsive to medical therapy, catheter ablation, or automatic implantable cardiodefibrillator. Approximately 300–400 pediatric cardiac transplant procedures are performed annually in the United States. Infant (< 1 year of age) transplants account for 30% of pediatric cardiac transplants. The current estimated graft half-life for children undergoing cardiac transplantation in infancy is over 19 years, while overall pediatric heart transplant graft half-life is approximately 14 years.

Careful evaluation of the recipient and the donor is performed prior to cardiac transplantation. Assessment of the recipient's pulmonary vascular resistance is critical, as irreversible and severe pulmonary hypertension is a risk factor for post-transplant right heart failure and early death. End-organ function of the recipient may also influence post-transplant outcome and should be evaluated. Donor-related factors that can have an impact on outcome include cardiac function, amount of inotropic support needed, active infection (HIV and hepatitis B and C are contraindications to donation), donor size, and ischemic time to transplantation.

Immunosuppression

The ideal post-transplant immunosuppressive regimen allows the immune system to continue to recognize and respond to foreign antigens in a productive manner while avoiding graft rejection. Although there are many different regimens, calcineurin inhibitors (eg, cyclosporine and tacrolimus) remain the mainstay of maintenance immunosuppression in pediatric heart transplantation. Calcineurin inhibitors may be used in isolation in children considered to be at low risk for graft rejection. Double-drug therapy includes the addition of antimetabolite or antiproliferative medications such as azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil,

or sirolimus. Because of the significant adverse side effects of corticosteroids in children, chronic steroid use is avoided if possible. Growth retardation, susceptibility to infection, impaired wound healing, hypertension, diabetes, osteoporosis, and a cushingoid appearance are some of the consequences of long-term steroid use.

Graft Rejection

Despite advances in immunosuppression, graft rejection remains the leading cause of death in the first 3 years after transplantation. Because graft rejection can present in the absence of clinical symptomatology, monitoring for and diagnosing rejection in a timely fashion can be difficult. Screening regimens include serial physical examinations, electrocardiography, echocardiography, and cardiac catheterization with endomyocardial biopsy.

» Rejection Surveillance

A. Symptoms and Signs

Acute graft rejection may not cause symptoms in the early stages. With progression, patients may develop tachycardia, tachypnea, rales, a gallop rhythm, or hepatosplenomegaly. Infants and young children may present with irritability, poor feeding, vomiting, or lethargy. There is 50% mortality within 1 year for those suffering an episode of rejection associated with hemodynamic compromise, so early detection is critical.

B. Imaging

In an actively rejecting patient, chest radiographs may show cardiomegaly, pulmonary edema, or pleural effusions.

C. Electrocardiography

Abnormalities in conduction, reduced QRS voltages, and atrial and ventricular arrhythmias can occur in rejection.

D. Echocardiography

Echocardiography is a useful noninvasive rejection surveillance tool. Changes in ventricular compliance and function may initially be subtle, but are progressive with increasing duration of the rejection episode. A new pericardial effusion or worsening valvular insufficiency may also indicate rejection.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Endomyocardial Biopsy

Hemodynamic assessment including ventricular filling pressures, cardiac output, and oxygen consumption can be obtained via cardiac catheterization. The endomyocardial biopsy is useful in diagnosing acute graft rejection but not all episodes of symptomatic rejection result in a positive biopsy result. The appearance of infiltrating lymphocytes with myocellular damage on the biopsy is the hallmark of cell-mediated graft rejection and is helpful if present.

» Treatment of Graft Rejection

The goal of graft rejection treatment is to reverse the immunologic inflammatory cascade. High-dose corticosteroids are the first line of treatment. Frequently additional therapy with antithymocyte biologic preparations such as antithymocyte globulin (a rabbit-based polyclonal antibody) is needed to reverse rejection. Most rejection episodes can be treated effectively if diagnosed promptly. Usually graft function returns to its baseline state, although severe rejection episodes can result in chronic graft failure, graft loss, and patient death even with optimal therapy. Antibody mediated rejection is another form of acute rejection that is treated in a similar fashion as T-cell mediated rejection, but the addition of plasmapheresis and IVIG to the treatment regimen may improve outcomes. The diagnosis of antibody mediated rejection is complicated, but is based on a combination of clinical symptoms, evidence of complement deposition on endomyocardial biopsy, and new or increasing antibody production (typically anti-human lymphocyte antigen [HLA] antibodies) in the circulation.

» Course & Prognosis

The quality of life of pediatric heart transplant recipients is usually quite good. The risk of infection is low after the immediate post-transplant period in spite of chronic immunosuppression. Cytomegalovirus is the most common pathogen responsible for infection-related morbidity and mortality in heart transplant recipients. Most children tolerate environmental pathogens well. Nonadherence with lifetime immunosuppression is of great concern especially in adolescent patients. Several recent studies have identified nonadherence as the leading cause of late death. Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder, a syndrome related to Epstein-Barr virus infection, can result in a Burkitt-like lymphoma that usually responds to a reduction in immunosuppression, but occasionally must be treated with chemotherapy and can be fatal. The overwhelming majority of children are not physically limited and do not require restrictions related to the cardiovascular system.

The most common cause of late graft loss is cardiac allograft vasculopathy (transplant coronary artery disease). Cardiac allograft vasculopathy results from intimal proliferation within the lumen of the coronary arteries that can ultimately result in complete luminal occlusion. These lesions are diffuse and often involve distal vessels and thus are usually not amenable to bypass grafting, angioplasty, or stent placement. The etiology of these lesions has an immune basis, but the specifics are not known making

targeted therapy challenging. Newer, more specific, and more effective immunosuppressive agents are currently being tried in clinical studies or are being evaluated in preclinical studies, making the future promising for children after cardiac transplantation.

QUALITY IMPr OVEMENT FOr PEDIATr IC HEAr T Tr ANSPLANTATION

The Pediatric Heart Transplant Study (PHTS) group is a consortium of over 40 pediatric heart transplant centers in North America and Europe that maintains an event-driven database that is used to support research aimed at improving treatment options and outcomes for children in need of a heart transplant or who have had a transplant. Each participating center receives an annual report that details center-specific outcomes compared to the collaborative group as a whole. This report is utilized for internal quality assurance purposes and as a performance benchmark.

Canter CE et al: Indications for heart transplantation in pediatric heart disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; the Councils on Clinical Cardiology, Cardiovascular Nursing, and Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia; and the Quality of Care and Outcomes Research Interdisciplinary Working Group. Circulation 2007 Feb 6;115(5):658–676 [PMID: 17261651].

International Society for Heart and Lung Transplant Registry Slides: http://www.ishlt.org/registries/slides.asp?slides=heartLungRegistryPHTS website: http://www.uab.edu/phts/.

PULMONAr Y HYPEr TENSION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Often subtle with symptoms of dyspnea, fatigue, chest pain, and syncope.
- Loud pulmonary component of S_2; ECG with RVH.
- Rare, progressive, and often fatal disease without treatment.

General Considerations

Pulmonary hypertension (PH) is defined as an increase in mean pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) ≥ 25 mmHg. The etiology of PH in children is very different from adults, with a predominance of idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension (IPAH) and pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) associated with congenital heart disease. PAH, a subset of PH, affects the pulmonary arterial tree and is defined as a sustained mean PAP ≥ 25 mmHg with a mean pulmonary capillary wedge pressure ≤ 15 mmHg and pulmonary vascular resistance > 3 woods units. A diagnostic classification has been developed and modified at the World Symposium on Pulmonary Hypertension (WSPH). This clinical classification system identifies five categories of disorders that cause PH, with each group sharing similar hemodynamic, pathologic, and management features: Pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) (Group 1); PH due to left heart disease (Group 2); PH due to chronic lung disease and/or hypoxia (Group 3); chronic thromboembolic PH (Group 4); and PH due to multifactorial mechanisms (Group 5). The incidence of IPAH and PAH associated with congenital heart disease is 1–2 persons per million. PH is difficult to diagnose in the early stages because of its subtle manifestations. Although the outcome for pediatric PH is improving due to the advent of new therapies, prognosis remains guarded, with only 74% survival at 5 years. Familial PH occurs in 6%–12% of affected individuals. When a clear familial association is known, the disease shows evidence of genetic anticipation, presenting at younger ages in subsequent generations.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical picture varies with the severity of pulmonary hypertension, and usually early symptoms are subtle, delaying the diagnosis. Initial symptoms may be dyspnea, palpitations, or chest pain, often brought on by strenuous exercise or competitive sports. Syncope may be the first symptom, which usually implies severe disease. As the disease progresses, patients have signs of low cardiac output and right heart failure. Right heart failure may be manifested by hepatomegaly, peripheral edema, and an S_3 gallop on examination. Murmurs of pulmonary regurgitation and tricuspid regurgitation may be present, and the pulmonary component of S_2 is usually pronounced.

B. Imaging

The chest radiograph most often reveals a prominent main pulmonary artery, and the RV may be enlarged. The peripheral pulmonary vascular markings may be normal or diminished. However, in 6% of patients with confirmed PH, the chest radiograph is normal.

C. Electrocardiography

The ECG usually shows RVH with an upright T wave in V_1 (when it should be negative in young children) or a qR complex in lead V_1 or V_{3R}. Also present may be evidence of right axis deviation and right atrial enlargement.

D. Echocardiography

The echocardiogram is an essential tool for excluding congenital heart disease as a cause of pulmonary hypertension. It frequently shows RVH and dilation. In the absence of other structural disease, tricuspid and pulmonary insufficiency velocity can be used to estimate pulmonary artery systolic and diastolic pressures, respectively. Other echocardiographic measures such as Tissue Doppler Imaging, myocardial performance index, systolic to diastolic ratio from tricuspid regurgitation velocity, right ventricular to left ventricular ratio in end-systole, and tricuspid annular plane systolic excursion are used in the evaluation of pulmonary hypertension.

E. Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography

Cardiac catheterization is the best method for determining the severity of disease. The procedure is performed to rule out cardiac (eg, restrictive cardiomyopathy) or vascular (eg, pulmonary vein stenosis) causes of pulmonary hypertension, determine the severity of disease, and define treatment strategies. The reactivity of the pulmonary vascular bed to short-acting vasodilator agents (oxygen, nitric oxide, or prostacyclin) can be assessed and used to determine treatment options. Angiography may show a decrease in the number of small pulmonary arteries with tortuous vessels.

F. Other Evaluation Modalities

Cardiac MRI is used in some patients to evaluate right ventricular function, pulmonary artery anatomy, and hemodynamics, as well as thromboembolic phenomena. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing using cycle ergometry correlates with disease severity. More simply, a 6-minute walk test, in which distance walked and perceived level of exertion are measured, has a strong independent association with mortality in late disease.

» Treatment

The goal of therapy is to reduce pulmonary artery pressure, increase cardiac output, and improve quality of life. Cardiac catheterization data are used to determine the proper treatment. Patients responsive to pulmonary vasodilators are given calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine or diltiazem. Patients unresponsive to vasodilators initially receive one of three classes of drugs: prostanoids (such as epoprostenol), endothelin receptor antagonists (such as bosentan), or phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors (such as tadalafil). All of these agents have distinct mechanisms of action that can reduce pulmonary vascular resistance. Warfarin is commonly used for anticoagulation to prevent thromboembolic events, usually with a goal to maintain the INR between 1.5 and 2.0.

Atrial septostomy is indicated in some patients with refractory pulmonary hypertension and symptoms. Cardiac output falls as pulmonary vascular resistance rises, so an interatrial shunt can preserve left heart output, albeit with deoxygenated blood. Lung transplantation should be considered in patients with intractable pulmonary hypertension and in those with associated anatomic lesions that contribute to high pulmonary arterial pressure, like pulmonary vein stenosis. Heart-lung transplant procedures appear to have survival benefits over isolated lung transplantation in patients with pulmonary hypertension. Recurrence of pulmonary hypertension is rare after heart-lung transplant.

Ivy DD et al: Pediatric pulmonary hypertension. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2013 Dec 24;62(25 Suppl):D117–26 [PMID: 24355636].
Pulmonary Hypertension Association: www.phassociation.org/.

DISORDERS OF RATE & RHYTHM

Cardiac rhythm abnormalities can occur in two different patient populations: (1) healthy children with structurally normal hearts who have an intrinsic abnormality of the electrical conduction system; and (2) children with congenital heart disease who are at risk for a cardiac rhythm abnormalities based on the underlying heart defect itself. In the latter population, changes in cardiac muscle cells associated with a chronic state of altered cardiac hemodynamics and any operative procedures with surgical suture lines/scars place the patients at higher risk for certain types of arrhythmias.

The evaluation and treatment of cardiac rhythm disorders have advanced significantly over the last several decades. Arguably, the most significant advancements in the last few years have continued in the area of the genetic basis of rhythm disorders such as long QT syndrome which will be discussed at the end of the chapter. Treatment for cardiac rhythm abnormalities includes clinical monitoring with no intervention, antiarrhythmic medications, invasive electrophysiology study and ablation procedures, pacemakers, and internal cardioverter/defibrillators.

Deal BJ et al: Arrhythmic complications associated with the treatment of patients with congenital cardiac disease: consensus definitions from the Multi-Societal Database Committee for Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease. Cardiol Young 2008 Dec;18(Suppl 2):202–205.

DISORDERS OF THE SINUS NODE

» Sinus Arrhythmia

Phasic variation in the heart rate (sinus arrhythmia) is normal. Typically, the sinus rate varies with the respiratory cycle (heart rate increases with inspiration and decreases with expiration), whereas P-QRS-T intervals remain stable. Sinus

arrhythmia may occur in association with respiratory distress or increased intracranial pressure, or it may be present in normal children. In isolation, it never requires treatment; however, it may be associated with sinus node dysfunction or autonomic nervous system dysfunction.

» Sinus Bradycardia

Sinus bradycardia is defined as a heart rate below the normal limit for age (neonates to 6 years, 60 beats/min; 7–11 years, 45 beats/min; > 12 years, 40 beats/min). Sinus bradycardia is often seen in athletic children. Causes of sinus bradycardia include hypoxia, central nervous system damage, eating disorders, and medication side effects. Symptomatic bradycardia (syncope, low cardiac output, or exercise intolerance) requires treatment (atropine, isoproterenol, or cardiac pacing).

» Sinus Tachycardia

The heart rate normally accelerates in response to stress such as exercise, anxiety, fever, hypovolemia, anemia, or HF. Although sinus tachycardia in the normal heart is well tolerated, symptomatic tachycardia with decreased cardiac output warrants evaluation for structural heart disease, cardiomyopathy or true tachyarrhythmias. The first evaluation should be made with a 12-lead ECG to determine the precise mechanism of the rapid rate. Treatment may be indicated for correction of the underlying cause of sinus tachycardia (eg, transfusion for anemia or correction of hypovolemia or fever).

» Sinus Node Dysfunction

Sinus node dysfunction is a clinical syndrome of inappropriate sinus nodal function and rate. The abnormality may be a true anatomic defect of the sinus node or its surrounding tissue, or it may be an abnormality of autonomic input. It is defined as one or more of the following: severe sinus bradycardia, marked sinus arrhythmia, sinus pause or arrest, chronotropic incompetence (inability of the heart rate to increase with activity or other demands), or combined bradyarrhythmias and tachyarrhythmias. It is usually associated with postoperative repair of congenital heart disease (most commonly the Mustard or Senning repair for complete TGA or the Fontan procedure), but it is also seen in normal hearts, in unoperated congenital heart disease, and in acquired heart diseases. Symptoms usually manifest between ages 2 and 17 years and consist of episodes of presyncope, syncope, palpitations, pallor, or exercise intolerance.

The evaluation of sinus node dysfunction may involve the following: baseline ECG, 24-hour ambulatory ECG monitoring, exercise stress test, and transient event monitoring. Treatment for sinus node dysfunction is indicated only in symptomatic patients. Bradyarrhythmias are treated with vagolytic (atropine) or adrenergic (aminophylline) agents or permanent cardiac pacemakers.

PREMATURE BEATS

Atrial Premature Beats

Atrial premature beats are triggered by an ectopic focus in the atrium. They are one of the most common premature beats occurring in pediatric patients, particularly during the fetal and newborn periods. The premature beat may be conducted to the ventricle and therefore followed by a QRS complex or it may be nonconducted, as the beat has occurred so early that the AV node is still refractory (Figure 20–4). A brief pause usually occurs until the next normal sinus beat occurs. As an isolated finding, atrial premature beats are benign and require no treatment.

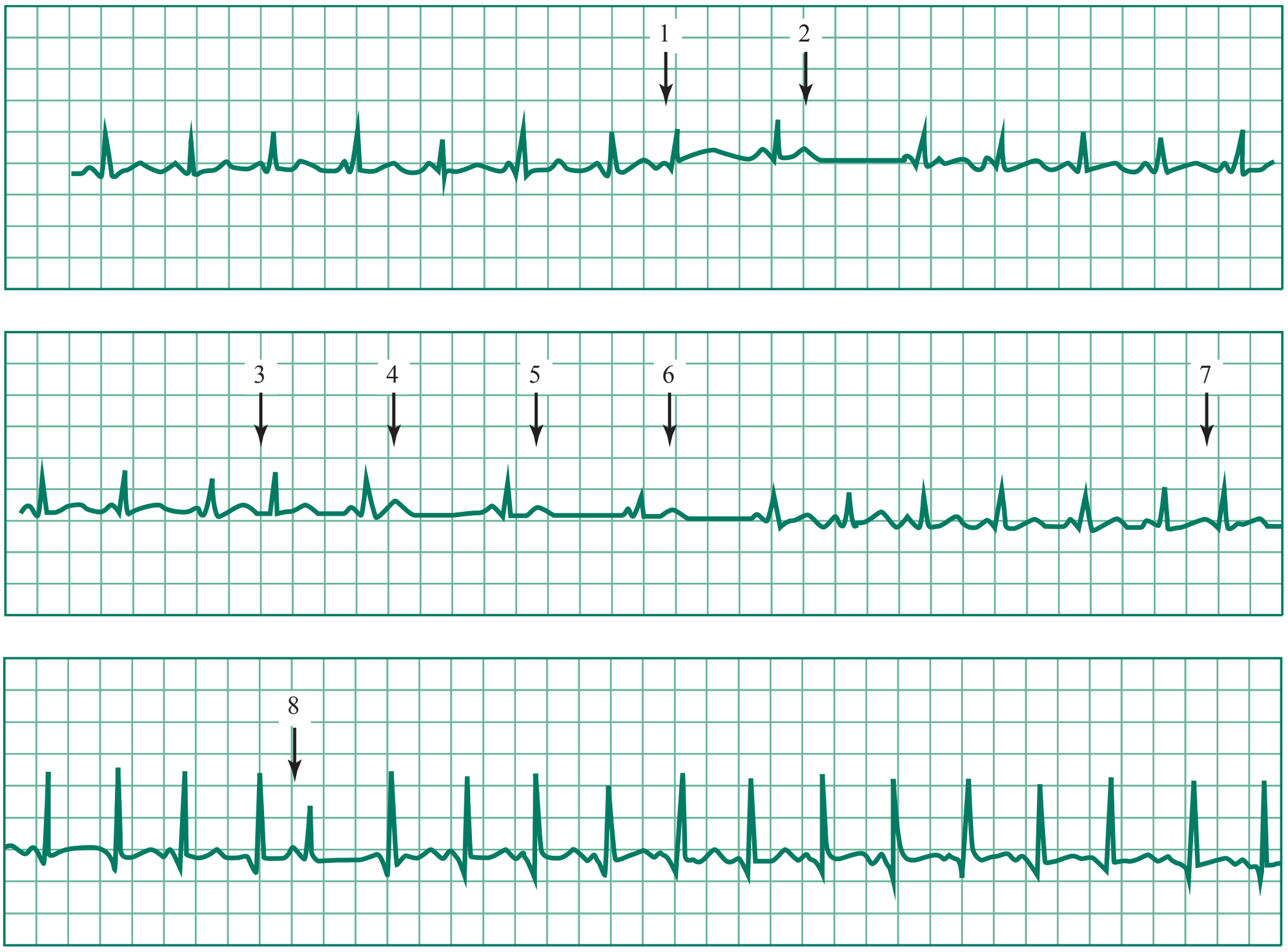
Junctional Premature Beats

Junctional premature beats arise in the atrioventricular node or the bundle of His. They induce a normal QRS complex with no preceding P wave. Junctional premature beats are usually benign and require no specific therapy.

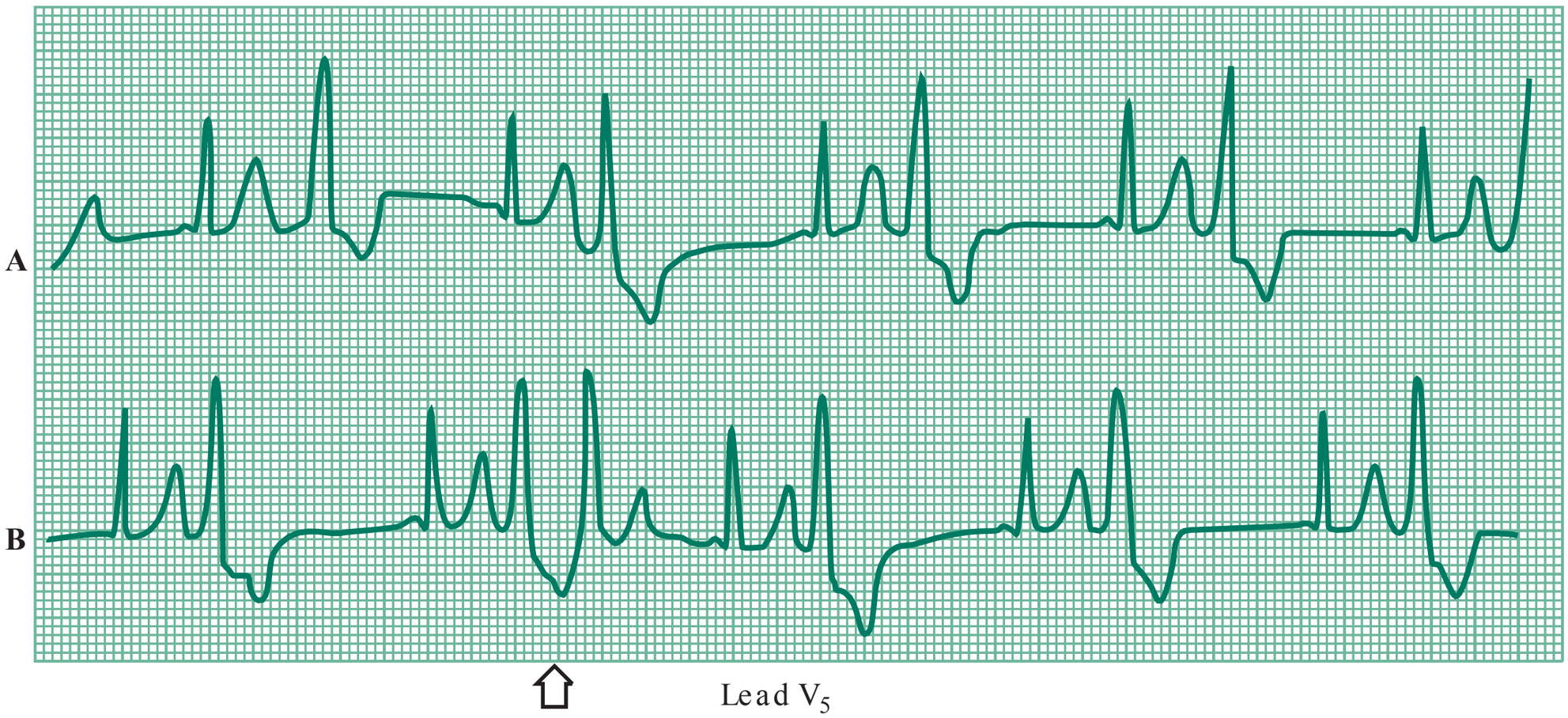
Ventricular Premature Beats

Ventricular premature beats are sometimes referred to as premature ventricular contractions (PVC) or as ventricular ectopy. They are relatively common, occurring in 1%–2% of patients with normal hearts. They are characterized by an early beat with a wide QRS complex, without a preceding P wave, and with a full compensatory pause following this early beat (Figure 20–5).

Ventricular premature beats originating from a single ectopic focus all have the same configuration; those of multifocal origin show varying configurations. The consecutive occurrence of two ventricular premature beats is referred to as a ventricular couplet and of three or more as ventricular tachycardia. Most ventricular premature beats in otherwise normal patients are usually benign. However, patients with frequent PVCs are usually evaluated further with tests such as a 24-hour ambulatory ECG or with exercise testing to rule out concerning arrhythmias. An echocardiogram may be performed to evaluate ventricular function. The significance of ventricular premature beats can be confirmed by having the patient exercise. As the heart rate increases, benign ventricular premature beats usually disappear. If exercise results in an increase or coupling of contractions, underlying disease may be present. Multifocal ventricular premature beats are always abnormal and may be more dangerous. They may be associated with drug overdose (tricyclic antidepressants or digoxin toxicity), electrolyte imbalance, myocarditis, or hypoxia. Treatment is directed at correcting the underlying disorder.



▲**Figure 20–4.** Lead II rhythm strip with premature atrial contractions. Beats 1, 3, 7, and 8 are conducted to the ventricles, whereas beats 2, 4, 5, and 6 are not.



▲**Figure 20–5.** Lead V_5 rhythm strip with unifocal premature ventricular contractions in a bigeminy pattern. The arrow shows a ventricular couplet.

SUPRAVENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA

Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) is a term used to describe any rapid rhythm originating from the atrium, the atrioventricular node, or an accessory pathway. These tachycardias are rapid, narrow complex tachycardias. The mode of presentation depends on the heart rate, the presence of underlying cardiac structural or functional abnormalities, coexisting illness, and patient age. An otherwise healthy child with SVT may complain of intermittent periods of rapid heartbeat. An infant with SVT may have poor feeding and increased fatigue (manifesting as less awake time). Incessant tachycardia, even if fairly slow (120–150 beats/min), may cause myocardial dysfunction and HF if left untreated. In children with preexisting HF or an underlying systemic disease such as anemia or sepsis, SVT may result in decreased heart function and further signs of hemodynamic instability much more rapidly than in a healthy child.

The mechanisms of tachycardia are generally divided into reentrant and automatic mechanisms and can be described by the location of tachycardia origination (Table 20–17).

Reentrant tachycardias represent approximately 80% of pediatric arrhythmias. Reentrant tachycardias have the following characteristics: they initiate abruptly, they have a fixed rate, they have little variation with fever or internal catecholamines, and they terminate abruptly. They can be terminated to sinus rhythm with maneuvers such as vagal maneuvers, administration of adenosine, pacing maneuvers, or DC cardioversion.

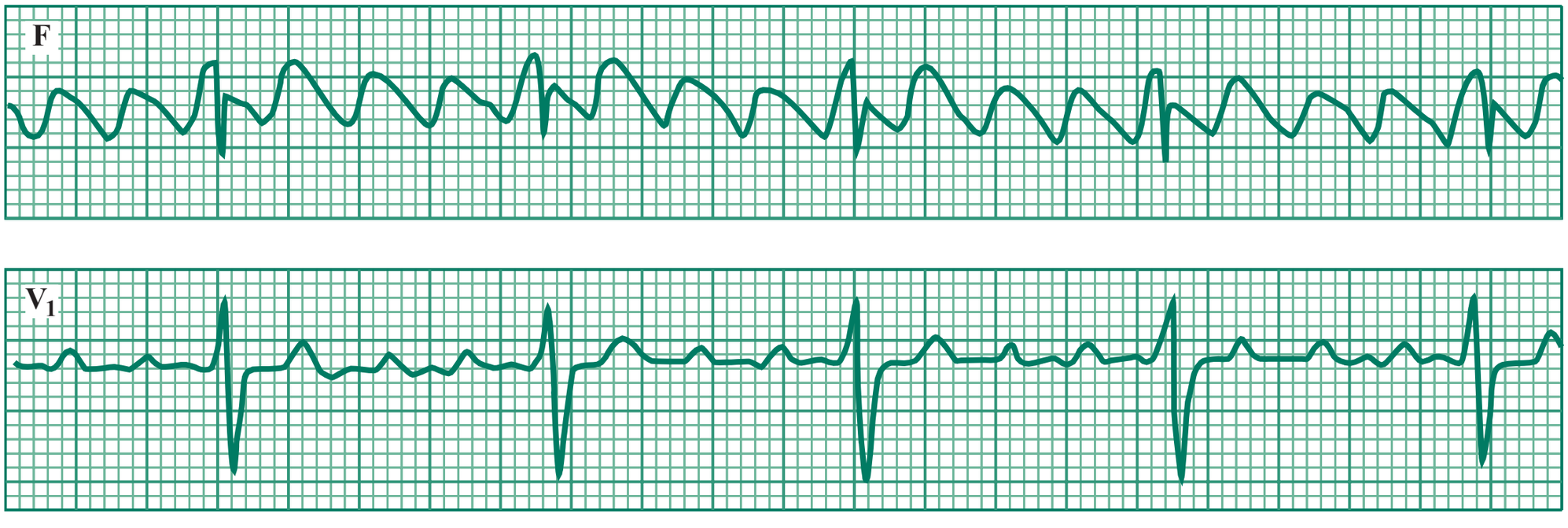
Reentrant tachycardia mechanisms involve two connections where electrical conduction travels down one of the pathways and then backs up the other, creating a sustained repetitive circular loop. The circuit can be confined to the atrium (atrial flutter in a normal heart or intra-atrial reentrant tachycardia in a patient with congenital heart disease) (Figure 20–6). It may be confined within the AV node (AV nodal reentrant tachycardia), or it may encompass an accessory connection between atria and ventricle (accessory pathway–mediated tachycardia). If, during tachycardia, the electrical impulse travels antegrade (from atria to ventricles) through the AV node and retrograde (from ventricle to atria) back up the accessory pathway, orthodromic reciprocating tachycardia is present. If, instead, the impulse travels antegrade through the accessory pathway and retrograde up through the AV node, antidromic reciprocating tachycardia is present. This latter tachycardia would present as a wide complex tachycardia. Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome is a subclass of reentrant tachycardia in which, during sinus rhythm, the impulse travels antegrade down the accessory connection, bypassing the AV node and creating ventricular preexcitation (early eccentric activation of the ventricle with a short PR interval and slurred upstroke of the QRS, a delta wave) (Figure 20–7). Most patients with WPW have otherwise structurally normal hearts. However, WPW has been noted to occur with increased frequency in association with the following congenital cardiac lesions: tricuspid atresia, Ebstein anomaly of the tricuspid valve, HCM, and ccTGA. Different than other causes of tachycardias described above where the arrhythmia is not life-threatening, there have been rare cases of sudden collapse from WPW syndrome. The mechanism of this sudden event is the development of atrial fibrillation, conducting down a rapid accessory pathway to the ventricle leading to ventricular fibrillation and sudden death. For this reason, most centers recommend that even asymptomatic patients undergo an invasive procedure to assess the conduction properties of the WPW accessory pathway (described under treatment for tachyarrhythmias).

Improved surgical survival for patients with congenital heart disease has created a new, increasingly prevalent, chronic arrhythmia which is similar to atrial flutter in a normal heart structure. These arrhythmias have been referred to by many names: intra-atrial reentrant tachycardia, incisional tachycardia, macroreentry, or postoperative atrial flutter. In this tachycardia, electrically isolated corridors of atrial myocardium (eg, the tricuspid valve–inferior vena cava isthmus, or the region between an atrial incision and the crista terminalis) act as pathways for sustained reentrant circuits of electrical activity. These tachycardias are chronic, medically refractory, and clinically incapacitating.

The automatic tachycardias represent approximately 20% of childhood arrhythmias. The characteristics of these types of arrhythmias include gradual onset, rate variability, variations in rate with fever or increasing internal catecholamines, and gradual offset. Maneuvers such as vagal

Table 20–17. Mechanism of supraventricular tachycardia.

Site of Origination	Automatic Mechanisms	Reentrant Mechanisms
Sinus node	Sinus tachycardia	Sinoatrial node reentry
Atrium	Ectopic atrial tachycardia Multifocal atrial tachycardia	Atrial flutter Intra-atrial reentrant tachycardia Atrial fibrillation
Atrioventricular node	Junctional ectopic tachycardia	Atrioventricular nodal reentrant tachycardia (AVNRT)
Accessory pathways		Concealed accessory pathways Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome Permanent form of junctional reciprocating tachycardia (PJRT) Mahaim fiber tachycardia



▲**Figure 20–6.** Leads aVF (F) and V_1, showing atrial flutter with "sawtooth" atrial flutter waves.

maneuvers, adenosine, and attempt pacing can alter the rhythm temporarily but they do not result in termination of the rhythm to sinus rhythm as would be seen in the reentrant tachycardias. Automatic tachycardias can be episodic or incessant. They are usually under autonomic influence. When they are incessant, they are usually associated with HF and a clinical picture of DCM. Automatic tachycardias are created when a focus of cardiac tissue develops an abnormally fast spontaneous rate of depolarization. For ectopic atrial tachycardia, the ECG demonstrates a normal QRS complex preceded by an abnormal P wave (Figure 20–8). Junctional ectopic tachycardia does not have a P wave preceding the QRS waves and may be associated with AV dissociation or 1:1 retrograde conduction.

Cohen MI et al: PACES/HRS expert consensus statement on the management of the asymptomatic young patient with a Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW, ventricular preexcitation) electrocardiographic pattern: developed in partnership between the Pediatric and Congenital Electrophysiology Society (PACES) and the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS). Heart Rhythm 2012;9(6):1006–1024 [PMID: 22579340].

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

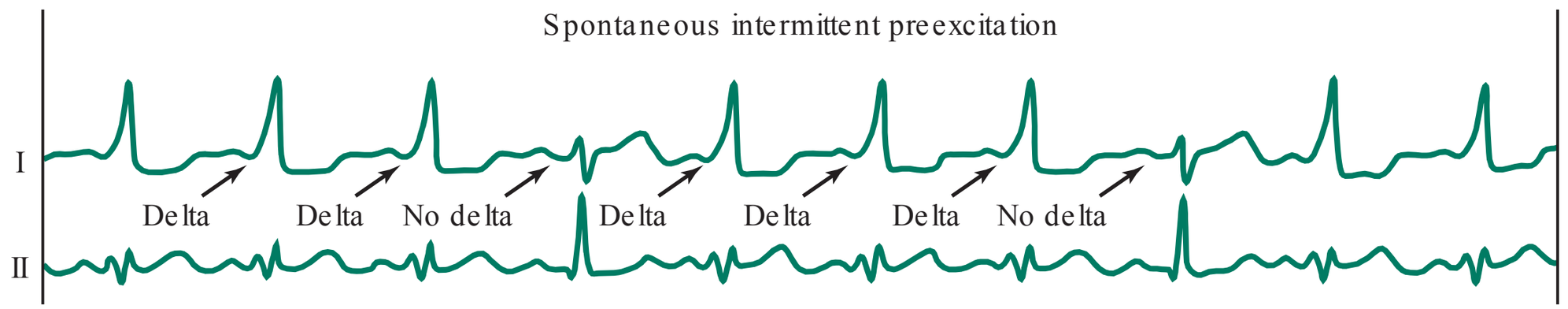
Presentation varies with age. Infants tend to turn pale and mottled with onset of tachycardia and may become irritable. With long duration of tachycardia, symptoms of HF develop. Older children complain of dizziness, palpitations, fatigue, and chest pain. Heart rates range from 240–300 beats/min in the younger child to 150–180 beats/min in the teenager. HF is less common in children than in infants. Tachycardia may be associated with either congenital heart defects or acquired conditions such as cardiomyopathies and myocarditis.

B. Imaging

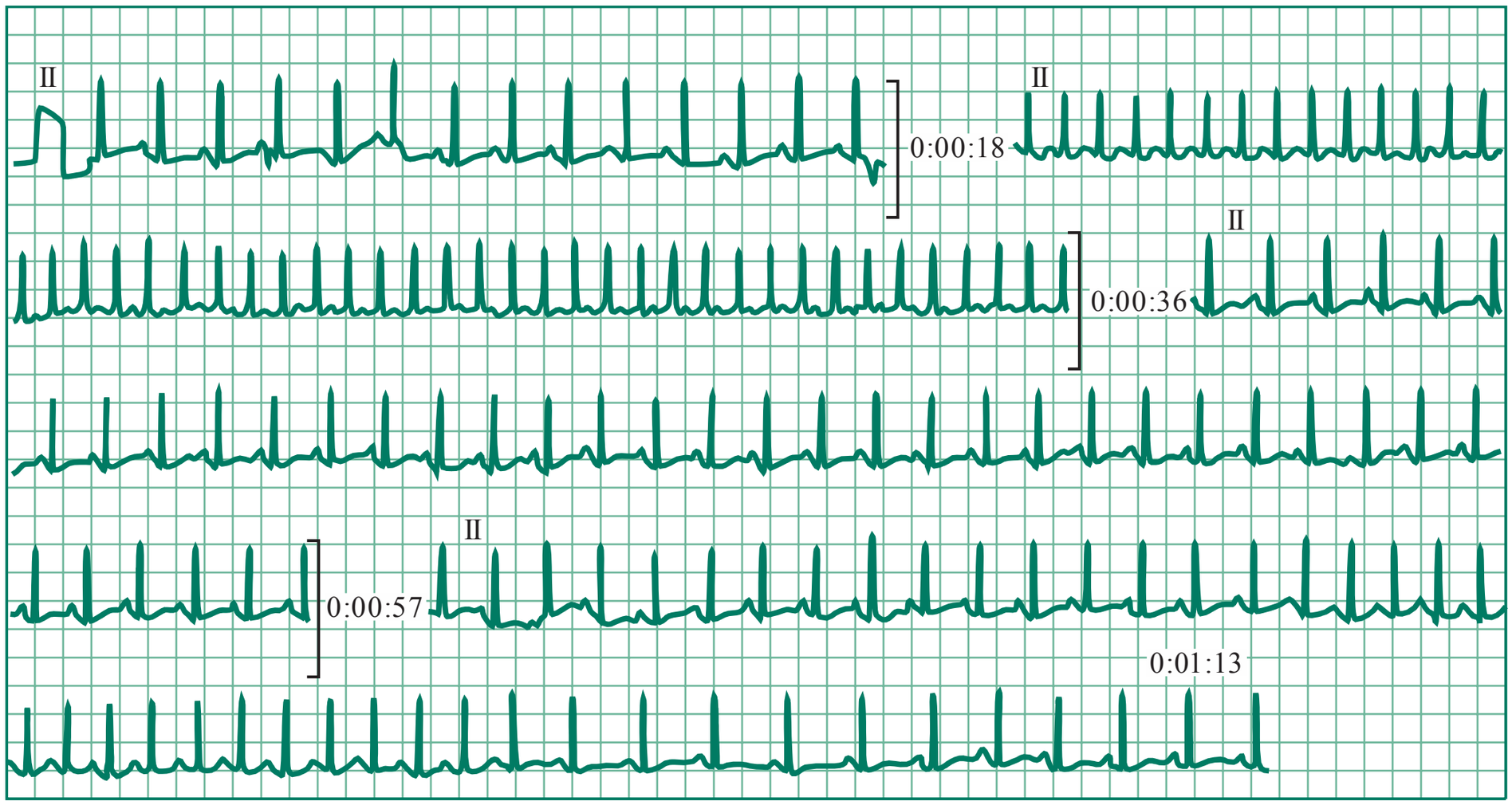
Chest radiographs are normal during the early course of tachycardia and therefore are usually not obtained. If HF is present, the heart is enlarged and pulmonary venous congestion is evident.

C. Electrocardiography

ECG is the most important tool in the diagnosis of SVT and to define the precise tachycardia mechanism. Findings include a heart rate that is rapid and out of proportion to the patient's physical status (eg, a rate of 140 beats/min with an abnormal P wave while quiet and asleep). For reentrant mechanisms, the rhythm would be extremely regular with little variability. For automatic mechanisms, the rhythm would be irregular with a gradual increasing and decreasing of the rate. The QRS complex is usually the same as during normal sinus rhythm. However, the QRS complex is occasionally widened (SVT with aberrant ventricular



▲**Figure 20–7.** Leads I and II with spontaneous intermittent ventricular preexcitation (Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome).



▲**Figure 20–8.** Lead II rhythm strip of ectopic atrial tachycardia. The tracing demonstrates a variable rate with a maximum of 260 beats/min, an abnormal P wave, and a gradual termination.

conduction), in which case the condition may be difficult to differentiate from ventricular tachycardia. The presence of P waves and their association with the QRS are important in determining tachycardia mechanism. With automatic tachycardias, there is often a 1:1 or 2:1 A:V relationship with P waves preceding the QRS. With reentrant tachycardias, such as accessory pathway–mediated tachycardias, a small retrograde P wave can often be seen just after the QRS. With atrioventricular nodal reentrant tachycardia, P waves cannot be identified as they are occurring at the same time as the QRS.

» Treatment

A. Acute Treatment

During the initial episodes of SVT, patients require close monitoring. Correction of acidosis and electrolyte abnormalities is also indicated. The following acute treatments are effective in terminating tachycardia only for patients with reentrant SVT. Acute treatment for automatic SVT is aimed at rate control, usually with a β-blocker.

1. Vagal maneuvers—The "diving reflex" produced by placing an ice bag on the nasal bridge for 20 seconds (for infants) will increase parasympathetic tone and terminate some tachycardias. The Valsalva maneuver, which can be performed by older compliant children, may also terminate reentrant tachycardias.

2. Adenosine—Adenosine transiently blocks AV conduction and terminates tachycardias that incorporate the AV node or may aid in the diagnosis of arrhythmias confined to the atrium by causing a pause in ventricular conduction, so one can identify the presence of multiple P waves. The dose is 100–250 mcg/kg by rapid intravenous bolus. It is antagonized by aminophylline and should be used with caution in patients with sinus node dysfunction or asthma.

3. Transesophageal atrial pacing—Atrial overdrive pacing and termination can be performed from a bipolar electrode-tipped catheter positioned in the esophagus adjacent to the left atrium. Overdrive pacing at rates approximately 30% faster than the tachycardia rate will interrupt a reentrant tachycardia circuit and restore sinus rhythm.

4. Direct current cardioversion—Direct current cardioversion (0.5–2 synchronized J/kg) should be used immediately when a patient presents in cardiovascular collapse. This will convert a reentrant mechanism to sinus. Automatic tachycardia will not respond to cardioversion.

B. Chronic Treatment

Once the patient has been diagnosed with SVT and the mechanism has been evaluated, then long-term treatment options can be considered. Options include monitoring clinically for tachycardia recurrences, medical management with antiarrhythmic medications, or an invasive electrophysiology study and ablation procedure. In infancy and early childhood, antiarrhythmic medications are the mainstay of therapy. Medications such as digoxin and β-blockers

are the first-line therapies. Other antiarrhythmic medications (eg, verapamil, flecainide, propafenone, sotalol, and amiodarone) have increased pharmacologic actions and are extremely effective. However, these medications also have serious side effects, including induction of arrhythmias and sudden death, and should be used only under the direction of a pediatric cardiologist.

Tachycardias, both automatic and reentrant, can be more definitively addressed with an invasive electrophysiology study and ablation procedure. This is a nonsurgical transvascular catheter technique that desiccates an arrhythmia focus or accessory pathway and permanently cures an arrhythmia. The ablation catheters can utilize either a heat source (radiofrequency) or a cool source (cryoablation). The latter has been reported to be safer around the normal conduction pathway and thus decreases the risk of inadvertent atrioventricular block. The success rate from an ablation procedure in a patient with a normal heart structure is > 90%, with a recurrence risk of < 10%. The procedure can be performed in infants or adults. In children younger than age 4 years, the risks of procedural complications or failed ablation are potentially higher, and the procedure should be reserved for those whose arrhythmias are refractory to medical management. The high success rate, low complication and low recurrence rates, in addition to the elimination of the need for chronic antiarrhythmic medications have made ablation procedures the primary treatment option in most pediatric cardiovascular centers. In patients with congenital heart disease, electrophysiology study and ablation procedures are also utilized to address arrhythmia substrates. The success rate of these procedures is lower than in patients with a normal heart structure, often reported in the 75%–80% range.

» Prognosis

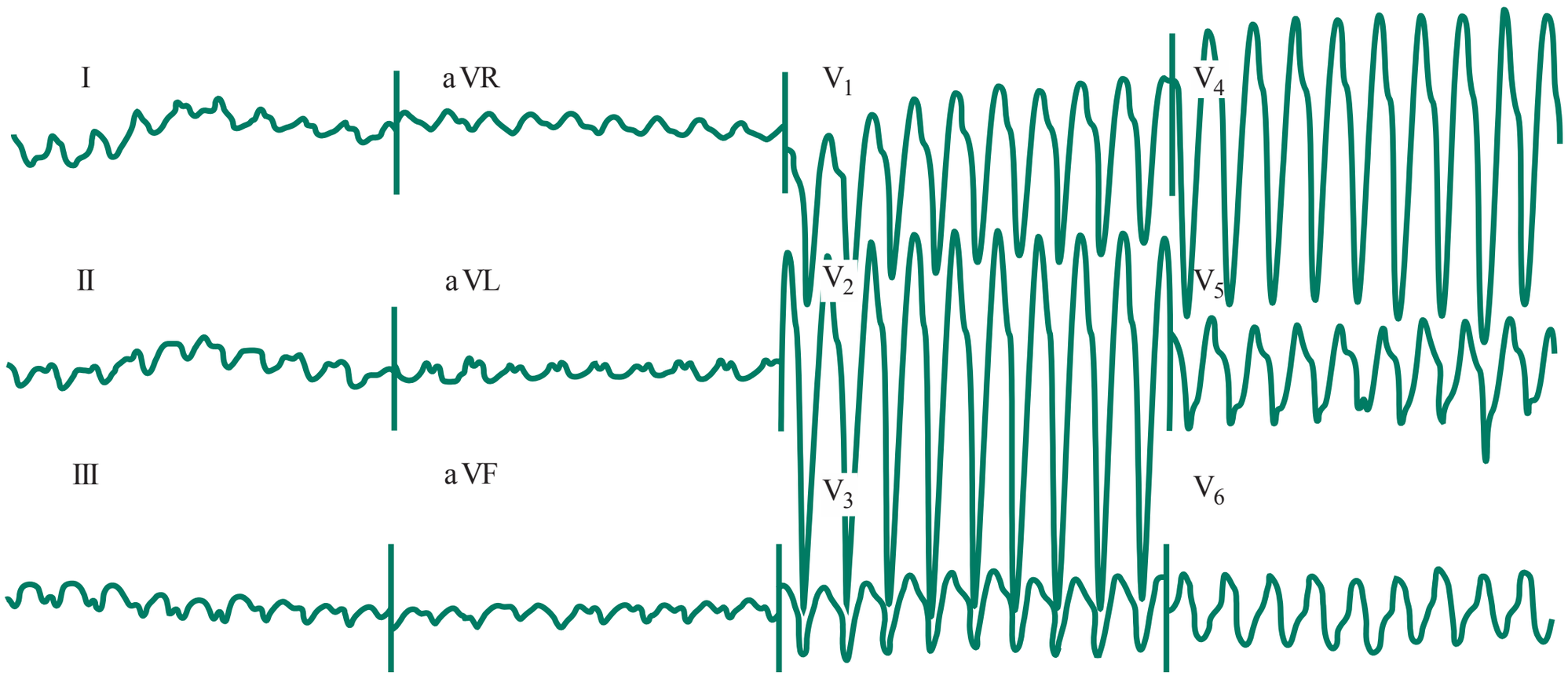
SVT in infants and children generally carries an excellent prognosis. It can be treated with medical management or with the potentially curative ablation procedures. There are, however, rare cases of incessant SVT leading to HF and there is reported sudden collapse from atrial fibrillation in the presence of WPW. All patients with complaints of rapid heartbeats or other symptoms where there is a concern for tachyarrhythmia should be referred for evaluation.

Pflaumer A: Perspectives in ablation of arrhythmias in children and patients with congenital heart disease. Intern Med J 2012;42(Suppl 5):70–76 [PMID: 23035686].

VENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA

Ventricular tachycardia is uncommon in childhood (Figure 20–9). It is usually associated with underlying abnormalities of the myocardium (myocarditis, cardiomyopathy, myocardial tumors, or postoperative congenital heart disease) or toxicity (hypoxia, electrolyte imbalance, or drug toxicity). On occasion, it can be secondary to a primary electrical abnormality in an otherwise normal heart. Sustained ventricular tachycardia can be an unstable situation, and, if left untreated, it could degenerate into ventricular fibrillation and sudden collapse.

Ventricular tachycardia must be differentiated from accelerated idioventricular rhythm. The latter is a sustained ventricular tachycardia occurring in neonates with normal hearts, with a ventricular tachycardia rate within 10% of the preceding sinus rate. This is a self-limiting arrhythmia that requires no treatment. Because of the consequences of



▲**Figure 20–9.** Twelve-lead ECG from a child with imipramine toxicity and ventricular tachycardia.

sustained ventricular tachycardia, however, a symptomatic patient with a wide complex tachycardia should be considered to have ventricular tachycardia (not an accelerated idioventricular rhythm) until proven otherwise.

Acute termination of ventricular tachycardia involves restoration of the normal myocardium when possible (correction of electrolyte imbalance, drug toxicity, etc) and direct current cardioversion (1–4 J/kg), cardioversion with lidocaine (1 mg/kg), or with amiodarone (5 mg/kg load). Chronic suppression of ventricular arrhythmias with antiarrhythmic drugs has many side effects (including proarrhythmia and death), and it must be initiated in the hospital under the direction of a pediatric cardiologist. If the etiology of the tachycardia is a primary electrical abnormality, then catheter ablation procedures can be offered in select patients as a potentially curative treatment option. Ablation for ventricular tachycardia in the pediatric population is much less commonly performed compared to ablation for SVT.

Hayashi M et al: Incidence and risk factors of arrhythmic events in catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia. Circulation 2009 May 12;119(18):2426–2434 [PMID: 9398665].

McCammond AN, Balaji S. Management of tachyarrhythmias in children. Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med 2012;14(5): 490–502 [PMID: 22923097].

LONG QT SYNDROME

Long QT syndrome is a malignant disorder of cardiac conduction where cardiac repolarization is prolonged (QTc measurement on ECG) and this predisposes the patient to sudden episodes of syncope, seizures, or sudden death (5% per year if untreated). The mechanism is a pause-dependent initiation of torsades de pointes, a multifocal ventricular tachycardia. It can be congenital or acquired. Congenital long QT syndrome is inherited in an autosomal dominant (more common) or recessive pattern or it may occur spontaneously (less likely). The recessive inheritance pattern is associated with congenital deafness and the Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome. Congenital long QT syndrome is caused by a defect in one of several genes that code for ion channels in cardiac myocytes. As many as 10 genes have been identified and these defects explain 75% of the patient population with symptoms and signs consistent with long QT. The diagnosis of long QT syndrome is suspected in a patient or a family with a history of sudden syncope, seizures, documented dysrrhythmia, or cardiac arrest. Evaluation includes an ECG which shows a long QTc measurement, 24-hour ambulatory ECG, and possibly an exercise test. There is a commercially available genetic test for the primary genes which cause long QT syndrome. This test is most helpful in determining who in a family has long QT syndrome. Unfortunately, this test cannot completely rule it out as there continues to be a 25% false negative rate.

The mainstay of treatment for long QT syndrome has been exercise restriction, treatment with β-blockade, and possibly the placement of an internal cardioverter/defibrillator. Within the next several years, more gene-specific therapies are anticipated to be developed.

Long QT syndrome can also be acquired, resulting from altered ventricular repolarization secondary to myocardial toxins, ischemia, or inflammation. This condition also predisposes a patient to ventricular arrhythmias. Numerous medications can also cause QT prolongation.

Kirsh JA. Finding the proverbial “needle in a haystack”: Identifying presymptomatic individuals with long QT syndrome. Heart Rhythm 2013;10(2):239–240 [PMID: 23219703].

Vetter VL et al: Cardiovascular monitoring of children and adolescents with heart disease receiving medications for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder [corrected]: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young Congenital Cardiac Defects Committee and the Council on Cardiovascular Nursing. Circulation 2008 May 6;117(18):2407–2423 [PMID: 18427125].

SUDDEN DEATH

Long QT syndrome and HCM are two of the most common cause of sudden death in young athletes. Other causes include dilated or restrictive cardiomyopathies, arrhythmogenic RV dysplasia, congenital structural anomalies of the coronary arteries, and primary arrhythmias such as catecholamine sensitive ventricular tachycardia or Brugada syndrome. Many of these causes are genetic and thus it is necessary to conduct a detailed family history looking for seizures, syncope, or early sudden death. Family members should be examined with an arrhythmia screen consisting of a physical examination, ECG, and echocardiography to detect arrhythmias or cardiomyopathies.. Arrhythmias in patients with postoperative congenital heart disease are important causes of morbidity and mortality and may present as sudden death events.

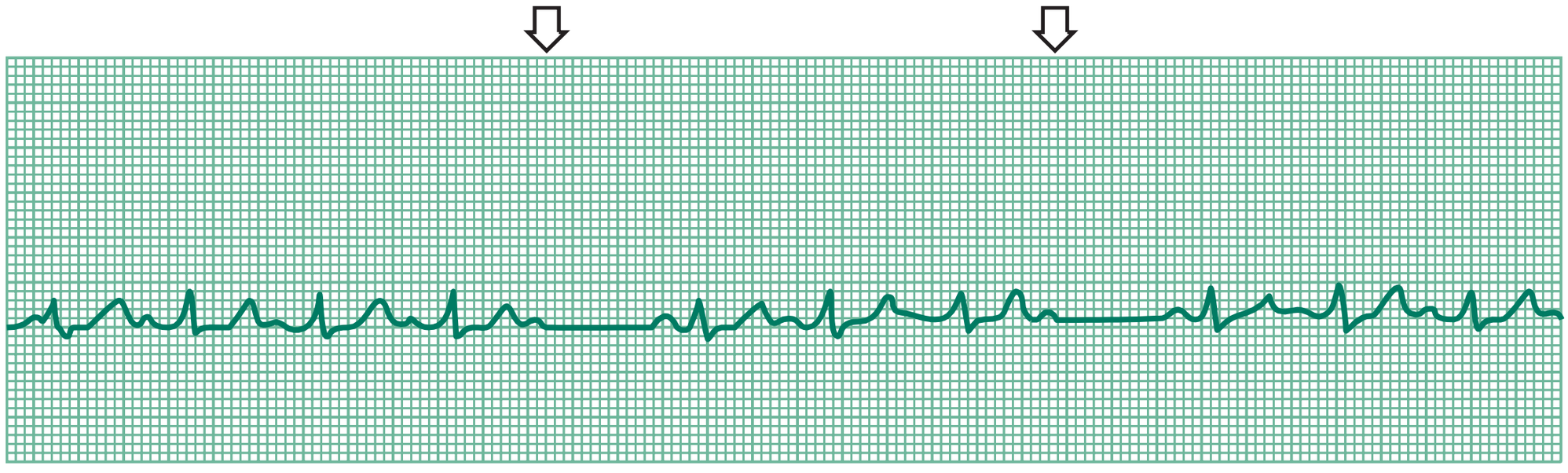
Harmon KG et al: Incidence of sudden cardiac death in athletes: a state-of-the-art review. Heart. 2014 Aug;100(16):1227–34 [PMID: 25049314].

Pilmer CM et al: Sudden cardiac death in children and adolescents between 1 and 19 years of age. Heart Rhythm. 2014 Feb;11(2):239–45 [PMID: 24239636].

DISORDERS OF ATRIOVENTRICULAR CONDUCTION

» General Considerations

The atrioventricular node is the electrical connection between the atrium and the ventricles. Atrioventricular blocks involve a slowing or disruption of this connection



▲**Figure 20–10.** Lead I rhythm strip with Mobitz type I (Wenckebach) second-degree heart block. There is progressive lengthening of the PR interval prior to the nonconducted P wave (arrows).

and are described according to the degree of this slowing or disruption.

First-Degree Atrioventricular Block

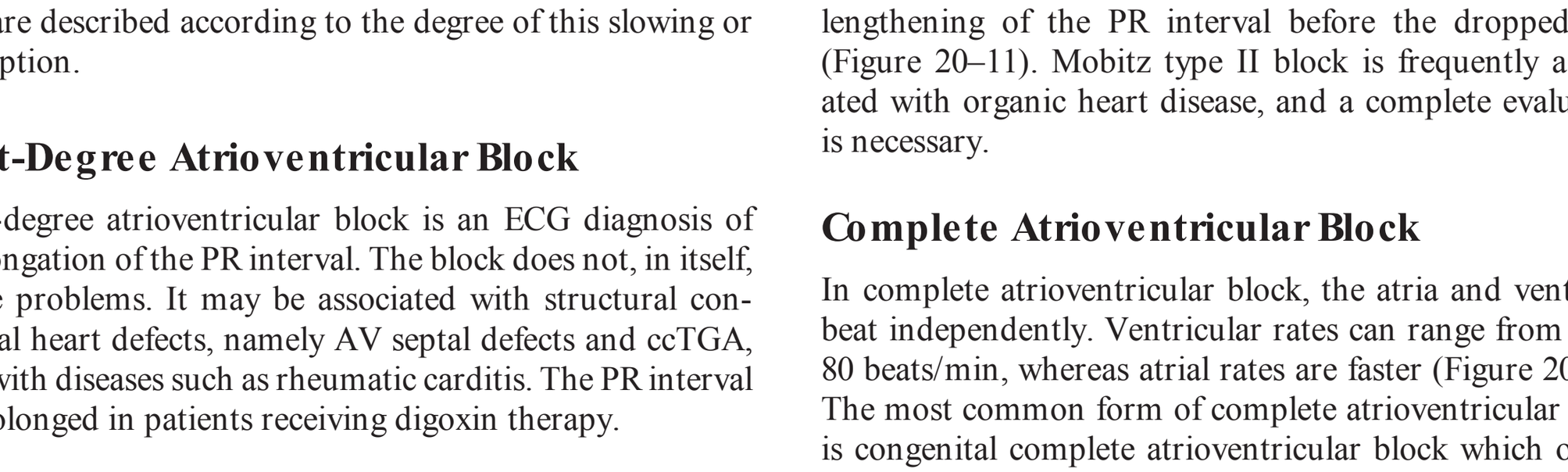
First-degree atrioventricular block is an ECG diagnosis of prolongation of the PR interval. The block does not, in itself, cause problems. It may be associated with structural congenital heart defects, namely AV septal defects and ccTGA, and with diseases such as rheumatic carditis. The PR interval is prolonged in patients receiving digoxin therapy.

Second-Degree Atrioventricular Block

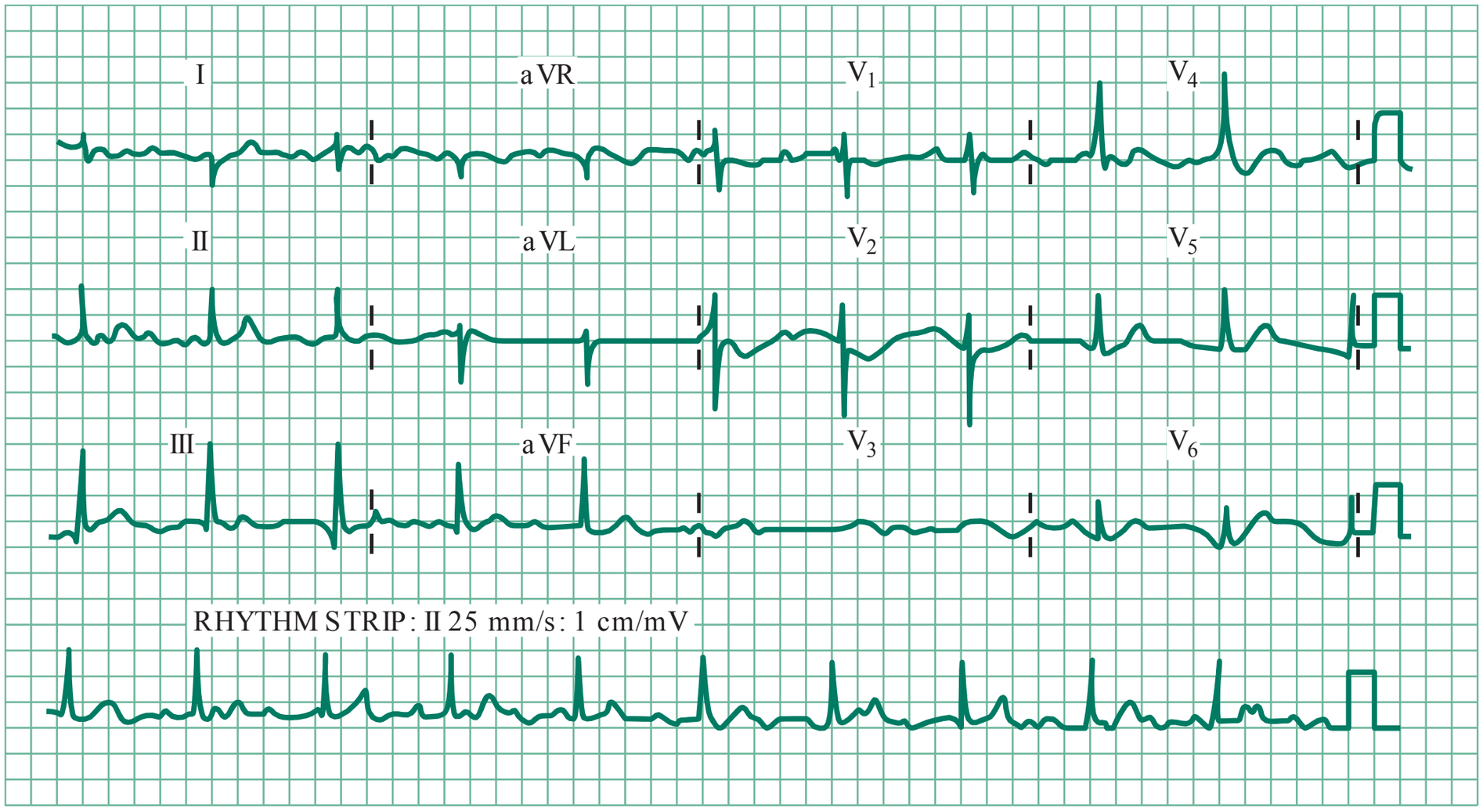
Mobitz type I (Wenckebach) atrioventricular block is recognized by progressive prolongation of the PR interval until there is no QRS following a P wave (Figure 20–10). Mobitz type I block occurs in normal hearts at rest and is usually benign. In Mobitz type II block, there is no progressive lengthening of the PR interval before the dropped beat (Figure 20–11). Mobitz type II block is frequently associated with organic heart disease, and a complete evaluation is necessary.

Complete Atrioventricular Block

In complete atrioventricular block, the atria and ventricles beat independently. Ventricular rates can range from 40 to 80 beats/min, whereas atrial rates are faster (Figure 20–12). The most common form of complete atrioventricular block is congenital complete atrioventricular block which occurs in a fetus or infant with an otherwise normal heart. There is a very high association with maternal systemic lupus erythematosus antibodies and therefore it is recommended to screen the mother of an affected infant even if the mother has no symptoms of collagen vascular disease. Congenital complete atrioventricular block is also associated with some forms of congenital heart disease (congenitally corrected



▲**Figure 20–11.** Lead III rhythm strip with Mobitz type II second-degree heart block. There is a consistent PR interval with occasional loss of AV conduction (arrow).



▲**Figure 20–12.** Twelve-lead ECG and lead II rhythm strip of complete heart block. The atrial rate is 150 beats/min, and the ventricular rate is 60 beats/min.

transposition of the great vessels and AV septal defect). Acquired complete atrioventricular block may be secondary to acute myocarditis, drug toxicity, electrolyte imbalance, hypoxia, and cardiac surgery.

» Clinical Findings

The primary finding in infants and children with complete atrioventricular block is a significantly low heart rate for age. The diagnosis is often made prenatally when fetal bradycardia is documented. An ultrasound is then conducted as well as a fetal echocardiogram of the heart. With the fetal echocardiogram, atrial and ventricular contractions can be distinguished and the atrial rate is documented as being higher than the ventricular rate with no relationship to each other. If the heart rates are sufficiently low, then there will be low cardiac output, decreased cardiac function, and the development of hydrops fetalis. Postnatal adaptation largely depends on the heart rate; infants with heart rates less than 55 beats/min are at significantly greater risk for low cardiac output, HF, and death. Wide QRS complexes and a rapid atrial rate are also poor prognostic signs. Most patients have an innocent flow murmur from increased stroke volume. In symptomatic patients, the heart can be quite enlarged, and pulmonary edema may be present.

Complete atrioventricular block can also occur in older patients. Patients may be asymptomatic or may present with presyncope, syncope, or fatigue. Complete cardiac evaluation, including ECG, echocardiography, and Holter monitoring, is necessary to assess the patient for ventricular dysfunction and to relate any symptoms to concurrent arrhythmias.

» Treatment

When diagnosis of complete atrioventricular block is made in a fetus, the treatment depends on gestational age, ventricular rate, and the presence or absence of hydrops. Some centers have advocated the administration of steroids, intravenous immune globulin (IVIG), and/or β-adrenergic stimulation treatment of the mother in some instances (fetuses that have associated heart failure). Emergent delivery is sometimes warranted. Postnatal treatment for neonates or older patients who present with significant symptoms and require immediate intervention includes temporary support by the infusions of isoproterenol, temporary transvenous pacing wires, or by temporary transcutaneous pacemakers if needed. The relationship of complete congenital atrioventricular block to auto-antibody production and cardiomyopathy is the basis for the consideration of immune modulation with steroids and IVIG in neonates in addition to their mothers. Long-term treatment involves the placement of a permanent pacemaker.

Villain E: Indications for pacing in patients with congenital heart disease. Pacing Clin Electrophysiol 2008 Feb;31(Suppl 1): S17–S20 [PMID: 18226027].

Trucco SM et al: Use of intravenous gamma globulin and corticosteroids in the treatment of maternal autoantibody-mediated cardiomyopathy. J Am Coll Cardiol 2011 Feb 8:57(6):715–723 [PMID: 21292131].

SYNCOPE (FAINTING)

Syncope is a sudden transient loss of consciousness that resolves spontaneously. The common form of syncope (simple fainting) occurs in 15% of children and is a disorder of control of heart rate and blood pressure by the autonomic nervous system that causes hypotension or bradycardia. It is often associated with rapid rising and postural hypotension, prolonged standing, or hypovolemia. Patients exhibit vagal symptoms such as pallor, nausea, or diaphoresis. Syncope, also known as autonomic dysfunction, can be evaluated with head-up tilt table testing. The patient is placed supine on a tilt table, and then—under constant heart rate and blood pressure monitoring—is tilted to the upright position. If symptoms develop, they can be classified as vasodepressor (hypotension), cardioinhibitory (bradycardia), or mixed.

Syncope is usually self-limited (can recur over approximately 6 months to 2 years) and can be controlled with dietary salt and volume loading to prevent hypovolemia. In refractory cases, medications to manipulate the autonomic nervous system have been useful. Fludrocortisone (0.1 mg/kg/d) is a mineralocorticoid that causes renal salt resorption and thus increases intravascular volume. Although β-blockers have been used for treatment of syncope, there is a paucity of data regarding their effectiveness. Vagolytic agents (disopyramide, 2.5 mg/kg four times daily) help control hypervagotonia, and the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors have also been effective in alleviating symptoms. Syncope that occurs during exercise or stress or is associated with a positive family history is a warning sign that a serious underlying dysrhythmia may be present, calling for further investigation.

Moodley M. Clinical approach to syncope in children. Semin Pediatr Neurol. 2013 Mar;20(1):12–7 [PMID: 23465769].

21 Gastrointestinal Tract

Edward J. Hoffenberg, MD
Glenn T. Furuta, MD
Gregory Kobak, MD
Edwin Liu, MD
Jason Soden, MD
Robert E. Kramer, MD
David Brumbaugh, MD

DISORDERS OF THE ESOPHAGUS

GASTROESOPHAGEAL REFLUX & GERD

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Key definitions:
- **Gastroesophageal reflux (GER)** refers to uncomplicated recurrent spitting and vomiting in healthy infants that resolves spontaneously.
- **Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)** is present when reflux causes secondary symptoms or complications.
- **Esophageal manifestations of GERD** include symptoms (heartburn, regurgitation) and mucosal complications (esophagitis, stricture, Barrett esophagus) primarily related to acid exposure in the upper gastrointestinal (GI) tract, primarily the esophagus itself.
- **Extraesophageal manifestations of GERD** include a myriad of clinical disorders that may be linked to reflux, including upper and lower airway symptoms and findings, as well as dental erosions. In most settings, objective confirmation of extraesophageal reflux complications is challenging.

Clinical Findings

A. Infants With Gastroesophageal Reflux

Gastroesophageal (GE) reflux is common in young infants and is a physiological event. Frequent postprandial regurgitation, ranging from effortless to forceful, is the most common infant symptom. Infant GER is usually benign, and it is expected to resolve by 12–18 months of life.

Reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus occurs during spontaneous relaxations of the lower esophageal sphincter that are unaccompanied by swallowing. Factors promoting reflux in infants include small stomach capacity, frequent large-volume feedings, short esophageal length, supine positioning, and slow swallowing response to the flow of refluxed material up the esophagus. Infants' individual responses to the stimulus of reflux, particularly the maturity of their self-settling skills, are important factors determining the severity of reflux-related symptoms.

When infants develop symptoms such as failure to thrive, food refusal, pain behavior, GI bleeding, upper or lower airway-associated respiratory symptoms, or Sandifer syndrome, these indicate gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD).

B. Older Children With Reflux

Older children with GERD complain of adult-type symptoms such as regurgitation into the mouth, heartburn, and dysphagia. Esophagitis can occur as a complication of GERD and requires endoscopy with biopsy for diagnostic confirmation. Children with asthma, cystic fibrosis, developmental handicaps, hiatal hernia (HH), and repaired tracheoesophageal fistula are at increased risk of GERD and esophagitis.

C. Extraesophageal Manifestations of Reflux Disease

GERD is implicated in the pathogenesis of several disorders unrelated to esophageal dysfunction. In infants, GERD has been linked to the occurrence of apnea or apparent life-threatening events (ALTEs), although the majority of pathologic cases are not reflux associated. Upper airway symptoms

(hoarseness, sinusitis, laryngeal erythema, and edema), lower airway symptoms (asthma, recurrent pneumonia, recurrent cough), dental erosions, and Sandifer syndrome have all been linked to GERD, although proof of cause-and-effect relationship is challenging.

D. Diagnostic Studies

History and physical examination alone should help differentiate infants with benign, recurrent vomiting (physiologic GER) from those who have red flags for GERD or other underlying primary conditions that may present with recurrent emesis at this age. Warning signs that warrant further investigation in the infant with recurrent vomiting include bile-stained emesis (a warning sign for intestinal obstruction), GI bleeding, onset of vomiting after 6 months, failure to thrive, diarrhea, fever, hepatosplenomegaly, abdominal tenderness or distension, or neurologic changes.

An upper GI series should be considered when anatomic etiologies of recurrent vomiting are considered, but should not be considered to be a test for GERD.

In older children with heartburn or frequent regurgitation, a trial of acid-suppressant therapy may be both diagnostic and therapeutic. If a child has symptoms requiring ongoing acid suppressant therapy, or if symptoms fail to improve with empiric therapy, consider referral to a pediatric gastroenterologist to assist in evaluation for complicated GERD, or nonreflux diagnoses including eosinophilic esophagitis (EoE).

Esophagoscopy and mucosal biopsies are useful to evaluate for mucosal injury secondary to GERD (Barrett esophagus, stricture, erosive esophagitis), or to evaluate for nonreflux diagnoses that present with reflux-like symptoms, including EoE. Endoscopic evaluation is not requisite for the evaluation of all infants and children with suspected GERD.

Intraluminal esophageal pH monitoring (pH probe) and combined multiple intraluminal impedance and pH monitoring (pH impedance probe) are indicated to quantify reflux, and to evaluate for objective evidence of symptom associations with regards to atypical reflux presentations. pH probe studies quantify esophageal acid exposure, and pH impedance studies also add detection of bolus fluid transit, including both acidic and nonacidic reflux. pH impedance studies in particular may have higher diagnostic yield in evaluating for respiratory or atypical complications of reflux disease, or in evaluating for breakthrough reflux symptoms while a patient is on acid-suppressant therapy.

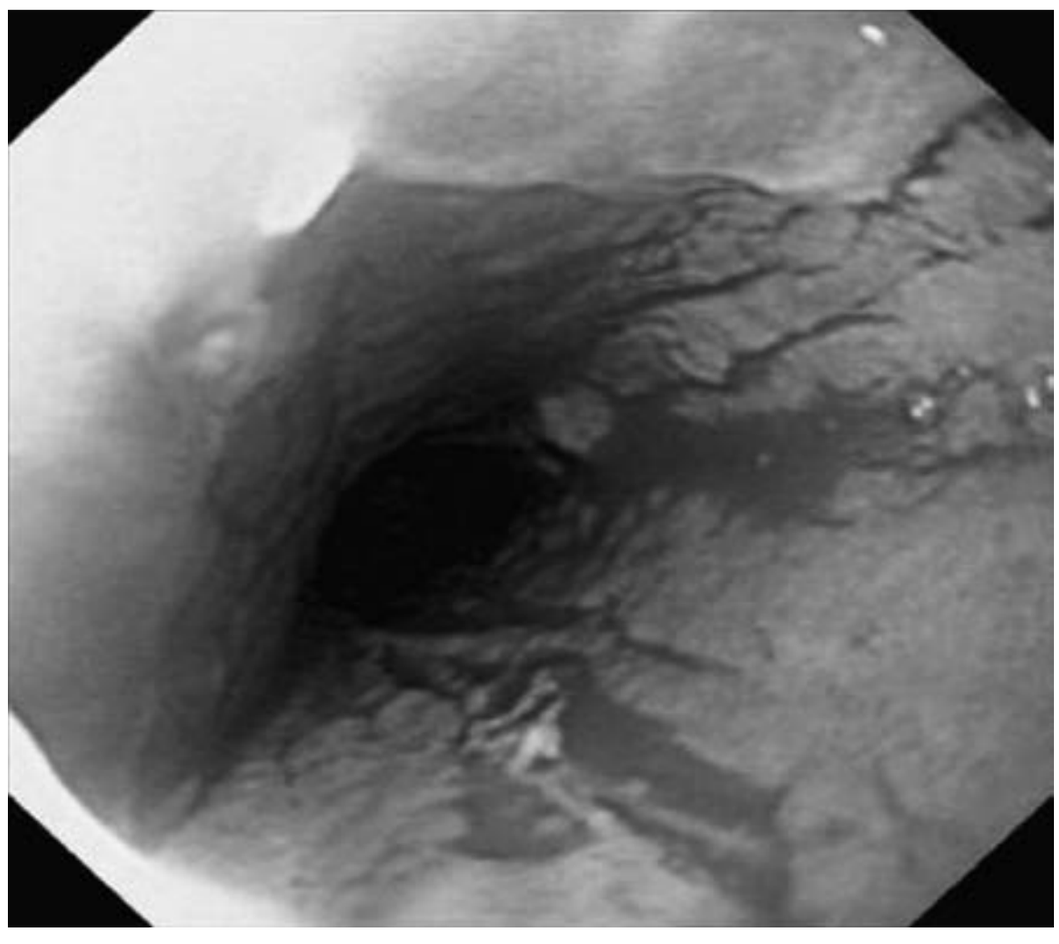
» Treatment & Prognosis

Reflux resolves spontaneously in 85% of affected infants by 12 months of age, coincident with assumption of erect posture and initiation of solid feedings. Until then, regurgitation volume may be reduced by offering small feedings at frequent intervals and by thickening feedings with rice cereal (2–3 tsp/oz of formula). In infants with unexplained crying/fussy behavior, no evidence supports empiric use of acid suppression.

Acid suppression may be used to treat suspected esophageal or extraesophageal complications of acid reflux in infants and older children. Therapeutic options include histamine-2 (H_2)–receptor antagonists or proton pump inhibitors (PPIs). PPI therapy has been shown to significantly heal both esophageal mucosal injury and symptoms from GERD within an 8- to 12-week period. Potential risk factors associated with long-term PPI therapy include risk for infection (pneumonia, Clostridium difficile–associated diarrhea), and an increased risk for osteoporosis has been demonstrated in adults. There is no sufficient evidence to support the routine use of prokinetic agents for treatment of pediatric GERD.

Spontaneous resolution is less likely in older children with GERD and those with underlying neurodevelopmental disorders. Episodic symptoms may be controlled with intermittent use of acid blockers. Patients with persistent symptoms may require chronic acid suppression. Complications of reflux esophagitis or chronic GERD include feeding dysfunction, esophageal stricture, and anemia (Figure 21–1). Barrett esophagus, a precancerous condition, is very uncommon in children, but it may occur in patients with an underlying primary diagnosis that offers high risk for GERD.

Antireflux surgery (Nissen fundoplication) may be considered in a child with GERD who (1) fails medical therapy



▲**Figure 21–1.** Esophagitis associated with gastroesophageal reflux disease. Mucosa is erythematous with loss of vascular pattern.

(2) is dependent on persistent, aggressive medical therapy, (3) is nonadherent to medical therapy, and (4) has persistent, severe respiratory complications of GERD or other life-threatening complications of GERD. Potential complications after antireflux surgery include dumping syndrome, gas bloat syndrome, persistent retching/gagging, or wrap failure.

Lightdale JR et al: Gastroesophageal reflux: management guidance for the pediatrician. Pediatrics 2013 May;131(5):e1684–e1695 [PMID: 23629618].

Martin K et al: Outcomes of pediatric laparoscopic fundoplication: a critical review of the literature. Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2014 Feb;28(2):97–102 [PMID: 24288692].

Smits MJ et al: Association between gastroesophageal reflux and pathologic apneas in infants: a systematic review. Neurogastroenterol Motil 2014 Nov;26(11):1527–1538 [PMID: 25080836].

EOSINOPHILIC ESOPHAGITIS

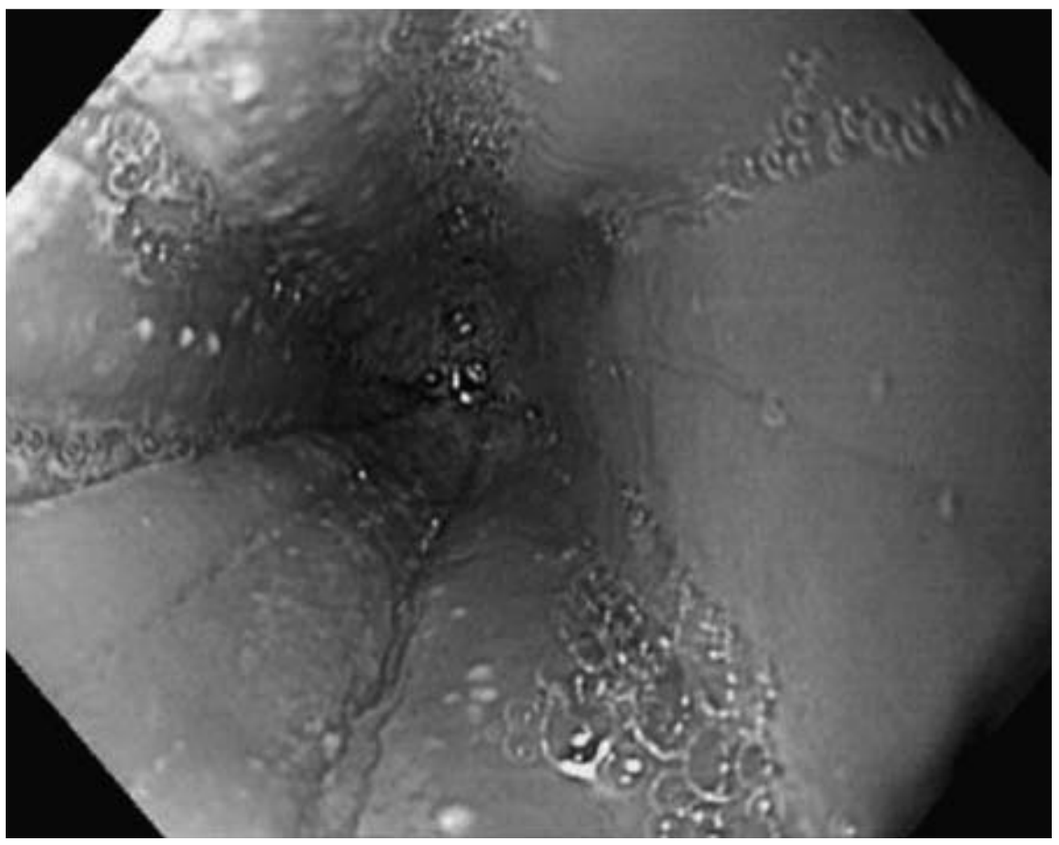
ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Feeding dysfunction, dysphagia, esophageal food impaction, and heartburn.
- Must rule out other causes for esophageal eosinophilia before assigning diagnosis of eosinophilic esophagitis (EoE).
- Esophageal food impaction, esophageal stricture are two most common complications.
- Elimination of food allergens or swallowed topical steroids are effective treatments for EoE.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

This recently recognized entity occurs in all ages and most frequently affects boys. Common initial presentations in young children include feeding dysfunction and vague nonspecific symptoms of GERD such as abdominal pain, vomiting, and regurgitation. If a history of careful and lengthy chewing, long mealtimes, washing food down with liquid or avoiding highly textured foods is encountered, one may suspect EoE. In adolescent's symptoms of solid food dysphagia, and acute and recurrent food impactions predominate. If a child's symptoms are unresponsive to medical and/or surgical management of GERD, EoE should be strongly considered as a diagnostic possibility. A family or personal history of atopy, asthma, dysphagia, or food impaction is not uncommon.



▲**Figure 21–2.** Esophagitis associated with eosinophilic esophagitis. Mucosa contains linear folds, white exudate, and has loss of vascular pattern.

B. Laboratory Findings

Peripheral eosinophilia may or may not be present. The esophageal mucosa usually appears abnormal with features of thickening, mucosal fissures, strictures, and rings. The esophagus is often sprinkled with pinpoint white exudates that superficially resemble Candida infection. On microscopic examination the white spots are composed of eosinophils (Figure 21–2). A lengthy stricture can be seen at the time of endoscopy but esophagrams may capture this more often. Serum IgE may be elevated, but this is not a diagnostic finding. Specific allergens can often be identified by skin testing, and patient can sometimes identify foods that precipitate pain and dysphagia.

» Differential Diagnosis

The most common differential conditions are peptic esophagitis, congenital esophageal stricture, and Candidal esophagitis. Patients with eosinophilic gastroenteropathy can also present with gastric outlet obstruction or intestinal caused by large local infiltrates of eosinophils in the antrum, duodenum, and cecum.

» Diagnosis

The diagnosis of EoE is based on clinical and histopathological features. Symptoms referable to esophageal dysfunction must be seen in association with esophageal eosinophilia and a normal gastric and duodenal mucosa. Other causes for esophageal eosinophilia, in particular, GERD, must be ruled out.

» Treatment

Dietary exclusion of offending allergens (elemental diet, removal of allergenic foods) is effective treatment, but adherence in older children can be difficult. Topical corticosteroids are an effective treatment. Steroids are puffed in the mouth and swallowed from a metered dose pulmonary inhaler; this method of administration is completely opposite of how topical steroids are administered for the treatment of asthma. Two puffs of fluticasone from an inhaler twice daily is a common recommendation. Patients should not rinse their mouth or eat for 30 minutes to maximize the effectiveness. Esophageal dilation may be required to treat strictures. The association of EoE and esophageal malignancy has not been identified. Parent and family support is available at American Partnership for Eosinophilic Disorders APFED.org.

Chehade M et al: Food allergy and eosinophilic esophagitis: what do we do? J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract 2015 Jan–Feb;3(1): 25–32 [PMID: 25577614].

Dellon ES et al. ACG clinical guideline: evidenced based approach to the diagnosis and management of esophageal eosinophilia and eosinophilic esophagitis (EoE). Am J Gastroenterol 2013 May;108(5):679–692 [PMID: 2356735].

Menard-Katcher C et al: Significance of feeding dysfunction in eosinophilic esophagitis. World J Gastroenterol 2014 Aug 21;20(31):11019–11022 [PMID: 25152606].

ACHALASIA OF THE ESOPHAGUS

A. Symptoms and Signs

Achalasia occurs rarely in pediatrics, with an incidence of 0.11 per 100,000 and most commonly in children who are older than 5 years. Cases during infancy have been reported, but overall less than 5% of achalasia occurs in patients younger than 15 years. Common symptoms reported were emesis (84.6%), dysphagia (69.2%), weight loss (46.0%), and chronic cough (46.1%). Patients may eat slowly and often require large amounts of fluid when ingesting solid food. Familial cases occur in Allgrove syndrome (alacrima, adrenal insufficiency, and achalasia, associated with a defect in the AAAS gene on 12q13, encoding the ALADIN protein) and familial dysautonomia. Though no genetic or pathophysiologic basis has been identified, there have been recent case reports of achalasia in pediatric autism patients.

B. Imaging and Manometry

Barium esophagram shows a dilated esophagus with a tapered "beak" at the GE junction. Fluoroscopy shows irregular tertiary contractions of the esophageal wall, indicative of disordered esophageal peristalsis. Achalasia has also been identified incidentally in patients undergoing GE scintigraphy. Esophageal manometry classically shows high resting pressure of the lower esophageal sphincter, failure of sphincter relaxation after swallowing, and abnormal esophageal peristalsis, though these findings may be sporadic, with partial or normal relaxations present in some swallows. Examination of high-resolution manometry in pediatric achalasia has shown high inter and intrarater reliability using standardized software diagnosis packages.

C. Differential Diagnosis

Congenital or peptic stricture, webs, and masses of the esophagus may mimic achalasia. EoE commonly presents with symptoms of dysphagia and food impaction, similar to achalasia. Cricopharyngeal achalasia or spasm is a rare cause of dysphagia in children, but it shares some clinical features of primary achalasia of the LES. Intestinal pseudoobstruction, multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2b, systemic amyloidosis, and postvagotomy syndrome cause esophageal dysmotility similar to achalasia. Teenage girls may be suspected of having an eating disorder. In Chagas disease, caused by the parasite Trypanosoma cruzi, nNOS and ganglion cells are diminished or absent in the muscular layers of the LES causing an acquired achalasia.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Endoscopic injection of botulinum toxin paralyzes the lower esophageal sphincter and temporarily relieves obstruction but has relapse rates of greater than 50%. Pneumatic dilation of the lower esophageal sphincter produces temporary relief of obstruction that may last weeks to years. Pediatric trials are limited, but a recent single-center experience of endoscopic dilation showed a long-term success rate of up to 87% with one to three dilations. Because of concerns that dilation may increase inflammation between the esophageal mucosal and muscular layers, however, some have advocated surgical (Heller) myotomy as the best initial treatment. While, long-lasting functional relief can be achieved with surgical therapy, recurrence risk of obstructive symptoms following myotomy in children has been reported to be as high as 27%, with perforation rates up to 9.6%. Postoperative GERD is common, leading some to perform a fundoplication or place diaphragm valves at the same time as myotomy. In a large retrospective pediatric study, general response rates of pneumatic dilation compared to Heller myotomy were not significantly different, though recent studies suggest that children over 6 may have better outcomes with pneumatic dilation. In adult achalasia, per-oral endoscopic myotomy (POEM) has been increasingly utilized as a less invasive alternative to surgical treatment. There have been isolated case reports of POEM in children, with a small series showing no complications and complete symptom resolution at 12-month follow-up. Self-expanding metal stents have been used with success in adults with achalasia but have not been studied in children.

Betalli P et al: Autism and esophageal achalasia in childhood: a possible correlation? Report on three cases. Dis Esophagus 2013 Apr; 26(3):237–240 [PMID: 22607127].

Di Nardo G et al: Pneumatic balloon dilation in pediatric achalasia: efficacy and factors predicting outcome at a single tertiary pediatric gastroenterology center. Gastrointest Endosc 2012 Nov;76(5):927–932 [PMID: 22921148].

Esposito C et al: Long-term results of laparoscopic treatment of esophageal achalasia in children: a multicentric survey. J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2013 Nov;23(11):955–959 [PMID: 24073839].

Familiari P et al: Peroral endoscopic myotomy for the treatment of achalasia in children. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2013 Dec;57(6):794–797 [PMID: 23941997].

Franklin AL et al: Childhood achalasia: a comprehensive review of disease, diagnosis and therapeutic management. World J Gastrointest Endosc 2014 Apr;6(4):105–111 [PMID: 24748917].

CAUSTIC BURNS OF THE ESOPHAGUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Reported history of ingestion, with or without evidence of oropharyngeal injury.
- Odynophagia, drooling, and food refusal typical of esophageal injury.
- Endoscopic evaluation of severity and extent of injury at 24–48 hours postingestion.
- Significant risk for development of esophageal strictures, especially in second- and third-degree lesions.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Ingestion of caustic solids or liquids (pH < 2 or pH > 12) produces esophageal lesions ranging from superficial inflammation to deep necrosis with ulceration, perforation, mediastinitis, or peritonitis. Acidic substances typically have a sour taste and therefore lead to limited injury because of the small volume ingested. Their pathogenesis is due to superficial coagulative necrosis with eschar formation. Conversely, the more benign taste of alkali ingestions may allow for larger-volume ingestions and subsequent liquefactive necrosis that can lead to deeper mucosal penetration. Additional factors that determine the severity of injury include the amount ingested, the physical state of the agent, and the duration of mucosal exposure time. For these reasons, powdered or gel formulations of dishwashing detergent are especially dangerous. More recently, ingestions of liquid detergent capsules or pods have become the most common form of household product ingestion, due in part to their bright coloring and benign taste. They tend to cause more respiratory than esophageal injury, however. Symptoms of hoarseness, stridor, and dyspnea suggest associated airway injury, while odynophagia, drooling, and food refusal are typical with more severe esophageal injury. The lips, mouth, and airway should be examined in suspected caustic ingestion, although up to 12% of children without oral lesions can have significant esophageal injury.

B. Imaging Studies

Esophagoscopy is often performed; however, timing is important as endoscopy may not indicate the true severity of injury if it is performed too early (< 24–48 hours) and may increase the risk of perforation if it is performed too late (> 72 hours) due to formation of granulation tissue. Grading of esophageal lesions into first degree (superficial injury, erythema only), second degree (transmucosal with erythema, ulceration, and sloughing), and third degree (transmural with circumferential sloughing and deep mucosal ulceration) can help predict prognosis. Circumferential lesions carry the highest risk of stricture formation. In a recent large single-center study, 34% of ingestions in children were grade 2 or 3, with 50% of these requiring one or more endoscopic dilations. If dilation is felt to be necessary, it should not be performed in the acute phase of injury, though a recent study showed that early initiation of dilations by 15 days decreased the duration and number of dilations ultimately needed. Elevation of white blood cell count was found to be a sensitive, but not specific, indicator of high-grade injury. In addition, even without clinical findings, endoscopic esophageal lesions have been found in up to 35% and gastric lesions in up to 14% of patients. Plain radiographs of the chest and abdomen may be performed if there is clinical suspicion of perforation. Contrast studies of the esophagus should be performed when endoscopic evaluation is not available, though they are unlikely to detect grades 1 and 2 lesions. Some centers have advocated conservative management with upper GI series within 3 weeks of injury, reserving endoscopic evaluation for those with evidence of stricture.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Clinical observation is always prudent, as it is often difficult to predict the severity of esophageal injury at presentation. Vomiting should not be induced and administration of buffering agents should be avoided to prevent an exothermic reaction in the stomach. Intravenous corticosteroids (eg, methylprednisolone, 1–2 mg/kg/d) are given immediately to reduce oral swelling and laryngeal edema. Many centers advocate continued corticosteroids for the first week to decrease the risk of stricture formation; however, meta-analysis has not been able to show a clinical benefit

from this practice. A recent study using high-dose (1 g/1.73 m^2) methyprednisone for the first 3 days after ingestion, however, showed a significant decrease in the occurrence of esophageal strictures. Intravenous fluids are necessary if dysphagia prevents oral intake. Treatment may be stopped if there are only first-degree burns at endoscopy. Broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage with third-generation cephalosporins may be considered, to decrease stricture formation by preventing bacterial colonization into necrotic tissue. Acid-blockade is often used to decrease additional injury from acid reflux.

Esophageal strictures develop in areas of anatomic narrowing (thoracic inlet, GE junction, or point of compression where the left bronchus crosses the esophagus), where contact with the caustic agent is more prolonged. Strictures occur only with full-thickness esophageal necrosis and prevalence of stricture formation varies from 10% to 50%. Repeated esophageal dilations may be necessary as a stricture develops, with one review showing 35% requiring more than seven dilations. In that series of 175 patients, there was long-term success in only 16% of patients, with 4.5% having complications of perforation and a 2.8% mortality rate. In complicated cases esophageal stenting may be beneficial during early management. Newer, fully covered, self-expanding, removable esophageal stents, now available in pediatric sizes, may offer additional options for recurrent caustic strictures. Topical mitomycin-C has been effective in treatment of refractory caustic strictures of the esophagus, with one study showing it to have an 85.7% response rate in cases of long (> 3 cm) strictures. Animal models utilizing 5-fluorouricil in the early management of caustic esophageal injuries have also shown promise in preventing fibrosis and stricture formation. Surgical replacement of the esophagus by colonic interposition or gastric tube may be needed for long strictures resistant to dilation. There has been a recent case report of EoE that had developed following a caustic injury, leading to speculation of a causal effect.

Bramuzzo M et al: Liquid detergent capsule ingestion: a new pediatric epidemic? Pediatr Emerg Care 2013 Mar;29(3):410–401 [PMID: 23462406].

El-Asmar KM et al: Topical mitomycin C can effectively alleviate dysphagia in children with long-segment caustic esophageal strictures. Dis Esophagus 2014 Apr 7. E-pub ahead of print [PMID: 24708423].

Homan M et al: Caustic ingestion: a possible cause of eosinophilic esophagitis? Pediatrics 2013 Apr;131(4):e1284–e1287 [PMID: 23478872].

Usta M et al: High doses of methylprednisolone in the management of caustic esophageal burns. Pediatrics 2014 Jun;133(6):E1518–E1524 [PMID: 24864182].

Uygun I et al: Fluoroscopic balloon dilatation for caustic esophageal stricture in children: an 8-year experience. J Pediatr Surg 2013 Nov;48(11):2230–2234 [PMID: 24210191].

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE ALIMENTARY TRACT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dysphagia, odynophagia, drooling, regurgitation, and chest/abdominal pain are typical symptoms of esophageal foreign body.
- Esophageal foreign bodies should be removed within 24 hours of ingestion.
- Esophageal button batteries must be removed emergently because of their ability to cause lethal injury.
- Most foreign bodies in the stomach will pass spontaneously.

Older infants and toddlers engage their environment, in part, by placing items in their mouth. As a result, foreign body ingestions are a common occurrence in pediatrics. Fortunately, 80%–90% of foreign bodies pass spontaneously with only 10%–20% requiring endoscopic or surgical management. At presentation the most common symptoms of an ingested foreign body are dysphagia, odynophagia, drooling, regurgitation, and chest or abdominal pain. Respiratory symptoms, such as cough, become prominent for foreign bodies retained in the esophagus for more than 1 week. A high index of suspicion should be maintained for toddlers presenting with these symptoms, even without a witnessed ingestion. If the ingestion is witnessed, the timing of the event is important to note as it will have implications for the timing of any necessary endoscopic procedures for removal.

The most common foreign body ingested by children is the coin (Figure 21–3). Ingested foreign bodies tend to lodge in narrowed areas—valleculae, thoracic inlet, GE junction, pylorus, ligament of Treitz, and ileocecal junction, or at the site of congenital or acquired intestinal stenoses. The evaluation of a swallowed foreign body starts with plain radiography. Radio-opaque objects will be easily visualized. Non–radio-opaque objects, such as plastic toys, may not appear on standard radiograph. If there is particular concern, based on patient symptoms, for a retained esophageal foreign body that is non–radio-opaque, a contrast esophagram is a useful test. Use of contrast, however, may delay or increase the risk of anesthesia due to aspiration concerns.

Esophageal foreign bodies should be removed within 24 hours to avoid ulceration, which can lead to serious complications such as erosion into a vessel or stricture formation. Disk-shaped button batteries lodged in the esophagus are especially concerning and should be removed immediately. Button batteries may cause an electrical thermal injury in as little as 2 hours and have resulted in death from subsequent aortoenteric fistula formation, even weeks after battery removal. Although most button batteries in the stomach will

▲**Figure 21–3.** Foreign body in esophagus. Coin is lodged in the esophageal lumen.

pass uneventfully, greater attention is required for larger batteries (> 20 mm) in younger children (< 5 years of age), as there is greater risk for injury sustained to the esophagus and the battery is less likely to successfully traverse the pylorus. In these cases, endoscopic evaluation with gastric batteries may still be considered in order to evaluate the esophagus for signs of injury and to remove the gastric battery. Rates of significant injury and death due to swallowed button batteries have increased in recent years with the transition toward production of higher-voltage lithium batteries.

Esophageal food impaction should always raise the question of underlying esophagitis. In particular, EoE has been shown to be present in up to 75% of pediatric patients presenting initially with esophageal food impaction.

Smooth foreign bodies in the stomach, such as buttons or coins, may be monitored without attempting removal for up to several months if the child is free of symptoms. Straight pins, screws, and nails are examples of objects with a blunt end that is heavier than the sharp end. These asymmetrically weighted objects will generally pass without incident and so need for endoscopic removal must be considered on a case-by-case basis. In contrast, double-sided sharp objects that are weighted equally on each end, such as fishbones and wooden toothpicks, should be removed as they can migrate through the wall of the GI tract into the pericardium, liver, and inferior vena cava. Large, open safety pins should be removed from the stomach because they may not pass the pyloric sphincter and may cause perforation. Objects longer than 5 cm may be unable to pass the ligament of Treitz and should be removed. Magnets require consideration for removal only if there has been more than one ingested, or if a single magnet was ingested along with a metallic object, because of the risk of fistula or erosion of mucosal tissue trapped between two adherent foreign bodies. Rare earth metal magnets, or neodymium magnets, are very powerful small magnets that are sold in bulk and have caused multiple cases of bowel perforation necessitating surgical intervention. Ingestion of multiple magnets should lead to immediate endoscopic removal if technically feasible. If not, their migration through the GI tract should be followed radiographically until they are passed.

The use of balanced electrolyte lavage solutions containing polyethylene glycol may help the passage of small, smooth foreign bodies lodged in the intestine. Lavage is especially useful in hastening the passage of foreign bodies that may contain an absorbable toxic material such as a heavy metal. Failure of a small, smooth foreign body to exit the stomach after several days suggests the possibility of gastric outlet obstruction.

Most foreign bodies can be removed from the esophagus or stomach by a skilled endoscopist. In some circumstances an alternative technique can be used. An experienced radiologist using fluoroscopy can utilize a Foley catheter with balloon inflated below the foreign body to extract esophageal coins in the upper esophagus while the awake patient is placed in the Trendelenburg position. Contraindications include precarious airway, history that foreign body has been present for several days, and previous esophageal surgery.

Brumbaugh DE et al: Management of button battery-induced hemorrhage in children. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2011;52(5):585–589 [PMID: 215028305].

Hurtado CW, Furuta GT, Kramer RE: Etiology of esophageal food impactions in children. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2010;52(1):43–46 [PMID: 20975581].

Hussain SZ et al: Management of ingested magnets in children. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2012 Sep;55(3):239–242 [PMID: 22785419].

Kay M, Wyllie R: Pediatric foreign bodies and their management. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2005 Jun;7(3):212–218 [PMID: 15913481].

Litovitz T, Whitaker N, Clark L, White NC, Marsolec M: Emerging battery-ingestion hazard: clinical implications. Pediatrics 2010;125(6):1168–1177 [PMID: 20498173].

Waltzman ML: Management of esophageal coins. Curr Opin Pediatr 2006;18(5):571–574 [PMID: 16969175].

DISORDERS OF THE STOMAcH & DUODEnUM

HIATAL HERNIA

In paraesophageal hiatal hernias (HHs), the esophagus and GE junction are in their normal anatomic position, but the gastric cardia is herniated through the diaphragmatic hiatus. In sliding HHs, the GE junction and a portion of the proximal

stomach are displaced above the diaphragmatic hiatus. Sliding HHs are common, with a recent study showing a prevalence of nearly 21% of all EGDs performed and a correlation between HH and clinical symptoms of heartburn and regurgitation. Conversely, congenital paraesophageal hernias are rare in childhood; patients may present with recurrent pulmonary infections, vomiting, anemia, failure to thrive, or dysphagia. The most common cause of acquired paraesophageal hernia is previous fundoplication surgery. Radiographic studies typically reveal a cystic mass in the posterior mediastinum or a dilated esophagus. The diagnosis is typically made with an upper GI series or a CT scan of the chest and abdomen. Presence of a Schatzki ring on upper GI has been found to be associated with HH in 96% of children and should increase the index of suspicion. Additionally, the absence of a periesophageal fat pad on CT or ultrasound of the chest has been found to be a marker of HH. Recently, use of pH Impedance probe testing has been proposed as an effective method to identify HH in children, where inversion of the usual acid:nonacid reflux ratio to greater than 1.0 had a sensitivity of 93.8% and specificity of 79.6%. Treatment in symptomatic cases is generally surgical, with laparoscopic repair being used more commonly. The laparoscopic approach has been shown to have longer surgical times but a shorter time to advancement to full enteral feeding compared to the open surgical approach, with no change in complications. Controversy exists about using biosynthetic mesh for repair, as it decreases the risk of recurrent hernia but also increases esophageal erosion in children. Fundoplication is indicated if paraesophageal or sliding HHs produce persistent symptoms, though the presence of a preoperative HH has been found to triple the risk of recurrent GERD following fundoplication.

Cakmakci E et al: Diagnostic significance of periesophageal fat pad in ultrasonography for sliding hiatal hernias: sonographic fat pad sign. Clin Imaging. 2014 Mar–Apr;38(2):170–173 [PMID: 24231624].

Namgoong JM et al: Hiatal hernia in pediatric patients: laparoscopic versus open approaches. Ann Surg Treat Res 2014 May;86(5):264–269 [PMID: 24851228].

Scarpato E et al: Impact of hiatal hernia on pediatric dyspeptic symptoms. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014 Dec;59(6): 795–798 [PMID: 25141229].

PYLORIC STENOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Postnatal muscular hypertrophy of the pylorus.
- Progressive gastric outlet obstruction, nonbilious vomiting, dehydration, and alkalosis in infants younger than 12 weeks.
- Upper GI contrast radiographs or abdominal ultrasound are diagnostic.

The cause of postnatal pyloric muscular hypertrophy with gastric outlet obstruction is unknown. The incidence is 1–8 per 1000 births, with a 4:1 male predominance. Recent studies suggest that erythromycin in the neonatal period is associated with a higher incidence of pyloric stenosis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Projectile postprandial vomiting usually begins between 2 and 4 weeks of age but may start as late as 12 weeks. Vomiting starts at birth in about 10% of cases and onset of symptoms may be delayed in preterm infants. Vomitus is rarely bilious but may be blood-streaked. Infants are usually hungry and nurse avidly. The upper abdomen may be distended after feeding, and prominent gastric peristaltic waves from left to right may be seen. An oval mass, 5–15 mm in longest dimension can be felt on deep palpation in the right upper abdomen, especially after vomiting. This palpable "olive," however, was only present in 13.6% of patients studied.

B. Laboratory Findings

Hypochloremic alkalosis with potassium depletion is the classic metabolic findings, though low chloride may be seen in as few as 23% and alkalosis in 14.4%. These findings may not be as common in younger infants and their absence should not dissuade from the diagnosis in the appropriate clinical setting. Dehydration causes elevated hemoglobin and hematocrit. Mild unconjugated bilirubinemia occurs in 2%–5% of cases.

C. Imaging

Ultrasonography shows a hypoechoic muscle ring greater than 4 mm thickness with a hyperdense center and a pyloric channel length greater than 15 mm. A barium upper GI series reveals retention of contrast in the stomach and a long narrow pyloric channel with a double track of barium. The hypertrophied muscle mass produces typical semilunar filling defects in the antrum. Infants presenting younger than 21 days may not fulfill these classic ultrasonographic criteria and may require clinical judgment to interpret "borderline" measures of pyloric muscle thickness.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Ramstedt pyloromyotomy is the treatment of choice and consists of incision down to the mucosa along the pyloric length. The procedure can be performed laparoscopically, with similar efficacy. Treatment of dehydration and electrolyte imbalance is mandatory before surgical treatment, even if it takes 24–48 hours. Patients often vomit postoperatively as a consequence of gastritis, esophagitis, or associated GE reflux. The outlook after surgery is excellent, though patients may show as much as a four times greater risk for

development of chronic abdominal pain of childhood The postoperative barium radiograph remains abnormal for many months despite relief of symptoms.

Leong MM et al: Epidemiological features of infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis in Taiwanese children: a Nation-Wide Analysis of Cases during 1997–2007. PLoS One 2011;6(5):e19404 [PMID: 21559291].

Lin KJ, Mitchell AA, Yau WP, Louik C, Hernández-Díaz S: Safety of macrolides during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2013 Mar;208(3):221.e1–e8 [PMID: 232542493].

Tutay GJ, Capraro G, Spirko B, Garb J, Smithline H: Electrolyte profile of pediatric patients with hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2013 Mar 22;29(4):465–468 [PMID: 23528507].

GASTRIC & DUODENAL ULCER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Localized erosions of gastric or duodenal mucosa.
- Pain, vomiting, and bleeding are the most common symptoms.
- Underlying severe illness, Helicobacter pylori infection, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are the most common causes.
- Successful eradication of H pylori infection requires knowledge of regional antimicrobial resistance patterns.
- Diagnosis by endoscopy.

General Considerations

Gastric and duodenal ulcers occur at any age. In the United States, most childhood gastric and duodenal ulcers are associated with underlying illness, toxins, or drugs that cause breakdown in mucosal defenses.

Worldwide, the most common cause of gastric and duodenal ulcer is mucosal infection with the bacterium H pylori. Boys are affected more frequently than girls. Between 10% and 20% of North American children have antibodies against H pylori. Antibody prevalence increases with age, poor sanitation, crowded living conditions, and family exposure. In some developing countries, over 90% of schoolchildren have serologic evidence of past or present infection. Infection is thought to be acquired in childhood, but only in a small percentage of infected persons will infection lead to nodular gastritis, peptic ulcer, or in the case of long-standing infection, gastric lymphoid tumors, and adenocarcinoma of the stomach. Some bacterial virulence factors have been identified, but the host and bacterial characteristics that contribute to disease progression are still largely unknown. In contrast to ulcers secondary to H pylori, non–H pylori ulcers tend to occur as frequently in girls as boys, present at a younger age, and are more likely to recur. In a large study of over 1000 children undergoing endoscopy, 5.4% had ulcers, with 47% of these due to H pylori, 16.5% related to NSAIDs, and 35.8% unrelated to either H pylori or NSAIDs. Recent evidence suggests that the prevalence of non–H pylori peptic ulcers is increasing.

Illnesses predisposing to secondary ulcers include central nervous system (CNS) disease, burns, sepsis, multiorgan system failure, chronic lung disease, Crohn disease (CrD), cirrhosis, and rheumatoid arthritis. The most common drugs causing secondary ulcers are aspirin, alcohol, and NSAIDs. NSAID use may lead to ulcers throughout the GI tract but most often in the stomach and duodenum. Severe ulcerative lesions in full-term neonates have been found to be associated with maternal antacid use in the last month of pregnancy.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In children younger than 6 years, vomiting and upper GI bleeding are the most common symptoms of gastric and duodenal ulcer. Older children are more likely to complain of epigastric abdominal pain. Ulcers in the pyloric channel may cause gastric outlet obstruction. Chronic blood loss may cause iron deficiency anemia. Deep penetration of the ulcer may erode into a mucosal arteriole and cause acute hemorrhage. Penetrating duodenal ulcers (especially common during cancer chemotherapy, immunosuppression, and in the intensive care setting) may perforate the duodenal wall, resulting in peritonitis or abscess.

B. Diagnostic Studies

Upper GI endoscopy is the most accurate diagnostic examination. The typical endoscopic appearance of an ulcer is a white exudative base with erythematous margins (Figure 21–4). Histopathologic assessment of biopsies obtained at endoscopy provides the opportunity to distinguish between different causes of ulcer disease, including H pylori infection, eosinophilic GI disease, celiac disease (CD), and CrD. Endoscopic diagnosis of active H pylori infection may be achieved by histologic examination of gastric biopsies or measurement of urease activity on gastric tissue specimens. Additional noninvasive methods of diagnosis of active H pylori infection include evaluation of breath for radiolabeled carbon dioxide after administration of radiolabeled urea by mouth and detection of H pylori antigen in the stool. False-negative results for the latter two tests have been described when the patient is taking a PPI. Serum antibodies against H pylori have poor sensitivity and specificity, and do not prove that there is active infection or that treatment is needed. For

▲**Figure 21–4.** Gastric ulcer. White exudate coats the ulcer bed of antral ulcer that is surrounded by an erythematous margin.

severe or recurrent ulcerations not caused by H pylori, stress, or medications, a serum gastrin level may be considered to evaluate for a gastrin-secreting tumor (Zollinger-Ellison syndrome), though mild to moderate elevation in gastrin levels can be seen with use of PPI drugs. Upper GI barium radiographs may show an ulcer crater. Radiologic signs suggestive of peptic disease in adults (duodenal spasticity and thick irregular folds) are not reliable indicators in children.

» Treatment

Acid suppression or neutralization is the mainstay of noninfectious ulcer therapy. Liquid antacids in the volumes needed to neutralize gastric acid are usually unacceptable to children. H_2-receptor antagonists and PPIs are more effective and usually produce endoscopic healing in 4–8 weeks.

As an adjunct therapy, 7- to 14-day courses of sucralfate may be helpful as a mucosal protective agent to speed healing and decrease symptoms. Bland "ulcer diets" do not speed healing, but foods causing pain should be avoided. Caffeine should be avoided because it increases gastric acid secretion. Aspirin, alcohol, NSAIDs, and other gastric irritants should be avoided as well.

Treatment of symptomatic H pylori infection requires eradication of the organism, a goal that remains elusive in children. The optimal medical regimen is still undetermined. Standard first-line therapy for eradication of H pylori has traditionally been a 7- to 10-day treatment course using a combination of amoxicillin, clarithromycin, and PPI. However, rising rates of resistance to clarithromycin have rendered standard therapy ineffective in certain parts of the world. As a result, many alternative combinations of antimicrobials (such as bismuth, metronidazole, imidazole, tetracycline, and levofloxacin) have been evaluated. Because resistance to clarithromycin varies greatly by country, regional antibiotic resistance patterns for H pylori should be a guide in selecting initial therapy. Sequential therapy, which involves induction with amoxicillin plus PPI for 5 days followed by clarithromycin/metronidazole/PPI for 5 days, has shown success in eradication of clarithromycin-resistant strains. Concomitant therapy, which involves the addition of a third antimicrobial such as metronidazole or bismuth, may also be effective against clarithromycin resistance. Test of cure can be achieved by either the urease breath test or fecal H pylori antigen test.

Federico A et al: Eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection: which regimen first? World J Gastroenterol 2014;20(3): 665–672 [PMID: 24574740].

Homan M, Hojsak I, Kolaček S: Helicobacter pylori in pediatrics. Helicobacter 2012 Sep;17(Suppl 1):43–48 [PMID: 22958155].

Tam YH et al: Helicobacter pylori-positive versus Helicobacter pylori-negative idiopathic peptic ulcers in children with their long-term outcomes. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2009;48(3):299–305 [PMID: 19274785].

CONGENITAL DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) typically is diagnosed prenatally by screening ultrasound.
- Pulmonary hypoplasia and cardiovascular dysfunction are clinical challenges in the postnatal period.
- After surgical repair, chronic pulmonary disease and GER can be lifelong morbidities.

Herniation of abdominal contents through the diaphragm usually occurs through a posterolateral defect involving the left side of the diaphragm (foramen of Bochdalek). In about 9% of cases, the diaphragmatic defect is retrosternal (foramen of Morgagni). In eventration of the diaphragm, a subtype of CDH, a leaf of the diaphragm with hypoplastic muscular elements balloons into the chest and is asymptomatic or leads to milder symptoms. Hernias result from failure of the embryologic diaphragmatic anlagen to fuse and divide the thoracic and abdominal cavities at 8–10 weeks' gestation. The herniation of abdominal contents into the thoracic cavity can lead to pulmonary hypoplasia and significant

cardiovascular dysfunction after birth, in particular severe persistent pulmonary hypertension.

Diagnosis of CDH is typically made prenatally by ultrasound. Associated congenital malformations, most commonly cardiovascular, are commonly seen. With the advent of improved care of cardiopulmonary disease in the newborn period, including the use of inhaled nitric oxide, high-frequency oscillatory ventilation, and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, survival has improved for infants with CDH and is as high as 70%–90% in some centers. Antenatal intervention with fetal tracheal occlusion to improve fetal pulmonary developments is currently being studied for its impact on outcomes in CDH. Operative repair of the diaphragmatic defect is usually performed in the newborn period once cardiopulmonary stabilization is achieved, with increasing utilization of laparoscopic and thoracoscopic minimally invasive approaches. Occasionally, diaphragmatic hernia is first identified in an older infant or child during incidental radiograph or routine physical examination. These children usually have a much more favorable prognosis than neonates. Long-term health issues in CDH survivors include chronic pulmonary disease, pulmonary hypertension, neurodevelopmental delays, hearing loss, and GER.

McHoney M: Congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Early Hum Dev 2014;90(12):941–946 [PMID: 25448786].

CONGENITAL DUODENAL OBSTRUCTION

» General Considerations

Obstruction is generally classified into intrinsic and extrinsic causes, although rare cases of simultaneous intrinsic and extrinsic anomalies have been reported.

Etiologies of extrinsic duodenal obstruction include congenital peritoneal bands associated with intestinal malrotation, annular pancreas, or duodenal duplication. Intrinsic duodenal obstruction is more common and is typically associated with congenital atresia, stenosis, or mucosal webs (so-called "wind sock deformity"). In about two-thirds of patients with congenital duodenal obstruction, there are other associated anomalies.

» Imaging Studies

Diagnosis of congenital duodenal obstructions is often made prenatally by ultrasound. Prenatal diagnosis predicts complete obstruction in 77% of cases and is associated with polyhydramnios, prematurity, and higher risk of maternal-fetal complications. Presence of a "double bubble" on ultrasound and an echogenic band in the second portion of the duodenum are 100% sensitive and specific for an annular pancreas. Postnatal abdominal plain radiographs show gaseous distention of the stomach and proximal duodenum (the "double-bubble" radiologic sign). With protracted vomiting, there is less air in the stomach and less abdominal distention. Absence of distal intestinal gas suggests atresia or severe extrinsic obstruction, whereas a pattern of intestinal air scattered over the lower abdomen may indicate partial duodenal obstruction. Barium enema may be helpful in determining the presence of malrotation or atresia in the lower GI tract, as well as evaluating for radiographic evidence of Hirschsprung disease, which may also present with abdominal distension and vomiting.

» Clinical Findings

A. Duodenal Atresia

Maternal polyhydramnios is common and often leads to prenatal diagnosis by ultrasonography. Vomiting (usually bile-stained) and epigastric distention begin within a few hours of birth. Meconium may be passed normally. Duodenal atresia is often associated with other congenital anomalies (30%), including esophageal atresia, intestinal atresias, and cardiac and renal anomalies. Prematurity (25%–50%) and Down syndrome (20%–30%) are also associated with duodenal atresia.

B. Duodenal Stenosis

In this condition, duodenal obstruction is not complete. Onset of obvious obstructive symptoms may be delayed for weeks or years. Although the stenotic area is usually distal to the ampulla of Vater, the vomitus does not always contain bile. Duodenal stenosis or atresia is the most common GI tract malformation in children with Down syndrome, occurring in 3.9%.

C. Annular Pancreas

Annular pancreas is a rotational defect in which normal fusion of the dorsal and ventral pancreatic anlagen does not occur, and a ring of pancreatic tissue encircles the duodenum. The presenting symptom is duodenal obstruction. Down syndrome and congenital anomalies of the GI tract occur frequently. Polyhydramnios is common. Symptoms may develop late in childhood or even in adulthood if the obstruction is not complete in infancy. Treatment consists of duodenoduodenostomy or duodenojejunostomy without operative dissection or division of the pancreatic annulus. Pancreatic function is normal.

» Treatment & Prognosis

In almost all settings, surgical intervention (either laparoscopic or open) is required for congenital duodenal obstructive lesions. Typically, duodenoduodenostomy is performed to bypass the area of stenosis or atresia. For duodenal stenoses, however, there have been isolated reports of successful endoscopic treatment with balloon dilation. Thorough

surgical exploration is typically done to ensure that no lower GI tract anomalies are present. More recent reports document the safety and utility of a laparoscopic approach. The mortality rate is increased in infants with prematurity, Down syndrome, and associated congenital anomalies. Duodenal dilation and hypomotility from antenatal obstruction may cause duodenal dysmotility with obstructive symptoms even after surgical treatment. Placement of transanastomotic feeding tubes at the time of the initial repair has been found to result in more rapid progression to full enteral feeds and decreased need for parenteral nutrition (PN). The overall prognosis for these patients is good, with the majority of their mortality risk due to associated anomalies other than duodenal obstruction.

Adams SD, Stanton MP: Malrotation and intestinal atresias. Early Hum Dev 2014 Dec;90(12):921–925 [PMID: 25448782].

Mustafawi AR, Hassan ME: Congenital duodenal obstruction in children: a decade's experience. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2008;18; 93–97 [PMID: 18437652].

DISORDERS OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

INTESTINAL ATRESIA & STENOSIS

Excluding anal anomalies, intestinal atresia or stenosis accounts for one-third of all cases of neonatal intestinal obstruction (see Chapter 1). Antenatal ultrasound can identify intestinal atresia in utero; polyhydramnios occurs in most affected pregnancies. Sensitivity of antenatal ultrasound is greater in more proximal atresias. Other congenital anomalies may be present in up to 54% of cases and 52% are delivered preterm. In apparently isolated atresia cases, occult congenital cardiac anomalies have been reported in as many as 30%. In one large population-based study, the prevalence was 2.9 per 10,000 births, although there is some evidence that the prevalence may be increasing. The localization and relative incidence of atresias and stenoses are listed in Table 21–1. Although jejunal and ileal atresias are often grouped together, there are data to suggest that jejunal atresias are associated with increased morbidity and mortality compared to ileal atresia. These differences may be related to increased compliance of the jejunal wall, resulting in more proximal dilation and subsequent loss in peristaltic activity.

Bile-stained vomiting and abdominal distention begin in the first 48 hours of life. Multiple sites in the intestine may be affected and the overall length of the small intestine may be significantly shortened. Radiographic features include dilated loops of small bowel and absence of colonic gas. Barium enema reveals narrow-caliber microcolon because of lack of intestinal flow distal to the atresia. In over 10% of patients with intestinal atresia, the mesentery is absent and the SMA cannot be identified beyond the origin of the right colic and ileocolic arteries. The ileum coils around one of these two arteries, giving rise to the so-called Christmas tree deformity on contrast radiographs. The tenuous blood supply often compromises surgical anastomoses. The differential diagnosis of intestinal atresia includes Hirschsprung disease, paralytic ileus secondary to sepsis, midgut volvulus, and meconium ileus. Surgery is mandatory. Postoperative complications include short bowel syndrome (SBS) in 15% and small bowel hypomotility secondary to antenatal obstruction. Overall mortality has been reported at 8%, with increased risk in low-birth-weight and premature infants.

Adams SD, Stanton MP: Malrotation and intestinal atresias. Early Hum Dev 2014 Dec;90(12):921–925 [PMID: 25448782].

Best KE et al: Epidemiology of small intestinal atresia in Europe: a register-based study. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2012 Sep;97(5):F353–F358 [PMID: 22933095].

INTESTINAL MALROTATION

General Considerations

The midgut extends from the duodenojejunal junction to the mid-transverse colon. It is supplied by the superior mesenteric artery (SMA), which runs in the root of the mesentery. During gestation, the midgut elongates into the umbilical sac, returning to an intra-abdominal position during the 10th week of gestation. The root of the mesentery rotates in a counterclockwise direction during retraction causing the colon to cross the abdominal cavity ventrally. The cecum

Table 21–1. Localization and relative frequency of congenital gastrointestinal atresias and stenoses.

	Area Involved	Type of Lesion	Relative Frequency (%)
Pylorus		Atresia; web or diaphragm	1
Duodenum	80% are distal to the ampulla of Vater	Atresia, stenosis; web or diaphragm	45
Jejunoileal	Proximal jejunum and distal ileum	Atresia (multiple in 6%–29%); stenosis	50
Colon	Left colon and rectum	Atresia (usually associated with atresias of the small bowel)	5–9

moves from the left to the right lower quadrant, and the duodenum crosses dorsally becoming partly retroperitoneal. When rotation is incomplete, the dorsal fixation of the mesentery is defective and shortened, so that the bowel from the ligament of Treitz to the mid-transverse colon may rotate around its narrow mesenteric root and occlude the SMA (volvulus). From autopsy studies it is estimated that up to 1% of the general population may have intestinal malrotation, which is diagnosed in the first year of life in 70%–90% of patients.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Malrotation with volvulus accounts for 10% of neonatal intestinal obstructions. Most infants present in the first 3 weeks of life with bile-stained vomiting or with overt small bowel obstruction. Intrauterine volvulus may cause intestinal obstruction or perforation at birth. The neonate may present with ascites or meconium peritonitis. Later presenting signs include intermittent intestinal obstruction, malabsorption, protein-losing enteropathy, or diarrhea. Associated congenital anomalies, especially cardiac, occur in over 25% of symptomatic patients. Many of these may be found in a subgroup of malrotation patients with heterotaxy syndromes, with associated asplenia or polysplenia. Older children and adults with undiagnosed malrotation typically present with chronic GI symptoms of nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, bloating, and early satiety.

B. Imaging

An upper GI series is considered the gold standard for diagnosis, with a reported sensitivity of 96%, and classically shows the duodenojejunal junction and the jejunum on the right side of the spine. The diagnosis of malrotation can be further confirmed by barium enema, which may demonstrate a mobile cecum located in the midline, right upper quadrant, or left abdomen. Plain films of the abdomen in the newborn period may show a "double-bubble" sign, resulting in a misdiagnosis of duodenal atresia. CT scan and ultrasound of the abdomen may be used to make the diagnosis as well and are characterized by the "whirlpool sign" denoting midgut volvulus. Reversal of the normal position of the SMA and superior mesenteric vein (SMV) may be seen in malrotation, though normal position may be found in up to 29% of patients. Identification of the third portion of the duodenum within the retroperitoneum makes malrotation very unlikely.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Surgical treatment of malrotation is the Ladd procedure. In young infants the Ladd procedure should be performed even if volvulus has not occurred. The duodenum is mobilized, the short mesenteric root is extended, and the bowel is then fixed in a more normal distribution. Treatment of malrotation discovered in children older than 12 months is uncertain. Because volvulus can occur at any age, surgical repair is usually recommended, even in asymptomatic children. Laparoscopic repair of malrotation is possible but is technically difficult and is never performed in the presence of volvulus.

Midgut volvulus is a surgical emergency. Bowel necrosis results from occlusion of the SMA. When necrosis is extensive, it is recommended that a first operation include only reduction of the volvulus with lysis of mesenteric bands. Resection of necrotic bowel should be delayed if possible until a second-look operation 24–48 hours later can be undertaken in the hope that more bowel can be salvaged. The prognosis is guarded if perforation, peritonitis, or extensive intestinal necrosis is present. Mid-gut volvulus is one of the most common indications for small bowel transplant in children, responsible for 10% of cases in a recent series.

Adams SD, Stanton MP: Malrotation and intestinal atresias. Early Hum Dev 2014 Dec;90(12):921–925 [PMID: 25448782].

Lampl B, Levin TL, Berdon WE, Cowles RA: Malrotation and midgut volvulus: a historical review and current controversies in diagnosis and management. Pediatr Radiol 2009;39:359–366 [PMID: 19241073].

SHORT BOWEL SYNDROME

» General Considerations

Short bowel syndrome (SBS) is defined as a condition resulting from reduced intestinal absorptive surface that leads to alteration in intestinal function that compromises normal growth, fluid/electrolyte balance, or hydration status. The vast majority of pediatric patients with SBS have undergone neonatal surgical resection of intestine. The most common etiologies in children are necrotizing enterocolitis (45%); intestinal atresias (23%); gastroschisis (15%); volvulus (15%); and, less commonly, congenital short bowel, long-segment Hirschsprung disease, and ischemic bowel. In many instances, infants with SBS require PN in order to provide adequate caloric, fluid, and electrolyte delivery in the setting of insufficient intestinal absorptive function. The requirement of supplemental PN for more than 2–3 months in the setting of SBS or any other underlying disorder qualifies the diagnosis of intestinal failure (IF).

The goal in management of the patient with SBS is to promote growth and adaptation of the intestine such that adequate nutrition can be delivered and absorbed enterally. Many factors, including patient's gestational age, postsurgical anatomy (including residual small bowel length and presence of ileocecal valve and/or colon), presence of small bowel bacterial overgrowth, and underlying surgical disease, influence the process and likelihood of bowel adaptation and achievement of enteral autonomy. No specific anatomic

bowel length measurements offer 100% certainty in predicting clinical outcomes in SBS.

» Symptoms & Signs

Typical symptoms for the patient with SBS are related to their underlying malabsorptive state, including diarrhea, dehydration, electrolyte or micronutrient deficiency states, and growth failure. Patients with SBS are also at risk for small bowel obstruction, bowel dilation and dysmotility (with secondary small bowel bacterial overgrowth), hepatobiliary disorders including cholelithiasis, nephrolithiasis due to calcium oxalate stones, oral feeding challenges, and GI mucosal inflammatory problems including noninfectious colitis and anastomotic ulcerations. For patients with IF, complications related to underlying PN therapy are common and can be life threatening. PN-associated liver disease (PNALD) is a progressive cholestatic liver injury that occurs in pediatric patients on PN and may progress to end-stage liver disease in 10% of affected patients. Recurrent catheter-related bloodstream infections are relatively common in pediatric patients with SBS and IF. Other complication-related central venous catheters including occlusions may require intervention.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Goal in management of SBS is to promote growth and adaptation while minimizing and/or treating complications of the underlying intestinal disorder or PN therapy. Intestinal rehabilitation for the child with SBS and IF refers to the multidisciplinary team approach to individual patient care, involving gastroenterology, nutrition, and surgery, and has been shown to improve outcomes. Enteral nutrition should be catered to favor absorption, commonly requiring continuous delivery of an elemental formula through a gastrostomy tube. Commonly prescribed pharmacologic adjuncts include acid suppressive therapy, antimotility and antidiarrheal agents, and antibiotics for the treatment of small bowel bacterial overgrowth. Emerging therapies targeted to promote bowel adaptation include glucagon-like peptide 2 analogues, which show promise in potentially increasing absorption and bowel adaptation in early trials.

Management for the patient with SBS and IF should include strategies to manage or prevent complications related to PN therapy, including infection and liver disease. Antimicrobial lock solutions distilled into central venous catheters using either ethanol or antibiotics may have a role in reducing infection rates. Compelling evidence over the past several years suggests that modification of parenteral lipid solution, either through reduction in dose of soy-based intralipid or replacement with a fish-oil–based lipid solution (Omegaven), improves outcomes associated with PNALD in pediatric patients.

Autologous bowel reconstructive surgery (bowel lengthening) should be considered in a patient who is failing to advance enterally and has anatomy amendable to surgical intervention, typically with regards to adequate bowel dilation. Both the serial transverse enteroplasty (STEP) procedure and longitudinal intestinal lengthening and tailoring (Bianchi) procedure have been successful in allowing weaning from TPN in up to 50% of patients in reported series. In recent years, the STEP procedure has gained favor as being potentially less technically demanding and repeatable, if the bowel dilates sufficiently after the initial procedure.

When medical, nutritional, and surgical managements fail, intestinal transplantation may be considered for a child with refractory and life-threatening complications of IF. Current outcome data after pediatric intestinal transplantation suggest 1- and 3-year survival rates of 83% and 60%, respectively.

D'Antiga L, Goulet O: Intestinal failure in children: the European view. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2013 Feb;56(2):118–126 [PMID: 22820123].

Gosselin KB, Duggan C: Enteral nutrition in the management of pediatric intestinal failure. J Pediatr. 2014 Dec;165(6):1085–1090 [PMID: 25242686].

Piper HG, Wales PW: Prevention of catheter-related blood stream infections in children with intestinal failure. Curr Opin Gastroenterol 2013 Jan;29(1):1–6 [PMID: 22954690].

Soden JS: Clinical assessment of the child with intestinal failure. Semin Pediatr Surg 2010 Feb;19(1):10–19 [PMID: 20123269].

INTUSSUSCEPTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Intussusception is the most common cause of bowel obstruction in the first 2 years of life.

» The most common location for intussusception is ileocolic and 85% of cases are idiopathic.

» Ultrasound is the most sensitive and specific diagnostic modality for intussusception.

» Air enema is the best therapeutic approach in the stable patient, with successful reduction in 75% of cases.

Intussusception is the invagination of one segment of intestine into another segment. Although intussusception can occur anywhere along the small and large bowel, most commonly the intussusception starts just proximal to the ileocecal valve and extends for varying distances into the colon. Swelling, hemorrhage, incarceration, vascular compromise, and necrosis of the intussuscepted ileum may occur, potentially resulting in intestinal perforation and peritonitis.

Intussusception is the most frequent cause of intestinal obstruction in the first 2 years of life. It is three times more common in males than in females. In 85% of cases the cause is idiopathic but the likelihood of identifying a cause of intussusception increases with the age of the patient. Implicated primary causes of intussusception include small bowel polyp, Meckel diverticulum, omphalomesenteric remnant, duplication, lymphoma, lipoma, parasites, foreign bodies, and viral enteritis with hypertrophy of Peyer patches. Intussusception of the small bowel can also be seen in CD, cystic fibrosis, and Henoch-Schönlein purpura. In children older than 6 years, lymphoma is the most common cause of intussusception.

» Clinical Findings

Characteristically, a previously healthy infant 3–12 months of age develops recurring paroxysms of abdominal pain with screaming and drawing up of the knees. Vomiting and diarrhea occur soon afterward (90% of cases), and bloody bowel movements with mucus appear within the next 12 hours (50%). The child is characteristically lethargic between paroxysms and may be febrile. The abdomen is tender and often distended. A sausage-shaped mass may be palpated, usually in the upper mid abdomen. The likelihood of bowel compromise increases with the duration of symptoms. In older children, sudden attacks of abdominal pain may be related to chronic recurrent intussusception with spontaneous reduction.

» Diagnosis & Treatment

The constellation of abdominal pain, lethargy, vomiting, and a suspicious abdominal radiograph was found to have a sensitivity of 95% in identifying intussusceptions in children. Abdominal radiographs alone, however, are poorly sensitive for the diagnosis of intussusception. Abdominal ultrasound carries sensitivity for diagnosis of intussusception of 98%–100%. Barium enema and air enema are both diagnostic and therapeutic. Reduction of the intussusception by barium enema should not be attempted if signs of strangulated bowel, perforation, or toxicity are present. Air insufflation of the colon under fluoroscopic guidance is a safe alternative to barium enema that has excellent diagnostic sensitivity and specificity without the risk of contaminating the abdominal cavity with barium. Rates of successful reduction by air enema approach 75%. When initial enema reduction is successful, recurrence of intussusception within 24–48 hours occurs in less than 10% of patients. The rate of perforation with either liquid or air enema is approximately 1%. Care is required in patient selection for either air or barium enema because if ischemic damage to the intestine is suspected based on symptom severity (shock or sepsis), the risk of perforation increases and surgical reduction is preferred. Surgery is thus required for extremely ill patients, in patients with evidence of bowel perforation, or in those in whom hydrostatic or pneumatic reduction has been unsuccessful (25%). Surgery has the advantage of identifying a lead point such as Meckel diverticulum, lymphoma, or small bowel polyp. Surgical reduction of intussusception is associated with a lower recurrence rate than pneumatic reduction.

» Prognosis

The likelihood of successful reduction by enema decreases if symptom duration is greater than 24 hours. Of those requiring surgical reduction, the risk of subsequent bowel resection increased from 17% to 39% in patients with symptoms greater than 24 hours. Overall mortality rate with treatment is 1%–2%.

Applegate KE: Intussusception in children: evidence-based diagnosis and treatment. Pediatr Radiol 2009 Apr;39(Suppl 2):S140–S143 [PMID: 19308373].

INGUINAL HERNIA

Inguinal hernias are most often indirect and occur more frequently (9:1) in boys than in girls. Hernias may present at any age. The incidence in preterm male infants is close to 5% and is reported in 30% of male infants weighing 1000 g or less.

» Clinical Findings

In most cases, a hernia is a painless inguinal swelling. Parents may be the only one to see the mass, as it may retract when the infant is active, cold, frightened, or agitated. A history of inguinal fullness associated with coughing or long periods of standing, or presence of a firm, globular, and tender swelling, sometimes associated with vomiting and abdominal distention are clinical clues. In some instances, a herniated loop of intestine may become partially obstructed leading to severe pain. Rarely, bowel becomes trapped in the hernia sac, and complete intestinal obstruction occurs. Gangrene of the hernia contents or testis may occur. In girls, the ovary may prolapse into the hernia sac presenting as a mass below the inguinal ligament. A suggestive history often is the only criterion for diagnosis, along with the "silk glove" feel of the rubbing together of the two walls of the empty hernia sac.

» Differential Diagnosis

Inguinal lymph nodes may be mistaken for a hernia. Nodes are usually multiple with more discrete borders. A hydrocele of the cord should transilluminate. An undescended testis is usually mobile in the canal and is associated with absence of the gonad in the scrotum.

» Treatment

Incarceration of an inguinal hernia is more likely to occur in boys and in children younger than 10 months. Manual reduction of incarcerated inguinal hernias can be attempted after the sedated infant is placed in the Trendelenburg position with an ice bag on the affected side. Manual reduction is contraindicated if incarceration has been present for more than 12 hours or if bloody stools are noted. Surgery is indicated if a hernia has ever incarcerated. Hydroceles frequently resolve by age 2 years.

Esposito C et al: Laparoscopic versus open inguinal hernia repair in pediatric patients: a systematic review. J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2014 Nov;24(11):811–818 [PMID: 25299121].

Zendejas B et al: Incidence of inguinal hernia repairs in Olmsted County, MN: a population-based study. Ann Surg 2013 Mar; 257(3):520–526 [PMID: 23388353].

UMBILICAL HERNIA

Umbilical hernias are more common in full-term, African American infants. Small bowel may incarcerate in small-diameter umbilical hernias. Most umbilical hernias regress spontaneously if the fascial defect has a diameter of less than 1 cm. Hernias persisting after age 4 years should be treated surgically. Reducing the hernia and strapping the skin over the abdominal wall defect does not accelerate healing.

PATENT OMPHALOMESENTERIC DUCT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Persistent umbilical discharge in an infant may represent a patent omphalomesenteric duct.
- » Ultrasound is the preferred diagnostic method for patent omphalomesenteric duct.
- » Surgical excision of the omphalomesenteric remnant is required.

The omphalomesenteric duct connects the fetal yolk sac to the developing gut. This duct is usually obliterated early in embryologic development, but failure of this process can lead to a variety of structures that originate from the embryonic duct remnant connecting the ileum to the undersurface of the umbilicus. If the remnant is patent, it can lead to herniation of intestinal contents into the umbilical cord or lead to fecal discharge from the umbilicus. A fibrous cord may become the focal point for volvulus and resulting intestinal obstruction. Mucoid umbilical discharge may indicate a mucocele in the omphalomesenteric remnant with an opening at the umbilicus. A closed mucocele may protrude through the umbilicus and appear as a polypoid mass that may be mistaken for an umbilical granuloma because it is firm and bright red. Cauterization of a mucocele is not recommended. Surgical excision of omphalomesenteric remnants is indicated. Ultrasound examination or abdominal computed tomography (CT) can help confirm the diagnosis of an omphalomesenteric duct remnant.

Durakbasa CU et al: Symptomatic omphalomesenteric duct remnants in children. Pediatr Int 2010 Jun;52(3):480–484 [PMID: 19863751].

Kelly KB et al: Pediatric abdominal wall defects. Surg Clin North Am 2013 Oct;93(5):1255–1267 [PMID: 24035087].

MECKEL DIVERTICULUM

Meckel diverticulum is the most common form of omphalomesenteric duct remnant and is usually located on the antimesenteric border of the mid to distal ileum. It occurs in 1.5% of the population and in the majority of cases causes no symptoms. Familial cases have been reported. If complications occur, they are three times more common in males than in females. More than 50% of complications occur in the first 2 years of life.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Forty to 60% of symptomatic patients have painless episodes of maroon or melanotic rectal bleeding. Bleeding is due to deep ileal ulcers adjacent to the diverticulum caused by acid secreted by heterotopic gastric tissue and may be voluminous enough to cause shock and anemia. Occult bleeding is less common. Intestinal obstruction occurs in 25% of symptomatic patients as a result of ileocolonic intussusception. Intestinal volvulus may occur around a fibrous remnant of the vitelline duct extending from the tip of the diverticulum to the abdominal wall. Meckel diverticula may be trapped in an inguinal hernia. Diverticulitis is clinically indistinguishable from acute appendicitis.

B. Imaging

Diagnosis of Meckel diverticulum is made with a Meckel scan. Technetium-99 (^{99m}Tc)-pertechnetate is taken up by the heterotopic gastric mucosa in the diverticulum and outlines the diverticulum on a nuclear scan. Giving pentagastrin or cimetidine before administering the radionuclide increases ^{99m}Tc-pertechnetate uptake and retention by the heterotopic gastric mucosa, and can increase the sensitivity of the test.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment is surgical and the prognosis for Meckel diverticulum is good.

ACUTE APPENDICITIS

» General Considerations

Acute appendicitis is the most common indication for emergency abdominal surgery in childhood. The frequency increases with age and peaks between 15 and 30 years. Obstruction of the appendix by fecalith (25%) is a common predisposing factor. Parasites may rarely cause obstruction (especially ascarids). Most of the remaining cases are idiopathic.

The incidence of perforation is high in childhood (40%), especially in children younger than 2 years, in whom pain is often poorly localized and symptoms nonspecific. To avoid delay in diagnosis, it is important to maintain close communication with parents and perform a thorough initial physical examination with sequential examinations at frequent intervals over several hours to correctly interpret the evolving symptoms and signs.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The typical patient has fever and periumbilical abdominal pain, which then localizes to the right lower quadrant with signs of peritoneal irritation. Anorexia, vomiting, constipation, and diarrhea also occur. Contrary to the vomiting of acute gastroenteritis, which usually precedes abdominal pain, vomiting in appendicitis usually follows the onset of pain and is often bilious. The clinical picture is frequently atypical, especially in young children and infants. A rectal examination may clarify the site of tenderness or reveal a localized appendiceal mass. Serial examinations are critical in differentiating appendicitis from the many other conditions that transiently mimic its symptoms.

B. Laboratory Findings

The white blood cell count is seldom higher than 15,000/μL. Pyuria, fecal leukocytes, and guaiac-positive stool are sometimes present. The combination of elevated C-reactive protein (CRP) and leukocytosis has been reported to have positive predictive value of 92% for acute appendicitis, although having normal values for both measures does not exclude the diagnosis. Levels of interleukin 6 (IL-6) show promise as a potential biomarker for acute appendicitis, usually peaking within 24 hours of onset of pain.

C. Imaging

A radio-opaque fecalith reportedly is present in two-thirds of cases of ruptured appendix. In experienced hands, ultrasonography of the appendix shows a noncompressible, thickened appendix in 93% of cases. Abdominal CT after rectal instillation of contrast with thin cuts in the area of the appendix may be diagnostic. An otherwise normal abdominal CT scan with a nonvisualized appendix has still been reported to have a negative predictive value of 99%. Analysis of diagnostic strategies for pediatric patients with suspected appendicitis has shown abdominal ultrasound, followed by CT scan for negative studies, to be the most cost-effective diagnostic approach compared to CT or ultrasound alone.

» Differential Diagnosis

The presence of pneumonia, pleural effusion, urinary tract infection, right-sided kidney stone, cholecystitis, perihepatitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease may mimic appendicitis. Acute gastroenteritis with Yersinia enterocolitica may present as pseudoappendicitis in 17% of cases. Other medical and surgical conditions causing acute abdomen should also be considered (see Table 21–7).

» Treatment & Prognosis

Exploratory laparotomy or laparoscopy is indicated when the diagnosis of acute appendicitis cannot be ruled out after a period of close observation. Postoperative antibiotic therapy is reserved for patients with gangrenous or perforated appendix. The mortality rate is less than 1% during childhood, despite the high incidence of perforation. In uncomplicated nonruptured appendicitis, a laparoscopic approach is associated with a shortened hospital stay.

Bansal S, Banever GT, Karrer FM, Partrick DA: Appendicitis in children less than 5 years old: influence of age on presentation and outcome. Am J Surg 2012 Dec;204(6):1031–1035 [PMID: 23231939].

Kharbanda AB et al: Discriminative accuracy of novel and traditional biomarkers in children with suspected appendicitis adjusted for duration of abdominal pain. Acad Emerg Med 2011;18(6):567–574 [PMID: 21676053].

Saito JM et al: Use and accuracy of diagnostic imaging by hospital type in pediatric appendicitis. Pediatrics 2013 Jan;131(1): e37–e44 [PMID: 23266930].

DUPLICATIONS OF THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT

Enteric duplications are congenital spherical or tubular structures found most commonly in the ileum but can also be found in the duodenum, rectum, and esophagus. Most duplications do not communicate with the intestinal lumen. Some duplications (neuroenteric cysts) are attached to the spinal cord and are associated with hemivertebrae and anterior or posterior spina bifida.

Symptoms of vomiting, abdominal distention, colicky pain, rectal bleeding, partial or total intestinal obstruction, or an abdominal mass may start in infancy. Diarrhea and malabsorption may result from bacterial overgrowth in communicating duplications. Physical examination may

reveal a rounded, smooth, movable mass, and barium radiograph or CT of the abdomen may show a noncalcified cystic mass displacing other organs. ^{99m}Tc-pertechnetate scan may help identify duplications containing gastric mucosa. Duplications of the ileum can give rise to an intussusception. Prompt surgical treatment is indicated.

DISORDERS OF THE COLON

CONGENITAL AGANGLIONIC MEGACOLON (HIRSCHSPRUNG DISEASE)

» General Considerations

Hirschsprung disease results from an absence of ganglion cells in the mucosal and muscular layers of the colon. Neural crest cells fail to migrate into the mesodermal layers of the gut during gestation, possibly secondary to abnormal end-organ cell surface receptors or local deficiency of nitric oxide synthesis. The absence of ganglion cells results in failure of the colonic muscles to relax in front of an advancing bolus. In 80% of individuals, aganglionosis is restricted to the rectosigmoid colon (short-segment disease); in 15%–20%, aganglionosis extends proximal to the sigmoid colon (long-segment disease); and in about 5%, aganglionosis affects the entire large intestine (total colonic aganglionosis). Segmental aganglionosis is possible but rare.

The aganglionic segment has normal or slightly narrowed caliber with dilation of the normal colon proximal to the obstructing aganglionic segment. The mucosa of the dilated colonic segment may become thin and inflamed, causing diarrhea, bleeding, and protein loss (enterocolitis).

A familial pattern has been described, particularly in total colonic aganglionosis. The incidence of Hirschsprung disease is 1 in 5000 live births; it is four times more common in boys than girls. A chromosomal abnormality is present in approximately 12% of individuals with Hirschsprung disease. Mutations in the ret proto-oncogene have been identified in about 15% of nonsyndromic cases. The most common chromosomal abnormality associated with Hirschsprung disease is Down syndrome; 2%–10% of all individuals with Down syndrome may have Hirschsprung disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Failure of the newborn to pass meconium, followed by vomiting, abdominal distention, and reluctance to feed, suggests the diagnosis of Hirschsprung disease. Most children with Hirschsprung disease do not pass stool in the first 24 hours of their life. Enterocolitis manifested by fever, explosive diarrhea, and prostration is reported in approximately 50% of affected newborns. Enterocolitis may lead to inflammatory and ischemic changes in the colon, with perforation and sepsis. In some patients, especially those with short segments involved, symptoms are not obvious at birth. In later infancy, alternating obstipation and diarrhea predominate. The older child is more likely to have constipation alone. Symptoms can include foul-smelling or ribbon-like stools, a distended abdomen with prominent veins and visible peristaltic waves with palpable fecal masses. Intermittent bouts of intestinal obstruction, hypoproteinemia, and failure to thrive are common. Encopresis is rare.

On digital rectal examination, the anal canal and rectum are devoid of fecal material despite obvious retained stool on abdominal examination or radiographs. If the aganglionic segment is short, there may be a gush of flatus and stool as the finger is withdrawn.

Infants of diabetic mothers may have similar symptoms, and in this setting small left colon syndrome should be suspected. Meglumine diatrizoate (Gastrografin) enema is both diagnostic and therapeutic in small left colon syndrome as it reveals a meconium plug in the left colon, which is often passed during the diagnostic radiograph. The left colon is narrow but usually functional.

B. Laboratory Findings

Ganglion cells are absent in both the submucosal and muscular layers of involved bowel. Special stains may show nerve trunk hypertrophy and increased acetylcholinesterase activity. Ganglionated bowel above the aganglionic segment is sometimes found to contain more than normal numbers of ganglion cells in abnormal locations (neuronal dysplasia).

C. Imaging

Plain abdominal radiographs may reveal dilated proximal colon and absence of gas in the pelvic colon. Barium enema using a catheter without a balloon and with the tip inserted barely beyond the anal sphincter usually demonstrates a narrow distal segment with a sharp transition to the proximal dilated (normal) colon. Transition zones may not be seen in neonates since the normal proximal bowel has not had time to become dilated. Retention of barium for 24–48 hours is not diagnostic of Hirschsprung disease in older children as it typically occurs in retentive constipation as well.

D. Special Examinations

Rectal manometric testing reveals failure of rectoanal inhibitory reflex (RAIR), relaxation of the internal anal sphincter after distention of the rectum in all patients with Hirschsprung disease, regardless of the length of the aganglionic segment. In occasional patients, a nonrelaxing internal anal sphincter is the only abnormality. This condition is often called "ultrashort segment Hirschsprung disease."

» Differential Diagnosis

Hirschsprung disease accounts for 15%–20% of cases of neonatal intestinal obstruction. It must be differentiated from the small left colon syndrome by biopsy. In childhood,

Hirschsprung disease must be differentiated from retentive constipation, hypothyroidism, intestinal pseudo-obstruction, and other motility disorders. In older infants and children, it can also be confused with celiac disease because of the striking abdominal distention and failure to thrive.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment is surgical. Depending on the child's size and state of health, a diverting colostomy (or ileostomy) may be performed or the surgeon may undertake a primary repair. In unstable infants, resection of the aganglionic segment may be postponed. At the time of definitive surgery, the transition zone between ganglionated and nonganglionated bowel is identified. Aganglionic bowel is resected, and a pull-through of ganglionated bowel to the preanal rectal remnant is made. The three most commonly performed repairs are the Swenson, Duhamel, and Soave procedures. Several surgical techniques, including laparoscopic pull-through, are in use. In children with ultrashort segment disease, an internal anal sphincter myotomy, or botulinum toxin injection of the internal anal sphincter may control symptoms.

Complications after surgery include fecal retention, fecal incontinence, anastomotic breakdown, or anastomotic stricture. Postoperative obstruction may result from inadvertent retention of a distal aganglionic colon segment or postoperative destruction of ganglion cells secondary to vascular impairment. Neuronal dysplasia of the remaining bowel may produce a pseudo-obstruction syndrome. Enterocolitis occurs postoperatively in 15% of patients.

Frykman PK, Short SS: Hirschsprung-associated enterocolitis: prevention and therapy. Semin Pediatr Surg 2012 Nov;21(4): 328–335 [PMID: 22985838].

Parisi MA: In: Pagon RA, Bird TD, Dolan CR, Stephens K, Adam MP (eds): Hirschsprung Disease Overview GeneReviews™ [Internet]. Seattle (WA): University of Washington, Seattle; 1993–2013 [PMID: 20301612].

Rintala RJ, Pakarinen MP: Long-term outcomes of Hirschsprung's disease. Semin Pediatr Surg 2012 Nov;21(4):336–343 [PMID: 22985839].

CONSTIPATION

Chronic constipation in childhood is defined as two or more of the following characteristics for 2 months: (1) fewer than three bowel movements per week; (2) more than one episode of encopresis per week; (3) impaction of the rectum with stool; (4) passage of stool so large it obstructs the toilet; (5) retentive posturing and fecal withholding; and (6) pain with defecation. Retention of feces in the rectum can result in overflow incontinence (encopresis) in 60% of children with constipation. Most constipation in childhood is a result of voluntary or involuntary retentive behavior (chronic retentive constipation). About 2% of healthy primary school children have chronic retentive constipation. The ratio of males to females may be as high as 4:1.

» Clinical Findings

Infants younger than 3 months often grunt, strain, and turn red in the face while passing normal stools. Failure to appreciate this normal developmental pattern may lead to the unwise use of laxatives or rectal stimulation. Infants and children may, however, develop the ability to ignore the sensation of rectal fullness and retain stool. Many factors reinforce this behavior, which results in impaction of the rectum and overflow incontinence. Among these are painful defecation; skeletal muscle weakness; psychological issues, especially those relating to control and authority; modesty and distaste for school bathrooms; medications; and other factors listed in Table 20–2. The dilated rectum gradually becomes less sensitive to fullness, thus perpetuating the problem.

» Differential Diagnosis

One must distinguish between chronic retentive constipation from Hirschsprung disease as summarized in Table 21–3.

» Treatment

In children with poor diets increased intake of high-residue foods such as bran, whole wheat, fruits and vegetables, and water may be sufficient therapy in mild constipation. If diet change alone is ineffective, medications may be required. Polyethylene glycol solution (MiraLax), 0.8–1 g/kg/d, lactulose 1–2 g/kg/d, and milk of magnesia for 2–5 years old: 400–1200 mg/d, 6–11 years old: 1200–2400 mg/d are safe stool softeners in infants and children. Stimulant laxatives such as Senna or Bisacodyl can be considered as an additional or second-line treatment. A recent study showed lubiprostone (Amitiza) was efficacious and well tolerated in children and adolescents with functional constipation. Lubiprostone is a prostone that, acting locally as a specific activator of chloride channel protein-2 in the GI epithelium, promotes intestinal secretion of chloride ions and fluid, enhancing GI motility. If encopresis is present, treatment should start with relieving fecal impaction. Disimpaction can be achieved in several ways, including medications such as saline enemas, and nonabsorbable osmotic agents such as polyethylene glycol (MiraLax, 1 g/kg/ d) and milk of magnesia (1–2 mL/kg/d). Effective stool softeners should thereafter be given regularly in doses sufficient to induce very soft daily bowel movements. After several weeks to months of regular soft stools, stool softeners can be tapered and stopped. Mineral oil should not be given to nonambulatory infants, physically handicapped or bed-bound children, or any child with GE reflux. Aspiration of mineral oil may cause lipid pneumonia. Recurrence of encopresis is common and should be treated promptly with a short course of stimulant laxatives or an enema. Psychiatric consultation may be indicated for patients with resistant symptoms or severe emotional disturbances.

Table 21–2. Causes of constipation.

Functional or retentive causes	Abnormalities of myenteric ganglion cells
Dietary causes	Hirschsprung disease
Undernutrition, dehydration	Waardenburg syndrome
Excessive milk intake	Multiple endocrine neoplasia 2a
Lack of bulk	Hypo- and hyperganglionosis
Cathartic abuse	von Recklinghausen disease
Drugs	Multiple endocrine neoplasia 2b
Narcotics	Intestinal neuronal dysplasia
Antihistamines	Chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction
Some antidepressants	Spinal cord defects
Vincristine	Metabolic and endocrine disorders
Structural defects of gastrointestinal tract	Hypothyroidism
Anus and rectum	Hyperparathyroidism
Fissure, hemorrhoids, abscess	Renal tubular acidosis
Anterior ectopic anus	Diabetes insipidus (dehydration)
Anal and rectal stenosis	Vitamin D intoxication (hypercalcemia)
Presacral teratoma	Idiopathic hypercalcemia
Small bowel and colon	Skeletal muscle weakness or incoordination
Tumor, stricture	Cerebral palsy
Chronic volvulus	Muscular dystrophy/myotonia
Intussusception	
Smooth muscle diseases	
Scleroderma and dermatomyositis	
Systemic lupus erythematosus	
Chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction	

Modified with permission from Silverman A, Roy CC: Pediatric Clinical Gastroenterology, 3rd ed. Mosby; 1983.

Table 21–3. Differentiation of retentive constipation and Hirschsprung disease.

	Retentive Constipation	Hirschsprung Disease
Onset	2–3 y	At birth
Abdominal distention	Rare	Present
Nutrition and growth	Normal	Poor
Soiling and retentive behavior	Intermittent or constant	Rare
Rectal examination	Ampulla full	Ampulla may be empty
Rectal biopsy	Ganglion cells present	Ganglion cells absent
Rectal manometry	Normal rectoanal reflex	Nonrelaxation of internal anal sphincter after rectal distention
Barium enema	Distended rectum	Narrow distal segment with proximal megacolon

Hyman PE et al: Lubiprostone for the treatment of functional constipation in children J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014 58(3):283–291 [PMID: 24048162].

Tabbers MM et al: Evaluation and treatment of functional constipation in infants and children: evidence-based recommendations from ESPGHAN and NASPGHAN. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014;58(2):258–274 [PMID: 24345831].

ANAL FISSURE

Anal fissure is a slit-like tear in the squamous epithelium of the anus, which usually occurs secondary to the passage of large, hard fecal masses, typically at the superior and inferior aspects of the anus. Anal stenosis, anal crypt abscess, and trauma can be contributory factors. Sexual abuse must be considered in children with large, irregular, or multiple anal fissures. Anal fissures may be the presenting sign of Crohn disease in older children.

The infant or child with anal fissure typically cries with defecation and will try to hold back stools. Sparse, bright red bleeding is seen on the outside of the stool or on the toilet tissue following defecation. The fissure can often be seen if the patient is examined in a knee-chest position with the buttocks spread apart. When a fissure cannot be identified, it is essential to rule out other causes of rectal bleeding such

as juvenile polyp, perianal inflammation due to group A β-hemolytic streptococcus, or inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). Anal fissures should be treated promptly to break the constipation, fissure, pain, retention, and constipation cycle. A stool softener should be given. Warm Sitz baths after defecation may be helpful. Rarely, silver nitrate cauterization or surgery is indicated. Anal surgery should be avoided in patients with Crohn disease because of the high risk of recurrence and progression after surgery.

CONGENITAL ANORECTAL ANOMALIES

1. Anterior Displacement of the Anus

Anterior displacement of the anus is a common anomaly of infant girls. Its usual presentation in infants is constipation and straining with stool. On physical examination, the anus looks normal but is ventrally displaced, located close to the vaginal fourchette (in females) or to the base of the scrotum (in males). The diagnosis is made in girls if the distance from the vaginal fourchette to the center of the anal opening is less than 34% of the total distance from fourchette to coccyx. In boys, the diagnosis is made if the distance from the base of the scrotum to the anal aperture is less than 46% of the total distance from scrotum to coccyx. Often on internal digital examination a posterior "rectal shelf" will be appreciated. In severe anterior displacement, when the anal opening is located less than 10% of the distance from the vaginal fourchette to the coccyx, the anal sphincter muscle may not completely encircle the anal opening and severe obstipation similar to that seen in imperforate anus may occur. Indeed, extreme anterior displacement of the anus may be a form of imperforate anus. Surgery is not needed in most cases. Stool softeners or occasional glycerin suppositories usually relieve straining. This problem improves significantly by age 3–4 years as normal toddler lordosis disappears.

2. Anal Stenosis

Anal stenosis usually presents in the newborn period. The anal aperture may be very small and filled with a dot of meconium. Defecation is difficult, with ribbonlike stools, blood and mucus per rectum, fecal impaction, and abdominal distention. Anal stenosis occurs in about 3 of 10,000 live births, with slightly more males affected. Anal stenosis may not be apparent at birth because the anus looks normal. Rectal bleeding in a straining infant often leads to a rectal examination, which reveals a tight ring in the anal canal. Dilation of the anal ring is usually curative but may have to be repeated daily for several weeks.

3. Imperforate Anus

Imperforate anus typically develops during the fifth to seventh week of pregnancy and occurs in 1 of 5000 live births, slightly more common males. Almost 50% of babies with imperforate anus have additional defects, often in association with a particular syndrome.

Defects are generally classified as low (rectoperineal malformation) where the rectum may not connect to the anus, a membrane may be present over the anal opening, or the anal opening may be narrow or misplaced. A high lesion is classified where the rectum may connect to part of the urinary tract or the reproductive system through a fistula. Infants with low imperforate anus fail to pass meconium. There may be a greenish bulging membrane obstructing the anal aperture. Perforation of the anal membrane is a relatively simple surgical procedure. A skin tag shaped like a "bucket handle" is seen on the perineum of some males below which a stenotic aperture can be seen. The aperture is sometimes surrounded by normal anal musculature, but in many cases the aperture is a rectoperineal fistula and the anal musculature is displaced posteriorly or is absent. Eighty to 90% of patients with low imperforate anus are continent after surgery.

In high imperforate anus, physical examination usually shows no anal musculature. There may be a rectoperineal, rectovesicular, rectourethral, or rectovaginal fistula; hypoplastic buttocks; cloacal anomalies; and sometimes evidence of distal neurologic deficit. It is critical in these cases to fully evaluate the complex anatomy and neurologic function before attempting corrective surgery. A diverting colostomy is usually performed to protect the urinary tract and relieve obstruction. After reparative surgery, only 30% of patients with high imperforate anus achieve fecal continence.

Levitt MA, Pena A: Outcomes from the correction of anorectal malformations. Curr Opin Pediatr 2005;17:394 [PMID: 15891433].

Reisner SH, Sivan Y, Nitzan M, Merlob P: Determination of anterior displacement of the anus in newborn infants and children. Pediatrics 1984;73:216–217 [PMID: 6694879].

CLOSTRIDIUM DIFFICILE INFECTION IN CHILDREN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- C difficile in children leads to a spectrum of clinical disease, from asymptomatic colonization to severe pseudomembranous colitis with fever, severe abdominal pain, and bloody diarrhea.
- Risk factors for C difficile disease include previous antibiotic use and a variety of chronic diseases, including immunodeficiency, cystic fibrosis, Hirschsprung disease, IBD, oncology patients, and solid-organ transplant recipients.
- Community-acquired C difficile disease in healthy hosts is increasing in incidence.

» Pathogenesis

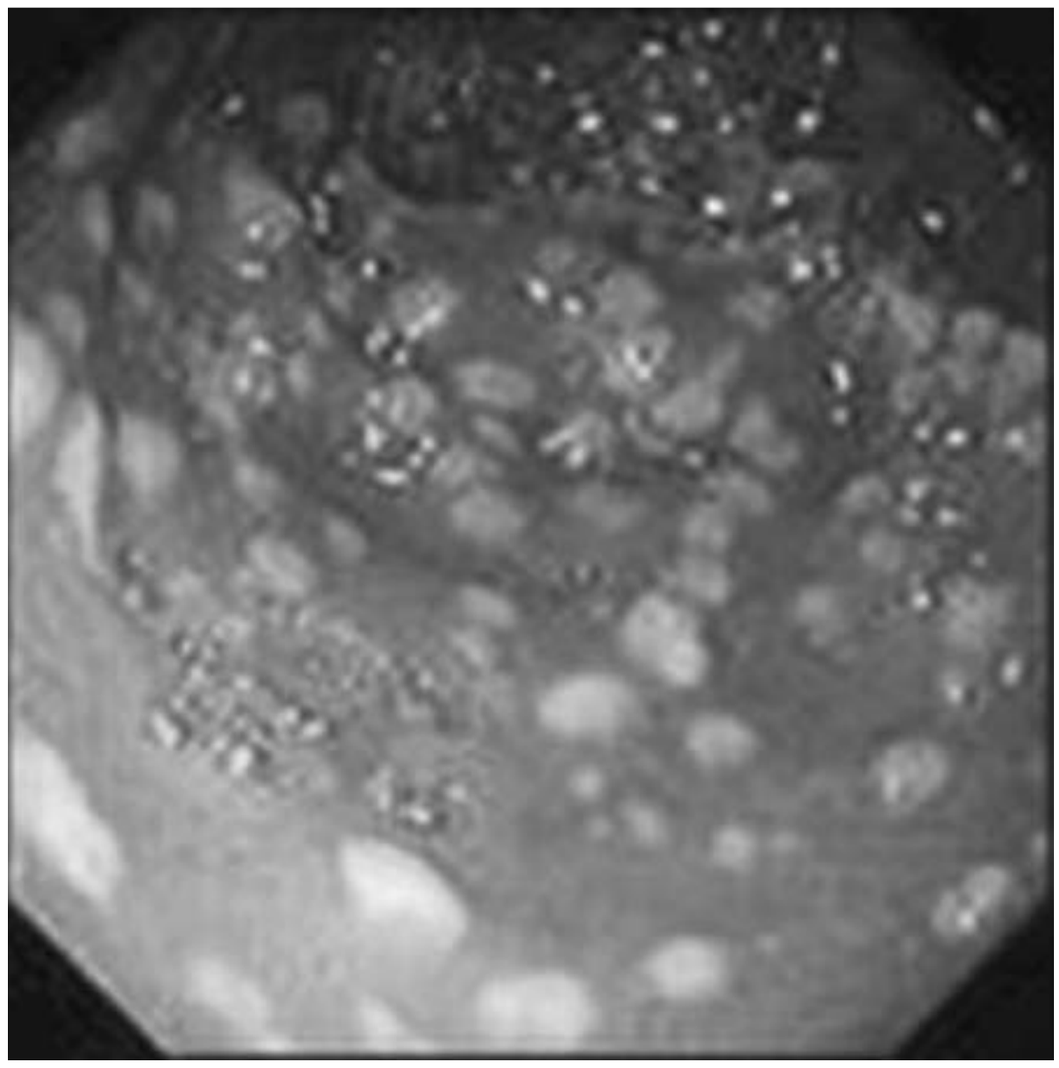
C difficile is a spore-forming gram-positive bacillus that causes human disease via the secretion of enterotoxins that cause necrotizing inflammation of the colon. Interestingly, asymptomatic C difficile colonization of the human GI tract occurs commonly in infants and can occur in older children and adults as well. To some extent, C difficile may reside in balance with the constituent intestinal microbiome in a health host. Disruption of normal commensal intestinal bacteria or interruption of host immune defense, via intestinal injury or host immune suppression, then appears to give C difficile a potential foothold in the human gut where it can lead to disease. Hospitalization is a critical risk factor for C difficile disease. Additional risk factors in children include previous antibiotic use and a variety of chronic diseases including IBD, cystic fibrosis, Hirschsprung disease, solid-organ transplant recipients, oncology patients, and immunodeficient hosts. For reasons that are incompletely understood, community-acquired symptomatic C difficile infection in healthy children is increasing in incidence.

In recent years there has been an alarming increase in the incidence, morbidity, and mortality of C difficile reported in Europe, Canada, and the United States. At least a portion of this increase seems to be due to the expansion of a new strain of C difficile, identified as the North American Pulsed Field type 1 (NAP1) C difficile, which has been found to have increased toxin production, sporulation, and antibiotic resistance. Surveillance from children's hospitals seems to mirror the increase in incidence of C difficile in adults but not necessarily the increase in morbidity and mortality. Pediatric hospitalizations in the United States due to C difficile have almost doubled between 1997 and 2006. The NAP1 strain was identified in 19% of C difficile isolates in a recent pediatric study.

» Clinical Findings

C difficile disease in children represents a spectrum of clinical symptoms, ranging from asymptomatic colonization to persistent, watery diarrhea to pseudomembranous colitis. Recognizing that antibiotic exposure remains a critical risk factor, the onset of colitis ranges from 1 to 14 days after initiation of antibiotic therapy to as many as 30 days after antibiotics have been discontinued. Clindamycin was one of the first antibiotics associated with pseudomembranous colitis, but all antibiotics are now recognized to be potential causes, although erythromycin seems less likely than most. In pediatric patients, amoxicillin and cephalosporins are commonly associated with pseudomembranous enterocolitis, probably because of their widespread use.

The patient with pseudomembranous colitis characteristically has fever, abdominal distention, tenesmus, diarrhea, and generalized abdominal tenderness. Chronic presentations with low-grade fever, diarrhea, and abdominal pain



▲**Figure 21–5.** Clostridium difficile–associated pseudomembranes. Colonic mucosa is covered with plaques coated with white exudates.

have been described. Diarrheal stools contain sheets of neutrophils and sometimes gross blood. Plain abdominal radiographs show a thickened colon wall and ileus. Endoscopically, the colon appears to be covered by small, raised white plaques (pseudomembranes) with areas of apparently normal bowel in between (Figure 21–5). Biopsy specimens show "exploding crypts or volcano lesion"—an eruption of white cells that appears to be shooting out of affected crypts. Stool cultures often show overgrowth of Staphylococcus aureus, which is probably an opportunistic organism growing in the necrotic tissue. C difficile can be cultured in specialized laboratories. Identification of stool toxins is the usual method of diagnosis. Use of real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for toxin identification has been replacing more traditional enzyme immunoassay (EIA) methods of stool toxin detection, because of improved sensitivity. Interpretation of C difficile diagnostic testing in infants remains controversial because asymptomatic colonization is well recognized in the first year of life.

» Treatment

Standard treatment of pseudomembranous colitis consists of stopping antibiotics and instituting therapy with oral metronidazole (30 mg/kg/d) or vancomycin (30–50 mg/kg/d). Vancomycin is many times more expensive than metronidazole and no more efficacious. Metronidazole can be given intravenously in patients with vomiting or ileus. With

increasing virulence and antibiotic resistance being reported, alternative therapies, such as rifaximin and nitazoxanide, are being used and show similar response rates as oral vancomycin. Relapse occurs after treatment in 10%–50% of patients because of exsporulation of residual spores in the colon. Spores are very hardy and may remain viable on inanimate surfaces for up to 12 months. Retreatment with the same antibiotic regimen is usually effective, but multiple relapses are possible and may be a significant management problem. Adjunctive strategies, such as Saccharomyces boulardii probiotic therapy, cholestyramine as a toxin-binder, and pulsed courses of antibiotics have been used for refractory disease. Fecal bacteriotherapy, known popularly as fecal transplantation, is now a widely accepted and nearly 100% effective treatment for the treatment of recurrent C difficile infection in adults but experience remains limited in children.

Khalaf N, Crews JD, DuPont HL, Koo HL: Clostridium difficile: an emerging pathogen in children. Discov Med 2012 Aug;14(75):105–113 [PMID: 22935207].

Kim J et al: Epidemiological features of Clostridium difficile-associated disease among inpatients at children's hospitals in the United States, 2001–2006. Pediatrics 2008;122(6):1266–1170 [PMID: 19047244].

Toltzis P et al: Presence of the epidemic North American Pulsed Field type 1 Clostridium difficile strain in hospitalized children. J Pediatr 2009;154(4):607–608 [PMID: 19324222].

Zilberberg MD, Tillotson GS, McDonald C: Clostridium difficile infections among hospitalized children, United States, 1997–2006. Infect Dis 2010;16(4):604–609 [PMID: 20350373].

DISORDERS OF THE PERITOnEAl cAVITY

PERITONITIS

Primary bacterial peritonitis accounts for less than 2% of childhood peritonitis. The most common causative organisms are Escherichia coli, other enteric organisms, hemolytic streptococci, and pneumococci. Primary peritonitis occurs in patients with splenectomy, splenic dysfunction, or ascites (nephrotic syndrome, advanced liver disease, kwashiorkor). It can also occur in infants with pyelonephritis or pneumonia.

Secondary peritonitis is much more common. It is associated with peritoneal dialysis, abdominal trauma, or ruptured viscus. The organisms associated with secondary peritonitis vary with the cause. Organisms such as Staphylococcus epidermidis and Candida may cause secondary peritonitis in patients receiving peritoneal dialysis. Multiple enteric organisms may be isolated after abdominal injury, bowel perforation, or ruptured appendicitis. Intra-abdominal abscesses may form in pelvic, subhepatic, or subphrenic areas.

Symptoms of peritonitis include abdominal pain, fever, nausea, vomiting, acidosis, and shock. The abdomen is tender, rigid, and distended, with involuntary guarding. Bowel sounds may be absent. Most peritonitis is an acute medical emergency. In patients receiving peritoneal dialysis, peritonitis can be a chronic infection causing milder symptoms.

Leukocyte count is high initially (> 20,000/μL) with a predominance of immature forms, and later it may fall to neutropenic levels, especially in primary peritonitis. Abdominal imaging can confirm the presence of ascites. Bacterial peritonitis should be suspected if paracentesis fluid contains more than 500 leukocytes/μL or more than 32 mg/dL of lactate; if it has a pH less than 7.34; or if the pH is over 0.1 pH unit less than arterial blood pH. Diagnosis is made by Gram stain and culture, preferably of 5–10 mL of fluid for optimal yield. The blood culture is often positive in primary peritonitis.

Antibiotic treatment and supportive therapy for dehydration, shock, and acidosis are indicated. Surgical treatment of the underlying cause of secondary peritonitis is critical. Removal of infected peritoneal dialysis catheters in patients with secondary peritonitis is sometimes necessary and almost always required if Candida infection is present.

European Association for the Study of the Liver: EASL clinical practice guidelines on the management of ascites, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2010 Sep;53(3):397–417 [PMID: 20633946].

CHYLOUS ASCITES

Neonatal chylous ascites may be due to congenital infection or developmental abnormality of the lymphatic system (intestinal lymphangiectasia). If the thoracic duct is involved, chylothorax may be present. Later in life, chylous ascites may result from congenital lymphangiectasia, retroperitoneal or lymphatic tumors, peritoneal bands, abdominal trauma, intestinal malrotation or infection, or it may occur after cardiac or abdominal surgery.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Both congenital and acquired lymphatic obstructions cause chylous ascites, diarrhea, and failure to thrive. The abdomen is distended, with a fluid wave and shifting dullness. Unilateral or generalized peripheral edema may be present.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings include hypoalbuminemia, hypogammaglobulinemia, and lymphopenia. Ascitic fluid contains lymphocytes and has the biochemical composition of chyle if the patient has just been fed; otherwise, it is indistinguishable from ascites secondary to cirrhosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Chylous ascites must be differentiated from ascites due to liver disease and in the older child, from constrictive

pericarditis, chronically elevated right heart pressure, malignancy, infection, or inflammatory diseases causing lymphatic obstruction. In the newborn, urinary ascites from anatomic abnormalities of the kidney or collecting system must be considered. A simple test to diagnose urinary ascites is a urea nitrogen or creatinine concentration of abdominal fluid. Neither of these is present in chylous or hepatic ascites.

» Complications & Sequelae

Chylous ascites caused by intestinal lymphatic obstruction is associated with fat malabsorption and protein loss. Intestinal loss of albumin may lead to edema. Rapidly accumulating chylous ascites may cause respiratory complications. The primary infections and malignancies causing chylous ascites may be life threatening.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Little can be done to correct congenital abnormalities due to hypoplasia, aplasia, or ectasia of the lymphatics unless they are surgically resectable. More recently, somatostatin and fibrin glue have been tried with varying success. Treatment is supportive, consisting mainly of a high-protein diet and careful attention to infections. Shunting of peritoneal fluid into the venous system is sometimes effective. A fat-free diet supplemented with medium-chain triglycerides decreases the formation of chylous ascites. Total parenteral nutrition (TPN) may rarely be necessary. Infusions of albumin generally provide only temporary relief and are rarely used for chronic management. In the neonate, congenital chylous ascites may spontaneously disappear following one or more paracenteses and a medium-chain triglyceride diet.

Densupsoontorn N et al: Congenital chylous ascites: the roles of fibrin glue and CD31. Acta Paediatr 2009 Nov;98(11): 1847–1849 [PMID: 19627262].

Moreira Dde A et al: Congenital chylous ascites: a report of a case treated with hemostatic cellulose and fibrin glue. J Pediatr Surg 2013 Feb;48(2):e17–e19 [PMID: 23414895].

Olivieri C, Nanni L, Masini L, Pintus C: Successful management of congenital chylous ascites with early octreotide and total parenteral nutrition in a newborn. BMJ Case Rep 2012 Sep 25;2012 [PMID: 23010459].

° GASTROIn TESTIn Al TUMORS & MAl IGn An c IES

JUVENILE POLYPS

Juvenile polyps belong to the hamartomatous category of polyps are usually pedunculated and solitary (Figure 21–6). The head of the polyp is composed of hyperplastic glandular and vascular elements, often with cystic transformation. Juvenile polyps are benign, and 80% occur in the

▲**Figure 21–6.** Juvenile polyp. Solitary, smooth polyp coated with exudate and erythematous pattern that lies on the surface of a normal colonic mucosa.

rectosigmoid. These are the most common type of intestinal polyps in children. Their incidence is highest between ages 3 and 5 years. They are rare before age 1 year and usually occur before age 10. The painless passage of small amounts of bright red blood with mucus on a normal or constipated stool is the most frequent manifestation. Abdominal pain is rare, but low-lying polyps may prolapse during defecation. Colonoscopy is diagnostic and therapeutic when polyps are suspected. After removal of the polyp by electrocautery, nothing further should be done if histologic findings confirm the diagnosis. There is a slight risk of developing further juvenile polyps. Other polyposis syndromes are summarized in Table 21–4.

Rarely, many juvenile polyps may be present in the colon, causing anemia, diarrhea with mucus, and protein loss. An individual may be diagnosed with juvenile polyposis syndrome if there are more than five juvenile polyps in the colon, multiple juvenile polyps elsewhere in the GI tract, or any number of juvenile polyps with a family history of juvenile polyposis syndrome. Other types of hamartomatous polyp syndromes include Peutz-Jeghers syndrome and the PTEN hamartoma tumor syndrome. Peutz-Jeghers syndrome is associated with polyps commonly in the small intestine and colon but can also been seen in the stomach and in other organs. There is a distinctive mucocutaneous pigmentation (freckling) that appears early on but can disappear by age 5, along the vermillion border of the lips, buccal mucosa, and

Table 21–4. Gastrointestinal polyposis syndromes.

	Location	Number	Histology	Extraintestinal Findings	Malignant Potential	Recommended Therapy
Juvenile polyps	Colon	Single (70%) Several (30%)	Hyperplastic, hamartomatous	None	None	Remove polyp for continuous bleeding or prolapse.
Juvenile polyposis syndrome[a]	Colon, stomach, small bowel	≥ 5	Hyperplastic, hamartomatous, can have focal adenomatous change	None	Up to 50%	Remove all polyps. Consider colectomy if very numerous or adenomatous.
PTEN hamartoma tumor syndrome[a]	Colon, stomach, small bowel	Multiple	Hyperplastic, hamartomatous	Skin, eyes, GU, CNS. Cancers especially for breast, thyroid, and endometrium	16% colorectal cancer risk	Surveillance colonoscopies
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome[a]	Small bowel, stomach, colon	Multiple	Hamartomatous	Pigmented cutaneous and oral macules; ovarian cysts and tumors; bony exostoses	2%–3%	Remove accessible polyps or those causing obstruction or bleeding.
Cronkhite-Canada syndrome	Stomach, colon; less commonly, esophagus and small bowel	Multiple	Hamartomatous	Alopecia; onychodystrophy; hyperpigmentation	Rare	None.
Familial adenomatous polyposis[a]	Colon; less commonly, stomach and small bowel	Multiple	Adenomatous	None	95%–100%	Colectomy by age 18 years.

[a]Autosomal dominant.
[b]Autosomal recessive.

hands and feet. Besides of the higher risk of both GI and non-GI malignancies, routine cancer surveillance is necessary. In addition, 50% will develop intussusception at some point in their lifetime. PTEN hamartoma syndrome involves a spectrum of hamartomatous conditions that are associated with mutations in the PTEN gene. This includes nearly all Cowden syndrome and some Bannayan-Riley Ruvalcaba syndrome and Proteus syndrome. Besides hamartomas and other benign tumors throughout the body, there is an increased risk of intestinal and extraintestinal cancers.

Barnard J: Screening and surveillance recommendations for pediatric gastrointestinal polyposis syndrome. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2009 Apr;48(Suppl 2):575–578 [PMID: 19300132].

Thakkar K, Fishman DS, Gilger MA: Colorectal polyps in childhood. Curr Opin Pediatr 2012 Oct;24(5):632–637. doi: 10.1097/MOP.0b013e328357419f [PMID: 22890064].

Zbuk KM, Eng C: Hamartomatous polyposis syndromes: Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007 Sep;4(9):492–502 [PMID: 17768394].

CANCERS OF THE ESOPHAGUS, SMALL BOWEL, & COLON

Esophageal cancer is rare in childhood. Cysts, leiomyomas, and hamartomas predominate. Caustic injury to the esophagus increases the very long-term risk of squamous cell carcinoma. Chronic peptic esophagitis is associated with Barrett esophagus, a precancerous lesion. Simple GE reflux in infancy without esophagitis is not a risk for cancer of the esophagus.

The most common gastric or small bowel cancer in children is lymphoma or lymphosarcoma. Intermittent abdominal pain, abdominal mass, intussusception, or a celiac-like picture may be present. Carcinoid tumors are usually benign and most often an incidental finding in the appendix. Metastasis is rare. The carcinoid syndrome (flushing, sweating, hypertension, diarrhea, and vomiting), associated with serotonin secretion, only occurs with metastatic carcinoid tumors.

Adenocarcinoma of the colon is rare in childhood. The transverse colon and rectosigmoid are the two most

commonly affected sites. The low 5-year survival rate relates to the nonspecificity of presenting complaints and the large percentage of undifferentiated types. Children with a family history of colon cancer, chronic ulcerative colitis (UC), or familial polyposis syndromes are at greater risk.

MESENTERIC CYSTS

Mesenteric and omental cysts are rare intra-abdominal masses in children. These cysts may be small or large, single or multiloculated. They are thin-walled and contain serous, chylous, or hemorrhagic fluid. They are commonly located in the small bowel mesentery but are also found in the mesocolon. Most mesenteric cysts cause no symptoms and are found incidentally. Traction on the mesentery may lead to colicky abdominal pain, which can be mild and recurrent but may appear acutely with vomiting. Volvulus may occur around a cyst, and hemorrhage into a cyst may be mild or hemodynamically significant. A rounded mass can occasionally be palpated or seen on radiograph displacing adjacent intestine. Abdominal ultrasonography is usually diagnostic. Surgical removal is indicated.

Tan JJ, Tan KK, Chew SP: Mesenteric cysts: an institution experience over 14 years and review of the literature. World J Surg 2009 Sep;33(9):1961–1965 [PMID: 19609826].

INTESTINAL HEMANGIOMAS AND VASCULAR MALFORMATIONS

Hemangiomas and vascular malformations of the GI tract are uncommon causes of GI bleeding in children and adults. Like their skin counterparts, intestinal hemangiomas are typically not present at birth and then appear in the first 2 months of life, undergoing a rapidly proliferating growth phase during the first year, during which they are most likely to cause symptomatic bleeding, before involution thereafter. Vascular malformations include capillary, arterial, venous, and mixed lesions, and are present from birth with risk of bleeding throughout life. The physically largest subtype of vascular lesion is the cavernous malformation, which may protrude into the lumen as a polypoid lesion or may invade the intestine from mucosa to serosa.

» Clinical Presentation

Intestinal vascular lesions are most often found in the small bowel. These lesions may cause acute or occult blood loss or may present as intussusception, intestinal narrowing, or intramural hematoma. Thrombocytopenia and consumptive coagulopathy are occasional complications of rapidly growing hemangiomas during their rapid proliferation phase. Intestinal vascular lesions are usually found in isolation, but associated syndromes include the blue rubber bleb nevus syndrome, the Osler-Rendu-Weber syndrome, and the Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome. The diagnosis of GI bleeding can be challenging, particularly when bleeding is occult. The physical examination is typically not helpful unless there are other skin hemangiomas present in the young child that may point to an intestinal hemangioma. Vascular protocols with CT or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may identify larger vascular lesions. Endoscopic techniques remain crucial to the diagnosis of intestinal vascular lesions. Video capsule endoscopy and small bowel enteroscopy techniques have allowed for diagnosis and potential therapy of small bowel vascular lesions that were previously inaccessible using conventional endoscopy.

» Treatment

Rapidly proliferating hemangiomas of the skin and liver have been treated medically with corticosteroids, propranolol, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, interferon, and vincristine. There is relatively little experience with using these medical techniques for intestinal hemangiomas. Endoscopic techniques for treatment of vascular lesions include banding, submucosal injections of sclerosants, and electrocautery methods. Surgical resection of the vascular lesion and surrounding bowel may be required for lesions in the mid-small bowel that are not accessible by endoscopy or for large lesions that are not amenable to endoscopic therapies.

Yoo S: GI-associated hemangiomas and vascular malformations. Clin Colon Rectal Surg 2011 Sep;24(3):193–200 [PMID: 22942801].

MAJOR GASTROIn TESTIn Al SYMPTOMS & SIGn S

ACUTE DIARRHEA

Viruses are the most common cause of acute gastroenteritis in developing and developed countries. Bacterial and parasitic enteric infections are discussed in Chapters 42 and 43. Of the viral agents causing enteric infection, rotavirus, a 67-nm double-stranded RNA virus with at least eight serotypes, is the most common. As with most viral pathogens, rotavirus affects the small intestine, causing voluminous watery diarrhea without leukocytes or blood. In the United States, rotavirus primarily affects infants between 3 and 15 months of age. The peak incidence in the United States is in the winter with sporadic cases occurring at other times. The virus is transmitted via the fecal-oral route and survives for hours on hands and for days on environmental surfaces.

1. Rotavirus Infection

The incubation period for rotavirus is 1–3 days. Symptoms caused by rotavirus are similar to other viral pathogens. Vomiting is the first symptom in 80%–90% of patients, followed within 24 hours by low-grade fever and watery

diarrhea. Diarrhea usually lasts 4–8 days but may last longer in young infants or immunocompromised patients. Rotavirus cannot be definitively diagnosed on clinical grounds alone. Rotavirus antigens can be identified in stool or virus can be seen by scanning electron microscopy. The specific identification of rotavirus is not required in every case, however, as treatment is nonspecific. Additional laboratory testing is also generally unnecessary, but, when obtained, it will usually show a normal white blood cell count. Hyper- or hyponatremia may occur with dehydration. Metabolic acidosis can occur from bicarbonate loss in the stool, ketosis from poor intake, and in severe cases lactic acidemia occurs from hypotension and hypoperfusion. Stools do not contain blood or white blood cells.

As is with most other viral causes of acute diarrhea, treatment is nonspecific and supportive. Replacement of fluid and electrolyte deficits, along with ongoing losses, especially in small infants is necessary. (Oral and intravenous therapies are discussed in Chapter 23.) The use of oral rehydration solutions is appropriate in most cases. The use of clear liquids or hypocaloric (dilute formula) diets for more than 48 hours is not advisable. Early initiation of refeeding is recommended. Intestinal lactase levels may be reduced during rotavirus infection. Therefore, the brief use of a lactose-free diet may be associated with a shorter period of diarrhea but is not critical to successful recovery in healthy infants. Reduced fat intake during recovery may decrease nausea and vomiting.

Antidiarrheal medications are ineffective (kaolin-pectin combinations) and in some circumstances can be dangerous (loperamide, tincture of opium, diphenoxylate with atropine). Bismuth subsalicylate preparations may reduce stool volume but are not critical to recovery and are generally not recommended especially in young children due to the salicylate component and risk of Reye syndrome. Oral immunoglobulin or specific antiviral agents have occasionally been useful in limiting duration of disease in immunocompromised patients.

Most children are infected with rotavirus more than once, with the first infection being the most severe. Some protective immunity is imparted by the first infection. Prevention of infection occurs primarily by good hygiene and prevention of fecal-oral contamination. As treatment for rotavirus is nonspecific, prevention of illness is critical. The American Academy of Pediatrics issued guidelines in January 2007 recommending the routine use of bovine-based pentavalent rotavirus vaccine to be given orally to infants at 2, 4, and possibly 6 months of age, depending on which vaccine is used.

2. Other Viral Infections Causing Acute Diarrhea

Other viral pathogens causing diarrhea in children can be identified in stool by electron microscopy, viral culture, or enzyme-linked immunoassay. Depending on the geographic location, enteric adenoviruses (serotypes 40 and 41) or caliciviruses are the next most common viral pathogens in infants. The symptoms of enteric adenovirus infection are similar to those of rotavirus, but infection is not seasonal and the duration of illness may be longer. The Norwalk agent (now called norovirus), a calicivirus, is a small RNA virus that mainly causes vomiting but can also cause diarrhea in older children and adults, usually in common source outbreaks. The duration of symptoms is short, usually 24–48 hours. Other potentially pathogenic viruses include astroviruses, corona-like viruses, and other small round viruses.

Cytomegalovirus rarely causes diarrhea in immunocompetent children but may cause erosive colitis or enteritis in immunocompromised hosts. Cytomegalovirus enteritis is particularly common after solid-organ and bone marrow transplant and in the late stages of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. Probiotics are moderately effective in treating acute viral gastroenteritis in healthy children.

Probiotics should be used with extreme caution, however, in immunocompromised, chronically debilitated, or seriously ill children.

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Infectious Diseases: Prevention of rotavirus disease: guidelines for the use of rotavirus vaccine. Pediatrics 2007;119:171 [PMID: 17200286].

Bernstein DT: Rotavirus overview. Pediatric Infect Dis J 2009 Mar;28(Suppl 3):S50–S53 [PMID: 19252423].

O'Ryan M et al: An update on management of severe acute infectious gastroenteritis in children. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2010 Jun;8(6):671–682 [PMID: 20521895].

Thomas DW et al: Probiotics and prebiotics in pediatrics. Pediatrics 2010 Dec;126(6):1217–1231 [PMID: 21115585].

CHRONIC DIARRHEA

Bowel habits are variable, making the specific diagnosis of chronic diarrhea difficult. Some healthy infants may have five to eight stools daily. A gradual or sudden increase in the number and volume of stools to more than 15 g/kg/d combined with an increase in fluidity should raise a suspicion that an organic cause of chronic diarrhea is present. Diarrhea may result from (1) interruption of normal cell transport processes for water, electrolytes, or nutrients; (2) decrease in surface area available for absorption secondary to shortened bowel or mucosal disease; (3) increase in intestinal motility; (4) increase in unabsorbable, osmotically active molecules in the intestinal lumen; (5) increase in intestinal permeability, leading to increased loss of water and electrolytes; and (6) stimulation of enterocyte secretion by toxins or cytokines. The most common entities causing chronic diarrhea are listed as follows. Malabsorption syndromes, which also cause chronic or recurrent diarrhea, are considered separately.

1. Causes of Chronic Diarrhea

A. Antibiotic Therapy

Acute and chronic diarrhea is reported in up to 60% of children receiving antibiotics. Only a small fraction of these patients have C difficile–related pseudomembranous enterocolitis. Eradication of normal gut flora and overgrowth of other organisms may cause antibiotic-associated diarrhea. Most antibiotic-associated diarrhea is watery, is not associated with systemic symptoms, and decreases when antibiotic therapy is stopped. Recent data suggest that the use of probiotics may decrease the incidence and severity of this diarrhea by helping to restore intestinal microbial balance.

B. Extraintestinal Infections

Infections of the urinary tract and upper respiratory tract (especially otitis media) are at times associated with diarrhea, though the mechanism is incompletely understood. Antibiotic treatment of the primary infection, toxins released by infecting organisms, and local irritation of the rectum (in patients with bladder infection) may play a role.

C. Malnutrition

Malnutrition is associated with an increased frequency of enteral infections. Decreased bile acid synthesis, decreased pancreatic enzyme output, decreased disaccharidase activity, altered motility, and changes in the intestinal flora all may contribute to diarrhea. In addition, severely malnourished children are at higher risk of enteric infections because of depressed cellular and humoral immune functions.

D. Diet and Medications

Relative deficiency of pancreatic amylase in young infants causes osmotic diarrhea after starchy foods. Fruit juices, especially those high in fructose or sorbitol, produce diarrhea because these osmotically active sugars are poorly absorbed. Intestinal irritants (spices and foods high in fiber) and histamine-containing or histamine-releasing foods (eg, citrus fruits, tomatoes, fermented cheeses, red wines, and scombroid fish) may also cause diarrhea.

FODMAPs (Fermentable, Oligo-, Di-, Mono-saccharides And Polyols) are a group of poorly absorbed short-chain carbohydrates that are not uncommonly malabsorbed. Lactose and fructose are classic examples of FODMAPs. Malabsorption of foods higher in FODMAPs can cause symptoms of chronic intermittent diarrhea. It has been implicated as a cause of diarrhea and other symptoms (bloating, gassiness, abdominal pain) in certain individuals with a prior diagnosis of irritable bowel syndrome. Removal of certain FODMAPS from the diet may improve symptoms.

Laxative abuse in association with eating disorders or munchausen syndrome by proxy can cause unpredictable diarrhea. A high concentration of magnesium in the stool may indicate overuse of milk of magnesia or other magnesium-containing laxatives. Detection of other laxative preparations in the stool or circulation requires sophisticated analysis not available in most laboratories. A high index of suspicion and careful observation may be required to make this diagnosis.

E. Allergic Diarrhea

Diarrhea resulting from allergy to dietary proteins is a frequently entertained but rarely proven diagnosis. GI symptoms from cow's milk protein allergy are more common in infants younger than 12 months.

In contrast to the self-limited cow's milk protein hypersensitivity of infancy, infants and older children may develop more severe diarrhea caused by a systemic allergic reaction. For instance, food protein–induced enterocolitis syndrome (FPIES) is a life-threatening condition occurring during infancy manifested by large-volume diarrhea, acidosis, and shock as a result of an allergic reaction to common food proteins such as milk and soy. Patients require hospitalization for volume resuscitation and strict avoidance of allergens. Reintroduction of allergens should be performed in a controlled setting by an experienced allergist.

Infants and children may develop an enteropathy secondary to milk protein, resulting in flattening of small bowel villi, steatorrhea, hypoproteinemia, occult blood loss, and chronic diarrhea. Skin testing is not reliable since it detects circulating antibodies, not the T-cell–mediated responses that are probably responsible for food sensitivity reactions. Double-blind oral challenge with the suspected food under careful observation is often necessary to confirm this intestinal protein allergy. Small bowel biopsy findings are nonspecific. The diagnosis is often confirmed by either double-blind oral challenge with the suspected food or dietary elimination of the food followed by disappearance of occult blood in the stool and improvement in other symptoms. Consultation with an allergist is recommended for long-term management of patients with this disease.

Anaphylactic, immunoglobulin E (IgE)–mediated reactions to foods can occur in both young and older children. After ingestion, the patient quickly develops vomiting, then diarrhea, pallor, and hypotension. In these cases, radioallergosorbent test (RAST) and skin testing are positive. Food challenges should be undertaken in a setting in which resuscitation can be performed as there is often a progressively more severe reaction with subsequent ingestions. The close association between ingestion and symptoms usually leaves little doubt about the diagnosis.

F. Chronic Nonspecific Diarrhea

Chronic nonspecific diarrhea, also called toddler's diarrhea, is the most common cause of loose stools in otherwise

thriving children. The typical patient is a healthy, thriving child aged 6–20 months who has three to six loose stools per day during the waking hours. They do not have blood in their stools. They grow normally and may have a family history of functional bowel disease. No organic etiology is found for their diarrhea, with stool tests for blood, white blood cells, fat, parasites, and bacterial pathogens being negative. Diarrhea may worsen with a low-residue, low-fat, or high-carbohydrate diet and during periods of stress and infection. Excessive fruit juice ingestion seems to worsen symptoms. This syndrome resolves spontaneously usually by age 3½ years or after potty training. Possible causes of this diarrhea include abnormalities of bile acid absorption in the terminal ileum, excess intake of osmotically active carbohydrates, and abnormal motor function. A change in dietary fiber (either increasing fiber if deficient or decreasing fiber if excessive), a slight increase in dietary fat, and restriction of osmotically active carbohydrates like fruit juices will usually help control symptoms. If these measures fail, loperamide (0.1–0.2 mg/kg/d in two or three divided doses) can be used as needed for symptomatic relief. Cholestyramine has also been used in some cases.

G. Immunologic Causes of Chronic Diarrhea

Chronic diarrhea is common in immune deficiency states, especially immunoglobulin A (IgA) deficiency and T-cell abnormalities. It can be due to an autoimmune enteropathy associated with the immune deficient state or could be due to chronic infection. The infectious causes of the diarrhea include common bacterial, viral, fungal, or parasitic organisms usually considered nonpathogenic (rotavirus, Blastocystis hominis, Candida), or unusual organisms (cytomegalovirus, Cryptosporidium, Isospora belli, Mycobacterium spp., microsporidia).

Between 50% and 60% of patients with common variable immune deficiency have enteropathy characterized by intestinal villous atrophy. Lymphonodular hyperplasia of the small intestine is also prominent. Patients with congenital or Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia usually have diarrhea and abnormal intestinal morphology. Patients with isolated IgA deficiency can have chronic diarrhea, a celiac disease–like picture, lymphoid nodular hyperplasia, and are prone to giardiasis. Patients with isolated defects of cellular immunity, combined cellular and humoral immune incompetence, and HIV infection may have severe chronic diarrhea leading to malnutrition but often the cause cannot be identified. Chronic granulomatous disease may be associated with intestinal symptoms suggestive of chronic IBD. Specific treatments are available for many of the unusual pathogens causing diarrhea in the immunocompromised host. Thus, a vigorous diagnostic search for specific pathogens is warranted in these individuals. In addition, treatment must be directed toward correcting the immunologic defect.

H. Other Causes of Chronic Diarrhea

Most infections of the GI tract are acute and resolve spontaneously or with specific antibiotic therapy. Organisms most prone to cause chronic or recurrent diarrhea in immunocompetent children are Giardia lamblia, Entamoeba histolytica, Salmonella species, and Yersinia. Infection with these organisms requires a small inoculum. Some patients may develop a postinfectious diarrhea, with persistent diarrhea present despite the eradication of the offending organism, either viral or bacterial. Bacterial overgrowth of the small bowel in patients with SBS, those undergoing chemotherapy, or with anatomic abnormalities may experience chronic diarrhea.

Pancreatic insufficiency due to cystic fibrosis or Shwachman-Diamond syndrome may result in chronic diarrhea, typically in conjunction with failure to thrive. Certain tumors of childhood (neuroblastoma, ganglioneuroma, metastatic carcinoid, pancreatic VIPoma, or gastrinoma) may secrete substances such as gastrin and vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP) that promote small intestinal secretion of water and electrolytes. Conditions that result in increased or disordered intestinal motility such as hyperthyroidism or irritable bowel syndrome may also present with diarrhea. Children may present with large-volume, chronic, and intermittent watery diarrhea that does not cease when they discontinue oral feedings.

Dennehy PH: Acute diarrheal disease in children: epidemiology, prevention, and treatment. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2005 Sep;19(3):585–602 [PMID: 16102650].

Grimwood K et al: Acute and persistent diarrhea. Pediatr Clin North Am 2009 Dec;56(6):1343–1361 [PMID: 19962025].

Ramaswamy K et al: Infectious diarrhea in children. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2001 Sep;30(3):611–624 [PMID: 11586548].

GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

National data show the incidence of emergency department visits for GI bleeding in children has been increasing across the United States over the past several years, now above 94 per 100,000. The largest increase in that time has been for lower GI bleeding, rising by more than 31% over a 5-year period. The history, physical examination, and initial evaluation are key to identifying the bleeding source. In large-volume, acute GI bleeding the primary focus, however, should first center on stabilizing the patient to ensure adequate hemodynamic support.

» History

A number of substances simulate hematochezia or melena (Table 21–5). The presence of blood should be confirmed chemically with guaiac testing. Coughing, tonsillitis, lost teeth, menarche, or epistaxis may cause what appears to be occult or overt GI bleeding. A careful history of the specifics

Table 21–5. Identification of sites of gastrointestinal bleeding.

Symptom or Sign	Location of Bleeding Lesion
Effortless bright red blood from the mouth	Nasopharyngeal or oral lesions; tonsillitis; esophageal varices; lacerations of esophageal or gastric mucosa (Mallory-Weiss syndrome).
Vomiting of bright red blood or of "coffee grounds"	Lesion proximal to ligament of Treitz
Melanotic stool	Lesion proximal to ligament of Treitz, upper small bowel. Blood loss in excess of 50–100 mL/24 h.
Bright red or dark red blood in stools	Lesion in the ileum or colon. (Massive upper gastrointestinal bleeding may also be associated with bright red blood in stool.)
Streak of blood on outside of a stool	Lesion in the rectal ampulla or anal canal.

surrounding the bleeding is critical, including the site, volume and color or blood, history of NSAID use, and use of other medications should be ascertained. Inquiry about associated dysphagia, epigastric pain, or retrosternal pain should be made and, if present, suggest GER or a peptic cause of bleeding. Table 21–6 gives further cues in the presentation to help identify the source of bleeding.

Other important aspects of the history include foreign-body/caustic ingestion, history of chronic illnesses (especially liver/biliary disease), personal or family history of food allergy/atopy, associated symptoms (pain, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, weight loss), and family history of GI disorders (IBD, CD, liver disease, bleeding/coagulation disorder). In the presence of massive upper GI bleeding in the toddler, a high index of suspicion for button battery injury must be maintained despite the lack of any known history of ingestion. In the ICU setting, mechanical ventilation has been found to be the single largest risk factor for stress-induced GI bleeding. Table 21–7 lists causes of GI bleeding by age and presentation.

» Physical Examination

The first step is to determine if the child is acutely or chronically ill and initiate supportive measures as needed. Physical signs of portal hypertension, intestinal obstruction, or coagulopathy are particularly important. The nasal passages should be inspected for signs of recent epistaxis, the vagina for menstrual blood, and the anus for fissures and hemorrhoids. Skin examination should assess for hemangiomas, eczema, petechiae, or purpura.

A systolic blood pressure below 100 mm Hg and a pulse rate above 100 beats/min in an older child suggest at least a 20% reduction of blood volume. A pulse rate increase of 20 beats/min or a drop in systolic blood pressure greater than 10 mm Hg when the patient sits up is also a sensitive index of volume depletion. Tachycardia may be the initial indication of persistent bleeding.

» Laboratory Findings

Initial laboratory tests should include a complete blood cell count (CBC), prothrombin time (PT), and partial thromboplastin time (PTT), at minimum. In specific cases it may be prudent to add a liver profile (with suspected variceal bleeding), erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)/CRP (with possible IBD), BUN/creatinine (for possible hemolytic uremic syndrome), and stool culture/C difficile toxin assay (for acute bloody diarrhea suggestive of infectious colitis). Low MCV in association with anemia suggests chronic GI losses and may warrant addition of iron studies. Serial determination of hematocrit is essential to assess ongoing bleeding. Detection of blood in the gastric aspirate confirms a bleeding site proximal to the ligament of Treitz. However, its absence does not rule out the duodenum as the source. Testing the stool for occult blood will help monitor ongoing losses. In a large study of over 600 cases of pediatric upper GI bleeding, only 4% who were found to have significant drop in hemoglobin levels required transfusion or emergent endoscopic or surgical intervention. In this series, having one or more risk factors, including melena, hematochezia, unwell appearance, and/or large amount of fresh blood in the emesis, had a sensitivity of 100% in identifying the significant bleeds.

» Imaging Studies

In infants with acute onset of bloody stools, multiple-view plain x-rays of the abdomen are helpful in assessing for pneumatosis intestinalis or signs of obstruction. Children younger than 2 with a history and examination suggestive of intussusception should undergo air or water-soluble contrast enema. Painless, large-volume bleeding may prompt performance of a ^{99}Tc-pertectnetate nuclear scan to assess for a Meckel diverticulum. Pretreatment with an H_2-receptor antagonist may be helpful in increasing the sensitivity of this study; however, a negative scan does not preclude the diagnosis. CT scan of the abdomen with oral and IV contrast may be indicated to look for structural and inflammatory causes of bleeding. More recently, CT enterography has been proposed as a useful tool in cases of lower GI bleeding in children. Persistent bleeding without a clear source may prompt consideration of a radioisotope-tagged red blood cell (RBC) scan with ^{99m}Tc-sulfur colloid, though the bleeding must be active at the time of the study, with a rate of at least 0.1 mL/min. Angiography is generally less sensitive, requiring 1–2 mL/min.

Table 21–6. Differential diagnosis of gastrointestinal bleeding in children by symptoms and age at presentation.

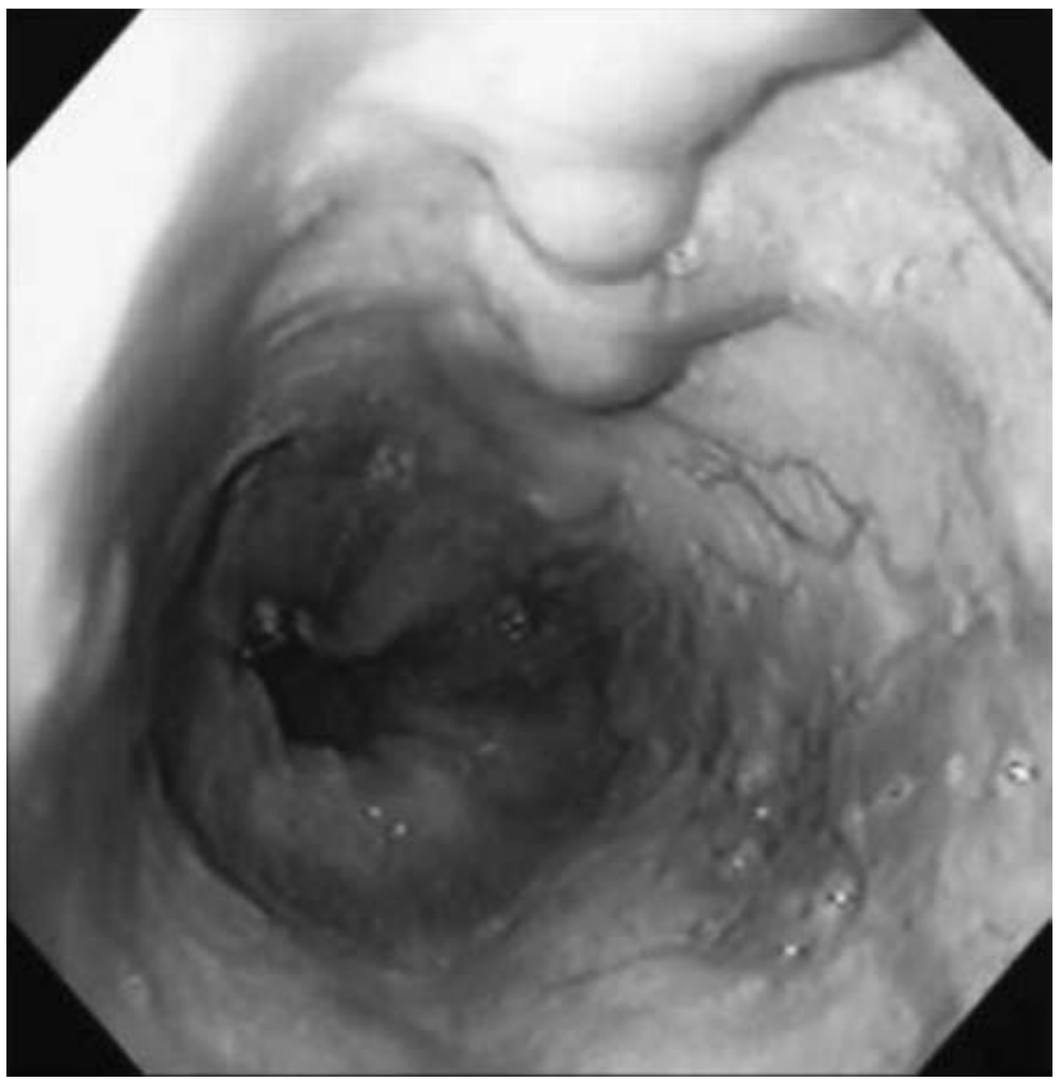
	Infant	Child (2–12 y)	Adolescent (> 12 y)
Hematemesis	Swallowed maternal blood Peptic esophagitis Mallory-Weiss tear Gastritis Gastric ulcer Duodenal ulcer	Epistaxis Peptic esophagitis Caustic ingestion Mallory-Weiss tear Esophageal varices Gastritis Gastric ulcer Duodenal ulcer Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia Hemobilia Henoch-Schönlein purpura	Esophageal ulcer Peptic esophagitis Mallory-Weiss tear Esophageal varices Gastric ulcer Gastritis Duodenal ulcer Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia Hemobilia Henoch-Schönlein purpura
Painless melena	Duodenal ulcer Duodenal duplication Ileal duplication Meckel diverticulum Gastric heterotopia[a]	Duodenal ulcer Duodenal duplication Ileal duplication Meckel diverticulum Gastric heterotopia[a]	Duodenal ulcer Leiomyoma (sarcoma)
Melena with pain, obstruction, peritonitis, perforation	Necrotizing enterocolitis Intussusception[b] Volvulus	Duodenal ulcer Hemobilia[c] Intussusception[b] Volvulus Ileal ulcer (isolated)	Duodenal ulcer Hemobilia[c] Crohn disease (ileal ulcer)
Hematochezia with diarrhea, crampy abdominal pain	Infectious colitis Pseudomembranous colitis Eosinophilic colitis Hirschsprung enterocolitis	Infectious colitis Pseudomembranous colitis Granulomatous (Crohn) colitis Hemolytic-uremic syndrome Henoch-Schönlein purpura Lymphonodular hyperplasia	Infectious colitis Pseudomembranous colitis Granulomatous (Crohn) colitis Hemolytic-uremic syndrome Henoch-Schönlein purpura
Hematochezia without diarrhea or abdominal pain	Anal fissure Eosinophilic colitis Rectal gastric mucosa heterotopia Colonic hemangiomas	Anal fissure Solitary rectal ulcer Juvenile polyp Lymphonodular hyperplasia	Anal fissure Hemorrhoid Solitary rectal ulcer Colonic arteriovenous malformation

[a]Ectopic gastric tissue in jejunum or ileum without Meckel diverticulum.
[b]Classically, "currant jelly" stool.
[c]Often accompanied by vomiting and right upper quadrant pain.
Reproduced, with permission, from Treem WR: Gastrointestinal bleeding in children. Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am 1994;4(1):75-97.

» Treatment

In severe bleeding, the ABCs of resuscitation should be performed. Adequate IV access is critical in these cases. If a hemorrhagic diathesis is detected, vitamin K and additional blood products should be administered to correct any underlying coagulopathy. In severe bleeding, the need for volume replacement is monitored by measurement of central venous pressure. In less severe cases, vital signs, serial hematocrits, and gastric aspirates are sufficient.

In suspected upper GI bleeding, gastric lavage with saline should be performed, but there is no value of lavage in controlling bleeding. After stabilization, EGD may be considered to identify the bleeding site. Endoscopy is superior to barium contrast study for lesions such as esophageal varices, stress ulcers, and gastritis. A large retrospective study of endoscopy performed for upper GI bleeding in children found that a definitive source for bleeding was identified in 57%, with a suspected source in another 30%. Risk factors for a nondiagnostic endoscopy in this series were a history of bleeding of less than 1 month and a delay of greater than 48 hours between presentation and endoscopy. Acid suppression with intravenous H_2-antagonists or, preferably PPIs, may be helpful in suspected peptic causes of bleeding. Colonoscopy may identify the source of bright red rectal bleeding, but it should be performed emergently only if the bleeding is severe and if abdominal radiographs show no



▲**Figure 21–7.** Esophageal varices. Serpiginous esophageal varix extending to the esophageal lower esophageal sphincter.

signs of obstruction. Colonoscopy on an unprepped colon is often inadequate for making a diagnosis. Capsule endoscopy may help identify the site of bleeding if colonoscopy and upper endoscopy findings are negative. Push or balloon enteroscopy may be helpful to perform therapeutic interventions, obtain biopsies, or mark small bowel lesions (prior to laparotomy/laparoscopy) identified on capsule endoscopy. Use of balloon enteroscopy in conjunction with capsule endoscopy in children with occult GI bleeding has been found to have a diagnostic yield of 95%.

Persistent vascular bleeding (varices [Figure 21–7], vascular anomalies) may be relieved temporarily using intravenous octreotide (1–4 mcg/kg/h) and may be used for up to 48 hours with careful monitoring of glucose homeostasis. A single-center review of cases of massive variceal bleeding in children found a significant decrease in transfusion requirements with the use of octreotide. Bleeding from esophageal varices may be stopped by compression with a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube. Endoscopic sclerosis or banding of bleeding varices are both effective, with equivalent success rates (87%–89%) and complication rates (10%–19%) between methods.

If gastric decompression, acid suppressive therapy, and transfusion are ineffective in stopping ulcer bleeding, endoscopic therapy with argon plasma coagulation, local injection of epinephrine, electrocautery, or application of hemostatic clips may be employed. If bleeding remains refractory to therapy, emergency surgery may be necessary. In some cases, angiography and selective embolization have been used successfully in unidentified and refractory bleeding.

Davis JS, Ryan ML, Fields JM, Neville HL, Perez EA, Sola JE: Use of CT enterography for the diagnosis of lower gastrointestinal bleeding in pediatric patients. J Pediatr Surg 2013 Mar;48(3):681–684 [PMID: 23480934].

Kim SJ et al: Experiences with endoscopic interventions for variceal bleeding in children with portal hypertension: a single center study. Pediatr Gastroenterol Hepatol Nutr 2013 Dec;16(4):248–253 [PMID: 24511521].

Oliva S et al: Capsule endoscopy followed by single balloon enteroscopy in children with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: a combined approach. Dig Liver Dis 2015 Feb;47(2):125–30. [PMID: 25266487].

Pant C et al: Emergency department visits for gastrointestinal bleeding in children: results from the Nationwide Emergency Department Sample 2006–2011. Curr Med Res Opin 2014 Dec;3:1–17 [PMID: 25466210].

Sahin S et al: Stress induced gastrointestinal bleeding in a pediatric intensive care unit: which risk factors should necessitate prophilaxis? Minerva Pediatr 2014 Sep 29. [Epub ahead of print] [PMID: 25263241].

VOMITING

Vomiting is an extremely complex activity and is triggered by stimulation of chemoreceptors and mechanoreceptors in the wall of the GI tract, activated by contraction, distension, and physical damage. The vomiting center, paraventricular nuclei, in the brain controls the emetic response. These nuclei receive afferent input from many sources, abdominal splanchnic nerves, the vagus nerve, vestibulolabyrinthine receptors, the cerebral cortex, and chemoreceptor trigger zone (CTZ). Vagal afferents from the gut to brain are stimulated by ingested drugs and toxins, mechanical stretch, inflammation, and local neurotransmitters. Additionally, local feedback loops in the gut also appear capable of initiating vomiting. Once the vomiting response is triggered, a pattern of somatic muscle action occurs with abdominal, thoracic, and diaphragm muscles contracting against a closed glottis. The resulting increased intra-abdominal pressure reverses the negative pressure of the esophagus and forces gastric contents upward. The vomiting response also alters intestinal motility by generating a retroperistaltic contractile complex that moves intestinal contents toward the esophagus.

Vomiting is the presenting sign of many pediatric conditions. The most common cause of vomiting in childhood is probably acute viral gastroenteritis. However, obstruction and acute or chronic inflammation of the GI tract and associated structures are also major causes. CNS inflammation, pressure, or tumor may cause vomiting. Metabolic derangements associated with inborn errors of metabolism, sepsis, and drug intoxication can stimulate either the CTZ or the brain directly to promote vomiting. Regurgitation associated with GE reflux of infants should be distinguished from

vomiting. Occasionally, regurgitated fluid stimulates the pharyngeal afferents and provokes gagging or even a complete vomiting complex.

Control of vomiting with medication is rarely necessary in acute gastroenteritis, but it may relieve nausea and vomiting and decrease the need for intravenous fluids and/or hospitalization. Antihistamines and anticholinergics are appropriate for motion sickness because of their labyrinthine effects. 5-HT_3–receptor antagonists (ondansetron, granisetron) are useful for vomiting associated with surgery and chemotherapy. Benzodiazepines, corticosteroids, and substituted benzamides are also used in chemotherapy-induced vomiting. Butyrophenones (droperidol, haloperidol) are powerful drugs that block the D_2 receptor in the CTZ and are used for intractable vomiting in acute gastritis, chemotherapy, and after surgery. Phenothiazines are helpful in chemotherapy, cyclic vomiting, and acute GI infection but are not recommended for outpatient use because of extrapyramidal side effects.

DeCamp LR et al: Use of anti-emetic agents in acute gastroenteritis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2008 Sep;162(9):858–865 [PMID: 18762604].

Levine DA: Anti-emetics for acute gastroenteritis in children. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009 Jun;21(3);294–298 [PMID: 19381093].

1. Cyclic Vomiting Syndrome

» Clinical Findings

Cyclic vomiting syndrome (CVS) is defined as three or more recurrent episodes of stereotypical vomiting in children usually older than 1 year. The emesis is forceful and frequent, occurring up to six times per hour for up to 72 hours or more. Episode frequency ranges from two to three per month to less than one per year. Nausea, retching, and small-volume bilious emesis continue even after the stomach is emptied. Hematemesis secondary to forceful vomiting and a Mallory-Weiss tear may occur. Patients experience abdominal pain, anorexia, and, occasionally, diarrhea. Autonomic symptoms, such as pallor, sweating, temperature instability, and lethargy, are common and give the patient a very ill appearance. The episodes end suddenly, often after a period of sleep. In some children, dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, and shock may occur. Between episodes, the child is completely healthy.

The cause of CVS is unknown; however, a relationship to migraine headaches has long been recognized. Family history is positive for migraine in 50%–70% of cases and many patients develop migraine headaches as adults. Research suggests that abnormalities of neurotransmitters and hormones provoke CVS. About one-quarter of patients have typical migraine symptoms during episodes: premonitory sensation, headache, photophobia, and phonophobia. Identifiable triggers are similar to migraines and include infection, positive or negative emotional stress, diet (chocolate, cheese, monosodium glutamate), menses, sleep deprivation, or motion sickness.

» Differential Diagnosis

Conditions that mimic CVS include drug toxicity, increased intracranial pressure, seizures, brain tumor, Chiari malformation, recurrent sinusitis, choledochal cyst, gallstones, recurrent small bowel obstruction, IBD, familial pancreatitis, obstructive uropathy, recurrent urinary infection, diabetes, mitochondrial diseases, disorders of fatty and organic acid metabolism, adrenal insufficiency, and munchausen syndrome by proxy. Although tests for reflux are often positive in these patients, it is unlikely that reflux and CVS are related.

» Treatment

Avoidance of triggers prevents episodes in some patients. Sleep can also end an episode although some children awaken and resume vomiting. Diphenhydramine or lorazepam is used at the onset of spells in some children to reduce nausea and induce sleep. Early use of antimigraine medications (sumatriptan), antiemetics (ondansetron), or antihistamines can abort spells in some patients. Once a spell is well established, intravenous fluids may be required to end it. With careful supervision, some children with predictable spells can receive intravenous fluids at home. Several approaches usually are tried before an effective therapy is found. Preventing spells with prophylactic propranolol, amitriptyline, or antihistamines such as cyproheptadine is often effective in some patients with frequent or disabling spells. Some patients have been successfully treated with anticonvulsants.

Sudel B, Li BU: Treatment options for cyclic vomiting syndrome. Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol 2005;8:387 [PMID: 16162304].

ABDOMINAL PAIN

Approximately 2%–4% of all pediatric office visits occur because of unexplained, recurrent abdominal pain. In addition, up to 17% of adolescents have been reported to have recurrent abdominal pain. Based on the Rome III criteria, the descriptive term “recurrent abdominal pain” has been discarded for the more meaningful terms that fall into the categories of “abdominal pain-related functional GI disorders” for children, which encompasses four entities: functional dyspepsia (characterized by epigastric pain), irritable bowel syndrome (characterized by altered form and frequency of stools and improvement with defecation), abdominal migraines, and childhood functional abdominal pain.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Children with functional abdominal pain experience recurrent attacks of abdominal pain or discomfort at least once per week for at least 2 months. Functional abdominal pain used to be lumped into a broad category of abdominal pain without a source and without any red flag signs. With the Rome III criteria, the classification of the abdominal pain depends on the characteristics of the pain such as location of pain, association with bowel habits and associated symptoms. The pain is usually localized to the periumbilical area but may also be more generalized. The pain occurs primarily during the day but may prevent children from falling asleep at night. It may be associated with pallor, nausea, or vomiting, and also with dramatic reactions such as frantic crying, clutching the abdomen, and doubling over. Parents may become alarmed and take their children into the emergency departments, where the evaluation is negative for an acute abdomen. School attendance may suffer, and enjoyable family events may be disrupted.

Alarm symptoms that would suggest a more severe organic etiology are absent. These include dysphagia, persistent vomiting, GI blood loss, associated rashes, or joint complaints. In addition, these children do not have a history of unintentional weight loss or fevers.

Functional abdominal pain usually bears little relationship to bowel habits and physical activity. However, some patients have a symptom constellation suggestive of irritable bowel syndrome, including bloating, postprandial pain, lower abdominal discomfort, and erratic stool habits with a sensation of obstipation or incomplete evacuation of stool. A precipitating or stressful situation in the child's life at the time the pains began can sometimes be elicited. School phobia may be a precipitant. A history of functional GI complaints is often found in family members. A family history, however, of IBD, peptic ulcer disease, and CD is absent.

A thorough physical examination that includes a rectal examination is essential and usually normal. Complaints of abdominal tenderness elicited during palpation may be out of proportion to visible signs of distress.

B. Laboratory Findings

CBC, ESR, and stool test for occult blood are usually a sufficient evaluation. Extraintestinal sources such as kidney, spleen, and genitourinary tract may require assessment. In the adolescent female patient, ultrasound of the abdomen and pelvis may be helpful to detect gallbladder or ovarian pathology. If the pain is atypical, further testing suggested by symptoms and family history should be done. This may include additional imaging studies or endoscopic analysis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Abdominal pain secondary to disorders causing acute abdomen are listed in Table 21–7. Pinworms, mesenteric lymphadenitis, and chronic appendicitis are improbable causes of recurrent abdominal pain. H pylori infection does not cause recurrent abdominal pain. Lactose intolerance usually causes abdominal distention, gas, and diarrhea with milk ingestion. At times, however, abdominal discomfort may be the only symptom. The incidence of peptic gastritis, esophagitis, duodenitis, and ulcer disease is probably underappreciated. Abdominal migraine and cyclic vomiting are conditions with an episodic character often associated with headaches or vomiting. Rarely, abdominal pain can be part of a broader symptom complex characterized by orthostatic intolerance and dysautonomia. The GI manifestations of dysautonomia may also include slow transit constipation, chronic nausea and recurrent vomiting along with other features related to a dysfunctional autonomic nervous system.

Table 21–7. Differential diagnosis of acute abdomen.

Gastrointestinal causes	Hepatobiliary causes
Appendicitis	Cholecystitis
Bowel obstruction	Cholangitis
Perforated ulcer	Hepatic abscess
Ischemic colitis	Splenic rupture
Volvulus	Splenic infarction
Intussusception	Urologic/gynecologic causes
Pancreatitis	Acute cystitis
Incarcerated hernia	Nephrolithiasis
Toxic megacolon	Ruptured ectopic pregnancy
Abdominal vasculitis	Ovarian torsion
Intra-abdominal abscess	Testicular torsion
Other causes	Acute salpingitis
Diabetic ketoacidosis	Pelvic inflammatory disease
Lead poisoning	
Porphyria	
Abdominal sickle cell crisis	

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment consists of reassurance based on a thorough history and physical examination and a sympathetic, age-appropriate explanation of the nature of functional pain. It is important to acknowledge that the child is experiencing pain. The concept of "visceral hyperalgesia" or increased pain signaling from physiologic stimuli such as gas, acid secretion, or stool is one that parents can understand and helps them respond appropriately to the child's complaints. Another analogy might be to compare a child's abdominal pain to usual headaches that another person may experience, in that the workup can be normal even though there is pain. Reassurance without education is rarely helpful. Regular activity should be resumed, especially school attendance. Therapy for psychosocial stressors, including biofeedback therapy, may be necessary. In older patients, and in those with what appears to be visceral hyperalgesia, amitriptyline in low doses may occasionally be helpful. Antispasmodic

medications are rarely helpful and should be reserved for patients with more typical irritable bowel complaints. For IBS, targeted therapy based on symptoms may be helpful. For abdominal migraines, treatments for migraine headaches may also help.

Chiou E et al: Management of functional abdominal pain and irritable bowel syndrome in children and adolescents. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2010 Jun;4(3):293–304 [PMID: 20528117].

Drossman DA: The functional gastrointestinal disorders and the Rome III process. Gastroenterology 2006;130:1377–1390 [PMID: 16678553].

Grover M: Functional abdominal pain. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2010 Oct;12(5):391–398 [PMID: 20694840].

Rasquin A et al: Childhood functional gastrointestinal disorders: child/adolescent. Gastroenterology 2006;130:1527 [PMID: 16678566].

ACUTE ABDOMEN

An acute abdomen is a constellation of findings indicating an intra-abdominal process that may require surgery. A degree of urgency is implied when this diagnosis is suspected. The pain of an acute abdomen intensifies over time and is rarely relieved without definitive treatment. Pain is often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, and anorexia. Pain may be localized or generalized. The abdomen may be distended and tense, and bowel sounds reduced or absent. Patients appear ill and are reluctant to be examined or moved. The acute abdomen is usually a result of infection of the intra-abdominal or pelvic organs, but it also occurs with intestinal obstruction, intestinal perforation, inflammatory conditions, trauma, and some metabolic disorders. Some of the conditions causing acute abdomen are listed in Table 21–8. Reaching a timely and accurate diagnosis is critical and requires skill in physical diagnosis, recognition of the symptoms of a large number of conditions, and a judicious selection of laboratory and radiologic tests. (Acute appendicitis is discussed earlier in the section Disorders of the Small Intestine.)

MALABSORPTION SYNDROMES

Malabsorption of ingested food has many causes (see Table 21–8). Shortened length (usually via surgical resection) and mucosal damage (CD) both reduce surface area. Impaired motility interferes with normal propulsive movements and with mixing of food with pancreatic and biliary secretions and permits anaerobic bacterial overgrowth. Bacterial overgrowth may lead to increased carbohydrate fermentation and acidic diarrhea. A second mechanism is bacterial bile acid deconjugation leading to fat malabsorption as seen in intestinal pseudo-obstruction or postoperative blind loop syndrome. Impaired intestinal lymphatic (congenital lymphangiectasia) or venous drainage also causes malabsorption. Diseases reducing pancreatic exocrine function (cystic fibrosis, Shwachman syndrome) or the production and flow of biliary secretions cause nutrient malabsorption. Malabsorption of specific nutrients may also be genetically determined (disaccharidase deficiency, glucose-galactose malabsorption, and abetalipoproteinemia).

Table 21–8. Malabsorption syndromes.

Intraluminal abnormalities	Graft-vs-host disease
Acid hypersecretion (eg, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome)	Mucosal injury
Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency	Celiac disease
Cystic fibrosis	Allergic enteropathy
Shwachman syndrome	IBD
Malnutrition	Radiation enteritis
Enzyme deficiency	Enzyme deficiency
Enterokinase deficiency	Lactase deficiency
Trypsinogen deficiency	Sucrase-isomaltase deficiency
Co-lipase deficiency	Short bowel syndrome
Decreased intraluminal bile acids	Vascular abnormalities
Chronic parenchymal liver disease	Ischemic bowel
Biliary obstruction	Vasculitis: lupus, mixed connective tissue disorder
Bile acid loss (short gut, ileal disease)	Congestive heart failure
Bile acid deconjugation by bacterial overgrowth	Intestinal lymphangiectasia
Mucosal abnormalities	Metabolic genetic disease
Infection (eg, Giardia, Cryptosporidium)	Abetalipoproteinemia
	Congenital secretory diarrheas
	Lysinuric protein intolerance
	Cystinosis

» Clinical Findings

Diarrhea, vomiting, anorexia, abdominal pain, failure to thrive, and abdominal distention are common. With fat malabsorption, stools are typically bulky, foul, greasy, and pale; in contrast, osmotic diarrhea stools are loose, watery, and acidic. Stool microscopic examination for neutral fat (pancreatic insufficiency as in cystic fibrosis) and fatty acids (as in mucosal injury, liver disease) may be useful.

Quantifying fat malabsorption by timed stool collection compares amount of ingested to excreted fat. Stool loss of 10%–15% of ingested fat is normal in infancy, while loss of 5% of ingested fat is normal for 1- to 10-year-olds. Fat-soluble vitamin deficiency occurs with long-standing fat malabsorption and is manifested by prolonged PT (vitamin K) and low levels of serum carotene (vitamin A), vitamin E, and vitamin D. Loss of serum proteins across the intestinal mucosa is suggested by elevated fecal α_1-antitrypsin levels. Disaccharide or monosaccharide malabsorption manifests by acidic stool with pH less than 5.5 due to lactic acid and reducing substances. Specific enzyme deficiencies may be

evaluated by breath hydrogen test, or small intestinal biopsy showing normal histology and measurement of specific disaccharidase activity. Other screening tests suggesting a specific diagnosis include sweat chloride concentration (cystic fibrosis), intestinal mucosal biopsy (CD, lymphangiectasia, IBD), liver and gallbladder function tests, and fecal elastase. Some of the most common disorders associated with malabsorption in pediatric patients are detailed as follows.

1. Protein-Losing Enteropathy

Loss of plasma proteins into the GI tract occurs in association with intestinal inflammation, intestinal graft-versus-host disease, acute and chronic intestinal infections, venous and lymphatic obstruction or malformations, and intestinal malignancy. Chronic elevation of venous pressure in children with the Fontan procedure and elevated right-sided heart pressures may produce protein-losing enteropathy.

» Clinical Findings

Signs and symptoms are mainly caused by hypoproteinemia or fat malabsorption: edema, ascites, poor weight gain, anemia, and specific vitamin (fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, K) and mineral deficiencies. Serum albumin and globulins may be decreased. Fecal α_1-antitrypsin is elevated (> 3 mg/g dry weight stool; slightly higher in breast-fed infants). Disorders associated with protein-losing enteropathy are listed in Table 21–9. In the presence of intestinal bleeding, fecal α_1-antitrypsin measurements are falsely high.

Table 21–9. Disorders associated with protein-losing enteropathy.

Cardiac disease
Congestive heart failure
Constrictive pericarditis
Cardiomyopathy
Post-Fontan procedure with elevated right atrial pressure
Lymphatic disease
Primary congenital lymphangiectasia
Secondary lymphangiectasia
Malrotation
Malignancy: lymphoma, retroperitoneal tumor
Other: sarcoid, arsenic poisoning
Inflammation
Giant hypertrophic gastritis (Ménétrier disease), often secondary to cytomegalovirus infection or Helicobacter pylori
Infection: TB, Clostridium difficile, parasite (eg, Giardia), bacteria (eg, Salmonella)
Allergic enteropathy
Celiac disease
Radiation enteritis
Graft-vs-host disease
Inflammatory bowel disease
Hirschsprung disease
Necrotizing enterocolitis
Vascular disorders
Systemic lupus erythematosus and mixed connective tissue disorder

» Differential Diagnosis

Hypoalbuminemia may be due to increased catabolism, poor protein intake, impaired hepatic protein synthesis, or congenital malformations of lymphatics outside the GI tract, and protein losses in the urine from nephritis and nephrotic syndrome.

» Treatment

Albumin infusion, diuretics, and a high-protein, low-fat diet may control symptoms. Nutritional deficiencies should be addressed, and additional treatment is based on identifying the underlying cause.

2. Celiac Disease (Gluten Enteropathy)

Celiac disease (CD) is an immune-mediated enteropathy triggered by gluten, a protein in wheat, rye, and barley. CD presents any time after gluten is introduced in the diet, with symptoms of abdominal pain, diarrhea, vomiting, distention, and sometimes constipation. Other manifestations include oral ulcers, a pruritic rash (dermatitis herpetiformis), growth and pubertal delay, iron deficiency anemia, decreased bone mineralization, and arthritis. Disease frequency in Western populations approaches 1 in 100. Risk factors include type 1 diabetes (4%–10%), Down syndrome (5%–12%), Turner syndrome (4%–8%), IgA deficiency (2%–8%), autoimmune thyroiditis (8%), and family history of CD (5%–10%). Almost all CD patients express HLA-DQ2 or DQ8 tissue antigens.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Gastrointestinal manifestations—In the classic form of CD, GI symptoms begin soon after gluten-containing foods are introduced in the diet, usually between 6 and 24 months of age. Chronic diarrhea, abdominal distention, irritability, anorexia, vomiting, and poor weight gain are typical. Celiac crisis, with dehydration, hypotension, hypokalemia, and explosive diarrhea, is rare. Older children may have chronic abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea or constipation, and bloating that mimic lactose intolerance, functional abdominal pain, or irritable bowel syndrome.

2. Nongastrointestinal manifestations—Adolescents may present with delayed puberty or short stature, and in females, delayed menarche. CD should be considered in

children with unexplained iron deficiency anemia, decreased bone mineral density, elevated liver function enzymes, arthritis, or epilepsy with cerebral calcifications. The need for early screening and treatment in asymptomatic individuals is unclear.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Serologic and genetic testing—Screening tests exist with excellent sensitivity and specificity. In IgA-sufficient patients these are the IgA antitissue transglutaminase, IgA antiendomysial and IgA/IgG antideamidated gliadin peptide antibodies. In IgA deficiency, IgG-based versions of these assays are available. Testing for HLA-DQ2 and DQ8 has a high negative predictive value; family members who test negative are unlikely to ever develop CD.

2. Stools—Stools may have partially digested fat and may be acidic.

3. Hypoalbuminemia—Hypoalbuminemia can be severe enough to lead to edema.

4. Anemia—Anemia with low MCV and evidence of iron deficiency is common.

C. Biopsy Findings

Characteristic duodenal biopsy findings on light microscopy are villous atrophy with increased numbers of intraepithelial lymphocytes. Findings may be patchy.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes food allergy, Crohn disease, postinfectious diarrhea, immunodeficiencies, graft-versus-host disease, and hypergastrinemia (Zollinger-Ellison syndrome).

» Treatment

A. Diet

Treatment is dietary gluten restriction for life. All sources of wheat, rye, and barley are eliminated. Most, but not all, patients tolerate oats. The intestinal mucosa improves by 6–12 months while lactose intolerance resolves often within a few weeks. Supplemental calories, vitamins, and minerals are indicated only in the acute phase. CD-related antibody titers decrease on a gluten-free diet.

B. Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids are indicated for celiac crisis with profound anorexia, edema, abdominal distention, and hypokalemia.

» Prognosis

Adherence to gluten-free diet is associated with normal life. Individuals with poor adherence to gluten-free diet may be at increased risk for fractures, iron deficiency anemia, infertility, and enteropathy-associated T-cell lymphoma.

American Celiac Disease Alliance: www.americanceliac.org.
Husby S et al: European Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition guidelines for the diagnosis of celiac disease. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2012;54:136–160 [PMID: 22197856].

3. Disaccharidase Deficiency

Starches and the disaccharides sucrose and lactose are the most important dietary carbohydrates. Dietary disaccharides and the oligosaccharide products of pancreatic amylase action on starch require hydrolysis by intestinal brush border disaccharidases for absorption. Disaccharidase levels are highest in the jejunum and proximal ileum. Characteristics of primary disaccharidase deficiency include permanent disaccharide intolerance, absence of intestinal injury, and frequent positive family history. Transient secondary disaccharidase deficiency may be caused by mucosal damage, such as from acute viral enteritis.

A. Lactase Deficiency

Congenital lactase deficiency is extremely rare. All human ethnic groups are lactase-sufficient at birth. Genetic or familial lactase deficiency appears after 5 years of age. Genetic lactase deficiency develops in virtually all Asians, Alaskan natives, and Native Americans, 80% of Africans, 70% of African Americans, and 30%–60% of Caucasian Americans. Transient or secondary lactase deficiency caused by mucosal injury such as an acute viral gastroenteritis is common and resolves within a few weeks.

Lactose ingestion in lactase deficient individuals causes variable degrees of diarrhea, abdominal distention, flatus, and abdominal pain. Stools are liquid or frothy and acidic, and may test positive for reducing substances.

Diagnostic tests include genetic testing and lactose breath test. Symptoms resolve with dietary avoidance of lactose or with lactase supplementation.

B. Sucrase-Isomaltase Deficiency

This condition is inherited in an autosomal recessive fashion and is most common in Greenland, Iceland, and among Alaskan natives. The condition is rare in other groups. Abdominal distention, failure to thrive, and watery, acidic diarrhea are the presenting symptoms. Because sucrose is not a reducing sugar, stool may test negative for reducing substances unless the sucrose is hydrolyzed by colon bacteria. Diagnosis is made by oral sucrose breath hydrogen testing (1 g/kg), or by testing a snap frozen intestinal biopsy for enzyme activity. Partial enzyme deficiencies exist. Treatment is avoidance of sucrose and starches rich in amylopectin, or the use of sacrosidase enzyme supplement.

CSID parent support group: www.csidinfo.com.
QOL Medical, LLC: www.sucraid.net.
Treem WR: Clinical aspects and treatment of congenital sucrose-isomaltase deficiency. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2012;55(Suppl 2):S7–S13 [PMID: 23103658].

4. Glucose-Galactose Malabsorption

Glucose-galactose malabsorption is a rare disorder in which the sodium-glucose transport protein is defective. Transport of glucose in the intestinal epithelium and renal tubule is impaired. Diarrhea begins with the first feedings, accompanied by reducing sugar in the stool and acidosis. Small bowel histology is normal. Glycosuria and aminoaciduria may occur. The glucose tolerance test is abnormal. Fructose is well tolerated. Diarrhea subsides promptly on withdrawal of glucose and galactose from the diet. The acquired, transient form of glucose-galactose malabsorption occurs mainly in infants younger than 6 months, usually following acute viral or bacterial enteritis, and may require PN until healing.

In the congenital disease, exclusion of glucose and galactose from the diet is mandatory. A carbohydrate-free base formula is used with added fructose. Prognosis is good if diagnosed early. Tolerance for glucose and galactose improves with age.

5. Dietary Fructose Intolerance

Fructose malabsorption occurs when fructose is in excess of glucose, often with consumption of high-fructose corn syrup. Malabsorbed fructose leads to symptoms such as abdominal pain, bloating, flatulence, and diarrhea. Diagnosis is made with a fructose breath hydrogen test.

Kyaw MH, Mayberry JF: Fructose malabsorption: true condition or a variance from normality. J Clin Gastroenterol 2011 Jan;45(1):16–21 [PMID: 20818234].

6. Intestinal Lymphangiectasia

This form of protein-losing enteropathy results from a congenital ectasia of the intestinal lymphatics and is often associated with abnormalities of the lymphatics in the extremities. Obstruction of lymphatic drainage leads to leakage of lymph into the bowel lumen.

» Clinical Findings

Peripheral edema, diarrhea, abdominal distention, chylous effusions, and repeated infections are common. Laboratory findings include low calcium, magnesium, albumin, immunoglobulin levels, lymphocytopenia, and anemia. Fecal α_1-antitrypsin is elevated. Imaging may show bowel wall edema, and biopsy may reveal dilated lacteals in the villi and lamina propria. If only the lymphatics of the deeper layers of bowel or intestinal mesenteries are involved, laparotomy may be necessary to establish the diagnosis. Capsule endoscopy shows diagnostic brightness secondary to the fat-filled lacteals.

» Differential Diagnosis

Other causes of protein-losing enteropathy must be considered, although an associated lymphedematous extremity strongly favors this diagnosis.

» Treatment & Prognosis

A high-protein diet (6–7 g/kg/d may be needed) enriched with medium-chain triglycerides as a fat source usually allows for adequate nutrition and growth. The serum albumin may not normalize. Vitamin and calcium supplements should be given. Parenteral nutritional supplementation may be needed temporarily. Surgery may be curative if the lesion is localized to a small area of the bowel or in cases of constrictive pericarditis or obstructing tumors. IV albumin and immune globulin may be needed but usually not chronically. The prognosis is not favorable, although remission may occur with age. Malignant degeneration of the abnormal lymphatics may occur, and intestinal B-cell lymphoma may develop.

7. Cow's Milk Protein Intolerance

Milk protein intolerance refers to nonallergic food sensitivity and is more common in males than females and in young infants with a family history of atopy. The estimated prevalence is 0.5%–1.0%. Symptoms may occur while an infant is still exclusively breast-fed. The most common form is a healthy infant with flecks of blood in the stool or with loose mucoid stools with streaks of blood. Exposure to cow's milk protein is from formula or breast milk. A family history of atopy is common. Skin testing is not reliable and is not indicated. Treatment is eliminating the source of the protein; maternal avoidance of milk protein will usually suffice if breast-fed. If formula-fed, substituting a protein hydrolysate formula for cow's milk–based formula is indicated. A more severe form of FPIES may require steroids. Allergic colitis in young infants is self-limited, usually disappearing by 8–12 months of age. Since no long-term consequences of this problem have been identified, when symptoms are mild and the infant is thriving, no treatment may be needed. Histology, not required for diagnosis, shows mild lymphonodular hyperplasia, mucosal edema, and eosinophilia on rectal biopsy.

In older children, milk protein sensitivity may induce eosinophilic gastroenteritis with protein-losing enteropathy, iron deficiency, hypoalbuminemia, and hypogammaglobulinemia. A celiac-like syndrome with villous atrophy, malabsorption, hypoalbuminemia, occult blood in the stool, and anemia can occur.

De Greef E et al: Diagnosis and management of cow's milk protein allergy in infants. World J Pediatr 2012 Feb;8(1):19–24 [PMID: 22282379].

8. Pancreatic Insufficiency

The most common cause of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency in childhood is cystic fibrosis. Decreased secretion of pancreatic digestive enzymes is caused by obstruction of the exocrine ducts by thick secretions, which destroys pancreatic acinar cells. Other conditions associated with exocrine pancreatic insufficiency are discussed in Chapter 22.

9. Other Genetic Disorders Causing Malabsorption

A. Abetalipoproteinemia

Abetalipoproteinemia is a rare autosomal recessive condition in which the secretion of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins from the small intestine (chylomicrons) and liver (very low-density lipoproteins) is abnormal. Profound steatosis of intestinal enterocytes (and hepatocytes) and severe fat malabsorption occur. Deficiencies of fat-soluble vitamins develop with neurologic complications of vitamin E deficiency and atypical retinitis pigmentosa. Serum cholesterol level is very low, and red cell membrane lipids are abnormal, causing acanthosis of red blood cells, which may be the key to diagnosis.

B. Acrodermatitis Enteropathica

Acrodermatitis enteropathica is an autosomal recessive condition in which the intestine has a selective inability to absorb zinc. The condition usually becomes obvious at the time of weaning from breast-feeding and is characterized by rash on the extremities, rashes around the body orifices, eczema, profound failure to thrive, steatorrhea, diarrhea, and immune deficiency. Zinc supplementation by mouth results in rapid improvement.

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE

» General Considerations

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), a chronic relapsing inflammatory disease, is most commonly differentiated into Crohn disease (CrD) and UC. The etiology is multifactorial, involving a complex interaction of environmental and genetic factors leading to maladaptive immune responses to flora in the GI tract. With 5%–30% of patients identifying a family member with IBD, and a 10–20 relative risk of a sibling developing IBD, a genetic association is evident.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most commonly, inflammation causes abdominal pain, diarrhea, bloody stools, fever, anorexia, fatigue, and weight loss. CrD may also present as a stricturing process with abdominal pain and intestinal obstruction, or as a penetrating/fistulizing form with abscess, perianal disease, or symptoms similar to acute appendicitis. UC usually presents with abdominal pain and bloody diarrhea.

CrD can affect any part of the GI tract from the lips to anus. In pediatrics, CrD most often affects the terminal ileum and colon. UC is limited to the colon, and in children it usually involves the entire colon (pancolitis). The younger the age at onset, the more severe the course is likely to be.

Extraintestinal manifestations are common in both forms of IBD and may precede the intestinal complaints. These include uveitis, recurrent oral aphthous ulcers, arthritis, growth and pubertal delay, liver involvement (typically primary sclerosing cholangitis), rash (erythema nodosa and pyoderma gangrenosum), and iron deficiency anemia.

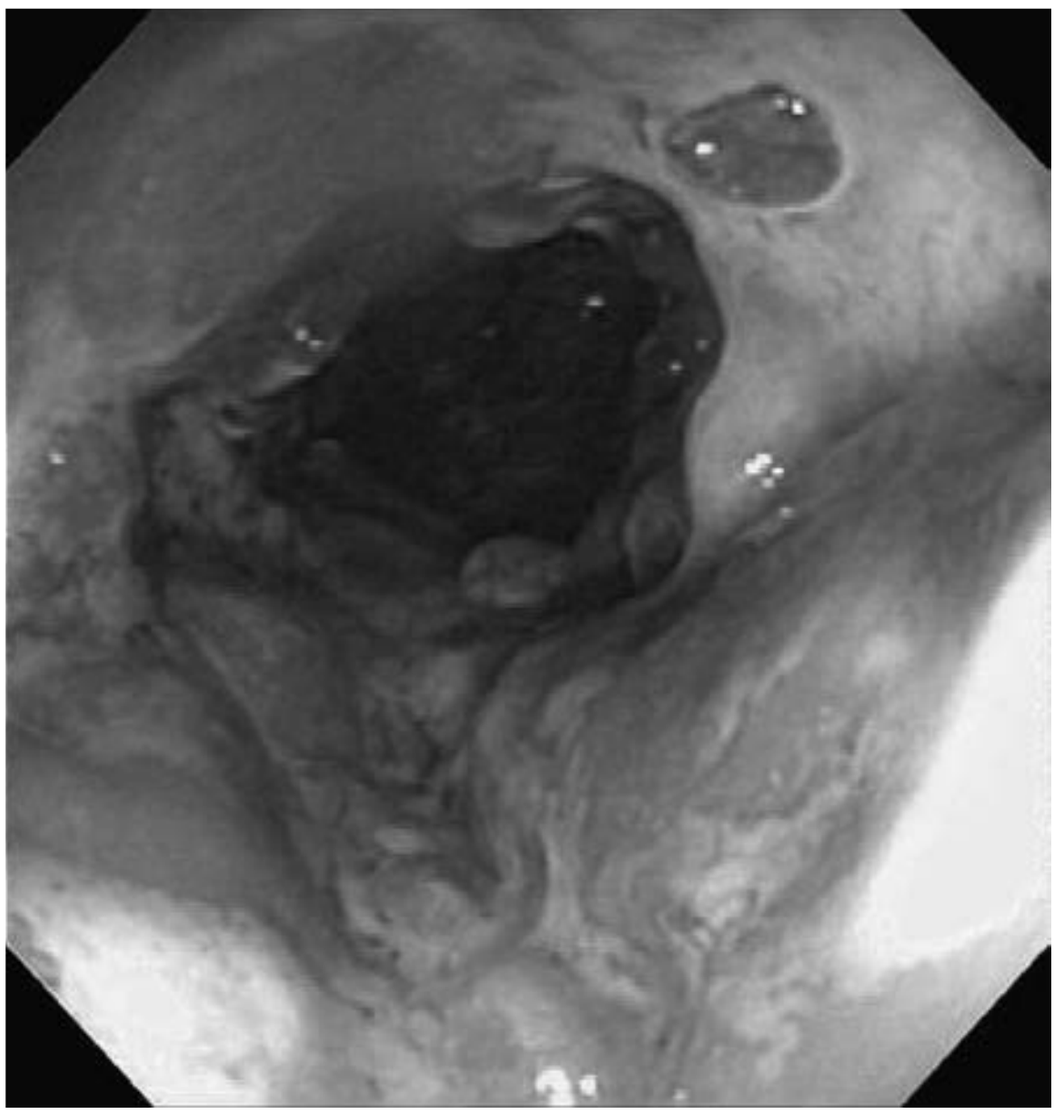
B. Diagnostic Testing

Diagnosis is based on typical presentation, course, radiographic, endoscopic, and histologic findings, and exclusion of other disorders. No single test is diagnostic. Patients with IBD often have low hemoglobin, iron, and serum albumin levels, and elevated ESR and CRP and fecal calprotectin. IBD-related serum antibodies are frequently present; antibodies to Saccharomyces cerevisiae (ASCA) in 60% of CrD, and perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (pANCAs) in 70% of UC. These, and other IBD-related antibodies, may be helpful in differentiating CrD from UC, but they are neither sensitive nor specific enough to be diagnostic. Abdominal imaging with CT, magnetic resonance enterography, US, and barium upper GI radiographs with small bowel follow-through may reveal small bowel disease and exclude other etiologies. Findings include terminal ileal thickening, enteric fistulas, and mucosal and mural edema.

Upper endoscopy and ileocolonoscopy are the most useful diagnostic modalities, revealing severity and extent of upper intestinal, ileal, and colonic involvement. MR enterography and capsule endoscopy image the entire small bowel. Granulomas are found in 25%–50% of CrD cases. Deep linear ulcers, white exudate (Figure 21–8), aphthous lesions (Figure 21–9), patchy involvement, and perianal disease suggest CrD. Superficial and continuous involvement of the colon sparing the upper GI tract are most consistent with UC. Both forms of IBD may have mild gastritis.

» Differential Diagnosis

When extraintestinal symptoms predominate, CrD can be mistaken for rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus or other vasculitis, CD, or hypopituitarism. The acute onset of ileocolitis may be mistaken for intestinal obstruction, appendicitis, lymphoma, infectious diarrhea. Malabsorption symptoms suggest CD, peptic ulcer, Giardia, food protein allergy, anorexia nervosa, or growth failure



▲**Figure 21–8.** Ulcerative colitis. White exudate is present overlying an abnormal colonic mucosa that has lost its typical vascular pattern.

▲**Figure 21–9.** Crohn colitis. Discrete aphthous lesions are scattered across a thickened mucosa with some areas with normal vascular pattern.

from endocrine causes. Perianal disease may suggest child abuse. Crampy diarrhea and blood in the stool can also occur with infection such as Shigella, Salmonella, Yersinia, Campylobacter, E histolytica, enteroinvasive E coli (E coli O157), Aeromonas hydrophila, C difficile, and, if immunocompromised, CMV. Mild IBD mimics irritable bowel syndrome, or lactose intolerance. Consider Behçet disease if there are deep intestinal ulcers, and it is characterized by oral aphthous ulcerations along with at least two of the following: genital ulcers, synovitis, posterior uveitis, meningoencephalitis, and pustular vasculitis. Chronic granulomatous disease and sarcoidosis also cause granulomas.

» Complications

A. Crohn Disease

Nutritional complications include failure to thrive, short stature, decreased bone mineralization, and specific nutrient deficiencies, including iron, calcium, zinc, vitamin B_{12}, and vitamin D. Prolonged corticosteroid therapy may impact growth and bone mineral density. Most patients achieve reasonable final adult height. Intestinal obstruction, fistulae, abdominal abscess, perianal disease, pyoderma gangrenosum, arthritis, and amyloidosis occur. Crohn colitis increases risk for colon adenocarcinoma.

B. Ulcerative Colitis

Even with the typical features and course of UC, up to 3%–5% of patients will develop clear CrD. Arthritis, uveitis, pyoderma gangrenosum, and malnutrition all occur. Growth failure and delayed puberty are less common than in CrD while liver disease (chronic active hepatitis, sclerosing cholangitis) is more common. Adenocarcinoma of the colon occurs with an incidence of 1%–2% per year after the first 7–8 years of disease in patients with pancolitis and is significantly higher in patients with both UC and sclerosing cholangitis.

» Treatment

A. Medical Treatment

Therapy for pediatric IBD involves induction of remission, maintenance of remission, and addressing nutritional deficiencies to promote normal growth and development. Treatment includes anti-inflammatory, immunomodulatory, antidiarrheal, antibiotic, and biological options. No medical therapy is uniformly effective in all patients. In severe CrD, growth hormone may be needed to attain full height potential.

1. Diet—Ensuring adequate nutrition for normal growth as well as for puberty can be challenging. In addition to total calories, micronutrient, calcium, and vitamin deficiencies should be replenished. Restrictive or bland diets

are counterproductive because they usually result in poor intake. A high-protein, high-carbohydrate diet with normal amounts of fat is recommended. A diet with decreased fiber may reduce symptoms during active colitis or partial intestinal obstruction; however, once the colitis is controlled, increased fiber may benefit mucosal health via bacterial production of fatty acids. Low-lactose diet or lactase replacement may be needed temporarily for small bowel CrD. Ileal disease may require antibiotics to treat bacterial overgrowth and extra fat-soluble vitamins due to increased losses. Supplemental calories in the form of liquid diets or enteral (nasogastric [NG] tube supplements) are well tolerated and promote catch-up growth in severe CrD. Bowel rest with liquid or elemental diet or PN is a therapy for CrD, and it promotes linear growth and sexual development. Diet therapies are less effective in UC.

2. Aminosalicylates (ASA)—Multiple preparations of 5-ASA derivatives are available and used to induce and maintain remission in mild CrD and UC. Common preparations including 5-ASA products such as sulfasalazine (50 mg/kg/d), or balsalazide (0.75–2.5 g PO tid) or mesalamine products, are available in tablets, granules, and delayed release formulations targeting specific locations in the GI tract (adult dose range 2.4–4.8 g/d). Side effects include skin rash; nausea; headache and abdominal pain; hair loss; diarrhea; and rarely nephritis, pericarditis, serum sickness, hemolytic anemia, aplastic anemia, and pancreatitis. Sulfasalazine, in which sulfa delivers the 5-ASA, may cause sulfa-related side effects including photosensitivity and rash.

3. Corticosteroids—Patients with moderate to severe CrD and UC generally respond quickly to corticosteroids. Methylprednisolone (1 mg/kg/d) may be given intravenously when disease is severe. For moderate disease, prednisone (1 mg/kg/d, orally in one to two divided doses) is given until symptomatic response, followed by gradual tapering over 4–8 weeks. A flare is common during the taper, requiring reinduction and a slower taper course. Steroid dependence is an indication for an immunomodulator. Ileocecal CrD is effectively treated with budesonide (9 mg QAM), with less side effects than systemic steroids, due to "single-pass" clearance by the liver. Corticosteroid enemas and foams are useful topical agents for distal proctitis or left-sided colitis. While on systemic corticosteroids, consideration should be given to calcium and vitamin D supplementation as well as acid suppression to prevent gastritis.

4. Immunomodulators: azathioprine (AZA), 6-mercaptopurine (6MP), and methotrexate (MTX)—If IBD is moderate to severe, or the patient is steroid-dependent, immunomodulators are effective in maintaining remission and reducing corticosteroid use. AZA (2–3 mg/kg/d PO) or 6MP (1–2 mg/kg/d PO) provides effective maintenance therapy for moderate to severe CrD. The optimal dose of AZA or 6MP depends on the enzyme thiopurine methylene transferase (TPMT), which should be assessed before starting therapy. For individuals deficient in TPMT, MTX should be used; for intermediate enzyme activity, dose is reduced by 50%. In cases where adherence may be an issue, or where dose adjustments may be necessary, AZA or 6MP metabolites may be measured by specialized testing. Maximum therapeutic efficacy may not be seen for 2–3 months after beginning treatment. Side effects include pancreatitis, hepatotoxicity, and bone marrow suppression.

MTX has a more rapid onset of action, usually 2–3 weeks, and is given in weekly doses, orally or intramuscularly. Most common side effect is nausea, while serious adverse events include bone marrow, liver, lung, and kidney toxicities. MTX is well known to cause fetal death and deformities.

5. Antibiotics—Metronidazole (15–30 mg/kg/d in three divided doses) and ciprofloxacin treat perianal CrD and bacterial overgrowth. Peripheral neuropathy may occur with prolonged use of metronidazole.

6. Biologicals—Antibody against tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) is used for moderate to severe CrD and UC, and for fistulizing disease. The forms used are infliximab via IV, adalimumab and certolizumab via intramuscular injection. Recurrence of disease often occurs within 12 months of stopping therapy. Use of biologics is associated with risk for infusion reactions, injection site reactions, and increased risk for opportunistic infections and for malignancy. Rarely, hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma is associated with use of biological with AZA/6MP.

7. Other agents—Cyclosporine or tacrolimus may be used as a "bridge" to more definitive therapy (such as colectomy for UC). Probiotics and prebiotics are frequently used but with very limited data on efficacy.

8. Surveillance—After 7–8 years of colitis, cancer screening with routine colonoscopy and multiple biopsies is recommended. Persistent metaplasia, aneuploidy, or dysplasia indicates need for colectomy.

B. Surgical Treatment

1. Crohn disease—Ileocecal resection is the most common surgery but is not curative and recurrence is expected. Indications for surgery in CrD include stricture, obstruction, uncontrollable bleeding, perforation, abscess, fistula, and failure of medical management. Up to 50% of patients with CrD eventually require a surgical procedure.

2. Ulcerative colitis—Total colectomy is curative and is recommended for patients with steroid dependence or steroid resistance, uncontrolled hemorrhage, toxic megacolon, high-grade dysplasia, or malignant tumors; elective colectomy may be chosen for prevention of colorectal cancer after 7–8 years of disease. Colectomy requires a temporary

ileostomy. A J-pouch provides better continence, but pouchitis develops in up to 25% of patients, manifested by diarrhea and cramping, and is treated with metronidazole or ciprofloxacin. Liver disease associated with IBD is not improved by colectomy.

» Quality Improvement

The ImproveCareNow network develops collaborative, data-driven improvements in the health of children with IBD. Remission rates have increased to greater than 75%.

Crandall WV, Boyle BM, Colletti RB, Margolis PA, Kappelman MD: Development of process and outcome measures for improvement: lessons learned in a quality improvement collaborative for pediatric inflammatory bowel disease. Inflamm Bowel Dis 2011;17:2184–2191 [PMID: 21456033].

Web Resources

http://www.ccfa.org.
http://health.nih.gov/topic/CrohnsDisease/DigestiveSystem.
http://health.nih.gov/topic/UlcerativeColitis.
http://www.improvecarenow.org.
http://www.naspghan.org/wmspage.cfm?parm1=354.
http://www.ucandcrohns.org/.

22 Liver & Pancreas

Ronald J. Sokol, MD, FAASLD
Michael R. Narkewicz, MD
Shikha S. Sundaram, MD, MSCI
Cara L. Mack, MD

LIVER DISORDERS

NEONATAL CHOLESTATIC JAUNDICE

Key clinical features of disorders causing prolonged neonatal cholestasis are (1) jaundice with elevated serum conjugated (or direct) bilirubin fraction (> 2 mg/dL or > 20% of total bilirubin), (2) variably acholic stools, (3) dark urine, and (4) hepatomegaly.

Neonatal cholestasis (conditions with decreased bile flow) is caused by both intrahepatic and extrahepatic diseases. Specific clinical clues (Table 22–1) distinguish these two major categories of jaundice in 85% of cases. Patients with intrahepatic cholestasis frequently appear ill, whereas infants with extrahepatic cholestasis typically do not, have stools that are usually completely acholic, and have an enlarged, firm liver. Histologic examination of percutaneous liver biopsy specimens increases the accuracy of differentiation to 90%–95% (Table 22–2).

INTRAHEPATIC CHOLESTASIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Elevated total and conjugated bilirubin.
- Hepatomegaly and dark urine.
- Patency of extrahepatic biliary tree.

General Considerations

Intrahepatic cholestasis is characterized by impaired hepatocyte secretion of bile and patency of the extrahepatic biliary system. A specific cause can be identified in about 60% of cases. Patency of the extrahepatic biliary tract is suggested by pigmented stools and lack of bile duct proliferation and portal tract bile plugs on liver biopsy. It can be confirmed least invasively by hepatobiliary scintigraphy using technetium-99m (^{99m}Tc)-dimethyliminodiacetic acid (diethyl-IDA [DIDA]). Radioactivity in the bowel within 4–24 hours is evidence of bile duct patency, as is finding bilirubin in duodenal aspirates. However, these tests are rarely needed in the clinical setting. Patency can also be determined, when clinically indicated, by cholangiography carried out either intraoperatively, percutaneously by transhepatic cholecystography, or by endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) using a pediatric-size side-viewing endoscope. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography in infants is of limited use and highly dependent on the operator and equipment.

1. Perinatal or Neonatal Hepatitis Resulting From Infection

This diagnosis is considered in infants with jaundice, hepatomegaly, vomiting, lethargy, fever, and petechiae. It is important to identify perinatally acquired viral, bacterial, or protozoal infections (Table 22–3) as they may be treatable. Infection may occur transplacentally, by ascent through the cervix into amniotic fluid, from swallowed contaminated fluids (maternal blood, urine, vaginal secretions) during delivery, from blood transfusions administered in the early neonatal period, or from breast milk or environmental exposure. Infectious agents include herpes simplex virus, varicella virus, enteroviruses (coxsackievirus and echovirus), cytomegalovirus (CMV), rubella virus, adenovirus, parvovirus, human herpesvirus type 6 (HHV-6), hepatitis B virus (HBV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), Treponema pallidum, and Toxoplasma gondii. Although hepatitis C may be transmitted vertically, it rarely causes neonatal cholestasis. The degree of liver cell injury caused by these agents is

Table 22–1. Characteristic clinical features of intrahepatic and extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis.

Intrahepatic	Extrahepatic
Preterm infant, small for gestational age, appears ill	Full-term infant, seems well
Hepatosplenomegaly, other organ or system involvement	Hepatomegaly (firm to hard)
Stools with some pigment	Acholic stools
Associated cause identified (infections, metabolic, familial, etc)	Polysplenia or asplenia syndromes, midline liver

variable, ranging from massive hepatic necrosis (herpes simplex, enteroviruses) to focal necrosis and mild inflammation (CMV, HBV). Serum bilirubin, alanine aminotransferase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alkaline phosphatase, and bile acids are typically elevated. The infant is jaundiced, may have petechiae or rash, and generally appears ill.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical symptoms typically present in the first 2 weeks of life, but may appear as late as age 2–3 months. Poor oral intake, poor sucking reflex, lethargy, hypotonia, and vomiting are frequent. Stools may be normal to pale in color, but are seldom acholic. Dark urine stains the diaper. Firm hepatomegaly is present and splenomegaly is variably present. Macular, papular, vesicular, or petechial rashes may occur. Unusual presentations include neonatal liver failure, hypoproteinemia, anasarca (nonhemolytic hydrops), and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn.

Table 22–2. Characteristic histologic features of intrahepatic and extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis.

	Intrahepatic	Extrahepatic
Giant cells	+++	+
Lobules	Disarray	Normal
Portal reaction	Inflammation, minimal fibrosis	Fibrosis, lymphocytic infiltrate
Neoductular proliferation	Rare	Marked
Other	Steatosis, extramedullary hematopoiesis	Portal bile duct plugging, bile lakes

B. Diagnostic Studies

Neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and mild hemolysis are common. Mixed hyperbilirubinemia, elevated aminotransferases with near-normal alkaline phosphatase, prolongation of clotting studies, mild acidosis, and elevated cord serum IgM suggest congenital infection. Nasopharyngeal washings, urine, stool, serum, and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) should be cultured for virus and tested for pathogen-specific nucleic acid. Specific IgM antibody may be useful, as are long-bone radiographs to determine the presence of "celery stalking" in the metaphyseal regions of the humeri, femurs, and tibias. When indicated, computed tomography (CT) scans can identify intracranial calcifications (especially with CMV and toxoplasmosis). Hepatobiliary scintigraphy shows decreased hepatic clearance of the circulating isotope with intact excretion into the gut. Gall bladder is present on ultrasonography. Careful ophthalmologic examination may be useful for diagnosis of herpes simplex virus, CMV, toxoplasmosis, and rubella.

A percutaneous liver biopsy may be useful in distinguishing infectious cholestasis, but may not identify a specific infectious agent (see Table 22–2). Exceptions are the typical inclusions of CMV in hepatocytes or bile duct epithelial cells, the presence of intranuclear acidophilic inclusions of herpes simplex or varicella-zoster virus, the presence of adenovirus basophilic intranuclear inclusions, or positive immunohistochemical stains for several viruses. Variable degrees of lobular disarray characterized by focal necrosis, multinucleated giant-cell transformation, and ballooned pale hepatocytes with loss of cordlike arrangement of liver cells are usual. Intrahepatocytic and canalicular cholestasis may be prominent. Portal changes are not striking, but modest neoductular proliferation and mild fibrosis may occur. Viral cultures, immunohistochemical stains, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing of biopsy material may be helpful.

» Differential Diagnosis

Great care must be taken to distinguish infectious causes of intrahepatic cholestasis from genetic or metabolic disorders because the clinical presentations are similar and may overlap. Galactosemia, hereditary fructose intolerance, and tyrosinemia must be investigated promptly, because specific therapy is available. These infants may also have concomitant bacteremia. α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, cystic fibrosis, bile acid synthesis defects, progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis, mitochondrial respiratory chain disorders, and neonatal iron storage disease must also be considered. Specific physical features may suggest Alagille syndrome, arthrogryposis/renal dysfunction/cholestasis (ARC) syndrome or Zellweger syndrome. Idiopathic neonatal hepatitis can be indistinguishable from infectious causes.

Table 22–3. Infectious causes of neonatal hepatitis.

Infectious Agent	Diagnostic Tests	Specimens	Treatment
Cytomegalovirus	Culture and PCR, liver histology, IgM/[a]IgG	Urine, blood, liver	Ganciclovir (Foscarnet)[b]
Herpes simplex	PCR and culture, liver histology, Ag (skin)	Liver, blood, eye, throat, rectal, CSF, skin	Acyclovir
Rubella	Culture, IgM/[a]IgG	Liver, blood, urine	Supportive
Varicella	Culture, PCR, Ag (skin)	Skin, blood, CSF, liver	Acyclovir (Foscarnet)[b]
Parvovirus	Serum IgM/[a]IgG, PCR	Blood	Supportive, IVIG
Enteroviruses	Culture and PCR	Blood, urine, CSF, throat, rectal, liver	IVIG
Adenovirus	Culture and PCR	Nasal/throat, rectal, blood, liver, urine	No established therapy, Cidofovir or IVIG may have value
Hepatitis B virus (HBV)	HBsAg, HBcAg IgM, HBV DNA	Serum	Supportive for acute infection
Hepatitis C virus (HCV)	HCV PCR, HCV IgG	Serum	Supportive for acute infection
Treponema pallidum	Serology; darkfield examination (skin)	Serum, CSF	Penicillin
Toxoplasma gondii	IgM/[a]IgG, PCR, culture	Serum, CSF, liver	Pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine with folinic acid for 6 mo
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Chest radiograph, liver tissue histologic stains, culture or PCR, gastric aspirate stain, culture or PCR	Serum, liver, gastric aspirate	INH, pyrazinamide, rifampin (if multiple-drug resistant TB is present, consult a specialist)
Bacterial infection	Cultures or PCR testing	Blood, urine, other cultures	Appropriate antibiotics

Ag, viral antigen testing; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; HBcAg, hepatitis B core antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; INH, isoniazid; IVIG, intravenous gamma globulin; PCR, polymerase chain reaction test for viral DNA or RNA; PPD, purified protein derivative.
[a]IgG = positive indicates maternal infection and transfer of antibody transplacentally; negative indicates unlikelihood of infection in mother and infant.
[b]Use foscarnet for resistant viruses. Treat only if symptomatic.
[c]Discontinue streptomycin as soon as possible.

» Treatment

Infections with herpes simplex virus, varicella, CMV, parvovirus, and toxoplasmosis have specific treatments (see Table 22–3). Penicillin for suspected syphilis, specific antiviral therapy, or antibiotics for bacterial hepatitis need to be administered promptly. Intravenous dextrose is needed if feedings are not well tolerated. The consequences of cholestasis are treated as indicated (Table 22–4). Vitamin K orally or by injection and vitamins D and E orally should be provided. Choleretics (ursodeoxycholic acid [UDCA]) are used if cholestasis persists. Corticosteroids are contraindicated.

» Prognosis

Multiple organ involvement portends a poor outcome. Hepatic or cardiac failure, intractable acidosis, or intracranial hemorrhage may be fatal in herpesvirus, adenovirus, or enterovirus infections, and occasionally in CMV or rubella infection. HBV rarely causes fulminant neonatal hepatitis; most infected infants are immunotolerant to hepatitis B. The neonatal liver usually recovers without fibrosis after acute infections. Chronic cholestasis, although rare following infections, may lead to dental enamel hypoplasia, failure to thrive, biliary rickets, severe pruritus, and xanthoma.

Bilavsky E, Schwarz M, Bar-Sever Z, Pardo J, Amir J: Hepatic involvement in congenital cytomegalovirus infection—infrequent yet significant. J Viral Hepat 2014 Dec 12. doi: 10.1111/jvh.12374 [PMID: 25496231].
Feldman AG, Sokol RJ: Neonatal cholestasis. Neoreviews 2013 Feb 1;14(2). doi: 10.1542/neo.14-2-e63 [PMID: 24244109].

2. Specific Infectious Agents

A. Neonatal Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) Disease

Vertical transmission of HBV may occur at any time during perinatal life. Most cases are acquired from mothers who are asymptomatic carriers of HBV. Although HBV

Table 22–4. Treatment of complications of chronic cholestatic liver disease.

Indication	Treatment	Dose	Toxicity
Intrahepatic cholestasis	Phenobarbital	3–10 mg/kg/d	Drowsiness, irritability, interference with vitamin D metabolism
	Cholestyramine or colestipol hydrochloride	250–500 mg/kg/d	Constipation, acidosis, binding of drugs, increased steatorrhea
	Ursodeoxycholic acid	15–20 mg/kg/d	Transient increase in pruritus
Pruritus	Phenobarbital	3–10 mg/kg/d	Drowsiness, irritability, interference with vitamin D metabolism
	Cholestyramine or colestipol	250–500 mg/kg/d	Constipation, acidosis, binding of drugs, increased steatorrhea
	Diphenhydramine hydrochloride	5–10 mg/kg/d	Drowsiness
	Hydroxyzine	2–5 mg/kg/d	Drowsiness
	Ultraviolet light B	Exposure as needed	Skin burn
	Rifampin	10 mg/kg/d	Hepatotoxicity, marrow suppression
	Ursodeoxycholic acid	15–20 mg/kg/d	Transient increase in pruritus
	Naltrexone	1 mg/kg/d	Irritability, vomiting
	Plasmapheresis	Each 2–4 wk	Central venous access, expensive
Steatorrhea	Formula containing medium-chain triglycerides (eg, Pregestimil or Alimentum)	120–150 kcal/kg/d for infants	Expensive
	Oil supplement containing medium-chain triglycerides	1–2 mL/kg/d	Diarrhea, aspiration
Malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins	Vitamin A	10,000–25,000 U/d	Hepatitis, pseudotumor cerebri, bone lesions
	Vitamin D_2 or D_3	800–5000 U/d (up to 1000 U//kg/d for infants)	Hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria
	25-hydroxy-cholecalciferol (25-OH vitamin D)	3–5 mcg/kg/d	Hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria
	1,25-dihydroxy-cholecalciferol (1,25 OH_2 vitamin D)	0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/d	Hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria
	Vitamin E (oral)	25–200 IU/kg/d	Potentiation of vitamin K deficiency
	Vitamin E (oral, TPGS[a])	15–25 IU/kg/d	Potentiation of vitamin K deficiency
	Vitamin E (intramuscular)	1–2 mg/kg/d	Muscle calcifications
	Vitamin K (oral)	2.5 mg twice per wk to 5 mg/d	
	Vitamin K (intramuscular)	2–5 mg each 4 wk	
Malabsorption of other nutrients	Multiple vitamin	One to two times the standard dose	
	Calcium	25–100 mg/kg/d	Hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria
	Phosphorus	25–50 mg/kg/d	Gastrointestinal intolerance
	Zinc	1 mg/kg/d	Interference with copper and iron absorption

[a]D-α-Tocopheryl polyethylene glycol-1000 succinate.

has been found in most body fluids, including breast milk, neonatal transmission occurs primarily from exposure to maternal blood at delivery and only occasionally transplacentally (< 5%–10% of cases). In chronic HB surface antigen (HBsAg)–carrier mothers, neonatal acquisition risk is greatest if the mother (1) is also HB "e" antigen (HBeAg)–positive and HB "e" antibody (HBeAb)–negative, (2) has high serum levels of hepatitis B core antibody (HBcAb), or (3) has high blood levels of HBV DNA. The infant has a 70%–90% chance of acquiring HBV at birth from an HBsAg/HBeAg-positive mother if the infant does not receive prophylaxis. Most infected infants develop a prolonged asymptomatic immune-tolerant phase of HBV infection. Fulminant hepatic necrosis and liver failure rarely occur in infants. Other patients develop immune active chronic hepatitis with focal hepatocyte necrosis and a mild portal inflammatory response. Chronic hepatitis may persist for years, with serologic evidence of persisting HBeAg and mildly elevated or normal serum aminotransferases. Most infected infants have only mild biochemical evidence, if any,

of liver injury and do not appear ill. Most infants remain asymptomatic in an immune-tolerant state of HBV infection, about 3%–5% per year develop acute or chronic hepatitis (see section on Hepatitis B).

To prevent perinatal transmission, all infants of mothers who are HBsAg-positive (regardless of HBeAg status) should receive hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIG) and hepatitis B vaccine within the first 24 hours after birth and vaccine again at ages 1 and 6 months (see Chapter 10). This prevents HBV infection in 85%–95% of infants. If not given at birth, HBIG can be administered as late as 7 days postpartum as long as the infant has received the vaccine. Universal HBV immunization during infancy is recommended for all infants regardless of maternal HBV status. Universal screening of pregnant women for HbsAg is conducted to determine which infants will also need HBIG.

B. Neonatal Bacterial Hepatitis

Most bacterial liver infections in newborns are acquired by transplacental invasion from amnionitis with ascending spread from maternal vaginal or cervical infection. Onset is abrupt, usually within 48–72 hours after delivery, with signs of sepsis and often shock. Jaundice appears early with direct hyperbilirubinemia. The most common organisms involved are Escherichia coli, Listeria monocytogenes, and group B streptococci. Neonatal liver abscesses caused by E coli or Staphylococcus aureus may result from omphalitis or umbilical vein catheterization. These infections require specific antibiotics in optimal doses and combinations and, rarely, surgical or radiologic interventional drainage. Deaths are common, but survivors show no long-term consequences of liver disease.

C. Neonatal Jaundice with Urinary Tract Infection

Urinary tract infections typically present with cholestasis between the second and fourth weeks of life. Lethargy, fever, poor appetite, jaundice, and hepatomegaly may be present. Except for mixed hyperbilirubinemia, other liver function tests (LFTs) are only mildly abnormal. Leukocytosis is frequently present, and infection is confirmed by urine culture. The liver impairment is caused by the action of endotoxin and cytokines on bile secretion.

Treatment of the infection leads to resolution of the cholestasis without hepatic sequelae. Metabolic liver diseases, such as galactosemia and tyrosinemia, may present with gram-negative bacterial urinary tract infection and must be excluded.

Gentile I et al: Prevention of mother-to-child transmission of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2014 Jul;12(7):775–782 [PMID: 24840817].

Pinninti SG, Kimberlin DW. Management of neonatal herpes simplex virus infection and exposure. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2014 May;99(3):F240–F244 [PMID: 24589428].

3. Intrahepatic Cholestasis Resulting From Inborn Errors of Metabolism, Familial, & "Toxic" Causes

Cholestasis caused by specific enzyme deficiencies, other genetic disorders, or certain toxins share findings of intrahepatic cholestasis (jaundice, hepatomegaly, and normal to completely acholic stools). Specific clinical conditions have characteristic clinical signs.

A. Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Establishing the specific diagnosis as early as possible is important because dietary or pharmacologic treatment may be available (Table 22–5). As with other genetic disorders, parents of the affected infant should be offered genetic counseling. For some disorders, prenatal genetic diagnosis is available.

Cholestasis caused by metabolic diseases (eg, galactosemia, hereditary fructose intolerance, and tyrosinemia) is frequently accompanied by vomiting, lethargy, poor feeding, hypoglycemia, or irritability. The infants often appear septic; gram-negative bacteria can be cultured from blood in 25%–50% of symptomatic cases, especially in galactosemia and cholestasis. Neonatal screening programs for galactosemia usually detect the disorder before cholestasis develops. Other metabolic and genetic causes of neonatal intrahepatic cholestasis are outlined in Table 22–5. Treatment of these disorders is discussed in Chapter 36.

B. "Toxic" Causes of Neonatal Cholestasis

1. Neonatal ischemic-hypoxic conditions—Perinatal events that result in hypoperfusion of the gastrointestinal system are sometimes followed within 1–2 weeks by cholestasis. This occurs in infants with birth asphyxia, severe hypoxia, hypoglycemia, shock, and acidosis. When these perinatal conditions develop in association with gastrointestinal lesions, such as ruptured omphalocele, gastroschisis, or necrotizing enterocolitis, a subsequent cholestatic picture is common (25%–50% of cases). Mixed hyperbilirubinemia, elevated alkaline phosphatase and γ-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) values, and variable elevation of the aminotransferases are common. Stools are seldom persistently acholic.

The mainstays of treatment are choleretics (UDCA), introduction of enteral feedings using special formulas as soon as possible, and nutrient supplementation until the cholestasis resolves (see Table 22–4). As long as no severe intestinal problem or ongoing sepsis is present (eg, short gut syndrome or intestinal failure), resolution of the hepatic abnormalities is the rule, although this may take many weeks.

Table 22–5. Metabolic and genetic causes of neonatal cholestasis.

Disease	Inborn Error	Hepatic Pathology	Diagnostic Studies
Galactosemia	Galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase	Cholestasis, steatosis, necrosis, pseudoacini, fibrosis	Galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase assay of red blood cells or genotyping[a]
Fructose intolerance	Fructose-1-phosphate aldolase	Steatosis, necrosis, pseudoacini, fibrosis	Liver fructose-1-phosphate aldolase assay or genotyping[a]
Tyrosinemia	Fumarylacetoacetase	Necrosis, steatosis, pseudoacini, portal fibrosis	Urinary succinylacetone, fumarylacetoacetase assay of red blood cells
Cystic fibrosis	Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene	Cholestasis, neoductular proliferation, excess bile duct mucus, portal fibrosis	Sweat test and genotyping[a]
Hypopituitarism	Deficient production of pituitary hormones	Cholestasis, giant cells	Thyroxin, TSH, cortisol levels
α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency	Abnormal α_1-antitrypsin molecule (PiZZ or PiSZ phenotype)	Giant cells, cholestasis, steatosis, neoductular proliferation, fibrosis, PAS-diastase–resistant cytoplasmic globules	Serum α_1-antitrypsin phenotype or genotype
Gaucher disease	β-Glucosidase	Cholestasis, cytoplasmic inclusions in Kupffer cells (foam cells)	β-Glucosidase assay in leukocytes or genotyping[a]
Niemann-Pick type C disease	Lysosomal sphingomyelinase	Cholestasis, cytoplasmic inclusions in Kupffer cells	Sphingomyelinase assay of leukocytes or liver or fibroblasts (type C); genotyping[a]
Glycogen storage disease type IV	Branching enzyme	Fibrosis, cirrhosis, PAS-diastase–resistant cytoplasmic inclusions	Branching enzyme analysis of leukocytes or liver, genotyping[a]
Neonatal hemochromatosis	Transplacental alloimmunization	Giant cells, portal fibrosis, hemosiderosis, cirrhosis	Histology, iron stains, lip biopsy, chest and abdominal MRI
Peroxisomal disorders (eg, Zellweger syndrome)	Deficient peroxisomal enzymes or assembly	Cholestasis, necrosis, fibrosis, cirrhosis, hemosiderosis	Plasma very-long-chain fatty acids, qualitative bile acids, plasmalogen, pipecolic acid, liver electron microscopy, genotyping[a]
Bile acid synthesis and metabolism disorders	Nine enzyme deficiencies defined	Cholestasis, necrosis, giant cells	Urine, serum, duodenal fluid analyzed for bile acids by fast atom bombardment–mass spectroscopy, genotyping[a]
Byler disease and syndrome (PFIC types I and II)	FIC-1 (ATP8B1) and BSEP (ABCB11) genes	Cholestasis, necrosis, giant cells, fibrosis	Histology, family history, normal cholesterol, low or normal γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, genotyping[a]
Arthrogryposis/renal dysfunction/ cholestasis syndrome	VPS33B and VIPAR genes	Cholestasis, fibrosis	Genotyping[a]
MDR3 deficiency (PFIC type III)	MDR3 (ABCB4) gene	Cholestasis, bile duct proliferation, portal fibrosis	Bile phospholipid level, genotyping[a]
TJP2 deficiency (PFIC type IV)	TJP2 gene	Cholestasis, necrosis, giant cells, fibrosis	Genotyping[a]
Alagille syndrome (syndromic paucity of interlobular bile ducts)	JAGGED1 gene and NOTCH2 mutations	Cholestasis, paucity of interlobular bile ducts, increased copper levels	Three or more clinical features, liver histology, genotyping[a]
Mitochondrial hepatopathies (respiratory chain diseases and mtDNA depletion syndrome)	POLG, BCS1l, SCO1, DGUOK, Twinkle and MPV17 and other gene mutations	Cholestasis, steatosis, portal fibrosis, abnormal mitochondria on electron microscopy	mtDNA depletion studies, respiratory chain studies on liver or muscle, genotyping[a]

[a]Performed on leukocyte DNA.
IV, intravenous; MDR3, multiple-drug resistance protein type 3; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; mtDNA, mitochondrial DNA; PAS, periodic acid–Schiff; PFIC, progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

2. Parenteral nutrition associated cholestasis (PNAC)— Cholestasis may develop after 1–2 weeks in premature newborns receiving parenteral nutrition. Even full-term infants with significant intestinal atresia, resections, or dysmotility (intestinal failure) may develop PNAC. Contributing factors include toxicity of intravenous soy lipid emulsions, diminished stimulation of bile flow from prolonged absence of feedings, frequent episodes of bacterial infection, small intestinal bacterial overgrowth with translocation of intestinal bacteria and their cell wall products, missing nutrients or antioxidants, photooxidation of amino acids, infusion of lipid hydroperoxides or plant sterols, and the "physiologic cholestatic" propensity of the infant. Activation of innate immune pathways in the liver appears to be involved. Histology of the liver may be identical to that of biliary atresia. Early introduction of feedings has reduced the frequency of this disorder. The prognosis is generally good; however, in infants with intestinal failure occasional cases progress to cirrhosis, liver failure, or hepatoma. These infants may require liver and intestinal, or multivisceral, transplantation. Oral erythromycin as a pro-motility agent may reduce the incidence of cholestasis in very-low-birth-weight infants. Substituting intravenous fish oil–based lipid emulsions or reduction in soy-oil-based lipid emulsions may reverse PNAC and prevent need for transplantation.

3. Inspissated bile syndrome—This syndrome is the result of accumulation of bile in canaliculi and in the small- and medium-sized bile ducts in hemolytic disease of the newborn (Rh, ABO) and in some infants receiving parenteral nutrition. The same mechanisms may cause intrinsic obstruction of the common bile duct. An ischemia-reperfusion injury may also contribute to cholestasis in Rh incompatibility. Stools may become acholic and levels of bilirubin, primarily conjugated, may reach 40 mg/dL. If inspissation of bile occurs within the extrahepatic biliary tree, differentiation from biliary atresia may be difficult. Although most cases improve slowly over 2–6 months, persistence of complete cholestasis (acholic stools) for more than 1–2 weeks requires further studies (ultrasonography, liver biopsy) with possible cholangiography. Irrigation of the common bile duct is sometimes necessary to dislodge the obstructing inspissated biliary material.

El Kasmi KC et al: Phytosterols promote liver injury and Kupffer cell activation in parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. Sci Transl Med 2013 Oct 9;5(206):206ra137 [PMID: 24107776].

Ng PC et al: High-dose oral erythromycin decreased the incidence of parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis in preterm infants. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1726 [PMID: 17484870].

Wales PW et al: A.S.P.E.N. Clinical guidelines: support of pediatric patients with intestinal failure at risk of parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2014 Apr 2;38(5):538–557 [PMID: 24696095].

4. Idiopathic Neonatal Hepatitis (Giant-Cell Hepatitis)

This idiopathic type of cholestatic jaundice, which has a typical liver biopsy appearance, accounts for 20%–30% of cases of neonatal intrahepatic cholestasis but is decreasing in frequency as new causes of cholestasis are discovered. The degree of cholestasis is variable, and the disorder may be indistinguishable from extrahepatic causes in 10% of cases. Viral infections, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, Alagille syndrome, Niemann-Pick type C disease (NPC), progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (PFIC), citrin deficiency, neonatal hemochromatosis, and bile acid synthesis defects may present with similar clinical and histologic features. In idiopathic neonatal hepatitis, PFIC types I and II and ARC syndrome, and disease due to bile acid synthesis defects, the GGT levels are normal or low. Electron microscopy of the liver biopsy and genotyping will help distinguish NPC and PFIC.

Intrauterine growth retardation, prematurity, poor feeding, emesis, poor growth, and partially or intermittently acholic stools are characteristic. Serious hemorrhage from vitamin K deficiency may also be present. Patients with neonatal lupus erythematosus may present with giant-cell hepatitis; however, thrombocytopenia, rash, or congenital heart block is usually also present.

In cases of suspected idiopathic neonatal hepatitis (diagnosed in the absence of infectious, known genetic, metabolic, and toxic causes), patency of the biliary tree may need to be verified to exclude extrahepatic surgical disorders. HIDA scanning and ultrasonography may be helpful in this regard if stools are acholic. Liver biopsy findings are usually diagnostic after age 6–8 weeks (see Table 22–2), but may be misleading before age 6 weeks as there is overlap with biliary atresia histology. Failure to detect patency of the biliary tree, nondiagnostic liver biopsy findings, or persisting complete cholestasis (acholic stools) are indications for intraoperative cholangiography performed by an experienced surgeon, ERCP, or percutaneous cholecystography. Occasionally, a small but patent (hypoplastic) extrahepatic biliary tree is demonstrated (as in Alagille syndrome); it is probably the result, rather than the cause, of diminished bile flow. Surgical reconstruction of hypoplastic biliary trees in Alagille syndrome should not be attempted.

Therapy should include choleretics, a special formula with medium-chain triglycerides (eg, Pregestimil, Alimentum) or breast milk (if growth is adequate), and supplemental fat-soluble vitamins in water-soluble form (see Table 22–4). This therapy is continued as long as significant cholestasis remains (conjugated bilirubin > 1 mg/dL). Fat-soluble vitamin serum levels and INR should be monitored at regular intervals while supplements are given and repeated at least once after their discontinuation.

Around 80% patients recover without significant hepatic fibrosis. However, failure to resolve the cholestatic picture by

age 6–12 months is associated with progressive liver disease and evolving cirrhosis, most likely caused by a yet to be defined underlying genetic/metabolic disorder. Liver transplantation has been successful when signs of hepatic decompensation are noted (rising bilirubin, coagulopathy, intractable ascites).

Guddat SS et al: Fatal spontaneous subdural bleeding due to neonatal giant cell hepatitis: a rare differential diagnosis of shaken baby syndrome. Forensic Sci Med Pathol 2011 Sep;7(3):294–297 [PMID: 21331818].

Torbenson M et al: Neonatal giant cell hepatitis: histological and etiological findings. Am J Surg Pathol 2010 Oct;34(10):1498–1503 [PMID: 20871223].

5. Paucity of Interlobular Bile Ducts

Forms of intrahepatic cholestasis caused by decreased numbers of interlobular bile ducts (< 0.5 bile ducts per portal tract) may be classified according to whether they are associated with other malformations. Alagille syndrome (syndromic paucity or arteriohepatic dysplasia) is caused by mutations in the gene JAGGED1, located on chromosome 20p, which codes for a ligand of the notch receptor, or more rarely in the gene NOTCH2. Alagille syndrome is recognized by the characteristic facies, which becomes more obvious with age. The forehead is prominent. with deep-set eyes and sometimes hypertelorism. The chin is small and slightly pointed and ears are prominent. The stool color varies with the severity of cholestasis. Pruritus begins by age 6 months. Firm, smooth hepatomegaly may be present or the liver may be of normal size. Cardiac murmurs are present in 95% of patients, and butterfly vertebrae (incomplete fusion of the vertebral body or anterior arch) are present in 50%. Xanthomas develop as hypercholesterolemia becomes a problem.

Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia may be mild to severe (2–15 mg/dL). Serum alkaline phosphatase, GGT, and cholesterol are markedly elevated, especially early in life. Serum bile acids are always elevated, aminotransferases are mildly increased, but clotting factors and other liver proteins are usually normal.

Cardiac involvement includes peripheral pulmonary artery, branch pulmonary artery, or pulmonary valvular stenoses, atrial septal defect, coarctation of the aorta, and tetralogy of Fallot. Up to 10%–15% of patients have intracranial vascular or cystic abnormalities or may develop intracranial hemorrhage or stroke early in childhood.

Eye findings (posterior embryotoxon or a prominent Schwalbe line in 90%) and renal abnormalities (dysplastic kidneys, renal tubular ectasia, single kidney, RTA, hematuria) are also characteristic and occur in about 40% of patients. Growth retardation with normal to increased levels of growth hormone (growth hormone resistance) is common. Some patients may rarely have pancreatic insufficiency that may contribute to the fat malabsorption. Although variable, the intelligence quotient is frequently low. Hypogonadism with micropenis may be present. A weak, high-pitched voice may develop. Neurologic disorders resulting from vitamin E deficiency (areflexia, ataxia, ophthalmoplegia) eventually develop in many unsupplemented children and may be profound.

In the nonsyndromic form, paucity of interlobular bile ducts occurs associated with α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, Zellweger syndrome, in association with lymphedema (Aagenaes syndrome), PFIC, cystic fibrosis, CMV or rubella infection, and inborn errors of bile acid metabolism.

High doses (250 mg/kg/d) of cholestyramine may control pruritus, lower cholesterol, and clear xanthomas. UDCA (15–20 mg/kg/d) appears to be more effective and causes fewer side effects than cholestyramine. Rifampicin may also reduce pruritus. Naltrexone (1 mg/kg/d) is occasionally required. Partial external biliary diversion or ileal exclusion surgery may reduce pruritus in about half of severe cases. Nutritional therapy to prevent wasting and deficiencies of fat-soluble vitamins is of particular importance because of the severity of cholestasis (see Table 22–4).

Prognosis is more favorable in the syndromic than in the nonsyndromic varieties. In the former, only 30%–40% of patients have severe complications of disease, whereas over 70% of patients with nonsyndromic varieties progress to cirrhosis. Many of this latter group may have forms of PFIC. In Alagille syndrome, cholestasis may improve by age 2–4 years, with minimal residual hepatic fibrosis. Survival into adulthood despite raised serum bile acids, aminotransferases, and alkaline phosphatase occurs in about 50% of cases. Several patients have developed hepatocellular carcinoma. Hypogonadism has been noted; however, fertility is not obviously affected in most cases. Cardiovascular anomalies and intracranial vascular lesions may shorten life expectancy. Some patients have persistent, severe cholestasis, rendering their quality of life poor. Recurrent bone fractures may result from metabolic bone disease. Liver transplantation has been successfully performed under these circumstances. Intracranial hemorrhage, moya moya disease, or stroke may occur in up to 10%–12% of affected children.

Kamath BM et al: Medical management of Alagille syndrome. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2010;50:580 [PMID: 20479679].

Kamath BM et al: Outcomes of liver transplantation for patients with Alagille syndrome: the studies of pediatric liver transplantation experience. Liver Transpl 2012;18:940 [PMID: 22454296].

Subramaniam P et al: Diagnosis of Alagille syndrome – 25 years of experience at King's College Hospital. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2011;52:84 [PMID: 21119543].

6. Progressive Familial Intrahepatic Cholestasis (PFIC; Byler Disease & Byler Syndrome)

PFIC is a group of disorders presenting as pruritus, diarrhea, jaundice, fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies, and failure

to thrive in the first 6–12 months of life. PFIC type I (Byler disease), caused by mutations in the gene coding FIC1, an aminophospholipid floppase, is associated with low to normal serum levels of GGT and cholesterol and elevated levels of bilirubin, aminotransferases, and bile acids. Pancreatitis and hearing loss may develop. Liver biopsy demonstrates cellular cholestasis, sometimes with a paucity of interlobular bile ducts and centrilobular fibrosis that progresses to cirrhosis. Giant cells are absent. Electron microscopy shows diagnostic granular "Byler bile" in canaliculi. Treatment includes administration of UDCA, partial biliary diversion or ileal exclusion if the condition is unresponsive to UDCA, and liver transplantation if unresponsive to these therapies. With partial biliary diversion or ileal exclusion surgery, many patients show improved growth and liver histology, reduction in symptoms and, thus, avoid liver transplantation. Following liver transplantation, chronic diarrhea and fatty liver may complicate recovery.

PFIC type II is caused by mutations in the bile salt export pump (BSEP) gene, which codes for the adenosine triphosphate–dependent canalicular bile salt transport protein. These patients are clinically and biochemically similar to PFIC type I patients, but liver histology includes numerous multinucleated "giant cells." There is an increased incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with severe BSEP mutations. Treatment is similar to PFIC type I although close monitoring for hepatocellular carcinoma is essential. Following liver transplantation, recurrent disease has been described in patients who developed immune-mediated BSEP dysfunction.

PFIC type III is caused by mutations in the multiple drug resistance protein type 3 (MDR3) gene, which encodes a canalicular protein that pumps phospholipid into bile. Serum GGT and bile acid levels are both elevated, bile duct proliferation and portal tract fibrosis are seen in liver biopsies (resembling biliary atresia), and bile phospholipid levels are low. Treatment is similar to that for other forms of PFIC except that partial biliary diversion is not recommended.

PFIC type IV, recently described, is a low GGT form of neonatal cholestasis caused by mutations in tight junction protein 2 (TJP2) with rapid progression to cirrhosis and need for liver transplantation in early childhood. About one-third of PFIC patients have negative genotyping for the above genes and most likely have yet-to-be discovered genetic etiologies.

Bile acid synthesis defects are clinically similar to PFIC types I and II, with low serum levels of GGT and cholesterol; however, the serum level of total bile acids is inappropriately normal or low and urine bile acid analysis may identify a synthesis defect. Treatment of bile acid synthesis defects is with oral cholic acid and UDCA.

Arnell H et al: Follow-up in children with progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis after partial external biliary diversion. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2010;51:494 [PMID: 20683202].

Jankowska I et al: Ileal exclusion in children with progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014 Jan;58(1):92–95 [PMID: 24385022].

Sambrotta M et al: Mutations in TJP2 cause progressive cholestatic liver disease. Nat Genet 2014 Apr;46(4):326–328 [PMID: 24614073].

EXTRAHEPATIC NEONATAL CHOLESTASIS

Extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis is characterized by complete and persistent cholestasis (acholic stools) in the first 3 months of life; lack of patency of the extrahepatic biliary tree proved by intraoperative, percutaneous, or endoscopic cholangiography; firm to hard hepatomegaly; and typical features on histologic examination of liver biopsy tissue (see Table 22–2). Causes include biliary atresia, choledochal cyst, spontaneous perforation of the extrahepatic ducts, and intrinsic or extrinsic obstruction of the common duct.

1. Biliary Atresia

» General Considerations

Biliary atresia (BA) is a progressive fibroinflammatory obliteration of the lumen of all, or part of, the extrahepatic biliary tree presenting within the first 3 months of life. Biliary atresia occurs in 1:6600 (Taiwan)–1:18,000 (Europe) births, and in the United States the incidence is approximately 1:12,000. The incidence is highest in Asians, African Americans, and preterm infants, and there is a slight female predominance. There are three types of BA: isolated BA (84% of cases), BA with at least one malformation but without laterality defects (6%; CV, GI, or GU defects), and BA splenic malformation (BASM) syndrome associated with laterality defects and polysplenia or asplenia (4%–10%). In isolated BA, meconium and initial stools are usually normal in color, suggesting early patency of the ducts. Evidence obtained from surgically removed remnants of the extrahepatic biliary tree suggests an inflammatory sclerosing cholangiopathy that may have a prenatal onset. Recent research supports an autoimmune reaction that is responsible for progressive intrahepatic bile duct injury and fibrosis. In BA with other congenital malformations, the bile duct presumably did not develop normally and is associated with other nonhepatic congenital anomalies. The association of BA with the polysplenia syndrome (heterotaxia, preduodenal portal vein, interruption of the inferior vena cava, polysplenia, and midline liver) and asplenia syndrome supports an embryonic origin of biliary atresia in these cases.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Jaundice may be noted in the newborn period or develop by age 2–3 weeks. Urine stains the diaper; and stools are often pale yellow, gray, or acholic. Seepage of bilirubin products

across the intestinal mucosa may give some yellow coloration to the stools. Firm hepatomegaly is common. By age 6 months, the growth curve reveals poor weight gain. Symptoms of portal hypertension (splenomegaly, ascites, variceal bleeding) may develop in the first year of life. Pruritus, digital clubbing, failure to thrive, bone fractures, and bleeding complications may also occur later in childhood.

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging

No single laboratory test will consistently differentiate BA from other causes of complete obstructive jaundice. Although BA is suggested by persistent elevation of serum GGT or alkaline phosphatase levels in addition to conjugated/direct bilirubin, these findings have also been reported in severe neonatal hepatitis, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, and bile duct paucity. Furthermore, these tests will not differentiate the location of the obstruction within the extrahepatic system. Generally, the aminotransferases are only moderately elevated in BA and serum albumin and blood clotting factors are normal early in the disease. Ultrasonography of the biliary system should be performed to exclude the presence of choledochal cyst and identify intra-abdominal anomalies; a triangular cord sign in the hepatic porta suggests biliary atresia. Liver biopsy specimens (particularly if obtained after age 6 weeks) can differentiate intrahepatic causes of cholestasis from biliary atresia in over 90% of cases (see Table 22–2).

» Differential Diagnosis

The major diagnostic dilemma is distinguishing between this entity and bile duct paucity, metabolic liver disease (particularly α_1-antitrypsin deficiency), choledochal cyst, or intrinsic bile duct obstruction (stones, bile plugs). Although spontaneous perforation of extrahepatic bile ducts leads to jaundice and acholic stools, the infants in such cases are usually quite ill with chemical peritonitis from biliary ascites.

If the diagnosis of BA cannot be excluded by the diagnostic evaluation and percutaneous liver biopsy, an intraoperative cholangiogram should be performed as soon as possible to determine if BA is present. Radiographic visualization of cholangiographic contrast in the duodenum excludes obstruction to the distal extrahepatic ducts. In the majority of cases of BA, the entire extrahepatic biliary system is obstructed and no cholangiographic contrast will be visible.

» Treatment

In the absence of surgical correction or transplantation, biliary cirrhosis, hepatic failure, and death occur uniformly by age 18–24 months.

The standard procedure at the time of diagnosis of BA is the hepatoportoenterostomy (Kasai procedure). Occasionally, portocholecystostomy (gallbladder Kasai procedure) may be performed if the gallbladder is present and the passage from it to the duodenum is patent. These procedures are best done in specialized centers where experienced surgical, pediatric, and nursing personnel are available. Surgery should be performed as early as possible (ideally before 45 days of life); the Kasai procedure should generally not be undertaken in infants older than age 4 months, because the likelihood of bile drainage at this age is very low. Orthotopic liver transplantation is now indicated for patients who do not undergo the Kasai procedure, who fail to drain bile after the Kasai procedure, or who progress to end-stage biliary cirrhosis despite surgical treatment. BA is the leading indication for pediatric liver transplantation and the 3- to 5-year survival rate following liver transplantation approaches 90%.

Whether or not the Kasai procedure is performed, supportive medical treatment consists of vitamin and caloric support (vitamins A, D, E, and K supplements and formulas containing high amounts of medium-chain triglycerides [Pregestimil or Alimentum]) (see Table 22–4). Monitoring of serum fat-soluble vitamin levels is essential to ensure adequate supplementation. Suspected ascending cholangitis should be treated promptly with broad-spectrum antibiotics and antibiotic prophylaxis may reduce the recurrence rate of cholangitis. Ascites can be managed initially with reduced sodium intake and spironolactone. There is presently no therapy that prevents the progression of biliary disease that occurs in the majority of patients post-Kasai, including the use of corticosteroids. The value of UDCA remains to be determined. Antibiotic prophylaxis reduces the recurrence rate of cholangitis.

» Prognosis

In general, outcomes of post-Kasai include failure to reestablish bile flow in one-third and improvement in bile flow in two-thirds of patients. However, even in the setting of reestablished bile flow, the majority of patients will progress to biliary cirrhosis and the need for liver transplantation in childhood (~ 80%). If bile flow is sustained following the Kasai procedure (serum total bilirubin < 2 mg/dL by 3–6 months post-Kasai), the 10-year survival rate without liver transplantation is up to 35%. Death is usually caused by liver failure, sepsis, intractable variceal bleeding, or respiratory failure secondary to intractable ascites. Esophageal variceal hemorrhage develops in 40% of patients, yet terminal hemorrhage is unusual. Occasional long-term survivors develop hepatopulmonary syndrome (intrapulmonary right to left shunting of blood resulting in hypoxia) or portopulmonary hypertension (pulmonary arterial hypertension in patients with portal hypertension). Liver transplantation has dramatically changed the outlook for these patients.

Bezerra JA et al: Use of corticosteroids after hepatoportoenterostomy for bile drainage in infants with biliary atresia: the START randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2014;311(17): 1750–1759 [PMID: 24794368].

Chiu CY et al: Taiwan infant stool color card study group. Biliary atresia in preterm infants in Taiwan: a nationwide survey. J Pediatr 2013 epub ahead of print [PMID: 23414661].
Mack CL et al: Clues to the etiology of bile duct injury in biliary atresia. Semin Liver Dis 2012;32:307 [PMID: 23414661].
Schwarz KB et al: Extrahepatic anomalies in infants with biliary atresia: results of a large prospective North American multicenter study. Hepatology 2013;58(5):1724–1731 [PMID: 23703680].

2. Choledochal Cyst

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

» Abnormal abdominal ultrasound with cyst of the biliary tree.

» Clinical Features

A. Symptoms and Signs

Choledochal cysts are cystic lesions of all or part of the extrahepatic biliary system and in rare cases the cystic malformation can include the intrahepatic bile duct branches. In most cases, the clinical manifestations, basic laboratory findings, and histopathologic features on liver biopsy are indistinguishable from those associated with biliary atresia. In older children, choledochal cyst presents as recurrent episodes of right upper quadrant abdominal pain, fevers, vomiting, obstructive jaundice, pancreatitis, or as a right abdominal mass. Infants and children with choledochal cysts are at increased risk for developing bacterial cholangitis. Choledochal cysts cause only 2%–5% of cases of extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis; the incidence is higher in girls and patients of Asian descent. Neonatal symptomatic cysts may be associated with atresia of the distal common duct—accounting for the diagnostic dilemma—and may simply be part of the spectrum of biliary atresia.

B. Imaging Studies

Ultrasonography or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) reveals the presence of a cyst.

» Treatment

Timely surgery is indicated for neonates once abnormalities in clotting factors have been corrected and bacterial cholangitis, if present, has been treated with intravenous antibiotics. Excision of the cyst and choledocho–Roux-en-Y jejunal anastomosis are recommended. In some cases, because of technical problems, only the mucosa of the cyst can be removed with jejunal anastomosis to the proximal bile duct. Anastomosis of cyst to jejunum or duodenum is not recommended due to the continued risks of cholangitis and bile duct carcinoma (cholangiocarcinoma).

» Prognosis

The prognosis depends on the presence or absence of associated evidence of atresia and the appearance of the intrahepatic ducts. If atresia is found, the prognosis is similar to that described in the preceding section. If an isolated extrahepatic cyst is encountered, the outcome is generally excellent, with resolution of the jaundice and return to normal liver architecture. However, bouts of ascending cholangitis may occur, particularly if intrahepatic cysts are present or stricture of the anastomotic site develops. The risk of cholangiocarcinoma developing within the cyst is about 5%–15% in adulthood; therefore, cystectomy or excision of cyst mucosa should be undertaken whenever possible.

Hung MH et al: Choledochal cysts in infants and children: experiences over a 20-year period at a single institution. Eur J Pediatr 2011;170:1179 [PMID: 21350805].
Tsai MS et al: Clinicopathological feature and surgical outcome of choledochal cyst in different age groups: the implication of surgical timing. J Gastrointest Surg 2008;12:2191 [PMID: 18677540].

3. Spontaneous Perforation of the Extrahepatic Bile Ducts

The sudden appearance of obstructive jaundice, acholic stools, and abdominal enlargement with ascites in a sick newborn is suggestive of this condition. The liver is usually normal in size, and a yellow-green discoloration can often be discerned under the umbilicus or in the scrotum. In 24% of cases, stones or sludge obstructs the common bile duct. HIDA scan or ERCP shows leakage from the biliary tree, and ultrasonography confirms ascites or fluid around the bile duct.

Treatment is surgical. Simple drainage, without attempts at oversewing the perforation, is sufficient in primary perforations. A diversion anastomosis is constructed in cases associated with choledochal cyst or stenosis. The prognosis is generally good.

Pereira E et al: Conservative management of spontaneous bile duct perforation in infancy: case report and literature review. J Pediatr Surg 2012;47:1757 [PMID: 22974619].

OTHER NEONATAL HYPERBILIRUBINEMIC CONDITIONS (NONCHOLESTATIC NONHEMOLYTIC)

Two other groups of disorders are associated with hyperbilirubinemia: (1) unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, present in breast milk jaundice, Lucey-Driscoll syndrome, congenital hypothyroidism, upper intestinal obstruction, Gilbert

disease, Crigler-Najjar syndrome, and drug-induced hyperbilirubinemia; and (2) conjugated noncholestatic hyperbilirubinemia, present in the Dubin-Johnson syndrome and Rotor syndrome.

1. Unconjugated Hyperbilirubinemia

A. Breast Milk Jaundice

Persistent elevation of the indirect bilirubin fraction may occur in up to 35% breast-fed infants. Enhanced β-glucuronidase activity in breast milk is one factor that increases absorption of unconjugated bilirubin. Substances (eg, L-aspartic acid) in casein hydrolysate formulas inhibit this enzyme. The increased enterohepatic shunting of unconjugated bilirubin exceeds the normal conjugating capacity in the liver of these infants. The mutation for Gilbert syndrome (UDP-glucuronyltransferase 1A1 [UGT1A1]) predisposes to breast milk jaundice and to more prolonged jaundice. Neonates who carry the 211 and 388 variants in the UGT1A1 and OATP 2 genes, respectively, or the UGT1A1*6 allele and feed with breast milk, are at high risk to develop severe hyperbilirubinemia. Low volumes of ingested breast milk may also contribute to jaundice in the first week of life. Finally, breast milk may suppress UGT1A1 expression in the infant's intestines which may also lead to unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia.

Hyperbilirubinemia does not usually exceed 20 mg/dL, with most cases in the range of 10–15 mg/dL. Jaundice is noticeable by the fifth to seventh day of breast-feeding. It may accentuate the underlying physiologic jaundice—especially early, when total fluid intake may be less than optimal. Except for jaundice, the physical examination is normal; urine does not stain the diaper, and the stools are golden yellow.

The jaundice peaks before the third week of life and clears before age 3 months in almost all infants, even when breast-feeding is continued. All infants who remain jaundiced past age 2–3 weeks should have measurement of conjugated bilirubin to exclude cholestasis and hepatobiliary disease.

Kernicterus has rarely been reported in association with this condition. In special situations, breast-feeding may be discontinued temporarily and replaced by formula feedings for 2–3 days until serum bilirubin decreases by 2–8 mg/dL. Cow's milk formulas inhibit the intestinal reabsorption of unconjugated bilirubin. When breast-feeding is reinstituted, the serum bilirubin may increase slightly, but not to the previous level. Phototherapy is not indicated in the healthy full-term infant with this condition unless bilirubin levels meet high-risk levels as defined by the American Academy of Pediatrics.

Fujiwara R et al: Reduced expression of UGT1A1 in intestines of humanized UGT1 mice via inactivation of NF-κB leads to hyperbilirubinemia. Gastroenterology 2012;142:109 [PMID: 21983082].

Maruo Y et al: Bilirubin uridine diphosphate-glucuronosyltransferase variation is a genetic basis of breast milk jaundice. J Pediatr 2014 Jul;165(1):36–41 [PMID: 24650397].

Preer GL, Philipp BL: Understanding and managing breast milk jaundice. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2011;96:F461 [PMID: 20688866].

B. Congenital Hypothyroidism

Although the differential diagnosis of indirect hyperbilirubinemia should always include congenital hypothyroidism, the diagnosis is usually suggested by clinical and physical clues or, more commonly, from the newborn screening results. The jaundice clears quickly with replacement thyroid hormone therapy, although the mechanism is unclear. Hypopituitarism can also present with neonatal cholestasis.

Tiker F: Congenital hypothyroidism and early severe hyperbilirubinemia. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 2003;42:365 [PMID: 12800733].

C. Upper Intestinal Obstruction

The association of indirect hyperbilirubinemia with high intestinal obstruction (eg, duodenal atresia, annular pancreas, pyloric stenosis) in the newborn has been observed repeatedly; the mechanism is unknown. Diminished levels of hepatic glucuronyl transferase are found on liver biopsy in pyloric stenosis, and genetic studies suggest that this indirect hyperbilirubinemia may be an early sign of Gilbert syndrome.

Treatment is that of the underlying obstructive condition (usually surgical). Jaundice disappears once adequate nutrition is achieved.

Hua L et al: The role of UGT1A1*28 mutation in jaundiced infants with hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. Pediatr Res 2005;58:881 [PMID: 16257926].

D. Gilbert Syndrome

Gilbert syndrome is a common form of familial hyperbilirubinemia present in 3%–7% of the population. It is associated with a partial reduction of hepatic bilirubin uridine diphosphate-glucuronyl transferase activity. Affected infants may have more rapid increase in jaundice in the newborn period, accentuated breast milk jaundice, and jaundice with intestinal obstruction. During puberty and beyond, mild fluctuating jaundice, especially with illness and vague constitutional symptoms, is common. Shortened red blood cell survival in some patients is thought to be caused by reduced activity of enzymes involved in heme biosynthesis (protoporphyrinogen oxidase). Reduction of hyperbilirubinemia has been achieved in patients by administration of phenobarbital (5–8 mg/kg/d), although this therapy is not justified.

The disease is inherited as an abnormality of the promoter region of uridine diphosphate-glucuronyl transferase-1

(UDGT1); however, another factor appears to be necessary for disease expression. The homozygous (16%) and heterozygous states (40%) are common. Males are affected more often than females (4:1) for reasons that are not clear. Serum unconjugated bilirubin is generally less than 3–6 mg/dL, although unusual cases may exceed 8 mg/dL. The findings on liver biopsy and most LFTs are normal. An increase of 1.4 mg/dL or more in the level of unconjugated bilirubin after a 2-day fast (300 kcal/d) is consistent with the diagnosis of Gilbert syndrome. Gilbert syndrome, conferred by the donor liver, can occur following liver transplantation. Genetic testing is available but rarely needed. No treatment is necessary.

Erlinger S et al: Inherited disorders of bilirubin transport and conjugation: new insights into molecular mechanisms and consequences. Gastroenterology 2014 Jun;146(7):1625–1638 [PMID: 24704527].

Kathemann S et al: Gilbert syndrome—a frequent cause of unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia in children after orthotopic liver transplantation. Pediatr Transplant 2012;16:20 [PMID: 22360405].

Travan L et al: Severe neonatal hyperbilirubinemia and UGT1A1 promoter polymorphism. J Pediatr 2014 Jul;165(1):42–45 [PMID: 24726540].

E. Crigler-Najjar Syndrome

Infants with type 1 Crigler-Najjar syndrome usually develop rapid severe unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia (> 30–40 mg/dL) with neurologic consequences (kernicterus). Consanguinity is often present. Prompt recognition of this entity and treatment with exchange transfusions are required, followed by phototherapy. Some patients have no neurologic signs until adolescence or early adulthood, at which time deterioration may occur suddenly. For diagnosis of this condition, it may be useful to obtain a duodenal bile specimen, which characteristically will be colorless and contain a predominance of unconjugated bilirubin, small amounts of monoconjugates, and only traces of unconjugated bilirubin. Phenobarbital administration does not significantly alter these findings, nor does it lower serum bilirubin levels. UGT genetic testing is available. The deficiency in UGT1A1 is inherited in an autosomal recessive pattern. A combination of aggressive phototherapy and cholestyramine may keep bilirubin levels below 25 mg/dL. The use of tin protoporphyrin or tin mesoporphyrin remains experimental. Orlistat therapy may decrease bilirubin in a subset of patients. Liver transplantation is curative and may prevent kernicterus if performed early. Auxiliary orthotopic transplantation also relieves the jaundice while the patient retains native liver. Hepatocyte transplantation is experimental and future gene therapy may be possible.

A milder form (type 2) with both autosomal dominant and recessive inheritance is rarely associated with neurologic complications. Hyperbilirubinemia is less severe, and the bile is pigmented and contains small amounts of bilirubin monoglucuronide and diglucuronide. Patients with this form respond to phenobarbital (4 mg/kg/d in infants) with lowering of serum bilirubin levels. An increased proportion of monoconjugated and diconjugated bilirubin in the bile follows phenobarbital treatment. Liver biopsy findings and LFTs are consistently normal in both types.

Bartlett MG, Gourley GR: Assessment of UGT polymorphisms and neonatal jaundice. Semin Perinatol 2011;35:127 [PMID: 21641485].

Erlinger S et al: Inherited disorders of bilirubin transport and conjugation: new insights into molecular mechanisms and consequences. Gastroenterology 2014 Jun;146(7):1625–1638 [PMID: 24704527].

F. Drug-Induced Hyperbilirubinemia

Vitamin K_3 (menadiol) may elevate indirect bilirubin levels by causing hemolysis. Vitamin K_1 (phytonadione) can be used safely in neonates. Carbamazepine can cause conjugated hyperbilirubinemia in infancy. Rifampin and antiretroviral protease inhibitors may cause unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia. Pancuronium bromide and chloral hydrate have been implicated in causing neonatal jaundice. Other drugs (eg, ceftriaxone, sulfonamides) may displace bilirubin from albumin, potentially increasing the risk of kernicterus—especially in the sick premature infant.

2. Conjugated Noncholestatic Hyperbilirubinemia (Dubin-Johnson Syndrome & Rotor Syndrome)

These diagnoses are suspected when persistent or recurrent conjugated hyperbilirubinemia and jaundice occur and liver function tests are normal. The basic defect in Dubin-Johnson syndrome is in the multiple organic anion transport protein 2 (MRP2) of the bile canaliculus, causing impaired hepatocyte excretion of conjugated bilirubin into bile. A variable degree of impairment in uptake and conjugation complicates the clinical picture. Transmission is autosomal recessive, so a positive family history is occasionally obtained. In Rotor syndrome, the defect lies in hepatic uptake and storage of bilirubin. OATP1B1 (coded by SLCO1B1) and OATP1B3 (SLCO1B3) are the two transporters that are deficient. Bile acids are metabolized normally, so that cholestasis does not occur. Bilirubin values range from 2 to 5 mg/dL, and other LFTs are normal.

In Rotor syndrome, the liver is normal; in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, it is darkly pigmented on gross inspection and may be enlarged. Microscopic examination reveals numerous dark-brown pigment granules consisting of polymers of epinephrine metabolites, especially in the centrilobular regions. However, the amount of pigment varies within families, and some jaundiced family members may have no demonstrable pigmentation in the liver. Otherwise, the

liver is histologically normal. Oral cholecystography fails to visualize the gall-bladder in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, but is normal in Rotor syndrome. Differences in the excretion patterns of bromosulfophthalein, in results of HIDA cholescintigraphy, in urinary coproporphyrin I and III levels, and in the serum pattern of monoglucuronide and diglucuronide conjugates of bilirubin can help distinguish between these two conditions. Clinical genotyping of MRP2, SLCO1B1, and SLCO1B3 is available. No treatment is needed for either condition. Choleretic agents (eg, UDCA) may help reduce the cholestasis in infants with Dubin-Johnson syndrome.

Jirsa M et al: Rotor syndrome. In: Pagon RA et al (eds): GeneReviews™ [Internet]. 2012 Dec 13 [PMID: 23236639].

Keppler D: The roles of MRP2, MRP3, OATP1B1, and OATP1B3 in conjugated hyperbilirubinemia. Drug Metab Dispos 2014 Apr;42(4):561–565 [PMID: 24459177].

HEPATITIS A

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Gastrointestinal upset (anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea).
- Jaundice.
- Liver tenderness and enlargement.
- Abnormal LFTs.
- Local epidemic of hepatitis A infection.
- Positive anti–hepatitis A virus (HAV) IgM antibody.

Pathogenesis

Hepatitis A virus (HAV) infection occurs in both epidemic and sporadic fashion and is transmitted by the fecal oral route (Table 22–6). HAV viral particles are found in stool during the acute phase of hepatitis A infection. Epidemic outbreaks are caused by contaminated food or water supplies, including by food handlers, while sporadic cases usually result from contact with an infected individual. Transmission through blood products obtained during the viremic phase is a rare event, although it has occurred in a newborn nursery.

Prevention

Isolation of an infected patient during initial phases of illness is indicated, although most patients with hepatitis A are noninfectious by the time the disease becomes overt. Stool, diapers, and other fecally stained clothing should be handled with care for 1 week after the appearance of jaundice.

Table 22–6. Hepatitis viruses.

	HAV	HBV	HCV	HDV	HEV
Type of virus	Enterovirus (RNA)	Hepadnavirus (DNA)	Flavivirus (RNA)	Deltavirus (RNA)	Hepevirus (RNA)
Transmission routes	Fecal-oral	Parenteral, sexual, vertical	Parenteral, sexual, vertical	Parenteral, sexual	Fecal-oral
Incubation period (days)	15–40	45–160	30–150	20–90	14–65
Diagnostic test	Anti-HAV IgM	HBsAg, anti-HBc IgM, DNA PCR	Anti-HCV, RNA PCR	Anti-HDV antibody	Anti-HEV IgM HEV PCR
Mortality rate (acute)	0.1%–0.2%	0.5%–2%	1%–2%	2%–20%	1%–2% (10%–20% in pregnant women)
Carrier state	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Vaccine available	Yes	Yes	No	Yes (HBV)	Yes (experimental)
Treatment	None	Interferon-α (pegylated interferon in adults), nucleoside analogues (lamivudine or entecavir > 2 y old, tenofovir or, adefovir > 12; telbivudine > 16)	Pegylated interferon plus ribavirin[a]	Treatment for HBV	None

[a]Ongoing pediatric clinical trials of direct-acting antiviral agents.
HAV, hepatitis A virus; HBc, hepatitis B core; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HDV, hepatitis D (delta) virus; HEV, hepatitis E virus; PCR, polymerase chain reaction.

Passive-active immunization of exposed susceptible persons younger than 12 months; older than 40 years: anyone who is immunocompromised or who has chronic liver disease is recommended with immune globulin, 0.02 mL/kg intramuscularly. Illness is prevented in > 85% of individuals if immune globulin is given within 2 weeks of exposure. For individuals 12 months to 40 years old HAV vaccine is recommended following exposure. Infants younger than 12 months traveling to endemic disease areas should receive HAV vaccine or 0.02 or 0.06 mL/kg (for trip > 3 months) of immune globulin as prophylaxis. Older individuals should receive the HAV vaccine. All children older than 12 months with chronic liver disease should receive two doses of HAV vaccine 6 months apart. It is currently recommended that all children 12–18 months of age receive HAV vaccination in the United States. If an emigrant child from an endemic area is adopted, the immediate family members should be immunized. Lifelong immunity to HAV follows infection.

HEPATITIS VIRUS ABBREVIATIONS

HAV	Hepatitis A virus
HBV	Hepatitis B virus
HBcAg	HBV core antigen
Anti-HBs	Antibody to HBsAg
Anti-HBc IgM	IgM antibody to HBcAg
HCV	Hepatitis C virus
HDV	Hepatitis D (delta) virus
HEV	Hepatitis E virus
Anti-HAV IgM	IgM antibody to HAV
HBsAg	HBV surface antigen
HBeAg	HBV e antigen
Anti-HBc	Antibody to HBcAg
Anti-HBe	Antibody to HBeAg
Anti-HCV	Antibody to HCV
Anti-HDV	Antibody to HDV
Anti-HEV	Antibody to HEV

Antibody to HAV appears within 1–4 weeks of clinical symptoms. Although the great majority of children with infectious hepatitis are asymptomatic or have mild disease and recover completely, some will develop fulminant hepatitis leading to death or requiring liver transplantation.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Historical risk factors may include direct exposure to a previously jaundiced individual or recently arrived individual from a high prevalence country, consumption of seafood, contaminated water or imported fruits or vegetables, attendance in a day care center, or recent travel to an area of endemic infection. Following an incubation period of 15–40 days, nonspecific symptoms usually precede the development of jaundice by 5–10 days. In developing countries, hepatitis A is common and most children are exposed to HAV by age 10 years, while only 20% are exposed by age 20 years in developed countries.

B. Symptoms and Signs

The overt form of the disease is easily recognized by the clinical manifestations. However, two-thirds of children are asymptomatic, and two-thirds of symptomatic children are anicteric. Therefore, the presenting symptoms in children with HAV often resemble gastroenteritis. Fever, anorexia, vomiting, headache, and abdominal pain are typical and dark urine precedes jaundice, which peaks in 1–2 weeks and then begins to subside. The stools may become light- or clay-colored. Clinical improvement can occur as jaundice develops. Tender hepatomegaly and jaundice are typically present; splenomegaly is variable.

C. Laboratory Findings

Serum aminotransferases and conjugated and unconjugated bilirubin levels are elevated. Although unusual, hypoalbuminemia, hypoglycemia, and marked prolongation of PT (international normalized ratio [INR] > 2.0) are serious prognostic findings. Diagnosis is made by a positive anti-HAV IgM, whereas anti-HAV IgG persists after recovery.

Percutaneous liver biopsy is rarely indicated. "Balloon cells" and acidophilic bodies are characteristic histologic findings. Liver cell necrosis may be diffuse or focal, with accompanying infiltration of inflammatory cells containing polymorphonuclear leukocytes, lymphocytes, macrophages, and plasma cells, particularly in portal areas. Some bile duct proliferation may be seen in the perilobular portal areas alongside areas of bile stasis. Regenerative liver cells and proliferation of reticuloendothelial cells are present. Occasionally massive hepatocyte necrosis portends a poor prognosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Before jaundice appears, the symptoms are those of nonspecific viral enteritis. Other diseases with somewhat similar onset include pancreatitis, infectious mononucleosis, leptospirosis, drug-induced hepatitis, Wilson disease, autoimmune hepatitis (AIH), and infection with other hepatitis viruses. Acquired CMV disease may also mimic HAV, although lymphadenopathy is usually present in the former.

» Treatment

No specific treatment measures are required although bed rest is reasonable for the child who appears ill. Sedatives and corticosteroids should be avoided. During the icteric phase, lower-fat foods may diminish gastrointestinal symptoms but do not affect overall outcome. Drugs and elective surgery should be avoided. Hospitalization is recommended for children with coagulopathy, encephalopathy, or severe vomiting. Hospitalization rates for hepatitis A have decreased over

the last decade, with those who require hospitalization being older adults or those with concurrent other liver disease and/or comorbid conditions.

» Prognosis

Around 99% children recover without sequelae. Persons with underlying chronic liver disease have an increased risk of death. In rare cases of acute liver failure due to HAV hepatitis, the patient may die within days to weeks and requires evaluation for liver transplantation. The prognosis is poor if hepatic coma or ascites develop; liver transplantation is indicated under these circumstances and is life-saving. Incomplete resolution can cause a prolonged hepatitis; however, resolution invariably occurs without long-term hepatic sequelae. Rare cases of aplastic anemia following acute infectious hepatitis have been reported. A benign relapse of symptoms may occur in 10%–15% of cases after 6–10 weeks of apparent resolution.

Collier MG et al: Hepatitis A hospitalizations in the United States, 2002–2011. Hepatology 2015;61:481 [PMID: 25266085].

Dorell CG et al: Hepatitis A vaccination coverage among adolescents in the United States. Pediatrics 2012;129:213 [PMID: 22271690].

Erhart LM, Ernst KC: The changing epidemiology of hepatitis A in Arizona following intensive immunization programs (1988–2007). Vaccine 2012;30:6103 [PMID: 22835739].

Hepatitis A in Red Book: 2012 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 29th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2012.

HEPATITIS B

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Gastrointestinal upset, anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea.
- Jaundice, tender hepatomegaly, abnormal LFTs.
- Serologic evidence of hepatitis B disease: HBsAg, HBeAg, anti-HBc IgM.
- History of parenteral, sexual, or household exposure or maternal HBsAg carriage.

» General Considerations

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is a DNA virus whose infection has an incubation period of 45–160 days (see Table 22–6). HBV is either acquired perinatally from a carrier mother, or later in life from exposure to contaminated blood through shared needles, needle sticks, skin piercing, tattoos, or sexual transmission. Transmission via blood products is nowadays rare.

» Pathophysiology

The HBV particle is composed of a core that is found in the nucleus of infected liver cells and a double outer shell (surface antigen or HBsAg). The nomenclature for the viral antigens and antibodies is found in the table of abbreviations. HBeAg, a truncated soluble form of HBcAg, correlates with active virus replication. Persistence of HBeAg is a marker of infectivity, whereas the appearance of anti-HBe generally implies a lower level of viral replication. However, HBV mutant viruses (precore mutant) may replicate with negative HBeAg tests and positive tests for anti-HBe antibody (HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis) and are associated with a more virulent form of hepatitis. Circulating HBV DNA (measured by PCR) also indicates viral replication.

» Prevention

HBV vaccination is the preferred method for prevention. Universal immunization of all infants born in the United States is now recommended, as it is in most other countries. Other control methods include screening of blood donors and pregnant women, use of properly sterilized needles and surgical equipment, avoidance of sexual contact with carriers, general adoption of safe sex practices, and vaccination of household contacts, sexual partners, medical personnel, and those at high risk. For postexposure prophylaxis, HBV vaccine alone (see Chapter 10) or together with administration of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) (0.06 mL/kg intramuscularly, given as soon as possible after exposure, up to 7 days). The risk of vertical transmission is dramatically reduced with the combination of newborn vaccination and HBIG administration. For infected pregnant women with high viral loads, use of oral antivirals in the last half of pregnancy combined with postdelivery prophylaxis can further reduce perinatal prophylaxis failures from 5% to 1.5%.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most infants and young children are asymptomatic, especially if the infection is acquired vertically. Symptoms of acute HBV infection may include a slight fever, malaise, and mild gastrointestinal upset. Visible jaundice is usually the first significant finding and is accompanied by darkening of the urine and pale or clay-colored stools. Hepatomegaly is frequently present. Rare presentations include immune complex mediated rash, arthritis or glomerulonephritis or nephrotic syndrome.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis of acute HBV infection is confirmed by the presence of HBsAg and anti-HBc IgM. Recovery from acute infection is accompanied by HBsAg clearance and

Table 22–7. Phases of chronic hepatitis B infection.

Phase	HBeAg/Anti-HBeAb	HBsAg/Anti-HBsAb	ALT	HBVDNA
Immune tolerant	Positive/negative	Positive/negative	Normal	> 20,000 IU/mL
Immune active	Positive/negative	Positive/negative	Elevated	High
Chronic HBsAg carrier	Negative/positive	Positive/negative	Normal	< 2000 IU/mL
HBeAg negative hepatitis/reactivation	Negative/positive	Positive/negative	Elevated	> 2000 IU/mL
HBsAg clearance	Negative/positive	Negative/positive	Normal	Undetectable

appearance of anti-HBs and anti-HBc IgG. Individuals who are immune by vaccination are positive for anti-HBs, but negative for anti-HBc IgG. Chronic infection is defined as the presence of HBsAg for at least 6 months. Vertical transmission to newborns is documented by positive HBsAg. LFT results are similar to those discussed earlier for hepatitis A. Liver biopsy is most useful in chronic infection to determine the degree of fibrosis and inflammation. Renal involvement may be suspected on the basis of urinary findings suggesting glomerulonephritis or nephrotic syndrome. The various phases of chronic HBV infection are shown in Table 22–7.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differentiation between HAV and HBV disease is aided by a history of parenteral exposure, an HBsAg-positive parent, or an unusually long period of incubation. HBV and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection or Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infection are differentiated serologically. The history may suggest a drug-induced hepatitis, especially if a serum sickness prodrome is reported. Autoimmune hepatitis Wilson disease, hemochromatosis, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, and drug-induced hepatitis should also be considered.

» Treatment

Supportive measures are used during the active symptomatic stage of acute HBV infection. Corticosteroids are contraindicated. No other treatment is needed for acute HBV infection. For acute infection complicated by acute liver failure, nucleos(t)ide therapy may be helpful. For patients with chronic infection who persist in the immunoactive phase for more than 6 months or with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis, there are currently several approved treatment options in the United States. Treatment with α-interferon (5–6 million U/m^2 of body surface area injected subcutaneously three times a week for 4–6 months) inhibits viral replication in 30%–40% of patients, normalizes the ALT level, and leads to the disappearance of HBeAg and the appearance of anti-HBe. Side effects are common. Younger children may respond better than older children. Orally administered nucleoside analog therapy includes lamivudine (3 mg/kg/d up to 100 mg/d) and entecavir (0.15–0.5 mg daily depending on age and weight) for children > 2 years old, or adefovir (10 mg/d) or tenofovir (300 mg/d) for children > 12 years old, and entecavir (0.5 mg once daily) or telbivudine (600 mg once daily) for children > 16 years old and leads to a successful response in 25%–75% of treated children, with minimal side effects, but may require long-term treatment. However, resistant virus can emerge, more frequently with lamivudine and much less with entecavir and tenofovir. Pegylated interferon, additional oral antiviral agents (with much lower rates of viral resistance), and combination therapy are promising options being tested in children. Immunotolerant children and chronic carriers do not respond to therapy. Liver transplantation is successful in acute liver failure due to hepatitis B; however, reinfection is common following liver transplantation for chronic hepatitis B unless long-term HBIG or antivirals are used.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for acute HBV infection is good in older children, although acute liver failure (< 0.1%) or chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis (up to 10%) may supervene. The course of the acute disease is variable, but jaundice seldom persists for more than 2 weeks. HBsAg disappears in 95% of cases at the time of clinical recovery. Chronic infection is particularly common in children with vertical transmission, Down syndrome, or leukemia, and in those undergoing chronic hemodialysis. Persistence of neonatally acquired HBsAg occurs in 70%–90% of infants without immunoprophylaxis or vaccination. The presence of HBeAg in the HBsAg carrier indicates ongoing viral replication. However, 1%–2% of children infected at birth will show spontaneous seroconversion of HBeAg each year. If HBV infection is acquired later in childhood, HBV is cleared and recovery occurs in 90%–95% of patients. Chronic HBV disease predisposes the patient to development of hepatocellular carcinoma. Once chronic HBV infection is established, surveillance for development of hepatocellular carcinoma with serum α-fetoprotein is performed biannually and ultrasonography yearly. Routine

HBV vaccination of newborns in endemic countries has reduced the incidence of acute liver failure, chronic hepatitis, and hepatocellular carcinoma in children.

Abdel-Hady M, Kelly D: Chronic hepatitis B in children and adolescents: epidemiology and management. Paediatr Drugs 2013;15:311–317 [PMID: 23529864].

Davison S: Management of chronic hepatitis B infection. Arch Dis Child 2014;99:1037–1042 [PMID: 24812303].

HEPATITIS C

» General Considerations

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is the most common cause of non-B chronic hepatitis (see Table 22–6). HCV is a single-stranded RNA flavivirus with at least seven genotypes. Risk factors in adults and adolescents include illicit use of intravenous drugs, occupational or sexual exposure and a history of transfusion of blood products prior to 1992. Most cases in children are associated with transmission from an infected mother (vertical transmission) or rarely from other household contacts, and in adolescents from IV drug use or sexual contact. Vertical transmission from HCV-infected mothers occurs more commonly with mothers who are HIV-positive (15%–20%) compared with those who are HIV-negative (5%–6%). Approximately, 0.2% of children, 0.4% of adolescents, and 1.5% of adults in the United States have serologic evidence of infection.

» Prevention

At present, the only effective means of prevention is avoidance of exposure through elimination of risk-taking behaviors such as illicit use of intravenous drugs. There is no effective prevention for vertical transmission, but avoidance of fetal scalp monitoring in infant of mothers with HCV has been suggested. Elective Caesarean section is not recommended for HCV-monoinfected women, as it confers no reduction in the rate of mother-to-infant HCV transmission. Breast-feeding does not promote HCV transmission from mother to infant. It is advised to avoid breast-feeding if the nipples are bleeding, if mastitis is present or if the mother is experiencing a flare of hepatitis with jaundice postpartum. There is no vaccine, and no benefit from using immune globulin in infants born to infected mothers.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The majority of childhood cases, especially those acquired vertically, are asymptomatic despite development of chronic hepatitis. The incubation period is 1–5 months, with insidious onset of symptoms. Flu-like prodromal symptoms and jaundice occur in less than 25% of cases. Hepatosplenomegaly may or may not be evident. Ascites, clubbing, palmar erythema, or spider angiomas are rare and indicate progression to cirrhosis. In adults, chronic HCV infection has been associated with mixed cryoglobulinemia, polyarteritis nodosa, a sicca-like syndrome, and membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, as well as hepatocellular carcinoma.

B. Laboratory Findings

Since anti-HCV IgG crosses the placenta, testing anti-HCV IgG is not informative until the infant is 18 months old, at which time antibody testing should be performed. Patients older than 18 months with positive anti-HCV IgG should have subsequent testing for serum HCV RNA in order to determine active infection. Serum HCV RNA can be tested prior to 18 months of age, but should not be tested before 2 months old. If serum HCV RNA is positive in infancy, it should be rechecked when the infant is 12 months of age in order to determine presence of chronic infection. Fluctuating mild to moderate elevations of aminotransferases over long periods are characteristic of chronic HCV infection; however, normal aminotransferases are common in children. Cirrhosis in adults generally requires 20–30 years of chronic HCV infection, but it has occasionally developed sooner in children.

» Differential Diagnosis

HCV disease should be distinguished from HAV and HBV disease by serologic testing. Other causes of chronic hepatitis in children should be considered, including Wilson disease, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, autoimmune hepatitis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, drug-induced hepatitis, or steatohepatitis.

» Treatment

The treatment for chronic HCV has rapidly changed in the past decade and treatment for adults with direct acting antiviral therapies (DAA) for 12–24 weeks has resulted in HCV eradication rates of more than 90%. Double therapy in adults includes sofosbuvir, a nonstructural protein 5B (NS5B) polymerase inhibitor, plus either ledipasvir, an NS5A inhibitor, or simeprivir, a nonstructural protein protease inhibitor, both administered orally. There is also a five-drug combination administreted orally that is highly effective. At present, the only approved therapy for treatment of children with chronic HCV consists of subcutaneous injections of pegylated interferon-α and oral ribavirin. The sustained virological response rates of this therapy is only 40% in genotype 1 (most common in the United States) and approximately 80% for genotypes 2 and 3. Clinical trials of DAA drugs in children are ongoing. If the child with chronic HCV has mild disease, it seems prudent to wait for the highly efficatious oral therapies to be approved. End-stage

liver disease secondary to HCV responds well to liver transplantation, although reinfection of the transplanted liver is very common; the new DAA therapies appear to be effective at eradicating HCV post-liver transplant as well. A website provides up-to-date guidance for suggested therapies in this era of rapidly evolving approval of new drugs for HCV.

» Prognosis

Following an acute infection with HCV, 70%–80% of adults and older children develop a chronic infection. Around 20% adults with chronic HCV develop cirrhosis by 30 years. Infants infected by vertical transmission have a high rate of spontaneous resolution approaching 25%–40%. Most have spontaneous resolution by 24 months of age, but some may have spontaneous resolution as late as 7 years after vertical infection. The majority of children with chronic HCV have mild inflammation and fibrosis on liver biopsy, although cirrhosis may develop rapidly in rare cases. Limited 30-year follow-up of infants exposed to HCV by transfusion suggests a lower rate of progression to cirrhosis compared to adults. The prognosis for infants infected at birth with concomitant HIV infection is unknown, but the course appears benign for the first 10 years of life.

AASLD/IDSA: Recommendations for testing, managing and treating hepatitis C. http://www.hcvguidelines.org.

Mack CL et al: NASPGHAN practice guidelines: diagnosis and management of hepatitis C infection in infants, children, and adolescents. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2012;54:838 [PMID: 22487950].

Schwarz KB et al: The combination of ribavirin and peginterferon is superior to peginterferon and placebo for children and adolescents with chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2011; 140:450 [PMID: 21036173].

HEPATITIS D (DELTA AGENT)

The hepatitis D virus (HDV) is a 36-nm defective virus that requires the presence of HBsAg to be infectious (see Table 22–6). Thus, HDV infection can occur only in the presence of HBV infection. Transmission is by parenteral exposure or intimate contact. HDV is rare in North America, but common in Africa, South America, Turkey, Mongolia, southern Italy, and Russia. HDV can infect simultaneously with HBV, causing acute hepatitis, or can superinfect a patient with chronic HBV infection, predisposing the individual to chronic hepatitis or fulminant hepatitis. In children, the association between chronic HDV coinfection with HBV and chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis is strong. Vertical HDV transmission is rare. HDV can be detected by anti-HDV IgG, which indicates active or previous infection; active infection is confirmed by detecting HDV RNA by PCR or by detecting HDV IgM antibody. Treatment is directed at therapy for HBV infection.

Noureddin M, Gish R: Hepatitis delta: epidemiology, diagnosis and management 36 years after discovery. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2014;16:365 [PMID: 24293018].

HEPATITIS E

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection is a cause of enterically transmitted, epidemic hepatitis (see Table 22–6). It is rare in the United States. HEV is a hepevirus that is transmitted via the fecal-oral route. It occurs predominantly in developing countries in association with waterborne epidemics, and has only a 3% secondary attack rate in household contacts. Areas reporting epidemics include Southeast Asia, China, the Indian subcontinent, the Middle East, northern and western Africa, Mexico, and Central America, with sporadic cases in the United States and Europe. Recent reports suggest zoonotic transmission occurs in low endemic regions. Clinical manifestations resemble HAV infection except that symptomatic disease is rare in children, more common in adolescents and adults, and is associated with a high mortality (10%–20%) in pregnant women, particularly in the third trimester. HEV infection in individuals with chronic liver disease can cause acute deterioration. Zoonotic transmission from pigs, boars, and deer can lead to chronic infection and cirrhosis in immunocompromised individuals. Outside of these settings, chronic disease is not reported. Diagnosis is established by detecting anti-HEV IgM antibody or by HEV PCR. There is no effective treatment.

Kamar N et al: Hepatitis E. Lancet 2012;379:2477 [PMID: 22549046].

OTHER HEPATITIS VIRUSES

Other viruses may cause acute liver failure (ALF) or severe hepatitis in children, in some cases in association with aplastic anemia. Aplastic anemia occurs in a small proportion of patients recovering from hepatitis and in 10%–20% of those undergoing liver transplantation for ALF of unknown etiology. Parvovirus has been associated with severe hepatitis; the prognosis is relatively good in children. Infectious mononucleosis (EBV) is commonly associated with acute hepatitis and rare cases of EBV-associated ALF have been reported. Cytomegalovirus, parvovirus, adenovirus, herpes simplex virus, HHV-6, influenza A and B, HIV, brucella, Q-fever, and leptospirosis are other infectious causes of acute hepatitis or liver failure.

Bihari C et al: Parvovirus B19 associated hepatitis. Hepat Res Treat 2013;47:20–27 [PMID: 24232179].

Okano M, Gross TG: Acute or chronic life-threatening diseases associated with Epstein-Barr virus infection. Am J Med Sci 2012;343:483 [PMID: 22104426].

ACUTE LIVER FAILURE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute hepatitis with deepening jaundice.
- Extreme elevation of AST and ALT.
- Prolonged PT and INR.
- Encephalopathy and cerebral edema.
- Asterixis and fetor hepaticus.

General Considerations

Acute Liver Failure (ALF) is defined as acute liver dysfunction associated with significant hepatic synthetic dysfunction evidenced by vitamin K–resistant coagulopathy (INR > 2.0) within 8 weeks of onset of liver injury. This is often associated with encephalopathy, but in young children, encephalopathy may be difficult to detect. Without liver transplantation, mortality approaches 40% in children. In many cases, an identifiable cause is not found but is postulated to be an unusually virulent infectious agent or aggressive host immune response. Common identifiable causes of ALF are shown in Table 22–8.

Table 22–8. Common identifiable causes[a] of ALF by age.

Neonates	Infections: herpesviruses and enteroviruses. Metabolic: neonatal iron storage disease, galactosemia, fructosemia, tyrosinemia, FAO, mitochondrial disorders. Ischemia: congenital heart disease.
Infants 1–24 mo	Infections: HAV, HBV. Metabolic: FAO, mitochondrial disorders, tyrosinemia, fructosemia, bile acid synthesis defects. Drug: acetaminophen, valproate. Immune: AIH, HLH.
Children	Infections: EBV, HAV. Metabolic: FAO, Wilson disease. Drug: acetaminophen, valproate, others. Immune: AIH.
Adolescents	Infections: EBV, HAV. Metabolic: FAO, Wilson disease, acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Drug: acetaminophen, valproate, herbs, "ecstasy," others. Immune: AIH.

AIH, autoimmune hepatitis; ALF, acute liver failure; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; FAO, fatty acid oxidation defects; HAV, hepatitis A; HBV, hepatitis B; HLH, hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis.
[a]Unknown cause of ALF remains the most common etiology.

Clinical Findings

A. History

In some patients, ALF presents with the rapid development of deepening jaundice, bleeding, confusion, and progressive coma, while others are asymptomatic at the onset and then suddenly become severely ill during the second week of the disease. Jaundice, fever, anorexia, vomiting, and abdominal pain are the most common symptoms. A careful history of drug and toxin exposure may identify a drug-induced cause.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Children may present with flu-like symptoms, including malaise, myalgias, jaundice, nausea, and vomiting. Tender hepatomegaly is common, which may be followed by progressive shrinking of the liver, often with worsening hepatic function. Signs of chronic liver disease (splenomegaly, spider hemangiomata) should suggest an underlying chronic liver disease. Hyper-reflexia and positive extensor plantar responses are seen before the onset of encephalopathy.

C. Laboratory Findings

Characteristic findings include elevated serum bilirubin levels (usually > 15–20 mg/dL), sustained elevations of AST and ALT (> 3000 U/L), low serum albumin, hypoglycemia, and prolonged PT and INR. Blood ammonia levels become elevated, whereas blood urea nitrogen is often very low. Prolonged PT from disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) can be differentiated by determination of factor V (low in ALF and DIC) and VIII (normal to high in ALF and low in DIC). Rapid decreases in AST and ALT, together with shrinking hepatomegaly, due to massive necrosis and collapse, combined with worsening coagulopathy portend a poor prognosis. A high AST and ALT with normal bilirubin suggests acetaminophen toxicity or metabolic causes.

Differential Diagnosis

Severe hepatitis, with or without coagulopathy, due to infections, metabolic disease, autoimmune hepatitis or drug toxicity can initially mimic ALF. Acute leukemia, cardiomyopathy, and Budd-Chiari syndrome can mimic severe hepatitis. Patients with Reye syndrome or urea cycle defects are typically anicteric.

Complications

The development of renal failure and depth of hepatic coma are major prognostic factors. Patients in stage 4 coma (unresponsiveness to verbal stimuli, decorticate or decerebrate posturing) rarely survive without liver transplantation and may have residual central nervous system deficits even after transplant. Cerebral edema, which usually accompanies coma, is frequently the cause of death. Extreme prolongation of PT

or INR greater than 3.5 predicts poor recovery, except with acetaminophen overdose. Sepsis, hemorrhage, renal failure, and cardiorespiratory arrest are common terminal events.

» Treatment

Excellent critical care is paramount, including careful management of hypoglycemia, bleeding and coagulopathy, hyperammonemia, cerebral edema, and fluid balance, while systematically investigating for potentially treatable causes. Several therapies have failed to affect outcome, including exchange transfusion, plasmapheresis with plasma exchange, total body washout, charcoal hemoperfusion, and hemodialysis using a special high-permeability membrane. While spontaneous survival may occur in up to 50% of patients, liver transplant may be lifesaving in patients without signs of spontaneous recovery. Therefore, early transfer of patients in ALF to centers where liver transplantation can be performed is recommended. Criteria for deciding when to perform transplantation are not firmly established; however, serum bilirubin over 20 mg/dL, INR greater than 4, and factor V levels less than 20% indicate a poor prognosis. Prognosis is better for acetaminophen ingestion, particularly when N-acetylcysteine treatment is given. However, N-acetylcysteine is not recommended in non-acetominophen induced liver failure, as it does not improve survival and may, in fact, negatively impact survival in those younger than 2 years. Corticosteroids may be harmful, except in autoimmune hepatitis for which steroids may reverse ALF. Acyclovir is essential in herpes simplex or varicella-zoster virus infection. For hyperammonemia, oral antibiotics such as neomycin or rifaximin, and lactulose (1–2 mL/kg three or four times daily) are used to reduce blood ammonia levels and trap ammonia in the colon.

Close monitoring of fluid and electrolytes is mandatory and requires a central venous line. Adequate dextrose should be infused (6–8 mg/kg/min) to maintain normal blood glucose and cellular metabolism. Diuretics, sedatives, and tranquilizers should be used sparingly. Early signs of cerebral edema are treated with infusions of mannitol (0.5–1.0 g/kg). Comatose patients should be intubated, given mechanical ventilatory support, and monitored for signs of infection. Coagulopathy is treated with fresh-frozen plasma, recombinant factor VIIa, other clotting factor concentrates, platelet infusions, or exchange transfusion for bleeding or procedures. Hemodialysis may help stabilize a patient while awaiting liver transplantation. Monitoring for increased intracranial pressure (hepatic coma stages 3 and 4) in patients awaiting liver transplantation is advocated by some. Continuous venous-venous dialysis may be helpful to maintain fluid balance.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is primarily dependent on the etiology and depth of coma. Only 20%–30% of children with stage 3 or 4 hepatic encephalopathy will have a spontaneous recovery. Children with acute acetaminophen toxicity have a high rate of spontaneous survival, while 40% of children with indeterminate ALF (of unknown etiology) will have a spontaneous recovery. Data from a recent large study suggest that the spontaneous recovery rate is about 40%–50% when all causes of ALF are combined; 30% of patients will receive a liver transplant; and 20% will die without a transplant. Exchange transfusions or other modes of heroic therapy do not improve survival figures. Indeterminate ALF, non-acetaminophen drug-induced ALF, and ALF in infants are associated with a poorer prognosis. Acetaminophen and autoimmune hepatitis etiologies of ALF and rising levels of factors V and VII, coupled with rising levels of serum α-fetoprotein, may signify a more favorable prognosis. The 1-year survival rate in patients who undergo liver transplantation for ALF is 60%–85%.

Devictor D et al: Acute liver failure in neonates, infants and children. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;5:717 [PMID: 22017699].

Narkewicz MR et al: Pattern of diagnostic evaluation for the causes of pediatric acute liver failure: an opportunity for quality improvement. J Pediatr 2009;155:801 [PMID: 1963443].

Squires RH: Acute liver failure in children. Semin Liver Dis 2008;28:153 [PMID: 18452115].

Squires RH et al: Intravenous N-acetylcysteine in pediatric patients with nonacetominophen acute liver failure: a placebo controlled clinical trial. Hepatology 2013;57:1542 [PMID: 22886633]

Sundaram SS et al: Characterization and outcomes of young infants with acute liver failure. J Pediatr 2011;159:813 [PMID: 21621221].

AUTOIMMUNE HEPATITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute or chronic hepatitis.
- Hypergammaglobulinemia.
- Positive antinuclear antibodies (ANA), anti–smooth muscle antibodies (ASMA), anti–liver-kidney microsomal (LKM) antibodies, anti-actin antibodies, or anti–soluble liver antigen antibodies (SLA).

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) is a progressive inflammatory disorder of unknown etiology. It is characterized histologically by portal tract inflammation that extends into the parenchyma; serologically by the presence of nonorgan-specific

autoantibodies; biochemically by elevated aminotransferases and serum IgG; and clinically by response to immunosuppressive treatment in the absence of other known causes of liver disease. A family history of autoimmune diseases is present in approximately 40% of cases.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Pediatric patients are often asymptomatic early in the disease process and come to medical attention based on an incidental finding of elevated liver tests. Lethargy as well as malaise is a common symptom, and patients may also complain of jaundice, recurrent fevers, abdominal pain, or distension. Other complaints at the time of presentation may include a recurrent rash, arthritis, chronic diarrhea, or amenorrhea. Hepatomegaly and/or splenomegaly may be found on examination, in association with elevated liver tests. In more advanced cases, jaundice and ascites may develop. Cutaneous signs of chronic liver disease may be noted (eg, spider angiomas, palmar erythema, and digital clubbing). Occasionally patients present with acute liver failure (ALF).

C. Laboratory Findings

Liver tests reveal moderate elevations of serum AST, ALT, and variable elevations of alkaline phosphatase, bilirubin, and total IgG. Two subtypes of disease have been described based on the autoantibodies present: type 1 AIH—ANA and/or ASMA (anti-actin); type 2 AIH—anti-LKM (anti–liver kidney microsomal). Type 1 AIH is the most common form of AIH in the United States. Type 2 AIH presents at a younger age and is more likely to present with ALF compared to type 1. A genetic susceptibility to AIH is suggested by the increased incidence of the histocompatibility alleles HLA DR*0301 (type 1 AIH) or HLA DR*0701 (type 2 AIH). Liver biopsy remains the gold standard in diagnosis and reveals the typical histological picture of interface hepatitis: a dense infiltration of the portal tracts consisting mainly of lymphocytes and plasma cells that extends into the liver lobules with destruction of the hepatocytes at the periphery of the lobule and erosion of the limiting plate. There may be bridging fibrosis or cirrhosis evident as well.

» Differential Diagnosis

Laboratory and histologic findings differentiate other types of chronic hepatitis (eg, HBV, HCV; steatohepatitis; Wilson disease; α_1-antitrypsin deficiency; primary sclerosing cholangitis [PSC]). PSC occasionally presents in a manner similar to AIH, including the presence of autoantibodies. Up to 30% of pediatric patients have an "overlap syndrome" of AIH and PSC. Anti-HCV antibodies can be falsely positive and should be confirmed by HCV PCR. Drug-induced (minocycline, isoniazid, methyldopa, pemoline) chronic hepatitis should be ruled out. In addition, minocycline has been reported as a potential "trigger" of type 1 AIH.

» Complications

Untreated disease that continues for months to years eventually results in cirrhosis, with complications of portal hypertension and liver synthetic dysfunction. Persistent malaise, fatigue, amenorrhea, and anorexia parallel disease activity. Bleeding from esophageal varices and development of ascites usually signal impending hepatic failure.

» Treatment

Corticosteroids (prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d maximum 60 mg) as induction therapy decreases the mortality rate during the early active phase of the disease. Recent data in adults suggests budesonide may be as efficacious as prednisone with less steroid side effects in some cases without cirrhosis. Maintenance therapy with azathioprine or 6-mercaptopurine (6-MP), 1–2 mg/kg/d, is of value in decreasing the side effects of long-term corticosteroid therapy, but should not be used alone during the induction phase of treatment. Thiopurine methyltransferase activity in red blood cells or genotype should be assessed prior to starting azathioprine or 6-MP, to prevent extremely high blood levels and severe bone marrow toxicity. Steroids are reduced over a 3- to 6-month period, and azathioprine is continued for at least 1–2 years. At that point, if AST and ALT have been consistently normal in type 1 AIH, then one can consider a future wean off of therapy. A liver biopsy must be performed before stopping azathioprine or 6-MP therapy; if any inflammation persists, then azathioprine or 6-MP is continued. The majority of pediatric patients will require chronic azathioprine or 6-MP therapy. Relapses are treated with a course of steroids. Type 2 AIH patients must remain on azathioprine and low dose corticosteroids. Cyclosporine, tacrolimus, or methotrexate may be helpful in poorly responsive cases. Mycophenolate mofetil can be substituted for azathioprine or 6-MP. Liver transplantation is indicated when disease progresses to decompensated cirrhosis or in cases presenting in ALF that do not respond to steroid therapy.

» Prognosis

The overall prognosis for AIH is improved significantly with early therapy and approximately 90% of patients with type 1 AIH will enter remission. Some studies report permanent remisssion (normal histologic findings) in 15%–20% of patients. Relapses (seen clinically and histologically) occur in 40%–50% of patients after cessation of therapy; remissions follow repeat treatment. Complications of portal hypertension (bleeding varices, ascites, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, and hepatopulmonary syndrome) require specific therapy or liver transplant. Disease recurs after transplantation in at least 20% of cases and is treated by adding azathioprine or 6-MP to the post-transplant immunosuppressant regimen.

Czaja AJ: Current and prospective pharmacotherapy for autoimmune hepatitis. Exper Opin Pharmacother 2014;15(12):1715–36 [PMID: 24961409].
Mieli-Vergani G, Vergani D: Autoimmune hepatitis. Nat Rev 2011;8:320 [PMID: 21537351].

NONALCOHOLIC FATTY LIVER DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Hepatomegaly in patient with BMI more than 95th percentile.
- Elevated ALT > AST.
- Detection of fatty infiltration of the liver on ultrasound.
- Histologic evidence of fat in the liver.
- Insulin resistance.

Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), a clinicopathologic condition of abnormal heptic fat deposition in the absence of alcohol, is the most common cause of abnormal liver function tests in the United States. NAFLD ranges from bland steatosis, to fat and inflammation, with or without scarring (also referred to as nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, NASH) to cirrhosis. Trends in NAFLD parallel trends in obesity, with up to 10% of all children, and 38% of obese children affected in the United States. Many children with NAFLD are also affected by type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and the metabolic syndrome. Most children are 11–13 years of age at diagnosis, with males (ratio of 2:1) and Hispanics at highest risk.

» Prevention

The most effective therapy is prevention of the overweight or obese state.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Most patients with NAFLD are asymptomatic and discovered upon routine screening. Some may complain of fatigue or right upper quadrant pain. Obesity and insulin resistance are known risk factors. Moderate sleep apnea is also common in children with NAFLD.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with NAFLD may present with asymptomatic soft hepatomegaly, though abdominal adiposity may make this difficult to assess. Physical findings of insulin resistance (acanthosis nigricans and a buffalo hump) are frequently present.

C. Laboratory Findings

Serum aminotransferases will not identify bland steatosis, so NAFLD patient may have completely normal AST and ALT. If elevated, the AST and ALT are typically elevated less than 1.5 times the upper limit of normal, with an ALT:AST ratio of > 1. Alkaline phosphatase and GGT may be mildly elevated, but bilirubin is normal. Hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia are also common. If performed, the liver biopsy may show micro- or macrovesicular steatosis, hepatocyte ballooning, Mallory bodies, and lobular or portal inflammation. In addition, varying degrees of fibrosis from portal focused to cirrhosis may be present. Obstructive sleep apnea and hypoxia appear to contribute to NAFLD disease severity. There are no established reliable biochemical predictors of the degree of hepatic fibrosis, but new biomarkers, like patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing 3 polymorphisms and cytokeratin-18, show promise in research laboratories.

D. Imaging

Ultrasonography, CT scan, or MRI can be used to confirm fatty infiltration of the liver; however, ultrasound is of lower cost and lacks radiation exposure, although it may be insensitive in severe central adiposity or if less than 30% steatosis is present. Currently, radiologic imaging cannot distinguish bland steatosis from the more severe NASH, nor reliably identify fibrosis. Transient elastography is a research tool that shows promise in estimating hepatic fibrosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Steatohepatitis is also associated with Wilson disease, hereditary fructose intolerance, tyrosinemia, HCV hepatitis, cystic fibrosis, fatty acid oxidation defects, kwashiorkor, Reye syndrome, respiratory chain defects, total parenteral nutrition associated liver disease, and toxic hepatopathy (ethanol and others).

» Complications

Untreated, NAFLD with hepatic inflammation can progress to cirrhosis with complications that include portal hypertension. Dyslipidemia, hypertension, and insulin resistance are more common in children and adolescents with NAFLD.

» Treatment

Multiple potential therapies, including metformin, UDCA, and lipid-lowering agents have been tested without therapeutic success. Therefore, treatment is focused on lifestyle modifications, through both dietary changes and exercise, to

induce slow weight loss. A 10% decrease in body weight can significantly improve NAFLD. Vitamin E, an antioxidant, has shown promise in clinical trials in improving histologically confirmed NASH.

» Prognosis

Although untreated NAFLD can progress to cirrhosis and liver failure; there is a very high response rate to weight reduction. However, success in achieving long-term weight reduction is low in children and adults.

Chalasani A et al: The diagnosis and management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; practice guidelines by the American Gastroenterological Association, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and American College of Gastroenterology. Gastroenterology 2012;143:503 [PMID: 22656328].

Sundaram SS: Obstructive Sleep apnea and hypoxemia are associated with advanced liver histology in pediatric nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Peds 2014;164:699 [PMID: 24321532].

Yeh MM et al: Pathological features of fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology. 2014 Oct;147(4):754 [PMID: 25109884].

α_1-ANTITRYPSIN DEFICIENCY LIVER DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Serum α_1-antitrypsin level < 50–80 mg/dL
- Identification of a specific protease inhibitor (PI) phenotype (PIZZ, PISZ) or genotype.
- Detection of diastase-resistant glycoprotein deposits in periportal hepatocytes.
- Histologic evidence of liver disease.
- Family history of early-onset pulmonary disease or liver disease.

» General Considerations

The disease is caused by a deficiency in α_1-antitrypsin, a protease inhibitor (Pi) system, predisposing patients to chronic liver disease, and an early onset of pulmonary emphysema. Liver disease is associated only with the Pi phenotypes ZZ and SZ. The accumulation of misfolded aggregates of α_1-antitrypsin protein in the liver causes the liver injury by unclear mechanisms.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency should be considered in all infants with neonatal cholestasis. About 10%–20% of affected individuals present with neonatal cholestasis. Serum GGT is usually elevated. Jaundice, acholic stools, and malabsorption may also be present. Infants are often small for gestational age, and hepatosplenomegaly may be present. The family history may be positive for emphysema or cirrhosis.

The disease can also present in older children, where hepatomegaly or physical findings suggestive of cirrhosis and portal hypertension should lead to consideration of α_1-antitrypsin deficiency. Recurrent pulmonary disease (bronchitis, pneumonia) may be present in some older children. Very few children have significant pulmonary involvement. Most affected children are completely asymptomatic, with no laboratory or clinical evidence of liver or lung disease.

B. Laboratory Findings

Serum α_1-Antitrypsin level is low (< 50–80 mg/dL) in homozygotes (PiZZ). Specific Pi phenotyping or genotyping should be done to confirm the diagnosis. LFTs often reflect underlying hepatic pathologic changes. Hyperbilirubinemia (mixed) and elevated aminotransferases, alkaline phosphatase, and GGT are present early. Hyperbilirubinemia generally resolves, while aminotransferase and GGT elevation may persist. Signs of cirrhosis and hypersplenism may develop even when LFTs are normal.

Liver biopsy findings after age 6 months show diastase resistant, periodic acid–Schiff staining intracellular globules, particularly in periportal zones. These may be absent prior to age 6 months, but when present are characteristic of α_1-antitrypsin deficiency.

» Differential Diagnosis

In newborns, other specific causes of neonatal cholestasis need to be considered, including biliary atresia. In older children, other causes of insidious cirrhosis (eg, HBV or HCV infection, AIH, Wilson disease, cystic fibrosis, and glycogen storage disease) should be considered.

» Complications

Of all infants with PiZZ α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, only 15%–20% develop liver disease in childhood, and many have clinical recovery. Thus, other genetic or environmental modifiers must be involved. An associated abnormality in the microsomal disposal of accumulated aggregates may contribute to the liver disease phenotype. The complications of portal hypertension, cirrhosis, and chronic cholestasis predominate in affected children. Occasionally, children develop paucity of interlobular bile ducts.

Early-onset pulmonary emphysema occurs in young adults (age 30–40 years), particularly in smokers. An increased susceptibility to hepatocellular carcinoma has

been noted in cirrhosis associated with α_1-antitrypsin deficiency.

Treatment

There is no specific treatment for the liver disease of this disorder. Replacement of the protein by infusion therapy is used to prevent or treat pulmonary disease in affected adults. The neonatal cholestatic condition is treated with choleretics, medium-chain triglyceride–containing formula, and water-soluble preparations of fat-soluble vitamins (see Table 22–4). UDCA may reduce AST, ALT, and GGT, but its effect on outcome is unknown. Clinical trials of carbamezapine are underway and other therapies are in development. Portal hypertension, esophageal bleeding, ascites, and other complications are treated as described elsewhere. Hepatitis A and B vaccines should be given to children with α_1-antitrypsin deficiency. Genetic counseling is indicated when the diagnosis is made. Diagnosis by prenatal screening is possible. Liver transplantation, performed for end-stage liver disease cures the deficiency with excellent long-term survival and prevents the development of pulmonary disease. Passive and active cigarette smoke exposure should be eliminated to help prevent pulmonary manifestations, and obesity should be avoided.

Prognosis

Of those patients presenting with neonatal cholestasis, approximately 10%–25% will need liver transplantation in the first 5 years of life, 15%–25% during childhood or adolescence, and 50%–75% will survive into adulthood with variable degrees of liver fibrosis. A correlation between histologic patterns and clinical course has been documented in the infantile form of the disease. Liver failure can be expected 5–15 years after development of cirrhosis. Recurrence or persistence of hyperbilirubinemia along with worsening coagulation studies indicates the need for evaluation for liver transplantation. Decompensated cirrhosis caused by this disease is an indication for liver transplantation. Pulmonary involvement is prevented by liver transplantation. Heterozygotes may have a slightly higher incidence of liver disease. The exact relationship between low levels of serum α_1-antitrypsin and the development of liver disease is unclear. Emphysema develops because of a lack of inhibition of neutrophil elastase, which destroys pulmonary connective tissue.

Perlmutter DH: α_1 Antitrypsin deficiency. In: Suchy FJ, Sokol RJ, Balistreri WF (eds): Liver Disease in Children. 4th ed. Cambridge University Press, 2014:400–418.

Wang Y and Perlmutter DH: Targeting intracellular degradation pathways for treatment of liver disease caused by α_1-antitrypsin deficiency. Pediatr Res 2014;75:133–139 [PMID: 24226634].

WILSON DISEASE (HEPATOLENTICULAR DEGENERATION)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute or chronic liver disease.
- Deteriorating neurologic status.
- Kayser-Fleischer rings.
- Elevated liver copper.
- Abnormalities in levels of ceruloplasmin and serum and urine copper.

General Considerations

Wilson disease is caused by mutations in the gene ATP7B on chromosome 13 coding for a specific P-type adenosine triphosphatase involved in copper transport. This results in impaired bile excretion of copper and incorporation of copper into ceruloplasmin by the liver. The accumulated hepatic copper causes oxidant (free-radical) damage to the liver. Subsequently, copper accumulates in the basal ganglia and other tissues. The disease should be considered in all children older than age 2 years with evidence of liver disease (especially with hemolysis) or with suggestive neurologic signs. A family history is often present, and 25% of patients are identified by screening asymptomatic homozygous family members. The disease is autosomal recessive and occurs in 1:30,000 live births in all populations.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Hepatic involvement may present as acute liver failure, acute hepatitis, chronic liver disease, cholelithiasis, fatty liver disease, or as cirrhosis with portal hypertension. Findings may include jaundice, hepatomegaly early in childhood, splenomegaly, and Kayser-Fleischer rings. The disease is considered after 3–4 years of age. The later onset of neurologic or psychiatric manifestations after age 10 years may include tremor, dysarthria, and drooling. Deterioration in school performance can be the earliest neurologic expression of disease. The Kayser-Fleischer ring is a brown band at the junction of the iris and cornea, generally requiring slit-lamp examination for detection. Absence of Kayser-Fleischer rings does not exclude this diagnosis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The laboratory diagnosis can be challenging. Plasma ceruloplasmin levels (measured by the oxidase method) are usually

less than 20 mg/dL. (Normal values are 23–43 mg/dL.) Low values, however, occur normally in infants younger than 3 months, and in at least 10%–20% of homozygotes the levels may be within the lower end of the normal range (20–30 mg/dL), particularly if immunoassays are used to measure ceruloplasmin. Rare patients with higher ceruloplasmin levels have been reported. Serum copper levels are low, but the overlap with normal is too great for satisfactory discrimination. In acute fulminant Wilson disease, serum copper levels are elevated markedly, owing to hepatic necrosis and release of copper. The presence of anemia, hemolysis, very high serum bilirubin levels (> 20–30 mg/dL), low alkaline phosphatase, and low uric acid are characteristic of acute Wilson disease. Urine copper excretion in children older than 3 years is normally less than 30 mcg/d; in Wilson disease, it is generally greater than 100 mcg/d although it can be as low as > 40 mcg/d. Finally, the tissue content of copper from a liver biopsy, normally less than 40–50 mcg/g dry tissue, is greater than 250 mcg/g in most Wilson disease patients, but may be as low as > 75 mcg/d when characteristic liver histology is present.

Glycosuria and aminoaciduria have been reported. Hemolysis and gallstones may be present; bone lesions simulating those of osteochondritis dissecans have also been found.

The coarse nodular cirrhosis, macrovesicular steatosis, and glycogenated nuclei in hepatocytes seen on liver biopsy may distinguish Wilson disease from other types of cirrhosis. Early in the disease, vacuolation of liver cells, steatosis, and lipofuscin granules can be seen, as well as Mallory bodies. The presence of Mallory bodies in a child is strongly suggestive of Wilson disease. Stains for copper may sometimes be negative despite high copper content in the liver. Therefore, quantitative liver copper levels must be determined biochemically on biopsy specimens. Electron microscopy findings of abnormal mitochondria may be helpful.

» Differential Diagnosis

During the icteric phase, acute or chronic viral hepatitis, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, AIH, and drug-induced hepatitis are the usual diagnostic possibilities. NASH may have similar histology and be confused with Wilson disease in overweight patients. Later, other causes of cirrhosis and portal hypertension require consideration. Laboratory testing for plasma ceruloplasmin, 24-hour urine copper excretion, liver quantitative copper concentration, and a slit-lamp examination of the cornea will differentiate Wilson disease from the others. Urinary copper excretion during penicillamine challenge (500 mg twice a day in the older child or adult) may also be helpful. Genetic testing of ATP7B is available and may be helpful if two disease causing mutations are present. Other copper storage diseases that occur in early childhood include Indian childhood cirrhosis, Tyrolean childhood cirrhosis, and idiopathic copper toxicosis. However, ceruloplasmin concentrations are normal to elevated in these conditions.

» Complications

Cirrhosis, hepatic coma, progressive neurologic degeneration, and death are the rule in the untreated patient. The complications of portal hypertension (variceal hemorrhage, ascites) may be present at diagnosis. Progressive central nervous system disease and terminal aspiration pneumonia were common in untreated older people. Acute hemolytic disease may result in acute renal failure and profound jaundice as part of the presentation of fulminant hepatitis.

» Treatment

Copper chelation with D-penicillamine or trientine hydrochloride, 750–1500 mg/d orally, is the treatment of choice, whether or not the patient is symptomatic. The target dose for children is 20 mg/kg/d; begin with 250 mg/d and increase the dose weekly by 250 mg increments. Strict dietary restriction of copper intake is not practical; however, selected high copper foods should be minimized. Supplementation with zinc acetate (25–50 mg orally, three times daily) may reduce copper absorption but must not be given at same time as copper chelators. Copper chelation or zinc therapy is continued for life, although doses of chelators may be reduced transiently at the time of surgery or early in pregnancy. Vitamin B_6 (25 mg) is given daily during therapy with penicillamine to prevent optic neuritis. In some countries, after a clinical response to penicillamine or trientine, zinc therapy is substituted and continued for life. Tetrathiomolybdate is being tested as an alternative therapy. Noncompliance with any of the drug regimens (including zinc therapy) can lead to sudden fulminant liver failure and death.

Liver transplantation is indicated for all cases of acute fulminant disease (with hemolysis and renal failure), for progressive hepatic decompensation despite several months of therapy, and severe progressive hepatic insufficiency in patients who inadvisedly discontinue penicillamine, triene, or zinc therapy.

» Prognosis

The prognosis of untreated Wilson disease is poor. The fulminant presentation is fatal without liver transplantation in almost all cases. Copper chelation reduces hepatic copper content, reverses many of the liver lesions, and can stabilize the clinical course of established cirrhosis. Neurologic symptoms generally respond to therapy. All siblings should be immediately screened and homozygotes given treatment with copper chelation or zinc acetate therapy, even if asymptomatic. Recent data suggest that zinc monotherapy may not be as effective for hepatic Wilson disease as copper chelation. Genetic testing (haplotype analysis or ATP7B genotyping) is

available clinically if there is any doubt about the diagnosis and for family members.

Arnon R et al: Wilson disease in children: serum aminotransferases and urinary copper on triethylene tetramine dihydrochloride (trientine) treatment. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2007;44:596 [PMID: 17460493].

European Association for Study of Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Wilson's disease. J Hepatol 2012 Mar;56(3): 671–685 [PMID: 22340672].

Mizuochi T et al: Zinc monotherapy from time of diagnosis for young pediatric patients with presymptomatic Wilson disease. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2011;53:365 [PMID: 21970993].

Roberts EA, Schilsky ML: American Association for Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD): diagnosis and treatment of Wilson disease: an update. Hepatology 2008;47:2089–2111 [PMID: 18506894].

Rosencrantz R, Schilsky M: Wilson disease: pathogenesis and clinical considerations in diagnosis and treatment. Semin Liver Dis 2011 Aug;31:245–259 [PMID: 21901655].

DRUG-INDUCED LIVER DISEASE

» General Considerations

Drug-induced liver injury (DILI) may be predictable or unpredictable. Predictable hepatotoxins cause liver injury in a dose dependent manner. Unpredictable hepatotoxins cause liver injury in an idiosyncratic manner, which may be influenced by the genetic and environmental characteristics of particular individuals. DILI has been described with a wide variety of medications, including antihypertensives, acetaminophen, anabolic steroids, antibiotics, anticonvulsants, antidepressants, antituberculosis medications, antipsychotics, antivirals, herbals, dietary supplements, and weight loss agents.

» Symptoms

Many people with DILI are asymptomatic and detected because aminotransferases are performed for other reasons. If symptomatic, indicating more severe DILI, patients may have malaise, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, right upper quadrant pain, jaundice, acholic stools, and dark urine. Some may have severe pruritus. If the DILI is a hypersensitivity reaction, fever and rash may also occur.

» Diagnosis

No specific testing for DILI is available, with diagnosis requiring a causality assessment. This assessment should determine if the patient was exposed to the drug during a logical time period; if the drug has previously been reported to cause DILI; and if the symptom complex is consistent with DILI. In addition, other explanations for liver injury should be sought, including viral hepatitis, autoimmune hepatitis, and alcohol abuse.

» Treatment

Primary therapy is discontinuation of the offending drug, and avoiding reexposure. This typically results in rapid and complete resolution of symptoms. However, DILI severe enough to cause acute liver failure has a poor prognosis without urgent liver transplant. Specific therapies for some DILI etiologies include N-acetylcysteine for acetaminophen poisoning. The use of ursodeoxycholic acid may speed resolution of jaundice. The use of corticosteroids for DILI remains controversial. A new NIH sponsored website provides up-to-date information about each drug and herbal substance associated with DILI (Liver Tox).

Liver Tox: Clinical and research information on drug-induced liver injury, http://www.livertox.nih.gov/.

CIRRHOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Underlying liver disease.
- Nodular hard liver and splenomegaly.
- Nodular liver on abdominal imaging.
- Liver biopsy demonstrating cirrhosis.

» General Considerations

Cirrhosis is a histologically defined condition of the liver characterized by diffuse hepatocyte injury and regeneration, an increase in connective tissue (bridging fibrosis), and disorganization of the lobular and vascular architecture (regenerative nodules). It may be micronodular or macronodular in appearance. It is the vasculature distortion that leads to increased resistance to blood flow, producing portal hypertension, and its consequences.

Many liver diseases may progress to cirrhosis. In children, the two most common forms of cirrhosis are postnecrotic and biliary, each of which has different causes, symptoms, and treatments. Both forms can eventually lead to liver failure and death.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Many children with cirrhosis may be asymptomatic early in the course. Malaise, loss of appetite, failure to thrive, and nausea are frequent complaints, especially in anicteric varieties. Easy bruising may be reported. Jaundice may or may not be present.

B. Symptoms and Signs

The first indication of underlying liver disease may be splenomegaly, ascites, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, or hepatic encephalopathy. Variable hepatomegaly, spider angiomas, warm skin, palmar erythema, or digital clubbing may be present. A small, shrunken liver may present. Most often, the liver is enlarged slightly, especially in the subxiphoid region, where it has a firm to hard quality and an irregular edge. Splenomegaly generally precedes other complications of portal hypertension. Ascites, gynecomastia in males, digital clubbing, pretibial edema, and irregularities of menstruation in females may be present. In biliary cirrhosis, patients often also have jaundice, dark urine, pruritus, hepatomegaly, and sometimes xanthomas. Malnutrition and failure to thrive due to steatorrhea may be more apparent in this form of cirrhosis.

C. Laboratory Findings

Mild abnormalities of AST and ALT are often present, with a decreased level of albumin. PT is prolonged and may be unresponsive to vitamin K administration. Burr and target red cells may be noted on the peripheral blood smear. Anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia are present if hypersplenism exists. However, blood tests may be normal in patients with cirrhosis. In biliary cirrhosis, elevated conjugated bilirubin, bile acids, GGT, alkaline phosphatase, and cholesterol are common.

D. Imaging

Hepatic ultrasound, CT, or MRI examination may demonstrate abnormal hepatic texture and nodules. In biliary cirrhosis, abnormalities of the biliary tree may be apparent.

E. Pathologic Findings

Liver biopsy findings of regenerating nodules and surrounding fibrosis are hallmarks of cirrhosis. Pathologic features of biliary cirrhosis also include canalicular and hepatocyte cholestasis, as well as plugging of bile ducts. The interlobular bile ducts may be increased or decreased, depending on the cause and the stage of the disease process.

» Differential Diagnosis

In the pediatric population, postnecrotic cirrhosis is often a result of acute or chronic liver disease (eg, viral hepatitis [HBV, HCV], autoimmune or DILI), more recently NAFLD, or certain inborn errors of metabolism (see Table 22–5). The evolution to cirrhosis may be insidious, with no recognized icteric phase. At the time of diagnosis of cirrhosis, the underlying liver disease may be active, with abnormal LFTs; or it may be quiescent, with normal LFTs. Most cases of biliary cirrhosis result from congenital abnormalities of the bile ducts (biliary atresia, choledochal cyst), tumors of the bile duct, Caroli disease, PFIC, PSC, paucity of the intrahepatic bile ducts, and cystic fibrosis. Parasites (Opisthorchis sinensis, Fasciola, and Ascaris) may be causative in children living in endemic areas.

» Complications

Major complications of cirrhosis in childhood include progressive nutritional disturbances, hormonal disturbances, and the evolution of portal hypertension and its complications. Hepatocellular carcinoma occurs with increased frequency in the cirrhotic liver, especially in patients with the chronic form of hereditary tyrosinemia or after long-standing HBV or HCV disease.

» Treatment

At present, there is no proven medical treatment for cirrhosis, but whenever a treatable condition is identified (eg, Wilson disease, galactosemia, AIH) or an offending agent eliminated (HBV, HCV, drugs, toxins), disease progression can be altered; occasionally regression of fibrosis has been noted. Recent evidence suggests that cirrhosis from HCV and HBV may be reversed by successful antiviral therapy. Children with cirrhosis should receive the hepatitis A and B vaccines and be monitored for the development of hepatocellular carcinoma with serial serum α-fetoprotein determinations annually and abdominal ultrasound for hepatic nodules at least annually. Liver transplantation may be appropriate in patients with: cirrhosis caused by a progressive disease; evidence of worsening hepatic synthetic function; or complications of cirrhosis that are no longer manageable.

» Prognosis

Postnecrotic cirrhosis has an unpredictable course. Without transplantation, affected patients may die from liver failure within 10–15 years. Patients with a rising bilirubin, a vitamin K–resistant coagulopathy, or diuretic refractory ascites usually survive less than 1–2 years. The terminal event in some patients may be generalized hemorrhage, sepsis, or cardiorespiratory arrest. For patients with biliary cirrhosis, the prognosis is similar, except for those with surgically corrected lesions that result in regression or stabilization of the underlying liver condition. With liver transplantation, the long-term survival rate is 70%–90%.

Hsu EK and Murray KF: Cirrhosis and chronic liver failure. In: Suchy FJ, Sokol RJ, Balistreri WF (eds): Liver Disease in Children. 4th ed. Cambridge University Press; 2014:51–67.

Tsochatzis EA et al: Liver cirrhosis. Lancet 2014;383:1749–1761 [PMID: 24480518].

PORTAL HYPERTENSION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Splenomegaly.
- Recurrent ascites.
- Variceal hemorrhage.
- Hypersplenism.

General Considerations

Portal hypertension is defined as an increase in the portal venous pressure to more than 5 mm Hg greater than the inferior vena caval pressure. Portal hypertension is most commonly a result of cirrhosis. Portal hypertension without cirrhosis may be divided into prehepatic, suprahepatic, and intrahepatic causes. Although the specific lesions vary somewhat in their clinical signs and symptoms, the consequences of portal hypertension are common to all.

A. Prehepatic Portal Hypertension

Prehepatic portal hypertension from acquired abnormalities of the portal and splenic veins accounts for 30%–50% of cases of variceal hemorrhage in children. A history of neonatal omphalitis, sepsis, dehydration, or umbilical vein catheterization may be present. Causes in older children include local trauma, peritonitis (pyelophlebitis), hypercoagulable states, and pancreatitis. Symptoms may occur before age 1 year, but in most cases the diagnosis is not made until age 3–5 years. Patients with a positive neonatal history tend to be symptomatic earlier.

A variety of portal or splenic vein malformations, some of which may be congenital, have been described, including defects in valves and atretic segments. Cavernous transformation is probably the result of attempted collateralization around the thrombosed portal vein rather than a congenital malformation. The site of the venous obstruction may be anywhere from the hilum of the liver to the hilum of the spleen.

B. Suprahepatic Vein Occlusion or Thrombosis (Budd-Chiari Syndrome)

No cause can be demonstrated in most instances in children, while tumor, medications, and hypercoagulable states are common causes in adults. The occasional association of hepatic vein thrombosis in inflammatory bowel disease favors the presence of endogenous toxins traversing the liver. Vasculitis leading to endophlebitis of the hepatic veins has been described. In addition, hepatic vein obstruction may be secondary to tumor, abdominal trauma, hyperthermia, or sepsis, or it may occur following the repair of an omphalocele or gastroschisis. Congenital vena caval bands, webs, a membrane, or stricture above the hepatic veins are sometimes causative. Hepatic vein thrombosis may be a complication of oral contraceptive medications. Underlying thrombotic conditions (deficiency of antithrombin III, protein C or S, or factor V Leiden; antiphospholipid antibodies; or mutations of the prothrombin gene) are common in adults.

C. Intrahepatic Portal Hypertension

1. Cirrhosis—See previous section.

2. Veno-occlusive disease (acute stage)—This entity occurs most frequently in bone marrow or stem cell transplant recipients. Additional causes include the high-dose thiopurines, ingestion of pyrrolizidine alkaloids ("bush tea") or other herbal teas, and a familial form of the disease occurring in congenital immunodeficiency states. The acute form of the disease generally occurs in the first month after bone marrow transplantation and is heralded by the triad of weight gain (ascites), tender hepatomegaly, and jaundice.

3. Congenital hepatic fibrosis—This is a rare autosomal recessive cause of intrahepatic presinusoidal portal hypertension (see Table 22–10). Liver biopsy is generally diagnostic, demonstrating Von Meyenburg complexes (abnormal clusters of ectatic bile ducts). On angiography, the intrahepatic branches of the portal vein may be duplicated. Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease is frequently associated with this disorder.

4. Other rare causes—Hepatoportal sclerosis (idiopathic portal hypertension, noncirrhotic portal fibrosis), focal nodular regeneration of the liver, and schistosomal hepatic fibrosis are also rare causes of intrahepatic presinusoidal portal hypertension.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

For prehepatic portal hypertension, splenomegaly in an otherwise well child is the most constant physical sign. Ascites may be noted. The usual presenting symptoms are hematemesis and melena.

The presence of prehepatic portal hypertension is suggested by: (1) an episode of severe infection in the newborn period or early infancy—especially omphalitis, sepsis, gastroenteritis, severe dehydration, or prolonged or difficult umbilical vein catheterizations; (2) no previous evidence of liver disease; (3) a history of well-being prior to onset or recognition of symptoms; and (4) normal liver size and tests with splenomegaly.

Most patients with suprahepatic portal hypertension present with abdominal pain, tender hepatomegaly of acute onset, and ascites. Jaundice is present in only 25% of patients. Vomiting, hematemesis, and diarrhea are less common. Cutaneous signs of chronic liver disease are often absent, as the obstruction is usually acute. Distended superficial veins on the back and the anterior abdomen, along with dependent edema, are seen when inferior vena cava obstruction affects hepatic vein outflow. Absence of hepatojugular reflux (jugular distention when pressure is applied to the liver) is a helpful clinical sign.

The symptoms and signs of intrahepatic portal hypertension are generally those of cirrhosis (see earlier section on Cirrhosis).

B. Laboratory Findings and Imaging

Most other common causes of splenomegaly or hepatosplenomegaly may be excluded by appropriate laboratory tests. Cultures, EBV and hepatitis serologies, blood smear examination, bone marrow studies, and LFTs may be necessary. In prehepatic portal hypertension, LFTs are generally normal. In Budd-Chiari syndrome and veno-occlusive disease, mild to moderate hyperbilirubinemia with modest elevations of AST, ALT, and PT/INR are often present. Significant early increases in fibrinolytic parameters (especially plasminogen activator inhibitor 1) have been reported in veno-occlusive disease. Hypersplenism with mild leucopenia and thrombocytopenia is often present. Upper endoscopy may reveal varices in symptomatic patients.

Doppler-assisted ultrasound scanning of the liver, portal vein, splenic vein, inferior vena cava, and hepatic veins may assist in defining the vascular anatomy. In prehepatic portal hypertension, abnormalities of the portal or splenic vein may be apparent, whereas the hepatic veins are normal. When noncirrhotic portal hypertension is suspected, angiography often is diagnostic. Selective arteriography of the superior mesenteric artery or MRI is recommended prior to surgical shunting to determine the patency of the superior mesenteric vein.

For suprahepatic portal hypertension, an inferior vena cavogram using catheters from above or below the suspected obstruction may reveal an intrinsic filling defect, an infiltrating tumor, or extrinsic compression of the inferior vena cava by an adjacent lesion. A large caudate lobe of the liver suggests Budd-Chiari syndrome. Care must be taken in interpreting extrinsic pressure defects of the subdiaphragmatic inferior vena cava if ascites is significant.

Simultaneous wedged hepatic vein pressure and hepatic venography are useful to demonstrate obstruction to major hepatic vein ostia and smaller vessels. In the absence of obstruction, reflux across the sinusoids into the portal vein branches can be accomplished. Pressures should also be taken from the right heart and supradiaphragmatic portion of the inferior vena cava to eliminate constrictive pericarditis and pulmonary hypertension from the differential diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

All causes of splenomegaly must be included in the differential diagnosis. The most common ones are infections, immune thrombocytopenic purpura, blood dyscrasias, lipidosis, reticuloendotheliosis, cirrhosis of the liver, and cysts or hemangiomas of the spleen. When hematemesis or melena occurs, other causes of gastrointestinal bleeding are possible, such as gastric or duodenal ulcers, tumors, duplications, and inflammatory bowel disease.

Because ascites is almost always present in suprahepatic portal hypertension, cirrhosis resulting from any cause must be excluded. Other suprahepatic (cardiac, pulmonary) causes of portal hypertension must also be ruled out. Although ascites may occur in prehepatic portal hypertension, it is uncommon.

» Complications

The major manifestation and complication of portal hypertension is bleeding from esophageal varices. Fatal exsanguination is uncommon, but hypovolemic shock or resulting anemia may require prompt treatment. Hypersplenism with leukopenia and thrombocytopenia occurs, but seldom causes major symptoms.

Without treatment, complete and persistent hepatic vein obstruction in suprahepatic portal hypertension leads to liver failure, coma, and death. A nonportal type of cirrhosis may develop in the chronic form of hepatic veno-occlusive disease in which small- and medium-sized hepatic veins are affected. Death from renal failure may occur in rare cases of congenital hepatic fibrosis.

» Treatment

Definitive treatment of noncirrhotic portal hypertension is generally lacking. Aggressive medical treatment of the complications of prehepatic portal hypertension is generally quite effective. Excellent results with either portosystemic shunt or the mesorex (mesenterico–left portal bypass) shunt. When possible, the mesorex shunt is the preferred technique. Veno-occlusive disease may be prevented somewhat by the prophylactic use of UDCA or defibrotide prior to conditioning for bone marrow transplantation. Treatment with defibrotide and withdrawal of the suspected offending agent, if possible, may increase the chance of recovery. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts have been successful in bridging to recovery in veno-occlusive disease. For suprahepatic portal hypertension, efforts should be directed at correcting the underlying cause, if possible. Either surgical or angiographic relief of obstruction should

Table 22–9. Treatment of complications of portal hypertension.

Complication	Diagnosis	Treatment
Bleeding esophageal varices	Endoscopic verification of variceal bleeding.	Endosclerosis or variceal band ligation. Octreotide, 30 mcg/m^2 BSA/h intravenous. Pediatric Sengstaken-Blakemore tube. Surgical portosystemic shunt, TIPS, surgical variceal ligation, selective venous embolization, OLT. Propranolol (nonselective β-blockers) may be useful to prevent recurrent bleeding.
Ascites	Clinical examination (fluid wave, shifting dullness), abdominal ultrasonography.	Sodium restriction (1–2 mEq/kg/d), spironolactone (3–5 mg/kg/d), furosemide (1–2 mg/kg/d), intravenous albumin (0.5–1 g/kg per dose), paracentesis, peritoneovenous (LeVeen) shunt, TIPS, surgical portosystemic shunt, OLT.[a]
Hepatic encephalopathy	Abnormal neurologic examination, elevated plasma ammonia.	Protein restriction (0.5–1 g/kg/d), intravenous glucose (6–8 mg/kg/min), neomycin (2–4 g/m^2 BSA PO in four doses), rifaximin (200 mg three times a day in children > 12 y), lactulose (1 mL/kg per dose [up to 30 mL] every 4–6 h PO), plasmapheresis, hemodialysis, OLT.[a]
Hypersplenism	Low WBC count, platelets, and/or hemoglobin. Splenomegaly.	No intervention, partial splenic embolization, surgical portosystemic shunt, TIPS, OLT. Splenectomy may worsen variceal bleeding.

BSA, body surface area; OLT, orthotopic liver transplantation; PO, by mouth; TIPS, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt; WBC, white blood cell.
[a]In order of sequential management.

be attempted if a defined obstruction of the vessels is apparent. Liver transplantation, if not contraindicated, should be considered early if direct correction is not possible. In most cases, management of portal hypertension is directed at management of the complications (Table 22–9).

» Prognosis

For prehepatic portal hypertension, the prognosis depends on the site of the block, the effectiveness of variceal eradication, the availability of suitable vessels for shunting procedures, and the experience of the surgeon. In patients treated by medical means, bleeding episodes seem to diminish with adolescence.

The prognosis in patients treated by medical and supportive therapy may be better than in the surgically treated group, especially when surgery is performed at an early age, although no comparative study has been done. Portacaval encephalopathy is unusual after shunting except when protein intake is excessive, but neurologic outcome may be better in patients who receive a mesorex shunt when compared with medical management alone.

The mortality rate of hepatic vein obstruction is very high (95%). In veno-occlusive disease, the prognosis is better, with complete recovery possible in 50% of acute forms and 5%–10% of subacute forms.

Giouleme O, Theocharidou E: Management of portal hypertension in children with portal vein thrombosis. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2013;57:419–425 [PMID: 23820400].

Ling SC: Advances in the evaluation and management of children with portal hypertension. Semin Liver Dis 2012;32:288–297 [PMID: 23397529].

Turon F et al: Variceal and other portal hypertension related bleeding. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2013;27:649–664 [PMID: 24160925].

BILIARY TRACT DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Episodic right upper quadrant abdominal pain.
- Elevated bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, and GGT.
- Stones or sludge seen on abdominal ultrasound.

1. Cholelithiasis

» General Considerations

Gallstones may develop at all ages in the pediatric population and in utero. Gallstones may be divided into cholesterol stones (> 50% cholesterol) and pigment (black [sterile bile] and brown [infected bile]) stones. Pigment stones predominate in the first decade of life, while cholesterol stones account for up to 90% of gallstones in adolescence. For some patients, gallbladder dysfunction is associated with biliary sludge formation, which may evolve into gallstones. The process is reversible in many patients.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Most symptomatic gallstones are associated with acute or recurrent episodes of moderate to severe, sharp right upper quadrant, or epigastric pain. The pain may radiate substernally or to the right shoulder. On rare occasions, the presentation may include a history of jaundice, back pain, or generalized abdominal discomfort, when it is associated with pancreatitis, suggesting stone impaction in the common duct or ampulla hepatopancreatica. Nausea and vomiting may occur during attacks. Pain episodes often occur postprandially, especially after ingestion of fatty foods. The groups at risk for gallstones include patients with known or suspected hemolytic disease; females; teenagers with prior pregnancy; obese individuals; individuals with rapid weight loss; children with portal vein thrombosis; certain racial or ethnic groups, particularly Native Americans (Pima Indians) and Hispanics; infants and children with ileal disease (Crohn disease) or prior ileal resection; patients with cystic fibrosis or Wilson disease; infants on prolonged parenteral hyperalimentation and those with bile acid transporter defects. Other, less certain risk factors include a positive family history, use of birth control pills, and diabetes mellitus.

B. Symptoms and Signs

During acute episodes of pain, tenderness is present in the right upper quadrant or epigastrium, with a positive inspiratory arrest (Murphy sign), usually without peritoneal signs. While rarely present, scleral icterus is helpful. Evidence of underlying hemolytic disease in addition to icterus may include pallor (anemia), splenomegaly, tachycardia, and high-output cardiac murmur. Fever is unusual in uncomplicated cases.

C. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory tests are usually normal unless calculi have lodged in the extrahepatic biliary system, in which case the serum bilirubin and GGT (or alkaline phosphatase) may be elevated. Amylase and lipase levels may be increased if stone obstruction occurs at the ampulla hepatopancreatica.

D. Imaging

Ultrasound evaluation is the best imaging technique, showing abnormal intraluminal contents (stones, sludge) as well as anatomic alterations of the gallbladder or dilation of the biliary ductal system. The presence of an anechoic acoustic shadow differentiates calculi from intraluminal sludge or sludge balls. Lack of visualization of the gallbladder with hepatobiliary scintigraphy suggests chronic cholecystitis. In selected cases, ERCP, MRCP, or endoscopic ultrasound may be helpful in defining subtle abnormalities of the bile ducts and locating intraductal stones.

» Differential Diagnosis

Other abnormal conditions of the biliary system with similar presentation are summarized in Table 22–10. Liver disease (hepatitis, abscess, or tumor) can cause similar symptoms or signs. Peptic disease, reflux esophagitis, paraesophageal hiatal hernia, cardiac disease, and pneumomediastinum must be considered when the pain is epigastric or substernal in location. Renal or pancreatic disease is a possible explanation if the pain is localized to the right flank or mid back. Subcapsular or supracapsular lesions of the liver (abscess, tumor, or hematoma) or right lower lobe infiltrate may also be a cause of nontraumatic right shoulder pain.

» Complications

Major problems are related to stone impaction in either the cystic or common duct, which may lead to stricture formation or perforation. Acute distention and subsequent perforation of the gallbladder may occur when gallstones cause obstruction of the cystic duct. Stones impacted at the level of the ampulla hepatopancreatica often cause gallstone pancreatitis.

» Treatment

Symptomatic cholelithiasis is treated by laparoscopic cholecystectomy or open cholecystectomy in selected cases. Intraoperative cholangiography via the cystic duct is recommended so that the physician can be certain the biliary system is free of retained stones. Calculi in the extrahepatic bile ducts may be removed at ERCP.

Gallstones developing in premature infants on parenteral nutrition can be followed by ultrasound examination. Most of the infants are asymptomatic, and the stones will resolve in 3–36 months. Gallstone dissolution using cholelitholytics (UDCA) or mechanical means (lithotripsy) has not been approved for children. Asymptomatic gallstones do not usually require treatment, as less than 20% will eventually cause problems.

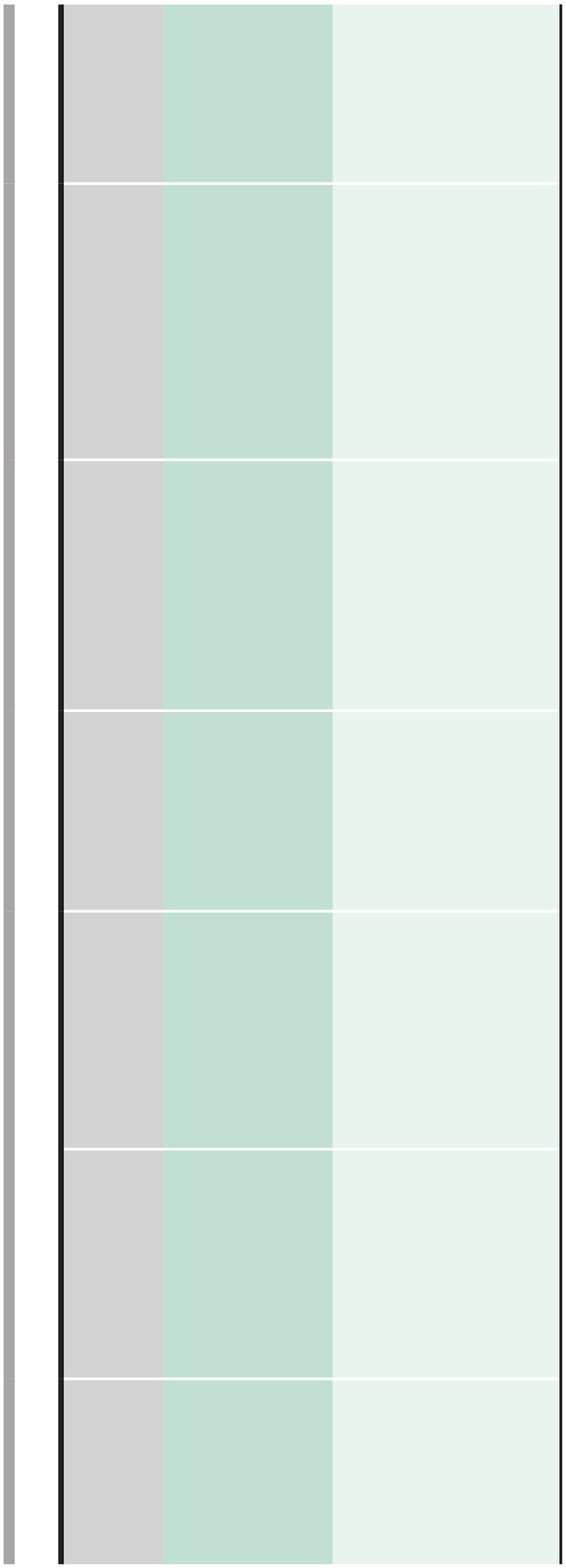
» Prognosis

The prognosis is excellent in uncomplicated cases that come to standard or laparoscopic cholecystectomy.

Fradin K et al: Obesity and symptomatic cholelithiasis in childhood: epidemiologic and case-control evidence for a strong relation. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2014;58:102–106 [PMID: 23969538].

Langballe KO, Bardram L: Cholecystectomy in Danish children—a nationwide study. J Pediatr Surg 2014;49:626–630 [PMID: 24726126].

Svensson J et al: Gallstone disease in children. Semin Pediatr Surg 2012;21:255 [PMID: 22800978].



2. Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pruritus and jaundice.
- Elevated GGT.
- Associated with inflammatory bowel disease.
- Abnormal ERCP or MRCP.

» General Considerations

Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) is a progressive liver disease characterized by chronic inflammation and fibrosis of the intrahepatic and/or extrahepatic bile ducts, leading to fibrotic strictures and saccular dilations of all or parts of the biliary tree. The etiology of PSC is likely multifactorial, including genetic predispositions, with alterations in innate and autoimmunity. PSC is more common in males, and has a strong relationship to inflammatory bowel disease, particularly ulcerative colitis. A PSC-like condition can also be seen with histiocytosis X, autoimmune hepatitis, IgG4 autoimmune pancreatitis, sicca syndromes, congenital and acquired immunodeficiency syndromes, and cystic fibrosis. Sclerosing cholangitis due to cryptosporidia may occur in immunodeficiency syndromes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

PSC often has an insidious onset and may be asymptomatic. Clinical symptoms may include abdominal pain, fatigue, pruritus, jaundice, and weight loss. Acholic stools, jaundice steatorrhea hepatomegaly and splenomegaly can occur.

B. Laboratory Findings

The earliest finding may be asymptomatic elevation of the GGT. Subsequent laboratory abnormalities include elevated levels of alkaline phosphatase and bile acids. Later, cholestatic jaundice and elevated AST and ALT may occur. Patients with associated inflammatory bowel disease often test positive for perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies. Other markers of autoimmune liver disease (ANA and ASMA) are often found, but are not specific for PSC.

C. Imaging

Ultrasound may show saccular dilation of normal intrahepatic bile ducts with segmental strictures, described as "beads on a string." MRCP is the diagnostic study of choice, demonstrating irregularities of the biliary tree. ERCP may be more sensitive for the diagnosis of irregularities of the intrahepatic biliary tree and allow for therapeutic interventions.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes infectious hepatitis, secondary cholangitis, AIH, metabolic liver disease, cystic fibrosis, choledochal cyst, or other anomalies of the biliary tree, including Caroli disease, choledochal cyst, and congenital hepatic fibrosis (see Table 22–10).

» Complications

Complications include secondary bacterial cholangitis, pancreatitis, biliary fibrosis, and cirrhosis. Slow progression to end-stage liver disease with liver failure is common, and patients are at increased risk of cholangiocarcinoma.

» Treatment

Treatment of PSC focuses on supportive care. Ursodeoxycholic acid is often used in pediatrics, though high doses may worsen disease in adults. Oral vancomycin has been used, though very little data support its use. Patients with autoimmune sclerosing cholangitis or IgG4 cholangitis may benefit from treatment with corticosteroids and azathioprine. Antibiotic treatment of cholangitis and dilation and stenting of dominant bile duct strictures can reduce symptoms. Liver transplantation is effective for patients with end-stage complications, but the disease may recur in up to 10% after transplant.

» Prognosis

The majority of patients will eventually require liver transplantation, and PSC is the fifth leading indication for liver transplantation in the United States. The median duration from the time of diagnosis to end-stage liver disease is 12–15 years.

Ibrahim SH, Lindor KD: Current management of primary sclerosing cholangitis in pediatric patients. Pediatric Drugs 2011 Apr;13:87 [PMID: 21351808].

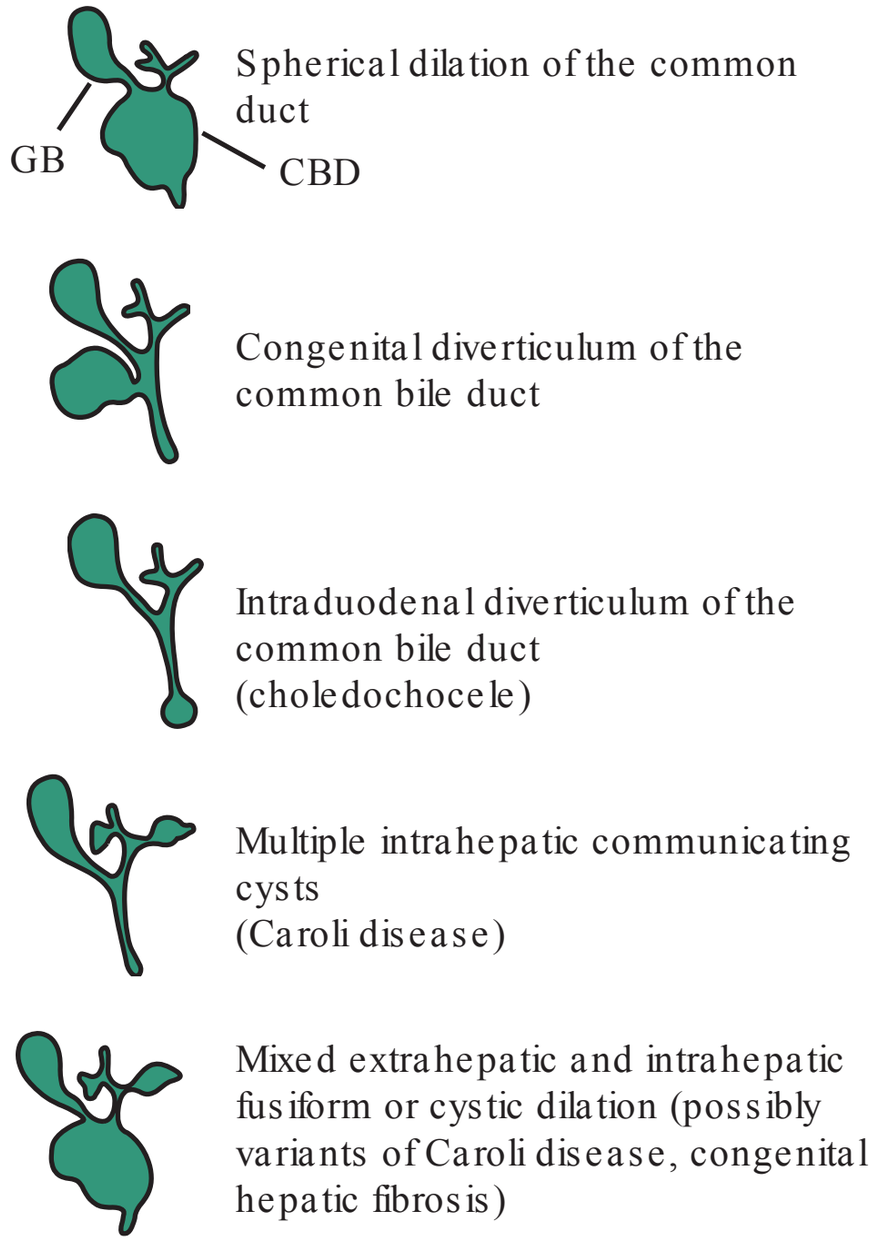
Kerkar N, Miloh T: Sclerosing cholangitis: pediatric perspective. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2010;12:195 [PMID: 20425475].

Liu K et al: Cholangiocarcinoma and high-grade dysplasia in young patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Dig Dis Sci 2014;59(9):2320–2324 [PMID: 24748183].

Shneider BL: Diagnostic and therapeutic challenges in pediatric primary sclerosing cholangitis. Liver Transpl 2012;18:277 [PMID: 22140074].

3. Other Biliary Tract Disorders

For a schematic representation of the various types of choledochal cysts, see Figure 22–1. For summary information



▲**Figure 22–1.** Classification of cystic dilation of the bile ducts. Types I, II, and III are extrahepatic choledochal cysts. Type IVa is solely intrahepatic, and type IVb is both intrahepatic and extrahepatic.

on acute hydrops, choledochal cyst, acalculous cholecystitis, Caroli disease, biliary dyskinesia, and congenital hepatic fibrosis, see Table 22–10.

PYOGENIC & AMEBIC LIVER ABSCESS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever and painful enlarged liver.
- Ultrasound of liver demonstrating an abscess.
- Positive serum ameba antibody or positive bacterial culture of abscess fluid.

» General Considerations

Pyogenic liver abscesses are rare in developed countries, but remain a significant issue in developing countries. The most common cause is S aureus, with enteric bacteria less common; fungal abscesses also occur. The resulting lesion tends to be solitary and located in the right hepatic lobe. Unusual causes include omphalitis, subacute infective endocarditis, pyelonephritis, Crohn disease, and perinephric abscess. In immunocompromised patients, S aureus, gram-negative organisms, and fungi may seed the liver from the arterial system. Multiple pyogenic liver abscesses are associated with severe sepsis. Children receiving anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive agents and children with defects in white blood cell function (chronic granulomatous disease) are prone to pyogenic hepatic abscesses, especially those caused by S aureus.

Amebic liver abscess can occur when Entamoeba histolytica invasion occurs via the large bowel, although a history of diarrhea (colitis-like picture) is not always obtained.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

With any liver abscess, nonspecific complaints of fever, chills, malaise, and abdominal pain are frequent. Amebic liver abscess is rare in children. An increased risk is associated with travel in areas of endemic infection (Mexico, Southeast Asia) within 5 months of presentation.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Weight loss is very common, especially when diagnosis is delayed. A few patients have shaking chills and jaundice. The dominant complaint is a constant dull pain over an enlarged liver that is tender to palpation. An elevated hemidiaphragm with reduced or absent respiratory excursion may be demonstrated on physical examination and confirmed by fluoroscopy.

Fever and abdominal pain are the two most common symptoms of amebic liver abscess. Abdominal tenderness and hepatomegaly are present in over 50%. An occasional prodrome may include cough, dyspnea, and shoulder pain when rupture of the abscess into the right chest occurs.

C. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory studies show leukocytosis and, at times, anemia. LFTs may be normal or reveal mild elevation of transaminases and alkaline phosphatase. Early in the course, LFTs may suggest mild hepatitis. Blood cultures may be positive. The distinction between pyogenic and amebic abscesses in developed countries is best made by indirect hemagglutination test for specific antibody (which is positive in more than 95% of patients with amebic liver disease) and the prompt clinical response of the latter to antiamebic therapy (metronidazole). Examination of material obtained by needle aspiration of the abscess using ultrasound guidance is often diagnostic.

D. Imaging

Ultrasound liver scan is the most useful diagnostic aid in evaluating pyogenic and amebic abscesses, detecting lesions as small as 1–2 cm. MRI, CT, or nuclear scanning with gallium or technetium sulfur colloid may be useful in differentiating tumor or hydatid cyst. Consolidation of the right lower lobe is common (10%–30% of patients) in amebic abscess.

» Differential Diagnosis

Hepatitis, hepatoma, hydatid cyst, gallbladder disease, or biliary tract infections can mimic liver abscess. Subphrenic abscesses, empyema, and pneumonia may give a similar picture. Inflammatory disease of the intestines or of the biliary system may be complicated by liver abscess.

» Complications

Spontaneous rupture of the abscess may occur with extension of infection into the subphrenic space, thorax, peritoneal cavity, and, occasionally, the pericardium. Bronchopleural fistula with large sputum production and hemoptysis can develop in severe cases. Simultaneously, the amebic liver abscess may be secondarily infected with bacteria (in 10%–20% of patients). Metastatic hematogenous spread to the lungs and the brain has been reported.

» Treatment

Ultrasound- or CT-guided percutaneous needle aspiration for aerobic and anaerobic culture with simultaneous placement of a catheter for drainage, combined with appropriate antibiotic therapy, is the treatment of choice for solitary pyogenic liver abscess. Multiple liver abscesses may also be treated successfully by this method. Surgical intervention may be indicated if rupture occurs outside the capsule of the liver or if enterohepatic fistulae are suspected.

Amebic abscesses in uncomplicated cases should be treated promptly with oral metronidazole, 35–50 mg/kg/d, in three divided doses for 10 days. Intravenous metronidazole can be used for patients unable to take oral medication. Needle aspiration or surgical drainage is indicated for failure of medical management or cysts greater than 10 cm. Once oral feedings can be tolerated, a luminal amebicide such as iodoquinol should be initiated. Resolution of the abscess cavity occurs over 3–6 months.

» Prognosis

With drainage and antibiotics, the cure rate is about 90%. Mortality rates have improved, but remain at 15% for pyogenic liver abscess, especially with extrahepatic complications, and less than 1% for amebic abscess.

Bammigatti C et al: Percutaneous needle aspiration in uncomplicated amebic liver abscess: a randomized trial. Trop Doct 2013;43:19–22 [PMID: 23550199].

Mishra K et al: Liver abscess in children: an overview. World J Pediatr 2010;6:210 [PMID: 20706820].

LIVER TUMORS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abdominal enlargement and pain, weight loss, anemia.
- Hepatomegaly with or without a definable mass.
- Mass lesion on imaging studies.
- Laparotomy and tissue biopsy.

» General Considerations

Primary neoplasms of the liver represent 0.3%–5% of all solid tumors in children. Of these, two-thirds are malignant, with hepatoblastoma being most common (79% of all pediatric liver cancers). Hepatoblastoma typically occurs in children ages 6 months to 3 years, with a male predominance. Most children present with a symptomatic abdominal mass, though with more advanced disease, weight loss, anorexia, abdominal pain and emesis may occur. Children with Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome and familial adenomatosis polyposis coli are at increased risk of hepatoblastoma, and should undergo routine screening with α-fetoprotein determinations and abdominal ultrasound until the age of 5 years. In addition, low-birth-weight infants (< 1000 g) have a 15 times increased risk of hepatoblastoma, as compared to infants more than 2500 g. Pathologic differentiation from hepatocellular carcinoma, the other major malignant tumor of the liver, may be difficult.

Hepatocellular carcinoma most commonly occurs between the ages of 10 and 12 years and is more common in males. Children are more likely to be symptomatic, with abdominal distension, pain, and advanced disease, including anorexia and weight loss, at presentation. Patients with chronic HBV or HCV infection, cirrhosis, glycogen storage disease type I, tyrosinemia, and α_1-antitrypsin deficiency are at increased risk for developing hepatocellular carcinoma. The late development of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients receiving androgens for treatment of Fanconi syndrome and aplastic anemia must also be kept in mind. The use of anabolic steroids by body-conscious adolescents poses a risk of hepatic neoplasia. In addition, Wilms tumors, neuroblastoma and lymphoma may all metastasize to the liver.

» Clinical Findings

A. History

Noticeable abdominal distension, with or without pain, is the most constant feature. A parent may note a bulge in the

upper abdomen or report feeling a hard mass. Constitutional symptoms (eg, anorexia, weight loss, fatigue, fever, and chills) may be present. Jaundice or pruritus may be present if obstruction of the biliary tree occurs. Virilization has been reported as a consequence of gonadotropic activity of tumors. Feminization with bilateral gynecomastia may occur in association with high estradiol levels in the blood, the latter a consequence of increased aromatization of circulating androgens by the liver. Leydig cell hyperplasia without spermatogenesis has also been reported.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Weight loss, pallor, and abdominal pain associated with a large abdomen are common. Physical examination reveals hepatomegaly with or without a definite tumor mass, usually to the right of the midline. In the absence of cirrhosis, signs of chronic liver disease are usually absent.

C. Laboratory Findings

Normal LFTs are the rule. Anemia frequently occurs, especially in cases of hepatoblastoma. α-Fetoprotein levels are typically elevated, especially in hepatoblastoma. Estradiol levels are sometimes elevated. Tissue diagnosis is best obtained at laparotomy, although ultrasound- or CT-guided needle biopsy of the liver mass can be used.

D. Imaging

Ultrasonography, CT, and MRI are useful for diagnosis, staging, and following tumor response to therapy. A scintigraphic study of bone and chest CT are generally part of the preoperative workup to evaluate metastatic disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

In the absence of a palpable mass, the differential diagnosis is that of hepatomegaly with or without anemia or jaundice. Hematologic and nutritional conditions should be ruled out, as well as HBV and HCV infection, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency disease, lipid storage diseases, histiocytosis X, glycogen storage disease, tyrosinemia, congenital hepatic fibrosis, cysts, adenoma, focal nodular hyperplasia, and hemangiomas. If fever is present, hepatic abscess (pyogenic or amebic) must be considered. Veno-occlusive disease and hepatic vein thrombosis are rare possibilities. Tumors in the left lobe may be mistaken for pancreatic pseudocysts.

» Complications

Progressive enlargement of the tumor, abdominal discomfort, ascites, respiratory difficulty, and widespread metastases (especially to the lungs and the abdominal lymph nodes) are the rule. Rupture of the neoplastic liver and intraperitoneal hemorrhage have been reported. Progressive anemia and emaciation predispose the patient to an early septic death.

» Treatment

For tumors that are resectable, an aggressive surgical approach with complete resection of the lesion offers the only chance for cure. Individual lung metastases should also be surgically resected. Radiotherapy and chemotherapy have been disappointing in the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma, although hepatoblastomas are generally more responsive. Chemotherapy may be used for initial cytoreduction of tumors (especially hepatoblastoma) found to be unresectable at the time of primary surgery (see Chapter 31 for additional discussion). Second-look celiotomy has, in some cases, allowed resection of the tumor, resulting in a reduced mortality rate. Liver transplantation can be an option in hepatoblastoma with unresectable disease limited to the liver, with an 85% 10-year survival. For hepatocellular carcinoma, the survival rate is poor due to the typically advanced stage at diagnosis. The survival rate may be better for those patients in whom the tumor is incidental to another disorder (tyrosinemia, biliary atresia, cirrhosis) or is less than a total of 7 cm diameter without vascular invasion. In HBV-endemic areas, childhood HBV vaccination has reduced the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma.

» Prognosis

If the tumor is completely removed, the survival rate is 90% for hepatoblastoma and 33% for hepatocellular carcinoma. If metastases that cannot be surgically resected are present, survival is reduced to 40% for hepatoblastoma. In well-selected candidates with unresectable hepatoblastoma, survival after liver transplantation approaches 65%.

Gupta AA et al: Critical review of controversial issues in the management of advanced pediatric liver tumors. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2011;56:1013 [PMID: 21488153].

Hadzic N et al: Liver neoplasia in children. Clin Liver Dis 2011;15:443 [PMID: 21689623].

Lopez-Terrada D: Current issues and controversies in the classification of pediatric hepatocellular tumors. Pediatric Blood Cancer 2012;59:780 [PMID: 22648939].

Meyers RL: Hepatoblastoma state of the art: pre-treatment extent of disease, surgical resection guidelines and the role of liver transplantation. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014 Feb;26:29 [PMID 24362406].

LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

Orthotopic liver transplantation is indicated in children with end-stage liver disease, acute fulminant hepatic failure, or complications from metabolic liver disorders. Approximately 600 pediatric liver transplants are performed annually, with excellent 1-year (83%–91%) and 5-year (82%–84%) survival rates. The multitude of immunosuppression options, ability to individualize immunosuppression, improved candidate selection, refinements in surgical techniques, anticipatory

Table 22–11. Indications for pediatric liver transplantation.

Indication	Percentage of Pediatric Transplants
Biliary atresia (failed Kasai or decompensated cirrhosis)	39.6
Metabolic diseases (α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, urea cycle enzyme defects, Wilson disease, tyrosinemia)	14.6
Non-biliary atresia cholestatic disorders (eg, Alagille syndrome, PFIC)	13.6
Acute liver failure	13.2
Cirrhosis (autoimmune hepatitis, hepatitis B and C)	8.0
Hepatic malignancies (unresectable hepatoblastoma, HCC, others)	5.8
Other	5.2

HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; PFIC, progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis.

monitoring for complications (eg, CMV and EBV infections, hypertension, renal dysfunction, and dyslipidemias) and experience in postoperative management have all contributed to improved outcomes over time. The major indications for childhood transplantation are shown in Table 22–11.

Children who are potential candidates for liver transplantation should be referred to a pediatric transplant center early for evaluation. In addition to full-sized cadaveric organs, children may also receive reduced segment or split cadaveric livers and live donor transplants, all of which have expanded the potential donor pool. Lifetime immunosuppression therapy, using combinations of tacrolimus, cyclosporine, prednisone, azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, or sirolimus, with its incumbent risks, is generally necessary to prevent rejection. Small studies have examined the potential for complete immunosuppression withdrawal, with a more definitive multicenter study currently underway. Currently, the minimal amount of immunosuppression that will prevent allograft rejection should be chosen. The overall quality of life for children with a transplanted liver appears to be excellent. There is an increased risk (up to 25%) of renal dysfunction and low intelligence scores. The lifelong risk of EBV-induced lymphoproliferative disease, which is approximately 5%, is related to age and EBV exposure status at time of transplantation, and intensity of immunosuppression. Various protocols are being tested for prevention and treatment of lymphoproliferative disease.

Anthony SJ et al: Quality of life after pediatric solid organ transplantation. Pediatr Clin North Am 2010;57:559 [PMID: 20371052].

Squires RH et al: Evaluation of the pediatric patient for liver transplantation: 2014 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, American Society of Transplantation and the North American Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition. Hepatology 2014;60:362–398 [PMID: 25185661].

PANCREATIC DISORDERS

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Epigastric abdominal pain radiating to the back.
- Nausea and vomiting.
- Elevated serum amylase and lipase.
- Evidence of pancreatic inflammation by CT or ultrasound.

General Considerations

The rate of hospitalization for acute pancreatitis in children is 0.02–0.09/1000 US population and 30 cases per 10,000 hospitalizations. Most cases of acute pancreatitis are the result of drugs, viral infections, systemic diseases, abdominal trauma, or obstruction of pancreatic flow. More than 20% are idiopathic. Causes of pancreatic obstruction include stones, choledochal cyst, tumors of the duodenum, pancreas divisum, and ascariasis. Acute pancreatitis has been seen following treatment with sulfasalazine, thiazides, valproic acid, azathioprine, mercaptopurine, asparaginase, antiretroviral drugs (especially didanosine), high-dose corticosteroids, and other drugs. It may also occur in cystic fibrosis, systemic lupus erythematosus, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, diabetes mellitus, Crohn disease, glycogen storage disease type I, hyperlipidemia types I and V, hyperparathyroidism, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, Reye syndrome, organic acidopathies, Kawasaki disease, or chronic renal failure; during rapid refeeding in cases of malnutrition; following spinal fusion surgery; and in families. Alcohol-induced pancreatitis should be considered in the teenage patient.

Clinical Findings

A. History

An acute onset of persistent (hours to days), moderate to severe upper abdominal and midabdominal pain occasionally referred to the back, frequently associated with vomiting, or nausea is the common presenting picture.

B. Symptoms and Signs

The abdomen is tender, but not rigid, and bowel sounds are diminished, suggesting peritoneal irritation. Abdominal distention is common in infants and younger children and classic symptoms of abdominal pain, tenderness, and nausea are less common in this age group. Jaundice is unusual. Ascites may be noted, and a left-sided pleural effusion is present in some patients. Periumbilical and flank bruising indicate hemorrhagic pancreatitis.

C. Laboratory Findings

An elevated serum amylase or lipase (more than three times normal) is the key laboratory finding. The elevated serum lipase persists longer than serum amylase. Infants younger than 6 months may not have an elevated amylase or lipase. In this setting, an elevated immunoreactive trypsinogen may be more sensitive. Pancreatic lipase can help differentiate nonpancreatic causes (eg, salivary, intestinal, or tuboovarian) of serum amylase elevation. Leukocytosis, hyperglycemia (serum glucose > 300 mg/dL), hypocalcemia, falling hematocrit, rising blood urea nitrogen, hypoxemia, and acidosis may all occur in severe cases and imply a poor prognosis.

D. Imaging

Plain radiographic films of the abdomen may show a localized ileus (sentinel loop). Ultrasonography is primarily used to assess for biliary tract disease leading to pancreatitis, but can show decreased echodensity of the pancreas in comparison with the left lobe of the liver. The pancreas is often difficult to image with ultrasound due to overlying gas. CT scanning images the pancreas more consistently and is better for detecting pancreatic phlegmon, pseudocyst, necrosis, or abscess formation. The computed tomography severity index (CTSI) is useful in identifying patients at increased risk for serious complications. ERCP or MRCP may be useful in confirming patency of the main pancreatic duct in cases of abdominal trauma; in recurrent acute pancreatitis; or in revealing stones, ductal strictures, and pancreas divisum.

» Differential Diagnosis

Other causes of acute upper abdominal pain include gastritis; peptic ulcer disease; duodenal ulcer; hepatitis; liver abscess; cholelithiasis; cholecystitis; choledocholithiasis; acute gastroenteritis or atypical appendicitis; pneumonia; volvulus; intussusception; and nonaccidental trauma.

» Complications

Early complications include shock, fluid and electrolyte disturbances, ileus, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and hypocalcemia. Hypervolemia due to renal insufficiency related to renal tubular necrosis may occur. The gastrointestinal, neurologic, musculoskeletal, hepatobiliary, dermatologic, and hematologic systems may also be involved. Early predictors of a more aggressive course include renal dysfunction, significant fluid requirements, and multisystem organ dysfunction. Around 5%–20% of patients can develop a pseudocyst 1–4 weeks later that may be asymptomatic or present with recurrence of abdominal pain and rise in the serum amylase. Up to 60%–70% of pseudocysts resolve spontaneously. Infection, hemorrhage, rupture, or fistulization may occur. Phlegmon formation is rare in children, but when present may extend from the gland into the retroperitoneum or into the lesser sac. Most regress, but some require drainage. Infection may occur in this inflammatory mass. Pancreatic abscess formation, which is rare (3%–5%), develops 2–3 weeks after the initial insult. Fever, leukocytosis, and pain suggest this complication; diagnosis is made by ultrasound or CT scanning. Chronic pancreatitis, exocrine or endocrine pancreatic insufficiency, and pancreatic lithiasis are rare sequelae of acute pancreatitis.

» Treatment

Medical management includes careful attention to fluid, electrolytes, and respiratory status. Gastric decompression may be helpful if there is significant vomiting. Pain should be controlled with opioids. Acid suppression may be helpful. Nutrition is preferentially provided by the enteral (jejunal or gastric) route. Broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage is useful only in necrotizing pancreatitis. Drugs known to produce acute pancreatitis should be discontinued. Surgical treatment is reserved for traumatic disruption of the gland, intraductal stone, other anatomic obstructive lesions, and unresolved or infected pseudocysts or abscesses. Early endoscopic decompression of the biliary system reduces the morbidity associated with pancreatitis caused by obstruction of the common bile duct.

» Prognosis

In the pediatric age group, the prognosis is surprisingly good with conservative management.

Pant C et al: Epidemiology of acute pancreatitis in hospitalized children in the United States from 2000–2009. PLoS One 2014;9:e95552 [PMID: 24805879].

Raizner A et al: Acute necrotizing pancreatitis in children. J Pediatr 2013;162:788–792 [PMID: 23102790].

Srinath AI, Lowe ME: Pediatric pancreatitis. Pediatr Rev 2013;34:79–90 [PMID: 23378615].

CHRONIC PANCREATITIS

Chronic pancreatitis is differentiated from acute pancreatitis in that the pancreas remains structurally or functionally abnormal after an attack.

The causes are multiple and can be divided into toxic-metabolic (eg, alcohol, chronic renal failure, hypercalcemia), idiopathic, genetic (increasingly recognized in children and adolescents), autoimmune, recurrent and severe acute pancreatitis, and obstructive pancreatitis (eg, pancreas divisum, choledochal cyst).

» Clinical Findings

A. History

The diagnosis often is delayed by the nonspecificity of symptoms and the lack of persistent laboratory abnormalities. There is usually a prolonged history of recurrent upper abdominal pain of variable severity. Radiation of the pain into the back is a frequent complaint.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Fever and vomiting are rare. Diarrhea, due to steatorrhea, and symptoms of diabetes may develop later in the course. Malnutrition due to acquired exocrine pancreatic insufficiency may also occur.

C. Laboratory Findings

Serum amylase and lipase levels are usually elevated during early acute attacks, but are often normal in the chronic phase. Pancreatic insufficiency may be diagnosed by demonstration of a low fecal pancreatic elastase 1. Mutations of the cationic trypsinogen gene, the pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor, the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR), carboxypeptidase A1 and chymotrypsin C are associated with recurrent acute and chronic pancreatitis. Elevated blood glucose and glycohemoglobin levels and glycosuria frequently occur in protracted disease. Sweat chloride should be checked for cystic fibrosis, α_1-antitrypsin level or phenotype, and serum calcium for hyperparathyroidism.

D. Imaging

Radiographs of the abdomen may show pancreatic calcifications in up to 30% of patients. Ultrasound or CT examination demonstrates an abnormal gland (enlargement or atrophy), ductal dilation, and calculi in up to 80%. CT is the initial imaging procedure of choice. MRCP or ERCP can show ductal dilation, stones, strictures, or stenotic segments. Endoscopic ultrasound in the diagnosis and staging of chronic pancreatitis is being evaluated.

» Differential Diagnosis

Other causes of recurrent abdominal pain must be considered. Specific causes of pancreatitis such as autoimmune pancreatitis, hyperparathyroidism; systemic lupus erythematosus; infectious disease; α_1-antitrypsin deficiency; and ductal obstruction by tumors, stones, or helminths must be excluded by appropriate tests.

» Complications

Disabling abdominal pain, steatorrhea, malnutrition, pancreatic pseudocysts, and diabetes are the most frequent long-term complications. Pancreatic carcinoma occurs more frequently in patients with chronic pancreatitis, and in up to 40% of patients with hereditary pancreatitis by age 70.

» Treatment

Medical management of acute attacks is indicated (see section on Acute Pancreatitis, earlier). If ductal obstruction is strongly suspected, endoscopic therapy (balloon dilation, stenting, stone removal, or sphincterotomy) should be pursued. Relapses occur in most patients. Pancreatic enzyme therapy should be used in patients with pancreatic insufficiency. Antioxidant therapy is being investigated. Pseudocysts may be marsupialized to the surface or drained into the stomach or into a loop of jejunum if they fail to regress spontaneously. Lateral pancreaticojejunostomy or the Frey procedure can reduce pain in pediatric patients with a dilated pancreatic duct and may prevent or delay progression of functional pancreatic impairment. Pancreatectomy and islet cell autotransplantation has been used in selected cases of chronic pancreatitis.

» Prognosis

In the absence of a correctable lesion, the prognosis is not good. Disabling episodes of pain, pancreatic insufficiency, diabetes, and pancreatic cancer may ensue. Narcotic addiction and suicide are risks in teenagers with disabling disease.

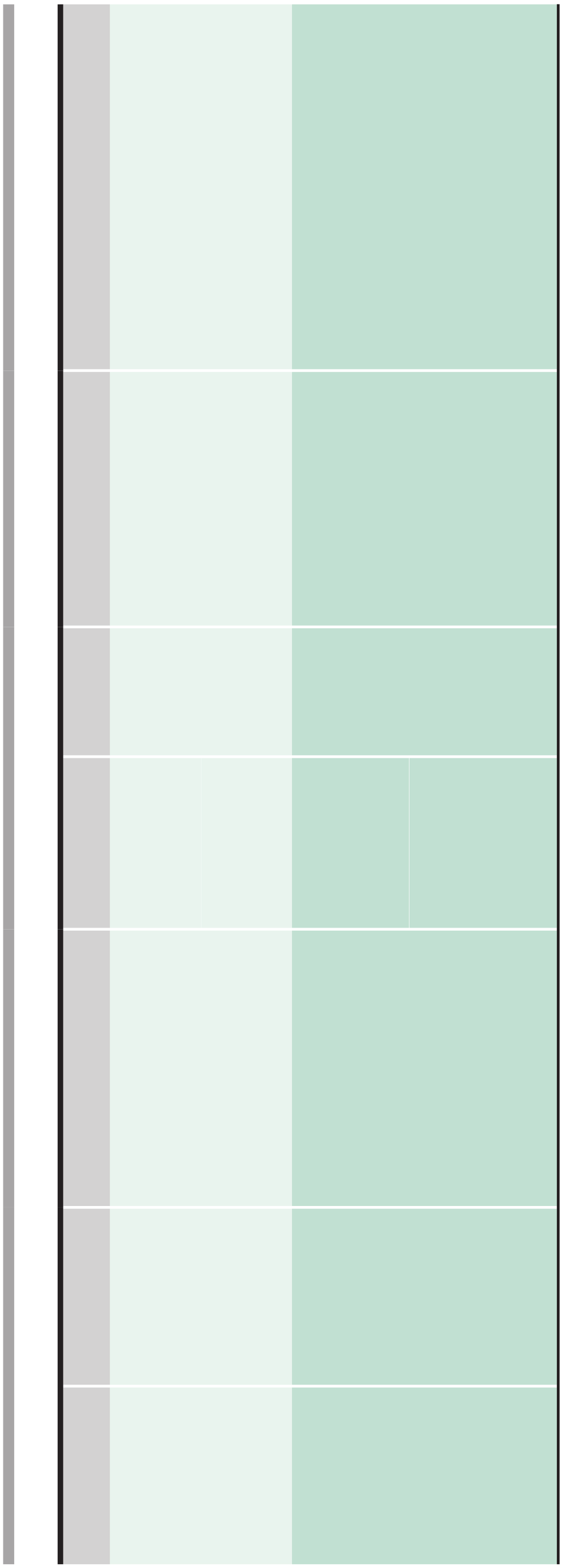
Awano H et al: Childhood-onset hereditary pancreatitis with mutations in the CT gene and SPINK1 gene. Pediatr Int 2013;55:646–649 [PMID: 24134754].

Ceppa EP et al: Hereditary pancreatitis: endoscopic and surgical management. J Gastrointest Surg 2013;17:847–856 [PMID: 23435738].

Masamune A. Genetics of pancreatitis: the 2014 update. Tohoku J Exp Med 2014;232:69–77 [PMID: 24522117].

GASTROINTESTINAL & HEPATOBILIARY MANIFESTATIONS OF CYSTIC FIBROSIS

Cystic fibrosis is a disease with protean manifestations. Although pulmonary and pancreatic involvement dominate the clinical picture for most patients (see Chapter 19), various other organs can be involved. Table 22–12 lists the important gastrointestinal, pancreatic, and hepatobiliary conditions that may affect patients with cystic fibrosis along with their clinical findings, incidence, most useful diagnostic studies, and preferred treatment.



Borowitz D, Gelfond D: Intestinal complications of cystic fibrosis. Curr Opin Pulm Med 2013;19:676–680 [PMID: 24060981].
Debray D et al: Best practice guidance for the diagnosis and management of cystic fibrosis-associated liver disease. J Cyst Fibros 2011;10:S29 [PMID: 21658639].
Flass T, Narkewicz MR: Cirrhosis and other liver disease in cystic fibrosis. J Cyst Fibros 2013;12:116 [PMID: 23266093].
Somaraju UR, Solis-Moya A: Pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy for people with cystic fibrosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;10:CD008227 [PMID: 25310479].

SYNDROMES WITH PANCREATIC EXOCRINE INSUFFICIENCY

Several syndromes are associated with exocrine pancreatic insufficiency. Patients present with failure to thrive, diarrhea, fatty stools, and an absence of respiratory symptoms. Laboratory findings include a normal sweat chloride; low fecal pancreatic elastase 1; and low to absent pancreatic lipase, amylase, and trypsin levels on duodenal intubation. Each disorder has several associated clinical features that aid in the differential diagnosis. In Shwachman-Diamond syndrome, pancreatic exocrine hypoplasia with widespread fatty replacement of the glandular acinar tissue is associated with neutropenia because of maturational arrest of the granulocyte series. Bone marrow failure is seen in one-third. Metaphyseal dysostosis and an elevated fetal hemoglobin level are common; immunoglobulin deficiency and hepatic dysfunction are also reported. CT examination of the pancreas demonstrates the widespread fatty replacement. Genotyping of the SBDS gene is available. Serum immunoreactive trypsinogen levels are extremely low.

Other associations of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency include (1) aplastic alae, aplasia cutis, deafness (Johanson-Blizzard syndrome); (2) sideroblastic anemia, developmental delay, seizures, and liver dysfunction (Pearson bone marrow pancreas syndrome); (3) duodenal atresia or stenosis; (4) malnutrition; and (5) pancreatic hypoplasia or agenesis.

The complications and sequelae of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency are malnutrition, diarrhea, and growth failure. The degree of steatorrhea may lessen with age. Intragastric lipolysis by lingual lipase may compensate in patients with low or absent pancreatic function. In Shwachman-Diamond syndrome, short stature and bony dysplasias are problematic. Increased numbers of infections may result from chronic neutropenia and the reduced neutrophil mobility that is present in many patients. An increased incidence of leukemia has been noted in these patients; thus patients with myelodysplasia syndrome should be considered for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation.

Pancreatic enzyme and fat-soluble vitamin replacement are required therapy in most patients. The prognosis appears to be good for those able to survive the increased number of bacterial infections early in life and lack severe associated defects.

Almashraki N, Abdulnabee MZ, Sukalo M, Alrajoudi A, Sharafadeen I, Zenker M: Johanson-Blizzard syndrome. World J Gastroenterol 2011;17:4247 [PMID: 22072859].
Chen R et al: Neonatal and late-onset diabetes mellitus caused by failure of pancreatic development: report of 4 more cases and a review of the literature. Pediatrics 2008;121:1541 [PMID: 18519458].
Dror Y et al: Draft consensus guidelines for diagnosis and treatment of Shwachman-Diamond syndrome. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2011;1242:40 [PMID: 22191555].
Myers KC et al: Clinical and molecular pathophysiology of Shwachman-Diamond syndrome: an update. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 2013;27:117 [PMID: 23351992].
Seneca S et al: Pearson marrow pancreas syndrome: a molecular study and clinical management. Clin Genet 1997;51:338 [PMID: 9212183].

ISOLATED EXOCRINE PANCREATIC ENZYME DEFECT

Normal premature infants and most newborns produce little, if any, pancreatic amylase following meals or exogenous hormonal stimulation. This temporary physiologic insufficiency may persist for the first 3–6 months of life and be responsible for diarrhea when complex carbohydrates (cereals) are introduced into the diet.

Congenital pancreatic lipase deficiency and congenital colipase deficiency are extremely rare disorders, causing diarrhea and variable malnutrition with malabsorption of dietary fat and fat-soluble vitamins. The sweat chloride level is normal and neutropenia is absent. Treatment is oral replacement of pancreatic enzymes and a low-fat diet or formula containing medium-chain triglycerides.

Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency of proteolytic enzymes (eg, trypsinogen, trypsin, chymotrypsin) is caused by enterokinase deficiency, a duodenal mucosal enzyme required for activation of the pancreatic proenzymes. These patients present with malnutrition associated with hypoproteinemia and edema, but do not have respiratory symptoms and have a normal sweat test. They respond to pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy and feeding formulas that contain a casein hydrolysate (eg, Nutramigen, Pregestimil).

McKenna LL: Pancreatic disorders in the newborn. Neonatal Netw 2000;19:13 [PMID: 11949098].
Stormon MO, Durie PR: Pathophysiologic basis of exocrine pancreatic dysfunction in childhood. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2002;35:8 [PMID: 12142803].

PANCREATIC TUMORS

Pancreatic tumors, whether benign or malignant, are rare. In the setting of malignancy, the majority of patients present with abdominal pain. Pancreatic tumors most often arise from ductal or acinar epithelium (malignant

Table 22–13. Pancreatic tumors.

	Age	Major Findings	Diagnosis	Treatment	Associated Conditions
Insulinoma	Any age	Hypoglycemia, seizures; high serum insulin; weight gain; abdominal pain and mass infrequent	CT scan, MRI, PET, EUS, SRS	Surgery, diazoxide, SSTA	MEN1
Adenocarcinoma	Any age	Epigastric pain, mass, weight loss, anemia, biliary obstruction	Ultrasound, CT scan, MRI, EUS	Surgery	Chronic pancreatitis
Gastrinoma	> 5–8 y	Male sex, gastric hypersecretion, peptic symptoms, multiple ulcers, gastrointestinal bleeding, anemia, diarrhea	Elevated fasting gastrin and postsecretin suppression test (> 300 pg/mL), CT scan, MRI, EUS, SRS, laparotomy	PPI, surgical resection, total gastrectomy, SSTA	Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, MEN1, neurofibromatosis
VIPoma	Any age (more common 2–4 y old)	Secretory diarrhea, hypokalemia, hypochlorhydria, weight loss, flushing	Elevated VIP levels (> 75 pg/mL); sometimes, elevated serum gastrin and pancreatic polypeptide; CT, EUS, SRS	Surgery, SSTA, IV fluids	
Glucagonoma	Older patients	Diabetes, necrolytic migratory erythema, diarrhea, anemia, thrombotic events, depression	Elevated glucagon, hyperglycemia, gastrin, VIP, CT, MRI, EUS, SRS	Surgery, SSTA	

CT, computed tomography; EUS, endoscopic ultrasound; IV, intravenous; MEN1, multiple endocrine neoplasia syndrome type I; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; PET, Positron emission tomography; PPI, proton pump inhibitor; SRS, somatostatin-receptor scintigraphy; SSTA, somatostatin analogue; VIP, vasoactive intestinal polypeptide.

adenocarcinoma) or from islet (endocrine) components within the gland, such as the benign insulinoma (adenoma) derived from β cells. Other pancreatic tumors originate from these pluripotential endocrine cells (eg, gastrinoma, VIPoma, glucagonoma), and produce diverse symptoms, because they release biologically active polypeptides from this ectopic location. The clinical features of these tumors are summarized in Table 22–13. The differential diagnosis of pancreatic tumors includes Wilms tumor, neuroblastoma, and malignant lymphoma. In older children, endoscopic ultrasonography can aid in localizing these tumors.

Nissen NN et al: Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors: presentation, management, and outcomes. Am Surg 2009;75:1025 [PMID: 19886158].

Rojas Y et al: Primary malignant pancreatic neoplasms in children and adolescents: a 20 year experience. J Pediatr Surg 2012;47:2199 [PMID: 23217876].

Yu DC et al: Childhood pancreatic tumors: a single institution experience. J Pediatr Surg 2009;44:2267 [PMID: 20006007].

REFERENCES

Kleinman R et al (eds): Walker's Pediatric Gastrointestinal Disease: Physiology, Diagnosis, Management. 6th ed. BC Decker Inc; 2014.

Suchy FJ, Sokol RJ, Balistreri WF (eds): Liver Disease in Children. 4th ed. Cambridge University Press; 2014.

Wyllie R, Hyams JS (eds): Pediatric Gastrointestinal and Liver Disease. 4th ed. Elsevier; 2011.

23

Fluid, Electrolyte, & Acid-Base Disorders & Therapy

Douglas M. Ford, MD
Melisha G. Hanna, MD, MS

REGULATION OF BODY FLUIDS, ELECTROLYTES, & TONICITY

Total body water (TBW) constitutes 50%–75% of the total body mass, depending on age, sex, and fat content. After an initial postnatal diuresis, the TBW slowly decreases to the adult range near puberty. TBW is divided into the intracellular and extracellular spaces. Intracellular fluid (ICF) accounts for two-thirds of the TBW and extracellular fluid (ECF) for one-third. The ECF is further compartmentalized into plasma (intravascular) volume and interstitial fluid (ISF).

The principal constituents of plasma are sodium, chloride, bicarbonate, and protein (primarily albumin). The ISF is similar to plasma but lacks significant amounts of protein (Figure 23–1). Conversely, the ICF is rich in potassium, magnesium, phosphates, sulfates, and protein.

An understanding of osmotic shifts between the ECF and ICF is fundamental to understanding disorders of fluid balance. Iso-osmolality is generally maintained between fluid compartments. Because the cell membrane is water-permeable, abnormal fluid shifts occur if the concentration of solutes that cannot permeate the cell membrane in the ECF does not equal the concentration of such solutes in the ICF. Thus, NaCl, mannitol, and glucose (in the setting of hyperglycemia) remain restricted to the ECF space and contribute effective osmoles by obligating water to remain in the ECF compartment. In contrast, a freely permeable solute such as urea does not contribute effective osmoles because it is not restricted to the ECF and readily crosses cell membranes. Tonicity, or effective osmolality, differs from measured osmolality in that it accounts only for osmotically active impermeable solutes rather than all osmotically active solutes, including those that are permeable to cell membranes. Osmolality may be estimated by the following formula:

$$\text{mOsm/kg} = 2[\text{Na}^+(\text{mEq/L})] + \frac{\text{Glucose(mg/dL)}}{18} + \frac{\text{BUN(mg/dL)}}{2.8}$$

Although osmolality and osmolarity differ, the former being an expression of osmotic activity per weight (kg) and the latter per volume (L) of solution, for clinical purposes they are similar and occasionally used interchangeably. Oncotic pressure, or colloid osmotic pressure, represents the osmotic activity of macromolecular constituents such as albumin in the plasma and body fluids. The importance of albumin in maintaining intravascular volume status is reflected in the setting of the nephrotic syndrome, protein losing enteropathy, and other low serum albumin states wherein fluids accumulate in the interstitial compartment leading to pitting edema.

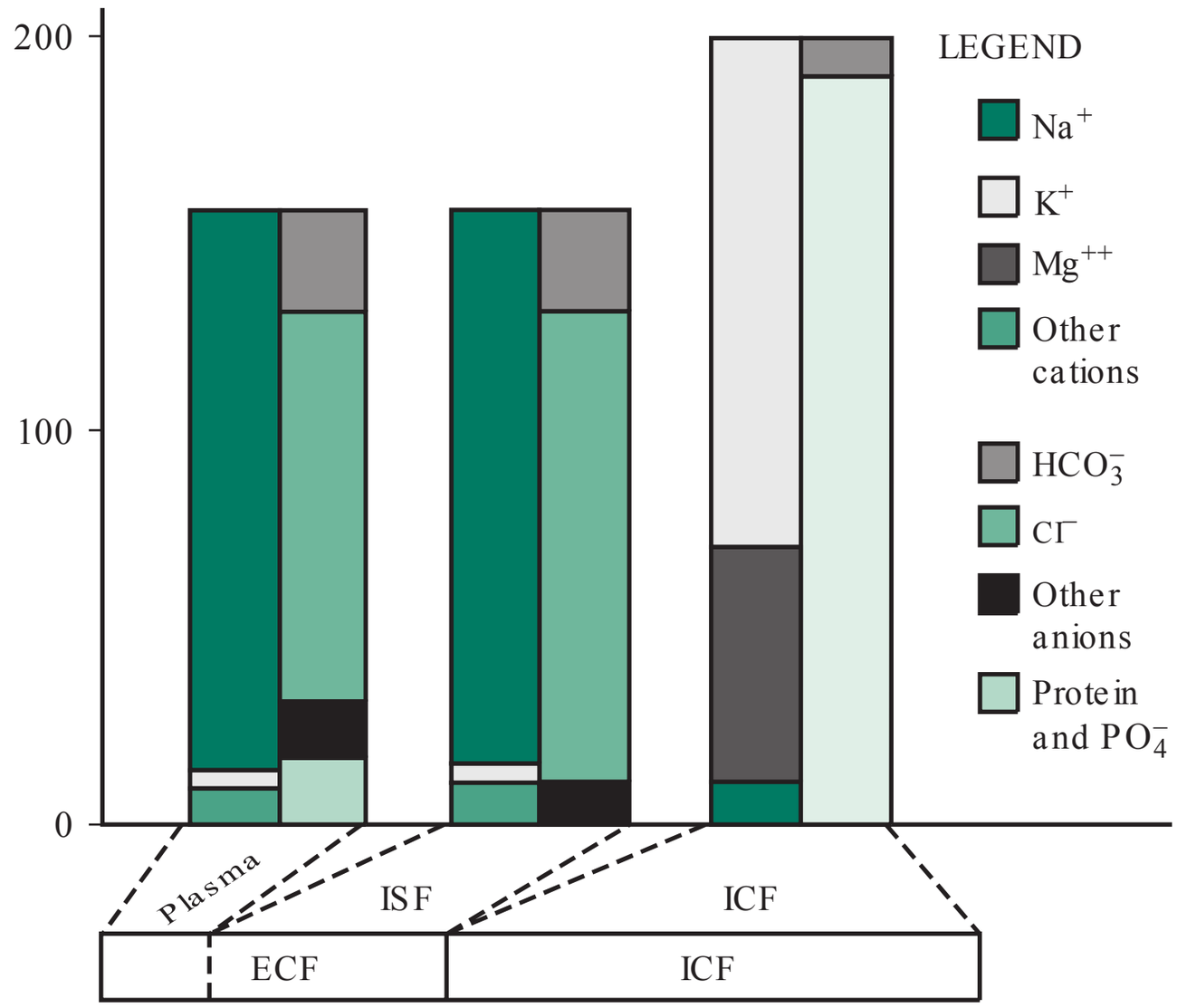
The principal mechanisms that regulate ECF volume and tonicity are thirst, vasopressin or antidiuretic hormone (ADH), aldosterone, and atrial natriuretic factor (ANF), the latter three exerting their influence by their effects on renal water and sodium handling.

Thirst

Water intake is commonly determined by cultural factors rather than by thirst. Thirst is not physiologically stimulated until plasma osmolality reaches 290 mOsm/kg, a level at which ADH levels are sufficient to induce maximal antidiuresis. Thirst provides control over a wide range of fluid volumes and can even be a response to an absence of or lack of responsiveness to ADH, which results in the production of copious, dilute urine, as in central or nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, or other ADH unresponsive states such as obstructive uropathy. One who cannot perceive thirst develops profound problems with fluid balance.

Antidiuretic Hormone

In the kidney, ADH increases water reabsorption in the cortical and medullary collecting ducts, leading to formation of concentrated urine. In the absence of ADH, dilute urine is produced. Under normal conditions, ADH secretion is



▲**Figure 23–1.** Composition of body fluids. ECF, extracellular fluid; ICF, intracellular fluid; ISF, interstitial fluid.

regulated by the tonicity of body fluids rather than the fluid volume and becomes detectable at a plasma osmolality of 280 mOsm/kg or greater. However, tonicity may be sacrificed to preserve ECF volume, as in the case of hyponatremic dehydration, wherein ADH secretion and renal water retention are maximal.

Aldosterone

Aldosterone is released from the adrenal cortex in response to decreased effective circulating volume and stimulation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis or in response to increasing plasma K^+. Aldosterone enhances renal tubular reabsorption of Na^+ in exchange for K^+, and to a lesser degree H^+. At a constant osmolality, retention of Na^+ leads to expansion of ECF volume and suppression of aldosterone release.

Atrial Natriuretic Factor

ANF, a polypeptide hormone secreted principally by the cardiac atria in response to atrial dilation, plays an important role in regulation of blood volume and blood pressure. ANF inhibits renin secretion and aldosterone synthesis and causes an increase in glomerular filtration rate and renal sodium excretion. ANF also guards against excessive plasma volume expansion in the face of increased ECF volume by shifting fluid from the vascular to the interstitial compartment. ANF inhibits angiotensin II and norepinephrine-induced vasoconstriction and acts in the brain to decrease the desire for salt and inhibit the release of ADH. Thus, the net effect of ANF is a decrease in blood volume and blood pressure associated with natriuresis and diuresis.

Danziger J, Zeidel ML: Osmotic homeostasis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2015 May 7;10(5):852–862 (Epub ahead of print) [PMID: 25078421].

Finberg L et al: Water and Electrolytes in Pediatrics: Physiology, Pathophysiology and Treatment, 2nd ed. WB Saunders; 1993.

Friedman A: Fluid and electrolyte therapy: a primer. Pediatr Nephrol 2010;25:842–846 [PMID: 19444484].

Palmer BF: Regulation of potassium homeostasis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2015 Jun 5;10(6):1050–1060 (Epub ahead of print). [PMID: 24721891].

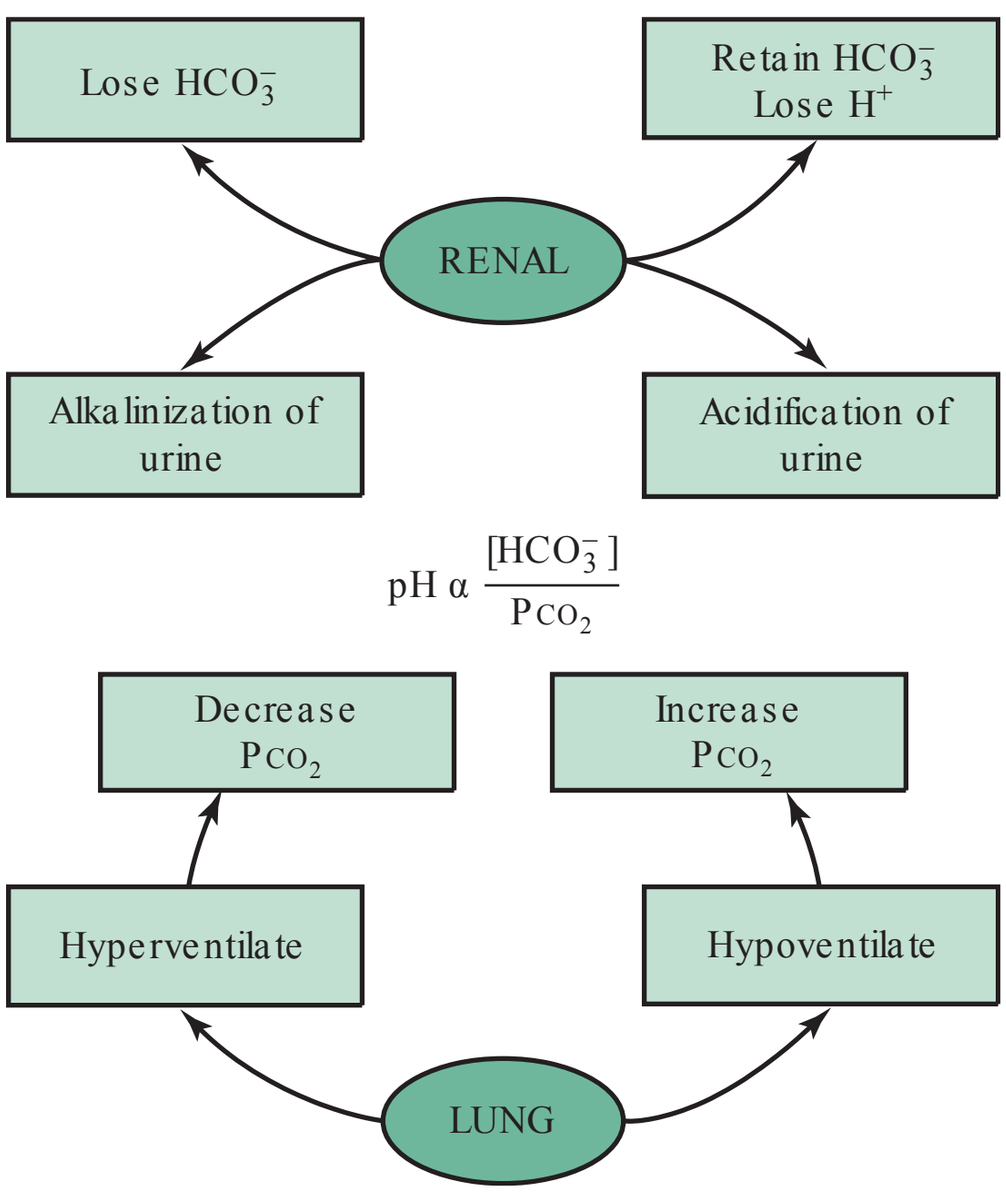
ACID-BASE BALANCE

The pH of arterial blood is maintained between 7.38 and 7.42 to ensure that pH-sensitive enzyme systems function normally. Acid-base balance is maintained by interaction of the lungs, kidneys, and systemic buffering systems. Over 50% of the blood's buffering capacity is provided by the carbonic acid–bicarbonate system, roughly 30% by hemoglobin, and the remainder by phosphates and ammonium. The carbonic acid–bicarbonate system, depicted chemically as

$$CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$$

interacts via the lungs and kidneys, and in conjunction with the nonbicarbonate systems, to stabilize systemic pH. The concentration of dissolved CO_2 in blood is established by the respiratory system and that of HCO_3^- by the kidneys. Disturbances in acid-base balance are initially stabilized by chemical buffering, compensated for by pulmonary or renal regulation of CO_2 or, respectively, and ultimately corrected when the primary cause of the acid-base disturbance is eliminated.

Renal regulation of acid-base balance is accomplished by the reabsorption of filtered HCO_3^-, primarily in the proximal tubule, and the excretion of H^+ or HCO_3^- in the distal nephron to match the net input of acid or base. When urine is alkalinized, HCO_3^- enters the kidney and is ultimately lost in the urine. Alkalinization of the urine may occur when an absolute or relative excess of bicarbonate exists. However, urinary alkalinization will not occur if there is a deficiency of Na^+ or K^+, because HCO_3^- must also be retained to maintain electroneutrality. In contrast, the urine may be acidified if an absolute or relative decrease occurs in systemic HCO_3^-. In this setting, proximal tubular HCO_3^- reabsorption and distal tubular H^+ excretion are maximal. A "paradoxical aciduria" with low urinary pH may be seen in the setting of hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis and systemic K^+ depletion wherein H^+ is exchanged and excreted in preference to K^+ in response to mineralocorticoid. Some of the processes involved in acid-base regulation are shown in Figure 23–2.



▲**Figure 23–2.** Maintaining metabolic stability via compensatory mechanisms.

Fall PJ: A stepwise approach to acid-base disorders. Practical patient evaluation for metabolic acidosis and other conditions. Postgraduate Med 2000;107:249 [PMID: 10728149].

Seifter JL: Integration of acid-base and electrolyte disorders. N Engl J Med 2014;371:1821–1831 [PMID: 25372090].

FLUID & ELECTROLYTE MANAGEMENT

Therapy of fluid and electrolyte disorders is directed toward providing maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirements, replenishing prior losses, and replacing persistent abnormal losses. Therapy should be phased to (1) rapidly expand the ECF volume and restore tissue perfusion, (2) replenish fluid and electrolyte deficits while correcting attendant acid-base abnormalities, (3) meet the patient's nutritional needs, and (4) replace ongoing losses.

The cornerstone of therapy involves an understanding of maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirements. Maintenance requirements call for provision of enough water, glucose, and electrolytes to prevent deterioration of body stores for a euvolemic patient. During short-term parenteral therapy, sufficient glucose is provided to prevent ketosis and limit protein catabolism, although this usually provides little more than 20% of the patient's true caloric needs. Prior to the administration of maintenance fluids, it is important to consider the patient's volume status and to determine whether intravenous fluids are truly needed.

Various models have been devised to facilitate calculation of maintenance requirements based on body surface area, weight, and caloric expenditure. A system based on caloric expenditure is most helpful, because 1 mL of water is needed for each kilocalorie expended. The system presented in Table 23–1 is based on caloric needs and is applicable to children weighing more than 3 kg.

As depicted in Table 23–1, a child weighing 30 kg would need 1700 kcal or 1700 mL of water daily. If the child received parenteral fluids for 2 days, the fluid would usually contain 5% glucose, which would provide 340 kcal/d, or 20% of the maintenance caloric needs. Maintenance fluid requirements

Table 23–1. Caloric and water needs per unit of body weight.

Body Weight (kg)	kcal/kg	mL of Water/kg
3–10	100	100
11–20	1000 kcal + 50 kcal/kg for each kg > 10 kg	1000 mL + 50 mL/kg for each kg > 10 kg
> 20	1500 kcal + 20 kcal/kg for each kg > 20 kg	1500 mL + 20 mL/kg for each kg > 20 kg

Data from Holliday MA, Segar WE: The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatrics 1957;19:823.

Table 23–2. Alterations of maintenance fluid requirements.

Factor	Altered Requirement
Fever	12%/°C[a]
Hyperventilation	10–60 mL/100 kcal
Sweating	10–25 mL/100 kcal
Hyperthyroidism	Variable: 25%–50%
Gastrointestinal loss and renal disease	Monitor and analyze output. Adjust therapy accordingly.

[a]Do not correct for 38°C; correct 24% for 39°C.

take into account normal insensible water losses and water lost in sweat, urine, and stool, and assume the patient to be afebrile, at their true dry weight, and relatively inactive. Thus, if excessive losses occur, standard "maintenance fluids" will be inadequate. In contrast, if losses are reduced for any reason, standard "maintenance fluid" administration would be excessive. Maintenance requirements are greater for low-birth-weight and preterm infants. Table 23–2 lists other factors that commonly alter fluid and caloric needs.

Electrolyte losses occur primarily through the urinary tract and to a lesser degree via the skin and stool. Although maintenance sodium and potassium electrolyte needs have historically been approximated to be in the 3 mEq Na/100 kcal and 2 mEq K/100 kcal range, respectively, leading to the common use of hypotonic intravenous fluids with 38 or 77 mEq/L of sodium (¼ and ½ normal saline)) and 20 mEq/L of potassium, over the past 10 years many authors have drawn attention to the very serious problem of hospital-acquired hyponatremia in children with the use of hypotonic IV solutions. It is notable, that hyponatremia is the most common electrolyte abnormality in children and affects approximately 25% of hospitalized pediatric patients. It is also important to emphasize that the astute clinician will bear in mind the dynamic nature of clinical context in treating patients. The choice of IV solution and rate of infusion must be made on an individual basis and must be reassessed often. A child with profound water loss stools and hypernatremia who is placed on hypotonic IV fluids and whose diarrhea ceases, but is continued on hypotonic solution without close monitoring of serum electrolytes is at grave risk for the devastating clinical consequences that may develop in the setting of hyponatremia, such as seizures and neurologic impairment. Although stress-induced nonosmotic release of vasopressin and associated increased free water retention is certainly a factor in the development of hospital-acquired hyponatremia in children, 3 mEq Na/100 kcal underestimates daily sodium needs by about half. True needs more closely approximate 5–6 mEq/100 kcal in these clinical situations. In recent years, there also has been a trend for total parenteral nutrition solution sodium, and other electrolytes to be calculated and ordered on a milliequivalents-per-kilogram basis rather than the more classic milliequivalents-per-liter basis (eg, 0.2 or 0.45 normal). It is extremely important to understand that if the administered fluid volume is decreased in this setting, as the child is weaned from supplemental IV fluids to enteral intake, the sodium and other electrolytes will need to be reduced accordingly to avoid progressively increasing IV fluid tonicity that can result in hypernatremia or other electrolyte derangements.

It is helpful to monitor the patient's daily weight, urinary output, fluid input, and urine-specific gravity. However, if stress-induced nonosmotic release of ADH is operative in a given patient, serial monitoring of the urine-specific gravity may give the false impression that the child is still dehydrated when they are fluid replete, but still generating a concentrated urine. If fluid or electrolyte balance is abnormal, serial determination of serum electrolyte concentrations, blood urea nitrogen, and creatinine are necessary. In patients with significant burns, anuria, oliguria, or persistent abnormal stool or urine losses (eg, from a stoma, or polyuria secondary to a renal concentrating defect), it is important to measure output, and if needed its electrolyte components, so appropriate replacement can be provided.

DEHYDRATION

Depletion of body fluids is one of the most commonly encountered problems in clinical pediatrics. Children have a high incidence of gastrointestinal diseases, including gastroenteritis, and may demonstrate gastrointestinal symptoms in nongastrointestinal conditions, such as pneumonia or meningitis. Infants and young children often decrease their oral intake when ill, and their high ratio of surface area to weight promotes significant evaporative losses. Renal concentrating mechanisms do not maximally conserve water in early life, and fever may significantly increase fluid needs. Dehydration decreases ECF volume, leading to decreased tissue perfusion, progressive uremia and abnormal renal function studies, compensatory tachycardia, and lactic acidosis. The clinical effects of dehydration relate to the degree of dehydration and to the relative amounts of salt and water lost. Caregivers must be particularly aware of dehydration occurring in breast-fed newborn infants who go home soon after birth and whose mothers fail to produce enough milk. This problem is more common in the hot summer months and has been associated with severe dehydration, brain damage, and death.

The clinical evaluation of a child with dehydration should focus on the composition and volume of fluid intake; the frequency and amount of vomiting, diarrhea, and urine output; the degree and duration of fever; the nature of any administered medications; and the existence of underlying

Table 23–3. Clinical manifestations of dehydration.

Clinical Signs	Degree of Dehydration		
	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Decrease in body weight	3%–5%	6%–10%	11%–15%
Skin			
Turgor	Normal ±	Decreased	Markedly decreased
Color	Normal	Pale	Markedly decreased
Mucous membranes	Dry →		Mottled or gray; parched
Hemodynamic Signs			
Pulse	Normal	Slight increase	Tachycardia
Capillary refill	2–3 s	3–4 s	> 4 s
Blood pressure	Normal →		Low
Perfusion	Normal →		Circulatory collapse
Fluid Loss			
Urinary output	Mild oliguria	Oliguria	Anuria
Tears	Decreased		Absent
Urinary Indices			
Specific gravity	> 1.020 →		Anuria
Urine [Na^+]	< 20 mEq/L →		Anuria

medical conditions. A recently recorded weight, if known, can be very helpful in calculating the magnitude of dehydration. Important clinical features in estimating the degree of dehydration include the capillary refill time, postural blood pressure, and heart rate changes; dryness of the lips and mucous membranes; lack of tears; lack of external jugular venous filling when supine; a sunken fontanelle in an infant; oliguria; and altered mental status (Table 23–3). Children generally respond to a decrease in circulating volume with a compensatory increase in pulse rate and may maintain their blood pressure in the face of severe dehydration. A low or falling blood pressure is, therefore, a late sign of shock in children, and when present should prompt emergent treatment. Salient laboratory parameters include a high urine-specific gravity (in the absence of an underlying renal concentrating defect as seen in diabetes insipidus or chronic obstructive or reflux nephropathy), a relatively greater elevation in blood urea nitrogen than in serum creatinine, a low urinary [Na^+] excretion (< 20 mEq/L), and an elevated hematocrit or serum albumin level secondary to hemoconcentration.

Emergent intravenous therapy is indicated when there is evidence of compromised perfusion (inadequate capillary refill, tachycardia, poor color, oliguria, or hypotension). The initial goal is to rapidly expand the plasma volume and to prevent circulatory collapse. A 20-mL/kg bolus of isotonic fluid should be given intravenously as rapidly as possible. Either colloid (5% albumin) or crystalloid (normal saline or Ringer lactate) may be used. Colloid is particularly useful in hypernatremic patients in shock, in malnourished infants, and in neonates. If no intravenous site is available, fluid may be administered intraosseously through the marrow space of the tibia. If there is no response to the first fluid bolus, a second bolus may be given. When adequate tissue perfusion is demonstrated by improved capillary refill, decreased pulse rate and urine output, and improved mental status, deficit replacement may be instituted. If adequate perfusion is not restored after 40 mL/kg of isotonic fluids, other pathologic processes must be considered such as sepsis, occult hemorrhage, or cardiogenic shock. Isotonic dehydration may be treated by providing half of the remaining fluid deficit over 8 hours and the second half over the ensuing 16 hours in the form of 5% dextrose with 0.45% saline containing 20 mEq/L of KCl. In the presence of metabolic acidosis, potassium acetate may be considered. Maintenance fluids and replacement of ongoing losses should also be provided. Typical electrolyte compositions of various body fluids are depicted in Table 23–4, although it may be necessary to measure the specific constituents of a patient's fluid losses to guide therapy. If the patient is unable to eat for a prolonged period, nutritional needs must be met through hyperalimentation or enteral tube feedings.

Oral rehydration may be provided to children with mild to moderate dehydration. Clear liquid beverages found in the home, such as broth, soda, juice, and tea are inappropriate for the treatment of dehydration. Commercially available solutions provide 45–75 mEq/L of Na^+, 20–25 mEq/L of K^+, 30–34 mEq/L of citrate or bicarbonate, and 2%–2.5% of glucose. Frequent small aliquots (5–15 mL) should be given to provide approximately 50 mL/kg over 4 hours for mild dehydration and up to 100 mL/kg over 6 hours for moderate

Table 23–4. Typical electrolyte compositions of various body fluids.

	Na^+ (mEq/L)	K^+ (mEq/L)	(mEq/L)
Diarrhea	10–90	10–80	40
Gastric	20–80	5–20	0
Small intestine	100–140	5–15	40
Ileostomy	45–135	3–15	40

Data from Winters RW: Principles of Pediatric Fluid Therapy. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1973.

dehydration. Oral rehydration is contraindicated in children with altered levels of consciousness or respiratory distress who cannot drink freely; in children suspected of having an acute surgical abdomen; in infants with greater than 10% volume depletion; in children with hemodynamic instability; and in the setting of severe hyponatremia ($[Na^+] < 120$ mEq/L) or hypernatremia ($[Na^+] > 160$ mEq/L). Failure of oral rehydration due to persistent vomiting or inability to keep up with losses mandates intravenous therapy. Successful oral rehydration requires explicit instructions to caregivers and close clinical follow-up of the child.

The type of dehydration is characterized by the serum $[Na^+]$. If relatively more solute is lost than water, the $[Na^+]$ falls, and hyponatremic dehydration ($[Na^+] < 130$ mEq/L) ensues. This is important clinically because hypotonicity of the plasma contributes to further volume loss from the ECF into the intracellular space. Thus, tissue perfusion is more significantly impaired for a given degree of hyponatremic dehydration than for a comparable degree of isotonic or hypertonic dehydration. It is important to note, however, that significant solute losses also occur in hypernatremic dehydration. Furthermore, because plasma volume is somewhat protected in hypernatremic dehydration, it poses the risk of the clinician underestimating the severity of dehydration. Typical fluid and electrolyte losses associated with each form of dehydration are shown in Table 23–5.

Table 23–5. Estimated water and electrolyte deficits in dehydration (moderate to severe).

Type of Dehydration	H_2O (mL/kg)	Na^+ (mEq/kg)	K^+ (mEq/kg)	Cl^- and (mEq/kg)
Isotonic	100–150	8–10	8–10	16–20
Hypotonic	50–100	10–14	10–14	20–28
Hypertonic	120–180	2–5	2–5	4–10

Adapted, with permission, from Winters RW: Principles of Pediatric Fluid Therapy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1982.

HYPONATREMIA

Hyponatremia may be factitious in the presence of high plasma lipids or proteins, which decrease the percentage of plasma volume that is water. Hyponatremia in the absence of hypotonicity also occurs when an osmotically active solute, such as glucose or mannitol, is added to the ECF. Water drawn from the ICF dilutes the serum $[Na^+]$ despite isotonicity or hypertonicity.

Patients with hyponatremic dehydration generally demonstrate typical signs and symptoms of dehydration (see Table 23–3), because the vascular space is compromised as water leaves the ECF to maintain osmotic neutrality. The treatment of hyponatremic dehydration is fairly straightforward. The magnitude of the sodium deficit may be calculated by the following formula:

$$Na^+ \text{ deficit} = (Na^+ \text{ desired} - Na^+ \text{ observed}) \times \text{Bodyweight (kg)} \times 0.6$$

Half of the deficit is replenished in the first 8 hours of therapy, and the remainder is given over the following 16 hours. Maintenance and replacement fluids should also be provided. The deficit plus maintenance calculations often approximate 5% dextrose with 0.45% or higher saline. The rise in serum $[Na^+]$ should not exceed 0.5 mEq/L/h or 8–10 mEq/L/24 h unless the patient demonstrates central nervous system (CNS) symptoms that warrant more rapid initial correction. The dangers of too rapid correction of hyponatremia include cerebral dehydration and injury due to fluid shifts from the ICF compartment, a condition known as osmotic demyelination syndrome.

Hypovolemic hyponatremia also occurs in cerebral salt-wasting associated with CNS insults, a condition characterized by high urine output and elevated urinary $[Na^+]$ (> 40 mEq/L) due to an increase in ANF, and is a diagnosis of exclusion requiring a natriuresis in a patient with a contracted effective circulatory blood volume in the absence of other causes for Na^+ excretion. This must be distinguished from the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH (SIADH), which may also manifest in CNS conditions and pulmonary disorders (Table 23–6). In contrast to cerebral salt-wasting, SIADH is characterized by euvolemia or mild volume expansion and relatively low urine output due to ADH-induced water retention. Urinary $[Na^+]$ is high in both conditions, though generally not as high as in SIADH. It is important to distinguish between these two conditions, because the treatment of cerebral salt wasting involves replacement of urinary salt and water losses, whereas the treatment of SIADH involves water restriction. It is also important to remember that in SIADH patients are not necessarily oliguric, and that their urine does not need to be maximally concentrated but

Table 23–6. SIADH and cerebral salt wasting.

	Serum Na+	Serum Osmolality	Urine Na+	Urine Output	Urine Osmolality	Volume status	Treatment
SIADH	< 135 mEq/L	< 280 mOsm/kg	> 40 mEq/L	Low	> 100 mOsm/kg[a]	Euvolemia or mild volume expansion	Water restriction
Cerebral Salt Wasting	< 135 mEq/L	< 280 mOsm/kg	> 40 mEq/L	High	> 100 mOsm/kg[a]	Hypovolemia	Sodium and water replacement

[a]Urine is inappropriately concentrated when it should be maximally dilute with a urine osmolality of < 100 mOsm/kg.

merely inappropriately concentrated for their degree of serum tonicity.

In cases of severe hyponatremia (serum [Na^+] < 120 mEq/L) with CNS symptoms, intravenous 3% NaCl may be given over 1 hour to raise the [Na^+] to 120 mEq/L to alleviate CNS manifestations and sequelae. In general, 1 mL/kg of 3% NaCl will raise the serum [Na^+] by about 1 mEq/L. If 3% NaCl is administered, estimated Na^+ and fluid deficits should be adjusted accordingly. Further correction should proceed slowly, as outlined earlier.

Hypervolemic hyponatremia may occur in edematous disorders such as nephrotic syndrome, congestive heart failure, and cirrhosis, wherein water is retained in excess of salt. Treatment involves restriction of Na^+ and water and correction of the underlying disorder. Hypervolemic hyponatremia due to water intoxication is characterized by a maximally dilute urine (specific gravity < 1.003) and is also treated with water restriction.

HYPERNATREMIA

Although diarrhea is commonly associated with hyponatremic or isonatremic dehydration, hypernatremia may develop in the presence of persistent fever or decreased fluid intake or in response to improperly mixed rehydration solutions. Extreme care is required to treat hypernatremic dehydration appropriately. If the serum [Na^+] falls precipitously, the osmolality of the ECF drops more rapidly than that of the CNS. Water shifts from the ECF compartment into the CNS to maintain osmotic neutrality. If hypertonicity is corrected too rapidly (a drop in [Na^+] of > 0.5 mEq/L/h), cerebral edema, seizures, and CNS injury may occur. Thus, following the initial restoration of adequate tissue perfusion using isotonic fluids, a gradual decrease in serum [Na^+] is desired (10–12 mEq/L/d). This is commonly achieved using 5% dextrose with 0.2% saline to replace the calculated fluid deficit over 48 hours. Maintenance and replacement fluids should also be provided. If the serum [Na^+] is not correcting appropriately, the free water deficit may be estimated as 4 mL/kg of free water for each milliequivalent of serum [Na^+] above 145 mEq/L and provided as 5% dextrose over 48 hours. If metabolic acidosis is also present, it must be corrected slowly to avoid CNS irritability. Potassium is provided as indicated—as the acetate salt if necessary. Electrolyte concentrations should be assessed every 2 hours in order to control the decline in serum [Na^+]. Elevations of blood glucose and blood urea nitrogen may worsen the hyperosmolar state in hypernatremic dehydration and should also be monitored closely. Hyperglycemia is often associated with hypernatremic dehydration and may necessitate lower intravenous glucose concentrations (eg, 2.5%).

Patients with diabetes insipidus, whether nephrogenic or central in origin, are prone to develop profound hypernatremic dehydration as a result of unremitting urinary-free water losses (urine-specific gravity < 1.010), particularly during superimposed gastrointestinal illnesses associated with vomiting or diarrhea. Treatment involves restoration of fluid and electrolyte deficits as described earlier as well as replacement of excessive water losses. Formal water deprivation testing to distinguish responsiveness to ADH should only be done during daylight hours after restoration of normal fluid volume status.

However, if a child presents with marked dehydration and a serum Na^+ greater than 150 mEq/L, it may prove helpful and timely to obtain a plasma vasopressin level at the time of their initial presentation. The evaluation and treatment of nephrogenic and central diabetes insipidus are discussed in detail in Chapters 24 and 34, respectively.

Hypervolemic hypernatremia (salt poisoning), associated with excess total body salt and water, may occur as a consequence of providing improperly mixed formula, excessive NaCl or $NaHCO_3$ administration, or as a feature of primary hyperaldosteronism. Treatment includes the use of diuretics, and potentially, concomitant water replacement or even dialysis.

POTASSIUM DISORDERS

The predominantly intracellular distribution of potassium is maintained by the actions of Na^+-K^+-ATPase in the cell membranes. Potassium is shifted into the ECF and plasma by acidemia and into the ICF in the setting of alkalosis, hypochloremia, or in conjunction with insulin-induced cellular glucose uptake. The ratio of intracellular to extracellular K^+ is the major determinant of the cellular resting membrane potential and contributes to the action potential in neural and muscular tissue. Abnormalities of K^+ balance are potentially life threatening. In the kidney, K^+ is filtered at the glomerulus, reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, and excreted in the distal tubule. Distal tubular K^+ excretion is regulated primarily by the mineralocorticoid aldosterone. Renal K^+ excretion is primarily dependent on the urinary flow rate, and continues for significant periods even after the intake of K^+ is decreased. Thus, by the time urinary [K^+] decreases, the systemic K^+ pool has been depleted significantly. In general, the greater the urine flow the greater the urinary K^+ excretion.

The causes of net K^+ loss are primarily renal in origin. Gastrointestinal losses through nasogastric suction or vomiting reduce total body K^+ to some degree. However, the resultant volume depletion results in an increase in plasma aldosterone, promoting renal excretion of K^+ in exchange for Na^+ reclamation to preserve circulatory volume. Diuretics (especially thiazides), mineralocorticoids, and intrinsic renal tubular diseases (eg, Bartter syndrome) enhance the renal excretion of K^+. Systemic K^+ depletion in hypokalemic metabolic acidosis may lead to "paradoxic aciduria" and low urine pH wherein H^+ is preferentially exchanged for Na^+ in response to aldosterone. Clinically, hypokalemia is associated with neuromuscular excitability, decreased peristalsis or ileus, hyporeflexia, paralysis, rhabdomyolysis, and arrhythmias. Electrocardiographic changes include flattened T waves, a shortened PR interval, and the appearance of U waves. Arrhythmias associated with hypokalemia include premature ventricular contractions; atrial, nodal, or ventricular tachycardia; and ventricular fibrillation. Hypokalemia increases responsiveness to digitalis and may precipitate overt digitalis toxicity. In the presence of arrhythmias, extreme muscle weakness, or respiratory compromise, intravenous K^+ should be given. If the patient is hypophosphatemic ([PO_4^{3-}]< 2 mg/dL), a phosphate salt may be used. The first priority in the treatment of hypokalemia is the restoration of an adequate serum [K^+]. Providing maintenance amounts of K^+ is usually sufficient; however, when the serum [K^+] is dangerously low and K^+ must be administered intravenously, it is imperative that the patient have a cardiac monitor. Intravenous K^+ should generally not be given faster than at a rate of 0.3 mEq/kg/h. Oral K^+ supplements may be needed for weeks to replenish depleted body stores.

Hyperkalemia—due to decreased renal K^+ excretion, mineralocorticoid deficiency or unresponsiveness, or K^+ release from the ICF compartment—is characterized by muscle weakness, paresthesias, and tetany; ascending paralysis; and arrhythmias. Electrocardiographic changes associated with hyperkalemia include peaked T waves, widening of the QRS complex, and arrhythmias such as sinus bradycardia or sinus arrest, atrioventricular block, nodal or idioventricular rhythms, and ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation. The severity of hyperkalemia depends on the electrocardiographic changes, the status of the other electrolytes, and the stability of the underlying disorder. A rhythm strip should be obtained when significant hyperkalemia is suspected. If the serum [K^+] is less than 6.5 mEq/L, discontinuing K^+ supplementation may be sufficient if there is no ongoing K^+ source, such as cell lysis, and if urine output continues. If the serum [K^+] is greater than 7 mEq/L or if potentiating factors such as hyponatremia, digitalis toxicity, and renal failure are present, more aggressive therapy is needed (Table 23–7). If electrocardiographic changes or arrhythmias are present, treatment must be initiated promptly. Intravenous 10% calcium gluconate (0.2–0.5 mL/kg over 2–10 minutes) will rapidly ameliorate depolarization and may be repeated after 5 minutes if electrocardiographic changes persist. Calcium should be given only with a cardiac monitor in place and should be discontinued if bradycardia develops. The intravenous administration of a diuretic that acts in the loop of Henle, such as furosemide (1–2 mg/kg), will augment renal K^+ excretion and can be very helpful in lowering serum and total body [K^+]. Administering Na^+ and increasing systemic pH with bicarbonate therapy (1 mEq/kg) will shift K^+ from the ECF to the ICF compartment, as will therapy with a β-agonist such as albuterol. In nondiabetic patients, 0.5 g/kg of glucose over 1–2 hours will enhance endogenous insulin secretion, lowering serum [K^+] 1–2 mEq/L. Administration of intravenous glucose and insulin may be needed as a simultaneous drip (0.5–1 g/kg glucose and 0.3 units of regular insulin per gram of glucose) given over 2 hours with monitoring of the serum glucose level every 15 minutes.

The therapies outlined above provide transient benefits. Ultimately, K^+ must be reduced to normal levels by reestablishing adequate renal excretion using diuretics or optimizing urinary flow, using ion exchange resins such as sodium polystyrene sulfonate orally or as a retention enema (1 g/kg orally or as an enema), or by dialysis.

Bettinelli A et al: Renal salt-wasting syndrome in children with intracranial disorders. Pediatr Nephrol 2012;27:733–739 [PMID: 22237777].

Carandang F et al: Association between maintenance fluid tonicity and hospital acquired hyponatremia. J Pediatr 2013;163: 1646–1651 [PMID: 23998517].

Choong K et al: Hypotonic versus isotonic maintenance fluids after surgery for children: a randomized controlled trial. Pediatrics 2011;128:980–983 [PMID: 22007013].

Table 23–7. Drugs for the treatment of hyperkalemia in children.

Drug	Dose	Actions	Notes
Calcium gluconate (10% solution)	0.2–0.5 mL/kg IV given over 2–10 min (maximum dose 20 mL)	Cardiac membrane stabilization. Does not alter the serum K+ level.	Cardiac monitoring needed. May repeat dose if ECG changes persist. Discontinue if bradycardia develops.
Sodium polystyrene sulfonate	1 g/kg oral every 6 h or rectal every 2–6 h	Ion exchange resin that exchanges K+ for Na+. Will decrease total body K+.	Do not use in neonates and patients with bowel hypomotility or bowel obstruction due to risk of intestinal necrosis. May cause hypernatremia, hypocalcemia, and hypomagnesemia.
Sodium Bicarbonate	1 mEq/kg (maximum dose 50 mEq)	Transient shift of K+ from the ECF to the ICF compartment.	Avoid use if alkalosis or hypocalcemia is present. May cause hypernatremia, hypocalcemia.
Furosemide	1–2 mg/kg IV	Diuretic that increases renal K+ excretion. Will decrease total body K+.	May need higher doses in patients with chronic kidney disease to achieve desired effect.
Albuterol (Nebulized)	Infants and children < 5 y of age: 2.5 mg in 2 mL of saline Children > 5 y of age: 5 mg in 2 mL of saline Adolescents: 10 mg in 2 mL of saline	Transient shift of K+ from the ECF to the ICF compartment.	May repeat for one additional dose. Tachycardia may limit repeat dosing.
Insulin (Regular)	glucose 0.5–1 g/kg with 0.3 units of insulin per gram of glucose given over 2 h	Transient shift of K+ from the ECF to the ICF compartment.	Must be given with a glucose infusion to prevent severe hypoglycemia. Diabetic patients may not require glucose infusion. Requires close monitoring of serum glucose.

Ellison DH, Berl T: Clinical practice. The syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis. N Engl J Med 2007;356:2064 [PMID: 17507705].

Holliday MA, Ray PE, Friedman A: Fluid therapy for children: facts, fashions and questions. Arch Dis Child 2007;92:546–550 [PMID: 17175577].

Moritz ML, Ayus JC: Prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatremia: do we have the answers? Pediatrics 2011;128:980–983 [PMID: 22007008].

Neville KA et al: High antidiuretic hormone levels and hyponatremia in children with gastroenteritis. Pediatrics 2005;116:1401–1407 [PMID: 16322164].

Roberts KB: Fluid and electrolytes: parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatr Rev 2001;22:380 [PMID: 11691948].

Sterns RH: Disorders of plasma sodium—causes, consequences, and correction. N Engl J Med 2015;372:55–65 [PMID: 25551526].

ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES

When evaluating a disturbance in acid-base balance, the systemic pH, partial carbon dioxide pressure (Pco_2), serum HCO_3^-, and anion gap must be considered. The anion gap, $[Na^+ – (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)]$, is an expression of the unmeasured anions in the plasma and is normally 12 ± 4 mEq/L. An increase above normal suggests the presence of an unmeasured anion, such as occurs in diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, and salicylate intoxication. Although the base excess (or deficit) is also used clinically, it is important to recall that this expression of acid-base balance is influenced by the renal response to respiratory disorders and cannot be interpreted independently (as in a compensated respiratory acidosis, wherein the base excess may be quite large).

METABOLIC ACIDOSIS

Metabolic acidosis is characterized by a primary decrease in serum $[HCO_3^-]$ and systemic pH due to the loss of HCO_3^- from the kidneys or gastrointestinal tract, the addition of an acid (from external sources or via altered metabolic processes), or the rapid dilution of the ECF with non-bicarbonate–containing solution (usually normal saline). When HCO_3^- is lost through the kidneys or gastrointestinal tract, Cl^- must be reabsorbed with Na^+ disproportionately, resulting in a hyperchloremic acidosis with a normal anion gap. Thus, a normal anion gap acidosis in the absence of diarrhea or other bicarbonate-rich gastrointestinal losses suggests the possibility of renal tubular acidosis and should be evaluated appropriately (see Chapter 24). In contrast, acidosis that results from the addition of an unmeasured acid is associated with a widened anion gap. Examples are diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, starvation, uremia,

toxin ingestion (salicylates, ethylene glycol, or methanol), and certain inborn errors of organic or amino acid metabolism. Dehydration may also result in a widened anion gap acidosis as a result of inadequate tissue perfusion, decreased O_2 delivery, and subsequent lactic and keto acid production. Respiratory compensation is accomplished through an increase in minute ventilation and a decrease in Pco_2. The patient's history, physical findings, and laboratory features should lead to the appropriate diagnosis.

The ingestion of unknown toxins or the possibility of an inborn error of metabolism (see Chapter 36) must be considered in children without an obvious cause for a widened anion gap acidosis. Unfortunately, some hospital laboratories fail to include ethylene glycol or methanol in their standard toxicology screens, so assay of these toxins must be requested specifically. This is of critical importance when therapy with fomepizole (4-methylpyrazole) must be considered for either ingestion—and instituted promptly to obviate profound toxicity. Ethylene glycol (eg, antifreeze) is particularly worrisome because of its sweet taste and accounts for a significant number of toxin ingestions. Screening by fluorescence of urine under a Wood lamp is relatively simple but does not replace specific laboratory assessment. Salicylate intoxication has a stimulatory effect on the respiratory center of the CNS; thus, patients may initially present with respiratory alkalosis or mixed respiratory alkalosis and widened anion gap acidosis.

Most types of metabolic acidosis will resolve with correction of the underlying disorder, improved renal perfusion, and acid excretion. Intravenous $NaHCO_3$ administration may be considered in the setting of metabolic acidosis when the pH is less than 7.0 or the $[HCO_3^-]$ is less than 5 mEq/L, but only if adequate ventilation is ensured. The dose (in milliequivalents) of $NaHCO_3$ may be calculated as:

$$\text{Weight (kg)} \times \text{Base deficit} \times 0.3$$

and given as a continuous infusion over 1 hour. The effect of $NaHCO_3$ in lowering serum potassium and ionized calcium concentrations must also be considered and monitored.

METABOLIC ALKALOSIS

Metabolic alkalosis is characterized by a primary increase in $[HCO_3^-]$ and pH resulting from a loss of strong acid or gain of buffer base. The most common cause for a metabolic alkalosis is the loss of gastric juice via nasogastric suction or vomiting. This results in a Cl^--responsive alkalosis, characterized by a low urinary $[Cl^-]$ (< 20 mEq/L) indicative of a volume-contracted state that will be responsive to the provision of adequate Cl^- salt (usually in the form of normal saline). Cystic fibrosis may also be associated with a Cl^--responsive alkalosis due to the high losses of NaCl through the sweat, whereas congenital Cl^--losing diarrhea is a rare cause of Cl^--responsive metabolic alkalosis. Chloride-resistant alkaloses are characterized by a urinary $[Cl^-]$ greater than 20 mEq/L and include Bartter syndrome, Cushing syndrome, and primary hyperaldosteronism, conditions associated with primary increases in urinary $[Cl^-]$, or volume-expanded states lacking stimuli for renal Cl^- reabsorption. Thus, the urinary $[Cl^-]$ is helpful in distinguishing the nature of a metabolic alkalosis, but must be specifically requested in many laboratories because it is not routinely included in urine electrolyte panels. The serum $[K^+]$ is also low in these settings (hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis) owing to a combination of increased mineralocorticoid activity associated with volume contraction, the shift of K^+ to the ICF compartment, and preferential reabsorption of Na^+ rather than K^+ to preserve intravascular volume. A hypokalemic alkalosis seen in the setting of primary mineralocorticoid excess would be expected to be associated with systemic hypertension clinically, as observed in an adrenal adenoma and some forms of monogenic hypertension, including Liddle syndrome and apparent mineralocorticoid excess.

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

Respiratory acidosis develops when alveolar ventilation is decreased, increasing Pco_2 and lowering systemic pH. The kidneys compensate for respiratory acidosis by increasing HCO_3^- reabsorption, a process that takes several days to fully manifest. Patients with acute respiratory acidosis frequently demonstrate air hunger with retractions and the use of accessory respiratory muscles. Respiratory acidosis occurs in upper or lower airway obstruction, ventilation-perfusion disturbances, CNS depression, and neuromuscular defects. Hypercapnia is not as detrimental as the hypoxia that usually accompanies these disorders. The goal of therapy is to correct or compensate for the underlying pathologic process to improve alveolar ventilation. Bicarbonate therapy is not indicated in a pure respiratory acidosis, because it will worsen the acidosis by shifting the equilibrium of the carbonic acid–bicarbonate buffer system to increase Pco_2.

RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS

Respiratory alkalosis occurs when hyperventilation results in a decrease in Pco_2 and an increase in systemic pH. Depending on the acuity of the respiratory alkalosis, there may be an associated compensatory loss of bicarbonate by the kidneys manifested as a low serum bicarbonate level and a normal anion gap that may be misinterpreted as a normal anion gap acidosis if all acid-base parameters are not considered. Patients may experience tingling, paresthesias, dizziness, palpitations, syncope, or even tetany and seizures due to the associated decrease in ionized calcium. Causes of respiratory alkalosis include psychobehavioral disturbances, CNS irritation from meningitis or encephalitis, salicylate intoxication, and iatrogenic over ventilation in patients who

are mechanically ventilated. Therapy is directed toward the causal process. Rebreathing into a paper bag will decrease the severity of symptoms in acute hyperventilation.

Al-Jaghbeer M, JA Kellum: Acid-base disturbances in intensive care patients: etiology, pathophysiology and treatment. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2015 Jul;30(7):1104–1011 (Epub ahead of print) [PMID: 25213433].

Berend K, de Vries AP, Gans RO: Physiological approach to acid-base disturbances. N Engl J Med 2014;371:1434–1445 [PMID: 25295502].

Carmody JB, VF Norwood: A clinical approach to paediatric acid-base disorders. Postgrad Med J 2012;88:143–151 [PMID: 22267531].

Seifter JL: Integration of acid-base and electrolyte disorders. N Engl J Med 2014;371:1821–1831 [PMID: 25372090].

White ML, Liebelt: Update on antidotes for pediatric poisoning. Pediatr Emerg Care 2006;22:740 [PMID: 17110870].

24

Kidney & Urinary Tract

Melissa A. Cadnapaphornchai, MD
Gary M. Lum, MD

EVALUATION OF THE KIDNEY & URINARY TRACT

HISTORY

When renal disease is suspected, the history should include

1. Family history of cystic renal disease, hypertension including early-onset, hereditary nephritis, deafness, dialysis, or renal transplantation
2. Preceding acute or chronic illnesses (eg, urinary tract infection [UTI], pharyngitis, impetigo, endocarditis)
3. Rashes or joint pain/swelling
4. Growth delay or failure to thrive
5. Polyuria, polydipsia, enuresis, urinary frequency, or dysuria
6. Documentation of hematuria, proteinuria, or discolored urine
7. Pain (abdominal, costovertebral angle, or flank) or trauma
8. Sudden weight gain or edema
9. Drug or toxin exposure
10. Birth history including prenatal ultrasonographic studies, oligo- or polyhydramnios, birth asphyxia, dysmorphic features and other congenital anomalies, abdominal masses, voiding patterns, and umbilical artery catheterization

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Important aspects of the physical examination include the height, weight, growth percentiles, skin lesions (café au lait or ash leaf spots or rash), pallor, edema, or skeletal deformities. Anomalies of the ears, eyes, or external genitalia may be associated with renal anomalies or disease. The blood pressure should be measured in a quiet setting in the right upper extremity. The cuff should cover two-thirds of the child's upper arm, and peripheral pulses should be assessed. The abdomen should be palpated, with attention to nephromegaly, abdominal masses, musculature, and the presence of ascites.

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF RENAL FUNCTION

Serum Analysis

The standard indicators of renal function are serum levels of urea nitrogen and creatinine; their ratio is normally about 10:1. This ratio may increase when renal perfusion or urine flow is decreased, as in urinary tract obstruction or dehydration. Because serum urea nitrogen levels are more affected by these and other factors (eg, nitrogen intake, catabolism, use of corticosteroids) than are creatinine levels, the most reliable single indicator of glomerular function is the serum level of creatinine. For example, an increase in serum creatinine from 0.5 to 1.0 mg/dL represents a 50% decrease in GFR (glomerular filtration rate). Norms for serum creatinine relate to muscle mass. Therefore, only larger adolescents should have levels exceeding 1 mg/dL. Serum cystatin C has been proposed to be a more reliable indicator of glomerular function but is less widely available and with variable reference ranges in the pediatric population. Less precise but nonetheless important indicators of possible renal disease are abnormalities of serum electrolytes, pH, calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, albumin, or complement.

Glomerular Filtration Rate

The endogenous creatinine clearance (C_{Cr}) in milliliters per minute estimates the GFR. A 24-hour urine collection is the "classic" approach for determining creatinine clearance; however, it is often difficult to accurately obtain in

the pediatric population, particularly in children who are not continent. The procedure for collecting a timed urine specimen should be explained carefully so that the parent or patient understands fully the rationale of (1) first emptying the bladder (discarding that urine) and noting the time; and (2) putting all urine subsequently voided into the collection receptacle, including the last void, 24 hours later. Reliability of the 24-hour collection can be checked by measuring the total 24-hour creatinine excretion in the specimen. Total daily creatinine excretion (creatinine index) should be 15–25 mg/kg. Creatinine indices on either side of this range suggest collections that were either inadequate or excessive. Calculation by the following formula requires measurements of plasma or serum creatinine (P_{Cr}) in mg/dL, urine creatinine (U_{Cr}) in mg/dL, and urine volume (V) expressed as mL/min:

$$C_{Cr} = \frac{U_{Cr} V}{P_{Cr}}$$

Because accepted ranges of normal C_{Cr} are based on adult parameters, correction for size is needed in children. Clearance is corrected to a standard body surface area of 1.73 m^2 in the formula:

$$\text{“Corrected”}\ C_{Cr} = \frac{\text{Patient's } C_{Cr} \times 1.73\ m^2}{\text{Patient's body surface area}}$$

As 80–125 mL/min/1.73 m^2 is the normal range for C_{Cr}, estimates at the lower end of this range may indicate problems.

A quick approximation of C_{Cr} based on plasma or serum creatinine level and length in centimeters can be obtained as follows:

$$C_{Cr}\ (mL/min/1.73\ m^2) = 0.413 \times \text{height (cm)}/PCr\ (mg/dL)$$

This formula was developed in children with chronic renal insufficiency and likely underestimates GFR in children with normal renal function.

Urine Concentrating Ability

Inability to concentrate urine causes polyuria, polydipsia, or enuresis and is often the first sign of chronic renal failure, and, in some cases, raises the possibility of diabetes insipidus. The first morning void should be concentrated (specific gravity ≥ 1.020), presuming cessation of fluid intake overnight. Thus, determination of the specific gravity of a first morning void is an easy and helpful test of the kidney's concentrating ability.

Urinalysis

Commercially available dipsticks can be used to screen the urine for blood, leukocytes, nitrites, protein, and specific gravity and to approximate the urine pH. Positive results for blood should always be confirmed by microscopy, which is also the only way to determine if there is significant crystalluria or casts. Significant proteinuria (≥ 30 mg/dL) detected by dipstick should be confirmed by quantitation, either with a 24-hour urine collection or by the protein/creatinine ratio of a random specimen.

In children with asymptomatic hematuria or proteinuria, the search for renal origins will yield the most results, although urologic etiologies require consideration. Urinary red blood cell (RBC) casts suggest glomerulonephritis (GN), but the absence of casts does not exclude this disease. Urine RBC morphology may be helpful, with dysmorphic RBC arising from the kidneys. Anatomic abnormalities such as cystic disease with cyst rupture may also cause hematuria. Benign hematuria, including benign familial hematuria/thin glomerular basement membrane disease, is diagnosed by exclusion. Hematuria can also be observed in the setting of hypercalciuria or urolithiasis. Note that hypercalciuria is not associated with proteinuria. Figure 24–1 suggests an approach to the renal workup of hematuria. GN is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

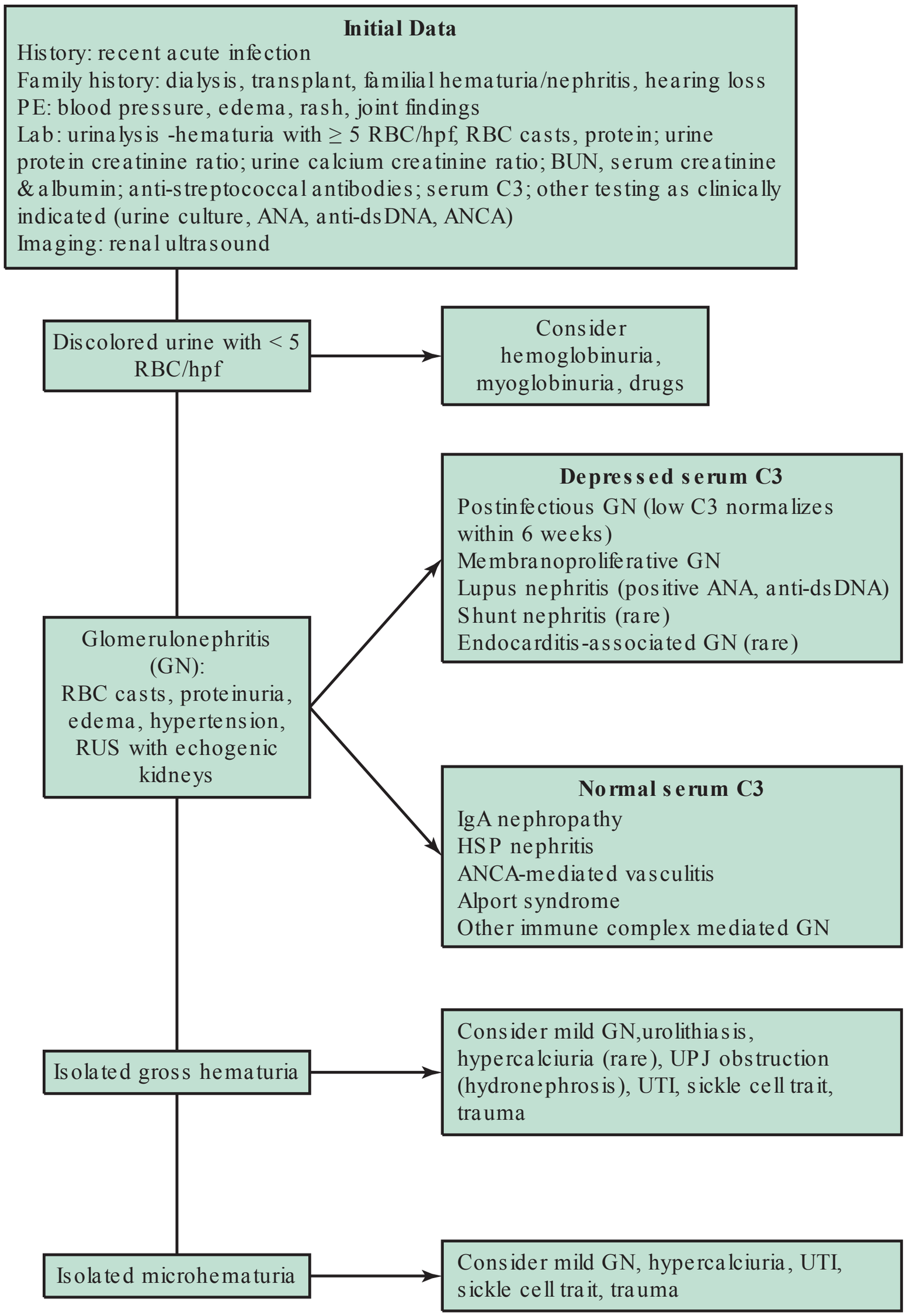
Combined proteinuria and hematuria is characteristic of more significant glomerular disease. Quantitation of proteinuria is customarily accomplished by a timed collection (eg, over a 24-hour period). However, given the frequency of errors in collection in the pediatric population, the degree of proteinuria may be estimated by the ratio of protein (mg/dL)/creatinine (mg/dL) in a random urine sample. A urine protein/creatinine ratio above 0.2 is abnormal. If the laboratory reports this as mg protein/gram of creatinine, normal is 200 or less.

In the evaluation of asymptomatic proteinuria, orthostatic or postural proteinuria should be excluded. This can be accomplished simply by comparing the protein/creatinine ratio of urine formed in the supine position (the first morning void accumulated in the bladder while sleeping) to a sample obtained during daily ambulation. If the “supine” sample is normal and proteinuria is occurring only during upright posture, this demonstrates postural proteinuria. Such patients typically show resolution of orthostatic proteinuria over time, but rarely an orthostatic pattern can be seen initially in GN, so ongoing follow-up is warranted. If both samples are abnormal, proteinuria would be considered “persistent.”

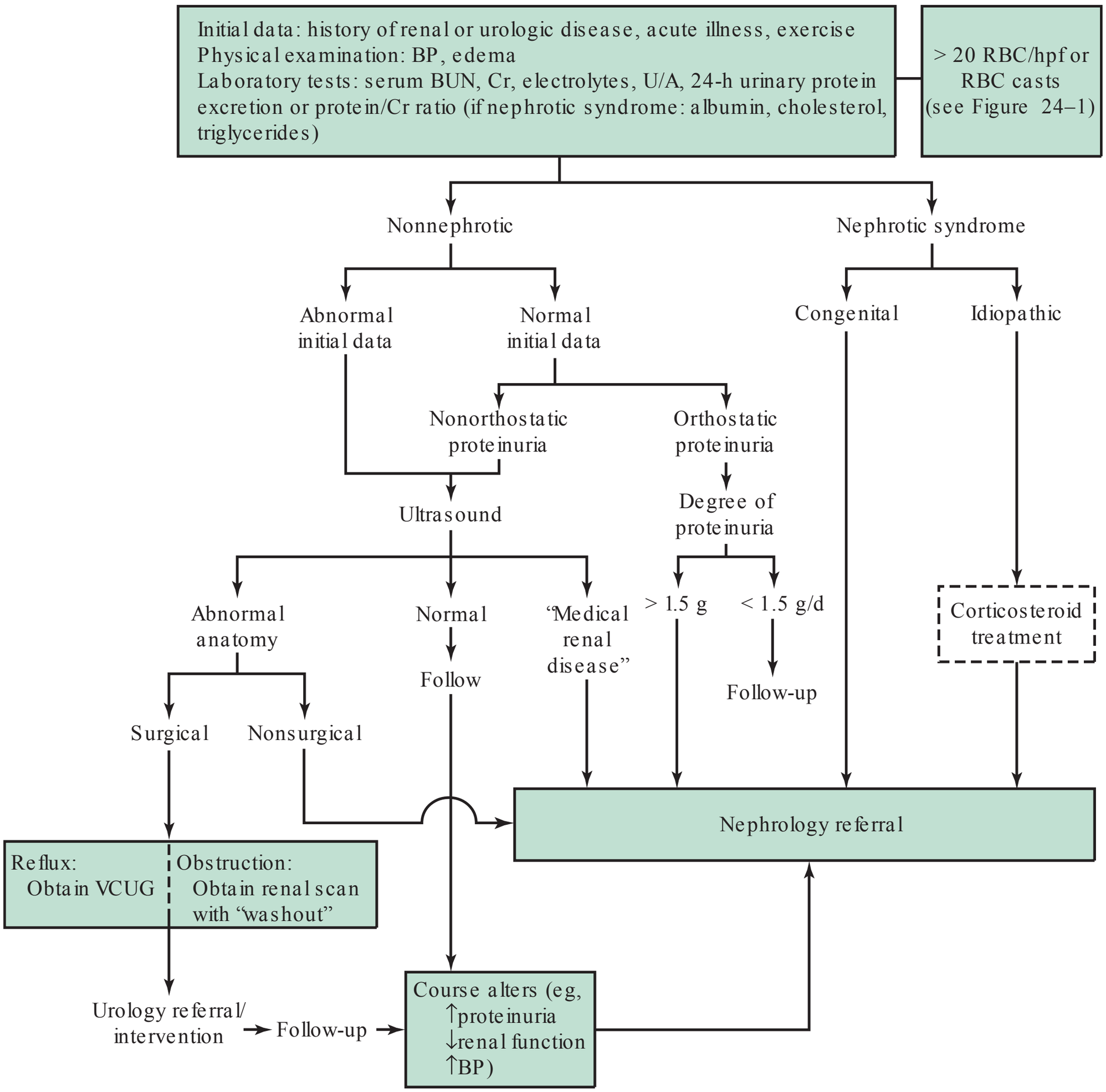
An approach to the workup of isolated proteinuria, including nephrotic syndrome, is shown in Figure 24–2. Note that corticosteroid therapy is included in the algorithm because this may be initiated for nephrotic syndrome prior to referral. Other renal lesions with proteinuric manifestations are discussed later in this chapter.

Special Tests of Renal Function

Measurements of urinary sodium, creatinine, and osmolality are useful in differentiating prerenal from renal causes of



▲**Figure 24–1.** Approach to the evaluation of hematuria. ANA, antinuclear antibody; ANCA, antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; dsDNA, double-stranded DNA; C3 complement; hpf, high-power field; HSP, Henoch-Schönlein purpura; IgA, immunoglobulin A; RBC, red blood cell; RUS, renal ultrasound; UPJ, ureteropelvic junction; UTI, urinary tract infection.



▲**Figure 24–2.** Approach to the workup of isolated proteinuria. Rule out benign postural proteinuria with urine protein/creatine ratio of first morning void (recumbent urine) versus day void (upright). BP, blood pressure; Cr, creatinine; hpf, high-power field; RBC, red blood cell; U/A, urinalysis; VCUG, voiding cystourethrogram.

acute kidney injury. The physiologic response to decreased renal perfusion is decreased urinary output, increased urine osmolality, increased urinary solute concentration (eg, creatinine), and decreased urinary sodium (usually < 20 mEq/L).

The presence of certain substances in urine may suggest tubular dysfunction. For example, urine glucose should be less than 5 mg/dL in the setting of normal serum glucose concentration. Hyperphosphaturia occurs with significant proximal tubular abnormalities (eg, Fanconi syndrome). Measurement of the phosphate concentration of a 24-hour urine specimen and evaluation of tubular reabsorption of phosphorus (TRP) will help document renal tubular diseases as well as hyperparathyroid states. TRP (expressed as percentage of reabsorption) is calculated as follows:

$$TRP = 100\left[1 - \frac{S_{Cr} \times Upo_4}{Spo_4 \times U_{Cr}}\right]$$

where S_{Cr} = serum creatinine; U_{Cr} = urine creatinine; Spo_4 = serum phosphate; and Upo_4 = urine phosphate. All values for creatinine and phosphate are expressed in milligrams per

deciliter for purposes of calculation. A TRP value of 80% or more is considered normal, although it depends somewhat on the value of Spo_4.

A quantitative increase in urinary excretion of amino acids is seen in generalized proximal tubular disease. Defective proximal tubular reabsorption of bicarbonate can be seen in isolated renal tubular acidosis (RTA), Fanconi syndrome, and chronic renal failure.

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF IMMUNOLOGIC FUNCTION

Many parenchymal renal diseases are thought to have immune causation, although the mechanisms are largely unknown. Examples include (1) deposition of circulating antigen-antibody complexes that are directly injurious or incite injurious responses and (2) formation of antibody directed against the glomerular basement membrane (rare in children).

Serum C3 and C4 complement concentrations should be measured when immune-mediated renal injury or chronic GN is suspected. Where clinically indicated, antinuclear antibodies, antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies, hepatitis B surface antigen, and hepatitis C antibody should be obtained. In rare cases, cryoglobulins (very rare in childhood), C3 nephritic factor and other assessment of complement function, or antiglomerular basement membrane (anti-GBM) antibody measurements may help confirm a specific diagnosis. At some point in the workup, the diagnosis may be supported or confirmed by histologic examination of renal tissue.

RADIOGRAPHIC EVALUATION

Renal ultrasonography is a useful noninvasive tool for evaluating renal parenchymal disease, urinary tract abnormalities, and renal blood flow. Radioisotope studies provide information about renal anatomy, blood flow, and integrity and function of the glomerular, tubular, and collecting systems. Renal stones are often visualized by ultrasonography but are best delineated by computed tomography (CT). Due to lack of radiation, ultrasonography is usually used for routine screening and follow-up of urolithiasis. Voiding cystourethrography is indicated when vesicoureteral reflux (VUR) or bladder outlet obstruction (to visualize the posterior urethra) is suspected. Cystoscopy is rarely useful in the evaluation of asymptomatic hematuria or proteinuria in children. Abdominal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or CT are useful for the identification and delineation of renal or adrenal masses. Doppler ultrasound is helpful to exclude renal arterial or venous thrombosis but of variable sensitivity and specificity in the diagnosis of renal artery stenosis; the latter condition is better assessed by MR or CT angiography. Intrarenal arterial stenosis may require direct renal arteriography.

RENAL BIOPSY

Histologic information is valuable in select cases to diagnose, guide treatment, and to inform prognosis. Satisfactory evaluation of renal tissue requires examination by light, immunofluorescence, and electron microscopy. The need for a renal biopsy should be determined by a pediatric nephrologist.

CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF THE URINARY TRACT

RENAL PARENCHYMAL ANOMALIES

About 10% of children have congenital anomalies of the genitourinary tract, which range in severity from asymptomatic to lethal. Recent findings suggest that congenital anomalies of the kidney and urinary tract (CAKUT) may arise from mutations in a multitude of different single gene causes. Some asymptomatic abnormalities may have significant implications. For example, patients with "horseshoe" kidney (kidneys fused in their lower poles), although very rarely associated with reduction in kidney function, have a higher incidence of renal calculi. Unilateral agenesis or multicystic dysplasia is usually accompanied by compensatory hypertrophy of the contralateral kidney and thus is typically associated with normal renal function. Supernumerary and ectopic kidneys are usually of no significance. Abnormal genitourinary tract development can be associated with varying degrees of renal dysplasia and dysfunction ranging from mild to severe; an example of the latter is in utero bilateral renal agenesis, which, without prenatal intervention to support lung development, is associated with oligohydramnios, abnormal facies and limb anomalies (eg, talipes equinovarus) from fetal compression, and perinatal death from pulmonary hypoplasia (Potter syndrome).

1. Renal Dysplasia

Renal dysplasia constitutes a spectrum of anomalies. In simple hypoplasia, which may be unilateral or bilateral, the affected kidneys are smaller than normal. In some forms of dysplasia, immature undifferentiated renal tissue persists. In some situations, the number of functional nephrons is insufficient to sustain normal renal function once the child reaches a critical body size. The lack of adequate renal tissue is not always readily discernible in the newborn period in the presence of normal or often increased urine production.

Other forms of renal dysplasia include oligomeganephronia (characterized by the presence of only a few large glomeruli) and the cystic dysplasias (characterized by the presence of renal cysts). Simple renal cysts are rare in children and are typically observed in children with a history of significant chronic medical illness. The presence of multiple "simple" cysts should raise concern for possible underlying polycystic kidney disease.

2. Polycystic Kidney Disease

Both forms of polycystic kidney disease (autosomal dominant [ADPKD] or recessive [ARPKD]) are increasingly diagnosed by prenatal ultrasound. In its most severe form, ARPKD kidneys are dysfunctional in utero, and therefore newborns may demonstrate Potter sequence. In less severe cases, kidney enlargement by cysts may initially be recognized when nephromegaly is noted on physical examination. Hypertension is an early problem in ARPKD. The rate of the progression of renal insufficiency varies in ARPKD, but many children with a neonatal renal presentation reach end-stage renal disease (ESRD) by school age. Recent studies suggest wide variation in phenotype, even within families. Some patients present in early adulthood with liver dysfunction from congenital hepatic fibrosis with moderate nephromegaly and mild to moderate chronic renal insufficiency.

With advances in radiographic imaging, ADPKD is being diagnosed earlier in life, including prenatally. Children with ADPKD can manifest many of the same findings as adults with ADPKD, although renal insufficiency and intracranial aneurysms are rare in childhood. Routine monitoring for hypertension is indicated in children with ADPKD. Because cysts grow over time, a normal renal ultrasound does not exclude ADPKD in an at-risk child (ie, parent known to have ADPKD). Approximately half of patients with ADPKD reach ESRD by 60 years of age.

3. Medullary Cystic Disease/ Nephronophthisis

Medullary cystic disease and nephronophthisis are inherited conditions with similar renal morphology characterized by bilateral small corticomedullary cysts in normal to small kidneys with tubulointerstitial scarring leading to ESRD. To date, 11 causative genes have been identified in nephronophthisis, all of which encode for proteins expressed in the primary cilia of renal epithelial cells, leading to classification as "ciliopathies." Children with nephronophthisis manifest impaired urinary concentration leading to polyuria and polydipsia with progressive renal insufficiency in childhood or adolescence. Extrarenal involvement including retinitis pigmentosa, hepatic fibrosis, skeletal defects, cerebellar vermis aplasia, and other abnormalities can help target specific gene analysis. Several forms of autosomal dominant medullary cystic disease exist, usually presenting with adult-onset renal failure and no extrarenal involvement. However, uromodulin-associated kidney disease with hyperuricemia and renal failure can be seen in adolescents.

Guay-Woodford LM et al: Consensus expert recommendations for the diagnosis and management of autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease: report of an international conference. J Pediatr 2014;165(3):611–617 [PMID: 25015577].

Hildebrandt F, Benzing T, Katsanis N: Ciliopathies. N Engl J Med 2011;364(16):1533–1543 [PMID: 21506742].

Schrier RW et al: Predictors of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease progression. J Am Soc Nephrol 2014;25(11):2399–2418 [PMID: 24925719].

Vivante A et al: Single-gene causes of congenital anomalies of the kidney and urinary tract (CAKUT) in humans. Pediatr Nephrol 2014;29(4):695–704 [PMID: 24398540].

DISTAL URINARY TRACT ANOMALIES

1. Obstructive Uropathy

Obstruction at the ureteropelvic junction may be the result of intrinsic muscle abnormalities, aberrant vessels, or fibrous bands. The lesion can cause hydronephrosis and usually presents as prenatal hydronephrosis, an abdominal mass in the newborn, or recurrent abdominal pain with vomiting in an older child (Dietl's crisis). Obstruction can occur in other parts of the ureter, especially at the ureterovesical junction, causing proximal hydroureter and hydronephrosis. Renal radionuclide scan with furosemide "wash-out" will reveal or rule out obstruction as the cause of the hydronephrosis. Whether intrinsic or extrinsic, urinary tract obstruction should be relieved as soon as possible to minimize damage to the kidneys.

Severe bladder malformations such as exstrophy are clinically obvious and a surgical challenge. More subtle—but urgent in terms of diagnosis—is obstruction of urine flow from vestigial posterior urethral valves. This anomaly, which occurs almost exclusively in males, may be detected prenatally with an enlarged muscular bladder and hydroureteronephrosis. Neonates may demonstrate a poor voiding stream or eventual UTI. The kidneys and bladder may be easily palpable. Leakage (ureteric perforation, although rare) proximal to the obstruction may produce urinary ascites. Decompression of the bladder is critical in children with posterior urethral valves to prevent irreversible kidney damage.

Prune belly (Eagle-Barrett) syndrome is an association of urinary tract anomalies with cryptorchidism and absent abdominal musculature. Renal dysplasia and/or functional urinary tract obstruction may lead to ESRD. Timely urinary diversion is essential to sustain renal function.

Other complex malformations and external genital anomalies are beyond the scope of this text. The challenge presented by urologic abnormalities resulting in severe compromise and destruction of renal tissue is to preserve all remaining renal function, prevent UTI, and treat the complications of progressive chronic renal failure. Collaboration between the pediatric urologist and nephrologist in early management is essential.

2. Reflux Nephropathy

The retrograde flow of urine from the bladder into the ureter (vesicoureteral reflux, VUR) may cause renal scarring and

subsequent renal insufficiency or hypertension, or both, especially in the setting of UTIs. Hydronephrosis on renal ultrasound suggests the possibility of VUR or obstruction. VUR is diagnosed with a voiding cystourethrogram. Low-grade VUR typically resolves spontaneously over time. Prophylactic antibiotics may be administered depending on the child's age, degree of VUR, and frequency of UTI while awaiting spontaneous resolution. Surgery may be required for chronic severe reflux. Appropriate management of reflux nephropathy includes prevention and prompt treatment of UTI, monitoring and management of hypertension and complications of chronic renal insufficiency, and consideration of angiotensin converting enzyme inhibition to prevent glomerular hyperfiltration.

Peters CA et al: Summary of the AUA guideline on management of primary vesicoureteral reflux in children. J Urol 2010;184(3):1134–1144 [PMID: 20650499].

Tekgul S et al: EAU guidelines on vesicoureteral reflux in children. Eur Urol 2012;62(3):534–542 [PMID: 22698573].

HEMATURIA & GLOMERULAR DISEASE

MICROHEMATURIA

Children with painful hematuria should be investigated for UTI or direct injury to the urinary tract. Dysuria is common in cystitis or urethritis; associated back pain and/or fever suggests the possibility of pyelonephritis; and colicky flank pain may indicate the passage of a stone. Bright red blood or clots in the urine are associated with bleeding disorders, trauma, and arteriovenous malformations. Abdominal masses suggest the presence of urinary tract obstruction, cystic disease, or tumors of the renal or perirenal structures.

Asymptomatic hematuria is a challenge because clinical and diagnostic data are required to decide whether nephrology evaluation is needed. The diagnosis of hematuria should not rely solely on a urine "dipstick" evaluation, but it must be verified by a microscopic RBC count (normal < 5 RBC/hpf [high-power field]). Ruling out hypercalciuria as a cause of hematuria with a random urine calcium/creatinine ratio (both values in mg/dL) is one of the initial steps in the evaluation of hematuria. A value above 0.2 requires verification with a 24-hour urine collection. Hypercalciuria is present with excretion of calcium in excess of 4 mg/kg/d. Figure 24–1 delineates the outpatient approach to renal hematuria. The primary concern in the differential diagnosis of hematuria is the possible presence of glomerular disease.

GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

The various types of glomerulonephritis (GN) have similar manifestations. Severe glomerular histopathologic and clinical entities, such as anti-GBM antibody disease (Goodpasture syndrome), granulomatosis with polyangiitis, and idiopathic, rapidly progressive GN, may be considered in the differential diagnosis of acute GN, but these disorders are rare in children.

Acute Glomerulonephritis

The defining features of glomerulonephritis (GN) include hematuria, urinary RBC casts, hypertension, and edema. Hematuria may be microscopic or gross (often coffee- or tea-colored) in nature. While RBC casts are often present, their absence does not exclude the diagnosis of GN. Urine protein excretion may range from normal to nephrotic range. Edema (periorbital, facial, extremities, ascites) occurs due to salt and water retention with impaired glomerular function and contributes to systemic hypertension, which is further exacerbated by the glomerular inflammation and associated renin production. Therefore, diuretics followed by blockade of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system are the pillars of hypertension management. Affected children require evaluation of blood pressure, renal function, serum albumin, and urine protein excretion. Serum C3 concentration is helpful to distinguish certain types of AGN (depressed in postinfectious and membranoproliferative GN [MPGN], GN due to SLE, and GN related to ventriculoatrial shunt infection or endocarditis [the latter two conditions are rarely seen in childhood but typically evident by history and examination]). Renal biopsy may be indicated when the etiology of GN is not otherwise clear from history and preliminary testing.

1. Acute Postinfectious-Glomerulonephritis

The diagnosis of acute poststreptococcal GN is supported by a recent history (typically within the preceding 7–14 days, with range of 1 day to 6 weeks) of group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infection, usually as pharyngitis or, less commonly, impetigo. If a positive culture is not available, recent infection may be supported by an elevated titer of antistreptococcal antibodies. However, documentation of elevated antistreptococcal antibodies alone does not confirm that GN is poststreptococcal in nature. Other infections can cause similar glomerular injury; thus "postinfectious" GN may be a preferred term for this type of acute glomerulonephritis (AGN). Postinfectious GN is associated with depressed serum C3 complement. The manifestations range from asymptomatic microhematuria to gross hematuria with nephrotic range proteinuria and renal insufficiency. However, in most cases, full recovery occurs and is usually complete within weeks.

Typical postinfectious GN has no specific treatment. Antibiotic therapy is indicated if an active infection is documented. Disturbances in renal function and resulting hypertension may require close monitoring, reduction in

salt intake, diuretics, or other antihypertensive drugs such as angiotensin-converting-enzyme (ACE) inhibitors. In cases of severe renal failure, hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis may be necessary. Corticosteroids may also be administered in an attempt to influence the course of severe GN. Serum C3 may normalize as early as 24 hours or as late as 4–6 weeks after onset. In postinfectious GN, microscopic hematuria may persist for as long as a year; 85% of children recover completely. Persistent deterioration in renal function, chronic proteinuria, and presentation complicated by nephrotic syndrome are concerning signs for long-term prognosis.

2. IgA Nephropathy

When asymptomatic gross hematuria with or without proteinuria occurs concurrently with a minor acute illness or other stressful occurrence, the diagnosis of IgA nephropathy may be entertained. IgA nephropathy is the most common cause of GN. Serum complement is normal in this condition. IgA nephropathy may be accompanied by flank pain or dysuria. Gross hematuria typically resolves within days, and there are no serious sequelae in 85% of children. Treatment is not generally indicated, and the prognosis is good in most cases. Prognosis is guarded, however, if severe proteinuria, hypertension, or renal insufficiency is present or develops. In such instances, although no treatment is universally accepted, corticosteroids and other immunosuppressive drugs are used. Omega-3 fatty acids from fish oils are also thought to be helpful by inhibiting macrophage infiltration of the glomerular mesangium.

3. Henoch-Schönlein Purpura

The diagnosis of Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP) rests on the presence of a typical maculopapular and purpuric rash found primarily, but not exclusively, on the dorsal surfaces of the lower extremities and buttocks. Many children have abdominal pain, and bloody diarrhea may be present. Joint pain and swelling are common. Hypertension may be present. Kidney biopsy is rarely required due to the constellation of clinical findings, but lupus and ANCA-mediated vasculitis should be considered in the appropriate setting, particularly in adolescents. The renal histologic lesion of HSP is identical to that of IgA nephropathy. The condition is usually self-limited. Joint and abdominal pain responds to treatment with short courses of corticosteroids. Renal involvement ranges from none to mild GN with microhematuria to severe GN with associated nephrosis and renal insufficiency. More severe renal involvement is associated with worse long-term prognosis, including potential for progression to ESRD. There is no universally accepted treatment, but corticosteroids and other immunosuppressive agents are often administered (see Chapter 30).

4. Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis

The most common "chronic" form of GN in childhood is membranoproliferative GN. The diagnosis is established from the histologic appearance of the glomeruli on biopsy. There are three major histologic types of membranoproliferative GN. Clinically, type II carries the worst prognosis, as ESRD develops in many cases. Recent studies suggest that type II membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN) is frequently associated with genetic abnormalities of complement regulation. Type I more often responds to treatment with corticosteroids with or without other immunosuppressive agents with complete remission. C3 is depressed in nearly all cases of MPGN and may be useful as a marker of response to treatment.

5. Lupus Glomerulonephritis

The diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is based on its numerous clinical features and abnormal laboratory findings that include a positive antinuclear antibody test, depressed serum complement, and increased serum double-stranded DNA. Renal involvement is indicated by varying degrees of hematuria and proteinuria. More severe cases are accompanied by renal insufficiency and hypertension. Significant renal involvement requires treatment with various combinations of immunosuppressive drugs including prednisone (as a primary drug), azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate, tacrolimus, and rituximab, a monoclonal antibody against the B-cell surface antigen CD20. ESRD develops in 10%–15% of patients with childhood SLE.

6. Hereditary Glomerulonephritis

The most commonly encountered hereditary GN is Alport syndrome. This condition is due to mutations in type IV collagen found in basement membranes of the glomeruli, cochlea, and lens, and is characterized by progressive GN, high-frequency sensorineural hearing loss, and lens abnormalities. Although the condition can be inherited in autosomal dominant or recessive manners, the vast majority of cases are X-linked in transmission. Thus, males are typically more severely affected. Such boys present very early in life, even in infant and toddler years, with persistent microhematuria and recurrent gross hematuria associated with intercurrent illness, followed by chronic proteinuria and then deterioration in renal function. A family history may be present, but there is a spontaneous mutation rate of about 20%. In males with X-linked or children with autosomal recessive disease, ESRD usually occurs in the second to third decade of life. Females with X-linked Alport syndrome show a wide spectrum of disease manifestation from asymptomatic hematuria to ESRD. Although currently there is no treatment for this disorder, careful management of

associated hypertension may slow the process. A clinical trial is in progress to evaluate the effect of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors to decrease transglomerular pressure in the setting of the genetically weakened glomerular basement membrane and thus preserve glomerular function.

Davin JC, Coppo R: Henoch-Schönlein purpura nephritis in children. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2014;10(10):563–573 [PMID: 25072122].

Eison TM et al: Post-streptococcal acute glomerulonephritis in children: clinical features and pathogenesis. Pediatr Nephrol 2011;26(2):165–180 [PMID: 20652330].

Henderson L et al: Treatment for lupus nephritis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012;12:CD002922. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD002922.pub3 [PMID: 23235592].

TUBULOINTERSTITIAL DISEASE

ACUTE INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS

Acute interstitial nephritis is characterized by diffuse or focal inflammation and edema of the renal interstitium and secondary involvement of the tubules. The condition is most commonly drug related (eg, β-lactam–containing antibiotics or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs [NSAIDs]), but infectious etiologies, including Epstein-Barr virus, also occur.

Fever, rash, and eosinophilia may occur in drug-associated cases. Urinalysis usually reveals leukocyturia and mild hematuria and proteinuria. Hansel staining of the urinary sediment often demonstrates eosinophils. The inflammation can cause significant deterioration of renal function and systemic hypertension. The association between tubulointerstitial nephritis and uveitis (TINU) is occasionally seen in childhood. If the diagnosis is unclear because of the absence of a history of drug or toxin exposure or acute infection, or the absence of eosinophils in the urine, a renal biopsy may be performed to demonstrate the characteristic tubular and interstitial inflammation. Immediate identification and removal of the causative agent whenever possible is imperative and may be all that is necessary. Treatment with corticosteroids is helpful in patients with progressive renal insufficiency or associated nephrotic syndrome. Dialysis support is occasionally required.

Gonzalez E et al: Early steroid treatment improves the recovery of renal function in patients with drug-induced acute interstitial nephritis. Kidney Int 2008;73:940–946 [PMID: 18185501].

PROTEINURIA & RENAL DISEASE

Urine is rarely completely protein-free, but the average excretion is well below 150 mg/24 h. As noted previously, small increases in urinary protein can accompany febrile illnesses or exertion and in some cases occur while in the upright posture (orthostatic proteinuria).

An algorithm for investigation of isolated proteinuria is presented in Figure 24–2. In idiopathic nephrotic syndrome without associated features of GN, treatment with corticosteroids may be initiated. Nephrologic advice or follow-up should be sought, especially in patients with high-grade or frequently relapsing proteinuria.

CONGENITAL NEPHROSIS

Congenital nephrosis is a rare autosomal recessive disorder characterized by microcystic dilations of the proximal tubules and glomerular abnormalities including proliferation, crescent formation, and thickening of capillary walls. The pathogenesis is not well understood.

Infants with congenital nephrosis commonly have markedly elevated maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein concentration, a large placenta, wide cranial sutures, and delayed ossification. Progressive edema may be seen after the first few weeks of life. Massive urine protein losses lead to other risks including recurrent infection due to hypogammaglobulinemia (urinary loss of immunoglobulin G), thrombosis (urinary loss of antithrombin III), and eventual clinical hypothyroidism (urinary loss of thyroid-binding globulin). Such children usually require nightly high-dose albumin infusions and once to twice weekly intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) infusions. Nephrectomies may be required to prevent complications of the high-grade protein losses. Progressive renal failure requiring dialysis and transplantation are anticipated, although affected infants may succumb to serious bacterial infection in the first year of life.

IDIOPATHIC NEPHROTIC SYNDROME OF CHILDHOOD

Nephrotic syndrome is characterized by proteinuria, hypoalbuminemia, edema, and hyperlipidemia. It may accompany any form of glomerular disease. However, primary (idiopathic) nephrotic syndrome commonly occurs during childhood, usually due to minimal change disease (MCD) and, less frequently, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS) or mesangial nephropathy. In MCD, glomerular morphology is unremarkable except for fusion of foot processes of the glomerular basement membrane, hence the historic designation "Nil disease." This nonspecific finding is associated with many proteinuric states. FSGS manifests as partially or completely sclerosed glomeruli on renal biopsy. In mesangial nephropathy, the kidney biopsy shows a distinct increase in the mesangial matrix of the glomeruli. Often, the expanded mesangium contains deposits of IgM demonstrable on immunofluorescent staining. Despite these histologic distinctions, the pathogenesis of idiopathic nephrotic syndrome in childhood remains poorly understood.

» Clinical Findings

Affected patients are generally younger than 6 years at onset. Typically, periorbital swelling and oliguria are noted, often

following intercurrent illness. Within a few days, increasing edema—even anasarca—becomes evident. Most children have few complaints other than vague malaise or abdominal pain. With significant hypoalbuminemia, some children experience symptoms of intestinal malabsorption. With marked edema, dyspnea due to pleural effusions may also occur.

Despite heavy proteinuria, the urine sediment is usually normal, although microscopic hematuria may be present. Gross hematuria is occasionally seen but more often with FSGS than MCD. Plasma albumin concentration is low and lipid levels increased. When azotemia occurs, it is usually secondary to intravascular volume depletion from "third space" leak and low oncotic pressure.

» Complications

Infections (eg, peritonitis, sepsis) sometimes occur, and Streptococcus pneumoniae is frequently the cause. Hypercoagulability may be present, and thromboembolic phenomena are commonly reported. Hypertension can be noted, and renal insufficiency can result from decreased renal perfusion. Hyperlipidemia resolves when affected children enter remission but is of concern in treatment-resistant nephrotic syndrome.

» Treatment & Prognosis

As soon as the diagnosis of idiopathic nephrotic syndrome is made, corticosteroid treatment should be started as the vast majority of children will enter remission in response to such treatment, thus avoiding the need for kidney biopsy that does not predict response to treatment or long-term renal function. Prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d (maximum, 60 mg/d), is given for 6 weeks as a single daily dose. The same dose is then administered on an alternate-day schedule for 6 weeks. Thereafter, the corticosteroids are discontinued or the dose tapered gradually and discontinued over the ensuing few months depending on local practice. The goal of this regimen is the disappearance of proteinuria. If remission is not achieved during the initial 4 weeks of corticosteroid treatment, nephrologic consultation is needed. If remission is achieved, only to be followed by relapse, the treatment course may be repeated. A renal biopsy is often considered when there is little or no response to treatment. One should take into account, however, that the histologic findings may not alter the treatment plan, which is designed to eliminate the nephrotic syndrome regardless of underlying renal histology.

Careful clinical assessment of intravascular volume status is indicated to guide diuretic therapy in children with idiopathic nephrotic syndrome. While those with obvious evidence of volume overload will benefit from diuretics, some children, particularly those with MCD, will show evidence of intravascular volume depletion due to third space fluid leak. The latter group of children will experience hypotension and prerenal azotemia with aggressive diuresis; thus, careful restoration of compromised circulating volume with intravenous 25% albumin infusion accompanied by administration of a diuretic such as furosemide is most helpful in mobilizing edema. Infections such as peritonitis should be treated promptly to reduce morbidity. Immunization with pneumococcal conjugate and polysaccharide vaccines is advised.

Resolution of proteinuria with corticosteroid treatment suggests a good prognosis. Early relapse usually heralds a prolonged series of relapses; frequent relapses increase corticosteroid exposure and should lead to consideration of alternate immunosuppressive therapy to maintain remission. Historically, chlorambucil or cyclophosphamide were added to corticosteroid treatment in steroid-responsive but -dependent children to achieve corticosteroid discontinuance while maintaining remission. Because of potential significant side effects associated with these drugs, tacrolimus or, less commonly, cyclosporine is now added instead in steroid dependent cases. Children who fail to respond to corticosteroids have a more guarded long-term prognosis for renal function yet may still attain remission with alternative immunosuppressive agents. Increasing reports and experience suggest that cases in which nephrotic syndrome is poorly responsive to or "dependent" upon corticosteroids, even with an added agent such as tacrolimus, may respond to rituximab, although no controlled trials have been conducted. Patients who do not respond to corticosteroids or who relapse frequently should be referred to a pediatric nephrologist, if such referral was not made earlier in the course.

FOCAL SEGMENTAL GLOMERULOSCLEROSIS

Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS) is a cause of idiopathic nephrotic syndrome in children but can also cause chronic asymptomatic proteinuria. The condition is concerning as up to 15%–20% of cases can progress to end-stage renal failure. The response to corticosteroid treatment is variable. Treatment in the setting of active nephrotic syndrome is reviewed above, but the benefits of chronic immunosuppressive therapy are less clear in the asymptomatic child. Recurrence of FSGS is common following renal transplantation. Fortunately, most children respond well to treatment with plasmapheresis and/or rituximab; the latter agent is also showing encouraging utility in treating the nephrotic syndrome of membranous or mesangial nephropathy as well as refractory nephrotic syndrome associated with other forms of glomerular disease or vasculitis.

MEMBRANOUS NEPHROPATHY (MEMBRANOUS GLOMERULONEPHRITIS)

Although largely idiopathic in nature, membranous nephropathy can be found in association with infections, including hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and congenital syphilis;

with immunologic disorders such as autoimmune thyroiditis and SLE (in contrast to other forms of lupus nephritis, serum C3 is often normal with membranous lupus); and with administration of drugs such as penicillamine. The pathogenesis is unknown, but the glomerular lesion is thought to be the result of prolonged deposition of circulating antigen-antibody complexes.

The onset of membranous nephropathy may be insidious or may resemble that of idiopathic nephrotic syndrome of childhood (see earlier section). It occurs more often in older children and adults. The proteinuria of membranous nephropathy may respond poorly to corticosteroid therapy, although low-dose corticosteroid therapy may reduce or delay development of chronic renal insufficiency. The diagnosis is made by renal biopsy.

Lombel RM, Gipson DS, Hodson EM: Kidney disease: Improving Global Outcomes: Treatment of steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome in children: new guidelines from KDIGO. Pediatr Nephrol 2013;28(3):409–414 [PMID: 23052648].

Lombel RM, Gipson DS, Hodson EM: Kidney disease: Improving Global Outcomes: Treatment of steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome in children: new guidelines from KDIGO. Pediatr Nephrol 2013;28(3):415–426 [PMID: 23052651].

DISEASES OF THE RENAL VESSELS

RENAL VEIN THROMBOSIS

In newborns, renal vein thrombosis may complicate sepsis or dehydration. It may be observed in infants of diabetic mothers, may be associated with umbilical vein catheterization, or may result from any condition that produces a hypercoagulable state (eg, clotting factor deficiency, SLE, or thrombocytosis). Renal vein thrombosis is less common in older children and adolescents. It may develop following trauma, with a procoagulant state (such as antiphospholipid antibody positivity in SLE), or without any apparent predisposing factors. Spontaneous renal vein thrombosis has been associated with membranous nephropathy.

» Clinical Findings

Renal vein thrombosis in newborns is generally characterized by the sudden development of an abdominal mass. If the thrombosis is bilateral, oliguria may be present. In older children, flank pain, sometimes with a palpable mass, is a common presentation.

No single laboratory test is diagnostic of renal vein thrombosis. Hematuria usually is present and may occasionally be gross in nature; proteinuria is less constant. In the newborn, thrombocytopenia may be found, but it is rare in older children. The diagnosis is made by ultrasonography and Doppler flow studies.

» Treatment

Anticoagulation with heparin is the treatment of choice in newborns and older children. In the newborn, a course of heparin combined with treatment of the underlying problem is usually all that is required; the risks of systemic anticoagulation in the newborn, particularly if preterm, must be considered. In children with a known tendency for recurrence, more long-term anticoagulation may be required.

» Course & Prognosis

The mortality rate in newborns from renal vein thrombosis depends on the underlying cause. With unilateral renal venous thrombosis at any age, the prognosis for adequate renal function is good. Bilateral disease is of course more concerning, and long-term renal follow-up focusing on renal function and growth is warranted in such children. Renal vein thrombosis may rarely recur in the same kidney or in the other kidney years after the original episode of thrombus formation. Extension into the vena cava with pulmonary emboli is possible.

RENAL ARTERIAL DISEASE

Arterial disease (eg, fibromuscular dysplasia, congenital renal artery or midaortic stenosis, Takayasu arteritis) is a rare cause of hypertension in children. Although few clinical clues are specific to underlying arterial lesions, they should be suspected in children with severe hypertension, with onset at or before age 10 years, or in children who demonstrate increasingly difficult to control hypertension. The diagnosis is established by MR or CT angiography and confirmed by renal arteriography or direct intraoperative visualization. When vasculitis is present, immunosuppressive treatment is the first approach. Other lesions may be approached by transluminal angioplasty or surgery (see section on Hypertension), but repair may be technically impossible in small children. In such cases, medical management of hypertension pending somatic growth is indicated. Although thrombosis of renal arteries is rare, it should be considered in a patient with acute onset of hypertension and hematuria in an appropriate setting (eg, in association with hyperviscosity or umbilical artery catheterization). Early diagnosis and treatment provides the best chance of reestablishing renal blood flow.

Tullus K: Renovascular hypertension in children. Lancet 2008;371: 1453–1463 [PMID: 18440428].

HEMOLYTIC-UREMIC SYNDROME

Hemolytic-uremic syndrome is the most common glomerulovascular cause of acute renal failure in childhood. The diarrhea-associated form is usually the result of infection with Shiga toxin–producing strains of Shigella or Escherichia coli.

Ingestion of under-cooked ground beef or unpasteurized foods is a common source. There are many serotypes, but the most common pathogen in the United States is E coli O157:H7. Bloody diarrhea is the usual presenting complaint, followed by hemolysis, thrombocytopenia, and renal failure. Circulating toxin causes endothelial damage, which leads to platelet deposition/consumption, and microvascular occlusion with subsequent hemolysis. Similar microvascular endothelial activation may also be triggered by drugs (eg, cyclosporin A); by viruses (human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]); and by pneumococcal infections, in which bacterial neuraminidase exposes the Thomsen-Friedenreich antigen on RBCs, platelets, and endothelial cells, with associated cell lysis. Rare cases are caused by genetic factors causing complement dysregulation (eg, factor H deficiency).

» Clinical Findings

Hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS) due to Shigella or E coli begins with a prodrome of abdominal pain, diarrhea, and vomiting. Oliguria, pallor, and bleeding manifestations, principally gastrointestinal, occur next. Children with pneumococcal-associated HUS typically have documented pneumococcal pneumonia, sepsis, or meningitis. Children with atypical HUS associated with complement dysregulation often develop an episode of HUS following intercurrent illness and present with malaise and pallor. Hypertension and seizures develop in some children—especially those who develop severe renal failure and fluid overload. There may also be significant endothelial involvement in the central nervous system (CNS), heart, and pancreas. Anemia may be profound, and RBC fragments are seen on blood smears. A high reticulocyte count confirms the hemolytic nature of the anemia but may not be noted in the presence of renal failure. Thrombocytopenia is often severe, but other coagulation abnormalities are less consistent. Serum fibrin split products are often present, but fulminant disseminated intravascular coagulation is rare. Hematuria and proteinuria are often present. Hemoglobinuria is occasionally observed due to marked RBC hemolysis.

» Complications

Complications of acute kidney injury occur. Neurologic problems, particularly seizures, may result from hyponatremia, hypertension, or CNS vascular disease. Despite thrombocytopenia, many children are thrombophilic due to the underlying endothelial damage.

» Treatment

Meticulous attention to fluid and electrolyte status is crucial. The use of antimotility agents and antibiotics for HUS caused by gastrointestinal infection is believed to worsen the disease. Antibiotics may upregulate and cause the release of large amounts of bacterial Shiga toxin. Timely dialysis improves the prognosis. Platelet inhibitors have also been tried, but the overall results have not been impressive, especially late in the disease. RBC transfusions are often necessary. Platelet transfusions should be avoided unless there is active bleeding. Erythropoietin (epoetin alfa) treatment may reduce RBC transfusion needs and is indicated in the setting of renal failure. Atypical HUS due to complement dysregulation may benefit from plasmapheresis or plasma infusion (by replacing missing factors or removing factor H autoantibodies), but these therapies have been more recently replaced by the anti-C5a monoclonal antibody, eculizumab. Plasma therapy should be avoided in pneumococcal HUS as it provides the patient with anti–Thomsen-Friedenreich antibody and thereby drives the HUS process. Although no therapy is universally accepted, strict control of hypertension and fluid balance, adequate nutrition support, and the timely use of dialysis reduce morbidity and mortality. If renal failure is "nonoliguric," and if urine output is sufficient to ensure against fluid overload and electrolyte abnormalities, management of renal failure without dialysis is possible.

» Course & Prognosis

Most commonly, children recover from the acute episode within 2–3 weeks. Some residual renal disease (including hypertension, proteinuria, or chronic renal insufficiency) occurs in about 30%, and end-stage renal failure occurs in about 15%. The risk of ESRD is higher in children with atypical or pneumococcal-induced HUS. Follow-up of children recovering from hemolytic-uremic syndrome should include serial determinations of renal function with frequency dictated by the etiology, course, and subsequent findings and routine monitoring of blood pressure. Overall mortality (about 3%–5%) is most likely in the early phase, primarily resulting from CNS or cardiac complications.

Nayer A, Asif A: Atypical hemolytic-uremic syndrome: a clinical review. Am J Ther 2016;23(1):e151-e158 [PMID: 24681522].

Trachtman H: HUS and TTP in children. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60(6):1513–1526 [PMID: 24237985].

RENAL FAILURE

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

The term "acute kidney injury" denotes the sudden inability to excrete urine of sufficient quantity or composition to maintain body fluid homeostasis. Explanations include quickly reversible problems such as dehydration or urinary tract obstruction, as well as new-onset renal disease (eg, AGN), drug-related toxic nephropathies, or renal ischemia; the latter is primarily suspected in settings of significant hemodynamic instability or other circumstances resulting

Table 24–1. Classification of acute kidney injury.

Prerenal
Intravascular volume depletion (gastrointestinal, skin, or renal losses; significantly diminished intake; hemorrhage)
Diminished effective circulating volume (low output cardiac failure, nephrotic syndrome, capillary leak, cirrhosis)
Aortic or renal vessel injury
Renal arterial thrombosis
Renal
Hemolytic-uremic syndrome
Renal vascular thrombosis
Glomerulonephritis
Nephrotoxins
Acute tubular necrosis
Renal (cortical) necrosis
Tubular crystalluria (sulfonamide uric acid, tumor lysis)
Pigment nephropathy (ATN)
Contrast nephropathy
Interstitial nephritis
Trauma
Postrenal
Obstruction due to tumor, hematoma, posterior urethral valves, ureteropelvic junction stricture, ureterovesical junction stricture, ureterocele, other bladder outlet, narcotic induced urinary retention, stones, obstructed bladder catheter

Note: Any of the prerenal etiologies of renal failure can evolve into acute tubular nephropathy when prolonged.

in decreased renal perfusion. Table 24–1 lists prerenal, renal, and postrenal causes of acute kidney injury.

» Clinical Findings

The hallmark of early acute kidney injury is oliguria with subsequent variable rise in serum creatinine and BUN; these observations are more likely to be the initial concern in a hospitalized patient. Although an exact etiologic diagnosis may be unclear at the onset, classifying acute kidney injury as outlined in Table 24–1 is helpful in determining if an immediately reversible cause is present.

Entities that can be quickly addressed and corrected, for example, intravascular volume depletion or urinary tract obstruction, should be considered first. Once normal renal perfusion and lack of urinary tract obstruction is ensured, if there is no clinical evidence for de novo renal disease, a diagnosis of acute tubular necrosis may be entertained.

A. Prerenal Causes

The most common cause of acute decreased renal function in children is compromised renal perfusion. It is usually secondary to true intravascular volume depletion or a decrease in effective circulating volume, as may be seen in cardiac failure, cirrhosis, or nephrotic syndrome. Table 24–2 lists the urinary indices helpful in distinguishing these "prerenal" conditions from true renal parenchymal insult, such as acute tubular necrosis.

Table 24–2. Urine studies.

	Prerenal Failure	Acute Tubular Necrosis
Urine osmolality	> 500	< 350
Urine-specific gravity	> 1.020	~ 1.010
Urine sodium	< 20 mEq/L	> 40 mEq/L
Fractional excretion of sodium	< 1%	> 3%
Ratio of urine creatinine to plasma creatinine	> 40:1	< 20:1
Ratio of blood urea nitrogen (BUN) to plasma creatinine	> 20:1	< 10–15

Urine osmolality and sodium concentration should be interpreted in light of the child's age-related capacity for these parameters (eg, newborns have limited urinary concentrating capacity and excrete more sodium than older children).

B. Renal Causes

Causes of acute kidney injury intrinsic to the kidneys include acute glomerulonephritides, HUS, acute interstitial nephritis, and nephrotoxic injury. The diagnosis of acute tubular necrosis which is reserved for those cases in which renal ischemic insult is believed to be the likely cause should be considered when correction of prerenal or postrenal problems does not improve renal function and there is no evidence of de novo renal disease.

C. Postrenal Causes

Postrenal failure, usually found in newborns with urologic anatomic abnormalities, is accompanied by varying degrees of renal insufficiency. One should always keep in mind the possibility of acute urinary tract obstruction in acute kidney injury, especially in the setting of anuria of acute onset. Whatever the cause, ensuring urine drainage is the first step toward reversibility of oliguria.

» Complications

The severity of the complications of acute kidney injury depends on the degree of renal functional impairment and oliguria. Common complications include (1) fluid overload (hypertension, congestive heart failure, and pulmonary

edema), (2) electrolyte disturbances (hyperkalemia), (3) metabolic acidosis, (4) hyperphosphatemia, and (5) uremia.

» Treatment

Prerenal and/or postrenal factors should be excluded and rectified. Normal circulating volume should be maintained and normal blood pressure and cardiac performance established with appropriate fluid or pressor support. Strict measurement of input and output must be maintained, with input adjusted as reduction in output dictates. Placement of a Foley bladder catheter can aid in timely measurement of output. However, in cases where oligo/anuric renal failure is well established (ie, insignificant urine volume), the foreign body should be removed to minimize bladder infection risk. Measurement of central venous pressure may be indicated. Routine assessment of weight is helpful to assess fluid balance in children in whom this is possible. Increasing urine output with diuretics, such as furosemide (1–5 mg/kg, per dose, intravenously, maximum of 200 mg every 6 hours), can be attempted. The effective dose will depend on the amount of functional compromise (if < 50% function, initiate attempt at diuresis with maximum dose). If a response does not occur within 1 hour and the urine output remains low (< 0.5 mL/kg/h), the furosemide dose, if not already maximized, should be increased up to 5 mg/kg. In some cases, the addition of a long-acting thiazide diuretic, such as metolazone, may improve the response. If no diuresis occurs with maximum dosing, further administration of diuretics should cease and fluid intake should be restricted accordingly. The child should be monitored closely for indications for acute dialysis.

All medication dosages should be adjusted as appropriate for the degree of renal clearance.

A. Acute Dialysis: Indications

Immediate indications for dialysis are (1) severe hyperkalemia; (2) unrelenting metabolic acidosis (usually in a situation where fluid overload or hypernatremia prevent repeated sodium bicarbonate administration); (3) fluid overload (which may be manifest as significant hypertension, congestive heart failure, pulmonary edema, or simply inability to provide appropriate medication and nutritional support due to fluid restriction); and (4) symptoms of uremia, usually manifested in children by CNS depression (rare). In cases in which one is concerned about the so-called "uremic" bleeding, it is important to keep in mind that despite the use of the clinical term uremia, it is not the blood urea nitrogen which contributes to platelet dysfunction in renal failure. Accumulation of metabolic end products that contribute to bleeding correlate better with the degree of renal function as reflected by the serum creatinine. This is especially true in cases in which the BUN, which is potentially affected by many things in an ill patient, appears to be disproportionately elevated with respect to the serum creatinine.

B. Methods of Dialysis

Peritoneal dialysis is often preferred in children because of ease of performance and patient tolerance. Although peritoneal dialysis is technically less efficient than hemodialysis, hemodynamic stability and metabolic control can be better sustained because this technique can be applied on a relatively continuous basis. Hemodialysis should be considered (1) if rapid removal of toxins is desired, (2) if the hemodynamic status will tolerate the intermittent solute and fluid removal, or (3) if impediments to efficient peritoneal dialysis are present (eg, postoperative abdomen, adhesions). If vascular access and usage of anticoagulation are not impediments, a slow, continuous hemodialytic process, continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT), may be applied with either systemic or regional anticoagulation in hemodynamically unstable, critically ill patients, including those on extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. Nutritional support and medication doses should be reviewed and adjusted accordingly for patients receiving dialytic therapies.

C. Complications of Dialysis

Intravascular volume depletion can be observed in any dialytic therapy; thus close attention to the patient's hemodynamic status with adjustment in dialytic fluid removal is indicated. Significant intravascular volume depletion can contribute to acute tubular nephropathy and limit the timely recovery of intrinsic renal function. Complications specific to peritoneal dialysis include peritonitis and technical complications such as dialysate leakage or respiratory compromise from intra-abdominal dialysate fluid. Peritonitis can be diminished by strict aseptic technique. Peritoneal fluid cultures should be obtained as clinically indicated. Leakage is reduced by good catheter placement technique and appropriate intra-abdominal dialysate volumes. Adjustment of the electrolyte concentration of dialysate is important to maintain electrolyte balance. Potassium and phosphate, absent from standard dialysate solutions, can be added to the dialysate as clinically required. Several antibiotics can be added to the dialysate for intraperitoneal administration with associated systemic absorption. This scenario is usually reserved for treatment of peritonitis or with limited vascular access for drug administration. Correction of fluid overload is accomplished with high osmolar dialysis fluids. Higher dextrose concentrations (maximum 4.25%) can correct fluid overload rapidly at the risk of causing hyperglycemia. Fluid removal may also be increased with more frequent exchanges of the dialysate, but rapid osmotic transfer of water may result in hypernatremia. Because fluid removal is dependent on many factors (osmolar load of dialysate, individual peritoneal membrane transport characteristics, peritoneal membrane perfusion, etc), it is not possible to exactly control the hourly rate of fluid removal during peritoneal dialysis.

Even in small infants, hemodialysis can rapidly correct major metabolic and electrolyte disturbances as well as volume overload. The process is highly efficient. Systemic anticoagulation, usually with heparin, is typically required. Careful monitoring of the appropriate biochemical parameters is important. Note that during or immediately following the procedure, blood sampling will produce misleading results because equilibration between extravascular compartments and the blood will not yet have been achieved. Appropriate vascular access must be maintained. Hemodialysis is generally intermittent, daily to three times per week. If need be, CRRT may be used to maintain more minute-to-minute, continuous metabolic and fluid control especially in the hemodynamically unstable or septic patient. The choice of anticoagulation is typically based upon institutional preference and the clinical situation. Appropriately trained staff are needed to administer any dialytic therapy to children.

» Course & Prognosis

The course and prognosis of acute kidney injury vary with the etiology. If severe oliguria occurs in acute tubular necrosis, it usually lasts about 10 days. Anuria or oliguria lasting longer than 4 weeks is concerning for progression to cortical necrosis and associated limited renal recovery. The diuretic phase of recovery from acute kidney injury begins with an increase in urinary output to large volumes of isosthenuric urine containing sodium levels of 80–150 mEq/L. The associated polyuria may persist for several days or weeks, and the care provider must ensure appropriate hydration to prevent prerenal azotemia or acute tubular necrosis. Urinary abnormalities usually disappear completely within a few months. If renal recovery does not ensue within about 4 weeks of oligoanuria, arrangements should be made for chronic dialysis and possible eventual renal transplantation.

Rewa O, Bagshaw SM: Acute kidney injury-epidemiology, outcomes and economics Nat Rev Nephrol 2014;10(4):193–207 [PMID: 24445744].

Sutherland SM, Alexander SR: Continuous renal replacement therapy in children. Pediatr Nephrol 2012;27(11):2007–2016 [PMID: 22366896].

CHRONIC RENAL FAILURE

Chronic renal failure in children most commonly results from developmental abnormalities of the kidneys or urinary tract. Obstructive uropathy or severe VUR without (or despite) surgical intervention is often associated with progressive renal insufficiency in children. In older children, the chronic glomerulonephritides, irreversible nephrotoxic injury, or HUS may also cause chronic renal failure. Early evaluation and close follow-up by a pediatric nephrology team in these situations is advised.

» Complications

Any remaining unaffected renal tissue can compensate for gradual loss of functioning nephrons in progressive chronic renal failure, but complications of renal insufficiency appear when this compensatory ability is overwhelmed. In children who have structural kidney lesions associated with impaired urinary concentration, polyuria and dehydration are more likely to be problems than fluid overload until very late in the course of renal insufficiency. Some such children can continue to produce generous volumes of poor quality urine even though they require dialysis. A salt-wasting state can also occur. In contrast, children who develop chronic renal failure due to glomerular disease or renal injury will characteristically retain sodium and water with associated hypertension and eventual loss of urine output.

Metabolic acidosis and growth retardation occur early in chronic renal failure. Disturbances in calcium, phosphorus, and vitamin D metabolism leading to renal osteodystrophy and rickets require prompt attention. Increases in parathyroid hormone occur in response to decreased serum calcium from lack of renally activated vitamin D and/or rising serum phosphorus. The increase in parathyroid hormone, which improves renal tubular excretion of phosphorous, can maintain normal serum calcium and phosphate levels early in the course, but at the expense of the skeleton. Anemia due to decreased erythropoietin production can occur relatively early on as well.

Symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, and malaise occur late in chronic renal failure (generally < 30% renal function). These symptoms can be minimized if chronic renal failure has been detected early and associated complications treated, but refractory symptoms remain indications for renal replacement therapy. CNS abnormalities such as confusion and lethargy are very late symptoms, followed even later by stupor and coma. Such findings are unusual as children usually seek medical attention before deteriorating to this point, and the rise in BUN is typically gradual. Other late complications of untreated renal failure are platelet dysfunction and bleeding tendencies, pericarditis, and chronic fluid overload leading to congestive heart failure, pulmonary edema, and worsening hypertension.

» Treatment

A. Management of Complications

Treatment of chronic renal failure is primarily aimed at controlling the associated complications. Acidosis may be treated with sodium citrate or bicarbonate solutions, as long as the added sodium does not aggravate hypertension. Sodium restriction is advisable when hypertension is present. Hyperphosphatemia is controlled by dietary restriction and dietary phosphate binders (eg, calcium carbonate, sevelamer). Supplementation with vitamin D (cholecalciferol

or ergocalciferol) and calcitriol is typically required. These measures target the prevention of renal osteodystrophy or rickets. Dietary potassium restriction will be necessary as the GFR falls. Diet must be maintained to provide the child's daily requirements for optimal growth. Routine input from a renal dietitian is helpful in this regard.

Renal function must be monitored regularly (creatinine and BUN), and serum electrolytes, calcium, phosphorus, intact PTH, iron and ferritin, and hemoglobin and hematocrit levels monitored to guide changes in fluid and dietary management as well as dosages of phosphate binder, citrate buffer, vitamin D supplements, blood pressure medications, iron supplements, and epoetin alfa. Linear growth failure may be treated with daily subcutaneous human recombinant growth hormone; complete catch-up growth is rarely obtained, but an adult height in the low-normal range can be targeted. Care must be taken to avoid medications that aggravate hypertension; increase the body burden of sodium, potassium, or phosphate; or increase production of BUN. Successful management relies greatly on education of the patient and family. Attention must also be directed toward the psychosocial needs of the patient and family as they adjust to chronic illness and the eventual need for dialysis and kidney transplantation. The multidisciplinary nephrology team works with each child/family to determine appropriate timing for chronic dialysis and/or kidney transplantation.

B. Dialysis and Transplantation

Chronic peritoneal dialysis (home-based) and hemodialysis provide lifesaving treatment for children prior to renal transplantation. The best measure of the success of chronic dialysis in children is the level of physical and psychosocial rehabilitation achieved, such as continued participation in day-to-day activities and school attendance.

At present, the graft survival rate for living-related kidney transplants is 90% at 1 year, 85% at 2 years, and 75% at 5 years. With cadaveric transplantation, graft survivals are 76%, 71%, and 62%, respectively. Overall, the mortality rate is 4% for recipients of living-related donors and 6.8% for recipients of cadaver organs. These percentages are affected by the increased mortality, reported to be as high as 75%, in infants younger than age 1 year, primarily due to technical issues and complications of immunosuppression. A body weight of at least 15 kg is associated with a significantly improved survival rate. Adequate growth and well-being are directly related to acceptance of the graft, the degree of normal function, and the side effects of medications.

Shellmer D, Brosig C, Wray J: The start of the transplant journey: referral for pediatric solid organ transplantation. Pediatr Transplant 2014;18(2):125–133 [PMID: 24438194].

Smith JM, Martz K, Blydt-Hansen TD: Pediatric kidney transplant practice patterns and outcome benchmarks, 1987–2010: a report of the North American Pediatric Renal Trials and Collaborative Studies. Pediatr Transplant 2013;17(2):149–157 [PMID: 23281637].

Warady BA, Neu AM, Schaefer F: Optimal care of the infant, child, and adolescent on dialysis: 2014 update. Am J Kidney Dis 2014;64(1):128–142 [PMID: 24717681].

HYPERTENSION

Hypertension in children is commonly of renal origin although the prevalence of obesity-related hypertension is rising in the pediatric population. Systemic hypertension is anticipated as a complication of known renal parenchymal disease, but it may be found on routine physical examination in an otherwise healthy-appearing child. Increased understanding of the roles of water and salt retention and overactivity of the renin-angiotensin system has done much to guide therapy; nevertheless, not all forms of hypertension can be explained by these two mechanisms.

The causes of renal hypertension in the newborn period include (1) congenital anomalies of the kidneys or renal vasculature, (2) obstruction of the urinary tract, (3) thrombosis of renal vasculature or kidneys, and (4) volume overload. Some instances of apparent paradoxical elevations of blood pressure have been reported in clinical situations in which chronic diuretic therapy is used, such as bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Umbilical artery catheterization continues to be an important contributor to hypertension in infants and young children. Infants and children with hypertension require careful evaluation to exclude a secondary cause of hypertension. These can include renal parenchymal or renovascular disease (renal arterial or venous thrombosis, congenital vascular stenosis), other vascular disease (vasculitis, aortic coarctation), endocrine disorders (thyroid disease, cortisol excess, pheochromocytoma, congenital adrenal hyperplasia), monogenic hypertension (glucocorticoid remediable aldosteronism, Liddle syndrome, etc), and primary hyperaldosteronism. The family history of hypertension and cardiovascular disease should be reviewed with particular attention to early-onset hypertension. Primary hypertension is a diagnosis of exclusion in children.

» Clinical Findings

A child is normotensive if the average recorded systolic and diastolic blood pressures are lower than the 90th percentile for age, sex, and height. The 90th percentile in the newborn period is approximately 85–90/55–65 mm Hg for both sexes. In the first year of life, the acceptable levels are 90–100/60–67 mm Hg. Incremental increases with growth occur, gradually approaching young adult ranges of 100–120/65–80 mm Hg in the late teens. A blood pressure between the 90th–95th percentile or exceeding 120/80

in adolescents is consistent with prehypertension. Careful measurement of blood pressure requires correct cuff size and reliable equipment. The cuff should be wide enough to cover two-thirds of the upper arm and should encircle the arm completely without an overlap in the inflatable bladder. Ideally the child should be sitting quietly for 5 minutes before blood pressure is measured in the right arm, upon which norms are based. Although an anxious child may have an elevation in blood pressure, abnormal readings must not be too hastily attributed to this cause. Repeat measurement is helpful, especially after the child has been consoled. Manual blood pressure measurement should be pursued when automated readings are concerning; an exception is the neonatal period when manual assessment is technically difficult and appropriate size equipment often lacking.

Routine laboratory studies include serum BUN, creatinine and electrolytes, a complete blood count, and urinalysis. Abnormal BUN and creatinine would support underlying renal disease as the cause, and serum electrolytes demonstrating hypokalemic alkalosis suggest excess mineralocorticoid effect. Depending on the age of the child, routine assessment of serum lipids, glucose, A_{1C} hemoglobin, and thyroid function tests is indicated. Screening of plasma/urine catecholamines and metanephrines and/or serum cortisol should be obtained as clinically indicated. Echocardiogram has been recommended for routine assessment of hypertension in children, but this practice has not been widely adopted; careful assessment of distal pulses is necessary to exclude aortic coarctation clinically. Renal ultrasonography with Doppler flow is helpful in determining the possible presence of renal scarring, urinary tract obstruction or renovascular flow disturbances as a cause of hypertension. However, the sensitivity and specificity of Doppler ultrasound for renal artery stenosis varies widely between institutions. Renal MRA or CTA is indicated when there is high suspicion for renal artery stenosis. A renal biopsy (which rarely reveals the cause of hypertension unless clinical evidence of renal disease is present) should be undertaken with special care in the hypertensive patient and preferably after pressures have been controlled by therapy. Figure 24–3 presents a suggested approach to the outpatient workup of hypertension.

» Treatment

A. Acute Hypertensive Emergencies

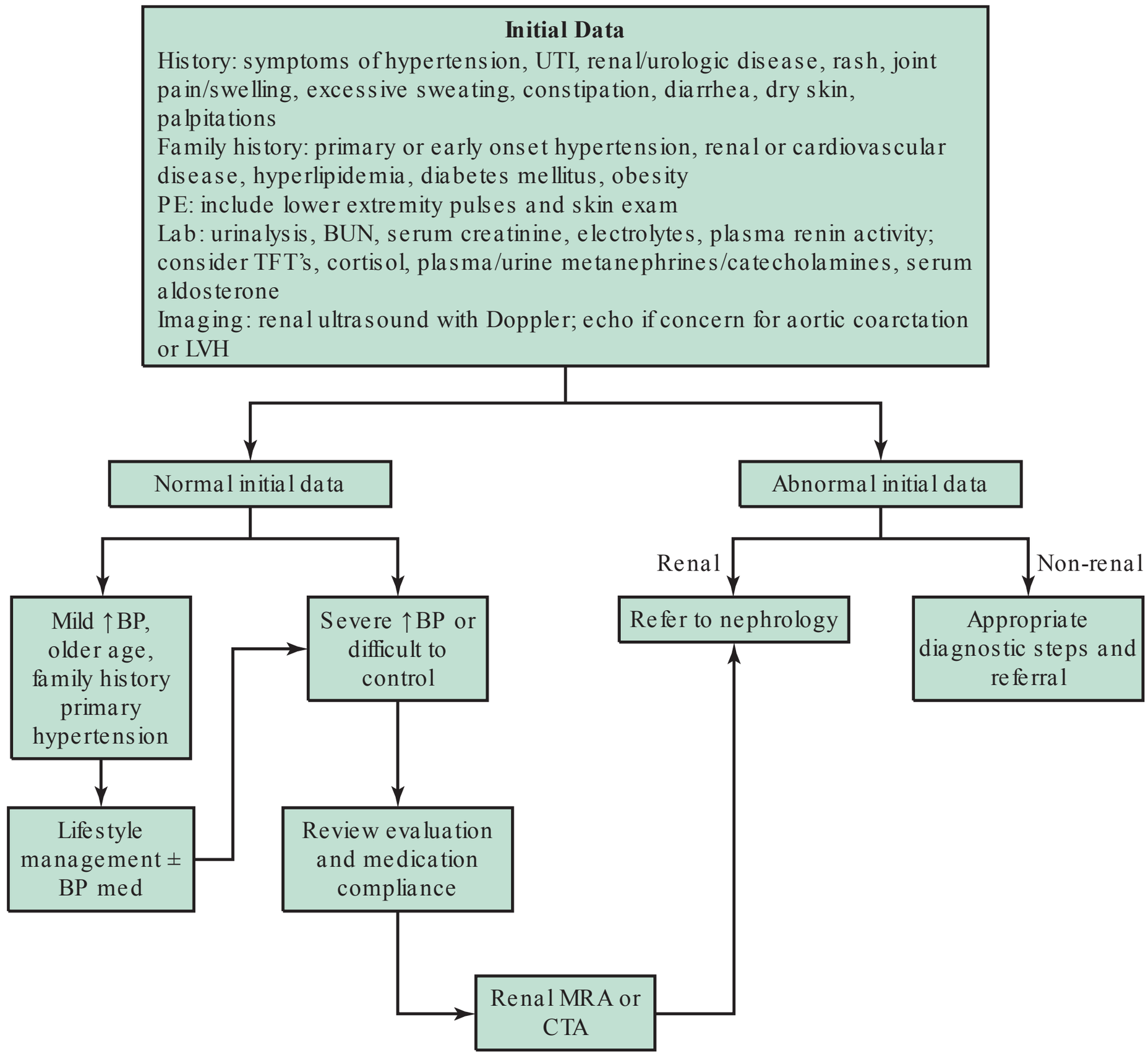
A hypertensive emergency exists when CNS signs of hypertension appear, such as papilledema or encephalopathy. Retinal hemorrhages or exudates also indicate a need for prompt and effective control. Such children require appropriate management in the intensive care setting with consideration of continuous arterial BP monitoring and intravenous antihypertensive therapy. Whatever method is used to control emergent hypertension, medications for sustained control should also be initiated so that normal blood pressure will be maintained when the emergent measures are discontinued. The primary classes of useful antihypertensive drugs are (1) ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers (the latter used less frequently in children based on less clinical experience and limitations in accurate dosing for smaller children), (2) calcium channel blockers, (3) α- and β-adrenergic blockers, (4) diuretics, and (5) vasodilators. Acute elevations of blood pressure not exceeding the 99th percentile in the asymptomatic patient may be treated with oral antihypertensives, aiming for progressive improvement and control within 48 hours.

Sublingual nifedipine is a rapid-acting calcium channel blocker that can be administered to acutely decrease severe hypertension. However, its use has fallen out of favor for acute management of hypertension in adults in whom an abrupt decline in blood pressure can diminish perfusion of the coronary and cerebral arteries with underlying atherosclerosis. Alternatively, nicardipine is a very effective and generally well-tolerated antihypertensive that is administered via continuous intravenous infusion for control of systemic hypertension in children. Sodium nitroprusside is a very effective infusion to gain control of malignant hypertension, but long-term usage is limited by concern for rare thiocyanate toxicity, especially when renal failure is present. Hydralazine is a vasodilator that can be administered intermittently by the intravenous route. Any vasodilator can induce reflex tachycardia and sodium retention, so concomitant administration of a β-blocker or diuretic may be indicated. Intravenous forms of β-blockers such as esmolol or labetalol are useful when there are no cardiac or respiratory contraindications to their use.

Diuretics such as furosemide can be useful in the acute setting when there is evidence of intravascular volume overload.

B. Sustained Hypertension

Several choices are available for treatment (Table 24–3). A single drug such as an ACE inhibitor or a β-blocker (unless contraindicated, eg, in reactive airway disease) may be adequate to treat mild hypertension. ACE inhibitors are often the preferred choice of pediatric nephrologists given the frequent renal etiology of hypertension. Diuretics are useful to treat renal insufficiency that is often associated with sodium and fluid retention, but the disadvantages of possible electrolyte imbalance must be considered. Calcium channel blockers are increasingly useful and appear well tolerated in children. Direct vasodilators such as hydralazine and minoxidil often require diuretics and/or β-blockers to combat associated sodium and fluid retention and reflex tachycardia. Although minoxidil is extremely effective in control of hypertension of



▲**Figure 24–3.** Approach to the outpatient workup of hypertension. BP, blood pressure; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; CTA, computed tomography angiography; LVH, left ventricular hypertrophy; MRA, magnetic resonance angiography; TFT, thyroid function tests; UTI, urinary tract infection.

a variety of etiologies, hirsutism is a significant side effect. The advice of a pediatric nephrologist should be sought in the management of acute and chronic hypertension in children.

Ferguson MA, Flynn JT: Rational use of antihypertensive medications in children. Pediatr Nephrol 2014;29(6):979–988 [PMID: 23715784].

Flynn JT: Assessment of blood pressure in children: it's all in the details. J Clin Hypertension (Greenwich) 2013;15(11):772–773 [PMID: 24283595].

National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group on High Blood Pressure in Children and Adolescents: The fourth report on the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of high blood pressure in children and adolescents. Pediatrics 2004;114(2 Suppl 4th Report):555–576 [PMID: 15286277].

INHERITED OR DEVELOPMENTAL DEFECTS OF THE KIDNEYS

There are many developmental, hereditary, or metabolic defects of the kidneys and collecting system. The clinical consequences include metabolic abnormalities, failure to thrive, nephrolithiasis, renal glomerular or tubular dysfunction, and chronic renal failure. Table 24–4 lists some of the major entities.

DISORDERS OF THE RENAL TUBULES

Three subtypes of RTA are recognized: (1) the classic form, called type I or distal RTA; (2) the bicarbonate-wasting form, called type II or proximal RTA; and (3) type IV, or hyperkalemic RTA (rare in children), which is associated

Table 24–3. Antihypertensive drugs for ambulatory treatment in children ages 1–17 years.

Class	Drug	Oral Dose	Major Side Effects[a]
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor	Captopril	1–6 mg/kg/d ÷ tid	Rash, hyperkalemia, cough, decreased GFR
	Lisinopril	0.5–1 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-bid	
Calcium channel blocker	Amlodipine	0.2-0.5 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-bid	Higher doses relative to body weight may be required in younger children; headache, facial flushing, pretibial edema
	Nifedipine, extended-release	0.5–3 mg/kg/d ÷ tid	Flushing, tachycardia
Diuretic	Furosemide	2–20 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-qid (maximum 5 mg/kg/dose up to 200 mg)	Potassium and volume depletion
	Hydrochlorothiazide	1–3 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-bid	Potassium and volume depletion, hyperuricemia
Sympathetic nervous system blockade	Propranolol	0.6–4 mg/kg/d ÷ bid-tid (maximum 640 mg/d)	Syncope, bradycardia; use with caution in asthma or overt heart failure
	Metoprolol	1–6 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-bid (maximum 200 mg/d)	Syncope, bradycardia; use with caution in asthma or overt heart failure
Vasodilator	Hydralazine	0.75–7.5 mg/kg/d ÷ tid-qid (maximum 200 mg/d)	Lupus-like syndrome in slow acetylators; tachycardia, fluid retention, headache
	Minoxidil	0.3 mg/kg/d ÷ qd-bid	Tachycardia, fluid retention, hirsutism

bid, twice a day; GFR, glomerular filtration rate; qd, daily; qid, four times a day; tid, three times a day.
[a]Not all side effects are listed.

with hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism or inherited in an autosomal manner. Types I and II and their variants are encountered most frequently in children. Type III is described historically as a combination of types I and II. Other primary tubular disorders in childhood, such as glycinuria, hyperuricosuria, or renal glycosuria, may result from a defect in a single tubular transport pathway (see Table 24–4).

1. Distal Renal Tubular Acidosis (Type I)

The most common form of distal RTA in childhood is the hereditary form. The clinical presentation is one of failure to thrive, anorexia, vomiting, and dehydration. Hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, and a urinary pH exceeding 6.5 are found. Concomitant hypercalciuria may lead to nephrocalcinosis, nephrolithiasis, and renal failure. Other situations that may be responsible for distal RTA are found in some of the entities listed in Table 24–4.

Distal RTA results from a defect in the distal nephron in the tubular transport of hydrogen ion or in the maintenance of a steep enough gradient for proper excretion of hydrogen ion. Historically the diagnosis could be established with an acid loading test, but this is rarely pursued currently. Instead, the findings of hypercalciuria or nephrocalcinosis with RTA support a distal defect, as does the relatively low requirement of alkali to normalize serum pH and bicarbonate concentration (1–3 mEq/kg/d). Some forms of genetic distal RTA are associated with hearing loss. Correction of acidosis with citrate or less commonly bicarbonate reduces complications and improves growth. Distal RTA is often permanent. However, if renal damage from calcinosis is prevented, the prognosis with treatment is good.

2. Proximal Renal Tubular Acidosis (Type II)

Proximal RTA, the most common form of RTA in childhood, is characterized by failure to reabsorb bicarbonate appropriately in the proximal tubule with associated reduced serum bicarbonate concentration and normal anion gap hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. Once a steady state is reached, the intact distal nephron appropriately excretes hydrogen ion, leading to a low urine pH.

Proximal RTA is often an isolated defect, and in the newborn can be considered an aspect of renal immaturity which improves with increasing gestational age. Proximal RTA in infants is accompanied by failure to thrive and sometimes hypokalemia. Secondary forms result from reflux or obstructive uropathy or occur in association with other tubular disorders (see Table 24–4). Due to bicarbonate wasting, children with proximal RTA typically require 5–20 mEq/kg/d citrate to achieve normal serum pH and bicarbonate concentration.

3. Evaluation & Treatment

The diagnosis of RTA is made with the finding of normal anion gap, hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis in the absence

Table 24–4. Inherited or developmental defects of the urinary tract.

Cystic diseases of genetic origin
- Polycystic disease
  - Autosomal recessive
  - Autosomal dominant
  - Other syndromes that include either form
- Nephronophthisis
- Medullary cystic kidney disease
- Glomerulocystic kidney disease
- Renal cysts and diabetes (HNF1-β)

Dysplastic renal diseases
- Renal agenesis
- Renal hypoplasia
- Renal dysplasia
- Cystic renal dysplasia
- Multicystic dysplastic kidney
- Oligomeganephronia

Hereditary diseases associated with nephritis
- Hereditary nephritis with deafness and ocular defects (Alport syndrome)
- Nail-patella syndrome
- Familial hyperprolinemia
- Hereditary osteolysis with nephropathy

Hereditary diseases associated with intrarenal deposition of metabolites
- Fabry disease
- Zellweger syndrome
- Various storage diseases (eg, G_{M1} monosialogangliosidosis, Hurler syndrome, Niemann-Pick disease, familial metachromatic leukodystrophy, glycogenosis type I [von Gierke disease], glycogenosis type II [Pompe disease])
- Hereditary amyloidosis (familial Mediterranean fever, heredofamilial urticaria with deafness and neuropathy, primary familial amyloidosis with polyneuropathy)

Hereditary renal diseases associated with tubular transport defects
- Hartnup disease
- Oculocerebrorenal syndrome of Lowe
- Cystinosis (infantile, adolescent, adult types)
- Wilson disease
- Galactosemia
- Hereditary fructose intolerance
- Renal tubular acidosis
- Hereditary tyrosinemia
- Renal glycosuria
- Vitamin D–resistant rickets
- Pseudohypoparathyroidism
- Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus
- Bartter syndrome
- Gitelman syndrome
- Liddle syndrome
- Hypouricemia

Hereditary diseases associated with lithiasis
- Hyperoxaluria
- L-Glyceric aciduria
- Xanthinuria
- Lesch-Nyhan syndrome and variants, gout
- Nephropathy due to familial hyperparathyroidism
- Cystinuria (types I, II, III)
- Glycinuria
- Dent disease

of diarrhea, or intravascular volume depletion. A concomitant urine pH is helpful in many cases, as it is elevated in distal RTA despite the metabolic acidosis. The finding of hypophosphatemia or glycosuria should lead to further investigation of proximal tubular function (eg, Fanconi syndrome that is also associated with aminoaciduria). A renal ultrasound should be obtained to exclude urinary tract obstruction (which can be seen with either proximal or distal RTA) and nephrocalcinosis (seen in distal RTA). A urine calcium creatinine ratio may be helpful in the latter condition. In either proximal or distal RTA, citrate or bicarbonate supplementation is provided to target a serum bicarbonate level of 20–24 mEq/L, as an index of normal serum pH. Citrate solutions are more effective and often better tolerated than sodium bicarbonate. Sodium citrate contains 1 mEq/mL of Na^+ and citrate. Potassium citrate contains 2 mEq/mL of citrate and 1 mEq/mL each of Na^+ and K^+. The medication is administered three times per day, targeting a trough serum bicarbonate at goal. Potassium supplementation may be required (and can often be accomplished simply with a change from sodium citrate to potassium citrate) because the added sodium load presented to the distal tubule may exaggerate potassium losses.

The prognosis is excellent in cases of isolated proximal RTA, especially when the problem is related to renal immaturity. Alkali therapy can usually be discontinued after several months to a few years. Growth should be normal, and the gradual increase in the serum bicarbonate level to greater than 24 mEq/L heralds the normalization of the threshold for proximal tubular bicarbonate reabsorption. If the defect is part of Fanconi syndrome or distal RTA, the prognosis depends on the underlying disorder or syndrome.

CYSTINOSIS

Cystinosis is the most common cause of Fanconi syndrome in children and results from mutations in the CTNS gene, which encodes the cystine transporter. There are three types of cystinosis: adult, adolescent, and infantile. The adult form is characterized by ocular cystinosis without

renal involvement. In the adolescent and infantile types, cystine accumulation in lysosomes causes cell death in numerous organs, including the kidneys. Treatment with oral cysteamine aids in the metabolic conversion of cystine (unable to exit cells) to cysteine (able to exit cells) and delays intracellular accumulation and associated complications, which include Fanconi syndrome with salt-wasting and functional nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, proximal RTA, hypophosphatemic rickets, eventual progression to ESRD, hypothyroidism, ocular cystinosis with eventual blindness, and neurologic deterioration. The infantile type is most common and the most severe. Characteristically, children present in the first or early second year of life with Fanconi syndrome and failure to thrive. If left untreated, ESRD is reached by 7–10 years of age in the infantile form. Whenever the diagnosis of cystinosis is suspected, slit-lamp examination of the corneas should be performed. Cystine crystal deposition causes an almost pathognomonic ground-glass "dazzle" appearance. Increased white blood cell (WBC) cystine levels are diagnostic. The condition does not recur in transplanted kidneys, but ongoing cysteamine therapy is required to prevent complications in other organs.

Emma F et al: Nephropathic cystinosis: an international consensus document. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2014;29(Suppl 4):iv87–94 [PMID: 25165189].

OCULOCEREBRORENAL SYNDROME (LOWE SYNDROME)

Lowe syndrome results from various mutations in the OCRL1 gene, which codes for a Golgi apparatus phosphatase. Affected males have anomalies involving the eyes, brain, and kidneys. The physical stigmata and degree of mental retardation vary with the location of the mutation. In addition to congenital cataracts and buphthalmos, the typical facies includes prominent epicanthal folds, frontal prominence, and a tendency to scaphocephaly. Muscle hypotonia is a prominent finding. The renal abnormalities are tubular and include hypophosphatemic rickets with low serum phosphorus levels, low to normal serum calcium levels, elevated serum alkaline phosphatase levels, proximal RTA, and aminoaciduria. Renal treatment includes alkali therapy, phosphate replacement, and vitamin D support. Antenatal diagnosis is possible.

HYPOKALEMIC ALKALOSIS (BARTTER SYNDROME, GITELMAN SYNDROME, & LIDDLE SYNDROME)

There are a number of genetic tubular disorders which result in hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis. Bartter syndrome is characterized by severe hypokalemic, hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis, extremely high levels of circulating renin and aldosterone, and a paradoxical absence of hypertension. On renal biopsy (rarely pursued in the current era), a striking juxtaglomerular hyperplasia is seen. A neonatal form of Bartter syndrome is thought to result from mutations in two genes (NKCC2, ROMK) affecting nephron Na^+-K^+ or K^+ transport. These patients typically have a history of polyhydramnios and following birth have recurrent life-threatening episodes of fever and dehydration with the aforementioned electrolyte and acid-base disturbances, hypercalciuria, and early-onset nephrocalcinosis. Classic Bartter syndrome presenting in infancy with polyuria and growth retardation (but not nephrocalcinosis) is thought to result from mutations in a chloride channel gene. Gitelman syndrome occurs in older children and features episodes of muscle weakness and tetany associated with severe hypokalemia, and hypomagnesemia. These children have hypocalciuria. Treatment with prostaglandin inhibitors and potassium-conserving diuretics (eg, amiloride) and potassium and magnesium supplements where indicated is beneficial in Bartter or Gitelman syndrome. These are lifelong conditions which require ongoing electrolyte supplementation.

Liddle syndrome is associated with constitutive activation of the epithelial sodium channel with associated salt and water retention. Thus, the initial presenting abnormality is often hypertension associated with hypokalemia and metabolic alkalosis. Serum renin and aldosterone are suppressed due to the sodium and fluid retention. Treatment in Liddle syndrome is with a low-sodium diet and blockade of the epithelial sodium channel with amiloride or triamterene. Spironolactone is ineffective in this condition as aldosterone is typically suppressed.

NEPHROGENIC DIABETES INSIPIDUS (NDI)

Hereditary nephrogenic (vasopressin-resistant) diabetes insipidus is most often caused by X-linked mutations in the AVPR2 gene that encodes the vasopressin V2 receptor. Autosomal (recessive and dominant) forms of NDI occur less commonly due to mutations of the AQP2 gene that codes for the collecting tubule water channel protein, aquaporin-2. Such children often have a profound impairment in maximal urinary concentrating capacity, which rarely exceeds 100 mOsm/kg H_2O. Genetic counseling and mutation testing are available.

Acquired nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (NDI) is observed in numerous conditions including sickle cell anemia, chronic pyelonephritis, hypokalemia, hypercalcemia, Fanconi syndrome, obstructive uropathy, chronic renal insufficiency, and lithium treatment.

The symptoms of NDI include polyuria and polydipsia. In severe cases, water intake is preferred to formula, leading to failure to thrive. In some children, particularly if the solute intake is unrestricted, adjustment to an elevated serum osmolality may develop. Children with genetic NDI are particularly susceptible to episodes of dehydration, fever,

vomiting, and hypernatremia when access to free water is limited.

The diagnosis can be suspected on the basis of a history of polydipsia and polyuria. The family history may be informative in hereditary cases while a review of the patient's medical history, medications, and serum chemistries can help identify a source of acquired NDI. The diagnosis is confirmed by performing a water deprivation test, during which time serum and urine osmolality are assessed and either arginine vasopressin or desmopressin administered to assess tubular response. When hereditary NDI is suspected, it is imperative that a water deprivation test be performed in the hospital in a controlled setting. Due to the severe concentrating defect, restricting water intake overnight at home in such children can lead to severe intravascular volume depletion and hyperosmolality. In addition to hyperglycemia, the differential diagnosis of polydipsia and polyuria includes primary polydipsia, which occurs in children as young as infancy.

In infants with NDI, it is usually best to allow water as demanded and to restrict salt intake. Caregivers must be aware of the risks of dehydration and hypernatremia if fluid intake is restricted either due to lack of provision by the caregiver or inability to keep fluids down (eg, vomiting). A low-salt diet limits the amount of urine that must be produced for daily solute excretion. Due to the need for high-volume free water intake, caloric intake may be limited and affected children often benefit from routine follow-up with a renal dietitian. Treatment with hydrochlorothiazide decreases urine volume by limiting the amount of free water delivered to the distal nephron for excretion. Prostaglandin inhibitors such as indomethacin or tolmetin are efficacious by decreasing renal blood flow, thereby diminishing GFR and by preventing reclamation of the AQP2 water channel from the apical membrane of the collecting duct cell. Prostaglandin inhibitors, however, are associated with risk of gastritis/ulceration.

Bockenhauer D, Bichet DG: Urinary concentration: different ways to open and close the tap. Pediatr Nephrol 2014;29(8):1297–1303 [PMID: 23736674].

Wong LM, Man SS: Water deprivation test in children with polyuria. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2012;25(9–10):869–874 [PMID: 23426815].

NEPHROLITHIASIS

Renal calculi in children may result from hereditary errors of metabolism, such as cystine in cystinuria, glycine in hyperglycinuria, urates in Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, and oxalates in primary hyperoxaluria. Stones may occur secondary to hypercalciuria in distal RTA, and large stones are quite often seen in children with spina bifida who have paralyzed lower limbs or any situation where immobilization promotes calcium mobilization from the bones or there is recurrent UTI with urease-producing organisms (struvite calculi). Treatment is focused on the primary condition, if possible. Most cases of nephrolithiasis have no basis in a metabolic disturbance, however, and are initially addressed with attention toward maintaining optimal hydration. Surgical removal of stones or lithotripsy should be considered only for obstruction, intractable severe pain, and chronic infection.

Tasian GE, Copelovitch L: Evaluation and medical management of kidney stones in children. J Urol 2014;192(5):1329–1336 [PMID: 24960469].

1. Cystinuria

Cystinuria is primarily an abnormality of amino acid transport across both the enteric and proximal renal tubular epithelium. There are at least three biochemical types. In the first type, the bowel transport of basic amino acids and cystine is impaired, but transport of cysteine is not impaired. In the renal tubule, basic amino acids are again rejected by the tubule, but cystine absorption appears to be normal. The reason for cystinuria remains obscure. Heterozygous individuals have no aminoaciduria. The second type is similar to the first except that heterozygous individuals excrete excess cystine and lysine in the urine, and cystine transport in the bowel is normal. In the third type, only the nephron is involved. The only clinical manifestations are related to stone formation: ureteral colic, dysuria, hematuria, proteinuria, and secondary UTI. Urinary excretion of cystine, lysine, arginine, and ornithine is increased.

The most reliable way to prevent stone formation is to maintain a constantly high free-water clearance. This involves generous fluid intake. Alkalinization of the urine is helpful. If these measures do not prevent significant renal lithiasis, the use of tiopronin (Thiola) is recommended.

Sumorok N, Goldfarb DS: Update on cystinuria. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2013;22(4):427–431 [PMID: 23666417].

2. Primary Hyperoxaluria

Oxalate in humans is derived from the oxidative deamination of glycine to glyoxylate, the serine-glycolate pathway, and from ascorbic acid. At least two enzymatic blocks have been described. Type I is a deficiency of liver-specific peroxisomal alanine–glyoxylate aminotransferase. Type II is glyoxylate reductase deficiency. Recently a type III primary hyperoxaluria has been described in association with increased mitochondrial 4-hydroxy-2-oxoglutarate aldolase activity; this type appears to be milder than types I or II.

Excess oxalate combines with calcium to form insoluble deposits in the kidneys, lungs, and other tissues, beginning during childhood. The joints are occasionally involved, but the main effect is on the kidneys, where progressive oxalate deposition leads to fibrosis and eventual renal failure.

A low-oxalate diet with normal calcium intake and high fluid intake is recommended. High-dose pyridoxine can be administered in type I primary hyperoxaluria as it is a cofactor for the defective pathway, but the overall prognosis is poor, with half of patients developing ESRD by 15 years of age. Renal transplantation is not very successful because of destruction of the transplant kidney with continued oxalate overproduction. However, encouraging results have been obtained with concomitant liver transplantation that corrects the metabolic defect. Types II and III primary hyperoxaluria appear to have better long-term renal outcomes.

Hyperoxaluria may also be a consequence of severe ileal disease or ileal resection due to excessive absorption of dietary oxalate.

° URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS

It is estimated that 8% of girls and 2% of boys will acquire UTIs in childhood. Girls older than age 6 months have UTIs far more commonly than boys, whereas uncircumcised boys younger than 3 months have more UTIs than girls. Circumcision reduces the risk of UTI in boys. The density of distal urethral and periurethral bacterial colonization with uropathogenic bacteria correlates with the risk of UTI in children. Most UTIs are ascending infections. Specific adhesins present on the fimbria of uropathogenic bacteria allow colonization of the uroepithelium in the urethra and bladder and increase the likelihood of UTI. The organisms most commonly responsible for UTI are fecal flora, most commonly E coli (> 85%), Klebsiella, Proteus, other gram-negative bacteria, and, less frequently, Enterococcus or coagulase-negative staphylococci.

» Pathogenesis

Dysfunctional voiding, which is uncoordinated relaxation of the urethral sphincter during voiding, leads to incomplete emptying of the bladder, increasing the risk of bacterial colonization. Similarly, any condition that interferes with complete emptying of the bladder, such as constipation, VUR, urinary tract obstruction, or neurogenic bladder, increases the risk of UTI. Poor perineal hygiene, structural abnormalities of the urinary tract, catheterization, instrumentation of the urinary tract, and sexual activity increase the risk as well.

The inflammatory response to pyelonephritis may produce renal parenchymal scars. Such scars in infancy and childhood may contribute to hypertension, renal disease, and renal failure later in life.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Newborns and infants with UTI have nonspecific signs, including fever, hypothermia, jaundice, poor feeding, irritability, vomiting, failure to thrive, and sepsis. Strong, foul-smelling or cloudy urine may be noted. Preschool children may have abdominal or flank pain, vomiting, fever, urinary frequency, dysuria, urgency, or enuresis. School-aged children commonly have classic signs of cystitis (frequency, dysuria, and urgency) or pyelonephritis (fever, vomiting, and flank pain). Costovertebral tenderness is unusual in young children, but may be demonstrated by school-aged children. Physical examination should include attention to blood pressure determination, abdominal examination, and a genitourinary examination. Urethritis, poor perineal hygiene, herpes simplex virus, or other genitourinary infections may be apparent on examination.

B. Laboratory Findings

Screening urinalysis indicates pyuria (> 5 WBCs/hpf) in most children with UTI, but some children can have sterile pyuria without UTI. White cells from the urethra or vagina may be present in urine or may be in the urine because of a renal inflammatory process. The leukocyte esterase test correlates well with pyuria, but has a similar false-positive rate. The detection of urinary nitrite by dipstick is highly correlated with enteric organisms being cultured from urine. Most young children (70%) with UTI have negative nitrite tests, however. They empty their bladders frequently, and it requires several hours for bacteria to convert ingested nitrates to nitrite in the bladder.

The gold standard for diagnosis remains the culture of a properly collected urine specimen. Collection of urine for urinalysis and culture is difficult in children due to frequent contamination of the sample. In toilet-trained, cooperative, older children, a midstream, clean-catch method is usually satisfactory. Although cleaning of the perineum does not improve specimen quality, straddling of the toilet to separate the labia in girls, retraction of the foreskin in boys, and collecting midstream urine significantly reduce contamination. In infants and younger children, bladder catheterization or suprapubic collection is necessary in most cases to avoid contaminated samples. Bagged urine specimens are helpful only if negative. Specimens that are not immediately cultured should be refrigerated and kept cold during transport. Any growth is considered significant from a suprapubic culture. Quantitative recovery of 10^5 cfu/mL or greater is considered significant from clean-catch specimens, and 10^4–10^5 is considered significant from catheterized specimens. Usually the recovery of multiple organisms indicates contamination.

Asymptomatic bacteriuria is detected in 0.5%–1.0% of children who are screened with urine culture. Asymptomatic bacteriuria, as seen commonly in children requiring chronic bladder catheterization, is believed to represent colonization of the urinary tract with nonuropathogenic bacteria. Treatment in such cases may increase the risk of symptomatic UTI by eliminating nonpathogenic colonization. Screening

urine cultures in asymptomatic children are, therefore, generally discouraged.

C. Imaging

Because congenital urologic abnormalities increase the risk of UTI, a renal ultrasound, which is a noninvasive study, is recommended for children with UTI. The finding of significant hydronephrosis or other concerning urinary tract abnormalities on screening ultrasound warrants further imaging. A voiding cystourethrogram is no longer routinely recommended following first UTI in childhood, although the specificity of the renal ultrasound to exclude significant VUR varies widely in medical literature. VUR, a congenital abnormality present in about 1% of the population beyond infancy, is graded using the international scale (I—reflux into ureter; II—reflux to the kidneys; III—reflux to kidneys with dilation of ureter only; IV—reflux with dilation of ureter and mild blunting of renal calyces; V—reflux with dilation of ureter and blunting of renal calyces). Reflux is detected in 30%–50% of children presenting with a UTI at 1 year of age and younger. The natural history of reflux is to improve, and 80% of reflux of grades I, II, or III will resolve or significantly improve within 3 years following detection. Significant debate exists in the literature regarding appropriate radiographic imaging for UTI and best management of VUR, including indications for and value of surgical intervention and/or prophylactic antibiotics.

» Treatment

A. Antibiotic Therapy

Management of UTI is influenced by clinical assessment. Very young children (< age 3 months) and children with dehydration, toxicity, or sepsis continue to be admitted to the hospital and treated with parenteral antimicrobials. Older infants and children who are not seriously ill can be treated as outpatients. Initial antimicrobial therapy is based on prior history of infection and antimicrobial use, as well as location of the infection in the urinary tract.

Most uncomplicated cystitis can be treated with amoxicillin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, or a first-generation cephalosporin. These antimicrobials are concentrated in the lower urinary tract, and high cure rates are common. There are significant differences in the rates of antimicrobial resistance, so knowledge of the rates in the local community is important. More seriously ill children are initially treated parenterally with a third-generation cephalosporin or aminoglycoside. The initial antimicrobial choice is adjusted after culture and susceptibility results are known. The recommended duration of antimicrobial therapy for uncomplicated cystitis is 7–10 days. For sexually mature teenagers with cystitis, fluoroquinolones such as ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin for 3 days are effective and cost-effective. Short-course therapy of cystitis is not recommended in children, because differentiating upper and lower tract disease may be difficult and higher failure rates are reported in most studies of short-course therapy.

Acute pyelonephritis is usually treated for 10 days. In nontoxic children older than 3 months of age who are not vomiting, oral treatment with an appropriate agent can be used. In sicker children, parenteral therapy may be required initially. Most of these children can complete therapy orally once symptomatic improvement has occurred. A repeat urine culture 24–48 hours after beginning therapy is not needed if the child is improving and doing well.

B. Prophylactic Antimicrobials

Selected children with frequently recurring UTI may benefit from prophylactic antimicrobials. In children with high-grade VUR, prophylactic antimicrobials may be beneficial in reducing UTI, as an alternative to surgical correction, or in the interval prior to surgical therapy. Many experts recommend surgical correction of higher-grade reflux, particularly grade V. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and nitrofurantoin are approved for prophylaxis. The use of broader-spectrum antimicrobials leads to colonization and infection with resistant strains.

Children with dysfunctional voiding generally do not benefit from prophylactic antimicrobials; rather, addressing the underlying dysfunctional voiding is most important. Any underlying bladder dysfunction should be addressed.

Awais M et al: Evaluation and management of recurrent urinary tract infections: state of the art. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2015;13(2):209–231 [PMID: 25488064].

Subcommittee on urinary tract infection, Steering committee on quality improvement and management, Roberts KB: Urinary tract infection: clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of the initial UTI in febrile infants and children 2 to 24 months. Pediatrics 2011;128(3):595–610 [PMID: 21873693].

° QA/QI IN PEDIATRIC NEPHROLOGY

The North American Pediatric Renal Trials & Collaborative Study (NAPRTCS) has collected clinical information on children undergoing kidney transplant since 1987, and, as of 2013, included information on 11,603 kidney transplants in 10,632 patients. Since the first data analysis in 1989, NAPRTCS reports have documented marked improvements in outcome after kidney transplant in addition to identifying factors associated with both favorable and poor outcomes. Acute rejection rates continue to decline with improvements in short- and long-term graft survival. Recently, NAPRTCS data have been used as a source of benchmark for pediatric kidney transplant centers, providing center-specific outcomes for chronic kidney disease, dialysis, and transplant patients for comparison with national statistics.

The Standardized Care to Improve Outcomes in Pediatric ESRD (SCOPE) Collaborative helps pediatric dialysis centers minimize dialysis-related infections in peritoneal dialysis and hemodialysis patients through encouragement of multicenter adherence to recommended best practices. As of 2013, the Collaborative demonstrated a 27% reduction in peritonitis rates, and new efforts are being targeted at the hemodialysis population.

Since 1997, the National Kidney Foundation (NKF) has published clinical practice guidelines in nephrology known as KDOQI—Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative. There are now 13 guidelines addressing the best practice care of patients with chronic kidney disease. Although primarily directed toward adult patients, the number of guidelines that address pediatric care is increasing.

25 Neurologic & Muscular Disorders

Sita Kedia, MD, MPH
Kelly Knupp, MD
Teri L. Schreiner, MD, MPH
Michele L. Yang, MD
Jeremy Toler, MD
Paul G. Moe, MD

NEUROLOGIC ASSESSMENT & NEURODIAGNOSTICS

HISTORY & EXAMINATION

1. History

Even with increasingly sophisticated neurodiagnostic testing, the assessment and diagnosis of a child with a possible neurologic disorder begins with detailed neurologic history and examination, including several aspects of the general physical examination. The standard pediatric history and physical examination are presented in Chapter 9. A careful history will allow the clinician to establish the nature and course of the illness. Determining the progression of the illness (acute vs chronic, progressive vs static, episodic vs continuous) will help to determine an approach to the evaluation. When the developmental history is vague, other resources such as extended family members and baby scrapbooks may provide clarification of prior development. Episodic events such as headaches or seizures warrant emphasis on precise details preceding, during, and succeeding the events in question. Often, in age of readily accessible digital media, spells can be videotaped, providing important details that can assist in diagnosis.

2. Neurologic Examination

A general physical examination is an essential aspect of any neurologic assessment. Growth parameters and head circumference should be charted (see Chapter 3). A developmental assessment using an appropriate screening tool is part of every neurologic evaluation of an infant or young child and can be used to document the child's developmental status. Chapter 3 delineates age-appropriate developmental landmarks (see Tables 3–1 and 3–2) and discusses the multiple screening tools available to the practitioner. The specifics of the neurologic examination are determined by the age of the child and the ability to cooperate with the examination. Expected newborn-infant reflexes and other age-related examination findings are included in Chapter 2. The hallmark of neurologic diagnosis is localization, defining where within the nervous system the "lesion" is located. While not all childhood neurologic disorders are easily localized, the part of the nervous system involved—for example, central versus neuromuscular—can often be defined and will act as a guide for evaluation and diagnosis.

Table 25–1 outlines components of the neurologic examination. Much of the examination of the frightened infant or toddler is, by necessity, observational. An organized approach to the examination is thus imperative. Playing games will engage a toddler or preschooler; activities such as throwing and catching a ball, stacking blocks, hopping, jogging, counting, and drawing (circles, lines) can reduce anxiety and allow assessment of fine and gross motor coordination, balance, and handedness. In the older child, "casual" conversation can reveal both language and cognitive competence in the form of drawing, writing, calculating, and spelling.

DIAGNOSTIC TESTING

1. Electroencephalography

Electroencephalography (EEG) is a noninvasive method for recording cerebral activity. The background patterns of the EEG vary by both age (infant, toddler, or adolescent) and clinical state (awake, drowsy, or asleep). Intermittent activity, such as slowing of the background, often reflects disordered central nervous system (CNS) function. The EEG has its greatest clinical applicability in the evaluation of seizure disorders. An EEG may demonstrate "epileptiform activity," that is, patterns that can indicate risk for seizures and epilepsy. At times, however, the findings on an EEG can be diagnostic, as in the hypsarrhythmia pattern seen in infantile spasms (West syndrome) or generalized 3-Hz spike-wave

Table 25–1. Neurologic examination: toddler age and up.

Category	Operation	Assesses
Mental status	Level of consciousness; orientation, language, developmental screen (age specific questions); activity level; affect.	Both cortical and subcortical pathways, executive functioning
Cranial nerves	CN I: Smell, Usually omitted except when history calls for testing CN II: Pupillary light reflex, visual acuity, visual fields, fundi CN III, IV, VI: Extraocular movements, pupillary responses, convergence, assessment for strabismus CN V: Facial sensation (upper, middle, lower; V_1, V_2, V_3); muscles of mastication—move jaw laterally, open, close against resistance. CN VII: Upper—eye closure, brow raise; lower—grimace, show teeth. CN VIII: Whispered voice from 10–20 ft each ear. Rinne and Weber tests. CN IX, X: Movement of palate (gagging—often omitted). CN XI: Head turn laterally and flexion against resistance. CN XII: Tongue protrusion and strength (against cheek or examiner's gloved hand)	
Motor	Tone: trunk and head control (infant); manipulation of relaxed limbs; axial slippage while holding under arms. Strength: proximal/distal—shoulder abduction/grasp; get up from floor (hips); dorsiflexion of foot; multiple others (Grading: 0 = no movement; 1 = trace movement, 2 = movement in lateral plane but not against gravity, 3 = against gravity, 4 = Some resistance with mild weakness, 5 = normal strength)	Brain: "suprasegmental" influence, cortical motor control. Corticospinal tracts Cord: lower motor neuron-"segmental" component
Reflexes	Tendon Stretch reflexes: biceps, triceps, brachioradialis, patella, Achilles. Cutaneous sensory reflexes: abdominal, cremasteric.	Pyramidal tract Spinal cord: sensory/motor nerve arc
Station	Assess casual stance for excessive wide base, Assess for balance maintenance with eyes open and closed. Romberg test: truncal balance and recovery	Cerebellum (vermis), spinocerebellar tracts Posterior columns (proprioception)
Gait	Walking, running, walking on heels/toes, tandem gait (forward, backward). Balance on each foot unilaterally	Cerebellum (vermis), spinocerebellar tracts, others
Coordination (truncal, limb)	Balance on each foot; hopping; finger to nose movements; smooth eye pursuits; Stacking blocks; Reaching for objects; Rapid alternating movements	Cerebellum (lateral lobes and vermis)
Sensory	Light touch, pinprick, vibration (using tuning fork), position. Cortical: 2 point discrimination, finger writing, object identification, position of limb in space, barognosis (weight).	Peripheral nerve Posterior column Anterior/lateral column Parietal lobe

activity seen in childhood absence epilepsy. Synchronized video recording with EEG has increased the utility of EEG in assessing episodic disorders that may or may not represent seizures. EEG also can be very useful in the evaluation of altered mental status and in some encephalopathies.

The EEG is rarely diagnostic in isolation, but is rather only one part of the child's clinical picture. Routine EEG, obtained in the outpatient setting, is usually brief (< 30 minutes). Therefore, events of interest are usually not recorded. If the child is unable to cooperate, it may be impossible to obtain a study, or the study may be uninterruptable due to artifact from movement, crying, etc. Medications used for sedation of an uncooperative child, especially barbiturates and benzodiazepines, may produce artifact or iatrogenic changes in the EEG, which can confuse interpretation and may decrease the likelihood of recording abnormalities such as epileptiform discharges. In addition, children without a history of epilepsy may, in fact, have an abnormal EEG. EEG findings such as those occasionally seen in migraine, learning disabilities, or behavior disorders are often nonspecific and do not reflect structural brain damage or dysfunction. When questions arise regarding the clinical significance of EEG findings, consultation with a pediatric neurologist is appropriate.

Due to more prolonged duration, ambulatory EEG obtained over 24–72 hours can be useful in capturing and assessing events to ascertain if they are due to epileptic seizures. Likewise, recording the EEG during nocturnal polysomnograms can help differentiate between nonepileptic sleep-related events from nocturnal epileptic seizures.

Prolonged or continuous inpatient EEG recordings are useful in the assessment of patients with altered mental status, suspected nonconvulsive status epilepticus, and drug-induced coma, as well as infants with hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy. The EEG is less commonly helpful in determining electrocerebral silence (brain death).

A continuous video-EEG recording, obtained in conjunction with inpatient admission to an Epilepsy Monitoring Unit (EMU), allows assessment of the patient with medically intractable epilepsy. The children are admitted to a specialized inpatient unit for up to a week or more, sometimes with reduction or discontinuation of medication, increasing the likelihood of recording an event. Localization of the seizure focus by EEG recording during seizures can indicate candidacy of surgical resection or other surgical procedures for patients who have failed medical therapy. Correlating video with EEG has also proven useful in characterizing spells that may or may not be seizures.

2. Evoked Potentials

Visual-, auditory-, or somatosensory-evoked potentials (evoked responses) can be obtained by repetitive stimulation of the retina by light flashes, the cochlea by sounds, or a nerve by galvanic stimuli. These stimuli result in cortical responses recorded from the scalp surface. The presence or absence of evoked potential waves and their latencies from the time of the stimuli can be useful in some specific situations, such as the use of visual-evoked potentials (VEP) in patients with optic neuritis, multiple sclerosis, or other demyelinating diseases, as well as somatosensory-evoked potentials (SSEP) in the monitoring of patients during spinal surgery for rapid identification of potentially reversible spinal cord injury. Similar techniques are used in other surgeries when there is risk of nerve injury such as craniofacial surgeries. However, evoked potentials are not routinely obtained for evaluation of neurologic disorders. One important exception is the use of brainstem auditory-evoked responses (BAER), which are now considered standard for screening hearing in neonates.

3. Lumbar Puncture

Assessing cerebral spinal fluid is a necessity in some clinical situations. Spinal fluid is usually obtained by inserting a small-gauge needle (eg, No. 22) through the L3–L4 intervertebral space into the thecal sac while the patient is lying in a lateral recumbent position. Radiographic guidance and sedation may be necessary in some patients. After an opening pressure is measured, fluid is removed to examine for evidence of infection, inflammation, or metabolic disorders (Table 25–2). Fluid is often sent for blood cell counts for determination of protein and glucose concentrations and for viral and bacterial studies. In some cases, special staining techniques can be used for mycobacterial and fungal infections, and further testing can be performed for specific viral agents, antibody titer determinations, cytopathologic studies, lactate and pyruvate concentrations, amino acid levels, and neurotransmitter analysis. Lumbar puncture is imperative when bacterial meningitis is suspected. Caution must be exercised, however, when signs of increased intracranial pressure (eg, papilledema) or focal neurologic signs are present that might indicate a substantial risk of precipitating tentorial or tonsillar herniation.

4. Genetic/Metabolic Testing

The diagnostic yield of genetic and metabolic evaluation of children with global developmental delay or intellectual disability (GDD/ID) depends on the specific testing done. Chromosomal Microarray testing is diagnostic in almost 8% of children with GDD/ID and in other appropriate clinical situations; tests for metabolic disorders have a yield of up to 5%. Thus, focused assessments for genetic disorders should be part of the evaluation of the child with GDD/ID.

5. Electromyography & Nerve Conduction Velocity Testing

Electromyography (EMG) and nerve conduction velocity testing (NCV) are used for assessment of multiple neuromuscular disorders, including spinal muscular atrophy, Guillain-Barre syndrome, defects in neuromuscular transmission such as myasthenia gravis and infantile botulism, myopathies, acquired and hereditary neuropathies, leukodystrophies, and disorders associated with central as well as peripheral demyelination.

NCV is performed by introducing a small current into peripheral nerves and calculating the conduction velocity of the stimulus. EMG records spontaneous and volitional electrical activity of skeletal muscle tissue. It requires placement of needles into selected muscles. For more details, refer to section within this chapter entitled “Disorders of Childhood Affecting Muscles.”

PEDIATRIC NEURORADIOLOGIC PROCEDURES

1. Computed Tomography

CT scanning is a noninvasive technique, which allows visualization of intracranial contents by obtaining a series of cross-sectional roentgenograms. Current scanning techniques allow rapid acquisition of data, often without sedation. CT scanning is of high sensitivity (88%–96% of lesions larger than 1–2 cm can be seen) but low specificity (tumor, infection, or infarct may look the same). It is particularly useful for assessment of head trauma, allowing excellent visualization of intracranial blood. It allows visualization of the ventricular system to assess hydrocephalus. It is useful in determining presence of intracranial calcifications such as

those associated with intrauterine infections, tubers in patients with tuberous sclerosis complex, etc. Intravenous injection of iodized contrast media may be helpful in some situations but is not routinely used for the purposes of neuroimaging. CT angiography (CTA) is possible using contrast and specialized techniques to visualize vascular anatomy and can replace catheter angiography in evaluation of stroke. When ordering CT scan of the head as well as repeated CT scans, consider radiation exposure. A single CT scan of the head is approximately 2 millisieverts (mSv; typical chest x-ray PA view = 0.02 mSv).

2. Magnetic Resonance Imaging

MRI is a noninvasive technique that provides high-resolution images of soft tissues. The technique is based on detecting the response (resonance) of hydrogen protons to electromagnetic radiation. The strength of MRI signals varies with the relationship of water to protein and lipid in tissue. MRI can provide information about the histological, physiological, and biochemical status of tissues as well as gross anatomic features. Sedation usually is necessary for MRI scans in children who are unable to lie still for 45 minutes to avoid any movement artifact.

MRI is used to assess a wide variety of neurologic disorders such as tumors, edema, ischemic and hemorrhagic lesions, vascular disorders, inflammation, demyelination, CNS infection, metabolic disorders, and degenerative processes. Because bone does not produce artifact in the images, the posterior fossa contents can be studied far better with MRI than with CT scans allowing imaging of the brainstem, blood vessels, and cranial nerves. The lack of radiation exposure is an advantage over CT.

Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) or venography (MRV) is used to visualize large extra- and intracranial blood vessels, though they are not as sensitive as conventional angiography. Perfusion-weighted imaging and diffusion-weighted imaging (DWI) (measuring random motion of water molecules) are used to evaluate brain ischemic penumbra and cytotoxic edema in acute stroke as well as toxic and metabolic brain disorders.

MR spectroscopy (MRS) assesses biochemical changes in CNS tissue, measuring signals of increased cellular activity and oxidative metabolism. For example, MRS can be used to identify brain tumors.

Newer applications of MRI allow for functional assessment of the CNS. Functional MRI (fMRI) is used to localize various brain functions such as language and motor activity by assessing blood oxygenation changes in an area of interest during language or motor tasks. The axonal tracts of neurologic pathways, such as the optic radiations or motor system, can be identified using diffusion tensor imaging (DTI). These techniques generally require a team involving a neuropsychologist and radiologist to derive specific paradigms for testing and evaluation of imaging, as well as a cooperative patient.

3. Positron Emission Tomography

Positron emission tomography (PET) is a nuclear medicine imaging technique that uses radiolabeled substrates such as intravenously administered fluorodeoxyglucose to measure the metabolic rate at given sites within the brain, producing three-dimensional reconstructions for localization of CNS function. These scans may be co-registered with a traditional CT scan or MRI, allowing more precise localization of functional processes. It is proving to be very useful in preoperative evaluation for epilepsy surgery. PET is most often performed in the interictal state. The information from PET scans complement EEG, single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT), and MRI findings to aid in defining the epileptogenic zone ("focus") of a patient's seizures. PET co-registered with CT scans or MRI scans is used for assessing systemic tumors and is becoming increasingly available for use in evaluation of the CNS.

4. Single-Photon Emission Computerized Tomography

An application of nuclear medicine imaging, SPECT scans image cerebral blood flow using a radioactive tracer (typically technetium-99m) to produce multiple cuts similar to those obtained in CT scans. This allows virtual three-dimensional visualization of vascular blood flow. It is useful in assessment of patients for epilepsy surgery, aiding in identification of increased blood flow in a seizure focus during a seizure. In children with brain tumors, SPECT can help in differentiating tumor recurrence from post-treatment changes, assessing the response to treatment, directing biopsy, and planning therapy. Regional cerebral blood flow can be assessed in children with strokes due to vascular stenosis and moyamoya syndrome.

5. Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography (US) offers a pictorial display of the varying densities of tissues in a given anatomic region by recording the echoes of ultrasonic waves reflected from it. US allows assessment of brain structures quickly with easily portable equipment, without ionizing radiation, and at about one-fourth the cost of CT scanning. Sedation is usually not necessary, and the procedure can be repeated as often as needed without risk to the patient. Ultrasonography has been used for in-utero diagnosis of hydrocephalus and other anomalies. In neonates, the thin skull and the open anterior fontanel have facilitated imaging of the brain, and ultrasonography is used to screen and follow infants at risk for intracranial hemorrhage. Other uses in neonates include detection of hydrocephalus, periventricular ischemic lesions,

major brain and spine malformations, and calcifications. Once the fontanels start to close, this modality is no longer useful due to inability to penetrate bone.

6. Cerebral Angiography

Arteriography remains useful in the diagnosis of cerebrovascular disorders, particularly ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke, as well as potentially operable vascular malformations. In some brain tumors, arteriography may be used to define the nature of tumors and for surgical planning. Since cerebral angiography uses traditional x-ray to produce images, there is significant exposure to ionizing radiation.

7. Myelography

Radiographic examination of the spine may be indicated in cases of spinal cord tumors, myelitis, or various forms of spinal dysraphism and in the rare instance of herniated disks in children. MRI has largely replaced sonography, CT, and myelography for examination of the spinal cord.

Cakir B et al: Inborn errors of metabolisms presenting in childhood. J Neuroimaging 2011;21(2)e117–e133 [PMID: 21435076].

Dahmoush HM, Vossough A, Roberts TP: Pediatric high-field magnetic resonance imaging. Neuroimaging Clin N Am 2012;22:297–313 [PMID: 22548934].

Michelson DJ, Shevell MI, Sherr EH, Moeschler JB, Gropman AL, Ashwal S: Evidence report: genetic and metabolic testing on children with global developmental delay: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. Neurology 2011 Oct 25;77(17):1629–1635 [PMID: 21956720].

Nigrovic LE, Malley R, Kuppermann N: Meta-analysis of bacterial meningitis score validation studies. Arch Dis Child 2012;97:799–805 [PMID: 22764093].

Pitt MC: Nerve conduction studies and needle EMG in very small children. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 2012;16:285–291 [PMID: 21840229].

Yock-Corrales A, Barnett P: The role of imaging studies for evaluation of stroke in children. Pediatr Emerg Care 2011;27: 966–974 [PMID: 21975501].

DISORDERS AFFECTING THE NERVOUS SYSTEM IN INFANTS & CHILDREN

ALTERED STATES OF CONSCIOUSNESS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

» Reduction or alteration in cognitive and affective mental functioning and in arousability or attentiveness.

» Acute onset.

» Pathogenesis

The neurologic substrate for consciousness is the ascending reticular activating system in the brainstem, which extends the thalamus and paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus. Large lesions of the cortex, especially bilateral lesions, can also cause coma.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Many terms, including obtundation, lethargy, somnolence, stupor, light coma, and deep coma, are used to describe the continuum from fully alert and aware to complete unresponsiveness. Several scales have been used to grade the depth of unconsciousness (Table 25–3). The commonly used Glasgow Coma Scale is summarized in Table 12–5. Physicians should use one of these scales and provide further descriptions in case

Table 25–3. Gradation of coma.

	Deep Coma		Light Coma		
	Grade 4	Grade 3	Grade 2	Grade 1	Stupor
Response to pain	0	+	Avoidance	Avoidance	Arousal unsustained
Tone/posture	Flaccid	Decerebrate	Variable	Variable	Normal
Tendon reflexes	0	+/–	+	+	+
Pupil response	0	+	+	+	+
Response to verbal stimuli	0	0	0	0	+
Other corneal reflex	0	+	+	+	+
Gag reflex	0	+	+	+	+

narratives (such as, "opens eyes with painful stimulus, but does not respond to voice"). These descriptions help subsequent observers quantify unconsciousness and evaluate changes in the patient's condition.

- Persistent vegetative state denotes a chronic condition in which there is preservation of the sleep-wake cycle but no awareness of self or the environment and no recovery of mental function. Sleep-wake cycles are present.
- Minimally conscious state denotes patients that do not meet criteria for persistent vegetative state. These patients occasionally may have purposeful movements.
- Brain death refers to patients in coma without brainstem reflexes or spontaneous respirations.

» Differential Diagnosis

Conditions mistaken for coma:

- Locked-in syndrome describes patients who are conscious but have no access to motor or verbal expression because of massive loss of motor function of the pontine portion of the brainstem. Vertical eye movements may be preserved.
- Akinetic-mutism: Patient is aware, but does not initiate movement or follow commands. Caused by lesions of the frontal lobes.
- Catatonia refers to patients with psychiatric illness. Patients retain ability to maintain trunk and limb postures.

B. Laboratory and Imaging Diagnostics

If the cause of the coma is not obvious, emergency laboratory tests must be obtained. Table 25–4 lists some of the causes of coma in children. Most comas (90%) in children have a medical (vs structural) cause. Infection is a common cause (30%). An immediate blood glucose, complete blood count, urine obtained by catheterization if necessary, pH and electrolytes (including bicarbonate), serum urea nitrogen, and aspartate aminotransferase and ammonia are initial screens. Urine, blood, and even gastric contents must be saved for toxin screen if the underlying cause is not obvious. Blood culture and lumbar puncture often are necessary to rule out CNS infection. However, papilledema is a relative contraindication to lumbar puncture prior to imaging. Often, a blood culture is obtained, antibiotics started, and imaging study of the brain done prior to a diagnostic lumbar puncture. If meningitis is suspected and a lumbar puncture is delayed or believed to be hazardous, antimicrobials should be started and the diagnostic lumbar puncture done later. Tests that are helpful in obscure cases of coma include oxygen and carbon dioxide partial pressures, serum and urine osmolality, porphyrins, lead levels, general toxicology screen, serum amino acids, and urine organic acids. Hashimoto encephalopathy is a controversial, yet potentially treatable consideration. A formal metabolic consultation is also useful in this setting.

If severe head trauma or increased pressure is suspected, an emergency CT scan or MRI is necessary. CT is usually helpful as an initial screening examination in severe head trauma, but MRI is more sensitive in finding anoxic brain injury early in the course. Bone windows on the CT study or skull radiographs can be done at the same sitting. The absence of skull fracture does not rule out coma caused by closed head trauma. Injury that results from shaking a child is one example. Treatment of head injury associated with coma is discussed in detail in Chapter 12.

Rarely, an emergency EEG aids in diagnosing the cause of coma. Nonconvulsive status epilepticus or a focal finding, as seen with herpes encephalitis (periodic lateralized epileptiform discharges), and focal slowing, as seen with stroke or cerebritis, are cases in which the EEG might be helpful. The EEG also may correlate with the stage of coma and add prognostic information. An EEG should be ordered if seizures are suspected. If obvious motor seizures have occurred, treatment for status epilepticus is given with intravenous drugs (see section Seizure Disorders [Epilepsies]).

» Treatment

A. Emergency Measures

The clinician must first stabilize the child using the ABCs of resuscitation. The airway must be kept open with positioning, or endotracheal intubation when necessary. Breathing and adequate air exchange can be assessed by auscultation. Hand-bag respiratory assistance with oxygen may be needed. Circulation must be ensured by assessing pulse and blood pressure. An intravenous line is always necessary. Fluids, plasma, blood, or even a dopamine drip (1–20 mcg/kg/min) may be required in cases of hypotension. Initial intravenous fluids should contain glucose until further assessment disproves hypoglycemia as a cause. An extremely hypothermic or febrile child may require vigorous warming or cooling. The assessment of vital signs may signal the diagnosis. Slow, insufficient respirations suggest poisoning by hypnotic drugs; apnea may indicate diphenoxylate hydrochloride poisoning. Rapid, deep respirations suggest acidosis, possibly metabolic, as with diabetic coma; toxin exposure, such as that due to aspirin; or neurogenic causes, as in Reye syndrome. Hyperthermia may indicate infection or heat stroke; hypothermia may indicate cold exposure, ethanol poisoning, or hypoglycemia (especially in infancy).

The signs of impending brain herniation are another priority of the initial assessment. Bradycardia, high blood pressure, and irregular breathing are signs of severely increased intracranial pressure. Third nerve palsy (with the eye deviated down and out, and a "blown" pupil-unilateral pupillary dilation) is a sign of impending temporal lobe or brainstem herniation. These signs suggest a need for hyperventilation

Table 25–4. Some causes of coma in childhood.

Mechanism of Coma	Likely Cause	
	Newborn Infant	Older Child
Anoxia		
Asphyxia	Birth asphyxia, HIE Meconium aspiration, infection (especially respiratory syncytial virus)	Carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning
Respiratory obstruction	Hydrops fetalis	Croup, tracheitis, epiglottitis
Severe anemia		Hemolysis, blood loss
Ischemia		
Cardiac	Shunting lesions, hypoplastic left heart	Shunting lesions, aortic stenosis, myocarditis, blood loss, infection
Shock	Asphyxia, sepsis	
Head trauma (structural cause)	Birth contusion, hemorrhage, nonaccidental trauma (NAT)	Falls, auto accidents, athletic injuries
Infection (most common cause in childhood)	Gram-negative meningitis, enterovirus, herpes encephalitis, sepsis	Bacterial meningitis, viral encephalitis, postinfectious encephalitis, sepsis, typhoid, malaria
Vascular (CVA or stroke, often of unknown cause)	Intraventricular hemorrhage, sinus thrombosis	Arterial or venous occlusion with congenital heart disease, head or neck trauma
Neoplasm (structural cause)	Rare this age. Choroid plexus papilloma with severe hydrocephalus	Brainstem glioma, increased pressure with posterior fossa tumors
Drugs (toxidrome)	Maternal sedatives; injected pudendal and paracervical analgesics	Overdose, salicylates, lithium, sedatives, psychotropic agents
Epilepsy	Constant minor motor seizures; electrical seizure without motor manifestations	Nonconvulsive or, absence status, postictal state; drugs given to stop seizures
Toxins (toxidrome)	Maternal sedatives or injections	Arsenic, alcohol, CO, pesticides, mushroom, lead
Hypoglycemia	Birth injury, diabetic progeny, toxemic progeny	Diabetes, "prediabetes," hypoglycemic agents
Increased intracranial pressure (metabolic or structural cause)	Anoxic brain damage, hydrocephalus, metabolic disorders (urea cycle; amino or organic acidurias)	Toxic encephalopathy, Reye syndrome, head trauma, tumor of posterior fossa
Hepatic causes	Hepatic failure, inborn metabolic errors in bilirubin conjugation	Hepatic failure, inborn errors of metabolism
Renal causes, hypertensive encephalopathy	Hypoplastic kidneys	Nephritis, acute (AGN) and chronic; uremia, uremic syndrome
Hypothermia, hyperthermia	Iatrogenic (head cooling)	Cold weather exposure, drowning; heat stroke
Hypercapnia	Congenital lung anomalies, bronchopulmonary dysplasia	Cystic fibrosis (hypercapnia, anoxia)
Electrolyte changes		
Hyper- or hyponatremia	Iatrogenic ($NaHCO_3$ use), salt poisoning (formula errors)	Diarrhea, dehydration
Hyper- or hypocalcemia	SIADH, adrenogenital syndrome, dialysis (iatrogenic)	Lactic acidosis
Severe acidosis, lactic acidosis	Epticemia, metabolic errors, adrenogenital syndrome	Infection, diabetic coma, poisoning (eg, aspirin), hyperglycemic nonketotic coma

AGN, acute glomerulonephritis; SIADH, syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion.
Modified, with permission, from Lewis J, Moe PG: The unconscious child. In: Conn H, Conn R (eds). Current Diagnosis. 5th ed. WB Saunders; 1977.

to reduce cerebral edema, consideration of mannitol, prompt neurosurgical consultation, and head CT. If brainstem herniation or increased pressure is possible, intracranial monitoring may be necessary. Initial treatment of impending herniation includes keeping the patient's head up (15–30 degrees) and providing moderate hyperventilation. The use of mannitol, diuretics, barbiturates, hypothermia, and drainage of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) are more heroic measures covered in detail in Chapter 14.

A history obtained from parents, witnesses, or ambulance personnel is important. Information such as whether the child is known to have a chronic illness, such as diabetes,

hemophilia, epilepsy, or cystic fibrosis can guide diagnosis and management. Recent acute illness raises the possibility of coma caused by viral or bacterial meningitis. Trauma is a common cause of coma. Lack of a history of trauma, especially in infants, does not rule it out. Abusive head trauma or an unwitnessed fall may have occurred. In coma of unknown cause, poisoning is always a possibility, especially in toddlers. Absence of a history of ingestion of a toxic substance or of medication in the home does not rule out poisoning as a cause.

Often the history is obtained concurrently with a brief pediatric and neurologic screening examination. After the assessment of vital signs, the general examination proceeds with a trauma assessment. Palpation of the head and fontanel, inspection of the ears for infection or hemorrhage, and a careful examination for neck stiffness are indicated. If circumstances suggest head or neck trauma, the head and neck must be immobilized so that any fracture or dislocation will not be aggravated. The skin must be inspected for petechiae or purpura that might suggest bacteremia, infection, bleeding disorder, or traumatic bruising. Examination of the chest, abdomen, and limbs is important to exclude enclosed hemorrhage or traumatic fractures.

Neurologic examination quantifies the stimulus response and depth of coma, such as responsiveness to verbal or painful stimuli. Are the eye movements spontaneous, or is it necessary to do the doll's eye maneuver (rotating the head rapidly to see whether the eyes follow in a patient without neck trauma)? Motor and sensory examinations assess reflex asymmetries, Babinski sign, and evidence of spontaneous posturing or posturing induced by noxious stimuli (eg, decorticate or decerebrate posturing).

B. General Measures

Vital signs must be monitored and maintained. The patient's response to vocal or painful stimuli and orientation to time, place, and situation are monitored. Posture and movements of the limbs, either spontaneously or in response to pain, are serially noted. Pupillary size, equality, and reaction to light, and movement of the eyes to the doll's eye maneuver or ice water caloric tests should be recorded (in patients without spine injury). Intravenous fluids can be tailored to the situation, as for treatment of acidosis, shock, or hypovolemia. Nasogastric suction is initially important. The bladder should be catheterized for monitoring urine output and for urinalysis.

» Prognosis

About 50% of children with nontraumatic causes of coma have a good outcome. In studies of adults assessed on admission or within the first days after the onset of coma, an analysis of multiple variables was most helpful in assessing prognosis. Abnormal neuro-ophthalmologic signs (eg, the absence of pupillary reaction or of eye movement in response to the doll's eye maneuver or ice water caloric testing and the absence of corneal responses) were unfavorable. Delay in the return of motor responses, tone, or eye opening was also unfavorable. In children, the assessment done on admission is about as predictive as one done in the succeeding days. Approximately two-thirds of outcomes can be successfully predicted at an early stage on the basis of coma severity, extraocular movements, pupillary reactions, motor patterns, blood pressure, temperature, and seizure type. In patients with severe head trauma, a Glasgow Coma Scale ≤ 5, hypothermia, hyperglycemia, and coagulation disorders are factors associated with an increased risk of mortality. Other characteristics such as the need for assisted respiration, the presence of increased intracranial pressure, and the duration of coma are not significantly predictive. Published reports suggest that an anoxic (in contrast to traumatic, metabolic, or toxic) coma, such as that caused by near drowning, has a much poorer outlook.

Alkhoury F, Kyriakides TC: Intracranial pressure monitoring in children with severe traumatic brain injury. JAMA Surg 2014 Apr 30; doi: 10.1001/jamasurg.2013.4329 [PMID: 24789426].

Kirkham FJ, Ashwal S: Coma and brain death. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;111:43–61 [PMID: 23622150].

MacNeill EC, Vashist S: Approach to syncope and altered mental status. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60(5):1083–1106 [PMID: 24093897].

Nakagawa TA et al: Clinical report—Guidelines for the determination of brain death in infants and children: an update of the 1987 task force recommendations. Pediatrics 2011;128(3):e720–e740 [PMID: 21873704].

SEIZURE DISORDERS (EPILEPSIES)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Recurrent unprovoked seizures or a single seizure with an EEG or risk factors suggesting high risk for recurrent events.
- Often, interictal electroencephalographic changes.

» General Considerations

A seizure is a sudden, transient disturbance of brain function, manifested by involuntary motor, sensory, autonomic, or psychic phenomena, alone or in any combination, often accompanied by alteration or loss of consciousness. Seizures can be caused by any factor that disturbs brain function. They may occur after a metabolic, traumatic, anoxic, or infectious insult to the brain (classified as symptomatic seizures), or spontaneously without prior known CNS insult. Genetic mutations are increasingly identified in many patients without prior known cause of seizures.

Epilepsy is defined as two seizures that are separated by at least 24 hours, a single seizure associated with a greater than 60% risk of recurrence or the diagnosis of an epilepsy syndrome. During childhood, the incidence is highest in the newborn period. Prevalence flattens out after age 10–15 years. The chance of having a second seizure after an initial unprovoked episode in a child is about 50%. The risk of recurrence after a second unprovoked seizure is 85%. Sixty-five to seventy percent of children with epilepsy will achieve seizure remission with appropriate medication.

» Classification

The International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE) has established classifications of seizures and epilepsy syndromes. Seizures are classified as either focal, previously called partial (with suspected seizure onset that can be localized to one part of the brain), or generalized (likely involving the whole brain or a network of the brain).

There are several types of generalized seizures that are recognized with the new classification: generalized tonic-clonic, absence (typical, atypical, and with special features), myoclonic, myoclonic atonic, tonic, clonic, and atonic seizures. New nomenclature is suggested for focal seizures that is based on the presentation of the seizure rather than based on the loss of awareness, which can be difficult to assess with some seizures. The description of the seizure is most beneficial with suggested terms such as "without impairment of consciousness," "with motor involvement," or "hypomotor" seizure. This will allow better description and thus better classification of seizures.

Epilepsy syndromes are defined by the nature of the seizures typically present, age of onset, EEG findings, and other clinical factors. New terminology has been developed for epilepsy syndromes to reflect our growing understanding of underlying etiology. The current recommended terms are "genetic," to indicate a known or presumed genetic etiology; "structural/metabolic," to indicate a known structural or metabolic etiology to an epilepsy syndrome (an example would be tuberous sclerosis or underlying stroke); and lastly "unknown," for those patients for whom a cause has not yet been identified.

1. Seizures & Epilepsy in Childhood

Characterizing the seizure and subsequent epilepsy syndrome is necessary for accurate diagnosis, which will determine the nature of further evaluation and treatment. This also assists with prognostication (Tables 25–5) and research of specific syndromes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Seizures are stereotyped paroxysmal clinical events; the key to diagnosis is usually in the history. Not all paroxysmal events are epileptic. A detailed description of seizure onset is important in determining if an event is a seizure and if there is localized onset (partial or focal seizure). Events prior to, during, and after the seizure need to be ascertained. Although observers often initially recall little except generalized convulsive activity because of its dramatic appearance, careful detailed questions can lead to a better description of the event and situation in which it occurred. An aura may precede the clinically apparent seizure and indicates focal onset. The patient may describe a feeling of fear, numbness or tingling in the fingers, or bright lights in one visual field. The specific symptoms may help define the location of seizure onset (eg, déjà vu suggests temporal lobe onset). Often, the child does not recall or cannot define the aura, though the family may note alterations in behavior at the onset. Videotapes of events have been extremely useful.

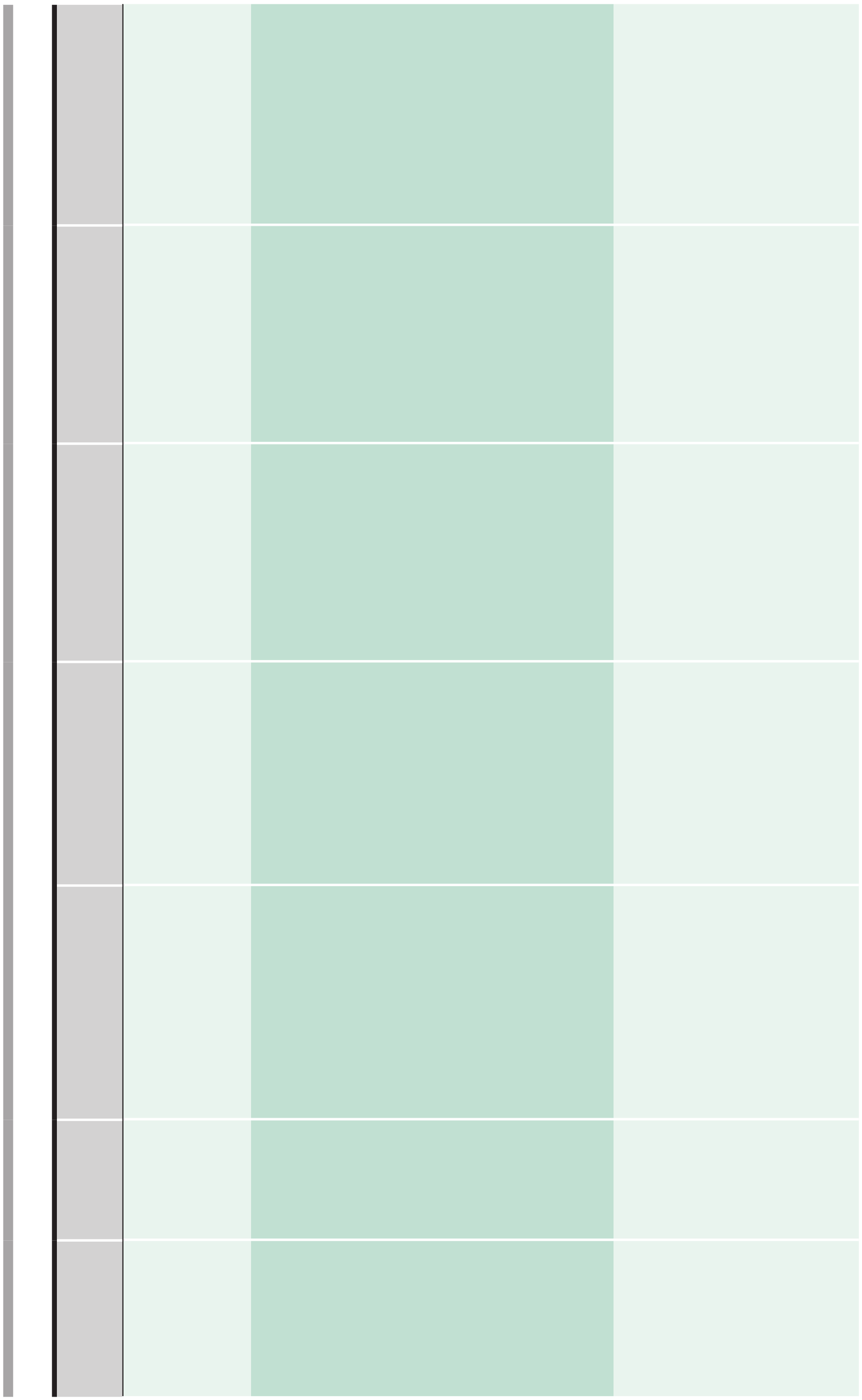
Postictal states can be helpful in diagnosis. After many focal seizures and most generalized convulsive seizures, postictal sleep typically occurs. Postictal changes are not seen after generalized absence seizures. Was there loss of speech after the seizure (suggesting left hemisphere involvement) or was the patient able to respond and speak in short order? The parent may report lateralized motor activity (eg, the child's eyes may deviate to one side or the child may experience dystonic posturing of a limb). Motor activity without impaired awareness supports the diagnosis of focal seizures as do impaired awareness and automatisms previously defined as a "complex partial seizure."

In contrast, generalized seizures usually manifest with acute loss of consciousness, usually with generalized motor activity. Tonic posturing, tonic-clonic activity, or myoclonus (spasms) may occur. In children with generalized absence seizures, behavioral arrest may be associated with automatisms such as blinking, chewing, or hand movements, making it difficult to differentiate between absence seizures and focal seizures.

Frequently, the child presenting with a presumed first seizure has experienced unrecognized seizures before the event that brings the child to medical attention. In particular, focal and absence seizures may not be recognized except in retrospect. Thus, careful questioning regarding prior events is important in the child being evaluated for new onset of seizures. Events that are perceived as seizures but are not epileptic, such as syncopal events, can also be determined by careful questioning.

B. Diagnostic Evaluation

Many factors determine the extent and urgency of the diagnostic evaluation, such as the child's age, the severity and type of seizure, whether the child is ill or injured, and the clinician's suspicion about the underlying cause. Seizures in early infancy often have an underlying cause that is structural, genetic, or metabolic and will guide prognosis and



management. Therefore, the younger the child, the more extensive must be the diagnostic assessment.

It is generally accepted that every child with new onset of unprovoked seizures should be evaluated with an EEG and MRI, although this need not be done emergently. An EEG is very unlikely to yield clinically useful information in the child with a febrile seizure. Other diagnostic studies should be used selectively.

Metabolic abnormalities are seldom found in the well child with seizures. Unless there is a high clinical suspicion of serious medical conditions (eg, uremia, hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, etc), "routine" laboratory tests rarely yield clinically significant information. Special studies may be necessary in circumstances that suggest an acute systemic etiology for a seizure, for example, in the presence of apparent renal failure, sepsis, or substance abuse. Emergent imaging of the brain is usually not necessary in the absence evidence of trauma or of acute abnormalities on examination.

C. Electroencephalography

Appropriate use of EEG requires awareness of its limitations as well as its utility. The limitations of EEG even with epilepsy, for which it is most useful, are considerable. A routine EEG captures electrical activity during a very short period of time, usually 20–30 minutes. Thus, it is useful primarily for defining interictal activity (except for the fortuitous recording of a clinical seizure or in situations when seizures are easily provoked such as childhood absence epilepsy). A seizure is a clinical phenomenon; an EEG showing epileptiform activity may confirm and clarify the clinical diagnosis (for instance, defining an epilepsy syndrome), but it is only occasionally diagnostic (see EEG under diagnostic section on page 735)

» Differential Diagnosis

It is extremely important to be accurate in the diagnosis of epilepsy and not to make the diagnosis without ample proof. To the layperson, epilepsy often has connotations of brain damage and limitation of activity. A person so diagnosed may be excluded from certain occupations in later life. It is often very difficult to change an inaccurate diagnosis of many years' standing.

Misinterpretation of behaviors in children is the most common reason for misdiagnosis. Psychogenic nonepileptic events are much less common in children than in adults but must be considered even in the young or cognitively impaired child. The most commonly misinterpreted behaviors are inattention in school-aged children with attention disorders, stereotypies in children with autistic spectrum disorder, sleep-related movements, habit movements such as head-banging and so-called infantile masturbation (sometimes referred to as gratification movements), and gastroesophageal reflux in very young (often impaired) infants. Some of the common nonepileptic events that mimic seizure disorder are listed in Table 25–6.

» Complications & Sequelae

A. Psychosocial Impact

Emotional disturbances, especially depression but also anxiety, anger, and feelings of guilt and inadequacy, often occur in the patient as well as the parents of a child with epilepsy. Actual or perceived stigmas as well as issues regarding "disclosure" are common. There is an increased risk of suicide in people with epilepsy. Schools often limit activities of children with epilepsy inappropriately and stigmatize children by these limitations.

Epilepsy with onset in childhood has an impact on adult function. Adults with early onset of epilepsy, even when well controlled, are less likely to complete high school, have less adequate employment, and are less likely to marry. Persistent epilepsy results in significant dependence; even when epilepsy is successfully treated, patients with long-standing epilepsy often do not become independent due to driving restrictions and safety concerns.

B. Cognitive Delay

Children living with epilepsy, particularly with untreated or poorly controlled seizures, can develop reduced cognition and memory. Clearly, epileptic encephalopathy (ie, regression in cognitive ability and development associated with uncontrolled seizures) does occur, particularly in young children with catastrophic epilepsies such as infantile spasms (West syndrome), Dravet syndrome, and Lennox-Gastaut syndrome. The impact of persistent partial seizures on development is less clear, although persistent temporal lobe seizures in adults are associated with cognitive dysfunction. It is not likely that interictal epileptiform activity contributes to cognitive impairment in older children, although increased epileptiform burden has been demonstrated to cause mild cognitive problems in some disorders previously thought to be benign, such as benign epilepsy with central temporal spikes (BECTS). Continuous epileptiform activity in sleep is associated with Landau-Kleffner syndrome (acquired epileptic aphasia) and the syndrome of electroencephalographic status epilepticus in sleep (ESES), both of which are associated with cognitive decline.

Pseudodementia may occur in children with poorly controlled epilepsy because their seizures interfere with their learning. Depression is a common cause of impaired cognitive function in children with epilepsy. Anticonvulsants are less likely to cause such interference at usual therapeutic doses, although phenobarbital, topiramate, and zonisamide may produce cognitive impairment, which is reversible on discontinuing the medication. Psychosis can also occur after seizures or as a side effect of medications.

Table 25–6. Nonepileptic paroxysmal events.

Breath-holding attacks (cyanotic and pallid) (see below)

Cyanotic: Age 6 mo–3 y. Always precipitated by trauma and fright. Cyanosis; sometimes stiffening, tonic (or jerking-clonic) convulsion (anoxic seizure). Patient may sleep following attack. Family history positive in 30%. Electroencephalogram (EEG) is not useful. No medication treatment is useful but interpretation and reassurance are very important.

Pallid: Usually, there is no apparent precipitant although fright may precipitate. Pallor may be followed by seizure (anoxic-ischemic). Vagally mediated (heart-slowing), like adult syncope. EEG is not useful.

Tics (Tourette syndrome)

Simple or complex stereotyped jerks or movements, coughs, grunts, sniffs. Worse at repose or with stress. May be suppressed during physician visit. Family history often positive for tics or for obsessive compulsive disorder. Diagnosis is clinical. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and EEG are negative. Medications may benefit.

Parasomnias (night terrors, sleep talking, walking, "sit-ups")

Ages 3–10 y. Usually occur in first sleep cycle (30–90 min after going to sleep), with crying, screaming, and autonomic discharge (pupils dilated, perspiring, etc). May last only a few minutes or be more prolonged. Child goes back to sleep and has no recall of event next day. Sleep studies (polysomnogram and EEG) are normal. Sleep talking and walking and short "sit-ups" in bed are fragmentary arousals. If a spell is recorded, EEG shows arousal from deep sleep, but behavior seems wakeful. Child needs to be protected from injury and gradually settled down and taken back to bed. Medications may be considered in rare instances.

Nightmares

Nightmares or vivid dreams occur in subsequent cycles of sleep, often in early morning hours, and generally are partially recalled the next day. The bizarre and frightening behavior may sometimes be confused with complex partial seizures but occurs during REM (rapid eye movement) sleep, whereas epilepsy usually does not. In extreme or difficult cases, an all-night sleep EEG may help differentiate seizures from nightmares. Frontal lobe epilepsy with sleep related "hypermotor" seizures should be considered.

Migraine

On occasion, migraine can be associated with an acute confusional state. Usual migraine prodrome of spots before the eyes, dizziness, visual field defects, followed by headache and then agitated confusion is present. History of other, more typical migraine with severe headache and vomiting but without confusion may aid in diagnosis. Severe headache with vomiting as child comes out of spell may aid in distinguishing the attack from epilepsy. However, partial seizures, while brief, may be associated with more prolonged postictal agitation and confusion. Other seizure manifestations are practically never seen (eg, tonic-clonic movements, falling, complete loss of consciousness). EEG in migraine is usually normal and seldom has epileptiform abnormalities often seen in patients with epilepsy. Migraine and epilepsy are sometimes linked: Benign occipital epilepsy may present with migraine-like visual aura and headache. There may be migraine-caused cortical ischemia which leads to later epilepsy. Postictal headache can be confused with migraine.

Benign nocturnal myoclonus

Common in infants and may last even up to school age. Focal or generalized jerks (the latter also called hypnic or sleep jerks) may persist from onset of sleep on and off all night. A video record for physician review can aid in diagnosis. EEG taken during jerks is normal, proving that these jerks are not epilepsy. Treatment is reassurance.

Shuddering

Shuddering or shivering attacks can occur in infancy and may be a forerunner of essential tremor in later life. Often, family history is positive for tremor. Shivering may be very frequent. EEG is normal. There is no clouding or loss of consciousness.

Gastroesophageal reflux (Sandifer syndrome)

Seen more commonly in children with cerebral palsy or brain damage; reflux of acid gastric contents may cause pain that cannot be described by child. Unusual posturing (dystonic or other) of head and neck or trunk may occur, an apparent attempt to stretch the esophagus or close the opening. There is no loss of consciousness, but eye rolling, apnea, and occasional vomiting may simulate a seizure. An upper gastrointestinal series, cine of swallowing, sometimes even an EEG (normal during episode) may be necessary to distinguish from seizures.

Infantile masturbation/gratification movements

Rarely in infants, repetitive rocking or rubbing motions may simulate seizures. Infant may look out of contact, be poorly responsive to environment, and have autonomic expressions (eg, perspiration, dilated pupils) that may be confused with seizures. Observation by a skilled individual, sometimes even in a hospital setting, may be necessary to distinguish from seizures. EEG is normal between and during attacks. Interpretation and reassurance are the only necessary treatment.

Conversion reaction/psychogenic nonepileptic seizures

Up to 50% of patients with nonepileptic seizures also have epilepsy. Episodes may involve writhing, pelvic thrusting, tonic movements, bizarre jerking and thrashing, or even apparently sudden unresponsiveness. Often, there is ongoing psychological trauma. Children may be developmentally delayed. Spells must often be seen or recorded with a videorecorder to distinguish from epilepsy but are sometimes so bizarre they are easily differentiated. A normal EEG during a spell is a key diagnostic feature. Sometimes, psychogenic seizures can be precipitated by suggestion with injection of normal saline in a controlled situation but this is generally felt to be ethically inappropriate since it involves lying to the patient regarding the reason for the procedure. Combativeness is common; self-injury and incontinence, rare.

Temper tantrums and rage attacks

Child often reports amnesia for events during spell. Attacks are usually precipitated by frustration or anger, often directed either verbally or physically, and subside with behavior modification and isolation. EEGs are generally normal but seldom obtained during an attack. It should be noted that directed violence is very uncommon following partial seizures but severe agitation can occur.

(Continued)

Table 25–6. Nonepileptic paroxysmal events. (Continued)

Benign paroxysmal vertigo Brief attacks of vertigo in which child often appears frightened and pale and clutches parent. Attacks last 5–30 s. Sometimes, nystagmus is identified. There is no loss of consciousness. Usually, child is well and returns to play immediately afterward. Attacks may occur in clusters, and then disappear for months. Attacks are usually seen in infants and preschoolers aged 2–5 y. EEG is normal. If caloric tests can be obtained (often very difficult in this age group), abnormalities with hypofunction of one side are sometimes seen. Medications are usually not desirable or necessary.	**Staring spells** Teachers often make referral for absence or "petit mal" seizures in children who stare or seem preoccupied at school. Helpful in the history is the lack of these spells at home (eg, before breakfast, a common time for absence seizures). Lack of other epilepsy in child or family history often is helpful. These children often have difficulties with school and cognitive or learning disabilities. Child can generally be brought out of spell by a firm command or touch. EEG is sometimes necessary to confirm that absence seizures are not occurring. A 24-h ambulatory EEG to record attacks during child's everyday school activities is occasionally necessary.

C. Injury and Death

Children with epilepsy are at far greater risk of injuries than the general pediatric population. Physical injuries, especially lacerations of the forehead and chin, are frequent in atonic or akinetic seizures (so-called drop attacks), necessitating protective headgear. In all other seizure disorders in childhood, injuries as a direct result of an attack are not as common, although drowning, injuries related to working in kitchens, and falls from heights remain potential risks for all children with active epilepsy. It is therefore extremely important to stress "seizure precautions," in particular water safety. Showers are recommended over bathing as they decrease the likelihood of drowning. Appropriate supervision is recommended.

The greatest fear of a parent of a child with new-onset of epilepsy is the possibility of death or brain injury. There is an increased risk of premature death in children with epilepsy, especially those who have not achieved seizure control. Most of the mortality in children with epilepsy is related to the underlying neurologic disorder, not the seizures. Sudden unexpected death with epilepsy (SUDEP) is a rare event in children. Although children with epilepsy have an increased risk of death, SUDEP occurs in only 1–2:10,000 patient-years. The greatest risk for SUDEP is in children with medically uncontrolled epilepsy. The etiology of SUDEP is not yet known and there is no current proven strategy to prevent SUDEP other than seizure control. Identifying life-threatening disorders (eg, identifying patients with cardiac arrhythmias, especially prolonged QT syndrome) as the cause of misdiagnosed epilepsy is clearly of utmost importance. While SUDEP is rare, increased mortality in children with epilepsy should be mentioned when counseling families.

» Treatment

The ideal treatment of acute seizures is the correction of specific causes. However, even when a biochemical disorder, a tumor, meningitis, or another specific cause is being treated, anti-seizure drugs are often still required.

A. First Aid

Caregivers should be instructed to protect the patient against self-injury. Turning the child to the side is useful for preventing aspiration. Placing any objects in the mouth of a convulsing patient or trying to restrain tonic-clonic movements may cause worse injuries than a bitten tongue or bruised limb and could potentially become a choking hazard. Parents are often concerned that cyanosis will occur during generalized convulsive seizures, but it is rare for clinically significant hypoxia to occur. Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation is rarely necessary and is unlikely to be effective.

For prolonged seizures (those lasting over 5 minutes), acute home treatment with benzodiazepines such as rectal diazepam gel (Diastat) or intranasal midazolam may be administered to prevent the development of status epilepticus and has proven to be safe even when administered by nonmedical professionals, including teachers and day care providers, when appropriately instructed.

B. Antiepileptic Drug (AED) Therapy

1. Drug selection—Treat with the drug appropriate to the clinical situation, as outlined in Table 25–7.

2. Treatment strategy—The child with a single seizure has a 50% chance of recurrence. Thus, it is usually not necessary to initiate therapy until the diagnosis of epilepsy is established, that is, there is a second seizure. The seizure type and epilepsy syndrome as well as potential side effects will determine which drug to initiate (see Tables 25-5 and 25-7). If monotherapy fails, a second and when necessary a third medication may be used to help control seizure frequency.

Dosages and usual target serum levels of commonly prescribed AEDs are listed in Table 25–7. Individual variations must be expected, both in tolerance and efficacy. The therapeutic range may also vary somewhat with the method used to determine levels, and published levels are not always reflective of clinical efficacy and tolerability.

Table 25–7. Guide to AED use.

Medication/Target Dose in Adults [Pediatric Dose mg/kg/d]	Target Serum Levels (mcg/mL)	Idiosyncratic	Dose Related	Age Specific/Other
Carbamazepine 1000–2000 [10–30]	4–12	Dermatologic (rash, including Stevens-Johnson), rare, hematologic, hepatic	Vertigo, visual disturbance (diplopia), leukopenia	Hyponatremia in adults; leukopenia; liver induction; myoclonus in patients with general S/W
Clobazam 5–80 [2 y, 0.5–1; 2–16 y, 5–40]	–	Rash (rare), Stevens Johnson reaction	Ataxia, sedation	Paradoxical reaction with aggressive behavior, withdrawal symptoms with abrupt cessation
Eslicarbazepine 400–1200 mg [not known]		Stevens-Johnson reaction	Hyponatremia, fatigue	
Ethosuximide 1000 [15–40]	40–100	Leukopenia, SLE, nephrotic syndrome, rash	Sedation, GI upset	Behavioral
Ezogabine 600–1200		Urinary retention, prolonged QT	Dizziness, sedation	
Felbamate 2400–3600 [45–60]	30–100	Aplastic anemia, hepatic failure, rash (rare)	Anorexia, insomnia, headache, irritability	Aplastic anemia; drug interactions
Gabapentin 1800–3600 [30–100]	4–20	Rash (rare)	Somnolence, irritability, weight gain	Renal excretion, no drug interactions
Lacosamide 200–400 [8–12]	–	Prolonged PR interval, hypersensitivity reaction	Dizziness, ataxia, nausea, diplopia	? Interferes with neuronal plasticity
Lamotrigine 300–500 [1–15] (dose depends on concomitant medication)	3–20	Rash, hypersensitivity reaction	Ataxia, diplopia, GI, headache	Rash (1%–5% in children), Stevens-Johnson
Levetiracetam 1200–2400 [20–60]	5–50	None reported to date	Somnolence, ataxia	Agitation, aggression, depression
Oxcarbazepine 1200–2400 [15–45]	MHD–10–55	Rash (25% cross-reactivity with CBZ)	CNS, diplopia	Hyponatremia (3% of adults)
Perampamel 2–12 [not known]		Aggression	Dizziness, fatigue	
Phenytoin 200–600 [4–8]	10–20	Rash (5%–10%), hematologic, hepatic, lymphadenopathy others	Cosmetic, CNS, ataxia, nystagmus	Elevated LFTs, induction, reduced vitamin D, cerebellar degeneration?
Phenobarbital 60–120 [2–6]	15–40	Rash, Stevens-Johnson, SLE	Somnolence, irritability	Possible irreversible cognitive effects, liver induction
Rufinamide 400–3200 [10–45]	–	Hypersensitivity reaction	Sedation, headache, behavioral disturbance, shortened QT interval	
Tiagabine 32–56 [0.25–1.25]	5–70	Psychiatric	CNS, tremor, weakness, GE reflux, gait difficulty	
Topiramate 200–400 [5–25]	3–25	Rash (rare), acute glaucoma (rare)	Somnolence, memory disturbance, renal stones anorexia, paresthesia	Language and cognitive disturbance (especially polypharmacy); oligohidrosis

(Continued)

Table 25–7. Guide to AED use. (Continued)

Medication/Target Dose in Adults [Pediatric Dose mg/kg/d]	Target Serum Levels (mcg/mL)	Idiosyncratic	Dose Related	Age Specific/Other
Valproic acid 750–1500 [20–60]	50–150	Hepatic failure; pancreatitis	Tremor, weight gain, alopecia, sedation and cognitive changes, thrombocytopenia, prolonged bleeding time	Hepatic failure (1/500 younger than age 2 on polypharmacy), elevated LFTs; GI upset with syrup; incidence of PCOS unknown, liver enzyme inhibition; teratogenicity
Vigabatrin Max 3000 [40–100]	–	Visual field constriction, sedation, CNS	Psychiatric symptoms (rare), visual field constriction	Especially effective for infantile spasms and tuberous sclerosis
Zonisamide 200–600 [4–10]	10–30	Rash, hematologic, hepatic	Renal stones, anorexia, somnolence	Oligohidrosis in children; cross-sensitivity with sulfa drugs

CBZ, carbamazepine; CNS, central nervous system; GE, gastroesophageal; GI, gastrointestinal; LFT, liver function test; MHD, monohydroxy derivative; PCOS, polycystic ovary syndrome; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus; S/W, spike and wave discharges.
Note: For newer drugs, doses, levels, and adverse effects are based on reported clinical experience and not on adequate scientific information from clinical trials in most cases. Some medications do not have FDA approval for children. The package insert for each medication lists potential adverse effects, warnings, and other important considerations.

3. Long-term management and discontinuation of treatment—Therapy should be continued until the patient is free of seizures for at least 1–2 years. In about 75% of patients, seizures will not recur following discontinuation of medication after 2 years of remission. Variables such as younger age at onset, normal EEG, undetermined etiology, and ease of controlling seizures carry a favorable prognosis, whereas identified etiology, later onset, continued epileptiform EEG, difficulty in establishing initial control of the seizures, polytherapy, generalized tonic-clonic or myoclonic seizures, as well as an abnormal neurologic examination are associated with a higher risk of recurrence. Most AEDs (with the exception of barbiturates and clonazepam) can be withdrawn over 6–8 weeks. There does not appear to be an advantage to slower withdrawal.

Recurrent seizures affect up to 25% of children who attempt withdrawal from medications. Recurrence of seizures is most likely within 6–12 months of discontinuing medications. Therefore, seizure safety precautions will need to be reinstituted, including driving restriction. If seizures recur during or after withdrawal, AED therapy should be reinstituted and maintained for at least another 1–2 years. The vast majority of children will again achieve remission of their seizures.

C. Alternative Treatments

1. Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) and corticosteroids—ACTH is indicated for treatment of infantile spasms. The utility of other immunotherapy is less clear. Duration of ACTH therapy is guided by cessation of clinical seizures and normalization of the EEG. Oral corticosteroids and intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg) are occasionally used for pharmaco-resistant epilepsy. However, dosing regimens and indications are not well established.

Precautions: Give additional potassium, guard against infections, provide GI prophylaxis, follow for possible hypertension, and discuss the cushingoid appearance and its disappearance. Do not withdraw oral corticosteroids suddenly. Side effects in some series occur in up to 40% of patients. In some regions of the country, prophylaxis against Pneumocystis infection may be required. Careful and frequent follow-up is necessary. Visiting nurse services and partnering with a medical home can be very helpful in surveillance such as monitoring blood pressure, weight, and potential adverse effects.

2. Ketogenic diet—Fasting has been described to stop seizures for centuries and a diet high in fat and low in protein and carbohydrates will result in ketosis and simulate a fasting state. Fatty acids replace glucose as a source of energy for cellular metabolism. Such a diet has been observed to decrease and even control seizures in some children. This diet should be monitored very carefully to ensure sufficient protein for body maintenance and growth as well as appropriate vitamin and mineral supplementation. Recent reports suggest efficacy with a modified Atkins diet or a low-glycemic index diet in older and higher functioning children who will not accept the ketogenic diet.

The mechanism for the anticonvulsant action of the ketogenic diet is not understood. The ketogenic diet requires close adherence and full cooperation of all family members. However, when seizure control is achieved by this method, acceptance of the diet is usually excellent. Access to other

families and patients via Internet has provided support and is particularly useful for providing increased variation of meals for families.

As with all therapies, potential adverse effects can occur with the ketogenic diet. These include acidosis and hypoglycemia, particularly on initiation of the diet. Thus, it is prudent to admit the child for initiation of the diet at a center well versed in managing ketogenic diet. Close follow up will need to occur due to risk for renal stones, pancreatitis, and acidosis. In addition, vitamin and minerals need to be followed carefully to avoid deficiencies, especially carnitine, iron, and vitamin D.

3. Vagus nerve stimulator (VNS)—The VNS is a pacemaker-like device that is implanted below the clavicle and attached to the left vagus nerve. A cycle of electrical stimulation of the nerve is established (typically 30 seconds of stimulation every 5 minutes), which has an antiepileptic effect, reducing seizures by at least 50% in over half the children treated. In addition, an emergency mode that is activated by the use of a magnet may interrupt a seizure (ie, an anticonvulsant effect). For patients with sufficient warning of an impending seizure, the device can be activated prior to escalation of the seizure. Many patients also experience an improvement in learning and behavior with use of this device. With current technology, the battery in the stimulator will last 7 or more years in many patients.

D. Surgery

An evaluation for epilepsy surgery is indicated for all children with medically intractable partial epilepsy. The evaluation and surgery should be performed at a center with expertise in epilepsy surgery and which has a dedicated neurosurgeon, epileptologists, neuropsychologists, and physiatrists with experience in epilepsy surgery.

The first surgery for treatment of epilepsy took place over 100 years ago, and surgery is now established as an appropriate treatment option for adults and children with epilepsy refractory to medical treatment. Evaluation for possible surgical treatment should begin as soon as it is apparent that a child with focal onset seizures is not responding to standard therapy. Medication resistant ("refractory") epilepsy is usually defined as failure of two or three anti-epileptic drugs alone or as combination therapy to control seizures. Advances in technology allow for definition and removal of the epileptogenic focus even in young infants. Many centers now have access to variety of resources for identifying the region of seizure onset. Surgical techniques are also rapidly changing and include the use of laser technology to reduce morbidity that may be associated with some surgeries. Freedom from seizures is reported in as many as 80% who have been treated surgically. Some children with more generalized seizures may qualify for other types of surgery, such as corpus callosotomy, that aim to reduce seizure burden.

E. General Management of the Child with Epilepsy

1. Education—The initial diagnosis of epilepsy is often devastating for families. The patient and parents must be helped to understand the nature of epilepsy and its management, including etiology, prognosis, safety issues, and treatment options.

Excellent educational materials are available for families of a child with epilepsy, both in print and online. An excellent website is http://www.epilepsy.com. Materials on epilepsy—including pamphlets, monographs, films, and videotapes suitable for children and teenagers, parents, teachers, and medical professionals—may be purchased through the Epilepsy Foundation: 8301 Professional Place, Landover, MD 20785; (800) 332–1000. The foundation's local chapter and other community organizations are able to provide guidance and other services. Support groups exist in many regions for older children and adolescents and for their parents and others concerned.

2. Privileges and precautions in daily life—"No seizures and no side effects" is a motto established by the Epilepsy Foundation. The child should be encouraged to live as normal a life as possible. Children should engage in physical activities appropriate to their age and social group. After seizure control is established, swimming is generally permissible with a buddy system or adequate lifeguard coverage. Scuba diving and high climbing without safety harness is generally not allowed. There are no absolute contraindications to any other sports, although some physicians recommend against contact sports. Physical training and sports are usually to be welcomed rather than restricted. There is some literature that suggests that exercise decreases overall seizure burden and may also be helpful to maintain good bone health.

Emotional disturbances, especially depression, are not uncommon, particularly in adolescents with epilepsy, and need to be treated. Loss of sleep and alcohol should be avoided as sleep deprivation can be a trigger for seizures. Prompt attention should be given to intercurrent illnesses as these can trigger seizures.

Although every effort should be made to control seizures, treatment must not interfere with a child's ability to function normally. A child may do better having an occasional mild seizure than being so heavily sedated that function at home, in school, or at play is impaired. Therapy and medication adjustment often require much art and fortitude on the physician's part. Some patients with infrequent seizures, especially if only nocturnal partial seizures (eg, Rolandic seizures) may not need treatment with AEDs.

3. Driving—Driving becomes important to most young people at age 15 or 16 years. Restrictions for persons with epilepsy and other disturbances of consciousness vary from state to state. In most states, a learner's permit or driver's license will be issued to an individual with epilepsy if he or

she has been under a physician's care and free of seizures for at least 1 year provided that the treatment or basic neurologic problems do not interfere with the ability to drive. A guide to this and other legal matters pertaining to persons with epilepsy is published by the Epilepsy Foundation, and its legal department may be able to provide additional information.

4. Pregnancy—Contraception (especially interaction of oral contraceptive with some AEDs), childbearing, potential teratogenicity of AEDs, and the management of pregnancy should be discussed as soon as appropriate with the adolescent young woman with epilepsy. Daily use of vitamin preparations containing folic acid is recommended. For the pregnant teenager with epilepsy, management by an obstetrician conversant with the use of AEDs in pregnancy is appropriate. The patient should be cautioned against discontinuing her medications during pregnancy. The possibility of teratogenic effects of AEDs, such as facial clefts (two to three times increased risk), must be weighed against the risks from seizures. All AEDs appear to have some risk for teratogenicity, although valproate carries a particularly high risk for spinal dysraphism as well as being associated with cognitive issues in children exposed to valproate in utero. Dosing may need to be adjusted frequently during pregnancy as blood volume expands. Frequent AED blood levels may be helpful in making these adjustments.

5. School intervention and seizure response plans—Schools are required by federal law to work with parents to establish a seizure action plan for their child with epilepsy. A template for such a plan is available on the Epilepsy Foundation website at http://epilepsy.prod.acquia-sites.com/sites/core/files/atoms/files/seizure-action-plan-pdf_0.pdf. These plans usually require the approval of the child's physician. Schools are sometimes hesitant to administer rescue medications. Often, information from the physician, especially that obtained from the Epilepsy Foundation website, will relieve anxieties. School authorities should be encouraged to avoid needless restrictions and to address the emotional and educational needs of all children with disabilities, including epilepsy. The local affiliates of the Epilepsy Foundation can often provide support and education for both families and schools.

2. Status Epilepticus

Status epilepticus is usually defined as a clinical or electrical seizure lasting at least 15 minutes, or a series of seizures without complete recovery over a 30-minute period. After 30 minutes of seizure activity, hypoxia and acidosis occur, with depletion of energy stores, cerebral edema, and structural damage. Eventually, high fever, hypotension, respiratory depression, and even death may occur. Status epilepticus is a medical emergency. Aggressive treatment of prolonged seizures may prevent development of status epilepticus. It is generally recommended that treatment with benzodiazepines at home for prolonged seizures be initiated 5 minutes after onset of a seizure. There are currently several forms of benzodiazepines that can be administered safely at home, including rectal valium, intranasal midazolam, sublingual lorazepam, and intramuscular diazepam.

Status epilepticus is classified as (1) convulsive (the common tonic-clonic, or grand mal, status epilepticus) or (2) nonconvulsive (characterized by altered mental status or behavior with subtle or absent motor components). Absence status, or spike-wave stupor, and focal status epilepticus are examples of the nonconvulsive type. An EEG may be necessary to aid in diagnosing nonconvulsive status because patients sometimes appear merely stuporous and lack typical convulsive movements. Status epilepticus that has not responded to two medications is considered refractory status epilepticus and often requires care in an intensive care unit.

» Treatment

For treatment options, see Table 25–8.

3. Febrile Seizures

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Criteria for febrile seizures are (1) age 3 months to 6 years (most occur between ages 6 and 18 months), (2) fever of greater than 38.8°C, and (3) non-CNS infection. More than 90% of febrile seizures are generalized, last less than 5 minutes, and occur early in the illness causing the fever. Febrile seizures occur in 2%–3% of children. Acute respiratory illnesses are most commonly associated with febrile seizures. Gastroenteritis, especially when caused by Shigella or Campylobacter, and urinary tract infections are less common causes. Roseola infantum is a rare but classic cause. One study implicated viral causes in 86% of cases. HHV-6 and HHV-7 are common causes for febrile status epilepticus, both accounting for 1/3 of cases. Febrile seizures rarely (1%–3%) evolve to recurrent unprovoked seizures (epilepsy) in later childhood and adult life (risk is increased two- to fivefold compared with children who do not have febrile seizures). The chance of later epilepsy is higher if the febrile seizures have complex features, such as duration longer than 15 minutes, more than one seizure in the same day, or focal features. Other predictive factors are an abnormal neurologic status preceding the seizures (eg, cerebral palsy or mental retardation), early onset of febrile seizure (before age 1 year), and a family history of epilepsy. Even with adverse factors, the risk of epilepsy after febrile seizures is still only in the range of 15%–20%, although it is increased if more than one risk factor is present. Recurrent febrile seizures occur in 30%–50% of cases. Therefore, families should be prepared

Table 25–8. Status epilepticus treatment.

1. ABCs
   a. Airway: maintain oral airway; intubation may be necessary.
   b. Breathing: oxygen.
   c. Circulation: assess pulse, blood pressure; support with IV fluids, drugs. Monitor vital signs.
2. Start glucose-containing IV (unless patient is on ketogenic diet); evaluate serum glucose; electrolytes, HCO^-_3, CBC, BUN, anticonvulsant levels.
3. Consider arterial blood gases, pH.
4. Give 50% glucose if serum glucose low (1–2 mL/kg).
5. Begin IV drug therapy; goal is to control status epilepticus in 20–60 min.
   a. Diazepam, 0.3–0.5 mg/kg over 1–5 min (20 mg max); may repeat in 5–20 min; or lorazepam, 0.05–0.2 mg/kg (less effective with repeated doses, longer-acting than diazepam); or midazolam: IV, 0.1–0.2 mg/kg; intranasally, 0.2 mg/kg.
   b. Phenytoin, 10–20 mg/kg IV (not IM) over 5–20 min; (1000 mg maximum); monitor with blood pressure and ECG. Fosphenytoin may be given more rapidly in the same dosage and can be given IM; order 10–20 mg/kg of "phenytoin equivalent" (PE).
   c. Phenobarbital, 5–20 mg/kg (sometimes higher in newborns or refractory status in intubated patients).
6. Correct metabolic perturbations (eg, low-sodium, acidosis). Administer fluids judiciously.
7. Other drug approaches in refractory status:
   a. Repeat phenytoin, phenobarbital (10 mg/kg). Monitor blood levels. Support respiration, blood pressure as necessary.
   b. Other medications: valproate sodium, available as 100 mg/mL for IV use; give 15–30 mg/kg over 5–20 min.
   c. Levetiracetam may be helpful (20–40 mg/kg/dose IV).
   d. For patients who fail initial intervention consider: midazolam drip: 1–5 mcg/kg/min (even to 20 kg/min); pentobarbital coma; propofol and general anesthetic.
8. Consider underlying causes:
   a. Structural disorders or trauma: MRI or CT scan.
   b. Infection: lumbar puncture, blood culture, antibiotics.
   c. Metabolic disorders: consider lactic acidosis, toxins, and uremia if child is being treated with chronic AEDs, obtain medication levels. Toxin screen.
9. Initiate maintenance drug treatment with IV medications: phenytoin (10 mg/kg); phenobarbital (5 mg/kg); valproate IV 30 mg/kg; levetiracetam 20–30 mg/kg. Transition to oral medication when patient can safely take them.

BUN, blood urea nitrogen; CBC, complete blood count; CT, computed tomography; ECG, electrocardiogram; IM, intramuscularly; IV, intravenously; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging.

to expect more seizures. In general, recurrence of febrile seizures does not worsen the long-term outlook.

B. Diagnostic Evaluation

The child with a febrile seizure must be evaluated for the source of the fever, in particular to exclude CNS infection. Routine studies such as serum electrolytes, glucose, calcium, skull radiographs, or brain imaging studies are seldom helpful unless warranted based on clinical history. A white count above 20,000/μL or an extreme left shift may correlate with bacteremia. Complete blood count and blood cultures may be appropriate. Serum sodium is often slightly low but not low enough to require treatment or to cause the seizure. Meningitis and encephalitis must be considered. Signs of meningitis (eg, bulging fontanelle, stiff neck, stupor, and irritability) may be absent, especially in a child younger than age 18 months.

C. Lumbar Puncture

After controlling the fever and stopping an ongoing seizure, the physician must decide whether to do a lumbar puncture. The fact that the child has had a previous febrile seizure does not rule out meningitis as the cause of the current episode. It is very important, especially in younger children, to exclude CNS infection as a source; these children are not classified as having a febrile seizure. A recent study demonstrated that 96% of children with febrile status epilepticus who received an LP had less than three WBC in the CSF. Therefore, seizure should not be an acceptable explanation for elevated cells in the CSF. Although the yield is low, a lumbar puncture should probably be considered done if the child is younger than age 18 months, and has been pretreated with antibiotics or is under-immunized. Certainly any child with meningeal signs fever and seizure should have an examination of their CSF. Occasionally observation in the emergency department for several hours obviates the need for a lumbar puncture.

D. EEG

EEG is rarely useful. An EEG may be considered if the febrile seizure is complicated, focal, or otherwise unusual, but has little predictive value. In uncomplicated febrile seizures, the EEG is usually normal. If performed, the EEG should be done at least a week after the illness to avoid transient changes due to fever or the seizure itself. In older children, 3-Hz spike-wave discharges, suggestive of a genetic propensity to epilepsy, may occur. In the young infant, EEG findings seldom aid in assessing the chance of recurrence of febrile seizures or in long-term prognosis. Thus, EEG is not recommended for the child with simple febrile seizures.

» Treatment

Prophylactic anticonvulsants are not recommended after a febrile seizure. Only phenobarbital and valproic acid have demonstrated efficacy in preventing febrile seizures; phenytoin and carbamazepine have been shown to be ineffective. Newer antiepileptic drugs have not been studied. Diazepam started at the first onset of fever for the duration of the febrile illness (0.5 mg/kg two or three times per day

orally or rectally) may be effective but will sedate a child and possibly complicate the evaluation for a source of the fever. Prophylactic diazepam is also limited by the fact that a seizure is often the first evidence of fever associated with an acute illness. Diastat (rectal diazepam gel) can be used to prevent febrile status epilepticus in the child with a prolonged febrile seizure (one lasting over 5 minutes), often the greatest concern.

Measures to control fever such as sponging or tepid baths, antipyretics, and the administration of antibiotics for proven bacterial illness are reasonable but unproven to prevent recurrent febrile seizures.

» Prognosis

Simple febrile seizures do not have any long-term adverse consequences. As noted earlier, there is only a small increase in the risk of developing epilepsy. Cognitive function is not significantly different from that of siblings without febrile seizures.

Abend NS, Gutierrez-Colina AM, Dlugos DJ: Medical treatment of pediatric status epilepticus. Semin Pediatr Neurol 2010;17:169–175 [PMID: 20727486].

Berg AT, Berkovic SF, Brodie MT: Revised terminology and concepts for organization of seizures and epilepsies: report of the ILAE Commission on Classification and Terminology, 2005–2009. Epilepsia 2010;51:676–685 [PMID: 20196795].

Chu-Shore CJ, Thiele EA: New drugs for pediatric epilepsy. Semin Pediatr Neurol 2010;17:214–223 [PMID: 21183127].

Duffner P et al: Clinical Practice Guideline—Febrile Seizures: Guideline for the Neurodiagnostic Evaluation of the Child With a Simple Febrile Seizure. Pediatrics 2015;127(2):389–394 [PMID: 21285335].

Frank LM et al: Cerebrospinal fluid findings in children with fever-associated status epilepticus: results of the consequences of prolonged febrile seizures (FEBSTAT) study. J Pediatrics 2012;161:1169–1171 [PMID: 22985722].

Freeman JM, Kossoff EH: Ketosis and the ketogenic diet, 2010: advances in treating epilepsy and other disorders. Adv Pediatr 2010;57:315–329 [PMID: 21056745].

Glauser TA et al: Ethosuximide, valproic acid and lamotrigine in childhood absence epilepsy: initial monotherapy outcomes at 12 months. Epilepsia 2013 Jan;54(1):141–155 [PMID: 23167925].

Go CY et al: Evidence based guideline update: medical treatment of infantile spasms. Report of the guideline development subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the practice committee of the Child Neurology Society. Neurology 2012 Jun 12;78(24):1974–1980 [PMID: 22689735].

Holthausen H, Pieper T, Kudernatsch M: Towards early diagnosis and treatment to save children from catastrophic epilepsy—focus on epilepsy surgery. Brain Dev 2013;35(3)730–741 [PMID: 23791480].

Hughes JR: Benign epilepsy of childhood with centrotemporal spikes (BECTS): to treat or not to treat, that is the question. Epilepsy Behav 2010;19:197–203 [PMID: 20797913].

Ostrowsky K: Outcome and prognosis of status epilepticus in children. Semin Pediatr Neurol 2010;17:195 [PMID: 20727490].

Ramos-Lizana J et al: Recurrence risk after withdrawal of antiepileptic drugs in children with epilepsy: a prospective study. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 2009 [Epub ahead of print] [PMID: 19541516].

Rennie J, Boylan G: Treatment of neonatal seizures. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 2007;92:F148 [PMID: 17337664].

Riviello JJ et al: Practice parameter: diagnostic assessment of the child with status epilepticus (an evidence-based review): report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. Neurology 2006;67:1542 [PMID: 17101884].

Shany E, Berger I: Neonatal electroencephalography: review of a practical approach. J Child Neurol 2011;26:341–355 [PMID: 21383227].

Shinnar S et al: Phenomenology of prolonged febrile seizures: results of the FEBSTAT study. Neurology 2008;71:170–176 [PMID: 18525033].

Sillanpää M, Shinnar S: SUDEP and other causes of mortality in childhood-onset epilepsy. Epilepsy Behav 2013;28(2):249–255 [PMID:23746924].

Singh RK, Gaillard WD: Status epilepticus in children. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2009;9:137 [PMID: 19268037].

Wheless JW: Managing severe epilepsy syndromes of early childhood. J Child Neurol 2009;24:24S [PMID: 19666880].

SLEEP DISORDERS

Sleep disorders can originate from abnormalities within the respiratory system, the neurologic system and the coordination (or lack thereof) between these two systems. In order to understand abnormal sleep, one must understand normal sleep, which changes as the child develops. Sleep and its development are reviewed in Chapter 3. Chapter 3 also discusses behavioral considerations in the treatment of sleep disorders. Respiratory abnormalities that are associated with sleep such as obstructive sleep apnea are described in Chapters 18 and 19. This discussion focuses on neurologic features of several sleep disorders affecting children.

1. Narcolepsy

Narcolepsy, a primary disorder of sleep, is characterized by chronic, inappropriate daytime sleep that occurs regardless of activity or surroundings and is not relieved by increased sleep at night. Onset can occur as early as age 3 years. One half of individuals affected by narcolepsy have symptoms in childhood. Of children with narcolepsy, 18% are younger than age 10, and 60% are between puberty and their late teens.

Additional symptoms are cataplexy, hypnagogic and/or hypnopompic hallucinations (visual or auditory), and sleep paralysis. Cataplexy is a transient partial or total loss of muscle tone, often triggered by laughter, anger, or other emotional upsurge. Consciousness is preserved during these spells, which can last several minutes in duration. Hypnagogic hallucinations are intense visual or auditory hallucinations noted while falling asleep, whereas hypnopompic hallucinations occur while waking from sleep. Sleep paralysis is a brief loss of voluntary muscle control typically occurring at sleep-wake transitions.

Abnormally short latency between sleep onset and transition into rapid eye movement (REM) sleep occurs in subjects with narcolepsy. The first cycle of REM sleep usually occurs after 80–100 minutes in normal subjects. Nocturnal polysomnography and Multiple Sleep Latency Testing (MSLT) can demonstrate abnormal REM latency and are used to diagnose narcolepsy. Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) subtypes DQB1*0602 and DRB1*1501 are associated with narcolepsy, as well as absence of a hypothalamic neuropeptide, hypocretin, which can be measured in CSF. Sleep hygiene and behavior modification are used to treat patients with narcolepsy. In general, medications used for the treatment of narcolepsy in children are "off label." CNS stimulants such as amphetamine mixtures are typically used to treat excessive daytime somnolence. Modafinil is an effective treatment in adults and is used at times in children although controlled studies in children are lacking. Cataplexy responds to venlafaxine, fluoxetine, or clomipramine.

2. Benign Neonatal Sleep Myoclonus

Benign neonatal sleep myoclonus is characterized by myoclonic jerks, usually bilateral and synchronous, which occur only during sleep and stop abruptly when the infant is aroused. It is a benign condition that is frequently confused with epileptic seizures. Sleep myoclonus usually occurs in the first 2 weeks of life and resolves spontaneously in the first months of life, although these may occur as late as 10 months. Clusters of jerks may last from a few seconds up to 20 minutes.

3. Nocturnal Frontal Lobe Epilepsy

Nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy (NFLE) is characterized by paroxysmal arousals from NREM sleep with hypermotor seizures characterized by bizarre stereotyped motor movements with dystonic or hyperkinetic features lasting up to 5 minutes. NFLE is a heterogeneous disorder which includes both sporadic and familial forms, the latter related to a genetic abnormality affecting nicotinic receptors. Lack of definitive epileptiform abnormalities on EEG recordings may lead to misdiagnoses of nocturnal dystonia or a parasomnia, such as night terrors or somnambulism.

4. Parasomnias

Parasomnias are abnormal behavioral or physiologic events that occur in association with various sleep stages or the transition between sleeping and waking. The parasomnias of childhood are divided into those occurring in non-REM sleep (NREM) and REM sleep. The NREM parasomnias consist of partial arousals, disorientation, and motor disturbances and include sleep-walking (somnambulism), sleep talking, confusional arousals, and sleep terrors (pavor nocturnes), among others. These are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3. The REM sleep parasomnias include nightmares, hypnagogic and hypnopompic hallucinations (as can occur in narcolepsy), and REM sleep behavior disorder, which is characterized by physical and sometimes violent movements during the dream state, and is primarily seen in adulthood.

5. Restless Legs Syndrome

Restless legs syndrome refers to continuous, bothersome leg movements occurring at rest and producing unpleasant paresthesias (sensory symptoms) that often interfere with restful sleep. This disorder can be familial; therefore, a detailed family history may be helpful. Occasionally, anemia (low ferritin) has been noted in adults and children with the disorder; in these cases, improvement has occurred with ferrous sulfate treatment. These are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

Ahmed I, Thorpy M: Clinical features, diagnosis, and treatment of narcolepsy. Clin Chest Med 2010;31:371–381 [PMID: 20488294].

Aran A, Einen M, Lin L, Plazzi G, Nishino S, Mignot E: Clinical and therapeutic aspects of childhood narcolepsy-cataplexy: a retrospective study of 51 children. Sleep 2010;33:1457–1464 [PMID: 21102987].

Aurora RN et al: Practice parameters for the non-respiratory indications for polysomnography and multiple sleep latency testing for children. Sleep 2012;35:1467–1473 [PMID: 23115395].

Cao M, Guilleminault C: Hypocretin and its emerging role as a target for treatment of sleep disorders. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2011;11:227–234 [PMID: 21170610].

Caraballo RH et al: The spectrum of benign myoclonus of early infancy: clinical and neurophysiologic features in 102 patients. Epilepsia 2009;50:1176–1183 [PMID: 19175386].

Kotagal S et al: Non-respiratory indications for polysomnography and related procedures in children: an evidence-based review. Sleep 2012;35:1451–1466 [PMID: 23115394].

Meltzer LJ et al: Prevalence of diagnosed sleep disorders in pediatric primary care practices. Pediatrics 2010;125:e1410–e1418 [PMID: 20457689].

Sullivan SS: Narcolepsy in adolescents. Adolesc Med 2010;21: 542–555 [PMID: 21302860].

HEADACHES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- The two most common causes of headaches in children are migraine and tension-type headache.
- Diagnosis is based upon a thorough history and physical, excluding secondary causes such as mass or idiopathic intracranial hypertension.
- Warning signs that may require further investigation include headache in a young child, new onset and worsening headache, unexplained fever, awakening with headache or vomiting, headache worse with straining or position change, posterior headaches, neurologic deficit, or neurocutaneous stigmata.

Table 25–9. Red flags for children with headaches.

Headache in child less than 5 years
New ("explosive onset") and worsening headache in a previously healthy child
Worst headache of life
Unexplained fever
Night time or early morning awakenings with headache or vomiting
Headache worse with straining
Posterior headaches
Neurological deficit
Postural headache
Worse when lying
Worse when standing
Neurocutaneous stigmata (café au lait spots, hypopigmented macules)

Table 25–10. Classification of TTH and migraine.

	Migraine Without Aura	Tension-Type Headache
Duration	2–72 h*	30 min to 7 days
Quality	Throbbing/pounding	Pressure tight band
Severity	Moderate to severe	Mild to moderate
Location	Unilateral/bilateral*	Bilateral
Physical activity	Worsens headache	No effect
Associated factors		
a. Nausea +/– vomiting	a or b	No change
b. Photo + phonophobia		Photo or phonophobia but not both

*Modified for children based on the IHCD-III Beta classification criteria.

Headaches are common in children and adolescents and health providers need to recognize and differentiate the common from the more serious causes of headaches. Approximately 11% of children and 28% of adolescents experience recurrent headaches. First, the clinician must determine if the headache is primary or secondary. Symptoms and signs are the center of evaluation; however, red flags (Table 25–9) may prompt further workup and evaluation. Correct diagnosis of headache disorders will guide treatment and management.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Based on the 2004 International Classification of Headache Disorders-IIR (ICHD-IIR), primary headaches are divided into three major categories: migraine, tension-type, and trigeminal autonomic cephalalgia. Clinical features of migraine without aura and tension-type headache are compared in Table 25–10. Two differentiating symptoms for migraine compared to tension-type headaches are the presence of disability and nausea/vomiting with migraines. Individuals with greater than 15 headaches (migraine or tension-type) per month are considered chronic, and medication overuse must be excluded. Triggers of head pain can include stress, sleep deprivation, dehydration, skipped meals, caffeine, and possibly specific foods (eg, monosodium glutamate or nitrites). Trigeminal autonomic cephalalgia (or subcategory, cluster headache) is rare in children. It presents as a unilateral severe headache with autonomic dysfunction (watery eye, congestion, facial sweating, miosis, and ptosis).

According to the ICHD-IIR, migraines include childhood pediatric syndromes such as cyclic vomiting, abdominal migraine, and benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood. History of these periodic syndromes/symptoms may be discovered in children and adolescents with migraines. Infantile colic may also be a precursor or early manifestation of migraine.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory studies are not routinely needed in children presenting with recurrent headaches. History and examination may prompt basic screening studies for thyroid, anemia, or autoimmune disorders.

C. Imaging Studies

Routine neuroimaging is not indicated for children presenting with recurrent headaches unless Red Flags are present as noted in Table 25–9. A single red flag is less worrisome (except for abnormal neurologic examination) and usually a combination of red flags will prompt neuroimaging evaluation. Imaging can also be considered for children with historical features that suggest recent onset of severe headache, change in headache, or features to suggest neurologic dysfunction.

» Differential Diagnosis

Secondary causes of headache include broad categories such as head trauma, infection, vascular, intracranial pressure changes, structural, metabolic, toxic or substance related, and hematologic (Table 25–11). Headaches associated with head trauma are those that start within two weeks of closed head injury. They can have either features of migraines or tension-type headaches. Neck pain and headache after head trauma warrant evaluation for a dissection, especially if examination is suggestive for a connective tissue disorder such as Marfans or homocystinuria. Headaches that worsen with lying down or vomiting without nausea are concerning for increased intracranial hypertension such as IIH (IIH),

Table 25–11. Differential diagnosis of headaches.

Primary Causes	Secondary Causes	
• Migraine without aura • Migraine with aura • Childhood pediatric syndromes • Tension-type headache • Trigeminal autonomic cephalgias including Cluster headaches	• Trauma • Hypertension • Arterial dissection • Medication overuse headache • Idiopathic intracranial hypertension • Intracranial hypotension • Chiari malformation • Seizure • Mass/Neoplasm • Sleep apnea	• Substance withdrawal • Infection • Sinusitis • Hypoxia • Hypercapnia • Mitochondrial disorders • Thyroid dysfunction • Anemia • Asthenopia (eye strain) • Tempomandibular joint dysfunction • Substance use

sinus venous clot producing increased CSF pressure, hydrocephalus, or mass. Headaches that worsen with standing and improve with lying down are suggestive of low pressure headaches caused by a tear in the dura from a preceding LP, spontaneous leak, penetrating trauma, or surgery.

Medication and substance ingestion and withdrawal are both culprits to secondary headaches. Steroids, vitamin A toxicity, oral contraceptives, and tetracycline are all associated with development of IIH. Medications that are commonly associated with medication overuse headache include aspirin, acetaminophen, NSAIDs, triptans, and combination analgesics such as acetaminophen, butalbital, and caffeine. Other toxins such as lead, carbon monoxide, or organic solvent poisoning cannot be overlooked.

Infections both of the CNS or systemically are associated with new onset headaches. Additionally, common systemic or other focal infections may cause headaches such as viral upper respiratory infections, strep pharyngitis (especially in younger children), rhinosinusitis (sinus headache), influenza, and Lyme disease. Migraines are frequently misdiagnosed as sinus headaches and physicians should carefully obtain history of pain in the face, ears, or teeth and evaluate for signs of rhinosinusitis on either physical examination or imaging.

Any cause of hypoxia (eg, cardiac, respiratory, altitude, anemia) may cause a bifrontal throbbing headache that may be worsened with exertion, straining, or laying down. Hypercapnia causes a nonspecific headache and may be secondary to sleep apnea or other underlying metabolic or respiratory disorder.

Although eye strain and temporal mandibular joint dysfunction are rare causes of recurrent headaches, they can be simply treated; therefore, when suspected, evaluation by ophthalmology or dentist, respectively, is indicated. Examination in temporomandibular joint dysfunction reveals a click on slow jaw opening and closing in addition to reduced angle of jaw opening.

A thorough history and physical examination helps diagnosing most of these conditions. Several common red flags associated with worrisome secondary causes are listed in Table 25–9. It is not one single symptom or red flag that usually points to a secondary cause; rather, it is a constellation of symptoms.

» Complications

Migraines and tension-type headaches are both episodic headache disorders but may transform into more frequent headaches. When a child has greater than 15 headache days per month for three or more months, the child has chronic headaches. Risk factors for chronicity include psychological comorbidity, obesity, and excessive medication. During migraines, central sensitization is indicated by presence of cutaneous allodynia (eg, pain with combing hair, wearing a pony tail, or touching the skin). These symptoms are associated with worsened prognosis with respect to treatment response and headache chronicity.

Depression and anxiety are both comorbid with headaches and are associated with increased headache burden and disability such as school absenteeism. Equally, children psychiatric disorders also have increased rates of primary headaches. School absenteeism and poor school performance appears to be one of the most challenging factors in children with recurrent headaches. Maintaining school attendance in children with headaches is a key factor in limiting chronicity and further disability from headaches.

» Treatment

Treatment is divided into two categories: acute and preventative. Management of headaches should emphasize the necessity for early and adequate treatment during a headache, in addition to self-management skills to reduce frequency and disability such as life-style modification and headache diaries. Pharmacologic preventative treatment can be considered if frequency or disability is significant.

A. Acute Treatment

Acute treatment for pediatric migraine includes use of simple analgesics and migraine specific medications. Any abortive medication should be given as early as possible after the onset of headache. The United States FDA approved almotriptan for adolescents 12–17 and rizatriptan for 6–17 year olds. Simple analgesics include acetaminophen (15 mg/kg; max dose 650 mg) and ibuprofen (10 mg/kg; max dose 800 mg). Studies showing significant benefit for pediatric migraine include rizatriptan, zolmitriptan nasal, sumatriptan nasal, and almotriptan. Occasionally home treatment fails and patients may need IV medications either in an emergency department or infusion center. When a patient fails emergency room treatments, IV dihydroergotamine can be effective with nausea as the most common side effect. All medications used for abortive treatment should be used cautiously to avoid medication overuse headache. Simple analgesics should be limited to 2–3 times per week and migraine-specific medications to approximately 1–2 times per week. During a headache biobehavioral techniques include rest, relaxation, and cold/hot packs. Providing the child with a cool dark room in which to rest may provide added benefit.

B. Prevention

Any child with headaches should have biobehavioral management as a centerpoint to treatment. These include sleep hygiene; improved fluid intake and elimination of caffeine; nutritional meals; avoidance of skipping meals; regular exercise and stretching; and stress management. Preventative treatment can be considered in individuals with headache frequency of one or more per week. Treatments should be chosen by optimizing wanted side-effects and minimizing unwanted side effects (eg, using topiramate in an obese child given its side-effect of weight loss).

Treatments are categorized into antiepileptic (eg, topiramate, valproic acid, levetiracetam), antihypertensive (eg, β-blockers, calcium channel blockers), antidepressants (eg, amitriptyline), antihistamine/antiserotonergic (eg, cyproheptadine), and nutraceuticals. Only small randomized double blinded or open label studies have tested these agents. The only FDA-approved migraine preventive medication in pediatric populations is topiramate for migraines in adolescents 12–17 years old.

Topiramate, amitriptyline, and cyproheptadine are the most commonly prescribed medications for pediatric headache. If topiramate is started slowly and at low doses, cognitive side effects can be avoided. Peripheral tingling is uncommon and when present usually can be tolerated by most children. Decreased appetite and weight loss should be monitored at routine appointments. Amitriptyline is usually dosed at nighttime given its side effect of sedation, in addition to other common side effects including constipation, dry mouth, and prolonged QT. Cyproheptadine is a good medication to use in younger children given its small side effect profile of primary increased appetite and sedation. Divalproex sodium has not shown efficacy and side effects including weight gain, tremor, hair loss, and teratogenicity warrant caution in adolescent female patients.

Cognitive behavioral therapy is efficacious in significantly decreasing migraine frequency and disability in youth. Coenzyme q10, magnesium oxide, and riboflavin have shown some efficacy in childhood migraine. They may be a useful option for children with low frequency headache, low disability, or individuals who favor nonpharmaceutical options.

» Prognosis

From the few studies regarding long-term prognosis in adolescents presenting with migraines, approximately 25%–40% of adolescents will have remission of migraine symptoms, 40%–50% have persistence, and 20%–25% convert to tension-type headache. Of those with TTH, 20% convert to migraine. Headache severity at diagnosis is thought to be predictive of headache outcome in the long term.

El-Chammas K et al: Pharmacologic treatment of pediatric headaches: a meta-analysis. JAMA Pediatr 2013 Mar 1;167(3):1–11 [PMID: 23358935].

Evers S: The efficacy of triptans in childhood and adolescence migraine. Cur Pain Headache Rep 2013 Jul;17(7):342 [PMID: 23709234].

Gelfand AA: Migraine and childhood periodic syndromes in children and adolescents. Curr Opin Neurol 2013 Jun;26(3): 262–268 [PMID: 23549418].

Headache Classification Committee of the International Headache Society. The international Classification of Headache Disorders, 3rd edition (beta version). Cephalalgia 2013 Jul;33(9):629–808 [PMID: 23771276].

Hershey AD: Current approaches to the diagnosis and management of paediatric migraine. Lancet Neurol 2010;9:190 [PMID: 20129168].

Lewis DW et al: Headache evaluation in children and adolescents: when to worry? When to scan? Pediatr Ann 2010;39:399 [PMID: 20666345].

Orr SL, Venkateswaren S: Nutraceuticals in the prophylaxis of pediatric migraine: evidence-based review and recommendations. Cephalalgia 2014;34:568–583 [PMID: 24443395].

PSEUDOTUMOR CEREBRI (IDIOPATHIC INTRACRANIAL HYPERTENSION)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Signs and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure: chronic headache, tinnitus, cranial nerve VI palsy, papilledema, visual loss.
- Normal MRI/MRV of the head.
- Elevated opening pressure on lumbar puncture performed in the lateral decubitus position.

» Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of idiopathic intracranial hypertension (IIH) is essentially unknown. Multiple risk factors have been identified, but obesity is the most common. Interestingly, multiple medications have been associated with IIH, including tetracycline, steroids, and retinol.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Presenting features include new or chronic positional headache, vomiting, pulsatile tinnitus, papilledemia, and diplopia. Later findings may include visual loss and optic atrophy, Visual symptoms are commonly secondary to transient visual obscurations (TVOs), which are transient (less than 1 minute) and reversible alterations of vision in these patients. This must be distinguished from visual field anomalies, which can be permanent. IIH is characterized by increased intracranial pressure as documented by a lumbar puncture performed in the lateral decubitus position in the absence of an identifiable intracranial mass, infection, metabolic derangement, or hydrocephalus.

» Differential Diagnosis

The cause of IIH is usually unknown, but it has been described in association with a variety of inflammatory, metabolic, toxic, and connective tissue disorders (Table 25–12). Assessing for alternative causes of increased intracranial pressure is essential to the diagnosis. MRI (or urgent CT for critically ill patients) may reveal hydrocephalus, tumor, or abscess. MRV may demonstrate a cerebral sinovenous thrombosis (CSVT), requiring hematological evaluation and consideration of anticoagulation. As noted in Table 25–12, medications, endocrinologic disturbances, and rheumatologic anomalies may all predispose patients to IIH. Lumbar puncture is essential to the diagnosis, as it confirms the presence of increased pressure (above 180–250 mm H_2O depending on technique and anesthetic used), but also assesses for white blood cell count, glucose, and protein (looking for an infectious mimicker, such as chronic meningitis). In some inflammatory and connective tissue diseases, the CSF protein concentration may also be increased.

Table 25–12. Conditions associated with idiopathic intracranial hypertension and idiopathic intracranial hypertension mimickers.

Medications and metabolic-toxic disorders
Hypervitaminosis A, including use of retinoids
Obesity
Steroid therapy
Hormonal therapy
Steroid withdrawal
Tetracycline, minocycline toxicity
Nalidixic acid toxicity
Iron deficiency
Clotting disorders
Hypocalcemia
Hyperparathyroidism or hyperthyroidism
Adrenal insufficiency
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Chronic CO_2 retention
Infectious and parainfectious disorders
Chronic otitis media (lateral sinus thrombosis)
Guillain-Barré syndrome
Lyme disease
Dural sinus thrombosis
Minor head injury

» Complications

Vision loss is the main complication of IIH, as chronic papilledema may lead to permanent optic nerve damage. Vision loss usually occurs in the blind spot and/or nasal aspects of the visual field prior to affecting central vision. Headache, TVOs, cranial nerve VI palsy, and malaise are usually reversible.

» Treatment

Treatment of IIH is aimed at correcting the identifiable predisposing condition and preventing vision loss. Sequential ophthalmologic evaluation to assess optic nerve swelling and visual fields is important. Obese patients will benefit significantly from weight loss. Some patients may benefit from the use of acetazolamide or topiramate to decrease the volume and pressure of CSF within the CNS. If a program of medical management and ophthalmologic surveillance fail, lumboperitoneal shunt, ventriculoperitoneal shunt, or optic nerve fenestration may be necessary to prevent irreparable visual loss and damage to the optic nerves. Dural venous stenting has limited data in adults with no randomized studies in either adults or children.

» Prognosis

With appropriate workup and treatment, the majority of patients recover from IIH without long-term sequela including visual outcome. Reoccurrence risk is greatest within 18 months.

Avery RA et al: CSF opening pressure in children with optic nerve head edema. Neurology 2011;76(19):1658 [PMID: 21555733].

Kosmorsky GS: Idiopathic intracranial hypertension: pseudotumor cerebri. Headache 2014 Feb;54(2):389–393 [PMID: 24512582].

Rogers DL: A review of pediatric idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Pediatr Clin North Am 2014 Jun;61(3):579–590 [PMID: 24852154].

Soiberman U et al: IIH in children: visual outcome and risk of recurrence. Childs Nerv Syst 2011 Nov;27(11):1913–1918 [PMID: 21538129].

CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Perinatal ischemic stroke is defined as strokes occurring in neonates younger than 28 days old.
- Childhood ischemic stroke occurs in children between 28 days to 18 years old.
- Neuroimaging is required to make the diagnosis of stroke.

Pediatric arterial ischemic stroke is subdivided into two categories: perinatal arterial ischemic stroke (perinatal ischemic stroke) and childhood arterial ischemic stroke (childhood ischemic stroke). Generally, perinatal ischemic stroke is defined as arterial ischemia occurring in a patient younger than age 28 days and older than 28 weeks' gestation. Childhood ischemic stroke is any ischemic stroke occurring in a patient between 28 days and 18 years old.

1. Childhood Arterial Ischemic Stroke

Childhood arterial ischemic stroke (AIS) is emerging as a serious and increasingly recognized disorder, affecting 1.6 per 100,000 children per year. There are numerous adverse outcomes, which include death in 10%, neurologic deficits or seizures in 70%–75%, and recurrent ischemic stroke in up to 20%. It is essential to recognize that childhood AIS represents a neurologic emergency, for which prompt diagnosis can affect treatment considerations and outcome. Unfortunately, most pediatric AIS is not recognized until 24–36 hours after onset; and treatment considerations matter most in the first hours after ischemic stroke onset. When possible, all children who present with ischemic stroke should be transferred to a tertiary care center that specializes in pediatric ischemic stroke management. The evaluation should include a thorough history of prior illnesses, especially those associated with varicella (even in the prior 1–2 years) preceding viral infection, minor head or neck trauma, and familial clotting tendencies. A systematic search for evidence of cardiac, vascular, hematologic, or intracranial disorders should be undertaken (Table 25–13). Although many ischemic strokes are not associated with a single underlying systemic disorder, previously diagnosed congenital heart disease is the most common predisposing illness, followed by hematologic and neoplastic disorders. In many instances the origin is multifactorial, necessitating a thorough investigation even when the cause may seem obvious. Arteriopathy is seen in as many as 80% of "idiopathic" patients, and likely confers an increased recurrence risk.

Table 25–13. Etiologic risk factors for ischemic and/or hemorrhagic ischemic stroke.

Cardiac disorders
Cyanotic heart disease
Valvular disease
Rheumatic
Endocarditis
Cardiomyopathy
Cardiac dysrhythmia
Vascular occlusive disorders
Cervical/cerebral arterial dissection
Homocystinuria/homocystinemia
Vasculitis
Meningitis
Polyarteritis nodosa
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Drug abuse (amphetamines)
Varicella
Mycoplasma
Human immunodeficiency virus
Fibromuscular dysplasia
Moyamoya disease
Diabetes
Nephrotic syndrome
Systemic hypertension
Dural sinus and cerebral venous thrombosis
Cortical venous thrombosis
Hematologic disorders
Iron deficiency anemia
Polycythemia
Thrombotic thrombocytopenia
Thrombocytopenic purpura
Hemoglobinopathies
Sickle cell disease
Coagulation defects
Hemophilia
Vitamin K deficiency
Hypercoagulable states
Prothrombin gene mutation
Methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase mutation
Lipoprotein (a)
Factor V Leiden deficiency
Antiphospholipid antibodies
Hypercholesterolemia
Hypertriglyceridemia
Factor VIII elevation
Pregnancy
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Use of oral contraceptives
Antithrombin III deficiency
Protein C and S deficiencies
Leukemia
Intracranial vascular anomalies
Moyamoya
Arteriovenous malformation
Arterial aneurysm
Carotid-cavernous fistula
Focal cerebral arteriopathy

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Manifestations of arterial ischemic stroke in childhood vary according to the vascular distribution to the brain structure that is involved. Because many conditions leading to childhood ischemic stroke result in emboli, multifocal neurologic involvement is common. Children may present with acute hemiplegia similarly to ischemic stroke in adults. Symptoms of unilateral weakness, sensory disturbance, dysarthria, and dysphagia may develop over a period of minutes, but at times progressive worsening of symptoms may evolve over several hours. Bilateral hemispheric involvement may lead to a depressed level of consciousness. The patient may also demonstrate disturbances of mood and behavior and experience focal or multifocal seizures. Physical examination of the patient is aimed not only at identifying the specific deficits related to impaired cerebral blood flow, but also at seeking evidence for any predisposing disorder. Retinal hemorrhages, splinter hemorrhages in the nail beds, cardiac murmurs, rash, fever, neurocutaneous stigmata, and signs of trauma are especially important findings.

B. Laboratory Findings and Ancillary Testing

In the acute phase, certain investigations should be carried out emergently with consideration of treatment options. This should include complete blood count, complete metabolic panel, serum or urine pregnancy test, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) panel, fibrin split products, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, C-reactive protein, prothrombin time/partial thromboplastin time, anti-factor Xa activity, chest radiography, ECG, urine toxicology, and imaging (see the following section). Subsequent studies can be carried out systemically, with particular attention to disorders involving the heart, blood vessels, platelets, red cells, hemoglobin, and coagulation proteins. Twenty to fifty percent of pediatric ischemic stroke patients will have a prothrombotic state. Additional laboratory tests for systemic disorders such as vasculitis, mitochondrial disorders, and metabolic disorders are sometimes indicated.

Examination of CSF is indicated in patients with fever, nuchal rigidity, or obtundation when the diagnosis of intracranial infection requires exclusion. Lumbar puncture may be deferred until a neuroimaging scan (excluding brain abscess or a space-occupying lesion that might contraindicate lumbar puncture) has been obtained. In the absence of infection, rheumatologic disease or intracranial subarachnoid hemorrhage, CSF examination is rarely helpful in defining the cause of the cerebrovascular disorder.

EEG may help in patients with severely depressed consciousness. ECG and echocardiography are useful both in the diagnostic approach to the patient and in ongoing monitoring and management, particularly when hypotension or cardiac arrhythmias complicate the clinical course.

C. Imaging

CT and MRI scans of the brain are helpful in defining the extent of cerebral involvement with ischemia or hemorrhage. CT scans may be normal within the first 12–24 hours of an ischemic stroke and are more useful to assess for hemorrhagic ischemic stroke. A CT scan performed early after the onset of neurologic deficits is valuable in excluding intracranial hemorrhage. This information may be helpful in the early stages of management and in the decision to treat with anticoagulants. Given the high incidence of ischemic stroke mimickers in the pediatric population (complicated migraine, Todd paralysis, encephalitis, etc.), urgent MRI with DWI is increasingly used in pediatric stroke centers.

Vascular imaging of the head and neck is an important part of pediatric ischemic stroke management and may include CTA, MRA, or conventional angiography. In studies in which both MRA and cerebral angiography have been used, up to 80% of patients with idiopathic childhood-onset arterial ischemic stroke have demonstrated a vascular abnormality. Vascular imaging is helpful in diagnosing disorders such as transient cerebral arteriopathy, arteriopathy associated with sickle cell disease, moyamoya disease, arterial dissection, aneurysm, fibromuscular dysplasia, and vasculitis. Recent studies have demonstrated that patients with vascular abnormalities on MRA or conventional angiography have a much greater recurrence risk than patients with normal vessels. When vessel imaging is performed, all major vessels should be studied from the aortic arch. With evidence of fibromuscular dysplasia in the intracranial or extracranial vessels, renal arteriography is indicated.

» Differential Diagnosis

Patients with an acute onset of neurologic deficits must be evaluated for other disorders that can cause focal neurologic deficits. Hypoglycemia, prolonged focal seizures, a prolonged postictal paresis (Todd paralysis), acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, meningitis, hemorrhagic stroke, encephalitis, hemiplegic migraine, ingestion, and brain abscess should all be considered. Migraine with focal neurologic deficits may be difficult to differentiate initially from ischemic stroke. Occasionally the onset of a neurodegenerative disorder (eg, adrenoleukodystrophy or mitochondrial disorder) may begin with the abrupt onset of seizures and focal neurologic deficits. The possibility of drug abuse (particularly cocaine) and other toxic exposures must be investigated diligently in any patient with acute mental status changes.

» Treatment

The initial management of ischemic stroke in a child is aimed at providing support for pulmonary, cardiovascular, and renal function. Patients should be administered oxygen and are usually monitored in an intensive care setting.

Typically, maintenance fluids without glucose are indicated to augment vascular volume. Pyrexia should be treated aggressively. Specific treatment of ischemic stroke, including blood pressure management, fluid management, and anticoagulation measures, depends partly on the underlying pathogenesis. Meningitis and other infections should be treated. Sickle cell patients require specialists in hematology to perform urgent exchange transfusion and most patients will require chronic transfusions after hospital discharge. Moyamoya is usually treated with surgical revascularization, while patients with vasculitis are often given anti-inflammatory therapy, such as steroids.

In most idiopathic cases of childhood ischemic stroke, anticoagulation or aspirin therapy is indicated. The Royal College of Physicians Pediatric Ischemic Stroke Working Group recommends aspirin, 5 mg/kg daily, as soon as the diagnosis is made. Aspirin use appears safe but the American Heart Association (AHA) recommends yearly flu-shots and close monitoring for Reye syndrome in pediatric ischemic stroke patients. Other groups, such as the American College of Chest Physicians, recommend initial treatment with anticoagulants, such as low-molecular-weight heparin or unfractionated heparin, for 5–7 days (while excluding cardiac sources and dissection) and then switching to aspirin (3–5 mg/d). Recent AHA guidelines support both of these approaches. In some situations, such as arterial dissection or cardio-embolic events, heparinization is usually considered. In adults with cerebrovascular thrombosis, thrombolytic agents (tissue plasminogen activator) used systemically or delivered directly to a vascular thrombotic lesion using interventional radiologic techniques has been shown to improve outcome in the appropriate patients. Although case reports exist, studies in children have not been completed. AHA guidelines recommend against the thrombolysis, outside of a clinical trial for children, while equivocating in the case of adolescents. Given the time-lag to diagnosis and the lack of evidence in children, tissue plasminogen activator is currently used in less than 2% of US children with ischemic stroke. Cleary, the use of tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) should be limited to practitioner who are familiar with cerebrovascular disease in children.

Long-term management requires intensive rehabilitation efforts and therapy aimed at improving the child's language, educational, and psychological performance. Length of treatment with antithrombotic agents, such as low-molecular-weight heparin and aspirin, is still being studied and depends on the etiology. Constraint therapy may be particularly helpful in cases of hemiparesis.

» Prognosis

The outcome of ischemic stroke in infants and children is variable. Roughly one-third may have minimal or no deficits, one-third are moderately affected, and one-third are severely affected. Underlying predisposing conditions and the vascular territory involved all play a role in dictating the outcome for an individual patient. When the ischemic stroke involves extremely large portions of one hemisphere or large portions of both hemispheres and cerebral edema develops, the patient's level of consciousness may deteriorate rapidly, and death may occur within the first few days. In contrast, some patients may achieve almost complete recovery of neurologic function within several days if the cerebral territory is small. Seizures, either focal or generalized, may occur in 30%–50% of patients at some point in the course of their cerebrovascular disorder. Recurrence is up to 20%, and is more prominent in some conditions, such as protein C deficiency, lipoprotein (a) abnormalities, and arteriopathies. Chronic problems with learning, behavior, and activity are common. Long-term follow-up with a pediatric neurologist is indicated and if possible a multidisciplinary ischemic stroke team.

2. Perinatal Arterial Ischemic Stroke

Perinatal arterial ischemic stroke is more common than childhood ischemic stroke, affecting 1:3500 children. Perinatal ischemic stroke has two distinct presentations: acute and delayed. Most patients with an acute presentation develop neonatal seizures during the first week of life, usually in association with a perinatal event. The seizures in acute perinatal ischemic stroke are often focal motor seizures of the contralateral arm and sometimes leg. The presentation is stereotypical because of the predilection of the ischemic stroke to occur in the middle cerebral artery. The presence of diffusion-weighted abnormalities on an MRI scan confirms an acute perinatal ischemic stroke during the first week of life. Other patients present with delayed symptoms, typically with an evolving hemiparesis at an average of 4–8 months. These patients are termed presumed perinatal arterial ischemic stroke.

Acute treatment of a perinatal ischemic stroke is usually limited to neonates with seizures. Unless an embolic source is identified, aspirin and anticoagulation are almost never prescribed. Management is based on supportive care, identification of comorbid conditions, and treatment of seizures. In acute perinatal ischemic stroke, treatable causes such as infection, cardiac embolus, metabolic derangement, and inherited thrombophilia must be ruled out. In appropriate cases, echocardiography, thrombophilia evaluation, and lumbar puncture are indicated. Supportive management focuses on general measures, such as normalizing glucose levels, monitoring blood pressure, and optimizing oxygenation.

Long-term management of perinatal ischemic stroke usually starts with identifying risk factors, which might include prothrombotic states, cardiac disease, drugs, and dehydration. Although prothrombotic abnormalities with the best evidence of association are factor V Leiden, protein C deficiency, and high lipoprotein (a), many practitioners perform an extensive hematologic workup. Maternal risk factors such as infertility, antiphospholipid antibodies,

placental infection, premature rupture of membranes, and cocaine exposure are all independently associated with perinatal ischemic stroke.

The prognosis for children who sustain perinatal ischemic strokes has been considered better than for children or adults with ischemic strokes, presumably because of the plasticity of the neonatal brain. Recent evidence, however, suggests that as patients progress into their school-age years, they may have previously unrecognized cognitive challenges, such as learning deficits or attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Twenty to forty percent of patients who experience perinatal ischemic strokes are neurologically normal. Motor impairment affects about 40%–60% of patients and is predominantly hemiplegic cerebral palsy. In acute presentations, MRI can be predictive of motor impairment, as descending corticospinal tract diffusion-weighted MRI signal is associated with a higher incidence of hemiplegia. Language delays, behavioral abnormalities, and cognitive deficits are seen in 20%–40% of infants who experience perinatal ischemic strokes. Patients are also at an increased risk for seizures. Ischemic stroke recurs in 3% of neonates and is usually associated with a prothrombotic abnormality or an underlying illness, such as cardiac malformation or infection. Given the low incidence of recurrence, long-term management is largely rehabilitative, including constraint therapies.

Giglia T et al: Prevention and Treatment of Thrombosis in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 2013;128: 2622–2703 [PMID: 2426806].

Kirton A et al: Symptomatic neonatal arterial ischemic stroke: The international Pediatric Stroke Study. Pediatrics 2011;128: 1402–1410 [PMID: 22123886].

Kirton A, deVeber G: Paediatric stroke: pressing issues and promising directions. Lancet 2015 Jan;14(1):92–102 [PMID: 25496900].

Mallick AA et al: childhood arterial ischaemic stroke incidence, presenting features, and risk factors: a prospective population-based study. Lancet Neurol 2014;13:35–43 [PMID: 2430498].

Monagle P et al: Antithrombotic therapy in neonates and children: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical guidelines. Chest 2012;141:e737S–801S [PMID: 22315277].

Roach ES et al: Management of ischemic stroke in infants and children: a scientific statement from a Special Writing Group of the American Heart Association Ischemic Stroke Council and the Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young. Ischemic Stroke 2008;39:2644–2691 [PMID: 18635845].

CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

Malformations of the nervous system occur in 1%–3% of living neonates and are present in 40% of infants who die. Developmental anomalies of the CNS may result from a variety of causes, including infectious, toxic, genetic, metabolic, and vascular insults that affect the fetus. The specific type of malformation that results from such insults, however, may depend more on the gestational period during which the insult occurs than on the specific cause. The period of induction, days 0–28 of gestation, is the period during which the neural plate appears and the neural tube forms and closes. Insults during this phase can result in a major absence of neural structures, such as anencephaly, or in a defect of neural tube closure, such as spina bifida, meningomyelocele, or encephalocele. Cellular proliferation and migration characterize neural development that occurs after 28 days' gestation. During this period, lissencephaly, pachygyria, agyria, and agenesis of the corpus callosum may result from genetic, toxic, infectious, or metabolic disruptions.

1. Abnormalities of Neural Tube Closure

Defects of neural tube closure constitute some of the most common congenital malformations affecting the nervous system, occurring in 1:1000 live births. Spina bifida with associated meningomyelocele or meningocele is commonly found in the lumbar region. Depending on the extent and severity of the involvement of the spinal cord and peripheral nerves, lower extremity weakness, bowel and bladder dysfunction, and hip dislocation may be present. Delivery via cesarean section followed by early surgical closure of meningoceles and meningomyeloceles is usually indicated. Additional treatment is necessary to manage chronic abnormalities of the urinary tract, orthopedic abnormalities such as kyphosis and scoliosis, and paresis of the lower extremities. Hydrocephalus associated with meningomyelocele usually requires ventriculoperitoneal shunting.

» Diagnosis & Prevention

In general, the diagnosis of neural tube defects is obvious at the time of birth. The diagnosis may be strongly suspected prenatally on the basis of ultrasonographic findings and the presence of elevated α-fetoprotein in the amniotic fluid. All women of childbearing age should take prophylactic folate, which can prevent these defects and decrease the risk of recurrence by 70%.

2. Disorders of Cortical Development

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Malformations of cortical development (MCD) can be diffuse, patchy, unilateral, or focal, which is dependent on the timing of the disruption of brain development.
- Clinical presentations is variable and can be divided into large groups: early diffuse MCD with poor developmental and neurologic outcomes and later-onset MCD with variable outcomes due to patchy brain involvement.

Human intellectual and sensorimotor skills depend on the evolutionary process of cortical development and folding. Disruption of cortical development, therefore, leads to direct consequences in children's capacity to learn, perceive their environment, and function independently. Malformations of cortical development are a diverse group of disorders characterized by disruption of the cortical ribbon primarily identified by MRI. Although MCD was historically classified based on stages of brain development disrupted, the field of neurogenetics has unveiled over a hundred genetic mutations leading to a wide array of overlapping structural phenotypes.

» Pathogenesis

MCD can occur when one of the three primary stages of cortical development are disrupted: (1) neuronal and glial proliferation or apoptosis, (2) neuronal migration, or (3) post-migrational development. The 100+ genes associated with MCD include cell-cycle regulation, angiogenesis, protein synthesis, apoptosis, cell-fate specification, cytoskeletal structure and function, neuronal migration and basement-membrane function, and many inborn errors of metabolism.

» Clinical findings

Clinical presentations is variable and can be divided into large groups dependent on timing of cortical development disruption, extent of cortical involvement, and neurologic impact: (1) early diffuse MCD with poor developmental and neurologic outcomes and (2) later-onset MCD with variable outcomes due to patchy brain involvement.

Early diffuse MCD can have a variety of systemic difficulties including feeding problems, seizures, global developmental delay, micro or macrocephaly, hydrocephalus, movement disorders, autonomic dysregulation, mood instability, sleep disruption, attention disorder, and vision and hearing loss.

Late onset patchy or focal MCD can commonly have near normal to normal neurologic development. Children and adolescents will come to medical attention because of seizures, but occasionally when the abnormality of cortical development is found incidentally on neuroimaging for unrelated symptoms (eg, Head injury or headaches). Individuals may have learning disabilities, attention deficit, and focal epilepsy.

» Differential Diagnosis

A. Megalencephaly

Megalencephaly is an example of neuronal and glial proliferation dysfunction and results in a brain size that is greater than 3 standard deviations above the mean for age and gender. Megalencephaly can on MRI show normal cortical development, polymicrogyria, and hemimegalencephaly. The same genetic pathway, P13K-ART, has been found in all three phenotypes.

B. Lissencephaly and Subcortical Band Heterotopia

Lissencephaly is the classic example of abnormal migration. This severe malformation of the brain is characterized by a smooth cortical surface with minimal sulcal and gyral development similar to a fetal brain at the end of the first trimester. Lissencephalic brains have a primitive cytoarchitectural construction with a four-layered cerebral mantle instead of the mature six-layered mantle. Quantities of pachygyria (thick gyri) and agyria (absence of gyri) may vary in an anterior to posterior gradient and help guide genetic diagnosis. Patients with lissencephaly usually have severe neurodevelopmental delay, microcephaly, and seizures (including infantile spasms); however, there is significant phenotypic heterogeneity. These disorders are autosomal recessive and X-linked disorders. LIS1 mutations on chromosome 17 are associated with dysmorphic features (Miller-Dieker syndrome). Another autosomal recessive mutation, involving the RELN gene, results in a lissencephaly with severe hippocampal and cerebellar hypoplasia. X-linked syndromes involving mutations in DCX (double cortin) and ARX (associated with ambiguous genitalia) affect males with lissencephaly and females with band heterotopias or agenesis of the corpus callosum.

Lissencephaly with hydrocephalus, cerebellar malformations, or muscular dystrophy may occur in Walker-Warburg syndrome (POMT1 mutation), Fukuyama muscular dystrophy (fukutin mutation), and muscle-eye-brain disease (POMGnT1 mutation). It is particularly important to identify these syndromes not only because clinical tests are available, but also because of their genetic implications. Lissencephaly may be a component of Zellweger syndrome, a metabolic peroxisomal abnormality with the presence of elevated concentrations of very-long-chain fatty acids in plasma. No specific treatment for lissencephaly is available, and seizures are often difficult to control with standard medications.

C. Polymicrogyria with or without schizencephaly

Polymicrogyria is a post-migrational disorder. Subcategories of polymicrogyria include those associated with schizencephaly and bilateral perisylvian polymicrogyria. Patients with bilateral perisylvian polymicrogyria may have pseudobulbar palsy, variable cognitive deficits, facial diplegia with dysarthria and drooling, developmental delay, and epilepsy. Etiologies of polymicrogyria vary including genetic mutations, infectious, and vascular causes.

» Treatment

Treatment of MCD center on early child development intervention and focused symptomatic treatment (eg, attention deficit, hearing impairment, physical therapy for gait abnormalities, etc).

3. Disorders of Cerebellum Development

A. Arnold-Chiari Malformations

Arnold-Chiari malformation type I consists of elongation and displacement of the caudal end of the brainstem into the spinal canal with protrusion of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum. In association with this hindbrain malformation, minor to moderate abnormalities of the base of the skull often occur, including basilar impression (platybasia) and small foramen magnum. Arnold-Chiari malformation type I may remain asymptomatic for years, but in older children and young adults it may cause progressive ataxia, paresis of the lower cranial nerves, and progressive vertigo; rarely may it present with apnea or disordered breathing. Posterior cervical laminectomy may be necessary to provide relief from cervical cord compression. Ventriculoperitoneal shunting may be required for associated hydrocephalus.

Arnold-Chiari malformation type II consists of the malformations found in Arnold-Chiari type I plus an associated lumbar meningomyelocele. Hydrocephalus develops in approximately 90% of children with Arnold-Chiari malformation type II. These patients may also have aqueductal stenosis, hydromyelia or syringomyelia, and cortical dysplasias. The clinical manifestations of Arnold-Chiari malformation type II are most commonly caused by the associated hydrocephalus and meningomyelocele. In addition, dysfunction of the lower cranial nerves may be present. Up to 25% of patients may have epilepsy, likely secondary to the cortical dysplasias. Higher lesions of the thoracic or upper lumbar cord are associated with mild mental retardation in about half of patients, while over 85% of patients with lower level lesions have normal intelligence quotients (IQs). Many patients will develop a latex sensitivity or allergy.

Arnold-Chiari malformation type III is characterized by occipital encephalocele, a closure defect of the rostral (upper) end of the neural tube. Hydrocephalus is extremely common with this malformation.

B. Dandy-Walker Syndrome

Despite being described nearly a century ago, the exact definition of the Dandy-Walker syndrome is still debated. Classically, it is characterized by aplasia of the vermis, cystic enlargement of the fourth ventricle, rostral displacement of the tentorium, and absence or atresia of the foramina of Magendie and Luschka. Although hydrocephalus is usually not present congenitally, it develops within the first few months of life. Ninety percent of patients who develop hydrocephalus do so by age 1 year.

On physical examination, a rounded protuberance or exaggeration of the cranial occiput often exists. In the absence of hydrocephalus and increased intracranial pressure, few physical findings may be present to suggest neurologic dysfunction. An ataxic syndrome occurs in fewer than 20% of patients and is usually late in appearing. Many long-term neurologic deficits result directly from hydrocephalus. CT or MRI scanning of the head confirms diagnosis of Dandy-Walker syndrome. Treatment is directed at the management of hydrocephalus.

4. Agenesis of the Corpus Callosum

Agenesis of the corpus callosum, once thought to be a rare cerebral malformation, is more frequently diagnosed with modern neuroimaging techniques; occurring in 1:4000 births. The cause of this malformation is unknown. Occasionally it appears to be inherited in either an autosomal dominant or recessive pattern. It has been associated with X-linked patterns (ARX as mentioned earlier). Most cases are sporadic. Maldevelopment of the corpus callosum may be partial or complete. No specific syndrome is typical of agenesis of the corpus callosum, although many patients have seizures, developmental delay, microcephaly, or mental retardation.

Neurologic abnormalities may be related to microscopic cytoarchitectural abnormalities of the brain that occur in association with agenesis of the corpus callosum. The malformation may be found coincidentally by neuroimaging studies in otherwise normal patients and has been described as a coincidental finding at autopsy in neurologically normal individuals. A special form of agenesis of the corpus callosum occurs in Aicardi syndrome. In this X-linked disorder, agenesis of the corpus callosum is associated with other cystic intracerebral abnormalities, early infantile spasms, mental retardation, lacunar chorioretinopathy, and vertebral body abnormalities.

5. Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus is an increased volume of CSF with progressive ventricular dilation. In communicating hydrocephalus, CSF circulates through the ventricular system and into the subarachnoid space without obstruction. In noncommunicating hydrocephalus, an obstruction blocks the flow of CSF within the ventricular system or blocks the egress of CSF from the ventricular system into the subarachnoid space. A wide variety of disorders, such as hemorrhage, infection, tumors, and congenital malformations, may play a causal role in the development of hydrocephalus. The presence of radialized thumbs and aqueductal stenosis is suggestive of X-linked hydrocephalus due to the clinically testable neural cell adhesion molecule-L1 deficiency.

Clinical features of hydrocephalus include macrocephaly, an excessive rate of head growth, irritability, bulging or

full fontanelle, vomiting, loss of appetite, impaired upgaze, impaired extraocular movements, hypertonia of the lower extremities, and generalized hyperreflexia. Without treatment, optic atrophy may occur. In infants, papilledema may not be present, whereas older children with closed cranial sutures can eventually develop swelling of the optic disk. Hydrocephalus can be diagnosed on the basis of the clinical course, findings on physical examination, and CT or MRI scan.

Treatment of hydrocephalus is directed at providing an alternative outlet for CSF from the intracranial compartment. The most common method is ventriculoperitoneal shunting. Other treatment should be directed, if possible, at the underlying cause of the hydrocephalus.

Barkovich AJ, Guerrini R, Kuzniecky RI, Jackson GD, Dobyns WB: A developmental and genetic classification for malformations of cortical development: update 2012. Brain 2012;135 (Pt 5):1348–1369 [PMID: 22427329].

Doherty D et al: Pediatric perspective on prenatal counseling for myelomeningocele. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 2006;76:645 [PMID: 17001678].

Guerrini R, Dobyns W: Malformations of cortical development: clinical features and genetic causes. Lancet Neurol 2014;13:710–726 [PMID: 24932993].

Liu JS: Molecular genetics of neuronal migration disorders. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2011;11:171 [PMID: 21222180].

ABNORMAL HEAD SIZE

Bone plates of the skull have almost no intrinsic capacity to enlarge or grow. Unlike long bones, they depend on extrinsic forces to stimulate new bone formation at the suture lines. Although gravity and traction on bone by muscle and scalp probably stimulate some growth, the single most important stimulus for head growth during infancy and childhood is brain growth. Therefore, accurate assessment of head growth is one of the most important aspects of the neurologic examination of young children. A head circumference that is two standard deviations above or below the mean for age requires investigation and explanation.

1. Craniosynostosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Abnormal head shape
- When craniosynostosis occurs with other dysmorphologies, it is considered syndromic craniosynostosis

Craniosynostosis, or premature closure of cranial sutures, is usually sporadic and idiopathic occurring in 1 in 2000 live births.

» Clinical findings

Both idiopathic and genetic etiologies occur in children with craniosynostosis. Syndromic children, that is, those with other physical anomalies, are more likely to have a genetic etiology. For example, Apert syndrome and Crouzon disease are associated with abnormalities of the digits, extremities, and heart. An interdisciplinary approach is commonly required given the numerous other systems possibly involved including learning and development, oral health, visual and ocular abnormalities, hearing and middle ear abnormalities, and speech and language development. Craniosynostosis may be associated with an underlying metabolic disturbance such as hyperthyroidism and hypophosphatasia.

» Differential diagnosis

The most common form of craniosynostosis involves the sagittal suture and results in scaphocephaly, an elongation of the head in the anterior to posterior direction. Premature closure of the coronal sutures causes brachycephaly, an increase in cranial growth from left to right. Unless many or all cranial sutures close prematurely, intracranial volume will not be compromised, and the brain's growth will not be impaired. Closure of only one or a few sutures will not cause impaired brain growth or neurologic dysfunction.

A common complaint is abnormal head shape secondary to positional plagiocephaly due to supine sleep position ("positional"), not from occipital lambdoid suture craniosynostosis. Repositioning the head during naps (eg, with a rolled towel under one shoulder), and "tummy time" when awake are remedies. Rarely is a skull film or consultation necessary to rule out craniosynostosis. Most positional nonsynostotic plagiocephaly resolves by age 2 years.

» Treatment

Management of craniosynostosis is directed at preserving normal skull shape and consists of excising the fused suture and applying material to the edge of the craniectomy to prevent reossification of the bone edges. The best cosmetic effect on the skull is achieved when surgery is performed during the first 6 months of life. Inter-disciplinary team approach to manage all systems affected is essential in providing the best neurologic and psychological outcomes.

2. Microcephaly

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Head circumference more than 2 standard deviations below the mean for age and sex.
- Nearly always associated with developmental delay and learning difficulties.

Table 25–14. Causes of microcephaly.

Causes	Examples
Chromosomal	Trisomies 13, 18, 21
Malformation	Lissencephaly, schizencephaly
Syndromes	Rubenstein-Taybi, Cornelia de Lange, Angelman
Toxins	Alcohol, anticonvulsants (?), maternal phenylketonuria (PKU)
Infections (intrauterine)	TORCHS[a]
Radiation	Maternal pelvis, first and second trimester
Placental insufficiency	Toxemia, infection, small for gestational age
Familial	Autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive
Perinatal hypoxia, trauma	Birth asphyxia, injury
Infections (perinatal)	Bacterial meningitis (especially group B streptococci), Viral encephalitis (enterovirus, herpes simplex)
Metabolic	Glut-1 deficiency, PKU, maple syrup urine disease
Degenerative disease	Tay-Sachs, Krabbe

[a]TORCHS is a mnemonic for toxoplasmosis, other infections, rubella, cytomegalovirus, herpes simplex, and syphilis.

A head circumference more than two standard deviations below the mean for age and sex is by definition microcephaly. More important than a single head circumference measurement is the rate or pattern of head growth over time. Head circumference measurements that progressively drop to lower percentiles with increasing age are indicative of a process or condition that has impaired the brain's capacity to grow. Primary microcephaly is present at birth and secondary microcephaly develops postnatally. The causes of microcephaly are numerous. Some examples are listed in Table 25–14.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Microcephaly may be suspected in the full-term newborn and in infants up to age 6 months whose chest circumference exceeds the head circumference (unless the child is very obese). Microcephaly may be discovered when the child is examined because of delayed developmental milestones or neurologic problems, such as seizures or spasticity. There may be a marked backward slope of the forehead (as in familial microcephaly) with narrowing of the bitemporal diameter. The fontanelle may close earlier than expected, and sutures may be prominent. Abnormal dermatoglyphics (neurocutaneous marks) may be present when the injury occurred before 19 weeks' gestation. Parents' heads may need measurement to rule out a rare dominantly inherited familial microcephaly. Eye, cardiac, and bone abnormalities may also be clues to congenital infection.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings vary with the cause. In the newborn, IgM antibody titers for toxoplasmosis, rubella, CMV, herpes simplex virus, and syphilis and urine culture for CMV may be assessed for sign of congenital infection. Genetic testing can be targeted based on history and physical examination. Genetic screening tests may be considered such as array Comparative Genomic Hybridization (CGH) or karyotyping. Most metabolic disorders present either as congenital syndromic microcephaly (ie, dysmorphisms present on examination) or with postnatal microcephaly and global developmental delay. Nonsyndromic microcephaly presenting at birth may be due to maternal PKU (maternal serum with elevated phenylalanine), phosphoglycerate dehydrogenase deficiency (disorder of L-serine biosynthesis), or Amish lethal microcephaly (elevated urine alpha-ketoglutaric acid).

C. Imaging Studies

CT or MRI scans may aid in diagnosis and prognosis. These studies may demonstrate calcifications, malformations, or atrophic patterns that suggest specific congenital infections or genetic syndromes. Plain skull radiographs are of limited value. MRI is most helpful in definitive diagnosis, prognosis, and genetic counseling.

» Differential Diagnosis

Common forms of craniosynostosis involving sagittal, coronal, and lambdoidal sutures are associated with abnormally shaped heads but do not cause microcephaly. Recognizing treatable causes of undergrowth of the brain such as hypopituitarism or hypothyroidism and severe protein-calorie undernutrition is critical so that therapy can be initiated as early as possible. Refer to Table 25–14 for examples of causes of microcephaly.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Genetic counseling should be offered to the family of any infant with significant microcephaly. Many children with microcephaly are developmentally delayed. The notable exceptions are found in cases of hypopituitarism (rare) or familial autosomal dominant microcephaly. Individuals may need screening for vision and hearing abnormalities as well as supportive therapies for developmental delay.

Table 25–15. Causes of macrocephaly.

Causes	Examples
Pseudomacrocephaly, pseudohydrocephalus, catch-up growth crossing percentiles	Growing premature infant; recovery from malnutrition, congenital heart disease, postsurgical correction
Increased intracranial pressure With dilated ventricles With other mass	Progressive hydrocephalus, subdural effusion Arachnoid cyst, porencephalic cyst, brain tumor
Benign familial macrocephaly (idiopathic external hydrocephalus)	External hydrocephalus, benign enlargement of the subarachnoid spaces (synonyms)
Megalencephaly (large brain) With neurocutaneous disorder With gigantism With dwarfism Metabolic Lysosomal Other leukodystrophy	 Neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, etc Sotos syndrome Achondroplasia Mucopolysaccharidoses Metachromatic leukodystrophy (late) Canavan spongy degeneration
Thickened skull	Fibrous dysplasia (bone), hemolytic anemia (marrow), sicklemia, thalassemia

3. Macrocephaly

A head circumference more than two standard deviations above the mean for age and sex denotes macrocephaly. Rapid head growth rate suggests increased intracranial pressure, most likely caused by hydrocephalus, extra-axial fluid collections, or neoplasms. Macrocephaly with normal head growth rate suggests familial macrocephaly or true megalencephaly, as might occur in neurofibromatosis. Other causes and examples of macrocephaly are listed in Table 25–15.

» Differential Diagnosis

A. Catch-Up Growth

When a neurologically intact premature infant whose rapid head enlargement is most marked in the first weeks of life, or the infant in the early phase of recovery from deprivation dwarfism. As the expected normal size is reached, head growth slows and then resumes a normal growth pattern.

B. Familial Macrocephaly

This condition may exist when another family member has an unusually large head with no signs or symptoms referable to such disorders as neurocutaneous dysplasias (especially neurofibromatosis) or cerebral gigantism (Sotos syndrome), or when there are no significant mental or neurologic abnormalities in the child.

C. Hydrocephalus

See section Congenital Malformations of the Nervous System.

Other causes of macrocephaly are dependent on the etiology such as metabolic or genetic causes.

» Clinical Findings

Clinical and laboratory findings vary with the underlying process. In infants, transillumination of the skull with an intensely bright light in a completely darkened room may disclose subdural effusions, hydrocephalus, hydranencephaly, and cystic defects. A surgically or medically treatable condition must be ruled out. Thus, the first decision is whether and when to perform an imaging study.

A. Imaging Studies

An imaging study is necessary if signs or symptoms of increased intracranial pressure are present. If the fontanelle is open, cranial ultrasonography can assess ventricular size and diagnose or exclude hydrocephalus. CT or MRI scans are used to define any structural cause of macrocephaly and to identify an operable disorder. Even when the condition is untreatable (or does not require treatment), the information gained may permit more accurate diagnosis and prognosis, guide management and genetic counseling, and serve as a basis for comparison should future abnormal cranial growth or neurologic changes necessitate a repeat study.

Ashwal S, Michelson D, Plawner L, Dobyns W: Practice parameter: evaluation of the child with microcephaly (an evidence-based review): report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. Neurology 2009;73(11): 887–897 [PMID: 19752457].

McCarthy JG et al: Parameters of care for craniosynostosis. Cleft Palate Craniofac J. 2012;49:1S [PMID: 21848431].

Olney AH: Macrocephaly syndromes. Semin Pediatric Neurol 2007;14(3):128–135 [PMID: 17980309].

Purugganan OH: Abnormalities in head size. Pediatr Rev 2006;27:473 [PMID: 17142470].

Rogers GF: Deformational plagiocephaly, brachycephaly, and scaphocephaly. Part I: terminology, diagnosis, and etiopathogenesis. J Craniofac Surg 2011;22:9 [PMID: 21187783].

Von der Hagen et al: Diagnostic approach to microcephaly in childhood: a two-center study and review of the literature. Dev Med Child Neurol 2014;56:732 [PMID: 24617602].

NEUROCUTANEOUS DYSPLASIAS

Neurocutaneous dysplasias are diseases of the neuroectoderm and sometimes involve endoderm and mesoderm. Birthmarks and later appearing skin growths suggest a need

to look for brain, spinal cord, and eye disease. Hamartomas (histologically normal tissue growing abnormally rapidly or in aberrant sites) are common. The most common dysplasias are dominantly inherited. Benign and even malignant tumors may develop in these conditions.

1. Neurofibromatosis Type 1

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- More than six café au lait spots 5 mm in greatest diameter in prepubertal individuals and over 15 mm in greatest diameter in postpubertal individuals.
- Two or more neurofibromas of any type or one plexiform neurofibroma.
- Freckling in the axillary or inguinal regions.
- Optic glioma.
- Two or more Lisch nodules (iris hamartomas).
- Distinctive bony lesions, such as sphenoid dysplasia or thinning of long bone with or without pseudarthroses.
- First-degree relative (parent, sibling, offspring) with neurofibromatosis type 1 by above criteria.

Neurofibromatosis is a multisystem disorder with a prevalence of 1:3000. Fifty percent of cases are due to new mutations in the NF1 gene, which is located on chromosome 17q11.2 encoding neurofibromin. Forty percent of patients develop medical complications over their lifetime. Two or more positive criteria are diagnostic; others may appear over time. Children with six or more café au lait spots and no other positive criteria should be followed; 95% develop neurofibromatosis type 1.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The most common presenting symptoms are cognitive or psychomotor problems; 40% have learning disabilities, and 8% have intellectual disability. The history should focus on lumps or masses causing disfigurement, functional problems, or pain. Café au lait spots are seen in most affected children by age 1 year. The typical skin lesion is 10–30 mm, ovoid, and smooth-bordered. Discrete well demarcated neurofibromas or lipomas can occur at any age. Plexiform neurofibromas are diffuse and can invade normal tissue. They are congenital and are frequently detected during periods of rapid growth. If the face or a limb is involved, there may be associated hypertrophy or overgrowth.

Clinicians should evaluate head circumference, blood pressure, vision, hearing, spine for scoliosis, and limbs for pseudarthroses. Strabismus or amblyopia dictates a search for optic glioma, a common tumor in neurofibromatosis. The eye examination should include a check for proptosis and iris Lisch nodules. The optic disk should be examined for atrophy or papilledema. Any progressive or new neurologic deficit calls for studies to rule out tumor of the spinal cord or CNS. Short stature and precocious puberty are occasional findings.

Parents should be examined in detail. Family history is important in identifying dominant gene manifestations.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory tests are not likely to be of value in asymptomatic patients. Selected patients require brain MRI with special cuts through the optic nerves to rule out optic glioma. A common finding is hyperintense, nonmass lesions seen on T_2-weighted MRI images. These "unidentified bright objects" ("UBOs") often disappear with time. Hypertension necessitates evaluation of renal arteries for dysplasia and stenosis. Cognitive and school achievement testing may be indicated. Scoliosis or limb abnormalities should be studied by appropriate imaging.

» Differential Diagnosis

Patients with McCune-Albright syndrome often have larger café au lait spots with precocious puberty, polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, and hyperfunctioning endocrinopathies. One or two café au lait spots are often seen in normal children. A large solitary café au lait spot is usually innocent.

» Complications

Seizures, deafness, short stature, early puberty, and hypertension occur in less than 25% of patients with neurofibromatosis. Optic glioma occurs in about 15%. Although the tumor may be apparent at an early age, it rarely causes functional problems and is usually nonprogressive. Patients have a slightly increased risk (5% life risk) for various malignancies. Other tumors may be benign but may cause significant morbidity and mortality because of their size and location in a vital or enclosed space, for example, plexiform neurofibromas. These "benign" infiltrating tumors can disfigure facially, impair spinal cord, renal, or pelvic-leg function, and are often vexing to treat. PET scans are helpful to detect malignant transformations (to sarcoma). Experimental trials of interferons and mTOR inhibitors (rapamycin=sirolimus) are ongoing at many centers. Strokes from NF-1 cerebral arteriopathy are noteworthy; arteriopathy of renal arteries can cause reversible hypertension in childhood.

» Treatment

Genetic counseling and screening is important and the risk to siblings is 50%. The disease may be progressive, with serious complications occasionally seen. Patients sometimes worsen during puberty or pregnancy. Annual or semiannual visits are important in the early detection of school problems and bony or neurologic abnormalities.

The following parameters should be recorded at each annual visit:

1. Child's development and progress at school
2. Visual symptoms, visual acuity, and funduscopy until age 7 years (to detect optic pathway glioma, glaucoma)
3. Head circumference (rapid increase might indicate tumor or hydrocephalus)
4. Height (to detect abnormal pubertal development)
5. Weight (to detect abnormal pubertal development)
6. Pubertal development (to detect delayed or precocious puberty due to pituitary or hypothalamic lesion)
7. Blood pressure (to detect renal artery stenosis or pheochromocytoma)
8. Cardiovascular examination (for congenital heart disease, especially pulmonary stenosis)
9. Evaluation of spine (for scoliosis and underlying plexiform neurofibromas)
10. Evaluation of the skin (for cutaneous, subcutaneous, and plexiform neurofibromas)
11. Examination of other systems, depending on specific symptoms

Multidisciplinary clinics at medical centers around the United States are excellent resources. Prenatal diagnosis is probably on the horizon, but the variability of manifestations (trivial to severe) will make therapeutic abortion an unlikely option. Chromosomal linkage studies are under way (chromosome 17q11.2). Information for lay people and physicians is available from the National Neurofibromatosis Foundation (http://www.nf.org).

2. Neurofibromatosis Type 2

NF-2 is a dominantly inherited neoplasia syndrome manifested as bilateral vestibular schwannomas (VIII nerve tumors), which may appear in childhood (with loss of hearing, etc). Café au lait spots are not part of NF-2. In 50% of patients, the mutation occurs de novo (neither parent carrying the faulty gene). Tumors of cranial nerve VIII (Schwannomas) virtually never occur in neurofibromatosis type 1 but are the rule in neurofibromatosis type 2, a rare autosomal dominant disease. Café au lait spots are less common in neurofibromatosis type 2. Other tumors of the brain and spinal cord are common: meningiomas, other cranial nerve schwannomas, and ependymomas. Posterior lens cataracts are a third risk.

3. Tuberous Sclerosis (Bourneville Disease)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Atleast three hypomelanotic macules, each at least 5 mm in diameter.
- Angiofibromas, ungual fibromas, intraoral fibromas.
- Shagreen patch.
- CNS manifestations: subependymal nodules, cortical dysplasias, subependymal giant cell astrocytoma.
- Cardiac rhabdomyomas and angiomyolipomas.
- Hamartomas.

Tuberous sclerosis (TS) is a dominantly inherited disease. Almost all individuals have deletions on chromosome 9 (TSC1 gene) or 16 (TSC2 gene). The gene products hamartin and tuberin have tumor-suppressing effects, therefore TS patients are more susceptible to hamartomas in many organs and brain tubers and tumors. A triad of seizures, mental retardation, and adenoma sebaceum occurs in only 33% of patients. Parents formerly thought not to harbor the gene are now being diagnosed as asymptomatic carriers.

» Clinical Findings

Tuberous sclerosis has a wide spectrum of disease: asymptomatic with only skin findings to severe infantile spasms and mental retardation. Seizures in early infancy correlate with later mental retardation.

A. Symptoms and Signs (Table 25–16)

1. Dermatologic features—Skin findings bring most patients to the physician's attention. Ninety-six percent of patients have one or more hypomelanotic macules, facial angiofibromas, ungual fibromas, or shagreen (leathery orange peel) patches. Adenoma sebaceum (facial skin hamartomas) may first appear in early childhood, often on the cheek, chin, and dry sites of the skin where acne is not usually seen. Ash-leaf spots are off-white hypomelanotic macules often oval or "ash leaf" in shape and follow dermatomes. A Wood lamp (ultraviolet light) shows the macules more clearly. The equivalent to an ash leaf spot in the scalp is poliosis (whitened hair patch). Subungual and periungual fibromas are more common in the toes. Café au lait spots are occasionally seen. Fibrous or raised plaques may resemble coalescent angiofibromas.

Table 25–16. Major and minor criteria for tuberous sclerosis.

Major Features	Minor Features
Facial angiofibromas or forehead plaque Nontraumatic ungula or periungual fibroma Hypomelanotic macules (three or more) Shagreen patch (connective tissue nevus) Multiple retinal nodular hamartomas Glioneuronal hamartoma (cortical tuber) Subependymal nodule Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma Cardiac rhabdomyoma, single or multiple Lymphangiomyomatosis Renal angiomyolipoma	Multiple, randomly distributed pits in dental enamel Hamartomatous rectal polyps Bone cysts Cerebral white matter radial migration lines Gingival fibromas Nonrenal hamartoma Retinal achromic patch "Confetti" skin lesions Multiple renal cysts
Definite tuberous sclerosis complex: either two major features or one major feature plus two minor features	
Probable tuberous sclerosis complex: one major plus one minor feature	
Possible tuberous sclerosis complex: either one major feature or two or more minor features	

2. Neurologic features—Seizures are the most common and up to 20% of patients with infantile spasms have TS. Thus, any patient presenting with infantile spasms (and the parents as well) should be evaluated for this disorder. An imaging study of the CNS, such as a CT scan, may show calcified subependymal nodules; MRI may show dysmyelinating white matter lesions or cortical tubers. Virtually any kind of symptomatic seizure (eg, atypical absence, partial complex, and generalized tonic-clonic seizures) may occur. Mental retardation occurs in up to 50% of patients referred to tertiary care centers; the incidence is probably much lower in randomly selected patients. Patients with seizures are more prone to mental retardation or learning disabilities.

3. Renal lesions—Renal cysts or angiomyolipomas may be asymptomatic. Hematuria or obstruction of urine flow sometimes occurs; the latter requires operation. Ultrasonography of the kidneys should be done in any patient suspected of tuberous sclerosis, both to aid in diagnosis if lesions are found and to rule out renal obstructive disease.

4. Cardiopulmonary involvement—Rarely cystic lung disease may occur. Rhabdomyomas of the heart may be asymptomatic but can lead to outflow obstruction, conduction difficulties, and death. Chest radiographs and echocardiograms can detect these rare manifestations. Cardiac rhabdomyoma may be detected on prenatal ultrasound examination. Rhabdomyomas typically regress with age; thus, symptomatic presentations are typically in the perinatal period or infancy when rhabdomyomas are largest.

5. Eye involvement—Retinal hamartomas are often near the disk and usually asymptomatic.

6. Skeletal involvement—Cystic rarefactions can be found in the bones of the fingers or toes.

B. Imaging Studies and Special Tests

Plain radiographs may detect areas of thickening within the skull, spine, and pelvis, and cystic lesions in the hands and feet. Chest radiographs may show lung honeycombing. MR and CT imaging can show the virtually pathognomonic subependymal nodular calcifications, sometimes widened gyri or tubers, and brain tumors. Hypomyelinated lesions may be seen with MRI. EEG should be considered in any TS patient with new-onset spells concerning for seizures.

» Treatment

Therapy is as indicated by underlying disease (eg, seizures and tumors of the brain, kidney, and heart). Skin lesions on the face may need dermabrasion or laser treatment. Genetic counseling emphasizes identification of the carrier. The risk of appearance in offspring if either parent is a carrier is 50%. The patient should be seen annually for counseling and reexamination in childhood. Identification of the chromosomes (9,16; TSC1 and TSC2 genes) may in the future make intrauterine diagnosis possible. Treatment of refractory epilepsy may lead to surgical extirpation of epileptiform tuber sites.

Recent research has suggested the "mammalian target of rapamycin" (mTOR) inhibitors (eg, rapamycin) may inhibit epilepsy in tuberous sclerosis, even shrink dysplasia/tubers, tumors, adenoma sebacea, and possibly improve learning.

4. Encephalofacial Angiomatosis (Sturge-Weber Disease)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Port-wine birthmark.
- Capillary-venous malformation in the eye (choroidal angioma) and brain (leptomeningeal angioma).

Sturge-Weber disease is a sporadic neurovascular disease, which consists of a facial port wine nevus involving the

upper part of the face (in the first division of cranial nerve V), a venous angioma of the meninges in the occipitoparietal regions, and choroidal angioma. The syndrome has been described without the facial nevus (rare, type III, exclusive leptomeningeal angioma).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In infancy, the eye may show congenital glaucoma, or buphthalmos, with a cloudy, enlarged cornea. In early stages, the facial nevus may be the only indication, with no findings in the brain even on radiologic studies. Focal seizures are common in infancy. Cognitive impairment, headache and migraines, and stroke like symptoms are other neurologic manifestations. The characteristic cortical atrophy, calcifications of the cortex, and meningeal angiomatosis may appear with time, solidifying the diagnosis.

Physical examination may show hemiparesis on the side contralateral to the cerebral lesion. The facial nevus may be much more extensive than the first division of cranial nerve V; it can involve the lower face, mouth, lip, neck, and even torso. Hemiatrophy of the contralateral limbs may occur. Mental handicap may result from poorly controlled seizures. Late-appearing glaucoma and rarely CNS hemorrhage occur.

B. Imaging and Special Tests

Radiologic studies may show calcification of the cortex; CT scanning may show this much earlier than plain radiographic studies. MRI often shows underlying brain involvement.

The EEG often shows depression of voltage over the involved area in early stages; later, epileptiform abnormalities may be present focally.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes (rare) PHACES syndrome: **P**osterior fossa malformation, segmental (facial) **H**emangioma, **A**rterial abnormalities, **C**ardiac defects, **E**ye abnormalities, and **S**ternal (or ventral) defects; often, only portions of that list are present.

» Management & Treatment

Early control of seizures is important to avoid consequent developmental setback. If seizures do not occur, normal development can be anticipated. Careful examination of the newborn, with ophthalmologic assessment to detect early glaucoma, is indicated. Rarely, surgical removal of the involved meninges and the involved portion of the brain may be indicated, even hemispherectomy.

5. Von Hippel-Lindau Disease (Retrocerebellar Angiomatosis)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Retinal, central nervous, renal hemangioblastomas.
- Visceral cysts.
- Less frequently adrenal and extra-adrenal pheochromocytomas, pancreatic endocrine cancers, and endolymphatic sac tumors.

Von Hippel-Lindau disease is a rare, dominantly inherited condition with retinal and cerebellar hemangioblastomas; cysts of the kidneys, pancreas, and epididymis; and sometimes renal cancers. The patient may present with ataxia, slurred speech, and nystagmus due to a hemangioblastoma of the cerebellum or with a medullary spinal cord cystic hemangioblastoma. Retinal detachment may occur from hemorrhage or exudate in the retinal vascular malformation. Rarely a pancreatic cyst or renal tumor may be the presenting symptom.

The diagnostic criteria for the disease are a retinal or cerebellar hemangioblastoma with or without a positive family history, intra-abdominal cyst, or renal cancer.

Asthagiri AR et al: Neurofibromatosis type 2. Lancet 2009;373:1974 [Epub May 22].

Comi AM: Presentation, diagnosis, pathophysiology, and treatment of the neurologic features of Sturge-Weber syndrome. Neurologist 2011;17(4):1799 [PMID: 21712663].

Franz DN et al: Tuberous sclerosis complex: neurologic, renal and pulmonary manifestations. Neuropediatrics 2010;41:199 [PMID: 21210335].

Hirbe AC, Gutmann DH: Neurofibromatosis type 1: a multidisciplinary approach to care. Lancet Neural 2014;13(8):1474 [PMID: 25030515].

Kohrman MH: Emerging treatments in the management of tuberous sclerosis complex. Pediatr Neurol 2012;46:267 [PMID: 22520346].

Krueger DA, Northrup H; International Tuberous Sclerosis Complex Consensus Group: Tuberous sclerosis complex surveillance and management: recommendations of the 2012 International Tuerbous Sclerosis Complex Consensus Conference. Pediatr Neurol 2013;49(4)255–265 [PMID: 24053983].

Lorenzo J: Mental, motor, and language development of toddlers with neurofibromatosis type 1. J Pediatr 2011;158:660 [PMID: 21094952].

Maher ER, Neumann HP, Richard S: von Hippel-Lindau disease: a clinical and scientific review. Eur J Hum Genet 2011;19(6):617 [PMID: 21386872].

Ruggieri M et al: Natural history of neurofibromatosis type 2 with onset before the age of 1 year. Neurogenetics 2013:89–98 [PMID: 23377185].

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM DEGENERATIVE DISORDERS OF INFANCY & CHILDHOOD

The CNS degenerative disorders of infancy and childhood are characterized by arrest of psychomotor development and loss, usually progressive but at variable rates, of mental, motor, and visual functioning (Tables 25–17 and 25–18). Seizures are common especially in those with gray matter involvement. Symptoms and signs vary with age at onset and primary sites of involvement of specific types.

These disorders are fortunately rare. An early clinical pattern of decline often follows normal early development. Referral for sophisticated biochemical testing is usually necessary before a definitive diagnosis can be made. Patients with metachromatic leukodystrophy, Krabbe disease, and adrenoleukodystrophy are candidates for bone marrow transplantation. Treatment of some lysosomal storage diseases, such as Gaucher disease, with enzyme replacement therapy has shown promising results.

Augestad L et al: Occurrence of and mortality from childhood neuronal ceroid lipofuscinoses in Norway. J Child Neurol 2006;21:917 [PMID: 17092455].

Brunetti-Pierri N et al: GM1 gangliosidosis: review of clinical, molecular, and therapeutic aspects. Mol Genet Metabol 2008;94:391 [PMID: 18524657].

Costello DJ et al: Leukodystrophies: classification, diagnosis, and treatment. Neurologist 2009;15:319 [PMID: 19901710].

de Bie P et al: Molecular pathogenesis of Wilson and Menkes disease: correlation of mutations with molecular defects and disease phenotypes. J Med Genet 2007 Nov;44(11):673–688 [PMID: 17717039].

Finsterer J: Leigh and Leigh-like syndrome in children and adults. Pediatr Neurol 2008;39:223 [PMID: 1805359].

Fogel B et al: Clinical features and molecular genetics of autosomal recessive cerebellar ataxias. Lancet Neurol 2007;6:245 [PMID: 17303531].

Garbern J: Pelizaeus-Merzbacher disease: genetic and cellular pathogenesis. Cell Mol Life Sci 2007;64:50 [PMID: 17115121].

Gieselmann V et al: Metachromatic leukodystrophy—an update. Neuropediatrics 2010;41:1 [PMID: 20571983].

Gutierrez J et al: Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis: an update. Dev Med Child Neurol 2010;52:901 [PMID: 20561004].

Koehler W: Leukodystrophies with late disease onset: an update. Curr Opin Neurol 2010;23:234 [PMID: 20216214].

Krupp L et al: Consensus definitions proposed for pediatric multiple sclerosis and related disorders. Neurology 2007;68:S7 [PMID: 17438241].

Rakheja D et al: Juvenile neuronal ceroid-lipofuscinosis (Batten disease): a brief review and update. Curr Mol Med 2007;7:603 [PMID: 17896996].

Roos RA: Huntington's disease: a clinical review. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2010;5:40 [PMID: 21171977].

Van der Knapp MD et al: Megalencephalic leukoencephalopathy with cysts without MLC1 defect. Ann Neurol 2010;67:834 [PMID: 20517947].

Walker F: Huntington's disease. Lancet 2007;369:218 [PMID: 17240289].

ATAXIAS OF CHILDHOOD

ESSENTIALS FOR DIAGNOSIS

- Ataxia is most commonly due to cerebellar dysfunction but abnormalities at almost any level of the nervous system can result in motor incoordination.
- It is essential to distinguish between acquired and congenital ataxia as the evaluation, management, and outcome are determined by etiology.
- A detailed history and evaluation of truncal vs limb ataxia, mental status, and eye movements can provide the most useful diagnostic points in the formulation of the differential diagnosis.

Pathogenesis

In general, there are two major categories one should consider in the evaluation of ataxia. Acute acquired ataxia is a common reason for emergent neurologic consultation. The best approach in the evaluation of these children is obtaining a detailed history of the antecedent events and current symptoms, as well as a detailed neurologic. Typically these patients develop symptoms within 72 hours prior to their presentation to medical care, and they have been previously healthy without developmental delay or neurologic abnormalities. In contrast, congenital ataxias may be associated with central nervous system abnormalities, genetic abnormalities, or metabolic disorders. In this section, a brief overview of will be provided of the most common causes of acute and congenital ataxia, and the evaluation and the management of each.

ACUTE ATAXIAS OF CHILDHOOD

ESSENTIALS FOR DIAGNOSIS

- Symptoms may include refusal to walk due to ataxia, in addition to sudden development of a wide-based, drunken gait.
- Families may not report unsteadiness of arm movements, ataxia of the trunk, or dysarthria, but these symptoms are essential to localization.
- Serious causes include CNS infections and intracranial mass lesions.

Pathogenesis

Causes of acute ataxia that require emergent evaluation include increased intracranial pressure due to mass lesions.

Therefore, any history suggestive of this should be elicited, such as persistent or recurrent headaches, developmental regression, or blurred or double vision. A history of head of neck trauma should prompt evaluation for vertebral artery dissection. Other common causes include accidental or purposeful ingestion. The evaluation of an acutely ataxic patient can be difficult as the patient may refuse to participate in the examination due to the discomfort of being ataxic, causing them to be irritable or hesitant. Therefore, distinguishing between weakness and ataxia can be difficult, but it is essential to making the correct diagnosis.

» Clinical Findings

A thorough examination should be performed, with attention to signs suggesting a serious central nervous system disorder, such as mass lesions or central nervous system infections. Changes in mental status are particularly important to observe, as this suggests an ingestion, stroke, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, or opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome. The presence of papilledema and cranial nerve palsies suggests an intracranial focal lesion or hydrocephalus. Asymmetry in the examination would be unusual for acute cerebellar ataxia.

Once signs of serious CNS disorders have been sought, localization of the cerebellar lesion should be made. A midline cerebellar lesion may present with dysarthria or truncal titubation. In contrast, a lesion of the cerebellar hemispheres may present with sparse speech, dysmetria, tremor, or hypotonia. A patient with a hemispheric cerebellar lesion will tend to veer to the side of the lesion. A resting tremor, myoclonus, or opsoclonus will suggest a lesion affecting the deep cerebellar nuclei. Patient with cerebellar ataxia will not worsen with closed eyes, as a patient with sensory ataxia would.

A. Acute Cerebellar Ataxia

ESSENTIALS FOR DIAGNOSIS

- Symptoms may include refusal to walk due to ataxia, in addition to sudden development of a wide-based, drunken gait.
- Families may not report unsteadiness of arm movements, ataxia of the trunk, or dysarthria, but these symptoms are essential to localization.
- Serious causes include CNS infections and intracranial mass lesions.

1. Clinical findings—This is the most common cause of acute childhood ataxia, accounting for about 40% of all cases. It occurs most commonly in children aged 2–6 years. The onset is abrupt, and the evolution of symptoms is rapid. In about 70% of patients, a prodromal illness occurs with fever, respiratory or gastrointestinal symptoms, or an exanthem within 3 weeks of onset. Associated viral infections include varicella, rubeola, mumps, echovirus infections, poliomyelitis, infectious mononucleosis, and influenza. Bacterial infections such as scarlet fever and salmonellosis have also been incriminated. Typically, the symptoms evolve rapidly, but the severity can vary between patients. Some patients have such severe ataxia that they cannot walk, and others have only mild unsteadiness. Usually the limbs are not as affected as the trunk. Mental status is normal in these patients, as is sensory and reflex testing.

a. Laboratory testing—CSF opening pressure, protein, and glucose levels are typically normal, though a mild pleocytosis with lymphocytic predominance can be seen. Any significant elevation in WBC and protein level should prompt an evaluation for meningitis or encephalitis. Autoantibodies against Purkinje cells and other cerebral and cerebellar tissue have been described, but typically are not clinically useful to obtain.

b. Imaging findings—CT scans are typically normal, as are MR images of the brain. Occasionally focal cerebellar or cerebellopontine demyelinating lesions or enhancement of the meninges can be seen. Decreased regional blood flow in the cerebellum on SPECT without abnormal foci on MRI of the brain has also been reported.

2. Treatment—Treatment for acute cerebellar ataxia is supportive. Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg) has been used. Steroid use does not result in any improvement. About 80%–90% of patients recover without sequelae within 6–8 weeks, though some may demonstrate residual behavioral changes, learning problems, eye movement abnormalities, and speech problems.

B. Toxic Cerebellar Syndrome

1. Clinical findings—Ataxia due to toxins or medications accounts for as many as 32.5% of acute cases. Substances such as anticonvulsants, benzodiazepines, alcohol, and antihistamines, and less commonly organic chemicals and heavy metals can cause ataxia. In these cases, ataxia is usually accompanied by mental status changes, including lethargy, confusion, inappropriate speech and behavior, and in some cases, nystagmus or pupillary changes.

a. Laboratory testing—Urine toxicology screen may not detect specific medications, and therefore a detailed history is always helpful in guiding testing for specific medications. With the increased availability of legalized medical, recreational, and edible marijuana and its derivatives, a careful history of possible ingestions is critical.

b. Imaging findings—Imaging is usually normal for patients with toxic cerebellar syndrome.

2. Treatment—Treatment is guided by the ingested agent, and requires toxicological consultation.

C. Acute Demyelinating Encephalomyelitis

Ataxia is a common feature of acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis (ADEM), and like acute cerebellar ataxia, can occur after a viral infection or vaccination. However, this entity may be distinguished from acute cerebellar ataxia by the accompanying change in mental status or other associated difficulties such as seizures, cranial nerve palsies, or hemiparesis. These clinical events arise from presumed immune-mediated demyelination of the central nervous system. Refer to section Noninfectious Inflammatory Disorders of the Central Nervous System.

D. Posterior Circulation Stroke

Though rare, this should be considered as an etiology for ataxia if a history of neck trauma or family history of vascular abnormalities is present. Workup and management are discussed in section Cerebrovascular Disorders.

E. Paraneoplastic Syndromes

1. Clinical findings—Acute ataxia can occasionally be seen in the entity known as opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome (OMS). In its classic form, patients will present with ataxia; rapid chaotic conjugate, multidirectional eye movements (opsoclonus); and nonepileptic jerking of the head, extremities, and face (myoclonus). Some patients may additionally have sleep disturbance, cognitive dysfunction, and behavioral disruption. It is a rare disorder, with an incidence estimated to be 0.18 cases per million children per year. Atypical presentations can result in initial erroneous diagnoses, and appear similar to acute cerebellar ataxia, Guillain-Barre syndrome, or epileptic seizures. However, making the diagnosis has significant implications for treatment and prognosis. Therefore, proposed diagnostic criteria are 3 of the 4 features present: opsoclonus, myoclonus/ataxia, behavioral changes and/or sleep disruption, and neuroblastoma. Forty-eight percent of patients with OMS have a neuroblastoma detected. In patients without a neuroblastoma, few will have an identifiable cause, though parainfectious or postinfectious processes have been implicated in some cases.

a. Laboratory testing—A sensitive and specific biomarker for OMS is not available. Rare patients have autoantibodies against intracellular antigens, such as with anti-Hu or anti-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antibodies. None of these antibodies appear to be sensitive for the majority of patients. Laboratory evaluation for neuroblastoma or other malignancies should be pursued, with urine catecholamines, though these traditional methods to detect neuroblastoma are often insensitive in patients with OMS.

b. Imaging—All patients with OMS should undergo CT or MRI of the entire torso to evaluate for occult malignancies. Sometimes repeat testing is necessary to detect an occult malignancy.

2. Treatment—Gold standard treatment for OMS includes corticosteroids or adrenocorticotropic hormone with monthly IVIg, but no standard formulation or dosing is available, and the short-term benefits do not appear to predict a favorable long-term outcome. Additionally, relapses with dose tapering are common. Therefore, with the poor long-term outcome and the side effects of steroid use, alternative regimens have been used, including cyclophosphamide, chemotherapy to treat an identified neuroblastoma-associated OMS, and IVIG with ACTH and rituximab.

The long-term outcome for these patients is generally poor for patients both with and without neuroblastoma. From pooled data, 75%–80.6% of patients with OMS had abnormal neurologic findings at follow-up, including eye movement abnormalities, dysarthria, ataxia, and myoclonus. In addition, all patients had cognitive impairment, including language, attention, memory, and intellectual disability.

F. Sensory Ataxia

1. Clinical findings—Ataxia can result from loss of sensory input to the cerebellum due to posterior column of the spinal cord, nerve root, or peripheral nerve lesions. Etiologies may include Guillain-Barre syndrome (acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy) or its variant, Miller-Fisher syndrome; or toxins. These patients, in addition to ataxia, will demonstrate decreased reflexes, a Romberg sign, loss of proprioception and vibratory sensation, and a high steppage gait.

a. Laboratory testing—Testing for suspected Guillain-Barre syndrome should include a lumbar puncture. The CSF findings may show elevated protein with normal cells, known as albuminocytologic dissociation, but very early in the course can be normal in as many as 20% of children. Antibodies against GQ1b should be obtained if Miller-Fisher syndrome is suspected. Electrophysiologic testing with nerve conduction studies may also be helpful, though acutely there may be little in the way of abnormalities.

b. Imaging—MR imaging of the spine may show enhancement of the nerve roots in Guillain-Barre syndrome.

c. Special testing—Electromyography/nerve conduction study may be useful to identify an acquired demyelinating polyneuropathy such as Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS). Nerve conduction velocities will be slowed into the demyelinating range (motor conduction velocities in the upper extremities will be $\leq$ 38 m/s) in a patchy, nonuniform fashion. The sural sensory response is typically spared early in the disease. Conduction block and temporal dispersion are hallmarks of this acquired polyneuropathy.

2. Treatment—Both IVIg and plasmapheresis have been used in treatment of GBS. IVIg is typically used in a regimen

of 0.4 g/kg daily for 5 days. The typical regimen for PE is a total exchange of about 5 plasma volumes over a 2-week time period. A Cochrane review of the use of IVIg and PE showed no significant difference between the two treatments with respect to disability after 4 weeks, duration of mechanical ventilation, mortality, or residual disability. Steroid treatment has not been showed to be beneficial in GBS.

G. Basilar Migraine

A basilar migraine may present with ataxia. Typically, other accompanying neurologic signs are present, such as vertigo, nausea, vomiting, cranial nerve dysfunction, and headache. The patient's first episode may be concerning for a focal lesion and may prompt workup for a stroke. However, the description of positive visual phenomenon, such as flashing lights, suggests the migrainous nature of the episodes. Subsequent episodes, in the context of the history, are much easier to identify as basilar migraines.

H. Mass Lesions

Posterior fossa tumors arise from the cerebellum or the brainstem and typically present with slowly progressive ataxia and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure. About 45%–60% of all childhood brain tumors are posterior fossa tumors. Therefore, any patient with a history of nocturnal headaches, chronic headaches, nocturnal emesis, focal neurologic deficits, visual changes, or other signs concerning for mass lesion should have neuro-imaging performed immediately.

I. Functional Ataxia

In functional ataxia, the patient appears to lurch and stagger when walking, the gait is not wide-based, and falls are rare. The findings on the neurologic examination do not indicate neuroanatomic localization and therefore suggest functional ataxia.

Didelot A, Honnorat J: Paraneoplastic disorders of the central and peripheral nervous systems. Handb Clin Neurol 2014;121:1159–1179 [PMID: 24365410].

Gorman MP: Update on diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis in opsoclonus-myoclonus-ataxia syndrome. Curr Opin Pediatr 2010;22(6):745–750 [PMID: 20871403].

Hughes RA, Swan AV, van Doorn PA: Intravenous immunoglobulin for Guillain-Barre syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;(9):CD002063 [PMID: 25238327].

Krug P et al: Opsoclonus-myoclonus in children associated or not with neuroblastoma. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 2010;14(5):400–409 [PMID: 20110181].

Pang KK, de Sousa C, Lang B, Pike MG: A prospective study of the presentation and management of dancing eye syndrome/opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome in the United Kingdom. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 2010;14(2):156–161 [PMID: 19423368].

Pavone P et al: Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis: a long-term prospective study and meta-analysis. Neuropediatrics 2010;41(6):246–255 [PMID: 21445814].

Poretti A, Benson JE, Huisman TA, Bolthauser E: Acute ataxia in children. Neuropediatrics 2013;44(3):127–141 [PMID: 23254568].

CONGENITAL CAUSES OF CHRONIC & EPISODIC ATAXIAS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Establishing an inheritance pattern and temporal course is useful in determining the diagnosis.
- The findings of spasticity, ophthalmologic abnormalities, eye movement abnormalities, peripheral nervous system involvement, and seizures can be helpful in the evaluation of these patients.

» Pathogenesis

In considering congenital causes of ataxia, it is probably easiest for the general pediatrician to classify them by the disease progression, either progressive or intermittent/episodic. For instance, Friedreich ataxia and ataxia-telangiectasia are both progressive ataxias, with worsening of the ataxia over years. In contrast, in metabolic disorders such as maple syrup urine disease and channelopathies such as episodic ataxia type 1, ataxia occurs episodically and occasionally in response to a trigger. Further defining the ataxias by inheritance pattern is also useful in determining an etiology.

» Clinical Findings

Similar to the evaluation of a patient with acute onset of ataxia, the examination of a patient with congenital causes of ataxia should include localization of signs to the cerebellum, either the hemispheres or the vermis. Therefore, the presence of ataxia in the trunk and limbs should be noted, of nystagmus, of the quality of eye movements, and of reflexes. Many of the patients may have multisystemic involvement, which may provide diagnostic clues to the etiology.

INTERMITTENT/EPISODIC ATAXIAS

1. Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Inborn errors of metabolism should be considered when ataxia is either intermittent or progressive. Acute exacerbation or worsening after high protein ingestion, a long period of fasting, febrile illness, or other physical stress is suggestive of a metabolic disorder. Disorders in this category are

broad and beyond the scope of this text, but may include amino-acidopathies such as maple syrup urine disease, urea cycle defects such as ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency, lactic acidosis such as in Leigh disease, leukodystrophies, lysosomal disorders such as metachromatic leukodystrophy, peroxisomal disorders, and disorders of glycosylation. Because some of these etiologies can be treatable, diagnostic studies to consider include MRI of the brain, thyroid studies, vitamins E and B_{12}, serum ammonia, ceruloplasmin, serum amino acids, urine organic acids, serum lactate and pyruvate, serum biotinidase, EMG/NCS, serum cholesterol, very long chain fatty acids, phytanic acid, transferring isoelectric focusing, and lysosomal enzyme profile on leukocytes.

2. Channelopathies

Channelopathies are a broad category of neurologic disorders, and result from altered function of a voltage-gated ion channel which subsequently alters membrane excitability in neurons. This group includes the episodic ataxias and familial hemiplegic migraines. There are six recognized genetic forms of episodic ataxia (EA) at this time. They are generally inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion, with episodes of ataxia lasting from seconds to minutes. In some patients, the episodes of ataxia are precipitated by stress, exercise, startle, or fatigue. EA2 is the most common episodic ataxia. It is allelic with familial hemiplegic migraine and spinocerebellar ataxia 6, both of which can also result in ataxia. Typically the attacks in EA2 are more prolonged, lasting from hours to days.

PROGRESSIVE ATAXIAS

1. Autosomal Dominant Hereditary Ataxias

At this time, there are 40 described dominantly inherited spinocerebellar ataxias. The initial manifestation in infants can be hypotonia and delayed motor development, while in children the symptoms may include nystagmus, truncal and gait ataxia, spasticity, extensor plantar responses, and cognitive delay. Neurologic symptoms are progressive, with wheelchair-dependence late in the disorder. In addition, in contrast to the autosomal recessive hereditary ataxias, they may exhibit diverse neurologic symptoms, such as retinopathy, optic atrophy, extrapyramidal or pyramidal signs, peripheral neuropathy, cognitive impairment, or epilepsy. The neuroimaging findings can be relatively nonspecific for the various subtypes. However, three general patterns of atrophy on imaging have been described on brain MRI: pure cerebellar atrophy, olivopontocerebellar atrophy, and global brain atrophy. Because many of the spinocerebellar ataxias have overlapping clinical and radiographic phenotypes and there is significant intrafamilial and interfamilial variability in the clinical presentation, confirmation by genetic testing of the subtype of spinocerebellar ataxia may be helpful for genetic counseling. Treatment in these patients is typically symptomatic, with use of acetazolamide for ataxia, and the use of baclofen for spasticity.

2. Autosomal Recessive Hereditary Ataxias

Most autosomal recessive ataxias are early onset, before 20 years of age. These patients, like those with autosomal dominant forms, also develop spinocerebellar ataxia, with poor balance with falls, difficulty with hand coordination, dysarthria, vertigo, and diplopia. In addition, they are generally associated with peripheral neuropathy, with loss of proprioception and vibratory sense. Areflexia is more commonly seen in autosomal recessive ataxias. Unlike the autosomal dominant inherited disorders, they typically do not exhibit other neurologic symptoms, such as seizures, but they do tend to involve systems outside of the nervous system. The two most commonly encountered autosomal recessive hereditary ataxias that may be seen by the general pediatrician are Friedreich ataxia and ataxia-telangiectasia and will be discussed below.

A. Friedreich Ataxia

Friedreich ataxia is the most common of the autosomal recessive ataxias, with a prevalence of about 1 in 30,000–50,000, and a carrier rate of 1 in 85. Typically, patients present between the ages of 5–25 years, with progressive gait and limb ataxia, dysarthria, loss of proprioception and vibration, areflexia, abnormal eye movements, and pyramidal weakness of the feet with upgoing toes. In addition, patients develop systemic symptoms, and may have associated pes cavus, cardiomyopathy, diabetes, and scoliosis.

1. Laboratory testing—The diagnosis is made by performing genetic testing. Ninety eight percent of patients have a triplet GAA expansion in the frataxin gene on chromosome 9q13. In general, a greater number of repeats predicts an earlier onset of disease, more severe systemic manifestations, and more severe ataxia.

2. Imaging—Neuroimaging does not show progressive cerebellar degeneration, unlike the other inherited ataxias. Mild atrophy of the cervical spinal cord may be seen.

3. Treatment—Because of the multisystem involvement in Friedreich ataxia, yearly screening needs to be performed with an x-ray to monitor scoliosis; serum glucose and hemoglobin A1C to monitor for the onset of diabetes, and echocardiogram to monitor cardiomyopathy. Current evidence suggests that frataxin has a role in mitochondrial iron handling and respiratory chain function. Therefore, treatment trials have targeted antioxidant protection. Trials have demonstrated that coenzyme Q10 and vitamin E can result in improvement in cardiac symptoms, and low-dose

idebenone can reduce cardiac hypertrophy. However, none of these have resulted in improvement in neurologic symptoms, and therefore treatment of the progressive neurologic symptoms remains symptomatic.

B. Ataxia-Telangiectasia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Symptoms can occur before 5 years with hypotonia and clumsiness.
- Cerebellar ataxia is progressive with worsening slurred speech, abnormalities of eye movements, and movement disorders.
- Conjunctival telangiectasia are usually present.
- Patients have recurrent infections at an early age.

Ataxia-telangiectasia is a multisystem disorder arising from a defect in DNA repair. Patients with classic ataxia-telangiectasia present with slurred speech, truncal ataxia, and oculomotor apraxia between the ages of 1 and 4 years. Choreoathetosis is found in nearly all patients with ataxia-telangiectasia. A sensorimotor axonal neuropathy can be present. Deep tendon reflexes are decreased or absent in older patients. Plantar reflexes are upgoing or absent. Nonneurologic manifestations include oculocutaneous telangiectasias, recurrent sinopulmonary infections, and hypersensitivity to ionizing radiation with increased susceptibility to cancers, usually leukemia or lymphoma. Premature aging with strands of gray hair and insulin-resistant diabetes mellitus may also be features. Because of the multisystem involvement, multidisciplinary care is often required in their care. After Friedreich ataxia, this is the most common autosomal recessive ataxia, with an estimated prevalence of 1:40,000 to 1:100,000 live births. Greater than 99% of individuals with classic ataxia-telangiectasias have mutations in the ATM gene.

1. Laboratory testing—The serum alpha-fetoprotein level which is typically elevated in these patients to 10 ng/mL or higher, and can remain normal in unaffected children until age 24 months. Immunodeficiencies of IgA and IgE are common. To establish a diagnosis, an immunoblotting assay of the ATM protein level should be performed. Patients with absent or trace amounts of the ATM protein have a definitive diagnosis of ataxia-telangiectasia. Molecular genetic testing of the ATM gene can identify the disease-causing mutations.

2. Imaging—Though a small cerebellum can be seen in older patients on neuroimaging, it is typically not seen in children.

3. Treatment—To establish the extent of systemic involvement in ataxia-telangiectasia, screening should be performed at diagnosis. This should include screening for infectious and oncologic involvement with chest x-ray, pulmonary function testing, CBC with differential, immunoglobulin levels, B/T cell levels, and T-cell function. In addition, screening for diabetes should be performed with a urinalysis, fasting blood glucose, and hemoglobin A1C. Neurologic evaluation should be performed regularly to monitor for disease progression, including ocular coordination, and brain imaging. Patients should report any easy bruising, weight loss, or localized swelling to their physician as this may be an early manifestation of malignancy.

Treatment is symptomatic in these patients, though several compounds are under investigation in clinical trials. IVIg replacement should be considered in patients with frequent and severe infections and very low IgG levels, as well as aggressive pulmonary toilet. The neurologic manifestations are treated symptomatically to minimize drooling and ataxia. Most patients will require a wheelchair by 10 years of age. Contractures and scoliosis can limit function, and physical therapy instituted early and continuously can minimize the development of both. Though steroids may decrease the neurologic symptoms, discontinuation of steroids results in return of the neurologic symptoms. Mutation-targeted therapy such as with antisense oligonucleotides appears promising.

3. X-Linked Cerebellar Ataxias

Fragile X tremor ataxia syndrome has not been documented to occur before 50 years of age, but will be included here as a rare cause of an X-linked inherited ataxia. Patients typically exhibit tremor or ataxia, in inverse relationship to the number of CGG triplet repeat expansions they harbor. In addition, they may also present with varying combinations of parkinsonism, autonomic dysfunction, polyneuropathy, and cognitive deficits.

Jayadev S, Bird TD: Hereditary ataxias. Genet Med 2013:15(9): 673–683 [PMID: 23538602].
Kullman DM: Neurologic channelopathies. Annu Rev Neurosci 2010;33:151–172 [PMID: 20331364].
Manto M, Marmolino D: Cerebellar ataxias. Curr Opin Neurol 2009;22:419–429 [PMID: 19421057].
Marmolino D: Friedrich's ataxia. Brain Res Rev 2011:67(1–2): 311–330 [PMID: 21550666].
Rossi M et al: Autosomal dominant cerebellar ataxias. Eur J Neurol 2014;21(4):607–615 [PMID: 24765663].
Ryan DP, Ptacek LJ: Episodic neurologic channelopathies. Neuron 2010;68:282–292 [PMID: 20955935].
Sivaswamy L: Approach to acute ataxia in childhood. Pediatr Ann 2014;43(4):153–159 [PMID: 24716557].
Storey E: Genetic cerebellar ataxias. Semin Neurol 2014;34(3): 280–292 [PMID: 25192506].

EXTRAPYRAMIDAL DISORDERS

Extrapyramidal disorders are characterized by the presence in the waking state of one or more of the following features: dyskinesias, athetosis, ballismus, tremors, rigidity, and dystonias. For the most part, the precise pathologic and anatomic localization of these disorders is not understood. Motor pathways synapsing in the striatum (putamen and caudate nucleus), globus pallidus, red nucleus, substantia nigra, and the body of Luys are involved and this system is modulated by pathways originating in the thalamus, cerebellum, and reticular formation.

1. Sydenham Post-Rheumatic Chorea

Sydenham chorea is characterized by an acute onset of choreiform movements, variable degrees of psychological disturbance, rheumatic endocarditis, and arthritis. Although the disorder follows infections with group A β-hemolytic streptococci, the interval between infection and chorea may be greatly prolonged; throat cultures may therefore be negative.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Chorea is characterized by rapid involuntary dis-coordinated movements of the limbs and face. Other symptoms and signs include emotional lability, waxing and waning ("milkmaid's") grip, darting tongue, "spooning" of the extended hands and their tendency to pronate, and knee jerks slow to return to their prestimulus position ("hung up" knee jerk). Hemichorea occurs in 20% of patients with Sydenham chorea.

B. Laboratory Findings and Special Tests

Anemia, leukocytosis, and an increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein may be present. The antistreptolysin O or anti-DNase titer (or both) are usually elevated, and C-reactive protein is present. Throat culture is sometimes positive for group A β-hemolytic streptococci.

ECG and echocardiography are often essential to detect cardiac involvement. If antineuronal antibodies (ANA) are present, chorea may be secondary to lupus. Similarly, antiphospholipid antibody (APA) may be elevated in autoimmune related chorea. Testing to exclude other causes may include thyroid screening tests, serum calcium for hypocalcemia, and immunologic and virologic tests for (rare) HIV, parvovirus B19, and Epstein-Barr virus infection.

A brain MRI should be obtained in all children with chorea to rule out basal ganglia structural abnormalities, inflammation, and tumor.

» Differential Diagnosis

The diagnosis of Sydenham chorea is usually not difficult. Chorea as mentioned above may be due to lupus or anti-phospholipid antibody syndrome. Benign hereditary chorea (BHS) is an autosomal dominant genetic disorder with a mutation in the TITFI/NKX2-1 gene. BHC has a variable presentation, which may include intellectual disability, hypotonia, congenital hypothyroidism, and chronic lung disease. Tics may mimic chorea. Drug-induced extrapyramidal syndromes, postpump cardiac surgery, dyskinetic CP, Huntington chorea, hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson disease), as well as other rare movement disorders, can usually be ruled out on historical and clinical grounds. Immunologic linkages among chorea, tics, and obsessive-compulsive disorder are being studied in pediatric patients.

» Treatment

There is no specific treatment. Prednisone (high-dose IV or orally 0.5–2 mg/kg/d in divided doses) and in severe cases IVIg has been successful. Anticonvulsant sodium valproate (50–60 mg/kg/d in divided doses) and levetiracetam (20–80 mg/kg/d divided into twice a day dosing) is effective in reducing chorea symptoms. Dopaminergic blockers such as haloperidol (0.5 mg/d to 3–6 mg/d) and pimozide (2–10 mg/d) are rarely used because of other effective medications and possible parkinsonian side effects such as rigidity and masked facies, and tardive dyskinesia. Emotional lability and depression sometimes warrant administration of antidepressants. All patients should be given antistreptococcal rheumatic fever prophylaxis with either monthly benzylpenicillin injections or oral penicillin VK 250 mg twice a day.

» Prognosis

Sydenham chorea is a self-limited disease that may last from a few weeks up to 18 months. Relapse of chorea may occur with nonspecific stress or illness—or with breakthrough streptococcal infections (if penicillin prophylaxis is not done). One-third of patients relapse one or more times, but the ultimate outcome does not appear to be worse in those with recurrences. In adult longitudinal follow up studies, eventual valvular heart disease occurred in about one-third of patients, particularly if other rheumatic manifestations had been present as part of the childhood illness. Psychoneurotic disturbances were also present in a significant percentage of patients.

2. Tics/Tourette syndrome

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Tics are repetitive, rapid, stereotyped, unwanted muscle contractions that involve discrete muscle groups.
- Tourette syndrome is characterized by multiple motor tics and at least one phonic tic with onset before age 21 years and occurring for at least one year.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Tics are quick repetitive but irregular movements, often stereotyped, and briefly suppressible. Coordination and muscle tone are not affected. A premonitory urge ("I had to do it") is unique to tics. Transient tics of childhood (12%–24% incidence in school-aged children) last from 1 month to 1 year and seldom need treatment.

Tics can occur anywhere on the body, but most commonly are found on the head, neck, and upper body. They usually come and go over time. Facial tics include grimaces, twitches, and blinking. When the trunk and extremities are involved, twisting or flinging movements may be present. Vocal tics are less common and are highly suggestive of Tourette syndrome. Vocal tics can manifest as grunting, throat clearing, and in complex cases, as utterances of words.

Tourette syndrome is characterized by multiple fluctuating motor and vocal tics with no obvious cause lasting more than 1 year. Tics evolve slowly, new ones being added to or replacing old ones. Coprolalia and echolalia are relatively infrequent. Complex motor tics are coordinated sequenced movements mimicking normal motor acts or gestures for example ear scratching, head shaking, twisting, and "giving the finger." Self-injurious behavior is not uncommon in Tourette syndrome.

The usual age for all tic disorders at onset is 4–8 years (median age 6), and the familial incidence is 35%–50%. Tics may be triggered by stimulants such as methylphenidate and dextroamphetamine. No single chromosome/gene defect is causative; many "hot spots" have been identified.

Important comorbidities are attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, learning disabilities, migraine (25%), sleep difficulties, anxiety states, and mood swings. Tics may persist into sleep.

B. Lab and Neuroimaging

Most patients presenting with tics require no special diagnostic workup. However if history suggest likelihood of secondary causes, targeting neuroimaging or genetic diagnosis may be helpful.

» Differential Diagnosis

Tics may be a symptom of other neurologic diseases such as brain injury, autism, Rett syndrome, and numerous genetic neurodevelopmental disorders. Acute brain lesion such as tumors, vascular, or infection usually will have other symptoms in history. Post-infectious causes such as pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorder associated with streptococcal infections has been long debated but should be considered if history suggests. Medications and toxins which may induce or worsen tics include amphetamines, cocaine, heroin, methylphenidate, pemoline, antipsychiatrics antidepressents, older generation antiepileptics, and levodopa.

» Treatment

The first question pediatricians should ask themselves when treating tics is whether the child needs to be treated. If the tics are not bothersome to the child and are not adversely affecting socialization, in most cases the tics can be monitored without treatment. Furthermore, given the high comorbidity of ADHD, obsessive-compulsive symptoms, and anxiety, it is crucial to determine if the child needs targeted treatment for the comorbidity, including cognitive behavioral therapy.

When choosing pharmacotherapy, tailor therapy to the child's needs, comorbidities, and avoidance of side-effects. The only two FDA-approved medications for Tourette syndrome are haloperidol and pimozide; however, given the risk of tardive dyskinesia and other unwanted side-effects, clinically they are reserved for use in difficult to control tic patients. Table 25–19 show the variety of agents used for treatment of Tourette syndrome. Clonidine and guanfacine should be considered in a child with co-morbid ADHD. Risperidone and olanzapine are also helpful in treating children with OCD or aggressive behaviors.

Nonpharmacologic treatment of Tourette syndrome includes education of patients, family members, and school personnel. In some cases, restructuring the school environment to prevent tension and teasing may be necessary. Supportive counseling, either at or outside school, should be provided. Habit reversal therapy ("HRT") is controversial,

Table 25–19. Medications for Tourette syndrome and tics.

Dopamine blockers (many are antipsychotics)[a]
Pimozide (Orap)
Aripiprazole (Abilify)[a]
Olanzapine (Zyprexa)[a]
Risperidone (Risperdal)
Serotonergic drugs[b]
Fluoxetine (Prozac)
Anafranil (Clomipramine) (a trycyclic) for > 10 y old
Noradrenergic drugs[c]
Clonidine (Catapres)
Guanfacine (Tenex)
Other
Selegiline (Eldepryl)[d]
Baclofen (Lioresal)
Pergolide (Permax)[d]
Clonazepam (Klonopin)
Levetiracetam (Keppra)
Topiramate (Topamax)

[a]Some off-label use.
[b]Useful for obsessive-compulsive disorder.
[c]Useful for attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.
[d]Dopamine-modulating.

very labor intensive, variably successful. More recently, comprehensive Behavioral Intervention for Tics (CBIT) is a new intensive (8 weekly visits) therapeutic approach; published results are favorable.

» Prognosis

In mild cases, tics are self-limited and wane with time. Most pediatric tic patients have transient tics of childhood (tics last less than 1 year), or chronic motor tics (> 1 year). When attention is paid to one tic, it may disappear only to be replaced by another that is often worse. Tourette Syndrome is considered a life-long disorder and may wax and wane, and in some severe cases may be disabling.

3. Paroxysmal Dyskinesias/Chronic Dystonia

Paroxysmal dyskinesias are sudden-onset, short-duration choreoathetosis or dystonia episodes (a sustained muscle contraction of limb or torso, frequently twisting or with abnormal posture). Most often these episodes are familial or genetic in origin. Episodes may occur spontaneously or be set off by actions ("kinesigenic," or movement-induced) such as rising from a chair, reaching for a glass, or walking. Sometimes only hard sustained exercise will induce the dyskinesia (Table 25–20). Nocturnal dyskinesia/dystonic episodes are currently thought to be frontal lobe seizures.

The diagnosis is clinical. Onset is usually in childhood; average age, 12 years. The patient is alert and often disconcerted during an episode. Episodes may last seconds to 5–20 minutes and occur several times daily or monthly. Laboratory work is normal. EEG is normal between or during an attack; brain imaging is normal. Inheritance is usually autosomal dominant. Anticonvulsants (eg, carbamazepine) usually prevent further attacks. Patients often grow out of this disease in one or two decades.

Table 25–20. Paroxysmal movement disorders (genetics).

Name	PKD[a]	PNKD[b]	PED[c]
Duration	Few minutes	2–10 min	5–40 min
Occurrence	Frequent	Occasional	Hyperventilation, exercise
Precipitants	Stress	Alcohol, caffeine, stress	Stress
Treatment	Anticonvulsants	Meds problematic, clonazepam?	Acetazolamide

[a]Paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia.
[b]Paroxysmal non-kinesigenic dyskinesia.
[c]Paroxysmal exercise-induced dyskinesia.

Chronic non-kinesigenic dyskinesia is often secondary to an identifiable brain lesion, less responsive to medications, and may or may not have genetic underpinnings.

Disorders of ion channels underlie many of the genetic cases; some cases are linked to epilepsy and hemiplegic migraine. Chromosome loci are known for the latter. Chronic dystonia in childhood is often "cerebral palsy" a "secondarily caused" movement disorder often from perinatal vicissitudes.

Other chronic dystonias may have an unidentifiable genetic cause: autosomal dominant. DYT-1 is the most common. The diagnosis of chronic persistent dystonia may be aided by spinal fluid neurotransmitter (DYT5) and readily available genetic chromosome studies. Any child with dystonia of unknown cause should have a trial of low-dose L-dopa; a prompt improvement suggests DYT5—a genetic cause with favorable outcome. Long-term oral L-dopa is very effective. Rarely, transient dyskinesia (eg, dystonia) may be precipitated by fever. While the cause of persistent dystonia is often genetic, underlying biochemical and structural causes (eg, Wilson disease, basal ganglia tumor or other pathology, hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (HIE), glutaric aciduria, etc) must be ruled out. Treatment for chronic dystonia may be specific if a syndrome cause is identified (eg, l-dopa for DYT5). Nonspecific treatment may be physical therapy (eg, for cerebral palsy) or medication trials with anticholinergics trihexyphenidyl (Artane), tetrabenazine, baclofen or botulism injections (eg, for a focal foot, or neck dystonia), or even chronic deep brain stimulation.

Persistent chorea (rarely) may be a benign lifelong genetic disease. Treatment is complex: l-dopa, anticholinergics (trihexyphenidyl, large doses), tetrabenazine, and baclofen are primary medications. A common cause of transient dystonia in childhood (adolescent) is a drug reaction to antipsychotic (eg, chlorpromazine) or antiemetics (phenothiazines, metoclopramide).

4. Tremor

The most common cause of persisting tremors in childhood is essential tremor; average age of onset is 12 years. Tremor is the third most common movement disorder, after restless legs and tics. Of those with this lifelong malady, 4.6% have onset in childhood (2–16 years). A genetic dominant inheritance is probable; 20%–80% afflicted report a relative with tremors. Tremor is worsened by anxiety, fatigue, stress, physical activity, and caffeine, and transiently improved by alcohol. Comorbidities include attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, dystonia, and possibly Tourette syndrome. Hand/arm tremor is the major manifestation; voice and head tremors are rare.

Laboratory studies are normal. No single chromosome/gene defect is known. Subtle abnormalities (eg, increased cerebellar blood flow) can be found in 25% in research studies. Progression is usually minimal; some patients develop other

movement disorders over a lifetime. Helpful medications (rarely needed long term) include propranolol or primidone.

Differential diagnosis includes birth asphyxia, Wilson disease, hyperthyroidism, and hypocalcemia; history and laboratory tests rule out these rare possibilities.

Recent research studies in adults utilizing proton MRS (magnetic resonance spectroscopy) suggest decreased nerve cells in the cerebellar cortex and increased harmane, a neurotoxin, at the same site. The latter suggests a possible environmental contribution to essential tremor.

5. Wilson Disease

(See also Chapter 22.) Wilson disease is a treatable and reversible genetic disease (AR). Half of patients with Wilson disease present with or have neuropsychiatric diseases; early symptoms may be as non-specific as school work deterioration or mild tremor. Wilson's should be ruled out in any child with any significant movement disorder or psychiatric disease in school-age children (adolescents, especially) with serum ceruloplasmin, liver function panel, and possibly 24-hour urine copper laboratory assessment. MRI may show hyperintense basal ganglia. Kayser-Fleischer rings seen with slit-lamp eye examination are virtually diagnostic in neurologically involved patients.

Cardoso F: Movement disorders in childhood. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 2014;20:S13–S16 [PMID: 24262164].

Fernandez-Alvarez E: Dystonia. the pediatric perspective. Eur J Neurol 2010;17:1:46 [PMID: 20590808].

Jankovic J, Kurlan R: Tourette syndrome: evolving concepts. Mov Disord 2011;26:1149 [PMID: 21484868].

Kurlan R: Clinical practice: Tourette syndrome. N Engl J Med 2010;363:2332 [PMID: 21142535].

Panzar J, Dalmau J: Movement disorders in paraneoplastic and autoimmune disease. Curr Opin Neurol 2011;24:346 [PMID: 21577108].

Pringsheim T et al: Canadian guidelines for the evidence-based treatment of tick disorders: pharmacotherapy. Can J Psychiatr 2012;57:133 [PMID: 22397999].

Sanger TD et al: Definition and classification of hyperkinetic movements in childhood. Mov Disord 2010;25:1538 [PMID: 20589866].

Singer HS, Gilbert DL, Wolf DS: Moving from PANDAS to CANS. J Pediatr 2012;160:725 [PMID: 22197466].

Steeves T et al: Canadian guidelines for the evidence-based treatment of tic disorders: behavioural therapy, deep brain stimulation, and transcranial magnetic stimulation. Can J Psychiatry 2012;57:144 [PMID: 22398000].

Williams KA, Swedo SE: Post-infectious autoimmune disorders: Sydenham's chorea, PANDAS and beyond. Brain Res 2014;S0006-8993(14):144–154 [PMID: 25301689].

CEREBRAL PALSY

The term cerebral palsy is a nonspecific term used to describe a chronic, static impairment of muscle tone, strength, coordination, or movements. The term implies that the condition is nonprogressive and originated from some type of cerebral insult or injury before birth, during delivery, or in the perinatal period. Other neurologic deficits or disorders (eg, blindness, deafness, or epilepsy) often coexist. Some form of cerebral palsy occurs in about 0.2% of neonatal survivors. The fundamental course, severity, precise manifestations, and prognosis vary widely.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The most common forms of cerebral palsy (75% of cases) involve spasticity of the limbs. A variety of terms denote the specific limb or combination of limbs affected: monoplegia (one limb); hemiplegia (arm and leg on same side of body, but arm more affected than leg); paraplegia (both legs affected with arms unaffected); quadriplegia (all four limbs affected equally). Ataxia is the second most common form of cerebral palsy, accounting for about 15% of cases. The ataxia frequently affects fine coordinated movements of the upper extremities, but may also involve lower extremities and trunk. A dyskinetic movement disorder usually in the form of choreoathetosis or dystonia accounts for 5% of cases and persistent hypotonia without spasticity for 1%.

Depending on the type and severity of the motor deficits, associated neurologic deficits or disorders may occur: seizures in up to 50%, mild mental retardation in 26%, and severe retardation in up to 27%. Disorders of language, speech, vision, hearing, and sensory perception are found in varying degrees and combinations.

The findings on physical examination are variable and are predominantly those of spasticity, hyperreflexia, and, less often ataxia, and/or involuntary movements. Microcephaly is frequently present. In patients with hemiplegia, the affected arm and leg may be smaller and shorter than the unaffected limbs. Cataracts, retinopathy, and congenital heart defects may be indicative of congenital infections such as CMV and rubella.

B. Laboratory and Imaging Tests

Appropriate laboratory studies depend on the history and physical findings. MRI scans may be helpful in understanding the full extent of cerebral injury, and occasionally neuroimaging results suggest specific etiologies (eg, periventricular calcifications in congenital CMV infections or brain malformations such as pachygyri or lissencephaly). Genetic and metabolic testing should be targeted based on history or MRI findings.

» Differential Diagnosis

The cause is often obscure or multifactorial. No definite etiologic diagnosis is possible in 25% of cases. The incidence is

high among infants small for gestational age or with extreme prematurity. Intrauterine hypoxia is a frequent cause. Other known causes are intrauterine bleeding, infections, toxins, congenital brain malformations, obstetric complications (including birth hypoxia), neonatal infections, kernicterus, neonatal hypoglycemia, metabolic disorders, and a small number of genetic syndromes.

» Treatment & Management

Treatment and management are directed at assisting the child to attain maximal neurologic functioning with appropriate physical, occupational, and speech therapy. Orthopedic monitoring and intervention and special educational assistance may all contribute to an improved outcome. Treatment of spasticity (with medications or botulinum toxin) and seizures are needed in many children. Constraint-induced movement therapy is being studied in controlled trials. Also important is the general support of the parents and family with counseling, educational programs, and support groups.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for patients with cerebral palsy depends greatly on the child's IQ, severity of the motor deficits, etiology of CP, and degree of incapacity. In severely affected children, aspiration, pneumonia, or other intercurrent infections are the most common causes of death.

In contrast, patients with mild cerebral palsy may improve with age. Some patients experience resolution of their motor deficits by age 7 years. Many children may have normal intellect have normal life spans and are able to lead productive, satisfying lives.

Blair E: Epidemiology of the cerebral palsies. Orthop Clin North Am 2010;41:441 [PMID: 20868877].

Delgado MR et al: Practice parameter: pharmacologic treatment of spasticity in children and adolescents with cerebral palsy (an evidence-based review). Neurology 2010;74:336 [PMID: 20101040].

Deon LL, Gaebler-Spira D: Assessment and treatment of movement disorders in children with cerebral palsy. Orthop Clin North Am 2010;41:507 [PMID: 20868881].

Dong VA et al: Studies comparing the efficacy of constraint-induced movement therapy and bimanual training in children with unilateral cerebral palsy: a systematic review. Dev Neurorehabil 2013;16(2):133–143 [PMID: 22946588].

Novacheck TF et al: Examination of the child with cerebral palsy. Orthop Clin North Am 2010;41:469 [PMID: 20868879].

Novak I et al: Clinical prognostic messages from a systematic review on cerebral palsy. Pediatrics 2012 Nov;130:e1285–e1312. Doi: 10.1542/peds. 2012-0924 [PMID: 23045562].

Rethlefsen SA: Classification systems in cerebral palsy. Orthop Clin North Am 2010;41:457 [PMID: 20868878].

INFECTIONS & INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Infections and inflammation of the CNS are among the most treatable neurologic conditions. However they also have a very high potential for causing catastrophic destruction of the nervous system. It is imperative for the clinician to recognize infections and inflammatory disorders of the CNS early in order to treat and prevent massive tissue destruction.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with CNS infections, whether caused by bacteria, viruses, or other microorganisms, present with similar manifestations. Systemic signs of infection include fever, malaise, and impaired heart, lung, liver, or kidney function. General features suggesting CNS infection include headache, stiff neck, fever or hypothermia, changes in mental status (including hyperirritability evolving into lethargy and coma), seizures, and focal sensory and motor deficits. Meningeal irritation is manifested by the presence of Kernig and Brudzinski signs. In very young infants, signs of meningeal irritation may be absent, and temperature instability and hypothermia are often more prominent than fever. In young infants, a bulging fontanelle and an increased head circumference are common. Papilledema may eventually develop, particularly in older children and adolescents. Cranial nerve palsies may develop acutely or gradually during the course of neurologic infections. No specific clinical sign or symptom is reliable in distinguishing bacterial infections from infections caused by other microbes.

During the initial clinical assessment, conditions that predispose the patient to infection of the CNS should be sought. Infections involving the sinuses or other structures in the head and neck region can result in direct extension of infection into the intracranial compartment. Open head injuries, recent neurosurgical procedures, immunodeficiency, and the presence of a mechanical shunt may predispose to intracranial infection.

B. Laboratory Findings

When CNS infections are suspected, blood should be obtained for a complete blood count, chemistry panel, and culture. Most important, however, is obtaining CSF. In the absence of focal neurologic deficits or signs of brainstem herniation, CSF should be obtained immediately from any patient in whom serious CNS infection is suspected. When papilledema or focal motor signs are present, a lumbar puncture may be delayed until a neuroimaging procedure has been done to exclude space-occupying lesions. Antimicrobial treatment must be started even if lumbar puncture is delayed. It is generally safe to obtain spinal fluid from infants

with nonfocal neurologic examination even if the fontanelle is bulging. Spinal fluid should be examined for the presence of red and white blood cells, protein concentration, glucose concentration, bacteria, and other microorganisms; a sample should be cultured. In addition, serologic, immunologic, and nucleic acid detection (PCR) tests may be performed on the spinal fluid in an attempt to identify the specific organism so that treatment may be customized. Spinal fluid that contains a high proportion of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, a high protein concentration, and a low glucose concentration strongly suggests bacterial infection (see Chapter 42). CSF containing predominantly lymphocytes, a high protein concentration, and a low glucose concentration suggests infection with mycobacteria, fungi, uncommon bacteria, and some viruses such as lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, herpes simplex virus, mumps virus, and arboviruses (see Chapters 40 and 43). CSF that contains a high proportion of lymphocytes, normal or only slightly elevated protein concentration, and a normal glucose concentration is suggestive of viral infections and CNS inflammatory disorders, although partially treated bacterial meningitis and parameningeal infections may also result in this CSF profile. Typical CSF findings in a variety of infectious and inflammatory disorders are shown in Table 25–2.

Herpes simplex virus infections can be confirmed using PCR to assay for herpes DNA in spinal fluid. This test has 95% sensitivity and 99% specificity. Brain biopsy may be needed to detect the rare PCR-negative case of herpes simplex, various parasitic infections, or in a suspected parainfectious or postinfectious cause with ambiguous spinal fluid findings (eg, vasculitis).

C. Imaging

Neuroimaging with CT and MRI scans may be helpful in demonstrating the presence of brain abscess, meningeal inflammation, or secondary problems such as venous and arterial infarctions, hemorrhages, and subdural effusions when these are suspected. In addition, these procedures may identify sinus or other focal infections in the head or neck region that are related to the CNS infection. CT bone windows may demonstrate bony abnormalities such as basilar fractures.

Although often nonspecific, EEGs may be helpful in the assessment of patients who have had seizures at the time of presentation. In some instances, such as herpes simplex virus or focal enterovirus infection, periodic lateralized epileptiform discharges (PLEDs) may be seen early in the course and may be one of the earliest study abnormalities to suggest the diagnosis. EEGs may also show focal slowing over regions of infarcts or (rare) abscesses.

BACTERIAL MENINGITIS

Bacterial infections of the CNS may present acutely (symptoms evolving rapidly over 1–24 hours), subacutely (symptoms evolving over more than 1 week). Diffuse bacterial infections involve the leptomeninges, superficial cortical structures, and blood vessels. Although the term meningitis is used to describe these infections, it should not be forgotten that the brain parenchyma is also inflamed and that blood vessel walls may be infiltrated by inflammatory cells that result in endothelial cell injury, vessel stenosis, and secondary ischemia and infarction. Overall clinical characteristics of bacterial meningitis (and viral meningoencephalitis) are outlined in Table 25–21.

Table 25–21. Encephalitis.

Definition: Inflammation of brain parenchyma
Clinically characterized by: fever, headache, impaired consciousness, seizures, focal neurologic deficit
Laboratory features include: CSF pleocytosis, elevated protein. Evaluation should include: CSF culture; viral PCR; serology
Radiographic features: focal or diffuse edema, abnormal T2 signal on MRI, diffusion weighted abnormalities consistent with ischemia
Pathologic features: perivascular cells, possible neuronophagia; edema, demyelination, gliosis
Infectious causes: (95%) enteroviruses, Mycoplasma, herpes, EBV, bacteria, fungi, protozoa
Some causes are mosquito- or tick-borne; seasonal
Para/Postinfectious (ADEM): post vaccination (> 70%) or post viral (< 5%); no etiologic agent is identified (25%)
Treatment: supportive
Herpes: acyclovir
ADEM: high dose steroids, IMG or plasma exchange
Broad spectrum antibiotics until cultures are negative

ADEM, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; IMG, intravenous immune globulin; PCR, polymerase chain reaction.
Data from Lewis P, Glaser CA: Encephalitis. Pediatr Rev 2005;26(10): 353–363.

Acutely, this inflammatory process may result in cerebral edema or impaired CSF flow through and out of the ventricular system, resulting in hydrocephalus.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

(See also Chapters 39, 40, and the section on bacterial infections in Chapter 42.)

While awaiting the results of diagnostic tests, the physician should start broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage. The appropriate antimicrobial varies with age to match the likely pathogens encountered. After specific organisms are identified, antibiotic therapy can be tailored based on antibiotic sensitivity patterns.

Suspected bacterial meningitis in neonates is treated initially with ampicillin and aminoglycoside, usually gentamicin. Cefotaxime may be added if gram negative organisms

are suspected. Ampicillin is used to treat Listeria and enterococci infections, which rarely affect older children. Thus, children older than 3 months are given ceftriaxone or cefotaxime plus vancomycin to empirically treat for the most common bacterial pathogens, penicillin-resistant S pneumoniae and N meningitides. Rifampin and dexamethasone use should be considered on a case by case basis. Therapy may be narrowed when organism sensitivity is determined. Duration of therapy is 7 days for meningococcal infections, 10 days for Haemophilus influenzae or pneumococcal infection, and 14–21 days for other organisms. Slow clinical response or the occurrence of complications may prolong the need for therapy.

B. General and Supportive Measures

Children with bacterial meningitis are often systemically ill. The following complications should be looked for and treated aggressively: hypovolemia, hypoglycemia, hyponatremia, acidosis, septic shock, increased intracranial pressure, seizures, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and metastatic infection (eg, pericarditis, arthritis, or pneumonia). Children should initially be monitored closely (cardiorespiratory monitor, strict fluid balance and frequent urine specific gravity assessment, daily weights, and neurologic assessment every few hours), not fed until neurologically stable, isolated until the organism is known, rehydrated with isotonic solutions until euvolemic, and then given intravenous fluids containing dextrose and sodium at no more than maintenance rate (assuming no unusual losses occur).

» Complications

Abnormalities of water and electrolyte balance result from either excessive or insufficient production of antidiuretic hormone and require careful monitoring and appropriate adjustments in fluid administration. Monitoring serum sodium every 8–12 hours during the first 1–2 days, and urine sodium if the inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone is suspected, usually uncovers significant problems.

Seizures occur in 20%–30% of children with bacterial meningitis. Seizures tend to be most common in neonates and less common in older children. Persistent focal seizures or focal seizures associated with focal neurologic deficits strongly suggest subdural effusion, abscess, or vascular lesions such as arterial infarct, cortical venous infarcts, or dural sinus thrombosis. Because generalized seizures in a metabolically compromised child may have severe sequelae, early recognition and therapy are critical.

Subdural effusions occur in up to a third of young children with S pneumoniae meningitis. Subdural effusions are often seen on CT scans of the head during the course of meningitis. They do not require treatment unless they are producing increased intracranial pressure or progressive mass effect. Although subdural effusions may be detected in children who have persistent fever, such effusions do not usually have to be sampled or drained if the infecting organism is H influenzae, meningococcus, or pneumococcus. These are usually sterilized with the standard treatment duration, and slowly waning fever during an otherwise uncomplicated recovery may be followed clinically. Under any other circumstance, however, aspiration of the fluid for documentation of sterilization or for relief of pressure should be considered. Prognosis is not worsened by subdural effusions.

Cerebral edema results in increased intracranial pressure, requiring treatment with dexamethasone, osmotic agents, diuretics, or hyperventilation; intracranial pressure monitoring may be needed.

Long-term sequelae of meningitis result from direct inflammatory destruction of brain cells, vascular injuries, or secondary gliosis. Focal motor and sensory deficits, visual impairment, hearing loss, seizures, hydrocephalus, and a variety of cranial nerve deficits can result. Sensorineural hearing loss in H influenzae meningitis occurs in approximately 5%–10% of patients during long-term follow-up. Early addition of dexamethasone to the antibiotic regimen may modestly decrease the risk of hearing loss in some children with bacterial meningitis (see Chapter 42).

In addition to the disorders mentioned, some patients with meningitis develop mild to severe cognitive impairment and severe behavioral disorders that limit their function at school and later performance in life.

BRAIN ABSCESS

» Clinical Findings

Patients with brain abscess often appear to have systemic illness similar to patients with bacterial meningitis, but in addition they show signs of focal neurologic deficits, papilledema, and other evidence of increased intracranial pressure or a mass lesion. Symptoms may be present for a week or more; children with bacterial meningitis usually present within a few days. Conditions predisposing to development of brain abscess include penetrating head trauma; chronic infection of the middle ear, mastoid, or sinuses (especially the frontal sinus); chronic dental or pulmonary infection; cardiovascular lesions allowing right-to-left shunting of blood (including arteriovenous malformations); and endocarditis. Sinus infections more characteristically cause subdural-epidural, orbital and forehead abscesses or empyemas, or cellulitis rather than parenchymal abscesses.

When brain abscess is strongly suspected, a neuroimaging procedure such as CT or MRI scan with contrast enhancement should be done prior to lumbar puncture. If a brain abscess is identified, lumbar puncture may be dangerous and rarely alters the choice of antibiotic or clinical management since the CSF abnormalities usually reflect

only parameningeal inflammation or are often normal. With spread from contiguous septic foci, streptococci and anaerobic bacteria are most common. Staphylococci most often enter from trauma or spread from distant or occult infections. Enteric organisms may form an abscess from chronic otitis. Unfortunately, cultures from a large number of brain abscesses are negative.

The diagnosis of brain abscess is based primarily on a strong clinical suspicion and confirmed by a neuroimaging procedure. Strongly positive inflammatory markers (erythrocyte sedimentation rate, C-reactive protein) may be supportive as normal results would be unlikely in patients with brain abscess. EEG changes are nonspecific but frequently demonstrate focal slowing in the region of brain abscess.

» Differential Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis of brain abscess includes any condition that produces focal neurologic deficits and increased intracranial pressure, such as neoplasms, subdural effusions, cerebral infarctions, and CNS infections.

» Treatment

When a primary source or contiguous foci is suspected a 3rd generation cephalosporin (Cefotaxime or Ceftriaxone) plus metronidazole is recommended. Penicillin G is an alternative to a cephalosporin. In posttraumatic and postsurgical cases, nafcillin or oxacillin plus a 3rd generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime or ceftriaxone) is recommended. Vancomycin should be considered as a substitute for nafcillin or oxacillin when methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus is suspected. Treatment may include neurologic consultation and anticonvulsant and edema therapy if necessary. In their early stages, brain abscesses are areas of focal cerebritis and can be treated with antibiotic therapies alone. Encapsulated abscesses require surgical drainage.

» Prognosis

The surgical mortality rate in the treatment of brain abscess is lower than 5%. Untreated cerebral abscesses lead to irreversible tissue destruction and may rupture into the ventricle, producing catastrophic deterioration in neurologic function and death. Because brain abscesses are often associated with systemic illness and systemic infections, the death rate is frequently high in these patients. Other poor prognostic indicators include rapid progression of disease and alteration of consciousness at the time of presentation.

VIRAL INFECTIONS

Viral infections of the CNS can involve primarily meninges (meningitis) (see Chapter 40) or cerebral parenchyma (encephalitis) (see Table 25–24). All patients, however, have some degree of involvement of both the meninges and cerebral parenchyma (meningoencephalitis). Many viral infections are generalized and diffuse, but some viruses, notably herpes simplex and some enteroviruses, characteristically cause prominent focal disease. Focal cerebral involvement is clearly evident on neuroimaging procedures. Some viruses have an affinity for specific CNS cell populations. Poliovirus and other enteroviruses (A71 and D68) can selectively infect anterior horn cells and some intracranial motor neurons.

Although most viral infections of the nervous system have an acute or subacute course in childhood, chronic infections can occur. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, for example, represents a chronic indolent infection caused by altered measles virus and is characterized clinically by progressive neurodegeneration and seizures.

Treatment of CNS viral infections is usually limited to symptomatic and supportive measures, except for herpes simplex virus, and some cases of varicella zoster virus infections where acyclovir is used. West Nile virus is an arthropod-borne flavivirus. It is found in mosquitoes, thus the highest incidence of West Nile virus infections occurs from July to October. The infection is now endemic in United States. This disease is often asymptomatic or mild in pediatric patients; paralysis and death occur mostly in the elderly.

ENCEPHALOPATHY OF HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS INFECTION

Neurologic syndromes associated directly with HIV infection include subacute encephalitis, meningitis, myelopathy, polyneuropathy, and myositis. In addition, secondary opportunistic infections of the CNS occur in patients with HIV-induced immunosuppression. Pneumocystis, Toxoplasma, and CMV infections are particularly common. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, a secondary papillomavirus infection, herpes simplex and varicella-zoster infections also occur frequently in patients with HIV infection. Various fungal (especially cryptococcal), mycobacterial, and bacterial infections have been described.

Neurologic abnormalities in these patients can also be the result of noninfectious neoplastic disorders. Primary CNS lymphoma and metastatic lymphoma to the nervous system are the most frequent neoplasms of the nervous system in these patients. See Chapters 33, 39, and 41 for diagnosis and management of HIV infection.

OTHER INFECTIONS

A wide variety of other microorganisms, including Toxoplasma, mycobacteria, spirochetes, rickettsiae, amoebae, and mycoplasma can cause CNS infections. CNS involvement in these infections is usually secondary to systemic infection or other predisposing factors. Appropriate cultures and serologic testing are required to confirm infections by these

organisms. Parenteral antimicrobial treatment for these infections is discussed in Chapter 39.

NONINFECTIOUS INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The differential diagnosis of bacterial, viral, and other microbial infections of the CNS includes disorders that cause inflammation but for which no specific causal organism has been identified. Sarcoidosis, Behçet disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, and other collagen-vascular disorders are examples. In these disorders, CNS inflammation usually occurs in association with characteristic systemic manifestations that facilitate diagnosis. Some CNS inflammatory disorders lead to demyelination syndromes described in Table 25–22. Management of CNS involvement in these disorders is the same as the treatment of the systemic illness.

1. Acute Demyelinating Encephalomyelitis (ADEM)

Inflammatory reactions within the nervous system may occur during the convalescent stage of systemic viral infections. Parainfectious or postinfectious inflammation of the CNS results in several well-recognized disorders: acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (ADEM; 25% of encephalitis), transverse myelitis, optic neuritis, polyneuritis, and GBS.

» Clinical Findings

A. Imaging

MRI findings in ADEM are distinctive: demyelinating lesions, seen on T_2 and FLAIR images, are key to the diagnosis. White matter lesions can mimic findings in multiple sclerosis (MS), but more likely are large and ill defined. White matter lesions may also involve gray matter such as cortex, basal ganglia, and thalamus. Radiologic changes are usually florid when the patient is first seen but occasionally emerge days later. In cases of uncertain diagnosis, serial or repeat scans may be necessary. Unlike the demyelinating lesions of MS, ADEM lesions usually resolve within months of presentation.

Table 25–22. Prominent features of CNS inflammatory demyelination syndromes.

ADEM	Encephalopathy and fever; may also have headache, meningismus
CIS	Mono or multifocal lesions without encephalopathy
NMO	Longitudinally extensive transverse myelitis, optic neuritis, may or may not be NMO-IgG+
Multiphasic ADEM	Rare; second event > 3 mo from onset of initial event; consider other etiologies
Pediatric MS	Relapsing and remitting, may be diagnosed after one attack if MRI criteria for separation in time and space are met

ADEM, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; CIS, clinically isolated syndrome; MS, multiple sclerosis; NMO, neuromyelitis optica.

B. Laboratory Findings

Lumbar puncture findings may be normal or mildly abnormal, with mild pleocytosis and elevation of the CSF protein in 25%–50% of cases. Oligoclonal bands are not typically seen in ADEM, but rather are commonly found in chronic, relapsing conditions like MS. Oligoclonal bands may also be seen in chronic infections and viral syndromes.

» Treatment

In cases of ADEM, corticosteroids are beneficial. Current practice is to administer high-dose therapy, followed by oral prednisone taper over 4–6 weeks. Most pediatric groups initially utilize intravenous methylprednisolone (10–30 mg/kg/d up to a maximum dose of 1 g/d) or dexamethasone (1 mg/kg/d) for 3–5 days (no comparative dose studies are available). In refractory patients, IVIg or plasmapheresis may be effective.

» Prognosis

Rarely, ADEM relapses within 3 months of onset. Recurrence more than 3 months after treatment should raise suspicion of MS, neuromyelitis optica (especially in cases of optic nerve or spinal cord involvement) or alternative cause. Congenital viral infections can also affect the CNS. CMV, herpes simplex virus, varicella, and (rare now, because of immunization) rubella virus are the most notable causes of viral brain injury in utero.

2. Paraneoplastic Syndromes

Paraneoplastic syndromes are increasingly recognized. These immune-mediated disorders are clinically heterogeneous with neurologic effects that can be both central and peripheral. The disorders are identified by autoantibodies to both intraneuronal and cell surface antigens. While the pathogenesis of these disorders is poorly understood, they are thought to result from misdirected immune response to shared epitopes between neuronal antigens and tumor antigens. Anti-NMDA receptor encephalitis is one example of a paraneoplastic syndrome that may precede detection of neoplasm, or result from post-viral immune dysregulation. Behavioral changes, autonomic instability, insomnia, aphasia, seizures, and movement disorders are prominent. Detection of the antibody is diagnostic. Immunotherapy, including glucocorticoids, IVIg, and/or plasma exchange are shown to be beneficial. Second line therapies include rituximab and/or cyclophosphamide for refractory cases.

OTHER PARAINFECTIOUS ENCEPHALOPATHIES

In association with systemic infections or other illnesses, CNS dysfunction may occur in the absence of direct CNS inflammation or infection. Reye syndrome is a prominent example of this type of encephalopathy that often occurs in association with varicella virus or other respiratory or systemic viral infections. In Reye syndrome, cerebral edema and cerebral dysfunction occur, but there is no evidence of any direct involvement of the nervous system by the associated microorganism or inflammation. Cerebral edema in Reye syndrome is accompanied by liver dysfunction and fatty infiltration of the liver. As a result of efforts to discourage use of aspirin in childhood febrile illnesses, the number of patients with Reye syndrome has markedly decreased. The precise relationship, however, between aspirin and Reye syndrome is unclear.

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

Pediatric MS accounts for 5%–10% of all MS cases. Over the last 10 years, we have learned more about the epidemiology, pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment of multiple sclerosis in children. Several exciting discoveries have highlighted the importance of genetic and environmental factors alone and in combination. Notable examples include HLA subtypes, viral exposures, smoking exposure, vitamin D deficiency, among others. Importantly, diagnostic criteria, including clinical, MRI, and laboratory studies are different among prepubertal patients when compared to postpubertal patients.

» Clinical Findings

The diagnosis of multiple sclerosis (MS) in a child remains challenging, given the limited diagnostic criteria and the occasional overlap with acute disseminated encephalomyelitis. Although there are many similarities between pediatric-onset and adult-onset MS, an earlier age at disease presentation seems to be associated with specific features such as encephalopathy, seizures, and brainstem and cerebellar symptoms.

A diagnosis of pediatric MS may be made after one episode of demyelination if the MRI scan meets criteria for dissemination in time and space. If these criteria are not met, the child is diagnosed with clinically isolated syndrome, for example: optic neuritis; transverse myelitis; or brainstem, cerebellar, or hemispheric dysfunction. Atypical clinical features of pediatric MS include fever and involvement of the peripheral nervous system or other organ systems, elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or marked CSF pleocytosis. Encephalopathy is more commonly associated with ADEM. However, in young children, MS exacerbations may present with encephalopathy, making differentiation of the two disorders difficult.

In addition, the initial brain MRI scan of younger patients shows more frequent involvement of the posterior fossa and higher numbers of ovoid, ill-defined T2-bright foci that often partially resolve on the follow-up scan. At present, there are several sophisticated MRI criteria to separate pediatric MS diagnosis from alternative diagnoses (eg, ADEM).

Finally, the spinal fluid in younger patients may fail to reveal oligoclonal bands or elevated IgG index at disease onset. There is no FDA-approved therapy for MS in children, but several studies are underway. Current practice is to use disease-modifying therapies that are approved for adults. Retrospective data has shown them to be effective in children.

» Differential Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis includes ADEM, idiopathic transverse myelitis, optic neuritis, rheumatologic disorders like systemic lupus erythematosis, Behcet and Sjogren syndrome and neuromyelitis optica. Many other infections, metabolic disorders, and degenerative diseases can mimic MS.

» Treatment

Acute treatment (mainly corticosteroids; sometimes IVIg or plasmapheresis) and prevention of relapses are extrapolated from adult studies and supported by retrospective review. Immunomodulatory treatment to prevent relapses in children include: interferon-beta 1a or glatiramer acetate (injections); oral agents fingolimod, teriflunomide, and dimethyl fumarate. Natalizumab, rituximab, or cyclophosphamide may be utilized in refractory patients.

Chang LY et al: Neurodevelopment and cognition in children after enterovirus 71 infection. N Engl J Med 2007;356:1226 [PMID: 17377160].

Chitnis T et al: Pediatric multiple sclerosis. Neurol Clin 2011;29:481 [PMID: 21439455].

Collongues N et al: Long-term follow-up of neuromyelitis optica with a pediatric onset. Neurology 2010;75:1084 [PMID: 20855851].

Cortese I et al: Evidence-based guideline update: plasmapheresis in neurologic disorders: report of the Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology 2011 Jan 18;76(3):294–300 [PMID: 21242498].

Dale RC et al: Cerebrospinal fluid B-cell expansion in longitudinally extensive transverse myelitis associated with neuromyelitis optica immunoglobulin G. Dev Med Child Neurol 2011 June 17:doi:10.1111 [PMID: 21679355].

Florance NR et al: Anti-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR) encephalitis in children and adolescents. Ann Neurol 2009;66:11 [PMID: 19670433].

Frohman EM, Wingerchuk DM: Clinical practice. Transverse myelitis. N Engl J Med 2010;363:564–572 [PMID: 20818891].

Graus F, Saiz A, Dalmau J: Antibodies and neuronal autoimmune disorders of the CNS. J Neurol 2010;257(4):509–517 [PMID: 20035430].

Hayes EB: West Nile virus disease in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2006;25:1065 [PMID: 17072131].
Helperin JJ et al: Practice parameter: treatment of nervous system Lyme disease (and evidence-based review). Neurology 2007;69:91 [PMID: 17522387].
Huppke P et al: Neuromyelitis optica and NMO-IgG in European pediatric patients. Neurology 2010;75:1740 [PMID: 21060098].
Krupp LB, Hertz DP (eds): Pediatric multiple sclerosis and related disorders. Neurology 2007;68(Suppl 2) [PMID: 17438241].
Kuntz NL et al: Treatment of multiple sclerosis in children and adolescents. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2010;11:505 [PMID: 20163265].
Lebas A et al: Expanding spectrum of encephalitis with NMDA receptor antibodies in young children. J Child Neurol 2010;25:742 [PMID: 19833974].
Lewis P, Glaser CA: Encephalitis. Pediatr Rev 2005;26:353 [PMID: 16199589].
Lindsey NP et al: West Nile virus disease in children, United States, 1999–2007. Pediatrics 2009;123(6):e1084 [PMID: 19482742].
Mata S, Lolli F: Neuromyelitis optica: an update. J Neurol Sci 2011;303(1–2):13 [PMID: 21300379].
Pasquinelli L: Enterovirus infections. Pediatr Rev 2006;27:e14 [PMID: 16473836].
Polman CH et al: Diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis: 2010 revisions to the McDonald criteria. Ann Neurol 2011 Feb;69(2):292–302. doi: 10.1002/ana.22366.
Sonneville R, Klein IF, Wolff M: Update on investigation and management of postinfectious encephalitis. Curr Opin Neurol 2010;23:300 [PMID: 20442573].
Torok M: Neurologic infections: clinical advances and emerging threats. Lancet Neurol 2007;6:16 [PMID: 17166795].
Van de Beek D et al: Corticosteroids for acute bacterial meningitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;1:CD004405 [PMID: 17253505].
Yeh EA et al: Multiple sclerosis therapies in pediatric patients with refractory multiple sclerosis. Arch Neurol 2011;68:437 [PMID: 21149803].

SYNDROMES PRESENTING AS ACUTE FLACCID WEAKNESS

» Pathogenesis

Flaccid paralysis in a child can occur as a result of a lesion anywhere along the neuroaxis. The key to diagnosis is localizing the lesion. Associated changes in reflexes, sensory changes, abnormal reflexes such as a positive Babinski's sign, and bowel and bladder changes can help in localizing the lesion. Mass lesions, infectious or postinfectious causes, toxins (eg, from a tick or due to botulism), and metabolic causes, are only a few of the etiologies that can cause acute weakness. A review of some of the more common causes of acute flaccid weakness and their associated findings are listed in Table 25–23.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Features assisting diagnosis are age, a history of preceding illness, rapidity of progression, cranial nerve findings, bowel and bladder changes, and sensory findings (Table 25–23). The finding of increased reflexes and upgoing toes suggests a CNS lesion. Fatigability in sucking on a bottle and constipation may be seen in infants with botulism. In GBS (also known as acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy [AIDP]), patients may initially present with an ascending paresthesia and loss of reflexes before they develop overt weakness. Patients with the Miller Fisher variant of GBS may present with a classic constellation of symptoms including ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, and loss of reflexes. Back pain is suggestive of a spinal cord lesion, such as in transverse myelitis or a spinal cord mass.

B. Laboratory Findings

When a spinal cord or brain lesion is suspected, MRI imaging may be helpful, and in fact is essential if a mass lesion is suspected. Once a mass lesion is excluded by imaging, CSF studies, including opening pressure, can be obtained. Viral cultures (CSF, throat, and stool) and titers aid in diagnosing poliomyelitis. A high sedimentation rate may suggest tumor, abscess, or autoimmune disorder.

EMG and nerve conduction studies (NCSs) can be helpful in diagnosing GBS. NCSs are particularly helpful after the first week when delayed or absent H or F reflexes are seen as the first changes. Later, motor NCSs show prolonged distal latency, conduction block or temporal dispersion, with these changes seen in 50% of patients by 2 weeks and 85% by 3 weeks. EMG findings of fibrillation potentials and increased compound muscle action potential amplitudes with high-frequency stimulation are suggestive of botulism. Rarely, elevation of muscle enzymes or even myoglobinuria may aid in diagnosis of acute myopathic weakness.

» Differential Diagnosis

While the differential diagnosis for acute weakness is broad, a short list of common and potentially treatable causes of acute weakness is listed in Table 25–26. Atypical presentations of viral infections such as with influenza A, West Nile virus, and enterovirus should be considered when a patient presents with symptoms of poliomyelitis. Ascending paresthesias and absent reflexes are often early signs of GBS. The weakness of the extremities, respiratory muscles and bulbar muscles can be followed rapidly thereafter. In previously healthy infants who present with acute weakness, botulism should be considered, particularly in endemic areas or with a history of ingesting honey or canned foods. Tick paralysis can be rapidly corrected with removal of the tick, but requires an index of suspicion and a careful search for the offending insect. Patients with transverse myelitis may present with acute weakness and absent reflexes, but in the ensuing weeks will develop hyperreflexia and increased tone in the regions below the area of the lesion.

» Complications

A. Respiratory Weakness and Failure

Early careful attention to ventilation is essential, especially in those patients with bulbar weakness and early signs of respiratory failure. Administration of oxygen, intubation, mechanical respiratory assistance, and careful suctioning of secretions may be required. Increasing anxiety and a rise in diastolic and systolic blood pressures are early signs of hypoxia. Cyanosis is a late sign. Deteriorating spirometric findings (forced expiratory volume in 1 second and total vital capacity) may indicate the need for controlled intubation and respiratory support and is an important mode of monitoring as blood gases may be normal even in late stages of respiratory failure.

B. Infections

Pneumonia is common, especially in patients with respiratory weakness. Antibiotic therapy is best guided by results of cultures. Bladder infections occur when an indwelling catheter is required because of bladder paralysis. Recovery from myelitis may be delayed by urinary tract infection.

C. Autonomic Crisis

This may be a cause of death in GBS. Strict attention to vital signs to detect and treat hypotension or hypertension and cardiac arrhythmias in an intensive care setting is advisable, at least early in the course and in severely ill patients.

» Treatment

Ticks causing paralysis must be removed. Botulism immune globulin administration shortens the hospitalization course in infant botulism, as can treatment with IVIg or plasmapheresis in GBS. Steroids, IVIg, and/or plasmapheresis have been used in transverse myelitis. Comorbid associated disorders (eg, endocrine, neoplastic, or toxic) should be treated by appropriate means. Supportive treatment is of the essence for all of the diagnoses, including pulmonary toilet, adequate fluids and nutrition, bladder and bowel care, prevention of decubitus ulcers, and in many cases, psychiatric support.

Ayscue P et al. Acute fladdic paralysis with anterior myelitis-California, June 2012-June 2014. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014;63(40):903–906 [PMID: 25299608].

Cortese I et al: Evidence-based guideline update: Plasmapheresis in neurologic disorders: report of the Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology 2011;76:294 [PMID: 21242498].

Dabritz HA et al: Molecular epidemiology of infant botulism in California and elsewhere, 1976-2010. J Infect Dis 2014;210(11):1711–1722 [PMID: 24924163].

Devia K, et al: Acute idiopathic transverse myelitis in children: early predictors of relapse and disability. Neurology 2014 [epub ahead of print] [PMID: 25540303].

Frohman EM, Wingerchuk DM: Transverse myelitis. N Engl J Med 2010;363:564 [PMID: 23818891].

Hughes RA et al: Intravenous immunoglobulin for Guillain-Barre syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010;Jun 16:CD002063 [PMID: 20556755].

Messacar K et al. A cluster of acute flaccid paralysis and cranial nerve dysfunction temporally associated with an outbreak of enterovirus D68 in children in Colorado, USA. Lancet 2015 Apr 25;385(9978):1662–1671 [PMID: 25638662].

Mori M, Kuwabara S: Fisher syndrome. Curr Treat Options Neurol 2011;13:71 [PMID: 21104459].

Pastula DM et al: Acute neurologic illness of unknown etiology in children-Colorado, August-September 2014. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014 10;63(40):901–902 [PMID: 25299607].

Pifko E, Price A, Sterner S: Infant Botulism and indications for administration of botulism immune globulin. Pediatr Emerg Care 2014;30(2):120 [PMID: 24488164].

Roodbol J et al: Recognizing Guillain-Barre syndrome in preschool children. Neurology 2011;76:807 [PMID: 21357832].

Walgaard C et al: Early recognition of poor prognosis in Guillain-Barre syndrome. Neurology 2011;968–975 [PMID: 21403108].

DISORDERS OF CHILDHOOD AFFECTING MUSCLES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Usually painless, symmetric proximal more than distal muscle weakness (positive Gowers sign, excessive lordosis with walking, waddling gait).
- » Preserved deep tendon reflexes compared with muscle weakness.
- » Normal to elevated serum creatine kinase (CK) levels.
- » Generally normal NCSs; myopathic findings on EMG.

» Clinical Findings

A. Laboratory Findings and Special Tests

1. Serum enzymes—Serum creatine kinase (CK) levels reflect muscle damage or "leaks" from muscle into plasma. Generally, CK levels are normal to mildly elevated in myopathies, and markedly elevated in muscular dystrophies up to 50–100 times, as in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Medications and activity level may affect CK levels, for instance after an EMG or muscle biopsy procedure. Corticosteroids may decrease levels despite very active muscle disease, for example, as in polymyositis.

2. Electrophysiologic studies—Nerve conduction study (NCS) and needle electromyography (EMG) are often helpful in differentiating myopathic from neurogenic processes. Generally, NCSs are normal in muscle disorders. In demyelinating

polyneuropathies, NCSs may show slowing of conduction velocities or conduction block. EMG involves inserting a needle electrode into muscle to record muscle electrical potentials. The examination includes assessment of abnormal spontaneous activity (eg, fibrillation and fasciculation potentials, myotonic discharges, myokymic discharges, and complex repetitive discharges) and motor unit action potentials (MUAPs). In the myopathies, MUAPs during contraction characteristically are of short duration, polyphasic, and increased in number for the strength of the contraction (increased interference pattern). In neuropathic processes, MUAPs are polyphasic, are of large amplitude, and show decreased recruitment.

3. Muscle biopsy—A muscle biopsy can be helpful in the diagnosis of a muscle disorder, if properly executed. It is important to consider the timing of the biopsy and the biopsied muscle should be chosen based upon the degree of weakness (ie, weaker muscles will show more pathology than strong muscles). Imaging with MRI or ultrasound may guide the choice of an appropriate site. Biopsies performed in the newborn period may be of limited utility as pathologic changes may not be evident in immature muscle. Care should be taken to avoid sites of prior needle EMG examinations or injections as this may cause spurious areas of focal inflammation pathologically. Findings common to the muscular dystrophies include variation in the size and shape of muscle fibers, increase in connective tissue, interstitial infiltration of fatty tissue, areas of degeneration and regeneration, focal areas of inflammatory changes, and centralized nuclei. Myopathies typically do not have the vigorous cycles of degeneration/regeneration and inflammation is seen in dystrophies.

Immunostaining for proteins of the sarcolemmal membrane, surrounding collagen matrix, and intracellular components of the myofiber is a valuable tool. For instance, demonstration of absent collagen VI is virtually diagnostic of a collagen VI myopathy. In the past, absent dystrophin staining at the sarcolemmal membrane on muscle biopsy was diagnostic of Duchenne muscular dystrophy, but mutation analysis of the dystrophin gene is the preferred initial step given the ready availability of commercial testing.

4. Genetic testing and carrier detection—Mutation analysis for Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophy is considered the initial step in diagnosis, though it should be noted that readily available commercial testing is not exhaustive, and an initial negative result does not exclude the diagnosis. Full characterization of the mutation is recommended, as treatments targeting specific mutations are emerging. Carrier testing should be offered to all mothers, not only for genetic counseling purposes but also because carriers are at increased risk for developing cardiomyopathy.

Genetic testing for other myopathies and muscular dystrophies should be guided by the clinical findings, serum CK levels, and muscle biopsy results. Commercially available tests are available for many of these disorders (Table 25–24).

Genetic counseling is particularly important for families of patients with spinal muscular atrophy. Testing for the survival motor neuron (SMN) 1 gene deletion has a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 100%. Carrier testing, along with genetic counseling, should also be offered, as the carrier rate is as high as 1 in 30 to 1 in 50, depending upon ethnicity.

» Complications

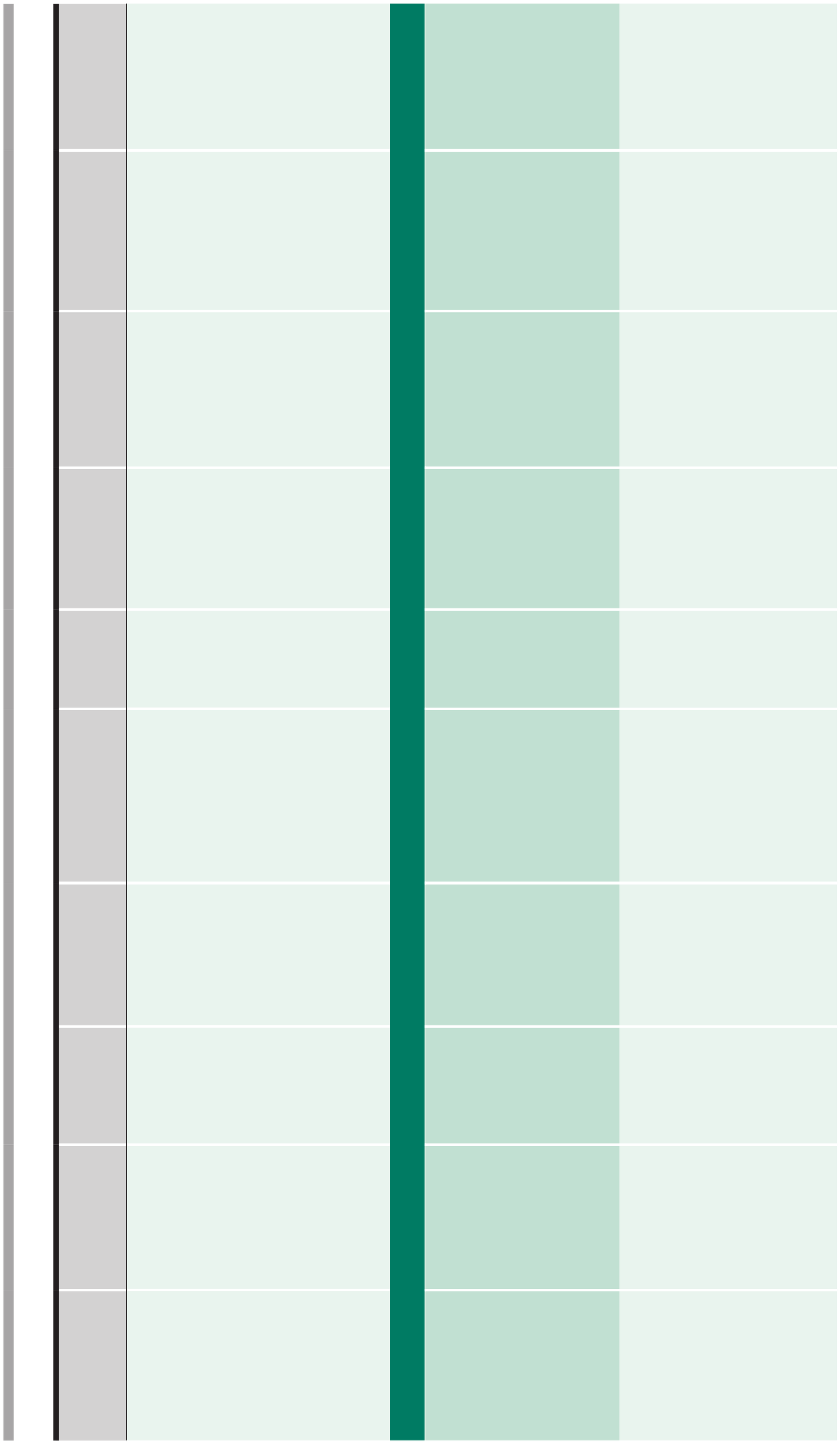
Though skeletal muscle weakness may be profound in muscle disorders, the greatest morbidity and mortality arises from cardiorespiratory complications. Advances in supportive care, especially in critical care management of these patients, have had a tremendous impact in the care of these patients. Noninvasive ventilation, better management of secretions, and generation of effective cough are a few examples. Other complications include delayed gastrointestinal motility which can lead to debilitating constipation or pseudo-obstruction. Contractures are a particularly frustrating complication which can limit mobility of these patients, cause pain, and affect quality of life. Some DMD patients may have a nonprogressive mental retardation with IQ scores one standard deviation below normal means.

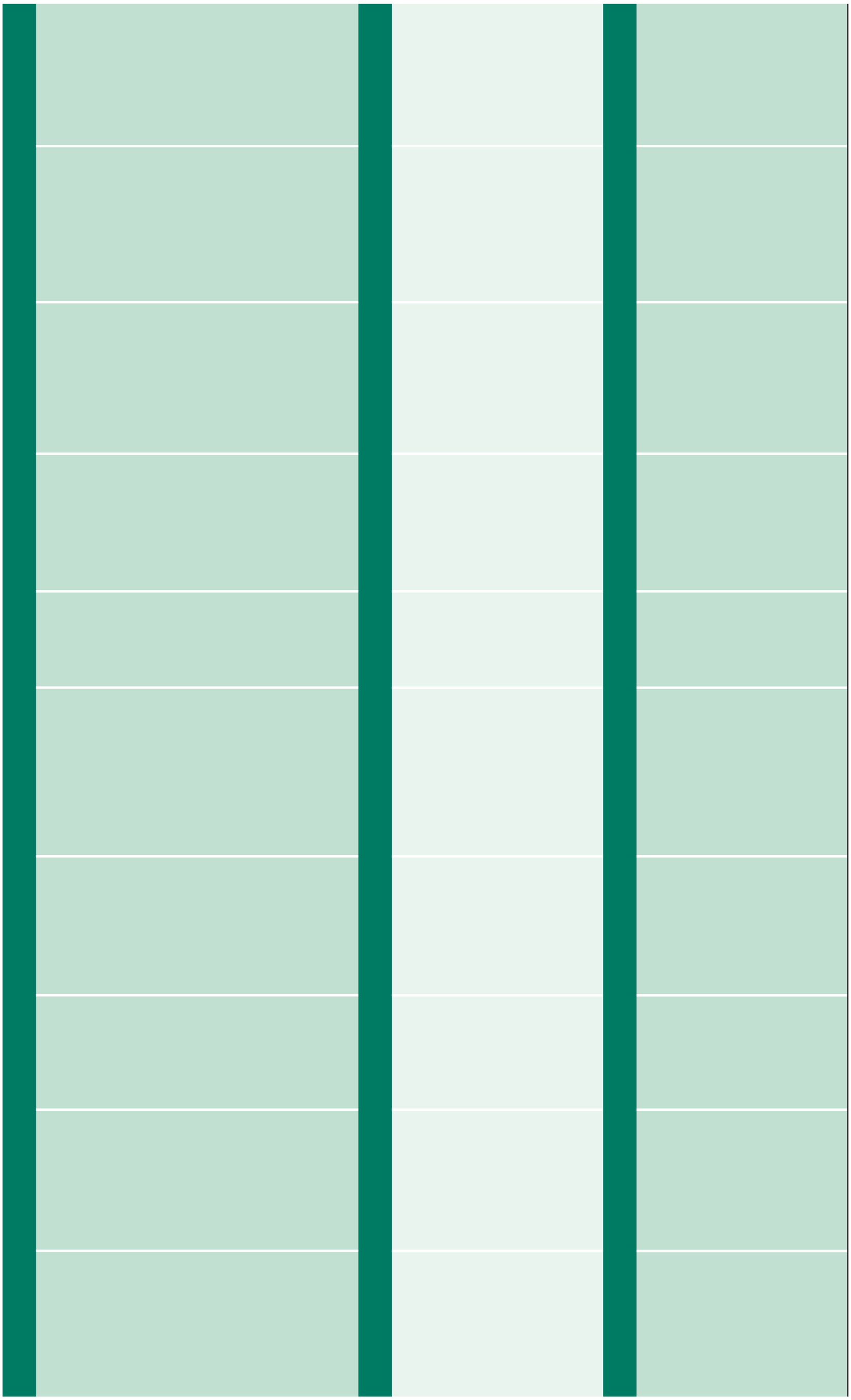
» Treatment

Treatment for patients with muscle disorders is predominantly supportive, and medications altering disease progression are, at this time, limited. Patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD)/Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD) should be offered treatment with corticosteroids (prednisone/prednisolone or deflazacort) which have been shown to extend the period of independent ambulation by approximately 2.5 years, and to preserve respiratory strength and cardiac function into the second decade. Instituting steroid treatment between 4 and 8 years, when motor function plateaus or is in decline, appears to have the greatest impact on muscle strength and cardiorespiratory function, according to recent practice parameter guidelines. Additional promising treatments targeting specific mutations have been developed over the last decade and are currently in clinical trials, including exon-skipping and read-through strategies that target specific mutations.

In the past, the prognosis for infantile Pompe disease was uniformly grim, with death by age 1 year, but enzyme replacement therapy with recombinant alglucosidase alfa has changed the outlook for many of these patients. Published short-term studies of infants with Pompe disease show significant improvement after treatment with alglucosidase alfa; with improved survival, respiratory performance, cardiomyopathy, and attainment of motor skills.

Until curative treatments for muscle diseases are available, the emphasis on management ought to be on slowing the progressive deterioration in muscle strength and cardiorespiratory function, and to improve quality of life.





Bushby K et al: Diagnosis and management of Duchenne muscular dystrophy part 1. Lancet Neurol 2010;9(2):77–93 [PMID: 19945913].
Bushby K et al: Diagnosis and management of Duchenne muscular dystrophy part 2. Lancet Neurol 2010;9(2):177–189 [PMID: 19945914].
Case LE et al. Infantile Pompe disease on ERT. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 2012;160C(1):69–79 [PMID: 22252989].
Kishnani K et al. The new ear of Pompe disease. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 2012;160C(1):1–7. [PMID: 22253049].
Kolb SJ, Kissel JT: Spinal muscular atrophy. Arch Neurol 2011 [Epub ahead of print] [PMID: 21482919].
Moxley RT III et al: Practice parameter: corticosteroid treatment of Duchenne dystrophy: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. Neurology 2005;64:13–20 [PMID: 15642897].
Udd B, Krahe R. The myotonic dystrophies. Lancet Neurol
Wang CH et al: Consensus statement for standard of care in spinal muscular atrophy. J Child Neurol 2007;22:1027–1049 [PMID: 17761659].
Wang CH et al: Consensus statement on standard of care for congenital muscular dystrophies. J Child Neurol 2010;25(12): 1559–1581 [PMID: 21078917].
Wang CH et al. Consensus statement on standard of care for congenital myopathies. J Child Neurol 2012;27(3):363–382 [PMID: 22431881].
Yang ML, Finkel RS: Overview of paediatric neuromuscular disorders and related pulmonary issues. Paediatr Resp Rev 2010;11(1):9–17 [PMID: 20113986].

BENIGN ACUTE CHILDHOOD MYOSITIS

Benign acute childhood myositis (myalgia cruris epidemica) is characterized by transient severe muscle pain and weakness affecting mainly the calves and occurring 1–2 days following an upper respiratory tract infection. Although symptoms involve mainly the gastrocnemius muscles, all skeletal muscles appear to be invaded directly by virus; recurrent episodes are due to different viral types. By seroconversion or isolation of the virus, acute myositis has been shown to be largely due to influenza types B and A and occasionally due to parainfluenza and adenovirus.

Agyeman P et al: Influenza-associated myositis in children. Infection 2004;32:199 [PMID: 15293074].

MYASTHENIC SYNDROMES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Asymmetric, variable weakness, usually coming on or increasing with use (fatigue).
- Involves extraocular, bulbar, and respiratory muscles.
- Positive response to neostigmine and edrophonium.

» General Considerations

Myasthenic syndromes are characterized by easy fatigability of muscles, particularly the extraocular, bulbar, and respiratory muscles. In the neonatal period or in early infancy, the weakness may be so constant and general that an affected infant may present nonspecifically as a "floppy infant." Three general categories of myasthenic syndromes are recognized: transient neonatal myasthenia, autoimmune myasthenia gravis, and congenital myasthenia.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Neonatal (transient) myasthenia—This disorder occurs in 12%–19% of infants born to myasthenic mothers as a result of passive transfer of maternal acetylcholine receptor antibody across the placenta. Neonates present before the third day of life with bulbar weakness, difficulty feeding, weak cry, and hypotonia.

2. Juvenile myasthenia gravis—Like the adult form of myasthenia gravis, autoimmune juvenile myasthenia gravis is characterized by fatigable and asymmetric weakness. However, more than half of patients present with ocular symptoms (ptosis or ophthalmoplegia), unlike adult patients who typically present with limb weakness. Weakness may remain limited to the extraocular muscles in 10%–15% of patients, but approximately half of children develop systemic or bulbar symptoms within 2 years and 75% within 4 years. Symptoms of weakness tend to recur and remit, and can be precipitated by illness or medications such as aminoglycoside antibiotics. Typical signs include difficulty chewing foods like meat, dysphagia, nasal voice, ptosis, ophthalmoplegia, and proximal limb weakness. Other autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis and thyroid disease may be associated findings.

3. Congenital myasthenic syndromes—These syndromes are a heterogenous group of hereditary, nonimmune disorders of presynaptic, synaptic, or postsynaptic neuromuscular transmission. Patients present with symptoms similar to that of myasthenia gravis, but onset is earlier, before the age of 2 years, and can vary from mild motor delay to dramatic episodic apnea. Serum acetylcholine receptor antibody testing is negative. Response to anticholinesterases is variable, depending on the type of congenital myasthenic syndrome, and some forms may paradoxically worsen. The distinction between this group of disorders and myasthenia gravis is important, as these patients will not benefit from a thymectomy, steroids, or immunosuppressants, but it may be clinically difficult to distinguish between the two.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Anticholinesterase Inhibitor Testing

a. Neostigmine test—In newborns and very young infants, the neostigmine test may be preferable to the edrophonium (Tensilon) test because the longer duration of its response permits better observation, especially of sucking and swallowing movements. There is a delay of about 10 minutes before the effect may be manifest. The physician should be prepared to suction secretions, and administer atropine if necessary.

b. Edrophonium test—Testing with edrophonium is used in older children who are capable of cooperating in certain tasks and who exhibit easily observable clinical signs, such as ptosis, ophthalmoplegia, or dysarthria. Maximum improvement occurs within 2 minutes. Both cholinesterase inhibitor tests can be limited by patient cooperation and lack of an easily observable clinical sign.

2. Antibody testing—Serum acetylcholine receptor binding, blocking, and modulating antibodies typically, though not always, are found in autoimmune juvenile myasthenia gravis. Though not specifically studied in the pediatric population, in the general myasthenia gravis population at large, about 40% of the seronegative patients have muscle-specific receptor tyrosine kinase (MuSK) antibodies. Serum acetylcholine receptor antibodies or MuSK antibodies are often found in the neonatal and juvenile forms. In juveniles, thyroid studies are appropriate.

3. Genetic testing—Commercially available genetic testing is limited for patients with congenital myasthenic syndromes.

C. Electrophysiologic Studies

Electrophysiologic studies may be helpful when myasthenic syndromes are considered. Repetitive stimulation of a motor nerve at slow rates of 2–3 Hz with recording over an appropriately chosen muscle reveals a progressive fall in compound muscle action potentials by the fourth to fifth repetition in myasthenic patients. At higher rates of stimulation of 50 Hz, there may be a transient repair of this defect before the progressive decline is seen. Both studies may be technically difficult to perform in infants and younger children as repetitive stimulation can be painful and requires cooperation. If this study is negative, single-fiber EMG in older cooperative children may be helpful diagnostically, but it is technically challenging and time intensive, and requires concentration on the part of the child. Stimulated single-fiber EMG may be performed by trained electromyographers.

D. Imaging

Chest radiograph and CT scanning in older children may show thymic hyperplasia. Thymomas are rare in children.

» Treatment

A. General and Supportive Measures

In the newborn or in a child in myasthenic or cholinergic crisis (see the following section Complications), supportive care is essential and the child should be monitored in a critical care setting. A careful search for signs of respiratory failure is crucial: simple bedside tests include evaluation of cough and counting to 20 in a single breath. An inability to do either signals respiratory failure. Neck flexion weakness, nasal speech, and drooling are other important signs of respiratory problems. Management of secretions and respiratory assistance should be monitored by trained critical care staff.

B. Anticholinesterase Inhibitors

1. Pyridostigmine bromide—Pyridostigmine is the first-line treatment in patients with juvenile myasthenia gravis and mild weakness. Anticholinesterase inhibitors do not modify disease progression but transiently improve muscle strength. For younger children, the starting dose is 0.5–1 mg/kg every 4–6 hours. In older children, the initial dose is 30–60 mg every 4–6 hours. The maximal daily dose is 7 mg/kg/d with an absolute maximum dose of 300 mg/d. The dosage must be adjusted for each patient based on clinical symptoms and side effects. Care must be taken in using this medication in patients suspected of having congenital myasthenic syndrome, as its use could potentially precipitate weakness.

2. Neostigmine—Fifteen milligrams of neostigmine are roughly equivalent to 60 mg of pyridostigmine bromide. Neostigmine often causes gastric hypermotility with diarrhea, but it is the drug of choice in newborns, in whom prompt treatment may be lifesaving. It may be given parenterally.

C. Immunomodulatory Treatment

Patients with autoimmune myasthenia gravis and more severe weakness not responding to cholinesterase inhibitors alone require long-term treatment with immunomodulation. There are four therapeutic options in this category: (1) plasmapheresis, (2) IVIg, (3) steroids, and (4) immunosuppressants. The mainstay of treatment is steroids, but some patients who either cannot tolerate or do not respond to steroids require treatment with other immunosuppressants such as azathioprine, cyclosporine, or mycophenolate mofetil. Both plasmapheresis and IVIg may be given on a long-term basis, depending on the severity of symptoms, as well as in the acute setting, with myasthenic crises. Special note must be made to the use of steroids, which can transiently worsen symptoms before any benefit is noted, particularly with large starting doses.

» Complications

A. Myasthenic Crisis

Respiratory failure can develop swiftly due to critical weakness of respiratory muscle, bulbar muscles or both, resulting in a myasthenic crisis. Crises are generally not fatal as long as patients receive timely respiratory support and appropriate immunotherapy. Particular vigilance, however, needs to be maintained as crises can occur in the setting of medical illnesses or surgical procedures. Patients and their caregivers should also be alerted that certain medications can exacerbate myasthenia gravis, including aminoglycoside antibiotics, muscle relaxants, and anesthetics.

B. Cholinergic Crisis

Cholinergic crisis may result from overmedication with anticholinesterase drugs. The resulting weakness may be similar to that of myasthenic crises, and the muscarinic side effects (diarrhea, sweating, lacrimation, miosis, bradycardia, and hypotension) are often absent or difficult to evaluate. If suspected, cholinesterase inhibitors should be discontinued immediately, and improvement afterward suggests cholinergic crisis. As in myasthenic crisis, supportive respiratory care and appropriate immunotherapy should be given.

C. Surgical Measures

Data for efficacy of thymectomy in the pediatric population are few. Some studies suggest that thymectomy within 2 years of diagnosis results in a higher rate of remission in Caucasian children. Experienced surgical and postsurgical care are prerequisites.

» Prognosis

Prognosis for neonatal (transient) myasthenia is generally good, with complete resolution of symptoms in 2–3 weeks. However, immediate treatment with appropriate respiratory support in the acute presentation period is crucial, primarily because of the risk of secretion aspiration. No further treatment is required thereafter. The prognosis for congenital myasthenic syndromes is variable by subtype. Some subtypes show improvement in weakness with age. Others demonstrate life-threatening episodic apnea, including those with rapsyn mutations, fast-channel mutations, and choline acetyltransferase mutations. Patients with juvenile myasthenia gravis generally do well, with greater spontaneous remission rates than adult patients. Improvements in respiratory and critical care support has improved prognosis for these patients.

Cortese I et al: Evidence-based guideline update: plasmapheresis in neurologic disorders: report of the Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology 2011;76(3):294–300 [PMID: 21242498].

Hantai D et al: Congenital myasthenic syndromes. Curr Opin Neurol 2013;26(5):561–568 [PMID: 23995276].

Hennessey IA et al: Thymectomy for inducing remission in juvenile myasthenia gravis. Pediatr Surg Int 2011;27(6):591–594 [PMID: 21243366].

Liew WK et al: Comparison of plasmapheresis and intravenous immunoglobulin as maintenance therapies for juvenile myasthenia gravis. JAMA Neurol 2014;71(5):575–580 [PMID: 24590389].

Liew WK, Kang PB: Update on juvenile myasthenia gravis. Curr Opin Pediatr 2013;25(6):694–700 [PMID: 24141560].

Mehndiratta MM, Pandey S, Kuntzer T: Acetylcholinesterase inhibitor treatment for myasthenia gravis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011;16(2):CD006986 [PMID: 21328290].

PERIPHERAL NERVE PALSIES

» Facial Weakness

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

» Central vs peripheral facial nerve lesions need to be distinguished in order to determine workup, treatment, and prognosis. The inability to raise the eyebrows indicates peripheral involvement of the facial nerve.

» Pathogenesis

The most common cranial mononeuropathy is facial nerve palsy. Cranial nerve VII is a complex nerve that carries several different nerve fibers, including motor fibers to all muscles of facial expression, parasympathetic motor fibers supplying the mucosa of the soft palate and the salivary and lacrimal glands, taste fibers to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue, parasympathetic sensory fibers for visceral sensation from the salivary glands and the nasal and pharyngeal mucosa, and somatic sensory fibers supplying a small part of the external auditory meatus and the skin of the ear. Facial weakness can occur as the result of a lesion anywhere along the path of the nerve. A central lesion such that of a stroke, proximal to the facial nerve nuclei, causes contralateral weakness of the lower face, sparing the forehead and orbicularis oculi muscles which are bilaterally innervated. Peripheral lesions such that of Bell's Palsy, at or distal to the facial nerve nuclei, cause ipsilateral facial weakness that affects both the upper and lower facial muscles, resulting in an inability to wrinkle the forehead, close the eye or smile. In addition, there may be dysfunction in the ability of tearing and saliva production, hyperacusis, and absent taste sensation over the anterior two-thirds of the tongue.

» Clinical Findings

The inability to wrinkle the forehead may be demonstrated in infants and young children by getting them to follow a

light moved vertically above the forehead. Loss of taste of the anterior two-thirds of the tongue on the involved side may be demonstrated in cooperative children by age 4 or 5 years. Playing with a younger child and the judicious use of a tongue blade may enable the physician to note whether the child's face puckers up when something sour (eg, lemon juice) is applied with a swab to the anterior tongue.

» Differential Diagnosis

Injuries to the facial nerve at birth occur in 0.25%–6.5% of consecutive live births. Forceps delivery is the cause in some cases; in others, the side of the face affected may have abutted in utero against the sacral prominence. Often, no cause can be established.

Acquired peripheral facial weakness (Bell palsy) is common in children. Some cases are postinfectious, although an increasing body of evidence suggests that Bell palsy is a viral-induced cranial neuritis. It may be a presenting sign of Lyme disease, infectious mononucleosis, herpes simplex, or GBS and is usually diagnosable by the history, physical examination, and appropriate laboratory tests. Chronic cranial nerve VII palsy may be a sign of brainstem tumor.

Bilateral facial weakness in early life may be due to agenesis of the facial nerve nuclei or muscles (part of Möbius syndrome) or may even be familial. Myasthenia gravis, Miller-Fisher syndrome, fascioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy, and myotonic dystrophy must be considered.

Asymmetrical crying facies, in which one side of the lower lip depresses with crying (ie, the normal side) and the other does not, is usually an innocent form of autosomal dominant inherited congenital malformation. The defect in the parent (the asymmetry often improves with age) may be almost inapparent. EMG suggests congenital absence of the depressor angularis muscle of the lower lip. Forceps pressure is often erroneously incriminated as a cause of this innocent congenital anomaly. Occasionally other major (eg, cardiac septal defects) congenital defects accompany the palsy. Congenital unilateral lower lip paralysis with asymmetric crying facies, most often attributed to congenital absence of the depressor anguli oris, is associated with major malformations, most commonly heart defects, in 10% of cases.

» Treatment & Prognosis

In the vast majority of cases of isolated peripheral facial palsy—both those due to birth trauma and those acquired later—improvement begins within 1–2 weeks, and near or total recovery of function is observed within 2 months. In severe palsy with inefficient blinking, methylcellulose drops, 1%, should be instilled into the eyes to protect the cornea during the day; at night the lid should be taped down with cellophane tape. Upward massage of the face for 5–10 minutes three or four times a day may help maintain muscle tone. Prednisone therapy (2–4 mg/kg orally for 5–7 days) likely does not aid recovery. In the older child, acyclovir or valacyclovir (herpes antiviral agent) therapy or antibiotics (Lyme disease) may have a role in Bell palsy.

In the few children with permanent and cosmetically disfiguring facial weakness, plastic surgical intervention at age 6 years or older may be of benefit. New procedures, such as attachment of facial muscles to the temporal muscle and transplantation of cranial nerve XI, are being developed.

Gronseth GS, Paduga R; American Academy of Neurology: Evidence-based guideline update: steroids and antivirals for Bell palsy: report of the Guideline Development Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology 2012;79(22):2209–2213 [PMID: 23136264].

Kennedy PG: Herpes simplex virus type 1 and Bell's palsy-a current assessment of the controversy. J Neurovirol 2010;16(1):1–5 [PMID: 20113184].

Pavlou E et al: Facial nerve palsy in childhood. Brain Dev 2011; 33(8):644–650 [PMID: 21144684].

Rioja-Mazza et al: Asymmetric crying facies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 2005; 18(4):275–277 [PMID: 16318980].

CHRONIC POLYNEUROPATHY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Insidious onset of weakness and fatigability of the limbs, sometimes with pain or numbness; decreased strength and reflexes.

» General Considerations

Polyneuropathy is usually insidious in onset and slowly progressive. Children present with disturbances of gait and easy fatigability in walking or running, and slightly less often, weakness or clumsiness of the hands. Pain, tenderness, or paresthesias are mentioned less frequently. Neurologic examination discloses muscular weakness, greatest in the distal portions of the extremities, with steppage gait and depressed or absent deep tendon reflexes. Cranial nerves are sometimes affected. Sensory deficits occur in a stocking-and-glove distribution. The muscles may be tender, and trophic changes such as glassy or parchment skin and absent sweating may occur. Rarely, thickening of the ulnar and peroneal nerves may be felt. In sensory neuropathy, the patient may not feel minor trauma or burns, and thus allows trauma to occur.

Known causes include (1) toxins (lead, arsenic, mercurials, vincristine, and benzene); (2) systemic disorders (diabetes mellitus, chronic uremia, recurrent hypoglycemia, porphyria, polyarteritis nodosa, and lupus erythematosus); (3) inflammatory states (chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy and neuritis associated with mumps or diphtheria); (4) hereditary, often degenerative conditions,

which in some classifications include certain storage diseases, leukodystrophies, spinocerebellar degenerations with neurogenic components, and Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome; and (5) hereditary sensory or combined motor and sensory neuropathies. Polyneuropathies associated with malignancies, vitamin deficiencies, or excessive vitamin B_6 intake are not reported or are exceedingly rare in children.

The most common chronic motor neuropathy of insidious onset often has no identifiable cause. This chronic inflammatory demyelinating neuropathy (CIDP) is assumed to be immunologically mediated and may have a relapsing course. Sometimes facial weakness occurs. CSF protein levels are elevated. Nerve conduction velocity is slowed, and findings on nerve biopsy are abnormal. Immunologic abnormalities are seldom demonstrated, although nerve biopsy findings may show round cell infiltration. Corticosteroids, repeated IVIg, and, occasionally, immunosuppressants may give long-term benefit.

» Clinical Findings

Hereditary neuropathy is the most common documented cause of chronic neuropathy in childhood. A careful genetic history (pedigree) and examination and electrical testing (motor and sensory nerve conduction and EMG) of patient and relatives are keys to diagnosis. Genetic tests are available for many of the variants. Nerve biopsy is rarely necessary.

Other hereditary neuropathies may have ataxia as a prominent finding, often overshadowing the neuropathy. Examples are Friedreich ataxia, adrenoleukodystrophy, and Krabbe disease. Finally, some hereditary neuropathies are associated with identifiable and occasionally treatable metabolic errors (see Tables 25–20 and 25–21). These disorders are described in more detail in Chapter 36.

Laboratory diagnosis of chronic polyneuropathy is made by electrophysiologic testing with EMG/NCS. CSF protein levels are often elevated, sometimes with an increased IgG index. Nerve biopsy, with teasing of the fibers and staining for metachromasia, may demonstrate loss of myelin, and to a lesser degree, loss of axons and increased connective tissue or concentric lamellas (so-called onion bulb appearance) around the nerve fiber. Muscle biopsy may show the pattern associated with denervation. Other laboratory studies directed toward specific causes mentioned above include screening for heavy metals and for metabolic, renal, or vascular disorders.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Therapy is directed at specific disorders whenever possible. Corticosteroid therapy is used first when the cause is unknown or neuropathy is considered to be due to chronic inflammation (this is not the case in acute GBS [AIDP; acute inflammatory demyelinating neuropathy]). Prednisone is initiated at 2–4 mg/kg/d orally, with tapering to the lowest effective dose; it may need to be reinstituted when symptoms recur. Prednisone should not be used for treatment of hereditary neuropathy. Immunomodulating therapy may be safer or "steroid-sparing"; IVIg, plasmapheresis, mycophenolate mofetil, and rituximab are choices.

The long-term prognosis varies with the cause and the ability to offer specific therapy. In the corticosteroid-dependent group, residual deficits are more frequent.

Eftimov F et al. Intravenous immunoglobulin for chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;12 [PMID: 24379104].

Hughes RA et al. Corticosteroids for chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Aug 15;8:CD002062. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD002062.pub2 [PMID:22895925].

Mahdi-Rogers. M et al. Immunomodulatory treatment other than corticosteroids, immunoglobulin and plasma exchange for chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyraducloneuropathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;6 [PMID: 23771584].

McMillan HJ et al. Childhood chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy. Neuromuscul Disord 2013;23(2):103–111 [PMID: 23140945].

MISCELLANEOUS NEUROMUSCULAR DISORDERS

FLOPPY INFANT SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Classic maneuvers to evaluate a floppy infant include checking vertical suspension, horizontal suspension, and traction response.

» Correct interpretation of neurologic findings in a hypotonic infant is dependent on a thorough knowledge of normal childhood development.

» Pathogenesis

An infant may present with hypotonia due to dysfunction at any place along the neuroaxis, from the brain, spinal cord, nerve, neuromuscular junction, and muscle. Additionally, systemic disorders, metabolic disease and genetic disorders may cause an infant to appear "floppy." The evaluation of the hypotonic infant is therefore one of the most challenging diagnostic problems that a pediatrician is often faced with. The diagnostic workup requires a thorough knowledge of normal developmental milestones at each stage of a developing infant and child, and careful assessment of the pre- and perinatal history, family history, developmental history, and presence of other systemic involvement (Table 25–25).

Table 25–25. Floppy infant.

Lower Motor Neuron Causes		
Disease	**Genetic/Causes**	**Early Manifestations**
Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA)	Autosomal recessive; diagnose by deletion exons 7 and 8 in the SMN gene (98% of cases).	In-utero movements decreased in one-third. Gradual weakness, delay in gross motor milestones. Weak cry. Abdominal breathing. Few spontaneous movements except of the distal extremities. No deep tendon reflexes. Fasciculations of tongue. Normal personal-social behavior.
Infantile botulism	Acquired, younger than age 1 y (mostly before age 6 mo); botulism spore in stool makes toxin.	Poor feeding. Constipation. Weak cry. Failure to thrive. Lethargy. Facial weakness, ptosis, ocular muscle palsy. Inability to suck, swallow. Apnea. Source: soil dust, honey. EMG may be helpful.
Myasthenia gravis Neonatal transient	12% of infants born from a myasthenic mother.	Floppiness. Poor sucking and feeding; choking. Respiratory distress. Weak cry. Autoimmune antibodies from mother.
Congenital	Mother normal. Rare inherited disorder	As above; may improve and later exacerbate.
Myotonic dystrophy type 1	Autosomal dominant: in 99% mother transmits gene. DNA testing 98% accurate.	Polyhydramnios; failure of suck, respirations. Facial diplegia. Ptosis. Arthrogryposis. Thin ribs. Later, developmental delay. Examine mother for myotonia, physiognomy. EMG variable in infant.
Congenital myopathy and muscular dystrophy myopathy	Multiple genetic causes	Clinical features often include respiratory failure, facial or bulbar weakness, joint contractures. Severe mental retardation. Seizures. Brain structural abnormalities; MRI helpful to distinguish muscle disorders with CNS involvement. Muscle biopsy for definitive diagnosis.
Infantile neuropathy Hypomyelinating/ dysmelinating	Multiple genetic causes.	Demyelinating or axonal; a rare cause. Can appear similar to SMA. EMG/ NCS is helpful as is MRI brain to evaluate for central demyelination/ dysmeylination
Central Causes		
	Causes	**Manifestations**
Structural CNS causes		
Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy	Multiple causes, detailed prenatal and perinatal history crucial	Limpness, stupor; poor suck, cry, Moro reflex, and grasp; later, irritability, increased tone and reflexes.
Brain malformations	Multiple causes, including genetic, exposures, infections	Seizures may be seen. Cognitive and language delay when older.
Syndromes with hypotonia (CNS origin)		
Trisomy 21	Genetic	All have hypotonia early.
Prader-Willi syndrome	Genetic deletion 15q11.	Hypotonia, hypomentia, hypogonadism, obesity
Marfan syndrome	Autosomal dominant.	Arachnodactyly.
Dysautonomia	Autosomal recessive.	Respiratory infections, corneal anesthesia.
Turner syndrome	45X, or mosaic.	Somatic stigmata (see Chapter 36).
Degenerative disorders		
Tay-Sachs disease	Autosomal recessive.	Cherry-red spot on macula.
Metachromatic leukodystrophy	Autosomal recessive.	Deep tendon reflexes increased early, polyneuropathy late; mental retardation.
Systemic diseases[a]		
Malnutrition	Deprivation, cystic fibrosis	
Chronic illness	Congenital heart disease; chronic pulmonary disease (eg, bronchopulmonary dysplasia); uremia, renal acidosis.	
Metabolic disease	Mitochondrial; Lowe, Pompe, Leigh disease; hypercalcemia.	
Endocrinopathy	Hypothyroid.	

AD, autosomal dominant; AR, autosomal recessive; EMG, electromyogram; HSMN, hereditary sensory motor neuropathy; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; NCV, nerve conduction velocity; SMN, survival motor neuron.
[a]See elsewhere in text for manifestations.

» Clinical Findings

A. Signs and Symptoms

In the young infant, horizontal suspension (ie, supporting the infant with a hand under the chest) normally results in the infant's holding its head slightly up (45 degrees or less), the back straight or nearly so, the arms flexed at the elbows and slightly abducted, and the knees partly flexed. The "floppy" infant droops over the hand like an inverted U. The normal newborn attempts to keep the head in the same plane as the body when pulled up from supine to sitting by the hands (traction response). Marked head lag is characteristic of the floppy infant. In vertical suspension, the hypotonic infant will slip through the examiner's hands when held under the armpits. Hyperextensibility of the joints is not a dependable criterion.

B. Laboratory Findings

A general rule for laboratory testing is to localize the etiology of the hypotonia. For instance, if a lower motor neuron etiology is suspected, a serum CK, EMG/NCS, and/or muscle biopsy may be appropriate as first tier testing. Many neuromuscular disorders may be diagnosed by clinical findings alone, as is often the case with spinal muscular atrophy and congenital myotonic dystrophy, and in those cases, genetic testing is often the first testing warranted. If the hypotonic is accompanied by language or cognitive delay, a CNS or genetic disorder is most likely, and MR imaging of the brain may be the most useful diagnostic test.

» Differential Diagnosis

The most common etiology of hypotonia in the neonate is hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy. Dysmorphic features may suggest a genetic etiology such as Down syndrome and Prader-Willi syndrome. Abnormalities of the hair or skin, which form from the neuroectoderm in development with the brain, may prompt an evaluation for brain malformations. Often seizures or language or cognitive delay may be accompanying features. Regression in development is often a clue for mitochondrial or metabolic disorders. Neuromuscular disorders including congenital myotonic dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy can present as hypotonic in the infant. While the list of differential diagnosis in Table 25–25 is not complete, it describes the clinical features of some of the more common causes of hypotonia in infants and children.

» Treatment

Treatment for many of these disorders is supportive. Physical and occupational therapy can facilitate some progress to a varying degree. Accompanying seizures and other systemic manifestations should be controlled to optimize development.

Birdi K et al: The floppy infant: retrospective analysis of clinical experience (1990–2000) in a tertiary care facility. J Child Neurol 2005;20:803 [PMID: 16417874].

Paro-Panjan D, Neubauer D: Congenital hypotonia: is there an algorithm? J Child Neurol 2005;19:439 [PMID: 15446393].

Richer LP et al: Diagnostic profile of neonatal hypotonia: an 11-year study. Pediatr Neurol 2001;25:32 [PMID: 11483393].

Vasta I et al: Can clinical signs identify newborns with neuromuscular disorders? J Pediatr 2005;146:73 [PMID: 1564482].

WEB RESOURCES

American Association of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry: http://www.aacap.org.
Contains practice parameters and relevant information about childhood psychiatric conditions.

American Academy of Neurology: http://www.aan.com.
Provides both adult and child neurology practice parameters.

American Epilepsy Society: http://www.aesnet.org.
Includes general information about epilepsy, and a comprehensive section about antiepileptic drugs.

Child Neurology Foundation: http://www.childneurologyfoundation.org/index.html.
Describes resources and tests related to child neurology and provides a comprehensive list of child neurology–related website links.

Child Neurology Society: http://www.childneurologysociety.org.
Provides research updates and organizational information and has child neurology–specific practice parameters.

Cure CMD: http://curecmd.org/.

Epilepsy Foundation of America: http://www.epilepsyfoundation.org.
Includes tutorials about epilepsy and living with epilepsy.

Families of SMA: http://www.fsma.org/.

Gene tests: http://www.genetests.org.
Provides detailed information about available genetic testing, research, literature/disorder reviews, and resources for most genetically determined neurologic disorders.

Muscular Dystrophy Association: http://www.mda.org.
Contains research updates, organizational information, and detailed information regarding neuromuscular disorders.

National Institute of Neurologic Disorders and Stroke: http://www.ninds.nih.gov.
Provides brief descriptions of neurologic disorders, related research, research opportunities, and relevant organizations.

National Ataxia Foundation http://www.ataxia.org/.
Resource for providers and patients with ataxia including research and support groups.

National MS Society http://nmss.org.
Provides resources for providers, schools, patients, and families on pediatric onset multiple sclerosis.

Neurofibromatosis Foundation: http://www.nf.org.
Provides detailed information for parents and providers about neurofibromatosis.

Provides information about spinal muscular atrophy for families and providers, including ongoing research, conferences, and literature.

Provides resources about congenital muscular dystrophy for families and providers, including registry data, recent literature, and current clinical trials.

Washington University, St. Louis, Neuromuscular Disease Center: http://neuromuscular.wustl.edu.

Includes detailed descriptions of neuromuscular disorders and differential diagnoses.

Tuberous Sclerosis Association: http://www.tsalliance.org.

Contains detailed information for parents and providers about Tuberous Sclerosis.

We Move: worldwide education and awareness for movement disorders: http://wemove.org.

Descriptions of movement disorders, related research, and research opportunities.

26 Orthopedics

Mark A. Erickson, MD, MMM
Jason Rhodes, MD, MS
Cameron Niswander, BA

Orthopedics is the medical discipline that deals with disorders of the musculoskeletal system. Patients with orthopedic problems generally present with one or more of the following complaints: pain, swelling, loss of function, or deformity. While the history reveals the patient's expectation, physical examination and radiographic imaging are vitally important features of orthopedic diagnosis.

DISTURBANCES OF PRENATAL ORIGIN

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Conditions are present at birth (congenital).
- Multiple organ systems may be involved.
- Treatment is aimed at maximizing function.

CONGENITAL AMPUTATIONS & LIMB DEFICIENCIES

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The specific etiology of many congenital amputations is not clear, but a genetic association has been suggested. Some congenital amputations may be due to teratogens (eg, drugs or viruses), amniotic bands, or metabolic diseases (eg, maternal diabetes). Limb deficiencies are rare with an overall prevalence for all types of limb deficiencies of 0.79 per 1000. The most common cause of limb deficiencies is vascular disruption defects (prevalence of 0.22 per 1000). As a group, upper limb deficiencies occur more frequently than lower limb deficiencies, but the single most frequent form of limb deficiency is congenital longitudinal deficiency of the fibula. Children with congenital limb deficiencies generally also have a high incidence of other congenital anomalies, including genitourinary, cardiac, and palatal defects. Deficiencies have a wide spectrum, ranging from mild limb length discrepancy to significant deformity. They usually consist of a partial absence of structures in the extremity along one side. For example, in radial club hand, the entire radius is absent, but the thumb may be either hypoplastic or completely absent. The effect on structures distal to the deficiency varies. Complex tissue defects are virtually always associated with longitudinal bone deficiency since associated nerves and muscles are not completely represented when a bone is absent.

Treatment

The overall goal of treatment is to achieve a functional extremity. If the deficiency is in a weight bearing limb, the goal is to ensure equal loading after treatment. Limb lengthening and/or contralateral limb shortening can be used to treat less severe deficiencies. More severe deficiencies are treated with a prosthesis or orthosis to compensate for the length discrepancy. For certain severe anomalies, operative treatment to remove a portion of the malformed extremity (eg, foot) is indicated to allow for early prosthetic fitting. In these instances, early prosthetic fitting allows for maximization of function.

Typically, a lower extremity prosthesis would be fit at about 1 year of age allowing the child to begin ambulation at an appropriate developmental age. The prosthesis is well accepted since it becomes necessary for balancing and walking. In unilateral upper extremity amputation, the child benefits from the use of a passive mitten-type prosthesis starting as early as 6 months of age. Early fitting has the advantage of instilling an accustomed pattern of proper length and bimanual manipulation. Although myoelectric prostheses

have a technologic appeal, the majority of patients find the simplest construct to be the most functional. Children quickly learn how to function with their prostheses and can lead active lives.

Gold NB, Westgate MN, Holmes LB: Anatomic and etiological classification of congenital limb deficiencies. Am J Med Genet Part A 2011;155:1225–1235 [PMID: 21557466].

Hamdy RC, Makhdom AM, Saran N, Birch J: Congenital fibular deficiency. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2014;22:246–255 [PMID: 24668354].

DEFORMITIES OF THE EXTREMITIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Many represent normal physiologic growth patterns.
- Key to diagnosis is recognition of abnormal patterns that deviate from normal development.
- Treatment is varied depending on condition.

COMMON FOOT PROBLEMS

Metatarsus Adductus

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Metatarsus adductus, a common congenital foot deformity, is characterized by inward deviation of the forefoot. It is the most common foot abnormality, observed in newborns at a rate of 1–2 per 1000 live births. When the deformity is more rigid, it is characterized by a vertical crease in the medial aspect of the arch. Angulation occurs at the base of the fifth metatarsal causing prominence of this bone. Most flexible deformities are secondary to intrauterine positioning and usually resolve spontaneously. Several investigators have noticed that 10%–15% of children with metatarsus adductus have hip dysplasia; therefore, a careful hip examination is necessary. The etiology of rigid deformities is unknown.

Treatment

Fully flexible deformity requires no treatment. If the deformity is rigid and cannot be manipulated past the midline, it is worthwhile to perform serial casting, with cast changes in 1- to 2-week intervals, to correct the deformity. Orthoses and corrective shoes do not live up to their name; however, they can be used to maintain the correction obtained by casting.

Williams CM, James AM, Tran T: Metatarsus adductus: development of a non-surgical treatment pathway. J Paediatr Child Health 2014;49(9):428–433 [PMID: 23647850].

Clubfoot (Talipes Equinovarus)

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Classic talipes equinovarus, or clubfoot, requires three features for diagnosis: (1) plantar flexion of the foot at the ankle joint (equinus), (2) inversion deformity of the heel (varus), and (3) medial deviation of the forefoot (adductus) (Figure 26–1). Clubfoot occurs in approximately 1 per 1000 live births. The three major categories of clubfoot are idiopathic, neurogenic, and those associated with syndromes such as arthrogryposis and Larsen syndrome. Infants with a clubfoot should be examined carefully for associated anomalies, especially of the spine. Idiopathic club feet may be hereditary.

Treatment

Manipulation of the foot to stretch the contracted tissues on the medial and posterior aspects, followed by casting to hold the correction is the preferred treatment. Serial castings are typically performed on a weekly basis for 6–8 weeks. When instituted shortly after birth, correction is rapid. If treatment is delayed, the foot tends to become more rigid within a matter of days. Casting treatment requires patience and experience, but fewer patients require surgery when attention is paid to details of the Ponseti technique. If there is remaining equinus, surgery may be required in the form of a percutaneous Achilles tenotomy in order to achieve full correction. After full correction is obtained, a night brace is necessary for long-term maintenance of correction. Recent studies indicate that there

▲ **Figure 26–1.** Clubfoot in an infant.

is poor compliance with brace use following intervention with the Ponseti technique; however, many patients undergoing this treatment are able to independently ambulate only 2 months later than infants with no deformity. The French method is another nonsurgical method of treatment, which is commonly performed by physical therapists. The feet are stretched and manipulated several times per week and a combination of taping and a plastic splint are used to hold the correction after each session. If the foot is rigid and resistant to correction through the Ponseti or French techniques, extensive surgical release and correction are occasionally needed to improve the functional position of the foot. Approximately 15%–50% of patients require a surgical release.

Dobbs MB, Gurnett CA: Update on clubfoot: etiology and treatment. Clin Orthop Relat Res 2009;467(5):1146–1153 [PMID: 19224303].

Zoints LE, Packer DF, Cooper S, Ebramzadeh E, Sangiorgio S: Walking age of infants with idiopathic clubfoot treated using the Ponseti method. J Bone Joint Surg Am 2014;96(19):e164 [PMID: 25274792].

Flatfoot

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Flatfoot is normal in infants. If the heel cord is of normal length, full dorsiflexion is possible when the heel is in the neutral position. As long as the heel cord is of normal length and a longitudinal arch is noted when the child is sitting in a non–weight-bearing position, a normal arch will generally develop.

Younger children who are male, obese, and have excessive joint laxity are more likely to be flatfooted. Around 15% of flatfeet do not resolve spontaneously. There is usually a familial incidence of relaxed flatfeet in children who have no apparent arch. In any child with a shortened heel cord or stiffness of the foot, other causes of flatfoot such as tarsal coalition (congenital fusion of the tarsal bones) should be ruled out by a complete orthopedic examination and radiographs.

» Treatment

For an ordinary relaxed flatfoot, no active treatment is indicated unless calf or leg pain is present. In children who have leg pains attributable to flatfoot, a supportive shoe, such as a good-quality sports shoe, is useful. An orthotic that holds the heel in neutral position and supports the arch may relieve discomfort if more support is needed. An arch insert should not be prescribed unless passive correction of the arch is easily accomplished; otherwise, the skin over the medial side of the foot will be irritated.

Chen KC, Tunk LK, Yeh CJ, Yang JF, Kuo JF, Wang CH: Change in flatfoot of preschool-aged children: a 1-year follow-up study. Eur J Pediatr 2013;172(2):255–260 [PMID: 23132641].

Talipes Calcaneovalgus

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Talipes calcaneovalgus is characterized by excessive dorsiflexion at the ankle and eversion of the foot (Figure 26–2). This disorder can be associated with posteromedial bowing of the tibia and is due to intrauterine position and is often present at birth. The deformity occurs in 0.4-1–0 per 1000 live births.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of passive exercises, such as stretching the foot into plantar flexion. With or without treatment, the deformity usually resolves by age 3–6 months. In rare instances, it may be necessary to use plaster casts to help with manipulation and positioning. Complete correction is the rule.

Sankar WN, Weiss J, Skaggs DL: Orthopedic conditions in the newborn. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2009;17(2):112–122 [PMID: 19202124].

Cavus Foot

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Cavus foot consists of an unusually high longitudinal arch of the foot. It may be hereditary or associated with neurologic conditions such as poliomyelitis, hereditary sensory motor neuropathies, and diastematomyelia (congenital splitting of the spinal cord). Typically there is an associated contracture of the toe extensors, producing a claw toe deformity in which the metatarsal phalangeal joints are hyperextended

▲**Figure 26–2.** Excessive dorsiflexion and eversion of the foot in talipes calcaneovalgus.

and the interphalangeal joints acutely flexed. Cavus foot presents with diffuse and localized pain in the lower legs and is commonly associated with an inflexible foot deformity. Any child presenting with cavus feet should receive a careful neurologic examination as well as radiographs and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the spine.

» Treatment

Conservative therapy, such as an orthotic to realign the foot, can be effective in milder cases. In symptomatic cases, surgery may be necessary to lengthen the contracted extensor and flexor tendons and to release the plantar fascia and other tight plantar structures. Associated varus heel deformities cause more problems than the high arch.

Wicart P: Cavus foot, from neonates to adolescents. Orthop Traumatol Surg Res 2012;98(7):813–828 [PMID: 23098772].

Bunions (Hallux Valgus)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

With a prevalence of 23%–35%, hallux valgus is the most common forefoot deformity. The etiology is unknown. Adolescents may present with lateral deviation of the great toe associated with a prominence over the head of the first metatarsal. Around 60% of patients have a family history of this condition. The deformity is painful with shoe wear and almost always relieved by fitting shoes that are wide enough in the toe area. Since further growth tends to cause recurrence of the deformity, surgery should be avoided in the adolescent.

» Treatment

Therapeutic treatments are aimed at correcting the muscular and weight-bearing forces that act on the joint. While conservative treatment provides symptomatic relief, it does not reverse the natural history, as these deformities will typically continue to progress until corrected surgically. A high percentage of these patients ultimately have surgery in adulthood due to a continued progression of the deformity. Surgical treatment should be delayed until the patient is mature, due do the risk of remodel and recurrence of deformity. Surgery leads to satisfactory outcomes in 95% of patients.

GENU VARUM & GENU VALGUM

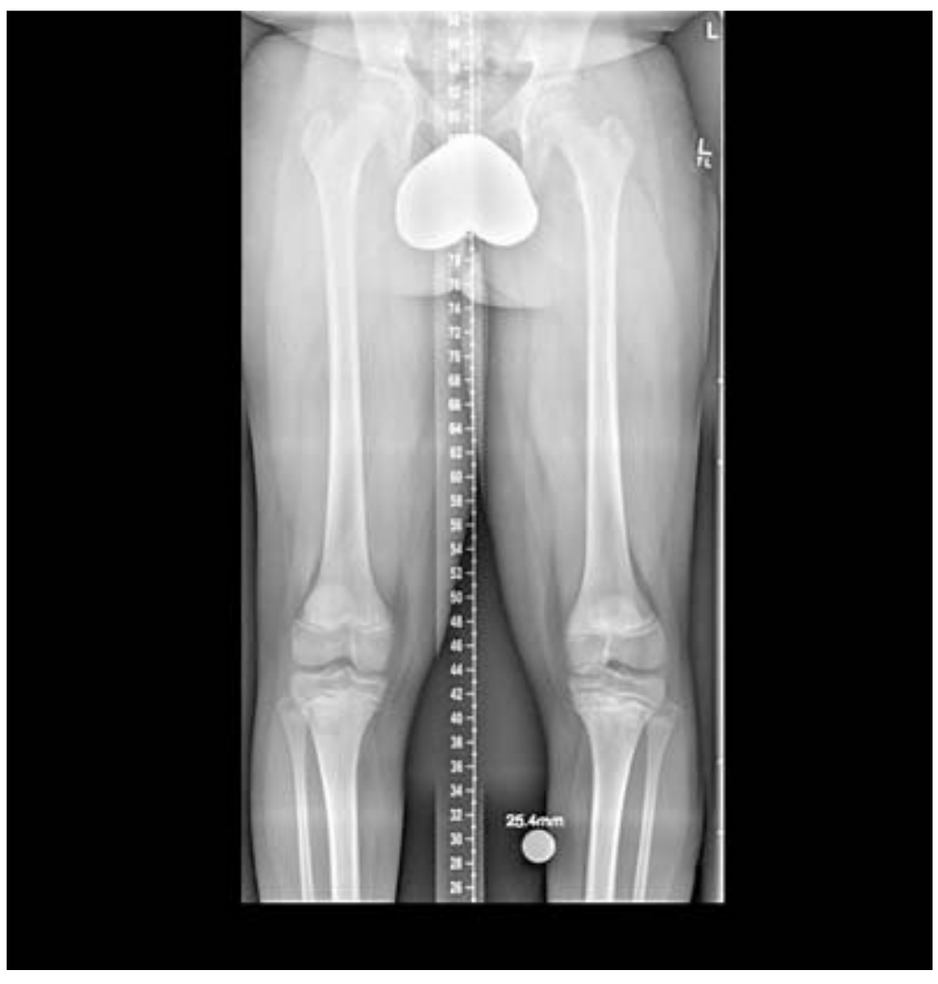
» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Genu varum (bowleg) is normal from infancy through 3 years of age. The alignment then changes to genu valgum

▲ **Figure 26–3.** Idiopathic genu valgum.

(knock-knee, Figure 26–3) until about age 8 years, at which time adult alignment of 5–9 degrees of anatomic valgus is attained. If bowing persists beyond age 2, increases rather than decreases, occurs in only one leg, or if a patient is knock-kneed in association with short stature, the patient should be referred to an orthopedist. Genu varum is usually secondary to tibial rotation (Blount disease, Figure 26–4), while genu valgum may be caused by skeletal dysplasia or rickets.



▲ **Figure 26–4.** Blount disease with genu varum.

» Treatment

Individuals with genu varum may be at a greater risk for falling as the deformity increases the normal postural sway in the mediolateral direction. Bracing may be appropriate. An osteotomy may be necessary for severe problems such as occurs in Blount disease (proximal tibial epiphysial dysplasia).

TIBIAL TORSION & FEMORAL ANTEVERSION

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

"Toeing in" in small children is a common parental concern. Tibial torsion refers to rotation of the leg between the knee and the ankle. Internal rotation amounts to about 20 degrees at birth but decreases to neutral rotation by age 16 months. The deformity may be accentuated by laxity of the knee ligaments, which allows excessive internal rotation of the leg in small children. This condition is largely self-limiting and usually resolves spontaneously with further growth and development. Toeing in beyond age 2 or 3 years is usually secondary to femoral anteversion, characterized by more internal rotation of the hip than external rotation. This femoral alignment decreases toward neutral during growth.

» Treatment

Treatment for tibial torsion is focused on educating the families to the benign nature and expected resolution with observation. In older children suspected to have femoral anteversion, little is gained by active treatment with shoes or braces. Active external rotation exercises, such as skating or bicycle riding, are encouraged. Osteotomy for rotational correction is occasional required when symptoms such as knee and hip pain are present. However, the vast majority go on to resolve spontaneously.

Lincoln TL, Suen PW: Common rotational variations in children. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2003;11:312 [PMID: 14565753].

DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP JOINT

» Clinical Findings

Developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH) encompasses a spectrum of conditions where an abnormal relationship exists between the proximal femur and the acetabulum. In the most severe condition, the femoral head is not in contact with the acetabulum and is classified as a dislocated hip. In a dislocatable hip, the femoral head is within the acetabulum but can be dislocated with a provocative maneuver. A subluxatable hip is one in which the femoral head comes partially out of the joint with a provocative maneuver. Acetabular dysplasia is used to denote insufficient acetabular development and is a radiographic diagnosis. Congenital dislocation of the hip more commonly affects the left hip, occurring in approximately 1%–3% of newborns. At birth, both the acetabulum and femur are underdeveloped (Figure 26–5).

▲ **Figure 26–5.** Radiographic evidence of underdeveloped acetabulum and femur in developmental dysplasia of the hip.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical diagnosis of dislocations in newborns is dependent on demonstrating the instability of the joint by placing the infant on his or her back and obtaining complete relaxation. As these clinical signs can be subtle, they can be easily missed with a crying or upset infant. The examiner's long finger is placed over the greater trochanter and the thumb over the inner side of the thigh. Both hips are flexed 90 degrees and then slowly abducted from the midline, one hip at a time. With gentle pressure, an attempt is made to lift the greater trochanter forward. A feeling of slipping as the head relocates is a sign of instability (Ortolani sign). When the joint is more stable, the deformity must be provoked by applying slight pressure with the thumb on the medial side of the thigh as the thigh is adducted, thus slipping the hip posteriorly and eliciting a palpable clunk as the hip dislocates (Barlow sign, Figure 26–6). Limited hip abduction of less than 60 degrees while the knee is in 90 degrees of flexion is believed to be the most sensitive sign for detecting a dysplastic hip. Asymmetrical skin folds are present in about 25% of normal newborns and therefore are not particularly helpful to diagnosing hip dislocation.

The signs of instability become less evident after the first month of life. If the knees are at unequal heights when the hips and knees are flexed, the dislocated hip will be on the side with the lower knee. This is called a Galeazzi sign. If dysplasia of the hip has not been diagnosed before the child begins to walk, there will be a painless limp and/or a lurch to

▲**Figure 26–6.** Ortolani/Barlow examination technique.

the affected side. When the child stands on the affected leg, a dip of the pelvis will be evident on the opposite side, due to weakness of the gluteus medius muscle. This is called the Trendelenburg sign and accounts for the unusual swaying gait. As a child with bilateral dislocation of the hips begins to walk, the gait is waddling.

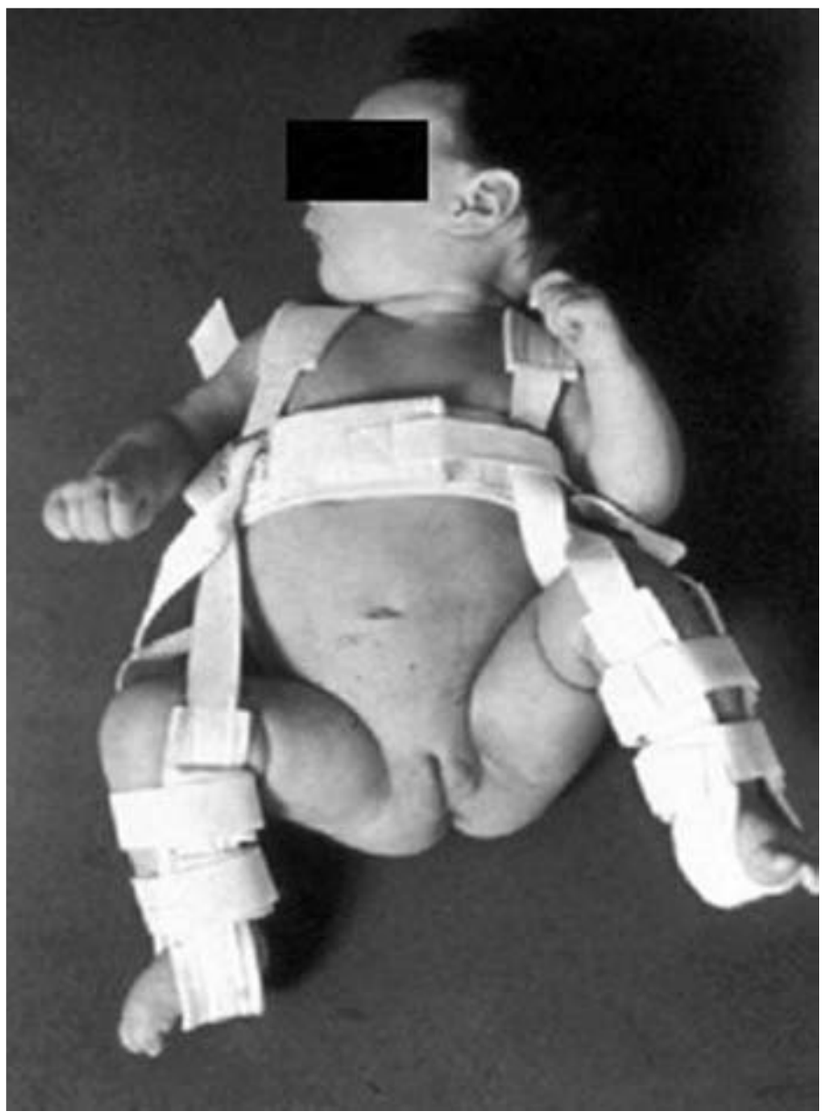
B. Imaging Studies

Clinical signs of instability are more reliable than radiographs for diagnosing developmental dislocation of the hip in the newborn. Ultrasonography is most useful in newborns, and can be helpful for screening high-risk infants, such as those with breech presentation or positive family history. Radiological examination becomes more valuable after the first 6 weeks of life, with lateral displacement of the femoral head being the most reliable sign. In children with incomplete abduction during the first few months of life, a radiograph of the pelvis is indicated.

» Treatment

Dysplasia is progressive with growth unless the instability is corrected. If the dislocation is corrected in the first few weeks of life, the dysplasia can be completely reversible and a normal hip will more likely develop. If the dislocation or subluxation persists with age, the deformity will worsen until it is not completely reversible, especially after the walking age. For this reason, it is important to diagnose the deformity and institute treatment early.

Most unstable hips undergo spontaneous correction by 2–6 weeks of age. A Pavlik harness, which maintains reduction by placing the hip in a flexed and abducted position, can be easily used to treat dislocation or dysplasia diagnosed in the first few weeks or months of life (Figure 26–7). In order to be safely treated in a Pavlik harness, hips must be



▲**Figure 26–7.** A Pavlik harness used to treat developmental dysplasia of the hip.

manually reducible with only gentle manipulation. Forced abduction, or reduction requiring extremes of motion for stability, can lead to avascular necrosis of the femoral head and is contraindicated. The use of double or triple diapers is ineffective. An orthopedic surgeon with experience managing the problem is best to supervise treatment.

If a hip cannot be reduced and have a stable reduction with Pavlik treatment, then a closed reduction with arthrogram is appropriate treatment. A hip spica cast is used after reduction. If the hip is not stable within a reasonable range of motion after closed reduction, open reduction is indicated.

Treatment is still possible in the first 2 years of life, but the results are not as good as with early treatment. In patients older than 2 years, more aggressive procedures like osteotomies and operations to correct the deformities of the acetabulum and femur, as well as open reduction, are often necessary to create a more normal orientation and shape of the hip joint. Older children, as well as children who are bilaterally affected, are more likely to experience complications from more extensive procedures.

Delaney LR, Karmazyn B: Developmental dysplasia of the hip: background and the utility of ultrasound. Semin Ultrasound CT MR 2011;32:151–156 [PMID: 21414550].

Wang TM, Wu KW, Shih SF, Huang SC, Kuo KN: Outcomes of open reduction for developmental dysplasia of the hip: does bilateral dysplasia have a poorer outcome? J Bone Joint Surg Am 2013;95(12):1081–1086 [PMID: 23783204].

SLIPPED CAPITAL FEMORAL EPIPHYSIS

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

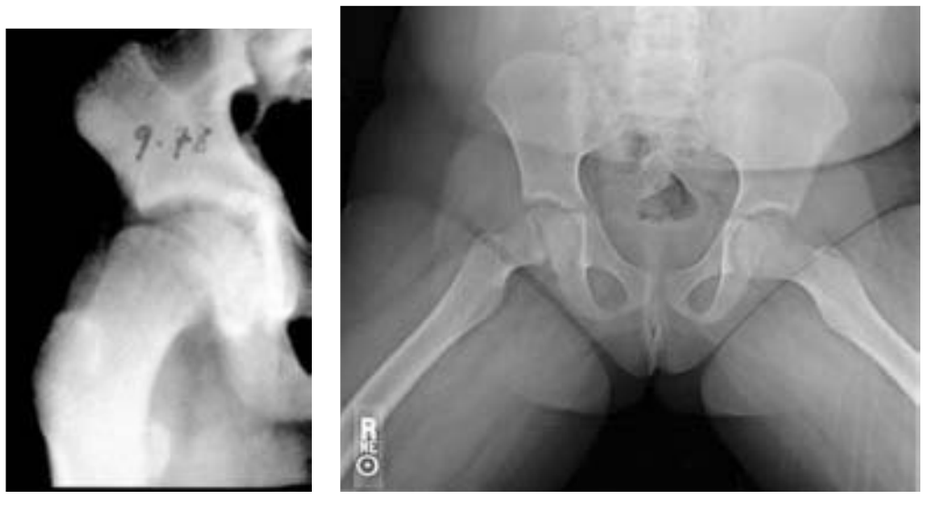
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE) is caused by displacement of the proximal femoral epiphysis due to disruption of the growth plate (Figure 26–8). The head of the femur is usually displaced medially and posteriorly relative to the femoral neck. This condition is most commonly seen in adolescent, obese males. It occurs when stress increases across the proximal femoral physis (growth plate) or resistance to shear is reduced. Factors that can lead to this increase in stress or decrease in resistance include endocrine disorders, obesity, coxa profunda (a deep acetabular socket), and femoral or acetabular retroversion. Retroversion of the femur occurs when the proximal femoral segment is angled posteriorly relative to the shaft of the femur. Acetabular retroversion refers to when the alignment of the opening of the acetabulum does not face the normal anterolateral direction, but inclines more posterolaterally.

Clinically, SCFE is classified as stable or unstable. SCFE is considered stable if the child is able to bear weight on the affected extremity. In unstable SCFE, the child is unable to bear weight. An increased rate of avascular necrosis is correlated with the inability to bear weight.

Acute SCFE occasionally occurs following a fall or direct trauma to the hip. More commonly, vague symptoms occur over a protracted period in an otherwise healthy child who presents with pain and limp. The pain can be referred into the thigh or the medial side of the knee, making examination of the hip joint important in any obese child complaining of knee pain. Physical examination consistently reveals a limitation of internal rotation of the hip. The diagnosis may be clearly apparent only in the lateral radiographic view of the hip or frog lateral of the pelvis.

» Treatment

Initial management consists of making the patient non–weight bearing on crutches and immediate referral to an orthopedic surgeon. Treatment is based on the same principles that govern treatment of any fracture of the femoral neck: the head of the femur is internally fixed to the neck of the femur and the fracture line allowed to heal.



▲**Figure 26–8.** Radiographic evidence of slipped capital femoral epiphysis.

» Prognosis

The long-term prognosis is guarded because most of these patients continue to be overweight and overstress their hip joints. Follow-up studies have shown a high incidence of premature degenerative arthritis, even in those who do not develop avascular necrosis. The development of avascular necrosis almost guarantees a poor prognosis, because new bone does not readily replace the dead bone at this late stage of skeletal development. About 30% of patients have bilateral involvement, which may occur as late as 1 or 2 years after the primary episode.

Novais EN, Millis MB: Slipped capital femoral epiphysis: prevalence, pathogenesis, and natural history. Clin Orthop Relat Res 2012;470(12):3432–3438 [PMID: 23054509].

COMMON SPINE CONDITIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Conditions most often present with a neck or back deformity.
- Treatment varies and is based on risk factors for progression.

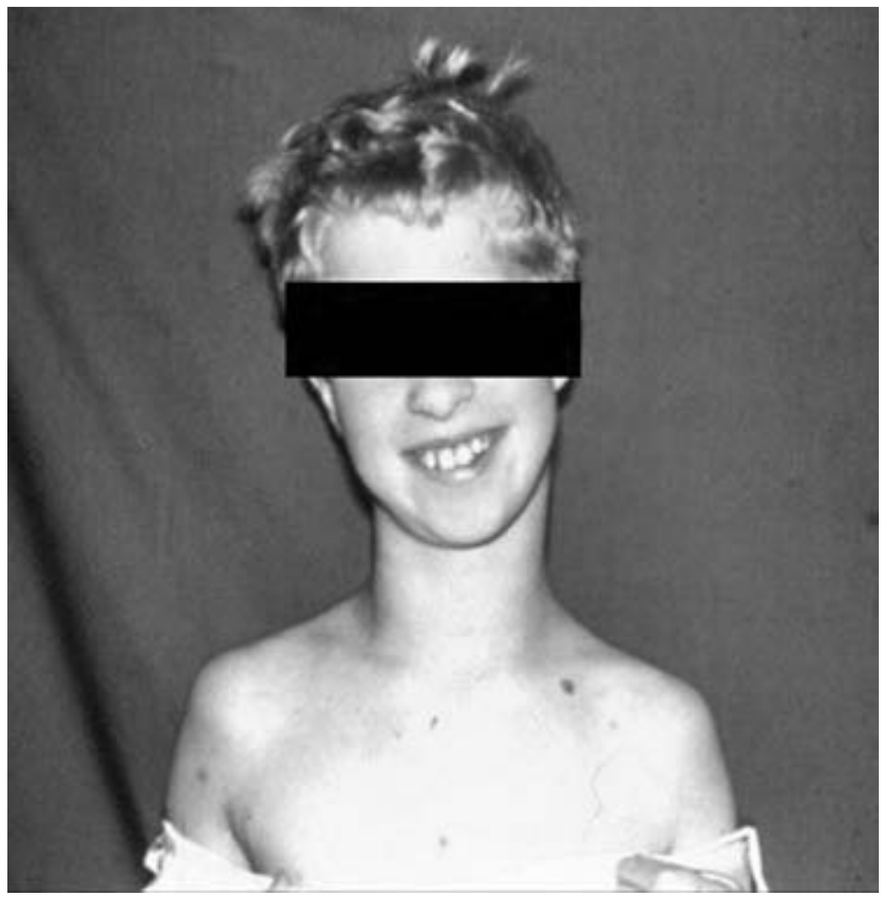
TORTICOLLIS

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Injury to the sternocleidomastoid muscle during delivery or disease affecting the cervical spine in infancy, such as congenital vertebral anomalies, may cause torticollis. When contracture of the sternocleidomastoid muscle causes torticollis, the chin is rotated to the side opposite of the affected muscle, causing the head to tilt toward the side of the contracture (Figure 26–9). A mass felt in the midportion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle in a newborn is likely a hematoma or developmental fibroma, rather than a true tumor.

Acute torticollis may follow upper respiratory infection or mild trauma in children. Upper respiratory infections may lead to swelling in the upper cervical spine, particularly at the C1-C2 region. This swelling renders the C1-C2 articulation susceptible to rotatory subluxation, which commonly presents as a clinical picture of torticollis. Rotatory subluxation of the upper cervical spine requires computed



▲**Figure 26–9.** Torticollis in a young male.

tomography for accurate assessment. Other causes of torticollis include spinal cord and cerebellar tumors, syringomyelia, and rheumatoid arthritis.

» Treatment

If torticollis in early infancy is left untreated, a striking facial asymmetry can persist. Passive stretching is an effective treatment in up to 97% of all cases. If the deformity does not correct with passive stretching during the first year of life, surgical release of the muscle origin and insertion can be an effective treatment option. Excising the "tumor" of the sternocleidomastoid muscle is unnecessary and creates an unsightly scar.

For acquired torticollis in childhood, traction or a cervical collar usually results in resolution of the symptoms within 1 or 2 days.

» Prognosis

Torticollis is occasionally associated with congenital deformities of the cervical spine. Radiographs of the spine are indicated in most cases where such anomalies are suspected. In addition, there is a 15%–20% incidence of associated hip dysplasia.

Tomczak KK, Rosman NP: Torticollis. J Child Neurol 2013; 28(3):365–378 [PMID: 23271760].

SCOLIOSIS

Scoliosis is characterized by lateral curvature of the spine associated with rotation of the involved vertebrae and classified by its anatomic location, in either the thoracic or lumbar spine, with rare involvement of the cervical spine (Figure 26–10). There are four main categories of scoliosis:

▲**Figure 26–10.** Clinical and radiographic representation of scoliosis.

idiopathic, congenital, neuromuscular (associated with a neurological or muscular disease), and syndromic (associated with a known syndrome). Idiopathic scoliosis accounts for around 80% of cases. It is more common in girls and typically develops around 8–10 years of age, but can occur earlier. There is a genetic component. Congenital scoliosis accounts for 5%–7% of cases and is a result of vertebral abnormalities due to a failure of formation or segmentation of the affected vertebrae.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Scoliosis in adolescents does not typically cause significant pain. If a patient has significant pain, she/he should be evaluated to rule out the possibility of some other disorder such as infection or tumor. Deformity of the rib cage and asymmetry of the waistline are clinically evident for curvatures of 30 degrees or more. Lesser curves may be detected through a forward bending test, which is designed to detect early abnormalities of rotation that may not be apparent when the patient is standing erect.

B. Imaging

Radiographs taken of the entire spine in the standing position in both the posterior anterior (PA) and lateral planes are the most valuable for diagnosis (see Figure 26–10). Usually a primary curve is evident with compensatory curvature to balance the body. Rotation of the spine may be measured with a scoliometer. Rotation is associated with a marked rib hump as the lateral curvature increases in severity.

» Treatment

Treatment of scoliosis depends on the curve magnitude, skeletal maturity, and risk of progression. Specific management is dependent on the Cobb angle, measured on a standing PA x-ray of the spine. Curvatures of less than 20 degrees typically do not require treatment unless they show progression.

Bracing is controversial, but often used for curvatures of 20–40 degrees in a skeletally immature child. Curvatures greater than 40 degrees are resistant to treatment by bracing. Thoracic curvatures greater than 70 degrees have been correlated with poor pulmonary function in adult life, leading treatment algorithms toward preventing progression to this extreme. Curvatures reaching a magnitude of 40–60 degrees are indicated for surgical correction as they are highly likely to continue to progress. Treatment is also indicated for any curvature that demonstrates progression on serial radiologic examination. Surgical intervention consists of spinal instrumentation and fusion. Spinal instrumentation (rods, screws, hooks, etc) are applied to the region of the spine to be corrected and bone graft is added. Definitive spinal fusions should be delayed as long as possible in young children through the use of casting, bracing, and growth modulating surgeries such as growing rods or vertical expandable prosthetic titanium ribs (VEPTR).

» Prognosis

Compensated small curves that do not progress may cause minor deformities but are well tolerated throughout life. Patients should be counseled about the genetic transmission of scoliosis and cautioned that their children's backs should be examined as part of routine physicals. Early detection allows for simple brace treatment. Severe scoliosis may require correction by spinal fusion.

KYPHOSIS

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

When looking at the sagittal view of a spine, there are two normal curves to be noticed. In the lumbar region, the normal curve with an anterior convexity is known as lumbar lordosis. In the thoracic region, a normal curve with a posterior convexity is called kyphosis. Excessive kyphosis is pathologic and known as hyperkyphosis. Clinically, a visible deformity may be visible on the back, exacerbated by the forward bend test (Figure 26–11). Kyphosis can often accompany scoliosis, in which case the two conditions may share a common etiology. Additionally, excessive kyphosis can be caused by trauma and degenerative and inflammatory conditions. Congenital abnormalities, including Scheuermann disease, are the most common cause of severe kyphosis. In Scheuermann disease, abnormal vertebrae arise from either a failure of segmentation or formation and commonly result in wedge-shaped vertebrae that cause severe kyphosis.

B. Imaging

Standing radiographs taken in the lateral plane are necessary to measure the angle of the curve of the spine and quantify the severity of the curve. The curve is typically measured across the thoracic region from T1–T12. Normal values for this measurement fall in the 20–45 degree range. Anything in excess of 45 degrees is considered pathologic (Figure 26–12).

▲**Figure 26–11.** Kyphosis in an adolescent.

» Treatment

Treatment for kyphosis is similar to that of scoliosis. Mild forms of the deformity may undergo treatment with bracing. Depending on etiology, however, the effectiveness and indications for doing so are controversial. More severe deformities require surgical intervention with spinal instrumentation and fusion. In patients who have congenital, wedge-shaped abnormal vertebrae, vertebral column resection may be indicated.

▲**Figure 26–12.** Lateral radiograph showing severe kyphosis.

Yaman O, Dalbayrak S: Kyphosis and review of the literature. Turk Neurosurg 2014;24(4):455–465 [PMID: 25050667].

INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Chronic conditions generally related to overuse.
- Rule out more serious conditions first.
- Activity restriction is the treatment.

ARTHRITIS AND TENOSYNOVITIS

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs and Treatment

Degenerative arthritis may follow childhood skeletal problems, such as infection, SCFE, avascular necrosis, trauma, or hemarthroses in patients with hemophilia. Early, effective treatment of these disorders can prevent arthritis. Overuse in young athletes can also cause degenerative changes to the soft tissues around the joints. Young boys throwing excessive numbers of pitches, especially curve balls, may develop "Little League" elbow, consisting of degenerative changes around the humeral condyles associated with pain, swelling, and limitation of motion (see Chapter 27). Limitation of the number of pitches thrown by little league pitchers is the key to prevention.

Tenosynovitis is most common in the knees and feet. Children taking dancing lessons, particularly toe dancing, may have pain around the flexor tendon sheaths in the toes or ankles. Rest is effective treatment. Around the knee, the patellar ligament may be irritated, with associated swelling in the infrapatellar fat pad. Synovitis in this area is usually due to overuse and is treated by rest and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Corticosteroid injections are contraindicated.

SYNDROMES WITH MUSCULOSKELETAL INVOLVEMENT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Many genetic syndromes include a musculoskeletal component or association.
- Resulting deformity can result in a lack of function.

ARTHROGRYPOSIS MULTIPLEX CONGENITA (AMYOPLASIA CONGENITA)

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita (AMC) consists of incomplete fibrous ankylosis (usually bilateral) of many or all joints of the body. AMC affects both genders equally and occurs in approximately 1 in 2–3000 live births. Upper extremity contractures usually consist of adduction of the shoulders; extension of the elbows; flexion of the wrists; and stiff, straight fingers with poor muscle control of the thumbs. Common deformities of the lower extremities include dislocation of the hips, extension contractures of the knees, and severe club feet. The joints are fusiform and the joint capsules decreased in volume due to lack of movement during fetal development. Muscle development is poor and may be represented only by fibrous bands. Various investigations have attributed the basic defect to an abnormality of muscle or lower motor neurons.

Treatment

Passive mobilization of joints is the early treatment. Prolonged casting results in further stiffness and is not indicated. Removable splints combined with vigorous therapy are the most effective conservative treatment; however, surgical release of the affected joints is often necessary. Clubfoot associated with arthrogryposis is very stiff and nearly always requires surgical correction. Knee surgery, including capsulotomy, osteotomy, and tendon lengthening, is used to correct deformities. In young children, a dislocated hip may be reduced operatively by a medial approach. Multiple operative hip procedures are contraindicated, as they may further stiffen the hip dislocation with consequent impairment of motion. Affected children are often able to walk despite dislocations and contractures, but functional gait improves with treatment. The long-term prognosis for physical and vocational independence is guarded. These patients have normal intelligence, but they have such severe physical restrictions that gainful employment is hard to find.

Kalampokas E, Kalampokas T, Sofoudis C, Deligeoroglou E, Botsis D: Diagnosing arthrogyrposis multiplex congenital: a review. ISRN Obstet Gynecol 2012;2012:264918 [PMID: 23050160].

Marfan Syndrome

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Marfan syndrome is a connective tissue disorder characterized by unusually long fingers and toes (arachnodactyly);

hypermobility of the joints; subluxation of the ocular lenses; other eye abnormalities, including cataract, coloboma, megalocornea, strabismus, and nystagmus; a high-arched palate; a strong tendency to scoliosis (60% of all those diagnosed); pectus carinatum (an outward protrusion of the sternum); and thoracic aortic aneurysms due to weakness of the media of the vessels (see Chapter 37). Fibrillin-1 gene mutations are commonly associated with Marfan syndrome. Serum mucoproteins may be decreased, and urinary excretion of hydroxyproline increased. The condition is easily confused with homocystinuria, because the phenotypic presentation is nearly identical. The two diseases are differentiated by detecting homocystine in the urine of patients with homocystinuria.

» Treatment

Treatment is usually supportive and includes management of blood pressure and restriction of physical activity. Scoliosis may require more vigorous treatment by bracing or spine fusion. The long-term prognosis has improved for patients since the development of better treatment of their aortic aneurysms.

Lebreiro A et al: Marfan syndrome clinical manifestations, pathophysiology and, new outlook on drug therapy. Rev Port Cardiol 2010;29(6):1021–1036 [PMID: 20964113].

Klippel-Feil Syndrome

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Klippel-Feil syndrome is characterized by failure of segmentation of some or all of the cervical vertebrae. Multiple congenital spinal anomalies may be present, with hemivertebrae and scoliosis among the most common presentations. The neck is short and stiff, the hairline is low, and the ears are low set. Cervical rib, spina bifida, torticollis, web neck, high scapula, renal anomalies, and deafness are commonly associated defects. Renal ultrasound as well as a hearing test is indicated if there is evidence of abnormal renal function.

» Treatment

Surgical intervention is necessary to prevent neurologic injury in symptomatic patients who present with unstable spinal anomalies. If asymptomatic, a spine surgeon will determine if surgical intervention is warranted after review of patient's age, history, and activity level. Spinal arthrodesis is indicated if progressive scoliotic deformities develop.

Kim HJ: Cervical spine anomalies in children and adolescents. Curr Opin Pediatr 2013;25(1):72–77 [PMID: 23263023].

Xue X, Shen J, Zhang J et al: Klippel-Feil syndrome in congenital scoliosis. Spine (Phila Pa 1976) 2014;39(23):E1353–E1358 [PMID: 25202932].

Sprengel Deformity

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Sprengel deformity is a congenital condition where one or both scapulas are elevated and hypoplastic. The deformity prevents the arm from raising completely on the affected side, and torticollis may be an associated finding. The deformity occurs alone or in association with Klippel-Feil syndrome or scoliosis and rib abnormalities. If the deformity is functionally limiting, the scapula may be surgically relocated closer to the normal anatomic position. Surgical intervention improves cosmetic appearance and function.

Harvey EJ, Bernstein M, Desy NM, Saran N, Ouellet JA: Sprengel deformity: pathogenesis and management. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2012;20(3):177–186 [PMID: 22382290].

Osteogenesis Imperfecta

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteogenesis imperfecta is a rare genetic connective tissue disease characterized by multiple and recurrent fractures. The estimated incidence is 1 in 12,000–15,000. Clinical features of the disease lead to diagnosis in the majority of cases. There are several forms of osteogenesis imperfecta, designated type I to type XII. Types I–V are the result of autosomal dominant mutations, whereas types VI–XII are autosomal recessive. Each type is associated with a mutation of a different gene, varying levels of severity, and a range of characteristic features. The severe fetal type (osteogenesis imperfecta congenita) is distinguished by multiple intrauterine or perinatal fractures. Moderately affected children have numerous fractures and exhibit dwarfism as a result of their acquired bone deformities and growth retardation. Fractures begin to occur at different times and in variable patterns after the perinatal period, resulting in fewer fractures and deformities relative to severe cases. Cortical thickness is reduced in the shafts of the long bones, and accessory skull bones that are completely surrounded by cranial sutures (wormian bones) are present in the skull. Blue sclerae, thin skin, hyperextensibility of ligaments, otosclerosis with significant hearing loss, and hypoplastic and deformed teeth are characteristic of osteogenesis imperfecta. Cardiovascular and respiratory problems are the most common causes of morbidity and mortality in adulthood. Intelligence is not affected.

Affected patients are sometimes suspected of having suffered abuse. Osteogenesis imperfecta should be ruled out in any case of potential nonaccidental trauma. Of note, an olecranon fracture in a child is rare and can be indicative of osteogenesis imperfecta.

» Treatment

Surgical treatment involves deformity correction of the long bones. Multiple intramedullary rods have been used to decrease the incidence of fractures and prevent deformity from fracture malunion. Patients are often confined to wheelchairs during adulthood. Bisphosphonates have been shown to decrease the incidence of fractures.

Harrington J, Sochett E, Howard A: Update on the evaluation and treatment of osteogenesis imperfecta. Pediatr Clin North Am 2014;61(6):1243–1257 [PMID: 25439022].

Osteopetrosis (Osteitis Condensans Generalisata, Marble Bone Disease, Albers-Schönberg Disease)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteopetrosis is a rare disorder of osteoclastic resorption of bone, resulting in abnormally dense bones. The reduced marrow spaces result in anemia. There are two types: a milder autosomal dominant type and a more malignant autosomal recessive type. The findings may appear at any age. Radiologic examination shows increased bone density and transverse bands in the shafts, clubbing of ends, and vertical striations of long bones. Thickening about the cranial foramina is present, and heterotopic calcification of soft tissues is possible. Diminished life expectancy is seen in severe infantile forms.

» Treatment

Treatment is largely symptomatic. The most severe autosomal recessive forms of osteopetrosis can be treated successfully by hematopoietic stem cell transplantation.

Michou L, Brown JP: Genetics of bone diseases Paget's disease, fibrous dysplasia, osteopetrosis, and osteogenesis imperfecta. Joint Bone Spine 2011;(78):252–258 [PMID: 20855225].

Achondroplasia (Classic Chondrodystrophy)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Achondroplasia is the most common form of short-limbed dwarfism. The upper arms and thighs are proportionately shorter than the forearms and legs. Skeletal dysplasia is suspected based on abnormal stature, disproportion, dysmorphism, or deformity. Measurement of height is an excellent clinical screening tool. Findings frequently include bowing of the extremities, a waddling gait, limitation of motion of major joints, relaxation of the ligaments, short stubby fingers of almost equal length, frontal bossing, midface hypoplasia, otolaryngeal system dysfunction, moderate hydrocephalus, depressed nasal bridge, and lumbar lordosis. Intelligence and sexual function are normal. While this disorder has an autosomal dominant transmission pattern, 80% of cases result from a random mutation in the fibroblast growth factor receptor-3 (FGFR3) gene.

B. Imaging

Radiographs demonstrate short, thick tubular bones and irregular epiphysial plates. The ends of the bones are thick, with broadening and cupping. Epiphysial ossification may be delayed. Due to diminished growth in the spinal pedicles, the spinal canal is narrowed (congenital stenosis), and a herniated disk in adulthood may lead to acute paraplegia.

» Treatment

Growth hormone is given to some children with bone dysplasia. Limb lengthening is possible to achieve a more normal proportion of extremities but is controversial.

Shirley ED, Ain MC: Achondroplasia: manifestations and treatment. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2009;(17):231–241 [PMID: 19307672].

Osteochondrodystrophy (Morquio Disease)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Morquio disease is an autosomal recessive disorder affecting mucopolysaccharide storage. Skeletal abnormalities include shortening of the spine, kyphosis, scoliosis, shortened extremities, pectus carinatum, genu valgum or "knock knees," and a hypoplastic odontoid with atlantoaxial instability. Appearance is generally normal at birth, with deformities developing between ages 1 and 4 years as a result of abnormal deposition of mucopolysaccharides. Increased urinary glycosaminoglycan levels are associated with increased severity.

B. Imaging

Radiographs demonstrate wedge-shaped flattened vertebrae and irregular, malformed epiphyses. The ribs are broad and have been likened to canoe paddles. The lower extremities are more severely involved than the upper extremities.

» Treatment

The major treatment issue revolves around prevention of cervical myelopathy. Progressive hip subluxation, genu valgum, and ankle valgus often require surgical intervention. Bone marrow transplantation has been successful in alleviating some symptoms. Enzyme replacement therapy has

emerged as another possible treatment option for afflicted patients. Prognosis depends on age of onset.

Tuberville S et al: Clinical outcomes following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for the treatment of mucopolysaccharidosis VI. Mol Genet Metab 2011;2:111–115 [PMID: 20980181].

NEUROLOGIC DISORDERS INVOLVING THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

» Take a detailed birth history.

» Assess functional status of patient.

» Management geared to maximize function.

Orthopedic Aspects of Cerebral Palsy

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Cerebral palsy is defined as a nonprogressive brain injury causing muscle control issues that occurs while a child's brain is developing. Early physical therapy encouraging completion of normal developmental patterns may benefit patients with cerebral palsy. This therapy is most effective during the first few years of life, and should be discontinued when no improvement is apparent.

Bracing and splinting are of questionable benefit, although night splints may be useful in preventing equinus deformity of the ankle, the most common deformity found in this population, or adduction contractures of the hips. Orthopedic surgery is useful for treating joint contractures that interfere with function. Muscle transfers are effective in carefully selected patients with cerebral palsy, and most orthopedic procedures are directed at tendon lengthening or bony stabilization by osteotomy or arthrodesis.

Flexion and adduction of the hip due to hyperactivity of the adductors and flexors may produce a progressive neuromuscular dislocation of the hip (Figure 26–13). This can lead to pain and dysfunction, with treatment being difficult and unsatisfactory. Treatment can include abduction bracing, supplemented by release of the adductors and hip flexors but this has been shown to only delay the need for osteotomy. Osteotomy of the femur and/or pelvis may be necessary to correct bony deformities of femoral anteversion, coxa valga, and acetabular dysplasia that are invariably present.

Surgeons must examine patients on several occasions before any operative procedure as it is difficult to predict the surgical outcome in individuals diagnosed with cerebral palsy. Follow-up care with a physical therapist can maximize the anticipated long-term gains and should be arranged before surgery.

▲**Figure 26–13.** Neuromuscular hip subluxation in a patient with spastic quadriplegic cerebral palsy.

Orthopedic Aspects of Myelodysplasia (Spina Bifida)

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Patients should be examined early by an orthopedic surgeon. The level of neurologic involvement determines the muscle imbalance that will be present to produce deformity with growth. The involvement is often asymmetrical and tends to change during the first 12–18 months of life. Associated musculoskeletal problems may include clubfoot, congenital dislocation of the hip, arthrogryposis-type changes of the lower extremities, and congenital scoliosis and kyphosis. Spina bifida lesions are most common at the L3–L4 level and tend to affect the hip joint, with progressive dislocation occurring during growth due to unopposed hip flexion and adduction forces. Foot deformities are complicated by the fact that sensation is generally absent; these deformities may be in any direction depending on the muscle imbalance present. Spinal deformities develop in a high percentage of these children, with scoliosis present in approximately 40%.

Ambulation may require long leg braces. In children who have a reasonable likelihood of walking, operative treatment consists of reduction of the hip, alignment of the feet in the weight-bearing position, as well as stabilization of the scoliosis. In children who lack active quadriceps function and extensor power of the knee, the likelihood of ambulation is greatly decreased. In such patients, aggressive surgery to the foot and hip region is usually not indicated as it may result in stiffening of the joints and prevent sitting. The overall treatment of the child with spina bifida should be coordinated in

a multidisciplinary clinic where various medical specialists work with therapists, social workers, and teachers to provide the best possible care.

TRAUMA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Fall on outstretched hand (FOOSH) is most common mechanism.
- Directed physical examination (eg, swelling, tenderness, deformity, instability) and radiographic examination.
- Rule out physeal fracture.
- Early protected motion for sprains and strains.
- Reduction and immobilization for fractures.

Soft Tissue Trauma

A sprain is the stretching of a ligament and a strain is a stretch of a muscle or tendon. Contusions are generally due to tissue compression, with damage to blood vessels within the tissue and the formation of a hematoma.

In a severe sprain, the ligament is completely disrupted resulting in instability of the joint. Incomplete tearing of the ligament, with local pain and swelling but no joint instability, is considered a mild or moderate sprain.

The initial treatment of any sprain consists of ice, compression, and elevation. Brief splinting followed by early range of motion exercises of the affected joint protect against further injury and relieves swelling and pain. Ibuprofen and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are useful for pain. Rest, ice, and elevation are usually sufficient for mild or moderate sprains. If more severe trauma occurs, resulting in complete tearing of a ligament, instability of the joint may be demonstrated by gross examination or by stress testing with radiographic documentation. Such deformity of the joint may cause persistent instability resulting in other injuries. If instability is evident, surgical repair of the torn ligament may be indicated. If a muscle is torn at its tendinous insertion, it can be repaired surgically.

Ankle Sprains

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The history will indicate that the injury was by either forceful inversion or eversion. The more common inversion injury results in tearing or injury to the lateral ligaments, whereas an eversion injury will injure the medial ligaments of the ankle. The injured ligaments can be identified by careful palpation for point tenderness around the ankle.

» Treatment

The joint should be supported or immobilized in the functional position (right angle). Use of an air splint produces joint rest, and the extremity can be protected by using crutches. Functional rehabilitation to include edema control, range of motion, strengthening, and restoration of proprioceptive sensation can prevent long-term disability. Reinjury is common. Continued injury can lead to chronic ankle instability.

Kemler E, Port I, Backx F, Dijk CN: A systematic review on the treatment of acute ankle sprain brace versus other functional treatment types. Sports Med 2011;41:185–197 [PMID: 21395362].

Knee Sprains

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Sprains of the collateral and cruciate ligaments are uncommon in children. These ligaments are so strong that it is more common to have boney injury. In adolescence, rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament can result from a rotational injury.

» Treatment

Effusion of the knee after trauma deserves referral to an orthopedic specialist. The differential diagnosis includes torn ligament, torn meniscus, and osteochondral fracture. If an injury produces avulsion of the tibial spine, associated injuries can include meniscal and chondral injuries, and anatomic reduction and fixation are often required. Nontraumatic effusion should be evaluated for inflammatory conditions (eg, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis) or patellar malalignment.

Internal Derangements of the Knee

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Meniscal injuries are uncommon in children younger than 12 years. Clicking or locking of the knee may occur in young children as a result of a discoid lateral meniscus, which is a rare congenital anomaly. As the child approaches adolescence, internal damage to the knee from a torsion weight-bearing injury may result in locking of the knee if tearing and displacement of a meniscus occurs. Osteochondritis dissecans, avascular necrosis of subchondral bone that can

▲**Figure 26–14.** Bilateral medial femoral condyle osteochondritis dissecans.

lead to cartilage cracking, instability and degeneration, also presents as swelling and mechanical symptoms of the knee in adolescence (Figure 26–14). This can be seen in all synovial joints, but the most common presentation is in the medial femoral condyle of the knee. Posttraumatic synovitis may mimic a meniscal lesion. Epiphysial injury should be suspected in any severe injury to the knee or when there is tenderness on both sides of the femoral metaphysis after injury. Stress films will sometimes demonstrate separation of the distal femoral epiphysis.

Back Sprains

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Sprains of the ligaments and muscles of the back are unusual in children but may occur as a result of violent trauma from automobile accidents or athletic injuries. Sprains usually cause lateral and midline pain over musculature. Back pain in a child may be the only symptom of significant disease and warrants clinical investigation. Inflammation, infection, renal disease, or tumors can cause back pain in children, and sprain should not be accepted as a routine diagnosis.

Gurd DP: Back pain in the young athlete. Sports Med Arthrosc Rev 2011;19:7–16 [PMID: 21293233].

Contusions

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Muscle contusions with hematoma formation produce the familiar "charley horse" injury.

» Treatment

Treatment includes application of ice, compression, and rest. Exercise should be avoided for 5–7 days. Local heat may hasten healing once the acute phase of tenderness and swelling has passed.

Myositis Ossificans

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Ossification within muscle occurs when sufficient trauma causes a hematoma that later heals in the manner of a fracture. Contusions of the quadriceps of the thigh or the triceps of the arm are the most common injuries. Disability is great, with local swelling, heat and extreme pain with the slightest provocation of the adjacent joint.

» Treatment

The limb should be rested until the local reaction has subsided (5–7 days). When local heat and tenderness have decreased, gentle active exercises may be initiated. Passive stretching exercises are not indicated as they may stimulate the ossification reaction. If an extremity experiences a severe injury with a hematoma, it should be splinted and further activity should be avoided until the acute reaction has subsided. If additional trauma causes recurrent injury, ossification may reach spectacular proportions and resemble an osteosarcoma. Surgery to excise the ossification may restart the process and lead to an even more severe reaction and should not be attempted before 9 months to 1 year after injury.

TRAUMATIC SUBLUXATIONS & DISLOCATIONS

» Clinical Findings

Dislocation or Separation of the Shoulder

A. Symptoms and Signs and Treatment

Shoulder dislocations usually following traumatic injury. Patients almost always present with shoulder pain, but can be with or without weakness or lack of function. The vast majority (~90%) of shoulder dislocations occur anteriorly and can have obvious deformity of the shoulder with anterior displacement of the humoral head. Posterior dislocation is rare. It is important to examine and evaluate both shoulders for any asymmetry between the two. Range of motion testing should be limited if a dislocation is suspected to limit further ligament and joint damage. Radiographic evaluation is important for confirming a dislocation or separation diagnosis.

Acromioclavicular (AC) separation: AC separations involve partial or complete tearing of the ligament complex of the AC joint. They are among the most common shoulder injuries, but vary significantly in severity (grade I–VI, with the latter the most severe) and treatment. Grade I–III acromioclavicular separations are most common and generally treated nonsurgically (which includes early physical therapy), while grades IV–VI are usually the result of high energy impacts and are treated surgically. The amount of displacement distinguishes grade III from higher grades. There is controversy about whether grade III AC separations should be treated surgically or nonsurgically.

Subluxation of the Radial Head (Nursemaid's Elbow)

A. Symptoms and Signs and Treatment

Infants may sustain subluxation of the radial head as a result of being lifted or pulled by the hand. The child appears with the elbow fully pronated and painful. The usual complaint is that the child's elbow will not bend. Radiographic findings are normal, but there is point tenderness over the radial head. A **subluxed** radial head (nursemaid's elbow) can be reduced by placing the elbow in full supination and slowly moving the arm from full extension to full flexion; a click may be palpated at the level of the radial head. Relief of pain is remarkable, as the child usually stops crying immediately. The elbow may be immobilized in a sling for comfort for a day. Occasionally, symptoms last for several days, requiring more prolonged immobilization. A pulled elbow may be a clue to battering. This should be considered during examination, especially if the problem is recurrent.

Dislocation of the Patella

A. Symptoms and Signs

Complete patellar dislocations nearly always dislocate laterally. Pain is severe, and the patient will present with the knee slightly flexed and an obvious bony mass lateral to the knee joint associated with a flat area over the anterior knee. Radiologic examination confirms the diagnosis. When subluxation of the patella occurs, symptoms may be more subtle, and the patient will complain that the knee "gives out" or "jumps out of place."

Recurrent dislocations more commonly occur in loose-jointed individuals, especially adolescent girls. Factors that affect risk for recurrence include length of patellar tendon, the depth of trochlear groove, and position of the patella in relation to the trochlear groove that is affected by axial and coronal boney alignment.

» Treatment of Dislocations

In contrast to fracture reduction, which may be safely postponed, dislocations must be reduced immediately in order to minimize further joint damage. Dislocations can usually be reduced by gentle sustained traction. Often, no anesthetic is needed for several hours after the injury due to the protective anesthesia produced by the injury. A thorough neurovascular examination should be performed and documented pre- and postreduction. Radiographs should be obtained postreduction to document congruency and assess for the presence of associated fractures. Following reduction, the joint should be splinted for transportation of the patient. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) may be used along with ice for pain control and to reduce inflammation. The dislocated joint should be treated by immobilization, followed by graduated active exercises through a full range of motion. Vigorous passive manipulation of the joint by a therapist may be harmful.

A dislocated patella can be reduced by extending the knee and placing slight pressure on the patella while gentle traction is exerted on the leg. For first-time dislocation, initial treatment after reduction should be nonoperative, consisting of physical therapy to strengthen the quadriceps, hips, and core stabilizers. Surgery is reserved for individuals with reparable osteochondral injuries, loose bodies, and recurrent dislocation following appropriate nonoperative therapy. Around one-third of patients report a repeated dislocation after rehabilitation.

Petri M et al: Operative vs conservative treatment of traumatic patellar dislocation: results of a prospective randomized controlled clinical trial. Arch Orthop Trauma Surg 2013;133(2):209–213 [PMID: 23138693].

FRACTURES

Epiphyseal Separations

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Epiphyseal separations (also referred to as epiphyseal fractures) are more common than ligamentous injuries in children since the ligaments of the joints are generally stronger than their associated growth plates. Radiographs should be taken whenever a dislocation is suspected in order to rule out epiphyseal fracture. Radiographs of the opposite extremity, especially for injuries around the elbow, are valuable for comparison. Fractures across the growth plate may produce bony bridges that will cause premature cessation of growth or angular deformities of the extremity. These bridges are due to trauma to the growth plate and can occur even with adequate reductions.

» Treatment

Reduction of a fractured epiphysis should be done under anesthesia to align the growth plate with the least amount of

force. Epiphyseal fractures around the shoulder, wrist, and fingers can usually be treated by closed reduction, but fractures of the epiphyses around the elbow often require open reduction. In the lower extremity, accurate reduction of the epiphyseal plate is necessary to prevent joint deformity when a joint surface is involved. If angular deformities result, corrective osteotomy may be necessary.

Dwek JR: The radiographic approach to child abuse. Clin Orthop Relat Res 2011;469:776–789 [PMID: 20544318].

Torus Fractures

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Torus fractures consist of "buckling" of the cortex due to compression of the bone. They are most common in the distal radius or ulna. Alignment is usually satisfactory, and simple immobilization for 3 weeks is sufficient. Soft bandage therapy and cast therapy are effective in preventing further angulation. It is important that the fracture is not misdiagnosed as a greenstick fracture (see below) at initial presentation. Children with a torus fracture who are misdiagnosed with a greenstick fracture report having more pain after application of a soft bandage or cast.

Greenstick Fractures

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Greenstick fractures involve frank disruption of the cortex on one side of the bone but no discernible cleavage plane on the opposite side. The term "greenstick" implies similarity to what happens when one tries to break a twig/stick from a live tree; commonly bark will break on one side of the stick, while remaining intact on the opposite side. Bone ends are not separated, making these fractures angulated but not displaced. Reduction is achieved by straightening the arm into normal alignment and maintaining alignment with a snugly fitting cast. It is necessary to obtain radiographs of greenstick fractures again in 7–10 days to make certain that the reduction has been maintained in the cast. A slight angular deformity can be corrected by remodeling of the bone. The farther the fracture is from the growing end of the bone, the longer the time required for remodeling. The fracture can be considered healed when no tenderness is present and a bony callus is seen on a radiograph.

Fracture of the Clavicle

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Clavicular fractures are very common injuries in infants and children. The patient can be immobilized in a sling for comfort. The healing callus will be apparent when the fracture has consolidated, but this unsightly lump will generally resolve over a period of months to a year via bone remodeling.

Supracondylar Fractures of the Humerus

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The condyles of the distal humerus form the proximal half of the elbow joint. There is a concavity in the posterior distal humerus that is present anatomically to accommodate the olecranon when the elbow reaches full extension. This anatomic accommodation, located in what is referred to as the supracondylar region of the humerus, also creates a thinner area of cortical bone that is more susceptible to injury/fracture (Figure 26–15). Supracondylar fractures tend to occur in children age 3–6 years and are the most common elbow fracture in children. The proximity to the brachial artery in the distal arm creates a potential danger when dealing with these types of fractures. Absence of a distal pulse is a strong indicator of a secondary arterial injury. Swelling may be severe as these injuries are usually associated with a significant amount of trauma.

» Treatment

Most often, these fractures are treated by closed reduction and percutaneous pinning performed under general

▲ **Figure 26–15.** Supracondylar fracture of the humerus.

anesthesia. Complications associated with supracondylar fractures include Volkmann ischemic contracture of the forearm due to vascular compromise and cubitus varus (decreased carrying angle, "gunstock deformity") secondary to poor reduction. The "gunstock deformity" of the elbow may be somewhat unsightly but does not usually interfere with joint function.

General Comments on Other Fractures in Children

Reduction of fractures in children can usually be accomplished by simple traction and manipulation; open reduction is indicated if a satisfactory alignment is not obtained. Remodeling of the fracture callus generally produces an almost normal appearance of the bone over a matter of months. The younger the child, the more remodeling is possible. Angular deformities in the plane of joint motion remodel reliably while rotational malalignment does not remodel well.

There should be suspicion of child abuse whenever the age of a fracture does not match the history given or when the severity of the injury is more than the alleged accident would have produced. In suspected cases of battering in which no fracture is present on the initial radiograph, a repeat radiograph 10 days later is in order. Bleeding beneath the periosteum will be calcified by 7–10 days, and the radiographic appearance can be diagnostic of severe closed trauma characteristic of a battered child.

INFECTIONS OF THE BONES & JOINTS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Movement of the extremity causes pain, resulting in pseudoparalysis.
- Soft tissue swelling.
- Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein (CRP).
- Surgical drainage of abscess plus antibiotics.
- Antibiotic therapy for early osteomyelitis without abscess.

Osteomyelitis

Osteomyelitis is an infectious process that usually starts in the spongy or medullary bone and extends into compact or cortical bone. Commonly preceded by trauma, the lower extremities are more likely to be affected. Osteomyelitis is most commonly caused by hematogenous spread of bacteria from other infected or colonized areas (eg, pyoderma or upper respiratory tract) but it may occur as a result of direct invasion from the outside (exogenous), through a penetrating wound (nail) or open fracture. Staphylococcus aureus is the most common infecting organism and has a tendency to infect the metaphyses of growing bones. Anatomically, the arterial supply to the metaphysis in the long bones includes end arteries just below the growth plate which turn sharply and end in venous sinusoids, causing relative stasis that predisposes to bacterial localization. In the infant (< 1 year), there is direct vascular communication with the epiphysis across the growth plate. Bacterial spread occurs from the metaphysis to the epiphysis and into the joint. In the older child, the growth plate provides an effective barrier and the epiphysis is usually not infected. Infection spreads retrograde from the metaphysis into the diaphysis, and by rupture through the cortical bone, down along the diaphysis beneath the periosteum.

In hematogenous osteomyelitis, 85% of cases are due to S aureus. Streptococci (group B Streptococcus in neonates and young infants, Streptococcus pyogenes in older children) are a less common cause of osteomyelitis. Pseudomonas aeruginosa is common in cases of nail puncture wounds. Children with sickle cell anemia are especially prone to osteomyelitis caused by Salmonella species.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteomyelitis may be subtle in infants, presenting as irritability, diarrhea, or failure to feed properly; temperature may be normal or slightly low; and white blood cell count may be normal or only slightly elevated. There may be pseudoparalysis of the involved limb. Manifestations are more striking in older children, with severe local tenderness and pain and, often, but not invariably, high fever, rapid pulse, and elevated white blood cell count, ESR, and CRP. Osteomyelitis of a lower extremity often occurs around the knee joint in children age 7–10 years. Tenderness is most marked over the metaphysis of the bone where the process has its origin. For a child who refuses to bear weight, osteomyelitis is high in the differential diagnosis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Blood cultures are often positive early. The most important test is the aspiration of pus or biopsy of involved bone. It is useful to insert a needle into the bone in the area of suspected infection and aspirate any fluid present. Fluid should be stained for organisms and cultured. Even edema fluid can be useful for determining the causative organism. Elevation of the ESR above 50 mm/h is typical for osteomyelitis. CRP is elevated earlier than the ESR.

C. Imaging

Osteomyelitis should be diagnosed clinically before significant plain radiographic findings are present. Plain film findings progress from nonspecific local swelling, to elevation of the periosteum, with formation of new bone from the cambium layer of the periosteum occurring after 3–6 days. As infection becomes chronic, areas of cortical bone are isolated by pus spreading down the medullary canal, causing rarefaction and demineralization of the bone. Isolated pieces of cortex become ischemic and form sequestra (dead bone fragments). These radiographic findings are specific, but late. Bone scan is sensitive (before plain radiographic findings are apparent) but nonspecific and should be interpreted in the clinical context. MRI can demonstrate early edema and subperiosteal abscess and is helpful to confirm and localize disease prior to plain film changes.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Intravenous antibiotics should be started as soon as the diagnosis of osteomyelitis is made and diagnostic specimens have been obtained. Transition to oral antibiotics occurs when tenderness, fever, white cell count, and CRP are all resolved/decreasing and is facilitated by a positive culture. Agents that cover S aureus and S pyogenes (eg, oxacillin, nafcillin, cefazolin, and clindamycin) are appropriate for most cases of hematogenous osteomyelitis. Alternative antistaphylococcal therapy (eg, vancomycin) may be needed if methicillin-resistant and clindamycin-resistant S aureus is suspected or isolated. Methicillin-resistant S aureus infection should be suspected in patients with severe cases of hematogenous osteomyelitis. Coverage for other pathogens is also appropriate in specific circumstances (eg, group B Streptococcus in neonates and young infants, Pseudomonas aeruginosa for nail puncture-associated osteomyelitis, Salmonella species in children with sickle cell anemia). Surgical debridement and broader antibiotic coverage (guided by cultures of infected bone) are often indicated for osteomyelitis resulting from penetrating injury. Consultation with an infectious disease specialist can be helpful. For specific recommendations, see Chapter 42.

Acute osteomyelitis is usually treated for a minimum of 4–6 weeks and until normalization of the physical examination and inflammatory markers. Chronic infections are treated for months. Following surgical debridement, Pseudomonas foot infections usually respond to 1–2 weeks of antibiotic treatment.

B. General Measures

Splinting minimizes pain and decreases spread of the infection through lymphatic channels in the soft tissue. The splint should be removed periodically to allow active use of adjacent joints and prevent stiffening and muscle atrophy. In chronic osteomyelitis, splinting may be necessary to guard against fracture of the weakened bone.

C. Surgical Measures

Aspiration of the metaphysis for culture and Gram stain is the most useful diagnostic measure in any case of suspected osteomyelitis. If frank pus is aspirated from the bone, surgical drainage is indicated. If the infection has not shown a significant response within 24 hours, surgical drainage is also indicated. It is important that all devitalized soft tissue be removed and adequate exposure of the bone be obtained to permit free drainage. Excessive amounts of bone should not be removed when draining acute osteomyelitis as it will not be completely replaced by the normal healing process. Bone damage is limited by surgical drainage, whereas failure to evacuate pus in acute cases may lead to widespread damage.

» Prognosis

When osteomyelitis is diagnosed in the early clinical stages and prompt antibiotic therapy is begun, the prognosis is excellent. If the process has been unattended for a week to 10 days, there is almost always some permanent loss of bone structure, as well as the possibility of future growth abnormality due to physeal injury.

Bouchoucha S et al: Epidemiology of acute hematogenous osteomyelitis in children: a prospective study over a 32 months period. Tunis Med 2012;90(6):473–480 [PMID: 22693089].

Pyogenic Arthritis

The source of pyogenic arthritis varies according to the child's age. Infantile pyogenic arthritis often develops from adjacent osteomyelitis. In older children, it presents as an isolated infection, usually without bony involvement. In teenagers with pyogenic arthritis, an underlying systemic disease or an organism that has an affinity for joints (eg, Neisseria gonorrhoeae) may be present.

The most frequent infecting organisms similarly vary with age: group B Streptococcus and S aureus in those younger than 4 months; Haemophilus influenzae B (if unimmunized) and S aureus in those aged 4 months to 4 years; and S aureus and S pyogenes in older children and adolescents. Streptococcus pneumoniae and Neisseria meningitis are occasionally implicated, and Neisseria gonorrhoeae is a cause in adolescents. H influenzae B is now uncommon in the United States because of effective immunization. Kingella kingae is a gram-negative bacterium that is increasingly recognized as a cause of pyarthrosis (and, occasionally, osteomyelitis) in children younger than 5 years.

The initial effusion of the joint rapidly becomes purulent in pyogenic arthritis. A joint effusion may accompany

osteomyelitis in the adjacent bone, but a white cell count exceeding 50,000/μL in the joint fluid indicates a purulent infection involving the joint. Generally, spread of infection is from bone into a joint, but unattended pyogenic arthritis may also affect adjacent bone. The ESR is often above 50 mm/h.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In older children, signs may be striking, with fever, malaise, vomiting, and restriction of motion, in addition to joint swelling, warmth, erythema, and/or tenderness. In infants, paralysis of the limb due to inflammatory pseudoparalysis may be evident. Infection of the hip joint in infants should be suspected if decreased abduction of the hip is present in an infant who is irritable or feeding poorly. A history of umbilical catheter treatment in the newborn nursery should alert the physician to the possibility of pyogenic arthritis of the hip.

B. Imaging

Early distention of the joint capsule is nonspecific and difficult to measure by plain radiograph. In infants with unrecognized pyogenic arthritis, dislocation of the joint may follow within a few days as a result of distention of the capsule by pus. Destruction of the joint space, resorption of epiphysial cartilage, and erosion of the adjacent bone of the metaphysis occur later. Bone scan shows increased flow and increased uptake about the joint. MRI and ultrasound imaging are useful adjuncts for detecting joint effusions, which can be helpful in assessing potential joint sepsis.

» Treatment

Aspiration of the joint is the key to diagnosis. Surgical drainage followed by the appropriate antibiotic therapy provides the best treatment for pyogenic arthritis. Antibiotics can be selected based on the child's age and results of the Gram stain and culture of aspirated pus. Reasonable empiric therapy in infants and young children is nafcillin or oxacillin plus a third-generation cephalosporin. An antistaphylococcal agent alone is usually adequate for children older than 5 years, unless gonococcal or meningococcal infection is suspected. Alternative antistaphylococcal therapy (eg, clindamycin or vancomycin) may be needed if methicillin-resistant S aureus is suspected or isolated. Consultation with an infectious disease specialist can be helpful.

For staphylococcal infections, a minimum of 3 weeks of therapy and until examination and inflammatory markers are normal is recommended; for other organisms, a minimum of 2 weeks and until examination and inflammatory markers are normal is usually sufficient. Oral therapy may be begun when clinical signs and inflammatory markers have improved markedly. It is not necessary to give intra-articular antibiotics since good levels are achieved in the synovial fluid with parenteral administration.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for the patient with pyogenic arthritis is excellent if the joint is drained before damage to the articular cartilage has occurred. If infection is present for more than 24 hours, dissolution of the proteoglycans in the articular cartilage takes place, with subsequent arthrosis and fibrosis of the joint. Damage to the growth plate may occur, especially within the hip joint, where the epiphyseal plate is intracapsular.

Kim EY, Kwack KS, Cho JH, Lee DH, Yoon SH: Usefulness of dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI in differentiating between septic arthritis and transient synovitis in the hip joint. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2012;198(2):428–433 [PMID: 22268189].

Diskitis

Diskitis is pyogenic infectious spondylitis in children. Although many infections are culture-negative, S aureus is considered to be the most frequent etiologic pathogen. The typical clinical presentation includes back pain and malaise over a several weeks to months duration. Younger children, less than 5 years, may not be able to localize their complaints and commonly present with "abdominal" pain. Supportive treatment and appropriate antibiotics are likely to lead to rapid relief of symptoms and signs without recurrence.

Gouliouris T, Aliyu SH, Brown NM: Spondylodiscitis: update on diagnosis and management. J Antimicrob Chemother 2010;65:11–24 [PMID: 20876624].

Transient (Toxic) Synovitis (Versus Septic Arthritis of the Hip)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The most common cause of limping and hip pain in children in the United States is transient synovitis. This acute inflammatory reaction often follows an upper respiratory or gastrointestinal infection and is generally self-limited. Classically affecting children aged 3–10 years, it is more common in boys than girls. The hip joint experiences limitation of motion, particularly internal rotation, and radiographic changes are nonspecific, with some swelling apparent in the soft tissues around the joint.

It is important for the provider to differentiate between transient synovitis and septic arthritis upon initial presentation. Early in the disease both conditions have similar symptoms but each requires a different treatment plan. Generally,

toxic synovitis of the hip is not associated with elevation of the ESR, white blood cell count, or temperature above 38.3°C. In questionable cases, aspiration of the hip yields only yellowish fluid in transient synovitis rather than purulent fluid in pyogenic arthritis. Transient synovitis can be distinguished from septic arthritis with a dynamic contrast enhanced MRI (DCE-MRI).

» Treatment

Rest and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications are the preferred treatments for transient synovitis, whereas patients afflicted with septic arthritis of the hip are treated with operative drainage followed by antibiotic treatment. NSAIDs shorten the course of the transient synovitis, although even with no treatment, the disease usually runs its course in days. Radiographic follow-up is essential as toxic synovitis may be the precursor of avascular necrosis of the femoral head (described in the next section) in a small percentage of patients. Radiographs can be obtained at 6 weeks, or earlier if either a persistent limp or pain is present.

VASCULAR LESIONS & AVASCULAR NECROSIS (OSTEOCHONDROSES)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- » Diagnosis made by characteristic radiographic findings.
- » Radiographic resolution lags behind symptomatic resolution.
- » Treatment for most cases is supportive.

Osteochondrosis (degeneration of an ossification center) due to vascular lesions may affect various growth centers. Table 26–1 indicates the common sites and the typical ages at presentation.

In contrast to other body tissues that undergo infarction, bone removes necrotic tissue and replaces it with living bone through creeping substitution (a process where necrotic bone is replaced by viable bone). This replacement of necrotic bone may be so complete that a normal bone results. Adequacy of replacement depends on the patient's age, the presence or absence of associated infection, the congruity of the involved joint, and other physiologic and mechanical factors.

Rapid growth of the secondary ossification centers in the epiphyses in relation to their blood supply subject them to avascular necrosis. Despite the number of different names referring to avascular necrosis of the epiphyses (see Table 26–1), the process is identical: necrosis of bone followed by replacement.

Table 26–1. The osteochondroses.

Ossification Center	Eponym	Typical Age (y)
Capital femoral	Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease	4–8
Tarsal navicular	Köhler bone disease	6
Second metatarsal head	Freiberg disease	12–14
Vertebral ring	Scheuermann disease	13–16
Capitellum	Panner disease	9–11
Tibial tubercle	Osgood-Schlatter disease	11–13
Calcaneus	Sever disease	8–9

Even though the pathologic and radiographic features of avascular necrosis of the epiphyses are well known, the cause is not generally agreed upon. Necrosis may follow known causes such as trauma or infection, but idiopathic lesions usually develop during periods of rapid growth of the epiphyses.

Avascular Necrosis of the Proximal Femur (Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The highest incidence of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease occurs between 4 and 8 years of age and occurs when the vascular supply to the proximal femur is interrupted. Persistent pain is the most common symptom, and the patient may present with limp or limitation of motion.

B. Imaging

Radiographic findings correlate with progression of the disease and the extent of necrosis. Effusion of the joint associated with slight widening of the joint space and periarticular swelling are the early findings. Decreased bone density in and around the joint is apparent after a few weeks. The necrotic ossification center appears denser than the surrounding viable structures, and the femoral head is collapsed or narrowed. As replacement of the necrotic ossification center occurs, rarefaction of the bone begins in a patchwork fashion, producing alternating areas of rarefaction and relative density, referred to as "fragmentation" of the epiphysis. Widening of the femoral head may be associated with flattening, or coxa plana. If infarction has extended across the growth plate, a radiolucent lesion will be evident within the metaphysis. If the growth center of the femoral head has been damaged and normal growth arrested, shortening of

the femoral neck results. Eventually, complete replacement of the epiphysis develops as living bone replaces necrotic bone by creeping substitution. The final shape of the head depends on the extent of the necrosis and collapse of weakened bone. Serial radiographs help to distinguish this disease from transient synovitis of the hip.

» Treatment

Protection of the joint by minimizing impact is the principal treatment. If the joint is deeply seated within the acetabulum and normal joint motion is maintained, a reasonably good hip can result. Little benefit has been shown from bracing. Surgical treatment is controversial.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for complete replacement of the necrotic femoral head in a child is excellent, but the functional result depends on the amount of deformity that has developed. Better outcomes are observed for patients with an onset of symptoms before the age of 6. Generally a poorer prognosis is expected for patients who develop the disease late in childhood, those with more completed involvement of the epiphysial center, those with metaphysial defects and those who have more complete involvement of the femoral head.

Kim HW, Herring JA: Pathophysiology, classifications, and natural history of Perthes disease. Orthop Clin N Am 2011;42: 285–295 [PMID: 21742140].

Osteochondritis Dissecans

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In osteochondritis dissecans, a wedge-shaped necrotic area of bone and cartilage develops adjacent to the articular surface. The fragment of bone may break off from the host bone and displace into the joint as a loose body. If it remains attached, the necrotic fragment may be completely replaced through creeping substitution. The pathologic process is the same as that for avascular necrosing lesions of ossification centers. Joint damage may occur because of the proximity of these lesions to adjacent articular cartilage.

The knee (medial femoral condyle, Figure 26–14), the elbow joint (capitellum), and the talus (superior lateral dome) are the most common sites for these lesions. Joint pain is the usual presenting complaint; however, local swelling or locking may be present, particularly if a fragment is free in the joint. Laboratory studies are normal.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of protection of the involved area from mechanical damage. Stable/attached lesions are generally treated with activity modification and immobilization for 3–6 months. Unstable/dislodged lesions are treated surgically with arthroscopic drilling, in order to bring new blood flow to the area, and fixation to stabilize the lesion. For some marginal lesions, it may be worthwhile to drill the necrotic fragment to encourage more rapid vascular in-growth and replacement. If a fragment is free within the joint as a loose body, it must be removed. If large areas of a weight-bearing joint are involved, secondary degenerative arthritis may result. Adolescents have less favorable outcomes with nonoperative therapy.

Pascual-Garrido C, Moran CJ, Green DW, Cole BJ: Osteochondritis dissecans of the knee in children and adolescents. Curr Opin Pediatr 2013;25(1):46–51 [PMID: 23128839].

NEOPLASIA OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Most typically present with unresolving pain.
- Reassess any child with unresolved pain previously thought benign in origin.
- Obtain radiographs.
- Refer any suspicious lesions for specialty evaluation.

The poor prognosis of malignant tumors arising in the bone or other tissues derived from the mesoderm makes neoplastic diseases of the musculoskeletal system a serious problem. Fortunately, few benign lesions undergo malignant transformation. Accurate diagnosis depends on correlation of the clinical, radiographic, and microscopic findings. Complaints about the knee should be investigated for tumor, although the usual causes of knee pain are traumatic, infectious, or developmental in origin.

Hashefi M: Ultrasound in the diagnosis of noninflammatory musculoskeletal conditions. Semin Ultrasound CT MR 2011;32(2):74–90 [PMID: 21414544].

Osteochondroma

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteochondroma is the most common benign bone tumor in children. It usually presents as a pain-free mass. When present, pain is caused by bursitis or tendinitis due to

irritation by the tumor. Lesions may be single or multiple. Pathologically, the lesion is a bone mass capped with cartilage. These masses result from a developmental defect of the growth plate and tend to grow during childhood and adolescence in proportion to the child's growth. Males are more affected than females. Generally, the tumors are present on radiographs in the metaphyseal region of long bones and may be pedunculated or sessile. The cortex of the underlying bone "flows" into the base of the tumor.

» Treatment

An osteochondroma should be excised if it interferes with function, is frequently traumatized, or is large enough to be deforming. The prognosis is excellent. Malignant transformation is very rare.

Osteoid Osteoma

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteoid osteoma is a benign bone-forming lesion of unclear etiology.

It classically produces night pain that can be relieved by nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. On physical examination, there usually is tenderness over the lesion. An osteoid osteoma in the upper femur may cause referred pain to the knee.

The radiographic lesion consists of a radiolucent nidus surrounded by dense osteosclerosis that may obscure the nidus. Bone scan shows intense uptake in the lesion. CT scans are confirmatory and delineate the nidus well.

» Treatment

Surgical excision or radiofrequency ablation of the nidus is curative and may be done using computed tomography imaging and a minimally invasive technique. The prognosis is excellent, with no known cases of malignant transformation, although the lesion has a tendency to recur if incompletely excised.

Laurence N, Epelman M, Markowitz RI, Jaimes C, Jaramillo D, Chauvin NA: Osteoid osteomas: a pain in the night diagnosis. Pediatr Radiol 2012;42(12):1490–1501 [PMID: 23089877].

Enchondroma

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Enchondroma (nest of benign cartilage within long bones) is usually a silent lesion unless it produces a pathologic fracture. On radiograph it is radiolucent, usually in a long bone. Speckled calcification may be present. The classic lesion looks as though someone dragged his or her fingernails through clay, making streaks in the bones. Enchondroma is treated by surgical curettage and bone grafting. The prognosis is excellent. Malignant transformation may occur but is very rare in childhood.

Chondroblastoma

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

The presenting complaint in chondroblastoma (benign chondral origin lesions typically in the epiphyses [joint ends] of long bones) is pain around a joint. This neoplasm may produce a pathologic fracture. On radiograph, the lesion is radiolucent and usually located in the epiphysis. With little to no reactive bone, calcification is unusual. The lesion is treated by surgical curettage and bone grafting. The prognosis is excellent if complete curettage is performed. There is no known malignant transformation.

Zhang K, Gao Y, Dai H, Zhang S, Li G, Yu B: Chondroblastoma of the talus: a case report and literature review. J Foot Ankle Surg 2012;51(2):262–265 [PMID: 22064125].

Nonossifying Fibroma

» Clinical Findings & Treatment

Nonossifying fibroma, or benign cortical defect, is nearly always an incidental finding on radiograph. Nonossifying fibroma is a radiolucent lesion eccentrically located in the metaphyseal region of the bone. Usually a thin sclerotic border is evident. Multiple lesions may be present. The most frequent sites are the distal femur and proximal tibia. In general, no treatment is needed because these lesions heal as they ossify with maturation and growth. Rarely, pathologic fractures result from large lesions.

Osteosarcoma

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Osteosarcoma is an aggressive form of cancer characterized by chromosomal instability. It is suspected that micro RNAs (noncoding, single-stranded molecules of RNA that regulate gene expression) play an important role in cancer development. The presenting complaint is usually pain in a long bone; however, the patient may present with, loss of function, mass, or limp. Pathological fracture is uncommon. The malignant osseous tumor produces a destructive, expanding, and invasive lesion. A triangle may be adjacent to the tumor, produced by elevated periosteum and subsequent tumor ossification. The lesion may contain calcification and violates the cortex of the bone. Femur, tibia, humerus, and other long bones are the sites usually affected.

» Treatment

Surgical excision (limb salvage) or amputation is indicated based on the extent of the tumor. Adjuvant chemotherapy is routinely used prior to surgical excision. The prognosis is improving, with 60%–70% long-term survival rates reported in modern series. Death usually occurs as a result of lung metastasis. Patients with osteosarcoma complicated by pathological fracture have lower long-term survival rates than patients with osteosarcoma and no pathological fracture.

Heare T, Hensley MA, Dell'Orfano S: Bone tumors: osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009;21(3):365–672 [PMID: 19421061].

Ewing Sarcoma

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In Ewing sarcoma, the presenting complaint is usually pain and tenderness, but fever and leukocytosis may be present. Osteomyelitis is the main differential diagnosis. The lesion may be multicentric. Ewing sarcoma is radiolucent and destroys the cortex, frequently in the diaphysial region. Reactive bone formation may occur about the lesion, seen as successive layers of the so-called onion skin layering.

» Treatment

Treatment is with multiagent chemotherapy, radiation, and surgical resection. Large tumor size, pelvic lesions, and inadequate response to chemotherapy portend a poor prognosis.

Parida L et al: Clinical management of Ewing sarcoma of the bones of the hands and feet: a retrospective single-institution review. J Pediatr Surg 2012;47(10):1806–1810 [PMID: 23084188].

MISCELLANEOUS DISEASES OF BONE & JOINT

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TREATMENT

- Rule out malignant process.
- Obtain radiographs when indicated.
- Treatment based on symptoms and location.

FIBROUS DYSPLASIA

Dysplastic fibrous tissue replacement of the medullary canal is accompanied by the formation of metaplastic bone in areas with fibrous dysplasia. Three forms of the disease are recognized: monostotic, polyostotic, and polyostotic with endocrine disturbances (precocious puberty in females, hyperthyroidism, and hyperadrenalism [Albright syndrome]).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

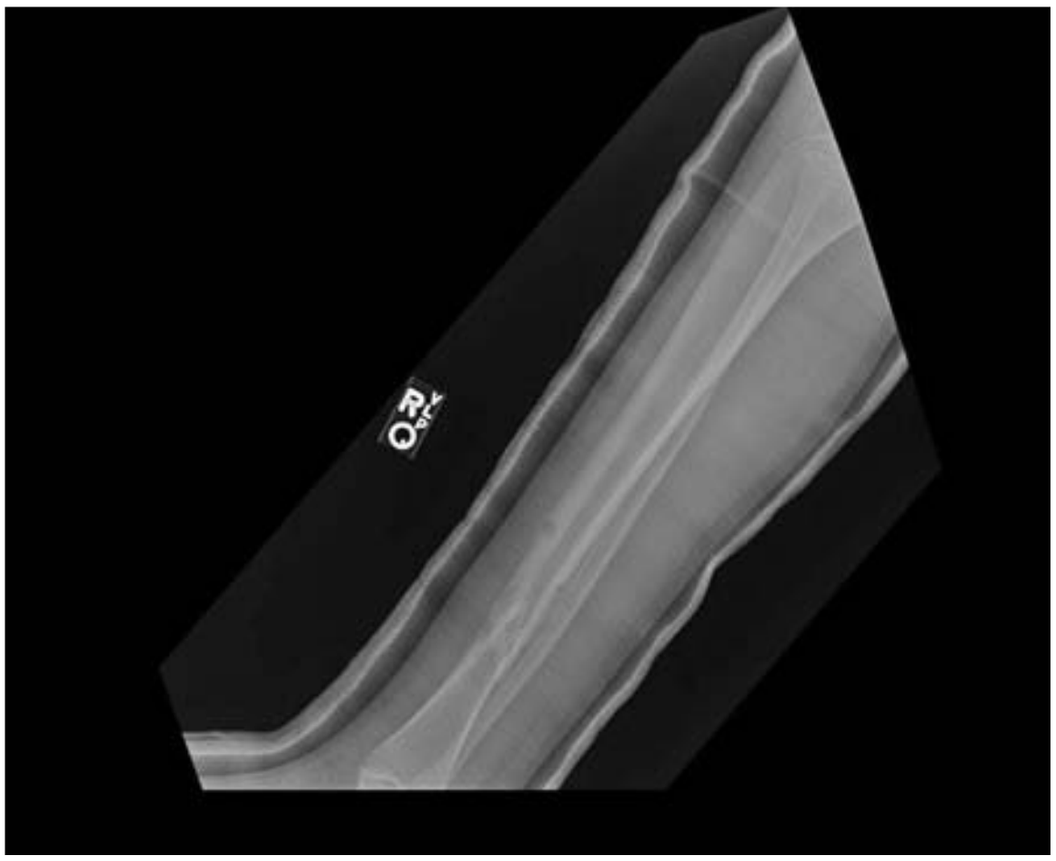
The lesion or lesions may be asymptomatic. If present, pain is probably due to pathologic fractures (Figure 26–16). In females, endocrine disturbances may be present in the polyostotic variety and are associated with café au lait spots.

B. Imaging

The lesion begins centrally within the medullary canal, usually of a long bone, and expands slowly. Pathologic fracture may occur. If metaplastic bone predominates, the contents of the lesion have the density of bone. The disease is often asymmetrical, and limb length disturbances may occur as a result of stimulation of epiphysial cartilage growth. Marked deformity of the bone may result, and a shepherd's crook deformity of the upper femur is a classic feature of the disease.

» Treatment

If the lesion is small and asymptomatic, no treatment is needed. If the lesion is large and produces or threatens pathologic fracture, curettage and bone grafting are indicated. The prognosis is good, as malignant transformation is rare.



▲ **Figure 26–16.** Tibia fracture with fibrous dysplasia.

BONE CYSTS, BAKER CYST, & GANGLIONS

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Unicameral Bone Cyst

Unicameral bone cysts occur in the metaphysis of a long bone, usually in the femur or humerus. A cyst begins in the medullary canal adjacent to the epiphysial cartilage. It probably results from some fault in enchondral ossification (the process where bone is formed from cartilaginous precursors). The cyst is considered active as long as it abuts onto the metaphysial side of the epiphysial cartilage, and there is a risk of growth arrest with or without treatment. When a border of normal bone exists between the cyst and the epiphysial cartilage, the cyst is inactive. The lesion is usually identified when a pathologic fracture occurs, producing pain. Laboratory findings are normal. On radiograph, the cyst is identified centrally within the medullary canal, producing expansion of the cortex and thinning over the widest portion of the cyst.

Aneurysmal Bone Cyst

Aneurysmal bone cyst is similar to unicameral bone cyst, except it contains blood rather than clear fluid. It usually occurs in a slightly eccentric position in a long bone, expanding the cortex of the bone but not breaking the cortex. Involvement of the flat bones of the pelvis is less common. On radiographs, the lesion appears somewhat larger than the width of the epiphysial cartilage, distinguishing it from a unicameral bone cyst.

Chromosomal abnormalities have been associated with aneurysmal bone cysts. The lesion may appear aggressive histologically, and it is important to differentiate it from osteosarcoma or hemangioma.

Baker Cyst

A Baker cyst is a herniation of the synovium in the knee joint into the popliteal region. In children, the diagnosis may be made by aspiration of mucinous fluid, but the cyst nearly always disappears with time.

Ganglion

A ganglion is a smooth, small cystic mass connected by a pedicle to the joint capsule, usually on the dorsum of the wrist. It may also occur in the tendon sheath over the flexor or extensor surfaces of the fingers. Ganglia may interfere with function or cause persistent pain.

» Treatment

Treatment of bone cysts and ganglion can be by curettage and bone grafting. Baker cysts usually require no surgical treatment. Ganglia can be excised if they cause symptoms.

Mik G et al: Results of a minimally invasive technique for treatment of unicameral bone cysts. Clin Orthop Relat Res 2009 Nov;467(11):2949–2954. doi: 10.1007/s11999-009-1008-2. Epub 2009 Aug 4 [PMID: 19653053].

QUALITY ASSURANCE/IMPROVEMENT INITIATIVES IN ORTHOPEDICS

The Pediatric Orthopedic Society of North America (POSNA) has an ongoing, well-developed quality, safety, and value initiative (QSVI). QSVI research is included during the POSNA annual scientific meeting.

27 Sports Medicine

Katherine S. Dahab, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Kyle B. Nagle, MD, MPH, FAAP, CAQSM
Rachel A. Coel, MD, PhD, FAAP, CAQSM
Quynh B. Hoang, MD, FAAP, CAQSM
Armando Vidal, MD

Sports medicine as a separate discipline has grown since the 1980s in response to an expanding body of knowledge in the areas of exercise physiology, biomechanics, and musculoskeletal medicine. As more children participate in recreational and competitive activities, pediatric health care providers are encountering more young athletes in their practice. Familiarity with the common medical and orthopaedic issues faced by athletically active children and knowledge of which injuries necessitate referral to a sports medicine specialist are essential.

BASIC PRINCIPLES

Pediatric Injury Patterns

Although young athletes have injuries and issues similar to those of adults, there are many injuries that are unique to the pediatric and adolescent athlete. An understanding of the differences between adult and pediatric injury patterns is important to foster an appropriate index of suspicion for situations unique to pediatrics.

Components of a long bone include the diaphysis, metaphysis, and epiphysis. In the pediatric bone architecture, the presence of cartilaginous growth plates and apophyses predispose children to unique injury patterns that are different from their adult counterparts. Open growth plates or physes and their various stages of development are important factors to consider when treating young athletes. The physes are located at the ends of the long bones and are the primary ossification centers where length is added to the immature skeleton. The physis is a weak link in the musculoskeletal complex and has a high risk of fracture during periods of rapid growth. The surrounding soft tissues, including ligaments and tendons, are relatively stronger than the physis. The epiphyses are secondary centers of ossification that also contribute to long bone formation and, like the adjacent articular cartilages, are vulnerable to trauma. Injuries that involve the epiphysis can lead to joint deformity. The apophyses are secondary centers of ossification that add contour but not length to the bone. The apophysis is the attachment site of the muscle-tendon unit and is vulnerable to both acute and chronic overuse traction injury during times of rapid growth. Unlike injuries to the physis and epiphysis, however, apophyseal injuries do not result in long-term growth disturbance. Recognizing injuries to growth centers is important because of the risk for partial or complete physeal arrest. Complications of growth plate injury can lead to limb length discrepancy or angular deformity.

FITNESS & CONDITIONING

Compared to children who are sedentary, physically active youth tend to develop greater agility and skills and maintain better fitness throughout their lifetime. Young children and adolescents should participate in physical activity for 60 minutes or more each day. To improve overall fitness and reduce the risk of injury, children and adolescents should focus on three different components of exercise:

1. Integrative training (curriculum of diverse skills, increasing fitness, and appropriate rest periods). Examples include developing fundamental skills and technique, learning proper movement mechanics, aerobic and anaerobic conditioning.
2. Neuromuscular conditioning (mixture of basic fundamental and specialized motor control exercises aimed at improving general health and sports performance). Examples include core strength exercises, agility, and plyometrics.
3. Resistance (strength) training (progressive resistive loads in a variety of modalities).

Periodization is a training concept that emphasizes variations in the volume and intensity of training throughout the year in a conditioning program. Continuously varying

the specific type and goals of training provides adequate recovery from each strenuous exercise session and avoids overtraining, burnout, and overuse injuries.

Strength Training

Strength is defined as the peak force that can be generated during a single maximal contraction. Strength training uses progressive resistance to improve an athlete's ability to resist or exert force. This can be achieved by a variety of techniques, including body weight, free weight, or machine resistance. The benefits of strength training include improved performance, endurance, and muscular strength. Strength training can be safely started in prepubescent athletes as early as 7 and 8 years old if designed appropriately with a focus on lighter resistance, increased repetitions, proper technique and mechanics, coordination, and building self-confidence. During preadolescence, it is thought that strength training leads to increased strength largely through improved neuromuscular adaptation as opposed to muscular hypertrophy. As such, attempts to gain fat-free mass through maximal weight lifting and high weight, low repetition resistance training regimens may not have that desired effect. Children mature at varying paces, and strength training programs should be individualized to accommodate for these unique differences. All strength training regimens should be modified as needed to remain age-appropriate and pain-free. Tanner staging (see Chapter 34) helps define readiness for progression to more strenuous programs. Power lifting and maximal weight lifting should be restricted to athletes who have reached or passed Tanner stage V. To prevent injuries, care should be taken to instruct children on the proper use of weight-training equipment at home. Children and adults with disabilities can benefit from weight-training programs modified to meet their specific needs.

Faigenbaum AD et al: Youth resistance training: updated position statement paper from the national strength and conditioning association. J Strength Cond Res 2009;23(Suppl):S60–S79 [PMID: 19620931].

Myer GD et al: When to initiate integrative neuromuscular training to reduce sports-related injuries and enhance health in youth? Curr Sports Med Rep 2011;10(3):155–166 [PMID: 21623307].

SPORTS NUTRITION

Proper nutrition in young athletes focuses on maintaining an appropriate energy balance; creating healthy eating and hydration habits; and avoiding harmful food, drink, and supplement choices. Keeping an adequate nutritional intake will increase lean muscle mass, maximizing strength, endurance, immunity, and training benefit. Athletes should be encouraged to balance caloric intake with energy expenditure, eat whole grains, avoid processed foods, focus on healthy fats and proteins, and maintain proper hydration. Carbohydrates should compose 50%–60% of a young athlete's diet, with fat and protein making up 25%–30% and 15%–25%, respectively. Hydration can come mainly from water if the exercise lasts less than 1 hour, after which time a carbohydrate-containing sports drink is appropriate. Water or sports drinks should be consumed every 15–20 minutes during prolonged exercise greater than 1 hour or in hot playing conditions. For bouts of exercise lasting greater than 1 hour, some carbohydrates should be ingested as well. These carbohydrates can be in the liquid form as sports drinks or solids combined with water. A light snack and hydration are recommended prior to and immediately after an extended workout. To avoid excessive caloric and sugar intake, sports drinks are not recommended at meals or times other than prolonged exercise. The average athlete eats a well-balanced diet not necessitating nutritional supplementation. However, if food allergies or improper dietary intake is confirmed, an athlete may benefit from a daily multivitamin. In general, nutritional sports supplements are not recommended and extreme caution is suggested when considering their use. The supplement industry is not well regulated and contamination with toxic and banned substances has been noted in the past. Similarly, energy drinks are not recommended for use in any youth younger than 18 years due to high levels of caffeine and other stimulants contained in such beverages.

Rodriguez NR, Di Marco NM, Langley S: American College of Sports Medicine position stand. Nutrition and athletic performance. Med Sci Sports Exerc 2009;41(3):709–731 [PMID: 19225360].

Committee on Nutrition and Council on Sports Medicine and Fitness: Sports drinks and energy drinks for children and adolescents: are they appropriate? Pediatrics 2011;127(6):1182–1189 [PMID: 21624882].

Kleinman R (ed): Pediatric Nutrition Handbook, 6th ed. AAP; 2009.

PREPARTICIPATION PHYSICAL EVALUATION

The ultimate goal of the preparticipation physical evaluation (PPE) is to promote the health and safety of athletes. Its primary objectives are to screen for conditions that may be life threatening or disabling and for conditions that may predispose to injury or illness. Secondary objectives of the PPE include establishing a medical home, determining the general health of the individual, assessing fitness for specific sports, and counseling on injury prevention and health-related issues. The ideal timing of the examination is at least 6–8 weeks before training starts. This allows time to further evaluate, treat, or rehabilitate any identified problems.

Preparticipation History

The medical history is the most important part of the encounter, identifying 65%–77% of medical and musculoskeletal conditions. Therefore, obtaining a thorough and accurate history is essential in identifying conditions that may affect a child's ability to safely participate in sports. Many key elements should be explored with the athlete. A standardized PPE form, endorsed by six medical societies, including the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), is available in the fourth edition of the PPE monograph (Bernhardt and Roberts 2010) or on the Internet. This monograph, formulated based on current literature, policies, consensus statements, expert opinion, and extensive peer review, is currently the recommended standard for the preparticipation physical examination in the United States. Figure 27–1A and B contain copies of the PPE form. The history includes the following areas:

A. Cardiovascular History

The routine use of electrocardiogram (ECG) and echocardiography in the preparticipation cardiovascular screening in athletes remains a highly debated topic in sports medicine and sports cardiology. Despite ongoing controversy, the American Heart Association (AHA) currently recommends against its routine usage in asymptomatic athletes because of its low sensitivity, high false-positive rate, limited resources, lack of trained physicians to interpret the ECG, and poor cost-effectiveness due to the low prevalence of disease. In 2007, the AHA updated its consensus statement on cardiovascular screening stating its position to this effect. According to the AHA, the goal of the PPE is to reduce cardiovascular risk associated with physical activity. The 2007 AHA recommendations for cardiovascular screening are incorporated in the fourth edition PPE monograph and include the following 12-point screen:

Personal Medical History:

1. Chest pain or discomfort with exercise
2. Syncope or near syncope associated with exercise
3. Excessive shortness or breath or fatigue associated with exertion
4. History of heart murmur
5. History of elevated blood pressure

Family Medical History:

6. Premature death before age 50 years due to heart disease
7. Disability from heart disease in a close relative younger than 50 years
8. Knowledge of specific cardiac conditions: hypertrophic or dilated cardiomyopathy, long QT syndrome, other ion channelopathies, Marfan syndrome, or arrhythmias

Physical Examination:

9. Auscultation of heart murmur in supine and standing position
10. Palpation of radial and femoral pulses
11. Physical stigmata of Marfan syndrome
12. Brachial blood pressure taken in seated position

Sudden cardiac arrest is the leading medical cause of sudden death in young athletes. Addressing these areas may help identify potentially life-threatening cardiac lesions. However, clinicians should keep in mind that there are currently no outcome-based studies that demonstrate the effectiveness of the PPE in preventing sudden cardiac death in athletes. In the United States, the most common causes of sudden cardiac death on the playing field are hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) and congenital coronary artery anomalies, with HCM accounting for one-third of sudden cardiac deaths in young athletes. Any athletes with cardiovascular symptoms require further evaluation before allowing them to participate in sports. Any activity restrictions or sports disqualification for an athlete should be made in consultation with a cardiologist.

B. History of Hypertension

Any history of hypertension requires investigation for secondary causes of hypertension and target organ disease. An athlete with hypertension who exercises may cause their blood pressure to rise even higher, placing them at increased risk for complications. Athletes should also be asked about the use of stimulants (ie, caffeine, nicotine, attention deficit disorder medications) and a family history of hypertension. The diagnosis of hypertension in children younger than 18 years is based on gender, age, and height, and the blood pressure must be measured on three separate occasions. Blood pressure measurements with values from 90% to 95% of gender, age, and height-based norms are considered prehypertension; values from 95% to 5 mm Hg above the 99% of norms are defined as stage 1 hypertension; and values greater than 5 mm Hg above the 99% of norms are defined as stage 2 hypertension.

Athletes with prehypertension are eligible to participate in sports. Counseling regarding lifestyle modifications should be made, including healthy dietary changes, weight management, and daily physical activity. Those with stage 1 hypertension, in the absence of end-organ damage, may also participate in competitive sports but with appropriate subspecialist referral if the individual is symptomatic, have associated heart disease or structural abnormality, or have persistent elevated blood pressure on two additional occasions despite lifestyle modifications. Athletes who have stage 2 hypertension or end-organ damage should not be cleared to participate in competitive sports until their blood pressure is evaluated, treated, and is under control.

PREPARTICIPATION HISTORY

Name _____ DOB _____ Age _____ Sex (M or F)

Primary Physician _____ Sports _____

Allergies (medications, latex, foods, bees, etc) _____

Medications (Include prescription, nonprescription, supplements, and vitamins) _____

_____

Answer questions by checking yes (Y)/no (N)/don't know (?)

	Y	N	?
General Health			
1. Have you had any injuries or illnesses?			
2. Have you ever been hospitalized?			
3. Do you think you are too thin or overweight?			
4. Have you ever used anything to gain or lose weight?			
5. Any problems exercising in the heat: heat cramps, heat exhaustion, or heat stroke?			
6. Ever had frostbite?			
7. Any vision problems?			
8. Do you wear glasses, contact lenses, or eye protection?			
9. Any dental appliances?			
10. Have you had any surgeries?			
11. Any organs missing?			
12. Immunizations (tetanus/hepatitis B): are they current?			
13. Any concerns about participating in sports?			
Cardiac/Respiratory History			
1. Has any family member died suddenly, had heart disease before age 50, or other heart problems?			
2. Do you have any dizziness, chest pain, a racing heart, or shortness of breath with exercise?			
3. Have you ever passed out?			
4. Do you have a heart murmur, high blood pressure, or any heart condition?			
5. Can you exercise as much as your friends?			
6. Any history of asthma, problems breathing, coughing with exercise?			
Neurologic History			
1. Any history of a head injury/concussion: being knocked out, dazed, or having memory loss?			
2. Have you ever had a seizure or convulsion?			
3. Any nerve problems: stingers, burners, pinched nerves, numbness?			
4. Any problems with headaches?			
Musculoskeletal History			
1. Do you have a history of sprains, strains, or fractures?			
2. Any hip, knee, or ankle injuries?			
3. Any shoulder, elbow, wrist, hand, or finger injuries?			
4. Any back or neck problems?			
5. Ever have to be in a splint, cast or use crutches?			
6. Do you use any special equipment when competing (braces, orthotics, pads, etc)?			
Females Only			
1. Any problems with menstruation: cramps, irregularity, etc?			
2. When was your last period? _____			

COMMENT ON YES ANSWERS

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

▲**Figure 27–1.** **A:** Preparticipation Physical Evaluation form.

PREPARTICIPATION PHYSICAL EVALUATION
HISTORY FORM

(Note: This form is to be filled out by the patient and parent prior to seeing the physician. The physician should keep this form in the chart.)

Date of Exam _____

Name _____ Date of birth _____

Sex _____ Age _____ Grade _____ School _____ Sport(s) _____

Medicines and Allergies: Please list all of the prescription and over-the-counter medicines and supplements (herbal and nutritional) that you are currently taking

_____

_____

_____

Do you have any allergies? ☐ Yes ☐ No If yes, please identify specific allergy below.
☐ Medicines ☐ Pollens ☐ Food ☐ Stinging Insects

Explain "Yes" answers below. Circle questions you don't know the answers to.

GENERAL QUESTIONS	Yes	No
1. Has a doctor ever denied or restricted your participation in sports for any reason?		
2. Do you have any ongoing medical conditions? If so, please identify below: ☐ Asthma ☐ Anemia ☐ Diabetes ☐ Infections Other: _____		
3. Have you ever spent the night in the hospital?		
4. Have you ever had surgery?		
HEART HEALTH QUESTIONS ABOUT YOU	**Yes**	**No**
5. Have you ever passed out or nearly passed out DURING or AFTER exercise?		
6. Have you ever had discomfort, pain, tightness, or pressure in your chest during exercise?		
7. Does your heart ever race or skip beats (irregular beats) during exercise?		
8. Has a doctor ever told you that you have any heart problems? If so, check all that apply: ☐ High blood pressure ☐ A heart murmur ☐ High cholesterol ☐ A heart infection ☐ Kawasaki disease Other: _____		
9. Has a doctor ever ordered a test for your heart? (For example, ECG/EKG, echocardiogram)		
10. Do you get lightheaded or feel more short of breath than expected during exercise?		
11. Have you ever had an unexplained seizure?		
12. Do you get more tired or short of breath more quickly than your friends during exercise?		
HEART HEALTH QUESTIONS ABOUT YOUR FAMILY	**Yes**	**No**
13. Has any family member or relative died of heart problems or had an unexpected or unexplained sudden death before age 50 (including drowning, unexplained car accident, or sudden infant death syndrome)?		
14. Does anyone in your family have hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, Marfan syndrome, arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy, long QT syndrome, short QT syndrome, Brugada syndrome, or catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia?		
15. Does anyone in your family have a heart problem, pacemaker, or implanted defibrillator?		
16. Has anyone in your family had unexplained fainting, unexplained seizures, or near drowning?		
BONE AND JOINT QUESTIONS	**Yes**	**No**
17. Have you ever had an injury to a bone, muscle, ligament, or tendon that caused you to miss a practice or a game?		
18. Have you ever had any broken or fractured bones or dislocated joints?		
19. Have you ever had an injury that required x-rays, MRI, CT scan, injections, therapy, a brace, a cast, or crutches?		
20. Have you ever had a stress fracture?		
21. Have you ever been told that you have or have you had an x-ray for neck instability or atlantoaxial instability? (Down syndrome or dwarfism)		
22. Do you regularly use a brace, orthotics, or other assistive device?		
23. Do you have a bone, muscle, or joint injury that bothers you?		
24. Do any of your joints become painful, swollen, feel warm, or look red?		
25. Do you have any history of juvenile arthritis or connective tissue disease?		

MEDICAL QUESTIONS	Yes	No
26. Do you cough, wheeze, or have difficulty breathing during or after exercise?		
27. Have you ever used an inhaler or taken asthma medicine?		
28. Is there anyone in your family who has asthma?		
29. Were you born without or are you missing a kidney, an eye, a testicle (males), your spleen, or any other organ?		
30. Do you have groin pain or a painful bulge or hernia in the groin area?		
31. Have you had infectious mononucleosis (mono) within the last month?		
32. Do you have any rashes, pressure sores, or other skin problems?		
33. Have you had a herpes or MRSA skin infection?		
34. Have you ever had a head injury or concussion?		
35. Have you ever had a hit or blow to the head that caused confusion, prolonged headache, or memory problems?		
36. Do you have a history of seizure disorder?		
37. Do you have headaches with exercise?		
38. Have you ever had numbness, tingling, or weakness in your arms or legs after being hit or falling?		
39. Have you ever been unable to move your arms or legs after being hit or falling?		
40. Have you ever become ill while exercising in the heat?		
41. Do you get frequent muscle cramps when exercising?		
42. Do you or someone in your family have sickle cell trait or disease?		
43. Have you had any problems with your eyes or vision?		
44. Have you had any eye injuries?		
45. Do you wear glasses or contact lenses?		
46. Do you wear protective eyewear, such as goggles or a face shield?		
47. Do you worry about your weight?		
48. Are you trying to or has anyone recommended that you gain or lose weight?		
49. Are you on a special diet or do you avoid certain types of foods?		
50. Have you ever had an eating disorder?		
51. Do you have any concerns that you would like to discuss with a doctor?		
FEMALES ONLY		
52. Have you ever had a menstrual period?		
53. How old were you when you had your first menstrual period?		
54. How many periods have you had in the last 12 months?		

Explain "yes" answers here

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I hereby state that, to the best of my knowledge, my answers to the above questions are complete and correct.

Signature of athlete _____ Signature of parent/guardian _____ Date _____

▲**Figure 27–1.** **B:** Preparticipation examination. (Reproduced with permission from American Academy of Family Physicians, American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Sports Medicine, American Medical Society for Sports Medicine: Participation Physical Examination, 4th edition. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2010.)

PREPARTICIPATION PHYSICAL EVALUATION
THE ATHLETE WITH SPECIAL NEEDS: SUPPLEMENTAL HISTORY FORM

Date of Exam _____

Name _____ Date of birth _____

Sex _____ Age _____ Grade _____ School _____ Sport(s) _____

1. Type of disability
2. Date of disability
3. Classification (if available)
4. Cause of disability (birth, disease, accident/trauma, other)
5. List the sports you are interested in playing

	Yes	No
6. Do you regularly use a brace, assistive device, or prosthetic?		
7. Do you use any special brace or assistive device for sports?		
8. Do you have any rashes, pressure sores, or any other skin problems?		
9. Do you have a hearing loss? Do you use a hearing aid?		
10. Do you have a visual impairment?		
11. Do you use any special devices for bowel or bladder function?		
12. Do you have burning or discomfort when urinating?		
13. Have you had autonomic dysreflexia?		
14. Have you ever been diagnosed with a heat-related (hyperthermia) or cold-related (hypothermia) illness?		
15. Do you have muscle spasticity?		
16. Do you have frequent seizures that cannot be controlled by medication?		

Explain "yes" answers here

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Please indicate if you have ever had any of the following.

	Yes	No
Atlantoaxial instability		
X-ray evaluation for atlantoaxial instability		
Dislocated joints (more than one)		
Easy bleeding		
Enlarged spleen		
Hepatitis		
Osteopenia or osteoporosis		
Difficulty controlling bowel		
Difficulty controlling bladder		
Numbness or tingling in arms or hands		
Numbness or tingling in legs or feet		
Weakness in arms or hands		
Weakness in legs or feet		
Recent change in coordination		
Recent change in ability to walk		
Spina bifida		
Latex allergy		

Explain "yes" answers here

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I hereby state that, to the best of my knowledge, my answers to the above questions are complete and correct.

Signature of athlete _____ Signature of parent/guardian _____ Date _____

▲**Figure 27–1. B:** Preparticipation examination. (Continued)

PREPARTICIPATION PHYSICAL EVALUATION
PHYSICAL EXAMINATION FORM

Name _____ Date of birth _____

PHYSICIAN REMINDERS

1. Consider additional questions on more sensitive issues
   - Do you feel stressed out or under a lot of pressure?
   - Do you ever feel sad, hopeless, depressed, or anxious?
   - Do you feel safe at your home or residence?
   - Have you ever tried cigarettes, chewing tobacco, snuff, or dip?
   - During the past 30 days, did you use chewing tobacco, snuff, or dip?
   - Do you drink alcohol or use any other drugs?
   - Have you ever taken anabolic steroids or used any other performance supplement?
   - Have you ever taken any supplements to help you gain or lose weight or improve your performance?
   - Do you wear a seat belt, use a helmet, and use condoms?
2. Consider reviewing questions on cardiovascular symptoms (questions 5–14).

EXAMINATION			
Height	Weight	☐ Male ☐ Female	
BP / (/)	Pulse	Vision R 20/ L 20/	Corrected ☐ Y ☐ N
MEDICAL	**NORMAL**	**ABNORMAL FINDINGS**	
Appearance • Marfan stigmata (kyphoscoliosis, high-arched palate, pectus excavatum, arachnodactyly, arm span > height, hyperlaxity, myopia, MVP, aortic insufficiency)			
Eyes/ears/nose/throat • Pupils equal • Hearing			
Lymph nodes			
Heart[a] • Murmurs (auscultation standing, supine, +/- Valsalva) • Location of point of maximal impulse (PMI)			
Pulses • Simultaneous femoral and radial pulses			
Lungs			
Abdomen			
Genitourinary (males only)[b]			
Skin • HSV, lesions suggestive of MRSA, tinea corporis			
Neurologic[c]			
MUSCULOSKELETAL			
Neck			
Back			
Shoulder/arm			
Elbow/forearm			
Wrist/hand/fingers			
Hip/thigh			
Knee			
Leg/ankle			
Foot/toes			
Functional • Duck-walk, single leg hop			

[a]Consider ECG, echocardiogram, and referral to cardiology for abnormal cardiac history or exam.
[b]Consider GU exam if in private setting. Having third party present is recommended.
[c]Consider cognitive evaluation or baseline neuropsychiatric testing if a history of significant concussion.

☐ Cleared for all sports without restriction

☐ Cleared for all sports without restriction with recommendations for further evaluation or treatment for _____

_____

☐ Not cleared

- ☐ Pending further evaluation
- ☐ For any sports
- ☐ For certain sports _____

Reason _____

Recommendations _____

_____

I have examined the above-named student and completed the preparticipation physical evaluation. The athlete does not present apparent clinical contraindications to practice and participate in the sport(s) as outlined above. A copy of the physical exam is on record in my office and can be made available to the school at the request of the parents. If conditions arise after the athlete has been cleared for participation, the physician may rescind the clearance until the problem is resolved and the potential consequences are completely explained to the athlete (and parents/guardians).

Name of physician (print/type) _____ Date _____

Address _____ Phone _____

Signature of physician _____, MD or DO

Figure 27–1. B: Preparticipation examination. (Continued)

PREPARTICIPATION PHYSICAL EVALUATION
CLEARANCE FORM

Name _____ Sex ☐ M ☐ F Age _____ Date of birth _____

☐ Cleared for all sports without restriction

☐ Cleared for all sports without restriction with recommendations for further evaluation or treatment for _____

_____

☐ Not cleared

- ☐ Pending further evaluation
- ☐ For any sports
- ☐ For certain sports _____

  Reason _____

Recommendations _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I have examined the above-named student and completed the preparticipation physical evaluation. The athlete does not present apparent clinical contraindications to practice and participate in the sport(s) as outlined above. A copy of the physical exam is on record in my office and can be made available to the school at the request of the parents. If conditions arise after the athlete has been cleared for participation, the physician may rescind the clearance until the problem is resolved and the potential consequences are completely explained to the athlete (and parents/guardians).

Name of physician (print/type) _____ Date _____

Address _____ Phone _____

Signature of physician _____, MD or DO

EMERGENCY INFORMATION

Allergies _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Other information _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

▲Figure 27–1. B: Preparticipation examination. (Continued)

C. Central Nervous System

A history of frequent or exertional headaches, seizure disorders, concussions or head injuries, recurrent stingers or burners, or cervical cord neuropraxia may affect an athlete's ability to participate in sports. These conditions require further evaluation, rehabilitation, or informed decision making prior to clearance for sports participation. The fourth edition PPE monograph provides an updated review and recommendations on concussions in sports. (See also section Concussion.)

D. History of Chronic Diseases

Diseases such as reactive airway disease, exercise-induced asthma, diabetes, renal disease, liver disease, chronic infections, or hematologic diseases should be noted.

E. Surgical History

Surgical history may influence participation in certain sports. Full recovery with no long-term impact on athletic performance is required prior to clearance.

F. Infectious Mononucleosis

Ask about infectious mononucleosis in the last 4 weeks. The risk for splenic rupture is highest within the first 3 weeks of illness and can occur in the absence of trauma. Therefore, physical activity should be avoided during the first 3–4 weeks after the infection starts. The athlete may return to play once clinical symptoms are resolved and risk for splenic rupture is assessed as minimal. The use of serial abdominal ultrasound to assess spleen size to aid in return to play decisions is likely not useful nor recommended. Parameters for spleen size based on ethnicity, sex, height, and weight have not yet been established so determining when spleen size has normalized based on imaging becomes difficult.

G. Musculoskeletal Limitations and Prior Injuries

The physician should inquire about joints with limited range of motion, muscle weakness, and prior injuries that may affect future performance. Chronic pain or soreness long after activity may reflect overuse syndromes that should be evaluated.

H. Menstrual History in Females

The physician should pay particular attention to the so-called female athlete triad: amenorrhea disordered eating and osteoporosis.

I. Nutritional Issues

The physician should record methods the athlete uses to maintain, gain, or lose weight. Eating disorders or inadequate nutritional intake could lead to persistent or recurrent injury, including stress fractures. Vitamin D deficiency has become increasingly common in female athletes due to inadequate dietary intake or decreased sunlight exposure.

J. Medication History

Inquire about the use of prescription medications, over-the-counter medications, and supplements. Not only will medications reveal problems omitted in the medical history, but the information will also provide data on current medications whose side effects may suggest activity modifications. Documenting drug use may provide the opportunity to explore with the patient the drawbacks of performance-enhancing compounds such as anabolic steroids, creatine, stimulants, and narcotics.

Physical Examination

The physical examination should be focused on the needs of the athlete. It may be the only time an athlete has contact with medical personnel and can be used to promote wellness along with screening for physical activity. Figure 27–1B is an example of a preparticipation physical examination form endorsed in the fourth edition of the PPE monograph (Bernhardt and Roberts 2010). The examination should include routine vital signs, including blood pressure measurements obtained in the upper extremity. The cardiovascular examination should include palpation of pulses, auscultation for murmurs while sitting and standing, evaluation for physical stigmata of Marfan syndrome, and assessment of any cardiovascular symptoms as previously described. The musculoskeletal examination is used to determine strength, range of motion, flexibility, and previous injuries. Included is a quick guide that can be used to screen for musculoskeletal abnormalities (Table 27–1). The remainder of the examination should emphasize the following areas:

A. Skin

Are there any contagious lesions such as herpes or impetigo?

B. Vision

Are there any visual problems? Is there any evidence of retinal problems? Are both eyes intact?

C. Abdomen

Is there any evidence of hepatosplenomegaly?

D. Genitourinary System

Are any testicular abnormalities or hernias present?

Table 27–1. The screening sports examination.[a]

General evaluation	Have patient stand in front of examiner; evaluate both front and back along with posture. Look at general body habitus. Look for asymmetry in muscle bulk, scars, or unusual postures. Watch how patient moves when instructed.
Neck evaluation	Evaluate ROM by having patient bend head forward (chin to chest), rotate from side to side and laterally bend (ear to shoulder). Observe for asymmetry, lack of motion, or pain with movement.
Shoulder and upper extremity evaluation	Observe clavicles, shoulder position, scapular position, elbow position, and fingers. ROM screening: Fully abduct arms with palms in jumping jack position. Internally and externally rotate shoulder. Flex and extend wrist, pronate and supinate wrist, flex and extend fingers. Do the following manual muscle testing: Have patient shrug shoulders (testing trapezius). Abduct to 90 degrees (testing deltoid). Flex elbow (testing biceps). Extend elbow over head (testing triceps). Test wrist flexion and extension. Have patient grasp fingers.
Back evaluation	General inspection to look for scoliosis or kyphosis. ROM screening: Bend forward touching toes with knees straight (spine flexion and hamstring range). Rotation, side bending, and spine extension.
Gait and lower extremity evaluation	General observation while walking. Have patient walk short distance normally (look at symmetry, heel-toe gait pattern, look at all joints involved in gait and leg lengths, any evidence of joint effusions or pain). Have patient toe-walk and heel-walk for short distance and check tandem walking (balance beam walking).

[a]If any abnormalities are found, a more focused evaluation is required.
ROM, range of motion

E. Neurologic System

Are there any problems with coordination, gait, or mental processing?

F. Sexual Maturity

What is the individual's Tanner stage?

Recommendations for Participation

After completing the medical evaluation, the physician can make recommendations about sports clearance. The options include the following:

- Cleared for all sports without restrictions
- Cleared for all sports without restrictions with recommendations for further evaluation or treatment
- Not cleared: pending further evaluation, for any sports, or for certain sports

Table 27–2 is a composite of recommendations for sports participation organized by body system. Recommendations for sports participation with specific medical conditions can be found on the AAP website.

Bernhardt DT, Roberts WO: Preparticipation Physical Evaluation, 4th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2010.
Harmon KG et al: Incidence of sudden cardiac death in National Collegiate Athletic Association athletes. Circulation 2011;123:1594–1600 [PMID: 21464047].
Harris G et al: Diabetes in the competitive athlete. Curr Sports Med Rep 2012 Nov/Dec; 11(6):309–315 [PMID: 23147019].
Hull J et al: Managing respiratory problems in athletes. Clin Med 2012;12(4):351–356 [PMID: 22930882].
Jaworski C et al: Infectious disease. Clin Sports Med 2011;30: 575–590 [PMID: 21658549].
Maron BJ et al: Sudden deaths in young competitive athletes: analysis of 1866 deaths in the United States, 1980-2006. Circulation 2009;119:1085–1092 [PMID: 19221222].
McCambridge TM et al: Council on Sports Medicine and Fitness: Policy Statement—athletic participation by children and adolescents who have systemic hypertension. American Academy of Pediatrics. Pediatrics 2010 Jun;125(6):1287–1294 [PMID: 20513738].
Seto C: The preparticipation physical examination: an update. Clin Sports Med 2011;30:491–501 [PMID: 21658544].

REHABILITATION OF SPORTS INJURIES

Participation in sports benefits children not only by promoting physical activity but also by the acquisition of motor and social skills. All sports participation, however, carries an inherent risk of injury. Injuries are classified as either acute or chronic. Chronic injuries occur over time as a result of overuse, repetitive microtrauma, and inadequate repair of injured tissue. When the demands of exercise exceed the body's ability to recover, overuse injury may occur. Overuse injury accounts for up to 50% of all injuries in pediatric sports medicine. Risk factors for overuse may include year round participation, participation in more than one team at a time, early specialization in one sport, poor mechanics, and training errors such as increasing exercise volume, load, frequency, or intensity too quickly. To avoid overuse injury, athletes should train with a regular variety of resistances, power, speed, agility, skills, and distance. Adequate

Table 27–2. Recommendations and considerations for participation in sports.

Disorders	Considerations and Recommendations	References
Cardiac		
Anticoagulation treatment	Need to avoid all contact sports.	
Aortic stenosis	Individualize treatment based on extent of disease and systolic gradient: Mild: < 20 mm Hg, all sports if asymptomatic. Moderate: limited sports. Severe: no competitive sports.	
Arrhythmias	Long-QT syndrome, malignant ventricular arrhythmias, symptomatic WPW syndrome, advanced heart block, family history of sudden death or previous sudden cardiac event, and implantation of a cardioverter-defibrillator. May participate: qualified yes. Consult with cardiologist.	Rice 2008
Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy	May participate: qualified no. Consult with cardiologist.	Rice 2008
Carditis	May participate: qualified no. May result in sudden death with exertion.	Rice 2008
Congenital heart disease	May participate: qualified yes. Consult with cardiologist. Mild, moderate, and severe diseases for cardiac lesions are defined by the 36th Bethesda Conference. Those with mild lesions may fully participate in most cases. Those with moderate or severe lesions or who have undergone surgery need further evaluation.	Maron et al 2005
Coronary artery anomalies	May participate: qualified no. Consult with cardiologist.	Rice 2008
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, vascular form	May participate: qualified no. Consult with cardiologist.	Rice 2008
Heart failure	Screen patient with LVEF < 30% for ischemia. Use AHA risk stratification criteria to define exercise capacity.	Braith 2002
Heart implants	No jumping, swimming, or contact sports.	
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	May participate: qualified no. Athletes should not participate in sports except possibly low-intensity forms (eg, golf, bowling). Consult with cardiologist.	Maron 2002a, b
Hypertension	May participate: qualified yes. Those with hypertension > 5 mm Hg above 99th percentile for age, gender, and height should avoid heavy weightlifting and power lifting, bodybuilding, and high-static component sports.	Rice 2008
Marfan syndrome	Aortic root dilation is associated with mitral valve prolapse and regurgitation. May participate: qualified yes. Participate in sports with minimal physical demands.	Salim and Alpert 2001
Mitral valve prolapse	May participate: qualified yes. No restrictions unless there is a history of syncope, positive family history of sudden death, arrhythmias with exercise, or moderate regurgitation.	
Syncope	Unexplained syncopal episodes during exercise must be evaluated by ECG, echocardiograph, Holter and tilt test prior to resumption of any activities.	Firoozi et al 2003
Vasculitis/vascular disease	Kawasaki disease, pulmonary hypertension. May participate: qualified yes. Consult with cardiologist.	Rice 2008

(Continued)

Table 27–2. Recommendations and considerations for participation in sports. (Continued)

Disorders	Considerations and Recommendations	References
Endocrine		
Diabetes mellitus type 1	No restrictions to activity. However, athletes are at risk for hypoglycemia and ketoacidosis, so ensure proper hydration and caloric intake. As exercise enhances insulin sensitivity, the quantity and duration of aerobic and anaerobic exercise and intensity of practices and games need to be assessed. In general: Short-term exercise = no insulin changes. Vigorous exercise may require 25% reduction in insulin with 15–30 g of carbohydrates before and every 30 min during exercise. Strenuous exercise = may require up to an 80% reduction in insulin with extra carbohydrates. Generally, monitor blood glucose frequently during exercise. Diabetic athletes typically perform best with glucose levels between 70 and 150 mg/dL.	Draznin 2000, Harris et al 2012
Eye		
Detached retina	May participate in sport, but athlete may have increased risk of injury because of weakened eye tissue. Therefore, participation should be determined on an individual basis.	Rice 2008
Functionally one eyed	Defined as having best corrected visual acuity worse than 20/40 in the poorest seeing eye. Consider avoiding contact sports, although if patient participates, use of eye protection is mandatory.	Rice 2008
Genitourinary		
One testicle	Need to wear protective cups in collision and contact sports.	
Solitary kidney	May participate: qualified yes. Protective equipment may reduce risk of injury to remaining kidney sufficiently to allow participation in most sports.	Rice 2008
Hematologic		
Hemophilia	Avoid contact and collision sports.	
Sickle cell disease	May participate: qualified yes. If illness status permits, all sports may be played. However, any sport or activity that entails overexertion, overheating, dehydration, or chilling should be avoided. Participation at high altitude poses risk for sickle cell crisis.	Rice 2008
Sickle cell trait	Currently, no recommendations for universal screening in athletes. However, the NCAA now requires screening for athletes if their sickle cell status is unknown. May participate: yes. Under normal environmental conditions, no increased risk of sudden death or other medical problems. Ensure acclimatization to extreme environment conditions (eg, altitude, heat, humidity) and adequate hydration during participation to reduce risk of heat illness and/or rhabdomyolysis.	Seto 2011 Rice 2008

(Continued)

Table 27–2. Recommendations and considerations for participation in sports. (Continued)

Disorders	Considerations and Recommendations	References
Infectious disease		
Fever	May participate: no. Cardiopulmonary effort is increased while maximum exercise capacity is decreased during febrile illnesses. Risk of heat illness is also increased.	Rice 2008
Infectious mononucleosis	Splenic rupture is most important consideration. Risk of spleen rupture highest during first 3 weeks of illness. No athletic participation during the first 3–4 weeks after the infection starts. Too early a return to sports increases risk of splenic rupture or could cause EBV reactivation and relapse. If symptoms resolve by third week, light activities can be started during the fourth week with graded increases in intensity. Full contact activity participation may resume at week 5.	Putukian et al 2008
Skin infections	Herpes simplex, molluscum contagiosum, warts, staphylococcal and streptococcal infections, impetigo, scabies, and tinea. May participate: qualified yes. During contagious periods, participation in gymnastics or cheerleading with mats, martial arts, wrestling, or other collision, contact or limited contact sports is not allowed.	Rice 2008
Upper respiratory infections (including common cold)	May participate in sports if tolerated. Exceptions include those with fever, severe bacterial infections (sinusitis, pharyngitis), or those with symptoms below the neck. "Neck check" guide allows athletes to return to sports if symptoms are "above the neck" (eg, rhinorrhea, congestion, or sore throat). If symptoms "below the neck" (eg, fever or malaise) are present, the athlete should not participate.	Jaworski et al 2011
Neurologic		
Epilepsy	Majority of sports are safe for those with good seizure control; contact sports are allowed with proper protection. Definitely wear a helmet. Fitness may reduce number of seizures. Swimming and water sports should be supervised. Sports such as free climbing, hang gliding, and scuba are not recommended.	Howard et al 2004
Herniated disk (with cord compression)	Avoid contact and collision sports.	
Muscle disease or myopathy	Exercise within physical limits. Low- to moderate-intensity activity is appropriate for patients with slow progressive disorders. Patients with disorders that are rapidly progressing should avoid high-resistance and eccentric muscle activity. With eccentric exercise, muscles elongate during contraction and oppose the force of gravity (eg, lowering of weights), resulting in high levels of tension in the muscle. Modification of exercise with intercurrent illness is also necessary.	Tarnopolsky 2002, Ansved 2003
Spinal stenosis	Avoid contact and collision sports.	
Orthopedic		
Scoliosis	No restrictions unless severe.	
Spondylolisthesis	Grade 2 and above should avoid contact sports or sports with lumbar hyperextension.	
Spondylolysis	No restrictions if pain-free.	

(Continued)

Table 27–2. Recommendations and considerations for participation in sports. (Continued)

Disorders	Considerations and Recommendations	References
Respiratory		
Asthma	No activity restrictions. Using an inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist 15 min before exercise is recommended to help prevent exercise-induced bronchoconstriction. For athletes with asthma symptoms unassociated with exercise or who have frequent use of β_2-agonists (> 3 times per week), a regular inhaled corticosteroid should be considered. Antidoping regulations need to be considered for athletes using β_2-agonists.	Hull et al 2012
Pneumothorax	Can occur spontaneously in sports, especially in young, tall males. Athlete may present with atypical symptoms such as chest pain. Therefore, have a low threshold for obtaining chest x-ray. Management is per standard guideline recommendations. Athlete may return to sports when there is evidence of radiographic resolution. Increased risk for recurrence; should consider not participating in strenuous and contact sports.	Hull et al 2012
Tuberculosis	Active infection: not allowed to participate because of exposure to other athletes.	
Other		
Cerebral palsy	Full participation with modifications.	
Developmental disabilities	Athletes with developmental disabilities often have associated medical problems including diabetes, obesity, and hypokinesia.	Platt 2001
Down syndrome	10%–40% have atlantoaxial instability. Head or neck trauma in these patients may cause catastrophic spinal cord injury. Correlation of radiographic findings of atlantoaxial instability with neurologic abnormalities has not been well established. At present, there are no evidence-based guidelines for screening and activity restrictions. However, the Special Olympics requires radiographic screening in all athletes with Down syndrome and the American Academy of Pediatrics, while acknowledging the lack of evidence to support routine screening, also recommends plain films of the cervical spine to assess for atlantoaxial instability. If x-rays are abnormal, participation in contact sports or sports that entail high risk of head or neck trauma should not be allowed. 40%–50% of persons with Down syndrome have cardiac anomalies. Evaluation of underlying congenital heart disorders should be considered in this population.	Sanyer 2006
Remote spinal cord injury or spina bifida	Full participation. Consider modification of equipment to accommodate activity or modification of activity to accommodate disability. Consider how modification affects performance. Be aware of thermoregulatory dysfunction, medications, and pressure areas.	

AHA, American Heart Association; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; ECG, electrocardiogram; LVEF, left ventricular ejection fraction; NCAA, National Collegiate Athletic Association; WPW, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome.

periods of rest and recovery should be incorporated into every training regimen in order to ensure proper healing of stressed tissues. Treatment measures such as corticosteroid or platelet-rich plasma injections are more commonly used in skeletally mature athletes.

Present trends in injury rehabilitation and prevention focus on core stability training and dynamic warm-up and stretching. Core exercises emphasize isometric holds that activate the core and pelvis. They utilize light single limb movements to challenge endurance over protracted time periods. Programs should be age appropriate and modified as needed to exercise in a pain-free range. The development of back pain during a core program signifies poor technique, overly complicated curriculum, or a prior back injury. Exercise programs can be obtained from the website resource: http://www.webexercises.com.

Dynamic warm-up and stretching programs concentrate on light movement prior to exercise. Dynamic programs use controlled, full active range of motion of each joint for an overall excitatory and stretching effect prior to exercise. The aim is to initiate light perspiration and increase heart rate, peripheral circulation, and connective tissue suppleness through simple excitatory activity. In contrast to traditional static stretching regimens in which athletes hold a stretching position for a distinct period of time, an appropriate dynamic curriculum will incorporate aerobic activity and moving stretches into sport-specific movement preparation. Areas of focus include joint range of motion, proprioception, coordination, balance, flexibility, muscular contraction, and stimulation of the central nervous system and energy resources. For example, athletes may work through a series of exercises such as side shuffle, high knee stepping, bear crawls, and double-leg hopping over cones three times. Static stretching is appropriate after exercise is complete. A useful website to design a dynamic stretching program can be found at: http://www.webexercises.com.

Acute injuries or macrotrauma are one-time events that can cause alterations in biomechanics and physiology. Response to an acute injury occurs in predictable phases. The first week is characterized by an acute inflammatory response. During this time, initial vasoconstriction is followed by vasodilation. Chemical mediators of inflammation are released, resulting in the classical physical findings of local swelling, warmth, pain, and loss of function. This phase is essential in healing of the injury. The proliferative phase occurs over the next 2–4 weeks and involves repair and clean-up. Fibroblasts infiltrate and lay down new collagen. Last, the maturation phase allows for repair and regeneration of the damaged tissues.

The management of acute sports injuries focuses on optimizing healing and restoring function. The goals of immediate care are to minimize the effects of the injury by reducing pain and swelling, to educate the athlete about the nature of the injury and how to treat it, and to maintain the health and fitness of the rest of the body. The treatment for an acute injury is captured in the acronym PRICE:

- **P**rotect the injury from further damage (taping, splints, braces)
- **R**est the area
- **I**ce
- **C**ompression of the injury
- **E**levation immediately

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) may reduce the inflammatory response and reduce discomfort. These medications may be used immediately after the injury. When safely and appropriately managed, therapeutic use of physical modalities, including early cold and later heat, hydrotherapy, massage, electrical stimulation, iontophoresis, and ultrasound, can enhance recovery in the acute phase.

The recovery phase can be lengthy and requires athlete participation. Physical therapy prescription is a common treatment modality. Initial treatment is focused on joint range of motion and flexibility. Range-of-motion exercises should follow a logical progression of starting with passive motion, then active assistive and finally active movement. Active range of motion is initiated once normal joint range has been reestablished. Flexibility exercises, particularly dynamic stretches, are sport-specific and aimed at reducing tightness of musculature. Strength training can begin early in this phase of rehabilitation. Initially only isometric exercises (static muscle contraction against stable resistance without movement of a joint or change in length of a muscle) are encouraged. As recovery progresses and flexibility increases, isotonic (change in length of a muscle without varying resistance) and isokinetic (change in length of a muscle against variable resistance without varying speed) exercises can be added to the program. These should be done at least three times per week.

As the athlete approaches near-normal strength and is pain-free, the final maintenance phase can be introduced. During this phase, the athlete continues to build strength and work on endurance. The biomechanics of sport-specific activity need to be analyzed and retraining incorporated into the exercise program. Generalized cardiovascular conditioning should continue during the entire rehabilitation treatment. Typically, return-to-play guidelines after an injury include the attainment of full joint range of motion, nearly full and symmetric strength, full speed, and nearly full sport-specific agility and skill.

Brooks GP et al: Musculoskeletal injury in children and skeletally immature adolescents: overview of rehabilitation for nonoperative injuries. UpToDate 2013. http://www.uptodate.com.hsl-ezproxy.ucdenver.edu/contents/musculoskeletal-injury-in-children-and-skeletally-immature-adolescents-overview-of-rehabilitation-for-nonoperative-injuries. Accessed February 11, 2016.

DiFiori JP et al: Overuse injuries and burnout in youth sports: a position statement from the American Medical Society for Sports Medicine. Clin J Sport Med 2014;24(1):3–20 [PMID: 24366013].

Faccioni A: Dynamic warm-up routines for sports. www.ptonthenet.com. 2001. http://www.ptonthenet.com/content/articleprint.aspx?p=1&ArticleID=MTAzNyA3ZHVRU20yM2MzVmRLRmVxeXRzY3NBPT0=. Accessed February 11, 2016.

Jayanthi N et al: Sports specialization in young athletes: evidence based recommendations. Sports Health 2013;5(3):251–257 [PMID: 24427392].

Common Sports Medicine Issues & Injuries

INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Infectious diseases are common in both recreational and competitive athletes. These illnesses have an effect on basic physiologic function and athletic performance. Physicians, parents, and coaches can adopt the guidelines listed in Table 27–3.

Active skin infections are common reasons to exclude athletes from sports participation. Herpes simplex, staphylococcal, molluscum, and tinea skin infections are commonly seen and most easily transmitted in sports with skin-to-skin contact and shared equipment usage. In particular, athletes are at high risk for infection with community-associated methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (CA-MRSA). Recent reports of outbreaks in sports teams have prompted many sports organizations to adopt specific protocols to deal with the problem. Transmission is primarily by skin-to-skin contact and clinical manifestations are most commonly skin infections and soft tissue abscesses. Early treatment of CA-MRSA soft tissue infections by incision and drainage followed by appropriate antibiotic treatment is important to prevent significant morbidity and possible mortality.

Rice SG and the Council on Sports Medicine and Fitness, American Academy of Pediatrics: Medical conditions affecting sports participation. Pediatrics 2008;121(4):841–848 [PMID: 18381550].

Selected Issues for the Adolescent Athlete and the Team Physician: A consensus statement. Med Sci Sports Exerc Nov 2008;40(11):1997–2012 [PMID: 19430330].

HEAD & NECK INJURIES

Head and neck injuries occur most commonly in contact and individual sports. The sports with the highest incidence of brain injury are football, bicycling, baseball, and horseback riding. Concussions most commonly occur in football, ice hockey, rugby, boxing, basketball, lacrosse, soccer, bicycling, judo, and baseball/softball. The optimal treatment of these injuries has not been established and multiple guidelines have been developed. As a general rule, treatment

Table 27–3. Sports participation guidelines: infectious diseases.

Bacterial dermatoses (including impetigo, furuncles, cellulitis, folliculitis, and abscesses)
Athlete may participate when no new lesions for 48 h, no moist or draining lesions, and has completed oral antibiotics for at least 72 h
Diarrhea, infectious
May participate: No.
May increase risk of dehydration and heat illness. No participation is permitted unless symptoms are mild and athlete is fully hydrated.
Fever
May participate: No.
Cardiopulmonary effort increases with fever and maximum exercise capacity is reduced. Heat illness also more likely to occur.
Hepatitis, infectious
May participate: Qualified yes.
Minimal risk to others. May participate in all sports if health allows. Use universal precautions when handling blood or bodily fluids. Athlete should have skin lesions covered properly.
Herpes gladiatorum
Transmission occurs by skin-to-skin contact. Athlete may participate when free of systemic symptoms, has no new lesions for 72 h, and has been on oral antiviral treatment for 120 h. Any open wounds must be properly covered.
Human immunodeficiency virus infection
May participate: Yes.
Minimal risk to others. May participate in all sports if health allows. Use universal precautions when handling blood or bodily fluids. Athletes should have skin lesions covered properly with an occlusive dressing. They should also be instructed to report bleeding wounds.
Infectious mononucleosis
Splenomegaly is present in almost all cases and risk of splenic rupture is highest in the first 3 weeks of illness. Once clinical symptoms resolve, gradual return to activity 3 weeks after symptom onset is reasonable. Contact sports should be avoided until 4 weeks post illness onset.
Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) skin infections
Athletes with suspected MRSA should be cultured and treated accordingly with antibiotics. Abscesses should be treated with incision and drainage. Athlete may return to sport when no new lesions for 48 h, no moist or draining lesions, and has been on oral antibiotics for at least 72 h.
Molloscum contagiosum
Require appropriate covering for participation.
Streptococcal pharyngitis
Athletes can resume activity once treatment has been provided for 24 h and they are afebrile.
Upper respiratory infections
May participate in sports if tolerated. Exceptions include those with fever, severe bacterial infections (sinusitis, pharyngitis), or those with symptoms below the neck. "Neck check" guide allows athletes to return to sports if symptoms are "above the neck" (eg, rhinorrhea, congestion, or sore throat). If symptoms "below the neck" (eg, fever or malaise) are present, the athlete should not participate.
Warts
Require appropriate covering for participation.

of head and neck injuries in young children should be more conservative because of their developing central nervous systems.

1. Concussion

Concussion is a complex process that occurs when a direct blow to the body or head translates forces into the brain, causing a transient alteration of neurologic function. Even in the presence of neurologic symptoms, concussions are usually not associated with structural changes in brain tissue detectable by standard imaging studies. Instead, they may cause metabolic and vascular changes in cerebral tissues. Consequently, there are complex alterations in physiologic function, such as catecholamine surges and failure of cerebral blood flow autoregulation, leading to the common symptoms we ascribe to this type of injury. Symptoms may appear and evolve over the first few hours after injury. Confusion, headache, visual disturbance, posttraumatic amnesia, and balance problems are common symptoms. It is important to note that concussion does not have to involve loss of consciousness. Concussion should be suspected in any athlete with somatic, cognitive, or behavioral complaints as listed in Table 27–4. Observers may notice physical signs, behavioral changes, or cognitive impairment in the injured athlete. Diagnosis may be aided by the use of the Sport Concussion Assessment Tool v.3 (SCAT3) and the Child-SCAT3 (ages 5–12 years), which also provide standardized patient handouts (available at http://bjsm.bmj.com/content/47/5/259.full.pdf and http://bjsm.bmj.com/content/47/5/263.full.pdf). Regardless of level of participation or elite status, any athlete suspected of sustaining a concussion in a practice or competition should be immediately removed from play. The athlete should not be left alone in the initial hours after the injury in order to monitor for deterioration. An athlete diagnosed with a concussion should not be permitted to return to sport on the day of injury. In the acute setting, computed tomography (CT) is rarely indicated beyond the first 24 hours after injury. CT should be considered during initial evaluation if the patient displays deteriorating or altered mental status, prolonged loss of consciousness, repeated vomiting, severe headache, signs of skull fracture, or focal neurologic deficit or if he/she experienced a severe mechanism of injury.

Symptoms associated with concussions usually follow a predictable pattern and most resolve in 7–10 days. Children and adolescents tend to have a longer recovery interval. Acute management of concussion includes an early period of physical and cognitive rest (1–2 days), the exact duration of which is currently unknown. Return to school and light noncontact physical activity may be reasonable early during the recovery period if symptoms are not exacerbated. In young athletes, interventions may include modified school attendance, decreased school work, reduction in technological stimulation (television, Internet, computer games, cellular phone use), proper nutrition and hydration, and adequate rest and sleep. Before athletes are allowed to return to sports participation, symptoms should be resolved both at rest and during exercise without the aid of medication and a graduated return-to-play protocol should be completed. Return to play is a six-step progression with each step lasting 24 hours: (1) when asymptomatic at rest for 24 hours, progress to (2) light aerobic exercise, followed by (3) sport-specific exercise, then begin (4) noncontact drills, followed by (5) contact practice drills, and finally (6) release to game play. If any symptoms recur during any of the steps, the athlete should not move to the next stage and should rest for 24 hours, thereafter restarting at the previous step where the athlete was asymptomatic. Commonly, it is recommended that an athlete follow-up with a medical provider for clearance for return to contact or collision sports, and many states have passed legislation requiring medical assessment of concussed youth and medical clearance for return to play. Current expectations are that children should return to school prior to return to sport. In general, conservative return to play guidelines should be used in children.

Among commonly used assessment tools are the SCAT3, Standardized Assessment of Concussion (SAC), Balance Error Scoring System (BESS), computerized testing, and symptoms checklist (see Table 27–4). Neuropsychological testing may be helpful in assessing the cognitive function of concussed athletes, but it should not be used as the only source of clinical decision making. It may assist in management decisions for athletes with complex cases or severe or prolonged symptoms and is best performed and interpreted by a qualified neuropsychologist. Preseason testing may provide a comparison to help practitioners assess acute concussive status, but there is no solid evidence currently to support the use of baseline neuropsychological testing.

The long-term effects of concussions or contact/collision sports have yet to be established; specifically, a cause-and-effect relationship has not been proven between concussions and chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE).

Table 27–4. Concussion: symptom checklist.

Headache
Confusion
Amnesia: classically anterograde
Dizziness
Balance problems
Nausea
Vomiting
Visual disturbances
Light sensitivity
Noise sensitivity
Ringing in the ears
Fatigue or excessive sleepiness
Sleep abnormalities
Memory problems
Concentration difficulties
Irritability
Behavioral changes

Second impact syndrome is a controversial diagnosis primarily based on anecdotal reports. There is no universal agreement on the existence of this reported phenomenon. Advocates endorse a rare but potentially deadly complication of repeated head injury, causing loss of vascular autoregulation, catecholamine surge, increased cerebral blood pressure, and subsequent malignant cerebral edema without intracranial hematoma. Consequences include massive brain swelling and herniation leading to seizure, coma, and, possibly, death. Opponents suggest the phenomenon is actually the well-established condition of diffuse cerebral swelling, a known complication of head injury, particularly in younger individuals. The decision to retire an athlete from high risk or contact/collision sport is a sensitive and challenging one. There is currently little evidence to support a standardized approach to retirement decisions. However, considerations should include total number of concussions; increasing frequency; occurrence with serially less force; and prolonged, more severe, or permanent symptoms/signs.

Child-SCAT3. Br J Sports Med 2013;47:263 [PMID: 23479481]. http://bjsm.bmj.com/content/47/5/263.full.pdf.

McCrory P, Davis G, Makdissi M: Second impact syndrome or cerebral swelling after sporting head injury. Curr Sports Med Rep 2012;11:21–23 [PMID: 22236821].

McCrory P et al: Consensus statement on concussion in sport: the 4th international conference on concussion in sport held in Zurich, November 2012. Br J Sports Med 2013;47:250–258 [PMID: 23479479].

Randolph C: Baseline neuropsychological testing in managing sport-related concussion: does it modify risk? Curr Sports Med Rep 2011;10(1):21–26 [PMID: 21228656].

SCAT3. Br J Sports Med 2013;47:259 [PMID: 23479480]. http://bjsm.bmj.com/content/47/5/259.full.pdf.

Schatz P, Moser RS: Current issues in pediatric sports concussion. Clin Neuropsychol 2011:1–16 [PMID: 21391151].

2. Atlantoaxial Instability

Atlantoaxial instability is common in children with Down syndrome because of hypotonia and ligamentous laxity, especially including the annular ligament of C1. Consequently, this condition causes increased mobility at C1 and C2. Most cases are asymptomatic. Lateral cervical neck films in flexion, extension, and neutral position evaluate the atlantodens interval (ADI). ADI is normally less than 2.5 mm, but up to 4.5 mm is acceptable in this population. Children with an ADI greater than 4.5 mm should be restricted from contact and collision activities, as well as any sport requiring excessive neck flexion or extension.

Dimberg EL: Management of common neurologic conditions in sports. Clin Sports Med 2005;24:637 [PMID: 16004923].

Klenck C, Gebke K: Practical management: common medical problems in disabled athletes. Clin J Sport Med 2007;17(1): 55–60 [PMID: 17304008].

Winell J: Sports participation of children with Down syndrome. Orthop Clin North Am 2003;34:439 [PMID: 12974493].

3. Burners or Stingers

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Symptoms appear on the same side as an injury to the neck and shoulder.
- Burning pain or numbness in the shoulder and arm.
- Weakness may be present.

Burners or stingers are common injuries in contact sports, especially football. The two terms are used interchangeably to describe transient unilateral pain and paresthesias in the upper extremity. These cervical radiculopathies or brachial plexopathies typically occur when the head is laterally bent and the shoulder depressed, causing exacerbation of a degenerative cervical disk or stenosis, a compressive injury to a cervical nerve root on the symptomatic upper extremity, or a traction injury to the brachial plexus of the ipsilateral shoulder. Symptoms include immediate burning pain and paresthesias down one arm generally lasting only minutes. Unilateral weakness in the muscles of the upper trunk—supraspinatus, deltoid, and biceps—also tends to resolve quickly, but can persist for weeks. The most important part of the workup is a thorough neurologic assessment to differentiate this injury from a more serious brain or cervical spine injury. The key distinguishing feature of the stinger is its unilateral nature. If symptoms persist or include bilateral complaints, headache, change in mental status, or severe neck pain, a diagnostic evaluation should include a careful neurological examination and possibly cervical spine radiographs, including flexion/extension views, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans, and electromyography (EMG).

Treatment consists of removal from play and observation. The athlete can return to play once symptoms have resolved, neck and shoulder range of motion is pain-free, reflexes and strength are normal, and the Spurling test is negative. The Spurling test is performed by having the neck extended, rotated, and flexed to the ipsilateral shoulder while applying an axial load. Restriction of same day return to play should be considered in athletes with a history of multiple stingers, particularly if sustained in the same season. Preventative strategies include always wearing well-fitting protective gear, proper blocking and tackling techniques, and maintaining neck and shoulder strength. Long-term complications are possible, including permanent neurologic injury or repeated occurrence of stingers, which would necessitate further workup and possible lifetime exclusion from contact or collision sports.

Cantu RC, Li YM, Abdulhamid M, Chin LS: Return to play after cervical spine injury in sports. Curr Sports Med Rep 2013;12:14–17 [PMID: 23314078].

Standaert CJ, Herring SA: Expert opinion and controversies in musculoskeletal and sports medicine: stingers. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2009;90:402–406 [PMID: 19254603].

SPINE INJURIES

As children have become more competitive in sports, spine injuries have become more common. Sports with a fairly high incidence of spine injuries include golf, gymnastics, football, dance, wrestling, and weightlifting. Back pain lasting more than 2 weeks indicates a possible structural problem that should be investigated.

Acute injury to the spine often results from an axial load injury. Patients present with focal tenderness of the thoracic or thoracolumbar spine. Evaluation includes plain radiography that may demonstrate anterior wedging of the thoracic vertebra, representing a compression fracture. When significant spinal tenderness or any neurologic abnormalities are present, radiographs are often followed by CT or MRI. Treatment of minor compression fractures includes pain control, bracing, rest from high-risk sports, and physical therapy. With appropriate rehabilitation, athletes can usually return to contact activity within 8 weeks.

1. Spondylolysis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury to the pars interarticularis.
- Usually presents as lower back pain with extension.

Spondylolysis is an injury to the pars interarticularis of the vertebral complex, resulting in a stress reaction or an acquired stress fracture. The pars interarticularis is the bony connection between the inferior and superior articulating facets. Injuries to the pars interarticularis, or pars defects for short, are present in 4%–6% of the population. In adolescent athletes, however, the incidence of spondylolysis in those presenting with lower back pain is close to 50%. As such, it should be high on the differential when evaluating lower back pain in this population. The incidence of pars defects in athletes such as gymnasts, dancers, divers, and wrestlers is significantly increased because of the repetitive flexion/extension motions combined with rotation. Repetitive overload results in stress fractures. Spondylolysis occurs at L5 in 85% of cases. The athlete presents with midline low back pain that is aggravated by extension, such as arching the back in gymnastics. There may be palpable tenderness over the lower lumbar vertebrae, with pain on the single leg hyperextension test (Stork test). Tight hamstrings are another common physical finding. Evaluation includes anteroposterior (AP) and lateral radiographs of the lumbar spine. Although oblique radiographic views of the lumbar spine are helpful to look for the so-called Scottie dog sign, they are falling out of favor because they do not significantly improve diagnostic accuracy and increase radiation exposure. Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) scan, CT scan, and MRI can be useful to determine the presence of an active spondylotic lesion. Bone/SPECT scan shows stress reaction or pars injury before other radiographic changes. CT provides excellent definition of bony anatomy and can document healing. MRI is an alternative to detect pars interarticularis problems. With the use of high magnetic field strength and fat saturation techniques, high-resolution MRI images can now show subtle bone marrow edema of early stress injuries and are becoming popular, particularly for pediatric patients because of the lack of radiation exposure. There is currently no gold standard for the treatment of spondylolysis. The goal is to alleviate painful symptoms and allow the athlete a safe return to play. Management includes refraining from hyperextension and high-impact sporting activities, stretching of the hamstrings, and core and back stabilization exercises. Athletes can cross-train with low-impact activity and neutral or flexion-based physical therapy. Bracing is controversial. Outcome studies show similar results regarding return to sports and bony healing whether or not braces are worn. It is important to note also that clinical outcome does not necessarily correlate with healed pars fracture versus bony nonunions (when the fractured bone fails to heal). Satisfactory outcomes (asymptomatic patients and return to sports) can be achieved regardless of bony healing status. Typically, return to play is often delayed 8–12 weeks or longer based on clinical signs of healing. Most symptomatic spondylolysis improves with rest and activity modifications (with or without radiologic evidence of healing). Once asymptomatic, an athlete can usually return to sports without restrictions. Surgery is reserved for refractory cases that fail conservative measures.

2. Spondylolisthesis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Bilateral pars interarticularis injury resulting in forward slippage of one vertebra over the one below it.
- Usually presents as back pain with extension.
- Hyperlordosis, or possible step-off of lumbar spine.

When a bilateral pars stress fracture (spondylolysis) occurs, slippage of one vertebra over another causes a spondylolisthesis. Patients present with hyperlordosis, kyphosis, pain with hyperextension, and, in severe cases, a palpable step-off. A standing lateral radiograph is used to make the diagnosis and to monitor for any progression of slippage. These injuries are graded from 1 to 4 based on the percentage of slippage: grade 1 (0%–24%), grade 2 (25%–49%), grade 3 (50%–74%), and grade 4 (75%–100%).

Treatment is often symptom based. Asymptomatic athletes with less than 25% slippage often have no restrictions and are followed on a routine basis for radiograph assessment. Management of symptomatic spondylolisthesis requires a period of activity modifications, particularly protection from spine extension and impact activities, coupled with a regimen of stretching of the hamstrings and core and back stabilization exercises. Bracing may also be considered. Surgical intervention is considered for slippage greater than 50%, progressive spondylolisthesis, or intractable pain despite nonoperative treatment. If surgery is required, the athlete must understand that he or she cannot return to activities for at least 1 year and may not be able return to previous sporting activities.

3. Disk Herniation

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Back pain worse with flexion and sitting.
- Radiculopathy can be present.
- Positive straight leg raise.

Discogenic back pain accounts for a small percentage of back injuries in children. These injuries are almost unheard of in preadolescence. Back pain can originate from disk bulging, disk herniation, or disk degeneration. Most injuries occur at L4–L5 and L5–S1 vertebrae. Not all disk bulges found on MRI are symptomatic. In adolescents, most disk herniations are central rather than posterolateral. Risk factors include heavy lifting, excessive or repetitive axial loading of the spine, rapid increases in training, or trauma. Symptoms include back pain, which may be increased with activities such as bending, sitting, and coughing. Although not as common as in adults, radicular symptoms of pain down the leg can also occur and are often associated with large disk herniations. Evaluation includes physical and neurologic examinations, including straight leg testing, sensory testing, and checking reflexes. If symptoms persist, evaluation usually begins with radiographs and an MRI, which is the imaging test of choice for diagnosing disk herniation. EMG may also be considered in the presence of radiculopathy.

Treatment usually is conservative as most disk herniations, even if large, improve spontaneously. The athlete can rest the back for a short period, with avoidance of prolonged sitting, jumping, or hyperextension and hyperflexion of the spine, as these activities may increase pressure on the disk, leading to aggravation of symptoms. After a short period of rest, a structured physical therapy program should begin, focusing on core and pelvic stabilization, peripelvic flexibility and sports or activity specific conditioning. If symptoms persist, a short course of oral steroids or epidural steroid injection may be indicated. Surgery is recommended for patients who fail conservative therapy, have significant or progressive radiculopathy, or who have progressive neurologic deficit.

Kim H, Green D: Spondylolysis in the adolescent athlete. Curr Opinion Ped 2011;23:68–72 [PMID: 21150440].

Lavelle W et al: Pediatric disk herniation. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2011;19:649–656 [PMID: 22052641].

Selected issues for the adolescent athlete and the team physician: a consensus statement. Med Sci Sports Exerc Nov 2008;40(11):1997–2012 [PMID: 19430330].

SHOULDER INJURIES

Shoulder injury is usually a result of acute trauma or chronic overuse. Acute injuries around the shoulder include contusions, fractures, sprains (or separations), and dislocations. The age of the patient affects the injury pattern, as younger patients are more likely to sustain fractures instead of sprains. Sprains (ligaments) and strains (muscle and tendon) are generally defined as low grade soft tissue injuries that do not result in functional compromise of a structure.

1. Fracture of the Clavicle

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury by fall on to shoulder or outstretched hand.
- Severe pain in the shoulder.
- Tenderness, swelling, and/or deformity over clavicle.

Clavicular fractures occur from a fall or direct trauma to the shoulder. Focal swelling, deformity, and tenderness are present over the clavicle. The diagnosis is made by radiographs of the clavicle; the fractures are most common in the middle third of the bone.

Initial treatment is focused on pain control and protection with a sling and swathe. Early range of motion is

permitted based on pain level. Progressive rehabilitation is important. Athletes cannot return to contact sports for 8–12 weeks. Absolute surgical indications for acute clavicular fractures include open fractures or neurovascular compromise. Fracture nonunion is unusual in young patients. However, there is recent evidence in the adult population recommending surgical stabilization for fractures that are very displaced or shortened. The role of acute surgical stabilization in the pediatric and adolescent population in regards to shortening is still being defined. Patients with recurrent fractures or nonunion typically will also require surgical fixation.

2. Acromioclavicular Separation

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury with fall on shoulder.
- Severe pain in the shoulder.
- Tenderness, swelling, and/or deformity over acromioclavicular joint.

A fall on the point of the shoulder is the most common cause of acromioclavicular separation. Tearing of the acromioclavicular joint capsule and possibly the coracoclavicular ligaments occurs. The injury is classified by the extent of the injuries to these ligaments. Athletes present with focal soft tissue swelling and tenderness over the acromioclavicular joint. More severe injuries are associated with deformity. Patients have a positive cross-arm test, in which pain is localized to the acromioclavicular joint. Radiographs are necessary in this setting to assess the degree of injury and to evaluate for a coexisting fracture or growth plate injury.

Treatment is supportive, with rest and immobilization in a sling followed by progressive rehabilitation. Return to activity can be accomplished in 1–6 weeks depending on the severity of the injury and the persistence of symptoms. Full range of motion and full strength must be achieved prior to being cleared to return to sports.

3. Fracture of the Humerus

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury with significant fall on outstretched arm.
- Severe pain in proximal humerus.
- Tenderness, swelling, and/or deformity over proximal humerus.

Fractures of the humerus occur from a severe blow or fall on the shoulder. Pain and swelling are localized to the proximal humeral region. The fractures can include the physes or may be extraphyseal. A significant amount of displacement and angulation can be tolerated in this location because of the young athlete's potential for remodeling and because of the intrinsic range of motion of the shoulder. Careful assessment of the brachial plexus and radial nerves are needed to rule out associated nerve damage.

Treatment consists of a sling for 4–6 weeks followed by progressive rehabilitation with return to play at 8–12 weeks when bony healing, full range of motion, and strength have been achieved.

4. Acute Traumatic Anterior Shoulder Instability (Anterior Shoulder Dislocation/ Subluxation)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury with an abducted and externally rotated arm.
- Severe pain in the shoulder.
- Squared-off shoulder on examination.
- Reduced range of motion of the shoulder.

Acute traumatic anterior shoulder instability occurs when significant force is applied to the abducted and externally rotated shoulder. Most often, the humeral head is dislocated in an anterior and inferior direction. The patient has severe pain and a mechanical block to motion. Some patients will spontaneously reduce within seconds or minutes of their injury. Most patients, however, require immediate closed reduction on the field or in the emergency room. Radiographs are helpful to confirm the position of the humeral head as well as to evaluate for coexisting fracture. MRI may be required for accurate visualization of fractures and cartilaginous injury.

Optimal follow-up treatment for glenohumeral dislocation in young athletes has not been established. Initially, the shoulder is immobilized for comfort. Range-of-motion exercises and progressive rehabilitation are initiated. Prolonged immobilization does not decrease the risk of recurrence and is discouraged. Return to play in-season can be considered with appropriate counseling. Because of the high risk of recurrence, options for treatment should be individualized, with consideration given to both nonoperative and surgical management.

5. Rotator Cuff Injury

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Injury can be acute or chronic.
- Pain is described as diffuse or anterior and lateral.
- Overhead activities exacerbate the pain.

Shoulder injuries are often a consequence of repetitive overuse and tissue failure. Rotator cuff tendonitis and bursitis are the most commonly observed rotator cuff injuries in youth sports. Rotator cuff tears in children and adolescents are exceedingly rare. These overuse injuries typically occur in sports requiring repetitive overhead motions. Muscle imbalances and injury can cause the position of the humeral head to be abnormal, which may cause entrapment of the supraspinatus tendon under the acromial arch. Patients with nontraumatic shoulder instability due to ligamentous and capsular laxity (also known as multidirectional instability) are prone to overuse rotator cuff injury. These athletes present with chronic pain in the anterior and lateral shoulder, which is increased with overhead activities. Diagnostic workup includes plain radiographs and an outlet view to look for anatomic variability. The rehabilitation of this injury is geared toward reduction of inflammation, improved flexibility, and core stabilization and strengthening of the scapular stabilizers and rotator cuff muscles. A biomechanics evaluation can assist athletes in the recovery process by building sport-specific skills and eliminating substitution patterns. Surgery is rarely indicated.

6. Little League Shoulder

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Participation in a throwing sport.
- Pain with throwing.
- Pain in the lateral aspect of the humerus.
- Swelling around the shoulder.
- Widening of the proximal humeral physis on radiographs.

Proximal humeral epiphysitis, or "Little League shoulder," is an overuse injury that occurs in children aged 11–14 years who play overhead sports such as baseball. The patient presents with activity-related pain in the lateral aspect of the proximal humerus. Examination often shows tenderness over the proximal humerus. Absence of findings on office examination does not preclude this diagnosis. The hallmark feature is pain with throwing. Radiographs show widening, sclerosis, and irregularity of the proximal humeral physis. Comparison views are often helpful when considering this diagnosis.

Treatment consists of rest from throwing or other aggravating activity. Physical therapy is initiated during the rest period. Return to play can only be considered after a period of rest has significantly decreased the pain and the athlete has proceeded through a progressive throwing program. Healing can take several months. Signs of radiographic healing may lag behind the athlete's clinical progress and normal radiographs are not necessarily required to return an athlete to play. Permanent sequelae such as fracture, growth arrest, or deformity is extremely rare but can occur in chronic cases that are not treated appropriately.

Brophy RH, Marx RG: The treatment of traumatic anterior instability of the shoulder: nonoperative and surgical treatment. Arthroscopy 2009;25:298–304 [PMID: 19245994].

Mariscalco MW, Saluan P: Upper extremity injuries in the adolescent athlete. Sports Med Arthrosc Rev 2011;19:17–26 [PMID: 21293234].

ELBOW INJURIES

Injuries in the elbow are quite common and have both chronic and acute etiologies. They often occur in athletes involved in throwing or overhead sports. Although acute injuries to the elbow are common, chronic overuse injuries are becoming more and more prevalent in young athletes. Risk factors leading to overuse elbow injury include single sport specialization, year-round participation, longer competitive seasons, insufficient rest, and poor biomechanics. The term Little League elbow is used loosely to encompass a variety of causes of elbow pain in young throwing athletes. These injuries include medial epicondylitis, apophysitis, medial epicondyle avulsion fracture, Panner disease, and osteochondritis dissecans (OCD) of the capitellum. It is intended, however, to refer to medial epicondyle apophysitis, an overuse elbow injury resulting from repetitive valgus stress from overhead throwing.

When the elbow is evaluated, it is helpful to divide the examination into specific anatomic areas, discussed as follows.

1. Medial Epicondyle Apophysitis (Little League Elbow)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Participation in a throwing sport.
- Pain over the medial epicondyle, especially with pitching.
- Tenderness and swelling of medial elbow.

Little League elbow is a traction injury to the medial epicondylar physis, which develops in young overhead throwing athletes, particularly baseball pitchers, between the ages of 9 and 12 years. The biomechanical forces generated around the elbow during throwing, namely repetitive valgus stress, can result in shearing, inflammation, traction, and abnormal bone development. The symptoms are primarily swelling, medial elbow pain, performance difficulties, and weakness. The pain localizes to the medial epicondyle, which may be tender to palpation, and worsened with valgus stress. Wrist flexion and forearm pronation may increase symptoms. The physician should inquire about the exposure to throwing, including pitch counts, the number of practices and games, and the duration of the season. Workup includes elbow radiographs, with comparison films of the unaffected side, to look for widening of the apophysis. Rarely, MRI is used to confirm the diagnosis.

Treatment of the injury includes complete rest from throwing activities. It is not uncommon for a player to be restricted from throwing for up to 6 weeks. Competition can be resumed once the player is asymptomatic and has progressed through a graduated, age-appropriate throwing program. The key approach for this injury is prevention. Children should be properly conditioned and coached in correct throwing biomechanics. Guidelines for Little League pitching limits in youth baseball have been developed and are outlined in Table 27–5.

Table 27–5. Guidelines for pitching limits in youth baseball.

Age (y)	Pitches per Day
7–8	50
9–10	75
11–12	85
13–16	95
17–18	105

2. Panner Disease

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Participation in a throwing sport.
- Pain over the lateral elbow.
- Swelling and flexion contracture.

Panner disease refers to developmental osteochondrosis of the capitellum that results from overuse injury. The lesion involves disordered ossification of the capitellum, which is the lower end of the humerus that articulates with the radius. This condition occurs in children aged 5–12 years who play sports that involve overhead throwing and in gymnasts. The repetitive lateral compressive forces from loading the elbow in these sports compromises the blood supply to the growing epiphysis, leading to degeneration of the ossification center, or osteochondrosis. The child may have dull aching in the lateral elbow that worsens with throwing. Swelling and reduced elbow extension usually are present. Radiocapitellar compression test will also elicit pain—with elbow fully extended, arm is actively pronated and supinated. Radiographs show an abnormal, flattened capitellum, with fragmentation and areas of sclerosis. This should be distinguished from OCD of the capitellum, which typically occur in older children (see as follows). Treatment is conservative, using rest, ice, and splinting. Avoid activities that load the elbow for 3–6 months. The child can return to play once symptoms resolve, and there is evidence of healing on follow-up radiographs. The natural history of this condition is one of complete resolution of symptoms and, ultimately, normal ossification of the capitellum.

3. Ulnar Collateral Ligament Tear

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden forceful tensile stress on ligament from a fall or from valgus stress to elbow during overhead throw.
- Feeling a pop or sensation of elbow giving out.
- Medial elbow pain.
- Tenderness distal to medial epicondyle.

Once the medial epicondylar physis closes in a skeletally mature athlete, valgus forces are then transmitted to the ulnar collateral ligament, resulting in a sprain or tear. Patients present with medial elbow pain and are often unable to fully extend the elbow. Examination reveals tenderness just distal to the medial epicondyle, and there may be instability with valgus stressing. Treatment is conservative, including rest, ice, and physical therapy directed at range of motion and strengthening. Surgery may be suggested for those with persistent pain or instability and who desire to continue participating in overhead sports.

4. Osteochondritis Dissecans

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Participation in a throwing sport.
- Pain over the lateral elbow, especially with pitching.
- Tenderness over radiocapitellar joint.
- Elbow flexion contracture.

Lateral elbow pain in a slightly older throwing athlete, usually aged 13–15 years, can be secondary to osteochondritis dissecans (OCD), which is a more worrisome diagnosis than Panner disease. Unlike Panner disease, which is self-limiting, OCD lesions can lead to permanent destruction of the bone. It is an injury to the subchondral bone and its overlying articular cartilage. Although it can involve different sites of the elbow, including the olecranon, radial head, or trochlea, it most commonly affects the capitellum. Repetitive valgus compressive forces can lead to avascular necrosis of the capitellum, which can ultimately result in the formation of loose bodies in the joint. The athlete presents with lateral pain, swelling, lack of full extension, and occasionally locking. Radiographs show lucency of the capitellum with surrounding sclerotic bone. MRI can more fully delineate the lesion. The prognosis for high-grade lesions is guarded.

A child with OCD should be seen by either a sports medicine specialist or an orthopedic surgeon with expertise in upper extremity injuries. Treatment is based on stability of the lesion and can be either conservative or surgical. For early or stable OCD lesions, particularly in skeletally immature individuals, management includes throwing activity restrictions and range of motion exercises. More advanced lesions or those with persistent symptoms despite conservative treatment may require surgical intervention.

5. Lateral Epicondylitis

Lateral epicondylitis (also known as tennis elbow) is common in skeletally mature athletes participating in racquet sports. It is a tendinopathy of the extensor muscles in the forearm, which inserts onto the lateral epicondyle causing lateral elbow pain. The pain is increased by wrist extension. Initial treatment is aimed at inflammation control. Stretching and strengthening of forearm muscles are the primary interventions during the subsequent phases. Stroke mechanics may need to be altered and a forearm brace used to decrease the forces in the extensor muscles.

6. Posterior Elbow Pain

Posterior elbow pain is uncommon. Etiologies include dislocations, impingement, fractures, triceps avulsions and tendinitis, olecranon apophysitis, and olecranon bursitis.

Gerbino PG: Elbow disorders in throwing athletes. Orthop Clin North Am 2003;34:417 [PMID: 12974491].

Little League. http://www.littleleague.org.

Kobayashi K et al: Lateral compression injuries in the pediatric elbow: Panner's disease and osteochondritis dissecans of the capitellum. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2004;12:246–254 [PMID: 15473676].

HAND & WRIST INJURIES

The hand and wrist are the most common area of injury in children and account for a large proportion of emergency room visits. All hand and wrist injuries have the potential for serious long-term disability and deserve thorough evaluation. A thorough neurovascular examination as well as evaluation of rotational or angular deformity or malalignment is critical. Examples of complications include loss of range of motion, dysfunction, deformity, limb length discrepancy, and arthritis.

1. Distal Phalanx Injury

Tuft injury requires splinting for 3–6 weeks or until the patient is pain free. If there is significant displacement, a surgical K-wire can be used for reduction. **Nail bed injury** often requires nail bed suturing, splinting, and drainage of subungual hematomas. Nail avulsions should be replaced into the nail fold, and if not possible, a substitute material should be interposed into the nail bed as a stent. Patients with nail bed injuries should be advised that nail regrowth may appear irregular or may not occur at all.

2. Distal Interphalangeal Injury

Mallet finger or extensor tendon avulsion occurs more commonly in ball-handling sports. The mechanism of injury is an axial load or forced flexion against an actively extending finger, causing avulsion fracture or rupture of the extensor digitorum tendon. Athletes present with a flexion contracture at the distal interphalangeal (DIP) joint and

inability to actively extend the distal phalanx. Referral to an orthopedic surgeon is necessary. Conservative treatment consists of splinting in extension for 4 weeks for fractures and 6–8 weeks for tendon rupture. Surgery may be required if the initial fracture involves greater than 30% of the joint space or poor healing with loss of function occurs.

Jersey finger, or flexor tendon avulsion, occurs in contact sports, particularly American football. The mechanism of injury is forced extension against an actively flexed finger. The fourth ("ring") finger is the most commonly injured digit. Athletes present with tenderness, swelling, and inability to flex at the DIP. The examiner can test the function of the flexor tendon by holding the proximal interphalangeal joint in extension while having the injured athlete attempt flexion at the DIP joint. The injured finger should be splinted in a comfortable position and immediately referred to an orthopedic surgeon, as definitive treatment is often surgical.

3. Thumb Injury

Gamekeeper's or skier's thumb is an injury to the ulnar collateral ligament from forced abduction of the thumb metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joint. It is a common skiing injury to those who fall while holding on to their ski poles. Patients will complain of pain over the medial aspect of the MCP joint and pain with apposition or pinching. If a radiograph shows an avulsed fragment that is displaced less than 2 mm, a thumb spica cast can be used. If there is no fragment, less than 35 degrees of lateral joint space opening, or less than 15 degrees difference in joint space opening compared to the uninjured thumb, a spica cast for 4–6 weeks is indicated. Surgery is required for more serious injuries.

4. Hand Fractures

All finger fractures should be assessed for growth plate involvement, rotation, angulation, and displacement. If stable and not displaced, these fractures can be splinted for 3–4 weeks and buddy-taped for immediate return to sports. However, spiral or oblique fractures of the middle phalanx, intra-articular fractures, and severely angulated physeal fractures are considered unstable and should be referred to an orthopedic surgeon.

Boxer's fracture is a neck fracture of the fourth or fifth metacarpal, typically caused by poor punching technique or punching into a hard surface. Less than 40 degrees of angulation in the fourth or fifth metacarpals is acceptable. Assessment of displacement and rotational deformity is critical, as displaced or rotated fractures require reduction and fixation. Prior to definitive treatment with hand-based casting for 4 weeks, boxer's fractures may be temporarily immobilized with an ulnar gutter splint with the MCP joints flexed to 70 degrees.

5. Wrist Injury

Most swollen wrists without evidence of gross deformity or instability can be splinted temporarily for several days. Radial and ulnar fractures, which are fairly common in children, must be ruled out. Particular attention should be paid to the growth plates and the scaphoid bone. Typically, distal radius and ulna fractures require casting for 3–6 weeks in either a short or long arm cast, depending on the involvement of one or both bones and the severity of displacement or angulation. Torus, or buckle, fractures may be placed in a rigid wrist brace or short arm cast for 3–4 weeks. Scaphoid fractures are caused by a force applied to a hyperextended wrist, most commonly a fall onto an outstretched hand. Despite normal radiographs, if evidence of snuffbox tenderness and swelling is present, there is tenderness along the volar aspect of the scaphoid, or there is pain with radial wrist deviation or active wrist range of motion; the wrist must be further evaluated, either by MRI acutely or immobilized for 10 days and then reassessed both clinically and with follow-up radiographs. A nondisplaced scaphoid fracture requires at least 6 weeks of immobilization in a thumb spica cast. Nonunion can occur, particularly in fractures of the proximal pole of the scaphoid, related to the poor blood supply of this carpal bone. Displacement requires operative management. Gymnast's wrist is chronic wrist pain due to repetitive overloading of the distal radial physis. Athletes complain of dorsal wrist pain, worsened with weight bearing on the affected upper extremity or active extension of the wrist. This overuse stress injury may cause long-term growth abnormalities or degenerative wrist joint changes, which may ultimately require surgical intervention. Athletes should be placed in a rigid wrist brace or short arm cast for 4 weeks and undergo a period of relative rest and activity modification.

Anz AW et al: Pediatric scaphoid fractures. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2009;17:77–87 [PMID: 19202121].

Cornwall R, Ricchetti ET: Pediatric phalanx fractures: unique challenges and pitfalls. Clin Orthop Relat Res 2006 Apr;445: 146–156 [PMID: 16505727].

Mariscalco MW, Saluan P: Upper extremity injuries in the adolescent athlete. Sports Med Arthrosc Rev 2011;19(1):17–26 [PMID: 21293234].

Williams AA, Lochner HV: Pediatric hand and wrist injuries. Current Rev Musculoskeletal Med 2013;6:18–25 [PMID: 23264097].

HIP INJURIES

Because the pelvis and hip articulate with both the lower extremities and the spine, this area is rich in ligaments, muscle attachments, and nerves. Injuries in young children are rare, but sprains, strains, and avulsion fractures can occur. Additionally, athletes can be susceptible to overuse injury involving the hip.

1. Hip Avulsion Fractures

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fractures at apophyseal areas.
- Pain with weight bearing.
- Focal pain over the site of injury.

Avulsion fractures around the hip in adolescents occur at apophyseal regions such as the ischial tuberosity, anterior superior iliac spine, anterior inferior iliac spine, and iliac crest. The mechanism of injury is a forceful, unbalanced muscle contraction that causes avulsion of the muscle tendon insertion. The athlete presents with a history of an acute traumatic incident; often a "pop" is felt and the athlete is immediately unable to bear weight. Range of motion of the hip is limited secondary to pain and focal tenderness is present over the apophysis.

Treatment is conservative. Surgical management is rarely required even in displaced fractures. The athlete is typically placed on crutches for the first couple of weeks for pain control and to normalize gait. After the acute phase, an athlete can progress to weight bearing as tolerated. The rehabilitation phase focuses on regaining motion, flexibility training and pelvic, and core strengthening. Progressive return to activity can often be accomplished in 4–6 weeks, if full range of motion, full strength, and sport-specific skills have been achieved.

2. Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pain in the hip or knee, or both.
- Loss of internal rotation of the hip.
- Radiographs in the frog-leg position show widening of the physis and epiphyseal slippage.

Slipped capital femoral epiphysis occurs in children aged 11–16 years. The physis is weakened during times of rapid growing and is susceptible to shearing failure either acutely secondary to a traumatic injury or insidiously from chronic overload. Patients complain of groin, thigh, or knee pain and often have a limp. Examination shows painful range of motion of the hip, limited internal rotation, and obligatory external rotation when the hip is flexed. Radiographs include AP and frog-leg lateral films, which demonstrate widening of the physis and epiphyseal slippage or displacement of the femoral head relative to the femoral neck.

Treatment consists of immediate non–weight-bearing and urgent referral to an orthopedic specialist for open reduction and internal fixation. Failure to identify this injury can result in permanent hip deformity and damage resulting in early arthritis. Rehabilitation is a component of the postsurgical treatment. Return to activity is progressive over months. (See also Chapter 26.)

3. Acetabular Labral Tears

Acetabular labral tears are an increasingly recognized cause of anterior hip and groin pain in athletes. The majority of hip labral tears occur as a result of some underlying hip disorder such as femoroacetabular impingement (FAI) or hip dysplasia. Because of the stress and range of motion requirements for most athletics, these injuries tend to present and be more symptomatic in the athletic population. Athletes with this injury typically do not report an acute traumatic event that precipitated their symptoms. Symptoms often develop insidiously rather than acutely. Athletes present with deep anterior hip or groin pain that worsens with activity and is resistant to treatment. Radiographic findings can be normal. An MRI arthrogram is used to demonstrate the tear. Treatment typically starts conservatively and requires rest and physical therapy. Ultimately, treatment is tailored to the athlete's particular needs and symptoms. Arthroscopy to repair the tear and address any underlying structural issue that caused the tear is often required.

4. Adductor Strain

An adductor strain or a groin pull is generally caused by forced abduction during running, falling, twisting, or tackling. Sports that require quick directional changes place athletes at risk for these types of injuries. The associated pain is in the adductor muscle. There is often pain with hip adduction or flexion and tenderness over the adductor tubercle. Treatment includes rest, ice, and protection—often with crutches, and strengthening of the muscle when it heals.

5. Hamstring Strain

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Mechanism is forced knee extension.
- Pain with tearing or popping sensation in the posterior leg.
- Pain with resisted knee extension.

Hamstring strain is a common injury in athletes. The majority of these injuries occur in the muscle belly and can be treated successfully with nonoperative management. The mechanism of injury is forced extension of the knee or directional changes. Typically, the athlete with a hamstring strain suddenly stops playing and grabs the back of the thigh. There are three grades of injury. Examination reveals pain on palpation of the muscle and occasionally a defect. Pain also occurs with knee flexion against resistance.

Initial treatment is focused on minimizing swelling, bruising, and pain. The thigh should be iced and compression applied. In moderate and severe injuries, crutches may be needed for a short duration. The athlete can walk as soon as he or she can tolerate the activity. It is particularly important to stretch the hamstring because, as a two-joint muscle, it is more susceptible to injury than other types of muscle. Eccentric strengthening is an important component of rehabilitation.

6. Quadriceps Contusion

Quadriceps contusion is caused by a direct injury to the muscle that causes bruising, swelling, and pain. The amount of damage is directly related to the amount of force. The anterior and lateral thigh regions are most commonly injured, often in contact sports such as football and lacrosse.

Treatment is rest, ice, and protection for the first 24 hours. The knee should be kept in a fully flexed position. Two to 3 days after the injury, range-of-motion exercises may begin in both flexion and extension. Once 120 degrees of motion has been established and movement does not cause pain, the athlete may return to competitive activity. If the muscle remains firm on examination after 2 weeks, radiographs of the thigh should be obtained to rule out **myositis ossificans**, an abnormal deposition of calcium in the muscle that may be induced by aggressive stretching of the muscle too early in the clinical course.

7. Hip Dislocation

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Usually produces posterior dislocation.
- Leg is flexed, adducted, and internally rotated.
- Hip pain is severe.
- This is an on-site emergency and must be treated quickly.

The hip is a very constrained joint and is inherently very stable. Therefore, hip dislocations are very rare and typically occur only in high energy or forceful injuries. Most hip dislocations occur in the posterior direction. Athletes with this injury typically have severe pain and any motion of the hip or leg is poorly tolerated. Classically, these athletes present with an acutely painful hip following a major impact and the hip is locked in flexion, adduction, and internal rotation. Hip dislocations in skeletally mature athletes are often associated with acetabular and femoral neck fractures. The preadolescent, skeletally immature competitor may have an isolated dislocation without fracture. Hip radiographs and advanced imaging such as a CT or MRI scan are needed to completely evaluate the injury.

This injury is an emergency. The athlete should be transported immediately to the nearest facility that has an orthopedic surgeon available. Severe bleeding, avascular necrosis, and nerve damage can result with delay in relocation. Most athletes can be relocated in a closed fashion. Once reduction has been established in an uncomplicated case, protected weight bearing on crutches for 6 weeks is recommended followed by another 6 weeks of range-of-motion and strengthening exercises. An athlete may return gradually to competition after 3 months, when strength and motion are normal.

Surgery can be necessary if there is an associated fracture, labral tear, loose body, or if a concentric reduction cannot be achieved in a closed fashion.

8. Pelvic Apophysitis

Pelvic apophysitis occurs in competitive adolescent athletes who typically are participating consistently, often year round, in their sport. Common locations are the ischial tuberosity and iliac crest. The athlete presents with pain over the apophysis and pain with resisted hip motion specific to the muscle insertion. Radiographs can show irregularity over the apophysis, or be normal. Treatment consists of relative rest, progressive rehabilitation focusing on flexibility, and pelvis and core stabilization.

9. Iliotibial Band Syndrome

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Overuse running injury.
- Pain over lateral knee or hip.
- Positive Ober test.

Iliotibial (IT) band syndrome and associated trochanteric bursitis result when the bursa and IT band become inflamed

because of repetitive friction from the underlying greater trochanter and lateral femoral condyle. This condition can cause pain when the hip or knee is flexed as a result of reduced flexibility of the iliotibial band and gluteus medius tendons. The bursa is a structure that normally allows for improved motion by reducing friction but becomes pathologic in this condition. Movement is painful and may be limited. Pain is reproduced when the hip or knee is actively flexed from a fully extended position. Patients may also have a positive Ober test. The Ober test is used to measure flexibility of the IT band. The patient lies on his or her side with the affected leg on top. The examiner stabilizes the pelvis with one hand while the other hand moves the tested leg into knee flexion, hip abduction and extension and then lowers the leg into adduction until it stops via soft tissue stretch, posterior rotation of the pelvis, or both. The test is positive if the tested leg fails to adduct parrell to the table in a neutral position.

Initial treatment is to alter the offending activity and then start a stretching program geared at the iliotibial band and hip abductors. Core and pelvic stabilization are also important. Ultrasound can be beneficial and corticosteroid injections may be used after conservative treatment has failed.

10. Femoral Neck Fractures

Femoral neck fractures (stress fractures) are generally the result of repetitive microtrauma. They commonly occur in running athletes who have rapidly increased their mileage. Athletes with this type of injury present with persistent pain in the groin and pain with internal and external rotation. Symptoms often are present with sports, but as the fracture progresses, symptoms often develop during activities of daily living. Athletes with a history of previous stress fracture, disordered eating, or any disorder of calcium metabolism and groin pain should alert the provider to the possibility of this diagnosis. Special attention to the risk of stress fracture should be given to the female athlete with the triad of energy imbalance and possible disordered eating, amenorrhea or oligomenorrhea, and low bone density.

On physical examination, range of motion may be limited in hip flexion and internal rotation. A limp may be present. Pain with hopping on the affected leg is universally present. If plain radiographs are negative, an MRI or a bone scan is indicated.

Treatment is based on the type of fracture. A tension-sided fracture (on the superior aspect of the femoral neck) generally requires internal fixation to prevent femoral displacement and reduce the risk of avascular necrosis. A compression fracture (on the inferior aspect of the femoral neck) is less likely to be displaced; treatment is conservative and involves resting the hip until it heals. Cardiovascular conditioning can be maintained easily through nonimpact exercises and activity.

Jacoby L, Yi-Meng Y, Kocher MS: Hip problems and arthroscopy: adolescent hip as it relates to sports. Clin Sports Med 2011;30;435–451 [PMID: 21419965].

Kovacevic D, Mariscalco M, Goodwin RC: Injuries about the hip in the adolescent athlete. Sports Med Arthrosc Rev 2011;19: 64–74 [PMID: 21293240].

KNEE INJURIES

Knee injuries are some of the most common sports-related problems. The knee is stabilized through a variety of ligaments, tendons, and the menisci. Knee injuries can be divided into two groups: those resulting from acute or chronic causes. Acute injuries occur during a well-defined traumatic incident. The mechanism of injury is an important historical feature, although many young patients have difficulty describing the details of the inciting event. The onset of rapid swelling after a traumatic event indicates the presence of a hemarthrosis and likely internal derangements such as fracture, rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament (ACL), meniscal tear, or patellar dislocation.

1. Anterior Knee Pain

The most common knee complaint is anterior knee pain. This complaint can have multiple etiologies but should always include hip pathology as a possible source. Patellofemoral dysfunction (defined as follows) is a common cause of anterior knee pain. The differential diagnosis of anterior knee pain is extensive and requires a thorough examination. The following are the most common knee diagnoses responsible for anterior knee pain.

A. Patellofemoral Overuse Syndrome

Patellofemoral overuse syndrome occurs during running and sports that involve repetitive stress in the lower extremity. The athlete presents with activity-related pain in the anterior knee. In young athletes, it is occasionally associated with swelling and crepitus of the knee joint.

Evaluation of these injuries is comprehensive and requires a “top-down” evaluation of the athlete’s leg from the hip to the foot. Most athletes with this condition, regardless of level or physical condition, typically have hip/core weakness that results in altered knee biomechanics. A comprehensive evaluation of hip alignment and rotation, muscle development, tightness in the hamstrings and iliotibial band, and foot mechanics is necessary to fully understand and treat the cause of this disorder. Most athletes with this complaint often have a multifactorial cause for their symptoms.

Treatment should be geared toward identifying the cause. Often, athletes are overtraining and need to modify current activities. Cross-training may help. Addressing hip and pelvic stability is now a mainstay of treatment for this disorder.

Stretching and strengthening of the hamstrings and quadriceps are recommended. The use of braces providing proprioceptive feedback during competition is controversial.

B. Patellar Tendonitis ("Jumper's Knee")

This overuse injury is caused by repetitive loading of the quadriceps during running or jumping. This diagnosis is common in jumping sports such as basketball and volleyball. Tenderness is located directly over the patellar tendon at its insertion site at the inferior pole of the patella. Physical therapy, icing, and activity modification can help facilitate healing.

C. Osgood-Schlatter Disease (Tibial Tubercle Apophysitis)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Insidious onset of activity-related anterior knee pain in adolescents.
- Swelling and pain over tibial tubercle.
- Progressive fragmentation of tibial tubercle apophysis.

This condition is caused by the recurrent traction on the tibial tubercle apophysis (growth plate) that occurs in jumping and running sports. Fragmentation and microfractures of the tibial tubercle occur during its time of rapid growth. The condition occurs in the pre-teen and adolescent years and is most common in boys aged 12–15 years and girls aged 11–13 years. Pain is localized to the tibial tubercle and is aggravated by activities using eccentric quadriceps muscle movement. The pain can become so severe that routine activity must be curtailed. Radiographs typically demonstrate fragmentation or irregular ossification of the tibial tubercle.

Typically, the condition resolves spontaneously as the athlete reaches skeletal maturity. In the interim, pain control using NSAIDs is indicated. Physical therapy and stretching the hamstrings and application of ice after workouts are helpful.

D. Sinding-Larsen-Johansson Disease (Apophysitis of the Inferior Pole of the Patella)

This condition involves a process similar to that in Osgood-Schlatter disease but occurs in younger athletes between ages 9 and 12 years. Traction from the patellar tendon on the inferior pole of the patella results in fragmentation of the inferior patella that is often obvious on a lateral knee radiograph. Treatment and prognosis is similar to Osgood-Schlatter disease.

» Treatment

The treatment of the above knee disorders is similar. As with many injuries, control of pain and inflammation is essential. This begins with relative rest from offending activity and application of ice. Alignment problems and mechanics across the anterior knee can be improved with an effective rehabilitation program that includes flexibility and strengthening. Quadriceps, pelvic, and core strengthening are all important components of this program. Orthotics, in theory, can have an impact on mechanics across the knee joint if they correct excessive pronation or supination. Knee bracing is controversial and the major benefits are proprioceptive feedback and patellar tracking. Return to activity is often based on symptoms.

2. Posterior Knee Pain

Posterior knee pain often results from an injury to the gastrocnemius-soleus complex caused by overuse. Other causes include a Baker cyst (benign synovial fluid filled cyst in the posterior aspect of the knee), tibial stress fracture, or tendonitis of the hamstring. Treatment is rest, ice, and strengthening exercises after symptoms have improved. Intra-articular injuries such as meniscal tears and cartilage injuries can also cause posterior knee pain and should be considered if symptoms do not improve.

3. Meniscal Injuries

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Medial or lateral knee pain.
- Effusion and joint line tenderness.
- Feeling of locking or of the knee giving way.
- Positive McMurray and Thessaly tests.

The meniscus of the knee cushions forces in the knee joint, increases nutrient supply to the cartilage, and stabilizes the knee. Most injuries are related to directional changes on a weight-bearing extremity. **Medial meniscus injuries** have a history of tibial rotation in a weight-bearing position. This injury happens frequently in ball-handling sports. **Lateral meniscus injuries** occur with tibial rotation with a flexed knee, as in exercises such as squatting or certain wrestling maneuvers. These injuries are uncommon in children younger than 10 years.

» Clinical Findings

The athlete with such an injury has a history of knee pain, swelling, snapping, or locking and may report a feeling of the knee giving way. Physical examination often reveals effusion, joint line tenderness, and a positive McMurray hyperflexion-rotation test or positive Thessaly test. The McMurray test is performed by having the examiner place his/her fingers across the joint lines while flexing the knee maximally. The knee is then rotated while it is brought out into extension. A positive test is evoked when the patient reports pain and the examiner feels an associated click or catch along the joint line. The Thessaly test is performed by having the patient stand on the injured leg. The examiner supports the patient by holding his or her outstretched arms. The patient is instructed to flex the knee to 5 degrees and then rotate his or her body and knee internally and externally three times. This is repeated with the knee at 20 degrees of flexion. A test is positive if the patient has joint line pain or a sense of locking or catching in the knee. The diagnostic test of choice is MRI of the knee, although standard knee radiographs should be included. It is important to note that the increased vascularity of the meniscus in the pediatric population often causes increased signal changes on MRI that can be confused with a tear. Therefore, an MRI diagnosis of a meniscal tear in a young athlete needs to be correlated with the patient's clinical symptoms and examination.

» Treatment

Treatment of these injuries is typically surgical because of the limited ability of the meniscus to heal without surgical intervention. Nonoperative management can be considered if the tear is minor and symptoms are minimal. Surgery can entail repairing the tear or removing the torn portion of the meniscus. Typically, every attempt is made to preserve the meniscal tissue in young athletes because of their favorable healing rates and the long-term concern over the development of arthritis in meniscal deficient patients. Meniscectomy (removal of torn tissue) patients can often return to sports 3–6 weeks after surgery. Meniscal repair patients require a period of 6 weeks of crutch protection followed by physical therapy. Return to sport after a repair is typically 3–4 months.

4. Medial & Lateral Collateral Ligament Injuries

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Pain on the medial or lateral portion of the knee.
- » Tenderness along the ligament.
- » Positive valgus or varus stress test at 0 and 30 degrees.

The medial and lateral collateral ligaments are positioned along either side of the knee and act to stabilize the knee during varus and valgus stress. Medial injuries occur either with a blow to the lateral aspect of the knee, as seen in a football tackle, or with a noncontact rotational stress.

» Clinical Findings

The athlete may feel a pop or pain sensation along the medial or lateral aspect of the knee. The examination reveals a mild effusion and tenderness medially along the course of the ligament. A valgus stress test performed in 20–30 degrees of flexion reproduces pain and possibly instability in medial collateral ligament injuries. A varus stress test performed in 20–30 degrees of flexion reproduces pain and possible instability in lateral collatoral ligament injuries.

Medial collateral ligament (MCL) and lateral collateral ligament (LCL) injuries are graded on a scale of 1–3. Grade 1 injury represents a stretching injury. Grade 2 injury involves partial disruption of the ligament. Grade 3 injury is a complete disruption of the ligament. Radiographs are useful, especially in the skeletally immature athlete, to look for distal femoral or proximal tibial bone injury. MRI scans are used if grade 3 injury or concomitant intra-articular derangement is suspected.

» Treatment

Treatment is almost always conservative. Initial injuries should be iced and elevated. A protective brace is worn and full knee motion in the brace can be permitted within a few days. Weight bearing is allowed and a strengthening program can be started. The athlete should use the brace until pain and range of motion have improved. The use of a functional brace is often required when a player returns to competition. Bracing is temporary until the ligament heals completely and the athlete has no subjective feelings of instability. Return to sports is variable and is dependent on the severity of the tear and other associated injuries. Most isolated, low-grade MCL injuries can return to play in 3–5 weeks.

5. Anterior Cruciate Ligament Injuries

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Pain and effusion of the knee.
- » Pain along the lateral joint line.
- » Positive Lachman test.

The anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) consists of two bundles that prevent anterior subluxation and rotation of the tibia. Most ACL injuries are noncontact and occur with

deceleration, twisting, and cutting motions. ACL injuries can also occur with knee hyperextension or from a direct blow to the knee—typically on the lateral side—which causes an extreme valgus stress with both ACL and MCL disruption.

» Clinical Findings

The athlete often reports hearing or feeling a "pop" followed by swelling that occurs within hours of the injury. Evaluation of the knee begins with examination of the uninjured knee. The Lachman test provides the most accurate information about knee stability in relation to the ACL. The Lachman test is performed by holding the knee in 30 degrees of flexion while supporting the tibia and femur. The proximal tibia is pulled anteriorly, and the degree of excursion and the firmness of the endpoint are assessed and compared to the contralateral side. All other structures of the knee should be examined to rule out concomitant injuries. Imaging of the knee includes plain radiographs and an MRI scan. In skeletally immature athletes, a tibial spine avulsion is frequently seen on radiographs rather than a midsubstance ACL tear.

» Treatment

Initial treatment focuses on controlling swelling and pain. Structured physical therapy can be instituted early to assist in regaining range of motion and strength. Conservative treatment includes bracing, strengthening, and restricting physical activity. Knee braces enhance proprioception and control terminal extension. Conservative management can be complicated by continued instability and damage to meniscal and articular cartilage.

Surgical reconstruction is typically indicated for young athletes in cutting sports and is also required for persistent instability. Surgery can be performed 2–6 weeks following the injury if the swelling and motion of the knee have improved. Recent advances in surgical treatment of the skeletally immature athlete have been helpful in dealing with the complicated management of young athletes with ACL tears. Rehabilitation of the knee starts immediately after surgery. A structured ACL physical therapy protocol is initiated with the goals of building strength, muscle reeducation, endurance, agility, and coordination. Return to cutting and pivoting sports can be achieved by 6 to 9 months after surgery if certain criteria are met.

6. Posterior Cruciate Ligament Injuries

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pain and swelling of the knee.
- Increased pain with knee flexion.
- Positive posterior Drawer test.

The posterior cruciate ligament (PCL) runs from the medial femoral condyle to the posterior tibial plateau and has two bundles. Its main function is to prevent posterior tibial subluxation. Injury to the PCL is uncommon; it occurs when the individual falls on a flexed knee with the ankle in plantarflexion or with forced hyperflexion of the knee. The most common sports in which PCL injuries are sustained are football and hockey.

» Clinical Findings

The athlete presents with swelling and pain in the posterior and lateral knee. The examination begins with the uninjured knee and proceeds to the injured side. Confirmatory testing includes the posterior drawer test, performed with the patient supine, the knee flexed to 90 degrees, and the foot stabilized. Grading is based on the amount of translation. Grade 1 (mild) is up to 5 mm, grade 2 (moderate) is 5–10 mm, and grade 3 (severe) is more than 10 mm. Grade 3 injuries are typically indicative that another ligament is injured in addition to the PCL and should alert the provider to an associated injury. Diagnostic imaging includes plain radiographs and MRI scan.

» Treatment

Isolated PCL injuries are almost universally treated nonoperatively. The exception is bony avulsions of the PCL off the femur or tibia. Generally, surgical fixation is recommended for these injuries. Ligamentous PCL injuries in isolation are remarkably well tolerated in athletes and can be treated with bracing and a progressive rehabilitation program. PCL injuries with injury to other structures are complex and often require surgical stabilization. Surgical stabilization of these injuries is complicated, and return to sports at the previous level is uncertain after combined injuries that involve the PCL.

Schub D, Saluan P: Anterior cruciate ligament injuries in the young athlete: evaluation and treatment. Sports Med Arthrosc Rev 2011;19:34–43 [PMID: 21293236].

FOOT & ANKLE INJURIES

Injuries in the lower leg, ankle, and foot are common in pediatric athletes. The types of injuries sustained typically depend on the age group. Young children tend to have diaphyseal injuries, in contrast to older children in rapid growth, who tend to have epiphyseal and apophyseal injuries. Skeletally mature adolescents are prone to adult-pattern ligamentous injury. Although fractures of the ankle are possible with inversion and eversion mechanisms, the most

common acute injury involving the ankle is the lateral ankle sprain.

1. Ankle Sprain

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Mechanism is usually inversion and plantarflexion.
- Swelling and pain in the ankle over the ligament.
- Bruising over the ankle.

When a ligament is overloaded, tearing occurs. These injuries are graded on a scale of 1–3. Grade 1 injury is a stretch without instability; grade 2 is a partial tear with some instability; and grade 3 is a total disruption of the ligament with instability of the joint. The ankle has three lateral ligaments (anterior talofibular, calcaneofibular, and posterior talofibular) and a medial deltoid ligament. Inversion of the foot generally damages the anterior talofibular ligament, whereas eversion injures the deltoid ligament. Lateral ankle sprains are far more common than medial ankle sprains because the deltoid ligament is stronger mechanically than the lateral ligaments. However, medial ankle sprains may have more severe complications, including syndesmotic tearing and instability of the ankle joint requiring surgical stabilization. High ankle sprains involve injury to the tibiofibular syndesmosis, a movable connection in which the adjacent tibia and fibula bones are bound together by ligamentous structures. The syndesmosis supports the integrity of the ankle mortise joint. The ankle mortise is defined as the bony arc formed by the tibial plafond, the medial and lateral malleoli, and the roof of the talus. The mortise provides the wide range of flexibility and motion of the ankle, but its injury causes instability and pain. Syndesmotic injuries do not typically require surgery but do involve longer healing times than low-grade medial or lateral ankle sprains.

» Clinical Findings

Physical examination often reveals swelling, bruising, and pain. Diagnostic testing should be done when a bony injury is suspected. Obtaining radiographs is especially important when evaluating skeletally immature athletes who are more prone to growth plate injury. Medial ankle swelling, tenderness, and bruising warrant ankle three-view radiographs (AP, lateral, mortise) to evaluate asymmetry and instability of the ankle mortise.

The adult Ottawa Ankle Rules are used to determine whether obtaining x-rays are necessary and appear to be reliable in patients older than 5 years. Tenderness over the malleoli, tenderness beyond ligament attachments, and excessive swelling are additional reasons to obtain radiographs in young athletes.

» Differential Diagnosis

Other injuries to consider include injuries to the fifth metatarsal, which can occur with an inversion mechanism. In this injury, the athlete presents with localized swelling and tenderness over the base of the fifth metatarsal. Fractures at the base of the fifth metatarsal can be divided into avulsion, Jones, and diaphyseal fractures. High-ankle sprains (a.k.a. syndesmotic injuries) occur most commonly with dorsiflexion and external rotation. Radiographs are required and the syndesmotic squeeze test and Kleiger test (external rotation of the foot in dorsiflexion) are positive. Fractures of the tibial epiphysis, malleoli, fibula, talar dome, or calcaneus may also mimic an ankle sprain.

» Treatment

Appropriate treatment of ligamentous ankle injuries is imperative to ensure full recovery and should begin immediately after the injury. Fractures and instability of the ankle mortise require immediate orthopedic surgical referral. Nonoperative management is typical of the vast majority of ankle sprains. Phase 1 care involves immediate compressive wrapping and icing to control swelling and inflammation. Protected weight bearing is encouraged as tolerated in the early phase of rehabilitation. Severe ankle sprains may benefit from a short period of treatment in a lower leg walking boot or cast. Phase 2 begins when the athlete can ambulate without pain. Supervised physical therapy prescription may be beneficial. During this time, ankle range of motion is emphasized, along with isometric contractions of the ankle dorsiflexors. Once 90% of strength has returned, active isotonic (eccentric and concentric exercises) and isokinetic exercises can be added. Phase 3 is designed to increase strength, improve proprioception, and add ballistic activity (more complex movement patterns), as well as sport-specific agility and function. The “foot alphabet”and “balance board” are excellent methods to improve ankle range of motion and proprioception. To restore range of motion, the patient is asked to actively move the ankle by drawing letters of the alphabet with the toes. To restore proprioception, the ability to maintain proper balance and control, balance exercises are performed on a balance board (or wobble board). This could also be done by having the patient stand on one leg while playing catch with a ball. This program can be effective in returning athletes to activity within a few weeks, although up to 6 weeks may be required for return to full activity. The athlete should wear a protective brace for 3–4 months, continue phase 3 home exercises, and ice after exercising.

2. Sever Disease

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Activity-related heel pain in preadolescents.
- Pain localized to the calcaneal apophysis and Achilles insertion.
- Positive calcaneal squeeze test.

Sever disease, or calcaneal apophysitis, occurs in athletes aged 8–12 years who are typically involved in high-impact activities, such as gymnastics and soccer. Causes include overuse, improper footwear, and tightness in the calf musculature and Achilles tendon. Pain occurs about the heel and at the point of muscle tendon insertion onto the growth center of the calcaneus. The athlete presents with activity-related heel pain and examination reveals focal tenderness over the calcaneal apophysis. Tenderness created by pressing forcefully on the lateral and medial heel constitutes a positive "calcaneal squeeze test."

Treatment is symptomatic and consists of reassurance and education, relative rest, heel cord stretching, eccentric calf strengthening, ice massage, heel cups, NSAIDs for pain control, and progression to activity as tolerated based on pain level. Activity restriction is not required. Heel cups are rubber or gel infused shoe inserts that provide heel lift and cushion to decrease both tension and impact on the calcaneal apophysis. Refractory cases may benefit from brief immobilization and partial or non–weight bearing in a walking boot or cast followed by supervised physical therapy.

3. Plantar Fasciitis

Plantar fasciitis is a common problem that manifests as heel pain in the adolescent or older athlete. It typically occurs in runners who log more than 30 miles per week and in athletes who have tight Achilles tendons or wear poorly fitting shoes. It is also common in people with cavus feet and in those who are overweight. The pain is worse upon first standing up in the morning and taking a few steps. Differential diagnosis includes navicular or calcaneal stress fracture. A bone spur is often found on examination. Treatment involves local massage, stretching of the gastrocnemius-soleus-Achilles complex, NSAIDs, arch supports, and local steroid injections. Runners may need to cut back on their weekly mileage until these measures eliminate pain.

Bahr R: Prevention of ankle sprains in adolescent athletes. Clin J Sports Med 2007;17:4 [PMID: 17620800].

Dowling S, et al: Accuracy of Ottawa Ankle Rules to exclude fractures of the ankle and midfoot in children: a meta-analysis. Acad Emerg Med 2009;16(4):277–287 [PMID: 19187397].

Pontell D, Hallivis R, Dollard MD: Sports injuries in the pediatric and adolescent foot and ankle: common overuse and acute presentations. Clin Podiatr Med Surg 2006;23:209–231 [PMID: 16598916].

Seah R, Mani-Babu S: Managing ankle sprains in primary care: what is best practice? A systematic review of the last 10 years of evidence. Br Med Bull 2011;97:105–135 [PMID: 20710025].

PREVENTION

As in all activities, many sports-related injuries can be prevented by education, reducing dangerous behaviors, use of protective equipment, and proper training. Early recognition of injuries, proper treatment, and appropriate rehabilitation are also crucial to ensure safe sports participation. Protective equipment should be properly fitted and maintained by an individual with training and instruction. Helmets should be used in football, baseball, hockey, bicycling, skiing, in-line skating, skateboarding, or any sport with risk of head injury. Eye protection should be used in sports that have a high incidence of eye injuries. Proper protective padding should be identified and used, including chest pads for catchers; shin guards in soccer; shoulder, arm, chest, and leg padding in hockey; and wrist and elbow protectors in skating. Other primary prevention strategies should also be addressed by coaches, parents, and physicians in order to ensure the safety of children participating in sports. These include inspecting playing fields for potential hazards, adapting rules to the developmental level of the participants, and matching opponents equally in skill level and size.

The use of the preparticipation history and physical examination can identify potential problems and allow for prevention and early intervention. Proper training techniques reduce injuries by encouraging flexibility, promoting endurance, and teaching correct biomechanics. Sports education reinforces the concepts of fitness and a healthy lifestyle along with sport-specific training. Early identification of an injury allows the athlete to modify techniques and avoid micro- and macrotrauma. Once an injury has occurred, it needs to be identified properly and appropriate measures used to minimize morbidity. Rehabilitation of the injury starts as soon as it has been identified. Early and appropriate care offers the athlete an optimal chance for full recovery and return to full participation.

Emery CA: Injury prevention and future research. Med Sport Sci 2005;49:170–191 [PMID: 16247266].

28 Rehabilitation Medicine

Pamela E. Wilson, MD
Gerald H. Clayton, PhD

Rehabilitation medicine is the multispecialty discipline involved in diagnosis and therapy of individuals with congenital and acquired disabilities. The goals of rehabilitation medicine are to maximize functional capabilities and improve quality of life. Disabilities are described using the World Health Organization's International Classification of Function, Health, and Disability. Three aspects are evaluated in every patient: (1) the impact of the disability on body structure and function, (2) the impact of the disability on activity and participation in society, and (3) the environmental factors with an impact on the individual's function. These three areas are the common framework for discussion of a disabling condition and its therapy.

PEDIATRIC BRAIN INJURY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Severe head injury: Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) of < 9
- Moderate head injury: GCS of 9–13
- Mild head injury: GCS of 13–15

Various estimates indicate that there are up to 500,000 pediatric traumatic brain injuries in the United States every year, resulting in 37,000–50,000 hospitalizations. Mortality rates vary significantly by region (relative risk 1.19–4.2 nationally), but, overall, pediatric brain injuries result in 2000–3000 deaths annually. The cost of these injuries is significant, particularly when also considering that survivors of pediatric brain injury may have long-term deficits with lifetime needs.

» Pathogenesis

Brain injury is classically divided into two categories based upon the timing of the pathologic findings: primary and secondary injury.

Primary injury occurs at the time of trauma, causing focal and diffuse damage. Focal damage includes skull fracture, parenchymal bruising or contusion, extraparenchymal or intraparenchymal hemorrhage, blood clots, tearing of blood vessels, or penetrating injury. Diffuse damage includes diffuse axonal injury and edema. Consequences of primary injury, either focal or diffuse, include cellular disruption with release of excitatory amino acids, opiate peptides, and inflammatory cytokines.

Secondary injury is the loss of cellular function accompanying primary injury that results in loss of cerebrovascular regulation, altered cellular homeostasis, or cell death and functional dysregulation. A primary injury can initiate the processes of secondary programmed cell death (apoptosis), which further exacerbates the primary injury. Secondary injury may develop hours or days after the initial insult. It appears to be precipitated by elevated intracranial pressure, cerebral edema, and release of neurochemical mediators. Current treatment paradigms are focused on treating and preventing secondary injury.

» Clinical Findings

Classification & Assessment of Injury Severity

Traumatic brain injury is usually categorized as open or closed. Open injuries are the result of penetration of the skull by missile or sharp object or deformation of the skull with exposure of the underlying intracranial tissues. Closed injuries are the result of blunt trauma to the head, which causes movement (intracranial acceleration or deceleration and rotational forces) and compression of brain tissue. Brain contusions are referred to as coup (occurring at the site of injury) or contra-coup (occurring on the side of the brain opposite the injury). Rating the severity of injury and eventual outcomes is important in medical management. Included below are the two most commonly used scales

relevant to clinical care of these injuries in rehabilitation medicine.

A. Glasgow Coma Scale

The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) is the most commonly used system to assess the depth and duration of impaired consciousness in the acute setting. The score is derived from three areas of evaluation: motor responsiveness (maximum score 6), verbal performance (maximum score 5), and eye opening to stimuli (maximum score 6). The scale has been modified for use in infants and children younger than 5 years, allowing for their lack of verbal responsiveness and understanding. Cumulative scores define injury as mild (13–15), moderate (9–12), and severe (≤ 8). The concept of posttraumatic amnesia is used to gauge severity of injury and is an adjunct to the GCS. Posttraumatic amnesia is the period of time after an injury during which new memory cannot be incorporated and the person appears confused or disoriented. Amnesia can be retrograde, anterograde, or both.

B. Rancho Los Amigos Levels of Cognitive Function

The Rancho Los Amigos Levels of Cognitive Function (LCFS or "Rancho") is used to gauge the overall severity of cognitive deficit and can be used serially during recovery as a rough gauge of improvement. The scale has 10 levels of functioning ranging from "no response" to "purposeful, appropriate."

Common Sequelae of Brain Injury

Depending on the severity of brain injury, there may be deficits in cognition and behavior, as well as physical impairments. Injuries can also produce changes in sensory and motor function, emotional stability, social behavior, speed of mental processing, memory, speech, and language. The consequences of mild brain injuries may be difficult to discern. Small intraparenchymal injuries, easily identified by computed tomographic (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans, may not cause obvious signs or symptoms. The following are common problems associated with brain injury.

A. Seizures

Seizures occurring in the first 24 hours after injury are referred to as immediate seizures. Those occurring during the first week are early seizures, and those starting more than 1 week after injury are referred to as late seizures. Seizure prophylaxis with medications is recommended in the first week after brain injury in children at high risk for seizures and in very young children. Seizure prophylaxis is also recommended for 1 week after any penetrating brain trauma. Seizure prophylaxis is probably not effective for prevention of late-onset seizures; these may require long-term treatment.

B. Neuromotor Deficits/Movement Disorders

Neuromotor deficits after brain injury include movement disorders, spasticity, paralysis, and weakness. The type of disorder will be influenced by the areas damaged. The most common movement disorders are tremors and dystonias. These deficits can result in impaired ambulation, coordination, impaired ability to use upper extremities, and speech problems. Physical therapy is the primary means of treating these problems.

C. Communication Disorders

Language and communication disorders are fairly common. Aphasia, difficulty in understanding and producing written and spoken language, is categorized as fluent, nonfluent, or global. Individuals with fluent aphasia or Wernicke-type disorder can produce speech, but have little content associated. The nonfluent aphasias or Broca's type have a paucity of speech and may have word finding difficulties. Global aphasias have extensive injuries and the most severe language disorders.

D. Paroxysmal Sympathetic Hyperactivity

Severe brain injuries may be associated with excessive sympathetic outflow and results in a constellation of symptoms known as paroxysmal sympathetic hyperactivity (PSH). Symptoms of PSH are tachycardia, tachypnea, sweating, hyperthermia, hypertension, agitation, and posturing. Common medications used to treat PSH include dopamine agonists (eg, bromocriptine), β-blockers (eg, propranolol), and α-agonists (eg, clonidine).

E. Cognitive and Behavioral Deficits

After brain injury, cognitive and behavioral deficits are a frequent occurrence. Cognitive disorders depend on the location and severity of the injury. Damage to the frontal lobes can disrupt executive function along with initiation delays. Neuropsychiatric sequelae are common, and depression, anxiety disorders, and posttraumatic stress disorders (PTSD) are present in one-third of those injured. Testing by a neuropsychologist may help to identify problem areas allowing for development of accommodations in school and use of behavioral strategies.

F. Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis Dysfunction

Dysfunction of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis is common after head injury. The syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) and diabetes

insipidus (DI) from a posterior pituitary injury can result in significant electrolyte and osmolality imbalance. Amenorrhea that typically resolves spontaneously is common in females. Injury near the onset of puberty can complicate normal development, and endocrine status should be monitored closely.

G. Cranial Nerve Injuries

The sensory and motor components of the cranial nerves are often damaged, resulting in a wide variety of deficits not centrally mediated. The most commonly injured nerves are I, IV, VII, and VIII. Hyposmia or anosmia (cranial nerve I) can occur if the shearing forces at the cribriform plate disrupt the afferent olfactory nerves. Injury to cranial nerves IV (trochlear) is common as it has the longest intracranial length. Superior oblique injuries typically cause a head tilt and vertical diplopia. Facial nerve injuries (cranial nerve VII) are common especially with temporal bone fractures. This impacts the ability to use the facial muscles, causes dryness in the eye and salivary glands along with decreasing taste in the anterior part of the tongue. The cochlear nerve (VIII) is also frequently damaged in temporal bone fractures and can result in vertigo and dizziness.

Developmental Considerations

Much of what we know of traumatic brain injury is based on adult experience. The confounding effects of age and the etiologies unique to the pediatric population (eg, child abuse) make care of the pediatric head-injured patient very complex.

The assumption that younger children will fare better than older children or adults after a brain injury is a myth. The fact that in a child a significant amount of development and synaptic reorganization has yet to occur does not guarantee an improved chance for functional recovery. Indeed, disruption of developmental processes, especially in very young infants or neonates, may be catastrophic. These processes often cannot be recapitulated.

The mechanism of injury plays an important role in determining the severity of brain injury in very young children. Mechanisms associated with non-accidental injury such as shaking often result in global diffuse damage. The weak neck musculature, large head-body mass ratio, immature blood-brain barrier, and high intracranial fluid–brain mass ratio all contribute to widespread damage.

During puberty, major hormonal changes have an impact on the outcome of brain injury. Behavioral problems may be pronounced in brain-injured adolescents. Precocious puberty and precocious development of sexual activity may occur in preadolescents and should be carefully monitored.

Careful consideration should be given to the developmental progress of the brain-injured child and adolescent. Delays can be anticipated after moderate and severe brain injuries related to abnormalities of cognition and behavior. Educational programs should include an individualized educational program (IEP) to support the child with significant remediation and assistance during their school years. Programs should also include a 504 plan (Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act and the Americans with Disabilities Act). The 504 plan identifies the accommodations necessary in regular school settings for students with lesser disabilities so that they may be educated in a setting with their peers.

» Treatment

The primary goal of rehabilitation after childhood brain injury is to maximize functional independence. Rehabilitative care can be divided into three phases: acute, sub-acute, and long term. The acute and sub-acute phases typically occur in the inpatient setting while the long-term phase is an outpatient endeavor.

A. Acute Care

Therapy in the acute phase consists mainly of medical, surgical, and pharmacologic measures to decrease brain edema, treat increased intracranial pressure, and normalize laboratory values. Nutrition is essential in the healing process and either parenteral nutrition or supplemental enteral feedings are employed. Current research suggests that transitioning to enteral nutrition (eg, nasogastric tube feeding) as soon as possible after brain injury is associated with improved outcomes. Placement of a gastrostomy tube for supplemental enteral feeding is often performed in patients with severe brain injuries when recovery will be protracted and swallowing function is inadequate for safe oral feeding.

B. Sub-Acute Care

Therapy in the sub-acute phase is characterized by early, intensive participation in rehabilitative therapies promoting functional recovery. Treatment should be planned after consultation with physical therapy, occupational therapy, speech-language specialists, and neuropsychologists. Nursing staff members are a primary interface with the patient and often serve as educators for family-directed care. Most children and adolescents with brain injuries can be discharged home to continue with treatment on an outpatient basis.

C. Long-Term Care

Long-term follow-up starts immediately after discharge. Annual multidisciplinary evaluation, including neuropsychological testing is important as the child approaches school age so strategies to deal with noted deficits can be implemented to improve outcomes within the educational environment.

Medication is often required for cognitive and behavioral issues. Attention deficit and fatigue may be

amenable to treatment with stimulants such as methylphenidate and modafinil. Dopaminergic agents such as amantadine, levodopa, and bromocriptine can be useful in improving cognition, processing speed, and agitation. Antidepressants such as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors can be helpful in treating depression and mood lability. Anticonvulsants can be useful as mood stabilizers and in treating agitation and aggression. Tegretol and valproic acid are typical agents for this purpose.

Attention and arousal can also be successfully addressed by utilizing behavioral techniques to reinforce desired behaviors and by identifying environmental situations to facilitate success. Gains made in the behavioral realm often have a positive impact on therapies designed to address physical issues.

» Prognosis & Outcomes

Directly after brain injury, poor pupillary reactivity, low blood pH, absence of deep tendon reflexes, and low GCS all correlate with poor outcome. Coalescing lesions noted on imaging and increased depth and duration of coma suggest more severe injury and poor functional recovery. Children younger than 1 year tend to have worse outcomes.

Functional outcome assessment is important for judging the efficacy of rehabilitation therapy. Global multidomain measures (eg, FIM/WeeFIM) are used to provide a functional "snapshot in time" of select functions—motor function and mobility, self-care, cognition, socialization, and communication. Simpler, single-domain, functional assessment tools such as the Glasgow Outcome Scale (GOS) and its pediatric cousin the Kings Outcome Scale for Childhood Head Injury (KOSCHI) may also be of use.

Outcome associated with mild brain injury is often quite favorable. Most patients recover normal function within a short time. A small percentage develop persistent problems such as chronic headache, poor focusing ability, altered memory, and vestibular abnormalities which may last for many weeks or months. Differentiating between musculoskeletal and central nervous system (CNS) etiologies of persistent symptoms such as headache is important and can influence prognosis and care planning.

In children, recovery may not be fully achieved for many months or years after the initial injury. The impact of the injury on developmental processes and its future consequences are difficult to predict. Long-term follow-up is required, particularly as the child approaches school age.

Baquley IJ et al: Paroxysmal sympathetic hyperactivity after acquired brain injury: consensus on conceptual definition, nomenclature and diagnostic criteria. J Neurotrauma 2014;31(17):1515 [PMID: 24731076].

Pasquina P et al: Moderate-to-severe traumatic brain injury. Semin Neurol 2014; 34(5):572 [PMID: 25520028].

Torbic H et al: Use of antiepileptics for seizure prophylaxis after traumatic brain injury. Am J Health Syst Pharm 2013;70(9):759 [PMID: 23592358].

Walker PA et al: Modern approaches to pediatric brain injury therapy. J Trauma 2009 Aug;67(2 Suppl):S120–S127 [PMID: 19667844].

SPINAL CORD INJURY

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

» Spinal cord injury (SCI) is an alteration in normal motor, sensory, or autonomic function secondary to spinal insult.

» Characterized as either complete (total loss of function) or incomplete (some preservation of function below the level of lesion).

Epidemiologic studies of spinal cord injuries (SCI) suggest that there will be about 10,000 new injuries per year and that 20% will be in those younger than age 20 years. Motor vehicle accidents are the leading cause of SCI in all ages. Falls are common causes in young children. The phenomenon of SCI without obvious radiologic abnormality (SCIWORA) can be present in 20%–40% of young children. Children from birth to 2 years tend to have high-level injuries to the cervical spine because of anatomical features of their spine. The facets tend to be shallower and oriented horizontally, and the boney spine is more flexible than the spinal cord. In addition, the head is disproportionately large and the neck muscles are weak.

» Clinical Findings

A. Classification and Assessment of Injury Severity

SCI is classified using the International Standards for Neurological Classification of Spinal Cord Injury (ISNCSCI), formerly known as the American Spinal Injury Association (ASIA) classification system.

This classification evaluates motor and sensory function, defines the neurologic level of the injury, and assesses the completeness (level of motor or sensory sparing) of the deficit. The 72-hour examination is used in predicting recovery. A complete lesion identified on examination at 72 hours predicts a poor recovery potential. The ISNCSCI classification is as follows:

1. Class A is a complete SCI, with no motor or sensory function in the lowest sacral segments.
2. Class B is an incomplete injury, with preserved sensory function but no motor function in the sacral segments.

3. Class C is an incomplete lesion in which the strength of more than 50% of key muscles below the injury level is graded less than 3/5 on manual muscle testing.
4. Class D is an incomplete lesion in which the strength of more than 50% of key muscles below the injury level is graded greater than 3/5 on manual muscle testing.
5. Class E is an injury in which full motor and sensory function is preserved.

B. Clinical Patterns of Spinal Cord Injury

1. Brown-Séquard injury—The cord is hemisected causing motor paralysis, loss of proprioception and vibration on the ipsilateral side, and loss of pain and temperature on the contralateral side.

2. Central cord syndrome—Injury is to the central part of the cord and results in greater weakness in the arms than the legs.

3. Anterior cord syndrome—Disruption of the anterior spinal artery causes motor deficits and loss of pain and temperature sensation. Proprioception and fine touch is spared.

4. Conus medullaris syndrome—Injury or tumor of the conus, the lower conical shaped end of the spinal cord, can cause minimal motor impairment but significant sensory, bowel, and bladder abnormalities.

5. Cauda equina syndrome—Injury to the nerve roots produces flaccid bilateral weakness in the legs, sensory abnormalities in the perineum, and lower motor neuron bowel and bladder dysfunction.

C. Imaging

The diagnosis and anatomic description of SCI is made mainly through imaging techniques. Initial studies should include radiographs of the entire spine (including cervical spine) and special studies for boney structures. MRI imaging is required to evaluate soft tissues. CT scans, including three-dimensional reconstructions, may be used to further define the injured elements.

» Treatment

A. Initial Management

The two primary precepts of SCI treatment are early identification and immediate stabilization of the spine. The approach used to stabilize the spine is determined by the type of injury, location of injury, and underlying condition of the spinal cord. Stabilizing the spine may prevent further damage to the spinal cord. External traction devices such as halo traction and orthotics are often used. Some injuries require internal stabilization. The benefit of methylprednisolone administration in acute SCI has recently come into question. Based on the ongoing controversy regarding efficacy and outcomes, steroids remain an option, but their administration is not considered standard of care.

B. Functional Expectations After Spinal Cord Injury

The lesions associated with SCI have a predictable impact on motor and sensory function. It is helpful to understand these concepts when discussing functional expectations with patients and parents (Table 28–1).

Table 28–1. Functional expectations related to spinal cord injury.

Level of Injury and Key Muscle Function	Functional Skills
C1–C4 (no upper extremity function)	Dependent for all skills, can use voice-activated computer, mouth stick; can drive power wheelchair with technology devices such as sip and puff, chin drive, or head array
C5 (biceps function)	Can assist with ADLs, power wheelchair with joy stick, push manual wheelchair short distances, use modified push rims
C6 (wrist extension)	More ADL skills; can push manual wheelchair indoors, perform level transfers; hand function augmented with adapted equipment
C7 (elbow extension)	ADLs independent; hand function augmented with adapted equipment; can push manual wheelchair indoor and outdoor
C8 (finger flexors)	ADLs independent; independent manual wheelchair skills; increased transfer skills
T1 (little finger abduction)	
T2–T12 (chest, abdominal and spinal extensors)[a]	ADLs independent; independent manual wheelchair skills; improved transfer; standing with braces
L1 and L2 (hip flexors)	Standing and walking with long leg braces, KAFO, and RGO; swing-through gait; manual wheelchair main form of mobility
L3 (knee extension)	Home and limited community ambulation; long leg or short leg braces
L4 (ankle dorsiflexion)	Community ambulation with short leg braces, AFO
L5 (long toe extensors)	Community ambulation; may be slower than peers and have some endurance issues
S1 (ankle plantar flexors)	

ADLs, activities of daily living; AFO, ankle-foot orthosis; KAFO, knee-ankle-foot orthosis; RGO, reciprocal gait orthosis.

C. Special Clinical Problems Associated With Spinal Cord Injury

1. Autonomic hyperreflexia or dysreflexia—This condition occurs in spinal injuries above the T6 level. Noxious stimuli in the injured patient cause sympathetic vasoconstriction below the level of injury. Vasoconstriction produces hypertension and then a compensatory, vagal-mediated bradycardia. Symptoms include hypertension, bradycardia, headaches, and diaphoresis. This response may be severe enough to be life threatening. Treatment requires identification and relief of the underlying noxious stimulus. Bowel, bladder, and skin problems are the most common stimuli. The patient should be placed in an upright position and antihypertensive medication used if conservative measures fail.

2. Hypercalcemia—Hypercalcemia, in response to immobilization, often occurs in male adolescents within the first 2 months of becoming paraplegic or tetraplegic. Patients complain of abdominal pain and malaise. Behavioral problems may occur. Initial treatment is focused on hydration and forced diuresis using fluids and furosemide to increase urinary excretion of calcium. In severe cases, especially in older children, calcitonin and etidronate may be required.

3. Thermoregulation problems—These problems are common in higher level injuries and usually result in a poikilothermic state where body temperature changes with that of the environment. The ability to vasoconstrict and vasodilate below the injury level is impaired. The person with an SCI above T6 is particularly susceptible to environmental temperature and is at risk for hypothermia and hyperthermia.

4. Deep vein thrombosis—Thrombosis is a common complication of SCI, especially in postpubescent children. Deep vein thrombosis should be suspected in children with any unilateral extremity swelling, palpable cords in the calf muscles, fevers, erythema, or leg pain. Diagnosis is confirmed by Doppler ultrasound, and full evaluation may require spiral CT scan or ventilation-perfusion scan if pulmonary embolus is suspected. Preventative measures include elastic stockings and compression devices. Anticoagulation prophylaxis may be required using medications such as low-molecular-weight heparins (eg, enoxaparin).

5. Heterotopic ossification—This complication occurs in both spinal cord and traumatic brain injuries. Ectopic calcium deposits usually appear around joints in the first 6 months after injury. They may cause swelling, decreased range of motion, pain with motion, palpable firm masses, fever, elevated sedimentation rate, and abnormal triple phase bone scan. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs or bisphosphonates such as Etidronate should be started at the time of diagnosis. Surgical removal of ectopic deposits is controversial and usually performed only in cases of extreme loss of motion, pressure sores, or severe pain.

Grant RA et al: Management of acute traumatic spinal cord injury. Curr Treat Options Neurol. 2015;17(2):334 [PMID: 25630995].

Powell A, Davidson L: Pediatric spinal cord injury: a review by organ system. Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am 2015;26(1):109 [PMID: 25479784].

Rozelle CJ et al: Spina Cord injury without radiographic abnormality (SCIWORA). Neurosurgery 2013;71Suppl2:227 [PMID: 23417193].

BRACHIAL PLEXUS LESIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS

- Upper trunk (C5 and C6) is the most common area injured and results in the classic **Erb palsy.**
- Injury to the lower trunk (C7–T1) produces a **Klumpke palsy.**
- Pan plexus lesion involves all roots.

» Pathogenesis

Brachial plexus lesions associated with delivery are related to traction applied to the nerves and is often associated with shoulder dystocia. The nerve injury can range from simple neuropraxia (stretch) to complete avulsion. Acquired brachial plexus injuries from sports, surgery, and accidents also have a mechanism which stretches or injures the plexus.

» Prevention

Identification of factors associated with shoulder dystocia, such as macrosomia, or proper positioning during surgical procedures to decrease traction on the brachial plexus may reduce the incidence of these lesions.

» Clinical Findings

Erb palsy has been described as the "waiter's tip posture" and is characterized by shoulder weakness with internal rotation and adduction of the upper arm. The elbow is extended and the wrist flexed. There is good preservation of hand function. Klumpke palsy is characterized by good shoulder function but decreased or absent hand function. Brachial plexus injuries may also cause a Horner syndrome (unilateral miosis, ptosis, and facial anhydrosis) due to disruption of cervical sympathetic nerves. The physical examination should include inspection of the humerus and clavicle for fractures. There may be injuries of the phrenic and facial nerves. The diagnosis of a brachial plexus lesion should be based on the history and clinical examination. Diagnostic testing helps confirm, localize, and classify the lesion. Electromyography is helpful 3–4 weeks after the injury. This test

not only is used diagnostically but also can track recovery. MRI, myelography, and CT scan can help to locate the lesion and determine its extent.

» Complications

The development of complications reflects the degree of nerve recovery. Severe injuries are at risk for shoulder contractures, muscle atrophy, osseous deformities, functional deficits, pain, and maladapted postures.

» Treatment & Prognosis

The treatment for brachial plexus lesions will depend on the severity of the lesion. Many will heal on their own and no interventions are needed. For persistent injuries, physical/occupational therapy is the major treatment and includes stretching, bracing, strengthening, electrical stimulation, and functional training. Primary surgery to the nerves of the plexus is indicated for children who have no spontaneous recovery of biceps function by 6–9 months. Secondary procedures to maximize function include muscle transfers and orthopedic interventions.

Many factors are used to predict recovery. The anatomic location of the lesion impacts recovery, as upper trunk lesions do better than lower trunk lesions. If a Horner syndrome is present, these injuries always have a poor recovery. Children in whom antigravity function returns within 2 months of injury will usually have a good recovery of function. If antigravity function is delayed until 6 months, recovery will probably be limited. If antigravity function is absent at 6–9 months, there will be no recovery of function and surgery should be considered.

Chang KW et al: A systematic review of evaluation methods for neonatal brachial plexus palsy: a review. J Neurosurg Pediatr 2013;12(4):395 [PMID: 23930602].

Hale HB et al: Current concepts in the management of brachial plexus birth palsy. J Hand Surg Am 2010 Feb;35(2):322 [PMID: 20141905].

COMMON REHABILITATION PROBLEMS

1. Neurogenic Bladder

During the first year of life, the bladder is a reflex-driven system that empties spontaneously. After the first year control begins to develop, and most children achieve continence by age 5 years. Children with damage to the central or peripheral nervous system may develop a neurogenic bladder. The diagnosis of neurogenic bladder requires a complete history and physical examination and is usually classified as noted below:

1. Uninhibited neurogenic bladder occurs after upper motor neuron injuries at the level of the brain or spinal cord that result in failure to inhibit detrusor contractions. This results in a hyperreflexive voiding pattern.
2. Reflex neurogenic bladder results from damage to the sensory and motor nerves above the S3 and S4 level. The bladder empties reflexively but coordination may not be present and dyssynergia (contraction of the bladder musculature against a closed sphincter) can occur. Increased intravesicular pressure and vesicourethral reflux may be consequences of dyssynergia.
3. Autonomous neurogenic bladder is a flaccid bladder and is associated with lower motor neuron damage. Bladder volumes are usually increased and overflow incontinence can occur.
4. Motor paralytic neurogenic bladder results from injury to the motor nerves of the S2–S4 roots. Sensation is intact but there is motor dysfunction. The child has the sensation to void but has difficulty with the voluntary contractions.
5. Sensory paralytic neurogenic bladder results when sensory roots are disrupted. Affected patients do not have sensation of the full bladder but are able to initiate voiding.

The type of neurologic damage should be identified as this will help to predict anticipated voiding issues. The upper tracts should be assessed using ultrasound, intravenous pyelogram, or renogram (isotope) studies. Lower tract testing includes urinalysis, postvoid residuals, urodynamics, cystography, and cystoscopy.

» Treatment

Treatment is geared to the type of bladder dysfunction. The simplest methods, such as timed voiding, can be effective for children with uninhibited bladders. In this technique, children are reminded verbally or use a cueing device (watch with a timer) to void every 2–3 hours before bladder capacity is reached. The Credé and Valsalva maneuvers are used in patients with an autonomous bladder to assist in draining a flaccid bladder. There is a risk of provoking vesicoureteral reflux by increasing intravesicular pressure during these maneuvers which should never be used in a patient with a reflex neurogenic bladder.

Medications are often employed to treat neurogenic bladder. Anticholinergics are commonly used to reduce detrusor contractions, decrease the sense of urgency, and increase bladder capacity. Medications include oxybutynin, tolterodine, and hyoscyamine. The side effects of these medications include sleepiness, nausea, and constipation. Absorbent pads and diapers, external catheters, indwelling catheters, and intermittent catheterization are also effective. A young child with a high-pressure bladder is at particular risk for reflux and may need medication, intermittent catheterization, or

vesicostomy to prevent hydrostatic renal damage and infection. An older child may require reconstructive bladder surgery (bladder augmentation) to increase the capacity of the bladder or an intestinal conduit from bladder to skin surface (Mitrofanoff procedure) to relieve bladder distention. If an incompetent urethral sphincter causes urinary leakage, injections, slings, or implants may be used to increase the urethral barrier. Recently, electrical stimulation of sacral roots has been used to initiate voiding. Biofeedback training is also used to improve voiding.

2. Neurogenic Bowel

Control of bowel function depends on an intact autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) and somatic nervous system. Goals of treatment for patients with neurogenic bowel are to establish a predictable and reliable bowel habit, and prevent incontinence and complications. There are two types of neurogenic bowel dysfunction: upper motor and lower motor dysfunction. The upper neuron bowel results from damage above the conus. Affected patients usually have reflex bowel contractions of high amplitude, absence of sensation, and no voluntary sphincter control. Patients with the lower motor neuron bowel have no voluntary sphincter control and no reflex contraction of the external anal sphincter (anocutaneous reflex). It has been described as a flaccid bowel. In general, establishing a bowel program is easier in patients with upper motor neuron lesions.

» Treatment

Fiber intake and fluids are critical elements for maintaining a soft stool consistency, although some patients try to keep themselves constipated to prevent accidents. A predictable and scheduled bowel program is essential. Bowel movements should be scheduled to occur with meals, as the gastrocolic reflex can trigger defecation.

Laxative and stool softening medications are usually included in a comprehensive bowel program. Stool softeners such as docusate retain stool water. Mineral oil is an acceptable stool softener in patients not at risk for pulmonary aspiration. Bulking agents such as Metamucil increase fiber and water content of stool and reduce transit time. Stimulants such as senna fruit extract or bisacodyl increase peristalsis. Osmotic agents such as polyethylene glycol keep stools soft by retaining stool water. Suppositories and enemas are often used when other methods have not been successful. Upper motor neuron bowel management programs may include digital rectal stimulation. When conservative methods are ineffective, options may include surgical implantation of sacral nerve stimulators or techniques to facilitate antegrade flushing of the colon. For example, the ACE (antegrade continence enema) or Malone procedure approximates the appendix to the surface of the abdomen providing a conduit for flushing. Also, a capped cecostomy tube can be placed into the cecum through which fluids can be administered in an antegrade fashion to remove fecal matter from the colon.

3. Spasticity

Spasticity is a velocity-dependent increase in muscle tone and a loss of isolated muscle function. Whereas tone is the resistance felt in a muscle as it is moved in space, spasticity occurs when there is damage to the CNS from trauma or injury. It is included in the upper motor neuron syndrome (hyperactive and exaggerated reflexes, increased tone, clonus, positive Babinski sign). Spasticity is evaluated using the Ashworth Scale, with 0 indicating no increase in muscle tone and 4 indicating complete rigidity of the extremity.

» Treatment

Treatment is goal directed and influenced by the functional status of the client. Options for therapy range from conservative to aggressive. Children should be positioned properly and have appropriate equipment to prevent nociceptive input and facilitate physical therapy. Physical therapy can reduce the long-term effects of spasticity by use of stretching and range-of-motion exercises. Heat and cold are useful in improving tone, but their effects are not long lived. Casting of both upper and lower extremities can decrease tone and increase range of motion. Constraint therapy can be used to try to improve upper extremity function.

Pharmacologic support with medications, such as baclofen, diazepam, dantrolene, and tizanidine can be effective. Baclofen (a direct $GABA_B$ agonist) is a first-line medication, which produces effects at the spinal cord level. Side effects are primarily sleepiness and weakness. Seizure threshold may be reduced by baclofen. Baclofen, delivered directly to the CNS through an intrathecal pump, has been used successfully in children with brain injury, cerebral palsy, and SCI. Diazepam, an allosteric modulator of postsynaptic $GABA_A$ receptors in both the brain and the spinal cord, can be effective but its central CNS effects can cause drowsiness and dependence. Dantrolene inhibits excitation contraction coupling but use can result in weakness or, rarely, hepatotoxicity. Tizanidine is a newer agent and works at the α_2-adrenergic receptors presynaptically. It can cause dry mouth and sedation, and liver function tests can be elevated.

Relief of focal spasticity can be achieved by using chemodenervation techniques. Botulinum toxin A and B can be injected in selected muscles to block acetylcholine release at the neuromuscular junction and thereby improve range of motion. Enhanced function, improved hygiene, reduced pain, and deformity are the result. Botulinum toxins have also been used to treat drooling, hyperhydrosis, and chronic pain. The effects are temporary, lasting only 3–6 months, and repeat injections are often needed. Technically more challenging phenol injection denatures proteins in both myelinated and unmyelinated fibers and produces neurolysis or

myolysis, depending on the site of injection. The effects may last longer than botulinum toxins but carry a risk of sensory dysesthesia if mixed nerves are injected.

Surgical options include orthopedic procedures geared toward improving function and ambulation and alleviating deformities produced over time by spasticity. Contractures are common in the Achilles tendon, hamstrings, and adductors. Upper extremity contractures occur in the elbow, wrist, and finger flexors. Scoliosis is fairly common and bracing or surgery may be needed. Gait analysis may be helpful in evaluating the child with functional spasticity as a guide for the use of orthotics, therapy, and surgery. Neurosurgical techniques such as selective dorsal rhizotomy, sectioning afferent sensory nerve fibers, are used in a very select group of children to permanently alter spasticity patterns and improve ambulation.

Vadivelu S et al: Pediatric tone management. Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am 2015;26(1):69 [PMID: 25479780].

QUALITY ASSURANCE/IMPROVEMENT INITIATIVES IN REHABILITATION MEDICINE

Working with the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME), the American Academy of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation (AAPM&R) fosters acquisition of knowledge regarding the use of quality assurance/improvement techniques in its training programs. This is now one of six competencies required for board certification. The AAPM&R feels that these skills endow the practitioner with the capacity to maintain and improve the quality of care provided to the public.

29 Rheumatic Diseases

Jennifer B. Soep, MD

JUVENILE IDIOPATHIC ARTHRITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Arthritis, involving pain, swelling, warmth, tenderness, morning stiffness, and/or decreased range of motion of one or more joints, lasting at least 6 weeks.
- May have associated systemic manifestations, including fever, rash, uveitis, serositis, anemia, and fatigue.

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA) is characterized by chronic arthritis in one or more joints for at least 6 weeks. There are four main subtypes of JIA: (1) oligoarticular, (2) polyarticular, (3) systemic, and (4) enthesitis-associated. The exact cause of JIA is not known, but there is substantial evidence that it is an autoimmune process with genetic susceptibility factors.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The most common type of JIA is the oligoarticular form, which constitutes approximately 30%–40% of patients and is characterized by arthritis of four or fewer joints. This type of JIA often affects medium to large joints. Because the arthritis is often asymmetrical, children may develop a leg-length discrepancy in which the involved leg grows longer due to increased blood flow and growth factors. The synovitis is usually mild and may be painless. Systemic features are uncommon except for inflammation in the eye. Up to 20% of children with this type of JIA develop insidious, asymptomatic uveitis, which may cause blindness if untreated. The activity of the eye disease does not correlate with that of the arthritis. Therefore, routine ophthalmologic screening with slit-lamp examination must be performed at 3-month intervals if the antinuclear antibody (ANA) test is positive, and at 6-month intervals if the ANA test is negative, for at least 4 years after the onset of arthritis, as this is the period of highest risk.

Polyarticular disease is defined as arthritis involving five or more joints. This type of JIA affects 25% of patients. Both large and small joints are involved, typically in a symmetrical pattern. Systemic features are not prominent, although low-grade fever, fatigue, rheumatoid nodules, and anemia may be present. This group is further divided into rheumatoid factor (RF)-positive and RF-negative disease. The former resembles adult rheumatoid arthritis with more chronic, destructive arthritis.

The systemic form, previously known as Still disease, comprises 5%–10% of patients with JIA. The arthritis can involve any number of joints and affects both large and small joints, but may be absent at disease onset. One of the classic features is a high fever, often as high as 39°C–40°C, typically occurring one to two times per day. In between fever spikes, the temperature usually returns to normal or subnormal. Around 90% patients have a characteristic evanescent, salmon-pink macular rash that is most prominent on pressure areas and when fever is present. Other systemic features that may be present, but are not specific for JIA, include hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, leukocytosis, and serositis.

Enthesitis-associated arthritis is most common in males, older than 10 years of age, and is typically associated with lower extremity, large joint arthritis. The hallmark of this form is inflammation of tendinous insertions (enthesopathy), such as the tibial tubercle or the heel. Low back pain and sacroiliitis are also commonly seen in this form of arthritis which comprises approximately 10%–20% of patients with JIA.

There are two additional subtypes of JIA. Children with psoriatic arthritis may have typical psoriasis, but may also present prior to the onset of the classic thick scaly plaques and have more subtle changes such as nail pitting (see Chapter 15). Patients with psoriatic arthritis may also present with dactylitis or "sausage digit," which is painful swelling of an entire finger or toe. Undifferentiated JIA, comprising 10% of patients, includes children with chronic arthritis that do not meet criteria for any of the other subgroups or meet more than one criterion and therefore could be classified into multiple subgroups.

B. Laboratory Findings

There is no diagnostic test for JIA. A normal erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) does not exclude the diagnosis of JIA. However, patients with systemic JIA typically have significantly elevated markers of inflammation, including ESR, C-reactive protein (CRP), white blood cell count, and platelets. RF is positive in about 5% of patients, usually when the onset of polyarticular disease occurs after age 8 years. A newer test, anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide (anti-CCP) antibody, has a very high specificity for rheumatoid arthritis and may be detectable prior to the RF. ANAs are associated with an increased risk of uveitis in patients with oligoarticular disease. A positive ANA test is also fairly common in patients with the late-onset RF-positive form of the disease. Carriage of HLAB27 antigen is associated with an increased risk of developing enthesitis-associated arthritis.

Table 29–1 lists the general characteristics of joint fluid in various conditions. The main indication for joint aspiration and synovial fluid analysis is to rule out infection. A positive Gram stain or culture is the only definitive test for infection. A leukocyte count over 2000/μL suggests inflammation; this may be due to infection, rheumatologic diseases, leukemia, or reactive arthritis. A very low glucose concentration (< 40 mg/dL) or very high polymorphonuclear leukocyte count (> 60,000/μL) is highly suggestive of bacterial arthritis.

Table 29–1. Joint fluid analysis.

Disorder	Cells/μL	Glucose[a]
Trauma	More red cells than white cells; usually < 2000 white cells	Normal
Reactive arthritis	3000–10,000 white cells, mostly mononuclear cells	Normal
Juvenile idiopathic arthritis and other inflammatory arthritides	5000–60,000 white cells, mostly neutrophils	Usually normal or slightly low
Septic arthritis	> 60,000 white cells, > 90% neutrophils	Low to normal

[a]Normal value is ≥ 75% of the serum glucose value.

C. Imaging Studies

In the early stages of the disease, only soft tissue swelling and possibly periarticular osteoporosis may be seen. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of involved joints may show early joint damage and, if obtained with gadolinium, can confirm the presence of synovitis. Ultrasound is now used to detect synovitis, tenosynovitis, and bony erosions without radiation and without requiring sedation. Later in the course of the disease, particularly in patients with RF-positive disease, plain films may demonstrate joint space narrowing due to cartilage thinning and erosive changes of the bone related to chronic inflammation.

» Differential Diagnosis

Table 29–2 lists the most common causes of limb pain in childhood. JIA is a diagnosis of exclusion; therefore, it is important to rule out other causes of the clinical signs and symptoms prior to settling on this diagnosis. The differential diagnosis is often quite broad, including orthopedic conditions, infectious diseases, and malignancies. A few key features can help distinguish these different entities, including the timing of the pain and associated signs and symptoms. In inflammatory conditions, patients frequently have increased symptoms in the morning with associated stiffness. In contrast, patients with an orthopedic abnormality typically have increased symptoms later in the day and with activity. Growing pains, a common cause of leg pain in childhood, are characterized by poorly localized pain at night, which frequently wakes the child from sleep; no objective signs of inflammation; and no daytime symptoms. Patients with growing pains often ask to be massaged, which is not typical of those with arthritis.

It is particularly important to establish the diagnosis in the case of monoarticular arthritis. Bacterial arthritis is usually acute and monoarticular except for arthritis associated with gonorrhea, which may be associated with a migratory pattern and hemorrhagic pustules, usually on the distal extremities. Fever, leukocytosis, and increased ESR with an acute process in a single joint demand synovial fluid examination and culture to identify the pathogen. Pain in the hip or lower extremity is a frequent symptom of childhood cancer, especially leukemia, neuroblastoma, and rhabdomyosarcoma. Infiltration of bone by tumor and a joint effusion may be seen. Radiographs of the affected site and examination of the blood smear for unusual cells and thrombocytopenia are necessary. An elevated lactate dehydrogenase value should also raise concern about an underlying neoplastic process. In doubtful cases, bone marrow examination is indicated.

Table 29–2. Differential diagnosis of limb pain in children.

Orthopedic
Stress fracture
Chondromalacia patellae
Osgood-Schlatter disease
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis
Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease
Hypermobility syndrome
Reactive arthritis
Henoch-Schönlein purpura
Transient synovitis
Rheumatic fever
Poststreptococcal arthritis
Infections
Bacterial
Lyme arthritis
Osteomyelitis
Septic arthritis
Discitis
Viral (including parvovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, and Hepatitis B)
Rheumatologic
Juvenile idiopathic arthritis
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Dermatomyositis
Chronic recurrent multifocal osteomyelitis
Neoplastic
Leukemia
Lymphoma
Neuroblastoma
Osteoid osteoma
Bone tumors (benign or malignant)
Pain syndromes
Growing pains
Fibromyalgia
Complex regional pain syndrome

Reactive arthritis is joint pain and swelling triggered by an infection. The infection is nonarticular and can be either viral or bacterial. A preceding illness is identified in approximately half of cases. Patients often have acute onset of arthritis, and there may be a migratory pattern. The duration of symptoms is a very important distinction between reactive arthritides and JIA. Symptoms associated with reactive arthritis typically resolve within 4–6 weeks. In contrast, to meet criteria for chronic arthritis, symptoms must be present for at least 6 weeks.

The arthritis of rheumatic fever is migratory, transient, and often more painful than that of JIA. Rheumatic fever is very rare in children younger than 5 years (see Chapter 20). In suspected cases, evidence of rheumatic carditis should be sought based on examination and electrocardiographic findings. Evidence of recent streptococcal infection is essential to the diagnosis. The fever pattern in rheumatic fever is low grade and persistent compared with the spiking fever that characterizes the systemic form of JIA. Lyme arthritis resembles oligoarticular JIA, but the former usually occurs as discrete, recurrent episodes of arthritis lasting 2–6 weeks and children should have a history of being in an endemic area. The typical bull's-eye rash is called erythema chronicum migrans. Approximately 70%–80% of patients have a history of a compatible rash, although it is usually resolved by the time the arthritis appears. For children suspected of having Lyme disease, testing for antibodies against Borrelia burgdorferi should be performed, with confirmatory testing by Western blot (see Chapter 42).

» Treatment

The objectives of therapy are to restore function, relieve pain, maintain joint motion, and prevent damage to cartilage and bone.

A. Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Medications

First-line therapy is nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). A wide range of agents is available but only a few are approved for use in children, including naproxen (10 mg/kg per dose twice daily), ibuprofen (10 mg/kg per dose three to four times daily), and meloxicam (0.125–0.25 mg/kg once daily). NSAIDs are generally well tolerated in children, as long as they are taken with food. The average time to symptomatic improvement is 1 month, but in some patients a response is not seen for 8–12 weeks.

B. Disease-Modifying and Biologic Agents

For patients with JIA who fail to respond to NSAIDs, weekly methotrexate is the second-line medication of choice. Symptomatic response usually begins within 3–4 weeks. The low dosages used (5–10 mg/m^2/wk or up to 1 mg/kg/wk as a single dose) are generally well tolerated. Potential side effects include nausea, vomiting, hair thinning, stomatitis, leukopenia, immunosuppression, and hepatotoxicity. A complete blood count and liver function tests should be obtained every 2–3 months. Several additional disease-modifying agents are available for use in patients with persistently active disease or those intolerant to methotrexate. Leflunomide is an antipyrimidine medication that is administered orally. Side effects may include diarrhea and alopecia. Biological modifying medications that inhibit tumor necrosis factor, a cytokine known to play an important role in the pathogenesis of JIA, include etanercept, infliximab, and adalimumab. These drugs are generally quite effective in controlling disease and preventing cartilage and bone damage, and have been associated with healing based on radiologic changes. However, their potential long-term effects are unknown, they are very expensive, and require parenteral administration. Anakinra and tocilizumab, which block interleukin 1 and

6 respectively, are particularly effective for systemic JIA. Other biologic agents, including rituximab and abatacept, have demonstrated some efficacy in patients who have not responded to other treatments.

C. Corticosteroids

Local steroid joint injections may be helpful in patients who have arthritis in one or a few joints. Triamcinolone hexacetonide is a long-acting steroid that can be used for injections and is often associated with at least several months of disease control. Oral or parenteral steroids are reserved for children with severe involvement, primarily patients with systemic disease.

D. Uveitis

Inflammation of the uveal tract (uveitis or iridocyclitis) should be closely monitored by an ophthalmologist (see Chapter 16). Typically treatment is initiated with corticosteroid eye drops and dilating agents to prevent scarring between the iris and the lens. In patients who fail topical treatments, methotrexate, cyclosporine, and/or a tumor-necrosis factor inhibitor such as infliximab or adalimumab may be used.

E. Rehabilitation

Physical and occupational therapies are important to focus on range of motion, stretching, and strengthening. These exercises, as well as other modalities such as heat, water therapy, and ultrasound, can help control pain, maintain and restore function, and prevent deformity and disability. Young children with oligoarticular disease affecting asymmetrical lower extremity joints can develop a leg-length discrepancy, which may require treatment with a shoe lift on the unaffected side.

» Prognosis

The course and prognosis for JIA is variable, depending on the subtype of disease. Children with persistent oligoarticular JIA have the highest rate of clinical remission, while patients with RF-positive disease are the least likely to achieve this status and are at highest risk for chronic, erosive arthritis that may continue into adulthood. The systemic features associated with systemic arthritis tend to remit within months to years. The prognosis in systemic disease is worse in patients with persistent systemic disease after 6 months, thrombocytosis, and more extensive arthritis.

Beukelman T et al: 2011 American College of Rheumatology recommendations for the treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis: initiation and safety monitoring of therapeutic agents for the treatment of arthritis and systemic features. Arthritis Care Res 2011;63:465–482 [PMID: 21452260].

Kahn P: Juvenile idiopathic arthritis-what the clinician needs to know. Bull Hosp Jt Dis 2013;71(3):194–199 [PMID: 24151944].

Ringold S et al: 2013 update of the 2011 American College of Rheumatology recommendations for the treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis: recommendations for the medical therapy of children with systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis and tuberculosis screening among children receiving biologic medications. Arthritis Care Res 2013;65(10):1551–1563 [PMID: 24078300].

Stoll ML, Cron RQ: Treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis: a revolution in care. Pediatr Rheumatol Online 2014;12:13. (http://www.ped-rheum.com/content/12/1/13) [PMID: 24782683].

www.arthritis.org.

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Multisystem inflammatory disease of the joints, serosal linings, skin, kidneys, blood, and central nervous system.
- Autoantibodies such as antinuclear antibodies (ANA), double-stranded DNA, and anti-Smith antibodies are present and related to the pathogenesis of disease.

» Pathogenesis

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is the prototype of immune complex diseases; its pathogenesis is related to the formation of antibody-antigen complexes that exist in the circulation and deposit in the involved tissues. The spectrum of symptoms is due to tissue-specific autoantibodies as well as to damage to tissues by lymphocytes, neutrophils, and complement evoked by the deposition of immune complexes. Autoreactive T lymphocytes that have escaped clonal deletion and unregulated B-lymphocyte production of autoantibodies may initiate the disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The onset of pediatric SLE is most common in girls between the ages of 9 and 15 years. Signs and symptoms depend on the organs affected by immune complex deposition. The American College of Rheumatology has established criteria to aid in the diagnosis of SLE; four of the following 11 criteria are necessary to establish the diagnosis:

1. Malar rash—photosensitive, the so-called butterfly rash on the cheeks and nasal bridge

2. Discoid rash—annular, scaly rash on the scalp, face, and extremities that can lead to scarring
3. Photosensitivity—increased rash or other disease symptoms in response to sunlight exposure
4. Mucous membrane ulcers—painless ulcers on the hard palate and/or nasal septum
5. Arthritis—nonerosive arthritis of large and small joints, typically in a symmetrical distribution
6. Serositis—pericarditis and/or pleuritis, often associated with chest pain and difficulty breathing
7. Renal abnormalities—proteinuria (> 0.5 g/d) and/or cellular casts
8. Neurologic abnormalities—seizures and/or psychosis
9. Blood count abnormalities—low white blood cell count (< 4000/mm^3), Coombs test–positive anemia, and/or thrombocytopenia (< 100,000/mm^3)
10. Positive ANA—seen in almost 100% of patients with SLE
11. Autoantibodies—positive double-stranded DNA antibody, anti-Smith antibody, anticardiolipin antibodies, lupus anticoagulant, and/or false-positive blood test for syphilis

Other common signs and symptoms include fever, fatigue, weight loss, anorexia, Raynaud phenomenon, myositis, vasculitis, chorea, neuropathies, depression, and cognitive changes.

B. Laboratory Findings

Complete blood count abnormalities are common, including leukopenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia. Approximately 15% of patients are Coombs test–positive, but many patients develop anemia due to other causes, including chronic disease and blood loss. Patients with significant renal involvement may have electrolyte disturbances, elevated kidney function tests, and hypoalbuminemia. The ESR is frequently elevated during active disease. In contrast, many patients with active SLE have a normal CRP. When the CRP is elevated, it is important to investigate possible infectious causes, particularly bacterial infections. It is critical to monitor the urinalysis in patients with SLE for proteinuria and hematuria, as the renal disease may be otherwise clinically silent. In immune complex diseases, complement is consumed; therefore, levels of C3 and C4 are depressed with active disease.

The ANA test is positive in almost 100% of patients, usually at titers of 1:320 or above. In patients with suspected SLE, it is important to obtain a full ANA profile—including antibodies directed against double-stranded DNA, Smith, ribonucleic protein, and Sjögren-specific antibody A and B to better characterize their serologic markers of disease. Because approximately 50%–60% of pediatric SLE patients have antiphospholipid antibodies and are therefore at increased risk of thrombosis, it is important to screen all patients with SLE for anticardiolipin antibodies and lupus anticoagulant.

» Differential Diagnosis

Because there is such a wide spectrum of disease with SLE, the differential diagnosis is quite broad, including systemic JIA, mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD), rheumatic fever, vasculitis, malignancies, and bacterial and viral infections. A negative ANA test essentially excludes the diagnosis of SLE. Anti–double-stranded DNA and Smith antibodies are very specific for SLE. The preceding diagnostic criteria, which are very helpful in establishing the diagnosis of SLE, have a specificity and sensitivity of 96%.

MCTD, an overlap syndrome with features of several collagen-vascular diseases, shares many features with SLE. The symptom complex is diverse and often includes arthritis, fever, skin tightening, Raynaud phenomenon, muscle weakness, and rash. The ANA test is typically positive in very high titers. The ANA profile is negative except for antibodies directed against ribonucleic protein.

» Treatment

The treatment of SLE should be tailored to the organ system involved so that toxicities may be minimized. Prednisone is the mainstay of treatment and has significantly lowered the mortality rate in SLE. Patients with severe, life-threatening, or organ-threatening disease are typically treated with intravenous pulse methylprednisolone, 30 mg/kg per dose (maximum of 1000 mg) daily for 3 days, and then switched to 2 mg/kg/d of prednisone. The dosage should be adjusted using clinical and laboratory parameters of disease activity, and the minimum amount of corticosteroid to control the disease should be used. Skin manifestations, arthritis, and fatigue may be treated with antimalarials such as hydroxychloroquine, 5–7 mg/kg/d orally. Pleuritic pain or arthritis can often be managed with NSAIDs.

If disease control is inadequate with prednisone or if the dose required produces intolerable side effects, a steroid-sparing agent, such as mycophenolate mofetil, azathioprine, or cyclophosphamide, should be added. More recently, rituximab, a monoclonal antibody directed against the B-cell surface marker CD20, has been used for persistent active disease, particularly in patients with hematologic manifestations. Patients who have evidence of antiphospholipid antibodies should be treated with a baby aspirin every day to help prevent thrombosis. Thrombotic events due to these antibodies require long-term anticoagulation.

The toxicities of the regimens must be carefully considered. Growth failure, osteoporosis, Cushing syndrome, adrenal suppression, and aseptic necrosis are serious side effects of chronic use of prednisone. When high doses of corticosteroids are used (> 2 mg/kg/d), there is a high risk of

infection. Cyclophosphamide can cause bone marrow suppression, bladder epithelial dysplasia, hemorrhagic cystitis, and sterility. Azathioprine has been associated with liver damage and bone marrow suppression. Immunosuppressant treatment should be withheld if the total white blood cell count falls below 3000 mm^3 or the neutrophil count falls below 1000/mm^3μL. Retinal damage from hydroxychloroquine is generally not observed with recommended dosages, but patients typically have routine visual field testing to screen for retinal toxicity.

» Prognosis

The prognosis in SLE relates to the presence of renal involvement or infectious complications of treatment. The survival rate has improved from 51% at 5 years in 1954 to 90% today. The disease has a natural waxing and waning cycle; it may flare at any time and spontaneous remission may rarely occur.

Brunner HI, Huggins J, Klein-Gitelman MS: Pediatric SLE—towards a comprehensive management plan. Nat Rev Rheumatol 2011;7:225–233 [PMID: 21386795].

Malattia C, Martini A: Paediatric-onset systemic lupus erythematosus. Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol 2013;27(3):351–362 [PMID: 24238692].

Mina R et al: Consensus treatment plans for induction therapy of newly diagnosed proliferative lupus nephritis in juvenile systemic lupus erythematosus. Arthritis Care Res 2012;64(3):375–383 [PMID: 22162255].

Weiss JE: Pediatric systemic lupus erythematosus: more than a positive antinuclear antibody. Pediatr Rev 2012;33(2):62–73 [PMID: 22301032].

DERMATOMYOSITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pathognomonic skin rashes.
- Weakness of proximal muscles and occasionally of pharyngeal and laryngeal groups.
- Pathogenesis related to vasculopathy.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The predominant symptom is proximal muscle weakness, particularly affecting pelvic and shoulder girdle muscles. Tenderness, stiffness, and swelling may be found. Pharyngeal involvement, manifested as voice changes and difficulty swallowing, is associated with an increased risk of aspiration. Intestinal vasculitis can be associated with ulceration and perforation of involved areas. Flexion contractures and muscle atrophy may produce significant residual deformities. Calcinosis may follow the inflammation in muscle and skin.

Several characteristic rashes are seen in dermatomyositis. Patients often have a heliotrope rash with a reddish-purple hue on the upper eyelids, along with a malar rash that may be accompanied by edema of the eyelids and face. Gottron papules are shiny, erythematous, scaly plaques on the extensor surfaces of the knuckles, elbows, and knees. Dilated nailbed vessels are commonly seen with active disease. Thrombosis and dropout of periungual capillaries may identify patients with a more severe, chronic disease course.

B. Laboratory Findings/Imaging Studies/Special Tests

Determination of muscle enzyme levels, including aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, lactate dehydrogenase, creatine phosphokinase, and aldolase, is helpful in confirming the diagnosis, assessing disease activity, and monitoring the response to treatment. Even in the face of extensive muscle inflammation, the ESR and CRP may be normal. An MRI scan of the quadriceps muscle can be used in equivocal cases to confirm the presence of inflammatory myositis. Electromyography is useful to distinguish myopathic from neuropathic causes of muscle weakness. Muscle biopsy is indicated in cases of myositis without the pathognomonic rash.

» Treatment

Treatment is aimed at suppression of the inflammatory response and prevention of the loss of muscle function and joint range of motion. Acutely, it is very important to assess the adequacy of the ventilatory effort and swallowing, and to rule out intestinal vasculitis. Corticosteroids are the initial therapy of choice. Treatment is usually initiated with prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d, and continued until signs and symptoms of active disease are controlled; the dosage is then gradually tapered. In severe cases, intravenous pulse methylprednisolone for 3 days is indicated. Therapy is guided by the physical examination findings and muscle enzyme values. Methotrexate is often used concomitantly to achieve better control of the disease and minimize the steroid side effects. If patients continue to have active disease, additional steroid-sparing agents, such as cyclosporine, intravenous immunoglobulin, and, in severe cases, cyclophosphamide should be started.

Hydroxychloroquine and intravenous immunoglobulin may be particularly helpful in managing the skin manifestations. As the rashes are photosensitive, sun protection is very important. Physical and occupational therapy should be initiated early in the course of disease. Initially, passive range-of-motion exercises are performed to prevent loss of

motion. Later, once the muscle enzymes have normalized, a graduated program of stretching and strengthening exercises is introduced to restore normal strength and function.

» Prognosis

Most patients have a monocyclic course; 10%–20% of patients have more chronic or recurrent symptoms. Factors that influence the outcome include the rapidity of symptom onset, extent of weakness, presence of cutaneous or gastrointestinal vasculitis, timeliness of diagnosis, initiation of therapy, and response to treatment. Dermatomyositis in children is not associated with cancer as it is in adults.

Ernste FC, Reed AM: Recent advances in juvenile idiopathic inflammatory myopathies. Curr Opin Rheumatol 2014;26(6):671–678 [PMID: 25160931].

Rider LG, Katz JD, Jones OY: Developments in the classification and treatment of the juvenile idiopathic inflammatory myopathies. Rheum Dis Clin North Am 2013;39(4):877–904 [PMID: 24182859].

VASCULITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cutaneous involvement with nonblanching, tender skin lesions.
- Frequent presence of systemic inflammation, particularly in the lungs and kidneys.
- Gold-standard for diagnosis is demonstration of vasculitis on biopsy.

The vasculitides are a group of conditions that involve inflammation of blood vessels. They are classified by the size of the blood vessels affected (Table 29–3). The two most common forms of vasculitis in childhood—Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP) (see Chapter 30) and Kawasaki disease (see Chapter 20)—are acute, self-limited forms of vasculitis. In contrast, there are idiopathic, chronic forms of vasculitis, such as granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA) and microscopic polyangiitis (MPA), which are rare in childhood.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Signs and symptoms vary by disease, but most children with chronic vasculitis have persistent fever, fatigue, weight loss, and signs of pulmonary, renal, musculoskeletal, gastrointestinal, and/or skin inflammation.

Table 29–3. Classification of vasculitides by vessel size involved.

Large vessel
Takayasu arteritis
Giant cell arteritis
Medium vessel
Kawasaki disease
Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (previously called Wegener granulomatosis)
Polyarteritis nodosa
Churg-Strauss syndrome
Small vessel
Henoch-Schönlein purpura
Microscopic polyarteritis

Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (previously called Wegener granulomatosis) often causes nephritis and involves the lungs, manifesting as chronic cough, hemorrhage, and/or cavitating lesions. This form of vasculitis also frequently affects the upper respiratory tract, causing chronic otitis media, sinusitis, and/or inflammation of the trachea; saddle nose deformity may occur.

Children with polyarteritis nodosa (PAN) often present with skin lesions such as purpura, nodules or ulcers, and evidence of organ involvement with abdominal pain, testicular pain, hypertension, hematuria and/or neurologic symptoms. MPA typically presents with pulmonary-renal syndrome with features of pulmonary hemorrhage and rapidly progressive kidney inflammation.

B. Laboratory Findings/Imaging Studies/Special Tests

Patients with vasculitis often have elevated inflammatory markers. If they have significant renal involvement, they may have elevated renal function tests and abnormal urinary sediment. Anemia is common, due to chronic disease and/or renal insufficiency. Low hemoglobin may also be an indicator of pulmonary hemorrhage in a patient with cough, hemoptysis, respiratory distress, and/or infiltrates on chest x-ray.

Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA) may be present in patients with small vessel vasculitis. Cytoplasmic ANCA (c-ANCA), which is usually directed against proteinase 3 and is quite sensitive and specific for GPA, is positive in 80%–95% of patients with active disease. Perinuclear ANCA (p-ANCA) is typically directed against myeloperoxidase and is associated with MPA and can also be seen in HSP, Churg-Strauss, and inflammatory bowel disease.

The diagnosis is made based on a typical clinical presentation and laboratory findings. If the diagnosis remains uncertain, then attempting to definitively establish the diagnosis with a biopsy of involved tissue is warranted. A biopsy in patients with GPA typically demonstrates

necrotizing granulomatous vasculitis. Biopsies of involved areas will confirm the presence of vasculitis in small vessels in patients with MPA and small and medium arteries in PAN. If a biopsy is not feasible, additional imaging studies such as an angiogram, which can demonstrate characteristic patterns of inflammation in affected blood vessels, should be considered.

» Treatment

The treatment of the various forms of chronic vasculitis is based on the severity of illness and the organs involved. Typically, corticosteroids are the initial therapy. Patients with severe disease are usually treated with intravenous pulse methylprednisolone, 30 mg/kg per dose (maximum of 1000 mg) daily for 3 days, and then switched to 2 mg/kg/d of prednisone. The dosage is then gradually tapered as tolerated based on clinical and laboratory markers of disease activity. Patients are usually treated with other immunosuppressant medications to gain and maintain control of the disease and minimize the steroid side effects. Standard treatment has included cyclophosphamide for induction, followed by maintenance with methotrexate, azathioprine, or mycophenolate. More recent studies in patients with ANCA-positive vasculitis suggest that rituximab can be used for induction therapy with potentially fewer side effects and risks than cyclophosphamide.

» Prognosis

Immunosuppressive medications have improved survival and remission rates for patients with chronic vasculitis. Conditions such as GPA had almost always been fatal. Since introducing the regimen of high-dose steroids and cyclophosphamide (or other cytotoxic agents), patients with vasculitides have greatly improved outcomes, with 5-year survival ranging from 50% to 100%. Because relapses are common when therapy is weaned or stopped, maintenance immunosuppression is commonly required in these disorders.

Bohm M et al: Clinical features of childhood granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's granulomatosis). Pediatr Rheumatol Online J 2014;12:18 [PMID: 24891844].

Guerry MJ et al: Recommendations for the use of rituximab in anti-neutrophil cytoplasm antibody-associated vasculitis. Rheumatology 2012;51:634–643 [PMID: 21613248].

Twilt M, Benseler S: Childhood antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies associated vasculitides. Curr Opinion Rheumatol 2014;26(1):50–55 [PMID: 24247117].

RAYNAUD PHENOMENON

Raynaud phenomenon is an intermittent vasospastic disorder of the extremities. As much as 10% of the adult population has this disorder, and onset in childhood is not uncommon. The classic triphasic presentation is cold-induced pallor, then cyanosis, followed by hyperemia, but incomplete forms are frequent. In adults older than 35 years who are ANA-positive, Raynaud phenomenon may be a harbinger of rheumatic disease. This progression is rarely seen in childhood. Evaluation should include a detailed history with review of systems relevant to rheumatic disease. Examination of the cuticle edge, using an otoscope or a special microscope called a capillaroscope, is important to screen for dilated and/or tortuous capillaries that may suggest an underlying rheumatic disease such as lupus or scleroderma. In the absence of positive findings, Raynaud phenomenon is likely to be idiopathic.

Treatment involves education about keeping the extremities and core body warm and the role of stress, which may be a precipitant. In very symptomatic patients, treatment with calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine can be effective.

Prete M, Fatone MC, Favoino E, Perosa F: Raynaud's phenomenon: from molecular pathogenesis to therapy. Autoimm Rev 2014;13(6):655–667 [PMID: 24418302].

NONINFLAMMATORY PAIN SYNDROMES

1. Complex Regional Pain Syndrome

Complex regional pain syndrome, previously known as reflex sympathetic dystrophy, is a painful condition that is frequently confused with arthritis. Prevalence and recognition of the condition is increasing. Severe extremity pain leading to nearly complete loss of function is the hallmark of the condition. Evidence of autonomic dysfunction is demonstrated by pallor or cyanosis, temperature differences (with the affected extremity cooler than surrounding areas), and generalized swelling. On examination, allodynia, which is marked cutaneous hyperesthesia to even the slightest touch, is often evident. Results of laboratory tests are normal, without evidence of systemic inflammation. Radiographic findings are normal except for late development of osteoporosis. Bone scans may be helpful and may demonstrate either increased or decreased blood flow to the painful extremity.

The cause of this condition remains elusive. Treatment includes physical therapy to focus on restoration of function, maintenance of range of motion, and pain relief. NSAIDs can be helpful for pain control, and in patients with more chronic disease, gabapentin, or pregabalin are frequently effective. Persistent disease may respond to local nerve blocks. Counseling is helpful to identify potential psychosocial stressors and to assist with pain management. Long-term prognosis is good if recovery is rapid; recurrent episodes imply a less favorable prognosis.

http://childhoodrnd.org/index.php.
Katholi BR, Daghstani SS, Banez GA, Brady KK: Noninvasive treatments for pediatric complex regional pain syndrome: a focused review. PM&R 2014;6(10):926–933 [PMID: 24780851].

2. Fibromyalgia

Fibromyalgia is a chronic pain syndrome characterized by diffuse musculoskeletal pain, fatigue, sleep disturbance, and chronic headaches. Weather changes, fatigue, and stress exacerbate symptoms. Patients have a normal examination except for characteristic trigger points at the insertion of muscles, especially along the neck, spine, and pelvis.

Treatment centers on physical therapy, nonnarcotic pain medications, improving sleep, and counseling. Low-dose amitriptyline or trazodone can help with sleep and may produce remarkable reduction in pain. Physical therapy should emphasize a graded rehabilitative approach to stretching and exercise and promote regular aerobic exercise. Pregabalin recently became the first medication to be approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of fibromyalgia. Use of the drug is associated with decreased pain in adults with fibromyalgia, and studies are planned to test safety and efficacy in children with the condition. The prognosis for children with fibromyalgia is not clear, and long-term strategies may be necessary to enable them to cope with the condition.

Wolfe F et al: The American College of Rheumatology preliminary diagnostic criteria for fibromyalgia and measurement of symptom severity. Arthritis Care Res 2010;62:600–610 [PMID: 20461783].
www.myalgia.com.

3. Hypermobility Syndrome

Ligamentous laxity, which previously was thought to occur only in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome or Down syndrome, is now recognized as a common cause of joint pain. Patients with hypermobility present with episodic joint pain and occasionally with swelling that lasts a few days after increased physical activity. Depending on the activity, almost any joint may be affected. Five criteria have been established: (1) passive opposition of the thumb to the flexor surface of the forearm, (2) passive hyperextension of the fingers so that they are parallel to the extensor surface of the forearm, (3) hyperextension of the elbow, (4) hyperextension of the knee, and (5) palms on floor with knees extended. Results of laboratory tests are normal. The pain associated with the syndrome is produced by improper joint alignment caused by the laxity during exercise. Treatment consists of a graded conditioning program designed to provide muscular support of the joints to compensate for the loose ligaments and to train patients to protect their joints from hyperextension.

Armon K: Musculoskeletal pain and hypermobility in children and young people: is it benign joint hypermobility syndrome? Arch Dis Child 2015;100(1):2–3 [PMID: 25336435].

Hematologic Disorders

30

Daniel R. Ambruso, MD
Rachelle Nuss, MD
Michael Wang, MD

NORMAL HEMATOLOGIC VALUES

The normal ranges for peripheral blood counts vary significantly with age. Normal neonates show a relative polycythemia with a hematocrit concentration of 45%–65%. The reticulocyte count at birth is relatively high at 2%–8%. Within the first few days of life, erythrocyte production decreases, and the values for hemoglobin and hematocrit fall to a nadir at about 6–8 weeks. During this period, known as physiologic anemia of infancy, normal infants have hemoglobin values as low as 10 g/dL and hematocrits as low as 30%. Thereafter, the normal values for hemoglobin and hematocrit gradually increase until adult values are reached after puberty. Premature infants can reach a nadir hemoglobin level of 7–8 g/dL at 8–10 weeks. Anemia is defined as a hemoglobin concentration two standard deviations below the mean for a normal population of the same gender and age.

Newborns have larger red cells than children and adults, with a mean corpuscular volume (MCV) at birth of more than 94 fL. The MCV subsequently falls to a nadir of 70–84 fL at about age 6 months. Thereafter, the normal MCV increases gradually until it reaches adult values after puberty.

The normal number of white blood cells (WBCs) is higher in infancy and early childhood than later in life. Neutrophils predominate in the differential white count at birth and in the older child. Lymphocytes predominate (up to 80%) between about ages 1 month and 6 years.

Normal values for the platelet count are 150,000–400,000/μL and vary little with age.

BONE MARROW FAILURE

Failure of the marrow to produce adequate numbers of circulating blood cells may be congenital or acquired and may cause pancytopenia (aplastic anemia) or involve only one cell line (single cytopenia). Constitutional and acquired aplastic anemias are discussed in this section and the more common single cytopenias in later sections. Bone marrow failure caused by malignancy or other infiltrative disease is discussed in Chapter 31. It is important to remember that many drugs and toxins may affect the marrow and cause single or multiple cytopenias.

Suspicion of bone marrow failure is warranted in children with pancytopenia and in children with single cytopenias who lack evidence of peripheral red cell, white cell, or platelet destruction. Macrocytosis often accompanies bone marrow failure. Many of the constitutional bone marrow disorders are associated with a variety of congenital anomalies.

CONSTITUTIONAL APLASTIC ANEMIA (FANCONI ANEMIA)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Progressive pancytopenia.
- Macrocytosis.
- Multiple congenital anomalies.
- Increased chromosome breakage in peripheral blood lymphocytes.

General Considerations

Fanconi anemia, which is the most common inherited bone marrow failure syndrome, is characterized by defective DNA repair that is caused by a variety of genetic mutations. Inheritance is autosomal recessive, and this disease occurs in all ethnic groups; 75%–90% of affected individuals develop bone marrow failure in the first 10 years of life.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms are determined principally by the degree of hematologic abnormality. Thrombocytopenia may cause purpura, petechiae, and bleeding; neutropenia may cause severe or recurrent infections; and anemia may cause weakness, fatigue, and pallor. Congenital anomalies are present in at least 50% of patients. The most common include abnormal pigmentation of the skin (generalized hyperpigmentation, café au lait or hypopigmented spots), short stature with delicate features, and skeletal malformations (hypoplasia, anomalies, or absence of the thumb and radius). More subtle anomalies are hypoplasia of the thenar eminence or a weak or absent radial pulse. Associated renal anomalies include aplasia, horseshoe kidney, and duplication of the collecting system. Other anomalies are microcephaly, microphthalmia, strabismus, ear anomalies, and hypogenitalism.

B. Laboratory Findings

Thrombocytopenia or leukopenia typically occurs first, followed over the course of months to years by anemia and progression to severe aplastic anemia. Macrocytosis is virtually always present; is usually associated with anisocytosis and an elevation in fetal hemoglobin levels; and is an important diagnostic clue. The bone marrow reveals hypoplasia or aplasia. The diagnosis is confirmed by demonstration of an increased number of chromosome breaks and rearrangements in peripheral blood lymphocytes. The use of diepoxybutane to stimulate these breaks and rearrangements provides a sensitive assay that is virtually always positive in children with Fanconi anemia, even before the onset of hematologic abnormalities.

Specific Fanconi genes (FANCA, B, C, and others) have been identified and transmission is generally autosomal, although FANCB is on the X chromosome.

» Differential Diagnosis

Because patients with Fanconi anemia frequently present with thrombocytopenia, the disorder must be differentiated from idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) and other more common causes of thrombocytopenia. In contrast to patients with ITP, those with Fanconi anemia usually exhibit a gradual fall in the platelet count. Counts less than 20,000/μL are often accompanied by neutropenia or anemia. Fanconi anemia may also be manifested initially by pancytopenia, and must be differentiated from acquired aplastic anemia and other disorders, such as acute leukemia. Examination of the bone marrow and chromosome studies of peripheral blood lymphocytes (chromosomal breakage) will usually distinguish between these disorders.

» Complications

Complications are those related to thrombocytopenia and neutropenia. Endocrine dysfunction may include growth hormone deficiency, hypothyroidism, or impaired glucose metabolism. Persons with Fanconi anemia have a significantly increased risk of developing malignancies, especially acute nonlymphocytic leukemia (800-fold), head and neck cancers, genital cancers, and myelodysplastic syndromes.

» Treatment

Attentive supportive care is critical. Patients with neutropenia who develop fever require prompt evaluation and parenteral broad-spectrum antibiotics. Transfusions are important, but should be used judiciously, especially in the management of thrombocytopenia, which frequently becomes refractory to platelet transfusions as a consequence of alloimmunization. Transfusions from family members should be discouraged because of the negative effect on the outcome of bone marrow transplant. At least 50% of patients with Fanconi anemia respond, albeit incompletely, to oxymetholone, and many recommend institution of androgen therapy before transfusions are needed. However, oxymetholone is associated with hepatotoxicity, hepatic adenomas, and masculinization, and is particularly troublesome for female patients.

The definitive treatment is a reduced intensity hematopoietic stem cell transplant, ideally from a human leukocyte antigen (HLA)–identical sibling donor, although matched unrelated and cord transplant may be considered. Before transplant, any prospective sibling donor must be screened for Fanconi anemia.

» Prognosis

Many patients succumb to bleeding, infection, or malignancy in adolescence or early adulthood. Stem cell transplant does not reduce the increased susceptibility for malignancy.

Mehta P, Locatelli F, Stary J, Smith FO: Bone marrow transplantation for inherited bone marrow failure syndromes. Pediatr Clin North Am 2010;57:147–170 [PMID: 20307716].

Younghoon K, D'Andrea AD: Molecular pathogenesis and clinical management of Fanconi anemia. J Clin Invest 2012;122:3799–3806 [PMID: 23114602].

ACQUIRED APLASTIC ANEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Weakness and pallor.
- Petechiae, purpura, and bleeding.
- Frequent or severe infections.
- Pancytopenia with hypocellular bone marrow.

» General Considerations

Acquired aplastic anemia is characterized by peripheral pancytopenia with a hypocellular bone marrow. Approximately 50% of cases in childhood are idiopathic. Other cases are secondary to idiosyncratic reactions to drugs such as phenylbutazone, sulfonamides, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and anticonvulsants. Toxic causes include exposure to benzene, insecticides, and heavy metals. Infectious causes include viral hepatitis, infectious mononucleosis (Epstein-Barr virus [EBV]), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). In immunocompromised children, aplastic anemia has been associated with human parvovirus B19 infection. Immune mechanisms of marrow suppression are suspected in most cases.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Weakness, fatigue, and pallor result from anemia; petechiae, purpura, and bleeding occur due to thrombocytopenia; and fevers due to generalized or localized infections are associated with neutropenia. Hepatosplenomegaly and significant lymphadenopathy are unusual.

B. Laboratory Findings

Anemia is usually normocytic, with a low reticulocyte count. The WBC count is low, with a marked neutropenia. The platelet count is typically below 50,000/μL and is frequently below 20,000/μL. Bone marrow biopsy shows a marked decrease in cellularity, typically less than 20% of normal in severe aplastic anemia.

» Differential Diagnosis

Examination of the bone marrow usually excludes pancytopenia caused by peripheral destruction of blood cells or by infiltrative processes such as acute leukemia, storage diseases, and myelofibrosis. Many of these other conditions are associated with hepatosplenomegaly. Preleukemic conditions also may present with pancytopenia and hypocellular bone marrows. Cytogenetic analysis of the marrow is helpful, because a clonal abnormality may predict the subsequent development of leukemia. Since congenital anomalies may not be apparent in some children with Fanconi anemia, patients with newly diagnosed aplastic anemia should be studied for chromosome breaks and rearrangements in peripheral blood lymphocytes.

» Complications

Acquired aplastic anemia is characteristically complicated by infection and hemorrhage, which are the leading causes of death. Other complications are those associated with therapy.

» Treatment

Comprehensive supportive care is essential. Febrile illnesses require prompt evaluation and usually parenteral antibiotics. Red blood cell (RBC) transfusions alleviate symptoms of anemia. Platelet transfusions may be lifesaving, but they should be used sparingly because many patients eventually develop platelet alloantibodies and become refractory to platelet transfusions.

Immunomodulation, usually with antithymocyte globulin and cyclosporine or tacrolimus, is associated with a high response rate and improved overall survival. However, incomplete response, relapse, and progression to myelodysplasia/leukemia may occur. Hematopoietic stem cell transplant is the treatment of choice for severe aplastic anemia when an HLA-identical sibling donor is available. Because the likelihood of success with transplant is influenced adversely by receipt of transfusions, HLA typing of family members should be undertaken at the time of diagnosis. Increasingly, patients who lack HLA-identical siblings are able to find matched donors through cord blood banks or the National Marrow Donor Program.

» Prognosis

Children receiving early bone marrow transplant from an HLA-identical sibling have a long-term survival rate of greater than 80%. Sustained, complete remissions may be seen in 65%–80% of patients receiving immunosuppressive therapy. However, both therapies are associated with an increased risk of myelodysplastic syndromes, acute leukemia, and other malignancies in long-term survivors.

Korthof ET, Kekassy AN, Hussein AA: Management of acquired aplastic anemia in children. Bone Marrow Transplant 2013;48:191–195 [PMID: 23292240].

Samarasinghe S et al: Excellent outcome of matched unrelated donor transplantation in paediatric aplastic anaemia following failure with immunosuppressive therapy: a United Kingdom multicentre retrospective experience. Br J Haematol 2012;157:339–346 [PMID: 22372373].

ANEMIAS

APPROACH TO THE CHILD WITH ANEMIA

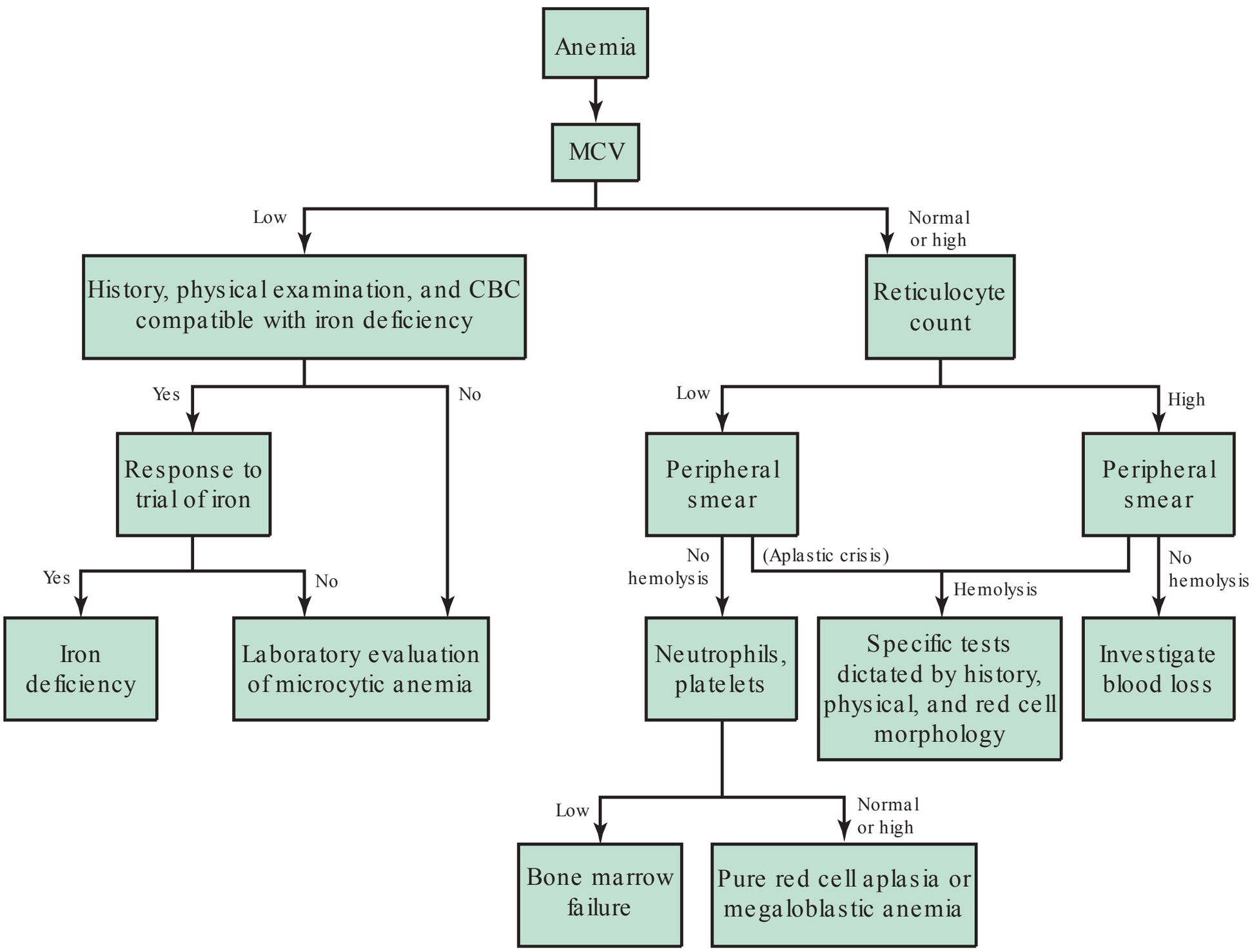
Anemia is a relatively common finding, and identifying the cause is important. Even though anemia in childhood has many causes, the correct diagnosis can usually be established with relatively little laboratory cost. Frequently the cause is identified with a careful history. Nutritional causes should be sought by inquiry about dietary intake; growth and development; and symptoms of chronic disease, malabsorption, or blood loss. Hemolytic disease may be associated with a history of jaundice (including neonatal jaundice) or by a

family history of anemia, jaundice, gallbladder disease, splenomegaly, or splenectomy. The child's ethnicity may suggest the possibility of certain hemoglobinopathies or deficiencies of red cell enzymes, such as glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD). The review of systems may reveal clues to a previously unsuspected systemic disease associated with anemia. The patient's age is important because some causes of anemia are age related. For example, patients with iron deficiency anemia (IDA) and β-globin disorders present more commonly at ages 6–36 months than at other times in life.

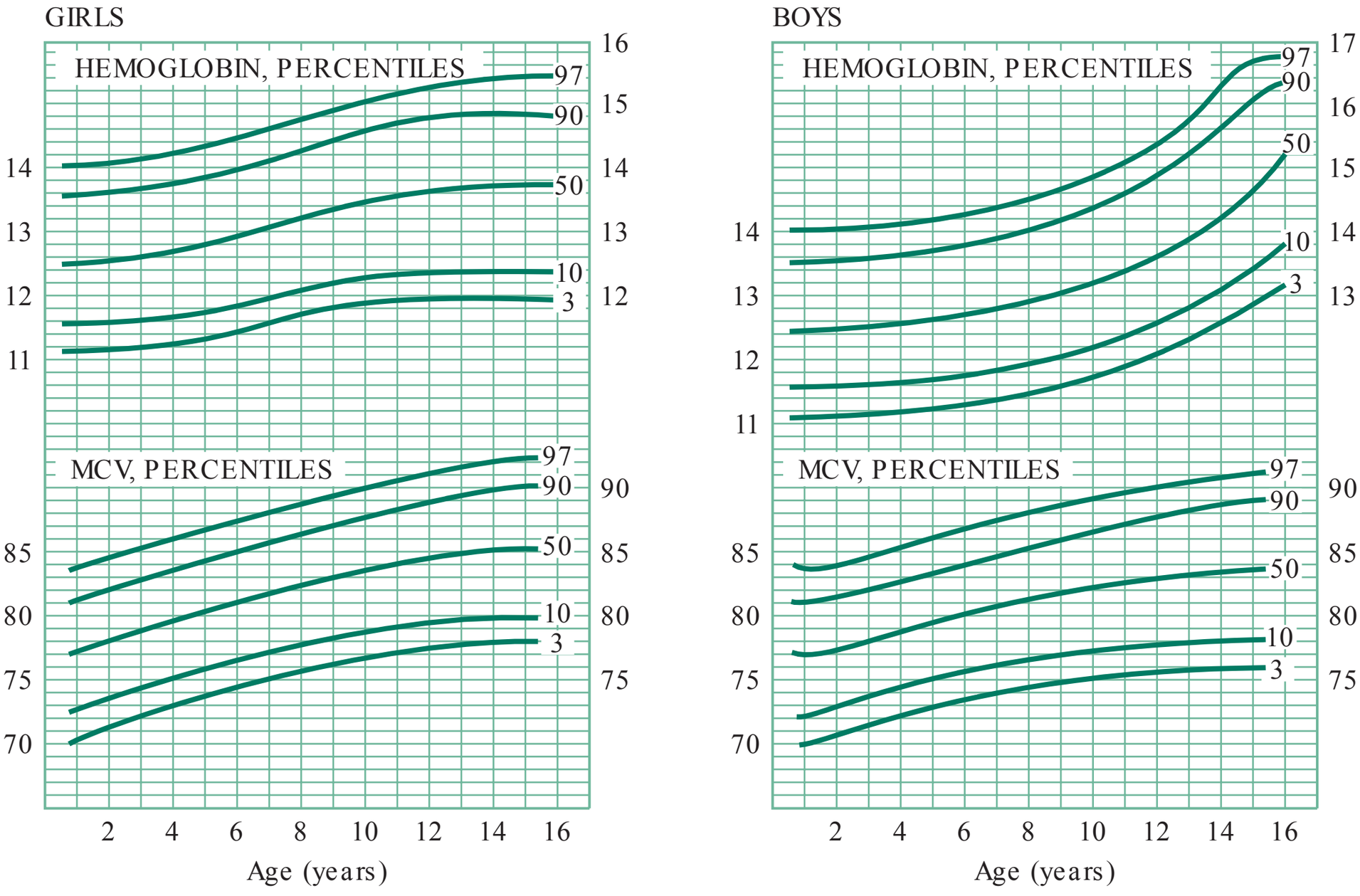
The physical examination may also reveal clues to the cause of anemia. Poor growth may suggest chronic disease or hypothyroidism. Congenital anomalies may be associated with constitutional aplastic anemia (Fanconi anemia) or with congenital hypoplastic anemia (Diamond-Blackfan anemia). Other disorders may be suggested by the findings of petechiae or purpura (leukemia, aplastic anemia, hemolytic uremic syndrome), jaundice (hemolysis or liver disease), generalized lymphadenopathy (leukemia, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, HIV infection), splenomegaly (leukemia, sickle hemoglobinopathy syndromes, hereditary spherocytosis, liver disease, hypersplenism), or evidence of chronic or recurrent infections.

The initial laboratory evaluation of the anemic child consists of a complete blood count (CBC) with differential and platelet count, review of the peripheral blood smear, and a reticulocyte count. The algorithm in Figure 30–1 uses limited laboratory information, together with the history and physical examination, to reach a specific diagnosis or to focus additional laboratory investigations on a limited diagnostic category (eg, microcytic anemia, bone marrow failure, pure red cell aplasia, or hemolytic disease). This diagnostic scheme depends principally on the MCV to determine whether the anemia is microcytic, normocytic, or macrocytic, according to the percentile curves of Dallman and Siimes (Figure 30–2).

Although the incidence of (ID) in the United States has decreased significantly with improvements in infant nutrition, it remains an important cause of microcytic anemia, especially at ages 6–24 months. A trial of therapeutic iron is appropriate in such children, provided the dietary history is compatible with ID and the physical examination or CBC



▲**Figure 30–1.** Investigation of anemia.



▲**Figure 30–2.** Hemoglobin and red cell volume in infancy and childhood. (Reproduced, with permission, from Dallman PR, Siimes MA: Percentile curves for hemoglobin and red cell volume in infancy and childhood. J Pediatr 1979;94:26.)

does not suggest an alternative cause for the anemia. If a trial of therapeutic iron fails to correct the anemia and microcytosis, further evaluation is warranted.

Another key element of Figure 30–1 is the use of both the reticulocyte count and the peripheral blood smear to determine whether a normocytic or macrocytic anemia is due to hemolysis. Typically hemolytic disease is associated with an elevated reticulocyte count, but some children with chronic hemolysis initially present during a period of a virus-induced aplasia when the reticulocyte count is not elevated. Thus, review of the peripheral blood smear for evidence of hemolysis (eg, spherocytes, red cell fragmentation, sickle forms) is important in the evaluation of children with normocytic anemias and low reticulocyte counts. When hemolysis is suggested, the correct diagnosis may be suspected by specific abnormalities of red cell morphology or by clues from the history or physical examination. Autoimmune hemolysis is usually excluded by a negative direct antiglobulin test (DAT). Review of blood counts and the peripheral blood smears of the mother and father may suggest genetic disorders such as hereditary spherocytosis. Children with normocytic or macrocytic anemias, with relatively low reticulocyte counts and no evidence of hemolysis on the blood smear, usually have anemias caused by inadequate erythropoiesis in the bone marrow. The presence of neutropenia or thrombocytopenia in such children suggests the possibility of aplastic anemia, malignancy, or severe folate or vitamin B_{12} deficiency, and usually dictates examination of the bone marrow.

Pure red cell aplasia may be congenital (Diamond-Blackfan anemia), acquired, and transient (transient erythroblastopenia of childhood); a manifestation of a systemic disease such as renal disease or hypothyroidism; or associated with malnutrition or mild deficiencies of folate or vitamin B_{12}.

Janus J, Moerschel S: Evaluation of anemia in children. Am Fam Physician 2010;15:1462–1471 [PMID: 20540485].

PURE RED CELL APLASIA

Infants and children with normocytic or macrocytic anemia, a low reticulocyte count, and normal or elevated numbers of neutrophils and platelets should be suspected of having pure red cell aplasia. Examination of the peripheral blood smear in such cases is important because signs of hemolytic disease suggest chronic hemolysis complicated by an aplastic crisis due to parvovirus infection. Appreciation of this phenomenon is important because chronic hemolytic disease may not

be diagnosed until the anemia is exacerbated by an episode of red cell aplasia and subsequent rapidly falling hemoglobin level. In such cases, cardiovascular compromise and congestive heart failure may develop quickly.

1. Congenital Hypoplastic Anemia (Diamond-Blackfan Anemia)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Age: birth to 1 year.
- Macrocytic anemia with reticulocytopenia.
- Bone marrow with erythroid hypoplasia.
- Short stature or congenital anomalies in one-third of patients.

» General Considerations

Diamond-Blackfan anemia is a relatively rare cause of anemia that usually presents at 2–3 months of age. To date, mutations of genes encoding ribosomal proteins occurring with autosomal dominance have been recognized. Early diagnosis is important because treatment with corticosteroids results in increased erythropoiesis in 80% of patients, thus avoiding the difficulties and complications of long-term chronic transfusion therapy.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Signs and symptoms are generally those of chronic anemia, such as pallor and congestive heart failure. Jaundice, splenomegaly, or other evidence of hemolysis are usually absent. Short stature or other congenital anomalies are present in 50% of patients. A wide variety of anomalies have been described; craniofacial and triphalangeal thumbs are the most common.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diamond-Blackfan anemia is characterized by severe macrocytic anemia and marked reticulocytopenia. The neutrophil count is usually normal or slightly decreased, and the platelet count is normal, elevated, or decreased. The bone marrow usually shows a marked decrease in erythroid precursors but is otherwise normal. In older children, fetal hemoglobin levels are usually increased and there is evidence of persistent fetal erythropoiesis, such as the presence of the i antigen on erythrocytes. In addition, the level of adenosine deaminase in erythrocytes is elevated.

» Differential Diagnosis

The principal differential diagnosis is transient erythroblastopenia of childhood. Children with Diamond-Blackfan anemia generally present at an earlier age, often have macrocytosis, and have evidence of fetal erythropoiesis and an elevated level of red cell adenosine deaminase. In addition, short stature and congenital anomalies are not associated with transient erythroblastopenia. Last, transient erythroblastopenia of childhood usually resolves within 6–8 weeks of diagnosis, whereas Diamond-Blackfan anemia is a lifelong affliction. Other disorders associated with decreased red cell production such as renal failure, hypothyroidism, and the anemia of chronic disease need to be considered.

» Treatment

Oral corticosteroids should be initiated at the time of diagnosis. Eight percent of patients respond to prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d, and many who respond subsequently tolerate significant tapering of the dose. Patients who are unresponsive to prednisone require chronic transfusion therapy, which inevitably causes transfusion-induced hemosiderosis and the need for chelation. Bone marrow transplant is an alternative definitive therapy that should be considered for transfusion-dependent patients who have HLA-identical siblings. Unpredictable spontaneous remissions occur in up to 20% of patients.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for patients responsive to corticosteroids is generally good, particularly if remission is maintained with low doses of alternate-day prednisone. Patients dependent on transfusion are at risk for the complications of hemosiderosis. There is an increased risk for the development of solid tumors.

Horos R, von Lindern M: Molecular mechanisms of pathology and treatment in Diamond Blackfan Anaemia. Br J Haematol 2012;159:514–527 [PMID: 23016900].

2. Transient Erythroblastopenia of Childhood

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Age: 6 months to 4 years.
- Normocytic anemia with reticulocytopenia.
- Absence of hepatosplenomegaly or lymphadenopathy.
- Erythroid precursors initially absent from bone marrow.

» General Considerations

Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood is a relatively common cause of acquired anemia in early childhood. The disorder is suspected when a normocytic anemia is discovered during evaluation of pallor or when a CBC is obtained for another reason. Because the anemia is due to decreased red cell production, and thus develops slowly, the cardiovascular system has time to compensate. Therefore, children with hemoglobin levels as low as 4–5 g/dL may look remarkably well. The disorder is thought to be autoimmune in most cases, because IgG from some patients has been shown to suppress erythropoiesis in vitro.

» Clinical Findings

Pallor is the most common sign, and hepatosplenomegaly and lymphadenopathy are absent. The anemia is normocytic, and the peripheral blood smear shows no evidence of hemolysis. The platelet count is normal or elevated, and the neutrophil count is normal or, in some cases, decreased. Early in the course, no reticulocytes are identified. The Coombs test is negative, and there is no evidence of chronic renal disease, hypothyroidism, or other systemic disorder. Bone marrow examination shows severe erythroid hypoplasia initially; subsequently, erythroid hyperplasia develops along with reticulocytosis, and the anemia resolves.

» Differential Diagnosis

Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood must be differentiated from Diamond-Blackfan anemia, particularly in infants younger than 1 year. In contrast to Diamond-Blackfan anemia, transient erythroblastopenia is not associated with macrocytosis, short stature, or congenital anomalies, or with evidence of fetal erythropoiesis prior to the phase of recovery. Also in contrast to Diamond-Blackfan anemia, transient erythroblastopenia is associated with normal levels of red cell adenosine deaminase. Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood must also be differentiated from chronic disorders associated with decreased red cell production, such as renal failure, hypothyroidism, and other chronic states of infection or inflammation. As with other single cytopenias, the possibility of malignancy (ie, leukemia) should always be considered, particularly if fever, bone pain, hepatosplenomegaly, or lymphadenopathy is present. In such cases, examination of the bone marrow is generally diagnostic. Confusion may sometimes arise when the anemia of transient erythroblastopenia is first identified during the early phase of recovery when the reticulocyte count is high. In such cases, the disorder may be confused with the anemia of acute blood loss or with hemolytic disease. In contrast to hemolytic disorders, transient erythroblastopenia of childhood is not associated with jaundice or peripheral destruction of red cells.

» Treatment & Prognosis

By definition, this is a transient disorder. Some children require red cell transfusions if cardiovascular compromise is present. Resolution of the anemia is heralded by an increase in the reticulocyte count, which generally occurs within 4–8 weeks of diagnosis. Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood is not treated with corticosteroids because of its short course.

NUTRITIONAL ANEMIAS

1. Iron-Deficiency Anemia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pallor and fatigue.
- Poor dietary intake of iron (ages 6–24 months).
- Chronic blood loss (age > 2 years).
- Microcytic hypochromic anemia.

» General Considerations

Iron deficiency (ID) and iron deficiency anemia (IDA) are a worldwide concern. ID is defined as a state in which there is insufficient iron to maintain normal physiologic functions such that iron stores (serum ferritin or bone marrow iron content) are reduced. IDA is defined as a hemoglobin more than 2 standard deviations below normal for age and gender, which has developed as a consequence of ID.

Normal-term infants are born with sufficient iron stores to prevent ID for the first 4 months of life, whereas premature infants have reduced iron stores since iron is predominantly acquired in the last trimester. Thus premature infants, as well as those with low birth weight, neonatal anemia, perinatal blood loss, or subsequent hemorrhage may have reduced iron stores. Breast milk is low in iron relative to cow's milk and fortified formulas, and without iron supplementation, ID may develop in exclusively breast-fed children.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms and signs vary with the severity of the deficiency. ID is usually asymptomatic. IDA may be associated with, pallor, fatigue, and irritability. A history of pica is common. It is controversial whether or not ID/IDA adversely affects long-term neurodevelopment and behavior. IDA is associated with increased lead absorption and subsequent neurotoxicity.

B. Laboratory Findings

According to the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) 2010 guidelines, screening for anemia should be performed at about 12 months of age with determination of hemoglobin concentration and an assessment of risk factors for ID/IDA. Risks include low socioeconomic status, prematurity or low birth weight, lead exposure, exclusive breast-feeding beyond 4 months of age without iron supplementation, weaning to whole milk or complementary foods that do not include iron, feeding problems, poor growth, and inadequate nutrition. If the hemoglobin is less than 11 mg/dL or there is a high risk for ID, an iron evaluation should be performed. There is no single measurement that will document the iron status; recommended tests include serum ferritin and C-reactive protein or reticulocyte hemoglobin concentration.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis is that of microcytic, hypochromic anemia. The possibility of thalassemia (α-thalassemia, β-thalassemia, and hemoglobin E disorders) should be considered, especially in infants of African, Mediterranean, or Asian ethnic background. In contrast to infants with ID, those with thalassemia generally have an elevated red cell number and are less likely, in mild cases, to have an elevated RBC distribution width (the index of the MCV divided by the red cell number is usually < 13). Thalassemias are associated with normal or increased levels of serum iron and ferritin and with normal iron-binding capacity. The hemoglobin electrophoresis in β-thalassemia minor typically shows an elevation of hemoglobin A_2 levels, but coexistent ID may lower the percentage of hemoglobin A_2 into the normal range. Hemoglobin electrophoresis will also identify children with hemoglobin E, a cause of microcytosis common in Southeast Asians. In contrast, the hemoglobin electrophoresis in α-thalassemia trait is normal. Lead poisoning has also been associated with microcytic anemia, but anemia with lead levels less than 40 mg/dL is often due to coexistent ID.

The anemia of chronic inflammation or infection is normocytic but in late stages may be microcytic. This anemia is usually suspected because of the presence of a chronic systemic disorder and an elevated CRP. Relatively mild infections, particularly during infancy, may cause transient anemia. Thus, screening tests for anemia should not be obtained within 3–4 weeks of such infections.

» Treatment

The AAP has published guidelines for routine iron intake for children. If a child has hemoglobin of 10–11 mg/dL at the 12-month screening visit, the child can be closely monitored or empirically treated with iron supplementation with a recheck of hemoglobin in one month.

If a child is found to have ID/IDA, the recommended oral dose of elemental iron is 6 mg/kg/d in three divided daily doses. Parenteral administration of iron is rarely necessary. Iron therapy results in an increased reticulocyte count within 3–5 days, which is maximal between 5 and 7 days. The rate of hemoglobin rise is inversely related to the hemoglobin level at diagnosis. Resolution of the anemia is within 4–6 weeks. Treatment is generally continued for a few additional months to replenish iron stores.

Baker RD, Greer FR; the Committee on Nutrition: Diagnosis and prevention of iron deficiency and iron-deficiency anemia in infants and young children (0–3 years of age). Pediatrics 2010;126:1040–1050 [PMID: 2093825].

Eden AN, Sandoval C: Iron deficiency in infants and toddlers in the United States. Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2012;29:704–709 [PMID: 2303474].

2. Megaloblastic Anemias

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pallor and fatigue.
- Nutritional deficiency or intestinal malabsorption.
- Macrocytic anemia.
- Megaloblastic bone marrow changes.

» General Considerations

Megaloblastic anemia is a macrocytic anemia caused by deficiency of cobalamin (vitamin B_{12}), folic acid, or both. Cobalamin deficiency due to dietary insufficiency may occur in infants who are breast fed by mothers who are strict vegetarians or who have pernicious anemia. Intestinal malabsorption is the usual cause of cobalamin deficiency in children and occurs with Crohn disease, chronic pancreatitis, bacterial overgrowth of the small bowel, infection with the fish tapeworm (Diphyllobothrium latum), or after surgical resection of the terminal ileum. Deficiencies due to inborn errors of metabolism (transcobalamin II deficiency and methylmalonic aciduria) also have been described. Malabsorption of cobalamin due to deficiency of intrinsic factor (pernicious anemia) is rare in childhood.

Folic acid deficiency may be caused by inadequate dietary intake, malabsorption, increased folate requirements, or some combination of the three. Folate deficiency due to dietary deficiency alone is rare but occurs in severely malnourished infants and has been reported in infants fed with goat's milk not fortified with folic acid. Folic acid is absorbed in the jejunum, and deficiencies are encountered in malabsorptive syndromes such as celiac disease. Anticonvulsion medications (eg, phenytoin and phenobarbital) and cytotoxic drugs (eg, methotrexate) also have been associated with folate

deficiency, caused by interference with folate absorption or metabolism. Finally, folic acid deficiency is more likely to develop in infants and children with increased requirements. This occurs during infancy because of rapid growth and also in children with chronic hemolytic anemia. Premature infants are particularly susceptible to the development of the deficiency because of low body stores of folate.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Infants with megaloblastic anemia may show pallor and mild jaundice as a result of ineffective erythropoiesis. Classically, the tongue is smooth and beefy red. Infants with cobalamin deficiency may be irritable and may be poor feeders. Older children with cobalamin deficiency may complain of paresthesias, weakness, or an unsteady gait, and may show decreased vibratory sensation and proprioception on neurologic examination.

B. Laboratory Findings

The laboratory findings of megaloblastic anemia include an elevated MCV and mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH). The peripheral blood smear shows numerous macro-ovalocytes with anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. Neutrophils are large and have hypersegmented nuclei. The white cell and platelet counts are normal with mild deficiencies but may be decreased in more severe cases. Examination of the bone marrow is not indicated, but it typically shows erythroid hyperplasia with large erythroid and myeloid precursors. Nuclear maturation is delayed compared with cytoplasmic maturation, and erythropoiesis is ineffective. The serum indirect bilirubin concentration may be slightly elevated.

Children with cobalamin deficiency have a low serum vitamin B_{12} level, but decreased levels of serum vitamin B_{12} may also be found in about 30% of patients with folic acid deficiency. Negative results should not negate treatment if clinically compatible symptoms are present. The level of red cell folate is a better reflection of folate stores than is the serum folic acid level. Elevated serum levels of metabolic intermediates (methylmalonic acid and homocysteine) may help establish the correct diagnosis. Elevated methylmalonic acid levels are consistent with cobalamin deficiency and generally decrease with treatment, whereas elevated levels of homocysteine occur with both cobalamin and folate deficiency.

» Differential Diagnosis

Most macrocytic anemias in pediatrics are not megaloblastic. Other causes of an increased MCV include drug therapy (eg, anticonvulsants, anti-HIV nucleoside analogues), Down syndrome, an elevated reticulocyte count (hemolytic anemias), bone marrow failure syndromes (Fanconi anemia, Diamond-Blackfan anemia), liver disease, and hypothyroidism.

» Treatment

Treatment of cobalamin deficiency due to inadequate dietary intake is readily accomplished with high-dose oral supplementation that is as effective as parenteral treatment if absorption is normal. Folic acid deficiency is treated effectively with oral folic acid in most cases. Children at risk for the development of folic acid deficiencies, such as premature infants and those with chronic hemolysis, are often given folic acid prophylactically.

Stabler SP: Vitamin B_{12} deficiency. New Engl J Med 2013;368: 149–160 [PMID: 23301732].

ANEMIA OF CHRONIC DISORDERS

Anemia is a common manifestation of many chronic illnesses in children. In some instances, causes may be mixed. For example, children with chronic disorders involving intestinal malabsorption or blood loss may have anemia of chronic inflammation in combination with nutritional deficiencies of iron, folate, or cobalamin. In other settings, the anemia is due to dysfunction of a single organ (eg, renal failure, hypothyroidism), and correction of the underlying abnormality resolves the anemia.

1. Anemia of Chronic Inflammation

Anemia is frequently associated with chronic infections or inflammatory diseases. The anemia is usually mild to moderate in severity, with a hemoglobin level of 8–12 g/dL. In general, the severity of the anemia corresponds to the severity of the underlying disorder, and there may be microcytosis, but not hypochromia. The reticulocyte count is low. The anemia is thought to be due to inflammatory cytokines that inhibit erythropoiesis, and shunting of iron into, and impaired iron release from, reticuloendothelial cells. High levels of hepcidin, a peptide produced in the liver during infection or inflammation, reduce iron absorption by the duodenum and release from macrophages. Levels of erythropoietin are relatively low for the severity of the anemia. The serum iron concentration is low, but in contrast to ID, anemia of chronic inflammation is not associated with elevated iron-binding capacity and is associated with an elevated serum ferritin level. Treatment consists of correction of the underlying disorder, which, if controlled, generally results in improvement in hemoglobin level.

Ganz T: Hepcidin and iron regulation, 10 years later. Blood 2011;117:4425 [PMID: 21346250].

2. Anemia of Chronic Renal Failure

Severe normocytic anemia occurs in most forms of renal disease that have progressed to renal insufficiency. Although

white cell and platelet production remain normal, the bone marrow shows significant hypoplasia of the erythroid series and the reticulocyte count is low. The principal mechanism is deficiency of erythropoietin, a hormone produced in the kidney, but other factors may contribute to the anemia. In the presence of significant uremia, a component of hemolysis may also be present. Recombinant human erythropoietin (epoetin alfa) and iron correct the anemia, largely eliminating the need for transfusions.

3. Anemia of Hypothyroidism

Some patients with hypothyroidism develop significant anemia. Occasionally, anemia is detected before the diagnosis of the underlying disorder. A decreased growth velocity in an anemic child suggests hypothyroidism. The anemia is usually normocytic or macrocytic, but it is not megaloblastic and, hence not due to deficiencies of cobalamin or folate. Replacement therapy with thyroid hormone is usually effective in correcting the anemia.

CONGENITAL HEMOLYTIC ANEMIAS: RED CELL MEMBRANE DEFECTS

The congenital hemolytic anemias are divided into three categories: defects of the red cell membrane, hemoglobinopathies, and disorders of red cell metabolism. Hereditary spherocytosis and elliptocytosis are the most common red cell membrane disorders. The diagnosis is suggested by the peripheral blood smear, which shows characteristic red cell morphology (eg, spherocytes, elliptocytes). These disorders usually have an autosomal dominant inheritance, and the diagnosis may be suggested by family history. The hemolysis is due to the deleterious effect of the membrane abnormality on red cell deformability. Decreased cell deformability leads to entrapment of the abnormally shaped red cells in the spleen. Many patients have splenomegaly, and splenectomy usually alleviates the hemolysis.

1. Hereditary Spherocytosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Anemia and jaundice.
- Splenomegaly.
- Positive family history of anemia, jaundice, or gallstones.
- Spherocytosis with increased reticulocytes.
- Increased osmotic fragility.
- Negative DAT.

» General Considerations

Hereditary spherocytosis is a relatively common inherited hemolytic anemia that occurs in all ethnic groups, but is most common in persons of northern European ancestry, in whom the incidence is about 1:5000. The disorder is marked by variable degrees of anemia, jaundice, and splenomegaly. In some persons, the disorder is mild and there is no anemia because erythroid hyperplasia fully compensates for hemolysis. In others, symptoms and transfusion dependence may be present prior to splenectomy. The hallmark of hereditary spherocytosis is the presence of microspherocytes in the peripheral blood. The disease is inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion in about 75% of cases; the remaining cases are thought to be autosomal recessive or due to de novo mutations.

Hereditary spherocytosis is secondary to alteration of genes encoding for spectrin, band 3, ankyrin, or protein 4.2 of the red cell membrane; spectrin abnormalities are more often diagnosed in childhood and band 3 in adulthood. The vertical linkages in the membrane are impaired so that spherocytes form. These are poorly deformable resulting in a shortened life span because they are trapped in the microcirculation of the spleen and engulfed by splenic macrophages. The specific membrane defect is of no major clinical implication.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Hemolysis causes significant neonatal hyperbilirubinemia in 50% of affected children. Splenomegaly subsequently develops in the majority and is often present by age 5 years. Jaundice is variably present and in many patients may be noted only during infection. Patients with significant chronic anemia may complain of pallor, fatigue, or malaise. Intermittent exacerbations of the anemia are caused by increased hemolysis, splenic sequestration or by aplastic crises, and may be associated with severe weakness, fatigue, fever, abdominal pain, or even heart failure.

B. Laboratory Findings

Most patients have mild chronic hemolysis with hemoglobin levels of 9–12 g/dL. In some cases, the hemolysis is fully compensated and the hemoglobin level is in the normal range. Rare cases of severe disease require frequent transfusions. The anemia is usually normocytic and hyperchromic, and many patients have an elevated MCH concentration. The peripheral blood smear shows numerous microspherocytes and polychromasia. The reticulocyte count is elevated, often higher than might be expected for the degree of anemia. WBC and platelet counts are usually normal. The osmotic fragility is increased, particularly after incubation at 37°C for 24 hours. Serum bilirubin usually shows an elevation in the unconjugated fraction. The DAT is negative.

» Differential Diagnosis

Spherocytes are frequently present in persons with immune hemolysis. Thus, in the newborn, hereditary spherocytosis must be distinguished from hemolytic disease caused by ABO or other blood type incompatibilities. Older patients with autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA) frequently present with jaundice, splenomegaly, and spherocytes on the peripheral blood smear. The DAT is positive in most cases of immune hemolysis and negative in hereditary spherocytosis. Occasionally, the diagnosis is confused in patients with splenomegaly from other causes, especially when hypersplenism increases red cell destruction and when some spherocytes are noted on the blood smear. In such cases, the true cause of the splenomegaly may be suggested by signs or symptoms of portal hypertension or by laboratory evidence of chronic liver disease. In contrast to children with hereditary spherocytosis, those with hypersplenism typically have some degree of thrombocytopenia or neutropenia.

» Complications

Severe jaundice may occur in the neonatal period and, if not controlled by phototherapy, may occasionally require exchange transfusion. Intermittent or persistent splenomegaly occurs in 10%–25% of patients and may require removal. Splenectomy is associated with an increased risk of overwhelming bacterial infections, particularly with pneumococci. Gallstones occur in 60%–70% of adults who have not undergone splenectomy and may form as early as age 5–10 years.

» Treatment

Supportive measures include the administration of folic acid to prevent the development of red cell hypoplasia due to folate deficiency. Acute exacerbations of anemia, due to increased rates of hemolysis or to aplastic crises caused by infection with human parvovirus, may be severe enough to require red cell transfusions. Splenectomy may be indicated depending on clinical severity and always results in significant improvement. This increases survival of the spherocytic red cells and leads to complete correction of the anemia in most cases. Except in unusually severe cases, the procedure should be postponed until the child is at least age 5 years because of the greater risk of postsplenectomy sepsis prior to this age. All patients scheduled for splenectomy should be immunized with pneumococcal, Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib), and meningococcal vaccines prior to the procedure, and some clinicians recommend penicillin prophylaxis afterward. Asplenic patients with fever should be promptly evaluated for severe infection. Splenectomy prevents the subsequent development of cholelithiasis and eliminates the need for the activity restrictions. However, these benefits must be weighed against the risks of the surgical procedure and the subsequent lifelong risk of postsplenectomy sepsis.

» Prognosis

Splenectomy eliminates signs and symptoms in all but the most severe cases and reduces the risk of cholelithiasis. The abnormal red cell morphology and increased osmotic fragility persist without clinical consequence.

Gallagher PG: Abnormalities of erythrocyte membranes. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60:1349–1362 [PMID: 24237975].

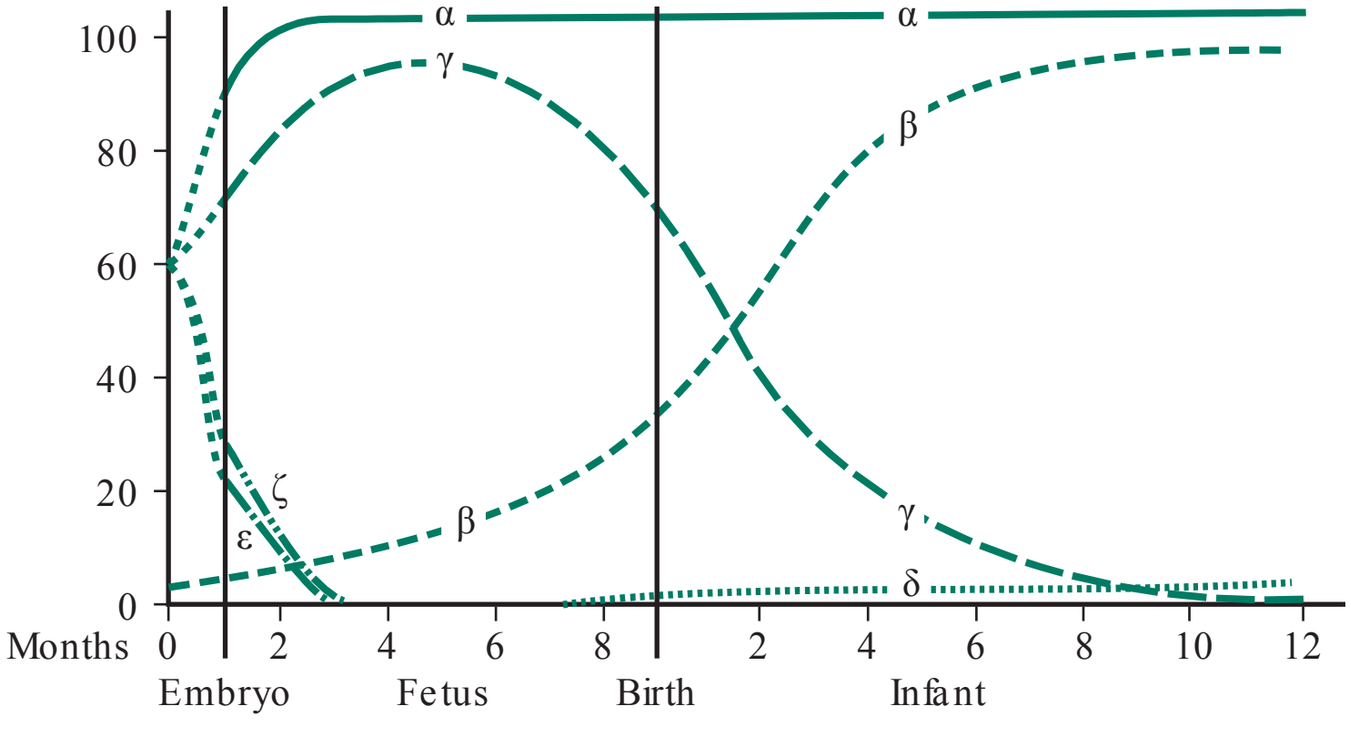
2. Hereditary Elliptocytosis

Hereditary elliptocytosis is a heterogeneous disorder that ranges in severity from an asymptomatic state with almost normal red cell morphology to about 10% having moderate to severe hemolytic anemia. Most affected persons have numerous elliptocytes on the peripheral blood smear, but mild or no hemolysis. Those with hemolysis have an elevated reticulocyte count and may have jaundice and splenomegaly. This disorder is caused by weakened horizontal linkages in the red cell membrane skeleton due either to a defective spectrin dimer-dimer interaction or a defective spectrin-actin protein 4.1R junctional complex. Inheritance is autosomal dominant. Because most patients are asymptomatic, no treatment is indicated. Patients with significant degrees of hemolytic anemia may benefit from folate supplementation or splenectomy.

Some infants with hereditary elliptocytosis present in the neonatal period with moderate to marked hemolysis and significant hyperbilirubinemia. This disorder has been termed transient infantile pyknocytosis because such infants exhibit bizarre erythrocyte morphology with elliptocytes, budding red cells, and small misshapen cells that defy description. The MCV is low, and the anemia may be severe enough to require red cell transfusions. Typically, one parent has hereditary elliptocytosis, usually mild or asymptomatic. The infant's hemolysis gradually abates during the first year of life, and the erythrocyte morphology subsequently becomes more typical of hereditary elliptocytosis.

CONGENITAL HEMOLYTIC ANEMIAS: HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES

The hemoglobinopathies are an extremely heterogeneous group of congenital disorders that occur in all ethnic groups. The relatively high frequency of these genetic variants is related to the malaria protection afforded to heterozygous individuals. The hemoglobinopathies are generally classified into two major groups. The first, the thalassemias, are caused by quantitative deficiencies in the production of globin chains. These quantitative defects in globin synthesis cause microcytic and hypochromic anemias. The second group of



▲**Figure 30–3.** Changes in hemoglobin polypeptide chains during human development. (Reproduced, with permission, from Miller DR, Baehner RL: Blood Diseases of Infancy and Childhood. 6th ed. Mosby; 1989.)

hemoglobinopathies consists of those caused by structural abnormalities of globin chains. The most important of these, hemoglobins S, C, and E, are all the result of point mutations and single amino acid substitutions in β-globin. Many, but not all, infants with hemoglobinopathies are identified by routine neonatal screening.

Figure 30–3 shows the normal developmental changes that occur in globin-chain production during gestation and the first year of life. At birth, the predominant hemoglobin is fetal hemoglobin (hemoglobin F), which is composed of two α-globin chains and two γ-globin chains. Subsequently, the production of γ-globin decreases and β-globin increases so that adult hemoglobin (two α and two β chains) predominates after 2–4 months. Because α-globin chains are present in both fetal and adult hemoglobin, disorders of α-globin synthesis (α-thalassemia) are clinically manifest in the newborn as well as later in life. In contrast, patients with β-globin disorders such as β-thalassemia and sickle cell disease are generally asymptomatic during the first 3–4 months of age and present clinically after γ-chain production and therefore fetal hemoglobin levels have decreased substantially.

1. α-Thalassemia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Predominately African, Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, Chinese, or Southeast Asian ancestry.
- Microcytic, hypochromic anemia of variable severity.
- Generally Bart's hemoglobin detected by neonatal screening.

» General Considerations

Most of the α-thalassemia syndromes are the result of deletions of one or more of the four α-globin genes on chromosome 16, although nondeletional α+ mutations also occur. Excess non–α-globin chains damage the red cell membrane, causing extravascular hemolysis. The variable severity of the α-thalassemia syndromes is related to the number of gene deletions (Table 30–1). The severity of the α-thalassemia syndromes varies among affected ethnic

Table 30–1. The α-thalassemias.

Usual Genotypes[a]	α–Gene Number	Clinical Features	Hemoglobin Electrophoresis[b]	
			Birth	> 6 mo
αα/αα	4	Normal	N	N
–α/αα	3	Silent carrier	0%–3% Hb Bart's	N
–/αα or –α/–α	2	α-Thal trait	2%–10% Hb Bart's[c]	N
–/–α	1	Hb H disease	15%–30% Hb Bart's	Hb; H present
–/–	0	Fetal hydrops	> 75% Hb Bart's	—

[a]α indicates presence of α-globin gene; – α indicates deletion of α-globin gene.
[b]N = normal results, Hb = hemoglobin, Hb Bart's = γ_4, Hb H = β_4.
[c]The level of Hb Bart's does not directly correlate with the number of deleted α genes.

groups. In persons of African ancestry, α-thalassemia is usually caused by the deletion of only one of the two α-globin genes on each chromosome. Thus, in the African population, heterozygous individuals are silent carriers and homozygous individuals have α-thalassemia trait. In Asians, deletions of one or of both α-globin genes on the same chromosome are common; heterozygous individuals are either silent carriers or have α-thalassemia trait, and homozygous individuals or compound heterozygous individuals have α-thalassemia trait, hemoglobin H disease, or hydrops fetalis. Thus, the presence of α-thalassemia in a child of Asian ancestry may have important implications for genetic counseling, whereas this is not usually the case in families of African ancestry.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical findings depend on the number of α-globin genes deleted. Table 30–1 summarizes the α-thalassemia syndromes.

Persons with three α-globin genes (one-gene deletion) are asymptomatic and have no hematologic abnormalities. Hemoglobin electrophoresis in the neonatal period shows 0%–3% Bart's hemoglobin, which is a variant hemoglobin composed of four γ-globin chains. Hemoglobin electrophoresis after the first few months of life is normal. Thus, this condition is usually suspected only in the context of family studies or when a small amount of Bart's hemoglobin is detected by neonatal screening for hemoglobinopathies.

Persons with two α-globin genes (two-gene deletion) are typically asymptomatic. The MCV is usually less than 100 fL at birth. Hematologic studies in older infants and children show a normal or slightly decreased hemoglobin level with a low MCV and a slightly hypochromic blood smear with some target cells.

Persons with one α-globin gene (three-gene deletion) have a mild to moderately severe microcytic hemolytic anemia (hemoglobin level of 7–10 g/dL), which may be accompanied by hepatosplenomegaly and some bony abnormalities caused by the expanded medullary space. The reticulocyte count is elevated, and the red cells show marked hypochromia and microcytosis with significant poikilocytosis and some basophilic stippling. Incubation of red cells with brilliant cresyl blue (hemoglobin H preparation) shows inclusion bodies formed by denatured hemoglobin H.

The deletion of all four α-globin genes causes severe intrauterine anemia and results in hydrops fetalis and fetal demise or neonatal death shortly after delivery. Extreme pallor and massive hepatosplenomegaly are present. Hemoglobin electrophoresis reveals a predominance of Bart's hemoglobin with a complete absence of normal fetal or adult hemoglobin.

» Differential Diagnosis

α-Thalassemia trait (two-gene deletion) must be differentiated from other mild microcytic anemias, including ID and β-thalassemia minor (see the next section). In contrast to children with ID, children with α-thalassemia trait show normal or increased levels of ferritin and serum iron. In contrast to children with β-thalassemia minor, children with α-thalassemia trait have a normal hemoglobin electrophoresis after age 4–6 months. Finally, the history of a low MCV (96 fL) at birth or the presence of Bart's hemoglobin on the neonatal hemoglobinopathy screening test suggests α-thalassemia.

Children with hemoglobin H disease may have jaundice and splenomegaly, and the disorder must be differentiated from other hemolytic anemias. The key to the diagnosis is the decreased MCV and the marked hypochromia on the blood smear. With the exception of β-thalassemia, most other significant hemolytic disorders have a normal or elevated MCV and the RBCs are not hypochromic. Infants with hydrops fetalis due to severe α-thalassemia must be distinguished from those with hydrops due to other causes of anemia, such as alloimmunization or parvovirus.

» Complications

The principal complication of α-thalassemia trait is the needless administration of iron, given in the belief that a mild microcytic anemia is due to ID. Persons with hemoglobin H disease may have intermittent exacerbations of their anemia in response to oxidant stress or infection, which occasionally require blood transfusions. Splenomegaly may exacerbate the anemia. Women pregnant with hydropic α-thalassemia fetuses are subject to increased complications of pregnancy, particularly toxemia and postpartum hemorrhage.

» Treatment

Persons with α-thalassemia trait require no treatment. Those with hemoglobin H disease should receive supplemental folic acid and avoid the same oxidant drugs that cause hemolysis in persons with G6PD deficiency, because exposure to these drugs may exacerbate their anemia. The anemia may also be exacerbated during periods of infection, and transfusions may be required. Hypersplenism may develop later in childhood and require surgical splenectomy. Genetic counseling and prenatal diagnosis should be offered to families at risk for hydropic fetuses.

Lal A: Heterogeneity of hemoglobin H disease in childhood. N Engl J Med 2011;364:710 [PMID: 21345100].

Piel FB, Weatherall DJ: The α-thalassemias. N Engl J Med 2014;13:1908–1916 [PMID: 25390741].

2. β-Thalassemia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

β-Thalassemia minor:

- Normal neonatal screening test.
- Predominantly African, Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, or Asian ancestry.
- Mild microcytic, hypochromic anemia.
- No response to iron therapy.
- Elevated level of hemoglobin A_2.

β-Thalassemia intermedia:

- Ancestry as above.
- Microcytic, hypochromic anemia that usually becomes symptomatic after the first few years of life with hepatosplenomegaly.

β-Thalassemia major:

- Neonatal screening shows hemoglobin F only.
- Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, or Asian ancestry.
- Severe microcytic, hypochromic anemia with marked hepatosplenomegaly.

» General Considerations

In contrast to the four α-globin genes, only two β-globin genes are present, one on each chromosome 11. Excess non–β-globin chains damage the red cells, causing extravascular hemolysis. Individuals heterozygous for one β-thalassemia gene generally have β-thalassemia minor. Homozygous individuals generally have β-thalassemia major (Cooley anemia), a severe transfusion-dependent anemia. Individuals with β-thalassemia intermedia, which is more severe than thalassemia minor but is not generally transfusion-dependent, are usually heterozygous for two β^+ mutations (produce reduced quantities of normal A hemoglobin) or have both β^0 (production of no normal A hemoglobin) and a β+ mutation, or have an alternative mutation such as E in conjunction with a severe β^+ or β^0 mutation. Thalassemia major is the most common worldwide cause of transfusion-dependent anemia in childhood. In addition, β-thalassemia genes interact with genes for structural β-globin variants, such as hemoglobin S and hemoglobin E to cause serious disease in compound heterozygous individuals. These disorders are discussed further in the sections dealing with sickle cell disease and with hemoglobin E disorders.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Persons with β-thalassemia minor are usually asymptomatic with a normal physical examination. The time to presentation for those with β-thalassemia intermedia is variable. Those with β-thalassemia major are normal at birth but develop significant anemia during the first year of life. If the disorder is not identified and treated with blood transfusions, such children grow poorly and develop massive hepatosplenomegaly and enlargement of the medullary space with thinning of the bony cortex. The skeletal changes (due to ineffective erythropoiesis) cause characteristic facial deformities (prominent forehead and maxilla) and predispose the child to pathologic fractures.

B. Laboratory Findings

Children with β-thalassemia minor have normal neonatal screening results but subsequently develop a decreased MCV with or without mild anemia. The peripheral blood smear typically shows hypochromia, target cells, and sometimes basophilic stippling. Hemoglobin electrophoresis performed after 6–12 months of age is usually diagnostic when levels of hemoglobin A_2, hemoglobin F, or both are elevated. β-Thalassemia major is often initially suspected when hemoglobin A is absent on neonatal screening. Such infants are hematologically normal at birth, but they develop severe anemia after the first few months of life. The peripheral blood smear typically shows a severe hypochromic, microcytic anemia with marked anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. Target cells are prominent, and nucleated RBCs often exceed the number of circulating WBCs. The hemoglobin level usually falls to 5–6 g/dL or less, and the reticulocyte count is elevated. Platelet and WBC counts may be increased, and the serum indirect bilirubin level is elevated. The bone marrow shows marked erythroid hyperplasia, but this finding is not needed for diagnosis. Hemoglobin electrophoresis shows only fetal hemoglobin and hemoglobin A_2 in children with homozygous β^0-thalassemia.

Those with β^+-thalassemia genes make a variable amount of hemoglobin A, depending on the mutation, but have a marked increase in fetal hemoglobin and hemoglobin A_2 levels. The diagnosis of homozygous β-thalassemia, intermedia or minor, may also be supported by DNA testing.

» Differential Diagnosis

β-Thalassemia minor must be differentiated from other causes of mild microcytic, hypochromic anemias, principally ID and α-thalassemia. In contrast to patients with IDA, those with β-thalassemia minor typically have an elevated number of RBCs, and the index of the MCV divided by the red cell count is under 13. Generally, the finding of an elevated hemoglobin A_2 level is diagnostic; however, the A_2 level may be

lowered by coexistent ID. Thus, in children thought to be iron-deficient, hemoglobin electrophoresis with quantitation of hemoglobin A_2 is sometimes deferred until after a course of iron therapy.

β-Thalassemia major is rarely confused with other disorders. Hemoglobin electrophoresis and family studies readily distinguish it from hemoglobin E/β-thalassemia, which is the other increasingly important cause of transfusion-dependent thalassemia.

» Complications

The principal complication of β-thalassemia minor is the unnecessary use of iron therapy in a futile attempt to correct the microcytic anemia. Children with β-thalassemia major who are inadequately transfused experience poor growth and recurrent infections and may have hepatosplenomegaly, thinning of the cortical bone, and pathologic fractures. Without treatment, most children die within the first decade of life. The principal complications of β-thalassemia major in transfused children are hemosiderosis, splenomegaly, and hypersplenism. Transfusion-related hemosiderosis requires chelation therapy to prevent cardiac, hepatic, and endocrine dysfunction. Noncompliance with chelation in adolescents and young adults may lead to death from congestive heart failure, cardiac arrhythmias, or hepatic failure. Even with adequate transfusions, many patients develop splenomegaly and some degree of hypersplenism. This may require surgical splenectomy because of the increasing transfusion requirements, but the procedure increases the risk of thrombosis, pulmonary hypertension, and overwhelming septicemia.

» Treatment

β-Thalassemia minor requires no specific therapy, but the diagnosis may have important genetic implications for the family. The time to presentation for those with β-thalassemia intermedia is variable. For β-thalassemia major, two treatments are available: chronic transfusion with iron chelation and stem cell transplant. Programs of blood transfusion are generally targeted to maintain a nadir hemoglobin level of 9–10 g/dL. This approach gives increased vigor and well-being, improved growth, and fewer overall complications. However, maintenance of good health requires iron chelation. Small doses of supplemental ascorbic acid may enhance the efficacy of iron chelation. Patients who undergo splenectomy to reduce transfusion requirements, and hence iron loading, should receive pneumococcal vaccine prior to the procedure and instructed in the use of prophylactic penicillin and urgent treatment of all febrile illness after splenectomy. Chronic transfusion therapy is infrequently indicated for individuals with β-thalassemia intermedia.

Bone marrow or umbilical cord blood transplant is an important therapeutic option for children with β-thalassemia major who have an HLA-identical sibling donor. The probability of hematologic cure is greater than 90% when transplant is performed prior to the development of hepatomegaly or portal fibrosis.

Martin A, Thompson AA: Thalassemias. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60:1383–1391 [PMID: 24237977].

Taher AT: Optimal management of β thalassemia intermedia. Br J Haematol 2011;152:512 [PMID: 21250971].

3. Sickle Cell Disease

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Neonatal screening test usually with hemoglobins FS, FSC, or FSA (S > A).
- Predominantly African, Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, Indian, or Caribbean ancestry.
- Anemia, elevated reticulocyte count, usually jaundice.
- Recurrent episodes of musculoskeletal or abdominal pain.
- Often hepatomegaly and splenomegaly that resolves.
- Increased risk of bacterial sepsis.

» General Considerations

Sickle cell disease encompasses a family of disorders with manifestations secondary to the propensity of deoxygenated sickle hemoglobin (S) to polymerize. Polymerization of sickle hemoglobin distorts erythrocyte morphology; decreases red cell deformability; causes a marked reduction in red cell life span; increases blood viscosity; and predisposes to inflammation, coagulation activation, and episodes of vaso-occlusion. Sickle cell anemia, the most severe sickling disorder, is caused by homozygosity for the sickle gene and is the most common form of sickle cell disease. Other clinically important sickling disorders are compound heterozygous conditions in which the sickle gene interacts with genes for hemoglobins C, D_{Punjab}, O_{Arab}, C_{Harlem}, or β-thalassemia.

Overall, sickle cell disease occurs in about 1 of every 400 African-American infants. Eight percent of African Americans are heterozygous carriers of the sickle gene and thus have sickle cell trait.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

These are related to the hemolytic anemia, tissue ischemia, and organ dysfunction caused by vaso-occlusion. They are

most severe in children with sickle cell anemia or sickle β^0-thalassemia. Physical findings are normal at birth, and symptoms are unusual before age 3–4 months because high levels of fetal hemoglobin inhibit sickling. A moderately severe hemolytic anemia may be present by age 1 year. This causes pallor, fatigue, and jaundice, and predisposes to the development of gallstones during childhood and adolescence. Intense congestion of the spleen with sickled cells may cause splenomegaly in early childhood and results in functional asplenia as early as age 3 months in sickle cell anemia. This places children at great risk for overwhelming infection with encapsulated bacteria, particularly pneumococci. Up to 30% of patients experience one or more episodes of acute splenic sequestration, characterized by sudden enlargement of the spleen with pooling of red cells, acute exacerbation of anemia, and, in severe cases, shock and death. Acute exacerbation of anemia also occurs with aplastic crises, usually caused by infection with human parvovirus B19 and other viruses.

Recurrent episodes of vaso-occlusion and tissue ischemia cause acute and chronic problems. Dactylitis, or hand-and-foot syndrome, is the most common initial symptom of the disease and occurs in up to 50% of children with sickle cell anemia before age 3 years. Recurrent episodes of abdominal and musculoskeletal pain may occur throughout life. Overt strokes occur in about 11% of children with sickle cell anemia and tend to be recurrent. Recurrence is significantly reduced with chronic red cell transfusions. The so-called acute chest syndrome, characterized by fever, pleuritic chest pain, and acute pulmonary infiltrates with hypoxemia, is caused by pulmonary infection, infarction, or fat embolism from ischemic bone marrow. All tissues are susceptible to damage from vaso-occlusion, and multiple organ dysfunction is common by adulthood in those with sickle cell anemia or sickle β^0-thalassemia. The common manifestations of sickle cell disease are listed in Table 30–2. Manifestations generally develop less frequently in those with SC and S β^+-thalassemia.

Table 30–2. Common clinical manifestations of sickle cell disease.

	Acute	Chronic
Children	Bacterial sepsis or meningitis[a] Splenic sequestration[a] Aplastic crisis Vaso-occlusive events Dactylitis Bone infarction Acute chest syndrome[a] Stroke[a] Priapism	Functional asplenia Delayed growth and development Avascular necrosis of the hip Hyposthenuria Cholelithiasis
Adults	Bacterial sepsis[a] Aplastic crisis Vaso-occlusive events Bone infarction Acute chest syndrome[a] Stroke[a] Priapism Acute multiorgan failure syndrome[a]	Leg ulcers Proliferative retinopathy Avascular necrosis of the hip Cholecystitis Chronic organ failure[a] Liver Lung Kidney Decreased fertility

[a]Associated with significant mortality rate.

B. Laboratory Findings

Children with sickle cell anemia generally show a baseline hemoglobin level of 7–10 g/dL. This value may fall to life-threatening levels at the time of a splenic sequestration or aplastic crisis; often this occurs in association with parvovirus B19 infection. The baseline reticulocyte count is elevated markedly. The anemia is usually normocytic or macrocytic, and the peripheral blood smear typically shows the characteristic sickle cells as well as numerous target cells. Patients with sickle β-thalassemia also generally have a low MCV and hypochromia. Those with sickle β^+-thalassemia tend to have less hemolysis and anemia. Persons with sickle hemoglobin C disease have fewer sickle forms and more target cells, and the hemoglobin level may be normal or only slightly decreased because the rate of hemolysis is much less than in sickle cell anemia.

Most infants with sickle hemoglobinopathies born in the United States are identified by neonatal screening. Results indicative of possible sickle cell disease require prompt confirmation with hemoglobin electrophoresis. Children with sickle cell anemia and with sickle β^0-thalassemia have only hemoglobins S, F, and A_2. Persons with sickle β^+-thalassemia have a preponderance of hemoglobin S with a lesser amount of hemoglobin A and elevated A_2. Persons with sickle hemoglobin C disease have equal amounts of hemoglobins S and C. The use of solubility tests to screen for the presence of sickle hemoglobin should be avoided because a negative result is frequently encountered in infants with sickle cell disease, and because a positive result in an older child does not differentiate sickle cell trait from sickle cell disease. Thus, hemoglobin electrophoresis is always necessary to accurately identify a sickle disorder. Solubility tests also will not identify hemoglobin variants other than S.

» Differential Diagnosis

Hemoglobin electrophoresis and sometimes hematologic studies of the parents are usually sufficient to confirm sickle cell disease, although DNA testing is available. It is critical to determine whether the child with only F and S hemoglobins on newborn screening has sickle cell anemia, sickle β^0 thalassemia, or is a compound heterozygote for sickle hemoglobin

and pancellular hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin. Such children, when older, typically have 30% fetal hemoglobin and 70% hemoglobin S, and are well.

» Complications

Repeated tissue ischemia and infarction causes damage to virtually every organ system. Table 30–2 lists the most important complications. Patients who require multiple transfusions are at risk of developing transfusion-related hemosiderosis and infections as well as red cell alloantibodies.

» Treatment

The cornerstone of treatment is enrollment in a sickle cell program involving patient and family education, comprehensive outpatient care, and appropriate treatment of acute complications. Important to the success of such a program are psychosocial services, blood bank services, and the ready availability of baseline patient information in the setting in which acute illnesses are evaluated and treated.

Management of sickle cell anemia and sickle β^0-thalassemia includes daily prophylactic penicillin, which should be initiated by age 2 months and continued to age 5 years. The routine use of penicillin prophylaxis in sickle hemoglobin C disease and sickle β^+-thalassemia is controversial. Pneumococcal conjugate and polysaccharide vaccines should be administered to all children who have sickle cell disease. Other routine immunizations, including yearly vaccination against influenza, should be provided. All illnesses associated with fever greater than 38.5°C should be evaluated promptly, bacterial cultures performed, parenteral broad-spectrum antibiotics administered, and careful inpatient or outpatient observation conducted.

Treatment of painful vaso-occlusive episodes includes the maintenance of adequate hydration (with avoidance of overhydration), correction of acidosis if present, administration of adequate analgesia, maintenance of normal oxygen saturation, and the treatment of any associated infections.

Red cell transfusions play an important role in management. Transfusions are indicated to improve oxygen-carrying capacity during acute severe exacerbations of anemia, as occurs during episodes of splenic sequestration or aplastic crisis. Red cell transfusions are not indicated for the treatment of chronic steady-state anemia or for uncomplicated episodes of vaso-occlusive pain. Simple or partial exchange transfusion to reduce the percentage of circulating sickle cells is indicated for some severe acute vaso-occlusive events and may be lifesaving. These events include stroke, moderate to severe acute chest syndrome, and acute life-threatening failure of other organs. Transfusions may be administered prior to high-risk procedures such as surgery with general anesthesia and arteriograms with high ionic contrast materials. Some patients with severe complications may benefit from chronic transfusion therapy. The most common indications for transfusions are stroke or an abnormal transcranial Doppler assessment indicating an increased risk for stroke. Extended matching for red cell antigens reduces the incidence of alloimmunization.

Successful stem cell transplant cures sickle cell disease, but to date its use has been limited because of the risks associated with the procedure, the inability to predict in young children the severity of future complications, and the paucity of HLA-identical sibling donors. Daily administration of oral hydroxyurea increases levels of fetal hemoglobin, decreases hemolysis, and reduces episodes of pain and dactylitis in young children with sickle cell anemia, as well as some evidence for a reduction in acute chest syndrome, hospitalization rates, and transfusions. The hematologic effects and short-term toxicity of hydroxyurea in children are similar to those in adults. Hydroxyurea is recommended for children and adolescents with sickle cell anemia and sickle β^0-thalassemia; efficacy in SC and β^+-thalassemia has not been formally studied.

» Prognosis

Early identification by neonatal screening, combined with sickle cell comprehensive care that includes prescription of prophylactic penicillin, instruction on splenic palpation, and education on the need to urgently seek care when fever occurs, has markedly reduced mortality in childhood. Most patients now live well into adulthood, but eventually succumb to complications.

Thornburg CD et al: Impact of hydroxyurea on clinical events in the BABY HUG trial. Blood 2012: 120:4304–4010 [PMID: 22915643].

Yawn BP et al: Management of sickle cell disease: summary of the 2014 evidence-based report by expert panel members. JAMA 2014; 312: 1033–1048 [PMID: 25203083].

4. Sickle Cell Trait

Individuals who are heterozygous for the sickle gene have sickle cell trait. Neonates are identified by neonatal screening that shows hemoglobin FAS (A > S). Accurate identification of older persons with sickle cell trait depends on hemoglobin electrophoresis, which typically shows about 60% hemoglobin A and 40% hemoglobin S. No anemia or hemolysis is present, and the physical examination is normal. Persons with sickle cell trait are generally healthy with normal life expectancy.

However, sickle trait erythrocytes are capable of sickling, with acidemia and hypoxemia. Thus, the kidney may be affected with the most common manifestation of sickle trait being hyposthenuria. Painless hematuria, usually microscopic, affects about 4% of those with sickle trait and does

not progress to significant renal dysfunction. Fewer than 40 individuals have been reported with an exceedingly rare malignancy, renal medullary carcinoma, and the majority have had sickle trait. The incidence of bacteriuria and pyelonephritis may be increased during pregnancy, but overall rates of maternal and infant morbidity and mortality are not affected by sickle cell trait.

Exertion at moderate altitudes rarely precipitates splenic infarction. Whether or not the risk of sudden unexplained death during strenuous exercise is increased in men with sickle cell trait is controversial. In general, exercise tolerance seems to be normal; the incidence of sickle cell trait in black professional football players is similar to that of the general African-American population.

There is no reason to restrict strenuous activity for individuals with sickle cell trait. As is true for all individuals performing strenuous activity, it is important to be conditioned, dress appropriately, have access to fluids, rest periodically, and perform moderate activity in extreme heat and humidity. Sickle cell trait is most significant for its genetic implications.

5. Hemoglobin C Disorders

Hemoglobin C is detected by neonatal screening. Two percent of African Americans are heterozygous for hemoglobin C and thus have hemoglobin C trait. Such individuals have no symptoms, anemia, or hemolysis, but the peripheral blood smear may show some target cells. Identification of persons with hemoglobin C trait is important for genetic counseling, particularly with regard to the possibility of sickle hemoglobin C disease in offspring.

Persons with homozygous hemoglobin C have a mild microcytic hemolytic anemia and may develop splenomegaly. The peripheral blood smear shows prominent target cells. As with other hemolytic anemias, complications of homozygous hemoglobin C include gallstones and aplastic crises.

6. Hemoglobin E Disorders

Hemoglobin E is the second most common hemoglobin variant worldwide, with a gene frequency up to 60% in northeast Thailand and Cambodia. Persons heterozygous for hemoglobin E show hemoglobin FAE by neonatal screening and are asymptomatic and usually not anemic, but they may have mild microcytosis. Persons homozygous for hemoglobin E are also asymptomatic but may have mild anemia; the peripheral blood smear shows microcytosis and some target cells.

Compound heterozygotes for hemoglobin E and β^0-thalassemia are normal at birth and, like infants with homozygous E, show hemoglobin FE on neonatal screening. Unlike homozygotes, they subsequently develop mild to severe microcytic hypochromic anemia. Such children may exhibit jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, and poor growth if the disorder is not recognized and treated appropriately. In some cases, the anemia becomes severe enough to require lifelong transfusion therapy. Even without regular transfusions, hemosiderosis may occur. In certain areas of the United States, hemoglobin E/β^0-thalassemia has become a more common cause of transfusion-dependent anemia than homozygous β-thalassemia.

7. Other Hemoglobinopathies

At least 500 human globin-chain variants have been described. Some, such as hemoglobins D and G, are relatively common. Heterozygous individuals, who are frequently identified during the course of neonatal screening programs for hemoglobinopathies, are generally asymptomatic and usually have no anemia or hemolysis. The principal significance of most hemoglobin variants is the potential for disease in compound heterozygous individuals who also inherit a gene for β-thalassemia or sickle hemoglobin. For example, children who are compound heterozygous for hemoglobins S and D_{Punjab} ($D_{Los\ Angeles}$) have sickle cell disease.

CONGENITAL HEMOLYTIC ANEMIAS: DISORDERS OF RED CELL METABOLISM

Erythrocytes depend on the anaerobic metabolism of glucose for the maintenance of adenosine triphosphate levels sufficient for homeostasis. Glycolysis also produces the 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) levels needed to modulate the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin. Glucose metabolism via the hexose monophosphate shunt is necessary to generate sufficient reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) and reduced glutathione to protect red cells against oxidant damage. Congenital deficiencies of many glycolytic pathway enzymes have been associated with hemolytic anemias. In general, the morphologic abnormalities present on the peripheral blood smear are nonspecific, and the inheritance of these disorders is autosomal recessive or X-linked. Thus, the possibility of a red cell enzyme defect should be considered during the evaluation of a patient with a congenital hemolytic anemia in the following instances: when the peripheral blood smear does not show red cell morphology typical of membrane or hemoglobin defects (eg, spherocytes, sickle forms, target cells); when hemoglobin disorders are excluded by hemoglobin electrophoresis and by isopropanol precipitation tests; and when family studies do not suggest an autosomal dominant disorder. The diagnosis is confirmed by finding a low level of the deficient enzyme.

The two most common disorders of erythrocyte metabolism are G6PD deficiency and pyruvate kinase deficiency.

1. Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- African, Mediterranean, or Asian ancestry.
- Neonatal hyperbilirubinemia.
- Sporadic hemolysis associated with infection or with ingestion of oxidant drugs or fava beans.
- X-linked inheritance.

» General Considerations

Deficiency of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) is the most common red cell enzyme defect that causes hemolytic anemia. The disorder has an X-linked recessive inheritance and occurs with high frequency among persons of African, Mediterranean, and Asian ancestry. Hundreds of different G6PD variants have been characterized. In most instances, the deficiency is due to enzyme instability; thus, older red cells are more deficient than younger ones and are unable to generate sufficient nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH) to maintain the levels of reduced glutathione necessary to protect the red cells against oxidant stress. Thus, most persons with G6PD deficiency do not have a chronic hemolytic anemia; instead, they have episodic hemolysis at times of exposure to the oxidant stress of infection or of certain drugs or food substances. The severity of the disorder varies among ethnic groups; G6PD deficiency in persons of African ancestry usually is less severe than in other ethnic groups.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Infants with G6PD deficiency may have significant hyperbilirubinemia and require phototherapy or exchange transfusion to prevent kernicterus. The deficiency is an important cause of neonatal hyperbilirubinemia in infants of Mediterranean or Asian ancestry, but less so in infants of African ancestry. Older children with G6PD deficiency are asymptomatic and appear normal between episodes of hemolysis. Hemolytic episodes are often triggered by infection or by the ingestion of oxidant drugs such as antimalarial compounds and sulfonamide antibiotics (Table 30–3). Ingestion of fava beans may trigger hemolysis in children of Mediterranean or Asian ancestry but usually not in children of African ancestry. Episodes of hemolysis are associated with pallor, jaundice, hemoglobinuria, and sometimes cardiovascular compromise.

Table 30–3. Some common drugs and chemicals that can induce hemolytic anemia in persons with G6PD deficiency.

Acetanilide	Niridazole
Doxorubicin	Nitrofurantoin
Furazolidone	Phenazopyridine
Methylene blue	Primaquine
Nalidixic acid	Sulfamethoxazole

Reproduced, with permission, from Beutler E: Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. N Engl J Med 1991;324(3):169–174.

B. Laboratory Findings

The hemoglobin concentration, reticulocyte count, and peripheral blood smear are usually normal in the absence of oxidant stress. Episodes of hemolysis are associated with a variable fall in hemoglobin. "Bite" cells or blister cells may be seen, along with a few spherocytes. Hemoglobinuria is common, and the reticulocyte count increases within a few days. Heinz bodies may be demonstrated with appropriate stains. The diagnosis is confirmed by the finding of reduced levels of G6PD in erythrocytes. Because this enzyme is present in increased quantities in reticulocytes, the test is best performed at a time when the reticulocyte count is normal or near normal.

» Complications

Kernicterus is a risk for infants with significant neonatal hyperbilirubinemia. Episodes of acute hemolysis in older children may be life-threatening. Rare G6PD variants are associated with chronic hemolytic anemia; the clinical course of patients with such variants may be complicated by splenomegaly and by the formation of gallstones.

» Treatment

The most important treatment issue is avoidance of drugs known to be associated with hemolysis (see Table 30–3). For some patients of Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, or Asian ancestry, the consumption of fava beans must also be avoided. Infections should be treated promptly and antibiotics given when appropriate. Most episodes of hemolysis are self-limiting, but red cell transfusions may be lifesaving when signs and symptoms indicate cardiovascular compromise.

2. Pyruvate Kinase Deficiency

Pyruvate kinase deficiency is an autosomal recessive disorder observed in all ethnic groups but is most common in northern Europeans. The deficiency is associated with a chronic hemolytic anemia of varying severity. Approximately one-third of those affected present in the neonatal

period with jaundice and hemolysis that require phototherapy or exchange transfusion. Occasionally, the disorder causes hydrops fetalis and neonatal death. In older children, the hemolysis may require red cell transfusions or be mild enough to go unnoticed for many years. Jaundice and splenomegaly frequently occur in the more severe cases. The diagnosis of pyruvate kinase deficiency is occasionally suggested by the presence of echinocytes on the peripheral blood smear, but these findings may be absent prior to splenectomy. The diagnosis depends on the demonstration of low levels of pyruvate kinase activity in red cells.

Treatment of pyruvate kinase depends on the severity of the hemolysis. Blood transfusions may be required for significant anemia, and splenectomy may be beneficial. Although the procedure does not cure the disorder, it ameliorates the anemia and its symptoms. Characteristically, the reticulocyte count increases and echinocytes become more prevalent after splenectomy, despite the decreased hemolysis and increased hemoglobin level.

ACQUIRED HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

1. Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Pallor, fatigue, jaundice, and dark urine.
- Splenomegaly.
- Positive DAT.
- Reticulocytosis and spherocytosis.

» General Considerations

Acquired autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA) is rare during the first 4 months of life but is one of the more common causes of acute anemia after the first year. It may arise as a primary disorder or may complicate an infection (hepatitis, upper respiratory tract infections, EBV mononucleosis, or cytomegalovirus [CMV] infection); systemic lupus erythematosus and other autoimmune syndromes; immunodeficiency states, including autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS); or, very rarely, malignancies. Drugs may induce antibody-associated hemolytic anemia, and recently third-generation cephalosporins have become a common cause for this adverse event of antibiotic therapy.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The disease usually has an acute onset manifested by weakness, pallor, dark urine, and fatigue. Jaundice is a prominent finding, and splenomegaly is often present. Some cases have a more chronic, insidious onset. Clinical evidence of an underlying disease may be present.

B. Laboratory Findings

The anemia is normochromic and normocytic and may vary from mild to severe (hemoglobin concentration < 5 g/dL). The reticulocyte count and index are usually increased but occasionally are normal or low. Spherocytes and nucleated red cells may be seen on the peripheral blood smear. Although leukocytosis and elevated platelet counts are common, thrombocytopenia occasionally occurs. Other laboratory data observed with hemolysis are increased indirect and total bilirubin, lactic dehydrogenase, aspartate aminotransferase, and urinary urobilinogen. Intravascular hemolysis is indicated by hemoglobinemia or hemoglobinuria. Examination of bone marrow shows marked erythroid hyperplasia and hemophagocytosis, but is seldom required for the diagnosis.

Serologic studies are helpful in defining pathophysiology, planning therapeutic strategies, and assessing prognosis (Table 30–4). In almost all cases, the direct and indirect antiglobulin (DAT and IAT) tests are positive. Further evaluation allows distinction into one of three syndromes. The presence of IgG and no or low level of C3 on the patient's RBCs, maximal in vitro antibody activity at 37°C, and either no antigen or an Rh-like specificity constitute warm AIHA with mostly extravascular destruction by the reticuloendothelial system. In contrast, the detection of complement alone on RBCs, optimal reactivity at 4°C, and I or i antigen specificity are diagnostic of cold AIHA with mostly intravascular and mild extravascular hemolysis. Cold agglutinins are relatively common (~10%) in normal individuals, but clinically significant cold (IgM) antibodies exhibit in vitro reactivity at 30°C or above.

Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria presents a third category of disease. The laboratory evaluation is identical to cold AIHA except for antigen specificity (P) and the exhibition of an in vitro hemolysis. Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is almost always associated with significant infections, such as Mycoplasma, Parvovirus, Adenovirus, EBV, and CMV.

» Differential Diagnosis

AIHA must be differentiated from other forms of congenital or acquired hemolytic anemias. The DAT discriminates antibody-mediated hemolysis from other causes, such as hereditary spherocytosis. The presence of other cytopenias and antibodies to platelets or neutrophils suggests an autoimmune (eg, lupus) syndrome, immunodeficiency (eg, ALPS, congenital immunodeficiency), or Evans syndrome (AIHA and other cytopenias associated with autoantibodies). Up to one-third of patients diagnosed as Evans syndrome may have ALPS.

Table 30–4. Classification of AIHA in children.

Syndrome	Warm AIHA	Cold AIHA	Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria
Specific antiglobulin test IgG Complement	 Strongly positive. Negative or mildly positive.	 Negative. Strongly positive.	 Negative. Strongly positive.
Temperature at maximal reactivity (in vitro)	37°C.	4°C.	4°C.
Antigen specificity	May be panagglutinin or may have an Rh-like specificity.	I or i.	P.
Other		Clinically significant if agglutination occurs ≥ 30°C.	Positive biphasic hemolysin test.
Pathophysiology	Extravascular hemolysis, destruction by the RES (eg, spleen). Rarely an intravascular component early in the course.	Intravascular hemolysis (may have extravascular component).	Intravascular hemolysis (may have extravascular component).
Prognosis	May be more chronic (> 3 mo) with significant morbidity and mortality. May be associated with a primary disorder (lupus, immunodeficiency, etc).	Generally acute (< 3 mo). Good prognosis: often associated with infection.	Acute, self-limited. Associated with infection.
Therapy	Responds to RES blockade, including steroids (prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d), IMG (1 g/kg/d for 2 d), or with specific indication, splenectomy.	May not respond to RES blockade. Severe cases may benefit from plasmapheresis.	Usually self-limited. Symptomatic management.

AIHA, autoimmune hemolytic anemia; IgG, immunoglobulin G; IMG, intravenous immune globulin; RES, reticuloendothelial system.

» Complications

The anemia may be very severe and result in cardiovascular collapse, requiring emergency management. The complications of an underlying disease, such as disseminated lupus erythematosus or an immunodeficiency state, may be present.

» Treatment

Medical management of the underlying disease is important in symptomatic cases. Defining the clinical syndrome provides a useful guide to treatment. Most patients (50%–80%) with warm AIHA (in which hemolysis is mostly extravascular) respond to prednisone (2 mg/kg/d). After the initial treatment, the dose of corticosteroids may be decreased slowly. Patients may respond to 1 g of intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) per kilogram per day for 2 days, but fewer patients respond to IVIG than to prednisone. In severe cases, rituximab may be a successful alternative; however, this drug should be avoided in AIHA associated with ALPS. Although remission with splenectomy may be as high as 50%–60%, in warm AIHA, this strategy should be considered only for patients older than 5 years who are refractory or resistant to first line therapies. Short- and long-term complications are now more apparent and include infection with encapsulated organisms, increased risk for venous thromboembolism, and risk for portal and pulmonary arterial hypertension. In cases unresponsive to more conventional therapy, immunosuppressive agents such as mycophenolate, sirolimus, cyclosporine, cyclophosphamide, azathioprine, or busulfan may be tried alone or in combination with corticosteroids. The initial three exhibit less myelosuppression and risk for infection and may be helpful when hemolysis is associated with Evans syndrome or ALPS. Plasma exchange is not indicated for Warm, IgG, autoantibody diseases. Transplantation, especially when hemolysis is secondary, has been used successfully in small numbers of cases.

Patients with cold AIHA and paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria are less likely to respond to corticosteroids or IVIG. Because these syndromes are most apt to be associated with infections and have an acute, self-limited course, supportive care alone may be sufficient. Plasma exchange may be effective in severe cold autoimmune (IgM) hemolytic anemia because the offending antibody has an intravascular distribution.

Supportive therapy is crucial. Patients with cold-reacting antibodies, particularly paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria, should be kept in a warm environment. Transfusion may be necessary because of the complications of severe anemia but should be used only when there is no alternative. In most patients, cross-match compatible blood will not be found, and the least incompatible unit among the few tested may be transfused. Transfusion must be conducted carefully, beginning with a test dose (see Transfusion Medicine section, later in this chapter). Identification of the patient's phenotype for minor red cell alloantigens may be helpful in avoiding alloimmunization or in providing appropriate transfusions if alloantibodies arise after initial transfusions. Patients with severe intravascular hemolysis may have associated disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), and heparin therapy should be considered in such cases.

» Prognosis

The outlook for AIHA in childhood usually is good unless associated diseases are present (eg, congenital immunodeficiency, ALPS, AIDS, lupus erythematosus), in which case hemolysis is likely to have a chronic course. In general, children with warm (IgG) AIHA are at greater risk for more severe and chronic disease with higher morbidity and mortality rates. Hemolysis and positive antiglobulin tests may continue for months or years. Patients with cold AIHA or paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria are more likely to have acute, self-limited disease (< 3 months). Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is almost always associated with infection (eg, Mycoplasma infection, CMV, and EBV).

Arndt PA: Serologic characteristics of ceftriaxone antibodies in 25 patients with drug-induced anemia. Transfusion 2012;52:602 [PMID: 21880048].

El Kenz H: Transfusion support of autoimmune hemolytic anemia: how could the blood group genotyping help? Transl Res 2014;163:36. doi: 10.1016/jtrsl.2013.09.007 [PMID: 24120494].

Petz LD: Unusual problems regarding autoimmune hemolytic anemias. In: Petz LD, Garratty G (eds): Acquired Immune Hemolytic Anemias. 2nd ed. Churchill Livingstone; 2004:341–344.

Rao VK: Use of rituximab for refractory cytopenias associated with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS). Pediatr Blood Cancer 2009;52:847 [PMID: 19214977].

Teachey DT: Diagnosis and management of autoimmune cytopenias in childhood. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60:1489. doi: 10.1016.pcl.2013.08.009 [PMID: 24237984].

2. Nonimmune Acquired Hemolytic Anemia

Hepatic disease may alter the lipid composition of the red cell membrane. This usually results in the formation of target cells and is not associated with significant hemolysis.

Occasionally, hepatocellular damage is associated with the formation of spur cells and brisk hemolytic anemia. Renal disease may also be associated with significant hemolysis; hemolytic-uremic syndrome is one example. In this disorder, hemolysis is associated with the presence, on the peripheral blood smear, of echinocytes, helmet cells, fragmented red cells, and spherocytes.

A microangiopathic hemolytic anemia with fragmented red cells and some spherocytes may be observed in several conditions associated with intravascular coagulation and fibrin deposition within vessels. This occurs with DIC complicating severe infection, but may also occur when the intravascular coagulation is localized, as with giant cavernous hemangiomas (Kasabach-Merritt syndrome). Fragmented red cells may also be seen with mechanical damage (eg, associated with artificial heart valves).

POLYCYTHEMIA & METHEMOGLOBINEMIA

CONGENITAL ERYTHROCYTOSIS (FAMILIAL POLYCYTHEMIA)

In pediatrics, polycythemia is usually secondary to chronic hypoxemia. The disorder differs from polycythemia vera in that only RBCs are affected; the WBC and platelet counts are normal. It occurs as an autosomal dominant or recessive disorder. There are usually no physical findings except for plethora and splenomegaly. The hemoglobin level may be as high as 27 g/dL, and symptoms are generally limited to headache and lethargy. Treatment is not indicated unless symptoms are marked. Phlebotomy is the treatment of choice.

SECONDARY POLYCYTHEMIA

Secondary polycythemia occurs in response to hypoxemia. The most common cause of secondary polycythemia in children is cyanotic congenital heart disease, but it also occurs in chronic pulmonary disease such as cystic fibrosis. Persons living at extremely high altitudes, as well as some with methemoglobinemia, develop polycythemia. Polycythemia may occur in the neonatal period; it is particularly exaggerated in infants who are preterm or small for gestational age. It may occur in infants of diabetic mothers, in Down syndrome, and as a complication of congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

ID may complicate polycythemia and aggravate the associated hyperviscosity. This complication of polycythemia should be suspected when the MCV falls below the normal range. Coagulation and bleeding abnormalities, including thrombocytopenia, mild consumption coagulopathy, and elevated fibrinolytic activity, have been described in severely polycythemic cardiac patients. Bleeding at surgery may be severe.

The ideal treatment of secondary polycythemia is correction of the underlying disorder. When this cannot be done, phlebotomy may be necessary to control symptoms.

Iron sufficiency should be maintained. These measures help prevent the complications of thrombosis and hemorrhage.

METHEMOGLOBINEMIA

When heme iron is oxidized, it changes from the ferrous to the ferric state and methemoglobin is produced. Normally, methemoglobin is enzymatically reduced back to hemoglobin. Methemoglobin is unable to transport oxygen and causes a shift in the oxygen dissociation curve. Cyanosis is seen with methemoglobin levels greater than 15%.

1. Hemoglobin M

This designation is given to several abnormal hemoglobins associated with methemoglobinemia due to either amino acid substitutions in α- or β-globin chains. Hemoglobin M is transmitted as an autosomal dominant disorder. Hemoglobin electrophoresis at the usual pH will not always demonstrate the abnormal hemoglobin, and isoelectric focusing may be needed. Affected individuals are cyanotic, but they have normal exercise tolerance and life expectancy. No treatment is indicated.

2. Congenital Methemoglobinemia Due to Enzyme Deficiencies

Congenital methemoglobinemia is caused most frequently by congenital deficiency of the reducing enzyme diaphorase I (coenzyme factor I) and is transmitted as an autosomal recessive trait. Affected individuals may have as much as 40% methemoglobin but usually have no symptoms, although a mild compensatory polycythemia may be present. Patients with diaphorase I deficiency respond to treatment with ascorbic acid and methylene blue (see the next section), but treatment is not usually indicated.

3. Acquired Methemoglobinemia

Nitrites and nitrates, chlorates, and quinines such as aniline dyes, sulfonamides, acetanilid, phenacetin, bismuth subnitrate, and potassium chlorate generate methemoglobin. Recreational use of volatile nitrites ("poppers") and cocaine may precipitate methemoglobinemia. Poisoning with a drug or chemical containing one of these substances should be suspected with sudden onset cyanosis. Methemoglobin levels in such cases may be extremely high and can produce anoxia, dyspnea, unconsciousness, circulatory failure, and death. Because of transiently deficient NADH methemoglobin reductase, newborns are more susceptible to drug- or chemical-induced methemoglobinemia. Infants with metabolic acidosis may also develop methemoglobinemia.

Patients with acquired methemoglobinemia respond dramatically to intravenous methylene blue. Ascorbic acid administered orally or intravenously also reduces methemoglobin, but the response is slower.

DISORDERS OF LEUKOCYTES

NEUTROPENIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Increased frequency of infections.
- Ulceration of oral mucosa and gingivitis.
- Decreased absolute neutrophil count; normal numbers of red cells and platelets.

General Considerations

Neutropenia is an absolute neutrophil (granulocyte) count of less than 1500/μL in childhood, or less than 1100/μL between ages 1 month and 2 years. During the first few days of life, an absolute neutrophil count of less than 3500/μL may be considered neutropenia in term infants. Neutropenia results from absent or defective myeloid stem cells; ineffective or suppressed myeloid maturation; altered production of hematopoietic cytokines or chemokines or abnormalities in their receptors; decreased marrow release; increased neutrophil apoptosis; destruction or consumption; or, in pseudoneutropenia, from an increased neutrophil marginating pool (Table 30–5). A decrease in neutrophil mass diminishes delivery of these cells to areas where the balance favors bacterial proliferation and invasion.

The severity of neutropenia may be characterized by the level of peripheral neutrophils, the number and severity of infections, and the production of mature neutrophils in the marrow. Also important is whether the neutropenia is acute (< 3 months) or chronic (> 3 months). The most severe types of chronic neutropenia include reticular dysgenesis (congenital aleukocytosis), Kostmann syndrome or severe congenital neutropenia, SCN, (severe neutropenia with maturation defect in the marrow progenitor cells associated with specific gene defects), Shwachman syndrome (neutropenia with pancreatic insufficiency), neutropenia with immune deficiency states, cyclic neutropenia, and myelokathexis or dysgranulopoiesis. Genetic mutations for Chédiak-Higashi syndrome (LYST (CHS1), SCN 1-5 (ELANE, GFI1, HAX1, G6PC3, VPS45 as well as WASP and GCSF3R), Shwachman syndrome (SBDS), and cyclic neutropenia (ELANE) have been identified. Neutropenia may also be associated with storage (GSD-Ib) and metabolic diseases and immunodeficiency states. The most common causes of acute neutropenia are viral infection or drugs, resulting in decreased neutrophil production in the marrow, increased peripheral turnover, or both. Severe bacterial infections may be associated with neutropenia. Although not commonly identified, neonatal

Table 30–5. Classification of neutropenia of childhood.

Congenital neutropenia with stem cell abnormalities
Reticular dysgenesis
Cyclic neutropenia
Congenital neutropenia with abnormalities of committed myeloid progenitor cells
Neutropenia with immunodeficiency disorders (T cells and B cells)
Severe congenital neutropenia (Kostmann syndrome)
Chronic idiopathic neutropenia of childhood
Myelokathexis with dysmyelopoiesis
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome
Shwachman-Diamond syndrome
Cartilage-hair hypoplasia
Dyskeratosis congenital
Fanconi anemia
Organic acidemias (eg, propionic, methylmalonic)
Glucose-6-phosphatase catalytic subunit 3 deficiency
Glycogenosis Ib
Osteopetrosis
Acquired neutropenias affecting stem cells
Malignancies (leukemia, lymphoma) and preleukemic disorders
Drugs or toxic substances
Ionizing radiation
Aplastic anemia
Acquired neutropenias affecting committed myeloid progenitors or survival of mature neutrophils
Ineffective myelopoiesis (vitamin B_{12}, folate, and copper deficiency)
Infection
Immune (neonatal alloimmune or autoimmune, autoimmune, or chronic benign neutropenia of childhood)
Hypersplenism

alloimmune neutropenia can be severe and associated with infection. Autoimmune neutropenia occurs with chronic benign neutropenia of childhood, immunodeficiency syndromes, autoimmune disorders, or, in the newborn, as a result of passive transfer of antibody from the mother to the fetus. Malignancies, osteopetrosis, marrow failure syndromes, and hypersplenism usually are not associated with isolated neutropenia.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Acute severe bacterial or fungal infection is the most significant complication of neutropenia. Although the risk is increased when the absolute neutrophil count is less than 500/μL, the actual susceptibility is variable and depends on the cause of neutropenia, marrow reserves, and other factors. The most common types of infection include septicemia, cellulitis, skin abscesses, pneumonia, and perirectal abscesses. Sinusitis, aphthous ulcers, gingivitis, and periodontal disease also cause significant problems. In addition to local signs and symptoms, patients may have chills, fever, and malaise. In most cases, the spleen and liver are not enlarged. Staphylococcus aureus and gram-negative bacteria are the most common pathogens.

B. Laboratory Findings

Neutrophils are absent or markedly reduced in the peripheral blood. In most forms of neutropenia or agranulocytosis, the monocytes and lymphocytes are normal and the red cells and platelets are not affected. The bone marrow usually shows a normal erythroid series, with adequate megakaryocytes, but a marked reduction in the myeloid cells or a significant delay in maturation of this series may be noted at various stages of myeloid maturation. Total cellularity may be decreased.

In the evaluation of neutropenia (eg, persistent, intermittent, cyclic), attention should be paid to the duration and pattern of neutropenia, the types of infections and their frequency, and phenotypic abnormalities on physical examination. A careful family history and blood counts from the parents are useful. If an acquired cause, such as viral infection or drug, is not obvious as an acute cause, no other primary disease is present, and the neutropenia is chronic, WBC counts, white cell differential, and platelet and reticulocyte counts should be completed twice weekly for 6 weeks to determine the pattern of neutropenia. Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy including cytogenetic analysis are most important to characterize the morphologic features of myelopoiesis. Measuring the neutrophil counts in response to corticosteroid infusion may document the marrow reserves. Other tests that aid in the diagnosis include measurement of neutrophil antibodies, immunoglobulin levels, antinuclear antibodies, and lymphocyte phenotyping to detect immunodeficiency states. Culture of bone marrow may define myeloid progenitors or the presence of inhibitory factors. Cytokines in plasma or mononuclear cells can be measured directly. Some neutropenia disorders have abnormal neutrophil function, but severe neutropenia may preclude collection of sufficient cells to complete assays. Analysis for gene mutations noted above may help confirm the diagnosis of a severe neutropenia syndrome. Increased apoptosis in marrow precursors or circulating neutrophils is a general characteristic described in several congenital or genetic disorders.

» Treatment

Underlying disorders should be identified and treated or associated agents should be eliminated. Infections should be aggressively assessed and treated. Prophylactic antimicrobial therapy is not indicated for afebrile, asymptomatic patients, but may be considered in rare cases with recurrent infections. Recombinant G-CSF will increase neutrophil counts in most patients; GM-CSF may be considered, but is less extensively used. For patients with neutrophil counts 500/μL or less, G-CSF (Filgrastim) may be started at 3–5 mcg/kg/d

subcutaneously or intravenously once a day. Depending on the counts, the dose may be adjusted to keep the absolute neutrophil count below 10,000/μL. Some patients maintain adequate counts with G-CSF given every other day. Treatment will decrease infectious complications but may have little effect on periodontal disease. However, not all patients with neutropenia syndromes require G-CSF (eg, chronic benign neutropenia of childhood). Patients with cyclic neutropenia may have a milder clinical course as they grow older. Immunizations should be given if the adaptive immune system is normal. Hematopoietic stem cell transplant may be considered for patients with severe complications, especially those with severe congenital neutropenia.

» Prognosis

The prognosis varies greatly with the cause and severity of the neutropenia. In severe cases with persistent agranulocytosis, the prognosis is poor in spite of antibiotic therapy; in mild or cyclic forms of neutropenia, symptoms may be minimal and the prognosis for normal life expectancy excellent. G-CSF has the potential to prolong life expectancy. Up to 50% of patients with Shwachman syndrome may develop aplastic anemia, myelodysplasia, or leukemia during their lifetime. Patients with SCNs also have a potential for leukemia, as do patients with neutropenia associated with some immune disorders. Hematopoietic stem cell transplant may be the only curative therapy for some disorders.

Audrain M: Autoimmune neutropenia in children: analysis of 116 cases. Pediatr Allergy Immunol 2011:22;494 [PMID: 21771084].

Boztug K: Genetic etiologies of severe congenital neutropenia. Curr Opin Pediatr 2011;23:21 [PMID: 21206270].

Chou JY: Type I glycogen storage diseases: disorders of the glucose-6-phosphatase/glucose-6-phosphate transporter complexes. J Inherit Metab Dis 2015 May;38(3):511–519. doi 10.1007/s10545-014-9772-x [PMID: 25288127].

Carlsson G: Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in severe congenital neutropenia. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2011;56:444 [PMID: 21072829].

Fioredda F: Infectious complications in children with severe congenital, autoimmune or idiopathic neutropenia: a retrospective study form the Italian neutropenia registry. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2013;32:410 [PMID: 23249920].

NEUTROPHILIA

Neutrophilia is an increase in the absolute neutrophil count in the peripheral blood to greater than 7500–8500/μL for infants, children, and adults. To support the increased peripheral count, neutrophils may be mobilized from bone marrow storage or peripheral marginating pools. Neutrophilia occurs acutely in association with bacterial or viral infections, inflammatory diseases (eg, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, Kawasaki disease), surgical or functional asplenia, liver failure, diabetic ketoacidosis, azotemia, congenital disorders of neutrophil function (eg, chronic granulomatous disease, leukocyte adherence deficiency), and hemolysis. Drugs such as corticosteroids, lithium, and epinephrine increase the blood neutrophil count. Corticosteroids cause release of neutrophils from the marrow pool, inhibit egress from capillary beds, and postpone apoptotic cell death. Epinephrine causes release of the marginating pool. Acute neutrophilia has been reported after stress, such as from electric shock, trauma, burns, surgery, and emotional upset. Tumors involving the bone marrow, such as lymphomas, neuroblastomas, and rhabdomyosarcoma, may be associated with leukocytosis and the presence of immature myeloid cells in the peripheral blood. Infants with Down syndrome have defective regulation of proliferation and maturation of the myeloid series and may develop neutrophilia. At times this process may affect other cell lines and mimic myeloproliferative disorders or acute leukemia.

The neutrophilias must be distinguished from myeloproliferative disorders such as chronic myelogenous leukemia and juvenile chronic myelogenous leukemia. In general, abnormalities involving other cell lines, the appearance of immature cells on the blood smear, and the presence of hepatosplenomegaly are important differentiating characteristics.

DISORDERS OF NEUTROPHIL FUNCTION

Neutrophils play a key role in host defenses. Circulating in capillary beds, they adhere to the vascular endothelium adjacent to sites of infection and inflammation. Moving between endothelial cells, the neutrophil migrates toward the offending agent. Contact with a microbe that is properly opsonized with complement or antibodies triggers ingestion, a process in which cytoplasmic streaming results in the formation of pseudopods that fuse around the invader, encasing it in a phagosome. During the ingestion phase, the oxidase enzyme system assembles and is activated, taking oxygen from the surrounding medium and reducing it to form toxic oxygen metabolites critical to microbicidal activity. Concurrently, granules from the two main classes (azurophil and specific) fuse and release their contents into the phagolysosome. The concentration of toxic oxygen metabolites (eg, hydrogen peroxide, hypochlorous acid, hydroxyl radical) and other compounds (eg, proteases, cationic proteins, cathepsins, defensins) increases dramatically, resulting in the death and dissolution of the microbe. Complex physiologic and biochemical processes support and control these functions. Defects in any of these processes may lead to inadequate cell function and an increased risk of infection.

» Classification

Table 30–6 summarizes congenital neutrophil function defects. Recently reported is variant CGD with p40phox deficiency manifested by inflammatory bowel disease. Also described is a syndrome of severe neutrophil dysfunction

Table 30–6. Classification of congenital neutrophil function deficits.

Disorder	Clinical Manifestations	Functional Defect	Biochemical Defect	Inheritance (Chromosome; Gene)
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome	Oculocutaneous albinism, photophobia, nystagmus, ataxia. Recurrent infections of skin, respiratory tract, and mucous membranes with gram-positive and gram-negative organisms. Many patients die during lymphoproliferative phase with hepatomegaly, fever, which may be a viral-associated hemophagocytic syndrome secondary to Epstein-Barr virus infection. Older patients may develop degenerative CNS disease.	Neutropenia. Neutrophils, monocytes, lymphocytes, platelets, and all granule-containing cells have giant granules. Most significant defect is in chemotaxis. Also milder defects in microbicidal activity and degranulation.	Gene deficit identified. Alterations in membrane fusion with formation of giant granules. Other biochemical abnormalities in cAMP and cGMP, microtubule assembly.	Autosomal recessive (1q42.1-.2; CHS1)
Leukocyte adherence deficiency I	Recurrent soft-tissue infections, including gingivitis, otitis, mucositis, periodontitis, skin infections. Delayed separation of the cord in newborn and problems with wound healing.	Neutrophilia. Diminished adherence to surfaces, leading to decreased chemotaxis.	Absence or partial deficiency of CD11/CD18 cell surface adhesive glycoproteins.	Autosomal recessive (12q22.3; ITGB2)
Leukocyte adherence deficiency II	Recurrent infections, mental retardation, craniofacial abnormalities, short stature.	Neutrophilia. Deficient "rolling" interactions with endothelial cells. Red cells have Bombay phenotype.	Deficient fucosyl transferase results in deficient sialyl Lewis X antigen, which interacts with P selectin. P selectin on endothelial cells is required for neutrophil rolling, a prerequisite for adherence and diapedesis.	Autosomal recessive (11p11.2; SLC35C1)
Chronic granulomatous disease	Recurrent purulent infections with catalase-positive bacteria and fungi. May involve skin, mucous membranes. Patients also develop deep infections (lymph nodes, lung, liver, bones) and sepsis.	Neutrophilia. Neutrophils demonstrate deficient bactericidal activity but normal chemotaxis and ingestion. Defect in the oxidase (Nox2) enzyme system, resulting in absence or diminished production of oxygen metabolites toxic to microbes.	Several molecular defects in oxidase components. Absent cytochrome b558 with decreased expression of either (1) or (2): (1) gp91-phox (2) p22-phox Absent p47-phox or p67-phox (cytosolic components).	X-linked in 60%–65% of cases (Xp21.1; CYBB) Autosomal recessive in < 5% of cases (16q24; CYBA) Autosomal recessive in 30% of cases (7q11.23; NCF1 and 1q25; NCF2, respectively)
Myeloperoxidase deficiency	Generally healthy. Fungal infections when deficiency associated with systemic diseases (eg, diabetes in poor control).	Diminished capacity to enhance hydrogen peroxide-mediated microbicidal activity. Decreased killing of Candida.	Diminished or absent myeloperoxidase; posttranslational defect in processing protein.	Autosomal recessive (17q22-23)
Specific granule deficiency	Recurrent skin and deep tissue infections.	Neutropenia. Neutrophils have band-shaped or bilobed nuclei. Decreased chemotaxis and bactericidal activity.	Failure to produce specific granules or their contents during myelopoiesis. Defect in transcription factor.	Autosomal recessive (14q11.2; CEBPε)

cAMP, cyclic adenosine monophosphate; cGMP, cyclic guanosine monophosphate; CNS, central nervous system; Nox2, NADPH oxidase 2.

and severe infections associated with a mutation in a GTPase signaling molecule, Rac2. New syndromes of innate immune dysfunction include defects in interferon and interleukin (IL)-12 receptor and signaling pathways, leading to monocyte and macrophage dysfunction and defective toll-like receptor signaling pathways (IL-1 receptor-associated kinase 4 [IRAK-4] deficiency) associated with recurrent bacterial infections. Leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) III is a disorder characterized by severe bleeding, impaired leukocyte adhesion, and endothelial inflammation, and is associated with mutations of FERMT3 gene, which encodes for a protein, Kindlin-3, critical for intracellular function of β integrins and perhaps other adhesion strategies. Other congenital or acquired causes of mild to moderate neutrophil dysfunction include metabolic defects (eg, glycogen storage disease Ib, G6PC3 deficiency, diabetes mellitus, renal disease, and hypophosphatemia), viral infections, and certain drugs. Neutrophils from newborn infants have abnormal adherence, chemotaxis, and bactericidal activity. Cells from patients with thermal injury, trauma, and overwhelming infection have defects in cell motility and bactericidal activity similar to those seen in neonates.

» Clinical Findings

Recurrent bacterial or fungal infections are the hallmark of neutrophil dysfunction. Although patients will have infection-free periods, episodes of pneumonia, sinusitis, cellulitis, cutaneous and mucosal infections (including perianal or peritonsillar abscesses), and lymphadenitis are frequent. As with neutropenia, aphthous ulcers of mucous membranes, severe gingivitis, and periodontal disease are also major complications. In general, S aureus or gram-negative organisms are commonly isolated from infected sites; other organisms may be specifically associated with a defined neutrophil function defect. In some disorders, fungi account for an increasing number of infections. Deep or generalized infections, such as osteomyelitis, liver abscesses, sepsis, meningitis, and necrotic or gangrenous soft-tissue lesions, occur in specific syndromes (eg, leukocyte adherence deficiency or chronic granulomatous disease). Patients with severe neutrophil dysfunction may die in childhood from severe infections or associated complications. Table 30–6 summarizes pertinent laboratory findings.

» Treatment

The mainstays of management of these disorders are anticipation of infections and aggressive attempts to identify the foci and the causative agents. Surgical procedures to achieve these goals may be both diagnostic and therapeutic. Broad-spectrum antibiotics covering the range of possible organisms should be initiated without delay, switching to specific antimicrobial agents when the microbiologic diagnosis is made. When infections are unresponsive or they recur, granulocyte transfusions may be helpful.

Chronic management may include prophylactic antibiotics. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and some other antibiotics (eg, rifampin) enhance the bactericidal activity of neutrophils from patients with chronic granulomatous disease. Some patients with Chédiak-Higashi syndrome improve clinically when given ascorbic acid. Recombinant γ-interferon decreases the number and severity of infections in patients with chronic granulomatous disease. Demonstration of this activity with one patient group raises the possibility that cytokines, growth factors, and other biologic response modifiers may be helpful in other conditions in preventing recurrent infections. Bone marrow transplant has been attempted in most major congenital neutrophil dysfunction syndromes, and reconstitution with normal cells and cell function has been documented. Combining genetic engineering with autologous bone marrow transplant may provide a future strategy for curing these disorders.

» Prognosis

For mild to moderate defects, anticipation and conservative medical management ensure a better outlook. For severe defects, excessive morbidity and significant mortality still exist. In some diseases, the development of noninfectious complications, such as the lymphoproliferative phase of Chédiak-Higashi syndrome or inflammatory syndromes in chronic granulomatous disease, may influence prognosis.

Ambruso DR, Johnston RB Jr: Chronic granulomatous disease of childhood and common variable immunodeficiency. In: Chernick V, Boat TF (eds): Kendig's Disorders of the Respiratory Tract in Children. Elsevier Saunders; 2012.

Diaz R: Granulocyte transfusions for children with infection and neutropenia or granulocyte dysfunction. Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2014;31:425 [PMID: 24383443].

Jun HS: Glucose-6-phosphatase-β, implicated in congenital neutropenia syndrome, is essential for macrophage energy homeostasis and functionality. Blood 2012;119:4047 [PMID: 22246029].

Jun HS: Molecular mechanisms of neutrophil dysfunction in glycogen storage disease Ib. 2014;123:2843 [PMID: 24565827].

Kuhns DB: Residual NADPH oxidase and survival in chronic granulomatous disease. N Engl J Med 2010;363:2600 [PMID: 21190454].

Van de Vijver E: Hematologically important mutations: leukocyte adhesion deficiency (first update). Blood Cells Mol Dis 2012;48:53 [PMID: 22134107].

Walach B: Lessons learned from phagocytic function studies in a large cohort of patients with recurring infections. J Clin Immunol 2012;32:454 [PMID: 222072252].

LYMPHOCYTOSIS

From the first week up to the fifth year of life, lymphocytes are the most numerous leukocytes in human blood. The ratio then reverses gradually to reach the adult pattern of neutrophil predominance. An absolute lymphocytosis in childhood is associated with acute or chronic viral infections, pertussis,

syphilis, tuberculosis, and hyperthyroidism. Other noninfectious conditions, drugs, and hypersensitivity and serum sickness–like reactions cause lymphocytosis.

Fever, upper respiratory symptoms, gastrointestinal complaints, and rashes are clues in distinguishing infectious from noninfectious causes. The presence of enlarged liver, spleen, or lymph nodes is crucial to the differential diagnosis, which includes acute leukemia and lymphoma. Most cases of infectious mononucleosis are associated with hepatosplenomegaly or adenopathy. The absence of anemia and thrombocytopenia helps to differentiate these disorders. Evaluation of the morphology of lymphocytes on peripheral blood smear is crucial. Infectious causes, particularly infectious mononucleosis, are associated with atypical features in the lymphocytes, such as basophilic cytoplasm, vacuoles, finer and less-dense chromatin, and an indented nucleus. These features are distinct from the characteristic morphology associated with lymphoblastic leukemia. Lymphocytosis in childhood is most commonly associated with infections and resolves with recovery from the primary disease.

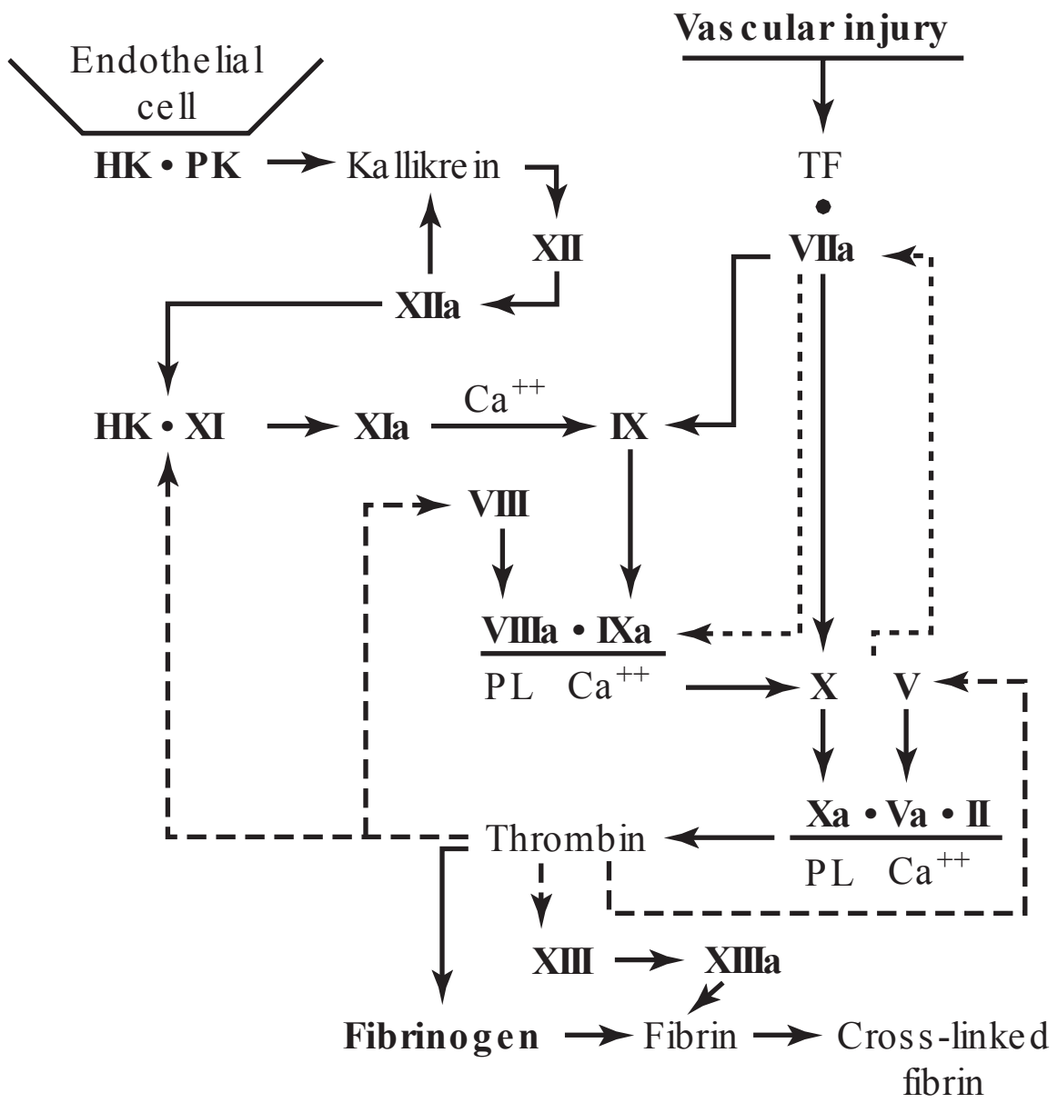
EOSINOPHILIA

Eosinophilia in infants and children is an absolute eosinophil count greater than 300/μL. Marrow eosinophil production is stimulated by the cytokine IL-5. Allergies, particularly those associated with asthma and eczema, are the most common primary causes of eosinophilia in children. Eosinophilia also occurs in drug reactions, with tumors (Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas and brain tumors), and with immunodeficiency and histiocytosis syndromes. Increased eosinophil counts are a prominent feature of many invasive parasitic infections. Gastrointestinal disorders such as chronic hepatitis, ulcerative colitis, Crohn disease, and milk precipitin disease may be associated with eosinophilia. Increased blood eosinophil counts have been identified in several families without association with any specific illness. Rare causes of eosinophilia include the hypereosinophilic syndrome, characterized by counts greater than 1500/μL and organ involvement and damage (hepatosplenomegaly, cardiomyopathy, pulmonary fibrosis, and central nervous system injury). This is a disorder of middle-aged adults and is rare in children. Eosinophilic leukemia has been described, but its existence as a distinct entity is very rare.

Eosinophils are sometimes the last type of mature myeloid cell to disappear after marrow ablative chemotherapy. Increased eosinophil counts are associated with graft-versus-host disease after bone marrow transplant, and elevations are sometimes documented during rejection episodes in patients who have solid organ grafts.

BLEEDING DISORDERS

Bleeding disorders may occur as a result of (1) quantitative or qualitative abnormalities of platelets, (2) quantitative or qualitative abnormalities in plasma procoagulant factors, (3) vascular abnormalities, or (4) accelerated fibrinolysis. The coagulation cascade and fibrinolytic system are shown in Figures 30–4 and 30–5.



▲**Figure 30–4.** The procoagulant system and formation of a fibrin clot. Vascular injury initiates the coagulation process by exposure of tissue factor (TF); the dashed lines indicate thrombin actions in addition to clotting of fibrinogen. The dotted lines associated with VIIa indicate the feedback activation of the VII-TF complex by Xa and IXa. Ca++, calcium; HK, high-molecular-weight kininogen; PK, prekallikrein; PL, phospholipid. (Reproduced, with permission, from Goodnight SH, Hathaway WE [eds]: Disorders of Hemostasis & Thrombosis: A Clinical Guide. 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2001.)

The most critical aspect in evaluating the bleeding patient is obtaining detailed personal and family bleeding histories, including bleeding complications associated with dental interventions, surgeries, suture placement and removal, and trauma. Excessive mucosal bleeding is suggestive of a platelet disorder, von Willebrand disease (vWD), dysfibrinogenemia, or vasculitis. Bleeding into muscles and joints may be associated with a plasma procoagulant factor abnormality. In either scenario, the abnormality may be congenital or acquired. A thorough physical examination should be performed with special attention to the skin, oro- and nasopharynx, liver, spleen, and joints. Screening and diagnostic evaluation in patients with suspected bleeding

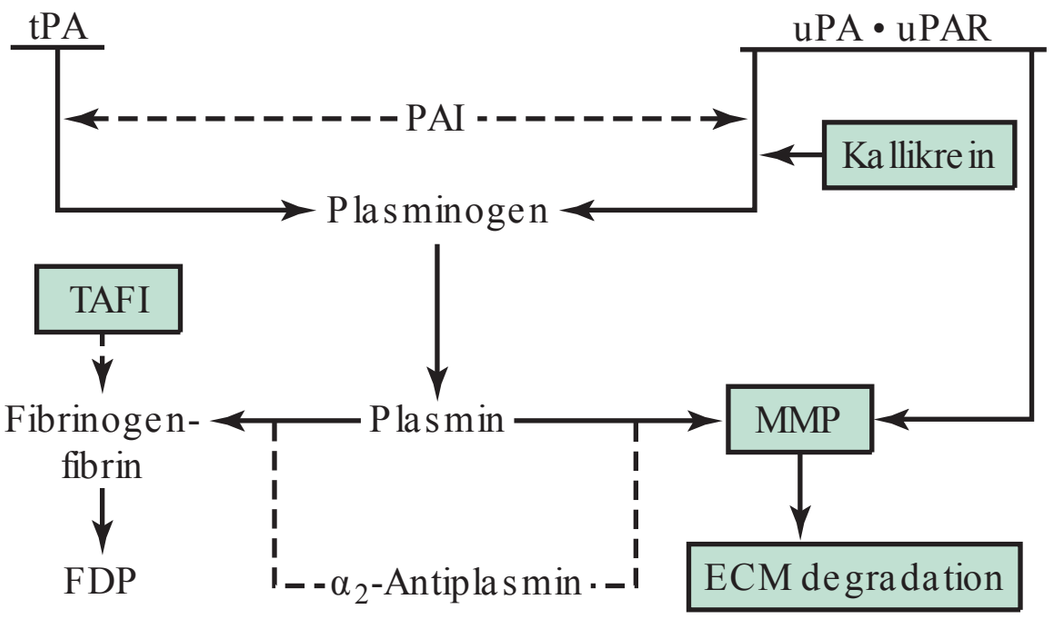


Figure 30–5. The fibrinolytic system. Solid arrows indicate activation; dashed line arrows indicate inhibition. ECM, extracellular matrix; FDP, fibrinogen-fibrin degradation products; MMP, matrix metalloproteinases; PAI, plasminogen activator inhibitor; TAFI, thrombin activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor; tPA, tissue plasminogen activator; uPA, urokinase; uPAR, cellular urokinase receptor. (Reproduced, with permission, from Goodnight SH, Hathaway WE [eds]: Disorders of Hemostasis & Thrombosis: A Clinical Guide. 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2001.)

disorders may initially include the following laboratory testing:

1. Prothrombin time (PT) to assess clotting function of factors VII, X, V, II, and fibrinogen.
2. Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) to assess clotting function of high-molecular-weight kininogen, prekallikrein, XII, XI, IX, VIII, X, V, II, and fibrinogen.
3. Platelet count and size determined as part of a CBC.
4. Platelet functional assessment by platelet function analyzer-100 (PFA-100), template bleeding time, or whole blood platelet aggregometry.
5. Fibrinogen functional level by clotting assay.

The following laboratory tests may also be useful:

1. Thrombin time to measure the generation of fibrin from fibrinogen following conversion of prothrombin to thrombin, as well as the antithrombin effects of fibrin-split products and heparin. The thrombin time may be prolonged in the setting of a normal fibrinogen concentration if the fibrinogen is dysfunctional (ie, dysfibrinogenemia).
2. Euglobulin lysis time (ELT), if available, to evaluate for accelerated fibrinolysis if the preceding workup is nonrevealing despite documented history of bleeding. If the ELT is shortened, assessment of plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 and α_2-antiplasmin is warranted, as congenital deficiency in these fibrinolytic inhibitors may cause hyperfibrinolysis. In ill patients, measurement of fibrin degradation products may assist in the diagnosis of DIC.

Goodnight SH, Hathaway WE (eds): Disorders of Hemostasis & Thrombosis: A Clinical Guide. 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2001:41–51.

ABNORMALITIES OF PLATELET NUMBER OR FUNCTION

Thrombocytopenia in the pediatric age range is often immune-mediated (eg, ITP, neonatal auto- or alloimmune thrombocytopenia, heparin-induced thrombocytopenia), but is also caused by consumptive coagulopathy (eg, DIC, Kasabach-Merritt phenomenon), acute leukemias, rare disorders such as Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome and type 2b vWD, and artifactually in automated cytometers (eg, Bernard-Soulier syndrome), where giant forms may not be enumerated as platelets.

1. Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Otherwise healthy child.
- Decreased platelet count.
- Petechiae, ecchymoses.

» General Considerations

Acute idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) is the most common bleeding disorder of childhood. It occurs most frequently in children aged 2–5 years and often follows infection with viruses, such as rubella, varicella, measles, parvovirus, influenza, EBV, or acute and chronic HIV. Most patients recover spontaneously within a few months. Chronic ITP (> 12 months' duration) occurs in 10%–20% of affected patients. The thrombocytopenia results from clearance of circulating IgM- or IgG-coated platelets by the reticuloendothelial system. The spleen plays a predominant role in the disease by forming the platelet cross-reactive antibodies and sequestering the antibody-bound platelets.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Onset of ITP is usually acute, with the appearance of multiple petechiae and ecchymoses. Epistaxis is also common at presentation. No other physical findings are usually present. Rarely, concurrent infection with EBV or CMV may cause hepatosplenomegaly or lymphadenopathy, simulating acute leukemia.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Blood—The platelet count is markedly reduced (usually < 50,000/μL and often < 10,000/μL), and platelets are frequently large on peripheral blood smear, suggesting accelerated production of new platelets. The WBC and differential are normal, and the hemoglobin concentration is preserved unless hemorrhage has been significant.

2. Bone marrow—The number of megakaryocytes is increased. Erythroid and myeloid cellularity is normal.

3. Other laboratory tests—Platelet-associated IgG or IgM, or both, may be demonstrated on the patient's platelets or in the serum. PT and aPTT are normal.

» Differential Diagnosis

Table 30–7 lists common causes of thrombocytopenia. ITP remains a diagnosis of exclusion. Family history or the finding of predominantly giant platelets on the peripheral blood smear is helpful in separating from thrombocytopenia that is hereditary. Bone marrow examination should be performed if the history is atypical (ie, the child is not otherwise healthy, or if there is a family history of bleeding), if abnormalities other than purpura and petechiae are present on physical examination, or if other cell lines are affected on the CBC. Bone marrow examination prior to using corticosteroids in the treatment for ITP remains controversial.

» Complications

Severe hemorrhage and bleeding into vital organs are the feared complications of ITP. Intracranial hemorrhage is the most serious (but rarely seen) complication, occurring in less than 1% of affected children. The most important risk factors for hemorrhage are a platelet count less than 10,000/μL and mean platelet volume less than 8 fL.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Observation is recommended for most children in the absence of bleeding regardless of platelet count. Aspirin, other medications (eg, NSAIDs such as Advil, Naproxen, etc), and foods that compromise platelet function should be avoided. Bleeding precautions (eg, restriction from physical contact activities and use of helmets) should be observed. Platelet transfusion should be avoided except in circumstances of life-threatening bleeding, in which case emergent splenectomy may be considered. In this setting, administration of corticosteroids and IVIG is also advisable.

B. Corticosteroids

Patients with clinically significant but non–life-threatening bleeding (ie, epistaxis, hematuria, and hematochezia) and those with a platelet count of less than 10,000/μL may benefit from a short course of corticosteroids. No single dose or dosing regimen has evidence to support its use above another. A higher dose initially (3–5 mg/kg/d) for 3–7 days may lead to faster count recovery. No further prednisone is given regardless of the platelet count unless significant bleeding recurs, at which time prednisone is administered in the smallest dose that achieves resolution of bleeding episodes (usually 2.5–5 mg twice daily). Follow-up continues until the steroid can again be discontinued, spontaneous remission occurs, or other therapeutic measures are instituted. Long-term use of corticosteroids should be avoided because of toxicity.

C. Intravenous Immunoglobulin

Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) is the treatment of choice for severe, acute bleeding, and may also be used as an alternative or adjunct to corticosteroid treatment in both acute and chronic ITP. IVIG may be effective even when the patient is resistant to corticosteroids; responses are prompt

Table 30–7. Common causes of thrombocytopenia.

Increased Turnover			Decreased Production	
Antibody-Mediated	Coagulopathy	Other	Congenital	Acquired
Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy	Hemolytic-uremic syndrome	Fanconi anemia Amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia	Aplastic anemia
Infection	Sepsis	Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura	Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	Leukemia and other malignancies
Immunologic diseases	Necrotizing enterocolitis Thrombosis Cavernous hemangioma	Hypersplenism Respiratory distress syndrome Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	Thrombocytopenia with absent radii Metabolic disorders Osteopetrosis	Vitamin B_{12} and folate deficiencies Medications

and may last for several weeks. A single dose of 0.8–1 g/kg has been recommended. Platelets may be given simultaneously during life-threatening hemorrhage but are rapidly destroyed. Side effects of IVIG are common, including transient neurologic complications in one-third of patients, (eg, headache, nausea, and aseptic meningitis) that mimic intracranial hemorrhage and necessitate radiologic evaluation. A transient decrease in neutrophil number may also be seen.

D. Anti-Rh(D) Immunoglobulin

This polyclonal immunoglobulin binds to the D antigen on RBCs. The splenic clearance of anti–D-coated red cells interferes with removal of antibody-coated platelets, resulting in improvement in thrombocytopenia. This approach is effective only in Rh(+) patients with a functional spleen who are DAT negative. At doses of 50–75 mcg/kg, approximately 80% of Rh(+) children with acute or chronic ITP respond; however, there is no clear difference between anti-D and IVIG in the time to reach the end point of achieving a platelet count of 20×10^9/L. Significant hemolysis may occur in up to 5% of patients, and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has provided specific monitoring requirements because of reports of fatal intravascular hemolysis. Rh(D) immunoglobulin is less expensive and infused more rapidly than IVIG, but is more expensive than corticosteroids.

E. Splenectomy

Many children with chronic ITP have platelet counts greater than 30,000/μL. Up to 70% of such children spontaneously recover with a platelet count greater than 100,000/μL within 1 year. For the remainder, corticosteroids, IVIG, and anti-D immunoglobulin are typically effective treatment for acute bleeding. Splenectomy produces a complete response in 70% and partial response in 20% of children with ITP. It should be considered only after persistence of significant thrombocytopenia for more than 12 months, and the failure of a preferred or alternative second-line therapy. The risk of overwhelming infection with encapsulated organisms is increased after splenectomy, particularly in the young child. Preoperative vaccination with polyvalent pneumococcal conjugate and polysaccharide vaccines, meningococcal C conjugate, and Hib conjugate is recommended. If possible, the procedure should be postponed, until age 5 years. For patients younger than 5 years daily penicillin prophylaxis should be started postoperatively and continued at least until 5 years of age. Postoperatively, the platelet count may rise to 1 million/μL. This reactive thrombocytosis is not associated with thrombotic complications in children. Long term, thrombosis is now recognized as a potential postsplenectomy complication.

F. Rituximab (Anti-CD20 Monoclonal Antibody)

There have been no randomized trials for rituximab in children. The efficacy of treating childhood chronic ITP in several series and case studies has demonstrated response rates between 26% and 60%. Because of significant adverse events, this therapy may be reserved for refractory cases with significant bleeding or as an alternative to splenectomy.

G. New Agents

One randomized clinical trial in children has been conducted with romiplostim, a thrombopoietin receptor agonist, with an 88% response rate and improved quality of life. In addition, as a second-line agent, they may be useful in patients where corticosteroid sparing is needed. One pitfall of this approach is that these agents require long-term administration. Further studies in more children are needed to address long-term adverse effects, efficacy, and sustained response.

» Prognosis

Eighty percent of children with ITP will achieve a remission. Predictors of the development of chronic ITP include female gender, age greater than 10 years at presentation, insidious onset of bruising, and the presence of other autoantibodies. Older child- and adolescent-onset ITP is associated with an increased risk of chronic autoimmune diseases or immunodeficiency states. Appropriate screening by history and laboratory studies (eg, antinuclear antibody) is warranted.

Blanchette V: Childhood immune thrombocytopenic purpura: diagnosis and management. Pediatr Clin North Am 2008;55:393 [PMID: 18381093].

Journeycake J: Childhood immune thrombocytopenia: role of rituximab, recombinant thrombopoietin, and other new therapeutics. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2012;2012:444 [PMID: 23233617].

Neunert C: The American Society of Hematology 2011 evidence-based practice guideline for immune thrombocytopenia. Blood 2011;117:4190 [PMID: 21325604].

2. Thrombocytopenia in the Newborn

Thrombocytopenia is one of the most common causes of neonatal hemorrhage and should be considered in any newborn with petechiae, purpura, or other significant bleeding. Defined as a platelet count less than 150,000/μL, thrombocytopenia occurs in approximately 0.9% of unselected neonates; however, up to 80% of neonates in a newborn intensive care unit may have thrombocytopenia; most of these cases are transient. Several specific entities may be responsible for more severe thrombocytopenia (see Table 30–7). Many of these infants are affected by unknown mechanisms in mothers with preeclampsia. Most of these cases resolve over several days to a few weeks without treatment, but some are severe enough to warrant platelet transfusions. Infection and DIC are the most common causes of thrombocytopenia in ill full-term newborns and in preterm newborns. In the healthy neonate, antibody-mediated thrombocytopenia

(alloimmune or maternal autoimmune), viral syndromes, hyperviscosity, and major-vessel thrombosis are frequent causes of thrombocytopenia. Management is directed toward the underlying etiology.

A. Thrombocytopenia Associated With Platelet Alloantibodies (Neonatal Alloimmune Thrombocytopenia)

Neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (NAIT) is the most common cause of thrombocytopenia in well, term infants, with a prevalence of 0.7 per 1000 pregnancies. Alloimmunization occurs when a platelet antigen of the infant differs from that of the mother, and the mother is sensitized by fetal platelets that cross the placenta into the maternal circulation. In Caucasians, 80% are associated with HPA-1a and 10%–15% with HPA-5b. Sensitization of a mother homozygous for HPA-1b to paternally acquired fetal HPA-1a antigen results in severe fetal thrombocytopenia in 1 in 1200 fetuses. Only 1 in 20 HPA-1a–positive fetuses of HPA-1a–negative mothers develops alloimmunization. Other platelet-specific alloantigens may be etiologic. Unlike in Rh incompatibility, 30%–40% of affected neonates are first born. Thrombocytopenia is progressive over the course of gestation and worse with each subsequent pregnancy. The presence of antenatal maternal platelet antibodies on more than one occasion and their persistence into the third trimester is predictive of severe neonatal thrombocytopenia; a weak or undetectable antibody does not exclude thrombocytopenia. Severe intracranial hemorrhage occurs in 10%–30% of affected neonates as early as 20 weeks' gestation. Petechiae or other bleeding manifestations are usually present shortly after birth. The disease is self-limited, and the platelet count normalizes within 4 weeks.

If alloimmunization is associated with clinically significant bleeding, transfusion of platelets harvested from the mother is more effective than random donor platelets in increasing the platelet count. Transfusion with HPA-matched platelets from unrelated donors or treatment with IVIG or methylprednisolone to acutely block macrophage uptake of sensitized platelets has also been successful in raising the platelet count and achieving hemostasis. If thrombocytopenia is not severe and bleeding is absent, observation alone is often appropriate.

Intracranial hemorrhage in a previous child secondary to alloimmune thrombocytopenia is the strongest risk factor for severe fetal thrombocytopenia and hemorrhage in a subsequent pregnancy. Amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling to obtain fetal DNA for platelet antigen typing is sometimes performed if the father is heterozygous for HPA-1a. If alloimmunization has occurred with a previous pregnancy, irrespective of history of intracranial hemorrhage, screening cranial ultrasound for hemorrhage should begin at 20 weeks' gestation and be repeated regularly. In addition, cordocentesis should be performed at approximately 20 weeks' gestation, with prophylactic transfusion of irradiated, leukoreduced, maternal platelet concentrates. If the fetal platelet count is less than 100,000/μL, the mother should be treated with weekly IVIG. Delivery by elective cesarean section is recommended if the fetal platelet count is less than 50,000/μL to minimize the risk of intracranial hemorrhage associated with birth trauma.

B. Thrombocytopenia Associated With ITP in the Mother (Neonatal Autoimmune Thrombocytopenia)

Infants born to mothers with ITP or other autoimmune diseases (eg, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome or systemic lupus erythematosus) may develop thrombocytopenia as a result of transfer of antiplatelet IgG from the mother to the infant. Unfortunately, maternal and fetal platelet counts and maternal antiplatelet antibody levels are unreliable predictors of bleeding risk. Antenatal corticosteroid administration to the mother is generally instituted once maternal platelet count falls below 50,000/μL, with or without a concomitant course of IVIG.

Most neonates with autoimmune thrombocytopenia do not develop clinically significant bleeding, and thus treatment for thrombocytopenia is not often required. The risk of intracranial hemorrhage is 0.2%–2%. If diffuse petechiae or minor bleeding are evident, a 1- to 2-week course of oral prednisone, 2 mg/kg/d, may be helpful. If the platelet count remains consistently less than 20,000/μL or if severe hemorrhage develops, IVIG should be given (0.8–1 g/kg daily for 1–2 days). Platelet transfusions are only indicated for life-threatening bleeding, and may only be effective after removal of antibody by exchange transfusion. The platelet nadir is typically between the fourth and sixth day of life and improves significantly by 1 month; full recovery may take 2–4 months. Platelet recovery may be delayed in breast-fed infants because of transfer of IgG to the milk.

C. Neonatal Thrombocytopenia Associated With Infections

Thrombocytopenia is commonly associated with severe generalized infections during the newborn period. Between 50% and 75% of neonates with bacterial sepsis are thrombocytopenic. Intrauterine infections such as rubella, syphilis, toxoplasmosis, CMV, herpes simplex (acquired intra- or postpartum), enteroviruses, and parvovirus are often associated with thrombocytopenia. In addition to specific treatment for the underlying disease, platelet transfusions may be indicated in severe cases.

D. Thrombocytopenia Associated With Kaposiform Hemangioendotheliomas (Kasabach-Merritt Syndrome)

A rare but important cause of thrombocytopenia in the newborn is kaposiform hemangioendotheliomas, a benign

neoplasm with histopathology distinct from that of classic infantile hemangiomas. Intense platelet sequestration in the lesion results in peripheral thrombocytopenia and may rarely be associated with a DIC-like picture and hemolytic anemia. The bone marrow typically shows megakaryocytic hyperplasia in response to the thrombocytopenia. Corticosteroids, α-interferon, vincristine, and sirolimus are all useful for reducing the size of the lesion, and are indicated if significant coagulopathy is present, the lesion compresses a vital structure, or the lesion is cosmetically unacceptable. If consumptive coagulopathy is present, heparin or an antifibrinolytic agent may be useful. Depending on the site, embolization may be an option. Surgery is often avoided because of the high risk of hemorrhage.

Drolet BA: Consensus-derived practice standards plan for complicated kaposiform hemangioendothelioma. J Pediatr 2013;163(1):285–291 [PMID: 23796341].

Kaplan RN: Differential diagnosis and management of thrombocytopenia in childhood. Pediatr Clin North Am 2004;51:1109 [PMID: 15275991].

3. Disorders of Platelet Function

Individuals with platelet function defects typically develop abnormal bruising and mucosal bleeding similar to that occurring in persons with thrombocytopenia. Historically, platelet function has been screened by measuring the bleeding time. If this is prolonged, in vitro platelet aggregation is studied using agonists, such as adenosine diphosphate, collagen, arachidonic acid, and ristocetin. While labor-intensive, platelet aggregometry remains important in selected clinical situations. The PFA-100 that can evaluate platelet dysfunction and vWD has replaced the template bleeding time in many institutions. Unfortunately, none of these screening tests of platelet function is uniformly predictive of clinical bleeding severity.

Platelet dysfunction may be inherited or acquired, with the latter being more common. Acquired disorders of platelet function may occur secondary to uremia, cirrhosis, sepsis, myeloproliferative disorders, congenital heart disease, and viral infections. Many pharmacologic agents decrease platelet function. The most common offending agents in the pediatric population are aspirin and other NSAIDs, synthetic penicillins, and valproic acid. In acquired platelet dysfunction, the PFA-100 closure time is typically prolonged with collagen-epinephrine, while normal with collagen-ADP.

The inherited disorders are due to defects in platelet-vessel interaction, platelet-platelet interaction, platelet granule content or release (including defects of signal transduction), thromboxane and arachidonic acid pathway, and platelet-procoagulant protein interaction. Individuals with hereditary platelet dysfunction generally have a prolonged bleeding time with normal platelet number and morphology by light microscopy. PFA-100 closure time, in contrast to that in acquired dysfunction, is typically prolonged with both collagen-ADP and collagen-epinephrine.

Congenital causes of defective platelet–vessel wall interaction include Bernard-Soulier syndrome, which is characterized by increased platelet size and decreased platelet number. The molecular defect in this autosomal recessive disorder is a deficiency or dysfunction of glycoprotein Ib-V-IX complex on the platelet surface resulting in impaired von Willebrand factor (vWF) binding, and hence impaired platelet adhesion to the vascular endothelium.

Glanzmann thrombasthenia is an example of platelet-platelet dysfunction. In this autosomal recessive disorder, glycoprotein IIb-IIIa is deficient or dysfunctional. Platelets do not bind fibrinogen effectively and exhibit impaired aggregation. As in Bernard-Soulier syndrome, acute bleeding is treated by platelet transfusion, and more recently with recombinant factor VIIa.

Disorders involving platelet granule content include storage pool disease and Quebec platelet disorder. In individuals with storage pool disease, platelet-dense granules lack adenosine dinucleotide phosphate and adenosine trinucleotide phosphate and are often found to be low in number by electron microscopy. These granules are also deficient in Hermansky-Pudlak, Chédiak-Higashi, and Wiskott-Aldrich syndromes. Whereas deficiency of a second granule class, α-granules, results in the gray platelet syndrome, Quebec platelet disorder is characterized by a normal platelet α-granule number, but with abnormal proteolysis of α-granule proteins and deficiency of platelet α-granule multimerin. α-Granule abnormality in this disorder also results in increased serum levels of urokinase-type plasminogen activator. Epinephrine-induced platelet aggregation is markedly impaired.

Platelet dysfunction has also been observed in other congenital syndromes, such as Down and Noonan syndromes, without a clear understanding of the molecular defect.

» Treatment

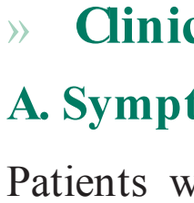
Acute bleeding in many individuals with acquired or selected congenital platelet function defects responds to therapy with desmopressin acetate, likely due to an induced release of vWF from endothelial stores and/or upregulated expression of glycoprotein Ib-V-IX on the platelet surface. If this therapy is ineffective, or if the patient has Bernard-Soulier syndrome or Glanzmann syndrome, the mainstay of treatment for bleeding episodes is platelet transfusion, possibly with HLA type-specific platelets. Recombinant VIIa has variable efficacy and may be helpful in platelet transfusion-refractory patients, and now has an FDA-approved indication for patients with Glanzmann syndrome.

Israels S: Platelet disorders in children: a diagnostic approach. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2011;56:975 [PMID: 21294245].

INHERITED BLEEDING DISORDERS

Table 30–8 lists normal values for coagulation factors. The more common factor deficiencies are discussed in this section. Individuals with bleeding disorders should avoid exposure to medications that inhibit platelet function. Participation in contact sports should be considered in the context of the severity of the bleeding disorder.

1. Factor VIII Deficiency (Hemophilia A)



ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Bruising, soft-tissue bleeding, hemarthrosis.
- Prolonged aPTT.
- Reduced factor VIII activity.

» General Considerations

Factor VIII activity is reported in units per milliliter, with 1 U/mL equal to 100% of the factor activity found in 1 mL of normal plasma. The normal range for factor VIII activity is 0.50–1.50 U/mL (50%–150%). Hemophilia A occurs predominantly in males as an X-linked disorder. One-third of cases are due to a new mutation. The incidence of factor VIII deficiency is 1:5000 male births.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with severe hemophilia A (< 1% plasma factor VIII activity) have frequent spontaneous bleeding episodes involving skin, mucous membranes, joints, muscles, and viscera in the absence of factor VIII. In contrast, patients with mild hemophilia A (5%–40% factor VIII activity) mainly bleed at times of trauma or surgery. Those with moderate hemophilia A (1% to < 5% factor VIII activity) typically have intermediate bleeding manifestations. The most crippling aspect of factor VIII deficiency is the tendency to develop recurrent hemarthroses that incite joint destruction.

B. Laboratory Findings

Individuals with hemophilia A have a prolonged aPTT, except in some cases of mild deficiency. The PT is normal. The diagnosis is confirmed by finding decreased factor VIII activity with normal vWF activity. In two-thirds of families of hemophilic patients, the females are carriers and some manifest symptomatic bleeding. Carriers of hemophilia can be suspected by determination of the ratio of factor VIII activity to vWF antigen and definitively diagnosed by molecular genetic techniques. In a male fetus or newborn with a family history of hemophilia A, cord blood sampling for factor VIII activity is accurate and important in subsequent care.

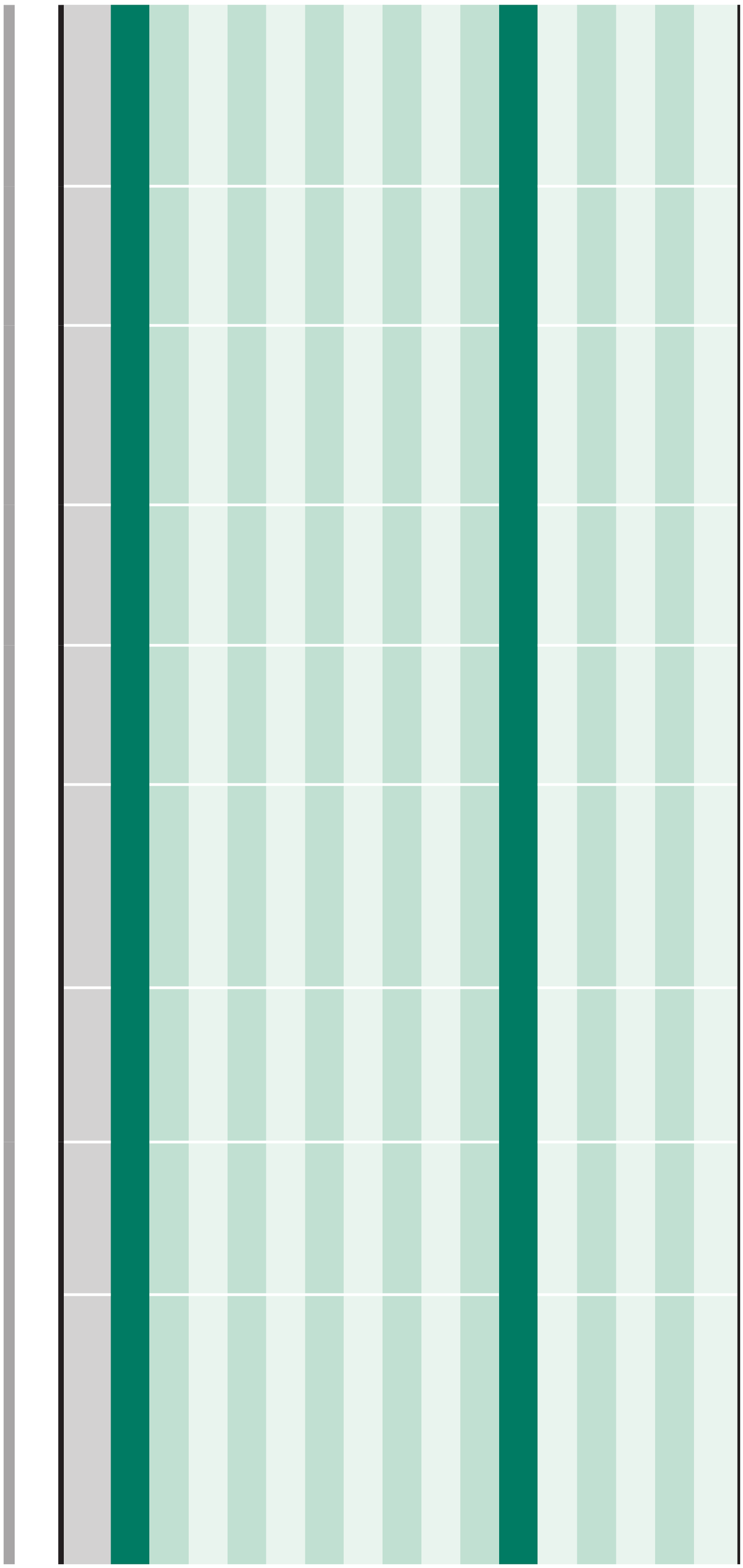
» Complications

Intracranial hemorrhage is the leading disease-related cause of death among patients with hemophilia. Most intracranial hemorrhages in moderate to severe deficiency are spontaneous (ie, not associated with trauma). Hemarthroses begin early in childhood and, particularly when recurrent, can result in joint destruction (ie, hemophilic arthropathy). Large intramuscular hematomas can lead to a compartment syndrome with resultant neurologic compromise. Although these complications are most common in severe hemophilia A, they may be experienced by individuals with moderate or mild disease. Acquired circulating antibodies to factor VIII is a potential serious complication after treatment with factor VIII concentrate. These antibodies develop in up to 30% of patients with severe hemophilia A, and especially in patients with large deletions in the factor VIII gene. Inhibitors may be amenable to desensitization with regular factor VIII infusion (immune tolerance therapy) with or without immunosuppressive therapy. Bypassing agent therapy with recombinant factor VIIa and/or FEIBA has become standard treatment of acute hemorrhage in patients with hemophilia A and a high-titer inhibitor.

In prior decades, therapy-related complications in hemophilia A have included infection with HIV, hepatitis B virus, and hepatitis C virus. Through stringent donor selection, the implementation of sensitive screening assays, the use of heat or chemical methods for viral inactivation, and the development of recombinant products, the risk of these infections is effectively minimized. Inactivation methods do not eradicate viruses lacking a lipid envelope; however, so that transmission of parvovirus and hepatitis A remains a concern with the use of plasma-derived products. Immunization with hepatitis A and hepatitis B vaccines is recommended for all hemophilia patients.

» Treatment

The general aim of management is to raise the factor VIII activity to prevent or stop bleeding. Some patients with mild factor VIII deficiency may respond to desmopressin via release of endothelial stores of factor VIII and vWF into plasma; however, most patients require administration of exogenous factor VIII to achieve hemostasis. The in vivo half-life of factor VIII is generally 8–12 hours but may vary considerably among individuals. Non–life-threatening, non–limb-threatening hemorrhage is treated initially with 20–30 U/kg of factor VIII, to achieve a rise in plasma factor VIII activity to 40%–60%. Large joint hemarthrosis and life- or limb-threatening hemorrhage is treated initially with



approximately 50 U/kg of factor VIII, targeting a rise to 100% factor VIII activity. Subsequent doses are determined according to the site and extent of bleeding and the clinical response. In circumstances of suboptimal clinical response, recent change in bleeding frequency, or comorbid illness, monitoring the plasma factor VIII activity response may be warranted. For most instances of non–life-threatening hemorrhage in experienced patients with moderate or severe hemophilia A, treatment can be administered at home, provided adequate intravenous access and close contact with the hemophilia clinical team.

Prophylactic factor VIII infusions (eg, two or four times weekly) may prevent the development of arthropathy in severe hemophiliacs, and this approach is the standard of care in pediatric hemophilia. Extended half-life factor VIII concentrates have been approved by the FDA with the hope of decreasing infusions and improving clinical outcomes caused by bleeding.

» Prognosis

The development of safe and effective therapies for hemophilia A has resulted in improved long-term survival in recent decades. In addition, more aggressive management and the coordination of comprehensive care through hemophilia centers have greatly improved quality of life and level of function.

Blanchette VS: Meeting unmet needs in inhibitor patients. Haemophilia 2010;16(Suppl 3):46–51 [PMID: 20586802].

Srivastava A: Guidelines for the management of hemophilia. 2012;19(1):1–47 [PMID: 22776238].

2. Factor IX Deficiency (Hemophilia B, Christmas Disease)

The mode of inheritance and clinical manifestations of factor IX deficiency are the same as those of factor VIII deficiency. Hemophilia B is 15%–20% as prevalent as hemophilia A. Factor IX deficiency is associated with a prolonged aPTT, but the PT and thrombin time are normal. However, the aPTT is slightly less sensitive to factor IX deficiency than factor VIII deficiency. Diagnosis of hemophilia B is made by assaying factor IX activity, and severity is determined similar to hemophilia A. In general, clinical bleeding severity correlates less well with factor activity in hemophilia B than in A.

The mainstay of treatment in hemophilia B is exogenous factor IX. Unlike factor VIII, about 50% of the administered dose of factor IX diffuses into the extravascular space. Therefore, 1 U/kg of plasma-derived factor IX concentrate or recombinant factor IX is expected to increase plasma factor IX activity by approximately 1%. Factor IX typically has a half-life of 20–22 hours in vivo, but because of variability, therapeutic monitoring may be warranted. As for factor VIII products, viral-inactivation techniques for plasma-derived factor IX concentrates appear effective in eradicating enveloped viruses. Only 1%–3% of persons with factor IX deficiency develop an inhibitor to factor IX, but patients may be at risk for anaphylaxis when receiving exogenous factor IX. The prognosis for persons with factor IX deficiency is comparable to that of patients with factor VIII deficiency. Gene therapy research efforts are ongoing for both hemophilias.

Aledort LM: Optimizing the treatment of haemophilia B: laboratory and clinical perspectives. Haemophilia 2010;16(Suppl 6): 1–2 [PMID: 20561350].

Santagostino E: Prophylaxis in haemophilia B patients: unresolved issues and pharmacoeconomic implications. Haemophilia 2010;16(Suppl 60):13–17 [PMID: 20561353].

3. Factor XI Deficiency (Hemophilia C)

Factor XI deficiency is a genetic, autosomally transmitted coagulopathy, typically of mild to moderate clinical severity. Cases of factor XI deficiency account for less than 5% of all hemophilia patients. Homozygotes generally bleed at surgery or following severe trauma and at hyperfibrinolytic sites, but do not commonly have spontaneous hemarthroses. In contrast to factor VIII and IX deficiencies, factor XI activity is least predictive of bleeding risk. Although typically mild, pathologic bleeding may be seen in heterozygous individuals with factor XI activity as high as 60%. The aPTT is often considerably prolonged. In individuals with deficiency of both plasma and platelet-associated factor XI, the PFA-100 may also be prolonged. Management typically consists of perioperative prophylaxis and episodic therapy for acute hemorrhage. Treatment includes infusion of fresh frozen plasma (FFP); platelet transfusion may also be useful for acute hemorrhage in patients with deficiency of platelet-associated factor XI. Desmopressin has been used in some cases, and antifibrinolytic therapy is common. The prognosis for an average life span in patients with factor XI deficiency is excellent.

Gomez K: Factor XI deficiency. Haemophilia 2008;14(6):1183–1189 [PMID: 18312365].

4. Other Inherited Bleeding Disorders

Other hereditary single clotting factor deficiencies are rare. Transmission is generally autosomal. Homozygous individuals with a deficiency or structural abnormality of prothrombin, factor V, factor VII, or factor X may have excessive bleeding.

Persons with dysfibrinogenemia (ie, structurally or functionally abnormal fibrinogen) may develop recurrent venous thromboembolic episodes or bleeding. Immunologic assay of fibrinogen is normal, but clotting assay may be low and the

thrombin time prolonged. The PT and aPTT may be prolonged. Cryoprecipitate, which is rich in fibrinogen, has been the treatment of choice. Fibrinogen concentrates are available in the United States, but the clinical experience is limited.

Afibrinogenemia resembles hemophilia clinically but has an autosomal recessive inheritance. Affected patients can experience a variety of bleeding manifestations, including mucosal bleeding, ecchymoses, hematomas, hemarthroses, and intracranial hemorrhage, especially following trauma. Fatal umbilical cord hemorrhage has been reported in neonates. The PT, aPTT, and thrombin time are all prolonged. A severely reduced fibrinogen concentration in an otherwise well child is confirmatory of the diagnosis. As in dysfibrinogenemia, fibrinogen concentrate or cryoprecipitate infusion is used for surgical prophylaxis and for acute hemorrhage.

Todd T: A review of long-term prophylaxis in the rare inherited coagulation factor deficiencies. Haemophilia 2010;16(4): 569–583 [PMID: 19906159].

VON WILLEBRAND DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Easy bruising and epistaxis from early childhood.
- Menorrhagia.
- Prolonged PFA-100 (or bleeding time), normal platelet count, absence of acquired platelet dysfunction.
- Reduced amount or abnormal activity of vWf.

» General Considerations

von Willebrand disease (vWD) is the most common inherited bleeding disorder among Caucasians, with a prevalence of 1%. vWF is a protein present as a multimeric complex in plasma, which binds factor VIII and is a cofactor for platelet adhesion to the endothelium. An estimated 70%–80% of all patients with vWD have classic vWD (type 1), which is caused by a partial quantitative deficiency of vWF. vWD type 2 involves a qualitative deficiency of (ie, dysfunctional) vWF, and vWD type 3 is characterized by a nearly complete deficiency of vWF. The majority (> 80%) of individuals with type 1 disease are asymptomatic. vWD is most often transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait, but it can be autosomal recessive. The disease can also be acquired, developing in association with hypothyroidism, Wilms tumor, cardiac disease, renal disease, or systemic lupus erythematosus, and in individuals receiving valproic acid. Acquired vWD is most often caused by the development of an antibody to vWF or increased turnover of vWF.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

A history of increased bruising and excessive epistaxis is often present. Prolonged bleeding also occurs with trauma or at surgery. Menorrhagia is often a presenting finding in females.

B. Laboratory Findings

PT is normal, and aPTT is sometimes prolonged. Prolongation of the PFA-100 or bleeding time is usually present since vWF plays a role in platelet adherence to endothelium. Platelet number may be decreased in type 2b vWD. Factor VIII and vWF antigen are decreased in types 1 and 3, but may be normal in type 2 vWD. vWF activity (eg, ristocetin cofactor or collagen binding) is decreased in all types. Since normal vWF antigen levels vary by blood type (type O normally has lower levels), blood type must be determined. Complete laboratory classification requires vWF multimer assay. The diagnosis requires confirmation of laboratory testing and bleeding history is often helpful when present.

» Treatment

The treatment to prevent or halt bleeding for many patients with vWD types 1 and 2 is desmopressin acetate, which causes release of vWF from endothelial stores. Desmopressin may be administered intravenously or subcutaneously, and typically elicits a three- to fivefold rise in plasma vWF. A high-concentration desmopressin nasal spray (150 mcg/spray), different from the preparation used for enuresis, may be used. Because response to vWF is variable among patients, factor VIII and vWF activities are typically measured 30–60 minutes before and 4 hours after infusion, to document the adequacy of the response. Desmopressin may cause fluid shifts, hyponatremia, and seizures; therefore, fluid restriction should be discussed, especially in children younger than 2 years. Because release of stored vWF is limited, tachyphylaxis often occurs with desmopressin.

If further therapy is indicated, vWF-replacement therapy (eg, plasma-derived concentrate) is recommended; such therapy is also used in patients with type 1 or 2a vWD who exhibit suboptimal laboratory response to desmopressin, and for all individuals with type 2b or 3 vWD. Antifibrinolytic agents (eg, ε-aminocaproic acid) may be useful for control of mucosal bleeding. Topical thrombin and fibrin glue may also be of benefit, although antibodies that inhibit these clotting proteins occur and therefore limit the affect of the glue. Estrogen-containing contraceptive therapy may be helpful for menorrhagia.

» Prognosis

With the availability of effective treatment and prophylaxis for bleeding, life expectancy in vWD is normal.

Branchford BR, Di Paola J: Making a diagnosis of VWD. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2012;2012:161 [PMID: 23233576].
http://practical-hemostasis.com (Excellent Practical Source for Laboratory Hemostasis).
Nichols WL et al: von Willebrand disease (VWD): evidence-based diagnosis and management guidelines, the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) Expert Panel report (USA). Haemophilia 2008;14(2):171–232 [PMID: 18315614].

ACQUIRED BLEEDING DISORDERS

1. Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Presence of a disorder known to trigger DIC.
- Evidence for consumptive coagulopathy (prolonged aPTT, PT, or thrombin time; increase in FSPs [fibrin-fibrinogen split products]; decreased fibrinogen or platelets).

» General Considerations

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is an acquired pathologic process characterized by tissue factor–mediated coagulation activation in the host. DIC involves dysregulated, excessive thrombin generation, with consequent intravascular fibrin deposition and consumption of platelets and procoagulant factors. Microthrombi, composed of fibrin and platelets, may produce tissue ischemia and end-organ damage. The fibrinolytic system is frequently activated in DIC, leading to plasmin-mediated destruction of fibrin and fibrinogen; this results in fibrin-fibrinogen degradation products (FDPs) that exhibit anticoagulant and platelet-inhibitory functions. DIC commonly accompanies severe infection and other critical illnesses in infants and children. Conditions known to trigger DIC include endothelial damage (eg, endotoxin, virus), tissue necrosis (eg, burns), diffuse ischemic injury (eg, shock, hypoxia acidosis), and systemic release of tissue procoagulants (eg, certain cancers, placental disorders).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Signs of DIC may include (1) signs of shock, often including end-organ dysfunction, (2) diffuse bleeding tendency (eg, hematuria, melena, purpura, petechiae, persistent oozing from needle punctures or other invasive procedures), and (3) evidence of thrombotic lesions (eg, major vessel thrombosis, purpura fulminans).

B. Laboratory Findings

Tests that are most sensitive, easiest to perform, most useful for monitoring, and best reflect the hemostatic capacity of the patient are the PT, aPTT, platelet count, fibrinogen, and FSPs. The PT and aPTT are typically prolonged and the platelet count and fibrinogen concentration may be decreased. However, in children, the fibrinogen level may be normal until late in the course. Levels of FSPs are increased, and elevated levels of d-dimer, a cross-linked fibrin degradation byproduct, may be helpful in monitoring the degree of activation of both coagulation and fibrinolysis. However, d-dimer is nonspecific and may be elevated in the context of a triggering event (eg, severe infection) without concomitant DIC. Often, physiologic inhibitors of coagulation, especially antithrombin III and protein C, are consumed, predisposing to thrombosis. The specific laboratory abnormalities in DIC may vary with the triggering event and the course of illness.

» Differential Diagnosis

DIC can be difficult to distinguish from coagulopathy of liver disease (ie, hepatic synthetic dysfunction), especially when the latter is associated with thrombocytopenia secondary to portal hypertension and hypersplenism. Generally, factor VII activity is decreased markedly in liver disease (due to deficient synthesis of this protein, which has the shortest half-life among the procoagulant factors), but only mildly to moderately decreased in DIC (due to consumption). Factor VIII activity is often normal or even increased in liver disease, but decreased in DIC.

» Treatment

A. Therapy for Underlying Disorder

The most important aspect of therapy in DIC is the identification and treatment of the triggering event. If the pathogenic process underlying DIC is reversed, often no other therapy is needed for the coagulopathy.

B. Replacement Therapy for Consumptive Coagulopathy

Replacement of consumed procoagulant factors with FFP and of platelets via platelet transfusion is warranted in the setting of DIC with hemorrhagic complications, or as periprocedural bleeding prophylaxis. Infusion of 10–15 mL/kg FFP typically raises procoagulant factor activities by approximately 10%–15%. Cryoprecipitate can also be given as a rich source of fibrinogen; one bag of cryoprecipitate per 3 kg in infants or one bag of cryoprecipitate per 6 kg in older children typically raises plasma fibrinogen concentration by 75–100 mg/dL.

C. Anticoagulant Therapy for Coagulation Activation

Continuous intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin is sometimes given in order to attenuate coagulation activation and consequent consumptive coagulopathy. The rationale for heparin therapy is to maximize the efficacy of, and minimize the need for, replacement of procoagulants and platelets; however, clinical evidence demonstrating benefit of heparin in DIC is lacking. Prophylactic doses of unfractionated heparin or low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) in critically ill and nonbleeding patients with DIC may be considered for prevention of venous thromboembolism. Unfractionated heparin dosing and monitoring is listed on page 934.

D. Specific Factor Concentrates

A nonrandomized pilot study of antithrombin concentrate in children with DIC and associated acquired antithrombin deficiency demonstrated favorable outcomes, suggesting that replacement of this consumed procoagulant may be of benefit. Protein C concentrate has also shown promise in two small pilot studies of meningococci-associated DIC with purpura fulminans. Activated protein C has reduced mortality in septic adults in a large randomized multicenter trial; in additional studies, efficacy in adults and pediatrics is increasingly controversial.

2. Liver Disease

The liver is the major synthetic site of prothrombin; fibrinogen; high-molecular-weight kininogen; and factors V, VII, IX, X, XI, XII, and XIII. In addition, plasminogen and the physiologic anticoagulants (antithrombin III, protein C, and protein S) are hepatically synthesized. α_2-Antiplasmin, a regulator of fibrinolysis, is also produced in the liver. Deficiency of factor V and the vitamin K–dependent factors (II, VII, IX, and X) is most often a result of decreased hepatic synthesis, and is manifested by a prolonged PT and often a prolonged aPTT. Extravascular loss and increased consumption of clotting factors may contribute to PT and aPTT prolongation. Fibrinogen production is often decreased, or an abnormal fibrinogen (dysfibrinogen) containing excess sialic acid residues may be synthesized, or both. Hypofibrinogenemia or dysfibrinogenemia is associated with prolongation of thrombin time and reptilase time. FDPs and d-dimers may be present because of increased fibrinolysis, particularly in the setting of chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis. Thrombocytopenia secondary to hypersplenism may occur. DIC and coagulopathy of liver disease also mimic vitamin K deficiency; however, vitamin K deficiency has normal factor V activity. Treatment of acute bleeding in the setting of coagulopathy of liver disease consists of replacement with FFP and platelets. Desmopressin may shorten the bleeding time and aPTT in patients with chronic liver disease, but its safety has not been well established. Recombinant VIIa also is efficacious for life-threatening hemorrhage.

3. Vitamin K Deficiency

The newborn period is characterized by physiologically depressed activity of the vitamin K–dependent factors (II, VII, IX, and X). If vitamin K is not administered at birth, a bleeding diathesis previously called hemorrhagic disease of the newborn and now termed vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB) may develop. Outside of the newborn period, vitamin K deficiency may occur as a consequence of inadequate intake, excess loss, inadequate formation of active metabolites, or competitive antagonism.

One of three patterns is seen in the neonatal period:

1. Early VKDB of the newborn occurs within 24 hours of birth and is most often manifested by cephalohematoma, intracranial hemorrhage, or intra-abdominal bleeding. Although occasionally idiopathic, it is most often associated with maternal ingestion of drugs that interfere with vitamin K metabolism (eg, warfarin, phenytoin, isoniazid, and rifampin). Early VKDB occurs in 6%–12% of neonates born to mothers who take these medications without receiving vitamin K supplementation. The disorder is often life threatening.
2. Classic VKDB occurs at 24 hours to 7 days of age and usually is manifested as gastrointestinal, skin, or mucosal bleeding. Bleeding after circumcision may occur. Although occasionally associated with maternal drug usage, it most often occurs in well infants who do not receive vitamin K at birth and are solely breast fed.
3. Late neonatal VKDB occurs on or after day 8. Manifestations include intracranial, gastrointestinal, or skin bleeding. This disorder is often associated with fat malabsorption (eg, in chronic diarrhea) or alterations in intestinal flora (eg, with prolonged antibiotic therapy). Like classic VKDB, late VKDB occurs almost exclusively in breast-fed infants.

The diagnosis of vitamin K deficiency is suspected based on the history, physical examination, and laboratory results. The PT is prolonged out of proportion to the aPTT (also prolonged). The thrombin time becomes prolonged late in the course. The platelet count is normal. This laboratory profile is similar to the coagulopathy of acute liver disease, but with normal fibrinogen level and absence of hepatic transaminase elevation. The diagnosis of vitamin K deficiency is confirmed by a demonstration of noncarboxylated proteins in the absence of vitamin K in the plasma and by clinical and laboratory responses to vitamin K. Intravenous or subcutaneous treatment with vitamin K should be given immediately and not withheld while awaiting test results. In the setting of severe bleeding, additional acute treatment with FFP or recombinant factor VIIa may be indicated.

4. Uremia

Uremia is frequently associated with acquired platelet dysfunction. Bleeding occurs in approximately 50% of patients with chronic renal failure. The bleeding risk conferred by platelet dysfunction associated with metabolic imbalance may be compounded by decreased vWF activity and procoagulant deficiencies (eg, factor II, XII, XI, IX) due to increased urinary losses of these proteins in some settings of renal insufficiency. In accordance with platelet dysfunction, uremic bleeding is typically characterized by purpura, epistaxis, menorrhagia, or gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Acute bleeding may be managed with infusion of desmopressin acetate, factor VIII concentrates containing vWF, or cryoprecipitate with or without coadministration of FFP. Red cell transfusion may be required. Prophylactic administration of erythropoietin before the development of severe anemia appears to decrease the potential for bleeding. Recombinant VIIa may be useful in refractory bleeding.

Levi M: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of disseminated intravascular coagulation. British Committee for Standards in Haematology. Br J Haematol 2009;145:24–33 [PMID: 19222477].

Shearer MJ: Vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB) in early infancy. Blood Rev 2009;23:49–59 [PMID: 18804903].

Witmer CM: Off-label recombinant factor VIIa use and thrombosis in children: a multi-center cohort study. J Pediatr 2011;158:820–825 [PMID: 21146180].

VASCULAR ABNORMALITIES ASSOCIATED WITH BLEEDING

1. Henoch-Schönlein Purpura (Anaphylactoid Purpura)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Purpuric cutaneous rash.
- Migratory polyarthritis or polyarthralgias.
- Intermittent abdominal pain.
- Nephritis.

» General Considerations

Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP), the most common type of small vessel vasculitis in children, primarily affects boys 2–7 years of age. Occurrence is highest in the spring and fall, and upper respiratory infection precedes the diagnosis in two-thirds of children.

Leukocytoclastic vasculitis in HSP principally involves the small vessels of the skin, gastrointestinal tract, and kidneys, with deposition of IgA immune complexes. The most common and earliest symptom is palpable purpura, which results from extravasation of erythrocytes into the tissue surrounding the involved venules. Antigens from group A β-hemolytic streptococci and other bacteria, viruses, drugs, foods, and insect bites have been proposed as inciting agents.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Skin involvement may be urticarial initially, progresses to a maculopapules, and coalesces to a symmetrical, palpable purpuric rash distributed on the legs, buttocks, and elbows. New lesions may continue to appear for 2–4 weeks, and may extend to involve the entire body. Two-thirds of patients develop migratory polyarthralgias or polyarthritis, primarily of the ankles and knees. Intermittent, sharp abdominal pain occurs in approximately 50% of patients, and hemorrhage and edema of the small intestine can often be demonstrated. Intussusception may develop. From 25% to 50% of those affected develop renal involvement in the second or third week of illness with either a nephritic or, less commonly, nephrotic picture. Hypertension may accompany the renal involvement. In males, testicular torsion may also occur, and neurologic symptoms are possible due to small vessel vasculitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The platelet count is normal or elevated, and other screening tests of hemostasis and platelet function are typically normal. Urinalysis frequently reveals hematuria, and sometimes proteinuria. Stool may be positive for occult blood. The antistreptolysin O (ASO) titer is often elevated and the throat culture positive for group A β-hemolytic streptococci. Serum IgA may be elevated.

» Differential Diagnosis

The rash of septicemia (especially meningococcemia) may be similar to skin involvement in HSP, although the distribution tends to be more generalized. The possibility of trauma should be considered in any child presenting with purpura. Other vasculitides should also be considered. The lesions of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) are not palpable.

» Treatment

Generally, treatment is supportive. NSAIDs may be useful for the arthritis. Corticosteroid therapy may provide symptomatic relief for severe gastrointestinal or joint manifestations but does not alter skin or renal manifestations. If

culture for group A β-hemolytic streptococci is positive or if the ASO titer is elevated, a therapeutic course of penicillin is warranted.

» Prognosis

The prognosis for recovery is generally good, although symptoms frequently (25%–50%) recur over a period of several months. In patients who develop renal manifestations, microscopic hematuria may persist for years. Progressive renal failure occurs in less than 5% of patients with HSP, with an overall fatality rate of 3%.

McCarthy HJ: Clinical practice: diagnosis and management of Henoch-Schönlein purpura. Eur J Pediatr 2010;169:643–650 [PMID: 20012647].

2. Collagen Disorders

Mild to life-threatening bleeding occurs with some types of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, the most common inherited collagen disorder. Ehlers-Danlos syndrome is characterized by joint hypermobility, skin extensibility, and easy bruising. Coagulation abnormalities may sometimes be present, including platelet dysfunction and deficiencies of coagulation factors VIII, IX, XI, and XIII. However, bleeding and easy bruising, in most instances, relates to fragility of capillaries and compromised vascular integrity. Individuals with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome types 4 and 6 are at risk for aortic dissection and spontaneous rupture of aortic aneurysms. Surgery should be avoided for patients with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, as should medications that induce platelet dysfunction.

Key NS, DE Paepe A, Malfait F, Shovlin CL: Vascular hemostasis. Haemophilia 2010 Jul;16(Suppl 5):146 [PMID: 20590874].

° THROMBOTIC DISORDERS

» General Considerations

Although uncommon in children, thrombotic disorders are being recognized with increasing frequency, particularly with heightened physician awareness and improved survival in pediatric intensive care settings. Several clinical conditions have a potential association with thrombotic events in childhood.

» Clinical Findings

Initial evaluation of the child who has thrombosis includes an assessment for potential triggering factors, as well as a family history of thrombosis and early cardiovascular or cerebrovascular disease.

A. Clinical Risk Factors

Clinical risk factors are present in more than 90% of children with acute venous thromboembolism (VTE). These conditions include the presence of an indwelling vascular catheter, cardiac disease, infection, trauma, surgery, immobilization, collagen-vascular or chronic inflammatory disease, renal disease, sickle cell anemia, and malignancy. Prospective findings employing serial radiologic evaluation as screening indicate that the risk of VTE is nearly 30% for short-term central venous catheters placed in the internal jugular veins.

Retrospective data suggest that approximately 8% of children with cancer develop symptomatic VTE.

1. Inherited Thrombophilia (Hypercoagulable) States

a. Protein c deficiency—Protein C is a vitamin K–dependent protein that is normally activated by thrombin bound to thrombomodulin and inactivates activated factors V and VIII. In addition, activated protein C promotes fibrinolysis. Two phenotypes of hereditary protein C deficiency exist. Heterozygous individuals with autosomal dominant protein C deficiency often present with VTE as young adults, but the disorder may manifest during childhood or in later adulthood. In mild protein C deficiency, anticoagulant prophylaxis is typically limited to periods of increased prothrombotic risk. Homozygous or compound heterozygous protein C deficiency is rare but phenotypically severe. Affected children generally present within the first 12 hours of life with purpura fulminans (Figure 30–6) and/or VTE. Prompt protein C replacement by infusion of protein C concentrate (if unavailable) or FFP every 6–12 hours, along with therapeutic heparin administration, is recommended. Subsequent management requires chronic anticoagulation with warfarin, sometimes along with routine protein C concentrate infusion in order to permit lower warfarin dosing. Recurrent VTE is common, especially during periods of subtherapeutic anticoagulation or in the presence of conditions associated with increased prothrombotic risk.

b. Protein s deficiency—Protein S is a cofactor for protein C. Neonates with homozygous protein S deficiency have a course similar to those with homozygous or compound heterozygous protein C deficiency. Lifelong warfarin therapy is indicated in homozygous/severe deficiency, or in heterozygous individuals who have experienced recurrent VTE. Efforts must be made to distinguish these conditions from acquired deficiency, which can be antibody-mediated or secondary to an increase in C4b-binding protein induced by inflammation.

c. Antithrombin deficiency—Antithrombin, which is the most important physiologic inhibitor of thrombin, also

▲**Figure 30–6.** Purpura fulminans in an infant with severe protein C deficiency.

inhibits activated factors IX, X, XI, and XII. Antithrombin deficiency is transmitted in an autosomal dominant pattern and is associated with VTE, typically with onset in adolescence or young adulthood. Therapy for acute VTE can involve replacement with antithrombin concentrate in addition to therapeutic anticoagulation. The efficiency of heparin may be significantly diminished in the setting of severe antithrombin deficiency and it often requires supplementation of antithrombin via concentrate. Patients with homozygous/severe deficiency or recurrent VTE are maintained on lifelong warfarin.

d. Factor v leiden mutation—An amino acid substitution in the gene coding for factor V results in factor V Leiden, a factor V polymorphism that is resistant to inactivation by activated protein C. The most common cause of activated protein C resistance in Caucasians, factor V Leiden is present in approximately 5% of the Caucasian population, 20% of Caucasian adults with deep vein thrombosis, and 40%–60% of those with a family history of VTE. VTE occurs in both heterozygous and homozygous individuals. In the former case, thrombosis is typically triggered by a clinical risk factor (or else develops in association with additional thrombophilia traits), whereas in the latter case, it is often spontaneous. Population studies suggest that the risk of incident VTE is increased two- to sevenfold in the setting of heterozygous factor V Leiden, 35-fold among heterozygous individuals taking the oral contraceptives, and 80-fold in those homozygous for factor V Leiden.

e. Prothrombin mutation—The 20210 glutamine to alanine mutation in the prothrombin gene is a relatively common polymorphism in Caucasians that enhances its activation to thrombin. In heterozygous form, this mutation is associated with a two- to threefold increased risk for incident VTE. This mutation also appears to modestly increase the risk for recurrent VTE.

f. Other inherited disorders—Qualitative abnormalities of fibrinogen (dysfibrinogenemias) are usually inherited in an autosomal dominant manner. Most individuals with dysfibrinogenemia are asymptomatic. Some patients experience bleeding, while others develop venous or arterial thrombosis. The diagnosis is suggested by a prolonged thrombin time with a normal fibrinogen concentration. Hyperhomocysteinemia can be an inherited or an acquired condition and is associated with an increased risk for both arterial and venous thromboses. In children, it may also serve as a risk factor for ischemic arterial stroke. Hyperhomocysteinemia is quite uncommon in the setting of dietary folate supplementation (as in the United States) and is observed almost uniquely in cases of renal insufficiency or metabolic disease (eg, homocystinuria). Methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase receptor mutations do not appear to constitute a risk factor for thrombosis in US children if homocysteine is not elevated.

Lipoprotein(a) is a lipoprotein with homology to plasminogen. In vitro studies suggest that lipoprotein(a) may both promote atherothrombosis and inhibit fibrinolysis. Some evidence to date suggests that elevated plasma concentrations of lipoprotein(a) are associated with an increased risk of VTEs and recurrent ischemic arterial stroke in children.

Increased factor VIII activity is a risk factor for incident and recurrent VTE and is common among children with acute VTE. Elevation in factor VIII may persist in the long-term follow-up of these patients, and can be inherited.

2. Acquired Disorders

a. Antiphospholipid antibodies—The development of antiphospholipid antibodies is the most common form of acquired thrombophilia in children. Antiphospholipid antibodies, which include the lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin antibodies, and β_2-glycoprotein-1 antibodies (among others), are common in acute childhood VTE. The lupus anticoagulant is demonstrated in vitro by its inhibition of phospholipid-dependent coagulation assays (eg, aPTT and dilute Russell viper venom time), whereas immunologic techniques (eg, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays) are often used to detect anticardiolipin and β_2-glycoprotein-1 antibodies. Although common in persons with autoimmune

diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus, antiphospholipid antibodies may also develop following certain drug exposures, infection, acute inflammation, and lymphoproliferative diseases. Sometimes VTE and antiphospholipid antibodies may predate other signs of lupus for long periods of time. Viral illness is a common precipitant in children, and in many cases, the inciting infection may be asymptomatic.

If an antiphospholipid antibody persists for 12 weeks following the acute thrombotic event, the diagnosis of antiphospholipid syndrome is confirmed. Optimal duration of anticoagulation in this setting is unclear, such that current pediatric treatment guidelines recommend a 3-month to lifelong course.

b. Deficiencies of intrinsic anticoagulants—Acquired deficiencies of proteins C and S and antithrombin may occur in the clinical context of antibodies (eg, protein S antibodies in acute varicella), excessive consumption, including sepsis, DIC, major-vessel or extensive VTE, and post–bone marrow transplant sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (formerly termed hepatic veno-occlusive disease), or excessive loss, such as inpatients with nephrotic syndrome, protein-losing enteropathy or liver failure.

c. Acute phase reactants—As part of the acute phase response, elevations in plasma fibrinogen concentration, plasma factor VIII, and platelet count may occur, all of which may contribute to an acquired prothrombotic state.

Reactive thrombocytosis is rarely associated with VTEs in children when the platelet count is less than 1 million/μL.

B. Symptoms and Signs

Presenting features of thrombosis vary with the anatomic site, extent of vascular involvement, degree of vaso-occlusion, and presence of end-organ dysfunction. The classic presentation of deep venous thrombosis of an upper or lower extremity is painful acute or subacute extremity swelling, while that for pulmonary embolism commonly involves dyspnea and pleuritic chest pain, and in cerebral sinovenous thrombosis (CSVT) often includes severe or persistent headache, with or without neurologic deficit in otherwise well children. Arterial thrombosis of the lower extremity (eg, neonatal umbilical artery catheter–associated), as well as vasospasm without identified thrombosis, often manifests with diminished distal pulses and dusky discoloration of the limb.

C. Laboratory Findings

A comprehensive laboratory investigation for thrombophilia (ie, hypercoagulability) was recommended in 2002 by the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis in order to disclose possible underlying congenital or acquired abnormalities that may affect acute or long-term management; however, there remains controversy and wide variation of practice. Recent trends favor thrombophilia testing in adolescents with spontaneous thrombosis, and in neonates/children with non–catheter-related thrombosis and stroke. There are insufficient data to recommend routine thrombophilia testing in neonates/children with catheter-related thrombosis. When indicated, thrombophilia testing includes evaluation for intrinsic anticoagulant deficiency (proteins C and S and antithrombin), procoagulant factor excess (eg, factor VIII), proteins and genetic mutations mediating enhanced procoagulant activity or reduced sensitivity to inactivation (antiphospholipid antibodies; factor V Leiden and prothrombin 20210 polymorphisms), biochemical mediators of endothelial damage (homocysteine), and markers or regulators of fibrinolysis (eg, d-dimer, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, and lipoprotein[a]). Interpretation of procoagulant factor and intrinsic anticoagulant levels should take into account the age dependence of normal values for these proteins. Among these VTE risk factors, antiphospholipid antibodies and elevated levels of homocysteine and lipoprotein(a) have also been demonstrated as risk factors for arterial thrombotic and ischemic events.

D. Imaging

Appropriate radiologic imaging is essential to objectively document the thrombus and to delineate the type (venous vs arterial), occlusiveness, and extent (proximal and distal termini) of thrombosis. Depending on site, typical imaging modalities include compression ultrasound with Doppler, computed tomographic (CT) venography, magnetic resonance venography, and conventional angiography.

» Treatment

Current guidelines for the treatment of first-episode VTE in children have been largely based on adult experience and include therapeutic anticoagulation for at least 3 months. During the period of anticoagulation, bleeding precautions should be followed, as previously described (see Treatment under Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura, earlier). In CVST, presentation with postthrombotic hemorrhage often does not necessarily preclude anticoagulant therapy. Initial therapy for acute VTE employs continuous intravenous unfractionated heparin or subcutaneous injections of LMWH) for at least 7 days, monitored by anti-Xa activity level to maintain anticoagulant levels of 0.3–0.7 or 0.5–1.0 IU/mL, respectively. Subsequent extended anticoagulant therapy is given with LMWH or daily oral warfarin, the latter agent monitored by the PT to maintain an international normalized ratio (INR) of 2.0–3.0. During warfarin treatment, the INR optimally should be within the therapeutic range for 2 consecutive days before discontinuation of heparin.

Warfarin pharmacokinetics are affected by acute illness, numerous medications, and changes in diet, and can necessitate frequent monitoring. In children, warfarin dose is determined by age and weight. LMWH offers the advantage of infrequent need for monitoring but is far more expensive than warfarin. Anatomic contributions to venous stasis (eg, mastoiditis or depressed skull fracture as risk factors for CVST; congenital left iliac vein stenosis in DVT of proximal left lower extremity with May-Thurner anomaly) should be addressed to optimize response to anticoagulation. In cases of limb- or life-threatening VTEs, including major proximal pulmonary embolus, and in cases of progressive VTE despite therapeutic anticoagulation, thrombolytic therapy (eg, tissue-type plasminogen activator) may be considered. Whether thrombolytic therapy may also reduce the risk of the postthrombotic syndrome (PTS) in children with veno-occlusive deep venous thrombosis of the proximal limbs in whom adverse prognostic biomarkers (ie, elevated factor VIII and D-dimer levels) are present at diagnosis needs further prospective evaluation. In adolescent females, estrogen-containing contraceptives are relatively contraindicated in those with prior VTE, particularly if an additional genetic cause for impairment of protein C pathway is disclosed.

» Prognosis

Registries and cohort studies have suggested that recurrent VTE occurs in approximately 10% of children within 2 years. Persistent thrombosis is evident following completion of a standard therapeutic course of anticoagulation in up to 30% of children, with unclear clinical importance. Approximately one in four children with deep venous thrombosis involving the extremities develops postthrombotic syndrome, a condition of venous insufficiency of varying severity characterized by chronic skin changes, edema, and dilated collateral superficial venous formation, and often accompanied by functional limitation (pain with activities or at rest). Complete veno-occlusion and elevated levels of factor VIII and d-dimer at VTE diagnosis have been identified as prognostic factors for PTS among children with deep venous thrombosis affecting the limbs. The presence of homozygous anticoagulant deficiencies, multiple thrombophilia traits, or persistent antiphospholipid antibodies following VTE diagnosis has been associated with increased risk of recurrent VTE, leading to consideration of extended anticoagulation in these instances. In CSVT, failure to provide antithrombotic therapy has been associated with adverse neurologic outcome.

Goldenberg NA: Definition of post-thrombotic syndrome following lower extremity deep venous thrombosis and standardization of outcome measurement in pediatric clinical investigations. J Thromb Haemost 2012;10:477 [PMID: 22482118].

Monagle P: Antithrombotic therapy in neonates and children: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines (8th Edition). Chest 2012 Feb;141 (2 Suppl):e737S [PMID: 22315277].

Yang JY: Pediatric thrombophilia. Pediatr Clin North Am 2013;60(6):1443–1462 [PMID: 24237981].

° SPLENIC ABNORMALITIES

SPLENOMEGALY & HYPERSPLENISM

The differential diagnosis of splenomegaly includes the general categories of congestive splenomegaly, chronic infections, leukemia and lymphomas, hemolytic anemias, reticuloendothelioses, and storage diseases (Table 30–9).

Splenomegaly due to any cause may be associated with hypersplenism and the excessive destruction of circulating red cells, white cells, and platelets. The degree of cytopenia is variable and, when mild, requires no specific therapy. In other cases, the thrombocytopenia may cause life-threatening bleeding, particularly when the splenomegaly is secondary to portal hypertension and associated with esophageal varices or the consequence of a storage disease. In such cases, treatment with surgical splenectomy or with splenic embolization may be warranted. Although more commonly associated with acute enlargement, rupture of an enlarged spleen can be seen in more chronic conditions such as Gaucher disease.

Thomas AS, Mehta A, Hughes DA: Gaucher disease:; hematological presentations and complications. Br J Haematol 2014;165:427–440 [PMID: 24588457].

ASPLENIA & SPLENECTOMY

Children who lack normal splenic function are at risk for sepsis, meningitis, and pneumonia due to encapsulated bacteria such as pneumococci, meningococcus, and H influenzae. Such infections are often fulminant and fatal because of inadequate antibody production and impaired phagocytosis of circulating bacteria.

Congenital asplenia is usually suspected when an infant is born with abnormalities of abdominal viscera and complex cyanotic congenital heart disease. Howell-Jolly bodies are usually present on the peripheral blood smear, and the absence of splenic tissue is confirmed by technetium radionuclide scanning. The prognosis depends on the underlying cardiac lesions, and many children die during the first few months. Prophylactic antibiotics, usually penicillin, and pneumococcal conjugate, Hib, and meningococcal vaccines are recommended.

The risk of overwhelming sepsis following surgical splenectomy is related to the child's age and to the underlying disorder. Because the risk is highest when the procedure is

Table 30–9. Causes of chronic splenomegaly in children.

Cause	Associated Clinical Findings	Diagnostic Investigation
Congestive splenomegaly	History of umbilical vein catheter or neonatal omphalitis; signs of portal hypertension (varices, hemorrhoids, dilated abdominal wall veins); pancytopenia; history of hepatitis or jaundice	Complete blood count, platelet count, liver function tests, ultrasonography
Chronic infections	History of exposure to tuberculosis, histoplasmosis, coccidiomycosis, other fungal disease; chronic sepsis (foreign body in bloodstream; subacute infective endocarditis)	Appropriate cultures and skin tests, ie, blood cultures; PPD, fungal serology and antigen tests, chest film; HIV serology
Infectious mononucleosis	Fever, fatigue, pharyngitis, rash, adenopathy, hepatomegaly	Atypical lymphocytes on blood smear, monospot, EBV antibody titers
Leukemia, lymphoma, Hodgkin disease	Evidence of systemic involvement with fever, bleeding tendencies, hepatomegaly, and lymphadenopathy; pancytopenia	Blood smear, bone marrow examination, chest film, gallium scan, LDH, uric acid
Hemolytic anemia	Anemia, jaundice; family history of anemia, jaundice, and gallbladder disease in young adults	Reticulocyte count, Coombs test, blood smear, osmotic fragility test, hemoglobin electrophoresis
Reticuloendothelioses (histiocytosis X)	Chronic otitis media, seborrheic or petechial skin rashes, anemia, infections, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, bone lesions	Skeletal radiographs for bone lesions; biopsy of bone, liver, bone marrow, or lymph node
Storages diseases	Family history of similar disorders, neurologic involvement, evidence of macular degeneration, hepatomegaly	Biopsy of liver or bone marrow in search for storage cells
Splenic cyst	Evidence of other infections (postinfectious cyst) or congenital anomalies; peculiar shape of spleen	Radionuclide scan, ultrasonography
Splenic hemangioma	Other hemangiomas, consumptive coagulopathy	Radionuclide scan, arteriography, platelet count, coagulation screen

EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; LDH, lactic dehydrogenase; PPD, purified protein derivative.

performed earlier in life, splenectomy is usually postponed until after age 5 years. The risk of postsplenectomy sepsis is also greater in children with malignancies, thalassemias, and reticuloendothelioses than in children whose splenectomy is performed for ITP, hereditary spherocytosis, or trauma. Prior to splenectomy, children should be immunized against Streptococcus pneumoniae, H influenzae, and Neisseria meningitidis. Additional management should include penicillin prophylaxis and prompt evaluation for fever 38.8°C or above or signs of severe infection.

Children with sickle cell anemia develop functional asplenia during the first year of life, and overwhelming sepsis is the leading cause of early deaths in this disease. Prophylactic penicillin reduces the incidence of sepsis by 84%.

Patel NY: Outcomes and complications after splenectomy for hematologic disorders: Am J Surg 2012;204:1014 [PMID: 23116640].

Pickering L: American Academy of Pediatrics: immunization in special circumstances. Red Book. Am Acad Pediatr 2012;74–90.

Rubin LG, Schaffner W: Clinical practice. Care of the asplenic patient. N Engl J Med 2012:371:349–356 [PMID: 25054718].

TRANSFUSION MEDICINE

DONOR SCREENING & BLOOD PROCESSING: RISK MANAGEMENT

Minimizing the risks of transfusion begins by screening volunteer donors with a universal donor questionnaire that will protect the recipient from transmission of infectious agents as well as other risks of transfusions. In addition, information defining high-risk groups whose behavior increases the possible transmission of HIV, hepatitis, and other diseases is provided, with the request that persons in these groups not

donate blood. Positive responses may result in temporary or permanent deferral from donation.

Before blood components can be released for transfusion, donor blood is screened for hepatitis B surface antigen; antibodies to hepatitis B core antigen, hepatitis C, HIV-1 and 2, and human T-cell lymphotropic virus (HTLV) I and II; and a serologic test for syphilis (Table 30–10). Screening donor blood for viral genome (nucleic acid amplification [NAT] testing) was mandated for HIV, HCV, and West Nile virus. NAT testing for other viruses may be added in the future, and screening for Chagas disease was accepted in 2007 and is routine in the Southwest. Positive tests are repeated.

Upon confirmation of a positive test, the unit in question is destroyed and the donor is notified and deferred from future donations. Many of the screening tests used are very sensitive and have a high rate of false-positive results. As a result, confirmatory tests have been developed to check the initial screening results and separate the false positives from the true positives, allowing for donors with repeat reactive screening tests on a specific donation to be reentered into

Table 30–10. Transmission risks of infectious agents for which screening of blood products is routinely performed.

Disease Entity	Transmission	Screening and Processing Procedures	Approximate Risk of Transmission
Syphilis	Low risk: fresh blood drawn during spirochetemia can transmit infection. Organism not able to survive beyond 72 h during storage at 4°C.	Donor history. RPR or VDRL.	< 1:100,000
Hepatitis A	Units drawn during prodrome could transmit virus. Because of brief viremia during acute phase, absence of asymptomatic carrier phase, and failure to detect transmission in multiple transfused individuals, infection by this agent is unlikely.	Donor history.	1:1,000,000
Hepatitis B	Prolonged viremia during various phases of the disease and asymptomatic carrier state make HBV infection a significant risk of transfusion. Incidence has markedly decreased with screening strategies. Also, an increasing number of blood recipients have been vaccinated.	Donor history, education, and self-exclusion. HBsAg. Surrogate test for non-A, non-B hepatitis (hepatitis-B core antibody) has helped screen out population at risk for transmitting HBV.	1:500,000–1:200,000
Hepatitis C	Most cases of posttransfusion hepatitis in the past have been related to this virus.	Donor history. Surrogate tests: hepatitis B core antibody (anti-HBc), anti-HCV. Nucleic acid testing for viral genome required.	1:2,000,000
Non-A, non-B, non-C hepatitis	Agents other than HAV, HBV, HCV, EBV, and CMV, which can cause posttransfusion hepatitis.	Donor history. Surrogate tests: anti-HBc.	Undefined
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1, HIV-2) infection	Retroviruses spread by sexual contact, parenteral (including transfusion) and vertical routes.	Donor history, education, and self-exclusion. Anti-HIV by EIA screening test. Western blot confirmatory. Nucleic acid testing for viral genome required.	1:2,000,000
Human T-cell lymphotropic virus I and II (HTLV-I and II) infection	Retroviruses spread by sexual contact, parenteral (including transfusion) and vertical modes.	Donor history. Anti-HTLV-I and II by enzyme immunoassay screening test. Western blot confirmatory.	1:3,000,000
Chagas disease	Transmitted by insect vector, blood transfusion (all components), organ transplant, food contaminated with parasites, and mother to fetus.	History (especially country of origin), detection of antibody in donor serum or plasma.	< 1:25,000
West Nile virus	Seasonal transmission through mosquito vector. Transmitted by blood transfusion and organ transplant.	History, nucleic acid testing for viral genome.	1:350,000

CMV, cytomegalovirus; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; EIA, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; HAV, HBV, HCV, hepatitis A virus, hepatitis B virus, hepatitis C virus, respectively; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HTLV, human T-cell lymphotropic virus; RPR, rapid plasma reagin; VDRL, syphilis test.

the donor pool in the future if they meet other requirements. Recently, bacterial culture of apheresis or pooled platelet concentrates was added to the testing paradigm.

With these approaches, the risk of an infectious complication from blood components has been minimized (see Table 30–10). Autologous donation is recognized by some centers as a safe alternative to homologous blood. Issues of donor size limit the use of autologous donation difficult to apply to the pediatric population.

Primary CMV infections are significant complications of blood transfusion in transplant recipients, neonates, and immunodeficient individuals. Transmission of CMV can be avoided by using seronegative donors, apheresis platelet concentrates collected by techniques ensuring low numbers of residual white cells, or red cell or platelet products leukocyte-depleted by filtration (< 5 million WBCs per packed red cell unit or apheresis platelet concentrate equivalent).

STORAGE & PRESERVATION OF BLOOD & BLOOD COMPONENTS

Whole blood is routinely fractionated into packed red cells, platelets, and FFP or cryoprecipitate for most efficient use of all blood components. The storage conditions and biologic characteristics of the fractions are summarized in Table 30–11. The conditions provide the optimal environment to maintain appropriate recovery, survival, and function, and are different for each blood component. For example, red cells undergo dramatic metabolic changes during their 35- to 42-day storage, with a virtual disappearance of 2,3-DPG by day 14 of storage, a decrease in adenosine triphosphate, a gradual loss of intracellular potassium, but in vivo recovery of greater than or equal to 80% transfused cells in red cells by day of storage outdate. Fortunately, these changes are reversed readily in vivo within hours to days after the red cells are transfused. However, in certain clinical conditions, these effects may define the type of components used. For example, blood less than 7 days old would be preferred for exchange transfusion in neonates, red cell exchanges in older patients, or replacement of red cells in persons with severe cardiopulmonary disease to ensure adequate oxygen-carrying capacity. Storage time is not an issue when administering transfusions to those with chronic anemia.

If extracellular potassium in older packed red cells may present a problem, one may use blood less than 10 days old, making packed cells out of an older unit of whole blood or washing blood stored as packed cells.

Platelets are stored at 22°C for a maximum of 5 days; criteria for 7-day storage are being developed. At the extremes of storage, there should be at least a 60% recovery, a survival time that approximates turnover of fresh autologous platelets, and normalization of the bleeding time or PFA-100 in proportion to the peak platelet count. Frozen components, red cells, FFP, and cryoprecipitate are outdated at 10 years, 1 year, and 1 year, respectively. Frozen red cells retain the same biochemical and functional characteristics as the day they were frozen. FFP contains 80% or more of all of the clotting factors of fresh plasma. Factors VIII and XIII, vWF, and fibrinogen are concentrated in cryoprecipitate.

PRETRANSFUSION TESTING

Both the donated blood and the recipient are tested for ABO and Rh(D) antigens and screened for auto- or alloantibodies in the plasma. The cross-match is required on any component that contains red cells. In the major cross-match, washed donor red cells are incubated with the serum from the patient, and agglutination is detected and graded. The antiglobulin phase of the test may then be performed; Coombs reagent, which will detect the presence of IgG or complement on the surface of the red cells, is added to the mixture, and agglutination is evaluated. In the presence of a negative antibody screen in the recipient, a negative immediate spin cross-match test confirms the compatibility of the blood and antiglobulin phase is not required. Further testing is required if the antibody screen or the cross-match is positive, and blood should not be given until the nature of the reactivity is delineated. An incompatible cross-match is evaluated first with a DAT or Coombs test to detect IgG or complement on the surfaces of the recipient's red cells. The indirect antiglobulin test is also used to determine the presence of antibodies that will coat red cells or activate complement, and additional studies are completed to define the antibody.

TRANSFUSION PRACTICE

General Rules

Several rules should be observed in administering any blood component:

1. In final preparation of the component, no solutions should be added to the bag or tubing set except for normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride for injection, USP), ABO-compatible plasma, or other specifically approved expanders. Hypotonic solutions cause hemolysis of red cells, and, if these are transfused, a severe reaction will occur. Any reconstitution should be completed by the blood bank.
2. Transfusion products should be protected from contact with any calcium-containing solution (eg, lactated Ringer); recalcification and reversal of the citrate effect will cause clotting of the blood component.
3. Blood components should not be warmed to a temperature greater than 37°C. If a component is incubated in a water bath, it should be enclosed in a watertight bag to prevent bacterial contamination of entry ports.

4. Whenever a blood bag is entered, the sterile integrity of the system is violated, and that unit should be discarded within 4 hours if left at room temperature or within 24 hours if the temperature is 4–6°C.
5. Transfusions of products containing red cells should not exceed 4 hours. Blood components in excess of what can be infused during this time period should be stored in the blood bank until needed.
6. Before transfusion, the blood component should be inspected visually for any unusual characteristics, such as the presence of flocculent material, hemolysis, or clumping of cells, and mixed thoroughly.
7. The unit and the recipient should be identified properly.
8. The administration set includes a standard 170- to 260-μm filter. Under certain clinical circumstances, an additional microaggregate filter may be used to eliminate small aggregates of fibrin, white cells, and platelets that will not be removed by the standard filter.
9. The patient should be observed during the entire transfusion and especially during the first 15 minutes. With the onset of any adverse symptoms or signs, the transfusion should be stopped, an evaluation initiated immediately, and the reaction reported promptly to the transfusion service.
10. When cross-match–incompatible red cells or whole blood unit(s) must be given to the patient (as with AIHA), a test dose of 10% of the total volume (not to exceed 50 mL) should be administered over 15–20 minutes; the transfusion is then stopped and the patient observed. If no changes in vital signs or the patient's condition are noted, the remainder of the volume can be infused carefully.
11. Blood for exchange transfusion in the newborn period may be cross-matched with either the infant's or the mother's serum or plasma. If the exchange is for hemolysis, 500 mL of whole blood stored for less than 7 days will be adequate. If replacement of clotting factors is a key issue, packed red cells (7 days old) reconstituted with ABO type-specific FFP may be considered. Based on posttransfusion platelet counts, platelet transfusion may be considered. Other problems to be anticipated are acid-base derangements, hyponatremia, hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, hypoglycemia, hypothermia, and hypervolemia or hypovolemia.

Choice of Blood Component

Several principles should be considered when deciding on the need for blood transfusion. Indications for blood or blood components must be well defined, and the patient's medical condition, not just the laboratory results, should be the basis for the decision. Specific deficiencies exhibited by the patient (eg, oxygen-carrying capacity, thrombocytopenia) should be treated with appropriate blood components and the use of whole blood minimized. Information about specific blood components is summarized in Table 30–11. In general, very little is known about specific indications for blood component transfusion and outcomes. In recent years the criteria have become more restrictive for transfusion of any component. A recent review evaluates what is known and presents fertile areas for investigation (see Josephson et al).

A. Whole Blood

See Table 30–11.

B. Packed Red Blood Cells

See Table 30–11.

C. Platelets

The decision to transfuse platelets depends on the patient's clinical condition, the status of plasma phase coagulation, the platelet count, the cause of the thrombocytopenia, and the functional capacity of the patient's own platelets. In the face of decreased production, clinical bleeding, and platelet counts less than 10,000/μL, the risk of severe, spontaneous bleeding is increased markedly. In the presence of these factors and in the absence heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, TTP, or antibody-mediated thrombocytopenia, transfusion may be considered. Under certain circumstances, especially with platelet dysfunction or treatment that inhibits the procoagulant system, transfusions at higher platelet counts may be necessary.

Transfused platelets are sequestered temporarily in the lungs and spleen before reaching their peak concentrations, 45–60 minutes after transfusion. A significant proportion of the transfused platelets never circulate but remain sequestered in the spleen. This phenomenon results in reduced recovery; under best conditions, only 60%–70% of the transfused platelets are accounted for when peripheral platelet count increments are used as a measure of response.

In addition to cessation of bleeding, two variables indicate the effectiveness of platelet transfusions. The first is platelet recovery, as measured by the maximum number of platelets circulating in response to transfusion. The practical measure is the platelet count at 1 hour after transfusion. In the absence of immune or drastic nonimmune factors that markedly decrease platelet recovery, one would expect a 7000/μL increment for each random donor unit and a 40,000–70,000/μL increment for each single-donor apheresis unit in a large child or adolescent. For infants and small children, 10 mL/kg of platelets will increase the platelet count by at least 50,000/μL. The second variable is the survival of transfused platelets. If the recovery is greater than 50,000/uL, transfused platelets will approach a normal

Table 30–12. Adverse events following transfusions.

Event	Pathophysiology	Signs and Symptoms	Management
Acute hemolytic transfusion reaction	Preformed alloantibodies (most commonly to ABO) and infrequently autoantibodies cause rapid intravascular hemolysis of transfused cells with activation of clotting (DIC), activation of inflammatory mediators, and acute renal failure.	Fever, chills, nausea, chest pain, back pain, pain at transfusion site, hypotension, dyspnea, oliguria, hemoglobinuria.	The risk of this type of reaction overall is low (1:70,000–1:30,000), but the mortality rate is high (up to 40%). Stop the transfusion; maintain renal output with intravenous fluids and diuretics (furosemide or mannitol); treat DIC with heparin; and institute other appropriate supportive measures.
Delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction	Formation of alloantibodies after transfusion and resultant destruction of transfused red cells, usually by extravascular hemolysis.	Jaundice, anemia. A small percentage may develop chronic hemolysis.	Detection, definition, and documentation (for future transfusions). Supportive care. Risk, < 5% of transfused patients may develop alloantibody; hemolysis, 1:11,000–1:2500.
Febrile reactions	Usually caused by leukoagglutinins in recipient, cytokines, or other biologically active compounds.	Fever. May also involve chills.	Supportive. Leukocyte-reduced products decrease reactions. Risk per transfusion, 1:100 transfusions.
Allergic reactions	Most causes not identified. In IgA-deficient individuals, reaction occurs as a result of antibodies to IgA.	Itching, hives, and occasionally chills and fever. In severe reactions, may see signs of anaphylaxis: dyspnea, pulmonary edema.	Mild to moderate reactions: diphenhydramine. More severe reactions: epinephrine subcutaneously and steroids intravenously. Risk for mild to moderate allergic reactions, 1:100. Severe anaphylactic reactions, 1:50,000—1:20,000.
Transfusion-related acute lung injury	Acute lung injury occurring within 6 h after transfusion. Two sets of factors interact to produce the syndrome. Patient factors: infection, surgery, cytokine therapy. Blood component factors: lipids, antibodies, cytokines. Two groups of factors interact during transfusion to result in lung injury indistinguishable from ARDS.	Tachypnea, dyspnea, hypoxia. Diffuse interstitial markings. Cardiac evaluation normal.	May consider younger products: packed red blood cells ≤ 2 wk, platelets ≤ 3 d, washing components to prevent syndrome. Management: supportive care. Risk, 1:2000–1:3000 per transfusion. Current preventive procedures include avoiding donors at risk for alloimmunization: use of male-only FFP or white blood cell antibody-negative apheresis FFP or platelet products.
Dilutional coagulopathy	Massive blood loss and transfusion with replacement with fluids or blood components and deficient clotting factors.	Bleeding.	Replacement of clotting factors or platelets with appropriate blood components.
Bacterial contamination	Contamination of units results in growth of bacteria or production of clinically significant levels of endotoxin.	Chills, high fever, hypotension, other symptoms of sepsis or endotoxemia.	Stop transfusion; make aggressive attempts to identify organism; provide vigorous support. Sepsis in 1:500,000–1:75,000
Graft-versus-host disease	Lymphocytes from donor transfused in an immunoincompetent host.	Syndrome can involve a variety of organs, usually skin, liver, gastrointestinal tract, and bone marrow.	Rare. Preventive management: irradiation (> 1500 cGy) of cellular blood components transfused to individuals with congenital or acquired immunodeficiency syndromes, intrauterine transfusion, very premature infants, and when donors are relatives of the recipient.
Iron overload	There is no physiologic mechanism to excrete excess iron. Target organs include liver, heart, and endocrine organs. In patients receiving red cell transfusions over long periods of time, there is an increase in iron burden.	Signs and symptoms of dysfunctional organs affected by the iron.	Significant risk with chronic transfusions. Treated with chronic administration of iron chelator such as deferoxamine given intravenously or Exjade given orally.

ARDS, adult respiratory distress syndrome; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; FFP, fresh frozen plasma; IgA, immunoglobulin A.

half-life in the circulation. In the presence of increased platelet destruction, the life span may be shortened to a few days or a few hours. Frequent platelet transfusions may be required to maintain adequate hemostasis.

A particularly troublesome outcome in patients receiving long-term platelet transfusions is the development of a refractory state characterized by poor (≤ 20%) recovery or no response to platelet transfusion (as measured at 1 hour). Most (70%–90%) of these refractory states result from the development of alloantibodies directed against HLA antigens on the platelet. Platelets have class I HLA and i antigens, and the antibodies are primarily against HLA A or B determinants. A smaller proportion of these alloantibodies (< 10%) may be directed against platelet-specific alloantigens. The most effective approach to prevent HLA sensitization is to use leukocyte-depleted components (< 5 million leukocytes per unit of packed red cells or per apheresis or 6–10 random donor unit concentrates). For the alloimmunized, refractory patient, the best approach is to provide HLA-matched platelets for transfusion. Reports have suggested that platelet crossmatching procedures using HLA-matched or unmatched donors may be helpful in identifying platelet concentrates most likely to provide an adequate response.

D. Fresh Frozen Plasma

See Table 30–11.

E. Cryoprecipitate

See Table 30–11.

F. Granulocytes

With better supportive care over the past 20 years, the need for granulocytes in neutropenic patients with severe bacterial infections has decreased. Indications still remain for severe bacterial or fungal infections unresponsive to vigorous medical therapy in either newborns or older children with bone marrow failure, or patients with neutrophil dysfunction. Newer mobilization schemes using G-CSF and steroids in donors result in granulocyte collections with at least 50 billion neutrophils. This may provide a better product for patients requiring granulocyte support.

G. Apheresis Products and Procedures

Apheresis equipment allows one or more blood components to be collected while the rest are returned to the donor. Apheresis platelet concentrates, which have as many platelets as 6–10 units of platelet concentrates from whole blood donations, are one example; granulocytes are another. Apheresis techniques can also be used to collect hematopoietic stem cells that have been mobilized into the blood by cytokines (eg, G-CSF) given alone or after chemotherapy or mononuclear cells for immunotherapy. Stem cells are used for allogeneic or autologous bone marrow transplantation. Blood cell separators can be used for the collection of single-source plasma or removal of a blood component that is causing disease. Examples include red cell exchange in sickle cell disease and plasmapheresis in Goodpasture syndrome or in Guillain-Barré syndrome.

Adverse Effects

The noninfectious complications of blood transfusions are outlined in Table 30–12. Most complications present a significant risk to the recipient.

Josephson CD et al: One size will never fit all: the future of research in pediatric transfusion medicine. Pediatr Res 2014;76:425 [PMID: 25119336].

Lindholm PF, Annen K, Ramsey G: Approaches to minimize infectious risk in blood banking and transfusion practice. Infect Disord Drug Targets 2011;11:45 [PMID: 21303341].

Stramer SL: Current perspectives in transfusion-transmitted diseases: emerging and re-emerging infections. ISBT Sci Ser 2014;9:30 [PMID: 25210533].

REFERENCES

Fung MK et al: Technical Manual. 18th ed. AABB; 2014.

Goodnight SH, Hathaway WE (eds): Disorders of Hemostasis and Thrombosis: A Clinical Guide. 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2001.

Klein HG, Anstee DJ (eds): Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine. 12th ed. Wiley-Blackwell; 2014.

Petz LD, Garratty G (eds): Acquired Immune Hemolytic Anemias. 2nd ed. Churchill Livingstone; 2004.

31 Neoplastic Disease

Doug K. Graham, MD, PhD
John A. Craddock, MD
Ralph R. Quinones, MD
Amy K. Keating, MD
Kelly Maloney, MD
Nicholas K. Foreman, MD, MRCP
Roger H. Giller, MD
Brian S. Greffe, MD

Each year approximately 150 out of every 1 million children younger than 20 years are diagnosed with cancer. For children between the ages of 1 and 20 years, cancer is the fourth leading cause of death, behind unintentional injuries, homicides, and suicides. However, combined-modality therapy, including surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy, has improved survival dramatically, such that the overall 5-year survival rate of pediatric malignancies is now greater than 75%. It is estimated that by the year 2020, 1 in 600 adults will be a survivor of childhood cancer.

Because pediatric malignancies are rare, cooperative clinical trials have become the mainstay of treatment planning and therapeutic advances. The Children's Oncology Group (COG), representing the amalgamation of four prior pediatric cooperative groups (Children's Cancer Group, Pediatric Oncology Group, Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group, and the National Wilms Tumor Study Group), offers current therapeutic protocols and strives to answer important treatment questions. A child or adolescent newly diagnosed with cancer should be enrolled in a cooperative clinical trial whenever possible. Because many protocols are associated with significant toxicities, morbidity, and potential mortality, treatment of children with cancer should be supervised by a pediatric oncologist familiar with the hazards of treatment, preferably at a multidisciplinary pediatric cancer center.

Advances in molecular genetics, cell biology, and tumor immunology have contributed and are crucial to the continued understanding of pediatric malignancies and their treatment. Continued research into the biology of tumors will lead to the identification of targeted therapy for specific tumor types with, it is hoped, fewer systemic effects.

Research in supportive care areas, such as prevention and management of infection, pain, and emesis, has improved the survival and quality of life for children undergoing cancer treatment. Long-term studies of childhood cancer survivors are yielding information that provides a rationale for modifying future treatment regimens to decrease morbidity. A guide for caring for childhood cancer survivors is now available to medical providers as well as families and details suggested examinations and late effects by type of chemotherapy received.

Cure Search. Children's Oncology Group. http://www.survivorshipguidelines.org.
Ries LAG et al: SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1975–2000. http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2000.

MAJOR PEDIATRIC NEOPLASTIC DISEASES

ACUTE LYMPHOBLASTIC LEUKEMIA

General Considerations

Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) is the most common malignancy of childhood, accounting for about 25% of all cancer diagnoses in patients younger than 15 years. The worldwide incidence of ALL is about 1:25,000 children per year, including 3000 children per year in the United States. The peak age at onset is 4 years; 85% of patients are diagnosed between ages 2 and 10 years. Children with Down syndrome have a 14-fold increase in the overall rate of leukemia.

ALL results from uncontrolled proliferation of immature lymphocytes. Its cause is unknown, and genetic factors may play a role. Leukemia is defined by the presence of more than 25% malignant hematopoietic cells (blasts) in the bone marrow aspirate. Leukemic blasts from the majority of cases of childhood ALL have an antigen on the cell surface called the common ALL antigen (CALLA). These blasts derive from B-cell precursors early in their development, called B-precursor ALL. Less commonly, lymphoblasts are of T-cell origin or of mature B-cell origin. Over 70% of children receiving aggressive combination chemotherapy and early

presymptomatic treatment to the central nervous system (CNS) are now cured of ALL.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Presenting complaints of patients with ALL include those related to decreased bone marrow production of red blood cells (RBCs), white blood cells (WBCs), or platelets and to leukemic infiltration of extramedullary (outside bone marrow) sites. Intermittent fevers are common, as a result of either cytokines induced by the leukemia itself or infections secondary to leukopenia. Many patients present due to bruising or pallor. About 25% of patients experience bone pain, especially in the pelvis, vertebral bodies, and legs.

Physical examination at diagnosis ranges from virtually normal to highly abnormal. Signs related to bone marrow infiltration by leukemia include pallor, petechiae, and purpura. Hepatomegaly and/or splenomegaly occur in over 60% of patients. Lymphadenopathy is common, either localized or generalized to cervical, axillary, and inguinal regions. The testes may occasionally be unilaterally or bilaterally enlarged secondary to leukemic infiltration. Superior vena cava syndrome is caused by mediastinal adenopathy compressing the superior vena cava. A prominent venous pattern develops over the upper chest from collateral vein enlargement. The neck may feel full from venous engorgement. The face may appear plethoric, and the periorbital area may be edematous. A mediastinal mass can cause tachypnea, orthopnea, and respiratory distress. Leukemic infiltration of cranial nerves may cause cranial nerve palsies with mild nuchal rigidity. The optic fundi may show exudates of leukemic infiltration and hemorrhage from thrombocytopenia. Anemia can cause a flow murmur, tachycardia, and, rarely, congestive heart failure.

B. Laboratory Findings

A complete blood count (CBC) with differential is the most useful initial test because 95% of patients with ALL have a decrease in at least one cell type (single cytopenia): neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, or anemia with most patients having a decrease in at least two blood cell lines. The WBC count is low or normal (= 10,000/μL) in 50% of patients, but the differential shows neutropenia (absolute neutrophil count < 1000/μL) along with a small percentage of blasts amid normal lymphocytes. In 30% of patients the WBC count is between 10,000/μL and 50,000/μL; in 20% of patients it is over 50,000/μL, occasionally higher than 300,000/μL. Blasts are usually readily identifiable on peripheral blood smears from patients with elevated WBC counts. Peripheral blood smears also show abnormalities in RBCs, such as teardrops. Most patients with ALL have decreased platelet counts (< 150,000/μL) and decreased hemoglobin (< 11 g/dL) at diagnosis. In approximately 1% of patients diagnosed with ALL, CBCs and peripheral blood smears are entirely normal, but patients have bone pain that leads to bone marrow examination. Serum chemistries, particularly uric acid and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), are often elevated at diagnosis as a result of cell breakdown.

The diagnosis of ALL is made by bone marrow examination, which shows a homogeneous infiltration of leukemic blasts replacing normal marrow elements. The morphology of blasts on bone marrow aspirate can usually distinguish ALL from acute myeloid leukemia (AML). Lymphoblasts are typically small, with cell diameters of approximately two erythrocytes. Lymphoblasts have scant cytoplasm, usually without granules. The nucleus typically contains no nucleoli or one small, indistinct nucleolus. Immunophenotyping of ALL blasts by flow cytometry helps distinguish precursor B-cell ALL from T-cell ALL or AML. Histochemical stains specific for myeloblastic and monoblastic leukemias (myeloperoxidase and nonspecific esterase) distinguish ALL from AML. About 5% of patients present with CNS leukemia, which is defined as a cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) WBC count greater than 5/μL with blasts present on cytocentrifuged specimen.

C. Imaging

Chest radiograph may show mediastinal widening or an anterior mediastinal mass and tracheal compression secondary to lymphadenopathy or thymic infiltration, especially in T-cell ALL. Abdominal ultrasound may show kidney enlargement from leukemic infiltration or uric acid nephropathy as well as intra-abdominal adenopathy. Plain radiographs of the long bones and spine may show demineralization, periosteal elevation, growth arrest lines, or compression of vertebral bodies. Although these findings may suggest leukemia, they are not diagnostic.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis, based on the history and physical examination, includes chronic infections by Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) and cytomegalovirus (CMV), causing lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, fevers, and anemia. Prominent petechiae and purpura suggest a diagnosis of immune thrombocytopenic purpura. Significant pallor could be caused by transient erythroblastopenia of childhood, autoimmune hemolytic anemias, or aplastic anemia. Fevers and joint pains, with or without hepatosplenomegaly and lymphadenopathy, suggest juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA). The diagnosis of leukemia usually becomes straightforward once the CBC reveals multiple cytopenias and leukemic blasts. Serum LDH levels may help distinguish JRA from leukemia, as the LDH is usually normal in JRA. An elevated WBC count with lymphocytosis is typical of pertussis; however, in pertussis the lymphocytes are mature, and neutropenia is rarely associated.

» Treatment

A. Specific Therapy

Intensity of treatment is determined by specific prognostic features present at diagnosis, the patient's response to therapy, and specific biologic features of the leukemia cells. The majority of patients with ALL are enrolled in clinical trials designed by clinical groups and approved by the National Cancer Institute; the largest group is COG. The first month of therapy consists of induction, at the end of which over 95% of patients exhibit remission on bone marrow aspirates by morphology. The drugs most commonly used in induction include oral prednisone or dexamethasone, intravenous vincristine, daunorubicin, intramuscular or intravenous asparaginase, and intrathecal methotrexate.

Consolidation is the second phase of treatment, during which intrathecal chemotherapy along with continued systemic therapy and sometimes cranial radiation therapy are given to kill lymphoblasts "hiding" in the meninges. Several months of intensive chemotherapy follows consolidation, often referred to as intensification. This intensification has led to improved survival in pediatric ALL.

Maintenance therapy can include daily oral mercaptopurine, weekly oral methotrexate, and, often, monthly pulses of intravenous vincristine and oral prednisone or dexamethasone. Intrathecal chemotherapy, either with methotrexate alone or combined with cytarabine and hydrocortisone, is usually given every 2–3 months.

Chemotherapy has significant potential side effects. Patients need to be monitored closely to prevent drug toxicities and to ensure early treatment of complications. The duration of treatment ranges between 2.2 years for girls and 3.2 years for boys in COG trials. Treatment for ALL is tailored to prognostic, or risk, groups. A child aged 1–9 years with a WBC count below 50,000/μL at diagnosis of pre B ALL and without poor biologic features [t(9;22) or an 11q23 rearrangement)] is considered to be at "standard risk" and receives less intensive therapy than a "high-risk" patient who has a WBC count at diagnosis over 50,000/μL or is 10 years of age or greater. An infant less than 1 year at diagnosis would be considered very high risk and receive even more intensive chemotherapy. Also important is the patient's response to treatment determined by minimal residual disease (MRD) monitoring. This risk-adapted treatment approach has significantly increased the cure rate among patients with less favorable prognostic features by allowing for early intensification while minimizing treatment-related toxicities in those with favorable features. Bone marrow relapse is usually heralded by an abnormal CBC, either during treatment or following completion of therapy.

The CNS and testes are sanctuary sites of extramedullary leukemia. Currently, about one-third of all ALL relapses are isolated to these sanctuary sites. Systemic chemotherapy does not penetrate these tissues as well as it penetrates other organs. Thus, presymptomatic intrathecal chemotherapy is a critical part of ALL treatment, without which many more relapses would occur in the CNS, with or without bone marrow relapse. The majority of isolated CNS relapses are diagnosed in an asymptomatic child at the time of routine intrathecal injection, when CSF cell count and differential show an elevated WBC with leukemic blasts. Occasionally, symptoms of CNS relapse develop: headache, nausea and vomiting, irritability, nuchal rigidity, photophobia, changes in vision, and cranial nerve palsies. Currently, testicular relapse occurs in less than 5% of boys. The presentation of testicular relapse is usually unilateral painless testicular enlargement, without a distinct mass. Routine follow-up of boys both on and off treatment includes physical examination of the testes.

Bone marrow transplantation, now called hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT), is rarely used as initial treatment for ALL, because most patients are cured with chemotherapy alone. Patients whose blasts contain certain chromosomal abnormalities, hypodiploidy (< 44 chromosomes), and patients with a very slow response to therapy may have a better cure rate with early HSCT from a human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR–matched sibling donor, or perhaps a matched unrelated donor, than with intensive chemotherapy alone. HSCT cures about 50% of patients who relapse, provided that a second remission is achieved with chemotherapy before transplant. Children who relapse more than 1 year after completion of chemotherapy (late relapse) may be cured with intensive chemotherapy without HSCT.

Several new biologic agents, including tyrosine kinase inhibitors and immunotoxins, are currently in various stages of research, development, and in chemotherapeutic trials. Some of these therapies may prove relevant for future treatment of poor risk or relapsed ALL.

Several years ago, Imatinib, a tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI), directed against the Philadelphia chromosome (Ph+) protein product, was combined in a backbone of intensive ALL therapy for Ph+ ALL in pediatric patients. The preliminary results of this trial showed a 3-year event-free survival (EFS) of 78% compared to about 50% in historical controls. An ongoing trial for COG in Ph+ ALL is incorporating a newer, more targeted TKI, Dasatinib, into a very similar intensive chemotherapy background with the goal of improving EFS further for this select group of patients. As more is understood about the biology of ALL, further therapy will likely include more of these targeted agents.

B. Supportive Care

Tumor lysis syndrome, which consists of hyperkalemia, hyperuricemia, hyperphosphatemia, should be anticipated when treatment is started. Maintaining brisk urine output

with intravenous fluids plus/minus alkalinization of urine with intravenous sodium bicarbonate and treating with oral allopurinol are appropriate steps in managing tumor lysis syndrome. Rasburicase is indicated for severe tumor lysis syndrome with initial high uric acid values or high WBC at presentation. Serum levels of potassium, phosphorus, and uric acid should be monitored. If superior vena caval or superior mediastinal syndrome is present, general anesthesia is contraindicated temporarily and until there has been some decrease in the mass. If hyperleukocytosis (WBC count > 100,000/μL) is accompanied by hyperviscosity with symptoms of respiratory distress and/or mental status changes, leukophoresis may be indicated to rapidly reduce the number of circulating blasts and minimize the potential thrombotic or hemorrhagic CNS complications. Throughout the course of treatment, all transfused blood and platelet products should be irradiated to prevent graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) from the transfused lymphocytes. Whenever possible, blood products should be leuko-depleted to minimize CMV transmission, transfusion reactions, and sensitization to platelets.

Due to the immunocompromised state of the patient with ALL, bacterial, fungal, and viral infections are serious and can be life-threatening or fatal. During the course of treatment, fever (temperature = 38.3°C) and neutropenia (absolute neutrophil count < 500/μL) require prompt assessment, blood cultures from each lumen of a central line, and prompt treatment with empiric broad-spectrum antibiotics. Patients receiving ALL treatment must receive prophylaxis against Pneumocystis jiroveci (formerly Pneumocystis carinii). Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole given twice each day on 2 or 3 consecutive days per week is the drug of choice. Patients nonimmune to varicella are at risk for very serious—even fatal—infection. Such patients should receive varicella-zoster immune globulin (VZIG) within 72 hours after exposure and treatment with intravenous acyclovir for active infection.

» Prognosis

Cure rates depend on specific prognostic features present at diagnosis, biologic features of the leukemic blast, and the response to therapy. Two of the most important features are WBC count and age. Children aged 1–9 years whose diagnostic WBC count is less than 50,000/μL, standard risk ALL, have an EFS in the 90% range, while children 10 years or older have an EFS of approximately 88%. MRD measurements are now frequently used to determine both the rapidity of response as well as the depth of remission attained at the end of induction (first 4–6 weeks of therapy). Patients with very low levels of MRD at the end of induction will likely have a superior EFS as compared to other patients with similar initial risk factors but a higher MRD level. On the flip side, by identifying patients with higher MRD at end induction, more intensified therapy can be delivered in order to reduce the MRD and thus, improve the EFS.

Certain chromosomal abnormalities present in the leukemic blasts at diagnosis influence prognosis. Patients with t(9;22), the Philadelphia chromosome, had a poor chance of cure in the past but as discussed earlier in this chapter, now have improved outcome with the incorporation of a directed TKI. Likewise, infants younger than 6 months with 11q23 rearrangements have a poor chance of cure with conventional chemotherapy. In contrast, patients whose blasts are hyperdiploid (containing > 50 chromosomes instead of the normal 46) with trisomies of chromosomes 4, and 10, and patients whose blasts have a t(12;21) and ETV6-AML1 rearrangement have a greater chance of cure, approaching 95%–97% EFS, than do children without these characteristics.

Advani AS, Hunger SP, Burnett AK: Acute leukemia in adolescents and young adults. Semin Oncol 2009;36(3):213 [PMID: 19460579].

Gaynon PS et al: Long term results of the children's cancer group studies for childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia 1983–2002: a Children's Oncology Group report. Leukemia 2010:24(2):285 [PMID: 20016531].

Hochberg J, Khaled S, Forman SJ, Cairo MS: Criteria for and outcomes of allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant in children, adolescents and young adults with acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in first complete remission. Br J Haematol 2013;161(1):27 [PMID: 23384118].

Martin A, Morgan E, Hijiya N: Relapsed or refractory pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia: current and emerging treatments. Paediatr Drugs 2012;14(6):377 [PMID: 22880941].

Nguyen K et al: Factors influencing survival after relapse from acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a Children's Oncology Group study. Leukemia 2008;22(12):2142 [PMID: 18818707].

Schultz KR et al: Improved early event-free survival with imatinib in Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a Children's Oncology Group study. JCO 2009;27(31):5175 [PMID: 19805687].

Vrooman LM, Silverman LB: Childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: update on prognostic factors. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009;21(1):1 [PMID: 19242236].

ACUTE MYELOID LEUKEMIA

» General Considerations

Approximately 500 new cases of AML occur per year in children and adolescents in the United States. Although AML accounts for only 25% of all leukemias in this age group, it is responsible for at least one-third of deaths from leukemia in children and teenagers. Congenital conditions associated with an increased risk of AML include Diamond-Blackfan anemia; neurofibromatosis; Down syndrome; Wiskott-Aldrich, Kostmann, and Li-Fraumeni syndromes; as well as chromosomal instability syndromes such as Fanconi anemia. Acquired risk factors include exposure to ionizing

radiation, cytotoxic chemotherapeutic agents, and benzenes. However, the vast majority of patients have no identifiable risk factors. Historically, the diagnosis of AML was based almost exclusively on morphology and immunohistochemical staining of the leukemic cells. AML has eight subtypes (M0–M7) according to the French-American-British (FAB) classification (Table 31–1). Immunophenotypic, cytogenetic, and molecular analyses are increasingly important in confirming the diagnosis of AML and subclassifying it into biologically distinct subtypes that have therapeutic and prognostic implications. Recently the World Health Organization (WHO) classification was published to describe AML as AML with recurrent genetic abnormalities with a list of genetic abnormalities sufficient to diagnose AML and then AML not otherwise specified with morphologic descriptions of AML including similar to the FAB classification. Cytogenetic clonal abnormalities occur in 80% of patients with AML and are often predictive of outcome.

Aggressive induction therapy currently results in a 75%–85% complete remission rate. However, long-term survival has improved only modestly to approximately 50%, despite the availability of several effective agents, improvements in supportive care, and increasingly intensive therapies.

» Clinical Findings

The clinical manifestations of AML commonly include anemia (44%), thrombocytopenia (33%), and neutropenia (69%). Symptoms may be few and innocuous or may be life threatening. The median hemoglobin value at diagnosis is 7 g/dL, and platelets usually number fewer than 50,000/μL. Frequently the absolute neutrophil count is under 1000/μL, although the total WBC count is over 100,000/μL in 25% of patients at diagnosis.

Hyperleukocytosis may be associated with life-threatening complications. Venous stasis and sludging of blasts in small vessels cause hypoxia, hemorrhage, and infarction, most notably in the lung and CNS. This clinical picture is a medical emergency requiring rapid intervention, such as leukophoresis, to decrease the leukocyte count. CNS leukemia is present in 5%–15% of patients at diagnosis, a higher rate of initial involvement than in ALL. Certain subtypes, such as M4 and M5, have a higher likelihood of meningeal infiltration than do other subtypes. Additionally, clinically significant coagulopathy may be present at diagnosis in patients with M3, M4, or M5 subtypes. This problem manifests as bleeding or an abnormal disseminated intravascular

Table 31–1. FAB subtypes of acute myeloid leukemia.

FAB Classification	Common Name	Distribution in Childhood (Age)		Cytogenetic Associations	Clinical Features
		< 2 y (%)	> 2 y (%)		
M0	Acute myeloid leukemia, minimally differentiated	1		inv (3q26), t(3;3)	
M1	Acute myeloblastic leukemia without maturation	17	23		
M2	Acute myeloblastic leukemia with maturation	26		t(8;21), t(6;9); rare	Myeloblastomas or chloromas
M3	Acute promyelocytic leukemia	4		t(15;17); rarely, t(11;17) or (5;17)	Disseminated intravascular coagulation
M4	Acute myelomonoblastic leukemia	30	24	11q23, inv 3, t(3;3), t(6;9)	Hyperleukocytosis, CNS involvement, skin and gum infiltration
M4Eo	Acute myelomonoblastic leukemia with abnormal eosinophils			inv16, t(16;16)	
M5	Acute monoblastic leukemia	46	15	11q23, t(9;11), t(8;16)	Hyperleukocytosis, CNS involvement, skin and gum infiltration
M6	Erythroleukemia	2			
M7	Acute megakaryoblastic leukemia	7	5	t(1;22)	Down syndrome frequent (< age 2 y)

CNS, central nervous system; FAB, French-American-British classification.

coagulation screen and should be at least partially corrected prior to initiation of treatment, which may transiently exacerbate the coagulopathy.

» Treatment

A. Specific Therapy

AML is less responsive to treatment than ALL and requires more intensive chemotherapy. Toxicities from therapy are common and likely to be life threatening; therefore, treatment should be undertaken only at a tertiary pediatric oncology center.

Current AML protocols rely on intensive administration of anthracyclines, cytarabine, and etoposide for induction of remission. After remission is obtained, patients who have a matched sibling donor undergo allogeneic HSCT, while those without an appropriate related donor are treated with additional cycles of aggressive chemotherapy for a total of four to five cycles. Inv16 and t(8;21) herald a more responsive subtype of AML. In patients with a rapid response to induction chemotherapy, intensive chemotherapy alone may be curative in patients whose blasts harbor these cytogenetic abnormalities. Additional recognized genetic risk factors that carry a poor outcome for children with AML include monosomy 7 and FLT3 internal tandem duplications (ITDs). HSCT is recommended for all these patients, using either a related or unrelated donor. Trials with risk grouping are ongoing as more is understood about the varying biologic factors.

The biologic heterogeneity of AML is becoming increasingly important therapeutically. The M3 subtype, associated with t(15;17) demonstrated either cytogenetically or molecularly, is currently treated with all trans-retinoic acid in addition to chemotherapy with high-dose cytarabine and daunorubicin. All trans-retinoic acid leads to differentiation of promyelocytic leukemia cells and can induce remission, but cure requires conventional chemotherapy as well. The use of arsenic trioxide has also been investigated in the treatment of this subtype of AML with favorable results. This subtype has an increased EFS over other AML subtypes.

Another biologically distinct subtype of AML occurs in children with Down syndrome, M7, or megakaryocytic AML. Using less intensive treatment, remission induction rate and overall survival of these children are dramatically superior to non–Down syndrome children with AML. It is important that children with Down syndrome receive appropriate treatment specifically designed to be less intensive due to their increased rate of toxicity with chemotherapeutic agents.

As with ALL, newer biologic agents with more specific targeting are available and undergoing clinical trails. One such agent, sorafenib, appears to be active against AML with Flt3 ITDs. Combining sorafenib with AML therapy has been useful in relapsed disease and is now being studied in to upfront trials.

Clofarabine, a newer nucleoside analogue, also has activity in AML and is currently undergoing trials in relapsed and refractory patients with promising results.

B. Supportive Care

Tumor lysis syndrome rarely occurs during induction treatment of AML. Nevertheless, when the diagnostic WBC cell count is greater than 100,000/μL or significant adenopathy or organomegaly is present, one should maintain brisk urine output, and follow potassium, uric acid, and phosphorous laboratory values closely. Hyperleukocytosis (WBC > 100,000/μL) is a medical emergency and, in a symptomatic patient, requires rapid intervention such as leukophoresis to rapidly decrease the number of circulating blasts and thereby decrease hyperviscosity. Delaying transfusion of packed RBCs until the WBC can be decreased to below 100,000/μL avoids exacerbating hyperviscosity. It is also important to correct the coagulopathy commonly associated with M3, M4, or M5 subtypes prior to beginning induction chemotherapy. As with the treatment of ALL, all blood products should be irradiated and leukodepleted; Pneumocystis prophylaxis must be administered during treatment and for several weeks afterward; and patients not immune to varicella must receive VZIG within 72 hours of exposure and prompt treatment with intravenous acyclovir for active infection.

Onset of fever (temperature ≥ 38.3°C) or chills associated with neutropenia requires prompt assessment, blood cultures from each lumen of a central venous line, other cultures such as throat or urine as appropriate and prompt initiation of broad-spectrum intravenous antibiotics. Infections in this population of patients can rapidly become life-threatening. Because of the high incidence of invasive fungal infections, there should be a low threshold for initiating antifungal therapy. Filgrastim (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor) may be used to stimulate granulocyte recovery during the treatment of AML and results in shorter periods of neutropenia and hospitalization. It must be stressed that the supportive care for this group of patients is as important as the leukemia-directed therapy and that this treatment should be carried out only at a tertiary pediatric cancer center.

» Prognosis

Published results from various centers show a 50%–60% survival rate at 5 years following first remission for patients who do not have matched sibling hematopoietic stem cell donors. Patients with matched sibling donors fare slightly better, with 5-year survival rates of 60%–70% after allogeneic HSCT.

As treatment becomes more sophisticated, outcome is increasingly related to the subtype of AML. Currently, AML in patients with t(8;21), t(15;17), inv 16, or Down syndrome has the most favorable prognosis, with 65%–75% long-term

survival using modern treatments, including chemotherapy alone. The least favorable outcome occurs in AML patients with monosomy 7 or 5, 7q, 5q–, 11q23 cytogenetic abnormalities, or FLT 3 mutations or ITD.

Gibson BE, Webb DK, Howman AJ, De Graaf SS, Harrison CJ, Wheatley K: Results of a randomized trial in children with acute myeloid leukaemia: Medical Research Council AML12 trial. Br J Haematol 2011 Nov;155(3):366–376 [PMID: 21902686].

Meshinchi S, Arceci RJ: Prognostic factors and risk-based therapy in pediatric acute myeloid leukemia. Oncologist 2007;12:341 [PMID: 17405900].

Neudorf S et al: Allogeneic bone marrow transplantation for children with acute myelocytic leukemia in first remission demonstrates a role for graft versus leukemia in the maintenance of disease-free survival. Blood 2004;103:3655 [PMID: 14751924].

Rubnitz JE, Inaba H: Childhood acute myeloid leukaemia. Br J Haematol 2012;159(3):259 [PMID: 22966788].

Sternherz PG et al: Clofarabine induced durable complete remission in heavily pretreated adolescents with relapsed and refractory leukemia. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2007;29:656 [PMID: 17805046].

Vardiman J et al: The 2008 revision of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of myeloid neoplasms and acute leukemia: rationale and important changes. Blood 2009;114:937.

MYELOPROLIFERATIVE DISEASES

Myeloproliferative diseases in children are relatively rare. They are characterized by ineffective hematopoiesis that results in excessive peripheral blood counts. The three most important types are chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), which accounts for less than 5% of the childhood leukemias, transient myeloproliferative disorder in children with Down syndrome, and juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (Table 31–2).

1. Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia

» General Considerations

CML with translocation of chromosomes 9 and 22 (the Philadelphia chromosome, Ph+) is identical to adult Ph+CML. Translocation 9;22 results in the fusion of the BCR gene on chromosome 22 and the ABL gene on chromosome 9. The resulting fusion protein is a constitutively active tyrosine kinase that interacts with a variety of effector proteins and allows for deregulated cellular proliferation, decreased adherence of cells to the bone marrow extracellular matrix, and resistance to apoptosis. The disease usually progresses within 3 years to an accelerated phase and then to a blast crisis. It is generally accepted that Ph+ cells have an increased susceptibility to the acquisition of additional molecular changes that lead to the accelerated and blast phases of disease.

» Clinical Findings

Patients with CML may present with nonspecific complaints similar to those of acute leukemia, including bone pain, fever, night sweats, and fatigue. However, patients can also be asymptomatic. Patients with a total WBC count of more than 100,000/μL may have symptoms of leukostasis, such as dyspnea, priapism, or neurologic abnormalities. Physical findings may include fever, pallor, ecchymoses, and hepatosplenomegaly. Anemia, thrombocytosis, and leukocytosis are frequent laboratory findings. The peripheral smear is

Table 31–2. Comparison of JMML, CML, and TMD.

	CML	TMD	JMML
Age at onset	> 3 y	< 3 mo	< 2 y
Clinical presentation	Nonspecific constitutional complaints, massive splenomegaly, variable hepatomegaly	DS features, often no or few symptoms; or hepatosplenomegaly, respiratory symptoms	Abrupt onset; eczematoid skin rash, marked lymphadenopathy, bleeding tendency, moderate hepatosplenomegaly, fever
Chromosomal alterations	t(9;22)	Constitutional trisomy 21, but usually no other abnormality	Monosomy or del (7q) in 20% of patients
Laboratory features	Marked leukocytosis (> 100,000/μL), normal to elevated platelet count, decreased to absent leukocyte alkaline phosphatase, usually normal muramidase	Variable leukocytosis, normal to high platelet count, large platelets, myeloblasts	Moderate leukocytosis (> 10,000/μL), thrombocytopenia, monocytosis (> 1000/ μL), elevated fetal hemoglobin, normal to diminished leukocyte alkaline phosphatase, elevated muramidase

CML, chronic myelogenous leukemia; DS, Down syndrome; JMML, juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia; TMD, transient myeloproliferative disorder.

usually diagnostic, with a characteristic predominance of myeloid cells in all stages of maturation, increased basophils and relatively few blasts.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Historically, hydroxyurea or busulfan has been used to reduce or eliminate Ph+ cells and HSCT was the only consistently curative intervention. Reported survival rates for patients younger than 20 years transplanted in the chronic phase from matched-related donors are 70%–80%. Unrelated stem cell transplants result in survival rates of 50%–65%.

The understanding of the molecular mechanisms involved in the pathogenesis of CML has led to the rational design of molecularly targeted therapy. Imatinib mesylate (Gleevec) is a tyrosine kinase inhibitor that has had dramatic success in the treatment of CML, with most adults and children achieving cytogenetic remission. There are now newer, more targeted TKIs including dasatinib, erlotinib, nilotinib, and ponatinib. These medications in adults have an increased incidence of molecular remissions and may be all that is required for long-term survival in adults. The durability of the remission for children with TKIs therapy alone is unclear but is now the accepted upfront therapy.

2. Transient Myeloproliferative Disorder

Transient myeloproliferative disorder is unique to patients with trisomy 21 or mosaicism for trisomy 21. It is characterized by uncontrolled proliferation of blasts, usually of megakaryocytic origin, during early infancy and spontaneous resolution. The pathogenesis of this process is not well understood, although mutations in the GATA1 gene have recently been implicated as initial events.

Although the true incidence is unknown, it is estimated to occur in up to 10% of patients with Down syndrome. Despite the fact that the process usually resolves by 3 months of age, organ infiltration may cause significant morbidity and mortality.

Patients can present with hydrops fetalis, pericardial or pleural effusions, or hepatic fibrosis. More frequently, they are asymptomatic or only minimally ill. Therefore, treatment is primarily supportive. Patients without symptoms are not treated, and those with organ dysfunction receive low doses of chemotherapy or leukophoresis (or both) to reduce peripheral blood blast counts. Although patients with transient myeloproliferative disorder have apparent resolution of the process, approximately 30% go on to develop acute megakaryoblastic leukemia (AML M7) within 3 years.

3. Juvenile Myelomonocytic Leukemia

Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML) accounts for approximately one-third of the myelodysplastic and myeloproliferative disorders in childhood. Patients with neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF-1) are at higher risk of JMML than the general population. It typically occurs in infants and very young children and is occasionally associated with monosomy 7 or a deletion of the long arm of chromosome 7.

Patients with JMML present similarly to those with other hematopoietic malignancies, with lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, skin rash, or respiratory symptoms. Patients may have stigmata of NF-1 with neurofibromas or café au lait spots. Laboratory findings include anemia, thrombocytopenia, leukocytosis with monocytosis, and elevated fetal hemoglobin.

The results of chemotherapy for children with JMML have been disappointing, with estimated survival rates of less than 30%. Approximately 40%–45% of patients are projected to survive long term using HSCT, although optimizing conditioning regimens and donor selection may improve these results.

Crispino JD: GATA1 mutations in Down syndrome: implications for biology and diagnosis of children with transient myeloproliferative disorder and acute megakaryoblastic leukemia. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2005;44:40 [PMID: 15390312].

Gassas A et al: A basic classification and a comprehensive examination of pediatric myeloproliferative syndromes. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2005;27:192 [PMID: 15838389].

Lee SJ et al: Impact of prior imatinib mesylate on the outcome of hematopoietic cell transplantation for chronic myeloid leukemia. Blood 2008;112(8):3500 [PMID: 18664621].

Mundschau G et al: Mutagenesis of GATA1 is an initiating event in Down syndrome leukemogenesis. Blood 2003;101:4298 [PMID: 12560215].

Passmore SJ et al: Paediatric myelodysplastic syndromes and juvenile myelomonocytic leukaemia in the UK: a population-based study of incidence and survival. Br J Haematol 2003;121:758 [PMID: 12780790].

Pulsipher MA: Treatment of CML in pediatric patients: should imatinib mesylate (STI-571, Gleevec) or allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplant be front-line therapy? Pediatr Blood Cancer 2004;43:523 [PMID: 15382266].

Snyder DS: New approved dasatinib regimen available for clinical use. Expert Rev Anticancer Ther 2009;9(3):285 [PMID: 19275507].

Suttorp M: Innovative approaches of targeted therapy for CML of childhood in combination with paediatric haematopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant 2008;42(Suppl 2):S40 [PMID: 18978743].

Vardiman JW: Chronic myelogenous leukemia, BCR-ABL1+. Am J Clin Pathol 2009;132(2):250 [PMID: 19605820].

BRAIN TUMORS

» General Considerations

The classic triad of morning headache, vomiting, and papilledema is present in fewer than 30% of children at presentation. School failure and personality changes are common

in older children. Irritability, failure to thrive, and delayed development are common in very young children with brain tumors. Recent-onset head tilt can result from a posterior fossa tumor.

Brain tumors are the most common solid tumors of childhood, accounting for 1500–2000 new malignancies in children each year in the United States and for 25%–30% of all childhood cancers. In general, children with brain tumors have a better prognosis than do adults. Favorable outcome occurs most commonly with low-grade and fully resectable tumors. Unfortunately, cranial irradiation in young children can have significant neuropsychological, intellectual, and endocrinologic sequelae.

Brain tumors in childhood are biologically and histologically heterogeneous, ranging from low-grade localized lesions to high-grade tumors with neuraxis dissemination. High-dose systemic chemotherapy is used frequently, especially in young children with high-grade tumors, in an effort to delay, decrease, or completely avoid cranial irradiation. Such intensive treatment may be accompanied by autologous HSCT or peripheral stem cell reconstitution.

The causes of most pediatric brain tumors are unknown. The risk of developing astrocytomas is increased in children with neurofibromatosis or tuberous sclerosis. Several studies show that some childhood brain tumors occur in families with increased genetic susceptibility to childhood cancers in general, brain tumors, or leukemia and lymphoma. A higher incidence of seizures has been observed in relatives of children with astrocytoma. The risk of developing a brain tumor is increased in children who received cranial irradiation for treatment of meningeal leukemia. All children with gliomas and meningiomas should be screened for NF-1. In children with meningiomas, without the skin findings of NF-1, neurofibromatosis type 2 and von Hippel-Lindau syndrome should be considered. Inherited germline mutations are possible in atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumors (AT/RTs) and in choroid plexus carcinomas. Careful family histories should be taken in these tumors and genetic counseling considered.

Because pediatric brain tumors are rare, they are often misdiagnosed or diagnosed late; most pediatricians see no more than two children with brain tumors during their careers.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical findings at presentation vary depending on the child's age and the tumor's location. Children younger than 2 years more commonly have infratentorial tumors. Children with such tumors usually present with nonspecific symptoms such as vomiting, unsteadiness, lethargy, and irritability. Signs may be surprisingly few or may include macrocephaly, ataxia, hyperreflexia, and cranial nerve palsies. Because the head can expand in young children, papilledema is often absent. Measuring head circumference and observing gait are essential in evaluating a child for possible brain tumor. Eye findings and apparent visual disturbances such as difficulty tracking can occur in association with optic pathway tumors such as optic glioma. Optic glioma occurring in a young child is often associated with neurofibromatosis.

Older children more commonly have supratentorial tumors, which are associated with headache, visual symptoms, seizures, and focal neurologic deficits. Initial presenting features are often nonspecific. School failure and personality changes are common. Vaguely described visual disturbance is often present, but the child must be directly asked. Headaches are common, but they often will not be predominantly in the morning. The headaches may be confused with migraine.

Older children with infratentorial tumors characteristically present with symptoms and signs of hydrocephalus, which include progressively worsening morning headache and vomiting, gait unsteadiness, double vision, and papilledema. Cerebellar astrocytomas enlarge slowly, and symptoms may worsen over several months. Morning vomiting may be the only symptom of posterior fossa ependymomas, which originate in the floor of the fourth ventricle near the vomiting center. Children with brainstem tumors may present with facial and extraocular muscle palsies, ataxia, and hemiparesis; hydrocephalus occurs in approximately 25% of these patients at diagnosis.

B. Imaging and Staging

In addition to the tumor biopsy, neuraxis imaging studies are obtained to determine whether dissemination has occurred. It is unusual for brain tumors in children and adolescents to disseminate outside the CNS.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has become the preferred diagnostic study for pediatric brain tumors. MRI provides better definition of the tumor and delineates indolent gliomas that may not be seen on computed tomography (CT) scan. In contrast, a CT scan can be done in less than 10 minutes—as opposed to the 30 minutes required for an MRI scan—and is still useful if an urgent diagnostic study is necessary or to detect calcification of a tumor. Both scans are generally done with and without contrast enhancement. Contrast enhances regions where the blood-brain barrier is disrupted. Postoperative scans to document the extent of tumor resection should be obtained within 48 hours after surgery to avoid postsurgical enhancement.

Imaging of the entire neuraxis and CSF cytologic examination should be part of the diagnostic evaluation for patients with tumors such as medulloblastoma, ependymoma, and pineal region tumors. Diagnosis of neuraxis drop metastases (tumor spread along the neuraxis) can be accomplished by gadolinium-enhanced MRI incorporating sagittal and axial views. MRI of the spine should be obtained

preoperatively in all children with midline tumors of the fourth ventricle or cerebellum. A CSF sample should be obtained during the diagnostic surgery or, if that is not possible, 7–10 days after the surgery. Lumbar CSF is preferred over ventricular CSF for cytologic examination. Levels of biomarkers in the blood and CSF, such as human chorionic gonadotropin and α-fetoprotein, may be helpful in diagnosis and follow-up. Both human chorionic gonadotropin and α-fetoprotein should be obtained from the blood preoperatively for all pineal and suprasellar tumors.

The neurosurgeon should discuss staging and sample collection with an oncologist before surgery in a child newly presenting with a scan suggestive of brain tumor.

C. Classification

About 50% of the common pediatric brain tumors occur above the tentorium and 50% in the posterior fossa. In the very young child, posterior fossa tumors are more common. Most childhood brain tumors can be divided into two categories according to the cell of origin: (1) glial tumors, such as astrocytomas and ependymomas, or (2) nonglial tumors, such as medulloblastoma and other primitive neuroectodermal tumors. Some tumors contain both glial and neural elements (eg, ganglioglioma). A group of less common CNS tumors does not fit into either category (ie, craniopharyngiomas, AT/RTs, germ cell tumors, choroid plexus tumors, and meningiomas). Low- and high-grade tumors are found in most categories. Table 31–3 lists the locations and frequencies of the common pediatric brain tumors.

Table 31–3. Location and frequency of common pediatric brain tumors.

Location	Frequency of Occurrence (%)
Hemispheric	**37**
Low-grade astrocytoma	23
High-grade astrocytoma	11
Other	3
Posterior fossa	**49**
Medulloblastoma	15
Cerebellar astrocytoma	15
Brainstem glioma	15
Ependymoma	4
Midline	**14**
Craniopharyngioma	8
Chiasmal glioma	4
Pineal region tumor	2

Astrocytoma is the most common brain tumor of childhood. Most are juvenile pilocytic astrocytoma (WHO grade I) found in the posterior fossa with a bland cellular morphology and few or no mitotic figures. Low-grade astrocytomas are in many cases curable by complete surgical excision alone. Chemotherapy may be effective in about 40%–50% of low-grade astrocytomas and even in those who will fail chemotherapy eventually; it may delay time to radiation.

Medulloblastoma and related primitive neuroectodermal tumors are the most common high-grade brain tumors in children. These tumors usually occur in the first decade of life, with a peak incidence between ages 5 and 10 years and a female-male ratio of 2.1:1.3. The tumors typically arise in the midline cerebellar vermis, with variable extension into the fourth ventricle. Neuraxis dissemination at diagnosis affects from 10% to 46% of patients. Prognostic factors are outlined in Table 31–4. Determination of risk using histology may soon be replaced by molecular classifications.

Brainstem tumors are third in frequency of occurrence in children. They are frequently of astrocytic origin and often are high grade. Children with tumors that diffusely infiltrate the brainstem and involve primarily the pons (diffuse intrinsic pontine gliomas) have a long-term survival rate of less than 5%. There has been considerable biological discovery, largely from autopsy samples, in diffuse pontine gliomas in the very recent past; it is hoped this will result in new, better targeted therapies. Brainstem tumors that occur above or below the pons and grow in an eccentric or cystic manner have a somewhat better outcome. Exophytic tumors in this location may be amenable to surgery. Generally, brainstem tumors are treated without a tissue diagnosis.

Other brain tumors such as ependymomas, germ cell tumors, choroid plexus tumors, and craniopharyngiomas are less common, and each is associated with unique diagnostic and therapeutic challenges.

» Treatment

A. Supportive Care

Dexamethasone should be started prior to initial surgery (0.5–1.0 mg/kg initially, then 0.25–0.5 mg/kg/d in four divided doses). Anticonvulsants should be started if the

Table 31–4. Prognostic factors in children with medulloblastoma.

Factor	Favorable	Unfavorable
Extent of disease	Nondisseminated	Disseminated
Histologic features	Undifferentiated, desmoplastic	Large cell, anaplastic
Age	≥ 4 y	< 4 y

child has had a seizure or if the surgical approach is likely to induce seizures. Keppra is now the preferred anticonvulsant in this population as it does not induce liver enzymes. Because postoperative treatment of young children with high-grade brain tumors incorporates increasingly more intensive systemic chemotherapy, consideration should also be given to the use of prophylaxis for prevention of oral candidiasis and Pneumocystis infection. Dexamethasone potentially reduces the effectiveness of chemotherapy and should be discontinued as soon after surgery as possible.

Optimum care for the pediatric patient with a brain tumor requires a multidisciplinary team including subspecialists in pediatric neurosurgery, neuro-oncology, neurology, endocrinology, neuropsychology, radiation therapy, and rehabilitation medicine, as well as highly specialized nurses, social workers, and staff in physical therapy, occupational therapy, and speech and language science.

B. Specific Therapy

The goal of treatment is to eradicate the tumor with the least short- and long-term morbidity. Long-term neuropsychological morbidity becomes an especially important issue related to deficits caused by the tumor itself and the sequelae of treatment. Meticulous surgical removal of as much tumor as possible is generally the preferred initial approach. Technologic advances in the operating microscope, the ultrasonic tissue aspirator, and the CO_2 laser (which is less commonly used in pediatric brain tumor surgery); the accuracy of computerized stereotactic resection; and the availability of intraoperative monitoring techniques such as evoked potentials and electrocorticography have increased the feasibility and safety of surgical resection of many pediatric brain tumors. Second-look surgery after chemotherapy is increasingly being used when tumors are incompletely resected at initial surgery.

Radiation therapy for pediatric brain tumors is in a state of evolution. For tumors with a high probability of neuraxis dissemination (eg, medulloblastoma), craniospinal irradiation is still standard therapy in children older than 3 years. For tumors, such as medulloblastomas, there are ongoing trials aimed at further reducing the craniospinal dose. In others (eg, ependymoma), craniospinal irradiation has been abandoned because neuraxis dissemination at first relapse is rare. Conformal radiation and the use of three-dimensional treatment planning are now in routine.

Chemotherapy is effective in treating low-grade and malignant astrocytomas and medulloblastomas. There is an initial report supporting the effectiveness of chemotherapy in AT/RTs. The therapy used in this study was prolonged and intensive. The utility of chemotherapy in ependymoma is being reexplored in national trials. A series of brain tumor protocols for children younger than 3 years involved administering intensive chemotherapy after tumor resection and delaying or omitting radiation therapy. The results of these trials have generally been disappointing but have taught valuable lessons regarding the varying responses to chemotherapy of different tumor types. Superior results seem to have been obtained in the very young with high-dose chemotherapy strategies with stem cell rescue often followed by conformal radiotherapy. Conformal techniques allow the delivery of radiation to strictly defined fields and may limit side effects.

Perhaps the most exciting development in pediatric neuro-oncology is the development of biologically and clinically relevant subclassifications in both medulloblastoma and ependymoma. This development will drive a new generation of targeted therapy aimed at these biologically defined groups. The consensus definition of four biologically defined entities in medulloblastoma, including the Wnt and SHH groups, is the best example of this. New studies are in the planning stage based on this new defined biology.

In older children with malignant glioma, the current approach is surgical resection of the tumor and combined-modality treatment with irradiation and intensive chemotherapy. It has recently been realized there is considerable heterogeneity in pediatric high-grade gliomas. Some, such as the congenital tumors, may do well with relatively modest therapy. Others, such as epithelioid glioblastomas may harbor Braf mutations and may be targetable with specific agents. Generally, however, the prognosis is poor for children with high-grade gliomas and there has been little progress in finding better chemotherapeutic agents and strategies for most children with these devastating tumors.

The treatment of low-grade astrocytomas, which cannot be completely excised, has likewise shown only disappointing progress. The chemotherapy agents currently in use have high failure rates and some children suffer multiple, neurologically damaging, relapses. Radiotherapy with its improved conformational techniques is perhaps being delayed too long in some children.

» Prognosis

Despite improvements in surgery and radiation therapy, the outlook for cure remains poor for children with high-grade glial tumors. For children with high-grade gliomas, an early CCG study showed a 45% progression-free survival rate for children who received radiation therapy and chemotherapy, but this may have been due to the inclusion of low-grade patients. More recent studies would suggest survival rate of less than 10%. The major exception to this is congenital glioblastomas which appear to have a much more favorable prognosis. Biologic factors that may affect survival are being increasingly recognized. The prognosis for diffuse pontine gliomas remains very poor, with the standard therapy of radiation alone, being only palliative.

The 5- and even 10-year survival rate for low-grade astrocytomas of childhood is 60%–90%. However, prognosis depends on both site, grade and, it is increasingly realized,

on biology. A child with a pilocytic astrocytoma of the cerebellum has a considerably better prognosis than a child with a fibrillary astrocytoma of the cerebral cortex. Pilomyxoid astrocytomas have been recently designated a grade II tumor and have a worse prognosis. For recurrent or progressive low-grade astrocytoma of childhood, relatively moderate chemotherapy may improve the likelihood of survival.

Conventional craniospinal irradiation for children with low-stage medulloblastoma results in survival rates of 60%–90%. Ten-year survival rates are lower (40%–60%). Chemotherapy allows a reduction in the craniospinal radiation dose while improving survival rates for average-risk patients (86% survival at 5 years on the most recent COG average-risk protocol). However, even reduced-dose craniospinal irradiation has an adverse effect on intellect, especially in children younger than 7 years. Five-year survival rates for high-risk medulloblastoma have been 25%–40%, but this may be improved with the introduction of more chemotherapy during radiation although this still awaits the results of formal trials.

The previously poor prognosis for children with AT/RTs seems improved by intensive multimodality therapy. A single-center study suggests an improved outcome for ependymoma using conformational radiation techniques. This awaits confirmation by a national study.

Major challenges remain in treating brain tumors in children younger than 3 years and in treating brainstem gliomas and malignant gliomas. The increasing emphasis is on the quality of life of survivors, not just the survival rate.

Chi SN et al: Intensive multimodality treatment for children with newly diagnosed CNS atypical teratoid rhabdoid tumor. J Clin Oncol 2009;20:385 [PMID: 19064966].

Gajjar A et al: COG Brain Tumor Committee. Children's Oncology Group's 2013 blueprint for research: central nervous system tumors. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2013 Jun;60(6):1022–1026 [PMID: 23255213].

Jakacki R et al: Outcome for metastatic (M+) medulloblastoma (MB) treated with carboplatin during craniospinal radiotherapy (CSRT) followed by cyclophosphamide (CPM) and vincristine: preliminary results of COG 99701. J Clin Oncol 2007;25:A2017.

Korshunov A et al: Molecular staging of intracranial ependymoma in children and adults. J Clin Oncol 2010;28:3182 [PMID: 20516456].

Macy ME et al: Clinical and molecular characteristics of congenital glioblastoma. Neuro Oncol 2012;14:931 [PMID: 22711608].

Merchant TE et al: Conformal radiotherapy after surgery for paediatric ependymoma: a prospective study. Lancet Oncol 2009;10:258 [PMID: 19274783].

Northcott PA et al: Medulloblastoma comprises four distinct molecular variants. J Clin Oncol 2011;29:1408 [PMID: 20823417].

Packer RJ et al: Phase III study of craniospinal radiation therapy followed by adjuvant chemotherapy for newly diagnosed average-risk medulloblastoma. J Clin Oncol 2006;24:4202 [PMID: 16943538].

LYMPHOMAS & LYMPHOPROLIFERATIVE DISORDERS

The term lymphoma refers to a malignant proliferation of lymphoid cells, usually in association with and arising from lymphoid tissues (ie, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen). In contrast, the term leukemia refers to a malignancy arising from the bone marrow, which may include lymphoid cells. Because lymphomas can involve the bone marrow, the distinction between the two can be confusing. The diagnosis of lymphoma is a common one among childhood cancers, accounting for 10%–15% of all malignancies. The most common form is Hodgkin disease, which represents nearly half of all cases. The remaining subtypes, referred to collectively as non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), are divided into four main groups: lymphoblastic, small noncleaved cell, large B-cell, and anaplastic large cell lymphomas.

In contrast to lymphomas, lymphoproliferative disorders (LPDs) are quite rare in the general population. Most are polyclonal, nonmalignant (though often life-threatening) accumulations of lymphocytes that occur when the immune system fails to control virally transformed lymphocytes. However, a malignant monoclonal proliferation can also arise. The posttransplant LPDs arise in patients who are immunosuppressed to prevent solid organ or bone marrow transplant rejection, particularly liver and heart transplant patients. Spontaneous LPDs occur in immunodeficient individuals and, less commonly, in immunocompetent persons.

1. Hodgkin Lymphoma

» General Considerations

Children with Hodgkin lymphoma have a better response to treatment than do adults, with greater than 90% 5- to 10-year overall survival rate when all stages are evaluated. Although adult therapies are applicable, the management of Hodgkin lymphoma in children younger than 18 years frequently differs. Because excellent disease control can result from several different therapeutic approaches, selection of staging procedures (radiographic, surgical, or other procedures to determine additional locations of disease) and treatment are often based on the potential long-term toxicity associated with the intervention.

Although Hodgkin lymphoma represents 50% of the lymphomas of childhood, only 15% of all cases occur in children aged 16 years or younger. Children younger than 5 years account for 3% of childhood cases. There is a 4:1 male predominance in the first decade. Notably, in underdeveloped countries the age distribution is quite different, with a peak incidence in younger children.

Hodgkin disease is subdivided into four histologic groups, and the distribution in children parallels that of adults: lymphocyte-predominant (10%–20%); nodular sclerosing (40%–60%) (increases with age); mixed cellularity

(20%–40%); and lymphocyte-depleted (5%–10%). Prognosis is independent of subclassification, with appropriate therapy based on stage (see section Staging).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Children with Hodgkin lymphoma usually present with painless cervical adenopathy. The lymph nodes often feel firmer than inflammatory nodes and have a rubbery texture. They may be discrete or matted together and are not fixed to surrounding tissue. The growth rate is variable, and involved nodes may wax and wane in size over weeks to months.

As Hodgkin lymphoma nearly always arises in lymph nodes and spreads to contiguous nodal groups, a detailed examination of all nodal sites is mandatory. Lymphadenopathy is common in children, so the decision to perform biopsy is often difficult or delayed for a prolonged period. Indications for consideration of early lymph node biopsy include lack of identifiable infection in the region drained by the enlarged node, a node greater than 2 cm in size, supraclavicular adenopathy or abnormal chest radiograph, and lymphadenopathy increasing in size after 2 weeks or failing to resolve within 4–8 weeks.

Constitutional symptoms occur in about one-third of children at presentation. Symptoms of fever greater than 38.0°C, weight loss of 10% in the previous 6 months, and drenching night sweats are defined by the Ann Arbor staging criteria as B symptoms. The A designation refers to the absence of these symptoms. B symptoms are of prognostic value, and more aggressive therapy is usually required for cure. Generalized pruritus and pain with alcohol ingestion may also occur.

Half of patients have asymptomatic mediastinal disease (adenopathy or anterior mediastinal mass), although symptoms due to compression of vital structures in the thorax may occur. A chest radiograph should be obtained when lymphoma is being considered. The mediastinum must be evaluated thoroughly before any surgical procedure is undertaken to avoid airway obstruction or cardiovascular collapse during anesthesia and possible death. Splenomegaly or hepatomegaly is generally associated with advanced disease.

B. Laboratory Findings

The CBC is usually normal, although anemia, neutrophilia, eosinophilia, and thrombocytosis may be present. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate and other acute-phase reactants are often elevated and can serve as markers of disease activity. Immunologic abnormalities occur, particularly in cell-mediated immunity, and anergy is common in patients with advanced-stage disease at diagnosis. Autoantibody phenomena such as hemolytic anemia and an idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura–like picture have been reported.

C. Staging

Staging of Hodgkin lymphoma determines treatment and prognosis. The most common staging system is the Ann Arbor classification that describes extent of disease by I–IV and symptoms by an A or a B suffix (eg, stage IIIB). A systematic search for disease includes chest radiography; CT scan of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis; and bilateral bone marrow aspirates and biopsies. Technetium bone scanning may show bony involvement and is usually reserved for patients with bone pain, as bone involvement is rare. In recent years, positron emission tomography (PET) is increasingly used in the staging and follow-up of patients with Hodgkin disease, often replacing gallium scanning.

The staging laparotomy in pediatrics is rarely performed because almost all patients are given systemic chemotherapy rather than radiation therapy. This shift in favored therapy is due to the toxicities of high-dose, extended-field radiation in children and the complications of laparotomy, including postsplenectomy sepsis.

D. Pathologic Findings

The diagnosis of Hodgkin lymphoma requires the histologic presence of the Reed-Sternberg cell or its variants in tissue. Reed-Sternberg cells are germinal-center B cells that have undergone malignant transformation. Nearly 20% of these tumors in developed countries are positive for EBV. EBV has been linked to Hodgkin disease and the large portion of Hodgkin patients with increased EBV titers suggests that EBV activation may contribute to the onset of Hodgkin lymphoma.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment decisions are based on presence of B symptoms, stage, tumor bulk, and number of involved nodal regions. To achieve long-term disease-free survival while minimizing treatment toxicity, Hodgkin disease is increasingly treated by chemotherapy alone—and less often by radiation therapy.

Several combinations of chemotherapeutic agents are effective, and treatment times are relatively short compared with pediatric oncology protocols for leukemia. Clinical trials have addressed whether only 9 weeks of therapy with AV-PC (Adriamycin [doxorubicin], vincristine, prednisone, and cyclophosphamide) is sufficient to induce a complete response in patients with low-risk Hodgkin lymphoma. Two additional drugs, bleomycin and etoposide, are currently added in the treatment of intermediate-risk patients for a total of 4–6 months of therapy for patients with intermediate-risk disease. The removal of involved field irradiation in patients with intermediate-risk Hodgkin lymphoma who respond early to chemotherapy is being investigated. Combined-modality therapy with chemotherapy and irradiation is used in advanced disease.

Current treatment gives an overall 5 year survival of 90%–95% to children with stages I and II Hodgkin lymphoma. Two-thirds of all relapses occur within 2 years after diagnosis, and relapse rarely occurs beyond 4 years. Although patients with advanced disease (stages III and IV) have slightly lower overall survival, more patients are becoming long-term survivors of Hodgkin disease. As a result, the risk of secondary malignancies, both leukemias and solid tumors, is becoming more apparent and is higher in patients receiving radiation therapy. Therefore, elucidating the optimal treatment strategy that minimizes such risk should be the goal of future studies.

Patients with relapsed Hodgkin lymphoma are often salvageable using chemotherapy and radiation therapy. An increasingly popular alternative is autologous HSCT, which may improve survival rates. Allogeneic HSCT is also used, but carries increased risks of complications and may not offer added survival benefit.

Targeted therapies are being tested for children with high-risk Hodgkin lymphoma, including antibody conjugates targeting CD30, a transmembrane receptor highly expressed in Hodgkin lymphoma. A current COG trial is investigating if an anti-CD30 murine/human chimeric monoclonal antibody linked to monomethyl auristatin E is able to target the Reed-Stenberg cell in newly diagnosed high-risk Hodgkin Lymphoma. Other agents being considered in the high-risk group are histone deacetylase inhibitors and mTOR inhibitors.

Freed J et al: Current approaches to the management of pediatric Hodgkin lymphoma. Paediatr Drugs 2010;12:85 [PMID: 20218745].

Friedman DL et al: Dose-intensive response-based chemotherapy and radiation therapy for children and adolescents with newly diagnosed intermediate-risk Hodgkin lymphoma: a report from the Children's Oncology Group Study AHOD0031. J Clin Oncol 2014;32:3561 [PMID: 25311218].

Jachimowicz RD et al: The challenging aspects of managing adolescents and young adults with Hodgkin's lymphoma. JAMA Acta Haematol 2014;132:274 [PMID: 2522855].

2. Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

» General Considerations

Non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHLs) are a diverse group of cancers accounting for 5%–10% of malignancies in children younger than 15 years. About 500 new cases arise per year in the United States. The incidence of NHLs increases with age. Children aged 15 years or younger account for only 3% of all cases of NHLs, and the disease is uncommon before age 5 years. There is a male predominance of approximately 3:1. In equatorial Africa, NHLs cause almost 50% of pediatric malignancies.

Most children who develop NHL are immunologically normal. However, children with congenital or acquired immune deficiencies (eg, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome, X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, immunosuppressive therapy following solid-organ or marrow transplantation) have an increased risk of developing NHLs. It has been estimated that their risk is 100–10,000 times that of age-matched control subjects.

Animal models suggest a viral contribution to the pathogenesis of NHL, and there is evidence of viral involvement in human NHL as well. In equatorial Africa, 95% of Burkitt lymphomas (BLs) contain DNA from the EBV. But in North America, less than 20% of Burkitt tumors contain the EBV genome. The role of other viruses (eg, human herpesviruses 6 and 8), disturbances in host immunologic defenses, chronic immunostimulation, and specific chromosomal rearrangements as potential triggers in the development of NHL is under investigation.

Unlike adult NHL, virtually all childhood NHLs are rapidly proliferating, high-grade, diffuse malignancies. These tumors exhibit aggressive behavior but are usually very responsive to treatment. Nearly all pediatric NHLs are histologically classified into four main groups: lymphoblastic lymphoma (LL), small noncleaved cell lymphoma (BL and Burkitt-like lymphoma [BLL]), large B-cell lymphoma (LBCL), and anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL). Immunophenotyping and cytogenetic features, in addition to clinical presentation, are increasingly important in the classification, pathogenesis, and treatment of NHLs. Comparisons of pediatric NHLs are summarized in Table 31–5.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Childhood NHLs can arise in any site of lymphoid tissue, including the lymph nodes, thymus, liver, and spleen. Common extralymphatic sites include bone, bone marrow, CNS, skin, and testes. Signs and symptoms at presentation are determined by the location of lesions and the degree of dissemination. Because NHL usually progresses very rapidly, the duration of symptoms is quite brief, from days to a few weeks. Nevertheless, children present with a limited number of syndromes, most of which correlate with cell type.

Children with LL often present with symptoms of airway compression (cough, dyspnea, orthopnea) or superior vena cava obstruction (facial edema, chemosis, plethora, venous engorgement), which are a result of mediastinal disease. These symptoms are a true emergency necessitating rapid diagnosis and treatment. Pleural or pericardial effusions may further compromise the patient's respiratory and cardiovascular status. CNS and bone marrow involvement are not common at diagnosis. When bone marrow contains more than 25% lymphoblasts, patients are diagnosed with ALL.

Most patients with BL and BLL present with abdominal disease. Abdominal pain, distention, a right lower quadrant

Table 31–5. Comparison of pediatric non-Hodgkin lymphomas.

	Lymphoblastic Lymphoma	Small Noncleaved Cell Lymphoma (BL and BLL)	Large B-Cell Lymphoma	Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma
Incidence (%)	30–40	35–50	10–15	10–15
Histopathologic features	Indistinguishable from ALL lymphoblasts	Large nucleus with prominent nucleoli surrounded by very basophilic cytoplasm that contains lipid vacuoles	Large cells with cleaved or noncleaved nuclei	Large pleomorphic cells
Immunopheno-type	Immature T cell	B cell	B cell	T cell or null cell
Cytogenetic markers	Translocations involving chromosome 14q11 and chromosome 7; interstitial deletions of chromosome 1	t(8;14), t(8;22), t(2;8)	Many	t(2;5)
Clinical presentation	Intrathoracic tumor, mediastinal mass (50%–70%), lymphadenopathy above diaphragm (50%–80%)	Intra-abdominal tumor (90%), jaw involvement (10%–20% sporadic BL, 70% endemic BL), bone marrow involvement	Abdominal tumor most common; unusual sites: lung, face, brain, bone, testes, muscle	Lymphadenopathy, fever, weight loss, night sweats, extranodal sites including viscera and skin
Treatment	Similar to ALL therapy; 24 mo duration	Intensive administration of alkylating agents and methotrexate; CNS prophylaxis; 3–9 mo duration	Similar to therapy for BL/BLL	Similar to therapy for lymphoblastic lymphoma or BL/BLL

ALL, acute lymphoblastic leukemia; BL, Burkitt lymphoma; BLL, Burkitt-like lymphoma; CNS, central nervous system.

mass, or intussusception in a child older than 5 years suggests the diagnosis of BL. Bone marrow involvement is common (~65% of patients). BL is the most rapidly proliferating tumor known and has a high rate of spontaneous cell death as it outgrows its blood supply. Consequently, children presenting with massive abdominal disease frequently have tumor lysis syndrome (hyperuricemia, hyperphosphatemia, and hyperkalemia). These abnormalities can be aggravated by tumor infiltration of the kidney or urinary obstruction by tumor. Although similar histologically, numerous differences exist between cases of BL occurring in endemic areas of equatorial Africa and the sporadic cases of North America (Table 31–6).

Large cell lymphomas are similar clinically to the small noncleaved cell lymphomas, although unusual sites of involvement are quite common, particularly with ALCL. Skin lesions, focal neurologic deficits, and pleural or peritoneal effusions without an obvious associated mass are frequently seen.

B. Diagnostic Evaluation

Diagnosis is made by biopsy of involved tissue with histology, immunophenotyping, and cytogenetic studies. If mediastinal disease is present, general anesthesia must be avoided if the airway or vena cava is compromised by tumor. In these cases samples of pleural or ascitic fluid, bone marrow, or peripheral nodes obtained under local anesthesia

Table 31–6. Comparison of endemic and sporadic Burkitt lymphoma.

	Endemic	Sporadic
Incidence	10 per 100,000	0.9 per 100,000
Cytogenetics	Chromosome 8 breakpoint upstream of c-myc locus	Chromosome 8 breakpoint within c-myc locus
EBV association	≥ 95%	≤ 20%
Disease sites at presentation	Jaw (58%), abdomen (58%), CNS (19%), orbit (11%), marrow (7%)	Jaw (7%), abdomen (91%), CNS (14%), orbit (1%), marrow (20%)

CNS, central nervous system; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus.

(in the presence of an anesthesiologist) may confirm the diagnosis. Major abdominal surgery and intestinal resection should be avoided in patients with an abdominal mass that is likely to be BL, as the tumor will regress rapidly with the initiation of chemotherapy. The rapid growth of these tumors and the associated life-threatening complications demand that further studies be done expeditiously so that specific therapy is not delayed.

After a thorough physical examination, a CBC, liver function tests, and a biochemical profile (electrolytes, calcium, phosphorus, uric acid, renal function) should be obtained. An elevated LDH reflects tumor burden and can serve as a marker of disease activity. Imaging studies should include a chest radiograph and chest CT scan, an abdominal ultrasound or CT scan, and possibly a PET scan. Bone marrow and CSF examinations are also essential.

» Treatment

A. Supportive Care

The management of life-threatening problems at presentation is critical. The most common complications are superior mediastinal syndrome and acute tumor lysis syndrome. Patients with airway compromise require prompt initiation of specific therapy. Because of the risk of general anesthesia in these patients, it is occasionally necessary to initiate corticosteroids or low-dose emergency radiation therapy until the mass is small enough for a biopsy to be undertaken safely. Response to steroids and radiation therapy is usually prompt (12–24 hours).

Tumor lysis syndrome should be anticipated in all patients who have NHL with a large tumor burden. Maintaining a brisk urine output (> 5 mL/kg/h) with intravenous fluids and diuretics is the key to management. Allopurinol will reduce serum uric acid, and alkalinization of urine will increase its solubility. Rasburicase is an effective intravenous alternative to allopurinol and is increasingly used for patients with high risk of tumor lysis based on tumor burden or in patients who do not have an optimal response to allopurinol. Because phosphate precipitates in alkaline urine, alkali administration should be discontinued if hyperphosphatemia occurs. Renal dialysis is occasionally necessary to control metabolic abnormalities. Every attempt should be made to correct or minimize metabolic abnormalities before initiating chemotherapy; however, this period of stabilization should not exceed 24–48 hours.

B. Specific Therapy

Systemic chemotherapy is the mainstay of therapy for NHLs. Nearly all patients with NHL require intensive intrathecal chemotherapy for CNS prophylaxis. Surgical resection is not indicated unless the entire tumor can be resected safely, which is rare. Partial resection or debulking surgery has no role. Radiation therapy does not improve outcome, so its use is confined to exceptional circumstances.

Therapy for LL is generally based on treatment protocols designed for ALL and involves dose-intensive, multiagent chemotherapy. Current trials are testing whether the addition of bortezomib to the current multiagent chemotherapy regimen will decrease the risk of relapse for patients with T-cell LL. The duration of therapy is 2 years. Treatment of BL and BLL using alkylating agents and intermediate- to high-dose methotrexate administered intensively but for a relatively short time produce the highest cure rates. LBCL is treated similarly, whereas ALCL has been treated with both BL and LL protocols.

Monoclonal antibodies such as rituximab (anti-CD20) allow for more targeted therapy of lymphomas and have been successful in improving outcomes in adults. Studies employing this type of therapy in children are underway in those with newly diagnosed as well as relapsed or refractory B-cell NHL. Additionally, inhibitors against the ALK oncogene are being explored as novel therapy for specific subsets of patients with NHL. Specifically, the ALK oncogene (activated by a 2;5 translocation leading to juxtaposition of NPM N-terminal region to the intracellular part of ALK) is the defining genetic lesions in ALK-positive ALCL and in rare variants of LBCL. Molecular profiling of pediatric lymphomas has identified other potential biologic targets. Current trials are testing the efficacy of oral small molecule inhibitors of ALK in children with relapsed/refractory ALCL.

» Prognosis

A major predictor of outcome in NHL is the extent of disease at diagnosis. Ninety percent of patients with localized disease can expect long-term, disease-free survival. Patients with extensive disease on both sides of the diaphragm, CNS involvement, or bone marrow involvement in addition to a primary site have a 70%–80% failure-free survival rate. Relapses occur early in NHL; patients with LL rarely have recurrences after 30 months from diagnosis, whereas patients with BL and BLL very rarely have recurrences beyond 1 year. The cure rate for patients with relapsed T-cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma is particularly poor (3-year EFS rates < 20%). Patients who experience relapse may have a chance for cure by autologous or allogeneic HSCT.

Goldman et al: Rituximab and FAB/LMB 96 chemotherapy in children with stage III/IV B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma: a Children's Oncology Group report. Leukemia 2013; 27:1174 [PMID: 22940833].

Lange J et al: Treatment of adolescents with aggressive B-cell malignancies: the pediatric experience. Curr Hematol Malig Rep 2013;8:226 [PMID: 23812872].

Wolach O et al: Adolescents and young adults with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: slipping between the cracks. Acta Haematol 2014;132:279 [PMID: 25228553].

Worch J et al: Mature B-cell lymphoma and leukemia in children and adolescents—review of standard chemotherapy regimen and perspectives. Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2013;30(6):465 [PMID: 23570584].

3. Lymphoproliferative Disorders

Lymphoproliferative disorders (LPDs) can be thought of as a part of a continuum with lymphomas. Whereas LPDs represent inappropriate, often polyclonal proliferations of nonmalignant lymphocytes, lymphomas represent the development of malignant clones, sometimes arising from recognized LPDs.

A. Posttransplantation Lymphoproliferative Disorders

Posttransplantation lymphoproliferative disorders (PTLDs) arise in patients who have received substantial immunosuppressive medications for solid organ or bone marrow transplantation. In these patients, reactivation of latent EBV infection in B cells drives a polyclonal proliferation of these cells that is fatal if not halted. Occasionally a true lymphoma develops, often bearing a chromosomal translocation.

LPDs are an increasingly common and significant complication of transplantation. The incidence of PTLD ranges from approximately 2% to 15% of transplant recipients, depending on the organ transplanted and the immunosuppressive regimen.

Treatment of these disorders is a challenge for transplant physicians and oncologists. The initial treatment is reduction in immunosuppression, which allows the patient's own immune cells to destroy the virally transformed lymphocytes. However, this is only effective in approximately half of the patients. For those patients who do not respond to reduced immune suppression, chemotherapy of various regimens may succeed. The use of anti–B-cell antibodies, such as rituximab (anti-CD20), for the treatment of PTLDs has been promising in clinical trials. More recently, T-cell–based immune therapies, such as donor lymphocyte infusions and adoptive transfer of EBV-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes, have also been explored as novel approaches.

B. Spontaneous Lymphoproliferative Disease

Immunodeficiencies in which LPDs occur include Bloom syndrome, Chédiak-Higashi syndrome, ataxia-telangiectasia, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome, congenital T-cell immunodeficiencies, and HIV infection. Treatment depends on the circumstances, but unlike PTLD, few therapeutic options are often available. Castleman disease is an LPD occurring in pediatric patients without any apparent immunodeficiency. The autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS) is characterized by widespread lymphadenopathy with hepatosplenomegaly, and autoimmune phenomena. ALPS results from mutations in the Fas ligand pathway that is critical in regulation of apoptosis.

Weintraub L et al: Identifying predictive factors for posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease in pediatric solid organ transplant recipients with Epstein-Barr virus viremia. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2014;36:e481 [PMID: 24878618].
Yang X et al: Lymphoproliferative disorders in immunocompromised individuals and therapeutic antibodies for treatment. Immunotherapy 2013;5:415 [PMID: 23557424].

NEUROBLASTOMA

» General Considerations

Neuroblastoma arises from neural crest tissue of the sympathetic ganglia or adrenal medulla. It is composed of small, fairly uniform cells with little cytoplasm and hyperchromatic nuclei that may form rosette patterns. Pathologic diagnosis is not always easy, and neuroblastoma must be differentiated from the other "small, round, blue cell" malignancies of childhood (Ewing sarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, peripheral neuroectodermal tumor, and lymphoma).

Neuroblastoma accounts for 7%–10% of pediatric malignancies and is the most common solid neoplasm outside the CNS. Fifty percent of neuroblastomas are diagnosed before age 2 years and 90% before age 5 years.

Neuroblastoma is a biologically diverse disease with varied clinical behavior ranging from spontaneous regression to progression through very aggressive therapy. Unfortunately, despite significant advances in our understanding of this tumor at the cellular and molecular level, the overall survival rate in advanced disease has changed little in 20 years, with 3-year EFS being less than 15%.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical manifestations vary with the primary site of malignant disease and the neuroendocrine function of the tumor. Many children present with constitutional symptoms such as fever, weight loss, and irritability. Bone pain suggests metastatic disease, which is present in 60% of children older than 1 year at diagnosis. Physical examination may reveal a firm, fixed, irregularly shaped mass that extends beyond the midline. The margins are often poorly defined. Although most children have an abdominal primary tumor (40% adrenal gland, 25% paraspinal ganglion), neuroblastoma can arise wherever there is sympathetic tissue. In the posterior mediastinum, the tumor is usually asymptomatic and discovered on a chest radiograph obtained for other reasons. Patients with cervical neuroblastoma present with a neck

mass, which is often misdiagnosed as infection. Horner syndrome (unilateral ptosis, myosis, and anhidrosis) or heterochromia iridis (differently colored irises) may accompany cervical neuroblastoma. Paraspinous tumors can extend through the spinal foramina, causing cord compression. Patients may present with paresis, paralysis, and bowel or bladder dysfunction.

The most common sites of metastases are bone, bone marrow, lymph nodes (regional as well as disseminated), liver, and subcutaneous tissue. Neuroblastoma has a predilection for metastasis to the skull, in particular the sphenoid bone and retrobulbar tissue. This causes periorbital ecchymosis and proptosis. Liver metastasis, particularly in the newborn, can be massive. Subcutaneous nodules are bluish in color and associated with an erythematous flush followed by blanching when compressed, probably secondary to catecholamine release.

Neuroblastoma may also be associated with unusual paraneoplastic manifestations. Perhaps the most striking example is opsoclonus-myoclonus, also called dancing eyes/dancing feet syndrome. This phenomenon is characterized by the acute onset of rapid and chaotic eye movements, myoclonic jerking of the limbs and trunk, ataxia, and behavioral disturbances. This process, which often persists after therapy is complete, is thought to be secondary to cross-reacting antineural antibodies. Intractable, chronic watery diarrhea is associated with tumor secretion of vasoactive intestinal peptides. Both of these paraneoplastic syndromes are associated with favorable outcomes.

B. Laboratory Findings

Anemia is present in 60% of children with neuroblastoma and can be due to chronic disease or marrow infiltration. Occasionally, thrombocytopenia is present, but thrombocytosis is a more common finding, even with metastatic disease in the marrow. Urinary catecholamines (vanillylmandelic acid and homovanillic acid) are elevated in at least 90% of patients at diagnosis and should be measured prior to surgery.

C. Imaging

Plain radiographs of the primary tumor may show stippled calcifications. Metastases to bone appear irregular and lytic. Periosteal reaction and pathologic fractures may also be seen. CT scanning provides more information, including the extent of the primary tumor, its effects on surrounding structures, and the presence of liver and lymph node metastases. Classically, in tumors originating from the adrenal gland, the kidney is displaced inferolaterally, which helps to differentiate neuroblastoma from Wilms tumor. MRI is useful in determining the presence of spinal cord involvement in tumors that appear to invade neural foramina.

Technetium bone scanning is obtained for the evaluation of bone metastases, because the tumor usually takes up technetium. Metaiodobenzylguanidine (MIBG) scanning is also performed to detect metastatic disease.

D. Staging

Staging of neuroblastoma is performed according to the International Neuroblastoma Staging System (INSS) (Table 31–7). A biopsy of the tumor is performed to determine the biologic characteristics of the tumor. In addition, bilateral bone marrow aspirates and biopsies must be performed to evaluate marrow involvement.

Tumors are classified as favorable or unfavorable based on histologic characteristics. Amplification of the MYCN protooncogene is a reliable marker of aggressive clinical behavior with rapid disease progression. Tumor cell DNA content is also predictive of outcome. Hyperdiploidy is a favorable finding, whereas diploid DNA content is associated with a worse outcome.

Table 31–7. International Neuroblastoma Staging System.

Stage	Description
1	Localized tumor with complete gross excision, with or without microscopic residual disease; representative ipsilateral lymph nodes negative for tumor microscopically.
2A	Localized tumor with incomplete gross excision; representative ipsilateral nonadherent lymph nodes negative for tumor microscopically.
2B	Localized tumor with or without complete gross excision, with ipsilateral nonadherent lymph nodes positive for tumor. Enlarged lymph nodes must be negative microscopically.
3	Unresectable unilateral tumor infiltrating across the midline, with or without regional lymph node involvement; or localized unilateral tumor with contralateral regional lymph node involvement; or midline tumor with bilateral extension by infiltration (unresectable) or by lymph node involvement. The midline is defined as the vertebral column. Tumors originating on one side and crossing the midline must infiltrate to or beyond the opposite side of the vertebral column.
4	Any primary tumor with dissemination to distant lymph nodes, bone, bone marrow, liver, skin, or other organs, except as defined for stage 4S.
4S	Localized primary tumor, as defined for stage 1, 2A, or 2B, with dissemination limited to skin, liver, or bone marrow, and limited to infants age < 1 y. Marrow involvement should be < 10% of nucleated cells.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Patients are treated based on a risk stratification system adopted by the COG based on INSS stage, age, MYCN status, histology, cytogenetic findings, and DNA index. The mainstay of therapy is surgical resection coupled with chemotherapy. The usually massive size of the tumor often makes primary resection impossible. Under these circumstances, only a biopsy is performed. Following chemotherapy, a second surgical procedure may allow for resection of the primary tumor. Radiation therapy is sometimes also necessary. Effective chemotherapeutic agents in the treatment of neuroblastoma include cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, etoposide, cisplatin, vincristine, and topotecan. About 80% of patients achieve complete or partial remission, although in advanced disease, remission is seldom durable.

For low-risk disease (stages 1 and 2, with good biologic features), surgical resection alone may be sufficient to affect a cure. Infants younger than 1 year with stage 4S disease may need little if any therapy, although chemotherapy may be initiated because of bulky disease causing mechanical complications. In intermediate-risk neuroblastoma (subsets of patients with stages 3 and 4 disease), the primary treatment approach is surgical combined with chemotherapy. High-risk patients (the majority with stages 3 and 4 disease) require multimodal therapy, including surgery, irradiation, chemotherapy, and autologous HSCT. The administration of cis-retinoic acid, a differentiating agent, was shown to prolong disease-free survival in advanced-stage neuroblastoma when administered in the setting of MRD after HSCT.

A recent cooperative clinical trial concluded that administration of ch14.18 (a monoclonal antibody specific for the predominant antigen on neuroblastoma cells) and cytokines improves outcome in the high-risk population following HSCT. All patients with high-risk disease are offered this therapy, with the 2-year EFS being around 75%. The current COG trial for high-risk patients is investigating whether addition of radiolabeled MIBG to the induction regimen will improve outcome.

For children with stage 1, 2, or 4S disease, the 5-year survival rate is 80%–100%. Infants younger than 547 days have a greater than 80% likelihood of long-term survival.

George RE et al: Hyperdiploidy plus nonamplified MYCN confers a favorable prognosis in children 12–18 months old with disseminated neuroblastoma: a Pediatric Oncology Group Study. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:6466 [PMID: 16116152].

London WB et al: Evidence for an age cutoff greater than 365 days for neuroblastoma risk group stratification in the Children's Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:6459 [PMID: 16116153].

Matthay KK et al: Long-term results for children with high-risk neuroblastoma treated on a randomized trial of myeloablative therapy followed by 13-cis-retinoic acid: a Children's Oncology Group Study. J Clin Oncol 2009;27:1007 [PMID: 19171716].

National Cancer Institute: http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/types/neuroblastoma.

Schmidt ML et al: Favorable prognosis for patients 12–18 months of age with stage 4 nonamplified MYCN neuroblastoma: a Children's Cancer Group Study. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:6474 [PMID: 16116154].

Yu AL et al: Anti-GD2 antibody with GM-CSF, IL2 and isotretinoin for neuroblastoma. New Engl J Med 2010;363(14):1324 [PMID: 20879881].

WILMS TUMOR (NEPHROBLASTOMA)

» General Considerations

Approximately 460 new cases of Wilms tumor occur annually in the United States, representing 5%–6% of cancers in children younger than 15 years. After neuroblastoma, this is the second most common abdominal tumor in children. The majority of Wilms tumors are of sporadic occurrence. However, in a few children, Wilms tumor occurs in the setting of associated malformations or syndromes, including aniridia, hemihypertrophy, genitourinary malformations (eg, cryptorchidism, hypospadias, gonadal dysgenesis, pseudohermaphroditism, and horseshoe kidney), Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, Denys-Drash syndrome, and WAGR syndrome (Wilms tumor, aniridia, ambiguous genitalia, mental retardation).

The median age at diagnosis is related both to gender and laterality, with bilateral tumors presenting at a younger age than unilateral tumors, and males being diagnosed earlier than females. Wilms tumor occurs most commonly between ages 2 and 5 years; it is unusual after age 6 years. The mean age at diagnosis is 4 years.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most children with Wilms tumor present with increasing size of the abdomen or an asymptomatic abdominal mass incidentally discovered by a parent and/or health care provider. The mass is usually smooth and firm, well demarcated, and rarely crosses the midline, though it can extend inferiorly into the pelvis. About 25% of patients are hypertensive at presentation. Gross hematuria is an uncommon presentation, although microscopic hematuria occurs in approximately 25% of patients.

B. Laboratory Findings

The CBC is usually normal, but some patients have anemia secondary to hemorrhage into the tumor. Blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine are usually normal. Urinalysis may show some blood or leukocytes.

C. Imaging and Staging

Ultrasonography or CT of the abdomen should establish the presence of an intrarenal mass. It is also essential to evaluate the contralateral kidney for presence and function as well as synchronous Wilms tumor. The inferior vena cava needs to be evaluated by ultrasonography with Doppler flow for the presence and extent of tumor propagation. The liver should be imaged for the presence of metastatic disease. Chest CT scan should be obtained to determine whether pulmonary metastases are present. Approximately 10% of patients will have metastatic disease at diagnosis. Of these, 80% will have pulmonary disease and 15% liver metastases. Bone and brain metastases are extremely uncommon and usually associated with the rarer, more aggressive renal tumor types, such as clear cell sarcoma or rhabdoid tumor; hence, bone scans and brain imaging are not routinely performed. The clinical stage is ultimately decided at surgery and confirmed by the pathologist.

» Treatment & Prognosis

In the United States, treatment of Wilms tumor begins with surgical exploration of the abdomen via an anterior surgical approach to allow for inspection and palpation of the contralateral kidney. The liver and lymph nodes are inspected and suspicious areas biopsied or excised. En bloc resection of the tumor is performed. Every attempt is made to avoid tumor spillage at surgery as this may increase the staging and treatment. Because therapy is tailored to tumor stage, it is imperative that a surgeon familiar with the staging requirements perform the operation.

In addition to the staging, the histologic type has implications for therapy and prognosis. Favorable histology (FH; see later discussion) refers to the classic triphasic Wilms tumor and its variants. Unfavorable histology (UH) refers to the presence of diffuse anaplasia (extreme nuclear atypia) and is present in 5% of Wilms tumors. Only a few small foci of anaplasia in a Wilms tumor give a worse prognosis to patients with stage II, III, or IV tumors. Loss of heterozygosity of chromosomes 1p and 16q are adverse prognostic factors in those with favorable histology. Following excision and pathologic examination, the patient is assigned a stage that defines further therapy.

Improvement in the treatment of Wilms tumor has resulted in an overall cure rate of approximately 90%. The National Wilms Tumor Study Group's fourth study (NWTS-4) demonstrated that survival rates were improved by intensifying therapy during the initial treatment phase while shortening overall treatment duration (24 vs 60 weeks of treatment).

Table 31–8 provides an overview of the current treatment recommendations in NWTS-5. Patients with stage III or IV Wilms tumor require radiation therapy to the tumor bed and to sites of metastatic disease. Chemotherapy is optimally begun within 5 days after surgery, whereas radiation therapy should be started within 10 days. Stage V (bilateral Wilms tumor) disease dictates a different approach, consisting of possible bilateral renal biopsies followed by chemotherapy and second-look renal-sparing surgery. Radiation therapy may also be necessary.

Table 31–8. Treatment of Wilms tumor.

Stage/Histologic Subtype	Treatment
I–II FH and I UH	18 wk (dactinomycin and vincristine)
III–IV FH and II–IV focal anaplasia	24 wk (dactinomycin, vincristine, and doxorubicin) with radiation
II–IV UH (diffuse anaplasia)	24 wk (vincristine, doxorubicin, etoposide, and cyclophosphamide) with radiation

FH, favorable histology; UH, unfavorable histology.

Using these approaches, 4-year overall survival rates through NWTS-4 are as follows: stage I FH, 96%; stages II–IV FH, 82%–92%; stages I–III UH (diffuse anaplasia), 56%–70%; and stage IV UH, 17%. Patients with recurrent Wilms tumor have a salvage rate of approximately 50% with surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy (singly or in combination). HSCT is also being explored as a way to improve the chances of survival after relapse.

» Future Considerations

Although progress in the treatment of Wilms tumor has been extraordinary, important questions remain to be answered. Questions have been raised regarding the role of prenephrectomy chemotherapy in the treatment of Wilms tumor. Presurgical chemotherapy seems to decrease tumor rupture at resection but may unfavorably affect outcome by changing staging. Future studies will be directed at minimizing acute and long-term toxicities for those with low-risk disease and improving outcomes for those with high-risk and recurrent disease.

Buckley KS: Pediatric genitourinary tumors. Curr Opin Oncol 2010;23(3):297 [PMID: 21460723].

Davidoff AM: Wilms' tumor. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009;21(3):357 [PMID: 19417665].

Davidoff AM et al: The feasibility and outcome of nephron-sparing surgery for children with bilateral Wilms tumor. The St Jude Children's Research Hospital experience: 1999–2006. Cancer 2008;112(9):2060 [PMID: 18361398].

Gratias EJ, Dome JS: Current and emerging chemotherapy treatment strategies for Wilms tumor in North America. Paediatr Drugs 2008;10(2):115 [PMID: 18345721].

Grundy PE et al: Loss of heterozygosity for chromosomes 1p and 16q is an adverse prognostic factor in favorable-histology Wilms tumor: a report from the National Wilms Tumor Study Group. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:7312 [PMID: 16129848].

National Cancer Institute: http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/-types/wilms. Accessed
Wright KD, Green DM, Daw NC: Late effects of treatment of Wilms tumor. Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2009;26(6):407 [PMID: 19657990].

BONE TUMORS

Primary malignant bone tumors are uncommon in childhood with only 650–700 new cases per year. Osteosarcoma accounts for 60% of cases and occurs mostly in adolescents and young adults. Ewing sarcoma is the second most common malignant tumor of bony origin and occurs in toddlers to young adults. Both tumors have a male predominance.

The cardinal signs of bone tumor are pain at the site of involvement, often following slight trauma, mass formation, and fracture through an area of cortical bone destruction.

1. Osteosarcoma

» General Considerations

Although osteosarcoma is the sixth most common malignancy in childhood, it ranks third among adolescents and young adults. This peak occurrence during the adolescent growth spurt suggests a causal relationship between rapid bone growth and malignant transformation. Further evidence for this relationship is found in epidemiologic data showing patients with osteosarcoma to be taller than their peers, osteosarcoma occurring most frequently at sites where the greatest increase in length and size of bone occurs, and osteosarcoma occurring at an earlier age in girls than boys, corresponding to their earlier growth spurt. The metaphyses of long tubular bones are primarily affected. The distal femur accounts for more than 40% of cases, with the proximal tibia, proximal humerus, and mid and proximal femur following in frequency.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Pain over the involved area is the usual presenting symptom with or without an associated soft tissue mass. Patients generally have symptoms for several months prior to diagnosis. Systemic symptoms (fever, weight loss) are rare. Laboratory evaluation may reveal elevated serum alkaline phosphatase or LDH levels.

B. Imaging and Staging

Radiographic findings show permeative destruction of the normal bony trabecular pattern with indistinct margins. In addition, periosteal new bone formation and lifting of the bony cortex may create a Codman triangle. A soft tissue mass plus calcifications in a radial or sunburst pattern are frequently noted. MRI is more sensitive in defining the extent of the primary tumor and has mostly replaced CT scanning. The most common sites of metastases are the lung (≤ 20% of newly diagnosed cases) and the additional boney sites (10%). CT scan of the chest and bone scan are essential for detecting metastatic disease. PET-CT may be a consideration in monitoring response to therapy. Bone marrow aspirates and biopsies are not indicated.

Despite the rather characteristic radiographic appearance, a tissue sample is needed to confirm the diagnosis. Placement of the incision for biopsy is of critical importance. A misplaced incision could preclude a limb salvage procedure and necessitate amputation. The surgeon who will carry out the definitive surgical procedure should perform the biopsy. A staging system for osteosarcoma based on local tumor extent and presence or absence of distant metastasis has been proposed, but it has not been validated.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Historical studies showed that over 50% of patients receiving surgery alone developed pulmonary metastases within 6 months after surgery. This suggests the presence of micrometastatic disease at diagnosis. Adjuvant chemotherapy trials showed improved disease-free survival rates of 55%–85% in patients followed for 3–10 years.

Osteosarcomas are highly radioresistant lesions; for this reason, radiation therapy has no role in its primary management. Chemotherapy is often administered prior to definitive surgery (neoadjuvant chemotherapy). This permits an early attack on micrometastatic disease and may also shrink the tumor, facilitating a limb salvage procedure. Preoperative chemotherapy also makes detailed histologic evaluation of tumor response to the chemotherapy agents possible. If the histologic response is poor (> 10% viable tumor tissue), postoperative chemotherapy can be changed accordingly but a recently completed COG Group study showed increased toxicity with no additional benefit. Chemotherapy may be administered intra-arterially or intravenously, although the benefits of intra-arterial chemotherapy are disputed. Agents having efficacy in the treatment of osteosarcoma include doxorubicin, cisplatin, high-dose methotrexate, ifosfamide, and etoposide.

Definitive cure requires en bloc surgical resection of the tumor with a margin of uninvolved tissue. Amputation, limb salvage, and rotationplasty (Van Ness rotation) are equally effective in achieving local control of osteosarcoma. Contraindications to limb-sparing surgery include major involvement of the neurovascular bundle by tumor; immature skeletal age, particularly for lower extremity tumors; infection in the region of the tumor; inappropriate biopsy

site; and extensive muscle involvement that would result in a poor functional outcome.

Postsurgical chemotherapy is generally continued until the patient has received 1 year of treatment. Relapses are unusual beyond 3 years, but late relapses do occur. Histologic response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy is an excellent predictor of outcome. Patients with localized disease having 90% or greater tumor necrosis have a 70%–75% long-term, disease-free survival rate. Other favorable prognostic factors include distal skeletal lesions, longer duration of symptoms, age older than 20 years, female gender, and near-diploid tumor DNA index. Patients with metastatic disease at diagnosis or multifocal bone lesions do not fair well, despite advances in chemotherapy and surgical techniques.

2. Ewing Sarcoma

» General Considerations

Ewing sarcoma accounts for only 30% of primary malignant bone tumors; fewer than 200 new cases occur each year in the United States. It is a disease primarily of white males, almost never affects blacks, and occurs mostly in the second decade of life. Ewing sarcoma is considered a "small, round, blue cell" malignancy. The differential diagnosis includes rhabdomyosarcoma, lymphoma, and neuroblastoma. Although most commonly a tumor of bone, it may also occur in soft tissue (extraosseous Ewing sarcoma or peripheral neuroectodermal tumor [PNET]).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Pain at the site of the primary tumor is the most common presenting sign, with or without swelling and erythema. No specific laboratory findings are characteristic of Ewing sarcoma, but an elevated LDH may be present and is of prognostic significance. Associated symptoms include fevers and weight loss.

B. Imaging and Staging

The radiographic appearance of Ewing sarcoma overlaps with osteosarcoma, although Ewing sarcoma usually involves the diaphyses of long bones. The central axial skeleton gives rise to 40% of Ewing tumors. Evaluation of a patient diagnosed as having Ewing sarcoma should include an MRI of the primary lesion to define the extent of local disease as precisely as possible. This is imperative for planning future surgical procedures or radiation therapy. Metastatic disease is present in 25% of patients at diagnosis. The lung (38%), bone (particularly the spine) (31%), and the bone marrow (11%) are the most common sites for metastasis. CT scan of the chest, bone scan, and bilateral bone marrow aspirates and biopsies are all essential to the staging workup. PET-CT may be a consideration in helping to monitor therapy response.

A biopsy is essential in establishing the diagnosis. Histologically, Ewing sarcoma consists of sheets of undifferentiated cells with hyperchromatic nuclei, well-defined cell borders, and scanty cytoplasm. Necrosis is common. Electron microscopy, immunocytochemistry, and cytogenetics may be necessary to confirm the diagnosis. A generous tissue biopsy specimen is often necessary for diagnosis but should not delay starting chemotherapy.

A consistent cytogenetic abnormality, t(11;22), has been identified in Ewing sarcoma and PNET and is present in 85%–90% of tumors. These tumors also express the protooncogene c-myc, which may be helpful in differentiating Ewing sarcoma from neuroblastoma, in which c-myc is not expressed.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Therapy usually commences with the administration of chemotherapy after biopsy and is followed by local control measures. Depending on many factors, including the primary site of the tumor and the response to chemotherapy, local control can be achieved by surgery, radiation therapy, or a combination of these methods. Following local control, chemotherapy continues for approximately 6 months. Effective treatment for Ewing sarcoma uses combinations of dactinomycin, vincristine, doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide, etoposide, and ifosfamide. Recent data showed that giving chemotherapy every 2 weeks, rather than every 3 weeks, improved the EFS for localized Ewing sarcoma. The current COG nonmetastatic Ewing sarcoma study is looking at whether the addition of topotecan to the present five-drug regimen will improve survival.

Patients with small localized primary tumors have a 70%–75% long-term, disease-free survival rate. For patients with metastatic disease survival is poor. Autologous HSCT may be considered as part of the treatment of these high-risk patients. Patients with pelvic tumors have an intermediate prognosis of around 50% long-term, disease-free survival.

Geller DS, Gorlick R: Osteosarcoma: a review of diagnosis, management and treatment strategies. Clin Adv Hematol Oncol 2010;8(10):705 [PMID: 2137869].

Grimer RJ et al: Surgical options for children with osteosarcoma. Lancet Oncol 2005;6:85 [PMID: 15683817].

Meyer JS et al: Imaging guidelines for children with Ewing sarcoma and osteosarcoma: a report from the Children's Oncology Group Bone Tumor Committee. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2008;51(2):163 [PMID: 18454470].

Moore DD et al: Ewing sarcoma of bone. Cancer Treat Res 2014;162:93 [PMID: 25070232].

Womer R et al: Randomized controlled trial of interval-compressed chemotherapy for the treatment of localized Ewing sarcoma: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 2012;30(33):4148 [PMID: 23091096].

RHABDOMYOSARCOMA

» General Considerations

Rhabdomyosarcoma is the most common soft tissue sarcoma occurring in childhood and accounts for 10% of solid tumors in childhood. The peak incidence occurs at ages 2–5 years; 70% of children are diagnosed before age 10 years. A second smaller peak is seen in adolescents with extremity tumors. Males are affected more commonly than females.

Rhabdomyosarcoma can occur anywhere in the body. When rhabdomyosarcoma imitates striated muscle and cross-striations are seen by light microscopy, the diagnosis is straightforward. Immunohistochemistry, electron microscopy, or chromosomal analysis is sometimes necessary to make the diagnosis. Rhabdomyosarcoma is further classified into subtypes based on pathologic features: embryonal (60%–80%), of which botryoid is a variant; alveolar (~15%–20%); undifferentiated sarcoma (8%); pleomorphic, which is seen in adults (1%); and other (11%). These subtypes occur in characteristic locations and have different metastatic potentials and outcomes.

Although the pathogenesis of rhabdomyosarcoma is unknown, in rare cases a genetic predisposition has been determined. Li-Fraumeni syndrome is an inherited mutation of the p53 tumor suppressor gene that results in a high risk of bone and soft tissue sarcomas in childhood plus breast cancer and other malignant neoplasms before age 45 years. Two characteristic chromosomal translocations [t(2;13) and t(1;13)] have been described in alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma. The t(1;13) translocation appears to be a favorable prognostic feature in patients with metastatic alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma, whereas t(2;13) is associated with poor outcomes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The presenting symptoms and signs of rhabdomyosarcoma result from disturbances of normal body function due to tumor growth (Table 31–9). For example, patients with orbital rhabdomyosarcoma present with proptosis, whereas patients with rhabdomyosarcoma of the bladder can present with hematuria, urinary obstruction, or a pelvic mass.

B. Imaging

A plain radiograph and a CT and/or MRI scan should be obtained to determine the extent of the primary tumor and to assess regional lymph nodes. A chest CT scan is obtained to rule out pulmonary metastasis, the most common site of metastatic disease at diagnosis. A skeletal survey and a bone scan are obtained to determine whether bony metastases are present. Bilateral bone marrow biopsies and aspirates are obtained to rule out bone marrow infiltration. Additional studies may be warranted in certain sites. For example, in parameningeal primary tumors, a lumbar puncture is performed to evaluate CSF for tumor cells.

» Treatment

Optimal management and treatment of rhabdomyosarcoma is complex and requires combined modality therapy. When feasible, the tumor should be excised, but this is not always possible because of the site of origin and size of tumor. When only partial tumor resection is feasible, the operative procedure is usually limited to biopsy and sampling of lymph nodes. Debulking of unresectable tumor may

Table 31–9. Characteristics of rhabdomyosarcoma.

Primary Site	Frequency (%)	Symptoms and Signs	Predominant Pathologic Subtype
Head and neck	**35**		Embryonal
Orbit	9	Proptosis	
Parameningeal	16	Cranial nerve palsies; aural or sinus obstruction with or without drainage	
Other	10	Painless, progressively enlarging mass	
Genitourinary	**22**		Embryonal (botryoid variant in bladder and vagina)
Bladder and prostate	13	Hematuria, urinary obstruction	
Vagina and uterus	2	Pelvic mass, vaginal discharge	
Paratesticular	7	Painless mass	
Extremities	**18**	Adolescents, swelling of affected body part	Alveolar (50%), undifferentiated
Other	25	Mass	Alveolar, undifferentiated

improve outcomes by decreasing the assigned stage/group. Chemotherapy can often convert an inoperable tumor to a resectable one. A second-look procedure to remove residual disease and confirm the clinical response to chemotherapy and radiation therapy is generally performed at about week 20 of therapy.

Radiation therapy is an effective method of local tumor control for both microscopic and gross residual disease. It is generally administered to all patients, the only exception being those with a localized tumor that has been completely resected. All patients with rhabdomyosarcoma receive chemotherapy, even when the tumor is fully resected at diagnosis. The exact regimen and duration of chemotherapy are determined by primary site, group, and tumor node metastasis classification. Vincristine, dactinomycin, and cyclophosphamide have shown the greatest efficacy in the treatment of rhabdomyosarcoma. Irinotecan is now being studied in upfront treatment of metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma based on good responses in relapsed disease. Newer treatment strategies for high-risk patients include different drug combinations, including the use of temozolomide and cixutumumab (monoclonal antibody against IGF-IR) in a current COG randomized trial.

» Prognosis

The age of the patient, the extent of tumor at diagnosis, the primary site, the pathologic subtype, and the response to treatment all influence the long-term, disease-free survival rate from the time of diagnosis. Children with localized disease at diagnosis have a 70%–75% 3-year disease-free survival rate, whereas children with metastatic disease at presentation have a worse outcome (39% 3-year disease-free survival).

Hawkins DS et al: What is new in the biology and treatment of pediatric rhabdomyosarcoma? Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(1):50 [PMID: 24326270].

Hayes-Jordan A, Andrassy R: Rhabdomyosarcoma in children. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009;21(3):373 [PMID: 19448544].

Joshi D et al: Age is an independent prognostic factor in rhabdomyosarcoma: a report from the Soft Tissue Sarcoma Committee of the Children's Oncology Group. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2004;42:64 [PMID: 14752797].

National Cancer Institute: http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/types/childrhabdomyosarcoma.

Raney RB et al: Results of treatment of fifty-six patients with localized retroperitoneal and pelvic rhabdomyosarcoma: a report from the Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study-IV, 1991–1997. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2004;42:618 [PMID: 15127417].

Raney RB et al: Rhabdomyosarcoma and undifferentiated sarcoma in the first two decades of life: a selective review of Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group experience and rational for Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study V. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2001;23(4):215 [PMID: 11846299].

Rodeberg D, Paidas C: Childhood rhabdomyosarcoma. Semin Pediatr Surg 2006;15(1):57 [PMID: 16458847].

RETINOBLASTOMA

» General Considerations

Retinoblastoma is a neuroectodermal malignancy arising from embryonic retinal cells that accounts for 3% of malignant disease in children younger than 15 years. It is the most common intraocular tumor in pediatric patients and causes 5% of cases of childhood blindness. In the United States, 200–300 new cases occur per year. This is a malignancy of early childhood, with 90% of the tumors diagnosed before age 5 years. Bilateral involvement occurs in 20%–30% of children and typically is diagnosed at a younger age (median age 14 months) than unilateral disease (median age 23 months).

Retinoblastoma is the prototype of hereditary cancers due to a mutation in the retinoblastoma gene (RB1), which is located on the long arm of chromosome 13 (13q14). This gene is a tumor-suppressor gene that normally controls cellular growth. When the gene is inactivated, as in retinoblastoma, cellular growth is uncontrolled. Uncontrolled cell growth leads to tumor formation. Inactivation of both RB1 alleles within the same cell is required for tumor formation.

Retinoblastoma is known to arise in heritable and nonheritable forms. Based on the different clinical characteristics of the two forms, Knudson proposed a "two-hit" hypothesis for retinoblastoma tumor development. He postulated that two independent events were necessary for a cell to acquire tumor potential. Mutations at the RB1 locus can be inherited or arise spontaneously. In heritable cases, the first mutation arises during gametogenesis, either spontaneously (90%) or through transmission from a parent (10%). This mutation is present in every retinal cell and in all other somatic and germ cells. Ninety percent of persons who carry this germline mutation will develop retinoblastoma. For tumor formation, the loss of the second RB1 allele within a cell must occur; loss of only one allele is insufficient for tumor formation. The second mutation occurs in a somatic (retinal) cell. In nonheritable cases (60%), both mutations arise in a somatic cell after gametogenesis has taken place.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Children with retinoblastoma generally come to medical attention while the tumor is still confined to the globe. Although present at birth, retinoblastoma is not usually detected until it has grown to a considerable size. Leukocoria (white pupillary reflex) is the most common sign (found in 60% of patients). Parents may note an unusual appearance of the eye or asymmetry of the eyes in a photograph. The differential diagnosis of leukocoria includes Toxocara canis granuloma, astrocytic hamartoma, retinopathy of prematurity, Coats disease, and persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous. Strabismus (in 20% of patients) is seen when the tumor

involves the macula and central vision is lost. Rarely (in 7% of patients), a painful red eye with glaucoma, a hyphema, or proptosis is the initial manifestation. A single focus or multiple foci of tumor may be seen in one or both eyes at diagnosis. Bilateral involvement occurs in 20%–30% of children.

B. Diagnostic Evaluation

Suspected retinoblastoma requires a detailed ophthalmologic examination under general anesthesia. An ophthalmologist makes the diagnosis of retinoblastoma by the appearance of the tumor within the eye without pathologic confirmation. A white to creamy pink mass protruding into the vitreous matter suggests the diagnosis; intraocular calcifications and vitreous seeding are virtually pathognomonic of retinoblastoma. A CT scan of the orbits and MRI of the orbits/brain detects intraocular calcification, evaluates the optic nerve for tumor infiltration, and detects extraocular extension of tumor. A single focus or multiple foci of tumor may be seen in one or both eyes at diagnosis. Metastatic disease of the marrow and meninges can be ruled out with bilateral bone marrow aspirates and biopsies plus CSF cytology.

» Treatment

Each eye is treated according to the potential for useful vision, and every attempt is made to preserve vision. The choice of therapy depends on the size, location, and number of intraocular lesions. Absolute indications for enucleation include no vision, neovascular glaucoma, inability to examine the treated eye, and inability to control tumor growth with conservative treatment. External beam irradiation has been the mainstay of therapy. A total dose of 35–45 Gy is administered. However, many centers are investigating the role of systemic chemotherapy for the treatment of retinoblastoma confined to the globe and the elimination of external beam radiotherapy is now accepted. Cryotherapy, photocoagulation, and radioactive plaques can be used for local tumor control. Patients with metastatic disease receive chemotherapy.

Children with retinoblastoma confined to the retina (whether unilateral or bilateral) have an excellent prognosis, with 5-year survival rates greater than 90%. Mortality is correlated directly with extent of optic nerve involvement, orbital extension of tumor, and massive choroid invasion. Patients who have disease in the optic nerve beyond the lamina cribrosa have a 5-year survival rate of only 40%. Patients with meningeal or metastatic spread rarely survive, although intensive chemotherapy and autologous HSCT have produced long-term survivors.

Patients with the germline mutation (heritable form) have a significant risk of developing second primary tumors. Osteosarcomas account for 40% of such tumors. Second malignant neoplasms occur in both patients who have and those who have not received radiation therapy. The 30-year cumulative incidence for a second neoplasm is 35% in patients who received radiation therapy and 6% in those who did not receive radiation therapy. The risk continues to increase over time. Although radiation contributes to the risk, it is the presence of the retinoblastoma gene itself that is responsible for the development of nonocular tumors in these patients.

Abramson DH, Sxhefler AC: Update on retinoblastoma. Retina 2004;24:828 [PMID: 15579980].

Canty CA: Retinoblastoma: an overview for advanced practice nurses. J Am Acad Nurse Pract 2009;21(3):149 [PMID: 19302690].

Kiss S, Leiderman YI, Mukai S: Diagnosis, classification and treatment of retinoblastoma. Int Ophthalmol Clin 2008;48(2):135 [PMID: 18427266].

Lin P, O'Brien JM: Frontiers in the management of retinoblastoma. Am J Ophthalmol 2009;148(2):192 [PMID: 19477707].

Rodriguez-Galindo C et al: Treatment of intraocular retinoblastoma with vincristine and carboplatin. J Clin Oncol 2003;15:2019 [PMID: 12743157].

Sastre X et al: Proceedings of the consensus meetings from the International Retinoblastoma Staging Working Group on the pathology guidelines for the examination of enucleated eyes and evaluation of prognostic risk factors in retinoblastoma. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2009;133(8):1199 [PMID: 19653709].

Shields C et al: Continuing challenges in the management of retinoblastoma with chemotherapy. Retina 2004;24:849 [PMID: 15579981].

HEPATIC TUMORS (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 22)

Two-thirds of liver masses found in childhood are malignant. Ninety percent of hepatic malignancies are either hepatoblastoma or hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatoblastoma accounts for the vast majority of liver tumors in children younger than 5 years, hepatocellular carcinoma for the majority in children aged 15–19 years. The features of these hepatic malignancies are compared in Table 31–10. Of the benign tumors, 60% are hamartomas or vascular tumors such as hemangiomas. There is mounting evidence for a strong association between prematurity and the risk of hepatoblastoma.

Children with hepatic tumors usually come to medical attention because of an enlarging abdomen. Approximately 10% of hepatoblastomas are first discovered on routine examination. Anorexia, weight loss, vomiting, and abdominal pain are associated more commonly with hepatocellular carcinoma. Serum α-fetoprotein is often elevated and is an excellent marker for response to treatment.

Imaging studies should include abdominal ultrasound, CT scan, or MRI. Malignant tumors have a diffuse hyperechoic pattern on ultrasonography, whereas benign tumors are usually poorly echoic. Vascular lesions contain areas with varying degrees of echogenicity. Ultrasound is also useful for imaging the hepatic veins, portal veins, and inferior vena

Table 31–10. Comparison of hepatoblastoma and hepatocellular carcinoma in childhood.

	Hepatoblastoma	Hepatocellular Carcinoma
Median age at presentation	1 y (0–3 y)	12 y (5–18 y)
Male-female ratio	1.7:1	1.4:1
Associated conditions	Hemihypertrophy, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, prematurity, Gardner syndrome	Hepatitis B virus infection, hereditary tyrosinemia, biliary cirrhosis, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency
Pathologic features	Fetal or embryonal cells; mesenchymal component (30%)	Large pleomorphic tumor cells and tumor giant cells
Solitary hepatic lesion	80%	20%–50%
Unique features at diagnosis	Osteopenia (20%–30%), isosexual precocity (3%)	Hemoperitoneum, polycythemia
Laboratory features		
Hyperbilirubinemia	5%	25%
Elevated AFP	> 90%	50%
Abnormal liver function tests	15%–30%	> 30%–50%

AFP, α-fetoprotein.

cava. CT scanning and, in particular, MRI are important for defining the extent of tumor within the liver. CT scanning of the chest should be obtained to evaluate for metastatic spread. Because bone marrow involvement is extremely rare, bone marrow aspirates and biopsies are not indicated.

The prognosis for children with hepatic malignancies depends on the tumor type and the resectability of the tumor. Complete resectability is essential for survival. Chemotherapy can decrease the size of most hepatoblastomas. Following biopsy of the lesion, neoadjuvant chemotherapy is administered prior to attempting complete surgical resection. Monitoring the rate of decline of the α-fetoprotein levels can help indicate favorable versus poor responders to chemotherapy. Chemotherapy can often convert an inoperable tumor to a completely resectable one and can also eradicate metastatic disease. Approximately 50%–60% of hepatoblastomas are fully resectable, following preoperative chemotherapy, whereas only one-third of hepatocellular carcinomas can be completely removed. Even with complete resection, only one-third of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma are long-term survivors. A recent CCG/Pediatric Oncology Group trial has shown cisplatin, fluorouracil, and vincristine to be as effective as but less toxic than cisplatin and doxorubicin in treating hepatoblastoma. The current open COG trial is using cisplatin, fluorouracil, vincristine, and doxorubicin along with the cardioprotectant dexrazoxane in intermediate-risk patients with the addition of temsirolimus in high-risk patients. Other drug combinations that have demonstrated benefit include carboplatin plus etoposide and doxorubicin plus ifosfamide. Liver transplantation has been shown to be a successful surgical option in patients whose tumors are considered to be unresectable.

Katzenstein HM et al: Hepatocellular carcinoma in children and adolescents: results from the Pediatric Oncology Group and the Children's Cancer Group intergroup study. J Clin Oncol 2002;12:2789 [PMID: 12065555].

Katzenstein HM et al: Treatment of unresectable and metastatic hepatoblastoma: a Pediatric Oncology Group Phase II study. J Clin Oncol 2002;20:3438 [PMID: 12177104].

Khaden S et al: Role of liver transplantation in the management of hepatoblastoma in the pediatric population. World J Transplant 2014;4(4):294 [PMID: 25540737].

Malogolowkin MH et al: Intensified platinum therapy is an ineffective strategy for improving outcome in pediatric patients with advanced hepatoblastoma. J Clin Oncol 2006;24:2879 [PMID: 16782927].

Spector LG et al: Cancer risk among children with very low birth weights. Pediatrics 2009:124(1):96 [PMID: 19564288].

Zsiros J et al: Successful treatment of childhood high-risk hepatoblastoma with dose-intensive multiagent chemotherapy and surgery: final results of the SIOPEL-3HR study. J Clin Oncol 2010:28(15):2584 [PMID: 20406943].

LANGERHANS CELL HISTIOCYTOSIS

» General Considerations

Langerhans cell histiocytosis (LCH; formerly called histiocytosis X) is a rare and poorly understood spectrum of disorders. It can occur as an isolated lesion or as widespread systemic disease involving virtually any body site.

Eosinophilic granuloma, Hand-Schüller-Christian disease, and Letterer-Siwe disease are all syndromes encompassed by this disorder. LCH is not a true malignancy, but instead is a clonal, reactive proliferation of normal histiocytic cells, perhaps resulting from an immunoregulatory defect.

The distinctive pathologic feature is proliferation of histiocytic cells beyond what would be seen in a normal inflammatory process. Langerhans histiocytes have typical features: on light microscopy, the nuclei are deeply indented (coffee bean–shaped) and elongated, and the cytoplasm is pale, distinct, and abundant. Additional diagnostic characteristics include Birbeck granules on electron microscopy, expression of CD1 on the cell surface, and positive immunostaining for S-100 protein.

» Clinical Findings

Because LCH encompasses a broad spectrum of diseases; its presentation can be variable, from a single asymptomatic lesion to widely disseminated disease. Skin and bone lesions are the most frequent sites of disease.

Patients with localized disease present primarily with lesions limited to bone. Occasionally found incidentally on radiographs obtained for other reasons, these lesions are well-demarcated and frequently found in the skull, clavicles, ribs, and vertebrae. These lesions can be painful. Patients can also present with localized disease of the skin, often as a diaper rash that does not resolve.

Bony lesions, fever, weight loss, otitis media, exophthalmos, and diabetes insipidus (in 10%–15% of patients) occur in a fewer number of children with the disease. Children with this multifocal disease, formerly called Hand-Schüller-Christian disease, commonly present with generalized symptoms and organ dysfunction, mainly of the liver and lungs.

Children with disseminated LCH (formerly called Letterer-Siwe disease) typically present before age 2 years with a seborrheic skin rash, fever, weight loss, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, and hematologic abnormalities.

Diagnosis is made with biopsy of the involved organ. The workup should include a CBC, liver and kidney function tests, a skeletal survey or technetium bone scan, and a urinalysis with specific gravity to rule out diabetes insipidus.

» Treatment & Prognosis

The outcome in LCH is extremely variable and may spontaneously resolve. Isolated lesions may need no therapy at all. Intralesional corticosteroids, curettage, and low-dose radiation therapy are useful local treatment measures for symptomatic focal lesions. Patients with localized disease have an excellent prognosis, nearing 100%.

Multifocal disease is often treated with systemic chemotherapy. Prednisone and vinblastine are used for multifocal disease or disease involving other organs such as liver, spleen, hematopoietic system. The agents are given repeatedly or continuously until lesions heal; the drugs can then be reduced and finally stopped. A common therapeutic protocol for LCH is LCH III. Other active chemotherapeutic agents include 6-mercaptopurine, methotrexate, and etoposide. HSCT can also be used with some success in refractory cases. "High-risk" LCH has approximately 85% 5-year overall survival.

Multifocal disease is less predictable, but most cases resolve without sequelae. Age, degree of organ involvement, and response to therapy are the most important prognostic factors. Infants with disseminated disease tend to do poorly, with mortality rates approaching 50%. New treatment approaches for patients who do not respond to conventional chemotherapy have been evaluated in small studies. With some success, 2-Chlorodeoxyadenosine (2-CDA) has been used. Therapeutic strategies targeting the dysregulated immune response using interferon-α or etanercept (anti–tumor necrosis factor-α) have also been reported.

Delprat C, Arico M: Blood spotlight on Langerhans cell histiocytosis. Blood 2014;124(6):867 [PMID: 24894775].

Gasent Blesa JM et al: Langerhans cell histiocytosis. Clin Transl Oncol 2008;10(11):688 [PMID: 19015065].

Henter JI et al: Successful treatment of Langerhans'-cell histiocytosis with etanercept. N Engl J Med 2001;345:1577 [PMID: 11794238].

Jubran RF et al: Predictors of outcome in children with Langerhans cell histiocytosis. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2005;45:37 [PMID: 15768381].

Rodriquez-Galindo C et al: Treatment of children with Langerhans cell histiocytosis with 2-chlorodeoxyadenosine. Am J Hematol 2002;69:179 [PMID: 11891804].

Satter EK, High WA: Langerhans cell histiocytosis: a review of the current recommendations of the Histiocyte Society. Pediatr Dermatol 2008;25(3):291 [PMID: 18577030].

Vaiselbuhh SR, et al: Updates on histiocytic disorders. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2014;61(7):1329 [PMID: 24610771].

Weitzman S, Egeler RM: Langerhans cell histiocytosis: update for the pediatrician. Curr Opin Pediatr 2008;20(1):23 [PMID: 18197035]. www.histiocytesociety.org.

HEMATOPOIETIC STEM CELL TRANSPLANT

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) is considered standard therapy for a variety of malignancies, hematologic disorders (aplastic anemia, hemoglobinopathies), storage diseases, and severe immunodeficiencies. In most instances, high doses of chemotherapy and/or radiation are given to the HSCT patient for myeloablation prior to infusion of stem cells that rescue hematopoietic and lymphoid function.

HSCT can be divided into two main categories: autologous, infusion of the patient's own hematopoietic stem cells, or allogeneic, infusion of another individual's (donor) hematopoietic stem cells. Stem cells can be obtained from bone marrow, peripheral blood, or umbilical cord blood.

The rationale for HSCT in patients with nonmalignant disorders is to use the transplanted donor stem cells to replace the absent or defective hematopoietic or lymphoid elements of the recipient. For children with oncologic disorders, the rationale for HSCT is multifaceted. High doses of chemotherapy and/or radiation are used to optimize tumor cell kill by overcoming cancer cell resistance. Additionally, in allogeneic HSCT (stem cells from another person), the donor lymphoid cells may recognize the cancer as foreign and provide an immunologic attack on the malignancy, a concept known as the graft-versus-tumor (GVT) effect.

Autologous transplantation, often referred to as "stem cell rescue," is restricted to the treatment of certain pediatric malignancies: neuroblastoma, lymphoma, selected brain tumors, germ cell tumors, and Ewing sarcoma. Relapse of the malignancy continues to be the greatest obstacle to successful autologous transplantation, likely due to limitations in achieving systemic cancer control prior to transplant, resistance to pretransplant chemotherapy and/or radiation, and lack of GVT effect.

Allogeneic transplantation rescues hematopoiesis with stem cells from another person, either within the immediate family or an unrelated individual from a volunteer bank. Allogeneic HSCT recipients require potent pre-HSCT immunosuppressive treatment to prevent rejection of donor cells. Posttransplant medications such as cyclosporine, tacrolimus, mycophenolate, and methotrexate are needed to reduce the risk of GVHD. The selection of a suitable donor who matches the recipient most closely at key HLA (human leukocyte antigen) loci, HLA-A, B, C, and DR, is critical, as disparities mediate graft rejection and GVHD. Every child expresses one set of paternal and one set of maternal HLA antigens. Thus, the probability of one child inheriting any specific combination and matching another full sibling for an allogeneic transplant is one in four. Large worldwide registries of unrelated bone marrow and umbilical cord blood donors have been developed; however, finding a closely matched unrelated donor can be challenging, especially for underrepresented minorities.

Supportive care in the initial weeks after transplant includes management of chemotherapy side effects, prevention and treatment of infection, nutritional support, and immunosuppressive medications to lessen the potential for development of GVHD in allogeneic HSCT recipients. Until their new donor cells engraft, patients require blood product support for several weeks following preparative therapy. These blood products should be leukocyte reduced to decrease the risk of CMV transmission and irradiated to prevent GVHD from residual lymphocytes that remain even in leukocyte-reduced blood products.

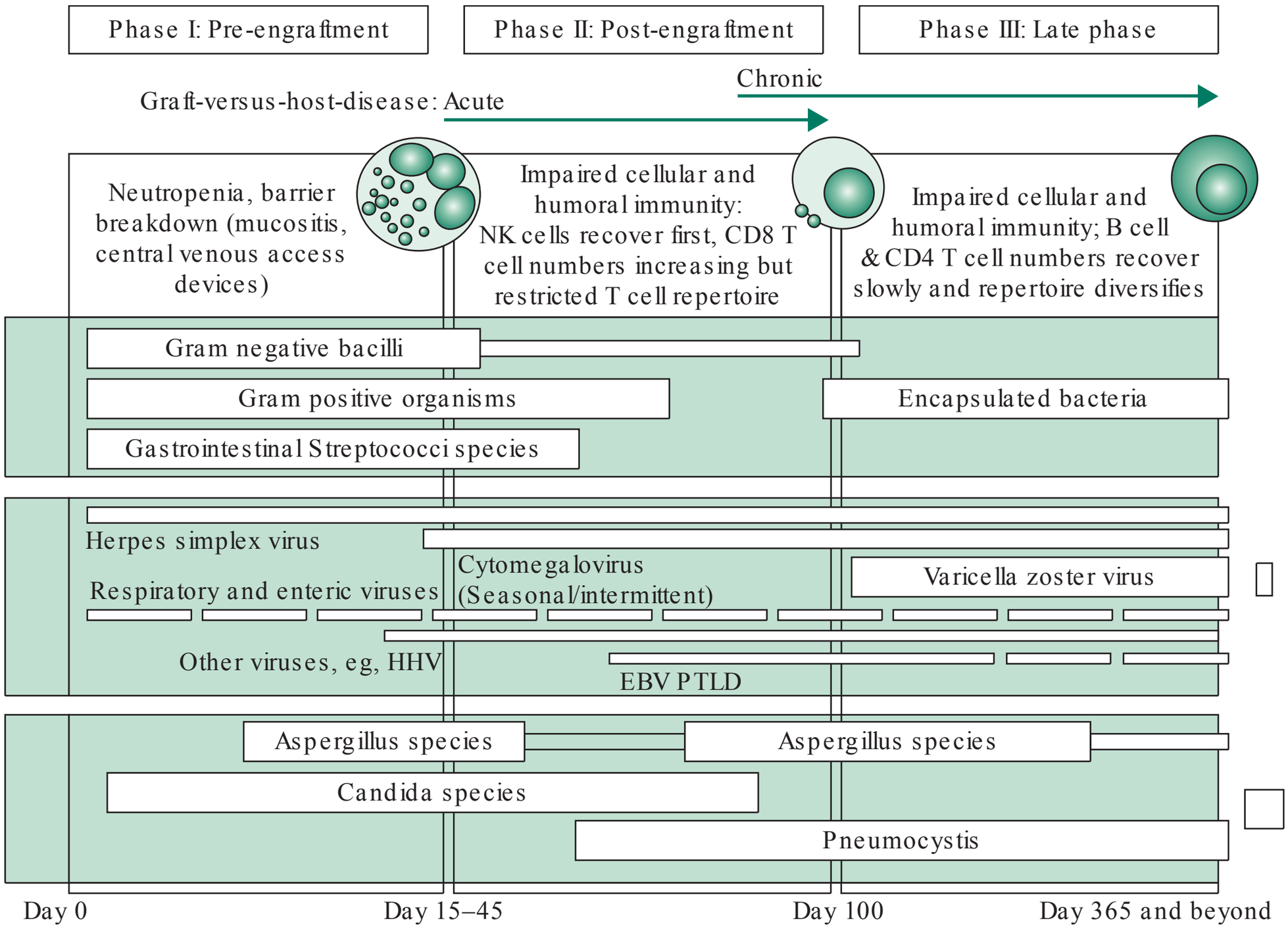
» HSCT COMPLICATIONS

HSCT patients are profoundly immunocompromised for many months following transplantation. Consequently, infections from bacteria, viruses, fungi, and protozoa can account for significant morbidity and mortality. During the early phase (0–1 month after transplant), when there is severe neutropenia and mucosal disruption, bacteria from the patient's aerodigestive tract are common culprits in bacteremia. Additionally, the presence of a central venous catheter makes gram-positive bacteremia an important consideration. Therefore, empiric or prophylactic antibiotic coverage and intravenous immune globulin supplementation are commonly used to decrease the risk of bacterial sepsis. Acyclovir prophylaxis is used to prevent the reactivation of herpes simplex virus that may occur early in up to 70% of seropositive patients, and antifungal agents are routinely used to prevent infections from Candida and Aspergillus (Figure 31–1).

In the intermediate phase (1–6 months after transplant), the HSCT patient usually has adequate neutrophil counts yet remains significantly compromised due to reduced T-lymphocyte number and function. Because of this relative T-cell defect, a child after transplant is susceptible to sudden, overwhelming illness from viral pathogens. CMV reactivation or de novo infection is relatively common and can result in retinitis, enteritis, and pneumonia. Treatment with foscarnet or ganciclovir is usually successful if CMV infection is recognized early particularly when preventive or preemptive approaches to control viremia are used. Common community-acquired viruses, such as respiratory syncytial virus, adenovirus, influenza, parainfluenza, and human metapneumovirus, can also be life threatening; therefore, prevention is critical. The use of frequent hand washing, contact restriction, and early treatment with available antiviral therapies, such as inhaled ribavirin, can be lifesaving in this population. Prophylactic administration of acyclovir helps limit reactivation of herpes simplex virus and varicella-zoster virus (shingles). Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, dapsone, atovaquone, or pentamidine reduces prophylaxis, but does not eliminate P jiroveci pneumonia.

The late phase (6–12 months after transplant) is characterized by dysfunction of the reticuloendothelial system, leading to infections from encapsulated bacteria such as pneumococcus, and ongoing inadequate lymphocyte function, resulting in poor control of new or reactivated viral infection. Patients on immunosuppressive treatment for GVHD have an increased and protracted risk of all types of infections.

GVHD occurs after allogeneic HSCT when donor lymphocytes recognize the recipient tissues as foreign and mount an immunologic attack. Despite the use of immunosuppressive agents, anti–T-cell antibodies, and T-cell depletion of the donor graft, 20%–70% of allogeneic HSCT patients



▲**Figure 31–1.** Phases of opportunistic infections among allogeneic HCT recipients. EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; HHV6, human herpesvirus 6; PTLD, posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease. (Reproduced with permission from: Tomblyn M et al: Guidelines for preventing infectious complications among hematopoietic cell transplantation recipients: a global perspective. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2009 Oct;15(10):1143–1238 [Review].)

experience some degree of acute GVHD. Factors influencing GVHD risk include the degree of HLA match, stem cell source, patient age, and donor sex. Acute GVHD generally occurs within the first 100 days after transplant but, on occasion, may occur later. Acute GVHD typically presents with a maculopapular skin rash, secretory diarrhea, and/or cholestatic jaundice. Chronic GVHD generally occurs after day 100 and may involve multiple organ systems; sclerotic skin, malabsorption, weight loss, keratoconjunctivitis sicca, oral mucositis, chronic lung disease, and cholestatic jaundice are common manifestations. Prevention and treatment of GVHD involves use of immunosuppressive agents.

Long-term follow-up of HSCT patients is essential. Patients are at risk for numerous complications, including pulmonary disease, cataracts, endocrine dysfunction affecting growth and fertility, cardiac dysfunction, avascular necrosis of bone, developmental delay, and second malignancies. Although HSCT has many challenges, it represents an important advance in curative treatment for a variety of serious pediatric illnesses.

Malhi K et al: Hematopoietic cell transplantation and cellular therapeutics in the treatment of childhood malignancies. Pediatr Clin North Am 2015 Feb;62(1):257–273 [PMID: 25435122].

Peters C et al: Stem cell source and outcome after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) in children and adolescents with acute leukemia. Pediatr Clin North Am 2010 Feb;57(1):27–46 [Review] [PMID: 20307710].

Rocha V et al: Pediatric related and unrelated cord blood transplantation for malignant diseases. Bone Marrow Transplant 2009 Nov;44(10):653–659. Epub 2009 Oct 5 [Review] [PMID: 19802021].

Shenoy S, Boelens JJ: Advances in unrelated and alternative donor hematopoietic cell transplantation for nonmalignant disorders. Curr Opin Pediatr 2015 Feb;27(1):9–17 [PMID: 25565572].

Tomblyn M et al: Guidelines for preventing infectious complications among hematopoietic cell transplantation recipients: a global perspective. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 2009 Oct;15(10):1143–1238 [Review] [PMID: 19747629].

Wilhelmsson M et al: Adverse health events and late mortality after pediatric allogeneic hematopoietic SCT-two decades of longitudinal follow-up. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015 Mar 23. Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25798676].

LATE EFFECTS OF PEDIATRIC CANCER THERAPY

Late effects of treatment by surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy have been identified in survivors of pediatric cancer. Current estimates are that 1 in every 640 adults between the ages of 20 and 39 years is a pediatric cancer survivor. Recently it was reported that the prevalence of poor health status in this group is higher among adult survivors of pediatric cancer than siblings and increases rapidly with age, particularly among female survivors. One recent study found that 60% of survivors of pediatric cancer diagnosed between 1970 and 1986 have at least one chronic condition. Virtually any organ system can demonstrate sequelae related to previous cancer therapy. This has necessitated the creation of specialized oncology clinics whose function is to identify and provide treatment to these patients.

The Childhood Cancer Survivor Study, a pediatric multiinstitutional collaborative project, was designed to investigate the various aspects of late effects of pediatric cancer therapy in a cohort of over 13,000 survivors of childhood cancer.

GROWTH COMPLICATIONS

Children who have received cranial irradiation are at highest risk of developing growth complications. Growth complications of cancer therapy in the pediatric survivor are generally secondary to direct damage to the pituitary gland, resulting in growth hormone deficiency. However, new evidence in children treated for ALL suggests that chemotherapy alone may result in an attenuation of linear growth without evidence of catch-up growth once therapy is discontinued. Up to 90% of patients who receive more than 30 Gy of radiation to the CNS will show evidence of growth hormone deficiency within 2 years. Approximately 50% of children receiving 24 Gy will have growth hormone problems. The effects of cranial irradiation appear to be age-related, with children younger than 5 years at the time of therapy being particularly vulnerable. These patients usually benefit from growth hormone therapy. Currently, there is no evidence that such therapy causes a recurrence of cancer.

Spinal irradiation inhibits vertebral body growth. In 30% of treated children, standing heights may be less than the fifth percentile. Asymmetrical exposure of the spine to radiation may result in scoliosis.

Growth should be monitored closely, particularly in young survivors of childhood cancer. Obesity may become an issue for selected survivors who are young at diagnosis and have received whole brain radiation. Follow-up studies should include height, weight, growth velocity, scoliosis examination, and, when indicated, growth hormone testing.

ENDOCRINE COMPLICATIONS

Thyroid dysfunction, manifesting as hypothyroidism, is common in children who received total body irradiation, cranial irradiation, or local radiation therapy to the neck and/or mediastinum. Particularly at risk are children with brain tumors who received more than 3000 cGy and those who received more than 4000 cGy to the neck region. The average time to develop thyroid dysfunction is 12 months after exposure, but the range is wide. Therefore, individuals at risk should be monitored yearly for at least 7 years from the completion of therapy. Although signs and symptoms of hypothyroidism may be present, most patients will have a normal thyroxine level with an elevated thyroid-stimulating hormone level. These individuals should be given thyroid hormone replacement because persistent stimulation of the thyroid from an elevated thyroid-stimulating hormone level may predispose to thyroid nodules and carcinomas. In a recent report from the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study, thyroid cancer occurred at 18 times the expected rate for the general population in pediatric cancer survivors who received radiation to the neck region. Hyperthyroidism, although rare, also occurs in patients who have received neck irradiation.

Precocious puberty, delayed puberty, and infertility are all potential consequences of cancer therapy. Precocious puberty, more common in girls, is usually a result of cranial irradiation causing premature activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis. This results in premature closure of the epiphysis and decreased adult height. Luteinizing hormone (LH) analogue and growth hormone are used to halt early puberty and facilitate continued growth.

Gonadal dysfunction in males is usually the result of radiation to the testes. Patients who receive testicular irradiation as part of their therapy for ALL, abdominal irradiation for Hodgkin disease, or total body irradiation for HSCT are at highest risk. Radiation damages both the germinal epithelium (producing azoospermia) and Leydig cells (causing low testosterone levels and delayed puberty). Alkylating agents such as ifosfamide and cyclophosphamide can also interfere with male gonadal function, resulting in oligospermia or azoospermia, low testosterone levels, and abnormal follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and LH levels. Determination of testicular size, semen analysis, and measurement of testosterone, FSH, and LH levels will help identify abnormalities in patients at risk. When therapy is expected to result in gonadal dysfunction, pretherapy sperm banking should be offered to adolescent males.

Exposure of the ovaries to abdominal radiation may result in delayed puberty with a resultant increase in FSH and LH and a decrease in estrogen. Girls receiving total body irradiation as preparation for HSCT and those receiving craniospinal irradiation are at particularly high risk for delayed puberty as well as premature menopause. In patients at high risk for development of gonadal complications, a detailed menstrual history should be obtained, and LH, FSH, and estrogen levels should be monitored if indicated.

No studies to date have confirmed an increased risk of spontaneous abortions, stillbirths, premature births,

congenital malformations, or genetic diseases in the offspring of childhood cancer survivors. Women who have received abdominal irradiation may develop uterine vascular insufficiency or fibrosis of the abdominal and pelvic musculature or uterus, and their pregnancies should be considered high risk.

CARDIOPULMONARY COMPLICATIONS

Pulmonary dysfunction generally manifests as pulmonary fibrosis. Therapy-related factors known to cause pulmonary toxicities include certain chemotherapeutic agents, such as bleomycin, the nitrosoureas, and busulfan, as well as lung or total body irradiation. Pulmonary toxicity due to chemotherapy is related to the total cumulative dose received. Pulmonary function tests in patients with therapy-induced toxicity show restrictive lung disease, with decreased carbon monoxide diffusion and small lung volumes. Individuals exposed to these risk factors should be counseled to refrain from smoking and to give proper notification of the treatment history if they should require general anesthesia.

Cardiac complications usually result from exposure to anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, and mitoxantrone), which destroy myocytes and lead to inadequate myocardial growth as the child ages, and eventually result in congestive heart failure. The incidence of anthracycline cardiomyopathy increases in a dose-dependent fashion. A recent report indicates that survivors receiving cumulative doses larger than 360 mg/m^2 were more than 40 times more likely to die of cardiac disease. In a recent study, complications from these agents appeared 6–19 years following administration of the drugs. Pregnant women who have received anthracyclines should be followed closely for signs and symptoms of congestive heart failure, as peripartum cardiomyopathy has been reported.

Radiation therapy to the mediastinal region, which is a common component of therapy for Hodgkin disease, has been linked to an increased risk of coronary artery disease; chronic restrictive pericarditis may also occur in these patients.

Current recommendations include an echocardiogram and electrocardiogram every 1–5 years, depending on the age at therapy, total cumulative dose received, and presence or absence of mediastinal irradiation. Selective monitoring with various modalities is indicated for those who were treated with anthracyclines when they were younger than 4 years or received more than 500 mg/m^2 of these drugs. Biomarkers such as cardiac troponins and brain natriuretic peptides may be useful in assessing cardiotoxicity of anthracyclines.

RENAL COMPLICATIONS

Long-term renal side effects stem from therapy with cisplatin, alkylating agents (ifosfamide and cyclophosphamide), or pelvic irradiation. Patients who have received cisplatin may develop abnormal creatinine clearance, which may or may not be accompanied by abnormal serum creatinine levels, as well as persistent tubular dysfunction with hypomagnesemia. Alkylating agents can cause hemorrhagic cystitis, which may continue after chemotherapy has been terminated and has been associated with the development of bladder carcinoma. Ifosfamide can also cause Fanconi syndrome, which may result in clinical rickets if adequate phosphate replacement is not provided. Pelvic irradiation may result in abnormal bladder function with dribbling, frequency, and enuresis.

Patients seen in long-term follow-up who have received nephrotoxic agents should be monitored with urinalysis, appropriate electrolyte profiles, and blood pressure. Urine collection for creatinine clearance or renal ultrasound may be indicated in individuals with suspected renal toxicity.

NEUROPSYCHOLOGICAL COMPLICATIONS

Pediatric cancer survivors who have received cranial irradiation for ALL or brain tumors appear to be at greatest risk for neuropsychological sequelae. The severity of cranial irradiation effects varies among individual patients and depends on the dose and dose schedule, the size and location of the radiation field, the amount of time elapsed after treatment, the child's age at therapy, and the child's gender. Girls may be more susceptible than boys to CNS toxicity because of more rapid brain growth and development during childhood.

Auditory complications can be seen in childhood cancer survivors exposed to platinum-based chemotherapy and/or temporal or posterior fossa radiation. Difficulty hearing sounds, tinnitus, or hearing loss requiring an aid have been reported.

The main effects of CNS irradiation appear to be related to attention capacities, ability with nonverbal tasks and mathematics, and short-term memory. Recent studies support the association between treatment with high-dose systemic methotrexate, triple intrathecal chemotherapy, and, more recently, dexamethasone and more significant cognitive impairment.

Additionally, pediatric cancer patients have been reported as having more behavior problems and as being less socially competent than a sibling control group. Adolescent survivors of cancer demonstrate an increased sense of physical fragility and vulnerability manifested as hypochondriasis or phobic behaviors.

A recent report from Childhood Cancer Survivor Study noted that, when compared to population norms, childhood cancer survivors and siblings report positive psychological health, good health-related quality of life, and life satisfaction. There are, however, subgroups that could be targeted for intervention.

SECOND MALIGNANCIES

Approximately 3%–12% of children receiving cancer treatment will develop a new cancer within 20 years of their

first diagnosis. This is a 10-fold increased incidence when compared with age-matched control subjects. Particular risk factors include exposure to alkylating agents, epipodophyllotoxins (etoposide), and radiation therapy, primary diagnosis of retinoblastoma or Hodgkin disease, or the presence of an inherited genetic susceptibility syndrome (Li-Fraumeni syndrome or NF). In a recent report, the cumulative estimated incidence of second malignant neoplasms for the cohort of the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study was 3.2% at 20 years from diagnosis.

Second hematopoietic malignancies (acute myelogenous leukemia) occur as a result of therapy with epipodophyllotoxins or alkylating agents. The schedule of drug administration (etoposide) and the total dose may be related to the development of this secondary leukemia.

Children receiving radiation therapy are at risk for developing second malignancies, such as sarcomas, carcinomas, or brain tumors, in the field of radiation. A recent report examining the incidence of second neoplasms in a cohort of pediatric Hodgkin disease patients showed the cumulative risk of a second neoplasm to be as high as 8% at 15 years from diagnosis. The most common solid tumor was breast cancer (the majority located within the radiation field) followed by thyroid cancer. Girls aged 10–16 years when they received radiation therapy were at highest risk and had an actuarial incidence that approached 35% by age 40 years. Secondary gastrointestinal cancer is also increased in pediatric cancer survivors and is related to radiation exposure as well as to certain types of chemotherapeutic agents (procarbazine, platinums).

Chow EJ et al: Decreased adult height in survivors of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a report from the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study. J Pediatr 2007;150:370 [PMID: 17382112].

Green DM et al: Fertility of female survivors of childhood cancer: a report from the childhood cancer survivor study. J Clin Oncol 2009;27:2677 [PMID: 19364965].

Green DM et al: Risk factors for obesity in adult survivors of childhood cancer: a report from the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study. J Clin Oncol 2012:30(3):246 [PMID: 22184380].

Henderson TO et al: Secondary gastrointestinal cancer in childhood cancer survivors: a cohort study. Ann Intern Med 2012;156(11):757 [PMID: 22665813].

Hudson MM et al: Age-dependent changes in health status in the Childhood Cancer Survivor cohort. J Clin Oncol 2005;33(5):479 [PMID: 25547510].

Oeffinger KC et al: Chronic health conditions in adult survivors of childhood cancer. N Engl J Med 2006;355:1572 [PMID: 17035650].

Schultz KA et al: Behavioral and social outcomes in adolescent survivors of childhood cancer: a report from the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study. J Clin Oncol 2007;25:3649 [PMID: 17704415].

Trachtenberg BH et al: Anthracycline-associated cardiotoxicity in survivors of childhood cancer. Pediatr Cardiol 2011;32:342 [PMID: 21221562].

Whelan K et al: Auditory complications in childhood cancer survivors: a report from the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study. Pediatr Blood Cancer 2011;57:126 [PMID: 21328523].

Zeltzer LK et al: Psychological outcomes and health-related quality of life in adult childhood cancer survivors: a report from the childhood cancer survivor study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2008;17:435 [PMID: 18268128].

32 Pain Management & Pediatric Palliative & End-of-Life Care

Brian S. Greffe, MD
Jeffrey L. Galinkin, MD, FAAP
Nancy A. King, MSN, RN, CPNP

Children experience pain to at least the same level as adults. Multiple studies have shown that neonates and infants perceive pain and have memory of these painful experiences. Frequently, children are underprescribed and underdosed for opioid and nonopioid analgesics due to excessive concerns of respiratory depression and/or poor understanding of the need for pain medications in children. Few data are available to guide the dosing of many pain medications and the majority of pain medications available on the market today are unlabeled for use in pediatric patients.

Taddio A, Katz J: The effects of early pain experience in neonates on pain responses in infancy and childhood. Pediatr Drugs 2005;7:245–257 [PMID: 16118561].

PAIN ASSESSMENT

Standardizing pain measurements require the use of appropriate pain scales. At most institutions, pain scales are stratified by age (Table 32–1) and are used throughout the institution from operating room to medical floor to clinic, creating a common language around a patient's pain. Pain assessment by scales has become the "5th vital sign" in hospital settings and is documented at least as frequently as heart rate and blood pressure at many pediatric centers around the world. There are many pain scales available, all of which have advantages and disadvantages (e.g., Figures 32–1 and 32–2, and Table 32–2). It is less important what type of scale is used, but that they are used on a consistent basis.

Special Populations

Noncommunicative patients such as neonates and the cognitively impaired are often difficult to assess for pain. For these patients using an appropriate assessment tool (see Table 32–1) on a frequent basis (every 1–2 hours) is essential in ensuring adequate pain control. For these populations, increasing pain score trends are often a sign of discomfort.

Bieri D et al: The Faces Pain Scale for the self-assessment of the severity of pain experienced by children: development, initial validation, and preliminary investigation for ratio scale properties. Pain 1990;41:139–150 [PMID: 2367140].
Merkel SI et al: The FLACC: a behavioral scale for scoring post-operative pain in young children. Pediatr Nurs 1997;23:293–297 [PMID: 9220806].
Wong DL, Baker CM: Smiling faces as anchor for pain intensity scales. Pain 2001;89:295–300 [PMID: 11291631].

ACUTE PAIN

» Definition Etiology

Acute pain is caused by an identifiable source. In most cases, it is self-limiting and treatment is a reflection of severity and type of injury. In children, the majority of acute pain is caused by trauma or, if in a hospital setting, an iatrogenic source such as surgery.

» Treatment

Treatment of acute pain is dependent on the disposition of the individual patient. For outpatient care the mainstay of treatment is nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (Table 32–3). Acetaminophen is the most commonly used NSAID. Acetaminophen is administered via the oral or rectal routes. Acetaminophen is more predictable in its effects as an oral dose. It has also been found that round-the-clock administration (oral 10–15 mg/kg, rectal 20 mg/kg) is better than PRN dosing for both minor pain or as an adjunct for major pain. The toxicity of acetaminophen is low in clinically used doses. However, the use of acetaminophen combined with many over-the-counter and prescription combination products has been a frequent cause of toxicity. Liver damage or failure can occur with doses exceeding 200 mg/kg/d. Other oral analgesics available in suspension are ibuprofen (10–15 mg/kg) and naproxen (10–20 mg/kg).

Table 32–1. Pain scales—description and age-appropriate use.

Name of Scale	Type	Description	Age Group
Numeric	Self-report	Verbal 0–10 scale; 0 = no pain, 10 = worst pain you could ever imagine	Children who understand the concept of numbers, rank, and order; approximately > 8 y
Bieri and Wong-Baker scales	Self-report	6 faces that range from no pain to the worst pain you can imagine	Younger children who have difficulty with numeric scale; cognitive age 3–7 y
FLACC	Behavioral observer	5 categories: face, legs, activity, cry, and consolability; range of total score is 0–10; score ≤ 7 is severe pain. Figure 32–1 and 32–2 and Table 32–2	Nonverbal children > 1 y
CRIES, NIPS, PIPP	Behavioral observer	Rates a set of standard criteria and gives a score	Nonverbal infant < 1 y

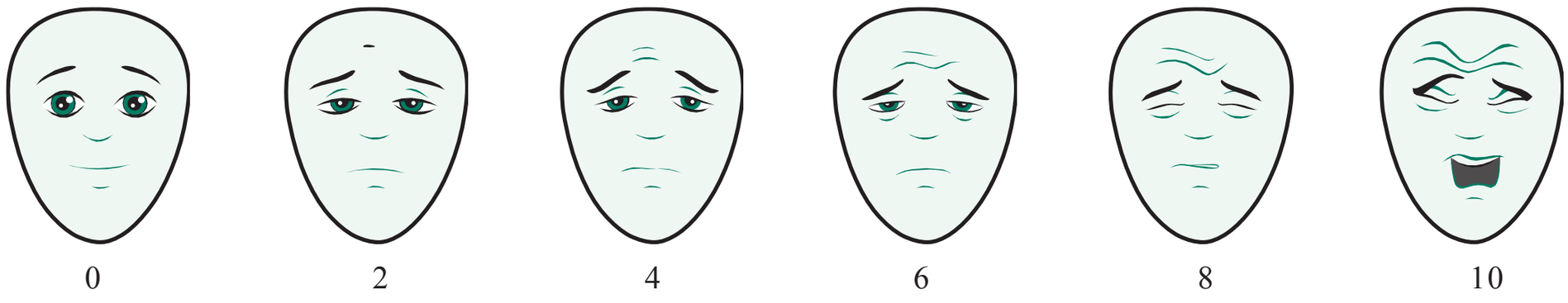
CRIES, Crying Requires O_2 saturation, Increased vital signs, Expression, and Sleeplessness; FLACC, Face, Legs, Activity, Crying, Consolability; NIPS, Neonatal Infant Pain Scale; PIPP, Premature Infant Pain Profile.
Reproduced with permission from Motoyama EK, Davis PJ: Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children, 7th ed. Mosby Elsevier, 2006:436–458.

Motoyama EK, Davis PJ: Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children. 7th ed. Mosby Elsevier, 2006:436–458.

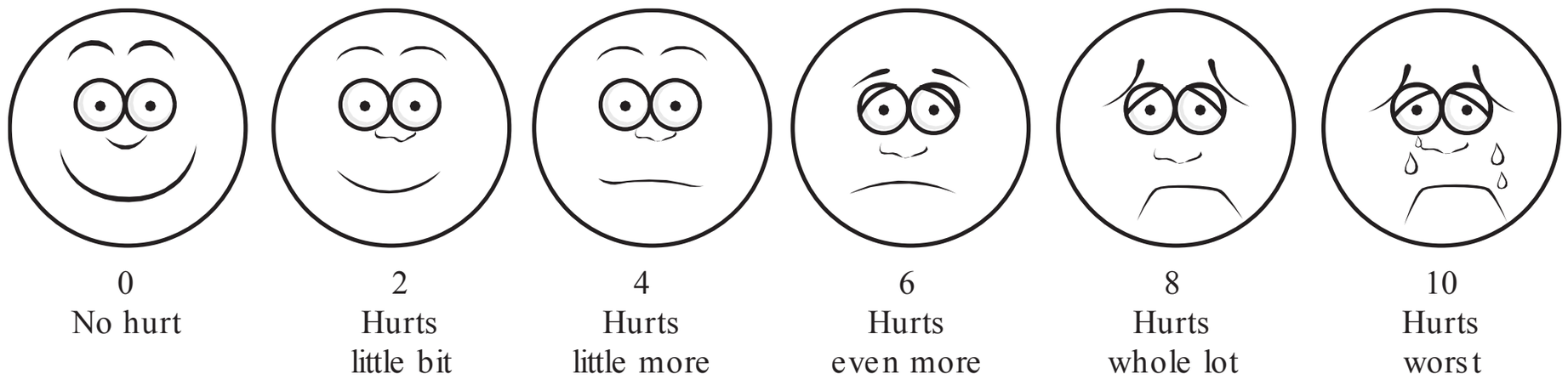
When pain is more severe, oral opioids can be added for short-term use (Table 32–4). Many of these opioids come formulated with an NSAID, that is, oxycodone/acetaminophen (Percocet) and hydrocodone/acetaminophen (Lortab). When using these combination drugs, the dose of drug is based on the opioid component. Other concomitantly administered similar NSAIDs should be discontinued. The most commonly used oral opioids are oxycodone, hydrocodone, and codeine. The use of codeine is least recommended due to its metabolism. Codeine is metabolized to morphine via the cytochrome P-450 2D4 isoenzyme. From 1% to 10% people (Asians 1%–2%, African Americans 1%–3%, Caucasians 5%–10%) are poor metabolizers as a result of a genetic polymorphism. Thus, patients with this defect get no effect from this drug. A very small percentage of patients (primarily from East Africa) are ultrarapid metabolizers. These patients convert 10–15 times the amount of parent drug to active compound which can result in clinical toxicity. Morphine, oxycodone, and hydrocodone are all available as suspensions, are active as administered, and are metabolized by multiple routes.

For severe pain not amenable to oral analgesics, an intravenous opioid can be titrated to effect; options for pain relief are dependent on severity and location of pain and age. Intravenous opioids used as bolus dose, continuous infusion, and as part of a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) infusion have a long track record of both safe and efficacious use in children. Often the NSAID ketorolac 0.5–1.0 mg/kg is used as an adjunct for severe pain. Side effects of ketorolac are the same as for adults: renal insufficiency, gastric irritability, and prolonged bleeding times due to decreased platelet adhesiveness. Patients with bleeding concerns should not receive ketorolac.

PCA pumps can be used in children as young as 6 years with proper instruction and coaching (Table 32–5). Morphine and hydromorphone are the most commonly used drugs for PCA management in the United States. Whenever PCA is used, it is imperative to assess patients frequently (at least hourly) to ensure adequate pain relief.



▲**Figure 32–1.** Bieri Faces Pain Scale, revised. (Reproduced with permission from Hicks CL, von Baeyer CL, Spafford P, et al: Faces pain scale-revised: Toward a common metric in pediatric pain measurement. Pain 2001Aug;93(2):173–183.)



▲**Figure 32–2.** Wong-Baker Pain Scale. (Reproduced with permission from Hockenberry MJ, WilsonD: Wong's essentials of pediatric nursing, 8th ed. St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.)

Andersson T et al: Drug-metabolizing enzymes: evidence for clinical utility of pharmacogenomic tests. Clin Pharmacol Ther 2005;78:559–581 [PMID: 16338273].

Berde CB, Sethna N: Analgesics for the treatment of pain in children. N Engl J Med 2002 Oct 3;347(14):1094–1103 [PMID: 12362012].

CHRONIC PAIN MANAGEMENT

» Assessment

Chronic pain is a pain that persists past the usual course of an acute illness or beyond the time that is expected for an acute injury. In children this is an increasingly recognized problem. It is estimated that chronic pain may affect as much as 10%–15% of the population. The most common problems include headache, chronic abdominal pain, myofascial pain, fibromyalgia, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, complex regional pain syndrome, phantom limb pain, and pain associated with cancer. Chronic pain in children often has multiple other contributing factors, including psychological issues, psychosocial factors, sociologic factors, and family dynamics. Associating pain with a single physical cause can lead the physician to investigate the patient with repeated invasive testing, laboratory tests, and procedures and to overprescribe medications. A multidimensional assessment to chronic pain is optimal and often required.

McGrath PA, Ruskin, DA: Caring for children with chronic pain: Ethical considerations. Paediatr Anaesth 2007 Jun;17(6): 505–508 [PMID: 17498011].

Weisman SJ, Rusy LM: Pain management in infants and children. In Motoyama EK, Davis PJ (editors): Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children, 7th ed. Mosby Elsevier, 2006:436–458.

www.ampainsoc.org/advocacy/pediatric.htm.

» Treatment

When possible, a multidisciplinary team approach is standard of care for treating chronic pain in children. All children evaluated for chronic pain should be seen on their initial visit by all primary members of the team to establish a management strategy. Team members should include a pain physician, a pediatric psychologist and/or a psychiatrist, occupational and physical therapists (OT/PT), advanced pain nurses (APNs), and a social worker. The majority of

Table 32–2. FLACC pain assessment tool.

Categories	Score 0	Score 1	Score 2
Face	No particular expression or smile	Occasional grimace or frown, withdrawn, disinterested	Frequent to constant frown, clenched jaw, quivering chin
Legs	Normal position or relaxed	Uneasy, restless, tense	Kicking, or legs drawn up
Activity	Lying quietly, normal position, moves easily	Squirming, shifting back and forth, tense	Arched, rigid, or jerking
Cry	No cry (awake or asleep)	Moans or whimpers, occasional complaint	Crying steadily, screams or sobs, frequent complaints
Consolability	Content, relaxed	Reassured by occasional touching, hugging, or being talked to, distractible	Difficult to console or comfort

Table 32–3. Suggested doses for nonopioid analgesics.

	Route	Dosage Guidelines	Half-Life	Duration
Acetaminophen	PO	10–15 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h, maximum dose 4000 mg/d	Neonates: 2–5 h Adults: 2–3 h	4 h
	PR	40 mg/kg loading dose, followed by 10–20 mg/kg/dose every 6 h		
Ibuprofen	PO	4–10 mg/kg/dose every 6–8 h, maximum dose 40 mg/kg/d, no > 2400 mg/d	Children: 1–7 y: 1–2 h Adults: 2–4 h	6–8 h
Ketorolac	IV	0.5 mg/kg/dose every 6 h, maximum of 30 mg/dose, maximum course of 8 doses	Children: ~ 6 h Adults: ~ 5 h	4–6 h

pediatric chronic pain management programs in the United States base their approach on combined intensive rehabilitation and intensive psychotherapy relying minimally on invasive procedures and pharmacotherapy.

A. Tolerance, Dependence, and Addiction

Physiologic and psychological responses to opioids are similar between adults and children. A consensus paper by the American Academy of Pain Medicine, American Pain Society, and American Society of Addiction Medicine defined important differences between normal and pathologic responses to opioids. The definitions of tolerance dependence and addiction are listed as follows.

1. Tolerance—A state of adaptation in which exposure to a drug induces changes that result in a diminution of one or more of the drug's effects over time. Tolerance develops at

Table 32–4. Suggested doses of oral and intravenous opioids in infants and children.

Opioid Drug	Route	Dosage Guidelines	Onset	Duration
Fentanyl	IV intermittent	0.5–1 mcg/kg/dose (best for intermittent short duration analgesia; titrate to effect)	1–3 min	30–60 min
Hydromorphone	IV	Children: 0.015 mg/kg/dose every 3–6 h Adolescent: 1–4 mg every 3–6 h	15 min	4–5 h
Methadone	IV	0.1 mg/kg/dose every 4 h for 2–3 doses, then every 6–12 h	10–20 min	6–8 h (22–48 h after repeated doses)
Morphine	IV intermittent	0.05–0.1 mg/kg/dose every 2–4 h	Neonates: 7–8 h 1–3 mo: 6 h 6 mo–2.5 y: 3 h 3–19 y: 1–2 h Adults: 2–4 h	2–4 h
Codeine	PO	0.5–1 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h, maximum of 60 mg/dose	30–60 min	4–6 h
Hydromorphone	PO	Children: 0.03–0.1 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h Adolescents: 1–4 mg every 3–4 h	15–30 min	4–5 h
Hydrocodone (in Vicodin, Lortab elixir)	PO	Children: 0.15–0.2 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h Adolescents: 1–2 tabs every 4–6 h (limited due to acetaminophen content; see acetaminophen recommendations in text)	10–20 min	3–6 h
Methadone	PO	0.1 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h for 2–3 doses, then every 6–12 h	30–60 min	6–8 h (22–48 h after repeated doses)
Morphine	PO-IR	0.2–0.5 mg/kg/dose every 4–6 h	15–60 min	3–5 h
	PO-ER	0.3–0.6 mg/kg/dose every 12 h	1–2 h	8–12 h

Data from Perkins RM et al (eds): Pediatric Hospital Medicine. 2nd ed. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2008:743–754.

Table 32–5. PCA dosing recommendations.

	Morphine	Fentanyl	Hydromorphone
Solution	1 mg/mL	Solution 10 mcg/mL	0.1 mg/mL or 1 mg/mL
Initial dose	15–20 mcg/kg (max 1.5 mg)	0.25 mcg/kg	3–4 mcg/kg (max 0.3 mg)
Lockout time	8–10 min	8–10 min	8–10 min
Basal infusion	0–20 mcg/kg/h	0–1 mcg/kg/h	0–4 mcg/kg/h
Maximum starting dose (for non-opioid tolerant patients)	100 mcg/kg/h	1–2 mcg/kg/h	20 mcg/kg/h

different rates for different opioid effects, that is, tolerance to sleepiness and respiratory depression occurs earlier than that to constipation and analgesia.

2. Dependence—A state of adaptation that is manifested by a drug class–specific **withdrawal** syndrome that can be produced by abrupt cessation, rapid dose reduction, decreasing blood level of the drug, and/or administration of an antagonist.

3. Addiction—A primary, chronic, neurobiologic disease, with genetic, psychosocial, and environmental factors influencing its development and manifestations. It is characterized by behaviors that include one or more of the following:

- Loss of **C**ontrol over use of drug
- **C**raving and **C**ompulsive use of drug
- Use despite adverse **C**onsequences

Addiction is rare when opioids are used appropriately for acute pain on both inpatient and outpatient settings. It should be emphasized that tolerance and dependence do not equal addiction.

Heit HA: Addiction, physical dependence, and tolerance: precise definitions to help clinicians evaluate and treat chronic pain patients. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother 2003;17:15–29 [PMID: 14640337].

B. Withdrawal

1. Recognition—Withdrawal symptoms can be expected to occur for all patients after 1 week of opioid treatment. Signs of withdrawal in older children include agitation, irritability, dysphoria, tachycardia, tachypnea, nasal congestion, temperature instability, and feeding intolerance. In neonates with withdrawal (neonatal abstinence syndrome), common symptoms include neurologic excitability, gastrointestinal dysfunction, autonomic signs (increased sweating, nasal stuffiness, fever, mottling, poor weight gain), and skin excoriation secondary to excessive rubbing.

2. Treatment

- Make a schedule/plan in conjunction with patient and family.
- Factor in duration of time on opioid.
- Consider switching to once-a-day opioid (see methadone dosing in Table 32–4).
- Decrease the dose by 10–25% every 1–2 days.
- Look for signs of withdrawal.
- Consider adding lorazepam 0.05–0.1 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.
- Consider adding clonidine patch 0.1 mg/d (changed every fifth day).

Richard J et al: A prospective evaluation of opioid weaning in opioid-dependent pediatric critical care patients. Anesth Analg 2006;102:1045–1050 [PMID: 16551896].

PEd iATRiC PAl l iATiv E & End -o f -l if E CARE

INTRODUCTION

It has been estimated that almost 55,000 children die each year in the United States. At least 50% of these children die during the newborn period or within the first year of life. Many of these children, particularly those older than 1 year of age, suffer from illnesses that are clearly life-limiting. Thousands more children are diagnosed with life-limiting illnesses, resulting in a chronic condition that may last for many years, even decades. Furthermore, children who are diagnosed with life-threatening illnesses that may be curable, such as cancer, continue to live with the potential of a recurrence of their malignancy for many years. The above populations are those where palliative and end-of-life care could play an important role during the illness of these patients.

Although commonly used interchangeably, palliative care and end-of-life care are not synonymous terms. Palliative

care aims to prevent, relieve, reduce, or soothe the symptoms produced by potential life-limiting illnesses or their treatments and to maintain the patient's quality of life along the entire continuum of treatment. Provision of palliative care does not imply imminent death nor does it prohibit aggressive curative treatment modalities. Rather, it acknowledges the uncertainty and potential for suffering inherent in a potentially life-limiting condition such as cancer. Understanding how a family defines quality of life and suffering for their child is imperative and provides a framework for decision making between care provider and the family throughout treatment.

While a child is doing well with treatment, the primary focus will be on achieving cure or stabilization of the disease. Palliative care goals at this time focus on promoting quality of life in preparation for survivorship in the face of a potentially life-limiting illness. Some of these goals include helping a family come to terms with the diagnosis, addressing issues of treatment-related pain and distress, facilitating reintegration into the social realms of school and community, and promoting as much normalcy in the child's life as possible. When it becomes clear that the chances for cure are poor or present an unreasonable cost to the child's quality of life, the goals of palliative care will shift toward end-of-life care. The focus will still be on promoting quality of life but now in preparation for a comfortable and dignified end of life with increasingly less attention given to the treatment or cure of the disease itself.

Palliative care not only comprises support in the pain and symptom management of the disease but also addresses equally the psychosocial, emotional, and spiritual needs of the patient with a potential life-limiting illness and their family.

CHILDREN WHO MAY BENEFIT FROM PALLIATIVE CARE INTERVENTIONS

In a recent review by Himelstein et al, conditions that are appropriate for palliative care were divided into four groups as follows:

- Conditions for which curative treatment is possible but may fail such as advanced or progressive cancer and complex and severe congenital or acquired heart disease
- Conditions requiring intensive long-term treatment aimed at maintaining the quality of life such as HIV/AIDS, cystic fibrosis, and muscular dystrophy
- Progressive conditions in which treatment is exclusively palliative after diagnosis such as progressive metabolic disorders and certain chromosomal abnormalities
- Conditions involving severe, nonprogressive disability, causing extreme vulnerability to health complications such as severe cerebral palsy and anoxic brain injury

The United States Congress mandated in 2010 that palliative care will be covered concurrently with curative therapies for children with terminal conditions who are receiving Medicaid. Based on the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, a voluntary election to receive hospice care for a child does not constitute a waiver of any rights of the child to be provided with, or to have payments made for services that are related to the treatment of the child's condition. This significant milestone in pediatric palliative care should open the door to concurrent care being covered by private insurance companies in the future.

PAIN MANAGEMENT IN PEDIATRIC PALLIATIVE CARE

Optimal pain management is critical when providing pediatric palliative care. (See the section on Pain Management earlier for definitions and guidelines for treatment). As end of life approaches, dosing of comfort medications may eventually exceed normally prescribed doses. The goal at all times must be to achieve and maintain comfort. When pain management at the end of life is provided with this goal at the forefront and in concert with careful ongoing assessment and documentation of the child's symptoms, there should be no reason to fear that this action is tantamount to euthanasia which is a conscious action intended to hasten death.

QUALITY-OF-LIFE ADJUNCTS & SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT IN PEDIATRIC PALLIATIVE CARE

When offering treatment to children with a life-limiting illness particularly at the end of life, certain nonpain symptoms and signs may develop more quickly in children when compared to the adult population. A thorough and complete history and physical examination should be obtained. It is critical to determine how much distress the symptom causes the child and how much it interferes with child and his/her family's routine when deciding upon treatment. Areas of management should include drug treatment, nursing care, and psychosocial support. Symptoms that commonly occur during disease progression and at the end of life in children with a life-limiting condition are listed in Table 32–6, with suggestions for management.

Complementary & Alternative Modalities

It is not unusual for families seek complementary or alternative modalities (CAM) for their child when mainstream treatment has failed or is unavailable. Children with chronic conditions such as cancer, asthma, sickle cell disease, and epilepsy have a higher incidence of CAM usage compared to the general pediatric population (Post-White, 2009). As children approach end of life, many families opt to try some

Table 32–6. Symptom management in pediatric palliative care.

Symptom	Etiology	Management
Nausea and vomiting	Chemotherapy, narcotics, metabolic	Diphenhydramine, hydroxyzine, 5-HT_3 inhibitors, prokinetic agents for GI motility
Anorexia	Cancer, pain, abnormal taste, GI alterations, metabolic changes, drugs, psychological factors	Treat underlying condition, exercise, dietary consultation, appetite stimulants (dronabinol, megestrol, steroid)
Constipation/diarrhea	Narcotics, chemotherapy, malabsorption, drug related	Laxatives (must be initiated whenever starting narcotics), loperamide for diarrhea, peripheral opioid antagonists (methylnaltrexone, alvimopan)
Dyspnea	Airway obstruction; decrease in functional lung tissue due to effusion, infection, metastases; impaired chest wall movement; anemia	Treatment of specific cause (surgery to alleviate obstruction, red blood cell transfusion, chemotherapy/radiation therapy for metastatic disease), nonpharmacologic management (reassurance, position of comfort, improvement of air circulation using electric fan, oxygen, and relaxation therapy), pharmacologic management with opioids given IV/SQ as continuous infusion, nebulized morphine in older patients, concomitant use of anxiolytics (lorazepam, midazolam) if agitation
Terminal respiratory congestion	Airway/oral secretions at the end of life, resulting in rattling, noisy, gurgling breath sounds	Repositioning, anticholinergics such as hyoscine IV/SQ/PO or transdermal scopolamine
Pressure sores	Direct tissue damage, tissue fragility, immobility, diminished response to pain or irritation	Prevention (avoidance of trauma, relieve pressure, good hygiene), treatment with local hygiene, debridement, use of appropriate wound dressings, antibiotics, analgesics
Bone pain	Bony metastases, leukemic infiltration of bone marrow	Palliative radiation, bone-seeking isotopes, bisphosphonates, chemotherapy, analgesics
Agitation	Present in conjunction with pain, dyspnea, terminal phase of illness	Benzodiazepines (midazolam), barbiturates to achieve complete sedation in terminal restlessness
Pruritus	Urticaria, postherpetic neuralgia, cholestasis, uremia, opioids	Antihistamines (cholestasis, uremia, opioids), 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists (cholestasis, opioids)
Hematologic	Marrow infiltration by malignant cells (leukemia) Coagulopathy Bleeding from erosive or ulcerative processes	Transfusions (red blood cells, platelets) to relieve symptoms, hemostatics (aminocaproic acid) Dark bath towel (black, burgundy, or dark purple) to help absorb and camouflage blood
Intractable pain	Various	Chronic pain team consult; consider palliative sedation in very selected cases

form of CAM. Most often, these treatments are aimed at improving physical or spiritual quality of life, Sometimes the goal is a desperate hope to find a treatment when other options have failed or an attempt to find something perceived as less toxic than mainstream treatments to induce remission, support the child's ability to fight the disease, or prolong life. Parents report using CAM gives them a sense of control and hope. The most common modalities reported in pediatrics are prayer/meditation, relaxation techniques, massage, chiropractic care including acupuncture, and nutritional supplements (Post-White et al, 2009). The use of CAM in children is influenced primarily by parental use and acceptance of CAM. Culturally accepted beliefs and practices also play an important role. In Asia, the use of meditation and prayer as a method to control pain is well supported by the medical community. In Europe, the use of homeopathic remedies is commonplace.

Studies of the effectiveness of CAM use in children have been small and the data is often conflicting. There is generally an acceptance for the lack of harm associated with mind-body techniques such as prayer, meditation, touch and sensory modalities, and relaxation. Acupuncture and acupressure are gaining more acceptance in the Western medical community and may be beneficial in some children for relief of pain, nausea, and other symptoms. Touch and sensory modalities such as massage, healing touch, and

aromatherapy can induce a relaxation response in some children which can be very helpful. The use of supplements including botanicals and vitamins has been of more concern due to the lack of dosing information for pediatrics, lack of standardization of products, and the potential for serious drug interactions and toxicities. Treatments touted as alternative "cures" are likely not beneficial and can have very dangerous consequences. The cost of CAM, particularly botanicals and alternative medicine treatments, can be prohibitive and the cost is rarely covered by insurance. Hospice providers frequently incorporate relaxation and mind/body/spirit modalities into their programs.

It is important for the health care provider to ask parents and adolescents about CAM usage and to be open to discussion with the family about modalities they are using or may wish to consider. Parents consistently have reported in studies their desire to inform and discuss CAM with their health care provider, but may be reluctant to do so if they are unsure what response they will get from the provider. Providing families with clear information about the treatment they are considering or using and any contraindications is key. In some cases, recommendation of complementary techniques such as massage, mind/body modalities, and acupuncture/acupressure may be appropriate.

PSYCHOSOCIAL ASPECTS OF PEDIATRIC PALLIATIVE CARE

Pediatric palliative care is unique in that caregivers must be familiar with children's normal emotional and spiritual development. Working with a child at his or her level of development through the use of both oral and expressive communication will allow the child to be more open with respect to hopes, dreams, and fears. A child's understanding of death will depend also on his or her stage of development. Children understand death as a changed state by 3 years of age, universality by 5–6 years of age, and personal mortality by 8–9 years of age. Table 32–7 gives a broad overview of children's concepts of death and offers some helpful interventions.

CHILDREN'S CONCEPT OF DEATH

As end of life approaches, psychosocial support is invaluable to the child and family. Children may need someone to talk to outside of the family unit who can respond to their questions and concerns openly and honestly. Parents may need guidance and support in initiating discussions with or responding to questions from their child about death and dying. Children and adolescents may have specific tasks they wish to complete before they die. Some want to have input into funeral and memorial service plans and disposition of their body. Parents often need support in making funeral arrangements, handling financial concerns, talking with siblings and other family members, and coping with their own grief.

It is important to recognize that grief is not an illness but a normal, multidimensional, unique, dynamic process presenting as pervasive distress due to a perceived loss. Once parents have accepted the reality of the loss of the child, they must then complete the other tasks of grief such as experiencing the pain of their loss and adjusting to an environment without their child in order to move on with their lives. Parents who lose a child are at high risk for complicated grief reactions such as absent grief, delayed grief, and prolonged or unresolved grief. Siblings are also at risk for complicated grief and require special attention.

SPIRITUAL & CULTURAL SUPPORT

Health care decisions are often intertwined with a family's culture and belief system. Understanding the influences of a family's beliefs and culture allows the practitioner to provide sensitive, appropriate care, particularly at the end of life. Interaction with members of the family's faith and cultural communities can often be instrumental in helping both the care team and the community support of the family. Allowance for specific prayers, rituals, or other activities may help facilitate procedures and discussions.

Families who speak a foreign language probably suffer from inadequate support the most. Every effort should be made to find and utilize a qualified interpreter, particularly for any discussion that involves delivering difficult news or making critical decisions. Many times, the role of interpreter is imposed upon a bilingual family member or friend who may not understand medical terminology well enough to translate clearly or who may deliberately translate the information inaccurately in an attempt to protect the family.

WITHDRAWAL OF MEDICAL LIFE SUPPORT

Medical technology has enabled many children with serious health conditions to enjoy a good quality of life. When technological support no longer enables a child's quality and enjoyment of life or there are no viable options to restore quality of life to the child, it may be appropriate to discontinue it. Feeding tubes, ventilators, dialysis, parenteral nutrition and implanted cardiac pacemakers are examples of medical modalities that may need to be re-evaluated when a child's condition deteriorates or in the case of a catastrophic injury.

There are five circumstances in which withdrawal of medical support and technology can be considered in children (Tournay, 2000). (See the following table.)

Table 32–7. Children's concepts of death.

Age Group and Cognitive Development	Cognitive Understanding of Death	Response to Stress	Helpful Interventions
Infancy: Sense of self is directly related to having needs met	None	Lethargy, irritability, failure to thrive	Maintain routines Prompt response to physical and emotional caretaking needs Cuddling, holding, rocking
Toddler: Egocentric, concrete thinking; see objects and events in relationship to their usefulness to self	None but beginning to perceive implications of separation	Irritability, change in sleep-wake patterns, clinginess, regression, tantrums	Maintain routines Keep familiar people and objects at hand Prompt response to physical and emotional caretaking needs Accept need for increased physical and emotional comfort but continue to encourage acquisition of developmental skills
Preschool: Beginning to understand concept of time but limited sense of time permanence, curious, still quite concrete in thinking	View death as deliberately caused Magical thinking about causes of illness and death Death is not a permanent state	Oppositional behaviors, regression, sleep-wake changes, nightmares, somatic complaints Beginning to identify meaning and context of emotions	Simple, concrete explanations to questions—find out what it is they want to know Reassurance that death and illness are not the result of their thoughts or wishes Keep familiar people and objects at hand Play is a powerful tool to help children process events and emotions and as distraction from stressful situations
School age: Beginning of ability to apply logic; accept points of view other than their own	Death is seen in context of experience (pets, grandparents, what is seen on TV or in movies) Can understand that death is permanent	Oppositional behaviors, nightmares, sleep disruption, withdrawal, sadness Can verbally identify own feelings of fear, sadness, happiness	Ascertain how they perceive and understand what is happening and respond accordingly to their questions Acknowledge that feelings of sadness, fear, and anger are normal Allow age-appropriate control whenever possible Maintain as much normalcy in routine as possible Play is very important for expression of emotions and release of stress, amenable to directed play
Preadolescence and adolescence: Gaining mastery over themselves as individuals by exploring their own moral, ethical, and spiritual beliefs; increased reliance on peers for emotional support and information	Adult awareness of death but still may be highly experiential in understanding	Anger, withdrawal, sadness, depression, somatic complaints May have difficulty asking for emotional help	Set the tone for open, honest communication Allow the young person as much control as possible in decisions about his or her own health care Be willing to discuss and respect wishes and desires for disposition of belongings, funeral planning, what happens to his or her body Assist the young person in accomplishing important life tasks and activities that gives meaning to his or her existence or leaves behind a legacy

Brain death	All reversible causes excluded, meets established criteria for determination of brain death
Persistent vegetative state (PVS)	Child totally dependent for all cares, has no ability to interact meaningfully with his environment. Lack of cortical peaks in the somatosensory evoked potential may be helpful in making prognosis of PVS (Tournay, 2000)
Treatment will delay death without significantly relieving the suffering caused by the condition	No chance for cure, invasiveness of the treatment may prolong life but does not diminish or increases suffering
Child's life may be saved, but at the cost of physical and mental impairment that makes life intolerable for the child	Important to understand how child and family defines "intolerable life"
Additional treatment with potential benefit will cause further suffering	Burden of suffering outweighs the potential for benefit.

At these times, it will be necessary to have a gentle but frank discussion with the family that includes eliciting their understanding of the child's situation and prognosis. Helping them identify and define what quality of life means to their child and to the family and what would be an intolerable life for the child is important. It is critical to present in a clear and understandable format the child's medical condition, test results, and the treatments that have been tried, what the expectations are for the child's ability to survive or function and interact with his environment, and why it is believed that current or additional interventions will be futile or induce further suffering. These discussions should be conducted with sensitivity and without need for an immediate answer from the parents. It often takes several such discussions for families to come to a decision that they themselves will be able to live with and families should not be rushed into decision making. The family may request additional testing or retesting to assure themselves they are making the right decision for their child. When feasible, these requests should be honored. Spiritual support may be very helpful to families during this process and should be offered.

Once the family has made the decision to withdraw support, it is helpful to explain what the anticipated course will be following withdrawal, what the child will likely look like during that time and what the plan of care will be to ensure comfort. Create a plan with the family for time and place of withdrawal, who they would like to be there with them, any specific requests for environment such as music, a favorite movie playing, or a book being read, and who they would like to perform the withdrawal. Offering the opportunity for rituals, prayer, or private time prior to or during the withdrawal is appropriate. If death is anticipated to happen quickly after withdrawal, any specific religious requirements for the body after death should be arranged in advance. In all cases of withdrawal, the family should be offered support during the process and after the death occurs.

ADVANCE CARE PLANNING

Advance care planning allows patients and families to make known their wishes about what to do in care of serious or life-threatening problems. Himelstein et al describe advance care planning as a four-step process. First, those individuals considered decision makers are identified and included in the process. Second, an assessment of the patient's and family's understanding of the illness and prognosis is made and the impending death is described in terms that the child and family can understand. Third, on the basis of their understanding of the illness and prognosis, the goals of care are determined regarding current and future intervention—curative, uncertain, or primarily focused on providing comfort. Finally, shared decisions about the current and future use or abandonment of life-sustaining techniques and aggressive medical interventions are made. In the event of a disagreement between parents or parents and their patient regarding these techniques or interventions, it may be prudent to involve the hospital's ethics committee in order to resolve these issues.

Some states permit parents to sign an advanced directive that asserts their decision not to have resuscitative attempts made in the event of a cardiac or respiratory arrest outside of the hospital. When an advanced directive is in place, emergency responders are not required to provide cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) if called to the scene. Some school districts will respect an advanced directive on school property, many will not. If a child with an advanced directive in place wishes to go to school, a discussion between the medical team and school officials should be arranged to determine the best plan should the child have a cardiac or respiratory arrest at school.

Parents and, occasionally, the child may bring up the possibility of donating organs or body tissues after death. Although the tissues that may be donated by a child may be limited in some instances by the type of disease (eg, cancer), some parents find immense comfort in knowing their child was able to benefit another. If the parents have not discussed donation with the physician by the time of death and donation is possible, the physician should offer the opportunity to the family.

Autopsy is another subject many physicians find difficult to approach with a family, but it is an important option to discuss. In cases of anticipated death from natural causes, autopsies are generally not mandatory; however,

information obtained from an autopsy may be useful for parental peace of mind or medical research. If death at home is to be followed by an autopsy, special arrangements for transporting and receiving the body will need to be made with the mortuary or the coroner.

REFERENCES

Becker G, Blum HE: Novel opioid antagonists for opioid-induced bowel dysfunction and postoperative ileus. Lancet 2009;373:1198 [PMID: 19217656].

Goldman A et al (eds): Oxford Textbook of Palliative Care for Children. Oxford University Press, 2006.

Hendrickson K, McCorkle R: A dimensional analysis of the concept: good death of a child with cancer. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs 2008 May–Jun;25(3):127–138 [PMID: 18413698].

Himelstein B et al: Pediatric palliative care. N Engl J Med 2004; 350:1752 [PMID: 15103002].

Kang T, Munson D, Klick J (eds): Pediatric palliative care. Pediatr Clin North Am 2007;54(5).

Kearney JA, Byrne MW: Planning with parents for seriously ill children: preliminary results on the development of the parental engagement scale. Palliat Support Care 2011;9(4):367–376 [PMID: 22104412].

Knapp C, Thompson L: Factors associated with perceived barriers to pediatric palliative care: a survey of pediatricians in Florida and California. Palliat Med 2012;26(3);268–274 [PMID: 21680751].

Lindenfelser KJ, Hense C, McFerran: Music therapy in pediatric palliative care: family-centered care to enhance quality of life. Am J Hosp Palliat Care 2012;29(3):219–226 [PMID: 22144660].

O'Shea ER, Kanarek RB: Understanding pediatric palliative care: what it is and what it should be. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs 2013;(30)1:34–44 [PMID: 23372039].

Ott M: Mind-body therapies for the pediatric oncology patient: matching the right therapy with the right patient. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs 2006;223(5):254–257 [PMID: 16902078].

Pirie A: Pediatric palliative care communication: resources for the clinical nurse specialist. Clin Nurse Spec 2012;26(4):212–215 [PMID: 22678187].

Post-White J, Fitzgerald M, Hageness S, Sencer S: Complementary and alternative medicine use in children with cancer and general and specialty pediatrics. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs 2009;26(1):7–15 [PMID: 18936292].

Storey P, Knight C: Alleviating psychological and spiritual pain in the terminally ill. In: American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Care Medicine (ed): Hospice/Palliative Care Training for Physicians: A Self-Study Program. Mary Ann Liebert, 2003.

Thompson LA et al: Pediatricians' perceptions of and preferred timing for pediatric palliative care. Pediatrics 2009;123:e777 [PMID: 19403469].

Tomlinson D et al: Chemotherapy versus supportive care alone in pediatric palliative care for cancer: comparing the preferences of parents and health care professionals. CMAJ 2011;183(17):E1252–E1258 [PMID: 22007121].

Tournay AE: Withdrawal of medical treatment in children. West J Med 2000;173:407–411 [PMID: 11112760].

Widger K, Picot C: Parents' perceptions of the quality of pediatric and perinatal end-of-life care. Pediatr Nurs 2008;34(1):53–58 [PMID: 18361087].

Woodruff R (ed): Palliative Medicine. Oxford University Press, 2005.

Youngblut JM, Brooten D: Perinatal and pediatric issues in palliative and end-of-life care from the 2011 Summit on the Science of Compassion. Nursing Outlook 2012;60(6):343–350.

Web Resources

Education on Palliative and End of Life Care (EPEC; adult focused): www.epec.net.

End of Life Nursing Education Consortium (ELNEC): http://www.aacn.nche.edu/elnec.

Initiative for Pediatric Palliative Care (IPPC): www.ippcweb.org.

National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization (NHPCO)—Children's Project on Palliative/Hospice Services (ChiPPs): www.nhpco.org.

33 Immunodeficiency

Jordan K. Abbott, MD
Pia J. Hauk, MD

Immune deficiencies that present in childhood comprise rare disorders that have been characterized by a combination of clinical patterns, immunologic laboratory tests, and often molecular identification of the mutant gene. Children with primary immunodeficiency (PID) commonly present with recurrent and/or severe bacterial infections, failure to thrive, and/or developmental delay as a result of infection. Immunodeficiency should be considered when infections are recurrent, severe, persistent, resistant to standard treatment, or caused by opportunistic organisms. Because delayed diagnosis of PIDs is common, heightened diagnostic suspicion is warranted.

The human immune system consists of the phylogenetically more primitive innate immune system and the adaptive immune system. For the purpose of clinical categorization, PIDs are commonly divided into four main groups: antibody deficiencies, combined T- and B-cell immunodeficiencies, phagocyte disorders, and complement deficiencies. Understanding the role each part of the immune system plays in host defense allows critical evaluation for possible immunodeficiency as the cause of recurrent infections.

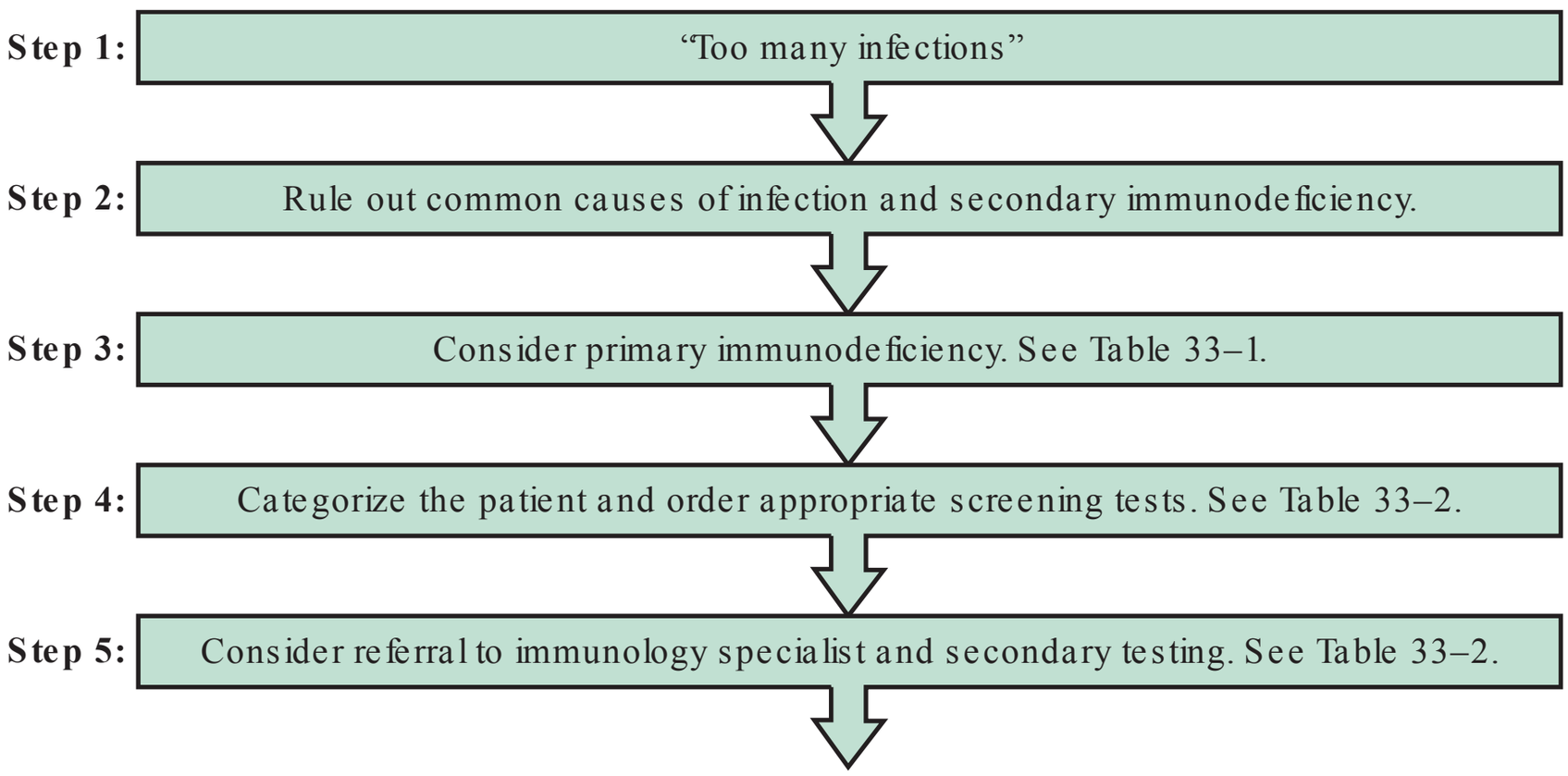
Picard C et al: Primary immunodeficiency diseases: an update on the classification from the international union of immunological societies expert committee for primary immunodeficiency. J Clin Immunol 2015;35:696–726 [PMID: 26482257].

IMMUNODEFICIENCY EVALUATION: PRIMARY CONSIDERATIONS

When evaluating for a possible PID, other conditions that increase susceptibility to infections have to be considered, such as allergic rhinitis, asthma, cystic fibrosis, foreign body aspiration, and conditions that interfere with skin barrier function. Common causes of secondary or acquired immunodeficiency need to be excluded. These include malnutrition, aging, certain drugs (chemotherapy, immunosuppressive medications, glucocorticoids, disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs, rituximab), protein loss via gastroenteropathy or kidney disease, and other diseases associated with impaired immunity (bone marrow and blood cell malignancies, and certain chronic infections, including AIDS). If a single site is involved, anatomic defects and foreign bodies may be present. Figure 33–1 outlines when PIDs should be considered.

Key clinical patterns can indicate the presence of a PID and the category of immune impairment. PID should be considered in patients with frequent, severe, or unusual infections. When the infection history suggests PID, the type of infections can help guide the initial workup. Antibody, complement, and phagocyte defects predispose mainly to bacterial infections, but diarrhea, superficial candidiasis, opportunistic infections, and severe herpesvirus infections are more characteristic of T-lymphocyte immunodeficiency. Location of infection can provide important clues. Additional features such as the presence of autoimmunity, poor wound healing, lymphoproliferative disease, age of disease onset, and failure to thrive can help further categorize the PID. Table 33–1 classifies PID into four main host immunity categories based on age of onset, infections with specific pathogens, affected organs, and other special features. Frequently seen clinical features of PID are shown in Figure 33–2.

Initial laboratory investigation should be directed by the clinical presentation and the suspected category of host immunity impairment. If antibody deficiency is suspected, a complete blood cell (CBC) count with cell differential and measurement of quantitative immunoglobulins (Igs) will identify the majority of patients. If T-cell deficiency is suspected, lymphocyte phenotyping to quantify blood T cells, B cells, and natural killer (NK) cells should be sent. For phagocyte defects, testing of oxidative burst in stimulated granulocytes should be performed. For complement deficiency, testing of the function of the classical and alternative pathway should be performed. Table 33–2 summarizes the approach to laboratory evaluation of PID.



▲**Figure 33–1.** General approach to primary immunodeficiencies.

Antibodies & Immunoglobulins

The initial laboratory screening for antibody deficiency includes the measurement of serum Igs: IgG, IgM, IgA, and IgE, which have age-dependent normal ranges (Table 33–3). Normal IgG, IgM, and IgA, and increased IgE levels are indicative of atopy. Some patients may have normal Ig levels but fail to make protective antibodies to certain microbes; other patients have subnormal Ig levels but make protective antibodies. Specific antibodies include isohemagglutinins, naturally occurring IgM antibodies that are detectable by age 6 months except in children with blood group AB. Specific IgG antibodies to protein antigens (tetanus, diphtheria, rubella, mumps) and polysaccharide antigens (Streptococcus pneumoniae) can be measured after immunization. The response to polysaccharide antigens develops during the second year of life, but protein-conjugated vaccines elicit an earlier response in immunocompetent children. Assessing the antibody response to pneumococcal polysaccharide antigens can be helpful in the face of repeated pneumococcal infections. The gold standard is comparison of pre- and postimmunization titers.

If an initial screen reveals very low concentrations of Ig isotypes, further studies are aimed at identifying the cause of immunoglobulin deficiency. Certain types of hypogammaglobulinemia are characterized by low levels of or absent B lymphocytes, such as X-linked Bruton agammaglobulinemia. Serum albumin should be measured in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia to exclude secondary deficiencies due to protein loss through bowel or kidneys. IgG or IgA subclass measurements may be abnormal in patients with varied immunodeficiency syndromes, but they are rarely helpful in an initial evaluation.

T Lymphocytes

The initial laboratory screening for a T-lymphocyte deficiency includes a CBC with cell differential to evaluate for a decreased absolute lymphocyte count (< 1000/μL) and enumeration of absolute numbers of T cells and their subsets, B cells, and NK cells (see Table 33–2). T-cell function can be analyzed by in vitro lymphocyte proliferation assays to mitogens that stimulate all T cells and by specific antigens that stimulate only antigen-specific T cells. Borderline function must be interpreted based on clinical correlation. T-lymphocyte function is often also studied in vivo by delayed hypersensitivity skin tests to specific antigens, including Candida albicans, tetanus, or mumps, but a negative result is not helpful, as it may be due to young age, chronic illness, vitamin D deficiency, or poor test technique. T-lymphocyte deficiencies will often not manifest as skin-test anergy until the impairment is severe, for example, as in AIDS. It is important to evaluate a patient's specific antibody production because proper B-lymphocyte function and antibody production are dependent on adequate T-lymphocyte function. Therefore, most T-lymphocyte deficiencies manifest as combined T- and B-lymphocyte deficiencies.

Phagocyte Immunity

The initial laboratory screening for phagocyte disorders, mainly impaired neutrophil function, should include a CBC and cell differential to look for neutropenia. A blood smear can detect Howell-Jolly bodies in erythrocytes, indicative of asplenia, and abnormalities in lysosomal granules in neutrophils. An abnormality of the neutrophil respiratory burst, which would lead to impaired neutrophil bactericidal

Table 33–1. Clinical features of primary immunodeficiencies.

Characteristic	Combined Deficiency (T- and B-Lymphocyte Defect)	Antibody Deficiency (B-Lymphocyte Defect)	Phagocyte Defect	Complement Defect
Age at onset of infections	Early onset, usually before 6 mo	Onset after maternal antibodies decline, usually after 3–6 mo; some later in childhood or adults	Early onset	Any age
Specific pathogens	**Bacteria**: Streptococcus pneumoniae, Campylobacter fetus, Staphylococcus aureus, Haemophilus influenzae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Mycoplasma hominis, Ureaplasma urealyticum, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella spp, enteric flora, atypical mycobacteria, and BCG **Viruses:** CMV, EBV, varicella, RSV, enterovirus, rotavirus **Fungi/protozoa:** Candida albicans, Aspergillus fumigatus, Toxoplasma gondii **Other:** Pneumocystis carinii, Cryptosporidium	**Bacteria:** Spneumoniae, Cfetus, Hinfluenzae, Paeruginosa, Uurealyticum, Saureus, Mhominis **Viruses:** Enteroviruses **Fungi/protozoa:** Giardia lamblia	**Bacteria:** Saureus, enteric flora, Burkholderia spp, Aspergillus spp, Paeruginosa, Salmonella spp, Serratia spp, Nocardia asteroides, Klebsiella spp, nontuberculous mycobacteria, and BCG **Viruses:** None **Fungi/protozoa**: Calbicans, Afumigatus	**Bacteria:** Neisseria meningitidis and gonorrhoeae, Spneumoniae, Saureus, Paeruginosa, Hinfluenzae **Viruses:** None **Fungi/protozoa:** None Common
Affected organs and infections	**General:** Failure to thrive **Infections:** Severe infections (meningitis, septicemia, sinopulmonary), recurrent candidiasis, protracted diarrhea	**Infections:** Recurrent sinopulmonary, pneumonia, meningitis **GI:** Chronic malabsorption, IBD-like symptoms **Other**: Arthritis	**Skin:** Dermatitis, abscesses, cellulitis **Lymph nodes:** Suppurative adenitis **Oral cavity:** Periodontitis, ulcers **Lungs:** Pneumonia, abscesses **Other:** Liver and brain abscesses, osteomyelitis	**Infections:** Meningitis, disseminated gonococcal infection, septicemia, pneumonia
Special features	GVHD from maternal T cells or blood product transfusion Disseminated infection after BCG or live polio immunization Absent lymphoid tissue Absent thymic shadow on chest radiograph	Autoimmunity Lymphoreticular malignancy Postvaccination polio Chronic enteroviral encephalitis	Poor wound healing Pyloric and urethral stenosis, IBD	**Autoimmune disorders:** SLE, vasculitis, dermatomyositis, scleroderma, glomerulonephritis **Other:** Hereditary angioedema, aHUS

aHUS, atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome; BCG, bacille Calmette-Guérin; CMV, cytomegalovirus; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; GVHD, graft-versus-host disease; IBD, inflammatory bowel disease; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.

activity, can be tested by nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction. The dihydrorhodamine (DHR) flow cytometry assay assesses the same function more quantitatively. Leukocyte adhesion molecules can be studied by flow cytometry. Assays to study neutrophil phagocytosis of bacteria and phagocytic microbicidal activity are available in specialized laboratories. The clinical symptom pattern that suggests a possible defect of phagocytic cell function should dictate which tests are used.

Complement Pathways (Figure 33–3)

Testing for total hemolytic complement activity with the CH50 assay screens for most of the diseases of the complement system. A normal CH50 titer depends on the ability of all 11 components of the classic pathway and membrane attack complex to interact and then lyse antibody-coated sheep erythrocytes. Alternative complement pathway deficiencies are identified by subnormal lysis of

10 Warning signs of primary immunodeficiency

Primary immunodeficiency (PID) causes children and young adults to have infections that come back frequently or are unusually hard to cure. In America alone, up to 1/2 million people suffer from one of the 100 known PID diseases. If you or someone you know are affected by two or more of the following warning signs, speak to a physician about the possible presence of an underlying PID.

1. Four or more new ear infections in 1 y
2. Two or more serious sinus infections within 1 y
3. Two or more months on antibiotics with little effect
4. Two or more pneumonias within 1 y
5. Failure of an infant to gain weight or grow normally
6. Recurrent, deep skin, or organ abscesses
7. Persistent thrush in mouth or fungal infection of skin
8. Need for intravenous antibiotics to clear infections
9. Two or more deep-seated infections, including septicemia
10. A family history of primary immunodeficiency

▲**Figure 33–2.** Warning signs of primary immunodeficiency. (Data from the Jeffrey Modell Foundation.)

Table 33–2. Laboratory evaluation for primary immunodeficiency.

Suspected Defect	Screening Evaluation	Specialist Evaluation
B lymphocyte	• CBC with differential • Quantitative immunoglobulins	• T-cell, B-cell, and NK-cell enumeration • Extended phenotyping of B cells • IgG levels to immunization antigens • DNA analysis for specific genetic mutations
T lymphocyte	• CBC with differential • Quantitative immunoglobulins • T-cell, B-cell, and NK-cell enumeration	• Extended phenotyping of T cells • Lymphocyte proliferation to mitogens and antigens • Delayed-type hypersensitivity skin test • Cytotoxicity studies • ADA or PNP levels of RBC • DNA analysis for specific genetic mutations
Phagocyte	• CBC with differential	• DHR flow cytometry assay, • Nitroblue tetrazolium reduction assay • Bactericidal assays • CD11/18 analysis • Chemotaxis assay
Complement	• CH50 • AH50	• Complement component levels • Complement component function • Complement antibodies

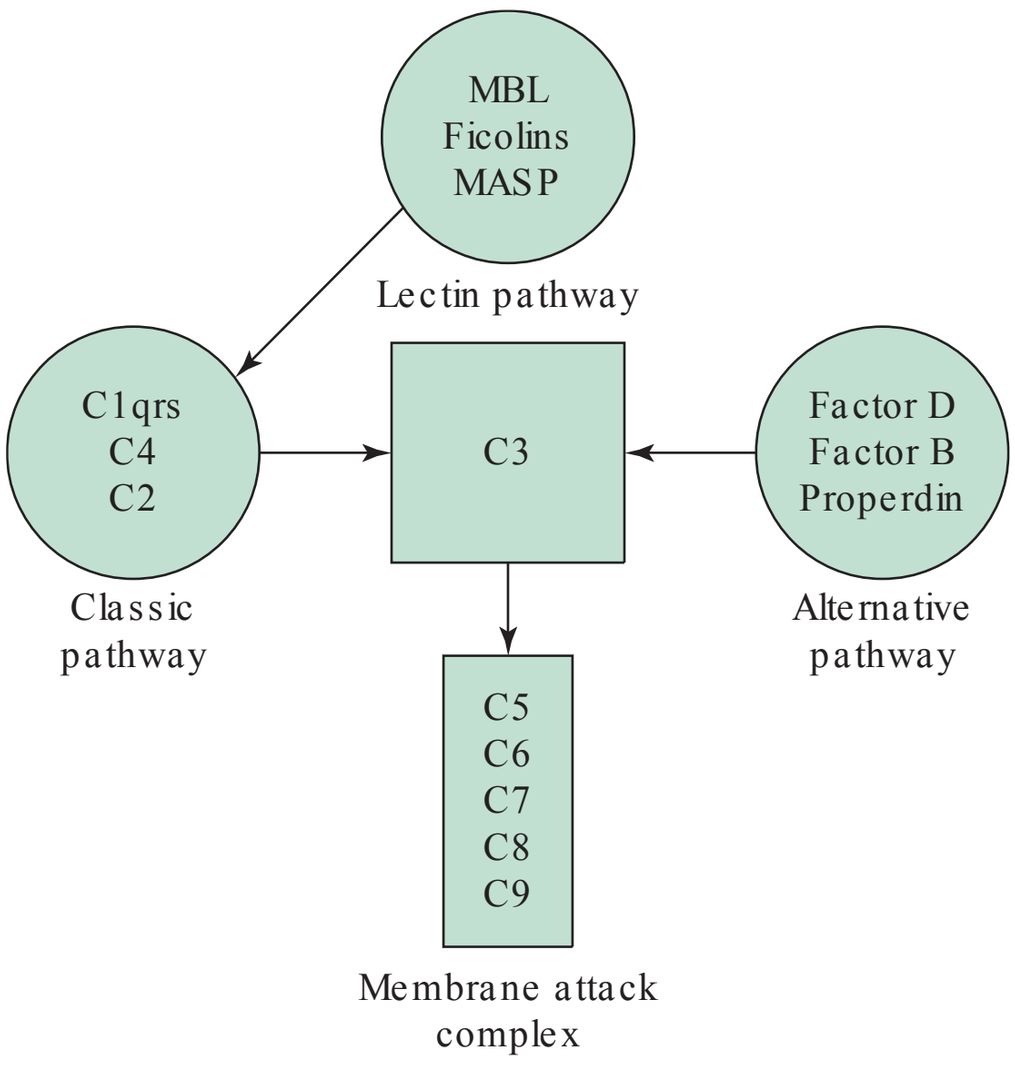
ADA, adenosine deaminase; CBC, complete blood cell count; CD, cluster of differentiation; DHR, dihydrorhodamine; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; NK, natural killer; PNP, purine nucleoside phosphorylase; RBC, red blood cell; WBC, white blood cell.
Adapted, with permission, from Cunningham-Rundles C: Immune deficiency: office evaluation and treatment. Allergy Asthma Proc 2003;24:409–415 [PMID: 14763242].

Table 33–3. Normal values for immunoglobulins by age.

Age	IgG(mg/dL)	IgM(mg/dL)	IgA(mg/dL)
Newborn	1031 ± 200	11 ± 7	2 ± 3
1–3 mo	430 ± 119	30 ± 11	21 ± 13
4–6 mo	427 ± 186	43 ± 17	28 ± 18
7–12 mo	661 ± 219	55 ± 23	37 ± 18
13–24 mo	762 ± 209	58 ± 23	50 ± 24
25–36 mo	892 ± 183	61 ± 19	71 ± 34
3–5 y	929 ± 228	56 ± 18	93 ± 27
6–8 y	923 ± 256	65 ± 25	124 ± 45
9–11 y	1124 ± 235	79 ± 33	131 ± 60
12–16 y	946 ± 124	59 ± 20	148 ± 63
Adults	1158 ± 305	99 ± 27	200 ± 61

Adapted, with permission, from Stiehm ER et al: Immunologic Disorders of Infants and Children. 5th ed. Elsevier; 2004.

rabbit erythrocytes in the AH50 assay. For both assays, the patient's serum must be separated and frozen at –70°C within 30–60 minutes after collection to prevent loss of activity. Measuring levels of individual components is not necessary when both CH50 and AH50 are normal. If both the CH50 and AH50 are low, a deficiency in their shared terminal pathway (C3, C5, C6, C7, C8, or C9) would be the most common explanation. If the CH50 is low but the AH50 is normal, the deficiency must affect C1, C4, C2, or components of the lectin pathway. If the AH50 is low but the CH50 is normal, a deficiency in factors D or B or properdin should be suspected.



▲**Figure 33–3.** Pathways of complement activation and the central functional role of C3. MASP, MBL-associated serine protease; MBL, mannose-binding lectin.

Pattern-Recognition Receptors

Selected laboratories offer tests to assess Toll-like receptor (TLR) function upon stimulation with ligands for different TLRs that have been identified. Mannose-binding lectin levels can be measured in clinical laboratories. However, expression or function of pattern recognition receptors and associated gene mutations are studied mostly in a research setting at the current time.

SEVERE COMBINED IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISEASES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Onset in first year of life.
- Recurrent infections caused by bacteria, viruses, fungi, and opportunistic pathogens.
- Chronic diarrhea and failure to thrive.
- Absent lymphoid tissue.

» General Considerations

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID) is a group of rare immunologic disorders with the defining characteristic of severe deficiency of T-cell function and/or number. Due to the centrality of T cells in the immune system, the severity of T-cell deficit results in widespread immunologic dysfunction and broad susceptibility to infection. Left untreated, SCID uniformly results in death before the first year of life. The treatment approach varies depending on the underlying molecular defect, but for the majority of patients with SCID, the optimal treatment is hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT). Transplant outcomes are favorable if performed within the first 3 months of life, or if performed prior to the onset of SCID-associated chronic infections. Newborn screening efforts have therefore been implemented to identify and transplant these patients soon after birth. Suspected SCID is a medical emergency, and both the necessary steps to confirm diagnosis and the initiation of treatment must be performed rapidly.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

SCID frequently presents with opportunistic, unusual, and persistent infection. Common organisms include but are not limited to Pneumocystis jiroveci, candidiasis, and cytomegalovirus. In the absence of an identified microorganism, SCID may present with any combination of the following: failure to thrive, chronic diarrhea, or unexplained chronic respiratory illness. Physical examination is notable for a lack of lymphoid tissue, including tonsils and lymph nodes. A chest radiograph usually demonstrates an absent thymic shadow.

B. Laboratory Findings

The characteristic feature of SCID is the deficiency in production of T cells by the host. Endogenous production of T cells can be verified by quantifying T-cell receptor rearrangement excision circles (TRECs) in blood or by measuring the expression of CD31 on peripheral blood T cells. The presence of normal numbers of lymphocytes in a CBC or even normal numbers of CD4 T cells does not rule out SCID because of the possibility of either maternally derived T-cell populations or abnormally expanded endogenous T-cell populations with severely limited diversity. Associated laboratory findings can include decreases in numbers of NK cells and B cells, poor lymphocyte proliferative response to mitogens, and low immunoglobulin levels. Genetic testing should be pursued to confirm the diagnosis; although, treatment should not be delayed while awaiting results of genetic testing. Known genetic etiologies of SCID are listed in Table 33–4.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of SCID must be carefully considered as misdiagnosis could potentially result in unwarranted HSCT. Disorders that result in either the abnormal loss or compartmentalization of lymphatic fluid such as chylothorax, lymphangiectasia, gastroschisis, and omphalocele can result in the apparent absence of endogenously generated T cells even though they are actually being normally produced. HIV disease can result in severe deficiency of CD4 T cells and the same infections seen in SCID. Prematurity can be associated with abnormally low TREC levels but these levels ultimately increase with increasing gestational age.

» Treatment

A variety of therapies are used in the treatment of SCID. These therapies include HSCT, gene therapy, thymus transplant, and enzyme replacement. Choice of therapy depends upon the specific genetic defect, age at diagnosis, access to a suitable HSCT donor, and comorbidities. To optimize the outcome of any chosen definitive therapy, concerted effort must be made to prevent clinical deterioration in the waiting period. Antimicrobial prophylaxis should be initiated with the aim of preventing pulmonary infection with Pneumocystis, as well as other fungal pathogens. Antiviral prophylaxis can be considered as well. Replacement Ig therapy should be initiated. Patients with suspected SCID should only be transfused with CMV-negative, irradiated blood products, and they should not receive any live vaccines. If the patient has received BCG vaccination, specific therapy should be considered. Isolation precautions should be initiated, and if the mother is CMV-positive, breast-feeding should be discouraged. Additional precautions can be tailored based on the individual risk factor of the patient.

SCID Classification

» Defective T-cell Development

T cells develop in a multiple stage process fostered by supporting cells and directive cytokines. Problems with the production or sensing of these developmental signals can result in a severe deficit of T-cell number. T-cell intrinsic developmental defects include genetic deficiency in components of the IL-7R signaling complex, including IL2RG, IL7RA, and JAK3. Defective integration of signals present in the thymus can be seen in ZAP-70 deficiency, CD45 deficiency, and deficiency of the delta-epsilon, and gamma-subunits of the CD3 complex.

Deficiency in the RAG recombination machinery and nonhomologous end joining machinery (NHEJ) prevent the formation of a functionally rearranged T-cell receptor and result in absence of T cells with the NHEJ-caused deficiency also being associated with radiation sensitivity. Primary absence of the thymus prevents development of mature T cells in severe presentations of 22q11 deletion syndrome, CHARGE syndrome, and deficiency of FOXN1.

» Impaired T-cell Survival

Impaired T-cell survival is seen in deficiency of both adenosine deaminase (ADA) and purine nucleoside phosphorylase (PNP), as well as reticular dysgenesis and dyskeratosis congenita. ADA and PNP are components of purine salvage in lymphocytes, and loss of theses enzymes results in buildup of toxic purine by-products. Dyskeratosis congenita results from abnormal telomere maintenance and results in survival defects in hematologic cells. Reticular dysgenesis is possibly the most severe form of combined immunodeficiency, resulting from deficient adenylate kinase 2 (AK2), an enzyme involved in apoptosis. Defects in the one-carbon pathway, including defects in TCN2 and defects in MTHFD1 can result in severe deficiency of hematopoietic cells.

» Impaired T-cell Function

Few syndromes have been identified where T cells mature normally despite a residual impairment in T-cell receptor

Table 33–4. Severe combined immunodeficiency classification.

	Genes Containing Defects	Likely Etiology	Characteristic Features
Defective T-cell development			
• **Defective IL7R signaling**	IL2RG, IL7RA, JAK3	IL-7 signaling is essential for T-cell development.	• IL2RG- and JAK3-deficiency have associated absence of NK cells and functional B-cell deficiency.
• **Defective T-cell receptor (TCR) signaling**	ZAP70, PTPRC, CD3D, CD3G, CD3E	TCR signaling is essential for T-cell development.	• ZAP70 has apparent deficiency of only CD8 T cells but CD4 T cells are also nonfunctional. • B cells are not affected.
• **RAG-recombination defect**	RAG1, RAG2	Functional TCR is not formed.	• Both B and T cells are deficient. NK cells are unaffected.
• **NHEJ-recombination defect**	LIG4, NHEJ1, DCLRE1C, PRKDC	Functional TCR is not formed.	• Both B and T cells are deficient. NK cells are unaffected. • Body wide sensitivity to radiation toxicity • Can be associated with microcephaly and other syndromic features
• **Absent thymus function**	22q11 deletion, CHARGE syndrome, FOXN1	Thymus is essential for T-cell development.	• B cell counts generally are not affected. • FOXN1 deficiency is associated with nail dysplasia.
Impaired T-cell Survival			
• **Impaired purine salvage**	ADA, PNP	Toxic metabolites	• B cell, T cell, and NK cells deficient
• **Dyskeratosis congenita** (Hoyeraal-Hreidarsson Syndrome)	DKC1, ACD (TPP1), TINF2, TERT, RTEL1	Telomere maintenance is severely defective.	• Associated IUGR and cerebellar hypoplasia
• **Reticular dysgenesis**	AK2	Possible cellular energy imbalance	• Associated with agranulocytosis and deficiency of all lymphocytes, but normal erythrocyte and platelet formation
• **One-Carbon Pathway**	TCN2, MTHFD1	Unclear	• Associated neurodegenerative defect • Megaloblastic anemia • Patients improve with adequate supplementation.
• **Ribosomal Defect**	RMRP	Unclear	• Associated with short-limb dwarfism
Impaired T-cell function			
• **Ca^{2+}-signaling defect**	STIM1, ORAI1	IL-7 signaling is essential for T-cell development.	• IL2RG- and JAK3-deficiency have associated absence of NK cells and functional B-cell deficiency.
• **Antigens to cells**	CD3G, CD3E	Impaired T-cell development and signal transduction	• B cells are not affected.

(TCR) signaling that results in susceptibility to infections typically seen in T-cell deficiency syndromes. In STIM1 and ORAI1 deficiency, defective mobilization of store-operated calcium channels results in inadequate activation of peripheral T cells despite normal numbers. In MHC Class II deficiency, normal T cells are unable to respond to antigen because it is not presented by antigen presenting cells.

Omenn Syndrome

Omenn syndrome is a presentation of SCID caused by residual autoreactive T cells in the absence of T-cell immune competence. The syndrome can include severe rash, failure to thrive, splenomegaly, diarrhea, eosinophilia, and elevated IgE in association with typical infections seen in conventional SCID. T-cell numbers are elevated, but detailed phenotyping reveals the majority of T cells to have a memory phenotype (CD45RO-positive). Omenn syndrome has been tied to mutations in genes known to cause conventional SCID, arising in part due to mutation-specific factors and partly due to the individual susceptibility of the patient. A similar clinical presentation occurs in SCID patients who have engrafted maternal T cells.

Pai SY et al: Transplantation outcomes for severe combined immunodeficiency, 2000-2009. N Engl J Med 2014;371:434–446 [PMID: 25075835].

Rivers L, Gaspar HB: Severe combined immunodeficiency: recent developments and guidance on clinical management. Arch Dis Child 2015;100:667–672 [PMID: 25564533].

ANTIBODY DEFICIENCY SYNDROMES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Recurrent bacterial infections, typically due to encapsulated pyogenic bacteria.
- Low immunoglobulin levels.
- Inability to make specific antibodies to vaccine antigens or infections.

» General Considerations

Antibody deficiency syndromes include both congenital and acquired forms of hypogammaglobulinemia with low levels of one or more of the immunoglobulins IgM, IgG, and IgA. As a group, antibody deficiencies represent nearly half of all PIDs. They can be divided into (1) defects of B-cell development; (2) defects in Ig class switching; (3) and functional B-cell deficiency. Table 33–5 outlines primary antibody deficiency syndromes, laboratory findings, and genetic inheritance in these disorders.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

For patients with antibody deficiency, specific infectious susceptibility and other features of immune dysregulation are dependent upon the specific cause of antibody deficiency. In isolated early B-cell development defects, such as X-linked agammaglobulinemia, infections are limited to encapsulated bacteria, mycoplasma species, and enterovirus species. In the class-switching defect caused by defective CD40L, infectious susceptibility can include Pneumocystis and Cryptosporidium, whereas class switching defects caused by absence of AICDA or UNG can include lymphoproliferation and autoimmunity. Functional defects in B cells or B-cell activation, such as in combined immunodeficiency syndromes or common variable immunodeficiency (CVID) syndromes will include infectious susceptibility dependent on the underlying molecular defect. Antibody deficiency therefore represents a broad and somewhat heterogeneous grouping whose individual features depend on the root cause of immune abnormality.

Independent of underlying cause, untreated antibody deficiency results in typical infections. Pulmonary infection can be severe and chronic, resulting in bronchiectasis or other permanent lung damage. Severe pulmonary infections are generally preceded by chronic, recurrent middle ear and sinus infections. Additional infections can include bacteremia, bacterial meningitis, skin infection, and joint infection. Other sites of infection can arise depending on the underlying genetic defect.

B. Laboratory Findings

Numerous blood tests are available for the investigation of antibody production. Serum immunoglobulin levels are routinely tested and reference values are widely accessible. Antibodies to a particular antigen are measured to ensure that antibody production is specific. For instance, the amount of antibody to tetanus toxoid is frequently measured because the tetanus toxoid vaccine is routinely administered in developed countries. Vaccine titers to pneumococcal serotypes are frequently measured following vaccination with the unconjugated polysaccharide S pneumoniae vaccine. The increase in titers represents the ability of B cells to form antibodies in the absence of T-cell costimulation. Production of allo-specific IgM to red cell antigens is also a measure of T-cell independent antibody formation. When abnormalities are detected in immunoglobulin levels or antibody production, lymphocyte surface phenotyping may reveal additional aspects of the underlying abnormality, such as B- or T-cell deficiency.

The characteristic feature of antibody deficiency is the absence or severe deficiency of one of the three predominant immunoglobulins found in blood, IgG, IgA, or IgM. All three immunoglobulin isotypes are severely reduced in early B-cell development defects; although, IgG deficiency is rarely seen in children younger than 4 months due to the presence of placentally transferred maternal IgG. In class switching defects, IgM production can be normal or elevated, whereas production of IgG and IgA is deficient. In functional B-cell deficiencies, a combination of antibody production abnormalities may be detected. For instance, CVID is defined by

Table 33–5. Antibody deficiency disorders.

	Genes Containing Defects	Likely Etiology	Characteristic Features
Defects in B-cell development			
• **Defect in developmental signal**	TCF3, IKZF1, LRRC8A	Commitment to B-cell lineage affected	• Peripheral B cells < 2% of lymphocyte count
• **Defect in pre–B-cell receptor (BCR)**	IGHM, IGLL1, CD79A, CD79B,	B-cell development requires functional pre-BCR	• Peripheral B cells < 2% of lymphocyte count
• **Defect in pre-BCR downstream signaling**	BLNK, BTK	Pre-BCR signaling inadequate to support further development	• Peripheral B cells < 2% of lymphocyte count
• **Block at Transitional B-cell stage**	CARD11	Unclear	• Normal total B-cell numbers with decreased maturation beyond the transitional B-cell stage • Regulatory T-cell numbers reduced
Class-switching defects			
• **Defect in CD40L-CD40 interaction**	CD40L, CD40	CD40L signal initiates class switching	• Typically high IgM levels • No germinal centers • Susceptible to some typical T-cell deficiency-associated infections such as pneumocystis pneumonia and cryptosporidial infection • Associated with biliary malignancy possibly from chronic infection
• **Defect in genomic rearrangement**	AICDA, UNG	Rearrangement of the IgH constant region is defective	• Normal B-cell numbers • Associated with significant autoimmunity • Large germinal center reactions because proliferative signaling remains intact
• **Varied**	IKBKG, IKBA, PIK3CD	Unclear	• Usually associated with predominant T-cell abnormalities
Functional antibody deficiency			
• **Common variable immunodeficiency (CVID)**	Unknown	Heterogeneous	• Normal or low IgM, low IgG, low IgA, poor specific antibody production
• **Monogenetic syndromes previously characterized as CVID**	TACI, BAFFR, ICOS, CD19, TNFRSF13C, CD20, CD81, CD225	Impaired signaling through B-cell coreceptors	• Normal or low IgM, low IgG, low IgA, poor specific antibody production
• **Combined immunodeficiency syndromes**	CD21, CD27, PIK3D gain of function	Impaired signaling through molecules present in B and T cells	• Normal or low IgM, low IgG, low IgA, poor specific antibody production • T-cell dysfunction
Selective immunoglobulin deficiencies			
• **IgG subclass deficiency**	IGHG1, IGHG2, IGHG3, IGHG4	Defects of isotype differentiation	• Decrease in one or more IgG isotypes
• **IgA deficiency**	IGAD1	Defect in IgA production	• Decrease or absent IgA
• **Specific antibody deficiency**	Unknown	Unclear	• Deficient antibody response to polysaccharide antigens

the combination of poor vaccine response and a decrease in blood levels of IgG in conjunction with a severe decrease in levels of either IgM or IgA, or a decrease of both.

Blood cell abnormalities also vary according to the underlying cause of antibody deficiency. The majority of early B-cell development defects are limited to the B-cell compartment, and as a result, B-cell numbers are severely reduced, but levels of other blood cells are usually within normal limits. In class switching defects, peripheral B-cell numbers will also approach normal levels. On the other hand, functional antibody deficiency can arise in any combination of deficiency of specific lymphocyte subsets and other blood cells. For these deficiencies, the underlying genetic abnormality is most relevant to understand the resulting hematologic abnormality.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of antibody deficiency includes secondary causes of decreased amount of immunoglobulin in the peripheral blood. Several medications are known to specifically decrease immunoglobulin levels in the blood. For some of these medications, the mechanism is idiosyncratic. For others, low immunoglobulin levels result from inhibition of normal B-cell development processes, such as in chronic prednisone use, or they result from direct effects on the B-cell compartment, such as with rituximab therapy. Additional secondary causes of low immunoglobulin include protein-losing states, malnutrition, and autoimmune conditions.

» Treatment

Treatment of antibody syndromes is primarily directed at preventing bacterial infection. The primary intervention in achieving this goal is replacing deficient IgG. There are no formulations of isolated IgM or IgA used in clinical practice. Some centers advocate the use of prophylactic antibiotic therapy. In combined immunodeficiency or antibody deficiency syndromes with associated autoimmunity, immunosuppressive therapy or even hematopoietic stem cell transplantation may be required.

Antibody Deficiency Classification

» Defective B-cell Development

Aborted B-cell development can occur at multiple developmental stages. Initially, B cells develop from precursors in the bone marrow in a process that is dependent on the generation of a functioning rearranged B-cell receptor. In the absence of the ability to transmit signals through a B-cell receptor, B cells do not continue development. Consistent with this model of B-cell development, congenital defects in several of the proteins essential for the formation and signaling of the B-cell receptor have been identified as causes of severe B-cell deficiency. Additional blocks in B-cell development have been identified prior to the expression of the B-cell receptor and also later in development as cells approach the naïve B-cell stage.

Patients with defects in B-cell development are generally immunologically normal with the exception of a severe reduction of B cells in the blood and infections that result from their absence. Patients with early defects have little detectable lymphoid tissue, and upon physical examination, one may find an absence of tonsils or palpable lymph nodes. Patients with later defects may have palpable lymphoid tissue. In both groups, the spleen is generally normal in size.

» Class Switching Defects

Normal immunoglobulin isotype class switching occurs in germinal centers in response to antigenic and T-cell costimulatory signals, and the class switching defects involve severe dysfunction of this process. Defects in either T-cell surface CD40L or B-cell surface CD40 impair the initial step in the class-switching cascade, and as a result, no class switching occurs. Further downstream, defects in either AICDA or UNG impair class switching by preventing the formation of double stranded breaks that are essential for the genomic rearrangement required to switch isotypes. Defects in RAG proteins and NHEJ proteins impair this process at an earlier step, preventing B-cell development, so are not considered to result in class switching abnormalities. Additional defects in class switching can be seen with genetic abnormalities in the NF-κB and also PIK3D activating mutations, but in either case, the class switching phenotype can be variable.

Class switching presents with various associated features depending on the genetic cause. Defects in CD40L and CD40 can have risk of associated opportunistic infection with Pneumocystis and Cryptosporidium, and they have hypoplastic lymphoid tissue. Patients with defective AICDA can have associated autoimmunity, including ITP, hemolytic anemia, autoimmune hepatitis, inflammatory bowel disease, arthritis, and interstitial lung disease. Both AICDA and UNG deficient patients suffer from lymphoid hyperplasia.

Transient Hypogammaglobulinemia

Serum IgG levels normally decrease during an infant's first 4–6 months of life as maternal IgG transmitted in utero is metabolized. Transient hypogammaglobulinemia represents a delay in the onset of immunoglobulin synthesis that results in a prolonged nadir. Symptomatic patients present with recurrent infections, including upper respiratory tract infections, otitis, and sinusitis. The diagnosis is suspected in infants and young children with low levels of IgG and IgA (usually two standard deviations below normal for age), but normal levels of IgM and normal numbers of circulating B lymphocytes. Most affected children have normal specific antibody responses and T-lymphocyte function. Apart from appropriate antibiotics, no treatment is required. Infants

with severe infections and hypogammaglobulinemia could be given Ig replacement, but benefits and risk must be considered and this is rarely necessary. Recovery occurs between 18 and 30 months of age, and the prognosis for affected children is excellent provided infections are treated promptly and appropriately.

Functional Antibody Deficiency

The group of functional antibody deficiency disorders includes any disorder in which a persistent deficiency in immunoglobulin production has been identified, and the deficiency is not the result of a secondary cause. This group includes genetic syndromes, combined immunodeficiency syndromes, CVID, and monogenetic syndromes previously classified as CVID. As expected, this group contains highly variable phenotypes, in part due to the variety of associated non-B–cell immune abnormalities, and also due to modifying factors in the individual. If possible, understanding the underlying genetic defect of the individual syndrome dramatically improves the ability to anticipate additional complications and decide on treatment approaches. Even the need for immunoglobulin G replacement therapy will vary from individual to individual.

» Monogenetic Causes of Functional Antibody Deficiency

A number of monogenetic causes of functional antibody deficiency have been identified in scattered individuals that had previously been diagnosed with CVID. These syndromes encompass the range of phenotypes conventionally included in the broad category of CVID. Severe defects in the classic B-cell coreceptor complex, including CD19, CD21, CD81, and CD225 have been identified in individuals mainly with poor antibody response and infections that would be expected to follow. These defects presumably arise from an impaired germinal center reaction to foreign antigens in lymph nodes. Similar phenotypes were shown to result both with defects in other B-cell coreceptors such as BAFFR or TACI and also with defects in molecules that signal through these receptors such as ICOS. Additional syndromes that include involvement of T-cell dysfunction as well as functional antibody deficiency have been identified in molecules that function in both cell types. These syndromes include, but are not limited to, CD27 deficiency, PIK3D gain of function, and IL-21 deficiency. Additional syndromes with predominant features outside of functional antibody deficiency are discussed later in the chapter.

» CVID

Common variable immunodeficiency is a heterogeneous category of functional antibody deficiencies in which no other more appropriate classification is available. CVID is defined by the combination of poor vaccine response and a decrease in blood levels of IgG in conjunction with a severe decrease in levels of either IgM or IgA, or a decrease of both (see Table 33–5). Associated cellular abnormalities can include reduced numbers of memory B-cell subsets in the blood, as well as T-cell lymphopenia. Patients have recurrent infections, most often of the sinopulmonary tract, but chronic gastrointestinal infections may manifest with recurrent diarrhea. Patients with CVID are at risk for developing bronchiectasis, autoimmune diseases (idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, rheumatoid arthritis, and inflammatory bowel disease), and malignancies (especially gastric carcinoma and lymphoma).

Selective Immunoglobulin Deficiencies

Deficiency of an IgA or an IgG subclass can be seen in the presence of both recurrent infections and other immune abnormalities; however, these deficiencies are often seen in the absence of any other identifiable immune abnormality. With an incidence of 1:700, isolated IgA deficiency is a common laboratory finding. The majority of patients with isolated IgA deficiency are asymptomatic, but associations also exist with inflammatory bowel disease, allergic disease, asthma, and autoimmune disorders (thyroiditis, arthritis, vitiligo, thrombocytopenia, and diabetes). Deficiency of IgG subclasses 2–4 can be identified in the absence of other laboratory immune abnormalities; whereas, severe deficiency of IgG1 universally presents with an overall decrease in total IgG levels because it makes up the majority of IgG detectable in the blood. Deficiency of IgG2 can be seen in association with decreased IgA, and in that context, it is suggestive of an underlying functional antibody deficiency with a possibly identifiable genetic cause. IgG3 and IgG4 make up the smallest fraction of the total IgG pool, and in the absence of any other immune abnormality, deficiency of either of these IgG subclasses is generally not considered to cause increased susceptibility to infection. IgG replacement is not indicated in either IgA deficiency or IgG subclass deficiency when no other quantitative or functional immune abnormality has been identified. When other immune abnormalities are seen, antibody deficiency syndromes listed elsewhere in this chapter should be considered.

Durandy A, Kracker S, Fischer A: Primary antibody deficiencies. Nat Rev Immunol 2013;13:519033 [PMID: 23830147].

OTHER COMBINED IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISORDERS

Combined immunodeficiencies include defects that directly impair both T and B lymphocytes, as well as T-lymphocyte–specific defects, because proper B-lymphocyte function and antibody production are dependent on T-lymphocyte help.

Therefore, most T-lymphocyte deficiencies manifest as combined impairments.

1. Wiskott-Aldrich Syndrome

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Immunodeficiency with recurrent infections.
- Microplatelet thrombocytopenia.
- Eczema.
- Occurs only in males.

General Considerations

Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is an XL recessive disease characterized by immunodeficiency, microplatelet thrombocytopenia, and eczema. The syndrome results from mutations of the gene encoding WAS protein (WASP) at X11p. WASP is a protein involved in the rearrangement of actin and is important in interactions between T lymphocytes and antigen-presenting cells.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Common presenting symptoms include mucosal bleeding, bloody diarrhea, cerebral hemorrhage, and severe infections with polysaccharide-encapsulated bacteria, but the clinical presentation can vary from classic severe WAS to mild thrombocytopenia without immunodeficiency, or X-linked thrombocytopenia (XLT), depending on the mutation. Early deaths are due to bleeding and infections, but malignancies and autoimmune syndromes can develop over time. Survival beyond adolescence is rare in patients not receiving treatment, although XLT is sometimes diagnosed in adults.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings that suggest the diagnosis are a low platelet count, small platelets, low or absent isohemagglutinins, and reduced antibody responses to polysaccharide antigens (S pneumoniae and H influenzae). IgM may be low; IgG is usually normal; and IgA and IgE are often high. The diagnosis can be confirmed by genetic testing for a mutation of the WASP gene or by assessing WASP expression. Genetic testing can also be used for carrier screening.

Differential Diagnosis

In addition to WAS and XLT, the differential diagnosis in a patient with a low platelet count must include other causes of platelet consumption, destruction, and abnormal production, such as idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, leukemia or myelodysplasia, drug adverse effect, and infection. WAS can be differentiated from these other conditions by small-sized platelets on smear evaluation, the presence of eczema and other atopic features, and documented immune dysfunction. Additionally, there is a continuous spectrum between WAS and XLT that lacks immunodeficiency. Subsequently, a scoring system has been developed to help clinicians distinguish WAS from XLT.

Treatment

Treatment includes infection prophylaxis with antibiotics (including trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia) and IVIG-replacement therapy for patients with deficient antibody responses. Splenectomy to reduce thrombocytopenia has been helpful in some patients with XLT, but it must be followed by antibiotic prophylaxis because of the increased risk of septicemia and sudden death. Platelet transfusions should be avoided unless severe bleeding has occurred. Finally, BMT using the best-matched donor offers the possibility of a definitive cure, but it is associated with morbidity and mortality.

2. 22q11.2 Deletion Syndrome (DiGeorge Syndrome)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Congenital heart defects.
- Hypocalcemia and seizures.
- Distinctive craniofacial features.
- Thymic hypoplasia.

General Considerations

DiGeorge syndrome or 22q11.2 deletion syndrome is an AD syndrome, resulting in defective development of the third and fourth pharyngeal pouches. There is considerable variability in phenotype based on the location and extent of the deletion, but deletions that include the TBX1 gene appear relevant. Overlapping syndromes include velocardiofacial syndrome and Shprintzen syndrome. The incidence is about 1:4000 births, and the abnormal chromosome is usually inherited from the mother. The associated immunodeficiency is secondary to the aplastic or hypoplastic thymus, where T-lymphocyte maturation occurs. Surprisingly, most patients have no or only mild immune defects. The term

partial DiGeorge syndrome is commonly applied to these patients with impaired rather than absent thymic function.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical characteristics include congenital heart defects, hypocalcemia due to hypoparathyroidism, distinctive craniofacial features, renal anomalies, and thymic hypoplasia. Presentation usually results from cardiac failure or from hypocalcemia 24–48 hours postpartum. The diagnosis is sometimes made during the course of cardiac surgery when no thymus is found in the mediastinum. Infections commonly present as recurrent ENT (ear-nose-throat) infections. Additional important clinical issues include delayed speech, cognitive impairment, and behavioral problems. Patients have an increased risk to develop schizophrenia and autoimmune disorders.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory evaluation typically reveals normal to decreased numbers of T lymphocytes with preserved T-lymphocyte function and normal B-lymphocyte function. In the rare patient with absent or dysfunctional T lymphocytes, B-lymphocyte function and antibody production may be abnormal. Over time, T-lymphocyte numbers normalize in the majority of patients who have low numbers of T lymphocytes at initial presentation. The diagnosis is confirmed via fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) chromosomal analysis for the microdeletion on chromosome 22, or microarray-based comparative genomic hybridization.

» Treatment

Treatment of the 22q11.2 deletion syndrome may require surgery for cardiac defects, and vitamin D, calcium, or parathyroid hormone replacement to correct hypocalcemia and treat seizures. Transfusion products should be irradiated. Both thymic grafts and BMT have been used successfully in patients with absent T-lymphocyte immunity. Prior to giving live vaccines, T-cell numbers and function should be assessed if not done earlier, to prevent vaccine-related side effects.

3. Ataxia-Telangiectasia

Ataxia-telangiectasia (A-T) is a rare, neurodegenerative, AR-inherited disorder caused by mutations in the ataxia-telangiectasia–mutated (ATM) gene located on chromosome 11q22–23 that encodes the ATM protein, a protein kinase involved in repair of double-stranded DNA and cell cycle regulation. A-T is characterized by progressive cerebellar ataxia, telangiectasia, and variable immunodeficiency. Children usually present as toddlers with slurred speech and balance problems, and also with sinopulmonary infections. Telangiectasias of the conjunctivae and exposed areas (eg, nose, ears, and shoulders) follow later during childhood. Respiratory tract infections promoted by respiratory muscle weakness, swallowing dysfunction and recurrent aspirations, and malignancies, including carcinomas and lymphomas, are the major causes of death between the second and fourth decade of life. Abnormal findings in A-T include elevated serum α-fetoprotein levels that increase over time and are used diagnostically; immunoglobulin deficiencies, including low levels of IgA, IgE, or IgG; and defective ability to repair radiation-induced DNA fragmentation. There is no definitive treatment, although Ig replacement and aggressive antibiotics have been used with limited success. Heterozygotes have an increased risk for breast cancer.

Similarly to A-T, the **Nijmegen breakage** syndrome is a disorder associated with impaired DNA repair and mutations in the NBS1 gene that shows more severe clinical features, including microcephaly and facial dysmorphisms, small stature, immunodeficiency, and increased risk for lymphoid malignancies.

4. X-Linked Hyper-IgM Syndrome

X-linked hyper-IgM (HIGM) syndrome or CD40L deficiency is the most common and most severe form of HIGM syndrome and involves a mutation in the gene encoding for CD40L (CD154). CD40L is expressed on activated T lymphocytes and necessary for T cells to induce immunoglobulin isotype switching in B cells. Unlike the AR forms of HIGM syndrome, the mutation results in both antibody- and cell-mediated deficiencies, as the interaction between CD40L on T cells and CD40 on B cells and antigen-presenting cells is important for both antibody production and T-cell activation. Affected males have normal numbers of B lymphocytes, low levels of IgG and IgA, but normal or elevated levels of IgM. Typically, male infants present with recurrent bacterial and opportunistic infections such as P carinii pneumonia or Cryptosporidium diarrhea. Additionally, affected males have a high frequency of sclerosing cholangitis, increased liver and biliary tract carcinomas, neutropenia, and autoimmune syndromes, including thrombocytopenia, arthritis, and inflammatory bowel disease. Conservative treatment includes Ig replacement and antibiotic prophylaxis. Because the prognosis is still quite poor, BMT has been used with initial success.

5. NF-κB Signaling defects

Immunodeficiency due to mutations in the gene for nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB)–essential modulator (NEMO; IKBKG gene) is an XL syndrome in which male patients manifest ectodermal dysplasia (abnormal, conical teeth, fine sparse hair, and abnormal or absent sweat glands) and defects of T and B lymphocytes. NF-κB is involved in signaling through

CD40 on B cells, and NEMO mutations result in abnormal immunoreceptor signaling. Many mutations are fatal in utero for male infants. Female carriers may have incontinentia pigmenti. Surviving males present with early serious infections, including opportunistic infections with P carinii and atypical mycobacteria. Laboratory evaluation reveals hypogammaglobulinemia that may present as HIGM syndrome and poor specific antibody production, but normal numbers of T and B lymphocytes. Functional evaluation of lymphocytes demonstrates variable response. Because patients with confirmed NEMO mutations are quite rare, the best treatment course is unknown, but aggressive antibiotic therapy in combination with Ig replacement as well as BMT has been used. The prognosis is dependent on the severity of immunodeficiency, with most deaths due to infection. Mutations in the NF-κBIA gene that encodes IκBα (nuclear factor of kappa light polypeptide gene enhancer in B-cell inhibitor alpha) result in an AD-inherited defect with similar clinical presentation.

6. Combined Immunodeficiency With Defective Expression of MHC I & II

Major histocompatibility complex class I (MHC I) deficiency or bare lymphocyte syndrome type I is an AR-combined immunodeficiency. Affected patients have abnormal expression of the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP). TAP proteins are important for intracellular transport and expression of MHC I on cell surfaces. Patients with bare lymphocyte syndrome type I present with recurrent sinopulmonary and skin infections. The diagnosis is confirmed by demonstrating an absence of MHC I expression.

Major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC II) deficiency or bare lymphocyte syndrome type II is a rare AR-combined immunodeficiency in which cells lack MHC II expression due to mutations in CIITA, RFX-5, RFXAP, or RFXANK genes. Clinical presentation includes recurrent viral, bacterial, and fungal infections. Patients with bare lymphocyte syndrome type II have normal numbers of T and B lymphocytes, but low $CD4^+$ lymphocyte numbers, abnormal lymphocyte function, and hypogammaglobulinemia. They also have a high incidence of sclerosing cholangitis. When this diagnosis is suspected, demonstration of absent MHC II molecules confirms the disorder. Severe cases are fatal without BMT, but milder phenotypes may be managed with Ig replacement and aggressive use of antibiotics.

Kersseboom R et al: Educational paper: syndromic forms of primary immunodeficiency. Eur J Pediatr 2011;170:295–308 [PMID: 21337117].

PHAGOCYTE DISORDERS

Phagocyte defects include abnormalities of both numbers (neutropenia) and function of polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Functional defects consist of impairments in adhesion, chemotaxis, bacterial killing, or, less often, of combinations of these.

1. Neutropenia

The presence of neutropenia should be considered when evaluating recurrent infections. The diagnosis and treatment of neutropenia is discussed in Chapter 30. Additionally, some PID syndromes are associated with neutropenia (eg, XLA).

2. Chronic Granulomatous Disease

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Recurrent infections with catalase-positive bacteria and fungi.
- XL and AR forms.
- Caused by abnormal phagocytosis-associated generation of microbicidal oxygen metabolites (respiratory burst) by neutrophils, monocytes, and macrophages.

» General Considerations

Chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) is caused by a defect in any of several genes encoding proteins in the enzyme complex nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase, which results in defective superoxide and hydrogen peroxide generation during ingestion of microbes. Most cases (probably 75%) are inherited as an XL recessive trait; the rest are AR in inheritance.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The typical clinical presentation is characterized by recurrent abscess formation in subcutaneous tissue, lymph nodes, lungs, and liver, and by pneumonia and eczematous and purulent skin rashes. Infecting organisms are typically catalase-positive bacteria, which can break down their own hydrogen peroxide and thus avoid death when captured in a CGD phagocytic vacuole. (Streptococci, pneumococci, and H influenzae lack catalase and are not unusually pathogenic in CGD.) Aspergillosis is also common and a frequent cause of death. Lymphadenopathy and hepatosplenomegaly are found on physical examination, and granulomas are seen in histopathologic sections. Granulomatous inflammation can narrow the outlet of the stomach or bladder in these patients, leading to vomiting or urinary obstruction.

B. Laboratory Findings

Patients typically present with serious infection, positive microbial cultures, and neutrophilia. The most common infecting organisms are S aureus, Aspergillus species, Burkholderia cepacia, and Serratia marcescens. (Culture of either of the last two should suggest this diagnosis.) Patients also present with granulomas of lymph nodes, skin, liver, and genitourinary tract. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate may be elevated without obvious infection. The diagnosis is confirmed by demonstrating lack of hydrogen peroxide production using the DHR flow cytometry assay or lack of superoxide production using the NBT test. Both tests can demonstrate carrier status of XL disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes other phagocyte abnormalities or deficiencies described in this section, as well as the rare neutrophil granule deficiency. Other immunodeficient states leading to severe bacterial or fungal infections should be considered, but none have the striking abscess formation and deficient phagocytosis-associated respiratory burst that characterize CGD.

Treatment

Daily intake of an antimicrobial agent such as trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is indicated in all patients; an oral antifungal agent like itraconazole and regular subcutaneous injections of interferon-γ can greatly reduce the risk of severe infections. BMT has been successful in some cases, but the risk of death is high unless the patient's condition is stable. Gastric or GU obstruction can be relieved by short-term steroid therapy.

3. Leukocyte Adhesion Defects Types I & II

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Recurrent serious infections.
- "Cold" abscesses without pus formation.
- Poor wound healing.
- Gingival or periodontal disease (or both).

» General Considerations

The ability of phagocytic cells to enter peripheral sites of infection is critical for effective host defense. In leukocyte adhesion defect (LAD), defects in proteins required for leukocyte adherence to and migration through blood vessel walls prevent these cells from arriving at the sites of infection.

LAD I is an AR disease caused by mutations in the common chain of the β_2 integrin family (CD18) located on chromosome 21q22.3. These mutations result in impaired neutrophil migration, adherence, and antibody-dependent phagocytosis. LAD II is a rare AR disease caused by an inborn error in fucose metabolism that results in abnormal expression of leukocyte Sialyl-Lewis X (CD15s), which binds to selectins on the vessel endothelium. The resulting phenotype is similar to LAD I, with recurrent infections, lack of pus formation, poor wound healing, and periodontal disease. LAD II patients also have developmental delays, short stature, dysmorphic facies, and the Bombay (hh) blood group.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients present with variably severe phenotypes, including recurrent serious infections, lack of pus formation, poor wound healing, and gingival and periodontal disease. The hallmark is little inflammation and absent neutrophils on histopathologic evaluation of infected sites (ie, "cold" abscesses), especially when concurrent with neutrophilia, and expression of poor adherence to vessel walls. The most severe phenotype manifests with infections in the neonatal period, including delayed separation of the umbilical cord with associated omphalitis.

» B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory evaluation often demonstrates a striking neutrophilia. Diagnosis of suspected cases is confirmed by flow cytometry analysis for CD18 (LAD I) or CD15s (LAD II).

» Treatment

Treatment includes aggressive antibiotic therapy. Fucose supplementation in LAD II has been reported with some success.

4. Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

Rare forms of XL glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency with associated hemolytic anemia affect leukocytes as well as erythrocytes and result in recurrent infections due to an abnormal neutrophil respiratory burst, probably due to NAD/NADPH deficiency.

Marciano BE et al: Common severe infections in chronic granulomatous disease. Clin Infect Dis 2015;60:1176–1183 [PMID: 25537876].

COMPLEMENT DEFICIENCIES

Complement contributes to innate immunity and facilitates antibody-mediated immunity through opsonization, lysis of

target cells, and recruitment of phagocytic cells. The complement system includes three interactive pathways of enzymatic reactions: classic, alternative, and lectin (see Figure 33–3). All three pathways generate cleavage of C3 and result in promotion of inflammation, elimination of pathogens, and enhancement of the immune response. Activation of the complement system occurs through microbial products, tissue enzymes, and surface-bound IgG and IgM antibodies or pentraxins, for example, C-reactive protein.

» Complement Component Deficiencies

Deficiencies of individual complement components (C1–C9) are inherited as autosomal codominant traits, each parent contributing one null gene. Serum levels of the deficient component are about half normal in the parents and zero or almost zero in the patients. Deficiencies of C1, C2, or C4 predispose to increased infections but are particularly associated with autoimmune disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus. Patients with homozygous C2 deficiency can present at any age in childhood with bacteremia or meningitis due to S pneumoniae or H influenzae. Primary C3 deficiency presents with severe pyogenic infections since C3 is critical for opsonization in both the classic and alternative pathways. Deficiency of the control protein factor I, which acts to break up the C3-cleaving complex formed in the classic or alternative pathway, leads to unbridled consumption of C3 and, thereby, severe bacterial infections. Deficiency of a terminal complement component in the membrane attack complex (C5, C6, C7, C8, and C9) or of properdin (an XL alternative pathway control protein) results in recurrent neisserial meningitis or disseminated gonococcal infection. Survivors of either of these serious neisserial infections should be screened for complement deficiency, first with a CH50.

Degn SE, Jensenius JC, Thiel S: Disease-causing mutations in genes of the complement system. Am J Hum Genet 2011;88:689–705 [PMID: 21871896].

OTHER WELL-DEFINED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROMES

1. Hyper-IgE Syndrome

Hyper-IgE syndrome (HIES), also known as Job syndrome, is a rare PID characterized by elevated levels of IgE (> 2000 IU/mL), neonatal eczematoid rash, recurrent infections with S aureus, recurrent pneumonia with pneumatocele formation, and typical facies. Mutations in a specific transcription factor, signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3), underlie sporadic and AD forms of HIES. Additional clinical findings of HIES include retained primary teeth, scoliosis, hyperextensibility, high palate, and osteoporosis. In addition to staphylococcal infections, affected patients also have increased incidence of infections due to Streptococcus spp, Pseudomonas spp, C albicans, and even opportunistic infections with P carinii. AR HIES is associated with mutations in dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) and tyrosine kinase 2 (TYK2) genes. Patients with AR HIES have an increased susceptibility to viral infections, including recurrent molluscum contagiosum, warts, and herpes simplex infections. Increased susceptibility to mycobacterial infections is found in patients with TYK2 mutations. Laboratory evaluation reveals normal to profoundly elevated levels of IgE and occasionally eosinophilia. However, atopic dermatitis and parasite infection are much more common causes of elevated IgE. Diagnosis is often difficult due to variable presentation, which may become progressively severe with increasing age, but genetic testing for STAT3, DOCK8, and TYK2 mutations will help confirm the diagnosis of HIES particularly at a young age. All patients with HIES have impaired T_H17 cell function, and measurement of T_H17+ cells in the peripheral blood can be used as screening test if HIES is suspected. The mainstay of treatment is prophylactic and symptomatic antibiotic use in combination with good skin care. Ig replacement has been used with some success to decrease infections and possibly modify IgE levels. Successful stem cell transplants have been conducted in DOCK8 deficiency.

2. Immune Dysregulation, Polyendocrinopathy, Enteropathy, X-Linked Syndrome

Immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked (IPEX) syndrome is a rare disease that usually manifests with severe diarrhea and insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus within the first months of life. Affected males also have severe eczema, food allergy, autoimmune cytopenias, lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and recurrent infections. Most die before 2 years of age due to malnutrition or sepsis. IPEX syndrome results from mutations in the FOXP3 gene that encodes a protein essential for developing regulatory T lymphocytes. Leukocyte counts and immunoglobulin levels are generally normal. Immunosuppression and nutritional supplementation produce temporary improvements, but the prognosis is poor and most cases result in early death. BMT has been attempted with variable success. More recently, IPEX-like syndromes have been described as associated with mutations of the gene encoding CD25, the high affinity IL-2 receptor (IL2R) which is constitutively expressed on regulatory T cells. If IPEX or IPEX-like syndromes are suspected, the presence of $FOXP3^+/CD25^+$ regulatory T cells should be assessed not only in affected boys but also in girls. Genetic testing for FOXP3 mutations will be helpful to identify affected patients and carriers of the gene mutation.

3. X-Linked Lymphoproliferative Syndrome

X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome is an immunodeficiency that usually develops following EBV infection. Affected males develop fulminant infectious mononucleosis with hemophagocytic syndrome, multiple organ system failure, and bone marrow aplasia. The mutated gene (SH2D1A/SAP/DSHP)

encodes a signaling protein used by T lymphocytes and NK cells called SLAM-adapter protein (SAP). Affected boys are immunologically normal prior to EBV infection and during acute infection, they produce antibody to EBV. In most instances, infection with EBV is fatal. Patients who survive the initial episode or who are never infected with EBV in childhood develop lymphomas, vasculitis, hypogammaglobulinemias (with elevated IgM), or CVID in later life. Genetic analysis for a mutation of the SAP (SH2D1A) gene and testing for SAP protein expression are available. Mutations in the genes encoding for the X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis (XIAP), a potent regulator of lymphocyte homeostasis, and for IL-2–inducible T-cell kinase (ITK) have been described to present as an XLP-like syndrome. Testing for mutations of the gene encoding for XIAP (BIRC4) and XIAP protein expression will help establish the diagnosis. A decreased number of naïve, $CD45RA^+$ T cells are indicative of ITK deficiency, and further genetic analysis can establish the diagnosis.

4. Chronic Mucocutaneous Candidiasis

Several gene defects have been associated with chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis (CMC), a disorder characterized by isolated candidal infections of the skin, nails, and mucous membranes. Systemic disease is not characteristic, but case reports of intracranial mycotic aneurysms exist. Primary CMC most commonly occurs as an isolated syndrome, but it can be associated with endocrine or autoimmune disorders. Mutations in the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) gene and gain-of-function mutations in STAT1 can lead to defective T_H17 responses, susceptibility to CMC, and S aureus infections. Mutations in IL17F and IL17R, C-type lectin–associated 7 (CLEC7A or DECTIN1) or caspase recruitment domain-containing protein 9 (CARD9) cells have also been associated with CMC. An AR form of CMC with associated autoimmunity, also known as autoimmune polyendocrinopathy, candidiasis, ectodermal dysplasia (APECED) syndrome, is characterized by recurrent candidal infections, abnormal T-lymphocyte response to Candida, autoimmune endocrinopathies, and ectodermal dystrophies. APECED is caused by mutations in the gene for an important transcription regulator protein called autoimmune regulator (AIRE) that is critical for normal thymocyte development. In APECED, autoantibodies against IL17A and IL17F impair the T_H17 response and contribute to CMC. Treatment of CMC includes antifungal therapy in combination with therapy for associated endocrinopathies.

5. Autoimmune Lymphoproliferative Syndrome

Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS) results from mutations of genes important for regulating programmed lymphocyte death (apoptosis). Most commonly, the defect is in Fas (CD95) or Fas ligand, but other defects in the Fas pathway have also been described (eg, caspase 10). Clinical presentation includes lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and autoimmune disorders (autoimmune hemolytic anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and sometimes arthritis). Occasionally, patients have frequent infections. The diagnosis is suspected when T-lymphocyte subsets by flow cytometry demonstrate elevated numbers of $CD3^+CD4^-CD8^-$ (double negative) T lymphocytes. Several different types of ALPS are distinguished by the response of lymphocytes to Fas-induced apoptosis. Patients are often heterozygous, and inheritance is mostly autosomal dominant. Treatment with prednisone often controls the lymphadenopathy. Infections should be treated appropriately. In some cases, BMT has been curative. Affected patients are also at risk for lymphoma. Mutations affecting another apoptosis-related protein, caspase 8, cause an ALPS variant syndrome in which the susceptibility to infection by herpes simplex virus also increases.

6. WHIM Syndrome

WHIM (warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infection, myelokathexis) syndrome is a rare AD immunodeficiency caused by gain-of-function mutations in the gene encoding the chemokine receptor CXCR4. Patients have an increased susceptibility to viral infections (including HPV, EBV, and HSV) and recurrent bacterial infections. Laboratory evaluation reveals peripheral blood neutropenia with bone marrow hypercellularity, decreased B-cell numbers and hypogammaglobulinemia, and T-cell lymphopenia with normal $CD4^+/CD8^+$ ratio.

7. Diseases Due to Defects in Interferon-γ & Interleukin-12 Pathways

IL-12 is a powerful inducer of interferon-γ (IFN-γ) production by T cells and NK cells. IFN-γ, and therefore the IFN-γ –IL-12 axis, is critical for macrophage activation and resistance to mycobacterial infections. Individuals with inherited deficiency in IL-12, macrophage receptors for IFN-γ, lymphocyte receptors for IL-12, or STAT1 signaling suffer a profound and selective susceptibility to infection by nontuberculous mycobacteria such as Mycobacterium avium complex or bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG). About half of these patients have had disseminated salmonellosis. Treatment with supplemental IFN-γ is effective unless the IFN-γ receptor is not functional. Long-term mycobacterial prophylaxis should be considered in these individuals.

8. MonoMAC Syndrome

Disseminated infection by nontuberculous mycobacteria, viruses (ie, HPV), and fungi were recently described in association with GATA2 mutations or MonoMAC (sporadic monocytopenia and mycobacterial infection) syndrome.

Patients usually become symptomatic during adulthood, but younger patients may also be affected. Patients have peripheral blood monocytopenia, but presence of macrophages at sites of infections. B-lymphocyte and NK cell numbers are reported low with variable T-cell numbers. This is an autosomal dominant inherited disease with an increased risk for malignancies, especially myelodysplasia and leukemia.

9. Pattern-Recognition Receptor Defects

Pattern-recognition receptor (PRR) defects are associated with altered cytokine production and increased susceptibility to specific microbes. The clinical presentation of affected patients is most severe during infancy and early childhood with improvement of infections while patients get older, suggesting that adaptive immune responses compensate for defects in innate immunity. TLRs and members of the interleukin-1 receptor (IL-1R) family signal through IL-1R–associated kinases (IRAK) 1 and 4 while using the adaptor molecule MyD88, leading to activation of NF-κB and inflammatory cytokine production. Patients with AR deficiencies in MyD88 and IRAK-4 are predisposed to severe bacterial infections that are not associated with a high fever or significant increase in C-reactive protein at the beginning of infection. Laboratory results may reveal a decreased antibody response to polysaccharide antigens, increased IgG and IgG_4 concentrations, and decreased IL-6 production upon whole blood stimulation through most TLR and IL-1R agonists. TLR3 deficiency increases susceptibility to infections with herpes simplex infections, while polymorphisms of TLR5 predispose to legionella pneumonia infections. Chronic mucocutaneous fungal infections have been linked to defects in the dectin-1/CARD9 pathway. Bacterial infections, specifically with Neisseria meningitis, but also viral and fungal infections can occur in context of mannose-binding lectin deficiency.

Netea MG, van der Meer JWM: Immunodeficiency and genetic defects of pattern-recognition receptors. N Engl J Med 2011;364:1–69 [PMID: 21208109].

Picard C et al: Infectious diseases in patients with IRAK-4, MyD88, NEMO, or IkBa deficiency. Clin Microbiol Rev 2011;24:490–497 [PMID:21734245].

GENETIC SYNDROMES ASSOCIATED WITH IMMUNODEFICIENCY

Several described genetic syndromes have associated immunodeficiency that is often identified after the syndrome has been diagnosed. Usually, the immune defect is not the major presenting clinical problem.

1. Bloom Syndrome

Characteristics of Bloom syndrome include growth retardation, sunlight sensitivity, and telangiectasias of the face. The syndrome results from mutations in the Blm gene that encodes a RecQ-helicase involved in DNA repair. Affected patients present with growth retardation, microcephaly, and sun-sensitive rashes. They have an increased risk of malignancy and life-threatening infections. B- and T-cell numbers are low. Serum Igs are decreased, and T-lymphocyte function is abnormal.

2. Immunodeficiency, Centromeric Instability, Facial Anomalies Syndrome

Immunodeficiency, centromeric instability, facial anomalies (ICF) syndrome is a rare AR condition caused by abnormal DNA methyltransferase. In half of the patients, a mutation can be detected in the DNMT3B gene. Unlike other chromosome instability syndromes, ICF syndrome does not have an associated hypersensitivity to sunlight. Affected patients have severe respiratory, gastrointestinal, and skin infections due to low or absent immunoglobulins and abnormal T-lymphocyte numbers and function.

3. Trisomy 21

Patients with trisomy 21 or Down syndrome have increased susceptibility to respiratory infection. Immunodeficiency is variable, and abnormal numbers and function of T and B lymphocytes have been reported. Additionally, patients have an increased incidence of autoimmune diseases.

4. Turner Syndrome

Turner syndrome (partial or complete absence of one X chromosome) is associated with increased risk of otitis media, respiratory infections, and malignancies. Immune defects are variable but may include abnormal T-lymphocyte numbers and function and hypogammaglobulinemia.

5. Chédiak-Higashi Syndrome

Chédiak-Higashi syndrome is a rare AR disease caused by mutations in a lysosomal trafficking regulator (LYST) gene. The neutrophils of affected individuals have giant lysosomes, impaired chemotaxis, neutropenia, and abnormal NK-cell cytotoxicity. Patients present with recurrent infections (particularly periodontitis), partial oculocutaneous albinism, and neuropathy. Most patients progress to generalized lymphohistiocytic infiltration syndrome, which is a common cause of death. Treatment strategies address infections and neuropathy, and the use of immunosuppression attempts to slow lymphoproliferative progression.

6. Griscelli Syndrome

Characterized by partial albinism, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and lymphohistiocytosis, Griscelli syndrome is a rare AR syndrome resulting from mutations in the myosin

VA gene. Affected patients have recurrent and serious infections caused by fungi, viruses, and bacteria. Immunologic evaluation demonstrates variable immunoglobulin levels and antibody function with impaired T-lymphocyte function. BMT can correct the immunodeficiency. Griscelli syndrome is distinguished from Chédiak-Higashi syndrome by the lack of granules in white blood cells.

7. Netherton Syndrome

Patients with the AR Netherton syndrome present with trichorrhexis (brittle hair), ichthyosiform rash, and allergic diseases. A subset of patients develops recurrent infections. Immune function is variable but may include hypo- or hypergammaglobulinemia, abnormal T-lymphocyte function, or abnormal phagocyte function. The disease results from mutations in a serine protease inhibitor encoded on the SPINK5 gene.

8. Cartilage-Hair Hypoplasia

Cartilage-hair hypoplasia is an AR form of chondrodysplasia manifesting with short-limbed short stature, hypoplastic hair, defective immunity, and poor erythrogenesis. The immune defect is characterized by mild to moderate lymphopenia and abnormal lymphocyte function, but normal antibody function. Affected patients have increased susceptibility to infections and increased risk of lymphoma. The disorder results from mutation in the RMRP gene that encodes the RNA component of an RNase MRP complex. BMT can restore cell-mediated immunity but does not correct the cartilage or hair abnormalities.

Kersseboom R et al: Educational paper: syndromic forms of primary immunodeficiency. Eur J Pediatr 2011;170:295–308 [PMID: 21337117].

34 Endocrine Disorders

Megan Moriarty Kelsey, MD, MS
Jennifer M. Barker, MD
Sarah Bartz, MD
Christine M. Chan, MD
Michael S. Kappy, MD, PhD
Sharon H. Travers, MD
Philip S. Zeitler, MD, PhD

GENERAL CONCEPTS

The classic concept that endocrine effects are the result of substances secreted into the blood with effects on a distant target cell has been updated to account for other ways in which hormonal effects occur. Specifically, some hormone systems involve the stimulation or inhibition of metabolic processes in neighboring cells (eg, within the pancreatic islets or cartilage). This phenomenon is termed paracrine. Other hormone effects reflect the action of hormones on the same cells that produced them. This action is termed autocrine. The discoveries of local production of ghrelin, somatostatin, cholecystokinin, incretins, and many other hormones in the brain and gut support the concept of paracrine and autocrine processes in these tissues.

Another significant discovery in endocrine physiology was an appreciation of the role of specific hormone receptors in target tissues, without which the hormonal effects cannot occur. For example, in nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (DI), affected children have defective vasopressin or receptor function, and show the metabolic effects of DI despite more-than-adequate vasopressin secretion. Alternatively, abnormal activation of a hormone receptor leads to the effects of the hormone without its abnormal secretion. Examples of this phenomenon include McCune-Albright syndrome (precocious puberty and hyperthyroidism), testotoxicosis (familial male precocious puberty), and hypercalciuric hypocalcemia.

HORMONE TYPES

Hormones are of three main chemical types: peptides and proteins, steroids, and amines. The peptide hormones include the releasing factors secreted by the hypothalamus; the hormones of the anterior and posterior pituitary gland; pancreatic islet cells; parathyroid glands, lung (angiotensin II), heart, and brain (atrial and brain natriuretic hormones); and local growth factors such as insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1). Steroid hormones are secreted primarily by the adrenal cortex, gonads, and kidney (active vitamin D [1,25$(OH)_2$ D3]). The amine hormones are secreted by the adrenal medulla (epinephrine) and the thyroid gland (triiodothyronine [T_3] and thyroxine [T_4]).

Peptide hormones and epinephrine act through cell surface receptors. The metabolic effects of these hormones are usually stimulation or inhibition of the activity of preexisting enzymes or transport proteins (posttranslational effects). The steroid hormones, thyroid hormone, and active vitamin D, in contrast, act more slowly and bind to cytoplasmic receptors inside the target cell and subsequently to specific regions on nuclear DNA, where they direct a read-out of specific protein(s). Their metabolic effects are generally caused by stimulating or inhibiting the synthesis of new enzymes or transport proteins (transcriptional effects).

Metabolic processes that require rapid response, such as blood glucose or calcium homeostasis, are usually controlled by peptide hormones and epinephrine, while processes that respond more slowly, such as pubertal development and metabolic rate, are controlled by steroid hormones and thyroid hormone. The control of electrolyte homeostasis is intermediate and is regulated by a combination of peptide and steroid hormones (Table 34–1).

FEEDBACK CONTROL OF HORMONE SECRETION

Hormone secretion is regulated by feedback in response to changes in the internal environment. When the metabolic imbalance is corrected, stimulation of the hormone secretion ceases and may even be inhibited. Overcorrection of the imbalance stimulates secretion of a counterbalancing hormone or hormones, so that homeostasis is maintained within relatively narrow limits.

Table 34–1. Hormonal regulation of metabolic processes.

First Level (Most Direct)			
Metabolite or Other Parameter	Stimulus	Endocrine Gland	Hormone
Glucose	Hyperglycemia	Pancreatic beta cell	Insulin
Glucose	Hypoglycemia	Pancreatic alpha cell	Glucagon
Glucose	Hypoglycemia	Adrenal medulla	Epinephrine
Calcium	Hypercalcemia	Thyroid C cell	Calcitonin (?)
Calcium	Hypocalcemia	Parathyroid	PTH
Sodium/plasma osmolality	Hypernatremia/hyperosmolality	Hypothalamus with posterior pituitary gland as reservoir	ADH
Plasma volume	Hypervolemia	Heart	ANH
Second Level: Sodium and Potassium Balance			
Metabolite or Other Parameter	**Abnormality**	**Endocrine Gland**	**Hormone**
Sodium/potassium	Hyponatremia	Kidney	Renin (an enzyme)
	Hyperkalemia	Liver and others	Angiotensin I
	Hypovolemia	Lung	Angiotensin II
		Adrenal cortex	Aldosterone
Third Level (Most Complex)			
Hypothalamic-Releasing Hormone	**Trophic Hormone (Pituitary Gland)**	**Endocrine Target Tissue**	**Endocrine Gland Hormone**
CRH	ACTH	Adrenal cortex	Cortisol
GHRH	GH	Liver and other tissues	IGF-1
GnRH	LH	Testis	Testosterone
GnRH	FSH/LH	Ovary	Estradiol/progesterone
TRH	TSH	Thyroid gland	T_4 and T_3

ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; ADH, antidiuretic hormone; ANH, atrial natriuretic hormone; CRH, corticotropin-releasing hormone; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; GH, growth hormone; GHRH, growth hormone–releasing hormone; GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; IGF-1, insulin-like growth factor 1; LH, luteinizing hormone; PTH, parathyroid hormone; T_3, triiodothyronine; T_4, thyroxine; TRH, thyrotropin-releasing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

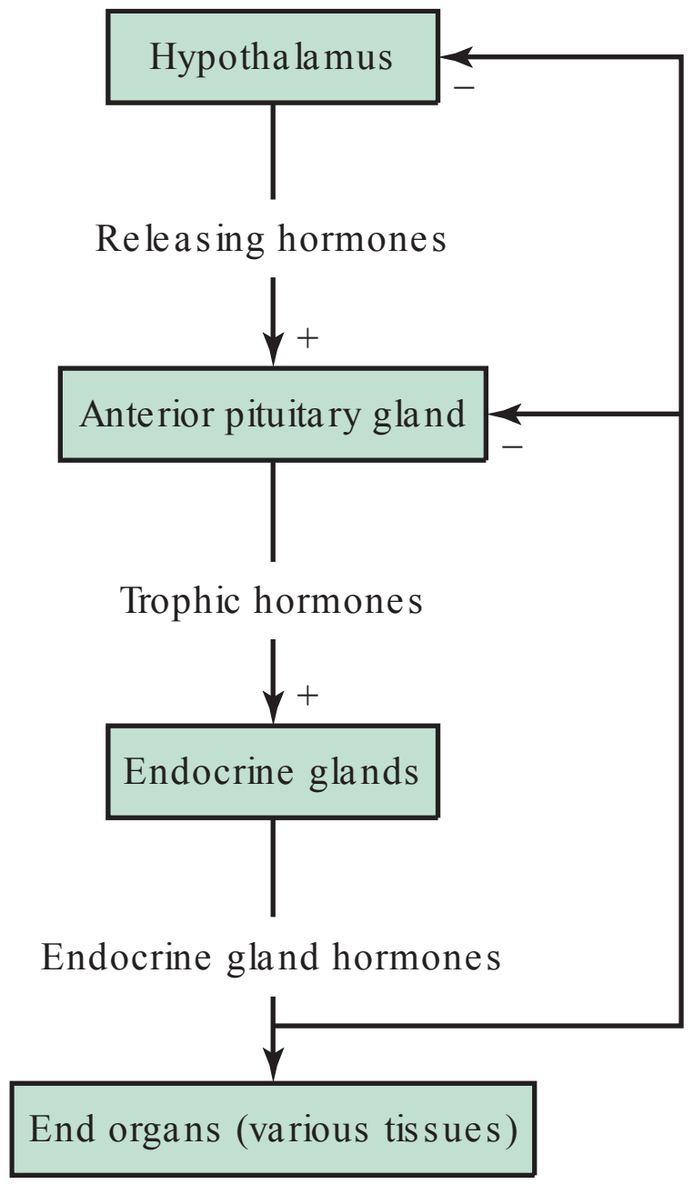
Hypothalamic-pituitary control of hormonal secretion is regulated by feedback. End-organ failure (endocrine gland insufficiency) leads to decreased circulating concentrations of endocrine gland hormones and increased secretion of the respective hypothalamic releasing and pituitary hormones (see Table 34–1; Figure 34–1). If restoration of normal circulating concentration of hormones occurs, feedback inhibition at the pituitary and hypothalamus results in cessation of the previously stimulated secretion of releasing and pituitary hormones and restoration of their circulating concentrations to normal.

Similarly, if there is autonomous endocrine gland hyperfunction (eg, McCune-Albright syndrome, Graves disease, or adrenal tumor), the specific hypothalamic releasing and pituitary hormones are suppressed (see Figure 34–1).

Bethin K, Fuqua JS: General concepts and physiology. In: Kappy MS, Allen DB, Geffner ME (eds): Pediatric Practice-Endocrinology. McGraw Hill; 2010:1–22.

DISTURBANCES OF GROWTH

Disturbances of growth and development are the most common problems evaluated by a pediatric endocrinologist. While most cases represent normal developmental variants, it is critical to identify abnormal growth patterns, as



▲**Figure 34–1.** General scheme of the hypothalamus-pituitary-endocrine gland axis. Releasing hormones synthesized in the hypothalamus are secreted into the hypophyseal portal circulation. Trophic hormones are secreted by the pituitary gland in response, and they in turn act on specific endocrine glands to stimulate the secretion of their respective hormones. The endocrine gland hormones exert their respective effects on various target tissues (end organs) and exert a negative feedback (feedback inhibition) on their own secretion by acting at the level of the pituitary and hypothalamus. This system is characteristic of those hormones listed in Table 34–1 (third level).

deviations from the norm can be the first or only manifestation of an endocrine disorder. Height velocity is the most critical parameter in evaluating a child's growth. A persistent increase or decrease in height percentiles between age 2 years and the onset of puberty always warrants evaluation. Similarly, substantial deviations from target (midparental) height may be indications of underlying endocrine or skeletal disorders. It is more difficult to distinguish normal from abnormal growth in the first 2 years of life, as infants may have catch-up or catch-down growth during this period. Similarly, the variable timing of the onset of puberty makes early adolescence another period during which evaluation of growth abnormalities may require careful consideration.

Appropriate standards must be used to evaluate growth. The National Center for Health Statistics provides standard cross-sectional growth charts for North American children (see Chapter 2) and the World Health Organization (WHO) growth charts use an ethnically more diverse sample. Normal growth standards may vary with country of origin. Growth charts are available for some ethnic groups in North America and for some syndromes with specific growth disturbance such as Turner or Down syndromes.

TARGET HEIGHT & SKELETAL MATURATION

A child's height potential is determined largely by genetic factors. The target height of a child is calculated from the mean parental height plus 6.5 cm for boys or minus 6.5 cm for girls. This calculation helps identify a child's genetic growth potential. Most children achieve an adult height within 8 cm of the target height. Another parameter that determines growth potential is skeletal maturation or bone age. Beyond the neonatal period, bone age is evaluated by comparing a radiograph of the child's left hand and wrist with the standards of Greulich and Pyle. Delayed or advanced bone age is not diagnostic of any specific disease, but the extent of skeletal maturation allows determination of remaining growth potential as a percentage of total height and allows prediction of ultimate height.

SHORT STATURE

It is important to distinguish normal variants of growth (familial short stature and constitutional growth delay) from pathologic conditions (Table 34–2). Pathologic short stature is more likely in children who have a low growth velocity (crossing major height percentiles on the growth curve) or who are significantly short for their family. Children with chronic illness or nutritional deficiencies may have poor linear growth, but this is typically associated with inadequate weight gain and low body mass index (BMI). In contrast, endocrine causes of short stature are usually associated with normal or excessive weight gain.

1. Familial Short Stature & Constitutional Growth Delay

Children with familial short stature typically have normal birth weight and length. In the first 2 years of life, their linear growth velocity decelerates as they near their genetically determined percentile. Once the target percentile is reached, the child resumes normal linear growth parallel to the growth curve, usually between 2 and 3 years of age. Skeletal maturation and timing of puberty are consistent with chronologic age. The child grows along his/her own growth percentile and the final height is short but appropriate for the family (Figure 34–2).

Children with constitutional growth delay do not necessarily have short parents but have a growth pattern similar to those with familial short stature with a decline in linear

Table 34–2. Causes of short stature.

NORMAL
A. Genetic-familial short stature
B. Constitutional growth delay
PATHOLOGICAL
C. Endocrine disturbances
1. Growth hormone (GH) deficiency
a. Hereditary
b. Idiopathic—with and without associated abnormalities of midline structures of the central nervous system
c. Acquired
(1) Transient—eg, psychosocial short stature
(2) Organic—tumor, irradiation of the central nervous system, infection, or trauma
2. GH resistance/insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) deficiency
3. Hypothyroidism
4. Excess cortisol—Cushing disease and Cushing syndrome
5. Diabetes mellitus (poorly controlled)
6. Pseudohypoparathyroidism
7. Rickets
D. Intrauterine growth restriction
1. Intrinsic fetal abnormalities—chromosomal disorders
2. Syndromes (eg, Russell-Silver, Noonan, Bloom, de Lange, Cockayne)
3. Congenital infections
4. Placental abnormalities
5. Maternal abnormalities during pregnancy
E. Inborn errors of metabolism
F. Intrinsic diseases of bone
1. Defects of growth of tubular bones or spine (skeletal dysplasias)
2. Disorganized development of cartilage and fibrous components of the skeleton
G. Short stature associated with chromosomal defects
1. Autosomal (eg, Down syndrome, Prader-Willi syndrome)
2. Sex chromosomal (eg, Turner syndrome–XO)
H. Chronic systemic diseases, congenital defects, and cancers
I. Psychosocial short stature (deprivation dwarfism)

growth velocity between ages 2 and 3 years and then maintenance of a normal growth velocity prior to puberty. The difference is that children with constitutional growth delay have a delay in skeletal maturation and a delay in the onset of puberty. In these children, growth continues beyond the time the average child stops growing, and final height is appropriate for target height (Figure 34–3).

2. Growth Hormone Deficiency

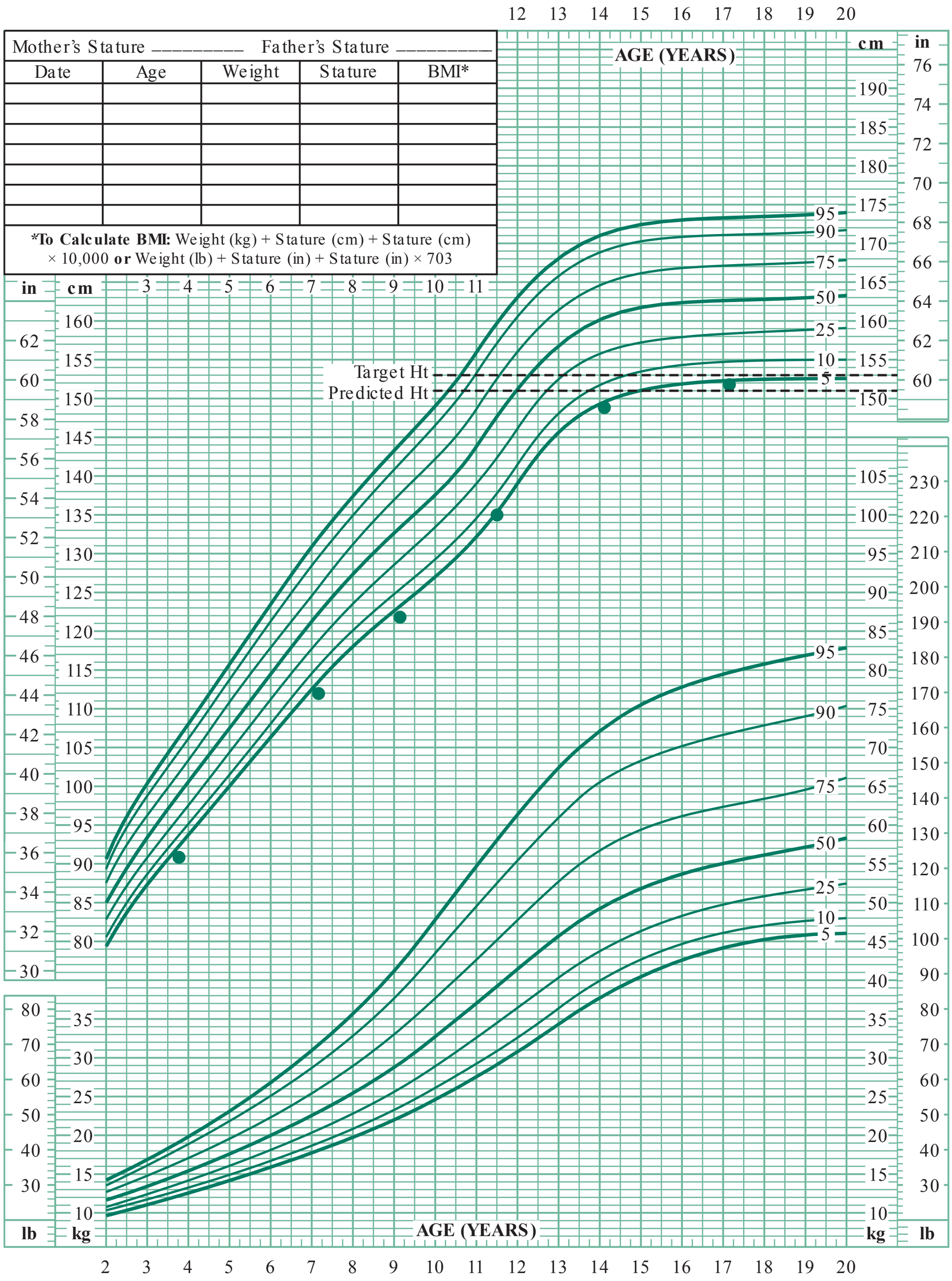
Human growth hormone (GH) is produced by the anterior pituitary gland. Secretion is stimulated by growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH) and inhibited by somatostatin. GH is secreted in a pulsatile pattern in response to sleep, exercise, and hypoglycemia, and has direct growth-promoting and metabolic effects (Figure 34–4). GH also promotes growth indirectly by stimulating production of insulin-like growth factors, primarily IGF-1.

Growth hormone deficiency (GHD) is characterized by decreased growth velocity and delayed skeletal maturation in the absence of other explanations (Figure 34–5). Because GH promotes lipolysis, many GH deficient children have excess truncal adiposity. GHD may be isolated or coexist with other pituitary hormone deficiencies and may be congenital (septo-optic dysplasia or ectopic posterior pituitary), genetic (GH or GHRH gene mutation), or acquired (craniopharyngioma, germinoma, histiocytosis, or cranial irradiation). Idiopathic GHD is the most common deficiency state with an incidence of about 1:4000 children. Patients have also been described with congenital GH resistance syndromes. The presentation of GH resistance is similar to that of GHD, but short stature is often severe, with little or no response to GH therapy and may be accompanied by dysmorphic features.

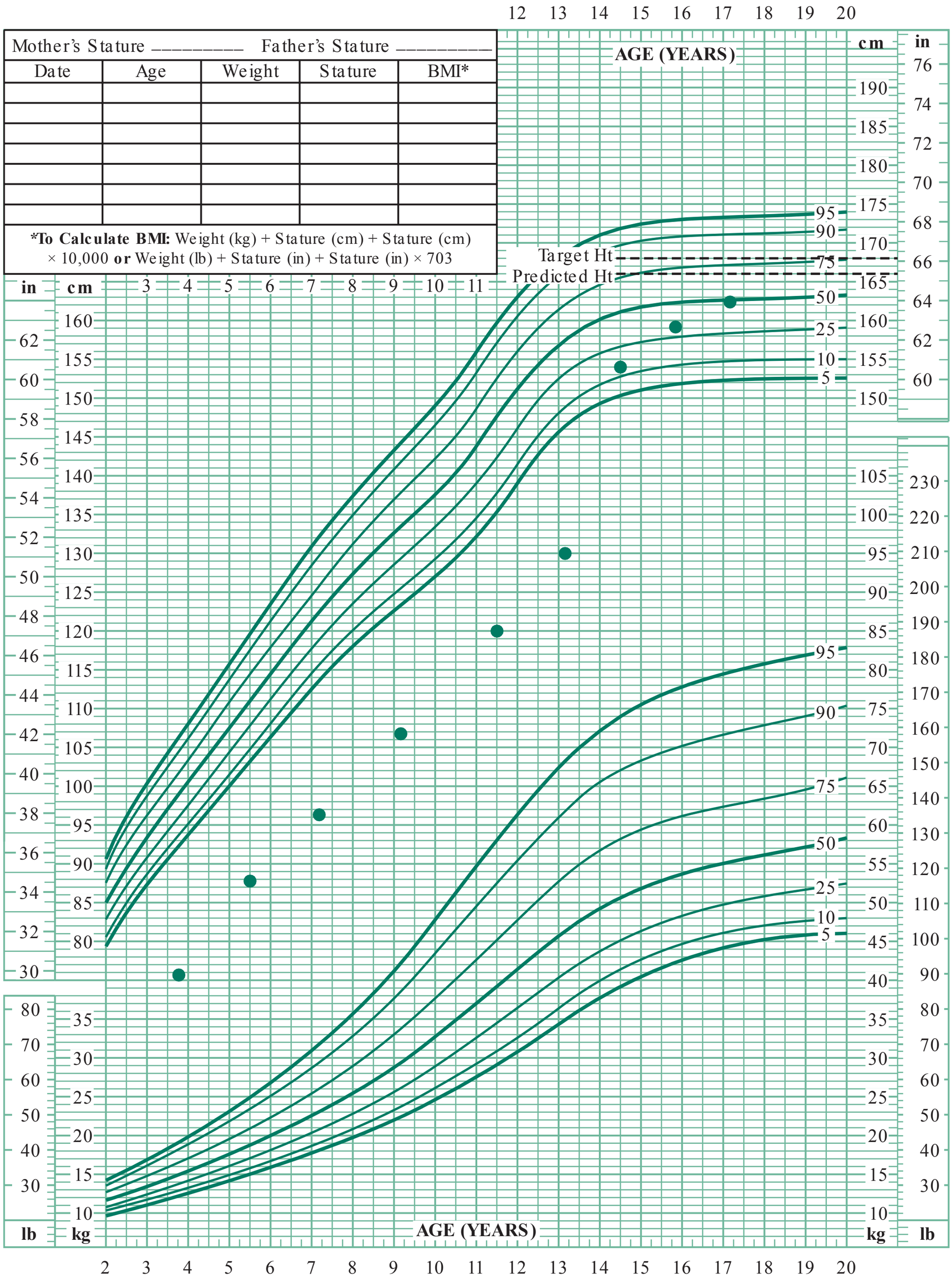
Features of infantile GHD include normal birth weight and slightly reduced length, hypoglycemia (if accompanied by adrenal insufficiency), micropenis (if accompanied by gonadotropin deficiency), and conjugated hyperbilirubinemia (if other pituitary hormone deficiencies present). Growth retardation in isolated GHD and hypopituitarism may not present until late in infancy or childhood.

Laboratory tests to assess GH status may be difficult to interpret because there is significant overlap in GH secretion between normal and GH-deficient children. GH secretion is pulsatile, so random samples for measurement of serum GH are of no value in the diagnosis of GHD. Serum concentrations of IGF-1 give reasonable estimations of GH secretion and action in the adequately nourished child (see Figure 34–4), and are often used as a first step in the evaluation for GHD. IGF-binding protein 3 (IGFBP-3) is a much less sensitive marker of GH deficiency, but may be useful in the underweight child or in children younger than 4 years, since it is less affected by age or nutritional status. Provocative studies using such agents as insulin, arginine, levodopa, clonidine, or glucagon are traditionally done to clarify GH secretion, but are not physiologic and are often poorly reproducible, ultimately limiting their value in the clarification of GH secretion. Currently, the recommended treatment schedule for GHD is subcutaneous recombinant GH given subcutaneously 7 days per week with total weekly dose of 0.15–0.3 mg/kg. All patients diagnosed with GHD should have an MRI of the hypothalamus and pituitary gland.

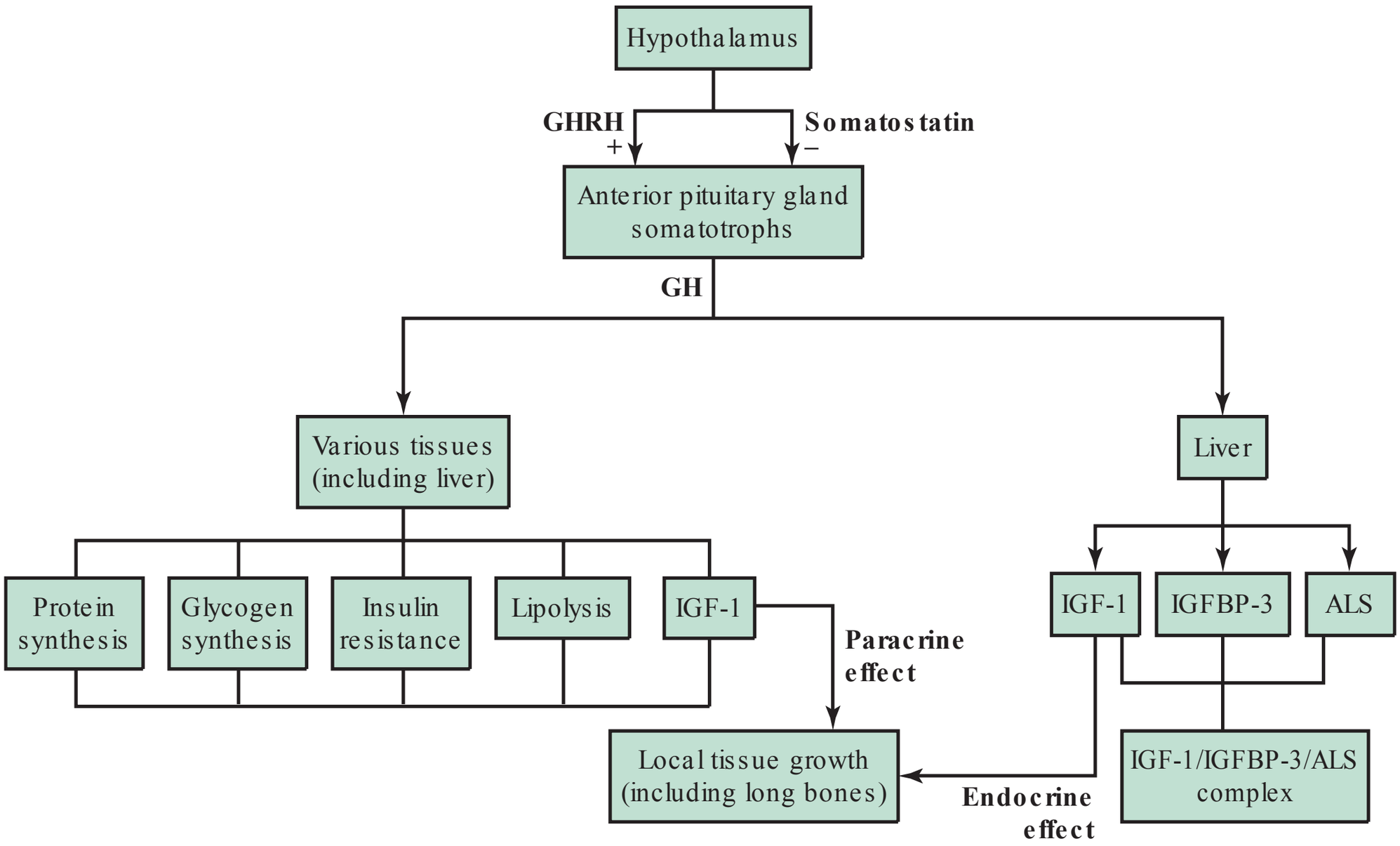
GH therapy is approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in children for: GHD; growth restriction associated with chronic renal failure; Turner, Prader-Willi, and Noonan syndromes; children born small for gestational age (SGA) who fail to demonstrate catch-up growth by age 4; and SHOX gene mutations. GH therapy has also been approved for children with idiopathic short stature whose current height is more than 2.25 standard deviations below the normal range for age. With GH treatment, final



▲**Figure 34–2.** Typical pattern of growth in a child with familial short stature. After attaining an appropriate percentile during the first 2 years of life, the child will have normal linear growth parallel to the growth curve. Skeletal maturation and the timing of puberty are consistent with chronologic age. The height percentile the child has been following is maintained, and final height is short but appropriate for the family.



▲**Figure 34–3.** Typical pattern of growth in a child with constitutional growth delay. Growth slows during the first 2 years of life, similarly to children with familial short stature. Subsequently the child will have normal linear growth parallel to the growth curve. However, skeletal maturation and the onset of puberty are delayed. Growth continues beyond the time the average child has stopped growing, and final height is appropriate for target height.



▲**Figure 34–4.** The GHRH/GH/IGF-1 system. The effects of growth hormone (GH) on growth are partly due to its direct anabolic effects in the muscle, liver, and bone. In addition, GH stimulates many tissues to produce insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) locally, which stimulates the growth of the tissue itself (paracrine effect of IGF-1). The action of GH on the liver results in the secretion of IGF-1 (circulating IGF-1), which stimulates growth in other tissues (endocrine effect of IGF-1). The action of growth hormone on the liver also enhances the secretion of IGF-binding protein 3 (IGFBP-3) and acid-labile subunit (ALS), which form a high-molecular-weight complex with IGF-1. The function of this complex is to transport IGF-1 to its target tissues, but the complex also serves as a reservoir and possible inhibitor of IGF-1 action. In various chronic illnesses, the direct metabolic effects of GH are inhibited; the secretion of IGF-1 in response to GH is blunted, and in some cases IGFBP-3 synthesis is enhanced, resulting in marked inhibition in the growth of the child. GHRH, growth hormone–releasing hormone.

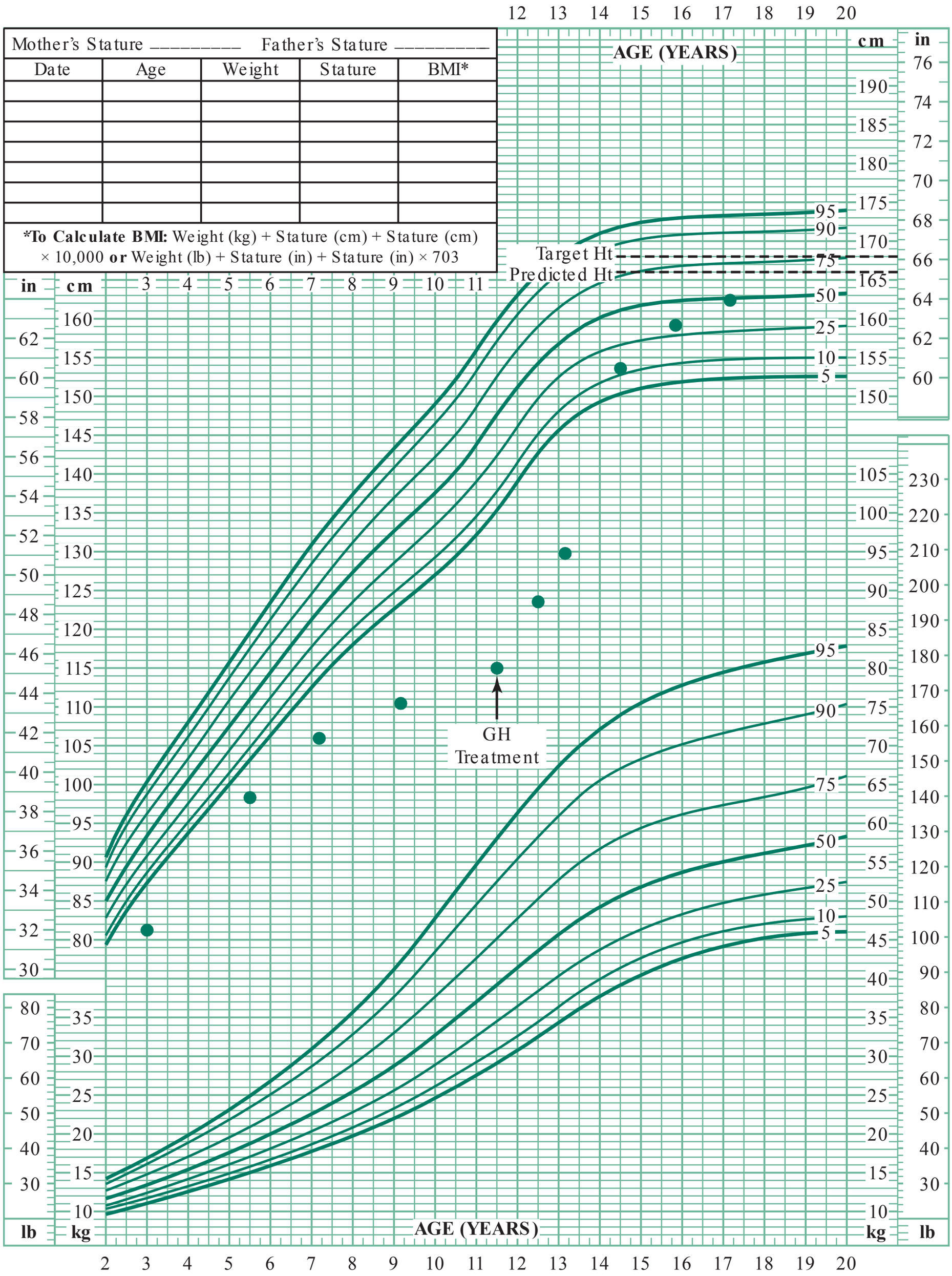
height may be 5–7 cm taller in this population. The role of GH for idiopathic short stature is still unclear, especially due to the expense, long duration of treatment, and unclear psychological consequences. Side effects of recombinant GH are uncommon but include benign intracranial hypertension and slipped capital femoral epiphysis. With early diagnosis and treatment, children with GHD reach normal or near-normal adult height. Recombinant IGF-1 injections may be used to treat children with GH resistance or IGF-1 deficiency, but improvements in growth are not as substantial as seen with GH therapy for GH deficiency.

3. Small for Gestational Age/Intrauterine Growth Restriction

Small for gestational age (SGA) infants have a birth weight and/or length below the 10th percentile for the population's birth weight–gestational age relationship. SGA infants include constitutionally small infants and infants with intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR). Many children with mild SGA/IUGR and no intrinsic fetal abnormalities exhibit catch-up growth during the first 3 years, but 15%–20% remain short throughout life. Catch-up growth may also be inadequate in preterm SGA/IUGR infants with poor postnatal nutrition. Children who do not show catch-up growth may have normal growth velocity but follow a lower height percentile than expected for the family. In contrast to children with constitutional growth delay, those with SGA/IUGR have skeletal maturation that corresponds to chronologic age or is only mildly delayed. GH therapy for SGA/IUGR children with growth delay is FDA-approved and appears to increase growth velocity and final adult height.

4. Disproportionate Short Stature

There are more than 200 sporadic and genetic skeletal dysplasias that may cause disproportionate short stature. Measurements of arm span and upper-to-lower body segment



▲**Figure 34–5.** Typical pattern of growth in a child with acquired growth hormone deficiency (GHD). Children with acquired GHD have an abnormal growth velocity and fail to maintain height percentile during childhood. Other phenotypic features (central adiposity and immaturity of facies) may be present. Children with congenital GHD will cross percentiles during the first 2 years of life, similarly to the pattern seen in familial short stature and constitutional delay, but will fail to attain a steady height percentile subsequently.

ratio are helpful in determining whether a child has normal body proportions. If disproportionate short stature is found, a skeletal survey may be useful to detect specific radiographic features characteristic of some disorders. The effect of GH on most of these rare disorders is unknown.

5. Short Stature Associated With Syndromes

Short stature is associated with many genetic syndromes, including Turner, Down, Noonan, and Prader-Willi. Girls with Turner syndrome often have recognizable features such as micrognathia, webbed neck, low posterior hairline, edema of hands and feet, multiple pigmented nevi, and an increased carrying angle. However, short stature can be the only obvious manifestation of Turner syndrome. Consequently, any girl with unexplained short stature for family warrants a chromosomal evaluation. Although girls with Turner syndrome are not usually GH deficient, GH therapy can improve final height by an average of 6.0 cm. Duration of GH therapy is a significant predictor of long-term height gain; consequently, it is important that Turner syndrome be diagnosed early and GH started as soon as possible.

GH is approved for treatment of growth failure in Prader-Willi syndrome–associated GHD. GH improves growth, body composition, and physical activity. A few deaths have been reported in Prader-Willi children receiving GH, all of which occurred in very obese children, children with respiratory impairments, sleep apnea, or unidentified respiratory infections. The role of GH in these deaths is unknown, but it is recommended that all patients with Prader-Willi syndrome be evaluated for upper airway obstruction and sleep apnea prior to starting GH therapy.

Children with Down syndrome should be evaluated for GHD only if their linear growth is abnormal compared with the Down syndrome growth chart.

6. Psychosocial Short Stature (Psychosocial Dwarfism)

Psychosocial short stature refers to growth retardation associated with emotional deprivation. Undernutrition probably contributes to growth retardation in some of these children. Other symptoms include unusual eating and drinking habits, bowel and bladder incontinence, social withdrawal, and delayed speech. GH secretion in children with psychosocial short stature is diminished, but GH therapy is usually not beneficial. A change in the psychological environment at home usually results in improved growth and improvement of GH secretion, personality, and eating behaviors.

» Clinical Evaluation

Laboratory investigation should be guided by the history and physical examination, including history of chronic illness and medications, birth weight and height, pattern of growth since birth, familial growth patterns, pubertal stage, dysmorphic features, body segment proportion, and psychological health. In a child with poor weight gain as the primary disturbance, a nutritional assessment is indicated. The following laboratory tests may be useful as guided by history and clinical judgment: (1) radiograph of left hand and wrist for bone age; (2) karyotype (girls) and/or Noonan syndrome testing; (3) thyroid function tests: thyroxine (T_4) and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH); (4) IGF-1 (IGFBP-3 is an alternative for children < 4 or in malnourished individuals); (5) complete blood count (to detect chronic anemia or leukocyte markers of infection); (6) erythrocyte sedimentation rate (often elevated in collagen-vascular disease, cancer, chronic infection, and inflammatory bowel disease); (7) urinalysis, blood urea nitrogen, and serum creatinine (occult renal disease); (8) serum electrolytes, calcium, and phosphorus (renal tubular disease and metabolic bone disease); (9) stool examination for fat, or measurement of serum tissue transglutaminase (malabsorption or celiac disease).

Altzoglou KS et al: Isolated growth hormone deficiency (GHD) in childhood and adolescence: recent advances. Endocr Rev 2014;35:376–432 [PMID: 24450934].

Cohen LE: Idiopathic short stature: a clinical review. JAMA 2014 311:1787–1796 [PMID: 24794372].

Loche S et al.: Growth hormone treatment in non-growth hormone-deficiency children. Ann Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2014;19:1–7 [PMID: 24926456].

Rogol AD, Hayden GF: Etiologies and early diagnosis of short stature and growth failure in children and adolescents. J Pediatr 2014 May;164(5 Suppl):S1–14.e6 [PMID: 24731744].

TALL STATURE

Although growth disturbances are usually associated with short stature, potentially serious pathologic conditions may also be associated with tall stature and excessive growth (Table 34–3). Excessive GH secretion is rare, particularly in children, and generally associated with a functioning pituitary adenoma. GH excess leads to gigantism if the epiphyses are open and to acromegaly if the epiphyses are closed. The diagnosis is confirmed by finding elevated random GH and IGF-1

Table 34–3. Causes of tall stature.

A. Constitutional (familial)
B. Endocrine causes
1. Growth hormone excess (pituitary gigantism)
2. Precocious puberty
3. Hypogonadism
C. Nonendocrine causes
1. Klinefelter syndrome
2. XYY males
3. Marfan syndrome
4. Cerebral gigantism (Sotos syndrome)
5. Homocystinuria

levels and failure of GH suppression during an oral glucose tolerance test. Precocious puberty can also cause tall stature for age or rapid growth, but would be associated with early signs of puberty and an advanced bone age. Obese youth are also often tall for age, but they do not achieve a taller final height.

Davies JH, Cheetham T: Investigation and management of tall stature. Arch Dis Child 2014;99:772–777 [PMID: 24833789].

DISORDERS OF THE POSTERIOR PITUITARY GLAND

The posterior pituitary (neurohypophysis) is an extension of the ventral hypothalamus. Its two principal hormones—oxytocin and arginine vasopressin—are synthesized in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of the ventral hypothalamus. These peptide hormones are packaged in granules with specific neurophysins and transported via the axons to their storage site in the posterior pituitary. Vasopressin is essential for water balance; it acts primarily on the kidney to promote reabsorption of water from urine. Oxytocin is most active during parturition and breast feeding and is not discussed further here.

ARGININE VASOPRESSIN (ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE) PHYSIOLOGY

Vasopressin release is controlled primarily by serum osmolality and intravascular volume. Release is stimulated by minor increases in plasma osmolality (detected by osmoreceptors in the anterolateral hypothalamus) and large decreases in intravascular volume (detected by baroreceptors in the cardiac atria). Disorders of vasopressin release and action include (1) central (neurogenic) DI, (2) nephrogenic DI (see Chapter 24), and (3) the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of anti-diuretic hormone (see Chapter 45).

CENTRAL DIABETES INSIPIDUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Polydipsia, polyuria (> 2 L/m^2/d), nocturia, dehydration, and hypernatremia.
- Inability to concentrate urine after fluid restriction (urine specific gravity < 1.010; urine osmolality < 300 mOsm/kg).
- Plasma osmolality greater than 300 mOsm/kg with urine osmolality less than 600 mOsm/kg.
- Low plasma vasopressin with antidiuretic response to exogenous vasopressin.

» General Considerations

Central diabetes insipidus (DI) is an inability to synthesize and release vasopressin. Without vasopressin, the kidneys cannot concentrate urine, causing excessive urinary water loss. Genetic causes of central DI are rare and include mutations in the vasopressin gene and the WFS1 gene that causes DI, diabetes mellitus, optic atrophy, and deafness (Wolfram or DIDMOAD syndrome). The most common causes of pediatric central DI are midline defects (septo-optic dysplasia, holoprosencephaly); trauma (surgery, injury); infiltrative/neoplastic disease (tumors such as craniopharyngioma, germinoma, Langerhans cell histiocytosis, sarcoidosis); infectious (meningitis); and idiopathic.

Traumatic DI often has three phases. Initially, transient DI is caused by edema in the hypothalamus or pituitary area. In 2–5 days, unregulated release of vasopressin from dying neurons causes the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH). Finally, permanent DI occurs if a sufficient number of vasopressin neurons are destroyed. Of note, germinomas often present with DI, whereas DI in craniopharyngioma is more often the result of neurosurgical intervention. Germinomas and other infiltrative diseases are often associated with pituitary stalk thickening on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

» Clinical Findings

Onset of DI is characterized by polyuria, nocturia, enuresis, and intense thirst, usually with a preference for cold water. Hypernatremia, hyperosmolality, and dehydration occur if insufficient fluid intake does not keep up with urinary losses. In infants, symptoms may also include failure to thrive, vomiting, constipation, and unexplained fevers. Some infants may present with severe dehydration, circulatory collapse, and seizures. Vasopressin deficiency may be masked in patients with panhypopituitarism due to the impaired excretion of free water associated with adrenal insufficiency; treatment with glucocorticoids may unmask DI in these patients.

DI is confirmed when serum hyperosmolality is associated with urine hypo-osmolarity. If the history indicates that the child can go through the night comfortably without drinking, outpatient testing is appropriate. Oral fluid intake is prohibited after midnight. Osmolality, sodium, and specific gravity of the first morning void are obtained. This can also be done as a water deprivation test in the hospital if screening results are unclear or if symptoms preclude safely withholding fluids at home. See "Essentials" box for diagnostic criteria. Children with central DI should have an MRI of the head with contrast to look for tumors or infiltrative processes.

Primary polydipsia must be distinguished from DI. Children with primary polydipsia tend to have lower serum sodium levels and usually can concentrate their urine with

overnight fluid deprivation. Some may have secondary nephrogenic DI due to dilution of the renal medullary interstitium and decreased renal concentrating ability, but this resolves with restriction of fluid intake.

» Treatment

Central DI is treated with oral or intranasal desmopressin acetate (DDAVP). The aim of therapy is to provide antidiuresis that allows uninterrupted sleep and approximately 1 hour of diuresis before the next dose. It is important to note that postsurgical DI can be associated with disruption of thirst mechanism, and for these patients, a prescribed volume of fluid intake needs to be determined. Children hospitalized with acute-onset DI can be managed with intravenous or subcutaneous vasopressin. Due to the amount of antidiuresis, electrolytes should be closely monitored to avoid water intoxication. Infants with DI should not be treated with DDAVP, since their primary source of nutrition is through liquid calories and this combination can result in water intoxication. For this reason, infants are treated with extra free water to maintain normal hydration. A formula with a low renal solute load and chlorothiazides may be helpful in infants with central DI.

Di Iorgi N et al: Diabetes insipidus—diagnosis and management. Horm Res Paediatr 2012;77:69 [PMID: 22433947].

Rivkees SA et al: The management of central diabetes insipidus in infancy: desmopressin, low renal solute load formula, thiazide diuretics. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2007;20:459 [PMID: 17550208].

Wise-Faberowski L et al: Perioperative management of diabetes insipidus in children. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol 2004;16:14 [PMID: 14676564].

THYROID GLAND

FETAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE THYROID

As early as the 10th week of gestation, the fetal thyroid synthesizes thyroid hormone, which appears in the fetal serum by the 11th week of gestation and progressively increases throughout gestation. The fetal pituitary-thyroid axis functions largely independently of the maternal pituitary-thyroid axis because maternal TSH cannot cross the placenta. However, maternal thyroid hormone can cross the placenta in limited amounts.

At birth, there is a TSH surge peaking at about 70 mU/L within 30–60 minutes. Thyroid hormone serum level increases rapidly during the first days of life in response to this TSH surge. The TSH level decreases to childhood levels within a few weeks. The physiologic neonatal TSH surge can produce a false-positive newborn screen for hypothyroidism (ie, high TSH) if the blood sample for the screen is collected on the first day of life.

PHYSIOLOGY

Hypothalamic thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) stimulates the anterior pituitary gland to release TSH. In turn, TSH stimulates the thyroid gland to take up iodine and synthesize and release T_4 and T_3. This process is regulated by negative feedback involving the hypothalamus, pituitary, and thyroid (see Figure 34–1).

T_4 is the predominant thyroid hormone secreted by the thyroid gland. Most circulating T_3 and T_4 are bound to thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), albumin, and prealbumin. Less than 1% of thyroxine exists in the free form. T_4 is deiodinated in the tissues to T_3, which binds to high-affinity nuclear thyroid hormone receptors in the cytoplasm and translocates to the nucleus, exerting its biologic effects by modifying gene expression. Causes of low T_4 are hypothyroidism (central or primary), prematurity, malnutrition and severe illness, and following therapy with T_3.

Total T_4 is also low in situations that decrease TBG, such as familial TBG deficiency, nephrosis, and in patients receiving androgens. In sepsis, TBG cleavage is increased. Treatment with certain medications (heparin, furosemide, salicylates, and phenytoin) results in abnormal binding to TBG. However, since these effects primarily involve TBG, TSH and free T_4 (FT_4) levels remain in the normal range. Conversely, total T_3 and T_4 levels may be elevated in conditions associated with increased TBG levels (congenital TBG excess, pregnancy, estrogen therapy) and increased thyroid hormone binding to transport proteins. Again, patients are clinically euthyroid in this circumstance.

HYPOTHYROIDISM (CONGENITAL & ACQUIRED)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Growth retardation, decreased physical activity, weight gain, constipation, dry skin, cold intolerance, and delayed puberty.
- Untreated congenital hypothyroidism: thick tongue, large fontanels, poor muscle tone, hoarseness, umbilical hernia, jaundice, and intellectual retardation.
- T_4, FT_4, and T_3 resin uptake are low; TSH levels are elevated in primary hypothyroidism.

» General Considerations

Thyroid hormone deficiency may be congenital or acquired (Table 34–4). It can be due to defects in the thyroid gland (primary hypothyroidism) or in the hypothalamus or pituitary (central hypothyroidism).

Table 34–4. Causes of hypothyroidism.

A. Congenital
1. Aplasia, hypoplasia, or maldescent of thyroid
2. Inborn errors of thyroid hormone synthesis, secretion, or recycling
3. Maternal antibody-mediated (inhibit TSH binding to receptor)
4. TSH receptor defect
5. Thyroid hormone receptor defect
6. In utero exposures
a. Radioiodine therapy
b. Goitrogens (propylthiouracil, methimazole)
c. Iodine excess
7. Iodide deficiency
B. Acquired (juvenile hypothyroidism)
1. Autoimmune (lymphocytic) thyroiditis
2. Thyroidectomy or radioiodine therapy
3. Irradiation to the thyroid
4. Thyrotropin deficiency
5. TRH deficiency due to hypothalamic injury or disease
6. Medications
a. Iodides
(1) Excess (eg, amiodarone)
(2) Deficiency
b. Lithium
c. Cobalt
7. Large hemangiomas
8. Idiopathic

T_3, triiodothyronine; T_4, thyroxine; TRH, thyrotropin-releasing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

Congenital hypothyroidism occurs in about 1:3000–1:4000 infants. Untreated, it causes severe neurocognitive impairment. Most cases are sporadic resulting from hypoplasia or aplasia of the thyroid gland or failure of the gland to migrate to its normal anatomic location (ie, lingual or sublingual thyroid gland). Other causes are listed in Table 34–4. In severe maternal iodine deficiency, both the fetus and the mother are T_4-deficient, with irreversible brain damage to the fetus. Acquired hypothyroidism, particularly if goiter is present, is usually a result of chronic lymphocytic (Hashimoto) thyroiditis.

Several hundred patients with resistance to thyroid hormone have been described and present with elevations in T_4 and/or FT_4, with normal TSH. There is often a family history of the disorder. Clinical manifestations are highly variable due to differential expression of thyroid hormone receptor isoforms in different tissues.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Even when the thyroid gland is completely absent, most newborns with congenital hypothyroidism appear normal. However, because congenital hypothyroidism is associated with intellectual impairment, thyroid testing is included in the newborn screen and treatment must be initiated as early as possible. Jaundice associated with an unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia may be present in newborns with congenital hypothyroidism.

Features of juvenile hypothyroidism include short stature, abnormal weight gain; delayed bone age and retarded dental eruption; skin changes (dry, thick, scaly, coarse, pale, cool, or mottled, or have a yellowish tinge); hair changes (dry, coarse, or brittle), hair loss; lateral thinning of the eyebrows; musculoskeletal findings (hypotonia and a slow relaxation component of deep tendon reflexes); physical and mental sluggishness; nonpitting myxedema; constipation; cold temperature intolerance; bradycardia; puberty may be delayed; occasional pseudopuberty.

In hypothyroidism resulting from enzymatic defects, ingestion of goitrogens, or chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis, the thyroid gland may be enlarged. Thyroid enlargement in children is usually symmetrical, and the gland is moderately firm and not nodular. In chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis, however, the thyroid frequently has a cobblestone surface (see the following text).

B. Laboratory Findings

In primary hypothyroidism, the total T_4 and FT_4 may be normal or decreased and the serum TSH is elevated. Circulating autoantibodies to thyroid peroxidase and thyroglobulin may be present. In central hypothyroidism, the TSH is usually inappropriately normal and associated with a low total T_4 and FT_4. Serum prolactin may be elevated, resulting in galactorrhea. Other pituitary deficiencies may be present, as central hypothyroidism may be associated with congenital or acquired disorders of the hypothalamus or pituitary gland.

C. Imaging

Thyroid imaging, while helpful in establishing the cause of congenital hypothyroidism, does not affect the treatment plan and is not necessary. Bone age is delayed. Cardiomegaly is common. Long-standing primary hypothyroidism may be associated with thyrotrophic hyperplasia characterized by an enlarged sella or pituitary gland.

D. Screening Programs for Neonatal Hypothyroidism

All newborns should be screened for congenital hypothyroidism shortly after birth. Depending on the state, the newborn screen measures either the total T_4 or TSH level. Abnormal newborn screening results should be confirmed immediately with a venous T_4 and TSH level. Treatment should be started as soon as possible. Initiation of treatment

in the first month of life and good compliance during infancy usually results in a normal neurocognitive outcome.

» Treatment

Levothyroxine (75–100 mcg/m^2/d) is the drug of choice for acquired hypothyroidism. In neonates with congenital hypothyroidism, the initial dose is 10–15 mcg/kg/d. Serum total T_4 or FT_4 concentrations are used to monitor the adequacy of initial therapy because the high neonatal TSH may not normalize for weeks. Subsequently, T_4 and TSH are monitored in combination.

Léger J et al: European Society for Paediatric Endocrinology consensus guidelines on screening, diagnosis, and management of congenital hypothyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2014;99(2):363–384 [PMID: 24446653].

Schmaltz C: Thyroid hormones in the neonate: an overview of physiology and clinical correlation. Adv Neonatal Care 2012;12:217–222 [PMID: 22864001].

van der Sluijs Veer L et al: Evaluation of cognitive and motor development in toddlers with congenital hypothyroidism diagnosed by neonatal screening. J Dev Behav Pediatr 2012;33:633–640 [PMID: 23027136].

THYROIDITIS

1. Chronic Lymphocytic Thyroiditis (Chronic Autoimmune Thyroiditis, Hashimoto Thyroiditis)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Firm, freely movable, nontender, diffusely enlarged thyroid gland.
- Thyroid function is usually normal but may be elevated or decreased depending on the stage of the disease.

» General Considerations

Chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis is the most common cause of goiter and acquired hypothyroidism in childhood. It is more common in girls, and the incidence peaks during puberty. The disease is caused by an autoimmune attack on the thyroid. Increased risk of thyroid autoimmunity (and other endocrine autoimmune disorders) is associated with certain histocompatibility alleles. The following conditions are associated with increased risk for autoimmune (Hashimoto) thyroiditis: Down syndrome, Turner syndrome, celiac disease, vitiligo, alopecia, and type 1 diabetes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The thyroid is characteristically enlarged, firm, freely movable, nontender, and symmetrical. It may be nodular. Onset is usually insidious. Occasionally patients note a sensation of tracheal compression or fullness, hoarseness, and dysphagia. No local signs of inflammation or systemic infection are present. Most patients are euthyroid. Some patients are symptomatically hypothyroid, and few patients are symptomatically hyperthyroid. A detailed family history may reveal the presence of multiple autoimmune diseases in family members. Individuals at a high risk based on a chromosomal disorder or other autoimmune disease benefit from careful monitoring of growth and development, routine screening (in the case of Down syndrome, Turner syndrome, and type 1 diabetes), and a low threshold for measurement of thyroid function.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings vary. Serum concentrations of TSH, T_4, and FT_4 are usually normal. Some patients are hypothyroid with an elevated TSH and low thyroid hormone levels. A few patients are hyperthyroid with a suppressed TSH and elevated thyroid hormone levels. Thyroid antibodies (antithyroglobulin, antithyroid peroxidase) are frequently elevated. Thyroid uptake scan adds little to the diagnosis. Surgical or needle biopsy is diagnostic but seldom necessary.

» Treatment

There is controversy about the need to treat chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis with normal thyroid function. Full replacement doses of thyroid hormone may decrease the size of the thyroid, but may also result in hyperthyroidism. Hypothyroidism commonly develops over time. Consequently, patients require lifelong surveillance. Children with documented hypothyroidism should receive thyroid hormone replacement.

2. Acute (Suppurative) Thyroiditis

Acute thyroiditis is rare. The most common causes are group A streptococci, pneumococci, Staphylococcus aureus, and anaerobes. Thyroid abscesses may form. The patient is toxic with fever and chills. The thyroid gland is enlarged and exquisitely tender with associated erythema, hoarseness, and dysphagia. Thyroid function tests are typically normal. Patients have a leukocytosis, "left shift," and elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate. Specific antibiotic therapy should be administered.

3. Subacute (Nonsuppurative) Thyroiditis

Subacute thyroiditis (de Quervain thyroiditis) is rare. It is thought to be caused by viral infection with mumps, influenza, echovirus, coxsackievirus, Epstein-Barr virus, or adenovirus. Presenting features are similar to acute thyroiditis—fever, malaise, sore throat, dysphagia, and thyroid pain that may radiate to the ear. The thyroid is firm and enlarged. Sedimentation rate is elevated. In contrast to acute thyroiditis, the onset is generally insidious and serum thyroid hormone concentrations may be elevated.

HYPERTHYROIDISM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Nervousness, emotional lability, hyperactivity, fatigue, tremor, palpitations, excessive appetite, weight loss, increased perspiration, and heat intolerance.
- Goiter, exophthalmos, tachycardia, widened pulse pressure, systolic hypertension, weakness, and smooth, moist, warm skin.
- TSH is suppressed. Thyroid hormone levels (T_4, FT_4, T_3, T_3 resin uptake [T_3RU]) are elevated.

» General Considerations

In children, most cases of hyperthyroidism are due to Graves disease, caused by antibodies directed at the TSH receptor that stimulate thyroid hormone production. Other causes include thyroiditis (acute, subacute, or chronic); autonomous functioning thyroid nodules; tumors producing TSH; McCune-Albright syndrome; exogenous thyroid hormone excess; and acute iodine exposure.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Hyperthyroidism is more common in females than males. In children, it most frequently occurs during adolescence. The course of hyperthyroidism tends to be cyclic, with spontaneous remissions and exacerbations. Symptoms include poor concentration, hyperactivity, fatigue, emotional labiality, personality disturbance/unmasking of underlying psychosis, insomnia, weight loss (despite increased appetite), palpitations, heat intolerance, increased perspiration, increased stool frequency, polyuria, and irregular menses. Signs include tachycardia, systolic hypertension, increased pulse pressure, tremor, proximal muscle weakness, and moist, warm, skin. Accelerated growth and development may occur. Thyroid storm is a rare condition characterized by fever, cardiac failure, emesis, and delirium that can result in coma or death. Most cases of Graves disease are associated with a diffuse firm goiter. A thyroid bruit and thrill may be present. Many cases are associated with exophthalmos.

B. Laboratory Findings

TSH is suppressed. T_4, FT_4, T_3, and free T_3 (FT_3) are elevated except in rare cases in which only the serum T_3 is elevated (T_3 thyrotoxicosis). The presence of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI) or thyroid eye disease confirms the diagnosis of Graves disease. TSH receptor–binding antibodies (TRaB) are usually elevated.

C. Imaging

Radioactive iodine uptake by the thyroid is increased in Graves disease, whereas in subacute and chronic thyroiditis it is decreased. An autonomous hyperfunctioning nodule takes up iodine and appears as a "hot nodule" while the surrounding tissue has decreased iodine uptake. In children with hyperthyroidism, bone age may be advanced. In infants, accelerated skeletal maturation may be associated with premature fusion of the cranial sutures. Long-standing hyperthyroidism causes osteoporosis.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Strenuous physical activity should be avoided in untreated hyperthyroidism.

B. Medical Treatment

1. β-Adrenergic blocking agents—These are adjuncts to therapy. They can rapidly ameliorate symptoms and are indicated in severe disease with tachycardia and hypertension. β_1-Specific agents such as atenolol are preferred because they are more cardioselective. Propranolol also decreases conversion of T_4 to active T_3, so is preferred in severe cases/thyrotoxicosis.

2. Antithyroid agents (methimazole)—Antithyroid agents are frequently used in the initial treatment of childhood hyperthyroidism. These drugs interfere with thyroid hormone synthesis, and usually take a few weeks to produce a clinical response. Adequate control is usually achieved within a few months. If medical therapy is unsuccessful, more definitive therapy, such as radioablation of the thyroid or thyroidectomy, should be considered.

Although methimazole is the drug of choice, propylthiouracil (PTU) is still available. However, there are reports of severe hepatotoxicity related to PTU.

a. Initial dosage—Methimazole is initiated at a dose of 10–60 mg/d (0.5–1 mg/kg/d) given once a day. Initial dosing is continued until FT_4 or T_4 have normalized and signs and symptoms have subsided.

b. Maintenance—The optimal dose of antithyroid agent for maintenance treatment remains unclear. Recent studies suggest that 10–15 mg/d of methimazole provides adequate long-term control in most patients with a minimum of side effects. If the TSH becomes elevated, many providers decrease the dose of the antithyroid agent; others continue the same dose of antithyroid agent and add exogenous thyroid hormone replacement. Treatment usually continues for 2 years with the goal of inducing remission. If thyroid hormone levels are stable at that point, a trial off medication could be considered.

c. Toxicity—If vasculitis, arthralgia, arthritis, granulocytopenia, or hepatitis occur, the drug must be discontinued. Urticarial rash can sometimes be treated symptomatically.

3. Iodide—Large doses of iodide usually produce a rapid but short-lived blockade of thyroid hormone synthesis and release. This approach is recommended only for acute management of severely thyrotoxic patients.

C. Radiation Therapy

Radioactive iodine ablation of the thyroid is usually reserved for children with Graves disease who do not respond to antithyroid agents, develop adverse effects from the antithyroid agents, fail to achieve remission after several years of medical therapy, or have poor medication adherence. Antithyroid agents should be discontinued 4–7 days prior to radioiodine treatment to allow radioiodine uptake by the thyroid. ^{131}I is administered orally, concentrating in the thyroid and resulting in decreased thyroid activity. In the first 2 weeks following radioiodine treatment, hyperthyroidism may worsen as thyroid tissue is destroyed and thyroid hormone is released and temporary therapy with a β-adrenergic antagonist or methimazole may be necessary. In most cases, hypothyroidism develops and thyroid hormone replacement is needed. Long-term follow-up studies have not shown any increased incidence of thyroid cancer, leukemia, infertility, or birth defects when ablative doses of ^{131}I were used.

D. Surgical Treatment

Subtotal and total thyroidectomies are infrequently used in children with Graves disease. Surgery is indicated for extremely large goiters, goiters with a suspicious nodule, very young or pregnant patients, or patients refusing radioiodine ablation. Before surgery, a β-adrenergic blocking agent is given to treat symptoms, and antithyroid agents are given for several weeks to minimize the surgical risks associated with hyperthyroidism. Iodide (eg, Lugol solution, one drop every 8 hours, or saturated solution of potassium iodide, one to two drops daily) is given for 1–2 weeks prior to surgery to reduce thyroid vascularity and inhibit release of thyroid hormone. Surgical complications include severe hypocalcemia due to hypoparathyroidism and recurrent laryngeal nerve damage. An experienced thyroid surgeon is crucial to good surgical outcome. After thyroidectomy, patients become hypothyroid and need thyroid hormone replacement.

» Course & Prognosis

Partial remissions and exacerbations may continue for several years. Treatment with an antithyroid agent results in prolonged remissions in one-third to two-thirds of children.

Bauer AJ: Approach to the pediatric patient with Graves' disease: when is definitive therapy warranted? J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2011;96:580–588 [PMID: 21378220].

Rivkees SA: Pediatric Graves' disease: management in the post-propylthiouracil. Era Int J Pediatrc Endocrinol 2014;2014(1):10 [PMID: 25089127].

Yuan L, Yang J: Radioiodine treatment in pediatric Graves' disease and thyroid carcinoma. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2011;24:877–883 [PMID: 22308835].

» Neonatal Graves Disease

Transient congenital hyperthyroidism (neonatal Graves disease) occurs in about 1% of infants born to mothers with Graves disease. It occurs when maternal TSH receptor antibodies cross the placenta and stimulate excess thyroid hormone production in the fetus and newborn. Neonatal Graves disease can be associated with irritability, intrauterine growth retardation (IUGR), poor weight gain, flushing, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, and thrombocytopenia. Severe cases may result in cardiac failure and death. Hyperthyroidism may develop several days after birth. Thyroid studies should be obtained at birth and repeated within the first week. Immediate management should focus on the cardiac manifestations. Temporary treatment may be necessary with iodide, antithyroid agents, β-adrenergic antagonists, or corticosteroids. Hyperthyroidism gradually resolves over 1–3 months as maternal antibodies decline. As TSH receptor antibodies may still be present in the serum of previously hyperthyroid mothers after thyroidectomy or radioablation, neonatal Graves disease should be considered in all infants of mothers with a history of hyperthyroidism.

Léger J, Carel JC: Hyperthyroidism in childhood: causes, when, and how to treat. J Clin Res Pediatr Endocrinol 2013;5(Suppl 1):50–56 [PMID: 23154161].

Lewis KA et al: Neonatal Graves disease associated with severe metabolic abnormalities. Pediatrics 2011;128(1):e232–e236 [PMID: 21646263].

Papendieck P et al: Thyroid disorders of neonates born to mothers with Graves' disease. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2009;22:547 [PMID: 19694202].

THYROID CANCER

Thyroid cancer is rare in childhood. Children usually present with a thyroid nodule or an asymptomatic asymmetrical neck mass. Dysphagia and hoarseness are unusual

symptoms. Thyroid function tests are usually normal. A "cold" nodule is often seen on a technetium or radioiodine uptake scan of the thyroid. Fine-needle aspiration biopsy of the nodule assists in the diagnosis.

The most common thyroid cancer is papillary thyroid carcinoma, a well-differentiated carcinoma arising from the thyroid follicular cell. Children frequently present with local metastases to the cervical lymph nodes and occasionally with pulmonary metastases. Despite its aggressive presentation, children with papillary thyroid carcinoma have a relatively good prognosis, with a 20-year survival rate greater than 90%. Treatment consists of total thyroidectomy and removal of all involved lymph nodes, usually followed by radioiodine ablation to destroy residual thyroid remnant and metastatic tissue left behind after surgery. Thyroid hormone replacement is started to suppress TSH stimulation of residual thyroid tissue and to treat the hypothyroidism that results from surgical removal of the thyroid gland. Since papillary thyroid carcinoma in children is associated with a high recurrence rate, regular follow-up with serum thyroglobulin levels (a tumor marker), neck ultrasound, and radioiodine whole body scan are required.

Follicular thyroid carcinoma, medullary thyroid carcinoma, anaplastic carcinoma, and lymphoma are less common thyroid malignancies. Medullary thyroid carcinoma, due to autosomal dominant mutations in the RET proto-oncogene, arises from the thyroid C cells, which secrete calcitonin, and it is associated with elevated serum calcitonin levels. It can occur sporadically or be inherited in multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) type 2 and familial medullary thyroid carcinoma. In affected families, all members should be screened for the mutation, and those identified with the mutation should be treated with prophylactic thyroidectomy in early childhood.

Guille JT et al: Evaluation and management of the pediatric thyroid nodule. Oncologist 2015;20(1):19–27 [PMID: 25810047].

Kloos RT et al: Medullary thyroid cancer: management guidelines of the American Thyroid Association. Thyroid 2009;19:565 [PMID: 25900731].

Rapkin L, Pashankar FD: Management of thyroid carcinoma in children and young adults. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2012;34(Suppl 2):S39–S46 [PMID: 22525405].

Waguespack SG et al: Management of medullary thyroid carcinoma and MEN2 syndromes in childhood. Nat Rev Endocrinol 2011;23(7):596–607 [PMID: 21862994].

DISORDERS OF CALCIUM & PHOSPHORUS METABOLISM

Serum calcium concentration is tightly regulated by the coordinated actions of the parathyroid glands, kidney, liver, and small intestine. Low serum calcium concentrations, detected by calcium-sensing receptors on the surface of parathyroid cells, stimulate parathyroid hormone (PTH) release. PTH in turn promotes release of calcium and phosphorus from the bone, reabsorption of calcium from the urinary filtrate, and excretion of phosphorus in the urine. Another essential cofactor in calcium homeostasis is 1,25-dihydroxy vitamin D (calcitriol). The first step in production of this active form of vitamin D occurs in the liver where dietary vitamin D is hydroxylated to 25-hydroxy vitamin D. The final step in formation of calcitriol is 1-hydroxylation, which takes place in the kidney under control of PTH. The primary effect of calcitriol is to promote the absorption of calcium from the intestines. In concert with PTH, however, it also facilitates calcium and phosphorus mobilization from bones. Deficiencies or excesses of PTH or calcitriol, abnormalities in their receptors, or abnormalities of vitamin D metabolism lead to clinically significant aberrations in calcium homeostasis. Although calcitonin, released from the thyroid gland C cells, also reduces serum calcium concentration, changes in its serum concentration rarely cause clinically relevant disease.

HYPOCALCEMIC DISORDERS

A normal serum calcium concentration is approximately 8.9–10.2 mg/dL. The normal concentration of ionized calcium is approximately 1.1–1.3 mmol/L. Serum calcium levels in newborns, which are slightly lower than in older children and adults, may be as low as 7 mg/dL in premature infants. Fifty to sixty percent of calcium in the serum is protein-bound and metabolically fairly inactive. Thus, measurement of ionized serum calcium, the metabolically active form, is helpful if serum proteins are low or in conditions such as acidosis that cause abnormal calcium binding to protein.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Tetany with facial and extremity numbness, tingling, cramps, spontaneous muscle contractures, carpopedal spasm, positive Trousseau and Chvostek signs, loss of consciousness, and convulsions.
- Diarrhea, prolongation of electrical systole (QT interval), and laryngospasm.
- In hypoparathyroidism or pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP): defective nails and teeth, cataracts, and ectopic calcification in the subcutaneous tissues and basal ganglia.

General Considerations

Hypocalcemia is a consistent feature of conditions such as hypoparathyroidism, PHP, transient neonatal hypoparathyroidism, and severe vitamin D deficiency rickets, and may

be present in rare disorders of vitamin D action (receptor defects). Causes of rickets are outlined in Table 34–5. Other causes of hypocalcemia include the following:

- Intestinal malabsorption of calcium (may be exacerbated by malabsorption of vitamin D, magnesium)
- Chronic renal disease
- Tumor lysis syndrome, rhabdomyolysis (due to cellular destruction that liberates large amounts of intracellular phosphate that complex with serum calcium)
- Activating mutation in the calcium-sensing receptor of the parathyroid glands and kidneys (hypercalciuric hypocalcemia)
- Hypoparathyroidism

Deficient PTH secretion may be due to deficient parathyroid tissue (DiGeorge syndrome), autoimmunity, or sometimes, magnesium deficiency. Decreased PTH action may be due to magnesium deficiency, vitamin D deficiency, or defects in the PTH receptor (PHP). Occasionally, PTH deficiency is idiopathic. Table 34–6 summarizes the clinical and laboratory characteristics of disorders of PTH secretion and action.

Autoimmune parathyroid destruction with subsequent hypoparathyroidism may be isolated, or associated with other autoimmune disorders in the APECED (autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy, or APS-1) syndrome. Hypoparathyroidism may also result from unavoidable surgical removal in patients with thyroid cancer. Autosomal dominant hypocalcemia, also called familial hypercalciuric hypocalcemia, is associated with a gain-of-function mutation in the calcium receptor, which causes a low serum PTH despite hypocalcemia, and excessive urinary loss of calcium. A family history of hypocalcemia may be the clue that differentiates this condition from other causes of hypocalcemia.

Transient neonatal hypoparathyroidism is caused both by a relative deficiency of PTH secretion and PTH action (see Table 34–6). In the early form, associated hypomagnesemia often aggravates hypoparathyroidism due to magnesium's role in facilitating PTH secretion. The late form of neonatal hypoparathyroidism (after 2 weeks of age) occurs in infants receiving high-phosphate formulas (whole cow's milk is a well-known example) due to intestinal calcium-phosphate binding, resulting in decreased absorption.

Rickets describes characteristic clinical and bony radiologic features associated with hypophosphatemia (see Chapter 11). Vitamin D deficiency, caused by lack of sunlight exposure or dietary deficiency, is the most common cause of rickets. Recently, high rates of occult vitamin D deficiency have formed the basis for the 2008 recommendation by the American Academy of Pediatrics that breast-fed infants receive vitamin D supplementation of at least 400 IU/d. See Table 34–5 for features of other causes of rickets.

Familial hypophosphatemic rickets occurs due to abnormal renal phosphate loss related to abnormal fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF23) regulation.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Prolonged hypocalcemia from any cause is associated with tetany, photophobia, blepharospasm, and diarrhea. Symptoms of tetany include numbness, muscle cramps, twitching of the extremities, carpopedal spasm, and laryngospasm. Tapping the face in front of the ear causes facial spasms (Chvostek sign). Some patients with hypocalcemia exhibit bizarre behavior, irritability, loss of consciousness, and convulsions. Headache, vomiting, increased intracranial pressure, and papilledema may occur. In early infancy, respiratory distress may be a presenting finding.

B. Laboratory Findings

Tables 34–5 and 34–6 outline the specific laboratory findings in various causes of hypocalcemia. Magnesium levels may also be low. Measurement of urinary excretion of calcium (calcium-creatinine ratio) can assist in diagnosis and monitoring of therapy in children on calcitriol therapy.

C. Imaging

Soft tissue and basal ganglia calcification may occur in idiopathic hypoparathyroidism and PHP. Various skeletal changes are associated with rickets, including cupped and irregular long bone metaphyses. Torsional deformities can result in genu varum (bowleg). Accentuation of the costochondral junction gives the rachitic rosary appearance seen on the chest wall.

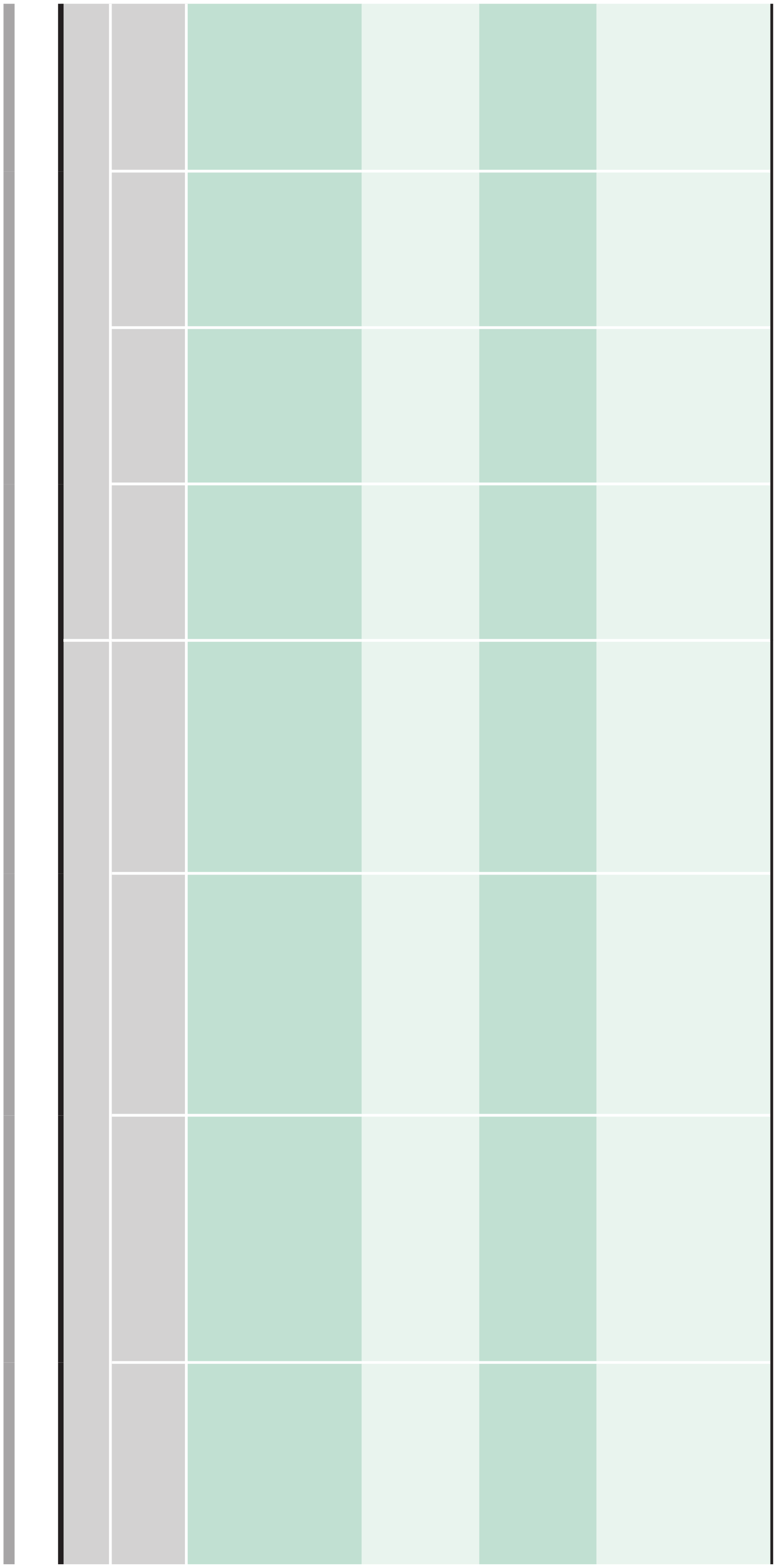
» Differential Diagnosis

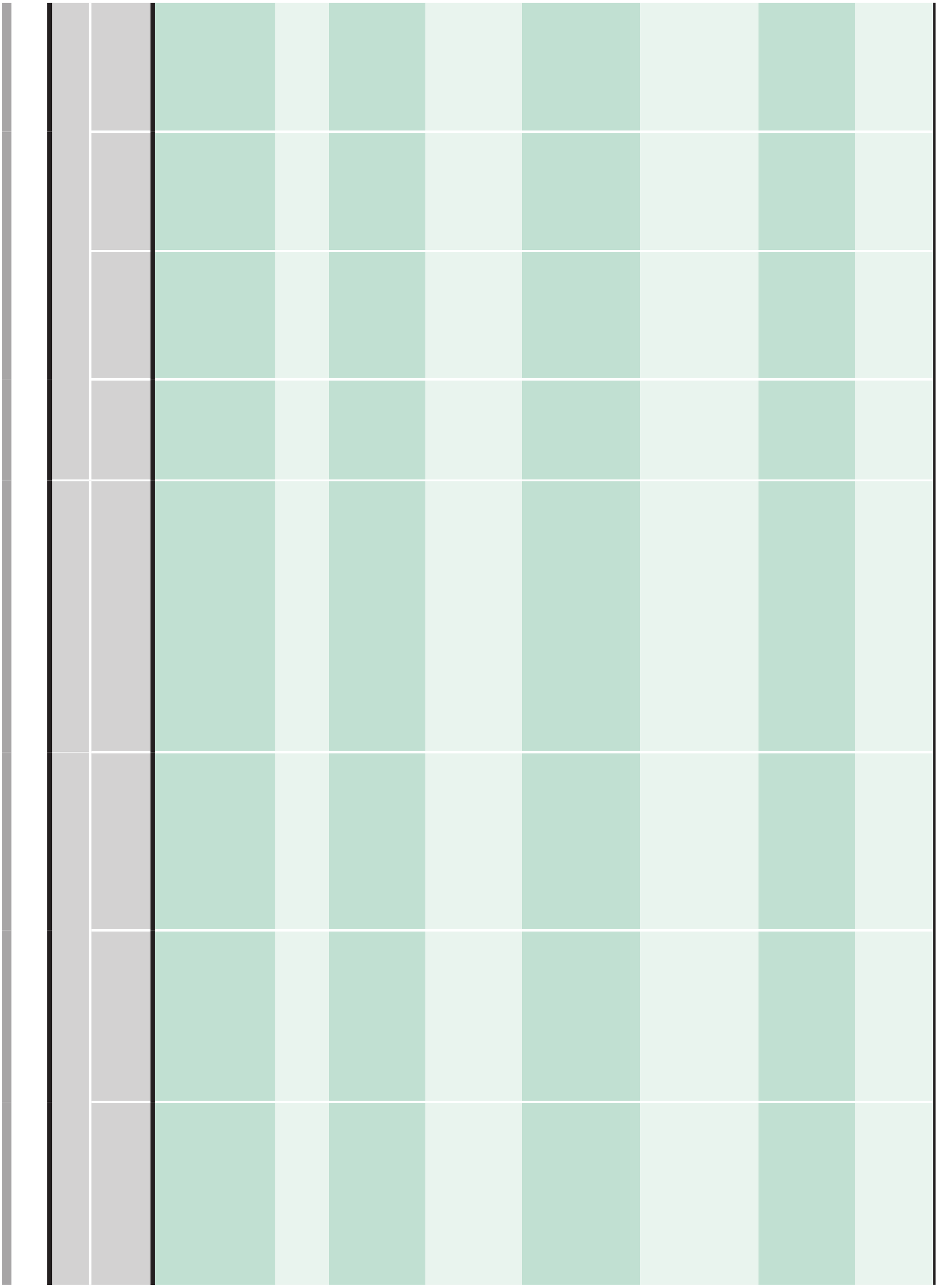
Tables 34–5 and 34–6 outline the features of disorders associated with hypocalcemia. In individuals with hypoalbuminemia, the total serum calcium may be low and yet the functional serum ionized calcium is normal. Ionized calcium is the test of choice for hypocalcemia in patients with low serum albumin.

» Treatment

A. Acute or Severe Tetany

Symptoms are treated acutely by administration of intravenous calcium gluconate or calcium chloride at a dose of 10 mg/kg. Intravenous calcium infusions should not exceed 50 mg/min because of possible cardiac arrhythmia. Cardiac monitoring should be performed during calcium infusion.





B. Maintenance Management of Hypoparathyroidism or Chronic Hypocalcemia

The objective of treatment is to maintain the serum calcium and phosphate at near-normal levels without excess urinary calcium excretion.

1. Diet—Calcium supplementation should start at a dose of 50–75 mg of elemental calcium per kilogram per day divided in three to four doses. Supplemental calcium can often be discontinued in patients with rickets after vitamin D therapy has stabilized.

2. Vitamin D supplementation—Ergocalciferol (vitamin D_2) and cholecalciferol (vitamin D_3) are the most commonly used oral vitamin D preparations. Cholecalciferol is slightly more active than ergocalciferol. Calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxy vitamin D_3) supplementation is recommended for impaired metabolism of dietary vitamin D to 25-OH vitamin D as seen in hepatic dysfunction, or to its active end product, 1,25-dihydroxy vitamin D, or impaired PTH function. Selection and dosage of vitamin D supplements varies with the underlying condition and the response to therapy.

3. Monitoring—Dosage of calcium and vitamin D must be tailored for each patient. Monitoring serum calcium, urine calcium, and serum alkaline phosphatase levels at 1- to 3-month intervals is necessary to ensure adequate therapy and to prevent hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria/nephrocalcinosis, and vitamin D toxicity.

The major goals of monitoring in vitamin D deficiency are to ensure: (1) maintenance of serum calcium and phosphorus concentrations within normal ranges; (2) normalization of alkaline phosphatase activity for age; (3) regression of skeletal changes; (4) maintenance of an age-appropriate urine calcium-creatinine ratio. The ratio should be less than 0.8 in newborns, 0.3–0.6 in children, and less than 0.25 in adolescents (when using creatinine and calcium measured in milligrams per deciliter).

Monitoring goals are somewhat different in hypophosphatemic rickets. Serum calcium and alkaline phosphatase, and urinary calcium to creatinine ratio should be maintained within normal limits. Monitoring of serum PTH is necessary to ensure that secondary hyperparathyroidism does not develop from excessive phosphate treatment or inadequate calcitriol replacement.

PSEUDOHYPOPARATHYROIDISM (RESISTANCE TO PARATHYROID HORMONE ACTION)

In PHP, PTH production is adequate, but target organs (renal tubule, bone, or both) fail to respond because of receptor resistance. Resistance to PTH action is due to a heterozygous inactivating mutation in the stimulatory G protein subunit associated with the PTH receptor, which leads to impaired signaling. Resistance to other G protein–dependent hormones such as TSH, GHRH, and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)/luteinizing hormone (LH), may also be present.

There are several types of PHP with variable biochemical and phenotypic features (see Table 34–6). Biochemical abnormalities in PHP (hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia) are similar to those seen in hypoparathyroidism, but the PTH levels are elevated. PHP may be accompanied by a characteristic phenotype known as Albright hereditary osteodystrophy (AHO), which includes short stature; round, full facies; irregularly shortened fourth metacarpal; a short, thick-set body; delayed and defective dentition; and mild mental retardation. Corneal and lenticular opacities and ectopic calcification of the basal ganglia and subcutaneous tissues (osteoma cutis) may occur with or without abnormal serum calcium levels. Treatment is the same as for hypoparathyroidism.

Pseudo-pseudohypoparathyroidism (PPHP) describes individuals with the AHO phenotype, but normal calcium homeostasis. PHP and PPHP can occur in the same cohort. Genomic imprinting is probably responsible for the different phenotypic expression of disease. Heterozygous loss of the maternal allele causes PHP and heterozygous loss of the paternal allele causes PPHP.

Elder CJ, Bishop NJ: Rickets [Review]. Lancet 2014;383: 1665–1676 [PMID: 24412049].

Hendy GN, Guarnieri V, Canaff L: Calcium-sensing receptor and associated diseases [Review]. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci 2009;89:31–95 [Epub 2009 Oct 7] [PMID: 20374733].

Lee JY, Imel EA: The changing face of hypophosphatemic disorders in the FGF-23 era [Review]. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2013;10(Suppl 2):367–379 [PMID: 23858620].

Malloy PJ, Feldman D: Genetic disorders and defects in vitamin D action. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 2010 Jun;39(2): 333–346 [PMID: 20511055].

Shaw N: A practical approach to hypocalcaemia in children [Review]. Endocr Dev 2009;16:73–92 [PMID: 19494662].

HYPERCALCEMIC STATES

Hypercalcemia is defined as a serum calcium level greater than 11 mg/dL. Severe hypercalcemia is a level greater than 13.5 mg/dL.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abdominal pain, polyuria, polydipsia, hypertension, nephrocalcinosis, failure to thrive, renal stones, intractable peptic ulcer, constipation, uremia, and pancreatitis.
- Bone pain or pathologic fractures, subperiosteal bone resorption, renal parenchymal calcification or stones, and osteitis fibrosa cystica.
- Impaired concentration, altered mental status, mood swings, and coma.

» General Considerations

More than 80% of hypercalcemic children or adolescents have either hyperparathyroidism or a malignant tumor. Table 34–7 summarizes the differential diagnosis of childhood hypercalcemia.

Hyperparathyroidism is rare in childhood and may be primary or secondary. The most common cause of primary hyperparathyroidism is parathyroid adenoma. Familial hyperparathyroidism may be an isolated disease, or it may be associated with MEN type 1, or rarely type 2A. Hypercalcemia of malignancy is associated with solid and hematologic malignancies and is due either to local destruction of bone by tumor or to ectopic secretion of PTH-related protein. When ectopic PTH-related protein is present, calcium is elevated, serum PTH is suppressed, and serum PTH–related protein is elevated. Chronic renal disease with impaired phosphate excretion is the most common secondary cause of hyperparathyroidism.

Belcher R, Metrailer AM, Bodenner DL, Stack BC Jr: Characterization of hyperparathyroidism in youth and adolescents: a literature review [Review]. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol 2013 Mar;77(3):318–322 [PMID: 23313432].

Iqbal CW, Wahoff DC: Diagnosis and management of pediatric endocrine neoplasms [Review]. Curr Opin Pediatr 2009 Jun;21(3):379–385 [PMID: 19421059].

Kemper MJ, vanHusen M: Renal osteodystrophy in children: pathogenesis, diagnosis and treatment [Review]. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014 Apr;26(2);180–186 [PMID: 24553631].

Table 34–7. Hypercalcemic states.

A. Primary hyperparathyroidism
1. Parathyroid hyperplasia
2. Parathyroid adenoma
3. Familial, including MEN types 1 and 2
4. Ectopic PTH secretion
B. Other hypercalcemic states resulting from increased intestinal or renal absorption of calcium
1. Hypervitaminosis D (including idiopathic hypercalcemia of infancy)
2. Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia
3. Lithium therapy
4. Sarcoidosis
5. Phosphate depletion
6. Aluminum intoxication
7. Subcutaneous fat necrosis (due to vitamin D activation)
C. Other hypercalcemic states resulting from increased mobilization of bone minerals
1. Hyperthyroidism
2. Immobilization
3. Thiazides
4. Vitamin A intoxication
5. Malignant neoplasms
a. Ectopic PTH secretion or PTH-related protein (PTHRP)
b. Prostaglandin-secreting tumors
c. Tumors metastatic to bone
d. Myeloma

MEN, multiple endocrine neoplasia; PTH, parathyroid hormone.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Due to hypercalcemia—Manifestations include hypotonicity and muscle weakness; apathy, mood swings, and bizarre behavior; nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, constipation, and weight loss; hyperextensibility of joints; and hypertension, cardiac irregularities, bradycardia, and shortening of the QT interval. Coma occurs rarely. Calcium deposits occur in the cornea or conjunctiva (band keratopathy) and are detected by slit-lamp examination. Intractable peptic ulcer and pancreatitis occur in adults but rarely in children.

2. Due to Increased calcium and phosphate excretion—Loss of renal concentrating ability causes polyuria, polydipsia, and calcium phosphate deposition in renal parenchyma or as urinary calculi with progressive renal damage.

3. Due to changes in the skeleton—Initial findings include bone pain, osteitis fibrosa cystica, subperiosteal bone absorption in the distal clavicles and phalanges, absence of lamina dura around the teeth, spontaneous fractures, and moth-eaten appearance of the skull on radiographs. Later, there is generalized demineralization with high risk of subperiosteal cortical bone.

B. Imaging

Bone changes may be subtle in children. Technetium sestamibi scintigraphy is preferred over conventional procedures (ultrasound, computed tomography, and MRI) for localizing parathyroid tumors.

» Treatment

A. Symptomatic

Initial management is vigorous hydration with normal saline and forced calcium diuresis with a loop diuretic such as furosemide (1 mg/kg given every 6 hours). If response is inadequate, glucocorticoids or calcitonin may be used. Bisphosphonates, standard agents for the management of acute hypercalcemia in adults, are being used more often in refractory pediatric hypercalcemia.

B. Chronic

Treatment options vary with the underlying cause. Resection of parathyroid adenoma or subtotal removal of hyperplastic parathyroid glands is the preferred treatment.

Postoperatively, hypocalcemia due to the rapid remineralization of chronically calcium-deprived bones may occur. A diet high in calcium and vitamin D is recommended immediately postoperatively and is continued until serum calcium concentrations are normal and stable. Treatment of secondary hyperparathyroidism from chronic renal disease is primarily directed at controlling serum phosphorus levels with phosphate binders. Pharmacologic doses of calcitriol are used to suppress PTH secretion. Long-term therapy for hypercalcemia of malignancy is the treatment of the underlying disorder. There is also an increasing role for bisphosphonates in treatment of chronic hypercalcemia.

» Course & Prognosis

The prognosis after resection of a single adenoma is excellent. The prognosis following subtotal parathyroidectomy for diffuse hyperplasia or removal of multiple adenomas is usually good and depends on correction of the underlying defect. In patients with multiple sites of parathyroid adenoma or hyperplasia, MEN is likely, and other family members may be at risk. Genetic counseling and DNA analysis to determine the specific gene defect are indicated.

FAMILIAL HYPOCALCIURIC HYPERCALCEMIA (FAMILIAL BENIGN HYPERCALCEMIA)

Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia is distinguished by low to normal urinary calcium excretion as a result of high renal reabsorption of calcium. PTH is normal or slightly elevated. In most cases, the genetic defect is a mutation in the membrane-bound calcium-sensing receptor expressed on parathyroid and renal tubule cells. It is inherited as an autosomal dominant trait with high penetrance. There is a low rate of new mutations. Most patients are asymptomatic, and treatment is unnecessary. A severe form of symptomatic neonatal hyperparathyroidism may occur in infants homozygous for the receptor mutation.

HYPERVITAMINOSIS D

Vitamin D intoxication is almost always the result of ingestion of excessive amounts of vitamin D. Signs, symptoms, and treatment of vitamin D–induced hypercalcemia are the same as those in other hypercalcemic conditions. Treatment depends on the severity of hypercalcemia. Severe hypercalcemia requires hospitalization and aggressive intervention. Due to the storage of vitamin D in the adipose tissue, several months of a low-calcium, low–vitamin D diet may be required.

IDIOPATHIC HYPERCALCEMIA OF INFANCY (WILLIAMS SYNDROME)

Williams syndrome is an uncommon disorder of infancy characterized by elfin-appearing facies and hypercalcemia in infancy. Other features include failure to thrive, mental and motor retardation, cardiovascular abnormalities (primarily supravalvular aortic stenosis), irritability, purposeless movements, constipation, hypotonia, polyuria, polydipsia, and hypertension. A gregarious and affectionate personality is the rule in children with the syndrome. Hypercalcemia may not appear until several months after birth. Treatment consists of restriction of dietary calcium and vitamin D (Calcilo formula) and, in severe cases, moderate doses of glucocorticoids or even bisphosphonates.

A defect in the metabolism of, or responsiveness to, vitamin D is postulated as the cause of Williams syndrome. Elastin deletions localized to chromosome 7 have been identified in more than 90% of patients and is generally identified by fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) analysis. The risk of hypercalcemia generally resolves by age 4.

IMMOBILIZATION HYPERCALCEMIA

Abrupt immobilization, particularly in a rapidly growing adolescent, may cause hypercalcemia and hypercalciuria. Abnormalities often appear 1–3 weeks after immobilization. Medical or dietary intervention may be required in severe cases.

HYPOPHOSPHATASIA

Hypophosphatasia is a rare autosomal recessive condition characterized by deficiency of alkaline phosphatase activity in serum, bone, and tissues, resulting from mutations in the gene for tissue-nonspecific isozyme of alkaline phosphatase (TNSALP). Enzyme deficiency leads to poor skeletal mineralization with clinical and radiographic features similar to rickets. Severity ranges from severe skeletal deformity and perinatal death to milder skeletal findings (including craniosynostosis), reduced bone mineral density, and motor delays. Serum calcium levels may be elevated. The diagnosis of hypophosphatasia is made by demonstrating elevated urinary phosphoethanolamine associated with low serum alkaline phosphatase. Standard therapy is supportive care; enzyme-replacement therapy shows promise for improved prognosis.

Baroncelli GI, Bertelloni S: The use of bisphosphonates in pediatrics [Review]. Horm Res Paediatr 2014;82(5):290–301 [PMID: 25376487].

Lietman SA, Germain-Lee EL, Levine MA: Hypercalcemia in children and adolescents [Review]. Curr Opin Pediatr 2010 Aug;22(4):508–515 [PMID: 20601885].

Varghese J, Rich T, Jimenez C: Benign familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia [Review]. Endocr Pract 2011 Mar–Apr;17(Suppl 1):13–17 [PMID: 21478088].

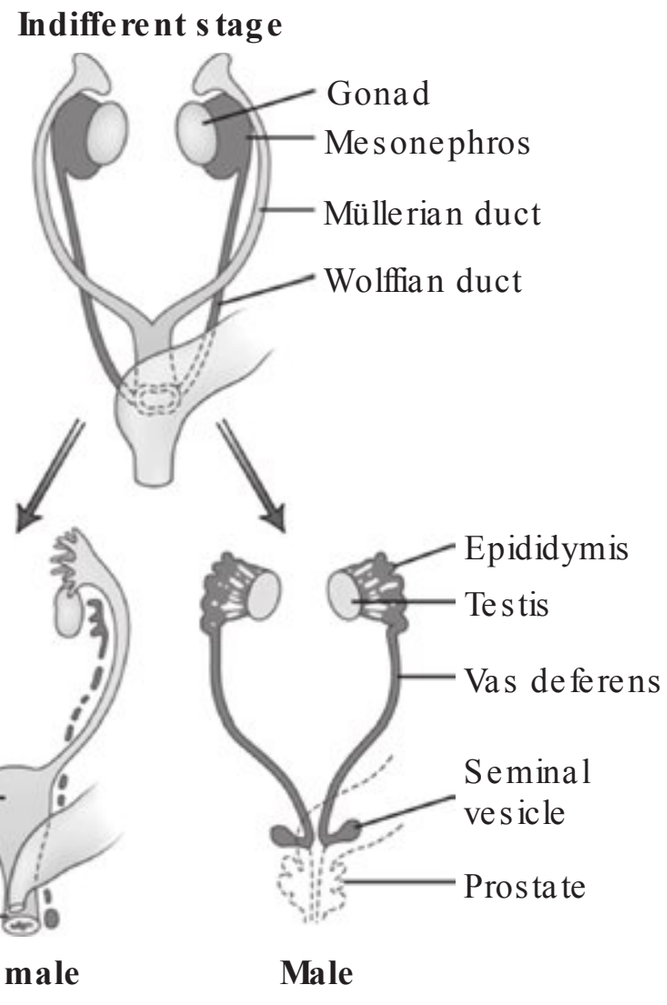
Whyte MP et al: Enzyme-replacement therapy in life-threatening hypophosphatasia N Engl J Med 2012 Mar 8;366(10):904–913 [PMID: 22397652].

GONADS (OVARIES & TESTES)

DEVELOPMENT

Sex development is a complex process beginning with the differentiation of the bipotential gonad into either a testis or ovary. In an infant with a Y chromosome, expression of the transcription factor SRY initiates a cascade of gene expression that directs the formation of testes. Without expression of SRY, ovaries develop; however, a 46,XX complement of chromosomes, in addition to several unique genes, is necessary for the development of normal ovaries. Secretion of testosterone and antimüllerian hormone (AMH) by the testes results in the development of male internal ducts (epididymis, seminal vesicle, and vas deferens) and regression of the müllerian ducts, which are the precursors of the female internal genital structures (fallopian tubes, uterus, and vagina) (Figure 34–6).

The external genitalia develop from sexually indifferent structures called the genital tubercle, the urethral folds, and the labioscrotal swellings (Figure 34–7). Development of typical male external genitalia depends on an adequate circulating concentration of testosterone and its metabolite dihydrotestosterone (DHT). Sexual differentiation of the external genitalia is completed at about 12 weeks of gestation.

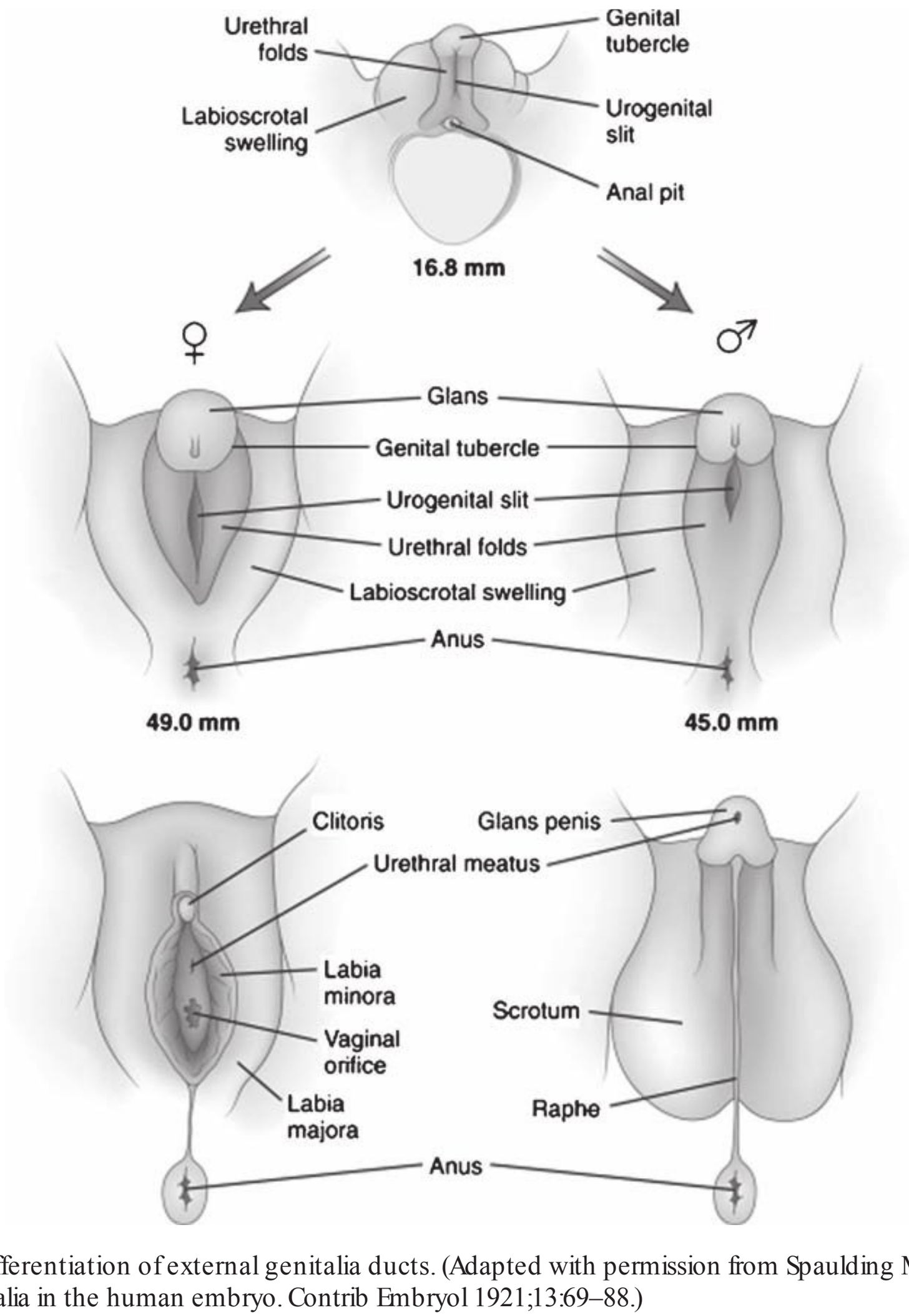


▲**Figure 34–6.** Differentiation of internal reproductive ducts. (Reproduced with permission from Kronenberg H (ed): Williams Textbook of Endocrinology, 11th ed. Saunders Elsevier; 2008.)

DISORDERS OF SEXUAL DEVELOPMENT

Disorders of sex development (DSDs) can arise from alterations in three main processes: gonadal differentiation, steroidogenesis, or androgen action. Many DSDs will be evident in the newborn period, but some will not manifest until later with abnormal pubertal development. In disorders of gonadal differentiation, the testes or ovaries do not develop normally, which results in either ambiguous genitalia or sex reversal. As an example, individuals with 46,XY complete gonadal dysgenesis do not develop normal gonadal tissue (ie have streak gonads), and this results in typical female internal and external reproductive structures. XY partial gonadal dysgenesis is associated with incomplete testes development and usually results in a phenotype of ambiguous genitalia. Mutations in genes important for gonadal differentiation have been demonstrated in many patients with both complete and partial gonadal dysgenesis. Mixed gonadal dysgenesis is usually due to presence of both 45,XO and 46,XY cell lines in the same individual. There is typically a testis on one side and a streak gonad on the contralateral side. Ovotesticular DSD occurs when there is both ovarian and testicular tissue. Steroidogenesis refers to steroid hormone biosynthesis and depends on the function of multiple enzymes (Figure 34–8). Enzymatic defects in this pathway can result in decreased or absent testosterone synthesis and in affected XY individuals, there will be reduced or lack of androgen effects resulting in ambiguous genitalia. Since the gonad and adrenal gland share common enzymes of steroid hormone production, some of the enzymatic defects associated with male undervirilization may also affect production of cortisol and aldosterone, leading to cortisol deficiency and salt wasting. Deficiency of 21-hydroxylase, an enzyme in the cortisol and aldosterone pathways, leads to overproduction of adrenal androgens and the most common form of congenital adrenal hyperplasia. In the classic salt-losing form of this disorder, 46,XX infants present with genital ambiguity due to the excess of adrenal androgen production, but have normal uterus and ovaries.

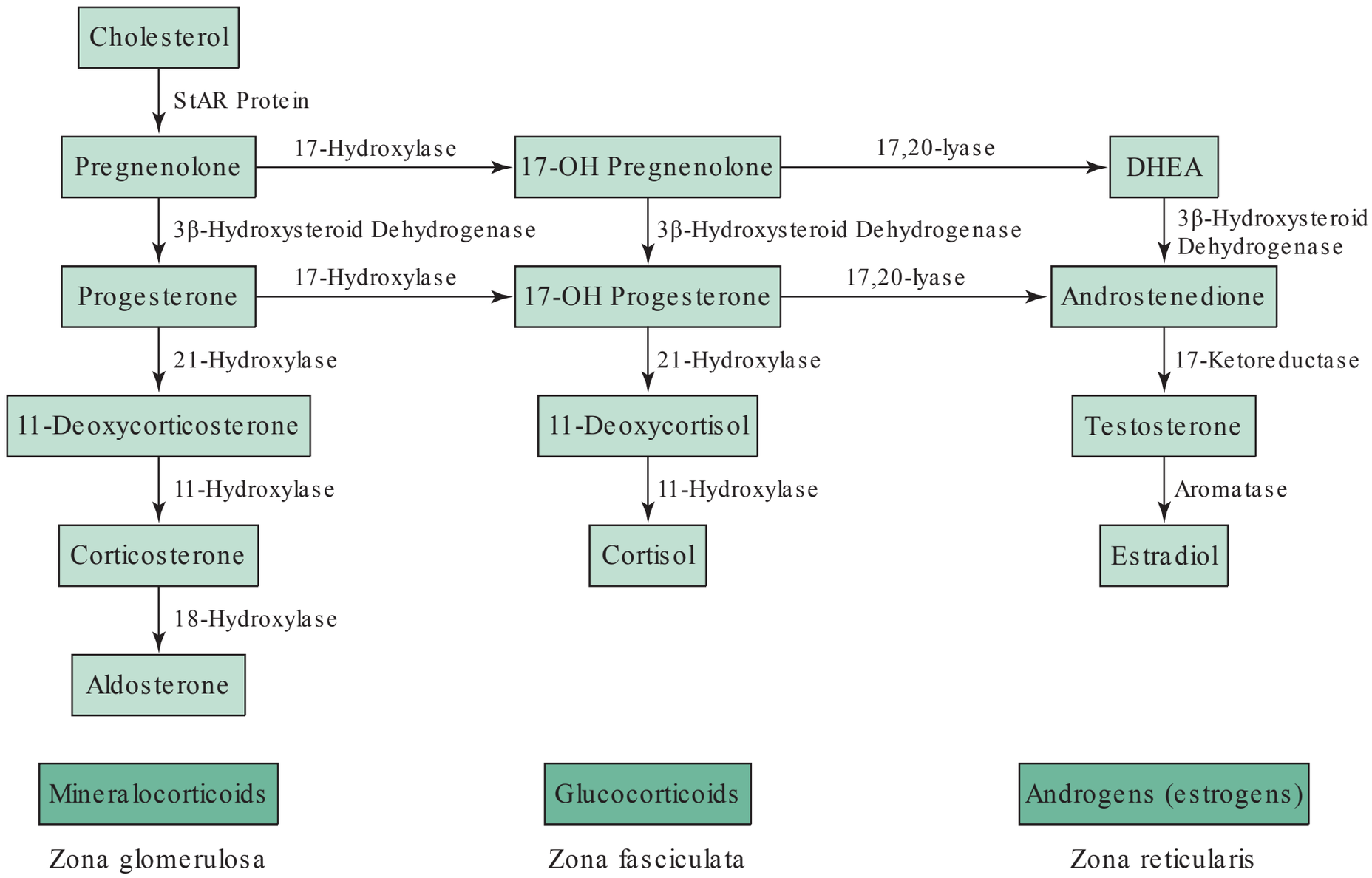
Disorders of androgen action include the diagnosis of androgen insensitivity syndrome (AIS) which is caused by an inactivating mutation in the androgen receptor gene located on the proximal long arm of the X chromosome. In complete AIS (CAIS), there is no androgen action; thus, 46,XY affected individuals have normal appearing female external genitalia with a short vagina, absent müllerian structures and absence or rudimentary wolffian structures. Gonads are located either intra-abdominally or in the inguinal canal. Many of these individuals present when surgery for an inguinal hernia reveals a testis in the hernia sack. With partial AIS (PAIS), the degree of virilization and ambiguity depends on the degree of abnormality in androgen binding.



▲**Figure 34–7.** Differentiation of external genitalia ducts. (Adapted with permission from Spaulding MH: The development of the external genitalia in the human embryo. Contrib Embryol 1921;13:69–88.)

Evaluation

On physical examination, dysmorphic features and other congenital anomalies should be noted. The genital examination should include measuring the width and length of the stretched phallus and noting the position of the urethral meatus as well as degree of labioscrotal fusion. The normal stretched penile length (SPL) is greater than 2.0 cm in term male infants. The labioscrotal and inguinal regions should be palpated for presence of gonads. Since ovaries and streak gonads do not typically descend, the presence of a palpable gonad is suggestive of a 46,XY or 45X/46,XY karyotype. In all infants, laboratory studies should be done within the first 24 hours of life and include a FISH for SRY/X-centromere, chromosomal analysis or microarray, electrolytes, LH, FSH, testosterone, and 17-hydroxyprogesterone. Additional laboratory evaluation is usually based on these results. A pelvic ultrasound can be helpful to evaluate for the presence of a uterus; however, ultrasound findings can be unreliable so should be done in an institution which has expertise in pediatric imaging. Many times, laparoscopic examination is necessary to delineate internal structures. It is important



▲**Figure 34–8.** The corticosteroid hormone synthetic pathway. The pathways illustrated are present in differing amounts in the steroid-producing tissues: adrenal glands, ovaries, and testes. In the adrenal glands, mineralocorticoids from the zona glomerulosa, glucocorticoids from the zona fasciculata, and androgens (and estrogens) from the zona reticularis are produced. The major adrenal androgen is androstenedione, because the activity of 17-ketoreductase is relatively low. The adrenal gland does secrete some testosterone and estrogen, however. The pathways leading to the synthesis of mineralocorticoids and glucocorticoids are not present to any significant degree in the gonads; however, the testes and ovaries each produce both androgens and estrogens. Further metabolism of testosterone to dihydrotestosterone occurs in target tissues of the action of the enzyme 5α-reductase. DHEA, dehydroepiandrosterone.

that gender assignment be avoided until expert evaluation by a multidisciplinary team is performed. Ideally this team includes pediatric specialists from endocrinology, urology, gynecology, genetics, psychology, and nursing. The team should develop a plan for diagnosis, gender assignment, and treatment options before making any recommendations. Open communications with the parents is essential and their participation in decision making encouraged.

Arboleda VA, Sandberg DE, Vilain E: DSDs: genetics, underlying pathologies and psychosocial differentiation. Nat Rev Endocrinol 2014:10(10):603–615 [PMID: 25091731].

Houk CP, Hughes IA, Ahmed SF, Lee PA: Writing Committee for the International Intersex Consensus Conference Participants. Summary of consensus statement on intersex disorders and their management. Pediatrics 2006;118(2):753–757 [PMID: 16882833].

Lambert SM, Vilain EJ, Kolon TF: A practical approach to ambiguous genitalia in the newborn period. Urol Clin N Am 2010;37(2):195–205 [PMID: 20569798].

Oakes MB, Eyvazzadeh AD, Quint E, Smith YR: Complete androgen insensitivity syndrome—a review. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 2008;21(6):305–310 [PMID: 19064222].

ABNORMALITIES IN FEMALE PUBERTAL DEVELOPMENT & OVARIAN FUNCTION

1. Precocious Puberty in Girls

Precocious puberty is defined as pubertal development occurring below the age limit set for normal onset of puberty. Puberty is considered precocious in girls if the onset of secondary sexual characteristics occurs before age 8 years in Caucasian girls and 7 years for African-American and Hispanic girls. Precocious puberty is more common in girls than in boys. Many girls showing signs of puberty between 6 and 8 years of age have a benign, slowly progressing form that requires no intervention. The age of pubertal onset may be advanced by obesity.

Table 34–8. Causes of precocious pubertal development.

A. Central (GnRH-dependent) precocious puberty
1. Idiopathic
2. Central nervous system abnormalities
a. Acquired—abscess, chemotherapy, radiation, surgical trauma
b. Congenital—arachnoid cyst, hydrocephalus, hypothalamic hamartoma, septo-optic dysplasia, suprasellar cyst
c. Tumors—astrocytoma, craniopharyngioma, glioma
B. Peripheral (GnRH-independent) precocious puberty
1. Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
2. Adrenal tumors
3. McCune-Albright syndrome
4. Familial male-limited gonadotropin independent precocious puberty
5. Gonadal tumors
6. Exogenous estrogen—oral (contraceptive pills) or topical
7. Ovarian cysts (females)
8. HCG-secreting tumors (eg, hepatoblastomas, choriocarcinomas) (males)

GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; HCG, human chorionic gonadotropin.

Central (gonadotropin-releasing hormone [GnRH]–dependent) precocious puberty involves activation of the hypothalamic GnRH pulse generator, an increase in gonadotropin secretion, and a resultant increase in production of sex steroids (Table 34–8). The sequence of hormonal and physical events in central precocious puberty is identical to that of normal puberty. Central precocious puberty in girls is generally idiopathic but may be secondary to a central nervous system (CNS) abnormality that disrupts the prepubertal restraint on the GnRH pulse generator. Such CNS abnormalities include, but are not limited to, hypothalamic hamartomas, CNS tumors, cranial irradiation, hydrocephalus, and trauma. Peripheral precocious puberty (GnRH-independent) occurs independent of gonadotropin secretion. In girls, peripheral precocious puberty can be caused by ovarian or adrenal tumors, ovarian cysts, late-onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia, McCune-Albright syndrome, or exposure to exogenous estrogen. McCune-Albright syndrome is a triad of irregular café au lait lesions, polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, and GnRH-independent precocious puberty. It is caused by an activating mutation in the gene encoding the α-subunit of Gs, the G protein that stimulates adenyl cyclase. Endocrine cells with this mutation have autonomous hyperfunction and secrete excess amounts of their respective hormones.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Female central precocious puberty usually starts with breast development, followed by pubic hair growth and menarche. However, the order may vary and girls younger than 5 years may not have pubic hair development. Girls with ovarian cysts or tumors generally have signs of estrogen excess such as breast development and possibly vaginal bleeding. Adrenal tumors and CAH produce signs of androgen excess which include pubic hair, axillary hair, acne, and increased body odor. Children with precocious puberty usually have accelerated growth and skeletal maturation, and may temporarily be tall for age. However, because skeletal maturation advances at a more rapid rate than linear growth, final adult stature may be compromised.

B. Laboratory Findings

An estradiol level can be drawn to rule out an ovarian tumor or cyst. If the bone age is advanced, further laboratory evaluation is warranted. In central precocious puberty, random FSH and LH concentrations may still be in the prepubertal range. If so, documentation of the maturity of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis depends on demonstrating a pubertal LH response after stimulation with a GnRH agonist. In peripheral precocious puberty, the LH response to GnRH stimulation is suppressed by feedback inhibition of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis by the autonomously secreted gonadal steroids (see Figure 34–1). In girls with an ovarian cyst or tumor, estradiol levels will be markedly elevated. In girls who present with pubic and/or axillary hair but no breast development, androgen levels (testosterone, androstenedione, dehydroepiandrosterone-sulfate) and 17-hydroxyprogesterone should be measured.

C. Imaging

One of the first steps in evaluating a child with early pubertal development is obtaining a radiograph of the left hand and wrist to determine skeletal maturity (bone age). When a diagnosis of central precocious puberty is made, an MRI of the brain should be done to evaluate for CNS lesions. In girls whose laboratory tests suggest peripheral precocious puberty, an ultrasound of the ovaries and/or adrenal gland may be indicated.

» Treatment

Girls with central precocious puberty can be treated with GnRH analogues that downregulate pituitary GnRH receptors and thus decrease gonadotropin secretion. Currently, the two most common GnRH analogues used are (1) leuprolide, which is given as a monthly intramuscular injection or (2) histrelin subdermal implant, which is replaced annually. With treatment, physical changes of puberty regress or cease to progress and linear growth slows to a prepubertal rate. Projected final heights often increase as a result of slowing

of skeletal maturation. After stopping therapy, pubertal progression resumes, and ovulation and pregnancy have been documented.

Treatment of peripheral precocious puberty is dependent on the underlying cause. In a girl with an ovarian cyst, intervention is generally not necessary, as the cyst usually regresses spontaneously. Serial ultrasounds are recommended to document this regression. Surgical resection and possibly chemotherapy are indicated for the rare adrenal or ovarian tumor.

In McCune-Albright syndrome, therapy with aromatase inhibitors, which block the production of estrogen, may be effective. Regardless of the cause of precocious puberty or the medical therapy selected, attention to the psychological needs of the patient and family is essential.

2. Benign Variants of Precocious Puberty

Benign premature thelarche (benign early breast development) occurs most commonly in girls younger than 2 years of age. Girls present with isolated breast development without other signs of puberty such as linear growth acceleration and pubic hair development. The breast development is typically present since birth and often waxes and wanes in size. It may be unilateral or bilateral. Treatment is parental reassurance regarding the self-limited nature of the condition. Observation of the child every few months is also indicated. Onset of thelarche after age 36 months or in association with other signs of puberty requires evaluation.

Benign premature adrenarche (benign early adrenal maturation) is manifested by early development of pubic hair, axillary hair, acne, and/or body odor. Benign premature adrenarche is characterized by normal linear growth and no or minimal bone age advancement. Laboratory tests (see above) will differentiate benign premature adrenarche from late-onset CAH and adrenal tumors. It is recognized that approximately 15% of girls with benign premature adrenarche will go on to develop polycystic ovarian syndrome.

Fuqua J: Treatment and outcomes of precocious puberty: an update. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2013;98(6):2198–2207 [PMID: 23515450].

Kaplowitz P: Update on precocious puberty: girls are showing signs of puberty earlier, but most do not require treatment. Adv Pediatr 2011;58(1):243–258 [PMID: 21736984].

Oberfield SE, Sopher AB, Gerken ET: Approach to the girl with early onset pubic hair. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2011;96(6):1610–1622 [PMID: 216024454].

3. Delayed Puberty

Delayed puberty in girls should be evaluated if there are no pubertal signs by age 13 years or menarche by 16 years.

Table 34–9. Cause of delayed puberty or amenorrhea.

A. Constitutional growth delay
B. Hypogonadism
1. Primary ovarian insufficiency
a. Gonadal dysgenesis (Turner syndrome, true gonadal dysgenesis)
b. Premature ovarian failure
(1) Autoimmune disease
(2) Surgery, radiation, chemotherapy
c. Galactosemia
2. Central hypogonadism
a. Hypothalamic or pituitary tumor, infection, irradiation
b. Congenital hypopituitarism
c. Kallmann syndrome
d. Functional (chronic illness, undernutrition, exercise, hyperprolactinemia
C. Anatomic
1. Müllerian agenesis (Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome)
2. Complete androgen resistance

Primary amenorrhea refers to the absence of menarche, and secondary amenorrhea refers to the absence of menses for at least 6 months after regular menses have been established. The most common cause of delayed puberty is constitutional growth delay (Table 34–9). This growth pattern, characterized by short stature, normal growth velocity, and a delay in skeletal maturation, is described in detail earlier in this chapter. The timing of puberty in children with constitutional growth delay is commensurate to the bone age, not the chronologic age. Girls may also have delayed puberty from any condition that delays growth and skeletal maturation, such as hypothyroidism and GHD.

Primary hypogonadism in girls refers to a primary abnormality of the ovaries. The most common diagnosis in this category is Turner syndrome, in which the lack of or an abnormal second X chromosome leads to early loss of oocytes and accelerated stromal fibrosis. Other types of primary ovarian insufficiency include 46,XY gonadal dysgenesis and 46,XX gonadal dysgenesis, galactosemia, autoimmune ovarian failure, radiation, and chemotherapy. Premutation carriers for fragile X syndrome are also at increased risk of premature ovarian failure.

Central hypogonadism refers to a hypothalamic or pituitary deficiency of GnRH or FSH/LH, respectively. Central hypogonadism can be functional (reversible), caused by stress, undernutrition, prolactinemia, excessive exercise, or chronic illness. Permanent central hypogonadism is typically associated with conditions that cause multiple pituitary hormone deficiencies, such as congenital hypopituitarism, CNS tumors, or cranial irradiation. Isolated gonadotropin deficiency is rare but may occur in Kallmann syndrome,

which is also characterized by hyposmia or anosmia. There are many genes that have been implicated in both isolated gonadotropin deficiency and Kallmann syndrome. In either primary or central hypogonadism, signs of adrenarche are generally present.

Delayed menarche or secondary amenorrhea may result from primary ovarian failure or central hypogonadism, or may be the consequence of hyperandrogenism, anatomic obstruction precluding menstrual outflow, or müllerian agenesis. This latter disorder is called Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome and is characterized by underdevelopment of the vagina and uterus, with or without renal and skeletal anomalies.

Girls with complete AIS (androgen receptor defect) typically present with primary amenorrhea, breast development, and absence of sexual hair (see DSD section). At puberty, if the gonads have not been removed, testosterone produced in the testes is aromatized to estrogen resulting in breast development.

» Clinical Evaluation

The history should ascertain whether and when puberty commenced, level of exercise, nutritional intake, stressors, sense of smell, symptoms of chronic illness, and family history of delayed puberty. Past growth records should be assessed to determine if height and weight velocity have been appropriate. Physical examination includes body proportions, breast and genital development, and stigmata of Turner syndrome. Pelvic examination or pelvic ultrasonography should be considered, especially in girls with primary amenorrhea.

A bone age radiograph should be obtained first. If the bone age is lower than that consistent with pubertal onset (< 12 years in girls), evaluations should focus on finding the cause of the bone age delay. If short stature and normal growth velocity are present, constitutional growth delay is likely. If growth rate is abnormal, evaluation for causes of growth delay is warranted. Measurement of FSH and LH may not be helpful in the setting of delayed bone age since prepubertal levels are normally low.

If the patient has attained a bone age of more than 12 years and there are minimal or no signs of puberty on physical examination, FSH and LH levels will distinguish between primary ovarian failure (elevated FSH/LH) and central hypogonadism (low FSH/LH). If gonadotropins are elevated, a karyotype should be performed to evaluate for Turner syndrome. Central hypogonadism is characterized by low gonadotropin levels, and evaluation is geared toward determining if the hypogonadism is functional or permanent. Laboratory tests should be directed toward identifying chronic disease and hyperprolactinemia. Cranial MRI may be helpful.

In girls with adequate breast development and amenorrhea, a progesterone challenge may be helpful to determine if sufficient estrogen is being produced and to evaluate for anatomical defects. Girls who are producing estrogen have a withdrawal bleed after 5–10 days of oral progesterone, whereas those who are estrogen-deficient or have an anatomical defect have little or no bleeding. The most common cause of amenorrhea in girls with sufficient estrogen is polycystic ovarian syndrome. Girls who are estrogen-deficient should be evaluated similarly to those who have delayed puberty.

» Treatment

Replacement therapy in hypogonadal girls begins with estrogen alone at the lowest available dosage. Oral preparations such as estradiol or topical patches are used. Cyclic estrogen–progesterone therapy is started 18–24 months later, and eventually the patient may be switched over to a birth control pill for convenience. Progesterone therapy is needed to counteract the effects of estrogen on the uterus, as unopposed estrogen promotes endometrial hyperplasia. Estrogen is also necessary to promote bone mineralization and prevent osteoporosis.

Bondy CA: Care of girls and women with Turner syndrome: a guideline of the Turner Syndrome Study Group. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2007;92:10 [PMID: 17047017].

Nelson LM: Clinical practice: primary ovarian insufficiency. N Engl J Med 2009;360:606 [PMID: 19196677].

4. Secondary Amenorrhea

See discussion of amenorrhea in Chapter 4.

ABNORMALITIES IN MALE PUBERTAL DEVELOPMENT & TESTICULAR FUNCTION

1. Precocious Puberty in Boys

Puberty is considered precocious in boys if secondary sexual characteristics appear before age 9 years. While the frequency of central precocious puberty is much lower in boys than girls, boys are more likely to have an associated CNS abnormality (see Table 34–8). In addition, several types of gonadotropin-independent (peripheral) precocious puberty occur in boys (see Table 34–8).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Increased linear growth rate and growth of pubic hair are the most common presenting signs. Testicular size differentiates central precocity, in which the testes enlarge, from gonadotropin-independent causes, in which the testes usually remain small (< 2 cm in the longitudinal axis). In

familial male precocious puberty and HCG-mediated precocious puberty, there may be some testicular enlargement. Tumors of the testis are associated with either asymmetrical or unilateral testicular enlargement.

B. Laboratory Findings

Elevated testosterone levels verify early pubertal status but do not differentiate the source. Basal high-sensitivity serum LH and FSH concentrations will be in the pubertal range in boys with central precocious puberty and the LH response to GnRH stimulation testing is pubertal. Sexual precocity caused by CAH is usually associated with abnormal plasma adrenal androgens. Serum β-HCG concentrations signify the presence of an HCG-producing tumor (eg, CNS dysgerminoma or hepatoma) in boys who present with precocious puberty and testicular enlargement but suppressed gonadotropins following GnRH testing.

C. Imaging

In all boys with central precocious puberty, cranial MRI should be obtained to evaluate for a CNS abnormality. If testing suggests peripheral precocious puberty and laboratory studies are not consistent with CAH, imaging may be useful in detecting hepatic, adrenal, and testicular tumors.

» Treatment

Treatment of central precocious puberty in boys entails treatment of the underlying cause and the use of GnRH analogues. Boys with McCune-Albright syndrome or familial testotoxicosis can be treated with agents that block steroid synthesis (ketoconazole), or with a combination of antiandrogens (spironolactone) and aromatase inhibitors (anastrozole or letrozole) that block the conversion of testosterone to estrogen.

2. Delayed Puberty

Boys should be evaluated for delayed puberty if they have no secondary sexual characteristics by 14 years of age or if more than 5 years have elapsed since the first signs of puberty without completion of genital growth.

The most common cause of delayed puberty in boys is constitutional growth delay, a normal variant of growth described in detail earlier in this chapter. Hypogonadism in boys may be primary, due to absence, malfunction, or destruction of testicular tissue, or central, due to pituitary or hypothalamic insufficiency.

Primary testicular insufficiency may be due to: anorchia; Klinefelter syndrome (47,XXY) or other sex chromosome abnormalities; enzymatic defects in testosterone synthesis; inflammation or destruction of the testes following infection (mumps), autoimmune disorders, radiation, trauma, or tumor.

Central hypogonadism may accompany panhypopituitarism, hypogonadotropic hypogonadism with (Kallmann syndrome) or without abnormalities in smell, hyperprolactinemia, isolated LH or FSH deficiency, destructive lesions in or near the anterior pituitary (especially craniopharyngioma and glioma), infection, Prader-Willi syndrome, and Laurence-Moon syndrome (Bardet-Biedl syndrome).

Deficiencies in gonadotropins may be partial or complete. Functional or reversible gonadotropin may occur with chronic illness, malnutrition, hyperprolactinemia, hypothyroidism, or excessive exercise.

» Clinical Evaluation

The history should focus on whether and when puberty started, testicular descent, symptoms of chronic illness, nutritional intake, sense of smell, and family history of delayed puberty. Physical examination should include body proportions, height and weight, pubertal stage, and testicular location, size, and consistency. Testes less than 2 cm in length are prepubertal; testes more than 2.5 cm in length suggest early pubertal growth.

A radiograph of the left hand and wrist to assess bone age should be the first step in evaluating a boy with delayed puberty. If bone age is delayed (< 12 years) and growth velocity is normal, constitutional growth delay is the most likely diagnosis.

Laboratory evaluation includes measurement of LH and FSH levels (if bone age is > 12 years). Elevated gonadotropins indicate primary hypogonadism or testicular failure. Low gonadotropins on a sensitive assay are consistent with central hypogonadism and further evaluation should focus on looking for pituitary hormone deficiencies, chronic disease, undernutrition, hyperprolactinemia, or CNS abnormalities.

» Treatment

Boys with simple constitutional delay may be offered a 4- to 6-month course of low-dose depot testosterone (50–100 mg/mo) to stimulate their pubertal appearance and "jump-start" their endogenous development. In adolescents with permanent hypogonadism, treatment with depot testosterone is initiated with 50–100 mg intramuscularly each month and gradually increased over 3–4 years to adult dosing (200 mg every 2–4 weeks). Testosterone gel, either in single-dose packets or in a pump set to dispense a preset dose, is an alternative that is applied daily.

3. Cryptorchidism

Cryptorchidism (undescended testis) affects 2%–4% of full-term male newborns and up to 30% of premature infants. After 6 months of age, spontaneous descent occurs only very rarely. Consequently, intervention is typically considered beginning at this time.

Infertility and testicular malignancy are major risks of cryptorchidism. Fertility is impaired by approximately 33% after unilateral cryptorchidism and by 66% after bilateral disease. The cancer risk for adults after cryptorchidism in childhood is reported to be 5–10 times greater than normal. However, histologic changes clearly occur as early as age 6 months in children with undescended testes.

The cause of most cases of cryptorchidism is not completely understood. Cryptorchidism can occur in an isolated fashion or associated with other findings. Abnormalities in the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis and androgen biosynthesis or receptor defects predispose to cryptorchidism.

The diagnosis of bilateral cryptorchidism in an apparently normal male newborn should never be made until the possibility that the child is actually a fully virilized female with potentially fatal salt-losing CAH has been considered.

» Clinical Findings

In infants between 2 and 6 months of age, measurement of LH, FSH, inhibin B, and testosterone can help determine whether testes are present. After this time, an HCG stimulation test can be done to confirm the presence or absence of functional abdominal testes. Ultrasonography, CT scanning, and MRI may detect testes in the inguinal region, but these studies are not completely reliable in finding abdominal testes.

» Differential Diagnosis

During examination, the cremasteric reflex may cause the testis to retract into the inguinal canal or abdomen (pseudocryptorchidism). To prevent retraction, the fingers are placed across the abdominal ring and the upper portion of the inguinal canal. Examination in the squatting position or in a warm bath is helpful. No treatment for retractile testes is necessary.

» Treatment

Surgical orchidopexy should be performed if descent has not occurred by 6–12 months of age. The recommended timing of surgical intervention is based on the assumption that early surgery will allow normal germ cell development and decrease the risk for future infertility and cancer. However, in some cases, a primary abnormality of the testis may be responsible for both the undescent and future risks. Therapy with HCG to induce descent of the testis has a success rate of about 20%, and even less when retractile testes are excluded. HCG doses range from 250 to 1000 international units and are given twice weekly for 5 weeks.

4. Gynecomastia

Gynecomastia is a common, self-limited condition that occurs in up to 75% of normal pubertal boys. Adolescent gynecomastia typically resolves within 2 years but may not totally resolve if the degree of gynecomastia is extreme (> 2 cm of tissue). Gynecomastia may also occur in male hypogonadism, such as Klinefelter syndrome, and as a side effect of some medications. Medical therapy using antiestrogens and aromatase inhibitors may be beneficial if initiated early, but generally results are not satisfying. Surgical intervention should be considered promptly for prolonged and/or severe cases (see Chapter 4).

Eisenberg JM: Evaluation and treatment of cryptorchidism. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. [PMID: 24156114]. www.effectivehealthcare.ahrq.gov/undescended-testicle.cfm.

McCabe MJ, Bancalari RE, Dattani MT: Diagnosis and evaluation of hypogonadism. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;11 (Suppl 2):214–229 [PMID: 24683946].

Watson S, Fuqua JS, Lee PA: Treatment of hypogonadism in males. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;11(Suppl 2):230–239 [PMID: 24683947].

ADRENAL CORTEX

The adult adrenal cortex consist of three zones responsible for synthesis of different steroids:

- Outermost zona glomerulosa—aldosterone.
- Middle zona fasciculata—cortisol and small amounts of mineralocorticoids.
- Innermost zona reticularis—androgens and estrogens.

A fetal zone, or provisional cortex, predominates during fetal development and produces glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, androgens, and estrogens. The fetal zone is relatively deficient in 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (see Figure 34–8); hence placental progesterone is the major precursor for fetal adrenal production of cortisol and aldosterone.

The adrenal cortical production of cortisol is under the control of pituitary adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH; see Figure 34–1 and Table 34–1), which is in turn regulated by hypothalamic corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). ACTH concentration is greatest during the early morning hours with a smaller peak in the late afternoon and a nadir at night. The pattern of serum cortisol concentration follows this pattern with a lag of a few hours. In the absence of cortisol feedback, there is dramatic CRH and ACTH hypersecretion.

Glucocorticoids are critical for gene expression in a many cell types. Glucocorticoids also help maintain blood pressure by promoting peripheral vascular tone and sodium and water retention. In excess, glucocorticoids are both catabolic and antianabolic; they promote the release of amino acids from muscle and increase gluconeogenesis while decreasing incorporation of amino acids into muscle protein. They also antagonize insulin activity and facilitate lipolysis.

Mineralocorticoids (primarily aldosterone in humans) promote sodium retention and stimulate potassium excretion in the distal renal tubule. The predominant regulator of aldosterone secretion is the volume- and sodium-sensitive renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Hyperkalemia also directly stimulates aldosterone release.

Androgen (dehydroepiandrosterone and androstenedione) production by the zona reticularis is insignificant before puberty. At the onset of puberty, androgen production increases and is an important contributor to pubertal development in both sexes; the adrenal gland is the major source of androgen in females.

ADRENOCORTICAL INSUFFICIENCY (ADRENAL CRISIS, ADDISON DISEASE)

Adrenal insufficiency may be primary—due to disorders of the adrenal gland itself, or central—due to disorders of CRH and/or ACTH secretion.

The causes of primary adrenal insufficiency include the following:

- Hereditary enzyme defects (congenital adrenal hyperplasia)
- Autoimmune destruction of the glands (Addison disease)—Addison disease may be familial and can be isolated or associated with hypoparathyroidism, mucocutaneous candidiasis, hypothyroidism, pernicious anemia, hypogonadism, and diabetes mellitus in one of the polyglandular autoimmune syndromes.
- Destruction of the gland by tumor, calcification, or hemorrhage (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome).
- Adrenal disease secondary to opportunistic infections (fungal or tuberculous) is reported in immunocompromised patients
- Rare forms of familial adrenal insufficiency occur in association with cerebral sclerosis and spastic paraplegia (adrenoleukodystrophy) or with achalasia and alacrima in the triple A (Allgrove) syndrome
- Salt-losing disorders can occur due to homozygous mutations of aldosterone synthase (CYP11B2) or from partial or complete unresponsiveness of the mineralocorticoid receptor to aldosterone (pseudohypoaldosteronism). A transient autosomal dominant form of pseudohypoaldosteronism has been reported in infancy.

The causes of central adrenal insufficiency include the following:

- Intracranial neoplasm or its treatment.
- Congenital midline defects associated with optic nerve hypoplasia (septo-optic dysplasia).
- Chronic iatrogenic exposure to exogenous glucocorticoids.
- Central adrenal insufficiency due to anterior pituitary tumor is rare.

Acute illness, surgery, trauma, or hyperthermia may precipitate an adrenal crisis in patients with adrenal insufficiency. Patients with primary adrenal insufficiency are at greater risk for life-threatening crisis than patients with central ACTH deficiency because mineralocorticoid secretion and low-level autonomous cortisol secretion remain intact in central ACTH deficiency.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Acute form (adrenal crisis)—Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain; dehydration; fever (sometimes followed by hypothermia); weakness; hypotension and circulatory collapse; confusion and coma.

2. Chronic form—Fatigue; hypotension; weakness; weight loss or failure to gain weight; salt craving (primary insufficiency); vomiting and dehydration; recurrent hypoglycemia; a small heart on chest radiograph. Diffuse tanning occurs with increased pigmentation over pressure points, scars, and mucous membranes primary adrenal insufficiency due to melanocyte stimulating activity of alternate products of hypersecreted pro-opiomelanocortin, the parent molecule of ACTH.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Suggestive of adrenocortical insufficiency

- Primary adrenal insufficiency
  - Decreased—serum sodium, serum bicarbonate, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide, blood pH, and blood volume.
  - Increased—serum potassium, urea nitrogen levels.
  - Urinary sodium and the ratio of urinary sodium to potassium are inappropriate for the degree of hyponatremia.
- Central adrenal insufficiency—serum sodium levels may be mildly decreased as a result of impaired water excretion.
- Eosinophilia and moderate lymphopenia occur in both forms of insufficiency.

2. Confirmatory tests

a. ACTH (cosyntropin) stimulation test

- primary adrenal insufficiency—plasma cortisol less than 18 mcg/dL 30 and 60 minutes after 250 mcg of cosyntropin given intravenously and aldosterone fails to rise above baseline
- central adrenal insufficiency—plasma cortisol less than 18 mcg/dL 30 and 60 minutes after 1 mcg of cosyntropin given intravenously

b. Baseline serum ACTH concentration—Elevated in primary adrenal failure and low in central adrenal insufficiency.

c. Urinary free cortisol—Decreased.

d. CRH test—After administration of ovine CRH, serum concentrations of ACTH and cortisol are measured over 2 hours. Localization of the site of impairment is possible based on careful interpretation of results.

» Differential Diagnosis

Acute adrenal insufficiency must be differentiated from sepsis diabetic coma, CNS disturbances, and acute poisoning. In the neonatal period, adrenal insufficiency may be clinically indistinguishable from respiratory distress, intracranial hemorrhage, or sepsis. Chronic adrenocortical insufficiency must be differentiated from anorexia nervosa, certain muscular disorders (myasthenia gravis), salt-losing nephritis, and chronic debilitating infections.

» Treatment

A. Acute Insufficiency (Adrenal Crisis)

1. Hydrocortisone sodium succinate—Hydrocortisone sodium succinate (50 mg/m^2 intravenously over 2–5 minutes or intramuscularly) is given initially followed by 12.5 mg/m^2, every 4–6 hours until stabilization is achieved and oral therapy can be tolerated. Cortisol replacement is critical because pressor agents may be ineffective in adrenal insufficiency.

2. Fluids and electrolytes—In primary adrenal insufficiency, 5%–10% glucose in normal saline, 10–20 mL/kg intravenously, is given over the first hour and repeated if necessary to reestablish vascular volume. Normal saline is continued thereafter at 1.5–2 times the maintenance fluid requirements. In central adrenal insufficiency, routine fluid management is generally adequate after restoration of vascular volume and institution of cortisol replacement.

3. Fludrocortisone—When oral intake is tolerated, fludrocortisone, a mineralocorticoid agonist is started, 0.05–0.15 mg daily, and continued every 12–24 hours for primary adrenal insufficiency.

4. Waterhouse-friderichsen syndrome with fulminant Infections—Corticosteroids should be considered if there is possible adrenal insufficiency, particularly if there is hypotension and circulatory collapse.

B. Maintenance Therapy

1. Glucocorticoids—A maintenance dosage of 6–10 mg/m^2/d of hydrocortisone (or equivalent) is given orally in two or three divided doses. The dosage of all glucocorticoids is increased to 30–50 mg/m^2/d during intercurrent illnesses or other times of stress. Overtreatment should be avoided as it causes obesity, growth retardation, and other cushingoid features

2. Mineralocorticoids—In primary adrenal insufficiency, fludrocortisone is given, 0.05–0.15 mg orally daily as a single dose or in two divided doses. Periodic monitoring of blood pressure is recommended to avoid overdosing.

3. Salt—Children should be given ready access to table salt. In the infant, supplementation of breast milk or formula with 3–5 mEq Na^+/kg/d is generally required until table foods are introduced.

C. Corticosteroids in Patients With Adrenocortical Insufficiency Who Undergo Surgery

1. Before operation—Hydrocortisone sodium succinate, 30–50 mg/m^2 IM or intravenously 1 hour before surgery.

2. During operation—Hydrocortisone sodium succinate, 25–100 mg intravenously with 5%–10% glucose in saline as a continuous drip throughout surgery.

3. During recovery—Hydrocortisone sodium succinate, 12.5 mg/m^2 intravenously every 4–6 hours until oral doses are tolerated. The oral stress hydrocortisone dose (30–50 mg/m^2) is continued until the acute stress is over, at which time the patient can be returned to the maintenance dose.

» Course & Prognosis

The course of acute adrenal insufficiency is rapid and death may occur within a few hours, particularly in infants, unless adequate treatment is given. Spontaneous recovery is unlikely. Patients who have received long-term treatment with glucocorticoids may exhibit adrenal collapse if they undergo surgery or other acute stress. Pharmacologic doses of glucocorticoids during these episodes may be needed throughout life. In all forms of acute adrenal insufficiency, the patient should be observed carefully once the crisis has passed and evaluated with laboratory tests to assess the degree of permanent adrenal insufficiency. Patients with chronic adrenocortical insufficiency who receive adequate therapy can lead normal lives.

Capalbo D et al: Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy from the pediatric perspective. J Endocrinol Invest 2013 Nov;36(10):903–912 [PMID: 23723078].

Schneller C, Finkel L, Wise M, Hageman JR, Littlejohn E: Autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome: a case-based review. Pediatr Ann 2013 May; 42(5):203–208 [PMID: 23641891].

Tucci V, Sokari T: The clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and treatment of adrenal emergencies. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2014 May;32(2):367–378 [PMID: 24766938].

CONGENITAL ADRENAL HYPERPLASIAS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES–CONGENITAL

- Adrenal hyperplasia: 21-OHase Deficiency.
- Genital virilization in females, with labial fusion, urogenital sinus, enlargement of the clitoris, or other evidence of androgen action.
- Salt-losing crises in infant males or isosexual precocity in older males with infantile testes.
- Increased linear growth and advanced skeletal maturation.
- Elevation of plasma 17-hydroxyprogesterone concentrations in the most common form; may be associated with hyponatremia, hyperkalemia, and metabolic acidosis, particularly in newborns.

General Considerations

Autosomal recessive mutations in the enzymes of adrenal steroidogenesis cause impaired cortisol biosynthesis with increased ACTH secretion. ACTH excess subsequently results in adrenal hyperplasia with increased production of adrenal hormone precursors that are metabolized through the unblocked androgen pathway. Increased pigmentation, especially of the scrotum, labia majora, and nipples, is common due to excessive ACTH secretion. CAH is most commonly (> 90% of patients) the result of homozygous or compound heterozygous mutations in the cytochrome P-450 C21 (CYP21A2) gene causing 21-hydroxylase deficiency (see Figure 34–8). The defective gene is present in 1:250–1:100 people and the worldwide incidence of the disorder is 1:15,000, with increased incidence in certain ethnic groups. In its severe form, excess adrenal androgen production starting in the first trimester of fetal development causes virilization of the female fetus and life-threatening hypovolemic, hyponatremic shock (adrenal crisis) in the newborn, if untreated. There are also other enzyme defects that less commonly result in CAH. The clinical syndromes associated with these defects are shown in Figure 34–8 and Table 34–10.

Prenatal diagnosis is now possible and newborn screening by measurement of serum 17-hydroxyprogesterone has been established in all 50 US states and many other countries worldwide.

In nonclassic presentations of 21-hydroxylase deficiency, affected individuals have a normal phenotype at birth but develop virilization during later childhood, adolescence, or early adulthood. Hormonal studies are characteristic of 21-hydroxylase deficiency, with cosyntropin stimulated

Table 34–10. Clinical and laboratory findings in adrenal enzyme defects resulting in congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

Enzyme Deficiency[a]	Elevated Plasma Metabolite	Plasma Androgens	Aldosterone	Hypertension/ Salt Loss	External Genitalia
StAR Protein	-	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	-/+	Males: ambiguous Females: normal
3β-Hydroxysteroid -dehydrogenase	17-OH pregnenolone (DHEA)	↑ (DHEA)	↓↓↓	-/+	Males: ambiguous Females: possibly virilized
17α-Hydroxylase/17-20 lyase	Progesterone	↓↓	(↑ DOC)	+/-	Males: ambiguous Females: normal, absent puberty
21-Hydroxylase[a]	17-OHP	↑↑	↓↓	-/+	Males: normal Females: virilized
11β-Hydroxylase	11-Deoxycortisol, DOC	↑↑	(↑ DOC)	+/-	Males: normal Females: virilized
P450 oxidoreductase	17-OHP (mild elevation)	↓↓	Normal or mildly elevated	+/-	Males: ambiguous Females: ambiguous

DHEA, dehydroepiandrosterone; DOC, deoxycorticosterone; 17-OHP, 17-hydroxyprogestrone.
[a]Children with "simple virilizing (non–salt-wasting)" forms of 21-hydroxylase deficiency congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH) may have normal aldosterone production and serum electrolytes, but some children have normal aldosterone production and serum electrolytes at the expense of elevated plasma renin activity and are, by definition, compensated salt-wasters. These children usually receive mineralocorticoid as well as glucocorticoid treatment. Children with 21-hydroxylase deficiency CAH should therefore have documented normal plasma renin activity in addition to normal serum electrolytes before they are considered non–salt-wasters.

17-OHP levels intermediate between those of nonaffected individuals and those with the classic form of the disease. Individuals with the nonclassic form of the disease may be asymptomatic or only mildly symptomatic, but they can carry a severe CYP21A2 mutation resulting in offspring with the classic form.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. In females—Abnormality of the external genitalia varies from mild enlargement of the clitoris to complete fusion of the labioscrotal folds, forming an empty scrotum, a penile urethra, a penile shaft, and clitoral enlargement sufficient to form a normal-sized glans (see Figure 34–7). Signs of adrenal insufficiency (salt loss) typically appear 5–14 days after birth. With milder enzyme defects, clinically apparent salt loss may not occur and virilization predominates with accelerated growth and skeletal maturation. Pubic hair appears early, acne may be excessive, and the voice may deepen. Excessive pigmentation may develop. Isosexual central precocious puberty may occur if treatment is not initiated before the bone age is significantly advanced. Final adult height is often compromised.

2. In males—The male infant usually appears normal at birth but may present with salt-losing crisis in the first weeks of life. In milder forms, salt-losing crises may not occur and virilization predominates, with enlargement of the penis and increased pigmentation, as well as other symptoms and signs similar to those of affected females. The testes are not enlarged unless there are rare adrenal rests in the testes producing asymmetrical enlargement. In some rare enzyme defects, ambiguous genitalia may be present due to impaired androgen production (see Figure 34–8).

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Blood—Hormonal studies are essential for accurate diagnosis. Findings characteristic of the enzyme deficiencies are shown in Table 34–10.

2. Genetic studies—Rapid assessment of genetic sex should be obtained in any newborn with ambiguous genitalia since 21-hydroxylase deficiency is the most common cause of ambiguity in females.

3. Urine—Assessment of urinary steroid metabolites is no longer routine, but is reserved for rare forms of CAH.

C. Imaging

Imaging is generally not required to make the diagnosis of CAH. Ultrasonography, CT scanning, and MRI may be useful in defining pelvic anatomy or to exclude an adrenal tumor.

» Treatment

A. Medical Treatment

Treatment goals in CAH are to provide the smallest dose of glucocorticoid that will adequately suppress excess androgen precursors and produce normalization of growth velocity and skeletal maturation; excessive glucocorticoids cause the undesirable side effects of Cushing syndrome. Mineralocorticoid replacement sustains normal electrolyte homeostasis, but excessive mineralocorticoids cause hypertension and hypokalemia.

1. Glucocorticoids—Supraphysiologic doses of hydrocortisone are often needed to suppress androgen excess in CAH. Initially, parenteral or oral hydrocortisone (30–50 mg/m^2/d) is provided until suppression of abnormal adrenal steroidogenesis has been accomplished, as evidenced by normalization of serum 17-hydroxyprogesterone. Subsequently, patients are placed on maintenance doses of 10–15 mg/m^2/d in three divided doses. Dosage is adjusted to maintain normal growth rate and skeletal maturation. Various serum and urine androgens have been used to monitor therapy, including 17-hydroxyprogesterone and androstenedione; however, no one test is universally accepted. In pregnant females with CAH, suppression of adrenal androgen secretion is critical to avoid virilization of the fetus, particularly a female fetus. Hydrocortisone is the preferred choice for glucocorticoid replacement therapy in pregnant women with CAH because it does not cross the placenta.

2. Mineralocorticoids—Fludrocortisone, 0.05–0.15 mg, is given orally once a day or in two divided doses. Periodic monitoring of blood pressure and plasma renin activity are recommended to avoid overdosing.

B. Surgical Treatment

For affected females, consultation with an urologist or gynecologist experienced in female genital reconstruction should be arranged as soon as possible during infancy.

» Course & Prognosis

When initiated in early infancy, treatment with glucocorticoids permits normal growth, development, and sexual maturation. If not adequately controlled, CAH results in sexual precocity and masculinization throughout childhood. Affected individuals will be tall as children but short as adults because of rapid skeletal maturation and premature closure of the epiphyses. If treatment is delayed or inadequate, true central precocious puberty may occur in males and females.

Patient education stressing lifelong therapy is important to ensure compliance in adolescence and later life. Virilization and multiple surgical genital reconstructions may be

associated with risk of psychosexual disturbances in female patients and ongoing psychological evaluation and support is a critical component of care.

Merke DP, Poppas DP: Management of adolescents with congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 2013 Dec;1(4):341–352 [PMID: 24622419].

Speiser PW et al: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010;95:4133–4160 [PMID: 20823466].

ADRENOCORTICAL HYPERFUNCTION (CUSHING DISEASE, CUSHING SYNDROME)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Truncal adiposity, thin extremities, moon facies, muscle wasting, weakness, plethora, easy bruising, purple striae, decreased growth rate, and delayed skeletal maturation.
- Hypertension, osteoporosis, and glycosuria.
- Elevated urinary free cortisol, elevated midnight salivary cortisol.

» General Considerations

Cushing syndrome may result from excessive autonomous secretion of adrenal steroids (adrenal adenoma or carcinoma), excess pituitary ACTH secretion (Cushing disease), ectopic ACTH or CRH secretion, or chronic exposure to exogenous glucocorticoids. In children younger than 12 years, Cushing syndrome is usually iatrogenic. It is less commonly due to adrenal tumor, adrenal hyperplasia, pituitary adenoma, or extrapituitary ACTH-producing tumor.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Excess glucocorticoid—Adiposity, most marked on the face, neck, and trunk—a fat pad (buffalo hump) in the interscapular area is characteristic but not diagnostic; fatigue; plethoric facies; purplish striae; easy bruising; osteoporosis and back pain; hypertension and glucose intolerance; muscle wasting and weakness; retardation of growth and skeletal maturation.

2. Excess mineralocorticoid—Hypokalemia and mild hypernatremia; increased blood volume; edema; hypertension.

3. Excess androgen—Hirsutism; acne; virilization; and menstrual irregularities.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Blood

a. Plasma cortisol—Values are generally elevated, with loss of normal diurnal variation. Determination of cortisol level at the expected nadir between midnight and 2 am is a sensitive indicator of the loss of diurnal variation.

b. Serum electrolytes—Serum sodium and bicarbonate are mildly elevated, with metabolic alkalosis, while potassium may be low.

c. Serum acth—Morning ACTH concentration is decreased in adrenal tumors and increased with ACTH- or CRH-producing pituitary or extrapituitary tumors.

2. Salivary cortisol—Salivary cortisol obtained at midnight is a noninvasive but highly specific and sensitive test for hypercortisolism.

3. 24-Hour urinary free cortisol excretion—Measurement of urinary free cortisol/creatinine ratio is a useful way to document hypercortisolism, though midnight salivary cortisol is now considered a more practical and specific alternative.

4. Response to dexamethasone suppression testing—Suppression of adrenal function by a small dose (0.5–1.0 mg) of dexamethasone is seen in children who may have elevated urinary free cortisol excretion due to obesity, but not in children with an ACTH-secreting tumor or adrenal tumor. Larger doses (4–16 mg/d in four divided doses) of dexamethasone cause suppression of adrenal activity when the disease is due to ACTH hypersecretion by a pituitary tumor, whereas hypercortisolism due to adrenal adenomas or adrenal carcinomas is rarely suppressed.

5. CRH test—The CRH stimulation test, in conjunction with petrosal sinus sampling, is used to distinguishing pituitary and ectopic sources of ACTH excess and to assess lateralization prior to surgery.

C. Imaging

Pituitary imaging may demonstrate a pituitary adenoma. Adrenal imaging by CT scan may demonstrate adenoma or bilateral hyperplasia. MRI and nuclear medicine studies of the adrenals may be useful in complex cases. Skeletal maturation is usually delayed.

» Differential Diagnosis

Children with exogenous obesity accompanied by striae and hypertension are often suspected of having Cushing syndrome. However, children with Cushing syndrome have

a poor growth rate, relatively short stature, and delayed skeletal maturation, while those with exogenous obesity usually have a normal or slightly increased growth rate, normal to tall stature, and advanced skeletal maturation. The color of the striae (purplish in Cushing syndrome, pink in obesity) and the distribution of the obesity may assist in differentiation. The urinary-free cortisol excretion (in milligrams per gram of creatinine) may be mildly elevated in obesity, but midnight salivary cortisol is normal and cortisol secretion is suppressed by a relatively small dose of dexamethasone.

» Treatment

In all cases of primary adrenal hyperfunction due to tumor, surgical removal is indicated if possible. Glucocorticoids should be administered parenterally in pharmacologic doses during and after surgery until the patient is stable. Supplemental oral glucocorticoids, potassium, salt, and mineralocorticoids may be necessary until the suppressed contralateral adrenal gland recovers, sometimes over a period of several months. Mitotane, a DDT derivative toxic to the adrenal cortex is often used as adjuvant therapy, but increases glucocorticoid requirements. Similarly, pituitary adenomas and ectopic sources of ACTH or CRH are generally treated surgically. Recurrent adenomas may respond to irradiation.

» Prognosis

If the adrenal tumor is malignant, the prognosis is poor if it cannot be completely removed. If it is benign, cure is to be expected following proper preparation and surgery. The prognosis in pituitary adenoma is generally good, though the occurrence of pituitary hormone deficiencies is variable, depending on the extent of the surgery and additional therapies. Prognosis in Cushing syndrome caused by ectopic ACTH or CRH secretion depends on the nature of the tumor of origin.

Stratakis CA: Cushing syndrome in pediatrics. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 2012 Dec;141(4):793–803 [PMID: 23099271].

PRIMARY HYPERALDOSTERONISM

Primary hyperaldosteronism may be caused by an adrenal adenoma or adrenal hyperplasia. It is characterized by paresthesias, tetany, weakness, periodic paralysis; nocturnal enuresis; hypokalemia, hypernatremia, metabolic alkalosis, alkaline urine; hypertension; glucose intolerance; elevated plasma and urinary aldosterone; and suppressed plasma renin activity.

Primary hyperaldosteronism is rare in pediatrics. However, there are three recognized genetic causes (types I–III). Type I (glucocorticoid remediable hyperaldosteronism) is due to a hybrid of the genes encoding 11β-hydroxylase and aldosterone synthase. Type III results from mutations in the KCNJ5 gene encoding a K^+ channel. Somatic mutations of this gene are also seen in later onset hyperaldosteronism. The cause for type II is unknown.

Treatment is with glucocorticoids (type I), spironolactone (type II), or subtotal or total adrenalectomy for hyperplasia or tumor.

Chao CT et al: Diagnosis and management of primary aldosteronism: an updated review. Ann Med 2013 Jun;45(4):375–383 [PMID: 23701121].

USES OF GLUCOCORTICOIDS & ADRENOCORTICOTROPIC HORMONE IN TREATMENT OF NONENDOCRINE DISEASES

Glucocorticoids are used for their anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive properties in a variety of conditions in childhood. Pharmacologic doses are necessary to achieve these effects, and side effects are common. Numerous synthetic preparations possessing variable ratios of glucocorticoid to mineralocorticoid activity are available (Table 34–11).

When prolonged use of pharmacologic doses of glucocorticoids is necessary, clinical manifestations of Cushing syndrome are common. Side effects may occur with the use of synthetic exogenous agents by any route, including inhalation and topical administration, or with the use of ACTH. Alternate-day therapy lessens the incidence and severity of some of the side effects (Table 34–12).

» Tapering of Pharmacologic Doses of Steroids

Prolonged use of pharmacologic doses of glucocorticoids causes suppression of ACTH secretion and consequent adrenal atrophy; the abrupt discontinuation of glucocorticoids may result in adrenal insufficiency. ACTH secretion generally does not restart until the administered steroid has been given in subphysiologic doses (< 6 mg/m^2/d orally) for several weeks.

If pharmacologic glucocorticoid therapy has been given for less than 10–14 days, the drug can be discontinued abruptly because adrenal suppression will be short-lived. However, it is advisable to educate the patient and family about the signs and symptoms of adrenal insufficiency in case problems arise.

If tapering is necessary in treating the condition for which the glucocorticoid is prescribed, a reduction of 25%–50% every 2–7 days is sufficiently rapid to permit observation of clinical symptomatology. An alternate-day schedule (single dose given every 48 hours) will allow for a 50% decrease in the total 2-day dosage while providing the desired pharmacologic effect. If tapering is not required for

Table 34–11. Potency equivalents for adrenocorticosteroids.

Adrenocorticosteroid	Trade Names	Potency/mg Compared with Cortisol (Glucocorticoid Effect)	Potency/mg Compared with Cortisol (Sodium-Retaining Effect)
Glucocorticoids			
Hydrocortisone (cortisol)	Cortef	1	1
Cortisone	Cortone Acetate	0.8	1
Prednisone	Meticorten, others	4–5	0.8
Methylprednisolone	Medrol, Meprolone	5–6	Minimal
Triamcinolone	Aristocort, Kenalog Kenacort, Atolone	5–6	Minimal
Dexamethasone	Decadron, others	25–40	Minimal
Betamethasone	Celestone	25	Minimal
Mineralocorticoid			
Fludrocortisone	Florinef	15–20	300–400

the underlying disease, the dosage can be safely decreased to the physiologic range. Although a rapid decrease in dose to the physiologic range will not lead to frank adrenal insufficiency (because adequate exogenous cortisol is being provided), some patients may experience a steroid withdrawal syndrome, characterized by malaise, insomnia, fatigue, and loss of appetite. These symptoms may necessitate a two- or three-step decrease in dose to the physiologic range.

Once a physiologic equivalent dose (8–10 mg/m^2/d hydrocortisone or equivalent) is achieved and the patient's underlying disease is stable, the dose can be decreased to 4–5 mg/m^2/d given only in the morning. This will allow the adrenal axis to recover. After this dose has been given for 4–6 weeks, endogenous adrenal activity is assessed by obtaining fasting plasma cortisol concentrations between 7 and 8 am prior to the morning steroid dose. When an alternate-day

Table 34–12. Side effects of glucocorticoid use.

A. Endocrine and metabolic effects
1. Hyperglycemia and glycosuria (chemical diabetes)
2. Cushing syndrome
3. Persistent suppression of pituitary-adrenal responsiveness to stress with resultant hypoadrenocorticism

B. Effects on electrolytes and minerals
1. Marked retention of sodium and water, producing edema, increased blood volume, and hypertension (more common in endogenous hyperadrenal states)
2. Potassium loss with symptoms of hypokalemia
3. Hypocalcemia, tetany

C. Effects on protein metabolism and skeletal maturation
1. Negative nitrogen balance, with loss of body protein and bone -protein, resulting in osteoporosis, pathologic fractures, and aseptic bone necrosis
2. Suppression of growth, retarded skeletal maturation
3. Muscular weakness and wasting
4. Osteoporosis
5. Avascular necrosis

D. Effects on the gastrointestinal tract
1. Excessive appetite and intake of food
2. Activation or production of peptic ulcer
3. Gastrointestinal bleeding from ulceration or from unknown cause (particularly in children with hepatic disease)
4. Fatty liver with embolism, pancreatitis, nodular panniculitis

E. Lowering of resistance to infectious agents; silent infection; decreased inflammatory reaction
1. Susceptibility to bacterial, fungal, and parasitic infections
2. Activation of tuberculosis; false-negative tuberculin reaction
3. Reactivation and poor containment of herpesviruses

F. Neuropsychiatric effects
1. Euphoria, excitability, psychotic behavior, and status epilepticus with electroencephalographic changes
2. Increased intracranial pressure with pseudotumor cerebri -syndrome

G. Hematologic and vascular effects
1. Bleeding into the skin as a result of increased capillary fragility
2. Thrombosis, thrombophlebitis, cerebral hemorrhage

H. Miscellaneous effects
1. Myocarditis, pleuritis, and arteritis following abrupt cessation of therapy
2. Cardiomegaly
3. Nephrosclerosis, proteinuria
4. Acne (in older children), hirsutism, amenorrhea, irregular menses
5. Posterior subcapsular cataracts; glaucoma

schedule is followed, plasma cortisol is measured the morning before treatment. Plasma cortisol concentration in the physiologic range (> 10 mg/dL) indicates return of basal physiologic adrenal rhythm. Exogenous steroids may then be discontinued safely, although it is advisable to continue giving stress doses of glucocorticoids when appropriate until recovery of the response to stress has been documented.

After basal physiologic adrenal function returns, the adrenal reserve or capacity to respond to stress and infection can be estimated by the low-dose ACTH stimulation test, in which 1 mcg of synthetic ACTH (cosyntropin) is administered intravenously. Plasma cortisol is measured 45–60 minutes after the infusion. A plasma cortisol concentration greater than 18 mg/dL indicates a satisfactory adrenal reserve. Even if the results of testing are normal, careful monitoring and the use of stress doses of glucocorticoids should be considered during severe illnesses and surgery.

Wildi-Runge S et al: A search for variables predicting cortisol response to low-dose corticotropin stimulation following supraphysiological doses of glucocorticoids. J Pediatr 2013 Aug;163(2):484–488 [PMID: 23414662].

ADRENAL MEDULLA PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA

Pheochromocytoma is an uncommon tumor, but up to 10% of reported cases occur in pediatric patients. The tumor can be located wherever chromaffin tissue (adrenal medulla, sympathetic ganglia, or carotid body) is present. It may be multiple, recurrent, and sometimes malignant. Familial forms include pheochromocytomas associated with the dominantly inherited neurofibromatosis type 1, MEN type 2, and von Hippel-Lindau syndromes, as well as mutations of the succinate dehydrogenase genes. Neuroblastomas, ganglioneuromas, and other neural crest tumors, as well as carcinoid tumors, may secrete pressor amines and mimic pheochromocytoma.

The symptoms of pheochromocytoma are caused by excessive secretion of epinephrine or norepinephrine: headache; sweating; tachycardia, hypertension, vasomotor instability (flushing and postural hypotension); anxiety; dizziness, weakness; nausea, vomiting, diarrhea; dilated pupils, blurred vision; abdominal and precordial pain.

Laboratory diagnosis is possible in more than 90% of cases. Serum and urine catecholamines are elevated, but abnormalities may be limited to periods of symptomatology or paroxysm. Plasma-free metanephrine is the most sensitive and specific test, though phenoxybenzamine, tricyclic antidepressants, and β-adrenoreceptor blockers can cause false-positive results. Levels three times the normal range are diagnostic. Intermediate values may require additional testing with serum and urine catecholamines. After demonstrating a tumor biochemically, imaging methods including CT or MRI are used to localize the tumor and nuclear medicine using functional ligands such as (123)I-MIBG, [^{18}F]DA positron emission tomography scanning, and somatostatin receptor scintigraphy (with either [^{123}I]Tyr3-octreotide or [^{111}In] DTPA-octreotide) are useful in further diagnostic evaluation.

Laparoscopic tumor removal is the treatment of choice; however, the procedure must be undertaken with great caution and with the patient properly stabilized. Oral phenoxybenzamine or intravenous phentolamine is used preoperatively. Profound hypotension may occur as the tumor is removed but may be controlled with an infusion of norepinephrine, which may have to be continued for 1–2 days.

Unless irreversible secondary vascular changes have occurred, complete relief of symptoms is to be expected after recovery from removal of a benign tumor. However, prognosis is poor in patients with metastases, which occur more commonly with large, extra-adrenal pheochromocytomas.

Waguespack SG et al: A current review of the etiology, diagnosis, and treatment of pediatric pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010;95(5):2023–2037 [PMID: 20215394].

Diabetes Mellitus

Marian Rewers, MD, PhD
H. Peter Chase, MD

35

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss; respiratory distress, heavy diapers in infants.
- Hyperglycemia and glucosuria often with ketonemia/ketonuria.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Type 1 diabetes (T1D) is the most common type of diabetes mellitus in people younger than 20 years but can develop at any age and most cases are diagnosed after age 20. The classical presentation includes increased thirst (polydipsia), urination (polyuria), and weight loss; the patient may be overweight or even obese. T1D is further divided into T1a (autoimmune) (~95% of the cases) and T1b (idiopathic) diabetes. T1a diabetes is marked by presence of autoantibodies to islet cell autoantigens (insulin, GAD65, IA-2, and ZnT8) and high-risk HLA (human leucocyte antigen) haplotypes (DR4-DQ8 and DR3-DQ2). Insulin production, measured by fasting or stimulated C-peptide levels, is usually low. In the United States, T1D affects an estimated 1.5 million people, including more than 200,000 patients younger than 20 years (~25,000 diagnosed annually).

Type 2 diabetes (T2D) is a heterogeneous phenotype diagnosed most often in persons older than age 40 who are usually obese and initially not insulin-dependent. T2D is rare before age 10 but has increased in frequency in older children as a consequence of the epidemic of obesity. The vast majority of the 29 million patients with diabetes in the United States have T2D, but less than 20,000 patients are younger than age 20 (~5000 diagnosed annually).

Monogenic forms of diabetes can be diagnosed at any age. They account for less than 1% of childhood diabetes, but form the majority of cases diagnosed before the ninth month of life. Neonatal diabetes is transient in about half of the cases; if persistent, it presents a significant clinical challenge. Some infants respond better to sulfonylurea than insulin. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY) presents as a nonketotic and usually non–insulin-dependent diabetes in the absence of obesity or islet autoantibodies. A strong family history of early-onset diabetes is common. The most frequent forms are due to mutations in glucokinase or hepatic nuclear factor 1 or 2 genes. Glucokinase mutations rarely require therapy; other forms respond to oral hypoglycemic agents or insulin. Commercial and research-oriented genotyping services are available to aid correct diagnosis.

» Pathogenesis

A. Type 1 Diabetes

Type 1 diabetes results from autoimmune destruction of the insulin-producing β cells of the pancreatic islets. This destruction occurs over months or years, and symptoms do not appear until most of the pancreatic islets have been destroyed.

The incidence is the highest in children of European ancestry, followed by African Americans and Hispanics; the rates are low in Asians and Native Americans.

About 6% of siblings or offspring of persons with T1D also develop diabetes (compared with prevalence in the general population of 0.2%–0.3%). However, fewer than 10% of children newly diagnosed with T1D have a parent or sibling with the disease. More than 90% of children with T1D carry at least one of the two high-risk HLA haplotypes—DR4/DQ8 or DR3/DQ2—and 40% of US children diagnosed before age 10 years have both (one from each parent), compared with only 2.5% of the general population. Over 50 non-HLA genetic variants have also been implicated.

B. Type 2 Diabetes

Type 2 diabetes has a strong genetic component, although the inherited defects of insulin secretion vary in different families. Obesity, particularly central, and lack of exercise contribute, but are rarely sufficient alone to cause diabetes in youth. Many pediatric patients come from low socioeconomic strata and dysfunctional families; some present with psychiatric disorders. T2D and associated insulin resistance adversely affect cardiovascular health. Acanthosis nigricans, a thickening and darkening of the skin over the posterior neck, armpits, or elbows, is present in many obese children and not specific for the diagnosis of T2D.

» Prevention

A. Type 1 Diabetes

Since the 1950s, the incidence of T1D has increased worldwide, doubling every 20 years. Despite much research of early childhood infections and diet, the environmental factor(s) responsible for this epidemic are poorly defined. There is no effective prevention as of 2015; however, screening of high-risk groups for islet autoantibodies and intensive follow-up reduces the severity of the presentation. Islet autoantibodies do not mediate β-cell destruction, but offer a useful screening tool as they are usually present for years prior to diagnosis. Free antibody screening is now available for families having a relative with type 1 diabetes (1-800-425-8361). The β-cell damage is mediated by T lymphocytes. Immunosuppression at different checkpoints of the autoimmune process can slow down the damage, but has no durable effect when stopped. Immunomodulation, including induction of tolerance to islet autoantigens, with or without immunosuppression, is an area of intensive research.

B. Type 2 Diabetes

The Diabetes Prevention Program in adults with impaired glucose tolerance found that 30 minutes of exercise per day (5 d/wk) and a low-fat diet reduced the risk of diabetes by 58%. Taking metformin also reduced the risk of T2D by 31%.

» Clinical Findings

A combination of polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss in a child is unique to diabetes. Unfortunately, these symptoms are often missed by parents and primary care providers. The frequency of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) in US children has not decreased in the past 20 years and is approximately 40%, a sign of poor provider and poor community awareness. More than half of DKA patients were seen by a provider in days preceding diagnosis and obvious symptoms and signs were missed. In contrast, only 10%–20% of newly diagnosed children in Scandinavia or Canada present with DKA. The correct diagnosis could be improved with better history taking and point-of-care urine analysis. Initial diagnosis can be easily confirmed by blood glucose and ketones measurement using widely available and inexpensive meters.

The clinical presentation of DKA includes abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting that can mimic an acute abdomen. The patients are mildly to moderately dehydrated (5%–10%), may have Kussmaul respiration, and become progressively somnolent and obtunded. The age of diagnosis has shifted lower; infants, toddlers, and preschool age children are at particular risk. They often have symptoms of minor infection or gastrointestinal upset. A heavy diaper in a dehydrated child without diarrhea should always flash an alarm. A blood or urine glucose test could be lifesaving.

Blood glucose higher than 200 mg/dL in a child is always abnormal and must be promptly and meticulously followed in consultation with a pediatric endocrinology service. If the presentation is mild and an outpatient diabetes education service is available, hospitalization is usually not necessary.

In the presence of typical symptoms, a random blood glucose level above 200 mg/dL (11 mmol/L) (confirmed on a CLIA [Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments]-certified instrument) is sufficient to make the diagnosis of diabetes. An oral glucose tolerance test is rarely necessary in children. In borderline or asymptomatic cases, a fasting plasma glucose level more than 125 mg/dL (7 mmol/L) or a plasma glucose level above 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) 2 hours after an oral glucose load (1.75 g glucose/kg up to a maximum of 75 g) on 2 separate days confirms the diagnosis. Impaired (not yet diabetic) fasting glucose values are 100–125 mg/dL (5.5–6.9 mmol/L) and impaired 2-hour values are 140–200 mg/dL (7.8–11.1 mmol/L). Children with impaired fasting glucose or impaired glucose tolerance and no islet autoantibodies are at high risk of T2D and require careful follow-up and lifestyle modification with weight loss, if obese.

» Differential Diagnosis

A combination of polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss in a child is unique to diabetes.

Transient, "stress-" or steroid-induced hyperglycemia can occur with illness. In a well-child, the diagnosis must not be based on a single plasma glucose test or a borderline result obtained using a glucose meter. Our center routinely tests such children for islet autoantibodies to rule out ongoing islet autoimmunity. Absence of the three most available autoantibodies (to insulin, GAD, and IA-2) provides 80% negative predictive value. If HbA_{1c} is normal, we recommend home monitoring of blood glucose for several days. In children progressing to overt diabetes, hyperglycemia after dinner is usually the initial abnormality, while fasting hyperglycemia develops much later.

» Complications

A. Diabetic Ketoacidosis

Acidosis (venous blood pH < 7.30 or bicarbonate < 15 mEq/L) is unfortunately still a frequent acute complication in patients with newly diagnosed T1D.

In established T1D, acidosis may occur in those who miss insulin injections, do not check blood or urine ketone levels, or fail to seek help when ketones are elevated. Repeated episodes of ketoacidosis signify that counseling may be indicated, and that a responsible adult must take over the diabetes management. If for any reason this is not possible, a change in the child's living situation may be necessary.

Treatment of DKA is based on four physiologic principles: (1) restoration of fluid volume; (2) intravenous insulin to inhibit lipolysis and return to glucose utilization; (3) replacement of electrolytes; and (4) correction of acidosis. Mild DKA is defined as a venous blood pH of 7.2–7.3; moderate DKA, a pH of 7.10–7.19; and severe DKA, a pH below 7.10. Patients with severe DKA should be hospitalized in a pediatric intensive care unit, if available. Laboratory tests at the start of treatment should include venous blood pH, glucose, and an electrolyte panel. More severe cases may benefit from determination of blood osmolality, calcium, phosphorus, and urea nitrogen levels. Severe and moderate episodes of DKA generally require hourly determinations of serum glucose, electrolytes, and venous pH levels, whereas these parameters can be measured every 2 hours if the pH level is 7.20–7.30.

1. Restoration of fluid volume—Dehydration is judged by estimated loss of body weight, dryness of oral mucous membranes, low blood pressure, and tachycardia. Initial treatment is with normal saline (0.9%), 10–20 mL/kg during the first hour (can be repeated in severely dehydrated patients during the second hour). The total volume of fluid in the first 4 hours of treatment should not exceed 20–40 mL/kg because of the danger of cerebral edema. After initial expansion, 0.45%–0.9% saline is given at 1.5 times maintenance to replace losses over 24–36 hours. When blood glucose level falls below 250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L), 5% dextrose is added to the intravenous fluids. If blood glucose level falls below 120 mg/dL (6.6 mmol/L), 10% dextrose can be added.

2. Inhibition of lipolysis and return to glucose utilization—Insulin turns off fat breakdown and ketone formation. Regular insulin is given after completion of the initial fluid bolus, as a continuous drip at a rate of 0.05–0.1 U/kg/h to achieve a drop in blood glucose of approximately 100 mg/dL/h. An IV insulin bolus is not recommended as it may increase the risk of brain edema. Fast-acting insulin analogues have no advantage over regular insulin when given intravenously. The insulin solution should be administered by pump and can be made by diluting 30 units of regular insulin in 150 mL of 0.9% saline (1 U/5 mL). If necessary, the insulin dosage can be reduced, but it should not be discontinued before the venous blood pH reaches 7.30 and there is sufficient level of insulin from subcutaneous injections. We recommend continuing intravenous insulin for at least 30 minutes after the initial subcutaneous injection of short-acting insulin.

3. Replacement of electrolytes—In patients with DKA, both sodium and potassium are depleted. Serum sodium concentrations may be corrected for hyperglycemia. Sodium is usually replaced adequately by the use of 0.45%–0.9% saline in the rehydration fluids.

Serum potassium levels may be elevated initially because of inability of potassium to stay in the cell in the presence of acidosis (even though total body potassium is low). Potassium should not be given until the serum potassium level is known to be less than 5 mEq/L and urine output is confirmed. It is then usually given in replacement fluid at a concentration of 40 mEq/L, with half of the potassium (20 mEq/L) either as potassium acetate or potassium chloride and the other half as potassium phosphate (20 mEq/L). Hypocalcemia can occur if all of the potassium is given as the phosphate salt; hypophosphatemia occurs if none of the potassium is of the phosphate salt.

4. Correction of acidosis—Acidosis corrects spontaneously as the fluid volume is restored and insulin facilitates aerobic glycolysis and inhibits ketogenesis. Bicarbonate is generally not recommended.

5. Management of cerebral edema—Some degree of cerebral edema has been shown by computed tomography to occur commonly in DKA. Associated clinical symptoms are rare, unpredictable, and may be associated with demise. Cerebral edema may be related to the degree of dehydration, cerebral hypoperfusion, acidosis, and hyperventilation at the time of presentation. In general, it is recommended that no more than 40 mL/kg of fluids be given in the first 4 hours of treatment and that subsequent fluid replacement not exceed 1.5 times maintenance. Cerebral edema is more common when the serum sodium is noted to be falling rather than rising. Early neurologic signs may include headache, excessive drowsiness, and dilated pupils. Prompt initiation of therapy should include elevation of the head of the bed, mannitol (1 g/kg over 30 minutes), and fluid restriction. If the cerebral edema is not recognized and treated early, over 50% of patients will die or have permanent brain damage.

B. Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia (or "insulin reaction") is defined as a blood glucose level below 60 mg/dL (3.3 mmol/L). For preschool children, values below 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) should be cause for concern. The common symptoms of hypoglycemia are hunger, weakness, shakiness, sweating, drowsiness (at an unusual time), headache, and behavioral changes. Every year, 10%–25% of children with T1D experience one

or more severe hypoglycemic episodes (loss of consciousness or seizure). If low blood glucose is not treated immediately with simple sugar, the hypoglycemia may result in loss of consciousness and seizures; brain damage or death can occur with prolonged hypoglycemia.

Children learn to recognize hypoglycemia at different ages but can often report "feeling funny" as young as age 4–5 years. School personnel, sports coaches, and babysitters must be trained to recognize and treat hypoglycemia. Consistency in daily routine, correct insulin dosage, regular blood glucose monitoring, controlled snacking, compliance of patients and parents, and good education are all important in preventing severe hypoglycemia. In addition, insulin should not be injected prior to getting into a hot tub, bath, or shower as the heat may cause more rapid insulin uptake. The use of insulin analogues, insulin pumps, and continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) has helped to reduce the occurrence of hypoglycemia.

The treatment of mild hypoglycemia involves giving 4 oz of juice, a sugar-containing soda drink, or milk, and waiting 10 minutes. If the blood glucose level is still below 60 mg/dL (3.3 mmol/L), the liquids are repeated. If the glucose level is above 60 mg/dL, solid foods are given. Moderate hypoglycemia, in which the person is conscious but incoherent, can be treated by squeezing one-half tube of concentrated glucose (eg, Insta-Glucose or cake frosting) between the gums and lips and stroking the throat to encourage swallowing.

Families are advised to have glucagon in the home and in their travel pack to treat severe hypoglycemia by giving subcutaneous or intramuscular injections of 0.3 mL (30 units in an insulin syringe) for children younger than 5 years; 0.5 mL (50 units) to those older than age 5 years; and 1 mL (100 units) to those heavier than 100 lb. Smaller doses of glucagon (two units + number of units equal to the age of the child, eg, 2 + 10 = 12 units in a 10-year-old) up to a maximum of 15 units can be used to prevent severe hypoglycemia during nondiabetic illness (gastroenteritis, respiratory infections).

Some patients, usually those who have had diabetes for more than 10 years or those tolerating routinely blood glucose 50–80 mg/dL, fail to recognize the symptoms of low blood glucose (hypoglycemic unawareness). For these individuals, glucose control must be liberalized to prevent severe hypoglycemia and CGM should be considered.

C. Long-Term Complications

Table 35–1 summarizes routine tests helpful in preventing long-term complications.

1. Hypertension—Elevated blood pressure is prevalent among children with diabetes and strongly predicts micro- and macrovascular complications. Treatment of blood pressure is critical in reducing these complications in adults with diabetes and presumably in children and adolescents as well. Blood pressure should be checked and reviewed at each clinic visit. Hypertension is defined as systolic or diastolic blood pressure (measured on at least 3 separate days) above the 95th percentile for the child's age, sex, and height. If elevated blood pressure is confirmed, nondiabetic causes should first be excluded. Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors are the first-line agents; if not tolerated well, angiotensin II receptor blockers can be used.

2. Lipid abnormalities—Lipid profiles are generally favorable in children with T1D. The screening for dyslipidemia should commence after the age of 2 years and, if normal, should be repeated every 5 years. Good glycemic control should be established in newly diagnosed patients prior to screening, but screening should not be delayed more than 1 year after diagnosis. Children with LDL levels of 130–159 mg/dL (3.4–4.1 mmol/L) should receive dietary and exercise counseling for 6 months, with consideration of pharmacologic therapy if this fails. Statin therapy in addition to diet

Table 35–1. Checklist of good diabetes management in children and adolescents.

Variable	Frequency of Measurement	Tests and Values
Blood glucose	At least four times daily	See Table 35–2
Hemoglobin A_{1c}	Every 3 mo	< 7.5%
Blood pressure	Every 3 mo	< 95th percentile for age
Blood lipid panel	Within 1 y after diagnosis (age ≥ 2 y); if normal, repeat q 5 y	LDL < 100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L), HDL > 35 mg/dL(0.9 mmol/L), triglycerides < 150 mg/dL(1.7 mmol/L).
Urine—microalbumin	Annually after 3–5 y of diabetes (age ≥ 10 y)	AER < 20 mcg/min A/C ratio < 30 mg/g
Ophthalmology referral	Annually after 3–5 y of diabetes (age ≥ 10 y)	Retinal photographs
Signs of other endocrinopathy	Evaluate thyroid at least annually Autoantibody screening every 1–2 y • Celiac disease • Addison disease	TSH: 0.5–5.0 IU/mL T4: 4.5–10 mcg/dL TPO Ab Transglutaminase IgA Ab 21-hydroxylase Ab

Ab, antibody; A/C, albumin/creatinine; AER, albumin excretion rate; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; T4, thyroxine; TPO, thyroid peroxidase autoantibodies; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

and lifestyle changes is recommended if LDL is more than 160 mg/dL (4.1 mmol/L). The treatment goals are LDL less than 100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L), HDL more than 35 mg/dL (0.9 mmol/L), and triglycerides less than 150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L). The use of lipid-lowering drugs in children has been the subject of much discussion. The American Heart Association recommends initiating therapy with statins at the lowest dose at age more than 10 years in boys, Tanner stage II or higher, and preferably after menarche in girls.

3. Nephropathy—Rapid decline of the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is the first clinical manifestation of diabetic kidney disease and may be reversible with diligent glycemic and blood pressure control. Microalbuminuria is an established risk factor, defined as: urinary albumin excretion rate between 20 and 200 μg/min or urinary albumin/creatinine ratio 2.5–25 mg/mmol or 30–300 mg/g (spot urine) in males and 3.5–25 mg/mmol in females. Screening for microalbuminuria with a random spot urine sample should occur annually in children once they are 10 years of age and have had diabetes for more than 3–5 years. If values are abnormal or borderline, two timed overnight collections should occur. The diagnosis of microalbuminuria requires documentation of two out of three abnormal samples over a period of 3–6 months. Once persistent microalbuminuria is confirmed, nondiabetic causes of renal disease should be excluded. Following this evaluation, treatment with an ACE inhibitor should be started, even if the blood pressure is normal. Patients should be counseled about the importance of glycemic control and smoking cessation, if applicable. Patients with T2D should have microalbuminuria assessed soon after diagnosis and then annually.

4. Retinopathy—The first dilated ophthalmologic examination should be obtained by an ophthalmologist or optometrist trained in diabetes-specific retinal examination once the child is ≥ 10 year old and has had diabetes for 3–5 years. The frequency of subsequent examination is generally every 1–2 years, depending on the patient risk profile and advice of the eye care provider. While rare in children, proliferative retinopathy does occur in adolescents with long duration and poor control of diabetes. Laser treatment to coagulate proliferating capillaries prevents bleeding and leakage of blood into the vitreous fluid or behind the retina. This treatment preserves useful vision.

5. Associated autoimmune diseases—Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) level should be measured every 1–2 years in all patients. Thyroid peroxidase autoantibody (TPO) is usually the first test to become abnormal in the autoimmune thyroiditis affecting up to 20% of children with T1D. If TPO is positive, we recommend screening with TSH every 6–12 months.

Transglutaminase autoantibodies offer a sensitive and specific screening test for celiac disease affecting up to 10% of children with T1D. Risk of celiac disease is most strongly associated with the HLA-DR3-DQ2 haplotype. We recommend routine screening at diagnosis of diabetes and, if negative, retesting every 1–2 year. About half of celiac disease cases develop several years after diagnosis of T1D. Most of the biopsy-confirmed children are "asymptomatic," but report improved health status upon initiation of gluten-free diet. Untreated celiac disease may lead to severe hypoglycemia, increased bone turnover, and decreased bone mineralization, among many other long-term complications (see Chapter 21).

The 21-hydroxylase autoantibody, a marker of increased risk of Addison disease, is present in approximately 1% of patients with T1D, although Addison disease develops (usually slowly) in only about one-third of these antibody-positive individuals.

» Treatment

A. Treatment of Type 1 Diabetes

1. Treatment goals—The overarching goals of therapy in T1D include prevention of acute and long-term complications by reducing chronic hyperglycemia, along with preventing hypoglycemia and maximizing quality of life. The HbA_{1c} level reflects the average blood glucose levels over the previous 3 months. Each child should have targets individually determined to aim for the lowest HbA_{1c} that can be sustained without severe hypoglycemia or frequent moderate hypoglycemia.

In the seminal DCCT trial, HbA_{1c} values of 7%, compared to 9%, resulted in greater than 50% reductions in the eye, kidney, cardiovascular, and neurologic complications of T1D. At present, the safest recommendation for glycemic control in children is to achieve an HbA_{1c} less than 7.5%; unfortunately less than 30% of the US children and youth meet this goal.

2. Patient and family education—All caregivers need to learn about diabetes, how to give insulin injections, perform home blood glucose monitoring, and handle acute complications. While teenagers can be taught to perform many of the tasks of diabetes management, they do better when supportive, not overbearing, parents continue to be involved in management of their disease. The use of an educational book (see Understanding Diabetes and Understanding Insulin Pumps and Continuous Glucose Monitors) can be very helpful to the family.

3. Home blood glucose monitoring—All families must be able to monitor blood glucose levels at least four times daily—and more frequently in patients who have glucose-control problems or intercurrent illnesses. Blood glucose levels can be monitored using any downloadable meter. Target levels when no food has been eaten for 2 or more hours vary according to age (Table 35–2).

Table 35–2. Ideal glucose levels after 2 or more hours of fasting.

Age (y)	Glucose Level
≤ 4	80–200 mg/dL (4.6–11 mmol/L)
5–11	70–180 mg/dL (3.9–10 mmol/L)
≥ 12	70–150 mg/dL (3.9–8.3 mmol/L)

The frequency of self-monitoring of blood glucose correlates with improved HbA_{1c}. Blood glucose results, insulin dosage, and events, for example, illness, parties, exercise, menses, and episodes of hypoglycemia or ketonuria/ketosis should be recorded in a logbook or downloaded. Regular evaluation by the family helps to see patterns, adjust insulin dosage and, if needed, communicate with health care providers. If more than 50% of the values are above the desired range for age or more than 15% below the desired range, the insulin dosage needs to be adjusted.

Some families are able to make these changes independently, whereas others need help from the health care provider by telephone, fax, or email to optimize insulin dose between visits. Children with diabetes should be evaluated by a diabetes provider every 3 months to check compliance, adjust insulin dose according to growth, measure HbA_{1c}, and review blood glucose patterns, as well as for routine review of systems, physical examination, and laboratory tests (see Table 35–1).

Continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) is now routinely available and can tremendously improve diabetes management if used most of the time. Subcutaneous glucose levels are obtained every 1–5 minutes from a sensor placed under the skin. The sensor must be replaced every 7–10 days. A transmitter sends glucose levels via radio waves from the sensor to a receiver that can be inside an insulin pump. As with insulin pump therapy, intensive education and follow-up is required, usually at a specialty diabetes center. The user is trained on how to keep the real-time displayed blood glucose "between the lines," that is, in the personalized range. Low and high blood glucose alarms can be set and in some systems they may change insulin pump delivery rate. At the time of consultation, data from CGM devices and pumps are routinely downloaded for analysis of patterns.

4. Insulin—Insulin has three key functions: (1) it allows glucose to pass into the cell for oxidative utilization; (2) it decreases the physiologic production of glucose, particularly in the liver; and (3) it turns off lipolysis and ketone production.

a. Insulin treatment of new-onset type 1 diabetes—In children who present without DKA and have adequate oral intake, the initial insulin dose can be administered subcutaneously as 0.2 U/kg of short-acting insulin (regular) or, preferentially, rapid-acting analogue: lispro (Humalog), aspart (NovoLog), or glulisine (Apidra). At the same time, 0.2–0.3 U/kg of long-acting insulin analogue—glargine (Lantus) or detemir (Levemir)—can be administered subcutaneously to provide the "basal" level of insulin. This usually suffices for the initial 12–24 hours preceding systematic diabetes education.

The dose is adjusted with each injection during the first week. The rule of thumb is to start insulin at the low end of the estimated daily requirement and titrate it up based on frequent (q2–4h) blood-glucose monitoring. The initial daily dose of insulin is higher in the presence of ketosis, infection, obesity, or steroid treatment. It also varies with age and severity of onset. A total subcutaneous daily dose of 0.3–0.7 U/kg/d may suffice in prepubertal children, while pubertal or overweight children and those with initial HbA_{1c} more than 12% commonly require 1–1.5 U/kg/d of insulin during the initial week of treatment. Children younger than 12 years cannot reliably administer insulin without adult supervision because they may lack fine motor control and/or may not understand the importance of accurate dosage.

The insulin dose peaks about 1 week after diagnosis and decreases slightly with the waning of glucotoxicity and voracious appetite. Approximately 3–6 weeks after diagnosis, most school-children and adolescents experience a partial remission or "honeymoon period." Temporary decrease in the insulin dose during this period is necessary to avoid severe hypoglycemia. The remission tends to last longer in older children, but is rarely complete and never permanent. Other types of diabetes should be considered in patients with unusually low insulin requirements.

b. Long-term insulin dosage—Children usually receive a rapid-acting insulin to cover food intake or correct high blood glucose and a long-acting insulin to suppress endogenous hepatic glucose production. This is achieved by combining insulins with different desired properties. Understanding the onset, peak, and duration of insulin activity is essential (see Table 35–3).

Nearly all children diagnosed with T1D at our center receive insulin from a pump or through basal-bolus multiple daily injections (MDI). This usually consists of injections (boluses) of rapid-acting analogue before meals (ie, three to four times daily) and one to two injections of long-acting analogue insulin. The dose of premeal rapid-acting insulin is calculated based on anticipated carbohydrate content of the meal and additional insulin to correct for high blood glucose, if needed. Sliding scales for dosing of rapid-acting insulin (based only on current blood glucose level) are helpful initially, while families learn carbohydrate counting. This shortcut assumes that the content of carbohydrates, for example in dinner, does not vary from day to day, this may lead to significant under- and overdosing.

Table 35–3. Kinetics of insulin action.

Type of Insulin	Begins Working	Main Effect	All Gone
Rapid-acting			
Regular	30 min	95 min	6–9 h
Humalog (lispro) NovoLog (aspart) Apidra (glulisine)	10–15 min	55 min	4 h
Intermediate-acting			
NPH (neutral protamine Hagedorn)	2–4 h	6–8 h	12–15 h
Long-acting			
Lantus (glargine) Levemir (detemir)	3–4 h	6–18 h	18–26 h
Tresiba (degludec)	4 h	no peak	24- 40 h
Premixed (available in various combinations)			
NovoLog 75/25 (75% NPH + 25% lispro)	15 min	1–8 h	12–15 h
Humulin 70/30 (70% NPH+30% Regular)	30 min	Variable	12–18 h

Children younger than 4 years usually need one or two units of rapid-acting insulin to cover carbohydrate intake. Children aged 4–10 years may require up to four units of rapid-acting insulin to cover breakfast and dinner, whereas 4–10 units of rapid-acting insulin are used in older children. These estimates do not include correction for high blood glucose.

Families gradually learn to make small weekly adjustments in insulin dosage based on home blood glucose testing. Rapid-acting analogue insulin is given 10–20 minutes before eating to account for delay in insulin action. If slower human regular insulin is used, the injections should be given 30–60 minutes before meals—rarely a practical option. In young children who eat unpredictably, it is often necessary to wait until after the meal to decide on the appropriate dose of rapid-acting insulin, which is a compromise between avoiding hypoglycemia and tolerating hyperglycemia after meals.

A long-acting analogue insulin glargine (Lantus) or detemir (Levemir) is given once or twice a day to maintain basal insulin levels between meals. Daily adjustments in long-acting insulin dose usually are not needed. However, decreases should be made for heavy activity (eg, sports, hikes, or overnight events).

In the past, most children would receive two injections per day of rapid-acting insulin and an intermediate-acting insulin (NPH), often mixed just before injection. About two-thirds of the total dosage would be given before breakfast and the remainder before dinner. This regimen has been shown to be inferior in achieving recommended HbA_{1c} levels and avoiding hypoglycemia, compared with the basal-bolus regimen described previously. Analogue insulin (glargine, detemir) works more efficiently than NPH. When changing a patient from NPH insulin to an analogue, initially only 50% of the daily units of long-acting insulin is recommended.

c. Insul in pump t r eat ment —Continuous subcutaneous insulin (insulin pump) therapy is currently the best way to restore the body's physiologic insulin profile. The pump delivers a variable programmed basal rate that corresponds to the diurnal variation in insulin needs. Prepubertal children require higher basal rate in the early part of night, while postpubertal patients who experience the "dawn phenomenon" require higher rates in the morning. Lower rates are set for periods of vigorous activity. The user initiates bolus doses before meals and to correct hyperglycemia. Most pumps can receive wireless transmission of test results from glucose meters, but the patient or caregiver must still manually enter the amount of carbohydrate being consumed. The pump calculates the amount of insulin needed for a meal or correction based on previously entered parameters which include: insulin-to-carbohydrate ratios, insulin sensitivity factor, glycemic target, and duration of insulin action (set at 3–4 hours to protect from accumulating too much insulin). The user may override the suggestion or press a button to initiate the bolus.

Most clinical trials have demonstrated better HbA_{1c} and less severe hypoglycemia with pump therapy, compared to MDI. Pump therapy can improve the quality of life in children who have trouble with or fear of injections or who desire greater flexibility in their lifestyle; for example, with sleeping in, sports, or irregular eating. Insulin pumps can be particularly helpful in young children or infants who have multiple meals and snacks and require multiple small doses of rapid-acting insulin. The newer generation of insulin pumps can deliver as little as 0.025 U/h, but higher rates using diluted insulin may be needed for uninterrupted flow.

Compliance problems include infrequent blood glucose testing, not reacting to elevated blood glucose, incorrect carbohydrate counting, or missing the boluses altogether. Side effects of insulin pump treatment include failures of insulin delivery because of a displaced or obstructed infusion set. Insulin pump treatment is significantly more expensive than regimens based on injections. For some patients, pumps may be too difficult to operate; some cannot comply with the multiple testing and carbohydrate counting requirements, or the pump is unacceptable because of body image issues or extreme physical activity (swimming, contact sports). Disposable pumps are already available and much smaller "patch" pumps are in development.

5. "Closed-loop" systems—In the near future, insulin pumps will be directed automatically by a continuous glucose sensor with minimal human input. Simple systems are already available that feature, for instance, sensor-initiated automatic suspension of insulin delivery at a predetermined low-glucose level and automatic resumption of the delivery at a safe level. Other systems that react to predicted, rather than current, low or high blood glucose are in clinical trials. A number of issues remain to be solved, for example, the accuracy and biocompatibility of the sensors and infusion sets, limitations (lag time) of the systemic versus intraportal administration of insulin, lack of counterbalancing delivery of glucagon, and optimal delivery algorithms for various meals and activities.

6. Sick day management—Families must be educated to check blood or urine ketone levels during any illness, when a fasting blood glucose level is above 240 mg/dL (13.3 mmol/L), or a randomly measured glucose level is above 300 mg/dL (16.6 mmol/L). The health care provider should be called in presence of moderate or significant ketonuria or ketonemia (blood β-hydroxybutyrate > 1.0 mmol/L, by Precision Xtra meter). Usually 10%–20% of the total daily insulin dosage is given subcutaneously as rapid-acting analogue or regular insulin every 3–4 hours until blood glucose normalizes. This prevents progression to ketoacidosis and allows most patients to receive treatment at home. Water is the oral fluid of choice if blood glucose is more than 250 mg/dL; at lower levels of glycemia, one should switch to Gatorade/Poweraid or other glucose-containing beverages.

Mild ketonuria/ketonemia secondary to fasting or acute gastrointestinal upset and associated with normal or low blood glucose does not require supplemental insulin treatment. Of note, the brain uses β-hydroxybutyrate as the alternate fuel to glucose in the setting of hypoglycemia. Overtreatment with insulin during a sick day that begins with hyperglycemia and ketosis may lead to severe hypoglycemia resulting in loss of consciousness and/or seizures.

7. Diet—A thorough dietary history should be obtained, including the family's dietary habits and traditions, the child's typical meal times, and patterns of food intake. Nutritional management in children with diabetes does not require a restrictive diet; just a healthy dietary regimen that benefits the children and their families. Insulin pump and MDI therapy utilize carbohydrate counting in which the grams of carbohydrate to be eaten are counted and a matching dose of insulin is administered. This plan allows for the most freedom and flexibility in food choices, but it requires expert education and commitment and may not be suitable for many families or situations, such as for school lunches and teenagers. Alternatively to a precise carbohydrate counting, "exchanges" are taught to estimate 10- or 15-g servings of carbohydrate.

A constant carbohydrate meal plan was used often in the past with insulin regimens based on NPH and regular insulin, where carbohydrate intake and the amount of insulin were kept relatively constant from day to day. This is now perceived as too restrictive and a potential source of conflict that will lead to poor control.

8. Exercise—Regular aerobic exercise is important for children with diabetes. Exercise fosters a sense of well-being; helps increase insulin sensitivity (a drop in glycemia in response to insulin); and helps maintain proper weight, blood pressure, and HDL-cholesterol levels.

Hypoglycemia during exercise or in the 2–12 hours after exercise can be prevented by careful monitoring of blood glucose before, during, and after exercise; reducing the dosage of the insulin active at the time of (or after) the exercise; and by providing extra snacks. Fifteen grams of glucose usually covers about 30 minutes of exercise. The use of drinks containing 5%–10% dextrose, such as Gatorade, during the period of exercise is often beneficial. Insulin dose for meals as well as the basal insulin pump rate should be reduced before, during, and sometimes after the exercise; the longer and more vigorous the activity, the greater the reduction in insulin dose.

9. Psychological care—The diagnosis of T1D changes lives of the affected families and brings on relentless challenges. It is impossible to take "vacation" from diabetes without some unpleasant consequences. The stress imposed on the family around the time of initial diagnosis may lead to feelings of shock, denial, sadness, anger, fear, and guilt. Meeting with a counselor to express these feelings at the time of diagnosis helps with long-term adaptation. Children with T1D and their parents often experience difficult adjustment. Persisting adjustment problems may indicate underlying dysfunction of the family or psychopathology of the child or caregiver. Young people with T1D are more frequently diagnosed with and treated for psychiatric disorders, disordered eating, neurocognitive, learning problems, and poor coping skills than the general population.

Routine assessment should be made of developmental adjustment to and understanding of diabetes management, including diabetes-related knowledge, insulin adjustment skills, goal setting, problem-solving abilities, regimen adherence, and self-care autonomy and competence. This is especially important during late childhood and prior to adolescence. General and diabetes-related family functioning such as communication, parental involvement and support, and roles and responsibilities for self-care behaviors need to be assessed. Teaching parents effective behavior management skills, especially at diagnosis and prior to adolescence, emphasizes involvement and support, effective problem-solving, self-management skills, and realistic expectations. Adolescents should be encouraged to assume increased responsibility for diabetes management, but with continued, mutually agreed parental involvement and support. The transition to adult diabetes care should be negotiated and

planned between adolescents, their parents, and the diabetes team well in advance of the actual transfer.

B. Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes

Treatment of type 2 diabetes in children varies with the severity of the disease. If the HbA_{1c} is still near normal, modification of lifestyle (preferably for the entire family) is the first-line therapy. This must include reducing caloric intake and increasing exercise. With mildly elevated HbA_{1c} (6.2%–8%) and no ketosis, metformin is usually started at a dose of 500 mg twice daily along with modification of lifestyle. If needed, and if gastrointestinal adaptation has occurred, the dose can be gradually increased to 1 g twice daily. If the presentation is more severe, with ketosis, the initial treatment is similar to that of T1D, including IV or subcutaneous insulin. Of note, 10% of children with T2D present in DKA. Oral hypoglycemic agents may be tried at a later date, particularly if weight loss has been successful.

» Prognosis

The long-term prognosis of children diagnosed with T1D has improved tremendously over the past 20 years, primarily due to better control of blood glucose and blood pressure. While life expectancy is now only slightly shorter in these patients, compared to the general population, the risk of cardiovascular disease is still 4–10 times higher, especially in diabetic women.

Modern diabetes care generally leads to excellent health outcomes. Tremendous progress in biotechnology (insulin analogues), insulin pumps, and continuous glucose sensing has made the prevention of acute and long-term complications achievable. However, comprehensive and continuing education of patients and their families remains the foundation of healthy and quality life with diabetes.

REFERENCES

Chiang JL, Kirkman MS, Laffel LM, Peters AL; Type 1 Diabetes Sourcebook Authors: Type 1 diabetes through the life span: a position statement of the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care 2014 Jul;37(7):2034–2054 [PMID: 24935775].

International Society for Pediatric and Adolescent Diabetes (ISPAD) Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. Pediatr Diabetes 2014;15 S20:1–290.

Understanding diabetes and understanding insulin pumps and continuous glucose monitors by H. Peter Chase. http://www.barbaradaviscenter.org.

36

Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Janet A. Thomas, MD
Johan L.K. Van Hove, MD, PhD, MBA

Disorders in which single gene defects cause clinically significant blocks in metabolic pathways are called inborn errors of metabolism. Once considered rare, the number of recognized inborn errors has increased dramatically and they are now recognized to affect 1:1500 children. Many of these disorders can be treated effectively. Even when treatment is not available, correct diagnosis permits parents to make informed decisions about future offspring.

The pathology in metabolic disorders usually results from accumulation of enzyme substrate behind a metabolic block, or from deficiency of a reaction product. In some cases, the accumulated enzyme substrate is diffusible and has adverse effects on distant organs; in other cases, as in lysosomal storage diseases, the substrate primarily accumulates locally. The clinical manifestations of inborn errors vary widely with both mild and severe forms of virtually every disorder. Many patients do not match the classic phenotype because mutations are not identical in different patients, even though they occur in the same gene.

A first treatment strategy is to enhance the reduced enzyme activity. Gene replacement is a long-term goal, but problems of gene delivery to target organs and control of gene action make this an unrealistic option at present. Enzyme-replacement therapy using intravenously administered recombinant enzyme has been developed as an effective strategy in lysosomal storage disorders. Organ transplantation (liver or bone marrow) can provide a source of enzyme for some conditions. Pharmacologic doses of a cofactor such as a vitamin can sometimes be effective in restoring enzyme activity. Residual activity can be increased by pharmacologically promoting transcription (transcriptional upregulation) or by stabilizing the protein product through therapy with chaperones. Alternatively, some strategies are designed to cope with the consequences of enzyme deficiency. Strategies used to avoid substrate accumulation include restriction of precursor in the diet (eg, low-phenylalanine diet for phenylketonuria), avoidance of catabolism, inhibition of an enzyme in the synthesis of the precursor (eg, NTBC in tyrosinemia type I (see section Hereditary Tyrosinemia), or removal of accumulated substrate pharmacologically (eg, glycine therapy for isovaleric acidemia) or by dialysis. An inadequately produced metabolite can also be supplemented (eg, glucose administration for glycogen storage disease type I).

Inborn errors can manifest at any time, can affect any organ system, and can mimic many common pediatric problems. This chapter focuses on when to consider a metabolic disorder in the differential diagnosis of common pediatric problems. A few of the more important disorders are then discussed in detail.

DIAGNOSIS

SUSPECTING INBORN ERRORS

Inborn errors must be considered in the differential diagnosis of critically ill newborns, children with seizures, neurodegeneration, recurrent vomiting, Reye-like syndrome, parenchymal liver disease, cardiomyopathy, unexplained metabolic acidosis, hyperammonemia, and hypoglycemia. Mental retardation, developmental delay, and failure to thrive are often present but have little specificity. Inborn errors should be suspected when (1) symptoms accompany changes in diet, (2) the child's development regresses, (3) the child shows specific food preferences or aversions, or (4) the family has a history of parental consanguinity or problems suggestive of inborn error such as retardation or unexplained deaths in first- and second-degree relatives.

Physical findings associated with inborn errors include alopecia or abnormal hair, retinal cherry-red spot or retinitis pigmentosa, cataracts or corneal opacity, hepatomegaly or splenomegaly, coarse features, skeletal changes (including gibbus), neurologic regression, and intermittent or progressive ataxia or dystonia. Other features that may be important

in the context of a suspicious history include failure to thrive, microcephaly, rash, jaundice, hypotonia, and hypertonia.

Finding an immediate cause of symptoms does not rule out an underlying inborn error. For example, renal tubular acidosis and cirrhosis may be due to an underlying inborn error. Acute crises may be brought on by intercurrent infections in some inborn errors. Some inborn errors suggest a diagnosis of nonaccidental trauma (eg, glutaric acidemia type I) or poisoning (eg, methylmalonic acidemia). In addition, children with inborn errors may be at higher risk for child abuse or neglect because of their frustrating irritability.

LABORATORY STUDIES

Laboratory studies are almost always needed for the diagnosis of inborn errors. Serum electrolytes and pH should be used to estimate anion gap and acid-base status. Serum lactate, pyruvate, and ammonia levels are available in most hospitals, but care is needed in obtaining samples appropriately. Amino acid, acylcarnitine, and organic acid studies must be performed at specialized facilities to ensure accurate analysis and interpretation. An increasing number of inborn errors are diagnosed with DNA sequencing, but interpretation of private mutations, that is, mutations only seen in a particular family, can be problematic. Knowing the causative mutation in the family allows prenatal diagnosis to be done by molecular analysis. This can be done on any material that contains fetal DNA such as chorionic villi, amniotic cells, or fetal blood obtained through umibilical cord blood sampling. Large scale next generation sequencing such as exome or genome sequencing has been very useful in identifying disorders with nonspecific symptoms that are not readily recognized by routine metabolite screening, such as mental retardation. Specific metabolite or enzyme assays are used for confirmation.

The physician should know what conditions a test can detect and when it can detect them. For example, urine organic acids may be normal in patients with medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency or biotinidase deficiency; glycine may be elevated only in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in patients with nonketotic hyperglycinemia. A result that is normal in one physiologic state may be abnormal in another. For instance, the urine of a child who becomes hypoglycemic upon prolonged fasting should be positive for ketones. In such a child, the absence of ketones in the urine suggests a defect in fatty acid oxidation.

Samples used to diagnose metabolic disease may be obtained at autopsy. Samples must be obtained in a timely fashion and may be analyzed directly or stored frozen until a particular analysis is justified by the results of postmortem examination, new clinical information, or developments in the field. Studies of other family members may help establish the diagnosis of a deceased patient. It may be possible to demonstrate that parents are heterozygous carriers of a particular disorder or that a sibling has the condition.

COMMON CLINICAL SITUATIONS

1. Mental Retardation

Some inborn errors can cause mental retardation without other distinguishing characteristics. Measurements of plasma amino acids, urine organic acids, and serum uric acid should be obtained in every patient with nonspecific mental retardation. Urine screens for mucopolysaccharides and succinylpurines and serum testing for carbohydrate-deficient glycoproteins are useful because these disorders do not always have specific physical findings. Absent speech can point to disorders of creatine. Abnormalities of the brain detected by magnetic resonance imaging can suggest specific groups of disorders (eg, cortical migrational abnormalities in peroxisomal biogenesis disorders).

2. Acute Presentation in the Neonate

Acute metabolic disease in the neonate is most often a result of disorders of protein or carbohydrate metabolism and may be clinically indistinguishable from sepsis. Prominent symptoms include poor feeding, vomiting, altered mental status or muscle tone, jitteriness, seizures, and jaundice. Acidosis, alkalosis, or altered mental status out of proportion to systemic symptoms should increase suspicion of a metabolic disorder. Laboratory measurements should include electrolytes, ammonia, lactate, glucose, blood pH, urine ketones, and urine carbohydrate analysis. Amino acids in CSF should be measured if nonketotic hyperglycinemia is suspected. Plasma and urine amino acid, urine organic acid, and serum acylcarnitine analysis should be performed urgently. Neonatal cardiomyopathy or ventricular arrhythmias should be investigated with serum acylcarnitine analysis and carnitine levels.

3. Vomiting & Encephalopathy in the Infant or Older Child

Electrolytes, ammonia, glucose, urine pH, urine carbohydrate analysis, and urine ketones should be measured in all patients with vomiting and encephalopathy before any treatment affects the results. Samples for plasma amino acids, serum acylcarnitine profile, and urine organic acid analysis should be obtained early. In the presentation of a Reye-like syndrome (ie, vomiting, encephalopathy, and hepatomegaly), amino acids, acylcarnitines, carnitine levels, and organic acids should be assessed immediately. Hypoglycemia with inappropriately low urine or quantitative serum ketones suggests the diagnosis of fatty acid oxidation or ketogenesis defects.

4. Hypoglycemia

Duration of fasting, presence or absence of hepatomegaly, and Kussmaul breathing provide clues to the differential diagnosis of hypoglycemia. Serum insulin, cortisol, and growth hormone should be obtained on presentation. Urine ketones, urine organic acids, plasma lactate, serum acylcarnitine profile, carnitine levels, ammonia, triglycerides, and uric acid should be measured. Ketone body production is usually not efficient in the neonate, and ketonuria in a hypoglycemic or acidotic neonate suggests an inborn error. In the older child, inappropriately low urine ketone levels suggest an inborn error of fatty acid oxidation. Assessment of ketone generation requires simultaneous measurements of quantitative serum 3-hydroxybutyrate, acetoacetate, and free fatty acids in relation to a sufficient duration of fasting and age. Metabolites obtained during the acute episode can be very helpful and avoid the need for a formal fasting test.

5. Hyperammonemia

Symptoms of hyperammonemia may appear and progress rapidly or insidiously. Decreased appetite, irritability, and behavioral changes appear first with vomiting, ataxia, lethargy, seizures, and coma appearing as ammonia levels increase. Tachypnea inducing respiratory alkalosis due to a direct effect on respiratory drive is characteristic. Physical examination cannot exclude the presence of hyperammonemia, and serum ammonia should be measured whenever hyperammonemia is possible. Severe hyperammonemia may be due to urea cycle disorders, organic acidemias, or fatty acid oxidation disorders (such as carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase deficiency) or, in the premature infant, transient hyperammonemia of the newborn. The cause can usually be ascertained by measuring quantitative plasma amino acids (eg, citrulline), plasma carnitine and acylcarnitine esters, and urine organic acids and orotic acid. Respiratory alkalosis is usually present in urea cycle defects and transient hyperammonemia of the newborn, while acidosis is characteristic of hyperammonemia due to organic acidemias.

6. Acidosis

Inborn errors may cause chronic or acute acidosis at any age, with or without an increased anion gap. Inborn errors should be considered when acidosis occurs with recurrent vomiting or hyperammonemia and when acidosis is out of proportion to the clinical status. Acidosis due to an inborn error can be difficult to correct. The main causes of anion gap metabolic acidosis are lactic acidosis, ketoacidosis (including abnormal ketone body production such as in β-ketothiolase deficiency), methylmalonic aciduria or other organic acidurias, intoxication (ethanol, methanol, ethylene glycol, and salicylate), and uremia. Causes of nonanion gap metabolic acidosis include loss of base in diarrhea or renal tubular acidosis (isolated renal tubular acidosis or renal Fanconi syndrome). If renal bicarbonate loss is found, a distinction must be made between isolated renal tubular acidosis and a more generalized renal tubular disorder or renal Fanconi syndrome by testing for renal losses of phosphorus and amino acids. Inborn errors associated with renal tubular acidosis or renal Fanconi syndrome include cystinosis, tyrosinemia type I, carnitine palmitoyltransferase I, galactosemia, hereditary fructose intolerance, Lowe syndrome, and mitochondrial diseases. Tests indicated for anion gap metabolic acidosis include urine organic acids, serum lactate and pyruvate, serum 3-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetate, and plasma amino acids, in addition to a toxicology screen.

° MANAGEMENT OF METABOLIC EMERGENCIES

Patients with severe acidosis, hypoglycemia, and hyperammonemia may be very ill; initially mild symptoms may worsen quickly, and coma and death may ensue within hours. With prompt and vigorous treatment, however, patients can recover completely, even from deep coma. All oral intake should be stopped. Sufficient glucose should be given intravenously to avoid or minimize catabolism in a patient with a known inborn error who is at risk for crisis. Most conditions respond favorably to glucose administration, although a few (eg, primary lactic acidosis due to pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency) do not. After exclusion of fatty acid oxidation disorders, immediate institution of intravenous fat emulsions (eg, intralipid) can provide crucial caloric input. Severe or increasing hyperammonemia should be treated pharmacologically or with dialysis (see section Disorders of the Urea Cycle), and severe acidosis should be treated with bicarbonate. More specific measures can be instituted when a diagnosis is established.

° NEWBORN SCREENING

Criteria for screening newborns for a disorder include its frequency, its consequences if untreated, the ability of therapy to mitigate consequences, the cost of testing, and the cost of treatment. With the availability of tandem mass spectrometry, newborn screening has expanded greatly to now include 20 core conditions and multiple secondary conditions screened by most states. In general, amino acidopathies, organic acidurias, and disorders of fatty acid oxidation are the disorders for which screening now occurs. Most states also screen for hypothyroidism, congenital adrenal hyperplasia, hemoglobinopathies, biotinidase deficiency, galactosemia, and cystic fibrosis. Screening for severe combined immune deficiency and congenital heart disease has been recently added. A few states have begun screening for some of the lysosomal and peroxisomal storage disorders.

Screening should occur for all infants between 24 and 72 hours of life or before hospital discharge.

Some screening tests measure a metabolite (eg, phenylalanine) that becomes abnormal with time and exposure to diet. In such instances, the disease cannot be detected reliably until intake of the substrate is established. Other tests measure enzyme activity and can be performed at any time (eg, for biotinidase deficiency). Transfusions may cause false-negative results in this instance, and exposure of the sample to heat may cause false-positive results. Technologic advances have extended the power of newborn screening but have brought additional challenges. For example, although tandem mass spectrometry can detect many more disorders in the newborn period, consensus on diagnosis and treatment for some conditions is still under development.

Screening tests are not diagnostic, and diagnostic tests must be undertaken when an abnormal screening result is obtained. Further, because false-negative results occur, a normal newborn screening test does not rule out a condition.

The appropriate response to an abnormal screening test depends on the condition in question and the predictive value of the test. For example, when screening for galactosemia by enzyme assay, complete absence of enzyme activity is highly predictive of classic galactosemia. Failure to treat may rapidly lead to death. In this case, treatment must be initiated immediately while diagnostic studies are pending. In phenylketonuria, however, a diet restricted in phenylalanine is harmful to the infant whose screening test is a false-positive, while diet therapy produces an excellent outcome in the truly affected infant if treatment is established within the first weeks of life. Therefore, treatment for phenylketonuria should only be instituted when the diagnosis is confirmed. Physicians should review American College of Medical Genetics recommendations, state laws and regulations, and consult with their local metabolic center to arrive at appropriate strategies for each hospital and practice.

Lang TF, Hussain K: Pediatric hypoglycemia. Adv Clin Chem 2014;63:211 [PMID: 24783355].

Mak CM, Lee HC, Chan AY, Lam CW: Inborn errors of metabolism and expanded newborn screening: review and update. Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci 2013;50(6):142 [PMID: 24295058].

Moeschler JB, Shevell M, Committee on Genetics: Comprehensive evaluation of the child with intellectual disability or global developmental delay. Pediatrics 2014;134(3):e903 [PMID: 25157020].

Valayannopoulos V, Poll-The BT: Diagnostic work-up in acute conditions of inborn errors of metabolism and storage diseases. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1553 [PMID: 23622378].

Van Karnebeek CD, Shevell M, Zschocke J, Moeschler JB, Stockler S: The metabolic evaluation of the child with an intellectual developmental disorder: diagnostic algorithm for identification of treatable causes and new digital resource. Mol Genet Metab 2014;111(4):428 [PMID: 24518794].

° DISOr DEr S Of CAr bOHYDr At E MEt AbOl ISM

GLYCOGEN STORAGE DISEASES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Types 0, I, III, VI, and IX manifest with hypoglycemia in infants.
- Types II, V, and VII manifest with rhabdomyolysis or muscle weakness.
- Types IV and IX manifest with hepatic cirrhosis.

Glycogen is a highly branched polymer of glucose that is stored in liver and muscle. Different enzyme defects affect its biosynthesis and degradation. The hepatic forms of the glycogenoses cause growth failure, hepatomegaly, and severe fasting hypoglycemia. They include glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency (type I; von Gierke disease), debrancher enzyme deficiency (type III), hepatic phosphorylase deficiency (type VI), and phosphorylase kinase deficiency (type IX), which normally regulates hepatic phosphorylase activity. Glycogen synthase deficiency (GSD; glycogen storage disease type 0) causes hypoglycemia, usually after about 12 hours of fasting, and can cause mild postprandial hyperglycemia and hyperlactatemia. There are two forms of glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency: in type Ia, the catalytic glucose-6-phosphatase is deficient and there is pronounced lactic acidosis, hyperuricemia, and hyperlipidemia in addition to hypoglycemia, and in type Ib, the glucose-6-phosphate transporter is deficient and neutropenia also occurs. Glycogenosis type IV, brancher enzyme deficiency, usually presents with progressive liver cirrhosis, as do some rare forms of phosphorylase kinase deficiency. The gluconeogenesis disorder fructose-1,6-bisphosphatase deficiency presents with major lactic acidosis and delayed hypoglycemia on fasting.

The myopathic forms of glycogenosis affect skeletal muscle. Skeletal myopathy with weakness or rhabdomyolysis may be seen in muscle phosphorylase deficiency (type V), phosphofructokinase deficiency (type VII), and acid maltase deficiency (type II; Pompe disease). The infantile form of Pompe disease also has hypertrophic cardiomyopathy and macroglossia.

» Diagnosis

Initial tests include glucose, lactate, triglycerides, cholesterol, uric acid, transaminases, and creatine kinase. Functional testing includes responsiveness of blood glucose

and lactate to fasting; for myopathic forms, an ischemic or nonischemic exercise test is helpful. Most glycogenoses can now be diagnosed by molecular analysis, including next-generation panels. Other diagnostic studies include enzyme assays of leukocytes, fibroblasts, liver, or muscle. Disorders diagnosable from analysis of red blood cells include deficiency phosphorylase kinase (type IX) in half the cases. Pompe disease can usually be diagnosed by assaying acid maltase in a blood spot with confirmation in fibroblasts.

» Treatment

Treatment is designed to prevent hypoglycemia and avoid secondary metabolite accumulations such as elevated lactate in glycogenosis type I. In GSD1, the special diet must be strictly monitored with restriction of free sugars and measured amounts of uncooked cornstarch, which slowly releases glucose in the intestinal lumen. Good results have been reported following continuous nighttime carbohydrate feeding or uncooked cornstarch therapy. Late complications even after years of treatment include focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, hepatic adenoma or carcinoma, and gout. Enzyme-replacement therapy in Pompe disease corrects the cardiomyopathy, but the response in skeletal myopathy is variable with optimal results seen in patients treated early and who have mutations that allow formation of some residual protein which is detected as cross-reacting material on Western blotting. Immunomodulation is used for patients whose treatment response declines due to antibodies to the recombinant enzyme. In glycogen storage diseases with intact gluconeogenesis (GSD III, VI, IX), a high-protein diet improves glucose control and reduces late complications.

Chien YH, Hwu WL, Lee NC: Pompe disease: early diagnosis and early treatment make a difference. Pediatr Neonatol 2012;54(4):219 [PMID: 23632029].

Kishnani PS et al: Diagnosis and management of glycogen storage disease type 1: a practice guideline of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. Genet Med 2014;Nov 6: doi:10.1038/gim.2014.128 [epub ahead of print] [PMID: 25356975].

Kishnani PS, Beckemeyer AA: New therapeutic approaches for Pompe disease: enzyme replacement therapy and beyond. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12 (Suppl 1):114 [PMID: 25345093].

Oldfors A, DiMauro S: New insights in the field of muscle glycogenoses. Curr Opin Neurol 2013;26(5):544 [PMID: 23995275].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.agsdus.org.

GALACTOSEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Severely deficient neonates present with vomiting, jaundice, and hepatomegaly on initiation of lactose-containing feedings.
- Renal Fanconi syndrome, cataracts of the ocular lens, hepatic cirrhosis, and sepsis occur in untreated children.
- Delayed, apraxic speech and ovarian failure occur frequently even with treatment. Developmental delay, tremor, and ataxia occur less frequently.

Classic galactosemia is caused by almost total deficiency of galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase. Accumulation of galactose-1-phosphate causes hepatic parenchymal disease and renal Fanconi syndrome. Onset of the severe disease is marked in the neonate by vomiting, jaundice (both direct and indirect), hepatomegaly, and rapid onset of liver insufficiency after initiation of milk feeding. Hepatic cirrhosis is progressive. Without treatment, death frequently occurs within a month, often from Escherichia coli sepsis. Cataracts usually develop within 2 months in untreated cases but usually reverse with treatment. With prompt institution of a galactose-free diet, the prognosis for survival without liver disease is excellent. Even when dietary restriction is instituted early, patients with galactosemia are at increased risk for speech and language deficits and ovarian failure. Some patients develop progressive mental retardation, tremor, and ataxia. Milder variants of galactosemia with better prognosis exist.

The disorder is autosomal recessive with an incidence of approximately 1:40,000 live births.

» Diagnosis

In infants receiving foods containing galactose, laboratory findings include liver dysfunction, particularly PT prolongation, together with proteinuria and aminoaciduria. Galactose-1-phosphate is elevated in red blood cells. When the diagnosis is suspected, galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase should be assayed in erythrocytes. Blood transfusions give false-negative results and sample deterioration false-positive results.

Newborn screening by demonstrating enzyme deficiency in red cells or by demonstrating increased serum galactose allows timely institution of treatment. Some patients identified on newborn screening have a genotype that results in sufficient residual activity (Duarte allele) and treatment is not always required.

» Treatment

A galactose-free diet should be instituted as soon as the diagnosis is made. Compliance with the diet must be monitored by following galactose-1-phosphate levels in red blood cells. Appropriate diet management requires not only the exclusion of milk but an understanding of the galactose content of foods. Avoidance of galactose should be lifelong with appropriate calcium replacement, intake of which tends to be low due to the restriction of dairy products.

Gubbels CS et al: Primary ovarian insufficiency in classic galactosemia: Role of FSH dysfunction and timing of the lesion. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(1):29 [PMID: 22729817].

Karadag N et al: Literature review and outcome of classic galactosemia diagnosed in the neonatal period. Clin Lab 2013;59 (9–10):1139 [PMID: 24273939].

Lewis FM, Coman DJ, Syrmis M, Kilcoyne S, Murdoch BE: Charting a seven-year trajectory of language outcomes for a child with galactosemia. J Dev Behav Pediatr 2013;34(6):414 [PMID: 23838587].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.galactosemia.org.

Spencer JB et al: Modifiers of ovarian function in girls and women with classic galactosemia. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2013;98(7):e1257 [PMID: 23690308].

HEREDITARY FRUCTOSE INTOLERANCE

Hereditary fructose intolerance is an autosomal recessive disorder in which deficient activity of fructose-1-phosphate aldolase causes hypoglycemia and tissue accumulation of fructose-1-phosphate on fructose ingestion. Other abnormalities include failure to thrive, vomiting, jaundice, hepatomegaly, proteinuria, and renal Fanconi syndrome. The untreated condition can progress to death from liver failure.

» Diagnosis

The diagnosis is suggested by finding fructosuria or an abnormal transferrin glycoform in the untreated patient. Diagnosis is made by sequencing the HFI gene. An alternative method for diagnosis is enzyme assay of fructose-1-phosphate aldolase in liver biopsy.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of strict dietary avoidance of fructose. Vitamin supplementation is usually needed. Drugs and vitamins dispensed in a sucrose base should be avoided. Treatment monitoring can be done with transferrin glycoform analysis. If diet compliance is poor, physical growth retardation may occur. Growth will resume when more stringent dietary restrictions are reinstituted. If the disorder is recognized early, the prospects for normal development are good. As affected individuals grow up, they may recognize the association of nausea and vomiting with ingestion of fructose-containing foods and selectively avoid them.

Website with useful information for families: http://www.bu.edu/aldolase.

DISOr DEr S Of ENEr GY MEt AbOl ISM

The most common disorders of central mitochondrial energy metabolism are pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency and deficiencies of respiratory chain components. Disorders of the Krebs cycle include deficiencies in fumarase, 2-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase, and succinyl-CoA ligase. In many, but not in all, patients lactate is elevated in either blood or CSF. In pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency, the lactate-pyruvate ratio is normal, whereas in respiratory chain disorders the ratio is often increased. Care must be taken to distinguish an elevated lactate level that is due to these conditions (called primary lactic acidoses) from elevated lactate that is a consequence of hypoxia, ischemia, or sampling problems. Table 36–1 lists some causes of primary lactic acidosis.

Table 36–1. Causes of primary lactic acidosis in childhood.

Defects of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex
E_1 (pyruvate decarboxylase) deficiency
E_2 (dihydrolipoyl transacetylase) deficiency
E_3 (lipoamide dehydrogenase) deficiency
E_3-binding protein Xdeficiency
Pyruvate decarboxylase phosphate phosphatase deficiency
Thiamine pyrophosphokinase deficiency
Disorders of lipoate biosynthesis
Mitochondrial pyruvate carrier
Abnormalities of gluconeogenesis
Pyruvate carboxylase deficiency
Isolated
Biotinidase deficiency
Holocarboxylase synthetase deficiency
Fructose-1,6-diphosphatase deficiency
Glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency (von Gierke disease)
Defects in the mitochondrial respiratory chain
Complex I deficiency
Complex IV deficiency (cytochrome C oxidase deficiency; frequent cause of Leigh disease)
Complex V (ATPase) deficiency (frequent cause of Leigh disease)
Complex II deficiency
Complex III deficiency
Combined deficiencies: due to defects in mitochondrial DNA maintenance (deletions or depletion) or in mitochondrial translation (eg, mitochondrial tRNA defects)
Coenzyme Q10 deficiency
Other respiratory chain disorders
Defects in the Krebs cycle
Succinyl-CoA ligase deficiency

Patients with a defect in the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex often have agenesis of the corpus callosum or Leigh syndrome (lesions in the globus pallidus, dentate nucleus, and periaqueductal gray matter). They can have mild facial dysmorphism. Recurrent altered mental status, recurrent ataxia, and recurrent acidosis are typical of many disturbances of pyruvate metabolism. The most common genetic defect is in the X-linked $E_1\alpha$ component, with males carrying milder mutations and females carrying severe mutations leading to periventricular cystic brain lesions.

The respiratory chain disorders are frequent (1:5000) and involve a heterogenous group of genetic defects that produce a variety of clinical syndromes (now > 50) of varying severity and presentation. The disorders can affect multiple organs. The following set of symptoms (not intended as a comprehensive listing) can indicate a respiratory chain disorder:

1. General: Failure to thrive
2. Brain: Progressive neurodegeneration, Leigh syndrome, myoclonic seizures, brain atrophy, movement disorders, cerebellar atrophy, and subcortical leukodystrophy
3. Eye: Optic neuropathy, retinitis pigmentosa, progressive external ophthalmoplegia, and cataracts
4. Ears: Nerve deafness
5. Muscle: Myopathy with decreased endurance or rhabdomyolysis
6. Kidney: Renal Fanconi syndrome, proteinuria (in CoQ deficiency)
7. Endocrine: Diabetes mellitus and hypoparathyroidism
8. Intestinal: Pancreatic or liver insufficiency or pseudoobstruction
9. Heart: Cardiomyopathy, conduction defects, and arrhythmias

Respiratory chain disorders are among the more common causes of static, progressive, or self-limited neurodevelopmental problems in children. Patients may present with nonspecific findings such as hypotonia, failure to thrive, or renal tubular acidosis, or with more specific features such as ophthalmoplegia or cardiomyopathy. Symptoms are often combined in recognizable clinical syndromes with ties to specific genetic causes. Ragged red fibers and mitochondrial abnormalities may be noted on histologic examination of muscle. Thirteen of the more than 100 genes that control activity of the respiratory chain are part of the mitochondrial genome. Therefore, inheritance of defects in the respiratory chain may be mendelian or maternal.

» Diagnosis

Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency is diagnosed by enzyme assay in leukocytes or fibroblasts. Confirmation can be obtained by molecular analysis. Diagnosis of respiratory chain disorders is based on a convergence of clinical, biochemical, morphologic, enzymatic, and molecular data. Classic pathologic features of mitochondrial disorders are the accumulation of mitochondria, which produces ragged red fibers in skeletal muscle biopsy, and abnormal mitochondrial shapes and inclusions inside mitochondria on electron microscopy. However, these findings are only present in 5% of children. Enzyme analysis on skeletal muscle or liver tissue is complicated by an overlap between normal and affected range. Blue native polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) analyzes the assembly of the respiratory chain enzyme complexes. Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) analysis in blood or tissue may identify a diagnostic mutation. A rapidly increasing number of nuclear genes (now > 300) causing respiratory chain defects are recognized. Children with defects in mtDNA maintenance (such as mtDNA polymerase γ, POLG1 gene) often present with liver disease and neurodegeneration and are diagnosed by sequencing the causative nuclear genes. Next-generation sequencing of panels of genes or exome sequencing is increasingly used due to the large number of genes involved, but functional testing is often required for confirmation of the pathogenicity of identified mutations. Although diagnostic criteria have been published, the cause of respiratory chain defects still cannot be defined in many patients. In some instances, the genetics and prognosis may be clear, but in many cases neither prognosis nor genetic risk can be predicted. Because of the high complexity of this group of disorders, many patients require a high degree of expertise and multiple studies to arrive at a final diagnosis.

» Treatment

A ketogenic diet is useful in pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency. In rare patients with primary coenzyme Q deficiency, coenzyme Q treatment is very effective. Other treatments are of theoretical value, with little data on efficacy. Thiamine and lipoic acid have been tried in patients with pyruvate dehydrogenase complex deficiencies, and coenzyme Q and riboflavin have been helpful in some patients with respiratory chain defects. Dichloroacetic acid has limited clinical response in pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency and has adverse effects. Avoidance of catabolism and of medications that impair mitochondrial function is an important component of treating patients with respiratory chain defects. Transcriptional upregulation in partial deficiencies of nuclear origin and new antioxidants such as EPI-743 offer new hope for the treatment of respiratory chain defects.

Baertling F et al: A guide to diagnosis and treatment of Leigh syndrome. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2014;85(3):257 [PMID: 23772060].

D'Amico A, Bertini E: Metabolic neuropathies and myopathies. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1437 [PMID: 23622366].

Delonlay P, Rötig A, Sarnat HB: Respiratory chain deficiencies. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1651 [PMID: 23622386].
De Meirleir L: Disorders of pyruvate metabolism. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1667 [PMID: 23622387].
El-Hattab AW, Scaglia F: Mitochondrial DNA depletion syndromes: a review and updates of genetic basis, manifestations, and therapeutic options. Neurotherapeutics 2013;10(2):186 [PMID: 23385875].
Goldstein AC, Bhatia P, Vento JM: Mitochondrial disease in childhood: nuclear encoded. Neurotherapeutics 2013;10(2):212 [PMID: 23516041].
Liang C, Ahmad K, Sue CM: The broadening spectrum of mitochondrial disease: shifts in the diagnostic paradigm. Biochim Biophys Acta 2014;1840(4):1360 [PMID: 24239706].
Menezes MJ, Riley LG, Christodoulou J: Mitochondrial respiratory chain disorders in childhood: insights into diagnosis and management in the new era of genomic medicine. Biochim Biophys Acta 2014;1840(4):1368 [PMID: 24380876].
Milone M, Wong LJ: Diagnosis of mitochondrial myopathies. Mol Genet Metab 2013;110(1-2):35 [PMID: 23911206].
Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.umdf.org.
Rahman S: Gastrointestinal and hepatic manifestations of mitochondrial disorders. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(4):659 [PMID: 23674168].
Saneto RP, Sedensky MM: Mitochondrial disease in childhood: mtDNA encoded. Neurotherapeutics 2013;10(2):199 [PMID: 23224691].

DISOr DEr S Of AMINO ACID MEt AbOl ISM

DISORDERS OF THE UREA CYCLE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Typical presentation is infantile encephalopathy; later onset presentations are common with cyclic vomiting or encephalopathy with illness or protein load.

» Diagnosis is suspected with the finding of hyperammonemia frequently with minimal other laboratory findings.

Ammonia is derived from the catabolism of amino acids and is converted to an amino group in urea by enzymes of the urea cycle. Patients with severe defects (often those enzymes early in the urea cycle) usually present in infancy with severe hyperammonemia, vomiting, and encephalopathy, which is rapidly fatal. Patients with milder genetic defects may present with vomiting, encephalopathy, or liver failure after increased protein ingestion or infection. Although defects in argininosuccinic acid synthetase (citrullinemia) and argininosuccinic acid lyase (argininosuccinic acidemia) may cause severe hyperammonemia in infancy, the usual clinical course is chronic with mental retardation. Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency is X-linked; the others are autosomal recessive. Age at onset of symptoms varies with residual enzyme activity, protein intake, growth, and stresses such as infection. Even within a family, males with ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency may differ by decades in the age of symptom onset. Many female carriers of ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency have protein intolerance. Some develop migraine-like symptoms after protein loads, and others develop potentially fatal episodes of vomiting and encephalopathy after protein ingestion, infections, or in the postpartum period. Trichorrhexis nodosa is common in patients with argininosuccinic aciduria.

» Diagnosis

Blood ammonia should be measured in any acutely ill newborn in whom a cause is not obvious. In urea cycle defects, early hyperammonemia is associated with hyperventilation and respiratory alkalosis. Plasma citrulline is low or undetectable in carbamoyl phosphate synthetase and ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency, high in argininosuccinic acidemia, and very high in citrullinemia. Large amounts of argininosuccinic acid are found in the urine of patients with argininosuccinic acidemia. Urine orotic acid is increased in infants with ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency. Prenatal diagnosis is most commonly done by molecular methods, but citrullinemia and argininosuccinic acidemia can also be diagnosed in utero by appropriate enzyme assays in uncultured chorionic villus sample (CVS) material or in amniocytes. Other causes of severe neonatal hyperammonemia, which have a different prognosis and treatment, include: liver failure; blood shunting to bypass the liver as seen in transient hyperammonemia of the neonate; and the metabolic disorders pyruvate carboxylase deficiency and mitochondrial carbonic anhydrase deficiency.

» Treatment

During treatment of acute hyperammonemic crisis, protein intake should be stopped, and glucose and lipids should be given to reduce endogenous protein breakdown from catabolism. Careful administration of essential amino acids facilitates protein anabolism. Arginine is given intravenously. It is an essential amino acid for patients with urea cycle defects and increases the excretion of waste nitrogen in citrullinemia and argininosuccinic acidemia. Sodium benzoate and sodium phenylacetate are given intravenously to increase excretion of nitrogen as hippuric acid and phenylacetylglutamine. Additionally, hemodialysis or hemofiltration is indicated for severe or persistent hyperammonemia, as is usually the case in the newborn. Peritoneal dialysis and exchange transfusion are ineffective. Long-term treatment includes low-protein diet, oral administration of arginine

or citrulline, and sodium benzoate or sodium phenylbutyrate (a prodrug of sodium phenylacetate). Symptomatic heterozygous female carriers of ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency should also receive such treatment. Liver transplantation may be curative and is indicated for patients with severe disorders.

The outcome of urea cycle disorders depends on the genetic severity of the condition (residual activity) and the severity and prompt treatment of hyperammonemic episodes. Brain damage depends on the duration and the degree of elevation of ammonia and glutamine. Many patients with urea cycle defects, no matter what the enzyme defect, develop permanent neurologic and intellectual impairments, with cortical atrophy and ventricular dilation seen on computed tomographic scan. Rapid identification and treatment of the initial hyperammonemic episode is critical in improving outcome.

Ah Mew N, Krivitzky L, McCarter R, Batshaw M, Tuchman M; Urea Cycle Disorders Consortium of the Rare Disease Clinical Research Network: Clinical outcomes of neonatal onset proximal versus distal urea cycle disorders do not differ. J Pediatr 2013;162(2):324 [PMID: 22901741].

Braissant O, McLin VA, Cudalbu C: Ammonia toxicity to the brain. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(4):595 [PMID: 23109059].

Häberle J, et al: Suggested guidelines for the diagnosis and management of urea cycle disorders. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2012;7:32 [PMID: 22642880].

Hoffmann GF, Kölker S: Defects in amino acid catabolism and the urea cycle. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1755 [PMID: 23622399].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.nucdf.org.

Rüegger CM et al: Cross-sectional observational study of 208 patients with non-classical urea cycle disorders. J Inherit Metab Dis 2014;37(1):21 [PMID: 23780642].

Urea Cycle Disorders Consortium: http://rarediseasesnetwork.epi.usf.edu/ucdc/about/index.htm.

PHENYLKETONURIA & THE HYPERPHENYLALANINEMIAS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Mental retardation, hyperactivity, seizures, light complexion, and eczema characterize untreated patients.
- Newborn screening for elevated plasma phenylalanine identifies most infants.
- Disorders of cofactor metabolism also produce elevated plasma phenylalanine level.
- Early diagnosis and treatment with phenylalanine-restricted diet prevents mental retardation.

Probably the best-known disorder of amino acid metabolism is the classic form of phenylketonuria caused by decreased activity of phenylalanine hydroxylase, the enzyme that converts phenylalanine to tyrosine. In classic phenylketonuria, there is little or no phenylalanine hydroxylase activity. In the less severe hyperphenylalaninemia there may be significant residual activity. Rare variants can be due to deficiency of dihydropteridine reductase or defects in biopterin synthesis.

Phenylketonuria is an autosomal recessive trait, with an incidence in Caucasians of approximately 1:10,000 live births. On a normal neonatal diet, affected patients develop hyperphenylalaninemia. Patients with untreated phenylketonuria exhibit severe mental retardation, hyperactivity, seizures, a light complexion, and eczema.

Success in preventing severe mental retardation in phenylketonuric children by restricting phenylalanine starting in early infancy led to screening programs to detect the disease early. Because the outcome is best when treatment is begun in the first month of life, infants should be screened during the first few days. A second test is necessary when newborn screening is done before 24 hours of age, and should be completed by the third week of life.

» Diagnosis & Treatment

The diagnosis of phenylketonuria is based on finding elevated plasma phenylalanine and an elevated phenylalanine/tyrosine ratio in a child on a normal diet. The condition must be differentiated from other causes of hyperphenylalaninemia by examining pterins in urine and dihydropteridine reductase activity in blood. Determination of carrier status and prenatal diagnosis of phenylketonuria or pterin defects is possible using molecular methods.

A. Phenylalanine Hydroxylase Deficiency: Classic Phenylketonuria and Hyperphenylalaninemia

In phenylketonuria, plasma phenylalanine levels are persistently elevated above 1200 μM (20 mg/dL) on a regular diet, with normal or low plasma levels of tyrosine, and normal pterins. Poor phenylalanine tolerance persists throughout life. Treatment to decrease phenylalanine levels is always indicated. Hyperphenylalaninemia is diagnosed in infants whose plasma phenylalanine levels are usually 240–1200 μM (4–20 mg/dL), and pterins are normal while receiving a normal protein intake. Treatment to reduce phenylalanine levels is indicated if phenylalanine levels consistently exceed 360 μM (6 mg/dL). In contrast, in the rare case of transient hyperphenylalaninemia, plasma phenylalanine levels are elevated early but progressively decline toward normal. Dietary restriction is only temporary, if required at all.

Treatment of all forms of phenylketonuria is aimed at maintaining phenylalanine levels less than 360 μM (6 mg/dL). Treatment can consist of dietary restriction of phenylalanine,

increasing enzyme activity with pharmacologic doses of R-tetrahydrobiopterin, or new methods to interfere with phenylalaine absorption or to breakdown phenylalanine.

Dietary restriction of phenylalanine intake to amounts that permit normal growth and development is the most common therapy and results in good outcome if instituted in the first month of life and carefully maintained. Metabolic formulas deficient in phenylalanine are available but must be supplemented with normal milk and other foods to supply enough phenylalanine to permit normal growth and development. Plasma phenylalanine concentrations must be monitored frequently while ensuring that growth, development, and nutrition are adequate. This monitoring is best done in experienced clinics. Children with classic phenylketonuria who receive treatment promptly after birth and achieve phenylalanine and tyrosine homeostasis will develop well physically and can be expected to have normal or near-normal intellectual development.

Phenylalanine restriction should continue throughout life. Patients who discontinued diet after treatment for several years have developed subtle changes in intellect and behavior, and risk neurologic damage. Counseling should be given during adolescence particularly to girls about the risk of maternal phenylketonuria (see as follows), and women's diets should be monitored closely prior to conception and throughout pregnancy. Late treatment may still be of benefit in reversing behaviors such as hyperactivity, irritability, and distractibility, but it does not reverse the mental retardation.

Treatment with R-tetrahydrobiopterin results in improved phenylalanine tolerance in up to 50% of patients with a deficiency in phenylalanine hydroxylase. The best results and the most frequent responsiveness are seen in patients with hyperphenylalaninemia. Provision of high doses of large neutral amino acids results in a moderate reduction in phenylalanine and is used as an adjunctive treatment in some adults with phenylketonuria. Treatment trials with pegylated phenylalanine ammonia lyase administration to decrease phenylalanine levels show promise.

B. Biopterin Defects: Dihydropteridine Reductase Deficiency and Defects in Biopterin Biosynthesis

In these patients, plasma phenylalanine levels vary. The pattern of pterin metabolites is abnormal. Clinical findings include myoclonus, tetraplegia, dystonia, oculogyric crises, and other movement disorders. Seizures and psychomotor regression occur even with diet therapy, probably because the enzyme defect also causes neuronal deficiency of serotonin and dopamine. These deficiencies require treatment with levodopa, carbidopa, 5-hydroxytryptophan, and folinic acid. Tetrahydrobiopterin may be added for some biopterin synthesis defects.

C. Tyrosinemia of the Newborn

Plasma phenylalanine levels are lower than those associated with phenylketonuria and are accompanied by marked hypertyrosinemia. Tyrosinemia of the newborn usually occurs in premature infants and is due to immaturity of 4-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid oxidase, resulting in increase in tyrosine and its precursor phenylalanine. The condition resolves spontaneously within 3 months, almost always without sequelae.

D. Maternal Phenylketonuria

Offspring of mothers with phenylketonuria may have transient hyperphenylalaninemia at birth. Elevated maternal phenylalanine during pregnancy causes mental retardation, microcephaly, growth retardation, and often congenital heart disease or other malformations in the offspring. The risk to the fetus is lessened considerably by maternal phenylalanine restriction with maintenance of phenylalanine levels below 360 μM (6 mg/dL) throughout pregnancy and optimally started before conception.

Keil S et al: Long-term follow-up and outcome of phenylketonuria patients on sapropterin: a retrospective study. Pediatrics 2013;131(6):e1881 [PMID: 23690520].

Opladen T, Hoffmann GF, Blau N: An international survey of patients with tetrahydrobiopterin deficiencies presenting with hyperphenylalaninemia. J Inherit Metab Dis 2012;35(6):963 [PMID: 22729819].

Patient and parent support group websites with useful information for families: http://www.pkunews.org, www.pkunetwork.org and www.npkua.org.

Prick BW, Hop WC, Duvekot JJ: Maternal phenylketonuria and hyperphenylalaninemia in pregnancy: pregnancy complications and neonatal sequelae in untreated and treated pregnancies. Am J Clin Nutr 2012;95(2):374 [PMID: 22205310].

Singh RH, et al: Recommendations for the nutrition management of phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency. Genet Med 2014;16(2):121 [PMID: 24385075].

Vockley J, et al: Phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency: diagnosis and management guideline. Genet Med 2014;16(2):188 [PMID: 24385074].

HEREDITARY TYROSINEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Consider in a child presenting with liver disease with or without accompanying renal disease or bone disease.
- Elevated urinary succinylacetone is diagnostic of tyrosinemia, type 1.

Type I hereditary tyrosinemia is an autosomal recessive condition caused by deficiency of fumarylacetoacetase. It presents with acute or progressive hepatic parenchymal damage with elevated α-fetoprotein, renal tubular dysfunction with generalized aminoaciduria, hypophosphatemic rickets, or neuronopathic crises. Tyrosine and methionine are increased in blood and tyrosine metabolites and δ-aminolevulinic acid in urine. The key diagnostic metabolite is elevated succinylacetone in urine. Liver failure may be rapidly fatal in infancy or somewhat more chronic, with a high incidence of liver cell carcinoma in long-term survivors. Tyrosinemia type II presents with corneal ulcers and keratotic lesions on palms and soles and very high plasma tyrosine levels (> 600 μM), and patients with tyrosinemia type III can also have developmental delays and ataxia.

» Diagnosis

Similar clinical and biochemical findings may occur in other liver diseases such as galactosemia and hereditary fructose intolerance. Increased succinylacetone occurs only in fumarylacetoacetase deficiency and is diagnostic, and is increasingly used in newborn screening. Diagnosis is confirmed by mutation analysis or by enzyme assay in liver tissue. Prenatal diagnosis is possible. Tyrosinemia type II and type III are diagnosed by molecular methods.

» Treatment

A diet low in phenylalanine and tyrosine ameliorates liver disease, but it does not prevent carcinoma development. Pharmacologic therapy to inhibit the upstream enzyme 4-hydroxyphenylpyruvate dehydrogenase using 2-(2-nitro-4-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)-1,3-cyclohexanedione (NTBC) decreases the production of toxic metabolites, maleylacetoacetate and fumarylacetoacetate. It improves the liver disease and renal disease, prevents acute neuronopathic attacks, and greatly reduces the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver transplantation is effective therapy. Tyrosinemia types II and III respond well to dietary tyrosine restriction.

de Laet C et al: Recommendations for the management of tyrosinaemia type 1. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2013;8:8 [PMID: 23311542].

Larochelle J et al: Effect of nitisinone (NTBC) treatment on the clinical course of hepatorenal tyrosinemia in Québec. Mol Genet Metab 2012;107(1–2):49 [PMID: 22885033].

Thimm E et al: Neurocognitive outcome in patients with hypertyrosinemia type I after long-term treatment with NTBC. J Inherit Metab Dis 2012;35(2);263 [PMID: 22069142].

MAPLE SYRUP URINE DISEASE (BRANCHED-CHAIN KETOACIDURIA)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Typical presentation is infantile encephalopathy.
- Diagnosis suspected with elevated plasma branched chain amino acids plus alloisoleucine.

Maple syrup urine disease is due to deficiency of the enzyme that catalyzes the oxidative decarboxylation of the branched-chain keto acid derivatives of leucine, isoleucine, and valine. Accumulated keto acids of leucine and isoleucine cause the characteristic sweet odor. Only leucine and its corresponding keto acid have been implicated in causing central nervous system (CNS) dysfunction. Many variants of this disorder have been described, including mild, intermittent, and thiamine-dependent forms. All are autosomal recessive traits.

Patients with classic maple syrup urine disease are normal at birth, but after about 1 week they develop feeding difficulties, coma, and seizures. Unless diagnosis is made and dietary restriction of branched-chain amino acids is begun, most will die in the first month of life. Nearly normal growth and development may be achieved if treatment is begun before about age 10 days, which is facilitated by newborn screening.

» Diagnosis

Amino acid analysis shows marked elevation of branched-chain amino acids including alloisoleucine, a diagnostic transamination product of the keto acid of isoleucine. Urine organic acids demonstrate the characteristic keto acids. The magnitude and consistency of metabolite changes are altered in mild and intermittent forms. Prenatal diagnosis is possible by enzyme assay in cultured amniocytes or chorionic villi, and by molecular analysis if the mutation is known.

» Treatment

Dietary leucine restriction and avoidance of catabolism are the cornerstones of treatment. Infant formulas deficient in branched-chain amino acids must be supplemented with normal foods to supply enough branched-chain amino acids to permit normal growth. Plasma levels of branched-chain amino acids must be monitored frequently to deal with changing protein requirements. Acute episodes must be aggressively treated to prevent catabolism and negative nitrogen balance. Very high leucine levels require hemodialysis. Liver transplantation corrects the disorder.

Knerr I, Weinhold N, Vockley J, Gibson KM: Advances and challenges in the treatment of branched-chain amino/keto acid metabolic defects. J Inherit Metab Dis 2012;35(1):29 [PMID: 21290185].

Mazariegos GV et al: Liver transplantation for classical maple syrup urine disease: long-term follow-up in 37 patients and comparative United Network for Organ Sharing experience. J Pediatr 2012;160(1):116 [PMID: 21839471].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.msud-support.org.

Sitta A, Ribas GS, Mescka CP, Barschak AG, Wajner M, Vargas CR: Neurological damage in MSUD: the role of oxidative stress. Cell Mol Neurobiol 2014;34(2):157 [PMID: 24220995].

HOMOCYSTINURIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Consider in a child of any age with a marfanoid habitus, dislocated lenses, or thrombosis.
- Diagnosis is suggested by elevated total homocysteine and methionine.
- Newborn screening allows early diagnosis and treatment resulting in a normal outcome.

Homocystinuria is most often due to deficiency of cystathionine β-synthase (CBS), but may also be due to deficiency of methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) or to defects in the biosynthesis of methyl-B_{12}, the coenzyme for methionine synthase. All inherited forms of homocystinuria are autosomal recessive traits.

About 50% of patients with untreated CBS deficiency are mentally retarded, and most have arachnodactyly, osteoporosis, and a tendency to develop dislocated lenses and thromboembolic phenomena. Mild variants of CBS deficiency present with thromboembolic events. Patients with severe remethylation defects usually exhibit failure to thrive and a variety of neurologic symptoms, including brain atrophy, microcephaly, hydrocephalus, and seizures in infancy and early childhood.

» Diagnosis

Diagnosis is made by demonstrating elevated total serum homocysteine or by identifying homocystinuria in a patient who is not severely deficient in vitamin B_{12}. Plasma methionine levels are usually high in patients with CBS deficiency and often low in patients with remethylation defects. Cystathionine levels are low in CBS deficiency. When the remethylation defect is due to deficiency of methyl-B_{12}, megaloblastic anemia or hemolytic uremic syndrome may be present and an associated deficiency of adenosyl-B_{12} may cause methylmalonic aciduria. Mutation analysis or studies of cultured fibroblasts can make a specific diagnosis.

» Treatment

About 50% of patients with CBS deficiency respond to large oral doses of pyridoxine. Pyridoxine nonresponders are treated with dietary methionine restriction and oral administration of betaine, which increases methylation of homocysteine to methionine and improves neurologic function. Early treatment prevents mental retardation, lens dislocation, and thromboembolic manifestations, which justifies the screening of newborn infants. Large doses of vitamin B_{12} (eg, 1–5 mg hydroxocobalamin administered daily intramuscularly or subcutaneously) are indicated in some patients with defects in cobalamin metabolism.

Diekman EF, de Koning TJ, Verhoeven-Duif NM, Rovers MM, van Hasselt PM: Survival and psychomotor development with early betaine treatment in patients with severe methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase deficiency. JAMA Neurol 2014;71(2):188 [PMID: 2432304].

Mudd SH: Hypermethioninemias of genetic and non-genetic origin: a review. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 2011;157:3 [PMID: 21308989].

Schiff M, Blom HJ: Treatment of inherited homocystinurias. Neuropediatrics 2012;43(6):295 [PMID: 23124942].

NONKETOTIC HYPERGLYCINEMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Severely affected newborns present with apnea, hypotonia, lethargy, myoclonic seizures, and hiccups and develop severe mental and motor retardation.
- Mildly affected children have developmental delay, hyperactivity, mild chorea, and seizures.
- Electroencephalography (EEG) shows burst suppression.
- CSF glycine is elevated.

Inherited deficiency of various subunits of the glycine cleavage enzyme causes nonketotic hyperglycinemia, also called glycine encephalopathy. Glycine accumulation in the brain may disturb neurotransmission of the glycinergic receptors and the N-methyl-D-aspartate type of glutamate receptor. In its most severe form, the condition presents in the newborn as hypotonia, lethargy proceeding to coma, myoclonic seizures, and hiccups, with a burst suppression pattern on EEG. Respiratory depression may require ventilator assistance in the first 2 weeks, followed by spontaneous recovery. Patients

develop severe mental retardation and therapy-resistant seizures. Some patients have agenesis of the corpus callosum or posterior fossa malformations. All patients have restricted diffusion on MRI in the already myelinated long tracts at birth. Some patients with an attenuated form present with seizures, varying developmental delay, and chorea, and half of these may present later in infancy or in childhood. All forms of the condition are autosomal recessive.

» Diagnosis

Nonketotic hyperglycinemia should be suspected in any neonate or infant with seizures, particularly those with burst suppression pattern on EEG. Diagnosis is confirmed by demonstrating a large increase in glycine in nonbloody CSF, with an abnormally high ratio of CSF glycine to plasma glycine. Molecular analysis is diagnostic in more than 98% of cases. Variant cases are caused by defects in biosynthesis of the cofactor lipoate. Enzyme analysis on liver tissue can confirm the diagnosis. Prenatal diagnosis is possible by molecular analysis if both mutations are known or by enzyme assay on uncultured CVS.

» Treatment

In patients with mild disease, treatment with sodium benzoate (to normalize plasma glycine levels) and dextromethorphan or ketamine (to block N-methyl-D-aspartate type of glutamate receptors) controls seizures and improves outcome. Treatment of severely affected patients is generally unsuccessful. High-dose benzoate therapy can aid in seizure control but does not prevent severe mental retardation. Ketogenic diet reduces glycine levels, but the impact on outcome is very limited.

Hennermann JB, Berger JM, Grieben U, Scharer G, Van Hove JL: Prediction of long-term outcome in glycine encephalopathy: a clinical survey. J Inherit Metab Dis 2012;35(2);253 [PMID: 22002442].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.nkh-network.org.

Swanson MA et al.: Biochemical and molecular predictors for prognosis in nonketotic hyperglycinemia. Ann Neurol 2015;78(4):606–618 [PMID: 26179960].

ORGANIC ACIDEMIAS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Consider in any child presenting with metabolic acidosis and ketosis in early infancy.
- Urine organic acid analysis is usually diagnostic.

Organic acidemias are disorders of amino and fatty acid metabolism in which nonamino organic acids accumulate in serum and urine. These conditions are usually diagnosed by examining organic acids in urine, a complex procedure that requires considerable interpretive expertise and is usually performed only in specialized laboratories. Table 36–2 lists the clinical features of organic acidemias, together with the urine organic acid patterns typical of each. Additional details about some of the more important organic acidemias are provided in the sections that follow.

PROPIONIC & METHYLMALONIC ACIDEMIA (KETOTIC HYPERGLYCINEMIAS)

The oxidation of threonine, valine, methionine, and isoleucine results in propionyl-CoA, which propionyl-CoA carboxylase converts into L-methylmalonyl-CoA, which is metabolized through methylmalonyl-CoA mutase to succinyl-CoA. Gut bacteria and the breakdown of odd-chain-length fatty acids also substantially contribute to propionyl-CoA production. Propionic acidemia is due to a defect in the biotin-containing enzyme propionyl-CoA carboxylase, and methylmalonic aciduria is due to a defect in methylmalonyl-CoA mutase, in either the mutase apoenzyme or in defects of its cofactor, adenosyl-B_{12} coenzyme. Some disorders of intracellular vitamin B_{12} metabolism affect only the synthesis of adenosyl-B_{12} (Cbl A, B, or D), whereas in others (Cbl C, D, F, J, X), the synthesis of methyl-B_{12} is also blocked, and hence homocysteine is also elevated in blood in addition to methylmalonic acid.

Clinical symptoms vary according to the location and severity of the enzyme block. Children with severe blocks present with acute, life-threatening metabolic ketoacidosis, hyperammonemia, coma, and bone marrow depression in early infancy or with metabolic acidosis, vomiting, and failure to thrive during the first few months of life. Most patients with severe disease have mild or moderate mental retardation. Late complications include pancreatitis, cardiomyopathy, basal ganglia stroke, and most commonly in methylmalonic aciduria, interstitial nephritis.

All forms of propionic and methylmalonic acidemia are autosomal recessive traits (except for X-linked Cbl X) and can be diagnosed in utero.

» Diagnosis

Laboratory findings consist of increases in urinary organic acids derived from propionyl-CoA or methylmalonic acid (see Table 36–2). Hyperglycinemia can be present. In some forms of abnormal vitamin B_{12} metabolism, homocysteine can be elevated. Confirmation is by molecular analysis or by assays in fibroblasts.

Table 36–2. Clinical and laboratory features of organic acidemias.

Disorder	Enzyme Defect	Clinical and Laboratory Features
Isovaleric academia	Isovaleryl-CoA dehydrogenase	Acidosis and odor of sweaty feet in infancy, or growth retardation and episodes of vomiting, lethargy, and acidosis. Persistent isovalerylglycine and intermittent 3-hydroxyisovaleric acid in urine.
3-Methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency	3-Methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase	Usually asymptomatic. Acidosis and feeding problems in infancy, or Reye-like episodes in older child. 3-Methylcrotonylglycine and 3-hydroxyisovaleric acid in urine.
Combined carboxylase deficiency	Holocarboxylase synthetase	Hypotonia and lactic acidosis in infancy. 3-Hydroxyisovaleric acid in urine, often with small amounts of 3-hydroxypropionic and methylcitric acids. Often biotin-responsive.
Biotinidase deficiency	Biotinidase	Alopecia, seborrheic rash, seizures, and ataxia in infancy or childhood. Urine organic acids as above. Always biotin-responsive.
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaric acidemia	3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-CoA lyase	Hypoglycemia and acidosis in infancy; Reye-like episodes with nonketotic hypoglycemia or leukodystrophy in older children. 3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaric, 3-methylglutaconic, and 3-hydroxyisovaleric acids in urine.
3-Ketothiolase deficiency	3-Ketothiolase	Episodes of vomiting, severe metabolic acidosis (hyperketosis), and encephalopathy. 2-Methyl-3-hydroxybutyric and 2-methylacetoacetic acids and tiglylglycine in urine, especially after isoleucine load.
Propionic acidemia	Propionyl-CoA carboxylase	Hyperammonemia and metabolic acidosis in infancy; ketotic hyperglycinemia syndrome later. 3-Hydroxypropionic and methylcitric acids in urine, with 3-hydroxy- and 3-ketovaleric acids during ketotic episodes.
Methylmalonic academia	Methylmalonyl-CoA mutase	Clinical features same as in propionic acidemia. Methylmalonic acid in urine, often with 3-hydroxypropionic and methylcitric acids.
	Defects in vitamin B_{12} biosynthesis	Clinical features same as above when only adenosyl-B_{12} synthesis is decreased; early neurologic features prominent when accompanied by decreased synthesis of methyl-B_{12}. In latter instance, hypomethioninemia and homocystinuria accompany methylmalonic aciduria.
Pyroglutamic acidemia	Glutathione synthetase	Acidosis and hemolytic anemia in infancy; chronic acidosis later. Pyroglutamic acid in urine.
Glutaric acidemia type I	Glutaryl-CoA dehydrogenase	Progressive extrapyramidal movement disorder in childhood, with episodes of acidosis, vomiting, and encephalopathy. Glutaric acid and 3-hydroxyglutaric acid in serum and urine.
Glutaric acidemia type II	ETF:ubiquinone oxidoreductase (ETF dehydrogenase) and ETF	Hypoglycemia, acidosis, hyperammonemia, and odor of sweaty feet in infancy, often with polycystic and dysplastic kidneys. Later onset may be with episodes of hypoketotic hypoglycemia, liver dysfunction, or slowly progressive skeletal myopathy. Glutaric, ethylmalonic, 3-hydroxyisovaleric, isovalerylglycine, and 2-hydroxyglutaric acids in urine, often with sarcosine in serum.
4-Hydroxybutyric acidemia	Succinic semialdehyde dehydrogenase	Seizures, ataxia, and developmental retardation. 4-Hydroxybutyric acid in urine.

CoA, coenzyme A; ETF, electron transfer flavoprotein.

Treatment

Patients with enzyme blocks in B_{12} metabolism usually respond to pharmacologic doses of vitamin B_{12} given subcutaneously or intramuscularly. Vitamin B_{12} nonresponsive methylmalonic acidemia and propionic acidemia require amino acid restriction, strict prevention of catabolism, and carnitine supplementation to enhance propionylcarnitine excretion. Intermittent metronidazole can help reduce the propionate load from the gut. In the acute setting, hemodialysis or hemofiltration may be needed. Combined liver-renal transplantation is an option for patients with renal insufficiency, and liver transplantation has shown promise for patients with life-threatening cardiomyopathy.

Baumgartner MR et al: Proposed guidelines for the diagnosis and management of methylmalonic and propionic acidemia. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2014;9:130 [PMID: 25205257].

Grünert SC et al: Propionic acidemia: clinical course and outcome in 55 pediatric and adolescent patients. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2013;8:6 [PMID: 23305374].

Kölker S, Burgard P, Sauer SW, Okun JG: Current concepts in organic acidurias: understanding intra- and extracerebral disease manifestation. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(4):635 [PMID: 23512157].

Nizon M, et al: Long-term neurological outcome of a cohort of 80 patients with classical organic acidurias. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2013;8:148 [PMID: 24059531].

Patient and parent support group websites with useful information for families: http://www.oaanews.org and www.pafoundation.com.

CARBOXYLASE DEFICIENCY

Isolated pyruvate carboxylase deficiency presents with lactic acidosis and hyperammonemia in early infancy. Even if biochemically stabilized, the neurologic outcome is dismal. Isolated 3-methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency is frequently recognized on newborn screening using acylcarnitine analysis. It is usually a benign condition that sometimes causes symptoms of acidosis and neurologic depression. All carboxylases require biotin as a cofactor. Holocarboxylase synthetase covalently binds biotin to the apocarboxylases for pyruvate, 3-methylcrotonyl-CoA, and propionyl-CoA; biotinidase releases biotin from these proteins and from proteins in the diet. Recessively inherited deficiency of either enzyme causes deficiency of all three carboxylases (ie, multiple carboxylase deficiency). Patients with holocarboxylase synthetase deficiency usually present as neonates with hypotonia, skin problems, and massive acidosis. Those with biotinidase deficiency present later with a syndrome of ataxia, seizures, seborrhea, and alopecia. Untreated patients can develop mental retardation, hearing loss, and optic nerve atrophy. Newborn screening is justified because the neurologic sequelae of the disorder in many patients are preventable if treated early.

Diagnosis

This diagnosis should be considered in patients with typical symptoms or in those with primary lactic acidosis. Urine organic acids are usually but not always abnormal (see Table 36–2). Diagnosis is made by enzyme assay of carboxylase activities in fibroblasts or leucocytes. Biotinidase can be assayed in serum, and holocarboxylase synthetase in leukocytes or fibroblasts.

Treatment

Oral administration of pharmacologic doses of biotin reverses the organic aciduria within days and the clinical symptoms within days to weeks. Hearing loss can occur in patients with profound biotinidase deficiency despite treatment.

Arnold GL et al: Outcome of infants diagnosed with 3-methylcrotonyl-CoA-carboxylase deficiency by newborn screening. Mol Genet Metab 2012;106(4):439 [PMID: 22658692].

Tong L: Structure and function of biotin-dependent carboxylases. Cell Mol Life Sci 2013;70(5):863 [PMID: 22869039].

Wolf B: Biotinidase deficiency: "If you have to have an inherited metabolic disease, this is the one to have". Genet Med 2012;14(6):565 [PMID: 22241090].

GLUTARIC ACIDEMIA TYPE I

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Suspect in children with acute basal ganglia necrosis, macrocrania with subdural bleeds, and acute or progressive dystonia.
- Presymptomatic diagnosis by newborn screening and treatment reduces the incidence of acute encephalopathic crises.

Glutaric acidemia type I is due to deficiency of glutaryl-CoA dehydrogenase. Patients have frontotemporal atrophy with enlarged sylvian fissures and macrocephaly. Sudden or chronic neuronal degeneration in the caudate and putamen causes an extrapyramidal movement disorder in childhood with dystonia and athetosis. Children with glutaric acidemia type I may present with retinal hemorrhages and intracranial bleeding, and may thus be falsely considered victims of child abuse. Severely debilitated children often die in the first decade, but many patients have had only mild neurologic abnormalities. Symptoms almost always develop in the first 6 years of life, which represents the vulnerable period. The condition is autosomal recessive and prenatal diagnosis is possible.

» Diagnosis

Glutaric acidemia type I should be suspected in patients with acute or progressive dystonia in the first 6 years of life. Magnetic resonance imaging of the brain is highly suggestive. The diagnosis is supported by finding glutaric, 3-hydroxyglutaric acid, and glutarylcarnitine in urine or serum or by finding two mutations in the GCDH gene. Demonstration of deficiency of glutaryl-CoA dehydrogenase in fibroblasts can confirm the diagnosis. Prenatal diagnosis is by mutation analysis, enzyme assay, or quantitative metabolite analysis in amniotic fluid.

» Treatment

Strict catabolism prevention during any intercurrent illness is critically important. Supplementation with large amounts of carnitine and provision of a lysine and tryptophan restricted diet reduces the risk of degeneration of the basal ganglia. Early diagnosis does not prevent neurologic disease in all patients, but it clearly reduces the risk, warranting newborn screening. Neurologic symptoms, once present, do not resolve. Symptomatic treatment of severe dystonia is important for affected patients.

Kölker S et al: Complementary dietary treatment using lysine-free, arginine-fortified amino acid supplements in glutaric aciduria type I—a decade of experience. Mol Genet Metab 2012; 107(1-2):72 [PMID: 22520952].

Kölker S et al: Diagnosis and management of glutaric aciduria type I—revised recommendations. J Inherit Metab Dis 2011;34(3):677 [PMID: 21431622].

Viau K, Ernst SL, Vanzo RJ, Botto LD, Pasquali M, Longo N: Glutaric acidemia type 1: outcomes before and after expanded newborn screening. Mol Genet Metab 2012;106(4):430 [PMID: 22728054].

o DISOr DEr S Of f At t Y ACID OXIDAt ION & CAr NIt INE

FATTY ACID OXIDATION DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Obtain an acylcarnitine profile for any child with hypoglycemia to evaluate for a fatty acid oxidation defect.
- Early diagnosis and treatment can prevent morbidity and mortality in affected children, and avoidance of prolonged fasting is of paramount importance for long-term management.

Deficiencies of very-long-chain and medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase (VLCAD, MCAD) and long-chain 3-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase (LCHAD), three enzymes of fatty acid β-oxidation, usually cause Reye-like episodes of hypoketotic hypoglycemia, mild hyperammonemia, hepatomegaly, and encephalopathy. Sudden death in infancy is a less common presentation. The long-chain defects, which also include carnitine palmitoyltransferase deficiency I and II and carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase deficiency, often also cause skeletal myopathy with hypotonia, episodic rhabdomyolysis, cardiomyopathy, and ventricular arrhythmias. Symptoms specific to LCHAD deficiency include progressive liver cirrhosis, peripheral neuropathy, and retinitis pigmentosa, and a high incidence of acute fatty liver of pregnancy or HELLP syndrome (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets) during pregnancy in mothers of affected infants. Mild carnitine palmitoyltransferase I deficiency may cause renal tubular acidosis and hypertriglyceridemia. MCAD deficiency is most common, occurring in perhaps 1:9000 live births. Reye-like episodes may be fatal or cause residual neurologic damage. Episodes tend to become less frequent and severe with time. After the diagnosis is made and treatment instituted, morbidity decreases and mortality is avoided in MCAD deficiency.

Short-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase (SCAD) deficiency is characterized by the presence of ethylmalonic acid in the urine. Most patients are asymptomatic. Glutaric acidemia type II results from defects in the transfer of electrons from fatty acid oxidation and some amino acid oxidation into the respiratory chain. Some patients with glutaric acidemia type II have a clinical presentation resembling MCAD deficiency. Patients with a severe neonatal presentation also have renal cystic disease and dysmorphic features. The least affected patients can present with late-onset myopathy and be riboflavin responsive. Some develop cardiomyopathy or leukodystrophy. Deficiency of the ketogenic enzyme 3-hydroxymethylglutaryl-CoA synthase presents with hypoketotic hypoglycemia. These conditions are autosomal recessive.

» Diagnosis

All disorders of fatty acid oxidation have reduced ketogenesis in response to fasting. The analysis of acylcarnitine esters is a first-line diagnostic test used in neonatal screening because it reveals diagnostic metabolites regardless of clinical status. A typical pattern can be recognized for each disorder; for instance, MCAD deficiency is characterized by elevated octanoylcarnitine. Some disorders have elevated acylglycine esters which can be identified on urine organic acids or on a specific quantitative analysis. Further confirmation can be obtained from molecular analysis or analysis of fatty acid oxidation in fibroblasts; enzyme assays are only rarely available.

Treatment

Management involves prevention of hypoglycemia by avoiding prolonged fasting (> 8–12 hours). This includes providing carbohydrate snacks before bedtime and vigorous treatment of fasting associated with intercurrent infections. Because fatty acid oxidation can be compromised by associated carnitine deficiency, young patients with MCAD deficiency usually receive oral carnitine when carnitine levels are low. Restriction of dietary long-chain fats is not necessary in MCAD deficiency but is required for severe VLCAD and LCHAD deficiencies. Medium-chain triglycerides are contraindicated in MCAD deficiency but are an essential energy source for patients with severe VLCAD and LCHAD deficiencies or carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase deficiency. Riboflavin may be beneficial in some patients with glutaric acidemia type II. Outcome in MCAD deficiency is excellent but is more guarded in patients with the other disorders.

Baruteau J et al: Clinical and biological features at diagnosis in mitochondrial fatty acid beta-oxidation defects: a French pediatric study of 187 patients. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(5):795 [PMID: 23053472].

Gessner BD, Gillingham MB, Wood T, Koeller DM: Association of a genetic variant of carnitine palmitoyltransferase 1A with infections in Alaska Native children. J Pediatr 2013;163(6):1716 [PMID: 23992672].

Joshi PR, Deschauer M, Zierz S: Carnitine palmitoyltransferase II (CPT II) deficiency: genotype-phenotype analysis of 50 patients. J Neurol Sci 2014;338(1–2):107 [PMID: 24398345].

Olpin SE: Pathophysiology of fatty acid oxidation disorders and resultant phenotypic variability. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(4):645 [PMID: 23674167].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.fodsupport.org.

Schiff M, Mohsen AW, Karunanidhi A, McCracken E, Yeasted R, Vockley J: Molecular and cellular pathology of very-long-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency. Mol Genet Metab 2013;109(1):21 [PMID: 23480858].

Tein I: Disorders of fatty acid oxidation. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1675 [PMID: 23622388].

CARNITINE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Primary carnitine deficiency manifests as cardiac disease including cardiomyopathy and sudden death or as hypoketotic hypoglycemia.
- Treatment of primary carnitine deficiency with carnitine improves outcome and prognosis.
- There are many causes of secondary carnitine deficiency.

Carnitine is an essential nutrient found in highest concentration in red meat. Its primary function is to transport long-chain fatty acids into mitochondria for oxidation. Primary defects of carnitine transport may manifest as Reye syndrome, cardiomyopathy, or skeletal myopathy with hypotonia. These disorders are rare compared with secondary carnitine deficiency, which may be due to diet (vegan diet, intravenous alimentation, or ketogenic diet), renal losses, drug therapy (especially valproic acid), and other metabolic disorders (especially disorders of fatty acid oxidation and organic acidemias). The prognosis depends on the cause of the carnitine abnormality. Primary carnitine deficiency is one of the most treatable causes of dilated cardiomyopathy in children.

Free and esterified carnitine can be measured in blood. If carnitine insufficiency is suspected, the patient should be evaluated to rule out disorders that might cause secondary carnitine deficiency.

Oral or intravenous L-carnitine is used in carnitine deficiency or insufficiency in doses of 25–100 mg/kg/d or higher. Treatment is aimed at maintaining normal carnitine levels. Carnitine supplementation in patients with some disorders of fatty acid oxidation and organic acidurias may also augment excretion of accumulated metabolites, although supplementation may not prevent metabolic crises in such patients.

Magoulas PL, El-Hattab AW: Systemic primary carnitine deficiency: an overview of clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management. Orphanet J Rare Dis 2012;7:68 [PMID: 22989098].

PURINE METABOLISM DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Lesch-Nyhan syndrome is classically described in boys with spasticity, dystonia, and self-mutilating behaviors.
- Urinary uric acid to creatinine ratio or urine succinylpurines are useful screening tests.

Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase is an enzyme that recycles the purine bases hypoxanthine and guanine to inosine monophosphate and guanosine monophosphate, respectively. Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase deficiency (Lesch-Nyhan syndrome) is an X-linked recessive disorder. The complete deficiency is characterized by CNS dysfunction and purine overproduction with hyperuricemia and hyperuricosuria. Depending on the residual activity of the mutant enzyme, male hemizygous individuals may be severely disabled by choreoathetosis, spasticity, and compulsive, mutilating lip and finger biting,

or they may have only gouty arthritis and urate ureterolithiasis. Adenylosuccinate lyase deficiency involves a defect in the synthesis of purines. Patients present with static mental retardation, hypotonia, and seizures.

» Diagnosis

Diagnosis of Lesch-Nyhan syndrome is made by demonstrating an elevated uric acid-creatinine ratio in urine, followed by demonstration of enzyme deficiency in red blood cells or fibroblasts or by molecular analysis. Screening for adenylosuccinate lyase deficiency is by measurement of succinylpurines in urine, with confirmation by further metabolite and molecular assays.

» Treatment

Hyperhydration and alkalinization are essential to prevent kidney stones and urate nephropathy. Allopurinol and probenecid may be given to reduce hyperuricemia and prevent gout but do not affect the neurologic status. Physical restraints are often more effective than neurologic medications for automutilation. No effective treatment exists for adenylosuccinate lyase deficiency.

Fu R, Chen CJ, Jinnah HA: Genotypic and phenotypic spectrum in attenuated variants of Lesch-Nyhan disease. Mol Genet Metab 2014;112(4):280 [PMID: 24930028].

Fu R, Sutcliffe D, Zhao H, Huang X, Schretlen DJ, Benkovic S, Jinnah HA: Clinical severity in Lesch-Nyhan disease: the role of residual enzyme and compensatory pathways. Mol Genet Metab 2014;Nov 8.pii:S1096–7192(14)00346–1 [epub ahead of print] [PMID: 25481104].

Kelley RE, Andersson HC: Disorders of purines and pyrimidines. Handb Clin Neurol 2014;120:827 [PMID: 24365355].

Patient and parent support group websites with useful information for families: http://lndnet.ning.com and http://www.lesch-nyhan.org.

1 YSOSOMA1 DISEASES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Lysosomal storage disorders may present clinically with multisystem involvement including hepatosplenomegaly, cardiac disease, and skeletal features, with or without neurologic involvement.
- Brain imaging, skeletal survey, and urinary mucopolysaccharide or oligosaccharide screen may be helpful initial screening studies; most diagnoses are made by enzyme assay.
- Therapy may be available for many of these previously untreatable disorders.

Lysosomes are cellular organelles in which complex macromolecules are degraded by specific acid hydrolases. Deficiency of a lysosomal enzyme causes its substrate to accumulate in the lysosomes, resulting in a characteristic clinical picture. These storage disorders are classified as mucopolysaccharidoses, lipidoses, or mucolipidoses, depending on the nature of the stored material. Two additional disorders, cystinosis and Salla disease, are caused by defects in lysosomal proteins that normally transport material from the lysosome to the cytoplasm. Table 36–3 lists clinical and laboratory features of these conditions. Most are inherited as autosomal recessive traits, and all can be diagnosed in utero.

» Diagnosis

The diagnosis of mucopolysaccharidosis is suggested by certain clinical and radiologic findings (dysostosis multiplex, which includes enlarged sella turcica, scaphocephaly, broad ribs, hook-shaped vertebrae [L1 and L2 most affected], and prominent pointing of the metacarpals and broad phalanges). Urine screening tests can detect increased mucopolysaccharides and further identify which specific mucopolysaccharides are present. Diagnosis must be confirmed by enzyme assays of leukocytes or cultured fibroblasts. Analysis of urinary oligosaccharides indicates a specific disorder prior to enzymatic testing. Lipidoses present with visceral symptoms or neurodegeneration. The pattern of the leukodystrophy associated with many lipidoses can indicate a specific condition. Diagnosis is made by appropriate enzyme assays of peripheral leukocytes or cultured skin fibroblasts. Molecular analysis is also available for most conditions.

» Treatment

Most conditions cannot be treated effectively, but new avenues have given hope in many conditions. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation can greatly improve the course of some lysosomal diseases and is first-line treatment in some, such as infantile Hurler syndrome. Several disorders are treated with infusions of recombinant modified enzyme. Treatment of Gaucher disease is very effective, and long-term data suggest excellent outcome. Similar treatments have been developed for Fabry disease, several mucopolysaccharidoses, Wolman, and Pompe disease. Substantial improvements in these conditions have been reported but with limitations. New avenues for treatment through substrate inhibition and chaperone therapy are being developed. Treatment of cystinosis with cysteamine results in depletion of stored cystine and prevention of complications including renal disease.

Baris HN, Cohen IJ, Mistry PK: Gaucher disease: the metabolic defect, pathophysiology, phenotypes and natural history. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):72 [PMID: 25345088].

Bennett MJ, Rakheja D: The neuronal ceroid-lipofuscinoses. Dev Disabil Res Rev 2013;17(3):254 [PMID: 23798013].

Table 36–3. Clinical and laboratory features of lysosomal storage diseases.

Disorder	Enzyme Defect	Clinical and Laboratory Features	Available Therapies
I. Mucopolysaccharidoses			
Hurler syndrome	α-Iduronidase	Autosomal recessive. Mental retardation, hepatomegaly, umbilical hernia, coarse facies, corneal clouding, dorsolumbar gibbus, severe heart disease. Heparan sulfate and dermatan sulfate in urine.	HSCT ERT
Scheie syndrome	α-Iduronidase (incomplete)	Autosomal recessive. Corneal clouding, stiff joints, normal intellect. Clinical types intermediate between Hurler and Scheie common. Heparan sulfate and dermatan sulfate in urine.	ERT
Hunter syndrome	Sulfoiduronate sulfatase	X-linked recessive. Coarse facies, hepatomegaly, mental retardation variable. Corneal clouding and gibbus not present. Heparan sulfate and dermatan sulfate in urine.	HSCT ERT
Sanfilippo syndrome: Type A Type B Type C Type D	Sulfamidase α-N-Acetylglucosaminidase Acetyl-CoA: α-glucosaminide-N-acetyltransferase α-N-acetylglucosamine-6-sulfatase	Autosomal recessive. Severe mental retardation and hyperactivity, with comparatively mild skeletal changes, visceromegaly, and facial coarseness. Types cannot be differentiated clinically. Heparan sulfate in urine.	
Morquio syndrome	N-Acetylgalactosamine-6-sulfatase	Autosomal recessive. Severe skeletal changes, platyspondylisis, corneal clouding. Keratan sulfate in urine.	
Maroteaux-Lamy syndrome	N-Acetylgalactosamine-4-sulfatase	Autosomal recessive. Coarse facies, growth retardation, dorsolumbar gibbus, corneal clouding, hepatosplenomegaly, normal intellect. Dermatan sulfate in urine.	HSCT ERT
B-Glucuronidase deficiency	β-Glucuronidase	Autosomal recessive. Varies from mental retardation, dorsolumbar gibbus, corneal clouding, and hepatosplenomegaly to mild facial coarseness, retardation, and loose joints. Hearing loss common. Dermatan sulfate or heparan sulfate in urine.	HSCT
II. Oligosaccharidoses			
Mannosidosis	α-Mannosidase	Autosomal recessive. Varies from severe mental retardation, coarse facies, short stature, skeletal changes, and hepatosplenomegaly to mild facial coarseness and loose joints. Hearing loss common. Abnormal oligosaccharides in urine.	HSCT
Fucosidosis	α-Fucosidase	Autosomal recessive. Variable: coarse facies, skeletal changes, hepatosplenomegaly, occasional angiokeratomas. Abnormal oligosaccharides in urine.	HSCT

(Continued)

Table 36–3. Clinical and laboratory features of lysosomal storage diseases. (Continued)

Disorder	Enzyme Defect	Clinical and Laboratory Features	Available Therapies
I-cell disease (mucolipidosis II)	N-Acetylglucosaminylphosphotransferase	Autosomal recessive; severe and mild forms known. Very short stature, mental retardation, early facial coarsening, clear cornea, and stiffness of joints. Increased lysosomal enzymes in serum. Abnormal sialyl oligosaccharides in urine.	HSCT
Sialidosis	Neuraminidase (sialidase)	Autosomal recessive. Mental retardation, coarse facies, skeletal dysplasia, myoclonic seizures, macular cherry-red spot. Abnormal sialyl oligosaccharides in urine.	
III. Lipidoses			
Niemann-Pick disease	Sphingomyelinase	Autosomal recessive. Acute and chronic forms known. Acute neuronopathic form common in eastern European Jews. Accumulation of sphingomyelin in lysosomes of RE system and CNS. Hepatosplenomegaly, developmental retardation, macular cherry-red spot. Death by 1–4 y in severe type A; mild type B develops respiratory insufficiency usually in adulthood.	HSCT[a]
Metachromatic leukodystrophy	Arylsulfatase A	Autosomal recessive. Late infantile form, with onset at 1–4 y, most common. Accumulation of sulfatide in white matter with central leukodystrophy and peripheral neuropathy. Gait disturbances (ataxia), motor incoordination, absent deep tendon reflexes, and dementia. Death usually in first decade.	HSCT[a]
Krabbe disease (globoid cell leukodystrophy)	Galactocerebroside α-galactosidase	Autosomal recessive. Globoid cells in white matter. Onset at 3–6 mo with seizures, irritability, retardation, and leukodystrophy. Death by 1–2 y. Juvenile and adult forms are rare.	HSCT
Fabry disease	α-Galactosidase A	X-linked recessive. Storage of trihexosylceramide in endothelial cells. Pain in extremities, angiokeratoma and (later) poor vision, hypertension, and renal failure.	ERT
Farber disease	Ceramidase	Autosomal recessive. Storage of ceramide in tissues. Subcutaneous nodules, arthropathy with deformed and painful joints, and poor growth and development. Death within first year.	HSCT[a]
Gaucher disease	Glucocerebroside β-glucosidase	Autosomal recessive. Accumulation of glucocerebroside in lysosomes of RE system and CNS. Acute neuronopathic form: retardation, hepatosplenomegaly, macular cherry-red spot, and Gaucher cells in bone marrow. Death by 1–2 y. Chronic form common in eastern European Jews. Hepatosplenomegaly and flask-shaped osteolytic bone lesions. Consistent with normal life expectancy.	ERT SIT

(Continued)

Table 36–3. Clinical and laboratory features of lysosomal storage diseases. (Continued)

Disorder	Enzyme Defect	Clinical and Laboratory Features	Available Therapies
G_{M1} gangliosidosis	G_{M1} ganglioside β-galactosidase	Autosomal recessive. Accumulation of G_{M1} ganglioside in lysosomes of RE system and CNS. Infantile form: abnormalities at birth with dysostosis multiplex, hepatosplenomegaly, macular cherry-red spot, and death by 2 y. Juvenile form: normal development to 1 y of age, then ataxia, weakness, dementia, and death by 4–5 y. Occasional inferior beaking of vertebral bodies of L1 and L2.	HSCT[a]
G_{M2} gangliosidoses Tay-Sachs disease Sandhoff disease	β-N-Acetylhexosaminidase A β-N-Acetylhexosaminidase A and B	Autosomal recessive. Tay-Sachs disease common in eastern European Jews; Sandhoff disease is panethnic. Clinical phenotypes are identical, with accumulation of G_{M2} ganglioside in lysosomes of CNS. Onset at age 3–6 mo, with hypotonia, hyperacusis, retardation, and macular cherry-red spot. Death by 2–3 y. Juvenile and adult onset forms of Tay-Sachs disease are rare.	
Wolman disease	Acid lipase	Autosomal recessive. Accumulation of cholesterol esters and triglycerides in lysosomes of reticuloendothelial system. Onset in infancy with gastrointestinal symptoms and hepatosplenomegaly, and death in the first year. Adrenals commonly enlarged and calcified.	HSCT ERT
Niemann-Pick disease type C	NPC1 gene (95%), NPC2 gene (5%)	Autosomal recessive. Blocked transport of lipids and cholesterol from late endosomes to lysosomes. Infantile cholestatic liver disease or later neurodegeneration with vertical supranuclear gaze palsy, ataxia, seizures, spasticity and loss of speech. Some have splenomegaly.	SIT

CNS, central nervous system; ERT, enzyme-replacement therapy; HSCT, hematopoietic stem cell transplantation; RE, reticuloendothelial; SIT, substrate inhibition therapy.

[a]May be useful in selected patients.

Cross EM, Hare DJ: Behavioural phenotypes of the mucopolysaccharide disorders: a systematic literature review of cognitive, motor, social, linguistic and behavioural presentation in the MPS disorders. J Inherit Metab Dis 2013;36(2):189 [PMID: 23385295].

Gilkes JA, Heldermon CD: Mucopolysaccharidosis III (Sanfilippo syndrome) - disease presentation and experimental therapies. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):133 [PMID: 25345095].

Klein AD, Futerman AH: Lysosomal storage disorders: old diseases, present and future challenges. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2013;11(Suppl 1):59 [PMID: 24380123].

Kohlschütter A: Lysosomal leukodystrophies: Krabbe disease and metachromatic leukodystrophy. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1611 [PMID: 23622382].

Parenti G, Pignata C, Vajro P, Salerno M: New strategies for the treatment of lysosomal storage diseases (review). Int J Mol Med 2013;31(1):11 [PMID: 23165354].

Pastores GM, Maegawa GH: Clinical neurogenetics: neuropathic lysosomal storage disorders. Neurol Clin 2013;31(4):1051 [PMID: 24176423].

Patient and parent support group websites with useful information for families: http://www.mpssociety.org, www.ulf.org, www.lysosomallearning.com, www.fabry.org, www.gaucherdisease.org and www.ntsad.org.

Patterson MC: Gangliosidoses. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1707 [PMID: 23622392].

Platt FM: Sphingolipid lysosomal storage disorders. Nature 2014;510(7503):68 [PMID: 24899306].

Thomas AS, Hughes DA: Fabry disease. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):88 [PMID: 25345090].
Tomatsu S et al: Morquio A syndrome: diagnosis and current and future therapies. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):141 [PMID: 25345096].
Tylki-Szymańska A: Mucopolysaccharidosis type II, Hunter's syndrome. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):107 [PMID: 25345092].
Valayannopoulos V: Enzyme replacement therapy and substrate reduction therapy in lysosomal storage disorders with neurological expression. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1851 [PMID: 23622408].
Vanier MT: Niemann-Pick diseases. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1717 [PMID: 23622394].
Wraith JE: Mucopolysaccharidoses and mucolipidoses. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1729 [PMID: 23622395].
Wraith JE, Jones S: Mucopolysaccharidosis type 1. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2014;12(Suppl 1):102 [PMID: 25345091].

PEr OXISOMAl DISEASES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dysmorphic features, hypotonia, hearing loss, seizures, cataracts, retinopathy, liver disease and renal disease are characteristic findings of severe peroxisomal disease.
- Change in behavior or school failure in a young boy may suggest X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy and warrants a brain MRI with contrast.
- Very-long-chain fatty acid analysis is a good screening test for most, but not all, peroxisomal disorders.

Peroxisomes are intracellular organelles that contain a large number of enzymes, many of which are oxidases linked to catalase. The enzyme systems in peroxisomes include β-oxidation of very-long-chain fatty acids, phytanic acid, and bile acids and the biosynthesis of plasmalogens. In addition, peroxisomes contain oxidases for d- and l-amino acids, pipecolic acid, and phytanic acid, and an enzyme (alanine-glyoxylate aminotransferase) that affects transamination of glyoxylate to glycine.

In peroxisomal biogenesis disorders, multiple enzymes are deficient. They present with Zellweger (cerebrohepatorenal) syndrome spectrum of varying severity. Patients present as neonates or infants with seizures, hypotonia, characteristic facies with a large forehead and fontanel, cholestatic hepatopathy, retinal dystrophy, and hearing loss. At autopsy, renal cysts, brain neuronal migration abnormalities, and absent or empty peroxisomes are seen. Patients with milder biochemical and clinical phenotype have ataxia, developmental delay, and hearing and vision loss.

In other peroxisomal diseases, only a single enzyme is deficient. Primary hyperoxaluria (alanine-glyoxylate aminotransferase deficiency) causes renal stones and nephropathy. Mutations in the X-linked very-long-chain fatty acid transporter gene, ABCD1, cause either a rapid leukodystrophy with loss of function (adrenoleukodystrophy), or a slowly progressive spasticity and neuropathy (adrenomyeloneuropathy), or adrenal insufficiency. Defective phytanic acid oxidation in adult Refsum disease causes ataxia, leukodystrophy, cardiomyopathy, neuropathy, and retinal dystrophy. Other isolated enzyme deficiencies can mimic Zellweger syndrome.

Abnormalities of plasmalogen synthesis are clinically associated with rhizomelic chondrodysplasia punctata. Except for adrenoleukodystrophy, all peroxisomal diseases are autosomal recessive and can be diagnosed in utero.

Diagnosis

The best screening test for Zellweger syndrome spectrum is determination of very-long-chain fatty acids in plasma. Urine bile acids are abnormal in other peroxisomal disorders. Phytanic acid and plasmalogens can also be measured. Together, these studies identify most peroxisomal diseases. Fibroblast enzyme assays and molecular analysis provide confirmation, especially when prenatal diagnosis is sought.

Treatment

Bone marrow transplantation may be an effective treatment at the early stages of adrenoleukodystrophy, and close monitoring of affected males is necessary. Newborn screening is being trialed. Adrenal insufficiency requires hydrocortisone substitution. Lorenzo's oil, a mixture of glyceryl-trierucate and glyceryl-trioleate that suppresses endogenous very-long-chain fatty acid synthesis, in combination with a very-low-fat diet and essential fatty acid supplementation, is ineffective in patients with established symptoms but may reduce the incidence of neurologic symptoms in presymptomatic males with adrenoleukodystrophy. Dietary treatment is used and effective for adult Refsum disease. Liver transplantation protects the kidneys in severe primary hyperoxaluria.

Aubourg P, Wanders R: Peroxisomal disorders. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1593 [PMID: 23622381].
Berger J, Forss-Petter S, Eichler FS: Pathophysiology of X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy. Biochimie 2104;98:135 [PMID: 24316281].
Braverman NE, D'Agostino MD, Maclean GE: Peroxisome biogenesis disorders: Biological, clinical and pathophysiological perspectives. Dev Disabil Res Rev 2013;17(3):187 [PMID: 23798008].
Lee PR, Raymond GV: Child neurology: Zellweger syndrome. Neurology 2013;80(20):e207 [PMID: 23671347].
Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.thegfpd.org.

CONGENITAL DISORDERS OF GLYCOSYLATION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Analysis of glycosylation of marker glycoproteins such as transferrin (N-linked glycosylation) and apolipoprotein C (O-linked glycosylation) are initial screening tests for these broad-spectrum, multisystem disorders.

Many proteins, including many extracellular and lysosomal proteins, require glycosylation for normal function. The carbohydrate-deficient glycoprotein syndromes are an ever-increasing family of disorders that result from defects in the synthesis of glycans or in the attachment of glycans to other compounds. N-linked, O-linked, and combined N- and O-linked glycosylation defects have been described. The most common N-linked defect is phosphomannomutase-2 deficiency or congenital disorders of glycosylation type Ia (CDG-Ia). Children with type Ia disease usually present with prenatal growth disturbance, often with abnormal fat distribution, cerebellar hypoplasia, typical facial dysmorphic features, and mental retardation. The typical course includes chronic liver disease, peripheral neuropathy, endocrinopathies, retinopathy, and in some patients, acute life-threatening events. Patients with type Ib disease have a variable combination of liver fibrosis, protein-losing enteropathy, and hypoglycemia. More than a dozen other forms are characterized by additional key symptoms, including coloboma, cutis laxa, severe epilepsy, ichthyosis, immunoglobulin deficiency, and Dandy-Walker malformation. Biochemical differences and variations in clinical course (eg, the absence of peripheral neuropathy) characterize the other types. Pathophysiology probably relates to defects of those biochemical pathways that require glycosylated proteins. Recently, O-linked glycosylation defects have been found to underlie more classically described genetic syndromes such as multiple exostoses syndrome, Walker-Warburg syndrome, muscle-eye-brain disease, and a number of α-dystroglycanopathies. The syndromes appear to be inherited in an autosomal recessive manner with the exception of multiple exostoses syndrome which is autosomal dominant. The frequency of N-linked glycosylation defects is estimated to be as high as 1:20,000 in northern Europe.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis is supported by finding altered levels of glycosylated enzymes or other proteins such as transferrin, thyroxine-binding globulin, lysosomal enzymes, and clotting factors (IX, XI, antithrombin III, and proteins C and S). However, these levels may be normal in carbohydrate-deficient glycoprotein syndromes or abnormal in other conditions. Diagnosis is confirmed by finding typical patterns of abnormal glycosylation of selected proteins. Most diagnostic laboratories examine serum transferrin to screen for N-linked defects and apoCIII for O-linked defects. Confirmatory diagnosis is by assaying enzyme activity, analysis of lipid-linked oligosaccharides in fibroblasts, and mutation analysis. Genomic diagnostic methods are increasingly used to identify these disorders.

Treatment

Treatment is supportive, including monitoring and providing early treatment for expected clinical features. Mannose treatment is curative for patients with type Ib deficiency only.

Cylwik B, Lipartowska K, Chrostek L, Gruszewska E: Congenital disorders of glycosylation. Part II. Defects of protein O-glycosylation. Acta Biochim Pol 2013;60(3):361 [PMID: 24051442].

Cylwik B, Naklicki M, Chrostek L, Gruszewska E: Congenital disorders of glycosylation. Part 1. Defects of protein N-glycosylation. Acta Biochim Pol 2013;60(2):151 [PMID: 23730680].

Jaeken J: Congenital disorders of glycosylation. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1737 [PMID: 23622397].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.cdgs.com.

Wolfe LA, Krasnewich D: Congenital disorders of glycosylation and intellectual disability. Dev Disabil Res Rev 2013;17(3):211 [PMID: 23798010].

SMITH-LEMLI-OPITZ SYNDROME & DISORDERS OF CHOLESTEROL SYNTHESIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Elevated 7- and 8-dehydrocholesterol in serum is diagnostic in Smith-Lemli-Opitz (SLO) syndrome, which presents with developmental delay and malformations.
- Chondrodysplasia punctata, skin defects, and neurological symptoms can indicate other cholesterol synthetic defects.

Several defects of cholesterol synthesis are associated with malformations and neurodevelopmental disability. SLO syndrome is an autosomal recessive disorder caused by a deficiency of the enzyme 7-dehydrocholesterol Δ7-reductase. It is characterized by microcephaly, poor growth, mental retardation, typical dysmorphic features of face and extremities (particularly two- to three-toe syndactyly), and often malformations of the heart and genitourinary system. It is further described in Chapter 37. Other cholesterol synthetic

defects are seen in Conradi Hünermann syndrome, which includes chondrodysplasia punctata and atrophic skin. Cholestanolosis (cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis) manifests with progressive ataxia and cataracts, or, in young children, with intestinal intolerance.

» Diagnosis

In SLO, elevated 7- and 8-dehydrocholesterol in serum or amniotic fluid is diagnostic. Serum cholesterol levels may be low or in the normal range. Enzymes of cholesterol synthesis may be assayed in cultured fibroblasts or amniocytes, and mutation analysis is possible.

» Treatment

Although postnatal treatment does not resolve prenatal injury, supplementation with cholesterol in SLO improves growth and behavior. The role of supplemental bile acids is controversial.

Jira P: Cholesterol metabolism deficiency. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1845 [PMID: 23622407].

Kanungo S, Soares N, He M, Steiner RD: Sterol metabolism disorders and neurodevelopment–an update. Dev Disabil Res Rev 2013;17(3):197 [PMID: 23798009].

Patient and parent support group website with useful information for families: http://www.smithlemliopitz.org.

DISOr DEr S Of NEUr Ot r ANSMIt t Er MEt AbOl ISM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Consider in children with movement disorders, especially dystonia and oculogyric crises.
- Severe seizures, abnormal tone, ataxia, and mental retardation, autonomic instability occur in severely affected infants.
- Mildly affected patients have dopa-responsive dystonia with diurnal variability.
- Deficient serine synthesis causes microcephaly, seizures, and failure of myelination in neonates.
- Deficient glucose transporter causes seizures and a movement disorder. Identifiable on CSF analysis and treatable with a ketogenic diet.

Abnormalities of neurotransmitter metabolism are increasingly recognized as causes of significant neurodevelopmental disabilities. These disorders typically affect the biosynthesis of the neurotransmitters dopamine and serotonin. Affected patients may present with movement disorders (especially dystonia and oculogyric crises), seizures, abnormal tone, or mental retardation, and are often considered to have cerebral palsy. Patients may be mildly affected (eg, dopa-responsive dystonia with diurnal variation) or severely affected (eg, intractable seizures with profound mental retardation). Deficient serine synthesis leads to congenital microcephaly, infantile seizures, and failure of myelination.

Pyridoxine-dependent epilepsy manifests as a severe seizure disorder in the neonatal or early infantile period that responds to high doses of pyridoxine. The disorder is caused by deficient activity of the enzyme α-amino adipic semialdehyde dehydrogenase resulting from mutations in the antiquitin (ALDH7A1) gene. Pyridoxal-phosphate–responsive encephalopathy manifests as a severe seizure disorder in infancy that responds to pyridoxal-phosphate. This disorder is caused by mutations in the PNPO gene encoding pyridox(am)ine oxidase, which is necessary for activation of pyridoxine.

» Diagnosis

Although some disorders can be diagnosed by examining plasma amino acids or urine organic acids (eg, 4-hydroxybutyric aciduria), in most cases, diagnosis requires analysis of CSF. Spinal fluid samples for neurotransmitter analysis require special collection and handling, as the neurotransmitter levels are graduated along the axis of the CNS. A phenylalanine loading test can be diagnostic for mild defects in GTP-cyclohydrolase deficiency, in which neurotransmitter analysis may be insufficiently sensitive. Analysis of CSF shows elevated threonine and decreased pyridoxal-phosphate in pyridoxal-phosphate–responsive disease, and decreased serine and glycine in serine biosynthetic defects. Urine or plasma α-aminoadipic acid and piperideine-6-carboxylate best identifies infants with pyridoxine-dependent seizures.

» Treatment

Biosynthesis defects of dopamine and serotonin are usually treated with a combination of levodopa, 5-hydroxytryptophan, and carbidopa. Pyridoxine-dependent epilepsy is treated with pyridoxine in high doses and can benefit from a lysine-restricted diet, whereas pyridoxal-phosphate–responsive encephalopathy requires pyridoxal-phosphate. Supplementation with serine and glycine can substantially improve outcome in serine deficiency. For several conditions, such as pyridoxine-responsive seizures, pyridoxal-phosphate–responsive encephalopathy, or dopa-responsive dystonia, response to treatment is dramatic. For others, response to therapy is less satisfactory in part because of poor penetration of the blood-brain barrier.

Gras D et al: GLUT1 deficiency syndrome: an update. Rev Neurol (Paris) 2014;170(2):91 [PMID: 24269118].
Marecos C, Ng J, Kurian MA: What is new for monoamine neurotransmitter disorders? J Inherit Metab Dis 2014;37(4):619 [PMID: 24696406].
Ng J, Heales SJ, Kurian MA: Clinical features and pharmacotherapy of childhood monoamine neurotransmitter disorders. Paediatr Drugs 2014;16(4):275 [PMID: 25011953].
Patient and parent support group websites with useful information for families: http://www.pndassoc.org.
Pearl PL: Monoamine neurotransmitter deficiencies. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1819 [PMID: 23622404].
Plecko B: Pyridoxine and pyridoxalphosphate-dependent epilepsies. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1811 [PMID: 23622403].
Tzadok M et al: The many faces of Glut1 deficiency syndrome. J Child Neurol 2014;29(3):349 [PMID: 23340081].

° CREATINE SYNTHESIS DISORDERS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Consider in children with seizures, movement disorders, autistic features, and developmental delay especially with severe expressive language delay.

Creatine and creatine phosphate are essential for storage and transmission of phosphate-bound energy in muscle and brain. They spontaneously convert to creatinine. The disorders arginine:glycine amidinotransferase (AGAT) deficiency and guanidinoacetate methyltransferase (GAMT) deficiency are autosomal recessive, whereas creatine transporter (CrT1) deficiency is X-linked. All patients demonstrate developmental delay, mental retardation, autistic behavior, seizures, and severe expressive language delay. Patients may also show developmental regression and brain atrophy. Patients with GAMT deficiency have more severe seizures and an extrapyramidal movement disorder. The seizure disorder is mild in male CrT1-deficient patients, and some female heterozygotes may show learning disabilities.

» Diagnosis

The common feature of all creatine synthesis defects is a severe depletion of creatine and creatine phosphate in the brain demonstrable by reduction to absence of signal on magnetic resonance spectroscopy. In GAMT deficiency, guanidinoacetate accumulates, whereas it is reduced in AGAT deficiency. Guanidinoacetate seems to be responsible for the severe seizures and movement disorder found in GAMT deficiency. Blood, urine, and CSF creatine levels are decreased in GAMT deficiency but normal in AGAT deficiency. Urine excretion of creatine is elevated in CrT1 deficiency. Enzyme and molecular analyses are available for diagnostic confirmation.

» Treatment

Treatment with oral creatine supplementation is in part successful in GAMT and AGAT deficiencies. Treatment with combined arginine restriction and ornithine substitution in GAMT deficiency can decrease guanidinoacetate concentrations and improve the clinical course. Combined therapy using arginine, glycine, and creatine supplementation in CrT1 deficiency is effective in approximately one-third of affected males, specifically improving seizure control and gross motor delays. Improvement is correlated with higher initial cerebral creatine peaks on magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) and early initiation of therapy.

Comeaux MS et al: Biochemical, molecular, and clinical diagnoses of patients with cerebral creatine deficiency syndromes. Mol Genet Metab 2013;109(3):260 [PMID: 23660394].
Dunbar M, Jaggumantri S, Sargent M, Stockler-Ipsiroglu S, van Karnebeek CD: Treatment of X-linked creatine transporter (SLC6A8) deficiency: systematic review of the literature and three new cases. Mol Genet Metab 2014;112(4):259 [PMID: 24953403].
Schulze A: Creatine deficiency syndromes. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;113:1837 [PMID: 23622406].
Stockler-Ipsiroglu S et al: Guanidinoacetate methyltransferase (GAMT) deficiency: outcomes in 48 individuals and recommendations for diagnosis, treatment and monitoring. Mol Genet Metab 2014;111(1):16 [PMID: 24268530].

° QUALITY INITIATIVES IN THE FIELD OF METABOLIC DISEASE

Expanded newborn screening has had a large impact on the field of metabolic disorders. Patients are being diagnosed earlier, and for some patients, this dramatically reduces the disease burden. Expanded newborn screening, also revealed unexpected consequences. For example, the clinical spectrum of many disorders is being expanded to include mildly affected or asymptomatic patients. This raises care questions particularly in regard to the need for aggressive management in the more mildly affected patients or if, for some patients, therapy is needed at all. It is unclear whether some patients on the milder end of a disease spectrum would have ever become symptomatic. These additionally recognized milder patients have increased the disease incidence. In addition, newborn screening for several conditions has brought to light our ability to detect maternal disease. Disorders such as maternal B_{12} deficiency and maternal carnitine uptake deficiency pose management as well as risk questions for this largely asymptomatic or presymptomatic population. Further, owing to limitations in diagnostic testing, patients

who may be carriers for a condition are now being treated, as the carrier status cannot be entirely confirmed nor the condition, with severe health risks, entirely excluded. This is particularly true for disorders such as glutaric acidemia, type I and VLCAD deficiency. This not only adds to parental anxiety, but treatment of an unaffected child may entail risk to the child or to family dynamics.

Improvement in diagnostic testing, especially the sensitivity of molecular and enzymatic testing, may help improve the diagnostic conundrum. National initiatives are underway in an attempt to clarify other issues. Initiated under regional programs and now under the guidance of the American College of Medical Genetics and the Newborn Screening Translational Research Network (NBSTRN), uniform clinical data sets for disorders diagnosed via newborn screening have been developed. A national database for data collection integrating clinical care, public health, and state laboratories is being constructed. The overall goal is to track the long-term outcome of individuals diagnosed with inborn errors of metabolism, to define best practice guidelines, and to determine the benefit of newborn screening. In addition, the NBSTRN seeks to stimulate research in newborn screening, advocate pilot screening programs, and establish a national, virtual dried blood spot repository for research. This national initiative is inclusive of all disorders for which newborn screening occurs, not just inborn errors of metabolism.

Another national focus is the expansion of newborn screening to other genetic disorders. Currently, some states are beginning to implement newborn screening for severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) and for lysosomal and peroxisomal storage disorders. As technology for early detection and treatment strategies advance, more disorders will likely be considered candidates for newborn screening. Additionally, some conditions being considered for screening affect an individual after the newborn period. Second-tier, childhood screening for such late-onset disorders may be a consideration in the future. Careful consideration will need to be given regarding the risks and benefits to screening for such conditions. The U.S. Secretary for Health and Human Services' Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children has established a rigorous process for disease review before recommending a disorder be considered for nationwide screening.

Landau YE, Lichter-Konecki U, Levy HL: Genomics in newborn screening. J Pediatr 2014;164(1):14 [PMID: 23992678].

Matern D, Oglesbee D, Tortorelli S: Newborn screening for lysosomal storage disorders and other neuronopathic conditions. Dev Disabil Res Rev 2013;17(3):247 [PMID: 23798012].

Tomatsu S, et al: Newborn screening and diagnosis of mucopolysaccharidoses. Mol Genet Metab 2013;110(1–2):42 [PMID: 23860310].

37 Genetics & Dysmorphology

Margarita Sifuentes Saenz, MD
Naomi J.L. Meeks, MD
Anne Chun-Hui Tsai, MD, MSc
Ellen R. Elias, MD

Genetics is an exciting and rapidly evolving field that has significant relevance to the understanding of human embryology, physiology, and disease processes. Tremendous advances in molecular biology and biochemistry are allowing more comprehensive understanding of mechanisms inherent in genetic disorders as well as improved diagnostic tests and management options. Many of the newer technologies and terms may be unfamiliar to the clinician in practice. Thus, the topics in the first part of the chapter serve as an introduction and review of the basic principles of genetics, including basic knowledge of cytogenetics and molecular biology. The second part discusses principles of inherited human disorders, encompassing different genetic mechanisms as well as how to obtain a genetic history and pedigree. Topics in the third part of the chapter focus on applied clinical genetics, which include dysmorphology, teratology, and perinatology. Common clinical disorders with descriptions of the diseases and discussion of their pathogenesis, diagnosis, and management are also included.

FOUNDATIONS OF GENETIC DIAGNOSIS

CYTOGENETICS

Cytogenetics is the study of genetics at the chromosome level. Chromosomal anomalies occur in 0.4% of all live births and are a common cause of intellectual disabilities and congenital anomalies. The prevalence of chromosomal anomalies is much higher among spontaneous abortions and stillbirths.

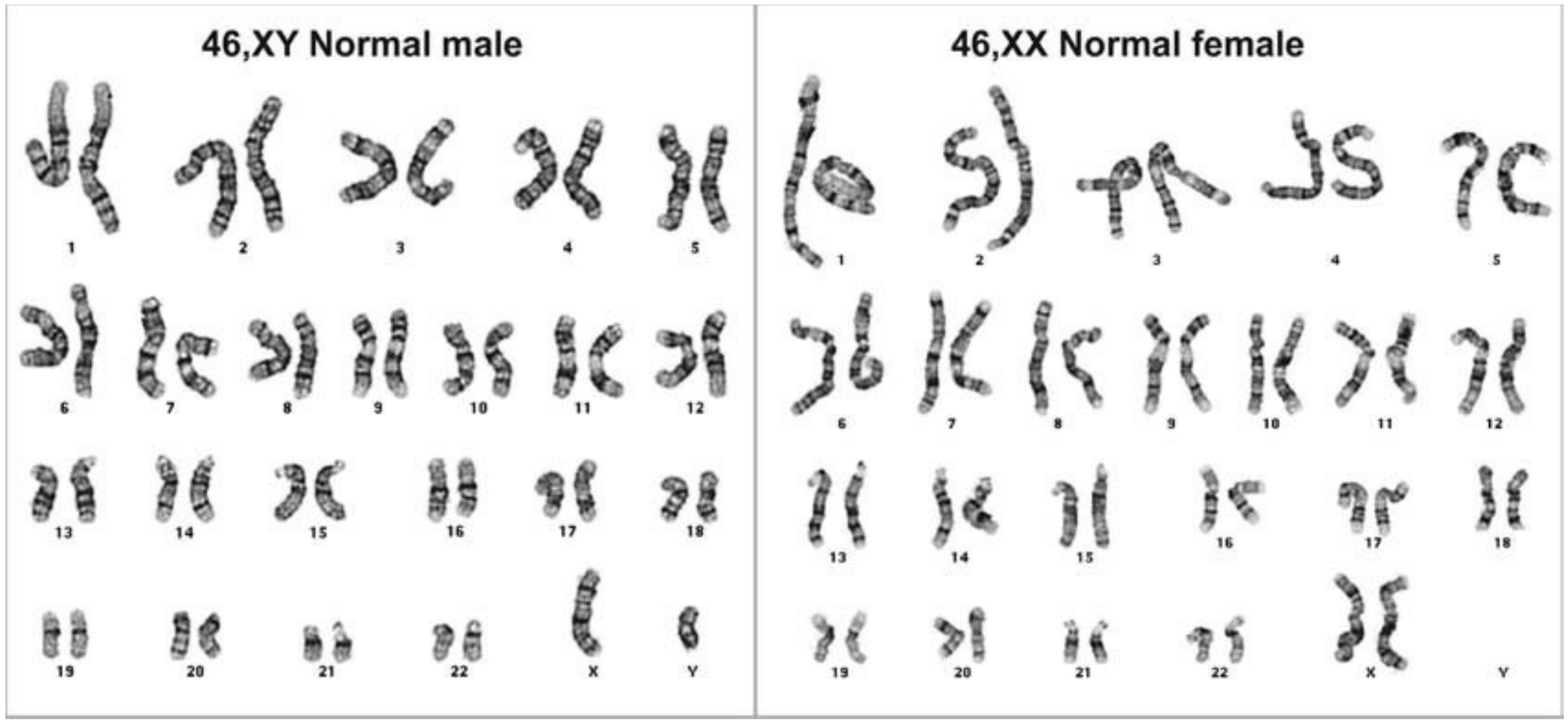
Chromosomes

Human chromosomes consist of DNA (the blueprint of genetic material), specific proteins forming the backbone of the chromosome (called histones), and other chromatin structural and interactive proteins. Chromosomes contain most of the genetic information necessary for growth and differentiation. The nuclei of all normal human cells, with the exception of gametes, contain 46 chromosomes, consisting of 23 pairs (Figure 37–1). Of these, 22 pairs are called autosomes. They are numbered according to their size; chromosome 1 is the largest and chromosome 22 the smallest. In addition, there are two sex chromosomes: two X chromosomes in females and one X and one Y chromosome in males. The two members of a chromosome pair are called homologous chromosomes. One homolog of each chromosome pair is maternal in origin (from the egg); the second is paternal (from the sperm). The egg and sperm each contain 23 chromosomes (haploid cells). During formation of the zygote, they fuse into a cell with 46 chromosomes (diploid cell).

Chromosome Preparation & Analysis

Chromosome structure is visible only during mitosis, most often achieved in the laboratory by stimulating a blood lymphocyte culture with a mitogen for 3 days. Cells processed for routine chromosome analysis are stained on glass slides to yield a light-and-dark band pattern across the arms of the chromosomes (see Figure 37–1). This band pattern is characteristic and reproducible for each chromosome, allowing the chromosomes to be identified. A karyotype is the arrangement of chromosomes in homologous pairs in numerical order. High-resolution chromosome analysis is the study of more elongated chromosomes and can detect smaller imbalances than routine chromosome analysis. Although the bands can be visualized in greater detail, subtle chromosomal rearrangements less than 5 million base pairs (5 Mb) can still be missed.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is a powerful technique that labels a known chromosome sequence with DNA probes attached to fluorescent dyes, thus enabling visualization of specific regions of chromosomes by fluorescent microscopy. FISH can detect submicroscopic structural



▲ **Figure 37–1.** Normal male and female human karyotype. (Used with permission from the Colorado Genetics Laboratory.)

rearrangements undetectable by classic cytogenetic techniques and can identify marker chromosomes. (For pictures of FISH studies, go to http://www.kumc.edu/gec/prof/cytogene.html.)

Interphase FISH allows noncultured cells (lymphocytes, amniocytes) to be rapidly screened for numerical abnormalities such as trisomy 13, 18, or 21, and sex chromosome anomalies. However, because of the possible background or contamination of the signal, the abnormality must be confirmed by conventional chromosome analysis in aneuploidy cases. Two hundred–cell FISH can also be used to ascertain mosaicism.

Chromosomal Microarray Analysis (CMA) or Array Comparative Genomic Hybridization (aCGH)

Advances in computer technology and bioinformatics have led to the development of genetic testing using comparative genomic hybridization with microarray technique. This technique allows detection of very small genetic imbalances anywhere in the genome. It is used to detect interstitial and submicroscopic imbalances, to characterize their size at the molecular level, and to define the breakpoints of translocations. This test has replaced high resolution chromosomes as the first-line test in evaluating children with developmental delays and multiple congenital anomalies. The principle behind chromosomal microarrays is comparison of a patient's genome at hundreds of thousands of locations against a reference genome. Current CMAs are designed to screen the entire genome but the oligonucleotide probes are particularly targeted toward known disease-causing regions. In some cases, the resolution in disease-related genes may be as small as several hundred base pairs. However, this technology is not able to detect very small deletions, duplications, or single nucleotide changes. Most newer CMA platforms use single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in addition to or instead of oligonucleotide probes. This has the advantage of also being able to pick up cases of uniparental disomy or cases of consanguinity.

Wiszneiwska J et al: Combined array CGH plus SNP genome analyses in a single assay for optimized clinical testing. Eur J Hum Genet 2014 Jan;22(1):79–87 [PMID: 23695279].

Chromosome Nomenclature

Visible under the microscope is a constriction site on the chromosome called the centromere, which separates the chromosome into two arms: p, for petite, refers to the short arm, and q, the letter following p, refers to the long arm. Each arm is further subdivided into numbered bands visible using different staining techniques. The use of named chromosome arms and bands provides a universal method of chromosome description. Common symbols include del (deletion), dup (duplication), inv (inversion), ish (in situ hybridization), i (isochromosome), pat (paternal origin), mat (maternal origin), and r (ring chromosome). These terms are further defined in the section Chromosomal Abnormalities.

Chromosomal Abnormalities

There are two types of chromosomal anomalies: numerical and structural.

A. Abnormalities of Chromosomal Number

When a human cell has 23 chromosomes, such as human ova or sperm, it is in the haploid state (n). After conception, in cells other than the reproductive cells, 46 chromosomes are present in the diploid state (2n). Cells deviating from the multiple of the haploid number are called aneuploid, indicating an abnormal number of chromosomes. Trisomy, an example of aneuploidy, is the presence of three of a particular chromosome rather than two. It results from unequal division, called nondisjunction, of chromosomes into daughter cells. Trisomies are the most common numerical chromosomal anomalies found in humans (eg, trisomy 21 [Down syndrome], trisomy 18, and trisomy 13). Monosomies, the presence of only one member of a chromosome pair, may be complete or partial. Complete monosomies may result from nondisjunction or anaphase lag. All complete autosomal monosomies appear to be lethal early in development and only survive in mosaic forms. Sex chromosome monosomy, however, can be viable.

B. Abnormalities of Chromosomal Structure

Many different types of structural chromosomal anomalies exist. Figure 37–2 displays the formal nomenclature as well as the ideogram demonstrating chromosomal anomalies. In clinical context, the sign (+) and (-) preceding the chromosome number indicate increased and decreased number, respectively, of that particular whole chromosome in a cell. For example, 47, XY+21 designates a male with three copies of chromosome 21. The sign (+) and (-) after the chromosome number signify extra material and missing material, respectively, on one of the arms of the chromosome. For example, 46, XX, 8q- denotes a deletion on the long arm of chromosome 8. Detailed nomenclature, such as 8q11, is required to further demonstrate a specific missing region so that genetic counseling can be provided.

1. Deletion (del) (see Figure 37–2A)—This refers to an absence of normal chromosomal material. It may be terminal (at the end of a chromosome) or interstitial (within a chromosome). The missing part is described using the code "del," followed by the number of the chromosome involved in parentheses, and a description of the missing region of that chromosome, also in parentheses, for example, 46, XX, del(1) (p36.3). This chromosome nomenclature describes the loss of genetic material from band 36.3 of the short arm of chromosome 1, which results in 1p36.3 deletion syndrome.

2. Duplication (dup) (see Figure 37–2B)—An extra copy of a chromosomal segment can be tandem (genetic material present in the original direction) or inverted (genetic material present in the opposite direction). A well-described duplication of chromosome 22q11 causes Cat eye syndrome, resulting in iris coloboma and anal or ear anomalies.

3. Inversion (inv) (see Figure 37–2C)—In this aberration, a rearranged section of a chromosome is inverted. It can be paracentric (not involving the centromere) or pericentric (involving the centromere).

4. Ring chromosome (r) (see Figure 37–2D)—Deletion of the normal telomeres (and possibly other subtelomeric sequences) leads to subsequent fusion of both ends to form a circular chromosome. Ring chromosomal anomalies often cause growth retardation and intellectual disability.

5. Translocation (trans) (see Figure 37–2E)—This interchromosomal rearrangement of genetic material may be balanced (the cell has a normal content of genetic material arranged in a structurally abnormal way) or unbalanced (the cell has gained or lost genetic material as a result of chromosomal interchange). Balanced translocations may further be described as reciprocal, the exchange of genetic material between two nonhomologous chromosomes, or Robertsonian, the fusion of two acrocentric chromosomes.

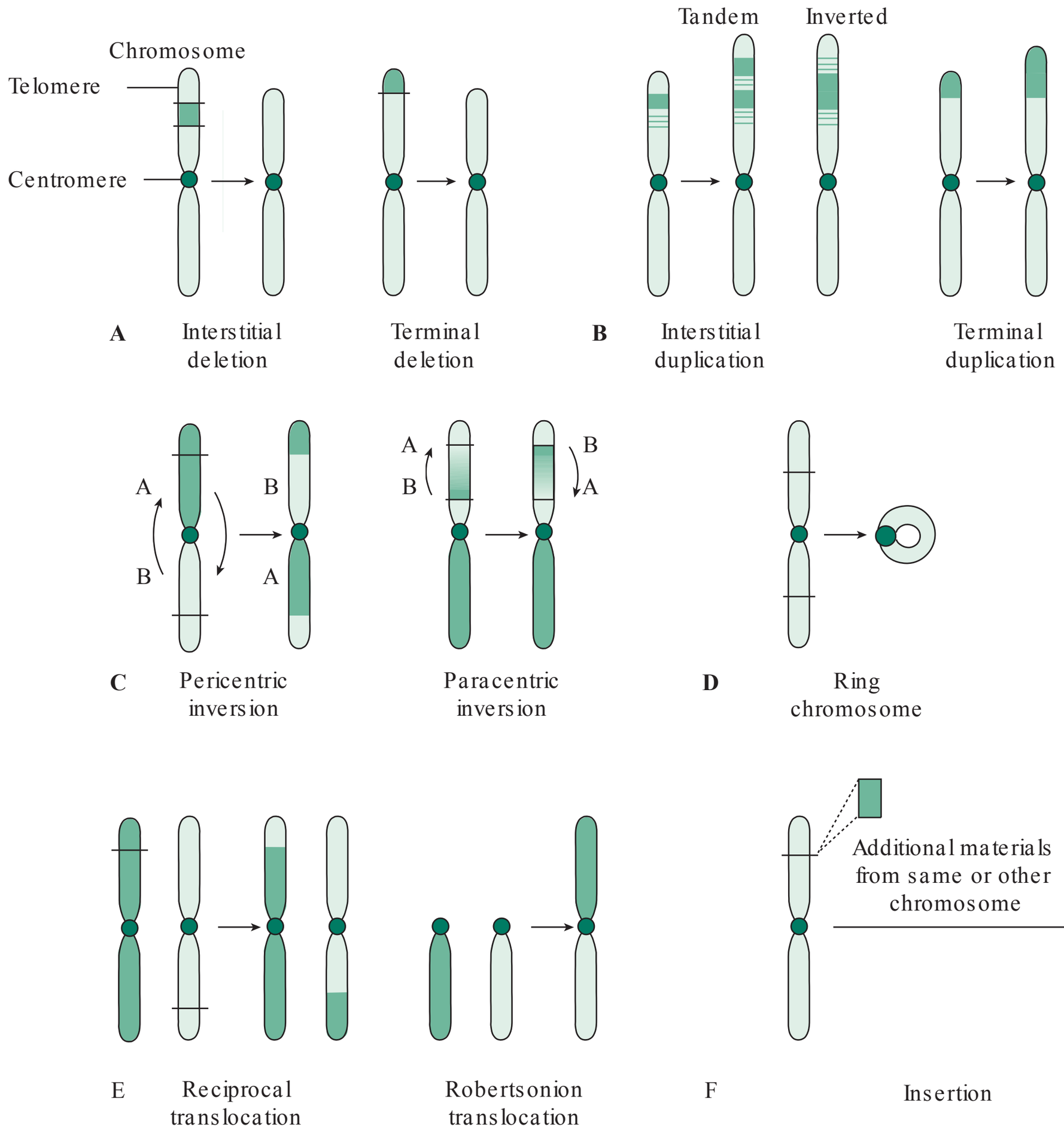
6. Insertion (ins) (see Figure 37–2F)—Breakage within a chromosome at two points and incorporation of another piece of chromosomal material is called insertion. This requires three breakpoints and may occur between two chromosomes or within the same chromosome. The clinical presentation or phenotype depends on the origin of the inserted materials.

C. Sex Chromosomal Anomalies

Abnormalities involving sex chromosomes, including aneuploidy and mosaicism, are relatively common in the general population. The most common sex chromosome anomalies include 45,X (Turner syndrome), 47,XXX, 47,XXY (Klinefelter syndrome), 47,XYY, and different mosaic states. (See later text for clinical discussion.)

D. Mosaicism

Mosaicism is the presence of two or more different chromosome constitutions in different cells of the same individual. For example, a patient may have some cells with 47 chromosomes and others with 46 chromosomes (46,XX/47,XX,+21 indicates mosaicism for trisomy 21; similarly, 45,X/46,XX/47,XXX indicates mosaicism for a monosomy and a trisomy X). Mosaicism should be suspected if clinical symptoms are milder than expected in a non-mosaic patient with the same chromosomal abnormality, or if the patient's skin shows unusual pigmentation. The prognosis is frequently better for a patient with mosaicism than for one with a corresponding chromosomal abnormality without mosaicism. In general, the smaller the proportion of the abnormal cell line, the better the prognosis. In the same patient, however, the proportion

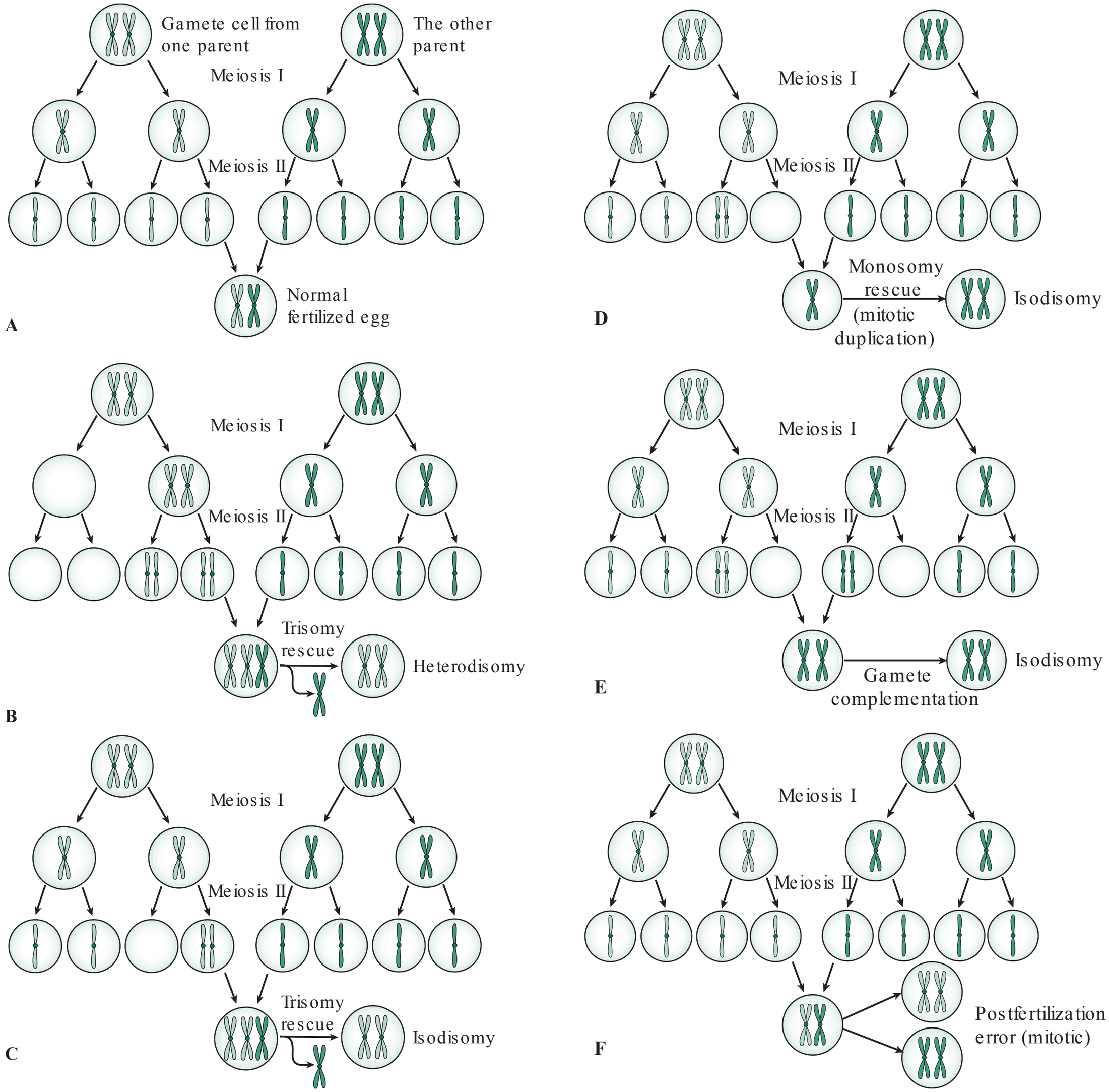


▲**Figure 37–2.** Examples of structural chromosomal abnormalities: deletion, duplication, inversion, ring chromosome, translocation, and insertion.

of normal and abnormal cells in various tissues, such as skin, brain, internal organs, and peripheral blood, may be significantly different. Therefore, the prognosis for a patient with chromosomal mosaicism can seldom be assessed reliably based on the karyotype in peripheral blood alone.

E. Uniparental Disomy

Under normal circumstances, one member of each homologous pair of chromosomes is of maternal origin from the egg and the other is of paternal origin from the sperm (Figure 37–3A). In uniparental disomy (UPD), both copies of a particular chromosome pair originate from the same parent. If UPD is caused by an error in the first meiotic division, both homologous chromosomes of that parent will be present in the gamete—a phenomenon called heterodisomy (Figure 37–3B). If the disomy is caused by an error in the second meiotic division, two copies of the same chromosome will be present through the mechanism of rescue, duplication, and complementation (Figure 37–3C through 37–3E)—a phenomenon called isodisomy. Isodisomy may also occur as a postfertilization error (Figure 37–3F).



▲**Figure 37–3.** The assortment of homologous chromosomes during normal gametogenesis and uniparental disomy. **A:** Fertilization of normal gametes. **B:** Heterodisomy by trisomy rescue. **C:** Isodisomy by trisomy rescue. **D:** Isodisomy by monosomy rescue. **E:** Isodisomy by complementation. F: Isodisomy by mitotic error.

Possible mechanisms for the adverse effects of UPD include homozygosity for deleterious recessive genes and the consequences of imprinting (see discussion in the section Imprinting). It is suspected that UPD of some chromosomes is lethal.

UPD has been documented for certain human chromosomes, including chromosomes 7, 11, 14, 15, and X, and has been found in patients with Prader-Willi, Angelman, and Beckwith-Wiedemann syndromes (BWS). In addition, cystic fibrosis with only one carrier parent (caused by maternal

isodisomy) has been reported. UPD may cause severe prenatal and postnatal growth retardation.

F. Microdeletion and Microduplication Syndromes

Microdeletion and microduplication syndromes result when there is a loss or gain of small regions of a chromosome. These are frequently referred to as copy number variants (CNVs). These may include one gene, multiple genes, or noncoding regions of the genome. Though high-resolution chromosomes can detect some copy number variants, most are detected or confirmed by FISH or CMA. These copy number variants may be familial (passed on by a parent) or may occur de novo. Many copy number variants are now known to be associated with specific syndromes (discussed in Chromosomal Abnormalities: Abnormal Structure). However some are not totally understood and may be classified as a Variant of Uncertain Significance (VOUS) or may be benign changes. Therefore, special caution and parental studies are often required in interpreting the results.

H. Chromosomal Abnormalities in Cancer

Numerical and structural chromosomal abnormalities are often identified in hematopoietic and solid-tumor neoplasms in individuals with otherwise normal chromosomes. These cytogenetic abnormalities have been categorized as primary and secondary. In primary abnormalities, their presence is necessary for initiation of the cancer; an example is 13q- in retinoblastoma. Secondary abnormalities appear de novo in somatic cells only after the cancer has developed, for example, Philadelphia chromosome, t(9;22)(q34;q11), in acute and chronic myeloid leukemia. Primary and secondary chromosomal abnormalities are specific for particular neoplasms and can be used for diagnosis or prognosis. For example, the presence of the Philadelphia chromosome is a good prognostic sign in chronic myelogenous leukemia and indicates a poor prognosis in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. The sites of chromosome breaks coincide with the known loci of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes.

MOLECULAR GENETICS

Advances in molecular biology have revolutionized human genetics, as they allow for the localization, isolation, and characterization of genes that encode protein sequences. Molecular genetics can help explain the complex underlying biology involved in many human diseases.

Molecular diagnosis on a clinical basis can be achieved using the following technologies: **Southern blot analysis** uses electrophoresis and specific DNA probes to look for changes in genomic DNA, most often trinucleotide repeats. The **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** replicates fragments of DNA between predetermined primers so that sufficient DNA is obtained for characterization or sequencing in the space of a few hours. **Quantitative fluorescent PCR** combines PCR amplification with fluorescent DNA probes to provide real-time replication and rapid determination of gene copy number and dosage effects. **DNA sequencing** is the process of determining the nucleotide order of a given DNA fragment. **aCGH** can also be used to look for small deletions or duplications (as small as one exon) on the gene level. **Methylation** analysis can look for uniparental disomy or imprinting defects (discussed below). **Next generation sequencing (NextGen)** or massively parallel sequencing allows the sequencing of many genes quickly and accurately, and for less expense per gene than traditional DNA sequencing. This technology has allowed the screening of dozens or hundreds of genes at one time with targeted panel testing. This technology is also being used to perform **whole-exome sequencing (WES)** where all genes in the entire genome are sequenced at one time. Prices for WES in commercial laboratories run around $7000 per patient with a 25%–30% diagnostic hit rate. The same technology will be applied to Whole Genome Sequencing, which is technically possible but not widely clinically available yet due to the lack of ability to interpret results on a clinical basis.

Desai AN, Jere A: Next-generation sequencing: ready for the clinics? Clin Genet 2012:81;6, 503–510 [PMID: 22375550].

Genetics and Its Clinical Applications

There are multiple reasons a patient may undergo genetic testing, and it's important for families to receive genetic counseling prior to testing to understand how that result may impact the patient and other family members.

Patients are often referred for genetic testing if they present with specific features of a known condition, if they have clinical characteristics but an unknown cause for those characteristics or because of a family history of a specific genetic condition. Genetic testing may confirm or identify a specific diagnosis, which can then be used to target specific treatments or interventions. Many families also feel a pressing need to know "why" a child has the condition they do; in some cases this may help alleviate feelings of guilt experienced by parents worrying there may have been something they did to cause a condition in their child. Even in cases where a genetic diagnosis does not alter treatments and interventions, some patients or families are seeking information about recurrence risks or information to allow prenatal or preimplantation genetic diagnosis.

In some genetic diagnoses, confirmation of a specific diagnosis results in additional recommendations for screening (laboratory and/or imaging studies) for additional medical complications. This can be seen in 22q11.2 deletion syndrome where those children are at risk for developmental

delays, speech and palate problems, cardiac malformations, immune dysfunction, hormone imbalances, and growth delays/short stature among many others. In other diagnoses, specific medical treatments are indicated which do not impact the gene itself, but are designed to minimize complications of the disorder. An example of this is Marfan syndrome where diagnosis indicates treatment with beta-blockers or an angiotensin-receptor blocker to prevent complications related to aortic dilation. In some inborn errors of metabolism, organ transplant can treat the disorder if the affected gene is expressed primarily in one organ (ie, liver transplantation in Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency). Finally, in rare genetic diagnoses, trials are underway to actually alter gene expression itself to ameliorate effects of the disease. An example of this is Duchenne muscular dystrophy, where treatment to induce exon skipping and help restore normal protein function is under investigation.

Pharmacogenomics is a new field offering enormous promise for predicting drug response in patients. For example, by DNA analysis of two specific genes, CYP2C9 and VKORC1, it is now possible to predict response to warfarin anticoagulation therapy and to individualize the dose, saving the patient multiple blood tests and dosage adjustments. It is also possible to predict which patients would be at risk for hearing loss after receiving aminoglycoside treatment, based on mutations in the mitochondrial 12S rRNA gene.

Personalized medicine is an advancing field of medicine that offers increased precision and effectiveness than traditional medicine. A patient's genomic information offers insight into the individual aspects of one's medical management. The goal is to optimize care and overall outcomes, one example being the aforementioned area of pharmacogenomics and potential therapeutic responses.

Genetic testing allows practitioners to test patients for a wide variety of genetic conditions. Advances in this area of medicine have included the advent of parents requesting testing for adult onset disease, carrier status, and disease susceptibility in their children. There are significant ethical and legal issues surrounding this topic. The American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and American Society of Human Genetics formed a consensus statement on the topic that educates families and health care providers on the potential negative impacts of such testing. In the face of whole exome or genome sequencing, single-gene analysis, and microarray analysis, carrier status for conditions may be revealed and this requires detailed genetic counseling. The decision-making capacity of the minor should also be taken into account where applicable.

Al-Zaidy S, Rondino-Klapac L, Mendell JR: Gene therapy for muscular dystrophy: moving the field forward. Pediatr Neurol 2014;51:607–618 [PMID: 25439576].

Friedman Ross L et al: Technical report: ethical and policy issues in genetic testing and screening of children. Genet Med 2013;15(3):234–245 [PMID: 23429433].

Lichter-Konecki U et al: Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency. 2013 Aug 29. In: Pagon RA et al, eds. GeneReviews®[Internet]. Seattle (WA): University of Washington, Seattle; 1993–2015. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK154378/.

Ma Q et al: Pharmacogenetics, pharmacogenomics, and individualized medicine. Pharmacol Rev 2011 Jun;63(2):437–459 [Epub 2011 Mar 24] [PMID: 21436344].

pr INCIp1 ES OF INh Er ITED h UmAN DISOr DEr S

MENDELIAN INHERITANCE

Autosomal single-gene disorders follow the principles explained by Gregor Mendel's observations. The inheritance of genetic traits through generations relies on segregation and independent assortment. **Segregation** is the process through which gene pairs are separated during gamete formation. Each gamete receives only one copy of each gene (allele). **Independent assortment** refers to the idea that the segregation of different alleles occurs independently.

Victor McKusick's catalog, Mendelian Inheritance in Man, lists more than 10,000 entries in which the mode of inheritance is presumed to be autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, X-linked dominant, X-linked recessive, and Y-linked. Single genes at specific loci on one or a pair of chromosomes cause these disorders. An understanding of inheritance terminology is helpful in approaching Mendelian disorders. Analysis of the pedigree and the pattern of transmission in the family, identification of a specific condition, and knowledge of that condition's mode of inheritance usually allow for explanation of the inheritance pattern.

Terminology

1. Dominant and Recessive—Concepts for dominant and recessive refer to the **phenotypic expression** of alleles and are not intrinsic characteristics of gene loci. Therefore, it is incorrect to discuss "a dominant locus."

2. Genotype—Genotype means the genetic status, that is, the alleles an individual carries.

3. Phenotype—Phenotype is the expression of an individual's genotype including appearance, physical features, organ structure, and biochemical and physiologic nature. It may be modified by environment.

4. Pleiotropy—Pleiotropy refers to the phenomenon whereby a single mutant allele can have widespread effects or expression in different tissues or organ systems. In other words, an allele may produce more than one effect on the phenotype. For example, Marfan syndrome has manifestations in different organ systems (skeletal, cardiac, ophthalmologic, etc) due to a single mutation within the fibrillin gene.

5. Penetrance—Penetrance refers to the proportion of individuals with a particular genotype that express the same phenotype. Penetrance is a proportion that ranges between 0 and 1 (or 0 and 100%). When 100% of mutant individuals express the phenotype, penetrance is **complete**. If some mutant individuals do not express the phenotype, penetrance is said to be **incomplete**, or **reduced**. Dominant conditions with incomplete penetrance, therefore, are characterized by "skipped" generations with unaffected, obligate gene carriers.

6. Expressivity—Expressivity refers to the variability in degree of phenotypic expression (severity) seen in different individuals with the same mutant genotype. Expressivity may be extremely variable or fairly consistent, both within and between families. Intrafamilial variability of expression may be due to factors such as epistasis, environment, genetic anticipation, presence of phenocopies, mosaicism, and chance (stochastic factors). Interfamilial variability of expression may be due to the previously mentioned factors, but may also be due to allelic or locus genetic heterogeneity. Expansion of this concept is frequently seen in newly described microdeletion and microduplication syndromes.

7. Genetic heterogeneity—Several different genetic mutations may produce phenotypes that are identical or similar enough to have been traditionally considered as one diagnosis. "Anemia" or "intellectual disability" are examples of the above concept. There are two types of genetic heterogeneity: locus heterogeneity and allelic heterogeneity.

a. Locus heterogeneity—Locus heterogeneity describes a phenotype caused by mutations at more than one genetic locus; that is, mutations at different loci cause the same phenotype or a group of phenotypes that appear similar enough to have been previously classified as a single disease, clinical "entity," or diagnostic spectrum. An example would be Sanfilippo syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis types IIIA, B, C, and D), in which the same phenotype is produced by four different enzyme deficiencies.

b. Allelic heterogeneity—A phenotype causing different mutations at a single-gene locus. As an example, cystic fibrosis may be caused by many different genetic changes, such as homozygosity for the common Δ F508 mutation, or ΔF508 and an R117H mutation. The latter example represents **compound heterozygosity**.

8. Phenotypic heterogeneity or "clinical heterogeneity"—This term describes the situation in which more than one phenotype is caused by different allelic mutations at a single locus. For example, different mutations in the FGFR2 gene can cause different craniosynostosis disorders, including Crouzon syndrome, Jackson-Weiss syndrome, Pfeiffer syndrome, and Apert syndrome. These syndromes are clinically distinguishable and are due to the presence of a variety of genetic mutations within a single gene.

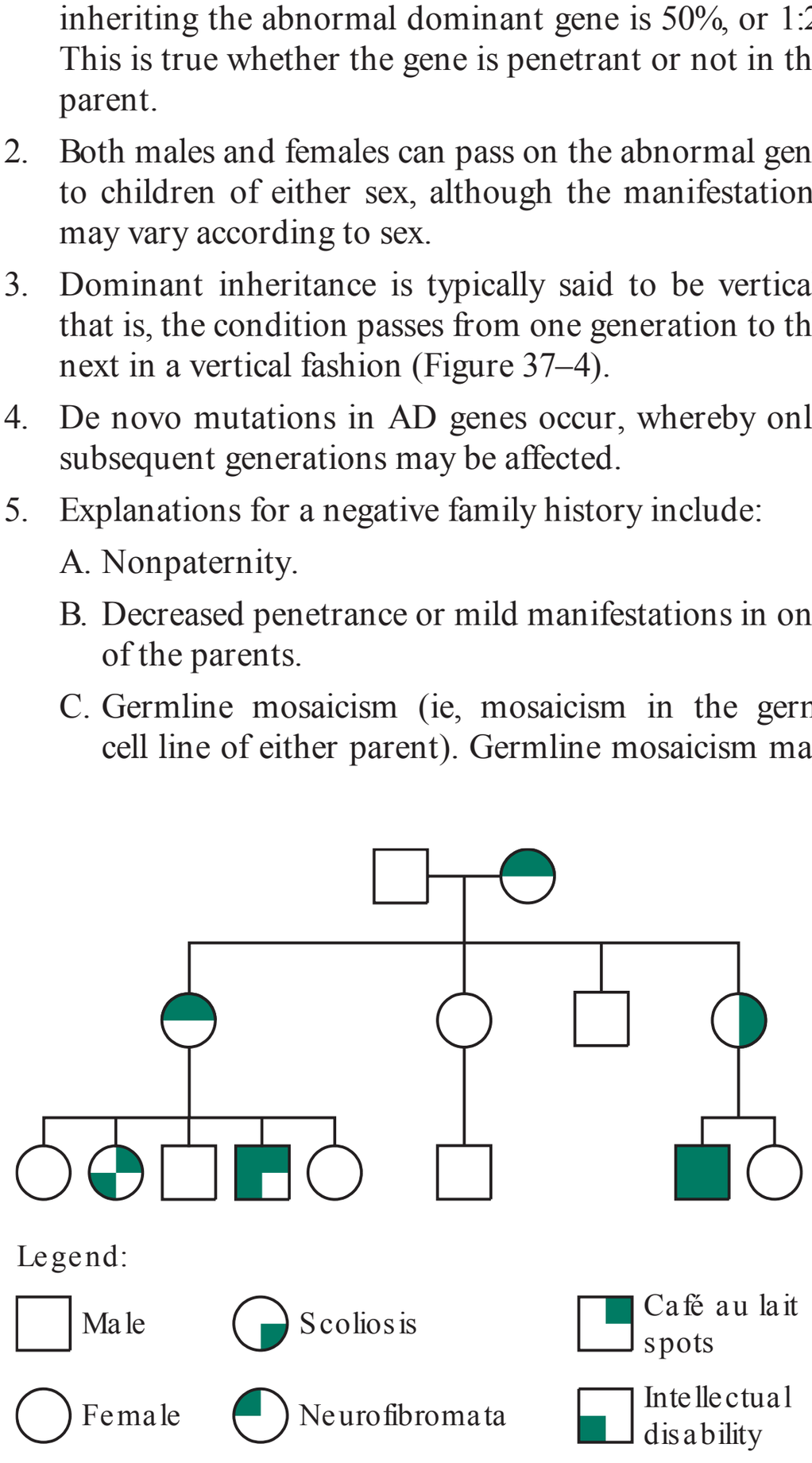
9. Homozygous—A cell or organism that has identical alleles at a particular locus is said to be homozygous. For example, a cystic fibrosis patient with a ΔF508 mutation on both alleles would be called homozygous for that mutation.

10. Heterozygous—A cell or organism that has nonidentical alleles at a genetic locus is said to be heterozygous. In autosomal dominant conditions, a mutation of only one copy of the gene pair is all that is necessary to result in a disease state. However, an individual who is heterozygous for a recessive disorder will not manifest symptoms.

Hereditary Patterns

A. Autosomal Dominant Inheritance

1. If a parent is affected, the risk for each offspring of inheriting the abnormal dominant gene is 50%, or 1:2. This is true whether the gene is penetrant or not in the parent.
2. Both males and females can pass on the abnormal gene to children of either sex, although the manifestations may vary according to sex.
3. Dominant inheritance is typically said to be vertical, that is, the condition passes from one generation to the next in a vertical fashion (Figure 37–4).
4. De novo mutations in AD genes occur, whereby only subsequent generations may be affected.
5. Explanations for a negative family history include:
   A. Nonpaternity.
   B. Decreased penetrance or mild manifestations in one of the parents.
   C. Germline mosaicism (ie, mosaicism in the germ cell line of either parent). Germline mosaicism may



▲**Figure 37–4.** Autosomal dominant inheritance. Variable expressivity in neurofibromatosis type 1.

mimic autosomal recessive inheritance, because it leads to situations in which two children of completely normal parents are affected with a genetic disorder. Recurrence risks are in the range of 1%–7%.

D. The abnormality present in the patient may be a phenocopy, or it may be a similar but genetically different abnormality with a different mode of inheritance.

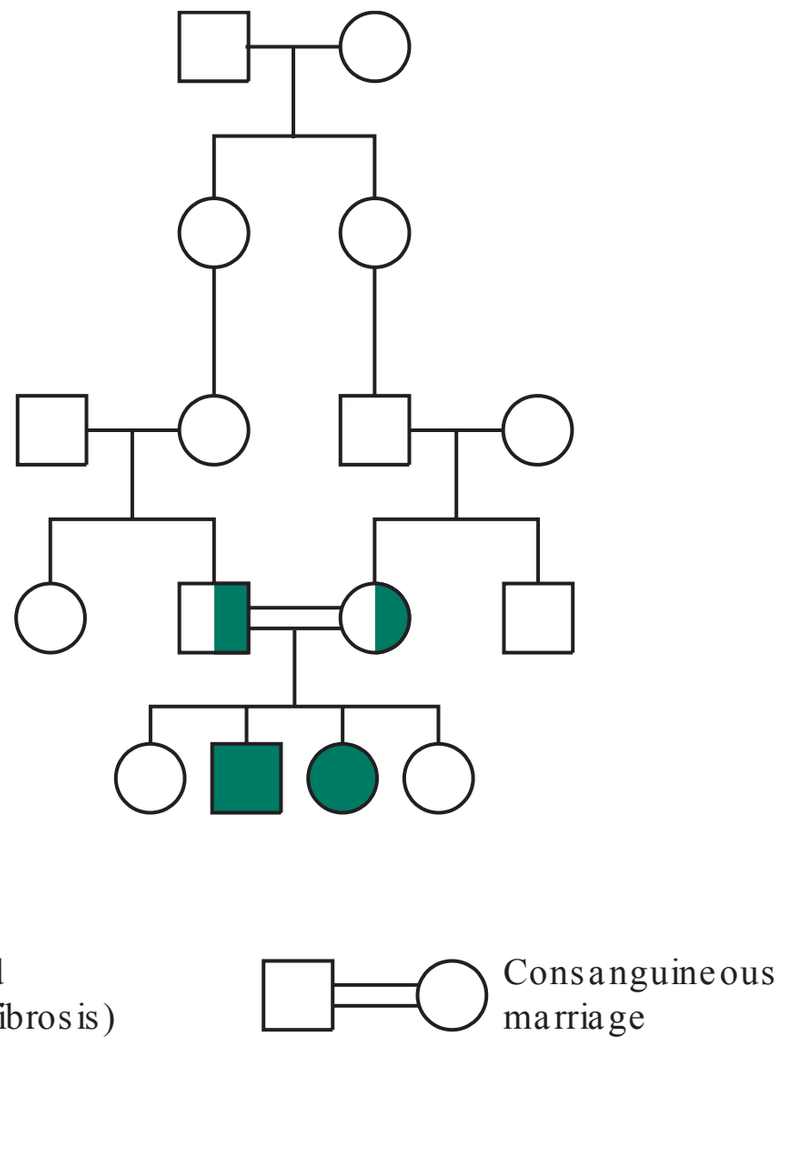
6. If an abnormality represents a new mutation of a dominant trait, the parents of the affected individual run a low risk during subsequent pregnancies. The risk for an affected sibling is still slightly increased over the general population, because of the possibility of germline mosaicism.

B. Autosomal Recessive Inheritance

1. The recurrence risk for parents of an affected child is 25%, or 1:4 for each pregnancy. The gene carrier frequency in the general population can be used to assess the risk of having an affected child with a new partner, for unaffected siblings, and for the affected individuals themselves.
2. Parents are carriers and are clinically normal. (There are, however, exceptions to this rule. For example, carriers of sickle cell trait may become symptomatic if they become hypoxic.)
3. Males and females are affected equally.
4. Inheritance is horizontal; siblings may be affected (Figure 37–5).
5. The family history is usually negative, with the exception of siblings.
6. In rare instances, a child with a recessive disorder and a normal karyotype may have inherited both copies of the abnormal gene from one parent and none from the other. The topic of uniparental disomy was addressed earlier in the chapter.

C. X-Linked Inheritance

When a gene for a disorder is on the X chromosome, the condition is said to be X-linked. Females may be either homozygous or heterozygous, because they have two X chromosomes. Males have only one X, and are hemizygous for any gene on his X chromosome. The severity of an X-linked disorder is generally greater in males than in females. According to the Lyon hypothesis, because one of the two X chromosomes in each cell is inactivated, and this inactivation is random, the clinical picture in females depends on the percentage of mutant versus normal alleles inactivated. The X chromosome is not inactivated until about 14 days of gestation, and parts of the short arm remain active throughout life.

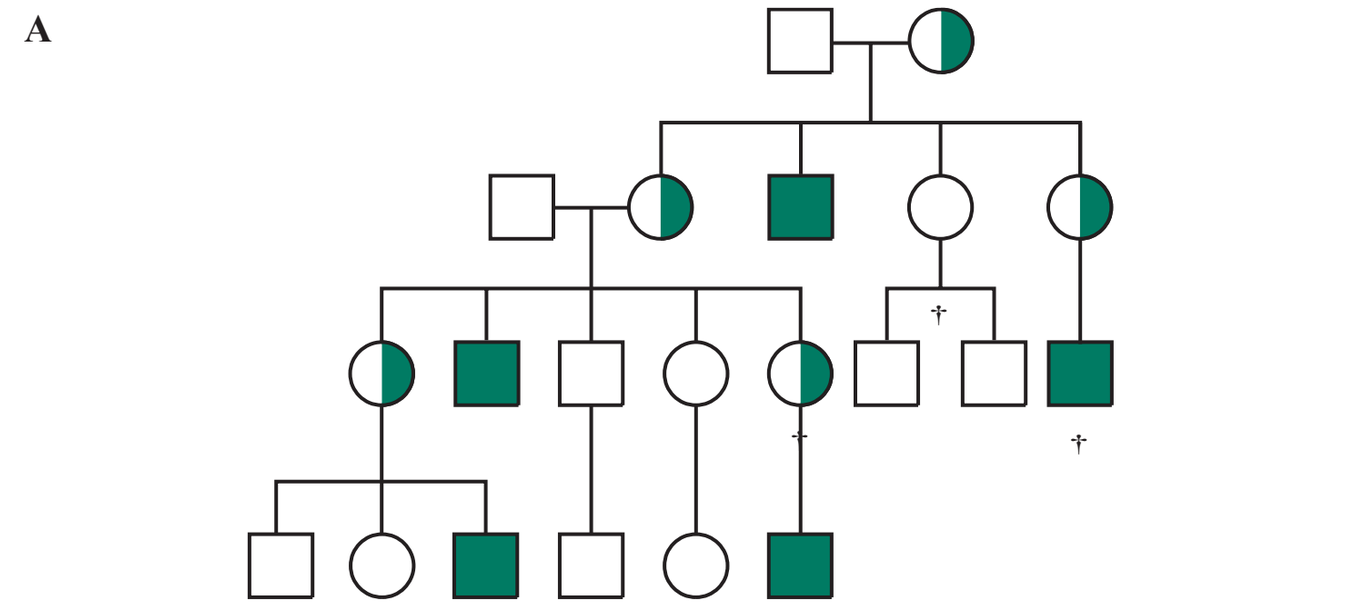


▲**Figure 37–5.** Autosomal recessive inheritance: cystic fibrosis.

1. X-linked recessive inheritance—The following features are characteristic of X-linked recessive inheritance:

1. Males are affected, and heterozygous females are either normal or have mild manifestations.
2. Inheritance is diagonal through the maternal side of the family (Figure 37–6A).
3. A female carrier has a 50% chance that each daughter will be a carrier and a 50% chance that each son will be affected.
4. All of the daughters of an affected male are carriers, and none of his sons are affected.
5. Occasionally a female may be fully affected. Several possible mechanisms may account for a fully affected female: (aa.) skewed X-inactivation; (bb.) 45,X karyotype; (cc.) homozygosity for the abnormal gene; (dd.) an X-autosome translocation, or other structural abnormality of one X chromosome, in which the X chromosome of normal structure is preferentially inactivated; (ee.) UPD; and (ff.) nonrandom inactivation, which may be controlled by an autosomal gene.

2. X-linked dominant inheritance—The X-linked dominant inheritance pattern is less common than the X-linked recessive type. Examples include incontinentia pigmenti and hypophosphatemic or vitamin D–resistant rickets. The following features are characteristic of X-linked dominant inheritance:



▲**Figure 37–6.** **A**: X-linked recessive inheritance. **B:** X-linked dominant inheritance.

1. The heterozygous female is symptomatic, and the disease is twice as common in females.
2. Clinical manifestations are more variable in females than in males.
3. The risk for the offspring of heterozygous females to be affected is 50% regardless of sex.
4. All of the daughters but none of the sons of affected males will have the disorder (Figure 37–6B).
5. Although a homozygous female is possible (particularly in an inbred population), she would be severely involved. All of her children would also be affected.
6. Some disorders (eg, incontinentia pigmenti) are lethal in males (and in homozygous females). Affected women have twice as many daughters as sons and an increased incidence of miscarriages, because affected males will be spontaneously aborted. A 47,XXY karyotype has allowed affected males to survive.

D. Y-Linked Inheritance

In Y-linked inheritance, also known as "holandric" inheritance, a disorder is caused by genes located on the Y chromosome. These conditions are relatively rare with only

about 40 entries listed in the McKusick's catalog. Male-to-male transmission is seen in this category, with all sons of affected males being affected and no daughters or females being affected.

MULTIFACTORIAL INHERITANCE

Many general population attributes, such as height, are familial and are the result of the actions of multiple rather than single genes. Inheritance of these traits is described as **polygenic** or **multifactorial**. The latter term recognizes that environmental factors such as diet also contribute to these traits. Genetic testing for these conditions is not available.

Many disorders and congenital abnormalities that are clearly familial but do not segregate as Mendelian traits (eg, autosomal dominant, recessive) show polygenic inheritance. For the most part, these conditions become manifest when thresholds of additive gene actions or contributing environmental factors are exceeded. Many common disorders ranging from hypertension, stroke, and thrombophlebitis to behavioral traits such as alcoholism demonstrate multifactorial (polygenic) inheritance. Some common birth defects, including isolated congenital heart disease, cleft lip and palate, and neural tube defects, also demonstrate polygenic inheritance. Polygenic or multifactorial inheritance has several distinctive characteristics:

1. The risk for relatives of affected persons is increased. The risk is higher for first-degree relatives (those who have 50% of their genes in common) and lower for more distant relations, although the risk for the latter is higher than for the general population (Table 37–1).
2. The risk is higher if the defect is more severe. In Hirschsprung disease, the longer the aganglionic segment, the higher the recurrence risk.
3. Sex ratios may not be equal. If a marked discrepancy exists, the recurrence risk is higher if a child of the less commonly affected sex has the disorder. This assumes that more genetic factors are required to raise the more resistant sex above the threshold. For example, pyloric stenosis is more common in males. If the first affected child is a female, the recurrence risk is higher than if the child is a male.

NONMENDELIAN INHERITANCE

Epigenetic Regulation

Although development is regulated by genes, it is initiated and sustained by nongenetic processes. Epigenetic events are functionally relevant changes to the genome that are independent of changes in the primary DNA sequence. Genetic imprinting and DNA methylation are examples of epigenetic processes that affect development. Certain genes important in regulation of growth and differentiation are themselves

Table 37–1. Empiric risks for some congenital disorders.

Anencephaly and spina bifida: incidence (average) 1:1000	
One affected child: 2%–3%	
Two affected children: 10%–12%	
One affected parent: 4%–5%	
Hydrocephalus: incidence 1:2000 newborns	
Occasional X-linked recessive	
Often associated with neural tube defect	
Some environmental etiologies (eg, toxoplasmosis)	
Recurrence risk, one affected child	
Hydrocephalus: 1%	
Some central nervous system abnormality: 3%	
Nonsyndromic cleft lip and/or palate: incidence (average) 1:1000	
One affected child: 2%–4%	
One affected parent: 2%–4%	
Two affected children: 10%	
One affected parent, one affected child: 10%–20%	
Nonsyndromic cleft palate: incidence 1:2000	
One affected child: 2%	
Two affected children: 6%–8%	
One affected parent: 4%–6%	
One affected parent, one affected child: 15%–20%	
Congenital heart disease: incidence 8:1000	
One affected child: 2%–3%	
One affected parent, one affected child: 10%	
Clubfoot: incidence 1:1000 (male:female = 2:1)	
One affected child: 2%–3%	
Congenital dislocated hip: incidence 1:1000 (female > male) with marked regional variation	
One child affected: 2%–14%	
Pyloric stenosis: Incidence, males: 1:200; females: 1:1000	
Male index patient	
Brothers	3.2%
Sons	6.8%
Sisters	3.0%
Daughters	1.2%
Female index patient	
Brothers	13.2%
Sons	20.5%
Sisters	2.5%
Daughters	11.1%

regulated by chemical modification that occurs in specific patterns in gametes. Certain techniques developed to assist infertile couples (advanced reproductive technology) may affect epigenetic processes and lead to genetic disorders in the offspring conceived via these methods.

Storey KB: Regulation of hypometabolism: insights into epigenetic controls. J Exp Biol 2015 Jan 1;218(Pt 1):150–159 [PMID: 25568462].

Imprinting

The parental origin of chromosome pairs can affect which genes are actually transcribed and which are inactivated. The term imprinting refers to the process by which preferential transcription of certain genes takes place. Certain chromosomes, particularly chromosome X, 15, 11, and 7, have imprinted regions where some genes are only read from one homolog (ie, either the maternal or paternal allele) under normal circumstances, and the gene on the other homolog is typically inactivated. Errors in imprinting may arise because of UPD (in which a copy from one parent is missing), chromosomal deletion causing loss of the gene normally transcribed, mutations in the imprinting genes that normally code for transcription, or inactivation of other genes downstream. A good example of how imprinting may affect human disease is Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, the gene for which is located on chromosome 11p15.

Ko JM: Genetic Syndromes Associated with Overgrowth in Childhood. Ann Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2013 Sep;18(3):101–105 [PMID: 2494861].

Genetic Anticipation

Geneticists coined the term "anticipation" to describe an unusual pattern of inheritance in which symptoms became manifest at earlier ages and with increasing severity as traits are passed to subsequent generations. Mapping of the genes responsible for these disorders led to the discovery that certain repeat sequences of DNA at disease loci were not stable when passed through meiosis. Repeated DNA sequences, in particular triplets (eg, CGG and CAG), tended to increase their copy number. As these runs of triplets expanded, they eventually affect the expression of genes and produce symptoms. Disorders undergoing triplet repeat expansion detected thus far produce primarily neurologic symptoms. Most conditions are progressive. The size of the triplet expansion is roughly correlated with the timing and severity of symptoms. The reasons for the meiotic instability of these sequences are not yet understood. The mechanisms appear to involve interactions between DNA structure (eg, formation of hairpin loops) and replication enzymes (DNA polymerase complexes) during meiosis.

Triplet repeat instability can modify the inheritance of autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, and X-linked traits. Autosomal dominant disorders include several spinal cerebellar atrophies, Huntington disease, and myotonic dystrophy. Unstable triplet repeat expansion contributes to at least one autosomal recessive disorder, Friedreich ataxia. The most common X-linked disorder demonstrating triplet repeat instability and expansion is Fragile X syndrome.

Mitochondrial Inheritance

Mitochondrial disorders can be caused by both nuclear and mitochondrial genes. The former would follow Mendelian inheritance, either AR, AD, or X-linked, while the latter demonstrates mitochondrial inheritance. Mitochondrial DNA is double-stranded, 16,569 base pair, circular, and smaller than nuclear DNA, and is found in the cytoplasm. It codes for 13 gene products involved in oxidative phosphorylation and electron transport.

Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) can sustain pathogenic point mutations, deletions, or duplications. However, there is a threshold effect depending on the heteroplasmy. Due to the difficulty in diagnosing mitochondrial DNA disorders, and the variability of the clinical course, it is often difficult to calculate specific recurrence risks.

Mitochondrial disorders related to mtDNA have the following characteristics:

1. Remarkable phenotypic variability.
2. Maternally inheritance (only the egg has any cytoplasmic material, and during early embryogenesis any sperm-born mitochondrial material will be eliminated).
3. In most mitochondrial disorders, cells are heteroplasmic: cells contain both normal and mutated or abnormal mtDNA (Figure 37–7). The proportion of normal

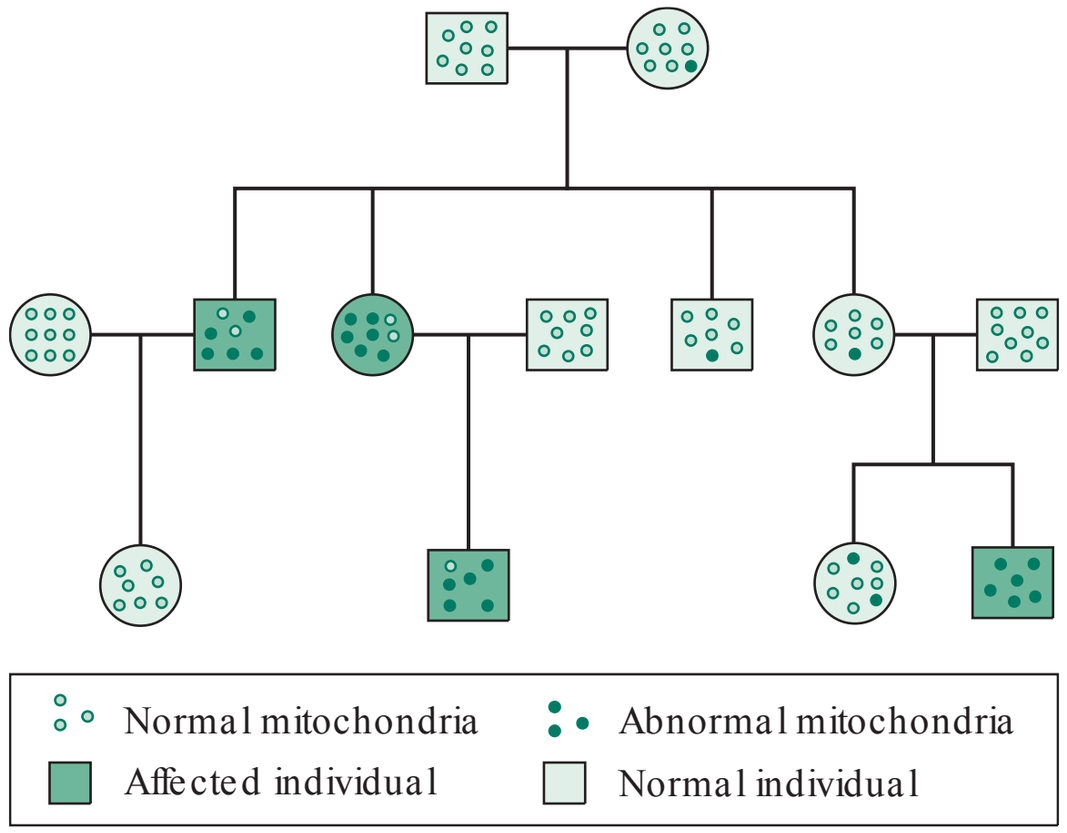


Figure 37–7. Mitochondrial inheritance. Mutations are transmitted through the maternal line.

to abnormal mtDNA in the mother's egg seems to determine the severity of the offspring's disease and the age at onset in most cases.

4. Those tissues with the highest adenosine triphosphate/energy requirements—specifically, central nervous system (CNS) and skeletal muscle—appear most susceptible to mutations in mtDNA.
5. Somatic cells show an increase in mtDNA mutations and a decline in oxidative phosphorylation function with age. This explains the later onset of some of these disorders and may indeed be a clue to the whole aging process.

Copeland WC, Longley MJ: Mitochondrial genome maintenance in health and disease. DNA Repair (Amst) 2014 Jul;19:190–198 [PMID: 24780559].

Wong LJ et al: Current molecular diagnostic algorithm for mitochondrial disorders. Mol Genet Metab 2010 Jun;100(2):111–117 [PMID: 20359921].

FAMILY HISTORY & PEDIGREE

Critical in the evaluation of a potential genetic condition is the construction of a family tree, also known as a pedigree. Underused by most medical personnel, the pedigree is a valuable record of genetic and medical information, which is much more useful in visual form than in list form. Tips for pedigree preparation include the following:

- Start with the proband—the patient's siblings and parents, and obtain a three-generational history at minimum, when possible.
- Always ask about consanguinity in a nonjudgmental manner.
- Obtain data from both sides of the family.
- Ask about spontaneous abortions, stillbirths, infertility, children relinquished for adoption, and deceased individuals.

In the course of taking the family history, one may find information that is not relevant in elucidating the cause of the patients' problem but may indicate a risk for other important health concerns. Conditions unrelated to the chief complaint should be directed for follow-up care. Examples of the latter scenario include: an overwhelming family history of early-onset breast and ovarian cancer, or multiple pregnancy losses.

Bennett RL et al: Standardized human pedigree nomenclature: update and assessment of the recommendations of the National Society of genetic counselors. J Genet Couns 2008;17:424–433 [PMID: 18792771].

He D et al: IPED2X: A robust pedigree reconstruction algorithm for complicated pedigrees. J Bioinform Comput Biol 2014 Dec;12(6):1442007 [PMID: 25553812].

DYSMORPHOLOGY & HUMAN EMBRYOLOGY

Birth defects are the leading cause of death in the first year of life. They are evident in 2%–3% of newborn infants and in up to 7% of adults. Many are detected by prenatal ultrasound. Clinical investigation of the causes and consequences of birth defects is called dysmorphology.

MECHANISMS

Developmental Biology

Cell proliferation and programmed cell death (apoptosis) both contribute to embryonic structural formation. Products of other genes establish regulatory pathways in which positive and negative signaling loops initiate and maintain cell differentiation with precise timing. Further understanding of these mechanisms may lead to interventions that could prevent birth defects or potentially provide treatment prenatally. An example of the evolution of the aforementioned process is fetal surgery for neural tube defects.

Cellular Interactions

The picture emerging from experimental studies of morphogenesis is one of a hierarchy of gene expression during development. Morphogenesis begins with expression of genes encoding transcription factors. These proteins bind to DNA in undifferentiated embryonic cells and recruit them into developmental fields, groups of cells primed to respond to specific signals later in development. The recruitment also establishes spatial relationships and orients cells with respect to their neighbors. As fields differentiate into identifiable tissues (eg, ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm), cellular proliferation, migration, and further differentiation are mediated through genes-encoding cell-signaling proteins.

Signaling proteins include growth factors and their receptors, cellular adhesion molecules, and extracellular matrix proteins that both provide structure and position signals to developing tissues. Genetic mutations that alter these pathways can yield genetic disease.

Environmental Factors

The effects of exogenous agents during development are also mediated through genetically regulated pathways. At the cellular level, compounds foreign to nature cause birth defects either because they disrupt cell signaling and thereby misdirect morphogenesis, or because they are cytotoxic and lead to cell death in excess of the usual developmental program.

In general, drug receptors expressed in embryos and fetuses are the same molecules that mediate pharmacologic effects in adults. However, effector systems may be different, reflecting incomplete morphogenesis and differences between fetal and postnatal physiology. These circumstances allow prediction of dose-response relationships

during development on the one hand, but call for caution about predicting effects on the other.

Over-the-counter, prescribed, and abused drugs that are pharmacologically active in mothers will be active across the placenta. Exposure to agents achieving cytotoxic levels in adults are likely to be teratogenic (ie, cause birth defects). Abused substances such as alcohol that are toxic to adults are predictably toxic to embryos and fetuses. Drugs generally safe in adults will be generally safe for fetuses. An exception is ibuprofen with its prostaglandin blocking properties that can affect fetal circulation, which is prostaglandin dependent. It is important to keep in mind that embryonic and fetal physiology may differ from that of an adult with respect to drug action.

Effects of toxic environmental contaminants on the embryo and fetus are dose-dependent. Thus, the level of exposure to a toxin frequently becomes the primary determinant of its risk.

Transplacental pharmacologic effects can be therapeutic. The potential for embryonic and fetal drug therapies during pregnancy is increasing. Folic acid supplementation can lower risks for birth defects such as spina bifida, and maternally administered corticosteroids can induce fetal synthesis and secretion of pulmonary surfactants prior to delivery.

Mechanical Factors

Much of embryonic development and all of fetal growth occurs normally within the low pressure and space provided by amniotic fluid. Loss or inadequate production of amniotic fluid can have disastrous effects, as can disruption of placental membranes. Disruption of placental membranes in early gestation leads to major structural distortion and most often lethal. Later, deformation or even amputation of fetal extremities (amniotic band sequence) can occur.

Movement is also important for morphogenesis. Fetal movement is necessary for normal development of joints and is the principal determinant of folds and creases present at birth in the face, hands, feet, and other areas of the body. Clubfoot is an etiologically heterogeneous condition in which the foot is malpositioned at birth. It more often results from mechanical constraint secondary to intrauterine crowding, weak fetal muscles, or abnormal neurologic function than from primary skeletal development.

Lung and kidney development are particularly sensitive to mechanical forces. Constriction of the chest through malformation of the ribs, lack of surrounding amniotic fluid, or lack of movement (fetal breathing) leads to varying degrees of pulmonary hypoplasia in which lungs are smaller than normal and develop fewer alveoli. The presentation at birth is respiratory distress and may be lethal.

Cystic renal dysplasia is frequently associated with obstruction ureters or bladder outflow. As pressure within obstructed renal collecting systems increases, it distorts cell interactions and alters histogenesis. Developing kidneys exposed to increased internal pressures for long periods eventually become nonfunctional.

CLINICAL DYSMORPHOLOGY

An important task for the clinician presented with an infant with a birth defect is to determine whether the problem is isolated or part of a larger embryopathy (or syndrome).

Terminology

Classification of dysmorphic features strives to reflect mechanisms of abnormal development. Birth defects are referred to as **malformations** when they result from altered genetic or developmental processes. When physical forces interrupt or distort morphogenesis, their effects are termed **disruptions** and **deformations**, respectively. The term **dysplasia** is used to denote abnormal histogenesis. Malformations occurring together more frequently than would be expected by chance alone may be classified as belonging to **associations**. Those in which the order of maldevelopment is understood may be referred to as **sequences**. For example, Robin sequence (or Pierre Robin anomaly) is used to describe cleft palate that has occurred because poor growth of the jaw (retrognathia) has displaced the tongue and prevented posterior closure of the palate. **Syndromes** are simply recurrent patterns of maldevelopment, with a known genetic cause.

Evaluation of the Dysmorphic Infant

History and physical examinations provide most of the clues to diagnosis. Special aspects of these procedures in a clinical genetics setting are outlined in the following sections. The extent of an infant's abnormalities may not be immediately apparent, and parents who feel grief and guilt are often desperate for information.

A. History

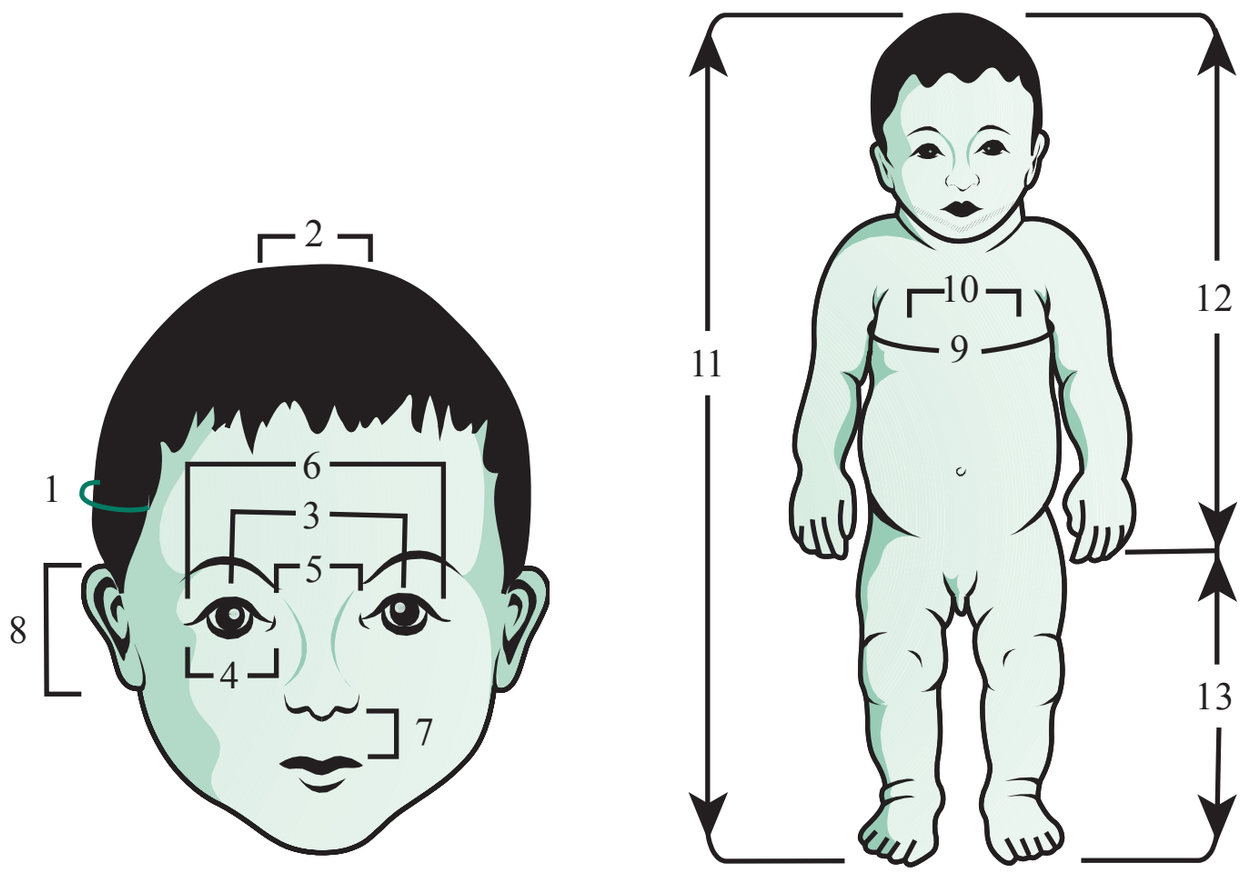
Pregnancy histories are a critical part of the history intake. Review of gestational age, intrauterine drug exposure, prenatal complications, and prenatal testing is important. Family histories are preferred in pedigree formation. Environmental histories should include descriptions of parental habits and work settings. Targeted histories, based on chief complaint should be obtained with past medical and surgical histories, developmental history, and review of systems.

B. Physical Examination

Meticulous physical examination is crucial for accurate diagnosis in dysmorphic infants and children. In addition to the routine procedures described in Chapter 2, special attention should be paid to the patient's physical measurements (Figure 37–8). Photographs are helpful and should include a consistent method of measurement for reference.

C. Imaging and Laboratory Studies

Radiologic investigation is fundamental in the assessment and management of dysmorphic patients. A series of 9 plain



Measurement	Range (cm)	
	Term (38–40 wk)	Preterm (32–37 wk)
1 Head circumference	32–37	27–32
2 Anterior fontanelle $\left(\frac{L-W}{2}\right)$	0.7–3.7	. . .
3 Interpupillary distance	3.3–4.5	3.1–3.9
4 Palpebral fissure	1.5–2.1	1.3–1.6
5 Inner canthal distance	1.5–2.5	1.4–2.1
6 Outer canthal distance	5.3–7.3	3.9–5.1
7 Philtrum	0.6–1.2	0.5–0.9
8 Ear length	3–4.3	2.4–3.5
9 Chest circumference	28–38	23–29
10 Internipple distance[a]	6.5–10	5–6.5
11 Height	47–55	39–47
12 / 13 Ratio $\frac{\text{Upper body segment}}{\text{Lower body segment}}$	1.7	. . .
14 Hand (palm to middle finger)	5.3–7.8	4.1–5.5
15 Ratio of middle finger to hand	0.38–0.48	0.38–0.5
16 Penis (pubic bone to tip of glans)	2.7–4.3	1.8–3.2

[a]Internipple distance should not exceed 25% of chest circumference.

▲**Figure 37–8.** Neonatal measurements.

radiographs, called a skeletal survey, is useful in the evaluation of patients with suspected skeletal dysplasia. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), with or without angiogram, venogram, or spectroscopy, contributes to diagnostic evaluation when clinically indicated. Computed tomography (CT) is useful for bony structure assessment, but less so for deep tissue evaluation in comparison to MRI. Ultrasonography also has case-dependent utility for noninvasive imaging. Evaluation of high risk sacral dimpling is generally performed via ultrasound in infants 3–6 months of age. Institutions vary on the cutoff age. Consultation with a radiologist is encouraged if there is any question about which imaging modality would serve the patient best.

Traditional cytogenetic analysis provides specific diagnoses in approximately 5% of dysmorphic infants who survive the neonatal period. Chromosomal abnormalities are recognized in 10%–15% of infants who die. With the availability of chromosomal microarray, at least 10%–15% additional subtle chromosomal anomalies have been identified. Of note, many copy number variations (CNVs) exist in different individuals; therefore, interpretation is sometimes difficult and may require parental samples for clarification. Common disorders such as trisomies 21, 13, and 18 can be determined rapidly (48–72 hours) through use of FISH, but this technique should be accompanied by a complete karyotype. As a rule, a normal karyotype does not rule out the presence of significant genetic disease. Any case requiring rapid diagnosis should be discussed with an experienced clinical geneticist.

Benachi A, Sarnacki S: Prenatal counseling and the role of the paediatric surgeon. Semin Pediatr Surg 2014 Oct;23(5):240–243 [PMID: 25459006].

Chromosomal Disorders: Abnormal Number

TRISOMIES

1. Trisomy 21 (Down Syndrome)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Characteristic features include upslanting palpebral fissures, epicanthal folds, midface hypoplasia, and small, dysplastic pinnae.
- Generalized hypotonia.
- Cognitive disabilities (usually mild to moderate).
- Associated with congenital heart disease and gastrointestinal anomalies.

Down syndrome occurs in about 1:700 newborns. Cognitive disabilities in the mild/moderate range are characteristic of Down syndrome, as is generalized hypotonia. The affected newborn may have prolonged physiologic jaundice, and transient blood count abnormalities. Feeding problems and constipation are common during infancy. Problems which may develop during childhood include thyroid dysfunction, visual issues, hearing loss, obstructive sleep apnea, celiac disease, atlanto-occipital instability, and autism. Leukemia is 12–20 times more common in patients with Down syndrome.

Clinical Findings

The principal physical findings include a flattened occiput, characteristic facies (upslanting palpebral fissures, epicanthal folds, midface hypoplasia, and small, dysplastic pinnae), and minor limb abnormalities. About one-third to one-half of children with Down syndrome have congenital heart disease, most often endocardial cushion defects or other septal defects. Anomalies of the gastrointestinal tract, including esophageal and duodenal atresias, are seen in about 15% of cases.

Clinical Report: Health Supervision for Children with Down Syndrome, Marilyn Bull and the Committee on Genetics. Pediatrics 2011:128;393–406 [PMID: 21788214].

Information regarding healthcare guidelines for patients with Down syndrome. http://www.downsyn.com/guidelines/healthcare.html.

2. Trisomy 18 Syndrome

The incidence of trisomy 18 syndrome is about 1:4000 live births, and the ratio of affected males to females is approximately 1:3. Trisomy 18 is characterized by prenatal and postnatal growth retardation, which is often severe, and hypertonicity. Complications are related to associated anomalies. Death is often caused by heart failure or pneumonia and usually occurs in infancy or early childhood, although a small percentage of patients reach adulthood. Surviving children show significant cognitive disabilities.

Clinical Findings

Infants with trisomy 18 are often small for gestational age and have dysmorphic features including a characteristic facies and extremities (overlapping fingers and rocker-bottom feet) and congenital heart disease (often ventricular septal defect or patent ductus arteriosus). To see clinical pictures of patients with trisomy 18, visit the following website: http://medgen.genetics.utah.edu/photographs/pages/trisomy_18.htm.

3. Trisomy 13 Syndrome

The incidence of trisomy 13 is about 1 per 12,000 live births, and 60% of affected individuals are female. Most infants with trisomy 13 have congenital anomalies that are incompatible with survival. Surviving children demonstrate failure to thrive, cognitive disabilities, apneic spells, seizures, and deafness. Death usually occurs in early infancy or by the second year of life, commonly as a result of heart failure or infection.

» Clinical Findings

The symptoms and signs include characteristic features, often a normal birth weight, CNS malformations, eye malformations, cleft lip and palate, polydactyly or syndactyly, and congenital heart disease. The facies of an infant with trisomy 13 can be viewed at the following website: www.trisomy.org.

» Treatment of Trisomies

A. Medical Therapy

Trisomy 21: Interventions for specific issues such as surgical intervention for cardiac and GI anomalies, screening for autoimmune disorders such as hypothyroidism and celiac disease, developmental supports such as infant stimulation programs, special education, and physical, occupational, and speech therapies are all indicated. The goal of treatment is to help affected children develop to their full potential. Parents' participation in support groups such as the local chapter of the National Down Syndrome Congress should be encouraged. See the following website: http://www.ndss.org/.

There is no treatment other than general supportive care for Trisomy 13 or 18. Rapid confirmation of suspected Trisomy 13 or 18 can be made by FISH. A support group for families of children with trisomies 13 and 18 who survive beyond infancy is called SOFT. See the following website: http://www.trisomy.org/.

B. Genetic Counseling

Most parents of trisomic infants have normal karyotypes. The risk of having a child affected with a trisomy increases with maternal age. For example, age-specific risks are approximately 1 per 1500 for mothers aged 25 years; and 1 per 100 for mothers at age 40. The recurrence risk for trisomy in future pregnancies is equal to 1 per 100 plus the age-specific maternal risk.

If the child has a trisomy resulting from a translocation, and the parent has an abnormal karyotype, the risks are increased. When the mother is the carrier of a balanced Robertsonian translocation, there is a 10%–15% chance that the child will be affected and a 33% chance that the child will be a balanced translocation carrier. When the father is the carrier, there is a smaller than 0.5% chance of having another affected child. If the child has a 21/21 translocation and one parent has the translocation, the recurrence risk is 100%.

SEX CHROMOSOME ABNORMALITIES

1. Turner Syndrome (Monosomy X, Gonadal Dysgenesis)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Webbed neck, triangular facies, short stature, wide-set nipples, amenorrhea, and absence of secondary sex characteristics.
- » Associated with coarctation of the aorta and genitourinary malformations.
- » IQ is usually normal but learning disabilities are common.
- » Mosaic individuals may manifest only short stature and amenorrhea.

The incidence of Turner syndrome is 1 per 10,000 females. However, it is estimated that 95% of conceptuses with monosomy X are miscarried and only 5% are liveborn.

» Clinical Findings

Newborns with Turner syndrome may have webbed neck, edema of the hands and feet, coarctation of the aorta, and a characteristic triangular facies. Other findings in older girls may include short stature, a shield chest with wide-set nipples, streak ovaries, amenorrhea, absence of secondary sex characteristics, and infertility. Some affected girls, particularly those with mosaicism, have only short stature and amenorrhea, without dysmorphic features. Learning disabilities are common, secondary to difficulties in perceptual motor integration.

» Treatment

Academic supports for learning issues perceptual difficulties are important. Hormonal treatment includes estrogen therapy, which permits development of secondary sex characteristics and normal menstruation, and prevents osteoporosis. Growth hormone therapy is also used to increase the height of affected girls. Females with 45,X or 45,X mosaicism have a low fertility rate, and those who become pregnant have a high risk of fetal wastage (spontaneous miscarriage, ~30%; stillbirth, 6%–10%). Furthermore, their liveborn offspring

have an increased frequency of chromosomal abnormalities involving either sex chromosomes or autosomes and congenital malformations. Thus, prenatal ultrasonography and chromosome analysis are indicated for the offspring of females with sex chromosome abnormalities.

2. Klinefelter Syndrome (XXY)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Diagnosis is rarely made before puberty.
- Key findings include microorchidism; lack of libido; minimal facial hair; and tall, eunuchoid build.
- IQ can vary (normal to borderline with a small percentage showing cognitive disabilities).

The incidence of Klinefelter syndrome in the newborn population is roughly 1 per 1000, but it is about 1% among intellectual disabilities males and about 3% among males seen at infertility clinics. The maternal age at birth is often advanced. Unlike Turner syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome is rarely the cause of spontaneous abortions. The diagnosis is seldom made before puberty except as a result of prenatal diagnosis, because prepubertal boys have a normal phenotype.

» Clinical Findings

The characteristic findings after puberty include small testicles associated with otherwise normal external genitalia, azoospermia, sterility, gynecomastia, normal to borderline IQ, diminished facial hair, and a tall, eunuchoid build. In chromosome variants with three or four X chromosomes (XXXY and XXXXY), intellectual disabilities may be severe, and skeletal and genital anomalies may be present. In general, the physical and mental abnormalities associated with Klinefelter syndrome increase as the number of sex chromosomes increases.

» Treatment

Males with Klinefelter syndrome require testosterone replacement therapy. The presence of the extra X chromosome may allow expression of what might normally be a lethal X-linked disorder to occur.

3. XYY Syndrome

Newborns with XYY syndrome in general are normal. Affected individuals may on occasion exhibit an abnormal behavior pattern from early childhood and may have mild intellectual disabilities. Fertility may be normal. Many males with an XYY karyotype are normal. There is no treatment.

4. XXX Syndrome

The incidence of females with an XXX karyotype is approximately 1 per 1000. Females with XXX are phenotypically normal. However, they tend to be taller than usual and to have lower IQs than their normal siblings. Learning and behavioral issues are relatively common. This is in contrast to individuals with XXXX, a much rarer condition causing more severe developmental issues, and a dysmorphic phenotype reminiscent of Down syndrome.

Jones KL: Smith's Recognizable Patterns of Human Malformation. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2013.

o Chr OmOSOmAl ABNOr mAl ITIES: ABNOr mAl STr UCTUr E

Chromosomal abnormalities most often present in newborns as multiple congenital anomalies in association with intrauterine growth retardation. In addition to trisomies as just described, other more subtle chromosomal abnormalities are also common. In some cases, a chromosomal rearrangement is too subtle to be detected by karyotype. The current technology, comparative genomic hybridization array (microarray), enables screening for multiple submicroscopic chromosomal abnormalities simultaneously, and is a very helpful tool in evaluating the child with a suspected chromosomal abnormality.

Although most cases of severe chromosomal abnormality such as trisomy are lethal, some individuals may survive if the abnormality exists in mosaic form. Two examples of this include trisomy 8 and Cat eye syndrome, caused by extra genetic material, which is derived from a portion of chromosome 22.

Miller DT et al: Consensus statement: chromosomal microarray is a first-tier clinical diagnostic test for individuals with developmental disabilities or congenital anomalies. Am J Hum Genet 2010;86:749–764 [PMID: 20466091].

Moeschler JB, Shevell M; Committee on Genetics: Comprehensive evaluation of the child with intellectual disability or global developmental delays. Pediatrics 2014; 134(3):e903–e918 [PMID: 25157020].

o Chr OmOSOmE DEl ETION DISOr DEr S

Three common chromosomal deletion disorders that were previously detected on routine karyotype analysis, and

confirmed via FISH assay, but are now detected with microarray, are 1p36- syndrome, Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome (4p-), and cri du chat syndrome (5p-). Microdeletion or contiguous gene syndrome are referring to those small deletion not readily picked up by karyotype but detected by microarray or FISH.

1. Deletion 1p36 Syndrome

Microcephaly and a large anterior fontanelle are characteristic features of 1p36- syndrome. Cardiac defects are common, and dilated cardiomyopathy may present in infancy. Intellectual disability, hypotonia, hearing loss, and seizures are usually seen.

2. Wolf-Hirschhorn Syndrome

Also known as 4p- (deletion of 4p16), this syndrome is characterized by microcephaly and unusual development of the nose and orbits that produces an appearance suggesting an ancient Greek warrior's helmet. Other anomalies commonly seen include cleft lip and palate and cardiac and renal defects. Seizure disorders are common, and the majority of patients have severe intellectual disability.

3. Cri du Chat Syndrome

Also known as 5p- (deletion of terminal chromosome 5p), this disorder is characterized by unique facial features, growth retardation, and microcephaly. Patients have an unusual catlike cry. Most patients have major organ anomalies and significant intellectual disability.

Contiguous Gene Disorders

Three common contiguous gene disorders which are usually suspected on the basis of an abnormal phenotype and then confirmed via microarray are Williams syndrome, Smith-Magenis syndrome, and Velocardiofacial syndrome. The meiotic mechanisms responsible for interstitial chromosomal deletions causing these disorders also result in duplications. We now understand that interstitial chromosomal duplications in the following regions also produce abnormal phenotypes:

1. Williams Syndrome

Williams syndrome is a contiguous gene disorder that deletes the gene for elastin and other neighboring genes at 7q11.23. It is characterized by short stature; congenital heart disease (supravalvular aortic or pulmonic stenosis); coarse, elfin-like facies with prominent lips; hypercalcemia or hypercalciuria in infancy; developmental delay; and neonatal irritability evolving into an overly friendly personality. Calcium restriction may be necessary in early childhood to prevent nephrocalcinosis. The hypercalcemia often resolves during the first year of life. The natural history includes progression of cardiac disease and predisposition to hypertension and spinal osteoarthritis in adults. Most patients have mild to moderate intellectual deficits.

Duplication of chromosome 7q11.23 results in a syndrome that includes speech delay and features of autistic spectrum disorders. Physical features are less consistent than in Williams syndrome.

Pober BR: Williams-Beuren Syndrome. N Engl J Med 2010;362:239–252 [PMID: 20089974].
Van der Aa et al: Fourteen new cases contribute to the characterization of the 7q11.23 microduplication syndrome. Europ J Med Genet 2009;52:94 [PMID: 19249392].

2. Smith-Magenis Syndrome

This syndrome is associated with microdeletion of 17p11 and is characterized by prominent forehead, deep-set eyes, cupid-shaped upper lip, self-mutilating behavior, sleep disturbance, and intellectual disabilities. Some patients also have seizure disorders, hearing loss, thyroid disease, and immunological and lipid abnormalities.

Duplication of 17p11 produces Potocki-Lupski syndrome that is characterized by growth failure, variable levels of cognitive deficiencies, autistic features, and, occasionally, structural abnormalities of the heart.

De Leersnyder H: Smith Magenis syndrome. Handb Clin Neurol 2013;111:295–296 [PMID: 23622179].
Magoulas PL et al. Inherited dup(17)(p11.2p11.2): expanding the phenotype of the Potocki-Lupski syndrome. Am J Med Genet A. 2014 Feb;164A(2):500–504 [PMID: 24311450].

3. Velocardiofacial Syndrome (Deletion 22q11 Syndrome)

Also known as DiGeorge syndrome, this condition was originally described in newborns presenting with cyanotic congenital heart disease, usually involving great vessel abnormalities; thymic hypoplasia leading to immunodeficiency; and hypocalcemia due to absent parathyroid glands. This chromosomal abnormality is associated with a highly variable phenotype. Characteristics include mild microcephaly, palatal clefting or incompetence, speech and language delays, and congenital heart disease (Great vessel abnormalities, tetralogy of Fallot, and a variety of other abnormalities). Some affected individuals are predisposed to psychosis.

Duplication of the 22q11 region produces a mild and highly variable phenotype that ranges from developmental delays and learning disabilities to functionally normal.

Chen CP et al: Chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome: prenatal diagnosis, array comparative genomic hybridization characterization using uncultured amniocytes and literature review. Gene 2013 Sep 15;527(1):405–409 [PMID: 23791650].

mENDEl IAN DISOr DEr S

AUTOSOMAL DOMINANT DISORDERS

Neurofibromatosis, Marfan syndrome, achondroplasia, osteogenesis imperfecta, and the craniosynostoses are among the most well-known autosomal dominant disorders. There are many other common autosomal dominant disorders, including Treacher-Collins syndrome, associated with a distinct craniofacial phenotype including malar and mandibular hypoplasia, and Noonan syndrome, which has a phenotype similar to Turner syndrome and is characterized by short stature and a webbed neck. Two other common genetic disorders whose causative genes were recently identified and found to be dominant mutations are CHARGE syndrome and Cornelia de Lange syndrome.

1. Neurofibromatosis Type 1

Neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF-1) is one of the most common autosomal dominant disorders, occurring in 1 per 3-4000 births and seen in all races and ethnic groups. In general, the disorder is progressive, with new manifestations appearing over time. Neurofibromatosis type 2 (NF-2), characterized by bilateral acoustic neuromas, with minimal or no skin manifestations, is a different disease caused by a different gene.

The gene for NF-1 is on the long arm of chromosome 17 and codes for a protein with properties similar to a tumor suppresser factor. NF results from many different mutations of this gene. Approximately half of all NF cases are caused by new mutations. Careful evaluation of the parents is necessary to provide accurate genetic counseling. Recent evidence suggests that penetrance is close to 100% in those who carry the gene if individuals are examined carefully.

Café au lait macules may be present at birth, and the majority of individuals with NF-1 will have more than six by age 1 year. Neurocutaneous findings are declarative by age 8 years. Neurofibromas are benign tumors consisting of Schwann cells, nerve fibers, and fibroblasts; they may be discrete or plexiform. The incidence of Lisch nodules, which can be seen with a slit lamp, also increases with age. Affected individuals commonly have a large head, bony abnormalities on radiographic studies, scoliosis, and a wide spectrum of developmental problems. Although the average IQ is within the normal range, half of NF1 patients will experience some form of intellectual delay. (For more details of medical evaluation and treatment, see Chapter 25 of this book.) Useful information is provided on the following website: http://www.nfinc.org.

Hyperpigmented macules can occur in other conditions such as Albright, Noonan, Leopard, Russell-Silver, and Banayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba (BRR) syndromes. The genes for NF-1, Noonan, and Leopard syndromes are molecules which control cell cycling through the RAS-MAPK signal transduction pathways; therefore, it is not surprising that some features can be shared.

2. Marfan Syndrome

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Skeletal abnormalities (Ghent criteria).
- Lens dislocation.
- Dilation of the aortic root.
- Dural ectasia.
- Positive family history in some cases.

» Clinical Findings

Genetic testing is available for Marfan syndrome, but the diagnosis remains largely clinical and is based on the Ghent criteria (available at: http://www.genereviews.org). Children can present with a positive family history, suspicious skeletal findings, or ophthalmologic complications. Motor milestones are frequently delayed due to joint laxity. Adolescents are prone to spontaneous pneumothorax. Dysrhythmias may be present. The characteristic facies is long and thin, with down-slanting palpebral fissures, malar flattening and retrognathia. The palate is high arched, and dentition is often crowded. Mutations in the gene for fibrillin-1 (FBN1), an extracellular matrix protein (ECM), are causative.

» Differential Diagnosis

Homocystinuria should be excluded through metabolic testing in all individuals with Marfanoid skeletal features. An X-linked recessive disorder, **Lujan syndrome**, combines Marfanoid habitus with cognitive disability. Other connective tissue disorders, **Ehlers-Danlos syndrome**, and **Stickler syndrome** should also be considered.

Mutations in (FBN2) and in transforming growth factor β (TGFβ) pathway) can also produce phenotypes that fit criteria for a clinical diagnosis of Marfan syndrome. Beals syndrome (FBN2), Shprintzen-Goldberg syndrome (SKI1), aneurysm-osteoarthritis syndrome, syndromic thoracic aortic aneurysms, and Loeys-Dietz syndromes (TGFβ pathway)

are distinct connective tissue disorders with different medical management and prognostic implications. The reader is referred to reviews available at http://www.genereviews.org for descriptions of these disorders.

» Complications

The skeletal problems including scoliosis are progressive. Astigmatism and myopia are very common and regular ophthalmologic surveillance for lens dislocation is necessary.

The most serious associated medical problems involve the heart. Although many patients with Marfan syndrome have mitral valve prolapse, the most serious concern is progressive aortic root dilation, which may lead to aneurysmal rupture and death, and progressive or acute valvular (aortic more frequently than mitral) incompetency.

Families and practitioners seeking additional information about Marfan syndrome can be referred to the National Marfan Foundation (http://www.marfan.org).

» Treatment

A. Medical Therapy

Medical treatment for patients with Marfan syndrome includes surveillance for and appropriate management of the ophthalmologic, orthopedic, and cardiac issues. Serial echocardiograms are indicated to diagnose and follow the degree of aortic root enlargement, which can be managed medically or surgically, in more severe cases. Prophylactic Δ-adrenergic blockade can slow the rate of aortic dilation and reduce the development of aortic complications.

Interest in the effects of deficient extracellular fibrillin-1 has led to the discovery that the mild myopathy in Marfan syndrome reflects excessive signaling by transforming growth factor β (TGFβ), an inhibitor of myoblast differentiation. Animal studies suggest that aortic aneurysm can be prevented by TGFβ antagonists, including blockers of angiotensin II type 1 receptors. Clinical studies are currently underway using this approach in human patients.

B. Genetic Counseling

Genetic testing for mutations in genes associated with aortopathy in patients with arterial dilatation should be considered in all individuals with Marfan syndrome as penetrance is variable and apparently unaffected family members can carry and pass on mutations.

Kumar A, Agarwal S: Marfan syndrome: an eyesight of syndrome. Meta Gene 2014 Jan 14;2:96–105 [PMID: 25606393].

3. Achondroplasia

Achondroplasia, the most common form of skeletal dysplasia, is caused by a mutation in FGFR3.

» Clinical Findings

The classic phenotype includes relative macrocephaly, midface hypoplasia, short-limbed dwarfism, and trident-shaped hands. The phenotype is apparent at birth. Individuals with achondroplasia are cognitively normal.

» Treatment

A. Medical Therapy

Orthopedic intervention is necessary for spinal problems including severe lumbar lordosis and gibbus deformity. Long bone lengthening surgery may help to improve upper extremity function.

Head circumference during infancy must be closely monitored and plotted on a diagnosis-specific head circumference chart. Bony overgrowth at the level of the foramen magnum may lead to progressive hydrocephalus and brainstem compression and may warrant neurosurgical intervention.

Many patients find support through organizations such as the Little People of America at the following website: http://www.lpaonline.org.

B. Genetic Counseling

The vast majority of cases (approximately 90%) represent a new mutation. Two hemizygous parents with achondroplasia have a 25% risk of having a child homozygous for FGFR3 mutations, which is a lethal disorder.

4. Osteogenesis Imperfecta

Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI), or brittle bone disease, is a relatively common disorder. The more common forms are caused by mutations in type I collagen.

» Clinical Findings

A number of types of OI have now been described, and molecular testing in blood is now used to confirm the diagnosis. The four most common types of OI, caused by dominant mutations in COL1A1 and COL1A2, are

1. Type I, a mild form, with bony fractures after birth and blue sclerae.
2. Type II, usually lethal in the newborn period with multiple congenital fractures and severe lung disease.
3. Type III, a severe form causing significant bony deformity secondary to multiple fractures (which are both congenital and after birth), blue sclerae, short stature, and mild restrictive lung disease.
4. Type IV, another mild form with increased incidence of fracturing after birth; dentinogenesis imperfecta is common.

» Treatment

A. Medical Therapy

Geneticists and endocrinologists are now treating OI patients with Pamidronate, a bisphosphonate compound, which can reduce incidence of fracture and improve bone density. Patients should also be followed by an experienced orthopedist, as rodding of long bones and surgery to correct scoliosis are often required. Hearing assessments are indicated, because of the association between OI and deafness, as is close dental follow-up.

B. Genetic Counseling

DNA analysis in blood can confirm mutations in COL1 which cause OI. The milder forms are often inherited as a dominant trait, while the more severe forms of OI generally result from new mutations.

5. Craniosynostosis Syndromes

The craniosynostosis disorders are common dominant disorders associated with premature fusion of cranial sutures. This class of disorders is usually caused by mutations in FGFR genes.

Crouzon syndrome is the most common of these disorders and is associated with multiple suture fusions, but with normal limbs. Other craniosynostosis disorders have limb as well as craniofacial anomalies and include Pfeiffer, Apert, Jackson-Weiss, and Saethre-Chotzen syndromes.

Patients with craniosynostosis often have shallow orbits, midface narrowing that may result in upper airway obstruction (choanal atresia and pyriform aperature stenosis are not uncommon), and hydrocephalus that may require shunting. Children with craniosynostosis may require multiple-staged craniofacial and neurosurgical procedures to address these issues, but usually have normal intelligence.

6. CHARGE Syndrome

CHARGE syndrome is a common genetic disorder presenting with unusual features, birth defects, intellectual disabilities, and abnormalities in vision and hearing. The acronym CHARGE serves as a mnemonic for associated abnormalities that include **C**olobomas, congenital **H**eart disease, choanal **A**tresia, growth **R**etardation, **G**enital abnormalities (hypogenitalism), and **E**ar abnormalities, with deafness. Facial asymmetry is a common finding. CHARGE is caused by mutations in the CHD7 gene on chromosome 8q. A website with information on CHARGE syndrome is available at http://www.chargesyndrome.org/.

Bergman JE et al: CHD7 mutations and CHARGE syndrome: the clinical implications of an expanding phenotype. J Med Genet 2011 May; 48(5):334–342 [Epub 2011 Mar 4] [PMID: 21378379].

7. Cornelia de Lange Syndrome

Cornelia de Lange syndrome is characterized by severe growth retardation; limb, especially hand, reduction defects (50%); congenital heart disease (25%); and stereotypical facies with hirsutism, medial fusion of eyebrows (synophrys), and thin, down-turned lips. The course and severity are variable, and milder presentations may be inherited as a dominant trait.

Heterozygous mutations in the cohesin regulator, NIPBL, or the cohesin structural components SMC1A and SMC3, have been identified in approximately 65% of individuals with CdLS. Cohesin regulates sister chromatid cohesion during mitotis and meiosis. In addition, cohesin has been demonstrated to play a critical role in the regulation of gene expression. Furthermore, multiple proteins in the cohesin pathway are also involved in additional fundamental biological events such as double-stranded DNA break repair, chromatin remodeling, and maintaining genomic stability.

Jones KL: Recognizable Patterns of Human Malformation. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2006. * new edition

Liu J et al: Cornelia de Lange syndrome. Adv Exp Med Biol 2010;685:111–123 [PMID: 20687500].

8. Noonan Syndrome

Noonan syndrome is a common autosomal dominant disorder characterized by short stature, congenital heart disease, webbed neck, down-slanting palpebral fissures, hearing loss, and low-set ears. Feeding problems are common. The presentation evolves with age and may be difficult to recognize in older patients. Mild developmental delays are often present, but intelligence may be normal. Noonan syndrome and Noonan-like disorders are caused by mutations in the RAS-mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, and thus are often called "RASopathies." Noonan syndrome is the most common of these disorders. Other related disorders include Cardiofacial Cutaneous syndrome and Costello syndromes. A blood test that screens for the approximately 12 genes in this pathway is called a Noonan chip and can help confirm a diagnosis.

Because mutations in NF-1 causing neurofibromatosis, also affect RAS proto-oncogene signaling, it is not surprising that there is an NF-1 subtype with an associated Noonan phenotype.

Zenker M: Clinical manifestations of mutations in RAS and related intracellular signal transduction factors. Curr Opin Pediatr 2011 Aug;23(4):443–451 [PMID: 21750428].

AUTOSOMAL RECESSIVE DISORDERS

1. Cystic Fibrosis

The gene for cystic fibrosis, CFTR, is found on the long arm of chromosome 7. Approximately 1 in 22 persons are

carriers. Many different mutations have been identified; the most common mutation in the Caucasian population is ΔF508.

Molecular analysis of CFTR is widely available in the pre- and postnatal settings. The sweat chloride assay still plays a role in confirming the diagnosis in some cases.

The identification of the mutation in the cystic fibrosis gene has also raised the issue of mass newborn screening, because of the high frequency of this gene in the Caucasian population. Some states, such as Colorado, have offered newborn screening by trypsinogen assay, which can detect 70% of patients with cystic fibrosis. Although early detection can ensure good nutritional status starting at birth, newborn screening is controversial as there is no cure for cystic fibrosis. (For more details of medical management, see Chapters 19 and 22.)

2. Smith-Lemli-Opitz Syndrome

Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome is a common disorder, caused by a metabolic error in the final step of cholesterol production, resulting in low cholesterol levels and accumulation of the precursor 7-dehydrocholesterol (7-DHC). Because cholesterol is a necessary precursor for sterol hormones and CNS myelin, and cholesterol content is crucial for the integrity of all cell membranes, the medical consequences of both cholesterol deficiency and 7-DHC accumulation are complex and severe. Also, 7-DHC is oxidized into substances called oxysterols, which are toxic to the retinal and brain.

» Clinical Findings

Patients with Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome present with a characteristic phenotype, including dysmorphic facial features (Figure 37–9), multiple congenital anomalies, hypotonia, growth failure, and intellectual disability. The diagnosis can be confirmed via a blood test looking for the presence of the precursor, 7-DHC in special laboratories. DNA analysis of mutations in the DHR7 gene is also available, as is prenatal testing.

» Treatment

Treatment with cholesterol can ameliorate the growth failure and lead to improvement in medical issues, although treatment does not cure this complex disorder. Antioxidant treatment is being used to prevent progressive retinal degeneration caused by oxysterol accumulation.

3. Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Approximately 50% of hearing loss is thought to be caused by genetic factors, many of which have not yet been identified. There is marked genetic heterogeneity in causes of sensorineural hearing loss including: dominant, recessive, mitochondrial, and X-linked inheritance patterns. Several

▲**Figure 37–9.** Child with Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome, featuring bitemporal narrowing, upturned nares, ptosis, and small chin.

hundred genes are known to cause hereditary hearing loss and deafness. Nonsyndromic recessively inherited deafness is the predominant form in severe genetic childhood deafness. The genetic forms of hearing loss are diagnosed by otologic, audiologic, and physical examination; family history; ancillary testing (such as CT examination of the temporal bone); and molecular genetic testing. Mutations in connexin 26 are present in 49% of cases of prelingual deafness.

Edi Lúcia Sartorato, Karen Friderici, Ignacio Del Castillo: Genetics of deafness. Genet Res Int 2012;2012:562848. doi:10.1155/2012/562848 [PMID: 22567392].

4. Spinal Muscular Atrophy

Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) is an autosomal recessive neuromuscular disorder in which anterior horn cells in the spinal cord degenerate. The mechanism for the loss of cells appears to involve apoptosis of neurons in the absence of the

product of the SMN1 (survival motor neuron) gene located on chromosome 5q. Loss of anterior horn cells leads to progressive atrophy of skeletal muscle. The disorder has an incidence of approximately 1 in 12,000, with the majority of the cases presenting in infancy. Carrier frequencies approach 1 in 40 in populations with European ancestry.

» Clinical Findings

Three clinical subtypes are recognized based on age of onset and rate of progression. SMA I is the most devastating. Mild weakness may be present at birth but is clearly evident by 3 months and is accompanied by loss of reflexes and fasciculations in affected muscles. Progression of the disorder leads to eventual respiratory failure, usually by age 1 year. Symptoms of SMA II begin later, with weakness and decreased reflexes generally apparent by age 2 years. Children affected with SMA III begin to become weak as they approach adolescence.

Homozygous deletion of exon 7 of SMN1 is detectable in approximately 95%–98% of cases of all types of SMA and confirms the diagnosis. The SMN1 region on chromosome 5q is complex and variability in presentation of the disorder involves expression of up to three copies of the neighboring SMN2 gene. More severe phenotypes have fewer SMN2 copies. Approximately 2%–5% of patients affected with SMA will be compound heterozygotes in whom there is one copy of SMN1 with exon 7 deleted and a second copy with a point mutation.

Prenatal diagnosis is available through genetic testing, but careful molecular analysis of the proband and demonstration of carrier status in parents is advised since, in addition to the problem of potential compound heterozygosity, 2% of cases occur as a result of a de novo mutation in one SMN1 allele. In this case, one of the parents is not a carrier and recurrence risks are low. Carrier testing is further complicated by a duplication of SMN1 in 4% of the population that results in there being two SMN1 genes on one of their chromosomes. Hence, reproductive risk assessment, carrier testing, and prenatal diagnosis of SMA are best undertaken in the context of careful genetic counseling.

X-LINKED DISORDERS

1. Duchenne & Becker Muscular Dystrophies

Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) results from failure of synthesis of the muscle cytoskeletal protein dystrophin. The DMD gene is located on the X chromosome, at position Xp21.1-p21.2. Approximately 1 in 4000 male children is affected. Mutations in the same gene that result in partial expression of the dystrophin protein produce a less severe phenotype, Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD). In both DMD and BMD, progressive degeneration of skeletal and cardiac muscle occurs. Boys with DMD exhibit proximal muscle weakness and pseudohypertrophy of calf muscles by age 5–6 years. Patients become nonambulatory by age 13 years. Serum creatine kinase levels are markedly elevated. Boys with DMD frequently die in their twenties of respiratory failure and cardiac dysfunction. The prognosis for BMD is more variable. Although corticosteroids are useful in maintaining strength, they do not slow progression of the disorder. Evolution of the natural history of dystrophinopathies in females is demonstrating an increased incidence of serious cardiovascular disease, including cardiomyopathy and arrhythmias. The gene for dystrophin is largest gene found in nature and is a common target for mutation. Large deletions or duplications can be detected in the gene for dystrophin in 65% of cases. Molecular analysis has largely replaced muscle biopsy for diagnostic purposes.

One-third of DMD cases presenting with a negative family history are likely to be new mutations. Genetic counseling is complicated by the fact that germline mosaicism for mutations in the dystrophin gene occur in approximately 15%–20% of families, which is among the highest rates for this otherwise rare phenomenon. It is also necessary to look for mutations in all sisters of affected boys. Since mutations are now detected in the great majority of DMD cases, there is considerably less need for estimating carrier risks based on creatine kinase levels. Nonetheless, counseling and prenatal diagnosis remain difficult in some families. (Additional information about muscular dystrophies is included in Chapter 25.)

2. Hemophilia A

Hemophilia A is an X-linked, recessive, bleeding disorder caused by a deficiency in the activity of coagulation factor VIII. Affected individuals develop a variable phenotype of hemorrhage into joints and muscles, easy bruising, and prolonged bleeding from wounds. The disorder is caused by heterogeneous mutations in the factor VIII gene (F8), which maps to Xq28. The detection rate in molecular testing is approximately 98%. Carrier detection and prenatal diagnosis are possible. Replacement of factor VIII is done using a variety of preparations derived from human plasma or recombinant techniques. Although replacement therapy is effective in most cases, 10%–15% of treated individuals develop neutralizing antibodies that decrease its effectiveness. (See Chapter 30 for additional discussion.)

Hemophilia B, also X-linked in inheritance is caused by mutation in the gene F9. It is clinically indistinguishable from hemophilia A. Diagnosis is based on a factor IX clotting activity and/or molecular analysis.

Darras BT, Miller DT, Urion DK: Dystrophinopathies. GeneReviews. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK1119/.
Konkle BA, Josephson NC, Nakaya FS: Hemophilia A. GeneReviews. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK1404/.

° NONmENDEl IAN DISOr DEr S

DISORDERS OF IMPRINTING

1. Beckwith-Wiedemann Syndrome

The association of macrosomia (enlarged body size), macroglossia (enlarged tongue), and omphalocele constitutes the Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome (BWS), now known to be related to abnormal expression of imprinted genes located on chromosome 11p15. Other associated findings include hypertelorism, unusual ear creases, infantile hypoglycemia due to transient hyperinsulinemia, multiple congenital anomalies (cleft palate and genitourinary anomalies common), and increased risk for certain malignancies, especially Wilms tumor (7%–10%).

Chromosomal abnormalities such as duplication of the paternal 11p15 region, or paternal UPD, are associated with BWS. Reading two copies of a growth factor gene IGF2, rather than one is felt to lead to the macrosomia. Paternal UPD may also lead to loss of expression of a tumor suppressor gene (H19), normally read from the maternal homolog, contributing to the increased predisposition to cancer seen in this disorder. Children affected with BWS should undergo tumor surveillance protocols, including an abdominal ultrasound every 3 months until they reach age 8 years, as diagnosing malignancy at early stages leads to a significant improvement in outcome.

2. Prader-Willi Syndrome

Prader-Willi syndrome results from lack of expression of several imprinted genes, including SNRPN, located on chromosome 15q11. Clinical characteristics include severe hypotonia in infancy, often necessitating placement of a feeding gastrostomy tube. In older children, characteristic facies include almond-shaped eyes, and strabismus. Obstructive sleep apnea is common as are short stature, obesity, hypogenitalism, and small hands and feet. Growth hormone treatment is now offered to PWS patients, which improves the above symptoms. Obsessive hyperphagia (usual onset 3–4 years) is the hallmark of this disorder.

Deletion of the paternally inherited allele of chromosome 15q11 (detected by FISH or microarray) is the most common chromosomal abnormality causing Prader-Willi syndrome, followed by maternal UPD, diagnosed by DNA methylation studies.

3. Angelman Syndrome

Angelman syndrome also involves imprinting and results from a variety of mutations that inactivate a ubiquitin-protein ligase gene, UBE3A, located in the same region of chromosome 15 as SNRPN, the gene involved in Prader-Willi syndrome (see the preceding section). The classic phenotype includes severe intellectual disability with prognathism, seizures, and marked delay in motor milestones, abnormal gait and posturing, poor language development, autism, and paroxysmal laughter and tongue thrusting.

Angelman syndrome is most commonly caused when sequences detectable by microarray or FISH on 15q11 are deleted from the maternal homolog. Uniparental paternal disomy 15 is the least common cause. Mutations in UBE3A cause the disorder in about one-fourth of cases. Imprinting errors, which may be associated with advanced reproductive techniques, may also result in Angelman syndrome.

Iliadou AN, Janson PC, Cnattingius S: Epigenetics and assisted reproductive technology. J Intern Med 2011;270(5):414–420 [PMID: 21848664].

DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH ANTICIPATION

1. (Autosomal Dominant) Myotonic Dystrophy

Myotonic dystrophy is an autosomal dominant condition characterized by muscle weakness and tonic muscle spasms (myotonia). Additional features include: respiratory dysfunction, hypogonadism, frontal balding, developmental delay, myopathic facies, cardiac conduction abnormalities, and cataracts. This disorder occurs when a CTG repeat in the DMPK gene on chromosome 19 expands to 50 or more copies. Normal individuals have from 5 to 35 CTG repeat copies. Individuals carrying 35–49 repeats are generally asymptomatic, but repeat copies greater than 35 are meiotically unstable and tend to further expand when passed to subsequent generations. Individuals with 50–100 copies may be only mildly affected (eg, cataracts). Most individuals with repeat copies greater than 100 will have symptoms or electrical myotonia as adults.

As unstable alleles continue to expand and copy numbers approach 400, symptoms become evident in children. Expansion from greater than 1000 copies produces fetal and neonatal disease that can be lethal. This occurs most frequently when the unstable repeats are passed through an affected mother. Therefore, an important component in the workup of the floppy or weak infant is a careful neurologic assessment of both parents for evidence of weakness or myotonia. Molecular testing that measures the number of CTG repeats is diagnostic clinically and prenatally. (See Chapter 25 for additional discussion.)

2. (Autosomal Recessive) Friedreich Ataxia

Symptoms of Friedreich ataxia include dysarthria, muscle weakness, lower limb spasticity, bladder dysfunction, absent lower limb reflexes, with both motor and sensory findings beginning in preadolescence and typically progressing through the teenage years. The gene involved, FXN, is

located on chromosome 9. Unaffected individuals typically carry 7–33 GAA repeats at this locus. Close to 96% of affected patients are homozygous for repeat expansions that exceed 66 copies. Point mutations in the gene also occur. Meiotic instability for GAA repeats is more variable than for others and contractions occur more frequently than do expansions. Relationships between genotype and phenotype are also more complex. Molecular diagnostic testing requires careful interpretation with respect to prognosis and reproductive risks. (See Chapter 25 for additional discussion.)

3. (X-Linked) Fragile X Syndrome

Fragile X syndrome, present in approximately 1 in 1000 males, is the most common cause of cognitive disabilities in males. The responsible gene is FMR1, which has unstable CGG repeats at the 5′ end. Normal individuals have up to 50 CGG repeats. Individuals with 51–200 CGG repeats have a premutation and may manifest symptoms including developmental, and behavioral, traits; premature ovarian failure in a subset of females; and a progressive, neurologic deterioration in older males called FXTAS (Fragile X–associated tremor-ataxia syndrome). Affected individuals with Fragile X syndrome (full mutation) have more than 200 CGG repeats and also have hypermethylation of both the CGG expansion and an adjacent CpG island. This methylation turns off the FMR1 gene. DNA analysis, rather than cytogenetic testing, is the method of choice for confirming the diagnosis of Fragile X syndrome.

» Clinical Features

Most males with Fragile X syndrome present with intellectual disabilities, oblong facies with large ears, and large testicles after puberty. Other physical signs include hyperextensible joints and mitral valve prolapse. Many affected individuals are hyperactive and exhibit behaviors along the autism spectrum.

Unlike other X-linked disorders where female heterozygotes are asymptomatic, females with a full mutation may exhibit a phenotype ranging from normal IQ to intellectual disability, and may show behaviors along the autism spectrum.

Clinical expression of Fragile X differs in male and female offspring depending on which parent is transmitting the gene. The premutation can change into the full mutation only when passed through a female. DNA analysis is a reliable test for prenatal and postnatal diagnosis of Fragile X syndrome and facilitates genetic counseling. (Management considerations for patients with Fragile X syndrome are described in Chapter 3.)

Hersh JH, Saul RA; Committee on Genetics. Health Supervision for Children with Fragile X Syndrome. Pediatrics May 2011;127(5):994–1006 [PMID: 21518720].

MITOCHONDRIAL DISORDERS

More than 100 point mutations and rearrangements of mtDNA have been identified, which are associated with a large number of human diseases. Symptoms of mitochondrial disorders are secondary to deficiency in the respiratory chain enzymes of oxidative phosphorylation, which supply energy to all cells. Mitochondrial diseases are usually progressive disorders with neurologic dysfunction including hypotonia, developmental delay, and seizures. Ophthalmologic issues, hearing loss, gastrointestinal tract dysfunction with growth failure, and renal, endocrine, cardiac, and autonomic dysfunction are some of the many issues which can affect patients with mitochondrial diseases. The following disorders are three of the more common ones.

1. MELAS

MELAS is an acronym for Mitochondrial Encephalopathy, Lactic Acidosis, and Strokelike episodes. Symptoms occur in the pediatric age group and include recurrent episodes resembling stroke (blindness, paralysis), headache, vomiting, weakness of proximal muscles, and elevated blood lactate. (Note: Lactate may be falsely elevated secondary to technical difficulties in obtaining a free-flowing blood specimen or delay in laboratory measurement.) The most common mutation causing MELAS is in the $tRNA^{Leu}$ gene (A3243G). Many patients are treated with l-arginine or citrulline supplementation for alleviation of symptoms.

2. MERRF

MERRF is an acronym for Myoclonus Epilepsy with Ragged Red Fibers. Children with MERRF present with a variety of neurologic symptoms, including myoclonus, deafness, weakness of muscles, and seizures. Eighty percent of cases are due to a missense mutation in the mitochondrial $tRNA^{Lys}$ gene (A8344G).

3. Leigh Subacute Necrotizing Encephalomyelopathy

Multiple different abnormalities in respiratory chain function lead to Leigh disease, a very severe disorder associated with progressive loss of developmental milestones, along with extrapyramidal symptoms and brainstem dysfunction. Episodes of deterioration are frequently associated with an intercurrent febrile illness. Symptoms include hypotonia, choreoathetoid hand movements, feeding dysfunction with failure to thrive, and seizures. Focal necrotic lesions of the brainstem and thalamus are hallmarks on MRI scan. Mitochondrial mutations affecting the respiratory chain, especially complexes I, II, and IV, and nuclear DNA mutations affecting complex II have been identified as causing Leigh disease.

Wong LJ, Scaglia F, Graham BH, Craigen WJ: Current molecular diagnostic algorithm for mitochondrial disorders. Mol Genet Metab 2010 Jun;100(2):111–117 [PMID: 20359921].

Disorders of Multifactorial Inheritance

Cleft Lip & Cleft Palate

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cleft lip is more common in males, cleft palate in females.
- Cleft lip and palate may be isolated defects (nonsyndromic) or associated with other anomalies as part of a genetic disorder (syndromic).
- Pierre Robin sequence, the association of cleft palate, micrognathia, and glossoptosis may lead to severe airway complications in young infants, necessitating tracheostomy.

General Considerations

From a genetic standpoint, cleft lip with or without cleft palate is distinct from isolated cleft palate. Although both can occur in a single family, particularly in association with certain syndromes, this pattern is unusual. Racial background is a factor in the incidence of facial clefting. The prevalence of facial clefting per 10,000 births is 10.2 in the United States, 12.1 in Western Europe, and 20.0 in Japan.

Findings

A cleft lip may be unilateral or bilateral and complete or incomplete. It may occur with a cleft of the entire palate or just the primary (anterior and gingival ridge) or secondary (posterior) palate. An isolated cleft palate can involve only the soft palate or both the soft and hard palates. It can be a V-shaped or a U-shaped cleft. When the cleft palate is associated with micrognathia and glossoptosis (a tongue that falls back and causes respiratory or feeding problems), it is called the **Pierre Robin sequence**. Among individuals with facial clefts—more commonly those with isolated cleft palate—the incidence of other congenital abnormalities is increased, with up to a 60% association with other anomalies or syndromes. The incidence of congenital heart disease, for example, is 1%–2% in liveborn infants, but among those with Pierre Robin sequence it can be as high as 15%. Associated abnormalities should be looked for in the period immediately after birth and before surgery.

Differential Diagnosis

A facial cleft may occur in many different circumstances. It may be an isolated abnormality or part of a more generalized syndrome. Prognosis, management, and accurate determination of recurrence risks all depend on accurate diagnosis. In evaluating a child with a facial cleft, the physician must determine if the cleft is nonsyndromic or syndromic.

A. Nonsyndromic

In the past, nonsyndromic cleft lip or cleft palate was considered a classic example of polygenic or multifactorial inheritance. Several recent studies have suggested that one or more major autosomal loci, both recessive and dominant may be involved. Empirically, however, the recurrence risk is still in the range of 2%–3% because of nonpenetrance or the presence of other contributing genes.

B. Syndromic

Cleft lip, with or without cleft palate, and isolated cleft palate may occur in a variety of syndromes that may be environmental, chromosomal, single gene, or of unknown origin (Table 37–2). Prognosis and accurate recurrence risks depend on the correct diagnosis.

Complications

Problems associated with facial clefts include early feeding difficulties, which may be severe; airway obstruction necessitating tracheostomy; recurrent serous otitis media associated with fluctuating hearing and language delays;

Table 37–2. Syndromic isolated cleft palate (CP) and cleft lip with or without cleft palate (CL/CP).

Environmental	
	Maternal seizures, anticonvulsant usage (CL/CP or CP)
	Fetal alcohol syndrome (CP)
	Amniotic band syndrome (CL/CP)
Chromosomal	
	Trisomies 13 and 18 (CL/CP)
	Wolf-Hirschhorn or 4p– syndrome (CL/CP)
	Shprintzen or 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (CP)
Single-gene disorders	
	Treacher-Collins syndrome, AD (CP)
	Stickler syndrome, AD (CP—particularly Pierre-Robin)
	Smith-Lemli-Opitz, AR (CP)
Unknown cause	
	Moebius syndrome (CP)

AD, autosomal dominant; AR, autosomal recessive.

speech problems, including language delay, hypernasality, and articulation errors; and dental and orthodontic complications.

A. Medical Therapy

Long-term management ideally should be provided through a multidisciplinary cleft palate clinic.

B. Genetic Counseling

Accurate counseling depends on accurate diagnosis and the differentiation of syndromic from nonsyndromic clefts. A complete family history must be taken, and the patient and both parents must be examined. The choice of laboratory studies is guided by the presence of other abnormalities and clinical suspicions and may include microarray analysis and metabolic and DNA studies. Clefts of both the lip and the palate can be detected on detailed prenatal ultrasound.

Watkins SE, Meyer RE, Strauss RP, Aylsworth AS: Classification, epidemiology and genetics of orofacial clefts. Clin Plast Surg 2014 Apr;41(2):149–163 [PMID: 24607185].

NEURAL TUBE DEFECTS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Various defects, ranging from anencephaly to open or skin-covered lesions of the spinal cord, may occur in isolation or as part of a syndrome.
- Myelomeningocele is usually associated with hydrocephalus, Arnold-Chiari II malformation, neurogenic bladder and bowel, and congenital paralysis in the lower extremities.
- Anomalies of the CNS, heart, and kidneys may also be seen.
- MRI helps determine the extent of the anatomic defect in skin covered lesions.

» General Considerations

Neural tube defects comprise a variety of malformations, including anencephaly, encephalocele, spina bifida (myelomeningocele), sacral agenesis, and other spinal dysraphisms. Evidence suggests that the neural tube develops via closure at multiple closure sites and that each closure site is mediated by different genes and affected by different teratogens. Hydrocephalus associated with the Arnold-Chiari type II malformation commonly occurs with myelomeningocele. Sacral agenesis, also called the caudal regression syndrome, occurs more frequently in infants of diabetic mothers.

» Clinical Findings

At birth, neural tube defects can present as an obvious open lesion, or as a more subtle skin-covered lesion. In the latter case, MRI should be conducted to better define the anatomic defect. The extent of neurologic deficit depends on the level of the lesion and may include clubfeet, dislocated hips, or total flaccid paralysis below the level of the lesion. Hydrocephalus may be apparent at birth or may develop after the back has been surgically repaired. Neurogenic bladder and bowel are commonly seen.

» Differential Diagnosis

Neural tube defects may occur in isolation (nonsyndromic) or as part of a genetic syndrome. They may result from teratogenic exposure to alcohol or the anticonvulsant valproate. Any infant with dysmorphic features or other major anomalies in addition to a neural tube defect should be evaluated by a geneticist, and a microarray analysis should be performed.

» Treatment

A. Neurosurgical Measures

Infants with an open neural tube defect should be placed in prone position, and the lesion kept moist with sterile dressing. Neurosurgical closure should occur within 24–48 hours after birth to reduce risk of infection. The infant should be monitored closely for signs of hydrocephalus. Shunts are required in about 85% of cases of myelomeningocele and are associated with complications including malfunction and infection. Symptoms of the Arnold-Chiari II malformation include feeding dysfunction, abducens nerve palsy, vocal cord paralysis with stridor, and apnea. Shunt malfunction may cause an acute worsening of Arnold-Chiari symptoms that may be life-threatening.

B. Orthopedic Measures

The child's ability to walk varies according to the level of the lesion. Children with low lumbar and sacral lesions walk with minimal support, while those with high lumbar and thoracic lesions are rarely functional walkers. Orthopedic input is necessary to address foot deformities and scoliosis. Physical therapy services are indicated.

C. Urologic Measures

Neurogenic bladders have variable presentations and therefore urological studies are recommended early on to define bladder function and guide management. Continence can sometimes be achieved by the use of medications, clean

intermittent catheterization, and a variety of urologic procedures. Renal function should be monitored regularly, and an ultrasound examination should be periodically repeated. Symptomatic infections should be treated.

Symptoms of neurogenic bowel include incontinence and chronic constipation and are managed with a combination of dietary modifications, laxatives, stool softeners, and rectal stimulation. A surgical procedure called ACE (antegrade continence enema) may be recommended for patients with severe constipation that is unresponsive to conservative management.

D. Genetic Counseling

Most isolated neural tube defects are polygenic, with a recurrence risk of 2%–3% in future pregnancies. The recurrence risk for siblings of the parents and siblings of the patient is 1%–2%. A patient with spina bifida has a 5% chance of having an affected child. Prenatal diagnosis is possible. Screening includes measurement of maternal serum α-fetoprotein levels at 16–18 weeks' gestation and prenatal ultrasound. Elevated α-fetoprotein and acetylcholine esterase levels in amniotic fluid can be detected via amniocentesis.

Prophylactic folic acid can significantly lower the incidence and recurrence rate of neural tube defects, if the intake of the folic acid starts at least 3 months prior to conception and continues for the first month of pregnancy, at a dose of 4 mg/d for women at increased risk. For women of childbearing age without a family history of neural tube defects, the dose is 0.4 mg of folic acid daily. Folic acid supplementation prior to conception may also lower the incidence of other congenital malformations such as conotruncal heart defects.

» Special Issues & Prognosis

All children requiring multiple surgical procedures (ie, patients with spina bifida or urinary tract anomalies) have a significant risk for developing hypersensitivity type I (IgE-mediated) allergic reactions to latex. For this reason, nonlatex medical products are now routinely used when caring for patients with neural tube defects.

Most individuals with myelomeningocele are cognitively normal, but learning disabilities are common. Individuals with closed spinal cord abnormalities (eg, sacral lipomas) have more mild issues in general, and intelligence is normal. Individuals with encephalocele or other CNS malformations, however, have a much poorer intellectual prognosis. Spinal cord tethering may present later with symptoms of back pain, progressive scoliosis, and changes in bowel or bladder function. This often requires neurosurgical intervention.

Individuals with neural tube defects have lifelong medical issues, requiring the input of a multidisciplinary medical team. A good support for families is the National Spina Bifida Association, at the following website: http://www.sbaa.org.

» Common Recognizable Disorders With Variable or Unknown Cause

The text that follows describes several important and common human malformation syndromes. The best illustrations of these syndromes are found in Smith's Recognizable Patterns of Human Malformation. An excellent Internet site at the University of Kansas Medical Center can be consulted for further information: http://www.kumc.edu/gec/support.

1. Arthrogryposis Multiplex

The term arthrogryposis is often used as shorthand to describe multiple congenital contractures that affect two or more different joint groups. Arthrogryposis is not a specific diagnosis, but rather a clinical finding, and it is a characteristic of more than 300 different disorders. Causes most often involve constraint, CNS malformation or injury, and neuromuscular disorders. Polyhydramnios is often present as a result of lack of fetal swallowing. Pulmonary hypoplasia may also be present, reflecting lack of fetal breathing. The workup includes brain imaging, evaluation for metabolic disease, neurologic consultation, and, in some cases, electrophysiologic studies and/or muscle biopsy. The parents should be examined. Family history review for findings such as: muscle weakness or cramping, cataracts, and early-onset heart disease, suggesting myotonic dystrophy is important. Mutations in at least five genes (TNNI2, TNNT3, TPM2, MYH3, and MYH8) that encode components of the contractile apparatus of fast-twitch myofibers can cause distal arthrogryposis.

Darras B, Jones, Jr. HR, Ryan M, De Vivo D. Neuromuscular Disorders of Infancy, Childhood, and Adolescence. A Clinician's Approach; Chapter 7 Hall JG, Vincent A. 2nd ed. Elsevier 2015: 96–114.

2. Goldenhar Syndrome

Goldenhar syndrome, also known as vertebro-auriculo-facial syndrome, is an association of multiple anomalies involving the head and neck. The classic phenotype includes hemifacial microsomia (one side of the face smaller than the other) and abnormalities of the pinna on the same side with associated deafness. Ear anomalies may be quite severe and include anotia. A characteristic benign fatty tumor in the outer sclera, called an epibulbar dermoid, is frequently present, as are preauricular ear tags. Vertebral anomalies, particularly of the cervical vertebrae, are common. The Arnold-Chiari type I malformation (herniation of the cerebellum into the cervical spinal canal) is a common associated anomaly. Cardiac anomalies and hydrocephalus are seen in more severe cases. Most patients with Goldenhar syndrome have normal intelligence. The cause is unknown; however, there is significant overlap with the Townes-Brocks syndrome, caused by mutations in the SALL1 gene. This condition has an undetermined

association with chronically elevated maternal blood glucose levels in pregnancy. (See Craniofacial Microsomia Overview, GeneReviews, www.genereviews.org for an excellent discussion and differential diagnosis.)

3. Oligohydramnios Sequence (Potter Sequence)

This condition presents in newborns as severe respiratory distress due to pulmonary hypoplasia in association with positional deformities of the extremities, usually bilateral clubfeet, and typical facies consisting of suborbital creases, depressed nasal tip and low-set ears, and retrognathia. The sequence may be due to prolonged lack of amniotic fluid. Most often it is due to leakage, renal agenesis, or severe obstructive uropathy.

4. Overgrowth Syndromes

Overgrowth syndromes typically present at birth and are characterized by macrocephaly, motor delays (cerebral hypotonia), and occasional asymmetry of extremities. Bone age may be advanced and diagnosed in the older child. The most common overgrowth syndrome is **Sotos syndrome**. Patients with Sotos syndrome have a characteristic facies with a prominent forehead, prominent chin, elongated nasal bridge, and down-slanting palpebral features. Mutations in NSD1 cause Sotos syndrome. Patients have a small but increased risk of cancer.

Other overgrowth syndromes include BWS (described earlier), and two single-gene disorders, Simpson-Golabi-Behmel syndrome and somatic overgrowth syndromes like megalocephaly-capillary malformation syndrome (MCAP). Patients with **Simpson-Golabi-Behmel syndrome** exhibit a BWS-like phenotype, but with additional anomalies, including polydactyly and more severe facial dysmorphism. Unlike patients with BWS, who have normal intelligence, patients with Simpson-Golabi-Behmel syndrome often have cognitive impairment. It is inherited as an X-linked disorder. Patients with **Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome** have macrosomia, macrocephaly, and unusual freckling of the penis. They may present with autism. They may develop hemangiomatous or lymphangiomatous growths and have a predisposition to certain malignancies (thyroid, breast, colon cancer). The cause of Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome is a mutation of the PTEN gene implicated in Cowden syndrome, the association of intestinal polyposis with malignant potential. Proteus syndrome was recently found to be caused by mosaic AKT-1 mutation.

The **PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway** is critical in regulating cellular proliferation, mobility, and survival. Variation in genes of this pathway can result in several disorders characterized by a wide range of phenotypes including MCAP. MCAP is defined by the following characteristics: megalencephaly or hemimegalencephaly, hypotonia, seizures, intellectual disability, and cutaneous capillary malformations with focal or generalized somatic overgrowth. Cortical malformation is not uncommon. Molecular analysis is most successful in affected tissue samples versus buccal swab or blood sample.

Keppler-Noreuil KM et al: Clinical delineation and natural history of the PIK3CA-related overgrowth spectrum. Am J Med Genet A 2014 Jul;164(7):1713–1733 [PMID: 24782230].

Lindhurst MJ et al: A mosaic activating mutation in AKT1 associated with the Proteus syndrome. N Engl J Med 2011 Aug 18;365(7):611–619 [Epub 2011 Jul 27] [PMID: 21793738].

5. Syndromic Short Stature

Short stature is an important component of numerous syndromes, or it may be an isolated finding. In the absence of nutritional deficiencies, endocrine abnormalities, evidence of skeletal dysplasia (disproportionate growth with abnormal skeletal films), or a positive family history, intrinsic short stature can be due to UPD. The phenotype of Russell-Silver syndrome—short stature with normal head growth (pseudohydrocephalus), normal development, and minor dysmorphic features (triangular facies, body asymmetry and fifth finger clinodactyly)—has been associated in some cases with maternal UPD7.

6. VACTERL Association

The disorder is sporadic, and some of the defects may be life-threatening. The prognosis for normal development is good. The cause is unknown, but a high association with monozygotic twinning suggests a mechanism dating back to events perhaps as early as blastogenesis.

Careful examination and follow-up are important, because numerous other syndromes have overlapping features. Microarray studies and genetic consultation are warranted. VACTERL is a diagnosis of exclusion.

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

VACTERL association is described by an acronym denoting the association of the following:

- Vertebral defects (segmentation anomalies).
- Imperforate anus.
- Cardiac malformation (most often ventricular septal defect).
- Tracheoesophageal fistula.
- Renal anomalies.
- Limb (most often radial ray) anomalies.

7. Kabuki syndrome

Kabuki syndrome (KS) is characterized by typical facial features (elongated palpebral fissures with eversion of the lateral third of the lower eyelid; arched and broad eyebrows; short columella with depressed nasal tip; large, prominent, or cupped ears), minor skeletal anomalies, persistence of fetal fingertip pads, mild to moderate intellectual disability, and postnatal growth deficiency. Other findings may include: congenital heart defects, genitourinary anomalies, cleft lip and/or palate, gastrointestinal anomalies including anal atresia, ptosis, and strabismus, and widely spaced teeth and hypodontia. Functional differences can include increased susceptibility to infections and autoimmune disorders, seizures, endocrinologic abnormalities including isolated premature thelarche in females, feeding problems, and hearing loss. Molecular genetic testing for MLL2 and KMT2D, the only genes in which mutations are known to cause KS, are available on a clinical basis.

Adam MP et al: Kabuki syndrome. GeneReviews. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/.

Genetic Evaluation of the Child with Developmental Disabilities

Cognitive disabilities or developmental delays affect 8% of the population. There are thousands of genes associated with developmental and intellectual disabilities, and determining an underlying genetic diagnosis may require consultation with a geneticist. Table 37–3 lists the main features of developmental delay, emphasizing the major clinical and genetic considerations. (See Chapter 3 for additional information about developmental delay and intellectual disability.)

Obtaining a detailed history, including pertinent prenatal and perinatal events, is critical. Feeding issues and slow growth velocity are seen in many genetic disorders causing developmental delay. Rate of developmental progress and particularly a history of loss of skills are important clues, as the latter might suggest a metabolic disorder with a neurodegenerative component. Family history can provide clues to suggest possible genetic etiologies, particularly if there is a history of consanguinity or a family pattern of other affected individuals.

Physical examination provides helpful clues. Referral to a clinical geneticist is indicated whenever unusual features are encountered. Neurologic, ophthalmologic, and audiologic consultation should be sought when indicated. Brain imaging (MRI) should be requested in cases involving unexplained deviations from normal head growth. Neuroimaging and skeletal studies may also be indicated when dysmorphic features are present.

Metabolic and genetic testing procedures other than those listed in the Table 37–3 may also be indicated.

Table 37–3. Evaluation of the child with developmental delay.

History
Pregnancy history
Growth parameters at birth
Neonatal complications
Feeding history
History of somatic growth
Motor, language, and psychosocial milestones
Seizures
Loss of skills
Abnormal movements
Results of previous tests and examinations
Family history
Developmental and educational histories
Psychiatric disorders
Pregnancy outcomes
Medical history
Consanguinity
Physical examination
General pediatric examination, including growth parameters
Focused dysmorphologic evaluation including measurement of facial features and limbs
Complete neurologic examination
Parental growth parameters (especially head circumferences) and dysmorphic features should also be assessed
Imaging studies
See text
Laboratory assessment
Microarray analysis (this has replaced chromosome analysis and FISH testing in most cases)
Fragile X testing (analysis of FMR1 gene for triplet repeats)
Other blood analyses: comprehensive metabolic panel, acylcarnitine profile, creatinine kinase (CK), lactate, pyruvate (this testing is helpful in the case of hypotonia)
Other metabolic tests may be helpful as second tier tests, including:
Serum amino acid analysis
Urine amino and organic acid analysis
Urine analysis for mucopolysaccharides (if coarse features and organomegaly)

Interpretation & Follow-Up

Clinical experience indicates that specific diagnoses can be made in approximately half of patients evaluated according to the protocol presented here. With specific diagnosis comes prognosis, ideas for management, and insight into recurrence risks.

Follow-up is important both for patients in whom diagnoses have been made and for those patients initially lacking a diagnosis. Genetic testing is advancing rapidly and can be translated into new diagnoses and better understanding with periodic review of clinical cases.

Autism

Autism is a developmental disorder comprising abnormal function in three domains: language development, social development, and behavior. Many patients with autism also have cognitive disabilities and might be appropriately evaluated according to the recommendations above. However, given the enormous increase in prevalence of autism in the past decade (1 in 68 children per latest CDC report), it is worth discussing the genetic evaluation of autism separately.

There are multiple known genetic causes of autism. Advances in molecular diagnosis, understanding of metabolic derangements, and technologies such as microarray are allowing more patients with autism to be identified with specific genetic disorders. This allows more accurate genetic counseling for recurrence risk, as well as diagnosis-specific interventions which may improve prognosis.

With this in mind, recommendations for the genetic evaluation of a child with autism include the following:

1. Genetic referral if dysmorphic features or cutaneous abnormalities are present (ie, hypopigmented spots such as those seen in patients with **tuberous sclerosis**).
2. Laboratory testing to include the following:
   A. Microarray.
   B. Molecular testing for **Fragile X syndrome**.
   C. Methylation testing for UPD15 if phenotype is suggestive of **Angelman syndrome**.
   D. Measurement of cholesterol and 7-DHC if syndactyly is present between the second and third toes to rule out a mild form of **Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome**.
   E. MECP2 testing if clinical course is suggestive of **Rett syndrome** (ie, little to no functional hand use, progressive microcephaly, and seizures in a female patient).
   F. PTEN molecular testing if the head circumference is greater than 2 standard deviations above the mean, plus evidence of penile freckling, lipomatous lesions, or a strong family history of certain malignancies.

Autism spectrum disorders are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

Shen Y et al; Autism Consortium Clinical Genetics/DNA Diagnostics Collaboration: Clinical genetic testing for patients with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 2010;125(4):e727–e735. Available at: http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/cgi/reprint/125/4/e727.

"Prevalence of Autism Spectrum Disorder among Children Aged 8 Years – Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network, 11 Sites, United States, 2010. CDC's Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, Mar 27, 2014 (http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr).

° pEr INATAl GENETICS

TERATOGENS

1. Drug Abuse & Fetal Alcohol Syndrome

Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) results from excessive exposure to alcohol during gestation and affects 30%–40% of offspring of mothers whose daily intake of alcohol exceeds 3 ounces. Features of the syndrome include: short stature, poor head growth (may be postnatal in onset), developmental delay, and midface hypoplasia characterized by a poorly developed philtrum, thin upper lip, narrow palpebral fissures, and short nose with anteverted nares. Facial findings may be subtle, but careful measurements and comparisons with standards are helpful. Structural abnormalities occur in half of affected children. Cardiac anomalies and neural tube defects are commonly seen. Genitourinary tract anomalies are frequent. Neurobehavioral effects in FAS include: poor judgment and inappropriate social interactions, and lack of stranger anxiety in toddlers. Cognitive deficiencies and behavioral problems may occur without other classic physical characteristics of fetal alcohol syndrome and constitute an alcohol-related neurological disorder (ARND). One of the most challenging aspects in evaluating these children is there is no blood test to confirm or rule out this diagnosis; it is strictly based on maternal history and clinical findings.

Maternal abuse of psychoactive substances is also associated with increased risks for adverse perinatal outcomes including miscarriage, preterm delivery, growth retardation, and increased risk for injury to the developing CNS. Methamphetamine and crack cocaine are particularly dangerous. Maternal abuse of inhalants, such as glue, appears to be associated with findings similar to those of fetal alcohol syndrome.

Careful evaluation for other syndromes and chromosomal disorders should be included in the workup of exposed infants. Behavioral abnormalities in older children may be the result of maternally abused substances, poor early social circumstances but they may also reflect evolving psychiatric disorders. Psychiatric disorders, many recognized as heritable, affect large numbers of men and women with substance abuse problems. Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

2. Maternal Anticonvulsant Effects

Anticonvulsant exposure during pregnancy is associated with adverse outcomes in approximately 10% of children born to women treated with these agents. A syndrome characterized by small head circumference, anteverted nares, cleft lip and palate (occasionally), and distal digital hypoplasia was first described in association with maternal use of phenytoin but also occurs with other anticonvulsants.

Risks for spina bifida are increased, especially in pregnancies exposed to valproic acid.

3. Retinoic Acid Embryopathy

Vitamin A and its analogs have considerable teratogenic potential. Developmental toxicity occurs in approximately one-third of pregnancies exposed in the first trimester to the synthetic retinoid isotretinoin, commonly prescribed to treat acne. Exposure produces CNS malformation, especially of the posterior fossa; ear anomalies (often absence of pinnae); congenital heart disease (great vessel anomalies); and tracheoesophageal fistula. It is now recognized that vitamin A itself, when taken as active retinoic acid in doses exceeding 25,000 IU/d during pregnancy, can produce similar fetal anomalies. Vitamin A intake is limited to 10,000 IU/d of retinoic acid. Maternal ingestion of large amounts of vitamin A taken as retinol during pregnancy, however, does not increase risks, because conversion of this precursor to active retinoic acid is internally regulated.

ASSISTED REPRODUCTION

Assisted reproductive technologies including in vitro fertilization are now utilized in a significant number of pregnancies. Although healthy live births are accepted as the usual outcomes resulting from successful application of these procedures, the actual number of viable embryos is limited and questions about the risks of adverse effects continue to be raised. Increased rates of twinning, both monozygotic and dizygotic, are well recognized, while the possibility of increased rates of birth defects remains controversial. Abnormal genetic imprinting appears to be associated with in vitro fertilization. Evidence supports increased prevalence of Beckwith-Wiedemann and Angelman syndromes among offspring of in vitro pregnancies.

PRENATAL DIAGNOSIS

Prenatal screening for birth defects is now routinely offered to pregnant women of all ages. Prenatal diagnosis introduces options for management.

Prenatal assessment of the fetus includes techniques that screen maternal blood, fetal imaging by ultrasound or MRI, fetal DNA analysis via maternal blood samples, and samples of fetal and placental tissues.

» Maternal Blood Analysis

Several options now exist to evaluate the fetus and pregnancy by obtaining a maternal blood sample. In the first trimester, measurements of PAPA (pregnancy-associated plasma protein A) and the free β-subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) screen for trisomies 21 and 18. In the second trimester, maternal α-fetoprotein (AFP), hCG, unconjugated estradiol, and inhibin ("quad screen") combine to estimate risks for trisomies 21 and 18. Low estradiol levels can also predict cases of Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome. Noninvasive prenatal testing using NextGen sequencing, via maternal blood sample (also known as cell free fetal DNA), can detect specific chromosome imbalances and typically tests for the presence of sex chromosomes as well as Trisomy 13, 18, and 21. Some newer test platforms are starting to look for common microdeletion sequencing as well. It is important to note that this testing is a screening test and diagnoses always need to be confirmed by another method as described in the next section.

» Analysis of Fetal Samples

A. Amniocentesis

Amniocentesis samples fluid surrounding the fetus; the cells obtained are cultured for cytogenetic, molecular, or metabolic analyses. α-Fetoprotein and other chemical markers can also be measured. This is a safe procedure with a complication rate (primarily for miscarriage) of less than 0.01% in experienced hands.

B. Chorionic Villus Sampling (Placental)

Chorionic villus sampling is generally performed at 10–12 weeks' gestation. Tissue obtained by chorionic villus sampling provides DNA for molecular analysis and contains dividing cells that can be rapidly evaluated by FISH. However, direct cytogenetic preparations may be of poor quality and placental fibroblasts must be routinely grown and analyzed. In addition, chromosomal abnormalities detected by this technique may be confined to the placenta (**confined placental mosaicism**) and be less informative than amniocentesis.

C. Fetal Blood and Tissue

Fetal blood can be sampled directly in late gestation through ultrasound-guided percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS). A wide range of diagnostic tests ranging from biochemical to aCGH can be applied. Fetal urine sampled from the bladder or dilated proximal structures can provide important information about fetal renal function.

It is occasionally necessary to obtain biopsy specimens of fetal tissues such as liver or muscle for accurate prenatal diagnosis. These procedures are available in only a few perinatal centers.

D. Preimplantation Genetic Diagnosis

With the advent of single-cell PCR techniques as well as interphase, FISH it is now possible to make genetic diagnoses in preimplantation human embryos by removing and analyzing blastocyst cells. Using this procedure, parents can

now consider selecting pregnancies for positive attributes such as becoming donors for transplantation of tissues to siblings affected by genetic disorders.

» Fetal Imaging

Fetal ultrasonography has become routine and MRI imaging is becoming increasingly common during pregnancy, while fetal x-rays are rarely employed. Ultrasonography has joined maternal blood sampling as a screening technique for common chromosomal aneuploidies, neural tube defects, and other structural anomalies. Pregnancies at increased risk for CNS anomalies, skeletal dysplasias, and structural defects of the heart and kidneys should be monitored by careful ultrasound examinations. Fetal MRI has become routine in the workup of suspected fetal CNS abnormalities as well as in an increasing number of other fetal anomalies.

Liao GJ, Gronowski AM, Zhao Z: Non-invasive prenatal testing using cell-free fetal DNA in maternal circulation. Clin Chim Acta 2014 Jan 20;428:44–50.

38 Allergic Disorders

Ronina A. Covar, MD
David M. Fleischer, MD
Christine Cho, MD
Mark Boguniewicz, MD

Allergic disorders are among the most common problems seen by pediatricians and primary care physicians, affecting over 25% of the population in developed countries. In the most recent National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 54% of the population had positive test responses to one or more allergens. According to a recent National Center for Health Statistics survey, the prevalence of food and skin allergies has increased over the past decade; with prevalence in 2009–2011 of 5% and 12.5%, respectively. While the prevalence of respiratory allergies has been stable, it is still the highest among children (17% in 2009–2011). In children, asthma, allergic rhinitis, and atopic dermatitis have been accompanied by significant morbidity and school absenteeism, with adverse consequences for school performance and quality of life, as well as economic burden measured in billions of dollars. In this chapter, atopy refers to a genetically determined predisposition to develop IgE antibodies found in patients with asthma, allergic rhinitis, and atopic dermatitis.

ASTHMA

» General Considerations

The Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention 2014 (www.ginasthma.org) report offers a new definition for asthma as "a heterogeneous disease, usually characterized by chronic airway inflammation. It is defined by the history of respiratory symptoms such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness, and cough that vary over time and in intensity, together with variable expiratory limitation."

Asthma is the most common chronic disease of childhood, affecting over 7 million children in the United States. While current prevalence rates for asthma have increased in the past decade (most recent estimate of 10%), the rate of asthma attack in the past year has been stable. Gender, race, and socioeconomic disparities in the prevalence of asthma exist: (1) More boys than girls are affected in childhood; (2) Higher percentage affected among black children compared to Hispanic and non-Hispanic white children; (3) Children belonging to poor families are more likely to be affected.

There is still a disproportionately higher health care utilization for asthma among children compared to adults affected by this disease. Asthma health care encounters in primary care settings have increased over time; death rates and emergency department (ED) visits related to asthma have declined, and hospitalizations due to asthma have been steady. Hospitalizations and emergency department or urgent ambulatory or office visits, all indicators of asthma severity, impose significant costs to the health care system and to families, caretakers, schools, and parents' employers. Indirect costs primarily from loss of productivity due to school/work absences are harder to measure, yet considerable. Asthma remains a potentially life-threatening disease for children; the rate of asthma deaths was 28 per 1 million children with current asthma. Similar to disparities in prevalence, morbidity and mortality rates for asthma are higher among minority and inner city populations. The reasons for this are unclear but may be related to a combination of more severe disease, poor access to health care, lack of asthma education, delay in use of appropriate controller therapy, and environmental factors (eg, irritants including smoke and air pollutants, and perennial allergen exposure).

Up to 80% of children with asthma develop symptoms before their fifth birthday. Atopy (personal or familial) is the strongest identifiable predisposing factor. Sensitization to inhalant allergens increases over time and is found in the majority of children with asthma. The principal allergens associated with asthma are perennial aeroallergens such as dust mite, animal dander, cockroach, and Alternaria (a soil mold). Rarely, foods may provoke isolated asthma symptoms.

About 40% of infants and young children who have wheezing with viral infections in the first few years of life

will have continuing asthma through childhood. Viral infections (eg, respiratory syncytial virus [RSV], rhinovirus, parainfluenza and influenza viruses, metapneumovirus) are associated with wheezing episodes in young children. RSV may be the predominant pathogen of wheezing infants in the emergency room setting, but rhinovirus can be detected in the majority of older wheezing children. It is uncertain if these viruses contribute to the development of chronic asthma, independent of atopy. Severe RSV bronchiolitis in infancy has been linked to asthma and allergy in childhood. Although speculative, individuals with lower airways vulnerability to common respiratory viral pathogens may be at risk for persistent asthma.

In addition to atopy and infections being associated with the development of asthma, observational studies have also demonstrated an increased risk of asthma attributed to acetaminophen exposure during prenatal periods, infancy, childhood, and even adulthood. Acetaminophen is the most commonly used antipyretic medication for children in the United States. Furthermore, there is evidence from secondary analyses suggesting that acetaminophen exposure increases the risk for subsequent asthma exacerbations or wheeze compared to ibuprofen; and that a dose dependent elevated risk of asthma symptoms could be found.

There are several mechanisms which have been proposed: acetaminophen interfering with glutathione (a tripeptide antioxidant that is involved in free radical scavenging and xenobiotic detoxification) pathway and impairing respiratory antioxidant defenses; presence of genetic polymorphisms in the glutathione pathway that are associated with increased susceptibility to asthma; and acetaminophen causing a switch to a TH2 from a TH1 response. Stronger pieces of evidence such as prospectively designed studies primarily addressing the questions of whether acetaminophen exposure truly increases the risk of the development of chronic asthma or even triggers acute asthma are needed.

Exposure to tobacco smoke is also a risk factor and a trigger for asthma. Other triggers include exercise, cold air, pollutants, strong chemical odors, and rapid changes in barometric pressure. Aspirin sensitivity is uncommon in children. Psychological factors may precipitate asthma exacerbations and place the patient at high risk from the disease.

Pathologic features of asthma include shedding of airway epithelium, edema, mucus plug formation, mast cell activation, and collagen deposition beneath the basement membrane. The inflammatory cell infiltrate includes eosinophils, lymphocytes, and neutrophils, especially in fatal asthma exacerbations. Airway inflammation contributes to airway hyperresponsiveness, airflow limitation, and disease chronicity. Persistent airway inflammation can lead to airway wall remodeling and irreversible changes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The diagnosis of asthma in children, especially among preschool aged, is based largely on clinical judgment and an assessment of symptoms, activity limitation, and quality of life. For example, if a child with asthma refrains from participating in physical activities so as not to trigger asthma symptoms, their asthma would be inadequately controlled but not detected by the standard questions.

Wheezing is the most characteristic sign of asthma, although some children may have recurrent cough and shortness of breath. Complaints may include "chest congestion," prolonged cough, exercise intolerance, dyspnea, and recurrent bronchitis or pneumonia. Chest auscultation during forced expiration may reveal prolongation of the expiratory phase and wheezing. As the obstruction becomes more severe, wheezes become more high-pitched and breath sounds diminished. With severe obstruction, wheezes may not be heard because of poor air movement. Flaring of nostrils, intercostal and suprasternal retractions, and use of accessory muscles of respiration are signs of severe obstruction. Cyanosis of the lips and nail beds may be seen with underlying hypoxia. Tachycardia and pulsus paradoxus also occur. Agitation and lethargy may be signs of impending respiratory failure.

B. Laboratory Findings

Bronchial hyperresponsiveness, reversible airflow limitation, and airway inflammation are key features of asthma. Documentation of all these components is not always necessary, unless the presentation is rather atypical.

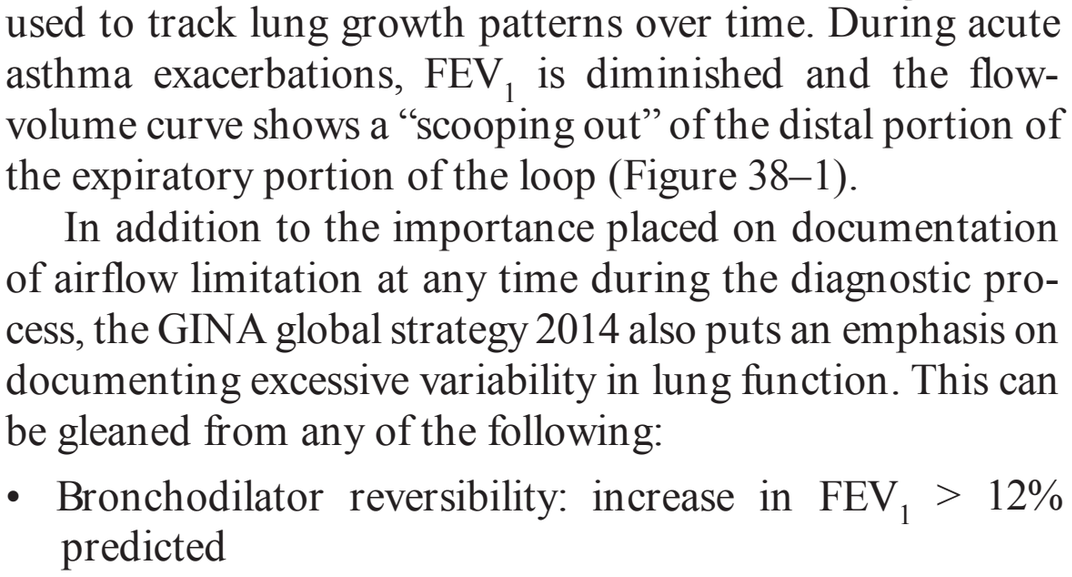
Bronchial hyperresponsiveness to nonspecific stimuli is a hallmark of asthma. These stimuli include inhaled pharmacologic agents such as histamine, methacholine, and mannitol, as well as physical stimuli such as exercise and cold air. Mannitol (Aridol) bronchoprovocation has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and is simpler and easier to administer in the office. It is available as a dry powder inhalation kit and takes less time to complete. Unlike methacholine and histamine challenges and similar to exercise challenge, it is considered an indirect challenge, that is, it simulates airway responses to specific physiologic situations, by creating an osmotic effect within the airway that subsequently leads to an inflammatory response. Airways may exhibit hyperresponsiveness or twitchiness even when baseline pulmonary function tests are normal. Giving increasing concentrations of a bronchoconstrictive agent to induce a decrease in lung function (usually a 20% drop in forced expiratory volume in 1 second [FEV_1] for histamine and methacholine and a 15% reduction for mannitol) and doing an exercise challenge are ways to determine airway responsiveness. Hyperresponsiveness

in normal children younger than age 5 years is greater than in older children. Bronchoprovocation challenges are not always available in a clinical setting but they help to establish a diagnosis of asthma when the history, examination, and pulmonary function tests are not definitive.

The National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Expert Panel Report 3 (NAEPP3) reinforces the use of spirometry over peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) measurements in the evaluation of airflow limitation in asthma. This can be measured by reduction in FEV_1 and FEV_1/FVC (forced vital capacity) values compared to reference or predicted values. By itself, it is not adequate in establishing a diagnosis, but it can be an important parameter to monitor asthma activity and treatment response. In children, FEV_1 may be normal, despite frequent symptoms. Spirometric measures of airflow limitation can be associated with symptom severity, likelihood of exacerbation, hospitalization, or respiratory compromise. Regular monitoring of prebronchodilator (and ideally postbronchodilator) FEV_1 can be used to track lung growth patterns over time. During acute asthma exacerbations, FEV_1 is diminished and the flow-volume curve shows a "scooping out" of the distal portion of the expiratory portion of the loop (Figure 38–1).

In addition to the importance placed on documentation of airflow limitation at any time during the diagnostic process, the GINA global strategy 2014 also puts an emphasis on documenting excessive variability in lung function. This can be gleaned from any of the following:

- Bronchodilator reversibility: increase in FEV_1 > 12% predicted
- Excessive variability in twice daily peak flow readings over 2 weeks: average daily diurnal PEF variability > 13% ([Day's highest PEF minus day's lowest PEF)]/mean of day's highest and lowest), averaged over 1 week
- Significant increase in lung function after 4 weeks of anti-inflammatory treatment (FEV1 > 12% and 200 mL (or PEF > 20%)
- (+) Exercise challenge test: fall in FEV_1 > 12% predicted or PEF > 15%
- (+) Bronchoprovocation challenge test
- Excessive variation in lung function between visits: variation in FEV1 of 12% or PEF > 15%



▲**Figure 38–1.** Representative flow-volume loops in persons with normal lung function, asthma, and vocal cord dysfunction.

PEFR monitoring can be a simple and reproducible tool to assess asthma activity in children with moderate or severe asthma, a history of severe exacerbations, or poor perception of airflow limitation or worsening condition. Significant changes in PEFR may occur before symptoms become evident. In more severe cases, PEFR monitoring enables earlier recognition of suboptimal asthma control.

Lung function assessment using body box plethysmography to determine lung volume measurements can also be informative. The residual volume, functional residual capacity, and total lung capacity are usually increased, while the vital capacity is decreased. Reversal or significant improvement of these abnormalities in response to inhaled bronchodilator therapy or with anti-inflammatory therapy can be observed.

Infant pulmonary function can be measured in sedated children with compression techniques. The forced oscillation technique can be used to measure airway resistance even in younger children.

Hypoxemia is present early with a normal or low PCO_2 level and respiratory alkalosis. Hypoxemia may be aggravated during treatment with a β_2-agonist due to ventilation-perfusion mismatch. Oxygen saturation less than 91% is indicative of significant obstruction. Respiratory acidosis and increasing CO_2 tension may ensue with further airflow obstruction and signal impending respiratory failure. Hypercapnia is usually not seen until the FEV_1 falls below 20% of predicted value. Metabolic acidosis has also been noted in combination with respiratory acidosis in children with severe asthma and indicates imminent respiratory failure. PaO_2 less than 60 mm Hg despite oxygen therapy and $PaCO_2$ over 60 mm Hg and rising more than 5 mm Hg/h are relative indications for mechanical ventilation in a child in status asthmaticus.

Pulsus paradoxus may be present with moderate or severe asthma exacerbation. In moderate asthma exacerbation in a child, this may be between 10 and 25 mm Hg, and in severe asthma exacerbation between 20 and 40 mm Hg. Absence of pulsus paradoxus in a child with severe asthma exacerbation may signal respiratory muscle fatigue.

Clumps of eosinophils on sputum smear and blood eosinophilia are frequent findings. Their presence tends to reflect disease activity and does not necessarily mean that allergic factors are involved. Leukocytosis is common in acute severe asthma without evidence of bacterial infection and may be more pronounced after epinephrine administration. Hematocrit can be elevated with dehydration during prolonged exacerbations or in severe chronic disease.

Noninvasive measures of airway inflammation include exhaled nitric oxide concentrations, serum eosinophil cationic protein levels, and induced sputum. Each test has its strengths and weaknesses.

C. Imaging

Evaluation of asthma usually does not need chest radiographs (posteroanterior and lateral views) since they often appear normal, although subtle and nonspecific findings of hyperinflation (flattening of the diaphragms), peribronchial thickening, prominence of the pulmonary arteries, and areas of patchy atelectasis may be present. Atelectasis may be misinterpreted as the infiltrates of pneumonia. Some lung abnormalities, such as bronchiectasis, which may point to a different diagnosis implicating an asthma masquerader, such as cystic fibrosis, allergic bronchopulmonary mycoses (aspergillosis), ciliary dyskinesias, or immune deficiencies, can be better appreciated with high-resolution, thin-section chest computed tomography (HRCT) scans. It is primarily useful clinically in ruling out certain diagnoses in patients with difficult to manage asthma but radiation exposure should be considered when ordering HRCT.

Allergy testing is discussed in the section General Measures under Treatment, Chronic Asthma.

» Differential Diagnosis

Diseases that may be mistaken for asthma are often related to the patient's age (Table 38–1). Congenital abnormalities must be excluded in infants and young children. Asthma can be confused with croup, acute bronchiolitis, pneumonia, and pertussis. Immunodeficiency may be associated with cough and wheezing. Foreign bodies in the airway may cause dyspnea or wheezing of sudden onset, and on auscultation, wheezing may be unilateral. Asymmetry of the lungs secondary to air trapping may be seen on a chest radiograph, especially with forced expiration. Cystic fibrosis can be associated with or mistaken for asthma.

Vocal cord dysfunction is an important masquerader of asthma, although the two can coexist. It is characterized by the paradoxic closure of the vocal cords that can result in dyspnea and wheezing. Diagnosis is made by direct visualization of the vocal cords. In normal individuals, the vocal cords abduct during inspiration and may adduct slightly during expiration. Asthmatic patients may have narrowing of the glottis during expiration as a physiologic adaptation to airway obstruction. In contrast, patients with isolated vocal cord dysfunction typically show adduction of the anterior two-thirds of their vocal cords during inspiration, with a small diamond-shaped aperture posteriorly. Because this abnormal vocal cord pattern may be intermittently present, a normal examination does not exclude the diagnosis. Bronchial challenges using exercise or methacholine can precipitate symptoms of vocal cord dysfunction. The flow-volume loop may provide additional clues to the diagnosis of vocal cord dysfunction. Truncation of the inspiratory portion can be demonstrated in most patients during an acute episode, and some patients continue to show this pattern even when they are asymptomatic (see Figure 38–1). Children with vocal cord dysfunction, especially adolescents, tend to be overly competitive, primarily in athletics and scholastics. A psychiatric consultation may help define underlying psychological issues and provide appropriate therapy. Treatment of isolated vocal cord dysfunction includes education regarding the condition and appropriate breathing exercises. Hypnosis, biofeedback, and psychotherapy have been effective for some patients.

Table 38–1. Differential diagnosis of asthma in infants and children.

Viral bronchiolitis
Aspiration
Laryngotracheomalacia
Vascular rings
Airway stenosis or web
Enlarged lymph nodes
Mediastinal mass
Foreign body
Bronchopulmonary dysplasia
Obliterative bronchiolitis
Cystic fibrosis
Vocal cord dysfunction
Cardiovascular disease

» Conditions That May Increase Asthma Severity

Chronic hyperplastic sinusitis is frequently found in association with asthma. Upper airway inflammation has been shown to contribute to the pathogenesis of asthma, and asthma may improve after treatment of sinusitis. However, sinus surgery is usually not indicated for initial treatment of chronic mucosal disease associated with allergy. In older children, rarely, hyperplastic sinusitis and polyposis and severe refractory asthma can be associated with aspirin sensitivity, known as aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease (AERD).

A significant correlation has been observed between nocturnal asthma and gastroesophageal reflux. Patients may not complain of burning epigastric pain or have other reflux symptoms—cough may be the only sign. For patients with poorly controlled asthma, particularly with a nocturnal component, investigation for gastroesophageal reflux may be warranted even in the absence of suggestive symptoms.

Population studies have demonstrated associations between obesity and asthma. Obesity has been linked not only to the development of asthma but also with asthma

control and severity. What contributes to these associations or to what extent inflammation or physiologic impairment relates to both obesity and asthma is less established. It becomes difficult to determine if a child's trouble breathing is a result of obesity itself, its comorbidities (eg, gastroesophageal reflux or obstructive sleep apnea), and/or asthma. A management approach targeting weight reduction in obese children is encouraged to improve asthma control or its assessment.

The risk factors for death from asthma include psychological and sociological factors. They are probably related to the consequences of illness denial, poor coping or self-management skills, as well as to nonadherence with prescribed therapy. Recent studies have shown that less than 50% of inhaled asthma medications are taken as prescribed and that compliance does not improve with increasing severity of illness. Moreover, children requiring hospitalization for asthma, or their caregivers, have often failed to institute appropriate home treatment.

» Complications

With acute asthma, complications are primarily related to hypoxemia and acidosis and can include generalized seizures. Pneumomediastinum or pneumothorax can be a complication in status asthmaticus. With chronic asthma, recent studies point to airway wall remodeling and loss of pulmonary function with persistent airway inflammation. Childhood asthma independent of any corticosteroid therapy has been shown to be associated with delayed maturation and slowing of prepubertal growth velocity.

» Treatment

A. Chronic Asthma

1. General measures—The NAEPP EPR3 and the GINA 2014 global strategy offer slightly different management approaches. Both include an assessment and regular monitoring of disease activity, education and partnership to improve the child's and his/her family's knowledge and skills for self-management, identification and management of triggers and conditions that may worsen asthma, and appropriate medications selected to address the patient's needs. The objective of asthma management is the attainment of the best possible asthma control.

The NAEPP EPR3 stepwise approach is based on an assessment of severity and control. An assessment of asthma severity (ie, the intrinsic intensity of disease) is generally most accurate in patients not receiving controller therapy. Hence, assessing asthma severity directs the level of initial therapy. For those already on treatment, asthma severity can be classified according to the level of medication requirement to maintain adequate asthma control. The two general categories are intermittent and persistent asthma, the latter further subdivided into mild, moderate, and severe (Table 38–2). In contrast, asthma control refers to the degree to which symptoms, ongoing functional impairments, and risk of adverse events are minimized and goals of therapy are met. Assessment of asthma control should be done at every visit as this is important in adjusting therapy. It is categorized as "well controlled," "not well controlled," and "very poorly

Table 38–2. Assessing severity and initiating treatment for patients who are not currently taking long-term control medications.

Components of Severity		Classification of Asthma Severity			
			Persistent		
		Intermittent	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Impairment	Daytime symptoms	≤ 2 d/wk	> 2 d/wk but not daily	Daily	Throughout the day
	Nighttime awakenings				
	Age 0–4 y	0	1–2 ×/mo	3–4 ×/mo	> 1 ×/wk
	Age ≥ 5 y	≤ 2 ×/mo	3–4 ×/mo	> 1 ×/wk but not nightly	Often 7 ×/wk
	SABA use for symptoms (not prevention of EIB)	≤ 2 d/wk	> 2 d/wk but not daily, and not more than 1 × on any day	Daily	Several times per day
	Interference with normal activity	None	Minor limitation	Some limitation	Extremely limited
	Lung function				

(Continued)

Table 38–2. Assessing severity and initiating treatment for patients who are not currently taking long-term control medications. (Continued)

Components of Severity		Classification of Asthma Severity			
		Intermittent	Persistent		
			Mild	Moderate	Severe
	FEV_1% predicted	Normal FEV_1 between exacerbations			
	Age ≥ 5 y	> 80% predicted	≥ 80% predicted	60%–80% predicted	< 60% predicted
	FEV_1/FVC ratio				
Normal FEV_1/FVC: 8–19 y, 85% 20–39 y, 80%	Age 5–11 y	> 85%	> 80%	75%–80%	< 75%
	Age ≥ 12 y	Normal	Normal	Reduced 5%	Reduced > 5%
Risk	Exacerbations requiring systemic corticosteroids				
	Age 0–4 y	0–1/y (see Notes)	≥ 2 exacerbations in 6 mo requiring systemic corticosteroids OR ≥ 4 wheezing episodes/year lasting > 1 d and risk factors for persistent asthma		
	Age ≥ 5 y	0–1/y (see Notes)	≥ 2/y (see Notes)		
		Consider severity and interval since last exacerbation. Frequency and severity may fluctuate over time for patients in any severity category. Relative annual risk of exacerbations may be related to FEV_1.			
Recommended step for initiating therapy		Step 1	Step 2	Age 0–4 y	
				Step 3	Step 3
				Age 5–11 y	
				Step 3, medium-dose ICS option	Step 3, medium-dose ICS option, OR step 4
				Age ≥ 12 y	
				Step 3	Step 4 or 5
				Consider a short course of systemic corticosteroids	
		In 2–6 wk, evaluate level of asthma control that is achieved and adjust therapy accordingly. If no clear benefit is observed within 4–6 wk, consider adjusting therapy or alternative diagnoses.			

EIB, exercise-induced bronchospasm; FEV_1, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC, forced vital capacity; ICS, inhaled corticosteroids; SABA, short-acting β_2-agonist.

Notes:

- The stepwise approach is meant to assist, not replace, the clinical decision-making required to meet individual patient needs.
- Level of severity is determined by both impairment and risk. Assess impairment domain by patient's/caregiver's recall of previous 2–4 weeks. Symptom assessment for longer periods should reflect a global assessment such as inquiring whether a patient's asthma is better or worse since the last visit. Assign severity to the most severe category in which any feature occurs.
- At present, there are inadequate data to correspond frequencies of exacerbations with different levels of asthma severity. For treatment purposes, patients who had ≥ 2 exacerbations requiring oral systemic corticosteroids in the past 6 months, or ≥ 4 wheezing episodes in the past year, and who have risk factors for persistent asthma may be considered the same as patients who have persistent asthma, even in the absence of impairment levels consistent with persistent asthma.

Adapted with permission from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

controlled" (Table 38–3). Responsiveness to therapy is the ease with which asthma control is attained by treatment. It can also encompass monitoring for adverse effects related to medication use.

The NAEPP EPR3 classification of either asthma severity or control is based on the domains of current impairment and risk, recognizing that these domains may respond differently to treatment. The level of asthma severity or control is established upon the most severe component of impairment or risk. Generally, the assessment of impairment is symptom based, except for the use of lung function for school-aged children and youths. Impairment includes an assessment of the patient's recent symptom frequency and intensity and functional limitations (ie, daytime symptoms, nighttime awakenings, need for short-acting β_2-agonists for quick relief, work or school days missed, ability to engage in normal or desired activities, and quality-of-life assessments) and airflow compromise preferably using spirometry. Numerous validated instruments and questionnaires for assessing health-related quality of life and asthma control have been developed. The Asthma Control Test (ACT, www.asthmacontrol.com), the Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ, www.qoltech.co.uk/Asthma1.htm), and the Asthma Therapy Assessment Questionnaire (ATAQ, www.ataqinstrument.com) for children 12 years of age and older, and the Childhood ACT for children 4–11 years of age are examples of self-administered questionnaires that have been developed with the objective of addressing multiple aspects of asthma control such as frequency of daytime and nocturnal symptoms, use of reliever medications, functional status, missed school or work, and so on. A five-item caregiver-administered instrument, the Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids (TRACK), has been validated as a tool to assess both impairment and risk presented in the NAEPP Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR3) guidelines in young children with recurrent wheezing or respiratory symptoms consistent with asthma.

Table 38–3. Assessing asthma control and adjusting therapy in children.

		Classification of Asthma Control		
Components of Control		Well Controlled	Not Well Controlled	Very Poorly Controlled
Impairment	Symptoms	≤ 2 d/wk but not more than once on each day	> 2 d/wk or multiple times on ≤ 2 d/wk	Throughout the day
	Nighttime awakenings			
	Age 0–4 y	≤ 1 × /mo	> 1 × /mo	> 1 × /wk
	Age 5–11 y	≤ 1 × /mo	≥ 2 × /mo	≥ 2 × /wk
	Age ≥ 12 y	≤ 2 × /mo	1–3 × /wk	≥ 4 × /wk
	SABA use for symptoms (not EIB pretreatment)	≤ 2 d/wk	> 2 d/wk	Several times per day
	Interference with normal activity	None	Some limitation	Extremely limited
	Lung function			
	Age 5–11 y			
	FEV_1% predicted or peak flow	> 80% predicted or personal best	60%–80% predicted or personal best	< 60% predicted or personal best
	FEV_1/FVC	> 80%	75%–80%	< 75%
	Age ≥ 12 y			
	FEV_1% predicted or peak flow	> 80% predicted or personal best	60%–80% predicted or personal best	< 60% predicted or personal best
	Validated questionnaires			
	Age ≥ 12 y			
	ATAQ	0	1–2	3–4
	ACQ	≤ 0.75[a]	≥ 1.5	N/A
	ACT	≥ 20	16–19	≤ 15
Risk	Exacerbations requiring systemic corticosteroids			
	Age 0–4 y	0–1 y	2–3/y	> 3/y
	Age ≥ 5 y	0–1 y	≥ 2/y (see Notes)	
	Consider severity and interval since last exacerbation.			

(Continued)

Table 38–3. Assessing asthma control and adjusting therapy in children. (Continued)

Components of Control		Classification of Asthma Control		
		Well Controlled	Not Well Controlled	Very Poorly Controlled
	Treatment-related adverse effects.	Medication side effects can vary in intensity from none to very troublesome and worrisome. The level of intensity does not correlate to specific levels of control but should be considered in the overall assessment of risk.		
	Reduction in lung growth or progressive loss of lung function.	Evaluation requires long-term follow-up care.		
Recommended action for treatment.		• Maintain current step. • Regular follow-up every 1–6 mo to maintain control. • Consider step-down if well controlled for at least 3 mo.	• Step up (1 step). • Reevaluate in 2–6 wk. • If no clear benefit in 4–6 wk, consider alternative diagnoses or adjusting therapy. • For side effects, consider alternative options.	• Consider short course of oral corticosteroids. • Step up (1–2 steps). • Reevaluate in 2 wk. • If no clear benefit in 4–6 wk, consider alternative diagnoses or adjusting therapy. • For side effects, consider alternative options.

EIB, exercise-induced bronchospasm; FEV_1, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC, forced vital capacity.

Notes:

- The stepwise approach is meant to assist, not replace, the clinical decision making required to meet individual patient needs.
- The level of control is based on the most severe impairment or risk category. Assess impairment domain by caregiver's recall of previous 2–4 weeks. Symptom assessment for longer periods should reflect a global assessment such as inquiring whether the patient's asthma is better or worse since the last visit.
- At present, there are inadequate data to correspond frequencies of exacerbations with different levels of asthma control. In general, more frequent and intense exacerbations (eg, requiring urgent, unscheduled care, hospitalization, or ICU admission) indicate poorer disease control. For treatment purposes, patients who had ≥ 2 exacerbations requiring oral systemic corticosteroids in the past year may be considered the same as patients who have not-well-controlled asthma, even in the absence of impairment levels consistent with not-well-controlled asthma.
- Validated questionnaires for the impairment domain (the questionnaires do not assess lung function or the risk domain):
  a. ATAQ = Asthma Therapy Assessment Questionnaire
  b. ACQ = Asthma Control Questionnaire
  c. ACT = Asthma Control Test
  d. Minimal Important Difference: 1.0 for ATAQ; 0.5 for the ACQ; not determined for ACT; [a]ACQ values of 0.76–1.40 are indeterminate regarding well-controlled asthma.
- Before step-up therapy:
  a. Review adherence to medications, inhaler technique, and environmental control.
  b. If alternative treatment option was used in a step, discontinue it and use preferred treatment for that step.

Adapted with permission from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

"Risk" refers to an evaluation of the patient's likelihood of developing asthma exacerbations, reduced lung growth in children (or progressive decline in lung function in adults), or risk of untoward effects from medications. The GINA 2014 strategy also cites risk factors for poor asthma outcomes (ie, exacerbations, fixed airflow limitation, and medication side effects). Potentially modifiable risk factors for exacerbations include uncontrolled asthma symptoms; excessive short-acting beta-agonist use (> 1 200-dose canister/month); inadequate or lack of inhaled corticosteroid; poor adherence; incorrect inhaler technique; low FEV1, especially if < 60% predicted; major psychological or socioeconomic problems; presence of smoking or allergen exposure; having comorbidities (obesity, rhinosinusitis, confirmed food allergy); sputum or blood eosinophilia; and pregnancy. Considered major independent risk factors for flare ups are history of intubation or ICU admission for asthma; and ≥1 severe exacerbation in last 12 months. Risk factors for developing fixed airflow limitation are lack of inhaled corticosteroid treatment; exposures to tobacco smoke, noxious chemicals, occupational exposures; low initial FEV_1; and chronic mucus hypersecretion, sputum or blood eosinophilia. Frequent oral corticosteroid use, long-term high dose and/or potent inhaled corticosteroid, and intake of P450 inhibitors are risk

factors for systemic medication side effects; while high-dose or potent inhaled corticosteroid and poor inhaler technique are also risk factors for local side effects.

Education is important and partnership with the child's family is a key component in the management to improve adherence and outcomes. The patient and family must understand the role of asthma triggers, the importance of disease activity even without obvious symptoms, how to use objective measures to gauge disease activity, and the importance of airway inflammation—and they must learn to recognize the warning signs of worsening asthma, allowing for early intervention. A stepwise care plan should be developed for all patients with asthma. Providing asthma action plans is currently a requirement that is tracked by many hospitals and others to document that educational instruction for chronic disease management has been given. Asthma action plans should be provided to school personnel and all those who care for children with asthma.

Because the degree of airflow limitation is poorly perceived by many patients, peak flow meters can aid in the assessment of airflow obstruction and day-to-day disease activity. Peak flow rates may provide early warning of worsening asthma. They are also helpful in monitoring the effects of medication changes. Spacer devices optimize delivery of medication from metered-dose inhalers (MDIs) to the lungs and, with inhaled steroids, minimize side effects. Large-volume spacers are preferred. Poor understanding by patients and families of proper device use can lead to inadequate delivery and treatment with inhaled medications, especially inhaled controllers. Short instructive videos for device use can be provided to educate families and other caregivers (URL: http://www.thechildrenshospital.org/conditions/lung/asthmavideos.aspx).

Patients should avoid exposure to tobacco smoke and allergens to which they are sensitized, exertion outdoors when levels of air pollution are high, β-blockers, and sulfite-containing foods. Patients with persistent asthma should be given the inactivated influenza vaccine yearly unless they have a contraindication.

For patients with persistent asthma, the clinician should use the patient's history to assess sensitivity to seasonal allergens and Alternaria mold and in vitro testing (either by skin or blood test) to assess sensitivity to perennial indoor allergens, to assess the significance of positive tests in the context of the patient's history, and to identify relevant allergen exposures. For dust mite–allergic children, important environmental control measures include encasing the pillow and mattress in an allergen-impermeable cover and washing the sheets and blankets on the patient's bed weekly in hot water. Other measures include keeping indoor humidity below 50%, minimizing the number of stuffed toys, and washing such toys weekly in hot water. Children allergic to furred animals or feathers should avoid indoor exposure to pets, especially for prolonged periods of time. If removal of the pet is not possible, the animal should be kept out of the bedroom with the door closed. Carpeting and upholstered furniture should be removed. While a high-efficiency particle-arresting filter unit in the bedroom may reduce allergen levels, symptoms may persist if the pet remains indoors. For cockroach-allergic children, control measures need to be instituted when infestation is present in the home. Poison baits, boric acid, and traps are preferred to chemical agents, which can be irritating if inhaled by asthmatic individuals. Indoor molds are especially prominent in humid or damp environments. Measures to control dampness or fungal growth in the home may be of benefit. Patients can reduce exposure to outdoor allergens by staying in an air-conditioned environment. Allergen immunotherapy may be useful for implicated aeroallergens that cannot be avoided. However, it should be administered only in facilities staffed and equipped to treat life-threatening reactions.

Patients should be treated for rhinitis, sinusitis, or gastroesophageal reflux, if present. Treatment of upper respiratory tract symptoms is an integral part of asthma management. Intranasal corticosteroids are recommended to treat chronic rhinosinusitis in patients with persistent asthma because they reduce lower airway hyperresponsiveness and asthma symptoms. Intranasal cromolyn reduces asthma symptoms during the ragweed season but less so than intranasal corticosteroids. Treatment of rhinosinusitis includes medical measures to promote drainage and the use of antibiotics for acute bacterial infections (see Chapter 18). Medical management of gastroesophageal reflux includes avoiding eating or drinking 2 hours before bedtime, elevating the head of the bed with 6- to 8-in blocks, and using appropriate pharmacologic therapy.

2. Pharmacologic therapy—A revised stepwise approach to pharmacologic therapy, broken down by age categories, is recommended in the NAEPP EPR3 (http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov) (Table 38–4). This approach is based on the concepts of asthma severity and asthma control. A separate set of recommendations for younger children is provided given the lack of tools which can be used to assess lung function and quality of life otherwise available for older children. Treatment recommendations for older children and adults are better supported by stronger evidence from available clinical trials, whereas those for younger children have been extrapolated from studies in older children and adults.

The choice of initial therapy is based on assessment of asthma severity. For patients who are already on controller therapy, treatment can be adjusted based on assessment of asthma control and responsiveness to therapy. The goals of therapy are to reduce the components of both impairment (eg, preventing chronic and troublesome symptoms, allowing infrequent need of quick-relief medications, maintaining "normal" lung function, maintaining normal activity levels including physical activity and school attendance, meeting

Table 38–4. Stepwise approach for managing asthma in children.

	Intermittent[a]	Persistent Asthma: Daily Medication					
		Step 2	Step 3	Step 4	Step 5	Step 6	Step down if possible (and asthma is well controlled at least 3 mo)
Age 0–4 y	Step 1 Preferred SABA PRN	Preferred Low-dose ICS Alternative Cromolyn or montelukast	Preferred Medium-dose ICS	Preferred Medium-dose ICS + either LABA or LTRA	Preferred High-dose ICS + either LABA or LTRA	Preferred High-dose ICS + either LABA or LTRA AND oral corticosteroid	**Assess Control** Step up if needed (first check inhaler technique, adherence, environmental control, and comorbid condition)
Age 5–11 y	Preferred SABA PRN	Preferred Low-dose ICS Alternative Cromolyn, LTRA, nedocromil, or theophylline	Preferred EITHER Low-dose ICS + either LABA, LTRA, or theophylline OR medium-dose ICS	Preferred Medium-dose ICS + LABA Alternative Medium-dose ICS + either LTRA or theophylline	Preferred High-dose ICS + LABA Alternative High-dose ICS + either LTRA or theophylline	Preferred High-dose ICS + LABA AND oral corticosteroid Alternative High-dose ICS + either LTRA or theophylline AND oral corticosteroid	
Age ≥ 12 y	Preferred SABA PRN	Preferred Low-dose ICS Alternative Cromolyn, LTRA, nedocromil, or theophylline	Preferred Low-dose ICS + LABA OR medium-dose ICS Alternative Low-dose ICS + either LTRA, theophylline, or zileuton	Preferred Medium-dose ICS + LABA Alternative Medium-dose ICS + either LTRA or theophylline or zileuton	Preferred High-dose ICS + LABA AND consider omalizumab for patients with allergies	Preferred High-dose ICS + LABA + oral corticosteroid AND consider omalizumab for patients with allergies	

Each step: Patient education, environmental control, and management of comorbidities.
Age ≥ 5 y: Steps 2–4: Consider subcutaneous allergen immunotherapy for patients who have allergic asthma.
Quick-Relief Medication for All Patients

- SABA as needed for symptoms. Intensity of treatment depends on severity of symptoms: up to three treatments at 20-minute intervals as needed. Short course of oral systemic corticosteroids may be needed.
- Caution: Use of SABA > 2 d/wk for symptom relief (not prevention of EIB) generally indicates inadequate control and the need to step up treatment.
- For ages 0–4 years: With viral respiratory infection: SABA q4-6h up to 24 hours (longer with physician consult). Consider short course of systemic corticosteroids if exacerbation is severe or patient has history of previous severe exacerbations.

ICS, inhaled corticosteroid; LABA, inhaled long-acting β_2-agonist; LTRA, leukotriene receptor antagonist; prn, as needed; SABA, inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist.
[a]Alphabetical order is used when more than one treatment option is listed within either preferred or alternative therapy.

(Continued)

Table 38–4. Stepwise approach for managing asthma in children. (Continued)

	Intermittent[a]	Persistent Asthma: Daily Medication

Notes:

- The stepwise approach is meant to assist, not replace, the clinical decision making required to meet individual patient needs.
- If alternative treatment is used and response is inadequate, discontinue it and use the preferred treatment before stepping up.
- If clear benefit is not observed within 4–6 weeks and patient/family medication technique and adherence are satisfactory, consider adjusting therapy or alternative diagnosis.
- Studies on children aged 0–4 years are limited. Step 2 therapy is based on Evidence A. All other recommendations are based on expert opinion and extrapolation from studies in older children.
- For age 5–11 years, steps 1 and 2 medications are based on Evidence A. Step 3 ICS + adjunctive therapy and ICS are based on Evidence B for efficacy of each treatment and extrapolation from comparator trials in older children and adults—comparator trials are not available for this age group; steps 4–6 are based on expert opinion and extrapolation from studies in older children and adults.
- For ages ≥ 12 years, steps 1, 2, and 3 preferred therapies are based on Evidence A; step 3 alternative therapy is based on Evidence A for LTRA, Evidence B for theophylline, and Evidence D for zileuton. Step 4 preferred therapy is based on Evidence B, and alternative therapy is based on Evidence B for LTRA and theophylline and Evidence D for zileuton. Step 5 preferred therapy is based on Evidence B. Step 6 preferred therapy is based on (EPR-1 1997) and Evidence B for omalizumab. In step 6, before oral systemic corticosteroids are introduced, a trial of high-dose ICS + LABA + either LTRA, theophylline, or zileuton may be considered, although this approach has not been studied in clinical trials.
- Clinicians who administer immunotherapy or omalizumab should be prepared and equipped to identify and treat anaphylaxis that may occur.
- Theophylline is a less desirable alternative due to the need to monitor serum concentration levels.
- Zileuton is less desirable alternative due to limited studies as adjunctive therapy and the need to monitor liver function.
- Immunotherapy for steps 2–4 is based on Evidence B for house dust mites, animal danders, and pollens; evidence is weak or lacking for molds and cockroaches. Evidence is strongest for immunotherapy with single allergens. The role of allergy in asthma is greater in children than in adults.

Adapted with permission from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

families' expectations and satisfaction with asthma care) and risk (eg, preventing recurrent exacerbations, reduced lung growth, and medication adverse effects).

1. The stepwise approach is meant to assist, not replace, the clinical decision making required to meet individual patient needs.
2. In the absence of persistent symptoms, the new clinical guidelines recommend considering initiation of long-term controller therapy for infants and younger children who have risk factors for asthma (ie, modified asthma predictive index: parental history of asthma, physician-diagnosed atopic dermatitis, or sensitization to aeroallergens or two of the following: wheezing apart from colds, sensitization to foods, or peripheral eosinophilia) and four or more episodes of wheezing over the past year that lasted longer than 1 day and affected sleep or two or more exacerbations in 6 months requiring systemic corticosteroids.
3. Inhaled corticosteroids, either as monotherapy or in combination with adjunctive therapy, are preferred treatment for all levels of persistent asthma.
4. Along with medium-dose inhaled corticosteroids, combination therapy with inhaled corticosteroids plus any of the following adjunctive therapies—long-acting inhaled β_2-agonists (LABAs), leukotriene modifying agents, cromones, and theophylline—is recommended as step 3 treatment for moderate persistent asthma, or as step-up therapy for uncontrolled persistent asthma for school-aged children and youths. In children aged 0–4 years, medium-dose inhaled corticosteroids as monotherapy remain the step 3 therapy, and combination therapy to be initiated only as a step 4 treatment. A rescue course of systemic corticosteroids may be necessary at any step.

The GINA global strategy has a different and maybe simplified set of recommend options for initiation of controller therapy (Table 38–5). In their stepwise approach (Table 38–6), emphasis on maximizing benefit from available medications, inhaler technique, and adherence before step-up treatment is pursued.

Asthma medications are classified as long-term controller medications and quick-relief medications. The former includes anti-inflammatory agents, leukotriene modifiers, and long-acting bronchodilators. Although LABAs (salmeterol, formoterol) are β-agonists, they are considered to be daily controller medications, but unlike the other asthma controller medications with primarily anti-inflammatory properties, LABAs cannot be administered as monotherapy.

Inhaled corticosteroids are the most potent inhaled anti-inflammatory agents currently available. Although recommended as daily controller therapy, recent studies have shown their efficacy even for intermittent use for rescue or at the onset of acute respiratory illnesses. Different inhaled corticosteroids are not equivalent on a per puff or microgram basis (Table 38–7). Early intervention with inhaled corticosteroids can improve asthma control and prevent exacerbations during treatment, but they do not prevent

Table 38–5. Recommended options for initial controller treatment in adults and adolescents.

Presenting symptoms	Preferred initial controller
Asthma symptoms or need for SABA <2 x/month; no waking due to asthma in last month; and no risk factors for exacerbations, including no exacerbations in the last year	Step 1: No controller
Infrequent asthma symptoms, but the patient has ≥ 1 risk factors for exacerbations; eg, low lung function, or exacerbation requiring OCS in the last year, or has ever been in ICU for asthma	Step 2: Low dose ICS
Asthma symptoms or need for SABA between twice a month and twice a week, or patient wakes ≥1 a month	Step 2: Low dose ICS
Asthma symptoms or need for SABA more than twice a week	Step 2: Low dose ICS; alternative options (LTRA or theophylline)
Troublesome asthma symptoms most days; or waking due to asthma ≥ 1 a week, especially if any risk factors exist	Step 3: Medium/high dose ICS or Low dose ICS/LABA*
Initial asthma presentation is with severely uncontrolled asthma, or with an acute exacerbation	Short course of oral CS AND Start regular controller treatment; options are: High dose ICS OR Moderate dose ICS/LABA

*Not recommended for initial treatment in children 6–11 years

the development of persistent asthma nor do they alter its natural history. Long-term inhaled corticosteroids may be associated with early slowing of growth velocity in children, and although this can impact the final adult height by a minimum degree, it is not a cumulative effect. Possible risks from inhaled corticosteroids need to be weighed against the risks from undertreated asthma. The adverse effects from inhaled corticosteroids are generally dose and duration dependent, so that greater risks for systemic adverse effects are expected with high doses. The various inhaled corticosteroids are delivered in different devices such as MDI (beclomethasone, ciclesonide, fluticasone propionate, flunisolide, mometasone, and triamcinolone), dry powder inhaler (DPI) (fluticasone propionate [Diskus], fluticasone furoate [Ellipta], budesonide [Flexhaler], and mometasone [Twisthaler]), and nebulized aerosol suspensions (budesonide respules). Inhaled medications delivered in MDI now use the more ozone friendly hydrofluoroalkane (HFA) propellant,

Table 38–6. GINA 2014 Stepwise approach to control symptoms and minimize future risk.

Preferred Controller Choice	STEP 1	STEP 2 Low dose ICS	STEP 3 *Children 6-11 yr: Medium dose ICS Low dose ICS/LABA	STEP 4 Medium/high ICS/LABA	STEP 5 Refer to add-on treatment, eg, anti-IgE
Other controller options	Consider low Dose ICS	LTRA Low Dose theophylline	Medium/High dose ICS Low dose ICS+LTRA (or +theophylline for adolescents and adults)	High dose ICS+LTRA (or +theophylline for adolescents and adults)	Add low dose OCS
Reliever	As needed SABA		As needed SABA (all children) or Low dose ICS/formoterol		
Assess Diagnosis Symptom control &Risk factors (including lung function) Inhaler technique &adherence Patient preference		Adjust Treatment Asthma medications Nonpharmacologic strategies Treat modifiable risk factors		Review Response Symptoms Exacerbations Side effects Patient satisfaction Lung function	

Table 38–7. Estimated comparative inhaled corticosteroid doses.

Drug	Low Daily Dose			Medium Daily Dose		High Daily Dose			
	0–4 y	5–11 y	≥ 12 y	0–4 y	5–11 y	≥ 12 y	0–4 y	5–11 y	≥ 12 y
Beclomethasone HFA, 40 or 80 mcg/puff	NA	80–160 mcg	80–240 mcg	NA	> 160–320 mcg	> 240–480 mcg	NA	> 320 mcg	> 480 mcg
Budesonide DPI 90, 80, or 200 mcg/inhalation	NA	180–400 mcg	180–600 mcg	NA	> 400–800 mcg	> 600–1200 mcg	NA	> 800 mcg	> 1200 mcg
Budesonide inhaled suspension for nebulization, 0.25-, 0.5-, and 1.0-mg dose	0.25–0.5 mg	0.5 mg	NA	> 0.5–1.0 mg	1.0 mg	NA	> 1.0 mg	2.0 mg	NA
Flunisolide, 250 mcg/puff	NA	500–750 mcg	500–1000 mcg	NA	1000–1250 mcg	> 1000–2000 mcg	NA	> 1250 mcg	> 2000 mcg
Flunisolide HFA, 80 mcg/puff	NA	160 mcg	320 mcg	NA	320 mcg	> 320–640 mcg	NA	≥ 640 mcg	> 640 mcg
Fluticasone HFA/MDI, 44, 110, or 220 mcg/puff	176 mcg	88–176 mcg	88–264 mcg	> 176–352 mcg	> 176–352 mcg	> 264–440 mcg	> 352 mcg	> 352 mcg	> 440 mcg
Fluticasone DPI, 50, 100, or 250 mcg/inhalation	NA	100–200 mcg	100–300 mcg	NA	> 200–400 mcg	> 300–500 mcg	NA	> 400 mcg	> 500 mcg
Mometasone DPI, 220 mcg/inhalation	NA	NA	220 mcg	NA	NA	440 mcg	NA	NA	> 440 mcg
Triamcinolone acetonide, 75 mcg/puff	NA	300–600 mcg	300–750 mcg	NA	> 600–900 mcg	> 750–1500 mcg	NA	> 900 mcg	> 1500 mcg

DPI, dry powder inhaler; HFA, hydrofluoroalkane; MDI, metered-dose inhaler; NA, not approved and no data available for this age group. Reproduced with permission from National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

which has replaced chlorofluorocarbons (CFC). See instructions for different device use at the following URL: http://www.thechildrenshospital.org/conditions/lung/asthmavideos.aspx.

Only inhaled corticosteroids have been shown to be effective in long-term clinical studies for infants. Nebulized budesonide is approved for children as young as 12 months. The suspension (available in quantities of 0.25 mg/2 mL, 0.5 mg/2 mL, and 1.0 mg/2 mL) is usually administered either once or twice daily in divided doses. For effective drug delivery, it is critical that the child has a mask secured on the face for the entire treatment, as blowing it in the face is not effective and yet a common practice by parents. Notably, this drug should not be given by ultrasonic nebulizer. Limited data suggest that inhaled corticosteroids may be effective even in very young children when delivered by MDI with a spacer and mask.

Fewer data are available with nedocromil, although data from the Childhood Asthma Management Program study showed that an inhaled corticosteroid was superior to nedocromil with respect to several efficacy parameters, including rate of hospitalization, symptom-free days, need for albuterol rescue, and longer time to treatment with prednisone, when each was compared to a placebo.

Theophylline is rarely used. Sustained-release theophylline, an alternative long-term control medication for older children, may have particular risks of adverse effects in infants, who frequently have febrile illnesses that increase theophylline concentrations. Hence, if theophylline is used, it requires monitoring of serum concentration to prevent numerous dose-related acute toxicities.

For school-aged children whose asthma is uncontrolled on low-dose inhaled corticosteroid (ie, requiring step 3 guidelines therapy), majority are likely to respond to a step-up combination therapy with a long-acting β_2-agonist bronchodilator (eg, salmeterol and formoterol), although some respond best either to an increased dose of inhaled corticosteroid or to an addition of a leukotriene receptor antagonist. LABAs should not be used for treatment of acute symptoms, nor should they be used without any inhaled corticosteroid therapy, even if the patient feels better. Salmeterol is available as an inhalation powder (one inhalation twice daily for patients aged 4 years and older). It is also available combined with fluticasone (50 mcg salmeterol with 100, 250,

or 500 mcg fluticasone in a DPI or 21 mcg salmeterol with 45, 115, or 230 mcg fluticasone in an MDI). For children 12 years and older, one inhalation DPI or two inhalations MDI can be taken twice daily. (Note: The 100/50 fluticasone/salmeterol combination is approved in children aged 4 and older.) Salmeterol can also be used 30 minutes before exercise (but not in addition to regularly used LABAs). Formoterol has a more rapid onset of action and is available singly either as a DPI (Aerolizer, 12 mcg) or a nebulized solution approved only for COPD (Perforomist); or combined with an inhaled steroid (formoterol fumarate, either 4.5 mcg with budesonide [80 or 160 mcg] or 5 mcg with mometasone [100 or 200 mcg], in an MDI). Formoterol DPI is approved for use in children 5 years and older, one inhalation (12 mcg) twice daily, while the combination product is approved for children 12 years and older, two inhalations twice daily. For long-term control, formoterol should be used in combination with an anti-inflammatory agent. It can be used for exercise-induced bronchospasm in patients 5 years and older, one inhalation at least 15 minutes before exercise (but not in addition to regularly used LABAs). An even longer acting LABA, vilanterol, with a 24-hour activity, combined with fluticasone furoate (Breo) is available for asthma in patients 18 years and older. Of note, FDA has requested the manufacturers of Advair Diskus and HFA (salmeterol and fluticasone), Serevent Diskus (salmeterol xinafoate), Foradil Aerolizer (formoterol fumarate), Symbicort HFA, and Brovana (arformoterol tartrate inhalation solution, a LABA approved for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) to update their product information warning sections regarding an increase in severe asthma episodes associated with these agents. This action is in response to data showing an increased number of asthma-related deaths in patients receiving LABA therapy in addition to their usual asthma care as compared with patients not receiving LABAs. This notice is also intended to reinforce the appropriate use of LABAs in the management of asthma. Specifically, LABA products should not be initiated as first-line asthma therapy, used with worsening wheezing, or used for acute control of bronchospasm. No data are available regarding safety concerns in patients using these products for exercise-induced bronchoconstriction. Additional information, including copies of the Patient and Healthcare Professional information sheets, can be found at: http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/infopage/LABA/default.htm.

Montelukast and zafirlukast are leukotriene-receptor antagonists available in oral formulations. Montelukast is given once daily and has been approved for treatment of chronic asthma in children aged 1 year and older, as an alternative step 2 monotherapy and add-on therapy for steps 3–6. It is also indicated for seasonal allergic rhinitis in patients 2 years and older, and for perennial allergic rhinitis in patients 6 months and older. To date, no drug interactions have been noted. The dosage is 4 mg for children 1–5 years (oral granules are available for children aged 12–23 months), 5 mg for children aged 6–14 years, and 10 mg for those aged 15 years and older. The drug is given without regard to mealtimes, preferably in the evening. Zafirlukast is approved for patients aged 5 years and older. The dose is 10 mg twice daily for those 5–11 years and 20 mg twice daily for those 12 years and older. It should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals. Zileuton is a 5-lipoxygenase inhibitor indicated for chronic treatment in children 12 years of age and older, available in regular 600 mg dose tablet four times a day or extended release 600 mg dose tablet, 2 tablets twice a day. Patients need to have hepatic transaminase levels evaluated at initiation of therapy, then once a month for the first 3 months, every 2–3 months for the remainder of the first year, and periodically thereafter if receiving long-term zileuton therapy. Rare cases of Churg-Strauss syndrome have been reported in adult patients with severe asthma whose steroid dosage was being tapered during concomitant treatment with leukotriene-receptor antagonists (as well as inhaled corticosteroids), but no causal link has been established. Both zafirlukast and zileuton are microsomal P-450 enzyme inhibitors that can inhibit the metabolism of drugs such as warfarin and theophylline. The FDA has requested that manufacturers include a precaution in the drug prescribing information (drug labeling) regarding neuropsychiatric events (agitation, aggression, anxiousness, dream abnormalities and hallucinations, depression, insomnia, irritability, restlessness, suicidal thinking and behavior, and tremor) based on postmarket reports of patients taking leukotriene-modifying agents. Of note, in a study of children with mild to moderate persistent asthma that looked at whether responses to an inhaled corticosteroid and a leukotriene-receptor antagonist are concordant for individuals or whether asthmatic patients who do not respond to one medication respond to the other, response to fluticasone and montelukast were found to vary considerably. Children with low pulmonary function or high levels of markers associated with allergic inflammation responded better to the inhaled corticosteroid.

Children with persistent asthma who remain uncontrolled on inhaled corticosteroid monotherapy are more likely to respond to a combination treatment of an inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA; however, there are children who can respond best to a higher dose of inhaled corticosteroid, or even a low-dose inhaled corticosteroid plus montelukast. It has not been definitely determined what clinical features would be helpful in selecting the most appropriate medication for any one patient. Recent studies in adults have also shown the efficacy of a long-acting antimuscarinic agent, tiotropium (Spiriva respimat [1.25 mcg] has now been approved as once daily maintenance treatment for asthma in patients 12 years and older), as an add-on therapy to inhaled corticosteroids.

Quick-relief medications include short-acting inhaled β_2-agonists (SABAs) such as albuterol, levalbuterol, pirbuterol, or terbutaline. Albuterol can be given by nebulizer, 0.05 mg/kg (with a minimal dose of 0.63 mg and a maximum

of 5 mg) in 2–3 mL saline (although it is also available in a 2.5 mg/3 mL single vial or 5 mg/mL concentrated solution) or by MDI (90 mcg/actuation) or by breath-actuated DPI (Respiclick). It is better to use SABAs as needed rather than on a regular basis. Increasing use, including more than one canister per month, may signify inadequate asthma control and the need to step up or revise controller therapy. Levalbuterol, the (R)-enantiomer of racemic albuterol, is available in solution for nebulization in patients aged 6–11 years, 0.31 mg every 8 hours, and in patients 12 years and older, 0.63–1.25 mg every 8 hours. It has recently become available in an HFA formulation for children 4 years and older, two inhalations (90 mcg) every 4–6 hours as needed. Anticholinergic agents such as ipratropium, 1–3 puffs or 0.25–0.5 mg by nebulizer every 6 hours, may provide additive benefit when used together with an inhaled SABA. Systemic corticosteroids such as prednisone, prednisolone, and methylprednisolone can be given in a dosage of 1–2 mg/kg, usually up to 60 mg/d in single or divided doses for 3–10 days. There is no evidence that tapering the dose following a "burst" prevents relapse.

Anti-IgE (omalizumab) is a recombinant DNA-derived humanized IgG_1 monoclonal antibody that selectively binds to human IgE. It inhibits the binding of IgE to the high-affinity IgE receptor (FcεRI) on the surface of mast cells and basophils. Reduction in surface-bound IgE on FcεRI-bearing cells limits the degree of release of mediators of the allergic response. Treatment with omalizumab also reduces the number of FcεRI receptors on basophils in atopic patients. Omalizumab is indicated for patients 12 years of age and older with moderate to severe persistent asthma who have a positive skin test or in vitro reactivity to a perennial aeroallergen with total serum IgE of 30–700 IU/mL, and whose symptoms are inadequately controlled with medium- to high-dose inhaled corticosteroids. Omalizumab has been shown to decrease the incidence of asthma exacerbations and improve asthma control in these patients. Dosing is based on the patient's weight and serum IgE level and is given subcutaneously every 2–4 weeks. The FDA has ordered a black box warning to the label because of new reports of serious and life-threatening anaphylactic reactions (bronchospasm, hypotension, syncope, urticaria, and angioedema of the throat or tongue) in patients after treatment with omalizumab (Xolair). Based on pre-marketing clinical trials in patients with asthma, anaphylaxis occurred with 0.1% of patients; in a postmarketing spontaneous reports based on an estimated exposure of about 57,300 patients from June 2003 through December 2006, the frequency of anaphylaxis attributed to Xolair use was estimated to be at least 0.2% of patients. From a case control study, patients with a history of anaphylaxis from whatever are considered at increased risk of anaphylaxis with Xolair, compared to those with no prior history of anaphylaxis. Although these reactions occurred within 2 hours of receiving a omalizumab subcutaneous injection, they also included reports of serious delayed reactions 2–24 hours or even longer after receiving the injections. Anaphylaxis occurred after any dose of omalizumab (including the first dose), even in patients with no allergic reaction to previous doses. Omalizumab-treated patients should be observed in the facility for an extended period after the drug is given, and medical providers who administer the injection should be prepared to manage life-threatening anaphylactic reactions. Patients who receive omalizumab should be fully informed about the signs and symptoms of anaphylaxis, their chance of developing delayed anaphylaxis following each injection, and how to treat it, including the use of autoinjectable epinephrine. Malignancy (e.g., breast, non-melanoma skin, prostate, melanoma, and parotid, etc.) was observed in 20 of 4127 (0.5%) Xolair-treated patients compared with 5 of 2236 (0.2%) control patients in clinical studies of adults and adolescents with asthma and other allergies. A more recent observational study of 5007 Xolair-treated and 2829 non-Xolair-treated patients with moderate to severe persistent allergic asthma followed for up to 5 years showed similar incidence rates (per/1000 patient years) of primary malignancies among Xolair-treated (12.3) and non-Xolair-treated patients (13.0).

New biologics or immunomodulators directed against specific type 2 helper T-cell cytokines have been studied to target the inflammatory component of asthma. The US FDA has recently recommended approval of both anti-IL-5 antibodies—mepolizumab (Nucala, monoclonal antibody IgG1K, administered 100 mg subcutaneously every 4 weeks) for patients 12 years and older; and reslizumab (Cinquil™, monoclonal antibody IgG4K, given 3 mg/kg intravenously monthly) for adult patients aged 18 years and older. Both drugs are targeted biologic therapy for the treatment of poorly controlled asthma in patients with elevated blood eosinophils, shown to be effective at reducing exacerbations and improving lung function and symptom control.

Immunotherapy (discussed in more detail in section Immunotherapy) can be considered for children 5 years and older with allergic asthma who require steps 2, 3, and 4 therapy.

Continual monitoring is necessary to ensure that control of asthma is achieved and sustained. Once control is established, gradual reduction in therapy is appropriate and may help determine the minimum amount of medication necessary to maintain control. Regular follow-up visits with the clinician are important to assess the degree of control and consider appropriate adjustments in therapy. At each step, patients should be instructed to avoid or control exposure to allergens, irritants, or other factors that contribute to asthma severity.

Referral to an asthma specialist for consultation or comanagement is recommended if there are difficulties in achieving or maintaining control. For children younger than age 5 years, referral is recommended for moderate persistent asthma or if the patient requires step 3 or 4 care and should be considered if the patient requires step 2 care. For children 5 years and

older, consultation with a specialist is recommended if the patient requires step 4 care or higher and should be considered at step 3. Referral is also recommended if allergen immunotherapy or anti-IgE therapy is being considered.

3. Exercise-induced bronchospasm—Exercise-induced bronchospasm should be anticipated in all asthma patients. It typically occurs during or minutes after vigorous activity, reaches its peak 5–10 minutes after stopping the activity, and usually resolves over the next 20–30 minutes. Participation in physical activity should be encouraged in children with asthma, although the choice of activity may need to be modified based on the severity of illness, presence of other triggers such as cold air, and, rarely, confounding factors such as osteoporosis. Poor endurance or exercise-induced bronchospasm can be an indication of poorly controlled persistent asthma. If symptoms occur during usual play activities, either initiation of or a step-up in long-term therapy is warranted. However, for those with exercise-induced bronchospasm as the only manifestation of asthma despite otherwise being "well-controlled," treatment immediately prior to vigorous activity or exercise is usually effective. SABAs, leukotriene receptor antagonists, cromolyn, or nedocromil can be used before exercise. The combination of a SABA with either cromolyn or nedocromil is more effective than either drug alone. Salmeterol and formoterol may block exercise-induced bronchospasm for up to 12 hours (as discussed earlier). However, decreased duration of protection against exercise-induced bronchospasm can be expected with regular use. Montelukast may be effective up to 24 hours. An extended warm-up period may induce a refractory state, allowing patients to exercise without a need for repeat medications.

B. Acute Asthma

1. General measures—The most effective strategy in managing asthma exacerbations involves early recognition of warning signs and early treatment. For patients with moderate or severe persistent asthma or a history of severe exacerbations, this should include a written action plan. The latter usually defines the patient's green, yellow, and red zones based on symptoms (and PEFR for patients with poor symptom perception) with corresponding measures to take according to the state the patient is in. PEFR cut-off values are conventionally set as > 80% (green), 50%–80% (yellow), and < 50% (red) of the child's personal best. Prompt communication with the clinician is indicated with severe symptoms or a drop in peak flow or with decreased response to SABAs. At such times, intensification of therapy may include a short course of oral corticosteroids. The child should be removed from exposure to any irritants or allergens that could be contributing to the exacerbation.

2. Management at home—Early treatment of asthma exacerbations may prevent hospitalization and a life-threatening event. Initial treatment should be with a SABA such as albuterol or levalbuterol; 2–6 puffs from an MDI can be given every 20 minutes up to three times, or a single treatment can be given by nebulizer (0.05 mg/kg [minimum dose, 1.25 mg; maximum, 2.5 mg] of 0.5% solution of albuterol in 2–3 mL saline; or 0.075 mg/kg [minimum dose, 1.25 mg; maximum, 5 mg] of levalbuterol). If the response is good as assessed by sustained symptom relief or improvement in PEFR to over 80% of the patient's best, the SABA can be continued every 3–4 hours for 24–48 hours. Patients should be advised to seek medical care once excessive doses of bronchodilator therapy are used or for prolonged periods (eg, > 12 puffs/d for > 24 hours). Doubling the dose of inhaled corticosteroids is not proven sufficient to prevent worsening of exacerbations; however, recent evidence indicates that quadrupling the inhaled corticosteroid dose at the early sign of deterioration might be effective. If the patient does not completely improve from the initial therapy or PEFR falls between 50% and 80% predicted or personal best, the SABA should be continued, an oral corticosteroid should be added, and the patient should contact the physician urgently. If the child experiences marked distress or if PEFR persists at 50% or less, the patient should repeat the SABA immediately and go to the emergency department or call 911 or another emergency number for assistance.

3. Management in the office or emergency department—Functional assessment of the patient includes obtaining objective measures of airflow limitation with PEFR or FEV_1 and monitoring the patient's response to treatment; however, very severe exacerbations and respiratory distress may prevent the execution of lung function measurements using maximal expiratory maneuver. Flow-volume loops should be obtained to differentiate upper and lower airway obstruction, especially in patients with atypical presentation. Other tests may include oxygen saturation and blood gases. Chest radiographs are not recommended routinely but should be considered to rule out pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, pneumonia, or lobar atelectasis. If the initial FEV_1 or PEFR is over 40%, initial treatment can be with a SABA by inhaler (albuterol, 4–8 puffs) or nebulizer (0.15 mg/kg of albuterol 0.5% solution; minimum dose, 2.5 mg), up to three doses in the first hour. Oxygen should be given to maintain oxygen saturation at greater than 90%. Oral corticosteroids (1–2 mg/kg/d in divided doses; maximum of 60 mg/d for children aged ≤ 12 years and 80 mg/d for those > 12 years) should be instituted if the patient responds poorly to therapy or if the patient has recently been on oral corticosteroids. Sensitivity to adrenergic drugs may improve after initiation of corticosteroids. For severe exacerbations or if the initial FEV_1 or PEFR is under 40%, initial treatment should be with a high-dose SABA plus ipratropium bromide, 1.5–3 mL every 20 minutes for 3 doses (each 3 mL vial contains 0.5 mg ipratropium bromide and 2.5 mg albuterol), then as needed by nebulizer. Continuous

albuterol nebulized treatments (0.5 mg/kg/hour for small and 10–15 mg/hour for older children) can be administered for evidence of persistent obstruction. Oxygen should be given to maintain oxygen saturation at greater than 90%, and systemic corticosteroids should be administered. For patients with severe exacerbation having no response to initial aerosolized therapy, or for those who cannot cooperate with or who resist inhalation therapy, adjunctive therapies such as intravenous magnesium sulfate (25–75 mg/kg up to 2 g in children) and heliox-driven albuterol nebulization should be considered. Epinephrine 1:1000 or terbutaline 1 mg/mL (both 0.01 mg/kg up to 0.3–0.5 mg) may be administered subcutaneously every 20 minutes for three doses; although the use of intravenous β_2-agonists is still unproven. For impending or ongoing respiratory arrest, patients should be intubated and ventilated with 100% oxygen, given intravenous corticosteroids, and admitted to an intensive care unit (ICU). Potential indications for ICU admission also include any FEV_1 or PEFR less than 25% of predicted that improves less than 10% after treatment or values that fluctuate widely. (See Asthma [life-threatening] in Chapter 14.) Further treatment is based on clinical response and objective laboratory findings. Hospitalization should be considered strongly for any patient with a history of respiratory failure.

4. Hospital management—For patients who do not respond to outpatient and emergency department treatment, admission to the hospital becomes necessary for more aggressive care and support. The decision to hospitalize should also be based on presence of risk factors for mortality from asthma, duration and severity of symptoms, severity of airflow limitation, course and severity of previous exacerbations, medication use at the time of the exacerbation, access to medical care, and home and psychosocial conditions. Fluids should be given at maintenance requirements unless the patient has poor oral intake secondary to respiratory distress or vomiting, because overhydration may contribute to pulmonary edema associated with high intrapleural pressures generated in severe asthma. Potassium requirements should be kept in mind because both corticosteroids and β_2-agonists can cause potassium loss. Moisturized oxygen should be titrated by oximetry to maintain oxygen saturation above 90%. Inhaled β_2-agonist should be continued by nebulization in single doses as needed or by continuous therapy, along with systemic corticosteroids (as discussed earlier). Ipratropium is no longer recommended during hospitalization. In addition, the role of methylxanthines in hospitalized children remains controversial. Antibiotics may be necessary to treat coexisting bacterial infection. Sedatives and anxiolytic agents are contraindicated in severely ill patients owing to their depressant effects on respiration. Chest physiotherapy is usually not recommended for acute exacerbations.

5. Patient discharge—Criteria for discharging patients home from the office or emergency department should include a sustained response of at least 1 hour to bronchodilator therapy with FEV_1 or PEFR greater than 70% of predicted or personal best and oxygen saturation greater than 90% in room air. Prior to discharge, the patient's or caregiver's ability to continue therapy and assess symptoms appropriately needs to be considered. Patients should be given an action plan for management of recurrent symptoms or exacerbations, and instructions about medications should be reviewed. The inhaled SABA and oral corticosteroids should be continued, the latter for 3–10 days. Finally, the patient or caregiver should be instructed about the follow-up visit, typically within 1 week. Hospitalized patients should receive more intensive education prior to discharge. Referral to an asthma specialist should be considered for all children with severe exacerbations or multiple emergency department visits or hospitalizations.

» Prognosis

Since the 1970s, morbidity rates for asthma have increased, but mortality rates may have stabilized. Mortality statistics indicate that a high percentage of deaths have resulted from underrecognition of asthma severity and undertreatment, particularly in labile asthmatic patients and in asthmatic patients whose perception of pulmonary obstruction is poor. Long-term outcome studies suggest that children with mild symptoms generally outgrow their asthma, while patients with more severe symptoms, marked airway hyperresponsiveness, and a greater degree of atopy tend to have persistent disease. Data from an unselected birth cohort from New Zealand showed more than one in four children had wheezing that persisted from childhood to adulthood or that relapsed after remission. Recent evidence suggests that early intervention with anti-inflammatory therapy does not alter the development of persistent asthma, and it is also unclear if such intervention or environmental control measures influence the natural history of childhood asthma. Nonetheless, the pediatrician or primary care provider together with the asthma specialist has the responsibility to optimize control and, it is hoped, reduce the severity of asthma in children. Interventions that can have long-term effects such as halting progression or inducing remission are necessary to decrease the public health burden of this common condition.

Resources for health care providers, patients, and families include:

Asthma and Allergy Foundation of America
1233 20th St NW, Suite 402
Washington, DC 20036; (800) 7-ASTHMA
http://www.aafa.org/

Asthma and Allergy Network/Mothers of Asthmatics
2751 Prosperity Avenue, Suite 150
Fairfax, VA 22031; (800) 878-4403

http://www.aanma.org/

Asthma Device Training: http://www.thechildrenshospital.org/conditions/lung/asthmavideos.aspx

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. 2006 Hospital Discharges by age groups.

http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov/. Accessed May 15, 2009.

Global Initiative for Asthma 2014 (www.ginasthma.org)

Akinbami LJ et al: Trends in asthma prevalence, health care use, and mortality in the United States, 2001–2010. NCHS Data Brief. 2012 May;(94):1–8.

Akinbami LJ, Moorman JE, Liu X: Asthma prevalence, health care use, and mortality: United States, 2005–2009. Natl Health Stat Report 2011 Jan 12;(32):1–14 [PMID: 21355352].

Busse WW et al: Randomized trial of omalizumab (anti-IgE) for asthma in inner-city children. N Engl J Med 2011 Mar 17; 364(11):1005–1015 [PMID: 21410369].

Center for Disease Control and Prevention. National Center for Health Statistics. Health Data Interactive. Summary Health Statistics for U.S. Children: National Health Interview Survey, 2011. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/new_nhis.htm. Accessed March 31, 2013.

Covar RA et al: Childhood Asthma Management Program Research Group. Predictors of remitting, periodic, and persistent childhood asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2010 Feb;125(2):359–366 [PMID: 20159245].

Guilbert T et al: Long-term inhaled corticosteroids in preschool children at high risk for asthma. N Engl J Med 2006;354:1985 [PMID: 16687711].

Jackson KD, Howie LD, Akinbami LJ: Trends in allergic conditions among children, US, 1997–2011. NCHS Data Brief 2013;121:1–7.

Kelly HW et al: CAMP Research Group: Effect of inhaled glucocorticoids in childhood on adult height. N Engl J Med 2012 Sep 6; 367(10):904–912 [PMID: 22938716].

Lemanske RF Jr et al: Childhood Asthma Research and Education (CARE) Network of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. Step-up therapy for children with uncontrolled asthma receiving inhaled corticosteroids. N Engl J Med 2010 Mar 18;362(11):975–985 [PMID: 20197425].

National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR 3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma—Summary Report 2007. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2007;120(5 Suppl):S94 [PMID: 17983880]. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.

ALLERGIC RHINOCONJUNCTIVITIS

» General Considerations

Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis is the most common allergic disease and significantly affects quality of life as well as school performance and attendance. It frequently coexists with asthma, can impact asthma control, and is a risk factor for subsequent development of asthma. Over 80% of patients with asthma have rhinitis and 10%–14% of patients with rhinitis have asthma. About 80% of individuals with allergic rhinitis develop their symptoms before age 20 years. It is estimated that 13% of children have a physician diagnosis of allergic rhinitis. Prevalence of this disease increases during childhood, peaking at 15% in the postadolescent years. Although allergic rhinoconjunctivitis is more common in boys during early childhood, there is little difference in incidence between the sexes after adolescence. Race and socioeconomic status are not considered to be important factors.

The pathologic changes in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis are chiefly hyperemia, edema, and increased serous and mucoid secretions caused by mediator release, all of which lead to variable degrees of nasal obstruction and conjunctival injection, nasal and ocular pruritus, or nasal and ocular discharge. Ocular allergies can occur in isolation, but more commonly, they are in conjunction with nasal symptoms. This process may involve other structures, including the sinuses and possibly the middle ear. Inhalant allergens are primarily responsible for symptoms, but food allergens can cause symptoms as well. Children with allergic rhinitis seem to be more susceptible to—or at least may experience more symptoms from—upper respiratory infections, which, in turn, may aggravate the allergic rhinitis.

Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis has been classified as perennial, seasonal (hay fever), or episodic; however, there are areas where pollens and soil molds may be present year round while exposure to typical perennial allergens such as indoor furred animals may be intermittent. For this reason, the preferred terms are intermittent (ie, symptoms present < 4 days a week or for < 4 weeks) and persistent (ie, symptoms present > 4 days a week and for > 4 weeks). In addition, severity should be noted as mild (ie, without impairment or disturbance of sleep, daily activities, leisure, sport, school, or work, or without troublesome symptoms) or moderate-severe (ie, presence of one or more of the aforementioned). The major pollen groups in the temperate zones include trees (late winter to early spring), grasses (late spring to early summer), and weeds (late summer to early fall), but seasons can vary significantly in different parts of the country. Mold spores also cause seasonal allergic rhinitis, principally in the summer and fall. Seasonal allergy symptoms may be aggravated by coincident exposure to perennial allergens.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients may complain of itching of the nose, eyes, palate, or pharynx and loss of smell or taste. Nasal itching can cause paroxysmal sneezing and epistaxis. Repeated rubbing of the nose (so-called allergic salute) may lead to a horizontal crease across the lower third of the nose. Nasal obstruction is associated with mouth breathing, nasal speech, allergic salute, and snoring. Nasal turbinates may appear pale blue and swollen with dimpling or injected with minimal edema. Typically, clear and thin

nasal secretions are increased, with anterior rhinorrhea, sniffling, postnasal drip, and congested cough. Nasal secretions often cause poor appetite, fatigue, and pharyngeal irritation. Conjunctival injection, tearing, periorbital edema, and infraorbital cyanosis (so-called allergic shiners) are frequently observed. Increased pharyngeal lymphoid tissue ("cobblestoning") from chronic drainage and enlarged tonsillar and adenoidal tissue may be present.

B. Laboratory Findings

Eosinophilia often can be demonstrated on smears of nasal secretions or blood. This is a frequent but nonspecific finding and may occur in nonallergic conditions. Although serum IgE may be elevated, measurement of total IgE is a poor screening tool owing to the wide overlap between atopic and nonatopic subjects. Skin testing to identify allergen-specific IgE is the most sensitive and specific test for inhalant allergies; alternatively, the Phadia ImmunoCAP assay, radioallergosorbent test (RAST), or other in vitro tests can be done for suspected allergens.

» Differential Diagnosis

Disorders that need to be differentiated from allergic rhinitis include infectious rhinosinusitis. Foreign bodies and structural abnormalities such as choanal atresia, marked septal deviation, nasal polyps, and adenoidal hypertrophy may cause chronic symptoms. Overuse of topical nasal decongestants may result in rhinitis medicamentosa (rebound congestion). Use of medications such as propranolol, clonidine, and some psychoactive drugs may cause nasal congestion. Illicit drugs such as cocaine can cause rhinorrhea. Spicy or hot foods may cause gustatory rhinitis. Nonallergic rhinitis with eosinophilia syndrome is usually not seen in young children. Vasomotor rhinitis is associated with persistent symptoms but without allergen exposure. Less common causes of symptoms that may be confused with allergic rhinitis include pregnancy, congenital syphilis, hypothyroidism, tumors, and cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea.

As in the differential diagnoses for allergic rhinitis, infectious conjunctivitis (secondary to viral, bacterial, or chlamydial etiology) can mimic allergic eye disorders. In this case, it typically develops in one eye first, and symptoms include stinging or burning sensation (rather than pruritus) with a foreign body sensation and eye discharge (watery, mucoid, or purulent). Nasolacrimal duct obstruction, foreign body, blepharoconjunctivitis, dry eye, uveitis, and trauma are other masqueraders of ocular allergy.

The other conditions which comprise allergic eye diseases, presenting with bilateral conjunctivitis, include atopic keratoconjunctivitis, vernal conjunctivitis, and giant papillary conjunctivitis. Except for giant papillary conjunctivitis, the three (allergic conjunctivitis, atopic keratoconjunctivitis, and vernal conjunctivitis) are associated with allergic sensitization. Atopic keratoconjunctivitis and vernal conjunctivitis are both vision-threatening. Atopic keratoconjunctivitis is rarely seen before late adolescence and it most commonly involves the lower tarsal conjunctiva. Ocular symptoms (itching, burning, and tearing) are more severe than in allergic conjunctivitis and persist all year round, with accompanying eyelid eczema with erythema and thick, dry scaling skin, which can extend to the periorbital skin and cheeks. Vernal conjunctivitis is characterized by giant papillae, described as cobblestoning, seen in the upper tarsal conjunctiva. It affects boys more often than girls and patients of Asian and African descent are more predisposed. It affects individuals in temperate areas, with exacerbations in the spring and summer months. In addition to severe pruritus which can be exacerbated by exposure to irritants, light, or perspiration, other accompanying signs and symptoms include photophobia, foreign body sensation, lacrimation, and presence of stringy or thick, ropey discharge, transient yellow-white points in the limbus (Trantas dots) and conjunctiva (Horner points), corneal "shield" ulcers, Dennie lines (prominent skin folds that extend in an arc form from the inner canthus beneath and parallel to the lower lid margin), and prominently long eyelashes. Giant papillary conjunctivitis is associated with exposure to foreign bodies such as contact lenses, ocular prostheses, and sutures. It is characterized by mild ocular itching, tearing, and mucoid discharge especially on awakening. Trantas dots, limbal infiltration, bulbar injection, and edema may also be found. One eye condition, contact allergy, which can also involve the conjunctivae especially when associated with use of topical medications, contact lens solutions, and preservatives, typically affects the eyelids.

» Complications

Sinusitis may accompany allergic rhinitis. Allergic mucosal swelling of the sinus ostia can obstruct sinus drainage, interfering with normal sinus function and predisposing to chronic mucosal disease. Nasal polyps due to allergy are unusual in children, and cystic fibrosis should be considered if they are present. Unlike vision-threatening complications associated with atopic keratoconjunctivitis and vernal conjunctivitis, allergic conjunctivitis manifests primarily with significant pruritus and discomfort affecting the patients' quality of life.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

The value of identification and avoidance of causative allergens cannot be overstated. Reducing indoor allergens through environmental control measures as discussed in the section on asthma can be very effective. Nasal saline irrigation may be useful. For ocular allergies, cold compresses and lubrication are also important.

B. Pharmacologic Therapy

Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines such as the Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) which include the pharmacologic management of allergic rhinitis have been developed based on the Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) approach. While ARIA recommends the use of intranasal corticosteroids for adults with allergic rhinitis, the use of the topical corticosteroids over oral antihistamines for children is suggested.

The treatment of mild intermittent rhinitis includes oral or intranasal H_1 antihistamines and intranasal decongestants (for < 10 days and not to be repeated more than twice a month). Oral decongestants are not usually recommended in children. Options for moderate-severe intermittent rhinitis are oral or intranasal antihistamines, oral H_1 antihistamines and decongestants, intranasal corticosteroids, and cromones. The same medication options are available for persistent rhinitis, but a stepwise approach is proposed both for treatment of mild and moderate-severe persistent rhinitis. For mild persistent rhinitis, reassessment after 2–4 weeks is recommended and treatment should be continued, with a possible reduction in intranasal corticosteroids, even if the symptoms have abated. If, however, the patient has persistent mild symptoms while on H_1 antihistamines or cromones, an intranasal corticosteroid is appropriate. For moderate-severe persistent disease, use of intranasal corticosteroids as first-line therapy is recommended. For severe nasal congestion, either a short 1- to 2-week course of an oral corticosteroid or an intranasal decongestant for less than 10 days may be added. If the patient improves, the treatment should last for at least 3 months or until the pollen season is over. If the patient does not improve within 2–4 weeks despite adequate compliance and use of medications, comorbidities such as nasal polyps, sinusitis, and significant allergen exposure should be considered, as well as the possibility of misdiagnosis. Once these are ruled out, options include increasing the dose of the intranasal corticosteroid, combination therapy with an H_1 antihistamine (particularly if major symptoms are sneezing, itching, or rhinorrhea), ipratropium bromide (if major symptom is rhinorrhea), or an oral H_1 antihistamine and decongestant. Referral to a specialist may be considered if the treatment is not sufficient.

For allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, topical nasal corticosteroids also reduce ocular symptoms, presumably through a naso-ocular reflex. For ocular allergies which persist or occur independent of rhinitis, pharmacologic treatment includes use of oral or topical antihistamines, topical decongestants, mast cell stabilizers, and anti-inflammatory agents. In general, topical ophthalmic drops should not be used with contact lenses. Topical decongestants relieve erythema, congestion, and edema but do not affect the allergic response. Combined therapy with an antihistamine and a vasoconstrictive agent is more effective than either agent alone. Topical medications with both antihistamine and mast cell blocking-properties provide the most benefits which incorporate fast-acting symptom relief and anti-inflammatory action. Refrigerating ophthalmic drops before use can provide soothing relief as well. However, children can get wary of eye drops and prefer oral preparations. Avoiding contamination by preventing the applicator tip from touching the eye or eyelid is important. Severe ocular allergy can be treated with topical, or rarely, oral corticosteroids. In such a case, a referral to an ophthalmologist is warranted, as these treatments can be associated with elevation of the intraocular pressure, viral infections, and cataract formation.

Allergen immunotherapy can be very effective in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and may decrease the requirement for medications to control the symptoms in the long term.

1. Antihistamines—Antihistamines help control itching, sneezing, and rhinorrhea. Sedating antihistamines include diphenhydramine, chlorpheniramine, hydroxyzine, and clemastine. Sedating antihistamines may cause daytime somnolence and negatively affect school performance and other activities, especially driving. Second-generation antihistamines include loratadine, desloratadine, cetirizine, and fexofenadine. Cetirizine is approved for use in children aged 6–23 months (2.5 mg daily), 2–5 years (2.5–5.0 mg/d or 2.5 mg twice a day), and 6 years or older (5–10 mg/d). It is now available without a prescription. Loratadine is approved for use in children aged 2–5 years (5 mg/d) and 6 years or older (10 mg/d), and is available without prescription in tablet, rapidly disintegrating tablet, and liquid formulations. Desloratadine is approved for use in children aged 6–11 months (1 mg/d), 1–5 years (1.25 mg/d), and for 12 years and older (5 mg/d). Fexofenadine is approved for children aged 6–23 months (15 mg twice a day), 2–11 years (30 mg twice a day), and 12 years or older (60 mg twice a day or 180 mg once daily), and is also now available without a prescription. Levocetirizine (5 mg/d) is approved for children aged 6 years and older. Loratadine, fexofenadine, and cetirizine are available in combination with pseudoephedrine for patients aged 12 years or older, although regular use of these combination products is not recommended. Azelastine is available in nasal and ophthalmic formulations. Levocabastine and emedastine are available as ophthalmic preparations. They should not be used for treatment of contact lens–related irritation and caution should be implemented with concomitant use of soft contact lenses.

2. Mast cell stabilizers—Intranasal ipratropium can be used as adjunctive therapy for rhinorrhea. Intranasal cromolyn may be used alone or in conjunction with oral antihistamines and decongestants. It is most effective when used prophylactically, one to two sprays/nostril, four times a day. This dose may be tapered if symptom control is achieved. Rarely, patients complain of nasal irritation or burning. Most patients find complying with four-times-daily dosing difficult. Cromolyn is

also available in an ophthalmic solution. It can be used to treat giant papillary and vernal conjunctivitis. Other ophthalmic mast cell stabilizers include lodoxamide 0.1% solution (can be used for vernal keratoconjunctivitis as well), one to two drops four times a day; nedocromil sodium 2%, one to two drops two times a day; and pemirolast potassium 0.1%, one to two drops four times a day.

3. Decongestants and vasoconstrictor agents—Nasal α-adrenergic agents help to relieve nasal congestion and ophthalmic vasoconstrictors relieve ocular erythema, edema, and congestion. Topical nasal decongestants such as phenylephrine and oxymetazoline should not be used for more than 4 days for severe episodes because prolonged use may be associated with rhinitis medicamentosa. As with nasal decongestants, a rebound phenomenon (ie, conjunctivitis medicamentosa with hyperemia and stinging/burning) can occur with chronic use of ophthalmic vasoconstrictive agents such as naphazoline and tetrahydrozoline. Oral decongestants, including pseudoephedrine, phenylephrine, and phenylpropanolamine, are often combined with antihistamines or expectorants and cough suppressants in over-the-counter (OTC) cold medications, but there are no convincing data to support the use of oral decongestants for upper respiratory illnesses in children nor for regular use in patients with allergic rhinitis. They may cause insomnia, agitation, tachycardia, and, rarely, cardiac arrhythmias. Of note, the FDA has recommended the removal of phenylpropanolamine from all drug products due to a public health advisory concerning the risk of hemorrhagic stroke associated with its use.

4. Corticosteroids—Intranasal corticosteroid sprays are effective in controlling allergic rhinitis if used chronically. They are minimally absorbed in usual doses and are available in pressurized nasal inhalers and aqueous sprays. Mometasone and fluticasone furoate nasal sprays have been approved for use in children as young as age 2 years (one spray in each nostril once daily) and in children 12 years or older (two sprays/nostril once daily). Fluticasone propionate nasal spray is approved for children 4 years or older, and budesonide and triamcinolone nasal sprays are approved for those 6 years or older (one to two sprays/nostril once daily). Flunisolide is approved for ages 6–14 years (one spray/nostril three times a day or two sprays/nostril twice a day). Ciclesonide is approved for seasonal allergic rhinitis in children 6 years and older and those with perennial allergic rhinitis for children 12 years and older, two sprays in each nostril once daily. Side effects include nasal irritation, soreness, and bleeding, although epistaxis occurs commonly in patients with allergic rhinitis if corticosteroids are used chronically. Rarely, these drugs can cause septal perforation. Excessive doses may produce systemic effects, especially if used together with orally inhaled steroids for asthma. Onset of action is within hours, although clinical benefit is usually not observed for a week or more. They may be effective alone or together with antihistamines.

Use of oral or topical (eg, loteprednol etabonate) corticosteroids for the treatment of ocular allergy should be worked out in conjunction with an ophthalmologist due to potential complications mentioned in the preceding section.

5. Other pharmacologic agents—Montelukast is approved for perennial allergic rhinitis in children aged 6 months and older (4 mg/d for ages 6–23 months) and seasonal allergic rhinitis in children 2 years and older in doses as discussed in section Pharmacologic Therapy under Treatment, Chronic Asthma. Oral antihistamines are also available in combination with a decongestant. Ketorolac, a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), is available as an ophthalmic solution but should be avoided in patients with aspirin or NSAID sensitivity and should be used with caution in those with complicated eye surgeries, corneal denervation or epithelial defects, ocular surface diseases, diabetes mellitus, or rheumatoid arthritis. Combination ophthalmic preparations are available. Both antazoline and pheniramine are antihistamine/vasoconstrictor formulations. Olopatadine 0.1%, epinastine 0.05% and ketotifen 0.025% ophthalmic solutions have antihistamine and mast cell–stabilizing actions and can be given to children older than age 3 years as one drop twice a day (8 hours apart) for olopatadine and every 8–12 hours for ketotifen, respectively. Ketotifen fumarate 0.025% is now available as an OTC ophthalmic medication. Olopatadine 0.2% is the first once-daily ophthalmic medication available for the treatment of ocular pruritus associated with allergic conjunctivitis.

C. Surgical Therapy

Surgical procedures, including turbinectomy, polypectomy, and functional endoscopic sinus surgery, are rarely indicated in allergic rhinitis or chronic hyperplastic sinusitis.

D. Immunotherapy

Allergen immunotherapy should be considered when symptoms are severe and due to unavoidable exposure to inhalant allergens, especially if symptomatic measures have failed. Immunotherapy is the only form of therapy that may alter the course of the disease. It should not be prescribed by sending the patient's serum to a laboratory where extracts based on in vitro tests are prepared for the patient (ie, the remote practice of allergy). Subcutaneous immunotherapy should be done in a facility where a physician prepared to treat anaphylaxis is present. Patients with concomitant asthma should not receive an injection if their asthma is not under good control (ie, peak flows preinjection are below 80% of personal best), and the patient should wait for 25–30 minutes after an injection before leaving the facility. Outcomes with single allergen immunotherapy show success

rates of approximately 80%. The optimal duration of therapy is unknown, but data suggest that immunotherapy for 3–5 years may have lasting benefit.

Sublingual immunotherapy has been developed for treatment of allergic rhinitis caused by pollens in both adults and children, and for allergic rhinitis caused by dust mites only in adults. (in other countries). Two recently FDA-approved sublingual immunotherapy are GRASTEKTM and RAGWITEKTM. GRASTEK may be prescribed for children (as young as 5 years) and adults who are allergic to grass pollen, while RAGWITEK may be prescribed for persons 18 through 65 years of age who are allergic to ragweed pollen. They are recommended to be taken daily for about 12 weeks before and throughout the grass or ragweed pollens season, respectively, over a period of at least 3 years for sustained effects.

» Prognosis

Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis associated with sensitization to indoor allergens tends to be protracted unless specific allergens can be identified and eliminated from the environment. In seasonal allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, symptoms are usually most severe from adolescence through mid-adult life. After moving to a region devoid of problem allergens, patients may be symptom-free for several years, but they can develop new sensitivities to local aeroallergens.

Bousquet J, Khaltaev N, Cruz AA: Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) 2008 update (in collaboration with the World Health Organization, GA(2)LEN and AllerGen). Allergy 2008 Apr;63(Suppl 86):8–160 [PMID: 18331513].

Brozek JL et al: Global Allergy and Asthma European Network; Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development, and Evaluation Working Group. Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) guidelines: 2010 revision. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2010 Sep;126(3):466–476 [PMID: 20816182].

Cox L et al: Allergen immunotherapy: a practice parameter third update. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2011;127:S1 [PMID: 21122901].

ATOPIC DERMATITIS

» General Considerations

Atopic dermatitis is a chronically relapsing inflammatory skin disease typically associated with respiratory allergy. Over half of patients with atopic dermatitis will develop asthma and allergic rhinitis. A subset of patients with atopic dermatitis has been shown to have mutations in the gene encoding filaggrin, a protein essential for normal epidermal barrier function. These patients have early-onset, more severe, and persistent disease. Mutations in filaggrin have also been associated with allergic sensitization as well as increased risk for asthma, but only in patients with atopic dermatitis. Atopic dermatitis may result in significant morbidity, leading to school absenteeism, occupational disability, and emotional stress. The disease presents in early childhood, with onset prior to age 5 years in approximately 90% of patients.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Atopic dermatitis has no pathognomonic skin lesions or laboratory parameters. Diagnosis is based on the clinical features, including severe pruritus, a chronically relapsing course, and typical morphology and distribution of the skin lesions. Acute atopic dermatitis is characterized by intensely pruritic, erythematous papules associated with excoriations, vesiculations, and serous exudate; subacute atopic dermatitis by erythematous, excoriated, scaling papules; and chronic atopic dermatitis by thickened skin with accentuated markings (lichenification) and fibrotic papules. Patients with chronic atopic dermatitis may have all three types of lesions present concurrently. Patients usually have dry, "lackluster" skin. During infancy, atopic dermatitis involves primarily the face, scalp, and extensor surfaces of the extremities. The diaper area is usually spared. When involved, it may be secondarily infected with Candida. In older patients with longstanding disease, the flexural folds of the extremities are the predominant location of lesions.

B. Laboratory Findings

In patients with persistent disease despite appropriate treatment, consideration should be given for irritant, allergic, or infectious triggers. Elevated serum IgE levels can be demonstrated in 80%–85% of patients with atopic dermatitis, but have little clinical utility, although they may be helpful in interpreting specific IgE tests. Identification of allergens involves taking a careful history and performing selective immediate hypersensitivity skin tests or in vitro tests when appropriate. Negative skin tests with proper controls have a high predictive value for ruling out a suspected allergen. Positive skin tests have a lower correlation with clinical symptoms in suspected food allergen–induced atopic dermatitis and should be confirmed with double-blind, placebo-controlled food challenges unless there is a coincidental history of anaphylaxis to the suspected food. Alternatively, specific IgE levels to milk, egg, peanut, and fish proteins have been established with the Phadia ImmunoCAP assay correlating with a greater than 95% chance of a clinical reaction. It is important for the clinician to understand that sIgE levels determine probability of reaction, but not type of reaction or severity. Clinicians should avoid extensive testing, as results may reflect elevated total serum with no clinical significance.

Exacerbation of atopic dermatitis can occur with exposure to aeroallergens such as house dust mites, and environmental control measures have been shown to result in clinical improvement. Patients can make specific IgE

directed at Staphylococcus aureus toxins secreted on the skin. Peripheral blood eosinophilia is a common finding. Routine skin biopsy does not differentiate atopic dermatitis from other eczematous processes but may be helpful in atypical cases. Tests for the most common filaggrin gene mutations may identify patients who would be at increased risk for more severe, persistent atopic dermatitis and be more likely to develop allergic sensitizations and asthma.

» Differential Diagnosis

Scabies can present as a pruritic skin disease. However, distribution in the genital and axillary areas and the presence of linear lesions as well as skin scrapings may help to distinguish it from atopic dermatitis. Seborrheic dermatitis may be distinguished by a lack of significant pruritus; its predilection for the scalp (so-called cradle cap); and its coarse, yellowish scales. Allergic contact dermatitis may be suggested by the distribution of lesions with a greater demarcation of dermatitis than in atopic dermatitis. Allergic contact dermatitis superimposed on atopic dermatitis may appear as an acute flare of the underlying disease. Nummular eczema is characterized by coin-shaped plaques. Although unusual in children, mycosis fungoides or cutaneous T-cell lymphoma has been described and is diagnosed by skin biopsy. Eczematous rash has been reported in patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. Other disorders that may resemble atopic dermatitis include Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, severe combined immunodeficiency disease, hyper-IgE syndrome, immunodeficiency with DOCK8 mutations, IPEX (immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked) syndrome, zinc deficiency, phenylketonuria, and Letterer-Siwe disease (see Chapter 33).

» Complications

Ocular complications associated with atopic dermatitis can lead to significant morbidity. Atopic keratoconjunctivitis is always bilateral, and symptoms include itching, burning, tearing, and copious mucoid discharge. It is frequently associated with eyelid dermatitis and chronic blepharitis, and may result in visual impairment from corneal scarring (see Chapter 16). Keratoconus in atopic dermatitis is believed to result from persistent rubbing of the eyes in patients with atopic dermatitis and allergic rhinitis. Anterior subcapsular cataracts may develop during adolescence or early adult life.

Patients with atopic dermatitis have increased susceptibility to infection or colonization with a variety of organisms. These include viral infections with herpes simplex, molluscum contagiosum, and human papillomavirus. Of note, even a past history of atopic dermatitis is considered a contraindication for receiving the current smallpox (vaccinia) vaccine. Superimposed dermatophytosis may cause atopic dermatitis to flare. S aureus can be cultured from the skin of more than 90% of patients with atopic dermatitis, compared with only 5% of normal subjects. S aureus toxins can act as superantigens, contributing to persistent inflammation or exacerbations of atopic dermatitis. Community-acquired methicillin resistant S aureus (MRSA) has become an increasing problem, especially in patients treated with frequent antibiotics. Although recurrent staphylococcal pustulosis can be a significant problem in atopic dermatitis, invasive S aureus infections occur rarely and should raise the possibility of an immunodeficiency.

Patients with atopic dermatitis often have a nonspecific hand dermatitis. This is frequently irritant in nature and aggravated by repeated wetting.

Nutritional disturbances may result from unwarranted and extensive dietary restrictions imposed by providers or parents.

Poor academic performance and behavioral disturbances may be associated with uncontrolled itching, sleep loss, and poor self-image. Severe disease may lead to problems with social interactions and self-esteem.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Avoidance of irritants such as detergents, chemicals, and abrasive materials as well as extremes of temperature and humidity is important in managing this disease. New clothing should be washed to reduce the content of formaldehyde and other chemicals. Because residual laundry detergent in clothing may be irritating, using a liquid rather than a powder detergent and adding an extra rinse cycle is beneficial. Occlusive clothing should be avoided in favor of cotton or cotton blends. Temperature in the home should be controlled to minimize sweating. Swimming is usually well tolerated; however, patients should shower and use a mild cleanser to remove chemicals such as chlorine or bromine, then apply a moisturizer or occlusive agent. Sunlight may be beneficial to some patients with atopic dermatitis, but nonsensitizing sunscreens should be used to avoid sunburn. Prolonged sun exposure can cause evaporative losses, overheating, and sweating, all of which can be irritating.

In children who have undergone controlled food challenges, milk, eggs, peanuts, wheat, soy, and fish account for approximately 90% of the food allergens that exacerbate atopic dermatitis. Avoidance of foods implicated in controlled challenges can lead to clinical improvement. Extensive elimination diets are almost never warranted.

In dust-mite allergic patients, environmental control measures aimed at reducing dust mite load may improve atopic dermatitis. These include use of dust mite–proof covers on pillows and mattresses, washing linens weekly in hot water, decreasing indoor humidity levels, minimizing dust collectors, and in some cases removing bedroom carpeting.

Evaluation by a behavioral health clinician may be of benefit when dealing with a pruritic, relapsing disease.

Relaxation, behavioral modification, or biofeedback training may help patients with habitual scratching. Patients with severe or disfiguring disease may require psychotherapy.

Clinicians should provide the patient and family with both general information and specific written skin care recommendations. The patient or parent should demonstrate an appropriate level of understanding to help ensure a good outcome. Educational pamphlets and a video about atopic dermatitis can be obtained from the National Eczema Association, a national nonprofit, patient-oriented organization, at: (800) 818-7546; http://www.nationaleczema.org.

B. Hydration

Patients with atopic dermatitis have evaporative losses due to a defective skin barrier, so soaking the affected area or bathing for 10–15 minutes in warm water, then applying an occlusive agent to retain the absorbed water, is an essential component of therapy. Oatmeal or baking soda added to the bath may feel soothing to certain patients but does not improve water absorption. Atopic dermatitis of the face or neck can be treated by applying a wet facecloth or towel to the involved area. The washcloth may be more readily accepted by a child if it is turned into a mask and also allows the older patient to remain functional (eg, reading during bath). Lesions limited to the hands or feet can be treated by soaking in a basin. Daily baths may be needed and increased to several times daily during flares of atopic dermatitis, while showers may be adequate for patients with mild disease. It is important to use an occlusive preparation within a few minutes after soaking the skin to prevent evaporation, which is both drying and irritating.

C. Moisturizers and Occlusives

An effective emollient combined with hydration therapy will help skin healing and can reduce the need for topical medications. Moisturizers are available as lotions, creams, and ointments. Lotions can be drying because of their evaporative effect especially in a non-humid climate. Preservatives and fragrances in lotions and creams may cause skin irritation. Moisturizers often need to be applied several times daily on a long-term basis and should be obtained in the largest size available. Crisco shortening can be substituted as an inexpensive alternative. Petroleum jelly (Vaseline) is an effective occlusive agent when used to seal in water after bathing. There are several topical nonsteroidal creams (eg, Atopiclair, MimyX, EpiCeram, Eletone) approved as medical devices (thus, currently requiring prescriptions) for relief and management of signs and symptoms of dermatoses. Their potential benefits need to be weighed against their cost.

D. Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids reduce the inflammation and pruritus in atopic dermatitis. Topical corticosteroids can decrease S aureus colonization. Systemic corticosteroids, including oral prednisone, should be avoided in the management of this chronic relapsing disease as the rapid clinical improvement may be associated with an equally dramatic disease flaring following discontinuation. Topical corticosteroids are available in a variety of formulations and range in potency, ranging from extremely high- to low-potency preparations (see Table 15–3). Choice of a particular product depends on the severity and distribution of skin lesions. Patients need to be counseled regarding the potency of their corticosteroid preparation and its potential side effects. In general, the least potent agent that is effective should be used. However, choosing a preparation that is too weak may result in persistence or worsening of the atopic dermatitis. Side effects include thinning of the skin, telangiectasias, bruising, hypopigmentation, acne, and striae, although these occur infrequently when low- to medium-potency topical corticosteroids are used appropriately. In contrast, use of potent topical corticosteroids for prolonged periods—especially under occlusion—may result in atrophic changes as well as systemic side effects. The face (especially the eyelids) and intertriginous areas are especially sensitive to corticosteroid side effects, and only low-potency preparations should be used routinely on these areas. Perioral dermatitis may occasionally be worsened by use of topical steroids. Because topical corticosteroids are commercially available in a variety of bases, including ointments, creams, lotions, oil, solutions, gels, foams, and even tape, there is no need to compound them. Ointments are most occlusive and in general provide better delivery of the medication while preventing evaporative losses. However, in a humid environment, creams may be better tolerated than ointments because the increased occlusion may cause itching or even folliculitis. Lotions, while easier to spread, can contribute to skin dryness and irritation. Solutions can be used on the scalp and hirsute areas, although they can be irritating, especially to open lesions. With clinical improvement, a less potent corticosteroid should be prescribed and the frequency of use decreased. Topical corticosteroids can be discontinued when inflammation resolves, but hydration and moisturizers need to be continued. Several topical steroids including fluticasone 0.05% cream and desonide 0.05% hydrogel have been approved in infants as young as 3 months of age for up to 28 days. Undertreatment remains a common problem due to caregiver concerns about potential side effects of topical corticosteroids along with inadequate prescription size.

E. Topical Calcineurin Inhibitors

Tacrolimus and pimecrolimus are non-steroidal immunomodulatory agents that are available in topical formulations. Tacrolimus ointment—0.03% for children 2–15 years of age and 0.1% for older patients—is approved for twice-daily short-term and intermittent long-term use in moderate to severe atopic dermatitis. Pimecrolimus 1% cream is

approved for patients 2 years of age or older who have mild to moderate atopic dermatitis. Local burning at the site of application, which occurs more frequently with tacrolimus ointment, has been the most common side effect, although this is usually a transient problem. As a precaution, patients should wear sunscreen with these medications drugs. In Europe, tacrolimus ointment is approved as twice weekly maintenance therapy for patients 2 years and older with a relapsing course after clearing up eczema with reevaluation of need for continued therapy after 12 months.

Although there is no evidence of a causal link between the use of topical calcineurin inhibitors and malignancy, in 2006, the FDA issued a boxed warning for these medications because of a lack of long-term safety data (see U.S. package inserts for Elidel [Novartis] and Protopic [Astellas]). The labeling states that these drugs are recommended as second-line treatment for short-term and noncontinuous chronic treatment and that their use in children younger than the age of 2 years is currently not recommended. Long term surveillance registries have been established for pediatric patients who had been treated with both topical tacrolimus and pimecrolimus.

F. Tar Preparations

Tar preparations are used primarily in shampoos and rarely as bath additives. Side effects associated with tar products include skin dryness or irritation, especially if applied to inflamed skin, and, less commonly, photosensitivity reactions and folliculitis.

G. Wet Dressings

Wet dressings are used together with hydration and topical corticosteroids for the treatment of severe atopic dermatitis. They can serve as an effective barrier against the persistent scratching that often undermines therapy. Total body dressings can be applied by using wet pajamas or long underwear with dry pajamas or a sweat suit on top. Hands and feet can be covered by wet tube socks with dry tube socks on top. Alternatively, wet gauze with a layer of dry gauze over it can be used and secured in place with an elastic bandage. Dressings can be removed when they dry out, usually after several hours, and are often best tolerated at bedtime. They should be considered an acute, not chronic intervention as overuse can result in chilling, skin maceration, or secondary infection.

H. Anti-Infective Therapy

Systemic antibiotic therapy may be important when treating atopic dermatitis secondarily infected with S aureus. For limited areas of involvement, a topical antibiotic such as mupirocin or retapamulin ointment may be effective. A first- or second-generation cephalosporin or semisynthetic penicillin is usually the first choice for oral therapy, as erythromycin-resistant organisms are fairly common. Overuse may result in colonization by methicillin-resistant S aureus. Bleach baths (6% sodium hypochlorite, ½ cup in a full tub of water) two times per week in combination with nasal mupirocin (twice daily for 5 consecutive days per month) may be helpful for patients with recurrent methicillin-resistant S aureus, although some patients find this treatment irritating.

Disseminated eczema herpeticum usually requires treatment with systemic acyclovir. Patients with recurrent cutaneous herpetic lesions can be given prophylactic oral acyclovir. Superficial dermatophytosis and Malassezia sympodialis infection can be treated with topical or (rarely) systemic antifungal agents.

I. Antipruritic Agents

Pruritus is usually the least well-tolerated symptom of atopic dermatitis. Oral antihistamines and anxiolytics may be effective owing to their tranquilizing and sedating effects and can be taken mostly in the evening to avoid daytime somnolence. Nonsedating antihistamines may be helpful for associated allergic symptoms, but are not usually effective in treating pruritus. Use of topical antihistamines and local anesthetics should be avoided because of potential sensitization.

J. Recalcitrant Disease

Patients who are erythrodermic or who appear toxic may need to be hospitalized. Hospitalization may also be appropriate for those with severe disease who fail outpatient management. Marked clinical improvement often occurs when the patient is removed from environmental allergens or stressors. In the hospital, compliance with therapy can be monitored, the patient and family can receive in-depth hands-on education, and controlled challenges can be conducted to help identify triggering factors.

Limited published data are available on use of cyclosporine in children treated with both continuous and intermittent therapy (5 mg/kg daily) for up to 1 year. Patients treated with this agent should have their dose titrated to the lowest effective dose after the disease is brought under control with appropriate monitoring, under the care of a specialist familiar with the drug. Mycophenolate mofetil has also been shown to be safe and effective in children with severe atopic dermatitis although this was a retrospective case series. Ultraviolet light therapy can be useful in a subset of patients with chronic recalcitrant atopic dermatitis under the supervision of a dermatologist.

K. Experimental and Unproved Therapies

Subcutaneous desensitization to dust mite allergen has been shown to improve atopic dermatitis in adult patients and one blinded, placebo-controlled study of sublingual desensitization in dust mite allergic children showed benefit in mild-moderate atopic dermatitis (currently not

FDA approved); however, further controlled trials are needed before this form of therapy can be recommended for atopic dermatitis in children. Treatment of atopic dermatitis with high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin and omalizumab is currently investigational. Although disturbances in the metabolism of essential fatty acids have been reported in patients with atopic dermatitis, controlled trials with fish oil and evening primrose have shown no clinical benefit.

» Prognosis

While many children, especially those with mild disease will outgrow their atopic dermatitis, patients with filaggrin gene mutations are more likely to have more persistent and severe disease. In addition, these patients appear to be the ones at greater risk for developing asthma and allergic sensitizations.

Boguniewicz M et al: A multidisciplinary approach to evaluation and treatment of atopic dermatitis. Semin Cutan Med Surg 2008;27:115 [PMID: 18620133].

Boguniewicz M et al: Atopic dermatitis: a disease of altered skin barrier and immune dysregulation. Immunol Rev 2011;242:233 [PMID: 21682749].

Schneider L et al: Atopic dermatitis: a practice parameter update 2012. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2013;131:295 [PMID: 23374261].

URTICARIA & ANGIOEDEMA

» General Considerations

Urticaria and angioedema are common dermatologic conditions, occurring at some time in up to 25% of the population. Urticarial lesions are arbitrarily designated as acute, lasting less than 6 weeks, or chronic, lasting more than 6 weeks. A history of atopy is common with acute urticaria or angioedema. In contrast, atopy does not appear to be a factor in chronic urticaria. Note that bradykinin-mediated hereditary angioedema is discussed in the immunodeficiency chapter (Chapter 33).

Mast cell degranulation, dilated venules, and dermal edema are present in most forms of urticaria or angioedema. The dermal inflammatory cells may be sparse or dense depending on the chronicity of the lesions. Mast cells are thought to play a critical role in the pathogenesis of urticaria or angioedema through release of a variety of vasoactive mediators. Mast cell activation and degranulation can be triggered by different stimuli, including cross-linking of Fc receptor–bound IgE by allergens or anti-FcεRI antibodies. Non–IgE-mediated mechanisms have also been identified, including complement anaphylatoxins (C3a, C5a), radiocontrast dyes, and physical stimuli. Chronic urticarial lesions have greater numbers of perivascular mononuclear cells, consisting primarily of T cells, and cutaneous mast cells.

The cause of acute urticaria can be identified in about half of patients and includes infectious allergens agents, including streptococci, mycoplasmas, hepatitis B virus, and Epstein-Barr virus and allergies to foods, aeroallergens, latex, drugs, or insect venoms. Urticaria or angioedema can occur after the administration of blood products or immunoglobulin from immune complex formation with complement activation, vascular alterations, and triggering of mast cells by anaphylatoxins. Opiate analgesics, polymyxin B, tubocurarine, and radiocontrast media can induce acute urticaria by direct mast cell activation. Urticaria and angioedema can also occur following ingestion of aspirin or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents (see section Adverse Reactions to Drugs & Biologicals).

Inducible (physical) urticarias represent a heterogeneous group of disorders in which urticaria or angioedema is triggered by physical stimuli, including pressure, cold, heat, water, or vibrations. Dermographism is the most common form of physical urticaria, affecting up to 4% of the population and occurring at skin sites subjected to mechanical stimuli. Many physical urticarias are considered to be acute because the lesions are usually rapid in onset, with resolution within hours. However, symptoms can recur for months to years.

The cause of chronic spontaneous urticaria is usually not due to allergies and typically cannot be determined. It can be associated with autoimmunity, such as autoimmune thyroid disease, or the presence of basophil-activating IgG autoantibodies directed at the high-affinity receptor for IgE or at IgE.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Cold-induced urticaria or angioedema can occur within minutes of exposure to a decreased ambient temperature or as the skin is warmed following direct cold contact. Systemic features include headache, wheezing, and syncope. If the entire body is cooled, as may occur during swimming, hypotension and collapse can occur. Two forms of dominantly inherited cold urticaria have been described. The immediate form is known as familial cold urticaria, in which erythematous macules appear rather than wheals, along with fever, arthralgias, and leukocytosis. The delayed form consists of erythematous, deep swellings that develop 9–18 hours after local cold challenge without immediate lesions.

In solar urticaria, which occurs within minutes after exposure to light of appropriate wavelength, pruritus is followed by morbilliform erythema and urticaria.

Cholinergic urticaria occurs after increases in core body and skin temperatures and typically develops after a warm bath or shower, exercise, or episodes of fever. Occasional episodes are triggered by stress or the ingestion of certain foods. The eruption appears as small punctate wheals surrounded by extensive areas of erythema. Rarely, the urticarial lesions

become confluent and angioedema develops. Associated features can include one or more of the following: headache, syncope, bronchospasm, abdominal pain, vomiting, and diarrhea. In severe cases, systemic anaphylaxis may develop.

In pressure urticaria or angioedema, red, deep, painful swelling occurs immediately or 4–6 hours after the skin has been exposed to pressure. The immediate form is often associated with dermographism. The delayed form, which may be associated with fever, chills, and arthralgias, may be accompanied by elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate and leukocytosis. Lesions are frequently diffuse, tender, and painful rather than pruritic. They typically resolve within 48 hours.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory tests are selected on the basis of the history and physical findings. Testing for specific IgE antibody to food or inhalant allergens or infections may be helpful in implicating a potential cause in acute urticaria particularly if the history is suggestive. Specific tests for inducible urticarias, such as an ice cube test or a pressure test, may be indicated. Intradermal injection of methacholine reproduces clinical symptoms locally in about one-third of patients with cholinergic urticaria. In chronic spontaneous urticaria, diagnostic tests should be limited and guided by the history. Evaluation for underlying disease may be indicated, including a complete blood count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, biochemistry panel, or antithyroid antibodies. Intradermal testing with the patient's serum has been suggested as a method of detecting histamine-releasing activity, including autoantibodies (autologous serum skin test). In patients with well-characterized autoimmune urticaria, donor basophil and mast cell activation markers including CD63 and CD203c have been shown to be upregulated in patient serum. If the history or appearance of the urticarial lesions suggests vasculitis, a skin biopsy for immunofluorescence is indicated. Patient diaries occasionally may be helpful to determine the cause of recurrent hives. A trial of food or drug elimination may be considered.

» Differential Diagnosis

Urticarial lesions are usually easily recognized—the major dilemma is the etiologic diagnosis. Lesions of urticarial vasculitis typically last for more than 24 hours. "Papular urticaria" is a term used to characterize multiple papules from insect bites, found especially on the extremities, and is not true urticaria. Angioedema can be distinguished from other forms of edema because it is transient, asymmetrical, and nonpitting and does not occur predominantly in dependent areas. Hereditary angioedema is a rare autosomal dominant disorder caused by a quantitative or functional deficiency of C1-esterase inhibitor and characterized by episodic, frequently severe, nonpruritic angioedema of the skin, gastrointestinal tract, or upper respiratory tract (discussed in Chapter 33). Life-threatening laryngeal angioedema may occur. Rare autoinflammatory disorders with urticaria or urticaria-vasculitic-like lesions include cold-induced autoinflammatory syndrome, Muckle-Wells syndrome, and Schnitzler syndrome.

» Complications

In severe cases of cholinergic urticaria, systemic anaphylaxis may develop. In cold-induced disease, sudden cooling of the entire body as can occur with swimming can result in hypotension and collapse.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

The most effective treatment is identification and avoidance of the triggering agent. Underlying infection should be treated appropriately. Patients with inducible urticarias should avoid the relevant physical stimulus. Patients with cold urticaria should be counseled not to swim alone and prescribed autoinjectable epinephrine in case of generalized mast cell degranulation with immersion in cold water or other widespread cold exposures.

B. Antihistamines

For the majority of patients, H_1 antihistamines given orally or systemically are the mainstay of therapy. Antihistamines are more effective when given on an ongoing basis rather than after lesions appear. Second-generation H_1 antihistamines (discussed previously under Allergic Rhinoconjunctivitis) are long acting, show good tissue levels, are non- or minimally sedating at usual dosing levels, and lack anticholinergic effects. They are the preferred first line treatment for urticaria. If refractory at the recommended dose, second line treatment is increasing the dose up to 4-fold.

C. Corticosteroids

Although corticosteroids are usually not indicated in the treatment of acute or chronic urticaria, severe recalcitrant cases may require alternate-day or low-dose therapy in an attempt to diminish disease activity or short-term use to facilitate control with antihistamines, particularly in the setting of acute urticaria. High-dose chronic steroid use should be avoided. Systemic corticosteroids may also be needed in the treatment of urticaria or angioedema secondary to necrotizing vasculitis, an uncommon occurrence in patients with serum sickness or collagen-vascular disease.

D. Other Pharmacologic Agents

Third-line treatment for chronic spontaneous urticarial is the addition of a leukotriene-receptor antagonist, cyclosporine A, or omalizumab. Limited studies suggest that some patients may benefit from treatment with a leukotriene-receptor antagonist. Cyclosporine has been shown to be effective in multiple trials of severe chronic urticaria, but

it requires blood pressure and renal function monitoring. Omalizumab has been demonstrated to be effective in antihistamine resistant urticaria in case series and in a double-blind placebo-controlled trial. It obtained FDA approval for chronic urticaria in patients 12 years old or older in 2014. Dosing is 150 mg or 300 mg subcutaneously every 4 weeks. Treatment of chronic urticaria with hydroxychloroquine, azathioprine, sulfasalazine, dapsone, colchicine, and intravenous immune globulin should be considered investigational.

» Prognosis

Spontaneous remission of urticaria and angioedema is frequent, but some patients have a prolonged course, especially those with inducible urticaria. Reassurance is important, because this disorder can cause significant frustration. Periodic follow-up is indicated, particularly for patients with laryngeal edema, to monitor for possible underlying cause.

Maurer Saini SS et al: Efficacy and safety of omalizumab in patients with chronic idiopathic/spontaneous urticaria who remain symptomatic on h1 antihistamines: a randomized, placebo-controlled study. J Invest Dermatol 2015;135:67–75 [PMID: 25046337].

Zuberbier T et al: The EAACI/GA2LEN/EDF/WAO guideline for the definition, classification, diagnosis, and management of urticaria: the 2013 revision and update. Allergy 2014;69:868–87 [PMID: 24785199].

ANAPHYLAXIS

» General Considerations

Anaphylaxis is an acute life-threatening clinical syndrome that occurs when large quantities of inflammatory mediators are rapidly released from mast cells and basophils after exposure to an allergen in a previously sensitized patient. Anaphylactoid reactions mimic anaphylaxis but are not mediated by IgE antibodies. They may be mediated by anaphylatoxins such as C3a or C5a or through nonimmune mast cell degranulating agents. Some of the common causes of anaphylaxis or anaphylactoid reactions are listed in Table 38–8. Idiopathic anaphylaxis by definition has no recognized external cause. The clinical history is the most important tool in making the diagnosis of anaphylaxis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The history is the most important tool to determine whether a patient has had anaphylaxis. The symptoms and signs of anaphylaxis depend on the organs affected. Onset typically occurs within minutes after exposure to the offending agent and can be short-lived, protracted, or biphasic, with recurrence after several hours despite treatment.

Table 38–8. Common causes of systemic allergic and pseudoallergic reactions.

Causes of anaphylaxis
Drugs
Antibiotics
Anesthetic agents
Foods
Peanuts, tree nuts, shellfish, and others
Biologicals
Latex
Insulin
Allergen extracts
Antisera
Blood products
Enzymes
Monoclonal antibodies (eg, omalizumab)
Insect venoms
Radiocontrast media
Aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
Anesthetic agents
Idiopathic

Anaphylaxis is highly likely when any one of the following three criteria is fulfilled:

1. Acute onset of an illness (minutes to several hours) with involvement of the skin, mucosal tissue, or both (eg, generalized hives, pruritus or flushing, swollen lips-tongue-uvula) and at least one of the following:
   a. Respiratory compromise (eg, dyspnea, wheeze, bronchospasm, stridor, reduced peak expiratory flow, hypoxemia)
   b. Reduced blood pressure or associated symptoms of end-organ dysfunction (eg, hypotonia [collapse], syncope, incontinence)
2. Two or more of the following that occur rapidly after exposure to a likely allergen for that patient (minutes to several hours):
   a. Involvement of the skin-mucosal tissue (eg, generalized urticaria, itch-flush, swollen lips-tongue-uvula)
   b. Respiratory compromise (eg, dyspnea, wheeze, bronchospasm, stridor, reduced PEFR, hypoxemia)
   c. Reduced blood pressure or associated symptoms (eg, hypotonia [collapse], syncope, incontinence)
   d. Persistent gastrointestinal symptoms (eg, crampy abdominal pain, vomiting)
3. Reduced blood pressure after exposure to a known allergen for that patient (minutes to several hours):
   a. Infants and children: low systolic blood pressure (age specific) or greater than 30% decrease in systolic pressure
   b. Low systolic blood pressure in children, defined as less than 70 mm Hg in those aged from 1 month to 1 year, less than (70 mm Hg + [2 × age]) in those 1–10 years of age, and less than 90 mm Hg in those 11–17 years

B. Laboratory Findings

An absence of laboratory findings does not rule out anaphylaxis. Tryptase released by mast cells can be measured in the serum within 3 hours of onset of the reaction and may be helpful when the diagnosis of anaphylaxis is in question. However, tryptase levels are often normal, particularly in individuals with food-induced anaphylaxis. Elevation of serum creatine kinase, aspartate aminotransferase, and lactic dehydrogenase may be seen with myocardial involvement. Electrocardiographic abnormalities may include ST-wave depression, bundle branch block, and various arrhythmias. Arterial blood gases may show hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and acidosis. The chest radiograph may show hyperinflation.

» Differential Diagnosis

Although shock may be the only sign of anaphylaxis, other diagnoses should be considered, especially in the setting of sudden collapse without typical allergic findings. Other causes of shock along with cardiac arrhythmias must be ruled out (see Chapters 12 and 14). Respiratory failure associated with asthma may be confused with anaphylaxis. Mastocytosis, hereditary angioedema, scombroid poisoning, vasovagal reactions, vocal cord dysfunction, and anxiety attacks may cause symptoms mistaken for anaphylaxis.

» Complications

Depending on the organs involved and the severity of the reaction, complications may vary from none to aspiration pneumonitis, acute tubular necrosis, bleeding diathesis, or sloughing of the intestinal mucosa. With irreversible shock, heart and brain damage can be terminal. Risk factors for fatal or near-fatal anaphylaxis include age (adolescents and young adults), reactions to peanut or tree nuts, associated asthma, strenuous exercise, and use of medications such as β-blockers.

» Prevention

Strict avoidance of the causative agent is extremely important, and effort to determine its cause should be made, beginning with a thorough history. Typically, there is a strong temporal relationship between exposure and onset of symptoms. With exercise-induced anaphylaxis, patients should be instructed to exercise with another person and to stop exercising at the first sign of symptoms. If prior ingestion of food has been implicated, eating within 4 hours—perhaps up to 12 hours—before exercise should be avoided. Patients with a history of anaphylaxis should carry epinephrine for self-administration, preferably in the form of an autoinjector (eg, Auvi-Q or EpiPen in 0.15- and 0.3-mg doses), and they and all caregivers should be instructed on its use. When epinephrine autoinjectors are unavailable or unaffordable, some patients have been provided with unsealed syringes containing premeasured epinephrine doses, but this is not the recommended form since it needs to be replaced every few months due to lack of stability and the use of a syringe is more unwieldy in an emergent situation. They should also carry an oral antihistamine such as diphenhydramine or cetirizine, preferably in liquid or chewable preparation to hasten absorption, but epinephrine should be considered as the first-line treatment of anaphylaxis. Patients with idiopathic anaphylaxis may require prolonged treatment with oral corticosteroids. Specific measures for dealing with food, drug, latex, and insect venom allergies as well as radiocontrast media reactions are discussed in the next sections.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Anaphylaxis is a medical emergency that requires rapid assessment and treatment. Exposure to the triggering agent should be discontinued. Airway patency should be maintained and blood pressure and pulse monitored. Simultaneously and promptly, emergency medical services or a call for help to a resuscitation team should be made. The patient should be placed in a supine position with the legs elevated unless precluded by shortness of breath or emesis. Oxygen should be delivered by mask or nasal cannula with pulse oximetry monitoring. If the reaction is secondary to a sting or injection into an extremity, a tourniquet may be applied proximal to the site, briefly releasing it every 10–15 minutes.

B. Epinephrine

Epinephrine is the treatment of choice for anaphylaxis. Epinephrine 1:1000, 0.01 mg/kg to a maximum of 0.5 mg in adults and 0.3 mg in children, should be injected intramuscularly in the midanterolateral thigh without delay. This dose may be repeated at intervals of 5–15 minutes as necessary for controlling symptoms and maintaining blood pressure. If the precipitating allergen has been injected intradermally or subcutaneously, absorption may be delayed by giving 0.1 mL of epinephrine subcutaneously at the injection site unless the site is a digit. There is no precisely established dosing regimen for intravenous epinephrine in anaphylaxis, but a 5–10 mcg intravenous bolus for hypotension and 0.1–0.5 mg intravenously for cardiovascular collapse has been suggested.

C. Antihistamines

Diphenhydramine, an H_1-blocker, 1–2 mg/kg up to 50 mg, can be given orally, intramuscularly or intravenously. Intravenous antihistamines should be infused over a period of 5–10 minutes to avoid inducing hypotension. Alternatively in young patients, cetirizine 0.25 mg/kg to a maximum dose of 10 mg could be given orally, as it was shown to have a longer duration of action and reduced sedation profile.

Addition of ranitidine, an H_2-blocker, 1 mg/kg up to 50 mg intravenously, may be more effective than an H_1-blocker alone, especially for hypotension, but histamine blockers should be considered second-line treatment for anaphylaxis.

D. Fluids

Treatment of persistent hypotension despite epinephrine requires restoration of intravascular volume by fluid replacement, initially with a crystalloid solution, 20–30 mL/kg in the first hour.

E. Bronchodilators

Nebulized β_2-agonists such as albuterol 0.5% solution, 2.5 mg (0.5 mL) diluted in 2–3 mL saline, or levalbuterol, 0.63 mg or 1.25 mg, may be useful for reversing bronchospasm. Intravenous methylxanthines are generally not recommended because they provide little benefit over inhaled β_2-agonists and may contribute to toxicity.

F. Corticosteroids

Although corticosteroids do not provide immediate benefit, when given early they may prevent protracted or biphasic anaphylaxis. Intravenous methylprednisolone, 50–100 mg (adult) or 1 mg/kg, maximum 50 mg (child), can be given every 4–6 hours. Oral prednisone, 1 mg/kg up to 50 mg, might be sufficient for less severe episodes.

G. Vasopressors

Hypotension refractory to epinephrine and fluids should be treated with intravenous vasopressors such as noradrenaline, vasopressin, or dopamine (see Chapter 14).

H. Observation

The patient should be monitored after the initial symptoms have subsided, because biphasic or protracted anaphylaxis can occur despite ongoing therapy. Biphasic reactions occur in 1%–20% of anaphylactic reactions, but no reliable clinical predictors have been identified. Observation periods should be individualized based on the severity of the initial reaction, but a reasonable time for observation is 4–6 hours in most patients, with prolonged observation or admission for severe or refractory symptoms.

» Prognosis

Anaphylaxis can be fatal. In two reports describing children, adolescents, and adults who died from food-induced anaphylaxis (eg, from peanuts, tree nuts, fish, shellfish, and milk) over the past 12 years, treatment with epinephrine was delayed for more than 1 hour after reaction onset, as it was not readily accessible in the majority of subjects. The prognosis, however, is good when signs and symptoms are recognized promptly and treated aggressively, and the offending agent is subsequently avoided. Exercise-induced and idiopathic anaphylaxis may be recurrent. Because accidental exposure to the causative agent may occur, patients, parents, and caregivers must be prepared to recognize and treat anaphylaxis (have an anaphylaxis action plan).

Simons FE et al: International consensus on (ICON) anaphylaxis. World Allergy Organ J 2014;7:9 [PMID. 24920969].

Simons FE et al: World Allergy Organization Anaphylaxis Guidelines: 2013 update of the evidence base. Int Arch Allergy Immunol 2013;162:193–204 [PMID: 24008815].

ADVERSE REACTIONS TO DRUGS & BIOLOGICALS

Patients or caregivers often label any adverse drug reaction as an "allergy." Adverse drug reactions are any undesirable and unintended response elicited by a drug. Allergic or hypersensitivity drug reactions are adverse reactions involving immune mechanisms. Although hypersensitivity reactions account for only 5%–10% of all adverse drug reactions, they are the most serious, with 1:10,000 resulting in death. Other causes of adverse drug reactions include idiosyncratic reactions, overdosage, pharmacologic side effects, nonspecific release of pharmacologic effector molecules, or drug interactions. Clinicians can report adverse drug reactions and get updated information on drugs, vaccines, and biologics at the FDA's MedWatch website.

1. Antibiotics

Antibiotics constitute the most frequent cause of allergic drug reactions. Amoxicillin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, and ampicillin are the most common causes of cutaneous drug reactions.

The penicillins and other β-lactam antibiotics, including cephalosporins, carbacephems, carbapenems, and monobactams, share a common β-lactam ring structure and a marked propensity to couple to carrier proteins. Penicilloyl is the predominant allergenic metabolite of penicillin and is called the major determinant. The other penicillin metabolites are present in low concentrations and are referred to as minor determinants. Sulfonamide reactions are mediated presumably by a reactive metabolite (hydroxylamine) produced by cytochrome P-450 oxidative metabolism. Slow acetylators appear to be at increased risk. Other risk factors for drug reactions include previous exposure, previous reaction, age (20–49 years), route (parenteral), and dose of administration (high, intermittent). Atopy does not predispose to development of a reaction, but atopic individuals have more severe reactions.

Immunopathologic reactions to antibiotics include type I (IgE-mediated) reactions, Type II (cytotoxic) reactions such as drug-induced hemolytic anemia or thrombocytopenia,

Type III (immune complex) reactions such as serum sickness, and Type IV (T-cell–mediated) reactions such as allergic contact dermatitis. Immunopathologic reactions not fitting into the types I–IV classification include interstitial nephritis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, eosinophilia, fixed drug eruption, acute generalized exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP), Stevens-Johnson syndrome, exfoliative dermatitis, and maculopapular exanthemas. The prevalence of morbilliform rashes in patients given ampicillin increases significantly during Epstein-Barr virus and cytomegalovirus infections or with acute lymphoblastic anemia, 69%–100% compared to 5%–9%. Serum sickness–like reactions resemble type III reactions, although immune complexes are not documented; β-lactams, especially cefaclor, and sulfonamides have been implicated most often. The incidence of "allergic" cutaneous reactions to trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole in patients with AIDS has been reported to be as high as 70%. The mechanism is thought to relate to severe immune dysregulation, although it may be due to glutathione deficiency resulting in toxic metabolites.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

IgE-mediated reactions can cause pruritus, erythema, urticaria, angioedema, bronchospasm, or anaphylaxis within 1 hour of the dose. Serum sickness is characterized by fever, rash, lymphadenopathy, myalgias, and arthralgias. Cytotoxic drug reactions can result in symptoms and signs associated with the underlying anemia or thrombocytopenia. Delayed-type hypersensitivity may cause contact dermatitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Skin testing is useful for evaluation of IgE-mediated drug allergies, particularly of beta-lactam antibiotics where it has been most validated. Approximately 80% of patients with a history of penicillin allergy will have negative skin tests. Use of both the major determinant, Pre-Pen (penicilloyl-polylysine) and penicillin G or suspect penicillin, increases sensitivity to about 95%. Not using the minor determinant mixture, which is not commercially available, in skin testing can result in failure to predict potential anaphylactic reactions in up to 20% of those who test negative to both. Therefore, all patients who have negative skin testing should undergo drug provocation test for the final diagnosis. Regarding cross-reactivity between penicillins and cephalosporins, the R-side chains of the penicillins and cephalosporins have been implicated in most allergic reactions to these medications. Skin prick testing can be performed to cephalosporins, but as a negative skin test would not exclude sensitivity to a potentially relevant metabolite, drug provocation test would need to be performed. Carbacephems (loracarbef) and carbapenems (imipenem) are thought to have a high degree of cross-reactivity with penicillin, although recent prospective studies suggest an incidence of cross-reactivity on skin testing of approximately 1%. Skin testing can be performed and, if negative, drug provocation test should be performed. Monobactams (aztreonam) contain a monocyclic rather than bicyclic ring structure, and limited data suggest that aztreonam can be safely administered to most penicillin-allergic subjects. In contrast, administration of aztreonam to a patient with ceftazidime allergy may be associated with increased risk of allergic reaction due to similarity of side chains.

Skin testing for non–β-lactam antibiotics is less reliable, because the relevant degradation products are for the most part unknown or multivalent reagents are unavailable.

Solid-phase in vitro immunoassays for IgE to penicillins are available for identification of IgE to penicilloyl, but are considerably less sensitive than skin testing and the predictive values are not known.

For nonimmediate reactions, skin testing can be performed, but with an additional late intradermal reading before proceeding to drug provocation test. In the case of contact sensitivity reactions to topical antibiotics, a 48-hour patch test can be useful.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Withdrawal of the implicated drug is usually a central component of management. Acute IgE-mediated reactions such as anaphylaxis, urticaria, and angioedema are treated according to established therapeutic guidelines that include the use of epinephrine, H_1- and H_2-receptor blocking agents, volume replacement, and systemic corticosteroids. Antibiotic-induced immune cytopenias can be managed by withdrawal of the offending agent or reduction in dose. Drug-induced serum sickness can be suppressed by drug withdrawal, antihistamines, and corticosteroids. Contact allergy can be managed by avoidance and treatment with antihistamines and topical corticosteroids. Reactions such as toxic epidermal necrolysis and Stevens-Johnson syndrome require immediate drug withdrawal and supportive care.

B. Alternative Therapy

If possible, subsequent therapy should be with an alternative drug that has therapeutic actions similar to the drug in question but with no immunologic cross-reactivity.

C. Desensitization

Administering gradually increasing doses of an antibiotic either orally or parentally over a period of hours to days may be considered if alternative therapy is not acceptable. This should be done only by a physician familiar with desensitization, typically in an intensive care setting. Of note,

desensitization is only effective for the course of therapy for which the patient was desensitized, unless maintained on a chronic prophylactic dose of the medication as patients revert from a desensitized to allergic state after the drug is discontinued. In addition, desensitization does not reduce or prevent non–IgE-mediated reactions. Patients with Stevens-Johnson syndrome should not be desensitized because of the high mortality rate.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good when drug allergens are identified early and avoided. Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis may be associated with a high mortality rate.

2. Latex Allergy

» General Considerations

Allergy to latex and rubber products is common among health care workers and children with spina bifida. The combination of atopy and frequent exposure seems to synergistically increase the risk of latex hypersensitivity. Latex sensitization and reactions decrease with the use of latex-free gloves and medical equipment.

Nonmedical sources of latex are also common and include balloons, toys, rubber bands, erasers, condoms, and shoe soles. Pacifiers and bottle nipples have also been implicated as sources of latex allergen, although these products are molded rather than dipped, and allergic reactions to molded products are less common. Latex-allergic patients and their caregivers must be continuously vigilant for hidden sources of exposure.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Localized pruritus and urticaria occur after cutaneous contact; conjunctivitis and rhinitis can result from aerosol exposure or direct facial contact. Systemic reactions, including bronchospasm, laryngospasm, and hypotension, may occur with more substantial exposure or in extremely sensitive individuals. Finally, vascular collapse and shock leading to fatal cardiovascular events may occur. Intraoperative anaphylaxis represents a serious manifestation of latex allergy.

Allergic contact dermatitis to rubber products typically appears 24–48 hours after contact. The primary allergens include accelerators and antioxidants used in the manufacturing process. The diagnosis is established by patch testing. Shoe soles are an important source of exposure. The skin lesions appear primarily as a patchy eczema on exposed surfaces, although reactions can become generalized.

B. Laboratory Findings

Epicutaneous prick testing is a rapid, inexpensive, and sensitive test that detects the presence of latex-specific IgE on skin mast cells although a standardized antigen is not yet commercially available. Reports of life-threatening anaphylactic events have been associated with skin testing to latex, and intradermal testing may be especially dangerous.

When compared with a history of latex-induced symptoms or positive skin tests, the sensitivity of immunoassays testing for latex antigens ranges from 50% to 100% with specificity between 63% and 100%. These broad ranges may reflect the patient population studied and the source of latex antigen as well as the assay employed. A positive immunoassay test to latex in the presence of a highly suggestive latex allergy history is useful and may circumvent the potential concerns associated with prick skin testing in certain patients. Patch testing with standardized T.R.U.E. Test or other sources of antigens can identify antigens used in the manufacturing of latex products that can cause allergic contact dermatitis.

Cross-reactivity has been demonstrated between latex and a number of other antigens such as foods. Banana, avocado, kiwi, and chestnut have been found to be antigenically similar to latex both immunologically and clinically.

» Treatment

Avoidance remains the cornerstone of treatment for latex allergy. Patients identified as being allergic to latex may need to have a personal supply of vinyl or latex-free gloves for use when visiting a physician or dentist. “Hypoallergenic gloves” are poorly classified with respect to their ability to induce IgE-mediated reactions; the FDA currently uses this term to designate products that have a reduced capacity to induce contact dermatitis. Nonlatex gloves include nitrile and vinyl ones. A glove made from guayule latex has been approved by the FDA. Autoinjectable epinephrine and medical identification bracelets may be prescribed for latex-allergic patients along with avoidance counseling.

Prophylactic premedication of latex-allergic individuals has been used in some surgical patients at high risk for latex allergy. The rationale for this therapy is derived from the pretreatment protocols developed for iodinated radiocontrast media and anesthetic reactions. Although there has been some success using this regimen, anaphylaxis has occurred despite pretreatment. This approach should not substitute for careful avoidance measures.

» Prognosis

Owing to the ubiquitous nature of natural rubber, the prognosis is guarded for patients with severe latex allergy. Chronic exposure to airborne latex particles may lead to chronic asthma. Chronic dermatitis can lead to functional disability.

3. Vaccines

Mumps-measles-rubella (MMR) vaccine has been shown to be safe in egg-allergic patients (although rare reactions to gelatin or neomycin can occur). Many studies have shown that egg-allergic children can safely receive influenza vaccine injection as a single full dose; skin testing is not necessary. Egg-allergic patients should be observed for 30 minutes after receiving influenza vaccine and if there are concerns about administration, they should be referred to an allergist. Local reactions are not associated with a higher rate of systemic allergic reactions.

4. Radiocontrast Media

Non–IgE-mediated anaphylactoid reactions may occur with radiocontrast media with up to a 30% reaction rate on reexposure. Management involves using a low-molarity agent and premedication with prednisone, diphenhydramine, and possibly an H_2-blocker.

5. Insulin

Approximately 50% of patients receiving insulin have positive skin tests, but IgE-mediated reactions are rare. Insulin resistance is mediated by IgG. If less than 24 hours has elapsed after an allergic reaction to insulin, do not discontinue insulin but rather reduce the dose by one-third, then increase by 2–5 units per injection. Skin testing and desensitization are necessary if the interval between the allergic reaction and subsequent dose is greater than 24 hours.

6. Local Anesthetics

Less than 1% of reactions to local anesthetics are IgE-mediated. Management involves selecting a local anesthetic from another class. Esters of benzoic acid include benzocaine and procaine; amides include lidocaine and mepivacaine. Alternatively, the patient can be skin tested with the suspected agent, followed by a provocative challenge. To rule out paraben sensitivity, skin testing can be done with 1% lidocaine from a multidose vial.

7. Aspirin & Other Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs

Adverse reactions to aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) include urticaria and angioedema; rhinosinusitis, nasal polyps, and asthma (aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease [AERD]); anaphylactoid reactions; and NSAID-related hypersensitivity pneumonitis. All NSAIDs inhibiting cyclooxygenase (COX) cross-react with aspirin. Cross-reactivity between aspirin and tartrazine (yellow dye No. 5) has not been substantiated in controlled trials. No skin test or in vitro test is available to diagnose aspirin sensitivity. Oral challenge can induce severe bronchospasm in AERD patients. Aspirin desensitization can be performed to ameliorate the symptoms of AERD. Desensitization and cross-desensitization to NSAIDs can be achieved in most patients and maintained for a long term. Leukotriene-receptor antagonists or 5-lipoxygenase inhibitors attenuate the reaction to aspirin challenge and may be beneficial adjunct treatment in aspirin-sensitive asthmatic patients. COX-2 inhibitors are tolerated by patients with AERD.

8. Biological Agents

In recent years, a growing number of biological agents have become available for the treatment of autoimmune, neoplastic, cardiovascular, infectious, and allergic diseases, among others. Their use may be associated with a variety of adverse reactions, including increased risk of infections, neurologic defects, autoimmune syndromes, cardiovascular effects, and hypersensitivity reactions. Desensitization may be possible if there is no other good alternative in those patients who have developed an allergy to these medications.

9. Hypersensitivity to Retroviral Agents

Adverse drug reactions are being reported with increasing frequency to antiretroviral agents, including reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and fusion inhibitors. Hypersensitivity to abacavir is a well-described, multiorgan, potentially life-threatening reaction that occurs in HIV-infected children. The reaction is independent of dose with onset generally within 9–11 days of initiation of drug therapy. Susceptibility appears to be conferred by the HLA-B*5701 allele with a positive predictive value of > 70% and negative predictive value of 95%–98%. Genetic screening would be cost-effective in Caucasians, but not in African or Asian populations as their HLA-B*5701 allele frequency is < 1%.

10. Adverse Reactions to Chemotherapeutic Agents

A number of chemotherapeutic agents, including monoclonal antibodies, have been implicated in hypersensitivity reactions. Rapid desensitization to unrelated agents, including carboplatin, paclitaxel, and rituximab, has been reported. This 12-step protocol appeared to be successful in both IgE- and non–IgE-mediated reactions.

Boyman O et al: Adverse reactions to biologic agents and their medical management. Nature Rev Rheumatol 2014;10:612 [PMID: 25112605].

FDA MedWatch: Available at: http://www.fda.gov/medwatch/index.html.

Kelso JM et al: Adverse reactions to vaccines practice parameter 2012 update. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2012;130:25 [PMID: 22608573].
Romano A, Caubet JC: Antibiotic allergies in children and adults: from clinical symptoms to skin testing diagnosis. J Allergy Clin Immunol: In Practice 2014;2:3 [PMID: 24565763].
Romano A et al: Diagnosis and management of drug hypersensitivity reactions. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2011;127:S67 [PMID: 21354502].

FOOD ALLERGY

» General Considerations

Food allergy is defined as an adverse health effect arising from a specific immune response that occurs reproducibly on exposure to a given food. Food allergy affects approximately 8% of young children and 3%–4% of adults. The most common IgE-associated food allergens in children are milk egg, peanut, soy, wheat, tree nuts, fish, and shellfish. In older patients, fish, shellfish, peanut, and tree nuts are most often involved in allergic reactions, and may be lifelong allergies. The highest prevalence of food allergy is found in children with moderate to severe atopic dermatitis, with approximately 35% affected, whereas chronic conditions such as urticaria and asthma are much less likely due solely to food allergy. Food allergy can be caused by non–IgE-mediated mechanisms, in conditions such as food protein–induced enterocolitis (FPIES) or proctocolitis. It can also be caused by mixed IgE- and non–IgE-mediated mechanisms, as in eosinophilic esophagitis and gastroenteritis (Table 38–9).

Some adverse reactions diagnosed by patients or physicians as food allergy involve non–immune-mediated mechanisms such as pharmacologic and metabolic mechanisms, reactions to food toxins, or intolerances (eg, lactose intolerance). These will not be covered in this chapter.

Table 38–9. Food allergy disorders.

IgE-mediated
Gastrointestinal: Pollen-food allergy syndrome, immediate GI anaphylaxis
Cutaneous: Urticaria, angioedema, morbilliform rashes, and flushing
Respiratory: Acute rhinoconjunctivitis, acute wheezing
Generalized: Anaphylactic shock
Mixed IgE- and non–IgE-mediated
Gastrointestinal: Eosinophilic esophagitis/gastroenteritis/colitis
Cutaneous: Atopic dermatitis
Respiratory: Asthma
Non–IgE-mediated
Gastrointestinal: Food protein–induced enterocolitis, proctocolitis, and enteropathy syndromes; celiac disease
Cutaneous: Contact dermatitis, dermatitis herpetiformis
Respiratory: Food-induced pulmonary hemosiderosis (Heiner syndrome)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

A thorough medical history is crucial in identifying symptoms associated with potential food allergy; a history of a temporal relationship between the ingestion of a suspected food and onset of a reaction—as well as the nature and duration of symptoms observed—is important in establishing the diagnosis. For all IgE-mediated reactions, reactions to foods occur within minutes and up to 2 hours after ingestion. For non–IgE-mediated and mixed disorders, reactions can be delayed in onset for more than several hours, such as in FPIES, to possibly days later with onset of vomiting or an eczema flare after food exposure due to eosinophilic esophagitis or atopic dermatitis, respectively. At times, acute symptoms may occur, but the cause may not be obvious because of hidden food allergens. A symptom diary kept for 7–14 days may be helpful in establishing an association between ingestion of foods and symptoms and also provides a baseline observation for the pattern of symptom expression. It is important to record both the form in which the food was ingested and the foods ingested concurrently.

Hives, flushing, facial angioedema, and mouth or throat itching are common. In severe cases, angioedema of the tongue, uvula, pharynx, or upper airway can occur. Gastrointestinal symptoms include abdominal discomfort or pain, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Children with food allergy may occasionally have isolated rhinoconjunctivitis or wheezing. Rarely, anaphylaxis to food may involve only cardiovascular collapse.

B. Laboratory Findings

Typically, fewer than 50% of histories of food allergy will be confirmed by blinded food challenge (although this percentage is much higher in food-induced anaphylaxis). Prick skin testing is useful to rule out a suspected food allergen, because the predictive value is high for a properly performed negative test with an extract of good quality (negative predictive accuracy of > 95%). In contrast, the predictive value for a positive test is approximately 50%. Serum food-specific IgE tests have lower specificity and positive predictive values. However, food-specific IgE levels to milk, egg, peanut, and fish proteins have been established with the ImmunoCAP assay correlating with a greater than 95% chance of a clinical reaction in children, but values have not been established for other foods or populations. A list of nonstandardized and unproven procedures for the diagnosis of food allergy includes the measurement of allergen-specific-IgG, lymphocyte stimulation, cytotoxic assays, applied kinesiology, and provocation neutralization to name a few.

The double-blind, placebo-controlled food challenge is considered the gold standard for diagnosing food allergy, except in severe reactions. If there is high suspicion of possible allergic reactivity to a food with a negative skin test or an undetectable serum IgE level (or both), a food challenge may be necessary to confirm the presence or absence of allergy. Even when multiple food allergies are suspected, most patients will test positive to three or fewer foods on blinded challenge. Therefore, extensive elimination diets are almost never indicated, and an evaluation by an allergist is preferred before multiple foods are eliminated from the diet unnecessarily. Elimination without controlled challenge is a less desirable but at times more practical approach for suspected food allergy. Elimination diets and food challenges may also be the only tools for evaluation of suspected non–IgE-mediated food reactions.

» Differential Diagnosis

Repeated vomiting in infancy may be due to pyloric stenosis or gastroesophageal reflux. With chronic gastrointestinal symptoms, enzyme deficiency (eg, lactase), cystic fibrosis, celiac disease, chronic intestinal infections, gastrointestinal malformations, and irritable bowel syndrome should be considered.

» Treatment

Treatment consists of eliminating and avoiding foods that have been documented to cause allergic reactions. This involves educating the patient, parent, and caregivers regarding hidden food allergens, the necessity for reading labels, and the signs and symptoms of food allergy and its appropriate management (anaphylaxis action plan; a copy of this plan can be obtained from the references). Consultation with a dietitian familiar with food allergy may be helpful, especially when common foods such as milk, egg, peanut, soy, or wheat are involved. All patients with a history of IgE-mediated food allergy should carry self-injectable epinephrine (Auvi-Q or Epipen) and a fast-acting antihistamine, have an anaphylaxis action plan, and consider wearing medical identification jewelry. Clinical trials of oral, sublingual and epicutaneous immunotherapy are currently under investigation as potential future treatments of food allergy. However, diets containing extensively heated (baked) milk and egg are potential alternative approaches to food oral immunotherapy and are changing the previous standard of strict avoidance diets for patients with allergy to these foods.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good if the offending food can be identified and avoided. Unfortunately, accidental exposure to food allergens in severely allergic patients can result in death. Most children outgrow their food allergies to milk, egg, wheat, and soy but not to peanut or tree nuts (only 20% and 10% of children may outgrow peanut and tree nut allergy, respectively). The natural history of food allergy can be followed by measuring food-specific IgE levels and performing food challenges when indicated. Approximately 3%–4% of children will have food allergy as adults. Resources for food-allergic patients include the Food Allergy Research & Education: www.foodallergy.org; the Food Allergy & Anaphylaxis Connection Team: www.foodallergyawareness.org; and the Consortium of Food Allergy Research: www.cofargroup.org.

Boyce JA et al: Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Food Allergy in the United States: report of the NIAID-Sponsored Expert Panel. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2010;126 (Suppl 1):1–58 [PMID: 21134576].

Huang F et al: Extensively heated milk and egg as oral immunotherapy. Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol 2012;12:283–292 [PMID: 22508193].

Keet CA et al: Emerging therapies for food allergy. J Clin Invest 2014;124:1880–1886 [PMID: 24789880].

Sampson HA et al: Food allergy: a practice parameter update-2014. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2014;134:1016–1025 [PMID: 25174862].

INSECT ALLERGY

Allergic reactions to insects include symptoms of respiratory allergy as a result of inhalation of particulate matter of insect origin, local cutaneous reactions to insect bites, and anaphylactic reactions to stings. The latter are almost exclusively caused by Hymenoptera includes honeybees, yellow jackets, yellow hornets, white-faced hornets, wasps, and fire ants. Africanized honeybees, also known as killer bees, are a concern because of their aggressive behavior and excessive swarming, not because their venom is more toxic. Rarely, patients sensitized to reduviid bugs (also known as kissing bugs) may have episodes of nocturnal anaphylaxis. Lepidopterism refers to adverse effects secondary to contact with larval or adult butterflies and moths. Salivary gland antigens are responsible for immediate and delayed skin reactions in mosquito-sensitive patients.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Insect bites or stings can cause local or systemic reactions ranging from mild to fatal responses in susceptible persons. The frequency increases in the summer months and with outdoor exposure. Local cutaneous reactions include urticaria as well as papulovesicular eruptions and lesions that resemble delayed hypersensitivity reactions. Papular urticaria is almost always the result of insect bites, especially of mosquitoes, fleas, and bedbugs. Toxic systemic reactions consisting of gastrointestinal symptoms, headache, vertigo, syncope, convulsions, or fever can occur following multiple stings. These reactions result from histamine-like substances

in the venom. In children with hypersensitivity to fire ant venom, sterile pustules occur at sting sites on a nonimmunologic basis due to the inherent toxicity of piperidine alkaloids in the venom. Mild systemic reactions include itching, flushing, and urticaria. Severe systemic reactions may include dyspnea, wheezing, chest tightness, hoarseness, fullness in the throat, hypotension, loss of consciousness, incontinence, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Delayed systemic reactions occur from 2 hours to 3 weeks following the sting and include serum sickness, peripheral neuritis, allergic vasculitis, and coagulation defects.

B. Laboratory Findings

Skin testing is indicated for children with systemic reactions to insect stings. Venoms of honeybee, yellow jacket, yellow hornet, white-faced hornet, and wasp are available for skin testing and treatment. Fire ant venom is not yet commercially available, but an extract made from fire ant bodies appears adequate to establish the presence of IgE antibodies to fire ant venom. Importantly, venom skin tests can be negative in patients with systemic allergic reactions, especially in the first few weeks after a sting, and the tests may need to be repeated. The presence of a positive skin test denotes prior sensitization but does not predict whether a reaction will occur with the patient's next sting, nor does it differentiate between local and systemic reactions. It is common for children who have had an allergic reaction to have positive skin tests for more than one venom. This might reflect sensitization from prior stings that did not result in an allergic reaction or cross-reactivity between closely related venoms. In vitro testing (compared with skin testing) has not substantially improved the ability to predict anaphylaxis. With in vitro testing, there is a 15%–20% incidence of both false-positive and false-negative results. IgE to mosquito saliva antigen can be measured by in vitro assay.

» Complications

Secondary infection can complicate allergic reactions to insect bites or stings. Serum sickness, nephrotic syndrome, vasculitis, neuritis, and encephalopathy may be seen as late sequelae of reactions to stinging insects.

» Treatment

For cutaneous reactions caused by biting insects, symptomatic therapy includes cold compresses, antipruritics (including antihistamines), and occasionally potent topical corticosteroids. Treatment of stings includes careful removal of the stinger, if present, by flicking it away from the wound, not by grasping in order to prevent further envenomation. Topical application of monosodium glutamate, baking soda, or vinegar compresses is of questionable efficacy. Local reactions can be treated with ice, elevation of the affected extremity, oral antihistamines, and NSAIDs as well as potent topical corticosteroids. Large local reactions, in which swelling extends beyond two joints or an extremity, may require a short course of oral corticosteroids. Anaphylactic reactions following Hymenoptera stings should be managed as discussed above (see section on Anaphylaxis). Children who have had severe or anaphylactic reactions to Hymenoptera stings—or their parents and caregivers—should be instructed in the use of autoinjectable epinephrine. Patients at risk for anaphylaxis from an insect sting should also wear a medical alert bracelet indicating their allergy. Children at risk from insect stings should avoid wearing bright-colored clothing and perfumes when outdoors and should wear long pants and shoes when walking in the grass. Patients who experience severe systemic reactions and have a positive skin test should receive venom immunotherapy. Venom immunotherapy is not indicated for children with only urticarial or local reactions.

» Prognosis

Children generally have milder reactions than adults after insect stings, and fatal reactions are extremely rare. Patients aged 3–16 years with reactions limited to the skin, such as urticaria and angioedema, appear to be at low risk for more severe reactions with subsequent stings.

Cox L et al: Allergen immunotherapy: a practice parameter third update. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2011;127:S1 [PMID: 21122901].

Golden DB et al: Outcomes of allergy to insect stings in children, with and without venom immunotherapy. N Engl J Med 2004;351:668 [PMID: 15306668].

39

Antimicrobial Therapy

Sarah K. Parker, MD
John W. Ogle, MD

PRINCIPLES OF ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY

Antimicrobial therapy of infections is arguably the most important scientific development of 20th-century medicine. It contributes significantly to the quality of life of many people and reduces the morbidity and mortality due to infectious disease. The remarkable success of antimicrobial therapy has been achieved with comparatively little toxicity and expense. The relative ease of administration and the widespread availability of these drugs have led many to adopt a philosophy of broad-spectrum empiric antimicrobial therapy for many common infections.

Unfortunately, this era of cheap, safe, and reliable therapy is being limited by the increasing frequency of antimicrobial resistance in previously susceptible microorganisms. The problem of antimicrobial resistance is not new—resistance was recognized for sulfonamides and penicillins shortly after their introduction. What is new is the worldwide dissemination of resistant microorganisms, such as Streptococcus pneumoniae and Staphylococcus aureus, which are more virulent and commonly cause serious infections, not only among hospitalized patients, but also among outpatients.

Until recently the recognition of bacterial resistance was balanced by the promise of newer and more potent antimicrobial agents. Today, because fewer new agents are under development, clinicians are beginning to encounter limitations in their ability to treat some serious bacterial infections. Many factors contribute to the selection of resistant organisms. Our success in treating chronic diseases and immune-compromising conditions, which has resulted in additional years of life for patients, has increased opportunities for selection of resistant strains in inpatient units and chronic care facilities. Overuse of antimicrobial agents also contributes to the selection of resistant strains. Examples include antimicrobial treatment of mildly ill patients with self-limited conditions, such as viral infections, and administration of broad-spectrum antimicrobials to patients whose conditions could be treated with narrow-spectrum agents. Similarly, failure to document infection with cultures obtained prior to starting therapy limits our willingness to stop or narrow the spectrum of antimicrobials. Insufficient research has been conducted to determine the optimal duration of therapy for many infections, with the result that we probably often treat longer than is necessary. Prophylactic strategies, as used for prevention of recurrent otitis media or urinary tract infection (UTI), create a selection pressure for antibiotic resistance.

The decision-making process for choosing an appropriate antimicrobial agent is summarized in Table 39–1. Accurate clinical diagnosis is based on the history, physical examination, and initial laboratory tests. The clinical diagnosis is followed by a consideration of the organisms most commonly associated with the clinical condition, the usual pattern of antimicrobial susceptibility of these organisms, and past experience with successful treatment regimens.

Data regarding US outpatient pediatric prescriptions show that antimicrobials are the most commonly prescribed class of medication, although the number of antimicrobial prescriptions decreased in 2010 compared to 2002. The most frequently prescribed antimicrobials are amoxicillin, azithromycin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, and cefdinir. However, neither azithromycin nor cefdinir is recommended as first-line agent for the most common pediatric conditions, suggesting that these agents may be overprescribed.

Cultures should be obtained in potentially serious infections. Empiric antimicrobial therapy may be initiated and then modified according to the patient's response and the culture results. Often several equally safe and efficacious antimicrobials are available. In this circumstance, the relative cost and ease of administration of these choices should be considered.

Other important considerations include the patient's age, immune status, and exposure history. Neonates and

Table 39–1. Steps in decision making for use of antimicrobial agents.

Step	Action	Example
1	Determine diagnosis	Septic arthritis
2	Consider age and preexisting condition	Previously healthy 2-year-old child
3	Consider common organisms	Staphylococcus aureus, Kingella kingae
4	Consider organism susceptibility	Penicillin- or ampicillin-resistant; frequency MRSA[a] in community
5	Obtain proper cultures[b]	Blood, joint fluid
6	Initiate empiric therapy based on above considerations and past experience (eg, personal, literature)	Cefazolin and cefotaxime, substitute vancomycin for cefazolin if obviously ill or MRSA prevalent
7	Modify therapy based on culture results and patient response	Saureus isolated. Discontinue cefotaxime. Substitute cefazolin for vancomycin if susceptible
8	Follow clinical response	Interval physical examination
9	Stop therapy	Clinically improved or well, minimum 3–4 wk

[a]Methicillin-resistant Saureus.
[b]Indicated for serious or unusual infections or those with unpredictable clinical response to empiric therapy.

young infants may present with nonspecific signs of infection, making the differentiation of serious disease from mild illness difficult. In older children, clinical diagnosis is more precise, which may permit therapy to be avoided or allow use of a narrower-spectrum antibiotic. Immune deficiency may increase the number and types of potential infecting organisms that need to be considered, including organisms that are usually avirulent, but in the altered host may cause serious infections that are difficult to treat. An abnormal immune response may also diminish the severity of the clinical signs and symptoms of infection, leading to underestimation of the severity of illness. The exposure history may suggest the greater likelihood of certain types of infecting organisms. This history includes exposures from family members, classmates, and day care environments and exposure to unusual organisms by virtue of travel, diet, or contact with animals.

Final important considerations are the pace and seriousness of the illness. A rapidly progressive and severe illness should be treated initially with broad-spectrum antimicrobials until a specific etiologic diagnosis is made. A mildly ill outpatient should receive treatment preferentially with narrow-spectrum antimicrobials.

Antimicrobial susceptibility, antimicrobial families, and dosing recommendations are listed in Tables 39–2 to 39–6.

ANTIMICROBIAL STEWARDSHIP

Antimicrobial overuse is problematic worldwide, and its untoward effects are increasingly appreciated. These include resistance on a patient, hospital, and community level, Clostridium difficile colitis, and adverse drug events, all of which lead to excess morbidity and mortality and increased costs. In order to decrease unnecessary and inappropriate use, many hospitals employ antimicrobial stewardship programs (ASPs). ASPs demonstrate not only decreased use of antimicrobials, decreased drug-resistant infections, decreased C difficile colitis, and decreased costs, but also improved clinical outcomes. In pediatrics, ASPs are more recent, but are likely to have similar benefits to those observed in adult hospitals.

Antimicrobial medications are the most commonly prescribed drug class in children. Approximately 40% of outpatient use is in some way inappropriate. Sixty percent of hospitalized children receive antimicrobials. Liberal use in the United States is likely related to high MRSA rates, and increasing occurrence of multidrug resistant gram-negative organisms. There is growing evidence that the antibiotic-altered microbiome may have other long-term deleterious health effects, with evidence for an association with obesity and diabetes. This growing appreciation of harm has led to endorsement of ASP programs by the Infectious Disease Society of America, US News and World Report, Centers for Medicaid and Medicare Services, and some state legislatures.

Stewardship programs are multidisciplinary and collaborative efforts aiming to improve overall antimicrobial use. These programs include infectious disease physicians, infectious diseases pharmacists, data analysts, statisticians, and oversight committees that are crossdisciplinary. They employ various mechanisms to encourage judicious prescribing, including local guideline and policy development, antibiotic use preauthorization programs (where a prescriber must seek permission to prescribe broad-spectrum antimicrobials), postprescriptive review programs (where stewards review use and intervene when there is a question on appropriateness), dose-optimization assessments, prescriber feedback programs (where prescribing habits are compared and contrasted to others on either a unit, practice, or provider level), and educational programs. ASPs are generally financially self-sustaining, if not cost saving.

Antimicrobial stewardship is a responsibility not of just ASPs, rather of all prescribers. The core tennets of stewardship can be applied broadly as outlined here.

1. Understand national guidelines, which encourage both proper diagnosis and responsible antimicrobial choices. Consider the reasons for the guideline

Table 39–2. Susceptibility of some common pathogenic microorganisms to various antimicrobial drugs.

Organism	Potentially Useful Antibiotics[a]
Bacteria	
Anaerobic bacteria[b]	Cefotetan,[c] cefoxitin,[c] clindamycin, doripenem,[c] ertapenem, imipenem, meropenem, metronidazole, penicillins with or without β-lactamase inhibitor, tigecycline[c]
Bacillus anthracis	Amoxicillin, ciprofloxacin, clindamycin, doxycycline, levofloxacin, rifampin, vancomycin
Bartonella henselae	Azithromycin, ciprofloxacin, clarithromycin, doxycycline, erythromycin, rifampin
Bordetella pertussis	Amoxicillin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Borrelia burgdorferi	Amoxicillin, cefuroxime, cephalosporins (III),[d] clarithromycin, doxycycline
Campylobacter spp	Azithromycin, carbapenems, erythromycin, fluoroquinolones,[c,e] tetracyclines
Clostridium spp	Clindamycin, metronidazole, penicillins, tetracyclines
Clostridium difficile	Fidaxomicin, metronidazole, rifaximin, vancomycin (PO)
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	Clindamycin, erythromycin, penicillins
Enterobacteriaceae[f]	Aminoglycosides,[g] ampicillin, aztreonam, carbapenems, cefepime, cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones,[c,e] tigecycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Enterococcus	Ampicillin (with aminoglycoside), carbapenems (not Efaecium), daptomycin, linezolid, quinupristin-dalfopristin[c] (Efaecium only), tigecycline, vancomycin
Haemophilus influenzae	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, ampicillin (if β-lactamase–negative),[h] cephalosporins (II and III),[d] chloramphenicol, fluoroquinolones,[c,e] rifampin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Listeria monocytogenes	Ampicillin with aminoglycoside, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, vancomycin
Moraxella catarrhalis	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, ampicillin (if β-lactamase–negative),[h] cephalosporins (II and III),[d] erythromycin, fluoroquinolones, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Ampicillin (if β-lactamase–negative),[h] cephalosporins (III),[d] penicillins, spectinomycin
Neisseria meningitidis	Ampicillin, cephalosporins (II and III),[d] fluoroquinolones,[c,e] penicillins, rifampin
Nocardia asteroides	Tetracycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (+ amikacin for severe infections), linezolid, meropenem or cephalosporins (II and III)[d] for brain abscess
Pasteurella multocida	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, ampicillins, fluoroquinolones, [c,e] penicillins, tetracyclines
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Aminoglycosides,[g] anti-Pseudomonas penicillins,[c] aztreonam, cefepime, ceftazidime, ciprofloxacin,[c] doripenem, imipenem, meropenem
Salmonella spp	Ampicillin, azithromycin, cephalosporins (III),[d] fluoroquinolones,[c,e] trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Shigella spp	Ampicillin, azithromycin, cephalosporins (III),[d] fluoroquinolones,[c,e] tetracyclines, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Staphylococcus aureus	Antistaphylococcal penicillins,[i] cefepime, cephalosporins (I and II), ciprofloxacin, clindamycin, erythromycin, rifampin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, vancomycin
S aureus (methicillin-resistant)	Ceftaroline, clindamycin, daptomycin,[c] linezolid, quinupristin-dalfopristin,[c] tigecycline,[c] trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, vancomycin
Staphylococci (coagulase-negative)	Cephalosporins (I and II, if mecA negative),[j] clindamycin, rifampin, vancomycin
Streptococci (most species)	Ampicillin, cephalosporins, clindamycin, enhanced fluoroquinolones,[c,k] erythromycin, meropenem, penicillins, vancomycin
Streptococcus pneumoniae[l]	Ampicillin, cephalosporins, enhanced fluoroquinolones,[c,k] erythromycin, meropenem, penicillin, vancomycin

(Continued)

Table 39–2. Susceptibility of some common pathogenic microorganisms to various antimicrobial drugs. (Continued)

Organism	Potentially Useful Antibiotics[a]
Intermediate organisms	
Chlamydia spp	Azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, levofloxacin,[c] ofloxacin,[c] tetracyclines
Mycoplasma spp	Azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, fluoroquinolones,[c,e] tetracyclines
Rickettsia spp	Fluoroquinolones,[c,e] tetracyclines
Fungi	
Candida spp	Amphotericin B, anidulafungin,[c] caspofungin, fluconazole, flucytosine, itraconazole, ketoconazole, micafungin, nystatin, posaconazole[c], voriconazole[c]
Fungi, systemic	Amphotericin B, anidulafungin,[c] caspofungin, fluconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, micafungin, posaconazole,[c] voriconazole[c]
Dermatophytes	Butenafine, ciclopirox olamine, clotrimazole, econazole, fluconazole, griseofulvin, haloprogin, itraconazole, ketoconazole, miconazole, naftifine, oxiconazole, seraconazole, sulconazole, terbinafine, tolnaftate
Pneumocystis jiroveci	Atovaquone, clindamycin-primaquine, dapsone, pentamidine, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Viruses	
Herpes simplex	Acyclovir, cidofovir, penciclovir,[c] famciclovir, foscarnet,[o] idoxuridine,[p] trifluridine,[p] valacyclovir
Human immunodeficiency virus	Six classes: (1) nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, (2) nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, (3) protease inhibitors, (4) fusion inhibitors, (5) integrase inhibitors, (6) CCR-5 coreceptor antagonists; optimally combinations of ≥ 3 drugs from 2 different classes should be used (see Chapter 41)
Influenza virus	Amantadine,[m] oseltamivir, rimantidine,[m] zanamivir,
Respiratory syncytial virus	Ribavirin[n]
Varicella-zoster virus	Acyclovir, famciclovir, foscarnet,[o] valacyclovir
Cytomegalovirus	Cidofovir (liposomal), fomivirsen (topical or intravitreal), foscarnet, ganciclovir, valganciclovir
Hepatitis B[c]	Adefovir, entecavir, interferon-α, lamivudine, telbivudine, tenofovir
Hepatitis C[c]	Interferon-α, ribavirin, pediatric licensure and dosing for new specific antivirals will become available 2015

[a]In alphabetical order. Selection depends on patient's age, diagnosis, site of infection, severity of illness, antimicrobial susceptibility of suspected organism, and drug risk.
[b]Species-dependent.
[c]Not FDA-approved for use in children.
[d]Refer to first (I), second (II)-, or third (III)-generation cephalosporins.
[e]Includes ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, lomefloxacin, norfloxacin, ofloxacin, moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, gemifloxacin.
[f]Includes Ecoli, Klebsiella spp, Enterobacter spp, and others; antimicrobial susceptibilities should always be measured.
[g]Amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, tobramycin.
[h]Also applies to amoxicillin and related compounds.
[i]Cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin.
[j]Only if the coagulase-negative Staphylococcus is also methicillin- or oxacillin-sensitive.
[k]Includes levofloxacin, lomefloxacin, moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, and gemifloxacin.
[l]Because of increasing frequency of S pneumoniae strains resistant to penicillin and cephalosporins, presumptive therapy for severe infections (eg, meningitis) should include vancomycin until susceptibility studies are available.
[m]Influenza A only. Resistance is common, currently recommended in the United States only for seasonal H1N1 strains.
[n]FDA-approved for therapy of respiratory syncytial virus by aerosol, but clinical studies show variable efficacy.
[o]Used to treat infections with acyclovir-resistant virus.
[p]Ophthalmic preparation.

Table 39–3. Groups of common antibacterial agents.

Group	Examples	Some Common Susceptible Organisms[a]	Common Resistant Organisms	Common or Unique Adverse Reactions
Penicillin group				
Penicillins	Penicillin G, V	Streptococcus, Neisseria	Staphylococcus, Haemophilus, Enterobacteriaceae	Rash, anaphylaxis, drug fever, bone marrow suppression
Ampicillins	Ampicillin, amoxicillin	(Same as penicillins), plus Haemophilus (β-lactamase negative), Escherichia coli, Enterococcus	Staphylococcus, many Enterobacteriaceae	Diarrhea
Antistaphylococcal penicillins	Cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin	Streptococcus, Staphylococcus aureus	Gram-negative, Staphylococcus (coagulase-negative), Enterococcus, MRSA	Renal (interstitial nephritis), neutropenia
Anti-Pseudomonas penicillins	Azlocillin, piperacillin, ticarcillin most commonly combined with beta-lactamase inhibitor	(Same as ampicillins), plus Pseudomonas	(Same as ampicillins)	Decreased platelet adhesiveness, hypokalemia,
Penicillins with β-lactamase inhibitor combination	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, ampicillin-sulbactam, ticarcillin-clavulanate	Broad-spectrum	Some Enterobacteriaceae, Pseudomonas	Diarrhea
Carbapenems	Imipenem-cilastatin meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem	Broad-spectrum, gram-negative rods, anaerobes, Pseudomonas	MRSA,[b] many enterococci	Central nervous system (CNS), seizures
Cephalosporin group				
First-generation (I)	Cefazolin, cephalexin,	Gram-positive	Gram-negative, Enterococcus, some Staphylococcus (coagulase-negative)	Rash; anaphylaxis, drug fever
Second-generation (II)	Cefprozil, cefuroxime, loracarbef	Gram-positive, some Haemophilus, some Enterobacteriaceae	Enterococcus, Pseudomonas, some Staphylococcus (coagulase-negative)	Serum sickness (cefaclor)
	Cefoxitin, cefotetan	Same as second-generation plus anaerobes		
Third-generation (III)	Cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, cefpodoxime, ceftibuten, cefdinir	Streptococcus, Haemophilus, Enterobacteriaceae, Neisseria	Pseudomonas, Staphylococcus	Biliary sludging (ceftriaxone) rash
	Ceftazidime, cefepime	(Same as other third-generation cephalosporins), plus Pseudomonas, some Staphylococcus		
Other drugs				
Clindamycin	Clindamycin	Gram-positive, anaerobes, some MRSA	Gram-negative, Enterococcus	Nausea, vomiting, hepatotoxicity
Vancomycin	Dalbavancin, oritavancin, telavancin, vancomycin	Gram-positive	Gram-negative	"Red man" syndrome, shock, ototoxicity, renal

(Continued)

Table 39–3. Groups of common antibacterial agents. (Continued)

Group	Examples	Some Common Susceptible Organisms[a]	Common Resistant Organisms	Common or Unique Adverse Reactions
Macrolides and azalides	Erythromycin, clarithromycin, azithromycin	Gram-positive Bordetella, Haemophilus, Mycoplasma, Chlamydia, Legionella, Salmonella, Shigella	Some gram-negative	Nausea and vomiting Pyloric stenosis (erythromycin newborns) Arrhythmias (azithromycin)
Monobactams	Aztreonam	Gram-negative aerobes, Pseudomonas	Gram-positive cocci	Rash, diarrhea
Oxazolidinones	Linezolid	Gram-positive aerobes	Gram-negative aerobes	Diarrhea, thrombocytopenia
Streptogramins	Quinupristin-dalfopristin	Gram-positive aerobes	Gram-negative aerobes	Arthralgia, myalgia
Fluoroquinolones[c]	Ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin	Gram-negative, Chlamydia, Mycoplasma, Pseudomonas (ciprofloxacin)	Enterococcus, Streptococcus, Spneumoniae, anaerobes, Staphylococcus	Gastrointestinal (GI), rash, CNS
	Gatifloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin	Gram-negative, streptococci, Streptococcus pneumoniae, staphylococci	Some Enterococcus	GI, rash, CNS
Tetracyclines	Tetracycline, doxycycline, minocycline	Anaerobes, Mycoplasma, Chlamydia, Rickettsia, Ehrlichia and Anaplasma	Many Enterobacteriaceae, Staphylococcus	Teeth stained,[d] rash, flora overgrowth, hepatotoxicity, pseudotumor cerebri
Sulfonamides	Many	Gram-negative (urine)	Gram-positive	Rash, renal, bone marrow suppression, Stevens-Johnson syndrome
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	Saureus, gram-negative, Spneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae	Streptococcus, Pseudomonas, anaerobes	Rash, renal, bone marrow suppression, Stevens-Johnson syndrome
Rifampin	Rifampin	Neisseria, Haemophilus, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus	Resistance develops rapidly if used as sole agent	Rash, GI, hepatotoxicity, CNS, bone marrow suppression, alters metabolism of other drugs
Aminoglycosides	Amikacin, gentamicin, tobramycin	Gram-negative, including Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Gram-positive, anaerobes, some pseudomonads	Nephrotoxicity, ototoxicity, potentiates neuromuscular blocking agents

[a]Not all strains susceptible; always obtain antimicrobial susceptibility tests on significant isolates.
[b]MRSA = methicillin-resistant Saureus.
[c]Fluoroquinolones are used with caution in children.
[d]Dose-dependent in children younger than age 9 years.

recommendations, and how they are applicable to pathogens in your community and patient population. The antibiotic selections in guidelines are usually the most efficacious choices. For example, in community-acquired pneumonia, a child given high-dose amoxicillin will likely have more time with drug over the mean inhibitory concentration of Streptococcus pneumoniae than they will with any of the oral cephalosporins.

2. Be diagnostically aggressive. This includes clinical diagnostics for signs and symptoms most consistent with bacterial infection, and microbiologic diagnostics when able; it is easier to target antimicrobials to a known microbe, and easier to convince a family to be compliant if you truly believe a child has a bacterial infection.
3. Do not consider antimicrobials as benign. Antibiotics are the largest culprit of unplanned medical visits for

Table 39–4. Guidelines for use of common parenteral antibacterial agents[a] in children aged 1 month or older.

Agent	Route	Dose[b] (mg/kg/d)	Maximum Daily Dose	Interval (h)	Adjustment[c]	Blood Levels[d] (mcg/mL)	
						Peak	Trough
Amikacin[d]	IM, IV	15–22.5	1.5 g	8	R	15–25	< 10
Ampicillin	IM, IV	100–400	12 g	4–6	R		
Ampicilin-sulbactam	IM, IV	100–400	12 g	4–6	R		
Aztreonam	IM, IV	90–120	6 g	6–8	R		
Cefazolin	IM, IV	50–150	6 g	8	R		
Cefepime	IM, IV	100–150	4–6 g	8–12	R		
Cefotaxime	IM, IV	100–200	12 g	6–8	R		
Cefoxitin	IM, IV	80–160	12 g	4–6	R		
Ceftazidime	IM, IV	100–150	6 g	8	R		
Ceftriaxone	IM, IV	50–100	4 g	12–24	R		
Cefuroxime	IM, IV	100–150	6 g	6–8	R		
Clindamycin	IM, IV	25–40	4 g	6–8	R, H		
Gentamicin[d,e]	IM, IV	3–7.5	300 mg	8	R	5–10	< 2
Linezolid	IV, PO	20	1.2 g	12	R		
Meropenem	IV	60–120	2 g	8	R		
Metronidazole	IV	30	4 g	6	H		
Nafcillin	IM, IV	150	12 g	6	H		
Penicillin G	IM, IV	100,000–250,000 U/kg	20 million units	4–6	H, R		
Penicillin G (benzathine)	IM	50,000 U/kg	2.4 million units	Single dose	None		
Penicillin G (procaine)	IM	25,000–50,000 U/kg	4.8 million units	12–24	R		
Tetracycline[f]	IV	20–30	2 g	12	R		
Piperacilin-tazobactam	IV	240–300	16 g	4–6	R		
Tobramycin[d,e]	IM, IV	3–6	300 mg	8	R	5–10	< 2
Vancomycin	IV	40–60	2 g	6	R	20–40[g]	5–10[g]

[a]Not including some newly released drugs, ones not recommended for use in children, or ones not widely used.
[b]Always consult package insert for complete prescribing information. Dosage may differ for alternative routes, newborns (see Table 39–6), or patients with liver or renal failure (see Adjustment column) and may not be recommended for use in pregnant women or newborns. Maximum dosage may be indicated only in severe infections.
[c]Mode of excretion (R = renal, H = hepatic) of antimicrobial agent should be assessed at the onset of therapy and dosage modified or levels determined as indicated in package insert.
[d]Suggested levels to reduce toxicity.
[e]Aminoglycosides are sometimes given as a once-daily dose. See text.
[f]Use with caution in children younger than age 9 years because of tooth staining with repeated doses.
[g]Target peak and trough vancomycin levels are not well correlated with either toxicity or outcome. Measure selectively in meningitis, impaired or changing renal function, or altered volume of distribution. Higher trough levels sometimes indicated for difficult-to-treat infections.

Table 39–5. Guidelines for use of common oral antibacterial agents in children age 1 month or older.

Agent[a]	Dose[b] (mg/kg/d)	Interval (h)	Other Considerations
Amoxicillin	40	8–12	Gastrointestinal (GI) side effects
Amoxicillin[c] (high dose)	80–90	8–12	GI side effects
Amoxicillin-clavulanate[d]	45–90	8–12	GI side effects
Ampicillin	50	6	GI side effects
Azithromycin	10 (first dose) then 5; 12 for pharyngitis	24	GI side effects
Cefdinir	14	12–24	GI side effects
Cefpodoxime	10	12	Taste (suspension)
Cefprozil	30	12	GI side effects
Ceftibuten	9	24	GI side effects
Cefuroxime	30–40	12	GI side effects
Cephalexin	25–50	6	
Ciprofloxacin	20–30	12	
Clarithromycin	15	12	GI side effects
Clindamycin	20–30	6	GI side effects
Dicloxacillin	12–25	6	GI side effects
Doxycycline[d]	2–4	12–24	Teeth stained < 9 y
Erythromycin[e]	20–50	6–12	GI side effects
Levofloxacin			
< 5 y	20	12	
> 5 y	10	24	
Linezolid	20	12	GI side effects
Metronidazole	15–35	8	
Nitrofurantoin	5–7	6	
Oxacillin	50–100	6	
Penicillin V	25–50	6	Taste (suspension)
Rifampin	10–20	12–24	
Sulfisoxazole	120–150	6	
Tetracycline[f]	25–50	6	Teeth stained < 9 y
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	8–12 (TMP)	12	Stevens-Johnson syndrome

[a]Not including some newly released drugs, ones not recommended for use in children, or ones not widely used.
[b]Always consult package insert for complete prescribing information. Dosage may differ for alternative routes, newborns (see Table 39–6), or patients with liver or renal failure (see Table 39–4, Adjustment column) and may not be recommended for use in pregnant women or newborns. Maximum dosage may be indicated only in severe infections.
[c]Higher-dose amoxicillin indicated for therapy of otitis media in regions where rates of penicillin-resistant S pneumoniae are high.
[d]Several formulations with differing clavulanate concentrations available.
[e]Preparation-dependent.
[f]Use with caution in children younger than age 9 years because of tooth staining with repeated doses.

Table 39–6. Guidelines for use of selected antimicrobial agents in newborns.

	Route	Body Wt (g)	Maximum Dosage (mg/kg/d) [Frequency]				Blood Levels (mcg/mL)	
			< 7 d	Interval (h)	8–30 d	Interval (h)	Peak	Trough
Ampicillin	IV, IM	< 2000	100	12	150	8		
		> 2000	150	8	200	6		
Cefotaxime	IV, IM		100	12	150	8		
Ceftazidime	IV, IM	< 2000	100	12	150	8		
		> 2000	100	8	150	8		
Clindamycin	IV, IM, PO	< 2000	10	12	15	8		
		> 2000	15	8	20	6		
Erythromycin	PO	< 2000	20	12	30	8		
		> 2000	20	12	30	8		
Nafcillin	IV	< 2000	50	12	75	8		
		> 2000	75	8	150	6		
Penicillin G[a]	IV	< 2000	100,000	12	150,000	8		
		> 2000	150,000	8	200,000	6		
Piperacillin-tazobactam	IV, IM	< 2000	240	8	240	8		
		> 2000	240	8	320	6		
Vancomycin[b]	IV							

[a]Penicillin dosages are in Units/kg/d. Other preparations (eg, benzathine penicillin) may be given IM. See specific diseases for dosage.
[b]Vancomycin dosing is dependent on gestational age and serum creatinine with monitoring of levels. 10–15 mg/kg/dose every 12–48 h.

adverse drug events, exceeding 150,000 pediatric visits per year. In the United States, there are approximately 478,000 cases of C difficile colitis and two million antimicrobial resistant infections (with at least 23,000 deaths) per year. There are also a multitude of episodes of Stevens-Johnson syndrome, yeast fungemias, central line infections, hospital-acquired infections, and drug-resistant superinfections as a result of antimicrobial use that are all largely untallied.

4. Streamline and deescalate therapy. Narrow therapy to the confirmed or most likely pathogens, avoiding prolonged broad use and double coverage; or, stop altogether if bacterial infection becomes less likely. This will decrease antimicrobial adverse effects, development of resistant and hospital-acquired infections, and C difficile colitis.
5. Use oral therapy when a good oral antimicrobial agent is available, and patient condition allows. Many drugs including metronidazole, clindamycin, fluconazole, levofloxacin, rifampin, linezolid, and trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole are > 90% bioavailable orally (and ciprofloxacin is 80%) and thus can be used by that route if the gastrointestinal tract is intact. Other drugs are not as bioavailable, but are still appropriate as step-down therapy once the patient is clinically improved.
6. Encourage complete and on-time vaccination. Vaccination, particularly with seasonal influenza and pneumococcus, decreases other infections that are often treated with antimicrobials.

ANTIMICROBIAL SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Cultures and other diagnostic material must be obtained prior to initiating antimicrobial therapy—especially when the patient has a serious infection, initial attempts at therapy have failed, a patient has an unusual exposure, or multiagent therapy is anticipated. Whenever cultures identify the causative organism, therapy can be narrowed or optimized according to susceptibility results. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing should be done in a laboratory using carefully defined procedures (as defined by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute).

There are several ways to test antimicrobial susceptibility. Identification of an antibiotic-destroying enzyme (eg, β-lactamase) implies resistance to some β-lactam–containing antimicrobial agents. Tube or microtiter broth dilution techniques can be used to determine the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of an antibiotic, which is the amount of antibiotic (in mcg/mL) necessary to inhibit the organism under specific laboratory conditions. Disk susceptibility testing (also performed under carefully controlled conditions) yields similar results. The E-test is a standardized test for some organisms that correlates well with MICs. Clinical laboratories usually define antimicrobial susceptibility (susceptible, intermediate, and resistant) in relation to levels of the test antibiotic achievable in the blood or another body fluid (cerebrospinal fluid [CSF] or urine).

Organisms are usually considered susceptible to an antibiotic if the MIC of the antibiotic for the organism is significantly lower than levels of that agent achieved in the blood using appropriate parenteral dosages. This assumption of susceptibility should be reconsidered whenever the patient has a focus of infection (eg, meningitis, osteomyelitis, or abscess) in which poor antibiotic penetration might occur, because the levels of antibiotic in such areas might be lower than the MIC. Conversely, although certain organisms may be reported to be resistant to an antibiotic because sufficiently high blood concentrations cannot be achieved, urine concentrations may be much higher. If so, an UTI might respond to an antibiotic that would not be adequate for treatment of septicemia.

Thus, antimicrobial susceptibility testing, although a very important part of therapeutic decision making, reflects assumptions that the clinician must understand, especially for serious infections. Ultimately the true test of the efficacy of therapy is patient response. Patients who do not respond to seemingly appropriate therapy may require reassessment, including reconsidering the diagnosis, reculturing, and repeat susceptibility testing, to determine whether resistant strains have evolved or superinfection with a resistant organism is present. Antimicrobial therapy cannot be expected to cure some infections unless additional supportive treatment (usually surgical) is undertaken.

ALTERATION OF DOSE & MEASUREMENT OF BLOOD LEVELS

Certain antimicrobial agents have not been approved (and often not tested) for use in newborns. For those that have been approved, it is important to recognize that both dose and frequency of administration may need to be altered (see Tables 39–4 and 39–5), especially in young (7 days or younger) or low-birth-weight neonates (≤ 2000 g).

Antimicrobial agents are excreted or metabolized through various physiologic mechanisms (eg, renal, hepatic). It is important to consider these routes of excretion and alter the antimicrobial dosage appropriately in any patient with some degree of organ dysfunction. (See Chapter 24). As indicated in Table 39–4, an assessment of renal or hepatic function may routinely be necessary for patients receiving certain drugs (eg, renal function for aminoglycosides, hepatic function for clindamycin); otherwise, harmful drug levels may accumulate. In some circumstances, a patient may be receiving multiple drugs where the drug interactions are unknown. If significant organ dysfunction is present, drug clearance may be delayed and dosage modification may be necessary (see detailed descriptions in individual drug information packets), and measurement of drug levels may be indicated.

Serum levels of drugs posing a high risk of toxicity (eg, aminoglycosides) are ordinarily measured. Measurement of other drugs (eg, vancomycin) may be useful in selected circumstances (see the following discussion). For certain serious bacterial infections (eg, bacterial endocarditis), measurement of the serum concentration of an antimicrobial may be important to determine optimal therapy.

Certain drug interactions may require modification of drug dosage or other therapeutic alterations. For example, rifampin stimulates the metabolism of warfarin, progesterone, prednisone, and anticonvulsants by stimulating the cytochrome P450 (CYP450) metabolic pathway. Dosage adjustments or alternative medications may be necessary to avoid significant adverse events. Another common example is macrolide and azilide antimicrobials which may cause a prolonged QT interval and may interact with other drugs with the potential to prolong the QT interval. Although many drug interactions are known and well documented, it may be difficult to predict interactions that result from a combination of multiple different medications, and a high level of suspicion regarding adverse clinical events should be maintained.

THE USE OF NEW ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

New antibiotics are introduced frequently, often with claims about unique features that distinguish these usually more expensive products from existing compounds. Often these drugs share many properties with existing drugs. The role that any new antimicrobial will play can only be determined over time, during which new or previously unrecognized side effects might be described and the clinical efficacy established. Clinical trials may not be confirmed in the larger number of patients subsequently treated in practice. Because this may take many years, a conservative approach to using new antibiotics seems fitting, especially because their costs are often higher, and appropriate antimicrobial choices for most common infections already exist. It is appropriate to ask if a new antimicrobial has been proved to be as effective as (or more effective than) the current drug of choice, and whether its side effects are comparable (or less common)

and its cost reasonable. The withdrawal of moxalactam and trovafloxacin due to unexpected serious side effects, which were not anticipated despite extensive premarket testing, highlight the caution necessary before using new antimicrobials. The heavy marketing of new cephalosporins and fluoroquinolones, which are very similar to existing drugs, is typical of the difficulty in evaluating antimicrobials.

The development of new antimicrobials is important as a response to the emergence of resistant organisms and for treatment of infections that are clinically difficult to treat (eg, viruses, fungi, and some resistant bacteria). Fortunately, these infections are either rare or (usually) self-limited in immunocompetent hosts.

PROPHYLACTIC ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

Antimicrobials can be used to decrease the incidence of postoperative infections (Table 39–7). A dose of an antimicrobial given 30 minutes to one hour prior to surgery can reduce postoperative wound infection. Vancomycin and fluoroquinolones, which require a longer infusion time, may need to be started 2 hours before surgery. The goal is to achieve high levels in the serum at the time of incision and by this means—along with good surgical technique—to minimize viable bacterial contamination of the wound. During a lengthy procedure, a second dose may be given. No evidence exists that multiple subsequent doses of antimicrobials confer additional benefit. The antimicrobial(s) used for prophylaxis are directed toward the flora that most commonly cause postoperative infection at a given anatomic site. Gram-positive cocci, such as S aureus that colonize the skin, are usually targeted, and a first-generation cephalosporin (eg, cefazolin) is a cost-effective choice. Third-generation cephalosporins and other broad-spectrum agents are more expensive and offer less benefit because they are less active than cefazolin against S aureus. Cefoxitin and cefotetan, which have activity against anaerobic bacteria, are useful for procedures, such as colorectal surgery, although cefazolin has been effective for most gynecologic patients. In colorectal surgery, orally administered antimicrobials such as neomycin and erythromycin may be as effective as parenteral antimicrobials.

In hospitals where the predominant S aureus strains are methicillin resistant or in cases where the patient is allergic to penicillin and cephalosporins, vancomycin can be considered. However, prophylactic vancomycin has caused hypotension at the time of induction of general anesthesia. Frequent use of vancomycin as a prophylactic antimicrobial will contribute to the development of vancomycin-resistant strains such as Enterococcus faecalis. For these reasons, vancomycin should generally not be used for prophylaxis, although it might prove useful for individual patients at extremely high risk.

Endocarditis prophylaxis is recommended for certain dental procedures in high-risk cardiac patients. Patients with prosthetic cardiac valves or prosthetic cardiac material during the 6 months following the procedure, unrepaired cyanotic heart disease, children with prior endocarditis, and children with other prosthetic patches, which inhibit endothelialization, should receive prophylaxis. Dental procedures that would trigger prophylaxis are those that involve manipulation of gingival and periapical tissues. Patients with indwelling venous catheters undergoing similar extensive dental procedures should receive prophylaxis. Prophylaxis is not recommended for routine cleanings or orthodontic applications. Prophylaxis is not recommended for gastrointestinal or genitourinary procedures.

Prophylaxis against infection with group A streptococci reduces the recurrence rate for acute rheumatic fever. Postexposure prophylaxis is given after exposure to pertussis, Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) infection (depending on age), meningococcus, gonococcus, tuberculosis (household

Table 39–7. Dosing aminoglycosides in newborns.

	Route	Body Wt (g)	Usual Dosage[a] (mg/kg/dose) [Frequency]				Blood Levels (mcg/mL)	
			< 7 d	Interval (h)	8–30 d	Interval (h)	Peak	Trough
Amikacin[a]	IV, IM	< 2000	15	48	15	24–48	15–25	5–10
		> 2000	15	24	15	12–24		
Gentamicin[a]	IV, IM	< 2000	5	48	4–5	24–48	5–10	< 2
		> 2000	4	24	4	12–24		
Tobramycin[a]	IV, IM	< 2000	5	48	4–5	24–48	5–10	< 2
		> 2000	4	24	4	12–24		

[a]Aminoglycoside dosing in neonates requires careful attention to changes in renal function and changes in the volume of distribution. For infants younger than 1200 g, smaller doses may be needed.

exposure), plague, aerosolized tularemia or anthrax, and other high-risk infections. Family or close contacts of patients with severe invasive streptococcal disease may benefit from prophylaxis. Silver nitrate, erythromycin, povidone-iodine, and tetracycline are used in ophthalmic preparations for prevention of gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum. Children with asplenia or sickle cell disease receive prophylactic penicillin to protect against overwhelming S pneumoniae sepsis, usually started immediately with the onset of fever.

Prophylactic antimicrobials are used for some children at high risk for recurrent UTI, but the number needed to treat to prevent one UTI is high, and decreased renal scarring or other improved renal outcomes have not been shown.

Chemoprophylaxis of children at high risk for influenza, but not immunized against influenza, should be considered, including some immunocompromised children and unimmunized caregivers of at-risk children. Children at high risk, for 2 weeks after immunization and during years when vaccine efficacy is suboptimal, may benefit from prophylaxis. Oseltamivir or zanamivir would be used as each is currently active against influenza A and B.

INITIAL EMPIRIC ANTIMICROBIAL CHOICES FOR SELECTED CONDITIONS

General recommendations for specific conditions are based on the patient's age, diagnosis, site of infection, severity of illness, antimicrobial susceptibility of bacterial isolates, and history of drug allergy. Always consult the package insert for detailed prescribing information. Tables 39–2 to 39–6 include further information.

Neonatal Sepsis & Meningitis

The newborn with sepsis may have signs of focal infection, such as pneumonia or respiratory distress syndrome, or may have subtle nonfocal signs. Group B streptococci, Escherichia coli, and other gram-negative rods are commonly encountered. Listeria monocytogenes is now uncommon in many nurseries, but a recent nationwide outbreak demonstrates the pathogenic potential of this organism. Ampicillin and gentamicin (or another aminoglycoside) are preferred. If meningitis is present, many clinicians substitute a third-generation cephalosporin for the aminoglycoside. S pneumoniae is an uncommon cause of meningitis in neonates. However, if the Gram stain shows gram-positive cocci suggesting S pneumoniae, substitution of vancomycin for ampicillin should be considered. In the newborn with cellulitis, S aureus including methicillin-resistant S aureus (MRSA) and group A streptococci are additional considerations. Nafcillin, oxacillin, or a first-generation cephalosporin is usually added. Vancomycin is added if MRSA is common in the geographic area. Omphalitis is often polymicrobial, and Enterococcus species, gram-negative aerobes, and anaerobes may be causative. Clindamycin, ampicillin, and an aminoglycoside or piperacillin-tazobactam cover the most likely organisms; early surgical intervention is indicated.

Sepsis in an Infant

S pneumoniae and Neisseria meningitidis are most commonly encountered in infants. Haemophilus influenza type B (Hib) infection may occur in unimmunized children. A third-generation cephalosporin is appropriate. Intermediate-level penicillin and cephalosporin resistance in S pneumoniae usually do not cause therapy to fail unless meningitis or another difficult-to-treat infection, such as endocarditis or osteomyelitis, is present.

Occult bacteremia may be encountered in young infants with high fever. Prior to immunization with vaccines effective against Hib, persistent bacteremia and complications including meningitis were seen in approximately 50% of children infected with occult Hib bacteremia. Hib is now a very uncommon cause of occult bacteremia in young children with fever. Similarly, prior to the introduction of the conjugate pneumococcal vaccine, S pneumonia bacteremia was demonstrated in 3%–5% of infants aged 3–36 months with fever of 39°C or greater, no identified source for fever on examination, and white blood cell count (WBC) of equal to or greater than 15,000/mm^3. The risk of bacteremia was 6%–10% in younger children with fever greater than 40°C and WBC of 20,000/mm^3 or higher, and the risk of developing meningitis due to persistent S pneumoniae bacteremia was estimated at 3%. The risk of S pneumoniae bacteremia and its complications is significantly reduced in children immunized with the conjugate pneumococcal vaccines. In clinical trials and subsequent national surveillance for the incidence of disease, the 7-valent pneumococcal vaccine reduced invasive pneumococcal diseases by approximately 90%, which should be lower with the 13-valent pneumococcal vaccine. Observation without antimicrobials, but with appropriate plans for follow-up examinations, is appropriate for most febrile young children who are fully immunized.

Hospital-Acquired Infections

Many bacterial pathogens can cause infection in hospitalized patients. Updated local unit-specific antibiograms are the best guide to etiologic diagnosis and antimicrobial susceptibility. For example, some intensive care units experience frequent infections due to Enterobacter cloacae, whereas in other units Klebsiella pneumoniae is the most common nosocomial isolate. Initial therapy should include antibiotics effective for MRSA and resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa if these are frequent isolates. E faecalis is a common cause of nosocomial bacteremia in patients with central catheters, particularly in units where cephalosporins are heavily used. Coagulase-negative staphylococci are commonly isolated from patients with indwelling central catheters. In seriously ill patients, when the local experience suggests that

Enterococcus species or coagulase-negative staphylococci are common, the initial regimen should include vancomycin. Because Enterococcus species and coagulase-negative staphylococci commonly cause fever without significant morbidity or mortality, initial regimens without vancomycin are appropriate, with adjustment of treatment after susceptibility is known. If P aeruginosa or other resistant gram-negative rods are common, ceftazidime or cefepime should be included in initial therapy. Candida is a common isolate from blood cultures from immunocompromised or seriously ill patients in the intensive care unit. Empiric antifungal therapy is initiated in some high-risk patients.

Meningitis

Bacterial meningitis in neonates is usually caused by infection with group B streptococci, E coli, other gram-negative rods, or L monocytogenes. A combination of ampicillin and a third-generation cephalosporin is started initially. In an infant or older child, S pneumoniae or N meningitidis are the most common isolates. Hib is uncommon now because of widespread immunization. Increasingly, S pneumoniae with resistance to a third-generation cephalosporin (MIC > 2 mcg/mL) may occur in 3%–5% of isolates.

In bacterial meningitis, peak CSF antimicrobial concentrations four or more times greater than the MIC of the organism are desirable, but this may be difficult to achieve with some drugs if organisms are resistant. The therapeutic problem is complicated if dexamethasone, which reduces the entry of some antimicrobials into the CSF, is also given. Thus, initial therapy of bacterial meningitis in an older child should include vancomycin and a third-generation cephalosporin. Alternatively, meropenem has also been successful. A lumbar puncture should be considered 24–48 hours after the start of therapy to assess the sterility of the CSF. Rifampin should be added if the Gram stain or cultures of CSF are positive on repeated lumbar puncture, if the child fails to improve, or if an isolate has a very high MIC to ceftriaxone. The optimal therapy of highly resistant S pneumoniae meningitis is not well established.

Meningitis in a child with a ventriculoperitoneal shunt is most commonly caused by coagulase-negative staphylococci, many of which are methicillin-resistant. In many of these patients who are not seriously ill, therapy should be postponed while awaiting the appropriate shunt fluid for Gram stain and culture. Seriously ill patients should initially be given vancomycin and a third-generation cephalosporin, because S aureus and gram-negative rods are also common causes of serious infection.

Urinary Tract Infection

E coli is the most common isolate from the urinary tract. Outpatients with symptoms of lower urinary tract disease or with mild illness can be given ampicillin, cephalexin, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX). Local experience and resistance rates should guide initial therapy. In selected patients with pyelonephritis, outpatient therapy is effective using parenteral aminoglycosides or ceftriaxone once per day. Oral cefixime and amoxicillin-clavulanate can be used in place of ceftriaxone for outpatient therapy. Ciprofloxacin has been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration for therapy of urinary tract infection (UTI) in children older than 1 year, but it should be reserved for complicated cases. For hospitalized patients with UTI and suspected bacteremia, ampicillin and gentamicin or a third-generation cephalosporin is appropriate. Gram stain should be used to guide the initial choice. For patients with known or suspected resistant organisms, such as P aeruginosa, or for patients with urosepsis, an aminoglycoside and ceftazidime, cefepime, or piperacillin with or without tazobactam may be started. Unit-specific data on typical bacterial species and their patterns of susceptibility, when available, should guide the antimicrobial choice for nosocomial UTIs.

Bacterial Pneumonia

Bacterial pneumonia in newborns generally should be treated with the same antimicrobial choices as sepsis. Infants and older children are frequently infected with S pneumoniae. Amoxicillin is effective in most patients treated as outpatients.

Previously healthy children admitted to the hospital with uncomplicated pneumonia can be treated successfully with amoxicillin orally or ampicillin or penicillin, intravenously.

Children with inadequate immunization, children with high-level pneumococcal resistance (penicillin MIC ≥ 4.0 mg/mL), and children who are seriously ill may benefit from a third-generation cephalosporin given parenterally.

Children with culture-positive paraneumonic effusions should be treated based on the culture and susceptibility report. Children with small or culture-negative parapneumonic effusions should be treated based on the severity of illness.

A rapidly progressive pneumonia, with pneumatoceles or large empyema, may be due to MRSA or group A streptococci, Hib, or another gram-negative rod. Vancomycin should be used in addition to a third-generation cephalosporin in these instances.

Children aged 6 years and older more frequently have infection with Mycoplasma pneumoniae or Chlamydia pneumoniae. Azithromycin is usually preferred for initial empiric therapy.

Skin & Soft Tissue Infections

S aureus and group A streptococcus are the most common causes of skin and soft tissue infections (SSTIs) in children.

Community-acquired MRSA infections are common in many communities and complicate clinical decision making. Culture and susceptibility testing of abscesses, cellulitis, and more serious SSTIs is very important for optimal clinical management. Children with cellulitis more commonly have infection with group A streptococci, and empiric outpatient therapy with cephalexin or dicloxacillin is preferred. Children with small (< 5 cm) abscesses usually are effectively treated with incision and drainage without an antimicrobial. Outpatient therapy of large (> 5 cm) abscesses includes incision and drainage and empiric clindamycin or TMP-SMX, depending on local susceptibility patterns. However, in many communities, 50% or more of MRSA isolates are also resistant to clindamycin, fluoroquinolones, and erythromycin. Knowledge of the local resistance pattern of community-acquired MRSA is helpful in choosing initial antimicrobial therapy. Adequate cultures, the thoroughness of drainage procedures, and careful outpatient follow-up are needed to ensure optimal outcomes. Group A streptococcal infections are not adequately treated with TMP-SMX.

Specific Antimicrobial Agents

PENICILLINS

Penicillins and Aminopenicillins

Penicillin remains the drug of choice for streptococcal infections including acute pharyngitis, acute rheumatic fever prophylaxis, syphilis, oral anaerobic infections, dental infections, N meningitidis infection, leptospirosis, rat-bite fever, actinomycosis, and infections due to Clostridium and Bacillus species (Table 39–8). For oral therapy of minor infections, amoxicillin or ampicillin are usually equivalent, but amoxicillin is better absorbed and tolerated. For systemic therapy, aqueous penicillin G is preferable. For treatment of streptococcal pharyngitis, amoxicillin is recommended. Amoxicillin is preferred therapy for pneumonia and otitis media due to S pneumoniae. Amoxicillin is preferred for oral therapy of Lyme disease in children < 8 years of age. For dog or cat bites, where Pasteurella multocida is commonly encountered, amoxicillin-clavulanate provides good coverage of Pasteurella as well as methicillin-sensitive S aureus (MSSA). An alternative is separate prescriptions for penicillin and an antistaphylococcal drug such as cephalexin, or clindamycin and TMP-SMX in penicillin-allergic patients. For human bites, amoxicillin-clavulanate provides adequate therapy for Eikenella corrodens and other mixed oral aerobes and anaerobes. The β-lactamase inhibitor sulbactam combined with ampicillin is given parenterally for human and animal bites, and some other infections due to organisms from the oral flora in which mixed aerobic and anaerobic bacteria may be resistant to ampicillin due to β-lactamase production.

Penicillinase-Resistant Penicillins

S aureus is usually resistant to penicillin and amoxicillin owing to penicillinase production. Nafcillin, oxacillin, methicillin, and first- and second-generation cephalosporins are stable to penicillinase and are usually equivalent for intravenous therapy. Methicillin is associated with more frequent interstitial nephritis. Oxacillin and methicillin are renally excreted, whereas nafcillin is excreted through the biliary tract. These properties are occasionally considered in children with renal or liver failure. Cost is another important factor for choosing an agent. Often both S aureus and S pyogenes are suspected initially (eg, in cellulitis or postoperative wound infections). The penicillinase-resistant penicillins (PRPs) and first- and second-generation cephalosporins are efficacious for most streptococcal infections, although penicillin remains the drug of choice.

MRSA is an increasingly common and serious community-acquired infection in children and may cause nosocomial infection. MRSA infections are also resistant to all of the PRPs and cephalosporins. Vancomycin is effective against MRSA and coagulase-negative staphylococci. S aureus infections range in severity from minor infections treated on an outpatient basis to life-threatening infections. Since severe infections due to MRSA are a serious concern in many communities, it is important to culture and determine antimicrobial susceptibility of suspected S aureus infections. In communities with frequent MRSA infections, initial therapy of seriously ill children should include vancomycin. MRSA may also be resistant to macrolides and clindamycin by mutations of the bacterial 23s-ribosomal RNA. Many strains reported as clindamycin-susceptible and erythromycin-resistant are actually resistant to clindamycin. This inducible resistance to clindamycin may be detected in erythromycin-resistant MRSA that demonstrate a D-zone in disk susceptibility testing. Community-acquired MRSA is more likely to be susceptible to TMP-SMX, clindamycin, and tetracyclines than hospital-acquired infections.

For outpatient therapy, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, and first- or second-generation cephalosporins are usually equally effective for infections due to susceptible S aureus. Cost and availability may determine the choice between drugs.

Anti-Pseudomonas Penicillins

Ticarcillin and piperacillin are active intravenously against streptococci, ampicillin-susceptible enterococci, H influenzae, gram-negative rods (including frequently antibiotic-resistant gram-negative rods, such as Enterobacter, Proteus, and P aeruginosa), and gram-negative anaerobes such as Bacteroides fragilis. P aeruginosa is inherently resistant to most antimicrobials, and high levels of these drugs are usually required. The combination of ticarcillin or piperacillin and an aminoglycoside is synergistic against P aeruginosa and many other enteric gram-negative rods. Ticarcillin in a fixed combination with clavulanic acid has activity against β-lactamase–producing strains of Klebsiella, S aureus, and

Table 39–8. Antimicrobial prophylaxis and preferred prophylactic agents: selected conditions and pathogens.[a]

Pathogen (Indication)	Prophylactic Agent
Bacillus anthracis[b]	Amoxicillin (if proved susceptible), ciprofloxacin, doxycycline
Bacterial endocarditis[c]	Ampicillin, ceftriaxone, cefazolin
Bordetella pertussis (exposure to respiratory secretions)	Azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin
Chlamydia trachomatis (genital contact)	Azithromycin, doxycycline
Haemophilus influenzae type b[d] (household exposure)	Rifampin
Mycobacterium tuberculosis (household exposure)	Isoniazid or rifampin
Neisseria meningitidis (household exposure)	Rifampin, ciprofloxacin
Neisseria gonorrhoeae (ophthalmia neonatorum)	Erythromycin, silver nitrate ophthalmic, povidone-iodine
N gonorrhoeae (sexual contact)	Ceftriaxone
Treponema pallidum (sexual contact)	Penicillin
Streptococcus pneumoniae (sickle cell disease, asplenia)	Penicillin
Postoperative wound infection[e]	Cefazolin, vancomycin, and other regimens[e]
Group A streptococci (rheumatic fever)[f]	Benzathine penicillin G, penicillin, sulfadiazine
Group B streptococcal sepsis	Ampicillin (to mother prior to delivery)
Pneumonic Yersinia pestis[g] (exposure)	Tetracycline[h]
Francisella tularensis[g] (aerosolized exposure)	Tetracycline[h]
Vibrio cholera	Tetracycline,[h] trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Recurrent urinary tract infection	Nitrofurantoin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Pneumocystis jiroveci—(HIV, some immunocompromised patients)	Atovaquone, clindamycin-primaquine, dapsone, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, pentamidine

[a]Decisions for prophylaxis must take a number of factors into account, including the evidence for efficacy of therapy, the degree of the exposure to an infecting agent, the risk and consequences of infection, the susceptibility of the infecting agent to antimicrobials, and the patient's ability to tolerate and comply with the antimicrobial agent. See individual chapters for discussion.
[b]Decisions for prophylaxis should be made in accordance with the responsible public health department recommendations.
[c]See discussion in Chapter 20.
[d]Prophylaxis provided to family if contacts include unimmunized or partially immunized children younger than age 4 years. Some experts provide prophylaxis in day care settings after one case and some after two cases of Haemophilus influenza type b infection.
[e]Alternative regimens may be used, depending on the site of surgery and the degree of contamination. Vancomycin may be used when the patient is known to be colonized with MRSA or if MRSA is a common postoperative infection.
[f]Oral prophylaxis may be indicated in some patients. Alternative regimens indicated for penicillin-allergic patients. See discussion in text.
[g]Prophylaxis not well established. Carefully assess risk on a case-by-case basis.
[h]Usually not indicated for children younger than 9 years because of tooth staining with repeated doses.

Bacteroides. Piperacillin is more active in vitro against many gram-negative enteric infections and is most commonly used in combination with tazobactam, a β-lactamase inhibitor. Antipseudomonal penicillins cause the same toxicities as penicillin and therefore are usually very safe.

GLYCOPEPTIDE AGENTS

Vancomycin, telavancin, oritavancin, and dalbavancin are glycopeptide antimicrobial agents active against the cell wall of gram-positive organisms. Both dalbavancin and oritavancin have a prolonged half-life that allows once-weekly dosing. Telavancin is dosed once daily. Neither of these three drugs are FDA-approved for use in children. Vancomycin is useful for parenteral therapy of resistant gram-positive cocci such as penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant S pneumoniae, MRSA, methicillin-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococci, and ampicillin-resistant enterococci. Vancomycin is also used orally for therapy of colitis due to Clostridium difficile, although it should not be used as the drug of first choice. None of the glycopeptides are active against gram-negative infections.

The empiric use of vancomycin has increased tremendously over the last decade. As a result, vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) and coagulase-negative staphylococci have become problems, particularly in inpatient units, intensive care units, and oncology wards. Vancomycin-intermediate and vancomycin-resistant S aureus are now being isolated, which is of concern because of the inherent virulence of many S aureus strains. Vancomycin use should be monitored carefully in hospitals and intensive care units. Vancomycin should not be used empirically when an infection is mild or when other antimicrobial agents are likely to be effective, and should be stopped promptly if infection is caused by organisms susceptible to other antimicrobials.

Rapid infusion of vancomycin is associated with the "red man syndrome," characterized by diffuse red flushing, at times pruritus, and occasionally tachycardia and hypotension. As a result, vancomycin is infused slowly over 1 hour, or even longer if necessary. Diphenhydramine or hydrocortisone (or both) may also be used as premedication.

Measurement of peak-and-trough serum vancomycin concentrations is not necessary in most clinical situations because the levels achieved with standard dosing are usually predictable and nontoxic. Measurement of serum concentrations is helpful in patients with abnormal or unpredictable renal function; in those with altered volume of distribution, as occurs in nephrotic syndrome or shock; and in those receiving higher-dose therapy (eg, for meningitis or other difficult-to-treat infections). For patients receiving antimicrobials for weeks to months, weekly clinical assessment and laboratory assessment of urine, creatinine, and complete blood count should facilitate detection of toxicity.

OXAZOLIDINONES

Linezolid is the first drug in this class of antimicrobials that bind to the 50s-ribosomal RNA subunit and prevent initiation of protein synthesis. Because of this unique mechanism, cross-resistance with other classes of antimicrobials is uncommon.

Linezolid is active against aerobic gram-positive organisms, including streptococci, staphylococci, enterococci, and pneumococci. Because linezolid is active against gram-positive organisms resistant to other antimicrobials (eg, MRSA, methicillin-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococci, VRE, and penicillin-resistant S pneumoniae), it is useful for these difficult to treat infections.

Linezolid is safe and well tolerated in children. Gastrointestinal symptoms are the most commonly encountered side effect. Because neutropenia and thrombocytopenia have been reported with linezolid use, the complete blood count should be monitored in patients at increased risk for these problems and in patients receiving therapy for 2 weeks or longer. Linezolid is an inhibitor of monoamine oxidase (MAO) and should not be used in patients taking MAO inhibitors, or in patients taking phenylpropanolamine or pseudoephedrine.

Linezolid should be used only for infections due to a proven gram-positive pathogen that is known or strongly suspected to be resistant to other available agents.

CEPHALOSPORINS

Cephalosporin agents make up a large and often confusing group of antimicrobials. Many of these drugs are similar in antibacterial spectrum and side effects and may have similar names. Clinicians should learn well the properties of one or two drugs in each class. Cephalosporins are often grouped as "generations" to signify their similar antimicrobial activity. First-generation cephalosporins such as cefazolin intravenously and cephalexin orally are useful mainly for susceptible S aureus infection and UTI due to susceptible E coli. Second-generation cephalosporins, such as cefuroxime intravenously and cefprozil and cefuroxime orally, have somewhat reduced, but acceptable, activity against gram-positive cocci, and greater activity against some gram-negative rods compared with first-generation cephalosporins. They are active against H influenzae and Moraxella catarrhalis, including strains that produce β-lactamase capable of inactivating ampicillin. Third-generation cephalosporins have substantially less activity against gram-positive cocci, such as S aureus, but greatly augmented activity against aerobic gram-negative rods. Cefotaxime and ceftriaxone are examples of intravenous drugs, whereas cefpodoxime and ceftibuten are representative oral drugs. Cefepime is often described as fourth-generation cephalosporins because of its broad activity against gram-positive and gram-negative organisms, including P aeruginosa. Cefepime is less susceptible to β-lactamase degradation and is a poor inducer of β-lactamase, and is thus most useful for organisms resistant to other drugs.

Ceftaroline is a new cephalosporin that has expanded activity against MRSA and some Enterococcus faecalis, while retaining the gram-negative activity of third-generation cephalosporins. Ceftaroline is not sufficiently active against P aeruginosa or Acinetobacter, and is not approved for use in children younger than 18 years old.

No cephalosporin agent, except ceftaroline, has substantial activity against L monocytogenes, enterococci, or MRSA. The only cephems useful for treating anaerobic infections are cefoxitin and cefotetan, which are second generataion cephamycins with activity against B. fragilis. Increasing resistance limits their usefulness. Ceftazidime and cefepime are cephalosporins with activity against P aeruginosa, although resistance of this organism to ceftazidime and cefepime is common in many institutions.

Although allergy to β-lactam antimicrobials is reported commonly by parents, this history is not highly predictive of true allergy. Described serious or anaphylactic-type

reactions warrant caution or avoidance of cephalosporins and penicillins until evaluation by an allergist (see Chapter 38). With nonspecific reactions, these medications can usually be given safely.

Resistance to cephalosporins is common among aerobic gram-negative rods. The presence of inducible cephalosporinases in some gram-negative rod organisms, such as P aeruginosa, Serratia marcescens, Citrobacter, and Enterobacter, has led to clinical failures because of the emergence of resistance during therapy. Extended-spectrum β-lactamases mediate broad resistance to all penicillins, aminopenicillins, cephalosporins, and monobactams. Carbapenems, fluoroquinolones, or combinations including these drugs are used for serious infections due to gram-negative organisms with these enzymes.

AZTREONAM

Aztreonam is the only monobactam antimicrobial agent approved in the United States. Although it is not approved for use in children younger than age 9 months, there is considerable pediatric experience with its use, including in neonates and premature infants. Aztreonam is active against aerobic gram-negative rods, including P aeruginosa. Aztreonam has activity against H influenzae and M catarrhalis, including those that are β-lactamase producers. Most patients with allergy to penicillin or cephalosporins are not sensitized to aztreonam. An exception is the child with a prior reaction to ceftazidime may have reactions to aztreonam because aztreonam and ceftazidime have a common side chain.

Aztreonam delivered by aerosolization by a proprietary nebulization system is approved for therapy of P aeruginosa infection in patients with cystic fibrosis. Safety and efficacy have not been established in children younger than 7 years. Therapy is delivered three times daily for 28 days with a goal to improve respiratory symptoms.

CARBAPENEMS

Meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem, and imipenem are broad-spectrum β-lactam antimicrobials. Imipenem-cilastatin is a combination of an active antibiotic and cilastatin, which inhibits the metabolism of imipenem in the kidneys and thereby results in high serum and urine levels of imipenem. These carbapenems are also active against S pneumoniae, including many penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant strains. Carbapenems have been used successfully to treat meningitis and may be considered if vancomycin is not tolerated. An increased frequency of seizures is encountered when central nervous system infections are treated with carbapenems. The agents are broadly active against streptococci, MRSA, some enterococci, and gram-negative rods such as P aeruginosa, β-lactamase–producing H influenzae, and gram-negative anaerobes. Ertapenem has less activity against P aeruginosa, Acinetobacter species, and Enterococcus species than meropenem and imipenem. Because carbapenems are active against so many species of bacteria, there is a strong temptation to use them as single-drug empiric therapy. Units that have used carbapenems heavily have encountered resistance in many different species of gram-negative rods.

MACROLIDES & AZALIDES

Erythromycin was once the most commonly used macrolide antimicrobial agent, but now azithromycin and clarithromycin are preferred because of decreased side effects. They are active against many bacteria that are resistant to cell wall–active antimicrobials, and are the drugs of choice for Bordetella pertussis, Legionella pneumophila, C pneumoniae, M pneumoniae, and Chlamydia trachomatis infections (in children in whom tetracycline is not an option). Resistance of common upper respiratory pathogens to the macrolides limits their utility for therapy of pneumonia, otitis media, and sinusitis. Gastrointestinal side effects are common. Interactions with theophylline, carbamazepine, terfenadine, cycloserine, and other drugs may require dosage modifications of erythromycin and clarithromycin. Significant interactions with azithromycin are less common. Erythromycin exposure is associated with pyloric stenosis in newborns, so azithromycin is preferred in most neonates. In adults, macrolides appear to increase cardiac arrhythmogenic risk.

Erythromycin was previously available in many formulations, including the base, estolate, ethyl succinate, and stearate, but is sometimes unavailable or very expensive due to drug shortages and decreased demand. Transient hepatic toxicity occurs in adults, but is much less common in children. Erythromycin base and stearate should be taken with meals for best absorption.

Clarithromycin (macrolide) and azithromycin (azalide) are much less likely than erythromycin to cause nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, and are usually preferred over erythromycin. Clarithromycin is more active than erythromycin against H influenzae, M catarrhalis, and Neisseria gonorrhoeae and is the drug of choice, usually in combination, for some nontuberculous mycobacterial infections. Azithromycin has a prolonged half-life and antimicrobial effect in tissue. Azithromycin is dosed once daily for 5 days, but must be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals because food interferes with absorption. Although azithromycin is active against H influenzae, some authors report poor eradication of H influenzae from the middle ear. Azithromycin can be used for single-dose therapy of C trachomatis infections. It is beneficial in adolescents when compliance with erythromycin or tetracycline is a concern. Azithromycin is useful for therapy of Shigella and Salmonella infections, including typhoid fever resistant to ampicillin and TMP-SMX, and is

an alternatives to third-generation cephalosporins and fluoroquinolones for these infections. Clarithromycin is effective against Lyme disease, but amoxicillin is the drug of choice in young children. Clarithromycin and azithromycin are alternative drugs for toxoplasmosis in sulfonamide-allergic patients and as alternatives to erythromycin in legionellosis. In vitro and limited clinical experience in treating contacts of pertussis patients suggests efficacy equal to that of erythromycin. Some failures of the newer macrolides have occurred in S pneumoniae sepsis and meningitis, perhaps because of low serum levels despite the high tissue levels achieved. High rates of resistance to macrolides and azalides have been encountered in some communities. Azithromycin is not recommended as first-line therapy for S pneumonia infection, including acute otitis media and community-acquired pneumonia.

CLINDAMYCIN

Clindamycin is active against S aureus, some MRSA, S pyogenes, other streptococcal species except enterococci, and both gram-positive and gram-negative anaerobes. Clindamycin or metronidazole is frequently combined with other antimicrobials for empiric therapy of suspected anaerobic or mixed anaerobic and aerobic infections. Empiric use of clindamycin is justified in suspected anaerobic infections because cultures frequently cannot be obtained and, if obtained, may be slow in confirming anaerobic infection. Examples are pelvic inflammatory disease, necrotizing enterocolitis, other infections in which the integrity of the gastrointestinal or genitourinary tracts is compromised, and sinusitis. Clindamycin does not achieve high levels in CSF, but brain abscesses, toxoplasmosis, and other central nervous system infections, where disruption of the blood-brain barrier occurs, can be successfully treated with clindamycin. Clindamycin should be added to regimens for treatment of serious streptococcal and staphylococcal infections, such as necrotizing fasciitis and toxic shock syndrome, since in vitro and clinical data suggest increased bactericidal killing and improved outcomes. For most oral anaerobes (eg, in a dental abscess), penicillin is more active than clindamycin. Clindamycin has been associated with the occurrence of C difficile–related pseudomembranous colitis. Although diarrhea is a frequent side effect, pseudomembranous colitis is uncommonly due to clindamycin in children.

SULFONAMIDES

Sulfonamides—the oldest class of antimicrobials—remain useful for treatment of UTIs, and for other infections due to E coli and for Nocardia. Although useful for rheumatic fever prophylaxis in penicillin-allergic patients, sulfonamides fail to eradicate group A streptococci and cannot be used for treatment of acute infections.

TMP-SMX is a fixed combination that is more active than either drug alone. Gram-positive cocci including some S pneumoniae, many staphylococci, including MRSA, Haemophilus, and many enteric gram-negative rods are susceptible. Unfortunately, resistance to TMP-SMX has become more common. S pneumoniae resistant to penicillin and cephalosporins is often also resistant to TMP-SMX and erythromycin. In communities, where Shigella and Salmonella enteritidis strains remain susceptible, as do most E coli strains, TMP-SMX is very useful for treatment of both UTIs and bacterial dysentery. TMP-SMX is also the drug of choice for treatment or prophylaxis against Pneumocystis jiroveci infection. Myelosuppressive side effects, may limit the use of TMP-SMX in some immunocompromised children.

Sulfonamide is associated with several cutaneous reactions, including urticaria, photosensitivity, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, purpura, and maculopapular rashes. Hematologic side effects such as leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and hemolytic anemia are uncommon. Common gastrointestinal side effects are nausea and vomiting. The dermatologic and hematologic side effects are thought to be more common and more severe with TMP-SMX than with sulfonamide alone.

TETRACYCLINES

Tetracyclines, which are effective against a broad range of bacteria, are not commonly used in children because alternative effective drugs are available. Tetracyclines are effective against B pertussis and E coli and many species of Rickettsia, Chlamydia, and Mycoplasma. Doxycycline is a drug of choice for eradication of C trachomatis in pelvic inflammatory disease and nongonococcal urethritis.

Staining of permanent teeth was noted in young children given repeated courses of tetracyclines. As a result, tetracyclines are generally not given to children younger than age 9 years unless alternative drugs are unavailable. A single course of tetracycline does not pose a significant risk of tooth staining. Mucous membrane candidiasis, photosensitivity, nausea, and vomiting are other common side effects. Tetracycline should be taken on an empty stomach, either 1 hour before or 2 hours after a meal. Doxycycline is well absorbed even in the presence of food; administration with food may minimize gastrointestinal side effects. Doxycycline is often preferred because it is better tolerated than tetracycline, and twice-daily administration is convenient.

Tetracycline is used for therapy of Q fever and rickettsial infections such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever, ehrlichiosis, anaplasma, rickettsialpox, and endemic and murine typhus; as an alternative to macrolides for M pneumoniae and C pneumoniae infections; and for treatment of psittacosis, brucellosis, P multocida infection, and relapsing fever.

Tigecycline is a polyketide antimicrobial that is an analogue of tetracycline and a bacteriostatic inhibitor of protein synthesis. Tigecycline is active against gram-negative

aerobes, anaerobes, and many gram-positive cocci including MRSA and VRE. It is approved for intravenous therapy of adults with complicated SSTIs and complicated intra-abdominal infections.

AMINOGLYCOSIDES

The aminoglycosides bind to ribosomal subunits and inhibit protein synthesis. They are active against aerobic gram-negative rods, including P aeruginosa. Streptomycin was the first drug in this class, but today it is used only to treat tuberculosis and the occasional cases of plague and tularemia. Streptomycin is often not available.

Aminoglycosides are used to treat serious gram-negative infections and are given intravenously or intramuscularly. They are also used to treat pyelonephritis, suspected gram-negative sepsis and in other settings where P aeruginosa infections are common, such as cystic fibrosis and burns. Aminoglycosides have activity against gram-positive organisms and, combined with penicillin or ampicillin, may achieve synergistic killing of L monocytogenes and group B streptococci. Penicillin, ampicillin, or vancomycin combined with gentamicin is indicated for therapy of serious enterococcal infections, such as sepsis or endocarditis because of more rapid clinical improvement with combined therapy. Aminoglycosides have activity against S aureus, but are always used in combination with other antistaphylococcal antibiotics.

Aminoglycosides are not active in an acidic environment and may not be effective against abscesses. Aminoglycosides diffuse poorly into the CSF and achieve only about 10% of serum concentrations. As a result, a third-generation cephalosporin is preferred for treatment of meningitis.

Aminoglycosides kill bacteria in a concentration-dependent manner. They also have a prolonged suppressive effect on the regrowth of susceptible organisms (postantibiotic effect). These principles have led some investigators to establish guidelines for once-daily dosing of aminoglycosides, using larger initial doses given every 24 hours. Although aminoglycosides are associated with both renal and eighth nerve toxicity, the entry of the drug into renal and cochlear cells is saturable, and it therefore was predicted that once-daily dosing would result in less toxicity than traditional twice-daily or three-times-daily dosing. Studies in adult patients confirm that once-daily dosing is as efficacious as traditional dosing and is associated with less toxicity. Although there is extensive experience with dosing intervals of 18–36 hours in premature infants, small total daily doses are customarily used (2.0–2.5 mg/kg per dose of gentamicin or tobramycin). A convenient and cost-effective approach in children is based on the experience with adult patients and uses larger daily doses (4–7 mg/kg per dose every 24 hours). Nevertheless, traditional twice-daily or three-times-daily dosing regimens of aminoglycosides, with monitoring of serum levels, are still widely used. Careful monitoring is necessary, particularly in children with abnormal or changing renal function, premature infants, and infants with rapidly changing volumes of distribution. Aminoglycosides are usually infused over 30–45 minutes, and the peak serum concentration is measured 30–45 minutes after the end of the infusion. A trough serum concentration is measured prior to the next dose. The efficacious and nontoxic serum concentrations for gentamicin and tobramycin are trough less than 2 mcg/mL and peak 5–12 mcg/mL; for amikacin, trough less than 10 mcg/mL and peak 20–35 mcg/mL (see Table 39–4). Aminoglycoside levels and creatinine levels should be measured in children expected to receive more than 3 days of therapy, and repeated weekly in children on long-term therapy, even when renal function is normal and stable.

FLUOROQUINOLONES

Fluoroquinolones are well absorbed after oral administration and possess excellent antibacterial, though they vary in their spectrum of activity. Generally, they are active against most of the Enterobacteriaceae, including E coli, Enterobacter, Klebsiella, and many other gram-negative bacteria such as H influenzae, M catarrhalis, N gonorrhoeae, and N meningitidis. Some fluoroquinolones are active against P aeruginosa and other resistant gram-negative pathogens. Ofloxacin and levofloxacin are active against C trachomatis and Mycoplasma. The fluoroquinolones are active against some enterococci, S aureus, MRSA, and coagulase-negative staphylococci. The newer quinolones have good activity against penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant S pneumonia.

Ciprofloxacin and its otic and ophthalmic preparations are the only fluoroquinolone antimicrobials currently approved for use in children older than 1 year, although fluoroquinolones offer very attractive alternatives to other approved agents. The objection to quinolones is based on the recognition that nalidixic acid and other quinolones cause arthropathy when tested in newborn animals of many species. The fear that children would also be more susceptible than adults to cartilage injury has not been realized in clinical experience. Both retrospective long-term follow-up studies of children given nalidixic acid and prospective studies of children receiving treatment under protocols with fluoroquinolones have shown similar rates of toxicity compared with adult patients. Arthropathy occurs uncommonly, and tendon rupture is a reported rare complication which occurs more commonly in adults. For these reasons, quinolones should be considered for use in children when the benefit clearly outweighs the risk, when no alternative drug is available, and after discussion with the parents.

Ciprofloxacin is useful for oral therapy of resistant gram-negative UTIs, such as those caused by P aeruginosa. Fluoroquinolones are no longer recommended for single-dose therapy of gonorrhea due to frequent resistance, but

ofloxacin and levofloxacin are an alternative therapy for treating Chlamydia infections and pelvic inflammatory disease. Ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, and ofloxacin are used as therapy of resistant cases of shigellosis. Levofloxacin and ciprofloxacin are usually the drugs of choice for treatment of traveler's diarrhea. Ciprofloxacin is useful for treatment of P aeruginosa infection in patients with cystic fibrosis, and as therapy for chronic suppurative otitis media. Several quinolones are used as therapy for pneumonia due to Legionella, Mycoplasma, or C pneumoniae, although a macrolide is often preferred, and as prophylactic therapy of meningococcal infection. Ofloxacin and levofloxacin are used for treatment of some cases of Mycobacterium tuberculosis and some atypical mycobacterial infections.

METRONIDAZOLE

Metronidazole has excellent activity against most anaerobes, particularly gram-negative anaerobes, such as Bacteroides and Fusobacterium, and against gram-positive anaerobes such as Clostridium, Prevotella, and Porphyromonas. Gram-positive anaerobic cocci such as Peptococcus and Peptostreptococcus are often more susceptible to penicillin or to clindamycin. Because metronidazole lacks activity against aerobic organisms, it is usually given with one or more other antibiotics. Metronidazole is well absorbed after oral administration and has excellent penetration into the central nervous system. Metronidazole is the drug of choice for bacterial vaginosis and for C difficile enterocolitis. It is active against many parasites, including Giardia lamblia and Entamoeba histolytica.

DAPTOMYCIN

Daptomycin has broad bactericidal activity against gram-positive cocci. Daptomycin is a lipopeptide that binds to bacterial cell membranes, resulting in membrane depolarization and cell death. Daptomycin is active against methicillin-sensitive and resistant S aureus, S pyogenes, and Streptococcus agalactiae, as well as E faecium (including vancomycin-resistant strains) and E faecalis (vancomycin-sensitive strains). Daptomycin is given as a once-daily intravenous infusion of 4 mg/kg and is approved for therapy of complicated SSTIs in adults. Daptomycin is dosed 10 mg/kg in children 2–5 years old and 7 mg/kg in children 6–11 years old. Children over 12 years old are dosed with 4 mg/kg. Daptomycin therapy of pneumonia was unsuccessful in a large percentage of cases, and should not be used. Daptomycin is excreted renally, so a modification of dosing is needed in patients with impaired renal function. Nausea, constipation, and headache are the most common side effects of therapy. Daptomycin has well-described but rare side effects on skeletal muscle, so creatinine phosphokinase levels should be evaluated in patients with muscle pain, and some recommend monitoring in high-risk patients.

REFERENCES

Bradley JS et al: The management of community-acquired pneumonia in infants and children older than 3 months of age: clinical practice guidelines by the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2011;53(7):e25–e76 [PMID: 21880587].

Bradley JS, Nelson JB: Nelson's Pocketbook of Pediatric Antimicrobial Therapy. 20th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics; 2014.

Chai G et al: Trends of outpatient prescription drug utilization in US children, 2002–2010. Pediatrics 2012;130(1):23 [PMID: 22711728].

Dellit T et al: Infectious Diseases Society of America and the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America Guidelines for Developing an Institutional Program to Enhance Antimicrobial Stewardship. Clin Infect Dis 2007;44:159–177 [PMID: 17173212].

Gilbert DN et al: The Sanford Guide to Antimicrobial Therapy. 44th ed. Antimicrobial Therapy, Inc.; 2014.

Hersh AL et al: Principles of Judicious Antibpotic Prescribing for Upper Respiratory Tract Infections in Pediatrics. Pediatrics 2013;132;1146–1154 [PMID: 24249823].

Web Resources

Alliance for the Prudent Use of Antibiotics: http://www.tufts.edu/med/apua.

CDC Antibiotic and Antimicrobial Resistance page: http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance.

Infectious Diseases Society of America: http://www.idsociety.org/.

40 Infections: Viral & Rickettsial

Myron J. Levin, MD
Edwin J. Asturias, MD
Adriana Weinberg, MD

VIRAL INFECTIONS

Viruses cause most pediatric infections. Mixed viral or viral-bacterial infections of the respiratory and intestinal tracts are common, as is prolonged asymptomatic shedding of some viruses in childhood, especially in young children. Thus, the detection of a virus is not always proof that it is the cause of a given illness. Viruses are often a predisposing factor for bacterial respiratory infections (eg, otitis, sinusitis, and pneumonia).

Many respiratory viruses and herpesviruses can now be detected within 24–48 hours by combining culture and monoclonal antibody techniques ("rapid culture technique") or through antigen or nucleic acid detection techniques. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of viral genes has led to recognition of previously undetected infections. New diagnostic tests have changed some basic concepts about viral diseases and made diagnosis of viral infections both more certain and more complex. Only laboratories with excellent quality-control procedures should be used. The availability of specific antiviral agents increases the value of early diagnosis for some serious viral infections. Table 40–1 lists diagnostic tests. The viral diagnostic laboratory should be contacted for details regarding specimen collection, handling, and shipping. Table 40–2 lists common causes of red rashes in children that should be considered in the differential diagnosis of certain viral illnesses.

RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS

Many viral infections can cause either upper or lower respiratory tract signs and symptoms, sometimes both in the same patient. Those that produce a predominance of these signs and symptoms are described in the text that follows. Many so-called respiratory viruses can also produce distinct non-respiratory disease (eg, enteritis or cystitis or myocarditis caused by adenoviruses; parotitis caused by parainfluenza viruses). Respiratory viruses can cause disease in any area of the respiratory tree, although certain viruses tend to be closely associated with one anatomic area (eg, parainfluenza with croup, respiratory syncytial virus [RSV] with bronchiolitis) or with discrete epidemics (eg, influenza, RSV, parainfluenza). Thus it is impossible on clinical grounds to be certain of the specific viral cause of an infection in a given child. This information, which is provided by the virology laboratory, is often important for epidemiologic, therapeutic, and preventive reasons. In immunocompromised patients, these annoying, but otherwise benign, viruses can cause severe pneumonia.

VIRUSES CAUSING THE COMMON COLD

The common cold syndrome (also called upper respiratory infection) is characterized by combinations of runny nose, nasal congestion, sore throat, tearing, cough, and sneezing. Low-grade fever may be present. Epidemiologic studies indicate that rhinoviruses, which are the most common cause (30%–40%; more in some series), are present throughout the year, but are more prevalent in the colder months in temperate climates. Adenoviruses also cause colds in all seasons and epidemics are common. RSV, parainfluenza viruses, human metapneumovirus, and influenza viruses cause the cold syndrome during epidemics from late fall through winter. Multiple strains of coronaviruses account for 5%–10% of cold syndromes in winter. The precise role of newly identified respiratory viruses, such as the human bocavirus (a parvovirus) and several polyomaviruses, are under study. Enteroviruses cause the "summer cold." One outcome of the common cold is morbidity continuing for 5–7 days. It is also likely that changes in respiratory epithelium, local mucosal swelling, and altered local immunity are sometimes the precursors of more severe illnesses such as otitis media, pneumonia, and sinusitis. During and following a cold, the bacterial flora changes and bacteria are found in normally sterile areas of the upper airway. Asthma attacks are frequently provoked by any of the viruses that cause the

Table 40–1. Diagnostic tests for viral infections.

Agent	Rapid Antigen Detection (Specimen)	Tissue Culture Mean Days to Positive (Range)	Serology		PCR	Comments
			Acute	Paired		
Adenovirus	+ (respiratory and enteric)	10 (1–21)	–	+	+	"Enteric" strains detected by culture on special cell line, antigen detection, or PCR
Arboviruses	–	–	+	+	+	Acute serum may diagnose many forms
Astrovirus	–	–	–	–	+	Diagnosis by electron microscopy
Calicivirus	– RL	–	–	–	+	Diagnosis by electron microscopy; PCR generally available for norovirus; present in RL for others
Colorado tick virus	On RBC	–	–	RL, CDC	+	
Coronavirus	–	RL	–	+	+	
Cytomegalovirus	+ (tissue biopsy, urine, blood, respiratory secretions)	2 (2–28)	+	+	+	Diagnosis by presence of IgM antibody; rapid culture method generally available; low avidity antibody indicates recent infection
Dengue	+	5 d (RL)	+	+	+	Testing at CDC; 80% seropositive at 6 days
Enterovirus	–	3 (2–8) Coxsackie A difficult to culture	–	++	+	
Epstein-Barr virus	–	–	+	++	++	Single serologic panel defines infection status; heterophil antibodies less sensitive
Hantavirus	–	–	+	ND	RL	Diagnosis by presence of IgM antibody
Hepatitis A virus	–	–	+	ND	RL	Diagnosis by presence of IgM antibody
Hepatitis B virus	+ (blood)	–	+	ND	+	Diagnosis by presence of surface antigen or anticore IgM antibody
Hepatitis C virus	–	–	+	ND	+	Positive serology suggests that hepatitis C could be the causative agent; PCR is confirmatory. PCR may be positive before serology
Herpes simplex virus	+ (mucosa, tissue biopsy, respiratory secretions, skin)	1 (1–7)	+	+	+	Serology rarely used for herpes simplex; IgM antibody used in selected cases
Human herpesvirus 6 and 7	–	2 (RL)	+	+	+	Roseola agent
Human immunodeficiency virus	+ (blood) (acid dissociation of immune complexes); not done in the United States	15 (5–28)	+	ND	+	Antibody proves infection unless passively acquired (maternal antibody gone by age 15 mo); culture not widely available; PCR definitive for early diagnosis in infant (detect RNA or DNA)
Human metapneumovirus	+	2	–	+	+	
Influenza virus	+ (respiratory secretions)	2 (2–14)	–	+	+	Antigen detection 40%–90% sensitive (varies with virus strain)
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus	–	–	–	+	RL	Can be isolated in suckling mice

(Continued)

Table 40–1. Diagnostic tests for viral infections. (Continued)

Agent	Rapid Antigen Detection (Specimen)	Tissue Culture Mean Days to Positive (Range)	Serology		PCR	Comments
			Acute	Paired		
Measles virus	+ (respiratory secretions)	–	+	+	+	Difficult to grow; IgM serology diagnostic
Mumps virus	–	> 5	+	+	+	IgM ELISA antibody may allow single-specimen diagnosis
Parvovirus B19	–	–	+	ND	+	Erythema infectiosum agent; IgM serology is often diagnostic, but may be positive for a prolonged period
Parainfluenza virus	+ (respiratory secretions)	2 (2–14)	–	+	+	
Rabies virus	+ (skin, conjunctiva, suspected animal source tissue biopsy)	–	+	+	CDC	Usually diagnosed by antigen detection
Respiratory syncytial virus	+ (respiratory secretions)	2 (2–21)	–	+	+	Rapid antigen detection; 90% sensitive; PCR has excellent sensitivity
Rhinovirus	–	4 (2–7)	–	–	+	Too many strains to type serologically
Rotavirus	+ (feces)	–	–	–	+	Rapid assay methods are usually reliable
Rubella virus	–	> 10	+	+	+	Recommended that paired sera be tested simultaneously
Varicella-zoster virus	+ (skin scraping)	3 (3–21) RL	+	+	+	
West Nile virus	–	RL	+	+	+	IgM antibody usually detected by 1 wk; PCR is useful only on CSF

CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; ELISA, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; RBC, red blood cell.
Plus signs signify commercially or widely available; **minus signs** signify not commercially available. **Note:** Results from some commercial laboratories are unreliable. **RL** indicates research laboratory only; **CDC:** Specific antibody titers or PCR available by arrangement with individual research laboratories or the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. **ND:** Not done.

common cold. These "cold viruses" are a common cause of lower respiratory tract infection in young children. There is no evidence that antibiotics will prevent complications of the common cold.

In 5%–10% of children, symptoms from these virus infections persist for more than 10 days. This overlap with the symptoms of bacterial sinusitis presents a difficult problem for clinicians, especially because colds can produce an abnormal computed tomography (CT) scan of the sinuses. Viruses that cause a minor illness in immunocompetent children, such as rhinoviruses, influenza, RSV, and metapneumovirus, can cause severe lower respiratory disease in immunologically or anatomically compromised children.

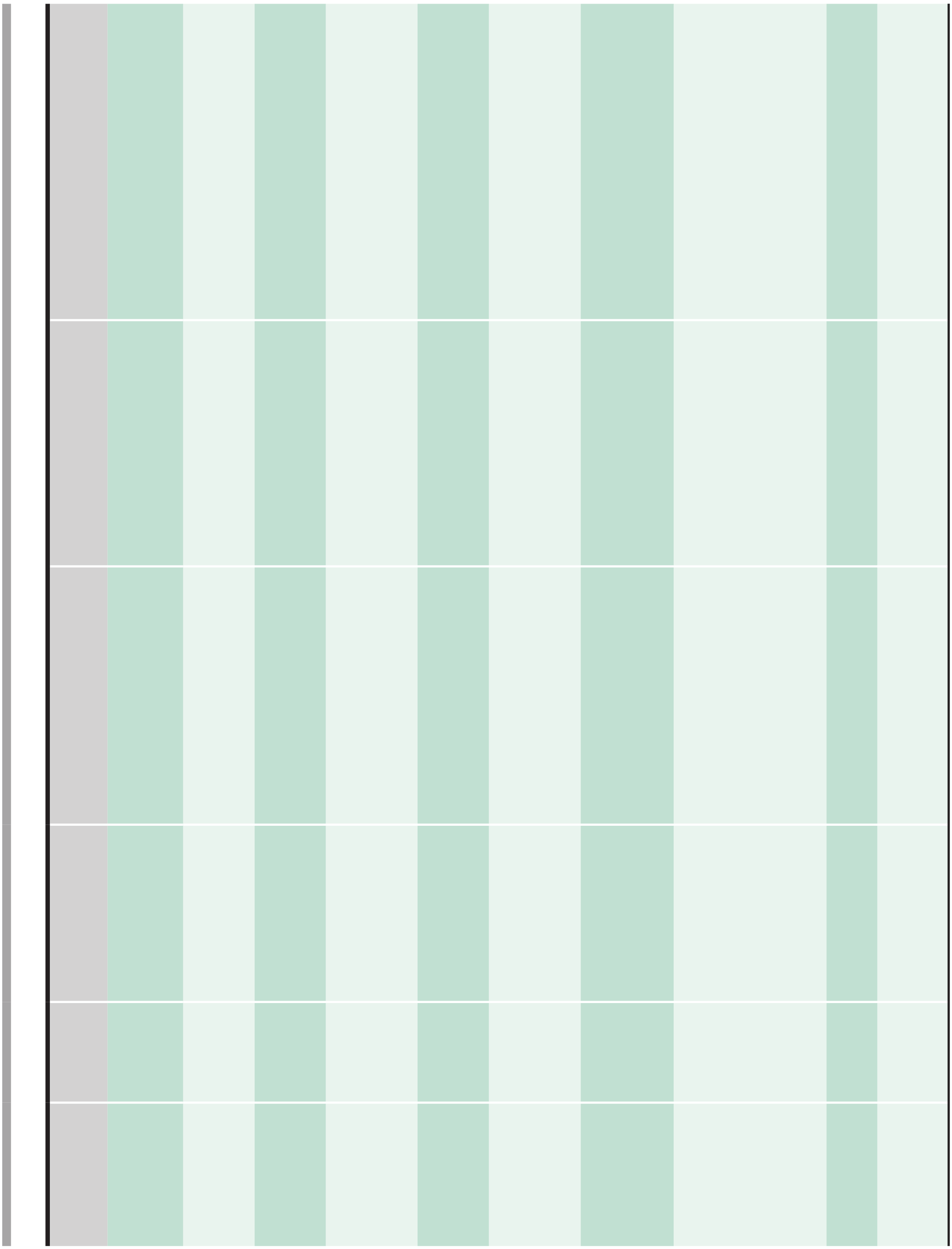
There is conflicting evidence that symptomatic relief for children can be achieved with oral antihistamines, decongestants, or cough suppressants. The FDA has recommended that such over-the-counter medications not be used in children less than 2 years old. Topical decongestants provide temporary improvement in nasal symptoms. Vitamin C has not been shown to have a significant preventative or therapeutic role. Zinc therapy for the common cold and prevention with zinc may be effective in adults, but there is great uncertainty about dosing and some adverse effects. Humidified air and garlic do not alter the course of colds.

Allan GM, Arroll B: Prevention and treatment of the common cold: making sense of the evidence. Canad Med Assoc J 2014;186(3):190 [PMID: 24468694].

Ballengee Cr, Turner RB: Supportive treatment for children with the common cold. Curr Opin Pediatr 2014;26(1):114 [PMID: 24310449].

Falsey A et al: Bacterial complications of respiratory tract viral illness: A comprehensive evaluation. J Infect Dis 2013;208:432 [PMID: 23661797].

Ruuskanen O et al: New aspects on human rhinovirus infections. Ped Infect Dis J 2013;32(5):553 [PMID: 23838659].



INFECTIONS DUE TO ADENOVIRUSES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Multiple syndromes, depending on the type of adenovirus.
- Upper respiratory infections; most notable is severe pharyngitis with tonsillitis and cervical adenopathy.
- Conjunctivitis.
- Pneumonia.
- Enteric adenoviruses cause mild diarrheal illnesses.
- Definitive diagnosis by antigen detection, PCR, or culture.

There are 57 types of adenoviruses, which account for 5%–15% of all respiratory illnesses in childhood, usually pharyngitis or tracheitis, but including 5% of childhood lower respiratory tract infections. Adenoviral infections, which are common early in life (most prior to age 2 years), occur 3–10 days after exposure to respiratory droplets or fomites. Enteric adenoviruses are an important cause of childhood diarrhea. Epidemic respiratory disease from adenoviruses occurs in winter and spring, especially in closed environments such as day care centers and institutions. Because of latent infection in lymphoid tissue, asymptomatic shedding from the respiratory or intestinal tract is common.

Specific Adenoviral Syndromes

A. Pharyngitis

Pharyngitis is the most common adenoviral disease, and the most common viral cause of severe pharyngitis in children. Fever and adenopathy are common. Tonsillitis may be exudative. Rhinitis and an influenza-like systemic illness may be present. Laryngotracheitis or bronchitis may accompany pharyngitis.

B. Pharyngoconjunctival Fever

Conjunctivitis may occur alone and be prolonged, but most often is associated with preauricular adenopathy, fever, pharyngitis, and cervical adenopathy. Foreign body sensation in the eye and other symptoms last less than a week. Lower respiratory symptoms are uncommon.

C. Epidemic Keratoconjunctivitis

Symptoms are severe conjunctivitis with punctate keratitis and occasionally visual impairment. A foreign body sensation, photophobia, and swelling of conjunctiva and eyelids are characteristic. Preauricular adenopathy and subconjunctival hemorrhage are common.

D. Pneumonia

Severe pneumonia may occur at all ages. It is especially common in young children (age < 3 years). Chest radiographs show bilateral peribronchial and patchy ground-glass interstitial infiltrates in the lower lobes. Symptoms persist for 2–4 weeks. Adenoviral pneumonia can be necrotizing and cause permanent lung damage, such as bronchiectasis and bronchiolitis obliterans. A pertussis-like syndrome with typical cough and lymphocytosis can occur with lower respiratory tract infection. A new variant of adenovirus serotype 14 can cause unusually severe, sometimes fatal pneumonia in children and adults.

E. Rash

A diffuse morbilliform (rarely petechial) rash resembling measles, rubella, or roseola may be present. Koplik spots are absent.

F. Diarrhea

Enteric adenoviruses (types 40 and 41) cause 3%–5% of cases of short-lived diarrhea in afebrile children, especially in those less than 4 years old.

G. Mesenteric Lymphadenitis

Fever and abdominal pain may mimic appendicitis. Pharyngitis is often associated. Adenovirus-induced adenopathy may be a factor in appendicitis and intussusception.

H. Other Syndromes

Immunosuppressed patients, including neonates, may develop severe or fatal pulmonary or gastrointestinal infections or multisystem disease. Hemorrhagic cystitis can be a serious problem in immunocompromised children. Other rare complications that can occur in the immunocompetent child include encephalitis, hepatitis, and myocarditis. Adenoviruses have been implicated in the syndrome of idiopathic myocardiopathy.

» Laboratory & Diagnostic Studies

Diagnosis can be made by conventional culture of conjunctival, respiratory, or stool specimens, but several days to weeks are required. Viral culture using the rapid culture technique with immunodiagnostic reagents detects adenovirus in 48 hours. Adenovirus infection can also be diagnosed using these reagents directly on respiratory

secretions. This is quicker, but less sensitive, than the culture methods. PCR is an important, relatively rapid and sensitive diagnostic method for adenovirus infections. Special cells are needed to isolate enteric adenoviruses. ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) tests rapidly detect enteric adenoviruses in diarrheal specimens. Respiratory adenovirus infections can be detected retrospectively by comparing acute and convalescent sera, but this is not helpful during an acute illness.

» Treatment

There is no specific treatment for adenovirus infections. Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) may be tried in immunocompromised patients with severe pneumonia. Adoptive T-cell transfer has shown promising results in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. There is anecdotal evidence of successful treatment of immunocompromised patients with cidofovir and, more recently, with brincidofovir, a cidofovir derivative with good oral bioavailability and less nephrotoxicity than the parent drug.

Lion T: Adenovirus infections in immune competent and immunocompromised patients. Clin Microbiol Rev 2014;27:441 [PMID: 24982316].

INFLUENZA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Fever, cough, pharyngitis, malaise, congestion.
- » Pneumonia.
- » Encephalitis.
- » Seasonal: late fall through mid-spring.
- » Detection of virus, viral antigens, or nucleic acid in respiratory secretions.

Symptomatic infections are common in children because they lack immunologic experience with influenza viruses. Infection rates in children are greater than in adults and are instrumental in initiating community outbreaks. Epidemics occur in fall and winter. Three main types of influenza viruses (A/H1N1, A/H3N2, B) cause most human epidemics, with antigenic drift ensuring a supply of susceptible hosts of all ages. In recent years, avian influenza A/H5N1 and A/H7N9 caused isolated human outbreaks in Asia that were associated with high rates of hospitalization and death. A swine-origin influenza A/H1N1 caused a human pandemic in 2009 and 2010 and has since circulated with seasonal periodicity. An influenza A/H3N2v of swine origin has also caused clusters of human infections in the last 5 years in the United States, commonly associated with exposure to pigs.

» Clinical Findings

Spread of influenza occurs by way of airborne respiratory secretions. The incubation period is 2–7 days.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Influenza infection in older children and adults produces a characteristic syndrome of sudden onset of high fever, severe myalgia, headache, and chills. These symptoms overshadow the associated coryza, pharyngitis, and cough. Usually absent are rash, marked conjunctivitis, adenopathy, exudative pharyngitis, and dehydrating enteritis. Fever, diarrhea, vomiting, and abdominal pain are common in young children. Infants may develop a sepsis-like illness and apnea. Chest examination is usually unremarkable. Unusual clinical findings include croup (most severe with type A influenza), exacerbation of asthma, myositis (especially calf muscles), myocarditis, parotitis, encephalopathy (distinct from Reye syndrome), nephritis, and a transient maculopapular rash. Acute illness lasts 2–5 days. Cough and fatigue may last several weeks. Viral shedding may persist for several weeks in young children.

B. Laboratory Findings

The leukocyte count is normal to low, with variable shift. Influenza infections may be more difficult to recognize in children than in adults even during epidemics, and therefore a specific laboratory test is highly recommended. The virus can be found in respiratory secretions by direct fluorescent antibody staining of nasopharyngeal epithelial cells, ELISA, optic immunoassay (OIA), and PCR. PCR has the highest sensitivity and specificity, close to 100%, and is rapidly becoming the preferred test. It can also be cultured within 3–7 days from pharyngeal swabs or throat washings. Many laboratories use the rapid culture technique by centrifuging specimens onto cultured cell layers and detecting viral antigen after 48 hours. Other body fluids or tissues (except lung) rarely yield the virus in culture and are more appropriately tested by PCR, which, due to its high sensitivity, can increase influenza detection in respiratory specimens. A late diagnosis may be made with paired serology, using hemagglutination inhibition assays.

C. Imaging

The chest radiograph is nonspecific; it may show hyperaeration, peribronchial thickening, diffuse interstitial infiltrates, or bronchopneumonia in severe cases. Hilar nodes are not enlarged. Pleural effusion is rare in uncomplicated influenza.

» Differential Diagnosis

The following may be considered: all other respiratory viruses, Mycoplasma pneumoniae or Chlamydia pneumoniae (longer incubation period, prolonged illness), streptococcal pharyngitis (pharyngeal exudate or petechiae, adenitis, no cough), bacterial sepsis (petechial or purpuric rash may occur), toxic shock syndrome (rash, hypotension), and rickettsial infections (rash, different season, insect exposure). High fever, the nature of preceding or concurrent illness in family members, and the presence of influenza in the community are distinguishing features from parainfluenza or RSV infections.

» Complications & Sequelae

Lower respiratory tract symptoms are most common in children younger than age 5 years. Hospitalization rates are highest in children younger than 2 years. Influenza can cause croup in these children. Secondary bacterial infections (classically staphylococcal) of the middle ear, sinuses, or lungs (pneumococcal was common in the swine-origin H1N1 pandemic of 2009) are common. Of the viral infections that precede Reye syndrome, varicella and influenza (usually type B) are most notable. During an influenza outbreak, ill children who develop protracted vomiting or irrational behavior should be evaluated for Reye syndrome. Influenza can also cause viral or postviral encephalitis, with cerebral symptoms much more prominent than those of the accompanying respiratory infection. Although the myositis is usually mild and resolves promptly, severe rhabdomyolysis and renal failure have been reported.

Children with underlying cardiopulmonary, metabolic, neuromuscular, or immunosuppressive disease may develop severe viral pneumonia. During the H1N1 pandemic, new high-risk conditions were described: obesity and the first 2 weeks of postpartum.

» Prevention

The trivalent and quadrivalent inactivated influenza vaccines are moderately protective in older children (see Chapter 10). Live attenuated influenza vaccines (LAIV) are usually more efficacious in children and are recommended for immunocompetent children 2 years of age or older. Widespread resistance to adamantanes of seasonal influenza A/H3N2 and H1N1 has made these drugs obsolete for the treatment and prevention of influenza. For prophylaxis oseltamivir is the most widely used agent (children < 15 kg, 30 mg daily; those 15–23 kg, 45 mg daily; those 23–40 kg, 60 mg daily; and those > 40 kg, 75 mg daily). Zanamivir (10 mg daily inhalations) can also be used in children older than age 5 years. Chemoprophylaxis should be considered during an epidemic for high-risk children who cannot be immunized or who have not yet developed immunity (about 6 weeks after primary vaccination or 2 weeks after a booster dose). For outbreak prophylaxis, therapy should be maintained for 2 weeks or more and for 1 week after the last case of influenza is diagnosed.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment consists of general support and management of pulmonary complications, especially bacterial superinfections. Antivirals are of benefit against seasonal influenza in immunocompetent hosts if begun within 48 hours after symptom onset. Treatment duration is 5 days and the doses are twice those used for prophylaxis (see earlier). Studies in immunocompromised patients during the 2009/2010 pandemic showed that oseltamivir was useful in this population even when initiated later than 2 days after the onset of disease. Peramivir, a neuraminidase inhibitor that is available for IV administration, is approved for treatment. New drugs, such as lananimivir, an inhaled neuraminidase inhibitor with a long half-life that allows its single-dose use, and nitazoxanide, a safe and well tolerated oral drug, that was originally introduced for anti-parasitic treatment, but has since shown wide spectrum antiviral activity, are also under consideration for influenza treatment and prophylaxis.

Recovery is usually complete unless severe cardiopulmonary or neurologic damage has occurred. Fatal cases occur in very young infants, immunodeficient and anatomically compromised children, pregnant women, including the first 2 weeks postpartum, and obese individuals.

Effective treatment or prophylaxis of influenza in children markedly reduces the incidence of acute otitis media and antibiotic usage during the flu season.

Grohskopf LA et al; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Prevention and control of influenza: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP)—United States, 2014–15 Influenza Season. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014 Aug 15;63(32):691–697 [PMID: 25121712].

PARAINFLUENZA (CROUP)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever, nasal congestion, sore throat, cough.
- Croup.
- Detection of live virus, antigens, or nucleic acid in respiratory secretions.

Parainfluenza viruses (types 1–4) are the most important cause of croup. Most infants are infected with type 3 within the first 3 years of life, often in the first year. Similar to type 3, type 4 has year-round circulation alternating years with type 3. Infection with types 1 and 2 is experienced gradually over the first 5 years of life, usually during outbreaks in the fall; most primary infections are symptomatic and frequently involve the lower respiratory tract. The concept that parainfluenza 4 is less pathogenic is currently being reevaluated.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical diseases include febrile upper respiratory infection (especially in older children with reexposure), laryngitis, tracheobronchitis, croup, and bronchiolitis (second most common cause after RSV). The relative incidence of these manifestations is type-specific. Parainfluenza viruses (especially type 1) cause 65% of cases of croup in young children, 25% of tracheobronchitis, and 50% of laryngitis. Croup is characterized by a barking cough, inspiratory stridor (especially when agitated), and hoarseness. Type 2 parainfluenza is more likely to cause bronchiolitis. Parainfluenza virus can cause pneumonia in infants and immunodeficient children, and causes particularly high mortality among stem cell recipients. Onset is acute. Most children are febrile. Symptoms of upper respiratory tract infection often accompany croup.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diagnosis is often based on clinical findings. These viruses can be identified by conventional or rapid culture techniques (48 hours), by direct immunofluorescence on nasopharyngeal epithelial cells in respiratory secretions (< 3 hours), or by PCR (< 24 hours).

» Differential Diagnosis

Parainfluenza-induced respiratory syndromes are difficult to distinguish from those caused by other respiratory viruses. Viral croup must be distinguished from epiglottitis caused by Haemophilus influenzae (abrupt onset, toxicity and high fever, drooling, dyspnea, little cough, left shift of blood smear, and a history of inadequate immunization).

» Treatment

No specific therapy or vaccine is available. Croup management is discussed in Chapter 19. Ribavirin is active in vitro and has been used in immunocompromised children, but its efficacy is unproved.

Frost HM et al: Epidemiology and clinical presentation of parainfluenza type 4 in children: a 3-year comparative study to parainfluenza types 1-3. J Clin Infect Dis 2014;209:695 [PMID: 24133181].

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Diffuse wheezing and tachypnea following upper respiratory symptoms in an infant (bronchiolitis).
- Epidemics in late fall to early spring (January–February peak).
- Hyperinflation on chest radiograph.
- Detection of RSV antigen or nucleic acid in nasal secretions.

» General Considerations

RSV is the most important cause of lower respiratory tract illness in young children, accounting for more than 70% of cases of bronchiolitis and 40% of cases of pneumonia. RSV is a ubiquitous virus of early childhood. Almost all children develop upper respiratory symptoms; of these 20%–30% will develop lower respiratory infection. Outbreaks occur annually, and attack rates are high; 60% of children are infected in the first year of life, and 90% by age 2 years. During peak season (cold weather in temperate climates), the clinical diagnosis of RSV infection in infants with bronchiolitis is as accurate as most laboratory tests. Despite the presence of serum antibody, reinfection is common. Two distinct genotypes can cocirculate or one may predominate in a community. Yearly shift in prevalence of these genotypes is a partial explanation for reinfection. However, reinfection generally causes only upper respiratory symptoms in anatomically normal children. Immunosuppressed patients may develop progressive severe pneumonia. Children with congenital heart disease with increased pulmonary blood flow, children with chronic lung disease (eg, cystic fibrosis), and premature

infants younger than age 6 months (especially when they have chronic lung disease of prematurity) are also at higher risk for severe illness. No vaccine is available.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Initial symptoms are those of upper respiratory infection. Low-grade fever may be present. The classic disease is bronchiolitis, characterized by diffuse wheezing, variable fever, cough, tachypnea, difficulty feeding, and, in severe cases, cyanosis. Hyperinflation, crackles, prolonged expiration, wheezing, and retractions are present. The liver and spleen may be palpable because of lung hyperinflation, but are not enlarged. The disease usually lasts 3–7 days in previously healthy children. Fever is present for 2–4 days; it does not correlate with pulmonary symptoms and may be absent during the height of lung involvement.

Apnea, poor feeding, and lethargy may be presenting manifestations, especially in premature infants, in the first few months of life. Apnea usually resolves after a few days, often being replaced by obvious signs of bronchiolitis.

RSV infection in older children is more likely to cause tracheobronchitis or upper respiratory tract infection. Exceptions are immunocompromised children and those with severe chronic lung or heart disease, who may have especially severe or prolonged primary infections and are subject to additional attacks of severe pneumonitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Rapid detection of RSV antigen in nasal or pulmonary secretions by fluorescent antibody staining or ELISA requires only several hours and is more than 90% sensitive and specific. Real-time PCR is more sensitive than antigen testing, but is more expensive. Often the PCR is multiplexed to detect four or more viral respiratory pathogens in the same assay. Rapid tissue culture methods take 48 hours and have comparable sensitivity, but require a carefully collected and handled specimen.

C. Imaging

Diffuse hyperinflation and peribronchiolar thickening are most common; atelectasis and patchy infiltrates also occur in uncomplicated infection, but pleural effusions are rare. Consolidation (usually subsegmental) occurs in 25% of children with lower respiratory tract disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

Although almost all cases of bronchiolitis are due to RSV during an epidemic, other viruses, including parainfluenza, rhinovirus, and especially human metapneumovirus, cannot be excluded. Mixed infections with other viruses, chlamydiae, or bacteria can occur. Wheezing may be due to asthma, a foreign body, or other airway obstruction. RSV infection may closely resemble chlamydial pneumonitis when fine crackles are present and fever and wheezing are not prominent. The two may also coexist. Cystic fibrosis may present with respiratory symptoms resembling RSV infection; a positive family history or failure to thrive associated with GI symptoms, hyponatremia or hypoalbuminemia should prompt a sweat chloride test. Pertussis should also be considered in this age group, especially if cough is prominent and the infant is younger than age 6 months. A markedly elevated leukocyte count should suggest bacterial superinfection (neutrophilia) or pertussis (lymphocytosis).

» Complications

RSV commonly infects the middle ear. Symptomatic otitis media is more likely when secondary bacterial infection is present (usually due to pneumococci or H influenzae). This is the most common complication (10%–20%) of RSV infection. Bacterial pneumonia complicates only 0.5%–1% of hospitalized patients. Sudden exacerbations of fever and leukocytosis should suggest bacterial infection. Respiratory failure or apnea may require mechanical ventilation, but occurs in less than 2% of hospitalized previously healthy full-term infants. Cardiac failure may occur as a complication of pulmonary disease or myocarditis. RSV commonly causes exacerbations of asthma. Nosocomial RSV infection is so common during outbreaks that elective hospitalization or surgery, especially for those with underlying illness, should be postponed. Well-designed hospital programs to prevent nosocomial spread are imperative (see the next section).

» Prevention & Treatment

Children who are very hypoxic or cannot feed because of respiratory distress must be hospitalized and given humidified oxygen as directed by oxygen saturation, and given tube or intravenous feedings. Antibiotics, decongestants, and expectorants are of no value in routine infections. RSV-infected children should be kept in respiratory isolation. Cohorting ill infants in respiratory isolation during peak season (with or without rapid diagnostic attempts) and emphasizing good hand washing may greatly decrease nosocomial transmission.

The utility of bronchodilator therapy alone has not been consistently demonstrated. Often a trial of bronchodilator therapy is given to determine response and is subsequently discontinued if there is no improvement. Racemic epinephrine occasionally works when β-agonists fail. This therapeutic trial should only be undertaken in a hospital setting

and care taken to observe children for an extended period after a positive response. The use of corticosteroids is also controversial in RSV bronchiolitis without complicating features such as asthma and chronic lung disease of prematurity. A meta-analysis of numerous studies of corticosteroid therapy indicated a significant effect on hospital stay, especially in those most ill at the time of treatment, but use of a single dose of corticosteroids in an outpatient setting had no lasting effect on respiratory status and did not prevent hospitalization. The combined use of racemic epinephrine and 5 days of oral dexamethasone significantly reduced hospitalization in one trial, but needs more evaluation before it can be recommended.

Ribavirin is the only licensed antiviral therapy used for RSV infection. It is given by continuous aerosolization. It is rarely used in infants without significant anatomic or immunologic defects. At best, there is a very modest effect on disease severity in immunocompetent infants with no underlying anatomic abnormality. Even in high-risk infants, a favorable clinical response to ribavirin therapy was not demonstrated in several studies, although some data suggest that it might be more efficacious if initiated early in the illness. Nevertheless, ribavirin is sometimes used in severely ill children who are immunologically or anatomically compromised and in those with severe cardiac disease.

Monthly intramuscular administration of humanized RSV monoclonal antibody is now recommended to prevent severe disease in selected high-risk patients during epidemic periods. Monthly administration should be considered during the RSV season for high-risk children (described in Chapter 10). Use of passive immunization for immunocompromised children is logical but not established. RSV antibody is not effective for treatment of established infection.

» Prognosis

Although mild bronchiolitis does not produce long-term problems, 30%–40% of patients hospitalized with this infection will wheeze later in childhood, and RSV infection in infancy may be an important precursor to asthma. Chronic restrictive lung disease and bronchiolitis obliterans are rare sequelae.

Geevarghese B, Simoes EA: Antibodies for prevention and treatment of respiratory syncytial virus infections in children. Antivir Ther 2012;17(1 Pt B):201 [PMID: 22311607].

Hall CB: The burgeoning burden of respiratory syncytial virus among children. Infect Disord Drug Targets 2012;12(2):92 [PMID: 22335498].

Krilov LR: Respiratory syncytial virus disease: update on treatment and prevention. Expert Rev Antiinfect Ther 2011;9(1): 27–32 [PMID: 21171875].

HUMAN METAPNEUMOVIRUS INFECTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cough, coryza, sore throat.
- Bronchiolitis.
- Detection of viral antigens or nucleic acid in respiratory secretions.

» General Considerations

Human metapneumovirus (hMPV) is a common agent of respiratory tract infections that is very similar to RSV in epidemiologic and clinical characteristics. Like RSV, parainfluenza, mumps, and measles, hMPV belongs to the paramyxovirus family. Humans are its only known reservoir. Seroepidemiologic surveys indicate that the virus has worldwide distribution. More than 90% of children contract hMPV infection by age 5 years, typically during late autumn through early spring outbreaks. hMPV accounts for 15%–25% of the cases of bronchiolitis and pneumonia in children younger than 2 years. Older children and adults can also develop symptomatic infection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The most common symptoms are fever, cough, rhinorrhea, and sore throat. Bronchiolitis and pneumonia occur in 40%–70% of the children who acquire hMPV before the age of 2 years. Asymptomatic infection is uncommon. Other manifestations include otitis, conjunctivitis, diarrhea, and myalgia. Acute wheezing has been associated with hMPV in children of all ages, raising the possibility that this virus, like RSV, might trigger reactive airway disease. Dual infection with hMPV and RSV or other respiratory viruses seems to be a common occurrence and may increase morbidity and mortality.

B. Laboratory Findings

The virus has very selective tissue culture tropism, which accounts for its late discovery in spite of its presence in archived specimens from the mid-1950s. The preferred method of diagnosis is PCR performed on respiratory specimens. Rapid shell vial culture is an acceptable, albeit less sensitive, alternative. Antibody tests are available, but are most appropriately used for epidemiologic studies.

C. Imaging

Lower respiratory tract infection frequently shows hyperinflation and patchy pneumonitis on chest radiographs.

» Treatment & Prognosis

No antiviral therapy is available to treat hMPV. Ribavirin has in vitro activity against human metapneumovirus, but there are no data to support its therapeutic value. Children with lower respiratory tract disease may require hospitalization and ventilatory support, but less frequently than with RSV-associated bronchiolitis. Duration of hospitalization in hMPV is typically shorter than in RSV.

Edwards KM et al: Burden of human metapneumovirus infection in young children. N Engl J Med 2013;368:633 [PMID: 23406028].

Feuillet F, Lina B, Rosa-Calatrava M, Boivin G: Ten years of human metapneumovirus research. J Clin Virol 2012;53(2):97 [PMID: 22074934].

Kroll JL, Weinberg A: Human metapneumovirs. Sem Respir Crit Care Med 2011;32(4):447 [PMID: 21858749].

° INFECTIONS DUE TO ENTEROVIRUSES AND PARECHOVIRUSES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute febrile illness with headache and sore throat.
- Summer–fall epidemics.
- Other common features: rash, nonexudative pharyngitis.
- Common cause of aseptic meningitis.
- Complications: myocarditis, neurologic damage, life-threatening illness in newborns.

Enteroviruses (EV) are a major cause of acute febrile illness in young children. They belong to the family of picornaviruses ("small") and despite having similar nucleic acid and protein components, antigenically have been divided into four groups: polioviruses (PV), coxsackieviruses A and B, and echoviruses. Their common RNA sequences and group antigens have led to diagnostic tests for viral nucleic acid and proteins. A PCR assay is available in many medical centers as a one-step test with results in a few hours. If included in a respiratory panel PCR, cross-reactivity with rhinoviruses can be expected. Viral cultures are more specific but may take 2–5 days. Therefore, for cases of meningoencephalitis and severe unexplained illness in neonates PCR is now the diagnostic method of choice.

Parechoviruses (PeV), also picornaviruses, some formerly considered echoviruses 22 and 23. They are now recognized as responsible for severe infections in young children (sepsis-like, meningitis). Some of the 15 types of parechoviruses infect almost every child before the age of 2 years; others before age 5 years.

Transmission of EV and PeV is fecal-oral or from upper respiratory secretions. Multiple enteroviruses circulate in the community at any one time; summer–fall outbreaks are common in temperate climates, but infections are seen year-round. After poliovirus, coxsackie B virus is most virulent, followed by echovirus. Neurologic, cardiac, and overwhelming neonatal infections are the most severe forms of illness.

ACUTE FEBRILE ILLNESS

Accompanied by nonspecific upper respiratory or enteric symptoms, the sudden onset of fever and irritability in infants or young children is often enteroviral, especially in late summer and fall. More than 90% of enteroviral infections are not distinctive. Occasionally a petechial rash is seen; more often a diffuse maculopapular or morbilliform eruption (often prominent on palms and soles) occurs on the second to fourth day of fever. Rapid recovery is the rule. More than one febrile enteroviral illness can occur in the same patient in one season. The leukocyte count is usually normal. Infants, because of fever and irritability, may undergo an evaluation for sepsis or meningitis and be hospitalized. Approximately half of these infants have aseptic meningitis. In the summer months enterovirus infection is more likely than human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6) to cause an acute medical visit for fever. Duration of illness is 4–5 days.

Romero JR, Selvarangan R: The human parechoviruses: an overview. Adv Pediatr 2011;58(1):65 [PMID: 21736976].

RESPIRATORY TRACT ILLNESSES

1. Acute Febrile Pharyngitis

Most common in older children, they will often complain of headache, sore throat, myalgia, and abdominal discomfort. The usual duration is 3–4 days. Vesicles or papules may be seen in the pharynx without exudate. Occasionally, enteroviruses are the cause of croup, bronchitis, or pneumonia. They may also exacerbate asthma as seen with the recent outbreaks of EV68.

2. Herpangina

Herpangina is characterized by an acute onset of fever and posterior pharyngeal grayish white vesicles that quickly form ulcers (< 20 in number), linearly along the posterior palate, uvula, and tonsillar pillars. Bilateral faucial ulcers may also be seen. Dysphagia, drooling, vomiting, abdominal pain, and anorexia also occur and, rarely, parotitis or vaginal ulcers. Symptoms disappear in 4–5 days. Coxsackie A viruses cause epidemics; coxsackie B viruses and echoviruses cause sporadic cases.

The differential diagnosis includes primary herpes simplex gingivostomatitis (ulcers are more prominent anteriorly, and gingivitis is present), aphthous stomatitis (fever absent, recurrent episodes, anterior lesions), trauma, hand-foot-and-mouth disease (see discussion in section Rashes [including Hand-Foot-and-Mouth Disease]), and Vincent angina (painful gingivitis spreading from the gum line; older child; underlying dental disease). If the enanthem is missed, tonsillitis might be incorrectly diagnosed.

3. Acute Lymphonodular Pharyngitis

Coxsackievirus A10 has been associated with a febrile pharyngitis characterized by nonulcerative yellow-white posterior pharyngeal papules in the same distribution as herpangina. The duration is 1–2 weeks; therapy is supportive.

4. Pleurodynia (Bornholm Disease, Epidemic Myalgia)

Caused by coxsackie B virus (epidemic form) or many nonpolio enteroviruses (sporadic form), pleurodynia is associated with an abrupt onset of unilateral or bilateral spasmodic pain of variable intensity over the lower ribs or upper abdomen. Associated symptoms include headache, fever, vomiting, myalgias, and abdominal and neck pain. Physical findings include fever, chest muscle tenderness, decreased thoracic excursion, and occasionally a friction rub. The chest radiograph is normal. Hematologic tests are nondiagnostic. The illness generally lasts less than 1 week.

This is a disease of muscles, but the differential diagnosis includes bacterial pneumonia, bacterial and tuberculous effusion, and endemic fungal infections (all excluded radiographically and by auscultation), costochondritis (no fever or other symptoms), and a variety of abdominal problems, especially those causing diaphragmatic irritation.

There is no specific therapy. Potent analgesic agents and chest splinting alleviate the pain.

Tagarakis GI et al: Bornholm disease—a pediatric clinical entity that can alert a thoracic surgeon. J Paed Child Health 2011;47(4):242 [PMID: 21501275].

RASHES (INCLUDING HAND-FOOT-AND-MOUTH DISEASE)

The EV rash can be macular, maculopapular, urticarial, scarlatiniform, petechial, or vesicular. One of the most characteristic is that of hand-foot-and-mouth disease (caused by coxsackieviruses, especially types A5, A10, and A16), in which vesicles or red papules are found on the tongue, oral mucosa, hands, and feet. Often they appear near the nails and on the heels and may last up to 1-2 weeks. Associated fever, sore throat, and malaise are mild. The rash may appear when fever abates, simulating roseola.

Cardiac Involvement

Myocarditis and pericarditis can be caused by a number of nonpolio enteroviruses, particularly type B coxsackieviruses. Most commonly, upper respiratory symptoms are followed by substernal pain, dyspnea, and exercise intolerance. A friction rub or gallop may be detected. Ultrasound will define ventricular dysfunction or pericardial effusion, and electrocardiography may show pericarditis or ventricular irritability. Creatine phosphokinase may be elevated and troponin (hs-TnT) is highly sensitive for acute myocarditis. The disease may be mild or fatal; most children recover completely. In infants, other organs may be involved at the same time; in older patients, cardiac disease is usually the sole manifestation (see Chapter 20 for therapy). Enteroviral RNA is present in cardiac tissue in some cases of dilated cardiomyopathy or myocarditis; the significance of this finding is unknown. Epidemics of EV 71, which occur in Asia, as well as sporadic cases in the United States, are associated with severe left ventricular dysfunction and pulmonary edema following typical mucocutaneous manifestations of enterovirus infection. Enterovirus 71 also can cause isolated severe neurologic disease or neurologic disease in combination with myocardial disease.

Badran SA, Midgley S, Andersen P, Bottiger B: Clinical and virological features of enterovirus 71 infection in Denmark, 2005–2008. Scand J Infect Dis 2011;43(8):642 [PMID: 21526904].

Ooi MH et al: Clinical features, diagnosis, and management of enterovirus 71. Lancet Neurol 2010;9(11):1097 [PMID: 20965438].

Simpson KE, Canter CE: Acute myocarditis in children. Expert Opin Cardiovasc Ther 2011;9(6):771 [PMID: 21714608].

Severe Neonatal Infection

Neonatal EV infection is usually systemic and severe in otherwise normal newborns. Clinical manifestations include fever, rash, pneumonitis, meningo-encephalitis, hepatitis, gastroenteritis, myocarditis, pancreatitis, and myositis. Infected transplacentally or nosocomially, these infants are usually 1 week old, septic, with cyanosis, dyspnea, and seizures. The differential diagnosis includes bacterial and herpes simplex infections, necrotizing enterocolitis, other causes of heart or liver failure, and metabolic diseases. Diagnosis is suggested by the finding of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) mononuclear pleocytosis and confirmed by detection of EV RNA in CSF, blood, urine, stool, or pharynx. IVIG is often administered, but its value is still uncertain. Some investigational antivirals (eg, pleconaril, pocapavir) have shown potential promise. Passively acquired maternal antibody may protect newborns from severe disease. Parechovirus

infection of neonates is similar to EV but occurs in older neonates, with almost half of infected newborns requiring ICU management. Sepsis-like syndrome and meningitis are the most common presentations with normal inflammatory markers.

Tebruegge M, Curtis N: Enterovirus infections in neonates. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 2009;14:222 [PMID: 19303380].

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM ILLNESSES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Partial immunization or underlying immune deficiency.
- Headache, fever, acute muscle weakness.
- Aseptic meningitis.
- Asymmetrical, flaccid paralysis; muscle tenderness and hyperesthesia; intact sensation; late atrophy.

1. Poliomyelitis and Nonpolio Acute Flaccid Paralysis

General Considerations

Poliovirus infection is asymptomatic in 90%–95% of cases; presents as acute febrile illness in about 5% of cases, and aseptic meningitis, with or without paralysis in 1%–3%. Polio has been eliminated with the use of oral polio vaccines (OPV) in > 99% of the population with the only endemic areas now in Nigeria, Pakistan, and Afghanistan. Most older children and adults are now protected due to vaccination or previous silent infection. Occasional cases in the United States have occurred in unprotected travelers to foreign countries or in populations with low polio vaccine coverage who come in contact with visitors from endemic areas. Vaccine-associated paralysis (VAPP) is a rare complication of OPV as a result of reversion of the vaccine virus. The incidence of vaccine-associated paralytic poliomyelitis in the United States was 1:750,000 and 1:2.4 million doses for the first and second dose of OPV, respectively and was most severe in children with hypogammaglobulinemia. Vaccine-derived polio viruses (cVDPV) can also circulate in populations with low immunity and cause outbreaks of acute flaccid paralysis (AFP) similar to wild type polio. Since 2000, inactivated poliovirus vaccine (IPV) has been the only polio vaccine in use in the United States, and is now being integrated in all countries worldwide to prevent VAPP and cVDPV (see Chapter 10).

Other nonpolio EV can present as AFP, including EV71 in Asia, and most recently an outbreak in the United States was linked to EV68.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The initial symptoms are fever, myalgia, sore throat, and headache for 2–6 days. In less than 5% of infected children, several symptom-free days are followed by recurrent fever and signs of aseptic meningitis: headache, stiff neck, nuchal rigidity, and nausea. Mild cases resolve completely. In only 1%–2% of those infected, high fever, severe myalgia, and anxiety herald progression to loss of reflexes and subsequent flaccid paralysis. Sensation remains intact, although hyperesthesia of skin overlying paralyzed muscles is common and pathognomonic.

Paralysis is usually asymmetrical. Proximal limb muscles are more often involved than distal, and lower limb involvement is more common than upper. Bulbar involvement affects swallowing, speech, and cardiorespiratory function and accounts for most deaths. Bladder distention and marked constipation characteristically accompany lower limb paralysis. Paralysis is usually complete by the time the temperature normalizes. Atrophy is usually apparent by 4–8 weeks. Most improvement of muscle paralysis occurs within 6 months.

B. Laboratory Findings

In patients with meningeal symptoms, the CSF shows a lymphocytic pleocytosis and a normal glucose with mildly elevated protein concentration. Poliovirus is easy to grow in cell culture and can be readily differentiated from other enteroviruses. It is rarely isolated from spinal fluid but is often present in the throat and stool for several weeks following infection. PCR is now the method of choice for detection. CDC can differentiate wild from attenuated vaccine isolates.

Differential Diagnosis

Aseptic meningitis due to poliovirus is indistinguishable from that due to other viruses. Paralytic disease in the United States is usually due to nonpolio enteroviruses. Polio may resemble Guillain-Barré syndrome (minimal sensory loss, ascending symmetrical loss of function; minimal pleocytosis, high protein concentration in spinal fluid), polyneuritis (sensory loss), pseudoparalysis due to bone or joint problems (eg, trauma, infection), botulism, or tick paralysis. West Nile virus infection can present like AFP in children.

Complications

Complications are the result of permanent destruction of anterior horn cells and paralysis. Respiratory, pharyngeal, bladder, and bowel malfunction are most critical. Death

is usually consequence of respiratory dysfunction. Limbs injured near the time of infection, such as by intramuscular injections, excessive prior use, or trauma, tend to be most severely involved and have the worst prognosis for recovery (provocation paralysis).

» Treatment & Prognosis

Therapy is supportive, although some antivirals are under investigation (eg, pocapavir). Bed rest, fever and pain control (heat therapy is helpful), and careful attention to progression of weakness (particularly of respiratory muscles) are important. No intramuscular injections should be given during the acute phase. Intubation or tracheostomy for secretion control and ventilation, enteral feeding and catheter drainage of the bladder may be needed. Disease is worse in adults and pregnant women. Postpolio muscular atrophy occurs in 30%–40% of paralyzed limbs 20–30 years later, characterized by increasing weakness and fasciculations in previously affected, partially recovered limbs.

2. Nonpolio Viral Meningitis

Nonpolio enteroviruses cause over 80% of cases of aseptic meningitis at all ages, especially in the summer and fall. Nosocomial outbreaks also occur.

» Clinical Findings

The usual EV incubation period is 4–6 days. Most EV infections are subclinical or not associated with central nervous system (CNS) symptoms, therefore a history of sick contact is unusual. Neonates may acquire infection from maternal blood, vaginal secretions, or feces at birth; occasionally the mother has had a febrile illness just prior to delivery.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Incidence is much greater in children younger than age 1 year and CSF pleocytosis is more frequent in very young children undergoing septic work up during the summer and fall. Onset is usually acute with fever, marked irritability, and lethargy in infants. Older children also describe frontal headache, photophobia, and myalgia. Abdominal pain, diarrhea, and projectile vomiting may occur. The incidence of rash varies with the infecting strain. If rash occurs, it is usually seen after several days of illness and is diffuse, macular or maculopapular, occasionally petechial, but not purpuric. Oropharyngeal vesicles and rash on the palms and soles suggest an enterovirus. The anterior fontanel may be full and meningismus present. The illness may be biphasic, with nonspecific symptoms and signs preceding those related to the CNS. In older children, meningeal signs are more frequent, but seizures are unusual, and focal neurologic findings, which are rare, should lead to a search for an alternative cause. Frank encephalitis, which is uncommon at any age, occurs most often in neonates. Because of the overall frequency of enteroviral disease in children, 5%–10% of all cases of encephalitis of proved viral origin are caused by enteroviruses. Enteroviruses tend to cause less severe encephalitis than other viral agents. However, parechoviruses, which have recently been demonstrated to be a significant cause of aseptic meningitis, sometimes cause white matter changes.

Enterovirus 71 infections that begin with typical mucocutaneous manifestations of enteroviruses can be complicated by severe brainstem encephalitis and polio-like flaccid paralysis. Outbreaks of respiratory disease with meningitis and acute paralysis due to EV68 have occurred in California and Colorado. Enterovirus 70 outbreaks are characterized by hemorrhagic conjunctivitis together with paralytic poliomyelitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Blood leukocyte counts are often normal. The spinal fluid leukocyte count is 100–1000/μL with polymorphonuclear cells predominating early and shifting to mononuclear cells within 8–36 hours. In about 95% of cases, spinal fluid parameters include a total leukocyte count less than 3000/μL, protein less than 80 mg/dL, and glucose more than 60% of serum values. Marked deviation from any of these findings should prompt consideration of another diagnosis (see following section). The syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone may occur, but is rarely clinically significant.

Culture of CSF may yield an enterovirus within a few days (< 70%), but EV PCR is the most useful diagnostic method in many centers (sensitivity > 90%) and can give an answer within 24 hours. Parechoviruses will be detected by most PCR methods, but will be identified as "enterovirus." Virus may be detected even with no CSF pleocytosis. Detection of an enterovirus from throat or stool suggests, but does not prove, enteroviral meningitis. Vaccine-derived poliovirus present in feces in infants being evaluated for aseptic meningitis may confuse the diagnosis, but history of travel or exposure to OPV should help.

C. Imaging

Cerebral imaging is not often indicated; if done, it is usually normal. Subdural effusions, infarcts, edema, or focal abnormalities seen in bacterial meningitis are absent except for the rare case of focal encephalitis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Enteroviral infections account for up to 92% of the cases of aseptic meningitis in which an etiologic agent is identified, especially in the summer and fall. Other causative viruses are mosquito-borne (flavivirus, bunyavirus) and are part of

the investigation of encephalitis, but many of them are more likely to cause isolated meningitis. Primary herpes simplex infection can cause aseptic meningitis in adolescents who have a genital herpes infection. In neonates, early herpes simplex meningoencephalitis may mimic enteroviral disease (see section Infections due to Herpesviruses) and if suspected urgent antiviral therapy is recommended. Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus causes meningitis in children in contact with rodents (pet or environmental exposure). Meningitis occurs in some patients at the time of infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Other causes of aseptic meningitis that may resemble enteroviral infection include partially treated bacterial meningitis (recent antibiotic treatment, CSF parameters resembling those seen in bacterial disease and bacterial antigen sometimes present); bacterial parameningeal foci such as brain abscess, subdural empyema, mastoiditis (predisposing factors, lower CSF glucose level, focal neurologic signs, and characteristic imaging); tumors or cysts (malignant cells on cytologic examination, history of neurologic symptoms, higher protein or lower glucose levels in CSF); trauma (presence, without exception, of red blood cells, which may be erroneously assumed to be due to traumatic lumbar puncture, but are crenated and fail to clear); vasculitis (other systemic or neurologic signs, found in older children); tuberculous or fungal meningitis (see Chapters 42 and 43); cysticercosis; para and postinfectious encephalopathies (M pneumoniae, cat-scratch disease, respiratory viruses [especially influenza]); Lyme disease; leptospirosis; rickettsial diseases; and acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis.

» Prevention & Treatment

No specific antiviral therapy exists. Infants are usually hospitalized, isolated, and treated with fluids and antipyretics. Moderately to severely ill infants are given empiric antibiotics for bacterial pathogens until cultures are negative for 48–72 hours. PCR assay for enteroviruses if available may decrease hospital stay and avoid or shorten use of antibiotics. In children and infants at low risk of serious bacterial infection, antibiotics may be withheld and the child observed until PCR results are available. The illness usually lasts less than 1 week. Codeine compounds or other strong analgesics may be needed. With clinical deterioration, repeat lumbar puncture, cerebral imaging, neurologic consultation, and more aggressive diagnostic tests should be considered. Herpesvirus encephalitis is an important consideration in such cases, particularly in infants younger than age 1 month, and often warrants empiric acyclovir until HSV infection can be ruled out.

» Prognosis

In general, enteroviral meningitis has no significant short-term neurologic or developmental sequelae. Developmental delay may follow severe neonatal infections. Unlike mumps, enterovirus infections rarely cause hearing loss.

Poh CL, Tan EL: Detection of enteroviruses from clinical specimens. Meth Molecular Biol 2011;665:65 [PMID: 21116796].
Rhoades RE et al: Enterovirus infections of the central nervous system. Virology 2011;411(2):288 [PMID: 21251690].

INFECTIONS DUE TO HERPESVIRUSES

HERPES SIMPLEX INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Grouped vesicles on an erythematous base, typically in or around the mouth or genitals.
- Tender regional adenopathy is common with primary infection.
- Fever and malaise with primary infection.
- Recurrent episodes in many patients.

» General Considerations

There are two types of herpes simplex virus (HSV). Type 1 (HSV-1) causes most cases of oral, skin, and cerebral disease in older children, while both types are now equally common as causes of genital and congenital HSV infections. Latent infection is routinely established in sensory ganglia during primary infection. Recurrences may be spontaneous or induced by external events (eg, fever, menstruation, or sunlight) or immunosuppression. Transmission is by direct contact with infected secretions.

Primary infection with HSV-1 often occurs early in childhood by contact with infected oral secretions of playmates or caretakers, with a second peak of infection later in life as a sexually transmitted disease. Primary infection with HSV-1 is subclinical in 80% of cases and causes gingivostomatitis or genital disease in the remainder. Type 2 (HSV-2), which is transmitted sexually, is also usually (65%) subclinical or produces mild, nonspecific symptoms. Infection with one type of HSV may prevent or attenuate clinically apparent infection with the other type, but individuals can be infected at different times with both HSV-1 and HSV-2. Recurrent episodes are due to reactivation of latent HSV.

The source of primary infection is usually an asymptomatic excreter. Most previously infected individuals shed HSV at irregular intervals. At any one time (point prevalence), more than 5% of seropositive adults excrete HSV-1 in the saliva; the percentage is higher in recently infected children, and detection of viral DNA exceeds 12%. HSV-2 shedding

in genital secretions occurs with a similar or higher point prevalence exceeding 15%, depending on the method of detection (viral isolation vs PCR) and the interval since the initial infection. A history of contact with an active HSV infection is unusual.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Gingivostomatitis—High fever, irritability, and drooling occur in infants. Multiple oral ulcers are seen on the tongue and on the buccal and gingival mucosa, occasionally extending to the pharynx. Pharyngeal ulcers may predominate in older children and adolescents. Diffusely swollen red gums that are friable and bleed easily are typical. Cervical nodes are swollen and tender. Duration is 7–14 days. Herpangina, aphthous stomatitis, thrush, and Vincent angina should be excluded.

2. Vulvovaginitis or urethritis (See Chapter 44)—Genital herpes (especially HSV-2) in a prepubertal child should suggest sexual abuse. Vesicles or painful ulcers on the vulva, vagina, or penis and tender adenopathy are typical. Systemic symptoms (fever, flu-like illness, myalgia) are common with the initial episode. Painful urination is frequent, especially in females. Primary infection lasts 10–14 days before healing. Lesions may resemble trauma, syphilis (ulcers are painless), or chancroid (ulcers are painful and nodes are erythematous and fluctuant) in the adolescent, and bullous impetigo or severe chemical irritation in younger children.

3. Cutaneous infections—Direct inoculation onto cuts or abrasions may produce localized vesicles or ulcers. A deep HSV infection on the finger (called herpetic whitlow) may be mistaken for a bacterial felon or paronychia; surgical drainage is of no value and is contraindicated. HSV infection of eczematous skin may result in extensive areas of vesicles and shallow ulcers (eczema herpeticum), which may be mistaken for impetigo or varicella.

4. Recurrent mucocutaneous infection—Recurrent oral shedding is asymptomatic. Perioral recurrences often begin with a prodrome of tingling or burning limited to the vermillion border, followed by vesiculation, scabbing, and crusting around the lips over 3–5 days. Recurrent intraoral lesions are rare. Fever, adenopathy, and other symptoms are absent. Recurrent cutaneous herpes most closely resembles impetigo, but the latter is often outside the perinasal and perioral region, recurs infrequently in the same area of skin, responds to antibiotics, yields a positive result on Gram stain, and Streptococcus pyogenes or Staphylococcus aureus can be isolated. Recurrent genital disease is common after the initial infection with HSV-2. Recurrent infection is shorter (5–7 days) and milder (mean, four lesions) than primary infection and is not associated with systemic symptoms. Recurrent genital disease, which may also recur on the thighs and buttocks, is also preceded by a cutaneous sensory prodrome. Recurrence of HSV-1 in the genital region is much less frequent than are HSV-2 recurrences.

5. Keratoconjunctivitis—Keratoconjunctivitis may be part of a primary infection due to spread from infected saliva. Most cases are caused by reactivation of virus latent in the ciliary ganglion. Keratoconjunctivitis produces photophobia, pain, and conjunctival irritation. Dendritic corneal ulcers may be demonstrable with fluorescein staining. Stromal invasion may occur. Corticosteroids should never be used for unilateral keratitis without ophthalmologic consultation. Other causes of these symptoms include trauma, bacterial infections, and other viral infections (especially adenovirus if pharyngitis is present; bilateral involvement makes HSV unlikely) (see Chapter 16).

6. Encephalitis—Although unusual in infants outside the neonatal period, encephalitis may occur at any age, usually without cutaneous herpes lesions. In older children, HSV encephalitis can follow a primary infection, but usually represents reactivation of latent virus. HSV is the most common identifiable cause of sporadic severe encephalitis. Diagnosis of HSV encephalitis is very important because it can be treated with specific antiviral therapy. Acute onset is associated with fever, headache, behavioral changes, and focal neurologic deficits and/or focal seizures. Mononuclear pleocytosis is typically present along with an elevated protein concentration. In older children, hypodense areas with a medial and inferior temporal lobe predilection are seen on CT scan, especially after 3–5 days, but the findings in infants may be more diffuse. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is more sensitive and is positive sooner. Periodic focal epileptiform discharges are seen on electroencephalograms, but are not diagnostic of HSV infection. Viral cultures of CSF are rarely positive. The PCR assay to detect HSV DNA in CSF is a sensitive and specific rapid test. Without early antiviral therapy, the prognosis is poor. The differential diagnosis includes mosquito-borne and other viral encephalitides, parainfectious and postinfectious encephalopathy, brain abscess, acute demyelinating syndromes, and bacterial meningoencephalitis.

7. Neonatal infections—Infection is occasionally acquired by ascending spread prior to delivery (< 5% of cases), but most often occurs at the time of vaginal delivery from a mother with genital infection. Eight to fifteen percent of HSV-2–seropositive pregnant women at delivery have HSV-2 detected by PCR in the genital tract. However, in most cases this represents reactivation of infection acquired in the distant past. HSV-1 has now become a common cause of neonatal HSV infection. Neonatal infection is rarely acquired from mothers with reactivation disease, whereas

it is frequently acquired during delivery of mothers with current or recent primary infection. This is because transplacentally acquired antibody is usually protective. Occasionally, the infection is acquired in the postpartum period from oral secretions of family members or hospital personnel. A history of genital herpes in the mother may be absent. Within a few days and up to 6 weeks (most often within 4 weeks), skin vesicles appear (especially at sites of trauma, such as where scalp monitors were placed). Some infants (45%) have infection limited to the skin, eye, or mouth. Other infants are acutely ill, presenting with jaundice, shock, bleeding, or respiratory distress (20%). Some infants appear well initially, but dissemination of the infection to the brain or other organs becomes evident during the ensuing week. HSV infection (and empiric therapy) should be strongly considered in newborns with the sepsis syndrome that is unresponsive to antibiotic therapy and has negative bacterial cultures. A mononuclear pleocytosis in the CSF and suggestive skin lesions support this, although skin lesions may be absent at the time of presentation or may never develop. Some infected infants exhibit only neurologic symptoms at 2–3 weeks after delivery: apnea, lethargy, fever, poor feeding, or persistent seizures. The brain infection in these children is often diffuse and is best diagnosed by MRI. The skin lesions may resemble impetigo, bacterial scalp abscesses, or miliaria. Skin lesions may recur over weeks or months after recovery from the acute illness. Progressive culture–negative pneumonitis is another manifestation of neonatal HSV. Most cases of neonatal HSV infection are acquired from mothers with undiagnosed genital herpes, most of whom acquired the infection during the pregnancy—especially near term.

B. Laboratory Findings

Abnormalities in platelets, clotting factors, and liver function tests are often present in patients with multisystem disease. Lymphocytic pleocytosis and elevated CSF protein indicates viral meningitis or encephalitis. Virus may be cultured from infected epithelial sites (vesicles, ulcers, or conjunctival scrapings). Cultures of CSF yield positive results in about 50% of neonatal cases, but are uncommon in older children. HSV will be detected within 2 days by rapid tissue culture methods, but PCR is the preferred diagnostic method for all specimens. A positive test from skin, throat, eye, or stool of a newborn is diagnostic. Vaginal culture of the mother may offer circumstantial evidence for the diagnosis, but may be negative.

Rapid diagnostic tests include immunofluorescent stains or ELISA to detect viral antigen in skin or mucosal scrapings. The PCR assay for HSV DNA is positive (> 95%) in the CSF when there is brain involvement. HSV DNA is often present in the blood of patients with multisystem disease. Typing of genital HSV isolates from adolescents has prognostic value, since HSV-1 genital infection recurs much less frequently than genital HSV-2 infection.

» Complications, Sequelae, & Prognosis

Gingivostomatitis may result in dehydration due to dysphagia; severe chronic oral disease and esophageal involvement may occur in immunosuppressed patients. Primary vulvovaginitis may be associated with aseptic meningitis, paresthesias, autonomic dysfunction due to neuritis (urinary retention, constipation), and secondary candidal infection. HIV transmission is facilitated from individuals who are also seropositive for HSV infection, and HIV acquisition is enhanced in HSV-infected contacts. Extensive cutaneous disease (as in eczema) may be associated with dissemination and bacterial superinfection. Keratitis may result in corneal opacification. Untreated encephalitis is fatal in 70% of patients and causes severe damage in most of the remainder. Even with early acyclovir treatment, 20% of patients die and 40% are neurologically impaired.

Disseminated neonatal infection (25% of cases) is fatal for 30% of neonates in spite of therapy, and 20% of survivors are often impaired. Treated infants with CNS infection (30% of cases) have a 5% mortality and 70% of survivors are impaired; treated neonates with infection limited to skin, eye, and mouth survive without sequelae.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

HSV is sensitive to antiviral therapy.

1. Topical antivirals—Antiviral agents are effective for corneal disease and include 1% trifluridine and 3% acyclovir (1–2 drops five times daily). These agents should be used with the guidance of an ophthalmologist and concurrently with oral antiviral therapy.

2. Mucocutaneous HSV infections—These infections respond to administration of oral nucleoside analogues (acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir). The main indications are severe genital HSV infection in adolescents (see Chapter 44; acyclovir, 400 mg three times daily for 7–10 days) and severe gingivostomatitis in young children. Antiviral therapy is beneficial for primary disease when begun early. Recurrent disease rarely requires therapy. Frequent genital recurrences may be suppressed by oral administration of nucleoside analogues (acyclovir, 400 mg twice daily), but this approach should be used sparingly. Other forms of severe cutaneous disease, such as eczema herpeticum, respond to antivirals. Intravenous acyclovir may be required when disease is extensive in immunocompromised children (10–15 mg/kg or 500 mg/m^2 every 8 hours for 14–21 days).

Oral acyclovir, which is available in suspension, is also used within 72–96 hours for severe primary gingivostomatitis in immunocompetent young children (20 mg/kg per dose [maximum of 400 mg per dose] four times a day for 7 days). Antiviral therapy does not alter the incidence or severity of subsequent recurrences of oral or genital infection. Development of resistance to antivirals, which is very rare after treating immunocompetent patients, occurs in immunocompromised patients who receive frequent and prolonged therapy.

3. Encephalitis—Treatment consists of intravenous acyclovir, 20 mg/kg (500 mg/m^2) every 8 hours for 21 days.

4. Neonatal infection—Newborns receive intravenous acyclovir, 20 mg/kg every 8 hours for 21 days (14 days if infection is limited to skin, eye, or mouth). Therapy should not be discontinued unless a repeat CSF HSV PCR assay is negative near the end of treatment. The outcome at 1 year is improved in infants that receive oral acyclovir (300 mg/m^2/dose three times daily) for 6 months after completion of IV therapy.

B. General Measures

1. Gingivostomatitis—Gingivostomatitis is treated with pain relief and temperature control measures. Maintaining hydration is important because of the long duration of illness (7–14 days). Topical anesthetic agents (eg, viscous lidocaine or an equal mixture of kaolin–attapulgite [Kaopectate], diphenhydramine, and viscous lidocaine) may be used as a mouthwash for older children who will not swallow it; ingested lidocaine may be toxic to infants or may lead to aspiration. Antiviral therapy is indicated in normal hosts with severe disease.

2. Genital infections—Genital infections may require pain relief, assistance with voiding (warm baths, topical anesthetics, rarely catheterization), and psychological support. Lesions should be kept clean; drying may shorten the duration of symptoms. Sexual contact should be avoided during the interval from prodrome to crusting stages. Because of the frequency of asymptomatic shedding, the only effective way to prevent sexual transmission is the use of condoms. Candidal superinfection occurs in 10% of women with primary genital infections.

3. Cutaneous lesions—Skin lesions should be kept clean, dry, and covered if possible to prevent spread. Systemic analgesics may be helpful. Secondary bacterial infection is uncommon in patients with lesions on the mucosa or involving small areas, and with recurrences. Secondary infection should be considered and treated if necessary in patients with more extensive lesions.

4. Recurrent cutaneous disease—Recurrent disease is usually milder than primary infection. Sun block lip balm helps prevent labial recurrences that follow intense sun exposure. There is no evidence that the many popular topical or vitamin therapies are efficacious.

5. Keratoconjunctivitis—An ophthalmologist should be consulted regarding the use of cycloplegics, anti-inflammatory agents, local debridement, and other therapies.

6. Encephalitis—Extensive support will be required for obtunded or comatose patients. Rehabilitation and psychological support are often needed for survivors.

7. Neonatal infection—Infected infants should be isolated and given acyclovir. Cesarean delivery is indicated if the mother has obvious cervical or vaginal lesions, especially if these represent primary infection (35%–50% transmission rate). With infants born vaginally to mothers who have active lesions of recurrent genital herpes, appropriate cultures and PCR should be obtained at 24 hours after birth, and the infant evaluated thoroughly for possible HSV infection. If the results are positive or the infant has suggestive signs or symptoms preemptive therapy should be started. Treatment is given to infants whose culture results are positive or who appear ill. Infants born to mothers with obvious primary genital herpes should also be evaluated, but should then receive therapy before the culture or PCR results are known. For women with a history of genital herpes infection, but no genital lesions, vaginal delivery with peripartum cultures of maternal cervix is the standard. Clinical follow-up of the newborn is recommended when maternal culture results are positive. Repeated cervical cultures during pregnancy are not useful.

A challenging problem is the newborn, especially in the first 3 weeks of life, that presents with fever (or hypothermia) and a sepsis-like picture. This is further confounded in the late summer by the existence of circulating enteroviruses. These infants should be considered for empiric acyclovir therapy, pending results of PCR studies, given the poor outcome of disseminated herpes in the newborn. The index of suspicion is increased when there is a CSF pleocytosis, elevated hepatic transaminase levels, a very ill-appearing infant, rash, or respiratory distress.

De Tiege X, Rozenberg F, Heron B: The spectrum of herpes encephalitis in children. J Europ Paed Neurology Soc 2008;2:72 [PMID: 17870623].

James SH et al: Mother-to-child transmission of herpes simplex virus. J Ped Infect Dis Soc 2014;3(Suppl 1):S19 [PMID: 25232472].

Pinninti SW, Kimberlin DW: Neonatal herpes simplex virus infections. Pediatr Clin N Amer 2013;60:351 [PMID: 23481105].

Vanderpluym C et al: Empiric acyclovir for neonatal herpes simplex virus infection. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 2012;25(8):1278 [PMID: 20120716].

VARICELLA & HERPES ZOSTER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Varicella (chickenpox):
- Exposure to varicella or herpes zoster 10–21 days previously; no prior history of varicella.
- Widely scattered red macules and papules concentrated on the face and trunk, rapidly progressing to clear vesicles on an erythematous base, pustules, and then crusts, over 5–6 days.
- Variable fever and nonspecific systemic symptoms.

» Herpes zoster (shingles):
- History of varicella.
- Dermatomal paresthesias and pain prior to eruption (more common in older children).
- Dermatomal distribution of grouped vesicles on an erythematous base.

» General Considerations

Primary infection with varicella-zoster virus results in varicella, which generally confers lifelong immunity, but the virus remains latent lifelong in sensory ganglia. Herpes zoster, which represents reactivation of this latent virus, occurs in 30% of individuals at some time in their life. The incidence of herpes zoster is highest in elderly individuals and in immunosuppressed patients, but herpes zoster occurs in immunocompetent children. Spread of varicella from a close contact is by respiratory secretions or fomites from vesicles or pustules, with an 85% infection rate in susceptible persons. Over 95% of young adults with a history of varicella are immune, as are 90% of native-born Americans who are unaware of having had varicella. Many individuals from tropical or subtropical regions fail to develop varicella in their childhood and remain susceptible through early adulthood. Humans are the only reservoir.

» Clinical Findings

Exposure to varicella or herpes zoster has usually occurred 14–16 days previously (range, 10–21 days). Contact may not be recognized, since the index case of varicella is infectious 1–2 days before rash appears. A 1- to 3-day prodrome of fever, malaise, respiratory symptoms, and headache may occur, especially in older children. The unilateral, dermatomal vesicular rash and pain of herpes zoster is very distinctive. The preeruptive pain of herpes zoster may last several days and be mistaken for other illnesses.

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Varicella—The usual case consists of mild systemic symptoms followed by crops of red macules that rapidly become small vesicles with surrounding erythema (described as a "dew drop on a rose petal"), form pustules, become crusted, and then scab. Scarring occurs, but it is not common. The rash appears predominantly on the trunk and face. Lesions occur in the scalp, and sometimes in the nose, mouth (where they are nonspecific ulcers), conjunctiva, and vagina. The magnitude of systemic symptoms usually parallels skin involvement. Up to five crops of lesions may be seen. New crops stop forming after 5–7 days. Pruritus is often intense. If varicella occurs in the first few months of life (except for the early postpartum period), it is often mild as a result of transplacentally acquired maternal antibody. Once crusting begins, the patient is no longer contagious. A modified form of varicella occurs in about 15% of vaccinated children exposed to varicella, in spite of receiving a single dose of varicella vaccine. This is usually much milder than typical varicella, with fewer lesions that heal rapidly. Cases of modified varicella are contagious.

2. Herpes zoster (shingles)—This eruption involves a single dermatome (thus unilateral and does not cross the midline), usually truncal or cranial; occasionally a contiguous dermatome is involved. Especially in older children this is preceded by neuropathic pain or itching in the same area (designated the "prodrome"). Ophthalmic zoster may be associated with corneal involvement. The closely grouped vesicles, which resemble a localized version of varicella or herpes simplex, often coalesce. Crusting occurs in 7–10 days. Postherpetic neuralgia is rare in children. Herpes zoster is a common problem in HIV-infected or other immunocompromised children, and is also common in children who had varicella in early infancy (< 1–2 years old) or whose mothers had varicella during pregnancy. Herpes zoster can occur infrequently in children who received the varicella vaccine.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukocyte counts are normal or low. Leukocytosis suggests secondary bacterial infection. The virus can be identified by fluorescent antibody staining of a lesion smear. When the etiology is critical, as in immune compromised children with atypical disease, PCR is definitive. Serum aminotransferase levels may be modestly elevated during typical varicella.

C. Imaging

Varicella pneumonia classically produces numerous bilateral nodular densities and hyperinflation. This is very rare in immunocompetent children, but is seen more frequently in adults and immunocompromised children.

» Differential Diagnosis

Varicella is usually distinctive. Similar rashes include those of coxsackievirus infection (fewer lesions, lack of crusting), impetigo (fewer lesions, smaller area, no classic vesicles, positive Gram stain, perioral or peripheral lesions), papular urticaria (insect bite history, nonvesicular rash), scabies (burrows, no typical vesicles; failure to resolve), parapsoriasis (rare in children < 10 years, chronic or recurrent, often a history of prior varicella), rickettsialpox (eschar where the mite bites, smaller lesions, no crusting), dermatitis herpetiformis (chronic, urticaria, residual pigmentation), and folliculitis. Herpes zoster is sometimes confused with a linear eruption of herpes simplex or a contact dermatitis (eg, Rhus dermatitis).

» Complications & Sequelae

A. Varicella

Secondary bacterial infection with staphylococci or group A streptococci is most common, presenting as impetigo, cellulitis or fasciitis, abscesses, scarlet fever, or sepsis. Bacterial superinfection occurs in 2%–3% of children with varicella. Before a vaccine became available, hospitalization rates associated with varicella were 1:750–1:1000 cases in children and 10-fold higher in adults.

Protracted vomiting or a change in sensorium suggests Reye syndrome or encephalitis. Because Reye syndrome usually occurs in patients who are also receiving salicylates, these should be avoided in patients with varicella. Encephalitis occurs in less than 0.1% of cases, usually in the first week of illness, and is usually limited to cerebellitis with ataxia, which resolves completely. Diffuse encephalitis can be severe.

Varicella pneumonia usually afflicts immunocompromised children (especially those receiving high doses of corticosteroids or chemotherapy) and adults; pregnant women are at special risk. Cough, dyspnea, tachypnea, rales, and cyanosis occur several days after onset of rash. Varicella may be life-threatening in immunosuppressed patients. In addition to pneumonitis, their disease may be complicated by hepatitis and encephalitis. The acute illness in these children often begins with unexplained severe abdominal pain. Varicella exposure in severely varicella-naïve immunocompromised children must be evaluated immediately for postexposure prophylaxis (see Chapter 10).

Hemorrhagic varicella lesions may be seen without other complications. This is most often caused by autoimmune thrombocytopenia, but hemorrhagic lesions can occasionally represent idiopathic disseminated intravascular coagulation (purpura fulminans).

Neonates born to mothers who develop varicella from 5 days before to 2 days after delivery are at high risk for severe or fatal (5%) disease and must be given varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (VariZIG) and followed closely (see Chapter 10).

Varicella occurring during the first 20 weeks of pregnancy may cause (2% incidence) congenital infection associated with cicatricial skin lesions, associated limb anomalies, and cortical atrophy.

Unusual complications of varicella include optic neuritis, myocarditis, transverse myelitis, orchitis, and arthritis.

B. Herpes Zoster

Complications of herpes zoster include secondary bacterial infection, motor or cranial nerve paralysis, meningitis, encephalitis, keratitis and other ocular complications, and dissemination in immunosuppressed patients. These complications are rare in immunocompetent children. Postherpetic neuralgia occurs in immunocompromised children, but is rare in immunocompetent children.

» Prevention

Varicella-specific hyperimmune globulin is available for postexposure prevention of varicella in high-risk susceptible persons (see Chapter 10). In immunocompetent children, postexposure prophylaxis with acyclovir is effective when it is started at 7–9 days after exposure and is continued for 7 days, as is varicella vaccine when given within 3–5 days of the exposure.

Two doses of the live attenuated varicella vaccine are now part of routine childhood immunization, and "catch-up" immunization is recommended for all other susceptible children and adults.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Supportive measures include maintenance of hydration, administration of acetaminophen for discomfort, cool soaks or antipruritics for itching (diphenhydramine, 1.25 mg/kg every 6 hours, or hydroxyzine, 0.5 mg/kg every 6 hours), and observance of general hygiene measures (keep nails trimmed and skin clean). Care must be taken to avoid overdosage with antihistaminic agents. Topical or systemic antibiotics may be needed for bacterial superinfection.

B. Specific Measures

Acyclovir is the preferred drug for varicella and herpes zoster infections. Recommended parenteral acyclovir dosage for severe disease is 10 mg/kg (500 mg/m^2) intravenously every 8 hours, each dose infused over 1 hour, for 7–10 days. Parenteral therapy should be started early in immunocompromised patients or high-risk infected

neonates. Hyperimmune globulin is of no value for established disease. The effect of oral acyclovir (80 mg/kg/d, divided in four doses) on varicella in immunocompetent children was modestly beneficial and nontoxic, but only when administered within 24 hours after the onset of varicella. Oral acyclovir should be used selectively in immunocompetent children (eg, when intercurrent illness is present; possibly when the index case is a sibling or when the patient is an adolescent—both of which are associated with more severe disease) and in children with underlying chronic illnesses. Valacyclovir and famciclovir are superior antiviral agents because of better absorption; only acyclovir is available as a pediatric suspension. Herpes zoster in an immunocompromised child should be treated with intravenous acyclovir when it is severe, but oral valacyclovir or famciclovir can be used in immunocompromised children when the nature of the underlying illness and the immune status support this decision.

» Prognosis

Except for secondary bacterial infections, serious complications are rare and recovery complete in immunocompetent hosts.

Marin M, Zhang JX, Seward JF: Near elimination of varicella deaths in the US after implementation of the vaccination program. Pediatrics 2011;128:214 [PMID: 21788222].

Shapiro ED et al: Effectiveness of 2 doses of varicella vaccine in children. J Infect Dis 2011;203(3):312 [PMID: 21208922].

Thomas CA et al. Two-dose varicella vaccine effectiveness and rash severity in an outbreak of varicella among public school students. Ped Infect Dis J 2014;33:1164 [PMID: 24911894].

ROSEOLA INFANTUM (EXANTHEM SUBITUM)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- High fever in a child aged 6–36 months.
- Minimal toxicity.
- Rose-pink maculopapular rash appears when fever subsides.

» General Considerations

Roseola infantum is a benign illness caused by HHV-6 or HHV-7. HHV-6 is a major cause of acute febrile illness in young children. Its significance is that it may be confused with more serious causes of high fever and its role in inciting febrile seizures.

» Clinical Findings

The most prominent historical feature is the abrupt onset of fever, often reaching > 39.5°C, which lasts up to 8 days (mean, 4 days) in an otherwise mildly ill child. The fever then ceases abruptly, and a characteristic rash may appear. Roseola occurs predominantly in children aged 6 months to 3 years, with 90% of cases occurring before the second year. HHV-7 infection tends to occur somewhat later in childhood. These viruses are the most common recognized cause of exanthematous fever in this age group and are responsible for 20% of emergency department visits by children aged 6–12 months.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Mild lethargy and irritability may be present, but generally there is dissociation between other systemic symptoms and the febrile course. The pharynx, tonsils, and tympanic membranes may be injected. Conjunctivitis and pharyngeal exudate are notably absent. Diarrhea and vomiting occur in one-third of patients. Adenopathy of the head and neck often occurs. The anterior fontanelle is bulging in one-quarter of HHV-6–infected infants. If rash appears (20%–30% incidence), it coincides with lysis of fever and begins on the trunk and spreads to the face, neck, and extremities. Rose-pink macules or maculopapules, 2–3 mm in diameter, are nonpruritic, tend to coalesce, and disappear in 1–2 days without pigmentation or desquamation. Rash may occur without fever.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukopenia and lymphocytopenia are present early. Laboratory evidence of hepatitis occurs in some patients, especially adults.

» Differential Diagnosis

The initial high fever may require exclusion of serious bacterial infection. The relative well-being of most children and the typical course and rash soon clarify the diagnosis. These distinguish roseola from measles, rubella, adenoviruses, enteroviruses, drug reactions, and scarlet fever. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is normal. If the child has a febrile seizure, it is important to exclude bacterial meningitis. The CSF is normal in children with roseola. In children who receive antibiotics or other medication at the beginning of the fever, the rash may be attributed incorrectly to drug allergy.

» Complications & Sequelae

Febrile seizures occur in up to 10% of patients (even higher percentages in those with HHV-7 infections). There is evidence that HHV-6 can directly infect the CNS, causing

meningoencephalitis. Multiorgan disease (pneumonia, hepatitis, bone marrow suppression, encephalitis) may occur in immunocompromised patients.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Fever is managed readily with acetaminophen and sponge baths. Fever control should be a major consideration in children with a history of febrile seizures. Roseola infantum is otherwise entirely benign. Systemic infection in immune compromised children is treated with antiviral agents.

Stone RC et al: Roseaola infantum and its causal human herpesviruses. Int J Dermatol 2014;53:397 [PMID: 24673253].

CYTOMEGALOVIRUS INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Primary infection:
- Asymptomatic or minor illness in young children.
- Mononucleosis-like syndrome without pharyngitis in postpubertal individuals.

» Congenital infection:
- Intrauterine growth retardation.
- Microcephaly with intracerebral calcifications and seizures.
- Retinitis and encephalitis.
- Hepatosplenomegaly with thrombocytopenia.
- "Blueberry muffin" rash.
- Sensorineural deafness.

» Immunocompromised hosts:
- Retinitis and encephalitis.
- Pneumonitis.
- Enteritis and hepatitis.
- Bone marrow suppression.

» General Considerations

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is a ubiquitous herpesvirus transmitted by many routes. It can be acquired in utero following maternal viremia or postpartum from birth canal secretions or maternal milk. Young children are infected by the saliva of playmates; older individuals are infected by sexual partners (eg, from saliva, vaginal secretions, or semen). Transfused blood products and transplanted organs can be a source of CMV infection. Clinical illness is determined largely by the patient's immune competence. Immunocompetent individuals usually develop a mild self-limited illness, whereas immunocompromised children can develop severe, progressive, often multiorgan disease. In utero infection can be teratogenic.

1. In Utero Cytomegalovirus Infection

Approximately 0.5%–1.5% of children are born with CMV infections acquired during maternal viremia. CMV infection is asymptomatic in over 90% of these children, who are usually born to mothers who had experienced reactivation of latent CMV infection during the pregnancy. Symptomatic infection occurs predominantly in infants born to mothers with primary CMV infection, but can also result from recurrent, most likely, reinfection during pregnancy. Even when exposed to a primary maternal infection, less than 50% of fetuses are infected, and in only 10% of those infants is the infection symptomatic at birth. Primary infection in the first half of pregnancy poses the greatest risk for severe fetal damage.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Severely affected infants are born ill; they are often small for gestational age, floppy, and lethargic. They feed poorly and have poor temperature control. Hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, petechiae, seizures, and microcephaly are common. Characteristic signs are a distinctive chorioretinitis and periventricular calcification. A purpuric (so-called blueberry muffin) rash similar to that seen with congenital rubella may be present. The mortality rate is 10%–20%. Survivors usually have significant sequelae, especially mental retardation, neurologic deficits, retinopathy, and hearing loss. Isolated hepatosplenomegaly or thrombocytopenia may occur. Even mildly affected children may subsequently manifest mental retardation and psychomotor delay. However, most infected infants (90%) are born to mothers with preexisting immunity who experienced a reactivation of latent CMV during pregnancy. These children have no clinical manifestations at birth. Of these, 10%–15% develop sensorineural hearing loss, which is often bilateral and may appear several years after birth.

B. Laboratory Findings

In severely ill infants, anemia, thrombocytopenia, hyperbilirubinemia, and elevated aminotransferase levels are common. Lymphocytosis occurs occasionally. Pleocytosis and an elevated protein concentration are found in CSF. The diagnosis is readily confirmed by isolation of CMV from urine or saliva within 48 hours, using rapid culture methods combined with immunoassay. The presence in the infant of IgM-specific CMV antibodies suggests the diagnosis. Some commercial ELISA kits are 90% sensitive and specific for

these antibodies. Universal screening of asymptomatic children using blood or saliva CMV PCR during the first weeks of life is useful for early detection of children at high risk of developing hearing loss.

C. Imaging

Head radiologic examinations may show microcephaly, periventricular calcifications, and ventricular dilation. These findings strongly correlate with neurologic sequelae and retardation. Long bone radiographs may show the "celery stalk" pattern characteristic of congenital viral infections. Interstitial pneumonia may be present.

» Differential Diagnosis

CMV infection should be considered in any newborn that is seriously ill shortly after birth, especially once bacterial sepsis, metabolic disease, intracranial bleeding, and cardiac disease have been excluded. Other congenital infections to be considered in the differential diagnosis include toxoplasmosis (serology, more diffuse calcification of the CNS, specific type of retinitis, macrocephaly), rubella (serology, specific type of retinitis, cardiac lesions, eye abnormalities), enteroviral infections (time of year, maternal illness, severe hepatitis, PCR), herpes simplex (skin lesions, cultures, severe hepatitis, PCR), and syphilis (serology for both infant and mother, skin lesions, bone involvement).

» Prevention & Treatment

Support is rarely required for anemia and thrombocytopenia. Most children with symptoms at birth have significant neurologic, intellectual, visual, or auditory impairment. Ganciclovir (5 mg/kg every 12 hours, for 6 weeks) has been recommended for children with severe, life- or sight-threatening disease, or if end-organ disease recurs or progresses. A recent randomized placebo-controlled study showed improved efficacy against hearing loss using oral valganciclovir at 16 mg/kg twice daily for 6 months in children symptomatic at birth.

Recent developments in the diagnosis of primary CMV infection during pregnancy using anti-CMV IgM and low-avidity IgG assays followed by quantitative CMV PCR testing of the amniotic fluid at 20–24 weeks gestation have made possible the diagnosis of congenital CMV infection before birth. Many pregnant women elect to terminate gestation under these circumstances. Passive immunoprophylaxis with hyperimmune CMV IgG did not prevent development of congenital disease in a randomized placebo-controlled trial.

2. Perinatal Cytomegalovirus Infection

CMV infection can be acquired from birth canal secretions or shortly after birth from maternal milk. In some socioeconomic groups, 10%–20% of infants are infected at birth and excrete CMV for many months. Infection can also be acquired in the postnatal period from unscreened transfused blood products.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Ninety percent of immunocompetent infants infected by their mothers at birth develop subclinical illness (ie, virus excretion only) or a minor illness within 1–3 months. The remainder develop an illness lasting several weeks characterized by hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, and interstitial pneumonitis in various combinations. The severity of the pneumonitis may be increased if there is simultaneous presence of Chlamydia trachomatis. Infants who receive blood products are often premature and immunologically impaired. If they are born to CMV-negative mothers and subsequently receive CMV-containing blood, they frequently develop severe infection and pneumonia after a 2- to 6-week incubation period.

B. Laboratory Findings

Lymphocytosis, atypical lymphocytes, anemia, and thrombocytopenia may be present, especially in premature infants. Liver function is abnormal. CMV is readily isolated from urine and saliva. Secretions obtained at bronchoscopy contain CMV and epithelial cells bearing CMV antigens. Serum levels of CMV antibody rise significantly.

C. Imaging

Chest radiographs show a diffuse interstitial pneumonitis in severely affected infants.

» Differential Diagnosis

CMV infection should be considered as a cause of any prolonged illness in early infancy, especially if hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, or atypical lymphocytosis is present. This must be distinguished from granulomatous or malignant diseases and from congenital infections (syphilis, toxoplasmosis, hepatitis B, HIV) not previously diagnosed. Other viruses (Epstein-Barr virus [EBV], HIV, adenovirus) can cause this syndrome. CMV is a recognized cause of viral pneumonia in this age group. Because asymptomatic CMV excretion is common in early infancy, care must be taken to establish the diagnosis and to rule out concomitant pathogens such as Chlamydia and RSV. Severe CMV infection in early infancy may indicate that the child has a congenital or acquired immune deficiency.

» Prevention & Treatment

The self-limited disease of normal infants requires no therapy. Severe pneumonitis in premature infants requires

oxygen administration and often intubation. Very ill infants should receive ganciclovir (6 mg/kg every 12 hours). CMV infection acquired by transfusion can be prevented by excluding CMV-seropositive blood donors. Milk donors should also be screened for prior CMV infection. A common practice of freezing the milk prior to administration was shown to lack preventive effectiveness. It is likely that high-risk infants receiving large doses of IVIG for other reasons will be protected against severe CMV disease.

3. Cytomegalovirus Infection Acquired in Childhood & Adolescence

Young children are readily infected by playmates, especially because CMV continues to be excreted in saliva and urine for many months after infection. The cumulative annual incidence of CMV excretion by children in day care centers exceeds 75%. In fact, young children in a family are often the source of primary CMV infection of their mothers during subsequent pregnancies. An additional peak of CMV infection takes place when adolescents become sexually active. Sporadic acquisition of CMV occurs after blood transfusion and transplantation.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most young children who acquire CMV are asymptomatic or have a minor febrile illness, occasionally with adenopathy. They provide an important reservoir of virus shedders that facilitates spread of CMV. Occasionally a child may have prolonged fever with hepatosplenomegaly and adenopathy. Older children and adults, many of whom are infected during sexual activity, are more likely to be symptomatic in this fashion and can present with a syndrome that mimics the infectious mononucleosis syndrome that follows EBV infection (1–2 weeks of fever, malaise, anorexia, splenomegaly, mild hepatitis, and some adenopathy; see the next section). This syndrome can also occur 2–4 weeks after transfusion of CMV-infected blood.

B. Laboratory Findings

In the CMV mononucleosis syndrome, lymphocytosis and atypical lymphocytes are common, as is a mild rise in aminotransferase levels. CMV is present in saliva and urine; CMV DNA can be uniformly detected in plasma or blood.

» Differential Diagnosis

In older children, CMV infection should be included as a possible cause of fever of unknown origin, especially when lymphocytosis and atypical lymphocytes are present. CMV infection is distinguished from EBV infection by the absence of pharyngitis, the relatively minor adenopathy, and the absence of serologic evidence of acute EBV infection. Mononucleosis syndromes also are caused by Toxoplasma gondii, rubella virus, adenovirus, hepatitis A virus, and HIV.

» Prevention

Screening of transfused blood or filtering blood (thus removing CMV-containing white blood cells) prevents cases related to this source.

4. Cytomegalovirus Infection in Immunocompromised Children

In addition to symptoms experienced during primary infection, immunocompromised hosts develop symptoms with reinfection or reactivation of latent CMV. This is clearly seen in children with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), after transplantation, or with congenital immunodeficiencies. However, in most immunocompromised patients, primary infection is more likely to cause severe symptoms than is reactivation or reinfection. The severity of the resulting disease is generally proportionate to the degree of immunosuppression.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

A mild febrile illness with myalgia, malaise, and arthralgia may occur, especially with reactivation disease. Severe disease often includes subacute onset of dyspnea and cyanosis as manifestations of interstitial pneumonitis. Auscultation reveals only coarse breath sounds and scattered rales. A rapid respiratory rate may precede clinical or radiographic evidence of pneumonia. Hepatitis without jaundice or hepatomegaly is common. Diarrhea, which can be severe, occurs with CMV colitis, and CMV can cause esophagitis with symptoms of odynophagia or dysphagia. These enteropathies are most common in AIDS, as is the presence of a retinitis that often progresses to blindness, encephalitis and polyradiculitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Neutropenia and thrombocytopenia are common. Atypical lymphocytosis is infrequent. Serum aminotransferase levels are often elevated. The stools may contain occult blood if enteropathy is present. CMV is readily isolated from saliva, urine, buffy coat, and bronchial secretions. Results are available in 48 hours. Interpretation of positive cultures is made difficult by asymptomatic shedding of CMV in saliva and urine in many immunocompromised patients. CMV disease correlates more closely with the presence of CMV in the blood or lung lavage fluid. Monitoring for the appearance

of CMV DNA in plasma or CMV antigen in blood mononuclear cells is used as a guide to early antiviral ("preemptive") therapy.

C. Imaging

Bilateral interstitial pneumonitis is present on chest radiographs.

» Differential Diagnosis

The initial febrile illness must be distinguished from treatable bacterial or fungal infection. Similarly, the pulmonary disease must be distinguished from intrapulmonary hemorrhage; drug-induced or radiation pneumonitis; pulmonary edema; and bacterial, fungal, parasitic, and other virus infections. CMV infection causes bilateral and interstitial abnormalities on chest radiographs, cough is nonproductive, chest pain is absent, and the patient is not usually toxic. Pneumocystis jiroveci infection may have a similar presentation. These patients may have polymicrobial disease. It is suspected that bacterial and fungal infections are enhanced by the neutropenia that can accompany CMV infection. Infection of the gastrointestinal tract is diagnosed by endoscopy. This will exclude candidal, adenoviral, and herpes simplex infections and allows tissue confirmation of CMV-induced mucosal ulcerations.

» Prevention & Treatment

Blood donors should be screened to exclude those with prior CMV infection, or blood should be filtered. Ideally, seronegative transplant recipients should receive organs from seronegative donors. Severe symptoms, most commonly pneumonitis, often respond to early therapy with intravenous ganciclovir (5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 14–21 days). Neutropenia is a frequent side effect of this therapy. Foscarnet and cidofovir are alternative therapeutic agents recommended for patients with ganciclovir-resistant virus. Prophylactic use of oral or intravenous ganciclovir or foscarnet may prevent CMV infections in organ transplant recipients. Preemptive therapy can be used in transplant recipients by monitoring CMV in blood by PCR and instituting therapy when the results reach a certain threshold regardless of clinical signs or symptoms.

Josephson CD et al: Blood transfusion and breast milk transmission of cytomegalovirus in very low birth-weight infants: a prospective cohort study. JAMA Pediatr 2014;168:1054 [PMID: 25243446].

Kimberlin D et al: Valganciclovir for symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus disease. N Engl J Med 2015;372:933 [PMID: 25738669].

Pass RF, Anderson B: Mother-to-child transmission of cytomegalovirus and prevention of congenital infection. J Ped ID Soc 2014;3(Suppl 1):S2 [PMID: 25232473].

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS (EPSTEIN-BARR VIRUS)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Prolonged fever.
- Exudative pharyngitis.
- Generalized adenopathy.
- Hepatosplenomegaly.
- Atypical lymphocytes.
- Heterophil antibodies.

» General Considerations

Mononucleosis is the most characteristic syndrome produced by EBV infection. Young children infected with EBV have either no symptoms or a mild nonspecific febrile illness. As the age of the host increases, EBV infection is more likely to produce the typical features of the mononucleosis syndrome, including 20%–25% of infected adolescents. EBV is acquired readily from asymptomatic carriers (15%–20% of whom excrete the virus in saliva on any given day) and from recently ill patients, who excrete virus for many months. Young children are infected from the saliva of playmates and family members. Adolescents may be infected through sexual activity. EBV can also be transmitted by blood transfusion and organ transplantation.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

After an incubation period of 1–2 months, a 2- to 3-day prodrome of malaise and anorexia yields, abruptly or insidiously, to a febrile illness with temperatures exceeding 39°C. The major complaint is pharyngitis, which is often (50%) exudative. Lymph nodes are enlarged, firm, and mildly tender. Any area may be affected, but posterior and anterior cervical nodes are almost always enlarged. Splenomegaly is present in 50%–75% of patients. Hepatomegaly is common (30%), and the liver is frequently tender. Five percent of patients have a rash, which can be macular, scarlatiniform, or urticarial. Rash is almost universal in patients taking penicillin or ampicillin. Soft palate petechiae and eyelid edema are also observed.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Peripheral blood—Leukopenia may occur early, but an atypical lymphocytosis (comprising over 10% of the total leukocytes at some time in the illness) is most notable.

Hematologic changes may not be seen until the third week of illness and may be entirely absent in some EBV syndromes (eg, neurologic).

2. Heterophile antibodies—These nonspecific antibodies appear in over 90% of older patients with mononucleosis, but in fewer than 50% of children younger than age 5 years. They may not be detectable until the second week of illness and may persist for up to 12 months after recovery. Rapid screening tests (slide agglutination) are usually positive if the titer is significant; a positive result strongly suggests but does not prove EBV infection.

3. Anti-EBV antibodies—It may be necessary to measure specific antibody titers when heterophile antibodies fail to appear, as in young children. Acute EBV infection is established by detecting IgM antibody to the viral capsid antigen (VCA) or by detecting a fourfold or greater change of IgG anti-VCA titers (in normal hosts, IgG antibody peaks by the time symptoms appear; in immunocompromised hosts, the tempo of antibody production may be delayed). The absence of anti–EBV nuclear antigen (EBNA) antibodies, which are typically first detected at least 4 weeks after the initiation of symptoms, may also be used to diagnose acute infection in immunocompetent hosts. However, immunocompromised hosts may fail to develop anti-EBNA antibodies.

4. EBV PCR—Detection of EBV DNA is the method of choice for the diagnosis of CNS and ocular infections. Quantitative EBV PCR in peripheral blood mononuclear cells has been used to diagnose EBV-related lymphoproliferative disorders in transplant patients.

» Differential Diagnosis

Severe pharyngitis may suggest group A streptococcal infection. Enlargement of only the anterior cervical lymph nodes, a neutrophilic leukocytosis, and the absence of splenomegaly suggest bacterial infection. Although a child with a positive throat culture result for Streptococcus usually requires therapy, up to 10% of children with mononucleosis are asymptomatic streptococcal carriers. In this group, penicillin therapy is unnecessary and often causes a rash. Severe primary herpes simplex pharyngitis, occurring in adolescence, may also mimic infectious mononucleosis. With herpes simplex pharyngitis, some anterior mouth ulcerations should suggest the correct diagnosis. Adenoviruses are another cause of severe, often exudative pharyngitis. EBV infection should be considered in the differential diagnosis of any perplexing prolonged febrile illness. Similar illnesses that produce atypical lymphocytosis include rubella (pharyngitis not prominent, shorter illness, less adenopathy and splenomegaly), adenovirus (upper respiratory symptoms and cough, conjunctivitis, less adenopathy, fewer atypical lymphocytes), hepatitis A or B (more severe liver function abnormalities, no pharyngitis, no lymphadenopathy), and toxoplasmosis (negative heterophil test, less pharyngitis). Serum sickness–like drug reactions and leukemia (smear morphology is important) may be confused with infectious mononucleosis. CMV mononucleosis is a close mimic except for minimal pharyngitis and less adenopathy; it is much less common. Serologic tests for EBV and CMV should clarify the correct diagnosis. The acute initial manifestation of HIV infection can be a mononucleosis-like syndrome.

» Complications

Splenic rupture is a rare complication, which usually follows significant trauma. Hematologic complications, including hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and neutropenia, are more common. Neurologic involvement can include aseptic meningitis, encephalitis, isolated neuropathy such as Bell palsy, and Guillain-Barré syndrome. Any of these may appear prior to or in the absence of the more typical signs and symptoms of infectious mononucleosis. Rare complications include myocarditis, pericarditis, and atypical pneumonia. Recurrence or persistence of EBV-associated symptoms for 6 months or longer characterizes chronic active EBV. This disease is due to continuous viral replication and warrants specific antiviral therapy. Rarely EBV infection becomes a progressive lymphoproliferative disorder characterized by persistent fever, multiple organ involvement, neutropenia or pancytopenia, and agammaglobulinemia. Hemocytophagia is often present in the bone marrow. An X-linked genetic defect in immune response has been inferred for some patients (Duncan syndrome, X-linked lymphoproliferative disorder). Children with other congenital immunodeficiencies or chemotherapy-induced immunosuppression can also develop progressive EBV infection, EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorder, lymphoma, and other malignancies.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Bed rest may be necessary in severe cases. Acetaminophen controls high fever. Potential airway obstruction due to swollen pharyngeal lymphoid tissue responds rapidly to systemic corticosteroids. Corticosteroids may also be given for hematologic and neurologic complications, although no controlled trials have proved their efficacy in these conditions. Fever and pharyngitis disappear by 10–14 days. Adenopathy and splenomegaly can persist several weeks longer. Some patients complain of fatigue, malaise, or lack of well-being for several months. Although corticosteroids may shorten the duration of fatigue and malaise, their long-term effects on this potentially oncogenic viral infection are unknown, and indiscriminate use is discouraged. Patients with splenic enlargement should avoid contact sports for

6–8 weeks. Acyclovir, valacyclovir, penciclovir, ganciclovir, and foscarnet are active against EBV and are indicated in the treatment of chronic active EBV.

Management of EBV-related lymphoproliferative disorders relies primarily on decreasing the immunosuppression whenever possible. Adjunctive therapy with acyclovir, ganciclovir, or another antiviral active against EBV as well as γ globulin has been used without scientific evidence of efficacy.

Balfour HH Jr, Dunmire SK, Hogquist KA: Infectious Mononucleosis. Clin Transl Immunology 2015 Feb 27;4(2):e33 [PMID: 25774295].

VIRAL INFECTIONS SPREAD BY INSECT VECTORS

In the United States, mosquitoes are the most common insect vectors that spread viral infections (Table 40–3). As a consequence, these infections—and others that are spread by ticks—tend to occur as summer–fall epidemics that coincide with the seasonal breeding and feeding habits of the vector, and the etiologic agent varies by region. Other insect-borne viral infections are seen in international travelers. Thus, a careful travel and exposure history is critical for correct diagnostic workup.

ENCEPHALITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever and headache.
- Change in mental status and/or behavior, with or without focal neurologic deficits.
- Mononuclear cell pleocytosis, elevated protein level, and normal glucose level.

Encephalitis is a common severe manifestation of many infections spread by insects (see Table 40–3). With many viral pathogens, the infection is most often subclinical, or a mild CNS disease such as meningitis is present. These infections have some distinguishing features in terms of subclinical infection rate, unique neurologic syndromes, associated systemic symptoms, and prognosis. The diagnosis is generally made clinically during recognized outbreaks and is confirmed by virus-specific serology. Prevention consists of control of mosquito vectors and precautions with proper clothing and insect repellents to minimize mosquito and tick bites. It is essential before making the diagnosis of arboviral encephalitis, which is not treatable, to exclude herpes encephalitis, which warrants specific antiviral therapy. Delay in administering this therapy may have dire consequences.

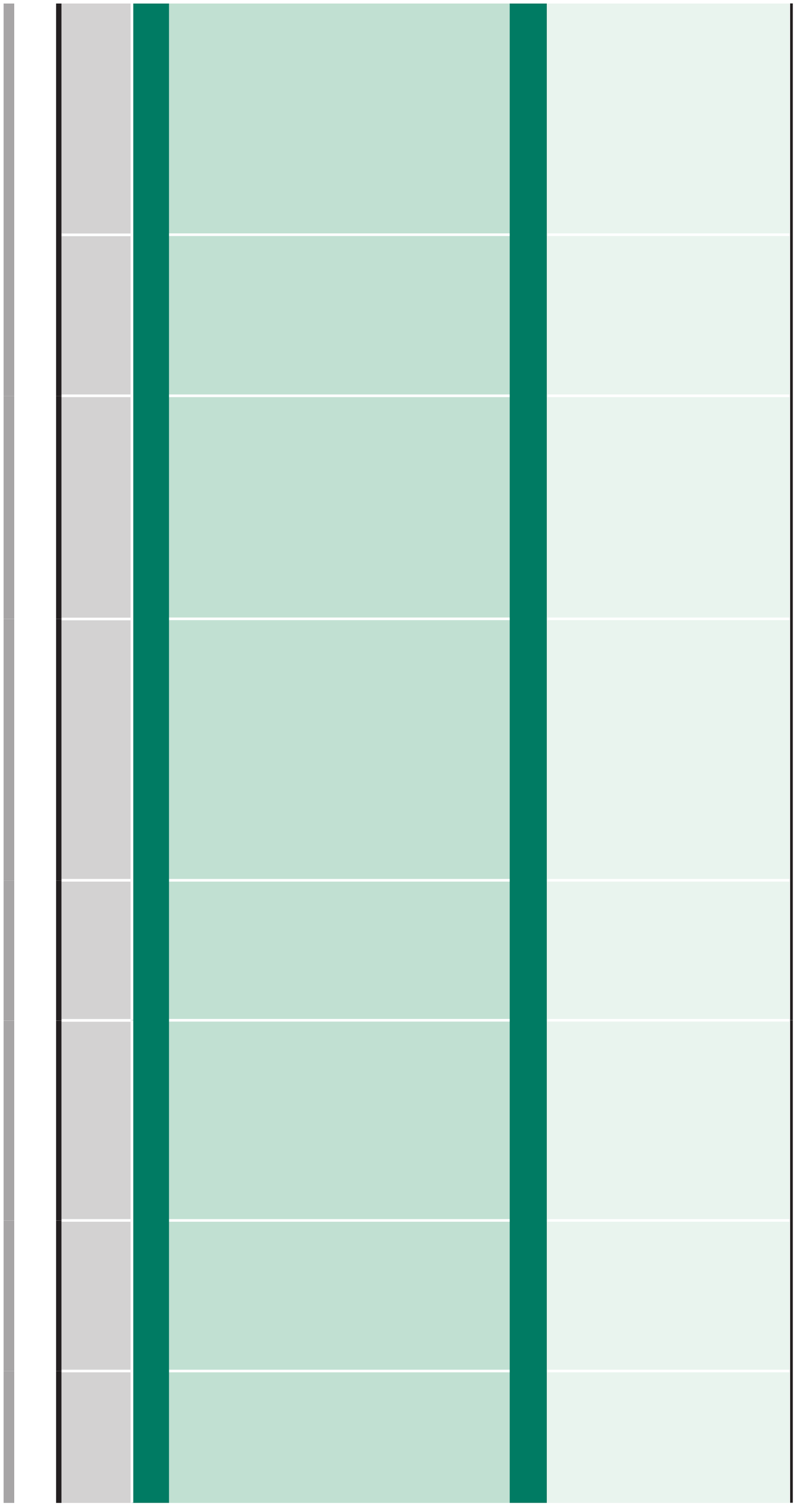
West Nile Virus Encephalitis

This flavivirus is the most important arbovirus infection in the United States. In 2003 there were more than 10,000 clinically apparent infections, more than 2900 nervous system infections, and 265 deaths in 47 states. Prevalence had declined significantly, but in 2012 there was a resurgence to more than 5000 reported cases, of which approximately half were neuroinvasive; 240 were fatal. The reservoir of West Nile virus includes more than 160 species of birds whose migration explains the extent of endemic disease. Epidemics occur in summer–fall; most infected individuals are asymptomatic. Approximately 20% develop West Nile Fever characterized by fever, headache, retro-orbital pain, nausea, vomiting, lymphadenopathy, and a maculopapular rash (20%–50%). Less than 1% of infected patients develop meningitis or encephalitis, but 10% of these cases are fatal. The major risk factor for severe disease is age older than 50 years and immune compromise. Children usually manifest with West Nile fever and less than one-third will develop neuroinvasive disease, most likely limited to meningitis. Neurologic manifestations are most often those found with other meningoencephalitides, but some distinguishing features include polio-like acute flaccid paralysis, movement disorders (Parkinsonism, tremor, and myoclonus), brainstem symptoms, polyneuropathy, and optic neuritis. Muscle weakness, facial palsy, and hyporeflexia are common (20%). Recovery is slow and serious sequelae occur in some severely affected patients. Diagnosis is best made by detecting IgM antibody (enzyme immunoassay) to the virus in CSF. This will be present by 5–6 days (95%) after onset. PCR is a specific diagnostic tool, but is less sensitive than antibody detection. Antibody rise in serum can also be used for diagnosis.

Treatment is supportive, although various antivirals and specific immunoglobulins are being studied. The infection is not spread between contacts, but can be spread by donated organs, blood, and breast milk, and transplacentally.

Colpitts TM, Conway MJ, Montgomery RR, Fikrig E: West Nile virus: biology, transmission, and human infection. Clin Micro Rev 2012;25(4):635 [PMID: 20121004].

Gaensbauer JT, Lindsey NP, Messacar K, Staples JE, Fischer M: Neuroinvasive arboviral disease in the United States: 2003 to 2012. Pediatrics 2014;134(3):e642–e650 [PMID: 25113294].



DENGUE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Travel or residence in an endemic area.
- First infection (first episode) results in fever and rash; retro-orbital pain, severe myalgia, and arthralgia may occur.
- Second infection with a different serotype of dengue may result in dengue hemorrhagic fever (thrombocytopenia, bleeding, a plasma leak syndrome); this may progress to shock (dengue shock syndrome).

In endemic areas, more than 50 million cases of dengue occur each year, often in severe forms. In the United States, more than 400 cases are diagnosed, most often in travelers from the Caribbean or Asia and less often in those visiting Central and South America, making it the most common arboviral disease in travelers. Dengue is the second most common cause of fever (after malaria) in returning travelers. Dengue occurs in Mexico; Texas and Florida have sporadic indigenous outbreaks and the disease has been epidemic in Puerto Rico. The spread of dengue requires the Aedes mosquito (present in the southern United States), which transmits virus from a reservoir of viremic humans in endemic areas. Most patients have mild disease, especially young children, who may have a nonspecific fever and rash. Severity is a function of age, and prior infection with other serotypes of dengue virus is a prerequisite for severe hemorrhagic complications.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Dengue fever begins abruptly 4–7 days after transmission (range, 3–14 days) with fever, chills, severe retro-orbital pain, severe muscle and joint pain, nausea, and vomiting. Erythema of the face and torso may occur early. After 3–4 days, a centrifugal maculopapular rash appears in half of the patients described as "islands of white in a sea of red". The rash can become petechial, and mild hemorrhagic signs (epistaxis, gingival bleeding, microscopic blood in stool or urine) may be noted. The illness lasts 5–7 days, although rarely fever may reappear for several additional days. Fever may become relatively lower on the third day, only to become higher until defervescence. Since there are four serotypes of dengue virus, multiple sequential infections can occur.

B. Laboratory Findings

In most cases mild leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are common. Liver function tests are usually normal. Diagnosis is made by viral culture of plasma (50% sensitive up to the fifth day), detection of viral antigenemia (90% sensitive during the febrile phase of first infections), dengue PCR during the first 5 days, or detection of IgM-specific ELISA antibodies (70-80% sensitive at the sixth day), or by detecting a rise in type-specific antibody.

» Differential Diagnosis

This diagnosis should be considered for any traveler to an endemic area who has symptoms suggestive of a systemic viral illness, although less than 1 in 1000 travelers to these areas develops dengue. Often the areas visited have other indigenous pathogens circulating (eg, malaria, typhoid fever, leptospirosis, rickettsial diseases, other endemic alphaviruses and flaviviruses, and measles). Especially relevant in travelers from India, Indian Ocean islands, and now Central America and the Caribbean is chikungunya fever, which also presents with fever, and rash, but in 70% of cases is associated with arthralgia/arthritis, rather than myalgia as is seen with dengue. EBV, influenza, enteroviruses, and acute HIV infection may produce a similar illness. Dengue is not associated with sore throat or cough. An illness that starts 2 weeks after the trip ends or that lasts longer than 2 weeks is not dengue or chikungunya fever.

» Complications

More common in endemic areas is the appearance of dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF), which is defined by significant thrombocytopenia (< 100,000 platelets/μL, bleeding, and a plasma leak syndrome [hemoconcentration = hematocrit > 20% higher than baseline], hypoalbuminemia, and pleural or peritoneal effusions). This occurs most frequently with a second attack of dengue as a consequence antibody enhancement of virus entry into cells and increased cytokine responses; thus, it is rarely seen in typical travelers. DHF can also present in infants after primary dengue infection as a consequence of enhancement from maternal acquired antibodies. Dengue can be transmitted in utero from a pregnant woman infected within 2 weeks prior to delivery. Failure to recognize and treat DHF may lead to dengue shock syndrome, which is defined by signs of circulatory failure and hypotension or shock, and has a high fatality rate (10%). Neurologic complications such as encephalitis, myositis, myelitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and mononeuropathies are reported in 5%–10%. In endemic regions, dengue infection should be considered as one of the etiologies of encephalitis.

» Prevention

Prevention of dengue fever involves avoiding high-risk areas and using conventional mosquito avoidance measures. The main vector is a daytime feeder. At least one of the three dengue vaccines in development is now being registered and it has shown to prevent infection by half and reduce the risk of DHF by 90%.

» Treatment

Dengue fever is treated by oral rehydration and antipyretics avoiding nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents that affect platelet function. Recovery is complete without sequelae. The hemorrhagic syndrome requires prompt fluid therapy with plasma expanders and isotonic saline and close ICU monitoring.

Cleton N et al: Come fly with me: review of clinically important arboviruses for global travelers. J Clin Virol 2012;55(3):191 [PMID: 22840968].

Guzman MG, Harris E: Dengue. Lancet 2015;385(9966):453–465 [PMID: 25230594].

Simmons CP, Farrar JJ, van Vinh Chau N, Wills B: Dengue. N Engl J Med 2012;366(15):1423 [PMID: 22494122].

COLORADO TICK FEVER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Travel in endemic area; tick bite.
- Fever, chills, headache, retro-orbital pain, myalgia.
- Biphasic fever curve.
- Leukopenia early in the illness.

Colorado tick fever is endemic in the high plains and mountains of the central and northern Rocky Mountains and northern Pacific coast of the United States. The reservoir of the virus consists of squirrels and chipmunks. Many hundreds of cases of Colorado tick fever occur each year in visitors or laborers entering this region, primarily from May through July.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

After a 3- to 4-day incubation period (maximum, 14 days), fever begins suddenly together with chills, lethargy, headache, ocular pain, myalgia, abdominal pain, and nausea and vomiting. Conjunctivitis may be present. A nondistinctive maculopapular rash occurs in 5%–10% of patients. The illness lasts 7–10 days, and half of patients have a biphasic fever curve with several afebrile days in the midst of the illness.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukopenia is characteristic early in the illness. Platelets are modestly decreased. Specific ELISA testing is available, but 2–3 weeks may elapse before seroconversion. Fluorescent antibody staining will detect virus-infected erythrocytes during the illness and for weeks after recovery. Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) is available in some areas that will be positive within the first week of illness.

» Differential Diagnosis

Early findings, especially if rash is present, may suggest enterovirus, measles, or rubella infection. Enteric fever may be an early consideration because of the presence of leukopenia and thrombocytopenia. A history of tick bite, which is often obtained; information about local risk; and the biphasic fever pattern will help with the diagnosis. Because of the wilderness exposure, diseases such as leptospirosis, borreliosis, tularemia, ehrlichiosis, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever will be considerations.

» Complications

Meningoencephalitis occurs in 3%–7% of patients. Cardiac and pulmonary complications are rare.

» Prevention & Treatment

Prevention involves avoiding endemic areas and using conventional means to avoid tick bite. Therapy is supportive. Do not use analgesics that modify platelet function.

Meagher KE, Decker CF: Other tick-borne illnesses: tularemia, Colorado tick fever, tick paralysis. Dis Mon 2012;58(6):370 [PMID: 22608124].

OTHER MAJOR VIRAL CHILDHOOD EXANTHEMS

See section Infections due to Herpesviruses for a discussion of varicella and roseola, the two other major childhood exanthems.

ERYTHEMA INFECTIOSUM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever and rash with "slapped-cheek" appearance, followed by a symmetrical, full-body maculopapular rash.
- Arthritis in older children.
- Profound anemia in patients with impaired erythrocyte production.
- Nonimmune hydrops fetalis following infection of pregnant women.

» General Considerations

This benign exanthematous illness of school-aged children is caused by the human parvovirus B19. Spread is respiratory, occurring in winter–spring epidemics. A nonspecific mild flulike illness may occur during the viremia at 7–10 days; the characteristic rash occurring at 10–17 days represents an immune response. The patient is viremic and contagious prior to—but not after—the onset of rash.

Approximately half of infected individuals have a subclinical illness. Most cases (60%) occur in children between ages 5 and 15 years, with an additional 40% occurring later in life. Forty percent of adults are seronegative. The secondary attack rate in a school or household setting is 50% among susceptible children and 20%–30% among susceptible adults.

» Clinical Findings

Owing to the nonspecific nature of the exanthem and the many subclinical cases, a history of contact with an infected individual is often absent or unreliable. Recognition of the illness is easier during outbreaks.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Typically, the first sign of illness is the rash, which begins as raised, fiery red maculopapular lesions on the cheeks that coalesce to give a "slapped-cheek" appearance. The lesions are warm, nontender, and sometimes pruritic. They may be scattered on the forehead, chin, and postauricular areas, but the circumoral region is spared. Within 1–2 days, similar lesions appear on the proximal extensor surfaces of the extremities and spread distally in a symmetrical fashion. Palms and soles are usually spared. The trunk, neck, and buttocks are also commonly involved. Central clearing of confluent lesions produces a characteristic lacelike pattern. The rash fades in several days to several weeks, but frequently reappears in response to local irritation, heat (bathing), sunlight, and stress. Nearly 50% of infected children have some rash remaining (or recurring) for 10 days. Fine desquamation may be present. Mild low-grade fever, malaise, sore throat, and coryza occur in up to 50% of children. These symptoms appear for 2–3 days followed by a week-long asymptomatic phase before the rashes appear.

Purpuric stocking-glove rashes, neurologic disease, and severe disorders resembling hemolytic-uremic syndrome have also been described in association with parvovirus B19.

B. Laboratory Findings

A mild leukopenia occurs early in some patients, followed by leukocytosis and lymphocytosis. Specific IgM and IgG serum antibody tests are available, but care must be used in choosing a reliable laboratory for this test. IgM antibody is present in 90% of patients at the time of the rash. Nucleic acid detection tests are often definitive, but parvovirus DNA may be detectable in blood for prolonged periods. The disease is not diagnosed by routine viral culture.

» Differential Diagnosis

In children immunized against measles and rubella, parvovirus B19 is the most frequent agent of morbilliform and rubelliform rashes. The characteristic rash and the mild nature of the illness distinguish erythema infectiosum from other childhood exanthems. It lacks the prodromal symptoms of measles and the lymphadenopathy of rubella. Systemic symptoms and pharyngitis are more prominent with enteroviral infections and scarlet fever.

» Complications & Sequelae

A. Arthritis

Arthritis is more common in older patients, beginning with late adolescence. Approximately 10% of older children have severe joint symptoms. Girls are affected more commonly than boys. Pain and stiffness occur symmetrically in the peripheral joints. Arthritis usually follows the rash and may persist for 2–6 weeks, but resolves without permanent damage.

B. Aplastic Crisis and Other Hematologic Abnormalities

Parvovirus B19 replicates primarily in erythroid progenitor cells. Consequently, reticulocytopenia occurs for approximately 1 week during the illness. This goes unnoticed in individuals with a normal erythrocyte half-life, but results in severe anemia in patients with chronic hemolytic anemia.

Pure red cell aplasia, leukopenia, pancytopenia, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, and a hemophagocytic syndrome have been described. Patients with HIV infection and other immunosuppressive illnesses may develop prolonged anemia or pancytopenia. Patients with hemolytic anemia and aplastic crisis, or with immunosuppression, may be contagious and should be isolated while in the hospital.

C. Other End-Organ Infections

Parvovirus is under study as a potential cause of a variety of collagen-vascular diseases. Parvovirus has been associated with neurologic syndromes, hepatitis, and suppression of bone marrow lineages. It is implicated as a cause of myocarditis.

D. In Utero Infections

Infection of susceptible pregnant women may produce fetal infection with hydrops fetalis. Fetal death occurs in about 6% of cases, most often in the first 20 weeks. This rate of fetal loss is higher than expected in typical pregnancies. Congenital anomalies have not been associated with parvovirus B19 infection during pregnancy.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Erythema infectiosum is a benign illness for immunocompetent individuals. Patients with aplastic crisis may require blood transfusions. It is unlikely that this complication can be prevented by quarantine measures, because acute parvovirus infection in contacts is often unrecognized and is most contagious prior to the rash. Pregnant women who are exposed to erythema infectiosum or who work in a setting in which an epidemic occurs should be tested for evidence of prior infection. Susceptible pregnant women should then be followed up for evidence of parvovirus infection. Approximately 1.5% of women of childbearing age are infected during pregnancy. If maternal infection occurs, the fetus should be followed by ultrasonography for evidence of hydrops and distress. In utero transfusion or early delivery may salvage some fetuses. Pregnancies should not be terminated because of parvovirus infection. The risk of fetal death among exposed pregnant women of unknown serologic status is less than 2.5% for homemakers and less than 1.5% for school teachers.

Intramuscular immunoglobulin is not protective. High-dose IVIG has stopped viremia and led to marrow recovery in some cases of prolonged aplasia. Its role in immunocompetent patients and pregnant women is unknown.

Dijkmans AC et al: Parvovirus B19 in pregnancy: prenatal diagnosis and management of fetal complications. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2012;24(2):95 [PMID: 22249146].

Terhas G et al: Neurologic consequences of a parvovirus infection. J Clin Virol 2013;56(2):156 [PMID: 23182456].

MEASLES (RUBEOLA)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Exposure to measles 9–14 days previously.
- Prodrome (2–3 days) of fever, cough, conjunctivitis, and coryza.
- Koplik spots (few to many small white papules on a diffusely red base on the buccal mucosa) 1–2 days prior to and after onset of rash.
- Maculopapular rash spreading from the face and hairline to the trunk over 3 days and later becoming confluent.
- Leukopenia.

» General Considerations

Measles in one of the most contagious infectious diseases of childhood that presents as a febrile exanthema. The attack rate in susceptible individuals is extremely high; spread is via respiratory droplets. Considered eliminated from the United States in 2000, frequent outbreaks have occurred recently (644 cases in 2014, and 176 cases in the first 2 months of 2015), mainly due to lower vaccine coverage, increasing vaccine hesitancy, and importation. It is recommended that all children receive two doses prior to primary or secondary school entry (see Chapter 10). Morbidity and mortality rates in the developing world are substantial because of underlying malnutrition and secondary infections. Because humans are the sole reservoir of measles, there is the potential to eliminate this disease worldwide.

» Clinical Findings

A history of contact with a suspected case may be absent because airborne spread is efficient and patients are contagious during the prodrome. Contact with an imported case may not be recognized. In temperate climates, epidemic measles is a winter–spring disease. Because measles was uncommon in the United States, a high index of suspicion is required during outbreaks.

A. Symptoms and Signs

After 2–3 days of a prodrome of sneezing, eyelid edema, tearing, copious coryza, photophobia, and harsh cough, high fever and lethargy become prominent. Koplik spots are white macular lesions on the buccal mucosa, typically opposite the lower molars. These are almost pathognomonic for rubeola, although they may be absent. A discrete maculopapular rash begins when the respiratory symptoms and fever are maximal and spreads quickly from the face to the trunk, coalescing to a bright red. As it spreads to the extremities, the rash fades turning coppery from the face and is completely gone within 6 days; fine desquamation may occur. Diarrhea can occur in young children and lead to hospitalization; persistent fever and cough may signal pneumonia.

B. Laboratory Findings

Lymphopenia is characteristic. Total leukocyte count may fall to 1500/μL. The diagnosis is usually made by detection of measles IgM antibody in serum drawn at least 3 days after the onset of rash, and may be made later by detection of a significant rise in IgG antibody. Direct detection of measles antigen by fluorescent antibody staining of nasopharyngeal cells is a useful rapid method. PCR testing of oropharyngeal secretions or urine is extremely sensitive and specific and can detect infection up to 5 days before symptoms.

C. Imaging

Chest radiographs often show hyperinflation, perihilar infiltrates, or parenchymal patchy, fluffy densities. Secondary consolidation or effusion may be visible.

» Differential Diagnosis

Table 40–3 lists other illnesses that may resemble measles.

» Complications and Sequelae

A. Respiratory Complications

These occur in up to 15% of patients. Bacterial superinfection of the lungs, middle ear, sinus, and cervical nodes are most common. Fever that persists after the third or fourth day of rash and/or leukocytosis suggests such a complication. Bronchospasm, severe croup, and progressive viral pneumonia or bronchiolitis (in infants) also occur. Immunosuppressed patients are at much greater risk for fatal pneumonia than are immunocompetent patients.

B. Cerebral Complications

Encephalitis occurs in 1 in 2000 cases. Onset is usually within a week after appearance of rash. Symptoms include combativeness, ataxia, vomiting, seizures, and coma. Lymphocytic pleocytosis and a mildly elevated protein concentration are usual CSF findings, but the fluid may be normal. Forty percent of patients so affected die or have severe neurologic sequelae.

Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE) is a slow measles virus infection of the brain that becomes symptomatic years later in about 1 in 100,000 previously infected children. This progressive cerebral deterioration is associated with myoclonic jerks and a typical electroencephalographic pattern. It is fatal in 6–12 months. High titers of measles antibody are present in serum and CSF.

C. Other Complications

These include hemorrhagic measles (severe disease with multiorgan bleeding, fever, and cerebral symptoms), thrombocytopenia, appendicitis, keratitis, myocarditis, and premature delivery or stillbirth. Mild liver function test elevation is detected in up to 50% of cases in young adults; jaundice may also occur. Measles causes transient immunosuppression; thus, reactivation or progression of tuberculosis (including transient cutaneous anergy) can occur in children.

» Prevention

The current two-dose active vaccination strategy provides > 97% protection. Vaccine should not be withheld for concurrent mild acute illness, tuberculosis or positive tuberculin skin test, breast feeding, or exposure to an immunodeficient contact. The vaccine is recommended for HIV-infected children without severe HIV complications, with CD4 cells ≥ 15%, and preferably receiving antiretroviral therapy.

» Treatment and Prognosis

Vaccination prevents the disease in susceptible exposed individuals if given within 72 hours (see Chapter 10). Immunoglobulin (0.25 mL/kg intramuscularly; 0.5 mL/kg if immunocompromised) will prevent or modify measles if given within 6 days. Suspected cases should be diagnosed promptly and reported to the local health department.

Recovery generally occurs 7–10 days after onset of symptoms. Therapy is supportive: eye care, cough relief (avoid opioid suppressants in infants), and fever reduction (acetaminophen, lukewarm baths; avoid salicylates). Secondary bacterial infections should be treated promptly; antimicrobial prophylaxis is not indicated. Ribavirin is active in vitro and may be useful in infected immunocompromised children. In malnourished children, vitamin A supplementation should be given to avoid blindness and decrease mortality.

Mayo-Wilson E et al: Vitamin A supplementation for preventing mortality, illness, and blindness in children aged under 5: systematic review and meta-analysis. Brit Med J 2011;343:d5094 [PMID: 21868478].

Moss WJ, Griffin DE: Measles. Lancet 2012;379(9811):153 [PMID: 20120116].

RUBELLA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of rubella vaccination usually absent.
- Fever with postauricular and occipital adenopathy.
- Maculopapular rash beginning on face, rapidly spreading to the entire body, and disappearing by fourth day.
- Congenital infection.
  - Retarded growth and development.
  - Cataracts, retinopathy.
  - Purpuric "blueberry muffin" rash at birth.
  - Jaundice, thrombocytopenia.
  - Deafness.
  - Congenital heart defect.

» General Considerations

Rubella is a togavirus that causes a mild, self-limited exanthema (over 80% of infections are subclinical), but infection during pregnancy leads to teratogenicity and miscarriage. Rubella is transmitted by aerosolized respiratory secretions. Patients are infectious 5 days before until 5 days after the rash. Endemic rubella is absent in the United States and the Americas, and congenital rubella in infants born to unimmunized women and the occasional woman who is reinfected in pregnancy, is now very rare. Sporadic cases occur in migrants to the United States from Asia and Africa.

» Clinical Findings

The incubation period is 14–21 days. The nondistinctive signs may make exposure history unreliable. A history of immunization makes rubella unlikely but still possible. Congenital rubella usually follows maternal infection in the first trimester.

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Infection in children—Young children may only have rash. Older patients often have a nonspecific prodrome of low-grade fever, ocular pain, sore throat, and myalgia. Postauricular and suboccipital adenopathy (sometimes generalized) is characteristic. This often precedes the rash by one week or may occur without rash. The rash consists of erythematous discrete maculopapules beginning on the face and spreading to the trunk and extremities within 24 hours. Scarlatiniform, morbilliform and erythema infectiosum-like rash variants may occur. The rash fades from the face to extremities by the third day. Enanthema is usually absent.

2. Congenital infection—More than 80% of women infected in the first 4 months of pregnancy (25% near the end of the second trimester) deliver an affected infant; congenital disease occurs in less than 5% of women infected later in pregnancy. Later infections can result in isolated defects, such as deafness. The main manifestations are as follows:

a. Growth retardation—Between 50% and 85% of infants are small at birth and remain so.

b. Cardiac anomalies—Pulmonary artery stenosis, patent ductus arteriosus, ventricular septal defect.

c. Ocular anomalies—Cataracts, microphthalmia, glaucoma, retinitis.

d. Deafness—Sensorineural (> 50% of cases).

e. Cerebral disorders—Chronic encephalitis; retardation.

f. Hematologic disorders—Thrombocytopenia, dermal nests of extramedullary hematopoiesis or purpura ("blueberry muffin" rash), lymphopenia.

g. Others—Hepatitis, osteomyelitis, immune disorders, malabsorption, diabetes.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukopenia is common, and platelet counts may be low. Congenital infection is associated with low platelet counts, abnormal liver function tests, hemolytic anemia, and CSF pleocytosis in the newborn period. Virus may be isolated from oral secretions or urine from 1 week before to 2 weeks after onset of rash. Children with congenital infection are infectious for months. Direct RNA amplification (PCR) is now common and very sensitive. Serologic immunoassay diagnosis is best made by demonstrating a fourfold rise in antibody titer between specimens drawn 1–2 weeks apart. The first should be drawn promptly, because titers increase rapidly after onset of rash; both specimens must be tested simultaneously by a single laboratory. Rubella IgM is present in 50% of patients at the onset of the rash, but in almost all by 5 days later. Because the decision to terminate a pregnancy is usually based on serologic results, testing must be done carefully.

C. Imaging

Pneumonitis and bone metaphyseal longitudinal lucencies may be present in radiographs of children with congenital infection.

» Differential Diagnosis

Rubella may resemble infections due to measles, enterovirus, adenovirus, EBV, roseola, parvovirus, and T gondii. Drug reactions may also mimic rubella. Because public health implications are great, sporadic suspected cases should be confirmed serologically or virologically.

Congenital rubella must be differentiated from congenital CMV infection, toxoplasmosis, and syphilis.

» Complications & Sequelae

A. Arthralgia and Arthritis

Both occur more often in adult women. Polyarticular involvement (fingers, knees, wrists) lasting a few days to weeks is typical. Frank arthritis occurs in a small percentage of patients. It may resemble acute rheumatoid arthritis.

B. Encephalitis

With an incidence of about 1:6000, this is a parainfectious encephalitis associated with a low mortality rate. A syndrome resembling SSPE (see section on Measles) has also been described in congenital rubella.

C. Rubella in Pregnancy

Infection in the mother as in older children is self-limited and not severe.

» Prevention

Rubella is one of the infections that could be eradicated (see Chapter 10 for the indication and efficacy of rubella vaccine). Standard prenatal care should include rubella antibody testing. Seropositive mothers are at no risk; seronegative mothers are vaccinated after delivery.

A pregnant woman possibly exposed to rubella should be tested immediately; if seropositive, she is considered protected and without risk to the fetus. If she is seronegative, a second specimen should be drawn in 4 weeks, and both specimens should be tested simultaneously. Seroconversion in the first trimester is associated with high fetal risk; such women require counseling regarding therapeutic abortion.

When pregnancy termination is not an option, some experts recommend intramuscular administration of immunoglobulin (up to 0.55 mL/Kg IM) within 72 hours after exposure in an attempt to prevent infection. Only very small fractions of IgG are transferred to the fetus in early pregnancy and the efficacy of this practice is unknown.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Symptomatic therapy is sufficient. Arthritis may improve with administration of anti-inflammatory agents. The prognosis is poor in congenitally infected infants, in whom most defects are irreversible or progressive. The severe cognitive defects in these infants seem to correlate closely with the degree of growth failure.

Lambert N, Strebel P, Orensterin W, Icenogle J, Poland GA: Rubella. Lancet 2015 Jun 6;385(9984):2297–2307 [PMID: 25576992].

White SJ et al: Measles, mumps, and rubella. Clin Obstet Gynecol 2012;55(2):550 [PMID: 22510638].

° INFECTIONS DUE TO OTHER VIRUSES

HANTAVIRUS CARDIOPULMONARY SYNDROME

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Influenza-like prodrome (fever, myalgia, headache, cough).
- » Rapid onset of unexplained pulmonary edema and myocardiopathy.
- » Residence or travel in endemic area; exposure to aerosols from deer mouse droppings or secretions.

» General Considerations

Hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome is the first native bunyavirus infection endemic in the United States. This syndrome is distinctly different in mode of spread (no arthropod vector) and clinical picture from other bunyavirus diseases.

» Clinical Findings

Hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome has been confirmed in more than 34 states and Canada that have the appropriate rodent reservoirs. Epidemics occur when environmental conditions favor large increases in the rodent population and increased prevalence of virus.

A. Symptoms and Signs

After an incubation period of 1–3 weeks, onset is sudden, with a nonspecific virus-like prodrome: fever; back, hip, and leg pain; chills; headache; and nausea and vomiting. Abdominal pain may be present. Sore throat, conjunctivitis, rash, and adenopathy are absent, and respiratory symptoms are absent or limited to a dry cough. After 1–10 days (usually 3–7), dyspnea, tachypnea, and evidence of a pulmonary capillary leak syndrome appear. This often progresses rapidly over hours. Hypotension is common, not only from hypoxemia but also from myocardial dysfunction. Copious, amber-colored, nonpurulent secretions are common. Decreased cardiac output due to myocardiopathy and elevated systemic vascular resistance distinguish this disease from early bacterial sepsis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The hemogram shows leukocytosis with a prominent left shift and immunoblasts, thrombocytopenia, and hemoconcentration. Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) is elevated, as are liver function tests; serum albumin is low. Creatinine is elevated in some patients, and proteinuria is common. Lactic acidosis and low venous bicarbonate are poor prognostic signs. A serum IgM ELISA test is positive early in the illness. Otherwise, the diagnosis is made by specific staining of tissue or PCR, usually at autopsy.

C. Imaging

Initial chest radiographs are normal. Subsequent radiographs show bilateral interstitial infiltrates with the typical butterfly pattern of acute pulmonary edema, bibasilar airspace disease, or both. Significant pleural effusions are often present. These findings contrast with those of other causes of acute respiratory distress syndrome.

» Differential Diagnosis

In some geographic areas, plague and tularemia may be possibilities. Infections with viral respiratory pathogens

and Mycoplasma have a slower tempo, do not elevate the LDH, and do not cause the hematologic changes seen in this syndrome. Q fever, psittacosis, toxin exposure, legionellosis, and fungal infections are possibilities, but the history, tempo of the illness, and blood findings, as well as the exposure history, should be distinguishing features. Hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome is a consideration in previously healthy persons with a febrile illness associated with unexplained pulmonary edema.

» Treatment & Prognosis

There is no established antiviral therapy. Management should concentrate on oxygen therapy and mechanical ventilation as required. Because of capillary leakage, Swan-Ganz catheterization to monitor cardiac output and inotropic support—rather than fluid therapy—should be used to maintain perfusion. Venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation can provide short-term support for selected patients. The strains of virus present in North America are not spread by person-to-person contact. No isolation is required. The case fatality rate is 30%–40%. Guidelines are available for reduction of exposure to the infectious agent.

Knust B, Rollin PE: Twenty-year summary of surveillance for human hantavirus infections, United States. Emerg Infect Dis 2013;19(12):1934 [PMID: 24274585].

Sargianou M et al: Hantavirus infections for the clinician: from case presentation to diagnosis and treatment. Crit Rev Microbiol 2012;38(4):317 [PMID: 22553984].

MUMPS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- No prior mumps immunization or waning vaccine immunity
- Parotid gland swelling.
- Aseptic meningitis with or without parotitis.

» General Considerations

Mumps is one of the classic childhood infections. Mumps virus, a paramyxovirus, is spread by the respiratory route and attacks almost all nonprotected children (asymptomatically in 30%–40% of cases). As a result of prior clinical or subclinical infection, or childhood immunization, 95% of adults are immune, although immunity can wane in late adolescence. When the susceptibles accumulate occasional epidemics (~400 cases in 2012) can occur, which are aborted by reimmunization of the at-risk population. Infected patients are infectious from 2 days prior to 5 days after the onset of parotitis. The incubation period is 14–21 days. In an adequately immunized individual, parotitis is usually due to another cause. Currently in the United States, less than one case is reported per 100,000 population. The vaccine is so efficacious that clinical disease is rare in immunized children. However, an outbreak in Guam occurred even when most children had two doses of vaccine, likely spread by crowding.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Salivary gland disease—After a prodrome of fever, severe headache, aches and anorexia, tender swelling of parotid glands occurs (70%–80% bilateral). The ear is displaced upward and outward; the mandibular angle is obliterated. Parotid stimulation with sour foods may be quite painful. The orifice of the Stensen duct may be red and swollen; yellow secretions may be expressed, but pus is absent. Parotid swelling dissipates after 1 week.

2. Meningoencephalitis—Once the most common cause of aseptic meningitis, mumps meningitis was manifested by severe headache, vomiting, and/or asymptomatic mononuclear pleocytosis. Fewer than 10% of patients had clinical meningitis or encephalitis. Parotitis is present in only half of the cases of mumps meningoencephalitis. Although neck stiffness, nausea, and vomiting can occur, encephalitic symptoms are rare (1:4000 cases of mumps); recovery in 3–10 days is the rule.

3. Pancreatitis—Epigastric abdominal pain may represent transient pancreatitis. Because salivary gland disease may elevate serum amylase, specific markers of pancreatic function (lipase, amylase isoenzymes) are required for assessing pancreatic involvement.

4. Orchitis, oophoritis—Involvement of the gonads is associated with fever, local tenderness, and swelling and is second to parotitis as presentation of mumps in adolescents. Epididymitis is usually present. Most often unilateral it resolves in 1–2 weeks. Although one-third of infected testes atrophy, bilateral involvement and sterility are rare.

5. Other—Thyroiditis, mastitis (especially in adolescent females), arthritis, and presternal edema (occasionally with dysphagia or hoarseness) may be seen.

B. Laboratory Findings

Peripheral blood leukocyte count is usually normal. CSF may contain a modest number of cells (eg, 250 cells/μL,

predominantly lymphocytes), with mildly elevated protein and normal to slightly decreased glucose. Viral culture or PCR tests of saliva, throat, urine, or spinal fluid may be positive for at least 1 week after onset. Paired sera assayed by ELISA or a single positive IgM antibody test are currently used for diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

A history of contact with a child with parotitis is not proof of mumps exposure. Mumps parotitis may resemble cervical adenitis (the jaw angle may be obliterated, but the ear does not usually protrude; the Stensen duct orifice is normal; leukocytosis and neutrophilia are observed), bacterial parotitis (pus in the Stensen duct, toxicity, exquisite tenderness), recurrent parotitis (idiopathic or associated with calculi), tumors or leukemia, and tooth infections. Many viruses, including parainfluenza, enteroviruses, EBV, CMV, and influenza, can cause parotitis. Parotid swelling in HIV infection is less painful and tends to be bilateral and chronic, but bacterial parotitis occurs in some children with HIV infection.

Unless parotitis is present, mumps meningitis resembles that caused by enteroviruses or early bacterial infection. An elevated amylase level is a useful clue in this situation. Isolated pancreatitis is not distinguishable from many other causes of epigastric pain and vomiting. Mumps is a classic cause of orchitis, but torsion, bacterial or chlamydial epididymitis, Mycoplasma infection, other viral infections, hematomas, hernias, and tumors must also be considered.

» Complications

The major neurologic complication is nerve deafness (usually unilateral) which can result in inability to hear high tones. Although rare, occurring in less than 0.1% of cases of mumps, it may occur without meningitis. Aqueductal stenosis and hydrocephalus (especially following congenital infection), myocarditis, transverse myelitis, and facial paralysis are other rare complications.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment is supportive and includes provision of fluids, analgesics, and scrotal support for orchitis. Systemic corticosteroids have been used for orchitis, but their value is anecdotal.

Barskey AE et al: Viruses detected among sporadic cases of parotitis, United States, 2009–2011. J Infect Dis 2013;208:1979 [PMID: 23935203].

Mac Donald N, Hatchette T, Elkout L, Sarwal S: Mumps is back: why is mumps eradication not working? Adv Exper Med Biol 2011;697:197 [PMID: 20101201].

Ternavasio-de la Vega HG et al: Mumps orchitis in the postvaccine era (1967–2009): a single-center series of 67 patients and review of clinical outcome and trends. Medicine 2010;89(2):96 [PMID: 20517181].

White SJ et al: Measles, mumps, and rubella. Clin Obstet Gynecol 2012;55(2):550 [PMID: 22510638].

RABIES

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of animal bite 10 days to 1 year (usually < 90 days) previously.
- Paresthesias or hyperesthesia in bite area.
- Progressive limb and facial weakness in some patients (dumb rabies; 30%).
- Irritability followed by fever, confusion, combativeness, muscle spasms (especially pharyngeal with swallowing) in all patients (furious rabies).
- Rabies antigen detected in corneal scrapings or tissue obtained by brain or skin biopsy; Negri bodies seen in brain tissue.

» General Considerations

Rabies is an acute progressive CNS viral zoonotic infection. It remains a serious public health problem wherever animal immunization is not widely practiced or when humans play or work in areas with sylvan rabies. Infection is almost invariably fatal and will occur in 40% after rabid animal bites. Any warm-blooded animal may be infected, but susceptibility and transmissibility vary with different species. Bats often carry and excrete the virus in saliva or feces for prolonged periods; they are the major cause of rabies in the United States. Dogs and cats, responsible for most rabies in the world, are usually clinically ill within 10 days after becoming contagious (the standard quarantine period for suspect animals). Valid quarantine periods or signs of illness are not fully known for many species. Rodents rarely transmit infection. Animal vaccines are very effective when properly administered, but a single inoculation may fail to produce immunity in up to 20% of dogs.

The risk is assessed according to the type of animal (high-risk animals include bats, raccoons, skunks, and foxes), wound extent and location (infection more common after head or hand bites, or if wounds have extensive salivary contamination and are not quickly and thoroughly cleaned), geographic area (urban rabies is rare to nonexistent in the US cities; rural rabies is possible, especially outside the United States), and animal vaccination history (risk low if

documented). Most rabies in the United States is caused by bat genotypes, yet a history of bat bite is often not obtained especially in young children. Aerosolized virus in caves inhabited by bats has caused infection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most cases occur within 3–12 weeks of exposure and may present with vague symptoms. Paresthesia at the bite site is usually the first symptom. Nonspecific anxiety, excitability, or depression follows, then muscle spasms, drooling, hydrophobia, delirium, and lethargy. Swallowing or even the sensation of air blown on the face may cause pharyngeal spasms. Seizures, fever, cranial nerve palsies, coma, and death follow within 7–14 days after onset. In a minority of patients, the spastic components are initially absent and the symptoms are primarily flaccid paralysis and cranial nerve defects. The furious components appear subsequently.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukocytosis is common. CSF is usually normal, but may show elevation of protein and mononuclear cell pleocytosis. Cerebral imaging and electroencephalography are not diagnostic. Infection in an animal may be determined by use of the fluorescent antibody test to examine brain tissue for antigen. Rabies virus is excreted in the saliva of infected humans, but the diagnosis is usually made by antigen detection in scrapings or tissue samples of richly innervated epithelium, such as the cornea or the hairline of the neck. Classic Negri cytoplasmic inclusion bodies in brain tissue are not always present. Seroconversion measured by neutralizing antibody occurs after 7–10 days and clinical recovery has been associated with detection of neutralizing antibody and clearance of infectious rabies virus in the CNS.

» Differential Diagnosis

Failure to elicit the bite history in areas where rabies is rare may delay diagnosis. Other disorders to be considered include parainfectious encephalopathy; encephalitis due to herpes simplex, mosquito-borne viruses, or other causes of viral encephalitis or acute paralysis. However, classic furious rabies is not readily confused with these alternative diagnoses.

» Prevention

See Chapter 10 for information regarding vaccination and postexposure prophylaxis. Rabies immunoglobulin and diploid cell vaccine have made prophylaxis more effective and minimally toxic. Because rabies is almost always fatal, presumed exposures must be managed carefully.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Survival is very rare, but it has been reported in a very small number of patients receiving meticulous intensive care and the Milwaukee protocol that focuses on the altered CNS metabolic state. Early diagnosis is important for the protection and postexposure prophylaxis of patient contacts.

Yousaf MZ et al: Rabies molecular virology, diagnosis, prevention and treatment. Virol J 2012;9:50 [PMID: 22348291].

RICkETTSIAL INFECTIONS

Rickettsiae are pleomorphic, gram-negative coccobacilli that are obligate intracellular parasites. Rickettsial diseases are often included in the differential diagnosis of febrile rashes. Severe headache, myalgia, and pulmonary symptoms are prominent manifestations of rickettsial disease. The endothelium is the primary target tissue, and the ensuing vasculitis is responsible for severe illness.

All rickettsioses are transmitted by arthropod contact (ticks, fleas, lice—depending on the disease), either by bite or by contamination of skin breaks with vector feces. Except Rocky Mountain spotted fever and murine typhus, all other rickettsial diseases have a characteristic eschar at the bite site, called the tache noire. Evidence of arthropod contact by history or physical examination may be lacking, especially in young children. The geographic distribution of the vector is often the primary determinant for suspicion of these infections. Therapy often must be empiric. Many new broad-spectrum antimicrobials are inactive against these cell wall–deficient organisms; tetracycline is usually effective.

Q fever, which is not a rickettsiae, is included here because it was long classified as such and, like rickettsiae, is an obligate intracellular bacterium. It is not transmitted by an insect vector and is not characterized by rash.

HUMAN EHRLICHIOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Residing or travel in endemic area when ticks are active.
- Tick bite noted (~75%).
- Fever, headache, rash (~67%), gastrointestinal symptoms.
- Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, elevated serum transaminases, hypoalbuminemia.
- Definitive diagnosis by specific serology.

In children, the major agent of North American human ehrlichiosis is Ehrlichia chaffeensis. The reservoir hosts are

probably wild rodents, deer, and sheep; ticks are the vectors. Most cases caused by this agent are reported in the south-central, southeastern, and middle Atlantic states (Arkansas, Missouri, Oklahoma, Kentucky, Tennessee, and North Carolina are high-prevalence areas). Almost all cases occur between March and October, when ticks are active.

A second ehrlichiosis syndrome, seen in the upper Midwest and Northeast (Connecticut, Wisconsin, Minnesota, and New York are high-prevalence areas), is caused by Anaplasma phagocytophilum and Ehrlichia ewingii. Anaplasmosis also occurs in the western United States. Several new pathogenic Ehrlichia species have been discovered recently.

E chaffeensis has a predilection for mononuclear cells, whereas A phagocytophilum and E ewingii infect and produce intracytoplasmic inclusions in granulocytes. Hence, diseases caused by these agents are referred to as human monocytic ehrlichiosis or human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, respectively. Ehrlichiosis, Lyme disease, and babesiosis share some tick vectors; thus, dual infections can occur and should be considered in patients who fail to respond to therapy.

» Clinical Findings

In approximately 75% of patients, a history of tick bite can be elicited. The majority of the remaining patients report having been in a tick-infested area. The usual incubation period is 5–21 days.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Fever is universally present and headache is common (less so in children). Gastrointestinal symptoms (abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting) are reported in most pediatric patients. Distal limb edema may occur. Chills, photophobia, conjunctivitis, and myalgia occur in more than half of patients. Rash occurs in ~50% of children with monocytic ehrlichiosis and is less common in granulocytic ehrlichiosis. Rash may be erythematous, macular, papular, petechial, scarlatiniform, or vasculitic. Meningitis occurs. Interstitial pneumonitis, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and renal failure occur in severe cases. Physical examination reveals rash (not usually palms and soles), mild adenopathy, and hepatomegaly. In children without a rash, infection may present as a fever of unknown origin.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory abnormalities include leukopenia with left shift, lymphopenia, thrombocytopenia, and elevated aminotransferase levels. Hypoalbuminemia and hyponatremia are common. Disseminated intravascular coagulation can occur in severe cases. Anemia occurs in one-third of patients. CSF pleocytosis (mononuclear cells; increased protein) is common. The definitive diagnosis is made serologically, either by a single high titer or a fourfold rise in titer. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention uses an immunofluorescent antibody test to distinguish between the etiologic agents. Intracytoplasmic inclusions (morulae) may occasionally be observed in mononuclear cells in monocytic ehrlichiosis, and are usually observed in polymorphonuclear cells from the peripheral blood or bone marrow in granulocytic ehrlichiosis. Specific PCR testing can provide an early diagnosis where this is available.

» Differential Diagnosis

In regions where these infections exist, ehrlichiosis should be included in the differential diagnosis of children who present during tick season with fever, leukopenia or thrombocytopenia (or both), increased serum transaminase levels, and rash. The differential diagnosis includes septic or toxic shock, other rickettsial infections (especially Rocky Mountain spotted fever), Colorado tick fever, leptospirosis, Lyme borreliosis, relapsing fever, EBV, CMV, viral hepatitis and other viral infections, Kawasaki disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, and leukemia.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Asymptomatic or clinically mild and undiagnosed infections are common in some endemic areas. The disease may last several weeks if untreated. One-quarter of hospitalized children require intensive care. Meningoencephalitis and persisting neurologic deficits occur in 5%–10% of patients. Doxycycline, 2 mg/kg every 12 hours (IV or PO; maximum 100 mg per dose) for 7–10 days, is the treatment of choice. Patients with suspected disease must be treated preemptively concurrently with attempts to establish the diagnosis. Response to therapy should be evident in 24–48 hours. Deaths are uncommon in children. Immune compromise and asplenia are risk factors for severe disease.

Pujalte GG, Chua JV: Tick-borne infections in the United States. Prim Care Clin Office Pract 2013;40:619 [PMID: 23958360].

St. Clair K, Decker CF: Ehrlichioses: anaplasmosis and human ehrlichiosis. Disease-A-Month 2012;58(6):346 [PMID: 22608121].

ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Residing or travel in endemic area when ticks are active.
- Fever, rash (palms and soles), gastrointestinal symptoms, headache.
- Tick bite reported (50%).
- Thrombocytopenia, hyponatremia.
- Definitive diagnosis by specific serology.

Rickettsia rickettsii causes one of many similar tick-borne illnesses characterized by fever and rash that occur worldwide. Most are named after their geographic area. Dogs and rodents, as well as large mammals, are reservoirs of R rickettsii.

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is the most severe rickettsial infection and the most important (~2000 cases per year) in the United States. It occurs predominantly along the eastern seaboard; in the southeastern states; and in Arkansas, Missouri, and Oklahoma. It is much less common in the west. Most cases occur in children exposed in rural areas from April to September. Infection can be acquired from dog ticks.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

After the incubation period of 3–12 days (mean, 7 days), there is high fever (> 40°C, often hectic), usually of abrupt onset, myalgia, severe and persistent headache (retro-orbital), toxicity, photophobia, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. A rash occurs in more than 95% of patients and appears 2–6 days after fever onset as macules and papules; most characteristic (65%) is involvement of the palms, soles, and extremities; the face is spared. The rash becomes petechial and spreads centrally from the extremities. The rash reflects infection of endothelial cells, which also causes vascular leak and resulting edema, hypovolemia, and hypotension. Conjunctivitis, splenomegaly, pneumonitis, meningismus, and confusion may occur.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings reflect diffuse vasculitis: thrombocytopenia, hyponatremia, early mild leukopenia, proteinuria, mildly abnormal liver function tests, hypoalbuminemia, and hematuria. CSF pleocytosis is common. Serologic diagnosis is achieved with indirect fluorescent or latex agglutination antibody methods, but generally is informative only 7–10 days after onset of the illness. Skin biopsy with specific fluorescent staining is a specific and moderately sensitive diagnostic method available during the first week of the illness.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes meningococcemia, measles, meningococcal meningitis, staphylococcal sepsis, EBV infection, enteroviral infection, leptospirosis, Colorado tick fever, scarlet fever, murine typhus, Kawasaki disease, and ehrlichiosis.

» Treatment & Prognosis

To be effective, therapy for Rocky Mountain spotted fever must be started early, most often on the basis of a high clinical suspicion prior to rash onset in endemic areas. It is important to remember that atypical presentations, such as the absence of pathognomonic rash, can lead to delay in appropriate therapy. Rash is rarely present during the first day of diagnosis and in 50% within 3 days of onset of fever. Doxycycline is the treatment of choice for children, regardless of age. Dosing is 2 mg/kg every 12 hours (IV or PO; maximum 100 mg per dose) for 2 or 3 days after the temperature has returned to normal for a full day. A minimum of 10 days of therapy is recommended. Because tick attachment lasting 6 hours or longer is needed, frequent tick removal is a preventive measure.

Complications and death result from severe vasculitis, especially in the brain, heart, and lungs. The mortality rate is 5%–7%. Persistent neurologic deficits occur in 10%–15% of children who recover. Delay in therapy is an important determinant of sequelae and mortality.

Lin L, Decker CF: Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Dis Mo 2012;58(6):361 [PMID: 22608123].

Woods CR: Rocky mountain spotted fever in children. Pediatr Clin N Am 2013;60:455 [PMID: 23481111].

ENDEMIC TYPHUS (MURINE TYPHUS)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Residing in endemic area.
- » Fever for 10–14 days.
- » Headache, chills, myalgia.
- » Maculopapular rash spreading from trunk to extremities (not on palms and soles) 3–7 days after fever onset.
- » Definitive diagnosis by serology.

Endemic typhus is present in the southern United States, mainly in southern Texas, and in Southern California, and in Hawaii. The disease is transmitted by fleas from infected rodents or inhalation of rodent feces. Domestic cats, dogs, and opossums may play a role in the transmission of suburban cases. No eschar appears at the inoculation site. The incubation period is 6–14 days. Headache, myalgia and arthralgia, and chills slowly worsen. Fever may last 10–14 days. After 3–7 days, a rash appears. Truncal macules and papules spread to the extremities; the rash is rarely petechial and resolves in less than 5 days. The location of the rash in typhus, with sparing of the palms and soles, helps distinguish the disease from Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Rash may be absent in 20%–40% of patients. Hepatomegaly

may be present. Intestinal and respiratory symptoms may occur. Mild thrombocytopenia and elevated liver enzymes may be present. Prolonged neurologic symptoms can occur. Clinicians in endemic areas should consider early treatment when presented with a child with protracted fever, rash, and headache. Doxycycline is the drug of choice, which should be continued for 3 days after evidence of clinical improvement. Fluorescent antibody and ELISA tests are available.

Liddel PW, Sparks MJ: Murine typhus: endemic Rickettsia in southwest Texas. Clin Lab Sci 2012;25(2):81 [PMID: 20120614].

Q FEVER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Exposure to farm animals (sheep, goats, cattle) and pets.
- Flu-like illness (fever, severe headache, myalgia).
- Cough; atypical pneumonia.
- Hepatomegaly and hepatitis.
- Diagnosis by serology.

Coxiella burnetii is transmitted by inhalation rather than by an arthropod bite. Q fever is also distinguished from rickettsial diseases by the infrequent occurrence of cutaneous manifestations and by the prominence of pulmonary disease. The birth tissues and excreta of domestic animals and of some rodents are major infectious sources. The organisms may be carried long distances in fine particle aerosols. Unpasteurized milk from infected animals may also transmit disease.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most patients have a self-limited flu-like syndrome of chills, fever, severe headache, and myalgia of abrupt onset occurring 10–25 days after exposure. Abdominal pain, vomiting, chest pain, and dry cough are prominent in children. Examination of the chest may yield few findings, as in other atypical pneumonias. Hepatosplenomegaly is common. The illness lasts 1–4 weeks and frequently is associated with weight loss. Only about 50% of infected patients develop significant symptoms.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukopenia with left shift is characteristic. Thrombocytopenia is unusual, which is another distinction from rickettsial diseases. Aminotransferase and γ-glutamyl transferase levels are elevated, but significant bilirubin elevation is unusual. Diagnosis is made by finding an antibody response (fourfold rise or single high titer in ELISA; IFA, or CF antibody assay) to the phase II organism. Chronic infection is indicated by antibody against the phase I organism. IgM ELISA and specific PCR tests are available.

C. Imaging

Pneumonitis occurs in 50% of patients. Multiple segmental infiltrates are common, but the radiographic appearance is not pathognomonic. Consolidation and pleural effusion are rare.

Differential Diagnosis

In the appropriate epidemiologic setting, Q fever should be considered in evaluating causes of atypical pneumonias, such as M pneumoniae, viruses, Legionella, and C pneumoniae. It should also be included among the causes of mild to moderate hepatitis without rash or adenopathy in children with exposure to farm animals.

Treatment & Prognosis

Typically the illness lasts 1–2 weeks without therapy. The course of the uncomplicated illness is shortened with doxycycline. Therapy is continued for several days after the patient becomes afebrile (usually 10–14 days). Quinolones are also effective.

One complication is chronic disease, which often implies myocarditis or granulomatous hepatitis. Meningoencephalitis is a rare complication. C burnetii is also one of the causes of "culture-negative" endocarditis. Coxiella endocarditis often occurs in the setting of valve abnormalities and is difficult to treat; mortality approaches 50%.

Bart YI et al: Pediatric acute Q fever mimics other common childhood illnesses. PLos One 2014;9(2):e88677 [PMID: 2452042].
Gikas A et al: Q fever: clinical manifestations and treatment. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2010;8(5):529 [PMID: 20455682].

41 Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection

Elizabeth J. McFarland, MD

» General Considerations

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is a retrovirus that primarily infects cells of the immune system, including helper T lymphocytes (CD4 T lymphocytes), monocytes, and macrophages. The function and number of CD4 T lymphocytes and other affected cells are diminished by HIV infection, resulting in profound effects on both humoral and cell-mediated immunity. In the absence of treatment, HIV infection causes generalized immune incompetence, with progression from mild to severe symptoms/diagnoses, the latter of which are conditions that meet the definition of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and, eventually, death. The clinical diagnosis of AIDS is made when an HIV-infected individual develops any of the Stage 3 opportunistic illnesses or other conditions listed in Table 41–1. In adults and children older than 6 years, the criteria for a diagnosis of AIDS also include an absolute CD4 T-lymphocyte count of 200 cells/μL or less.

» Epidemiology

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimated in 2014 that there were 36.9 million adults and 2.6 million children living with HIV (http://www.who.int/hiv/data/epi_core_july2015.png?ua=1). Over 90% live in low- and middle-income countries, primarily sub-Saharan Africa and South and Southeast Asia. Although the number of new infections is estimated to have peaked globally in 1997, infection and mortality rates remain high. Among children younger than 15 years, there were 220,000 new infections and 150,000 deaths in 2014. High rates of new pediatric infections are the result of ongoing mother-to-child transmission (MTCT) in resource-limited settings where access to preventative measures is often not accessible; fewer than 67% of pregnant women received recommend treatment in 2013 (http://www.who.int/hiv/data/arvpmtct2014.png?ua=1).

MTCT rates would be 20%–40% overall, if there is no intervention. Transmission occurs in utero, at the time of labor and delivery (peripartum), or during breast-feeding (postnatal transmission). However, MTCT can be reduced to less than 1%–2% with prenatal, perinatal, and postnatal interventions (see section Prevention). The successful implementation of these interventions in the United States has made new vertically acquired HIV cases rare (< 200 cases annually). In the United States, the number of children younger than 13 years living with HIV was estimated at 2579 in 2012 (http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/2013/surveillance_Report_vol_25.html#3). As a result of effective combination antiretroviral treatment (cART), perinatally infected children who receive treatment are surviving into adolescence and young adulthood. In the United States, perinatally infected individuals comprised 22% of those living with HIV in the 13- to 24-year-old age group.

After puberty, infections result primarily from sexual contact (men having sex with men [MSM] and heterosexual), with a smaller proportion resulting from injecting drug use. In recent years, there have been approximately 50,000 new HIV-1 infections annually in the United States among which youth are overrepresented, since the proportion of new infections among young people aged 13–29 years exceeds this age group's proportion in the total population (39% of new HIV infections vs 21% in the total population). Most at risk are young black MSM, who accounted for 45% of new HIV infections overall, and 55% of new HIV infections among young MSM (http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/statistics/basics/ataglance.html).

Occupational exposure resulting from accidental needle sticks or, rarely, mucosal exposure to blood may occur. As a result of careful donor screening and testing of donated blood, HIV transmission resulting from blood products is now extremely rare in the United States (1:2,000,000 transfusions). Casual, classroom, or household contact with an HIV-infected person poses no risk of transmission.

Table 41–1. HIV-related symptoms in children.

Mild symptoms

Having two or more of the following conditions:
Lymphadenopathy
Hepatomegaly
Splenomegaly
Dermatitis
Parotitis
Recurrent or persistent upper respiratory infection, sinusitis, or otitis media

Moderate symptoms

Anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia
Bacterial meningitis, pneumonia, sepsis (single episode)
Candidiasis, oropharyngeal, persisting > 2 mo, in a child > 6 mo of age
Cardiomyopathy
Cytomegalovirus infection with onset < age 1 mo
Diarrhea, recurrent or chronic
Hepatitis
Herpes simplex virus stomatitis (> 2 episodes in 1 y), bronchitis, pneumonitis, esophagitis at < 1 mo of age
Herpes zoster, two or more episodes or more than one dermatome
Leiomyosarcoma
Lymphoid interstitial pneumonia
Nephropathy
Nocardiosis
Persistent fever (lasting > 1 mo)
Toxoplasmosis with onset < age 1 mo
Varicella, complicated

Severe (Stage 3-defining) opportunistic illnesses and other conditions

Bacterial infections, multiple or recurrent[a]
Candidiasis of bronchi, trachea, or lungs
Candidiasis of esophagus
Cervical cancer, invasive[b]
Coccidioidomycosis, disseminated or extrapulmonary
Cryptococcosis, extrapulmonary
Cryptosporidiosis, chronic intestinal, (> 1 mo duration)
Cytomegalovirus disease (other than liver, spleen, or nodes) with onset > age 1 mo
Cytomegalovirus retinitis (with loss of vision)
Encephalopathy attributed to HIV
Herpes simplex virus: chronic oral lesions (> 1 mo), or bronchitis, pneumonitis, or esophagitis (onset at > age 1 mo)
Histoplasmosis, disseminated or extrapulmonary
Isosporiasis, chronic intestinal (> 1 mo duration)
Kaposi sarcoma
Lymphoma: Burkitt, immunoblastic, or primary lesion in brain
Mycobacterium avium complex or Mycobacterium kansasii, disseminated or extrapulmonary
Mycobacterium tuberculosis of any site, pulmonary[b], disseminated, extrapulmonary
Mycobacterium, other species or unidentified, disseminated or extrapulmonary
Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia
Pneumonia, recurrent[b]
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
Salmonella septicemia, recurrent
Toxoplasmosis of the brain with onset > age 1 mo
Wasting syndrome

[a]Only among children age < 6 years.
[b]Only among adults, adolescents, and children ≥ 6 years.
Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection—United States, 2014, MMWR Recomm Rep. 2014 Apr 11;63(RR-03):1-10 and AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Pediatric HIV infection, 1/21/16.

Center for Disease Control and Prevention: Estimated HIV incidence in the United States, 2007–2010. HIV Surveillance Supplemental Report, 2012. 17(No. 4). Published December 2012. Accessed May 10, 2015.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: HIV Surveillance Report, 2014. Vol 25. http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/. Published November 2015. Accessed January 30, 2016.
World Health Organization (WHO): HIV/AIDS Data and statistics. Available at: http://www.who.int/hiv/data/en/. Accessed January 30, 2016.

» Pathogenesis and Disease Course

In most cases, HIV infection occurs via mucosal exposure. At the time of exposure, virus breaches the mucosal barrier, is transported to regional lymph nodes, replicates, and spreads throughout all lymphoid tissues. Based on nonhuman primate models, replicating virus is found throughout the lymphoid tissue by 48 hours postinfection. During the first days after infection, there is a massive loss of mature CD4 T-helper lymphocytes, especially in the gut mucosa. Approximately 2 weeks after exposure, high levels of HIV are detected in the bloodstream. In adults without therapy, the level of viremia declines concurrent with the appearance of an HIV-specific host immune response, and plasma viremia usually reaches a steady-state level about 6 months after primary infection. The amount of virus present in the plasma at that point, known as the "set point," and thereafter is predictive of the rate of disease progression for the individual. A period of clinical latency usually occurs, lasting

from 1 year to more than 12 years, during which the infected person is asymptomatic. However, ongoing viremia and immune activation causes subclinical injury to the immune system. The virus and anti-HIV immune responses are in a steady state such that CD4 T-lymphocyte parameters may be stable. Eventually, the balance favors the virus, and the viral burden increases as the CD4 T-lymphocyte count declines, at which time the individual becomes susceptible to opportunistic illnesses.

Infants with in utero HIV infection have virus detectable in the blood at birth. Those infected peripartum test negative for virus at birth but have virus detected by 2–4 weeks of age. Infant viremia rises steeply, reaching a peak at age 1–2 months. In contrast with adults, infants have a gradual decline in plasma viremia that extends to age 4–5 years. Up to 50% of infants will have rapid disease progression to AIDS or death by age 2 years. Although this rapid progression is associated with high-level viremia, measurement of plasma virus and/or CD4 T-lymphocyte parameters do not identify all infants at risk for rapid progression.

Combination antiretroviral treatment (cART) can forestall disease progression for many years (≥ 20 years). However, cells with latent HIV infection persist and viral replication recurs if cART is interrupted. Therefore, with current regimens, treatment must be lifelong. Even with effective viral suppression, ongoing immune activation results in cardiovascular and central nervous system damage consistent with premature aging. Nevertheless, HIV infection can be considered a chronic disease for people with access to treatment, rather than an acutely terminal disease.

Bamford A, Lyall H: Paediatric HIV grows up: recent advances in perinatally acquired HIV. Arch Dis Child 2015;100(2):183–188 [PMID: 25187496].

Maartens G, Celum C, Lewin SR: HIV infection: epidemiology, pathogenesis, treatment, and prevention. Lancet 2014;384(9939):258–271 [PMID: 24907868].

PERINATALLY HIV-EXPOSED INFANT

» Clinical Findings

Newborns with perinatal HIV infection rarely have symptoms or physical examination findings at birth, and there is no recognized primary infection syndrome in infants. However, 30%–80% of infected infants develop symptoms within the first year of life. Hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, parotitis, and recurrent respiratory tract infections are signs associated with slow progression. Severe bacterial infections, progressive neurologic disease, anemia, and fever are associated with rapid progression. Initiation of cART in early infancy can prevent disease progression and is associated with fewer CD4 T cells with persistent HIV infection. Hence, early diagnosis is critical and can be accomplished using laboratory testing during the first weeks of life.

» Laboratory Diagnosis

Infants born to HIV-infected mothers will have transplacental maternal HIV antibody regardless of their infection status. The median time to seroreversion is 13.9 months and most uninfected infants become antibody negative by 18 months; in a minority of infants, however, maternal antibody is detected until age 24 months. Therefore, early diagnosis must be made by direct detection of virus. Age-specific laboratory criteria defining infection status are outlined in Table 41–2. The preferred test for infant diagnosis is detection of HIV nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) in blood. Positive HIV nucleic acid testing (NAT) at any age requires a subsequent sample for confirmation to rule out a false positive, particularly for a test with low RNA copy number (< 5000 copies/mL), and lab error. Interestingly, some HIV-infected infants treated very early in infancy do not develop a serologic response to HIV and are HIV antibody-negative after clearance of maternal antibody, despite documentation of infection by direct viral detection.

HIV NAT is positive in blood at birth for the fraction of infants infected in utero but negative for infants who acquire infection at birth. Almost all infected infants with either in utero or peripartum acquisition will have detectable HIV NAT by 2 weeks of life, over 95% will have detectable virus by 4 weeks, and virtually all by 4 months. Thus, infection can be "presumptively" excluded by negative HIV NAT at age 2 and 4 weeks, in the absence of breast-feeding. Definitive evidence of absence of infection is defined by negative HIV NAT at greater than 1 and 4 months. At 12–24 months of age, for infants with negative HIV NAT, many clinicians will obtain HIV antibody testing to demonstrate reversion to seronegative status.

Breast-fed infants may acquire HIV at any time until they are fully weaned, and virus may not be detected until several weeks or months after exposure. Therefore, breast milk–exposed infants should be tested at 6 weeks, 3 months, and 6 months after their last exposure.

» Management and Outcome of the Perinatally HIV-Exposed Infant

Antiretroviral (ARV) prophylaxis for 6 weeks is recommended for infants born to HIV-infected mothers, with or without breast milk exposure. During the period of ARV prophylaxis, some infants have reversible anemia or neutropenia that is usually not clinically significant. Subsequently, children who have been exposed to HIV and to ARV prophylaxis (but who remain uninfected) are generally healthy, but some studies in resource-limited setting find higher morbidity and mortality among exposed, uninfected

Table 41–2. Age-specific laboratory criteria defining infection status.

Age < 18 mo:

Infected:

- Positive results on two separate determinations on blood or tissue (excluding cord blood) for one or more of the following HIV detection tests: HIV nucleic acid detection (DNA or RNA), HIV antigen (p24), HIV nucleotide sequence (genotype), HIV culture.

Definitively uninfected—lacking prior positive nucleic acid tests or clinical evidence of HIV infection (see Table 41–1) and one of the following:

- Two negative HIV nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) detection tests from separate specimens, one obtained at age ≥ 1 mo and another at age ≥ 4 mo.

Or

- Two negative HIV antibody tests from separate specimens obtained at age ≥ 6 mo.

Presumptively uninfected—lacking prior positive nucleic acid tests or clinical evidence of HIV infection (see Table 41–1) and one of the following:

- Two negative HIV nucleic acid detection (DNA or RNA) tests from separate specimens, one obtained at age ≥ 2 wk and another at age ≥ 4 wk.

Or

- One negative HIV nucleic acid detection test obtained at age ≥ 8 wk.

Age ≥ 18 mo[a]:

Infected: Any combination of the following tests demonstrated on at least two separate occasions:

- A multitest algorithm including a positive HIV antibody or antigen/antibody test with a positive confirmatory test using a different test principle. Tests methods may include conventional or rapid immunoassays, an HIV-1/2 differentiating test, HIV Western blot, immune fluorescent test.
- Positive HIV nucleic acid amplification test (HIV DNA or RNA), HIV antigen (p24), HIV nucleotide sequence (genotype), HIV culture.

[a]Although the majority of exposed infants are antibody negative by 18 mo of age, in some studies, up to 14% of exposed children have detectable HIV antibodies until age 24 months. If needed, positive HIV NAT testing differentiates infection from persistent maternal antibodies.

Adapted with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection--United States, 2014, MMWR Recomm Rep. 2014 Apr 11;63(RR-03):1-10.

infants. Alterations in growth, neurocognitive development, immune, and organ function parameters are also reported in this population, but their clinical significance is not yet known. Some studies have found symptoms consistent with mitochondrial toxicity associated with ARV exposure; other studies have failed to confirm these findings. There is biological plausibility for this toxicity because the nucleoside analogue drugs used for prevention of mother to child transmission (PMTCT) may cause mitochondrial toxicity. The issue remains controversial, but at present it is clear that the benefit of prenatal and postnatal treatment to prevent HIV transmission outweighs the potential risk. Ongoing studies are important to elucidate the effects of in utero and perinatal HIV and ARV exposure.

HIV-infected infants have a high risk of Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia (PCP), with the peak incidence at age 2–6 months. Thus, prophylaxis for P jiroveci pneumonia is given to infants born to HIV-infected mothers beginning at age 4–6 weeks. PCP prophylaxis may be deferred for infants who are demonstrated to be presumptively HIV-uninfected by age 6 weeks. Infants with ongoing HIV exposure via breast-feeding are recommended to continue PCP prophylaxis, at least until HIV infection has been excluded after cessation of breast-feeding.

Afran L, Garcia Knight M, Nduati E, Urban BC, Heyderman RS, Rowland-Jones SL: HIV exposed uninfected children: a growing population with a vulnerable immune system? Clin Exp Immunol 2014;176(1):11–22 [PMID: 24325737].

Ananworanich J et al: Reduced markers of HIV persistence and restricted HIV-specific immune responses after early antiretroviral therapy in children. AIDS 2014;28(7):1015–1020 [PMID: 24384692].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection—United States, 2014. MMWR Recomm Rep 2014;63(RR-03):1–10 [PMID: 24717910].

Jao J, Abrams EJ: Metabolic complications of in utero maternal HIV and antiretroviral exposure in HIV-exposed infants. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2014;33(7):734–740 [PMID: 24378947].

Persaud D et al; Pediatric HIV/AIDS Cohort Study: Influence of age at virologic control on peripheral blood human immunodeficiency virus reservoir size and serostatus in perinatally infected adolescents. JAMA Pediatr 2014;168(12):1138–1146 [PMID: 25286283].

ACUTE RETROVIRAL SYNDROME

Among adolescents and adults with primary acute HIV infection, nonspecific symptoms (eg, flu- or mild mononucleosis-like illness) beginning 2–4 weeks after exposure occur in 30%–90%, but they are frequently not severe enough to be brought to medical attention. This acute retroviral syndrome, with symptoms of fever, malaise, and pharyngitis, is often indistinguishable from other similar viral illnesses. Less common but more distinguishing features are rash, oral and genital ulcerations, aseptic meningitis, and thrush. In the early weeks after acute, behaviorally acquired infection, HIV antibody may be absent. However, HIV nucleic acid tests will be positive and should be obtained when acute retroviral syndrome is in the differential diagnosis. Many laboratories have implemented tests which detect both HIV antibody and HIV p24 antigen as their standard HIV screening test. These tests are more sensitive for acute infection since antigen

Table 41–3. HIV infection stage based on age-specific CD4 T-lymphocyte counts and percentages of total lymphocytes.

Stage	Age of Child					
	< 1 y		1–5 y		≥ 6 y	
	Cells/μL	%	Cells/μL	%	Cells/μL	%
1.	≥ 1500	≥ 34	≥ 1000	≥ 30	≥ 500	≥ 26
2.	750–1499	26–33	500–999	22–29	200–499	14–25
3.	< 750	< 26	< 500	< 22	< 200	< 14

Adapted with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection—United States, 2014, MMWR Recomm Rep. 2014 Apr 11;63(RR-03):1–10.

may be detected in advance of antibodies. Most patients will seroconvert by 6 weeks after exposure, but occasionally seroconversion does not occur for 3–6 months. Additional information on behaviorally acquired HIV is found in Chapter 44.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection—United States, 2014. MMWR Recomm Rep 2014;63(RR-03):1–10 [PMID: 24717910].

Richey LE, Halperin J: Acute human immunodeficiency virus infection. Am J Med Sci 2013;345(2):136–142 [PMID: 23095473].

PROGRESSIVE HIV DISEASE

A. Clinical Findings

1. Disease staging—The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published revised disease staging for HIV-infected adults, adolescents, and children in 2014 (http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6303a1.htm). (Tables 41–1 and 41–3). Stage 1, 2, and 3 are determined by categories of age-adjusted absolute CD4 T-lymphocyte counts and percentages that indicate progressively severe immune suppression; Stage 3 is defined as AIDS (Table 41–3). Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome is also diagnosed in individuals having one or more of the severe opportunistic illnesses or other serious conditions listed in Table 41–1. Stage 0 is applied to adults or adolescents who had a negative HIV diagnostic test in the 180 days preceding their positive HIV test, indicating recent acquisition of infection, irrespective of their CD4 count and/or clinical conditions. An individual's staging may vary with time, improving or worsening depending on the outcome of the patient's treatment course. The WHO has established a clinical staging system that is used widely outside the United States (Table 41–4). Disease stage as well as level of plasma viremia and clinical symptoms are used in determining the urgency with which to initiate ARV therapy in children.

2. Infections related to immunodeficiency—Progressive immune dysfunction of both humoral and cell-mediated responses results in susceptibility to infections. Bacteremia, especially due to Streptococcus pneumoniae, occurs at rates of 3 per 100 child-years without cART and decreases to 0.36 per 100 child-years with cART, but this remains at least three times higher than in HIV-uninfected children. Infections with Mycobacterium tuberculosis are a major cause of morbidity in countries with high rates of endemic tuberculosis (TB). Given the frequency of coinfection, diagnosis of M tuberculosis in a child is an indication for HIV testing. Likewise, children with HIV infection and their family members should have regular evaluation for M tuberculosis exposure and testing if appropriate. Herpes zoster (shingles) occurs 10 times more frequently among untreated HIV-infected children compared with age-matched healthy children.

Late-stage immunodeficiency is accompanied by susceptibility to a variety of opportunistic pathogens. Pneumonia caused by P jiroveci is a common AIDS-defining diagnosis in children with unrecognized HIV infection who, therefore, are not receiving PCP prophylaxis. The incidence is highest between ages 2 and 6 months and is often fatal during this period. Symptoms are difficult to distinguish from those of viral or atypical pneumonia (see Chapter 43). Persistent candidal mucocutaneous infections (oral, cutaneous, and vaginal) are common. Candidal esophagitis occurs with more advanced disease. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections may result in disseminated disease, hepatitis, gastroenteritis, retinitis, and encephalitis. Disseminated infection with Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC), presenting with fever, night sweats, weight loss, diarrhea, fatigue, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, anemia, and granulocytopenia, may occur in those who have CD4 T-lymphocyte counts below 50–100/μL. A variety of diarrheal pathogens that cause mild, self-limited symptoms in healthy persons may result in severe, chronic diarrhea in HIV-infected persons. These include Cryptosporidium parvum, Microsporidia, Cyclospora, Isospora belli, Giardia lamblia, and bacterial

Table 41–4. World Health Organization clinical staging of HIV for infants and children with established HIV infection.

Clinical stage 1: Asymptomatic
- Asymptomatic
- Persistent generalized lymphadenopathy

Clinical stage 2: Mild symptoms
- Unexplained persistent hepatosplenomegaly
- Papular pruritic eruptions
- Fungal nail infection
- Angular cheilitis
- Lineal gingival erythema
- Extensive wart virus infection
- Extensive molluscum contagiosum
- Recurrent oral ulcerations
- Unexplained persistent parotid enlargement
- Herpes zoster
- Recurrent or chronic upper respiratory tract infections (otitis media, otorrhea, sinusitis, or tonsillitis)

Clinical stage 3: Advanced symptoms
- Unexplained moderate malnutrition or wasting not adequately responding to standard therapy
- Unexplained persistent diarrhea
- Unexplained persistent fever
- Persistent oral candidiasis (after first 6–8 wk of life)
- Oral hairy leukoplakia
- Acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis or periodontitis
- Lymph node tuberculosis
- Pulmonary tuberculosis
- Severe recurrent bacterial pneumonia
- Symptomatic lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis
- Chronic HIV-associated lung disease including bronchiectasis
- Unexplained anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia

Clinical stage 4: Severe symptoms
- Unexplained severe wasting, stunting, or severe malnutrition not responding to standard therapy
- Pneumocystis pneumonia
- Recurrent severe bacterial infections (such as empyema, pyomyositis, bone or joint infection, or meningitis but excluding pneumonia)
- Chronic herpes simplex infection
- Esophageal candidiasis (or candidiasis of trachea, bronchi, or lungs)
- Extrapulmonary tuberculosis
- Kaposi sarcoma
- Cytomegalovirus infection: retinitis or cytomegalovirus infection affecting another organ, with onset at age older than 1 mo
- Central nervous system toxoplasmosis (after 1 mo of life)
- Extrapulmonary cryptococcosis
- HIV encephalopathy
- Disseminated endemic mycosis (coccidiomycosis or histoplasmosis)
- Disseminated nontuberculous mycobacterial infection
- Chronic cryptosporidiosis (with diarrhea)
- Chronic isosporiasis
- Cerebral or B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma
- Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- Symptomatic HIV-associated nephropathy or HIV-associated -cardiomyopathy

Adapted with permission from WHO Case Definitions of HIV for Surveillance and Revised Clinical Staging and Immunological Classification of HIV-related disease in Adults and Children. © World Health Organization 2007.

pathogens. Chronic parvovirus infection manifested by anemia can occur.

3. Organ system disease—HIV infection may directly affect a variety of organ systems and produce disease manifestations that include encephalopathy, pneumonitis, hepatitis, diarrhea, hematologic suppression, nephropathy, and cardiomyopathy. On average, HIV-infected children have lower than normal neuropsychological functioning. In many children, neuropsychological deficits do not normalize when ARV therapy is started, despite suppression of viremia. Without cART, findings include acquired microcephaly, progressive motor deficit, ataxia, pseudobulbar palsy, and failure to attain (or loss of) developmental milestones.

Lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis, which is common in untreated children with HIV infection, is characterized by a diffuse peribronchial and interstitial infiltrate composed of lymphocytes and plasma cells. It may be asymptomatic or associated with dry cough, hypoxemia, dyspnea or wheezing on exertion, and clubbing of the digits. Children with this disorder frequently have enlargement of the parotid glands and generalized lymphadenopathy.

4. Malignancy—Children with HIV are at increased risk of malignancy. The most commonly occurring tumors are non-Hodgkin lymphomas, which may occur at unusual extranodal sites (central nervous system, bone, gastrointestinal tract, liver, or lungs). Human papillomavirus infection of the cervix is more likely to progress to neoplasia, and the rate of progression is not altered by cART. Carcinoma due to anal human papillomavirus is also a concern. Kaposi sarcoma, a skin and mucous membrane malignancy, common in HIV-infected MSM with advanced disease, is also observed among HIV-infected African children, but it is rare in children in the United States.

B. Laboratory Findings

Established HIV infection in perinatally-exposed children older than 18–24 months, in children whose mothers were not HIV–infected, and in adolescents may be diagnosed by detecting HIV antibody using a multi-test algorithm typically including an HIV antibody/antigen immunoassay. A confirmatory test on the same sample using an assay that detects antibody using different antigen or test principle

(indicated by a different manufacturer) is performed because rare individuals have cross-reacting antibodies which result in a false-positive antibody tests. If the initial test used detects both HIV antigen and anti-HIV antibody and the confirmatory test that detects only antibody is non-reactive, follow-up HIV NAT is indicated if acute HIV infection is a possibility since antigen detection may precede antibody formation. Definitive diagnosis of HIV infection requires a positive result on a second sample obtained on a different occasion.

The hallmark of HIV disease progression is decline in the absolute number and percentage of CD4 T lymphocytes and an increasing percentage of CD8 T lymphocytes. The CD4 T-lymphocyte values are predictive of the child's risk of opportunistic infections. Healthy infants and children have CD4 T-lymphocyte numbers that are much higher than in adults; these gradually decline to adult levels by age 5–6 years. Hence, age-adjusted values must be used when assessing a child's absolute CD4 T-lymphocyte count (see Table 41–3). CD4 T-lymphocyte percentage is used when CD4 T cell count is not available.

Hypergammaglobulinemia of IgG, IgA, and IgM is characteristic in untreated HIV. Late in the disease, some individuals may become hypogammaglobulinemic. Hematologic abnormalities (anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia) may occur due to effects of HIV disease or cART. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) may either be normal or may be associated with elevated protein and a mononuclear pleocytosis; HIV nucleic acid testing may be positive in CSF.

C. Differential Diagnosis

HIV infection should be in the differential diagnosis for children being evaluated for immunodeficiency. Depending on the degree of immunosuppression, the presentation in HIV infection may be similar to that of B-cell (eg, hypogammaglobinemia), T-cell, or combined immunodeficiencies (eg, severe combined immunodeficiency) (see Chapter 33). HIV infection should also be considered in the evaluation of children with failure to thrive, developmental delay, chronic lung disease, and M tuberculosis infection. Chronic HIV infection presenting with generalized lymphadenopathy or hepatosplenomegaly may resemble infections with viruses such as EBV or CMV in children or adolescents. Because blood tests are definitive for the diagnosis of HIV infection, the diagnosis can be readily established or excluded. In rare cases, HIV-infected children with hypogammaglobulinemia have falsely negative antibody tests but may be diagnosed with a nucleic acid–based test. Absence of maternal risk factors or history of negative test results during pregnancy should not dissuade from testing for HIV if the patient has signs consistent with HIV-associated disease since maternal acquisition of HIV late in pregnancy can result in transmission to the infant and may be missed by maternal prenatal HIV testing.

Berry SA et al; HIV Research Network: Trends in hospitalizations among children and young adults with perinatally acquired HIV. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2014;33(5):488–494 [PMID: 24378943].

Laughton B, Cornell M, Boivin M, Van Rie A: Neurodevelopment in perinatally HIV-infected children: a concern for adolescence. J Int AIDS Soc 2013;16:18603 [PMID: 23782482]. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.7448/IAS.16.1.18603.

Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Infected Children: Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Infected Children. Available at: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/5/pediatric-oi-prevention-and-treatment-guidelines/0. Accessed January 30, 2016.

» Treatment

HIV infection calls for specific cART to prevent progressive deterioration of the immune system as well as prophylactic measures at late stages of HIV infection to prevent opportunistic infections. Guidelines for the treatment of HIV and prevention of opportunistic infections developed by US national working groups of pediatric HIV specialists are published by the U.S. Public Health System at: http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov. The treatment paradigm changes frequently; therefore, prior to initiating treatment, expert consultation should be obtained.

A. Specific Measures

1. Principles of HIV treatment—Combination ART reduces HIV replication and thereby results in an increase in CD4 T-lymphocyte count and reconstitution of immune function. HIV has a high spontaneous mutation rate that leads to emergence of drug resistance if viral suppression is incomplete. Prevention of resistance mutations requires that virus is not replicating and thus has no opportunity to generate new mutations. Regimens that fully suppress viral replication (plasma HIV RNA < 75 copies/mL) are key to long-term treatment success.

The current standard regimens are combinations of three drugs, including two drugs with different mechanisms of action. Optimally, children on cART will have laboratory monitoring every 3–4 months to confirm viral suppression. If plasma virus becomes consistently detectable (> 200 copies/mL), the underlying cause must be determined (eg, poor adherence or viral resistance), and, if necessary, a change in the medication combination is made.

Within 3–6 months of successful cART, circulating HIV declines to below the limit of detection and CD4 T-lymphocyte counts improve and may normalize. However, HIV persists in long-lived resting cells, and cessation of ARV treatment results in resumption of viremia and decline in CD4 T lymphocytes. Therefore, treatment for HIV with currently available modalities must be lifelong.

Strict adherence to the prescribed treatment is critical. A wide range of issues may impact adherence, including pill burden, dosing frequency, and tolerability as well as psychosocial factors such as developmental stage, mental health of child and caregiver, HIV knowledge, and beliefs about treatment. Programs and services that enhance adherence are essential adjuncts of any HIV treatment regimen.

2. Criteria for initiation of antiretroviral medications— Even without treatment, many individuals with HIV will have slow disease progression and are asymptomatic for several years. This has led to debate about the optimal timing for initiation of cART. The current paradigm has shifted toward earlier initiation. Early treatment has advantages of more complete immune reconstitution and reduced risk of disease complications but presents potential risks of increased medication toxicity and development of viral resistance. Country-specific treatment guidelines are published and updated when new evidence is available. The criteria for initiation may differ among countries, particularly for resource-rich versus resource-limited settings. WHO recommendations are found at: http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/guidelines/en/.

The United States guidelines recommend clinicians consider treatment for all HIV-infected children and adolescents even at early stages of the disease. Infants with perinatally acquired HIV have a 30%–50% risk of progression to AIDS or death by age 12–24 months, and there are no tests that reliably identify these rapid progressors. A randomized trial that compared early versus deferred treatment for infants demonstrated a survival benefit with early treatment. Therefore, infants younger than 12 months per US guidelines, and younger than 2 years per WHO guidelines, irrespective of clinical or immunologic progression, or those at Stage 3 should begin treatment as soon as possible after diagnosis. For children who have survived longer prior to diagnosis, the risk of rapid progression is less. However, those with evidence of clinical progression (moderate symptoms and WHO Stages 3 and 4) or with low CD4 T-lymphocyte counts (stage 2) are recommended to start treatment. High plasma viral load (> 100,000 copies/mL) is independently associated with near-term disease progression and is another indicator for initiating treatment. For children lacking evidence of disease progression and with low viral loads, deferred treatment may be considered, but most clinicians recommend treatment to reduce the effects of HIV on growth, development, and organ systems.

3. Antiretroviral medications—There are 24 ARV medications approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) categorized into five different drug classes for the treatment of HIV. An additional category, pharmacokinetic enhancers, includes two drugs with drug-drug interactions which increase the area under the curve and minimum concentrations of other ARV agents, particularly the protease inhibitor class. Many of the drugs have pediatric indications for older children, but pharmacokinetic data and administration forms appropriate for infants and toddlers are not available for many. Specific drugs in each class and the mechanism of action of each class are described briefly in Table 41–5.

Table 41–5. U.S. Food and Drug Administration–approved antiretroviral drug class (mechanism of action) and specific drugs in class.

Nucleoside/Nucleotide Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NRTIs)	Non-nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTIs)	Protease Inhibitors (PIs)
(Chain termination of HIVDNA)	(Synthesis of HIVDNA inhibited)	(Production of noninfectious virions)
Abacavir (ABC; Ziagen)[a]	Efavirenz (EFV, Sustiva)[a]	Atazanavir (ATV, Reyataz)[a]
Didanosine (ddI; Videx)[a]	Etravirine (ETR, Intelence)	Darunavir (DRV, Prezista)[a]
Emtricitabine (FTC; Emtriva)[a]	Nevirapine (NVP, Viramune)[a]	Fosamprenavir (FPV, Lexiva)[a]
Lamivudine (3TC; Epivir)[a]	Rilpivirine (RPV, Edurant)	Indinavir (IDV, Crixivan)
Stavudine (d4T; Zerit)[a]		Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r, Kaletra)[a]
Tenofovir (TDF; Viread)[a]		Nelfinavir (NFV, Viracept)[a]
Zidovudine (ZDV, AZT; Retrovir)[a]		Ritonavir (RTV, Norvir)[a]
		Saquinavir (SQV, Invirase)
		Tipranavir (TPV, Aptivus)[a]
Integrase Inhibitor	**Entry Inhibitors**	**Pharmacokinetic Enhancers**
(Integration of viral nucleic acid in host genome prevented)	(Viral entry prevented by inhibition of virus-cell membrane fusion or blocking co-receptor)	(Interacts with P450 cytochrome enzymes to increase levels of selected ARV)
Dolutegravir (DTG, Tivicay)[a] Elvitegravir (EVG, Vitekta) Raltegravir (RAL, Isentress)[a]	Enfuvirtide (T-20, Fuzeon)[a] Maraviroc (MVC, Selzentry)	Cobisitat (Cobi, Tybost) Ritonavir (RTV, r, Norvir)[a]

[a]FDA-approved drug for use in pediatric populations.

Agwu AL, Fairlie L: Antiretroviral treatment, management challenges and outcomes in perinatally HIV-infected adolescents. J Int AIDS Soc 2013;16:18579 [PMID: 23782477]. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.7448/IAS.16.1.18579.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Medication Adherence. 2014. Available at: http://www.effectiveinterventions.org/en/HighImpactPrevention/BiomedicalInterventions/MedicationAdherence.aspx.

Collins IJ, Judd A, Gibb DM: Immediate antiretroviral therapy in young HIV-infected children: benefits and risks. Curr Opin HIV AIDS 2014;9(1):87–94 [PMID: 24247666].

Panel on Antiretroviral Therapy and Medical Management of HIV-Infected Children: Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Pediatric HIV Infection. Updated March 5, 2015. Available at: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/2/pediatric-treatment-guidelines/0. Accessed January 30, 2016.

4. Complications of antiretroviral medications—ART may result in a range of adverse effects. Each medication has specific toxicities which are described in detail at http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/2/pediatric-arv-guidelines/113/appendix-a–pediatric-antiretroviral-drug-information. Common adverse events are gastrointestinal distress, hematologic toxicity (anemia, neutropenia), elevated liver enzymes, dyslipidemia (elevated LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides), glucose intolerance, and abnormal fat distribution (lipodystrophy). Reduced bone mineral content and renal dysfunction may result from drug effects as well as from direct effects of HIV. Several drugs (eg, nevirapine, abacavir) have been associated with severe hepatitis, sometimes associated with a systemic hypersensitivity reaction which may be life-threatening if not identified early or upon rechallenge with the same medication. The nucleoside and nucleotide analogues have low-level affinity for the human mitochondrial DNA polymerase. Therefore, these analogues may be incorporated into mitochondrial DNA, which is one mechanism that may lead to adverse effects. Mitochondrial toxicity can result in lactic acidosis, a rare, but potentially fatal, complication. During the initial weeks of treatment, immune restoration may lead to worsening or unmasking of symptoms due to underlying infection with other organisms such as M tuberculosis, an event termed immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS).

Barlow-Mosha L, Eckard AR, McComsey GA, Musoke PM: Metabolic complications and treatment of perinatally HIV-infected children and adolescents. J Int AIDS Soc 2013;16:18600 [PMID: 23782481]. Available at: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23782481.

Calvo M, Martinez E: Update on metabolic issues in HIV patients. Curr Opin HIV AIDS 2014;9(4):332–339 [PMID: 24824886].

Link-Gelles R, Moultrie H, Sawry S, Murdoch D, Van Rie A: Tuberculosis immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome in children initiating antiretroviral therapy for HIV infection: a systematic literature review. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2014;33(5):499–503 [PMID:24736441].

Margolis AM, Heverling H, Pham PA, Stolbach A: A review of the toxicity of HIV medications. J Med Toxicol 2014;10(1):26–39 [PMID: 23963694].

B. General Measures

1. Immunizations—Although vaccines are immunogenic in HIV-infected children, the magnitude and durability of the antibody responses to vaccines are often diminished even when administered to a child on effective cART. Additional doses to boost responses are recommended for some vaccines. More vigorous vaccine responses are found in children with suppressed plasma virus and restored CD4 T-lymphocyte counts. Therefore, for children who were immunized prior to establishment of effective cART, reimmunization should be considered and is recommended for some vaccines (eg, measles-mumps-rubella vaccine).

All inactivated vaccines are safe to administer to HIV-infected children. Annual immunization with inactive influenza vaccine after age 6 months is recommended for HIV-infected children and their close contacts. For live attenuated viral vaccines, the immune status of the child must be considered. Varicella and mumps-measles-rubella vaccines (but not the combined measles-mumps-rubella-varicella vaccine) are recommended for HIV-infected children, provided they are Stage 1 or 2 (see Table 41–3) and only mildly symptomatic (see Table 41–1). Current studies are investigating rotavirus vaccine in HIV-exposed and HIV-infected infants. The majority of infants born to HIV-infected women in the United States will be HIV-uninfected, so rotavirus vaccine is recommended even though it will be initiated before HIV infection is definitively excluded by early testing. Live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) is not recommended for HIV-infected individuals, although initial studies have not identified safety concerns; close contacts may receive LAIV. Yellow fever vaccine is contraindicated in symptomatic HIV infection or with Stage 3 CD4 T-lymphocyte count, but has been well tolerated in asymptomatic, Stage 1 individuals and may also be considered for children in Stage 2. Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG), oral polio, smallpox, and live typhoid vaccines should not be given to HIV-infected people.

For some vaccines, additional doses or changes to the routine schedule are recommended. Children who have not received Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) vaccine and pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13) series as infants (eg, immigrants) may benefit from Hib vaccine (two doses between 12 and 59 months of age; one dose after 59 months of age) and two doses of PCV13 (separated by 8 weeks) which may be given after the usual cutoff age of 60 months. The 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV) should also be given after age 2 years (and after a PCV13 series), with a second dose given 5 years later. Meningococcal conjugate vaccine (MCV) may be given

at the routine ages, but because antibody responses to the vaccine may be suboptimal, HIV-infected children should receive a two-dose primary series. The response to hepatitis B vaccine is particularly unreliable in people with HIV infection. Therefore, a test for hepatitis B surface antibody should be obtained after the three-dose series. If the titer is less than 10 mIU/mL, a second series of three vaccinations is recommended.

2. Prophylaxis for infections—Children with suppressed CD4 T-lymphocyte numbers benefit from primary and secondary prophylactic treatment to prevent opportunistic infections. Children who have had their CD4 T-lymphocyte counts restored with ARV therapy to category 1 or 2 for over 3 months can be taken off prophylactic treatments.

Antibiotic prophylaxis for P jiroveci pneumonia has been extremely effective. HIV-infected infants should receive Pneumocystis prophylaxis until age 12 months, after which prophylaxis is based on assessment of symptoms and age-adjusted CD4 T-lymphocyte counts every 3 months. Children with low CD4 T-lymphocyte parameters (Stage 3; see Table 41–3) should continue/begin PCP prophylaxis. Published guidelines from the CDC for P jiroveci pneumonia prophylaxis are summarized in Table 41–6.

3. Psychosocial support and mental health—Evaluation and support for psychosocial needs of HIV-affected families is imperative. As with other chronic illnesses, HIV infection affects all family members and also carries additional social stigma. Emotional concerns and financial needs, which are more prominent than medical needs at many stages of the disease process, influence the family's ability to comply with a medical treatment regimen. HIV-infected children often have comorbid mental health conditions. Rates of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder range from 20% to 50% in various studies. Hospital admissions for mental health disorders are more frequent among HIV-infected children. In one study, dual diagnosis of HIV and a mental health disorder occurred in 85% of adolescents who acquired HIV infection through high-risk behaviors. Ideally, care should be coordinated by a team of caregivers that is familiar with HIV disease and its comorbidities, newest therapies, and community resources.

Table 41–6. Drug regimens for Pneumocystis jiroveci prophylaxis for children older than 4 wk.

Recommended regimen
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, 150 mg TMP/m^2/d plus 750 mg SMX/m^2/d, administered orally, divided into two doses per d/3 d a week on consecutive days
Alternative (same total daily dosages):
Single-daily dose 3 d a week on consecutive days
Divided twice-daily doses 7 d a week
Divided twice-daily doses 3 d a week on alternate days
Alternative if trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is not tolerated
Dapsone, 2 mg/kg/d (not to exceed 100 mg) orally once daily or 4 mg/kg (not to exceed 200 mg) orally once weekly
Atovaquone, age 1–3 mo and > 24 mo, 30 mg/kg orally once daily; age 4–24 mo, 45 mg/kg orally once daily
Aerosolized pentamidine (children > age 5 y), 300 mg via inhaler monthly

Adapted with permission from Mofenson LM1, Brady MT, Danner SP, et al: Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections among HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children: recommendations from CDC, the National Institutes of Health, the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America, the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society, and the American Academy of Pediatrics, MMWR Recomm Rep. 2009 Sep 4;58(RR-11):1–166.

Martinez J, Chakraborty R; American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Pediatric AIDS: Psychosocial support for youth living with HIV. Pediatrics 2014;133(3):558–562 [PMID: 24567016].

Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Infected Children Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Infected Children: Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Infected Children. Updated November 6, 2013. Available at: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/5/pediatric-oi-prevention-and-treatment-guidelines/0. Accessed January 30, 2016.

PREVENTION

» Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission (PMTCT)

A number of ARV regimens given to the mother antenatally and post-partum and to the infant post-partum and, if applicable, during breastfeeding reduce MTCT rates to 1%–2% without breast-feeding and 2%–5% with breast-feeding. The United States Public Health Services publishes detailed guidelines that are updated frequently (http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/PerinatalGL.pdf). In the United States, all identified HIV-infected pregnant women are prescribed cART during pregnancy and labor, infant zidovudine for 6 weeks, and avoidance of breast-feeding. Mothers receive intravenous zidovudine during labor and infants receive combination ARV medications if there is a higher risk of transmission (eg, no or late maternal cART and/or lacking viral suppression). Elective C-section prior to labor will also reduce transmission risk for women who have plasma viral load ≥ 1000 copies/mL. The same interventions are effective in resource-limited settings, but in these countries, breast-feeding has a demonstrated survival value and is therefore recommended. Studies demonstrate that maternal cART begun in pregnancy plus infant ARV prophylaxis for the first 6 weeks of life is more effective in preventing transmission than more limited maternal regimens. Continuation of maternal cART for the duration of breast-feeding or extended nevirapine prophylaxis given to the infant are both interventions that reduce

transmission resulting from breast milk; a study directly comparing the two approaches is ongoing.

Key to prevention of mother-to-child transmission (PMTCT) is identification of pregnant women with HIV infection. The CDC and the American College of Obstetrics and Gynecology recommend routine HIV testing, with an option to refuse, early in gestation for all pregnant women. Women with ongoing risk factors for HIV acquisition (multiple partners, sexually transmitted diseases [STDs], substance use) should be tested again in late gestation. A woman presenting in labor without previously documented HIV testing should have HIV testing using assays that yield results within 60 minutes or less. ARV medications, even if implemented as late as 48 hours postpartum, may reduce transmission by as much as 50%. The current regimen recommended when maternal HIV infection is diagnosed during labor is maternal intravenous zidovudine during labor and delivery plus infant treatment with two or three ARV medications and avoidance of breastfeeding. A CDC-funded consult line is available 24/7 for questions about prevention of perinatal HIV transmission (http://nccc.ucsf.edu/clinician-consultation/perinatal-hiv-aids/, 888-448-8765).

» Prevention of Sexual Transmission

Latex condoms used consistently and correctly are highly effective in preventing sexual transmission. Behavioral interventions to increase use of condoms and other safer sex practices have been a cornerstone of prevention efforts. However, the success rate with behavioral interventions has been inadequate in most populations. Several biomedical prevention interventions, added to condom use, have demonstrated efficacy in randomized clinical trials. These include (1) male circumcision—approximately 50% reduction in female-to-male transmission; (2) pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) for HIV-uninfected partners using daily tenofovir-emtricitabine—44%–70% reduction for MSM and 60%–70% reduction for discordant heterosexual couples (summaries at http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/prep/); and (3) cART of HIV-infected individuals—96% reduction in the risk of transmission to HIV-uninfected partners. Finally, postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) using combination ARV drugs initiated within 72 hours after a known HIV exposure was associated with reduced transmission in case-cohort studies. The CDC supports a consult service for questions regarding postexposure prophylaxis (PEP line, 888-488-4911, http://nccc.ucsf.edu/clinical-resources/pep-resources/pep-quick-guide/).

Since treatment reduces the risk of transmission to others, there is a public health benefit to early diagnosis. Therefore the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that HIV screening tests be conducted in routine health care settings with patient knowledge and right to refuse for patients aged 13–64 years and that all adults should be tested at least once for HIV during their lives. In 2011, the American Academy of Pediatrics recommended at least one-time testing for 16- to 18-year-old adolescents, irrespective of risk factors, living in areas of high (≥ 0.1%) or unknown seroprevalence. In areas of lower seroprevalence, testing is encouraged for all sexually active adolescents and those with other risk factors for HIV infection.

» Prevention Through Universal Precautions

Horizontal transmission (in the absence of sexual contact or injecting drug use) of HIV is exceedingly rare and is associated with exposure of broken skin or mucous membranes to HIV-infected blood or bloody secretions. Several cases have resulted from HIV-infected caregivers feeding children premasticated food; hence, families should be advised against this practice. Saliva, tears, urine, and stool are not contagious if they do not contain gross blood. A barrier protection (eg, latex or rubber gloves or thick pads of fabric or paper) should be used when possible contact with blood or bloody body fluids may occur. Objects that might be contaminated with blood, such as razors or toothbrushes, should not be shared. No special care is required for dishes, towels, toys, or bedclothes. Blood-soiled clothing may be washed routinely with hot water and detergent. Contaminated surfaces may be disinfected easily with a variety of agents, including household bleach (1:10 dilution), some commercial disinfectants (eg, Lysol), or 70% isopropyl alcohol.

The infant or child who is well enough to attend day care or school should not be treated differently from other children. The exception may be a toddler with uncontrollable biting behavior or bleeding lesions that cannot be covered adequately; in these situations, the child may be withheld from group day care. Families may choose to make the school health care provider and/or teacher aware of the diagnosis, but there is no legal requirement that any individual at the school or day care center be informed. The parents and child may prefer to keep the diagnosis confidential, because the stigma associated with HIV infection remains difficult to overcome. Because undiagnosed HIV-infected infants and children might be enrolled, all schools and day care centers should have policies with simple guidelines for using universal precautions to prevent transmission of HIV infection in these settings.

Kuhar DT et al; US Public Health Service Working Group: Updated US Public Health Service guidelines for the management of occupational exposures to human immunodeficiency virus and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 2013 Sep;34(9):875–892 [PMID: 23917901].

Mavedzenge SN, Luecke E, Ross DA: Effective approaches for programming to reduce adolescent vulnerability to HIV infection, HIV risk, and HIV-related morbidity and mortality: a systematic review of systematic reviews. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2014;66(Suppl 2):S154–S169 [PMID:24918591].

Panel on Treatment of HIV-Infected Pregnant Women and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission: Recommendations for Use of Antiretroviral Drugs in Pregnant HIV-1-Infected Women for Maternal Health and Interventions to Reduce Perinatal HIV Transmission in the United States. Updated March 28, 2014. Available at: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/3/perinatal-guidelines/0. Accessed January 30, 2016.

Roxby AC et al: A lifecycle approach to HIV prevention in African women and children. Current HIV/AIDS Reports 2014;11(2):119–127 [PMID: 24659344].

Smith DK et al: Preexposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States—2014 Clinical Practice Guideline. May 14, 2014. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/prepguidelines2014.pdf. Accessed January 30, 2016.

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Screening for HIV: recommendation statement. U.S. Preventive Services Taskforce. April 2013. Available at: http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Document/UpdateSummaryFinal/human-immunodeficiency-virus-hiv-infection-screening. Accessed January 30, 2016.

QUALITY ASSURANCE AND OUTCOME METRICS

The care of HIV-infected children and adults has been informed by numerous clinical trials, many completed through multi-center networks. Although the field continues to evolve, evidence-based care guidelines have been published by the Unites States Public Health Service and are updated regularly, sometimes multiple times within a year (http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/). The guidelines establish best practices for prevention of transmission, timing of initiation of treatment, choice of ARV, monitoring frequency, and prophylaxis for opportunistic infections for which the Human Resources and Services Administration HIV/AIDS Bureau has established quality performance measures (http://hab.hrsa.gov/deliverhivaidscare/habperformmeasures.html). In addition to treatment guidelines, an emphasis for successful HIV care is the continuum of HIV care necessary for a patient to achieve and maintain suppressed viremia. These include rapid initial linkage to care after diagnosis, engagement and retention in care measured by health care visit frequency, prescription of cART, and successful adherence to treatment. Success with each of these steps in care is a necessary underpinning of successful long-term health for the individual and also has public health benefits since transmission risk is markedly reduced when viremia is suppressed with cART. Several national quality groups collect and publish data across groups of clinics on these continuum of care outcomes, thereby setting national metrics and providing technical assistance to HIV programs (in+care Campaign at http://www.incarecampaign.org/; National Quality Center at http://nationalqualitycenter.org/index.cfm; The HIV Research Network at https://cds.johnshopkins.edu/hivrn/).

Greenberg AE, Purcell DW, Gordon CM, Barasky RJ, Del Rio C: Addressing the Challenges of the HIV Continuum of Care in High-Prevalence Cities in the United States. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2015;69(Suppl 1):S1–S7 [PMID: 25867773].

Kurth AE, Lally MA, Choko AT, Inwani IW, Fortenberry JD: HIV testing and linkage to services for youth. J Int AIDS Soc 2015;18(2 Suppl 1):19433 [PMID: 25724506]. doi: 10.7448/IAS.18.2.19433. eCollection 2015.

Prendergast AJ, Essajee S, Penazzato M: HIV and the millennium development goals. Arch Dis Childhood 2015;100(Suppl 1):S48–S52 [PMID: 25613968].

Zanoni BC, Mayer KH: The adolescent and young adult HIV cascade of care in the United States: exaggerated health disparities. AIDS Patient Care STDs 2014;28(3):128–135 [PMID: 24601734].

42

Infections: Bacterial & Spirochetal

John W. Ogle, MD
Marsha S. Anderson, MD

BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

GROUP A STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Streptococcal pharyngitis:
- Clinical diagnosis based entirely on symptoms; signs and physical examination unreliable.
- Throat culture or rapid antigen detection test positive for group A streptococci.

» Impetigo:
- Rapidly spreading, highly infectious skin rash.
- Erythematous denuded areas and honey-colored crusts.
- Group A streptococci are grown in culture from most (not all) cases.

» General Considerations

Group A streptococci (GAS) are common gram-positive bacteria producing a wide variety of clinical illnesses, including acute pharyngitis, impetigo, cellulitis, and scarlet fever. GAS can also cause pneumonia, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, meningitis, and other less common infections. GAS infections may also produce postinfectious sequelae (rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis).

Almost all GAS are β-hemolytic. These organisms may be carried without symptoms on the skin and in the pharynx, rectum, and vagina. All GAS are sensitive to penicillin. Resistance to erythromycin is common in some countries and has increased in the United States.

» Prevention

GAS pharyngitis usually occurs after contact with respiratory secretions of a person infected with GAS. Crowding facilitates spread of GAS and outbreaks of pharyngitis and impetigo occur. Prompt recognition and institution of antibiotics may decrease spread. Treatment with antibiotics prevents acute rheumatic fever.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Respiratory infections

a. Infancy and early childhood (age < 3 years)—The onset is insidious, with mild symptoms (low-grade fever, serous nasal discharge, and pallor). Otitis media is common. Exudative pharyngitis and cervical adenitis are uncommon in this age group.

b. Childhood type—Classic GAS pharyngitis presents with the sudden onset of fever, sore throat, malaise, and often vomiting. On examination, tonsillar exudate and tender anterior cervical adenopathy are usually noted. Petechiae are frequently seen on the soft palate. In **scarlet fever**, the skin is diffusely erythematous and appears sunburned and roughened (sandpaper rash); most intense in the axillae, groin, and on the abdomen and trunk. It blanches except in the skin folds, which do not blanch and are pigmented (Pastia sign). The rash usually appears 24 hours after the onset of fever and rapidly spreads over the next 1–2 days. Desquamation begins on the face at the end of the first week and becomes generalized by the third week. Early in the infection, there is circumoral pallor and the surface of the tongue is coated white, with the papillae enlarged and bright red (white strawberry tongue). Subsequently desquamation occurs, and the tongue appears beefy red (strawberry tongue). Petechiae may be seen on any mucosal surfaces.

2. Impetigo—Streptococcal impetigo begins as a papule that vesiculates and then breaks, leaving a denuded area covered by a honey-colored crust. Both Staphylococcus aureus and GAS are isolated in some cases. The lesions spread readily and diffusely. Local lymph nodes may become swollen and inflamed. Although the child often lacks systemic symptoms, a high fever and toxicity may be present. If flaccid bullae are noted, the disease is called bullous impetigo and is caused by an epidermolytic toxin-producing strain of S aureus.

3. Cellulitis—The portal of entry is often an insect bite or superficial abrasion. A diffuse, rapidly spreading cellulitis occurs that involves the subcutaneous tissues and extends along the lymphatic pathways with only minimal local suppuration. Local acute lymphadenitis occurs. The child is usually acutely ill, with fever and malaise. In classic erysipelas, the involved area is bright red, swollen, warm, and very tender. The infection may extend rapidly from the lymphatics to the bloodstream.

Streptococcal perianal cellulitis is an entity peculiar to young children. Pain with defecation often leads to constipation, which may be the presenting complaint. The child is afebrile and otherwise well. Perianal erythema, tenderness, and painful rectal examination are the only abnormal physical findings. Scant rectal bleeding with defecation may occur. A perianal swab culture usually yields heavy growth of GAS. A variant of this syndrome is streptococcal vaginitis in prepubertal girls. Symptoms are dysuria and pain; marked erythema and tenderness of the introitus and blood-tinged discharge are seen.

4. Necrotizing fasciitis—This dangerous disease is reported sporadically and may occur as a complication of varicella infection. About 20%–40% of cases are due to GAS; 30%–40% are due to S aureus; and the rest are a result of mixed bacterial infections. The disease is characterized by extensive necrosis of superficial fasciae, undermining of surrounding tissue, and usually systemic toxicity. Initially the skin overlying the infection is tender and pale red without distinct borders, resembling cellulitis. Blisters or bullae may appear. The color deepens to a distinct purple or in some cases becomes pale. Tenderness out of proportion to the clinical appearance, skin anesthesia (due to infarction of superficial nerves), or "woody" induration suggest necrotizing fasciitis. Involved areas may develop mild to massive edema. Early recognition and aggressive debridement of necrotic tissue are essential.

5. Group A streptococcal infections in newborn nurseries—GAS epidemics occur occasionally in nurseries. The organism may be introduced into the nursery from the vaginal tract of a mother or from the throat or nose of a mother or a staff member. The organism then spreads from infant to infant. The umbilical stump is colonized while the infant is in the nursery. Most often, a colonized infant develops a chronic oozing omphalitis days later. The organism may spread from the infant to other family members. Serious and even fatal infections may develop, including sepsis, meningitis, empyema, septic arthritis, and peritonitis.

6. Streptococcal sepsis—Serious illness from GAS sepsis is now more common both in children and in adults. Rash and scarlet fever may or may not be present. Prostration and shock result in high mortality rates. Pharyngitis is uncommon as an antecedent illness. Underlying disease is a predisposing factor.

7. Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (STSS)—Toxic shock syndrome can be caused by GAS. Like S aureus–associated toxic shock, multiorgan system involvement is a prominent part of the illness. The diagnostic criteria include (1) isolation of GAS from a normally sterile site, (2) hypotension or shock, and (3) at least two of the following: renal impairment (creatinine > two times the upper limit of normal for age), thrombocytopenia (< 100,000/mm^3) or coagulopathy, liver involvement (transaminases or bilirubin ≥ two times normal), acute respiratory distress syndrome, erythematous macular rash, or soft tissue necrosis (myositis, necrotizing fasciitis, gangrene). In cases that otherwise meet clinical criteria, isolation of GAS from a nonsterile site (throat, wound, or vagina) is indicative of a "probable case."

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukocytosis with a marked shift to the left is seen early. Eosinophilia regularly appears during convalescence. β-Hemolytic streptococci are cultured from the throat or site of infection. For suspected GAS pharyngitis, the throat should be swabbed and the specimen sent for GAS testing (rapid antigen detection tests and/or culture for GAS) because the clinical features of some viral infections may overlap with the clinical features of GAS. In children and adolescents, negative rapid antigen tests should be backed up by a culture. Patients with positive rapid strep antigen tests do not need a confirmation by throat culture, since the specificities of antigen tests are high. The organism may be cultured from the skin and by needle aspiration from subcutaneous tissues and other involved sites such as infected nodes. Occasionally blood cultures are positive.

Antistreptolysin O (ASO) titers rise about 150 units within 2 weeks after acute infection. Elevated ASO and anti-DNase B titers may be useful in documenting prior throat infections in cases of acute rheumatic fever. The streptozyme test detects antibodies to streptolysin O, hyaluronidase, streptokinase, DNase B, and NADase. It is somewhat more sensitive than the measurement of ASO titers.

Proteinuria, cylindruria, and minimal hematuria may be seen early in children with streptococcal infection.

True poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis is seen 1–4 weeks after the respiratory or skin infection.

» Differential Diagnosis

Streptococcal infection in early childhood must be differentiated from adenovirus and other respiratory virus infections. The pharyngitis in herpangina (coxsackievirus A) is vesicular or ulcerative. Herpes simplex also causes ulcerative lesions, which most commonly involve the anterior pharynx, tongue, and gums. In infectious mononucleosis, the pharyngitis is also exudative, but splenomegaly and generalized adenopathy are typical, and laboratory findings are often diagnostic (atypical lymphocytes, a positive heterophile, or other serologic test for mononucleosis). Uncomplicated streptococcal pharyngitis improves within 24–48 hours if penicillin is given and by 72–96 hours without antimicrobials.

Arcanobacterium hemolyticum may cause pharyngitis with scarlatina-like or maculopapular truncal rash. In diphtheria, systemic symptoms, vomiting, and fever are less marked; pharyngeal pseudomembrane is confluent and adherent; the throat is less red; and cervical adenopathy is prominent. Pharyngeal tularemia causes white rather than yellow exudate; there is little erythema; and cultures for β-hemolytic streptococci are negative. A history of exposure to rabbits and a failure to respond to antimicrobials may suggest the diagnosis. Oral gonococcal infection may also cause pharyngitis with tonsillar exudate. Leukemia and agranulocytosis may present with pharyngitis and are diagnosed by bone marrow examination.

Scarlet fever must be differentiated from other exanthematous diseases, erythema due to sunburn, drug reactions, Kawasaki disease, toxic shock syndrome, and staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome (see also Table 40–3).

» Complications

Suppurative complications of GAS infections include sinusitis, otitis, mastoiditis, cervical lymphadenitis, pneumonia, empyema, septic arthritis, sepsis, and meningitis. Spread of streptococcal infection from the throat to other sites—principally the skin (impetigo) and vagina—is common and should be considered in every instance of chronic vaginal discharge or chronic skin infection, such as that complicating childhood eczema. Both acute rheumatic fever and AGN are nonsuppurative complications of GAS infections.

A. Acute Rheumatic Fever (See Chapter 20)

B. Acute Glomerulonephritis

AGN can follow streptococcal infections of either the pharynx or the skin—in contrast to rheumatic fever, which follows pharyngeal infection only. AGN may occur at any age, even infancy. In most reports of AGN, males predominate by a ratio of 2:1. Rheumatic fever occurs with equal frequency in both sexes. Certain GAS strains are associated with poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis (nephritogenic types).

The median period between infection and the development of glomerulonephritis is 10 days. In contrast, acute rheumatic fever occurs after a median of 18 days.

C. Poststreptococcal Reactive Arthritis

Following an episode of group A streptococcal pharyngitis, reactive arthritis develops in some patients. This reactive arthritis is believed to be due to immune complex deposition and is seen about 1–2 weeks following the acute infection. Patients with poststreptococcal reactive arthritis do not have the full constellation of clinical and laboratory criteria needed to fulfill the Jones criteria for a diagnosis of acute rheumatic fever.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Treatment is directed toward both eradication of acute infection and prevention of rheumatic fever. In patients with pharyngitis, antibiotics should be started early to relieve symptoms and should be continued for 10 days to prevent rheumatic fever. Although early therapy has not been shown to prevent AGN, it seems advisable to treat impetigo promptly in sibling contacts of patients with poststreptococcal nephritis. Neither sulfonamides nor trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) is effective in the treatment of streptococcal infections. Although topical therapy for impetigo with antimicrobial ointments (especially mupirocin) is as effective as systemic therapy, it does not eradicate pharyngeal carriage and is less practical for extensive disease.

1. Penicillin—For GAS pharyngitis, the following regimens can be used. Except for penicillin-allergic patients, penicillin V (phenoxymethyl penicillin) is the drug of choice. Penicillin resistance has never been documented. For children weighing < 27 kg, the regimen is 250 mg, given orally two or three times a day for 10 days. For children or adults weighting > 27 kg, 500 mg two or three times a day is recommended. Giving penicillin V twice daily is as effective as more frequent oral administration. Alternatively, amoxicillin 50 mg/kg/d given orally in two or three divided doses can be used. Another alternative for treatment of pharyngitis and impetigo is a single dose of penicillin G benzathine given intramuscularly (600,000 units for children weighing ≤ 27 kg [60 lb] and 1.2 million units for children weighing > 27 kg). Intramuscular delivery ensures compliance, but is painful. Parenteral therapy is indicated if vomiting is present. Mild cellulitis due to GAS may be treated orally or

intramuscularly. For severe or invasive GAS infections intravenous antibiotics are indicated.

GAS cellulitis requiring hospitalization can be treated with aqueous penicillin G (150,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in four divided doses) or cefazolin (100 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in three divided doses) until there is marked improvement. Penicillin V (50 mg/kg/d in four divided doses) or cephalexin (50–75 mg/kg/d in four divided doses may then be given orally to complete a 10-day course. Acute cervical lymphadenitis may require incision and drainage. Treatment of necrotizing fasciitis requires emergency surgical debridement followed by high-dose parenteral antibiotics appropriate to the organisms cultured.

2. Other antibiotics—Cephalexin and azithromycin l are other effective oral antimicrobials. Clindamycin is also effective, but resistance is occasionally present (labs can check for susceptibility to clindamycin). For penicillin-allergic patients with pharyngitis or impetigo the following alternative regimens have been used: azithromycin (12 mg/kg/d; maximum 500 mg per dose) once daily for 5 days, or clindamycin (20–30 mg/kg/d in three divided doses; maximum 600 mg per dose) for 10 days. Patients with immediate, anaphylactic hypersensitivity to penicillin should not receive cephalosporins, because up to 15% will also be allergic to cephalosporins. Macrolide resistance rates vary and may be high in some areas of the world. In general, macrolide resistance rates in most areas of the United States are between 5% and 8%. In most studies, bacteriologic failures after cephalosporin therapy are less frequent than failures following penicillin. However, there are few conclusive data on the ability of these agents to prevent rheumatic fever. Therefore, penicillin remains the agent of choice for nonallergic patients. Many strains are resistant to tetracycline.

For serious infections requiring intravenous therapy, aqueous penicillin G (250,000 U/kg in six divided doses) given intravenously is usually the drug of choice. Cefazolin (100 mg/kg/d intravenously or intramuscularly in three divided doses); clindamycin (30–40 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses); and vancomycin (40 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses) are alternatives in penicillin-allergic pediatric patients. Clindamycin should not be used alone empirically for severe, suspected GAS infections because a small percentage of isolates in the United States are resistant to it.

3. Serious GAS disease—Serious GAS infections, such as pneumonia, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, sepsis, endocarditis, meningitis, and STSS, require parenteral antimicrobial therapy. Penicillin G is the drug of choice for these invasive infections. Clindamycin, as a second agent along with penicillin G, is advocated by many experts for STSS or necrotizing fasciitis. Necrotizing fasciitis requires prompt surgical debridement. In STSS, volume status and blood pressure should be monitored and patients evaluated for a focus of infection, if not readily apparent. Intravenous immunoglobulin (in addition to antibiotics) has been used in severe cases.

4. Treatment failure—Even when compliance is perfect, organisms will be found in cultures in 5%–35% of children after cessation of therapy. Reculture is indicated only in patients with relapse or recrudescence of pharyngitis or those with a personal or family history of rheumatic fever. Repeat treatment at least once with an oral cephalosporin or clindamycin is indicated in patients with recurrent culture-positive pharyngitis.

5. Prevention of recurrences in rheumatic individuals—The preferred prophylaxis for rheumatic individuals is benzathine penicillin G, 1.2 million units (600,000 units for patients < 27 kg) intramuscularly every 4 weeks. If the risk of streptococcal exposure is high, every-3-week dosing is preferred. One of the following alternative oral prophylactic regimens may be used: penicillin V, 250 mg twice daily; or sulfadiazine, 0.5 g once a day (if < 27 kg) or 1 g once a day (if > 27 kg). In patients allergic to both penicillin and sulfonamide drugs, erythromycin 250 mg twice daily orally can be used. If carditis is absent, continued prophylaxis is recommended for at least 5 years after the last episode of acute rheumatic fever or until 21 years of age (whichever is longer). Prophylaxis should be continued longer if the risk of contact with persons with GAS is high (eg, parents of school-aged children, pediatric nurses, and teachers). In the presence of carditis without residual heart or valvular disease, a minimum of 10 years after the last episode of acute rheumatic fever or until 21 years of age (whichever is longer) is the minimum duration. If the patient has residual valvular heart disease, many recommend lifelong prophylaxis. These patients should be at least 10 years from their last episode of rheumatic disease and at least 40 years of age before considering discontinuation of prophylaxis. Those with severe valvular heart disease or with risk of ongoing exposure to GAS may benefit from lifelong prophylaxis.

6. Poststreptococcal reactive arthritis—In contrast to rheumatic fever, nonsteroidal agents may not dramatically improve joint symptoms. However, like patients with rheumatic fever, some patients with poststreptococcal reactive arthritis have developed carditis several weeks to months after their arthritis symptoms began. Patients should be monitored for development of carditis for the next 1–2 years. Some experts recommend antibiotic prophylaxis of these patients (same prophylaxis regimens as in prevention of recurrences of acute rheumatic fever) for 1–2 years and monitoring for signs of carditis (see recommendations for prevention of recurrences of rheumatic fever, above). If carditis does not develop, prophylaxis could then be discontinued. If carditis develops, the patient should be considered

to have acute rheumatic fever and prophylaxis continued as described above.

B. General Measures

Acetaminophen is useful for pain or fever. Local treatment of impetigo may promote earlier healing. Crusts should first be soaked off. Areas beneath the crusts should then be washed with soap daily.

C. Treatment of Complications

Rheumatic fever is best prevented by early and adequate penicillin treatment of the streptococcal infection.

D. Treatment of Carriers

Identification and treatment of GAS carriers is difficult. There are no established clinical or serologic criteria for differentiating carriers from the truly infected. Between 10% and 15% of school-aged children in some studies are asymptomatic pharyngeal carriers of GAS. Streptococcal carriers are individuals who do not mount an immune response to the organism and are therefore believed to be at low risk for nonsuppurative sequelae.

Some children receive multiple courses of antimicrobials, with persistence of GAS in the throat, leading to a "streptococcal neurosis" on the part of families.

In certain circumstances, eradication of carriage may be desirable: (1) when a family member has a history of rheumatic fever; (2) when an episode of STSS or necrotizing fasciitis has occurred in a household contact; (3) multiple, recurring, documented episodes of GAS in family members despite adequate therapy; and (4) during an outbreak of rheumatic fever or GAS-associated glomerulonephritis. Clindamycin (20–30 mg/kg/d, given orally in three divided doses; maximum dose 300 mg) or a combination of rifampin (20 mg/kg/d, given orally for 4 days) and penicillin in standard dosage given orally has been used to attempt eradication of carriage.

» Prognosis

Death is rare except in infants or young children with sepsis or pneumonia. The febrile course is shortened and complications eliminated by early and adequate treatment with penicillin.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/groupastrep/clinicians.html.

Shulman ST et al: Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of group A streptococcal pharyngitis: 2012 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2012;55(10):e86–e102 [PMID: 22965026]. Available at: http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/content/early/2012/09/06/cid.cis629.full.

GROUP B STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Early-onset neonatal infection:

- Newborn younger than age 7 days, with rapidly progressing overwhelming sepsis, with or without meningitis.
- Pneumonia with respiratory failure is frequent; chest radiograph resembles that seen in hyaline membrane disease.
- Blood or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) cultures growing group B streptococci (GBS).

» Late-onset Infection:

- Meningitis, sepsis, or other focal infection in a child aged 1–16 weeks with blood or CSF cultures growing GBS.

» Prevention

Many women of childbearing age possess type-specific circulating antibody to the polysaccharide antigens for group B Streptococcus (GBS). These antibodies are transferred to the newborn via the placental circulation. GBS carriers delivering healthy infants have significant serum levels of IgG antibody to this antigen. In contrast, women delivering infants who develop either early- or late-onset GBS disease rarely have detectable antibody in their sera.

Currently, there is no licensed vaccine for group B Streptococcus disease prevention. Vaccines have been studied in pregnant women and research is ongoing.

» CDC Recommendations for Prevention of Perinatal GBS Disease

1. Caregivers for pregnant women are referred to the CDC guidelines for screening of pregnant women for GBS and use of intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis (IAP), —see Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Guidelines http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5910.pdf and http://www.cdc.gov/groupbstrep/clinicians/obstetric-providers.html.
2. Indications and nonindications for IAP to prevent early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease are given in Table 42–1.
3. Algorithm for secondary prevention of early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease among newborns (management of a newborn whose mother received IAP for prevention of GBS or suspected chorioamnionitis)—Figure 42–1.

Table 42–1. Indications and nonindications for intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis to prevent early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease.

Intrapartum GBS Prophylaxis Indicated	Intrapartum GBS Prophylaxis Not Indicated
• Previous infant with invasive GBS disease	• Colonization with GBS during a previous pregnancy (unless an indication for GBS prophylaxis is present for current pregnancy)
• GBS bacteriuria during any trimester of the current pregnancy[a]	• GBS bacteriuria during previous pregnancy (unless an indication for GBS prophylaxis is present for current pregnancy)
• Positive GBS vaginal-rectal screening culture in late gestation[b] during current pregnancy[a]	• Negative vaginal and rectal GBS screening culture in late gestation[b] during the current pregnancy, regardless of intrapartum risk factors
• Unknown GBS status at the onset of labor (culture not done, incomplete, or results unknown) and any of the following: • Delivery at < 37 wk' gestation[c] • Amniotic membrane rupture ≥ 18 h • Intrapartum temperature ≥ 100.4°F (≥ 38.0°C)[d] • Intrapartum NAAT[e] positive for GBS	• Cesarean delivery performed before onset of labor on a woman with intact amniotic membranes, regardless of GBS colonization status or gestational age

NAAT, nucleic acid amplification tests.
[a]Intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is not indicated in this circumstance if a cesarean delivery is performed before onset of labor on a woman with intact amniotic membranes.
[b]Optimal timing for prenatal GBS screening is at 35–37 weeks' gestation.
[c]Recommendations for the use of intrapartum antibiotics for prevention of early-onset GBS disease in the setting of threatened preterm delivery are presented in Figure 42–1.
[d]If amnionitis is suspected, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy that includes an agent known to be active against GBS should replace GBS prophylaxis.
[e]NAAT testing for GBS is optional and might not be available in all settings. If intrapartum NAAT is negative for GBS but any other intrapartum risk factor (delivery at < 37 weeks' gestation, amniotic membrane rupture at ≥ 18 hours, or temperature ≥ 100.4°F [≥ 38.0°C]) is present, then intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is indicated.
Reproduced with permission from Verani JR et al: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. Revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59(RR-10):1–32.

» Clinical Findings

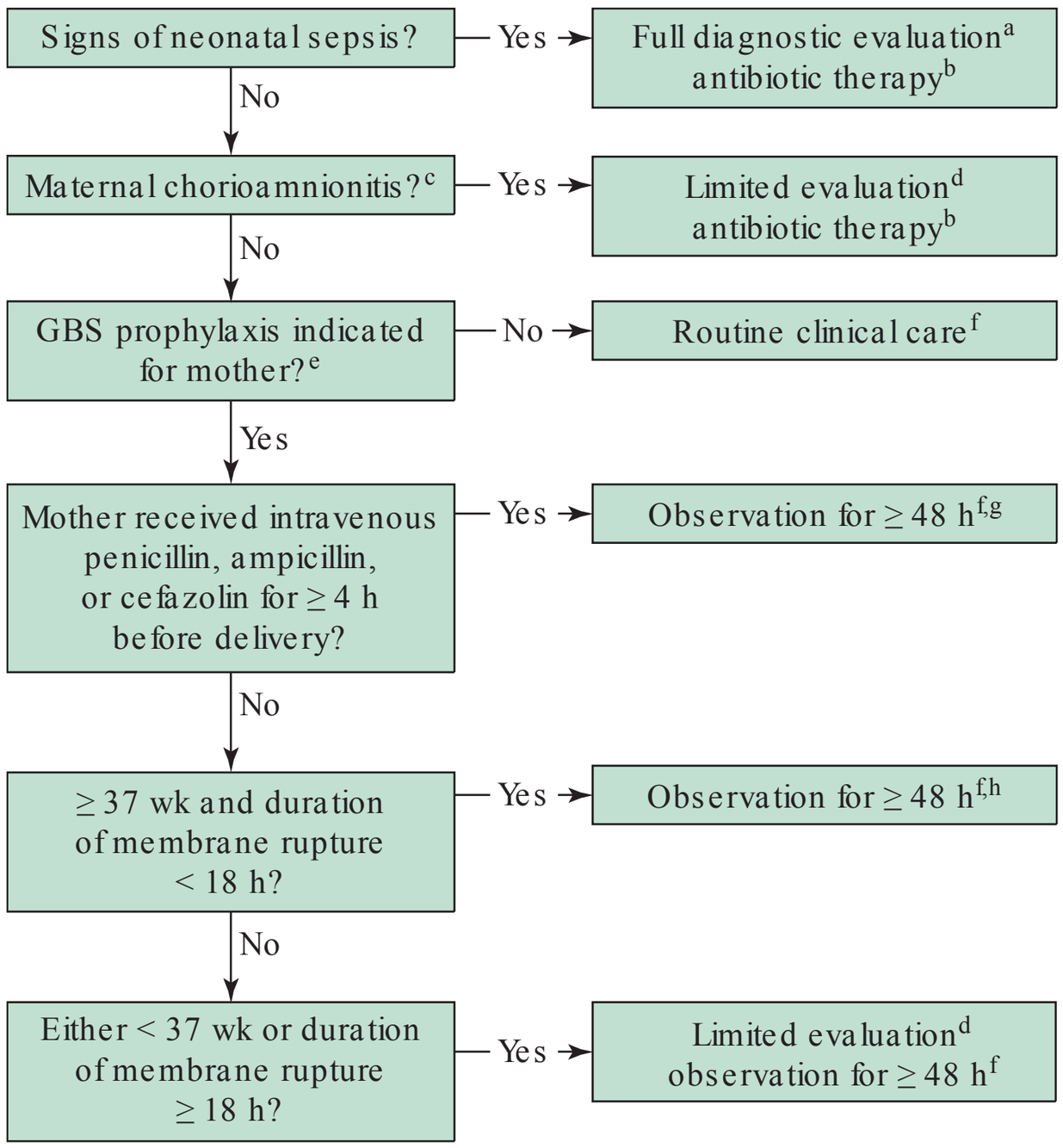
The incidence of perinatal GBS disease has declined dramatically since screening of pregnant mothers and provision of IAP began. Although most patients with GBS disease are infants younger than age 3 months, cases are seen in infants aged 4–5 months. Serious infection also occurs in women with puerperal sepsis, immunocompromised patients, patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous peritonitis, and diabetic patients with cellulitis. Two distinct clinical syndromes distinguished by differing perinatal event and, age at onset occur in infants.

A. Early-Onset Infection

"Early-onset" illness is observed in newborns younger than 7 days old. Risk factors for early-onset group GBS disease include maternal GBS colonization, gestational age less than 37 weeks, rupture of membranes > 18 hours prior to presentation, young maternal age, history of a previous infant with invasive GBS disease, African-American or Hispanic ethnicity, and low or absent maternal GBS anticapsular antibodies. The onset of symptoms in the majority of these infants is in the first 48 hours of life, and most are ill within 6 hours. Apnea is often the first sign. Sepsis, shock, meningitis, apnea, and pneumonia are the most common clinical presentations. When early-onset infection is complicated by meningitis, more than 80% of the bacterial isolates are serotype III. Newborns with early-onset disease are severely ill at the time of diagnosis, and more than 50% die. Although premature infants are at increased risk for the disease, most infants with early-onset infections are full-term. Newborns with early-onset infection acquire GBS in utero as an ascending infection or during passage through the birth canal.

B. Late-Onset Infection

"Late-onset" infection occurs in infants between ages 7 days and 4 months (median age at onset is about 4 weeks). Maternal obstetric complications are not usually associated with late-onset infection. These infants are usually not as ill at the time of diagnosis as those with early-onset disease, and the mortality rate is lower. In recent series, about 37% of patients



[a]Full diagnostic evaluation includes a blood culture, a complete blood count (CBC) including white blood cell differential and platelet counts, chest radiograph (if respiratory abnormalities are present), and lumbar puncture (if patient is stable enough to tolerate procedure and sepsis is suspected).
[b]Antibiotic therapy should be directed toward the most common causes of neonatal sepsis, including intravenous ampicillin for GBS and coverage for other organisms (including Escherichia coli and other gram-negative pathogens) and should take into account local antibiotic resistance patterns.
[c]Consultation with obstetric providers is important to determine the level of clinical suspicion for chorioamnionitis. Chorioamnionitis is diagnosed clinically and some of the signs are nonspecific.
[d]Limited evaluation includes blood culture (at birth) and CBC with differential and platelets (at birth and/or at 6–12 hours of life).
[e]See Table 42–1 for indications for intrapartum GBS prophylaxis.
[f]If signs of sepsis develop, a full diagnostic evaluation should be conducted and antibiotic therapy initiated.
[g]If ≥ 37 weeks' gestation, observation may occur at home after 24 hours if other discharge criteria have been met, access to medical care is readily available, and a person who is able to comply fully with instructions for home observation will be present. If any of these conditions is not met, the infant should be observed in the hospital for at least 48 hours and until discharge criteria are achieved.
[h]Some experts recommend a CBC with differential and platelets at age 6–12 hours.

▲**Figure 42–1.** Algorithm for secondary prevention of early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) disease among newborns. (Reproduced with permission from Verani JR, McGee L, Schrag SL: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. Revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. MMWR Recomm Rep 2010;59(RR-10):1–32).

have meningitis and 46% have sepsis. Septic arthritis and osteomyelitis, meningitis, occult bacteremia, otitis media, ethmoiditis, conjunctivitis, cellulitis (particularly of the face or submandibular area), lymphadenitis, breast abscess, empyema, and impetigo have been described. The exact mode of transmission of the organisms is not well defined.

C. Laboratory Findings

Culture of GBS from a normally sterile site such as blood, pleural fluid, or CSF provides proof of diagnosis. Frequent false-positive results limit the usefulness of testing for GBS antigen in urine and CSF.

» Treatment

Intravenous ampicillin and an aminoglycoside is the initial regimen of choice for newborns with presumptive invasive GBS disease. For neonates 7 days of age or younger with meningitis, the recommended ampicillin dosage is 200–300 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in three divided doses. For infants older than 7 days of age, the recommended ampicillin dosage is 300 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in four divided doses.

Penicillin G can be used alone once GBS is identified and clinical and microbiologic responses have occurred. GBS is less susceptible than other streptococci to penicillin, and high doses are recommended, especially for meningitis. In infants with meningitis, the recommended dosage of penicillin G varies with age: for infants age 7 days or younger, 250,000–450,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in three divided doses; for infants older than age 7 days, 450,000–500,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in four divided doses.

A second lumbar puncture after 24–48 hours of therapy is recommended by some experts to assess efficacy. Duration of therapy is 2 weeks for uncomplicated meningitis; at least 4 weeks for osteomyelitis, cerebritis, ventriculitis, or endocarditis; and 10 days for bacteremia. Therapy does not eradicate carriage of the organism.

Although streptococci have been universally susceptible to penicillins, increased minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) have been observed in some isolates. Resistance of isolates to clindamycin and erythromycin has increased significantly worldwide.

In infants diagnosed with GBS infection and who are part of a multiple birth (twins, triplets, etc) define a risk for acquisition of invasive GBS disease in their siblings. Those siblings should be closely monitored and if signs of illness occur, promptly evaluated and antibiotics instituted for possible systemic infection.

Centers for disease control and prevention (CDC): prevention of perinatal group b streptococcal disease revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. MMWR 2010;59(RR-10):1–32. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5910.pdf.

STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS WITH ORGANISMS OTHER THAN GROUP A OR B

» General Considerations

Streptococci of groups other than A and B are part of the normal flora of humans and can occasionally cause disease. Group C or group G organisms occasionally produce pharyngitis, but without risk of subsequent rheumatic fever. AGN may occasionally occur. Group D streptococci and Enterococcus species are normal inhabitants of the gastrointestinal tract and may produce urinary tract infections, meningitis, and sepsis in the newborn, as well as endocarditis. Nosocomial infections caused by Enterococcus are frequent in neonatal and oncology units and in patients with central venous catheters. Nonhemolytic aerobic streptococci and β-hemolytic streptococci are normal flora of the mouth. They are involved in the production of dental plaque and probably dental caries, and are the most common cause of subacute infective endocarditis. Finally, there are numerous anaerobic and microaerophilic streptococci, normal flora of the mouth, skin, and gastrointestinal tract, which alone or in combination with other bacteria may cause sinusitis, dental abscesses, brain abscesses, and intra-abdominal or lung abscesses.

» Prevention

Streptococci (other than group A or B) are common normal flora in humans. Some disease caused by these organisms can be prevented by maintaining good oral hygiene. Spread of vancomycin-resistant enterococcal strains can be limited by good infection control practices in healthcare environments. Development of resistant strains can also be limited by antimicrobial stewardship. There are no vaccines that prevent infections with these organisms.

» Treatment

A. Enterococcal Infections

Enterococcus faecalis and Enterococcus faecium are the two most common and most important strains causing human infections. In general, E faecalis is more susceptible to antibiotics than E faecium, but antibiotic resistance is commonly seen with both species. Invasive enterococcal infections should be treated with ampicillin if the isolate is susceptible or vancomycin in combination with gentamicin. Gentamicin should be discontinued if susceptibility testing demonstrates high-level resistance to gentamicin. Isolates that are resistant to both ampicillin and vancomycin necessitate other therapeutic options.

1. Infections with ampicillin-susceptible enterococci— Lower tract urinary infections can be treated with oral amoxicillin. Pyelonephritis should be treated intravenously with ampicillin and gentamicin (gentamicin dosing may need to be adjusted for altered renal function). Sepsis or meningitis in the newborn should be treated intravenously with a combination of ampicillin and gentamicin. Peak serum gentamicin levels of 3–5 mcg/mL are adequate as gentamicin is functioning as a synergistic agent. Endocarditis requires 6 weeks of intravenous treatment. Ampicillin or penicillin in combination with gentamicin is used in susceptible strains. Consult the American Heart Association guidelines for infective endocarditis for treatment recommendations for endocarditis.

2. Infections with ampicillin-resistant- or vancomycin-resistant enterococci—Ampicillin-resistant enterococci

are often susceptible to vancomycin. Vancomycin-resistant enterococci are usually also resistant to ampicillin. Linezolid is approved for use in children only for vancomycin-resistant E faecium infections. Two other agents are approved in adults against certain vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Daptomycin is approved for adults with vancomycin-resistant E faecalis infections, Quinupristin-dalfopristin is approved for adults with vancomycin-resistant E faecium (not effective against E faecalis) infections. Isolates resistant to linezolid, daptomycin, and quinupristin-dalfopristin have been reported. Infectious disease consultation is recommended when use of these drugs is entertained or when vancomycin-resistant enterococcal infections are identified.

B. Viridans Streptococci Infections (Subacute Infective Endocarditis)

It is important to determine the penicillin sensitivity of the infecting strain as early as possible in the treatment of viridans streptococcal endocarditis. Resistant organisms are most commonly seen in patients receiving penicillin prophylaxis for rheumatic heart disease. Treatment of endocarditis varies depending on whether the patient has native valves or prosthetic valves/material and whether the organism is penicillin susceptible. Refer to the American Heart Guidelines on Infective Endocarditis for a complete discussion and recommendations.

C. Other Viridans Streptococci–Related Infections

Viridans streptococci are normal flora of the gastrointestinal tract, respiratory tract, and the mouth. In many cases, isolation of viridans streptococci from a blood culture is considered to be a "contaminant" in the absence of signs or symptoms of endocarditis or other invasive disease. However, in children who are immunocompromised, have congenital or acquired valvular heart disease, or who have indwelling lines, viridans streptococci may be a cause of serious morbidity. About one-third of bacteremias in patients with malignancies may be due to bacteria from the Streptococcus viridans group. Mucositis and gastrointestinal toxicity from chemotherapy are risk factors for developing disease. Even in children with normal immune systems, viridans streptococci sometimes cause serious infections. For example, viridans streptococci isolated from an abdominal abscess after rupture of the appendix represents a true pathogen. Streptococcus anginosus, a member of the Streptococcus viridans group, can cause intracranial abscess (often as a complication of sinusitis) and abdominal abscesses. In patients with risk factors or signs/symptoms for subacute endocarditis, isolation of one of the members of the Streptococcus viridans group should prompt consideration and evaluation for possible endocarditis (see previous section).

Increasing prevalence of antibiotic resistance has been seen over the last 10 years in isolates of the streptococci viridans group. Penicillin resistance varies with geographic region, institution, and the populations tested, but ranges from 30% to 70% in oncology patients. Cephalosporin resistance is also relatively common. Therefore, it is important to obtain antibiotic susceptibilities to the organism to select effective therapy. Vancomycin, linezolid, and quinupristin-dalfopristin remain effective against most isolates.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. http://www.cdc.gov/HAI/organisms/vre/vre.html.

Wilson W et al: Prevention of infective endocarditis: recommendations by the American Heart Association. Circulation 2007;116(15):1736–1754 [PMID: 17446442].

PNEUMOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Bacteremia:
  - High fever (> 39.4°C).
  - Leukocytosis (> 15,000/μL).
- Pneumonia:
  - Fever, leukocytosis, and tachypnea.
  - Localized chest pain.
  - Localized or diffuse rales. Chest radiograph may show lobar infiltrate (with effusion).
- Meningitis:
  - Fever, leukocytosis.
  - Bulging fontanelle, neck stiffness.
  - Irritability and lethargy.
- All types:
  - Diagnosis confirmed by cultures of blood, CSF, pleural fluid, or other body fluid.

General Considerations

Sepsis, sinusitis, otitis media, pneumonitis, meningitis, osteomyelitis, cellulitis, arthritis, vaginitis, and peritonitis are part of the spectrum of pneumococcal infection. Clinical findings that correlate with occult bacteremia in ambulatory patients include age (6–24 months), degree of temperature elevation (> 39.4°C), and leukocytosis (> 15,000/μL). Although each of these findings is in itself nonspecific, a combination of them should arouse suspicion. This constellation of findings in a child who has no focus of infection may be an indication for blood cultures and antibiotic therapy.

Streptococcus pneumoniae is a common cause of acute purulent otitis media and is the organism responsible for most cases of acute bacterial pneumonia in children. Effusions are common, although frank empyema is less common. Abscesses also occasionally occur.

The incidence rate of pneumococcal meningitis has decreased since incorporation of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine into the infant vaccine schedule. However, pneumococcal meningitis is still more common than Haemophilus influenzae type b meningitis. Pneumococcal meningitis, sometimes recurrent, may complicate serious head trauma, particularly if there is persistent leakage of CSF. This has led some physicians to recommend the prophylactic administration of penicillin or other antimicrobials in such cases.

Children with sickle cell disease, other hemoglobinopathies, congenital or acquired asplenia, and some immunoglobulin and complement deficiencies are unusually susceptible to pneumococcal sepsis and meningitis. They often have a catastrophic illness with shock and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). The spleen is important in the control of pneumococcal infection. Autosplenectomy may explain why children with sickle cell disease are at increased risk of developing serious pneumococcal infections. Children with cochlear implants are at higher risk for pneumococcal meningitis.

S pneumoniae rarely causes serious disease in the neonate. However, occasionally pneumonia, sepsis, or meningitis may occur and clinically is similar to GBS infection.

Historically, penicillin was the agent of choice for pneumococcal infections, and some strains are still highly susceptible to penicillin. However, pneumococci with moderately increased resistance to penicillin are found in most communities. The prevalence of these relatively penicillin-resistant strains in North America varies geographically. Pneumococci with high-level resistance to penicillin and multiple other drugs are increasingly encountered throughout the United States. Pneumococci from normally sterile body fluids should be routinely tested for susceptibility to penicillin as well as other drugs.

» Prevention

Two pneumococcal vaccines are licensed for use in children in the United States: 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13) and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV23). PCV13 was licensed in 2010 (replacing the 7-valent pneumococcal vaccine). It contains antigens from 13 pneumococcal serotypes and is currently recommended for routine use in the infant and childhood immunization schedule. These vaccines and indications for use (including use of pneumococcal vaccines in children at high risk for invasive pneumococcal disease) are discussed in detail in Chapter 10.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In pneumococcal sepsis, fever usually appears abruptly, often accompanied by chills. There may be no respiratory symptoms. In infants and young children with pneumonia, fever, and tachypnea without auscultatory changes are the usual presenting signs. Respiratory distress is manifested by nasal flaring, chest retractions, and tachypnea. Abdominal pain is common. In older children, the adult form of pneumococcal pneumonia with signs of lobar consolidation may occur, but sputum is rarely bloody. Inspiratory pain (from pleural involvement) is sometimes present, but is less common in children. With involvement of the right hemidiaphragm, pain may be referred to the right lower quadrant, suggesting appendicitis. Vomiting is common at onset but seldom persists. Convulsions are relatively common at onset in infants.

Meningitis is characterized by fever, irritability, convulsions, and neck stiffness. The most important sign in very young infants is a tense, bulging anterior fontanelle. In older children, fever, chills, headache, and vomiting are common. Classic signs are nuchal rigidity associated with positive Brudzinski and Kernig signs. With progression of untreated disease, the child may develop opisthotonos, stupor, and coma.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leukocytosis is often pronounced (20,000–45,000/μL), with 80%–90% polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Neutropenia may be seen early in very serious infections. The presence of pneumococci in the nasopharynx is not a helpful finding, because up to 40% of normal children carry pneumococci in the upper respiratory tract. Large numbers of organisms are seen on Gram-stained smears of endotracheal aspirates from patients with pneumonia. In meningitis, CSF usually shows an elevated white blood cell (WBC) count of several thousand, chiefly polymorphonuclear neutrophils, with decreased glucose and elevated protein levels. Gram-positive diplococci may be seen on some (but not all) stained smears of CSF sediment. Antigen detection tests are not useful. Isolation of S pneumoniae from a normally sterile site (eg, blood, cerebrospinal fluid, joint fluid, middle ear fluid) or from a suppurative focus confirms the diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

There are many causes of high fever and leukocytosis in young infants; besides invasive pneumococcal disease. The differential diagnosis includes viral infection, urinary tract infection, unrecognized focal infection elsewhere in the body, salmonellosis, or early acute shigellosis.

Staphylococcal pneumonia may be indistinguishable early in its course from pneumococcal pneumonia.

In primary pulmonary tuberculosis, children do not have a toxic appearance, and radiographs show a primary focus associated with hilar adenopathy and often with pleural involvement. Miliary tuberculosis presents a classic radiographic appearance.

Pneumonia caused by Mycoplasma pneumoniae is most common in children aged 5 years and older. Onset is insidious, with infrequent chills, low-grade fever, prominent headache and malaise, cough, and, often, striking radiographic changes. Marked leukocytosis (> 18,000/μL) is unusual.

Pneumococcal meningitis is diagnosed by lumbar puncture. Without a Gram-stained smear and culture of CSF pneumoccal meningitis is not distinguishable from other types of acute bacterial meningitis.

» Complications

Complications of sepsis include meningitis and osteomyelitis; complications of pneumonia include empyema, parapneumonic effusion, and, rarely, lung abscess. Mastoiditis, subdural empyema, and brain abscess may follow untreated pneumococcal otitis media. Both pneumococcal meningitis and peritonitis are more likely to occur independently without coexisting pneumonia. Shock, DIC, and Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome resembling meningococcemia are occasionally seen in pneumococcal sepsis, particularly in asplenic patients. Hemolytic-uremic syndrome may occur as a complication of pneumococcal pneumonia or sepsis.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

All S pneumoniae isolated from normally sterile sites should be tested for antimicrobial susceptibility. The term "nonsusceptible" is used to describe both intermediate and resistant isolates. Strains that are nonsusceptible to penicillin, ceftriaxone (or cefotaxime), and other antimicrobials are increasingly common globally. Antimicrobial susceptibility breakpoints for S pneumoniae to penicillin and ceftriaxone/cefotaxime are based on whether the patient has meningitis and the drug route (oral vs intravenous), Table 42–2. Therapy of meningitis, empyema, osteomyelitis, and endocarditis due to nonsusceptible S pneumoniae is challenging because penetration of antimicrobials to these sites is limited. Infectious disease consultation is recommended for advice regarding these problems. For empiric therapy of serious or life-threatening infections pending susceptibility test results, vancomycin and ceftriaxone (or vancomycin and cefotaxime) are recommended.

1. Bacteremia—Prior to routine childhood immunization with conjugated pneumococcal vaccine, 3%–5% of blood cultures in patients < 2 years of age yielded S pneumonia, but these percentages decreased with the current vaccine schedule. Many experts treat suspected bacteremia in children that are not seriously ill with ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg, given intramuscularly or intravenously). However, meningitis occurs with the same frequency despite presumptive therapy. All children with blood cultures that grow pneumococci should be reexamined as soon as possible. The child who has a focal infection, such as meningitis, or who appears septic should be admitted to the hospital to receive parenteral antimicrobials. If the child is afebrile and appears well or mildly ill, outpatient management is appropriate. Severely ill or immunocompromised children, in whom invasive infection with S pneumoniae is suspected, should be empirically treated with vancomycin (in addition to other appropriate antibiotics to cover other suspected pathogens). If meningitis is also suspected, use ceftriaxone or cefotaxime in addition to vancomycin until the susceptibilities of the organism are known.

2. Pneumonia—For infants (≥ 1 month of age) with susceptible organisms appropriate regimens include ampicillin (150–200 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses) aqueous penicillin G (250,000–400,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in four to six divided doses), cefotaxime (50 mg/kg intravenously every 8 hours), or ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg intravenously every 12–24 hours). If susceptibilities are not known and the patient is severely ill or immunocompromised, vancomycin should be used as part of the regimen to

Table 42–2. Penicillin breakpoints (minimum inhibitory concentrations [MIC]) for Streptococcus pneumoniae by susceptibility category—Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 2008.

Drug	Clinical Syndrome and Drug Route	Susceptibility Category MIC (mcg/mL)		
		Susceptible	Intermediate	Resistant
Penicillin	Meningitis, intravenous penicillin	≤ 0.06	None[a]	≥ 0.12
	Nonmeningitis, intravenous penicillin	≤ 2	4	≥ 8
	Nonmeningitis, oral penicillin	≤ 0.06	0.12–1	≥ 2
Cefotaxime or ceftriaxone	Meningitis, intravenous cefotaxime or ceftriaxone	≤ 0.5	1	≥ 2
	Nonmeningitis, intravenous cefotaxime or ceftriaxone	≤ 1	2	≥ 4

[a]There is no intermediate category for meningitis.
Reproduced with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Effects of new penicillin susceptibility breakpoints for Streptococcus pneumoniae–United States, 2006–2007, MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2008 Dec 19;57(50):1353–1355.

provide coverage for penicillin- or cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcus. Once results of susceptibility testing are available, the regimen can be tailored. Mild pneumonia may be treated with amoxicillin (80–90 mg/kg/d) for 7–10 days. Alternative regimens include oral macrolides (resistance may be high) and cephalosporins.

3. Otitis media—Most experts recommend oral amoxicillin (80–90 mg/kg/d, divided in two doses) as first-line therapy. The standard course of therapy is 10 days; however, many physicians treat uncomplicated, mild cases in children 6 years of age or older for 5–7 days. Treatment failures may be treated with amoxicillin-clavulanate (80–90 mg/kg/d of the amoxicillin component in the 14:1 formulation), intramuscular ceftriaxone, cefuroxime axetil, or cefdinir. Azithromycin can also be used in patients with type I hypersensitivity reactions to penicillin or cephalosporin, but resistance to macrolides may be high.

4. Meningitis—Until bacteriologic confirmation and susceptibility testing are completed, patients should receive vancomycin (60 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in four divided doses) and cefotaxime (225–300 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses), OR vancomycin (see previous dosage) and ceftriaxone (100 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in two divided doses). Patients with serious hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics (eg, penicillins, cephalosporins) can be treated with a combination of vancomycin (see previous dosage) and rifampin (20 mg/kg/d in two divided doses). Note, this regimen does not include gram negative coverage so additional antimicrobial agents may be needed if an organism has not been definitively identified. Use of vancomycin alone or use of rifampin alone is not recommended. Vancomycin combined with meropenem is an alternative for penicillin or cephalosporin allergic patients and this regimen provides additional gram-negative coverage until culture and susceptibility results are obtained. Corticosteroids (dexamethasone, 0.6 mg/kg/d, in four divided doses for 4 days) are controversial but are recommended by many experts as adjunctive therapy for pneumococcal meningitis. A repeat lumbar puncture at 24–48 hours should be considered to ensure sterility of the CSF if dexamethasone is given, if resistant pneumococci were initially isolated, or if the patient is not demonstrating expected improvement after 24–48 hours on therapy.

If the isolate is penicillin-susceptible, aqueous penicillin G can be administered (300,000–400,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in four to six divided doses for 10–14 days). Alternatively, use of ceftriaxone or cefotaxime is an acceptable alternative therapy for penicillin- and cephalosporin-susceptible isolates. Consult an infectious disease specialist or the Red Book (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2012) for a complete discussion of pneumococcal meningitis and for therapeutic options for isolates that are nonsusceptible to penicillin or cephalosporins.

» Prognosis

In children, case fatality rates of less than 1% should be achieved except for meningitis, where rates of 5%–20% still prevail. The presence of large numbers of organisms without a prominent CSF inflammatory response or meningitis due to a penicillin-resistant strain indicates a poor prognosis. Serious neurologic sequelae, particularly hearing loss, are frequent following pneumococcal meningitis.

Bradley JS et al: The management of community-acquired pneumonia in infants and children older than 3 months of age: clinical practice guidelines by the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2011 Oct;53(7):617–630 [PMID: 21890766].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Prevention of pneumococcal disease among infants and children—use of 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine—recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2010 Dec 10;59(RR-11):1–18 [PMID: 21150868].

Pickering LK (ed): Red Book 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2012.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

» General Considerations

Staphylococcal infections are common in childhood and range from local mild infections to overwhelming systemic infections. Diseases caused by staphylococci include, but are not limited to, furuncles, carbuncles, scalded skin syndrome, osteomyelitis, pyomyositis, septic arthritis, pneumonia, bacteremia, endocarditis, meningitis, and toxic shock syndrome (TSS). Staphylococci are the major cause of osteomyelitis and septic arthritis and are an uncommon but important cause of bacterial pneumonia. They are found in infections at all ages and in multiple sites, particularly when infection is introduced from the skin or upper respiratory tract or when closed compartments become infected (pericarditis, sinusitis, cervical adenitis, surgical wounds, abscesses in the liver or brain, and abscesses elsewhere in the body).

Staphylococci that do not produce the enzyme coagulase are termed coagulase-negative and are seldom speciated in the clinical microbiology laboratory. Most S aureus strains produce coagulase. S aureus and coagulase-negative staphylococci are normal flora of the skin and respiratory tract. The latter rarely cause disease except in compromised hosts, the newborn, or patients with indwelling lines.

Most strains of S aureus elaborate β-lactamase that confers penicillin resistance. This can be overcome in clinical practice by the use of a cephalosporin or a penicillinase-resistant penicillin, such as oxacillin, nafcillin, cloxacillin, or dicloxacillin. Methicillin-resistant S aureus (MRSA) are

resistant in vivo to all of these penicillinase-resistant penicillins and cephalosporins. MRSA has dramatically increased in prevalence globally as both a healthcare-associated and a community-associated pathogen. Healthcare-associated infections are likely to be multidrug resistant. Community-associated MRSA may be susceptible to clindamycin and/or TMP-SMX, but resistance rates to these agents vary widely geographically. MRSA strains with intermediate susceptibility to vancomycin are occurring more frequently and occasionally vancomycin-resistant strains are isolated. The existence of such strains is of concern because of the inherent virulence of most strains of S aureus and because of the limited choices for therapy.

S aureus produces a variety of exotoxins. Two toxins are recognized as playing a central role in specific diseases: exfoliatin and staphylococcal enterotoxin. The former is largely responsible for the various clinical presentations of scalded skin syndrome. Enterotoxin causes staphylococcal food poisoning. The exoprotein toxin most commonly associated with TSS has been termed TSST-1. Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL) is an exotoxin produced by some clinical isolates of methicillin-susceptible S aureus (MSSA) and MRSA strains. PVL is a virulence factor that causes leukocyte destruction and tissue necrosis. PVL-producing S aureus strains are often community-acquired, and have most commonly produced boils and abscesses. However, they also have been associated with severe cellulitis, osteomyelitis, and deaths from necrotizing pneumonia in otherwise healthy children and young adults.

» Prevention

No licensed vaccines are available. Patients with recurrent skin infections with S aureus should practice good skin hygiene to try to prevent recurrences. Keeping fingernails short, good skin hygiene, not sharing towels or other personal items, and use of a clean towel daily may help prevent recurrences.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Staphylococcal skin diseases—Dermal infection with S aureus causes pustules, furuncles, carbuncles, or cellulitis. Community-associated MRSA and MSSA frequently cause skin and soft tissue infections. MRSA furuncles and abscesses are extraordinarily common in clinical practice. Parents initially may think the child has a spider bite. Skin lesions can be seen anywhere on the body but are commonly seen on the buttocks in infants and young children. Factors that facilitate transmission of MRSA or MSSA include crowding, compromised skin (eg, eczema), participation on contact sports teams, day care attendance, bare skin contact with surfaces used by others (exercise mats, sauna benches), and sharing towels or other personal items.

S aureus are often found along with streptococci in impetigo. If the strains produce exfoliatin, localized lesions become bullous (bullous impetigo).

Scalded skin syndrome is a toxin-mediated illness caused by exfoliative toxins A and B produced by certain strains of S aureus. The initial infection may begin at any site but is in the respiratory tract in most cases. Skin erythema, often beginning around the mouth, is accompanied by fever and irritability. The involved skin becomes tender to touch. A day or so later, exfoliation begins, usually around the mouth. The inside of the mouth is red, and a peeling rash is present around the lips, often in a radial pattern. Generalized, painful peeling may follow, involving the limbs and trunk but often sparing the feet. More commonly, peeling is confined to areas around body orifices. If erythematous but unpeeled skin is rubbed, superficial epidermal layers separate from deeper ones and slough (Nikolsky sign). Generally, if secondary infection does not occur, there is healing without scarring. In the newborn, the disease is termed Ritter disease and may be fulminant.

2. Osteomyelitis and septic arthritis—(See Chapter 26.) MRSA invasive disease including osteomyelitis and septic arthritis is being seen increasingly.

3. Staphylococcal pneumonia—Staphylococcal pneumonia in infancy is characterized by abdominal distention, high fever, respiratory distress, and toxemia. It may occur without predisposing factors or after minor skin infections. The organism is necrotizing, producing bronchoalveolar destruction. Pneumatoceles, pyopneumothorax, and empyema are frequently encountered. Rapid progression of disease is characteristic. Frequent chest radiographs to monitor the progress of disease are indicated. Presenting symptoms may be typical of paralytic ileus, suggestive of an abdominal catastrophe.

Invasive MRSA infections are increasing and have been reported in all age groups. Many cases are in patients who develop MRSA pneumonia as a complication of influenza. MRSA or MSSA pneumonias are rapidly progressive, severe, and often devastating. Complications are frequent including necrotizing pneumonia, pneumatoceles, and/or empyemas. Purulent pericarditis occurs by direct extension in about 10% of cases, with or without empyema.

4. Staphylococcal food poisoning—Staphylococcal food poisoning is a result of ingestion of enterotoxin produced by staphylococci growing in uncooked and poorly refrigerated food. The disease is characterized by vomiting, prostration, and diarrhea occurring 2–6 hours after ingestion of contaminated foods.

5. Staphylococcal endocarditis—S aureus may produce infection of normal heart valves, of valves or endocardium in children with congenital or rheumatic heart disease, or of artificial valves. About 25% of all cases of endocarditis are

due to S aureus. The great majority of artificial heart valve infections involve either S aureus or coagulase-negative staphylococci. Infection usually begins in an extracardiac focus, often the skin. Involvement of the endocardium should be considered when blood cultures grow S aureus, particularly when cultures are persistently positive. Suspicion must be highest in the presence of congenital heart disease, particularly ventricular septal defects with aortic insufficiency but also simple ventricular septal defect, patent ductus arteriosus, and tetralogy of Fallot.

The presenting symptoms in staphylococcal endocarditis are fever, weight loss, weakness, muscle pain or diffuse skeletal pain, poor feeding, pallor, and cardiac decompensation. Signs include splenomegaly, cardiomegaly, petechiae, hematuria, and a new or changing murmur. The course of S aureus endocarditis is rapid, although subacute disease occurs occasionally. Peripheral septic embolization and uncontrollable cardiac failure are common, even when optimal antibiotic therapy is administered, and may be indications for surgical intervention (see section "Staphylococcal Endocarditis").

6. Toxic shock syndrome—TSS is characterized by fever, blanching erythroderma, diarrhea, vomiting, myalgia, prostration, hypotension, and multiorgan dysfunction. It is due to S aureus focal infection, usually without bacteremia. Large numbers of cases have been described in menstruating adolescents and young women using vaginal tampons. TSS has also been reported in boys and girls with focal staphylococcal infections and in individuals with wound infections due to S aureus. Additional clinical features include sudden onset; conjunctival suffusion; mucosal hyperemia; desquamation of skin on the palms, soles, fingers, and toes during convalescence; DIC in severe cases; renal and hepatic functional abnormalities; and myolysis. The mortality rate with early treatment is now about 2%. Recurrences are seen during subsequent menstrual periods in as many as 60% of untreated women who continue to use tampons. Recurrences occur in up to 15% of women given antistaphylococcal antibiotics who stop using tampons.

7. Coagulase-negative staphylococcal infections—Localized and systemic coagulase-negative staphylococcal infections occur primarily in immunocompromised patients, high-risk newborns, and patients with plastic prostheses or catheters. Coagulase-negative staphylococci are the most common nosocomial pathogen in hospitalized low-birth-weight neonates in the United States. Intravenous administration of lipid emulsions and indwelling central venous catheters are risk factors contributing to coagulase-negative staphylococcal bacteremia in newborn infants. In patients with an artificial heart valve, a Dacron patch, a ventriculoperitoneal shunt, or a central venous catheter, coagulase-negative staphylococci are a common cause of sepsis or catheter infection, often necessitating removal of the foreign material and protracted antibiotic therapy. Because blood cultures are frequently contaminated by this organism, diagnosis of genuine localized or systemic infection is often difficult.

B. Laboratory Findings

Moderate leukocytosis (15,000–20,000/μL) with a shift to the left is occasionally found, although normal counts are common, particularly in infants. The sedimentation rate is elevated. Blood cultures are frequently positive in systemic staphylococcal disease and should always be obtained when it is suspected. Similarly, pus from sites of infection should always be aspirated or obtained surgically, examined with Gram stain, and cultured both aerobically and anaerobically. There are no useful serologic tests for staphylococcal disease.

» Differential Diagnosis

Staphylococcal skin disease takes many forms; therefore, the differential list is long. Bullous impetigo must be differentiated from chemical or thermal burns, from drug reactions, and, in the very young, from the various congenital epidermolytic syndromes or even herpes simplex infections. Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome may resemble scarlet fever, Kawasaki disease, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, erythema multiforme, and other drug reactions. A skin biopsy may be critical in establishing the diagnosis. Varicella lesions may become superinfected with exfoliatin-producing staphylococci and produce a combination of the two diseases (bullous varicella).

Severe, rapidly progressing pneumonia with formation of abscesses, pneumatoceles, and empyemas is typical of S aureus infection and GAS but may occasionally be produced by pneumococci and H influenzae.

Staphylococcal food poisoning is often epidemic. It is differentiated from other common-source gastroenteritis syndromes (Salmonella, Clostridium perfringens, and Vibrio parahaemolyticus) by the short incubation period (2–6 hours), the prominence of vomiting (as opposed to diarrhea), and the absence of fever.

Endocarditis is suspected with S aureus bacteremia, particularly when a significant heart murmur or preexisting cardiac disease is present (see Chapter 20).

Newborn infections with S aureus can resemble infections with streptococci and a variety of gram-negative organisms. Umbilical and respiratory tract colonization occurs with many pathogenic organisms (GBS, Escherichia coli, and Klebsiella), and both skin and systemic infections occur with virtually all of these organisms.

TSS must be differentiated from Rocky Mountain spotted fever, leptospirosis, Kawasaki disease, drug reactions, adenovirus, and measles (Table 42–3).

Table 42–3. Interpretation of tuberculin skin test reactions.[a]

Degree of Risk	Risk Factors	Positive Reaction
High	Recent close contact with a case of active tuberculosis Chest radiograph compatible with tuberculosis Immune compromise; HIV infection	≥ 5 mm induration
Medium	Current or previous residence in high-prevalence area (Asia, Africa, Latin America) Skin test converters within past 2 y Intravenous drug use Homeless or residence in a correctional institution Recent weight loss or malnutrition Leukemia, Hodgkin disease, or diabetes mellitus Age < 4 y	≥ 10 mm induration
Low	Children ≥ 4 y without any risk factor	≥ 15 mm induration

[a]Standard intradermal Mantoux test, 5 test units. Measure perpendicular to the long axis of the arm. Induration only, not erythema, is measured.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

The incidence of community-acquired MRSA isolates varies greatly geographically, but in many communities in the United States MRSA is the most common pathogen isolated from skin and soft tissue infections. For empiric coverage of potentially life-threatening infections with suspected S aureus (in which susceptibilities are not known) initial therapy should include vancomycin in combination with either nafcillin or oxacillin (in addition to appropriate antibiotic therapy for other suspected pathogens). Antibiotic therapy can then be adjusted based on identification of the organism and susceptibility results.

Currently, manycommunity-acquired MRSA strains are susceptible to TMP-SMX and some are susceptible to clindamycin; however, this varies greatly geographically. Knowledge of local MRSA susceptibility patterns is useful in guiding empiric therapy. Less serious infections in nontoxic patients may be initially treated using TMP-SMX or clindamycin, while awaiting cultures and susceptibility data, if community MRSA resistance to these agents is low.

For MSSA strains, a β-lactamase–resistant penicillin is the drug of choice (oxacillin or nafcillin). In serious systemic disease, in osteomyelitis, and in the treatment of large abscesses, intravenous therapy is indicated initially (oxacillin or nafcillin, 100–150 mg/kg/d in four divided doses). In serious or life-threatening illness, consultation with an infectious disease physician is recommended.

Cephalosporins may be considered for MSSA infections in patients with a history of penicillin sensitivity, unless there is a history of type 1 hypersensitivity reaction (anaphylaxis, wheezing, edema, or hives). Cefazolin, 100–150 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in three divided doses, or cephalexin, 50–100 mg/kg/d, given orally in four divided doses, can be used once a child is able to take oral antibiotics. The third-generation cephalosporins should not generally be used for staphylococcal infections.

For serious S aureus infections, initial therapy with vancomycin (15 mg/kg/dose intravenously every 6 hours) plus nafcillin or oxacillin is recommended until susceptibilities are available. For nosocomially acquired MRSA infections, vancomycin should be used until results of susceptibility testing are available to guide therapy (isolates are frequently clindamycin and TMP-SMX–resistant). Infections due to MRSA do not respond to cephalosporins despite in vitro testing that suggests susceptibility. For treatment of meningitis, vancomycin must be given in higher doses (60 mg/kg/d divided into four doses). The addition of rifampin is advocated by some (rifampin should not be used alone to treat this condition).

1. Skin infections—Treatment of skin and soft tissue infections depends, in part, on the extent of the lesion, immunocompetence of the host, and the toxicity of the patient. Afebrile, well-appearing patients with small abscesses may do well with incision and drainage (with or without the addition of oral antimicrobials). More serious infections or infections in immunocompromised patients should be treated more aggressively. Hospitalization and intravenous antibiotics may be required. Culture and susceptibility testing will help guide therapy.

For patients who are not sick enough to require hospitalization or intravenous therapy, selection of the best empiric antimicrobial depends on local rates of MRSA and local susceptibilities. β-Lactam antibiotics, such as penicillins and cephalosporins, can no longer be depended on as single agents for the majority of cases in communities with high MRSA rates. TMP-SMX or clindamycin (depending on local susceptibility patterns) may be used for empiric staphylococcal coverage. However, Group A streptococci are generally resistant to TMP-SMX and in a small number of cases may also be resistant to clindamycin. Many clinicians empirically use a combination of TMP-SMX and cefazolin for initial treatment until susceptibilities are known. Linezolid is another option, although the cost of this drug is high.

2. Osteomyelitis and septic arthritis—Treatment should be begun intravenously, with antibiotics selected to cover the most likely organisms (staphylococci in hematogenous osteomyelitis; meningococci, pneumococci, staphylococci in children younger than age 3 years with septic arthritis; staphylococci and gonococci in older children with septic arthritis). Knowledge of local MRSA rates will help guide empiric therapy. Antibiotic levels should be kept high at all times.

Clinical studies support the use of intravenous treatment for osteomyelitis until fever and local symptoms and signs have subsided—usually at least 3–5 days—followed by oral therapy. For both osteomyelitis and joint infections, good compliance with oral therapy is important for successful cure.

Nafcillin, oxacillin, or cefazolin can be used for intravenous therapy of MSSA strains. Clindamycin is an alternative agent if the organism is susceptible and the patient does not have a severe or life-threatening infection or ongoing bacteremia. Dicloxacillin, 100–150 mg/kg/d in four divided doses or cephalexin, 100–150 mg/kg/d in four divided doses) can be used when the patient is ready for oral therapy.

Vancomycin can be used initially for MRSA osteomyelitis, while awaiting final susceptibilities. Antibiotic regimens for MRSA osteomyelitis should be based on susceptibility results; isolates may be susceptible to clindamycin or linezolid, but susceptibility patterns vary geographically.

The C-reactive protein (in the first or second week after therapy is started) and the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (usually measured weekly) are good indicators of response to therapy. Surgical drainage of osteomyelitis or septic arthritis is often required (see Chapter 26).

3. Staphylococcal pneumonia—In areas of the country where MRSA is not prevalent, or if the isolate is known to be MSSA, nafcillin and oxacillin are the usual drugs of choice. Vancomycin can be used empirically until results of cultures and susceptibility tests are obtained if MRSA rates are high. In sicker patients, vancomycin plus nafcillin or vancomycin plus oxacillin can be used (in addition to coverage of other pathogens) until the etiologic agent and susceptibilities are established. Linezolid has been reported to be as efficacious as vancomycin for the treatment of resistant gram-positive pneumonia and soft tissue infections.

Empyema and pyopneumothorax require drainage. The choice of chest tube versus thoracoscopic drainage depends on the practitioner's experience and skill. If staphylococcal pneumonia is treated promptly and empyema drained, resolution in children often is complete.

4. Staphylococcal food poisoning—Therapy is supportive and usually not required except in severe cases or for small infants with marked dehydration.

5. Staphylococcal endocarditis—The treatment of staphylococcal endocarditis depends on whether the patient has a prosthetic valve or material in the heart and on the susceptibilities of the organism. Please see the American Heart Association's Guidelines on Infective Endocarditis: Diagnosis and Management and consult an infectious disease physician for this serious and sometimes complicated problem. High-dose, prolonged parenteral treatment is indicated. Therapy lasts in all instances for at least 6 weeks.

Occasionally, medical treatment fails. Signs of treatment failure are (1) recurrent fever without apparent treatable other cause (eg, thrombophlebitis, respiratory or urinary tract infection, drug fever), (2) persistently positive blood cultures, (3) intractable and progressive congestive heart failure, and (4) recurrent (septic) embolization. In such circumstances—particularly (2), (3), and (4)—evaluation for valve replacement becomes necessary. Antibiotics are continued for at least another 4 weeks after blood cultures are proven negative. Persistent or recurrent infection may require a second surgical procedure.

6. Toxic shock syndrome—Treatment is aimed at expanding blood volume, maintaining perfusion pressure with inotropic agents, ensuring prompt drainage of a focus of infection (or removal of tampons or foreign bodies), and giving intravenous antibiotics.

Vancomycin, in addition to a β-lactam antibiotic (oxacillin or nafcillin), can be used for empiric therapy. Many experts also add clindamycin, since clindamycin is a protein synthesis inhibitor and may turn off toxin production. Clindamycin should not be used empirically as a single agent until susceptibilities are known.

Intravenous immunoglobulin has been used as adjunctive therapy. Some experts believe that corticosteroid therapy may be effective if given to patients with severe illness early in the course of their disease.

7. Vancomycin-resistant *S aureus* infections (VRSA)—Reports of VRSA isolates are rare but are likely to increase in frequency. Such isolates are sometimes susceptible to clindamycin or TMP-SMX. If not, therapeutic options are limited and include use of quinupristin-dalfopristin, linezolid, or daptomycin, assuming the strain is susceptible to these agents. Quinupristin-dalfopristin is not FDA-approved for children less than 16 years of age; daptomycin is not FDA-approved for children less than 18 years of age. Consultation with an infectious disease specialist is recommended.

8. Coagulase-negative staphylococcal infections—Bacteremia and other serious coagulase-negative staphylococcal infections are treated initially with vancomycin, with susceptibility results guiding subsequent therapy. Coagulase-negative staphylococci are uncommonly resistant to vancomycin (see Chapter 39 for dosing).

Baddour LM: Infective endocarditis: diagnosis and management. Circulation 2005;111:3167 [PMID: 15956145]. Available at: http://circ.ahajournals.org/content/111/23/e394.full.pdf.

Liu C et al: Clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America for the treatment of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections in adults and children. Clin Infect Dis 2011;52:285–322 [PMID: 21217178]. Available at: http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/content/52/3/e18.long.

MENINGOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Fever, headache, vomiting, convulsions, shock (meningitis).

» Fever, shock, petechial or purpuric skin rash (meningococcemia).

» Diagnosis confirmed by culture of normally sterile body fluids.

» General Considerations

Meningococci (Neisseria meningitidis) may be carried asymptomatically for months in the upper respiratory tract. Less than 1% of carriers develop disease. Meningitis and sepsis are the two most common forms of illness, but septic arthritis, pericarditis, pneumonia, chronic meningococcemia, otitis media, conjunctivitis, and vaginitis also occur. Meningococcal cases in the United States have declined recently; currently there are about 800–1000 cases annually. The highest attack rate for meningococcal meningitis is in the first year of life, with a secondary peak during the teen years. The development of irreversible shock with multiorgan failure is a significant factor in the fatal outcome of acute meningococcal infections.

Meningococci are gram-negative organisms containing endotoxin in their cell walls. Endotoxins cause capillary vascular injury and leak as well as DIC. Meningococci are classified serologically into groups: A, B, C, Y, and W-135 are the groups most commonly implicated in systemic disease. Currently in the United States, serogroups B, C, and Y each account for about 30% of cases; however, this distribution varies significantly with age. In infants about half the cases are caused by Serogroup B. In US adolescents, Serogroups B, C, and W-135 cause most cases. Over the last few years, several outbreaks on college campus have been caused by Serogroup B. Serogroup A causes epidemics in sub-Saharan Africa, but only occasionally is associated with cases of meningococcal disease in the United States. Sulfonamide resistance is common in non–serotype-A strains. N meningitidis with increased MICs to penicillin G are reported from South Africa and Spain. A small number of these isolates are reported in the United States. Resistant isolates are susceptible to third-generation cephalosporins. Few isolates are resistant to rifampin.

Patients deficient in one of the late components of complement (C6, C7, C8, or C9) are uniquely susceptible to meningococcal infection, particularly group A meningococci. Deficiencies of early and alternate pathway complement components also are associated with increased susceptibility.

» Prevention

A. Chemoprophylaxis

Household contacts, day care center contacts, and hospital personnel directly exposed to the respiratory secretions of patients are at increased risk for developing meningococcal infection and should be given chemoprophylaxis. The secondary attack rate among household members is about 1000 times the attack rate in the general population. Children between the ages of 3 months and 2 years are at greatest risk, presumably because they lack protective antibodies. Secondary cases may occur in day care centers and in classrooms. Hospital personnel are not at increased risk unless they have had contact with a patient's oral secretions, for example, during mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, intubation, or suctioning procedures. Approximately 50% of secondary cases in households have their onset within 24 hours of identification of the index case. Exposed contacts should be notified promptly. If they are febrile, they should be fully evaluated and given high doses of penicillin or another effective antimicrobial pending the results of blood cultures.

All high-risk contacts should receive chemoprophylaxis for meningococcal disease as soon as an index case is identified. High-risk contacts are defined as:

- All household contacts (especially children < 2 years of age)
- Persons with child care or preschool contact with the index patient at any time in the 7 days prior to illness onset
- Persons with direct exposure to index patients secretions (sharing of drinks, straws, cigarettes, toothbrushes, eating utensils, kissing) during the 7 days prior to illness onset
- Persons who have performed mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or performed unprotected endotracheal intubation of the index patient during the 7 days prior to illness onset
- Persons who have slept in the same dwelling as the index patient within 7 days of illness onset
- Passengers who were seated directly next to the index patient on a flight of more than 8 hours duration

The most commonly used agent for meningococcal chemoprophylaxis is oral rifampin given twice daily for

2 days (600 mg for adults; 10 mg/kg for children older than 1 month (maximum dosage 600 mg); and 5 mg/kg for infants younger than 1 month). Rifampin may stain a patient's tears (and contact lenses), sweat, and urine orange; it may also affect the reliability of oral contraceptives, and alternative contraceptive measures should therefore be employed when rifampin is administered. Rifampin should not be given to pregnant women. Instead, intramuscular ceftriaxone is the preferred agent: 125 mg given as a single dose if the patient is < 15 years old; 250 mg given as a single dose if ≥ 15 years old. Penicillin and most other antibiotics (even with parenteral administration) are not effective chemoprophylactic agents, because they do not eradicate upper respiratory tract carriage of meningococci. Ciprofloxacin (20 mg/kg as a single dose, maximum dose 500 mg) effectively eradicates nasopharyngeal carriage in adults and children but is not approved for use in children or in pregnant women. Throat cultures to identify carriers are not useful.

B. Vaccine

Several types of vaccines are currently licensed in the United States for meningococcal disease prevention. A quadrivalent polysaccharide vaccine (MSPV-4) prepared from purified meningococcal polysaccharides (A, C, Y, and W-135) is available for children and adults older than 2 years of age. Quadrivalent meningococcal conjugate vaccines and one bivalent conjugate meningococcal-HIB vaccine (see Chapter 10) are used in children and adults between the ages of 6 weeks and 55 years. Meningococcal conjugate vaccine is preferred over the polysaccharide vaccine. In general, conjugate vaccines provide longer-lasting immunity and a more robust immune response than polysaccharide vaccines. A Serogroup B vaccine was recently licensed for ages 10–25 years. (See Chapter 10 for a discussion on meningococcal vaccines.)

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Many children with clinical meningococcemia also have meningitis, and some have other foci of infection. All children with suspected meningococcemia should have a lumbar puncture.

1. Meningococcemia—A prodrome of upper respiratory infection is followed by high fever, headache, nausea, marked toxicity, and hypotension. Purpura, petechiae, and occasionally bright pink, tender macules or papules over the extremities and trunk are seen. The rash usually progresses rapidly. Occasional cases lack rash. Fulminant meningococcemia is characterized by DIC, massive skin and mucosal hemorrhages, and shock. This syndrome also may be caused by H influenzae, S pneumoniae, or other bacteria. Chronic meningococcemia is characterized by periodic bouts of fever, arthralgia or arthritis, and recurrent petechiae. Splenomegaly often is present. Patients may be free of symptoms between bouts. Chronic meningococcemia occurs primarily in adults and mimics Henoch-Schönlein purpura.

2. Meningitis—In many children, meningococcemia is followed within a few hours to several days by symptoms and signs of acute purulent meningitis, with severe headache, stiff neck, nausea, vomiting, and stupor. Children with meningitis generally fare better than children with meningococcemia alone, probably because they have survived long enough to develop clinical signs of meningitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The peripheral WBC count may be either low or elevated. Thrombocytopenia may be present with or without DIC (see Chapter 30). If petechial or hemorrhagic lesions are present, meningococci can sometimes be seen microscopically in tissue fluid expressed from a punctured lesion. CSF is generally cloudy and contains more than 1000 WBCs/μL, with many polymorphonuclear neutrophils and gram-negative intracellular diplococci. A total hemolytic complement assay may reveal absence of late components as an underlying cause.

» Differential Diagnosis

The skin lesions of H influenzae or pneumococci, enterovirus infection, endocarditis, leptospirosis, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, other rickettsial diseases, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, and blood dyscrasias may be similar to meningococcemia. Severe S aureus sepsis has been reported in some patients to present with purpura. Other causes of sepsis and meningitis are distinguished by appropriate Gram stain and cultures.

» Complications

Meningitis may lead to permanent central nervous system (CNS) damage, with deafness, convulsions, paralysis, or impaired intellectual function. Hydrocephalus may develop and requires ventriculoperitoneal shunt. Subdural collections of fluid are common but usually resolve spontaneously. Extensive skin necrosis, loss of digits or extremities, intestinal hemorrhage, and late adrenal insufficiency may complicate fulminant meningococcemia.

» Treatment

Blood cultures should be obtained for all children with fever and purpura or other signs of meningococcemia, and antibiotics should be administered immediately as an emergency procedure.

Children with meningococcemia or meningococcal meningitis should be treated as though shock were imminent even if their vital signs are stable when they are first seen.

If hypotension is present, supportive measures should be aggressive, because the prognosis is grave in such situations. Treatment should be started emergently in an intensive care setting, but should not be delayed while transporting the patient. Shock may worsen following antimicrobial therapy due to endotoxin release. To minimize the risk of nosocomial transmission, patients should be placed in respiratory isolation for the first 24 hours of antibiotic treatment.

A. Specific Measures

Antibiotics should be initiated promptly. Because other bacteria, such as S pneumoniae, S aureus, or other gram-negative organisms, can cause identical syndromes, initial therapy should be broad. Vancomycin and cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone) are preferred initial coverage. Once N meningitidis has been isolated, penicillin G, cefotaxime, or ceftriaxone intravenously for 7 days are the drugs of choice. Relative penicillin resistance is uncommon but has been reported in the United States.

B. General Measures

Most cases of invasive meningococcal disease are treated with intravenous antibiotics for 7 days.

1. Cardiovascular—(See Chapter 14 for management of septic shock.) Corticosteroids are not beneficial. Sympathetic blockade and topically applied nitroglycerin have been used locally to improve perfusion.

2. Hematologic—Adjunctive therapy with heparin is controversial. Because hypercoagulability is frequently present in patients with meningococcemia, some experts believe heparin should be considered when DIC is present. Recombinant tissue plasminogen activator, concentrated antithrombin III, and recombinant protein-C infusions have been tried experimentally to reverse coagulopathy (see Chapter 30 for the management of DIC).

» Prognosis

Unfavorable prognostic features include shock, DIC, and extensive skin lesions. The case fatality rate in fulminant meningococcemia is over 30%. In uncomplicated meningococcal meningitis, the fatality rate is much lower (10%–20%).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Meningococcal disease. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/meningococcal/clinical-info.html.

Cohn AC et al: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Prevention and control of meningococcal disease: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2013;62(RR-2):1 [PMID: 231515099]. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

GONOCOCCAL INFECTIONS (SEE CHAPTER 44)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Purulent urethral discharge with intracellular gram negative diplococci on smear in male patients (usually adolescents).
- Purulent, edematous, sometimes hemorrhagic conjunctivitis with intracellular gram-negative diplococci in 2- to 4-day-old infants.
- Fever, arthritis (often polyarticular) or tenosynovitis, and maculopapular peripheral rash that may be vesiculopustular or hemorrhagic.
- Positive culture of blood, pharyngeal, or genital secretions.
  - Nucleic acid amplification test on urine on genital secretions.

» General Considerations

Neisseria gonorrhoeae is a gram-negative diplococcus. Although morphologically similar to other neisseriae, it differs in its ability to grow on selective media and to ferment carbohydrates. The cell wall of N gonorrhoeae contains endotoxin, which is liberated when the organism dies and is responsible for the production of a cellular exudate. The incubation period is short, usually 2–5 days.

Reported cases of gonorrhea exceeded 333,000 in the United States in 2013. Gonococcal disease in children may be transmitted sexually or nonsexually. Prepubertal gonococcal infection outside the neonatal period should be considered presumptive evidence of sexual contact or child abuse. Prepubertal girls usually manifest gonococcal vulvovaginitis without cervicitis because of the neutral to alkaline pH of the vagina and thin vaginal mucosa.

In the adolescent or adult, the workup of every case of gonorrhea should include a careful and accurate inquiry into the patient's sexual practices, because pharyngeal infection resulting from oral sex must be detected if present and may be difficult to eradicate. Efforts should be made to identify and provide treatment to all sexual contacts. Programs of expedited partner treatment where prescriptions are provided without first examining the sexual contact increase successful treatment. Young women are at risk for serious health consequences including infertility due to gonococcal and chlamydia infection. When prepubertal children are infected, epidemiologic investigation should be thorough.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Asymptomatic gonorrhea—The ratio of asymptomatic to symptomatic gonorrheal infections in adolescents and adults is probably 3–4:1 in women and 0.5–1:1 in men. Asymptomatic infections are as infectious as symptomatic ones.

2. Uncomplicated genital gonorrhea

a. Male with urethritis—Urethral discharge is sometimes painful and bloody and may be white, yellow, or green. There may be associated dysuria. The patient usually is afebrile.

b. Prepubertal female with vaginitis—The only clinical findings initially may be dysuria and polymorphonuclear neutrophils in the urine. Vulvitis characterized by erythema, edema, and excoriation accompanied by a purulent discharge may follow.

c. Postpubertal female with cervicitis—Symptomatic disease is characterized by a purulent, foul-smelling vaginal discharge, dysuria, and occasionally dyspareunia. Fever and abdominal pain are absent. The cervix is frequently hyperemic and tender when touched. This tenderness is not worsened by moving the cervix, nor are the adnexa tender to palpation.

d. Rectal gonorrhea—Rectal gonorrhea often is asymptomatic. There may be purulent discharge, edema, and pain during evacuation.

3. Pharyngeal gonorrhea—Pharyngeal infection usually is asymptomatic. There may be some sore throat and, rarely, acute exudative tonsillitis with bilateral cervical lymphadenopathy and fever.

4. Conjunctivitis and iridocyclitis—Copious, usually purulent exudate is characteristic of gonococcal conjunctivitis. Newborns are symptomatic on days 2–4 of life. In the adolescent or adult, infection probably is spread from infected genital secretions by the fingers.

5. Pelvic inflammatory disease (salpingitis)—The interval between initiation of genital infection and its ascent to the uterine tubes is variable and may range from days to months. Menses frequently are the initiating factor. With the onset of a menstrual period, gonococci invade the endometrium, causing transient endometritis. Subsequently salpingitis may occur, resulting in pyosalpinx or hydrosalpinx. Rarely infection progresses to peritonitis or perihepatitis. Gonococcal salpingitis occurs in an acute, a subacute, or a chronic form. All three forms have in common tenderness on gentle movement of the cervix and bilateral tubal tenderness during pelvic examination.

Gonococci or Chlamydia trachomatis are the cause of about 50% of cases of pelvic inflammatory disease. A mixed infection caused by enteric bacilli, Bacteroides fragilis, or other anaerobes occur in the other 50%.

6. Gonococcal perihepatitis (fitz-hugh and curtis syndrome)—Typically the patient presents with right upper quadrant tenderness in association with signs of acute or subacute salpingitis. Pain may be pleuritic and referred to the shoulder. Hepatic friction rub is a valuable but inconstant sign.

7. Disseminated gonorrhea—Dissemination follows asymptomatic more often than symptomatic genital infection, often from gonococcal pharyngitis or anorectal gonorrhea. The most common form of disseminated gonorrhea is polyarthritis or polytenosynovitis, with or without dermatitis. Monoarticular arthritis is less common, and gonococcal endocarditis and meningitis are rare.

a. Polyarthritis—Disease usually begins with the simultaneous onset of low-grade fever, polyarthralgia, and malaise. After a day or so, joint symptoms become acute. Swelling, redness, and tenderness occur, frequently over the wrists, ankles, and knees but also in the fingers, feet, and other peripheral joints. Skin lesions may be noted at the same time. Discrete, tender, maculopapular lesions 5–8 mm in diameter appear that may become vesicular, pustular, and then hemorrhagic. They are few in number and noted on the fingers, palms, feet, and other distal surfaces. In patients with this form of the disease, blood cultures are often positive, but joint fluid rarely yields organisms. Skin lesions often are positive by Gram stain but rarely by culture. Genital, rectal, and pharyngeal cultures must be performed.

b. Monoarticular arthritis—In this somewhat less common form of disseminated gonorrhea, fever is often absent. Arthritis evolves in a single joint. Dermatitis usually does not occur. Systemic symptoms are minimal. Blood cultures are negative, but joint aspirates may yield gonococci on smear and culture. Genital, rectal, and pharyngeal cultures must be performed.

B. Laboratory Findings

Demonstration of gram-negative, kidney-shaped diplococci in smears of urethral exudate in males is presumptive evidence of gonorrhea. Positive culture confirms the diagnosis. Negative smears do not rule out gonorrhea. Gram-stained smears of cervical or vaginal discharge in girls are more difficult to interpret because of normal gram-negative flora, but they may be useful when technical personnel are experienced. Gonococcal pharyngitis requires culture for diagnosis. Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAAT) on urine or genital specimens now enable detection of N gonorrhoeae

and C trachomatis. These tests have excellent sensitivity and are replacing culture in many laboratories. All children or adolescents with a suspected or established diagnosis of gonorrhea should have serologic tests for syphilis and HIV.

If cultures are obtained use of a selective chocolate agar containing antibiotics (eg, Thayer-Martin agar) is needed to suppress normal flora. If bacteriologic diagnosis is critical, suspected material should be cultured on chocolate agar as well. Because gonococci are labile, agar plates should be inoculated immediately and placed without delay in an atmosphere containing CO_2 When transport of specimens is necessary, material should be inoculated directly into an appropriate transport medium prior to shipment to the laboratory. In cases of possible sexual molestation, notify the laboratory that definite speciation is needed, because nongonococcal Neisseria species can grow on the selective media.

» Differential Diagnosis

Urethritis in the male may be gonococcal or nongonococcal (NGU). NGU is a syndrome characterized by discharge (rarely painful), mild dysuria, and a subacute course. The discharge is usually scant or moderate and non-purulent. C trachomatis is the only proven cause of NGU. Doxycycline (100 mg orally twice a day for 7 days) is efficacious. Single-dose azithromycin, 1 g orally, may achieve better compliance. C trachomatis has been shown to cause epididymitis in males and salpingitis in females.

Vulvovaginitis in a prepubertal female may be due to infection caused by miscellaneous bacteria, including Shigella and GAS, Candida, and herpes simplex. Discharges may be caused by trichomonads, Enterobius vermicularis (pin-worm), candidiasis or foreign bodies. Symptom-free discharge (leukorrhea) normally accompanies rising estrogen levels.

Cervicitis in a postpubertal female, alone or in association with urethritis and involvement of Skene and Bartholin glands, may be due to infection caused by Candida, herpes simplex, Trichomonas, or discharge resulting from inflammation caused by foreign bodies (usually some form of contraceptive device). Leukorrhea may be associated with birth control pills.

Salpingitis may be due to infection with other organisms. The symptoms must be differentiated from those of appendicitis, urinary tract infection, ectopic pregnancy, endometriosis, or ovarian cysts or torsion.

Disseminated gonorrhea presents a differential diagnosis that includes meningococcemia, acute rheumatic fever, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus, leptospirosis, secondary syphilis, certain viral infections (particularly rubella, but also enteroviruses and parvovirus), serum sickness, type B hepatitis (in the prodromal phase), infective endocarditis, and even acute leukemia and other types of cancer. The fully evolved skin lesions of disseminated gonorrhea are remarkably specific, and genital, rectal, or pharyngeal cultures, plus cultures of blood and joint fluid, usually yield gonococci from at least one source.

» Prevention

Prevention of gonorrhea is principally a matter of sex education, condom use, and identification and treatment of contacts.

» Treatment

Antimicrobial-resistant gonococci are a serious problem. N gonorrhoeae infections resistant to tetracyclines, penicillins, and fluoroquinolones are common. Fluoroquinolone and oral cephalosporins are no longer recommended for therapy in the United States. In some cases, clinicians will have very limited choices for therapy. Many clinical laboratories do not routinely perform antimicrobial susceptibility tests on N gonorrhoeae, and many infections are documented by nonculture methods.

A. Uncomplicated Urogenital, Pharyngeal, or Rectal Gonococcal Infections in Adolescents

Ceftriaxone (250 mg intramuscularly in a single dose), and azithromycin (1 g orally in a single dose) is recommended. Ceftizoxime, cefotaxime, and cefotetan parenterally are alternative single-dose therapies. Fluoroquinolones are no longer recommended for therapy due to increasing rates of resistance. If ceftriaxone cannot be used, cefixime (400 mg orally in a single dose) and doxycycline (100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days) is recommended. Azithromycin (2 g orally once) can be used in the case of severe cephalosporin allergy.

Tetracyclines should be avoided in pregnancy, and repeated doses may stain the teeth of young children. Erythromycin or amoxicillin is recommended for therapy of C trachomatis in pregnant women; azithromycin is an alternative regimen. Repeat testing 3 weeks after completion of therapy is recommended in pregnant women.

A repeat culture 7 days after therapy is not necessary in asymptomatic adolescents after the ceftriaxone–doxycycline regimen, should be done if either oral regimen has been used.

B. Disseminated Gonorrhea

Recommended regimens include ceftriaxone (1 g intramuscularly or intravenously once daily) or cefotaxime (1 g intravenously every 8 hours or ceftizoxime (1 g intravenously every 8 hours). Oral therapy may follow parenteral therapy 24–48 hours after improvement. Recommended regimens include cefixime (400 mg) twice daily to complete 7 days of therapy. Fluoroquinolones are not recommended. If concurrent infection with Chlamydia is present or has not

been excluded, a course of doxycycline, azithromycin, or erythromycin should also be prescribed.

C. Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

Doxycycline (100 mg twice a day orally) and either cefoxitin (2 g intramuscularly or intravenously every 6 hours) or cefotetan (2 g intramuscularly or intravenously every 12 hours) are given until the patient is clinically improved, then doxycycline is administered by mouth to complete 14 days of therapy. Clindamycin and gentamicin given intravenously until the patient improves clinically may be used rather than cefoxitin. Many other regimens have been used for therapy of pelvic inflammatory disease, although comparative efficacy data are limited.

D. Prepubertal Gonococcal Infections

1. Uncomplicated genitourinary, rectal, or pharyngeal infections—These infections may be treated with ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg/d to a maximum of 125 mg intramuscularly in a single dose). Children older than age 8 years should also receive doxycycline (100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days). The physician should evaluate all children for evidence of sexual abuse and coinfection with syphilis, Chlamydia, and HIV.

2. Disseminated gonorrhea—This should be treated with ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg once daily parenterally for 7 days).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Update to CDC's sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2012: oral cephalosporins no longer recommended treatment for gonococcal infections. MMWR 2012;61(31):6590 [PMID: 22874837].

Workowski KA, Berman S; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. MMWR 2010;59(RR-12):1 [PMID: 21160459].

BOTULISM

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Dry mucous membranes.
- Diplopia; dilated, unreactive pupils.
- Descending paralysis.
- Difficulty in swallowing and speaking within 12–36 hours after ingestion of toxin-contaminated food.
- Multiple cases in a family or group.
- Hypotonia and constipation in infants.
- Diagnosis by clinical findings and identification of toxin in blood, stool, or implicated food.

» General Considerations

Botulism is a paralytic disease caused by Clostridium botulinum, an anaerobic, gram-positive, spore-forming bacillus normally found in soil. The organism produces an extremely potent neurotoxin. Of the seven types of toxin (A–G), types A, B, and E cause most human diseases. The toxin, a polypeptide, is so potent that 0.1 mg is lethal for humans.

Food-borne botulism usually results from ingestion of toxin-containing food. Preformed toxin is absorbed from the gut and produces paralysis by preventing acetylcholine release from cholinergic fibers at myoneural junctions. Virtually any food will support the growth of C botulinum spores into vegetative toxin-producing bacilli if an anaerobic, nonacid environment is provided. The food may not appear or taste spoiled. The toxin is heat-labile, but the spores are heat-resistant. Inadequate heating during processing (temperature < 115°C) allows the spores to survive and later resume toxin production.

Infant botulism occurs in infants less than 12 months of age. The toxin is produced by ingested C botulinum spores which germinate and produce toxin in the gastrointestinal tract.

Annually, 10–15 cases of wound botulism are reported. Most cases occur in drug abusers with infection in intravenous or intramuscular injection sites.

» Prevention

Infant botulism is acquired by ingestion of botulism spores which then sporulate into C botulinum organisms that can form botulinum toxin. Honey can contain botulism spores so it is recommended that honey not be consumed by infants less than 12 months of age. Corn syrups that have not been pasteurized may pose a theoretical risk and some organizations (American Academy of Pediatrics) recommend that infants less than 12 months should not consume unpasteurized corn syrup.

Food-borne botulism is acquired by ingesting preformed botulism toxin in food. In the United States, food-borne botulism is most commonly seen with ingestion of home-canned foods of low acidity (ie, corn, asparagus, green beans). However, other foods have also been associated with botulism. Persons who eat home-canned foods should consider boiling foods for at least 10 minutes or heating to 80°F for 30 minutes (can destroy potential toxin). Safe food handling practices include keeping foods either refrigerated (< 45°F) or hot (> 185°F), and disposing of any cracked jars or bulging/dented cans.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The incubation period for food-borne botulism is 8–36 hours. The initial symptoms are lethargy and headache. These are

followed by double vision, dilated pupils, ptosis, and, within a few hours, difficulty with swallowing and speech. The mucous membranes often are very dry. Descending skeletal muscle paralysis may be seen. Death usually results from respiratory failure.

Botulism patients present with a "classic triad": (1) afebrile; (2) symmetrical, flaccid, descending paralysis with prominent bulbar palsies; and (3) clear sensorium. Recognition of this triad is important in making the clinical diagnosis. Botulism is caused by a toxin, thus there is no fever unless secondary infection (eg, aspiration pneumonia) occurs. Common bulbar palsies seen include dysphonia, dysphagia, dysarthria, and diplopia (four "Ds").

Infant botulism is seen in infants younger than age 12 months (peak onset 2–8 months). Infants younger than age 2 weeks rarely develop botulism. The initial symptoms are usually constipation and progressive, often severe, hypotonia. Clinical findings include loss of facial expression, constipation, weak suck and cry, pooled oral secretions, cranial nerve deficits, generalized weakness, and, on occasion, apnea. The characteristic electromyographic pattern of brief, small, abundant motor-unit action potentials (BSAPs) may help confirm the diagnosis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is made by demonstration of C botulinum toxin in stool, gastric aspirate or vomitus, or serum. Serum and stool samples can be sent for toxin confirmation (done by toxin neutralization mouse bioassay at CDC or state health departments). In infant botulism, serum assays for C botulinum toxin are usually negative. The tests take time and therapy should not be withheld awaiting testing results. Foods that are suspected to be contaminated should be kept refrigerated and given to public health personnel for testing. Laboratory findings, including CSF examination, are usually normal. Electromyography suggests the diagnosis if the characteristic brief, small abundant motor-unit action potentials (BSAP) abnormalities are seen. A nondiagnostic electromyogram does not exclude the diagnosis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Guillain-Barré syndrome is characterized by ascending paralysis, sensory deficits, and elevated CSF protein without pleocytosis.

Other illnesses that should be considered include poliomyelitis, post diphtheritic polyneuritis, certain chemical intoxications, tick paralysis, and myasthenia gravis. The history and elevated CSF protein characterize postdiphtheritic polyneuritis. Tick paralysis presents with a flaccid ascending motor paralysis. An attached tick should be sought. Myasthenia gravis usually occurs in adolescent girls. It is characterized by ocular and bulbar symptoms, normal pupils, fluctuating weakness, absence of other neurologic signs, and clinical response to cholinesterase inhibitors.

» Complications

Difficulty in swallowing leads to aspiration pneumonia. Serious respiratory paralysis may be fatal despite assisted ventilation and intensive supportive measures.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Patients with suspected botulism should be hospitalized and monitored closely for signs of impending respiratory failure and inability to manage secretions. Early treatment of botulism with antitoxin is beneficial. The type of antitoxin treatment recommended differs depending on the type of botulism. Treatment should begin as soon as the clinical diagnosis is suspected (prior to microbiologic or toxin confirmation). Contact your State Health Department's emergency 24-hour telephone number immediately when a case of botulism is suspected to assist in therapeutic decisions and to help obtain treatment product.

For treatment of suspected infant botulism, intravenous human botulism immunoglobulin (BabyBIG) is approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). BabyBIG contains neutralizing antibodies against type A and B toxin. A placebo-controlled clinical trial of BabyBIG use in infant botulism showed substantial reductions in the mean hospital stay, mechanical ventilation days, and intensive care days in the BabyBIG–treated group. Baby-BIG is not indicated for use in any form of botulism (wound, food-borne) other than infant botulism. To obtain BabyBIG (in any state), contact the California Department of Public Health (24-hour telephone number: 510-231-7600; www.infantbotulism.org/). Antimicrobial agents are not recommended to treat infant botulism, except when bacterial complications occur (ie, pneumonia, line infection, etc).

For other types of botulism (noninfant botulism), patients should be treated with heptavalent botulinum antitoxin (HBAT), which is only available from the CDC under an investigational new drug protocol. HBAT is an equine-derived antitoxin that contains antibodies to all seven botulinum toxin types (A through G). The treatment protocol (available from the CDC) includes detailed instructions for intravenous administration of antitoxin. State Health Departments can assist practitioners in obtaining the antitoxin; if State Health Department officials are unavailable, the CDC ([770] 488-7100) can be contacted for help in obtaining the product and for consultation. In addition, epidemic assistance, and laboratory testing services are available from the CDC through state health departments. For wound botulism, penicillin or

metronidazole is recommended, once HBAT has been given. Surgical debridement of involved tissue is recommended.

B. General Measures

General and supportive therapy consists of bed rest, ventilatory support (if necessary), fluid therapy, and enteral or parenteral nutrition. Aminoglycoside antimicrobials and clindamycin may exacerbate neuromuscular blockage and should be avoided.

» Prognosis

The mortality rate has declined substantially in recent years and currently is at 6%.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Botulism technical information. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/nczved/divisions/dfbmd/diseases/botulism/professional.html.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Investigational heptavalent botulinum antitoxin (HBAT) to replace licensed botulinum antitoxin AB and investigational botulinum antitoxin E. MMWR 2010;59(10);299 [PMID: 20300057].

Long SS: Infant botulism and treatment with BIG-IV (BabyBIG). Pediatr Infect Dis J 2007;26:261 [PMID: 17484226].

Underwood K et al: Infant botulism: a 30-year experience spanning the introduction of botulism immune globulin intravenous in the intensive care unit at Childrens Hospital Los Angeles. Pediatrics 2007;120:e1380–e1385 [PMID: 18055655].

TETANUS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Nonimmunized or partially immunized patient.
- History of skin wound.
- Spasms of jaw muscles (trismus).
- Stiffness of neck, back, and abdominal muscles, with hyperirritability and hyperreflexia.
- Episodic, generalized muscle contractions.
- Diagnosis is based on clinical findings and the immunization history.

» General Considerations

Tetanus is caused by Clostridium tetani, an anaerobic, gram-positive bacillus that produces a potent neurotoxin. In unimmunized or incompletely immunized individuals, infection follows contamination of a wound by soil containing Clostridial spores from animal manure. The toxin reaches the CNS by retrograde axon transport, is bound to cerebral gangliosides, and increases reflex excitability in neurons of the spinal cord by blocking function of inhibitory synapses. Intense muscle spasms result. Two-thirds of cases in the United States follow minor puncture wounds of the hands or feet. In many cases, no history of a wound can be obtained. Injecting substances and drug abuse may be risk factors (in individuals who are not tetanus-immune). In the newborn, usually in underdeveloped countries, infection generally results from contamination of the umbilical cord. The incubation period typically is 4–14 days but may be longer. In the United States, cases in young children are due to failure to immunize. Eighty-five percent of cases occur in adults older than 25 years.

» Prevention

A. Tetanus Toxoid

Active immunization with tetanus toxoid prevents tetanus. Immunity is almost always achieved after the third dose of vaccine. Tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG) is an additional agent used to prevent tetanus in persons who have received less than three doses of tetanus toxoid or in immunocompromised patients who do not make sufficient antibody (ie, HIV infection; see Chapter 10). A tetanus toxoid booster at the time of injury is needed if none has been given in the past 10 years—or within 5 years for heavily contaminated wounds. Nearly all cases of tetanus (99%) in the United States are in nonimmunized or incompletely immunized individuals. Many adolescents and adults lack protective antibody.

B. Wound Care and Prophylaxis for Tetanus-Prone Wounds

Wounds that are contaminated with soil, debris, feces, or saliva are at increased risk for tetanus. Puncture wounds, crush injuries, avulsions, frostbite, burns, or other wounds that contain devitalized tissue are also at increased risk of infection with C tetani. All wounds should be adequately cleaned, foreign material removed, and debrided if necrotic or devitalized tissue or residual foreign matter is present. The decision to use tetanus toxoid–containing vaccine, human TIG, or both depends on the type of injury and the tetanus immunization status of the patient (see Chapter 10; Table 10–5). TIG should be used in children with fewer than three previous tetanus toxoid immunizations (DPT, DPaT, DT, Td, Tdap) who have tetanus-prone wounds and should be administered to HIV-infected children with tetanus-prone wounds, regardless of their immunization history. When TIG is indicated for wound prophylaxis 250 units are given intramuscularly regardless of age. If tetanus immunization is incomplete, a dose of age-appropriate vaccine

should be given. When both are indicated, tetanus toxoid and TIG should be administered concurrently at different sites using different syringes (see Chapter 10).

Prophylactic antimicrobials are useful if the child is unimmunized and TIG is not available.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The first symptom often is mild pain at the site of the wound, followed by hypertonicity and spasm of the regional muscles. Characteristically, difficulty in opening the mouth (trismus) is evident within 48 hours. In newborns, the first signs are irritability and inability to nurse. The infant may then develop stiffness of the jaw and neck, increasing dysphagia, and generalized hyperreflexia with rigidity and spasms of all muscles of the abdomen and back (opisthotonos). The facial distortion resembles a grimace (risus sardonicus). Difficulty in swallowing and convulsions triggered by minimal stimuli such as sound, light, or movement may occur. Individual spasms may last seconds or minutes. Recurrent spasms are seen several times each hour, or they may be almost continuous. In most cases, the temperature is normal or only mildly elevated. A high or subnormal temperature is a bad prognostic sign. Patients are fully conscious and lucid. A profound circulatory disturbance associated with sympathetic overactivity (elevated blood pressure, tachycardia, arrhythmia) may occur on the second to fourth day, which may contribute to the mortality rate.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is made on clinical grounds. There may be a mild polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. The CSF is normal with the exception of mild elevation of opening pressure. Serum muscle enzymes may be elevated. Anaerobic culture and microscopic examination of pus from the wound can be helpful, but C tetani is difficult to grow, and the drumstick-shaped gram-positive bacilli often cannot be found.

» Differential Diagnosis

Poliomyelitis is characterized by asymmetrical flaccid paralysis in an incompletely immunized child. The history of an animal bite and the absence of trismus may suggest rabies. Local infections of the throat and jaw should be easily recognized. Bacterial meningitis, phenothiazine reactions, decerebrate posturing, narcotic withdrawal, spondylitis, and hypocalcemic tetany may be confused with tetanus.

» Complications

Complications include sepsis, malnutrition, pneumonia, atelectasis, asphyxial spasms, decubitus ulcers, and fractures of the spine due to intense contractions. They can be prevented in part by skilled supportive care.

» Treatment of Tetanus

A. Specific Measures

Human TIG in a single dose of 3000–6000 units, intramuscularly, is given to children and adults. Some experts suggest that a dose of 500 units is just as effective. Infiltration of part of the TIG dose around the wound is recommended. If TIG is indicated, but not available, intravenous immunoglobulin in a dose of 200–400 mg/kg intravenously can be infused over several hours (although it is not licensed for this indication; see package insert for infusion instructions). In countries where TIG or immunoglobulin are not available, equine tetanus antitoxin may be available. Surgical debridement of wounds is indicated, but more extensive surgery or amputation to eliminate the site of infection is not necessary. Antibiotics are given in an attempt to decrease the bacterial load to decrease toxin production: oral or intravenous metronidazole (30 mg/kg/d in four divided doses; maximum 4 g/d) for 10–14 days is the preferred agent. An age-appropriate tetanus toxid containing vaccine should be administered in a different limb from the TIG administration site.

B. General Measures

Treatment of tetanus is usually best accomplished in an intensive care unit. The patient is kept in a quiet room with minimal stimulation. Control of spasms and prevention of hypoxic episodes are crucial. Benzodiazepines can be used to help control spasms and provide some sedation. Mechanical ventilation and muscle paralysis are necessary in severe cases. Nasogastric or intravenous feedings should be used to limit stimulation of feedings and prevent aspiration.

» Prognosis

The fatality rate in newborns and heroin-addicted individuals is high. The overall mortality rate in the United States is 11%. The fatality rate depends on the quality of supportive care, the patient's age, and the patient's vaccination history. Many deaths are due to pneumonia or respiratory failure. If the patient survives 1 week, recovery is likely.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Clinical Information. http://www.cdc.gov/tetanus/clinicians.html.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Tetanus. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/downloads/tetanus.pdf.

GAS GANGRENE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Contamination of a wound with soil or feces.
- Massive edema, skin discoloration, bleb formation, and pain in an area of trauma.
- Serosanguineous exudate from wound.
- Crepitation of subcutaneous tissue.
- Rapid progression of signs and symptoms.
- Clostridia cultured or seen on stained smears.

» General Considerations

Gas gangrene (Clostridial myonecrosis) is a necrotizing infection that follows trauma or surgery and is caused by several anaerobic, gram-positive, spore-forming bacilli of the genus Clostridium. Occasionally the source is the gastrointestinal tract and muscles are hematogenously seeded. The spores are found in soil, feces, and vaginal secretions. In devitalized tissue, the spores germinate into vegetative bacilli that proliferate and produce toxins, causing thrombosis, hemolysis, and tissue necrosis. C perfringens, the species causing approximately 80% of cases of gas gangrene, produces at least eight toxins. The areas involved most often are the extremities, abdomen, and uterus. Clostridium septicum may also cause myonecrosis and causes septicemia in patients with neutropenia. Nonclostridial infections with gas formation can mimic clostridial infections and are more common. Neutropenia is a risk factor for this severe infection.

» Prevention

Gas gangrene can be prevented by the adequate cleansing and debridement of all wounds. It is essential that foreign bodies and dead tissue be removed. A clean wound does not provide a suitable anaerobic environment for the growth of Clostridial species.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The onset of gas gangrene usually is sudden, often 1 day after trauma or surgery (mean, 3–4 days), but can be delayed up to 20 days. Pain and swelling usually are intense. The skin around the wound becomes discolored (pale, red, or purple), with hemorrhagic bullae, serosanguineous exudate, and crepitus may be observed the subcutaneous tissues. The absence of crepitus does not rule out the diagnosis. Systemic illness appears early and progresses rapidly to intravascular hemolysis, jaundice, shock, toxic delirium, and renal failure.

B. Laboratory Findings

Isolation of the organism requires anaerobic cultures. The wound exudate, soft tissue, muscle and blood can be cultured. Gram-stained smears may demonstrate many gram-positive rods and few inflammatory cells.

C. Imaging

Radiographs may demonstrate gas in tissues, but this is a late finding and is also seen in infections with other gas-forming organisms or may be due to air introduced into tissues during trauma or surgery.

D. Operative Findings

Direct visualization of the muscle at surgery may be necessary to diagnose gas gangrene. Early, the muscle is pale and edematous and does not contract normally; later, the muscle may be frankly gangrenous.

» Differential Diagnosis

Gangrene and cellulitis caused by other organisms and Clostridial cellulitis (not myonecrosis) must be distinguished. Necrotizing fasciitis may resemble gas gangrene.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Penicillin G (300,000–400,000 U/kg/d intravenously in six divided doses) should be given. Clindamycin, metronidazole, meropenem, and ertapenem are alternatives for penicillin-allergic patients. Some experts recommend a combination of penicillin and clindamycin; clindamycin may inhibit toxin production.

B. Surgical Measures

Surgery should be prompt and extensive, with removal of all necrotic tissue. Compartment syndromes can occur even if there are few cutaneous findings. Checking compartment pressures in patients with severe pain and any signs of compartment syndrome is prudent.

C. Hyperbaric Oxygen

Hyperbaric oxygen therapy is controversial but good outcomes have been reported in nonrandomized studies using hyperbaric oxygen in combination with surgery and antibiotics.

» Prognosis

Clostridial myonecrosis is fatal if untreated. With early diagnosis, antibiotics, and surgery, the mortality rate is

20%–60%. Involvement of the abdominal wall, leukopenia, intravascular hemolysis, renal failure, and shock are ominous prognostic signs.

Smith-Slatas CL et al: Clostridium septicum infections in children: a case report and review of the literature. Pediatrics 2006;117:e796 [PMID: 16567392].

Stevens DL et al: Practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of skin and soft tissue infections: 2014 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2014;59:e10.

DIPHTHERIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Gray, adherent pseudomembrane, most often in the pharynx but also in the nasopharynx or trachea.
- Sore throat, serosanguinous nasal discharge, hoarseness, and fever in a nonimmunized child.
- Peripheral neuritis or myocarditis.
- Positive culture.
- Treatment should not be withheld pending culture results.

General Considerations

Diphtheria is an acute infection of the upper respiratory tract or skin caused by toxin-producing Corynebacterium diphtheriae. Diphtheria in the United States is rare; five cases have been reported since 2000; none since 2003. However, significant numbers of elderly adults and unimmunized children are susceptible to infection. Diphtheria still occurs in epidemics in countries where immunization is not universal. Unimmunized travelers to these areas may acquire the disease.

Corynebacteria are gram-positive, club-shaped rods with a beaded appearance on Gram stain. The capacity to produce exotoxin is conferred by a lysogenic bacteriophage and is not present in all strains of C diphtheriae. In immunized communities, infection probably occurs through spread of the phage among carriers of susceptible C diphtheriae rather than through spread of phage-containing bacteria themselves. Diphtheria toxin kills susceptible cells by irreversible inhibition of protein synthesis.

The toxin is absorbed into the mucous membranes and causes destruction of epithelium and a superficial inflammatory response. The necrotic epithelium becomes embedded in exuded fibrin with WBCs and RBCs (red blood cells), forming a grayish pseudomembrane over the tonsils, pharynx, or larynx. Any attempt to remove the membrane exposes and tears the capillaries, resulting in bleeding. The diphtheria bacilli within the membrane continue to produce toxin, which is absorbed and may result in toxic injury to heart muscle, liver, kidneys, and adrenals, and is sometimes accompanied by hemorrhage. The toxin also produces neuritis, resulting in paralysis of the soft palate, eye muscles, or extremities. Death may occur as a result of respiratory obstruction or toxemia and circulatory collapse. The patient may succumb after a somewhat longer time as a result of cardiac damage. The incubation period is 2–7 days.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Pharyngeal diphtheria—Early manifestations of diphtheritic pharyngitis are mild sore throat, moderate fever, and malaise, followed fairly rapidly by prostration and circulatory collapse. The pulse is more rapid than the fever would seem to justify. A pharyngeal membrane forms and may spread into the nasopharynx or the trachea, producing respiratory obstruction. The membrane is tenacious and gray and is surrounded by a narrow zone of erythema and a broader zone of edema. The cervical lymph nodes become swollen, which is associated with brawny edema of the neck (so-called bull neck). Laryngeal diphtheria presents with stridor, which can progress to airway obstruction.

2. Other forms—Cutaneous, vaginal, and wound diphtheria account for up to one-third of cases and are characterized by ulcerative lesions with membrane formation.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diagnosis is clinical. Direct smears are unreliable. Material is obtained from the nose, throat, or skin lesions, if present, for culture, but specialized culture media are required. Between 16 and 48 hours is required before identification of the organism. A toxigenicity test is then performed. Cultures may be negative in individuals who have received antibiotics. The WBC count usually is normal, but hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia are frequent.

Differential Diagnosis

Pharyngeal diphtheria resembles pharyngitis secondary to β-hemolytic streptococcus, Epstein-Barr virus, or other viral respiratory pathogens. A nasal foreign body or purulent sinusitis may mimic nasal diphtheria. Other causes of laryngeal obstruction include epiglottitis and viral croup. Guillain-Barré syndrome, poliomyelitis, or acute poisoning may mimic the neuropathy of diphtheria.

» Complications

A. Myocarditis

Diphtheritic myocarditis is characterized by a rapid, thready pulse; indistinct heart sounds, ST-T wave changes, conduction abnormalities, dysrhythmias, or cardiac failure; hepatomegaly; and fluid retention. Myocardial dysfunction may occur from 2 to 40 days after the onset of pharyngitis.

B. Polyneuritis

Neuritis of the palatal and pharyngeal nerves occurs during the first or second week. Nasal speech and regurgitation of food through the nose are seen. Diplopia and strabismus occur during the third week or later. Neuritis may also involve peripheral nerves supplying the intercostal muscles, diaphragm, and other muscle groups. Generalized paresis usually occurs after the fourth week.

C. Bronchopneumonia

Secondary pneumonia is common in fatal cases.

» Prevention

A. Immunization

Immunization with diphtheria toxoid combined with pertussis and tetanus toxoids (DTaP) should be used routinely for infants and children (see Chapter 10).

B. Care of Exposed Susceptibles

Children exposed to diphtheria should be examined, and nose and throat cultures obtained. If signs and symptoms of early diphtheria are found, antibiotic treatment should be instituted. Immunized asymptomatic individuals should receive diphtheria toxoid if a booster has not been received within 5 years. Unimmunized close contacts should receive either erythromycin orally (40 mg/kg/d in four divided doses) for 10 days or benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly (25,000 U/kg), active immunization with diphtheria toxoid, and close observation.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

1. Antitoxin—Suspected diphtheria should be reported promptly to the Centers for Disease Control Emergency Center (770-448-7100) so diphtheria antitoxin can be obtained. Diphtheria antitoxin is no longer commercially available. To be effective, diphtheria antitoxin should be administered within 48 hours (see Chapter 9).

2. Antibiotics—Penicillin G (150,000 U/kg/d intravenously or intramuscularly) should be given for 14 days. For penicillin-allergic patients, erythromycin (40 mg/kg/d) is given orally for 14 days.

B. General Measures

Obervation of patients t in the hospital for 10–14 days is usually required. All patients must be strictly isolated for 1–7 days until respiratory secretions are noncontagious. Isolation may be discontinued when two successive nose and throat cultures at 24-hour intervals are negative. These cultures should not be taken until at least 24 hours have elapsed since the cessation of antibiotic treatment.

C. Treatment of Carriers

All carriers should receive eithererythromycin (40 mg/kg/d orally in three or four divided doses) or, penicillin V potassium (50 mg/kg/d) for 10 days, or benzathine penicillin G (600,000–1,200,000 units intramuscularly), and they must be quarantined. Before they can be released, carriers must have two negative cultures of both the nose and the throat taken 24 hours apart and obtained at least 24 hours after the cessation of antibiotic therapy.

» Prognosis

Mortality varies from 3% to 25% and is particularly high in the presence of early myocarditis. Neuritis is reversible; it is fatal only if an intact airway and adequate respiration cannot be maintained. Permanent heart damage from myocarditis occurs rarely.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Diphtheria. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/diphtheria/clinicians.html.

Santos LS et al: Diphtheria outbreak in Maranhoa, Brazil: microbiological, clinical, and epidemiological aspects. Epidmiol Infect 2015;143(4):791 [PMID: 25703400].

INFECTIONS DUE TO ENTEROBACTERIACEAE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Diarrhea by several different mechanisms due to Ecoli.
- Hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic-uremic syndrome.
- Neonatal sepsis or meningitis.
- Urinary tract infection.
- Opportunistic infections.
- Diagnosis confirmed by culture.

General Considerations

Enterobacteriaceae are a family of gram-negative bacilli that are normal flora in the gastrointestinal tract and are also found in water and soil. They cause gastroenteritis, urinary tract infections, neonatal sepsis and meningitis, and opportunistic infections. E coli is the organism in this family that most commonly causes infection in children, but Klebsiella, Morganella, Enterobacter, Serratia, Proteus, and other genera are also important, particularly in the immune compromised host. Shigella and Salmonella are discussed in separate sections.

E coli strains capable of causing diarrhea were originally termed enteropathogenic E coli (EPEC) and were recognized by serotype. It is now known that E coli may cause diarrhea by several distinct mechanisms. Classic EPEC strains cause a characteristic histologic injury in the small bowel termed adherence and effacement. Enterotoxigenic E coli (ETEC) causes a secretory, watery diarrhea. ETEC adheres to enterocytes and secretes one or more plasmid-encoded enterotoxins. One of these, heat-labile toxin, resembles cholera toxin in structure, function, and mechanism of action. Enteroinvasive E coli (EIEC) are very similar to Shigella in their pathogenetic mechanisms. Shigella-toxin producing E coli (STEC) cause hemorrhagic colitis and the hemolytic-uremic syndrome. The most common STEC serotype is O157:H7, although several other serotypes cause the same syndrome. These strains elaborate one of several cytotoxins, closely related to Shiga toxin produced by Shigella dysenteriae. Outbreaks of hemolytic-uremic syndrome associated with STEC have followed consumption of inadequately cooked ground beef. Thorough heating to 68–71°C is necessary. Unpasteurized fruit juice, various uncooked vegetables, and contaminated water also have caused infections and epidemics. The common source for STEC in all of these foods and water is the feces of cattle or several other animals. Person-to-person spread including spread in day care centers by the fecal-oral route has been reported. Over 6400 cases of STEC were reported in the United States in 2012.

E coli that aggregate on the surface of hep cells in tissue culture are termed enteroaggregative E coli (EAggEC). EAggEC causes diarrhea by a distinct but unknown mechanism.

Eighty percent of E coli strains causing neonatal meningitis possess a specific capsular polysaccharide (K1 antigen), which, alone or in association with specific somatic antigens, confers virulence. Klebsiella, Enterobacter, Serratia, and Morganella are normally found in the gastrointestinal tract and in soil and water. Klebsiella may cause a bronchopneumonia with cavity formation. Klebsiella, Enterobacter, and Serratia are often hospital-acquired opportunists associated with antibiotic usage, debilitated states, and chronic respiratory conditions. They frequently cause urinary tract infection or sepsis. Many of these infections are difficult to treat because of antibiotic resistance. Antibiotic susceptibility tests are necessary. Parenteral third-generation cephalosporins are usually more active than ampicillin, but resistance due to high-level production of chromosomal cephalosporinase may occur. Aminoglycoside antibiotics are usually effective but require monitoring of serum levels to ensure therapeutic and nontoxic levels. Carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae are a serious concern due to limited options for therapy.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. E coli gastroenteritis—E coli may cause diarrhea of varying types and severity. ETEC usually produce mild, self-limiting illness without significant fever or systemic toxicity, often known as traveler's diarrhea. However, diarrhea may be severe in newborns and infants, and occasionally an older child or adult will have a cholera-like syndrome. EIEC strains cause a shigellosis-like illness, characterized by fever, systemic symptoms, blood and mucus in the stool, and leukocytosis, but currently are uncommon in the United States. STEC strains cause hemorrhagic colitis. Diarrhea initially is watery and fever usually is absent. Abdominal pain and cramping occur; diarrhea progresses to blood streaking or grossly bloody stools. Hemolytic-uremic syndrome occurs within a few days of diarrhea in 2%–5% of children with STEC diarrhea and is characterized by microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and renal failure (see Chapter 24).

2. Neonatal sepsis—Findings include jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, fever, temperature lability, apneic spells, irritability, and poor feeding. Respiratory distress develops when pneumonia occurs; it may appear indistinguishable from respiratory distress syndrome in preterm infants. Meningitis is associated with sepsis in 25%–40% of cases. Other metastatic foci of infection may be present, including pneumonia and pyelonephritis. Sepsis may lead to severe metabolic acidosis, shock, DIC, and death.

3. Neonatal meningitis—Findings include high fever, full fontanelles, vomiting, coma, convulsions, pareses or paralyses, poor or absent Moro reflex, opisthotonos, and occasionally hypertonia or hypotonia. Sepsis coexists or precedes meningitis in most cases. Thus, signs of sepsis often accompany those of meningitis. CSF usually shows a cell count of over 1000 WBC/μL, mostly polymorphonuclear neutrophils, and bacteria on Gram stain. CSF glucose concentration is low (usually less than half that of blood), and the protein is elevated above the levels normally seen in newborns and premature infants (> 150 mg/dL).

4. Acute urinary tract infection—Symptoms include dysuria, increased urinary frequency, and fever in the older child. Nonspecific symptoms such as anorexia, vomiting,

irritability, failure to thrive, and unexplained fever are seen in children younger than age 2 years. Young infants may present with jaundice. As many as 1% of school-aged girls and 0.05% of boys have asymptomatic bacteriuria. Screening for and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria is not recommended.

B. Laboratory Findings

Because E coli are normal flora in the stool, a positive stool culture alone does not prove that the E coli in the stool are causing disease. Serotyping, biochemical and nucleic acid tests for enterotoxin production or invasiveness, and tests for P-fimbriae are performed in research laboratories. MacConkey agar with sorbitol substituted for lactose (SMAC agar) is useful to screen stool for STEC. Serotyping and testing for STEC enterotoxin are available at many state health departments and increasingly from commercial and hospital laboratories. Blood cultures are positive in neonatal sepsis. Cultures of CSF and urine should also be obtained. The diagnosis of urinary tract infections is discussed in Chapter 24.

» Differential Diagnosis

The clinical picture of EPEC infection may resemble that of salmonellosis, shigellosis, or viral gastroenteritis. Neonatal sepsis and meningitis caused by E coli can be differentiated from other causes of neonatal infection only by blood and CSF culture.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

1. E coli **gastroenteritis—**Gastroenteritis due to EPEC seldom requires antimicrobial treatment. Fluid and electrolyte therapy, preferably given orally, may be required to avoid dehydration. Bismuth subsalicylate reduces stool volume by about one-third in infants with watery diarrhea, including ETEC. In nursery outbreaks, E coli gastroenteritis has been treated with neomycin (100 mg/kg/d orally in three divided doses for 5 days). Clinical efficacy is not established. Traveler's diarrhea may be treated with azithromycin in children and with fluoroquinolones in adults, although resistance to these drugs is increasing. The risk of hemolytic-uremic syndrome is not proven to be increased by antimicrobial therapy of enterohemorrhagic Escherichia coli (EHEC) cases, but most experts recommend no treatment of suspected cases.

2. E coli **sepsis and pneumonia—**The drugs of choice are ampicillin (150–200 mg/kg/d, given intravenously or intramuscularly in divided doses every 4–6 hours), cefotaxime (150–200 mg/kg/d, given intravenously or intramuscularly in divided doses every 6–8 hours), ceftriaxone (50–100 mg/kg/d, given intramuscularly as single dose or in two divided doses), and gentamicin (5.0–7.5 mg/kg/d, given intramuscularly or intravenously in divided doses every 8 hours). Initial therapy often includes at least two drugs until microbial etiology is established and susceptibility testing is completed. Treatment is continued for 10–14 days. Amikacin or tobramycin may be used instead of gentamicin if the strain is susceptible. Third-generation cephalosporins are often an attractive alternative as single-drug therapy and do not require monitoring for toxicity.

3. E coli **meningitis—**Third-generation cephalosporins such as cefotaxime (200 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses) are given for a minimum of 3 weeks. Ampicillin (200–300 mg/kg/d intravenously in four to six divided doses) and gentamicin (5.0–7.5 mg/kg/d intramuscularly or intravenously in three divided doses) also are effective for susceptible strains. Serum levels need to be monitored. Treatment with intrathecal and intraventricular aminoglycosides does not improve outcome.

4. Acute urinary tract infection—(See Chapter 24.)

» Prognosis

Death due to gastroenteritis leading to dehydration can be prevented by early fluid and electrolyte therapy. Neonatal sepsis with meningitis is still associated with a mortality rate of over 50%. Most children with recurrent urinary tract infections do well if they have no underlying anatomic defects. The mortality rate in opportunistic infections usually depends on the severity of infection and the underlying immune compromising condition.

Biondi et al: Epidemiology of bacteremia in febrile infants in the United States. Pediatrics 2013:132(6):990 [PMID: 24218461].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Diarrheagenic Escherichia coli. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/ecoli/.

Denno DM et al: Diarrhea etiology in a pediatric emergency department: a case control study. Clin Infect Dis 2012;55(7):897 [PMID: 22700832].

Hsu JF et al: Predictors of clinical and microbiological treatment failure in neonatal bloodstream infections. Clin Microbiol Infect 2015;S1198:741 [PMID: 25749002].

Mody RK et al: Postdiarrheal hemolytic uremic syndrome in the United States children: clinical spectrum and predictors of in-hospital death. J Pediatr 2015 Apr;166(4):1022–1029 [PMID: 25661408]. doi: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2014.12.064. Epub 2015 Feb 4.

Rosales A et al: German-Austrian HUS study group. Need for long-term follow-up in enterohemorrhagic Escherichia coli-associated hemolytic uremic syndrome due to late-emerging sequelae. Clin Infect Dis 2012;54(10):1413 [PMID: 22412065].

Sodha SV et al: National patterns of Escherichia coli O157 infections, USA, 1996-2011. Epidemiol Infect 2015;143(2):267 [PMID: 24731294].

PSEUDOMONAS INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Opportunistic infection.
- Confirmed by cultures.

General Considerations

Pseudomonas aeruginosa is an aerobic gram-negative rod with versatile metabolic requirements. The organism may grow in distilled water and in commonly used disinfectants, complicating infection control in medical facilities. P aeruginosa is both invasive and destructive to tissue as well as toxigenic due to secreted exotoxins, all factors that contribute to virulence. Other genera previously classified as Pseudomonas frequently cause nosocomial infections and infections in immunocompromised children. Stenotrophomonas maltophilia (previously Pseudomonas maltophilia) and Burkholderia cepacia (previously Pseudomonas cepacia) are the most frequent.

P aeruginosa is an important cause of infection in children with cystic fibrosis, neoplastic disease, neutropenia, or extensive burns and in those receiving antibiotic therapy. Infections of the urinary and respiratory tracts, ears, mastoids, paranasal sinuses, eyes, skin, meninges, and bones are seen. Pseudomonas pneumonia is a common nosocomial infection in patients receiving assisted ventilation.

P aeruginosa sepsis may be accompanied by characteristic peripheral lesions called ecthyma gangrenosum. Ecthyma gangrenosum also may occur by direct invasion through intact skin in the groin, axilla, or other skinfolds. P aeruginosa is an infrequent cause of sepsis in previously healthy infants and may be the initial sign of underlying medical problems. Osteomyelitis of the calcaneus or other foot bones occurs after punctures such as stepping on a nail and is commonly due to P aeruginosa.

P aeruginosa is a frequent cause of malignant external otitis media and of chronic suppurative otitis media. Outbreaks of vesiculopustular skin rash have been associated with exposure to contaminated water in whirlpool baths and hot tubs.

P aeruginosa infects the tracheobronchial tree of nearly all patients with cystic fibrosis. Mucoid exopolysaccharide, an exuberant capsule, is characteristically overproduced by isolates from patients with cystic fibrosis. Although bacteremia seldom occurs, patients with cystic fibrosis ultimately succumb to chronic lung infection with P aeruginosa. Infection due to B cepacia has caused a rapidly progressive pulmonary disease in some colonized patients and may be spread by close contact.

Clinical Findings

The clinical findings depend on the site of infection and the patient's underlying disease. Sepsis with these organisms resembles gram-negative sepsis with other organisms, although the presence of ecthyma gangrenosum suggests the etiologic diagnosis. The diagnosis is made by culture. Pseudomonas infection should be suspected in neonates and neutropenic patients with clinical sepsis. A severe necrotizing pneumonia occurs in patients on ventilators.

Patients with cystic fibrosis have a persistent bronchitis that progresses to bronchiectasis and ultimately to respiratory failure. During exacerbations of illness, cough and sputum production increases with low-grade fever, malaise, and diminished energy.

The purulent aural drainage without fever in patients with chronic suppurative otitis media is not distinguishable from that due to other causes.

Prevention

A. Infections in Debilitated Patients

Colonization of extensive second- and third-degree burns by P aeruginosa can lead to fatal septicemia. Aggressive debridement and topical treatment with 0.5% silver nitrate solution, 10% mafenide cream, or silver sulfadiazine will greatly inhibit P aeruginosa contamination of burns. (See Chapter 12 for a discussion of burn wound infections and prevention.)

B. Nosocomial Infections

Faucet aerators, communal soap dispensers, disinfectants, improperly cleaned inhalation therapy equipment, infant incubators, and many other sources that usually are associated with wet or humid conditions all have been associated with Pseudomonas epidemics. Patient-to patient transmission by hospital staff carrying Pseudomonas on the hands occurs in some units where hand hygiene is inadequate. Careful maintenance of equipment and enforcement of infection control procedures are essential to minimize nosocomial transmission.

C. Patients with Cystic Fibrosis

Chronic infection of the lower respiratory tract occurs in nearly all patients with cystic fibrosis. The infecting organism is seldom cleared from the respiratory tract, even with intensive antimicrobial therapy, and the resultant injury to the lung eventually leads to pulmonary insufficiency. Treatment is aimed at controlling signs and symptoms of the infection.

Treatment

P aeruginosa is inherently resistant to many antimicrobials and may develop resistance during therapy. Mortality

rates in hospitalized patients exceed 50%, owing both to the severity of underlying illnesses in patients predisposed to Pseudomonas infection and to the limitations of therapy. Antibiotics effective against Pseudomonas include the aminoglycosides, ureidopenicillins (piperacillin), β-lactamase inhibitor with a ureidopenicillin (piperacillin-tazobactam), expanded-spectrum cephalosporins (ceftazidime and cefepime), imipenem, meropenem, and ciprofloxacin. Colistin has been used in some children with multidrug resistance. Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns vary from area to area, and sometimes by unit within a hospital. Resistance tends to appear as new drugs become popular. Treatment of infections is best guided by clinical response and susceptibility tests.

Gentamicin or tobramycin (5.0–7.5 mg/kg/d, given intramuscularly or intravenously in three divided doses) or amikacin (15–22 mg/kg/d, given in two or three divided doses) in combination with piperacillin (240–300 mg/kg/d, given intravenously in four to six divided doses) or with another antipseudomonal β-lactam antibiotic is recommended for treatment of serious Pseudomonas infections. Ceftazidime (150–200 mg/kg/d, given in four divided doses) or cefepime (150 mg/kg/d, given in three divided doses) has activity against susceptible strains. Treatment should be continued for 10–14 days. Treatment with two active drugs is recommended for all serious infections. Aerosolized antipseudomonal antibiotrics, tobramycin, and aztreonam have been very usefukl adjunctive therapy for patients with cystic fibrosis.

Pseudomonas osteomyelitis due to punctures requires thorough surgical debridement and antimicrobial therapy for 2 weeks. Pseudomonas folliculitis does not require antibiotic therapy.

Oral or intravenous ciprofloxacin is also effective against susceptible P aeruginosa, but is not approved by the FDA for use in children except in the case of urinary tract infection. Nonetheless, in some circumstances of antimicrobial resistance, or when the benefits clearly outweigh the small risks, ciprofloxacin may be used.

Chronic suppurative otitis media responds to intravenous ceftazidime (150–200 mg/kg/d in three or four divided doses) given until the drainage has ceased for 3 days. Twice-daily ceftazidime with aural debridement and cleaning given on an outpatient basis has also been successful. Swimmer's ear may be caused by P aeruginosa and responds well to topical drying agents (alcohol–vinegar mix) and cleansing.

» Prognosis

Because debilitated patients are most frequently affected, the mortality rate is high. These infections may have a protracted course, and eradication of the organisms may be difficult.

Biddeci G et al: Ecthyma gangrenosum of the check in a 6-month-old infant. Arch Dis Child 2015:100(1):55 [PMID: 25053733].

Dantas RC et al: Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteraemia: independent risk factors for mortality and impact of resistance on outcome. J Med Microbiol 2014:63(Pt 12):1679 [PMID: 25261066].

Paksu MS et al: Old agent, new experience: colistin use in the paediatric intensive care unit—a multicentre study. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2012;40(2):140 [PMID: 22727770].

Tiddens HA et al: Open label study of inhaled aztreonam for Pseudomonas eradication in children with cystic fibrosis: the ALPINE study. J Cyst Fibros 2015:14(1):111 [PMID: 25091537].

SALMONELLA GASTROENTERITIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Nausea, vomiting, headache, meningismus.
- Fever, diarrhea, abdominal pain.
- Culture of organism from stool, blood, or other specimens.

» General Considerations

Salmonellae are gram-negative rods that frequently cause food-borne gastroenteritis and occasionally bacteremic infection of bone, meninges, and other foci. Approximately 2400 serotypes of Salmonella enterica are recognized. Salmonella typhimurium is the most frequently isolated serotype in most parts of the world. Although 53,800 cases were reported in 2012, it is estimated that only 1% are reported, suggesting that more than 5 million cases occur yearly in the United States.

Salmonella are able to penetrate the mucin layer of the small bowel and attach to epithelial cells. Organisms penetrate the epithelial cells and multiply in the submucosa. Infection results in fever, vomiting, and watery diarrhea; the diarrhea occasionally includes mucus and polymorphonuclear neutrophils in the stool. Salmonella infections in childhood occur in two major forms: (1) gastroenteritis (including food poisoning), which may be complicated by sepsis and focal suppurative complications; and (2) enteric fever (typhoid fever and paratyphoid fever) (see section Typhoid Fever and Paratyphoid Fever). Although the incidence of typhoid fever has decreased in the United States, the incidence of Salmonella gastroenteritis has greatly increased in the past 15–20 years. The highest attack rates occur in children younger than age 6 years, with a peak in the age group from 6 months to 2 years.

Salmonellae are widespread in nature, infecting domestic and wild animals. Fowl and reptiles have a particularly high carriage rate. Transmission occurs by the fecal-oral

route via contaminated food, water, fomites, and sometimes person-to-person. Numerous foods, especially milk and egg products are associated with outbreaks. Animal contact also can be a source for Salmonella.

Because salmonellae are susceptible to gastric acidity, the elderly, infants, and patients taking antacids or H_2-blocking drugs are at increased risk for infection. Most cases of Salmonella meningitis (80%) and bacteremia occur in infancy. Newborns may acquire the infection from their mothers during delivery and may precipitate outbreaks in nurseries. Newborns are at special risk for developing meningitis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

There is a very wide range of severity of infection. Infants usually develop fever, vomiting, and diarrhea. The older child also may complain of headache, nausea, and abdominal pain. Stools are often watery or may contain mucus and, in some instances, blood, suggesting shigellosis. Drowsiness and disorientation may be associated with meningismus. Convulsions occur less frequently than with shigellosis. Splenomegaly occasionally occurs. In the usual case, diarrhea is moderate and subsides after 4–5 days, but it may be protracted.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diagnosis is made by isolation of the organism from stool, blood, or, in some cases, from urine, CSF, or pus from a suppurative lesion. The WBC count usually shows a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis but may show leukopenia. Salmonella isolates should be reported to public health authorities for epidemiologic purposes.

» Differential Diagnosis

In staphylococcal food poisoning, the incubation period is shorter (2–4 hours) than in Salmonella food poisoning (12–24 hours), fever is absent, and vomiting rather than diarrhea is the main symptom. In shigellosis, many polymorphonuclear leukocytes usually are seen on a stained smear of stool, and the peripheral WBC count is more likely to slow a marked left shift, although some cases of salmonellosis are indistinguishable from shigellosis. Campylobacter gastroenteritis commonly resembles salmonellosis. Culture of the stools is necessary to distinguish the causes of bacterial gastroenteritis.

» Complications

Unlike most types of infectious diarrhea, salmonellosis is frequently accompanied by bacteremia, especially in newborns and infants. Septicemia with extraintestinal infection is seen, most commonly with Salmonella choleraesuis but also with Salmonella enterica, typhimurium, and paratyphi serotypes. The organism may spread to any tissue and may cause arthritis, osteomyelitis, cholecystitis, endocarditis, meningitis, pericarditis, pneumonia, or pyelonephritis. Patients with sickle cell anemia or other hemoglobinopathies have a predilection for the development of osteomyelitis. Severe dehydration and shock are more likely to occur with shigellosis but may occur with Salmonella gastroenteritis.

» Prevention

Measures for the prevention of Salmonella infections include thorough cooking of foodstuffs derived from contaminated sources, adequate refrigeration, control of infection among domestic animals, and meticulous meat and poultry inspections. Raw and undercooked fresh eggs should be avoided. Food handlers and child care workers with salmonellosis should have three negative stool cultures before resuming work. Asymptomatic children, who have recovered from Salmonella infection, do not need exclusion.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

In uncomplicated Salmonella gastroenteritis, antibiotic treatment does not shorten the course of the clinical illness and may prolong convalescent carriage of the organism. Colitis or secretory diarrhea due to Salmonella may improve with antibiotic therapy.

Because of the higher risk of sepsis and focal disease, antibiotic treatment is recommended in infants younger than age 3 months, in severely ill children, and in children with sickle cell disease, liver disease, recent gastrointestinal surgery, cancer, depressed immunity, or chronic renal or cardiac disease. Infants younger than age 3 months with positive stool cultures or suspected salmonellosis sepsis should be admitted to the hospital, evaluated for focal infection including cultures of blood and CSF, and given treatment intravenously. A third-generation cephalosporin is usually recommended due to frequent resistance to ampicillin and TMP-SMX. Older patients developing bacteremia during the course of gastroenteritis should receive parenteral treatment initially, and a careful search should be made for additional foci of infection. After signs and symptoms subside, these patients should receive oral medication. Parenteral and oral treatment should last a total of 7–10 days. Longer treatment is indicated for specific complications. If susceptibility tests indicate resistance to ampicillin, third-generation cephalosporins or TMP-SMX should be given. Fluoroquinolones also are efficacious but are not approved for administration to children. Fluoroquinolones or azithromycin are used for strains resistant to multiple other drugs.

Empiric therapy of gram-negative meningitis is with meropenem (120 mg/kg/d) intravenously in three divided

doses or cefepime (150 mg/kg/d) in three divided doses with adjustment based on culture and susceptibility testing.

Often ampicillin (200–300 mg/kg/d intravenously in four to six divided doses) or a third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone) is used for 4–6 weeks to complete therapy.

Outbreaks on pediatric wards are difficult to control. Strict hand washing, cohorting of patients and personnel, and ultimately closure of the unit may be necessary.

B. Treatment of the Carrier State

About half of patients may have positive stool cultures after 4 weeks. Infants tend to remain convalescent carriers for up to a year. Antibiotic treatment of carriers is not effective.

C. General Measures

Careful attention must be given to maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance, especially in infants.

» Prognosis

In gastroenteritis, the prognosis is good. In sepsis with focal suppurative complications, the prognosis is more guarded. The case fatality rate of Salmonella meningitis is high in infants. There is a strong tendency to relapse if treatment is not continued for at least 4 weeks.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): FoodNet. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/foodnet.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Salmonella infection (salmonellosis). Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/salmonella/.

Committee on Infectious Diseases; Committee on Nutrition; American Academy of Pediatrics: Consumption of raw or unpasteurized milk and milk products by pregnant woman and children. Pediatrics 2014:133(1);175 [PMID: 24344105].

Mettee Zarecki SL et al: US outbreak of Human Salmonella infections associated with acquatic frogs, 2008-2011. Pediatrics 2013 Apr;131(4):724–731 [PMID: 24144105].

TYPHOID FEVER & PARATYPHOID FEVER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Insidious or acute onset of headache, anorexia, vomiting, constipation or diarrhea, ileus, and high fever.
- Meningismus, splenomegaly, and rose spots.
- Leukopenia; positive blood, stool, bone marrow, and urine cultures.
- Fever in the returning traveller.

» General Considerations

Typhoid fever is caused by the gram-negative bacillus Salmonella enterica serotype Typhi and Parathyphi. Children have a shorter incubation period than do adults (usually 5–8 days instead of 8–14 days). The organism enters the body through the walls of the intestinal tract and, following a transient bacteremia, multiplies in the reticuloendothelial cells of the liver and spleen. Persistent bacteremia and symptoms then follow. Reinfection of the intestine occurs as organisms are excreted in the bile. Bacterial emboli produce the characteristic skin lesions (rose spots). Typhoid fever is transmitted by the fecal-oral route and by contamination of food or water. Unlike other Salmonella species, there are no animal reservoirs of typhoid; each case is the result of direct or indirect contact with the organism or with an individual who is actively infected or a chronic carrier.

About 350 cases per year were reported in the United States in 2012, 80% of which are acquired during foreign travel.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In children, the onset of typhoid fever usually is sudden rather than insidious, with malaise, headache, cough, crampy abdominal pains and distention, and sometimes constipation followed within 48 hours by diarrhea, high fever, and toxemia. An encephalopathy may be seen with irritability, confusion, delirium, and stupor. Vomiting and meningismus may be prominent in infants and young children. The classic lengthy three-stage disease seen in adult patients often is shortened in children. The prodrome may last only 2–4 days, the toxic stage only 2–3 days, and the defervescence stage 1–2 weeks.

During the prodromal stage, physical findings may be absent, but abdominal distention and tenderness, meningismus, mild hepatomegaly and splenomegaly may be present. The typical typhoidal rash (rose spots) is present in 10%–15% of children. It appears during the second week of the disease and may erupt in crops for the succeeding 10–14 days. Rose spots are erythematous maculopapular lesions 2–3 mm in diameter that blanch on pressure. They are found principally on the trunk and chest and they generally disappear within 3–4 days. The lesions usually number fewer than 20.

B. Laboratory Findings

Typhoid bacilli can be isolated from many sites, including blood, stool, urine, and bone marrow. Blood cultures are positive in 50%–80% of cases during the first week and less often later in the illness. Stool cultures are positive in about 50% of cases after the first week. Urine and bone marrow cultures also are valuable. Most patients will have negative

cultures (including stool) by the end of a 6-week period. Serologic tests (Widal reaction) are not as useful as cultures because both false-positive and false-negative results occur. Leukopenia is common in the second week of the disease, but in the first week, leukocytosis may be seen. Proteinuria, mild elevation of liver enzymes, thrombocytopenia, and DIC are common.

» Differential Diagnosis

Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers must be distinguished from other serious prolonged fevers. These include typhus, brucellosis, malaria, tularemia, tuberculosis, psittacosis, vasculitis, lymphoma, mononucleosis, and Kawasaki disease. Prolonged fever is a common presentation of typhoid in a returning traveler. The diagnosis of typhoid fever often is made clinically in developing countries, but the accuracy of clinical diagnosis is variable. In developed countries, where typhoid fever is uncommon and physicians are unfamiliar with the clinical picture, the diagnosis often is not suspected until late in the course. Positive cultures confirm the diagnosis.

» Complications

The most serious complications of typhoid fever are gastrointestinal hemorrhage (2%–10%) and perforation (1%–3%). They occur toward the end of the second week or during the third week of the disease.

Intestinal perforation is one of the principal causes of death. The site of perforation generally is the terminal ileum or cecum. The clinical manifestations are indistinguishable from those of acute appendicitis, with pain, tenderness, and rigidity in the right lower quadrant.

Bacterial pneumonia, meningitis, septic arthritis, abscesses, and osteomyelitis are uncommon complications, particularly if specific treatment is given promptly. Shock and electrolyte disturbances may lead to death.

About 1%–3% of patients become chronic typhoid carriers. Chronic carriage is defined as excretion of typhoid bacilli for more than a year, but carriage is often lifelong. Adults with underlying biliary or urinary tract disease are much more likely than children to become chronic carriers.

» Prevention

Routine typhoid vaccine is not recommended in the United States but should be considered for foreign travel to endemic areas. An attenuated oral typhoid vaccine produced from strain Ty21a has better efficacy and causes minimal side effects but is not approved for children younger than age 6 years. The vaccine is repeated after 5 years. A capsular polysaccharide vaccine (ViCPS) requires one intramuscular injection and may be given to children age 2 years and older. (See Chapter 10.)

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Third-generation cephalosporins such as cefotaxime (150 mg/kg divided in three doses), azithromycin (10 mg/kg on day 1, followed by 5 mg/kg for 7 days), or a fluoroquinolone are used for presumptive therapy. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing and local experience are used to direct subsequent therapy. Equally effective regimens for susceptible strains include the following: TMP-SMX (10 mg/kg trimethoprim and 50 mg/kg sulfamethoxazole per day orally in two or three divided doses), amoxicillin (100 mg/kg/d orally in four divided doses), and ampicillin (100–200 mg/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses). Aminoglycosides and first- and second-generation cephalosporins are clinically ineffective regardless of in vitro susceptibility results. Ciprofloxacin or other fluoroquinolones are efficacious but not approved in children, but may be used for multiply resistant strains. Treatment duration is 14–21 days. Patients may remain febrile for 3–5 days even with appropriate therapy.

B. General Measures

General support of the patient is exceedingly important and includes rest, good nutrition and hydration, and careful observation, with particular regard to evidence of intestinal bleeding or perforation. Blood transfusions may be needed even in the absence of frank hemorrhage.

» Prognosis

A prolonged convalescent carrier stage may occur in children. Three negative cultures after all antibiotics have been stopped are required before contact precautions are stopped. With early antibiotic therapy, the prognosis is excellent, and the mortality rate is less than 1%. Relapse occurs 1–3 weeks later in 10%–20% of patients despite appropriate antibiotic treatment.

Date KA et al: Typhoid fever surveillance and vaccine use – South-East Asia and Western Pacific regions, 2009-2013. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2014:63(39):855 [PMID: 25275329].

Halbert J et al: Fever in the returning child traveller: approach to diagnosis and management. Arch Dis Child 2014;99(10):938 [PMID: 24667950].

Talabi AO et al: Predictors of mortality in children with typhoid ileal perforation in a Nigerian tertiary hospital. Pediatr Surg Int 2014 Nov;30(11):1121 [PMID: 25280454].

SHIGELLOSIS (BACILLARY DYSENTERY)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cramps and bloody diarrhea.
- High fever, malaise, convulsions.
- Pus and blood in diarrheal stools examined microscopically.
- Diagnosis confirmed by stool culture.

General Considerations

Shigellae are nonmotile gram-negative rods of the family Enterobacteriaceae that are closely related to E coli. The genus Shigella is divided into four species: S dysenteriae, Shigella flexneri, Shigella boydii, and Shigella sonnei. Approximately 15,000–20,000 cases of shigellosis are reported each year in the United States. S sonnei followed by S flexneri are the most common isolates. S dysenteriae, which causes the most severe diarrhea of all species and the greatest number of extraintestinal complications, accounts for less than 1% of all Shigella infections in the United States.

Shigellosis may be a serious disease, particularly in young children, and without supportive treatment an appreciable mortality rate results. In older children and adults, the disease tends to be self-limited and milder. Shigella is usually transmitted by the fecal-oral route. Food- and water-borne outbreaks are increasing in occurrence, but are less important overall than person-to-person transmission. The disease is very communicable—as few as 200 bacteria can produce illness in an adult. The secondary attack rate in families is high, and shigellosis is a serious problem in day care centers and custodial institutions. Shigella organisms produce disease by invading the colonic mucosa, causing mucosal ulcerations and microabscesses. A plasmid-encoded gene is required for Shiga toxin production; chromosomal genes are required for invasiveness; and smooth lipopolysaccharides are required for virulence. An experimental vaccine is under development and is safe and immunogenic in young children.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The incubation period of shigellosis is usually 1–3 days. Onset is abrupt, with abdominal cramps, urgency, tenesmus, chills, fever, malaise, and diarrhea. Hallucinations and seizures sometimes accompany high fever. In severe forms, blood and mucus are seen in small stools (dysentery), and meningismus and convulsions may occur. In older children, the disease may be mild and characterized by watery diarrhea without blood. In young children, a fever of 39.4°C–40°C is common. Rarely there is rectal prolapse. Symptoms generally last 3–7 days.

B. Laboratory Findings

The total WBC count varies, but often there is a marked shift to the left. The stool may contain gross blood and mucus, and many neutrophils are seen if mucus from the stool is examined microscopically. Stool cultures are usually positive; however, they may be negative because the organism is somewhat fragile and present in small numbers late in the disease, and because laboratory techniques are suboptimal for the recovery of shigellae.

Differential Diagnosis

Diarrhea due to rotavirus infection is a winter rather than a summer disease. Usually children with viral gastroenteritis are not as febrile or toxic as those with shigellosis, and the stool does not contain gross blood or neutrophils. Intestinal infections caused by Salmonella or Campylobacter are differentiated by culture. Grossly bloody stools in a patient without fever or stool leukocytes suggest E coli O157:H7 infection. Amebic dysentery is diagnosed by microscopic examination of fresh stools or sigmoidoscopy specimens. Intussusception is characterized by an abdominal mass (so-called currant jelly stools) without leukocytes, and by absence of initial fever. Mild shigellosis is not distinguishable clinically from other forms of infectious diarrhea.

Complications

Dehydration, acidosis, shock, and renal failure are the major complications. In some cases, a chronic form of dysentery occurs, characterized by mucoid stools and poor nutrition. Bacteremia and metastatic infections are rare but serious complications. Febrile seizures are common. Fulminating fatal dysentery and hemolytic-uremic syndrome occur rarely. Reiter syndrome may follow Shigella infection in patients with HLA-B27genotype.

Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Resistance to TMP-SMX (10 mg/kg/d trimethoprim and 50 mg/kg/d sulfamethoxazole, given in two divided doses orally for 5 days) and ampicillin (100 mg/kg/d divided in four doses) is common and limits the use of these drugs to cases where results of susceptibility testing are known. Amoxicillin is not effective. Parenteral ceftriaxone is effective. Azithromycin (12 mg/kg/d on day 1, then 6 mg/kg/d for 2 days) is effective, but laboratories do not routinely perform

susceptibility testing for azithromycin. Ciprofloxacin (500 mg, given twice daily for 5 days) is efficacious in adults but is not approved for use in children. However, it may be used in children who remain symptomatic and in need of therapy, and when multiply resistant strains limit other preferred choices. Successful treatment reduces the duration of fever, cramping, and diarrhea and terminates fecal excretion of Shigella. Presumptive therapy should be limited to children with classic shigellosis or known outbreaks. Afebrile children with bloody diarrhea are more commonly infected with EHEC. Antimicrobial therapy of EHEC may increase the likelihood of hemolytic-uremic syndrome, and is not recommended.

B. General Measures

In severe cases, immediate rehydration is critical. A mild form of chronic malabsorption syndrome may supervene and require prolonged dietary control.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is excellent if vascular collapse is prevented or treated promptly by adequate fluid therapy. The mortality rate is high in very young, malnourished infants who do not receive fluid and electrolyte therapy. Convalescent fecal excretion of Shigella lasts 1–4 weeks in patients not receiving antimicrobial therapy. Long-term carriers are rare.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Shigellosis. Available at: www.cdc.gov/shigella/index.html.

Lee G et al: Effects of Shigella, Campylobacter, and ETEC-associated diarrhea on childhood growth. Pediatr Infect Dis 2014;33(10):1004 [PMID: 25361185].

Joh RI et al: Dynamics of shigellosis eipdemics: estimating individual–level transmission and reporting rates from national epidemiologic data sets. Am J Epidemiol 2013;178(8):1319 [PMID: 24008913].

CHOLERA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset of severe watery diarrhea.
- Persistent vomiting without nausea or fever.
- Extreme and rapid dehydration and electrolyte loss, with rapid development of vascular collapse.
- Contact with a case of cholera or with shellfish, or the presence of cholera in the community.
- Diagnosis confirmed by stool culture.

» General Considerations

Cholera is an acute diarrheal disease caused by the gram-negative organism Vibrio cholerae. It is transmitted by contaminated water or food, especially contaminated shellfish. Epidemics are common in impoverished areas where hygiene and safe water supply are limited. Typical disease is generally so dramatic that in endemic areas the diagnosis is obvious. Individuals with mild illness and young children may play an important role in transmission of the infection.

Asymptomatic infection is far more common than clinical disease. In endemic areas, rising titers of vibriocidal antibody are seen with increasing age. Infection occurs in individuals with low titers. The age-specific attack rate is highest in children younger than age 5 years and declines with age. Cholera is unusual in infancy.

Cholera toxin is a protein enterotoxin that is responsible for symptoms. Cholera toxin binds to a regulatory subunit of adenylyl cyclase in enterocytes, causing increased cyclic adenosine monophosphate and an outpouring of NaCl and water into the lumen of the small bowel.

Nutritional status is an important factor determining the severity of the diarrhea. Duration of diarrhea is prolonged in adults and children with severe malnutrition.

Cholera is endemic in India and southern and Southeast Asia and in parts of Africa. The most recent pandemic, caused by the El Tor biotype of V cholerae 01, began in 1961 in Indonesia. Epidemic cholera spread in Central and South America, with a total of 1 million cases and 9500 deaths reported through 1994. A severe cholera outbreak in Haiti began in October 2010. More than 500,000 cases and 6000 deaths are estimated. Cholera in the United States occurs after foreign travel or as a result of consumption of contaminated imported food. There is an endemic focus off the US gulf coast with cases due to consumption or raw or undercooked shellfish. Interstate shipment of oysters has resulted in cholera in several inland states. Cholera is now rare in the United States with 10–20 cases per year reported.

V cholerae is a natural inhabitant of shellfish and copepods in estuarine environments. Seasonal multiplication of V cholerae may provide a source of outbreaks in endemic areas. Chronic cholera carriers are rare. The incubation period is short, usually 1–3 days.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Many patients infected with V cholerae have mild disease, with 1%–2% developing severe diarrhea. During severe cholera, there is a sudden onset of massive, frequent, watery stools, generally light gray in color (so-called rice-water stools) and containing some mucus but no pus. Vomiting may be projectile and is not accompanied by nausea. Within

2–3 hours, the tremendous loss of fluids results in life-threatening dehydration, hypochloremia, and hypokalemia, with marked weakness and collapse. Renal failure and irreversible peripheral vascular collapse will occur if fluid therapy is not administered. The illness lasts 1–7 days and is shortened by appropriate antibiotic therapy.

B. Laboratory Findings

Markedly elevated hemoglobin (20 g/dL) and marked acidosis, hypochloremia, and hyponatremia are seen. Stool sodium concentration may range from 80 to 120 mEq/L. Culture confirmation requires specific media and takes 16–18 hours for a presumptive diagnosis and 36–48 hours for a definitive bacteriologic diagnosis.

» Prevention

Cholera vaccine is available outside of the United States and provides 50%–75% efficacy. Protection lasts 3–6 months. Cholera vaccine is not required nor generally recommended for travelers. Tourists visiting endemic areas are at little risk if they exercise caution in what they eat and drink and maintain good personal hygiene. In endemic areas, all water and milk must be boiled, food protected from flies, and sanitary precautions observed. Simple filtration of water is highly effective in reducing cases. Thorough cooking of shellfish prevents transmission. All patients with cholera should be isolated.

Chemoprophylaxis is indicated for household and other close contacts of cholera patients. It should be initiated as soon as possible after the onset of the disease in the index patient. Tetracycline (500 mg/d for 5 days) is effective in preventing infection. TMP-SMX may be substituted in children.

» Treatment

Physiologic saline or lactated Ringer solution should be administered intravenously in large amounts to restore blood volume and urine output and to prevent irreversible shock. Potassium supplements are required. Sodium bicarbonate, given intravenously, also may be needed initially to overcome profound metabolic acidosis from bicarbonate loss in the stool. Moderate dehydration and acidosis can be corrected in 3–6 hours by oral therapy alone, because the active glucose transport system of the small bowel is normally functional. The optimal composition of the oral solution (in milliequivalents per liter [mEq/L]) is as follows: Na^+, 90; Cl^-, 80; and K^+, 20 (with glucose, 110 mmol/L).

Treatment with tetracycline (50 mg/kg/d orally in four divided doses for 2–5 days) or azithromycin (10 mg/kg/d in one dose for 1–5 days) shortens the duration of the disease in children and prevents clinical relapse but is not as important as fluid and electrolyte therapy. Tetracycline resistance occurs in some regions, and ciprofloxacin may be used depending on local resistance patterns. TMP-SMX or azithromycin should be used in children younger than age 9 years.

» Prognosis

With early and rapid replacement of fluids and electrolytes, the case fatality rate is 1%–2% in children. If significant symptoms appear and no treatment is given, the mortality rate is over 50%.

Barzilav EJ et al: Cholera surveillance during the Haiti epidemic—the first two years. N Eng J Med 2013;368(7):599 [PMID: 23301694].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Cholera. Available at: www.cc.gov/cholera/index.html.

Loharikar A et al: A national cholera epidemic with high case fatality rayes – Kenya 2009. J Infect Dis 2013:208(S1): S69 [PMID: 24101648].

Luquero FJ et al: Use of Vibrio cholerae vaccine in an outbreak in Guinea. N Eng J Med 2014;370(22):2111 [PMID: 24869721].

CAMPYLOBACTER INFECTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Fever, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhea.
- Definitive diagnosis by stool culture.

» General Considerations

Campylobacter species are small gram-negative, curved or spiral bacilli that are commensals or pathogens in many animals. Campylobacter jejuni frequently causes acute enteritis in humans. In North America and Europe, enteritis due to C jejuni is more common than that due to Salmonella or Shigella. Campylobacter fetus causes bacteremia and meningitis in immunocompromised patients. C fetus may cause maternal fever, abortion, stillbirth, and severe neonatal infection. Helicobacter pylori (previously called Campylobacter pylori) causes gastritis and peptic ulcer disease in both adults and children (see Chapter 21).

Campylobacter colonizes domestic and wild animals, especially poultry. Numerous cases have been associated with sick puppies or other animal contacts. Contaminated food and water, improperly cooked poultry, and person-to-person spread by the fecal-oral route are common routes of transmission. Outbreaks associated with day care centers, contaminated water supplies, and raw milk have been reported. Newborns may acquire the organism from their mothers at delivery.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

C jejuni enteritis can be mild or severe. In tropical countries, asymptomatic stool carriage is common. The incubation period is usually 1–7 days. The disease usually begins with sudden onset of high fever, malaise, headache, abdominal cramps, nausea, and vomiting. Diarrhea follows and may be watery or bile-stained, mucoid, and bloody. The illness is self-limiting, lasting 2–7 days, but relapses may occur. Without antimicrobial treatment, the organism remains in the stool for 1–6 weeks. Immune compromised patients may suffer prolonged or relapsing disease or complications due to bacteremia.

B. Laboratory Findings

The peripheral WBC count generally is elevated, with many band forms. Microscopic examination of stool reveals erythrocytes and pus cells.

Isolation of C jejuni from stool is not difficult but requires selective agar, incubation at 42°C rather than 35°C, and incubation in an atmosphere of about 5% oxygen and 5% CO_2 (candle jar is satisfactory).

Differential Diagnosis

Campylobacter enteritis may resemble viral gastroenteritis, salmonellosis, shigellosis, amebiasis, or other infectious diarrheas. Because it also mimics ulcerative colitis, Crohn disease, intussusception, and appendicitis, mistaken diagnosis can lead to unnecessary diagnostic testing or surgery.

Complications

The most common complication is dehydration. Other uncommon complications include erythema nodosum, convulsions, reactive arthritis, bacteremia, urinary tract infection, and cholecystitis. Guillain-Barré syndrome may follow C jejuni infection by 1–3 weeks.

Prevention

No vaccine is available. Hand washing and adherence to basic food sanitation practices help prevent disease. Hand washing and cleaning of kitchen utensils after contact with raw poultry are important.

Treatment

Treatment of fluid and electrolyte disturbances is important. Antimicrobial treatment with erythromycin in children (30–50 mg/kg/d orally in four divided doses for 5 days), azithromycin (10 mg/kg/d orally once daily) for 3 days, or ciprofloxacin terminates fecal excretion. Fluoroquinolone-resistant C jejuni are now common worldwide. Therapy given early in the course of the illness will shorten the duration of symptoms. Antimicrobials used for shigellosis, such as TMP-SMX and ampicillin, are inactive against Campylobacter. Supportive therapy is sufficient in most cases.

Prognosis

The outlook is excellent if dehydration is corrected and misdiagnosis does not lead to inappropriate diagnostic or surgical procedures.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Campylobacter infections. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/nczved/divisions/dfbmd/diseases/campylobacter.

Ricotta EE et al: Epidemiology and antimicrobial resistance of international travel associated Campylobacter infections in the United States, 2005-2011. Am J Public Health 2014;104(7): e108–e114 [PMID: 24832415].

Scallan E: Estimates of illnesses, hospitalizations, and deaths caused by major bacterial enteric pathogens in young children in the United States. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2013;32(3):217 [PMID: 23249909].

TULAREMIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- A cutaneous or mucous membrane lesion at the site of inoculation and regional lymph node enlargement.
- Sudden onset of fever, chills, and prostration.
- History of contact with infected animals, principally wild rabbits, or history of tick exposure.
- Positive culture or immunofluorest staining of samples from mucocutaneous ulcer or regional lymph nodes.
- High serum antibody titer.

General Considerations

Tularemia is caused by Francisella tularensis, a gram-negative organism usually acquired directly from infected animals (principally wild rabbits) or by the bite of an infected tick. Occasionally infection is acquired from infected domestic dogs or cats; by contamination of the skin or mucous membranes with infected blood or tissues; by inhalation of infected material; by bites of fleas or deer flies that have been in contact with infected animals; or by ingestion of contaminated meat or water. The incubation period is short, usually 3–7 days, but may vary from 2 to 25 days.

Ticks are the most important vector of tularemia and rabbits are the classic vector. It is important to seek a history

of rabbit hunting, skinning, or food preparation in any patient who has a febrile illness with tender lymphadenopathy, often in the region of a draining skin ulcer.

» Prevention

Children should be protected from insect bites, especially those of ticks, fleas, and deer flies, by the use of proper clothing and repellents. Because rabbits are the source of most human infections, the dressing and handling of such game should be performed with great care. Rubber gloves should be worn by hunters or food handlers when handling carcasses of wild rabbits. If contact occurs, thorough washing with soap and water is indicated. For postexposure prophylaxis from an intentional release of F tularensis, a 14-day course of doxycycline or ciprofloxacin is recommended (children less than 8 years should not receive doxycycline unless benefits outweigh risks; in children less than 18 years ciprofloxacin is not approved for this indication—weigh benefits and risk).

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Several clinical types of tularemia occur in children. Sixty percent of infections are of the ulceroglandular form that starts as a relatively nonpainful, reddened papule that may be pruritic and quickly ulcerates. Soon, the regional lymph nodes become large and tender. Fluctuance quickly follows. There may be marked systemic symptoms, including high fever, chills, weakness, and vomiting. Pneumonitis occasionally accompanies the ulceroglandular form or may be seen as the sole manifestation of infection (pneumonic form). A detectable skin lesion may be absent, and localized lymphoid enlargement may exist alone (glandular form). Oculoglandular and oropharyngeal forms also occur. The latter is characterized by tonsillitis, often with membrane formation, cervical adenopathy, and high fever. In the absence of a primary ulcer or localized lymphadenitis, a prolonged febrile disease reminiscent of typhoid fever can occur (typhoidal form). Splenomegaly is common in all forms.

B. Laboratory Findings

F tularensis can be recovered from ulcers, regional lymph nodes, blood, and sputum of patients with the pneumonic form. However, the organism grows only on an enriched medium (blood-cystine-glucose agar), and laboratory handling is dangerous owing to the risk of airborne transmission to laboratory personnel. Immunofluorescent staining of biopsy material or aspirates of involved lymph nodes is diagnostic, although it is not widely available.

The WBC count is not remarkable. The diagnosis is typically confirmed with serologic testing. Antibodies are usually present during the second week of illness. In the absence of a positive culture, a tube agglutination antibody titer of ≥ 1:160 or a microagglutination titer of ≥ 1:128 is considered presumptively positive for the diagnosis of tularemia. Confirmation of disease is established by demonstration of a fourfold antibody titer rise between acute and convalescent serum samples. PCR of blood, lymph node aspirate, or tissue may be available through State Health Departments.

» Differential Diagnosis

The typhoidal form of tularemia may mimic typhoid, brucellosis, miliary tuberculosis, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, and mononucleosis. Pneumonic tularemia resembles atypical or mycotic pneumonitis. The ulceroglandular type of tularemia resembles pyoderma caused by staphylococci or streptococci, plague, anthrax, and cat-scratch fever. The oropharyngeal type must be distinguished from streptococcal or diphtheritic pharyngitis, mononucleosis, herpangina, or other viral pharyngitides.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Historically, streptomycin was the drug of choice. However, gentamicin is efficacious, more available, and familiar to clinicians. A 10-day course is usually sufficient, although more severe infections may need longer therapy. Doxycycline is effective, but relapse rates are higher. Doxycycline is not usually recommended for children younger than 8 years of age unless benefits of use outweigh the risk of dental staining. Doxycycline is a static (as opposed to cidal) agent and should be given for at least 14 days. Ciprofloxacin also can be used in patients with less severe disease. Ciprofloxacin is not approved for this indication in children younger than 18 years, and is not usually recommended in children unless benefits outweigh risks.

B. General Measures

Antipyretics and analgesics may be given as necessary. Skin lesions are best left open. Glandular lesions occasionally require incision and drainage.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is excellent in most cases of tularemia that are recognized early and treated appropriately.

Center for Disease Control (CDC) and Prevention: Tularemia. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/tularemia/clinicians/index.html.

Harik NS: Tularemia: epidemiology, diagnosis and treatment. Pediatr Annals 2013;42(7):288–292 [PMID: 23805970].

PLAGUE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Sudden onset of fever, chills, and prostration.
- Regional lymphadenitis with suppuration of nodes (bubonic form).
- Hemorrhage into skin and mucous membranes and shock (septicemia).
- Cough, dyspnea, cyanosis, and hemoptysis (pneumonia).
- History of exposure to infected animals.

General Considerations

Plague is an extremely serious acute infection caused by a gram-negative bacillus, Yersinia pestis. It is a disease of rodents that is transmitted to humans by flea bites. Plague bacilli have been isolated from ground squirrels, prairie dogs, and other wild rodents in many of the western and southwestern states in the United States. Most cases have come from New Mexico, Arizona, Colorado, and California. Direct contact with rodents, rabbits, or domestic cats provides exposure to fleas infected with plague bacilli. Most cases occur from June through September. Human plague in the United States appears to occur in cycles that reflect cycles in wild animal reservoirs.

Prevention

Proper disposal of household and commercial wastes and chemical control of rats are basic elements of plague prevention. Flea control is also important. Children vacationing in remote areas should be warned not to handle dead or dying animals. Domestic cats that roam freely in suburban areas may contact infected wild animals and acquire infected fleas. There is no commercially available vaccine for plague.

All persons exposed to plague in the previous 6 days (via personal contact with an infected person, contact with plague infected fleas, or exposure to infected tissues) should be given antimicrobial prophylaxis or be instructed to report fever or other symptoms to their physician. Persons who have close personal contact (< 2 m) with a person with pneumonic plague should receive antimicrobial prophylaxis for 7 days from the last exposure. Doxycycline or ciprofloxacin are the recommended agents for prophylaxis. For children younger than 8 years, TMP-SMX is an alternative agent but the efficacy is unknown. Patients on prophylaxis should still seek prompt medical care for onset of fever or other illness.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Plague assumes several clinical forms; the two most common are bubonic and septicemic. Pneumonic plague is uncommon.

1. Bubonic plague—After an incubation period of 2–8 days there is the sudden onset of high fever, chills, headache, vomiting, and marked delirium or clouding of consciousness. A less severe form also exists, with a less precipitous onset, but with progression over several days to severe symptoms. Although the flea bite is rarely seen, the regional lymph node, usually inguinal and unilateral, is/are painful and tender, 1–5 cm in diameter. The node usually suppurates and drains spontaneously after 1 week. Plague bacilli produce endotoxin that causes vascular necrosis. Bacilli may overwhelm regional lymph nodes and enter the circulation to produce septicemia. Severe vascular necrosis results in widely disseminated hemorrhage in skin, mucous membranes, liver, and spleen. Myocarditis and circulatory collapse may result from damage by the endotoxin. Plague meningitis or pneumonia may occur following bacteremic spread from an infected lymph node.

2. Septicemic plague—Plague may initially present as septicemia without evidence of lymphadenopathy. In some series, 25% of cases are initially septicemic. Septicemic plague carries a worse prognosis than bubonic plague, largely because it is not recognized and treated early. Patients may present with a nonspecific febrile illness characterized by fever, myalgia, chills, and anorexia. Septicemic plague may be complicated by secondary seeding of the lung causing plague pneumonia. Necrosis of distal body parts such as fingers, toes, and the nose tip may occur.

3. Primary pneumonic plague—Inhalation of Y pestis bacilli causes primary plague pneumonia. This form of plague is transmitted from human-to-human and to humans from cats with pneumonic plague and would be the form of plague most likely seen after aerosolized release of Y pestis in a bioterrorist incident. After an incubation of 1–6 days, the patient develops fever, cough, shortness of breath, and bloody, watery, or purulent sputum. Gastrointestinal symptoms are sometimes prominent. Because the initial focus of infection is the lung, buboes are usually absent; occasionally cervical buboes may be seen.

B. Laboratory Findings

Aspirate from a bubo contains bipolar-staining gram-negative bacilli. Pus, sputum, and blood all yield the organism. Rapid diagnosis can be made with fluorescent antibody detection or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) on clinical specimens (available through State Health Departments).

Confirmation is made by culture or serologic testing. Laboratory infections are common enough to make bacterial isolation dangerous. Cultures are usually positive within 48 hours. Paired acute and convalescent sera may be tested for a fourfold antibody rise.

» Differential Diagnosis

The septic phase of the disease may be confused with illnesses such as meningococcemia, sepsis caused by other bacteria, and rickettsioses. The bubonic form resembles tularemia, anthrax, cat-scratch fever, streptococcal adenitis, and cellulitis. Primary gastroenteritis and appendicitis may have to be distinguished.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Streptomycin or gentamicin for 7–10 days (or until several days after defervescence) is effective. For patients not requiring parenteral therapy, doxycycline, ciprofloxacin or chloramphenicol may be given. Doxycycline is not usually recommended for children younger than 8 years of age and ciprofloxacin is not usually recommended for children less than 18 years of age unless benefits of use outweigh the risk. However, plague is a potentially life-threatening condition and benefits of these agents outweigh potential risks. Plague bacilli that are multiply resistant to antimicrobials are uncommon but of serious concern.

Mortality is extremely high in septicemic and pneumonic plague if specific antibiotic treatment is not started in the first 24 hours of the disease.

Every effort should be made to effect resolution of buboes without surgery. Pus from draining lymph nodes is infectious.

B. General Measures

State health officials should be notified immediately about suspected cases of plague. Pneumonic plague is highly infectious, and droplet isolation is required until the patient has been on effective antimicrobial therapy for 48 hours. All contacts of patients with pneumonic plague should receive antibiotic prophylaxis for 7 days after the last exposure. Contacts should see a physician immediately for any illness or fever.

» Prognosis

The mortality rate in untreated bubonic plague is about 50%. The mortality rate for treated pneumonic plague is 50%–60%. Recent mortality rates in New Mexico were 3% for bubonic plague and 71% for the septicemic form.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Plague. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/plague/healthcare/clinicians.html.
Prentice MB, Rahalison L: Plague. Lancet 2007;369:1196 [PMID: 17416264].

HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE TYPE B INFECTIONS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Purulent meningitis in children younger than age 4 years with direct smears of CSF showing gram-negative pleomorphic rods.
- Acute epiglottitis: high fever, drooling, dysphagia, aphonia, and stridor.
- Septic arthritis: fever, local redness, swelling, heat, and pain with active or passive motion of the involved joint in a child 4 months to 4 years of age.
- Cellulitis: sudden onset of fever and distinctive cellulitis in an infant, often involving the cheek or periorbital area.
- In all cases, a positive culture from the blood, CSF, or aspirated pus confirms the diagnosis.

» General Considerations

H influenzae type b (Hib) has become uncommon because of widespread immunization in early infancy. The 99% reduction in incidence seen in many parts of the United States is due to high rates of vaccine coverage and reduced nasopharyngeal carriage after vaccination. Forty percent of cases occur in children younger than 6 months who are too young to have completed a primary immunization series. Hib may cause meningitis, bacteremia, epiglottitis (supraglottic croup), septic arthritis, periorbital and facial cellulitis, pneumonia, and pericarditis. Non-type b encapsulated strains may cause meningitis, bacteremia and other disease similar to Hib. Recently, an increase in H influenzae types a and f invasive disease has been observed. Third-generation cephalosporins are preferred for initial therapy of invasive Haemophilus infections. Ampicillin is adequate for culture-proved susceptible strains.

Unencapsulated, nontypeable H influenzae frequently colonize the mucous membranes and cause otitis media, sinusitis, bronchitis, and pneumonia in children and adults. Unencapsulated, nontypeable H influenza also cause invasive disease. Neonatal sepsis similar to early-onset GBS is recognized. Obstetric complications of chorioamnionitis and bacteremia are usually the source of neonatal cases.

Ampicillin resistance occurs in 25%–40% of nontypeable H influenzae. Beta-lactamase-negative, ampicillin-resistant (BLNAR) H influenzae has emerged as a clinically important pathogen in Europe, Japan, and Canada. In the United States, the prevalence of BLNAR strains currently remains at around 3%.

» Prevention

Several carbohydrate protein conjugate Hib vaccines are currently available (see Chapter 10).

The risk of invasive Hib disease is highest in unimmunized, or partially immunized, household contacts of a Hib patient when the contact is younger than 4 years of age. The following situations require rifampin chemoprophylaxis of all household contacts (except pregnant women) to eradicate potential nasopharyngeal colonization with Hib and limit risk of invasive disease: (1) families where at least one household contact is younger than age 4 years and either unimmunized or incompletely immunized against Hib; (2) an immunocompromised child (of any age or immunization status) resides in the household; or (3) a child younger than age 12 months resides in the home and has not received the primary series of the Hib vaccine. Preschool and day care center contacts may need prophylaxis if more than one case has occurred in the center in the previous 60 days (discuss with state health officials). The index case also needs chemoprophylaxis if less than 2 years of age or if the patient resides in a household with a household contact at risk of disease (as described above) and if treated with an antibiotic regimen other than ceftriaxone or cefotaxime (both are effective in eradication of Hib from the nasopharynx). Household contacts and index cases older than 1 month of age who need chemoprophylaxis should be given rifampin, 20 mg/kg per dose (maximum adult dose, 600 mg) orally, once daily for 4 successive days. Infants who are younger than 1 month should be given oral rifampin (10 mg/kg per dose once daily for 4 days). Rifampin should not be used in pregnant females. Chemoprophylaxis is not recommended for household contacts of children with invasive disease caused by H. influenzae strains other than type B.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs HIB and Non-Type B Invasive Disease

1. Meningitis—Infants usually present with fever, irritability, lethargy, poor feeding with or without vomiting, and a high-pitched cry.

2. Acute tpiglottitis—The most useful clinical finding in the early diagnosis of Haemophilus epiglottitis is evidence of dysphagia, characterized by a refusal to eat or swallow saliva and by drooling. This finding, plus the presence of a high fever in a toxic child—even in the absence of a cherry-red epiglottis on direct examination—should strongly suggest the diagnosis and lead to prompt intubation. Stridor is a late sign (see Chapter 19).

3. Septic arthritis—In the prevaccine era, Hib was a common cause of septic arthritis in unimmunized children younger than age 4 years in the United States. The child is febrile and refuses to move the involved joint and limb because of pain. Examination reveals swelling, warmth, redness, tenderness on palpation, and severe pain on attempted movement of the joint.

4. Cellulitis—Cellulitis due to Hib occurs almost exclusively in children between the ages of 3 months and 4 years but is now uncommon as a result of immunization. The cheek or periorbital (preseptal) area is often involved.

B. Laboratory Findings

The WBC count in Hib infections may be high or normal with a shift to the left. A positive culture of blood, CSF, aspirated pus or fluid from the involved site proves the diagnosis. In untreated meningitis, CSF smear may show the characteristic pleomorphic gram-negative rods.

C. Imaging

A lateral view of the neck may suggest the diagnosis in suspected acute epiglottitis, but misinterpretation is common. Intubation should not be delayed to obtain radiographs.

» Differential Diagnosis

A. Meningitis

Meningitis must be differentiated from head injury, brain abscess, tumor, lead encephalopathy, and other forms of meningoencephalitis, including mycobacterial, viral, fungal, and bacterial agents.

B. Acute Epiglottitis

In croup caused by viral agents (parainfluenza 1, 2, and 3, respiratory syncytial virus, influenza A, adenovirus), the child has more definite upper respiratory symptoms, cough, hoarseness, slower progression of obstructive signs, and lower fever. Spasmodic croup usually occurs at night in a child with a history of previous attacks. Sudden onset of choking and paroxysmal coughing suggests foreign body aspiration. Retropharyngeal abscess may have to be differentiated from epiglottitis.

C. Septic Arthritis

Differential diagnosis includes acute osteomyelitis, prepatellar bursitis, cellulitis, rheumatic fever, and fractures and sprains.

D. Cellulitis

Erysipelas, streptococcal cellulitis, insect bites, and trauma (including popsicle panniculitis or other types of freezing injury) may mimic Hib cellulitis. Periorbital cellulitis must be differentiated from paranasal sinus disease without cellulitis, allergic inflammatory disease of the lids, conjunctivitis, and herpes zoster infection.

» Complications

A. Meningitis (See Chapter 25)

B. Acute Epiglottitis

The disease may rapidly progress to complete airway obstruction with complications owing to hypoxia. Mediastinal emphysema and pneumothorax may occur.

C. Septic Arthritis

Septic arthritis may result in rapid destruction of cartilage and ankylosis if diagnosis and treatment are delayed. Even with early treatment, the incidence of residual damage and disability after septic arthritis in weight-bearing joints may be as high as 25%.

D. Cellulitis

Bacteremia may lead to meningitis or pyarthrosis.

» Treatment

All patients with bacteremic or potentially bacteremic H influenzae diseases require hospitalization for treatment. The drugs of choice in hospitalized patients are a third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime or ceftriaxone) until the sensitivity of the organism is known. Meropenem is an alternative choice. Persons with invasive Hib disease should be in droplet isolation for 24 hours after initiation of parenteral antibiotic therapy.

A. Meningitis

Therapy is begun as soon as bacterial meningitis is suspected. Empiric intravenous therapy recommended for meningitis (until organism identified) is vancomycin in combination with either cefotaxime or ceftriaxone. Once the organism has been identified as Haemophilus influenza and the susceptibilities are known, the antibiotic regimen can be tailored accordingly. Most isolates will be susceptible to ceftriaxone or cefotaxime, and some to ampicillin. Meropenem is an alternative agent. Therapy should preferably be given intravenously for the entire course. Ceftriaxone may be given intramuscularly if venous access becomes difficult.

Duration of therapy is 10 days for uncomplicated meningitis. Longer treatment is reserved for children who respond slowly or have complications.

Dexamethasone given immediately after diagnosis and continued for 4 days may reduce the incidence of hearing loss in children with Hib meningitis. The use of dexamethasone is controversial, but when it is used the dosage is 0.6 mg/kg/d in four divided doses for 4 days. Starting dexamethasone more than 6 hours after antibiotics have been initiated is unlikely to provide benefits.

Repeated lumbar punctures are usually not necessary in Hib meningitis. They should be obtained in the following circumstances: unsatisfactory or questionable clinical response, seizure occurring after several days of therapy, if the neurologic examination is abnormal or difficult to evaluate, or prolonged (7 days) or recurrent fever.

B. Acute Epiglottitis (See Chapter 19)

C. Septic Arthritis

Initial therapy should include an effective antistaphylococcal antibiotic and cefotaxime or ceftriaxone until identification of the organism is made and continued, once the isolate is known to be Haemophilus and susceptibilities are known. Occasionally isolates are resistant to third generation cephalosporins. Meropenem, if the isolate is susceptible, can be used as an alternative. If a child is improved following initial intravenous therapy, the patient can be transitioned to oral therapy based on susceptibilities. Possible oral agents should be chosen based on susceptibilities but might include amoxicillin/clavulanate (90–100 mg/kg/d of amoxicillin component in four divided doses every 6 hours). Alternative agents include second- or third-generation cephalosporins. Antibiotics should be administered under supervision to complete a 4-week course (longer if complications or signs and symptoms are unresolved). Drainage of infected joint fluid is an essential part of treatment. In joints other than the hip, this can often be accomplished by one or more needle aspirations. In hip infections—and in arthritis of other joints when treatment is delayed or clinical response is slow—surgical drainage is advised.

D. Cellulitis, Including Orbital Cellulitis

Initial therapy for orbital cellulitis should be broad spectrum antibiotics. Once the organism is known to be H influenzae and susceptibilities are known, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, or meropenem can be used depending on susceptibilities for H influenzae coverage. Mixed infections are common and may require additional agents. Therapy is given parenterally for at least 3–7 days (some clinicians treat up to 2 weeks intravenously) followed by oral treatment. There is usually marked improvement after 72 hours of treatment. The total antibiotic course will vary with the severity of the infection, response to therapy, whether or not an abscess was present, and whether or not drainage was performed. A minimum course of 21 days is reasonable

in uncomplicated cases without abscess and good therapeutic response, assuming all signs of orbital cellulitis have completely resolved. In cases with severe ethmoid sinusitis and evidence of boney destruction at least a 4-week treatment course is advisable. Complicated cases may require longer treatment courses.

» Prognosis

The case fatality rate for Hib meningitis is less than 5%. Young infants have the highest mortality rate. One of the most common neurologic sequelae, developing in 5%–10% of patients with Hib meningitis, is sensorineural hearing loss. Patients with H influenzae meningitis should have their hearing checked during the course of the illness or shortly after recovery. Children in whom invasive Hib infection develops despite appropriate immunization should have tests to investigate immune function and to rule out HIV. The case fatality rate in acute epiglottitis is 2%–5%. Deaths are associated with bacteremia and the rapid development of airway obstruction. The prognosis for the other diseases requiring hospitalization is good with the early institution of adequate antibiotic therapy.

Briere EC, Rubin L, Moro PL, Cohn A, Clark T, Messonnier N; Division of Bacterial Diseases, National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases, CDC: Prevention and Control of Haemophilus influenzae Type b Disease: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2014;63(RR-01):1–14 [PMID: 24572654]. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6301a1.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Epidemiology and prevention of vaccine-preventable diseases. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/hib.html.

PERTUSSIS (WHOOPING COUGH)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Prodromal catarrhal stage (1–3 weeks) characterized by mild cough and coryza, but without fever.
- Persistent staccato, paroxysmal cough ending with a high-pitched inspiratory "whoop."
- Leukocytosis with absolute lymphocytosis.
- Diagnosis confirmed by PCR or culture of nasopharyngeal secretions.

» General Considerations

Pertussis is an acute, highly communicable infection of the respiratory tract caused by Bordetella pertussis and characterized by severe bronchitis. Children usually acquire the disease from symptomatic family contacts. Adults and adolescents who have mild respiratory illness, not recognized as pertussis, frequently are the source of infection. Asymptomatic carriage of B pertussis is not recognized. Infectivity is greatest during the catarrhal and early paroxysmal cough stage (for about 4 weeks after onset).

Pertussis cases have increased in the United States since 2000. In 2007, about 10,000 cases were reported; increased to more than 16,000 cases in 2009, and 48,277 cases in 2012. The morbidity and mortality of pertussis is greatest in young children. Fifty percent of children younger than age 1 year with a diagnosis of pertussis are hospitalized. Deaths occur primarily in children less than one year and are increasing in frequency.

The duration of immunity following natural pertussis is not known but is not lifelong. Reinfections are usually milder. Immunity following vaccination wanes in 5–10 years. The majority of young adults in the United States are susceptible to pertussis infection, and disease is probably common but unrecognized. Decreased efficacy of acellular vaccines compared to whole cell vaccines and low rates of immunization in some communities has led to increasing numbers of cases. Vaccine hesitancy has resulted in low rates of immunization and contributes significantly to epidemics of pertussis in the United States.

Bordetella parapertussis and Bordetella holmesii cause a similar but milder syndrome.

B pertussis organisms attach to the ciliated respiratory epithelium and multiply there; deeper invasion does not occur. Disease is due to several bacterial toxins, the most potent of which is pertussis toxin, which is responsible for the typical lymphocytosis.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The onset of pertussis is insidious, with catarrhal upper respiratory tract symptoms (rhinitis, sneezing, and an irritating cough). Slight fever may be present; temperature greater than 38.3°C suggests bacterial superinfection or another cause of respiratory tract infection. After about 2 weeks, cough becomes paroxysmal, characterized by 10–30 forceful coughs ending with a loud inspiration (the whoop). Infants and adults with otherwise typical severe pertussis often lack characteristic whooping. Vomiting commonly follows a paroxysm. Coughing is accompanied by cyanosis, sweating, prostration, and exhaustion. This stage lasts for 2–4 weeks, with gradual improvement. Paroxysmal coughing may continue for some months and may worsen with intercurrent viral respiratory infection. In adults, older children, and partially immunized individuals, symptoms may consist only of irritating cough lasting 1–2 weeks. Clinical pertussis is milder in immunized children.

B. Laboratory Findings

WBC counts of 20,000–30,000/μL with 70%–80% lymphocytes typically appear near the end of the catarrhal stage; and the degree of lymphocytosis correlates with the severity of disease. Severe pulmonary hypertension and hyperleukocytosis (> 70,000/μL) are associated with severe disease and death in young children with pertussis. Many older children and adults with mild infections never demonstrate lymphocytosis. The blood picture may resemble lymphocytic leukemia or leukemoid reactions. Identification of B pertussis by culture or PCR from nasopharyngeal swabs or nasal wash specimens proves the diagnosis. The organism may be found in the respiratory tract in diminishing numbers beginning in the catarrhal stage and ending about 2 weeks after the beginning of the paroxysmal stage. After 4–5 weeks of symptoms, cultures are almost always negative. Culture requires specialized media and careful attention to specimen collection and transport. PCR detection has replaced culture in most pediatric centers because of improved sensitivity, decreased time to diagnosis, and cost. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) for detection of antibody to pertussis toxin or filamentous hemagglutinin may be useful for diagnosis but interpretation of antibody titers may be difficult in previously immunized patients. The chest radiograph reveals thickened bronchi and sometimes shows a "shaggy" heart border.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of pertussis includes bacterial, tuberculous, chlamydial, and viral pneumonia. The absence of fever in pertussis differentiates this disease from most bacterial infections. Cystic fibrosis and foreign body aspiration may be considerations. Adenoviruses and respiratory syncytial virus may cause paroxysmal coughing with an associated elevation of lymphocytes in the peripheral blood, mimicking pertussis.

» Complications

Bronchopneumonia due to superinfection is the most common serious complication. It is characterized by abrupt clinical deterioration during the paroxysmal stage, accompanied by high fever and sometimes a striking leukemoid reaction with a shift to predominantly polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Atelectasis is a second common pulmonary complication. Atelectasis may be patchy or extensive and may shift rapidly to involve different areas of lung. Intercurrent viral respiratory infection is also a common complication and may provoke worsening or recurrence of paroxysmal coughing. Otitis media is common. Residual chronic bronchiectasis is an infrequent but serious complication. Apnea and sudden death may occur during a particularly severe paroxysm. Seizures complicate 1.5% of cases, and encephalopathy occurs in 0.1%. The encephalopathy frequently is fatal. Anoxic brain damage, cerebral hemorrhage, or pertussis neurotoxins are hypothesized, but anoxia is most likely the cause. Epistaxis and subconjunctival hemorrhages are common.

» Prevention

Active immunization (see Chapter 10) with DTaP vaccine should be given in early infancy. The occurrence and increased recognition of disease in adolescents and adults contributes to the increasing number of cases. A booster dose of vaccine in adolescents between the ages of 11 and 18 years is recommended. Subsequent booster doses of Tdap are recommended for adults aged 18–60 years to replace Td boosters. Immunization of pregnant women in the last trimester, new mothers, care givers of infants less than 6 months, and healthcare workers of young children is also recommended.

Chemoprophylaxis with azithromycin should be given to exposed family, household and hospital contacts, particularly those younger than age 2 years, although data to support the efficacy of such preventive therapy are not strong. Hospitalized children with pertussis should be isolated because of the great risk of transmission to patients and staff. Several large hospital outbreaks have been reported.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Antibiotics may ameliorate early infections but have no effect on clinical symptoms in the paroxysmal stage. Azithromycin is the drug of choice because it promptly terminates respiratory tract carriage of B pertussis. Azithromycin is often preferred due to ease of compliance and decreased gastrointestinal side effects. Resistance to macrolides has been rarely reported. Clarithromycin may also be used. Erythromycin given 4 times daily for 14 days is acceptable but not preferred. Ampicillin (100 mg/kg/d in four divided doses) may also be used for erythromycin-intolerant patients. Erythromycin has been associated with pyloric stenosis in infants less than 1 month of age. Azithromycin is recommended for therapy or prophylaxis in infants less than 1 month.

Corticosteroids reduce the severity of disease but may mask signs of bacterial superinfection. Albuterol (0.3–0.5 mg/kg/d in four doses) has reduced the severity of illness, but tachycardia is common when the drug is given orally, and aerosol administration may precipitate paroxysms.

B. General Measures

Nutritional support during the paroxysmal phase is important. Frequent small feedings, tube feeding, or parenteral fluid supplementation may be needed. Minimizing stimuli that trigger paroxysms is probably the best way of controlling cough. In general, cough suppressants are of little benefit.

C. Treatment of Complications

Respiratory insufficiency due to pneumonia or other pulmonary complications should be treated with oxygen and assisted ventilation if necessary. Convulsions are treated with oxygen and anticonvulsants. Bacterial pneumonia or otitis media requires additional antibiotics. Infants with an extremely high white blood cell count (> 70,000/uL) are at high risk of death and may benefit from extra-corporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO).

» Prognosis

The prognosis for patients with pertussis has improved in recent years because of excellent nursing care, treatment of complications, attention to nutrition, and modern intensive care. However, the disease is still very serious in infants younger than age 1 year; most deaths occur in this age group. Children with encephalopathy have a poor prognosis.

Atwell JE, Salmon DA: Pertussis resurgence and vaccine uptake: implications for reducing vaccine hesitancy. Pediatrics 2014;134(3):602 [PMID: 25116049].

Chu KM et al: Notes from the field: investigation of contacts of a health care worker who worked while ill with pertussis – Maryland, August-September 2014. MMWR Morb Mort Wkly Rep 2015;64(2):45 [PMID: 25611170].

Lateef LM et al: Seizures, encephalopathy, and vaccines: experience in the national vaccine injury compensation program. J Pediatr 2015;1t66(3):576 [PMID: 25477158].

McGirr A, Fisman DN: Duration of pertussis immunity after DTaP immunization: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2015;135(2):331 [PMID: 25560446].

Quinn HE et al: Parental Tdap boosters and infant pertussis: a case control study. Pediatrics 2014;134(4):713 [PMID: 25225136].

Thampi N et al: Pertussis post-exposure prophylaxis among household contacts: a cost-utility analysis. PLoS One 2015;10(3):e1119271 [PMID: 25747269].

LISTERIOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Early-onset neonatal disease:
  - Signs of sepsis a few hours after birth in an infant born with fetal distress and hepatosplenomegaly; maternal fever.
- Late-onset neonatal disease:
  - Meningitis, sometimes with monocytosis in the CSF and peripheral blood.
  - Onset at age 9–30 days.
  - Immune-suppressed patients:
  - Fever and meningitis.

» General Considerations

Listeria monocytogenes is a gram-positive, non–spore-forming aerobic rod distributed widely in the animal kingdom and in food, dust, and soil. It causes systemic infections in newborn infants and immunosuppressed older children. In pregnant women, infection is relatively mild, with fever, aches, and chills, but is accompanied by bacteremia and sometimes results in intrauterine or perinatal infection with grave consequences for the fetus or newborn. One-fourth of cases occur in pregnant women, and 20% of their pregnancies end in stillbirth or neonatal death. Listeria is present in the stool of approximately 10% of the healthy population. Persons in contact with animals are at greater risk. Outbreaks of listeriosis have been traced to contaminated cabbage in coleslaw, soft cheese, hot dogs, luncheon meats, and milk. Listeria infections have decreased since the adoption of strict regulations for ready-to-eat foods; 821 cases were reported in 2010. A large multistate outbreak due to contaminated cantaloupe caused more than 20 deaths in elderly and immunocompromised patients in 2011, and demonstrates the potential of this organism to cause serious illness.

Like GBS infections, Listeria infections in the newborn can be divided into early and late forms. Early infections are more common, leading to a severe congenital form of infection. Later infections are often characterized by meningitis, especially in immune compromised children.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In the early neonatal form, symptoms of listeriosis usually appear on the first day of life and always by the third day. Fetal distress is common, and infants frequently have signs of severe disease at birth. Respiratory distress, diarrhea, and fever occur. On examination, hepatosplenomegaly and a papular rash are found. A history of maternal fever is common. Meningitis may accompany the septic course. The late neonatal form usually occurs after age 9 days and can occur as late as 5 weeks. Meningitis is common, characterized by irritability, fever, and poor feeding.

Listeria infections are rare in older children and usually are associated with immunodeficiency. Several recent cases were associated with tumor necrosis factor-alpha inhibitors. Signs and symptoms are those of meningitis, usually with insidious onset.

B. Laboratory Findings

In all patients except those receiving white cell depressant drugs, the WBC count is elevated, with 10%–20% monocytes. When meningitis is found, the characteristic CSF cell count is high (> 500/μL) with a predominance of polymorphonuclear neutrophils in 70% of cases. Monocytes may

predominate in up to 30% of cases. Gram-stained smears of CSF are usually negative, but short gram-positive rods may be seen. The chief pathologic feature in severe neonatal sepsis is miliary granulomatosis with microabscesses in liver, spleen, CNS, lung, and bowel.

Culture results are frequently positive from multiple sites, including blood from the infant and the mother.

» Differential Diagnosis

Early-onset neonatal disease resembles hemolytic disease of the newborn, GBS sepsis or severe cytomegalovirus infection, rubella, or toxoplasmosis. Late-onset disease must be differentiated from meningitis due to echovirus and coxsackievirus, GBS, and gram-negative enteric bacteria.

» Prevention

Immunosuppressed, pregnant, and elderly patients can decrease the risk of Listeria infection by avoiding soft unpasteurized cheeses, by thoroughly reheating or avoiding delicatessen and ready-to-eat foods, by avoiding raw meat and milk, and by thoroughly washing fresh vegetables.

» Treatment

Ampicillin (150–300 mg/kg/d every 6 hours intravenously) is the drug of choice in most cases of listeriosis. Gentamicin (2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours intravenously) has a synergistic effect with ampicillin and should be given in serious infections and to patients with immune deficits. Vancomycin may be substituted for ampicillin when empirically treating meningitis. If ampicillin cannot be used, TMP-SMX is effective. Cephalosporins are not effective. Treatment of severe disease should continue for at least 2 weeks; meningitis is treated 2–3 weeks.

» Prognosis

In a recent outbreak of early-onset neonatal disease, the mortality rate was 27% despite aggressive and appropriate management. Meningitis in older infants has a good prognosis. In immunosuppressed children, prognosis depends to a great extent on that of the underlying illness.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Listeriosis. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/listeria/index.html.

de Noordhout CM et al: The global burden of listeriosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis 2014;14(11):1072 [PMID: 25241232].

Mccollum JY et al: Multistate outbreak of listeriosis associated with cantaloupe. N Eng J Med 2013;369(10):944 [PMID: 24004121].

TUBERCULOSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- All types: positive tuberculin test in patient or members of household, suggestive chest radiograph, history of contact, and demonstration of organism by stain and culture.
- Pulmonary: fatigue, irritability, and undernutrition, with or without fever and cough.
- Glandular: chronic cervical adenitis.
- Miliary: classic snowstorm appearance of chest radiograph.
- Meningitis: fever and manifestations of meningeal irritation and increased intracranial pressure, with characteristic CSF.

» General Considerations

Tuberculosis is a granulomatous disease caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis. It is a leading cause of death throughout the world. Children younger than age 3 years are most susceptible. Lymphohematogenous dissemination through the lungs to extrapulmonary sites, including the brain and meninges, eyes, bones and joints, lymph nodes, kidneys, intestines, larynx, and skin, is more likely to occur in infants. Increased susceptibility occurs again in adolescence, particularly in girls within 2 years of menarche. Tuberculosis cases have declined from a high of 26,673 new cases in 1992 to 9,582 new cases reported in 2013. Only 485 of these new cases were in children less than 14 years old. High-risk groups include ethnic minorities, foreign-born persons, prisoners, residents of nursing homes, indigents, migrant workers, and healthcare providers, 65% of cases occurred in foreign born persons. Rates of tuberculosis in American Indians, Asian, Hawaiian and pacific islanders and Hispanic people are substantially greater than rates in Caucasians. Nationally about 1% if the tuberculosis cases are multiple drug resistant (MDR). HIV infection is an important risk factor for both development and spread of disease. Pediatric tuberculosis incidence mirrors the trends seen in adults.

Exposure to an infected adult is the most common risk factor in children. The primary complex in infancy and childhood consists of a small parenchymal lesion in any area of the lung with caseation of regional nodes and calcification. Postprimary tuberculosis in adolescents and adults commonly occurs in the apices of the lungs and is likely to cause chronic progressive cavitary pulmonary disease with less tendency for hematogenous dissemination. Mycobacterium bovis infection is clinically identical to M tuberculosis. M bovis may be acquired from unpasteurized dairy products obtained outside the United States.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Pulmonary—(See Chapter 19.)

2. Miliary—Diagnosis is suggested by the classic "snowstorm" or "millet seed" appearance of lung fields on radiograph, although early in the course of disseminated tuberculosis the chest radiograph may show no or only subtle abnormalities. Choroidal tubercles are sometimes seen on funduscopic examination. Other lesions may be present and produce osteomyelitis, arthritis, meningitis, tuberculomas of the brain, enteritis, or infection of the kidneys and liver.

3. Meningitis—Symptoms include fever, vomiting, headache, lethargy, and irritability, with signs of meningeal irritation and increased intracranial pressure, cranial nerve palsies, convulsions, and coma.

4. Lymphatic—Enlarged cervical lymph nodes usually present in a subacute manner. Involved nodes may become fixed to the overlying skin, suppurate, and drain.

B. Laboratory Findings

The tuberculin skin test (TST; 0.1 mL of intermediate-strength purified protein derivative inoculated intradermally) is positive at 48–72 hours if there is significant induration (see Table 42–3). Parental reporting of skin test results is often inaccurate. All tests should be read by professionals trained to interpret TST. False-negative results occur in malnourished patients, in those with overwhelming disease, and in 10% of children with isolated pulmonary disease. Temporary suppression of tuberculin reactivity may be seen with viral infections (eg, measles, influenza, varicella, and mumps), after live virus immunization, and during corticosteroid or other immunosuppressive drug therapy. For these reasons, a negative TST test does not exclude the diagnosis of tuberculosis. When tuberculosis is suspected in a child, household members and close adult contacts (eg, teachers and caregivers) also should be tested. Multiple puncture tests (tine tests) should not be used because they are associated with false-negative and false-positive reactions, and because standards for interpretation of positive results do not exist. Interferon gamma release assays (IGRAs) are approved to replace TST tests in adults and children older than 4 years. These assays, which have much higher specificity due to less common false-positive results from nontuberculosis mycobacteria and BCG, are increasingly used in programs of screening for tuberculosis. They are done on blood obtained by venipuncture and are further advantageous in requiring only a single visit. These tests are preferred in BCG-immunized children older than 4 years. IGRA are reported as positive, negative or indeterminate.

The ESR and CRP is usually elevated in symptomatic children. Children have pauci-bacillary disease and it may be difficult to prove the diagnosis. Cultures of pooled early morning gastric aspirates from three successive days will yield M tuberculosis in about 40% of cases, but smears on gastric specimens are usually negative. Biopsy may be necessary to establish the diagnosis, but it may be difficult to justify invasive tests in mildly ill or asymptomatic children. Therapy should not be delayed in suspected cases. The CSF in tuberculous meningitis shows slight to moderate pleocytosis (50–300 WBCs/μL, predominantly lymphocytes), decreased glucose, and increased protein.

The direct detection of mycobacteria in body fluids or discharges is best done by staining specimens with auramine-rhodamine and examining them with fluorescence microscopy; this method is superior to the Ziehl-Neelsen method.

C. Imaging

Chest radiograph should be obtained in all children with suspicion of tuberculosis at any site or with a positive skin test. Segmental consolidation with some volume loss and hilar adenopathy are common findings in children. Paratracheal adenopathy is a classic presentation. Pleural effusion also occurs with primary infection. Cavities and apical disease are unusual in children but are common in adolescents and adults.

Differential Diagnosis

Pulmonary tuberculosis must be differentiated from fungal, parasitic, mycoplasmal, and bacterial pneumonias; lung abscess; foreign body aspiration; lipoid pneumonia; sarcoidosis; and mediastinal cancer. Cervical lymphadenitis is most likely due to streptococcal or staphylococcal infections. Cat-scratch fever and infection with atypical mycobacteria may need to be distinguished from tuberculous lymphadenitis. Viral meningoencephalitis, head trauma (child abuse), lead poisoning, brain abscess, acute bacterial meningitis, brain tumor, and disseminated fungal infections must be excluded in tuberculous meningitis. A positive TST or IGRA in the patient or family contacts is frequently valuable in suggesting the diagnosis of tuberculosis. A negative TST or IGRA does not exclude tuberculosis.

Prevention

A. BCG Vaccine

Bacille Calmette–Guérin (BCG) vaccines are live-attenuated strains of M bovis. Although neonatal and childhood administration of BCG is carried out in countries with a high prevalence of tuberculosis, protective efficacy varies greatly with vaccine potency and method of delivery. BCG given to infants decreases disseminated tuberculosis but does not protect against pulmonary tuberculosis later in childhood or adolescence. In the United States, BCG vaccination is not

recommended. Because the great majority of children who have received BCG still have negative TST tests, the past history of BCG vaccination should be ignored in interpreting the skin test. IGRA is recommended rather than TSTs for screening BCG-immunized children older than 4 years.

B. Isoniazid Chemoprophylaxis

Daily administration of isoniazid (10 mg/kg/d orally; maximum 300 mg) is advised for children who are exposed by prolonged close or household contact with adolescents or adults with active disease. Isoniazid is given until 8–10 weeks after last contact. At the end of this time, a TST or IGRA test should be repeated, and therapy should be continued for an additional 7 months if the test is positive.

C. Other Measures

Tuberculosis in infants and young children is evidence of recent exposure to active infection in an adult, usually a family member or household contact. The source contact (index case) should be identified, isolated, and given treatment to prevent other secondary cases. Reporting cases to local health departments is essential for contact tracing. Exposed tuberculin-negative children should usually receive isoniazid chemoprophylaxis. If a repeated skin test is negative 8–10 weeks following the last exposure, isoniazid may be stopped. Routine tuberculin skin testing is not recommended for children without risk factors who reside in communities with a low incidence of tuberculosis. Children with no personal risk for tuberculosis but who reside in communities with a high incidence of tuberculosis should be given a skin test at school entry and then again at age 11–16 years. Children with a risk factor for acquiring tuberculosis should be tested every 2–3 years. Incarcerated adolescents and children living in a household with HIV-infected persons should have annual skin tests.

Children who immigrate into the United States from a country with a high incidence of infection should receive TST or IGRA on entry to the United States or upon presentation to healthcare providers. A past history of BCG vaccine should not delay testing.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Most children with suspected active tuberculosis in the United States are hospitalized initially. However, if the source case is known and the child is not seriously ill, hospitalization is often not needed. If the infecting organism has not been isolated from the presumed source, reasonable attempts should be made to obtain it from the child using morning gastric aspirates, sputum, bronchoscopy, thoracentesis, or biopsy when appropriate. Unfortunately, cultures are frequently negative in children, and the risk of these procedures must be weighed against the yield.

Therapy is given daily for 14 days and then reduced to two to three times per week for the duration of the course. Directly observed administration of all doses of antituberculosis therapy by a trained healthcare professional is essential to ensure compliance with therapy.

Children with positive skin tests (see Table 42–3) without symptoms and a normal chest radiograph have latent tuberculosis and should receive 9 months of isoniazid (10 mg/kg/d orally; maximum 300 mg) therapy. Rifampin (10–15 mg/kg/d orally; maximum 600 mg) for 4 months is efficacious and compliance is greatly improved with the shorter duration of therapy. A combination of isoniazid and rifapentine given once per week for 12 weeks is effective in adolescents older than 12 years and adults. In children with active pulmonary disease, therapy for 6 months using isoniazid (10 mg/kg/d), rifampin (15 mg/kg/d), pyrazinamide (25–30 mg/kg/d), and ethambutol (25 mg/kg/d) in a single daily oral dose for 2 months, followed by isoniazid plus rifampin (either in a daily or twice-weekly regimen) for 4 months appears effective for eliminating isoniazid-susceptible organisms. For more severe disease, such as miliary or CNS infection, duration is increased to 12 months or more. In communities with resistance rates greater than 4%, initial therapy should usually include four drugs. The duration of therapy is prolonged in immune compromised children and if drug resistance necessitates alternative regimens.

1. Isoniazid—The hepatotoxicity from isoniazid seen in adults and some adolescents is rare in children. Transient elevation of aminotransferases (up to three times normal) is common early in treatment, but therapy is continued unless clinical illness occurs. Routine monitoring of liver function tests is unnecessary unless prior hepatic disease is known, other hepatotoxic drugs are administered, or the child is severely ill. Peripheral neuropathy associated with pyridoxine deficiency is rare in children, and it is not necessary to add pyridoxine unless significant malnutrition coexists or if the child is strictly breast-fed.

2. Rifampin—Although it is an excellent bactericidal agent, rifampin is never used alone to treat active disease, owing to rapid development of resistance. Hepatotoxicity occurs but rarely with recommended doses. Rifampin causes an orange color of urine and secretions which is benign but may stain contact lenses or clothes. Rifampin interacts with many medications including anticonvulsants, some seizure medications, birth control pills, and Coumadin.

3. Pyrazinamide—This excellent sterilizing agent is most effective during the first 2 months of therapy. With the recommended duration and dosing, it is well tolerated. Although pyrazinamide elevates the uric acid level, it rarely causes symptoms of hyperuricemia in children. Use of this

drug is now common for tuberculous disease in children, and resistance is uncommon. Oral acceptance and CNS penetration are good although gastro-intestinal side effects are common.

4. Ethambutol—Because optic neuritis is the major side effect in adults, ethambutol has usually been given only to children whose vision can be reliably tested for loss of color differentiation. Optic neuritis is rare and usually occurs in adults receiving more than the recommended dosage of 25 mg/kg/d. Documentation of optic toxicity in children is lacking despite considerable worldwide experience. Therefore, many four-drug regimens for children now include ethambutol.

5. Streptomycin—Streptomycin (20–30 mg/kg/d, given intramuscularly in one or two doses) should be given for 1 or 2 months in severe disease. The child's hearing should be tested periodically during use as ototoxicity is common.

B. Chemotherapy for Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis

The incidence of drug resistance is increasing and reaches 10%–20% in some areas of the United States. Transmission of multiple drug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant strains to contacts has occurred in some epidemics. Therapy should continue for 18 months or longer. Often, four to six first- and second-line medications are needed. Consultation with a local expert in treating tuberculosis is recommended.

C. General Measures

Corticosteroids may be used for suppressing inflammatory reactions in meningeal, pleural, and pericardial tuberculosis and for the relief of bronchial obstruction due to hilar adenopathy. Prednisone is given orally, 1 mg/kg/d for 2 weeks, with gradual withdrawal over the next 4–6 weeks. The use of corticosteroids may mask progression of disease. Accordingly, the clinician needs to be sure that an effective regimen is being used.

» Prognosis

If bacteria are sensitive and treatment is completed, most children are cured with minimal sequelae. Repeat treatment is more difficult and less successful. With antituberculosis chemotherapy (especially isoniazid), there should now be nearly 100% recovery in miliary tuberculosis. Without treatment, the mortality rate in both miliary tuberculosis and tuberculous meningitis is almost 100%. In the latter form, about two-thirds of patients receiving treatment survive. There may be a high incidence of neurologic abnormalities among survivors if treatment is started late.

Anderson ST et al: Diagnosis of childhood tuberculosis and host RNA expression in Africa. N Eng J Med 2014;370(18):1712 [PMID: 24785206].

Diacon AH et al: Multidrug–resistant tuberculosis and culture conversion with bedaquiline. N Eng J Med 2014;371(8):723 [PMID: 25140958].

Macaraig M et al: Tuberculosis control in New York City – Changing landscape. N Eng J Med 2014;370(25):2362 [PMID: 24941176].

Starke JR: Improving tuberculosis care for children in high-burden settings. Pediatrics 2014; 134(4):655 [PMID: 25266434].

INFECTIONS WITH NONTUBERCULOUS MYCOBACTERIA

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic unilateral cervical lymphadenitis.
- Granulomas of the skin.
- Chronic bone lesion with draining sinus (chronic osteomyelitis).
- Tuberculin skin test (TST) of 5–8 mm, negative chest radiograph, and negative history of contact with tuberculosis.
- Diagnosis by positive culture.
- Disseminated infection in patients with AIDS.

» General Considerations

More than 130 species of acid-fast mycobacteria other than M tuberculosis may cause subclinical infections and occasionally clinical disease resembling tuberculosis. Strains of nontuberculous mycobacteria (NTM) are common in soil, food, and water. Organisms enter the host by small abrasions in skin, oral mucosa, or gastrointestinal mucosa.

Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC), Mycobacterium kansasii, Mycobacterium fortuitum, Mycobacterium abscessus, Mycobacterium marinum, and Mycobacterium chelonae are most commonly encountered. M fortuitum, M abscessus, and M chelonae are "rapid growers" requiring 3–7 days for recovery, whereas other mycobacteria require several weeks. After inoculation they form colonies closely resembling M tuberculosis morphologically.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Lymphadenitis—In children, the most common form of infection due to mycobacteria other than M tuberculosis is cervical lymphadenitis. MAC is the most common organism.

A submandibular or cervical node swells slowly and is firm and initially somewhat tender. Low-grade fever may occur. Over time, the node may suppurate and drain chronically. Nodes in other areas of the head and neck and elsewhere are sometimes involved. Chronic intermittent drainage is common, but in many cases healing occurs after 4–12 months.

2. Pulmonary disease—In the western United States, pulmonary disease is usually due to M kansasii or MAC, In the eastern United States and in other countries, disease is usually caused by MAC. In adults, there is usually underlying chronic pulmonary disease. Immune deficiency, particularly deficiency of cellular immunity, is commonly present. Presentation is clinically indistinguishable from that of tuberculosis. Adolescents with cystic fibrosis may be infected with nontuberculous mycobacteria with resulting fever and declining pulmonary function.

3. Swimming pool granuloma—This is commonly due to M marinum. A solitary chronic granulomatous lesion with satellite lesions develops after minor trauma in infected swimming pools or other aquatic sources. Minor trauma during exposure to home aquariums or other aquatic environments may also lead to infection.

4. Chronic osteomyelitis—Osteomyelitis is caused by MAC, M kansasii, M fortuitum, or other rapid growers. Findings include swelling and pain over a distal extremity, radiolucent defects in bone, fever, and clinical and radiographic evidence of bronchopneumonia. Such cases are rare.

5. Meningitis—Disease is due to M kansasii and may be indistinguishable from tuberculous meningitis.

6. Disseminated infection—Rarely, apparently immunologically normal children develop disseminated infection due to nontuberculous mycobacteria. Children are ill, with fever and hepatosplenomegaly, and organisms are demonstrated in bone lesions, lymph nodes, or liver. Chest radiographs are usually normal. Between 60% and 80% of patients with AIDS acquired MAC infection in the past, characterized by fever, night sweats, weight loss, and diarrhea. Infection usually indicates severe immune dysfunction and is associated with CD4 lymphocyte counts less than 50/μL. Infection is now very rare to more effective HIV therapy.

B. Laboratory Findings

In most cases, there is a negative or small reaction (< 10 mm) when Mantoux testing is done. Larger reactions may be seen particularly with M marinum infection. IGRA tests are commonly negative although M marinum, M kansasii, and M szulgai may cause cross-reactions. The chest radiograph is negative, and there is no history of contact with a case of tuberculosis. Needle aspiration of the node excludes bacterial infection and may yield acid-fast bacilli on stain or culture. Fistulization should not be a problem because total excision is usually recommended for infection due to atypical mycobacteria. Cultures of any normally sterile body site may yield MAC in immunocompromised patients with disseminated disease. Blood cultures are positive, with a large density of bacteria.

» Differential Diagnosis

See section on differential diagnosis in the previous discussion of tuberculosis and in Chapter 19.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

The usual treatment of lymphadenitis is complete surgical excision. Occasionally excision is impossible because of proximity to branches of the facial or other nerves or the salivary glands. Response of extensive adenopathy or other forms of infection to chemotherapy varies according to the infecting species and susceptibility but is often disappointingly slow. Usually, combinations of two to four medications administered for months are required. Isoniazid, rifampin, and ethambutol (depending on sensitivity to isoniazid) will result in a favorable response in almost all patients with M kansasii infection. Chemotherapeutic treatment of MAC is much less satisfactory because resistance to isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide is common. Susceptibility testing is useful to optimize therapy. Most clinicians favor surgical excision of involved tissue if possible and treatment with at least three drugs to which the organism has been shown to be sensitive. Disseminated disease in patients with AIDS requires a combination of three or more active drugs. Clarithromycin or azithromycin and ethambutol are started, in addition to one or more of the following drugs: ethionamide, capreomycin, amikacin, rifabutin, rifampin or ciprofloxacin. M fortuitum and M chelonei are usually susceptible to amikacin plus cefoxitin or meropenem followed by clarithromycin, azithromycin, or doxycycline, and may be successfully treated with such combinations. Swimming pool granuloma due to M marinum is usually treated with doxycycline (in children older than 9 years) or rifampin, plus ethambutol, clarithromycin, or TMP-SMX for a minimum of 3 months. Surgery may also be beneficial.

B. Chemoprophylaxis

Unsuccessfully treated children with HIV are given chemoprophylaxis with azithromycin or clarithromycin to prevent disseminated MAC infection when $CD4^+$ T-lympocyte counts fall below age specific levels.

C. General Measures

Isolation of the patient is usually not necessary. General supportive care is indicated for the child with disseminated disease.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good for patients with localized disease, although fatalities occur in immunocompromised patients with disseminated disease.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Mycobacterium avium complex. Available at: www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/mycobacteriumavium_t.htm.

Lopez-Varela E at el: Non-tuberculous mycobacteria in children: muddying the waters of tuberculosis diagnosis. Lancet Respir Med 2015;3(3):244 [PMID: 25773213].

LEGIONELLA INFECTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Severe progressive pneumonia in a child with compromised immunity.
- Diarrhea and neurologic signs are common.
- Direct fluorescent antibody staining of respiratory secretions and urinary antigen tests are highly specific but do not identify all infections.

» General Considerations

Legionella pneumophila is a ubiquitous gram-negative bacillus that causes two distinct clinical syndromes: Legionnaires disease and Pontiac fever. Over 40 species of Legionella have been discovered, but not all cause disease in humans. L pneumophila causes most infections. Legionella is present in many natural water sources as well as domestic water supplies (faucets and showers), and fountains. Contaminated cooling towers and heat exchangers have been implicated in several large institutional outbreaks. Person-to-person transmission has not been documented.

Few cases of Legionnaires disease have been reported in children. Most were in children with compromised cellular immunity. In adults, risk factors include smoking, underlying cardiopulmonary or renal disease, alcoholism, and diabetes.

L pneumophila is thought to be acquired by inhalation of a contaminated aerosol. The bacteria are phagocytosed but proliferate within macrophages. Cell-mediated immunity is necessary to activate macrophages to kill intracellular bacteria.

» Prevention

No vaccine is available. Legionella is naturally found in water, so ensuring proper disinfectant and water temperature maintenance of water supplies will help prevent cases. Good cleaning, attention to pH, and proper disinfectants in hot tubs is important. Chlorine or monochloramine treatment of municipal water supplies has been shown to reduce the number of organisms and the risk of infection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In Legionnaires disease there is an abrupt onset of fever, chills, anorexia, and headache. Pulmonary symptoms appear within 2–3 days and progress rapidly. The cough is nonproductive early. Purulent sputum occurs late. Hemoptysis, diarrhea, and neurologic signs (including lethargy, irritability, tremors, and delirium) are seen. Pontiac fever is a milder, self-limited illness without evidence of pneumonia.

B. Laboratory Findings

The WBC count is usually elevated in Legionnaires disease. Chest radiographs show rapidly progressive patchy consolidation. Cavitation and large pleural effusions are uncommon. Cultures from sputum, tracheal aspirates, or bronchoscopic specimens, when grown on specialized media are positive in 70%–80% of patients at 3–5 days of culture. Direct fluorescent antibody staining of sputum or other respiratory specimens is only 50%–70% sensitive but 95% specific. A false-positive test can be seen in patients with tularemia. A negative result on culture or direct fluorescent antibody staining of sputum or tracheal secretions does not rule out disease due to Legionella. PCR detection of respiratory secretions for Legionella is available at some centers. Urine antigen tests for Legionella antigen are highly specific, but only detect L pneumophila serotype 1, which is the most community-acquired L pneumophila infection. Performance of both culture and urine antigen testing should facilitate diagnosis. Serologic tests are available, but a maximum rise in titer may require 4–6 weeks.

» Differential Diagnosis

Legionnaires disease is usually a rapidly progressive pneumonia in a patient who appears very ill with unremitting fevers. Other bacterial pneumonias, viral pneumonias, Mycoplasma pneumonia, and fungal disease are all possibilities and may be difficult to differentiate clinically in an immunocompromised patient.

» Complications

In sporadic untreated cases, mortality rates are 5%–25%. The mortality rate is < 5% in normal hosts with early, appropriate therapy. In immunocompromised patients with untreated disease, mortality approaches 80%. Hematogenous dissemination may result in extrapulmonary foci of infection,

including pericardium, myocardium, and kidneys. Legionella may be the cause of culture-negative endocarditis.

» Treatment

Intravenous azithromycin, 10 mg/kg/d given as a once-daily dose (maximum dose 500 mg), is the drug of choice in most children. In immunocompromised patients, levofloxacin is recommended (not approved for this indication in children < 18 years of age) because fluoroquinolones are bactericidal agents. Doxycycline (not recommended for children < 8 years of age unless benefit exceeds risk) and TMP-SMX are alternative agents. Duration of therapy is 5–10 days if azithromycin is used; for other antibiotics a 14- to 21-day course. Oral therapy may be substituted for intravenous therapy as the patient's condition improves.

» Prognosis

Mortality rate is high if treatment is delayed. Malaise, problems with memory, and fatigue are common after recovery.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Legionella. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/legionella/clinicians.html.

Diederen BM: Legionella spp. and Legionnaires' disease. J Infect 2008;56(1):1–12 [PMID: 17980914].

CHLAMYDOPHILA INFECTIONS (PSITTACOSIS [ORNITHOSIS], C PNEUMONIAE, & C TRACHOMATIS)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Psittacosis:

- Fever, cough, malaise, chills, headache.
- Diffuse rales; no consolidation.
- Long-lasting radiographic findings of bronchopneumonia.
- Isolation of the organism or rising titer of complement fixing antibodies.
- Exposure to infected birds (ornithosis).

» Neonatal Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) conjunctivitis:

- Watery, mucopurulent, to blood tinged discharge and conjunctival injection presenting from a few days of life until 16 weeks of age.
- May be associated with neonatal Chlamydophila pneumonia.
- Identification of Chlamydophila conjunctivitis or pneumonia in a neonate should prompt evaluation and treatment of the mother and her sexual partner.

» General Considerations

Psittacosis is caused by Chlamydophila psittaci. When the agent is transmitted to humans from psittacine birds (parrots, parakeets, cockatoos, and budgerigars), the disease is called psittacosis. However, other avian genera (eg, pigeons and turkeys) are common sources of infection in the United States, and the general term ornithosis often is used. Human-to-human spread rarely occurs. The incubation period is 5–14 days. The bird from which the disease was transmitted may not be clinically ill.

Chlamydophila pneumoniae (formerly Chlamydia pneumoniae) may cause atypical pneumonia similar to that due to M pneumoniae. Transmission is by respiratory spread. Infection is most prevalent during the second decade. Lower respiratory tract infection due to C pneumoniae is uncommon in infants and young children. C pneumoniae has been associated with acute chest syndrome in children with sickle cell disease.

Chlamydophila trachomatis causes urogenital infections in adults including asymptomatic infections, lymphogranuloma venereum, nongonococcal urethritis, epididymitis, cervicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease. Serovars D–K (and L1, L2, L3 in lymphogranuloma venereum) are responsible for most of these infections. Sexually transmitted urogenital infections caused by Chlamydophila are discussed in Chapter 44. In infants born to infected mothers, C trachomatis infection can be acquired through exposure in the birth canal, causing neonatal conjunctivitis and/or pneumonia. The risk of acquisition for a baby born vaginally to an infected mother is about 50%.

The disease called "trachoma" is rare in the United States. Trachoma is caused by certain C trachomatis serovars (A–C). This chronic keratoconjunctivitis can cause inflammation and neovascularization of the cornea, leading to corneal scarring and blindness.

» Prevention

Persons cleaning bird cages of sick birds should use caution (wear N95 mask, eye protection, gloves) when cleaning cages or disposing of bird droppings to avoid aerosolization of C psittaci. C psittaci is susceptible to 1% Lysol or a 1:100 dilution of household bleach; either can be used to disinfect cages. Sick birds should be evaluated by a veterinarian and treated with antimicrobials. C pneumoniae is transmitted person to person by infected respiratory tract secretions. Prevention involves avoidance of known infected persons, using good hand hygiene, and encouraging good respiratory hygiene (covering mouth with coughing, disposing of tissues contaminated with respiratory secretions).

The diagnosis and treatment of genital Chlamydophila (chlamydial) infections in pregnant women and their sexual partners is the most effective way to prevent neonatal conjunctivitis and pneumonia (see Chapter 44).

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. C psittaci pneumonia—The disease is extremely variable but tends to be mild in children. The onset is rapid or insidious, with fever, chills, headache, backache, malaise, myalgia, and dry cough. Signs include pneumonitis, altered percussion notes and breathe sounds, and rales. Pulmonary findings may be absent early. Dyspnea and cyanosis may occur later. Splenomegaly, epistaxis, prostration, and meningismus are occasionally seen. Delirium, constipation or diarrhea, and abdominal distress may occur.

2. C pneumoniae pneumonia—Clinically, C pneumoniae infection is similar to M pneumoniae infection. Most patients have mild upper respiratory infections. Lower respiratory tract infection is characterized by fever, sore throat (perhaps more severe with C pneumoniae), cough, and bilateral pulmonary findings and infiltrates.

3. C trachomatis neonatal conjunctivitis and pneumonia—Neonatal conjunctivitis caused by C trachomatis can occur from a few days until 12–16 weeks after birth. There may be mild to moderate swelling of the lids and watery or mucopurulent discharge. The conjunctivae may be friable and there may be some bloody discharge. Pneumonia may occur in babies with or without neonatal conjunctivitis. Pneumonia is most commonly seen between 2 and 12 weeks of age. Most babies are afebrile and have tachypnea and a staccato cough.

4. C Trachomatis trachoma—Trachoma is seen in developing countries in Africa, Asia, Latin America, the Middle East, and some Pacific and East Pacific islands. It is the most common cause of acquired blindness worldwide. The peak incidence is seen at 4–6 years of age, with scarring and blindness occurring in adulthood. Infections occur from direct contact with infected secretions (eye, nose, throat) or by direct contact with contaminated objects (secretions on towels, washcloths, handkerchiefs).

B. Laboratory Findings

1. C Psittaci—In psittacosis, the WBC count is normal or decreased, often with a left shift. Proteinuria is common. C psittaci is present in the blood and sputum during the first 2 weeks of illness, but can represent a hazard to laboratory workers. A diagnosis can be made if a culture (blood or respiratory tract specimen) is positive for the organism, or there is a fourfold rise in complement fixation titers in specimens obtained at least 2 weeks apart. Evidence of a probable case includes a respiratory sample that is PCR positive for C psittaci or a serum C psittaci IgM antibody titer above 1:32 (microimmunofluorescent or complement fixation assay). The titer rise may be blunted or delayed by therapy. Infection with C pneumoniae may lead to diagnostic confusion because cross-reactive antibody may cause false-positive C psittaci titers.

2. C Pneumoniae—Eosinophilia is sometimes present. A fourfold rise in C pneumoniae IgG titer (microimmunofluorescence antibody test) is the preferred test. IgG antibody peaks 6–8 weeks after infection. C pneumoniae can be isolated from nasal wash or throat swab specimens after inoculation into cell culture. A PCR is urgently not commercially available.

3. C Trachomatis—In infants with suspected Chlamydial pneumonia or conjunctivitis, nucleic acid amplification tests (such as PCR) have not been FDA approved for testing conjunctival samples or respiratory samples (nasopharyngeal, tracheal aspirate) in infants. Culture or nonamplified direct detection methods are usually utilized. In countries where the disease trachoma occurs, the diagnosis is made clinically.

C. Imaging

The radiographic findings in psittacosis are those of central pneumonia that later becomes widespread or migratory. Psittacosis is indistinguishable from viral pneumonias by radiograph. Signs of pneumonitis may appear on radiograph in the absence of clinical suspicion of pulmonary involvement. Pneumonia from C pneumoniae produces variable radiographic findings including bilateral interstitial infiltrates or a unilateral subsegmental infiltrate. In neonatal pneumonia due to C trachomatis, infiltrates, and often hyperinflation, are seen.

Differential Diagnosis

Psittacosis can be differentiated from viral or mycoplasmal pneumonias only by the history of contact with potentially infected birds. In severe or prolonged cases with extrapulmonary involvement the differential diagnosis is broad, including typhoid fever, brucellosis, and rheumatic fever.

C pneumoniae pneumonia is not distinguishable clinically from Mycoplasma or viral pneumonia.

C trachomatis conjunctivitis must be differentiated from gonococcal conjunctivitis, chemical conjunctivitis, or viral conjunctivitis. Gonococcal conjunctivitis is often severe, with purulent drainage. A culture of the conjunctival discharge (plated on Thayer-Martin media) can aid in the diagnosis of gonococcal conjunctivitis.

Complications

Complications of psittacosis include myocarditis, endocarditis, hepatitis, pancreatitis, and secondary bacterial pneumonia. C pneumoniae infection may be prolonged or may recur.

Treatment

Psittacosis—Doxycycline should be given for 10–14 days after defervescence to patients older than 8 years with psittacosis. Alternatively, erythromycin or azithromycin may be used in younger children. Supportive oxygen may be needed.

Chlamydophila pneumonia—Most suspected infections are treated empirically. C pneumoniae responds to macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin). Doxycycline is an alternative in those patients 8 years and older. A 10- to 14-day course is recommended for erythromycin or doxycycline; when using azithromycin the treatment length is 5 days.

Neonatal conjunctivitis or pneumonia—The consensus recommendation is a 10-day course of erythromycin base or ethylsuccinate (50 mg/kg/d given in four divided doses). Some infants have recrudescence of symptoms after the antibiotic course finishes or failure of symptoms to fully resolve. These infants can be retreated with a second course of erythromycin. An association with receipt of erythromycin and development of pyloric stenosis in infants less than 6 weeks of age has been reported. Parents should be informed of this potential risk and the symptoms of pyloric stenosis. Data on the use of azithromycin for these conditions in neonates is very limited, but azithromycin 20 mg/kg, given as an oral single dose once daily for 3 days, may be efficacious. The diagnosis of an infant with chlamydial conjunctivitis and/or pneumonia should prompt evaluation and treatment of the mother and her sexual partner for Chlamydia and other sexually transmitted diseases (see Chapter 44).

American Academy of Pediatrics: Chlamydial infections. In: Pickering LK (ed). Red Book: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL; American Academy of Pediatrics: 2012.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Chlamydia pneumoniae. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/2010/chlamydial-infections.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Psittacosis. http://www.cdc.gov/pneumonia/atypical/psittacosis.html.

CAT-SCRATCH DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- History of a cat scratch or cat contact.
- Primary lesion (papule, pustule, or conjunctivitis) at site of inoculation.
- Acute or subacute regional lymphadenopathy.
- Laboratory studies excluding other causes.
- Biopsy of node or papule showing histopathologic findings consistent with cat-scratch disease and occasionally characteristic bacilli on Warthin-Starry stain.
- Positive cat-scratch serology (antibody to Bartonella henselae).

» General Considerations

The causative agent of cat-scratch disease is B henselae, a gram-negative bacillus that also causes bacillary angiomatosis. Cat-scratch disease is usually a benign, self-limited form of lymphadenitis. Patients often report a cat scratch (67%), bite (less common), or contact with a cat or kitten (90%). The cat almost invariably is healthy. Cats become infected via an infected flea; the flea becomes infected when feeding on a cat that is bacteremic with B henselae. Occasionally dogs can be infected and transmit disease. The clinical picture is that of a regional lymphadenitis associated with an erythematous papular skin lesion without intervening lymphangitis. The disease occurs worldwide and is more common in the fall and winter. It is estimated that more than 20,000 cases per year occur in the United States. The most common systemic complication is encephalitis.

» Prevention

Cat-scratch disease can be largely prevented by avoiding contact with cats, especially kittens. Flea control of animals will reduce cat-to-cat transmission.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

About 50% of patients with cat-scratch disease develop a primary lesion at the site of the wound. The lesion usually is a papule or pustule that appears 7–10 days after injury and is located most often on the arm or hand (50%), head or leg (30%), or trunk or neck (10%). The lesion may be conjunctival (10%). Regional lymphadenopathy appears 10–50 days later and may be accompanied by mild malaise, lassitude, headache, and fever. Multiple sites are seen in about 10% of cases. Involved nodes may be hard or soft and 1–6 cm in diameter. They are usually tender, warm, and erythematous and 10%–20% suppurate. Lymphadenopathy usually resolves in about 2 months but may persist for up to 8 months.

Unusual manifestations include erythema nodosum, thrombocytopenic purpura, conjunctivitis (Parinaud oculoglandular fever), parotid swelling, pneumonia, osteolytic lesions, mesenteric and mediastinal adenitis, neuroretinitis, peripheral neuritis, hepatitis, granulomata of the liver and spleen, and encephalopathy.

Immunocompetent patients may develop an atypical systemic form of cat-scratch disease. These patients have prolonged fever, fatigue, and malaise. Lymphadenopathy may be present. Hepatosplenomegaly or low-density hepatic or splenic lesions visualized by ultrasound or computed tomography scan are seen in some patients.

Infection in immunocompromised individuals may take the form of bacillary angiomatosis, presenting as vascular tumors of the skin and subcutaneous tissues.

Immunocompromised patients may also have bacteremia or infection of the liver (peliosis hepatis).

B. Laboratory Findings

Serologic evidence of Bartonella infection by indirect immunofluorescent antibody with IgG titer of > 1:256 is strongly suggestive of recent infection. A positive IgM antibody is sometimes positive. PCR assays are available. Cat-scratch skin test antigens are not recommended.

Histopathologic examination of involved tissue may show pyogenic granulomas or bacillary forms demonstrated by Warthin-Starry silver stain (bacillary forms on stain are not specific for cat scratch disease). Later in the course necrotizing granulomas may be seen. There usually is some elevation in the ESR. In patients with CNS involvement, the CSF is usually normal but may show a slight pleocytosis and modest elevation of protein.

» Differential Diagnosis

Cat-scratch disease must be distinguished from pyogenic adenitis, tuberculosis (typical and atypical), tularemia, plague, brucellosis, lymphoma, primary toxoplasmosis, infectious mononucleosis, lymphogranuloma venereum, and fungal infections.

» Treatment

Treatment of cat-scratch disease adenopathy is controversial because the disease usually resolves without therapy and the patient is typically not exceedingly ill. Treatment of typical cat-scratch disease with a 5-day course of azithromycin has been shown to speed resolution of lymphadenopathy in some patients. In some reports, ciprofloxacin, rifampin, or TMP-SMX have been useful. Azithromycin is used by many experts if treatment of adenopathy is desired because it is given once a day and is reasonably priced. In one randomized placebo-controlled trial, lymph node volume decreased faster than placebo by 1 month, but there was no difference in long-term resolution in the azithromycin and placebo groups. The best therapy is reassurance that the adenopathy is benign and will subside spontaneously with time (mean duration of illness is 14 weeks). In cases of nodal suppuration, needle aspiration under local anesthesia relieves the pain. Excision of the involved node is indicated in cases of chronic adenitis.

Immunocompromised patients with evidence of infection should be treated with antibiotics: long-term therapy (months) in these patients with azithromycin or doxycycline often is needed to prevent relapses. Immunocompetent patients with more severe disease or evidence of systemic infection (eg, hepatic or splenic lesions) should also be treated with antibiotics.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good if complications do not occur.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Bartonella. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/bartonella/clinicians/index.html.

Klotz SA, Elliott IV: Cat-scratch disease. Am Fam Physician 2011;83(2):152–155 [PMID: 21243990].

SPIROCHETAL INFECTIONS

SYPHILIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Congenital:

- All types: history of untreated maternal syphilis, a positive serologic test or a positive darkfield examination.
- Newborn: hepatosplenomegaly, characteristic radiographic bone changes, anemia, increased nucleated red cells, thrombocytopenia, abnormal spinal fluid, jaundice, edema.
- Young infant (3–12 weeks): snuffles, maculopapular skin rash, mucocutaneous lesions, pseudoparalysis (in addition to radiographic bone changes).
- Children: stigmata of early congenital syphilis, interstitial keratitis, saber shins, gummas of nose and palate.

» Acquired:

- Chancre of genitals, lip, or anus in child or adolescent.
- History of sexual contact and a positive serologic test.

» General Considerations

Syphilis is a chronic, generalized infectious disease caused by a spirochete, Treponema pallidum. In the acquired form, the disease is transmitted by sexual contact. Primary syphilis is characterized by the presence of an indurated painless chancre, which heals in 7–10 days. A secondary eruption involving the skin and mucous membranes appears in 4–6 weeks. After a long latency period, late lesions of tertiary syphilis involve the eyes, skin, bones, viscera, CNS, and cardiovascular system.

Congenital syphilis results from transplacental infection. Infection may result in stillbirth or produce illness in the newborn, in early infancy, or later in childhood. Syphilis occurring in the newborn and young infant is comparable to secondary disease in the adult but is more severe and maybe life-threatening. Late congenital syphilis (developing in childhood) is comparable to tertiary disease.

The incidence of primary and secondary syphilis is increasing in the United States particularly among gay men. 15,667 new cases of primary and secondary syphilis, 322 cases of congenital syphilis (< 1 year) and nearly 50,000 total cases were reported in 2012.

» Prevention

A serologic test for syphilis should be performed at the initiation of prenatal care and repeated at delivery in women at increased risk for syphilis. Serologic tests may be negative on both the mother and infant at the time of birth if the mother acquires syphilis near term. Adequate treatment of mothers with secondary syphilis before the last month of pregnancy reduces the incidence of congenital syphilis from 90% to less than 2%. Examination and serologic testing of sexual partners and siblings should also be done.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Congenital syphilis

a. Newborns—Most newborns with congenital syphilis are asymptomatic. If infection is not detected and treated, symptoms develop within weeks to months. When clinical signs are present, they usually consist of jaundice, anemia with or without thrombocytopenia, increase in nucleated red blood cells, hepatosplenomegaly, and edema. Overt signs of meningitis (bulging fontanelle or opisthotonos) may be present, but subclinical infection with CSF abnormalities is more common.

b. Young infants (3–12 weeks)—The infant may appear normal for the first few weeks of life only to develop mucocutaneous lesions and pseudoparalysis of the arms or legs. Shotty lymphadenopathy may be felt. Hepatomegaly is universal, with splenomegaly in 50% of patients. Other signs of disease similar to those seen in the newborn may be present. Anemia has been reported as the only presenting manifestation of congenital syphilis in this age group. "Snuffles" (syphilitic rhinitis), characterized by a profuse mucopurulent discharge, are present in 15–25% of patients. A syphilitic rash is common on the palms and soles but may occur anywhere on the body. The rash consists of bright red, raised maculopapular lesions that gradually fade, occasionally the rash is vesicular or bullous. Moist lesions occur at the mucocutaneous junctions (nose, mouth, anus, and genitals) and lead to fissuring and bleeding.

Syphilis in the young infant may lead to stigmata recognizable in later childhood, such as rhagades (scars) around the mouth or nose, a depressed bridge of the nose (saddle nose), and a high forehead (secondary to mild hydrocephalus associated with low-grade meningitis and frontal periostitis). The permanent upper central incisors may be peg-shaped with a central notch (Hutchinson teeth), and the cusps of the sixth-year molars may have a lobulated mulberry appearance.

c. Children—Bilateral interstitial keratitis (at age 6–12 years) is characterized by photophobia, increased lacrimation, and vascularization of the cornea associated with exudation. Chorioretinitis and optic atrophy may also be seen. Meningovascular syphilis (at age 2–10 years) is usually slowly progressive, with mental retardation, spasticity, abnormal pupillary response, speech defects, and abnormal CSF. Deafness sometimes occurs. Thickening of the periosteum of the anterior tibias produces saber shins. A bilateral effusion in the knee joints may occur but is not associated with sequelae. Soft inflammatory growths called gummas may develop in the nasal septum, palate, long bones, and subcutaneous tissues.

2. Acquired syphilis—The primary chancre of the genitals, mouth, or anus may occur from genital, anal, or oral sexual contact. If the chancre is missed, signs of secondary syphilis, such as rash, fever, headache, and malaise, may be the first manifestations.

B. Laboratory Findings

1. Darkfield microscopy—Treponemes can be seen in scrapings from a chancre and from moist lesions, but darkfield examinations are not often available.

2. Serologic tests for syphilis—There are two general types of serologic tests for syphilis: treponemal and nontreponemal. There are two types of nontreponemal tests: Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) and the rapid plasma reagin (RPR), which are useful for screening and may be quantitated to follow disease activity and adequacy of therapy. False-positive nontreponemal tests can occur in patient with measles, hepatitis, mononucleosis, lymphoma, tuberculosis, endocarditis, pregnancy, autoimmune diseases, and intravenous drug abuse. When evaluating a newborn infant for potential syphilis, umbilical cord blood specimens should not be used for nontreponemal tests: a false-positive test may result from Wharton jelly contamination of the sample. Conversely, a false-negative test may be seen in the setting where maternal infection occurred late in pregnancy.

Positive nontreponemal tests should be confirmed with a more specific treponemal test such as the fluorescent treponemal antibody absorbed (FTA-ABS) test or the T pallidum particle agglutination (TP-PA) test. False-positive FTA-ABS tests are uncommon except with other spirochetal diseases such as leptospirosis, rat bite fever, and Lyme disease.

One or two weeks after the onset of primary syphilis (chancre), the FTA-ABS test becomes positive. The nontreponemal tests usually turns positive a few days later. By the time the secondary stage has been reached, virtually all patients show both positive FTA-ABS and positive

nontreponemal tests. During latent and tertiary syphilis, the VDRL may become negative, but the FTA-ABS test usually remains positive. The quantitative VDRL or a similar nontreponemal test should be used to follow-up treated cases (see following discussion).

EIA tests specific for T pallidum are available in many laboratories and are replacing FTA-ABS and TP-PA tests. As these are rapid, inexpensive tests with greater specificity, a different screening strategy is now often used. The initial screen is done with EIA test followed by the RPR or VDRL, if positive.

In newborns and infants, positive serologic tests in cord sera may represent passively transferred antibody rather than congenital infection and therefore must be interpreted in light of clinical and laboratory data. Serial measurement of quantitative RPR or VDRL is also very useful, because passively transferred antibody in the absence of active infection should decays with a normal half-life of about 18 days (see discussion of evaluation of infants for congenital syphilis section on Initial Evaluation and Treatment). Elevated total cord IgM is a helpful but nonspecific finding. Demonstration of characteristic treponemes by darkfield examination of material from a moist lesion (skin; nasal or other mucous membranes) is definitive but this test is not often available. Mouth lesions would be best examined by direct fluorescent antibody to distinguish T pallidum from nonpathogenic treponemes commonly found in the mouth.

For evaluation of possible neurosyphilis, the CSF should be examined for cell count, glucose, protein, and a CSF VDRL. A negative CSF VDRL does not rule out neurosyphilis.

C. Imaging

Radiographic abnormalities are present in 90% of infants with symptoms of congenital syphilis and in 20% of asymptomatic infants. Metaphyseal lucent bands, periostitis, and a widened zone of provisional calcification may be present. Bilateral symmetrical osteomyelitis with pathologic fractures of the medial tibial metaphyses (Wimberger sign) is almost pathognomonic.

» Differential Diagnosis

A. Congenital Syphilis

1. Newborns—Sepsis, congestive heart failure, congenital rubella, toxoplasmosis, disseminated herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus infection, and hemolytic disease of the newborn have to be differentiated. A positive Coombs test and blood group incompatibility distinguish hemolytic disease.

2. Young infants—Injury to the brachial plexus, poliomyelitis, acute osteomyelitis, and septic arthritis must be differentiated from pseudoparalysis. Coryza due to viral infection often responds to symptomatic treatment. Rash (ammoniacal diaper rash) and scabies may be confused with a syphilitic eruption.

3. Children—Interstitial keratitis and bone lesions of tuberculosis are distinguished by positive tuberculin reaction and chest radiograph. Arthritis associated with syphilis is unaccompanied by systemic signs, and joints are nontender. Mental retardation, spasticity, and hyperactivity are shown to be of syphilitic origin by strongly positive serologic tests.

B. Acquired Syphilis

Herpes genitalis, traumatic lesions, and other venereal diseases must be differentiated from primary chancers.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Penicillin is the drug of choice for T pallidum infection. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, azithromycin, ceftriaxone or one of the tetracyclines may be used, but are of unknown efficacy.

1. Congenital syphilis

a. Initial evaluation and treatment—Newborns should not be discharged from the hospital until the mother's serologic status for syphilis has been determined. Infants born to seropositive mothers require careful examination and quantitative nontreponemal syphilis testing. The same quantitative antitreponemal test used in evaluating the mother should be used in the infant so the titers can be compared. Maternal records regarding any prior diagnosis of syphilis, treatment, and follow-up titers should be reviewed. Infants should be further evaluated for congenital syphilis in any of the following circumstances:

- The maternal titer has increased fourfold.
- The infant's titer is at least fourfold greater than the maternal titer.
- Signs of syphilis are found on examination.
- Maternal syphilis was not treated or was inadequately treated during pregnancy.
- Maternal syphilis was treated with a nonpenicillin regimen, or the regimen or dose of medication is undocumented.
- Maternal syphilis was treated during pregnancy, but therapy was completed less than 4 weeks prior to delivery.
- Maternal syphilis was treated appropriately during pregnancy, but without the appropriate decrease in maternal nontreponemal titers after treatment.

The complete evaluation of an infant for possible congenital syphilis includes complete blood count, liver function tests, long bone radiographs, CSF examination (cell counts, glucose, and protein), CSF VDRL, and quantitative

serologic tests. In addition, the placenta and umbilical cord should be examined pathologically using fluorescent antitreponemal antibody, if available. An ophthalmologic examination may also be done.

Treatment for congenital syphilis is indicated for infants with consistent physical signs; umbilical cord or placenta positive for DFA-TP staining or darkfield examination; abnormal radiographs; elevated CSF protein or cell counts; reactive CSF VDRL; or serum quantitative nontreponemal titer that is more than fourfold higher than the maternal titer (using same test). Newborns with proved or suspected congenital syphilis should receive either (1) aqueous crystalline penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg per dose intravenously every 12 hours (if < 1 week old) or (2) every 8 hours (if 1–4 weeks old) for 10 days. Procaine penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg in a single daily dose for 10 days is an alternative if compliance is assured. All infants diagnosed after age 4 weeks should receive 50,000 U/kg per dose aqueous crystalline penicillin intravenously every 4–6 hours for 10 days.

Additionally, treatment should be given to infants whose mothers have inadequately treated syphilis, to those whose mothers received treatment less than 1 month before delivery, to those whose mothers have undocumented or inadequate serologic response to therapy, and to those whose mothers were given nonpenicillin drugs to treat syphilis. In these instances, if the infant is asymptomatic, has a normal physical examination, normal CSF parameters, nonreactive CSF VDRL, normal bone films, quantitative nontreponemal titer less than fourfold of the mother's titer, and good follow-up is certain, some experts would give a single dose of penicillin G benzathine, 50,000 U/kg intramuscularly. If there is any abnormality in the preceding evaluation or if the CSF testing is not interpretable, the full 10 days of intravenous penicillin should be given. Close clinical and serologic monthly follow-up is necessary.

Asymptomatic, seropositive infants with normal physical examinations born to mothers who received adequate syphilis treatment (completed > 4 weeks prior to delivery) and whose mothers have an appropriate serologic response (fourfold or greater decrease in titer) to treatment may be at lower risk for congenital syphilis. Some experts believe complete laboratory and radiographic evaluation in these infants (CSF and long bone films) is not necessary. Infants who meet the preceding criteria, who have nontreponemal titers less than fourfold higher than maternal titers, and for whom follow-ups are certain can be given benzathine penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg, administered intramuscularly in a single dose. Infants should be followed with quantitative serologic tests and physical examinations until the nontreponemal serologic test is negative (see discussion of follow-up, next). Rising titers or clinical signs usually occur within 4 months in infected infants, requiring a full evaluation (including CSF studies and long bone radiographs) and institution of intravenous penicillin therapy.

b. Follow-up for congenital syphilis—Children treated for congenital syphilis need physical examinations every 2–3 months after completion of therapy, and both physical examinations and quantitative VDRL or RPR tests should be performed until the tests become nonreactive. Repeat CSF examination, including a CSF VDRL test, every 6 months until normal is indicated for infants with a positive CSF VDRL reaction or with abnormal cell counts or protein in the CSF. A reactive CSF VDRL test at the 6-month interval is an indication for retreatment. Titers decline with treatment and are usually negative by 6 months. Repeat treatment is indicated for children with rising titers or stable titers that do not decline.

2. Acquired syphilis of less than 1 year's duration— Benzathine penicillin G (50,000 U/kg, given intramuscularly, to a maximum of 2.4 million units) is given to adolescents with primary, secondary, or latent disease of less than 1 year's duration. All children should have a CSF examination (with CSF VDRL) prior to commencing therapy, to exclude neurosyphilis. Adolescents and adults need a CSF examination if clinical signs or symptoms suggest neurologic involvement or if they are HIV-infected.

3. Syphilis of more than 1 year's duration (late latent disease)—Syphilis of more than 1 year's duration (without evidence of neurosyphilis) requires weekly intramuscular benzathine penicillin G therapy for 3 weeks. CSF examination and VDRL test should be done on all children and patients with coexisting HIV infection or neurologic symptoms. In addition, patients who have failed treatment or who were previously treated with an agent other than penicillin need a CSF examination and CSF VDRL.

4. Neurosyphilis—Aqueous crystalline penicillin G is recommended, 200,000–300,000 U/kg/d in four to six divided doses, given intravenously for 10–14 days. The maximum adult dose is 4 million units per dose. Some experts recommend following this regimen with an intramuscular course of benzathine G penicillin, 50,000 U/kg given once a week for 3 consecutive weeks, to a maximum dose of 2.4 million units.

B. General Measures

Penicillin treatment of early congenital or secondary syphilis may result in a dramatic systemic febrile illness termed the Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction. Treatment is symptomatic, with careful follow-up. Transfusion may be necessary in infants with severe hemolytic anemia.

» Prognosis

Severe disease, if undiagnosed, may be fatal in the newborn. Complete cure can be expected if the young infant is given penicillin. Serologic reversal usually occurs within 1 year.

Treatment of primary syphilis with penicillin is curative. Permanent neurologic sequelae may occur in meningovascular syphilis.

Workowski KA: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR Recomm Rep 2015 Jun 5;64(RR-03):1–137. Erratum in MMWR Recomm Rep 2015 Aug 28;64(33):924 [PMID: 26042815].

Patton ME et al: Primary and secondary syphilis—United States, 2005–2013. MMWR Morb Mortl Wkly Rep 2014;63(18);402 [PMID: 24807239].

Toltzis P: 50 years ago in the Journal of Pediatrics: congenital syphilis: a laid ghost walks. J Pediatr 2014;164(1):66 [PMID: 24359901].

RELAPSING FEVER

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Episodes of relapses fever, chills, malaise.
- Occasional rash, arthritis, cough, hepatosplenomegaly, conjunctivitis.
- Diagnosis suggested by direct microscopic identification of spirochetes in smears of peripheral blood. Diagnosis confirmed with serologic testing.

» Prevention

Measures that decrease exposures to soft ticks and body lice will prevent most cases. Soft-bodied ticks often are found in rodent burrows or nests, so decreasing rodent access to homes and eliminating rodents in the home is helpful. Body-louse infestation can be treated with hygiene and pediculicides.

» General Considerations

Relapsing fever is a vector-borne disease caused by spirochetes of the genus Borrelia. There are two forms: epidemic relapsing fever is transmitted to humans by body lice (Pediculus humanus) and endemic relapsing fever by soft-bodied ticks (genus Ornithodoros). Tick-borne relapsing fever is endemic in the western United States. Transmission usually takes place during the warm months, when ticks are active and recreation or work brings people into contact with ticks. B hermsii causes most tick-borne infection in the United States. Infection is often acquired in mountain camping areas and cabins. The ticks are nocturnal feeders and remain attached for only 5–20 minutes. Consequently, the patient seldom remembers a tick bite. Rarely, neonatal relapsing fever results from transplacental transmission of Borrelia. Both louse-borne and tick-borne relapsing fever may be acquired during foreign travel.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The incubation period is 2–18 days. The attack is sudden, with high fever, chills, sweats, tachycardia, nausea and vomiting, headache, myalgia, and arthralgia. After 3–7 days, the fever falls. Relapses occur at intervals of several days to weeks. The relapses duplicate the initial attack but become progressively less severe. In louse-borne relapsing fever, there is usually a single relapse. In tick-borne infection, 2–10 relapses occur.

Hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, pneumonitis, meningitis, and myocarditis may appear later in the course of the disease. An erythematous rash may be seen over the trunk and extremities, and petechiae may be present. Jaundice, iritis, conjunctivitis, cranial nerve palsies, and hemorrhage occur more commonly during relapses.

B. Laboratory Findings

During febrile episodes, the patient's urine contains protein, casts, and occasionally erythrocytes; a marked polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is present; about 25% of patients have a false-positive serologic test for syphilis. Spirochetes can be found in the peripheral blood by direct microscopy in approximately 70% of cases by darkfield examination or by Wright, Giemsa, or acridine orange staining of thick and thin smears. Spirochetes are not found during afebrile periods. Immunofluorescent antibody (or ELISA confirmed by Western blot) can help establish the diagnosis serologically. However, high titers of Borrelia hermsii can cross-react with Borrelia burgdorferi (the agent in Lyme disease) or Leptospira in immunofluorescent antibody assay, ELISA, and Western blots. Serologic specimens can be sent to the Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Fort Collins, CO 80522.

» Differential Diagnosis

Relapsing fever may be confused with malaria, leptospirosis, dengue, typhus, rat-bite fever, Colorado tick fever, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, collagen-vascular disease, or any fever of unknown origin.

» Complications

Complications include facial paralysis, iridocyclitis, optic atrophy, hypochromic anemia, pneumonia, nephritis, myocarditis, endocarditis, and seizures. CNS involvement occurs in 10%–30% of patients.

» Treatment

For children younger than age 8 years who have tick-borne relapsing fever, penicillin or erythromycin should be given for 10 days. Older children may be given doxycycline.

Severely ill patients should be hospitalized. Patients may experience a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (usually noted in the first few hours after commencing antibiotics). Isolation precautions are not necessary for relapsing fever. Contact precautions are recommended for patients with louse infestations.

» Prognosis

The mortality rate in treated cases of relapsing fever is very low, except in debilitated or very young children. With treatment, the initial attack is shortened and relapses prevented. The response to antimicrobial therapy is dramatic.

Centers for Disease Control: Relapsing fever. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/relapsing-fever/.
Dworkin MS et al: Tick-borne relapsing fever. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2008;22(3):449–468 [PMID: 18755384].

LEPTOSPIROSIS

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Biphasic course lasting 2–3 weeks.
- Initial phase: high fever, headache, myalgia, and conjunctivitis.
- Apparent recovery for 2–3 days.
- Return of fever associated with meningitis.
- Jaundice, hemorrhages, and renal insufficiency (severe cases).
- Positive leptospiral agglutination test.

» General Considerations

Leptospirosis is a zoonosis caused by many antigenically distinct but morphologically similar spirochetes. The organism enters through the skin or respiratory tract. Classically the severe form (Weil disease), with jaundice and a high mortality rate, was associated with infection with Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae after immersion in water contaminated with rat urine. It is now known that a variety of animals (eg, dogs, rats, and cattle) may serve as reservoirs for pathogenic Leptospira and that severe disease may be caused by many different serogroups.

In the United States, leptospirosis usually occurs after contact with dogs. Cattle, swine, or rodents may transmit the organism. Sewer workers, farmers, slaughterhouse workers, animal handlers, and soldiers are at risk for occupational exposure. Outbreaks have resulted from swimming in contaminated streams and harvesting field crops. In the United States, about 100 cases are reported yearly, about one-third of them in children.

» Prevention

Preventive measures include avoidance of contaminated water and soil, rodent control, immunization of dogs and other domestic animals, and good sanitation. Gloves, boots, and other protective clothing can be worn when contact is unavoidable. Antimicrobial prophylaxis with doxycycline may be of value to certain high-risk occupational groups with short-term exposures. Doxycycline is not approved for use in children less than 8 years of age unless benefits exceed risk.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Initial phase—The incubation period is 4–19 days (mean, 10 days). Chills, fever, headache, myalgia (especially lumbar area and calves), conjunctivitis without exudate, photophobia, cervical lymphadenopathy, and pharyngitis commonly occur. The initial leptospiremic phase lasts for 3–7 days.

2. Phase of apparent recovery—Symptoms typically (but not always) subside for 2–3 days.

3. Systemic phase—Fever reappears and is associated with headache, muscular pain, and tenderness in the abdomen and back, and nausea and vomiting. Conjunctivitis and uveitis are common. Lung, heart, and joint involvement occasionally occur. These manifestations are due to extensive vasculitis.

a. CNS involvement—The CNS is involved in 50%–90% of cases. Severe headache and mild nuchal rigidity are usual, but delirium, coma, and focal neurologic signs may be seen.

b. Renal and hepatic involvement—In about 50% of cases, the kidney or liver is affected. Gross hematuria and oliguria or anuria is sometimes seen. Jaundice may be associated with an enlarged and tender liver.

c. Gallbladder involvement—Leptospirosis may cause acalculous cholecystitis in children, demonstrable by abdominal ultrasound as a dilated, nonfunctioning gallbladder. Pancreatitis is unusual.

d. Hemorrhage—Petechiae, ecchymoses, and gastrointestinal bleeding may be severe.

e. Rash—A rash is seen in 10%–30% of cases. It may be maculopapular and generalized or may be petechial or purpuric. Occasionally erythema nodosum is seen. Peripheral desquamation of the rash may occur. Gangrenous areas are sometimes noted over the distal extremities. In such cases,

skin biopsy demonstrates the presence of severe vasculitis involving both the arterial and the venous circulations.

B. Laboratory Findings

Leptospires are present in the blood and CSF only during the first 10 days of illness. They appear in the urine during the second week, where they may persist for 30 days or longer. Culture is difficult and requires specialized media and conditions. The WBC count often is elevated, especially when there is liver involvement. Serum bilirubin levels usually remain below 20 mg/dL. Other liver function tests may be abnormal; the aspartate transaminase usually is elevated only slightly. An elevated serum creatine kinase is frequently found. CSF shows moderate pleocytosis (< 500/μL), predominantly mononuclear cells, increased protein (50–100 mg/dL), and normal glucose. Urine often shows microscopic pyuria, hematuria, and, less often, moderate proteinuria (or greater). The ESR is elevated markedly. Chest radiograph may show pneumonitis.

Serum antibodies measured by enzyme immunoassay may be demonstrated during or after the second week of illness. The confirmatory test is a microscopic agglutination test performed at the CDC. Leptospiral agglutinins generally reach peak levels by the third to fourth week. Fourfold or greater titer rise in acute and convalescent specimens is diagnostic. A PCR assay may be available at specialized research centers or through the CDC.

» Differential Diagnosis

During the prodrome, malaria, typhoid fever, typhus, rheumatoid arthritis, brucellosis, and influenza may be suspected. Later, depending on the organ systems involved, a variety of other diseases need to be distinguished, including encephalitis, viral or tuberculous meningitis, viral hepatitis, glomerulonephritis, viral or bacterial pneumonia, rheumatic fever, subacute infective endocarditis, acute surgical abdomen, and Kawasaki disease (see Table 40–3).

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Aqueous penicillin G (150,000 U/kg/d, given in four to six divided doses intravenously for 7–10 days) should be given when the diagnosis is suspected. Alternative agents include parenteral cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, or doxycycline. A Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur. Oral doxycycline may be used for mildly ill patients. Doxycycline should not be used in children less than 8 years or pregnant women.

B. General Measures

Symptomatic and supportive care, in addition to antibiotics, is indicated. Contact isolation is recommended, due to potential transmission from contact with urine.

» Prognosis

Leptospirosis is usually self-limiting and not characterized by jaundice. The disease usually lasts 1–3 weeks but may be more prolonged. Relapse may occur. There are usually no permanent sequelae associated with CNS infection, although headache may persist. The mortality rate in the United States is 5%, usually from renal failure. The mortality rate may reach 20% or more in elderly patients who have severe kidney and hepatic involvement.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Leptospirosis. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/leptospirosis/infection/index.html.

Levett P: Leptospirosis. Clin Microbiol Rev 2001;14(2):296–326 [PMID: 11292640]. Available at: http://cmr.asm.org/cgi/reprint/14/2/296.

Tubirana S et al: Risk Factors and predictors of Severe Leptospirosis in New Caledonia. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 2013;7(1):e1991. Doi 10.1271/journal.pntd.0001991 [PMID: 23326614].

LYME DISEASE

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Characteristic skin lesion (erythema migrans) 3–30 days after tick bite.
- Arthritis, usually pauciarticular, occurring about 4 weeks after appearance of skin lesion. Headache, chills, and fever.
- Residence or travel in an endemic area during the late spring to early fall.

» General Considerations

Lyme disease is a subacute or chronic spirochetal infection caused by B burgdorferi that is transmitted by an infected deer tick (Ixodes species). The disease was known in Europe for many years as tick-borne encephalomyelitis, often associated with a characteristic rash (erythema migrans). Discovery of the agent and vector followed investigation of an outbreak of pauciarticular arthritis in Lyme, Connecticut, in 1977.

The most prominent endemic areas in the United States include the Northeast, upper Midwest, and West Coast. The northern European countries also have high rates of infection. Over 30,000 confirmed or probable cases were reported in the United States in 2012. Although both under-reporting and overreporting occur, it is estimates that more than 300,000 cases per year occur in the United States. Knowledge of the local epidemiology is important as Lyme disease is common in many areas of the United States, but rare in

the mountain states. The disease is spreading as a result of increased infection in and distribution of the tick vector. Most cases with rash are recognized in spring and summer, when most tick bites occur; however, because the incubation period for joint and neurologic disease may be months, cases may present at any time. Ixodes ticks are very small, and their bite is often unrecognized.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Erythema chronicum migrans, the most characteristic feature of Lyme disease, is recognized in 60%–80% of patients. Between 3 and 30 days after the bite, a ring of erythema develops at the site and spreads over days. It may attain a diameter of 20 cm. The center of the lesion may clear (resembling tinea corporis), remain red, or become raised (suggesting a chemical or infectious cellulitis). Mild tenderness may occur. Most patients are otherwise asymptomatic. Some have fever (usually low-grade), headache, and myalgias. Multiple satellite skin lesions, urticaria, or diffuse erythema may occur. Untreated, the rash lasts days to 3 weeks.

In up to 50% of patients, arthritis develops several weeks to months after the bite. Recurrent attacks of migratory, monoarticular, or pauciarticular arthritis involving the knees and other large joints occur. Each attack lasts for days to a few weeks. Fever is common and may be high. Complete resolution between attacks is typical. Chronic arthritis develops in less than 10% of patients, more often in those with the DR4 haplotype.

Neurologic manifestations, which develop in up to 20% of untreated patients, usually consist of Bell palsy, aseptic meningitis (which may be indistinguishable from viral meningitis), or polyradiculitis. Peripheral neuritis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, encephalitis, ataxia, chorea, and other cranial neuropathies are less common. Seizures suggest another diagnosis. Untreated, the neurologic symptoms are usually self-limited but may be chronic or permanent. Self-limited heart block or myocardial dysfunction occurs in about 5% of patients.

Although fatigue and nonspecific neurologic symptoms may be prolonged in a few patients, Lyme disease is not a cause of chronic fatigue syndrome. Persistence of symptoms of fatigue, myalgia, and arthralgia for greater than 6 months are termed post-Lyme disease syndrome, but there is no evidence that chronic Lyme infection exists.

B. Laboratory Findings

Most patients with only rash have normal laboratory tests. Children with arthritis may have moderately elevated ESRs and WBC counts; the antinuclear antibodies and rheumatoid factor tests are negative or nonspecific; streptococcal antibodies are not elevated. Circulating IgM cryoglobulins may be present. Joint fluid may show up to 100,000 cells with a polymorphonuclear predominance, normal glucose, and elevated protein and immune complexes; Gram stain and culture are negative. In patients with CNS involvement, the CSF may show lymphocytic pleocytosis and elevated protein; the glucose and all cultures and stains are normal or negative. Abnormal nerve conduction may be present with peripheral neuropathy.

C. Diagnosis

Lyme disease is a clinical diagnosis. Local epidemiology, history of travel to endemic areas, physical examination, and laboratory features are important to consider. Serologic testing may support the clinical diagnosis. Antibody testing should only be performed in experienced laboratories. Serologic diagnosis of Lyme disease is based on a two-test approach: an ELISA and an immunoblot to confirm a positive or indeterminate ELISA. Antibodies may not be detectable until several weeks after infection has occurred; therefore, serologic testing in children with a typical rash is not recommended. Therapy early in disease may blunt antibody titers. Many studies have shown considerable intralaboratory and interlaboratory variability in titers reported. Serologic testing of patients with nonspecific complaints from low prevalence areas results in falsely positive tests. Overdiagnosis of Lyme disease based on atypical symptoms and positive serology appears to be common. Sera from patients with syphilis, HIV, and leptospirosis may give false-positive results. Patients who receive appropriate treatment for Lyme disease may remain seropositive for years. Diagnosis of CNS disease requires objective abnormalities of the neurologic examination, laboratory or radiographic studies, and consistent positive serology.

» Differential Diagnosis

Aside from the disorders already mentioned, the rash may resemble pityriasis, erythema multiforme, a drug eruption, or erythema nodosum. Erythema chronicum migrans is nonscaly, minimally tender or nontender, and persists longer in the same place than many of the more common childhood erythematous rashes. The arthritis may resemble juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, reactive arthritis, septic arthritis, reactive effusion from a contiguous osteomyelitis, rheumatic fever, leukemic arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and Henoch-Schönlein purpura. Spontaneous resolution in a few days to weeks helps differentiate Lyme disease from juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, in which arthritis lasting a minimum of 6 weeks is required for diagnosis. The neurologic signs may suggest idiopathic Bell palsy, viral or parainfectious meningitis or meningoencephalitis, lead poisoning, psychosomatic illness, and many other conditions.

» Prevention

Prevention consists of avoidance of endemic areas, wearing long sleeves and pants, frequent checks for ticks, and application of tick repellents. Ticks are attached for a minimum of 36–48 hours before transmission of Lyme disease occurs. Ticks should be removed with a tweezer by pulling gently without twisting or excessive squeezing of the tick. Permethrin sprayed on clothing decreases tick attachment. Repellents containing high concentrations of N, N-Diethyl-meta-toluamide (DEET) may be neurotoxic and should be used cautiously in young children and infants and washed off when tick exposure ends. Prophylactic antibiotics for tick bites in asymptomatic individuals are not usually recommended.

» Treatment

Antimicrobial therapy is beneficial in most cases of Lyme disease. It is most effective if started early. Prolonged treatment is important for all forms. Relapses occur in some patients on all regimens.

A. Rash, Early Infections

Amoxicillin, 50 mg/kg/d orally in two divided doses (to a maximum of 2 g/d) for 14–21 days can be used for children of all ages. Doxycycline (100 mg orally twice a day) for 14–21 days may be used for children older than age 8 years. Erythromycin (30 mg/kg/d) or cefuroxime (30 mg/kg/d) orally in two divided doses (maximum 1g/d) is used in penicillin-allergic children.

B. Arthritis

The amoxicillin or doxycycline regimen (same dosage as for the rash) should be used, but treatment should continue for 4 weeks. Parenteral ceftriaxone (50–75 mg/kg/d) or penicillin G (300,000 U/kg/d, given intravenously in four divided doses for 2–4 weeks) is used for persistent arthritis.

C. Bell Palsy

The same oral drug regimens may be used for 3–4 weeks.

D. Other Neurologic Disease or Cardiac Disease

Parenteral therapy for 2–4 weeks is recommended with either ceftriaxone (50–75 kg/d in one daily dose), penicillin G (300,000 U/kg/d intravenously in four divided doses), or cefotaxime (150-200 mg/kg/d) divided in three doses.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Lyme disease. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/lyme/.

Fallon BA et al: A comparison of Lyme disease serologic test results from 4 laboratories in patients with persistent symptoms after antibiotic treatment. Clin Infect Dis 2014;59(12):1705 [PMID: 25182244].

Halperin JJ et al: Common misconceptions about Lyme disease. Am J Med 2013;126(3):264 [PMID: 23321431].

Shapiro ED: Lyme Disease 2014;370(18):3724 [PMID 25119621].

Wormser GP et al: The clinical assessment, treatment and prevention of Lyme disease by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2006;43(11):1089 [PMID: 17029130].

43 Infections: Parasitic & Mycotic

Kevin Messacar, MD
Samuel R. Dominguez, MD, PhD
Myron J. Levin, MD

PARASITIC INFECTIONS

Parasitic diseases are common and may present clinically in a variety of ways (Table 43–1). Although travel to endemic areas suggests particular infections, many parasites are transmitted through fomites or acquired from contact with human carriers and can occur anywhere.

Selection of Patients for Evaluation

The incidence of parasitic infections varies greatly with geographic area. Children who have traveled or lived in areas where parasitic infections are endemic are at risk for infection with a variety of intestinal and tissue parasites. Children who have resided only in developed countries are usually free of tissue parasites (except Toxoplasma). Searching for intestinal parasites is expensive for the patient and time-consuming for the laboratory. More than 90% of ova and parasite examinations performed in the United States are negative; many have been ordered inappropriately on patients without exposure to endemic areas. An approach to determining which children with diarrhea need such examinations is presented in Figure 43–1. It can be more cost-effective to empirically treat symptomatic US immigrants with albendazole for common intestinal parasites and to investigate only those whose symptoms persist.

Immunodeficient children are very susceptible to protozoal intestinal infections. Multiple opportunists are frequently identified, and the threshold for evaluation should be low for these children.

Swanson SJ et al: Albendazole therapy and enteric parasites in United States-bound refugees. N Engl J Med 2012;366(16): 1498–1507 [PMID: 22512482].

Specimen Processing

Contact the laboratory for proper collection procedures for tissue parasites. For intestinal parasites, diarrheal stools may contain trophozoites that die rapidly during transport. The specimen should be examined immediately or placed in a stool fixative such as polyvinyl alcohol. Fixative vials for home collection of stool are commercially available and maintain specimens stable at room temperature. Formed stools usually contain cysts that are more stable. It is also best to fix these after collection, although they may be reliably examined after transport at room temperature. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) provide a website (http://dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx) to assist in the laboratory diagnosis of common parasitic diseases, including specimen collection and processing.

Eosinophilia & Parasitic Infections

Although certain parasites commonly cause eosinophilia, in developed countries other causes are much more common. These include allergies, drugs, and other infections. Heavy intestinal nematode infection causing eosinophilia is easily detected on a single ova and parasite examination. Light nematode infections and common protozoal infections—giardiasis, cryptosporidiosis, and amebiasis—rarely cause eosinophilia. Eosinophilia is also unusual or minimal in more serious infections such as amebic liver abscess and malaria.

The most common parasitic infection in the United States that causes significant eosinophilia with negative stool examination is toxocariasis. In a young child with unexplained eosinophilia and a negative stool examination for parasites, a serologic test for Toxocara is the next appropriate test. Trichinosis, which is a rare parasitic infection in the United States, causes marked eosinophilia. Strongyloidiasis

Table 43–1. Signs and symptoms of parasitic infection.

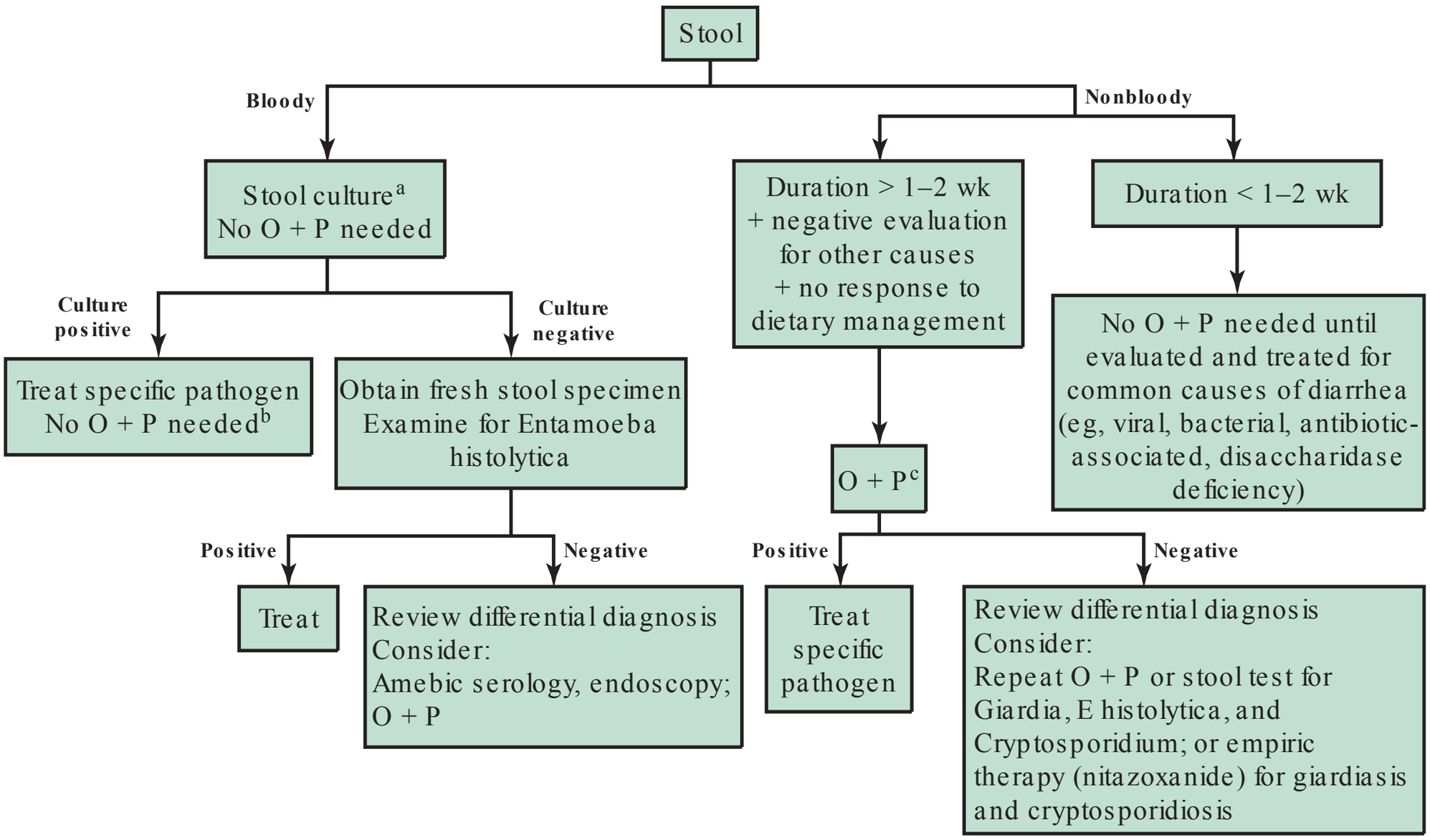
Sign/Symptom	Agent	Comments[a]
Abdominal pain	Anisakis	Shortly after raw fish ingestion.
	Ascaris	Heavy infection may obstruct bowel, biliary tract.
	Clonorchis	Heavy, early infection. Hepatomegaly later.
	Entamoeba histolytica	Hematochezia, variable fever, diarrhea.
	Fasciola hepatica	Diarrhea, vomiting.
	Hookworm	Iron deficiency anemia with heavy infection.
	Strongyloides	Eosinophilia, pruritus. May resemble peptic disease.
	Trichinella	Myalgia, periorbital edema, eosinophilia.
	Trichuris	Diarrhea, dysentery with heavy infection.
Cough	Ascaris	Wheezing, eosinophilia during migration phase.
	Paragonimus westermani	Hemoptysis; chronic. May mimic tuberculosis.
	Strongyloides	Wheezing, pruritus, eosinophilia during migration or dissemination.
	Toxocara	Affects ages 1–5 y; hepatosplenomegaly; eosinophilia.
	Tropical eosinophilia	Pulmonary infiltrates, eosinophilia.
Diarrhea	Blastocystis	Possibly with heavy infection in immunosuppressed or immunocompetent individuals.
	Cyclospora	Watery; severe in immunosuppressed individuals.
	Cryptosporidium	Watery; chronic in immunosuppressed individuals.
	Dientamoeba fragilis	Only with heavy infection.
	E histolytica	Hematochezia, variable fever; no eosinophilia.
	Giardia	Afebrile, chronic; anorexia.
	Schistosoma	Chronic; hepatosplenomegaly (some types).
	Strongyloides	Abdominal pain; eosinophilia.
	Trichinella	Myalgia, periorbital edema, eosinophilia.
	Trichuris	With heavy infection.
Dysentery	Balantidium coli	Swine contact.
	E histolytica	Few to no leukocytes in stool; fever; hematochezia.
	Schistosoma	During acute infection.
	Trichuris	With heavy infection.
Dysuria	Enterobius	Usually girls with worms in urethra, bladder; nocturnal, perianal pruritus.
	Schistosoma (S haematobium)	Hematuria. Exclude bacteriuria, stones (some types).
Headache (and other cerebral symptoms)	Angiostrongylus	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Baylisascaris procyonis	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Gnathostoma	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Naegleria	Freshwater swimming; rapidly progressive meningoencephalitis.
	Plasmodium	Fever, chills, jaundice, splenomegaly. Cerebral ischemia (with P falciparum).
	Taenia solium	Cysticercosis. Focal seizures, deficits; hydrocephalus, aseptic meningitis.
	Toxoplasma	Meningoencephalitis (especially in infants and the immunosuppressed); focal lesions in immunosuppressed; hydrocephalus in infants.
	Trypanosoma	African forms. Chronic lethargy (sleeping sickness).
Pruritus	Ancylostoma braziliense	Creeping eruption; dermal serpiginous burrow.
	Enterobius	Perianal, nocturnal.
	Filaria	Variable; seen in many filarial diseases; eosinophilia.
	Hookworm	Local at penetration site in heavy exposure.
	Strongyloides	Diffuse with migration; may be recurrent.
	Trypanosoma	African forms; one of many nonspecific symptoms.

(Continued)

Table 43–1. Signs and symptoms of parasitic infection. (Continued)

Sign/Symptom	Agent	Comments[a]
Rash	Hookworm	Pruritic, papulovesicular rash at site of penetration.
	Schistosoma	Maculopapular rash at site of penetration.
	Strongyloides	Pruritic rash at site of penetration.
	Toxoplasma	Maculopapular rash seen with congenital and sometimes acquired infection.
Anemia	Diphyllobothrium	Megaloblastic due to vitamin B_{12} deficiency; rare.
	Hookworm	Iron deficiency.
	L donovani	Fever, hepatosplenomegaly, leukopenia (kala-azar).
	Plasmodium	Hemolysis.
	Trichuris	Heavy infection; due to iron loss.
Eosinophilia	Angiostrongylus	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Baylisascaris procyonis	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Fasciola	Abdominal pain.
	Gnathostoma	Eosinophilic meningitis.
	Filaria	Microfilariae in blood; lymphadenopathy.
	Onchocerca	Skin nodules, keratitis.
	Schistosoma	Chronic; intestinal or genitourinary symptoms.
	Strongyloides	Abdominal pain, diarrhea.
	Toxocara	Hepatosplenomegaly, cough; affects ages 1–5 y.
	Trichinella	Myalgia, periorbital edema.
	Tropical pulmonary eosinophilia	Cough; pulmonary infiltrates.
	T solium (cysticercosis)	Eosinophils in CSF.
Hematuria	Schistosoma	S haematobium. Bladder, urethral granulomas. Exclude stones.
Hemoptysis	P westermani	Lung fluke. Variable chest pain; chronic.
Hepatomegaly	Clonorchis	Heavy infection. Tenderness early; cirrhosis late.
	Echinococcus	Chronic; cysts.
	E histolytica	Toxic hepatitis or abscess. No eosinophilia.
	L donovani	Splenomegaly, fever, pancytopenia.
	Schistosoma (not haematobium)	Chronic; hepatic fibrosis, splenomegaly (some types).
	Toxocara	Splenomegaly, eosinophilia, cough; no adenopathy.
Splenomegaly	L donovani	Hepatomegaly, fever, anemia.
	Plasmodium	Fever, chills, jaundice, headache.
	Schistosoma (not haematobium)	Hepatomegaly.
	Toxocara	Eosinophilia, hepatomegaly.
	Toxoplasma	Lymphadenopathy, other symptoms.
Lymphadenopathy	Filaria	Inguinal typical; chronic.
	L donovani	Hepatosplenomegaly, pancytopenia, fever.
	Schistosoma	Acute infection; fever, rash, arthralgia, hepatosplenomegaly.
	Toxoplasma	Cervical common; may involve single group of nodes; splenomegaly.
	Trypanosoma	Localized near bite or generalized; hepatosplenomegaly (Chagas disease); generalized (especially posterior cervical) in African forms.

[a]Symptoms usually related to degree of infestation. Infestation with small numbers of organisms is often asymptomatic.



O + P = Ova and parasite examination.
[a]Shigella, Salmonella, Campylobacter, Escherichia coli O 157, Yersinia: assay for Clostridium difficile toxin if recent antimicrobial use.
[b]Unless critically ill, from endemic area for amebiasis, or unresponsive to standard therapy.
[c]Include examination for Cryptosporidium and Cyclospora; immediate stool fixation needed if stool is diarrheal.

▲**Figure 43–1.** Parasitologic evaluation of acute diarrhea.

is a cause of eosinophilia that may be difficult to diagnose with stool examinations. The differential diagnosis of eosinophilia is broad for patients who have been in developing countries (see Table 43–1).

» Splenomegaly, anemia.
» Can progress to coma, seizures.
» Malaria parasites in peripheral blood smear.

PROTOZOAL INFECTIONS

SYSTEMIC INFECTIONS

1. Malaria

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Residence in or travel to an endemic area (fever in the returning traveler).
» Cyclic paroxysms of fever, chills, and intense sweating.
» Headache, backache, cough, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea.

» General Considerations

Malaria causes approximately 1 million deaths each year, over 80% of which occur in children younger than 5 years of age in sub-Saharan Africa. Global efforts toward malaria prevention and treatment have led to declining mortality and morbidity. Approximately 1500 imported cases are diagnosed in the United States each year; local transmission may occasionally take place from imported cases. Human malaria is caused by five Plasmodium species—Plasmodium vivax (most common), Plasmodium falciparum (most virulent), Plasmodium ovale (similar to P vivax), Plasmodium malariae, and Plasmodium knowlesi (a primate parasite recognized as a cause of malaria in humans).

The female Anopheles mosquito transmits the parasites. Infected mosquitoes inoculate sporozoites into the

bloodstream of a susceptible host, resulting in infection of hepatocytes. In the hepatic phase, the parasites mature into schizonts, which rupture and release merozoites into the circulation. The parasites infect and rupture red blood cells in the erythrocytic phase, as they mature from trophozoites to schizonts and release additional merozoites. In early stages of infection, asynchronous erythrocytic cycles of hemolysis commonly cause daily fevers. Eventually, synchronous erythrocytic cycles begin as parasites rupture the infected cells at more regular 48- or 72-hour intervals. Survival is associated with a progressive decrease in intensity of cycles. Relapses years later may occur from persistent hepatic infection, which occurs in P vivax and P ovale infections.

Susceptibility varies genetically; certain red cell phenotypes are partially resistant to P falciparum infection (hemoglobin S, hemoglobin F, thalassemia, and possibly glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase [G6PD] deficiency). The worldwide distribution of malaria species is determined to some extent by host genetic factors that have evolved in response to selective pressure from malaria. The absence of P vivax from Africa reflects the lack of specific Duffy blood group substances among most native Africans. Recurrent infections result in acquired species-specific immunity, which does not prevent infection, but decreases parasitemia and symptoms. Normal splenic function is an important factor because of the immunologic and filtration functions of the spleen. Asplenic persons develop rapidly progressive malaria with many circulating infected erythrocytes (including mature forms of P falciparum). Maternal immunity protects the neonate.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical manifestations vary according to species, strain, and host immunity. Fever and vomiting are the most common presenting symptoms in children. Infants commonly present with recurrent fever, irritability, poor feeding, vomiting, jaundice, and splenomegaly. Rash is usually absent, which helps distinguish malaria from some viral infections in patients presenting with similar symptoms. In older children, the classic symptoms of fever with chills, rigors, headache, backache, myalgia, and fatigue are more easily elicited. Fever may be cyclic (every 48 hours for all but P malariae infection, in which it occurs every 72 hours) or irregular (most commonly observed with P falciparum). Between attacks, patients may look quite well. If the disease is untreated, relapses cease within a year in P falciparum and within several years in P vivax infections, but may recur decades later with P malariae infection. Infection during pregnancy often causes intrauterine growth restriction or premature delivery but rarely true fetal infection.

Physical examination in patients with uncomplicated cases may show only mild splenomegaly and anemia.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis of malaria relies on detection of one or more of the five human plasmodia in thick and thin blood smears. Three separate sets of thick and thin smears separated by 12–24 hours in a 72-hour period are recommended to rule out malaria infection. Thick smears are most sensitive for detection of small numbers of malaria parasites; thin smears allow identification of species and semiquantitative determination of percentage of parasitemia.

Most acute infections are caused by P vivax, P ovale, or P falciparum, although 5%–7% are due to multiple species. Identification of the Plasmodium species relies on morphologic criteria and requires an experienced observer. Bench aids to assist in the identification of Plasmodium species can be found at http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Malaria.htm. A U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved antigen detection test is available and approved for rapid diagnostic testing of malaria. This test should be used in conjunction with microscopic examination to confirm diagnosis, look for mixed infection, and quantitate degree of parasitemia. The rapid antigen test has poor sensitivity for low levels of parasitemia. Up-to-date information on rapid diagnostic testing for malaria can be found at www.cdc.gov/malaria/diagnosis_treatment/index.html. Alternative techniques of similar or higher diagnostic accuracy for P falciparum include DNA hybridization and polymerase chain reaction (PCR), which are only available in research and reference laboratories and at CDC and some health departments.

The degree of parasitemia determined from thin smears is particularly useful in the management of infections caused by P falciparum and P knowlesi, in which high parasitemia (> 5% infected erythrocytes) is associated with high morbidity and mortality and requires hospitalization. Treatment response of P falciparum and chloroquine-resistant P vivax infections is best monitored by daily parasitemia assays. Constant or increased number of infected erythrocytes after 48 hours of treatment or after the second hemolytic crisis suggests an inadequate therapeutic response.

Hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia are common; the incidence of leukocytosis is variable.

» Differential Diagnosis

Clinical features may not reliably distinguish malaria from other infections in children, so a high index of suspicion in patients with exposure in endemic areas is necessary. The differential diagnosis of fever in a returning traveler should be based on diseases endemic to the region of travel and may include typhoid fever, tuberculosis, rickettsial disease, brucellosis, leptospirosis, yellow fever, dengue fever, chikungunya, and borreliosis. However, other common causes of fever, such as influenza, Mycoplasma pneumoniae or enteroviral infection, and serious bacterial causes such as occult sinusitis,

meningitis, pneumonia, or bacteremia should be considered. Malaria may also coexist with other diseases.

» Complications & Sequelae

Severe complications, which are limited to P falciparum and P knowlesi infection, result from hemolysis, microvascular obstruction, and tissue ischemia. The most common complications of malaria in children are cerebral malaria, respiratory distress, severe anemia, and/or hypoglycemia. Cerebral malaria, which is the most serious and life-threatening complication of malaria in children, may progress to seizures, coma, and death. Approximately 20% of children with cerebral malaria die and 10% have long-term neurologic sequelae. Signs of severe malaria in children include altered mental status, seizures, respiratory distress, hypoglycemia, acidosis, and parasitemia greater than 5%.

» Prevention

Malaria chemoprophylaxis regimens (see Chapter 45) should be instituted 2 weeks (weekly regimens) to 2 days (daily regimens) before traveling to an area of endemic infection. Because the antimalarial drugs recommended for prophylaxis do not kill sporozoites, therapy should be continued for 1 week (atovaquone-proguanil) or 4 weeks (all other regimens) after returning from an endemic area to cover infection acquired at departure.

No drug regimen guarantees protection against malaria. If fever develops within 1 year (particularly within 2 months) after travel to an endemic area, the possibility of malaria should be considered. Insect repellents, insecticide-impregnated bed nets, and proper clothing are important adjuncts for malaria prophylaxis.

» Treatment

Treatment for malaria includes a variety of supportive strategies in addition to the antimalarial drugs. It is advisable to hospitalize nonimmune patients infected with P falciparum and P knowlesi until a decrease in parasitemia is demonstrated, indicating that treatment is effective and severe complications are unlikely to occur. Patients with signs of severe malaria (parasitemia > 5%, cerebral malaria, acidosis, hypoglycemia, shock) require intensive care and parenteral treatment. Malaria due to P knowlesi should be treated like P falciparum malaria as it might progress rapidly into severe disease.

Partially immune patients with uncomplicated P falciparum and P knowlesi infection and nonimmune persons infected with P vivax, P ovale, or P malariae can receive outpatient treatment if follow-up is reliable. For children, hydration and treatment of hypoglycemia are of utmost importance. Anemia, seizures, pulmonary edema, and renal failure require conventional management. Corticosteroids are contraindicated for cerebral malaria because of increased mortality. As of 2013, exchange transfusion is no longer recommended by the CDC for the treatment of severe malaria.

Choice of antimalarial treatment depends on the immune status of the person, plasmodium species, degree of parasitemia, and resistance patterns in the geographical region of acquisition. An algorithm for the treatment of malaria is shown in Figure 43–2 and a description of the recommended antimalarial drugs available in the United States with updated treatment guidelines is available at the CDC website (http://www.cdc.gov/malaria/diagnosis_treatment/treatment.html). Artemisinin derivatives clear parasites very rapidly and are widely used as key components, often as first-line therapy, in malaria treatment worldwide. These are available in the United States for the treatment of severe malaria only by contacting the CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/malaria/diagnosis_treatment/artesunate.html) or the Malaria Hotline at 770-488-7788.

Crawley J et al: Malaria in children. Lancet 2010;375:1468–1481 [PMID: 20417858].

Esu E et al: Artemether for severe malaria. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;9:CD010678 [PMID: 25209020]. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD010678.pub2.

Griffith KS et al: Treatment of malaria in the United States. JAMA 2007;297:2264 [PMID: 17519416].

http://www.cdc.gov/malaria/.

http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Malaria.htm/.

http://www.who.int/malaria/diagnosis_treatment/.

Rosenthal PJ: Artesunate for the treatment of severe falciparum malaria. N Engl J Med 2008;358:1829–1836 [PMID: 18434652].

Tan KR et al: Exchange transfusion for severe malaria: evidence base and literature review. Clin Infect Dis 2013;57(7):923–928 [PMID: 23800940].

Taylor SM et al: Does this patient have malaria? JAMA 2010;304:2048–2056 [PMID: 21057136].

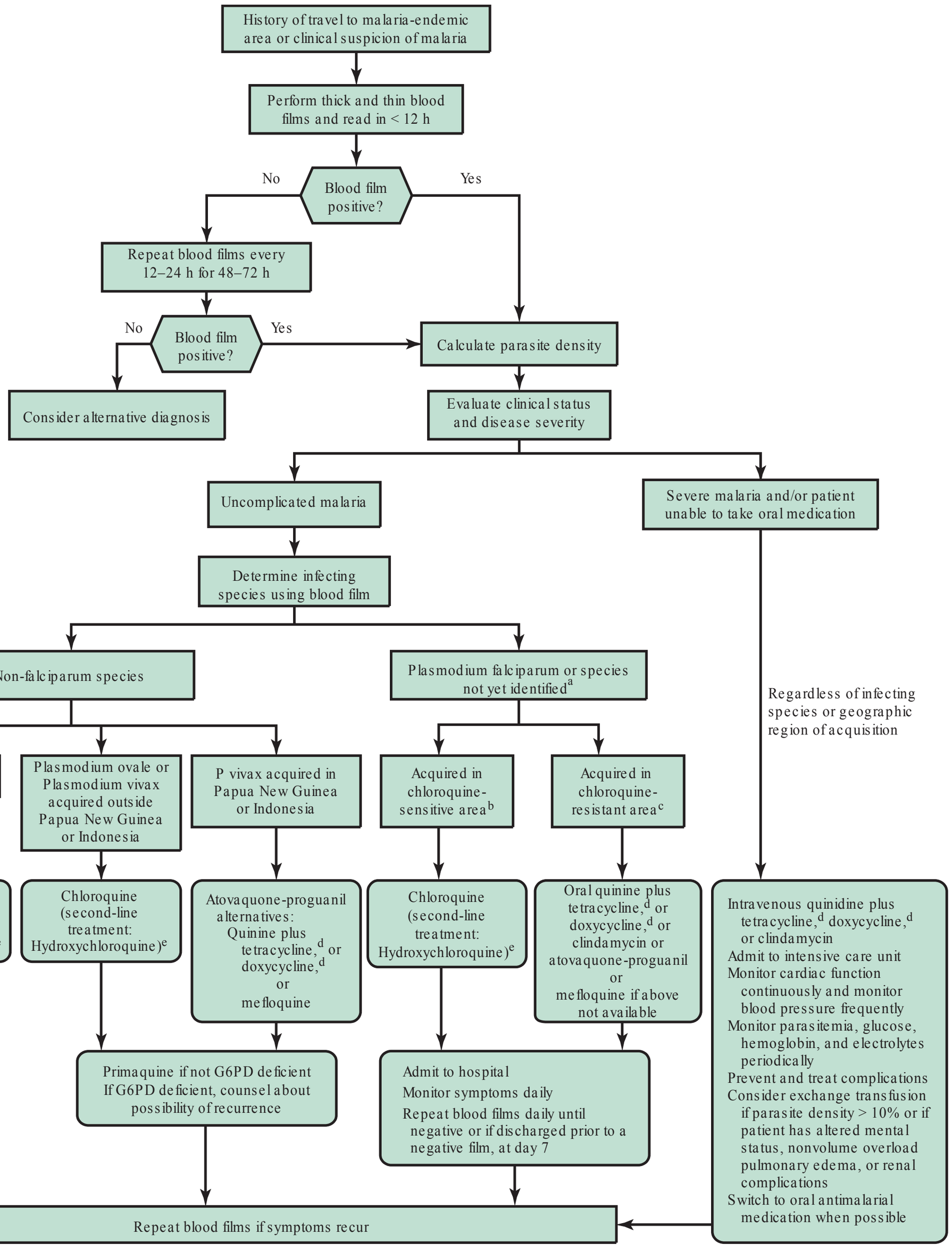
2. Babesiosis

Babesia microti is a malaria-like protozoan that infects humans bitten by infected Ixodes scapularis (deer tick), one of its intermediate hosts and vectors. After inoculation, the protozoan penetrates erythrocytes and starts an asynchronous cycle that causes hemolysis. In the United States, the majority of cases occur in the Northeast and upper Midwest from May to October. Babesia infection is also a transfusion-transmissible disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The incubation period is 1–4 weeks after tick bite, or 1–9 weeks after blood transfusion. Many times the tick bite is unnoticed. Approximately half of infected children are asymptomatic. Symptoms are nonspecific and most commonly include sustained or cyclic fever up to 40.9°C, shaking chills, and sweats. Other associated nonspecific symptoms include malaise,



[a]If species not yet identified is subsequently diagnosed as a non-falciparum infection, then complete treatment as per the identified species recommendations. G6PD indicates glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase.
[b]Central America west of the Panama Canal, Mexico, Hispaniola, parts of China, and the Middle East.
[c]All malaria-endemic countries except those listed in second footnote.
[d]Contraindicated in pregnant women and children younger than 8 years of age.
[e]Drug options for chloroquine-resistant P falciparum may also be used if chloroquine or hydroxychloroquine cannot be used.

▲**Figure 43–2.** Malaria treatment algorithm. (Adapted with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Malaria.)

fatigue, anorexia, arthralgias, myalgias, and headache. Physical examination findings are usually minimal, but may include hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, or dark urine. The disease is usually self-limited, causing symptoms for 1–2 weeks with fatigue that may persist for months. Severe cases have been described in asplenic patients and immunocompromised hosts. Because Babesia, Borrelia burgdorferi, and Anaplasma phagocytophilum share a common vector, physicians should consider the possibility of coinfection in patients diagnosed with any of these pathogens.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is made by identifying babesial parasites in blood by microscopic evaluation of thin or thick blood smears or by PCR amplification of babesial DNA. Babesia parasites are intraerythrocytic organisms that resemble P falciparum ring forms. The tetrad form (Maltese cross), if visualized, is pathognomonic. Specific serologic tests are also available through the CDC. Hemolytic anemia, as well as thrombocytopenia, is common.

» Treatment

Azithromycin (10 mg/kg up to 500 mg on the first day, followed by 5 mg/kg up to 250 mg/day) in combination with atovaquone (20 mg/kg, up to 750 mg, twice a day) for 7–10 days is the treatment of choice for mild to moderate disease. This is efficacious and causes fewer adverse side effects than other regimens. For severely ill patients, clindamycin (10 mg/kg, up to 600 mg, every 8 hours) in combination with quinine (8 mg/kg, up to 650 mg, every 8 hours) is standard of care. Longer courses of treatment may be needed in immunocompromised patients. Partial or complete RBC exchange transfusion is indicated for persons with severe babesiosis, as indicated by high-grade parasitemia (≥ 10%); significant hemolysis; or renal, hepatic, or pulmonary compromise.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/babesiosis/.
http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Babesiosis.htm.
Vannier E, Krause PJ: Human babesiosis. N Engl J Med 2012;366:2397–2407 [PMID: 22716978].

3. Toxoplasmosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Congenital toxoplasmosis: chorioretinitis, microphthalmia, strabismus, microcephaly, hydrocephaly, convulsions, psychomotor retardation, intracranial calcifications, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, abnormal blood cell counts.
- Acquired toxoplasmosis in an immunocompetent host: lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, rash.
- Acquired or reactivated toxoplasmosis in an immunocompromised host: encephalitis, chorioretinitis, myocarditis, and pneumonitis.
- Ocular toxoplasmosis: chorioretinitis.
- Serologic evidence of infection with Toxoplasma gondii or demonstration of the agent in tissue or body fluids.

» General Considerations

Toxoplasma gondii is a worldwide parasite of animals and birds. Felines, the definitive hosts, excrete oocysts in their feces. Ingested mature oocysts or tissue cysts lead to tachyzoite invasion of intestinal cells. Intracellular replication of the tachyzoites causes cell lysis and spread of the infection to adjacent cells or to other tissues via the bloodstream. In chronic infection, T gondii appears as bradyzoite-containing tissue cysts that do not trigger an inflammatory reaction. In immunocompromised hosts, tachyzoites are released from cysts and begin a new cycle of infection.

The two major routes of Toxoplasma transmission to humans are oral and congenital. Oral infection occurs after ingestion of cysts from food, water, or soil contaminated with cat feces or from ingestion of undercooked meat or other food products that contain cysts. Oocysts survive up to 18 months in moist soil but is limited in dry, very cold, or very hot conditions and at high altitude, which probably accounts for the lower incidence of toxoplasmosis in these climatic regions. In the United States, less than 1% of cattle and 25% of sheep and pigs are infected with toxoplasmosis. In humans, depending on geographic area, seropositivity increases with age from 0 to 10% in children younger than 10 years to 3%–70% in adults.

Congenital transmission occurs during acute infection of pregnant women. Rarely, fetal infection has been documented in immunocompromised mothers who have chronic toxoplasmosis. Treatment during pregnancy decreases transmission by 60%.

» Clinical Findings

Clinical toxoplasmosis can be divided into four groups: (1) congenital infection, (2) infection acquired in the immunocompetent host, (3) infection acquired or reactivated in the immunocompromised host, and (4) ocular disease.

A. Congenital Toxoplasmosis

Congenital toxoplasmosis, which is the result of acute infection during pregnancy, occurs in 1 in 3000 to 10,000 live births in the United States. The rate of transmission and disease severity in the baby vary according to when in pregnancy the infection is acquired. First-trimester infections lead to

congenital infections about 10%–20% of the time, but the clinical disease is severe with microcephaly or hydrocephaly, severe chorioretinitis, hearing loss, convulsions, abnormal cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (xanthochromia and mononuclear pleocytosis), cerebral calcifications, and mental retardation. Other findings include strabismus, eye palsy, maculopapular rash, pneumonitis, myocarditis, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, thrombocytopenia, lymphocytosis and monocytosis, and an erythroblastosis-like syndrome. Infection of a mother in the third trimester results in a 70%–90% rate of congenital infection, but the majority of these children are asymptomatic at birth, although many will develop ocular disease later and some will have subtle neurologic deficits.

B. Acquired Toxoplasma Infection in the Immunocompetent Host

Typically, acquired infection in the immunocompetent host is asymptomatic. About 10%–20% of patients develop an infectious mononucleosis-like syndrome with lymphadenopathy and/or a flu-like illness. The nodes are discrete, variably tender, and do not suppurate. Cervical lymph nodes are most frequently involved, but any nodes may be enlarged. Less common findings include fever, malaise, myalgias, fatigue, hepatosplenomegaly, lymphopenia (usually < 10%), and liver enzyme elevations. Unilateral chorioretinitis may occur. Recovery typically occurs without any specific antiparasitic treatment, although lymph node enlargement may persist or may wax and wane for a few months to 1 or more years.

C. Acute Toxoplasmosis in the Immunodeficient Host

Patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and those with lymphoma, leukemia, or transplantation, are at high risk for developing severe disease (most commonly central nervous system [CNS] disease, but also chorioretinitis, myocarditis, or pneumonitis) following acute infection or reactivation. Toxoplasmic encephalitis is a common cause of mass lesions in the brains of persons with HIV/AIDS.

D. Ocular Toxoplasmosis

Ocular toxoplasmosis is an important cause of chorioretinitis in the United States. It results from reactivation of congenital infection or acquired infection. Congenitally infected individuals are usually asymptomatic until the second or third decade of life when symptomatic eye disease occurs due to the rupture of tissue cysts and the release of bradyzoites and tachyzoites into the retina. Typically, ocular toxoplasmosis presents as a focal necrotizing retinochoroiditis often associated with a preexistent chorioretinal scar, and variable involvement of the vitreous, retinal blood vessels, optic nerve, and anterior segment of the eye. The appearance of the ocular lesion is not specific and mimics other granulomatous ocular diseases.

E. Diagnostic Findings

Serologic tests are the primary means of diagnosis, but results must be interpreted carefully. Reference laboratories with special expertise in toxoplasma serologic assays and their interpretation are preferred for establishing a diagnosis. Active infection can also be diagnosed by PCR of blood or body fluids; by visualization of tachyzoites in histologic sections or cytology preparations, cysts in placenta or fetal tissues; or by characteristic lymph node histology. IgG antibodies become detectable 1–2 weeks after infection, peak at 1–2 months, and thereafter persist for life. IgM antibodies, measured by ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) or particle agglutination, appear earlier and decline faster than IgG antibodies, but can last for 12–18 months after acute infection. Absence of both serum IgG and IgM virtually rules out the diagnosis of toxoplasmosis. Acute toxoplasmosis in an immunocompetent host is best documented by analyzing IgG and IgM in paired blood samples drawn 3 weeks apart. Because high antibody titers (IgM or IgG) can persist for several months after acute infection, a single high-titer determination is nondiagnostic; seroconversion or a fourfold increase in titer confirms the diagnosis. In the immunocompromised host, serologic tests are not sensitive, and active infection is documented by PCR or finding tachyzoites by histologic examination.

The diagnosis of toxoplasmosis in the older child with visual complaints is usually made by finding T gondii IgG or IgM antibodies in the serum combined with the presence of a typical eye lesion. The diagnosis can be confirmed by detecting T gondii DNA by PCR in the aqueous humor.

Diagnosis of congenital infection can be difficult and is made by a combination of serologic testing, parasite isolation, and clinical findings. Prenatally, diagnosis can be made by PCR of amniotic fluid. Postnatally, evaluation of the baby should include Toxoplasma-specific IgG, IgM, IgA, and IgE of the newborn and mother. A congenital infection is confirmed serologically by detecting persistent or increasing IgG antibody levels compared to the mother, persistently positive IgG antibodies beyond the first year of life, and/or a positive T gondii–specific IgM or IgA antibody test. Persistence of the other antibodies also indicates infection of the infant. Blood, CSF, and amniotic fluid specimens should be assayed by PCR for the presence of T gondii in a reference laboratory. In addition, the child should have thorough ophthalmologic, auditory, and neurologic evaluation; a lumbar puncture; and computed tomographic (CT) scan of the head (to detect CNS calcifications).

» Differential Diagnosis

Congenital toxoplasmosis must be differentiated from infection with cytomegalovirus, rubella, herpes simplex, syphilis, listeriosis, erythroblastosis, and the encephalopathies that accompany degenerative diseases. Acquired infection can

mimic viral, bacterial, or lymphoproliferative disorders. Ocular toxoplasmosis can mimic other infectious, noninfectious, and neoplastic ocular conditions.

» Prevention

Primary prevention of toxoplasmosis in pregnant women (and immunocompromised patients) is an essential public health goal and guidelines have been published by the CDC. These include (1) cook meat until well-done 145–165°F (no longer pink in center); (2) peel and/or wash fruits and vegetables thoroughly before eating; (3) wash hands, cutting boards, kitchen surfaces, and utensils after contact with raw meat; (4) avoid drinking untreated water from unsanitary sources; (5) wear gloves when gardening or coming in contact with soil or sand, as cat feces may contaminate them; and (6) pregnant women should avoid changing cat litter. If they cannot avoid changing cat litter, they should change it daily as oocysts require 48–72 hours to sporulate and become infectious. Serologic screening of pregnant women remains a controversial tool in the prevention of congenital toxoplasmosis.

» Treatment

Treatment of acute toxoplasmosis in the immunocompetent host does not require specific therapy, unless the infection occurs during pregnancy. Toxoplasmic chorioretinitis presenting beyond infancy is treated the same way regardless of whether it is due to reactivation or primary infection. Treatment consists of oral pyrimethamine (2 mg/kg maximum, 200 mg loading dose followed by 1 mg/kg daily [maximum 75 mg]) plus sulfadiazine (100 mg/kg daily, maximum 1500 mg), given with leucovorin (10–20 mg three times a week). In addition, corticosteroids (prednisone 1 mg/kg daily) are given when lesions threaten vision. Treatment is given for 1–2 weeks after the resolution of symptoms. The duration of additional therapy should be guided by frequent ophthalmologic examinations. Pyrimethamine can cause gastrointestinal upset, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and rarely, agranulocytosis; weekly complete blood counts should be checked while on therapy.

A year of treatment is recommended for all congenitally infected infants. Children treated with pyrimethamine (loading dose 2 mg/kg daily for 2 days followed by 1 mg/kg daily for 6 months followed by 1 mg/kg every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday for 6 months) plus sulfadiazine (100 mg/kg divided twice daily for 12 months) plus leucovorin (10 mg 3 times a week) have better neurodevelopmental and visual outcomes than historical controls. While on therapy, infants should be monitored for bone marrow toxicity.

In primary maternal infection during the first 18 weeks of pregnancy, spiramycin is recommended to attempt to prevent fetal infection. Spiramycin does not cross the placenta, so does not treat fetal infection. If fetal infection has been documented or if primary maternal infection occurs after the first 18 weeks of pregnancy, pyrimethamine, sulfadiazine, and leucovorin are recommended. Pyrimethamine is teratogenic and should not be used before 18 weeks of gestation.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/toxoplasmosis/.

McAuley JB: Toxoplasmosis in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2008;27:161–162 [PMID: 18227714].

Montoya JG, Remington JS: Management of Toxoplasma gondii infection during pregnancy. Clin Infect Dis 2008;47(4):554–566 [PMID: 18624630].

Olariu TR et al: Severe congenital toxoplasmosis in the United States: clinical and serologic findings in untreated infants. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2011;30(12):1056–1061 [PMID: 21956696].

Vasconcelos-Santos DV et al: Review for disease of the year: differential diagnosis of ocular toxoplasmosis. Ocul Immunol Inflamm 2011;19:171–179 [PMID: 21595533].

GASTROINTESTINAL INFECTIONS

1. Amebiasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Acute dysentery: diarrhea with blood and mucus, abdominal pain, tenesmus.

Or

» Chronic nondysenteric diarrhea.

Or

» Hepatic abscess.

» Amoebas or cysts in stool or abscesses; amebic antigen in stool.

» Serologic evidence of amebic infection.

» General Considerations

Amebiasis is defined as an infection with Entamoeba histolytica regardless of symptoms. This parasite is found worldwide, but has a particularly high prevalence in areas with poor sanitation and socioeconomic conditions. In the United States, infections are seen in travelers to and emigrants from endemic areas. The majority of infections are asymptomatic (> 90%), but tissue invasion can result in amebic colitis, hepatic abscess, and hematogenous spread to other organs. Transmission is usually fecal-oral. Infections with two other Entamoeba species, E dispar and E moshkovskii, are morphologically indistinguishable from

E histolytica. Infections with these species are approximately 10 times more common than infection with E histolytica, but are not thought to cause human disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with intestinal amebiasis can have asymptomatic cyst passage, or be symptomatic with acute amebic proctocolitis, chronic nondysenteric colitis, or ameboma. Because all E dispar and E moshkovskii infections and up to 90% of E histolytica infections are asymptomatic, carriage is the most common manifestation of amebiasis. Patients with acute amebic colitis typically have a 1- to 2-week history of loose stools containing blood and mucus, abdominal pain, and tenesmus. A minority of patients are febrile or dehydrated. Abdominal examination may reveal pain over the lower abdomen.

Fulminant colitis is an unusual complication of amebic dysentery that is associated with a grave prognosis (> 50% mortality), and is characterized by severe bloody diarrhea, fever, and diffuse abdominal pain. Children younger than age 2 years are at increased risk for this condition. Chronic amebic colitis causes recurrent episodes of bloody diarrhea over a period of years and is clinically indistinguishable from idiopathic inflammatory bowel disease. An ameboma is a localized amebic infection, usually in the cecum or ascending colon, which presents as a painful abdominal mass.

The most common complications of intestinal amebiasis are intestinal perforation, toxic megacolon, and peritonitis. Perianal ulcers, a less common complication, are painful, punched-out lesions that usually respond to medical therapy. Infrequently, colonic strictures may develop following colitis.

Patients with amebic liver abscess, the most common form of extraintestinal amebiasis, typically present with acute fever and right upper quadrant tenderness. The pain may be dull, pleuritic, or referred to the right shoulder. Physical examination reveals liver enlargement in less than 50% of affected patients. Some patients have a subacute presentation lasting 2 weeks to 6 months. In these patients, hepatomegaly, anemia, and weight loss are common findings, and fever is less common. Jaundice and diarrhea are rarely associated with an amebic liver abscess. In children with fever of unknown origin who live in, or travel to, endemic areas, amebic liver abscess should be considered in the differential diagnosis.

The most common complication of amebic liver abscess is pleuropulmonary amebiasis due to rupture of a right liver lobe abscess. Lung abscesses may occur from hematogenous spread. Cough, dyspnea, and pleuritic pain can be caused by the serous pleural effusions and atelectasis that frequently accompany amebic liver abscesses. Rupture of hepatic abscesses can lead to peritonitis and more rarely to pericarditis. Amebic brain abscess is an infrequent manifestation.

B. Diagnostic Findings

The differential diagnosis of acute amebic colitis includes bacterial (eg, Salmonella spp, Shigella spp, E coli spp, Campylobacter spp), parastitic (eg, Schistosoma mansoni, Balantidium coli), and noninfectious (eg, inflammatory bowel disease, diverticulitis, ischemic colitis) causes of dysentery. Chronic amebic colitis has to be distinguished from inflammatory bowel disease and Cyclospora. Liver abscess must be distinguished from echinococcal hydatid cyst. Occult blood is present in virtually all cases of amebic colitis and can be used as an inexpensive screening test. Fecal leukocytes are uncommon.

Intestinal amebiasis can be presumptively diagnosed by detecting the parasite on stool examination or mucosal biopsy. However, E histolytica is morphologically identical to nonpathogenic E dispar and E moshkovskii and cannot be easily differentiated by microscopy. The presence of trophozoites with ingested red blood cells in feces is more suggestive of pathogenic E histolytica infection. Ideally, a wet mount preparation of the stool should be examined within 20 minutes after collection to detect motile trophozoites. Otherwise, specimens should be fixed with polyvinyl alcohol or refrigerated to avoid disintegration of the trophozoites. The antigen detection test for stool is very sensitive and more specific, because it detects E histolytica–specific antigens that do not cross-react with E dispar. Colonoscopy and biopsy are most helpful in diagnosing amebic colitis when stool samples lack ova or parasites. Barium studies are contraindicated for patients with suspected acute amebic colitis due to risk of perforation.

The presence of antibodies against E histolytica can differentiate E histolytica from E dispar infections. Specific antibody is induced by both intestinal and extraintestinal invasive amebiasis. ELISA assays are positive in approximately 95% of patients with extraintestinal amebiasis, 70% with intestinal E histolytica disease, and 10% of asymptomatic patients shedding E histolytica cysts. However, these antibodies persist for years, and a positive result does not distinguish between acute and past infection. Antibody testing can be useful in a traveler from a nonendemic area who is returning from a trip to an endemic area. Ultrasonographic examination and CT are sensitive techniques to detect hepatic abscesses and can be used to guide fine-needle aspiration to obtain specimens for definitive diagnosis. Because an amebic abscess may take up to 2 years to completely resolve on CT scans, imaging techniques are not recommended for therapeutic evaluation. PCR-based testing has the highest sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of E histolytica, but is only available in certain research and reference laboratories.

Table 43–2. Treatment of amebiasis.

Type of Infection	Drug of Choice	Dosage
Asymptomatic	Paromomycin	25–35 mg/kg/d in three doses for 7 d
	or	
	Iodoquinol	30–40 mg/kg/d (maximum, 2 g) in three doses for 20 d
	or	
	Diloxanide furoate[a]	20 mg/kg/d up to 1.5 g/d in three doses for 10 d
Intestinal disease and hepatic abscess[b]	Metronidazole	35–50 mg/kg/d up to 2.25 g/d in three doses for 10 d
	or	
	Tinidazole[c]	50 or 60 mg/kg up to 2 g/d for 3 d

[a]Diloxanide furoate is available from the CDC Drug Service: (404) 639–3670.
[b]Treatment should be followed by iodoquinol or paromomycin.
[c]Not marketed in the United States; higher dosage.

» Prevention & Treatment

Travelers to endemic areas should drink bottled or boiled water and eat cooked or peeled vegetables and fruits to prevent enteric infection.

Treatment of amebic infection is complex because different agents are required for eradicating the parasite from the bowel or tissue (Table 43–2). Whether treatment of asymptomatic cyst passers is indicated is controversial. The prevalent opinion is that asymptomatic infection with E histolytica, as evidenced by amebic cysts in the stool and a positive serologic test, should be treated in nonendemic areas. If serologic tests are negative, the cysts are more likely to represent infection with the nonpathogenic E dispar, which does not require treatment.

Asymptomatic E histolytica cyst excreters may be treated with paromomycin, a nonabsorbable intraluminal amebicide. Diloxanide and iodoquinol are alternative intraluminal agents. Metronidazole is not effective against cysts.

Patients with symptomatic intestinal amebiasis or extraintestinal disease require treatment with an absorbable agent, such as metronidazole or tinidazole, followed by an intraluminal agent. Metronidazole has a disulfiram-like effect and should be avoided in patients receiving ethanol-containing medications. Tinidazole, a more potent nitroimidazole against amebic infection, can be used for shorter treatment courses and is well tolerated in children. Treatment of invasive amebiasis should always be followed with an intraluminal cysticidal agent, even if the stool examination is negative. Metronidazole and paromomycin should not be given concurrently, because the diarrhea that is a common side effect of paromomycin may make it difficult to assess response to therapy. In most patients with amebic liver abscess, aspiration is unnecessary and does not speed recovery. Patients with large, thin-walled hepatic abscesses may need therapeutic aspiration to avoid abscess rupture. Drainage may also be considered when response to medical therapy is inadequate.

Fotedar R et al: Laboratory diagnostic techniques for Entamoeba species. Clin Micro Rev 2007;20:511–532 [PMID: 17630338].
Haque R et al: Amebiasis. N Engl J Med 2003;348:1565–1573 [PMID: 12700377].
http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/html/amebiasis.htm.
Stanley SL et al: Amoebiasis. Lancet 2003;361:1025–1034 [PMID: 12660071].

2. Giardiasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Chronic relapsing diarrhea, flatulence, bloating, anorexia, poor weight gain.
- No fever or hematochezia.
- Detection of trophozoites, cysts, or Giardia antigens in stool.

» General Considerations

Giardiasis, caused by Giardia intestinalis (formerly Giardia lamblia), is the most common intestinal protozoal infection in children in the United States and in most of the world. The infection is classically associated with drinking contaminated water, either in rural areas or in areas with faulty purification systems. Even ostensibly clean urban water supplies can be contaminated intermittently, and infection has been acquired in swimming pools. Fecal-oral contamination allows person-to-person spread. Day care centers are a major source of infection. No symptoms occur in 25% of infected persons, facilitating spread to household contacts. Food-borne outbreaks also occur. Giardiasis may occur at any age, although infection is rare in neonates.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Giardia infection is followed by either asymptomatic cyst passage, acute self-limited diarrhea, or a chronic syndrome of diarrhea, malabsorption, and weight loss. Acute diarrhea

occurs 1–2 weeks after infection and is characterized by abrupt onset of diarrhea with greasy, malodorous stools; malaise; flatulence; bloating; and nausea. Fever and vomiting are unusual. The disease has a protracted course (> 1 week) and frequently leads to weight loss. Giardiasis can be a self-limited infection in some patients, and in others cause chronic symptoms. Patients who develop chronic diarrhea complain of profound malaise, lassitude, headache, and diffuse abdominal pain in association with bouts of diarrhea—most typically foul-smelling, greasy stools—intercalated with periods of constipation or normal bowel habits. This syndrome can persist for months until specific therapy is administered or until it subsides spontaneously. Chronic diarrhea frequently leads to malabsorption, steatorrhea, vitamins A and B_{12} deficiencies, and disaccharidase depletion. Lactose intolerance, which develops in 20%–40% of patients can persist for several weeks after treatment, and needs to be differentiated from relapsing giardiasis or reinfection.

B. Laboratory Findings

Giardia antigen detection by means of ELISAs, nonenzymatic immunoassays, and direct fluorescence antibody tests are the standard diagnostic tests in the United States. They have a more rapid return of results, and are more sensitive and specific than stool ova and parasite examination. In resource-poor areas without access to antigen tests, the diagnosis of giardiasis can be made by finding the parasite in stool. For ova and parasite examination, a fresh stool provides the best results. Liquid stools have the highest yield of trophozoites, which are more readily found on wet mounts. With semiformed stools, the examiner should look for cysts in fresh or fixed specimens, preferably using a concentration technique. When these techniques are applied carefully, one examination has a sensitivity of 50%–70%; three examinations increase the sensitivity to 90%. With a careful stool ova and parasite examination or with the use of a new antigen test, direct sampling of duodenal aspirates or biopsy is restricted to particularly difficult cases.

» Prevention

The prevention of giardiasis requires proper treatment of water supplies and interruption of person-to-person transmission. Where water might be contaminated, travelers, campers, and hikers should use methods to make water safe for drinking. Boiling is the most reliable method; the necessary time of boiling (1 minute at sea level) will depend on the altitude. Chemical disinfection with iodine or chlorine and filtration are alternative methods of water treatment.

Interrupting fecal-oral transmission requires strict hand washing. However, outbreaks of diarrhea in day care centers might be particularly difficult to eradicate. Reinforcing hand washing and treating the disease in both symptomatic and asymptomatic carriers may be necessary.

» Treatment

Metronidazole, tinidazole, and nitazoxanide are the drugs of choice for treatment of giardiasis. When given at 5 mg/kg (up to 250 mg) three times a day for 5–7 days, metronidazole has 80%–95% efficacy. The drug is well tolerated in children. Tinidazole has an efficacy approaching 90% when given as a single dose of 50 mg/kg (up to 2 g). Nitazoxanide is available in liquid formulation and requires only 3 days of treatment. Recommended doses are 100 mg (5 mL) every 12 hours for children 12–47 months of age, 200 mg every 12 hours for 4- to 11-year-olds, and 500 mg every 12 hours for children 12 years or older. For patients who do not respond to therapy, or are reinfected, a second course with the same drug or switching to another drug is equally effective. In cases of repeated treatment failure, albendazole (400 mg/d for 5–10 days), although not specifically recommended in the United States for the treatment of giardiasis, is an effective option.

Escobedo AA et al: Giardiasis: the ever-present threat of a neglected disease. Infect Disord Drug Targets 2010;10(5):329–348 [PMID: 20701575].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/giardia/.

Huang DB et al: An updated review on Cryptosporidium and Giardia. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2006;35:291 [PMID: 16880067].

3. Cryptosporidiosis

Cryptosporidia are intracellular protozoa that gained importance because they cause severe and devastating diarrhea in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and in other immunodeficient persons. This ubiquitous parasite infects and reproduces in the epithelial cell lining of the digestive and respiratory tracts of humans and most other vertebrate animals. Humans acquire the infection from contaminated drinking water, recreation water sources (including swimming pools, fountains, and lake water), or from close contact with infected humans or animals. Cryptosporidia are the leading cause of recreational water-associated outbreaks in the United States. Petting zoos and day care centers have been other sources of Cryptosporidia outbreaks. Most human infections are caused by C parvum or C hominis, although other species have been reported to cause human disease.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Immunocompetent persons infected with Cryptosporidium spp usually develop self-limited diarrhea (2–26 days) with

or without abdominal cramps. Diarrhea can be mild and intermittent or continuous, watery, and voluminous. Low-grade fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, and malaise may accompany the diarrhea. Children younger than age 2 years are more susceptible to infection than older children. Immunocompromised patients (either cellular or humoral deficiency) tend to develop a severe, prolonged, chronic diarrhea which can result in severe malnutrition, and subsides only after the immunodeficiency is corrected. Other clinical manifestations associated with cryptosporidiosis in immunocompromised hosts include cholecystitis, pancreatitis, hepatitis, biliary tree involvement, and respiratory symptoms.

B. Laboratory Findings

Visualization of Cryptosporodia oocysts in the stool is diagnostic. Direct immunofluorescent antibody (DFA) of stool is the test of choice for visualizing oocysts. Oocysts can also be visualized with a modified Kinyoun acid-fast stain on concentrated stool. ELISA and point-of-care rapid tests are commercially available and superior to conventional microscopy.

» Prevention & Treatment

Prevention of Cryptosporidium infection is limited by oocyst resistance to some of the standard water purification procedures and to common disinfectants. Enteric precautions are recommended for infected persons. Boiled or bottled drinking water may be considered for those at high risk for developing chronic infection (eg, inadequately treated patients with AIDS).

Immunocompetent patients and those with temporary immunodeficiencies respond to treatment with nitazoxanide, antidiarrheal agents, and hydration. Immunocompromised patients usually require more intense supportive care with parenteral nutrition in addition to hydration and nonspecific antidiarrheal agents. Nitazoxanide for 3 days is the treatment of choice; recommended doses are 100 mg (5 mL) every 12 hours for children 12–47 months of age, 200 mg every 12 hours for 4- to 11-year-olds, and 500 mg every 12 hours for children 12 years or older. For patients with advanced AIDS, antiparasitic therapy alone has not proven efficacious. Institution of effective antiretroviral therapy results in elimination of symptomatic cryptosporidiosis.

Cabada MM et al: Treatement of cryptosporidiosis: do we know what we think we know? Curr Opin Infect Dis 2010;23:494–499 [PMID: 20689422].

Davies AP et al: Cryptosporidiosis. BMJ 2009;399:963–967 [PMID: 19841008].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/crypto/.

Huang DB et al: An updated review on Cryptosporidium and Giardia. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2006;35:291 [PMID: 16880067].

4. Cyclosporiasis

Cyclospora spp are ubiquitous coccidian parasites that infect both humans and a variety of animals worldwide. Cyclospora cayetanensis is the only species known to infect humans. Cyclosporiasis is seen in three main epidemiologic settings: sporadic cases in endemic areas (particularly Haiti, Guatemala, Peru, and Nepal), travelers to endemic areas, and in food- or water-borne outbreaks in nonendemic areas, particularly in relation to importation of fresh produce. The incubation period is approximately 7 days (range 2–14 days). Infection may be asymptomatic, cause mild to moderate self-limited diarrhea, or cause protracted or severe diarrhea. In the immunocompetent host, diarrhea usually lasts 10–25 days but may be followed by a relapsing pattern that can last several months. Diarrhea (5–15 movements per day) is usually watery, sometimes explosive, and often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramping, and bloating. Profound fatigue, anorexia, and myalgias have been reported. The infection can be unusually severe in immunocompromised patients, especially those with HIV/AIDS. Although the illness is self-limited, it may last for several weeks. Diagnosis is based on finding oocysts 8–10 mm in diameter on examination of stool specimens stained with acid-fast stain. PCR of stool is available at the CDC and some reference laboratories. The treatment of choice is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for 7 days.

Ortega YR et al: Update on Cyclospora cayetanensis, a food-borne and waterborne parasite. Clin Micro Rev 2011;23:218–234 [PMID: 20065331].

5. Free-Living Amoebas

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute meningoencephalitis: fever, headache, meningism, acute mental deterioration.
- Swimming in warm, freshwater in an endemic area.
- Chronic granulomatous encephalitis: insidious onset of focal neurologic deficits.
- Keratitis: pain, photophobia, conjunctivitis, blurred vision.

» General Considerations

Infections with free-living amoebas are uncommon. Naegleria species, Acanthamoeba species, and Balamuthia amoebas have been associated with human disease, primarily infections of the central nervous system.

Acute meningoencephalitis, caused by Naegleria fowleri, occurs mostly in children and young adults. Patients present with abrupt fever, headache, nausea and vomiting, disturbances in smell and taste, meningismus, and decreased mental status a few days to 2 weeks after exposure. N fowleri is found in warm fresh water and moist soil. Infection is often associated with swimming in warm freshwater lakes and using contaminated tap water for nasal irrigation. CNS invasion occurs after nasal inoculation of N fowleri which travel along the olfactory nerves via the cribiform plate to the brain. The disease is rapidly progressive and nearly universally fatal within a week of symptom onset.

Chronic granulomatous encephalitis, caused by Acanthamoeba or Balamuthia, can occur in immunocompetent patients, but occurs more commonly in immunocompromised patients. There is no association with freshwater swimming. This disease has an insidious onset of focal neurologic deficits, and approximately 50% of patients present with headache. Skin, sinus, or lung infections with Acanthamoeba precede many of the CNS infections and may still be present at the onset of neurologic disease. The granulomatous encephalitis progresses to fatal outcome over a period of weeks to months (average 6 weeks).

Acanthamoeba keratitis is a corneal infection associated with minor trauma or use of soft contact lenses in otherwise healthy persons. Clinical findings of Acanthamoeba keratitis include radial keratoneuritis and stromal ring infiltrate. Amebic keratitis usually follows an indolent course and initially may resemble herpes simplex or bacterial keratitis; delay in diagnosis is associated with worse outcomes.

» Clinical Findings & Differential Diagnosis

Amebic encephalitis should be included in the differential diagnosis of acute meningoencephalitis in children with a history of recent freshwater swimming. The CSF is usually hemorrhagic, with leukocyte counts that may be normal early in the disease but later range from 400 to 2600/mL with neutrophil predominance, low to normal glucose, and elevated protein. The etiologic diagnosis relies on finding trophozoites on a wet mount of the CSF. Immunofluorescent and PCR-based diagnostic assays are available through the CDC.

Granulomatous encephalitis is diagnosed by brain biopsy of CT-identified nonenhancing lucent areas. The CSF of these patients is usually nondiagnostic with a lymphocytic pleocytosis, mild to severe elevation of protein (> 1000 mg/dL), and normal or low glucose. Acanthamoeba and Balamuthia amoebas have only rarely been found in the CSF; however, they can be visualized in brain biopsies or grown from brain or other infected tissues. Immunofluorescent and PCR-based diagnostic assays are available through the CDC.

Acanthamoeba keratitis is diagnosed by finding the trophozoites in corneal scrapings or by isolating the parasite from corneal specimens or contact lens cultures.

» Prevention

Because primary amebic meningitis occurs infrequently, active surveillance of lakes for N fowleri is not warranted. However, in the presence of a documented case, it is advisable to close the implicated lake to swimming. Sterile or boiled water should be used for nasal irrigation. Acanthamoeba keratitis can be prevented by heat disinfection of contact lenses, by storage of lenses in sterile solutions, and by not wearing lenses when swimming in freshwater or showering.

» Treatment

Treatment of acute amebic meningoencephalitis caused by N fowleri should be attempted with high-dose intravenous amphotericin B with the possible addition of miconazole and rifampin. Azithromycin has in vitro and in vivo activity against Naeglaria and may be tried as an adjuvant. Successful treatment of Balamuthia encephalitis has been reported using a combination of flucytosine, pentamidine, fluconazole, sulfadiazine, and a macrolide. Acanthamoeba encephalitis should be treated with a combination of pentamidine, an azole, flucytosine, and sulfadiazine.

Miltefosine is an investigational new drug with in vitro activity against free-living ameba which has become available for treatment through the CDC (contact the CDC Emergency Operation Center at 770-488-7100). Though treatment numbers are small, miltefosine-containing treatment regimens conveyed a survival advantage in B mandrillaris and Acanthamoeba infection. Efficacy in Naeglaria infection is unknown.

Acanthamoeba keratitis responds well to surgical debridement followed by 3–4 weeks of topical 1% miconazole; 0.1% propamidine isethionate; and polymyxin B sulfate, neomycin, and bacitracin (Neosporin).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Investigational Drug Available Directly from CDC for the Treatment of Infections with Free-Living Amebae. MMWR 2103;62(33):666 [PMID: 23965830].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/naegleria/.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/balamuthia/.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/acanthamoeba/.

Visvesvara GS: Amebic meningoencephalitides: challenges in diagnosis and treatment. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2010;23(6): 590–594 [PMID: 20802332].

TRICHOMONIASIS

Trichomonas vaginalis infection is discussed in Chapter 44.

METAZOAL INFECTIONS

NEMATODE INFECTIONS

1. Enterobiasis (Pinworms)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Anal pruritus.
- Worms in the stool or eggs on perianal skin.

General Considerations

This worldwide infection is caused by Enterobius vermicularis. The adult worms are about 5–10 mm long and live in the colon; females deposit eggs on the perianal area, primarily at night, which cause intense pruritus. Scratching contaminates the fingers and allows transmission back to the host (autoinfection) or to contacts through fecal-oral spread.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Pinworms are associated with intense localized pruritis of the anus and vulva. Adult worms may migrate within the colon or up the urethra or vagina in girls. They can be found within the bowel wall, in the lumen of the appendix (usually an incidental finding by the pathologist), in the bladder, and even in the peritoneal cavity of girls.

B. Laboratory Findings

The usual diagnostic test consists of pressing a piece of transparent tape on the child's anus in the morning prior to bathing, then placing it on a drop of xylene on a slide. Microscopic examination under low power usually demonstrates the ova. Occasionally, eggs or adult worms are seen in fecal specimens. Parents may also visualize adult worms in the perianal region, often at nighttime while the child is asleep.

Differential Diagnosis

Nonspecific irritation or vaginitis, streptococcal perianal cellulitis (usually painful with marked erythema), and vaginal or urinary bacterial infections may at times resemble pinworm infection, although the symptoms of pinworms are often so suggestive that a therapeutic trial is justified without a confirmed diagnosis.

Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Treat all household members at the same time to prevent reinfections. Because the drugs are not active against the eggs, therapy should be repeated after 2 weeks to kill the recently hatched adults.

Pyrantel pamoate, available without a prescription, is given as a single dose (11 mg/kg; maximum 1 g); it is safe and very effective. Albendazole (400 mg or 200 mg in children 1–2 years of age) in a single dose is also highly effective for all ages (though not approved by the US FDA).

B. General Measures

Personal hygiene must be emphasized. Nails should be kept short and clean. Children should wear undergarments in bed to diminish contamination of fingers; bedclothes should be laundered frequently; infected persons should bathe in the morning, thereby removing a large proportion of eggs. Although eggs may be widely dispersed in the house and multiple family members infected, the disease is mild and treatable.

Brown MD: Enterobius vermicularis. N Engl J Med 2006;354:e12 [PMID: 16571876].
http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/pinworm/.

2. Ascariasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abdominal cramps and discomfort.
- Large, white or reddish, round worms, or ova in the feces.

General Considerations

The whipworm, hookworms (see below), and Ascaris comprise the "soil-transmitted helminths." These parasites cause human infection through contact with eggs or larvae that thrive in the moist soil of the tropics and subtropics. Worldwide, more than a billion people are infected with at least one of these parasites, and, especially in less developed countries, it is not uncommon for children to be chronically infected with multiple worms. These parasites are strongly associated with poverty and lack of clean water and sanitation. Children infected with these worms are at increased

risk for malnutrition, stunted growth, intellectual disability, and cognitive and education deficits. Together, the soil-transmitted helminths are one of the world's most important causes of physical and intellectual impairment.

Ascaris lumbricoides is a worldwide human parasite. Ova passed by carriers may remain viable for months under the proper soil conditions. The ova contaminate food or fingers and are subsequently ingested by a new host. The larvae hatch, penetrate the intestinal wall, enter the venous system, reach the alveoli, are coughed up the trachea and swallowed, returning to the small intestine, where they mature. The female lays thousands of eggs daily.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The majority of infections with A lumbricoides are asymptomatic, although moderate to heavy infections are associated with abdominal pain, weight loss, anorexia, diarrhea, and vomiting, and may lead to malnutrition. During the larval migratory phase, an acute transient eosinophilic pneumonitis (Löffler syndrome) may occur. Acute intestinal obstruction has been associated with heavy infections, which is more common in children due to their smaller intestinal diameter and their higher worm burden. Worm migration can cause appendicitis, common bile duct obstruction (resulting in biliary colic, cholangitis, or pancreatitis), or peritonitis.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is made by observing the large roundworms (1.5–4 cm) in the stool or by microscopic detection of the ova on stool examination.

» Treatment

Albendazole (400 mg in a single dose, or 200 mg in children 1–2 years of age), mebendazole (100 mg twice a day for 3 days or 500 mg once), and pyrantel pamoate (a single dose of 11 mg/kg; maximum 1 g) are all highly effective for treatment. In cases of intestinal or biliary obstruction, piperazine (150 mg/kg initially, followed by six doses of 65 mg/kg every 12 hours by nasogastric tube) can be used to paralyze the worms and help relieve obstruction. However, surgical removal is occasionally required.

Bethony J et al: Soil-transmitted helminth infections: ascariasis, trichuriasis, and hookworm. Lancet 2006;367:1521 [PMID: 16679166].
http://www.who.int/intestinal_worms/.
http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/sth/.
Keiser J et al: Efficacy of current drugs against soil-transmitted helminth infections. JAMA 2008;299:1937–1948 [PMID: 18430913].

3. Trichuriasis (Whipworm)

Trichuris trichiura is a widespread human and animal parasite common in children living in warm, humid areas conducive to survival of the ova. Ingested infective eggs hatch in the upper small intestine. The adult worms live in the cecum and colon; the ova are passed and become infectious after several weeks in the soil. Unlike Ascaris, Trichuris does not have a migratory tissue phase. Symptoms are not present unless the infection is severe, in which case pain, diarrhea, iron deficient anemia, and mild abdominal distention are present. Massive infections may also cause rectal prolapse and dysentery. Detection of the characteristic barrel-shaped ova in the feces confirms the diagnosis. Adult worms may be seen in the prolapsed rectum or at proctoscopy; their thin heads are buried in the mucosa, and the thicker posterior portions protrude. Mild to moderate eosinophilia may be present.

Treatment with mebendazole (100 mg orally twice a day for 3 days) or albendazole (400 mg in a single dose for 3 days, or 200 mg in children 1–2 years of age) tends to improve gastrointestinal symptoms.

Bethony J et al: Soil-transmitted helminth infections: Ascariasis, trichuriasis, and hookworm. Lancet 2006;367:1521 [PMID: 16679166].
http://www.who.int/intestinal_worms/.
http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/sth/.
Keiser J et al. Efficacy of current drugs against soil-transmitted helminth infections. JAMA 2008;299:1937–1948 [PMID: 18430913].

4. Hookworm

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Iron-deficiency anemia.
- » Abdominal discomfort, weight loss.
- » Ova in the feces.

» General Considerations

The common human hookworms are Ancylostoma duodenale and Necator americanus. Both are widespread in the tropics and subtropics, with an estimated 600–700 million people infected worldwide. The larger A duodenale is more pathogenic because it consumes more blood, up to 0.5 mL per worm per day.

The adults live in the jejunum. Eggs are passed in the feces and develop and hatch into infective larvae in warm, damp soil within 2 weeks. The larvae penetrate human skin on contact, enter the blood, reach the alveoli, are coughed

up and swallowed, and develop into adults in the intestine. The adult worms attach to intestinal mucosa, from which they suck blood. Blood loss is the major sequela of infection. Infection rates reach 90% in areas without sanitation.

Ancylostoma braziliense and Ancylostoma caninum (the dog and cat hookworm) cause cutaneous larva migrans, a creeping skin eruption in children and others who come in contact with soil contaminated with cat and dog feces. Larvae produce pruritic, reddish papules at the site of skin entry and intensely pruritic, serpiginous tracks or bullae are advanced as they migrate through the skin, which is pathognomonic for this disease. Larvae can move up to a few centimeters a day and activity can continue for several weeks, but eventually the rash is self-limiting. In the United States, the disease is most prevalent in the Southeast. Most cases in the United States are imported by travelers returning from tropical and subtropical areas.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with hookworm infection usually are asymptomatic or have complaints of diarrhea. Chronic hookworm infection leads to blood loss and iron deficiency anemia. Heavy infection can cause hypoproteinemia with edema. Chronic hookworm infection in children may lead to growth delay, deficits in cognition, and developmental delay. The larvae usually penetrate the skin of the feet and cause a stinging or burning sensation, followed by an intense local itching (ground itch) and a papulovesicular rash that may persist for 1–2 weeks. Pneumonitis associated with migrating larvae is uncommon and usually mild, except during heavy infections. Colicky abdominal pain, nausea, and/or diarrhea and marked eosinophilia may be observed.

B. Laboratory Findings

The large ova of both species of hookworm are found in feces and are indistinguishable. Microcytic anemia, hypoalbuminemia, eosinophilia, and hematochezia occur in severe cases.

» Prevention

Avoiding fecal contamination of soil and avoiding barefoot skin contact with potentially contaminated soil is recommended.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Albendazole (400 mg orally in a single dose, or 200 mg in children 1–2 years of age) is significantly more efficacious than mebendazole or pyrantel pamoate and is considered the drug of choice for treatment of hookworm infections. Mebendazole (100 mg orally twice a day for 3 days) or pyrantel pamoate (11 mg/kg, to a maximum of 1 g, daily for 3 days) are second-line options.

B. General Measures

Iron therapy may be as important as worm eradication.

» Prognosis

The outcome after therapy is excellent, but reinfection is common in endemic areas.

Bethony J et al: Soil-transmitted helminth infections: ascariasis, trichuriasis, and hookworm. Lancet 2006;367:1521 [PMID: 16679166].

Brooker S et al: Human hookworm infection in the 21st century. Adv Parasitol 2004;58:197–288 [PMID: 15603764].

http://www.who.int/intestinal_worms/.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/sth/.

Keiser J et al: Efficacy of current drugs against soil-transmitted helminth infections. JAMA 2008;299:1937–1948 [PMID: 18430913].

5. Strongyloidiasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Abdominal pain, diarrhea.
- Eosinophilia.
- Larvae in stools and duodenal aspirates.
- Serum antibodies.

» General Considerations

Strongyloides stercoralis is unique in having both parasitic and free-living forms; the latter can survive in the soil for several generations. The parasite is found in most tropical and subtropical regions of the world. The adults live in the submucosal tissue of the duodenum and occasionally elsewhere in the intestines. Eggs deposited in the mucosa hatch rapidly; the first-stage (rhabditiform) larvae, therefore, are the predominant form found in duodenal aspirates and feces. The larvae mature rapidly to the tissue-penetrating filariform stage and initiate internal autoinfection. The filariform larvae also persist in soil and can penetrate the skin of another host, subsequently migrating into veins and pulmonary alveoli, reaching the intestine when coughed up and swallowed.

Older children and adults are infected more often than are young children. Even low worm burden can result in significant clinical symptoms. Immunosuppressed patients may develop fatal disseminated strongyloidiasis, known as the hyperinfection syndrome. Autoinfection can result in persistent infection for decades.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Chronic S stercoralis infections can be asymptomatic or cause cutaneous, gastrointestinal, and/or pulmonary symptoms. At the site of skin penetration, a pruritic rash may occur. Large numbers of migrating larvae can cause wheezing, cough, shortness of breath, and hemoptysis. Although one-third of intestinal infections are asymptomatic, the most prominent features of strongyloidiasis include abdominal pain, distention, diarrhea, vomiting, and occasionally malabsorption.

Patients with cellular immunodeficiencies and those on corticosteroids or chemotherapy may develop disseminated infection, involving the intestine, the lungs, and the meninges. Gram-negative sepsis may complicate disseminated strongyloidiasis.

B. Laboratory Findings

There is no gold standard for diagnosis, which can be difficult because of low parasite load and irregular larval output. Finding larvae in the feces, duodenal aspirates, or sputum is diagnostic. IgG antibodies measured by ELISA or immunoblot are relatively sensitive (83%–93%). The presence of specific antibody does not distinguish between past and present infection, and Strongyloides antibody assays can cross-react with other helminth infections. Marked eosinophilia is common. Because the rate of detection of Strongyloides larvae in a single fecal sample is low (~25%), all patients who have visited an endemic area and present with GI symptoms should be evaluated with three serial stool samples (for ova and parasites), and serology (ELISA) for S stercoralis should be performed. Patients with pulmonary symptoms with suspected strongyloides infection should have sputum samples evaluated for the detection of S stercoralis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Strongyloidiasis should be differentiated from peptic disease, celiac disease, regional or tuberculous enteritis, and hookworm infections. The pulmonary phase may mimic asthma or bronchopneumonia. Patients with severe infection can present with an acute abdomen.

» Prevention & Treatment

Ivermectin (two doses of 0.2 mg/kg given 1–14 days apart) is the drug of choice. Tiabendazole at a dose of 25 mg/kg orally twice orally twice a day for three days is an alternative therapy. Albendazole has a much lower efficacy. Relapses are common. In the hyperinfection syndrome, 1–3 weeks of therapy with ivermectin may be necessary and multiple follow-up stool studies for 2 weeks after therapy are indicated to ensure clearance of larvae. Patients from endemic areas should be tested for specific antibodies and receive treatment before undergoing immunosuppression.

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/strongyloides/.
Krolewiecki AJ et al: A public health response against Strongyloides stercoralis: time to look at soil-transmitted helminthiasis in full. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013 May 9;7(5):e2165 [PMID: 23675541].
Montes M et al: Strongyloides stercoralis: there but not seen. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2010;23:500–504 [PMID: 20733481].
Olsen, A et al: Stronyloidiasis—the most neglected of the tropical diseases? Trns R Soc Trop Med Hyg 2009;103:967–972 [PMID: 19328508].

6. Visceral Larva Migrans (Toxocariasis)

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- » Visceral involvement, including hepatomegaly, marked eosinophilia, and anemia.
- » Posterior or peripheral ocular inflammatory mass.
- » Elevated antibody titers in serum or aqueous fluid; demonstration of Toxocara larvae in biopsy specimen.

» General Considerations

Visceral larva migrans is a worldwide disease. The agent is the cosmopolitan intestinal ascarid of dogs and cats, Toxocara canis or Toxocara cati. The eggs passed by infected animals contaminate parks and other areas that young children frequent. Children with pica are at increased risk. In the United States, seropositivity ranges from 2.8% in unselected populations to 23% in southern states to 54% in rural areas. Ingested eggs hatch and penetrate the intestinal wall, then migrate to the liver. Most of the larvae are retained in the liver, but some may pass through the organ reaching the lungs, eyes, muscles, and/or the CNS, where they die and incite a granulomatous inflammatory reaction.

» Clinical Findings

A. Visceral Larva Migrans

Toxocariasis is usually asymptomatic, but young children (aged 1–5 years) sometimes present with anorexia, fever, fatigue, pallor, abdominal pain and distention, nausea, vomiting, and cough. Hepatomegaly is common, splenomegaly is unusual, and adenopathy is absent. Lung involvement, usually asymptomatic, can be demonstrated readily by radiologic examination. Seizures are common, but more severe neurologic abnormalities are infrequent. Eosinophilia with leukocytosis, anemia, and elevated liver function tests are

typical. ELISA is sensitive, specific, and useful in confirming the clinical diagnosis. Most patients recover spontaneously, but disease may last up to 6 months.

B. Ocular Larva Migrans

This condition occurs in older children and adults who present with a unilateral posterior or peripheral inflammatory eye mass. History of visceral larva migrans and eosinophilia are typically absent. Anti-Toxocara antibody titers are low in the serum and high in vitreous and aqueous fluids.

C. Diagnostic Findings

Hypergammaglobulinemia may be present and elevated isohemagglutinins sometimes result from cross-reactivity between Toxocara antigens and human group A and B blood antigens. The diagnosis is confirmed by finding larvae in granulomatous lesions. High ELISA serology and the exclusion of other causes of hypereosinophilia provide a presumptive diagnosis in typical cases.

» Differential Diagnosis

Diseases associated with hypereosinophilia must be considered. These include trichinosis (enlarged liver not common; muscle tenderness common), eosinophilic leukemia (rare in children; eosinophils are abnormal in appearance), collagen-vascular disease (those associated with eosinophilia are rare in young children), strongyloidiasis (no organomegaly; enteric symptoms are common), early ascariasis, tropical eosinophilia (occurring mainly in India), allergies, and hypersensitivity syndromes.

» Prevention & Treatment

A. Specific Measures

The clinical benefit of specific anthelmintic therapy is not defined. Treatment with albendazole (400 mg twice a day for 5 days) or mebendazole (100–200 mg twice a day for 5 days) is indicated for severe complications involving the brain, lung, or heart.

B. General Measures

Treating any cause of pica, such as iron deficiency, is important. Corticosteroids are used to treat marked inflammation of lungs, eyes, or other organs. Pets should be dewormed routinely. Other children in the household may be infected. Mild eosinophilia and positive serologic tests may be the only clue to their infection. Therapy is not necessary for these individuals.

Hotez PJ, Wilkins PP: Toxocariasis: America's most common neglected infection of poverty and a helminthiasis of global importance? PLoS Negl Trop Dis 2009;3(3):e400 [PMID: 19333373].

Rubingsy-Elefant G et al: Human toxocariasis: diagnosis, worldwide seroprevalences and clinical expression of the systemic and ocular forms. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 2010;104:3–23 [PMID: 20149289].

7. Trichinosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain within 1 week of eating infected meat.
- Fever, periorbital edema, myalgia, and marked eosinophilia.

» General Considerations

Trichinella are small roundworms that infest hogs and several other meat-eating animals. Currently, there are eight recognized Trichinella species, with Trichinella spiralis being the most commonly recognized and most adapted to domestic and wild swine. The most important source of human infection worldwide is the domestic pig, but in Europe meat from wild boars and horses caused several prominent outbreaks. The human cycle begins with ingestion of viable larvae in undercooked meat. In the intestine, the larvae develop into adult worms that mate and produce hundreds of larvae. The larvae enter the bloodstream and migrate to the striated muscle where they continue to grow and eventually encyst. Symptoms are caused by the inflammatory response in the intestines or muscle.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Most infections are asymptomatic. The severity of clinical disease is strongly correlated with the number of ingested larvae. Infection can be divided into two phases: an intestinal phase and a muscular (or systemic) phase. The initial bowel penetration may cause fever, headache, chills, and gastrointestinal complaints within 1 week after ingestion of contaminated meat. This may progress to the classic myopathic form, which consists of fever, eyelid or facial edema, myalgia, and weakness. Complications, including myocarditis, thromboembolic disease, and encephalitis, occasionally occur. The leading pathologic process of trichinellosis is vasculitis, which can manifest as a maculopapular exanthem, subungual bleeding, conjunctivitis and subconjunctival hemorrhages, headaches, dry cough, and painful movement of the eye muscles. Severe cerebral involvement

or myocarditis can be fatal. Symptoms usually peak after 2–3 weeks but may last for months. Children typically have milder clinical and laboratory findings than adults.

B. Diagnosis

The diagnosis of trichinosis should be based on three main criteria: (1) clinical findings (fever; myalgias; eyelid and/or facial edema; gastrointestinal symptoms; and subconjunctival, subungual, and retinal hemorrhages); (2) laboratory findings (nonspecific eosinophilia and increased levels of muscle enzymes, antibody detection, and/or detection of larvae in a muscle biopsy); and (3) epidemiologic investigation.

» Differential Diagnosis

The classic symptoms are pathognomonic if one is aware of this disease. It has to be distinguished from gastrointestinal pathogens, serum sickness, dermatomyositis, typhoid fever, sinusitis (facial swelling is unilateral), influenza with myopathy, toxocariasis, and invasive schistosomiasis.

» Prevention

Because a microscopic examination must be performed, meat in the United States is not inspected for trichinosis. Although all states require the cooking of hog swill, hog-to-hog or hog-to-rat cycles may continue. All pork and sylvatic meat (eg, bear or walrus) should be cooked at least > 160°F. Freezing meat to at least 5°F for 3 weeks may also prevent transmission. Animals used for food should not be fed or allowed access to raw meat.

» Treatment

Albendazole (400 mg twice daily for 8–14 days) is the drug of choice for trichinosis. Mebendazole is an acceptable alternative and can be given at a dose of 200–400 mg three times a day for 3 days followed by 400–500 mg three times a day for 10 days. Concurrent corticosteroids (prednisone 30–60 mg/d for 10–15 days) are used for treatment of severe symptoms. Administration of analgesics is sometimes required.

» Prognosis

Prognosis for severe cases with cardiac and cerebral complications is poor, with a mortality rate around 5%. In milder cases, prognosis is good, and most patients' symptoms disappear within 2–6 months.

Gottstein B et al: Epidemiology, diagnosis, treatment, and control of trichinellosis. Clin Micro Rev 2009;22:127–145 [PMID: 19136437].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/trichinellosis/.

Ozdemir D et al: Acute trichinellosis in children compared with adults. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2005:24:897 [PMID: 16220088].

8. Raccoon Roundworm Infections

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Eosinophilic meningoencephalitis or encephalopathy.
- Ocular larva migrans.
- Contact with raccoons or raccoon feces.

» General Considerations

Human infections with Baylisascaris procyonis, the raccoon roundworm, are increasingly recognized, particularly in children. The definitive host of this ascarid is the raccoon. Humans who ingest the eggs excreted in raccoon feces become intermediate hosts when the larvae penetrate the gut and disseminate via the bloodstream to the brain, eyes, viscera, and muscles. Young age, pica, and exposure to raccoon feces represent the main risk factors for this infection. Most of the infections are asymptomatic, but cases of severe encephalitis (neural larva migrans) and endophthalmitis (ocular larva migrans) occur. Symptoms typically begin 2–4 weeks after inoculation. CNS infections characteristically present as acute, rapidly progressive encephalitis with eosinophilic pleocytosis of the CSF (varies from 4% to 68% eosinophils in mild pleocytosis). Both CNS and ocular infections resemble other larva migrans infections such as toxocariasis; therefore B procyonis should be considered in the differential diagnosis of these infections when Toxocara serology is negative. The diagnosis of B procyonis is established by observing the larvae on examination of tissue biopsies or by serology (of serum or CSF), and should be considered in the differential diagnosis in anyone with CSF eosinophilia. Antihelmintic drugs have not been shown to have any beneficial effect for the treatment of baylisascariasis, since they lack larvicidal effects in human tissues. Nevertheless, albendazole (20–40 mg/kg/d for 1–4 weeks) has been used to treat most cases, together with anti-inflammatory drugs. Complete resolution of symptoms has not been achieved thus far. Immediate prophylactic treatment with albendazole (25 mg/kg daily for 20 days) should be considered for those with known ingestion of raccoon feces.

Gavin PJ et al: Baylisascariasis. Clin Microbiol Rev 2005;18:703 [PMID: 16223954].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/baylisascaris/.

Murray WJ, Kazacos KR: Raccoon roundworm encephalitis. Clin Infect Dis 2004;39:1484–1492 [PMID: 15546085].

CESTODE INFECTIONS (FLUKES)

1. Taeniasis & Cysticercosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Mild abdominal pain; passage of worm segments (taeniasis).
- Focal seizures, headaches (neurocysticercosis).
- Cysticerci present in biopsy specimens, on plain films (as calcified masses), or on CT scan or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).
- Proglottids and eggs in feces; specific antibodies in serum or CSF.

» General Considerations

Pigs are the usual intermediate host of the tapeworm Taenia solium. Human cysticercosis occurs when the eggs, which are excreted in the feces of a person infected with the parasite, are ingested. Importantly, cysticercosis cannot be acquired by eating pork. Ingestion of infected pork results in adult tapeworm infection (taeniasis) because infected pork contains the larval cysts that develop into the adult tapeworm but does not contain the eggs which cause cysticercosis.

Larvae released from ingested eggs enter the circulation to encyst in a variety of tissues, especially muscle and brain. Full larval maturation occurs in 2 months, but the cysts cause little inflammation until the larvae die months to years later. Inflammatory edema ensues with calcification or disappearance of the cyst. A slowly expanding mass of sterile cysts at the base of the brain may cause obstructive hydrocephalus (racemose cysticercosis).

T solium and the beef tapeworm (Taenia saginata), which can causes taeniasis but not cysticercosis, are distributed worldwide. Contamination of foods by eggs in human feces allows person-to-person spread without exposure to meat or travel to endemic areas. Asymptomatic cases are common, but T solium is the most common helminth infection of the CNS and a leading cause of acquired epilepsy in the world.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Taeniasis—In most tapeworm infections, the only clinical manifestation is the passage of fecal proglottids, which are white, motile segments of tapeworm 1–2 cm in size. Children may harbor the adult worm for years and complain of abdominal pain, anorexia, and diarrhea.

2. Cysticercosis—In the parenchymatous form, the parasite lodges in tissue as a single or multiple cysts. Granuloma formation results with eventual pericystic inflammation, which is the cause of seizures in most patients. The initial stage of the cyst is viable, where the scolex exists within the cyst and there is minimal or no enhancement due to a limited host immune response. As the scolex dies, either due to the host immune response or cysticidal treatment there is a strong immune response, characterized by enhancement on CT or MRI. As the cyst further degenerates, it calcifies, leading to punctuate calcifications on CT scan. Brain cysts may remain silent or cause seizures, headache, hydrocephalus, and basilar meningitis. Rarely, the spinal cord is involved. Neurocysticercosis manifests an average of 5 years after exposure, but may cause symptoms in the first year of life. In the eyes, cysts cause bleeding, retinal detachment, and uveitis. Definitive diagnosis requires histologic demonstration of larvae or cyst membrane. Presumptive diagnosis is often made by the characteristics of the cysts seen on CT scan or MRI. The presence of T solium eggs in feces is uncommon with cysticercosis (see above) but can support the diagnosis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Neuroimaging is the mainstay of diagnosis of neurocysticercosis. The diagnosis should be suspected in any patient who has lived in an endemic area and presents with a compatible clinical picture and suggestive lesions on neuroimaging.

Eggs or proglottids may be found in feces or on the perianal skin (using the tape method employed for pinworms). Eggs of both Taenia species are identical. The species are identified by examination of proglottids.

Peripheral eosinophilia is minimal or absent. CSF eosinophilia is seen in 10%–75% of cases of neurocysticercosis; its presence supports an otherwise presumptive diagnosis.

ELISA antibody titers are eventually positive in up to 98% of serum specimens and over 75% of CSF specimens from patients with neurocysticercosis. Solitary cysts are associated with seropositivity less often than are multiple cysts. High titers tend to correlate with more severe disease. CSF titers are higher if cysts are near the meninges.

The differential diagnosis of neurocysticercosis includes tuberculous granuloma, microabscesses, arachnoid cyst, neoplasms, and vascular lesions.

» Treatment

A. Taeniasis

Oral praziquantel (5–10 mg/kg once) or niclosamide (50 mg/kg once, maximum 2 g) can be used for treatment of tapeworm carriers.

B. Cysticercosis

The treatment modalities for neurocysticercosis include cysticidal agents (to kill larvae), corticosteroids (to decrease or

prevent the inflammatory reaction), antiepileptic drugs (to control seizures if present), and surgery (to remove cysts or for placement of a shunt for hydrocephalus). Most experts would recommend treatment with a cysticidal agent in most cases of neurocysticercosis, except in patients with inactive, calcified lesions. In patients with viable parenchymal cysts, cysticidal therapy decreases the burden of parasites and the number of seizures. Similarly, cysticidal therapy is associated with more complete and faster resolution on imaging and fewer seizures in patients with a single, small enhancing lesion. Ophthalmic examination should be conducted prior to cysticidal therapy to rule out intraocular cysts.

Albendazole, 15 mg/kg/d (maximum, 800 mg) divided in two doses daily for 8–15 days, is the treatment of choice. Larval death may result in clinical worsening because of inflammatory edema. A concurrent course of dexamethasone (0.1 mg/kg/d to a max of 6 mg/d) is recommended to decrease these symptoms. Corticosteroids are mandatory treatment for large intraventricular cysts and encephalitis (dexamethasone 0.1 mg/kg/d or prednisolone 1 mg/kg/d for as long as needed). Giant subarachnoidal cysts may require more than one cycle of therapy or surgery (or both). Minimally invasive neurosurgery (neuroendoscopic extraction) is the currently recommended management of intraventricular cysts. Follow-up scans every several months help assess the response to therapy.

» Prevention

Prevention requires proper cooking of meat, careful washing of raw vegetables and fruits, treating intestinal carriers, avoiding the use of human excrement for fertilizer, and providing proper sanitary facilities.

» Prognosis

The prognosis is good in intestinal taeniasis. Symptoms associated with a few cerebral cysts may disappear in a few months; heavy brain infections may cause death or chronic neurologic impairment. Seizures may persist even in those patients with only calcified lesions and anticonvulsants may be needed indefinitely.

Del Brutto OH: Neurocysticercosis: new thoughts on controversial issues. Curr Opin Neurol 2013 Jun;26(3):289–294 [PMID: 23493161].

Garcia HH et al: Cysticercosis of the central nervous system: how should it be managed? Curr Opin Infect Dis 2011;24:423–427 [PMID: 21788891].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/cysticercosis/.

2. Hymenolepiasis

Hymenolepis nana, the cosmopolitan human tapeworm, is a common parasite of children; Hymenolepis diminuta, the rat tapeworm, is rare. The former is capable of causing autoinfection. Larvae hatched from ingested eggs penetrate the intestinal wall and then reenter the lumen to mature into adults. Their eggs are immediately infectious for the same or a new host. The adult is only a few centimeters long. Finding the characteristic eggs in feces is diagnostic.

H diminuta has an intermediate stage in rat fleas and other insects; children are infected when they ingest these insects.

Light infections with either tapeworm are usually asymptomatic; heavy infection can cause diarrhea and abdominal pain. Therapy is with praziquantel (25 mg/kg once).

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/hymenolepis/.

3. Echinococcosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Cystic tumors of liver, lungs, kidneys, bones, brain, and other organs.
- Eosinophilia.
- Urticaria and pruritus if cysts rupture.
- Protoscoleces or daughter cysts in the primary cyst.
- Positive serology.
- Epidemiologic evidence of exposure.

» General Considerations

Dogs, cats, and other carnivores are the hosts for Echinococcus granulosus. Cystic and alveolar echinococcosis (hydatid disease) cause significant morbidity and mortality worldwide. Endemic areas include Australia, New Zealand, and the southwestern United States, including Native American reservations where shepherding is practiced. The adult tapeworm lives in sheep intestines, and eggs are passed in the feces. When ingested by humans, the eggs hatch, and the larvae penetrate the intestinal mucosa and disseminate via the bloodstream to produce cysts; the primary sites of involvement are the liver (60%–70%) and the lungs (20%–25%). A unilocular cyst is most common. Over time, the cyst may reach 25 cm in diameter, although most are much smaller. The cysts of Echinococcus multilocularis are multilocular and demonstrate more rapid growth.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The clinical manifestations of echinococcosis are variable and depend primarily on the site, size, and condition of the cysts. The rates of growth of cysts are variable, and range between

1 and 5 cm in diameter per year. A slowly growing cyst often goes unnoticed until it causes dysfunction due to its size. Liver cysts can cause hepatomegaly, right upper quadrant pain, nausea, and vomiting. If a cyst ruptures, the sudden release of its contents can result in a severe allergic reaction. Cysts may cause biliary obstruction. Most hepatic cysts are in the right lobe.

Rupture of a pulmonary cyst causes coughing, dyspnea, wheezing, urticaria, chest pain, and hemoptysis; cyst and worm remnants are found in sputum. Brain cysts may cause focal neurologic signs and convulsions; renal cysts cause pain and hematuria; bone cysts cause pain.

B. Laboratory Findings

Antibody assays are useful to confirm a presumptive diagnosis, but some patients with echinococcosis do not have a detectable immune response (related to the integrity of the cyst and sequestration of echinococcal antigens inside the cyst).

Confirmation may be obtained by ultrasonography-guided fine-needle aspiration coupled with parasitologic examination for protoscoleces, rostellar hooks, antigens, or DNA. Eosinophilia is present in only about 25% of patients. Serologic tests are useful for diagnosis and follow-up of therapy.

C. Imaging

The presence of a cyst-like mass in a person with appropriate epidemiologic exposure supports the diagnosis. Visualization of daughter cysts is highly suggestive of echinococcosis. CT, MRI, and ultrasonography are useful for the diagnosis of deep-seated lesions. Abdominal ultrasonography is the most widely used diagnostic tool. Pulmonary or bone cysts may be visible on plain films.

» Differential Diagnosis

Tumors, bacterial or amebic abscess, cavitary tuberculosis (pulmonary), mycoses, and benign cysts must be considered.

» Complications

Sudden cyst rupture with anaphylaxis and death is the worst complication. If the patient survives, secondary infections from seeding of daughter cysts may occur. Segmental lung collapse, secondary bacterial infections, effects of increased intracranial pressure, and severe renal damage due to renal cysts are other potential complications.

» Treatment

There is no "best" treatment option for cystic echinococcus and no clinical trial has compared all the different treatment modalities. Treatment indications are complex and based on cyst characteristics, available medical/surgical expertise and equipment, and adherence of patients to long-term monitoring. Because treatment involves a variety of options and expertise, patients should be referred to recognized reference and national/regional treatment centers, whenever available. Definitive therapy of E multilocularis requires meticulous surgical removal of the cysts. A surgeon familiar with this disease should be consulted. Albendazole chemotherapy should be initiated for several days prior to surgery. Chemotherapy alone has been shown to cure about one-third of patients. Albendazole (15 mg/kg/d divided in two doses for 3 months, max 400 mg twice daily), sometimes with the addition of praziquantel, is the regimen of choice. A third treatment option is a four-step procedure (PAIR: puncture, aspiration, injection, and reaspiration). This procedure consists of (1) percutaneous puncture using ultrasound guidance, (2) aspiration of liquid contents, (3) injection of a protoscolicidal agents (95% ethanol or hypertonic saline for at least 15 minutes), and (4) reaspiration. PAIR is indicated for uncomplicated cases. If the cyst leaks or ruptures, the allergic symptoms must be managed immediately. For alveolar echinococcus, radical surgery for complete resection of the cyst is the goal. In some patients (particularly in those in whom complete resection is not possible), lifetime chemotherapy may be required.

» Prognosis

Patients with large liver cysts may be asymptomatic for years. Surgery is often curative for lung and liver cysts, but not always for cysts in other locations.

Brunetti E et al: Expert consensus for the diagnosis and treatment of cystic and alveolar echinococcosis in humans. Acta Trop 2010;114:1–16 [PMID: 19931502].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/echinococcosis/.

McManus DP et al: Diagnosis, treatment, and management of echinococcosis. BMJ 2012;344:e3866 [PMID: 22689886].

Moro P, Schantz PM: Echinococcosis: a review. Int J Infect Dis 2009;13:125–133 [PMID: 18938096].

TREMATODE INFECTIONS

Schistosomiasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Transient pruritic rash after exposure to freshwater.
- Fever, urticaria, arthralgias, cough, lymphadenitis, and eosinophilia.
- Weight loss, anorexia, hepatosplenomegaly, or hematuria.
- Eggs in stool, urine, or rectal biopsy specimens.

General Considerations

One of the most common serious parasitic diseases, schistosomiasis, is caused by several species of Schistosoma flukes. Schistosoma japonicum, Schistosoma mekongi, and S mansoni involve the intestines and Schistosoma haematobium, the urinary tract. The first two species are found in eastern and southeastern Asia; S mansoni in tropical Africa, the Caribbean, and parts of South America; and S haematobium in Africa. Important transmission sites include Lake Malawi and Lake Victoria in Africa, Poyang and Dongting Lakes in China, and along the Mekong River in Laos.

Infection is caused by free-swimming larvae (cercariae), which emerge from the intermediate hosts, certain species of freshwater snails. The cercariae penetrate human skin, migrate to the liver, and mature into adults, which then migrate through the portal vein to lodge in the bladder veins (S haematobium), superior mesenteric veins (S mekongi and S japonicum), or inferior mesenteric veins (S mansoni). Clinical disease results primarily from inflammation caused by the many eggs that are laid in the perivascular tissues or that embolize to the liver. Escape of ova into bowel or bladder lumen allows microscopic visualization and diagnosis from stool or urine specimens, as well as contamination of freshwater and infection of the snail hosts that ingest them.

Clinical Findings

Much of the population in endemic areas is infected but asymptomatic. Only heavy infections produce symptoms.

A. Symptoms and Signs

Schistosomiasis progresses in three distinct phases: acute, chronic, and advanced disease. The cercarial penetration may cause a maculopapular, pruritic rash, comprising discrete, erythematous, raised lesions that vary in size from 1 to 3 cm. The symptoms of acute schistosomiasis (Katayama syndrome) can last from days to weeks, and can include fever, malaise, cough, diarrhea, hematuria, and right upper quadrant pain. The chronic stages of gastrointestinal disease are characterized by hepatic fibrosis, portal hypertension, splenomegaly, ascites, and bleeding from esophageal varices. The chronic stages of genitourinary tract disease may result in obstructive uropathy, stones, infection, bladder cancer, fistulas, and anemia due to chronic hematuria. Terminal hematuria in children from an endemic region is a red flag for urinary schistosomiasis. Spinal cord granulomas and paraplegia due to egg embolization into the Batson plexus have been reported.

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is made by finding the species-specific eggs in feces (S japonicum, S mekongi, S mansoni, and occasionally S haematobium) or urine (S haematobium and occasionally S mansoni). If no eggs are found, concentration methods should be used. Because the shedding of eggs can vary, three specimens should be obtained. Urine specimens should be collected between 10 am and 2 pm to coincide with the timing of maximal egg secretion. Testing should wait until 2 months after the last known freshwater contact as this is the time required for worms to start producing eggs following infection. A rectal biopsy may reveal S mansoni and should be done if other specimens are negative. Serological tests are also available and may be helpful in making the diagnosis in patients who are not excreting eggs. Peripheral eosinophilia is common, and eosinophils may be seen in urine.

Prevention

The best prevention is to avoid contact with contaminated freshwater in endemic areas. Efforts to destroy the snail hosts have been successful in areas of accelerated economic development.

Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Praziquantel is the treatment of choice for schistosomiasis. A dosage of 40 mg/kg/d in two divided doses (S mansoni or S haematobium) over 1 day or 20 mg/kg three times a day (S japonicum or S mekongi) over 1 day is very effective and nontoxic. Praziquantel has no effect on eggs and immature worms and therefore a repeat dose 4–6 weeks later is sometimes needed.

B. General Measures

The patient's urinary tract should be evaluated carefully in S haematobium infection; reconstructive surgery may be needed. Hepatic fibrosis requires careful evaluation of the portal venous system and surgical management of portal hypertension when appropriate.

Prognosis

Therapy decreases the worm burden and liver size, despite continued exposure in endemic areas. Early disease responds well to therapy, but once significant scarring or severe inflammation has occurred, eradication of the parasites is of little benefit.

Colley DG et al: Human schistosomiasis. Lancet 2014 Jun 28;383(9936):2253–2264 [PMID: 24698483].

Gary DJ et al: Diagnosis and management of schistosomiasis. BMJ 2011;342:d2651 [PMID: 21586478].

http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/schistosomiasis/.

http://www.who.int/topics/schistosomiasis/.

Kramer CV et al: Drugs for treating urinary schistosomiasis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;8:CD000053 [PMID: 25099517]. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD000053.pub3.

Mycotic Infections

Fungi can be classified as yeasts, which are unicellular and reproduce by budding; as molds, which are multicellular and consist of tubular structures (hyphae) and grow by elongation and branching; or as dimorphic fungi, which can exist either as yeasts or molds depending on environmental conditions. Categorization according to anatomic and epidemiologic features is shown in Table 43–3. Fungal cells are taxonomically distinct from plant and animal cells. These differences, especially cell wall and cell membrane components, are utilized for diagnosis and are the basis of specific therapy.

In the United States, systemic disease in normal hosts is commonly caused by three endemic organisms—Coccidioides, Histoplasma, and Blastomyces—which are restricted to certain geographic areas. Prior residence in or travel to these areas, even for a brief time, is a prerequisite for inclusion in a differential diagnosis. Of these three, Histoplasma most often relapses years later in patients who are immunosuppressed.

Immunosuppression (especially depressed T-cell–mediated immunity), foreign bodies (eg, urinary and central catheters), ulceration of gastrointestinal and respiratory mucosa, severe burns, broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy, malnutrition, HIV infection, and neutropenia or neutrophil defects are major risk factors for fungal infections (termed "opportunistic fungal infections").

Laboratory diagnosis may be difficult because of the small number of fungi present in some lesions, slow growth of some organisms, and difficulty in distinguishing normal colonization of mucosal surfaces from infection. A tissue biopsy with fungal stains and culture is the best method for diagnosing some systemic fungal disease. Repeat blood cultures may be negative even in the presence of intravascular infections. Serologic tests are useful for diagnosing coccidioidomycosis and histoplasmosis, and antigen detection in urine and blood is useful for diagnosing blastomycosis, histoplasmosis, cryptococcosis, and aspergillosis.

The common superficial fungal infections of the hair and skin are discussed in Chapter 15.

Hage CA, Knox KS, Wheat LJ: Endemic mycoses: overlooked causes of community acquired pneumonia. Respir Med 2012;106(6):769 [PMID: 22386326].

Oz Y, Kiraz N: Diagnostic methods for fungal infections in pediatric patients: microbiological, serological, and molecular methods. Expert Rev Anti Infec Ther 2011;9(3):289 [PMID: 21417868].

Table 43–3. Pediatric fungal infections.

Type	Agents	Incidence	Diagnosis	Diagnostic Tests	Therapy	Prognosis
Superficial	Candida[a] Dermatophytes Malassezia	Very common	Simple	KOH prep	Topical	Good
Subcutaneous	Sporothrix[a]	Uncommon	Simple[b]	Culture	Oral	Good
Systemic: normal host (endemic)	Coccidioides Histoplasma Blastomyces	Common: regional	Often presumptive	Chest radiograph; serology, antigen detection; histology; culture of body fluids or tissue	None[c] or systemic	Good
Systemic: opportunistic infection	Candida[a] Pneumocystis[d] Aspergillus Mucorales Malassezia Pseudallescheria Cryptococcus	Uncommon	Difficult[e]	Tissue biopsy, culture, antigen/fungal product detection (cryptococcosis, candida, filamentous fungi, pneumocystis)	Systemic, prolonged	Poor if therapy is delayed and in severely immune compromised hosts

KOH, potassium hydroxide.
[a]Candida and Sporothrix in immunocompromised patients may cause severe, rapidly progressive disease and require systemic therapy.
[b]Sporotrichosis may require biopsy for diagnosis.
[c]Can be self-limited in normal host.
[d]Asymptomatically infects many normal hosts.
[e]Except Cryptococcus, which is often diagnosed by antigen detection.

Blastomycosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Residence in, or travel to, an endemic area.
- In immunocompetent patients, most often a self-limited flu-like illness; acute pneumonia occurs in a minority of cases.
- Complications include progressive pneumonia and disseminated disease (CNS, skin, bone and joints, genitourinary tract).
- Diagnosis by culture of specimens from bronchoscopy, skin, or other tissue, or antigen detection.

» General Considerations

The causative fungus, Blastomyces dermatitidis, is found in soil primarily in the Mississippi and Ohio River valleys, additional southeastern and south central states, and the states bordering the Great Lakes. Transmission is by inhalation of spores. Subclinical disease is common. Severe disease is much more common in adults and males. In children, infection rates are similar in both sexes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Primary infection is often unrecognized or associated with cough with purulent sputum, chest pain, headache, weight loss, night sweats, and fever. These occur several weeks to months after inoculation. Infection is most often self-limited in immunocompetent patients, but in some patients an indolent progressive pulmonary disease occurs after an incubation period of 20–100 (median 45) days. Cutaneous lesions usually represent disseminated disease. Skin lesions are slowly progressive and ulcerative with a sharp, heaped-up border or verrucous appearance. Bone disease resembles other forms of chronic osteomyelitis. Lytic skull lesions in children are typical, but long bones, vertebrae, and the pelvis may be involved. Extrapulmonary disease occurs in 25%–40% of patients with progressive disease. A total body radiographic examination is advisable when blastomycosis is diagnosed in the skin or other extrapulmonary site. The genitourinary tract involvement characteristic of dissemination in adults is rare in prepubertal children.

B. Laboratory Findings

An initial suppurative response is followed by an increase in mononuclear cells and subsequent formation of noncaseating granulomas. Diagnosis requires isolation or visualization of the fungus. Pulmonary specimens (sputum, tracheal aspirates, or lung biopsy) may be positive using conventional or fungal cell wall stains. The budding yeasts have refractile thick walls and are very large and distinctive (figure-of-eight appearance). The fungus can be readily isolated in most laboratories, but a week is often required. Sputum specimens are positive in more than 80% of cases and in almost all bronchial washings, and skin lesions are positive in 80%–100%. Antibody tests are generally not helpful for diagnosis, but an ELISA antigen detection method, similar to that used for histoplasmosis, readily detects Blastomyces antigen in serum, urine, and lung lavage fluids. In this assay, there is cross-reactivity with histoplamosis.

C. Imaging

Radiographic lobar consolidation and fibronodular interstitial and alveolar infiltrates are typical in cases with progressive pneumonia; effusions, hilar nodes, and cavities are less common. The paucity of cavitation distinguishes acute blastomycosis from histoplasmosis and tuberculosis. Miliary patterns also occur with acute infection. Chronic disease can develop in the upper lobes, with cavities and fibronodular infiltrations similar to those seen in tuberculosis. However, unlike tuberculosis or histoplasmosis, these lesions rarely caseate or calcify.

» Differential Diagnosis

Primary pulmonary infection resembles acute viral, bacterial, or mycoplasmal infections and is generally confused with atypical community-acquired pneumonia. Blastomycosis should be considered when a significant pulmonary infection in an endemic area fails to respond to antibiotic therapy. Subacute infection mimics tuberculosis, histoplasmosis, and coccidioidomycosis. Chronic pulmonary or disseminated disease must be differentiated from cancer, tuberculosis, or other fungal infections.

» Treatment

If the patient is symptomatic at the time of diagnosis with moderately severe or life-threatening blastomycosis (especially if immunocompromised), or has CNS infection, therapy should be initiated with the lipid formulation of amphotericin B (3–5 mg/kg intravenously) for 1–2 weeks or until improved. This is followed by oral itraconazole (5–10 mg/kg/d; divided into two doses) for 6 months. Mild to moderate blastomycosis is often treated with oral itraconazole alone for 6–12 months. Bone disease may require a full year of itraconazole therapy. Surgical debridement is required for devitalized bone, drainage of large abscesses, and pulmonary lesions not responding to medical therapy.

Anderson EJ et al: Blastomycosis in children: a study of 14 cases. J Ped Infect Dis Soc 2013;2(4):386.
Brick NE et al: Cutaneous and disseminated blastomycosis: a pediatric case series. Pediatr Dermatol 2013;30(1):23 [PMID: 23017132].
Lopez-Martinez R, Mendez-Tovar LJ: Blastomycosis. Clin Dermatolol 2012;30(6):565 [PMID: 23068144].

Candidiasis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- In normal or immunosuppressed individuals: superficial infections (oral thrush or ulcerations, vulvovaginitis, erythematous intertriginous rash with satellite lesions); fungemia related to intravascular devices.
- In immunosuppressed individuals: systemic infections (candidemia with renal, hepatic, splenic, pulmonary, or cerebral abscesses); chorioretinitis; cutaneous nodules.
- In either patient population: budding yeast and pseudohyphae are seen in biopsy specimens, body fluids, or scrapings of lesions; positive culture.

General Considerations

Disease due to Candida is caused by Candida albicans in > 50% of cases in children; severe systemic infection may also be caused by Candida tropicalis and Candida parapsilosis and a few other Candida species. Speciation is important because of differences in pathogenicity and response to antifungal therapy.

C albicans is ubiquitous, usually in small numbers, on skin, mucous membranes, or in the intestinal tract. Normal bacterial flora, intact epithelial barriers, neutrophils, and macrophages, in conjunction with antibody and complement and normal lymphocyte function, are factors in preventing invasion. Disseminated infection is almost always preceded by prolonged broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy, instrumentation (including intravascular catheters), and/or immunosuppression. Patients with diabetes mellitus are prone to superficial Candida infection; thrush and vaginitis are most common. Candida is the fourth most common blood isolate in hospitals in the United States and is a common cause of catheter-related urinary tract infection.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Oral candidiasis (Thrush)—Adherent creamy white plaques on the buccal, gingival, or lingual mucosa are seen. These may be painful. Lesions may be few and asymptomatic, or they may be extensive, extending into the esophagus. Thrush is very common in otherwise normal infants in the first weeks of life and may last weeks despite topical therapy. Spontaneous thrush in older children is unusual unless they have recently received antimicrobials. Corticosteroid inhalation for asthma predisposes patients to thrush. HIV infection should be considered if there is no other reason for oral thrush, especially when it is persistent or recurrent. Angular cheilitis is the name given to painful erythematous fissures caused by Candida at the corners of the mouth, often in association with a vitamin or iron deficiencies.

2. Vaginal infection—Vulvovaginitis occurs in sexually active girls, in diabetic patients, and in girls receiving antibiotics. Thick, odorless, cheesy discharge with intense pruritus is typical. The vagina and labia are usually erythematous and swollen. Outbreaks are more frequent before menses.

3. Skin infection

a. Dermatitis—Diaper dermatitis is often due entirely or partly to Candida. Pronounced erythema with a sharply defined margin and satellite lesions is typical. Pustules, vesicles, papules, or scales may be seen. Weeping, eroded lesions with a scalloped border are common. Any moist area, such as axillae, under breasts, and inguinal or neck folds, may be involved.

b. Scattered red papules or nodules—Such findings in immunocompromised patients may represent cutaneous dissemination.

c. Paronychia and onychomycosis—These conditions occur in immunocompetent children but are also associated with immunosuppression, hypoparathyroidism, or adrenal insufficiency (Candida endocrinopathy syndrome). The selective absence of specific innate and T-cell responses to Candida can lead to marked, chronic skin and nail infections called chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis.

d. Chronic draining otitis media—This may occur in patients who have received multiple courses of antibiotics and are superinfected with Candida.

4. Enteric infection—Esophageal involvement in immunocompromised patients is the most common enteric manifestation, resulting in substernal pain, dysphagia, and painful swallowing. Nausea and vomiting are common in young children. Most patients do not have thrush. Stomach or intestinal ulcers also occur.

5. Pulmonary infection—Because the organism frequently colonizes the upper respiratory tract, it is commonly isolated from respiratory secretions. Thus, demonstration of tissue invasion is needed to diagnose Candida pneumonia or tracheitis. It is rare, seen mainly in immunosuppressed patients and patients intubated for long periods, usually while taking

antibiotics. The infection may cause abscesses, nodular infiltrates, and effusion.

6. Renal infection—Candiduria may be the only manifestation of disseminated disease. More often, candiduria is associated with instrumentation, an indwelling catheter, or anatomic abnormality of the urinary tract. Symptoms of cystitis may be present. Masses of Candida may obstruct ureters and cause obstructive nephropathy. Candida casts in the urine suggest renal tissue infection.

7. Other infections—Myocarditis, meningitis, and osteomyelitis usually occur only in immunocompromised patients or neonates, generally in those with high-grade candidemia. Endocarditis may occur on an artificial or abnormal heart valve, especially when an intravascular line is present.

8. Disseminated candidiasis—Skin and mucosal colonization precedes but does not predict dissemination. Too often, dissemination is confused with bacterial sepsis. This occurs in neonates—especially premature infants—in an intensive care unit setting and is recognized when a sick infant fails to respond to antibiotics or when candidemia is documented. Invasive disease can occur in > 50% of very low-birth-weight infants. These infants often have unexplained feeding intolerance, cardiovascular instability, apnea, new or worsening respiratory failure, glucose intolerance, thrombocytopenia, or hyperbilirubinemia. A careful search in immunocompromised patients should be carried out for lesions suggestive of disseminated Candida (retinal cotton-wool spots or chorioretinitis; nodular dermal abscesses). If these findings are absent, diagnosis is often based presumptively on the presence of a compatible illness in an immunocompromised patient; a burn patient; or a patient with prolonged postsurgical or intensive care unit course who has no other cause for symptoms and who fails to respond to antimicrobials. Such patients usually have Candida colonization of mucosal surfaces. Treatment for presumptive infection is often undertaken because candidemia is not identified antemortem in many such patients.

Hepatosplenic and renal candidiasis occurs in immunosuppressed patients. The typical case is a severely neutropenic patient who develops chronic fever, variable abdominal pain, and abnormal liver function tests. No causative bacterial pathogen is isolated, and there is no response to antimicrobials. Ultrasound or CT scan of the liver, spleen, and kidney demonstrates multiple round lesions. Biopsy is needed to confirm the diagnosis.

B. Laboratory Findings

Budding yeast cells are easily seen in scrapings or other samples. A wet mount preparation of vaginal secretions is 40%–50% sensitive; this is increased to 50%–70% with the addition of 10% potassium hydroxide to the sample. The use of a Gram-stained smear is 70%–100% sensitive. The presence of pseudohyphae suggests tissue invasion. Positive cultures from nonsterile sites may reflect colonization and need to be carefully evaluated, but Candida should never be considered a contaminant in cultures from normally sterile sites. Candida grows on routine media more slowly than many bacteria; growth is usually evident on agar after 2–3 days and in blood culture within 3, but cultures may remain negative (10%–40%) even with disseminated disease or endocarditis. Newly available spectrophotometric methods greatly shorten the delay in diagnosis and speciation. Candida in any number in appropriately collected urine suggests true infection. The ability of yeast to form germ tubes when incubated in human serum gives a presumptive speciation for C albicans.

» Differential Diagnosis

Thrush may resemble milk or formula (which can be easily wiped away with a tongue blade or swab, revealing normal mucosa without underlying erythema or erosion), other types of ulcers (including herpes), or oral changes induced by chemotherapy. Skin lesions may resemble contact, allergic, chemical, or bacterial dermatitis; miliaria; folliculitis; or eczema. Vulvovaginitis needs to be distinguished from other causes of vaginal discharge and discomfort. Candidemia and systemic infection should be considered in any seriously ill patient with the risk factors previously mentioned.

» Complications

Arthritis and meningitis occur more often in neonates than in older children, and abscesses can occur in any organ. The greater the length or extent of immunosuppression and the longer the delay before therapy, the more likely that complications will occur.

» Treatment

A. Oral Candidiasis

In infants, oral nystatin suspension (100,000 units four to six times a day in the buccal fold after feeding until resolution) usually suffices. Nystatin must come in contact with the lesions because it is not absorbed systemically. Older children may use it as a mouthwash (200,000–500,000 units five times a day), although it is poorly tolerated because of its taste. Clotrimazole troches (10 mg) four times a day are an alternative in older children. Prolonged therapy with either agent or more frequent dosing may be needed. Painting the lesions with a cotton swab dipped in gentian violet (0.5%–1%) is visually dramatic and messy but may help refractory cases. Eradication of Candida from pacifiers, bottle nipples, toys, or the mother's breasts (if the infant is breast-feeding and there is candidal infection of the nipples) may be helpful.

Oral azoles, such as fluconazole (6 mg/kg/d), are effective in older children with candidal infection refractory to nystatin. Discontinuation of antibiotics or corticosteroids is advised when possible.

B. Skin Infection

Cutaneous infection usually responds to a cream or lotion containing nystatin, amphotericin B, or an imidazole (miconazole, clotrimazole, and others). Associated inflammation such as severe diaper dermatitis is helped by concurrent use of a topical low concentration corticosteroid cream, such as 1% hydrocortisone. It may help to keep the involved area dry; a heat lamp and nystatin powder may be used. Suppression of intestinal Candida with nystatin and eradicating thrush may speed recovery and prevent recurrence of diaper dermatitis.

C. Vaginal Infections

Vulvovaginal candidiasis (see Chapter 44) is treated with clotrimazole, miconazole, triazoles, or nystatin (cheapest if generic is used) suppositories or creams, usually applied once nightly for 3–7 days. A high-dose topical clotrimazole formulation need to be given for only a single night. Oral azole therapy is equally effective. A single 150-mg oral dose of fluconazole is effective for vaginitis. It is more expensive but very convenient. Candida balanitis in sexual partners should be treated, but no controlled study has shown that treating colonization of male sexual partners prevents recurrence in females. Frequent recurrent infections may require elimination of risk factors, the use of oral therapy, or some prophylactic antifungal therapy, such as a single dose of fluconazole weekly for 6 months.

D. Renal Infection

Candiduria in an immunocompetent host with a urinary catheter may respond to catheter removal. Candiduria is treated in all high-risk patients, usually with a 7- to 14-day course of fluconazole (3–6 mg/kg/d), which is concentrated in the urine. Amphotericin B is warranted for patients with fluconazole-resistant organisms. Renal abscesses or ureteral fungus balls require intravenous antifungal therapy. Removal of an indwelling catheter is imperative.

E. Systemic infection

1. Disseminated Candida infection—Systemic infection is dangerous and resistant to therapy. Surgical drainage of abscesses and removal of all infected tissue (eg, a heart valve) are required for cure. Hepatosplenic candidiasis should be treated until all lesions have disappeared or are calcified on imaging studies. Treatment with lipid forms of amphotericin B retain the antifungal potency of the free drug and are much better tolerated. Although they are much more expensive than amphotericin B, they are indicated for patients who are intolerant of conventional therapy and for those whose infection is refractory to treatment or who have a high likelihood of developing renal toxicity from amphotericin B therapy.

Flucytosine (50–75 mg/kg/d orally in four doses; keep serum levels < 75 mcg/mL) may be additive or synergistic to amphotericin B. Unlike amphotericin B, flucytosine penetrates tissues well. It should not be used as a single agent in serious infections because resistance develops rapidly.

Fluconazole and itraconazole (best absorbed from the liquid solution) and newer azole drugs, such as voriconazole and posaconazole, or echinocandins, are used interchangeably or in conjunction with amphotericin. They are often preferred because they are less likely to be toxic. They are acceptable alternatives for serious C albicans infections in nonneutropenic patients and are often effective as first-line therapy in immunocompromised patients. Fluconazole is well absorbed (oral and intravenous therapy are equivalent), reasonably nontoxic, and effective for a variety of Candida infections. Fluconazole dosage is 8–12 mg/kg/d in a single daily dose for initial therapy of severely ill children. Selected patients with prolonged immunosuppression (eg, after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation) should receive prophylactic azole, echinocandin, or intermittent amphotericin B prophylaxis. The decision to use systemic azole therapy should include consideration of the local experience with azole-resistant Candida and if the patient had recent prophylaxis or treatment with azoles. Susceptibility testing for Candida species is available to guide this decision. Candida glabrata and C krusei are common isolates that may be resistant to fluconazole; these are often susceptible to the newer azoles and echinocandins. Candida lusitaniae is usually resistant to amphotericin.

Correction of predisposing factors is important (eg, discontinuing antibiotics and immunosuppressives, improving control of diabetes, and removing infected devices and lines).

2. Candidemia—Infected central venous lines should be removed immediately; this alone often is curative. If the infection is considered limited to the line and environs, a 14-day course (after the last positive culture) of a systemic antifungal agent following line removal is recommended for nonneutropenic patients. This is because of the late occurrence of focal Candida infection, especially retinal infection, in some cases. Persistent fever and candidemia suggest infected thrombus, endocarditis, or tissue infection.

» Prognosis

Superficial disease in normal hosts has a good prognosis; in abnormal hosts, it may be refractory to therapy.

Early therapy of systemic disease is often curative if the underlying immune response is adequate. The outcome is poor when therapy is delayed or when host response is inadequate. Candidemia in the severely premature neonate increases the chance of death and poor neurodevelopmental outcome.

Barton M et al: Invasive candidiasis in low birth weight infants: risk factors, clinical course and outcome in a prospective multicenter study of cases and their matched controls. BMC Infect Dis 2014;14:327 [PMID: 24924877].

Lollis TR, Bradshaw WT: Fungal prophylaxis in neonates: a review article. Adv Neonatal Care 2014;14(1):17 [PMID: 24472884].

Pappas PG et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the management of candidiasis: 2009 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2009;48:503 [PMID: 19191635].

Coccidioidomycosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Residence in, or travel to, an endemic area.
- Primary pulmonary form: fever, chest pain, cough, anorexia, weight loss, and often a macular rash, erythema nodosum, or erythema multiforme.
- Primary cutaneous form: skin trauma followed in 1–3 weeks by an ulcer and regional adenopathy.
- Spherules seen in pus, sputum, CSF, joint fluid; positive culture.
- Appearance of precipitating (early) and complement-fixing antibodies (late).

» General Considerations

Coccidioidomycosis is caused by the dimorphic fungus Coccidioides (immitis or posadasii), which are endemic in the Sonoran Desert areas of western Texas, southern New Mexico and Arizona, southern California, northern Mexico, and South America. Infection results from inhalation or inoculation of arthrospores (highly contagious and readily airborne in the dry climate). Even brief travel in or through an endemic area, especially during windy seasons, may result in infection. Human-to-human transmission does not occur. More than half of all infections are asymptomatic, and less than 5% are associated with significant pulmonary disease. Chronic pulmonary disease or dissemination occurs in less than 1% of cases.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Primary disease—The incubation period is 10–16 days (range, 7–28 days). Symptoms vary from those of a mild fever and arthralgia to severe influenza-like illness with high fever, nonproductive cough, pleuritic chest pains, arthralgias, headache, and night sweats. Upper respiratory tract signs are uncommon. Signs vary from none to rash, rales, pleural rubs, and signs of pulmonary consolidation. Weight loss may occur.

2. Skin disease—Up to 10% of children develop erythema nodosum or erythema multiforme. These manifestations imply a favorable host response to the organism. Less specific maculopapular eruptions occur in a larger number of children. Skin lesions can occur following fungemia. Primary skin inoculation sites develop indurated ulcers with local adenopathy. Contiguous involvement of skin from deep infection in nodes or bone also occurs. The presence of chronic skin lesions should lead to a search for internal infection.

3. Chronic pulmonary disease—This is uncommon in children. Chronic disease is manifested by chronic cough (occasionally with hemoptysis), weight loss, pulmonary consolidation, effusion, cavitation, or pneumothorax.

4. Disseminated disease—This is less common in children than adults, and is more common in infants, neonates, pregnant women (especially during the third trimester), black people, Filipinos, American Indians, and patients with HIV or other types of immunosuppression. More than one organ may be involved. The most common extra-pulmonary sites involved are bone or joint (usually a single bone or joint; subacute or chronic swelling, pain, redness), nodes, meninges (slowly progressive meningeal signs, ataxia, vomiting, headache, and cranial neuropathies), and kidneys (dysuria and urinary frequency). As with most fungal diseases, the evolution of the illness is usually slow.

B. Laboratory Findings

Direct examination of respiratory secretions, pus, CSF, or tissue may reveal large spherules (30–60 μm) containing endospores germinating in tissue. The organism is detected by using periodic acid–Schiff reagent, methenamine silver, and calcofluor stains. Characteristic colonies grow within 2–5 days on routine fungal and many other media. CSF cultures are often falsely negative.

The sedimentation rate is usually elevated. Eosinophilia may occur, particularly prior to dissemination, and is more common in coccidioidomycosis than in many other conditions with similar symptoms. Meningitis causes a

mononuclear pleocytosis (70% contain eosinophils) with elevated protein and mild hypoglycorrhachia.

Antibodies consist of precipitins (usually measurable by 2–3 weeks in 90% of cases and gone by 12 weeks) and complement-fixing antibodies (delayed for several weeks; appear as the precipitins are falling and should disappear by 8 months). Thus, serum precipitins usually indicate acute infection. The extent of the complement-fixing antibody response reflects the severity of infection. Persistent high levels suggest dissemination. ELISA assays, which detect IgM and IgG antibodies against coccidioidal antigens, become positive in some patients as early as 1–3 weeks after onset of symptoms. The presence of antibody in CSF indicates CNS infection; CSF and serum antibody titers correlate with disease progression and response to therapy.

Galactomannan antigen from Coccidioides is detected in urine and serum of patients. This occurs more frequently in severe disease compared to moderate disease. Testing both types of specimens should provide a diagnosis overall in more than 75% of patients.

C. Imaging

Approximately half of symptomatic infections are associated with abnormal chest radiographs—usually infiltrates with hilar adenopathy. Pulmonary consolidation, effusion, and thin-walled cavities may be seen. About 5% of infected patients have asymptomatic nodules or cysts after recovery. Unlike tuberculosis reactivation, apical disease is not prominent. Bone infection causes osteolysis that enhances with technetium. Cerebral imaging may show hydrocephalus and meningitis; intracranial abscesses and calcifications are unusual. Radiographic evolution of all lesions is slow.

» Differential Diagnosis

Primary pulmonary infection resembles acute viral, bacterial, or mycoplasmal infections; subacute presentation mimics tuberculosis, histoplasmosis, and blastomycosis. Chronic pulmonary or disseminated disease must be differentiated from cancer, tuberculosis, or other fungal infections.

» Complications

Dissemination of primary pulmonary disease is associated with permissive ethnic background, prolonged fever (> 1 month), a negative skin test, high complement-fixation antibody titer, and marked hilar adenopathy. Local pulmonary complications include effusion, empyema, and pneumothorax. Cerebral infection can cause noncommunicating hydrocephalus due to basilar meningitis.

» Treatment

A. Specific Measures

Mild pulmonary infections in most normal patients require no therapy. These patients should be assessed for 1–2 years to document resolution and to identify any complications. Antifungal therapy is used for prolonged fever, weight loss (> 10%), prolonged duration of night sweats, severe pneumonitis (especially if persisting for 4–6 weeks), or any form of disseminated disease. Neonates, pregnant women, high-risk racial background, and patients with high antibody titers also receive treatment.

Lipid formulation of amphotericin B is used to treat extensive pulmonary or disseminated disease or disease in immunosuppressed patients (2–5 mg/kg/d). In general, the more rapidly progressive the infection, the more compelling the case for amphotericin B therapy. For less severe disease and for meningeal disease, fluconazole or itraconazole are preferred (duration of therapy is 3–6 months or is lifelong for meningeal disease). Measurement of serum levels is suggested to monitor therapy. Chronic fibrocavitary pneumonia is treated for at least 12 months. Itraconazole may be superior to fluconazole. Refractory infection often responds to voriconazle together with caspofungin, and refractory meningitis may require prolonged intrathecal or intraventricular amphotericin B therapy.

B. General Measures

Most pulmonary infections require only symptomatic therapy, self-limited activity, and good nutrition. Patients are not contagious.

C. Surgical Measures

Excision of chronic pulmonary cavities or abscesses may be needed. Infected nodes, sinus tracts, and bone are other operable lesions. Azole therapy should be given prior to surgery to prevent dissemination and should be continued for 4 weeks arbitrarily or until other criteria for cure are met.

» Prognosis

Most patients recover. Even with amphotericin B, however, disseminated disease may be fatal, especially in those racially predisposed to severe disease. Reversion of the skin test to negative or a rising complement-fixing antibody titer is an ominous sign. Individuals who later in life undergo immunosuppressive therapy or develop HIV may experience reactivation of dormant disease. Thus, some transplant, rheumatology, and oncology programs determine prior infection by serology and either provide prophylaxis or observe patients closely during periods of intense immune suppression.

McCarty JM et al: Pediatric coccidioidomycosis in central California: a retrospective case series. Clin Infect Dis 2013;56(11):1579 [PMID: 23463637].

Cryptococcosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Acute pneumonitis in immunocompetent individuals.
- Immunosuppressed patients especially vulnerable to CNS infection (headache, vomiting, cranial nerve palsies, meningeal signs; mononuclear cell pleocytosis).
- Cryptococcal antigen detected in CSF; also in serum and urine in some patients.
- Cryptococcus is readily isolated on routine media.

General Considerations

Cryptococcus neoformans is a ubiquitous soil yeast. It survives best in soil contaminated with bird excrement, especially that of pigeons. However, most infections in humans are not associated with a history of significant contact with birds. Inhalation is the presumed route of inoculation. Infections in children are rare, even in heavily immunocompromised patients such as those with HIV infection. Immunocompetent individuals can also be infected, especially by Cryptococcus gattii, which is an emerging pathogen in Canada and the Pacific Northwest. Asymptomatic carriage does not occur.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Pulmonary disease—Pulmonary infection precedes dissemination to other organs. It is frequently asymptomatic (ie, many older children and adults have serologic evidence of prior infection) and less often clinically apparent than cryptococcal meningitis. Pneumonia is the primary manifestation in one-third of patients; CNS disease is the primary manifestation in 50% of patients. Cryptococcal pneumonia may coexist with CNS involvement. Symptoms are nonspecific and subacute—cough, weight loss, and fatigue.

2. Meningitis—The most common clinical disease is meningitis, which follows hematogenous spread from a pulmonary focus. This is much more likely to occur in an immunosuppressed patient (especially HIV). Symptoms of headache, vomiting, and fever occur over days to months. Meningeal signs and papilledema are common. Cranial nerve dysfunction and seizures may occur.

3. Other forms—Cutaneous forms are usually secondary to dissemination. Papules, pustules, and ulcerating nodules are typical. Bones (rarely joints) may be infected; osteolytic areas are seen, and the process may resemble osteosarcoma. Many other organs, especially the eyes, can be involved with dissemination.

B. Laboratory Findings

The CSF usually has a lymphocytic pleocytosis; it may be completely normal in immunosuppressed patients with meningeal infection. Direct microscopy may reveal organisms in sputum, CSF, or other specimens. The capsular antigen can be detected by latex agglutination or ELISA, which are both sensitive (> 90%) and specific. False-negative CSF tests occur rarely. Serum, CSF, and urine should be tested when this infection is suspected. The serum may be negative if the only organ infected is the lung. The organism grows well after several days on many routine media; for optimal culture, collecting and concentrating a large volume of CSF (10 mL) is recommended because the number of organisms may be low.

C. Imaging

Radiographic findings are usually lower lobe infiltrates or nodular densities; less often effusions; and rarely cavitation, hilar adenopathy, or calcification. Single or multiple focal mass lesions (cryptococcoma) may be detected in the CNS on CT or MRI scan.

Differential Diagnosis

Cryptococcal meningitis may mimic tuberculosis, viral meningoencephalitis, meningitis due to other fungi, or a space-occupying CNS lesion. Lung infection is difficult to differentiate from many causes of pneumonia.

Complications

Hydrocephalus may be caused by chronic basilar meningitis. Symptomatic and recalcitrant intracranial hypertension is common. Significant pulmonary or osseous disease may accompany the primary infection or dissemination.

Treatment

Patients with symptomatic pulmonary disease should receive fluconazole for 3–6 months. All immunocompromised patients with cryptococcal pulmonary disease should have a lumbar puncture to rule out CNS infection; this should also be done for immunocompetent patients with cryptococcal antigen in the serum. Severely ill patients should receive amphotericin B (0.7 mg/kg/d). Meningitis is treated with amphotericin B (increase dose to 1 mg/kg/d) and flucytosine (100 mg/kg/d). This combination is synergistic and allows lower doses of amphotericin B to be used. Induction therapy is usually

2 weeks for CNS infections. Fluconazole can be substituted for flucytosine. After this, fluconazole alone (10 mg/kg/d) is maintained for 8 weeks and then continued at a reduced dose (determined by moderate serum levels) for an additional 6–12 months. Some evidence suggests that voriconazole or posaconazole may have greater anticryptococcal activity. Fluconazole remains the preferred maintenance therapy to prevent relapses in high-risk (eg, HIV) patients. CSF antigen levels should be checked after 2 weeks of therapy. Intracranial hypertension is treated by frequent spinal taps or a lumbar drain.

» Prognosis

Treatment failure, including death, is common in immunosuppressed patients, especially those with AIDS. Lifelong maintenance therapy may be required in these patients. Poor prognostic signs are the presence of extrameningeal disease, fewer than 20 cells/μL of initial CSF, and initial CSF antigen titer greater than 1:32.

La Hoz RM, Pappas PG: Cryptococcal infections: changing epidemiology and implications for therapy. Drugs 2013;73:495–504 [PMID: 23575940].

Histoplasmosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Residence in or travel to an endemic area.
- Pneumonia with flulike illness.
- If disseminated, hepatosplenomegaly, anemia, leukopenia.
- Histoplasmal antigen in urine, blood, bronchoalveolar lavage fluid or CSF.
- Detection by staining the organism in smears or tissue, or by culture.

» General Considerations

The dimorphic fungus Histoplasma capsulatum is found in the central and eastern United States (Ohio and Mississippi River valleys), Mexico, and most of South America. Soil contamination is enhanced by the presence of bat or bird feces. Infection is acquired by inhaling spores that transform into the pathogenic yeast form seen in infected tissues, especially within macrophages. Infections in endemic areas are very common at all ages and are usually asymptomatic. Over two-thirds of children are infected in these areas. Reactivation is rare in children, but occurs after treatment with immune suppressive agents, such as biological response modifiers and chemotherapy. Reactivation may occur years after primary infection. Reinfection also occurs. The extent of symptoms with primary infection or reinfection is influenced by the size of the infecting inoculum.

» Clinical Findings

Because human-to-human transmission does not occur, infection requires exposure in the endemic area—usually within prior weeks or months. Congenital infection does not occur.

A. Symptoms and Signs

1. Asymptomatic infection (90% of infections)—Asymptomatic histoplasmosis is usually diagnosed by the presence of scattered calcifications in lungs or spleen and a positive skin test or serology. The calcification may resemble that caused by tuberculosis, but may be more extensive than the usual Ghon complex.

2. Pneumonia—Approximately 5% of patients have mild to moderate disease. The cause of this illness is usually not recognized as being histoplasma. Acute pulmonary disease may resemble influenza with fever, malaise, myalgia, arthralgia, and cough occurring 1–3 weeks after a heavy exposure (may be longer with less intense exposure). The subacute form resembles infections such as tuberculosis with cough, weight loss, night sweats, and pleurisy. Chronic disease is unusual in children. Physical examination may be normal, or rales may be heard. A small number of patients may have immune-mediated signs such as arthritis, pericarditis, and erythema nodosum. The usual duration of the disease is less than 2 weeks, followed by complete resolution, but symptoms may last several months before resolving without antifungal therapy.

3. Disseminated infection (5% of infections)—Fungemia during primary infection probably occurs in the first 2 weeks of all infections, including those with minimal symptoms. Transient hepatosplenomegaly may occur, but resolution is the rule in immunocompetent individuals. Heavy exposure, severe underlying pulmonary disease, and immunocompromise are risk factors for progressive infection characterized by anemia, fever, weight loss, organomegaly, bone marrow involvement, and death. Dissemination may occur in otherwise immunocompetent children; usually they are younger than age 2 years.

4. Other forms—Ocular involvement consists of multifocal choroiditis. This usually occurs in immunocompetent adults who exhibit other evidence of disseminated disease. Brain, pericardium, intestine, and skin (oral ulcers and nodules) are other sites that can be involved. Adrenal gland involvement is common with systemic disease.

B. Laboratory Findings

Routine tests are normal or nonspecific in the benign forms. Pancytopenia is present in many patients with disseminated

disease. The diagnosis can be made by demonstrating the organism by histology or culture. Tissue yeast forms are small and may be mistaken for artifact. They are usually found in macrophages, occasionally in peripheral blood leukocytes in severe disease, but infrequently in sputum, urine, or CSF. Cultures of infected fluids or tissues may yield the organism after 1–4 weeks of incubation on fungal media, but even cultures of bronchoalveolar lavage or transbronchial biopsy specimens in immunocompromised patients are often negative (15%). Thus, bone marrow and tissue specimens are needed. Detection of histoplasmal antigen in blood, urine, CSF, and bronchoalveolar lavage fluid is the most sensitive diagnostic test (90% positive in the urine with disseminated disease, 75% positive with acute pneumonia), but false-negative results may occur. Both urine and serum should be tested for optimal results. The level of antigen correlates with the extent of the infection, and antigen levels can be used to follow the response to therapy and to indicate low-grade infection persisting after completion of therapy (eg, in a child with HIV infection).

Antibodies may be detected by immunodiffusion and complement fixation; the latter rises in the first 2–6 weeks of illness and falls thereafter unless dissemination occurs. Cross-reactions occur with some other endemic fungi. A single high titer or rising titer indicates a high likelihood of disease, but antigen detection has replaced serology as a rapid diagnostic test.

C. Imaging

Scattered pulmonary calcifications in a well child are typical of past infection. Bronchopneumonia (focal mid-lung infiltrates) occurs with acute disease, often with hilar and mediastinal adenopathy, occasionally with nodules, but seldom with effusion. Localized or patchy infiltrates occur in subacute disease. Apical cavitation occurs with chronic infection, often on the background of preexisting pulmonary infection.

» Differential Diagnosis

Pulmonary disease resembles viral infection, other causes of community acquired pneumonia, tuberculosis, coccidioidomycosis, and blastomycosis. Systemic disease resembles disseminated fungal or mycobacterial infection, leukemia, histiocytosis, or cancer.

» Treatment

Most patients with acute pulmonary disease will benefit from oral itraconazole. Those with subacute disease are generally better when the diagnosis is established, but if still symptomatic should receive oral therapy. Treatment with lipid formulation of amphotericin B (2–5 mg/kg/d) is indicated for severe pulmonary disease (diffuse radiographic involvement); disseminated disease; or when endovascular, CNS, or chronic pulmonary disease is present; and for children younger than age 1 year. Disseminated disease in infants may respond to as few as 10 days of amphotericin B, although 4–6 weeks is usually recommended. Patients with severe disease (especially pulmonary) may benefit from a short course of corticosteroid therapy. Surgical excision of chronic pulmonary lesions is rarely required. Itraconazole (3–5 mg/kg/d for 6–12 weeks; achieve peak serum level of > 1.0 mcg/mL) appears to be equivalent to amphotericin B therapy for mild disease and can be substituted in severe disease after a favorable initial (2 weeks) response to amphotericin B. With chronic pulmonary, CNS, or disseminated disease, prolonged therapy for at least a year should be considered.

Quantitation of fungal antigen is useful for directing therapy, and should be monitored for 1 year after successful treatment of severe disease. Relapse may occur in up to 15% of patients with treated chronic disease. Histoplasmosis can reactivate in previously infected individuals who subsequently become immunosuppressed. Chronically immunosuppressed patients may require lifelong maintenance therapy with itraconazole.

» Prognosis

Patients with mild and moderately severe infections have a good prognosis. With early diagnosis and treatment, infants with disseminated disease usually recover; the prognosis worsens if the immune response is poor.

Hage CA, Knox CS, Davis TE, Wheat LJ: Antigen detection in bronchoalveolar fluid for diagnosis of fungal pneumonia. Curr Opin Pulm Med 2011;17(3):167 [PMID: 21311331].

McKinsey DS, McKinsey JP: Pulmonary histoplasmosis. Sem Respir Crit Care Med 2011;32(6):735 [PMID: 22167401].

Sporotrichosis

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

- Subacute cutaneous ulcers.
- New lesions appearing proximal to existing lesions along a draining lymphatic.
- Absence of systemic symptoms.
- Isolation of Sporothrix schenckii from wound drainage or biopsy.

» General Considerations

Sporotrichosis is caused by Sporothrix schenckii, a dimorphic fungus present as a mold in soil, plants, and plant products from most areas of North and South America. Spores of the fungus can cause infection when they breach the skin at

areas of minor trauma. Sporotrichosis has been transmitted from cutaneous lesions of pets.

» Clinical Findings

Cutaneous disease is by far the most common manifestation. Typically at the site of inapparent skin injury, an initial papular lesion will slowly become nodular and ulcerate. Subsequent new lesions develop in a similar fashion proximally along lymphatics draining the primary lesion. This sequence of developing painless, chronic ulcers in a linear pattern is strongly suggestive of the diagnosis. Solitary lesions may exist and some lesions may develop a verrucous character. Systemic symptoms are absent and laboratory evaluations are normal, except for acute-phase reactants. The fungus rarely disseminates in immunocompetent hosts. Cavitary pneumonia is an uncommon manifestation when patients inhale the spores. Immunocompromised patients, especially those with HIV infection, may develop disseminated skin lesions and multiorgan disease with extensive pneumonia.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of nodular lymphangitis (sporotrichoid infection) includes other endemic fungi and some bacteria, especially atypical mycobacteria, pyoderma gangrenosum, nocardiosis, and syphilis. Diagnosis is made by culture. Biopsy of skin lesions will demonstrate a suppurative response with granulomas and provides the best source for laboratory isolation. Occasionally, the characteristic yeast will be seen in the biopsy.

» Treatment & Prognosis

Treatment is with itraconazole (200 mg/d or 5 mg/kg/d) for 2–4 weeks after lesions heal, usually 3–6 months. Prognosis is excellent with lymphocutaneous disease in immunocompetent children. Pulmonary or osteoarticular disease, especially in immunocompromised individuals, requires longer therapy. Amphotericin B may be required for disseminated disease, CNS disease, and severe pulmonary disease. Surgical debridement may be required.

Barros MB, de Almeida Paes R, Schubach AO: Sporothrix schenckii and sporotrichosis. Clin Micro Rev 2011;24(4):633 [PMID: 21976602].

Vasquez-del-Mercado E, Arenas R, Padilla-Desgarenes C: Sporotrichosis. Clin Dermatol 2012;30(4):437 [PMID: 22682194].

PNEUMOCYSTIS AND OTHER OPPORTUNISTIC FUNGAL INFECTIONS

The name of this category indicates that fungi that are normally not pathogenic, or do not cause severe disease, may do so when given the opportunity by changes in host defenses. They occur most commonly when patients are treated with corticosteroids, antineoplastic drugs, or radiation, thereby reducing the number or function of neutrophils and T cells. Inborn errors in immune function (combined immunodeficiency or chronic granulomatous disease) may also be complicated by these fungal infections. Opportunistic infections are facilitated by altering the normal flora with antibiotics and by disruption of mucous membranes or skin with antineoplastic therapy or indwelling lines and tubes.

Table 43–4 indicates that filamentous fungi are prominent causes of severe systemic fungal disease in immunocompromised patients. Aspergillus species (usually fumigatus) and Zygomycetes (usually Mucorales) cause subacute pneumonia and sinusitis and should be considered when these conditions do not respond to antibiotics in immunocompromised patients. Aspergillus species also commonly cause invasive disease in patients with chronic granulomatous disease. Mucormycosis is especially likely to produce severe sinusitis in patients with chronic acidosis when the diabetes is poorly controlled. This fungus may invade the orbit and cause brain infection. Mucormycosis also occurs in patients receiving iron chelation therapy. These fungal infections may disseminate widely. Imaging procedures may suggest the etiology, but they are best diagnosed by aspiration or biopsy of infected tissues. A characteristic CT finding is the "halo sign," which is a ground-glass opacity surrounding a pulmonary nodule or mass. The "reversed halo sign" is a focal rounded ground-glass opacity surrounded by a crescent or complete ring of consolidation. Detection of galactomannose and β-D-glucan in blood and alveolar fluid is useful for the diagnosis of presumptive of aspergillosis and other opportunistic fungal pathogens.

Although Cryptococcus can cause disease in the immune competent hosts, it is more likely to be clinically apparent and severe in immunocompromised patients. This yeast causes pneumonia and is a prominent cause of fungal meningitis. Candida species in these patients cause fungemia and multiorgan disease, with lungs, esophagus, liver, and spleen frequently affected (see the earlier section on Disseminated Candida Infection).

Opportunistic fungal infections should always be included in the differential diagnosis of unexplained fever or pulmonary infiltrates in immunocompromised patients. These pathogens should be aggressively pursued with imaging studies and with tissue sampling when clues are available. Cryptococcus and Aspergillus may be demonstrated with specific antigen tests. Opportunistic infections are difficult to treat because of the deficiencies in host immune response. Treatment should be undertaken with consultants who are expert in managing these infections. Voriconazole is the drug of choice for many mold infections,

Table 43–4. Unusual fungal infections in children.

Organism	Predisposing Factors	Route of Infection	Clinical Disease	Diagnostic Tests	Therapy and Comments
Aspergillus species	None	Inhalation of spores	Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis; wheezing, cough, migratory infiltrates, eosinophilia.	Organisms in sputum; positive skin test; specific IgE antibody; elevated IgE levels.	Hypersensitivity to fungal antigens. Use steroids. Antifungals may not be needed.
	Immunosuppression	Inhalation of spores	Progressive pulmonary disease: consolidation, nodules, abscesses. Sinusitis Disseminated disease: usually lung, brain; occasionally intestine, kidney, heart, bone. Invades blood vessels.	Demonstrate fungus in tissues by stain or culture; septate hyphae branching at 45-degree angle; antigen/fungal component detection may be useful.	Amphotericin B, voriconazole, and oral caspofungin are equally effective; these can be used in combination.
Malassezia furfur, M pachydermatis	Central venous catheter, usually lipid infusion (can occur in the absence of lipid)	Line infection from skin colonization	Sepsis; pneumonitis, thrombocytopenia.	Culture of catheter or blood on lipid-enriched media (for M furfur; M pachydermatis does not need lipid). Fungus may be seen in buffy coat.	Discontinuation of lipid may be sufficient. Remove catheter. Short-term amphotericin B may be added. Organism ubiquitous on normal skin; requires long-chain fatty acids for growth.
Mucorales (Mucor, Rhizopus, Absidia)	Immunosuppression, diabetic acidosis, iron overload	Inhalation, mucosal colonization	Rhinocerebral: sinus, nose, necrotizing vasculitis; central nervous system spread. Pulmonary. Disseminated: any organ.	Demonstrate broad aseptate hyphae branching at 90-degree angles in tissues by stain Culture: rapidly growing, fluffy fungus.	Amphotericin B, surgical debridement; voriconazole and posaconazole also often effective or can be used as a second agent for combined therapy. Poor prognosis.
Scedosporium spp	Immunosuppression	Inhalation	Disseminated abscesses (lung, brain, liver, spleen, other).	Culture of pus or tissue.	Surgical drainage; voriconazole or caspofungin.
	Minor trauma	Cutaneous	Mycetoma (most common).	Yellow-white granules in pus. Culture.	Aggressive surgery. Amputation may be needed.

but both echinocandins and amphotericin B formulations are good alternatives. Serum levels of voriconazole should be determined to guide therapy. Combinations of current antifungal drugs are being tested to improve the outcome. Many children who will have depressed phagocytic and T-cell–mediated immune function for long periods (eg, after hematopoietic stem cell transplants) should receive antifungal prophylaxis during the period of severe immune suppression, most often with fluconazole or itraconazole. Very-low-birth-weight infants, who are at high risk for systemic Candida infection, often receive similar prophylaxis for prolonged periods.

Malassezia furfur is a yeast that normally causes the superficial skin infection known as tinea versicolor (see Chapter 15). This organism is considered an opportunist when fungemia is associated with prolonged intravenous therapy, especially with central lines used for hyperalimentation. The yeast, which requires skin lipids for its growth, can infect lines when lipids are present in the infusate. Some species will grow in the absence of lipids. Unexplained fever and thrombocytopenia are common. Pulmonary infiltrates may be present. The diagnosis is facilitated by alerting the bacteriology laboratory to add olive oil to culture media. The infection will respond to removal of the line or the lipid supplement. Amphotericin B may hasten resolution.

Lanternier F et al: Primary immunodeficiencies underlying fungal infections. Curr Opinion Pediatrics 2013;25(6):736 [PMID: 24240293].

Leroux S, Ullmann AJ: Management and diagnostic guidelines for fungal diseases in infectious diseases and clinical microbiology: critical appraisal. Clin Microbiology Infection 2013;19 (12):1115 [PMID: 24118188].

Steinbach WJ: Are we there yet? Recent progress in the molecular diagnosis and novel antifungal targeting of Aspergillus fumigates and invasive aspergillosis. PLos Pathogens 2013;9(10):e1003642 [PMID: 24204250].

Verweij PE, Warris A: Update on antifungal resistance in children: epidemiology and recommendations. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2013;32(5):556 [PMID: 23376939].

PNEUMOCYSTIS JIROVECI INFECTION

ESSENTIALS OF DIAGNOSIS & TYPICAL FEATURES

» Significant immunosuppression.

» Fever, tachypnea, cough, dyspnea.

» Hypoxemia; diffuse interstitial infiltrates.

» Detection of the organism in specimens of pulmonary origin.

» General Considerations

Although classified as a fungus on the basis of structural and nucleic acid characteristics, Pneumocystis responds readily to antiprotozoal drugs and antifols. It is a ubiquitous pathogen. Initial infection is presumed to occur asymptomatically via inhalation, usually in early childhood, and to become a clinical problem upon reactivation during immune suppression. There is evidence that person-to-person transmission may contribute to symptomatic disease in immune compromised individuals. In the normal host clinical disease rarely occurs. A syndrome of afebrile pneumonia similar to that caused by Chlamydia trachomatis in normal infants has been described, but its etiology is rarely appreciated. Whether by reactivation or new exposure, severe signs and symptoms occur chiefly in patients with abnormal T-cell function, such as hematologic malignancies and organ transplantation. Pneumocystis also causes severe pneumonia in patients with γ-globulin deficiency and is an AIDS-defining illness for children with advanced HIV infection. Prophylaxis usually prevents this infection (see Chapter 41).

Prolonged, high-dose corticosteroid therapy for any condition is a risk factor; onset of illness as steroids are tapered is a typical presentation. Severely malnourished infants with no underlying illness may also develop this infection, as can those with congenital immunodeficiency. The incubation period is usually at least 1 month after onset of immunosuppressive therapy.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In most patients, a gradual onset of fever, tachypnea, dyspnea, and mild, nonproductive cough occurs over 1–4 weeks. Initially the chest is clear, although retractions and nasal flaring are present. At this stage the illness is nonspecific. Hypoxemia out of proportion to the clinical and radiographic signs is an early finding; however, even minimally decreased arterial oxygen pressure values should suggest this diagnosis in immunosuppressed children. Tachypnea, nonproductive cough, and dyspnea progress. Respiratory failure and death occur without treatment. In some children with AIDS or severe immunosuppression from chemotherapy or organ transplantation, the onset may be abrupt and progression more rapid. Acute dyspnea with pleuritic pain may indicate the complication of pneumothorax.

The general examination is unremarkable except for tachypnea and tachycardia; rales may be absent. There are no upper respiratory signs, conjunctivitis, organomegaly, enanthem, or rash.

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings reflect the individual child's underlying illness and are not specific. Serum lactate dehydrogenase levels may be elevated markedly as a result of pulmonary damage. In moderately severe cases, the arterial oxygen pressure is less than 70 mm Hg or the alveolar-arterial gradient is less than 35 mm Hg.

C. Imaging

Early chest radiographs are normal. The classic pattern in later films is bilateral, interstitial, lower lobe alveolar disease starting in the perihilar regions, without effusion,

consolidation, or hilar adenopathy. High-resolution CT scanning may reveal extensive ground-glass attenuation or cystic lesions. Older HIV-infected patients present with other patterns, including nodular infiltrates, lobar pneumonia, cavities, and upper lobe infiltrates.

D. Diagnostic Findings

Diagnosis requires finding characteristic round (6–8 mm) cysts in a lung biopsy specimen, bronchial brushings, alveolar washings, induced sputum, or tracheal aspirates. Tracheal aspirates are less sensitive, but are more rapidly and easily obtained. They are more often negative in children with leukemia compared with those with HIV infection; presumably, greater immunosuppression permits replication of a larger numbers of organisms. Because pneumonia in immunosuppressed patients may have many causes, negative results from tracheal secretions should prompt more aggressive diagnostic attempts. Bronchial washing using fiberoptic bronchoscopy is usually well tolerated and rapidly performed.

Several rapid stains—as well as the standard methenamine silver stain—are useful. The indirect fluorescent antibody method is most sensitive. These methods require competent laboratory evaluation, because few organisms may be present and many artifacts may be found.

» Differential Diagnosis

In immunocompetent infants, C trachomatis pneumonia is the most common cause of the afebrile pneumonia syndrome described for Pneumocystis. In older immunocompromised children, the differential diagnosis includes influenza, respiratory syncytial virus, cytomegalovirus, adenovirus, and other viral infections; bacterial and fungal pneumonia; pulmonary emboli or hemorrhage; congestive heart failure; and Chlamydia pneumoniae and M pneumoniae infections. Lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis, which occurs in older infants with untreated HIV infection, is more indolent and the patient's lactate dehydrogenase level is normal (see Chapter 41). Pneumocystis pneumonia is rare in children who are complying with prophylactic regimens.

» Prevention

Children at high risk for developing Pneumocystis infection should receive prophylactic therapy. Children at risk include those with hematologic malignancies, children who for other reasons are receiving intensive chemotherapy or high-dose corticosteroids, and children with organ transplants or advanced HIV infection. All children born to HIV-infected mothers should receive prophylaxis against Pneumocystis starting at age 6 weeks unless HIV infection has been ruled out by tests for HIV in serum. If the infant is infected treatment is often continued for the first year of life, or until the patient's immunologic status is defined sufficiently to direct additional prophylaxis (see Chapter 41). The prophylaxis of choice is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (150 mg/m^2/d of trimethoprim and 750 mg/m^2/d of sulfamethoxazole) for 3 consecutive days of each week. Alternatives to this prophylaxis regimen are described in Chapter 41.

» Treatment

A. General Measures

Supplemental oxygen and nutritional support may be needed. The patient should be in respiratory isolation.

B. Specific Measures

Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (20 mg/kg/d of trimethoprim and 100 mg/kg/d of sulfamethoxazole in four divided doses intravenously or orally if well tolerated) is the treatment of choice. Improvement may not be seen for 3–5 days. Duration of treatment is 3 weeks in HIV-infected children. Methylprednisolone (2–4 mg/kg/d in four divided doses intravenously) should also be given to HIV-infected patients with moderate to severe infection (partial oxygen pressure < 70 mm Hg or alveolar-arterial gradient > 35) for the first 5 days of treatment. The dosage is reduced by 50% for the next 5 days and further by 50% until antibiotic treatment is completed. If trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is not tolerated or there is no clinical response in 5 days, pentamidine isethionate (4 mg/kg once daily by slow intravenous infusion) should be given. Clinical efficacy is similar with pentamidine, but adverse reactions are more common. These reactions include dysglycemia, pancreatitis, nephrotoxicity, and leukopenia. Other effective alternatives utilized in adults include atovaquone, trimethoprim plus dapsone, and primaquine plus clindamycin.

» Prognosis

The mortality rate is high in immunosuppressed patients who receive treatment late in the illness.

Calderon EJ et al: Pneumocystis infection in humans: diagnosis and treatment. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2010;8(6):683 [PMID: 20521896].

Carmona EM, Limper AH: Update on the diagnosis and treatment of Pneumocystis pneumonia. Ther Adv Respir Dis 2011;5(1):41 [PMID: 20736243].

44

Sexually Transmitted Infections

Daniel H. Reirden, MD
Ann-Christine Nyquist, MD, MSPH

The rate of sexually transmitted infections (STIs) acquired during adolescence remains high despite widespread educational programs and increased access to health care. By senior year in high school, nearly half of youth will have had sexual intercourse. The highest age-specific rates for gonorrhea, chlamydia, and human papillomavirus (HPV) infection occur in adolescents and young adults (15–24 years of age). While this age group accounts for only 25% of the sexually active population, it accounts for almost half of the incident STI infections. Adolescents contract STIs at a higher rate than adults because of sexual risk taking, age-related biologic factors, and barriers to health care access. In every state and the District of Columbia, adolescents can provide consent for the diagnosis and treatment of STIs without parental consent. Only one state requires the notification of a parent in the event of a positive test; 18 others allow for the disclosure to a parent. In many states, adolescents can also provide consent for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) counseling and testing. Since individual state laws vary, health care providers should be knowledgeable about the legal definitions regarding age of consent and confidentiality requirements in their state.

Providers should screen sexually experienced adolescents for STIs and use this opportunity to discuss risk reduction. Since not all adolescents receive regular preventive care, providers should use acute care visits to offer screening and education. Health education counseling should be nonjudgmental and appropriate for the developmental level, yet sufficiently thorough to identify risk behaviors because many adolescents may not readily acknowledge engaging in these behaviors.

ADOLESCENT SEXUALITY

The spectrum of sexual behavior includes holding hands and kissing, touching, mutual masturbation, oral-genital contact, and vaginal and anal intercourse. Each has its associated risks. A small, but statistically significant, trend has occurred in the epidemiology of sexual risk taking toward less sexual involvement and later onset of vaginal intercourse. The most recent Youth Risk Behavior Survey (2013) reports that 47% of high school students have had vaginal intercourse; 6% percent of teenagers initiated sex by age 13. Racial and gender differences exist; non-Hispanic black adolescents report a higher prevalence of sexual activity and an earlier age of initiation. Thirty-four percent of students had sex in the 3 months prior to the survey—49% of twelfth-graders and 20% of ninth-graders. Over 15% of students reported having had four or more lifetime sexual intercourse partners. Among those youth currently sexually active, 59% reported that either they or their partner had used a condom during their last sexual intercourse. Paradoxically, condom use decreases with age—63% of ninth-graders reported condom use at their last intercourse compared with 53% of twelfth-graders. Substance use contributes to an increase in risky sexual activity and 22% of sexually active youth report that they used alcohol or drugs prior to their last intercourse.

Although there may be variations among groups of teens, oral sex is relatively common in adolescents with approximately two-thirds of 15–24 year-olds reporting oral sexual activity. Anal intercourse occurs in both hetero- and homosexual populations. Adolescent development is a time of exploration, including one's sexual orientation. Frequently, teenagers may not identify themselves as gay, lesbian, or bisexual; thus, sensitive, nonjudgmental history taking is necessary to elicit a history of same-sex partners. Adolescents struggling with their emerging sexual orientation and associated stigma may engage in sexual activity with partners of both sexes or use substances to cope, thereby impairing their decision-making abilities.

Alexander SC et al. Sexuality talk during adolescent health maintenance visits. JAMA Pediatr 2014;168:163–169 [PMID: 24378686]. Doi:10.1001/jamapediatrics.2013.4338.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexual identity, sex of sexual contacts and health-risk behaviors among students in grades 9–12—youth risk behavior surveillance, selected sites, United States, 2001–2009. MMWR Surveill Summ 2011;60: 1–134 [PMID: 21659985].
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States, 2013. MMWR Surveill Summ 2014;63(SS–4) [PMID: 24918634].
Shafii T, Burstein G: The adolescent sexual health visit. Obstet Gynecol Clin N Am 2009;36:99 [PMID: 19344850]. http://www.guttmacher.org/statecenter/adolescents.html. Accessed February 2, 2016.

RISK FACTORS

Certain behaviors and experiences put the adolescent at higher risk for developing STIs. These include early age at sexual debut, lack of condom use, multiple partners, prior STI, history of STI in a partner, and sex with a partner who is three or more years older. The type of sex affects risk as well, with intercourse being riskier than oral sex. Other risk-taking behaviors associated with STIs in adolescents are smoking, alcohol use, drug use, dropping out of school, pregnancy, and depression.

The adolescent female is especially predisposed to chlamydia, gonorrhea, and HPV infection because the cervix during adolescence has an exposed squamocolumnar junction. The rapidly dividing cells in this area are especially susceptible to microorganism attachment and infection. During early to midpuberty, this junction slowly invaginates as the uterus and cervix mature, and by the late teens to early 20s the squamocolumnar junction is inside the cervix.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States 2013. MMWR Surveill Summ 2014;63(SS–4) [PMID: 24918634].

PREVENTION OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS

Efforts to reduce STI risk behavior should begin before the onset of sexual experimentation: first by helping youth personalize their risk for STIs and encouraging positive behaviors that minimize these risks, and then by enhancing communication skills with sexual partners about STI prevention, abstinence, and condom use.

Primary prevention focuses largely on education and risk-reduction techniques. It is essential to recognize that a key task of adolescence is developing a sexual identity. Teenagers are sexual beings that will decide if, when, and how they are going to initiate sexual involvement. Health care providers should routinely address sexuality as part of well-adolescent checkups. Being open and frank about the risks and benefits of each specific type of sexual activity will help youth think about their decision and the consequences. Although more than 90% of students have been taught about HIV infection and other STIs in school, adolescents still have a difficult time personalizing risk. Discussing prevalence, symptoms, and sequelae of STIs can raise awareness and help teenagers make informed decisions about initiating sexual activity and the use of safer sex techniques. Abstinence is theoretically an effective method of preventing sexually transmitted infections. However, many studies have failed to show sustainable protection. Making condoms available reiterates the message that safer sex is vital to health. Discussing condoms, dental dams, and the proper use of lubrication also facilitates safer sex practices. Condoms prevent infections with HIV, HPV, gonorrhea, Chlamydia, and herpes simplex virus (HSV). They are probably effective in preventing other STIs as well.

Secondary prevention requires identifying and treating STIs (see the next section Screening for Sexually Transmitted Infections) before infected individuals transmit infection to others. Access to confidential medical care is critical to this objective. Identifying and treating STIs in partners is essential in limiting the spread of these infections. Cooperation with the state or county health department is valuable, because these agencies assume the responsibility for locating the contacts of infected persons and ensuring appropriate treatment.

Tertiary prevention is directed toward complications of a specific illness. Examples of tertiary prevention would be treating pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) before infertility develops, following the serologic response to syphilis to prevent late-stage syphilis, treating cervicitis to prevent PID, or treating a chlamydial infection before epididymitis ensues.

Finally, preexposure vaccination against hepatitis B, hepatitis A, and HPV reduces the risk of acquiring these preventable STIs. All adolescents should have prior or current immunization against hepatitis B (see Chapter 10). However, because hepatitis B infection is frequently sexually transmitted, this vaccine is especially critical for all unvaccinated patients being evaluated for an STI. Hepatitis A vaccination is recommended for all individuals. Preexposure vaccination for HPV will decrease the risk for cervical dysplasia and cervical cancer in females, and decreases the risk for genital warts and both anal and oropharyngeal cancer in males and females, which can occur decades later (see Chapter 10).

SCREENING FOR SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS

The ability of the health care provider to obtain an accurate sexual history is crucial in prevention and control efforts. Teenagers should be asked open-ended questions about their sexual experiences to assess their risk for STIs. Questions must be clear to the youth, so choose language that the adolescent will understand. If the adolescent has ever

engaged in sexual activity, the provider needs to determine what kind of sexual activity (mutual masturbation or oral, anal, or vaginal sex); whether it has been opposite-sex, same-sex, or both; whether birth control and condoms were used; and whether it has been consensual or forced. During the interview, the clinician should take the opportunity to discuss risk-reduction techniques regardless of the history obtained from the youth.

A routine laboratory screening process is warranted if the patient has engaged in intercourse, presents with STI symptoms, or reports a partner with an STI. The availability of nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), primarily for Chlamydia and Neisseria gonorrhoeae, has changed the nature of STI screening and intervention. These amplification tests are more than 95% sensitive and more than 99% specific, using either urine or cervical/urethral or vaginal swabs. Annual screening of all sexually active females aged 25 years or younger is recommended for Chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Routine chlamydial testing should be considered for all adolescent males, especially for males who have sex with men, have new or multiple sex partners, or are in correctional facilities. For men who have sex with men, consideration should be given to testing oropharyngeal and rectal sites, as asymptomatic infections are common. Use of NAAT is recommended for samples from these sites, but such tests are not currently FDA-approved and providers must locate a laboratory that has performed the necessary validation studies.

Initial screening for urethritis in males begins with a physical examination. A first-catch urine sample (the first 10–20 mL of voided urine collected after not voiding for 2 hours) should be sent for Chlamydia and N gonorrhoeae testing if there are no signs (urethral discharge or lesions) or symptoms. With signs or symptoms of urethritis, a urethral swab should be sent to test for both N gonorrhoeae and Chlamydia. A wet mount preparation should then be done on a spun urine sample or from urethral discharge, evaluating for the presence of Trichomonas vaginalis. Newer technologies, such as enzyme-linked immunoassays (EIA) and NAAT testing, have become available that allow greater sensitivity and specificity in making the diagnosis of T vaginalis in males and females.

Screening asymptomatic females is more complicated because a variety of approaches are available. Generally, either a first-void urine specimen, a cervical swab, or a vaginal swab is used to screen for Chlamydia and N gonorrhoeae by NAAT. Any vaginal discharge symptoms should include evaluation of wet mount of vaginal secretions to check for bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis, and a potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparation to screen for yeast infections. The Papanicolaou (Pap) smear serves to evaluate the cervix for the presence of dysplasia. The first Pap smear should be performed at age 21 years and then every 3 years. HPV typing is not recommended.

In urban areas with a relatively high rate of syphilis and in males who have sex with men, a screening test should be drawn yearly or more frequently if higher risk encounters are more frequent. Rapid plasma regain (RPR) antibody tests should be done in all individuals in whom a concomitant STI is present. HIV antibody testing is recommended at least once for all patients and repeat testing undertaken when an STI is present or the history suggests multiple partners and high-risk behaviors.

Henry-Reid LM et al: Current pediatrician practices in identifying high-risk behaviors of adolescents. Pediatrics 2010;125:e741 [PMID: 20308220].

SIGNS & SYMPTOMS

The most common symptoms in males are dysuria and penile discharge resulting from urethral inflammation. However, providers should be aware that many urethral infections are asymptomatic. Less common symptoms are scrotal pain, hematuria, proctitis, and pruritus in the pubic region. Signs include epididymitis, orchitis, and urethral discharge. Rarely do males develop systemic symptoms. However, especially for MSM, but for any sexually active adolescent at risk for HIV infection who presents with nonspecific viral symptoms, acute HIV seroconversion illness should be considered in the differential diagnoses. For females, the most common symptoms are vaginal discharge and dysuria. Again, infection may be asymptomatic. Vaginal itching and irregular menses or spotting are also common. Abdominal pain, fever, and vomiting, although less common and specific, are signs of PID. Pain in the genital region and dyspareunia may be present.

Signs that can be found in both males and females with an STI include genital ulcerations, adenopathy, and genital warts.

° THe moST common anTiBioTic-reSPonSiVe Sexually TranSmiTTed infecTionS

C trachomatis and N gonorrhoeae are STIs that are epidemic in the United States and are readily treated when appropriate antibiotics are administered in a timely fashion.

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS INFECTION

» General Considerations

C trachomatis is the most common bacterial cause of STIs in the United States. In 2013, over 1.4 million cases in adolescents and young adults were reported to the CDC. C trachomatis is an obligate intracellular bacterium that

replicates within the cytoplasm of host cells. Destruction of Chlamydia-infected cells is mediated by host immune responses.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Clinical infection in females manifests as dysuria, urethritis, vaginal discharge, cervicitis, irregular vaginal bleeding, or PID. The presence of mucopus at the cervical os (mucopurulent cervicitis) is a sign of chlamydial infection or gonorrhea. Chlamydial infection is asymptomatic in 75% of females.

Chlamydial infection may be asymptomatic in 70% of males or manifest as dysuria, urethritis, or epididymitis. Some patients complain of urethral discharge. On clinical examination, a clear white discharge may be found after milking the penis. Proctitis or proctocolitis from Chlamydia may occur in adolescents practicing receptive anal intercourse.

B. Laboratory Findings

NAAT is the most sensitive (92%–99%) way to detect Chlamydia. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) or direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) tests are less sensitive, but may be the only testing option in some centers.

A cervical or vaginal swab, using the manufacturer's swab provided with the specific test, or first-void urine specimen, should be obtained. For urine screening, yields of testing are maximized when collecting between 10 and 20 mL of urine and ensuring that patient has not voided for 2 hours. Often a single swab can be used to collect both the Chlamydia and N gonorrhoeae specimen. To optimize detection of Chlamydia from the cervix, columnar cells need to be collected by inserting the swab in the os and rotating it 360 degrees. NAAT is not licensed for rectal samples but some laboratories have validated testing on rectal specimens for C trachomatis. Thus, when a rectal specimen is obtained, this must often be evaluated by less sensitive culture methods unless there is access to a laboratory that has validated Chlamydia NAAT for nongenital sites.

In general, a first-void urine sample, or urethral swab for NAAT, should be obtained at least annually. Some studies suggest that more frequent screenings—every 6 months—in higher-prevalence populations can decrease the rate of chlamydial infection. For both males and females, testing urine allows for more frequent screening and simplifies screening in large group settings, such as schools and correctional facilities.

» Complications

Epididymitis is a complication in males. Reiter syndrome occurs in association with chlamydial urethritis. This should be suspected in male patients who are sexually active and present with low back pain (sacroiliitis), arthritis (polyarticular), characteristic mucocutaneous lesions, and conjunctivitis. PID is an important complication in females.

» Treatment

Infected patients and their contacts, regardless of the extent of signs or symptoms, need to receive treatment (Table 44–1). Reinfection caused by failure of contacts to receive treatment or the initiation of sexual activity with a new infected partner puts the adolescent at high risk of acquiring a repeat chlamydial infection within several months of the first infection. Because of this increased risk, all infected females and males should be retested approximately 3 months after treatment.

NEISSERIA GONORRHOEAE INFECTION

» General Considerations

Gonorrhea is the second most prevalent bacterial STI in the United States, where 333,000 new N gonorrhoeae infections were reported in 2013. While overall rates have decreased, gonorrhea rates continue to be highest among adolescents and young adults, and the rate of gonorrhea among men compared to women is higher. Among females in 2013, 20- to 24-year-olds and 15- to 19-year-olds had the highest rates of gonorrhea; among males, 20- to 24-year-olds had the highest rate.

Sites of infection include the cervix, urethra, rectum, and pharynx. In addition, gonorrhea is a cause of PID. Humans are the natural reservoir. Gonococci are present in the exudate and secretions of infected mucous membranes.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

In uncomplicated gonococcal cervicitis, females are symptomatic 23%–57% of the time, presenting with vaginal discharge and dysuria. Urethritis and pyuria may also be present. Mucopurulent cervicitis with a yellowish discharge may be found, and the cervix may be edematous and friable. Other symptoms include abnormal menstrual periods and dyspareunia. Approximately 15% of females with endocervical gonorrhea have signs of involvement of the upper genital tract. Compared with chlamydial infection, pelvic inflammation with gonorrhea has a shorter duration, but an increased intensity of symptoms, and is more often associated with fever. Symptomatic males usually have a yellowish-green urethral discharge and burning on urination, but most males (55%–67%) with N gonorrhoeae are asymptomatic. Both males and females can develop gonococcal proctitis and pharyngitis after appropriate exposure.

Table 44–1. Treatment regimens for sexually transmitted infections.

	Recommended Regimens	Pregnancy[a] [Category]
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)		
Parenteral therapy regimen A Note: Therapy should be continued for 24–48 h after patient has improved; therapy can then be switched to either oral regimen to complete a 14-d course	Cefotetan, 2 g IV every 12 h or Cefoxitin, 2 g IV every 6 h plus Doxycycline, 100 mg IV or orally every 12 h	Safe [B] Safe [B] Contraindicated [D]
Parenteral therapy regimen B Note: Once clinically improved for 48 h, patients can continue clindamycin, 100 mg PO bid for 14 d total[c]	Clindamycin, 900 mg IV every 8 h plus Gentamicin, 2 mg/kg IV/IM loading dose, then 1.5 mg/kg IV every 8 h[b]	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Alternative parenteral regimens	Ampicillin/sulbactam, 3 g IV every 6 h plus Doxycycline, 100 mg IV or orally every 12 h	Safe [A] Contraindicated [D]
Recommended outpatient regimen Note: Pregnant patients with PID and women with tubo-ovarian abscesses should be hospitalized and given parenteral antibiotics[c]	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM once plus Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 d with or without Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 d or Cefoxitin, 2 g IM once plus probenecid, 1 g orally as a single dose plus Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 d with or without Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 d or Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (eg, ceftizoxime or cefotaxime) plus Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 d with or without Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 d	Safe [B] Contraindicated [D] Safe [B] Safe [B] Contraindicated [D] Safe [B] Safe [B] Contraindicated [D] Safe [B]
Cervicitis		
Chlamydia	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose or Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B] Contraindicated [D]
Gonorrhea, uncomplicated		
Cervicitis, urethritis, rectal, pharyngitis Note: Empiric combination treatment with azithromycin is recommended due improving treatment efficacy and potentially delaying the emergence and spread of resistance to cephalosporins	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM as single dose plus Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Alternative Oral regimen (if ceftriaxone is not available)	Cefixime, 400 mg orally twice a day or Cefixime suspension, 400 mg by suspension (200 mg/5 mL) orally twice a day plus Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B] Safe [B] Safe [B]
Gonorrhea, disseminated		
Note: Treat IV until clinically improved (usually 48 h; then switch to PO); complete at least a 7-d course	Ceftriaxone, 1 g IV or IM every 24 h plus Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B] Safe [B]

(Continued)

Table 44–1. Treatment regimens for sexually transmitted infections. (Continued)

	Recommended Regimens	Pregnancy[a] [Category]
Alternative regimens	Cefotaxime, 1 g IV every 8 h	Safe [B]
	or	
	Ceftizoxime, 1 g IV every 8 h	Safe [B]
	plus	
	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B]
Nongonococcal, nonchlamydial urethritis		
	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B]
	or	
	Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Contraindicated [D]
Alternative regimens	Erythromycin base, 500 mg orally four times a day for 7 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Erythromycin ethylsuccinate, 800 mg orally four times a day for 7 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Levofloxacin, 500 mg orally once daily for 7 d	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Ofloxacin, 300 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Contraindicated [C]
Recurrent or persistent urethritis	Metronidazole, 2 g orally as single dose	Safe [B]
	or	
	Tinidazole, 2 g orally as single dose	Contraindicated [C]
	plus	
	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose (if not used for initial episode)	Safe [B]
Proctitis, proctocolitis, and enteritis		
	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM	Safe [B]
	plus	
	Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Contraindicated [D]
Trichomonas vaginalis vaginitis or urethritis		
	Metronidazole, 2 g orally as single dose	Safe [B]
	or	
	Tinidazole, 2 g orally as single dose	Contraindicated [C]
Alternative regimen	Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B]
Bacterial vaginosis		
	Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Metronidazole, 0.75% gel, 5 g intravaginally once daily for 5 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Clindamycin cream, 2%, one applicator intravaginally at bedtime for 7 d	Safe [B]
Alternative regimen	Clindamycin, 300 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Clindamycin ovule, 100 mg intravaginally once at bedtime for 3 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Tinidazole, 2 g orally once daily for 2 d	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Tinidazole, 1 g orally once daily for 5 d	Contraindicated [C]
Vulvovaginal candidiasis		
	Butoconazole, clotrimazole, miconazole, terconazole or tioconazole, intravaginally for 1, 3, or 7 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Butoconazole sustained-release, 5 g once intravaginally	Safe [B]
	or	
	Fluconazole, 150 mg oral tablet, in single dose	Contraindicated [C]

(Continued)

Table 44–1. Treatment regimens for sexually transmitted infections. (Continued)

	Recommended Regimens	Pregnancy[a] [Category]
Syphilis		
Early (primary, secondary, or latent < 1 y)	Benzathine penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM (for patients > 40 kg) or Benzathine penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg IM (for patients < 40 kg); up to 2.4 million units in one dose	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Late (> 1-y duration or of unknown duration)	Benzathine penicillin G, 7.2 million units total, administered as three doses of 2.4 million units IM each at 1-wk intervals or Benzathine penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg IM (for patients < 40 kg) once a week for 3 consecutive wk; up to 2.4 million units in one dose	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Tertiary (with normal CSF examination)	Benzathine penicillin G, 7.2 million units total, administered as three doses of 2.4 million units IM each at 1-wk intervals or Benzathine penicillin G, 50,000 U/kg IM (for patients < 40 kg) once a week for 3 consecutive wk; up to 2.4 million units in one dose	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Neurosyphilis		
	Aqueous crystalline penicillin G, 18–24 million U/d, administered as 3–4 million units IV every 4 h or continuous infusion for 10–14 d or	Safe [B]
Alternative regimen (if compliance can be assured)	Procaine penicillin, 2.4 million units IM once daily plus Probenecid 500 mg orally four times a day for 10–14 d	Safe [B] Safe [B]
Epididymitis		
Most likely caused by gonococcal or chlamydial infection	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM as single dose plus Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 10 d	
Most likely caused by enteric organisms	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM as single dose plus Levofloxacin, 500 mg orally once daily for 10 d or Ofloxacin, 300 mg orally twice a day for 10 d	
C trachomatis infection		
Cervicitis or urethritis	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose or Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B] Contraindicated [D]
Alternative regimen[b]	Erythromycin, 500 mg orally four times a day for 7 d or Erythromycin ethylsuccinate, 800 mg orally four times a day for 7 d or Levofloxacin 500 mg orally once daily for 7 d or Ofloxacin, 300 mg orally twice a day for 7 d	Safe [B] Safe [B] Contraindicated [C] Contraindicated [C]
Granuloma inguinale		
	Azithromycin, 1 g orally once a week or 500 mg daily for at least 3 wk and until all lesions have completely healed	Safe [B]

(Continued)

Table 44–1. Treatment regimens for sexually transmitted infections. (Continued)

	Recommended Regimens	Pregnancy[a] [Category]
Alternative regimen	Ciprofloxacin, 750 mg orally twice a day for at least 3 wk and until all lesions have completely healed	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Erythromycin base, 500 mg orally four times a day for at least 3 wk and until all lesions have completely healed	Safe [B]
	Or	
	Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 3 wk or and until all lesions have completely healed	Contraindicated [D]
	or	
	Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, one double-strength tablet orally twice a day for at least 3 wk and until all lesions have completely healed	Contraindicated [C]
Lymphogranuloma venereum		
	Doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice a day for 21 d	Contraindicated [C]
Alternative regimen	Erythromycin, 500 mg orally four times a day for 21 d	Safe [B]
Herpes simplex infection		
First episode, genital	Acyclovir, 400 mg orally three times a day for 7–10 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Acyclovir, 200 mg orally five times a day for 7–10 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Famciclovir, 250 mg orally three times a day for 7–10 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Valacyclovir, 1 g orally twice a day for 7–10 d	Safe [B]
Episodic therapy for recurrent genital herpes	Acyclovir, 400 mg orally three times a day for 5 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Acyclovir, 800 mg orally twice a day for 5 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Acyclovir, 800 mg orally three times a day for 2 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Famciclovir, 125 mg orally twice a day for 5 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Famciclovir, 1000 mg orally twice a day for 1 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Famciclovir, 500 mg once orally, followed by 250 mg orally twice a day for 2 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Valacyclovir, 500 mg orally twice a day for 3 d	Safe [B]
	or	
	Valacyclovir, 1 g orally once daily for 5 d	Safe [B]
Suppressive therapy for recurrent genital herpes	Acyclovir, 400 mg orally twice a day	Safe [B]
	or	
	Famciclovir, 250 mg orally twice a day	Safe [B]
	or	
	Valacyclovir, 500 mg orally daily (if < 10 recurrences per year; if ≥ 10 recurrences, use 1 g daily)	Safe [B]
Chancroid		
	Azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	Safe [B]
	or	
	Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM once	Safe [B]
	or	
	Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg orally twice a day for 3 d	Contraindicated [D]
	or	
	Erythromycin base, 500 mg orally three times a day for 7 d	Safe [B]

(Continued)

Table 44–1. Treatment regimens for sexually transmitted infections. (Continued)

	Recommended Regimens	Pregnancy[a] [Category]
Human papillomavirus infection		
External lesions (patient-applied) Note: Topical therapies usually require weekly treatments for 4 consecutive weeks	Podofilox, 0.5% solution or gel; apply twice a day for 3 d; used by patient at home; practitioner needs to demonstrate how compound is applied (to be used only on external lesions)	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Imiquimod 5% cream, applied 3 times a week overnight (maximum of 16 wk)	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Imiquimod 3.75% cream, applied daily at bedtime (maximum of 16 wk)	Contraindicated [C]
	or	
	Sinecatechins 15% ointment, applied 3 times daily (maximum of 16 wk)	Unknown safety
	Podophyllin, 25% in benzoin tincture applied directly to warts; wash off in 1–4 h; weekly [contraindicated for urethral or intravaginal lesions]	Contraindicated [X]
	or	
External lesions (provider-applied)	Trichloroacetic acid (85%) or bichloracetic acid; apply directly to warts; wash off in 6–8 h; weekly	Safe
	or	
	Cryotherapy: liquid nitrogen, cryoprobe safe laser surgery	Safe
Ectoparasitic infections		
Pubic lice[d]	Permethrin 1% creme rinse: wash off after 10 min	Safe [B]
	or	
	Pyrethrins with piperonyl butoxide: apply, wash off after 10 min	Safe [B]
Alternative regimen	Malathion 0.5% lotion: wash off after 8–12 h	Safe [B]
	or	
	Ivermectin, 250 mcg/kg repeated in 2 wk	Contraindicated [C]
Scabies[d]	Permethrin cream 5%: apply to entire body from the neck down, wash off after 8–14 h	Safe [B]
	or	
	Ivermectin, 200 mcg/kg orally, repeat in 2 wk	Contraindicated [C]
Alternative regimen	Lindane (1%): apply to entire body from neck down, wash off after 8 h	Contraindicated [C]

IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; NAAT, nucleic acid amplification test.

[a]FDA use in pregnancy ratings: [A] Controlled studies show no risk. Adequate, well-controlled studies in pregnant women have failed to demonstrate a risk to the fetus in any trimester of pregnancy. [B] No evidence of risk in humans. Adequate, well-controlled studies in pregnant women have not shown increased risk of fetal abnormalities despite adverse findings in animals, in the absence of adequate human studies, animal studies show no fetal risk. The chance of fetal harm is remote but remains a possibility. [C] Risk cannot be ruled out. Adequate, well-controlled human studies are lacking, and animal studies have shown a risk to the fetus or are lacking as well. There is a chance of fetal harm if the drug is administered during pregnancy; but the potential benefits outweigh the potential risk. [D] Positive evidence of risk. Studies in humans, or investigational or postmarketing data, have demonstrated fetal risk. Nevertheless, potential benefits from the use of the drug may outweigh the potential risk. For example, the drug may be acceptable if needed in a life-threatening situation or serious disease for which safer drugs cannot be used or are ineffective. [X] Contraindicated in pregnancy. Studies in animals or humans, or despite adverse findings in animals, or investigational or postmarketing reports have demonstrated positive evidence of fetal abnormalities or risk that clearly outweighs any possible benefit to the patient.

[b]Single daily dose (3–5 mg/kg) IV can be substituted.

[c]Doxycycline is contraindicated in pregnancy. Alternative therapies during pregnancy which include erythromycin, azithromycin, and amoxicillin are not as effective, but are clinically useful if the recommended regimens cannot be used due to allergy or pregnancy.

[d]Bedding and clothing need to be decontaminated by washing in hot water or by dry cleaning. Regimen may be repeated in 1 week if complete response is not achieved.

B. Laboratory Findings

A first void urine sample or cervical or vaginal swab from females should be sent for NAAT. Culture or NAAT for N gonorrhoeae in males can be achieved with a swab of the urethra or first-void urine. Urethral culture is less sensitive (85%) compared with the 95%–99% sensitivity using NAAT methods on either urethral or urine specimens. Gram stain of urethral discharge showing gram-negative intracellular diplococci indicates gonorrhea in a male.

If proctitis is present, appropriate cultures should be obtained and treatment for both gonorrhea and chlamydial infection given. If oral exposure to gonorrhea is suspected, cultures should be taken and the patient given empiric treatment. If there is access to a laboratory that has validated NAAT for oropharyngeal or rectal specimens, this will substantially increase detection over culture methods.

» Differential Diagnosis

Gonococcal pharyngitis needs to be differentiated from pharyngitis caused by streptococcal infection, herpes simplex, adenovirus, and infectious mononucleosis. Chlamydial infection needs to be differentiated from gonococcal infection.

» Complications

Disseminated gonococcal infection occurs in a minority (0.5%–3%) of patients with untreated gonorrhea. Hematogenous spread most commonly causes arthritis and dermatitis. The joints most frequently involved are the wrist, metacarpophalangeal joints, knee, and ankle. Skin lesions are typically tender, with hemorrhagic or necrotic pustules or bullae on an erythematous base occurring on the distal extremities. Disseminated disease occurs more frequently in females than in males. Risk factors include pregnancy and gonococcal pharyngitis. Gonorrhea is complicated occasionally by perihepatitis.

» Treatment (see Table 44–1)

In 2010, the CDC made two significant changes to gonorrhea treatment recommendations: dual treatment with azithromycin and ceftriaxone regardless of anatomic site involved. Oral cefixime treatment of gonorrhea was removed from CDC's recommended treatment in 2012. These changes reflect increasing resistance to cephalosporins; the frequency of coinfection with Chlamydia; and the need to increase consistency of treatment regimens.

CDC guidelines also state that N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis do not require tests of cure when they are treated with first-line medications, unless the patient remains symptomatic. If retesting is indicated, it should be delayed for 1 month after completion of therapy if NAATs are used. Retesting might also be considered for sexually active adolescents likely to be reinfected. Due to increasing resistance of N gonorrhoeae to cephalosporins, providers considering treatment failure should also obtain a gonorrhea culture to assess for antibiotic resistance. Patients should be advised to abstain from sexual intercourse until both they and their partners have completed a course of treatment. Treatment for disseminated disease may require hospitalization. Quinolones should no longer be used to treat gonorrhea due to high levels of quinolone resistance in all populations in the United States. Failure of initial treatment should prompt reevaluation of the patient and consideration of retreatment with ceftriaxone.

Kirkcaldy RD, Bolan GA, Wasserheit JN: Cephalosporin-resistant gonorrhea in North America. JAMA 2013;309:185 [PMID: 23299612].

° The Spectrum of Signs & Symptoms of Sexually Transmitted infections

The patient presenting with an STI usually has one or more of the signs or symptoms described in this section. Management considerations for STIs include assessing the patient's adherence to therapy and ensuring follow-up, treating STIs in partners, and determining pregnancy risk. Treatment of each STI is detailed in Table 44–1.

CERVICITIS

» General Considerations

In most cases of cervicitis no organism is isolated. The most common causes include C trachomatis or N gonorrhoeae. HSV, T vaginalis, and Mycoplasma genitalium are less common causes. Bacterial vaginosis is now recognized as a cause of cervicitis. Cervicitis can also be present without an STI.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Two major diagnostic signs characterize cervicitis: (1) purulent or mucopurulent endocervical exudate visible in the endocervical canal or on an endocervical swab and (2) easily induced bleeding with the passage of a cotton swab through the cervical os. Cervicitis is often asymptomatic, but many patients with cervicitis have an abnormal vaginal discharge or postcoital bleeding.

B. Laboratory Findings

Although endocervical Gram stain may show an increased number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, this finding has a low positive predictive value and is not recommended for diagnosis. Patients with cervicitis should be tested for C

trachomatis, N gonorrhoeae, and trichomoniasis by using the most sensitive and specific tests available at the site.

Complications

Persistent cervicitis is difficult to manage and requires reassessment of the initial diagnosis and reevaluation for possible re-exposure to an STI. Cervicitis can persist despite repeated courses of antimicrobial therapy. Presence of a large ectropion can contribute to persistent cervicitis.

Treatment

Empiric treatment for both gonorrhea and chlamydial infection is recommended because coinfection is common. If the patient is asymptomatic except for cervicitis, then treatment may wait until diagnostic test results are available (see Table 44–1). Follow-up is recommended if symptoms persist. Patients should be instructed to abstain from sexual intercourse until they and their sex partners are cured and treatment is completed.

Hobbs MM, Sena AC: Modern diagnosis of trichomonas vaginalis infection. Sex Transm Infect 2013;89(6):424–428 [PMID: 23633669].

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE

General Considerations

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is defined as inflammation of the upper female genital tract and may include endometritis, salpingitis, tubo-ovarian abscess, and pelvic peritonitis. It is the most common gynecologic disorder necessitating hospitalization for female patients of reproductive age in the United States. The incidence is highest in teenage girls. Those who are sexually active have a high risk (1 in 8) of developing PID, whereas women in their 20s have one-tenth the risk. Predisposing risk factors include multiple sexual partners, younger age of initiating sexual intercourse, prior history of PID, and lack of condom use. Lack of protective antibody from previous exposure to sexually transmitted organisms and cervical ectopy contribute to the development of PID. Many adolescents with subacute or asymptomatic PID are never identified.

PID is a polymicrobial infection. Causative agents include N gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia, anaerobic bacteria that reside in the vagina, and genital mycoplasmas. Vaginal douching and other mechanical factors such as older intrauterine devices or prior gynecologic surgery increase the risk of PID by providing access of lower genital tract organisms to pelvic organs. Recent menses and bacterial vaginosis have been associated with the development of PID.

Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

PID may be challenging to diagnose because of the wide variation in the symptoms and signs. No single historical, clinical, or laboratory finding has both high sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis. Diagnosis of PID is usually made clinically (Table 44–2). Typical patients have lower abdominal pain, pelvic pain, or dysuria. Systemic symptoms such fever, nausea or vomiting may be present. Vaginal discharge is variable. Cervical motion tenderness, uterine or adnexal tenderness, or signs of peritonitis are often present. Mucopurulent cervicitis is present in 50% of patients. Tubo-ovarian abscesses can often be detected by careful physical examination (feeling a mass or fullness in the adnexa).

B. Laboratory Findings

Laboratory findings may include elevated WBCs with a left shift and elevated acute phase reactants (erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein). A positive test for N gonorrhoeae or C trachomatis is supportive, although 25% of the time neither of these bacteria is detected. Pregnancy needs to be ruled out, because patients with an ectopic pregnancy can present with abdominal pain and concomitant pregnancy will affect management.

Table 44–2. Diagnostic criteria for pelvic inflammatory disease.

Minimum criteria
Empiric treatment of PID should be initiated in sexually active young women and others at risk for sexually transmitted infections if one or more of the following minimum criteria are present:
• They are experiencing pelvic or lower abdominal pain and no other cause(s) for the illness can be identified
• Cervical motion tenderness or uterine tenderness or adnexal tenderness
Additional supportive criteria
Oral temperature > 38.3°C (101°F)
Abnormal cervical or vaginal mucopurulent discharge or cervical friability
Presence of abundant white blood cells on microscopic evaluation of vaginal secretions diluted in saline
Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or elevated C-reactive protein
Laboratory documentation of infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*
Definitive criteria (selected cases)
Histopathologic evidence of endometritis on endometrial biopsy
Tubo-ovarian abscess on sonography or other radiologic tests
Laparoscopic abnormalities consistent with PID

Adapted, with permission, from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines 2014 draft.

C. Diagnostic Studies

Laparoscopy is the gold standard for detecting salpingitis. It is used if the diagnosis is in question or to help differentiate PID from an ectopic pregnancy, ovarian cysts, or adnexal torsion. Endometrial biopsy should be performed in women undergoing laparoscopy who do not have visual evidence of salpingitis as some women may only have endometritis. The clinical diagnosis of PID has a positive predictive value for salpingitis of 65%–90% in comparison with laparoscopy. Pelvic ultrasonography also is helpful in detecting tubo-ovarian abscesses, which are found in almost 20% of teens with PID. Transvaginal ultrasound is more sensitive than abdominal ultrasound. All women who have acute PID should be tested for N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis and should be screened for HIV infection.

» Differential Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis includes other gynecologic illnesses (ectopic pregnancy, threatened or septic abortion, adnexal torsion, ruptured and hemorrhagic ovarian cysts, dysmenorrhea, endometriosis, or mittelschmerz), gastrointestinal illnesses (appendicitis, cholecystitis, hepatitis, gastroenteritis, or inflammatory bowel disease), and urinary tract illnesses (cystitis, pyelonephritis, or urinary calculi).

» Complications

Scarring of the fallopian tubes is one of the major sequelae of PID. After one episode of PID, 17% of patients become infertile, 17% develop chronic pelvic pain, and 10% will have an ectopic pregnancy. Infertility rates increase with each episode of PID; three episodes of PID result in a 73% infertility rate. Duration of symptoms appears to be the largest determinant of infertility. Hematogenous or lymphatic spread of organisms from the fallopian tubes rarely causes inflammation of the liver capsule (perihepatitis) resulting in symptoms of pleuritic right upper quadrant pain and elevation of liver function tests.

» Treatment

The objectives of treatment are both to achieve a clinical cure and to prevent long-term sequelae. There are no differences in short- and long-term clinical and microbiologic response rates resulting from parenteral or oral therapy. PID is frequently managed at the outpatient level, although some clinicians argue that all adolescents with PID should be hospitalized because of the rate of complications. Severe systemic symptoms and toxicity, signs of peritonitis, inability to take fluids, pregnancy, nonresponse or intolerance of oral antimicrobial therapy, and tubo-ovarian abscess favor hospitalization. In addition, if the health care provider believes that the patient will not adhere to treatment, hospitalization is warranted. Pregnant women with PID should be admitted to hospital and treated with parental antibiotics to reduce the increased risk of morbidity. Surgical drainage may be required for adequate treatment of tubo-ovarian abscesses.

The broad spectrum antibiotic regimens described in Table 44–1 cover the numerous microorganisms associated with PID. All treatment regimens should be effective against N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis because negative endocervical screening tests do not rule out upper reproductive tract infection with these organisms. Outpatient treatment should be reserved for compliant patients who have classic signs of PID without systemic symptoms. Patients with PID who receive outpatient treatment should be reexamined within 24–48 hours, with phone contact in the interim, to detect persistent disease or treatment failure. Patients should have substantial improvement within 48–72 hours. An adolescent should be reexamined 7–10 days after the completion of therapy to ensure the resolution of symptoms.

Trent M: Status of adolescent pelvic inflammatory disease management in the United States. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2013;25(5):350–356 [PMID: 24018871].

URETHRITIS

» General Considerations

The most common bacterial causes of urethritis in males are N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis. Additionally, T vaginalis, HSV, Ureaplasma urealyticum, and M genitalium cause urethritis. Approximately 15%–25% of nongonococcal, nonchlamydial urethritis can be attributed to either M genitalium or U urealyticum. Coliforms may cause urethritis in males practicing insertive anal intercourse. Mechanical manipulation or contact with irritants can also cause transient urethritis. It is important to recognize that urethritis in both males and females is frequently asymptomatic.

Females often present with symptoms of a urinary tract infection and "sterile pyuria" (no enteric bacterial pathogens isolated), which reflects urethritis caused by the organisms described above.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

If symptomatic, males present most commonly with a clear or purulent discharge from the urethra, dysuria, or urethral pruritus. Hematuria and inguinal adenopathy can occur. Most infections caused by C trachomatis and T vaginalis are asymptomatic, while 70% of males with M genitalium and 23%–90% with gonococcal urethritis are symptomatic.

B. Laboratory Findings

In a symptomatic male a positive leukocyte esterase test on first-void urine, or microscopic examination of first-void urine demonstrating more than 10 WBCs per high-power field, is suggestive of urethritis. Gram stain of urethral secretions demonstrating more than 5 WBCs per high-power field is also suggestive. Gonococcal urethritis is established by documenting the presence of WBCs containing intracellular gram-negative diplococci. Urethral swab or first-void urine for NAAT should be sent to the laboratory to detect N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis. Evaluation for T vaginalis should be considered as newer technologies increase the sensitivity and specificity of detecting T vaginalis over wet mount. Microscopic examination of urethral discharge is not a sensitive test. Specific NAAT testing of urine is available for Mycoplasma and Ureaplasma, though it is not often clinically utilized.

» Complications

Complications include recurrent or persistent urethritis, epididymitis, prostatitis, or Reiter syndrome.

» Treatment (See Table 44–1)

Patients with objective evidence of urethritis should receive empiric treatment for gonorrhea and chlamydial infection, ideally directly observed in the office. Some data suggest better outcomes for treatment of Mycoplasma genitalium with azithromycin. If the infection is unresponsive to initial treatment and the infection is NAAT-negative, trichomoniasis should be ruled out and nongonococcal, nonchlamydial urethritis should be suspected and treated appropriately. Patients should be instructed to return for evaluation if symptoms persist or recur after completion of initial empiric therapy. Symptoms alone, without documentation of signs or laboratory evidence of urethral inflammation, are not a sufficient basis for retreatment. Sexual partners should either be evaluated or treated for gonorrhea and chlamydial infection.

EPIDIDYMITIS

» General Considerations

Epididymitis in a male who is sexually active is most often caused by C trachomatis or N gonorrhoeae. Epididymitis caused by Escherichia coli occurs among males who are the insertive partners during anal intercourse and in males who have urinary tract abnormalities.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Epididymitis presents as a constellation of pain, swelling, and inflammation of the epididymis. In many cases, the testis is also involved.

B. Laboratory and Diagnostic Studies

Diagnosis is generally made clinically. Color Doppler ultrasound can help make the diagnosis. Although often not available, radionuclide scanning of the scrotum is the most accurate method of diagnosis. Laboratory evaluation is identical to evaluation for suspected urethritis.

» Differential Diagnosis

Acute epididymitis must be distinguished from orchitis due to infarct, testicular torsion, viral infection, testicular cancer, tuberculosis, or fungal infection.

» Complications

Infertility is rare, and chronic local pain is uncommon.

» Treatment

Empiric therapy (see Table 44–1) is indicated before culture results are available. As an adjunct to therapy, bed rest, scrotal elevation, and analgesics are recommended until fever and local inflammation subside. Lack of improvement of swelling and tenderness within 3 days requires reevaluation of both the diagnosis and therapy. Sex partners should be evaluated and treated for gonorrhea and chlamydial infections.

PROCTITIS, PROCTOCOLITIS, & ENTERITIS

» General Considerations

Proctitis occurs predominantly among persons who participate in anal intercourse. Enteritis occurs among those whose sexual practices include oral-fecal contact. Proctocolitis can be acquired by either route depending on the pathogen. Common sexually transmitted pathogens causing proctitis or proctocolitis include C trachomatis (including lymphogranuloma venereum [LGV] serovars), Treponema pallidum, HSV, N gonorrhoeae, Giardia lamblia, and enteric organisms. As many as 85% of rectal infections with N gonorrhoeae and C trachomatis are asymptomatic. The presence of symptomatic or asymptomatic proctitis may facilitate the transmission of HIV infection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Proctitis, defined as inflammation limited to the distal 10–12 cm of the rectum, is associated with anorectal pain, tenesmus, and rectal discharge. Acute proctitis among persons who have recently practiced receptive anal intercourse is most often sexually transmitted. The symptoms of proctocolitis combine those of proctitis, plus diarrhea or abdominal cramps (or both), because of inflamed colonic mucosa more than 12 cm from the anus. Enteritis usually results in diarrhea and abdominal cramping without signs of proctitis or proctocolitis.

B. Laboratory and Diagnostic Studies

Evaluation may include anoscopy or sigmoidoscopy, stool examination, culture or NAAT for appropriate organisms, and serology for syphilis.

» Treatment

Management will be determined by the etiologic agent (see Table 44–1 and Chapter 42). Reinfection may be difficult to distinguish from treatment failure.

VAGINAL DISCHARGE

Adolescent girls may have a normal physiologic leukorrhea, secondary to turnover of vaginal epithelium. Infectious causes of discharge include T vaginalis, C trachomatis, N gonorrhoeae, and bacterial vaginosis pathogens. Candidiasis is a yeast infection that produces vaginal discharge, but is not usually sexually transmitted. Vaginitis is characterized by vaginal discharge, vulvar itching, and irritation, and sometimes with vaginal odor. Discharge may be white, gray, or yellow. Physiologic leukorrhea is usually white, homogeneous, and not associated with itching, irritation, or foul odor. Mechanical, chemical, allergic, or other noninfectious irritants of the vagina may cause vaginal discharge.

1. Bacterial Vaginosis

» General Considerations

Bacterial vaginosis is a polymicrobial infection of the vagina caused by an imbalance of the normal bacterial vaginal flora. The altered flora has a paucity of hydrogen peroxide–producing lactobacilli and increased concentrations of anaerobic bacteria (Prevotella sp and Mobiluncus sp), Gardnerella vaginalis, Ureaplasma, and Mycoplasma. It is unclear whether bacterial vaginosis is sexually transmitted, but it is associated with having multiple sex partners and women with bacterial vaginosis are at increased risk for other STIs.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and signs

The most common symptom is a copious, malodorous, homogeneous thin gray-white vaginal discharge. Patients may report vaginal itching or dysuria. A fishy odor may be most noticeable after intercourse or during menses, when the high pH of blood or semen volatilizes the amines.

B. Laboratory Findings

Bacterial vaginosis is most often diagnosed by the use of clinical criteria, which include (1) presence of thin, white discharge that smoothly coats the vaginal walls, (2) fishy (amine) odor before or after the addition of 10% KOH (whiff test), (3) pH of vaginal fluid greater than 4.5 determined with narrow-range pH paper, and (4) presence of "clue cells" on microscopic examination. Clue cells are squamous epithelial cells that have multiple bacteria adhering to them, making their borders irregular and giving them a speckled appearance. Diagnosis requires three out of four criteria, although many female patients who fulfill these criteria have no discharge or other symptoms.

» Complications

Bacterial vaginosis during pregnancy is associated with adverse outcomes such as premature labor, preterm delivery, intraamniotic infection, and postpartum endometritis. In the nonpregnant individual, it may be associated with PID and urinary tract infections.

» Treatment

All female patients who have symptomatic disease should receive treatment to relieve vaginal symptoms and signs of infection (see Table 44–1). Pregnant patients should receive treatment to prevent adverse outcomes of pregnancy. Treatment for patients who do not complain of vaginal discharge or itching, but who demonstrate bacterial vaginosis on routine pelvic examination, is unclear. Because some studies associate bacterial vaginosis and PID, the recommendation is to have a low threshold for treating asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis. Follow-up visits are unnecessary if symptoms resolve. Recurrence of bacterial vaginosis is not unusual. Follow-up examination 1 month after treatment for high-risk pregnant patients is recommended.

Males do not develop infection equivalent to bacterial vaginosis and are often asymptomatic. Treatment of male partners has no effect on the course of infection in females although treatment is recommended for female partners.

Donders G: Diagnosis and management of bacterial vaginosis and other types of abnormal vaginal bacterial flora: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2010;65:462 [PMID: 20723268].

2. Trichomoniasis

» General Considerations

Trichomoniasis is caused by T vaginalis, a flagellated protozoan that infects 3.7 million people annually in the United States.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Fifty percent of females with trichomoniasis develop a symptomatic vaginitis with vaginal itching, a green-gray malodorous frothy discharge, and dysuria. Occasionally postcoital

bleeding and dyspareunia may be present. The vulva may be erythematous and the cervix friable.

B. Laboratory Findings

Mixing the discharge with normal saline facilitates detection of the flagellated protozoan on microscopic examination (wet preparation). This has a sensitivity of only 60%–70% even with immediate evaluation of the slide to achieve optimal results. Culture and NAAT testing are available when the diagnosis is unclear. NAAT tests are sensitive, but expensive, and not readily available. Two FDA-approved, point-of-care antigen-based detection assays for T vaginalis are available, but false positive results are problematic in low disease prevalence populations. Both antigen assays are performed on vaginal secretions and have a sensitivity greater than 83% and a specificity greater than 97%. Trichomonal urethritis frequently causes a positive urine leukocyte esterase test and WBCs on urethral smear.

» Complications

Trichomonas infection in females has been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes. Male partners of females diagnosed with trichomoniasis have a 22% chance of having trichomoniasis. Half of males with trichomoniasis will have urethritis. Male partners should receive empiric therapy for trichomoniasis. Rescreening for T vaginalis at 3 months following initial infection is recommended for women due to the high rate of reinfection.

» Treatment

See Table 44–1 for treatment recommendations.

Coleman JS et al: Trichomonas vaginalis vaginitis in obstetrics and gynecology practice: new concepts and controversies. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2013;68:43 [PMID: 23322080].

3. Vulvovaginal Candidiasis

» General Considerations

Vulvovaginal candidiasis is caused by Candida albicans in 85%–90% of cases. Most females will have at least one episode of vulvovaginal candidiasis in their lifetime, and almost half will have two or more episodes. The highest incidence is between ages 16 and 30 years. Predisposing factors include recent use of antibiotics, diabetes, pregnancy, and HIV. Risk factors include vaginal intercourse, especially with a new sexual partner, use of oral contraceptives, and use of spermicide. This disease is usually caused by unrestrained growth of Candida that normally colonizes the vagina asymptomatically or is infected secondarily from Candida present in the GI tract. Recurrences reflect reactivation of colonization.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Typical symptoms include pruritus and a white, cottage cheese-like vaginal discharge without odor. The itching is more common midcycle and shortly after menses. Other symptoms include vaginal soreness, vulvar burning, vulvar edema and redness, dyspareunia, and dysuria (especially after intercourse).

B. Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is usually made by visualizing yeast or pseudohyphae with 10% KOH (90% sensitive) or Gram stain (77% sensitive) in the vaginal discharge. Fungal culture can be used if symptoms and microscopy are not definitive or if disease is unresponsive or recurrent. However, culture is not very specific as colonization is common in asymptomatic females. Vaginal pH is normal with yeast infections.

» Complications

The only complication of vulvovaginal candidiasis is recurrent infections. Most females with recurrent infection have no apparent predisposing or underlying conditions.

» Treatment

Short-course topical formulations effectively treat uncomplicated vaginal yeast infections (see Table 44–1). The topically applied azole drugs are more effective than nystatin. Treatment with azoles results in relief of symptoms and negative cultures in 80%–90% of patients who complete therapy. Oral fluconazole as a one-time dose is an effective oral treatment. Patients should be instructed to return for follow-up visits only if symptoms persist or recur. Six-month prophylaxis regimens have been effective in many female patients with persistent or recurrent yeast infection. Recurrent disease is usually due to C albicans that remains susceptible to azoles, and should be treated for 14 days with oral azoles. Some nonalbicans Candida will respond to itraconazole or boric acid gelatin capsules (600 mg daily for 14 days) intravaginally. Treatment of sex partners is not recommended, but may be considered for females who have recurrent infection.

GENITAL ULCERATIONS

In the United States, young, sexually active patients who have genital ulcers have genital herpes or syphilis. The relative frequency of each disease differs by geographic area and patient population; however, in most areas, genital herpes is the most prevalent of these diseases. More than one of these diseases could be present in a patient with genital ulcers. All ulcerative diseases are associated with an increased risk for HIV infection. Oral and genital lesions may be presenting symptoms during primary HIV infection (acute

retroviral syndrome). Less common causes of genital ulceration include chancroid and donovanosis.

Location of the ulcers is dependent on the specific type of sexual behavior. Ulcers may be vaginal, vulvar, cervical, penile, or rectal. Oral lesions may occur concomitantly with genital ulcerations or as stand-alone lesions in HSV infection and syphilis. Each etiologic agent has specific characteristics that are described in the following sections. Lesion pain, inguinal lymphadenopathy, and urethritis may be found in association with the ulcers.

1. Herpes Simplex Virus Infection (See Also Chapter 40)

» General Considerations

HSV is the most common cause of visible genital ulcers. HSV-1 and HSV-2 are viruses that infect primarily humans. HSV-1 is commonly associated with infections of the face, including the eyes, pharynx, and mouth. HSV-2 is most commonly associated with anogenital infections. However, each serotype is capable of infecting either region. HSV-1 infections are frequently established in children by age 5 through oral acquisition; lower socioeconomic groups have higher infection rates. Both HSV-1 and HSV-2 cause STIs. The prevalence of both infections in the United States increases during teen years. In this age group and young adults, HSV-1 has become the predominant cause of genital infection. Rates of HSV-2 seroprevalence reach 20%–40% in 40-year-olds. HSV infections are lifelong as a result of latent infection of sensory ganglia, although many individuals infected with either type of HSV infection have not been diagnosed because of mild or unrecognized symptoms. Nevertheless, these individuals can still asymptomatically shed virus and thereby unknowingly transmit the infection, and they can reactivate the virus to cause clinical infection in themselves.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Symptomatic initial genital HSV infection causes vesicles of the vulva, vagina, cervix, penis, rectum, or urethra, which are quickly followed by shallow, painful ulcerations. Atypical presentation of HSV infection includes vulvar erythema and fissures. Urethritis may occur. Initial infection can be severe, lasting up to 3 weeks, and be associated with fever and malaise, as well as localized tender adenopathy. The pain and dysuria can be extremely uncomfortable, requiring sitz baths, topical anesthetics, and occasionally catheterization for urinary retention.

Symptoms tend to be more severe in females. Recurrence in the genital area with HSV-2 is likely (65%–90%). Approximately 40% of individuals infected with HSV-2 will experience more than or equal to six recurrences per year in the early years after initial infection. Prodromal pain in the genital, buttock, or pelvic region is common prior to recurrences. Recurrent genital herpes is of shorter duration (5–7 days), with fewer lesions and usually no systemic symptoms. Commonly, there is decreased frequency and severity of recurrences over time, although approximately one-third of individuals fail to demonstrate this time-dependent improvement. First-episode genital herpes infection caused by HSV-1 is usually the consequence of oral-genital sex. Primary HSV-1 infection is as severe as HSV-2 infection, and treatment is the same. Recurrence of HSV-1 happens in less than 50% of patients, and the frequency of recurrences is much less than in those patients with prior HSV-2 infection.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diagnosis of genital HSV infection is often made presumptively, but in one large series this diagnosis was incorrect for 20% of cases. Several laboratory tests can aid in confirmation of the diagnosis. Viral culture has been the gold standard and can provide results in as few as 48 hours. Culture must be obtained by unroofing an active vesicle and swabbing the base of the lesion. DFA testing can provide results within hours. DFA can also determine serotype, which is important for prognosis. NAAT of viral DNA is becoming a more common diagnostic method.

» Differential Diagnosis

Genital HSV infections must be distinguished from other ulcerative STI lesions, including syphilis, chancroid, and lymphogranuloma venereum. Non-STIs might include herpes zoster, Behçet syndrome, or lichen sclerosis. (See next two sections Syphilis and Chancroid.)

» Complications

Complications, almost always soon only with the first episode of genital HSV infection, include viral meningitis, urinary retention, transmission to newborns at birth, and pharyngitis. Infection with genital HSV, whether active or not, greatly increases the likelihood of transmitting or acquiring HIV infection within couples discordant for HIV.

» Prevention

All patients with active lesions should be counseled to abstain from sexual contact. Almost all patients have very frequent periodic asymptomatic shedding of HSV, and most cases of genital HSV infection are transmitted by persons who are unaware that they have the infection or are asymptomatic when transmission occurs. Reactivation with asymptomatic shedding occurs even in individuals who were asymptomatically infected. Individuals with prior

HSV infection should be encouraged to use condoms to protect susceptible partners. Antiviral prophylaxis of infected individuals reduces shedding and significantly reduces the chance of transmission to their sexual partners.

» Treatment

Antiviral drugs administered within the first 5 days of primary infection decrease the duration and severity of HSV infection (see Table 44–1). The effect of antivirals on the severity or duration of recurrent disease is limited. For best results, therapy should be started with the prodrome or during the first day of the attack. Patients should have a prescription at home to initiate treatment. If recurrences are frequent and cause significant physical or emotional discomfort, patients may elect to take antiviral prophylaxis on a daily basis to reduce the frequency (70%–80% decrease) and duration of recurrences. Treatment of first or subsequent attacks will not prevent future attacks, but recurrence frequency and severity decrease in many individuals over time.

Cernik C, Gallina K, Brodell RT: The treatment of herpes simplex infections: an evidence-based review. Arch Intern Med 2008;168:1137 [PMID: 18541820].

Hollier LM, Straub H: Genital herpes. Clin Evid (Online) 2011;1603 [PMID: 21496359].

2. Syphilis

» General Considerations

Syphilis is an acute and chronic STI caused by infection with Treponema pallidum. The national rate of syphilis has increased annually since reaching an all time low in 2000. Increases have been observed in both genders, but predominantly in males who have sex with men, who now account for 75% of primary and secondary cases reported to the CDC. In 2013, the CDC reported an increase of 10.9% (17,375) in new cases of primary and secondary syphilis. In 2013, the rate among men aged 15–19 years was the highest reported since 1995. Men between the ages of 20 and 24 years have the highest rates of syphilis; 4 out of 10 people with syphilis are also infected with HIV.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Skin and mucous membrane lesions characterize the acute phase of primary and secondary syphilis. Lesions of the bone, viscera, aorta, and central nervous system predominate in the chronic phase (tertiary syphilis) (see Chapter 42). Prevention of syphilis is also important because syphilitic mucosal lesions facilitate transmission of HIV.

Primary syphilis usually presents as a solitary chancre at the point of inoculation. Characteristically, the chancre presents as a painless, indurated, nonpurulent ulcer with a clean base and associated nontender, firm adenopathy. The chancre appears on average 21 days (range: 3–90 days) after exposure and resolves spontaneously 4–8 weeks later. Because it is painless, it may go undetected, especially if the lesion is within the vagina, oropharynx, urethra, or rectum. Chancres may occur on the genitalia, anus, or oropharynx. Secondary syphilis occurs 4–10 weeks after the chancre appears, with generalized malaise, adenopathy, and a nonpruritic maculopapular rash that often includes the palms and soles. Secondary syphilis resolves in 1–3 months, but can recur. Verrucous lesions known as condylomata lata may develop on the genitalia. These must be distinguished from genital warts.

B. Laboratory Findings

If the patient has a suspect primary lesion, is at high risk, is a contact, or may have secondary syphilis, a nontreponemal serum screen—either RPR or VDRL—should be performed. If the nontreponemal test is positive, then a specific treponemal test—a fluorescent treponemal antibody-absorbed (FTA-ABS) or microhemagglutination–T pallidum (MHA-TP) test—is done to confirm the diagnosis. An additional diagnostic tool is darkfield microscopy, which can be used to detect spirochetes in scrapings of the chancre base. Darkfield examinations and DFA tests of lesion exudate or tissue are the definitive methods for diagnosing early syphilis.

If a patient is engaging in high-risk sexual behavior or is living in an area in which syphilis is endemic, RPRs should be drawn yearly to screen for asymptomatic infection. Annual RPR testing among high-risk groups is essential to distinguish between early latent syphilis (1 year or less postinfection), late latent syphilis (> 1 year postinfection), or syphilis of unknown duration, as treatment recommendations vary. Syphilis is reportable to state health departments, and all sexual contacts need to be evaluated. Patients also need to be evaluated for other STIs, especially HIV. HIV-infected patients have increased rates of failure with some treatment regimens and treatment of the HIV infection should occur as soon as indicated after diagnosis.

» Complications

Untreated syphilis can lead to tertiary complications with serious multiorgan involvement, including aortitis and neurosyphilis. Transmission to the fetus can occur from an untreated pregnant individual (see Chapters 2 and 42).

» Treatment

See Table 44–1 for treatment recommendations. Patients should be reexamined and serologically evaluated with nontreponemal tests at 6 and 12 months after treatment. If signs or symptoms persist or recur, or patients do not have a fourfold decrease in their nontreponemal test titer, they should

be considered to have failed treatment or be reinfected and need retreatment.

3. Chancroid

» General Considerations

Chancroid is caused by Haemophilus ducreyi. It is relatively rare outside of the tropics and subtropics, but is endemic in some urban areas in the United States, and has been associated with HIV infection, drug use, and prostitution. A detailed history, including travel, may prove to be important in identifying this infection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

The typical lesion begins as a papule that erodes after 24–48 hours into an ulcer. The ulcer is painful and has ragged, sharply demarcated edges and a purulent base (unlike syphilis). The ulcer is typically solitary and somewhat deeper than HSV infection. The lesions may occur anywhere on the genitals and are more common in men than in women. Tender, fluctuant (unlike syphilis and HSV) inguinal adenopathy is present in 50% of patients. A painful ulcer in combination with suppurative inguinal adenopathy is very often chancroid.

B. Laboratory Findings

Gram stain shows gram-positive cocci arranged in a boxcar formation. Culture, which has a sensitivity of less than 80%, can be performed on a special medium that is available in academic centers. NAAT testing may improve laboratory diagnosis in areas where such testing is available.

» Differential Diagnosis

Chancroid is distinguished from syphilis by the painful nature of the ulcer and the associated tender suppurative adenopathy. HSV vesicles often produce painful ulcers, but these are multiple, smaller, and shallower than chancroid ulcers. Adenopathy associated with initial HSV infection does not suppurate. A presumptive diagnosis of chancroid should be considered in a patient with typical painful genital ulcers and regional adenopathy when the test results for syphilis and HSV are negative.

» Treatment

Symptoms improve within 3 days after therapy (see Table 44–1). Most ulcers resolve in 7 days, although large ulcers may take 2 weeks to heal. All sexual contacts need to be examined and given treatment, even if asymptomatic. Individuals with HIV coinfection may have slower rates of healing or treatment failures.

4. Lymphogranuloma Venereum

» General Considerations

Lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), caused by C trachomatis serovars L1, L2, or L3, is generally rare in the United States. The disease is endemic in Southeast Asia, the Caribbean, Latin America, and areas of Africa. Since 2003, an increased number of cases in the United States, Western Europe, and Canada have occurred primarily among men who have sex with men and have been associated with HIV coinfection.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Patients with LGV present with a painless vesicle or ulcer that heals spontaneously, followed by development of tender adenopathy that is typically unilateral. A classic finding is the groove sign—an inguinal crease created by concomitant involvement of inguinal and femoral nodes. These nodes become matted and fluctuant and may rupture. LGV can cause proctocolitis with rectal ulceration, purulent anal discharge, fever, tenesmus, and lower abdominal pain, primarily in men who have sex with men.

B. Laboratory Findings

Diagnosis of LGV can be difficult. It generally requires a clinical suspicion based on physical examination findings. Lesion swabs and lymph node aspirates can be tested for Chlamydia by culture, DFA, or NAAT. NAAT is not FDA cleared for rectal specimens. Additional genotyping is necessary to differentiate LGV from non-LGV serovars of Chlamydia. In the absence of laboratory testing to confirm the diagnosis, one should treat for LGV if clinical suspicion is high.

» Differential Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis during the adenopathy phase includes bacterial adenitis, lymphoma, and cat-scratch disease. Differential diagnosis during the ulcerative phase encompasses all causes of genital ulcers.

» Treatment

See Table 44–1 for treatment recommendations. Despite effectiveness of azithromycin for non-LGV chlamydial infections, there have been no controlled treatment trials to recommend its use in LGV. HIV-infected individuals are treated the same as non-HIV infected individuals, but should be monitored closely to assess response to treatment.

White JA: Manifestations and management of lymphogranuloma venereum. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2009;22:57 [PMID: 19532081].

5. Other Ulcerations

Granuloma inguinale, or donovanosis, is caused by Klebsiella granulomatis, a gram-negative bacillus that is rare in the United States, but is endemic in India, the Caribbean, and southern Africa. An indurated subcutaneous nodule erodes to form a painless, friable ulcer with granulation tissue. Diagnosis is based on clinical suspicion and supported by a Wright or Giemsa stain of the granulation tissue that reveals intracytoplasmic rods (Donovan bodies) in mononuclear cells. See Table 44–1 for treatment recommendations. Relapse may occur 6–18 months after apparently effective treatment with a 3-week course of doxycycline.

GENITAL WARTS & HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS

» General Considerations

Condylomata acuminata, or genital warts, are caused by HPV, which can also cause cervical dysplasia and cervical cancer. HPV is transmitted sexually. An estimated 20 million people in the United States are infected annually with HPV, including approximately more than 9 million sexually active adolescents and young adults 15–24 years of age. The majority (74%) of new HPV infections occurs among those 15–24 years of age; in females younger than age 25 years, the prevalence ranges between 28% and 46%. It is estimated that 32%–50% of adolescent females having sexual intercourse in the United States have HPV infections, though only 1% may have visible lesions. Thirty to 60% of males whose partners have HPV have evidence of condylomata on examination. An estimated 1 million new cases of genital warts occur every year in the United States.

Although there are almost 100 serotypes of HPV, types 6 and 11 cause approximately 90% of genital warts, and HPV types 16 and 18 cause more than 70% of cervical dysplasia and cervical cancer. The infection is more common in persons with multiple partners and in those who initiate sexual intercourse at an early age.

Pap smears should be obtained starting at age 21 and then every 3 years. More frequent and earlier evaluations are recommended if there are additional risk factors such as coinfection with HIV.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

For males, verrucous lesions are found on the shaft or corona of the penis. Lesions also may develop in the urethra or rectum. Lesions do not produce discomfort. They may be single or found in clusters. Females develop verrucous lesions on any genital mucosal surface, either internally or externally, and often develop perianal lesions.

B. Laboratory Findings

External, visible lesions have unique characteristics that make the diagnosis straightforward. Condylomata acuminata can be distinguished from condylomata lata (syphilis), skin tags, and molluscum contagiosum by application of 5% acetic acid solution. Acetowhitening is used to indicate the extent of cervical infection.

Pap smears detect cervical abnormalities. HPV infection is the most frequent cause of an abnormal smear. Pap smear findings are graded by the atypical nature of the cervical cells. These changes range from atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS) to low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSIL) and high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSIL). LSIL encompasses cellular changes associated with HPV and mild dysplasia. HSIL includes moderate dysplasia, severe dysplasia, and carcinoma in situ.

Follow-up for ASCUS is controversial, as only 25% progress to dysplasia, and the remainder are stable or regress. Updated recommendations prefer repeat cytology in 12 months with no HPV DNA testing. If a test for HPV DNA is performed and is positive, then repeat cytology in 12 months is recommended. If the grade of the atypical squamous cells remains uncertain or if there is HSIL, colposcopy is recommended. If LSIL is detected, colposcopy is not needed, but a repeat Pap smear should be done in 1 year, and if LSIL or HSIL are subsequently detected, the patient should be referred for colposcopy for direct visualization or biopsy of the cervix (or both). If a Pap smear shows signs of inflammation only, and concomitant infection such as vaginitis or cervicitis is present, the smear should be repeated after the inflammation has cleared.

» Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis includes normal anatomic structures (pearly penile papules, vestibular papillae, and sebaceous glands), molluscum contagiosum, seborrheic keratosis, and syphilis.

» Complications

Because genital warts can proliferate and become friable during pregnancy, many experts advocate their removal during pregnancy. HPV types 6 and 11 can cause laryngeal papillomatosis in infants and children. Complications of appropriate treatment include scarring with changes in skin pigmentation or pain at the treatment site. Pap smears with persistent or high-grade dysplasia require biopsy and/or resection, which may result in cervical abnormalities that complicate pregnancy. Cervical cancer is the most common and important sequelae of HPV.

» Prevention

The use of condoms significantly reduces, but does not eliminate, the risk for transmission to uninfected partners.

The quadrivalent HPV vaccine is 96%–100% effective in preventing HPV-6 and 11–related genital warts and HPV-16 and 18–related cervical dysplasia. It is recommended for females aged 9–26 years and males aged 9–21 years. Males are protected against genital warts and anal cancer, which has a significantly increased incidence in males who practice anal sex. The bivalent HPV vaccine is greater than 93% effective in preventing HPV-16– and 18–related cervical dysplasia, but has no effect on genital warts. It is recommended only for girls aged 10–25 years (see Chapter 10).

» Treatment

Penile and external vaginal or vulvar lesions can be treated topically. Treatment may need to occur weekly for 4–6 weeks. An experienced practitioner should treat internal and cervical lesions (see Table 44–1). Treatment may clear the visible lesions, but not reduce the presence of virus, nor is it clear whether transmission of HPV is reduced by treatment.

Warts may resolve or remain unchanged if left untreated or they may increase in size or number. Treatment can induce wart-free periods in most patients. Most recurrences occur within the 3 months following completion of a treatment regimen. Appropriate follow-up of abnormal Pap smears is essential to detect any progression to malignancy.

ASCCP Consensus Guidelines for Management of Abnormal Cervical Cytology. Available at: http://www.asccp.org/ConsensusGuidelines/UpdatedConsensusGuidelines/tabid/14181/Default.aspx. Accessed February 8, 2015.

Erickson BK, Alvarez RD, Huh WK: Human papillomavirus: what every provider should know. Am J Obstet Gyn 2013;208:169 [PMID: 23021131].

Vesco KK et al: Risk factors and other epidemiologic considerations for cervical cancer screening: a narrative review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 2011;155:698 [PMID: 22006929].

OTHER VIRAL INFECTIONS

1. Hepatitis (See Also Chapter 22)

» General Considerations

In the United States, viral hepatitis is linked primarily to three viruses: hepatitis A (HAV), hepatitis B (HBV), and hepatitis C (HCV). Each virus has the potential to be spread through sexual activity. HAV is spread via fecal-oral transmission and oral-anal contact. Both HBV and HCV are spread through contact with blood or body fluids. Sexual transmission of HBV is believed to be much more efficient than that of HCV although recent data has suggested increased transmission of HCV in MSM.

Universal immunization recommendations for HAV and HBV have contributed to the decline in prevalence of these diseases. However, individuals born before implementation of routine vaccination, especially those in high-risk groups (multiple sexual partners or men who have sex with men), should receive vaccination.

2. Human Immunodeficiency Virus (See Also Chapter 41)

» General Considerations

In 2009, 39% of new HIV infections in the United States occurred in youth and young adults aged 13–29 years. Data suggest that adolescents and young adults are less likely to be aware of their HIV infection than older individuals with HIV. Because of the long latency period between infection with HIV and progression to AIDS, it is felt that many HIV-positive young adults contracted HIV during adolescence. CDC incidence data indicate that young men who have sex with men continue to be the highest-risk group, particularly young men of color. Young women account for approximately one-third of the infections in this age group with black and Hispanic women bearing a disproportionate burden of the disease. Risk factors for contracting HIV include a prior STI, infrequent condom use, practicing insertive or receptive anal sex (both males and females), prior genital HSV infection, practicing survival sex (ie, trading sex for money or drugs), intravenous drug or crack cocaine or crystal methamphetamine use, homelessness, and being the victim of sexual abuse (males).

HIV infection should be considered in all sexually active youth, whether they have sex with males, females, or both. The CDC and the United States Preventative Services Task Force recommend adolescents be offered HIV testing at least once. Individual risk factors should then be used to determine the frequency of repeat testing. Opportunities for HIV screening in adolescents should include STI screening or treatment, pregnancy testing, or routine health evaluations. Most states allow adolescents to consent to HIV testing and treatment, but providers should be aware of their particular State's laws.

» Clinical Findings

A. Symptoms and Signs

Adolescents may be asymptomatic with recent HIV infection or may present with the acute retroviral syndrome, which is evident 2–6 weeks after exposure. The acute clinical syndrome, which occurs in about 50% of patients, is generally indistinguishable from other viral illnesses with respect to fever, malaise, and upper respiratory symptoms. Distinguishing features include generalized lymphadenopathy, rash, oral and genital ulcerations, aseptic meningitis, and

thrush. After the acute illness, signs and symptoms may be absent for many years.

B. Laboratory Findings

If acute HIV infection is suspected, HIV testing should be done by HIV RNA PCR testing or HIV DNA PCR testing. Routine serological testing may not be positive for 6 weeks or longer. Viral load values of less than 10,000 copies/mL by RNA PCR may indicate a false positive in this setting and repeat testing would be indicated.

In 2014, the CDC updated its recommendations for HIV screening. The new recommendations are based on the availability of technologies that allow for earlier detection of HIV infection than offered by ELISA followed by Western Blot confirmation. The new testing algorithm for serum or plasma recommends the use of a HIV 1/2 antigen/antibody combination immunoassay for initial testing. This test detects antibodies to both HIV-1 and HIV-2 and the HIV-1 p24 antigen. This detects both established infections and more recent infections.

» Treatment

The most important aspect of identifying adolescents and young adults with HIV infection is linking them to care. Data support the treatment of youth with HIV infection in care settings that provide comprehensive, multidisciplinary care. These settings will be best equipped to provide emotional support, preventative care, risk reduction for contacts, access to research, and guidance on the appropriate timing of antiretroviral therapies.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Diagnoses of HIV Infection in the United States and Dependent Areas, 2013. Vol 25. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/2013/surveillance_Report_vol_25. Accessed March 7, 2015.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and Association of Public Health Laboratories. Laboratory Testing for the Diagnosis of HIV Infection: Updated Recommendations. Available at: http://dx.doi.org/10.15620/cdc.23447. Published June 27, 2014. Accessed March 7, 2015.

Moyer VA: Screening for HIV: U.S. Preventative Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. Ann Intern Med 2013;159(3):161–168 [PMID: 23698354].

3. HIV Postsexual Exposure Prophylaxis

Adolescents may present to health care providers seeking nonoccupational HIV postexposure prophylaxis (nPEP) following an assault or a high-risk sexual encounter. The risk of acquiring HIV infection through sexual assault or abuse is low but present. The risk for HIV transmission from a positive contact per episode of receptive penile-anal sexual exposure is estimated at 0.5%–3%; the risk per episode of receptive vaginal exposure is estimated at less than 0.1%–0.2%. HIV transmission also occurs from receptive oral exposure, but the risk is unknown. The risk of HIV transmission may be increased in certain conditions: trauma, including bleeding, with vaginal, anal, or oral penetration; site of exposure to ejaculate; HIV viral load in ejaculate; duration of HIV infection in the assailant or partner; and presence of an STI, prior genital HSV infection, or genital lesions in either partner. The risk is greatly reduced if the contact is successfully receiving antiretroviral therapy.

Health care providers that consider offering PEP should take into account the likelihood that exposure to HIV occurred, the potential benefits and risks of such therapy, and the interval between the exposure and initiation of therapy. It will be helpful to know the HIV status of the sexual contact. The CDC provides an algorithm for consideration of PEP. In general, PEP is not recommended when more than 72 hours have passed since exposure. If the patient decides to take PEP, clinical management should be implemented according to published CDC guidelines. Providers should be aware that structural barriers exist to obtaining PEP, and that adolescent assault victims have a high discontinuation rate due to adverse effects from the medication.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Antiretroviral postexposure prophylaxis after sexual, injection-drug use, or other nonoccupational exposure to HIV in the United States: recommendations from the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. MMWR Recomm Rep 2005;54(RR–2):1–20 [PMID: 15660015].

Jain S, Mayer KH: Practical guidance for nonoccupational postexposure prophylaxis to prevent HIV infection: an editorial review. AIDS 2014;28(11):1545–1554 [PMID: 24785956].

4. HIV Preexposure Prophylaxis (PrEP)

In July 2012, the CDC issued interim guidance on the use of PrEP in adult heterosexual couples; interim guidance on its use in adult MSM was released in 2011. The guidance followed the Food and Drug Administration's approval of a coformulated HIV antiretroviral (tenofovir and emtricitabine) for use as preexposure prophylaxis based on data from two large international trials. The approval for use does not include individuals under age 18 years. Further research is being conducted to determine safety and acceptability in younger individuals at high risk for HIV acquisition. Providers considering the use of PrEP in a minor at risk of infection would be advised to consult with an experienced prescriber and know the laws of their particular state with respect to providing preventive HIV medication without parental consent.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Interim guidance for clinicians considering the use of preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection in heterosexually active adults. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2012 Aug 10;61(31):586–589 [PMID: 22874836].

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Interim guidance: preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection in men who have sex with men. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2011 Jan 28;60(3):65–68 [PMID: 21270743].

Hosek SG wet al: The acceptability and feasibility of an HIV preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP) trial with young men who have sex with men. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2013;62(4):447–456 [PMID: 24135734].

ECTOPARASITIC INFECTIONS

1. Pubic Lice

Pthirus pubis, the pubic louse, lives in pubic hair. The louse or the nits can be transmitted by close contact from person to person. Patients complain of itching and may report having seen the insect. Examination of the pubic hair may reveal the louse crawling around or attached to the hair. Closer inspection may reveal the nit or sac of eggs, which is a gelatinous material (1–2 mm) stuck to the hair shaft. See Table 44–1 for treatment recommendations.

2. Scabies

Sarcoptes scabiei, the causative organism in scabies, is smaller than the louse. It can be identified by the classic burrow, which is created by the organism laying eggs and traveling just below the skin surface. Scabies can be sexually transmitted by close skin-to-skin contact and can be found in the pubic region, groin, lower abdomen, or upper thighs. The rash is intensely pruritic, especially at night, erythematous, and scaly. See Table 44–1 for treatment options. Ivermectin is an oral therapeutic option for scabies that may hold particular promise in the treatment of severe infestations or in epidemic situations. When treating with lotion or shampoo, the entire area needs to be covered for the time specified by the manufacturer. One treatment usually clears the infestation, although a second treatment may be necessary. Bed sheets and clothes must be washed in hot water. Both sexual and close personal or household contacts within the preceding month should be examined and treated.

Currie BJ, McCarthy JS: Permethrin and ivermectin for scabies. N Engl J Med 2010;362:717 [PMID: 20181973].

Leone PA: Scabies and pediculosis pubis: an update of treatment regimens and general review. Clin Infect Dis 2007;44:S153 [PMID: 17342668].

REFERENCES

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually Transmitted Disease Surveillance 2013. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2014. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats.

Workowski KA and Bolan GA. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2015 Jun 5;64:1–137 [PMID: 26042815]. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment. Accessed February 2, 2016.

Snook ML et al: Adolescent gynecology: special considerations for special patients. Clin Obstet Gynecol 2012;55:651 [PMID: 22828097].

45 Travel Medicine

Suchitra Rao, MBBS
Sarah K. Parker, MD

INTRODUCTION

Twenty-seven million people from the United States travel internationally per year; one-third of them travel to developing nations. Fifty to seventy percent of travelers become ill during their travel overseas. The number of children traveling with families continues to increase. Children are especially susceptible to infectious diseases, trauma, and other health problems, which vary with the destination. Preparation for travel with children and infants includes consideration of the destination-specific risks, underlying medical problems, and administration of both routine and travel-related vaccines. The physician involved in pretravel counseling should focus on the issues listed in Table 45–1.

PREPARING CHILDREN AND INFANTS FOR TRAVEL

Travel Plans

Parents and care providers should be advised that travel with children and infants is much more enjoyable when the number of journeys in a single trip is limited; travel time is kept relatively short; and travel delays are anticipated. Planning for delays and other problems should include bringing new or favorite toys or games for distraction, and carrying extra food and drink, changes of clothing, and fever medications.

Medical Care During Travel

It is useful to obtain names and addresses of local health care providers at the family's destination. This is available from travel medicine practitioners or from the membership directory of the International Society of Travel Medicine. The International Association for Medical Assistance to Travelers website (www.iamat.org) is another useful resource with a worldwide directory of providers proficient in English. Travel insurance, which is highly encouraged, should not only cover medical care at the destination, but also provide 24-hour help lines with information regarding English-speaking physicians and hospitals, and arrange and pay for evacuation to a medical facility that provides necessary treatment if not available locally. In emergencies, parents and caretakers should take their children to the largest medical facility in the area, which is more likely to have a pediatric unit and trauma services.

Trauma

Trauma is a common cause of morbidity and mortality in traveling children. Parents should rent larger, safer vehicles, and use car seats whenever possible. However, in many developing countries, car seats are not available, so caretakers may need to travel with their own. Taxis often do not have seatbelts, so it may be necessary to request taxis with seatbelts by calling in advance.

Air Travel

Healthy term infants can travel by commercial pressurized airplane. Children at higher risk during air travel may include premature infants and those with chronic cardiac or pulmonary disease, so appropriate counseling with their specialist is indicated. Many parents request advice regarding sedation of their child during travel. While this is not recommended, the most widely used agent is diphenhydramine. It is advisable to try a test dose prior to travel as idiosyncratic reactions and overdosing can lead to an anticholinergic syndrome or a paradoxical stimulating effect.

Ear Pain

Children and infants often have pain during ascent and descent of commercial airplanes due to changes in middle ear pressure causing retraction or protrusion of the tympanic membrane. Methods said to alleviate or minimize ear

Table 45–1. Preparing for travel—issues specific to travel as indicated.

Vaccinations (indications, safety, and tolerability)
Insect precautions (use of protective clothing, repellants, bed nets, insecticides)
Malaria chemoprophylaxis (benefits of a particular regimen vs potential adverse reactions)
Food and water precautions and environmental risks from water-borne disease
Traveler's diarrhea and self-treatment
Health insurance/evacuation insurance
Trauma prevention and car seats
Access to medical care during travel
Altitude sickness
Disease outbreaks in destination
Climate
Jetlag
Animal exposure, trauma from animals
General health and routine illness
Clothing and footwear
Copies of prescriptions, vaccination documentation, physician's letter, list of medications
Travel-specific medications
Safe sex counseling
First-aid kits
Crime and safety

pain during these times include chewing, swallowing, nursing, and bottle feeding.

Motion Sickness

Almost 60% of children will experience motion sickness during travel. While older children have symptoms similar to those in adults (such as nausea, epigastric discomfort, headache, general discomfort), children younger than 5 years may have gait abnormalities as the predominant symptom. Nonpharmacologic strategies include eating a light meal at least 3 hours before travel; avoiding dairy products and foods high in calories, protein, and sodium before travel; sitting in the middle of the back seat or in the front seat if age-appropriate; focusing on a stable object or the horizon; avoiding reading or other visual stimuli; eye closure; fresh air; and limiting excessive head movement. Pharmacologic intervention has not been well studied in children, but if necessary, antihistamines such as diphenhydramine is recommended for children younger than 12 and scopolamine is acceptable for children older than 12 years. These measures, however, are not evidence-based.

High Altitude

Acute mountain sickness is as common in children as in adults, but it may go unrecognized due to its subtle presentation, such as unexplained fussiness or change in appetite and sleep patterns. High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) is seen in children traveling to high altitudes; it also occurs in children who live at high altitude, descend for an extended period, and return to altitude. Mild symptoms of altitude sickness can be treated with rest and hydration, or analgesics such as ibuprofen or acetaminophen. High-altitude sickness is milder and resolves much more quickly in children compared to adults, so prophylaxis is usually not required. Acetazolamide has not been studied in children for acute mountain sickness, but it is safe in this age group and has been used for both prophylaxis and treatment. The pediatric dose is 5 mg/kg/d (125 mg maximum) divided twice daily, starting 1 day before ascent, and continued for 2 days at high altitude.

Medications/First-Aid Kit

A small medical kit is useful when traveling. Included in this kit should be medications for illnesses that the child experiences at home, trip-specific items, and the usual first-aid kit items (Table 45–2). Medications should be purchased prior to travel, as those obtained at some destinations may be of poor quality or contain toxic substances.

Table 45–2. First-aid kit for international travel.

Medications
Malaria prophylaxis
Acetaminophen and ibuprofen
Antibiotics
Antihistamines
Topical formulations
Hydrocortisone ointment
Antibiotic and antifungal ointment
Insect repellants
Sunscreen
Antibacterial soap/alcohol-based hand sanitizer
Antiseptic wipes
Other
Bed nets
Thermometer
Medicine spoon and cup
Oral rehydration salts in powder form
Sterile cotton balls, cotton tip applicators
Tweezers, scissors, safety pins
Water purification tablets
Gauze bandages
Tape—hypoallergenic, waterproof
Triangular bandage/sling/splint
Tongue depressor
Adhesive bandages
Flashlight
First-aid book
Copies of prescriptions, list of medications, copy of insurance coverage

Fhogartaigh CN, Sanford C, Behrens RH: Preparing young travellers for low resource destinations. Br Med J 2012;345:e7179 [PMID: 23131670].
Neumann K: Pediatric travel medicine: where we are and where we hope to go. J Travel Med 2012;19(3):137–139 [PMID: 22530818].
Schwartz BS, Larocque RC, Ryan ET: In the clinic. Travel medicine. Ann Intern Med 2012;156(11) [PMID: 22665823].
Stauffer W, Christenson JC, Fischer PR: Preparing children for international travel. Travel Med Infect Dis 2008;6(3):101–113 [PMID: 18486064].
Zafren K1. Prevention of high altitude illness. Travel Med Infect Dis. 2014 Jan-Feb;12(1):29–39 [PMID: 24393671].

VACCINATIONS—ROUTINE CHILDHOOD VACCINES MODIFIED FOR TRAVEL

Many vaccine-preventable diseases remain prevalent in developing countries, and outbreaks still occur in areas where these diseases are considered rare. The schedule for some vaccines may be accelerated for travel, and some vaccines can be given earlier than the recommended age. Vaccination pertaining to children traveling follows the routine vaccination schedule as outlined in Chapter 10. The recommended intervals balance the high-risk age for disease with infant immunologic responses. The recommended minimum interval between doses is listed in Table 45–3. Barriers to some early immunizations are antibody from the mother interfering with an infant's ability to mount an antibody response, particularly to live vaccines, and the lack of a T-cell–dependent immune response to certain immunogens in those younger than 2 years. Minor febrile illnesses are not a contraindication to routine or travel vaccines and should not lead to their postponement. Live vaccines should be given together or separated by 30 days or more.

Diphtheria-Tetanus-Acellular Pertussis Vaccine

Immunization is recommended prior to travel to developing countries because of the greater risk of disease from diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis. Tetanus risk is high in several areas of the developing world where fecal contamination of soil is extensive. Infants should receive their first diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis (DTaP) at 6 weeks of age for an adequate immune response, with a 4-week interval between the subsequent two doses. Adequate protection is achieved after the third dose. The fourth dose may be given 6–12 months after the third dose provided that the child is 12 months of age or older. Tdap is licensed for children at least 11 years of age. Adolescents and adult caretakers, who are prominent vectors in the spread of pertussis to young children, should receive a single Tdap booster. If more than 5 years has elapsed since the last dose, a booster should be considered for children and adolescents to minimize tetanus risk. Tdap is preferred to Td in children older than 11 years if they have not received Tdap previously.

Table 45–3. Accelerated vaccinations.

Vaccine	Minimum Age for First Dose	Minimum Time to Second Dose (wk)	Minimum Time to Third Dose (wk)	Minimum Time for Fourth Dose (wk)
MMR	12 mo[a]	4	–	–
Hepatitis B	Birth	4	8[b]	–
DTaP	6 wk	4	4	6 mo
Hib	6 wk	4	4	8[c]
IPV	6 wk	4	4	6 mo[d]
MCV	6 wk[e]	8	[e]	[e]
MPS4	2 y[e]	5 y	[e]	[e]
PCV	4 wk	4	4	8
Varicella	12 mo	4	–	–
Rotavirus	4 wk[f]	4	4	–
Hepatitis A	1 y	6 mo	–	–

DTaP, diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis; DTP, diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis; Hib, Haemophilus influenzae type b; IPV, inactivated polio vaccine; MCV, meningococcal conjugate vaccine; MMR, measles-mumps-rubella; MPS4, meningococcal polysaccharide; PCV, pneumococcal conjugate vaccine.
[a]Children traveling abroad may be vaccinated as early as 6 months of age. Before departure, children aged 6–11 months should receive the first dose of MMR vaccine. This will not count toward their series, and they will still require two doses after 12 months of age.
[b]The third dose should be given at least 4 months after the first dose and at a minimum of 6 months of age.
[c]If third dose is given after 4 years, the fourth dose is not required.
[d]Recommended at 6–18 months of age, minimum age 4 years for final dose.
[e]Minimum 6 weeks for Hib-MenCY, 9 months for Menactra (MCV4-D), 2 years for Menveo (MCV4-CRM). Repeat vaccination depends on host status and ongoing risk factors.
[f]This differs from the package insert but is validated by data held by the manufacturer.

Haemophilus influenzae Type b Vaccine

The indications for vaccination of Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) in children traveling are the same as for the US residents. If previously unvaccinated, infants younger than 15 months should receive at least two doses prior to travel. An accelerated schedule can start at a minimum of 6 weeks of age, with a 4-week interval between the first, second, and third doses, and at least 8 weeks between third and fourth doses.

Hepatitis A Vaccine

Hepatitis A is one of the most common vaccine-preventable illnesses globally, and vaccination should be provided prior to travel to developing countries. The disease is much less common in children from the developed world, so they are likely to be susceptible when traveling to high-risk areas. Although two doses of the vaccine are recommended 6–12 months apart, a single dose will provide protection during the trip if given at least 2 weeks prior to departure. The earliest age of administration is 1 year in the United States. Immune globulin for hepatitis A (0.02 mL/kg IM) can be given for protection of children younger than 1 year, or if travel will occur within 2 weeks of travel consultation. This interferes with MMR and varicella vaccination, so these vaccines should be given 2 weeks prior to immunoglobulin.

Hepatitis B Vaccine

Areas of high endemicity for hepatitis B include most of Asia, the Middle East, Africa, and the Amazon Basin. Unimmunized children are at risk if they receive blood transfusions that have not been screened for HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) or are exposed to unsterilized medical or dental equipment. Children traveling to developing countries should be vaccinated before departure. An accelerated schedule is possible, with the second dose given with a minimum 4-week interval, and the third dose given at least 8 weeks after the second dose. The third dose should not be given before 24 weeks of age.

Influenza Vaccine

Children are at high risk of respiratory infection during travel. The influenza vaccine is recommended for travel during the influenza season, which is between September and March in the Northern Hemisphere, and between April and August in the Southern Hemisphere, and year round in the tropics. The vaccine available in the United States may not protect against new strains circulating in the Southern Hemisphere. Influenza vaccine is recommended for children at least 6 months of age; those younger than 9 years will need two doses of vaccine administered at least 4 weeks apart if they have never previously received the vaccine containing the 2009 H1N1 antigen contained in all influenza vaccines since 2010–2011. The current vaccines available are: the trivalent or quadrivalent inactivated vaccine (IIV) given intramuscularly, and the quadrivalent live attenuated vaccine (LAIV) given intranasally. It is preferable to be vaccinated at least 2 weeks prior to departure. The annual seasonal influenza vaccine may not be routinely available in the United States from the late spring to early fall, when it may be needed for travelers but may be available at some travel clinics. Revaccination is not recommended for those who will be traveling during April through September and were vaccinated the preceding fall.

Measles-Mumps-Rubella (MMR) Vaccine

While measles is no longer endemic in the United States, it is still prevalent in many parts of the world, including Europe, Africa, and Asia. Children as young as 6 months of age traveling outside the United States are recommended to receive the vaccine, but any doses given prior to 12 months do not count toward an adequate two-dose series, as maternal antibodies may interfere with the immune response. These infants will still require one dose of measles-mumps-rubella (MMR) at 12–15 months of age and a second dose at 4–6 years of age. The second dose aims to protect those individuals (~5%) who did not respond the first time. If an accelerated schedule is required, two doses must be separated by minimum of 4 weeks.

Meningococcal Vaccine

The highest risk for meningococcal disease is for travelers to the meningitis belt of Africa, (sub-Saharan region) especially during the dry season, and travelers on the Hajj or Umrah pilgrimage to Mecca. Notably, meningococcal disease is decreasing in this region due to vaccination against type A. There are two meningococcal vaccines available. The conjugated quadrivalent (MCV4) vaccine is approved for use in persons aged 9–23 months (two doses 8 weeks apart) and 2–55 years (one dose). This vaccine is recommended for those who live or travel to areas with high rates of meningitis. It must be given at least 10 days before international travel. The quadrivalent meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine (MPSV4) is licensed for persons 2 years or older. Both types of vaccines protect against serotypes A, C, Y, and W-135. The duration of protection is 3 years in children and 5 years in adults, and boosters are indicated for ongoing exposure and at risk hosts. Hib-MenCY-TT is the approved vaccination for the age group 6 weeks to 9 months, and a more recent combined Hib and N meningitidis serogroup C conjugate vaccine has been licensed for those younger than 6 weeks of age. These should not be used for children travelling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj, as serogroup A is the predominant organism in these regions; a previously vaccinated infant reaching the age of 9 months and travelling to endemic areas should be revaccinated with MCV4. MPSV4 should be used for persons older than 56 years. Vaccination can be considered in children younger than 9 months with risk factors and/or traveling to an endemic area. Meningococcal vaccination is required by the Saudi Arabian government for pilgrims undertaking the Hajj or Umra pilgrimage to Mecca and Medina, because of the international outbreak of Neisseria meningitidis A in 1987 and W-135 in 2000 and 2001. Further information concerning geographic areas recommended for meningococcal vaccination can be obtained from http://www.cdc.gov/travel.

Pneumococcal Vaccine

The indications for vaccination against Streptococcus pneumoniae in children traveling are the same as for the US residents. The 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV 13) is recommended for routine use in children aged 5 years or younger. For children aged 5 years or younger who have completed the PCV 7 series, a single additional dose of PCV 13 is recommended. The minimal interval is 4 weeks between the first three doses and 8 weeks between the third and fourth dose. In addition, the pneumococcal polysaccharide (PPSV23) is recommended for children and adults aged 2 years or older who have certain underlying medical conditions, and for all adults aged 65 years or older.

Polio Vaccine

Transmission of wild-type polio still occurs in regions of Asia and Africa, and vaccine-derived polio is transmitted in other regions. Adequate immunization with inactivated polio vaccine (IPV) should be administered prior to travel to developing countries. The minimum age of administration is 6 weeks of age for IPV. The recommended interval between each dose is 4 weeks. One additional lifetime dose (a fifth dose) of the IPV should be given to caretakers who are traveling to areas with recent circulating polio.

Rotavirus Vaccine

Rotavirus is the most common cause of severe gastroenteritis in infants and young children worldwide, and vaccination with the complete series is recommended prior to travel if age-appropriate. The minimum and maximum age for the first dose is 4 weeks and 14 weeks, 6 days respectively. There is insufficient data on the safety in older infants. The minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks.

Cramer JP, Wilder-Smith A: Meningococcal disease in travelers: update on vaccine options. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2012 Oct;25(5):507–517 [PMID: 22907278].

Greenwood CS, Greenwood NP, Fischer PR: Immunization issues in pediatric travelers. Expert Rev Vaccines 2008 Jul;7(5):651–661 [PMID: 18564019].

Hill DR et al: The practice of travel medicine: Guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2006 Dec 15;43(12):1499–1539 [PMID: 17109284].

Jost M, Luzi D, Metzler S, Miran B, Mutsch M: Travel Med Infect Dis 2015 January-Febrary;13(1):10–18 [PMID: 25468523].

Woods CR. Prevention of meningococcal infections in the first 2 years of life. Pediatr Ann 2013 Aug;42(8):164–171 [PMID: 23910030].

VACCINATIONS—TRAVEL-SPECIFIC

Japanese Encephalitis Vaccine

Japanese encephalitis (JE) is caused by a flavivirus transmitted by the night-biting Culex mosquito. The risk of contracting severe JE is low, especially for travelers who will have a brief stay in an endemic area, as the infection rate in Culex mosquitoes is 3% or lower, and only 1 in 200 infections with JE leads to neuroinvasive disease. The symptoms of JE include seizures, paralysis, coma, and mental status changes; residual neurological damage occurs in 50% of those with clinical disease. The case fatality rate is 30% in those with severe disease. Most symptomatic cases occur in children younger than 10 years and in the elderly. The areas at risk include most of Asia, Eastern Russia, some areas of the Western Pacific, and the Torres Strait Islands of Australia. The peak season is between April and October, during and just after the rainy season. The JE vaccine licensed and available for use in the United States is Ixiaro, an inactivated Vero cell culture-derived vaccine. It was approved in May 2013 for use in children aged 2 months of age and older. The primary series is two doses administered 28 days apart. For adults and children aged 3 years and older, each dose is 0.5 mL. For children aged 2 months to 2 years, each dose is 0.25 mL.

Rabies Vaccine

Rabies is found worldwide and contracted through the bite or saliva-contaminated scratch of infected animals. Canine rabies is highly endemic in parts of Africa, Asia, and Central and South America (Rabnet—www.who.int/rabies/rabnet/en/—provides country-specific animal and human data), where 40% of rabies occurs in children younger than 14 years. This increased risk is because children are attracted to animals, are more likely to be bitten, and may not report minor encounters with animals. Most cases of rabies in travelers occur through the bite of an infected dog, cat, or monkey (particularly those that live near temples in parts of Asia). Bats, mongooses, and foxes are other animals that can transmit disease.

Rabies vaccine is currently available for pre-exposure and postexposure prophylaxis. It is recommended for travelers to areas in which rabies is endemic and for those who will have occupational or recreational exposure (such as cavers), especially if access to medical care will be limited when traveling. The risk of a bite from a potentially rabid animal is up to 2% for travelers to the developing world. There are three types of inactivated virus vaccine available, which are administered prior to exposure in three doses at days 0, 7, and 21 or 28. Vaccination prior to exposure may not be completely protective; further doses

are required if a high-risk bite occurs. The minimum age of administration is 1 year, and duration of protection is 2 years. Malaria chemoprophylaxis with mefloquine or chloroquine should begin 1 month after completing the rabies vaccine series to avoid interference with the immune response.

It is important to counsel travelers about animal avoidance, thorough cleansing of a bite wound with irrigation for at least 5 minutes, and the need for previously vaccinated individuals to seek additional vaccination on days 0 and 3 if an exposure occurs. In the event of a bite in a nonvaccinated individual, rabies immunoglobulin and four doses of vaccine at days 0, 3, 7, and 14 are required, ideally within 24–48 hours after contact.

Yellow Fever Vaccine

Yellow fever is a flavivirus transmitted by mosquitoes, found in urban and rural areas in sub-Saharan Africa and equatorial South America. Of those infected with the virus, 15% have moderate to severe infection. The licensed 17D strain live attenuated vaccine is highly effective. It must be administered 10 days before travel to an endemic region to allow for the development of protective antibodies. It is required by many countries for reentry after travel to an endemic area, and receipt of the vaccine should be documented in the International Certificate of Vaccination that became available in December 2007 (wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/yellowbook provides an updated list of countries in which yellow fever vaccination is recommended). For this reason, it is only administered at certified clinics. The vaccine is given subcutaneously, and a booster is required every 10 years for certain groups of individuals (but immunity is probably lifelong after a single dose). The recommended minimum age of administration is 9 months, and vaccine should not be administered to at-risk infants younger than 6 months, because of the increased risk of encephalitis (0.5–4 per 1000 vaccinees). The risk of severe vaccine-related disease is also higher in adult caretakers older than 60 years. The decision to immunize infants who are 6–8 months of age must balance the infant's risk for exposure with the risk for vaccine-associated encephalitis. The vaccine is contraindicated in individuals with egg allergy or immunosuppression (including HIV with CD4 T-lymphocyte counts less than 200 cells/mm^3 a history of thymus disorder or thymectomy). A letter of medical exemption may be required for these travelers. In addition to age limitations, precautions to vaccination include asymptomatic HIV infection and CD4 T-lymphocyte count of 200–499 cells/mm^3, pregnancy, and breast-feeding. Adverse effects include encephalitis (15 per million doses for those aged > 60 years) and multisystem disease (5 per million doses in older people).

Cholera Vaccine

The cholera vaccine is no longer produced in the United States and is no longer recommended for international travel, as the disease is rare in travelers.

Typhoid Vaccine

The risk of typhoid fever in travelers is 1–10:100,000, depending on the destination. Areas at risk include South Asia, West and North Africa, South America, and Latin America. Travelers to the Indian subcontinent are at greatest risk.

The vaccine is recommended for long-term travelers traveling to an endemic area, those traveling off standard tourist routes, immunocompromised travelers, those of south Indian ancestry, and patients with cholelithiasis. There are two vaccines available: a capsular polysaccharide (ViCPS) and a live attenuated (Ty21a) vaccine. The ViCPS is given intramuscularly 2 weeks prior to travel. The minimum age of administration for this vaccine is 2 years; efficacy is 75% over 2 years. The Ty21a is an oral vaccine given as four doses every second day, which needs to be completed more than 1 week prior to travel to be effective. It is licensed for children older than 6 years; efficacy is 80% over 5 years. It is contraindicated in immunodeficient populations. Antibiotics interfere with growth of the vaccine strain bacteria. Mefloquine, chloroquine, and prophylactic doses of atovaquone-proguanil can be given concurrently with the typhoid vaccine. Fever, headache, and severe local pain and swelling are reported with the ViCPS more frequently than with other vaccines.

Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis risk is increased for travelers, especially when visiting Africa, Asia, Latin America, and the former Soviet Union. The risk is higher in long-term travelers to countries with a high incidence of tuberculosis and is highest among health care workers. Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccination is given soon after birth in many countries, but not in the United States. It protects against miliary and meningeal tuberculosis, but not against pulmonary disease, with efficacy only established in children younger than 1 year. It may be considered in children younger than 5 years who will be in a high-risk area for a prolonged period and have a negative test for tuberculosis (tuberculin skin test [TST] or interferon gamma release assay [IGRA]). It should not be given to immunosuppressed individuals. BCG is not widely available in the United States and may be administered in the destination country. A preferred alternative is that travelers to high-prevalence areas have a test for tuberculosis prior to travel and 3 months after return. It should be noted that live virus vaccines can create an anergic state, in which

tuberculosis testing can be falsely negative. Therefore, testing should be performed on the same day as any live vaccine administration, or 28 or more days later.

CDC Traveler's Health Yellow Book: http://www.nc.cdc.gov/travel/yellowbook/2012/chapter-7-international-travel-infants-children/vaccine-recommendations-for-infants-and-children.htm.

Giovanetti F: Immunisation of the travelling child. Travel Med Infect Dis Nov 2007;5(6):349–364 [PMID: 17983974].

Hatz CF, Kuenzli E, Funk M: Rabies: relevance, prevention, and management in travel medicine. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):739–753 [PMID: 22963781].

Hill DR et al: The practice of travel medicine: guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2006 Dec 15;43(12):1499–1539 [PMID: 17109284].

Lown BA et al: Vaccine administration decision making: the case of yellow fever vaccine. Clinical infectious diseases: an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2012 Sep;55(6):837–843 [PMID: 22670048].

Ritz N, Connell TG, Curtis N: To BCG or not to BCG? Preventing travel-associated tuberculosis in children. Vaccine 2008 Nov 5;26(47):5905–5910 [PMID: 18804139].

TRAVELER'S DIARRHEA

Diarrhea is one of the most common illnesses in travelers to the developing world. Children are at highest risk, usually having more severe and prolonged illness than adults. Traveler's diarrhea is defined in adults as three or more loose stools in a 24-hour period, plus either fever, nausea, vomiting, or abdominal cramping. There is no strict definition in child travelers, as the pattern, consistency, and frequency of stools vary during the course of childhood. A useful definition for traveling children is a change in normal stool pattern, with an increase in frequency (at least three stools per 24 hours) and a decrease in consistency to an unformed state. Most illnesses resolve over a 3- to 5-day period and occur in the first 2 weeks of travel. Enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC) is the most common cause, accounting for up to one-third of cases. Other pathogens implicated are listed in Table 45–4. Counseling prior to travel includes education and caution with food handling and food and water consumption, and provision for self-treatment in the event of illness.

Table 45–4. Pathogens causing traveler's diarrhea.

Bacterial	
	Enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC)
	Enteroaggregative Ecoli
	Salmonella spp
	Shigella spp
	Campylobacter jejuni
	Aeromonas spp
	Plesiomonas spp
	Vibrio cholera
	Non-cholerae Vibrio spp
	Enterotoxigenic Bacteroides fragilis
Viral	
	Rotavirus
	Noroviruses
	Sapoviruses
Parasitic	
	Giardia lamblia
	Cyclospora cayetanensis
	Cryptosporidium hominis
	Entamoeba histolytica

» Prevention

Travelers should seek restaurants with a good safety reputation; eat hot, thoroughly cooked food; eat fruits and vegetables that can be peeled; and avoid tap water. They should also avoid ice cubes, fruit juices, fresh salads, unpasteurized dairy products, cold sauces and toppings, open buffets, undercooked foods, and food or beverages from street vendors. They should check the integrity of caps before buying bottled water to avoid bottles filled with tap water. It is also useful to remind the travelers about hand washing after using the toilet and before eating. Families can consider using alcohol-containing hand sanitizers as an alternative to soap and water when access is limited during travel. Pasteurized or boiled milk is considered safe provided that it is stored at the appropriate temperature. It may be necessary to bring powdered milk to mix it with safe drinking water if the quality of milk is questionable. While these measures seem logical and should be recommended, there is little evidence that they prevent traveler's diarrhea, either in adults or in children.

Chemoprophylaxis & Treatment

The principles of treatment include adequate hydration and a short course of antibiotics when warranted; medical attention should be sought for severe or prolonged disease.

For mild disease, hydration may be all that is necessary, without any diet restriction. This can be achieved with oral rehydration therapy to supplement a regular diet. Packets of dry rehydration powder to be mixed with water are available from pharmacies, either prior to travel or at the destination. If this is not available, parents can be instructed on how to make oral rehydration solution (Table 45–5) or to use a sports drink such as Gatorade as a suitable alternative in older children and toddlers. The breast-fed infant should continue to breast-feed, in addition to receiving oral rehydration therapy.

The vomiting child is at greater risk of dehydration, so aggressive rehydration is crucial. Parents should be

Table 45–5. Recipe for oral rehydration solution.

• ¼ teaspoon (1.25 cc) salt
• ¼ teaspoon (1.25 cc) bicarbonate of soda[a]
• 2 tablespoons (30 cc) sugar
• 1 L of water

[a]If bicarbonate of soda is not available, substitute an additional ¼ teaspoon (1.25 cc) of salt.

reassured that some fluid will be absorbed even if vomiting is ongoing. This is best achieved with small amounts of fluid, given often to prevent further vomiting.

The antimotility agent loperamide, which is often used in adults to minimize symptom duration, is not advised for children because of the risk of adverse events such as toxic megacolon, ileus, extrapyramidal signs, hallucinations, and coma. Bismuth subsalicylate decreases the number of unformed stools in adults. Its routine use is not recommended in pediatrics, as aspirin is contraindicated in children younger than 18 years because of the risk of Reye syndrome, and dosing of bismuth has not been established for children.

For children with signs and symptoms of bacterial gastroenteritis, such as fever or blood in the stool, empiric antibiotic therapy should be considered. The drug of choice in children is azithromycin (10 mg/kg orally once a day for 3 days). It is available in a powdered form that can be reconstituted and stored without refrigeration. It is a good choice because of the growing resistance of many gastroenteritis-causing bacteria to ciprofloxacin. There are no pediatric trials of empiric azithromycin, so the dosing recommendations are based on pharmacokinetic data and studies involving the treatment of diarrhea in Africa and Thailand. Ciprofloxacin is currently not recommended for treatment of traveler's diarrhea in children, though it is used for treatment in adults.

Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) has been used to treat traveler's diarrhea in children but is no longer recommended because of increasing antibiotic resistance. Rifaximin, a nonabsorbable derivative of rifamycin, is effective in treating ETEC and other noninvasive enteropathogens. Since it is not absorbed, high concentrations are achieved in the intestinal lumen and it has a good safety profile. It is licensed for patients 12 years of age and older at a treatment dose of 200 mg three times a day for 3 days.

The use of prophylactic antibiotics is not recommended because of the risk of adverse events to prevent a disease of limited morbidity, as well as the effect of potential for emergence of antibiotic resistance. Rifaximin, however, is showing promise in adult studies as a chemoprophylactic agent, but it is expensive and requires further study in pediatrics.

Probiotics are of unproven benefit for the prevention of traveler's diarrhea, with contradictory reports of efficacy in adult studies.

Ang JY, Mathur A: Traveler's diarrhea: updates for pediatricians. Pediatr Ann 2008 Dec;37(12):814–820 [PMID: 19143332].

Kollaritsch H, Paulke-Korinek M, Wiedermann U: Traveler's diarrhea. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):691–706 [PMID: 22963778].

Steffen R, Hill DR, DuPont HL: Traveler's diarrhea: a clinical review. JAMA 2015 Jan 6;313(1):71–80 [PMID: 25562268].

MALARIA PROPHYLAXIS & PREVENTION (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 43)

Malaria is the most common preventable infectious cause of death among travelers, and a common cause of fever in the returned traveler. Children comprise 20% of imported cases of malaria. It is largely a preventable disease in travelers through personal protective measures and chemoprophylaxis. However, no method is 100% protective. The risk of acquiring malaria varies with the season, climate, altitude, number of mosquito bites, and destination, with the highest risk in Oceania, Africa, the Indian subcontinent, and the Amazon.

» Prevention of Mosquito Bites

Malaria is transmitted via the night-biting Anopheles mosquitoes. Mosquito bites are avoided by staying in well-screened and air-conditioned rooms from dusk until dawn, wearing clothing covering arms and legs, and avoiding scented soaps, shampoos, and perfumes. Mosquito nets are highly effective and can be used over beds, cribs, playpens, car seats, and strollers. Repellants containing 25%–50% DEET are also recommended, as this concentration confers 5–8 hours of protection. When used appropriately, DEET is safe for infants and children older than 2 months. It should not be applied to children's hands, mouth, or near the eyes, and is best washed off upon returning indoors. There have been case reports of seizures and toxic encephalopathy with use of DEET, but these cases occurred with misapplication. Icaridin (also known as picaridin) is an alternative to DEET available in many countries. A concentration of 20% icaridin is as effective as DEET-containing products. It lacks the corrosiveness and greasy texture of DEET, and has been advised as safe for use in children by the American Academy of Pediatrics. However, because it is relatively new, it lacks the safety profile of DEET, especially for children. PMD is a plant-based repellant derived from lemon eucalyptus, and at a 30% concentration is of equal efficacy to DEET. It may be used on children older than 6 months. It is considered safe if directions are followed and has been advocated for use by the Centers for Disease Control. Clothing and bed nets may be sprayed with insecticides such as permethrin, which confers protection for 2–6 weeks, even with regular washing.

Further studies are needed to establish its safety profile in children. The combination of DEET every 8–12 hours and permethrin on clothing is over 99% effective in prevention of mosquito bites.

» Chemoprophylaxis

Prophylactic medications suppress malaria by killing asexual blood stages of the parasite before they cause disease, so protective levels of medication must be present in the blood before developing parasites are released from the liver. Therefore, it is necessary to start prophylaxis before the first possible exposure and to continue it for a sufficient period after return to a safe area.

The choice of antimalarial depends on the age of the child, resistance patterns, restrictions on the agent of choice, the child's ability to swallow tablets, the frequency of dosing, cost, availability of medication, and access to a compounding pharmacy for adequate dispensing of medication. For most children, once-weekly mefloquine is preferable and is approved for use in children of any age. Atovaquone/proguanil is available in pediatric dosing, although only in tablet formulation. It is currently approved in most countries for children weighing greater than 5 kg. Doxycycline is another alternative but should be used only in children 8 years or older because of the risk of teeth staining. Chloroquine is the drug of choice in areas of chloroquine sensitivity (Mexico, Hispaniola, Central America, west and north of the Panama Canal, and parts of North Africa, the Middle East, and China). Pediatric and adult dosing, side effects, and other information about malaria chemoprophylaxis are in Table 45–6.

Antimalarial medications (with the exception of atovaquone/proguanil) are bitter, so it may be necessary to grind the medication into a very sweet food, such as chocolate syrup or sweetened condensed milk. Infants may need to have their medication prepared by a compounding pharmacy, where the appropriate dose can be placed in a gelatin capsule, which can then be opened by the caregiver and mixed into food or liquid.

Genton B, D'Acremont V: Malaria prevention in travelers. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):637–654 [PMID: 22963775].

Greenwood B: Anti-malarial drugs and the prevention of malaria in the population of malaria endemic areas. Malar J 2010 Dec 13;9(Suppl 3):S2 [PMID: 21144082].

Moore SJ, Mordue Luntz AJ, Logan JG: Insect bite prevention. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):655–673 [PMID: 22963776].

Shetty AK, Woods CR: Prevention of malaria in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2006 Dec;25(12):1173–1176 [PMID: 17133165].

Lüthi B1, Schlagenhauf P2. Risk factors associated with malaria deaths in travellers: A literature review. Travel Med Infect Dis. 2015 January - February;13(1):48–60 [PMID: 25022610].

VISITS TO FRIENDS & RELATIVES (VFR) IN HIGH-RISK AREAS

Individuals who return to their home country are at the highest risk of travel-related infectious diseases. Sixty percent of malaria cases and over 75% of typhoid cases occur in these travelers, and VFR children are at highest risk of hepatitis A. The reasons for this include the following:

- Longer stays and increased likelihood of pregnancy or young age in the traveler
- Travel to remote rural areas
- Intimate contact with the local population
- Decreased likelihood of seeking (or following) pretravel advice because of familiarity with their home country
- Assumed immunity to infections
- Sociocultural barriers—for example, language barriers, prohibitive cost of vaccines, and medications if lower socioeconomic status, belief systems of illness
- Eating and sleeping in local households, where hygiene may be suboptimal
- Use of high-risk forms of transportation

Thus, certain issues need to be emphasized when discussing travel for VFRs. Given the risk of waterborne infections, visiting families should boil water and milk if other safe drinking water is expensive; consume only piping hot foods and beverages; and follow proper hand-washing techniques at all times. Vaccination recommendations and malaria prophylaxis are of greater importance in VFRs. Similarly, VFRs provide greater opportunity for contracting vaccine-preventable diseases, such as typhoid, rabies, yellow fever, and meningococcal infection. They are associated with a higher risk of exposure to people with tuberculosis, so for this reason tuberculosis testing is recommended approximately 3 months after return from travel.

Bacaner N et al: Travel medicine considerations for North American immigrants visiting friends and relatives. JAMA 2004 Jun 16;291(23):2856–2864 [PMID: 15199037].

Leder K et al: Illness in travelers visiting friends and relatives: a review of the GeoSentinel Surveillance Network. Clin Infect Dis 2006;43(9):1185–1193 [PMID: 17029140].

HIV & SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 41)

Adolescent travelers may partake in high-risk activities while traveling, putting them at risk of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). The adolescent traveler should be counseled about the risks of STDs and abstinence or safe sexual practices. Bringing a supply of latex condoms may be appropriate along with instruction on their proper use. They should be advised that HIV and STDs can also be contracted via oral sex and

in nonsexual activities such as intravenous drug use. They should avoid tattoos, pedicures, and dental care while traveling. There may be a risk of HIV and other virus transmission through injections and blood transfusion, as many developing countries do not have adequate blood banking and transfusion protocols. In fact, 10%–20% of countries have inadequate screening.

Antiretroviral therapy is recommended if there is exposure to a known HIV-positive contact, and may be considered if the source is unknown. The usual recommended regimens are outlined in Chapter 41.

Further information on HIV can be found in Chapter 41.

Breuner CC: The adolescent traveler. Prim Care 2002 Dec;29(4):983–1006 [PMID: 12687903].

Croughs M, Van den Ende JJ: Away from home: travel and sex. Lancet Infect Dis 2013 Mar;13(3):184–185 [Epub 2012 Nov 22] [PMID: 23182930].

MMWR: http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/NonOccupationalExposureGL.pdf.

FEVER IN THE RETURNED TRAVELER

More than half of travelers to the developing world experience a health-related travel problem during their trip; 8% require medical attention on return. The majority will develop common medical problems, such as upper respiratory tract infections, pneumonia, urinary tract infections, and otitis media, with the remainder developing travel-related infections. The most common of these diseases are malaria (21%), acute traveler's diarrhea (15%), dengue fever (6%), and typhoid/enteric fever (2%). Children who travel with caretakers visiting friends and relatives are at greatest risk. New pathogens and the changing epidemiology of some infectious diseases pose new risks to travelers—such as Ebola, avian influenza, multidrug-resistant TB, chikungunya virus, and leishmaniasis.

Symptomatic returning travelers should be urgently and thoroughly evaluated for travel-related illness to prevent serious life-threatening disease and transmission to close contacts. The initial evaluation should include questions directed toward the travel itinerary, with dates of arrival and departure, specific activities, rural versus urban location, and accommodations. Specific information should be obtained regarding fresh water contact (eg, schistosomiasis, leptospirosis in some areas), sexual contacts, animal exposures, activities or hobbies, ill person contacts, and sources of food and water. A complete medication and vaccination history should be sought. It should be noted that despite malaria chemoprophylaxis and protection against mosquitoes, no regimen is 100% protective. A thorough physical examination should include dermatologic examination, eye examination for scleral icterus, conjunctival injection or petechiae, and evaluation for hepatosplenomegaly or lymphadenopathy. Routine laboratory evaluation includes a complete blood count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), C-reactive protein (CRP), serum chemistry, liver enzyme profile, and urinalysis. The laboratory evaluation should also focus on diseases that are life-threatening, with thick and thin smears for malaria (ideally three that are 12 hours apart), and blood cultures for typhoid fever. Specific testing should be done as directed by findings on history, physical examination, and preliminary laboratory test findings (Table 45–7). It may be necessary to seek the opinion of individuals with experience in international travel medicine, if available.

Fever is the most common complaint in a child who becomes ill after international travel. The most common travel-related infectious causes of fever are summarized in Table 45–8. A more detailed description of the symptoms,

Table 45–7. Laboratory evaluations to consider for fever in the returned traveler.

Routine
Hematologic
Complete blood count and differential
Thick and thin blood smear (ideally collect three at 12-h intervals)
Sedimentation rate
C-reactive protein
Electrolytes
Liver function tests
Blood culture
Urine
Urinalysis
Culture
Specific to presentation
Hematologic
Serologies for specific pathogens
Stool
Bacterial culture
Fecal leucocytes
Giardia and Cryptosporidium antigen test
Clostridium difficile toxin (if antibiotic exposure)
Ova and parasite examination
Special studies (eg, stool for Entamoeba histolytica antigen, special stains)
Cerebrospinal fluid
Cell count with differential, protein, glucose, culture, freeze extra sample
Antibody and polymerase chain reaction tests as appropriate
Imaging studies
Chest radiography and abdominal ultrasound imaging as appropriate
Other specialized tests
Placement of PPD (purified protein derivative)
Morning gastric aspirates or sputum for AFB (acid-fast bacilli) stain
Bronchoscopy
Sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy
Skin biopsy
Bone marrow aspirate
Skin snips (eg, for Onchocerciasis)

signs, diagnosis, and treatment of these diseases that can occur in the returning traveler are presented in Chapters 40, 42, and 43.

Centers for Disease Control (CDC) Yellow Book: http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/content/yellowbook/home-2010.aspx.
Chen LH, Wilson ME: Dengue and chikungunya in travelers: recent updates. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2012 Oct;25(5):523–529 [PMID: 22825287].
Cleton N, Koopmans M, Reimerink J, Godeke GJ, Reusken C: Come fly with me: review of clinically important arboviruses for global travelers. J Clin Virol 2012 Nov;55(3):191–203 [PMID: 22840968].
Daly R, Chiodini PL: Laboratory investigations and diagnosis of tropical diseases in travelers. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):803–818 [PMID: 22963785].
Feja KN1, Tolan RW Jr. Infections related to international travel and adoption. Adv Pediatr. 2013;60(1):107–139 [PMID: 24007842].
Kotlyar S1, Rice BT: Fever in the returning traveler. Emerg Med Clin North Am. 2013 Nov;31(4):927–944 [PMID: 24176472].
Nield LS, Stauffer W, Kamat D: Evaluation and management of illness in a child after international travel. Pediatr Emerg Care 2005 Mar;21(3):184–195 [PMID: 15744199].
Simmons CP, Farrar JJ, van Vinh Chau N, Wills B: Dengue. N Engl J Med 2012;366(15):1423 [PMID: 22494122].
Wilson ME et al: Fever in returned travelers: results from the GeoSentinel Surveillance Network. Clin Infect Dis 2007 Jun 15;44(12):1560–1568 [PMID: 17516399].

REFERENCES

Web Resources

CDC traveler's health: http://www.cdc.gov/travel/destinat.htm.
CDC Yellow Book: http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/content/yellow-book/home-2010.aspx.
Centers for Disease Control (CDC): http://www.cdc.gov/travel/index.htm.
GIDEON: http://www.cyinfo.com.
International Association for Medical Assistance to Travellers: http://www.iamat.org.
International Society of Travel Medicine: http://www.istm.org.
International SOS: http://www.internationalsos.com.
London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine: http://www.lshtm.ac.uk.
Malaria information specific to country: www.cdc.gov/malaria/risk_map.
ProMED: http://www.promedmail.org.
Rabies information specific to country: http://www.who.int/rabies/rabnet/en.
Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene: http://www.rstmh.org.
The Malaria Foundation: http://www.malaria.org.
Travax Encompass: http://www.travax.com.
United States Department of State: http://www.travel.state.gov.
WHO for maps of vaccine preventable diseases: http://www.who.int.ith.

General References

Aung AK, Trubiano JA, Spelman DW: Travel Med Infect Dis. 2015 Jan - Feb;13(1):31–47 [PMID: 25593039].
Chen LH, Wilson ME: The role of the traveler in emerging infections and magnitude of travel. Med Clin North Am 2008 Nov;92(6):1409–1432 [PMID: 19061759].
Chen LH, Wilson ME, Schlagenhauf P: Prevention of malaria in long-term travelers. JAMA 2006 Nov 8;296(18):2234–2244 [PMID: 17090770].
Giovanetti F: Immunisation of the travelling child. Travel Med Infect Dis 2007 Nov;5(6):349–364 [PMID: 17983974].
Greenwood CS, Greenwood NP, Fischer PR: Immunization issues in pediatric travelers. Expert Rev Vaccines 2008 Jul;7(5):651–661 [PMID: 18564019].
Hill DR et al: The practice of travel medicine: guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2006 Dec 15;43(12):1499–1539 [PMID: 17109284].
House HR, Ehlers JP: Travel-related infections. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2008 May;26(2):499–516 [PMID: 18406985].
Lee PJ: Vaccines for travel and international adoption. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2008 Apr;27(4):351–354 [PMID: 18379374].
Starr M: Paediatric travel medicine: vaccines and medications. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2012 Nov 16;75(6):1422–1432 [PMID: 23163285].
Stauffer W, Christenson JC, Fischer PR: Preparing children for international travel. Travel Med Infect Dis 2008 May;6(3):101–113 [PMID: 18486064].
Zumla A, Behrens RH, Memish ZA: Travel medicine. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2012 Sep;26(3):xiii–xvi [PMID: 22963786].

46 Chemistry & Hematology Reference Intervals

Frank J. Accurso, MD
Georgette Siparsky, PhD

Laboratory tests provide valuable information necessary to evaluate a patient's condition and to monitor recommended treatment. Chemistry and hematology test results are compared with those of healthy individuals or those undergoing similar therapeutic treatment to determine clinical status and progress. In the past, the term normal ranges relayed some ambiguity because statistically, the term normal also implied a specific (Gaussian or normal) distribution and epidemiologically it implied the state of the majority, which is not necessarily the desirable or targeted population. This is most apparent in cholesterol levels, where values greater than 200 mg/dL are common, but not desirable. Use of the term reference range or reference interval is therefore recommended by the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry (IFCC) and the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) to indicate that the values relate to a reference population and clinical condition.

Reference ranges are established for a specific age, sex, and sexual maturity; they are also defined for a specific pharmacologic status, dietary restrictions, and stimulation protocol. Similarly, diurnal variation is a factor as is degree of obesity. Some reference ranges are particularly meaningful when combined with other results (eg, parathyroid hormone and calcium), or when an entire set of analytes is evaluated.

Laboratory tests are becoming more specific and measure much lower concentrations than ever before. Therefore, reference ranges should reflect the analytical procedure as well as reagents and instrumentation used for a specific analysis. As test methodology continues to evolve, reference ranges are modified and updated.

CHALLENGES IN DETERMINING & INTERPRETING PEDIATRIC REFERENCE INTERVALS

The pediatric environment is particularly challenging for the determination of reference intervals since growth and developmental stages do not have a distinct and finite boundary by which test results can be tabulated. Reference ranges may overlap and, in many cases, complicate diagnosis and treatment. Collection and allocation of test results by age for the purpose of establishing a reference range is a convenient and manageable way to report them, but caution is needed in their interpretation and clinical correlation.

A particular difficulty lies in establishing reference ranges for analytes whose levels are changed under scheduled stimulation conditions. The common glucose tolerance test is such an example, but more complex endocrinology tests require skill and extensive experience to interpret. Reference ranges for these serial tests are established over a long period of time and are not easily transferable between test methodologies.

Adeli K: Special Issue on Laboratory Reference Intervals. eJIFCC. September 2008. Available at: http://www.ifcc.org/PDF/190201200801.pdf.

C28A3: Defining, Establishing, and Verifying Reference Intervals in the Clinical Laboratory: Approved Guideline. 3rd ed. Available at: http://www.clsi.org/source/orders.

GUIDELINES FOR USE OF DATA IN A REFERENCE RANGE STUDY

The College of American Pathologists provides guidelines for the adoption of reference ranges used in hospitals and commercial clinical laboratories. It recognizes the enormous task of establishing a laboratory's own reference ranges, and recommends alternatives to the process. A laboratory may acquire reference ranges by:

1. Conducting its own study to evaluate a statistically significant number of "healthy" volunteers. It is a monumental task for a laboratory to develop its own pediatric reference ranges, because parental consent

and procedural approval by review boards need to be addressed. The numerous age categories to be evaluated also add to the complexity and size of the study.

2. Adopting ranges established by the manufacturer of a particular analytical instrument. The laboratory must validate the data by analyzing a sample of 20 "reference" subjects (patients representing that specific population) to confirm that the adopted range is truly representative of that group.
3. Using reference data in the general medical literature and conferring with physicians to make sure the data agree with their clinical experience. A validation study is also recommended.
4. Analyzing hospital patient data. Laboratory test results from hospital patients have been used to compute reference ranges provided they fulfill stated clinical criteria. Patient records need to indicate that the patient's specific medical condition does not influence the analyte whose reference range is being determined. For example, a child undergoing surgery for bone fracture repair is expected to have normal electrolytes and thyroid function, whereas a child examined for precocious puberty should not be included in a reference range study for luteinizing hormone.

Statistically, the sample size of a hospital patient study should be considerably larger than that of a healthy group. A study from a healthy population may require 20 subjects to be statistically significant, whereas a hospital population should evaluate a minimum of 120 patients.

Biological Variation Database Reference List. Available at: http://www.westgard.com/biological-variation-database-reference-list.htm.

College of American Pathologists publication. Available at: http://www.cap.org/apps/docs/laboratory_accreditation/sample_checklist.pdf.

Schnabl K, Chan MK, Gong Y, Adeli K: Closing the gap on paediatric reference intervals: the CALIPER initiative. Clin Biochem Rev 2008 Aug;29(3):89–96 [PMID: 19107221].

STATISTICAL COMPUTATION OF REFERENCE INTERVALS

The establishment of reference intervals is based on a statistical distribution of test results obtained from a representative population. The CLSI recommendation for data collection and statistical analysis provides guidelines for managing the data. For clinicians, it is not important that they can reproduce the calculation. It is far more critical to understand the benefits and restrictions provided by the described statistical approaches and to evaluate patient results with these limitations in mind.

In reviewing the statistics, 95% of all results will be inherently included in the reference range. Note that 5% of that population will have "abnormal" results, when in fact they are "healthy" and an integral part of the reference group study. Similarly, an equivalent 5% of the "ill" population will have laboratory results within the reference range. These are inherent features of the statistical computation. Taking that analysis one step further, the probability of a healthy patient having a test result within a calculated reference range is

$$P = .95$$

When multiple tests or panels of tests are used, the combined probability of all the test results falling in their respective reference ranges drops dramatically. For example, the probability of all results from 10 tests in the complete metabolic panel being in the reference range is

$$P = (.95)^{10} = .60$$

Therefore, about one-third of healthy patients will have one test result in the panel that is outside the reference range.

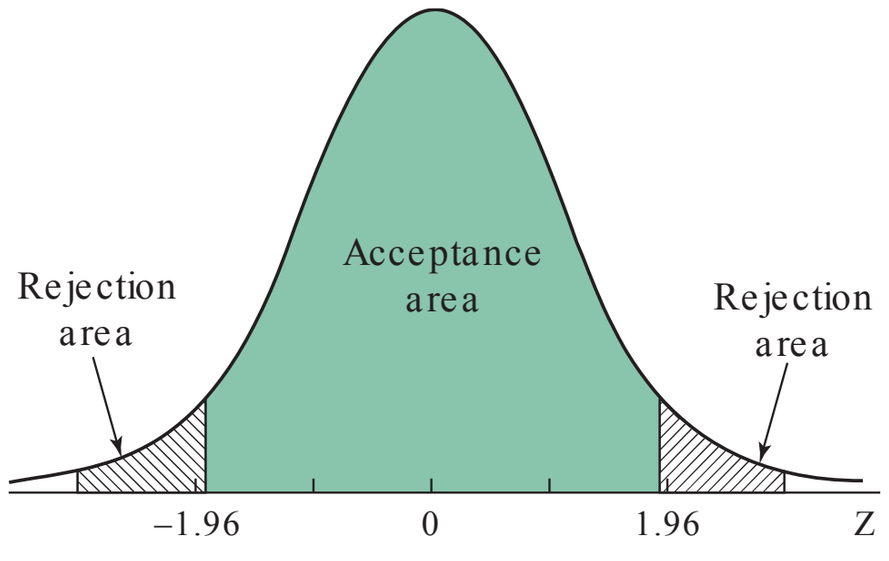
A. Parametric Method of Computation

The parametric method of establishing reference intervals is simple, though not always representative, since it is based on the assumption that the data have a Gaussian distribution. A mean (x) and standard deviation (s) are calculated; test results of 95% of that specific population will fall within the mean ±1.96s, as shown in Figure 46–1.

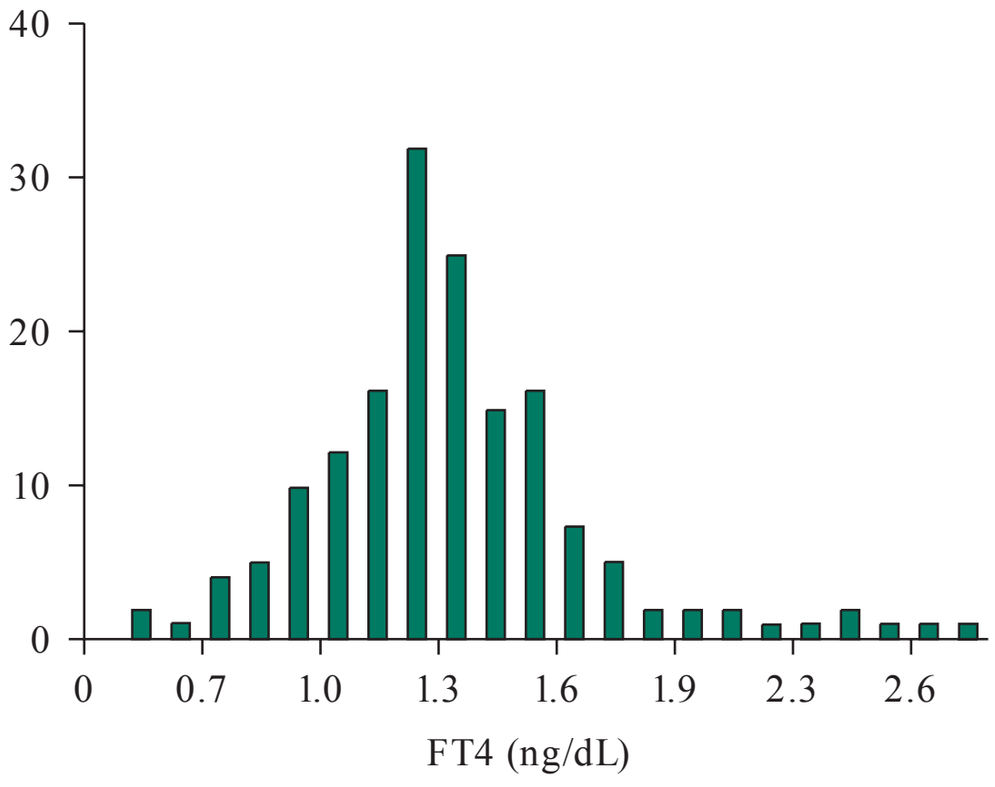
Where the distribution is not Gaussian, a mathematical manipulation of the values (eg, plotting the log of the value, instead of the value itself) may give a Gaussian distribution. The mean and standard deviation are then converted back to give a usable reference range.

B. Nonparametric Method of Computation

The nonparametric method of establishing reference ranges is currently recommended by CLSI, since it defines outliers



▲**Figure 46–1.** Gaussian distribution and parametric calculation using x ± 1.96s to define the range.



▲**Figure 46–2.** Histogram of free thyroxine (FT4) using clinic and hospital patients at Children's Hospital in Denver.

as those in the extreme 2.5 percentile of the upper and lower limits of data, respectively. The number of data points excluded at the limits depends on the skew of the curve, and so the computation accommodates a non-Gaussian distribution. A histogram depicting the non-Gaussian distribution of data from a free thyroxine reference range study conducted at Children's Hospital in Denver is shown in Figure 46–2.

Ichihara K, Boyd JC; IFCC Committee on Reference Intervals and Decision Limits (C-RIDL): An appraisal of statistical procedures used in derivation of reference intervals. Clin Chem Lab Med 2010 Nov;48(11):1537–1551 [PMID: 21062226].

WHY REFERENCE INTERVALS VARY

Recent modifications to reference ranges are due to the introduction of new and improved analytical procedures, advanced automated instrumentation, and standardization of reagents and reference materials. Reference ranges are also affected by preanalytical variations that can occur during sample collection, processing, and storage.

Preanalytical variations of biological origin can occur when specimens are drawn in the morning versus in the evening, or from hospitalized recumbent patients versus ambulatory outpatients. Variations also may be caused by metabolic and hemodynamic factors. Preanalytical factors may be a product of the socioeconomic environment or ethnic background (eg, genetic or dietary).

Analytical variations are caused by differences in analytical measurements and depend on the analytical tools as well as an inherent variability in obtaining a quantitative value. Furthermore, new reagents, instruments, and improved testing procedures added to the clinical laboratory results in an element of variability between tests.

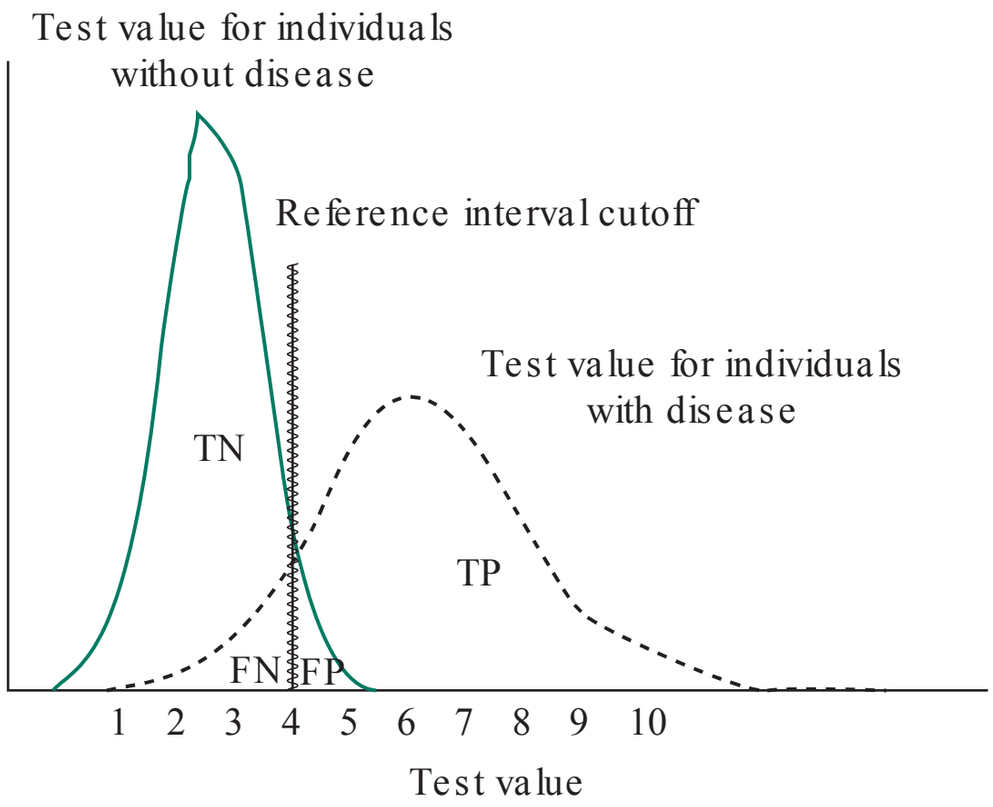
1. **Antigen-antibody reactions** have revolutionized clinical chemistry, but have also added a degree of variability because biologically derived reagents have different specificity and sensitivity. In addition to the targeted analyte, some of its metabolites are also measured, and these may or may not be biologically active.
2. **Reference materials** continue to be reviewed and evaluated by organizations such as the World Health Organization and the National Institute for Standards and Technology.
3. **Analytical instrumentation** with advanced electronics and robotics has improved accuracy of results and increased throughput. However, they have added an element of variability between instruments from different manufacturers.
4. **Analytical detection methods** have also made big strides as they have expanded from simple ultraviolet-visible spectrophotometry to fluorescence, nephelometry, radioimmunoassay, and chemiluminescence.

Jung B, Adeli K: Clinical laboratory reference intervals in pediatrics: The CALIPER initiative. Clin Biochem 2009 Nov;42 (16–17):1589–1595 [Epub 2009 Jul 7] [PMID: 19591815].

SENSITIVITY & SPECIFICITY

Despite its statistical derivation, a reference interval does not necessarily provide a finite and clear-cut guideline as to whether a patient has a condition. There will always be a segment of the population with test values that fall within the reference interval, but clinical manifestations that indicate disease is present. Similarly, a segment of the population will have test values outside the reference interval, but no clinical signs of disease. The ability of a test and corresponding reference interval to detect individuals with disease is defined by the diagnostic sensitivity of the test. Similarly, the ability of a test to detect individuals without disease is described by the diagnostic specificity. These characteristics are governed by the analytical quality of the test as well as the numerical parameters (reference interval) that define the presence of disease. The tolerance level for the desired sensitivity and specificity of a test requires significant input from clinicians.

Generally, specificity increases as sensitivity decreases. A typical reference range frequency distribution, shown in Figure 46–3 (solid line), provides information on the test results of a number of healthy subjects, or individuals without the disease. A second curve (dashed line) shows test results for individuals with the disease. As with most tests, there is an overlap area. A patient with a test result of 1 is likely healthy,



▲**Figure 46–3.** Frequency distribution of test results for patients with and without disease. FN, false negative; FP, false positive; TN, true negative; TP, true positive.

and the result indicates a true negative (TN) for the presence of disease. A patient with a test result of 9 is likely to have the disease and the test result is a true positive (TP). There is a small, but significant, population with a test result of 2–5 in whom the test is not 100% conclusive. A statistical analysis may determine the most likely cutoff for healthy individuals, but the clinically acceptable cutoff depends on the test as well as clinical correlation. Where the treatment is aggressive and has serious side effects, a clinician may choose to err on the side of caution and hold treatment for anyone with a test value of less than 6.

If cutoff values for the reference interval are such that a test result indicates that a healthy patient has the disease, the result is a false positive (FP). Conversely if a test result indicates that a patient is well when in fact he or she has the disease, the result is a false negative (FN). To define the ability of the test and reference interval to identify a disease state, the diagnostic sensitivity and specificity are measured.

$$\text{Diagnostic sensitivity} = TP/(TP + FN)$$

$$\text{Diagnostic specificity} = TN/(TN + FP)$$

In the example shown in Figure 46–3, a reference interval of 0.5–3 will provide more TN results and minimize FP results. Alternatively, a reference interval of 0.5–4 will increase the rate of FN. Thus, an increase in sensitivity leads to a decrease in specificity. A medical condition that requires aggressive treatment may necessitate a test and corresponding reference interval with a high sensitivity, which is a measure of the TP rate. This is accomplished at the expense of lowering specificity.

A reference interval is a statistical representation of test results from a finite population, but it is by no means inclusive of every member of the group. It is merely one component in the measure of a patient's status to be viewed in relation to the sensitivity and specificity of the test.

PEDIATRIC REFERENCE INTERVALS

The establishment of reference ranges is a complex process. Assumptions are made in the management of data processes, regardless of whether "healthy" individuals or hospital patients are used for the accumulation of test results. Analytical instrument manufacturers conduct large studies to identify reference intervals for each specific analyte, and pediatric values have always been the most challenging. Some of the manufacturers' recommended reference intervals are listed in Table 46–1 for general chemistry, Table 46–2 for endocrinology, and Table 46–3 for hematology. The interpretation of chemistry and hematology laboratory results is equally complex and forms a continuous challenge for physicians and the medical community at large.

Table 46–1. General chemistry.

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
A1C Hemoglobin (%) B	0 d–adult	DCA Advantage	4.2–6.3	4.2–6.3
Albumin (g/dL) S, P	0–7 d 8–30 d 1–2 mo 3–5 mo 6–12 mo 1–3 y 4–6 y 7–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	2.3–3.8 2.0–4.5 2.0–4.8 2.1–4.9 2.1–4.7 3.4–4.2 3.5–5.2 3.7–5.6 3.5–5.0	1.8–3.9 1.8–4.4 1.9–4.2 2.2–4.4 2.2–4.7 3.4–4.2 3.5–5.2 3.7–5.6 3.5–5.0
Allergens (KUA/L)	0 d–Adult	Phadia Immunocap	0–0.34	0–0.34
ALP (U/L) S, P	0–7 d 8–30 d 1–3 mo 4–6 mo 7–12 mo 1–3 y 4–6 y 7–9 y 10–11 y 12–13 y 14–15 y 16–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	77–265 91–375 60–360 55–325 60–300 129–291 134–346 156–386 120–488 178–455 116–483 58–237 38–126	65–270 65–365 80–425 80–345 60–330 129–291 134–346 156–386 116–515 93–386 62–209 45–116 38–126
ALT (U/L) S, P	1–7 d 8–30 d 1–3 mo 4–6 mo 7–12 mo 1–3 y 4–6 y 7–9 y 10–11 y 12–13 y 14–15 y 16–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	6–40 10–40 13–39 12–42 13–45 5–45 10–25 10–35 10–35 10–55 10–45 10–40 21–72	7–40 8–32 12–47 12–37 12–41 5–45 10–25 10–35 10–30 10–30 5–30 5–35 9–52
Ammonia (umol/L) P	0–1 d 1–13 y 14 d–17 y 18 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	64–107 56–92 21–50 9–33	64–107 56–92 21–50 9–33
Amylase (U/L) S, P	0–2 m 3–5 m 6–11 m 1–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	0–30 0–50 0–80 30–100 30–110	0–30 0–50 0–80 30–100 30–110
Anticardiolipin IGA (APL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	< 12.0	< 12.0

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
Anticardiolipin IGG (GPL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	< 15.0	< 15.0
Anticardiolipin IGM (MPL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	< 12.5	< 12.5
Anti-Saccharomyces cerevisiae antibodies (ASCA) IGA (Units) S, P	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	Negative (0–20) Equivocal (20.1–24.9) Positive (> 24.9)	Negative (0–20) Equivocal (20.1–24.9) Positive (> 24.9)
Anti-Saccharomyces cerevisiae antibodies (ASCA) IGG (Units) S, P	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	Negative (0–20) Equivocal (20.1–24.9) Positive (> 24.9)	Negative (0–20) Equivocal (20.1–24.9) Positive (> 24.9)
AST (U/L) S, P	0–7 d 8–30 d 1–3 mo 4–6 mo 7–12 mo 1–3 y 4–6 y 7–9 y 10–11 y 12–15 y 16–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	30–100 20–70 22–63 13–65 25–55 20–60 15–50 15–40 10–60 15–40 15–45 17–59	24–95 24–72 20–64 20–63 22–63 20–60 15–50 15–40 10–40 10–30 5–30 14–36
Bilirubin direct (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d > 1 mo	Vitros 5600	0–0.6 0–0.3	0–0.6 0–0.3
Bilirubin total (mg/dL) S, P	0–1 d 1–3 d 3–30 d > 1 mo	Vitros 5600	0.1–5.8 0.1–8.5 0.1–11.5 0.2–1.2	0.1–5.8 0.1–8.5 0.1–11.5 0.2–1.2
Bilirubin conjugated (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d	Vitro 5600	0–0.6 0–0.3	0–0.6 0–0.3
BNP (ng/L) S	0 d–Adult	I–STAT	0–90	0–90
Pro-BNP, (pg/mL) S, P	0 d–adult	Vitros 5600	0–125	0–125
BUN (mg/dL) S, P	0–7 d 8–30 d 1–3 mo 4–6 mo 7–12 mo 1–3 y 4–13 y 14–18 y 19 y–Adult	Vitros 5600	2–13 2–16 2–12 1–14 2–14 5–17 7–17 8–21 9–21	2–13 2–15 2–14 1–13 2–13 5–17 7–17 8–21 7–17

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
C3 (mg/dL) S, P	0–1 mo 1–2 mo 2–3 mo 3–4 mo 4–5 mo 5–6 mo 6–9 mo 9–11 mo 11–12 mo 1–2 y 2–3 y 3–5 y 5–8 y 8–10 y 10–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	55–129 61–155 67–136 64–182 67–174 77–178 78–173 76–187 87–181 84–177 80–178 89–173 92–161 93–203 86–184 88–165	55–129 61–155 67–136 64–182 67–174 77–178 78–173 76–187 87–181 84–177 80–178 89–173 92–161 93–203 86–184 88–165
C4 (mg/dL) S, P	0–1 mo 1–2 mo 2–3 mo 3–4 mo 4–5 mo 5–6 mo 6–9 mo 9–11 mo 11–12 mo 1–2 y 2–3 y 3–5 y 5–8 y 8–10 y 10–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	9.2–33 9.7–37 11–35 11–50 9.3–47 11–55 12–48 16–51 16–52 12–45 13–47 17–42 16–42 13–52 10–40 14–44	9.2–33 9.7–37 11–35 11–50 9.3–47 11–55 12–48 16–51 16–52 12–45 13–47 17–42 16–42 13–52 10–40 14–44
Ca (mg/dL) S, P	0–8 d 8–30 d 1–3 mo 3–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–4 y 4–10 y 10–12 y 12–14 y 14–16 y 16–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	7.3–11.4 8.6–11.7 8.5–11.3 8.3–11.4 7.7–11.0 8.7–9.8 8.8–10.1 8.9–10.1 8.8–10.6 9.2–10.7 8.9–10.7 8.4–10.2	7.5–11.3 8.4–11.9 8.0–11.1 7.7–11.5 7.8–11.1 8.7–9.8 8.8–10.1 8.9–10.1 8.8–10.6 9.2–10.7 8.9–10.7 8.4–10.2
iCa (ionized calcium) (mmol/L) B	0–3 d 3–4 d 4–8 d 8 d–2 mo 2 mo–18 y > 18 y	RapidLab 1265 or Nova 8	1.1–1.4 1.1–1.5 1.2–1.5 1.3–1.6 1.2–1.4 1.2–1.3	1.1–1.4 1.1–1.5 1.2–1.5 1.3–1.6 1.2–1.4 1.2–1.3

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
iCa/iMg ratio B	0 d–Adult	Nova 8	1.90–2.28	1.90–2.28
Chloride (mmol/L) S, P	0–8 d 8 d–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	96–111 96–110 96–108 96–109 98–107	96–111 96–110 96–108 96–109 98–107
Cholesterol (mg/dL) S, P	0 d–2 mo 2–7 mo 7–12 mo > 1 y	Vitros 5600	45–177 60–197 89–208 44–181	63–198 66–218 74–218 44–181
Creatine kinase (U/L) S, P	0–3 mo 3–12 mo 1–2 y 2–11 y 11–15 y 15–19 > 19 y	Vitros 5600	28–300 24–170 27–160 30–150 30–150 33–145 55–170	48–470 26–240 24–175 24–175 30–170 27–140 30–135
Creatinine (mg/dL) S, P	0–3 d 3–10 d 10–17 d 17 d–1 y 1–11 y 11–18 y > 18 y	Vitros 5600	0.33–1.08 0.14–0.90 0.14–0.61 0.14–0.52 0.23–0.61 0.42–0.90 0.71–1.18	0.33–1.08 0.14–0.90 0.14–0.61 0.14–0.52 0.23–0.61 0.42–0.90 0.52–0.99
GGT (U/L) S, P	0–8 d 8–30 d 1–4 mo 4–7 mo 7–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–12 y 12–14 y 14–16 y 16–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	25–148 23–153 17–130 8–83 10–35 5–16 8–18 11–21 14–25 14–37 10–28 9–29 15–73	19–131 17–124 17–124 15–109 10–54 5–16 8–18 11–21 14–23 12–21 12–22 9–23 12–43
Glucose (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d > 1 mo	Vitros 5600	40–80 60–105	40–80 60–105
Glucose (2-h tolerance test) (mg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	< 200	< 200
Glucose – CSF (mg/dL) CSF	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	40–75	40–75
HDL (mg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	8–61	8–61

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
Beta–2 Glycoprotein 1 Antibody, IgA (SAU) S	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	0–20	0–20
Beta–2 Glycoprotein 1 Antibody, IgG (SGU) S	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	0–20	0–20
Beta–2 Glycoprotein 1 Antibody, IgG (SMU) S	0 d–Adult	Inova DSX	0–20	0–20
IgA (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d 1–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–13 y 13–16 y 16–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	0–11 0–40 1–82 9–137 44–187 58–204 46–218 29–251 68–259 70–400	0–10 0–42 6–68 15–111 33–146 28–180 55–193 62–241 69–262 70–400
IGE (kU/L) S	0–12 mo 1–2 y 2–3 y 3–10 y 10 y–Adult	Phadia ImmunoCap	0–29 0–49 0–45 0–52 0–87	0–29 0–49 0–45 0–52 0–87
IgG (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d 1–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–13 y 13–16 y 16–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	197–833 140–533 130–823 413–1112 468–1328 582–1441 685–1620 590–1600 522–1703 700–1600	136–872 311–664 325–647 421–1202 560–1319 485–1473 586–1609 749–1640 804–1817 700–1600
IgM (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d 1–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–13 y 13–16 y 16–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	0–65 0–84 15–117 30–146 31–151 21–140 27–151 26–184 28–179 40–230	0–57 0–127 0–130 35–184 42–184 30–165 42–211 34–225 42–224 40–230
Iron (µg/dl) S, P	0–7 d 7 d–1 y 1–10 y > 10 y	Vitros 5600	100–250 40–100 50–120 49–181	100–250 40–100 50–120 37–170
Iron-binding capacity (mcg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	261–462	265–497

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
LDH (U/L) S, P	0–1 mo 1–4 mo 4–7 mo 7–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–12 y 12–14 y 14–16 y 16–18 y > 18 y	Vitros 5600	550–2100 480–1220 400–1230 380–1200 500–920 470–900 420–750 432–700 470–750 360–730 340–670 313–618	580–2000 460–1150 460–1150 460–1060 500–920 470–900 420–750 380–700 380–640 390–580 340–670 313–618
LDL measured (mg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	< 100	< 100
Lead screen (mcg/dL) B	0 d–Adult	Leadcare	< 10	< 10
Magnesium (mg/dL) S, P	0–7 d 7–30 d 1 mo–2 y 2–6 y 6–10 y 10–14 y > 14 y	Vitros 5600	1.2–1.6 1.6–2.4 1.6–2.6 1.5–2.4 1.6–2.3 1.6–2.2 1.5–2.3	1.2–1.6 1.6–2.4 1.6–2.6 1.5–2.4 1.6–2.3 1.6–2.2 1.5–2.3
iMg (ionized magnesium) (mmol/L) B	0 d–Adult	Nova 8	0.45–0.60	0.45–0.60
Non-HDL cholesterol (mg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	< 120	< 120
NT Pro-BNP (pg/mL) S, P	0–45 y	Mayo Medical Labs	10–51	10–140
Potassium (mmol/L) S, P	0–7 d 7 d–3 mo 3 mo–18 y > 18 y	Vitros 5600	3.7–5.9 4.1–5.3 3.4–4.7 3.5–5.0	3.7–5.9 4.1–5.3 3.4–4.7 3.5–5.0
Prealbumin (mg/dL) S, P	0–1 mo 1–6 mo 6 mo–4 y 4–6 y 6–14 y 14–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	7–22 8–34 7–32 12–30 12–42 22–45 17–42	7–22 8–34 7–32 12–30 12–42 22–45 17–42
Phosphorus (mg/dL) S, P	0–1 mo 1–3 mo 3–12 mo 1–2 y 2–13 y 13–16 y 16–18 y > 18 y	Vitros 5600	2.7–7.2 3.0–6.8 3.0–6.9 2.5–6.4 3.0–6.0 3.0–5.4 3.0–5.2 2.5–4.5	3.0–8.0 3.0–7.5 2.5–7.0 3.0–6.5 2.5–6.0 3.0–5.6 3.0–4.8 2.5–4.5

(Continued)

Table 46–1. General chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units Specimen Type	Age	Instrument	Male Range	Female Range
Procalcitonin (ng/mL) P	0 d–Adult	Brahms Kryptor	0–0.5	0–0.5
Sodium (mmol/L) S, P	0–8 d 8–30 d 1–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	133–146 134–144 134–142 133–142 134–143 137–145	133–146 134–144 134–142 133–142 134–143 137–145
Troponin I (ng/mL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitros 5600	< 0.12	< 0.12
T4 (µg/dL) S, P	0–3 d 3–30 d 30 d–1 y 1–6 y 6–19 y > 19 y	Vitros 5600	8–20 5–15 6–14 4.5–11 4.5–10 4.5–10	8–20 5–15 6–14 4.5–11 4.5–10 5.5–11
Total protein (g/dL) S, P	0–2 mo 2–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–4 y 4–7 y 7–10 y 10–20 y > 20 y	Vitros 5600	3.9–7.6 4.1–7.9 3.9–7.9 5.9–7.0 5.9–7.8 6.2–8.1 6.3–8.6 6.2–8.2	3.4–7.0 3.9–7.6 4.5–7.8 5.9–7.0 5.9–7.8 6.2–8.1 6.3–8.6 6.2–8.2
Triglycerides (mg/dL) S, P	0–9 y 10–18 y Adult	Vitros 5600	< 75 < 90 < 115	< 75 < 90 < 115
TCO_2-Bicarb (mmol/L) S, P	0–7 d 7–30 d 1–6 mo 6–12 mo 1–19 y > 19	Vitros 5600	17–26 17–27 17–29 18–29 20–31 22–30	17–26 17–27 17–29 18–29 20–31 22–30
Uric acid (mg/dL) S, P	0–30 d 1–12 mo 1–10 y 10–12 y 12–14 y 14–16 y 16–18 y > 18 y	Vitros 5600	2.0–5.2 2.5–9.0 1.8–5.0 2.3–5.4 2.7–6.7 2.4–7.8 4.0–8.6 3.5–8.5	2.0–5.2 2.5–9.0 1.8–5.0 3.0–4.7 3.0–5.9 3.0–5.9 3.0–5.9 2.5–7.5
Vitamin B_{12} (pg/mL) S, P	0 d–Adult	Vitro 5600	163–949	163–949

ALP, alkaline phosphatase; ALT, alanine transaminase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; B, whole blood; BNP, brain natriuretic peptide; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; Ca, calcium; CSF, spinal fluid; GGT, gammaglutamyl transpeptidase; LDH, lactic dehydrogenase; P, plasma; S, serum; T4, thyroxine; U, urine.

Data from Children's Hospital, Colorado, Chemistry Laboratory Procedures Manual.

Table 46–2. Endocrine chemistry.

Analyte, Units, Specimen Type, Source	Age	Methodology	Male Range	Female Range
Cortisol (µg/dL) S, P	0 d–Adult (AM values) (PM values)	Vitros 5600	4.5–22.7 1.7–14.1	4.5–22.7 1.7–14.1
Estradiol (ng/mL) S	Prepuberty Tanner 1 Tanner 2 Tanner 3 Tanner 4 Tanner 5	Esoterix	< 1.5 0.5–1.1 0.5–1.6 0.5–2.5 1.0–3.6 1.0–3.6	< 1.5 0.5–2.0 1.0–2.4 0.7–6.0 2.1–8.5 3.4–17
FSH (mIU/mL) S, P	1–11 mo 1–8 y Tanner 1 Tanner 2 Tanner 3 Tanner 4 Tanner 5 Adult Follicular Midcycle Luteal phase	DPC Immulite	0.16–4.1 0.26–3.0 1.8–3.2 1.2–5.8 2.0–9.2 2.6–11.0 2.0–9.2	0.24–14.2 1.0–4.2 1.0–10.8 1.5–12.8 1.5–11.7 1.0–9.2 1.8–11.2 6–35 1.8–11.2
Growth hormone (ng/mL) S	0 d–Adult	DPC Immulite	0–8	0–3
IGF-BP3 (µg/mL) S, P	0–7 d 8–15 d 16 d–1 y 2 y 3 y 4 y 5 y 6 y 7 y 8 y 9 y 10 y 11 y 12 y 13 y 14 y 15 y 16 y 17 y 18 y 19 y 20 y	DPC Immulite	0.1–0.7 0.5–1.4 0.7–3.6 0.8–3.9 0.9–4.3 1.0–4.7 1.1–5.2 1.3–5.6 1.4–6.1 1.6–6.5 1.8–7.1 2.1–7.7 2.4–8.4 2.7–8.9 3.1–9.5 3.3–10.0 3.5–10.0 3.4–9.5 3.2–8.7 3.1–7.9 2.9–7.3 2.9–7.2	0.1–0.7 0.5–1.4 0.7–3.6 0.8–3.9 0.9–4.3 1.0–4.7 1.1–5.2 1.3–5.6 1.4–6.1 1.6–6.5 1.8–7.1 2.1–7.7 2.4–8.4 2.7–8.9 3.1–9.5 3.3–10.0 3.5–10.0 3.4–9.5 3.2–8.7 3.1–7.9 2.9–7.3 2.9–7.2

(Continued)

Table 46–2. Endocrine chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units, Specimen Type, Source	Age	Methodology	Male Range	Female Range
IGF-1 (ng/mL) S, P	Newborn preterm Newborn term 1–60 d 3–4 mo 5–6 mo 7–11 mo 1–2 y 3 y 4 y 5 y 6 y 7 y 8 y Tanner 1 8 y Tanner 2,3 9 y Tanner 1 9 y Tanner 2 9 y Tanner 3 9 y Tanner 2,3 10 y Tanner 1 10 y Tanner 2 10 y Tanner 3 10 y Tanner 4,5 10 y Tanner 2,3 11 y Tanner 1 11 y Tanner 2 11 y Tanner 3 11 y Tanner 2,3 11 y Tanner 4,5 12 y Tanner 1 12 y Tanner 2 12 y Tanner 2,3 12 y Tanner 3 12 y Tanner 4,5 13 y Tanner 1 13 y Tanner 2 13 y Tanner 2,3 13 y Tanner 3 13 y Tanner 4,5 14 y Tanner 1 14 y Tanner 2 14 y Tanner 2,3 14 y Tanner 3 14 y Tanner 4,5 15 y Tanner 1 15 y Tanner 2,3 15 y Tanner 3 15 y Tanner 4,5 16 y Tanner 2,3 16 y Tanner 4,5 17 y Tanner 4,5 18 y Tanner 4,5	Dynex DSX	21–93 15–109 15–109 7–124 7–93 15–101 30–122 20–141 25–157 30–174 37–192 44–211 52–231 39–264 61–252 52–304 71–275 67–347 82–299 86–393 277–673 93–324 106–443 265–652 106–350 130–497 241–612 120–377 156–554 220–574 127–391 185–616 199–537 201–648 180–501 161–467 144–434	21–93 15–109 15–109 7–124 7–93 15–101 55–144 26–162 32–179 39–198 47–217 55–238 64–259 89–369 74–282 96–399 192–568 85–306 104–431 192–568 279–664 97–332 112–466 192–568 268–646 110–358 121–504 192–568 248–612 131–545 192–568 229–579 136–566 192–568 211–547 192–568 194–516 177–487 162–458 147–430

(Continued)

Table 46–2. Endocrine chemistry. (Continued)

Analyte, Units, Specimen Type, Source	Age	Methodology	Male Range	Female Range
LH (mIU/mL) S, P	14 d–11 mo 1–8 y Tanner 1 Tanner 2 Tanner 3 Tanner 4 Tanner 5 Adult Follicular Midcycle Leuteal	DPC Immulite	0.02–7.0 0.02–0.3 0.02–0.3 0.2–4.9 0.2–5.0 0.4–7.0 0.4–7.0 1.5–9.0	0.02–7.0 0.02–0.3 0.02–0.18 0.02–4.7 0.10–12.0 0.4–11.7 0.4–11.7 2.0–9.0 18.0–49.0 2.0–11.0
T4 free (ng/dL) S, P	0–2 d 3–30 d 1 mo–19 y > 19	Vitros 5600	2.0–5.0 0.9–2.2 0.8–2.0 0.78–2.19	2.0–5.0 0.9–2.2 0.8–2.0 0.78–2.19
TSH (µIU/mL) S, P	0–3 d 3–30 d 1–6 mo 6 mo–5 y 5–13 y > 13 y	Vitros 5600	1.0–20.0 0.5–8.0 0.5–6.0 0.5–6.0 0.5–5.5 0.5–5.0	1.0–20.0 0.5–8.0 0.5–6.0 0.5–6.0 0.5–5.5 0.5–5.0
Testosterone, total (ng/dL) S, P	Premature Newborn Prepubertal Tanner 1 Tanner 2 Tanner 3 Tanner 4 Tanner 5 Adult (20–49)	Vitros 5600	37–198 75–400 1–10 1–10 18–150 100–320 200–620 350–970 132–813	5–22 20–64 1–10 1–10 7–28 15–35 13–32 20–38 5–77

FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; IGF-1, insulin-like growth factor 1; IGF-BP3, insulin-like growth factor–binding protein 3; LH, luteinizing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

Data from Children's Hospital, Colorado, Chemistry Laboratory Procedures Manual.

Table 46–3. Hematology.

Analyte, Units, Specimen Type, Source	Age	Methodology	Male Range	Female Range
WBC ($x10^3$/uL) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	9.0–32.0 5–13.0 4–12.0 4–10.5 4–10.5	9.0–32.0 5–13.0 4–12.0 4–10.5 4–10.5
RBC ($x10^6$/uL) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	4.6–6.7 3.8–5.4 4.0–5.3 4.2–5.6 4.7–6.0	4.6–6.7 3.8–5.4 4.0–5.3 4.2–5.6 4.2–5.4
Hemoglobin (g/dL) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	13.0–22.0 9.5–14.0 11.5–14.5 13.5–18.0	13.0–22.0 9.5–14.0 11.5–14.5 13.5–18.0
HCT (%) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	42–70 30–41 33–43 36–47 42–52	42–70 30–41 33–43 35–45 37–47
MCV (fL) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	90–115 70–90 76–90 78–95 78–100	90–115 70–90 76–90 78–95 78–100
Polys ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	6–23.5 1.1–6.6 1.4–6.6 1.5–6.6 1.5–6.1	6–23.5 1.1–6.6 1.4–6.6 1.5–6.6 1.5–6.6
Bands# ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10 y–Adult	Beckman LH780	< 3.5 < 1.0 < 1.0 < 1.0	< 3.5 < 1.0 < 1.0 < 1.0
Lymphs# ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1–24 mo 2–10 y 10–17 y Adult	Beckman LH780	2.5–10.5 1.8–9.0 1.0–5.5 1.0–3.5 1.5–3.5	2.5–10.5 1.8–9.0 1.0–5.5 1.0–3.5 1.5–3.5
Monos# ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1 mo–Adult	Beckman LH780	< 2.0 < 1.0	< 2.0 < 1.0
EOS# ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1 mo–Adult	Beckman LH780	< 2.0 < 0.7	< 2.0 < 0.7
Basos# ($x10^3$/uL) (absolute) EDTA whole blood	0–1 mo 1 mo–Adult	Beckman LH780	< 0.4 < 0.1	< 0.4 < 1.0
Platelet ($x10^3$/uL) EDTA whole blood	0 d–Adult	Beckman LH780	150–500	150–500
MCH (pg) EDTA whole blood	0 d–Adult	Beckman LH780	27–31	27–31
MCH (g/dL) EDTA whole blood	0 d–Adult	Beckman LH780	32–36	32–36

Data from Children's Hospital, Colorado, Hematology Laboratory Procedures Manual.

Index

Page references followed by f indicate f gures; page references followed by t indicate tables.

A
AAO-HNS. See American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery (AAO-HNS)
AAP. See American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP)
AAPD. See American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry (AAPD)
AAPM&R. See American Academy of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation (AAPM&R)
AASM. See American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM)
Abacavir, 1221t
Abdomen
  evaluation
    in sports preparticipation, 848
    in trauma survey, 319
  of newborn
    examination, 15
    surgical conditions of, 52–55
Abdominal pain
  clinical findings, 644
    laboratory findings, 644
    symptoms and signs, 644
  differential diagnosis, 644
  parasitic infections and, 1292t
  prognosis, 644–645
  treatment, 644–645
Abdominal wall defects, in newborn
  gastroschisis, 54
  omphalocele, 54
Abnormal head size, 770–772
  craniosynostosis, 770
    clinical findings, 770
    differential diagnosis, 770
    treatment, 770
  microcephaly, 770–772
    causes of, 771t, 772t
    clinical findings, 771, 772
    differential diagnosis, 771, 772
    imaging studies, 771
    laboratory findings, 771
    macrocephaly, 772
    symptoms and signs, 771
    treatment and prognosis, 771–772
ABO blood group incompatibility, 21
ABP. See American Board of Pediatrics (ABP)
ABRS. See Acute bacterial rhinosinusitis (ABRS)
Abscess, 407
  brain, 792–793
  breast, 122–123, 122t
  liver
    amebic, 688–689
    pyogenic, 688–689
  lung, 534
  retropharyngeal, 493
Absorption, poisons, prevention, 335
Abuse
  child, 216–224. See also Child abuse
  drug, maternal, 31–33, 32t, 1111. See also Maternal drug abuse/use
  emotional, 221
  mandatory reporting of, by physician, 177
  physical, 218–219
  sexual, 219–221
  substance abuse. See Substance abuse
Abusive head trauma, 429
  clinical findings, 429
  complications, 429
  differential diagnosis, 429
  pathogenesis, 429
  prognosis, 429
  treatment, 429
Academic failure, at adolescence, 120–121
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 1305
Acanthamoeba species, 1304
Accessory pathway-mediated tachycardia, 603
Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME), 881
Accreditation Council on Graduate Medical Education, 3
Acetabular dysplasia, 819
Acetabular labral tears, 865
Acetaminophen, 392
  poisoning, treatment, 336–337f
aCGH, 1085
ACGME. See Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME)
Achondroplasia, 826
Acid
  amino
    in hyperglycemia management, 68
    metabolism disorders, 1061–1066
      hereditary tyrosinemia, 1064
      homocystinuria, 1065
      hyperphenylalaninemias, 1062–1063
      maple syrup urine disease, 1064–1065
      nonketotic hyperglycemia, 1065–1066
      phenylketonuria, 1062–1063
      urea cycle disorders, 1061–1062
  ascorbic
    biologic role, 292t
    deficiencies, critical features, 294t
  fatty
    b-oxidation, 284
    essential, 283
  folic
    biologic role, 292t
    cow milk composition, 295t
    deficiencies
      causes, 293t
      clinical features, 294t
    dietary reference intakes, 290t
    dietary sources of, 293t
    human milk composition, 295t
    infant formula, 295t
    toxicity effect, 289t
  linoleic
    cow milk composition, 295t
    human milk composition, 295t
    infant formula, 295t

Acid (Cont.):
pantothenic
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
phenolic, poisoning, treatment, 346
poisoning, 342–343
Acid-base balance, 700–701
Acid-base disturbances, 707–709
metabolic acidosis, 707–708
metabolic alkalosis, 708
respiratory acidosis, 708
respiratory alkalosis, 708–709
Acidemia
3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaric, 1067t
4-hydroxybutyric, 1067t
glutaric
type I, 1067t, 1068–1069
type II, 1067t
isovaleric, 1067t
methylmalonic, 1066–1068, 1067t
newborn and, 70
organic, 1066–1069
propionic, 1066–1068
Acidosis
correction of, in diabetic ketosis (DKA) management, 1047
inborn errors of metabolism and, 1056
lactic, primary, causes, 1059, 1059t
Acne, 404–406
clinical findings, 404
differential diagnosis, 404
pathogenesis, 404
treatment, 404–406, 405t
oral retinoids, 405
other acne treatments, 405–406
patient education and follow-up visits, 406
systemic antibiotics, 405
topical antibiotics, 405
topical keratolytic agents, 404–405
Acquired aplastic anemia, 892–893
clinical findings, 893
complications, 893
differential diagnosis, 893
general considerations, 893
prognosis, 893
treatment, 893
Acquired autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA), 910
classification of, 911t
Acquired bleeding disorders, 929–931
Acquired disorders, 933–935
Acquired hearing loss, 482
Acquired hemolytic anemias, 910–912
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). See also Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection
HIV disease staging and, 1215t, 1219t
T-lymphocyte deficiencies, 989
Acquired iris nodules (Lisch nodules), 441
Acquired nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (NDI), 730–731
Acquired toxoplasmosis, in immunocompromised host, 1299
Acromioclavicular separation, 860
Acromioclavicular (AC) separation, 830
Acute abdomen, 644t, 645
Acute appendicitis
clinical findings, 627
imaging, 627
laboratory findings, 627
symptoms and signs, 627
differential diagnosis, 627
general considerations, 627
treatment and prognosis, 627
Acute ataxias of childhood, 777–783
acute cerebellar ataxia, 781
clinical findings, 781
imaging findings, 781
laboratory testing, 781
treatment, 781
acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis, 782
basilar migraine, 783
clinical findings, 781–783
functional ataxia, 783
mass lesions, 783
paraneoplastic syndromes, 782
clinical findings, 782
imaging, 782
laboratory testing, 782
treatment, 782
pathogenesis, 777–781
posterior circulation stroke, 782
sensory ataxia, 782–783
clinical findings, 782
imaging, 782
laboratory testing, 782
special testing, 782
treatment, 782–783
toxic cerebellar syndrome, 781–782
clinical findings, 781
imaging findings, 781
laboratory testing, 781
treatment, 782
Acute bacterial pharyngitis, 491–492
clinical findings, 491
treatment, 492
Acute bacterial rhinosinusitis (ABRS), 485
clinical findings, 485
complications, 485
pathogenesis, 485
treatment, 485–486
Acute bilirubin encephalopathy, 23
Acute-care, health supervision visits, 240–241
Acute cerebellar ataxia, 781
clinical findings, 781
imaging findings, 781
laboratory testing, 781
treatment, 781
Acute cervical adenitis, 493–494
Acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis (ADEM), 782, 794
clinical findings, 794
imaging, 794
laboratory findings, 794
treatment, 794
prognosis, 794
treatment, 794
Acute dialysis, 723
Acute diarrhea
other viral infections causing, 637
rotavirus infection, 636–637
Acute epiglottitis, Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections
complications, 1269
differential diagnosis, 1268
Acute febrile illness, 1181
Acute flaccid paralysis in children, 797t–798t

Acute glomerulonephritis (AGN), 716
group A streptococcal infections and, 1228
Acute hemolytic transfusion reaction, 943t
Acute hypertensive emergencies, 726
Acute interstitial nephritis, 718
Acute intracranial hypertension, 322
Acute kidney injury, 385–387, 721–724
classification of, 722t
clinical findings, 386, 722
complications, 722–723
definitions, 385–386, 386t
pathophysiology, 386
postrenal causes, 722
prerenal causes, 722
renal causes, 722
treatment, 386–387, 723
acute dialysis, 723
complications of dialysis, 723–724
course and prognosis, 724
methods of dialysis, 723
urine studies, 722t
Acute liver failure (ALF)
clinical findings, 672
history, 672
laboratory findings, 672
symptoms and signs, 672
common identifiable causes of, 672t
complications, 672–673
differential diagnosis, 672
general considerations, 672
prognosis, 673
treatment, 673
Acutely ill patients
ABCs of resuscitation, 308–314, 309t, 310f–313f
airway, 309–310, 310f–311f
breathing, 310–312, 312f
circulation, 312–313
children as, 308
emergency drugs, 314–315, 315t, 316t
infants as, 308
shock management
cardiogenic, 314
compensated, 313
decompensated, 313
distributive, 314
hypovolemic, 313–314
obstructive, 314
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), 945–948
clinical findings, 946
differential diagnosis, 946
general considerations, 945–946
prognosis, 948
treatment, 947–948
Acute lymphonodular pharyngitis, 1182
Acute meningoencephalitis, 1304
Acute myeloid leukemia (AML), 948–951, 949t
clinical findings, 949–950
general considerations, 948–949
prognosis, 950–951
treatment, 950
Acute otitis media (AOM), 471–477, 472f, 474f, 474t, 475t
clinical findings
examination techniques and procedures, 473, 474t
microbiology, 472–473, 473t
pathophysiology and predisposing factors, 471–472
prevention, 476–477
antibiotic prophylaxis, 476
immunologic evaluation and allergy testing, 477
lifestyle modifications, 476
surgery, 476
vaccines, 477
treatment
antibiotic therapy, 475–476, 475t
observation option, 473–474t
pain management, 473
tympanocentesis, 476, 476f
Acute pain, 977–979
treatment, 977–978
Acute pancreatitis
clinical findings, 691–692
history, 691
imaging, 692
laboratory findings, 692
symptoms and signs, 692
complications, 692
differential diagnosis, 692
general considerations, 691
prognosis, 692
treatment, 692
Acute phase reactants, 934
Acute postinfectious-glomerulonephritis, 716–717
Acute respiratory distress syndrome, 368–371
outcomes, 371
presentation and pathophysiology, 368–371, 369t
risk factors, 368t
treatment, 370–371
Acute respiratory failure, 360–364, 361t
blood gas analysis, 361–362
clinical findings, 361
noninvasive monitoring, 361–362
pathogenesis, 360–361
respiratory support modes, 362–364, 362t, 364t
Acute retroviral syndrome, 1217–1218
Acute stomatitis, 489
herpes simplex gingivostomatitis, 489
recurrent aphthous stomatitis, 489
thrush, 489
traumatic oral ulcers, 489
Acute (suppurative) thyroiditis, 1019
Acute tonsillitis, 497
Acute toxoplasmosis, in immunocompromised host, 1299
Acute traumatic anterior shoulder instability, 860–861
Acute urinary tract infection, 1254–1255
Acute viral pharyngitis, 489–491, 490f
clinical findings, 491
Acute viral rhinitis, 483–484
clinical findings, 483–484
treatment, 484, 484f
Acyanotic heart disease, of newborns, 50–51
clinical findings, 50
left-sided outflow obstruction, 50
treatment, 50–51
Acyclovir, for herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections, 1187
Addison disease, 1037–1038
Adductor strain, 865

Adenocarcinoma of colon, 635–636
Adenoidectomy, 497
  complications of, 497
  contraindications to, 497
Adenoidectomy, for recurrent rhinosinusitis, 487
Adenopathy, viral causes, 1171t–1172t
Adenosine, 605
Adenovirus, infections due to, 1175–1176
ADHD. See Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
Adhesive otitis, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478
Adjustment disorders, 212
Adolescence
  age of, 101
  behavior during, 114–121. See also Adolescent, behaviors
  contraception, 135–144. See also Contraception/contraceptives
  defined, 101
  demography, 101
  early, psychosocial development, 112–113
  gynecologic disorders, 125–135. See also specific disorders
  late, psychosocial development, 113
  middle, psychosocial development, 113
  morbidity data, 101–102, 102f
  mortality data, 101
  population of, 101
  pregnancy in, 142–144, 143t
  sexual orientation, 113–114
  substance abuse during. See Substance abuse
  suicide in, 206–208
Adolescent
  anal intercourse among, 1330
  behaviors, 114–121
    high-risk, interrelation of, 102, 102f
    overweight/obesity, 118–120, 119t
    school avoidance, 120
    school failure, 120–121
    substance abuse. See Substance abuse
  breast disorders, 121–125
  condom use and, 1330
  contraception, 135–144. See also Contraception/contraceptives
  developmental problems, assessment, interviewing in, 179
  growth and development
    physical, 111
    psychosocial, 112–114, 113t
    pubertal, 109, 111
    sexual maturation, 110f–111f, 111–112
  gynecologic disorders, 125–135. See also specific disorders
  health services delivery to, 102–103
  immunization in, 250, 251t–254t
  oral sex and, 1330
  preventive services, guidelines, 103–104
    abuse, asking about, 104
    confidentiality, 103
    HEADSS assessment, 104, 109t
    interview, 104, 105f–108f
    medical history questionnaire, 104, 105f–108f
    physical examination, 104, 110f–111f, 110t
    relating to patient, 103
    setting, 103
    structure of visit, 103–104
    violence, asking about, 104
  psychological health, 114–121
    conversion reactions, 114–115
    depression, 116–117
    psychophysiologic symptoms, 114–115
    suicide, 117
  sexuality, 114, 1330
  sexual maturation and growth, 111–112
    female, 111f, 112
    male, 110f, 112
  suicide in, 117
Adolescent patients screening, in health supervision visits, 236
Adolescent substance abuse
  evaluation of substance abuse, 152–154
    comorbidity, 153, 153t
    diagnosis, 152–153, 153t
    office screening, 152
    pharmacologic screening, 153–154, 154t
  morbidity data, 150
  prevention, 157–158
  progression from use to abuse, 151, 151t
  references, 158
  referral, 156–157, 156t
  scope of the problem, 145–150, 146t, 147t–148t
    bath salts, 150
    supplement use and abuse, 149–150
  treatment, 155–157
    office-based treatment, 155, 155t
    smoking cessation in pediatrics, 155–156, 156t
Adrenal cortex, 1036–1044
  described, 1036–1037
  disorders, 1037–1044
    adrenal medulla pheochromocytoma, 1044
    adrenocortical hyperfunction, 1041–1042
    adrenocortical insufficiency, 1037–1038
    congenital adrenal hyperplasias, 1039–1041
    primary hyperaldosteronism, 1042
    treatment, glucocorticoids, 1042–1044
Adrenal crisis, 1037–1038
Adrenal medulla pheochromocytoma, 1044
Adrenocortical hyperfunction, 1041–1042
  clinical findings, 1041
  differential diagnosis, 1041–1042
  general considerations, 1041
  imaging, 1041
  laboratory findings, 1041
  prognosis, 1042
  symptoms and signs, 1041
  treatment, 1042
Adrenocortical insufficiency, 1037–1038
  clinical findings, 1037
  course and prognosis, 1038
  differential diagnosis, 1038
  laboratory findings, 1037–1038

maintenance therapy, 1038
treatment, 1038
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 754, 1042–1044
cosyntropin stimulation test, 1037
Adrenoleukodystrophy, 780t
Advance care planning, in end-of-life care, 986–987
AED. See Antiepileptic drug (AED) therapy
Aedes mosquito, 1201. See also Dengue
Aeromonas hydrophila, 650
African tick typhus, in returned traveler, 1364t
Afterload, 375
Afterload-reducing agents, 561
Age
acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
of adolescence, 101
development by, 71–79
ages 2-4 years, 72t–73t, 78
ages 5-7 years, 73t, 78–79
ages 7-11 years, 73t–74t, 79
language, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f, 78
as factor in visual acuity, 233, 233t
gestational, of newborns, assessment, 10–13
AGA, 10, 13
Ballard score for, 10, 11t
birth weight and, 10, 12f, 13
LGA, 10, 13
SGA, 10, 13
weight gain related to, 247t
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), 3
Agenesis of corpus callosum, 769
Ages and Stages Questionnaires
socio-emotional, in mental health screening in office setting, 176
Aggression, 209
AGN. See Acute glomerulonephritis (AGN)
Agoraphobia, 192–193
differential diagnosis, 193
general considerations, 192–193
identification and diagnosis, 193
prognosis, 193
treatment, 193
AH50 assay, 992
AHRQ. See Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)
AIDS. See Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
AIHA. See Acquired autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA)
Aim statement, 4, 5
Air leak syndromes, 543–544
Air travel, 1352
ear pain during, 1352–1353
Airway
evaluation, in bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 525
management, 508
resuscitation, 309–310, 310f–311f
trauma patients and, 315
Airway clearance therapy, in respiratory tract disorders management, 508
Akathisia, antipsychotics and, 214
Albendazole
for ascariasis, 1307
for baylisascariasis, 1311
chemotherapy, 1314
for cysticercosis, 1313
for echinococcosis, 1314
for enterobiasis (pinworms), 1306
for hookworm, 1308
for strongyloidiasis, 1309
for trichinosis, 1311
for trichuriasis (whipworm), 1307
Albers-Schönberg disease, 826
Albinism, 440–441
clinical findings, 440, 441f
complications, 440
differential diagnosis, 440
pathogenesis, 440
treatment, 440
Albright syndrome, 838
Albumin, unconjugated bilirubin, 20
Albuterol, for pertussis, 1271
Albuterol, in asthma management, 1127
Alcohol, ethyl, poisoning, treatment, 338–339
Alcohol abuse, during pregnancy, effects on infants, 32, 32t
Alcohol-related birth defects, 99
Alcohol-related neurodevelopmental disorder, 99
Alcohol use, 145
Aldosterone, 700
ALF. See Acute liver failure (ALF)
Alignment and motility evaluation, eye, 422, 422f, 422t, 423f
Alimentary tract, foreign bodies in, 616–617
ALL. See Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL)
Allelic heterogeneity, defined, 1087
Allergic conjunctivitis, 437–438, 438f
Allergic disorders, 1114–1159
allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, 1131–1135
anaphylaxis, 1141–1143, 1141t
angioedema, 1139–1141
asthma, 1114–1131
atopic dermatitis, 1135–1139
biological agents-related, 1146
drug reaction
chemotherapeutic agents, 1146
retroviral agents, 1146
drug reactions, 1143–1147
antibiotics, 1143–1145
aspirin, 1146
insulin, 1146
nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 1146
radiocontrast media-related, 1146
vaccines, 1146
food allergy, 1147–1148
insect allergy, 1148–1149
insect-related, 1148–1149
latex allergy, 1145–1147
prevalence, 1114
Allergic eczematous contact dermatitis, 412
Allergic reactions, 943t
causes, 1141t
Allergic rhinitis, 487
Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, 1131–1135
classification, 1131
clinical findings, 1131
complications, 1132
differential diagnosis, 1132
general considerations, 1131
laboratory findings, 1131

Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis (Cont.):
pathologic changes, 1131
prevalence, 1131
prognosis, 1135
symptoms and signs, 1131
treatment, 1132–1134
antihistamines, 1133
corticosteroids, 1134
decongestants, 1134
general measures, 1132
immunotherapy, 1134
ketorolac, 1134
mast cell stabilizers, 1133
pharmacologic, 1132–1134
surgical, 1134
Allergy
drug-related, red rash in, 1173t
latex, 1145–1147
Allergy testing, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 477
Alliance for Radiation Safety in Pediatric Imaging, 506
Alloimmune thrombocytopenia, in newborn, 64
Alopecia areata, 415–416
Alpha toga viruses, insects spreading, 1198t
ALPS. See Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS)
Altered states of consciousness, 741–744
clinical findings, 741–742
differential diagnosis, 742
laboratory and imaging diagnostics, 742
pathogenesis, 741
prognosis, 744
symptoms and signs, 741–742
treatment, 742–744
emergency measures, 742–744
general measures, 742–744
Altitude sickness, 1353
Alveolar-arterial oxygen difference, 362
AMA. See American Medical Association (AMA)
Amblyopia, 455–456
Ambulatory and office pediatrics, 225–247
acute-care visits, 240–241
advocacy issues, 244–245
chronic disease management, 241
common general pediatric issues, 244–246
community pediatrics, 244–245
fever, 244–246
growth deficiency, 246–247
health supervision visits, 228–242
mental and behavioral health, 242–244
pediatric history, 225–226
physical examination, 226–228
prenatal visits, 241
primary care setting, integrated mental and behavioral health in, 242–243
sports physicals, 241
telephone use, 243
web-based information, 243
AMC. See Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita (AMC)
Amebiasis, 1300–1302
clinical findings, 1301
defined, 1300
diagnostic findings, 1301
general considerations, 1300–1301
prevention, 1302
in returned traveler, 1365t
symptoms and signs, 1301
treatment, 1302, 1302t
Amenorrhea, 127–130, 162
differential diagnosis, site-related causes, 127t
physical examination, components, 128, 128t
primary
defined, 127
evaluation, 127–128, 129f
management, 128
secondary
defined, 127
evaluation, 127–128, 129f
management, 128
American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery (AAO-HNS), 494
American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry (AAPD), 459
American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), 149, 284, 494
on early newborn discharge, 17
Policy Statement on Community Pediatrics of, 173
American Academy of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation (AAPM&R), 881
American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM), 495
American Board of Pediatrics (ABP), 3
American College of Chest Physicians, 358
American Heart Association, 308
American Medical Association (AMA), 152
American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (ARRA), 3
Amino acid
in hyperglycemia management, 68
metabolism disorders, 1061–1066
hereditary tyrosinemia, 1064
homocystinuria, 1065
hyperphenylalaninemias, 1062–1063
maple syrup urine disease, 1064–1065
nonketotic hyperglycemia, 1065–1066
phenylketonuria, 1062–1063
urea cycle disorders, 1061–1062
Aminoglycoside, 1152t
Aminopenicillins, 1163
AML. See Acute myeloid leukemia (AML)
Amniocentesis, in perinatal genetics, 1112
Amniotic fluid, meconium-stained, resuscitation following, 38
Amoxicillin
for Hib septic arthritis, 1269
for Lyme disease, 1290
Amphetamines
poisoning, treatment, 339
Ampicillin, 1152t
for listeriosis, 1273
for Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1259
Ampicillin-resistant enterococci, infections with, 1233–1234
Ampicillin-susceptible enterococci, infections with, 1233
Amplitude, 552
Amyoplasia congenita, 824
Anal fissure, 630–631
Analgesia, 391–392

Analgesic dosing, 392–393
Anal intercourse among adolescent, 1330
Analytical detection methods, 1369
Analytical instrumentation, 1369
Analytical variations, 1369
Anaphylactoid purpura, 931–932
Anaphylactoid reactions, causes, 1141t
Anaphylaxis, 1141–1143, 1141t
  causes, 1141t
  clinical findings, 1141
  complications, 1142
  differential diagnosis, 1142
  general considerations, 1141
  laboratory findings, 1142
  prevention, 1142
  prognosis, 1143
  symptoms and signs, 1141
  treatment, 1142–1143
    antihistamines, 1142–1143
    bronchodilators, 1143
    corticosteroids, 1143
    epinephrine, 1142
    fluids, 1143
    general measures, 1142
    vasopressors, 1143
Anaplasma phagocytophilum, 1298
Ancylostoma braziliense, 1308
Ancylostoma caninum, 1308
Ancylostoma duodenale, 1307
Androctonus, 356
Anemia, 893–912
  acquired hemolytic, 910–912
  approach to child with, 893–895
  autoimmune hemolytic, 910–912
  of chronic disorders, 899–900
  congenital hemolytic, 900–910
  congenital hypoplastic anemia, 896
  investigation of, 894f
  iron-deficiency, 897–898
  megaloblastic, 898–899
  in newborns, 64–65
  nonimmune acquired hemolytic, 912
  nutritional, 897–899
  parasitic infections and, 1293t
  in preterm infants, 45
    general considerations, 45
    treatment, 45
  pure red cell aplasia, 895–897
  transient erythroblastopenia of childhood, 896–897
Anencephaly, empiric risks, 1090t
Anesthesia/anesthetics
  local
    adverse reactions, 1146
    poisoning, treatment, 339–340, 340t
Aneurysmal bone cyst, 839
ANF. See Atrial natriuretic factor (ANF)
Angelman syndrome, 1104
  genetic evaluation, 1111
Angiocardiography, 557–559
Angioedema, 1139–1141
  clinical findings, 1139–1140
  complications, 1140
  described, 1139
  differential diagnosis, 1140
  general considerations, 1139
  laboratory findings, 1140
  prevalence, 1139
  prognosis, 1141
  symptoms and signs, 1139–1140
  treatment, 1140–1141
    antihistamines, 1140
    corticosteroids, 1140
    doxepin, 1140
    general measures, 1140
    leukotriene-receptor antagonists, 1140
    thyroid hormone, 1140
Angiography, 559
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, 561
  ambulatory treatment, 728t
Aniline, poisoning, treatment, 351
Anionic detergents, poisoning, treatment, 357
Aniridia, 440
  clinical findings, 440
  complications, 440
  differential diagnosis, 440
  pathogenesis, 440
  prognosis, 441
  treatment, 440–441
Ankle injuries, sports related, 870–872
Ankle sprains, 828, 871
anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery, 576
Anopheles mosquitoes, 1294–1295, 1359. See also Malaria
Anorexia nervosa, 160–161
  clinical findings, 161–162
    laboratory findings, 162, 162t
    symptoms and signs, 161–162
  complications, 162–164, 163t
    long-term, 163–164, 163t
    mortality, 163t, 164
    short-term, 162–163, 163t
  diagnostic criteria for, 161t
  differential diagnosis, 162
  screening questions regarding, 161t
  treatment, 164–166
    general approach, 164–165
    inpatient, 165–166
    outpatient, 166
    pharmacotherapy, 166
Anotia, 481
Anterior cord syndrome, 877
Anterior cruciate ligament injuries, 869–870
Anterior fontanelle, in newborn, 14
Anterior knee pain, 867–868
Anterior shoulder dislocation/subluxation, 860–861
Anterior uveitis, 441–442
Antibacterial agents
  groups, 1151t, 1154t–1155t
  parenteral, guidelines for use, 1156t
Antibiotic prophylaxis, 476
Antibiotics
  for diphtheria, 1253
  in pediatric dentistry, 468
  systemic, 405
  topical, 405
Antibiotic therapy, 733
  for acute otitis media (AOM), 475–476, 475t
Antibody
  anti-Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 1196
  heterophil, in infectious mononucleosis, 1196
Antibody deficiency classification, 997
Antibody deficiency syndromes, 995–998, 996t
  differential diagnosis, 997
  general considerations, 995, 997
  laboratory findings, 995, 997
  symptoms and signs, 995
  treatment, 997
Antibody-mediated hemolysis, 21
Antibody testing, 808
Anticholinesterase inhibitor testing, 808

Anticipation
disorders associated with, 1104–1105
genetic, 1091
Antidepressants, 354
in children and adolescents, 201–202
for PTSD, 196
smoking and, 156
Antidiuretic hormone, 699–700
physiology, 1016
Antiepileptic drug (AED) therapy, 752–754
drug selection, 752
guide to use, 753t–754t
long-term management and discontinuation of treatment, 754
treatment strategy, 752
Anti-Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) antibodies, 1196
Antigen-antibody reactions, 1369
Antihistamines
in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1133
in anaphylaxis management, 1142–1143
in angioedema management, 1140
poisoning, treatment, 340–341
in urticaria management, 1140
Antihypertensive drugs, 728t
Anti-IgE, in asthma management, 1128
Anti-infective therapy, 588
Anti-infective therapy, in atopic dermatitis management, 1138
Anti-inflammatory agents, 588
Anti-inflammatory drugs, nonsteroidal, adverse reactions, 1146
Antimicrobial agents, 1151t, 1154t–1155t
adverse reactions, 1148–1149
clinical findings, 1144
laboratory findings, 1144
prognosis, 1145
symptoms and signs, 1144
treatment, 1144–1145
aminoglycosides, 1168
antibacterial agents
oral, guidelines for use, 1157t
parenteral, guidelines for use, 1156t
azalides, 1166–1167
aztreonam, 1166
carbapenems, 1166
cephalosporin, 1165–1166
clindamycin, 1167
daptomycin, 1169
empiric, initial choices, indications, 1161–1163
fluoroquinolones, 1168–1169
glycopeptide agents, 1164–1165
guidelines for use, 1156t
macrolides, 1166–1167
metronidazole, 1169
microorganisms susceptibility to, 1152t–1153t
new, uses, 1159–1160
for newborns, 1158t
oral, guidelines for use, 1157t
oxazolidinones, 1165
penicillins, 1163–1164
prophylactic, 1160–1161, 1164t
sulfonamides, 1167
Antimicrobial therapy, 1150–1169
blood level measurement, 1156t, 1157t, 1158t, 1159
dose alteration, 1156t, 1157t, 1158t, 1159
for Lyme disease, 1290
microorganisms susceptibility to, 1152t–1153t
principles of, 1150–1151, 1151t
Antiphospholipid antibodies, 933–934
Antipruritic agents, in atopic dermatitis management, 1138
Antipseudomonal b-lactam antibiotic, for Pseudomonas infections, 1257
Antipseudomonas penicillins, 1164–1165
Antipsychotics
adverse effects, 214
health monitoring and, 214t
poisoning, treatment, 353
Antiretroviral drugs
complications of, 1222
FDA-approved, 1221t
for HIV infection, criteria, 1221–1222
Anti-Rh(D) immunoglobulin
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 921
Antistreptolysin O (ASO) titers, 1227
Antithrombin deficiency, 932–933
Antitoxin, for diphtheria, 1253
a_1-Antitrypsin deficiency
clinical findings, 676
laboratory findings, 676
symptoms and signs, 676
complications, 676–677
differential diagnosis, 676
general considerations, 676
liver disease, 676–677
prognosis, 677
treatment, 677
Antiviral agents, topical, for herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections, 1187
Antral lavage, for recurrent rhinosinusitis, 486–487
Anuria, in newborn, 66
Anus of newborn, examination, 15
Anxiety, in children
separation, 76
stranger, 76
Anxiety disorders, 187–197
anxiety-based school refusal, 189
differential diagnosis, 191–192
general considerations, 191
generalized anxiety disorder, 193–194
identification and diagnosis, 187, 191
medications for, 188t
obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 195–196
panic disorder, 192
post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 196–197
prognosis, 189, 191
selective mutism disorder, 191
separation anxiety, 189–190
signs and symptoms, 187–188, 187t
social, 194–195
specific phobia, 191–192
treatment, 187, 188t, 191
AOM. See Acute otitis media (AOM)
Aorta
coarctation of, 571–572
diseases of
bicuspid aortic valve, 575
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 575

Loeys-Dietz syndrome, 575
Marfan syndrome, 575
Turner syndrome, 575
Aortic stenosis, 572–573
APECED. See Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy, candidiasis, ectodermal dysplasia (APECED)
Apgar scores, infant evaluation at birth, 13, 13t
Apheresis, 944
Aphthous stomatitis, 416–417
Aplastic anemia
acquired, 892–893
constitutional, 891–892
Apnea
defined, 41
in preterm infants, 41–42
causes, 41t
clinical findings, 41
general considerations, 41, 41t
prognosis, 42
treatment, 42
Apparent life-threatening events (ALTE), 546–548, 611
clinical findings, 546–547
potential causes of, 546t
treatment, 547–548
Appendicitis, 627
Appropriate for gestational age (AGA), 10, 13
Arcanobacterium hemolyticum, 491, 1228
Arginine vasopressin, 1016
Aripiprazole, for bipolar disorder, 204
Arnold-Chiari malformations, 769
type I, 769
type II, 769
type III, 769
ARRA. See American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (ARRA)
Arrhythmias, in newborns, 51–52
Arsenic poisoning, treatment, 341
Arterial blood gas (ABG), 361–362, 557
Arterial blood pressure, 553
Arterial ischemic stroke (AIS), 764–766
clinical findings, 765
differential diagnosis, 765
imaging, 765
laboratory findings and ancillary testing, 765
prognosis, 766
symptoms and signs, 765
treatment, 765–766
Arterial oxygen saturation, 361
Arterial pulse quality, 552
Arterial pulse rate, 552
Arteriography, 741
cerebral, 741
Arthritis
causes, viral, 1171t
juvenile idiopathic, 882–885
Lyme disease and, treatment, 1290
monoarticular, gonorrheal, 1245
pyogenic, 833–834
reactive, poststreptococcal
differential diagnosis, 1228
treatment, 1229–1230
rheumatoid, juvenile, red rash in, 1174t
septic. See Septic arthritis
Arthrogryposis multiplex, 1108
Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita (AMC), 824
Ascariasis, 1306–1307
Ascaris lumbricoides, 1307
Ascorbic acid
biologic role, 292t
deficiencies, critical features, 294t
ASCUS. See Atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS)
ASD. See Autism spectrum disorder (ASD)
Asenapine, for bipolar disorder, 204
Asperger disorder, 93
Aspergillus species, fungal infections due to, 1326, 1327t
Aspiration pneumonia, 531–532
clinical findings, 532
differential diagnosis, 532
risk factors for, 532t
treatment, 532
Aspiration syndromes, respiratory distress in newborn due to, 28–29
Aspirin, 588
adverse reactions, 1146
Asplenia, 935–936
ASRS. See Aviation Safety Reporting System (ASRS)
Assisted reproductive technologies, perinatal genetics related to, 1112
Association, defined, 1093
Asthma, 1114–1131
acute, treatment, 1129–1130
at-home management, 1129
general measures, 1129
hospital management, 1130
official emergency department management, 1129
patient discharge, 1130
prognosis, 1130–1131
chronic, treatment, 1118–1131, 1120t–1121t
albuterol, 1127
anti-IgE, 1128
b-agonist, 1127
corticosteroids, 1126t
inhaled, 1126t
formoterol, 1127
general measures, 1118–1122
immunotherapy, 1128
long-acting bronchodilators (LABAs), 1124
pharmacologic, 1122–1128
severity assessment in, 1118t–1119t
stepwise approach to, 1125t
clinical findings, 1115–1117, 1116f
complications, 1118
differential diagnosis, 1117, 1117t
exercise-induced bronchospasm and, 1128–1129
flow-volume loops in, 1116f
general considerations, 1114–1115
imaging studies, 1117
laboratory findings, 1115–1117, 1116f
severity of, conditions increasing, 1117–1118
symptoms and signs, 1115
treatment, 1118–1131, 1120t–1121t
Astigmatism, 419f, 420
Astrocytoma, 954
Asymmetrical growth restriction, 13

Ataxias
of childhood, 777
Friedreich, 1104–1105
progressive, 784–785
Ataxia-telangiectasia (A-T), 785, 1000
imaging, 785
laboratory testing, 785
treatment, 785
Ataxia-telangiectasia-mutated (ATM) gene, 1000
Atazanavir, 1221t
Atelectasis, pertussis and, 1271
Atherosclerosis, 596
At-home management, asthma-related, 1129
Atlantoaxial instability, 857
Atomoxetine, for ADHD, 91, 93
Atopic dermatitis, 410–413, 1135–1139
clinical findings, 411, 1135
complications, 411, 1136
described, 1135
differential diagnosis, 411, 1135–1136
general considerations, 1135
laboratory findings, 1135
pathogenesis, 411
prognosis, 1139
symptoms and signs, 1135
treatment, 411, 1136–1138
anti-infective therapy, 1138
antipruritic agents, 1138
corticosteroids, 1137
experimental and unimproved therapies, 1138
general measures, 1136
hydration, 1136–1137
moisturizers, 1137
occlusives, 1137
for recalcitrant disease, 1138
tar preparations, 1138
topical calcineurin inhibitors, 1137–1138
wet dressings, 1138
Atovaquone-proguanil, 1360, 1362t
Atresia, 480
biliary, 661–662
differential diagnosis, 662
general considerations, 661
laboratory findings and imaging, 662
prognosis, 662
symptoms and signs, 661–662
treatment, 662
esophageal, in newborns, 52
intestinal, 622, 622t
pulmonary, with intact ventricular septum, 579–580
angiocardiography, 580
cardiac catheterization, 580
echocardiography, 579
electrocardiography, 579
general considerations, 579
imaging, 579
symptoms and signs, 579
treatment and prognosis, 580
tricuspid, 580–581
angiocardiography, 581
cardiac catheterization, 581
echocardiography, 581
electrocardiography, 581
general considerations, 580
imaging, 580
symptoms and signs, 580
treatment and prognosis, 581
Atrial natriuretic factor (ANF), 700
Atrial premature beats, 601, 602f
Atrial septal defect, 562–564
cardiac catheterization, 563
course and prognosis, 563–564
echocardiography, 563
electrocardiography, 563
general considerations, 563
imaging, 563
symptoms and signs, 563
treatment, 563
Atrial septostomy, 600
Atrioventricular block
complete, 608–609, 608f, 609f
first-degree, 608, 608f, 609f
Mobitz type I (Wenckebach), 608, 608f, 609f
second-degree, 608, 608f, 609f
Atrioventricular conduction disorders, 607–609
complete atrioventricular block, 608–609, 608f, 609f
clinical findings, 609
treatment, 609
first-degree atrioventricular block, 608, 608f, 609f
general considerations, 607–608
second-degree atrioventricular block, 608, 608f, 609f
Atrioventricular septal defect, 566–567
clinical findings, 566
angiocardiography, 566
cardiac catheterization, 566
echocardiography, 566
electrocardiography, 566
imaging, 566
symptoms and signs, 566
general considerations, 566
treatment, 566–567
Atropine
for breath-holding spells, 89
controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
poisoning, treatment, 341–342
Attachment, infants and, 75
Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 91–93, 92t, 197–200
comorbidities, 198–199
diagnostic criteria, 91, 92t
genetic components, 91
hyperactive type, 91, 197
hyperthyroidism and, 91
identification and diagnosis, 197
impulsivity, 91
inattentive type, 91, 197
prognosis, 200
symptoms, 91
treatment, 197
medications, 198–200, 198t, 199t
initial medical screening, 199–200
nonstimulants, 199t
stimulants, 198t
treatment of, 91–93
Atypical pneumonias, 528–531
bronchiolitis, 530–531
mycoplasma pneumonia, 531
viral pneumonia, 528–529
Atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS), 1348
Auricular hematoma, 480
Auscultation, 550–552
heart sounds, 550–551
murmurs, 551–552
characteristics, 551
intensity, 551
location and radiation, 551
quality, 551

relationship to cardiac cycle and duration, 551
variation with position, 551
innocent, 551–552
innominate or carotid bruit, 552
newborn murmur, 551
peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis (PPS), 551–552
pulmonary ejection murmur, 552
still murmur, 552
venous hum, 552
Autism, 1111
complementary and alternative management (CAM) for, 96
described, 93–94
evaluation, 94–96
Autism-specific screen, 95
Autism spectrum disorder (ASD), 93–96, 94t
characteristics of, 93
diagnostic criteria, 93–94, 94t
etiology, 93–94
evaluation, 94–96
laboratory tests, 95
management, 94–96
Autocrine, 1007
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, 910–912
Autoimmune hepatitis
clinical findings, 673–674
history, 673–674
laboratory findings, 674
symptoms and signs, 674
complications, 674
differential diagnosis, 674
prognosis, 674
treatment, 674
Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS), 1004
Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy, candidiasis, ectodermal dysplasia (APECED), 1004
Automatic tachycardias, 603
Autonomic hyperreflexia, 878
Autoregulation, 382
Autosomal dominant disorders, 1099–1101
achondroplasia, 1100
CHARGE syndrome, 1101
Cornelia de Lange syndrome, 1101
craniosynostoses syndromes, 1101
Marfan syndrome, 1099–1100
neurofibromatosis, 1099
Noonan syndrome, 1101
osteogenesis imperfecta, 1100–1101
Autosomal dominant hypocalcemia, 1023
Autosomal dominant inheritance, 1087–1088, 1087f
Autosomal recessive disorders, 1101–1103, 1102f
autosomal recessive inheritance, 1088, 1088f
cystic fibrosis, 1101–1102
sensorineural hearing loss, 1102
Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome, 1102
spinal muscular atrophy (SMA), 1102–1103
Autosomal recessive hereditary ataxias, 784–785
ataxia-telangiectasia, 785
imaging, 785
laboratory testing, 785
treatment, 785
Friedreich ataxia, 784–785
imaging, 784
laboratory testing, 784
treatment, 784–785
Autosomal recessive inheritance, 1088, 1088f
Avascular necrosis, 835–836
proximal femur, 835–836
Average volume-assured pressure support (AVAPS), 363
Aviation Safety Reporting System (ASRS), 8
AV nodal reentrant tachycardia, 603
Avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder, 169–170
Azalide, 1155t, 1166–1167
Azithromycin, 1167, 1298
for cat-scratch disease, 1282
for Chlamydophila pneumonia, 1281
for cholera, 1263
for free-living amoebas, 1305
for group A streptococcal infections, 1229
intravenous, for Legionella infection, 1279
for pertussis, 1271
for Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1258
for traveler's diarrhea, 1359
Aztreonam, 1166

B
Babbling, 74
Babesia microti, 1296
Babesiosis
clinical findings, 1296, 1298
general considerations, 1296
laboratory findings, 1298
in returned traveler, 1365t
symptoms and signs, 1296, 1298
treatment, 1298
BabyBIG, 1248
Baby bottle tooth decay. See Early childhood caries (ECC)
Bacillary dysentery. See Shigellosis
Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG), 1274–1275
Mycobacterium bovis, 279
vaccination, 279, 1357
Back sprains, 829
Bacteremia, pneumococcal infections and, treatment, 1236
Bacterial colonization, 471
Bacterial conjunctivitis, 436–437
Bacterial contamination, 943t
Bacterial infections, 1226–1282
botulism, 1247–1249
Campylobacter infection, 1263–1264
cholera, 1262–1263
diphtheria, 1252–1253
Enterobacteriaceae-related, 1253–1255
gas gangrene, 1251–1252
gonococcal infections, 1244–1247
Haemophilus influenzae type B infections, 1267–1270
Legionella infection, 1278–1279
listeriosis, 1272–1273
meningococcal infections, 1242–1244
in newborn, 56–60
bacterial sepsis, 56–57, 57f, 58f
conjunctivitis, 59
meningitis, 57
omphalitis, 59
pneumonia, 57, 58
urinary tract infection, 58–59

Bacterial infections (Cont.):
nontuberculous mycobacteria-related infections, 1276–1278
pertussis, 1270–1272
plague, 1266–1267
pneumococcal infections, 1234–1237, 1236t
Pseudomonas infections, 1256–1257
psittacosis, 1279–1281
Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1257–1259
shigellosis, 1261–1262
of skin, 406–407
staphylococcal infections, 1237–1241
streptococcal
group A, 1226–1230. See also Group A streptococcal infections
group B, 1230–1233, 1231t, 1232f
with organisms other than group A or B, 1233–1234
tetanus, 1249–1250
tuberculosis, 1273–1276
tularemia, 1264–1265
typhoid fever, 1259–1260
Bacterial meningitis, 791–792
complications, 792
abnormalities of water and electrolyte balance, 792
cerebral edema, 792
seizures, 792
subdural effusions, 792
treatment, 791–792
general and supportive measures, 792
specific measures, 791–792
Bacterial pharyngitis, acute, 491–492
clinical findings, 491
treatment, 492
Bacterial pneumonia
antimicrobial agents for, 1162
clinical findings, 526–527
community-acquired, 526–527
complications, 527
differential diagnosis, 527
prognosis, 527
treatment, 527
Bacterial sepsis, in newborn, 56–57
clinical findings, 56
general considerations, 56
incidence of, 56
prevention, 57
treatment, 56–57
Bacterial tracheitis, 512–513
clinical findings, 13
prognosis, 513
treatment, 513
Bacterial vaginosis
complications, 1343
general considerations, 1343
laboratory findings, 1343
symptoms and signs, 1343
treatment, 1335t, 1343
b-Agonist, in asthma management, 1127
Bag-valve-mask ventilation (BMV) resuscitation, 309, 311–312, 312f
Baker cyst, 839
Balamuthia amoebas, 1305
Balancing measures, 5
Ballard score, for gestational age assessment, 10, 11t
Balloon catheter dilation, for recurrent rhinosinusitis, 487
Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome, 1109
Barbiturates, 391
poisoning, treatment, 341
Bare lymphocyte syndrome type II, 1001
Bariatric surgery, for obesity, 119–120
Bartonella henselae, 436
Bartter syndrome, 730
Basal metabolic rate (BMR), 388
basilar migraine, 783
Bath salts, 150
Bayley Scales of Infant Development, 97
Baylisascariasis, 1311
Baylisascaris procyonis, 1311
b-Blockers, poisoning, treatment, 342
BCG. See Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG)
Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD), 1103
Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, 15, 1104
Bee sting, 348
Behavior
adolescent, 114–121
high-risk, interrelation of, 102, 102f
school avoidance, 120
school failure, 120–121
substance abuse. See Substance abuse
dangerous, 210
violent, 209
Behavioral deficits, brain injury related, 874
Behavioral health providers, 172
Behavioral manifestations, of adolescent depression, 116, 116t
Belladonna alkaloids poisoning, treatment, 341–342
Bell palsy, Lyme disease and, treatment, 1290
Beneprotein, infant formula additives, 296t
Benign acute childhood myositis (myalgia cruris epidemica), 807
Benign migratory glossitis, 498
Benign neonatal sleep myoclonus, 759
Benzodiazepines, 390–391
poisoning, treatment, 340–341
for tetanus, 1250
Bereavement, 395
Beta-lactamase-negative, ampicillin-resistant (BLNAR) H influenzae, 1268
Bicuspid aortic valve, 575
Bicycle injuries, prevention anticipatory guidance, 237
Bilateral interstitial keratitis, 1283
Bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP), 363
Biliary atresia (BA), 661–662
differential diagnosis, 662
general considerations, 661
laboratory findings and imaging, 662
prognosis, 662
symptoms and signs, 661–662
treatment, 662
Biliary tract disease, 683–684, 685t–686t
cholelithiasis, 683–684
clinical findings, 684

complications, 684
differential diagnosis, 684
general considerations, 683
history, 684
imaging, 684
laboratory findings, 684
prognosis, 684
symptoms and signs, 684
treatment, 684
other biliary tract disorders, 687–688
primary sclerosing cholangitis, 687
clinical findings, 687
complications, 687
differential diagnosis, 687
general considerations, 687
imaging, 687
laboratory findings, 687
prognosis, 687
symptoms and signs, 687
treatment, 687
Bilirubin, neonatal jaundice, 19
acute bilirubin encephalopathy, 23
conjugation, 20
decreased rate of, 21t, 22
encephalopathy
acute, 23
chronic. See Kernicterus
excess accumulation of, 20, 20f
heme and production of, 19–20
kernicterus. See Kernicterus
overproduction, 21–22, 21t
toxicity, 22–23
unconjugated, 20, 22–23
Bilirubin-induced neurologic dysfunction (BIND), 23
Binge-eating disorder (BED), 168–169
clinical findings, 168–169
laboratory findings, 169
symptoms and signs, 168–169
diagnostic criteria for, 169t
treatment, 169
Bioethics consultation, 395
Biologic agents
adverse reactions, 1146
in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 884–885
Biopterin biosynthesis, defects, 1063
Biotin
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Bipolar disorder, 203–205
differential diagnosis, 205t
general considerations, 204
identification and diagnosis, 204
prognosis, 205
treatment, 204–205
aripiprazole, 204
asenapine, 204
carbamazepine, 204
lithium, 204
olanzapine, 204
quetiapine, 204
risperidone, 204
valproate, 204
Birth, infant evaluation at, 13–14
Apgar score, 13, 13t
placenta, 14
skeletal, 13
skin, 13
umbilical cord, 13–14
Birth defects, 1092
Birthmarks, examination in newborn, 14
Birth trauma, 30, 31f
bruising from, 14
subconjunctival hemorrhages, 14
Birth weight, and gestational age assessment, 10, 12f, 13
Bisexual adolescents, 114
Bismuth subsalicylate, in traveler's diarrhea, 1359
Black box warning, 117
Blastocystis hominis, 639
Blastomyces, 1316
Blastomyces dermatitidis, 1317
Blastomycosis
clinical findings, 1317
differential diagnosis, 1317
general considerations, 1317
imaging, 1317
laboratory findings, 1317
symptoms and signs, 1317
treatment, 1317
Bleeding disorders, 497, 918–919
adverse effects, 944
dentistry in children with, 469
disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 929–930
donor screening and blood processing, 936–938
inherited, 924–928
liver disease, 930
platelet function disorders, 923
platelet number abnormalities, 919–923
pretransfusion testing, 938
storage and preservation, 938
transfusion medicine, 936–944
transfusion practice, 938, 942
uremia, 931
vascular abnormalities with, 931–932
vitamin K deficiency, 930
von Willebrand disease, 469, 928
Blepharitis, 430
BLNAR. See Beta-lactamase-negative, ampicillin-resistant (BLNAR) H influenzae
Blood
fetal, in perinatal genetics, 1112
peripheral, in infectious mononucleosis, 1195–1196
Blood-brain barrier (BBB), 382
Blood Component, choice of, 942
Blood glucose measurements, at home, in diabetes management
type 1, 1049–1050, 1051t
type 2, 1049–1050, 1051t
Blood pressure, approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
Blood pressure screening, 232
Blood products, 380
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
Bloom syndrome, 1005
Blount disease, 818f
Blunt orbital trauma, 426–427
clinical findings, 426
complications
differential diagnosis, 426
pathogenesis, 426
prevention, 426
prognosis, 427
treatment, 426–427

BMI. See Body mass index (BMI)
BMR. See Basal metabolic rate (BMR)
BMV. See Bag-valve mask ventilation (BMV) resuscitation
Body burden, of drug, 332
Body fluids
  aldosterone, 700
  alterations of maintenance requirements, 702t
  antidiuretic hormone, 699–700
  atrial natriuretic factor, 700
  composition of, 700f
  electrolyte compositions of, 704t
  regulation of, 699–700
  thirst, 699
Body mass index (BMI), 161–162
Bonding, 75
Bone
  diseases
    aneurysmal bone cyst, 839
    Baker cyst, 839
    fibrous dysplasia, 838
    ganglion, 839
    unicameral bone cysts, 839
Bone marrow
  disorders
    acquired aplastic anemia, 892–893
    constitutional aplastic anemia, 891–892
    Fanconi anemia, 891–892
Bone marrow failure, 891
Bone tumors, 965–966
  Ewing sarcoma, 966
  osteosarcoma, 965–966
Bordetella pertussis, 260, 1270–1272
Bornholm disease, 1182
Borrelia burgdorferi, 1286, 1298
Borrelia hermsii, 1286
Botanical insecticides, poisoning, treatment, 349
Bottle feeding, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
Botulism, 1247–1249
  clinical findings, 1247–1248
  complications, 1248
  differential diagnosis, 1248
  general considerations, 1247
  laboratory findings, 1248
  prevention, 1247
  prognosis, 1249
  symptoms and signs, 1247–1248
  treatment, 1248–1249
    general measures, 1249
    specific measures, 1248–1249
Boxer's fracture, 864
b-Oxidation, of fatty acids, 284
BPD. See Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD)
Brachial plexus lesions, 878–879
  clinical findings, 878–879
  complications, 879
  pathogenesis, 878
  prevention, 878
  treatment and prognosis, 879
Bradyarrhythmias, in newborn, 51
Bradycardia
  intravenous calcium therapy and, 69
Brain abscess, 792–793
  clinical findings, 792–793
  differential diagnosis, 793
  prognosis, 793
  treatment, 793
Brain changes, 164
Brain death, 393–394, 394t
Brain injury, 873–876
  developmental considerations, 875–876
  sequelae of, 874–875
  severity, classification and assessment, 873–874
Brain tumors, 952–956
  classification, 954
  clinical findings, 953–954
  general considerations, 952–953
  imaging and staging, 953–954
  prognosis, 955–956
  symptoms and signs, 953
  treatment, 954–955
Branched-chain ketoaciduria, 1064–1065
Branchial cleft cyst, 494
Breast disorders, 121–125
  breast examination, 121
  breast masses, 121–123, 122t
  galactorrhea, 123–124
  gynecomastia, 124–125, 124t
  nipple discharge, 123–124
Breast examination, 121
Breast-feeding, 285–294
  common problems, 290–292
  complementary feeding, 293–294
  follow-up, 290
  maternal drug use and, 292–293
  newborns, 17
    guidelines for, 18t
    jaundice, 22
  nutrient composition, 293
  support of, 287–289
  technique of, 289–290
Breast masses, 121–123, 122t
  abscess, 122–123, 122t
  fibroadenomas, 121–122, 122t
  fibrocystic changes, 122, 122t
Breast milk, 17
  advantages of, 17
  jaundice, 22, 664
  supplements with, for preterm infants in nursery, 40–41
Breath-holding spells, 88–89
Breathing
  resuscitation, 310–312, 312f
  sleep-disordered, 86–87
  trauma patients and, 315–317
Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents, of AAP, 173, 176
  in psychosocial problems, 173
Bronchiectasis, 520–521
  clinical findings, 521
  differential diagnosis, 521
  pathogenesis, 520
  prognosis, 521
  treatment, 521
Bronchiolitis, 530–531
  clinical findings, 530
  complications, 530
  prevention, 530
  prognosis, 530–531
  treatment, 530
  viral causes, 1171t
Bronchiolitis obliterans, 519–520
  clinical findings, 520
  complications, 520
  differential diagnosis, 520
  prognosis, 520
  treatment, 520
Bronchodilator, in anaphylaxis management, 1143
Bronchogenic cysts, 515–516
Bronchopneumonia, pertussis and, 1271

Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD), 524–526
clinical findings, 525
differential diagnosis, 526
prognosis, 526
treatment, 525–526
Bronchoscopy, 506
Bronchospasm, exercise-induced, management, 1129
Brown-Séquard injury, 877
Bruising from birth trauma, 14
b-Thalassemia, 904–905
Bubonic plague, 1266. See also Plague
Budd-Chiari syndrome, 681
Bulimia nervosa, 166–168
clinical findings, 167–168
laboratory findings, 167–168
symptoms and signs, 167
complications, 168
mortality, 168
short-term, 168
diagnostic criteria for, 167t
mortality, 168
screening questions regarding, 161t
treatment, 168
Bulimic patients, mortality rate in, 168
Bullous impetigo, 406
Bullous myringitis (BM), 471
Bunions, 818
Bunyavirus, insects spreading, 1200t
Bupropion, for depression, 202
Burkholderia cepacia, 1256
Burners, sports-related, 857
Burns, 322–324, 324f
electrical, 324
eye, 427–428
clinical findings, 428
complications, 428
differential diagnosis, 428
pathogenesis, 427–428
prevention, 428
treatment, 428
thermal, 322–324
clinical findings, 323
complications, 323
differential diagnosis, 323
prevention, 323
prognosis, 324
treatment, 323–324
full-thickness, deep or extensive burns, 323–324
subdermal burns, 323–324
superficial- and partial-thickness burns, 323
Butanediol poisoning, treatment, 347
Byler disease, 660–661
Byler syndrome, 660–661

C

Café au lait macule, 401
CAGE questionnaire, 152
Calcineurin inhibitors, topical, in atopic dermatitis management, 1137–1138
Calcium
absorption/metabolism, 286t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, 286t
dietary reference intakes, 287t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
metabolism of, disorders, 1022–1028
nutrient requirements, 305
Calcium channel blockers
ambulatory treatment, 728t
poisoning, treatment, 341
Calcium salts, for hypocalcemia
IV solutions containing sodium bicarbonate, 69
with vitamin D, oral administration, 69
Calcium therapy, for hypocalcemia
intravenous, 69
oral, 69
Campylobacter fetus, 1263
Campylobacter gastroenteritis, 1258
Campylobacter infection, 1263–1264
Campylobacter jejuni, 1263
Cancers
chromosomal abnormalities in, 1085
dentistry in children with, 468–469
of the esophagus, small bowel, and colon, 635–636
Cancer therapy
cardiopulmonary complications, 975
endocrine complications, 974–975
growth complications, 974
late effects of, 974–976
neuropsychological complications, 975
renal complications, 975
second malignancies, 975–976
Candida albicans, 1344. See also Vulvovaginal candidiasis
Candida albicans infections, 408
Candida glabrata, 1320
Candida lusitaniae, 1320
Candida species, 59
Candida species, fungal infections due to, 1326
Candidemia, 1320
Candidiasis, 1318–1321
clinical findings, 1318–1319
complications, 1319
differential diagnosis, 1319
disseminated, 1319, 1320
general considerations, 1318
hepatosplenic, 1320
laboratory findings, 1319
prognosis, 1320–1321
treatment, 1319–1320
Candiduria, 1320
Capillary hemangiomas, in newborn, 14
Capillary malformations, 401–402
Caput succedaneum, in newborn, 14
Carbacephem, adverse reactions, 1144
Carbamates, poisoning, treatment, 349
Carbamazepine, for bipolar disorder, 204
Carbapenem, 1166
Carbohydrate
cow milk composition, 295t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Carbohydrate metabolism disorders, 1057t
glycogen storage diseases, 1057, 1057t
hereditary fructose intolerance, 1059
Carbohydrates
noncarbohydrate, 284–285
nondigested, 284–285
nutritional requirements and, 284–285

Carbon monoxide, poisoning, treatment, 342
Carboxylase deficiency, 1068
Cardiac arrest, intravenous calcium therapy and, 69
Cardiac catheterization, 557–559
Cardiac catheterization data, 558–559
  oximetry, shunts, and cardiac output, 558
  pressures, 558
  vascular resistance, 558–559
Cardiac chamber enlargement, radiographic changes with, 555t
Cardiac defects, 551t
Cardiac diseases, in newborns, 50–52
  arrhythmias, 51–52
  persistent pulmonary hypertension, 51
  structural heart disease, 50–51
Cardiac glycosides, poisoning, treatment, 345
Cardiac MRI, 595
Cardiac murmurs, in newborn, 15, 30
Cardiac output, 558
  of newborn at birth, 13
Cardiac rhythm abnormalities, 600
Cardiac transplantation, 597–599
  graft rejection, 598–599
    course and prognosis, 598–599
    rejection surveillance, 598
      cardiac catheterization, 598
      echocardiography, 598
      electrocardiography, 598
      endomyocardial biopsy, 598
      imaging, 598
      symptoms and signs, 598
    treatment of, 598
  immunosuppression, 597–598
Cardiogenic shock, 314
Cardiomyopathy
  arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (ARVD), 592
  dilated, 592–593
  hypertrophic, 593–594, 594–595
  left ventricular noncompaction, 592
  restrictive, 594–595
Cardiopulmonary stress testing, 557
Cardiovascular diseases, 550–610
  acquired heart disease, 587–596
    cardiomyopathy, 592–595
      dilated, 592–593
      hypertrophic, 593–594
      restrictive, 594–595
    infective endocarditis, 590–591
    Kawasaki disease, 589–590
    myocarditis, 595–596
    pericarditis, 591–592
    rheumatic fever, 587–589
  acyanotic congenital heart disease, 562–576
    coronary artery abnormalities, 576
      anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery, 576
    defects in septation, 562–567
      atrial septal defect, 562–564
      atrioventricular septal defect, 566–567
      ventricular septal defect, 564–565
    diseases of the aorta, 575
      bicuspid aortic valve, 575
      Loeys-Dietz syndrome, 575
      Marfan syndrome, 575
      Turner syndrome, 575
    left-sided lesions, 571–575
      aortic stenosis, 572–573
      coarctation of the aorta, 571–572
      mitral valve prolapse, 573–574
      other congenital left heart valvular lesions, 574–575
    patent (persistent) ductus arteriosus, 567–568
    right-sided obstructive lesions, 568–570
      Ebstein malformation of the tricuspid valve, 570
      peripheral (branch) pulmonary artery stenosis, 570
      pulmonary valve stenosis, 568–569
      subvalvular pulmonary stenosis, 569
      supravalvular pulmonary stenosis, 570
  congenital heart disease
    acyanotic, 562–576
    cyanotic, 577–587
    genetic basis of, 562
  cyanotic congenital heart disease, 577–587
    hypoplastic left heart syndrome, 581–582
    pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum, 579–580
    pulmonary atresia with ventricular septal defect, 578–579
    quality improvement in congenital heart disease, 586–587
    tetralogy of Fallot, 577–578
    total anomalous pulmonary venous return, 584–585
    transposition of the great arteries, 582–584
      congenitally corrected, 583
      double-outlet right ventricle, 584
    tricuspid atresia, 580–581
    truncus arteriosus, 585–586
  diagnostic evaluation, 550–562
    angiocardiography, 557–559
    arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis, 557
    arterial blood gases, 557
    cardiac catheterization, 557–559
    cardiopulmonary stress testing, 557
    cardiovascular examination, 550–552
    chest radiograph, 555–556
    chest radiography, 555–556
    echocardiography, 556
    electrocardiography (ECG), 553–555
    extracardiac examination, 552–553
    heart failure, 560–562
    history, 550
    magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 557
    perinatal and neonatal circulation, 559–560
    physical examination, 550–553
  genetic basis of congenital heart disease, 562
  heart failure, 560–562
  heart rate and rhythm disorders, 600
  pediatric heart transplantation, quality improvement for, 599–600
  preventive cardiology, 596–599

atherosclerosis and dyslipidemias, 596
cardiac transplantation, 597–599
chest pain, 597
hypertension, 596
quality improvement for pediatric heart transplantation, 599–600
disorders of rate and rhythm, 600
pulmonary hypertension, 599–600
sinus node disorders, 600–610
atrioventricular conduction disorders, 607–609
long QT syndrome, 607
premature beats, 601–602
sinus arrhythmia, 600–601
sinus bradycardia, 601
sinus node dysfunction, 601
sinus tachycardia, 601
sudden death, 607
supraventricular tachycardia, 603–606
syncope (fainting), 610
ventricular tachycardia, 606–607
Cardioversion, for neonatal arrhythmias, 52
Carditis, 587
Caries-risk assessment, 460, 460t
Carnitine, 284
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
deficiency, 1070
described, 1070
dietary sources of, 293t
Cartilage-hair hypoplasia, 1006
Cataracts, 446, 446f
Cat bites, 329
clinical findings, 329
complications, 329
prevention, 329
treatment, 329
Catecholamine-resistant septic shock, 379
Catharsis, in poisoning treatment, 335
Cationic detergents
poisoning, treatment, 357
Cat-scratch disease, 1281–1282
Cauda equina syndrome, 877
Cause-effect relationships, 78
Caustic burns of esophagus
clinical findings
imaging studies, 615
Caustic burns of the esophagus
clinical findings, 615
symptoms and signs, 615
treatment and prognosis, 615–616
Caustics
poisoning, treatment, 342–343
Cavitation, 461
Cavus foot, 817–818
C difficile disease
clinical findings, 632
pathogenesis, 632
treatment, 632–633
Cefotaxime, 1165
for Hib septic arthritis, 1269
Ceftazidime, Pseudomonas infections, 1257
Ceftriaxone, 1165
for Hib meningitis, 1269
for Hib septic arthritis, 1269
Cellulitis, 406
group A streptococcal infections and, 1227
Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections and
complications, 1269
differential diagnosis, 1269
symptoms and signs, 1268
treatment, 1269–1270
Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale for Children (CESD-C), 179
Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS), 2
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)
on early newborn discharge, 17
HIV infection categories of children, 1215t
Central a_2-adrenergic agonists, poisoning, treatment, 343
Central cord syndrome, 877
Central diabetes insipidus, 1016–1017
Central nervous system (CNS)
degenerative disorders of infancy, 777, 778t–780t
evaluation, in trauma survey, 319–320
illnesses associated with, 1183–1185
nonpolio viral meningitis, 1184–1185
infections, 322, 790–791
cerebrospinal fluid in, 738t–739t
inflammatory disorders, 794
noninfectious inflammatory disorders of, 794
Central sleep apnea, 545
Central venous catheters, 376–377
Centruroides, 356
Cephalexin, for group A streptococcal infections, 1229
Cephalohematoma, in newborn, 14
Cephalosporin, 1165–1166
adverse reactions, 144
for group A streptococcal infections, 1229
for Hib septic arthritis, 1269
Cerebellum development disorders, 769
Arnold-Chiari malformations, 769
Dandy-Walker syndrome, 769
cerebral angiography, 741
Cerebral edema, diabetes and, management, 1047
Cerebral herniation, 384
Cerebral infarctions, 384
Cerebral malaria, 1296
Cerebral palsy, 789–790, 827
clinical findings, 789
laboratory and imaging tests, 789
symptoms and signs, 789
differential diagnosis, 789–790
prognosis, 790
treatment and management, 790
Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP), 383
Cerebral salt wasting, 705t
Cerebrovascular disease
childhood arterial ischemic stroke (AIS), 764–766
clinical findings, 765
differential diagnosis, 765
imaging, 765
laboratory findings and ancillary testing, 765
prognosis, 766
symptoms and signs, 765
treatment, 765–766
perinatal arterial ischemic stroke, 766–767

Cerumen impaction, 480
Cerumen (ear wax) removal, in acute otitis media (AOM) evaluation, 473
Cervical caps, 138
Cervical cytology, HIV-positive adolescents screening for, 125
Cervicitis
  clinical findings, 1339–1340
  complications, 1340
  general considerations, 1339
  laboratory findings, 1339–1340
  postpubertal female, gonorrheal, 1245
  symptoms and signs, 1339
  treatment, 1334t, 1340
CESD-C (Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale for Children), 179
Cessation
  smoking, 155–156, 156t
  tobacco, 156
Cestode infections, 1312–1314
  cysticercosis, 1312–1313
  echinococcosis, 1313–1314
  hymenolepiasis, 1313
  taeniasis, 1312–1313
CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein, 517
CGD. See Chronic granulomatous disease (CGD)
CH50 assay, 990, 992
CHADIS. See Child Health and Development Interactive System (CHADIS)
Chalazion, 430
Chancroid, 1347
  treatment, 1337t, 1347
Channelopathies, 784
Charcoal, in poisoning treatment, 335
CHARGE syndrome, 1101
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome, 916t, 1005
Cheilitis, 497
Chemistry reference intervals, 1367–1381
  endocrine, 1378t–1380t
  general, 1371t–1377t
  guidelines for use of data in reference range study, 1367–1368
Chemoprophylaxis, for meningococcal infections, 1242–1243
Chemotherapeutic agents, adverse reactions, 1146
Chemotherapy, for drug-resistant tuberculosis, 1276
Chest
  evaluation
    in trauma survey, 319
  of newborn, examination, 15
Chest pain, 597
  etiology, 597
  overview, 597
Chest radiograph, 555–556
Chest wall disorders, 540–541
  neuromuscular disorders, 541
  pectus carinatum, 541
  pectus excavatum, 541
  scoliosis, 540–541
Chikungunya
  insects spreading, 1198t
  in returned traveler, 1365t
Child abuse, 216–224
  clinical findings, 217–222
  differential diagnosis, 223
  emotional abuse, 221
  medical child abuse, 222
  neglect, 221. See also Neglect
  physical abuse, 218–219
  prevention, 217
  prognosis, 224
  sexual abuse, 219–221
  treatment, 223
Child development and behavior
  concerns related to, 82–89. See also Developmental concerns
  encopresis, 81–82
  enuresis, 80–81
  normal, 71–79
    ages 2-4 years, 72t–73t, 78
    ages 5-7 years, 73t, 78–79
    ages 7-11 years, 73t–74t, 79
    assessment, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f
    behavioral, 74–78
    communication, 74, 76f
    developmental charts, 72t–74t
    first 2 years, 71, 72t, 74–78, 75t, 76f, 77f
    language, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f, 78
  variations, 79–80
  well-child surveillance and screening, 89–99
Child Health and Development Interactive System (CHADIS), 89
Childhood
  arterial ischemic stroke (AIS), 764–766
    clinical findings, 765
    differential diagnosis, 765
    imaging, 765
    laboratory findings and ancillary testing, 765
    prognosis, 766
    symptoms and signs, 765
    treatment, 765–766
  central nervous system degenerative disorders of, 777
Children, 741–811
  abnormal head size, 770–772
  acute ataxias of childhood, 777–783
  altered states of consciousness, 741–744
  ataxias of childhood, 777
  bacterial meningitis, 791–792
  benign acute childhood myositis (myalgia cruris epidemica), 807
  biliary tract disease in, 683–684, 685t–686t
  brain abscess, 792–793
  causes of coma in, 743t
  central nervous system degenerative disorders, 777
  cerebral palsy, 789–790
  cerebrovascular disease, 764–767
  chronic polyneuropathy, 810–811
  chronic renal failure in, 724–725
  Clostridium difficile infection in, 631–633
  congenital causes of chronic and episodic ataxias, 783
  congenital malformations of the nervous system, 767–770
  congenital syphilis
    differential diagnosis, 1284
    signs and symptoms, 1283
    treatment, 1285
  depression, 200–203
    clinical manifestations of, 200t
    general considerations, 200
    identification and diagnosis, 200–201
    prognosis, 203
    treatment, 201–202
  disorders of childhood affecting muscles, 799–807

drugs for treatment of hyperkalemia in, 707t
encephalopathy of human immunodeficiency virus infection, 793
extrapyramidal disorders, 786–789
general management of, with epilepsy, 755–756
headaches, 759–762
hypertension in, 725–727
infections and inflammatory disorders of the central nervous system, 790–791
intermittent/episodic ataxias, 783–784
multiple sclerosis, 795
myasthenic syndromes, 807–809
neurocutaneous dysplasias, 772–776
and response to death, 184
school avoidance in, 120
seizures and epilepsy in, 745–756
suicide and, 202–203, 206–208
Children's Interstitial Lung Disease (chILD) syndrome, 535–536
clinical findings, 535
complications, 536
differential diagnosis, 536
prognosis, 536
treatment, 536
Chlamydia, 436
Chlamydia pneumoniae, 491, 1329
Chlamydia trachomatis, 59, 436, 1328
Chlamydia trachomatis infection, 1332–1333, 1334t–1338t
clinical findings, 1333
complications, 1333
general considerations, 1332–1333
laboratory findings, 1333
symptoms and signs, 1333
treatment, 1333
Chlamydophila infections, 1279–1281
clinical findings, 1280
complications, 1280
differential diagnosis, 1280
general considerations, 1279
imaging, 1280
laboratory findings, 1280
prevention, 1279
symptoms and signs, 1280
treatment, 1280–1281
Chlamydophila pneumoniae, 1279–1281
Chlamydophila psittaci, 1279–1280
Chlamydophila trachomatis, 1279, 1280
Chloride
absorption/metabolism, 286t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, 286t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
nutrient requirements, 306t
Chlorinated hydrocarbons
poisoning, treatment, 348
Chloroquine
for malaria, 1360, 1361t
Choanal atresia, 487
Choking, anticipatory guidance, 238
Cholecystokinin, 159
Choledochal cyst, 663
imaging studies, 663
prognosis, 663
symptoms and signs, 663
treatment, 663
Cholelithiasis, 683–684
complications, 684
differential diagnosis, 684
general considerations, 683
history, 684
imaging, 684
laboratory findings, 684
prognosis, 684
symptoms and signs, 684
treatment, 684
Cholera, 1262–1263
asymptomatic infection, 1262
chemoprophylaxis, 1263
clinical findings, 1262–1263
general considerations, 1262
laboratory findings, 1263
prevention, 1263
prognosis, 1263
symptoms and signs, 1261
toxin, 1262
treatment, 1263
vaccination, travel-related, 1357
Cholesteatoma, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478, 478f
Cholesterol synthesis disorders, 1076–1077
Choline
cow milk composition, 295t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Chondroblastoma, 837
Chorionic villus sampling (placental), in perinatal genetics, 1112
Chorioretinitis, 15, 1283
Christmas disease, 927
Chromosomal disorders, 1095–1099
clinical, molecular biology in, 1085–1086
Klinefelter syndrome, 1097
sex chromosome abnormalities, 1093–1097
trisomy 18 syndrome, 1095
trisomy 21 syndrome (Down syndrome), 1095
Turner syndrome, 1096–1097
XXX syndrome, 1097
XYY syndrome, 1097
Chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA), 1081
Chromosomal number, abnormalities, 1081–1085, 1095–1099
Chromosomal structure, abnormalities, 1082, 1083f, 1097
Chromosome, 1080, 1081f
abnormalities, 1081–1085, 1083f, 1084f, 1097
cancer-related, 1085
chromosomal number-related, 1095–1099
deletion, 1082, 1083f
duplication, 1082, 1083f
insertion, 1082, 1083f
inversion, 1082, 1083f
mosaicism, 1082–1083
ring chromosome, 1082, 1083f
sex-related, 1082
structure-related, 1082, 1083f, 1097
translocation, 1082, 1083f
uniparental disomy, 1083–1085, 1084f
chromosomal number-related, 1082
deletion disorders, 1097–1098
disorders, 1095–1099
nomenclature, 1081
preparation and analysis, 1080–1081
ring, 1082, 1083f
sex, abnormalities, 1082
Chronic ataxias, congenital causes of, 783

Chronic autoimmune thyroiditis, 1019
Chronic cholestasis liver disease
treatment of complications of, 656t
Chronic diarrhea
allergic diarrhea, 638
antibiotic therapy, 638
causes of, 638–639
chronic nonspecific diarrhea, 638–639
diet and medications, 638
extraintestinal infections, 638
immunologic causes of, 639
malnutrition, 638
other causes of, 639
Chronic disease management, 241–242
Chronic draining otitis media, candidiasis and, 1318
Chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), 916t, 1001–1002
clinical findings, 1001–1002
differential diagnosis, 1002
general considerations, 1001
laboratory findings, 1002
symptoms and signs, 1001
treatment, 1002
Chronic illnesses, 183
coping patterns, 184–185
living with illness, psychosocial impact of, 183
mental illness and, reactions to, 183
reactions to physical and mental illness, 183
Chronic inflammation
anemia of, 899
Chronic lung disease
defined, 43
in preterm infants, 43
general considerations, 43
treatment, 43
Chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis, 1019
Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis, 1004
Chronic myelogenous leukemia, 951–952
clinical findings, 951–952
general considerations, 951
treatment and prognosis, 952
Chronic osteomyelitis, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
Chronic pain management, 979–981
addiction, 981
assessment, 979
dependence, 981
tolerance, 980–981
treatment, 979–981
withdrawal symptoms, 981
Chronic pancreatitis
clinical findings, 693
history, 693
imaging, 693
laboratory findings, 693
symptoms and signs, 693
complications, 693
differential diagnosis, 693
prognosis, 693
treatment, 693
Chronic polyneuropathy, 810–811
clinical findings, 811
general considerations, 810–811
treatment and prognosis, 811
Chronic renal failure, 724–725
anemia of, 899–900
complications, 724
treatment, 724–725
dialysis and transplantation, 725
management of complications, 724–725
Chronic rhinosinusitis (CRS), 486–487
medical therapy, 486
surgical therapy, 486–487
Chronic suppurative otitis media, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478–479
Chylothorax, 542–543
Ciprofloxacin, 1168
for cholera, 1263
for traveler's diarrhea in children, 1359
Circadian rhythm-daily sleep-wake cycle, 85
Circulation
resuscitation, 312–313
trauma patients and, 317
Circumcision, in newborns, 17–18
contraindication, 18
medical benefits, 17
risks, 18
Cirrhosis, 681
clinical findings, 679–680
history, 679
imaging, 680
laboratory findings, 680
pathologic findings, 680
symptoms and signs, 680
complications, 680
differential diagnosis, 680
general considerations, 679
prognosis, 680
treatment, 680
CISA. See Clinical Immunization Safety Assessment (CISA) system
Clarithromycin, 1167
for pertussis, 1271
Classic Bartter syndrome, 730
Classic chondrodystrophy, 826
Class switching defects, 997
Clavicle fractures, 831, 859–860
Cleft lip, 499, 1106–1107
examination in newborns and infants, 464–465, 464f, 465f
nonsyndromic, empiric risks, 1090t
Cleft palate, 499, 1106–1107
examination in newborns and infants, 464–465, 464f, 465f
nonsyndromic, empiric risks, 1090t
Clindamycin, 1152t
for group A streptococcal infections, 1229
Clinical heterogeneity, defined, 1087
Clinical Immunization Safety Assessment (CISA) system, 250
Clonidine, for PTSD, 196
Closed-loop systems, 1052
Clostridium botulinum, 1247
Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea, 612
Clostridium difficile-associated pseudomembranes, 632, 632f
Clostridium difficile infection in children, 631–633
Clostridium tetani, 260, 1249
Clotrimazole troches, 1319
Cloudy cornea, 444
Clubbing of the fingers and toes, 553
Clubfoot, 816–817
empiric risks, 1090t
CMA (chromosomal microarray analysis), 1081

CMS. See Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS)
CMV. See Continuous mandatory ventilation (CMV)
Coagulase-negative staphylococcal infections, 1239, 1241
Coagulation activation, anticoagulant therapy for, 930
Coarctation of aorta, 571–572
Coated tongue, 498
Cobalamin
  biologic role, 292t
  deficiencies
    causes, 293t
    clinical features, 294t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  dietary sources of, 293t
Cocaine
  poisoning, treatment, 343–344
  during pregnancy, effects on infants, 31
Coccidioides, 1316, 1321
Coccidioidomycosis
  chronic pulmonary disease, 1321
  complications, 1322
  differential diagnosis, 1322
  disseminated disease, 1321
  general considerations, 1321
  imaging, 1322
  laboratory findings, 1321–1322
  primary disease, 1321
  skin disease, 1321
Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT), for depression, 201
Cognitive deficits, brain injury related, 874
Cognitive delay, 750
Colic, 82–83
Colicky infant, 82–83
Collaborative care, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Collagen disorders, 932
Co-location models, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Colon disorders, 628–633
  anal fissure, 630–631
  Clostridium difficile infection in children, 631–633
    clinical findings, 632
    pathogenesis, 632
    treatment, 632–633
congenital aganglionic megacolon (Hirschsprung disease), 628–629
  clinical findings, 628
  differential diagnosis, 628–629
  general considerations, 628
  prognosis, 629
  treatment, 629
congenital anorectal anomalies, 631
  anal stenosis, 631
  anterior displacement of the anus, 631
  imperforate anus, 631
constipation, 629–630
  causes of, 630t
  clinical findings, 629
  differential diagnosis, 629
  treatment, 629
Colorado tick fever, insects spreading, 1199t, 1202
Color Doppler ultrasound, for epididymitis, 1342
Coltivirus, insects spreading, 1199t, 1200t
Coma
  causes of, in childhood, 743t
  gradation of, 741t
Combined immunodeficiency syndromes, 995
Combined oral contraceptive (COC) pills, 138
  contraindications, 136, 137t
  estrogenic, progestogenic, and combined effects, 139t
  noncontraceptive health benefits, 138t
  progestin-only pills (POP) vs., 139
Commitment, civil, 176–177
Common cold, viruses causing, 1170–1172, 1173t–1174t
Common foot problems, 816–818
Common moles, 401
Common skin tumors, 413–414
  epidermoid cysts, 413
  granuloma annulare, 413
  keloids, 414
  pilomatricomas, 413
  pyogenic granuloma, 413–414
Common variable immunodeficiency (CVID), 995, 998
  defined, 995, 997
Communication, 8–9
Communication disorders, brain injury related, 874
Community-acquired bacterial pneumonia, 526–527
  clinical findings, 526–527
  complications, 527
  differential diagnosis, 527
  prognosis, 527
  treatment, 527
Community pediatrics, 244–245
Comorbidity, substance abuse and, 153, 153t
Compensated shock, 313, 374t, 375
Complementary and alternative (CAM), for autism, 96
Complementary and alternative modalities (CAM), 982–984
Complementary feeding, 293–294
Complement component deficiencies, 1003
Complete atrioventricular block, 608–609, 608f, 609f
Complex regional pain syndrome, 889
Compound heterozygosity, defined, 1087
Computed tomography (CT), 369, 737–740
Computed tomography angiography (CTA), approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
Concussion, 856–857
Condoms
  female, 135t, 138
  male, 135t, 137
  STI prevention, 1331
  use among adolescent, 1330
Conduct disorders, 208–210
  aggression, 209
  general considerations, 208
  identification and diagnosis, 208–209
  oppositional defiant disorder, 208
  prognosis, 210
  threats and warning signs, 209–210
  treatment, 210
Conducting airways, disorders of, 508–509, 509t

Conductive hearing loss, 481
Condylomata acuminata, 1348–1349
Confined placental mosaicism, 1112
Congenital adrenal hyperplasias, 1039–1041
clinical findings, 1040
course and prognosis, 1040–1041
general considerations, 1039–1040
imaging, 1040
laboratory findings, 1040
treatment, 1040
Congenital aganglionic megacolon. See also Hirschsprung disease
clinical findings, 628
imaging, 628
laboratory findings, 628
special examinations, 628
symptoms and signs, 628
differential diagnosis, 628–629
general considerations, 628
treatment and prognosis, 629
Congenital amputations, 815–816
clinical findings, 815
treatment, 815–816
Congenital anorectal anomalies
anal stenosis, 631
anterior displacement of the anus, 631
imperforate anus, 631
Congenital asplenia, 935
Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation, 523–524
clinical findings, 524
treatment, 524
Con-genital cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection, 482
Congenital dacryocystocele, 434–435, 434f
clinical findings, 434
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 434
prevention, 434
prognosis, 435
treatment, 435
Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH), 620–621
Congenital dislocated hip, empiric risks, 1090t
Congenital disorders, 1076
empiric risks, 1090t
of extrathoracic airway, 509–510
Congenital duodenal obstruction
clinical findings, 621
annular pancreas, 621
duodenal atresia, 621
duodenal stenosis, 621
general considerations, 621
imaging studies, 621
treatment and prognosis, 621–622
Congenital ear malformations, 480–481
Congenital erythrocytosis, 912
Congenital hearing loss, 481–482
Congenital heart disease
empiric risks, 1090t
genetic basis of, 562
quality improvement in, 586–587
Congenital hemolytic anemias, 900–910
hemoglobinopathies, 901–908
red cell membrane defects, 900–901
red cell metabolism disorders, 908–910
Congenital hepatic fibrosis, 681
Congenital hypoplastic anemia, 896
Congenital hypothyroidism, 664
Congenital infections
causes, viral, 1171t
in newborn, 60–63
congenital syphilis, 61
cytomegalovirus (CMV), 60
parvovirus B19, 61
rubella, 60
toxoplasmosis, 60–61
varicella, 60
Congenital lobar emphysema, 522–523
clinical findings, 523
differential diagnosis, 523
treatment, 523
Congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries (ccTGA), 583
Congenital malformations, lung parenchyma, 521–524
Congenital malformations of the nervous system, 767–770
abnormalities of neural tube closure, 767
diagnosis and prevention, 767
agenesis of the corpus callosum, 769
disorders of cerebellum development, 769
Arnold-Chiari malformations, 769
Dandy-Walker Syndrome, 769
disorders of cortical development, 767–769
clinical findings, 768
differential diagnosis, 768
pathogenesis, 768
treatment, 769
hydrocephalus, 769–770
Congenital melanocytic nevi, 401
Congenital mitral stenosis, 574
Congenital myasthenic syndromes, 807
Congenital nephrosis, 718
Congenital oral malformations, 498–499
cleft lip, 499
cleft palate, 499
tongue-tie (ankyloglossia), 498–499
torus palatini, 499
Congenital pneumonia, respiratory distress in newborn due to, 29
Congenital pulmonary lymphangiectasia, 540
Congenital syphilis
in children, 1283, 1284
differential diagnosis, 1284
late, 1282
in newborns, 1283, 1284
symptoms and signs, 1283
transplacental infection, 1282
treatment, 1284–1285
follow-up for, 1285
initial evaluation and, 1284–1285
in young infants, 1283, 1284
Congenital toxoplasmosis, 1298–1299
Conjugated noncholestatic hyperbilirubinemia, 665–666
Conjunctiva, 435–436
telangiectasias of, 1000
Conjunctivitis
allergic, 437–438, 438f
bacterial, 436–437
causes, viral, 1171t
gonorrheal, 1245
neonatal, 1280, 1281
in newborn, 59
viral, 437
Connective tissue birthmarks, 402–403

Consciousness
altered states of, 741–744
Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), 874
level of, assessment, in trauma survey, 316
Constipation, 163
causes of, 630t
clinical findings, 629
differential diagnosis, 629
retentive, 630t
treatment, 629
Constitutional aplastic anemia, 891–892
clinical findings, 892
complications, 892
differential diagnosis, 892
general considerations, 891
prognosis, 892
treatment, 892
Consultation, telephonic, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Consumptive coagulopathy, replacement therapy for, 929
Contiguous gene disorders, 1098–1099
Continuous mandatory ventilation (CMV), 365
Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), 363
nasal, in preterm infants
for apnea, 42
for chronic lung disease, 43
for hyaline membrane disease, 42–43
Continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT), 386–387
Continuous spontaneous ventilation (CSV), 365
Continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH), 386
Contraception/contraceptives, 135–144
abstinence, 135–136
barrier methods, 137–138
combined oral contraceptive (COC) pills, 138
contraindications, 136, 137t
estrogenic, progestogenic, and combined effects, 139t
noncontraceptive health benefits, 138t
condoms, 135t, 137–138
decision making, 135–136
diaphragms, 135t, 138
efficacy, 135t
emergency, 141, 141t
implants, 140–141
injectable hormonal, 139–140
intrauterine systems and devices, 140–141
intravaginal ring, 138, 139
long-acting reversible contraceptives (LARC), 140
mechanism of action, 136
medical considerations, 136–137
methods counseling, 136
monitoring guidelines, 137
oral contraceptive pills, 139
prescribing guidelines, 137
progestin-only pills (POP), 139
transdermal patch, 138
Contractility, 375
Controlled ventilation, 384
Contusions, 829
Conus medullaris syndrome, 877
Conventional mechanical ventilation, 364–368
extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, 367–368
high-frequency oscillatory ventilation, 367
indications, 364
mechanical ventilation modes, 364–365
setting and adjusting the ventilator, 365–366
supportive care of the mechanically ventilated patient, 366–367
troubleshooting, 367
Conversion disorder, adolescent, 114–115
Conversion reactions, in adolescents, 114–115
Cooing, 74
Copper
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency and treatment, 288t
dietary reference intakes, 287t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Cord blood collection at birth, 16
Cornea disorders
cloudy cornea, 444
corneal ulcers, 445, 445f
viral keratitis, 444–445
Corneal abrasion, 425
clinical findings, 425
complications, 425
differential diagnosis, 425
pathogenesis, 425
prevention, 425
prognosis, 425
treatment, 425
Corneal ulcers, 445, 445f
Cornelia de Lange syndrome, 1101
Coronary artery abnormalities, 576
Cortical development disorders, 767–769
Corticosteroids, 588, 754
adrenocortical insufficiency, 1038
in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1134
in anaphylaxis management, 1143
in angioedema management, 1140
in atopic dermatitis management, 1137
for cysticercosis, 1313
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 920
inhaled, in asthma management, 1126t
in intraventricular hemorrhage prevention, in preterm infants, 46
in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 885
for pertussis, 1271
for tuberculosis, 1276
in urticaria management, 1140
Cor triatriatum, 574–575
Corynebacterium diphtheriae, 260
Cosmetics and related products poisoning, treatment, 344, 344t
Cough, parasitic infections and, 1292t
Counseling, genetic, trisomies-related, 1096
Counseling, to adolescents
academic failure, 121
contraception, 135, 136
pelvic examination, 125
pregnancy testing, 142–143
CPAP. See Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)
CPP. See Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP)
Cranial nerve injuries, 875

Craniofacial anomalies, 453–454
Craniosynostoses syndromes, 1101
Craniosynostosis, 770
  clinical findings, 770
  differential diagnosis, 770
  treatment, 770
Craniosynostosis, in newborn, 14
Creatine, 149
Creatine synthesis disorders, 1078
Creatinine, in newborn
  as glomerular filtration rate marker, 65
  values of, 66t
Cricoid pressure, 312
Cricopharyngeal achalasia, 614
Cri du chat syndrome, 1098
Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 665
Crigler-Najjar syndrome type I and type II, 22
Critical care
  cardiovascular, 374–380
    sepsis, 377–380, 377t, 378t
    shock, 374–377
      categories of, 374t
      laboratory studies in case of, 376t
      monitoring, 376–377
      pathogenesis, 374–376
  neurocritical care, 381–395
    acute kidney injury and renal replacement therapy, 385–387
    clinical findings, 386
    definitions, 385–386, 386t
    pathophysiology, 386
    treatment, 386–387
bereavement and grief support, 395
brain death, 393–394, 394t
death in the PICU, 393
fluid management and nutritional support of the critically ill child, 387–389
  delivery of nutrition, 388–389
  fluid management, 387–388
  nutritional assessment, 388
  nutritional support, 388
hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy, 385
  clinical findings, 385
  prognosis, 385
  treatment, 385
limitation or withdrawal of medical care, 394–395
palliative care and bioethics consultation, 395
sedation and analgesia in the pediatric ICU, 389–393, 390t
tissue and organ donation, 395
traumatic brain injury, 381–385, 381t, 382t, 383f
  clinical findings, 382, 382t
  complications, 384
  inflicted traumatic brain injury, 385
  pathogenesis, 381–382, 381t
  prognosis, 384
  treatment, 383–384, 383t
respiratory, 360–368
  acute respiratory failure, 360–364, 361t
  blood gas analysis, 361–362
  clinical findings, 361
  noninvasive monitoring, 361–362
  pathogenesis, 360–361
  respiratory support modes, 362–364, 362t, 364t
  conventional mechanical ventilation, 364–368
  extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, 367–368
  high-frequency oscillatory ventilation, 367
  indications, 364
  mechanical ventilation modes, 364–365
  setting and adjusting the ventilator, 365–366
  supportive care of the mechanically ventilated patient, 366–367
  troubleshooting, 367
respiratory diseases in the pediatric ICU, 368–374
  acute respiratory distress syndrome, 368–371
  outcomes, 371
  presentation and pathophysiology, 368–371, 369t
  risk factors, 368t
  treatment, 370–371
  status asthmaticus, 371–374
    clinical findings, 372
    laboratory findings, 372
    pathogenesis, 371–372
    prognosis, 374
    treatment, 372–374
Critically ill patient
  children as, 308
  infants as, 308
  nutritional support of, 387–389
    delivery of nutrition, 388–389
    fluid management, 387–388
    nutritional assessment, 388
    nutritional support, 388
Crohn colitis, 650f
Crossing the Quality Chasm (IOM), 1
Croup, 1178
Croup syndromes, 511–513
  bacterial tracheitis, 512–513
  epiglottitis, 512
  viral croup, 511–512
CRRT. See Continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT)
Cryoprecipitate, 380, 944
Cryptococcosis, 1323–1324
  complications, 1323
  differential diagnosis, 1323
  imaging, 1323
  laboratory findings, 1323
  meningitis, 1323
  prognosis, 1324
  pulmonary infection, 1323
  symptoms and signs, 1323
  treatment, 1323–1324
Cryptococcus neoformans, 1323
Cryptorchidism, 1035–1036
  clinical findings, 1036
  differential diagnosis, 1036
  treatment, 1036
Cryptosporidiosis
  clinical findings, 1303–1304
  described, 1303
  laboratory findings, 1304
  prevention, 1304
  symptoms and signs, 1303–1304
  treatment, 1304
Cryptosporidium spp, 639, 1303–1304
CSV. See Continuous spontaneous ventilation (CSV)
CT. See Computed tomography (CT)
Culex mosquito, 1356
Cutaneous infections/disorders, 1186

CVID. See Common variable immunodeficiency (CVID)
CVVH. See Continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH)
Cyanosis
  of extremities, 553
  in newborns, 13, 14
Cyanotic heart disease
  alterations in pulmonary blood flow in, 556t
  of newborns, 50–51
    causes, 50
    clinical findings, 50
    treatment, 50–51
Cycle variable, 364
Cyclic antidepressants
  poisoning, treatment, 344
Cyclic vomiting syndrome, 643
  clinical findings, 643
  differential diagnosis, 643
  treatment, 643
Cyclospora cayetanensis, 1304
Cyclospora spp, 1304
Cyclosporiasis, 1304
Cysticercosis, 1312–1313
Cystic fibrosis (CF), 517–518, 1101–1102
  clinical findings, 517–518
  gastrointestinal manifestations of, 693–696, 694t–696t
  hepatobiliary manifestations of, 693–696, 694t–696t
  pathogenesis, 517
  prognosis, 518
  treatment, 518
Cystic fibrosis, Pseudomonas infections and, 1256
Cystinosis, 729–730
Cystinuria, 731
Cytogenetics, 1080–1085, 1081f, 1083f, 1084f
  chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA), 1081
  chromosomes, 1080, 1081f
    nomenclature, 1081
    preparation and analysis, 1080–1081, 1081f
Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection, 598, 1192–1195
  in newborn, 60
  perinatal, 1193–1194
  in utero, 1192–1193
Cytotoxic edema, 382

D
Dacryocystitis, 435
  clinical findings, 435, 435f
  complications, 435
  differential diagnosis, 435
  pathogenesis, 435
  prevention, 435
  treatment, 435
Damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), 377
Dandruff, 412
Dandy-Walker syndrome, 769
Dangerous behavior, 210
Daptomycin, 1169
Darunavir, 1221t
Day care attendance, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
DCDD. See Donation after Circulatory Determination of Death (DCDD)
DDH. See Developmental dysplasia of hip joint (DDH)
Death, children response to, 184
Decompensated shock, 313
Decongestants, in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1134
Deep or extensive partial-thickness burns, 323–324
Deep vein thrombosis, 878
Definitive therapy, of poisoning, 335–336
  enhancement of excretion, 335–336
    dialysis, 336
    urinary alkalinization, 336
  prevention of absorption, 335
    catharsis, 335
    charcoal, 335
    emesis and lavage, 335
    whole gut lavage, 335
Deformation, defined, 1093
Dehydration, 702–704, 703t
  clinical manifestations of, 703t
  estimated water and electrolyte deficits in, 704t
Delavirdine, 1221t
Delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction, 943t
Delayed puberty, causes of, 1033t
  in female
    clinical evaluation, 1034
    treatment, 1034
  in male
    clinical evaluation, 1035
    treatment, 1035
Delayed teeth eruption, 466
Deletion, chromosomal, 1082, 1083f
Deletion 1p36 syndrome, 1098
Deletion 22q11 syndrome, 1098
Deletion disorders, chromosomal, 1097–1098
Delirium, 392–393
Delivery room examination of newborn infants. See Birth, infant evaluation at
Demineralization, of enamel, 461
Dengue
  clinical findings, 1201
  complications, 1201
  differential diagnosis, 1201
  in endemic areas, 1201
  insects spreading, 1198t
  laboratory findings, 1201
  prevalence, 1201
  prevention, 1201
  in returned traveler, 1364t
  symptoms and signs, 1201
  treatment, 1202
Dental caries, 460–463
  adjunctive measures, 462
  caries prevention, 461–462
  clinical findings, 461
  early childhood caries, 462–463
  fluorides, 462
  lifestyle changes and, 462
  pathogenesis, 460–461, 461f
  preventive dental treatment, 463
  treatment, 461
Dental emergencies, 467–468, 467f
  orofacial trauma, 467, 467f
  other, 468
  permanent teeth, 468
  primary teeth, 467–468, 467f
Dental plaque, 461
Dentistry
  antibiotics in pediatric, 468
  orthodontic referral, 469
  special patient populations, 468–469
Deodorizers, poisoning, treatment, 345–346
DepoProvera, 139–140

Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), 130, 139–140
Depressants, 354
Depression
in adolescents, 116–117
behavioral manifestations, 116, 116t
clinical findings, 116
clinical manifestations of, 200t
differential diagnosis, 116
symptoms, 116
treatment, 116–117
in children, 84
food refusal and, 84
narcotic, resuscitation following, 38
prognosis, 203
treatment, 201
bupropion, 202
medications, 201–202
mirtazapine, 202
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 201–202
serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), 202
tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), 202, 202t
Dermatitis, 410–413
allergic eczematous contact dermatitis, 412
atopic, 410–411, 1135–1139
dandruff, 412
diaper
candidiasis, 1318
dry skin dermatitis, 413
keratosis pilaris, 413
nummular eczema, 412
pityriasis alba, 413
primary irritant contact dermatitis, 412
seborrheic dermatitis, 412
Dermatomyositis, 887–888
clinical findings, 887
prognosis, 888
treatment, 887–888
Dermatophyte infections, 407–408, 407t
Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP), for enuresis, 81
Development
concerns related to, 82–89. See also Developmental concerns
encopresis, 81–82
enuresis, 80–81
normal, 71–79
ages 2-4 years, 72t–73t, 78
ages 5-7 years, 73t, 78–79
ages 7-11 years, 73t–74t, 79
assessment, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f
behavioral, 74–78
communication, 74, 76f
developmental charts, 72t–74t
first 2 years, 71, 72t, 74–78, 75t, 76f, 77f
language, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f, 78
variations, 79–80
well-child surveillance and screening, 89–99
Developmental charts, 72t–74t
Developmental concerns, 82–89
breath-holding spells, 88–89
colic, 82–83
feeding disorders, 83–84
sleep disorders, 85–87
temper tantrums, 88
Developmental delay, 228
Developmental delays, evaluation, 1110–1111, 1110t
Developmental disabilities
genetic evaluation, 1110–1111, 1110t
Developmental disorders, 89–91. See also Well-child surveillance and screening
ADHD. See Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
assessment
behavior and emotions signs and symptoms, 176
emergent situations requiring, 176–177
findings, interpretation, 181–182
during health maintenance visits, 174–182
history of presenting problem, 177
interview in, techniques, 177–179
mental status examination (MSE), 179–180, 180t
prevention, early identification and, 173
targeted screening tools, 179
consultation-liaison psychiatry in, 182
detection, in mental health screening in office setting, tools, 175–176
diagnostic criteria for, 90
evaluation, 90
medical and neurodevelopmental examination, 90–91
Developmental dysplasia of hip joint (DDH), 819–820
clinical findings, 819–820
imaging studies, 820
symptoms and signs, 819–820
treatment, 820
Developmental surveillance, 228
Dexamethasone
for cysticercosis, 1313
for Hib meningitis, 1269
Dexmedetomidine, 391
for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Dextroamphetamine, for ADHD, 91, 92–93
Dextrocardia, 555–556
Dextrose, 303–304
Diabetes insipidus, 1016–1017
Diabetes mellitus, 1045–1053
differential diagnosis, 1046
general considerations, 1045
long-term complications, 1048–1049
hypertension, 1048
lipid abnormalities, 1048–1049
nephropathy, 1049
retinopathy, 1049
monogenic forms of, 1045
pathogenesis, 1045–1046
prognosis of, 1053
type 1
clinical findings, 1046
complications
diabetic ketosis (DKA), 1047
general considerations, 1045
management, 1048t, 1049–1053
diet, 1052
exercise, 1052
home blood glucose measurements, 1049–1050, 1050t
insulin, 1050–1052, 1051t
patient and family education, 1049
sick day, 1052
pathogenesis, 1045–1046
prevention, 1046

type 2
clinical findings, 1046
diet, 1052
exercise, 1052
general considerations, 1045
management, 1053
home blood glucose measurements, 1049–1050, 1050t
psychological care, 1052–1053
pathogenesis, 1046
prevention, 1046
Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), 1047
Diabetic retinopathy, 449–450
Diagnosis, and substance abuse, 152–153, 153t
Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5), 160, 185
on encopresis, 81
Dialysis
acute, 723
complications of, 723–724
methods of, 723
and transplantation, 725
Diamond-Blackfan anemia, 896
Diaper dermatitis, candidiasis and, 1318
Diaphragmatic hernia in newborn, 54–55
Diaphragms, 135t, 138
Diarrhea, 1175
acute
other viral infections causing, 637
rotavirus infection, 636–637
chronic
allergic diarrhea, 638
antibiotic therapy, 638
causes of, 638–639
chronic nonspecific diarrhea, 638–639
diet and medications, 638
extraintestinal infections, 638
immunologic causes of, 639
malnutrition, 638
other causes of, 639
cryptosporidia and, 1303
parasitic infection, 1292t
parasitic infections and, 1292t
traveler's, 1358–1359, 1358t
chemoprophylaxis, 1358–1359, 1359t
prevention, 1358
treatment, 1358–1359
Diazepam, 391
for pain and anxiety control, 390t
DIC. See Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
Dichorial twins, 33–34
Didanosine, 1221t
Diet
in diabetes management
type 1, 1052
type 2, 1052
Dietary Reference Intakes, 284
DiGeorge syndrome, 562, 999
Digitalis, 562
poisoning, 562
treatment, 345
Dihydropteridine reductase deficiency, 1063
Dihydrorhodamine (DHR) flow cytometry assay, 990
Dilated cardiomyopathy, 592–593
clinical findings, 592–593
treatment and prognosis, 593
Dilutional coagulopathy, 943t
Dinitrophenol, poisoning, treatment, 351
Diphenoxylate with atropine (Lomotil)
poisoning, treatment, 345
Diphtheria, 1252–1253
clinical findings, 1252
complications, 1253
myocarditis, 1253
polyneuritis, 1253
laboratory findings, 1252
pharyngeal, 1252
prevention, 1253
care of exposed susceptibles, 1253
immunization, 1253
prognosis, 1253
symptoms and signs, 1252
treatment, 1253
Diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccination, 260–262
administration schedule, 261
adverse effects, 261
antibody preparations
diphtheria, 261
tetanus, 261–262, 262t
contraindications, 261
dosage, 261
precautions, 261
travel-related, 1354, 1354t
vaccines available, 260–261
Direct current cardioversion, 605
Disability, developmental, genetic evaluation, 1110–1111, 1110t
Disability-neurologic deficit, 317, 318t
Discharge, 418
Disease-modifying agents
in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 884–885
Disinfectants, poisoning, treatment, 345–346
Disk herniation, 859
Diskitis, 834
Disk-shaped "button" batteries
poisoning, treatment, 346
Dislocatable hip, 819
Dislocated hip, 819
Dislocated lenses, 446–447
Dislocation
hip
congenital, empiric risks, 1090t
Disorders of sex development (DSD), 1029
Disorder-specific screening tools, 179
Disruption, defined, 1093
Disruptive mood dysregulation disorder (DMDD), 205–206
differential diagnosis, 206
general considerations, 206
identification and diagnosis, 206
treatment, 206
Disseminated candidiasis, 1319
Disseminated eczema herpeticum, treatment, 1138
Disseminated gonorrhea, 1246–1247
Disseminated infection, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 929–930
Distal interphalangeal injury, 863–864
Distal phalanx injury, 863
Distal renal tubular acidosis, 728
Distal urinary tract anomalies, 715–716
obstructive uropathy, 715
reflux nephropathy, 715–716

Distributive shock, 314
Diuretics, 379, 386, 562
  ambulatory treatment, 728t
DKA (diabetic ketoacidosis), 1047
DMAIC, 7
DMD (Duchenne muscular dystrophy), 1103
DNA sequencing, 1085
Dobutamine, 379, 561
  in patient with shock, 380t
Dog bites, 328–329
  clinical findings, 329
  complications, 329
  prevention, 328–329
  treatment, 329
Dominant, defined, 1086
Donation after Circulatory Determination of Death (DCDD), 395
Donovanosis, 1348
Dopamine, 379, 561
  in patient with shock, 380t
Doppler flow studies of kidney in newborn, 67
Doppler ultrasound, 556
Dorsiflexion, disorder, 817f
Double-outlet right ventricle, 584
Down syndrome, 621, 1095
Down syndrome, cardiac defects, 551t
Doxepin
  in angioedema management, 1140
  in urticaria management, 1140
Doxycycline, 1287
  for Chlamydophila pneumonia, 1281
  for Legionella infection, 1279
  for Lyme disease, 1290
  for malaria, 1360, 1361t
  for plague, 1267
  for psittacosis, 1280
Driving, management of the child with epilepsy and, 755–756
Drospirenone, 138
Drowning, anticipatory guidance, 238
Drowning, defined, 327
Drug allergy, red rash in, 1173t
Drug Awareness and Resistance Education (DARE) program, 157
Drug Enforcement Agency, 149
Drug eruptions, 416, 416t
Drug-induced hyperbilirubinemia, 665
Drug-induced liver disease
  diagnosis, 679
  general considerations, 679
  symptoms, 679
  treatment, 679
Drugs
  absorption, 331
  adverse reactions, 1143–1147
  blood levels, 332
  body burden of, 332
  half-life of, 331
Dry rice cereal, infant formula additives, 296t
Dry skin dermatitis, 413
DSD. See Disorders of sex development (DSD)
Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 665–666
Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), 1103
Ductal ectasia, 123. See also Nipple discharge
Duocal, infant formula additives, 296t
Duplication, chromosomal, 1082, 1083f
Dysentry, parasitic infections and, 1292t
Dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB), 132–133
  differential diagnosis of, 132t
  evaluation, 132
  management, 132–133, 133t
    progestin-only methods, 134t
Dyskinesia
  tardive, antipsychotics and, 214
  withdrawal, antipsychotics and, 214
Dyslexia, 458
Dyslipidemias, 596
Dysmenorrhea, 130–132, 131t
  NSAIDs, 130
  prevalence of, 130
  primary, 131t
  secondary, 131t
Dysmorphology, 1080–1113
  clinical, 1093–1095, 1094f
  evaluation of infant, 1093–1095, 1094f
  human embryology and, 1092, 1094f
  mechanical factors, 1093
  mechanisms, 1092–1093
    cellular interactions, 1092
    developmental biology, 1092
    environmental factors, 1092–1093
  prenatal screening, 1112
Dysphoria, 114
Dysplasia
  bronchopulmonary, 524–526
  defined, 1093
Dysreflexia, 878
Dystrophy
  muscular
    Becker, 801t, 1103
    congenital, 803t–804t
    Duchenne, 801t, 1103
    facioscapulohumeral, 802t
    limb-girdle, 801t
  myotonic, 804t–805t, 1104
Dysuria, parasitic infections and, 1292t

E

Ear, 470–483
  acute trauma to the middle ear, 480
  auricular hematoma, 480
  canal foreign body, 480
  cerumen impaction, 480
  congenital ear malformations, 480–481
  hearing loss, 481–483. See also Hearing loss
  infections
    acute otitis media, 471–477, 472f, 474f, 474t, 475t
    bullous myringitis, 471
    otitis externa, 470–471
    otitis media with effusion, 477–480, 478f
  of newborn, examination, 15
  pain in, air travel-related, 1352–1353
Ear, nose, and throat (ENT). See Ear; Nose; Throat
Early childhood caries (ECC), 462–463
Early Hearing Detection and Intervention (EDHI), 482
Early hospital discharge, of newborns, 17
  contraindications to, 19t

Early Language Milestone Scale-2, 74, 76f
Early satiety, 162
Early Start Denver Model (ESDM), 95
Early term infant, 49, 49f
Eastern equine encephalitis, insects spreading, 1199t
Eating disorders, 159–170
  anorexia nervosa, 160–161
    clinical findings, 161–162
      laboratory findings, 162, 162t
      symptoms and signs, 161–162
    complications, 162–164, 163t
      long-term, 163–164, 163t
      mortality, 163t, 164
      short-term, 162–163, 163t
    differential diagnosis, 162
    treatment, 164–166
      general approach, 164–165
      inpatient, 165–166
      outpatient, 166
      pharmacotherapy, 166
  avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder, 169–170
  binge-eating disorder (BED), 168–169
    clinical findings, 168–169
      laboratory findings, 169
      symptoms and signs, 168–169
    treatment, 169
  bulimia nervosa, 166–168
    clinical findings, 167–168
      laboratory findings, 167–168
      symptoms and signs, 167
    complications, 168
      mortality, 168
      short-term, 168
    diagnostic criteria for, 167t
    mortality, 168
    treatment, 168
  criteria for hospitalization of, 165t
  diagnostic criteria for, 161t
  etiology, 159–160
  incidence, 160
  predisposing factors and clinical profiles, 160
  prognosis, 169–170
  resources for practitioners and families, 169–170
Ebstein malformation of the tricuspid valve, 570
EBV (Epstein-Barr virus), 1196
Echinococcosis, 1313–1314
Echinococcus granulosus, 1313
Echinococcus multilocularis, 1313
Echocardiography, 556, 593
ECMO. See Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO)
Ecthyma, 406
Ectoparasitic infections, 1351
  treatment, 1338t
Ectopia lentis, 446–447
Ectopic atrial tachycardia
  lead II rhythm strip of, 605f
Ectopic pregnancy, in adolescents, 143–144
Ectopic teeth eruption, 466
Eczema. See Dermatitis
Eczema herpeticum, disseminated, treatment, 1138
Edema, 553
  pulmonary
    high-altitude, 1353
Edinburgh postnatal depression scale, 179
Edrophonium test, 808
Education
  family
    in diabetes management, type 1, 1049
    terminally ill child-related, 184
  management of the child with epilepsy and, 755
  patient
    in diabetes management, type 1, 1049
    terminally ill child-related, 184
EEG, neonatal seizures, 67
Efavirenz, 1221t
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 575, 1099
Ehrlichiosis
  human, 1210–1211
  red rash in, 1173t
Eikenella corrodens, 329–330
Eithererythromycin, for diphtheria, 1253
Elbow injuries, sports related, 861–863
  medial epicondyle apophysitis, 862
  osteochondritis dissecans, 863
  Panner disease, 862
  posterior elbow pain, 863
  ulnar collateral ligament tear, 862–863
Electrical burns, 324
Electrocardiogram, complexes and intervals of, 554f
Electrocardiographic interpretation, 553–555
  axis, 553
  PR interval, 554
  P wave, 553
  QRS complex, 554
  QT interval, 554
  rate, 553
  rhythm, 553
  ST segment, 554
  T wave, 554
Electrocardiography, 553–555, 593
  age-related variations, 553
  electrocardiographic interpretation, 553–555
    axis, 553
    PR interval, 554
    P wave, 553
    QRS complex, 554
    QT interval, 554
    rate, 553
    rhythm, 553
    ST segment, 554
    T wave, 554
Electroencephalography (EEG), 735–737, 750, 757
Electrolytes
  aldosterone, 700
  antidiuretic hormone, 699–700
  atrial natriuretic factor, 700
  regulation of, 699–700
  replacement, in diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) management, 1047
  requirements in preterm infants, 40
  thirst, 699
Electromyography (EMG), 737
Electrophysiologic studies, 799–800
Elemental formulas, 294
Embryology, dysmorphology and, 1092, 1094f
Embryopathy, retinoic acid, 1112
Emergency
  ABCs of resuscitation, 308–314, 309t, 310f–313f
  animal and human bites, 328–330

Emergency (Cont.):
burns, 322–324, 324f
critically ill child-related, 308
head injury, 320–322
lacerations, 328, 328t
metabolic, inborn errors of metabolism and, management, 1056
pediatric drugs, 314–315, 315t, 316t
submersion injuries, 327
trauma-related, 315–320
Emergency contraception (EC), 141, 141t
Emesis, in poisoning treatment, 335
Emotional abuse, 221
Emotional problems, impact, 171
Empiric therapy, for Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1258–1259
Empyema, 527–528
Emtricitabine, 1221t
Enamel, demineralization of, 461
Encephalitis, 791t, 1186
California, insects spreading, 1199t
insects spreading, 1197, 1198t
Japanese
insects spreading, 1198t
St. Louis, insects spreading, 1198t
treatment, 1188
West Nile virus, insects spreading, 1198t
Encephalofacial angiomatosis (Sturge-Weber disease), 775–776
clinical findings, 776
imaging and special tests, 776
symptoms and signs, 776
differential diagnosis, 776
management and treatment, 776
Encephalomyelopathy, Leigh subacute necrotizing, 1105–1106
Encephalopathy
acute bilirubin, 23
chronic bilirubin. See Kernicterus
in infants and children, inborn errors, 1055
Encephalopathy of human immunodeficiency virus infection, 793
Enchondroma, 837
Enclosed hemorrhage, neonatal jaundice, 22
Encopresis, 81–82
defined, 81
management of, 82
prevalence of, 81
types of, 81
Endemic typhus, 1212–1213
Endocarditis, staphylococcal, 1238–1239
Endocrine chemistry, reference intervals, 1378t–1380t
Endocrine disorders, 1007–1044
abnormalities in female pubertal development and ovarian function, 1031–1034
abnormalities in male pubertal development and testicular function, 1034–1036
adrenal cortex, 1036–1044
adrenal medulla pheochromocytoma, 1044
adrenocortical hyperfunction, 1041–1042
adrenocorticotropic hormone, 1042–1044
calcium metabolism-related, 1022–1028
congenital adrenal hyperplasias, 1039–1041
familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia, 1028
general concepts, 1007
glucocorticoids, 1042–1044
gonads (ovaries and testes), 1029–1031
hypercalcemic states, 1026–1028, 1027t
hypervitaminosis D, 1028
hypocalcemic disorders, 1022–1026
phosphorus metabolism-related, 1022–1028
posterior pituitary gland disorders, 1016–1017
primary hyperaldosteronism, 1042
thyroid gland, 1017–1022
End-of-life care, 981, 984
advance care planning in, 986–987
death concept, Children, 984, 985t
medical life support, withdrawal of, 984, 986
spiritual and cultural support, 984
Endoscopic sinus surgery, for recurrent rhinosinusitis, 487
Endotracheal intubation, 363, 364t
Endotracheal tube (ETT), emergency drugs given via, 315, 315t
End-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_{2)}$ monitoring, 361
Energy, nutritional requirements for, 281–282, 282t, 303
Energy metabolism, disorders, 1059–1061, 1059t
described, 1059–1060, 1059t
diagnosis, 1060
treatment, 1060–1061
Enfuvirtide, 1221t
Enhanced care models, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Entamoeba dispar, 1300–1301
Entamoeba histolytica, 639, 1300–1301
Entamoeba moshkovskii, 1300–1301
Entamoeba species, 1300–1301
Enteral nutrition, 301–302, 388
access devices, 301–302, 302t
indications, 301
monitoring, 302
Enteric infections, candidiasis and, 1318
Enteritis, 1342–1343
causes, viral, 1171t
treatment, 1335t
Enterobacteriaceae, infections due to, 1253–1255
clinical findings, 1254–1255
differential diagnosis, 1255
general considerations, 1254
laboratory findings, 1255
prognosis, 1255
symptoms and signs, 1254–1255
treatment, 1255
Enterobiasis (pinworms), 1306
Enterobius vermicularis, 1306
Enterococcal infections, 1233–1234
Enterococcus
ampicillin-resistant, infections with, 1233–1234
ampicillin-susceptible, infections with, 1233
vancomycin-resistant, infections with, 1233–1234

Enterococcus faecalis, 1233, 1234
Enterococcus faecium, 1233, 1234
Enterocolitis, necrotizing, in preterm infants, 44–45. See also Necrotizing enterocolitis, in preterm infants
Enterohemorrhagic E coli, 1255
Enteroinvasive E coli (EIEC), 1254
Enteropathogenic E coli (EPEC), 1254, 1255
Enteropathy, 1003
Enterotoxigenic E coli (ETEC), 1254, 1255
Enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC), 1358
Enterotoxin, 1238
Enterovirus, infections due to, 1181–1185
  acute febrile illness, 1181
  central nervous system (CNS), 1183–1185
  hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 1182–1183
  rashes, 1173t
  respiratory tract illnesses, 1181–1182
Enterovirus infections, in newborn, 62
Entry inhibitors, 1221t
Enuresis
  defined, 80
  monosymptomatic, 80
  nocturnal, 80–81
  treatment, 81
Environmental factors, dysmorphology-related, 1092–1093
Environmental hazards, and lung diseases, 508
Enzyme immunoassay (EIA), 531
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 1333
Enzyme uridyl diphosphoglucuronyl transferase, bilirubin and, 20
Eosinophilia, 918
  hematologic disorders, 917–918
  parasitic infections and, 1291, 1293t, 1294
Eosinophilic esophagitis
  clinical findings, 613
    laboratory findings, 613
    symptoms and signs, 613
  diagnosis, 613
  differential diagnosis, 613
  esophagitis associated with, 613f
  prognosis, 614
  treatment, 614
    differential diagnosis, 614
    imaging and manometry, 614
    symptoms and signs, 614
Epidemic cholera, 1262. See also Cholera
Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, 1175
Epidemic myalgia, 1182
Epidermal birthmarks, 402–403
Epidermoid cysts, 413
Epidermolysis bullosa, 403, 404t
Epidermophyton floccosum, 407
Epididymitis
  chlamydial infection and, 1333
  clinical findings, 1342
  complications, 1342
  differential diagnosis, 1342
  general considerations, 1342
  laboratory findings, 1342
  symptoms and signs, 1342
  treatment, 1336t, 1342
Epigenetic regulation, 1090–1091
Epiglottitis, 512
  clinical findings, 512
  Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections and, 1269
    differential diagnosis, 1268
  prognosis, 512
  treatment, 512
Epilepsy in childhood, 745–756, 746t–749t
clinical findings, 745–750
cognitive delay, 750
complications and sequelae, 750–752
diagnostic evaluation, 745–750
differential diagnosis, 750
electroencephalography, 750
injury and death, 752
psychosocial impact, 750
symptoms and signs, 745
treatment, 752–756
  alternative treatments, 754–755
  antiepileptic drug (AED) therapy, 752
  first aid, 752
  general management of the child with, 755–756
  long-term management and discontinuation of, 754
  surgery, 755
Epinephrine
  in anaphylaxis management, 1143
  in patient with shock, 380t
Epiphyseal fractures, 830–831
Episodic ataxias, congenital causes of, 783
Epistaxis, 488
Epithelial pearls, 15
Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 1196
Erythema chronicum migrans, Lyme disease and, 1289
Erythema infectiosum, 1202–1204
Erythema marginatum, 588
Erythema multiforme, 416
  red rash in, 1173t
Erythema toxicum, 400
Erythroblastosis fetalis, 21
Erythrocytes
  Howell-Jolly bodies in, 989
Erythromycin, 588, 1166
  for Lyme disease, 1290
  for pertussis, 1271
Escherichia coli, 633, 657
  enterohemorrhagic, 1255
  enteroinvasive, 1254
  enteropathogenic, 1254, 1255
  enterotoxigenic, 1254, 1255
  gastroenteritis, 1254
    treatment, 1255
  meningitis, 1254
    treatment, 1255
  sepsis, 1254
    treatment, 1255
  shigella-toxin, 1254, 1255
ESDM. See Early Start Denver Model (ESDM)
Esophageal atresia, in newborns, 52
  clinical findings, 52
  general considerations, 52
  prognosis, 52
  treatment, 52
Esophageal foreign bodies, 616
Esophageal varices, 642f
Esophagitis
  associated with eosinophilic esophagitis, 613f
  associated with gastro-esophageal reflux disease, 612f

Esophagus disorders, 611–617
caustic burns, 615–616
clinical findings, 615
prognosis, 615–616
treatment, 615–616
eosinophilic esophagitis, 613–615
clinical findings, 613
diagnosis, 613
differential diagnosis, 613
treatment, 614
treatment and prognosis, 614
foreign bodies in the alimentary tract, 616–617
gastroesophageal reflux and GERD, 611–613
clinical findings, 611–612
prognosis, 612–613
treatment, 612–613
Esotropia (crossed eyes), 456–457
Essential fatty acids (EFA), 283
Estrogen therapy, 1096
Ethambutol, for tuberculosis, 1276
Ethinyl estradiol, 138
Ethylene glycol, poisoning, treatment, 346–347
Etiology, of eating disorders, 159–160
Etomidate, controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
Etonogestrel implants, 140
Etravirine, 1221t
Eustachian tube dysfunction (ETD), 471
Evoked potentials, 737
Ewing sarcoma, 838, 966
Exanthem subitum, 1191–1192
Exchange transfusion, for indirect hyperbilirubinemia, 24–25
Excretion
poisoning prevention and, 335–336
toxicology and, 332
Exercise
in type 1 diabetes management, 1052
in type 2 diabetes management, 1052
Exercise-induced bronchospasm, management, 1128–1129
Exotropia (wall-eyed), 457–458, 457f
Expressivity, defined, 1087
Extensor tendon avulsion, 863–864
External drainage, for recurrent rhinosinusitis, 487
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), 367–368, 561
Extrahepatic bile ducts
spontaneous perforation of, 663
Extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis
biliary atresia, 661–663
clinical findings, 661–662
differential diagnosis, 662
general considerations, 661
prognosis, 662
treatment, 662
choledochal cyst, 663
clinical features, 663
prognosis, 663
treatment, 663
spontaneous perforation of the extrahepatic bile ducts, 663
Extrapyramidal crisis, 353
Extrapyramidal disorders, 786–789
paroxysmal dyskinesias/chronic dystonia, 788
Sydenham post-rheumatic chorea, 786
differential diagnosis, 786
laboratory findings and special tests, 786
prognosis, 786
symptoms and signs, 786
treatment, 786
Tics/Tourette syndrome, 786–788
differential diagnosis, 787
lab and neuroimaging, 787
prognosis, 788
symptoms and signs, 787
treatment, 787–788
tremor, 788–789
Wilson disease, 789
Extrathoracic airway
acquired disorders, 510–514
croup syndrome, 511–513
foreign body aspiration, 510–511
subglottic stenosis, 513–514
vocal cord paralysis, 513
congenital disorders, 509–510
obstruction, causes, 509–510
Extremities
evaluation
in trauma survey, 319
Eye
common nonspecific signs and symptoms, 418–419
discharge, 418
leukocoria, 418–419, 419f
pain and foreign body sensation, 418
photophobia, 418
red eye, 418
tearing, 418
conjunctiva, 435–439, 436f, 438f, 438t
conjunctivitis
allergic, 437–438, 438f
bacterial, 436–437
viral, 437
mucocutaneous diseases, 438–439
ophthalmia neonatorum, 436–437, 437f
cornea disorders
cloudy cornea, 444
corneal ulcers, 445
viral keratitis, 444–445
glaucoma, 441
iris disorders, 439–441
albinism, 440–441
aniridia, 440
iris coloboma, 439
lens disorders
cataracts, 446, 446f
dislocated lenses, 446–447
ectopia lentis, 446–447
nasolacrimal system disorders, 433–435
congenital dacryocystocele, 434–435, 434f
clinical findings, 434
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 434
prevention, 434
prognosis, 435
treatment, 435
dacryocystitis, 435
clinical findings, 435, 435f
complications, 435
differential diagnosis, 435
pathogenesis, 435
prevention, 435
treatment, 435
nasolacrimal duct obstruction, 433–434, 434f

clinical findings, 433–434, 434f
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 433
prevention, 433
prognosis, 434
treatment, 434
ocular manifestations of aids, 443–444
ocular structures disorders, 430–433
eyelid diseases, 430, 431f
eyelid infections, 431–432, 432f
eyelid ptosis, 432, 432f
clinical findings, 432
complications, 432
differential diagnosis, 432
pathogenesis, 432
prevention, 432
prognosis, 432
treatment, 432
eyelid tics, 433
Horner syndrome, 432–433, 433f
clinical findings, 433
complications, 433
differential diagnosis, 433
pathogenesis, 433
prevention, 433
prognosis, 433
treatment, 433
viral eyelid disease, 431
ocular trauma, 424–430
abusive head trauma and nonaccidental trauma, 429
clinical findings, 429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 429
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
blunt orbital trauma, 426–427
clinical findings, 426
complications
differential diagnosis, 426
pathogenesis, 426
prevention, 426
prognosis, 427
treatment, 426–427
burns, 427–428
clinical findings, 428
complications, 428
differential diagnosis, 428
pathogenesis, 427–428
prevention, 428
treatment, 428
corneal abrasion, 425
clinical findings, 425
complications, 425
differential diagnosis, 425
pathogenesis, 425
prevention, 425
prognosis, 425
treatment, 425
hyphema, 428–429, 428f
clinical findings, 428–429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 428
prevention, 428
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
intraocular foreign bodies and perforating ocular injuries, 425–426
clinical findings, 425–426, 426f
complications, 426
differential diagnosis, 426
pathogenesis, 425
prevention, 425
prognosis, 426
treatment, 426
lacerations
clinical findings, 427
complications, 427
differential diagnosis, 427
pathogenesis, 427
prevention, 427
prognosis, 427
treatment, 427
ocular foreign bodies, 424–425, 424f
clinical findings, 424
complications, 424
differential diagnosis, 424
prevention, 424
prognosis, 425
treatment, 424–425, 424f
prevention, 429–430
ophthalmic examination
alignment and motility evaluation, 422, 422f, 422t, 423f
external examination, 421
history, 420
ophthalmoscopic examination, 423
pupils, 421–422, 421f–422f
visual acuity, 420–421
optic nerve diseases, 450–453
optic atrophy, 452–453
optic nerve hypoplasia, 451
optic neuritis, 452
optic neuropathy, 450
papilledema, 451–452
orbit disorders, 453–458
amblyopia, 455–456
craniofacial anomalies, 453–454
dyslexia, 458
exotropia (wall-eyed), 457–458, 457f
nystagmus, 455
orbital tumors, 454, 454f
periorbital and orbital cellulitis, 453
strabismus, 456–457, 456f
unexplained decrease in vision, 458
refractive errors, 419–420
astigmatism, 419f, 420
hyperopia (farsightedness), 419f, 420
myopia (nearsightedness), 419, 419f
retina disorders
diabetic retinopathy, 449–450
retinal detachment, 449
retinal hemorrhages in the newborn, 447
retinoblastoma, 448–449
retinopathy of prematurity, 447–448, 448t
uveitis
anterior, 441–442
intermediate, 443
posterior, 442–443
Eyelid diseases, 430, 431f
Eyelid infections, 431–432, 432f
Eyelid ptosis, 432, 432f
clinical findings, 432
complications, 432
differential diagnosis, 432
pathogenesis, 432
prevention, 432
prognosis, 432
treatment, 432
Eyelid tics, 433
Eyes, of newborn, examination, 14–15

F
Fabry disease, clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Face, of newborn, examination, 14
Facial nerve palsy, 14
Facial nerve paralysis, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478
Facial weakness, 809–810
Factor V Leiden mutation, 933
Failure modes and effects analyses (FMEA), 8
Failure to thrive, 221–222
False negative (FN), 1370
False positive (FP), 1370
Familial benign hypercalcemia, 1028
Familial hypercalciuric hypocalcemia, 1023
familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 593–594
Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia, 1028
Familial macrocephaly, 772
Familial polycythemia, 912
Family education
  terminally ill child-related, 184
  in type 1 diabetes management, 1049
Family history, in genetics, 1092
Fantasy, in children, 78
Farber disease, 1073t
Fasciitis, necrotizing, group A streptococcal infections and, 1227
FASD. See Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASD)
FAST (focused assessment with sonography for trauma), 317
Fasting, ideal glucose levels after 2 or more hours of, 1049–1050, 1050t
Fat
  cow milk composition, 295t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Fat-soluble vitamins, 285, 287t, 291t–292t
Fatty acid oxidation disorders, 1069–1070
Febrile reactions, 943t
Febrile seizures, 756–758
  clinical findings, 756–757
  diagnostic evaluation, 757
  EEG, 757
  lumbar puncture, 757
  prognosis, 758
  symptoms and signs, 756–757
  treatment, 757–758
Feeding, newborns, 17, 18t
Feeding disorders, 83–84
Femoral anteversion, 819
Femoral neck fractures, 867
Fentanyl
  controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
  for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASD), 98–99
  evaluation, 99
  management, 99
Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS), 99
  cardiac defects, 551t
  diagnosis of, 99
  features of, 32, 32t
  perinatal genetics related to, 1111
  prevalence of, 32
Fetal blood, in perinatal genetics, 1112
Fetal imaging, in perinatal genetics, 1113
Fetal samples, analysis, in perinatal genetics, 1112
Fetal tissue, in perinatal genetics, 1112
Fever, 244–246
  causes, 244
    viral, 1171t
  clinical findings, 244–246
  Colorado tick fever, insects spreading, 1199t, 1202
  dengue, 1198t, 1201–1202. See also Dengue
  general considerations, 244
  pharyngoconjunctival, 1175
  Q, 1213
  in returned traveler, 1363–1366, 1363t–1365t
  rheumatic, 587–589
  scarlet
    staphylococcal, red rash in, 1174t
    streptococcal, red rash in, 1174t
  treatment, 246
Fever phobia, 246
Fibroadenomas, 121–122, 122t. See also Breast masses
Fibrocystic breast changes, 122, 122t. See also Breast masses
Fibromatosis colli, 494
Fibromyalgia, 890
Fibrous dysplasia, 838
Filamentous fungi, 1326, 1327t
Firearms, suicide and, 117
Fires and burn injuries, prevention anticipatory guidance, 238
First aid, 752
First aid kit for international travel, 1353, 1353t
First-degree atrioventricular block, 608, 608f, 609f
FISH (fluorescence in situ hybridization), 1080
Fissured tongue, 498
Fistula, tracheoesophageal, in newborns, 52
Fitness and conditioning, 840–841
Fixative vials, 1291
Flatfoot, 817
Flavivirus, insects spreading, 1198t
Floppy infant syndrome, 811–813
  clinical findings, 813
  differential diagnosis, 813
  laboratory findings, 813
  pathogenesis, 811
  signs and symptoms, 813
  treatment, 813
Fluconazole, 1320
Flucytosine, 1320
Fludrocortisone, 1038
Fluid
  requirements in preterm infants, 39–40
  restoration, in diabetic ketosis (DKA) management, 1047
Fluid, electrolyte, acid-base disorders and therapy
  acid-base balance, 700–701
  acid-base disturbances, 707–709
    metabolic acidosis, 707–708
    metabolic alkalosis, 708
    respiratory acidosis, 708
    respiratory alkalosis, 708–709
  fluid and electrolyte management, 701–707
    dehydration, 702–704
    hypernatremia, 705
    hyponatremia, 704–705
    potassium disorders, 706–707

regulation of body fluids, electrolytes, and tonicity, 699–700
Fluid and electrolyte management, 701–707
dehydration, 702–704
hypernatremia, 705
hyponatremia, 704–705
potassium disorders, 706–707
Fluid management, 370, 387–388, 387–389
delivery of nutrition, 388–389
fluid management, 387–388
nutritional assessment, 388
nutritional support, 388
Fluid restriction, 386
Fluid resuscitation, 379
Fluids, in anaphylaxis management, 1143
Flukes, 1312–1314. See also Cestode infections; specific infections
Flunitrazepam, poisoning, treatment, 347
Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), 1080
Fluorides
deficiency and treatment, 288t
in dental caries, 462
varnish, 463
Fluoroquinolone, 1155t, 1168–1169
for Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1258
Fluoxetine, poisoning, treatment, 356
FMEA. See Failure modes and effects analyses (FMEA)
Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), 719
FODMAPs (Fermentable, Oligo-, Di-, Mono-saccharides And Polyols) carbohydrates, 638
Folic acid
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
toxicity effect, 289t
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 109
Folliculitis, 406–407
Fontanelles, examination in newborn, 14
Food allergy, 1147–1148, 1147t
clinical findings, 1147–1148
differential diagnosis, 1148
general considerations, 1147
laboratory findings, 1147–1148
prognosis, 1148
symptoms and signs, 1147
treatment, 1148
Food-borne botulism, 1247–1248. See also Botulism
Food poisoning
staphylococcal
clinical findings, 1239
differential diagnosis, 1239
treatment, 1241
Foot and ankle injuries, sports related, 870–872
ankle sprain, 871
Plantar fasciitis, 872
Sever disease, 872
Foot injuries, sports related, 870–872
Foreign bodies
intraocular, 425–426, 426f
ocular, 424–425, 424f
Foreign bodies in the alimentary tract, 616–617
Foreign body aspiration
in extrathoracic airway, 510–511
clinical findings, 510
treatment, 510–511
in intrathoracic airway, 516
Formula additives, 296, 296t
special formulas, 296
Fosamprenavir, 1221t
Fractures, 830–832
clavicle, 831
epiphyseal separations, 830–831
general comments, 832
greenstick fractures, 831
supracondylar, of humerus, 831–832
torus fractures, 831
Fragile X syndrome, 98, 1105
genetic evaluation, 1111
Francisella tularensis, 436, 1264–1265. See also Tularemia
Free-living amoebas, 1304–1305
clinical findings, 1305
differential diagnosis, 1305
general considerations, 1304–1305
prevention, 1305
treatment, 1305
Freiberg disease, 835t
Frena, examination in newborns and infants, 464, 464f, 465f
Fresh frozen plasma (FFP), 380, 944
Friedreich ataxia, 784–785, 1104–1105
imaging, 784
laboratory testing, 784
treatment, 784–785
Fructose intolerance, hereditary, 1059
Full thickness burns, 323
Fulminant colitis, 1301
Functional antibody deficiency, 998
common variable immunodeficiency (CVID), 998
monogenetic causes of, 998
Functional ataxia, 783
Fungal cells, 1316
Fungal infections
opportunistic, 1326–1328, 1327t
unusual, 1326–1328, 1327t
Fungal infections of skin, 407–408
Fungal sepsis, in newborn, 59–60
Fungi, 1316
filamentous, 1326, 1327t
Furosemide, 562
Furry tongue, 498

G

G6PD deficiency, in neonatal jaundice, 21–22
Galactorrhea, 123–124
Galactosemia, 1058, 1058t
Galeazzi sign, 819
Gamekeeper's/skier's thumb, 864
Gamete
complementation, 1084f
normal, fertilization of, 1084f
Gametogenesis, normal, homologous chromosomes during, 1084f
Ganglion, 839
Gangliosidosis
G_{M1} gangliosidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1074t
G_{M2} gangliosidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1074t

Gardnerella vaginalis, 1343
Gas gangrene, 1251–1252
clinical findings, 1251
differential diagnosis, 1251
general considerations, 1251
imaging, 1251
laboratory findings, 1251
operative findings, 1251
prevention, 1251
prognosis, 1251–1252
symptoms and signs, 1251
treatment, 1251
Gastric and duodenal ulcer, 620f
clinical findings, 619–620
diagnostic studies, 619–620
symptoms and signs, 619
general considerations, 619
treatment, 620
Gastroenteritis
Campylobacter, 1258
E coli, 1254
treatment, 1255
Salmonella, 1257–1259
clinical findings, 1258
complications, 1258
differential diagnosis, 1258
general considerations, 1257–1258
laboratory findings, 1258
prevention, 1258
prognosis, 1259
symptoms and signs, 1258
treatment, 1258–1259
Gastroesophageal reflux (GER) and GERD
clinical findings, 611–612
diagnostic studies, 612
extraesophageal manifestations of reflux disease, 611–612
infants with gastroesophageal reflux, 611
older children with reflux, 611
esophagitis associated with, 612f
in newborn, 55–56
treatment and prognosis, 612–613
Gastrointestinal bleeding, 639–642, 640t
differential diagnosis of, 641t
history, 639–640
identification of sites of, 640t
imaging studies, 640
laboratory findings, 640
in newborn
lower, 55
upper, 55
physical examination, 640
treatment, 641–642
Gastrointestinal infections, protozoal, 1300–1305
amebiasis, 1300–1302
cryptosporidiosis, 1303–1304
cyclosporiasis, 1304
free-living amoebas, 1304–1305
giardiasis, 1302–1303
Gastrointestinal polyposis syndromes, 635t
Gastrointestinal symptoms and signs, 636–652
abdominal pain, 643–645
clinical findings, 644
differential diagnosis, 644
prognosis, 644–645
treatment, 644–645
acute abdomen, 645
acute diarrhea, 636–637
other viral infections causing, 637
rotavirus infection, 636–637
chronic diarrhea, 637–639
causes of, 638–639
allergic diarrhea, 638
antibiotic therapy, 638
chronic nonspecific diarrhea, 638–639
diet and medications, 638
extraintestinal infections, 638
malnutrition, 638
immunologic causes of, 639
other causes of, 639
gastrointestinal bleeding, 639–642, 640t
history, 639–640
imaging studies, 640
laboratory findings, 640
physical examination, 640
treatment, 641–642
inflammatory bowel disease, 649–652
clinical findings, 649
complications, 650
differential diagnosis, 649–650
general considerations, 649
quality improvement, 652
treatment, 650–652
malabsorption syndromes, 645–649
abetalipoproteinemia, 649
acrodermatitis enteropathica, 649
celiac disease (gluten enteropathy), 646–647
clinical findings, 645–646
cow's milk protein intolerance, 648
dietary fructose intolerance, 648
disaccharidase deficiency, 647
glucose-galactose malabsorption, 648
intestinal lymphangiectasia, 648
other genetic disorders causing, 649
pancreatic insufficiency, 649
protein-losing enteropathy, 646
treatment, 646
vomiting, 642–643
clinical findings, 643
cyclic vomiting syndrome, 643
clinical findings, 643
differential diagnosis, 643
treatment, 643
differential diagnosis, 643
treatment, 643
Gastrointestinal tract, 611–652
disorders of the colon, 628–633
anal fissure, 630–631
Clostridium difficile infection in children, 631–633
congenital aganglionic megacolon (Hirschsprung disease), 628–629
congenital anorectal anomalies, 631
constipation, 629–630
disorders of the esophagus, 611–617
caustic burns of the esophagus, 615–616
eosinophilic esophagitis, 613–615
foreign bodies in the alimentary tract, 616–617
gastroesophageal reflux and GERD, 611–613
disorders of the peritoneal cavity, 633–634
chylous ascites, 633–634
peritonitis, 633
disorders of the stomach and duodenum, 617–622
congenital diaphragmatic hernia, 620–621

congenital duodenal obstruction, 621–622
gastric and duodenal ulcer, 619–620
hiatal hernias, 617–618
pyloric stenosis, 618–619
duplications of, 627–628
gastrointestinal tumors and malignancies, 634–636
cancers of the esophagus, small bowel, and colon, 635–636
intestinal hemangiomas and vascular malformations, 636
juvenile polyps, 634–635
mesenteric and omental cysts, 636
major gastrointestinal symptoms and signs, 636–652
abdominal pain, 643–645
acute abdomen, 645
acute diarrhea, 636–637
chronic diarrhea, 637–639
gastrointestinal bleeding, 639–642
inflammatory bowel disease, 649–652
malabsorption syndromes, 645–649
vomiting, 642–643
small intestine, 622–628
acute appendicitis, 627
duplications of the gastrointestinal tract, 627–628
inguinal hernias, 625–626
intestinal atresia and stenosis, 622
intestinal malrotation, 622–623
intussusception, 624–625
Meckel diverticulum, 626
patent omphalomesenteric duct, 626
short bowel syndrome, 623–624
umbilical hernias, 626
surgical conditions in newborn, 52–56
Gastrointestinal tumors and malignancies, 634–636
cancers of the esophagus, small bowel, and colon, 635–636
intestinal hemangiomas and vascular malformations, 636
clinical presentation, 636
treatment, 636
juvenile polyps, 634–635
mesenteric and omental cysts, 636
Gastroschisis, in newborn, 54
Gaucher disease
clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
infantile, 779t
Gaussian distribution, 1368f
g-butyrolactone, poisoning, treatment, 347
GCS. See Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)
Gelfoam, 469
Gender expression, 114
Gender identity, 114
General chemistry, reference intervals, 1371t–1377t
Generalized anxiety disorder, 193–194
differential diagnosis, 193t
general considerations, 193
identification and diagnosis, 193–194
prognosis, 194
treatment, 194
Genetic anticipation, 1091
Genetic counseling
trisomies-related, 1096
Genetic disorders, contiguous, 1098–1099
Genetic heterogeneity, defined, 1087
Genetic predisposition, 160
Genetics, 1080–1113
chromosomal disorders, 1095–1099
common recognizable disorders with variable or unknown cause, 1108–1109
developmental disabilities, evaluation, 1110–1111, 1110t
diagnostic
foundations of, 1080–1085, 1081f, 1083f, 1084f
chromosomes, 1080, 1081f
molecular biology in, 1085–1086
molecular genetics, 1085–1086
family history, 1092
mendelian disorders, 1099–1103, 1102f
mendelian inheritance, 1086–1090, 1087f, 1088f
molecular, 1085–1086
multifactorial inheritance-related disorders, 1090, 1090t
nonmendelian disorders, 1104–1106
nonmendelian inheritance, 1090–1092
Genetic susceptibility, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
Genetic testing, 737
Children's Interstitial Lung Disease (chILD) syndrome, 535–536
Genital gonorrhea, uncomplicated, 1245, 1246
Genitalia of newborn, examination, 15
Genital infections, treatment, 1188
Genital ulcerations, 1344–1348
Genital warts, 1348–1349
Genitourinary system
evaluation
in trauma survey, 319
Genotype, defined, 1086
Gentamicin
for listeriosis, 1273
for plague, 1267
for Pseudomonas infections, 1257
Genu valgum, 818–820
Genu varum, 818–820
Geographic tongue, 498
Germinal matrix hemorrhage, in newborn, 68
Gestational age assessment of newborns, 10–13
AGA, 10, 13
Ballard score for, 10, 11t
birth weight and, 10, 12f, 13
LGA, 10, 13
SGA, 10, 13
Gestational age/intrauterine growth restriction, 1013
GHD. See Growth hormone deficiency (GHD)
Ghrelin, 159
g-hydroxybutyrate, poisoning, treatment, 347
Giardia intestinalis, 1302
Giardia lamblia, 639
Giardiasis
clinical findings, 1302–1303
general considerations, 1302
laboratory findings, 1303
prevention, 1303
symptoms and signs, 1302–1303
treatment, 1303
Gilbert syndrome, 664–665
neonatal jaundice and, 22

Gingivostomatitis, 1186
treatment, 1188
Gitelman syndrome, 730
GJB2 genes, 482
Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), 316, 318t, 874
Glaucoma, 441
clinical findings, 441
differential diagnosis, 441
prognosis, 441
treatment, 441
Globoid (Krabbe) leukodystrophy, 778t
Glomerular disease, 716–718
acute interstitial nephritis, 718
glomerulonephritis (GN), 716–718
microhematuria, 716
Glomerular filtration rate, 710–711
in newborn, 65
Glomerulonephritis (GN), 716–718
acute, 716
acute, group A streptococcal infections and, 1228
acute postinfectious-glomerulonephritis, 716–717
Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP), 717
hereditary, 717–718
IgA nephropathy, 717
lupus, 717
membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, 717
Glucocorticoids, 1042–1044
adrenocortical insufficiency, 1038
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, 909, 1002, 1295
Glucose levels, ideal, after 2 or more hours of fasting, 1049–1050, 1050t
Glucose utilization, return to, in diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) management, 1047
Glutaric acidemia type I, 1068–1069
Glycogen storage diseases, 1057, 1057t
of the heart, 594
Glycopeptide agents, 1164–1165
Glycosylation, congenital disorders of, 1076
G_{M1} gangliosidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1074t
Goldenhar syndrome, 1108–1109
Gonads (ovaries and testes), 1029–1031
disorders of sex development, 1029
evaluation, 1030–1031
sex development, 1029
Gonococcal infections, 1244–1247
Gonococcal pharyngitis, 1339
Gonorrhea
asymptomatic, 1245
disseminated, 1245, 1246–1247
genital, uncomplicated, 1245
pharyngeal, 1245, 1246, 1247
rectal, 1245, 1246, 1247
treatment, 1246–1247
Gonorrheal conjunctivitis, 1245
Goodness of fit, concept of, 79–80
Graft rejection, 598–599
course and prognosis, 598–599
rejection surveillance, 598
cardiac catheterization, 598
echocardiography, 598
electrocardiography, 598
endomyocardial biopsy, 598
imaging, 598
symptoms and signs, 598
treatment of, 598
Graft-versus-host disease, 943t
Granulocytes, 944
Granuloma, swimming pool, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
Granuloma annulare, 413
Granuloma inguinale
causes, 1348
treatment, 1336t–1337t
Granulomatous encephalitis, 1305
Great arteries, transposition of, 582–584
Greenstick fractures, 831
Grief support, 395
Griscelli syndrome, 1005–1006
Group A streptococcal infections, 1226–1230
clinical findings, 1226–1227
complications, 1228
differential diagnosis, 1228
general considerations, 1226
laboratory findings, 1227–1228
in newborn nurseries, 1227
prevention, 1226
prognosis, 1230
in rheumatic patients, recurrence prevention, 1229
serious, 1229
symptoms and signs, 1226–1227
treatment, 1228–1230
carrier-related, 1230
complications-related, 1230
failure, 1229
general measures, 1230
penicillin, 1228–1229
specific measures, 1228–1230
Group B streptococcal (GBS) infections, 1230–1233, 1231t, 1232f
clinical findings, 1231–1232
early-onset, 1231
laboratory findings, 1232
late-onset, 1231–1232
in newborn, 56, 57, 57f, 58f
prevention, 1230
perinatal, CDC recommendations, 1230, 1231t, 1232f
treatment, 1233
Growth
disturbances of, 1008–1009
respiratory tract, 500
short stature, 1009–1010, 1010t, 1011f, 1012f
skeletal maturation, 1009
tall stature, 1015–1016, 1015t
target height, 1009
Growth assessment of newborns, 10–13
Growth deficiency, 246–247
clinical findings, 246–247
treatment, 247
Growth hormone (GH), 1013f
Growth hormone deficiency (GHD), 1010, 1014f
Growth hormone therapy, 1096
Growth parameters, assessment, in health supervision visits, 231–232
Guanfacine (Tenex)
for PTSD, 196
Guidelines for Adolescent Preventive Services (GAPS), 152
Guide to Taking a Sexual History, 135
Gumboil, 468
Gynecologic disorders, in adolescence, 125–135
menstrual disorders, 127–135
menstruation, physiology, 125
pelvic examination, 125–127, 126t
Gynecomastia, 112, 124–125, 124t, 1036

H
HAC. See Hospital-acquired conditions (HAC)
Hadrurus, 356
Haemophilus influenzae, 406, 471, 485–486, 512, 591
Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections, 1267–1270
  clinical findings, 1268
  complications, 1269
  differential diagnosis, 1268–1269
  general considerations, 1267–1268
  imaging, 1268
  laboratory findings, 1268
  prevention, 1268
  prognosis, 1270
  symptoms and signs, 1268
  travel-related, 1354, 1354t
  treatment, 1269–1270
  vaccination, 262–263
    administration schedule, 263
    adverse effects, 263
    contraindications, 263
    dosage, 263
    precautions, 263
    vaccines available, 262–263
Hair loss (alopecia), 415–416, 415t
  alopecia areata, 415–416
  hair pulling, 416
Hair pulling, 416
Halitosis, 498
Hallucinogens, 353
Hallux valgus. See Bunions
Hamstring strain, 865–866
Hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 491, 1182–1183
Hand fractures, 864
Hand injuries, sports related, 863–864
  distal interphalangeal injury, 863–864
  distal phalanx injury, 863
  hand fractures, 864
  thumb injury, 864
Hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome, 1207–1208
HAPE. See High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE)
Harlequin color change, 400
Hashimoto thyroiditis, 1019
HBAT. See Heptavalent botulinum antitoxin (HBAT)
Head
  evaluation, in trauma survey, 319
  of newborn, examination, 14
Headaches
  clinical findings, 760
  complications, 761
  differential diagnosis, 760–761, 761t
  imaging studies, 760
  laboratory findings, 760
  parasitic infections and, 1292t
  prognosis, 762
  red flags for children with, 760t
  symptoms and signs, 760
  treatment, 761–762
    acute, 762
    prevention, 762
Head and neck injuries, 320–322, 855–857
  clinical findings, 320, 321f
    imaging studies, 320, 321f
    signs and symptoms, 320
  complications, 322
    acute intracranial hypertension, 322
    central nervous system infection, 322
  differential diagnosis, 320
  prevention, 320
  prognosis, 322
  sports-related
    atlantoaxial instability, 857
    burners or stingers, 857
    concussion, 856–857
Head size, abnormal, 770–772
  craniosynostosis, 770
    clinical findings, 770
    differential diagnosis, 770
    treatment, 770
  microcephaly, 770–772
    causes of, 771t, 772t
    clinical findings, 771, 772
    differential diagnosis, 771, 772
    imaging studies, 771
    laboratory findings, 771
    macrocephaly, 772
    symptoms and signs, 771
    treatment and prognosis, 771–772
Head trauma, abusive, 429
  clinical findings, 429
  complications, 429
  differential diagnosis, 429
  pathogenesis, 429
  prognosis, 429
  treatment, 429
Health care
  industry, 1
  psychological, adolescents, 114–121. See also Adolescent, psychological health
Health care providers, role with terminally ill children, 184–185
Health maintenance visits, psychosocial problems identification during, 174–182
Health status or health related quality of life (HRQOL) measures, 183
Health supervision visits, 228–242
  acute-care visits, 240–241
  adolescent patients screening, 236
  anticipatory guidance, 237–238
  behavioral assessment, 228–231
  blood pressure screening, 232
  developmental assessment, 228–231
  growth parameters, 231–232
  hypercholesterolemia screening, 235–236
  hyperlipidemia screening, 235–236
  immunization, 240
  iron deficiency, 235
  lead screening, 234–235
  medical home, 241
  newborn screening, 234
  nutrition counseling, 239
  prenatal visits, 241
  sports physicals, 241
  tuberculosis screening, 236
  vision and hearing screening, 233–234
Hearing loss
  conductive, 481
  identification of
    audiologic evaluation of infants and children, 482
    newborn hearing screening, 482
  management of, 483
  in newborns, screening, 18, 19
  prevention, 483
  referral, 482–483
  sensorineural, 481–482, 1102
    acquired, 482
    congenital, 481–482

Heart
glycogen storage disease of, 594
of newborn, examination, 15
rash effects on, 1182–1183
Heart block, in newborn, 51
Heart disease, 557t
congenital, empiric risks, 1090t
Lyme disease and, treatment, 1290
of newborn, 15, 50–51
acyanotic, 50–51
cyanotic, 50–51
Heart failure (HF), 560–562
inpatient management of, 560–561
inotropic and mechanical support, 560–561
afterload reduction, 560–561
enhancement of contractility, 561
mechanical circulatory support, 561
outpatient management of, 561–562
medications, 561–562
b-blockers, 561–562
afterload-reducing agents, 561
digitalis, 562
diuretics, 562
treatment of, 560
Heart murmurs, in newborn. See Cardiac murmurs, in newborn
Heart rate, of newborns, 14
Heart sounds, 550–551
Heat cramps, 325
Heated high-flow nasal cannula (HHFNC), 362
Heat exhaustion, 325
Heat-related illnesses, 325
clinical findings, 325
differential diagnosis, 325
management, 325
prevention, 325
prognosis, 325
treatment, 325
Heat stroke, 325
Helicobacter pylori, 1263
Hemangioma, 402
Hematocrits, in newborn, 65
Hematologic disorders, 891–944
acquired aplastic anemia, 892–893
acquired bleeding disorders, 929–931
anemias, 893–912
bleeding disorders, 918–919
bone marrow failure, 891
eosinophilia, 917–918
leukocyte disorders, 913–915
lymphocytosis, 917–918
methemoglobinemia, 913
neutrophil function disorders, 915–917
neutrophilia, 915
platelet number abnormalities, 919–923
secondary polycythemia, 912–913
splenic abnormalities, 935–936
thrombotic disorders, 932–935
Hematologic disorders, in newborns, 63–65
anemia, 64–65
polycythemia, 65
thrombocytopenia, 63–64, 64t
vitamin K deficiency bleeding, 63
Hematologic values, normal, 891
Hematology reference intervals, 1367–1381, 1381t
guidelines for use of data in reference range study, 1367–1368
Hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT), 971–973, 973f
complications, 972–973
general considerations, 971–972
Hematuria, 716–718
acute interstitial nephritis, 718
approach to the evaluation of, 712f
glomerulonephritis (GN), 716–718
microhematuria, 716
Heme
breakdown in reticuloendothelial system/bone marrow, 19–20
cleaving by heme oxygenase to iron/carbon monoxide/biliverdin, 20
Hemodialysis, 336
for neonatal renal failure management, 66
Hemodynamic support, 370, 384
Hemoglobin A_{1C} test, 130
Hemoglobin C disorders, 908
Hemoglobin E disorders, 908
Hemoglobinopathies, 901–908, 902f, 902t
b-thalassemia, 904–905
hemoglobin C disorders, 908
hemoglobin E disorders, 908
sickle cell disease, 905–907
sickle cell trait, 907–908
a -thalassemia, 902–903
Hemolysis
antibody-mediated, 21
nonimmune, 21–22
Hemolytic-uremic syndrome, 720–721
clinical findings, 721
complications, 721
course and prognosis, 721
treatment, 721
Hemophilia, 1103
Hemophilia A, 924
Hemophilia B, 927
Hemophilia C, 927
Hemorrhage
intraventricular, in preterm infants, 45–47, 46f
in newborn
intracranial, 68
primary subarachnoid, 68
subdural, 68
subgaleal, 14, 30
pulmonary, 537–538
Hemothorax, 542
Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP), 717, 931–932
Hepatic tumors, 969–970
Hepatitis, 1349
causes, viral, 1171t
Hepatitis A, 666t
causes, 1171t
clinical findings, 667
history, 667
laboratory findings, 667
symptoms and signs, 667
differential diagnosis, 667
pathogenesis, 666
prevention, 666–667
prognosis, 668
sexually transmitted infections, 1349
treatment, 667–668
vaccination, 272–273
administration schedule, 272
adverse effects, 272
antibody preparations, 273
contraindications, 272
dosage, 272

postexposure prophylaxis, 272–273
precautions, 272
travel-related, 1354t, 1355
vaccines available, 272
Hepatitis B, 666t
cases of, 256
chronic infection, phases of, 669t
clinical findings, 668–669
laboratory findings, 668–669
symptoms and signs, 668
differential diagnosis, 669
general considerations, 668
infection, in newborn, 62
pathophysiology, 668
prevention, 668
prognosis, 669–670
sexually transmitted infections, 1349
treatment, 669
vaccination, 256–258
administration schedule, 257, 258t
adverse effects, 257
antibody preparations, 258
contraindications, 257
dosage, 257
postexposure prophylaxis, 257–258
precautions, 257
travel-related, 1354t, 1355
vaccines available, 257
Hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG), to newborn, 16, 62
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), 16, 62, 256, 257, 258
Hepatitis B vaccine to newborn, 16
Hepatitis C, 666t
clinical findings, 670
laboratory findings, 670
symptoms and signs, 670
differential diagnosis, 670
general considerations, 670
infection, in newborn, 62
prevention, 670
prognosis, 671
sexually transmitted infections, 1349
treatment, 670–671
Hepatitis D (delta agent), 666t, 671
Hepatitis E, 666t, 671
Hepatomegaly, 553
Hepatosplenic candidiasis, 1320
Heptavalent botulinum antitoxin (HBAT), 1248–1249
Hereditary elliptocytosis, 901
Hereditary fructose intolerance, 1059
Hereditary glomerulonephritis, 717–718
Hereditary nephrogenic (vasopressin-resistant) diabetes insipidus, 730–731
Hereditary patterns, 1087–1089, 1087f–1089f
autosomal dominant inheritance, 1087–1088, 1087f
autosomal recessive inheritance, 1088, 1088f
terminology related to, 1086–1087
X-linked inheritance, 1088–1089, 1089f
Y-linked inheritance, 1089–1090, 1089f
Hereditary skin disorders, 403, 404t
Hereditary spherocytosis, 900–901
hemolysis and, 21
Hereditary tyrosinemia, 1063–1064
Hernia
congenital diaphragmatic hernia, 620–621
diaphragmatic, in newborn, 54–55
hiatal, 617–618
inguinal hernias, 625–626
umbilical, 626
Herpangina, 491, 1181–1182
Herpes simplex gingivostomatitis, 489
Herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection, 408–409, 1185–1188, 1345–1346
clinical findings, 1186–1187
complications, 1187
general considerations, 1185–1186
laboratory findings, 1187
in newborn, 61–62
prognosis, 1187
sequelae, 1187
symptoms and signs, 1186–1187
treatment, 1187–1188, 1337t, 1346
Herpesvirus infections, 1185–1188
cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections, 1192–1195
herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections, 1185–1186
herpes zoster virus, 1189–1191
roseola infantum, 1191–1192
varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection, 1189–1191
Herpes zoster virus, 1189–1191
clinical findings, 1189
complications, 1190
differential diagnosis, 1190
general considerations, 1189
imaging studies, 1189
laboratory findings, 1189
prevention, 1190
prognosis, 1191
sequelae, 1190
symptoms and signs, 1189
treatment, 1190–1191
Heterochromia, 441
Heterodisomy, by trisomy rescue, 1083, 1084f
Heterogeneity
allelic, defined, 1087
clinical, defined, 1087
genetic, defined, 1087
locus, defined, 1087
phenotypic, defined, 1087
Heterophil antibodies, in infectious mononucleosis, 1196
Heterosexism, 114
Heterosexuals, 114
Heterotopic ossification, 878
Heterozygosity, compound, defined, 1087
Heterozygous, defined, 1087
HHFNC. See Heated high-flow nasal cannula (HHFNC)
Hiatal hernias (HHs), 617–618
High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE), 540, 1353
High-altitude sickness, 1353
High-arched palate, 499
High-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV), 367
High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSIL), 1348
HIGM. See X-Linked Hyper-IgM syndrome
Hip
avulsion fractures, 865
dislocated
congenital, empiric risks, 1090t
sports-related, 1090t
dislocation, 866

Hip injuries, sports related, 864–867
acetabular labral tears, 865
adductor strain, 865
femoral neck fractures, 867
hamstring strain, 865–866
hip avulsion fractures, 865
hip dislocation, 866
iliotibial band syndrome, 866–867
pelvic apophysitis, 866
quadriceps contusion, 866
slipped capital femoral epiphysis, 865
Hippocrates, 1
Hirschsprung disease, 630t. See also Congenital aganglionic megacolon
clinical findings, 628
imaging, 628
laboratory findings, 628
special examinations, 628
symptoms and signs, 628
differential diagnosis, 628–629
general considerations, 628
treatment and prognosis, 629
Histoplasma, 1316
Histoplasma capsulatum, 1324
Histoplasmosis, 1324–1325
asymptomatic, 1324
differential diagnosis, 1325
disseminated, 1324
general considerations, 1324
imaging, 1325
laboratory findings, 1324–1325
pneumonia, 1324
prognosis, 1325
symptoms and signs, 1324
treatment, 1325
HIV. See Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection
hMPV (human metapneumovirus) infection, 1180–1181
Hodgkin lymphoma, 956–958
clinical findings, 957
general considerations, 956–957
laboratory findings, 957
pathologic findings, 957
staging, 957
symptoms and signs, 957
treatment and prognosis, 957–958
Homicide, 209–210
Homocystinuria, 1065
Homozygous, defined, 1087
Hookworm
clinical findings, 1308
general considerations, 1307–1308
laboratory findings, 1308
prevention, 1308
prognosis, 1308
symptoms and signs, 1308
treatment, 1308
Hormonal regulation, metabolic processes, 1008t
Hormones
metabolic processes, regulation, 1008t
secretion, feedback control of, 1007–1008
types, 1007
Hormones secretion, feedback control of, 1007–1008
Horner syndrome, 432–433, 433f
clinical findings, 433
complications, 433
differential diagnosis, 433
pathogenesis, 433
prevention, 433
prognosis, 433
treatment, 433
Hornet sting, 348
Hospital-acquired conditions (HAC), 2
Host immune defenses, impaired, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
Howell-Jolly bodies, in erythrocytes, 989
H pylori, 619–620
HRQOL (Health status or health related quality of life) measures, 183
HSCT. See Hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT)
HSIL. See High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSIL)
HSP. See Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP)
Human bites, 329–330
Human ehrlichiosis, 1210–1211
Human embryology, dysmorphology and, 1092, 1094f
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, 409, 1214–1225
acute retroviral syndrome, 1217–1218
clinical categories, 1215t
clinical findings, 1215t, 1219t
disease staging in, 1215t, 1219t
encephalopathy of, 793
epidemiology, 1214
general considerations, 1214, 1349
laboratory findings, 1350
mode of transmission and pathogenesis, 1215–1216
mother-to-child-transmission (MTCT), 1214
in newborn, 63
perinatally exposed infant, 1215t, 1216–1217
in perinatally exposed infant
clinical findings, 1215t, 1216–1217
diagnosis, 1215t, 1216
management and outcome, 1216–1217
Pneumocystis prophylaxis, 1329
postsexual exposure prophylaxis, 1350
preexposure prophylaxis, 1350
prevention
prevention of mother-to-child transmission (PMTCT), 1223–1224
sexual transmission, 1224
through universal precautions, 1224
progressive disease, 1218–1223
clinical findings, 1218–1219
differential diagnosis, 1220
immunodeficiency-related, 1218–1219
laboratory findings, 1219–1220
malignancy, 1219
of organ systems, 1219
quality assurance and outcome metrics, 1225
sexual transmission, 1224
symptoms and signs, 1215t, 1219t, 1349–1350
through universal precautions, 1224
toxoplasmosis in, 1299
travel-related, 1360, 1363
treatment, 1220–1223, 1350
antiretroviral drugs, 1221–1222, 1221t
general measures, 1222–1223
immunizations, 1222–1223
principles, 1221

prophylaxis, 1223
psychosocial support and mental health, 1223
specific measures, 1222–1223
tuberculosis and, 1274, 1275
Human metapneumovirus (hMPV) infection, 1180–1181
Human papillomavirus (HPV) infection, 1348–1349
prevention, 1348–1349
treatment, 1338t, 1349
vaccination, 275–276
Humerus, fracture, 860
Hunter syndrome, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Huntington disease, 780t
Hurler syndrome, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Hyaline membrane disease, in preterm infants, 42–43
cause of, 42
clinical findings, 42
general considerations, 42
treatment, 42–43
Hydration, in atopic dermatitis management, 1136–1137
Hydrocarbons, poisoning, treatment, 347
Hydrocephalus, 769–770, 772
empiric risks, 1090t
Hydromorphone, for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Hydronephrosis, newborn with, 66
renal ultrasound for, 66
vesicoureteral reflux in, 66
voiding cystourethrogram for, 66
Hydrostatic edema, 382
Hymenolepiasis, 1313
Hymenolepis diminuta, 1313
Hymenolepis nana, 1313
Hyperammonemia, inborn errors of metabolism and, 1056
Hyperbaric oxygen therapy, for gas gangrene, 1251
Hyperbilirubinemia, 19, 65
breast-feeding-associated jaundice, 22
breast-milk jaundice, 22
evaluation, 23–24, 24t
factors affecting risk of, 24t
indirect, treatment of, 24–26
exchange transfusion, 24–25
phototherapy, 24, 25f, 26f
protoporphyrins, 25
pathologic unconjugated, 21–22, 21t
premature infants and, 22
racial differences and, 22
Hypercalcemia, 878
defined, 1026
Hypercalcemic states, 1026–1028, 1027t
clinical findings, 1027
course and prognosis, 1028
general considerations, 1027
imaging, 1027
symptoms and signs, 1027
treatment, 1027–1028
Hypercholesterolemia screening, in health supervision visits, 235–236
Hypereosinophilia, 1310
Hypergammaglobulinemia, 1310
Hyperglycemia
ketotic, 1066–1068
in newborn, 68
Hyperglycinemia, nonketotic, 1065–1066
Hyper-IgE syndrome (HIES), 1003
Hyperinfection syndrome. See Strongyloidiasis
Hyperkalemia, in newborn, 66
Hyperkyphosis, 823
Hyperlipidemia screening, in health supervision visits, 235–236
Hypermobility syndrome, 890
Hypernatremia, 705
Hyperopia (farsightedness), 419f, 420
Hyperphenylalaninemia, 1062–1063
Hyperprolactinemia, 123
Hypersensitivitiy pneumonitis, 536–537
clinical findings, 536–537
complications, 537
differential diagnosis, 537
prognosis, 537
treatment, 537
Hypersensitivity, to retroviral agents, 1148
Hypersplenism, 935
Hypertension, 596, 725–727
approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
clinical findings, 725–726
in diabetes mellitus, 1048
pulmonary, 599–600
sustained, 726–727
treatment, 726–727
acute hypertensive emergencies, 726
sustained hypertension, 726–727
Hyperthyroidism, 205, 1020–1021
clinical findings, 1020–1021
course and prognosis, 1021
general considerations, 1020
imaging, 1020
laboratory findings, 1020
radiation therapy, 1021
symptoms and signs, 1020
treatment, 1020–1021
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 593–594
Hyperviscosity, 65, 65t
Hypervitaminosis D, 1028
Hyphema, 428–429, 428f
clinical findings, 428–429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 428
prevention, 428
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
Hypocalcemia, autosomal dominant, 1023
Hypocalcemia, in newborn
bedside glucose testing, 16
calcium therapy, 69
clinical signs, 69
description, 69
early-onset, 69
late-onset, 69
neonatal seizures and, 67, 68, 69
prognosis, 69
Hypocalcemic disorders, 1022–1026
chronic, management, 1026
clinical findings, 1023
conditions associated with, 1024t, 1025t
differential diagnosis, 1023
disorders of parathyroid hormone secretion or action associated with, 1025t
general considerations, 1022–1023
imaging, 1023
laboratory findings, 1023
rickets-related, 1024t

Hypocalcemic disorders (Cont.):
symptoms and signs, 1023
treatment, 1023, 1026
Hypochondriasis, 115
Hypoglycemia
defined, 1047–1048
diabetes and, 1047–1048
inborn errors of metabolism and, 1056
in newborn, 26–28
causes
infant of a diabetic mother (IDM), 26–27
intrauterine growth-restricted (IUGR) infant, 27
islet cell hyperplasia, 27
clinical findings, 27
monitoring, 27
prognosis, 27–28
treatment, 27, 27t
Hypokalemic alkalosis, 730
Hypomagnesemia, hypocalcemia and, 69
Hyponatremia, 704–705
Hypoparathyroidism, hypocalcemia in infant with, 69
Hypophosphatasia, 1028
Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS), 581–582
echocardiography, 582
electrocardiography, 581–582
imaging, 581
symptoms and signs, 581
treatment and prognosis, 582
Hypotensive shock, 374t, 375
Hypo-thalamic hypogonadism, 162
Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis dysfunction, 874–875
Hypothalamic thyrotropin-releasing hormone, 1017
Hypothermia, 325–327, 326t
clinical findings, 326
imaging studies, 326
laboratory findings, 326
signs and symptoms, 326
management of, 326t
prevention, 326
prognosis, 327
treatment
general supportive measures, 326
rewarming, 326
Hypothyroidism, 1017–1019
acquired, 1017–1019
anemia of, 900
causes of, 1018t
clinical findings, 1018–1019
congenital, 1017–1019
general considerations, 1017–1018
treatment, 1019
Hypotonia, in newborn, 68
Hypovolemic shock, 313–314
Hypoxanthine-granine phosphoribosyltransferase, 1070–1071
Hypoxemic spells, 577
Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy, 385
clinical findings, 385
prognosis, 385
treatment, 385

I

Ibuprofen, 392
poisoning, treatment, 347–348
I-cell disease, clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Ichthyosis, 403
Idiopathic genu valgum, 818f
Idiopathic hypercalcemia of infancy, 1028
Idiopathic neonatal hepatitis (giant-cell hepatitis), 659–660
Idiopathic nephrotic syndrome of childhood, 718–719
clinical findings, 718–719
complications, 719
treatment and prognosis, 719
Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis, 537
Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 919–921
causes of, 920t
clinical findings, 919–920
complications, 920
differential diagnosis, 920
general considerations, 919
prognosis, 921
treatment, 920–921
IgA nephropathy, 717
Iliotibial band syndrome, 866–867
Illness, acute febrile, 1181
Image Gently campaign, 506
Imaging
acute appendicitis, 627
acute ataxias of childhood
paraneoplastic syndromes, 782
sensory ataxia, 782
toxic cerebellar syndrome, 781
acute cerebellar ataxia, 781
acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis (ADEM), 794
arterial ischemic stroke (AIS), 765
autosomal recessive hereditary ataxias
ataxia-telangiectasia, 785
Friedreich ataxia, 784
biliary atresia (BA), 662
biliary tract disease
cholelithiasis, 684
primary sclerosing cholangitis, 687
blastomycosis, 1317
brain tumors, 953–954
cardiovascular diseases, 557
caustic burns of esophagus, 615
cerebral palsy, 789
Chlamydophila infections, 1280
choledochal cyst, 663
cholelithiasis, 684
chronic pancreatitis, 693
cirrhosis, 680
coccidioidomycosis, 1322
congenital adrenal hyperplasias, 1040
congenital aganglionic megacolon, 628
congenital duodenal obstruction, 621
cryptococcosis, 1323
developmental dysplasia of hip joint (DDH), 820
encephalofacial angiomatosis (Sturge-Weber disease), 776
eosinophilic esophagitis, 614
Friedreich ataxia, 784
gas gangrene, 1251
gastrointestinal bleeding, 640
graft rejection, 598
Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections, 1268
headaches, 760
head and neck injuries, 320, 321f
herpes zoster virus, 1189
Hirschsprung disease, 628
histoplasmosis, 1325
hypercalcemic states, 1027

hyperthyroidism, 1020
hypocalcemic disorders, 1023
hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS), 581
hypothermia, 326
intestinal malrotation, 623
Meckel diverticulum, 626
microcephaly, 771
myasthenic syndromes, 808
myocarditis, 595
nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), 675
otitis media, 479
paraneoplastic syndromes, 782
pediatric neuroradiologic procedures, 740
Pneumocystis infection, 1328–1329
portal hypertension, 682
precocious puberty
in female, 1032
in male, 1035
primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), 687
psittacosis, 1280
pyogenic and amebic liver abscess, 689
respiratory tract, 505–506
stomach and duodenum disorders, 621
supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), 604
syphilis, 1284
tics/Tourette syndrome, 787
tricuspid atresia, 580
truncus arteriosus, 586
tuberculosis, 1274
tuberous sclerosis (Bourneville disease), 775
urinary tract infections (UTI), 733
varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection, 1189
ventricular septal defect, 565
Wilms tumor, 964
Imaging, in respiratory tract disorders diagnosis and evaluation. See specific modalities
Imipramine, for enuresis, 81
Imitative behavior, 75
Immobilization hypercalcemia, 1028
Immune dysregulation, 1003
Immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked (IPEX) syndrome, 1003
Immunization, 240, 248–280
accelerated, 1354t
in adolescents, 250, 251t–254t
bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 525–526
diphtheria, 1253
health supervision visits, 240
hepatitis A, 272–273
hepatitis B, 256–258
HIV infection, 1222–1223
human papillomavirus (HPV) infection, 275–276
for immunodeficient children, 255–256
immunoglobulin, 280
influenza, 267, 1355
information, useful sources, 248
Japanese encephalitis (JE), 278
measles-mumps rubella (MMR), 268–270, 1146
meningococcal, 273–274, 1243–1244
for meningococcal infections, 1243
overview, 248
passive prophylaxis, 280
pertussis, 1271
pneumococcal, 263–265
polio, 1356
poliomyelitis, 265–266
public perceptions about, 248
rabies, 276–277
recommended schedule 0–18 years, 250, 251t–254t
risk-benefit communication, 250, 255
rotavirus infection, 258–259
routine, 250, 251t–254t
modified for travel, 1354–1356, 1354t
standards for, 249–250
tetanus toxoid, 1249
travel-specific, 1354–1358
tuberculosis, 279
typhoid fever, 278
varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection, 270–272
yellow fever, 279
Immunization Action Coalition, 248
Immunocompromised host
cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections in, 1194–1195
toxoplasmosis in
acquired, 1299
acute, 1299
Immunodeficiency, 988–1006, 989f
antibodies and immunoglobulins, 989
antibody deficiency syndromes, 995–998
centromeric instability, facial anomalies (ICF) syndrome, 1005
clinical features of, 990t
complement deficiencies, 1002–1003
complement pathways, 990–992, 991f
Down syndrome, 1095
evaluation, primary considerations, 988–992
genetic syndromes associated with, 1005–1006
laboratory evaluation for, 991t
pattern-recognition receptors, 992
phagocyte disorders, 1001–1002
phagocyte immunity, 989–990
severe combined immunodeficiency disease, 992–995
T lymphocytes, 989
Immunologic evaluation, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 477
Immunologic function, laboratory evaluation of, 714
Immunosuppression, 597–598
Immunotherapy
in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1134
in asthma management, 1129
Impaction teeth eruption, 466
Impaired contractility, 375
Impaired T-cell
function, 993, 995
survival, 993
Impetigo, 406
group A streptococcal infections and, 1227
Implanon, 140
Implants, contraceptive, 140
Imprinting, 1091
disorders, 1104
Angelman syndrome, 1104
Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, 1104
Prader-Willi syndrome, 1104

The Improvement Guide, 6
Improving Access to Quality Care in Family Planning: Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 136
IMV. See Intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV)
Inactivated influenza vaccine virus, 266, 267
Inborn errors of metabolism, 657, 783–784, 1054–1079
  acidosis due to, 1056
  amino acid metabolism disorders, 1061–1066
  autosomal recessive pattern of, 1104–1105
  carbohydrate metabolism disorders, 1057t
  carnitine deficiency, 1070
  clinical situations, 1055–1056
  creatine synthesis disorders, 1078
  described, 1054
  diagnosis, 1054–1055, 1057t–1058t
    energy metabolism disorders, 1059–1061, 1059t
    obtaining and handling samples, 1055
  fatty acid oxidation disorders, 1069–1070
  galactosemia, 1058, 1058t
  glycosylation disorders, congenital, 1076
  hyperammonemia due to, 1056
  hypoglycemia due to, 1056
  hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase, 1070–1071
  laboratory studies, 1055
  lysosomal diseases, 1071–1075, 1072t–1074t
  mental retardation due to, 1055
  metabolic emergencies, management, 1056
  neurotransmitter metabolism disorders, 1077–1078
  in newborns, 69–70, 1056–1057
    acute presentation, 1055
  organic acidemias, 1066–1069
  peroxisomal disease, 1075
  Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome, 1076–1077
  suspecting, 1054–1055
  vomiting and encephalopathy due to, 1055
Incident-reporting systems, 8
Inclusion cyst, 497–498
Independent assortment, defined, 1086
Indinavir, 1221t
Indirect calorimetry (IC), 388
Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), 244
Infancy, central nervous system degenerative disorders of, 777
Infantile Gaucher disease, 779t
Infant of a diabetic mother (IDM), hypoglycemia and, 26–27
Infant oral health care, 459–460
Infants. See also Newborn
  audiologic evaluation of, 482
  botulism, 1247–1249. See also Botulism
  dysmorphology in, evaluation, 1093–1095, 1094f
  floppy, 812t
  intermittent stridor in, 509
  nutrition for
    breast feeding, 285–294
    dietary products, 294–296, 296t
  oral examination
    cleft lip and palate, 464–465, 464f, 465f
    frena, 464, 464f, 465f
    soft tissue variations, 465
    sucking pads, 463, 464f
    teeth, 463–464
  perinatal exposure to HIV infection, 1215t, 1216–1217
  retinal hemorrhages in, 447
  sepsis in, antimicrobial agents for, 1161
  skin disorders in, 399–403
  unexplained decrease in vision, 458
  vomiting and encephalopathy in, inborn errors of metabolism and, 1055
Infection. See also specific types
  bacterial, 1226–1282. See also Bacterial infections
  bone and joint-related
    diskitis, 834
    osteomyelitis, 832–833
    pyogenic arthritis, 833–834
    septic arthritis of hip, 834–835
    transient synovitis of hip, 834–835
  central nervous system, 790–791
    clinical findings, 790–791
    imaging, 791
    laboratory findings, 790–791
    symptoms and signs, 790
  central nervous system (CNS), 322, 790–791
    cerebrospinal fluid in, 738t–739t
  ear
    acute otitis media, 471–477, 472f, 474f, 474t, 475t
    bullous myringitis, 471
    otitis externa, 470–471
    otitis media with effusion, 477–480, 478f
  eyelid, 431–432, 432f
  nasal, 488
  in newborn, 56–63
    bacterial, 56–60
    congenital, 60–61
    perinatally acquired, 61–63
    routes of, 56
    susceptibility of, 56
  rickettsial, 1210–1213
  spirochetal, 1282–1290
    leptospirosis, 1287–1288
    Lyme disease, 1288–1290
    relapsing fever, 1286–1287
    syphilis, 1282–1286
  viral, 1170–1172
Infectious mononucleosis, 491, 1195–1197
  red rash in, 1173t
Infective endocarditis, 590–591
  clinical findings, 590–591
    history, 590
    prevention, 591
    symptoms, signs, and laboratory findings, 590–591
  conditions requiring antibiotic prophylaxis for prevention of, 591t
  course and prognosis, 591
  general considerations, 590
  treatment, 591
Inflammatory arthritis, 824

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
clinical findings, 649
diagnostic testing, 649
symptoms and signs, 649
complications, 650
Crohn disease, 650
ulcerative colitis, 650
differential diagnosis, 649–650
general considerations, 649
quality improvement, 652
treatment, 650–652
medical, 650–651
surgical, 651–652
Inflammatory disorders of central nervous system, 790–791
clinical findings, 790–791
laboratory findings, 790–791
symptoms and signs, 790
imaging, 791
Inflicted traumatic brain injury (iTBI), 385
Influenza, 1176–1177
H1N1, 266
mortality, 266
vaccination
administration schedule, 267
adverse effects, 267
contraindications, 267
dosage, 267
precautions, 267
travel-related, 1355
vaccines available, 266
Inguinal hernias
clinical findings, 625
differential diagnosis, 625
treatment, 626
Inhaled medications, in respiratory tract disorders management, 507, 507t
Inhaled nitric oxide (iNO), 371
Inheritance
mendelian, 1086–1090, 1087f–1089f
mitochondrial, 1091–1092
Inherited bleeding disorders, 924–928
afibrinogenemia, 928
dysfibrinogenemia, 927
factor IX deficiency, 927
factor VIII deficiency, 924–927
factor XI deficiency, 927
Inherited disorders, principles, 1086–1090
Inherited or developmental defects of the kidneys, 727–732
Bartter syndrome, 730
cystinosis, 729–730
disorders of the renal tubules, 727–729
Gitelman syndrome, 730
hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis, 730
Liddle syndrome, 730
nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (NDI), 730–731
nephrolithiasis, 731–732
oculocerebrorenal syndrome (Lowe syndrome), 730
Inherited thrombophilia (hypercoagulable) states, 932–933
Injectable hormonal contraception, 139–140
Injuries. See also specific types
animal and human bites, 328–330
bicycle, 237
brain, 873–876
burns, 322–324, 324f
firearm, 238
fires and burn, 238
head, 320–322
lacerations, 328, 328t
mechanism of, 315
motor vehicle, 237
prevention, 237–238
related to environmental extremes, 325–327, 326t
skiing and snowboarding, 237
sports-related. See Sports injuries
submersion, 327
Innate immune system, 377
Innocent murmurs, 551–552
Innominate or carotid bruit, 552
Inositol
cow milk composition, 295t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Inotropic and vasopressor agents, 379
Inpatient treatment, 165–166
Insecticides, poisoning, treatment, 348–349
Insect infestations, 410
Insects
adverse reactions, 1148–1149
clinical findings, 1148–1149
complications, 1149
laboratory findings, 1149
prognosis, 1149
symptoms and signs, 1149
treatment, 1149
viral infections spread by, 1197–1210, 1198t
Colorado tick fever, 1202
dengue fever, 1198t, 1201–1202
encephalitis, 1197
erythema infectiosum, 1202–1204
Insect stings, poisoning, treatment, 348
Insertion, chromosomal, 1082, 1083f
Insomnia, 86. See also Sleep disorders
Inspiratory time, 365
inspissated bile syndrome, 659
Institute for Health-care Improvement (IHI), 4
Institute of Medicine (IOM), 1
Insulin
action of, kinetics, 1050, 1051t
adverse reactions, 1146
closed-loop systems, 1052
dosage, long-term, 1050–1051
intravenous infusions, in hyperglycemic infants, 68
in new-onset diabetes management, 1050
in type 1 diabetes management, 1050
in type 2 diabetes management, 1053
Insulin pump therapy, 1051
Intact ventricular septum, pulmonary atresia with, 579–580
Integrase inhibitor, 1221t
Integrated care, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Integrative training, 840
Intellectual disability (ID), 96–97
diagnosis of, 97
DSM-5 on, 96
evaluation, 97
ICD on, 96
management of, 97
prevalence of, 97
specific forms and treatment issues, 98
Intelligence quotient (IQ), 97

Intensive care, neonatal, 34–49, 70. See also Preterm infants
Interferon gamma release assays (IGRA), for tuberculosis, 1274
Interferon-g pathways, 1004
Interleukin-12 pathways, 1004
interlobular bile ducts, paucity of, 660
Intermediate uveitis, 443
Intermittent/episodic ataxias, 783–784
  channelopathies, 784
  inborn errors of metabolism, 783–784
Intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV), 365
Intermittent stridor, in infants, 509
International Classification of Diseases (ICD), 96
International Neuroblastoma Staging System, 962t
International travel
  first aid kit for, 1353, 1353t
  prevalence, 1352
Interstitial edema, 382
Interventional cardiac catheterization, 559
Interviews, in developmental problems assessment, 177–179
Intestinal atresia or stenosis, 622, 622t
Intestinal hemangiomas and vascular malformations
  clinical presentation, 636
  treatment, 636
Intestinal malrotation
  clinical findings, 623
    imaging, 623
    symptoms and signs, 623
  general considerations, 622–623
  treatment and prognosis, 623
Intestinal obstruction, 52–54
  clinical findings, 53, 53t
  general considerations, 53
  prognosis, 54
  treatment, 53–54
Intra-atrial reentrant tachycardia, 603
Intracranial hemorrhage, in newborn
  neonatal stroke, 68
  primary subarachnoid hemorrhage, 68
  subdural hemorrhage, 68
Intracranial hypertension, 381–382
Intrahepatic cholestasis
  Byler disease, 660–661
  general considerations, 653
  idiopathic neonatal hepatitis (giant-cell hepatitis), 659–660
  intrahepatic cholestasis resulting from inborn errors of metabolism, familial, and "toxic" causes, 657–659
    inborn errors of metabolism, 657
    "toxic" causes of neonatal cholestasis, 657–659
  paucity of interlobular bile ducts, 660
  perinatal or neonatal hepatitis resulting from infection, 653–655
    clinical findings, 654
    differential diagnosis, 654
    prognosis, 655
    treatment, 655
  progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (PFIC), 660–661
  specific infectious agents, 655–657
    neonatal bacterial hepatitis, 657
    neonatal hepatitis B virus (HBV) disease, 655–657
    neonatal jaundice with urinary tract infection, 657
Intrahepatic portal hypertension, 681
  cirrhosis, 681
  congenital hepatic fibrosis, 681
  other rare causes, 681
  veno-occlusive disease (acute stage), 681
Intraocular foreign bodies, 425–426
  clinical findings, 425–426, 426f
  complications, 426
  differential diagnosis, 426
  pathogenesis, 425
  prevention, 425
  prognosis, 426
  treatment, 426
Intrathoracic airways
  acquired, 516
    foreign body aspiration, 516
  congenital, 514–516
    bronchogenic cysts, 515–516
    malacia of airways, 514
    vascular rings and slings, 515
Intrauterine devices (IUD), 140–141
Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR)
  infants, hypoglycemia and, 27
  multiple births, 33
Intrauterine systems (IUS), 140–141
Intravaginal ring, 138, 139. See also Contraception/contraceptives
Intravenous calcium therapy, for hypocalcemia in newborn, 69
Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG), in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 920–921
Intravenous inotropic agents, 561t
Intravenous insulin infusions, in hyperglycemic infants, 68
Intraventricular hemorrhage, in preterm infants, 45–47, 46f
  clinical findings, 45–46
  diagnosis, 46
  general considerations, 45
  pathogenesis, 45, 46f
  treatment, 46–47
Intrinsic anticoagulants deficiencies, 934
Intussusception
  clinical findings, 625
  diagnosis and treatment, 625
  prognosis, 625
In utero cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections, 1192–1195
Invasive hemodynamic monitoring, 376
Inversion, chromosomal, 1082, 1083f
Involuntary mental health "hold," 176–177
Iodine
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency and treatment, 288t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
IOM. See Institute of Medicine (IOM)
Ipratropium bromide, 373
Iridocyclitis, 441–442
  gonorrheal, 1245
Iris coloboma, 439
  clinical findings, 439
  complications, 439
  differential diagnosis, 439
  prognosis, 439
  treatment, 439
Iris disorders, 439–441
  albinism, 440–441

aniridia, 440
iris coloboma, 439
Iritis, 441–442
Iron
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, in health supervision visits, 235
dietary reference intakes, 287t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
overload, 943t
poisoning, treatment, 349
Iron-deficiency anemia, 897–898
Iron therapy, for hookworm, 1308
Irreversible shock, 374t, 375
Islet cell hyperplasia, hypoglycemia and, 27
Isodisomy
by monosomy rescue, 1084f
by trisomy rescue, 1084f
Isoimmune thrombocytopenia, in newborn, 64
Isolated exocrine pancreatic enzyme defect, 697
Isoniazid for tuberculosis
chemoprophylaxis, 1275
treatment, 1275
Isospora belli, 639
ITP. See Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
Itraconazole, 1320
Ivermectin, for strongyloidiasis, 1309
Ixodes scapularis, 1296

J

Japanese encephalitis (JE)
symptoms of, 1356
vaccination, 278
travel-related, 1356
Jaundice
leptospirosis and, 1287
in newborns. See Neonatal jaundice
JIA. See Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA)
Jimsonweed, poisoning, treatment, 341–342
Job syndrome, 1003
Joint Commission (JC), 3
Joint Council on Congenital Heart Disease (JCCHD), 586
Joint fluid analysis, 883t
Jumper's knee, 868
Junctional premature beats, 601, 602f
Just culture, patient safety, 8
Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), 882–885
clinical findings, 882–883
differential diagnosis, 883–884
prognosis, 885
treatment, 884–885
Juvenile myasthenia gravis, 807
Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML), 952
Juvenile polyps, 634–635, 634f
Juvenile recurrent parotitis (JRP), 498
Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, red rash in, 1173t

K

Kabuki syndrome, 1110
Karyotype, normal male and female, 1080, 1081f
Kasabach-Merritt Syndrome, 922
Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children, 97
Kawasaki disease, 589–590
long-term management in, 590t
noncardiac manifestations of, 589t
red rash in, 1173t
treatment, 590
KDOQI. See Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative (KDOQI)
Keloids, 414
Keratoconjunctivitis, 1186
epidemic, 1175
treatment, 1188
Keratosis pilaris, 413
Kernicterus, in newborn, 19, 23
Ketamine, 391
controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
poisoning, treatment, 347
Ketoaciduria, branched-chain, 1064–1065
Ketogenic diet, 754–755
Ketonemia, diabetes and, 1052
Ketonuria, diabetes and, 1052
Ketorolac, 392
for allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1134
Ketotic hyperglycinemias, 1066–1068
Kidney and urinary tract, 710–734
congenital anomalies of, 714–716
distal urinary tract anomalies, 715–716
renal parenchymal anomalies, 714–715
diseases of the renal vessels, 720–721
hemolytic-uremic syndrome, 720–721
renal arterial disease, 720
renal vein thrombosis, 720
evaluation of, 710–714
history, 710
laboratory evaluation
of immunologic function, 714
of renal function, 710–714
laboratory evaluation of renal function, 710–714
physical examination, 710
radiographic evaluation, 714
renal biopsy, 714
hematuria and glomerular disease, 716–718
acute interstitial nephritis, 718
glomerulonephritis (GN), 716–718
microhematuria, 716
inherited or developmental defects of the kidneys, 727–732
Bartter syndrome, 730
cystinosis, 729–730
disorders of the renal tubules, 727–729
Gitelman syndrome, 730
hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis, 730
Liddle syndrome, 730
nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (NDI), 730–731
nephrolithiasis, 731–732
oculocerebrorenal syndrome (Lowe syndrome), 730
proteinuria and renal disease, 718–720
congenital nephrosis, 718
focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), 719
idiopathic nephrotic syndrome of childhood, 718–719
membranous nephropathy (membranous glomerulonephritis), 719–720
QA/QI in pediatric nephrology, 733–734

Kidney and urinary tract (Cont.):
renal failure, 721–727
acute kidney injury, 721–724
chronic renal failure, 724–725
hypertension, 725–727
urinary tract infections, 732–733
Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative (KDOQI), 734
Kidney infections, candidiasis and, 1319
Kinky hair disease, 779t
Klebsiella granulomatis, 1348
Kleihauer-Betke test, 64
Klinefelter syndrome, 1097
Klippel-Feil syndrome, 825
Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome, 636
Knee, internal derangements, 828–829
Knee injuries, sports related, 867–870
anterior cruciate ligament injuries, 869–870
anterior knee pain, 867–868
lateral collateral ligament injuries, 869
medial collateral ligament injuries, 869
posterior cruciate ligament injuries, 870
posterior knee pain, 868
Knee sprains, 828
Köhler bone disease, 835t
Krabbe disease, clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Kyphosis, 823

L

Labial sucking tubercle, 497
Laboratory evaluation
of immunologic function, 714
of renal function, 710–714
Labyrinthitis, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 479
Labyrinthitis ossificans, 479
Lacerations, 328, 328t
clinical findings, 328
eye
clinical findings, 427
complications, 427
differential diagnosis, 427
pathogenesis, 427
prevention, 427
prognosis, 427
treatment, 427
prognosis, 328
treatment, 328
Lactic acidosis, primary, causes, 1059, 1059t
Lac-tobacillus acidophilus, 461
Lactobacillus casei, 461
Lactose intolerance, 1303
Lamivudine, 1221t
Langerhans cell histiocytosis, 970–971
clinical findings, 971
general considerations, 970–971
treatment and prognosis, 971
Language
development of, 74, 75t, 76f, 77f, 78
receptive, development of, 74
Lanugo, in newborn, 14
Laparoscopy, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 1341
LARC. See Long-acting reversible contraceptives (LARC)
Large for gestational age (LGA), 10, 13
Large ventricular septal defects
with normal pulmonary vascular resistance, 564
with pulmonary hypertension, 566
with pulmonary vascular obstructive disease, 564
Laryngeal mask airway (LMA), 316–317, 317f
Laryngomalacia, 509
Laryngoscopy, 506
Late preterm infant, 49, 49f
Lateral collateral ligament injuries, 869
Lateral meniscus injuries, 868
Latex, described, 1145
Latex allergy, 1145–1147
clinical findings, 1145
general considerations, 1145
laboratory findings, 1145
prognosis, 1145
symptoms and signs, 1145
treatment, 1145
Lavage, in poisoning treatment, 335
Lead poisoning, treatment, 350
Lead screening, in health supervision visits, 234–235
Lean management, 6
Lean-Six Sigma, 7
Leapfrog, 3–4
Left coronary artery, 576
Left-sided lesions, 571–575
aortic stenosis, 572–573
coarctation of the aorta, 571–572
congenital mitral stenosis, 574
cor triatriatum, 574–575
mitral valve prolapse, 573–574
Left-sided outflow obstruction, newborn with, 50
Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease, 835–836, 835t
Legionella infection, 1278–1279
Legionella pneumophila, 533, 1278
Legionnaires disease, 1278
Leigh disease, 779t
Leigh subacute necrotizing encephalomyelopathy, 1105–1106
Lens disorders
cataracts, 446, 446f
dislocated lenses, 446–447
ectopia lentis, 446–447
Leptin physiology, 159
Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae, 1287
Leptospirosis, 1287–1288
clinical findings, 1287–1288
differential diagnosis, 1288
laboratory findings, 1288
prevention, 1287
prognosis, 1288
red rash in, 1173t
in returned traveler, 1365t
symptoms and signs, 1287–1288
treatment, 1288
Lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and/or questioning (LGBTQ), 114
Leukemia
acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), 945–948
clinical findings, 946
differential diagnosis, 946
general considerations, 945–946
prognosis, 948
treatment, 947–948
acute myeloid leukemia (AML), 948–951, 949t
clinical findings, 949–950
general considerations, 948–949
prognosis, 950–951
treatment, 950
Leukocoria, 418–419, 419f

Leukocyte adherence deficiency I, 916t, 1102
Leukocyte adherence deficiency II, 916t, 1102
Leukocyte disorders, 913–915
  neutropenia, 913–915
Leukocytosis, 1235
Leukodystrophy
  Krabbe, 778t
  metachromatic, 778t
Leukokoria, 15
Leukotriene-receptor antagonists (LTRAs)
  in angioedema management, 1140
  in asthma management, 1127
  in urticaria management, 1140
Levalbuterol, in asthma management, 1128
Levels of newborn care, 10
Levofloxacin, for Legionella infection, 1279
Levonorgestrel EC, 141
LGBTQ. See Lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and/or questioning (LGBTQ)
Liddle syndrome, 730
Lifestyle modifications
  acute otitis media (AOM) and, 476
  dental caries and, 462
Life-sustaining medical therapies (LSMTs), 393
Limit variables, 364
Linezolid, 1165
Linoleic acid
  cow milk composition, 295t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Lipidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t–1074t
Lipids, nutritional requirements and, 283–284, 304–305
Lipolysis, inhibition of, in diabetic ketosis (DKA) management, 1047
Lipoprotein lipase (LPL), 305
Lips disorders
  cheilitis, 497
  inclusion cyst, 497–498
  labial sucking tubercle, 497
Lissencephaly, 768
Listeria infections, 1272. See also Listeriosis
Listeria monocytogenes, 657, 1272
Listeriosis, 1272–1273
Lithium, for bipolar disorder, 204
Little league elbow, 862
Little league shoulder, 861
Live attenuated influenza virus (LAIV) vaccine, 266, 267
Liver and pancreas
  liver disorders, 653–691
    a_1-antitrypsin deficiency liver disease, 676–677
    acute liver failure, 672–673
    autoimmune hepatitis, 673–675
    biliary tract disease, 683–688
    cirrhosis, 679–680
    drug-induced liver disease, 679
    extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis, 661–663
    hepatitis A, 666–668
    hepatitis B, 668–670
    hepatitis C, 670–671
    hepatitis D (delta agent), 671
    hepatitis E, 671
    intrahepatic cholestasis, 653–661
    liver transplantation, 690–691
    liver tumors, 689–690
    neonatal cholestatic jaundice, 653
    nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, 675–676
    other hepatitis viruses, 671
    other neonatal hyperbilirubinemic conditions (noncholestatic nonhemolytic), 663–666
    portal hypertension, 681–683
    pyogenic and amebic liver abscess, 688–689
    Wilson disease (hepatolenticular degeneration), 677–679
  pancreatic disorders, 691–698
    acute pancreatitis, 691–692
    chronic pancreatitis, 692–693
    gastrointestinal and hepatobiliary manifestations of cystic fibrosis, 693–696
    isolated exocrine pancreatic enzyme defect, 697
    pancreatic tumors, 697–698
    syndromes with pancreatic exocrine insufficiency, 697
Liver disorders, 653–691
  a_1-antitrypsin deficiency liver disease, 676–677
    clinical findings, 676
    complications, 676–677
    differential diagnosis, 676
    general considerations, 676
    prognosis, 677
    treatment, 677
  acute liver failure, 672–673
    clinical findings, 672
    complications, 672–673
    differential diagnosis, 672
    general considerations, 672
    prognosis, 673
    treatment, 673
  autoimmune hepatitis, 673–674, 673–675
    clinical findings, 673–674
    complications, 674
    differential diagnosis, 674
    prognosis, 674
    treatment, 674
  biliary tract disease, 683–688
    cholelithiasis, 683–686
      clinical findings, 684
      complications, 684
      differential diagnosis, 684
      general considerations, 683
      prognosis, 684
      treatment, 684
    other biliary tract disorders, 687–688
    primary sclerosing cholangitis, 687
      clinical findings, 687
      complications, 687
      differential diagnosis, 687
      general considerations, 687
      prognosis, 687
      treatment, 687
  cirrhosis, 679–680
    clinical findings, 679–680
    complications, 680
    differential diagnosis, 680
    general considerations, 679
    prognosis, 680
    treatment, 680

Liver disorders (Cont.):
drug-induced liver disease, 679
diagnosis, 679
general considerations, 679
symptoms, 679
treatment, 679
extrahepatic neonatal cholestasis, 661–663
biliary atresia, 661–662
choledochal cyst, 663
spontaneous perforation of the extrahepatic bile ducts, 663
hepatitis A, 666–668
clinical findings, 667
differential diagnosis, 667
pathogenesis, 666
prevention, 666–667
prognosis, 668
treatment, 667–668
hepatitis B, 668–670
clinical findings, 668–669
differential diagnosis, 669
general considerations, 668
pathophysiology, 668
prevention, 668
prognosis, 669–670
treatment, 669
hepatitis C, 670–671
clinical findings, 670
differential diagnosis, 670
general considerations, 670
prevention, 670
prognosis, 671
treatment, 670–671
hepatitis D (delta agent), 671
hepatitis E, 671
intrahepatic cholestasis, 653–661
Byler disease, 660–661
Byler Syndrome, 660–661
general considerations, 653
idiopathic neonatal hepatitis (giant-cell hepatitis), 659–660
inborn errors of metabolism, 657
paucity of interlobular bile ducts, 660
perinatal or neonatal hepatitis resulting from infection, 653–655
progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (PFIC), 660–661
specific infectious agents, 655–657
"toxic" causes of neonatal cholestasis, 657–659
liver transplantation, 690–691, 691t
liver tumors, 689–690
clinical findings, 689–690
complications, 690
differential diagnosis, 690
general considerations, 689
prognosis, 690
treatment, 690
neonatal cholestatic jaundice, 653
nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, 675–676
clinical findings, 675
complications, 675
differential diagnosis, 675
prevention, 675
prognosis, 676
treatment, 675–676
other hepatitis viruses, 671
other neonatal hyperbilirubinemic conditions (noncholestatic nonhemolytic), 663–666
conjugated noncholestatic hyperbilirubinemia (Dubin-Johnson syndrome and Rotor syndrome), 665–666
unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, 664–665
portal hypertension, 681–683
clinical findings, 681–682
complications, 682
differential diagnosis, 682
general considerations, 681
prognosis, 683
treatment, 682–683
pyogenic and amebic liver abscess, 688–689
clinical findings, 688–689
complications, 689
differential diagnosis, 689
general considerations, 688
prognosis, 689
treatment, 689
Wilson disease (hepatolenticular degeneration), 677–679
clinical findings, 677–678
complications, 678
differential diagnosis, 678
general considerations, 677
prognosis, 678–679
treatment, 678
Liver transplantation, 690–691, 691t
Liver tumors
clinical findings, 689–690
history, 689–690
imaging, 690
laboratory findings, 690
symptoms and signs, 690
complications, 690
differential diagnosis, 690
general considerations, 689
prognosis, 690
treatment, 690
Living with chronic illness, psychosocial impact of, 183
Local anesthetics
adverse reactions, 1146
poisoning, treatment, 339–340, 340t
Locus heterogeneity, defined, 1087
Loeys-Dietz syndrome, 575
Long-acting bronchodilators (LABAs), in asthma management, 1124
Long-acting reversible contraceptives (LARC), 130, 140
Long QT syndrome, 607
Long-term controller medications, in asthma management, 1124
Loperamide (Imodium)
poisoning, treatment, 345
for traveler's diarrhea, 1359
Lopinavir/ritonavir, 1221t
Lorazepam, for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Lowe syndrome, 730
Low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSIL), 1348
LSIL. See Low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSIL)
Ludwig angina, 493
Lujan syndrome, 1099
Lumbar puncture, 737, 757
Lung abscess, 534
clinical findings, 534
complications, 534
differential diagnosis, 534
pathogenesis, 534
prognosis, 534
treatment, 534
Lung diseases
chronic. See Chronic lung disease

pediatric, general therapy of, 506–509
airway clearance therapy, 508
environmental hazards avoidance, 508
inhalation of medications, 507, 507t
oxygen therapy, 506–507
Lung maturation in preterm infants, acceleration of, maternal corticosteroids for, 43
Lung parenchyma
acute abnormalities
aspiration pneumonia, 531–532
atypical pneumonias, 528–531
bronchiolitis, 530–531
bronchopulmonary dysplasia, 524–526
Children's Interstitial Lung Disease (chILD) syndrome, 535–536
community-acquired bacterial pneumonia, 526–527
empyema, 527–528
hypersensitivitiy pneumonitis, 536–537
lung abscess, 534
mycoplasma pneumonia, 531
parapneumonic effusion, 527–528
pneumonia in immunocompromised host, 532–534
congenital malformations, 521–524
congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation, 523–524
congenital lobar emphysema, 522–523
congenital pulmonary airway malformation, 523–524
pulmonary agenesis, 521–522
pulmonary hypoplasia, 521–522
pulmonary sequestration, 522
Lungs of newborn, examination, 15
Lupus glomerulonephritis, 717
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 109
Lyme disease, 1288–1290
clinical findings, 1289
diagnosis, 1289
differential diagnosis, 1289
general considerations, 1288–1289
laboratory findings, 1289
prevention, 1290
symptoms and signs, 1289
Lymphadenitis
mesenteric, 1175
nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1276–1277
Lymphatic malformations, 402, 494
Lymphocytosis, 917–918
Lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), 1347
treatment, 1337t, 1347
Lymphomas, 956–960
Lymphonodular pharyngitis, acute, 1182
Lymphoproliferative disorders (LPDs), 961
Lysosomal diseases, 1071–1075, 1072t–1074t
clinical and laboratory features, 1072t–1074t
described, 1071
diagnosis, 1071
treatment, 1071

M

MAC. See Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC)
Macrocephaly
causes of, 772t
Macroglossia, 498
Macrolide, 1155t, 1166–1167
Magical thinking, of children, 78
Magnesium
absorption/metabolism, 286t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, 286t
dietary reference intakes, 287t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
nutrient requirements, 305
Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)
approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 557, 740
Magnets, poisoning, treatment, 350
Maintenance of certification programs (MOC), 3
Major histocompatibility complex class I (MHC I) deficiency, 1001
Major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC II), 1001
Malabsorption syndromes, 645t
celiac disease (gluten enteropathy), 646–647
clinical findings, 646–647
biopsy findings, 647
laboratory findings, 647
symptoms and signs, 646–647
differential diagnosis, 647
prognosis, 647
treatment, 647
clinical findings, 645–646
cow's milk protein intolerance, 648
dietary fructose intolerance, 648
disaccharidase deficiency, 647
lactase deficiency, 647
sucrase-isomaltase deficiency, 647
glucose-galactose malabsorption, 648
intestinal lymphangiectasia, 648
clinical findings, 648
differential diagnosis, 648
treatment and prognosis, 648
other genetic disorders causing, 649
abetalipoproteinemia, 649
acrodermatitis enteropathica, 649
pancreatic insufficiency, 649
protein-losing enteropathy, 646
clinical findings, 646
differential diagnosis, 646
treatment, 646
Malacia of airways, 514
Malaria
clinical findings, 1295–1296
diagnosis, 1295
differential diagnosis, 1295–1296
general considerations, 1294–1295
impact of, 1294
laboratory findings, 1295
mortality and morbidity, 1294
prevention, 1296
in returned traveler, 1364t
sequelae, 1296
symptoms and signs, 1295
travelers
chemoprophylaxis, 1360
prophylaxis and prevention, 1359–1360, 1361t–1362t
treatment, 1296, 1297f
Malassezia furfur, fungal infections due to, 1327t, 1328
Malassezia globosa, 408

Malformation, defined, 1093
Malformations of cortical development (MCD), 767–769
Malignancy, HIV infection-related, 1219
Malingering, 115
Mallet finger, 863–864
Management of the child with epilepsy, 755–756
  driving, 755–756
  education, 755
  pregnancy, 756
  privileges and precautions in daily life, 755
  school intervention and seizure response plans, 756
Manganese
  cow milk composition, 295t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Mannosidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Manualized family therapy, 165
Maple syrup urine disease, 1064–1065
Maraviroc, 1221t
Marble bone disease, 826
Marfan syndrome, 575, 824–825, 1099–1101
  cardiac defects, 551t
Marijuana
  during pregnancy, effects on infants, 32
  use by school students, 145, 147t, 149
Maroteaux-Lamy syndrome, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Mass lesions, 783
Mast cell stabilizers, in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1133
Mastoiditis, 479
Maternal blood analysis, in perinatal genetics, 1112
Maternal drug abuse/use
  anticonvulsants, 1111–1112
  genetic effects, 31–33, 1111
    alcohol, 32, 32t
    cocaine, 31
    marijuana, 32
    methamphetamine, 31
    opioids, 31–32
    tobacco smoking, 32
  while breast feeding, 292–293
Maternal phenylketonuria, 1063
Maternal polyhydramnios, 621
Maternal rubella Loeys-Dietz syndrome, cardiac defects, 551t
Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY), 1045
Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser (MRKH) syndrome, 128
MCT oil, infant formula additives, 296t
Measles, 1204–1205
  red rash in, 1173t
Measures, of health care, 5
Mebendazole
  for ascariasis, 1307
  for hookworm, 1308
  for trichinosis, 1311
  for trichuriasis (whipworm), 1307
Mechanical complications, 303
Meckel diverticulum
  clinical findings, 626
    imaging, 626
    symptoms and signs, 626
  treatment and prognosis, 626
Meconium-stained amniotic fluid, resuscitation following, 38
Medial collateral ligament injuries, 869
Medial epicondyle apophysitis, 862
Medial meniscus injuries, 868
Median body weight (MBW), 162
Mediastinum, masses, 544
  clinical findings, 544
  differential diagnosis, 544
  prognosis, 544
  treatment, 544
Medicaid, 2
Medical care
  neglect, 222
  during travel, 1352
  withdrawal of, 394–395
Medical child abuse, 222
Medical home, 71
  in health supervision visits, 242
Medical marijuana, 149
Medicare, 2
Medium-chain triglycerides (MCTs), 284
Medullary cystic disease, 715
Megalencephaly, 768
Megaloblastic anemias, 898–899
Melanocytic nevi, 401
Melanoma, 400–401
MELAS, 1105
Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, 717
Membranous glomerulonephritis, 719–720
Membranous nephropathy, 719–720
Mendelian disorders, 1099–1103, 1102f
  autosomal dominant disorders, 1099–1101
  autosomal recessive disorders, 1101–1103, 1102f
  X-linked disorders, 1103
Mendelian inheritance, 1086–1090, 1087f–1089f
  hereditary patterns, 1087–1090, 1087f–1089f
  terminology related to, 1086–1087
Meningitis
  antimicrobial agents for, 1161, 1162
  characteristics, 1235
  cryptococcosis, 1323
  E coli, 1254
    treatment, 1255
  Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections and
    differential diagnosis, 1268
    symptoms and signs, 1268
    treatment, 1269
  meningococcal infections and, 1243
  neonatal, 1254, 1255
  in newborn, 57
  nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
  pneumococcal infections and, treatment, 1237
  Salmonella, 1258
    case fatality rate of, 1259
    empiric therapy, 1258–1259
  tuberculosis and, 1274
  viral, nonpolio, 1184–1185
Meningococcal infections, 1242–1244
  complications, 1243
  differential diagnosis, 1243
  laboratory findings, 1243
  meningitis, 1243
  meningococcemia, 1243
  prevention, 1242–1243

chemoprophylaxis, 1242–1243
vaccines, 1243
prognosis, 1244
symptoms and signs, 1243
treatment, 1243–1244
Meningococcal serogroups, 273–274
Meningococcal vaccine, 273–274
administration schedule, 274
adverse events, 274
contraindications, 274
dosage, 274
precautions, 274
prior to travel, 1354t, 1355
vaccines available, 274
Meningococcemia, 1243
Meningoencephalitis, mumps and, 1208
Meningovascular syphilis, 1283
Meniscal injuries, 868–869
Menkes disease, 779t
Menstrual disorders, 127–135
amenorrhea, 127–130
dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB), 132–133
dysmenorrhea, 130–132
Mittelschmerz, 133
ovarian cysts, 134–135
polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), 128, 130
premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD), 133–134
premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 133–134
Menstruation, physiology, 125
Mental health
pediatrician's role in, 174, 174t
in primary care setting, models of care, 172
screening, in office setting, tools, 175–176
Mental illness, chronic, reactions to, 183
Mental retardation, inborn errors of metabolism, 1055
Mental status examination (MSE), 179–180, 180t
Meropenem, for Hib septic arthritis, 1269
MERRF, 1105
Mesenteric cysts, 636
Mesenteric lymphadenitis, 1175
metabolic acidosis, 707–708
metabolic alkalosis, 708
Metabolic autoregulation, 382
Metabolic disorders
in newborn infant, 68–70
hyperglycemia, 68
hypocalcemia, 69
inborn error of metabolism, 69–70
quality initiatives in, 1078–1079
Metabolic emergencies, inborn errors of metabolism and, management, 1056
Metabolic testing, 737
Metabolism
inborn errors of, 657, 783–784, 1054–1079. See also Inborn errors of metabolism
toxicology and, 332
Metachromatic leukodystrophy
clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Metatarsus adductus, 816
Metazoal infections, 1306–1315
cestode infections, 1312–1314
nematode infections, 1306–1311
trematode infections, 1314–1315
Methamphetamine, during pregnancy, effects on infants, 31
Methanol, poisoning, treatment, 346–347
Methemoglobinemia
hematologic disorders, 913
Methicillin-resistant S aureus (MRSA), 1237–1238
Methicillin-susceptible S aureus (MSSA), 1238
Methods counseling, about contraception, 136
Methylation, 1085
Methylmalonic acidemia, 1066–1068
Methylphenidate, for ADHD, 91, 92–93
Metronidazole, 1169
for amebic infection, 1302
MHC II. See Major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC II)
Microbiology, of acute otitis media (AOM), 472–473, 473t, 479
Microcephaly, 770–772
causes of, 771t, 772t
clinical findings, 771, 772
differential diagnosis, 771, 772
imaging studies, 771
laboratory findings, 771
macrocephaly, 772
symptoms and signs, 771
treatment and prognosis, 771–772
Microdeletion, 562
Microdeletion syndrome, 1085
Microduplication syndrome, 1085
Microhematuria, 716
Microlipid, infant formula additives, 296t
Microsporum canis, 407
Microtia, 481
Midazolam
controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Middle ear, acute trauma to, 480
Migraine, classification of, 760t
Milia, 399
Miliaria, 400
Milrinone, 379, 560
in patient with shock, 380t
Miltefosine, for free-living ameba, 1305
Minerals
in breast milk, 17
nutritional requirements and, 285, 286t, 287t
Mirtazapine, for depression, 202
Mitochondrial disorders, 1105–1106
Mitochondrial inheritance, 1091–1092
Mitosis, 1080
Mitral valve prolapse, 573–574
Mittelschmerz, 133
M-mode echocardiography, 556
MMR vaccination, 268–270
administration schedule, 268–269
adverse effects, 269–270
adverse reactions, 1146
contraindications, 269
dosage, 268–269
measles
antibody preparations, 270
outbreak control, 269
precautions, 269
routine, 268–269
travel-related, 269, 1354t, 1355
vaccines available, 268

Mobitz type I (Wenckebach) atrioventricular block, 608, 608f, 609f
Mobitz type II second-degree heart block, 608f
MOC. See Maintenance of certification programs (MOC)
Model for Improvement (MFI), 4, 4f
Modified Checklist for Autism in Toddlers, 94–95
MODY (maturity-onset diabetes of the young), 1045
Moisturizers, in atopic dermatitis management, 1137
Molecular biology
  in clinical genetics, 1085–1086
  in genetic diagnosis, 1085–1086
Molecular genetics, 1085–1086
Molluscum contagiosum, 409
Mongolian spots, 401
  in newborn, 14
Monitoring the Future survey, 145
Monoarticular arthritis, gonorrheal, 1245
Monobactam, 1155t
  adverse reactions, 144
Monochorial twins, 33–34
MonoMAC syndrome, 1004–1005
Mononucleosis, infectious
  red rash in, 1173t
Monosomy rescue, isodisomy by, 1084f
Monosymptomatic enuresis, 80
Mood disorders, 200–208
  bipolar disorder, 203–205
  disruptive mood dysregulation disorder (DMDD), 205–206
Mood stabilizers, for PTSD, 196
Mood swings, in adolescence, 117
Moraxella catarrhalis, 471, 512
Morbidity, data, and adolescent substance abuse, 150
Moro reflex, newborns, 16
Morphine, for pain and anxiety control, 390t
Morquio disease, 826–827
Morquio syndrome, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Mortality, 164
  rate in bulimic patients, 168
Mosaicism, 1082–1083
  confined placental, 1112
Mosquito bites, prevention, in malaria prevention, 1359–1360
Motion sickness, during travel, 1353
Motorola, 7
Motor vehicle injuries, prevention
  anticipatory guidance, 237
Mottling, 400
Mouth breathing, 494–496
Mouth of newborn, examination, 15
Movement disorders, brain injury related, 874
MSE (mental status examination), 179–180, 180t
Mucociliary clearance, disorders, 517–521
  bronchiectasis, 520–521
  bronchiolitis obliterans, 519–520
  cystic fibrosis, 517–518
  primary ciliary dyskinesia, 518–519
Mucocutaneous diseases, 438–439
Mucocutaneous infection, recurrent, 1186
Mucoid discharge, 418
Mucoid exopolysaccharide, 1256
Mucolipidosis II, clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Mucopolysaccharidoses, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Mucorales, fungal infections due to, 1326, 1327t
Mucormycosis, 1326
Mullerian dysgenesis, 128
Multifactorial inheritance, 1090
  cleft lip, 1106–1107
  cleft palate, 1106–1107
  disorders, 1106–1107
  neural tube defects, 1107–1108
Multiorgan system failure (MOSF), 375
Multiple aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAs), 578–579
Multiple births, 33–34
  complications
    IUGR, 33
    obstetric, 34
    preterm delivery, 33–34
  incidence of, 33
Multiple sclerosis, 795
  clinical findings, 795
  differential diagnosis, 795
  treatment, 795
Multisystemic therapy (MST), for conduct disorders, 210
Mumps, 1208–1209
Murine typhus, 1212–1213
Murmurs, 551–552
  characteristics, 551
    intensity, 551
    location and radiation, 551
    quality, 551
    relationship to cardiac cycle and duration, 551
    variation with position, 551
  innocent, 551–552
    innominate or carotid bruit, 552
    newborn murmur, 551
    peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis (PPS), 551–552
    pulmonary ejection murmur, 552
    still murmur, 552
    venous hum, 552
  innominate or carotid bruit, 552
  newborn, 551
  pathologic, 552t
  pulmonary ejection, 552
  still, 552
  venous hum, 552
Muscle biopsy, in muscular disorder evaluation, 800
Muscular atrophy, spinal, 806t, 1103
Muscular disorders, 799–806
  benign acute childhood myositis, 807
  chronic polyneuropathy, 810–811
  clinical findings, 799–800
  complications, 800
  electrophysiologic studies, 799–800
  genetic testing and carrier detection, 800
  laboratory findings, 799–800
  muscle biopsy, 800
  myasthenic syndromes, 807–809
  peripheral nerve palsies, 809–810
  serum enzymes, 799
  treatment, 800
Muscular dystrophy
  Becker, 801t, 1103
  congenital, 803t–804t
  Duchenne, 801t, 1103

facioscapulohumeral, 802t
limb-girdle, 801t
Mushrooms, poisoning, treatment, 350–351
Mutism, selective, 191
Mutism disorder, selective, 191
Myalgia, epidemic, 1182
Myasthenic syndromes, 807–809
clinical findings, 807–808
electrophysiologic studies, 808
imaging, 808
complications, 809
cholinergic crisis, 809
myasthenic crisis, 809
surgical measures, 809
general considerations, 807
laboratory findings, 808
antibody testing, 808
anticholinesterase inhibitor testing, 808
genetic testing, 808
prognosis, 809
symptoms and signs, 807
congenital myasthenic syndromes, 807
juvenile myasthenia gravis, 807
neonatal (transient) myasthenia, 807
treatment, 808
anticholinesterase inhibitors, 808
general and supportive measures, 808
immunomodulatory treatment, 808
Mycobacteria, nontuberculous, infections with, 1276–1278
Mycobacterium, 639
Mycobacterium avium, 536
Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC), 1276–1277
Mycobacterium bovis, 279
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 436, 504–505
Mycoplasma pneumonia, 531
clinical findings, 531
complications, 531
prognosis, 531
treatment, 531
Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 491, 1236, 1295
Mycotic infections, 1316–1329
blastomycosis, 1317
candidiasis, 1318–1321
coccidioidomycosis, 1321–1322
cryptococcosis, 1323–1324
histoplasmosis, 1324–1325
Pneumocystis jiroveci infection, 1328–1329
sporotrichosis, 1325–1326
Myelodysplasia, 827–828
Myelography, 741
Myeloperoxidase deficiency, 916t
Myeloproliferative diseases, 951–952
Myocardial biopsy, 595
Myocarditis, 595–596
cardiac MRI, 595
echocardiography, 595
electrocardiography, 595
imaging, 595
myocardial biopsy, 595
prognosis, 596
symptoms and signs, 595
treatment, 595–596
Myopathy
central role, 802t
congential, 802t
metabolic, 803t
myotubular, 802t
Myopia (nearsightedness), 419, 419f
Myositis ossificans, 829
Myotonia congenita, 805t
Myotonic dystrophy, 804t–805t, 1104
Myringosclerosis, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478

N

Naegleria fowleri, 1305
Nail bed injury, 863
NAIT. See Neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia
Naloxone, 392
Naphthalene, poisoning, treatment, 345
Naproxen, 392
NAPRTCS. See North American Pediatric Renal Trials & Collaborative Study (NAPRTCS)
Narcolepsy, 758–759
Narcotic depression, resuscitation following, 38
Nasal cannula, 362, 362t
Nasal furuncle, 488
Nasal infection, 488
Nasal intermittent positive-pressure ventilation (NIPPV)
for hyaline membrane disease in preterm infants, 43
Nasal trauma, 488–489
Nasolacrimal duct obstruction, 433–434, 434f
clinical findings, 433–434, 434f
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 433
prevention, 433
prognosis, 434
treatment, 434
Nasolacrimal system disorders, 433–435
congenital dacryocystocele, 434–435, 434f
clinical findings, 434
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 434
prevention, 434
prognosis, 435
treatment, 435
dacryocystitis, 435
clinical findings, 435, 435f
complications, 435
differential diagnosis, 435
pathogenesis, 435
prevention, 435
treatment, 435
nasolacrimal duct obstruction, 433–434, 434f
clinical findings, 433–434, 434f
complications, 434
differential diagnosis, 434
pathogenesis, 433
prevention, 433
prognosis, 434
treatment, 434
National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act of 1986, 249
National Kidney Foundation (NKF), 734
National organizations, health care quality improvement and, 2–3
National Patient Safety Goals, 3
National Pediatric Cardiology Quality Improvement Collaborative (NPC-QIC), 586–587

National Quality Forum (NQF), 2
National Research Council, on ASD, 95
NBT. See Nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT)
Necator americanus, 1307
Neck, of newborn, examination, 15
Necrotizing enterocolitis, in preterm infants, 44–45
  clinical findings, 44
  course and prognosis, 45
  general considerations, 44
  treatment
    medical, 44
    surgical, 44–45
Necrotizing fasciitis, group A streptococcal infections and, 1227
Neglect
  clinical findings, 217–222
  differential diagnosis, 223
  emotional abuse, 221
  mandatory reporting of, by physician, 177
  medical care, 222
  prevention, 217
  prognosis, 224
  treatment, 223
Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection, 59, 1244, 1332, 1339
  clinical findings, 1333
  complications, 1339
  differential diagnosis, 1339
  general considerations, 1333
  laboratory findings, 1339
  treatment, 1339
Neisseria meningitidis, 273, 436, 512
Nelfinavir, 1221t
Nematode infections, 1306–1311
  ascariasis, 1306–1307
  enterobiasis (pinworms), 1306
  hookworm, 1307–1308
  raccoon roundworm infections, 1311
  strongyloidiasis, 1308–1309
  trichinosis, 1310–1311
  trichuriasis (whipworm), 1307
  visceral larva migrans, 1309–1310
Neonatal, general considerations, 1045
Neonatal acne, 400
Neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (NAIT), 922
Neonatal autoimmune thrombocytopenia, 922
Neonatal bacterial hepatitis, 657
Neonatal cephalic pustulosis, 400
Neonatal cholestasis
  clinical features of, 654t
  histologic features of, 654t
  metabolic and genetic causes of, 658t
Neonatal cholestasis, "toxic" causes of, 657–659
  inspissated bile syndrome, 659
  neonatal ischemic-hypoxic conditions, 657
  parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis (PNAC), 659
Neonatal cholestatic jaundice, 653
Neonatal chylous ascites
  clinical findings, 633
    laboratory findings, 633
    symptoms and signs, 633
  complications and sequelae, 634
  differential diagnosis, 633–634
  treatment and prognosis, 634
Neonatal conjunctivitis, 1280, 1281
Neonatal diabetes, general considerations, 1045
Neonatal Graves disease, 1021
Neonatal hepatitis, 653–655
  infectious causes of, 655t
Neonatal hepatitis B virus (HBV) disease, 655–657
Neonatal infections, 1186–1187
  treatment, 1188
Neonatal intensive care
  perinatal resuscitation, 34–39
  preterm infant, 39–49
Neonatal ischemic-hypoxic conditions, 657
Neonatal jaundice, 19–25
  bilirubin, 19
    acute bilirubin encephalopathy, 23
    conjugated, 20, 22
    excess accumulation of, 20, 20f
    heme, 19–20
    kernicterus, 19, 23
    overproduction, 21–22
    toxicity, 22–23
    unconjugated, 20, 22–23
  general considerations, 19–20
  hyperbilirubinemia, 19
    breast-feeding, 22
    evaluation, 23–24
    factors affecting risk of, 24t
    indirect, treatment of, 24–26
    pathologic unconjugated, 21–22, 21t
    premature infants, 22
    racial differences, 22
  physiologic jaundice, 20–21, 20f
Neonatal jaundice with urinary tract infection, 657
Neonatal meningitis, 1254, 1255
Neonatal (transient) myasthenia, 807
Neonatal seizures
  clinical findings, 67
  differential diagnosis of, 67, 67t
  hypocalcemia and, 67, 68, 69
  later-onset, 67
  prognosis, 68
  subarachnoid hemorrhage and, 68
  subdural hemorrhage and, 68
  treatment, 68
Neonatal sepsis, 1161, 1254, 1255
Neonatal stroke, 68
Neonatal thrombocytopenia, 922
Neoplastic disease, 945–976
  acute lymphoblastic leukemia, 945–948
  acute myeloid leukemia, 948–951
  bone tumors, 965–966
  brain tumors, 952–956
  chronic myelogenous leukemia, 951–952
  hematopoietic stem cell transplant, 971–973
  hepatic tumors, 969–970
  juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, 952
  Langerhans cell histiocytosis, 970–971
  lymphomas, 956–960
  lymphoproliferative disorders, 961
  myeloproliferative diseases, 951–952
  neuroblastoma, 961–963
  retinoblastoma, 968–969
  rhabdomyosarcoma, 967–968
  transient myeloproliferative disorder, 952
  Wilms tumor, 963–964
Neostigmine, 808

Neostigmine test, 808
Nephroblastoma, 963–964
Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (NDI), 730–731
  acquired, 730–731
  diagnosis, 731
  hereditary, 730–731
  infants with, 731
  symptoms of, 730–731
Nephrolithiasis, 731–732
  cystinuria, 731
  primary hyperoxaluria, 731–732
Nephrology, pediatric, 733–734
Nephronophthisis, 715
Nephropathy, in diabetes mellitus, 1049
Nerve conduction velocity testing (NCV), 737
Nervous system
  congenital malformations of, 767–770
  degenerative disorders, of infancy and childhood
    CNS degenerative disorders, 778t–780t
  disorders affecting, 741–811
    altered states of consciousness, 741–744
    ataxias, 777–783
    ataxias of childhood, 777
    bacterial meningitis, 791–792
    benign acute childhood myositis (myalgia cruris epidemica), 807
    brain abscess, 792–793
    cerebral palsy, 789–790
    cerebrovascular disease, 764–767
    chronic polyneuropathy, 810–811
    CNS degenerative disorders in, 777
    extrapyramidal disorders, 786–789
    headaches, 759–762
    infections and inflammatory disorders of CNS, 790–791
    intermittent/episodic ataxias, 783–784
    multiple sclerosis, 795
    myasthenic syndromes, 807–809
    noninfectious inflammatory disorders of CNS, 794
    other infections, 793–794
    other parainfectious encephalopathies, 795
    peripheral nerve palsies, 809–810
    progressive ataxias, 784–785
    pseudotumor cerebri (idiopathic intracranial hypertension), 762–763
    seizure disorders (epilepsies), 744–758
    sleep disorders, 758–759
    syndromes presenting as acute flaccid weakness, 796–799
    viral infections, 793
  neurocutaneous dysplasias, 772–776
Netherton syndrome, 1006
Neural tube defects, 1107–1108
Neuroblastoma, 961–963
  clinical findings, 961–962
  general considerations, 961
  imaging, 962
  laboratory findings, 962
  staging, 962
  symptoms and signs, 961–962
  treatment and prognosis, 963
Neurocutaneous dysplasias, 772–776
  encephalofacial angiomatosis (Sturge-Weber disease), 775–776
    clinical findings, 776
      imaging and special tests, 776
      symptoms and signs, 776
    differential diagnosis, 776
    management and treatment, 776
  neurofibromatosis type 1, 773–774
    complications, 773
    differential diagnosis, 773
    laboratory findings, 773
    symptoms and signs, 773
    treatment, 774
  neurofibromatosis type 2, 774
  tuberous sclerosis (Bourneville disease), 774–775
    imaging studies and special tests, 775
    symptoms and signs, 774–775
      cardiopulmonary involvement, 775
      dermatologic features, 774
      eye involvement, 775
      neurologic features, 775
      renal lesions, 775
      skeletal involvement, 775
    treatment, 775
  Von Hippel-Lindau disease (retrocerebellar angiomatosis), 776
Neurodiagnostics
  diagnostic testing, 735–737
    electroencephalography (EEG), 735–737
    electromyography and nerve conduction velocity testing, 737
    evoked potentials, 737
    genetic/metabolic testing, 737
    lumbar puncture, 737
  history and examination, 735
    history, 735
    neurologic examination, 735
  pediatric neuroradiologic procedures, 737–741
    cerebral angiography, 741
    computed tomography, 737–740
    magnetic resonance imaging, 740
    myelography, 741
    positron emission tomography (PET), 740
    single-photon emission computerized tomography, 740
    ultrasonography, 740–741
Neurofibromatosis
  type I, 773–774, 1099
    complications, 773
    differential diagnosis, 773
    laboratory findings, 773
    symptoms and signs, 773
    treatment, 774
  type II, 774
Neurogenic bladder, 879–880
  classification, 879
  treatment, 879–880
Neurogenic bowel, 880
  treatment, 880
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 353
  antipsychotics and, 214
Neuroleptics
  conventional, 213
  for PTSD, 196

Neurologic and muscular disorders, 735–814
disorders affecting the nervous system in infants and children, 741–811
abnormal head size, 770–772
acute ataxias of childhood, 777–783
altered states of consciousness, 741–744
ataxias of childhood, 777
bacterial meningitis, 791–792
benign acute childhood myositis (myalgia cruris epidemica), 807
brain abscess, 792–793
central nervous system degenerative disorders of infancy and childhood, 777
cerebral palsy, 789–790
cerebrovascular disease, 764–767
chronic polyneuropathy, 810–811
congenital causes of chronic and episodic ataxias, 783
congenital malformations of the nervous system, 767–770
disorders of childhood affecting muscles, 799–807
encephalopathy of human immunodeficiency virus infection, 793
extrapyramidal disorders, 786–789
headaches, 759–762
infections and inflammatory disorders of the central nervous system, 790–791
intermittent/episodic ataxias, 783–784
multiple sclerosis, 795
myasthenic syndromes, 807–809
neurocutaneous dysplasias, 772–776
noninfectious inflammatory disorders of the central nervous system, 794
other infections, 793–794
other parainfectious encephalopathies, 795
peripheral nerve palsies, 809–810
progressive ataxias, 784–785
pseudotumor cerebri (idiopathic intracranial hypertension), 762–763
seizure disorders (epilepsies), 744–758
sleep disorders, 758–759
syndromes presenting as acute flaccid weakness, 796–799
viral infections, 793
miscellaneous neuromuscular disorders, 811–814
floppy infant syndrome, 811–813
neurologic assessment and neurodiagnostics, 735–741
diagnostic testing, 735–737
history and examination, 735
pediatric neuroradiologic procedures, 737–741
Neurologic assessment and neurodiagnostics, 735–741
diagnostic testing, 735–737
history and examination, 735
pediatric neuroradiologic procedures, 737–741
Neurologic disorders, in newborn
hypotonia, 68
intracranial hemorrhage, 68
seizures, 67–68, 67t
Neurologic examination, 735, 736t
of newborn, 16
Neuromotor deficits, brain injury related, 874
Neuromuscular blockade, 384
Neuromuscular conditioning, 840
Neuromuscular disorders, 541
Neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis (NCL), 780t
Neurosyphilis, treatment, 1285, 1336t
Neurotransmitter metabolism disorders, 1077–1078
Neutropenia, 913–915, 1001
classification of, 914t
clinical findings, 914
general considerations, 913–914
prognosis, 915
treatment, 914–915
Neutrophil function disorders, 915–917
classification, 915–917, 916t
clinical findings, 917
prognosis, 917
treatment, 917
Neutrophilia, 915
Nevi, 400–401
Nevirapine, 1221t
Nevus sebaceus, 403
Nevus simplexes, 401
Newborn, 10–70
anemia in, 64–65
cardiac problems in, 50–52
arrhythmias, 51–52
persistent pulmonary hypertension, 51
structural heart disease, 50–51
care, 16–17
levels of, 10, 16
circumcision in, 17–18
contraindication, 18
medical benefits, 17
risks, 18
congenital syphilis
differential diagnosis, 1284
symptoms and signs, 1283
treatment, 1284–1285
early hospital discharge of, 17
contraindications to, 19t
feeding of, 17, 18t
gastrointestinal and abdominal surgical conditions in, 52–56
abdominal wall defects, 54–55
diaphragmatic hernia, 54–55
esophageal atresia, 52
gastroesophageal reflux, 55
gastrointestinal bleeding, 55
gastroschisis, 54
intestinal obstruction, 52–53, 53t
omphalocele, 54
tracheoesophageal fistula, 52
hearing screening, 18–19, 482
hematologic disorders, 63–65
anemia, 64–65
polycythemia, 65
thrombocytopenia, 63–64, 64t
vitamin K deficiency bleeding, 63
inborn errors of metabolism in
acute presentation, 1055
screening, 1056–1057
infections, 56–63, 1186–1187
bacterial, 56–60
congenital, 60–61
perinatally acquired, 61–63

routes of, 56
susceptibility of, 56
treatment, 1188
intensive care for, 34–49
measurements in, 1094f
medical history, 10–16
abdomen, 15
chest, 15
ears, 15
examination at birth, 13–14, 13t
examination in nursery, 14–16
eyes, 14–15
face, 14
genitalia and anus, 15
gestational age assessment, 10–13, 11t, 12f
growth assessment, 10–13, 11t, 12f
head, 14
heart, 15
lungs, 15
mouth, 15
neck, 15
neurologic examination, 16
nose, 15
skeleton, 15–16
skin, 14
metabolic disorders, 68–70
hyperglycemia, 69
hypocalcemia, 69
inborn error of metabolism, 69–70
murmur, 551
neurologic problems in, 67–68
intracranial hemorrhage, 68
neonatal stroke, 68
seizures, 67–68, 67t
in nurseries, group A streptococcal infections and, 1227
oral examination
cleft lip and palate, 464–465, 464f, 465f
frena, 464, 464f, 465f
soft tissue variations, 465
sucking pads, 463, 464f
teeth, 463–464
period, defined, 10
preterm. See Preterm infants
problems associated with
birth trauma, 30, 31f
heart murmurs, 30
hypoglycemia, 26–28, 27t
jaundice. See Neonatal jaundice
maternal drug abuse, 31–33
multiple births, 33–34
respiratory distress, 28–30, 28t
tyrosinemia medical history of, 1063
rashes in, infections due to, 1182–1183
renal disease in, 65–66, 66t
renal failure, 66
renal vein thrombosis, 66–67
urinary tract anomalies, 66
screening, in health supervision visits, 234
Nexplanon, 140
Next generation sequencing (NextGen), 1085
NF-kB signaling defects, 1000–1001
Niacin
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
toxicity effect, 289t
Nicotine, 156
Niemann-Pick disease, 779t
clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Nightmares, 86
Night terrors, 86. See also Sleep disorders
Night waking, 86
Nijmegen breakage syndrome, 1000
Nipple discharge, 123–124
Nitrates, poisoning, treatment, 351
Nitrites, poisoning, treatment, 351
Nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT), 990
Nitroglycerin, 560–561
Nitroprusside, in patient with shock, 380t
NKF. See National Kidney Foundation (NKF)
NNRTIs (non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors), 1221t
Nocturnal enuresis (NE), 80–81
Nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy (NFLE), 759
Nonaccidental trauma, 429
clinical findings, 429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 429
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
Nonaccidental trauma (NAT), 385
Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)
clinical findings, 675
history, 675
imaging, 675
laboratory findings, 675
symptoms and signs, 675
complications, 675
differential diagnosis, 675
prevention, 675
prognosis, 676
treatment, 675–676
Nonallergic rhinitis, 487
Noncardiac chest pain, 597
Noncholestatic nonhemolytic, 663–666
conjugated noncholestatic hyperbilirubinemia (Dubin-Johnson syndrome and Rotor syndrome), 665–666
unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, 664–665
breast milk jaundice, 664
congenital hypothyroidism, 664
Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 665
drug-induced hyperbilirubinemia, 665
Gilbert syndrome, 664–665
upper intestinal obstruction, 664
Nonepileptic paroxysmal events, 751t–752t
Non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHLs), 958–960
clinical findings, 958–960
diagnostic evaluation, 959–960
general considerations, 958
prognosis, 960
symptoms and signs, 958–959
treatment, 960

Nonimmune acquired hemolytic anemia, 912
Nonimmune hemolysis, 21–22
Noninfectious inflammatory disorders of the central nervous system, 794
  acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis (ADEM), 794
    clinical findings, 794
      imaging, 794
      laboratory findings, 794
      treatment, 794
    prognosis, 794
    treatment, 794
  paraneoplastic syndromes, 794
Noninflammatory pain syndromes, 889–890
Noninvasive ventilation (NIV), 363
Nonionic detergents, poisoning, treatment, 357
Nonketotic hyperglycinemia, 1065–1066
Nonmendelian disorders, 1104–1106
  anticipation-related disorders, 1104–1105
  imprinting disorders, 1104
  mitochondrial disorders, 1105–1106
Nonmendelian inheritance, 1090–1092
  epigenetic regulation, 1090–1091
  genetic anticipation, 1091
  imprinting, 1091
  mitochondrial inheritance, 1091–1092
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), 1221t
Nonopioid analgesics, 392
Nonossifying fibroma, 837
Nonparametric method of establishing reference intervals, 1368–1369
Nonpolio viral meningitis, 1184–1185
Nonrapid eye movement (NREM) sleep, 85. See also Parasomnias
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 392
  in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 884
Nonsyndromic cleft lip, empiric risk, 1090t
Nonsyndromic cleft palate, empiric risks, 1090t
Nontuberculous mycobacteria (NTM), 1276
Noonan syndrome, 1101
  cardiac defects, 551t
Norepinephrine, in patient with shock, 380t
Normal pulmonary vascular resistance, 564
Normal ranges, 1367
Normal teeth eruption, 465–466
North American Pediatric Renal Trials & Collaborative Study (NAPRTCS), 733
Nose
  acute viral rhinitis, 483–484, 484f
  choanal atresia, 487
  epistaxis, 488
  foreign bodies in, 489
  nasal infection, 488
  nasal trauma, 488–489
  of newborn, examination, 15
  recurrent rhinitis, 487
  rhinosinusitis, 485–487
Nosocomial infections
  antimicrobial agents for, 1161–1162
Nosocomial infections, Pseudomonas infections and, 1256
NQF. See National Quality Forum (NQF)
NRTIs (nucleoside and nucleotide transcriptase inhibitors), 1221t
Nuclear factor-kB (NF-kB), signaling defects, 1000–1001
Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAAT)
  for Chlamydia, 1332, 1333
  for N gonorrhoeae, 1339
  for trichomoniasis, 1344
Nucleoside and nucleotide transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), 1221t
Nummular eczema, 412
Nursery, newborn, quality assessment and improvement in, 70
Nursing bottle caries. See Early childhood caries (ECC)
Nutrition, in bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 525
  for children, 296–301
    overweight and obesity, 298–301
    undernutrition, 297–298
  delivery of, 388–389
  enteral, 388
  growth and, 281, 282t
  for infants
    breast feeding, 285–294
    dietary products, 294–296, 296t
  parenteral, 389
  support, 301–303
    enteral, 301–302
    parental, 302–303
Nutritional anemias, 897–899
Nutritional assessment, 388
Nutritional requirements, 281–285, 282t
  calcium, 305
  carbohydrates and, 284–285
  dextrose, 303–304
  electrolytes, 305–307, 306t
  energy-related, 281–282, 282t, 303
  fluid requirements, 307
  growth and, 281, 282t
  lipids and, 283–284, 304–305
  magnesium, 305
  major minerals and, 285, 286t, 287t, 305–307
  monitoring, 307
    growth, urine, and blood, 307
    intake and output record, 307
    physical examination, 307
  nitrogen, 304
    dosing guidelines, 305
    intravenous amino acid solutions, 305
    monitoring, 305
    protein requirements, 305
  phosphorus, 305
  protein, 282–283, 282t
  trace elements and, 285, 287t, 288t, 306
  vitamins and, 285, 287t, 307
Nutritional support, 301–303, 302t, 388
  enteral, 301–302
  parental, 302–303
Nutritional support for preterm infants in nursery, 40–41, 40t
Nutrition counseling, 239

NuvaRing, 138. See also Intravaginal ring
Nystagmus, 455

O
Obesity
  adolescents, 118–120
    background, 118–119, 118f
    comorbidities, 118
    complications, 118, 118f
    prevalence, 119
    screening, 119, 119t
    treatment, 119–120, 120t
  children, and nutrition, 298–301
  clinical findings, 300
    assessments, 300
    definitions, 300
    risk factors, 300
  general considerations, 298
  treatment, 300–301
Object permanence, development of, 75, 76
Observation option, for acute otitis media (AOM), 473–474t
Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 195–196
  general considerations, 195
  identification and diagnosis, 195
  prognosis, 195
  treatment, 195
Obstructive shock, 314
Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), 494–496, 545
Obstructive uropathy, 715
Occlusives, in atopic dermatitis management, 1137
OCD. See Osteochondritis dissecans
Ocular foreign bodies, 424–425, 424f
  clinical findings, 424
  complications, 424
  differential diagnosis, 424
  prevention, 424
  prognosis, 425
  treatment, 424–425, 424f
Ocular larva migrans, 1310
Ocular manifestations of aids, 443–444
  complications, 444
  differential diagnosis, 444
  pathogenesis, 443–444
  prognosis, 444
  treatment, 444
Ocular toxoplasmosis, 1299
Oculocerebrorenal syndrome, 730
Odontogenic pain, 468
Office-based treatment, for substance abuse, 155, 155t
Office pediatrics, 225–247
Office screening, substance abuse and, 152
OGTT. See Oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT)
Olanzapine, for bipolar disorder, 204
Oligohydramnios, 66
Oligohydramnios sequence, 1109
Oligosaccharidoses, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t–1073t
Oliguria, in newborn, 66
Omalizumab, in asthma management, 1128
Omenn syndrome, 995
Omphalitis, in newborn, 59
Omphalocele, in newborn, 54
Onychomycosis, candidiasis and, 1318
Oophoritis, mumps and, 1208
Open School, 4
Ophthalmia neonatorum, 435–436, 436f
  clinical findings, 436
  complications, 436
  differential diagnosis, 436
  pathogenesis, 436
  prevention, 436
  prognosis, 436
  treatment, 436
Ophthalmic examination
  alignment and motility evaluation, 422, 422f, 422t, 423f
  external examination, 421
  history, 420
  ophthalmoscopic examination, 423
  pupils, 421–422, 421f–422f
  visual acuity, 420–421
Ophthalmoscopic examination, 423
Opiates, poisoning, treatment, 351–352
Opioid analgesics, 391–392
Opioids, 391
  poisoning, treatment, 351–352
  during pregnancy, effects on infants, 31–32
  clinical findings, 31–32
  prognosis, 32
  treatment, 32
Opportunistic fungal infections, 1326–1328, 1327t
Oppositional defiant disorder, 208–209
  general considerations, 208
  identification and diagnosis, 208
  treatment, 208
Optic atrophy, 452–453
Optic nerve diseases, 450–453
  optic atrophy, 452–453
  optic nerve hypoplasia, 451
  optic neuritis, 452
  optic neuropathy, 450
  papilledema, 451–452
Optic nerve hypoplasia, 451
Optic neuritis, 452
  tuberculosis and, 1276
Optic neuropathy, 450
Oral anticoagulants
  poisoning, treatment, 358–359
Oral candidiasis, 1318, 1319–1320
Oral contraceptive pills, 138
  contraindications, 136, 137t
  estrogenic, progestogenic, and combined effects, 139t
  noncontraceptive health benefits, 138t
  progestin-only pills (POP), 139
Oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT), 130
Oral hypoglycemics, poisoning, treatment, 352–353
Oral medicine
  dental caries, 460–463
  dental emergencies, 467–468, 467f
  oral examination of the newborn and infant, 463–465, 464f, 465f
  pediatric oral health, 459–460
  periodontal disease, 466–467, 466f
  teeth eruption, 465–466
Oral retinoids, 405
Oral sex, adolescent and, 1330
Orbital cellulitis, Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections and, 1269–1270
Orbital tumors, 454, 454f

Orbit disorders, 453–458
amblyopia, 455–456
craniofacial anomalies, 453–454
dyslexia, 458
exotropia (wall-eyed), 457–458, 457f
nystagmus, 455
orbital tumors, 454, 454f
periorbital and orbital cellulitis, 453
strabismus, 456–457, 456f
unexplained decrease in vision, 458
Orchitis, mumps and, 1208
Organic acidemia, newborn and, 70
Organic acidemias, 1066–1069
carboxylase deficiency, 1068
described, 1066
glutaric acidemia type I, 1068–1069
methylmalonic, 1066–1068
propionic, 1066–1068, 1067t
Organon Teknika Corporation, 279
Organophosphate insecticides, poisoning, treatment, 348–349
Organs, donation, 395
Orlistat, for obesity, 119
Ornithosis, 1279–1281. See also Chlamydophila infections
Orofacial trauma, 467, 467f
Orthodontic referral, 469
Orthopedics. See also specific disease and topics
avascular necrosis, 835–836
bone and joint-related infection. See also specific infections
diskitis, 834
osteomyelitis, 832–833
pyogenic arthritis, 833–834
septic arthritis of hip, 834–835
transient synovitis of hip, 834–835
inflammatory arthritis, 824
kyphosis, 823
musculoskeletal system-related conditions
achondroplasia, 826
arthrogryposis multiplex congenita, 824
bunions, 818
cavus foot, 817–818
femoral anteversion, 819
flatfoot, 817
foot problems, 816–818
genu valgum, 818–820
genu varum, 818–820
Klippel-Feil syndrome, 825
Marfan syndrome, 824–825
metatarsus adductus, 816
osteochondrodystrophy, 826–827
osteogenesis imperfecta, 825–826
osteopetrosis, 826
scoliosis, 822–823
slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE), 821, 865
Sprengel deformity, 825
talipes calcaneovalgus, 817
tibial torsion, 819
neurologic disorders-related, 827–828
cerebral palsy, 827
myelodysplasia, 827–828
prenatal origin-related conditions, 815–816
clubfoot, 816–817
congenital amputations, 815–816
congenital limb deficiencies, 815–816
deformities of extremities, 816–821
developmental dysplasia of hip joint, 819–820
metatarsus adductus, 816
torticollis, 821–822
quality assurance/improvement initiatives, 839
spine conditions, 821–823
tenosynovitis, 824
trauma-related, 828–832
contusions, 829
dislocations, 829–830
fractures, 830–832
myositis ossificans, 829
soft tissues, 828
sprains, 828, 829
subluxations, 829–830
vascular lesions, 835–836
Orthostatic hypotension, 166
Ortolani sign, 819
OSA. See Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)
Osgood-Schlatter disease, 835t, 868
Osler-Rendu-Weber syndrome, 636
Osmolarity
cow milk composition, 295t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Osmotic therapies, 383–384
Osteitis condensans generalisata, 826
Osteochondritis dissecans (OCD), 836, 863
Osteochondrodystrophy, 826–827
Osteochondroma, 836–837
Osteogenesis imperfecta, 825–826, 1100–1101
Osteoid osteoma, 837
Osteomyelitis, 832–833, 838, 1238
chronic, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
treatment, 1241
Osteopetrosis, 826
Osteoporosis, 163–164
Osteosarcoma, 837–838, 965–966
Otitis externa (OE), 470–471
clinical findings, 470
complications, 470
pathogenesis, 470
treatment, 470–471
Otitis media
acute. See Acute otitis media (AOM)
clinical findings, 479
imaging studies, 479
microbiology, 479
symptoms and signs, 479
complications of, 478–479, 478f
differential diagnosis, 479
with effusion. See Otitis media with effusion (OME)
pathogenesis, 479
pneumococcal infections and, treatment, 1237
prognosis, 480
treatment, 480
Otitis media with effusion (OME), 477–480, 478f
clinical findings, 477
management, 477
prognosis and sequelae, 477
Outcome measures, 5
Outpatient treatment, 166
Ovarian cysts, 134–135
Overgrowth syndromes, 1109
Overweight
children, and nutrition, 298–301
clinical findings, 300

assessments, 300
definitions, 300
risk factors, 300
general considerations, 298
treatment, 300–301
Oxazolidinones, 1155t, 1165
Oximetry, 558
Oxygenation, 366
Oxygenation, assessment, in respiratory tract disorders diagnosis and evaluation, 502–503
Oxygen delivery, 375
Oxygen therapy
in pediatric lung diseases, 506–507
supplemental, 362–363, 362t

P

Packed red blood cells, 922–944, 942
characteristics of, 939t
Pain
abdominal
clinical findings, 644
differential diagnosis, 644
laboratory findings, 644
parasitic infections and, 1292t
prognosis, 644–645
symptoms and signs, 644
treatment, 644–645
acute, 977–979
assessment, 977
special populations, 977
chest, 597
chronic pain, 979–981
ear, during air travel, 1352–1353
knee
anterior, 867–868
posterior, 868
odontogenic, 468
posterior elbow pain, 863
Pain and foreign body sensation, in eyes, 418
Pain management, 330, 977–981. See also Chronic pain management
in acute otitis media (AOM), 473
acute pain, 977–979
chronic pain, 979–981
addiction, 981
assessment, 979
dependence, 981
tolerance, 980–981
treatment, 979–981
withdrawal symptoms, 981
in palliative care, 982
Pain scales, 978f, 978t, 979f
PAL (Partnership Access Line), 182
Palatal abnormalities, 497
Palliative care, 395, 981–984
children benefit from, 982
complementary and alternative modalities (CAM), 982–984
pain management in, 982
quality-of-life adjuncts, 982–984
symptom management in, 982–984, 983t
Pallor, in newborns, 13
Palmar grasp, newborns, 16
Pancreatic disorders, 691–698
acute pancreatitis, 691–692
clinical findings, 691–692
complications, 692
differential diagnosis, 692
general considerations, 691
prognosis, 692
treatment, 692
chronic pancreatitis, 692–693
clinical findings, 693
complications, 693
differential diagnosis, 693
prognosis, 693
treatment, 693
gastrointestinal and hepatobiliary manifestations of cystic fibrosis, 693–696
gastrointestinal manifestations of cystic fibrosis, 693–696
hepatobiliary manifestations of cystic fibrosis, 693–696
isolated exocrine pancreatic enzyme defect, 697
pancreatic tumors, 697–698, 698t
syndromes with pancreatic exocrine insufficiency, 697
Pancreatic exocrine insufficiency syndromes with, 697
Pancreatic tumors, 697–698, 698t
Pancreatitis, mumps and, 1208
Pancuronium, controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
Panic disorder, 192
differential diagnosis, 192
general considerations, 192
identification and diagnosis, 192
prognosis, 192
treatment, 192
Panner disease, 835t, 862
Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL), 1238
Pantothenic acid
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Papanicolaou (Pap) cytology, 125
Papilledema, 451–452
Papillomavirus, 431–432
Pap smear, 1332
Papular urticaria, 410
Papule, red, scattered, candidiasis and, 1318
Papulosquamous eruptions, 414–415, 414t
pityriasis rosea, 414
psoriasis, 414–415
Paracetamol. See Acetaminophen
ParaGard (copper IUD), 141
Parainfectious encephalopathies, 795
Parainfluenza (croup), 1178
Parametric method of establishing reference intervals, 1368, 1368f
Paranasal sinuses disorders
acute viral rhinitis, 483–484, 484f
choanal atresia, 487
epistaxis, 488
nasal infection, 488
nasal trauma, 488–489
recurrent rhinitis, 487
rhinosinusitis, 485–487
Paraneoplastic syndromes, 782, 794
clinical findings, 782
imaging, 782
laboratory testing, 782
treatment, 782
Parapneumonic effusion, 527–528
Parasitic infections
eosinophilia and, 1291, 1293t, 1294
evaluation, patients selection for, 1291
incidence of, 1291

Parasitic infections (Cont.):
metazoal infections, 1306–1315
overview, 1291
signs and symptoms of, 1292t–1293t
specimen processing, 1291
Parasomnias, 759. See also Sleep disorders
nightmares, 86
night terrors, 86
overview, 86
sleepwalking, 86
Parathyroid hormone action, resistance, 1026
Paratyphoid fever, 1259–1260. See also Typhoid fever
in returned traveler, 1364t
Parenteral nutrition, 302–303, 306t, 389
catheter selection and position, 303
complications, 303
mechanical, 303
septic, 303
peripheral, 302
total, 302, 304t
Parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis (PNAC), 659
Parietal pleura, 542
Paromomycin, for amebic infection, 1302
Paronychia, candidiasis and, 1318
Parotid gland, tumors of, 498
Parotitis, 494, 498
causes of, viral, 1173t
Paroxetine, poisoning, treatment, 356
Paroxysmal dyskinesias/chronic dystonia, 788
Paroxysmal sympathetic hyperactivity, 874
Partial DiGeorge syndrome, 1000
Partial thickness burns, 323
Partnership Access Line (PAL), 182
Parvovirus, red rash in, 1174t
Parvovirus B19 infections, in newborn, 61
Pasteurella canis, 329
Pasteurella multocida, 329
Patellar dislocations, 830
Patellar tendonitis, 868
Patellofemoral overuse syndrome, 867–868
Patent ductus arteriosus
in preterm infants, 43–44
general considerations, 43
treatment, 43–44
Patent (persistent) ductus arteriosus, 567–568
angiocardiography, 567
cardiac catheterization, 567
course and prognosis, 568
echocardiography, 567
electrocardiography, 567
general considerations, 567
imaging, 567
symptoms and signs, 567
moderate to large patent ductus arteriosus, 567
patent ductus arteriosus with increased pulmonary vascular resistance, 567
treatment, 568
Patent omphalomesenteric duct, 626
Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), 377
Pathogenesis, dental caries, 460–461, 461f
Pathologic murmurs, 552t
Pathologic unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, 21–22, 21t
Patient education
terminally ill child-related, 184
in type 1 diabetes management, 1049
Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9), 116
Patient Health Questionnaire-9 Modified (PHQ-Modified), 179
Patient history
ambulatory and office pediatrics, 225–226
of presenting problem, in developmental problems assessment, 177–179
Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA), 3
Patient safety
communication, 8–9
failure models and effects analysis, 8
incident-reporting systems, 8
just culture, 8
principles involved in, 7–9
root-cause analyses (RCA), 8
team training, 8–9
Pattern-recognition receptor (PRR) defects, 1005
Pattern-recognition receptors, 992
Paucity of interlobular bile ducts, 660
Pavlik harness, 820f
p-Dichlorobenzene, poisoning, treatment, 346
PDSA. See Plan-Do-Study (or check)-Act
Pectus carinatum, 541
Pectus excavatum, 541
Pedersen speculum, 126
Pediatric Advanced Life Support (PALS) guidelines, 308
Pediatric evaluation of developmental status (PEDS), in mental health screening in office setting, 175–176
Pediatric Heart Transplant Study (PHTS), 599
Pediatrician, role in mental health, 174, 174t
Pediatric injury patterns, 840
Pediatric intensive care unit (PICU)
death in, 393
quality improvement initiatives in, 396
Pediatric nephrology, 733–734
Pediatric neuroradiologic procedures, 737–741
cerebral angiography, 741
computed tomography, 737–740
magnetic resonance imaging, 740
myelography, 741
positron emission tomography (PET), 740
single-photon emission computerized tomography, 740
ultrasonography, 740–741
Pediatric oncology, 469
Pediatric oral health, 459–460
dental home concept, 459
infant oral health care, 459–460, 460t
perinatal factors, 459–460
Pediatric population, chronic illness in, 183
Pediatric reference intervals, 1370
Pediatric symptoms checklist (PSC), in mental health screening in office setting, 175
Pediculoses (Louse infestations), 410

Pediculosis, 431
Pelvic apophysitis, 866
Pelvic examination, 125–127
  age-appropriate education, 125
  counseling, 125
  dorsal lithotomy position, 126
  indications for, 125
  items for, 126t
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 1331
  clinical findings, 1340–1341
  complications, 1341
  diagnosis, 1340, 1340t
  diagnostic studies, 1341
  differential diagnosis, 1341
  general considerations, 1340
  gonorrheal, 1245, 1246, 1247
  laboratory findings, 1340
  symptoms and signs, 1340
  treatment, 1334t, 1341
Pelvis
  evaluation
    in trauma survey, 319
Penetrance, defined, 1087
Penicillin, 1152t, 1163–1164
  adverse reactions, 144
  anti-Pseudomonas, 1163–1164
  for group A streptococcal infections, 1228–1229
  penicillinase-resistant, 1163
Penicillin G
  for diphtheria, 1253
  for gas gangrene, 1251
  for group A streptococcal infections, 1228–1229
  for leptospirosis, 1288
  for neurosyphilis, 1285
Penicillin G benzathine, 588
Penicillin V, 588
  for group A streptococcal infections, 1228, 1229
Pentachlorophenol, poisoning, treatment, 351
Perforating ocular injuries, 425–426
  clinical findings, 425–426, 426f
  complications, 426
  differential diagnosis, 426
  pathogenesis, 425
  prevention, 425
  prognosis, 426
  treatment, 426
Perianal ulcers, 1301
Pericardial effusion, 163
Pericarditis, 591–592
  clinical findings, 591–592
  general considerations, 591
  prognosis, 592
  treatment, 592
Perilymphatic fistula (PLF), 480
Perinatal and neonatal circulation, 559–560
Perinatal arterial ischemic stroke, 766–767
Perinatal cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections, 1193–1194
  in children and adolescents, 1194–1195
  in immunocompromised hosts, 1194–1195
Perinatal exposure, HIV infection, 1215t, 1216–1217
Perinatal factors, 459–460
Perinatal genetics, 1111–1113
  amniocentesis, 1112
  assisted reproduction, 1112
  chorionic villus sampling (placental), 1112
  fetal blood, 1112
  fetal samples, analysis, 1112
  fetal tissue, 1112
  maternal anticonvulsant use, 1111–1112
  maternal blood analysis in, 1112
  preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD), 1112–1113
  prenatal screening for birth defects, 1112–1113
  retinoic acid embryopathy, 1112
  teratogens, 1111–1112
Perinatal hepatitis, 653–655
Perinatally acquired infection, in newborn, 61–63
Perinatal resuscitation, 34–39
  asphyxiated infant, treatment, 38
  birth asphyxia
    long-term outcome, 38
    physiology of, 34–35
  delivery room management, 35–38, 36f
  equipment, 35, 35t
  failed, mechanical causes, 36–37, 37t
  special considerations, 37–38
  universal precautions, 38
Periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD), 87
Periodontal disease, 466–467, 466f
Periodontitis, 466–467
Periorbital and orbital cellulitis, 453
Peripheral blood, in infectious mononucleosis, 1195–1196
Peripheral nerve palsies, 809–810
  clinical findings, 809–810
  differential diagnosis, 810
  facial weakness, 809–810
  pathogenesis, 809
  treatment and prognosis, 810
Peripheral parenteral nutrition, 302
Peripheral (branch) pulmonary artery stenosis, 570
Peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis (PPS), 551–552
Peritoneal cavity disorders, 633–634
  chylous ascites, 633–634
    clinical findings, 633
    complications and sequelae, 634
    differential diagnosis, 633–634
    prognosis, 634
    treatment, 634
  peritonitis, 633
Peritoneal dialysis, for neonatal renal failure management, 66
Peritonitis, 633
Peritonsillar cellulitis, 492–493
Peroxisomal disorders, 1075
Persistent pulmonary hypertension (PPH)
  of newborns, 51
    clinical findings, 51
    pathophysiologic mechanisms, 51
    treatment, 51
Pertussis (whooping cough), 1270–1272
  cases of, 260
  clinical findings, 1270–1271
  complications, 1271, 1272
  differential diagnosis, 1271
  general considerations, 1270
  incidence of, 260
  laboratory findings, 1271
  prognosis, 1272
  symptoms and signs, 1270–1271
  treatment, 1271–1272
Pervasive developmental disorder, 93
PGD (preimplantation genetic diagnosis), 1112–1113

Phagocyte disorders, 1001–1002
Phagocyte immunity, 989–990
Pharmacologic screening, substance abuse and, 153–154, 154t
Pharmacotherapy, 166
Pharyngeal gonorrhea, 1245, 1246, 1247
Pharyngitis, 489–492, 490f, 1175
  acute bacterial, 491–492
    clinical findings, 491
    treatment, 492
  acute viral, 489–491, 490f
    clinical findings, 491
  causes of, viral, 1174t
  febrile illness with, 1181
  group A streptococcal treatment, 490f
  lymphonodular, acute, 1182
Pharyngoconjunctival fever, 491, 1175
Phenolic acids, poisoning, treatment, 346
Phenotype, defined, 1086
Phenotypic expression, defined, 1086
Phenotypic heterogeneity, defined, 1087
Phenylketonuria, 1062–1063
  classic, 1062–1063
  maternal, 1063
Phobia, 191–192
Phosphorus
  absorption/metabolism, 286t
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency, 286t
  dietary reference intakes, 287t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  metabolism of, disorders, 1022–1028
  nutrient requirements, 305
Photophobia, 418
Phototherapy, for indirect hyperbilirubinemia, 24, 25f, 26f
PHQ-9. See Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9)
PHQ-Modified (Patient Health Questionnaire-9 Modified), 179
Physical disability, chronic, reactions to, 183
Physical examination, in respiratory tract disorders, 501, 501f
  in sports preparticipation evaluation, 848–849
    abdomen, 848
    genitourinary system, 848
    neurologic system, 849
    sexual maturity, 849
    skin, 848
    vision, 848
Physiologic leukorrhea, 1343
PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway, 1109
PID. See Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)
Pierre Robin sequence, 499
Pierre-Robin syndrome, 15
Pigment cell birthmarks, 400–401
Pilomatricomas, 413
Pimecrolimus, in atopic dermatitis management, 1138
Pinworms. See Enterobiasis (pinworms)
Piperacillin, for Pseudomonas infections, 1257
Pituitary gland, posterior, disorders, 1016–1017
Pityriasis alba, 413
Pityriasis rosea, 414
P jiroveci pneumonia, prevention, drug regimen in, 1223
Placental examination, at birth, 14
Plague
  bubonic, 1266
  clinical findings, 1266–1267
  differential diagnosis, 1267
  general considerations, 1266
  laboratory findings, 1266–1267
  prevention, 1266
  primary pneumonic, 1266
  prognosis, 1267
  septicemic, 1266
  symptoms and signs, 1266
  treatment, 1267
Plan-Do-Study (or check)-Act, 6
Plantar fasciitis, 872
Plants, poisoning, treatment, 353, 354t
Plasmodium falciparum, 1294
Plasmodium knowlesi, 1294
Plasmodium malariae, 1294
Plasmodium ovale, 1294
Plasmodium species, malaria and, 1294
Plasmodium vivax, 1294
Platelet function disorders, 923
Platelet number abnormalities, 919–923
Platelets, 380
  characteristics, 942, 944
  transfusions, 942, 944
Pleiotropy, defined, 1086
Pleura, disorders, 542–543
Pleural cavity, disorders, 542–543
Pleurodynia, 1182
PLMD. See Periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD)
Pneumatic otoscopy, in acute otitis media (AOM) evaluation, 473
Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV), 1356
Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine 7 (PCV7), 477
Pneumococcal infections, 1234–1237
  clinical findings, 1235
  complications, 1236
  differential diagnosis, 1235–1236
  general considerations, 1234–1235
  laboratory findings, 1235
  prevention, 1235
  prognosis, 1237
  symptoms and signs, 1235
  treatment, 1236–1237, 1236t
Pneumococcal vaccination, 263–265
  administration schedule, 263–265, 264t
  adverse effects, 265
  contraindications, 265
  dosage, 263–265, 264t
  precautions, 265
  prior to travel, 1354t, 1356
  vaccines available, 263
Pneumocystis jiroveci, prevention, drug regimen in, 1223
Pneumocystis spp.
  P. jiroveci infection, 1328–1329
    clinical findings, 1328–1329
    diagnostic findings, 1329
    differential diagnosis, 1329
    general considerations, 1328
    imaging, 1328–1329
    laboratory findings, 1328
    prevention, 1329
    prognosis, 1329
    symptoms and signs, 1328
    treatment, 1329

Pneumomediastinum, 15
Pneumonia, 1175
adenovirus infections and, 1175
aspiration, 531–532
clinical findings, 532
differential diagnosis, 532
risk factors for, 532t
treatment, 532
bacterial
antimicrobial agents for, 1162
clinical findings, 526–527
community-acquired, 526–527
complications, 527
differential diagnosis, 527
prognosis, 527
treatment, 527
Chlamydophila, 1279–1281
community-acquired bacterial, 526–527
histoplasmosis and, 1324–1325
in the immunocompromised host, 532–534
clinical findings, 533
complications, 533
differential diagnosis, 533
prognosis, 534
treatment, 533–534
Legionnaires disease, 1278
mycoplasma, 531
neonatal, 1281
in newborn, 57, 58
respiratory distress due to, 29
pneumococcal infections and, treatment, 1236–1237
primary plague, 1266
staphylococcal
clinical findings, 1238
differential diagnosis, 1239
treatment, 1241
viral, 528–529
clinical findings, 529
complications, 529
differential diagnosis, 529
prognosis, 529
treatment, 529
viral causes, 1174t
Pneumothorax, 543–544
clinical findings, 543
differential diagnosis, 543
prognosis, 543–544
treatment, 543
Poisoning
acetaminophen, 336–337f
acids, 342–343
alcohol, ethyl, 338–339
amphetamines, 339
acute poisoning, 339
chronic poisoning, 339
anesthetics, local, 339–340, 340t
aniline, 351
antihistamines, 340–341
antipsychotics, 353
extrapyramidal crisis, 353
neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 353
overdose, 353
arsenic, 341
atropine, 341
barbiturates, 341
bases, 343
b-blockers, 342
belladonna alkaloids, 341–342
benzodiazepines, 341
botanical insecticides, 349
butanediol, 347
calcium channel blockers, 342
carbamates, 349
cardiac glycosides, 345
caustics, 342–343
central a 2-adrenergic agonists, 343
chlorinated hydrocarbons, 348
cocaine, 343–344
cosmetics and related products, 344, 344t
cyclic antidepressants, 344
definitive therapy of, 335–336
deodorizers, 345–346
detergents, 357
anionic detergents, 357
cationic detergents, 357
nonionic detergents, 357
digitalis, 345
dinitrophenol, 351
diphenoxylate with atropine (Lomotil), 345
disinfectants, 345–346
disk-shaped “button” batteries, 346
ethylene glycol, 346–347
flunitrazepam, 347
g-butyrolactone, 347
g-hydroxybutyrate, 347
hydrocarbons, 347
ibuprofen, 347–348
insecticides, 348–349
insect stings, 348
iron, 349
jimsonweed, 341–342
ketamine, 347
lead, 350
loperamide (Imodium), 345
magnets, 350
management of specific common, 336–359
methanol, 346–347
mushrooms, 350–351
nitrates, 351
nitrites, 351
opiates, 351–352
overdose treatment, 352
withdrawal in the addict, 352
withdrawal in the newborn, 352
opioids, 351–352
overdose treatment, 352
withdrawal in the addict, 352
withdrawal in the newborn, 352
oral anticoagulants, 358–359
oral hypoglycemics, 352–353
organophosphate insecticides, 348–349
pentachlorophenol, 351
plants, 353, 354t
potato leaves, 341–342
preventing childhood, 332
psychotropic drugs, 353–355
salicylates, 355
scopolamine, 341–342
scorpion stings, 356
serotonin reuptake inhibitors, 356
snakebite, 356–357
soaps, 357
spider bites, 358
black widow spider, 358
brown recluse spider, 358
stramonium, 341–342
toxicology principles, 331–332
treatment of, 332–336, 334t–335t
definitive therapy, 335–336
initial emergency department contact, 335
initial telephone contact, 332
vitamins, 358
warfarin, 358–359

Poliomyelitis, 1183–1184
vaccination, 265–266
administration schedule, 266
adverse effects, 266
contraindications, 266
dosage, 266
precautions, 266
vaccines available, 265
Polio vaccination, travel-related, 1356
Polyarthritis, 587–588
gonorrheal, 1245
Polycose, infant formula additives, 296t
Polycystic kidney disease, 715
Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), 119, 128, 130
laboratory evaluation, 130, 130t
Polycythemia, in newborn, 22, 65, 67
hematocrits, 65
hyperbilirubinemia, 65
hyperviscosity, 65, 65t
Polyendocrinopathy, 1003
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 1085
in infectious mononucleosis, 1196
quantitative fluorescent, 1085
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing, 593
Polymicrogyria with or without schizencephaly, 768
Polyneuropathy, 810–811
Polysomnography, 495
apparent life-threatening events (ALTEs) and, 546
Polyuria, in newborn, 66
Pompe disease (GSD IIa), 594
Portal hypertension
clinical findings, 681–682
laboratory findings and imaging, 682
symptoms and signs, 681–682
complications, 682, 683t
defined, 681
differential diagnosis, 682
general considerations, 681
intrahepatic portal hypertension, 681
prehepatic portal hypertension, 681
suprahepatic vein occlusion or thrombosis (Budd-Chiari syndrome), 681
intrahepatic, 681
prehepatic, 681
prognosis, 683
treatment, 682–683, 683t
Port-wine stains, 401
Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), 365
Positron emission tomography (PET), 740
posterior circulation stroke, 782
Posterior cruciate ligament injuries, 870
Posterior elbow pain, 863
Posterior fontanelle, in newborn, 14
Posterior knee pain, 868
Posterior pituitary gland disorders, 1016–1017
Posterior uveitis, 442–443
Postfertilization error, 1084f
Post-Licensure Rapid Immunization Safety Monitoring (PRISM), 250
Posttransplantation lymphoproliferative disorders (PTLDs), 961
Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 196–197
general considerations, 196
identification and diagnosis, 196
prognosis, 197
treatment, 196
Postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome (POTS), 193
Potassium
absorption/metabolism, 286t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, 286t
disorders, 706
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
nutrient requirements, 306t
Potato leaves, poisoning, treatment, 341–342
POTS (postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome), 193
Potter sequence, 1109
PPACA. See Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA)
PPE. See Preparticipation physical evaluation
Prader-Willi syndrome, 1104
Preanalytical variations, 1369
Precocious puberty
benign variants of, 1033
causes of, 1032t
defined, 1031
in female
clinical findings, 1032
imaging, 1032
laboratory findings, 1032
symptoms and signs, 1032
treatment, 1032–1033
in male
clinical findings, 1034–1035
imaging, 1035
laboratory findings, 1035
symptoms and signs, 1034–1035
treatment, 1035
Prednisone, for tuberculosis, 1276
Pregnancy
in adolescents, 142–144
counseling at time of pregnancy testing, 142–143
diagnosis, 142
ectopic, 143–144
management, 142–143
outcomes, 143, 143t
presentation, 142
bacterial vaginosis during, 1343
management of the child with epilepsy and, 756
Prehepatic portal hypertension, 681
Preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD), 1112–1113
Preload, 375
Premature beats, 601–602, 602f
atrial, 601, 602f
junctional, 601, 602f
ventricular, 601, 602f
Premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD), 133–134
Premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 133–134
Prenatal screening, for birth defects, 1112–1113
Prenatal visits, health supervision visits, 241
Preparticipation history, 842–849
cardiovascular history, 842
central nervous system, 848
chronic diseases, 848

hypertension, 842
infectious mononucleosis, 848
medication history, 848
menstrual history, females, 848
musculoskeletal limitations and prior injuries, 848
nutritional issues, 848
physical evaluation form, 843f
surgical history, 848
Preparticipation physical evaluation (PPE), 841–849
Preschooler, interviewing, in developmental problems assessment in, 177–178
Pressure autoregulation, 382
Pressure-controlled ventilation, 365
Pressure-support ventilation, 365
Preterm infants, 39–49
anemia in, 45
apnea in, 41–42
causes, 41t
clinical findings, 41
general considerations, 41
prognosis, 42
treatment, 42
care in nursery, 39–41
fluid and electrolyte therapy, 39–40
monitoring high-risk infant, 39
nutritional support, 40–41, 40t
thermoregulation, 39
chronic lung disease in, 43
follow-up care, 48, 48f
hospital discharge, 47–48
mortality rates prior to, 48, 48f
hyaline membrane disease in, 42–43
intraventricular hemorrhage in, 45–47, 46f
late, 49, 49f
necrotizing enterocolitis in, 44–45
patent ductus arteriosus in, 43–44
physiologic handicaps, 39
resuscitation in, 34–39
retinopathy of prematurity in, 47
Pretransfusion testing, 938
Primary care physicians, in psychiatric disorders detection, 171–172
Primary care setting, integrated mental and behavioral health, 242–243
Primary ciliary dyskinesia, 518–519
clinical findings, 519
pathogenesis, 519
prognosis, 519
treatment, 519
Primary gain, conversion symptom, 115
Primary hyperaldosteronism, 1042
Primary hyperoxaluria, 731–732
Primary irritant contact dermatitis, 412
Primary lactic acidosis, causes, 1059, 1059t
Primary level programs, for substance abuse, 157
Primary pneumonic plague, 1266
Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), 687
complications, 687
differential diagnosis, 687
general considerations, 687
imaging, 687
laboratory findings, 687
prognosis, 687
symptoms and signs, 687
treatment, 687
Primary subarachnoid hemorrhage, 68
PRISM. See Post-Licensure Rapid Immunization Safety Monitoring (PRISM)
Procedural sedation, 330
Process measures, 5
Proctitis, 1342–1343
treatment, 1335t
Proctocolitis, 1342–1343
treatment, 1335t
Progestin-only pills (POP), 139
Progressive ataxias, 784–785
autosomal dominant hereditary ataxias, 784
autosomal recessive hereditary ataxias, 784–785
ataxia-telangiectasia, 785
imaging, 785
laboratory testing, 785
treatment, 785
Friedreich ataxia, 784–785
imaging, 784
laboratory testing, 784
treatment, 784–785
X-linked cerebellar ataxias, 785
Progressive diseases
laboratory findings, 1219–1220
malignancy, 1219
of organ systems, 1219
Progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (PFIC), 660–661
Progressive HIV disease, 1218–1223
clinical findings, 1218–1219
differential diagnosis, 1220
immunodeficiency-related, 1218–1219
Prolactin
elevated serum, 128
testing, 128
Prolactin-secreting tumors, 128
galactorrhea and, 123
Prone positioning, 371
Prophylactic antimicrobials, 733
Propionibacterium acnes, 404
Propionic acidemia, 1066–1068, 1067t
Propofol, 391
Protease inhibitors, 1221t
Protein(s)
cow milk composition, 295t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
nutritional requirements, 282–283, 282t
Protein C deficiency, 932
Protein-losing enteropathy
disorders associated with, 646t
Protein S deficiency, 932
Proteinuria and renal disease, 713f, 718–720
congenital nephrosis, 718
focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), 719
idiopathic nephrotic syndrome of childhood, 718–719
membranous nephropathy (membranous glomerulonephritis), 719–720
Prothrombin mutation, 933f
Protoporphyrins, for indirect hyperbilirubinemia, 25
Protozoal infections
amebiasis, 1300–1302
babesiosis, 1296–1298
cryptosporidiosis, 1303–1304
cyclosporiasis, 1304
free-living amoebas, 1304–1305

Protozoal infections (Cont.):
gastrointestinal, 1300–1305
giardiasis, 1302–1303
malaria, 1294–1296
systemic, 1294–1300
toxoplasmosis, 1298–1300
Proximal renal tubular acidosis, 728
Pruritus, parasitic infections and, 1292t
PSC (pediatric symptoms checklist), 175
Pseudoallergic reactions, causes, 1141t
Pseudohypoparathyroidism, 1026
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 57, 406, 470, 1256–1257
Pseudomonas infections, 1256–1257
clinical findings, 1256
general considerations, 1256
prevention, 1256
prognosis, 1257
treatment, 1256–1257
Pseudoparkinsonism, antipsychotics and, 214
Pseudotumor cerebri (idiopathic intracranial hypertension)
clinical findings, 763
complications, 763
differential diagnosis, 763
pathogenesis, 763
prognosis, 763
symptoms and signs, 763
treatment, 763
Psittacosis, 1279–1281
clinical findings, 1280
complications, 1280
differential diagnosis, 1280
general considerations, 1279
imaging, 1280
laboratory findings, 1280
prevention, 1279
symptoms and signs, 1280
treatment, 1280–1281
Psoriasis, 414–415
PSYCH, 174
Psychiatric disorders, 185–215
adjustment disorders, 212
anxiety disorders, 187–197
attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 197–200
conduct disorders, 208–210
defined, 185
diagnosis/detection, primary care physicians in, 171–172
formal reference text for, 185
high-risk patients, 209–210
homicide and, 209–210
medications for, 185, 186t
mood disorders, 200–208
origins, 185
psychotic disorders, 212–215
somatoform disorders, 210–212, 211t
suicide and, 206–208
Psychiatry, consultation-liaison, 182
Psychoactive drugs, 354
Psychological care management, in diabetes types 1 and 2 management, 1052–1053
Psychological health, in adolescents, 114–121. See also Adolescent, psychological health
Psychophysiologic symptoms, adolescent, 114–115
Psychosocial development, in adolescents, 112–114, 113t
Psychosocial dwarfism, 1015
Psychosocial problems
chronic illness in, 184
developmental disorders, 174–182
parental concerns, PSYCH in, 174
pediatrician's role in, 174, 174t
Psychosocial short stature, 1015
Psychosocial support, in HIV infection management, 1223
Psychotic disorders, 212–215
antipsychotics, 213–214
general considerations, 213
identification and diagnosis, 213
prognosis, 214
treatment, 213
Psychotropic drugs, poisoning, treatment, 353–355
Psychotropic medications, 185, 186t
Pthirus pubis, 1351
Puberty, 109, 110
first sign of
in female, 112
in male, 112
muscle mass in, 110
muscle strength in, 110
onset of, 109
testosterone during, 109, 110
Pubic lice, 1351
treatment, 1338t
Pulmonary agenesis, 521–522
clinical findings, 522
prognosis, 522
treatment, 522
Pulmonary artery, 576
Pulmonary artery catheters, 377
Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum, 579–580
angiocardiography, 580
cardiac catheterization, 580
echocardiography, 579
electrocardiography, 579
general considerations, 579
imaging, 579
symptoms and signs, 579
treatment and prognosis, 580
Pulmonary atresia with ventricular septal defect, 578–579
Pulmonary blood flow, symptoms of, 551t
Pulmonary circulation, diseases, 537–540
congenital pulmonary lymphangiectasia, 540
pulmonary edema, 539–540
pulmonary embolism, 539
pulmonary hemorrhage, 537–538
Pulmonary diseases, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
Pulmonary edema, 539–540
clinical findings, 540
high-altitude, 1353
pathogenesis, 539–540
treatment, 540
Pulmonary ejection murmur, 552
Pulmonary embolism, 539
clinical findings, 539
treatment, 539
Pulmonary function tests, in respiratory tract disorders diagnosis and evaluation, 501–502, 503f, 504f, 505f
Pulmonary hemorrhage, 537–538
clinical findings, 537–538
differential diagnosis, 538
prognosis, 538
treatment, 538

Pulmonary hypertension, 599–600
clinical findings, 599–600
general considerations, 599
large ventricular septal defects with, 566
treatment, 600
treatment, in bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 525
Pulmonary hypoplasia, 521–522
clinical findings, 522
in newborn, 66
prognosis, 522
treatment, 522
Pulmonary infections
candidiasis, 1318–1319
coccidioidomycosis, 1321
cryptococcosis, 1323
Pulmonary sequestration, 522
Pulmonary valve stenosis, 568–569
Pulmonary vasodilation, for PPHN, 51
Pulse oximetry, 361
Pupils, 421–422, 421f–422f
Pure red cell aplasia, 895–897
Purine metabolism disorders, 1070–1071
Purpura fulminans, 933f
Purulent discharge, 418
PVL. See Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL)
Pyloric stenosis
clinical findings, 618
imaging, 618
laboratory findings, 618
symptoms and signs, 618
empiric risks, 1090t
treatment and prognosis, 618–619
Pyogenic and amebic liver abscess
clinical findings, 688–689
history, 688
imaging, 689
laboratory findings, 688
symptoms and signs, 688
complications, 689
differential diagnosis, 689
general considerations, 688
prognosis, 689
treatment, 689
Pyogenic arthritis, 833–834
Pyogenic granuloma, 413–414
Pyrazinamide, for tuberculosis, 1275–1276
Pyridostigmine bromide, 808
Pyridoxine
biologic role, 292t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
toxicity effect, 289t
Pyrimethamine, 1300
Pyroglutamic acidemia, 1067t
Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency, 1059, 1059t
causes, 1059t
described, 1059
diagnosis, 1060
treatment, 1060–1061
Pyruvate kinase deficiency, 909–910

Q

QA/QI in pediatric nephrology, 733–734
22q11.2 deletion syndrome, 993
Q fever, 1213
QT interval, causes of prolongation of, 555t
Quadriceps contusion, 866
Quadruple Aim, 1
Quality of health care, 1–9
Aim statement, 4, 5
changes and ideas, 5–6
domains of, 1
improvement, strategies models for, 4
IOM on, 1
Lean management, 6
measures, 5
model for improvement, 4, 4f
national organizations and, 2–3
PDSA cycles, 6
Quadruple Aim, 1
Six-Sigma, 7
Triple Aim, 1, 2f
Quantitative fluorescent PCR, 1085
Quetiapine, for bipolar disorder, 204
Quinolones, for gonorrhea, 1339
Quinupristin-dalfopristin, 1234

R

Rabies, 1209–1210
vaccination, 276–277
administration schedule, 277
adverse effects, 277
antibody preparations, 277
booster, 277
dosage, 277
postexposure prophylaxis, 277
primary preexposure, 277
travel-related, 1356–1357
vaccines available, 277
Raccoon roundworm infections, 1311. See also Nematode infections
Radial head subluxation, 830
Radiocontrast media, adverse reactions, 1146
Raltegravir, 1221t
Rancho Los Amigos Levels of Cognitive Function (LCFS/"Rancho"), 874
Ranula, 494, 498
Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep, 85
Rapid plasma regain (RPR) antibody tests, 1332
Rash, 1175, 1182–1183
cardiac involvement, 1182
causes, viral, 1174t, 1175
leptospirosis and, 1287–1288
Lyme disease and, treatment, 1290
parasitic infections and, 1293t
severe neonatal infection due to, 1182–1183
Raynaud phenomenon, 889
RCA. See Root-cause analyses (RCA)
Reactive erythemas, 416
drug eruptions, 416, 416t
erythema multiforme, 416
Receptive language, development of, 74
Recessive, defined, 1086
Rectal gonorrhea, 1245, 1246, 1247
Recurrent aphthous stomatitis, 489
Recurrent rhinitis, 487
allergic rhinitis, 487
nonallergic rhinitis, 487
Recurrent rhinosinusitis, 486–487
Red blood cells, 380
The Red Book: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 248

Red cell enzyme defect, hemolysis and, 21
Red cell membrane defects, 900–901
Red cell metabolism disorders, 908–910
Red eye, 418
Red papules, scattered, candidiasis and, 1318
Red rashes, disorders with, 1173t–1174t
Red reflex test, 423
Reentrant tachycardias, 603
Refeeding syndrome, 163
Reference intervals, 1367–1381
  chemistry, 1367–1381
  determination and interpretation, 1367
  endocrine chemistry, 1378t–1380t
  general chemistry, 1371t–1377t
  guidelines for use of data in reference range study, 1367–1368
  hematology, 1367–1381, 1381t
  overview, 1367
  pediatric, 1370
  sensitivity and specificity, 1369–1370, 1370f
  statistical computation, 1368–1369, 1369f
  varying of, reasons for, 1369
Reference materials, analytical variations due to, 1369
Referral
  asthma-related, 1128
  factors to consider prior to, 156t
  to mental health care professionals, 181–182, 181t
  for substance abuse, 156–157
Reflexes, newborns, 16
Reflux, gastroesophageal, in newborn, 55–56
Reflux nephropathy, 715–716
Refractive errors, 419–420
  astigmatism, 419f, 420
  hyperopia (farsightedness), 419f, 420
  myopia (nearsightedness), 419, 419f
Refsum disease, 780t
Rehabilitation
  in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 885
  sports injuries related, 849, 854
Rehabilitation medicine, 873–881
  brachial plexus lesions, 878–879
  brain injury, 873–876
  problems, 879–881
  quality assurance/improvement initiatives in, 881
  spinal cord injury, 876–878
Rehabilitation problems, 879–881
  neurogenic bladder, 879–880
  neurogenic bowel, 880
  spasticity, 880–881
Reiter syndrome, chlamydial infection and, 1333
Relapsing fever, 1286–1287
  clinical findings, 1286
  complications, 1286
  differential diagnosis, 1286
  general considerations, 1286
  laboratory findings, 1286
  prevention, 1286
  prognosis, 1287
  symptoms and signs, 1286
  treatment, 1286–1287
Renal arterial disease, 720
Renal biopsy, 714
Renal disease, in newborn, 65–66, 66t
  renal failure, 66
  renal vein thrombosis, 66–67
  urinary tract anomalies, 66
Renal dysplasia, 714
Renal failure, 721–727
  acute kidney injury, 721–724
  chronic renal failure, 724–725
  hypertension, 725–727
  in newborn, 66
Renal functions
  glomerular filtration rate, 710–711
  laboratory evaluation of, 710–714
  serum analysis, 710
  special tests of, 711–714
  urinalysis, 711
  urine concentrating ability, 711
Renal parenchymal anomalies, 714–715
  medullary cystic disease, 715
  nephronophthisis, 715
  polycystic kidney disease, 715
  renal dysplasia, 714
Renal perfusion, 386
Renal replacement therapy, 385–387
  clinical findings, 386
  definitions, 385–386, 386t
  pathophysiology, 386
  treatment, 386–387
Renal tubular acidosis (RTA), 728
  distal, 728
  proximal, 728
Renal tubules disorders, 727–729
  distal renal tubular acidosis (type I), 728
  evaluation and treatment, 728–729
  proximal renal tubular acidosis (type II), 728
Renal vein thrombosis, 720
  clinical findings, 720
  course and prognosis, 720
  in newborn, 66–67
  treatment, 720
Renal vessel diseases, 720–721
  hemolytic-uremic syndrome, 720–721
  renal arterial disease, 720
  renal vein thrombosis, 720
Residual valvular damage, 588–589
Resistance (strength) training, 840
Respiratory acidosis, 708
Respiratory alkalosis, 708–709
Respiratory chain disorders, 1059t
  causes, 1059t
  described, 1060
  diagnosis, 1060
  treatment, 1060–1061
Respiratory distress, in newborn, 28–30
  aspiration syndromes, 28–29
  bilateral choanal atresia, 29
  causes of, 28t
  congenital pneumonia, 29
  general considerations, 28
  prognosis, 29
  spontaneous pneumothorax, 29
  transient tachypnea, 28
  treatment, 29
Respiratory infections, 1170–1172
  adenoviruses and, 1173t, 1175
  common cold, viruses causing, 1170–1172, 1175
  group A streptococcal infections and, 1226
  human metapneumovirus (hMPV) infection, 1180–1181
  influenza, 1176–1177
  parainfluenza, 1178

respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) disease, 1178–1180
Respiratory rate, 365
Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), 1178–1180
prophylaxis, 280
Respiratory tract
disorders, 1181–1182
diagnostic aids
bronchoscopy, 506
imaging, 505–506
laryngoscopy, 506
oxygenation and ventilation assessment, 502–503
physical examination, 501, 501f
pulmonary function tests, 501–502, 503f, 504f, 505f
infection, 504–505
of extrathoracic airway, 509–510
growth and development, 500
of intrathoracic airway, 514–516
laryngomalacia, 509
lung parenchyma
acquired abnormalities, 524–528
congenital malformations, 521–524
treatment, 506–509
Resting energy expenditure (REE), 388, 389t
Restless legs syndrome (RLS), 87, 759
Restrictive cardiomyopathy, 594–595
Resuscitation
ABCs of, 308–314, 309t, 310f–313f
airway, 309–310, 310f–311f
breathing, 310–312, 312f
circulation, 312–313
shock management, 313–314, 313f
cardiogenic shock, 314
distributive shock, 314
hypovolemic shock, 313–314
observation, 314
obstructive shock, 314
Retina disorders
diabetic retinopathy, 449–450
retinal detachment, 449
retinal hemorrhages in the newborn, 447
retinoblastoma, 448–449
retinopathy of prematurity, 447–448, 448t
Retinal detachment, 449
Retinal hemorrhages in the newborn, 447
Retinoblastoma, 448–449, 968–969
clinical findings, 968–969
diagnostic evaluation, 969
general considerations, 968
symptoms and signs, 968–969
treatment, 969
Retinoic acid embryopathy, 1112
Retinopathy, diabetic, 1049
Retinopathy of prematurity, 47, 447–448, 448t
Retraction pockets, otitis media and, 478
Retropharyngeal abscess, 493
Retroviral agents, hypersensitivity to, 1148
Rett syndrome, genetic evaluation, 1111
Rhabdomyosarcoma, 967–968
characteristics of, 967t
clinical findings, 967
general considerations, 967
prognosis, 968
treatment, 967–968
Rheumatic diseases, 882–890
complex regional pain syndrome, 889
dermatomyositis, 887–888
fibromyalgia, 890
hypermobility syndrome, 890
juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 882–885
noninflammatory pain syndromes, 889–890
prophylaxis for, 1229
Raynaud phenomenon, 889
systemic lupus erythematosus, 885–887
vasculitis, 888–889
Rheumatic fever, 587–589
carditis, 587
clinical findings, 587–588
erythema marginatum, 588
Jones criteria for diagnosis of, 587t
polyarthritis, 587–588
subcutaneous nodules, 588
Sydenham chorea, 588
treatment and prophylaxis, 588–589
treatment after the acute episode, 588–589
prevention, 588
residual valvular damage, 588–589
treatment of the acute episode, 588
anti-infective therapy, 588
anti-inflammatory agents, 588
bed rest and ambulation, 588
therapy in heart failure, 588
Rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile, red rash in, 1173t
Rhinoconjunctivitis, allergic, 1131–1135
classification, 1131
clinical findings, 1131
complications, 1132
differential diagnosis, 1132
general considerations, 1131
laboratory findings, 1131
pathologic changes, 1131
prevalence, 1131
prognosis, 1135
symptoms and signs, 1131
treatment, 1132–1134
antihistamines, 1133
corticosteroids, 1134
decongestants, 1134
general measures, 1132
immunotherapy, 1134
ketorolac, 1134
mast cell stabilizers, 1133
pharmacologic, 1132–1134
surgical, 1134
Rhinosinusitis, 485–487
acute bacterial, 485
clinical findings, 485
complications, 485
pathogenesis, 485
treatment, 485–486
recurrent or chronic, 486–487
Rh-isoimmunization, 21
Rhythm, 552
disorders of, 600
Riboflavin
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t

Rickettsial infections, 1210–1213
described, 1210
ehrlichiosis, 1210–1211
endemic typhus, 1212–1213
Q fever, 1213
rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1211–1212
Rifampin, 1155t
for tuberculosis, 1275
Right-sided obstructive lesions, 568–570
Ebstein malformation of the tricuspid valve, 570
peripheral (branch) pulmonary artery stenosis, 570
pulmonary valve stenosis, 568–569
subvalvular pulmonary stenosis, 569
supravalvular pulmonary stenosis, 570
Rilpivirine, 1221t
Ring chromosome, 1082, 1083f
Risperidone, for bipolar disorder, 204
Ritonavir, 1221t
Rituximab (anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody)
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 921
RLS. See Restless legs syndrome (RLS)
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1211–1212
red rash in, 1174t
Rocuronium, controlled endotracheal intubation, 364t
Role playing, in children, 78
Root-cause analyses (RCA), 8
Roseola, red rash in, 1174t
Roseola infantum, 1191–1192
Rotator cuff injury, 861
Rotavirus infection
mortality, 259
vaccination, 258–259
administration schedule, 259
adverse effects, 259
contraindications, 259
dosage, 259
precautions, 259
prior to travel, 1354t, 1356
vaccines available, 259
Rotor syndrome, 665–666
Roundworm infections, raccoon, 1311
Routine pediatric care, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Rubella, 1205–1207
red rash in, 1174t
Rubella infection, in newborn, 60
Rubeola (measles), 1204–1205
red rash in, 1174t

S

Saccharomyces boulardii, 633
Saccharomyces cerevisiae, 649
Safety data sheets (SDSs), 332
Salicylates, poisoning, treatment, 355
Salivary gland disorders
juvenile recurrent parotitis, 498
mumps, 1208
parotitis, 498
ranula, 498
suppurative parotitis, 498
tumors of the parotid gland, 498
Salmonella, 650
Salmonella choleraesuis, 1258
Salmonella enterica, 1257, 1259
Salmonella enterica typhi, 278
Salmonella gastroenteritis, 1257–1259
clinical findings, 1258
complications, 1258
differential diagnosis, 1258
general considerations, 1257–1258
laboratory findings, 1258
prevention, 1258
prognosis, 1259
symptoms and signs, 1258
treatment, 1258–1259
Salmonella species, 639
Salmonella typhimurium, 1257
Salpingitis, gonorrheal, 1245, 1246
Sanfilippo syndrome, 1072t
Saquinavir, 1221t
Sarcoptes scabiei, 1351
Scabies, 410, 1351
treatment, 1338t
Scalded skin syndrome, 407, 1238
staphylococcal, red rash in, 1174t
SCARED (Self-Report for Childhood Anxiety-Related Emotional Disorders), 179
Scarlet fever, 1226
staphylococcal, red rash in, 1174t
streptococcal, red rash in, 1174t
Scedosporium species, fungal infections due to, 1327t
SCFE. See Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE)
Scheie syndrome, clinical and laboratory features, 1072t
Scheuermann disease, 823, 835t
Schistosomiasis, 1314–1315
clinical findings, 1315
general considerations, 1315
laboratory findings, 1315
prevention, 1315
prognosis, 1315
in returned traveler, 1364t
symptoms and signs, 1315
treatment, 1315
School-aged children, interviewing, in developmental problems assessment, 178–179
School avoidance, by adolescents, 120
SCI. See Spinal cord injury (SCI)
Scoliosis, 540–541, 822–823
SCOPE. See Standardized Care to Improve Outcomes in Pediatric ESRD (SCOPE) Collaborative
Scopolamine, poisoning, treatment, 341–342
Scorpion stings, poisoning, treatment, 356
Screening, Brief Intervention, and Referral to Treatment (SBIRT), 152
Screening, described, 175
Screening sports examination, 849t
Scrotal tongue, 498
Scrub typhus, in returned traveler, 1365t
SDQs (Strengths and Difficulties Questionnaires), in mental health screening in office setting, 175
Season, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
Sebaceous gland hyperplasia, 400
Seborrheic dermatitis, 412
Secondary amenorrhea, 1034
Secondary gain, conversion symptom, 115
Secondary level programs, for substance abuse, 157

Secondary polycythemia, 912–913
Second-degree atrioventricular block, 608, 608f, 609f
Second malignancies, 975–976
Secretion of ADH (SIADH), 705t
Sedation, procedural, 330
Sedative (anxiolytic) medications, 390
  titration of, 392–393
Segregation, defined, 1086
Seizure disorders (epilepsies), 744–758
  classification, 745
  febrile seizures, 756–758
  general considerations, 744–745
  seizures and epilepsy in childhood, 745–756
clinical findings, 745–750
cognitive delay, 750
complications and sequelae, 750–752
diagnostic evaluation, 745–750
differential diagnosis, 750
electroencephalography, 750
injury and death, 752
psychosocial impact, 750
symptoms and signs, 745
treatment, 752–756
  alternative treatments, 754–755
  antiepileptic drug (AED) therapy, 752
  first aid, 752
  general management of the child with, 755–756
  long-term management and discontinuation of, 754
  surgery, 755
  status epilepticus, 756
Seizures, brain injury related, 874
Seizures in childhood, 745–756, 746t–749t
  clinical findings, 745–750
  cognitive delay, 750
  complications and sequelae, 750–752
  diagnostic evaluation, 745–750
  differential diagnosis, 750
  electroencephalography, 750
  injury and death, 752
  psychosocial impact, 750
  symptoms and signs, 745
  treatment, 752–756
    alternative treatments, 754–755
    antiepileptic drug (AED) therapy, 752
    first aid, 752
    general management of the child with, 755–756
    long-term management and discontinuation of, 754
    surgery, 755
Selective immunoglobulin deficiencies, 998
Selective mutism disorder, 191
  differential diagnosis, 191
  general considerations, 191
  identification and diagnosis, 191
  treatment, 191
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 159
  for depression, 201–202
  for obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 195
Selenium
  deficiency and treatment, 288t
  dietary reference intakes, 287t
Self-Report for Childhood Anxiety-Related Emotional Disorders (SCARED), 179
Semielemental formulas, 294
Sensitivity, reference intervals, 1369–1370, 1370f
Sensorimotor period, 74, 75
Sensorineural hearing loss, 1102
Sensorineural hearing loss (SNHL), 481–482
Sensory ataxia, 782–783
Separation anxiety, 76, 120, 189–190
  general considerations, 189
  identification and diagnosis, 189
  other considerations, 189
  prognosis, 189
  treatment, 189
Sepsis, 377–380, 377t, 378t
  E coli, 1254
    treatment, 1255
  in infants, antimicrobial agents for, 1161
  neonatal, 1254, 1255
    antimicrobial agents for, 1161
  streptococcal, 1227
Septation defects, 562–567
  atrial septal defect, 562–564
    cardiac catheterization, 563
    course and prognosis, 563–564
    echocardiography, 563
    electrocardiography, 563
    general considerations, 563
    imaging, 563
    symptoms and signs, 563
    treatment, 563
  atrioventricular septal defect, 566–567
    clinical findings, 566
      angiocardiography, 566
      cardiac catheterization, 566
      echocardiography, 566
      electrocardiography, 566
      imaging, 566
      symptoms and signs, 566
    general considerations, 566
    treatment, 566–567
  ventricular septal defect, 564–565
    angiocardiography, 565
    cardiac catheterization, 565
    clinical findings, 564–565
    course and prognosis, 565
    echocardiography, 565
    electrocardiography, 565
    general considerations, 564
    imaging, 565
    symptoms and signs, 564
      large ventricular septal defects with pulmonary hypertension, 565
      moderate left-to-right shunt, 565
      small left-to-right shunt, 564–565
    treatment, 565
      medical management, 565
      surgical treatment, 565
Septic arthritis, 1238
  Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections and
    complications, 1269
    differential diagnosis, 1268
    symptoms and signs, 1268
    treatment, 1269
  of hip, 834–835
  treatment, 1241
Septic complications, 303
Septicemic plague, 1266. See also Plague
Septic shock, 377
Sequence, defined, 1093

Sequencing, next-generation, 1085
Serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), 202
Serotonin reuptake inhibitors
  poisoning, treatment, 356
Sertraline
  for obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 195
  poisoning, treatment, 356
Serum analysis, 710
Serum enzymes, 799
Sever disease, 835t, 872
Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), 992–995
  classification, 993–994, 994t
  clinical findings, 993
  differential diagnosis, 993
  general considerations, 992
  laboratory findings, 993
  Omenn syndrome, 995
  treatment, 993
Severe sepsis, 377
Sex chromosomes, abnormalities, 1082, 1096–1097
Sex development disorders, 1029
Sexual abuse, 219–221
Sexuality, adolescent, 114
  education, 135
Sexually transmitted diseases (STD)
  travel-related, 1360, 1363
Sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
  adolescent sexuality, 1330
  antibiotic-responsive, most common
    Chlamydia trachomatis infection, 1332–1333, 1334t–1338t
    Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection, 1333, 1339
  bacterial vaginosis, 1343
  cervicitis, 1339–1340
  chancroid, 1347
  ectoparasitic infections, 1351
  enteritis, 1342–1343
  epididymitis, 1342
  genital ulcerations, 1344–1348
  genital warts, 1348–1349
  hepatitis, 1349
  herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection, 1345–1346
  HIV, 1349–1350
  human papillomavirus infection, 1348–1349
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 1347
  pelvic inflammatory disease, 1340–1341
  prevention of
    primary, 1331
    secondary, 1331
    tertiary, 1331
  proctitis, 1342–1343
  proctocolitis, 1342–1343
  pubic lice, 1351
  rate of, 1330
  risk factors, 1331
  scabies, 1351
  screening for, 1331–1332
  signs and symptoms, 1332
    spectrum of, 1339–1351
  syphilis, 1346–1347
  treatment, regimens, 1334t–1338t
  trichomoniasis, 1343–1344
  urethritis, 1341–1342
  vaginal discharge, 1343–1344
  vulvovaginal candidiasis, 1344
Sexual maturation and growth, adolescent, 111–112
  female, 111f, 112
  male, 110f, 112
Sexual maturity rating (SMR), 110–111
Sexual orientation
  adolescence, 114
  defined, 113–114
Shigella, 650
Shigella dysenteriae, 1254
Shigella-toxin producing E coli (STEC), 1254, 1255
Shigellosis, 1261–1262
  clinical findings, 1261
  complications, 1261
  differential diagnosis, 1261
  general considerations, 1261
  laboratory findings, 1261
  prognosis, 1262
  symptoms and signs, 1261
  treatment, 1261–1262
Shock(s), 374–377
  cardiogenic, 314
  categories of, 374t
  compensated, 313
  decompensated, 313
  distributive, 314
  hypovolemic, 313–314
  laboratory studies in case of, 376t
  monitoring, 376–377
  obstructive, 314
  pathogenesis, 374–376
Short bowel syndrome (SBS)
  general considerations, 623–624
  symptoms and signs, 624
  treatment and prognosis, 624
Short stature
  growth and, 1009–1010, 1010t, 1011f, 1012f
  associated with syndromes, 1015
  disproportionate, 1013, 1015
  syndromic, 1109
Shoulder dislocation or separation, 829–830
Shoulder injuries, sports related, 859–861
  acromioclavicular separation, 860
  acute traumatic anterior shoulder instability, 860–861
  clavicle fracture, 859–860
  humerus, fracture of, 860
  little league shoulder, 861
  rotator cuff injury, 861
Shprintzen syndrome, 999
Shunts, 558
Sialidosis, clinical and laboratory features, 1073t
Sickle cell disease, 905–907
Sickle cell trait, 907–908
Simpson-Golabi-Behmel syndrome, 1109
SIMV. See Synchronized IMV (SIMV)
Sinding-Larsen-Johansson disease, 868
Single-photon emission computerized tomography, 740
Sinus arrhythmia, 600–601
Sinus bradycardia, 601
Sinus node dysfunction, 601
Sinus tachycardia, 601
Six Sigma, 7
Skeleton
  of newborn, examination
    at birth, 13
    at nursery, 15

Skiing and snowboarding injuries, prevention anticipatory guidance, 237
Skin
bacterial infections of, 406–407
evaluation, in trauma survey, 318–319
examination of, 398t
fungal infections of, 407–408
lesions, treatment, 1188
of newborn, examination
at birth, 13
at nursery, 14
viral infections of, 408–409
Skin diseases. See Skin disorders
Skin disorders
acne, 404–406
clinical findings, 404
differential diagnosis, 404
pathogenesis, 404
treatment, 404–406, 405t
oral retinoids, 405
other acne treatments, 405–406
patient education and follow-up visits, 406
systemic antibiotics, 405
topical antibiotics, 405
topical keratolytic agents, 404–405
aphthous stomatitis, 416–417
bacterial infections, 406–407
common skin tumors, 413–414
epidermoid cysts, 413
granuloma annulare, 413
keloids, 414
pilomatricomas, 413
pyogenic granuloma, 413–414
dermatitis (eczema), 410–413
allergic eczematous contact dermatitis, 412
atopic, 410–411
dandruff, 412
dry skin dermatitis, 413
keratosis pilaris, 413
nummular eczema, 412
pityriasis alba, 413
primary irritant contact dermatitis, 412
seborrheic dermatitis, 412
diagnosis of, 397
fungal infections, 407–408
dermatophyte infections, 407–408, 407t
tinea versicolor, 408
hair loss (alopecia), 415–416, 415t
alopecia areata, 415–416
hair pulling, 416
hereditary, 403, 404t
insect infestations, 410
in newborns, 399–403
connective tissue birthmarks, 402–403
epidermal birthmarks, 402–403
melanocytic nevi, 401
melanoma, 400–401
nevi, 400–401
pigment cell birthmarks, 400–401
transient diseases, 399–400
vascular birthmarks, 401–402
papulosquamous eruptions, 414–415, 414t
pityriasis rosea, 414
psoriasis, 414–415
reactive erythemas, 416
drug eruptions, 416, 416t
erythema multiforme, 416
recurrent, treatment, 1188
treatment, 397–399
topical glucocorticoids, 397, 399, 399t
topical therapy, 397–399t
wet dressings, 397
viral infections, 408–409
virus-induced tumors, 409–410
vitiligo, 417
Skin infections
antimicrobial agents for, 1162–1163
candidiasis and, 1318
staphylococcal
clinical findings, 1238
differential diagnosis, 1239
treatment, 1240
Skin test , tuberculosis and, 1275
SLAM-adapter protein (SAP), 1004
SLE. See Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
Sleep
biologic clocks controlling, 85
described, 85
NREM, 85
patterns, 85
REM, 85
stages, 85
Sleep apnea
central, 545
obstructive, 545
Sleep-disordered breathing (SDB), 86–87, 494–496, 544–545
Sleep disorders, 85–87
benign neonatal sleep myoclonus, 759
insomnia, 86
management of, 87
narcolepsy, 758–759
night terrors, 86
nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy (NFLE), 759
overview, 86
parasomnias, 86, 759
periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD), 87
restless legs syndrome, 759
restless legs syndrome (RLS), 87
sleep-disordered breathing, 86–87, 544–545
sleepwalking, 86
Sleepwalking, 86. See also Sleep disorders
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE), 821, 865
Slow-wave sleep, 85
SMA (spinal muscular atrophy), 1102–1103
Small for gestational age (SGA), 10, 13
Small intestine disorders, 622–628
acute appendicitis, 627
clinical findings, 627
differential diagnosis, 627
general considerations, 627
prognosis, 627
treatment, 627
duplications of the gastrointestinal tract, 627–628
inguinal hernias, 625–626
clinical findings, 625
differential diagnosis, 625
treatment, 626
intestinal atresia and stenosis, 622
intestinal malrotation, 622–623
clinical findings, 623
general considerations, 622–623
prognosis, 623
treatment, 623

Small intestine disorders (Cont.):
intussusception, 624–625
clinical findings, 625
diagnosis, 625
prognosis, 625
treatment, 625
Meckel diverticulum, 626
clinical findings, 626
prognosis, 626
treatment, 626
patent omphalomesenteric duct, 626
short bowel syndrome, 623–624
general considerations, 623–624
prognosis, 624
symptoms and signs, 624
treatment, 624
umbilical hernias, 626
Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome, 1076–1077, 1102
Smith-Magenis syndrome, 1098
Smoke, exposure to, acute otitis media (AOM) related to, 472
Smoking
antidepressants and, 156
cessation, in pediatrics, 155–156, 156t
SMR. See Sexual maturity rating (SMR)
Snakebite
poisoning, treatment, 356–357
Snoring, 494–496, 496f
clinical evaluation, 495–496
complications, 496
management, 495–496
sequelae, 496
SNRIs (Serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors), 202
Soaps
poisoning, treatment, 357
Social anxiety disorder, 194–195
general considerations, 194
identification and diagnosis, 194
prognosis, 194
treatment, 194
Sodium
absorption/metabolism, 286t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiency, 286t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
nutrient requirements, 306t
Soft tissue infections, antimicrobial agents for, 1162
Soft tissues trauma, 828
Soft tissue variations, 465
Somatic delusions, 115
Somatoform disorders, 210–212, 211t
general considerations, 210–211
identification and diagnosis, 211
prognosis, 211–212
treatment, 211
Sotos syndrome, 1109
Southern blot analysis, 1085
Soy protein formulas, 294
Spasticity, 880–881
treatment, 880–881
Specialty Society Boards, 3
Specific granule deficiency, 916t
Specificity, reference intervals, 1369–1370, 1370f
Specific phobia, 191–192
Speculum vaginal examination, 126–127, 126t
Spider bites, poisoning, treatment, 358
Spina bifida, empiric risks, 1090t
Spinal cord injury (SCI), 876–878
assessment, 876–877
classification, 876–877
clinical patterns, 877
treatment, 877–878
Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA), 1102–1103
Spine, evaluation, in trauma survey, 319
Spine injuries, sports related, 858–859
disk herniation, 859
spondylolisthesis, 858–859
spondylolysis, 858
Spiramycin, 1300
Spirochetal infections, 1282–1290
leptospirosis, 1287–1288
Lyme disease, 1288–1290
relapsing fever, 1286–1287
syphilis, 1282–1286
Spironolactone, 562
Spitz nevus, 401
Splenectomy, 935–936
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 921
Splenic abnormalities, 935–936
Splenomegaly, 935, 1243
Spondylolisthesis, 858–859
Spondylolysis, 858
Spontaneous lymphoproliferative disease, 961
Spontaneous perforation of the extrahepatic bile ducts, 663
Spontaneous pneumothorax, respiratory distress in newborn due to, 29
Sporothrix schenckii, 1325–1326
Sporotrichosis, 1325–1326
Sports injuries
ankle injuries, 870–872
elbow injuries, 861–863
foot injuries, 870–872
hand injuries, 863–864
head and neck injuries, 855–857
hip injuries, 864–867
knee injuries, 867–870
prevention, 872
rehabilitation of, 849, 854
shoulder injuries, 859–861
spine injuries, 858–859
wrist injuries, 863–864
Sports medicine, 840–872
basic principles, 840–854
clearance form, 847f
infectious diseases, 855
injuries. See Sports injuries
patient history form, 844f, 845f
physical examination form, 846f
preparticipation evaluation recommendations for participation, 849, 850t–853t
preparticipation history, 842–849
strength training in, 841
Sports nutrition, 841
Sports physicals, health supervision visits, 241
Sprains, 828, 829
ankle, 828
back, 829
knee, 828
Sprengel deformity, 825
Standardized Care to Improve Outcomes in Pediatric ESRD (SCOPE) Collaborative, 734
Standardized scales, 392
Stanford-Binet V, 97

Staphylococcal infections, 432, 1167, 1237–1241
clinical findings, 1238–1239
coagulase-negative, 1239
differential diagnosis, 1239
general considerations, 1237–1238
laboratory findings, 1239
prevention, 1238
treatment, 1240–1241
Staphylococcal scalded skin, red rash in, 1174t
Staphylococcal scarlet fever, red rash in, 1174t
Staphylococcus aureus, 123, 470, 512, 590, 632, 657, 1227
Staphylococcus epidermidis, 633
Startle reflex. See Moro reflex, newborns
State Behavioral Scale (SBS), 392
Statistical computation of reference intervals, 1368–1369
nonparametric method, 1368–1369
parametric method, 1368, 1368f
Status asthmaticus, 371–374
clinical findings, 372
laboratory findings, 372
pathogenesis, 371–372
prognosis, 374
treatment, 372–374
Status epilepticus, 756
Stavudine, 1221t
Stenosis, pyloric, empiric risks, 1090t
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia, 1256
Sterile pyuria, 1341
Sternocleidomastoid muscle hematoma, 494
Stevens-Johnson syndrome, red rash in, 1174t
Stickler syndrome, 1099
Still disease, red rash in, 1173t
Still murmur, 552
Stimulant, for ADHD, 91, 92–93
cardiovascular effects, 93
side effects of, 92–93
Stimulants, 353
Stingers, sports-related, 857
Stomach and duodenum disorders, 617–622
congenital diaphragmatic hernia, 620–621
congenital duodenal obstruction, 621–622
clinical findings, 621
general considerations, 621
imaging studies, 621
prognosis, 621–622
treatment, 621–622
gastric and duodenal ulcer, 619–620
clinical findings, 619–620
general considerations, 619
treatment, 620
hiatal hernias, 617–618
pyloric stenosis, 618–619
clinical findings, 618
prognosis, 618–619
treatment, 618–619
Strabismus, 456–457, 456f
Stramonium, poisoning, treatment, 341–342
Stranger anxiety, 76
Strength, definition of, 841
Strengths and Difficulties Questionnaires (SDQs), in mental health screening in office setting, 175
Strength training, 841
Streptococcal infections
group A, 1226–1230. See also Group A streptococcal infections
group B, 1230–1233, 1231t, 1232f
with organisms other than group A or B, 1233–1234
Streptococcal scarlet fever, red rash in, 1174t
Streptococcal sepsis, 1227
Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (STSS), 1227
Streptococcus, 587
Streptococcus anginosus (milleri), 485, 1234
Streptococcus mutans (MS), 459, 461
Streptococcus pneumoniae, 471, 475, 485–486, 1235, 1356
Streptococcus sobrinus, 461
Streptococcus viridans group, 1234
Streptomycin
for plague, 1267
for tuberculosis, 1276
Stretogramin, 1155t
Strongyloides stercoralis, 1308
Strongyloidiasis, 1291, 1294
clinical findings, 1309
differential diagnosis, 1309
general considerations, 1308
laboratory findings, 1309
prevention, 1309
symptoms and signs, 1309
treatment, 1309
Sturge-Weber disease, 775–776. See also Encephalofacial angiomatosis (Sturge-Weber disease)
Subacute necrotizing encephalomyelopathy, 779t
Subacute (nonsuppurative) thyroiditis, 1020
Subarachnoid hemorrhage, in newborn, 68
Subconjunctival hemorrhages, birth trauma and, 14
Subcortical band heterotopia, 768
Subcutaneous fat necrosis, 400
Subcutaneous nodules, 588
Subdermal burns, 323–324
Subdural hemorrhages, 68
Subgaleal hemorrhages
in newborn, 14, 30
vaginal deliveries and, 30
Subluxatable hip, 819
Subluxed radial head, 830
Submersion injuries, 327
clinical findings, 327
prognosis, 327
treatment, 327
Submucous cleft palate, 499
Substance abuse
adolescent. See Adolescent substance abuse
effects by agents, 147t–148t
evaluation of, 152–154
comorbidity, 153, 153t
diagnosis, 152–153, 153t
office screening, 152
pharmacologic screening, 153–154, 154t
physiologic effects of, 146t
primary level programs for, 157
progression from substance use to, 151, 151t
progression to, substance abuse, 151, 151t
secondary level programs for, 157
tertiary level programs for, 157

Subvalvular pulmonary stenosis, 569
Sucking blisters, 400
Sucking pads, 463, 464f
Sucking reflex, newborns, 16
Sudden death, 607
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 548–549
  American Academy of Pediatrics recommendations regarding, 549t
  epidemiology, 548–549
  pathogenesis, 548–549
  prevention, 548–549
Sudden unexpected infant death (SUID), 548–549
  epidemiology, 548–549
  pathogenesis, 548–549
  prevention, 548–549
Suicidal ideation
  assessment, 207
  intervention, 207
Suicide
  depression and, 202–203
  psychiatric disorders associated with, 206–208
  risk assessment, 207
Suicide, in adolescence, 117
  mortality, 117
  prevalence, 117
  risk assessment, 117
  treatment, 117
Sulfadiazine, 588
Sulfonamide, 1155t, 1167
Superficial thickness burns, 323
Superior mesenteric artery (SMA), 162–163, 622
Supplemental oxygen, 362–363, 362t
Supplement use and abuse, 149–150
Suppurative parotitis, 498
Suprahepatic vein occlusion, 681
Supravalvular pulmonary stenosis, 570
Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), 597, 603–606
  clinical findings, 604–605
    electrocardiography, 604–605
    imaging, 604
    symptoms and signs, 604
  mechanism of, 603t
  mechanisms of, 603t
  in newborn, 51
  prognosis, 606
  treatment, 605–606
    acute, 605
    chronic, 605–606
Surfactant, in bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 525
Surfactant replacement therapy
  for hyaline membrane disease in preterm infants, 42–43
Surfactant-replacement therapy, 371
Surgery, 755
  for gas gangrene, 1251
Surveillance, described, 174
Sustained hypertension, 726–727
Sutures, in newborn, 14
Swimming pool granuloma, nontuberculous mycobacteria and, 1277
Sydenham chorea, 588
Sydenham post-rheumatic chorea, 786
  differential diagnosis, 786
  laboratory findings and special tests, 786
  prognosis, 786
  symptoms and signs, 786
  treatment, 786
Symmetrical growth restriction, 13
Sympathetic nervous system blockade, 728t
Synchronized IMV (SIMV), 365
Syncope (fainting), 610
Syndrome, defined, 1093
Syndromes presenting as acute flaccid weakness, 796–799
  clinical findings, 796
    laboratory findings, 796
    symptoms and signs, 796
  complications, 799
    autonomic crisis, 799
    infections, 799
    respiratory weakness and failure, 799
  differential diagnosis, 796
  pathogenesis, 796
  treatment, 799
Syndromes with pancreatic exocrine insufficiency, 697
Syndromic hearing impairment, 482
Syndromic short stature, 1109
Syphilis, 1282–1286, 1346–1347
  acquired
    differential diagnosis, 1284
    symptoms and signs, 1283
    treatment, 1285
  clinical findings, 1283–1284
  congenital. See Congenital syphilis
  differential diagnosis, 1284
  general considerations, 1282–1283
  imaging, 1284
  laboratory findings, 1283–1284
  prevention, 1283
  prognosis, 1285–1286
  serologic tests for, 1283–1284
  treatment, 1284–1285, 1336t, 1346–1347
Syphilis, in newborn, 61
Systemic antibiotics, 405
Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), 377
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 885–887
  clinical findings, 885–886
  differential diagnosis, 886
  pathogenesis, 885
  prognosis, 887
  treatment, 886–887
Systemic protozoal infections, 1294–1300
  babesiosis, 1296–1298
  malaria, 1294–1296
  toxoplasmosis, 1298–1300
Systolic blood pressure, of newborns, 14

T

Tachyarrhythmias, in newborn, 51
Tachycardia, 375
Tacrolimus, in atopic dermatitis management, 1138
TADS (Treatment of Adolescent Depression Study), 201
Taenia saginata, 1312
Taeniasis, 1312–1313
Taenia solium, 1312
Talipes calcaneovalgus, 817
Talipes equinovarus. See Clubfoot
Tall stature, growth and, 1015–1016, 1015t
Tardive dyskinesias (TDs), antipsychotics and, 214
Tar preparations, in atopic dermatitis management, 1138

Tay-Sachs disease, 778t
T-cell
deficiency, 988
developmental defects, 993
impaired
function, 993, 995
survival, 993
Omenn syndrome, 995
T-cell receptor rearrangement excision circles (TREC), 993
Tdap. See Tetanus-reduced dose diphtheria-acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccination
Team training, 8–9
Tearing, in eyes, 418
Teeth
eruption, 465–466
delayed, 466
ectopic, 466
impaction, 466
normal, 465–466
variations in tooth number, 466
examination in newborns and infants, 463–464
permanent, dental emergencies related to, 468
primary, dental emergencies related to, 467–468, 467f
Telephone
in emotional/behavioral problems consultation, 172
poison information and, 332
Telepsychiatry, for emotional and behavioral problems, 172
Television exposure, counseling about, in health supervision visits, 239–240
Temperament
models of, 80
normality and, 79–80
Temper tantrums, 88
Tenofovir, 1221t
Tenosynovitis, 824
Teratogens, perinatal genetics related to, 1111–1112
Terminally ill child, 183–185
health care provider's role for, 184
encourage compensatory activities, interests, and skill development, 184
encourage normal activities, 184
family education, 184
patient education, 184
periodically review family coping, 184–185
prepare child for changes and procedures, 184
promote self-reliance, 184
Tertiary level programs, for substance abuse, 157
Tetanus, 1249–1250
clinical findings, 1250
complications, 1250
differential diagnosis, 1250
general considerations, 1249
laboratory findings, 1250
prevention, 1249–1250
prognosis, 1250
symptoms and signs, 1250
treatment, 1250
Tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG), 1249–1250
Tetanus-reduced dose diphtheria-acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccination, 275
Tetanus toxoid immunizations, 1249
Tetracycline, 1155t
for cholera, 1263
Tetralogy of Fallot, 577–578
clinical findings, 577–578
course and prognosis, 578
general considerations, 577
treatment, 578
a -Thalassemia, 902–903
Thermal burns, 322–324
clinical findings, 323
complications, 323
differential diagnosis, 323
prevention, 323
prognosis, 324
treatment, 323–324
full-thickness, deep or extensive burns, 323–324
subdermal burns, 323–324
superficial- and partial-thickness burns, 323
Thermoregulation, for preterm infants in nursery, 39
Thermoregulation problems, 878
Thiamin
biologic role, 292t
cow milk composition, 295t
deficiencies
causes, 293t
clinical features, 294t
dietary reference intakes, 290t
dietary sources of, 293t
human milk composition, 295t
infant formula, 295t
Thiazides, 562
Thirst, 699
Throat
disorders
abscess (quinsy), 492–493
acute cervical adenitis, 493–494
acute stomatitis, 489
adenoidectomy, 497
Ludwig angina, 493
mouth breathing, 494–496
peritonsillar cellulitis, 492–493
pharyngitis, 489–492, 490f
retropharyngeal abscess, 493
snoring, 494–496
tonsillectomy, 496–497
upper airway obstruction, 494–496
pharyngitis, acute, 491–492
Thrombin, 469
Thrombocytopenia, 921–923
with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 922
with Kaposiform Hemangioendotheliomas, 922–923
in newborn, 63–64
differential diagnosis for, 64, 64t
isoimmune, 64
treatment of, 64
platelet alloantibodies, 922
Thrombophilia, 137, 137t
Thrombosis, 681
in newborn, 67
Thrombotic disorders, 932–935
clinical findings, 932–934
clinical risk factors, 932
general considerations, 932
Thrush, 489, 1318
Thumb injury, 864
Thyroglossal duct cyst, 494
Thyroid
in angioedema management, 1140
in urticaria management, 1140

Thyroid cancer, 1021–1022
Thyroid function tests (TFT)
approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
Thyroid gland, 1017–1022
cancer, 1021–1022
fetal development of, 1017
hyperthyroidism, 1020–1021
hypothyroidism, 1017–1019
physiology, 1017
thyroiditis, 1019–1020
Thyroid hormone
in angioedema management, 1140
in urticaria management, 1140
Thyroiditis, 1019–1020
Tiabendazole, for strongyloidiasis, 1309
Tibia fracture, 838f
Tibial torsion, 819
Tibial Tubercle apophysitis, 868
Tics/Tourette syndrome, 786–788
differential diagnosis, 787
lab and neuroimaging, 787
prognosis, 788
symptoms and signs, 787
treatment, 787–788
TIG. See Tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG)
Tinea capitis, 407, 407t
Tinea corporis, 407
Tinea cruris, 407
Tinea pedis, 407
Tinea unguium (onychomycosis), 407–408
Tinea versicolor, 408
Tinidazole, for amebic infection, 1302
Tipranavir, 1221t
Tissue Doppler Imaging, 600
Tissues
donation, 395
fetal, in perinatal genetics, 1112
T lymphocytes, 989
TMP-SMX (trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole), 1155t, 1167
Tobacco cessation, 156
Tobacco smoking, during pregnancy, effects on infants, 32
Tobramycin, for Pseudomonas infections, 1257
To Err Is Human (IOM), 1
Toilet phobia, in children, 81
Toilet training, 78
Toll-like receptors, 377
Tongue
disorders
coated tongue, 498
fissured tongue, 498
geographic tongue, 498
macroglossia, 498
Tongue-tie (ankyloglossia), 498–499
Tonicity
aldosterone, 700
antidiuretic hormone, 699–700
atrial natriuretic factor, 700
regulation of, 699–700
thirst, 699
Tonsillectomy, 496–497
complications of, 497
contraindications to, 497
Tooth agenesis, 466
Topical antibiotics, 405
Topical antiviral agents, for herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections, 1187
Topical calcineurin inhibitors, in atopic dermatitis management, 1137–1138
Topical glucocorticoids, 397, 399, 399t
Topical keratolytic agents, 404–405
Topical therapy, 397–399t
Torticollis, 821–822
Torus fractures, 831
Torus palatini, 499
Total anomalous pulmonary venous return, 584–585
clinical findings, 584–585
course and prognosis, 585
general considerations, 584
treatment, 585
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN), 302, 304t
Total serum bilirubin (TSB), 19
Tourette syndrome
medications for, 787t
Toxic cerebellar syndrome, 781–782
Toxicology
absorption, 331
blood levels, 332
body burden, 332
elimination half-life, 331
metabolism and excretion, 332
principles, 331–332
volume of distribution, 331–332
Toxic shock syndrome (TSS)
red rash in, 1174t
staphylococcal
clinical findings, 1239
differential diagnosis, 1239
treatment, 1241
Toxin, 1247. See also Botulism
cholera, 1262
Toxocara canis, 1309
Toxocara cati, 1309
Toxocariasis, 1309–1310
Toxoplasma gondii, 60, 533, 653, 1298
Toxoplasmosis
acquired, in immunocompromised host, 1299
acute, in immunocompromised host, 1299
clinical findings, 1298–1299
congenital, 1298–1299
diagnostic findings, 1299
differential diagnosis, 1299–1300
general considerations, 1298
in newborn, 60–61
ocular, 1299
prevention, 1300
treatment, 1300
Toyota, 6
Trace elements, nutritional requirements and, 285, 287t, 288t
Tracheoesophageal fistula, in newborns, 52
Tranquilizers, 354
Transbronchial biopsy, 506
Transdermal patch, 138
Transesophageal atrial pacing, 605
Transfusion medicine, 936–944
Transfusion-related acute lung injury, 943
Transient diseases, 399–400
Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood, 896–897
Transient hypogammaglobulinemia, 997–998
Transient myeloproliferative disorder, 952
Transient synovitis of hip, 834–835
Transient tachypnea, respiratory distress in newborn due to, 28

Translocation, chromosomal, 1082, 1083f
Transposition of the great arteries, 582–584
clinical findings, 582–583
congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries (ccTGA), 583
double-outlet right ventricle, 584
general considerations, 582
treatment, 583
Transthoracic echocardiogram, 556
Trauma
abusive head, 429
clinical findings, 429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 429
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
acute, to middle ear, 480
birth, 30, 31f
bruising from, 14
subconjunctival hemorrhages, 14
blunt orbital, 426–427
clinical findings, 426
complications
differential diagnosis, 426
pathogenesis, 426
prevention, 426
prognosis, 427
treatment, 426–427
nasal, 488–489
nonaccidental, 429
clinical findings, 429
complications, 429
differential diagnosis, 429
pathogenesis, 429
prognosis, 429
treatment, 429
ocular, 424–430
travel-related, 1352
Trauma patient, approach to
initial assessment and management, 315
mechanism of injury, 315
primary survey, 315–318
airway, 315
breathing, 315–317
circulation, 317
disability-neurologic deficit, 317, 318t
exposure and environment, 318
monitoring, 318
secondary survey, 318–320
history, 318
physical examination, 318–320
abdomen, 319
central nervous system, 319–320
chest, 319
extremities, 319
genitourinary system, 319
head, 319
pelvis, 319
skin, 318–319
spine, 319
Trauma-related orthopedics, 828–832
contusions, 829
dislocations, 829–830
fractures, 830–832
myositis ossificans, 829
soft tissues, 828
sprains, 828, 829
subluxations, 829–830
Traumatic brain injury, 381–385, 381t, 382t, 383f
clinical findings, 382, 382t
complications, 384
inflicted traumatic brain injury, 385
pathogenesis, 381–382, 381t
prognosis, 384
treatment, 383–384, 383t
Traumatic dislocations, 829–830
Traumatic oral ulcers, 489
Traumatic subluxations, 829–830
Travel, 1352–1366
air travel, 1352
ear pain during, 1352–1353
altitude sickness, 1353
diarrhea related to, 1358–1359, 1358t. See also Traveler's diarrhea
fever on return from, 1363–1366, 1363t–1365t
HIV infection and, 1360, 1363
illness on return from, 1364t–1365t
international
first aid kit for, 1353, 1353t
prevalence, 1352
malaria due to
chemoprophylaxis, 1360
prophylaxis and prevention, 1359–1360, 1361t–1362t
medical care during, 1352
motion sickness during, 1353
preparation, 1352–1353, 1353t
sexually transmitted diseases (STD), 1360, 1363
vaccinations, 1354–1358
routine childhood modified for, 1354–1356, 1354t
to visits to friends and relatives, in high-risk areas, 1360
Traveler's diarrhea, 1358–1359, 1358t
chemoprophylaxis, 1358–1359, 1359t
prevention, 1358
treatment, 1358–1359
Travel medications/first aid kit for, 1353, 1353t
Travel medicine, 1352–1366
Travel plans, 1352–1353
Treatment of Adolescent Depression Study (TADS), 201
Trematode infections, 1314–1315
Tremor, 788–789
Treponema pallidum, 61, 653, 1282, 1346
Trichinella species, 1310
Trichinella spiralis, 1310
Trichinosis, 1291
diagnosis, 1311
differential diagnosis, 1311
prevention, 1311
prognosis, 1311
symptoms and signs, 1310–1311
treatment, 1311
Trichomonas vaginalis, 1332, 1343–1344
treatment, 1335t
Trichomoniasis
complications, 1344
laboratory findings, 1344
symptoms and signs, 1343–1344
treatment, 1335t
Trichophyton mentagrophytes, 407
Trichophyton rubrum, 407
Trichophyton tonsurans, 407
Trichotillomania, 195
Trichuriasis (whipworm), 1307
Trichuris trichiura, 1307

Tricuspid atresia, 580–581
angiocardiography, 581
cardiac catheterization, 581
echocardiography, 581
electrocardiography, 581
general considerations, 580
imaging, 580
symptoms and signs, 580
treatment and prognosis, 581
Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
for depression, 202, 202t
Trifluridine, for herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections, 1187
Trigger variable, 364
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX)
for traveler's diarrhea, 1359
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMPSMX), 1155t, 1167
Triple Aim, 1, 2f
Trisomy, 1095–1096
clinical findings, 1095–1096
genetic counseling, 1096
treatment, 1096
trisomy 13, 1096
trisomy 13 syndrome, 1096
trisomy 18, 1095
trisomy 21 (Down syndrome), 1095
Trisomy 21, 14, 15, 1005
Trisomy rescue
heterodisomy by, 1084f
isodisomy by, 1084f
True negative (TN), 1370
True positive (TP), 1370
Truncus arteriosus, 585–586
angiocardiography, 586
course and prognosis, 586
echocardiography, 586
electrocardiography, 586
general considerations, 585–586
imaging, 586
symptoms and signs, 586
treatment, 586
Trypanosoma cruzi, 614
TST. See Tuberculin skin test (TST)
Tuberculin skin test (TST), 1274–1275
Tuberculosis, 1273–1276
clinical findings, 1274
differential diagnosis, 1274
drug-resistant, chemotherapy for, 1276
general considerations, 1273
imaging, 1274
laboratory findings, 1274
prevention, 1274–1275
prognosis, 1276
symptoms and signs, 1274
treatment, 1275–1276
vaccination, 279
travel-related, 1357–1358
Tuberculosis (TB) screening, in health supervision visits, 234
Tuberous sclerosis (Bourneville disease), 774–775
genetic evaluation, 1111
imaging studies and special tests, 775
major and minor criteria for, 775t
symptoms and signs, 774–775
cardiopulmonary involvement, 775
dermatologic features, 774
eye involvement, 775
neurologic features, 775
renal lesions, 775
skeletal involvement, 775
treatment, 775
Tularemia, 1264–1265
clinical findings, 1265
differential diagnosis, 1265
general considerations, 1264–1265
prevention, 1265
prognosis, 1265
symptoms and signs, 1265
treatment, 1265
Tumors
common skin, 413–414
orbital, 454, 454f
of the parotid gland, 498
virus-induced, 409–410
Turner syndrome, 575, 1005
cardiac defects, 551t
clinical findings, 1096
treatment, 1096–1097
Turn-taking games, 75
Two-dimensional imaging, 556
Tympanic membrane perforation, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478
Tympanocentesis, for acute otitis media (AOM), 476, 476f
Tympanograms, 473, 474f
Tympanometry, in acute otitis media (AOM) evaluation, 473, 474f
Tympanosclerosis, acute otitis media (AOM) and, 478
Type 1 diabetes
dentistry in children with, 469
Typhoid fever, 278, 1259–1260
clinical findings, 1259–1260
complications, 1260
differential diagnosis, 1260
general considerations, 1259
laboratory findings, 1259–1260
prevention, 1260
prognosis, 1260
in returned traveler, 1364t
symptoms and signs, 1259
treatment, 1260
vaccination, 278
travel-related, 1357
Typhus
endemic, 1212–1213
murine, 1212–1213
Tyrosinemia
hereditary, 1064
of newborns, 1063

U

Ulcerative colitis, 650f
Ulcers
genital, 1344–1348
perianal, 1301
Ulipristal, 141
Ulnar collateral ligament tear, 862–863
Ultradian rhythm, 85
Ultrasonography, 740–741
of newborn with renal anomalies, 66
Umbilical cord, examination at birth, 13–14
Umbilical hernias, 626
Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, 664–665
breast milk jaundice, 664
congenital hypothyroidism, 664
Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 665
drug-induced hyperbilirubinemia, 665
Gilbert syndrome, 664–665
upper intestinal obstruction, 664
Undernutrition, 297–298

Unicameral bone cysts, 839
Uniparental disomy, 1083–1085, 1084f
Upper airway obstruction, 494–496
Upper intestinal obstruction, 664
Upper respiratory infections (URIs), 471–472
Urea cycle, disorders, 1061–1062
Urea cycle disorders, in newborn, 69
Uremia, 931
Urethritis, 1186
  clinical findings, 1341–1342
  complications, 1342
  general considerations, 1341
  laboratory findings, 1342
  male, gonorrheal, 1245
  nongonococcal, nonchlamydial, treatment, 1335t
  symptoms and signs, 1341
  treatment, 1334t, 1335t, 1342
  Trichomonas vaginalis, treatment, 1335t
Uridyl diphosphoglucuronyl transferase (UDPGT), 20, 22
Urinalysis, 711
Urinary alkalinization, 336
Urinary free cortisol, 1038
Urinary tract, inherited or developmental defects of, 729t
Urinary tract anomalies, in newborn, 66
Urinary tract infection, in newborn, 58–59
Urinary tract infections (UTIs), 657, 732–733
  acute, 1254–1255
  antimicrobial agents for, 1162
  approach to the outpatient workup of, 727f
  clinical findings, 732–733
    imaging, 733
    laboratory findings, 732–733
    symptoms and signs, 732
  pathogenesis, 732
  treatment, 733
    antibiotic therapy, 733
    prophylactic antimicrobials, 733
Urine concentrating ability, 711
Urine studies, 722t
Urticaria, 1139–1141
  clinical findings, 1139–1140
  complications, 1140
  described, 1139
  differential diagnosis, 1140
  general considerations, 1139
  laboratory findings, 1140
  prevalence, 1139
  prognosis, 1141
  symptoms and signs, 1139–1140
  treatment, 1140–1141
    antihistamines, 1140
    corticosteroids, 1140
    doxepin, 1140
    general measures, 1140
    leukotriene-receptor antagonists, 1140
    thyroid hormone, 1140
  US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 136
Uveitis
  anterior, 441–442
  intermediate, 443
  in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 885
  posterior, 442–443

V

Vaccine. See also Immunization; specific types and indications
  abbreviations related to, 249t
  in acute otitis media (AOM) prevention, 477
  adverse reactions, 1146
    measles-mumps rubella (MMR), 1146
  for allergic or hypersensitive children, 256
  BCG, 279, 1274–1275, 1357
  for children with chronic illnesses, 255
  cholera, 1263
  contraindications and precautions, 255
  diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccination, 260–262
  Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) infections, 262–263
  hepatitis A, 272–273
  hepatitis B, 256–258
  human papillomavirus (HPV) infection, 275–276
  for immunodeficient children, 255–256
  immunoglobulin, 280
  influenza, 267, 1355
  Japanese encephalitis (JE), 278
  measles-mumps rubella (MMR), 268–270
  meningococcal, 273–274, 1243–1244
  for meningococcal infections, 1243
  minor acute illnesses, 255
  pneumococcal, 263–265
  polio, 1356
  poliomyelitis, 265–266
  rabies, 276–277
  risk-benefit communication, 250, 255
  rotavirus infection, 258–259
  safety monitoring, 250
  for special circumstances, 255–256
  tetanus-reduced dose diphtheria-acellular pertussis (Tdap), 275
  tuberculosis, 279
  typhoid fever, 278
  varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection, 270–272
  yellow fever, 279
Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS), 250
Vaccine Injury Compensation Program, 249
Vaccine Safety Datalink (VSD), 249t, 250
VACTERL association, 1109
VAERS. See Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS)
Vagal maneuvers, in supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) management, 605
Vaginal discharge
  bacterial vaginosis, 1335t, 1343
  causes, 1343
  described, 1343
  trichomoniasis, 1343–1344
  vulvovaginal candidiasis, 1335t, 1344
Vaginal examination, speculum, 126–127, 126t
Vaginal infection, candidiasis and, 1318
Vaginal mucosa, estrogenization of, 126

Vaginal pH, in speculum vaginal examination, 126t
Vaginitis
characterizing, 1343
Trichomonas vaginalis, treatment, 1335t
Vaginosis, bacterial
complications, 1343
general considerations, 1343
laboratory findings, 1343
symptoms and signs, 1343
treatment, 1335t, 1343
Vagus nerve stimulator (VNS), in seizure management, 755
Valproate, for bipolar disorder, 204
Vancomycin, 1152t
for listeriosis, 1273
Vancomycin-resistant enterococci, infections with, 1233–1234
Vancomycin-resistant organisms, 57
Vancomycin-resistant s aureus (VRSA) infections, treatment, 1241
Vanderbilt Assessment Scales for Attention-Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder, 179
Vanishing white matter/childhood ataxis with CNS hypomyelination, 780t
Variations in children's behavior, 79–80
Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection, 409, 1189–1191
clinical findings, 1189
complications, 1190
differential diagnosis, 1190
general considerations, 1189
imaging studies, 1189
in newborn, 60
prevention, 1190
prognosis, 1191
sequelae, 1190
symptoms and signs, 1189
treatment, 1190–1191
vaccination, 270–272
administration schedule, 271
adverse events, 271
antibody preparations, 271–272
contraindications, 271
dosage, 271
precautions, 271
vaccines available, 270–271
Vascular birthmarks, 401–402
Vascular lesions, 835–836
Vascular malformations, intestinal hemangiomas and
clinical presentation, 636
treatment, 636
Vascular resistance, 558–559
Vascular rings and slings, 515
Vasculitis, 888–889
classification, 888, 888t
clinical findings, 888–889
prognosis, 889
treatment, 889
Vasoconstrictor agents, in allergic rhinoconjunctivitis management, 1134
Vasodilator, ambulatory treatment, 728t
Vasopressin, 379
Vasopressor, in anaphylaxis management, 1143
VDRL. See Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL)
Vegetable oil, infant formula additives, 296t
Vejovis, 356
Velocardiofacial syndrome, 999, 1098–1099
Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL), 1283
veno-occlusive disease (acute stage), 681
Venous hum, 552
Venous thromboembolic events (VTE), 136–137
screening questions for, 137t
transdermal patch and, 138
Ventilation
in bronchopulmonary dysplasia management, 526
continuous mandatory, 365
continuous spontaneous, 365
controlled, 384
conventional mechanical, 364–368
high-frequency oscillatory, 367
for hyaline membrane disease in preterm infants, 42–43
intermittent mandatory, 365
noninvasive, 363
pressure-controlled, 365
pressure-support, 365
volume-controlled, 365
Ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP), 366
Ventilator-induced lung injury, 370
Ventilator mode, 365
Ventricular assist devices, 561
Ventricular premature beats, 601, 602f
Ventricular septal defect, 564–565
angiocardiography, 565
cardiac catheterization, 565
clinical findings, 564–565
course and prognosis, 565
echocardiography, 565
electrocardiography, 565
general considerations, 564
imaging, 565
symptoms and signs, 564
large ventricular septal defects with pulmonary hypertension, 565
moderate left-to-right shunt, 565
small left-to-right shunt, 564–565
Ventricular septal defects
large, 564
moderate-sized, 564
pulmonary atresia with, 578–579
small, hemodynamically insignificant, 564
Ventricular tachycardia, 606–607
12-lead ECG from a child with imipramine toxicity and, 606f
VEPTR. See Vertical expandable prosthetic titanium ribs (VEPTR)
Vernix caseosa, in newborn, 14
Vertical expandable prosthetic titanium ribs (VEPTR), 823
Vesicoureteral reflux (VUR)
hydronephrosis, 66
urinary tract infections, 714, 715–716, 733
Vibrio cholerae, 1262–1263. See also Cholera
Video-assisted thoracoscopic lung biopsy (VATS), 506

Violence prevention, anticipatory guidance, 238
Violent behavior, 210
Viral conjunctivitis, 437
Viral croup, 511–512
  clinical findings, 511
  prognosis, 512
  treatment, 511–512
Viral eyelid disease, 431
Viral infections, 793, 1170
  clinical syndromes due to, 1173t
  described, 1170
  diagnostic tests, 1173t–1174t
  enterovirus-related, 1181–1185
  hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome, 1207–1208
  herpesviruses and, 1185–1197
  insect vectors and, 1197–1210
  measles, 1204–1205
  mumps, 1208–1209
  rabies, 1209–1210
  respiratory infections, 1170–1172
  rubella, 1205–1207
  of skin, 408–409
Viral keratitis, 444–445
Viral meningitis, nonpolio, 1184–1185
Viral pharyngitis, acute, 489–491, 490f
  clinical findings, 491
Viral pneumonia, 528–529
  clinical findings, 529
  complications, 529
  differential diagnosis, 529
  prognosis, 529
  treatment, 529
Viral upper respiratory infections, 471–472
Viridans streptococci infections, 1234
Visceral larva migrans, 1309–1310
Visceral pleura, 542
Vision and hearing screening, 233–234
Vision screening, 420–421
Visits to friends and relatives (VFR), in high-risk areas, 1360
Visual acuity
  age-appropriate, 233, 233t
  in ophthalmic examination, 420–421
Vitamin(s)
  in breast milk, 17
  deficiencies, risk of, 289t
  dietary reference intakes for, 290t
  fat-soluble, 285, 287t, 291t–292t
  nutritional requirements and, 285, 287t, 307
  poisoning, treatment, 358
  toxicity, 289t
  water-soluble, 285, 287t, 292t–293t
Vitamin A
  absorption/metabolism, 291t
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency, 291t
    treatment, 292t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  toxicity effect, 289t
Vitamin B
  biologic roles, 292t
  deficiencies
    causes, 293t
    critical features, 294t
  dietary sources of, 293t
Vitamin B_6
  cow milk composition, 295t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Vitamin B_{12}
  cow milk composition, 295t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Vitamin C
  cow milk composition, 295t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  dietary sources of, 293t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  toxicity effect, 289t
Vitamin D
  absorption/metabolism, 291t
  calcium salts with, oral administration, 69
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency, 291t
    treatment, 292t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  toxicity effect, 289t
Vitamin E
  absorption/metabolism, 291t
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency, 291t
    treatment, 292t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  toxicity effect, 289t
Vitamin K
  absorption/metabolism, 291t
  cow milk composition, 295t
  deficiency, 291t
    treatment, 292t
  dietary reference intakes, 290t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
  toxicity effect, 289t
Vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB), 930
  in newborn, 63
Vitiligo, 417
VNS. See Vagus nerve stimulator (VNS), in seizure management
Vocal cord
  dysfunction, flow-volume loops in, 1116f
  paralysis, 513
Voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG), in urinary tract infection (UTI) evaluation, 714, 716, 733
Volume-controlled ventilation, 365
Volume of distribution, of drug, 331–332
Volume replacement, in shock, 314
Volutrauma, 369
Vomiting
  cyclic vomiting syndrome, 643
    clinical findings, 643
    differential diagnosis, 643
    treatment, 643
  in infants and children, inborn errors of metabolism and, 1055
von Hippel-Lindau disease (retrocerebellar angiomatosis), 776
von Willebrand disease (vWD), 469, 928
  clinical findings, 928
  general considerations, 928
  laboratory findings, 928
  prognosis, 928
  symptoms and signs, 928
  treatment, 928

Voriconazole, for fungal infections, 1326, 1327
V/Q mismatch, in acute respiratory failure, 361, 362
VSD. See Vaccine Safety Datalink (VSD)
Vulvovaginal candidiasis
  causes of, 1344
  complication of, 1344
  incidence of, 1344
  laboratory findings, 1344
  risk factors, 1344
  symptoms and signs, 1344
  treatment, 1320, 1335t, 1344
Vulvovaginitis
  herpes simplex infections and, 1186
  prepubertal female, gonorrheal, 1246
VUR. See Vesicoureteral reflux (VUR)
vWD. See von Willebrand disease (vWD)
VZV infection. See Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection

W

Wall-eyed, 457–458, 457f. See also Exotropia (wall-eyed)
Warfarin, poisoning, treatment, 358–359
Warts, 409–410
  genital, 1348–1349
Wasp sting, 348
WAT-1. See Withdrawal Assessment Tool-1 (WAT-1)
Water, for respiratory distress in newborn infants, 29
Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome, with fulminant infections, treatment, 1038
Water-soluble vitamins, nutritional requirements, 285, 287t, 292t–293t
Watery discharge, eye disease, 418
Weakness, facial, 809–810
Web, laryngeal, 509, 509t
Web resources, 158
WE CARE, in mental health screening in office setting, 176
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 97
Wechsler Preschool and Primary Scale of Intelligence, 97
Weight gain
  age-related, 247t
  feeding disorders and, 84
Weight loss, feeding disorders and, 84
Weight management
  goals, 300–301, 301t
  structured, 301
Well-child surveillance and screening, 89–99
  ADHD, 91–93, 92t
  autism spectrum disorder (ASD), 93–96, 94t
  CHADIS in, 89
  developmental disorders, 89–91
  fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASD), 98–99
  fragile X syndrome, 98
  intellectual disability (ID), 96–97
WES. See Whole-exome sequencing (WES)
Western equine encephalitis, insects spreading, 1199t
West Nile virus encephalitis, insects spreading, 1197, 1198t
Wet dressings
  in atopic dermatitis management, 1138
  for skin disorders, 397
WHIM (warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infection, myelokathexis) syndrome, 1004
Whipworm. See Trichuriasis (whipworm)
White-eyed blowout fracture, 426
White matter
  globoid (Krabbe) leukodystrophy, 778t
  lesions, 775, 794
  metachromatic leukodystrophy, 778t
Whole blood, characteristics of, 939t, 942
Whole-exome sequencing (WES), 1085
Whole genome sequencing, 1085
Whole gut lavage, in poisoning treatment, 335
Whooping cough, 260, 1270–1272. See also Pertussis (whooping cough)
WIC. See Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) food packages
Williams-Beuren syndrome, cardiac defects, 551t
Williams syndrome, 1028, 1098
Wilms tumor, 963–964
  clinical findings, 963–964
  future considerations, 964
  general considerations, 963
  imaging, 964
  laboratory findings, 963
  staging, 964
  symptoms and signs, 963
  treatment and prognosis, 964
Wilson disease (hepatolenticular degeneration), 789
  clinical findings, 677–678
    laboratory findings, 677–678
    symptoms and signs, 677
  complications, 678
  differential diagnosis, 678
  general considerations, 677
  prognosis, 678–679
  treatment, 678
Wiskott-Aldrich Syndrome (WAS), 999
  clinical findings, 999
  differential diagnosis, 999
  general considerations, 999
  laboratory findings, 999
  treatment, 999
Withdrawal
  from chronic pain management, 981
  of life-sustaining medical therapies (LSMT), 394–395
  medical life support, in end-of-life care, of children, 984, 986
Withdrawal Assessment Tool-1 (WAT-1), 393
Withdrawal dyskinesias, antipsychotics and, 214
Withdrawal symptoms, 981
Withdrawal syndromes, 392–393
Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome, 570, 603, 604f
Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome, 1098
Wolman disease, clinical and laboratory features, 1074t

Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) food packages, 239, 244
Wong-Baker Pain Scale, 979f
Wood lamp examination for tuberous sclerosis, 95
World Health Organization, 281, 327
World Symposium on Pulmonary Hypertension (WSPH), 599
Wound
  rabies related, 276, 277
  tetanus-prone, 260, 261–262, 262t
WPW syndrome. See Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome
Wrist injury, sports related, 864

X
X-linked cerebellar ataxias, 785
X-linked disorders, 1103
  Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD), 1103
  Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), 1103
  hemophilia, 1103
X-Linked Hyper-IgM syndrome, 1000, 1001
X-linked inheritance, 1088–1089, 1089f
  dominant inheritance, 1088–1089, 1089f
  recessive inheritance, 1088, 1089f
X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome, 1003–1004
X-linked thrombocytopenia (XLT), 999
XLT. See X-linked thrombocytopenia (XLT)
XXX syndrome, 1097
XYY syndrome, 1097

Y
Yellow fever
  in returned traveler, 1365t
  vaccination, 279
    travel-related, 1357
Yersinia, 639
Yersinia enterocolitica, 627
Y-linked inheritance, 1089–1090
Young infants, congenital syphilis. See also Infants
  differential diagnosis, 1284
  symptoms and signs, 1283
  treatment, 1284–1285
Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance System, 117
Youth Risk Behavior Survey, 1330

Z
Zafirlukast, in asthma management, 1127
ZAP-70 deficiency, 993
Zellweger syndrome, 1075
Zidovudine, 1221t
Zinc, 288t, 306, 306t
  in anorexia nervosa management, 166
  breast-fed infants and, 294, 297
  cow milk composition, 295t
  dietary reference intakes, 287t
  human milk composition, 295t
  infant formula, 295t
Ziprasidone, 186t
Zonisamide, in seizure management, 754t
Zygomycetes, fungal infections due to, 1326